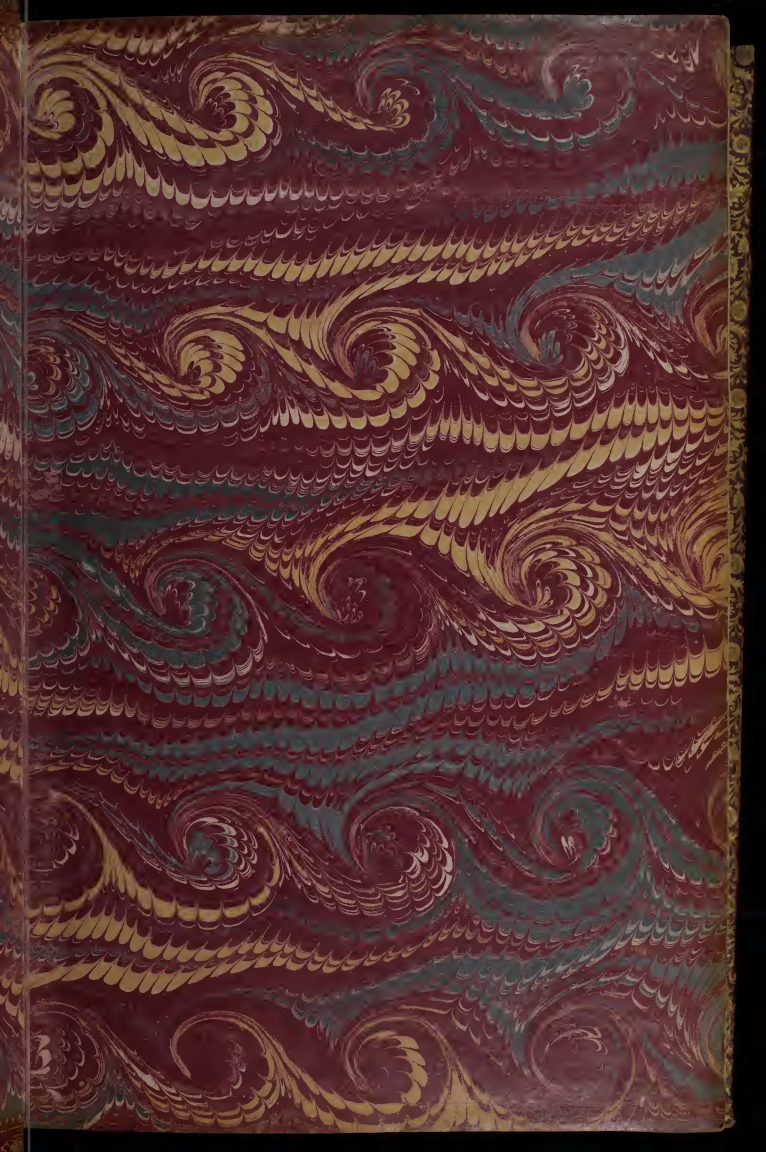
THE
NEWBERRY
LIBRARY
CHICAGO
case
G
12
71



PVRCHAS his PILGRIMAGE.

OR

RELATIONS OF THE WORLD

AND THE RELIGIONS

Obſerued in all Ages and places
Diſcouered, from the CREATION
vnto this PRESENT.

CONTAYNING A THEOLOGICALL AND GEOGRAphicall Hiſtorie of ASIA, AFRICA, *and* AMERICA, *with the* Ilands adiacent.

Declaring the ancient Religions before the FLOVD, the Heatheniſh, Iewiſh, and Saracenicall in all Ages ſince, in thoſe parts *profeſſed, with their ſeuerall opinions, Idols, Oracles, Temples, Prieſts,* Faſts, Feaſts, Sacrifices, and Rites Religious: Their beginnings, Proceedings, Alterations, Sects, Orders and SVCCESSIONS.

VVith briefe Deſcriptions of the Countries, Nations, States, *Diſcoueries; Priuate and publike Cuſtomes, and the moſt* remarkable Rarities of NATVRE, or Humane induſtrie, in the ſame.

The fourth Edition, much enlarged with Additions, and illuſtrated with Mappes *through the whole Worke; And three whole Treatiſes annexed, One of* Ruſſia *and* other Northeasterne Regions by Sr. IEROME HORSEY; The ſecond of the Gulfe of *Bengala* by Master WILLIAM METHOLD; The third of the *Saracenicall* Empire, Tranſlated out of Arabike by T. ERPENIVS.

By SAMVEL PVRCHAS, Parſon of Sr. *Martins* by *Ludgate*, LONDON.

Vnus Deus, Vna Veritas,

LONDON,
Printed by *William Stansby* for *Henrie Fetherſtone*, and are to be ſold at his Shop in *Pauls* Church-yard, at the Signe of the Roſe.
1626.

TO HIS MOST EXCELLENT MAIESTIE,

Charles BY THE GRACE OF GOD, KING OF Great Brittaine, France and Ireland, Defender of the *Faith, &c.*

Our Maiesties goodnesse hath inuited this boldnes, in accepting my late Voluminous Twinnes of *Pilgrimes*; then also vouchsafing to aske of this my *Pilgrimage*, whether it were there annexed, and wherefore it was not (a sufficient prouocation to This Edition and Dedication;) that I mention not Your Pietie, which cannot denie hereditarie respect, where your Royall Father (of euer blessed memorie, the King of learned and Learnings kings) manifested so much fauour, as to make it Ordinarie of his Bed chamber; where vpon occasion of those later Volumes then presented, he questioned the difference, and professed freely that he had read this worke seuen times, giuing thereof a present testimonie in his learned discourse and censure. No lesse did hee promise touching

the *Pilgrimes*, which he made his Nightly taske, till God called him by fatall sicknesse to a better *Pilgrimage* and of a more enduring Kingdome; euen the last day in which that Sunne yeelded his present rayes to this Citie, sending an Honourable messenger with a fauourable message of his gentle approbation and incouragement. Such a testimonie is a King of Testimonies, and no lesse reward to the Author, then commendation of the Worke to his worthy Heire, and to all English Readers. Once; it hath produced this my present aduenture on your Maiestie, being otherwise ambitious, that as my selfe, so all mine may there acknowledge subiection and reference. I might adde also that some Additions here inserted, had more fitly beene ranked in those *Pilgrime files*, which in more speciall proprietie attended your Royall standerd. And although these times seeme more to fauour of Armes then to fauour Arts (*inter arma silent Musæ*) yet Our Muse is not of the softer socke, but more Masculine, an armed *Pallas*, not bred in Poeticall mysterie, but borne a reall Historie, containing actions, factions, fractions of Religions and States through the whole World of Place and Time; not nicer effeminate fictions of idle-busie fancifull braines.

Howeuer, may it please your Maiestie to accept his well-intended indeuours, who hath borrowed of thousands to furnish this one Worke of and to the World, and to admit the *Pilgrimes* heartie acclamation of ioy, ioy, to Your happie Inauguration, with prayers that the vertuous goodnesse of King IAMES may be succeeded and exceeded in the greatnesse and vertues of Great Britaines Great *Charles*. AMEN.

Your vnworthy

Subiect,

Samuel

Purchas.

TO THE MOST REVEREND FATHER IN GOD, GEORGE BY THE DIVINE PROVIDENCE, LORD Archbishop of CANTERBVRIE, Primate of all ENGLAND and Metropolitane, *one of his Maiesties most Honourable* Priuie Councell.

Aboue thirteene yeeres are passed since first your Graces auspicious name graced the Frontispice of this Pilgrimage, *which promising the World and her Religions in foure Parts, hath (onely and that foure times) performed One. And as a late Queene ambitious of Souereigntie to all her Sonnes, found the Mathematicians which had foretold it, true, but her hopes false, that falling out by fatall succession in one Kingdom which shee had expected and indeuoured in diuers: so hath this our First-borne with successiue improuements beene so often the sole heire and successor to himselfe. Now the Fourth time doth this* Pilgrimage *glory in your Graces benediction, and although my trauelling braine hath not beene deliuered of those promised*

promised Pilgrimages, *yet hath it by a strange superfætation procreated & lately presented to kisse your Graces hand, foure twins of* Pilgrimes, *which did not indeede formally pay the former debt, yet presumed to yeeld that which should bee as vsefull to the World in the knowledge of her remoter parts. These issues exhausting their Parents procreatiue powers, his hastned age expects & exacts Rest for the rest; and now for This, having been often quarelled for forcing men by frequent Additions in later Editions to renew their purchase of* Purchas *his renewed* Pilgrimage, *though he durst not bestow a Childs portion on it, yet would he not send it forth without a Fathers blessing. The Three Treatises annexed had found fitter place with my* Pilgrimes, *had they then come to my hands: but their rarities merit a place, yea a welcome, in what place soeuer.*

For the Author, if his reiterated paines; if his here borrowing of aboue thirteene hundred Authors of one or other kind, in I know not how many hundreths of their Epistles, Treatises and Relations; if his weekly redoubled cares of the Pulpit, daily and howerly of a weak body and not strong family; if the Argument it selfe being of Religions (though irreligious) to a most Reuerend and religious Prelate; if the worlds approbation pressing it to so often view and censure; if None of these, if All of them may not excuse so often resumed presumption on your Grace, yet is he forced by necessarie dutie, and the sum of all duties. Thankefulnes. Yea this I am sure will be full excuse, if not commendation, of that which I haue foure times obtruded, the testimonie of our late deceassed Soueraine of happie memorie (the King of literature also) King IAMES, *who shewing me it by him in his Bed-chamber, said, that he had read it seuen times: Whereto if I should adde his iudicious questions of diuers particulars therein, his ready and milde satisfaction, his ample commendation, copious discourse, piercing wit, admirable memory, gentle affabilitie, I might seeme to some emulous carpers to magnifie my self, in relating that truth which rather indeede doth illustrate to all posteritie his worth then my worthinesse, God and Gods greatest Vicegerents, delighting rather to shew Grace then to admit Plea of Merit. It plea-*

sed

ſed his Maieſtie to enquire further of the different ſcope of my Pilgrimage, *& my then preſented* Pilgrims, *which here alſo for the Readers ſake I think fit to anſwer; that Theſe Brethren holding much reſemblance in name, nature and feature, yet differ both in the obiect and ſubiect: This being mine own in matter (though borrowed) and in forme of words and method: Whereas my* Pilgrims *are the Authors themſelues, acting their owne parts in their owne words, onely furniſhed by me with ſuch neceſſaries as that ſtage further required, and ordered according to my rules; here is a* Pilgrimage *to the Temples of the Worlds Citie,* religionis ergo, *with obuious and occaſionall view of other things; there is a full Voyage, and in a method of Voyages, the whole Citie of the World, propounded together with the Temples; here the ſoule and ſome acceſſories, there the body and ſoule of the remoter World, with* (ὁνῦ κόσμε κοσμέι) *her rarer furniture; this from the eare; that from the eye; this briefer notes, that the Text it ſelfe. How euer; ſuch was his Maieſties fauour as to adde for my further encouragement, his promiſe to heare at large all thoſe* Pilgrims, *which was nightly alſo performed, vntill his fatall ſickneſſe called him to enioy a nightleſſe day in the heauenly Kingdome.*

Euen the laſt day on which this Citie ſaw him, it pleaſed him with gracious approbation of the former, to impoſe another taske on me, by an Honourable meſſenger, with promiſe of reward, which had almoſt in a dangerous ſickneſſe buried me, and was buried (with thoſe hopes) in his Maieſties graue; whoſe Funerals this Citie hath beene forced euer ſince to ſolemniſe, with armies of Mourners preſſed by Peſtilence, to attend & follow His Corps with their owne: And if ſome liuing remaines of him had not ſhined in his Sonne King CHARLES, *in that Sun-ſet, what a Chaos of darkeneſſe had befalne vs, which loſt that day, and yet ſaw no night? And long may your Grace ſhine as a Starre of greateſt magnitude, attending neere our happy* Charles-waine, *and euer may that Royall Race bee the* Load-ſtarre *of our Church and State vnder the* Sunne of righteouſneſſe, *euen ſo long as* Bootes *ſhall attend on that bright conſtellation.*

May

May it please your Grace to pardon this talkatiue boldnesse, and to permit mee also to mention your late fauour, and seconding that Royall testimonie, when notwithstanding the dreadfull infection, your gracious affection admitted free communication with me, intended a free and bountifull Collation on me, and extended so large a collaudation to those my Pilgrimes; *neither by their voluminous prolixitie deterred from reading them; nor then deterring my suspended scrupulous thoughts by your iudicious seueritie, but with ingenuous sinceritie yeelding a testimonie so able and ample, that though I blush to record it, yet I now repent not of so vast vndertakings, which such iudgement deemeth so profitable, that the studious in this kind of literature neede goe no further: which was the scope of those voluminous Collections, to coniure as it were all Trauelling spirits into that one* Pilgrime-centre, *and at once to make the World Eye-witnesse to it selfe. Let me glorie further that my Volumes are admitted into your Graces Librarie, and my selfe an appendix of your family and*

Your Graces vnworthy

Chaplaine,

S. P.

To the Reader.

AND now, READER, The PILGRIME comes vnto thee the fourth time, with whom hee dares be somewhat bolder. Being, I know not by what naturall inclination, addicted to the studie of Historie, my heart would sometimes obiect a selfe-loue, in following my priuate delights in that kinde. At last I resolued to turne the pleasures of my studies into studious paines, that others might againe, by delightfull studie, turne my paines into their pleasure. I heere bring *Religion* from *Paradise* to the *Ark*, and thence follow her round about the World, and (for her sake) obserue the World it selfe, with the seueral Countries and Peoples therein; the chiefe Empires and States: their priuate and publique Customes; their manifold chances and changes; also the wonderfull and most remarkeable effects of Nature; Euents of Diuine and Humane Prouidence, Rarities of Art; and whatsoeuer I finde by Relations of Historians, as I passe, most worthie the writing. *Religion* is my more proper aime, and therefore I insist longer on the description of whatsoeuer I finde belonging thereto; declaring the Religion of the first Men the corrupting of it before and after the Floud; the Iewish obseruations; the Idols, Idolatries, Temples, Priests, Feasts, Fasts, Opinions, Sects, Orders, and sacred Customes of the Heathens; with the Alterations and Successions that haue therein happened, from the beginning of the World hitherto.

This Worke I diuide into foure parts. This first exhibiteth the Relations and Theologicall discouerie of ASIA, AFRICA, and AMERICA: The second when God will, shall doe the same for EVROPE: The third and fourth, in a second visitation, shall obserue such things in the same places as I holde most remarkeable in the Christian and Ecclesiasticall Historie, and that according to the same Method; which is squared in the *Whole* by order of *Place*, going still out of one Countrie into the next; in each particular part and seueral Countrie, by the order of *Time*, deducing our Relations, so farre as we haue Others foot-prints to guide vs, (though not exactly naming the day and yeere, and determining questions in Chronologicall controuersies, yet in some conuenient sort) from the ancient times, and by degrees descending to the present.

If thou demandest what profit may be hereof; I answere, that heere Students of all sorts may finde matter fitting their studies: The naturall Philosophers may obserue the different constitution and commixtion of the Elements, their diuers working in diuers places, the varietie of heauenly influence, of the yeerely seasons, of the Creatures in the Aire, Water, Earth: They which delight in State-affaires, may obserue the varietie of States and Kingdomes, with their differing Lawes, Politics, and Customes, their Beginnings and Endings. The Diuine, besides the former, may heere contemplate the workes of God, not in Creation alone, but in his Iustice and Prouidence, pursuing sinne euery where with such dreadfull plagues; both bodily, in rooting vp and pulling downe the mightiest Empires; and especially in spirituall Iudgements, giuing vp so great a part of the

World

World vnto *the efficacie of Errour in strong delusions, that hauing forsaken the Fountaine of liuing waters, they should dig vnto themselues these broken Pits that can hold no water*; deuout in their superstitions, and superstitious in their deuotions; agreeing all in this, that there should bee a Religion, disagreeing from each other, and the Truth, in the practice thereof.

Likewise our Ministers may be incited vnto all godly labours in their function of preaching the Gospel, seeing otherwise, for outward and bodily ceremonies, the Turkes and Iewes (in their manifold deuotions in their Oratories euery day) and other Heathen would conuince vs of idlenesse. And let mee haue leaue to speake it for the glory of God, and the good of our Church; I cannot finde any Priests in all this my Pilgrimage, of whom wee haue any exact History, but take more bodily paines in their deuotions, than is perfomed by not preaching Ministers, especially in Countrie-villages, where on the weeke dayes they cannot haue occasion, or company, for publique prayers. & therfore if they read only the Seruice on holy dayes, and neuer studie for more (which I would it were not the idle practise of some) euen the Heathen shall rise vp in iudgement against them. I subscribe with hand and practice to our *Liturgie*, but not to such *Lethargie*: whose darkenesse is so much the more intollerable, in this Sun-shine of the Gospell, wherein wee haue a gracious *King*, so diligent a frequenter of Sermons; and *Reuerend Bishops* (notwithstanding other their weighty Ecclesiasticall employments yet) diligent Preachers.

The studious of Geographie may somewhat be helped in that kinde: not that we intend an exact Geographie, in mentioning euery Citie with the degrees of Longitude and Latitude, but yet limiting euery Countrie in his true situation and bounds; and performing happily more then some, which take vpon them the title of Geographers, as their chiefe profession: and more then any, which I know hath done in our language.

He which admireth and almost adoreth the Capuchine, Iesuite, or other Romanists, for selfe-inflicted whippings, fastings, watchings, vowes of obedience, pouertie, and single life, and their not sparing their limmes, and liues for their *will-worships*, may see, in all these, the Romanists equalled by Heathens, if not out-stripped, euen by the reports of the Iesuites and other their Catholiques. *Bodily exercise profiteth little, but Godlinesse is profitable vnto all, and hath the promise of this life and that which is to come.* 2.Tim.4.8.

Here also the Reader may see most of their Popish Rites, deriued out of Chaldean, Egyptian, and other Fountaines of Paganisme, as in the later taske we shall haue more occasion to shew. Heere euery English man may see cause to praise God continually for the light of his truth, communicated to vs: whereas it is (in comparison) but a small part of the World, that soundeth *the sacred name of* Iesus; and of those that professe it, how infinit are the sects and superstitions? *God hath shewed his Word vnto our* IACOB (The Defender Of His Faith) *his Statutes and his Iudgements vnto* this Israel of Great Brittaine. Hee hath *not dealt so with euery Nation, neither haue the Heathen*, nor scarcely, iff scarcely, any other Christian Nation, so much *knowledge of his iudgements*. And yet how seditious are some? how prophane are others? how vnthankfull the most? That beastly Sinne of Drunkennesse, that biting Sinne of Vsurie, that Deuillish Sinne of Swaggering, ruffling in deformitie of clothes, like monstrous *Chimeras*, and barking out a multiformitie of oathes, like hellish *Cerberi*, as if men could not be *Gallants*, vnlesse they turned *Deuils*. These are the paiments wee returne vnto the Lord, in stead of prayers for, and loyaltie to his Maiestie; peaceablenesse and charitie to each others; modestie and sobrietie in our selues.

For the forme, I haue sought in some places, with varietie of phrase, in all, with varietie of matter, to draw thee along with mee in this tedious Pilgrimage. Some names are written diuersly, according to the differing Copies which I followed, which thy discretion will easily conceiue. I doe not in euery question set downe

my

my censure; sometimes, because it were more then needes; sometimes because of the difficultie, I mention Authors sometimes of meane quality, for the meanest haue sauce to obserue that which themselues see, more certainly then the contemplations and *Theories* of the more learned. I would also acknowledge the labour of the meanest. I haue laboured to reduce Relations to their first Authors, setting their names to their Allegations: the want whereof hath much troubled me, whilst the most leaue out their Authors, as if their owne assertion were sufficient authoritie in things borrowed. I haue (to my great paines) contracted and Epitomized whole Volumes (and some very large) into one Chapter; a thing vsuall through these Relations. Where I haue found plentifull discourse for Religion (my chiefe aime) I am shorter in other Relations; and where I haue had lesse helpes for that discouerie, I insist more on the wonders of Nature, and discoueries by Sea and Land, with other remarkeable accidents. These Rarities of Nature I haue sometimes suted in a differing phrase and figure of speech; not that I affect a fantasticall singularitie; but that these Diuine workes might appeare in Robes, if not fitting their Maiesties, yet such as our Word-Robe did willingly without any great affectation or studie, afoord: not without example of the Scripture, which vseth to bring in the mute Creatures, speaking and performing (as it were) other personall offices; nor without this effect to make the Reader stay a while with obseruation and wonder; besides that, variety of it selfe is delightsome.

If any millike the fulnesse in some places, and the barrennesse of words in others; let them consider, we handle a World, where are Mountaines and Vallies, fertile habitations, and sandy desarts: and others steps, whom I follow, hold me sometimes in a narrower way, which elsewhere take more libertie. I touch here and there a *Controuersie*; both for illustration of Historie; and in season, and out of season, to shew my affectation to the Truth.

Now if any man thinke, that it were better these rotten bones of the passed, and stinking bodies of the Present superstitions were buried, then thus raked out of their graues; besides that which hath beene said, I answere, That I haue sufficient example in the Scriptures, *which were written for our learning to the ends of the World*, and yet depaint vnto vs the vgly face of Idolatry in so many Countries of the Heathens, with the Apostasies, Sects, and Heresies of the Iewes, as in our first and second booke is shewed: and the Ancient Fathers also, *Iustin, Tertullian, Clemens, Ireneus, Origen*, and more fully, *Eusebius, Epiphanius, Philastrius* and *Augustine*, haue gone before vs in their large Catalogues of Heresies and false Opinions.

I appeale vnto any indifferent Reader (for some not Readers, nor indifferent, I respect not, whose Authoritie, perhaps, would be but indifferent; if they must first win it by being Authors of so big, I dare not say, so great volumes) if there be any, either Idolatries, or other impieties, in this worke of mine expressed beyond theirs which heere out of the Scriptures are mentioned, Iewes in the Temple, humane Sacrifices to *Moloch, Tapnz* his mourning, Sodomites, Incests, with other fleshly, worldly, beastly, Deuillish monsters of iniquitie, obtruded vnder Religions Sacred Mantle, amongst the Amorites, Egyptians and Iewes, before the comming of Christ: or greater darknesse and more hellish then when the *Light* it selfe was made manifest, and *the Darknesse comprehended it not*: *Herods* butcheries, *Iudas* his treacherie, the blasphemies of the Scribes, Priests, and Pharises, and the crucifying of the Sonne of God by men, for men: or since, if as stinking, loathsome, monstrous abuses haue not beene offered to the Christian Name in worse impostures and pollutions, by the Nicholaitans, and other incarnat Deuils, recorded by those Fathers and other Ecclesiasticall Authors, then any of those heere in this booke obserued: to which, if that which *Epiphanius* hath written of the Gnostikes alone, fully and particularly, be considered, all these Ethnike and Mahumetan superstitions would comparatiuely be *iustified*: So true is that olde saying, *Corruptio optimi pessima*; and of the Truth it selfe, *Sodom and her daughters*

not

not comparable to *Ierusalem with hers*; and of the iustest Iudge, that *it shall bee easier at the day of Iudgement* for Those then These. And what indeede doth more set forth the glory of Gods grace, then in pardoning; his power, then in reformings; his justice, then in giuing men vp to such delusions? Are not these the Trophees and glorious victories of The Crosse Of Christ, that hath subuerted the Temples, Oracles, Sacrifices, and Seruices of the Deuill? And maist not thou see herein, what *Man* is, and thou thy selfe maist bee, if God loue thee to thy selfe? Read therefore, with prayses vnto God, *the Father of thy light*; and prayers for these Heathens, that God may bring them out of the *snare of the Deuill*, & that *Christ* may be *his saluation to the ends of the World*. And let me also obtaine thy prayers in this my *Pilgrimage*, to be therein directed, to the glorie of God, and good of my Countrie. Euen so LORD Iesvs.

THE CONTENTS OF THE SEVERALL CHAPTERS AND PARAGRAPHS IN THESE BOOKES ENSVING.

ASIA.

THE FIRST BOOKE.

Of the first beginnings of the World and Religion: and *of the Regions and Religions of* Babylonia, Assyria, Syria, Phœnicia, and Palestina.

CHAP. I.

OF GOD, *One in Nature, Three in Persons, the* FATHER, SONNE, *and* HOLY GHOST. pag.1

CHAP. II.

Of the Creation of the World. pag.5

CHAP. III.

Of Man, *considered in his first state wherein he was created: and of* Paradise, *the place of his habitation.* pag.13

CHAP. IIII.

Of the word Religion: *and of the Religion of our first Parents before the fall.* pag.17

CHAP. V.

Of the fall of Man: *and of Originall sin.* p.21

CHAP. VI.

Of the reliques of the Diuine Image after the fall, whereby naturally men addict themselues vnto some Religion: and what was the Religion of the World before the floud. pag.25

CHAP. VII.

Of the cause and comming of the Floud. p.30

CHAP. VIII.

Of the repeopling of the World, and of the diuision of Tongues *and* Nations. pag.34

CHAP. IX.

A Geographicall Narration of the whole Earth *in generall, and more particularly of* Asia. pag.39

CHAP. X.

Of Babylonia: *the originall of* Idolatrie: *and the* Chaldæans *Antiquities before the* Floud; *as* Berosus *hath reported them.* p.44

CHAP. XI.

Of the City and Country of Babylon: *their sumptuous Wals, Temples, and Images.* pag.47

CHAP. XII.

Of the Priests, Sacrifices, religious rites and customes of the Babylonians. pag.51

CHAP. XIII.

The Chaldæan *and* Assyrian *Chronicle, or computation of Times with their manifold alterations of* Religions *and* Gouernment *in those parts vntill our time.* pag.59

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Niniue, *and other neighbouring Nations,* pag.65

CHAP. XV.

Of Syria, *and the ancient* Religions *there:*

¶ ¶ *of*

of the Syrian Goddesse, *and her Rites at* Hierapolis: *of the* Daphnæan *and other* Syrian *Superstitions.* pag. 67

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Syrian *Kings, and alteration in* Gouernment, *and* Religion *in those Countries.* pag. 73

CHAP. XVII.

Of Phœnicia, *and of the Theologie, and Religion of the ancient* Phœnicians: *of their Arts and Inuentions.* pag. 76

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Palæstina *and the first Inhabitants thereof, the* Sodomites, Idumæans, Moabites, Ammonites, *and* Canaanites, *with others.* pag. 83

THE SECOND BOOKE.

Of the Hebrew Nation and Religion from the beginning thereof to our times.

CHAP. I.

THE *Preface of this Booke: and a Description of the Region of* Palæstina, *since called* Iudæa, *and now* Terra Sancta. pag. 89

CHAP. II.

OF *the* Hebrew Patriarches, *and their Religion before the Law: also of their Law and Politie.* §. I. pag. 95

Of the Patriarchs, and Religion before the Law. §. II. ibid.

Of the Law of Moses, *the twelue Tribes, and of Proselytes.* pag. 96

§. III.

Of the Hebrew *Polity, and ciuill Gouernment.* pag. 97

§. IIII.

Of the Iewish Excommunications. pag. 100

CHAP. III.

OF *the* Religious places *among the Israelites: their Tabernacle, Temples, Synagogues.* pag. 101

CHAP. IIII.

OF *the Iewish computation of Time: and of their Festiuall dayes.* pag. 105

CHAP. V.

OF *the Festiuall dayes instituted by God in the Law.* pag. 108

CHAP. VI.

OF *the Feasts, and Fasts which the* Iewes *instituted to themselues: with a* Kalender *of their Feasts and Fasts through the yeere as they are now obserued.* pag. 113

CHAP. VII.

OF *the ancient Oblations, Gifts, and Sacrifices of the* Iewes: *of their Tithes, and of their Priests, and persons Ecclesiasticall, and Religious.* pag. 115

§. I.

Of their Oblations, Gifts, and Sacrifices. ibid.

§. II.

Of Tithes, and their manner of Tithing. pag. 116

§. III.

Of their Personall Offerings, and of their and our Ecclesiasticall Reuenues. pag. 119

§. IIII.

Of their first-borne, Priests, Leuites, and other Religious persons. pag. 121

CHAP. VIII.

OF *the diuers Sects, Opinions, and Alterations of Religion, amongst the* Hebrewes. pag. 123

§. I.

Of their ancient Diuisions and Idolatries. ibid.

§. II.

Of the Karraim *and* Rabbinists, *and of* Hasidæi. pag. 125

§. III.

Of the Pharises. pag. 126

§. IIII.

Of the Sadducees. pag. 129

§. V.

Of the Hesseos. pag. 130

§. VI.

Of the Scribes. pag. 132

§. VII.

Of many other Iewish Sects and Heresies, pag. 133

CHAP. IX.

OF *the* Samaritans, pag. 136

CHAP. X.

THE *miserable destruction and dispersion of the* Iewes, *from the time of the desolation*

on of their Citie and Temple to this day. p.140

§. I.

Of the destruction of the Iewes *vnder* Titus. ibid.

§. II.

Of the destruction of the Iewes *vnder* Adrian. pag.141

§. III.

Of other their false Christs and seducing Prophets. pag.143

§. IIII.

Of the miserable dispersions of the Iewes. pag.144

§. V.

Of the estate of the Iewes, *and their dispersed habitations in the time of* Ben. Tudelensis. pag.146

§. VI.

Of some Iewes *lately found in* China, *and of their late accidents in* Germany. pag.150

§. VII.

Of the Iewes *sometimes liuing in* England, *collected out of ancient Records by Master* Iohn Selden *of the Inner Temple.* pag.151

CHAP. XI.

A *Chronologie of the Iewish Historie from the beginning of the World, briefly collected.* pag.153

CHAP. XII.

O*F the Iewish* Talmud: *and the composition and estimation thereof: also of the Iewish learned men, their succession, their* Cabalists, Masorites, *their Rabbines, Vniuersities, Students, Rabbinicall Creations, their Scriptures, and the Translations of them.* pag.155

§. I.

Of the Talmud. ibid.

§. II.

Of the ancient Iewish Authors, and their Cabalists. pag.161

§. III.

Of the Rabbines, the Rites of their Creation, the Iewish Vniuersities, and Students. pag.164

§. IIII.

Of the Scriptures and their Interpretations. pag.168

CHAP. XIII.

O*F the Moderne Iewes Creed, or the Articles of their Faith: with their interpretation of the same: and their Affirmatiue and Negatiue Precepts.* pag.170

§. I.

Of their Creed. ibid.

§. II.

Of the Negatiue Precepts expounded by the Rabbines. pag.174

§. III.

Of their Affirmatiue Precepts. pag.175

CHAP. XIIII.

O*F the Iewish opinions of the Creation, their Ceremonies about the birth of a Childe: of their Circumcision, Purification and Redemption of the first-borne, and Education of their Children.* pag.177

§. I.

Of their Exposition of Scripture a taste in Gen.1.1. ibid.

§. II.

Their Dreames of Adam. pag.178

§. III.

Of their Iewesses conception and trauell, and of Lilith. ibid.

§. IIII.

Of the Iewish manner of Circumcision. p.179

§. V.

Of the Iewish Purification, Redemption and Education. pag.181

CHAP. XV.

O*F their Morning Prayer, with their Fringes, Phylacteries, and other Ceremonies thereof.* pag.183

§. I.

Of their behaiuour before they goe to the Synagogue. ibid.

§. II.

Of their Zizis *and* Tephillim *and holy Vestments.* pag.184

Of their Schoole or Synagogue, Rites, and their Mattins. pag.185

CHAP. XVI.

O*F their Ceremonies at home, after their returne, at their meales, and otherwise: and of their Euening Prayer.* pag.188

CHAP. XVII.

T*Heir weekly obseruations of Times,* viz. *Their Mundayes and Thursdayes, and Sabbaths.* pag.190

§. I.

Of their Mundayes and Thursdayes. ibid.

§. II.

Of their Law Lectures. pag.191

§. III.

Of the Iewish Sabbath. pag.192

CHAP. XVIII.

T*He Iewish Passeuer, as they now obseruе it; and other their Feasts and Fasts.* pag.194

§. I.

Of their Passeuer. ibid.

§. II.
Of Pentecoſt. pag.195
§. III.
Of the Feaſt of Tabernacles. 196
§. IIII.
Of their new Moones; and New yeeres day. ibid.
§. V.
Of their Lent, Penance, and Reconciliation-Faſt. pag.197.
§. VI.
Of their other Feaſts. pag.199
CHAP. XIX.
OF their Cookerie, Butcherie, Mariages, Puniſhments and Funerals. pag.200
§. I.
Of their Cookerie. ibid.
§. II.
Of their Butcherie. pag.201
§. III.
Of their Eſpouſals and Mariages. ibid.
§. IIII.
Of Coniugall duties. pag.203
§. V.
Of Diuorce, and other Marriage obſeruations. pag.204
§. VI.
Of the Iewiſh beggers, Diſeaſes and Penances. pag.205
§. VII.
Of their Viſitation of the ſicke, and Funerall Rites. pag.206
CHAP. XX.
THe Iewes *Faith and Hope touching their* Meſſias. pag.207
§. I.
Of the Signes of the comming of their Meſſias. §. II. ibid.
Iewiſh Tales of monſtrous Birds, Beaſts, Fiſhes and Men. §. III. pag 210
Their Meſſias *his Feaſt.* pag.211
CHAP. XXI.
OF the hopes and hinderances of the Iewes *conuerſion.* pag.212
CHAP. XXII.
THe later Inhabitants of Paleſtina *and the parts adioyning, ſince the diſperſion of the Iewes till this day.* pag.214
§. I.
Of the Chriſtian times before the Saracens. §. II. ibid.
Of the Saracens *and* Turkes *in* Paleſtina. §. III. pag.215
Of the exploits of the Frankes *and other Weſterne Chriſtians in* Paleſtina. pag.214
§. IIII.
Of the Azopart *and* Aſſyſine. pag.218
§. V.
Of the Dogziji *and* Druſians, *and other* Pagans *there.* pag.220
§. VI.
Of the vnchriſtian Chriſtians. pag.222

THE THIRD BOOKE.

Of the Arabians, Saracens, Turkes, and of the ancient *Inhabitants of* ASIA MINOR: *and* of their Religions.

CHAP. I.
OF Arabia, *and of the ancient Religions, Rites, and Cuſtomes thereof.* pag. 223
CHAP. II.
OF the Saracene *Name, Nation, and proceeding in Armes: and the ſucceſſion of their* Chaliffaes. pag.229
§. I.
Of the Saracens *before* Mahomets *dayes,* ibid.
§. II.
Of the Saracenicall *beginnings and proceedings vnder* Mahomet, *and his Succeſſors, of the* Maraunian *Race.* pag.232
§. III.
Of the Abaſian Chaliffaes, *their Citie* Bagadet, *with many* Perſian, Indian, *and other occurrences vnder them.* pag.236
§. IIII.
Of their Titles, Greatneſſe, and Learning. pag.240
CHAP. III.
THe life of Mahumet, Mohammed, *or* Muhammed *the* Saracen *Law-giuer.* §. I. pag.241
Mahumets *life after the Hiſtories of Chriſtians.* §. II. ibid.
The Saracen *Storie of* Mahomets *life.* pag.244

CHAP.

CHAP. IIII.

OF *the* Alcoran, *or* Alfurcan, *containing the* Mahumetan *Law: the summe and contents thereof.* pag.248

§. I.

Of the composition of the Alcoran. ibid.

§. II.

The doctrine of the Alcoran *brought into common places.* pag.251

§. III.

The Saracens *opinion of their* Alcoran. pag.258

CHAP. V.

OTher Mahumetical *speculations, and explanations of their Law, collected out of their owne Commentaries of that Argument.* (p.259

CHAP. VI.

OF *the Pilgrimage to* Mecca. pag.267

CHAP. VII.

OF *the Successors of* Mahomet, *of their different Sects, and of the dispersing of that Religion, through the World.* pag.274

CHAP. VIII.

OF *the* Turkish *Nation: their originall and proceedings.* pag.278

§. I.

Of the Turkish *name, and first original.* ibid.

§. II.

Of the Turkish *Kingdome in* Persia, *and their other Conquests.* pag.279

§. III.

Of the Ottoman Turkes, *their originall and proceedings.* pag.281

CHAP. IX.

A *Continuation of the* Turkish *Warres and affaires: together with the succession of the Great* Turks, *till this present yeere* 1616. p.284

§. I.

Of Solyman *the Magnificent.* ibid.

§. II.

Of Selim *the Second, and* Amurath *the Third.* pag.285

§. III.

Of Mahomet *the Third.* pag.287

§. IIII.

Of Achmet *which now reigneth.* pag.288

§. V.

Of Sultan Achmets *Person, Family, Government, and greatnesse of State.* pag.291

§. VI.

An Appendix touching the Succession of Mustapha *twice, and of* Osmans *murder, and other civill, unciuill late Combustions.* pag.293

CHAP. X.

OF *the opinions holden by the* Turkes *in their Religion, and of their Manners and Customes.* pag.297

§. I.

Of their eight Commandements. ibid.

§. II.

Of other their opinions and practices in Religion. pag.300

§. III.

Of the Turkish *manners, their ciuill and morall behaiour.* pag 303

CHAP. XI.

OF *the religious places amongst the* Turks: *their Meschits, Hospitals, and Monasteries: with ther Lyturgie and Circumcision.* pag.306

§. I.

Of their Temples: a description of Saint Sophies. ibid.

§. II.

Of their Hospitals and Monasteries. pag.308

§. III.

Of their publike Prayers, and Church-rites. (ibid.

§. IIII.

Of their Sabbaths, and of their Lent and Easter. pag.310

§. V.

Of the Turkish *Circumcision.* pag.311

CHAP. XII.

OF *the Sepulchres, Funerall Rites, and opinions touching the dead, among the* Turkes. pag.312

CHAP. XIII.

OF *the religious Votaries amongst the* Turkes, *and of their Saints, Sects, Miracles, and hypocriticall holinesse.* pag.314

CHAP. XIIII.

OF *their Priests and Hierarchie: with a digression touching the Hierarchie and miserie of Christians subiect to the* Turke. p.319

A digression touching the Hierarchie, and miseries of Christians under the Turke. p.322

CHAP. XV.

OF *the Regions and Religions of* Asia Minor, *since called* Natolia *and* Turkey. pag.325

CHAP. XVI.

OF Asia proprie dicta: *now called* Sarcum. pag.330

CHAP. XVII.

OF Ionia *and other Countries in that* Chersonesus. pag.336

THE FOVRTH BOOKE.

Of the Armenians, Medes, Persians, Parthians, Scythians, Tartarians, Chinois, and of their Religions.

CHAP. I.

OF Armenia Maior, *and* Georgia: *and the neighbouring Nations.* p.343

§. I.

Of the Armenians *and* Turcomanians. ibid.

§. II.

Of Iberia. pag.346

§. III.

Of Albania. ibid.

§. IIII.

Of Colchis *or* Mengrelia. pag.347

§. V.

Of the present Mengrelians *and* Georgians. ibid.

§. VI.

Of the Circassians. pag.348

§. VII.

Of the Curdi. pag.349

CHAP. II.

OF *the* Medes. pag.349

CHAP. III.

OF *the* Parthians, *and* Hyrcanians. pag. 352

§. I.

Of Parthia. ibid.

§. II.

Of the Hyrcanians Tappyri, *and* Caspians. pag.355

CHAP. IIII.

OF Persia, *and the* Persian *State, in the first & second* Persian *Dynasties.* pag.356

§. I.

Of the beginning of the Persian *Monarchie by* Cyrus. ibid.

§. II.

Of the Successors of Cyrus: *and of* Cambyses. pag.358

§. III.

Of the succeeding Monarchs untill Alexanders *Conquest.* pag.359

§. IIII.

Of the Persian *Chronologie.* pag.360

§. V.

Of the second Persian *Dynastie.* pag 361

CHAP. V.

OF *the* Persian *magnificence, and other their Antiquities.* pag.365

CHAP. VI.

OF *the* Persian Magi. pag.369

CHAP. VII.

OF *the Religions, and other Rites of the ancient* Persians. pag.373

§. I.

Of their Gods and Superstitions out of Herodotus. ibid.

§. II.

Of the same and other Rites out of Strabo. (pag.374

§. III.

Of the same, out of Christian and other Authors. pag.375

§. IIII.

Of the Persian *Education & Schooles.* p.376

§. V.

Of the Persian *Luxurie, and Marriages, Funerals, &c.* pag.377

CHAP. VIII.

OF *the alteration of the State and Religion in* Persia, *under the* Saracens. p.378

§. I.

Of the Saracenicall *Conquest and Schisme in* Persia, *the third Dynastie.* pag.378

§. II.

Of the Tartars *ruling in* Persia, *which was the fourth Dynastie.* pag.379

§. III.

Of Ismael Sofi, *first founder of the present* Persian *Empire, or fifth Dynastie.* pag.381

§. IIII.

Of Shaugh Tamas, *the* Persian *troubles after his death.* pag.385

§. V.

Of Mahomet Codabanda, *and his Sonnes* Abas. pag.386

§. VI.

An Appendix touching the present Persian *King, out of Sir* Anthony Sherley. pag.388

CHAP. IX.

OF *the* Sophian *Sect, or* Persian *Religion, as it is at this present.* pag.390

§. I.

The differences betwixt the Turke *and* Persian, *with the zeale of both parts.* ibid.

§. II.

Of the spreading of the Persian *opinion.* pag. (391

§. III.

Of their Rites, Persons, Places, and opinions Religious. pag.392

§. IIII.

§. IIII.
Of Natures wonders, and the Iesuits lyes of Persia. pag.395

CHAP. X.
OF *the* Scythians, Sarmatians, *and* Seres, *and of their Religion.* pag.396

§. I.
Of the Scythian *Name, People, Region, Language, and manner of Life.* ibid.

§. II.
Of the Religion, Disination, and other Scythian *Rites.* pag.397

§. III.
Of particular Nations in Scythia, *their Acts and Rites.* pag.398

§. IIII.
Of the Seres. pag.400

CHAP. XI.
OF *the* Tartarians, *and of diuers Nations which they subdued; with their Pristine Rites.* pag.401

§. I.
Of the beginning of the Tartarian *Nation.* ibid.

§. II.
The great Exploits of Cingis *or* Cangius *the first* Tartarian *Emperour.* pag.403

§. III.
Of Occoday *the next Emperour, &* Cuine Can. pag.405

§. IIII.
Of Mangu Can *and his Successor* Cublai. pag 406

CHAP. XII.
A *Continuation of the* Tartarian *Historie, and the question discussed, whether* Cathay *and* China *be the same: and the iourny of* Benedict Gocs *by land from* Lahor.pag.408

§. I.
Of the Tartarian *succession to our dayes.*ibid.

§. II.
The question discussed, whether Cathay *be the same with* China. pag.409

§. III.
The long and dangerous iourny from Lahor *a Citie of the great* Mogol *to* China, *by* Benedictus Gocs. pag 413

CHAP. XIII.
OF *the Religion of the* Tartars, *and* Cathayans. pag.415

CHAP. XIIII.
OF *the festiuall solemnities, and of the magnificence of the* Grand Can. pag.419

CHAP. XV.
OF *the alteration of Religion among the* Tartars: *and of diuers Sorts, Sects, and Nations of them now remayning.* pag 421

§. I.
Of the Precopite *or* Crimen Tartars.ibid.

§. II.
Of Tartaria Deserta. pag.423

§. III.
Of the Zagathayan Tartars. pag.425

§. IIII.
Of the Cathayan *and* Mogol Tartars, *&c.* pag.426

CHAP. XVI.
OF *the Nations which lined in, or neere to those parts, now possessed by the* Tartars: *and their Religions and Customes.* pag.428

CHAP. XVII.
OF *other Northerne people adioyning to the* Tartars. pag.431

CHAP. XVIII.
OF *the Kingdome of* China. pag.435

§. I.
Of the Names, Prouinces, Cities and situation thereof ibid.

§. II.
Of the Commodities of China; *and commodious Riuers and Shipping: with two Mappes, one made by* Hondius, *the other taken out of a* China *Map made there by the* Chinois.p 436

§. III.
Of the Cities and Castles in China: *and of* Quinsa. pag.439

§. IIII.
Of their Persons, Attire, and many strange Rites. pag.443

§. V.
Of the Mechanicall Arts in China, *their Printing, &c.* pag.445

§. VI.
Of their Language, Writing, Astrologie, Philosophie and Physicke. pag.446

§. VII.
Of their Ehickes, Politickes, and Degrees in Learning. pag.448

§. VIII.
Of the King, his Court, Issue, Reuenue, and Maiestie. pag 451

§. IX.
Of the Magistrates, Courts, and Gouernements. pag.454

§. X.

§. X.
Of their punishments diuine and humane; and a Catalogue of their Kings. pag.457

CHAP. XIX.
OF *the Religion vsed in* China. pag.460

§. I.
Of their Gods & Idols in former times. ibid.

§. II.
Of their present Gods and Idols. pag.461

§. III.
Of their three Sects: and first of that of Confutius. pag.462

§. IIII.
Of the Sect Sciequia. pag.463

§. V.
Of the third Sect Lauzu pag.464

§. VI.
Of their Superstitious Diuinations, and curious Arts. pag.466

§. VII.
Of the Marriages, Concubines, and other vices, and errors of the Chinois. pag.468

§. VIII.
Of their Temples. pag.470

§. IX.
Of their Funerals. pag.472

§. X.
Of Strangers, and forreigne Religions in China. pag.475

THE FIFT BOOKE.

Of the East Indies, and of the Seas and Ilands about Asia, with their Religions.

CHAP. I.
OF India *in generall, and of the ancient Rites there obserued.* pag.477

§. I.
The limits, and the ancient people and inuasions of India. §. II. ibid.

Of their Philosophicall or Religious Sects, §. III. (pag.478

Many doubtfull and fabulous reports of the Indians. CHAP. II. pag.481

OF *later* Indian *Discouries, and an Apologie for the* English *Trade in the* East Indies. §. I. pag.483

Of the Portugals *and* Dutch. ibid.

§. II.
Of the English *Trade there; many Arguments in defence of it.* pag.484

§. III.
Answers to obiections made against the Indian *Trade and Society, with other Arguments for it.* §. IIII. pag.486

The conclusion with commendation of the Mariner, &c. pag.487

CHAP. III.
OF *the* Indian *Prouinces next adioyning to* China. §. I. pag.488

Of Cauchin, China, Camboya *and the* Laos. §. II. (ibid.

Of the Kingdome of Siam. pag.490

§. III.
Of the Kingdome of Malacca. pag.493

§. IIII.
Of Patane *and the neighbouring petty Kingdomes.* CHAP. IIII. pag.495

OF *the Kingdome of* Pegu, *or* Brama, *and the subiect and neighbouring Kingdomes.* §. I. (pag.498

Of the greatnesse of the King of Pegu. ibid.

§. II.
Of the destruction & desolation of Pegu, p.500

§. III.
Of the Peguan *Rites and Customes.* p.502

CHAP. V.
OF *the Religion in* Pegu, *and the Countries sometime subiect thereto.* pag.505

CHAP. VI.
OF Bengala, *and the parts adioyning: and of the holy Riuer* Ganges. pag.508

§. I.
Of Bengala. ibid.

§. II.
Of Ganges *and the Superstitions there obserued.* §. III. pag.509

Of Patane, Couche, Orixa, Botanter, Candecan. §. IIII. pag.511

Of Arracan *and the Warres betwixt them and the* Portugals. pag.512

CHAP. VII.
OF *the Great* Mogor, *or* Mogol. pag.515

§. I.
Of the Mogors *Countries; and of* Melabdim Echebar. ibid.

§. II.

§. II.
Of the Conquests and death of Echebar, *and of his Sonne and Successor* Selim, *now reignening.* pag.517
§. III.
The Relations of Captaine Hawkins *Embassadour there.* pag.520
§. IIII.
Of the setling of the English Trade in these parts, and of the two Sea-fights betwixt ours and the Portugals. pag.524
§. V.
Of the trauels of diuers Englishmen *in the* Mogols *Dominions.* pag.529
§. VI.
Of the Rasboots, *and other people subiect to the* Mogol, *and of their Countries, Religion, and Rites.* pag.534

CHAP. VIII.

OF Cambaya, Decan, *and the neighbouring Nations.* pag.536
§. I.
Of the Cambayans. ibid.
§. II.
Of the Kingdomes of Decan. pag.539
§. III.
Of the Banian *and* Cambayan *Superstitions.* pag.540

CHAP. IX.

OF the Indian *Nations betwixt* Cambaya *and* Malabar; *& their Religions.* pag.542
§. I.
Of the seasons of the yeere: and of the parts next to Cambaya. ibid.
§. II.
Of Goa, *the Heathens and Christians liuing therein, and the Countrey about.* pag.544
§. III.
Of the Indian Bramenes *both Secular and Religious.* pag.547

CHAP. X.

OF the Regions and Religions of Malabar, pag.549
§. I.
Of the Kingdome of Calicut. ibid.
§. II.
Of the King of Calicut. pag.551
§. III.
Of their differing Sects. pag.553

CHAP. XI.

OF the Kingdome of Narsinga *and* Bisnagar. pag.555
§. I.
Of their Funerall and Idolatrous bloudie Rites. ibid.
§. II.
Of the Kings and Bramenes *in this Kingdome.* pag.558
§. III.
Of many other strange Rites: and of Saint Thomee. pag.560

CHAP. XII.

OF the Creatures, Plants, Fruits, and Drugs *in* India. pag.563
§. I.
Of their Beasts and liuing Creatures. ibid.
§. II.
Of the Indian Trees, Fruits, and strange Plants. pag.566
§. III.
Of Spices and Drugs pag.569

CHAP. XIII.

A Generall Discourse of the Sea, and of the Seas in and about Asia. pag.571
§. I.
Of the true place, forme, greatnesse and depth of the Sea. ibid.
§. II.
Of the Saltnesse and Motions of the Sea. pag.573
§. III.
Of the originall of Fountaines, and other commodities of the Sea. pag.574
§. IIII.
Of the varieties of Seas, and of the Caspian *and* Euxine. pag.575

CHAP. XIIII.

A Briefe survey of the Ilands adioyning to Asia: *also, some fancies of the Sabbaticall Riuer, and inclosed Iewes.* pag.577
§. I.
The Ilands from Iapan *to the* Persian *Gulfe.* ibid.
§. II.
The Persian *Gulfe, and of the passage downe* Euphrates *thither, the Sabbaticall streame, and inclosed Iewes.* pag.579
§. III.
Of the Red Sea, Sir H. Middletons *taking, and of* Rhodes *and* Cyprus. pag.582

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

A larger relation of some principall Ilands of Asia, and first of the Ilands of Iapon. pag. 586

§. I.

A Preface touching the Iesuites, and a description of Iapan, with some of their strange customes. ibid.

§. II.

The Voyages of some English to Iapan, and their abode there. pag. 588

§. III.

Of the gouernment and courage of the Iaponians. pag. 590

§. IIII.

Of their Sects and Bonzian Colledges. p. 593

§. V.

Of their Feasts, their bloudie Pilgrimages and Confessions. pag. 595

§. VI.

Of their Idols, Temples, Funerals. pag. 597

§. VII.

Of the strange Earthquakes and Tempests in Iapon, with some other obseruations. pag. 599

CHAP. XVI.

OF the Philippina's. pag. 602

§. I.

Of the Spanish Ilands, & others adioyning. ib.

§. II.

Of the Moluccos, Banda, Amboyna, and Selebes. pag. 604

§. III.

Of the Ianus, & other adioyning Ilands. p. 609

CHAP. XVII.

OF Samatra and Zeilan. pag. 612

§. I.

Of Samatra. ibid.

§. II.

Of Zeilan. pag. 616

§. III.

The conclusion of this Asian Pilgrimage. pag. 618

AFRICA.

THE SIXT BOOKE.

Of Ægypt, Barbary, Numidia, Libya, and the Land of Negro's; and of their Religions.

CHAP. I.

OF Africa and the Creatures therein. pag. 619

§. I.

Of the Name and Limits of Africa. ibid.

§. II.

Of the Beasts, wild and tame. pag. 621

§. III.

Of Crocodiles, Serpents, and other strange Creatures. pag. 623

CHAP. II.

OF Ægypt and the famous Riuer Nilus: and first Kings, Temples, and Monuments, according to Herodotus, Diodorus, and others. pag. 626

§. I.

The names of Ægypt, and of the Riuer Nilus. ibid.

§. II.

The diuision of Ægypt, and the great workes of their ancient Pharaos. pag. 630

CHAP. III.

OF the Ægyptian Idols, with their Legendary Histories and Mysteries. pag. 635

§. I.

Of Osiris and Isis, their Legends of the Creation, &c. ibid.

§. II.

The causes of consecrating their Beasts, and the mystical senses of their Superstitions. p. 636

§. III.

Of Hermes Trismegistus. pag. 637

CHAP. IIII.

OF the Rites, Priests, Sects, Sacrifices, Feasts, Inuentions, and other obseruations of the Ægyptians. pag. 638

§. I.

Of their Apis and other Beasts, Serpents and other Creatures worshipped. ibid.

§. II.

Of their Sacrifices, their Iewish Rites, and of their Priests. pag. 641

§. III.

Of their Feasts and Oracles. pag. 643

§. IIII.

Of the inuentions and disposition of the Ægyptians. pag. 644

CHAP. V.

OF the manifold alterations of State & Religion in Ægypt by the Persians, Grecians, Romans, Christians, Saracens, & Turks. p. 647

§. I.

§. I.
Of the Persians *and* Grecians *acts in* Ægypt, *and the famous Vniuersity and Library at* Alexandria. ibid.
§. II.
Of the Schoole and Library at Alexandria. pag.648
§. III.
Of their Deuotions in these Times. p.650
§. IIII.
Of the moderne Ægyptians, *of* Cairo *and* Alexandria, pag.652
§. V.
Of the Saracens, *their Acts and Sects: of the* Mamalukes *and* Cophties. pag.657
CHAP. VI.
THE Ægyptian *Chronologie, out of* Manetho *High Priest of the* Ægyptians, *and others.* pag.660
CHAP. VII.
OF *the Oracle of* Iupiter Ammon; *and of* Cyrene: *and diuers peoples adioyning, mentioned by the Ancients.* pag.665
CHAP. VIII.
OF *that part of* Barbary, *now called the Kingdome of* Tünis *and* Tripolis. p.668
§. I.
The name Barbary: *the Kingdome of* Tunis, *and Antiquities of* Carthage. ibid.
§. II.
Of Cairaoan, *and the Kingdome of* Tripolis. pag.673
CHAP. IX.
OF *the Kingdome of* Tremisen, Algier, *and other places, anciently called* Mauritania Cæsariensis. pag.675
§. I.
Of Tremisen, *and of the ancient* Maurusij.
§. II. ibid.
Of Barbaruffa; *of* Algier *and the parts adioyning.* pag.676
CHAP. X.
OF *the Kingdome of* Fez, *part of* Mauritania Tingitana. pag.679
§. I.
Of the Poetical and Historicall Antiquities, and part of Temesna. ibid.
§. II.
Of the Citie Fez, *as it was in* Leo's *dayes, and the customes of the Inhabitants.* pag.682
§. III.
Of their Diuiners and Sects, and other parts of the Fezan *Territorie.* pag.686
§. IIII.
Of the fiue other Prouinces of this Kingdome, and some later obseruations. pag.688
CHAP. XI.
OF *the Kingdome of* Marocco, *with a discourse of the Kings thereof, and of the* Seriffe, Xarif, *or* Iarif, *and his posterity now reigning in* Barbary. pag.690
§. I.
Of the Kingdome, Kings, and City of Marocco. ibid.
§. II.
Of the Kings of the Seriffian *Family.* p.695
§. III.
Of the ciuill Wars in Barbary, *and of some other parts of that Kingdome.* pag.697
CHAP. XII.
OF *the* Arabians *populations, and depopulations in* Afrike, *and of the Naturall* Africans; *and of the beginnings and proceedings of the* Mahumetan *Superstition in* Africa: *of the* Portugals *Forces and Exploits therein.* pag.701
CHAP. XIII.
OF Biledulgerid *and* Sarra, *otherwise called* Numidia *and* Libya. pag.706
CHAP. XIIII.
OF *the Land of* Negros. pag.709
§. I.
Of the Riuer Niger, Gualata, Senaga, *and* Guinea. ibid.
§. II.
Obseruations of those parts out of Cadamosta, *and other ancient Nauigators.* pag.712
§. III.
Other obseruations of later Times by Englishmen *and others.* pag.715
§. IIII.
Of the Marriages Manners, Religion, Funerals, Gouernment, and other Rites of the Guineans, *collected out of a late* Dutch *Author.* pag.717
§. V.
Obseruations of the Coast and Inland Countries, out of Barrerius *and* Leo, *and of the cause of the* Negroes *blacknesse.* pag.722

THE

THE SEVENTH BOOKE.

Of Æthiopia, and the African Ilands: and of their RELIGIONS.

CHAP. I.

OF Æthiopia Superior, *and the Antiquities thereof.* pag.725

§. I.

Of the name and diuision of Æthiopia. ibid.

§. II.

Of the Nations neere the falls of Nilus, *and of* Meroe. pag.727

CHAP. II.

A *Continuation of the* Æthiopian *Antiquities, and of the Queene of* Saba. p.730

CHAP. III.

OF Prebyter Iohn: *and of the* Priest-Johns *in* Asia: *whether that descended of these.* pag.734

CHAP. IIII.

RElations *of the* Æthiopian *Empire, collected out of* Aluares, Bermudesius, *and other Authors.* pag 738

CHAP. V.

RElations *of* Æthiopian *rarities, collected out of Frier* Luys *a* Spanish *Authour.* pag.743

§. I.

Of the Hill Amara. ibid.

§. II.

His liberall reports of the Library, and incredible Treasures therein. pag.744

§. III.

Of the Princes of the bloud there kept, and of the Election of the Emperour. pag.745

§. IIII.

Of their Schooles and Cities. pag.747

CHAP. VI.

RElations *of* Æthiopia *by* Godignus, *and other Authors lately published, seeming more credible.* pag.749

§. I.

The seuerall Countries of Abassia, *their Situation, Inhabitants, Riuers, and Lakes.* ibid.

§. II.

Of the Soile, Fruits, Creatures, Seasons and Climate. pag.750

§. III.

Of their Customes in Priuate Life and Publike Gouernment, and their late Miseries, pag.751

§. IIII.

Of the Sabæans, *and their Queene which visited* Salomon. pag.753

CHAP. VII.

O*f other Countries betweene the* Red Sea *and* Benomotapa. pag.754

§. I.

Of Adel, Adea, Zanzibar & Melinde, ibid.

§. II.

The Portugals *Exploits in* Mombaza, *and of the* Imbij. pag.755

§. III.

Of Quiloa, Sofala, *and* Ophir. pag.756

§. IIII.

Of Monoemugi, *the* Moores, Baduines, Caphars, *in these parts.* pag.757

CHAP. VIII.

OF Benomotapa, *and the parts adioyning.* pag.759

§. I.

Of the Empire of Monomotapa. ibid.

§. II.

Of Caphraria, *the* Cape of Good Hope, *and* Soldania. pag.761

CHAP. IX.

O*F the Kingdome of* Congo, *and the other Kingdoms and Nations adioyning.* p.765

§. I.

Of Angola. ibid.

§. II.

Of Congo. pag.766

§. III.

Of their Heathenish Rites: also of their strange Trees, and of the Ile Loanda. pag.768

CHAP. X.

OF Loango, *the* Anzichi, Giachi, *and the great Lakes in those parts of the World.* pag.770

§. I.

Of Loango. ibid.

§. II.

Of the Anzigues. pag.772

§. III.

Of the Giacchi *or* Jagges. ibid.

§. IIII.

Of the Lakes and Riuers in these parts of Africa. pag.773

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

OF *the Seas and Ilands about* Africa: *the ancient and moderne obseruations, Nauigations and Discoueries.* pag.775

§. I.

Of the Red Sea, and why it is so called. ibid.

§. II.

Of the chiefe Townes and Ilands in the Red Sea. pag.777

§. III.

Of Socotora, Madagascar, *and other Ilands on the Easterne Coast of* Africa. pag.778

CHAP. XII.

OF *the Ilands of* Africa, *from the Cape hitherwards.* pag.781

§. I.

Of Saint Helena, Thomee, Cape de Verd, *and diuers others betwixt them, and of the Weeds and Calmes of those Seas.* ibid.

§. II.

Of the Canaries, Madera, *and* Porto Santo, pag.783

§. III.

Extracts taken out of the obseruations of the Right Worshipfull Sir Edmund Scory *Knight, of the Pike of* Tenariffe, *and other Rarities which he obserued there.* pag.784

§. IIII.

Of Malta, *and the Nauigations about* Africa. pag.788

AMERICA.

THE EIGHTH BOOKE.

Of New France, Virginia, Florida, New Spaine, *with other Regions of* America Mexicana; and of their Religions.

CHAP. I.

OF *the* New World, *and why it is named* America: *and the* West Indies: *with certaine generall Discourses of the Heauens, Ayre, Water, and Earth in those parts.* pag.791

§. I.

Of the names giuen to this part of the World, and diuers opinions of the Ancients concerning the Torrid Zone. ibid.

§. II.

Of the nature of Metals in generall; of Gold, Siluer, Quicksiluer; and the plentie and Mines thereof in America. pag.795

CHAP. II.

OF *the first Knowledge, Habitation, and Discoueries of the New World, and the rare Creatures therein found; Beasts, Birds, Trees, Herbs, and Seeds.* pag.798

§. I.

Whether the Ancients had any knowledge of America, *and whence the Inhabitants first came.* ibid.

§. II.

Of Christopher Colon, *or* Columbus, *his first Discouerie, and three other Voyages,* pag.801

§. III.

Of the Beasts, Fowles, and Plants in America. pag.804

CHAP. III.

OF *the Discoueries of the North parts of the* New World, *and toward the Pole, and of* Greene Land, *or* New Land, Groen-Land, Estotiland, Meta incognita, *and other places vnto* New France. pag 807

§. I.

Of the Discoueries made long since by Nicolo *and* Antonio Zeni. ibid.

§. II.

Discoueries made by Sebastian Cabot, Cortregalis, Gomes, *with some notes of* Groenland. pag.809

§. III.

Discoueries by Sir Martin Frobisher. pag 811

§. IIII.
Diſcoueries by Iohn Dauis, George Weymouth, *and* Iames Hall *to the North-weſt*, pag.813

§. V.
Of King Iames *his* New-land, *alias* Greene-land: *and of the Whale and Whale-fiſhing*. pag.814

§. VI.
Of Hudſons *Diſcoueries and death*. pag.817

§. VII.
of Buttons *and* Baffins *late Diſcoueries*. pag.819

Chap. IIII.

Of New-found-land, Noua Francia, Arambec, *and other Countries of* America, *extending to* Virginia. pag.821

§. I.
Engliſh *Diſcoueries and Plantations in* New-found-land. ibid.

§. II.
The Voyages and obſeruations of Iaques Cartier *in* Noua Francia. pag.823

§. III.
Late Plantations of New France, *and Relations of the Natiues*. pag.825

Chap. V.

Of Virginia. pag.828

§. I.
The Preface. Sir Walter Raleighs *Plantation, and the Northerne Colome*. ibid.

§. II.
Of the Southerne Plantation and Colonies; and many cauſes alleaged of the ill ſucceſſe thereof at the firſt. pag.831

§. III.
Of the Soyle, People, Beaſts, Commodities, and other obſeruations of Virginia. pag.834

§. IIII.
Of the preſent eſtate of Virginia, *and the* Engliſh *there reſiding*. pag 836

Chap. VI.

Of *the Religion and Rites of the* Virginians. pag.838

§. I.
Of the Virginian *Rites related by Maſter* Hariot. pag.ibid.

§. II.
Obſeruations of their Rites by Captaine Smith *and others*. pag.839

§. III.
Of the Saſqueſahanockes, *with other, and later obſeruations of the* Virginian *Rites*. pag. 842

Chap. VII.

Of Florida. pag.845

§. I.
Of the Acts of the Spaniſh *and* French *in* Florida: *and of the Soyle and Cities*. ibid.

§. II.
Of their Cuſtomes, Manners, and Superſtitions. pag.847

§. III.
Of the more Inland parts of Florida, *diſcouered by* Nuncz. pag.849

§. IIII.
Other obſeruations of Florida. pag.851

Chap. VIII.

Of *the Countrey ſituate Weſtward from* Florida *and* Virginia *towardes the South Sea*. pag.853

§. I.
Of Cibola, Tigues, Quiuira, *and* Noua-Albion. ibid.

§. II.
Of New Mexico, *and* Cinaloa. pag.855

§. III.
The Diſcoueries of Vlloa, *and* Alarchon, *on the Coaſts of the South Sea*. pag.856

Chap. IX.

Of New Spaine, *and the Conqueſt thereof by* Hernando Cortes. pag.858

§. I.
of the firſt Diſcouery by Cortes *and others*. ibid.

§. II.
Cortes *his expedition to* Mexico, *and entertainment by* Mutezuma. pag.860

§. III.
The Conqueſt of Mexico. pag.862

Chap. X.

Of *the ancient Inhabitants of* New Spain, *and the Hiſtorie of their Kings*. pag.864

§. I.
The Mexican Exodus *and firſt founding*. ibid.

§. II.
The Hiſtorie of eight of their firſt Kings. pag.865

§. III.

§. III.
Of Motezuma, *and other Rarities of the* Mexican *Story.* pag.867

CHAP. XI.
OF the Idols, and Idolatrous Sacrifices of New Spaine. pag.869

§. I.
Of their Gods. ibid.

§. II.
Of their Sacrifices of Men. pag.871

CHAP. XII.
OF the Religious Places and Persons in New Spaine: *wherein is also handled their Penance, Marriages, Burials, and other Rites performed by their Priests.* pag.873

§. I.
Of their Temples. ibid.

§. II.
Of their Nunnes, Fryers, and other Votarits. pag.874

§. III.
Of their Priests, and the many Rites belonging to their Function. pag.876

CHAP. XIII.
OF the supputation of Times, Festiuall Solemnities, Colledges, Schooles, Letters, Opinions, and other remarkable things in New Spaine. pag.879

§. I.
Their Kalender and Conceits of Time, and some of their Feasts. ibid.

§. II.
Their Feast of Transubstantiation, Lent, bloudy Processions, and other holy Times. p.880

§. III.
Of their Schooles, Letters, and other their opinions. pag.883

CHAP. XIIII.
OF other places betwixt New Spaine, *and the Straits of* Darien. pag.885

§. I.
Of Iucatan, Acusamil, Guatimala, *and* Hondura. ibid.

§. II.
Of Nicaragua, *their Plentie, and exceeding Superstition.* pag.887

§. III.
Of the strange Creatures in these parts; of Nombre de Dios; *and the* Spanish *miseries at their first Plantation.* pag.888

THE NINTH BOOKE.

Of Cumana, Guiana, Brasil, Chica, Chili, Peru, and other Regions of America, Peruuiana, and of their RELIGIONS.

CHAP. I.
OF the Southerne America, *and of the Countries on the Sea Coast betwixt* Darien *and* Cumana pag.891

§. I.
Of the great Riuers in these parts, and of Darien. ibid.

§. II.
Of Vraba Carthagena, *and the Superstitions of* Dabaiba. pag.893

§. III.
Of Tunia, *Saint* Martha, Venezuela, *and* Curiana. pag.894

CHAP. II.
OF Cumana *and* Paria. pag.896

§. I.
Of the people and strange Creatures in Cumana. ibid.

§. II.
Of their Vices and Superstitions. pag.897

§. III.
Of Trinidado *and* Paria. pag.899

CHAP. III.
OF Guiana, *and the neighbouring Nations on the Coast, and within the Land.* p.900

§. I.
Discourse of Guiana *by Sir* Walter Raleigh. ibid.

§. II.
Relations and Discoueries thereof by other Englishmen. pag.901

§. III.
Relations of these and the adioyning Countries by the Spaniards. pag.904

CHAP. IIII.

OF Brasill pag.906

§. I.

The Discourie and Relations thereof by Maffæus, *&c.* ibid.

§. II.

More full Relations by Sradius, Lerius, *and* Peter Carder. pag.907

§. III.

Most ample Relations of the Brasilian *Nations, and Customes by Master* Anthony Kniuet. pag.909

§. IIII.

Of the strange Creatures in Brasill, p. 912

CHAP. V.

OF *the Customes and Rites of the* Brasilians. pag.914

§. I.

Of their Warres and Man-eating, and of the Deuils torturing them. ibid.

§. II.

Of their Priests or Magicians. pag.915

§. III.

Of other their Rites, and a new Mungrell Sect amongst them. pag.917

CHAP. VI.

OF *the Countries from the Riuer of* Plate *to the* Magellan *Straits.* pag.920

§. I.

The Nations inhabiting neere the Riuer. ibid.

§. II.

Of Giants, and other Nations neere the Straits. pag. 922

§. III.

Of the Magellan *Straits.* pag.923

CHAP. VII.

OF Terra Australis *and* Chili. pag.924

CHAP. VIII.

OF *the Conquest of* Peru *by the* Spaniards, *and of their* Ingua's *or Emperours*, p.927

§. I.

Of Pizarro, *his Discourie, and taking the King of* Peru. ibid.

§. II.

The huge Treasure taken by the Spaniards. pag.930

§. III.

The Kings of Peru, *their originall, proceedings, and Treasures.* pag.931

CHAP. IX.

OF *the Countrey of* Peru, *Naturall, Oeconomicall, and Politicall Observations.* pag.933

§. I.

Of the Scite, Windes, Hils, Plaines, Lakes, Raines, Seasons. ibid.

§. II.

Of the first Inhabitants, their Quippos, Artes, Mariages. pag.934

§. III.

The Regall Rites, Rights, Works, and of Ruminagui *and* Aluarado. pag.936

CHAP. X.

OF *the many Gods of* Peru, *their opinions of the Creation, Flood, and end of the World.* pag.938

§. I.

Of their Gods. ibid.

CHAP. XI.

OF *the Religious Persons, and Places, Confessions, and Sacrifices in* Peru. pag.940

§. I.

Of their Priests, Oracles and Temples. ibid.

§. II.

Of their Nunnes, Sorcerers, Confessions, and Penances. pag.942

§. III.

Of their Sacrifices. pag.944

CHAP. XII.

OF *their Fasts, Sepulchres, and other* Peruuian *Superstitions.* pag.945

§. I.

Of the Kalender and Holy dayes. ibid.

§. II.

Of the Funerals in Peru, *and the places adioyning, and somewhat of the present estate of those parts.* pag.948

§. III.

Observations of American *Rites out of* Hieronymo Roman. pag.949

CHAP. XIII.

OF *the Seas and Ilands adioyning to* America. pag.950

§. I.

Of the Ladrones, Margarita *and* Cubagua, *and the Seas betwixt them.* ibid.

§. II.

Of the Canibal-*Ilands, the Whale, Thresher, Sworafish, Sharke, and other Fishes, and observations of those Seas.* pag.952

§. III.

§. III.
Of Boriquen, Iamaica, Cuba, *and the* Lucayæ. pag.954

CHAP. XIIII.
OF Hispaniola: *and a touch homewards at* Bermuda. pag.955

§. I.
The names, naturall rarities, and creatures thereof. ibid.

§. II.
Of their Idols, Songs and Dances, Priests, Oraclets, superstitious opinions and customes.

§. III. pag.957
Of the Bermudas, *or* Sommers Ilands. pag.960

CHAP. XV.
OF *the Spanish cruelties in the* West Indies: *and of their peruerse conuersion of the* Indians *vnto Christianitie.* pag.962

EXtracts *out of Sir* Ierome Horseys *Obseruations in seuenteene yeeres trauels and experience in* Russia, *and other Countries adioyning.* pag.973

RElations *of the Kingdome of* Golchonda, *and other neighbouring Nations within the Gulfe of* Bengala Arreccan, Pegu, Tannassery, *&c.* pag.993

THE CATALOGVE OF THE AVTHORS.

I Haue heere mustered in thy view, Courteous Reader, those Authors which from mine owne sight, I haue mentioned in this Work. Some of them, I confesse are of no great note, and some are noted for notorious Counterfeits: but all are of some vse, and meete to bee heere placed, that they may haue their due: Some of thankfulnesse for their worthy and great industry (wherein those deserue a place, though otherwise obscure, who by their Naugations and Discoueries haue made the World knowne to it selfe) Others, that they may be knowne to be lyes and meere Changelings. In this, and all kinds, Sacred, Profane, Learned, Vnlearned, Ancient, Moderne, Good, and Bad; I haue toyled my selfe to benefit thee. Many more might be added, which are cited in this Worke. But because I haue borrowed them on others credit, and not seene them my selfe (and Many for other causes) I haue not here mentioned them The Letter F. signifies that wee haue a Fragment of the said Authour, and Pf. brands him for a Counterfeit. The Sacred Authours, or Scribes rather, to the Holy Ghost, are Transcendents, and quite beyond this Predicament. We haue also omitted the Apocrypha: *besides those which haue escaped vs in the Collection.*

A

Archb. Abbot
Doct. Abbot
Abdias, pf.
Christ. Adrichomius.
R. Abraham Leuita
Ado Viennensis
Abr. Iudæus.
Clement Adams
Theod. Abucara
Ælianus
Æthicus
Æsopus
Æneas Gazeus
Abidenus, f.
Æthiopike Lyturgie
Agathias
A. Gellius
Alhacem Arabs
Alcuinus
Alcoran
P. Æmilius
Ambrosius
Iac. Anton.
Agatharchides, f.
Iacob. Andreas
Dan. Angelocrator
Raimund de Agiles
Iul. African. excerpta.
Alphonsus à Carthagena
Sir William Alexander
Iacub Bensidi Aali, f.
Alex. ab Alexandro
Alex. Polyhistor, f.
Adrianus Romanus
Pet. Alcazeua
Ioseph } Acosta.
Christophorus } Acosta.
Emanuel } Acosta.
L. Almeida
Alex. Aphrodiseus
Alexand 6. Bulla
Phil. Amadas
Baptista Antonio
Io. Alphonse.
Fer. Alarchon
Albumasar
Alcabitius
Alfraganus
Albertus Mag.
Apollonius
F. Aluarez

C. Agrippa.

C. Agrippa
Angiolello
Alfredus
Pedro de Alfaro
Petrus Apianus
Barthol. Amantius
A. Ariuabene
Bernardo Aldrete
Petrus Alexandrinus
Arabs Nobilis
Appianus
Apuleius
Albricus
Apollodorus
Annius
Aristoteles
Arrianus Nicomed.
Arriani Perip.
Athenagoras
P. Aluarez
Albertus Aquensis
Athenæus
Aratus
Aretius
Felice Astolphi
Arnobius
Augustinus
Aristophanes
Ausonius
Auentinus
F. Auienus
Asser Menteuensis
Artemidorus Ephes, f.
G. Arthus Dantisc.
Athanasius
T. Aquinas
Ant. Arnauld
Aristides, f.
Aristæus, ps.
Auicenna

B

B Asilius
Caspar Bartholinus
Hermolaus
Hermolaus Barbarus
Ioannes Balakus
Caspar Bauhinus
Beda
T. Beza
I. Barros
Baldricus
C. Baronius
Bellarminus
Mar. Barletius.
Du Bartas
Fran. Balduinus
Iosafa Barbaro
Gas. Balby
Daniel Baker.
Martinus a Baumgarten
Hist. of Barbarie
Newes from Barbarie
Baltasar Barrerius
Berosus, f.
Berosus, ps.
Description of Benin
Ph. Beroaldus
Descript. of Bermudas
Mat. Beroaldus
I. Bale
Ioannes Barretus.
P. Bellonius
G. Bess.
Cornelius Betramus
P. Bertius
Odoardo Barbosa
Compagno di Barbosa
L. Bayerfinckus
Ed. } Barker.
An. }
R. Beniamin Tudelensis.
I. Bermudesius
Hier. Benzo
Vin. Beluacensis
Bardesanes Syrus, f.
Bernardus
T. Bibliander
T. Blundeuile
I. Bodinus
Sir T. Basketuile
Biddulph
P. Bizarus
Arias Blandonius
Ia. Boissardus
Boskhierus
Dithmar Bleskens
D. Bound
H. Buntingus
Brocardus
I. Boemus
G. Botero Benese
George Braun
B. Breidenbachius
Tycho Brahe
John Boccace
B. Brisson
Benedetto Bordone
Guil. Brussius
Edward Brerewood
John Brerely
Mar. Bronionius
Theodorus } de Bry.
Ioannes }
Israel }
Boetius
Stephen Burrough
Christopher Burrough
Herman. de Bree
Steph. de Brito
And. Boues
A. Busbequius
H. Broughton
Bucanus
Gu. Budæus
Burgensis
Wenceslaus Budouitz
T. Brightmannus
Mat. Burgklehnerus
Burdorfius
Bullingerus
Io. Brereton
Archang. Burgonouensis.

C

M T. Cicero
C. I. Cæsar.
L. Carretus
I. Caluinus.
Cardanus
G. Camdenus
Otho Casmannus
Victor de Carben
Chrysostomus
Ioannes Caius
Seth. Caluisius
Is. Casaubonus
D. Carleton
Io. Cantacuzenus
Ioac. Camerarius
Simon Cabasilas
Ph. Camerarius
Franc. Cabralis
Dionys. Carthusianus
Cato Annij, ps.
Valent. Caruaglio
Eman. Caruaglius
Mat. Cameriota.
I. Cassianus.
Vincenzo Cartari

Ca-

Canar. Insul. descrip.
Iaques Cartier
Rich. Carre
Chr. Carlile
Cælius Calcagnius
G. Chaucer.
Lop. Castaneda
Catholike Traditions
Cartwrights Trau.
Charion Chron.
Iul. Capitolinus
T. Cauendish Nauig.
Melch. Canus
Laon. Chalcondyles
Centuriæ Magdeb.
Cedrenus
Chronicle of the Bible
Circumference of the earth
Gulielmus Ghoul
Petrus Ciacconius
Samuel Champlein
Seb. Castalion
Castaldo
Leon. Chicensis
Catullus
Claudianus
Clemens Alexand.
D. Chytræus
Ceremoniæ sacræ R. E.
Nar. Comes
Nic. di Conti
Comito Venetiano
Codomannus
Card. Contareno
Ambrosio Contarini
Contugo Contughi
Gil. Cognatus
Ferdinandus Cortesius
Cæl. S. Curio
Cornel. de Iudæis
Car. Clusius
Christoph. Clauius
Nic. Copernicus
Q. Curtius
Constantinus Porphyrogenitus
Io. Copley
Rich. Cheiny
Iaco. Cheyneius
Ctesias, f.
Melch. Cotignius
Hen. Cuyckius
Bar. de las Casas
Vrb. Calueto

Chronic. Saracen.
Chronic. Græc.
Al. Cadamosto
Hermanus Contractus
R. Chanceller
And. Corsali
R. Couerte
R. Clark
Gaspar de Cruz
Alan. Copus
Vasq. de Coronado
P. Cieza
Cyprianus
Nic. Challusius
Christoph. Columbus
Comestor
Oswaldus Crollius
Costerus
Th. Coryat
Ed. Cliffe
I. Chilton
L. Coruinus
Nonius Cugna.
N. Cusanus
Mart. Crusius.

D

DAmascius, f.
Diodorus Siculus
Ant. Dalmeida
Dauidis Æth. lit.
N. Damascenus, f.
Io. Dauis
Lamb. Danæus
Dicæarchus
Diogenes Laertius
Dion Nicæus
Dion Cassius
Dares Phrygius, ps.
Dictys Cret. ps.
D. Downam
Drusius
Dionys. Afer
Dionys. Halicarnassens
Dorotheus
Nic. Doglioni
Durandus
Durantus
Dutch Historie
Mat. Dresserus
Dionys. Areopag. ps.
Hermannus Dalmata
Wol. Dreschlerus

Sir Fr. Drake Nau.
Draudius
G. Ducket
Ianus Dousa
Dorbel
Georg. Dousa
P. Diaconus
Claude Duret.
Dutch Discourses, Nauigations, &c.

E

GAspar Ens
Paulus Eberus
R. Eden
Echeb. R. Mog. lit.
Elias Cretensis
Epiphanius
Eldad Danius
Enoch ps. f.
Emanuel. R. lit.
Baptista Egnatius
Arthur Edwards
Tho. Ellis
Ennius f.
Thomas Erpenius
Ephes. Concil.
Io. Etrobius
Erasmus
Bern. Escalanta
Euagrius
Nic. Euboicus
Euripides
Giouanni da Empoli
Eupolemus, f.
Eustathius
I. Euesham
Eusebius
Estates du Monde
I. Eldred
Th. Erastus
Eugenius Ep. Sinai.

F

P. Fagius
Marcilius Ficinus
Io. Forsterus.
Fortalitium fidei
Iac. Fontanus
Io. Fox
Georgius Fabritius
Ralfe Fitch

L. Florus

L. Florus
Phil. Ferdinandus
Iulius Firmicus
D. Fletcher
Vbertus Folietta
Garcia S. Figueroa
Sebast. Foxius
Lud. Fernandes
L. Feneſtella
Io. Fileſacus
Rob. Fabian
Damiano Fonſeca
Deſcript. of Florida
Minutius Fœlix
Sebaſt. Ferdinandus
Fran. Fernandes
Ioannes Fernandes
G. Fenner
Florentius Wigorn.
Hieron. a S. Fide
Ab. France
Noua Francia
H. Fracaſtorius
Lud. Frois
Cæſ. Frederike
Gemma Friſius
Froiſſart
Martin Fumee
Fulgentius
I. Funccius
D. Fulk
Fulcherius Carnotenſis
Nic. Fullerus.

G

GAlileus Galilæus
Theod. Gaza
Iuan Gaetan
Balt. Gagus
Franc. Gaſpar
Pet. Gallatinus
Galenus
Gauterus
Vaſco de Gama
Genebrard
Greg. Niſſenus
Gregor. Magnus
Gregor. Nazianzenus
Conrad. Geſnerus
I. Gerardus
Gennadius Patr.
Sir R. Greenuile Nau.
D. Gourgues
Cornelius Gerardi
Heſſelius Gerardus
Ant. Gueuara
Geſta Francorum
Geſta Peregrinorum
Sir H. Gilbert
Gloſſa ordinaria
Dam. a Goes
D. Gilbert
Geographus Nubienſis
St. Gerlach
Stephanus Gomes
Petrus Gomes
Ant. Geufræus
Ant. Galuano
A. Guagninus
Gaudentius Brix
Bened. Goes
Io. Goropius B.
Hen. Glareanus
Lud. Georgius
Gramaye
Gratianus
R. Greenham
F. Guicciardin
B. Georgiouitz.
P. Gyllius
Grafton. Chron.
Nicolaus Godignus
Hubertus Goltzius
Lopes de Gomara
Nic. Gibbins
Fra. de Gualle
Lil. Gyraldus
Gregentius
Hieronymo Giraua
Petrus Guerra
Aloiſius Goueanus
I. Gruterus
Deſcription of Guinea
Nunno di Guzman
Guibertus.

H

RHakluyt
Hali
Reg. Hamet lit.
Steph. ab Hagen
Hals Chron.
Hobert Harcourt
D. Hall
Haiton Armen
Th. Harriot
Ed. Haies
Ralph Hamor
Sir Iohn Hawkins Nau.
Hen. Hawks
I. Hart
Antonio Herrera
Martin de Herrada
N. Hemingius
Hegeſippus, f.
Hegeſippus, pſ.
Herodianus
Godf. Heidfeldius
Heroldus
Io. Heſronita
Heſiodus
Heliodorus
Hieremias Pat. Conſt.
Chriſtoph. Hall
Hiſt. Eccleſ. Conſtant.
Holland. Nauig.
Sir Ch. Heydon
Io. Hermannus
Helladius, f.
Hirtius
Iob Hortop
Herodotus
Gent. Heruetus
Helenę Æthiop. lit.
Otho Heurnius
Honterus
Thomas Hill
Nic. Honiger.
Himerius, f.
Horapollo
Sig. Herberſtein
Ed. Hogan
Fra. Hogenbergius
R. Houeden
Io. Hondius
Hoſpinianus
D. Harding
Horatius
Homer
R. Hooker
Hieronimus
Hugo de S. Victore
A. Hyperius
Iulius Higinus
Garcias ab Horto
Rob. Hues

I

IAcobus Rex
Th. James
Iohn James

Io. Iane
A. Ianſonius
Iamblicus
Iapon Epiſt. 1606. 1607. &c.
Pierre du Iartic
Ignatius
Ignatij Conclaue
Ioſ. Gorionides pſ.
Thomas a Ieſu
Iornandes
Emanuel Ieſſeria
Arngrim Ionas
Ioſephus
R. Ioſeph Caſtil
Paulus Iouius
Mich. Iſelt
G. Interianus
Silueſter Iourdan
A. Ingram
Da. Ingram
A. Ienkinſon
Index Expurgat.
Irenæus
Iſidorus Hiſpalenſis
Iſidorus Characenus
Iſocrates
Io. Iſacius
Ioſephus Indus
Iuuenalis
Iuſtinus Mart.
Iuſtinus Hiſtoricus
F. Iunius
Iunilius
R. Iohnſon
B. Iewell
Iſaac Leuita.

K

B. King
La. Keymis
Bart Kecherman
Io. Knolls
I. Keplerus
R. Abraham ben Kattan

L

LActantius
Ralfe Lane
W. Lambert
Ioſ. Langius
Rene Laudonniere
Io. Lampadius
Sir Ia. Lancaſter
Lauaterus
Laurentius Iaponius
And. a Lacuna
Wol. Lazius
Legenda aurea
Io. Leo Maurus
Leo Hebræus
Leunclauius
I. Lerius
Philip. Leon. R. lit.
Le. Lemnius
Char. Leigh
Io. Lock
Nic. Longobardus
Ed. Luely
Mark Le Scarbot
Liuius
Liuij Epitome
Lindanus
I. Lipſius
Hen. a Lindhout
Tho. Lidyat
T. Linton
Mat. de Lobel
Lucianus
Lucretius
Petrus Lumbardus
T. Lopez
Ph. Lonicerus
Lucanus
Nic. Lyra
I. Linſchoten
Ignatius Loiola
Lutherus

M

MAps very many
Diſc. del. Regno di Malaca
Luys del Marmol
Macrobius
Am. Marcellinus
Val. Maximus
Gab. Matoſus
Simon Maiolus
Deſcrit. di Malta
Maldonatus
W. Malmesbury
Nicol. Mameranus
Manilius
A. Maſius
Petrus Martinez
A. Maginus
Petrus Maſcharcina
P. Mart. Flor.
L. Marineus Sic.
P. Mart. Mediolan.
P. Maffæus
Moſes Mardenus
Neſtor Martinengo
Bapt. Mantuanus
A. Marloratus
Ioannes Mariana
Cor. Mateliuius
Martinius
L. Madoc
Nonius Marcellus
Marcianus Heracleotes
T. Maſham
W. Magoths
Marcellinus Comes
Michael Mayerus
Meteranus
Martialis
Manetho f.
Barthol. Marlianus
L. Maſonius
Menander Ephel. f.
Mercerus
Io. Meurſius
Memnon f.
Mermannij theat
Meletius
A. Menauino
Mnaſius f.
Gonſales de Mendoſa
Ant. de Mendoſa
Iaques Morgues
N. Monardus
Fra. Modius
Hen. Morgan
Sir Thomas Moore
Mat. Weſtm.
Mat. Michouius
Pomp. Mela
Baptiſta Montanus
A. Mizaldus
I. Myricius
R. Moſes Ægyptius
Moſes Bar. Cepha
Tarik Mirkond
Chriſtop. Milæus
Epiſc. Mexicani Lit.
Wol. Muſculus
P. Meſſia
S. Munſter
D. Morton
I. More
Megaſthenes f.
Monſ. Monfart
Metaſthenes pſ.

Sir

Sir John Mandeuile
Ar. Montanus
Methodius pſ.
Method. f.
Mercator
Methodius Conſtant. Pat.
P. Merula
Ph. Mornæus
Ph. Melanchthon
T. Moreſinus
Fynes Moryſon
Manetho pſ.

N

Nathaniel Iudæus
Iacobi Neccij Nauig.
I. Neander
L. de la Nou.
Nicetes
Marco de Niſt
T. Nichols
John Nichol
Nicephorus Greg.
Nicephorus Cal.
Nic. Nicolay
Dom. Niger
Nonnus
Oliuer Noort nauig.
Melchior Nunnes
Nicholas Nunnes
Chriſt. Newport
Aluaro Nunez
Concil. Nicenum

O

Iulius Obſequens
Oliuarius
Adolphus Occo
Lope Obregon
Odoricus
Opmeerus
Officium Iud. pro defunct
Onuphrius
Otto Friſingenſis
A. Ortelius
Organtinus
Orpheus
Olaus magnus
Origines
Oſorius
P. Oroſius
Pedro Ordonnes
Nic. Orlandinus
Oſmaus death
Ouidius
Gon. Fern. Ouiedo
Andreas Ouiedus

P

Pauſanias
M. Parker.
Mutius Panſa
W. Parry
Petrus Paez
Petrus Paſqualigus
H. Pataleon
Pagninus
M. Paulus
Ia. Paludanus
Fran. Paſius
St. Parmenius
Palæphatus
Guido Pancirallus
Parkhurſt
B. Pererius
Perkins
Conquiſta del Peru
Fabr. Paduanus
Chriſt. Pezelius
Galeotto Perera
Fr. Patritius
Petrus Pena
Pappus
Perſius
A. Perſio
Henricus Penia
C. Peucerus
Pet. Cluni acenſis
Petrus Alphonſi
Petronius Arb.
Perſeus
Pius Pappa
Philo Iudæus
Philo Antiq. pſ.
P. Pigafetta
Martin Perez
Ant. Pigafetta
Philoſtratus
Phrygio
G. Phranza
S. G. Peckham
Phornutus
Photius
Pilgrimage to Mecca
Pirke Aboth
Nic. Perotto
Nic. Pimenta
Eman. Pinnerus
La. Pignorius
Mat. Paris
I. Picus Mirandula
Miles Philip.
Philaſtrius
Ioannes de Pineda
Vinc. Pinzon
Non. Pintianus
Mel. Petoney
Pij Quinti Bulla
Plato
Io. Philoponus, f.
Plutarchus
Platina
Plautus
Io. de Plano. Car.
Perondinus
Plinius 1.
Plinius 2.
Richard Pots
Poland Relations
Letters of Turke & Poland
Warres
Polibius
Polyænus
Precationes Iudæorum
Iulianus Pomerius
Fran. Portus.
Iacob. Pontanus
Ioan. Iou. Pontanus
Thomas Porcacchi
Poggius Florent.
Protaſius R. Arimæ
Porphynus
A. Poſſeuinus
Pomp. Lætus
Hen. Porſius
Io. Pory
I. Bap. Porta
Policie T. Emp.
Ord. Polit. Turc.
Poſtellus
Politica Turcogr.
Poly-olbion
Plotinus
D. Powell.
Procopius
S. A. Preſton
Am. Polanus
Proclus
Ptolemæus
Proceeding againſt
Trators
Æmilius Probus
Trebel. Pollio
Propertius
Rob. Pone

Pru-

Prudentius
Mich. Pſellus
Helias Putſchius
Fran. Pyrard.

Q

QVadus
Fern. de Quir.

R

RAmuſio
I. Ramus
P. Ramus
D. Rainolds
Sir Walter Raleigh
Rabanus
Rich. Rainolds
Hen. Ranzouius
Relat. di Perſia
Rel. de Regno Mogor.
B. Rhenanus
Mat. Raderus
Mat. Ricci
Mart. del Rio
Io. Ribault.
A. Riccobonus
El. Reuſnerus
Rein. Reineccius
Io. Rauclinus
L. Riſeburgius
Chr. Richerius
Richardus Frat.
Richard. Florentinus
Relat. of Relig. Weſt.
L. Regius
Ribera
D. Record.
Pet. Ribadeneira
Richard Rogers
Regulæ Soc. Ieſu
Pet. Rebuffus
Fr. Robertellus
Ioannes Roſinus
Io. Riuius
L. Andreas Reſendius
Io. Rodrigues
Thom. Rogers
Chriſtoph. Ruffinus
Hieronymo Roman
Cæl. Rhodiginus
Laur. Rhodomanus
Rob. Retenenſis
Robert. Monachus
Ia. Roſier.

Rodericus Tolletanus
Henry Roberts
Rodericus Santius
Fran. Roberuall
Rhemiſtæ
W. de Rubruquis
Ruffinus
Iſ. Ruthenus
W. Rutter Nau.
G. Ruſſelli
Rupertus

S

SImon Sa
Henr. Salmuth
Pero Sancho
Sabellicus
George Sandys
Franc. de Sagitta
Saluſtius
R. Samuel Maroc.
Saconiatho F.
Sampſates Iſphachanes
Io. Saracol
Bart. Saligniaco
Thom. Sanders
Arias Sanctius
Sardus
Io. dos Santos
Saracenifmi Anathematiſ.
Iul. Scaliger
Lambert Schafnaburg.
R. Sauenquil Lit.
R. Sazinolij Lit.
Ioan. Sambucus
Mar. Sanutus Torſel.
Liu. Sanuto.
Ioſeph Scaliger
Sculax Carnandenſis
F. Sanſouino
Scala Mahometica
H. Sauonorola
Scholiaſtæ in Poetas
N. Serarius
Hen. Schualengberg.
I. de Sac. Boſco
Sixt. Senenſis
Septemcaſtrenſis
I. M. Sequanus
Marc. Seneca
L. Seneca Philoſ.
L. Seneca Trag.
Schelteo
Iohn Selden

Dionyſe Settle
Andr. Schottus
Snlpit. Seuerus
Seder olam rabba
Seder olam Zuta
Seruius
Ioſ. Siluester
Sibillæ pſ. & Sibillæ f.
Sir Philip Sidney
Car. Sigonius
Admiranda Sinenſ. Reg.
Dial. Sinenſis
Nunho de Silua
Sir Anthony Sherly
Huld. Shmidel
I. Sleidanus
Sheldon
Sigebertus Gemblacenſis
P. di Sintra
Ioſ. Simlerus
Sepher Iezira
Conſtant. Seruius
Theoph. Simocatta
Caſp. Schwenckfield
Silius Italicus
Hugh Smith
Gabriel Sionita
Sebaſtia. Schroterus
Cor. Schouten
D. Smith
Captaine Smith
Æl. Spartianus
G. Spilbergius
Socrates
Sozomenus
Sophocles
Soranzo
Solinus
Mel. Soiterus
Sir H. Spelman
Ed. Spenſer
John Speed
I. Stadius
Stadius Braſil.
Stobæus
I. Stow
Bilib. Stobæus
Statutes
Marianus Scotus
Reg. Scot
Edmund Scot
Achilles Statius
Sommario di pop. orient.
Suidas

Hieron. da S. Stephano
Thom. Stevens
Stephanus Byzant.
Srabot
Strabus
Georg. Stampellus
Henry Stephanus
Surius
Ludolph. Suchenensis
Stuckius
Suares
I. Bap. Scortia
Sinod. Constantinop.
Suetonius
Io. Chr. Caluetus Stella
Did. Stella
Io. Mar. Stella
Tileman. Stella
Summa Saracen Sectæ
D. Sutcliffe.
Edwardus Sylnius
Sulaka

T

TAtianus
Corn. Tacitus
Io. Tasnier
Fr. Thamata
Franc. Tarapha
Theodoretus
Theophilus, f.
Theoph. Antiochenus
Tertullianus
Terentius
Theophilactus
Temporarius
Theforo Politico
R. Aben Tybbon
William Thorpe
Thaiso Sinensis Lit.
Theophrastus
Relat. del Temistitan
Theophanes F.
A. Theuet
Thucidides
Tibullus
Ro. Thorne
Timberley
Ro. Tomson
W. Towerson
Trelcatius
Tremellius
Mas. Transiluano
Tripartita hist.
Mer. Trismegistus
Trithemius
Nic. Trigautius
Increase of Trade
Defence of Trade
Toletus
Adrianus Turnebus
Cosm. Turrianus
G. Tyrius
G. Trapezunt
Con. Trident.
Turselius
L. de May. Turquet
Tyndarus
Ioannes Tzetzes

V

LOp. Vaz
Cor. Valerius
Fr. Vaez
Ioa. Vadianus
Ioach. Vagetius
F. Vatablus
Caspar. Varerius
Martin de Valentia
A. Valignanus
Ioan. Vasæus
R. Verstegan
Com. de Vena
L. Vertomannus
Eman. de Veiga
Io. Verrazano
Verhuffi Nauig.
Vipcranus
Viaggio in Persia
N. life of Virginia
F. a Victoria
P. Victor.
S. A. Victor
Victor Vticensis
Nic. Villagagnon
Gasp. Vilela
Gerar. de Veer
Virgilius
Pol. Virgil
Ant. du Virdier
Iacob. a Vitriaco
Vitruvius
Viguerius
Voy du Villamont.
L. Viues
Fr. de Vllea
R. Volateranus
Vrsinus
Luys de Vrreta
Fla. Vopiscus
Americus Vesputius
Ger. Io. Vossius

W

THomas Walsingham
Lord De la Ware
D. Whitakerus
Alexander Whitaker
D. Willet
Whitney
Ia. Welsh
Webs Trauels
T. Windam
L. Warde
Ward and Dansker
Silvester Wiet
Seb. de Wert
Io. White Nau.
D. White
George Wilkins
T. Wiars
The World
Descrip. of the World
Henr. Wolsius
Io. Wolsius Theol.
Fr. Wendelinus
Richard Whitborne
Edward Winne
Io. Wolsius, I. C.
Wolf. Wissenberg.
S. H. Willoughby, Nau.
I. Wragge.

X

XEnophon
Franc. Xeres
F. Xauier
Hier. Xauier.

Z

ZAbarella
Hier. Zanchius
A. Zachuth
Zaga Zabo
Zonaras
Zeui Nau. &c.
Zoroaster, f.
Io. Zygomalas
Theodos. Zygomalas
Theod. Zuingerus.

THE

THE NAMES OF MANVSCRIPTS,

TRAVELLERS, AND OTHER AVTHORS,

the most of which are published in our Bookes *of* VOYAGES, *which together with this* Impression is made publike.

William Anthon.
Samuel Argal
Lit. Aleppenses.
Thomas Bernbere
Ambros. de Armariolo
William Baffin
Andrew Battell
Brasill Treatise
Iames Beuersham
Hen. Brigs
George Ball
Banda Surrenders
Hist. Barnwell
George Barkly
Nic. Bangam
Capt. *Tho. Best*
Sir *Tho. Button*
Rich. Blithe
Chr. Browne
Samuel Castleton
Thomas Candish
Na. Courthop
Io. Chambers
Io. Catcher
Thomas Crowther
Iohn Crowther
Peter Carder
Thomas Clayborne
Tho. Cowles
William Clark
Iohn de Castro
B. Churchman
H. Challenge
Thomas Carmer
William Colston
Patrike Copland
Discouerie of Chesipeak
Richard Cocks
Sir *T. Dale*
Iames Dauies
Beniamin Day
Cassarian Dauid
Doctor *Dee*
Iohn Dauies
Nicholas Dounton
Capt. *Dodsworth*
Thomas Dermer
Edward 2. Litteræ
Tho. Edge
Iohn Eliot
Iohn Ellis
Capt *Elkington*
Expeditions Iournall
Peter Willamson Flores
Rob. Fotherby
Christopher Fortescue
Hum. Fotherbert
Richard Finch
William Finch
Io. Iuan de Fuca
Raleigh Gilbert
Anthony Goddard
William Goodlard
Thomas Glouer
Walsingham Grisley
William Gourdon
Greenland Voyages
Gronland Treatise
Iohn Guy
Iames Hall
Iohn Hatch
William Hoare
W. Harborne
Roger Hawes
Antony Hippon
Thomas Hanham
Edward Harleigh
Sir *Richard Hawkins*
Iosias Hubert
Ro. Hayes
William Heley
William Hawkins
Sir *Ierome Horsey*
Io. Iordan
Lewis Iacktan
Robert Iuet
George Iackson
Richard Iobson
Master Keble
Iohn Knights
Tho. Knolles
Antony Kniuet
Ia. Lane

Henry

Henry Lello
Iohn Leman
Letters of diuers Eaſterne Kings
Charles Leigh
Ioſias Logan
Michael Locke
Sir *Iames Lancaſter*
Nathaniel Martin
Mexican hiſtory
William Methold
Sir *Ed. Michelborne*
D. Duart de Meneſes
William Maſham
Iohn Mildnall
G. Muſchamp
Sir *Henry Middleton*
Dauid Middleton
I. Milward
Iohn Newbury
Ric. Naſh
William Nicholls
Ogoſhaſama R. Lit.
Walter Payton
Abacuck Pricket
Ionas Pooley
Patents diuers
Martin Pringe
Iohn Playſe
George Popham
G. Pettys
Pedrucka R. Ach. Lit.
George Percy
Newp. Voy. to Powhatan
William Parker
E. C. taking Port Ricco. 2.
Pilgrimage in Rime
Lit. Presb. Iohan. Aſ.
Albert. de Prato
William Purſgloue
Pachaturunuras
Richardus Canonicus
Maſter Rolph
Sir *Thomas Roe*
Iohn Rut
Nathaniel Salmon
Rob. Salmon
Ioſeph Salbank
Iohn Selden
Iohn Sanderſon
A. Spaldwin
Captaine *Saris*
William Strachie
Thomas Sherwin
Sir *Ed. Scory*
Th. Spurway
Rob. Swan
Rob. Smith
Francis Sparrie
Edward Terry
Thomas Turner
William Turner
L. Tribaldus Toletus
Kellum Throgmorton
Alexandro Vrſino
Virginia Voy. & Diuers Ind. Voyages & Anonim.
Declaration of Virginia
George Weymouth
Ed. Maria Wingfield
Iohn Wilſon
Th. Wilſon
Ralph Wilſon
William White
Thomas Widhouſe
Iohn Ward
Nic. Withington
Mat. Willes

And many other Relations and Reports of Gentlemen, Merchants, Mariners, &c.

R E

RELATIONS OF THE WORLD, AND THE RELIGIONS OBSERVED IN ALL AGES AND PLACES DISCOVERED, FROM THE CREATION VNTO THIS PRESENT.

Of the first beginnings of the World, and Religion: and of the Regions and Religions of BABYLONIA, ASSYRIA, SYRIA, PHŒNICIA, and PALESTINA.

THE FIRST BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Of GOD, *one in Nature,* * *three in Persons, the* FATHER, SONNE, *and* HOLY GHOST.

THE * Poets were wont to lay the Foundations and First Beginnings of their Poeticall Fabrikes, with invocation of their gods and Muses: although those workes were sutable to such worke-men, who according to their names were *Makers*, of those both Poems and gods. I, as farre short of their learning, as beyond them in the scope of my desires, would so farre imitate their manner, in this matter which I intend; that although I envy not to some their foolish claime of that Poeticall (not Prophetically) inheritance, *to make my Maker*: and my matter as in a Historie (not a Poeme) must be made to my hands: Yet in a Historie of Religion, which hath or should haue GOD to be the *Alpha* and *Omega*; the Efficient, from whom; the End, to whom it proceedeth: the Matter of whom, the Forme by whom and whose direction, it entreateth; I could not but make a Religion to begin this discourse of Religion at him; this being the way, which all men take, to come to him. First therefore, I beseech him, that is the First and Last, the Eternall *Father*, in the name of his Beloued and Onely *Sonne*, by the light of his Holy and All-seeing *Spirit*, to guide mee in this Perambulation of the World, so to take view of the Times, Places, and Customes therein, as may testifie my religious bond to him, *whose I am, and whom I serue*: and the seruice I owe vnto his Church, if at least this my Mite may be seruice-able

* Τῷ ὄντι Θεὸς, ἀνθρώπου τὸ ποιεῖν, τὸ ὑποκρίνεσθαι, Zan. de 3. El. p. 41. l. 1. cap. 3.

a *Homer, Virgil, Ouid, &c.*

Apo. 1. 8.

* *Apoc.* 3.14.

able to the least of the least therein; that as he is in himselfe the Beginning and Ending, so he would be, in some measure, of this Worke the Author and Finisher; that in the beholding this Mappe of so infinitely diuersified Superstitions, we may be more thankefull for, and more zealous of, that true and onely Religion, which Christ by his Bloud hath procured, by his Word reuealed, by his Spirit sealed, and will reward eternally in the Heauens. And hereto let all Christian Readers say with me * *Amen*, to him which is * *Amen*, that *Witnesse faithfull and true*, that forsaking all the by-wayes which this *Labyrinth* exhibiteth; we may receiue his Witnesse as faithfull and true Disciples, that *follow the Lambe whithersoever hee goeth*, and will *not heare the voice of strangers*.

a 1.*Kings*.8.27.
b 2.*Cr*.1.11.
c *Rom*.11.33.
d *Prou*.30.2. *Verse* 3.4. *Verse* 5.
e *Iob*.11.8.
f *Rom*.11.20.
g *Acts* 14.17.
h *Acts* 17.28.
i D.*Kings Lect.* in *Ecclesiastes*. *Origenes* ἀθέατα, *Hieronymus* Secreta *Nat. Deor. lib*.1. *Nomen quia dici naturam. Dius est nomen suum, & nomen eius ipse est: Dius, pro*. *lib*.1.
k 1.*Ie*.3.2.
l 1.*Co*.13.12.
m Exod.34.6.
n *Dionys. de Diuinis nomin. R. Galatin. de Arcanis*, l.3. *Zanchius de Nat. Dei*. *Lt. Bullinger, de Origine erroris, lib*. 1. *Ar. Montanus*.
o As true, wise, liuing, &c.
p As truth, wisdome, life, &c.
q In which sense, r *reuocegit*. affirmetis, *Deus nihil est omnium. Deus est omnia. Deus nomen nullum habet: Deus habet omne nomen, Vid. Mar. Ficin. in Dionys. de D. N. Dionysius* also calls him, *Vnitas vnitatis omnis vnitatis, superessentialis essentia. Intellectus neque quam intelligibilis, &c. Rupescissa* described him a Sphere, whose Centre is every where, the Circumference no where.
Sebinx. Hieddfidiv

In the next place, I hold it not vnfit briefly to expresse somewhat of him, which indeed and throughly can neuer be expressed. For the wisest of the Prophets hath said of him and to him, that the * *Heauens and Heauens of Heauens, are not able to containe him*: and the chiefe, or at least he which was *not inferiour to the chiefe of the Apostles*, as ransished with such a height, and swallowed in such a depth, cryed, c *O Altitudo, O the deepnesse of the riches, both of the wisdome and knowledge of God! how vnsearchable are his iudgements, and his wayes past finding out?* As for my selfe, I may most fitly borrow the words of AGVR, d *Surely I am more foolish than any man, and haue not the vnderstanding of a man in me: For I haue not learned wisdome, nor attayned to the knowledge of holy things*. Yea, indeed, *Who hath ascended vp to Heauen, and descended? Who hath gathered the Winde in his fist? Who hath bound the Waters in a Garment? Who hath established all the ends of the World? What is his name, and what is his Sonnes name, if thou canst tell?* Tell this Mysterie, we cannot. And yet so farre as he hath told vs by his Word and Workes, we may. Of the one the next words testifie: *Every word of God is pure*: Of the other elsewhere, e *The Heauens declare the glory of God*: and, *The inuisible things of him, that is, his eternall Power and God-head, are seene by the Creation of the World being considered in his workes*. f *God hath not* (therefore) *left himselfe without witnesse*, who besides the testimonie of Nature, written in our hearts, hath added those of the Scripture and of the Creature, that this *three-fold Cord* might not be easily *broken*, and by the *mouth of two or three Witnesses*, we might learne plainly *that* he is, and in some measure *what* hee is.

a 1.*Rom*.8.27.
b 2.*Cr*.1.21.
c *Rom*.11.33.
d *Prou*.30.2. *Verse* 3.4. *Verse* 5.
e *Iob*.11.8.
f *Rom*.11.20.
g *Acts* 14.17.
h *Acts* 17.28.
i D.*Kings Lect.* in *Ecclesiastes*. *Origenes* ἀθέατα, *Hieronymus* Secreta *Nat. Deor. lib*.1. *Nomen quia dici naturam. Dius est nomen suum, & nomen eius ipse est: Dius, pro*. *lib*.1.
k 1.*Ie*.3.2.
l 1.*Co*.13.12.
m Exod.34.6.
n *Dionys. de Diuinis nomin. R. Galatin. de Arcanis*, l.3. *Zanchius de Nat. Dei*. *Lt. Bullinger, de Origine erroris, lib*. 1. *Ar. Montanus*.
o As true, wise, liuing, &c.
p As truth, wisdome, life, &c.
q In which sense, r *reuocegit*. affirmetis, *Deus nihil est omnium. Deus est omnia. Deus nomen nullum habet: Deus habet omne nomen, Vid. Mar. Ficin. in Dionys. de D. N. Dionysius* also calls him, *Vnitas vnitatis omnis vnitatis, superessentialis essentia. Intellectus neque quam intelligibilis, &c. Rupescissa* described him a Sphere, whose Centre is every where, the Circumference no where.
Sebinx. Hieddfidiv

That there is GOD: Heauen and Earth, Angels and Deuils, Man and Beast, Reason and Sense, Greeke and Barbarian, Science in the most, in the rest conscience (as a thousand Witnesses) all that wee see, and which wee see not, say and proclaime, that all may see, and in manner palpably feele his present Deitie; in h *whom wee liue, moue, and haue our being*. i This is a common notion, and impression, sealed vp in the minde of every man: a remnant of integritie after the fall of *Adam*, a substance or blessing in the dead Elme, sparkles of fire raked vp vnder the ashes, which cannot dye whiles the soule liueth. What a one hee is; is not so deeply ingrauen in Nature, whose O wisse eyes are dazeled with the brightnesse of this light: But when here we might renue the question: *What is his name, and what is his Sonnes name?* hee himselfe answereth in Scripture by attributing to himselfe such names, whereby we may know him as the Creator from all Creatures, as the true GOD from all false gods: and so farre as is meete and necessary to our saluation. Hee then that dwelleth in light inaccessible, whom no man hath seene, nor can see k *as he is*, in this our infancie, hath manifested himselfe vnto vs, l *as through a Glasse darkely*, that wee may with *Moses* haue some glancing m view *of his hinder parts*.

These Names and diuine Attributes I meane, not with large explications here to expresse, as not so fitting my abilitie or purpose, and being by others n learnedly done already: Yet, to say a little, where the tongues of Men and Angels cannot say enough; the Scripture attributeth, or He in Scripture attributeth to Himselfe, *Names*, in regard both of Author and Object, *Diuine*, sometimes (as they terme it) in the o concret; sometimes in the p abstract; the the first signifying his Perfect subsistence; the other his Superfubsisting perfection; those more fitted to our capacitie; these to his diuinitie: who eternally and essentially is, whatsoever hee is said to be, or in himselfe to haue. And, as lines infinitely differing in their Circumference, are one in the Centre; and the Sunne-beames disperfed through the World, are in the Sunne but one; and the same neither beames nor lines, but farre more excellent in that indiuisible and most perfect Vnitie: so, and more then so, all perfections of the creatures, are in the Creator more defecated and perfect; yea, one perfection and superexcellent Excellence; and this q one himselfe, every way infinite and incomprehensible; nothing being in him either by *participation*, or as a *qualitie*, or as a naturall *facultie*, or as a mutable *passion*, or in such sort simply, as we (whose vnderstandings are limited in their finite bounds, and for that cause receiuing in a finite measure, conceiuing in a finite manner) doe or can comprehend. Who can take vp the Ocean in a spoone? and yet these are both finite, and hold neerer proportion then the great Creator, and the greatest of creatures. Yet is this glimpse of this bright shining Sunne

10

20

30

40

50

60

Sunne comfortable thorow this chinke and Key-hole of our bodily prison, and euen the taste of these Delicacies, more then sweet and delectable.

Some of these names are attributed to him in regard of his being [r] in his selfe considered, as *Iehouah, Iah, Eheie*: and some in regard of the persons which all haue that one beeing, and euery of which haue all that being, which [s] in it selfe is individually one: and their seuerall manners of hauing it, is that which is called their personall proprietie and incommunicable. Such a name (say some) is *Elohim* [t] applyed to the Father, Sonne, and Holy-Ghost, in signification *Mighties*, in forme plurall. Some of these names are such as are communicated to creatures also, but with this difference, that those which in the creature are *borrowed, imperfect, accidentall*; are in him *Nature, Perfection, Subsiſtance*. Some are absolutely considered as hee is GOD blessed for euer; some relatively with respect vnto his creatures. Some againe [u] are negatively spoken, others affirmatiuely: some properly, others by a figure. But this is indeed a shorny way, [x] of which we may say with *Augustine*, Nothing is missed more dangerously, nothing sought more laboriously, nothing found more profitably. Euen the Angelicall Seraphins had their [y] sixe wings, whereof two serued to execute their prompt obedience; two couered their feet, because of mans weaknesse not able to comprehend their glorie; and yet they themselues thus glorious, with two other wings couered their face, as not able to endure the brightnesse of a greater glorie. Let vs then *be wise*, but to [z] *sobrietie*. Let vs goe to the *Lambe* to vnclasse this sealed Booke. For *in him all the treasures of wisedome and knowledge are hid*. Let vs so know as we may be knowne, and so [a] comprehend as we may rather bee comprehended. Let vs feare, loue, beleeue, and serue him: and then GOD will [b] *teach the humble his way*, and [c] *They which will doe his will, shall know of his doctrine*. This is our way to *eternall life*, thus to *know him, and whom he hath sent, Iesus Christ*: if namely we so learne [c] *Christ, as the Truth is in Iesus, if we* [d] *become fooles that we may be wise, and putting off the old man, be renued in the spirit of our minds, and put on the new man which after* GOD *is shapen in righteousnesse and true holinesse*. Otherwise, *we* [e] *know nothing as we ought to know*; otherwise, we know nothing more, nor so much as the Deuils know. [f] *The feare of the Lord is the beginning of this wisedome*. And for this cause hath he called himselfe, and proclaimed those his Names, [g] IEHOVA, *Iehoua, strong, merciful, and gracious, slow to anger, and abundant in goodnesse and truth, &c.* and the like in other places; not that we may know to know, (a foolish curiositie) but that hauing such light, we may beleeue and walke in the light, that we may be children of the light. *Iehoua* (if we may so name it) the most essentiall (and after the Iewish tradition, inefſable [h] name of GOD, is not therefore onely reuealed vnto vs, that we may know him in himselfe and of himselfe *to bee* [i] *Yesterday, to day, and the same* [k] *for euer, which is, which was, which is to come*: but also as the Creator, *of whom, in whom, and for whom* are all things: and as the Redeemer, which is knowne by his Name *Iehoua* (as himselfe [l] interpreteth it) by giuing a reall being, and accomplishment to his promises. In which one name (as in others of like signification) is expressed the *Simplicitie, Immutabilitie, Infinitenesse, Blessednesse, Eternitie, Life, Perfection*, and other Attributes of GOD. When he calleth himselfe *Strong*, therein is declared his almighty power, whether we vnderstand it actually in producing and preseruing all things in Heauen and earth; or absolutely, whereby he is able to doe euen those things, which in his wisedome he doth not; whereby he is able to doe all things which either [m] in themselues (as implying contradiction) or with him (as imperfections) are not impossible, both those kinds not excluding, but concluding the power of GOD, which because he is Almighty, [n] *cannot lie or deny himselfe*.

What should I speake of his Wisedome, whereby all things are open in his sight, both himselfe, and his creatures, past, present, or to come, and that not as past or future, but in *one, eternall, perfect, certaine, immediate, act* of knowledge, which in regard of second causes are necessary or contingent, or in effect but meerely possible, and neuer actually subsisting? *Truth* is

r *Nomina τῶ ὄντος apud Heb. ראיתיו יהוה*

s *Drus. Tetragram. cap. 1.*

t *Hoeb. Eccles. Polit. lib. 5. Iustin. resp. ad Orthod. quæst. 137.* Εἰς ἐστὶν ὁ Θεὸς τῇ συνανθρώπῳ τοῦ τρισσοῦ Θεοῦ προσκυνούμενος, τῶν δ' ἀναφερομένων ἀλλήλων, οὐ τῇ κατὰ ἀλλὰ τῶν τῆς ὑπάρξεως τρόπων.

u *Exemplum producit, Adami, Eue, Sethi, eandem essentiam habentium bonam, unam, existendi autem modum diuersum, à terra, cœlis, semine.*

x *Drusius tazeth Zanch. for iustifing his worke, De 3. Elohim, so improperly, saith he, as De trinitate dixi.*

y *Immutabilia de Creatore per verba negatiua essentiæ vera, per affirmatiua autem potium in æquiuocatione, partim in imperfectione. R. Moses Morch. lib. 1. c. 57. affirmationes periculosæ.*

z *De Deo etiam vera loqui periculosum. Arnobi in Psal. 91. August. de Trinit. lib. 3. cap. 3.*

a *Eccl. 6. 2.*

b *Rom. 11. 33.*

c *Ioh. 7. 17.*

d *Prou. 1. 7.*

e *1. Cor. 8. 2.*

f *Prou. 1. 7.*

g *Exod. 34. 6.*

h Of this name *Iehoua*, see *Drusij Tetragram. Ar. Montan. ante Natur. histor. pag. 37. & Pet. Galat. lib. 3. Drusius* thinkes that *Galatinus* was the first Author of this pronuntiation *Iehouah*; *Casiodorus* wrieteth it *Iouat*: the most both Iewes and Christians before forbare to name it: The *Massoretes* ascribed to it no points of it owne, but of *Adonai*, and when *Adonai* goeth before or after it, of *Elohim*. It is holden, that onely the High-Priest, and that in the Temple, and on the day of Expiation might pronounce it, which to a priuate man, the Iewes esteemed the losse of eternall life. *Steuchus* thinketh that none can interpret it, and *Paulus Burgensis*, that none can translate it. The Chaldæns, Arabians, Græcians, Latines, and the New Testament itselfe, vse instead thereof, *The Lord*. *Montanus* readeth it *Iehuth*; and affirmeth that it was knowne both to the common Israelites, and to the neighbouring Nations, &c. but see themselues: I name it after the moderne vse for distinction. *Zanchy* and *Gyraldus* obserue, that the name of God in all Nationsis *Tetragrammaton* of foure letters. In Dutch and English, they therefore double the last consonant, and learned Master *Selden* interpreteth the *Pythagorian* oath, *μὰ Τετρακτὺν*, by *Tetragrammaton*, *de D. Syrij. Vid. R. Mos. lib. 1. cap. 60. F. Ric. ad prec. assy. 20. Reuchlin de verbo mirif. lib. 2.*

i *Heb. 13. 8.*

k *Apoc. 1. 8.*

l *Exod. 6. 3.*

m *Quæ contradictionem implicant sub diuina omnipotentia non continentur. Non pro defectu potentiæ, sed quia non possunt habere rationem potibilis vel possibilis. Conuenientius dicitur, quod ea non possint fieri, quam quod Deus non possit facere. Ap. 1. q. 25. art. 3. & d. n. 2. Tim. 2. 13.*

n

in him as a roote, from whence it is first in the being: next in the vnderstanding; thirdly, in the writing or laying of the creature. True he is in himselfe, in his workes ordinary, and extraordinary, and in his Word reuealed by the Prophets and Apostles. What should I adde of his *goodnesse, grace, loue, Mercie, Iustice, and other* his Attributes and names not yet mentioned? as *Adonai*, which signifieth the dominion of GOD due to him, by Creation, by purchase, by mutuall couenant: *Saddai*, which signifieth his All-sufficiencie, and others. Yea in one Chapter [o] *Petrus Galatinus* rehearseth threescore and twelue names of GOD out of the Rabbines workes, multiplyed and diuersified in tenne sorts, which make in all seuen hundred and twenty names. To dilate of these at large would aske so many large Commentaries, and yet euen then should we still find this GOD incomprehensible; of whom we may, in respect of his capacitie, rather say what he is not, then what he is; whose *goodnesse* is not to bee distinguished by qualitie, or his *greatnesse* discerned by quantitie, or his *eternitie* measured by time, or his *presence* bounded by place: [p] of whom all things are to bee conceiued, [q] beyond whatsoeuer we can conceiue.

10

The Persons which communicate in this Diuine Nature, are three [r]: This is their owne witnesse of themselues; *There are three which beare record in Heauen, the Father, the Word, and the Spirit, and these three are one.* This mystery was manifested in the [s] baptisme of Christ, and in our Baptisme in the name of the Father, Sonne, and Holy Ghost. The Angels vnto this glorious Trinitie [t] sing their Holy, Holy, Holy: the Scripture it selfe applying that which there may be interpreted of the Father, both to the Sonne, *Ioh.*12.41. and to the Spirit, *Act.* 28.25. These with other places doe also signifie their personall distinction. The Creation was not onely the Fathers worke, but also of the other Persons, as appareeth by that Nowne plurall, ioyned to a Verbe singular, in the first word of *Moses*, and other like plurall appellations, *Es*44.24. and *Es*54.5. 2.*Sam.*7.23. and many such places. The Apostles apply the couenant, worship, and workes of GOD mentioned in the Old Testament, *To the Sonne, and Holy Ghost* in the New, neither can the one be the Sonne, or the other the Spirit of GOD, naturally and in proper manner of speech, but they must also subsist in the same Nature with the Father, which being infinite, spirituall, immutable, can be but one, which must wholly, or not at all, be communicated. In a word, the equalitie, the names, the properties, the works, the worship peculiar to GOD, are applyed to the *Sonne* and *Holy Ghost*, equally with the *Father*. Which they that list, may learne in such as especially treat of this subiect: where this mysterie of the *Trinitie* is auerred against all Heretikes, Iewes, and Infidels: Yea, by some [u] also, out of their owne authentike Authors, whether they receiue Scriptures, Rabbins, Philosophers, or any other. I intend onely to anoint the doore-posts of this house with this Discourse, that I may make a fitter entry thereinto, leauing the fuller handling of this mysterie, to such as purposely frame their whole Edifice with large Common-places hereof; which yet alway must be more certainly receiued by Faith, then conceiued by reason: according to that of IVSTIN MARTYR, *Vnitas in Trinitate intelligitur, & Trinitas in Vnitate nostra: id vero quomodo fiat, nec alios scrutari velim, nec ipse mihi possum* [x] *satis facere.* Thinke of one, a threefold light will dazell thee, distinguish into three, and an infinite Vnitie will swallow thee. *Vnum, & filici dabet, Vnissimus*, saith [x] *Bernard.*

20

30

40

Having thus with trembling hand written of that dreadfull Mysterie of the Trinitie, of which we may say, *Cum dicitur, Non dicitur*: It is not told with telling, nor can be described by description; The next to be considered are the Works of GOD, which are either inward and immanent, or outward and transient. The inward are eternall and vnchangeable, indeed no other but himselfe, although accounted and called workes, in regard of their effects in the World, and of our conceiuing. For [a] all the proprieties of GOD are infinite, as they are immanent in himselfe, yet in their transitiue and forren effects are stinted and limitted to the model and state of the Creature, wherein the same effects are wrought. Such an immanent worke we conceiue, and name that [b] *Decree of* GOD *touching the Creation* of the World, with his prouident disposing all and euery part thereof, according to the Counsel of his own will, and especially touching the reasonable creatures, Angels and Men, in respect of their eternall state in Saluation or Damnation. The outward works of GOD are, in regard of Nature, *Creation and Prouidence*: in regard of Grace, *Redemption and Saluation*, in the fulnesse of time performed by our *Emanuel*, GOD manifested in the flesh, true GOD and perfect Man, in the Vnitie of one Person, without [c] confusion, conuersion, or separation. [d] This is verie GOD and life eternall, IESVS CHRIST, the Sonne of GOD, our Lord, which was conceiued by the HOLY GHOST, borne of the Virgin MARY, suffered vnder *Pontius Pilate*, who was crucified, dead and buried; descended into Hell: rose againe the third day; he ascended into Heauen; where he sitteth at the right hand of GOD the Father Almightie, from whence he shall come to iudge the quicke and dead. And to such as are sonnes, [e] GOD doth

50

60

o P. Gal. l. 2. c. 32. 10.
p Deus vbiq; est, vel magis proprie est ipsum vbiq; Trelcat. & ex R. Mos. Deus est habitaculum mundi non mundus habitaculum eius.
q Quicquid animo de illo retuleris, vim aliquid ipsius magis & virtutem, quam ipsum exprimes. Quid enim dignum de eo aut dicas, aut sentias, qui omnibus & singulis maior est? Tertul. de Trin. p 598.
Quatuor à Deo remouenda, corporeitas, mutabilitas, priuat. & assimilatio ad Creatura. R. Mos. Moreh. l. 1. 54. & 57. tantquam de Rege diceretur habente millies mille talenta auri, & nihil haberet centum talenta argenti.
r Deus Sanctus in Trinitate, trinus in vnitate. Ambrosius P. 1. c. 45.
s Mat. 3.
t Es 6. Zanch. de 1. Deo hac fusè.
u Mors, de vr. C. R. F. Patric. P. Gal. l. 2. a. 1. & 3. mi.
x Iustin. καθαρὸς φῶς ἐστι, γνῶθι τὸν θεὸν, ἀφ' οὗ τὸν ἥλιον ἐφωτίσθη σε. φῶς ἐστι τὰ τρία ὀνόματι, ἀφ' οὗ τὸ ἀνάφραστον. Nazian.
x Bern ad Eugen.
a D. Abbot. par. 2. Defen pag. 9. Zanch. de Deo l. 2. c. 1.
b Trelcat. Zanch. de Nat. D. l. 5. c. 1. 2.
c ἀσυγχύτως, ἀτρέπτως, ἀδιαιρέτως, ἀχωρίστως. d 1. Joh. 5. 20. e Gal. 4. 6.

doth also send the Spirit of his Sonne, to renue and sanctifie them as children of the Father, members of the Sonne, Temples of the Spirit, that they, euen all the Elect, may be one holy *Catholike Church*, enioying the vnspeakeable priuiledges and heauenly prerogatiues of the *Communion of Saints*, the *Forgiuenesse of Sinnes*, the *Resurrection of the Body*, and *Euerlasting Life*. Euen so, come LORD IESVS.

CHAP. II.

Of the creation of the World.

10 THey which would without danger behold the Eclipse of the Sunne, vse not to fixe their eyes directly vpon that bright eye of the World, (although by this case darkned) but in water behold the same with more ease and lesse perill. How much fitter is it likewise for our tender eyes in beholding the light of that Light, [a] *The Father of lights*, [b] *in whom is no darknesse*, to diuert our eyes from that brightnesse of glory, and behold him (as wee can) in his workes? The first of which in execution, was the creation of the World, plainly described by [c] *Moses*, in the booke of *Genesis*, both for the Author, matter, manner, and other circumstances; Reason it selfe thus farre subscribing, as appeareth in her Schollers, (the most of the Heathens 20 and Philosophers in all ages) That this World was made by a greater then the World. In prouing this, or illustrating the other, a large field of discourse might be ministred: neither doe I know any thing, wherein a man may more improue the reuenewes of his learning, or make greater shew with a little, decking and pruning himselfe, like [d] *Æsope* Iay, or *Horace* his Chough, with borrowed feathers; than in this matter of the Creation, written of (after their manner) by so many, Iewes, Ethnickes, Heretikes, and Orthodoxe Christians. For my part it shall be sufficient to write a little, setting downe so much of the substance of this subiect, as may make more plaine way, and easier introduction, into our ensuing History: leauing such as are more studious of this knowledge, to those which haue purposely handled this argument, with Commentaries vpon *Moses* Text: of which, besides many moderne Writers 30 (some of which haue almost oppressed the Presse with their huge Volumes) there are diuers of the Primitiue, middle, and decayed times of the Church: a cloud indeed of Authors, both for their number, and the varietie of their opinions, the most of them couering, rather then discouering that Truth (which can bee but one) and more to beleeued in their confuting others, then prouing their owne assertions. Their store through this disagreeing is become a fore, and burthen, whiles we must consult with many, and dare promise to our selues no sure footing: yet cleauing as fast as we can to the letter, imploring the assistance of the Creators Spirit, let vs draw as neere as we may to the sense of *Moses* words, the beginning whereof is, [e] *In the beginning* GOD *created the Heauen and the Earth*. Wherein (to omit the endlesse and diuers interpretations of others, obtruding allegoricall, anagogicall, mysticall sense 40 on the letter) is expressed the Author of this worke to be GOD, *Elohim*; which word, as is said, is of the plurall number, insinuating the holy Trinitie; the Father as the Fountaine of all goodnesse, the Sonne as the Wisdome of the Father, the holy Ghost as the power of the Father and the Sonne, concurring in this worke. The action is creating or making of a nothing, to which is required a power supernaturall and infinite. The *Time* was the [f] beginning of time, when as before there had neither been Time, nor any other Creature.

The worke is called *Heauen and Earth*; which f some interpret all this bodily world here propounded in the summe, and after distinguished in parcells, according to the sixe dayes seuerall workes. Some vnderstand thereby the [g] *First matter*; which others [h] apply only to the word *Earth*, expounding *Heauen* to be that, which is called *Empyreum*, including also the 50 spiritually and super-celestially inhabitants. Againe, others, whom I willingly follow, [i] extend

a *Iam.* 1.17.
b 1. *Joh.* 1.5.
Quæ scrutatur Maiestatem, opprimitur à gloria.

c *Mo-ses*

Ne si forte suas repetitum venerit olim, Grex auditum limina, &c.

c *Gen.* 1.1.

d Nothing but Nothing had the Lord Almighty, Whereof, wherewith, whereby to build this Citie. Du Bart. *Ex nulla vel primo vel secunda materia, quæ omni sublimi, fabricationi, generationi, ordinis, subsistit, Creatio est clamitera omne temporis momentum, quippe à virtute infinita. Iul. Scal. Ex. 6. Heresiarcharum dissentiens inter Creare, formare & facere, 1. ex nihilo facere, 2. enti Creata formam induere, 3. membris singulis ordinare: quo nomen insinuaminatim pronuntur. Esi. 43.7. Oecolemp. in G.* e ἐν ἀρχῇ τῷ κατὰ Χριστόν. *Basilium 1. in principio temporis, id est, simul cum tempore. Eadem Iean. Philoponus in Hexam. ap. Photium* 240. Τὸ πρῶτον τῷ Χρόνῳ κτῶ, &c. *Tempus non tam mensura motus quam quasi permonentia & duratio corporum vetustis, corporeorum: alorum esse non ab ly quasi dici ov. Hermes sic suum instituit ordinem, Deus, aqua, mundus, tempus generatio. Deus omnia fecit, non mundum, mundus tempus, & tempus generationem. Thomas dit. simul cum tempore. Quatuor enim ponuntur simul creata, scilicet Empyreum, materia corporalis, quam minor terra inchoata, Ægitus, Tempus & Natura Angelica. Sum p. 1. q. 47 art. 3. Fagius vertit, Quum Deus principio cœlum & terram creauit, erat terra inanis & vacua. Nam impiscitur (ait) hoc voluit Moses non statim ab initio expolitum fuisse mundum, vt hodie cernitur, sed tunc cœli & terra chaos fuisse creatum. f Oecumenius & Theodoretus interpretantur hanc Chrysostomo tribuunt. g Calvin. in Gen. Munster, Lather, Arretopeus & Fag. ap. Marlorat. R. Nathanaeus intelligit per cœlum & terram materiam tenuissimam & impalpabilem diuersa examen naturae, sed vt cœlum cœlestis, terra terrestris fuerit. Iunius interpretatur eximum illum huius vniuersitatis conditum, cum superioribus illius & statuatissus seruis atq; intelligentiis, tum materiam illam primam ex qua terra ac ea omnes cœlestes ac terrestres factae sunt. De triplici Cœlo vid. Ar. Meteor. Naturæ obseuat. h Theodoret. Beda. Strabus, Alcuinus, Lyra, & plerq; scholastici. i Zanch. de oper. Dei pars 1. Lib. 2. Burgens. Polanus, Rouenius, &c. Paul. Materials Cosmogr. par. 1. Lib. Perer. in Gen.* interprets by Heauen, the heauenly bodies then made and after perfected with light and motion; by Earth, the element of the Earth.

the word Heauen to a larger signification, therein comprehending those *three Heauens*, which the Scriptures mention: (one whereof is this lower, where the *birds of the Heauen* doe flye, reaching from the Earth to the Sphere of the Moone: the second, the visible Planets and fixed Starres, with the first Moueable: the third, called the *Heauen of Heauens, the third Heauen and Paradise of* GOD) together with all the Host of them. By *Earth*, they vnderstand this Globe, consisting of Sea and Land, with all the creatures therein. The first Verse they hold to be a generall proposition of the Creation of all Creatures, [k] visible and inuisible, perfected in [l] sixe dayes; as many places of Scripture testifie: which as concerning the visible, *Moses* handleth after particularly, largely, and plainly, contenting himselfe with briefe mention of those inuisible creatures, both [m] good and [n] bad, as occasion is offered in the following parts of his Historie. In the present, [o] he omitteth the particular description of their Creation, lest some (as Iewes and Heretikes haue done) should take occasion to attribute the Creation to Angels, as assistants: or should, by the excellencie of that Nature, depainted in due colours, be carryed to worshipping of Angels: a superstition which men haue embraced, towards the visible creatures, farre in seriour both to Angels and themselues.

[p] *Moses* proceedeth therefore to the description of the first matter, and the creatures thereof framed and formed. For touching those inuisible creatures, both the Angels and their heauenly habitation, howsoeuer they are circumscribed, and haue their proper and most perfect substance, yet according to the interpretation of Diuine, [p] their nature differeth from that of other creatures, celestiall or terrestriall, as not being made of that first matter, whereof these consist. Let vs therefore labour rather to be like the Angels in grace, that we may be like vnto them in glory, than prie too curiously into their [q] Nature (to our vnderstandings in manner supernaturall) and endeauour more, in heeding the way which leadeth to that *Heauen of the Blessed*, than busie our wits too busily in descrying or describing it. Onely thus much wee may obserue thereof, that it is beyond all reach of our obseruation: in regard of substance not subiect to corruption, alteration, passion, motion: in quantitie, [r] *many dwelling places*, most spacious and ample; in quality, a Paradise, faire, shining, delightsome, wherein no euill can be present or imminent; no good thing absent; a meere transcendent, *which eye hath not seene, nor eare heard, nor the heart of man can conceiue.* Where the [s] *Tabernacle of* GOD *shall be with men, and he dwell with them, and shall be* [t] *all in all vnto them; where the pure in heart shall see him*, and euen our bodily eyes shall behold that most glorious of creatures, the Sunne of righteousnesse, and Sonne of GOD, Christ Iesus.

Embracing these things with Hope, let vs returne to *Moses* his description of the sensible World: who sheweth, that that Heauen and Earth, which now wee see, were in the beginning, or first degree of their being, an *Earth without forme and void*, a darkned *depth and waters*: a matter of no matter, and a forme without forme; a rude and indigested *Chaos*, or confusion of matters, rather to be [u] beleeued than comprehended of vs. This is the second naturall beginning. For, after the expressing of the matter, followeth that which Philosophers call a second natural Principle, [x] *Privation*, the want of that forme, of which this matter was capable, which is accidentally a naturall principle, required in regard of generation, not of constitution, heere described by that part next vs, *Earth*, which was *without forme*, as is said, *and void*. This was the internall constitution: the externall was, *darknesse vpon the face of the deepe*. [y] Which Deepe comprised both the Earth before mentioned, and the visible Heauens also, called a Depth, as to our capacitie infinite, and plant to the Almightie hand of the Creator: called also *Waters*, [z] not because it was perfect waters, which was yet confused, but because of a certaine resemblance, not only in the vniformity thereof, but also of that want of stability, whereby it could not abide together, but as the Spirit of GOD moued vpon these waters, to sustaine them; and [a] as the Hen sitteth on her egges to cherish and quicken, as *Hieronme* interpreteth the word, so to maintaine, and by his mightie power to bring the same into this naturall order. Heere therefore is the third beginning or Principle in Nature, *That forme*, which the Spirit of God, the third person in Trinitie, (not ayre or wind, as some conceiue, being things which yet were not themselues formed) by that action framed it vnto, and after more particularly effected.

This interpretation of the Spirit mouing vpon the Waters, agreeth with that opinion which some attribute to the Stoikes. That all things are procreated and gouerned by one Spirit, Which *Democritus* called the soule of the world, *Hermes* and *Zoroaster*, and *Apollo Delphicus* call [a] Fire, the maker, quickner, and preserver of all things; and *Virgil* most elegantly and diuinely singeth, seeming to paraphrase on *Moses* words:

Principio cœlum ac terras, campos que liquentes,
Lucentemque globum Lunæ, Titaniq; stellas,
Spiritus intus alit, totamque infusa per artus
Mens agitat molem, & magno se corpori miscet.

The interpretation of this mystiall Phylosophie, yee may borrow of himselfe in his *Panarg. Pantagr. Pantagr. Pancos*: more agreeing with Zoroaster, Hermes, and some Platonikes, then the Scriptures, which shew that all things were immediatly created in the beginning by God.

[k] Col. 1. 16.
[l] Gen. 2. 1. Exod. 20. 11. Heb. 3. 7.
[m] Gen. 3. 2. 1.
[n] Gen. 3. 1.
[o] Pet. Martyr. in Gen.
[p] Zach. de opere vrb. part. 1. libr. 1. cap. 4.
[q] As Dionys. de those which *Tritemius* mentioneth, *de intelligent. cœlest.* which number 7. *Orifiel, Anael, Zuthariel, Raphael, Samael, Gabriel, Michael*, all which in course and succession gouerne the world. Each 354. years and 4. months, &c.
[r] Ioh. 14. 2.
[s] Apoc. 21. 3.
[t] 1. Cor. 15. 28.
[u] Heb. 11. 3.
[x] Arist. Phys. 1. 1. tan. 7. ref. in Gen.
[y] By darknesse and deep, Philoponus vnderstandeth the Aire and Water. ap. Plut. 240
[z] Gobbins on Genes.
[a] Hier. l. 1. trad. Hebr. Vrem. & Iun. Basil. hom. 2. ex Ephrem. Syro.
[a] Mercur. de Fab. mundi. & exte eum Tertul. ad Hermog. 1. bood. q. 8. in Gen. Caietan. de Angelis interpretatur R. Moschen. Maim. Mor-Neb. 1. 2. c. 39. in of that mind: Mat. 12. 6. 24. he findeth the foure elements in these foure words heere mentioned: *Earth, Spirit, Deepe, and Darknesse.*
a Particius numbereth the limbes of this chaine, in this order: *Calor qui in terra, aqua, mista est, ab aere pendet, hic à cœlitis, in à sole & astris: hic vero ab Empyreo: Empyreus à luminis calore: hic ab animario: hic ab intellectualis: hic à virtuti, vimario: hic quoq; à primario essentiali: hic itidem ab ideali, qui in Deo habitat & à Deo patre est derivatus. Pancos l. 5.*

[b] *Principio Cœlum, ac Terras, camposque liquentes*
Lucentemque globum Lunæ Titaniique astra,
Spiritus intus alit: totamque infusa per artus
Mens agitat molem & magno se corpore miscet.

That is,

Heauen first, and Earth, and Watrie plaines,
Bright Moone, of Starres those twinckling traines,
The Spirit inly cherisheth,
Loues, moues, great body nourisheth;
Through all infus'd this *All* containes.

b *Virg. Æneid. l.6.* on which words *Servius* commenteth, *Deus est quidam diuinus spiritus, qui per 4. infusa elementa gignit vniuersa. & Varro. & Macrobr. in Gen.*

The first creature which receiued naturall forme was the light, of which God said, *Let there be light*; a lightsome and delightsome subiect of our Discourse, especially hauing lately passed such a confused and darke Chaos. But here (I know not how) that which then lightned the deformed matter of the vnformed World, hath hidden it selfe: some [c] interpreting this of the Sunne, which they will haue then created; some [d] of an immaterial qualitie, after receiued into the Sunne and Starres; some [e] of a cloud formed of the waters, circularly moued, and successiuely lightning either Hemisphere, of which afterwards the Sunne was compact; from which they [f] differ not much, which thinke it the matter of the Sunne, then more diffused and imperfect, as the waters also were earthie, and the Earth fluible, till God by a second worke perfected and parted them. And (to let passe them which apply it to Angels or men) others [g] vnderstand it of the fiery Element, the essentiall property of which is to enlighten. Yet are we not here passed all difficulties, whiles some [h] (perhaps not vniustly) would perswade the world that *Fire*, as it is ordinarily in schooles vnderstood of a sublunary element, is with worse then *Promethean* theft stolne out of Heauen where it is visible, & imprisoned in this their Elementarie World: whereas *Anaxagoras, Thales, Anaximenes, Empedocles, Heraclitus, Plato, Parmenides, Orpheus, Hermes, Zoroaster, Philo*, and others, the fathers of the *Chaldean, Ægyptian, Iewish*, and *Gracian* Learning, account the [i] Heauens and heauenly bodies to be Ethereall fire, to which our sense also will easily subscribe. And *Patricius* affirmeth that *Ocellus Lucanus*, one of *Pythagoras* his Schollers, was first Author of that former opinion, from whom *Aristotle* borrowed it, if it bee not stealth rather, whiles here concealeth his name. Diuers [k] late Philosophers also seeme to haue conspired to burne vp that fiery Element, or rather to aduance it aboue this sublunary Region into the Ætherealll Throne. Let the Philosophers determine this when they doe other doubts: in meane while let vs, if you please, vnderstand this *Light* of the Fire, whether Ætherealll or Elementarie, or both, or neither, as in diuers respects it may bee. For neither was this Light then (as it seemeth) locally separated from that confused masse, and by expansion (which was the second dayes Worke) eleuated into her naturall place: and after that; it possessed the Sunne, Moone and Starres, saith our sense, which thence receiueth *Light*, and there in the Ætherealll Region seeth new Starres and superlunarie Comets, compact of Ætherall substance (as the most diligent [l] Obseruers haue recorded) both procreated and perishing: so that that which before was neither Ætherealll nor Elementarie, whiles there was neither Æther nor Element perfected, after became Ætherealll-Elementarie, as being happily the matter of the Sunne and Starres of old, and of these later [m] appearances; and also filling the Ætherealll World in the higher and lower Regions thereof, both aboue and beneath the Moone, with the *Light* here mentioned, and that vigorous heat, which as an effect or an effect thereof, procreateth, recreateth and conserueth the creatures of this inferiour World. No maruell, if the Philosophers are still dazeled and darkened in this light, not yet agreeing whether it bee a substance or qualitie, corporeall or incorporeall; when the *Father of Lights* himselfe thus conuinceth vs of darknesse; *Where is the way* [n] (saith he) *where light dwelleth?* And, *By what way is the light parted?* And if we cannot conceiue that which is so euidently seene, and without which nothing is seene and euident: how *inaccessible is that Light*, wherein the *Light* of this light *dwelleth?* Euen this light is more then admirable; [o] life of the Earth, ornament of the

c *Zanch. Hugo Lumbard. Tostatus, &c.*
d *Mercul. p.3. l.1 c.4.*
e *Damasc. de orth. l.2 c.7. Hugo Annot. in Gen. Gr. Dissert. Iustinus, &c.*
f *Vid Plutar. de Plac. Philos. l. 2. Patrit. Panaug. l.7. & Pancesl. 15 &c.*
g Ἀλήθειαν τοῦ κτίσματος, εἰς τὰς χάριτας κοπιάσας, ἀστέρας, *either an item distinct ab ἀδω to burne, Stauorum epistolarum vid. d. g. de Ciu. Dei 18 c.5.* The Sunne saith *Philo*, is ὀφθαλμὸς κόσμου πολλοῦ, and *Zanch. Sal. heb.* עשרים *q. d. ibi signis*: and another, *Calum ignis influens* מאתים שבעים אשרים *in est ignis & aqua.*
h *Cardan. de subt. l.1. Merula Cosl. 3.c. 2.lo. Pic. Mirand. de element. c.3. Tycho Brahe de Cometa 577. c. vlt. & Kep'er de stel. Nov. c.19. Bodin Praefatione, Marpurg. Scaliger, &c. Dion Hebr. Dialo. Ignis negat aeriquis notam ellum.*
i *Diod. Sic. & 2. de Comet. Kepler. & Bertholinus 4. numerant nouas stellas. vid. & Claui. in Sac. Bosc. & Casman. Ouranograp. & Cosmog. Hipparchi ste llam N. 49. Plin. &c.*
k Such as the new Stars.
l *Fire* is one of the foure Elements of the World, but not placed beneath the Moone. *Pa vid. Pancesl. l. 6 & 4.* hath foure infinite eternall (impious) Elements, Space, Light, Heate, and Moysture.
m *Iob 38. 19. Lucis Encom.*
n *Vid. Ficin. to. 1. de lum. & Patrit. Panaug. Leonem Heb. 3. dial. de Amore. De luce sic Cabalistae, Lux in patre luminum vera lux: in filio, splendor illa stans: in S. S. ardens fulger; in Angelis splendens intelligentia & gaudium: in homine ratio: in Cœlestibus splendor visibilis: in igne vita & vigor: in perfectis corporibus cabor: in opacis vis generans: in centro calor exsiccans. Archang. in Cabal. dog.*
o *Iob 28.*

Heauens,

Heavens, beautie and smile of the World, eye to our Eyes, joy of our Hearts: most common, pure and perfect of visible creatures; first borne of this World, and endowed with a double portion of earthly and heavenly Inheritance, shining in both; which containeth, lasteth, gatereth sweereth, purgeth, perfecteth, renueth, and preserueth all things; repelling dread, expelling sorrow, p *Shaking the wicked out of the Earth*, and lifting vp the hearts of the godly to looke for a greater and more glorious light; greatest instrument of Nature, resemblance of Grace, Type of Glorie, and bright Glasse of the Creators brightnesse.

This *Light* GOD made by his *Word*, not vttered with sound of syllables, nor that *which in the beginning* (and therefore before the beginning) *was with* GOD, *and was* GOD: but by his powerfull q effecting *(calling things that were not, as though they were)* and by his calling or willing causing them to be, thereby r signifying his will as plainly, and effecting it as easily as a word is to a man. That vncreated superessentiall light, the eternall Trinitie, commanded this *light to bee*, and approued it as good, both in it selfe and to the future Creatures: *and separated the same from darknesse* (which seemes a s meere priuation and absence of light) disposing them to succeed each other in the Hemisphere; which by what motion or resolution it was effected the three first dayes, who can determine? Fond it is to reason, *à facto ad fieri*, from the present order of constitution, to the Principles of that institution of the Creatures, whiles they were yet in making, as *Simplicius*, and other Philosophers (may I terme them, or Atheists?) haue absurdly done in this and other parts of the Creation. And this was the first dayes Worke.

p *Iob 38.13.*
q *Verbum Deiadstantes est, opus Dei naturae est. Amb Hex. l.1.c.9. Verbum hoc significat imperii, decretum & voluntatem Dei efficacem. Petr. Gibbins in Gen.*
r *Sic Beati bat. hom. 2 & alij: at Patritius Panaug. l.4. Distinguit corpora in lucida & opaca hac serie: à lucido corpore rady hinc in omnem inde fri enlor, illhinc nitor 2 quibus opponit similis ordine corpus opacum tenebras, obscurationem, umbram, umbrationem, adumbrationem, &c. & tenebrae, ait, habent aliquem, actiua virtus, vires ad essentia, &c.*

THE SECOND DAYES WORKE.

IN the second, GOD said, *Let there bee a Firmament.* The word *Rakiah* translated Firmament, signifieth t *expansum* or *expansionem*, a stretching out; designing that vast and wide space, wherein are the watery clouds here mentioned, and those Sights which follow in the fourteen 5th Verse, by him placed in *expanso*: howsoever some u vnderstand it only of the Ayre. *The separating the waters vnder this Firmament from the waters aboue the Firmament*, some x interprete of waters aboue the Heauens, to refresh their exceeding heat, or of I know not what Chrystaline Heauen: some of spirituall substances, whom *Basil* confuteth, *Origen* (after his wont) Allegorically. Most probable it seemeth, that *Moses* intendeth the separation of those waters here below, in their Elementarie Seat, from those aboue vs in the clouds; to which *David* alluding, saith: *Hee y hath stretched out the Heauens like a Curtein, and laid the beames of his Chambers in the waters.* Thus separating of the waters is caused in the Ayrie Region, by the Ætherell, in which those stares are placed, which thus exhale and captiuate these waters. That matter before endued with *lightsome* qualitie, was now in this second day (as it seemeth) attenuated & extended aboue and beyond that myrie heape of Earthy waters; and both the Æther and Aire formed of this z same first matter, and not of a fift Essence which some haue deuised to establish the Heauens Eternitie, both Twins of the Philosophers braines. And wherein doe not these differ from each other to chiefe? Celestiall Nature, Roundnesse, Motion, Number, Measure, and other difficulties, most of which are by some a denyed? Diuersitie of motions caused the Ancients to b number eight Orbes; *Ptolemie* on that ground numbred nine; c *Alphonsus* and *Tebitius* ten; *Copernicus* finding another motion, reuised the opinion of *Aristarchus Samius*, of the Earths mouing, &c. Others which therein dissent from him, yet in respect of that fourth motion haue added an eleuenth Orbe, which the Diuines make vp euen twelue by their Empyreall immoueable Heauen. And many deny this assertion of Orbes, supposing them to haue beene supposed rather for c instructions sake then for any real being. And *Moses* here saith *expansum*, as *David* also calleth it a *Curtaine*, which in such diuersitie of Orbes thou I rather haue beene spoken in the plurall number. The *Sidereus Nuncius* d of *Galileus Galileus*, tels vs of foure new Planets, *Iupiters* attendants, obserued by the helpe of his Glasse, which would multiply the number of Orbes further. A better Glasse, or nearer sight and site might perhaps find more Orbes, and thus should we runne *in Orbem*, in a Circular endlesse Maze of Opinions. But I will not dispute this question, or take it away by auerring e the Starres animated, or else moued by f *Intelligentiae*. A learned Ignorance shall better content me, and for these varieties of motions, I will with E *Lactantius*, ascribe them to GOD, the Architect of Nature, and Co-worker the Heauens, and the Beasts Angels. g *Non est sydereibus ratio, sed Dei est illa, &c. Lact. l.2.5.*

t *Iunius, Pagnine &c. Fagius habet eo modo quo velea expandiuntur, vel quo argentum malleo diducitur. Sic Mercer in Gen.*
u *Iun. Mouth. Ia. Pic. Mirand.*
x *Bas. & Amb. in Hex. Da Bat. Mufcul. in Gen. Tho Aquin. Bela Lauchert, & Scholastici.*
y *Psal. 104.3.*
z *Sic Plato Timo vide in eos Ficin. in dimenza statuunt (non subluunt a) sed ipsius Mundi vnuersi. Cælum est 1. mensu. in flexio cuiā est quadam terra Cæ. ssia, in cellquo cælo est vel aqua cal. lis, &c. de mer. ia Cæ's consule. Zanch & Calmin. Ouiedo. & Zabarella.*
a *Pari 1. Pan. co Sub. 7.8.9.10. 11.12.13.14.*
b *Vide de hac Christ. Clau. in Sacr. Bosc. Keckerman. Syst. Astron Magini Tract. 5.*
c *Illi (orbes) vnicis in Cælo non inhiant, sed docendi & intelligendi gratia reponuntur Tycho Br. l. 1. p. 180. sic Keckerman, Barbosinus, aliij.*
d *Gil. Gal. Sid. Nun.*
e *F. Rites de Ant. Gentis. Bodin Thea. Nat. 5. Patric. Ficinus Platonici. R. Mos Ben. Mesmon.*
f *Arib. &c. R. Moses in interpret. Ezekiels Vision. 1. the wheeles to be*

therewith by wayes Naturall, but best knowne to himselfe. Neither list I to dance after their Pipe, which ascribe a Musicall harmonie [i] to the Heauens.

i *The Pythagor. R. Dio of Cic. Som. Scip.*

THE THIRD DAYES WORKE.

AND thus were the Æthereall and Ayrie parts of the World formed: in the Third Day followeth the perfecting of the two lowest Elements, Water and Earth, which as yet were confused, vntill that mightie Word of GOD did thus both diuorce and marry them, compounding of them both this one Globe, which he called, *Dry Land and Seas.* I call it a Globe with the Scriptures, [k] and the best Philosophers, [l] for which respect *Numa* built the Temple of *Vesta* round. Neither yet is it absolutely round and a perfect Spheare, but σφαιροειδὴς rather, [m] *Strabo* affirmeth, hauing (saith [n] *Scaliger*) βαθυχάς καὶ ἐξοχάς, depressed Vallies, extended Plaines, swelling Hillockes, high-mounting Mountaines, long courses of Riuers, and other varieties of Nature and Art, which all in so huge a masse rather beautifie the roundnesse, then take it away. The Eclipse of the Moone later seene [o] in the East then in the West, the round shaddow of the Earth, which darkeneth it, the rising of the Sunne and Starres, sooner in the [p] East then West, the vnequall eleuation of the Pole, and the Northerne Constellations appearing to vs, the Southerne continually depressed: all these obseruing due proportions, according to the difference of places and Countries; yea, the compassing of the Earth by many Mariners, argue the round compasse thereof, against *Paritius* [q] his disformitie, or that deformitie which other [r] Philosophers haue ascribed thereto. The equalitie or inequalitie of dayes according to the neerenesse or farrenesse from the Equinoctiall, holding proportion as well by Sea as Land (as doth also the eleuation of the Pole) and not being longer where [s] a quarter of the World is Sea, then if it were all Earth, doe confute the pretended disformititie by Hils, Dales, Waters, compared [t] with the Diameter of this Globe, is not so much as the inequalitie in an Apple, or a carued Bowle, or quilted Ball, which yet we call round. And this diuersitie serueth not onely for ornament, but for more largenesse of Habitation, varietie of Ayre and Earth, and for pleasure and profit. Thus doth this Globe swell out to our vse, for which it enlargeth it selfe: and seemeth large to vs, being in respect of the Vniuerse lesse then little. How much thereof is couered with waters? How much not at all discouered? How much desart & desolate? And how many millions are they, which share the rest of this little among them? And yet how many thousands glorie of the greatnesse of their possessions? All this Globe is demonstrable [u] to be but a point, and in comparison nothing, to that wide wide Canopie of Heauen; a mans possession but a point, and as nothing to the Earth; a man of possessions, but a point, and in a manner, nothing to his possessions; and (as *Socrates* [x] said sometimes to *Alcibiades*) few can shew their Lands in an vniuersall Map, where a whole Region occupieth a small roome: and yet how couetous, how proud is *dust and ashes* of dust and earth, notwithstanding the little we haue while we liue, and that lesse which shall haue and possesse vs in a Prison of three Cubits being dead? Well did one [y] compare this our grosser and drosser World to an Ant-hill, and men the Inhabitants to so many Pismires, in the varietie of their diuersified studies, toyling and turmoyling themselues therein. *Scipio* seemed ashamed of the *Romane* [z] Empire, as seeming but a point of the Earth, which it selfe was but a point. And yet how readie are many to sell Heauen for Earth? That *largenesse* and *continuance* beyond all names of time and place, for this momentany possession of almost nothing, although they haue Hell and Deuill and all in the bargaine? Let this morall obseruation entertaine our Reader, perhaps tyred in these rigid Disputes: and now let vs returne to the naturall disposition and constitution of this Globe, in which the Earth was couered with varietie of Plants and Fruits, which had beene before couered with slimy waters.

k *Prob.31. Esa.40.22.*
l *Plat. Aristot. Stoick. Cic. de N. D. l.2. Manil. Astron. l.1. Record, &c.*
m *S. lib. 2.* σφαιροειδὲς τῇ γῇ καὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ.
n *Iosf. Scal. in Manilio. l.1.*
o *In Drakes Voyage about the World, an Eclipse seene here, Septem. the sixteenth, before one in the morning, was seene by them in the Magellane straights, Sept. 15. at six in the euening.*
p *The Portugals staying to China East, haue th ir day twelue houres sooner then we: the Spaniards to Manilla West, twelue houres later. So that both meeting there together, differ a day in reckoning: Ones Tuesday is the others Wednesday.*
q *Pat. Pancost. l. 25. c. 31.*
r *Vid. Plut. de plac. ph. l. 3.*
s *As at Saint Miguel and Panama, where the South Sea extends to the Philippinæ.*
t *Erasm. thought the*

God commanded, and the Waters which yet oppressed, and by their effusion and confusion did tyrannize, rather then orderly subdue, and gouerne this inferiour myrie masse, were partly received into competent channels, and there also gathered on swelling heapes, where, though they menace a returne of the old Chaos, both by their noyse and waues, yet hath GOD *stablished his Commandement vpon it, and set barres and doores, and said, Hitherto shalt thou come and no further, and here shall it stay thy proud waues.* Otherwise, *The Deepes which then couered it as a Garment, would now stand aboue the Mountaines. At his rebuke they flee,* who with fetters of sand (to shew his power in weaknesse, with a Miracle in Nature) chaineth vp this inraged Tyrant,

k *Prob.31.*
Esa.40.22.
l *Plat. Aristot. Stoick. Cic. de N. D. l.2. Manil. Astron. l.1. Record, &c.*
m *S. lib. 2.* σφαιροειδὲς τῇ γῇ καὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ.
n *Iosf. Scal. in Manilio. l.1.*
o *In Drakes Voyage about the World, an Eclipse seene here, Septem. the sixteenth, before one in the morning, was seene by them in the Magellane straights, Sept. 15. at six in the euening.*
p *The Portugals staying to China East, haue th ir day twelue houres sooner then we: the Spaniards to Manilla West, twelue houres later. So that both meeting there together, differ a day in reckoning: Ones Tuesday is the others Wednesday.*
q *Pat. Pancost. l. 25. c. 31.*
r *Vid. Plut. de plac. ph. l. 3.*
s *As at Saint Miguel and Panama, where the South Sea extends to the Philippinæ.*
t *Erasm. thought the*

highest Hill to bee but tenne Furlongs, *Cleomedes* 15. which holdeth proportion (in their iust Diameters) to the Earth, but of one to 3818. saith *R. Huts de Globis.* u By the like magnitudes of Starres in all places, by the shadowes, Horizon, &c. *Ambros. Hex. 4. 6.* x *Ælian. v. hist. lib. 3. 28. Horum agrorum possessione te effers, qui nulla pars sunt terræ?* y *Hall. Arte of Medit.* z *Som. Scip. Plin. lib. 2. Hæc est materia gloriæ nostræ, hæc sedes hic tumultuatur hominum genus, &c. quid ex terrarum parte quadrat? vel cum ad universam mortalitis suæ propagineris, quam tandem portunculam illa defunctus obtineat?*

Tyrant, that the Creatures might haue a meet place of Habitation. Thus did not only the dry Land appeare, but by the same hand was enricked with Herbes and Trees, enabled in their mortall condition, to remayne immortall in their *kinde*. And here beginneth *Moses* to declare the Creation of compound bodies; hitherto busied in the Elements.

THE FOVRTH DAYES WORKE.

NOw when ehe Lord had made both Plants, Trees, and Light, without the influence, yea, before the being of the Sunne, Moone, or Starres, he now framed those fiery Balls, and glorious Lights, whereby the Heauens are beautified, the Ayre enlightned, the Seas ruled, and the Earth made fruitfull. Thus he did the fourth day, * after those other things created, lest some foolish Naturalist should bind his mightie hand in Natures bands, seeing these Lights now become the chiefe Officers in Natures Court. That shining before dispersed, was vnited in these bodies, whether by refraction of those former beames, by these solid Globes, or by gathering that fiery substance into them, or by both, or by other meanes, I leaue to others conjectures. * Many are the Dreames of Philosophers, some esteeming them Fire; some Earth, others Clouds, and others Stones, fired; *Heraclides*, and the Pythagoreans deemed each starre a World. They are commonly holden *Round, simple, lucide bodies, the most compact and condensate* [b] *parts of their Orbs*, or of that Ætherealll Region, of, and in which they are: bright flames, not of this our fire which deuoureth and consumeth (for the whole Ocean would not serue the Sunne alone for a Draught, nor the Earth with all her store for a Breake-fast) but quickning and nourishing. Let vs a little consider of their *Greatnesse, Swiftnesse, Number, Influence.*

For the first, *Ptolomey* measured the Sunnes greatnesse 166 $\frac{2}{3}$. times as much as the whole Terrestriall Globe: *Copernicus*, whom *Scaliger* [c] calleth *Alterum aui nostri Ptolomeum*) 162. *Tycho Brahe* [d] 140. The Moone is holden by *Ptolomeus* 39. times lesse then the Earth, by *Copernicus* 43. by *Tycho* 42. *Albategnius* and *Alfraganus* haue added their opinions of the rest, therefore diuiding them into sixe rankes or formes of differing magnitudes: wherein as they somewhat differ from each other, so much more from *Tycho Brahe*, that Learned Dane, whole costs and [e] paines, in this Science are admirable. But *Salomon* (wiser then they all) had fore-told, [f] that the *Heauens in height, and the Earth in deepnesse, and the Kings heart, none can search out*: that is, exactly and absolutely, as appeareth in the differing opinions, both of the Earths [g] Circuit and Diameter, and of the Altitude of the Heauens, and consequently of the quantitie of the Starres, which must presuppose the former. They agree not in the order of the Planets, nor how many Semi-diameters of the Earth the Heauen is cleated, which after *Ptolomeys Hypotheses* are 20000. after *Tychos* reckoning 14000. Hence it is, that the quantitie and the swiftnesse [h] is much more after the former, then after this later opinion, which doth better salue the incredibleneſse thereof, then sayning a *Giant-like labour* (as *Ramus* [i] calleth it) of the Earths continuall rolling.

The number [k] of Starres, some haue reckoned 1600. others 1022. and *Tycho Brahe* more. The Iewes out of their Cabalists reckon 290160. *Galileus* his Glasse hath made them innumerable, in descrying infinite numbers, otherwise not visible to vs, and especially the Galaxia full of them. Yea, God himselfe propounds it to *Abraham*, [l] (whom *Iosephus* calls a great Astronomer) as a thing impossible to number them. It is his owne Royall Prerogatiue, [m] *He counteth the number of the Starres, and bringeth out their Armies by number, and calleth them all by their names*. The end why GOD placed them in the Firmament, *Moses* expressleth, *To separate the Day from the Night, and to be for signes and for seasons, and for dayes, and for yeares, and for lights in the Firmament of the Heauen, to give light vpon the Earth*. Their influence and effects are in Scripture [n] mentioned: neither can any iustly deny the same in the Elements and Elementary bodies: the Stoicall Fate, the Chaldean, Iewish, and Arabian Fancies, are now disclymed euen by those [o] Learned, which maintayne in our dayes Iudiciall Astrologie, or commend the same. Neither can it agree with Christian Religion, to subiect the will of Man to any externall naturall force, nor with reason in matters contingent, and casuall to make them naturall Arbiters: nor will I easily beleeue that particular events can be foro-told from generall causes, especially in the affaires and fortunes of men. Where the numbers, substances, faculties, actions of these starrs are weakly or not at al known vnto vs (as hath beene shewed) it is like as to say, how many and what kind of Chickens a Hen will hatch, when wee see not all, nor scarce know any of the Eggs vnder her. The

* A Iew at Rome asked a Philosopher, the reason, why the Sunne shined euery Weeke-day. The Philosopher obseruing it true, but not assigning a cause, the Iew said, It was, because the Sunne thus honored in his Birth-day.
Iosef. Leuita.
a *Plut. de Plac. Phil. l. 2. Barthol. de Stella, pag. 6.*
b *Barthol.* doueth them to be of the same substance, pag. 301. and so doth R. *Mos. Moreb. lib. 2. cap. 20.*
c *Scal. Opusc. in Eusib.*
d *De ba vid. Tych. Br. de Nouo St. pag. 465. Pytha. cap. Phot. 100. Giuum in sac. Bucliunatsar. intr. due. Alfragan. diff. 19. & d.*
e 100000 Dollers in *Præfat. Alphonsius* spent on his Tables 400000. Ducats: or after *Turquets* storie more.
f *Prou. 25.*
g *Claudius 7. numerat.*
h 4398637 $\frac{5}{8}$. miles in one hour, after *Ptol.* his Hypoth. as *Patric.* reckoneth, so that a Bird of like swiftnesse might compasse the Earth 1884. times vnder the Line in an houres space. Hee to salue this incredibilitie, deuiseth a motion both of the Earth, and of the Starres, one from the East, the other from the West.
i *Ram. Math. Schol. lib. 11.*
k *Barthol. de Stell.*
l *Gen. 15. 5.*
m *Psal. 147. Esa. 40.*
n *Hos. 2. 11. Iud. 5. Iob 38. Sir. Zan. de Op. & Arius Mont. Stellas Cherubim vocari ait, id est, virtutis receptacula. A. M. de Nat.*
o *Hen. à Lindhout, S. Cb. Heydan. vide Tolosiis Rationes, &c. Franciscus, Maurus, &c. Vinet de Cur. art. l. 5.*

swift-

swiftnesse of the Heauens Wheele, p which euen in the moment of obseruing, is past obseruing, the vanitie of our Oracle-Almanacks, which commonly speake doubtfully or falsely of the weather; the infinitenesse almost of causes concurring, which are diuersly qualified, the weaknesse of those q foundations, on which this Art is grounded; the force of hereditarie qualities descended from Parents, of custome and education in forming mens manners; the disagreements of the Astrologers among themselues, the new from the old, and all from the Truth, as Experience in all ages hath shewed: And lastly, the prohibition of the same by Scripture, Fathers, Councels, Lawes; yea, the learnedest of the Chaldeans, and other Astronomers themselues, (as *Eusebius* r reciteth of *Bardanes*, and *Rob. Moses ben Maimon* hauing
10 read all the Arabians workes hereof, answereth the Iewish Astrologers) are strong arguments against the *Starre-gazers* predictions. But let *Picus Mirandula* his twelue Bookes against Astrologie, and *Ioseph Scaligers* Preface before *Manilius* be well weighed of such as dote on, or doubt of this Genethliacal ridiculous vanitie, if not s impious vil any, as those Authors and others t prouue it, not by the errors of some Chiefetaines and Champions onely, but of the Arte itselfe, and the whole Senate of Iewish, Saracenical, and Christian Astrologers together, hatching a lye. The signes and constellations which Astronomers obserue in and on each side the Zodiakes, would be too prolixe in this discourse already tedious: as likewise those alterations which some haue obserue I in some starres.

But those *two great Lights*, (or two eyes of the Heauens) *the greater light to rule the day,*
20 *and the lesse to rule the night*, (which is called great, u not so much for the quantitie wherein it is lesse then many starres, as for the operation and seeming to the sense) doe command mine eyes to take more speciall view of their beauties. How willing could I be (like *Phaton*) to mount the Chariot of the Sunne? *which commeth forth as a Bridegroome out of his Chamber, and reioyceth like a mightie man to runne his race*; King of Starres enthronized in the mids of the Planets; heart of the World, eye of the Heauens, brightest gemme of this goodly Ring, father of dayes, yeeres, seasons, meteors; Lord of light, fountaine of heate, which seeth all things, and by whom all things see, which lendeth light to the starres, and life to the World; high Steward of Natures Kingdome, and liuelieft visible x Image of the liuing inuisible God.

And dazled with this greater light, I would reflect mine eyes to that reflexion of this
30 light in the sober, siluer countenance of the silent Moone; which (whether it haue any native shining, though weake, as *Zanchius* and *Bartholinus* hold; or whether it bee an ætherealll earth y with Mountaines and Vallies, and other not elementary Elements, compact of the dregs of the æthereal parts; or whatsoever else reason, fancie, or phrensie haue imagined thereof) is Queene of the Night, attended with the continuall dances of twinckling starres, Mother of Moneths, Lady of Seas and z moysture, constant image of the Worlds inconstancie, which it neuer seeth twice with the same face; and truest modell of humane frailtie, shining with a borrowed light, and eclipsed with euery interposition of the earth. But I am not *Endymion*, nor so much in *Lunaes* fauour, as to be lulled asleepe in her lap, there to learne these mysteries of Nature, and the secrets of that happy marriage between these celestial twinnes.
40 And it is high time for me to descend from these measures of time; the lampes of the World, and to behold the neerer works of GOD before our feet in the ayre and waters, which GOD on the fift day created. But the principall rarities to be obserued in these creatures, we shall disperse in our scattered discourses through this Worke, as occasion shall bee offered; as likewise touching the beasts both Wilde and Tame, and the creeping things created the sixth day. Thus was the Ayre, Water, and Earth, furnished with their proper inhabitants.

> a *Sanctius his animal mentisque capacius alte,*
> *Decrat adhuc, & quod dominari in cætera posset:*
> *Natus homo est.*

50 After he had thus prouided his cheere, he sought him out a guest, and having built and furnished his house, his next care was for a fit Inhabitant. Of this, *Moses* addeth, *Further more God said, Let Vs make Man.* But this will aske a longer discourse. In the meane time wee haue this testimonie of *Moses* of the Creation of the World, whose sense, if I haue missed or misted in these many words, I craue pardon. And although this testimonie might suffice a Christian, which must liue by c *faith*, and not by *sight*: yet to preuent cauillers, we haue other

p *Nig. Figulus*, in the swiftmotion of a wheele, made two blots, which then seemed neere; but at the standing of the wheele were farre asunder. q The twelue Houses, one for the Soule, another for Children, Fortune, Death, &c. *Pid. Alcabit. Hall. Io. de Saxonia, &c.*
r *Euseb. de præp. l.6.c.2. R. Mos. in Ep. ad Iud. Marsil.* Contrarie, fifth Sect. to good manners, Philosophy, Geometry, Christianitie: they ascribe Christian Religion to *Mercurie*, and *Albumasar* foretold it should continue but 1460. Yeeres, *Abt. Iudeus*, of the cõming of their *Messias*, *A.D.*1464. *Arnaldus* of *Antichrist A.Di* 1345. In 1179. they all, Arabians, Iewes, and Christians, foretold almost a dissolution of the World by tempests to happen in 1186. with lye and all &c.
s *Pico, Ep.2.l.2. & Mar. Fic. Merula. Fulc. Antipro, &c.*
t *Ex his veteres Hyginus, Manil. & ex Aratos Germanicus Cæs. Cicero, Auienus, &c.*
u *Non tam aliorum comparatione magnus, quam radius eius est.* Ambros. hex. l.4.c.6. vid. Nazianz. Orat.34.
x For the beautie and operation; and the Sunne, the beame (which is one) in light for resemble the Trinitie. *Arr. Mont. de Nat. p.182.*
y *De his vid. Patric. Pancos. Saliger Exer. 62. Gal. Gal. Plut. de plac.*
z *Soli celeus & illustrationis. Lunæ humectandi, dilatandi, atq; spirandi vis, Arr. Mont. Hæc solis & aliarum planetarum fetum suscipiens, Mundio sibi vicino edit: à Mercurio accipit vim humores commiscentem, à Venere genituræ consentiens, à Marte robur & impetum, & Iouis natui alem spiritum, & rerum omnium fomentum, à Saturno compagines & stabilitatem, à sole (qui omnium de virtutem continet) saturam & lumen, &c. Archang. in Cabalist. dogmata Io. Pic. Vid. Leon. Heb. de Amore Dial.3.*
a *Ouid. Metamor. l.1.*
b *Philo de Fin. & R. Meir. in Talmud. trac. Sanhed.*
c Faithis the euidence of things not seene. *Vbi videt, non sit fidei.*

wit-

witnesses both of reason and authority, That this World had a Beginning, and that the Builder and Maker thereof, was GOD. For doth not Nature both within and without vs, in the admirable frame of this lesse or that greater World, in the Notions of the one, and the Motions of the other, in the wise and mighty order and ordering of both, lead men vnto a higher and more excellent [d] Nature, which, of his [e] goodnesse, we call GOD? When we behold the whole World, or any part of it, in the Elements such agreement, in such disagreement: in the Heauenly motions such constancie, in such varietie: in these compound bodies, Being, Liuing, Sense, Reason; as diuers degrees, diuerstly communicated to so many formes and rankes of Creatures: We can no more ascribe these things to chance, than a Printers Case of Letters could by chance fall into the right Composition of the Bible which he Printeth: or of *Homers Iliads* (to vse [f] *Tullies* similitude:) neither can any ascribe the Creation to the Creature, with better reason, then if by some shipwracke, being cast on a desolate Iland, and finding houses, but seeing no people therein, he could esteeme the Birds, or Beasts, (all the Ilanders he seeth) to be the framers of these buildings: But thou mayest think it eternall; Thou mayest as well thinke it to be GOD, Infinite, Vnchangeable, in the whole and in all the parts. Doth not the Land by seasons, the Sea by ebbing and flowing, the Aire by succeeding changes, the Heauens by motions, all measured by Time, proclaime that they had a beginning of Time? Are not Motion and Time as meere Twinnes, as Time and Eternitie are implacable enemies? Nay, how canst thou force thy mind to conceiue an Eternitie in these things, which canst not conceiue Eternitie? which canst not but conceiue some beginning, and first terme or point, from whence the motion of this Wheele began? And yet how should we know this first turning of the Worlds wheele, whose hearts within vs moouе, be we vnwitting or vnwilling, the beginning whereof thou canst not know, and yet canst not but know that it had a beginning, and together with thy body shall haue an ending? How little a while is it, that the best [g] Stories in euery Nation, shew the cradle and child-hood thereof? Their later receiued Letters, Arts, Ciuilitie? But what then, say they, did GOD before he made the World? I answer, that thou shouldest rather thinke Diuinely of Man, then Humanely of GOD, and bring thy selfe to be fashioned after his Image, then frame him after thine. This foolish question some answer according to the foolishnesse thereof, saying; He made Hell for such curious Inquisitors. [h] *Aliud est videre, aliud videre*, saith *Augustine. Libentius responderim nescio quod nescio. Quæ tempora fuissent, quæ abs te condita non essent? Nec in tempora tempore præcedis. sed celsitudine semper præsentis æternitatis, &c.* [i] Before all things were, GOD onely was, and he vnto himselfe was in stead of the World, Place, Time, and all things, hauing all goodnesse in himselfe: the holy Trinitie [k] *delighting and reioycing* together. To communicate therefore (not to encrease, or receiue) his goodlinesse, he created the World, [l] *quem Græci* [m] κόσμον (saith *Plinie*) *nomine ornamenti appellant, nos à perfecta absolutaq; elegantia Mundum.* But for this matter, it is also of the wiseſt and most learned in all Ages confessed, as their testimonies alleaged by *Iustin Martyr, Lactantius*, and other Ancients, and especially by [n] *Philip Morney*, doe plainely manifest. To him therefore, to *Viues*, and others, which haue vndertaken this taske, by reason, and by humane authoritie, to conuince the gaine-sayers of our faith, let such resort, as would be more fully resolued in these curious doubts. As for all such o strange and phantasticall or phreneticall opinions of Heretikes, or Philosophers, which haue otherwise related of this mysterie of the Creation, then *Moses*, they need not confuting, and for relating these opinions we shall find fitter place afterwards. I will here add the thus saying of *Viues*, to such vnnaturall Naturalists, as vpon slight and seeming naturall reasons, call these things into question. [p] *Quam stultum est, de mundi creatione ex legibus huius Naturæ statuere, cùm creatio illa naturam anteceſserit? Tum enim natura est condita quando & mundus, nec aliud est natura quam quod Deus iussit, alioqui minister esset Deus natur æ, non Dominus.* Hence was a *Aristoteles* Eternitie, *Plinies* Deitie ascribed to the World, *Democritus, Leucippus*, and *Epicurus*, their *Atomi*, the Stoikes *Æterna materia*, PLATO's *Deus, exemplar & materia*, as [q] *Ambrose* tearmeth them, or as [r] others, *vnum & bonum, Mens & Anima*, (a Trinitie without perfect Vnitie) the *Manichees* two beginnings, and an endlesse world of errors about the World's beginning, because they measured all by Naturall axiomes. [s] *Orpheus*, as *Theophilus* the Chronographer cited by *Cedrenus*, alleadgeth him, hath his Trinitie of Λόγος & νοῦς ζωγρὰφ, & ΜΗΤΙΣ, ΦΩΣ, ΖΩΟΛΟΓΗΡ: to which he ascribeth the Worlds Creation: but the Poets dreames are innnite, which might make and marre their Poetical Worlds at pleasure.

d *Natura naturans.*
e So *Hermes, quod ouvoν τὸ θεῖον τὴ ἀγαθὸν, ὃ γὰρ ἀγαθὸς ἀναγκαῖος ἐστὶ καὶ ἀγαθοποιός.*
f *Cic. de Nat. Deor.*
g So *Lucret. l. 5. Cur suppe bellum The inquam Troiæ, & funera Troiæ, Non alias aliquoque res ciuere Poetæ? — necessè Natura est mutata, neq; priderna exordia cepit. Deinq; nouiquam natura'st ut, quæ cùm ipsa Tot res ante fuerit, nouas res esse emisit, neq; tamen ipsa sua minor esse studeat: Ignipotent de se calorem, nam tamen minor, ut quam prius, imo eundem in seruitium. Quæ tempora rerum.* Plutarch. l. 8.
h *Confess. l. 11. cap. 12. & 13.*
i *Tert. aduers. Prax.*
k *Prou. 8. 30.*
l *Plin. l. 2. c. 4.*
m *Pythagoras is reported the first which called it κόσμον. Meruls.*
n *De Veritate C. R. Matius Pansa de Ost. Ethnice & Christ. Philos. Vindic Veritate Christianæ fidei.*
o Of the opinions of Philosophers, touching the original of the World, see *Meruula Cosp. l. 1. p. 1. & Veritate fidei l. 2. c. 10.*
q *Hes. l. 1. c. 1.*
r *Idem & Aristotle lib. de dogmata Philosophorum.*
s *In Ex. rerum tria architectabat Plato, Deum & materiam rerum, & formas quas ideas idem vocat, in absolutas informes, &c.*
t *Plotinus Ennea. 1. lib. 2. vnum or bonum, Mens, Anima*, the *Platonikes* Trinitie.
f *In Euseb. Chron. Græc. Scaliger.*

CHAP. III.

Of Man, considered in his first state wherein hee was created: and of Paradise, the place of his habitation.

HItherto we haue spoken of the framing of this mightie Fabrike, the Creation of the visible World, leaving that Inuisible to the Spirituall Inhabitants, which there [a] *alway behold the face of the Heauenly Father*, as not daring to pry too farre into such Mysteries, *aduancing our selues in those things which wee neuer saw.* [b] *Rashly puffe vp with a fleshly minde.* This whereof we treat they need not, as finding all sufficience in their All-sufficient Creator: The inferiour Creatures (which hitherto haue beene described) know it not, but content [c] themselues with themselues, in enioying their naturall being, mouing, sense. O sely man, in regard of his body, ngedeth it, and by the reasonable power of his soule can discerne and vse it. Man therefore was last created, as the end of the rest, [d] an Epitome, and Mappe of the World, a compendious little other World, consisting of a visible and inuisible, heauenly and earthly, mortall and immortall Nature, the knot and bond of bodily and spirituall, superiour and inferiour substances, resembling both the [e] worke and the worke-man: the last in execution, but first in intention, to whom all these Creatures should seruе, as meanes and prouocations of his seruice to his and their Creator.

Man may be considered, in regard of this life, or of that which is to come: of this life, in respect of Nature or Grace: and this Nature also sustayneth a two-fold consideration, of integritie and corruption: For [f] GOD *made man righteous, but they sought to themselues many inuentions.* His first puritie in his Creation, his fall from thence by sinne, his endeuour to recouer his former innocency by future glory, eyther in the by-wayes of Superstition, which Nature (a blind guide) leadeth him into, through so many false Religions; or by *the true, new, and liuing way*, which GOD alone can set him, and doth conduct him in, is the subiect of our tedious taske; the first two more briefly propounded: the two last historically and largely related.

In that first state, his Author and Maker was *Iehoua Elohim*, GOD in the pluralitie of Persons, and vnitie of Essence; the Father, by the Sonne, in the power of the Spirit: whereunto he did not only vse his powerfull Word as before, saying; *Let there be Man*, but a consultation, *Let vs make Man*: not that he needed counsaile, but [g] that here in this Creature did shew his counsell and wisdome most apparantly. The Father, as first in order, speaketh vnto the Sonne and Holy Ghost, and the Sonne and Holy Ghost in an vnspeakeable manner speake and decree with the Father; and [h] the whole Trinitie consult and agree together, to make Man: which [i] for Mans instruction, is by *Moses* vttered after the manner of Men. The manner of his working was also in this Creature, singular; both in regard of his body, which, as a Potter his Clay, he wrought and framed of the dust into this goodly shape; and of his soule, which he immediately breathed into his nostrils.

Thus hath Man cause to glorie in his Creators care, in himselfe to bee humbled, hauing a body framed, not of solid Earth, but of the dust (the basest and lightest part of the basest and grossest Element, [k] *So vaine a thing is man*) his soule of nothing; lighter then vanitie, in the infusion created, and in the Creation infused, to be the dweller [l] *in this house of clay, and habitation of dust*, yea, not a house, but a [m] *Tabernacle continually in dissolution.* Such is the Maker and matter of Man. The forme was his conformitie to GOD, after whose Image he was made. Christ only is in full resemblance, *The* [n] *Image of the inuisible* GOD, *the brightnesse of his glory, & the ingraued forme of his Person.* Man was not this Image, but made *adimagmem, According to this Image*, resembling his Author, but with imperfection, in that perfection of human Nature.

This Image of GOD appeared in the soule properly; secondly, in the body (not as the [p] Anthropomorphite Heretikes, and [q] Popish Image-makers imagine, but) as the instrument of the soule, and lastly, in the whole Person. The soule in regard of the spirituall and immortall substance, resembleth him which is a Spirit, and euerlasting, [r] which seeth all things, remaynng it selfe vnseene, and hauing a nature in manner incomprehensible, comprehendeth the natures of other things: to which some adde the resemblance of the holy Trinitie, in this, that one soule hath those three essentiall faculties of Vnderstanding, Will, and Memory, or (as others) of Vegetation, Sense, and Reason. In regard of gifts and naturall endowments, the soule in the vnderstanding part receiued a Diuine Impression, and Character, in that knowledge, whereby shee measureth the Heauens, [s] bringeth them to the Earth, lifteth vp the Earth to the Heauen, mounteth aboue the Heauens to behold the

a *Mat.18.10.* b *Col.2.18.* c *Bernard sup. Cant. Serm.5.* d *Algazel. Apo. Paul. Ric. de Caelestis. c.1.* e *Homo est vniuersi orbis epitome, & abbreuiatio mundi Tabella.* f *O Homo audacis Naturæ miraculum, omnium miraculorum admirationem vincens, &c. Audendum est dicere Hominem Deum terrenum esse, Deum vero Celestem. Homines immortales. Trismeg. Pimand. Dictur homo μικρόκοσμος, quia omnes mundi virtutes continet; nam sicut in mundo dii, quatuor elementa, bruta, plantæ habet homo rationem mouendi, crescendi vim, &c. Aristides ap. Photi 249. vid. etiam Leon. Hebr. dial. 3. de Amore, Fr. Georg. &c.* g *Eccles.7.vlt.* h *Quia rationalis creatura, quasi cum consistorio diuinarum, loquitur, Beda) in Genes. Philo* attributeth it to the helpe of others, in making a Creature, not only parter of diuine vertues, but of vice also, which he could not deriue from his Creator: not obserning what *Salomon* saith (as is before) *Eccles.7.vlt.* i *Eccles.7.vlt.* k *Sacr. l. 2. c.25.* l *Cyril. Alex. cont. Iul. l.1.* m *Psal.62.9.* n *Iob 4.19.* o *Heb.1.3.* p *Epiph. hær.71.* q *Papists picture the Trinitie, the Creation, &c.* r *Philo. Iud. de Ia. Mun.* s *Totam hauritrequens in Cœlum attolleris, illuuia metiris Trismeg. Pimand.*

Angels, pierceth the Center of the Earth in darknesse, to discerne the infernall Regions and Legions, beneath and above them all, searcheth into the Diuine Nature: whereby, [t] *Adam* was, without study, the greatest Philosopher, (who at first sight knew the nature of the beasts, the original of the VVoman) and the greatest Diuine (except the second *Adam*) that euer the Earth bare. The will also, in free choice of the best things, in [u] righteous disposition towards man, and true holinesse towards GOD, was conformed to his will, *for whose will sake it is, and was created.* The body cannot so liuely expresse the vertue of him that made it, but as it could; in that perfect constitution, ([x] *so fearefully and wonderfully made*) and as the Organ of the soule, whose weapon it was to righteousnesse, had some shadow thereof. The whole Man in his naturall Nobility beyond, and Princely Dominion ouer the other Creatures (that we mention not the hope of future blessednesse) shewet h after what Image Man was created, and to what he should be renued. The end whereunto GOD made Man, is GOD himselfe, who hath [y] *made all things for himselfe*: the subordinate end was Mans endlesse happinesse, the way whereunto is religious obedience.

Moses addeth, [a] *He created them Male and Female*, thereby to shew, that the Woman in Oeconomicall respect is [b] *the Image and glory of the Man*, being created for the Man, and of the Man, but in relation to GOD, or the World, She, as a Creature, was also framed after the same Image. As for that monstrous conceit of the Rabbins, that the first man was an *Hermaphrodite*, it destroyeth not consutation or mention. The ordinance of the Woman Creation is plainly related. GOD [c] *finding not a meete helpe for Adam*, in his sleepe tooke one of his ribs, whereof he built the Woman. This in a Mystery signified that deadly sleepe of the heauenly *Adam* on the Crosse, whose stripes were our healing, whose death was our life, and out of whose bleeding side was by Diuine dispensation framed his Spouse the Church. This may be part of the sense, or an application thereof, [d] as some say, to this Mystery; or the signification rather of the [e] *thing in itself* here declared, then of the words, which properly and plainly set downe the Historie of a thing done, after the litterall sense to bee expounded.

According to this sense *Moses* expresseth the Creation, the making and marrying of the Woman. The Maker was GOD, the matter a Rib of *Adam*, the form a building, the end to be a meete helpe. The Man was made of Dust, the Woman of the Man, to bee one flesh with the Man, and of a Rib, to be a helpe and supporter of him in his calling, which requireth strength: neyther could any bone be more easily spared in the whole body, which hath not such variety of any other kind: nor could any place more designe the Woman her due place; not of the head, that she should not arrogate rule; not of the feet, that the husband should not reckon her as his slaue, but in a meane betweene both, and that neere the heart, in which they should (as in all Diuine and Humane Lawes else) bee fast ioyned. The building of this body of the Woman, was in regard of the Progeny, which was in that larger roome to haue the first dwelling. The soule of the Woman is to be conceiued [f] as the soule of the Man before mentioned, immediately infused and created by GOD, herein equall to Man.

Being thus made, he is marryed by GOD himselfe vnto *Adam*, who brought her vnto him, to shew the sacred authority of Marriage, and of Parents in Marriage: A mutuall consent and gratulation followeth betweene the parties, lest any should tyrannically abuse his fatherly power. And thus are two made *one flesh*, in regard of one original, equall right, mutuall consent, and bodily coniunction. And thus were this goodly couple glorious in nakednesse, not so much in the ornaments of beautie, which made them to each other amiable, as of Maiestie which made them to other creatures dreadfull: the Image of GOD, clothing that nakednesse, which in vs [g] *appeareth filthy*, in the most costly clothing. GOD further blessed them both with the power of multiplication in their owne kind, and dominion ouer other kinds; and gaue them for food, [h] *every herbe bearing seed which is vpon all the earth, and every tree wherein is the fruit of a tree bearing seed.* He doth (as it were) set them in possession of the Creatures, which by a Charter of free gift he had conueyed to them, to hold of him as Lord Patamount.

But lest any should thinke this but a niggardly and vnequall gift, whereas since the Flood more hath beene added, and that in a more vnworthinesse through mans sinne: let him consider, that since the Fall [i] the Earth is accursed, whereby many things are hurtfull to mans nature, and in those which are wholsome, there is not such variety of kinds, such plentie in each variety, such ease in getting our plenty, or such quality in what is gotten, in the degree of goodnesse and sweetnesse to the taste and nourishment: which, had they remayned in this sickly and elder Age of the World, we should not need to enuie *Cleopatra's* vanitie, or *Heliogabilus* his superfluitie and curiositie. And had not Man sinned, [k] there should not haue needed the death of beasts to nourish his life, which without such stay should haue beene immortall: the vse whereof was after granted, rather to supply necessitie when the Flood had weakened the Earth, then to minister a greater abundance then before it had; and least of all to satisfie the greedie and curious appetites of more then beastly men. Liberall

t Gen. 2.

u Ephes. 4. 24.

x Psal. 139. 14.
y Prouerb. cum significat omnia creata terrarum, Os hominis sublime dedit, &c. Ouid.
z Pro. 16. 4.

a Gen. 1. 27.
b 1. Cor. 11. 7.

c Gen. 2. 21.

d Whitak. de Script. quæst. 5.
e Habet sacram eloquium prophetarum, quandam ad vim Scripturæ differentem, quod in ea primum per verba quæ recitauit, detrahus quibusdam aliis: quæ rursum vt vice verborum, ad significationem aliarum rerum propouuntur. Hugo de S. Victo. To. 1. f Nec animam adventitiam intro in homini, integumentum est hoc. Animæ sunt & animæ æquales, sed in corporibus differentia est. Basil.
g Apoc. 3. 19. h Gen. 1. 29.
i Gen. 3. 17. Gen. 9. 3.
k Porphirius according to the Pythagorean opinion, abhorreth the eating of liuing creatures especially because men before the Flood were so long liued without iudgment: Kossius.

Liberall and bountifull was GODS allowance, which yet as man abused in eating the forbidden fruit, so whether any sinfull man did transgresse by eating the flesh of beasts, as iniquity increased, it is vncertaine. And yet it is likely, that when the Earth was [l] *filled with cruelties*; as men escaped not beastly butcherie, so beasts escaped not butcherly inhumanitie; and then that stay not now for commission to eate mans flesh, would then much lesse aske leaue to feed on beasts. Then did the godly Patriarchs liue many hundred yeares [m] without such food, whereas now we reach not to one with this helpe, that I speake not of those, which by abuse hereof are as cruell to themselues (in shortning their dayes by surfets) as to the Creatures, making their bellies to become Warrens, Fish-pooles, Shambles, and what not, saue what they should bee? Had not Man beene Deuillish in sinning, hee had not beene beastly in feeding, nay; the beasts had abhorred that which now they practise, both against their Lord, and their fellow-seruants. [n] *The Wolfe should haue dwelt with the Lambe, the Leopard should haue lyen with the Kid, and the Calfe, and the Lyon, and the fat Beast together, and a little Childe might leade them.* And this in the time of the Flood appeared, when all of them kept the peace with each other, and dutifull allegeance to their Prince in that great Family and little moueable World, *Noahs* Arke.

The place [o] of *Adams* dwelling is expressed by MOSES; *And the Lord GOD planted a Garden East-ward in Eden, and there he put the man whom hee had made, Genes.* 2. 8. Marueil it is to see the confusion which sinne bringeth, which appeareth not onely in the bodie, soule, dyet, and other Prerogatiues of our first Parents; but in this place also, then a place of pleasure, a Paradise and Garden of delights: after, a place prohibited, and kept *by the blade of a Sword shaken:* now the place cannot bee found in Earth, but is become a common place in mens braines, to macerate and vexe them in the curious search hereof. Some doe conuert this History into an Allegory, as did the Manichees and the Originists, confuted by *Methodius*, as [p] *Epiphanius* witnesseth. [q] *Hierome* in *Dan.* 10. saith, that seeking for shadowes in the truth, they ouer-turne the Truth it selfe. *Umbras & imagines in veritate quærentes, ipsam conantur euertere veritatem, vt flumina, & arbores, & Paradisum putent Allegoriæ legibus se debere subruere.* Such Mysticall, Mist-all, and Misse-all Interpreters are our Familists in these times, by vnseasonable and vnreasonable Allegories, raysing mysts ouer the Scripture-sense, which thereby they misse and cannot find. [r] *Augustine* reiecteth three opinions, that Allegoricall, which he confuteth: the literall, and that which followeth both the one and the other, as himselfe doth. The [s] *Hermians* and *Seleucians* are said to denie, that there was any such place: and the naked *Adamites* accounted their Church to be Paradise. Others are as prodigall & ascribe hereunto all the Earth, which was a Paradise, till sinne brought in a Curse. Thus holdeth [t] *Wolfgangus Wissenburg, Goropius* also & *Vadianus* are of like minde, That mans exile was but the alteration of their happy condition, that the fiery sword was the fiery Zone. A great while it went for currant, that it was a pleasant Region, by a long tract of Sea and Land, separated from our habitable World, and lifted vp to the Circle of the Moone, whereby it was out of the reach of *Noahs* flood, as [u] truly perhaps as *Patricius* and others haue found another World in the Moone, with men and beasts therein, of greater stature and longer life then here with vs. Thus hath [x] *Petrus Comestor*, and *Strabus*, and many Trauellers in old times haue trauelled with this conceit of their Fooles Paradise, and brought forth a lie, as appeareth by their Legends. [y] That Saint *Brandon* sayled thither from Ireland, is as true as that he met *Iudas* in the way, released from his paines, (as he was alway from Saturday to Sunday Euen-song:) or that they made fire on a fish (supposing it to bee an Iland) as that Legend telleth. It should seeme the Man in the Moone called him, and shewed him the way to this Paradise, or that [z] *Dinias*, which (according to the Relations of *Antonius Diogenes*) trauelling beyond Thule, went so farre North that hee came to the Moone, which seemed a shining Earth, where he saw many strange sights, as credible as the former: or else great *Lucifer* himselfe, who (as a later Traueller [a] reporteth) hath lately bequeathed a Lieutenancie to *Ignatius* and his Colony of Iesuites in the New Hell, in that New-found-World of the Moone; the care of the foundation whereof he committeth to that Iebuisticall societie. But let vs descend from this Lunaticke Paradise.

Others place it Eastward, in the highest top of the Earth, where the foure Riuers, mentioned by *Moses*, haue their originall, whence they runne, and are swallowed vp of the Earth, and after rising in diuers places of the World, are knowne by the names of *Nilus, Ganges, Tigris, Euphrates.* [b] *Hugo de S. Victore* and *Adrichomius* are of this opinion; yea, the great Cardinall [c] *Caietane* and *Bellarmine* place *Henoch* and *Elias* in Earthly Paradise, yet liuing there vntill the time of Antichrist, which wood he cannot see (beeing in the midst of it) for Trees. But the discouery of the World by Trauellers, and description thereof by Geographers, will not suffer vs to follow them (to the want of which Art, I meane Geographie, such fantasies may be imputed) whereby also is confuted the opinion of them which place it vnder the Equinoctiall Circle, as *Durandus* and *Bonauentura*.

l *Gen.* 6. 11.
m The fathers did not eate flesh before the flood, *Orig. in Gen. hom.* 1. *Chrysost. hom.* 27. *Genes.*
n *Esai.* 11. 6.
o *Basilius. hom.* 11. *Iunil. in Gen. Pererius* reiecteth the opinions of *Bonauentura, Tostatus, Ephrem, Isidore*: Also *Vatiannus Gerapius, Beroaldus in Chronico, Iunius* and others haue largely handled this question of Paradise.
p *Ambrose* in his long Treatise, *de Paradiso*, leaueth too much this way.
q *Philo Iudeus* also.
q *Epiphan. lib. Ancor. & contr. hæres. lib.* 2.
r *De Gen. lib.* 8. *c.* 1. *& de Ciuit. Dei, l.* 13. *c.* 21.
s *Aug. de hæres.*
t *Wolfg. Wissenburg. Prefat. ad Dem. hist. Gor. Bet. Recess. Isac. Vad de Paradiso.* Likewise *Hugo de S. Vict.* reckoneth this opinion, *totam terram fuisse Paradisum, si homo non peccasset: totam factam exilium per peccatum Annot. in Gen.*
u *Petric. Pan. Cos. lib.* 10.
x *Hist. Scholast.*
y *Leg. aurea.*
z *Anton. Diog. incredibil. de Thule. cap.* 24. *ap. Photium.*
a *Ignaty Concl.*
b *Hugo Annot. in Gen. & Adris. chron. Caelum in Gen.*
c *Bel. de Rom. Pont. l.* 3. *c.* 6. *& de grat. primitiuorum.*

[d] Others account so much to Paradise as those foure Riuers doe water, euen the chiefe part of Afrike and Asia: and some confine it in streighter limits of Syria, Arabia and Mesopotamia, as if *Adam* had been so couetous as his Posteritie, or so laborious as to husband so large Countries. The false interpretation of those Riuers to bee *Nilus, Ganges, &c.* was the cause of this errour; the [e] Septuagint translating in stead of *Sichor* (which is *Nilus*) *Gihon* the name of one of these streames.

d *Phil. Melanc. & Carion.*

e *In Esa.* 23.3. & *Ier.* 2.18.

Moses as it were of purpose by an exact Chorography and delineation of the situation, doth meete with those errours, and with other the like, which I doe not here relate. Neither is their opinion to be followed, which drowne all altogether in the Deluge, seeing that after that time *Moses* wrote this. *Franciscus Iunius* in his readings on *Genesis* [f] hath largely and learnedly handled this matter, and added a Map also of Heden in which it stood, and the course of the Riuers with the Countries adiacent. In him the Reader may find satisfaction. He sheweth out of *Curtius, Plinie,* and *Solinus,* the miraculous fertilitie of that part of Babylonia, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Auranitis,* or *Audanitis,* easily declined from Heden, the name giuen by *Moses,* mentioned after *Moses* time, 2.*Reg.* 19.12. and *Esay* 37.12.

f See also *Annot. Trem. & Iun. in Gen.* 1.

For the foure Riuers he sheweth them out of *Ptolomy, Strabo, Plinie, Dion, Marcellinus, &c.* to be so many diuisions of *Euphrates,* whereof *Baharsares,* or *Neharsares* is *Gihon,* that which passeth through *Babylon,* is for the excellencie peculiarly called *Perath* or *Euphrates*; *Nehar-malca,* or *Basilius, Pishon; Tigris,* [g] *Chiddekel.* For the fiery sword he obserueth out of *Plinie, lib.* 2. *c.* 106. a certaine miracle of Nature in Babylonia, where the ground is seen burning continually about the quantitie of an Acre, But this place will not serue to dispute this point. If those Riuers doe not now remaine, or haue altered either channell or names, it is no new thing in so old a a continuance of the World. It is more then probable, that herein these parts Paradise was, although now deformed by the Floud, and by Time consumed, and become a Stage of Barbarisme.

g *Tigris* is both the greater Riuer, and a smaller, which runneth out of *Euphrates* into *Tygris* which is here meant.

I haue here for the Readers pleasure set before his eyes Mercators *Mappe or Topography of Paradise.*

Neither

Neither hath the place alone been such a pitched field of Opinions, but the fruit also which *Moses* expresseth to be the instrument and occasion of *Adams* sinne, hath set some mens teeth on edge, who tell vs what it is, as if they had lately tasted of it, a certaine signe indeede, and fruit of that once vnlawfull tasting. [h] *Goropius* a man addicted to opinions, which I know not whether he did hold more strangely or strongly, though he enlargeth Paradise ouer the World, yet he maketh *Adam* an Indian (maruell he placeth him not in Dutchland, for that was his language, if *Becanus* be to be beleeued.) About the Riuer *Acesines*, betwixt *Indus* and *Ganges* (saith he) groweth that admirable Figge-tree, which he at large describeth out of *Plinie*, *Theophrastus*, and *Strabo*, whose branches spreading from the bodie, doe bend themselues downewards to the earth, where they take hold, and with new rooting multiply themselues, like a maze or wood. One told [i] *Clusius* that hee himselfe hath beene one of eight hundred or a thousand men, which had hidden themselues vnder one of these trees, adding, that some of them were able to couer three thousand men.

Strange is this tree, and *Becanus* is with conceit hereof rauished into the pleasures of Paradise. This tree [k] *Linschoten* describeth, growing about Goa, and (to bring vs out of *Goropius* Paradise) saith, that it hath no fruit worth the eating: but a small kind like Olives, which is food onely for birds. He telleth vs [l] of another Indian Figge-tree, growing rather like a Reed then a Tree, a mans height, a spanne thicke, the leaues a fathome long, and three spans broad: The Arabians and Indians suppose this to be that dismall fruit. The cause of this opinion *Paludanus* in his Annotations vpon *Linschoten*, ascribeth to the pleasantnesse of the smel and taste. Being cut in the middle, it hath certaine veines like a Crosse, whereon the Christians in Syria make many speculations. Yet the same Author telleth of a hill in the Ile of Seilan, called *Adams* hill, where they shew his foot-print, to prouue that hee liued there: of which reade our discourse of that Iland. [m] *Bochier* in his *Ara cœli*, citeth out of *Moses Barcepha*, That wheate was the Tree of Knowledge of good and euill; and so doe the Saracens hold: so curious and vaine is blind Reason without a guide. And the Cabilists (saith [n] *Ricius*) say, that *Eues* sinne was nothing but the wringing out of grapes to her husband; which yet he interpreteth allegorically.

But I thinke I haue wearied the Reader, with leading him thus vp and downe in Paradise; small fruit, I confesse, is in this fruit, and as little pleasure in this Paradise, but that varietie happily may please some, though it be to others tedious. And for a conclusion, it is (I think) worth the noting, that M. *Cartwright* an eye-witnesse, [o] by the counsell of the Nestorian Patriarke at Mosull or Ninive, visited the Ile of Eden, full so called, and by them holden a part of Paradise, ten miles in circuit, and sometime walled: which it is be not part of that Garden-plot mentioned by *Moses*, yet it seemes is part of that Countrey sometime called *Eden*, in the East part whereof Paradise was planted, and not farre (according to *Iunius* Map) from that happy vnhappy place.

h *Goropius Becha. Indo Scy. lib. 2.*

i *Cur. Clus. Exoticorum. l. 1. c. 4.* see *l. 5. c. 11.* of this Historie.

k *Linschoten lib. 1. cap. 98.*

l *c. 55.* To this agree th that of *Dr. Fuller Tetras. c. 4.* *Apud Doctores Eureos ficus vocatur* בגוף שיש *quod vnum eusdem dederint parentibus. Sane ficum fuisse illam arborem cuius fructu illa vetes non lecta, non metum, vt vulgus opinatur, sed edulis antiquitas.*

m *Lib. 5. cap. 14.*

n *Rich. Epis. de Talmud. doct.*

o The Preachers translaß

CHAP. IIII.

Of the Word Religion, and of the Religion of our first Parents before the Fall.

IAuing thus made way to our History of Religions, the first (and therefore best) Religion, is in the first place to be declared. Onely sonewhat may be not vnfitly spoken before of the word. Religion in it selfe is naturall, written in the hearts of all men, which will (as here we shew) rather be of a false then no Religion: but the name whereby it is so called, is by birth a forreiner, by common vse made a free-denizon among vs, descended from the Romanes, which by their Swords made way for their Words, the Authors both of the thing it selfe, and of the appellation, to a great part of this Westerne world. But as the Latines haue accustomed themselues to multiplicity and varietie of Rites, so haue they varied not a little about the Parents, (as I may say) of this child (as the Grecians sometimes about *Homers* birth-place) some giuing one Etymologie & derivation of the word, and some another, that there needeth some Herald to shew the true petigree, or some Grammarian Dictator to cease the strife.

[a] *Seruius Sulpitius* (as *Macrobius* citeth him) calleth that *Religion*, which for some holinesse is remouued and separated from vs, *quasi relictam à relinquendo dictam*. *Seruius* deserueth to be relinquished, and his opinion remouued and separated euen with an *Anathema*, if hee would remoue and separate Religion from vs, which is the life of our life, the way to our happinesse. The like is added of *Ceremonia à carendo dicta*, a iust name and reason of the most of the present Romish ceremonies, whose want were their best company. *Massurius Sabinus* in

a *Saturnal. lib. 3. cap. 3.*

b *Noc. Att. lib. 4. cap. 9.*
c *Lactant. lib. 4. cap. 28.*
d *Religiosum à superstitioso ea dijudicatione discernit Varro, vt superstitiosi dicantur omni Deos, à religioso autem tantum vereri vt parentes, non vt dominos. Tertull. Aug. de Ciuit. lib. 6. c. 6.*
e *De Ciuit. Dei, lib. 10. cap. 4.*
f *In fine. Vbi supra.*

in b *A. Gellius* hath the like words. *Religio*, with *Tully* is *Cultus deorum*, the worship of the gods, hereby distinguisht from *Superstition*, because they were, saith he, called Superstitious, that spent whole dayes in prayer and sacrifices, that their children might be *Superstites*, survivors after them: or rather as *Lactantius*, c *Qui superstitem memoriam defunctorum colunt, aut qui parentibus suis superstites celebrant imagines eorum domi, tanquam Deos penates.* But they which diligently vied and perused the things pertaining to diuine worship, *& tanquam relegerent*, were called Religious. *Religiosi ex relegendo tanquam ex elegendo elegentes, intelligendo intelligentes.* d Saint *Augustine* better acquainted with Religion then *Cicero*, commeth nearer to the name and nature thereof, deriuing it e *à religando*, of choosing again, *Hunc eligentes, vel potius religentes, ami seramus enim negligentes, vnde & religio dicta perhibetur.* This word *Religens* is cited by *Nigidius Figulus* in *Aulus Gellius*; *Religentem esse oportet, Religiosum nefas: Religiosus* being taken in bad sense for *Superstitiosus.* The same Father elsewhere, in his booke *de vera Religione*, f acknowledgeth another original of the word, which *Lactantius* before him had obserued, *à religando*, of fastning, as being the bond betweene vs and GOD. *Ad Deum tendentes*, saith *Augustine*, *& ei vni religantes animos nostros, vnde religio dicta creditur. Religet ergo nos Religio vni omnipotenti Deo. Lactantius* his words are; *Diximus nomen religionis a vinculo pietatis esse deductum, quod hominem sibi Deus religauerit & pietate constrinxerit, quis seruire nos eius Domino & obsequi vt patri, necesse est. Melius ergo (quàm* Cicero) *id nomen Lucretius interpretatus est, quia ait se religionum nodo exoluere.* And according to this Etymologie is that which M. *Camden* saith, * Religion in old English was called *Eau-fastnesse*, as the one and onely Assurance and fast Anchor-hold of our soules health.

10

20

* Remains of a greater worke.

* *De vocabulo Religionis vide Lil. Gyrald. dialog. 1. Sanctes. de Rel. lib. 1. c. 6. Stuck. an de Sacris & sacrificiis Gentium, qui Etymon dat eiusmodi non male.*

* This is the effect of sinne and irreligion, that the name and practise of Religion is thus diuersified, else had there beene as one GOD, soone religion, and one language, wherein to give it with iust reason, a proper name. For till men did *relinquere*, relinquish their first innocencie, and the Author, of whom, and in whom they held it, they needed not *religere*, to make a second choice, or seeke reconciliation, nor thus *relegere*, with such paines and vexation of spirit to enquire and practise those things which might *religare*, bind them surer and faster vnto God: and in these respects for seuerall causes, Religion might seeme to be deriued from all those fountaines. Thus much of the word, whereby the nature of Religion is in part declared, but more fully by the description thereof.

30

Religio est, saith h *Augustine, qua superioris cuiusdam naturæ, quam diuinam vocant, curam ceremoniamq; affert.* Religion is here described generally (whether false or truely) *professing the inward observation, and ceremoniall outward worship of that which is esteemed a higher and diuine nature.* The true Religion is the true rule and right way of seruing GOD. Or to speake as the case now standeth with vs: i *True Religion is the right way of reconciling and reuniting man to* GOD, *that hee may be saued.* This true way hee alone can shew vs, who is the Way and the Truth; neither can we see this Sunne, except he first see vs, and giue vs both eyes to see, and light also whereby to discerne him.

40

But to come to *Adam*, the subiect of our present discourse: His religion before his fall, was not to reunite him to GOD, from whom he had not been separated, but to vnite him faster, and daily to knit him neerer in the experience of that which nature had ingrafted in him. For what else was his Religion, but a pure streame of k *Original Righteousnesse*, flowing from that *Image of* GOD, wherewith he was created? Whereby his mind was enlightened to know the onely very GOD, and his heart was engrauen, not with the Letter, but the life and power of the Law, loving and *prouing that good and acceptable and perfect will of* GOD. The whole man was conformable, and endeauoured this holy practise, the body being plyant and flexible to the rule of the Soule, the Soule to the Spirit, the Spirit to the Father of Spirits, and God of all Flesh, which not less accepted of this obedience, and delighted (as the Father in his Child) in this new model of himselfe. How happy was that blessed familiarity with God, societie of Angels, subiection of Creatures, enuied onely of the Deuills, because this was so good, and they so wicked? Nature was his Schoolmaster, or if you will rather, GOD S Vsher, that taught him (without learning) all the rules of Diuine Learning, of Politicall, Oeconomicall, and Moral wisedome.

50

The whole Law was perfectly written in the fleshie Tables of his heart, besides the especiall command concerning the trees in the middest of the Garden, the one being an vniuersall and euerlasting rule of righteousnesse, the other by speciall authority appointed, as the manifestation of GOD S diuine prerogatiue in commanding, and a trialle of mans integritie in obeying. For the first part hereof, since it was so blurred in our hearts, it was renued by the voyce and finger of God on mount *Sinai*, giuen then immediately by GOD himselfe, as GOD ouer all; whereas the other parts of the Law, containing the Ceremoniall and Politicall ordinances, were immediately giuen by the Ministerie of *Moses*, as to that particular Nation.

60

b *Nec. Att. lib. 4. cap. 9.*
c *Lactant. lib. 4. cap. 28.*
d *Religiosum à superstitioso ea dijudicatione discernit Varro, vt superstitiosi dicantur omni Deos, à religioso autem tantum vereri vt parentes, non vt dominos. Tertull. Aug. de Ciuit. lib. 6. c. 6.*
e *De Ciuit. Dei, lib. 10. cap. 4.*
f *In fine. Vbi supra.*

Adam happiness before his fall.

* *Iustitia originalis. Ecclesiast. 7. 29.*

Neither

Neither know I any that make doubt of this whole Law naturally and originally communicated: saue onely that some make question of the Sabbath. Howbeit, I must confesse that I see nothing in that Commandement of the Decalogue prescribed, but is Naturall and Moral: for, both the *Rest* is so farre Morall, as the outward acts of Diuine worship cannot be performed without suspending for a while our bodily labours: although Rest, as a figure, bee Iewish, and in it selfe is either a fruit of wearinesse or idlenesse. And that the seuenth dayes obseruation is naturall (I meane the obseruing of one day of seuen in euery weeke) appeareth both by the first order established in Nature, when God blessed and sanctified the seuenth day; [k] the streame of Interpreters, especially the later, running and ioyning in this interpretation, (the Elder beeing somewhat more then enough busied in Allegories:) by the reason in the Commandement, drawne from Gods example and Sanctification in the Creation: by the obseruation of a Sabbath, before this promulgation of the Law, *Exod.* 16. and by the diuision of the dayes into weekes, [l] both then and before by *Noah*, *Gen.*8.10.12. by the necessitie of a Sabbath, as well before the Law in the dayes of the Patriarkes, as in the times of *Dauid* or *Salomon*: by the perfection of the number of seuen in the [m] Scriptures; by the generall consent of all, that it is Morall to set apart some time to the Lord of times, and an orderly set time to the God of order, which men might generally agree on for their publike deuotions: which the Patriarkes practised in their Sacrifices and Assemblies: the Heathens blindly, as other things in their Feasts. Thus saith *Philo* [n]: This is a feast day, not of one Citie or Region, but of the whole world, and may be properly called the generall birth-day of the world: And *Clemens Alexandrinus* sheweth out of *Plato*, *Homer*, *Hesiod*, *Callimachus* and *Solon*, that the seuenth day was not sacred alone to the Hebrewes, but to the Greekes also: and how mystically was the number of seuen, not onely among the Iewes, but also among the Heathens, both Philosophers and Poets? as *Philo*, [o] *Macrobius*, and others haue related.

k *Calu. Fagius, Pagnin. Vatab. Hispin. Marlorat. Ian. Zanc. Oecolam. Gibbins*, besides *Perkins*, *Ainsw.* and *Greenham, Rogers*, and others.

l The heathens by the light of Nature had their weeks, as appeareth by naming the daies after the seuen Planets; and Sonday, or *Saturns* day, was by the Gentiles consecrated from Ciuill and Martiall affaires, beeing esteemed most fit for contemplation, and deuotion, as saith *Artetius Probl. de Sabb.* m Philo saith, that some Cities kept a monthly Sabbath, resting the seuenth day from the new Moone. *de* 10. p.

n *Philo de Fab. Mundi. Clem. Strom. l.5. & ad eund. Heruetus.*

o *Philo de Fab. Mund. & de* 10. *pr. Macrob. in in som. Scip. l.1. cap.6. Virg. terq. quaterq. b. &c.*

Hereunto agreeth the iudgement of *Aquinas*, [p] *Praeceptum de sanctificatione Sabbathi ponitur inter praecepta Decalogi, in quantum est praeceptum morale, non in quantum est ceremoniale. The Precept of sanctifying the Sabbath, is set amongst the Precepts of the Decalogue, as it is a morall, not as a ceremoniall Precept. It hath pleased him,* [q] saith M. Hooker, *as of the rest, so of Times to exact some parts by way of perpetuall homage, neuer to bee dispensed withall, nor remitted. The Morall law requiring therefore a seuenth part throughout the age of the whole world to bee that way employed, although with vs the day bee changed, in regard of a new reuolution begun by our Saniour Christ, yet the same proportion of time continueth which was before, because in reference to the benefite of Creation, and now much more of reuolution thereunto added by him, which was Prince of the world to come, wee are bound to account the sanctification of one day in seuen, a duties which Gods immutable Law doth exact for euer.* Thus farre *Hooker*.

p *Secunda secunda. q.*122. *art.*4.

q *Eccles. Pol. lib.*5.*c.*70.

This indeed in the Sabbath was Iewish and Ceremoniall, to obserue onely that last and seuenth day of the weeke, and that as a figure, and lastly, with those appointed Ceremonies, and that manner of obseruation. Thus saith *Aquinas*, [r] *Habere aliquod tempus deputatum ad vacandum diuinis, cadit sub praecepto morali. Sed in quantum, &c. To haue some set time for the seruice of God is morall: but so farre this Precept is ceremoniall, as in it is determined a speciall time, in figure of the Creation of the World. Likewise it is ceremoniall, according to the Allegoricall signification; in as much as it was a signe of the Rest of Christ in the grauc, which was the seuenth day. And likewise according to the morall signification, as it signifieth a ceasing from euery act of sinne, and the* Rest *of the mind in God. Likewise according to the Anagogicall signification, as it prefigureth the* Rest *of the fruition of God, which shall be in our Countrey.*

r *Vbi supra.*

To these obseruations of *Thomas*, we may adde that strictnesse of the obseruation, That they might not kindle a fire on the Sabbath, and such like. And howsoever some testimonies of the Fathers be alledged against this truth, and to prouue that the Sabbath was born at Mount Sinai, as of [s] *Tertullian*, *Iustin Martyr*, *Eusebius*, *Cyprian*, *Augustine*, which deny the Sabbatizing of the Patriarkes before that time, and account it typicall: Why may not we interpret them of that Sabbath of the [t] Iewes, which we haue thus distinguished from the Morall Sabbath, by those former notes of difference? *Broughton* in his Concent alleadgeth the Concent of Rabbins, as of *Ramban* on *Gen.*26. and *Aben Ezra* vpon *Exod.*10. That the Fathers obserued the Sabbath before *Moses*. And *Moses* himselfe no sooner commeth to a seuenth day, but he sheweth that [u] *God rested, blessed, sanctified the same.*

s Cited by *Bel. de imag. l.*2.*c.*7. and by others.

t So *Iustin* 12. seuenth against *Typhon* a Iew, & that Iewish Sabbatizing & so the rest, if their testimonies bee well weighed.

u *Gen.*2.2,3.

It resteth therefore, that a time of rest from bodily labour was sanctified vnto spiritual deuotions from the beginning of the world, and that a seuenth dayes rest began, not with the *Mosaicall* Ceremonies in the Wildernesse (as some men will haue it) but with *Adam* in Paradise. That which is morall (say some) is eternall, and must not giue place; I answer, That the Commandements are eternall, but yet subordinate. There is a [x] *first of all the Commandements, and there is a second like to this*, like in qualitie, not in equalitie: and in euery Commandment

x *Mark.*12. 28. *&* 31.

mandement the Soule of obedience (which is the obedience of the soule) taketh place of that body of obedience, which is performed by the body. *Mercie is preferred before sacrifice, and charitie before outward worship:* Paul[y] staieth his preaching to heale *Eutychus:* Christ patronizeth[z] his Disciples, plucking the eares of Corne; and affirmeth, That *the Sabbath was made for Man, and not Man for the Sabbath.* Although therefore both rest and workes of the Sabbath giue place to such duties, which the present occasion presenteth, as mere weightie and necessary to that time, yet doth it not follow, that the Sabbath is not morall, no more then the Commandement of Almes is not morall, because (as[a] *Barnard* obserueth) the prohibitiue Commandement of stealing is of greater force, and more bindeth. And in a word, the Negatiue Precepts are of more force, and[b] more vniuersally bind then the affirmatiue. A man must hate his Father and Mother for Christs sake, and breake the Sabbaths rest for his Neighbour in cases of necessitie. And therefore such scrupulous[c] fancies, as some obtrude vnder the name of the Sabbath, esteeming it a greater sinne to violate this holy Rest, then to commit Murther, cannot be defended.

Pardon this long Discourse, whereunto the longer Discourses of others haue brought me. But now me thinkes I heare thee say, And what is all this to *Adams* integrity? Doubtlesse, *Adam* had his particular calling, to till the ground: his generall calling also, to serue God; which as he was spiritually to performe in all things, so being a body, he was to haue time and place set apart for the bodily performance thereof. And what example could hee better follow, then of his Lord and Creator? But some obiect, This is to slacken him running, rather then to incite and prouoke him; to bind, and not to loose him; cannot be a spurre, but a bridle to his deuotion. But they should consider, that we doe not tie *Adam* to the seuenth day onely; but to the seuenth especially, wherein to performe *set, publique,* and *solemne* worship. Neither did *Daniel,* that prayed *thrice a day,* or *David,* in his *seuen times,* or Saint *Paul,* in his iunction of *praying continually,* conceiue that the Sabbath would hinder men, and not rather further them in these workes. Neither was *Adams* state so excellent, as that he needed no helps: which wofull experience in his fall hath taught. God gaue him power to liue, yea with euerlasting life: and should not *Adam* therefore haue eaten, yea and haue had *conuenient times* for food and sleep, and other naturall necessities? How much more in this perfect, yet flexible and variable condition of his *Soule,* did he need meanes of establishment, although euen in his outward calling, he did not forget, nor was forgotten? Which outward workes, though they were not irksome and tedious, as sinne hath made them to vs, yet did they detaine his body, and somewhat distract his mind, from that *full and entire* seruice which the Sabbath might exact of him. Neither doe they shew any strong reason for their opinion, which hold the sanctification of the Sabbath, *Genes.* 2. to be set downe by way of anticipation, or as a preparatiue to the Iewish Sabbath, ordained[d] 2453. yeares after.

If any shall aske, Why the same seuenth day is not still obserued of Christians; I answer, This was figuratiue, and his abolished; but a seuenth day still remaineth. *Lex naturalis est, coniunctam habens ceremonialem designationem diei* (saith *Iunius.*) *The Law is naturall, hauing adioyned thereto the ceremoniall appointment of the day.* But why is this day now called the *Lords day?* I answer, euen therefore because it is the *Lords day,* not changed by the Churches *Constitution* *Meere,* as some seeme to hold: except by the Churches authority they meane Christ and his Apostles: nor defended to vs by Tradition, as the Papists maintaine, seeing the Scriptures, *Act.* 20.7. 1.*Cor.*16.21. *Apoc.*1.10. mention the name and celebration by the constant practise of the Apostles: yea, Christ himselfe as he rose on that day, so did he vsually appeare on that day to his Apostles before his Ascension. Christ therefore and his Apostles are our Authors of this change. And the Church[e] euer since hath constantly obserued it. The Fathers teach, yea the Papists themselues acknowledge this truth. So *Bellarmine de Cultu Sanct. l.* 3. *c.* 11. saith, *Ius diuinum requirebat, vt vnus dies Hebdomade dicaretur cultui diuino: non autem conueniebat vt seruaretur Sabbathum: itaque ab Apostolis in diem Dominicum versum est.* It was in the Primitiue Church called *the Lords day, the day of Bread and*[f] *of Light,* because of the Sacraments of the Supper and Baptisme therein administred, called Bread and Light. And how it may be ascribed to Tradition, [g] *Bellarmine*, the great Patron of Traditions, shewth out of *Iustin Martyr,* who saith, *Christus hac illis (Apostolis & Discipulis) tradidit, Iustin in fine* 2. *Apolog.* He there also reporteth, That they had their Ecclesiasticall Assemblies euery *Lords day.* The Rhemists,[h] which ascribe it to *Tradition* in *Annot. Matth.*15. acknowledge the *institution* thereof, in *Annot.*1.*Cor.*16.2. *Ignatius*[i] may be allowed Arbiter in this question of the Sabbath, who thus writeth to the *Magnesians: Non Sabbatisemus,* Let vs not obseruе the Sabbath after the Iewish manner, as delighting in ease; *For he that worketh not, let him not eate:* but let euery one of vs keepe the Sabbath spiritually, not eating meat dressed the day before, and walking se: paces, &c. But let euery Christian celebrate *the Lords day,* consecrated to the Lords resurrection, as *the Queene and Princesse of all dayes.*

Now

y *Act.*20.9.
z *Mark* 2.25.
a *Sic in praecepto illo praegit meiam. Est vt. g. mandatum, non furaberis, & est mandatum omnipotenti te, dn. Virumque quidem magnū quatenus vtrūq; diuinum, sed de non furando, minus Nonequid dispensat neaci atque furci. Bern. de precep. & dispensat.*
b Negatiue Precepts bind at all times, & to all men: the Affirmatiue bind at all times, but not to all times: and therefore Negatiue are of more force. *Perkins Sermon. Caussarum.*
c *Refert. Tho. Rogers.*

d *Selden Calendar.* 1451. *Bucc. Opuscula, &c.* 2454.
* *Iustin Mart. Apol. in fin. Dies solis omnes conuenimus publici quod in dies primus est, in quo Deus tenebras & materiam cum mutasset, mundum effecit & quod Iesus die, Iud. Christus conseruator noster & mortuis excitatus est.*
e *Conger. ibi testimonia Ignatij, Tertul. Clem. Or. & Athan. Ambros. Hieron. Greg. Nazian. Hilar.*
f *Chrysost. Ser.* 5. *de Resurrect.*
g *Bell. de verbo Dei non scripto, lib.* 4. *cap.* 7.
h *Rhemists Test.*
i *Ignat. ad Magnes.*

Now for the particular Commandement, which was giuen him as an especiall proofe of his obedience, in a thing otherwise not vnlawfull, it was the forbidding him to eate of the fruit of the Tree of Knowledge. For in the midde ſt of the Garden GOD had planted two Trees, which ſome call * Sacraments, and were, by GODS Ordinance, ſignes vnto him; one of life, if he obeyed; the other of death, by diſobedience. Not as the Iewes thought, and *Iulian* ſcoffed, That the Tree had power to giue ſharpeneſſe of wit. And although ſome thinke ſignes needleſſe to ſo excellent a creature; yet beeing mutable, ſubiect to temptation, and each way flexible to vertue or vice, according as he vſed his naturall power of free-will; I ſee not why they ſhould deny GOD that liberti e to impoſe, or man that neceſſitie to need ſuch monitories, and (as it were) Sacramentall inſtructions. For what might theſe Trees haue furthered him in careſulneſſe, if he had conſidered life and death, not ſo much in theſe Trees, as in his free-wil, and obeying or diſobeying his Creator.

* *Erat ei in ſignis ceteris alimentum, in illo autem, Sacramentum. Auge. de Genesi lit. lib. 8. cap. 4.*

Theſe Trees, in regard of their ſignification, and euent, are called the Tree of Life, and the Tree of Knowledge of good and euill: which was not euill or hurtfull in it ſelfe, but was a viſible rule, whereby good and euill ſhould be knowne, and that by reaſon of the Commandement annexed, which he might by this Precept ſee to be grounded in obeying or diſobeying the authority of the Law-giuer. An eaſie rule, and yet too eaſily broken. For when as God did hereby challenge his own Souueraignty, by impoſing ſo eaſie a fine, which might haue forbidden all but one (as contrariwiſe he allowed) and fore-ſignified the danger, that he might continue his goodneſſe to man, continuing in obedience; yet did man herein ſhew his contempt, in reiecting ſo eaſie a yoake, and ſo light a burthen. I will not reaſon whether theſe two Trees may properly be called Sacraments: of which (ſay ſome) the one was but for the bodily life, and better neuer to haue touched the other: this we know, that in eating of this he loſt both bodily and ſpirituall life, which the name and inſtitution thereof forewarned, and ſhould haue preuented: otherwiſe, in eating of the other, immortalitie had been ſealed both in ſoule and body, to him and his for euer. Strange it ſeemeth, that he ſhould need no monitorie ſignes to preuent that, which, euen with theſe helps added, he did not eſchew.

CHAP. V.

Of the Fall of Man: and of Original Sinne.

Itherto we haue beheld the Creation of the World, and of our firſt Parents, the liuely Images of the Creator and the Creature; whom we haue ſomewhat leiſurely viewed in a naked Maieſty, delighting themſelues in the enamelled walkes of their delightfull Garden. The Riuers whereof ranne to preſent their beſt offices to their new Lords, from which they were forced by the backer ſtreames, greedy of the ſight and place which they could not hold: The Trees ſtouped to behold them, offering their ſhady mantle, and varietie of fruits, as their naturall tribute: each creature in a ſilent gladneſſe reioyced in them, and they enioyed all mutuall comforts in the Creator, the Creatures, and in themſelues. A bleſſed Payre, who enioyed all they deſired, whiles their deſire was worth the enioying: Lords of all, and of more then all, Content, which might in all they ſaw, ſee their Makers bounty; and beyond all they could ſee, might ſee themſelues comprehended, where they could not comprehend, of that infinite Greatneſſe and goodneſſe, which they could not but loue, reuerence, admire and adore. This was then their Religion, to acknowledge with thankefulneſſe, to be thankefull in obedience, to obey with careſulneſſe, the Author of all this good: to the performance whereof, they found no outward, no inward impediment, Sickeneſſe, Perturbation and Death (the deformed iſſue of Sinne) not yet being entered into the World.

* It is by all affirmed, that the fall was very ſoon after the Creation, as appeareth by circumſtances of the narration, by Satans malice, the womans virginitie, and many hold, it was the very day of their Creation. *Bibliand. Broughtons Concent. Praeter antiquos Auguſtin. Chryſoſtom.* &c. And *Genebrard* is exactly curious for the day & houre, if you will receiue him. *Sexto die diluculo circiter ſuit: hora tertia Eua cepulatus: hora ſexta tentatus: hora nona eiectus è Paradiſo, in agrum Hebron, vnà cum Eua exul pellitur, vbi & ſepelitur. Genef. Cleron.*

In this plight did Satan (that old Serpent) ſee, diſdaine and enuy them. It was not enough for him, and the deuiliſh crue of his damned aſſociates, for their late rebellion, to be baniſhed Heauen, but the inferiour world muſt be filled with his venome, working that malice on the Creatures here, which he could not there ſo easily wrecke on their Creator. And becauſe Man was here GODS Deputy and Lieutenant, as a petty God on the Earth, hee chooſeth him as the fitteſt ſubiect, in whoſe ruine to deſpite his Maker. To this end he vſeth not a Lion-like force, which then had been bootleſſe, but a *Serpentine* ſleight, vſing that ſubtill creature as the meeteſt inſtrument to his Labyrinthian proiects. Whereas by inward temptation he could not ſo eaſily preuaile, by inſinuating himſelfe into their minds, he windes himſelfe into this winding Beaſt, diſpoſing the *Serpents* tongue to *ſpeake to the Woman* (the weaker Veſſell) fingled from her husband, and by queſtioning doth firſt vndermine her. The * Woman (whe-

(whether she had not yet experience of the Nature of the Creatures, or did admire so strange an accident, and would satisfie her curious mind in the further tryall) entertained discourse, and was presently snared. For though she held her to the Commandement, yet the threatning annexed, she did somewhat mince and extenuate. What she seemed to lessen, he feared not to annihilate, and wholly disanull, propounding not onely impunity, but aduantage, That they *should be as Gods*, in the enriching of their minds with further knowledge. This here persuadeth by the equivocating in the name of the Tree (the first equiuocation we read of, * otherwhere plainely tearmed a lye) charging GOD with falshood and malignitie.

a *Ioh.8.44.* The first sinne of our first Parents.

Thus he that abode not in the Truth himselfe, but was a *Man-slayer from the beginning, and the Father of Lying*, which he no where else borrowed, but had of his owne, persuaded her by his great subtiltie, first to doubt of GODS Truth in his Word (the first particular sinne that euer maus heart entertained; for the other were but occasions and inducements; disobedience and vnthankefulnesse are more generall) after that, she vnlawfully lusted after this new knowledge, bewitched with the pleasantnesse of the fruit to the taste and sight, shee *tooke, and did eate, and gaue to her husband* likewise. The highest power of the soule is first entrapped, the lusting and sensible faculties follow after, justly plagued by a correspondent inward rebellion, that the sense now ruleth the appetite; and this the reason in our corrupt estate, which hence proceeded.

10

Thus [b] *vnbeleefe* brought forth *vnthankefulnesse*; *vnthankefulnesse*, *pride*; from thence *ambition* and all that *rabble of contempt of Gods Truth*; *believing the Devils lies, abuse of the Creatures to wanton lust, Sacrilegious vsurping that which* GOD *had reserued, scandalous provocation of her husband, with the murther bodily and ghostly of him, her selfe, and their whole posteritie for euer*; and whereas, yet they had done so little seruice to GOD, they offered almost their first fruits to the Deuill, hauing [c] *Free-will* to haue resisted *if they would*. No marueil then if such a *combination* of so many sinnes in one, wrung from the iustice of GOD, such a multitude of iudgements on them and theirs, in the *defacing that goodly and glorious Image of* GOD; *subiecting* (in stead thereof) *the Bodie to Sicknesse, Colde, Heate, Nakednesse, Hunger, Thirst, Stripes, Woundes, Death; the Minde to Ignorance, Doubtings, Vanitie, Phancies, Phrenzies; the Will to Vnsaiednesse, Passion, Perturbation*; the *Whole Man* is made a slaue to *Sinne* within him, to the *Deuill* without; whence he must expect *Wages* suitable to his Worke, *Death; Spirituall, Naturall, and Eternall*: an infinite punishment, for offending an infinite Maiesty.

20

30

b *Aug. Enchir. cap 45.* Foolish and wicked is their conceit, that measure his sinne by the fruit (a Nut or Apple) that was eaten as Pope *Iulius*, That said hee might bee as well angry for his Peacocke as God (whose Vicar he was) for an Apple. *Bel de vit. Pont.*

c *Posse si vellent sed non velle vt possent.*

Thus had they put out their *light to obscure darkenesse*: and if they were not presently cast into vtter darkenesse, it was GODS mercy (not their merit) which suspended the first and naturall death, to preuent that second and eternal. But spiritually the were euen already dead in sinnes, as appeared by the *accusations of their conscience*, whereof *Moses* saith, [d] *The eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they were naked. Conscience*, before *Vertues keeper*, was now become *Hels Harbenger*, then flashing lightnings in the face of their minds, to shew, that their nakednesse did now appeare filthy in GODS sight: Lightnings indeed, which could only lighten to terrifie, not enlighten with instruction and comfort: Which sparke remaineth after the fire of Gods Image extinct, by the mercifull prouidence of GOD, in some [e] to bee a bridle of Nature, least they should runne into all excesse of vilanie, and not leaue a face of the world in the world, and to be to others, by disposition and working of a higher and supernaturall Light, a preparatiue to, and a preseruatiue in that light of Life. So much the greater is their sinne, that seeke to flash out these flashings: and whereas they cannot reade the booke of *Scripture*, and will not reade the booke of the *Creature*, labour to extinguish also this Light of *Nature*, that with *seared consciences*, they may more freely in darkenesse commit *the workes of darkenesse*. And euen this did *Adam* seeke, if GOD had not brought him out of his Owles neast. For what could a *Fig-leafe* hide from GOD? and did they thinke the innocent *Trees* would conspire with them to conceale Traytors? Was there any darkenesse which was not Light to him? Or could *Breeches and Trees* couer their Soules, which receiued the *first and worst nakednesse*; till which, Nakednesse to the body, was a Clothing of Beauty, a Liuery of Bounty, an Enseigne of Maiesty? Such [f] *broken pits seeke they that forsake the Fountaine of liuing Waters*.

40

50

d *Gen.3.7.*

e *Spiritus reprimens, non reconuans.*

f *Ier.2.13.*

And yet when GOD commeth into Iudgement, and [g] makes the winds to vsher him vnto his priuate Sessions in Paradise; to those shifflesse shifts they added worse, impiously accusing GOD, vncharitably charging one another, to put from themselues that blame, which thus claue faster to them. A medicine worse then the disease, or a disease in stead of a medicine, is *hypocrisie*, that will not see her owne sicknesse, and seekes rather to couer, then to cure; to couer by charging others, then recouer by discharging and discouering in selfe; as if [h] equitie pretended were not iniquitie doubled. GOD proceedeth to sentence, a sentence worthy of GOD, shewing at once his infinite iustice in the punishment of sinne, and no less infinite mercie, to prouide an infinite price to redeeme vs; by his infinite power bringing good out of

60

g *Gen.3.8.*

h *Simulata equitas duplex iniquitas. Hieron.*

euill,

euill, and *by his manifold Wisdome taking that wise one in his craftinesse*, who in the destruction of Man, had fought GODS dishonour, so good is it that euill should be, when this Soueraigne goodnesse purposeth to effect his good will by wicked instruments, out [a] of their darkenesse, producing his owne marueilous light: as appeared in this worke of Sathan an aduersary, intended to his despite; in, and by the promised Seede, disposed to his glory. [l] The Serpent hath a bodily curse in his future bodily difficulties, which still continue, for his instrumentall and bodily imployment.

The [k] old Serpent and spirituall Enemie, hath a spirituall and eternall curse, *the breaking of his head by that Seede of the Woman*, that should once *lead Captiuitie captiue*. Our Parents are cursed, yet so, as their curse inturned into a blessing; all things working to the best: *In sorrow shal be the Womans conception*, but recompenced with the ioy which followeth (and is as it were, the Mid-wife in their trauell) because of [l] *fruit borne into the World*; and more then recompenced, in that they are [m] *saued by bearing of children, if they continue in the faith, and liue in holinesse with modestie*. *Adam* is set to labour, not as before, with delight, but with paine and difficultie; the Earth also being cursed for his sake: yet by this narrow way, by this crosse-way, he is guided to Heauen; the hope whereof was giuen him before Paradise was taken from him. So true is it, that *in iudgement he remembreth mercy*, if we can learne to *liue by faith, and not by sight*.

This, that *Moses* telleth of the fall of Man, Experience doth in manner proclaime through the World, in the manifold effects thereof, which we daily see. For whereas the World was made for Man, as before is shewed, who alone, in regard of his bodily and spirituall nature, can need and vse it, no creature in the world is in his kind so imperfect as man. Hee that was before as an earthly God, is now become an incarnate Deuill, and for aspiring to be like his Lord, was made a seruant of his [n] seruants; the noblest part in him becomming a base Officer to degrade him, Reason it selfe deiected at the feet of Sense, to be a slaue, and a very Bawd to sensuall pleasures, a very Broker for dung-hill profits. And what is this but to metamorphose man into a beast? vnlesse that some in a lower degree, liuing onely to liue, suffocated [o] with eating, drinking, sleeping, are degenerated into plants? And if he descend not lower, to become torpide and liuelesse, yet doth he participate the imperfections of those things, and that without their perfections, as if with an imperfect retrograde hee would returne into his first elements, or in a perfected *imperfection*, to his first *nothing*. What stone so hard as mans heart is relentlesse, remorselesse to his best good? What dust more subiect to the wind, or water more flexible, then hee to temptation and sinne? But those things remaine in their nature, or naturall place; Man is a fuming smoke, a passing shadow. And yet if wee could stay at our Elements, it were somewhat better; but wee are seruants and drudges beneath all names of basenesse, vnbowelling the Earth, and our selues in the earth, for a little hardened earth, that neuer had the dignitie to see, no not to be seen of the Sunne. We seeme to rule the Skie, Winds, and Seas; indeed we aduenture our liues to their mercy, and not three fingers thicknesse doth separate vs from death, that we may bring home an idle discourse, or somewhat, almost lesse then nothing, that we call a Iewell. Once, we inuert Nature, subuert others, peruert our selues, for those things which sometimes kill the body, and alway (except a power, with whom all things are possible, preuent) the Soule: And yet, [p] *Thou Foole, this night may they fetch away thy Soule; and whose then shall these things bee?* And whose then, and where then, shalt thou be? Thou gainest faire to loose thy selfe, to be taken with thy taking, to bee thus bad to others, that thou mayest be worse to thy selfe: and when-as (like an Asse) thou hast been laden all the dayes of thy life with those things, which euen in hauing thou wantest, now to be more intolerably burthened, now to be in Hell, which will neuer bee satisfied in thee, whose Character was before engrauen in thy *vnsatiable* heart. Tell me not then of the reasonable power of our soules, whereby we resemble GOD, seeing that reason may tell thee and me, that by abusing it [q] we are like, and [r] *are of our Father the Deuill*. That erected countenance to be still groueling in, and poring on the Earth; that immortall soule to mind onely such things as haue not the imperfect priuiledge to be mortall; those high excellencies to bee abused to mischiefe, blaspheming, denying, forswearing GOD and all for the basest of the basest creatures! Well might this deluge of corruption mooue that [s] Cynick, in a throng of men to make search for a *Man*, this Man which is now left vs, beeing but the ruines, the carkasse of himselfe. Well might the Greekes call this body of ours, σῶμα· *quasi* σῆμα, the *Sepulchre* of the soule; the Latines *Corpus*, where by reason of mans fall from his first estate, the first syllable is falne off, *Cor*, the *heart* is gone, we are *Vecordes*, *Socordes*, onely *pus* remaines, corruption and filthinesse; and doe not wee call it *body*, because both *die*, the soule also hereby infected, and that *both deaths*, internall and externall? The *Spirit*, the better part of man, is *spirit* indeed, a puffe and vaine blast of emptinesse, *animus* is ἄνεμος, a *winde that passeth*, that passeth the wind in vanitie. But what needes all this? Why are we fallen into so long and tedious discourse of our fall? Euen because some are fallen further, beyond all sense and feeling of their

[a] *Deus quæ dam voluntates suas vtiq; bonas impletper malorum hominum voluntates malas. De his quæ faciunt quæ non vult, facit ipsa quæ vult. Sicut naturam bonarum opt. Creator est, ita voluntatum malarum iustissimè ordinator, vt cum male illæ vtantur naturis bonis, ipse bonè vtatur etiam voluntatibus malis. Aug.*

i Gen.3.14.

k *Verse* 15.

l *Iob*, 16.21.

m 1.*Tim*. 1. *vlt*.

n *Terra se se superiacent, cæcus sursum cœlum detollit. Orbo Heremitus Chaldaico.*

o *Vnus hominum Sepulchrum.*

p Luc.12.20.

q *Ignat. ad Magnes. Kusiß. Pium bono numismate est a Deo cusum: impius, ad interitum, non à Deo sed Diabolo effectum.*

r Io.8.44.

s *Diog. Laert. lib.6.*

t *Plato in Gorg.*

their fall, and beleeued not that man was euer any other creature, then now they see; that if their goodnesse cannot, yet their wickednesse might teach them, that so perfect a World should not haue beene framed for so imperfect a wretch, now onely perfect in imperfection. Our fall must teach vs to rise, our straying to returne, our degeneration a regeneration. And therefore was not that Image of GOD wholly done out, but some remainder continued to the Posteritie, to conuince them of misterie in themselues, that so denying themselues, they might *take vp their Crosse, and follow the second Adam* vnto a durable happinesse.

But how (may some aske, as [t] the Pelagian did) came this misery to vs? *Non peccat ille qui genuit, non peccat ille qui concidit, per quos igitur rimas inter tot præsidia innocentiæ sinuis peccatum ingressum?* Doth it agree with diuine Iustice, that if the Fathers haue eaten sowre Grapes, the Children-teeth should be set on edge? I answere, We are Heires of our Father, we need not seeke some secret cranie, we see an open gate, [u] *by one man sinne entred into the World, and death by sinne.* A little leaue let vs bortow to cleere this difficultie. Sinne is [x] *a transgression of the Law*, or a defect of conformitie to the Law, (ἡ δὲ ἁμαρτία ἐστὶν ἀνομία) and cannot properly be said to haue an efficient, but a defectiue cause, being in it owne nature and subsistence, ἄτοπον μόνον. The [y] Schoole-men say, in sinne are two things to bee considered, the substance and the qualitie, essence and priuation, the act and defect, whereof that they call the *Materiall*, this the *Formall* part of sinne, being nothing else but a deformitie, irregularitie and vnlawfulnesse in our naturall condition and conditions, as easily to be distinguished, though not to be diuided, from the action, as lameness from the working hand, or iarring in an Instrument, both from the Instrument and sound. The Sinner is termed *nequam*, [z] as *nequicquam* naught, as not ought. Not that sinne is simply nothing, *Non negatiue, sed priuatiue Nihil*; nor is it a meere and pure priuation, but to bee considered with that subiect, wherein, and whereof it is such a distortion and destruction: the want of this consideration drawe the *Manichees* to their Heretical opinion of two beings and beginnings. Sinne was first seene in the Deuill, who voluntarily strayed from the right way, and as hee abode not in the Truth himselfe, so hee beguiled our first Patents, from whom, by the Conduit of Nature, it is conueyed to vs. I speake of Originall sinne, which is our inheritance; for actuall sinnes are our owne purchase and improuement, and yet bought with that stocke which our Parents left vs: Our first Parents are to bee considered, not as singular persons onely, whereby they defiled themselues, but as the roote of Mankind, which had receiued Originall Righteousnesse, to keepe or to lose to them and theirs, as a perpetuall inheritance. As in the Bodie Politike, the Act of the Prince is reputed the Act of the whole; the consent of a Burgesse in Parliament bindeth the whole Citie which he representeth: and [a] as in the naturall Bodie, the whole bodie is lyable to the guilt of that fact which the head or hand hath committed: as a root to his branches, a Fountaine to his streames, doth conuey the goodnesse or badnesse which it selfe hath receiued: So stands it betwixt vs and *Adam* our naturall Prince, the Burgesse of the World, the Head of this humane Bodie and Generation, the Root and Fountaine of our Humanitie. When hee sinned, hee lost to him selfe and vs that Image of GOD, or that part of the Image of GOD, which he had receiued for himselfe and vs; not the substance, nor the faculties of bodie or soule, but the conformitie in that substance and faculties to the will of GOD, in [b] *righteousnesse and holinesse of truth.*

Not to much therefore are wee here to consider the ordinary course of Nature, wherein [c] *the soule that sinneth, it shall dye*: as the Ordinance of GOD, who appointed the *first Adam*, the Well-spring of Nature, which he receiued incorrupted; the *second*, of Grace; that as men, we all by Generation, are of the first, and with the first, [d] *one old man*, in whom we all sinned; of, and with the second *Adam* we are all *one new man in the Lord, euen one bodie; one Spirit, one Seed, one Christ*, in whom, and with whom, wee, as members of that Head, obeyed the Precepts, and suffered the curse of the Law. [f] Other sinnes of *Adam* are not our naturall, but his personall, because he could be no longer a publike person, then while he had some what to saue or lose for vs; all being alreadie forfeited in this first sinne. The Authour then of Originall Sinne, is the Propagator of our Nature: his actuall sinne is originally ours, the Guilt being deriued by imputation, the Corruption by naturall generation. First, that Person corrupted Nature; after, Nature, infected our Persons. The matter of this Originall corruption, in regard of the subiect, is All and euery man, and All and euery part of all and euery man, subiect to all sinne, that if all be not as bad as any, and the best as the worst, it must be ascribed to GODS restrayning, or renewing, not vnto vnequall degrees in this originall staine. In regard of the Obiect, the matter of it is the want of originall Righteousnesse, and a contrary inclination to Euill, [g] *The imaginations of our hearts being onely euill continually.* No Grapes can grow on these Thornes. The fome of this corruption is the deformitie of our corrupted Nature, not by infusion or imitation, but by default

[t] *Iul. Pelagian. ad August.*
[u] *Rom.5.12.*
[x] *1.Iohn 3.4.*
[y] *Aquin.1.2.q. 75.art.1.quæst. de Malo.q. 1.2. Dotbel.V. 85 vsq. &c.*
[z] *Aquin. sum. p.1. q.49.art.3. & 2.q.4. de Malo.*
Mal. loc. Com. Nihil negatiuum est causa nihil priuatiui: quemadam sic, inclinatio creature ad suum illud nihil, vnde prohibiu ordo & creatiuum est. Mons. de veritate, C.R. Quæ sunt, ideo vocantur bona, quoniam à Deo qui est essentia ipsa exemplar trahunt: hæretici verum esse tam malitiæ tribuunt. Athan. cont. Gent.
Malum nec ens est, propterea nec omnino est malum, nec, vt ipsa omnino non ens. Sed & ab ipso non ente alienum est, & ab ipsis minus quam à bono. Si enim vnbiesse, nulli nocere. &c. Dion. de D.N. vid. ad cum 3. cino & ad Plat. de Pyrmid. & Rambl. M.N. l.3. cap.11.
[a] *Aquin. Ro.5.*
[b] *Ephes.4.24.*
[c] *Ezek.18.4.*
[d] *Ephes.4.22.*
[e] *Col.3.10. 3.Cor.12. Rom.5.*
[f] *Per solam primam peccatum subiatum est bonum naturæ, per alia peccata bona gratiæ perfectionalia. Aquin. in Rom.5.*
[g] *Gen.6.5.*

default of that first instrument, by which this Nature descendeth. It is the roote of actuall sinnes: and whereas they, as fruits, are transient, this still remayneth, vntill Christ by his death destroyeth this death in vs.

But here ariseth another difficulty; How this sinne can bee deriued by Generation, seeing it is truely beleeued, that *God is* h *Father of Spirits, the* i *Former of our Soules*, which doth by infusion create, and by Creation infuse them: corruptible Elements, being vnable to procreate an incorruptible substance, or generation to produce incorruption. Neither standeth it with reason, that he which communicateth not the substance, should communicate the accidents; or with Iustice, that an innocent Soule should necessarily be stayned by inuoluntary infusion into a pollured body.

I answere hereunto, That although the Soule be not *traduced* (as they terme it) and by Generation conferred; yet is it coupled to the body in that manner and order which God had appointed for the conjunction thereof, though man had not sinned? Neither was it the Soule alone in *Adam*, or the body alone, but the Person, consisting of both, which sinned. Neither can we be partakers of Natures sinne, till we be partakers of humane Nature, which is not, till the Soule and Body bee vnited. Wee are nor so much therefore to looke to the concupiscence, and lust of the Parents in generation, as k *Lombard* teacheth vs, but to the Person; which, l *Scotus* saith, is *filius Adæ, & debitrix iustitiæ originalis*. And although the Soule be not in the seed, yet it is communicated to the Body (saith *Aquinas*) by a dispositiue or preparatiue power of the Seed, which disposeth and prepareth the Body to the receiuing of the Soule, where it is receiued (after the m generall rule) according to the measure and nature of that which receiueth. The Father is then a perfect Father, not because he begetteth the Soule, but because he begetteth the Person, or at least all whatsoeuer in the Person is begotten: and though he doth not beget the *subsitance* thereof; yet, as it is n *such a subsistence*, he may be said to procreate it, because his generation worketh towards the Vnion of the Soule and Body; which Vnion is made by the Spirits, Animall and Vitall. And o these Spirits are procreated by the Seed, and consist of a middle nature, as it were betwixt bodily and spirituall; so that the production of the Soule, and incorporating thereof, may be counted in the middle way betweene Creation and Generation. And therefore this original corruption did not reach to Christ Iesus, although hee were true Man, because he was *the Seed of the Woman*, and did not descend of *Adam* by generation (*per seminalem rationem, tanquam à principio actiuo*, saith *Aquinas*) but was miraculously framed in the wombe, and of the substance of the Virgin, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

Thus haue I presumed to offer my crude and rude Meditations to the wiser World, about the deriuation of Originall sinne, which it selfe is the cause why we can no better see it, as darkenesse hideth it selfe. But the whole Citie of Mankind being herewith set on fire, it behoueth euery one to be more carefull to quench it, then ouer-curiously to enquire how it came: It is sufficient, that nothing descended hereby to vs by corruption, or was made ours by imputation, which is not fully cured by Christ: *who is* p *made vnto vs* (both by imputation of his actiue and passiue obedience, and by reall infusion of his Spirit) *Wisdome, Righteousnesse, Sanctification, and Redemption*; if wee haue faith to receiue it, and Charitie to expresse it: an absolute renewer and perfecter of the Image of God, beyond what wee had in our first Parents lost.

h Heb.12.9.
i Ecc.12.7. Gen.2.7. Zach.12.1. Idcirco dicit Gentilis, id est Gentilitas, Christ. Lib. 1. Adum Nisibenus, quia simus Studentium, id est, de Cœlo.

k Lib.Sent.2. D.31.
l Super Sent.

m Vnumquodq; recipitur secundum modum recipientis.
n Zanch. de Redem. c.4.
o Zanch. de Operib. D.part.3.

p 1.Cor.1.30.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Reliques of the Diuine Image after the Fall, whereby naturally men addict themselues vnto some Religion: *and what was the Religion of the World before the Flood.*

THis sinne of our first Parents, whereby they were almost no sooner made then marr'd (being as some suppose, formed and deformed in one day; so interpreting the Psalme, q *That he lodged not one night in honour, but became as the beasts that* a *perish*. This sinne (I say) did not wholly deprive vs of the Image of God, whereunto wee were created. A remainder and stumpe thereof continued, *like to the stumpe of* b *Dagon*, whose head and hands were cut off by his fall; or like the stumpe of c *Nabuchodonosors Tree, whose rootes were left in the Earth, bound with a band of Iron and Brasse among the grasse of the field*. So was mans head and hands fallen off *before the Arke*, that his Wisdome remaining was *foolishnesse with God*; not *sufficient to one good thought*, not able either *to will or to doe* that which

q Psal.49.12.
a Brentius cancel the Rabbines in his Concent. Pentat. in Ge.2.6.
b 1.Sam.5.4.
c Dan.4.26.

which might please GOD. And though the stumpe remained (the substance and the faculties of Body and Soule) yet was this stumpe left in the earth, *fast bound with yron and brasse*, his earthly mind captiued and chained with worldly vanities and deuillish villainies. Or to vse *Lumbardes* comparison, [d] he was like the man *fallen* [e] *among theeues, wounded and spoyled:* wounded in his naturall parts, spoyled and robbed of the gifts of Grace, which GOD by especiall grace added to his Nature, in that first beautifying of this his Image.

In the state of Creation, Man was made able [f] to commit no sinne; in the state of Corruption he cannot but sinne: vntill a third state of grace doe free him;not from the being,but from the *raigning* and *imputation* of sinne, whereby he is prepared to a fourth state of glory,wherein shall be no possibilitie of sinning, or necessitie of striuing against sinne. And howsoeuer in this corrupt state of Nature, in our spirituall actions, which meerely concerne the Kingdome of Heauen, we cannot but sinne, yet hath not God left himselfe without witnesse, euen in this darkenesse to conuince vs of sinne. Such are those notions, sowne by Natures hand in euery of our hearts: according to which euidence, Conscience as a Witnesse, Patron, or Iudge within vs, [g] accuseth, excuseth, condemneth, or absolueth; that hereby GOD may bee [h] iustified, and all the World inexcusably sinnefull; and that hereby also a way may be left in GODS infinite mercy for Mans recouery. His intent was [i] not to destroy vs vtterly,(as iustly he might, and as it befell the rebellious Angels) but by this punishment to recall vs to subiection; not to breake vs to pieces in his wrath, but by wrath to reclaime vs to mercy.

Thus Nature suggesteth, Reason conuinceth, and is conuinced. That there is a GOD: that that GOD hath created the World (as we before haue shewed) and that for Man;that Man,to whom all things serue, is to serue GOD, who hath subiected them to him. Doth not Nature teach the Sonne to honour his Father, and the Seruant his Lord? [k] *If he then bee our Father, where is his honour? if our Lord, where is his feare?* Nature inferreth, Reason vrgeth this,and from that ground of Reason doth Scripture reason, the nature whereof in our nature is written. Euen by Reasons Principles we learne, That so perfect a hand, as made all these inferiour things in such perfection, would not haue been so imperfect in the perfectest of them all, so to haue left him in the Creation, as wee now see him in Corruption. The [l] Philosophers saw, Man was a little World, for whom the greater was made, who himselfe was made for more then the World: and that he, for whom so durable and substantiall a thing was made, must needs be made for another then this fraile and wretched life; that is, for the euerlasting life with him, that is the *Euerlasting*. And that is the foundation of all Religion. For what else is Religion, but the Schoole, wherein we learne Mans dutie towards GOD, and the way to be linked most straitly to him? And what are all the Exercises of Religion, but acknowledgements of the Godhead, of the Creation of the World,of the prouident order therein,and ordering thereof, of the Soules immortalitie, of Mans fall and imperfection,of our Soueraigne and supreame good to be sought out of our selues? Of all which,Nature and Reason are witnesses, not to the learned alone, whose testimonies in this kind may easily be produced, but euen to the Vulgar and rudest Idiots; yea, whereas neither Art, nor Industry, nor ciuill Society hath bound men as men together,yet the grounds of these things haue bound them as men, by the meere bond of humane Nature, to GOD, in some or other Religion.

GOD, Man, and Religion, are necessarily linked, as a Father, a Sonne, and Obedience, as a Lender, a Debter, and a Bond. The Wit no sooner conceiueth that there is a GOD, but the Will inferreth that he ought to be worshipped. What Philosophers,or what Politicians euer taught the Easterne and Westerne Ilands, discouered in this last Age of the World, this necessitie of Religion? And yet (as followeth in this History to bee shewed) they which neuer wore clothes on their bodies, neuer furnished their mindes with Arts, neuer knewe any Law (besides Reason growne almost lawlesse) or Magistrate, but their Fathers: which,when they saw other men, could not tell whether they were [m] heauenly Wights, or earthly Monsters, these yet wearied themselues in Superstitions; shewing it easier to put off our selues, then to put the Principles of Religion out of our selues. Yea, among all the Lessons which Nature hath taught, this is the deepliest indented: not Arts, not Policie, nay, not Rayment, not Food, not Life itselfe esteemed so deare, and that naturally, to men, as their Religion. Hereof let this Historie ensuing be witnesse, which will shew the Reader, euery where, in manner, ouer the World, this naturall zeale of that which they esteeme Religion, beyond all things else esteemed most naturall.

Some in the guilty conscience of their owne irreligion (as *Æsops* Foxe, that beeing by casualtie deprived of his tayle, sought to perswade all Foxes to cut off theirs, as vnprofitable burthens) would tell vs that which they [n] cannot tell to themselues, which they dare not tell, but (as they dare) whisper, That Religion is but a continued Custome, or a wiser Policie to hold men in awe. But where had *Custome* this beginning? And what is Custome, but an vniforme manner, and continuance of outward Rites? Whereas Religion it selfe is in the heart,

d *Lib.2. Sent. Dist.5.*
e *Luk.10.30.*
f 1. *Statu, possis non peccare.*
2. *Non potest non peccare.*
3. *Premitur sed non vincitur: hominem habet posse omnino non peccare.*
4. *Non potest peccare, Lumb. ibid.*
g *Rom.2.15.*
h *Rom.3.4.*
i We must vnderstand that God though in the beginning he suffered man to fall, &c. yet vouchsafed of his goodnes so farre to vphold in him both light of vnderstanding and truth of conscience, as might serue to direct him in some sort for morall and ciuill life, for the preseruation and maintenance of societie amongst men.
D. Abbot. Defens.3.part.pag. 68.
k *Mal.1.6.*
l *Mon.de ver. Ch.R.*

m The Indians seeing the Spaniards mounted, thought the Horse and Man to be all one: they thought them also immortal, & fallen from Heauen.

n *Tibi, non sibi interdiu, non noctu,* D.King on *Ionas.*

heart, and produceth those outward ceremoniall effects thereof. In one Country men obserue one habite of attire, another in another: So likewise of dyet: and yet is it naturall to bee clothed, more naturall to eate, but naturall most of all, as is said, to obserue some kind of Religion.

The Grecians [o] burned their dead Parents, the Indians intombed them in their own bowels: *Darius* could not by great summes procure the Grecians to the Indian, or these to the Grecian custome: yet was that which mooued both, and began either Custome, one and the same principle of pietie and religious dutie, howsoeuer diuerlly expressed. Yea, euen the most lascuious, cruell, beastly, and Deuillish obseruations, were ground vpon this one principle, *That* GOD *must bee serued:* which seruice they measured by their owne crooked Rules, euery where disagreeing, and yet meeting in one Center, *The necessitie of Religion.*

As for *Policie*, although it is before answered; yet this may be added, That whereas men with all threatnings, promises, punishments, rewards, can scarce establish their politicall Ordinances; Religion inlinuateth and establisheth it selfe: yea, taketh naturally such rooting, that all politicall Lawes and tortures cannot plucke it vp. How many Martyrs [p] hath Religion, yea, superstition yeelded? but who will lay downe his life to seale some Politicians authority? And so farre is it that Religion should be grounded on Policie, that Policie borroweth helpe of Religion. Thus did *Numa* father his Romane Lawes on *Ægeria*, and other Law-giuers on other supposed Deities, which had been a foolish argument, and vnreasonable manner of reasoning, to perswade one obscurity by a greater, had not Nature before taught them religious awe to God, of which they made vse to this cuuill obedience of their lawes, supposed to spring from a Diuine Fountaine. Yea, the falshoods and varietie of religions are euidences of this Truth; seeing men will rather worship a [r] Beast, Stocke, or the basest Creature, then professe no Religion at all. The [s] Philosophers also that are accused of Atheisme, for the most part, did not deny Religion simply, but that irreligious Religion of the Greekes in idolatrous superstition, *Socrates* rather swearing by a Dog, or an Oke, then acknowledging such gods. It is manifest then, that the Image of GOD was by the *Fall* depraued, but not vtterly extinct; among other sparkes this also being raked vp in the ruines of our decayed Nature; some *science* of the God-head, some *conscience* of Religion: although the true Religion can bee but one, and that which GOD himselfe teacheth, as the onely true way to himselfe; all other Religions being but straynings from him, whereby men wander in the darke, and in labyrinths of error: like men drowning, that get hold on euery twig, or the foolish fish that leapeth out of the frying-pan into the fire.

Thus GOD left a sparke of that light couered vnder the ashes of it selfe; which himselfe vouchsafed to kindle into a flame, neuer since, neuer after to be extinguished. And although that rule of Diuine Iustice had denounced [t] *morte morieris*, to die, and againe to die a first and second death, yet vnasked, yea, by cauilling excuses further prouoked, hee by the promised seed erected him to the hope of a first and second resurrection; a life of Grace first, and after of Glory. The *Sonne* of God is promised to be made the *seede of the Woman*: the *substantiall* [u] *Image of the inuisible* GOD, to be made after the Image and similitude of a Man, to reforme and transforme him againe into the former Image and similitude of GOD; and whereas GOD had made man before after his owne Image, and lost him; he now promiseth to make himselfe after Mans Image to recouer him: euen that he, which in the [x] *forme of* GOD *thought it not robbery* (for it was Nature) *to bee equall with* GOD, should bee made nothing to make vs something, should not spare himselfe that hee might spare vs, should become partaker of our Nature, flesh of our flesh, and bone of our bone, that hee might make vs [y] *partakers of the Diuine Nature, flesh of his flesh, and bone of his bone.* This was that *Seede of the Woman, that hath broken the Serpents head, which by death hath ouercome death, and him that had the power of Death, the Deuill*: who submitted himselfe to a death in it selfe bitter, before men shamefull, and of GOD accursed, that hee might bring vs to a life peaceable, glorious, and blessed, beyond *what eye hath seene, or heart can conceiue.*

This promise of this *Seed, slaine from the beginning of the World*, was the seed of all true Religion, the soule of Faith, the life of Hope, the well-spring of Charitie. True it is that all receiued not this promise alike: for a seed of the Serpent was fore-signified also, which should bruise the heele of the Womans seede. And this in the first seed and generation of Man soon appeared: *Caine* and *Abel* were hereof liuely examples. It appeareth that GOD taught *Adam* how hee would bee worshipped, as it were ordering and ordaining him the first Priest of the World, which function he fulfilled both in instructing his Wife and Children, in prayer with and for them, and in the rites of Sacrificing. His children accordingly [z] *in processe of time, brought and offered them Sacrifices.*

As concerning Sacrifices, some hold opinion (according to their owne practice) that [a] Nature might teach *Adam* this way of seruing GOD; as if Nature were as well able to finde the way,

o *Herod. l. 3.*

p Neconly the true Religion hath had Martyrs; but Iewish Turkish, Ethnike, Heretical superstitions and idolatries: Haue not our eyes seene Brownists, and Papists, euery where else iar, and yet meete in the halter? whiles one presence of Religion hath mooued them to contribution, & disturbance of the State? & euen while we write these things, what mad Martyrs haue we had for Arianisme, and other blasphemies?

q *Petitio Principij.*

r *Calu. Institut. l. 1. c. 11.*

s *Diagoras, Euhemerus, Theodor. Cyrene.*

t *Gen. 2. 17.*

u *Colos. 1. 15.*

x *Phil. 2. 6.*

y *2 Pet. 1. 4. & Ephes. 5. 30.*

z *Gen. 4. 3.*

a *Peter. in Gen. l. 3. Potuit id Abel natura instinctu cognitum habere & tacito quodam naturæ instinctu adduci, &c.*

way, as to know that she is out of the way, and were as well seene in the particular maner, as in the generall necessitie of Religion. We cannot see the Sunne without the Sunne, nor come to GOD, but by GOD, to whom b *Obedience is better then Sacrifice; and to hearken, better then the fat of Rams.* ABEL, saith the Scripture, c *offered by faith*, without which faith it is impossible to please GOD: but faith hath necessary relation d to the *Word* of GOD, who otherwise will be e *weary* of our solemnities, and asketh, *Who hath required them at our hands.* These sacrifices also, besides that they were *acknowledgements of their thankefulnesse, and real confessions of their sinne and death*, due to them therefore, did lead them by the hand *to Christ that Lambe of* GOD, *that should take away the sinnes of the World*, figured by these slaine beasts, confirming their faith in the promise, and their hope of the accomplishment: of which Nature could not once haue dreamed, which hath rather f the impression of some confused notions, that wee haue lost the way, and ought to seeke it, then either light to discerne it, or wisedome to guide vs in it.

b 1. Sam. 15. 22.
c Heb. 11. 4.
d Rom. 10. 17.
e Esay. 1. 12.

f The mysterie of our redemption by Christ is meerly supernaturall.

Of sacrificing, there were from the Beginning two kinds, one called g *Gifts*, or Oblations of things without life: the other *Victims* (so our Rhemists h haue taught vs to English the word *Victimæ*) slaine Sacrifices of Birds and Beasts. Againe, they were propitiatory, consecratorie, Eucharisticall, and so forth, whose kinds and rites *Moses* hath in his Bookes, especially in *Leuiticus*, so plainely declared, that I should but powre water into the Sea, or light a candle to the Sunne, to dilate much of them: these being the same in signification with the *Leuiticall*, and little (if little) differing in the manner of doing. *Caine* brought his i offering, being an Husbandman, of the *fruit of the ground*. *Abel* a Shepheard, *of the fattest of his Sheepe: God respected* ABEL *and his offering*, (the tree first, and then the fruit: the worker, and then the worke) which he signified either by voice, or by k fire from Heauen, according to *Theodotions* translation, l as in the Sacrifices of *Aaron, Gedeon, Manoah, Dauid, Salomon, Elias*: or by some other meanes, both comfortable to *Abel*, and enuied of *Caine*, who therefore slew him; thus in this member *bruising the heele* of that blessed seed, as a type of that which the Head himselfe should after sustaine.

g *Δῶρα.* *Θυσίαι.*
h *Rhem. Transl. Matth. 4. 43. Act. 7. 42.*
i Some Rab. thinke, that *Caine* and *Abel* brought their Sacrifices to *Adam*, that he should offer them. *Bertram* thinkes, that they had a certaine place designed for their sacrifices & holy things.
k *Hieron. Trouiu. Heb. in Gen.*
l *Insummauit super.*
m *Aug. de Ciuit. Dei, lib. 15. c. 5.*
n *Gen. 4. 17. Roma caput Mundi.*
o *Iob. 17. 6. & 26, &c.*

Here is the first Apostasie after that first Euangelicall promise, and the first *diuision* of Religion, *Caine* being the first builder of the m *Earthly Citie*, not that which hee called after the name of his Sonne, n *Henoch*, but of that spirituall City of the Wicked, the seed of the Serpent, which he founded in his Brothers blood: euen as that later *Compendium* thereof, which called her selfe *Caput mundi*, the head of the World (and indeed o *the World* is vsually in Scripture applyed to that *seed of the Serpent*, as it is opposite to the *seed of the Woman*) was by *Romulus* her first Founder, by like example of Fratricide in the murther of *Remus*, dedicated (as it were) to the future *mysterie of iniquitie, the seat of the Beast, and of the Whore*, (by whose authoritie, *Christ himselfe was slaine*) *drunken after with the blood of his Saints*: and still *breathing blood and slaughter*, to euery *Abel* that will not communicate in her spirituall whooredomes: that will not with her offer the *fruits of the ground* (the Sacrifice of *Caine*) which neither came from heauen, nor can guide to Heauen, being *earthly, sensuall, deuillish*.

Caine was for this fact conuented by that All-seeing Iustice, who both by open sentence and inward terrors accused and accursed him, continuing his life, euen for the same cause that other Murtherers loose it, that he might liue an example (which then in that vnpeopled world by his death he could not haue been) to the future generation; branded p also by the Lord with some *sensible marke*, to exempt him, and terrifie others from that bloody cruelties: this mercy being mixed with this iudgement, a longer time of repentance. GOD before cursed q the earth for *Adam*, he now r cursed CAINE *from the earth, to be a runnagate*, and wanderer thereon. For how could he, that had so forsaken God, but be forsaken of the Earth, and of himselfe? the s *stable* and mercifull earth, which before had opened her mouth to receiue his Brothers blood, shrinking, and (as it were) grudging to support such wicked feet, and by denying him her strength, forcing him to his manifold shifts, and shiftlesse remouing. Wretched man, alwayes bleeding his brothers blood; not daring to looke vp to Heauen, fearing to looke downe to Hell, the World without him threatning a miserable life, his Body branded to contempt and shame till his death, his soule become a stage of Anguish, Feare, Horrour, and other Furies the Harbingers of Hell: not able to suffer (which yet he cannot but suffer) the guilt of passed wickednesse gnawing him, the waight of present misery pressing him, the dread of a death, and a death attending him: restlesse in himselfe, hated of the World, despairing of relieue from God: a liuely Map of the deadly and damnable state of sinne and sinners, (without Christ) t *dead whiles they liue*, mouing sepulchres, the Deuils captiues, heis heires, exiled from heauen, and vagabonds on the earth, euen on that which they call their owne land.

p Some thinke this marke to be a shaking of all the body, as fearing continually. *Peter.*
q Gen. 3. 17.
r Gen. 4. 12.
s *Vt stando Vesta vocatur. Ouid.*
t 1. Tim. 5. 6.
u *Calv. in Gen. Martyr. in Gen. Chrysost. ho. 20. Cyrill. Beter. de poit. lib. 2.*

Caine, more vexed with the punishment, then at the fault of his sinne, *departed from the presence of the Lord*, which is meant either of his iudiciall conuenting him, or u in regard of the visible

visible societie of the Church, cradled yet in his Fathers houshold, where God did especially shew his present prouidence, protection and grace, who otherwise *filleth the Heauen and Earth*, of whom & in whom they are: from hence, as *Adam* before out of *Paradise*, so *Cain* was, as it were, excommunicated, expelled, & out-lawed, and *dwelt in the Land of Nod*, which [x] some take to be appellatiuely spoken, as if his miserie had giuen name of *Mourning* vnto the place where he dwelled, or roamed rather: [y] *Iosephus* saith, hee built Naida, applying it to a proper place, which was either Eastward from Eden, or Eastward towards Eden from Canaan, where *Adam* is supposed to haue dwelt, and after with his Wife to haue beene buried at Hebron. Afterward, his posteritie beeing multiplied (his Wife, *Epiphanius* out of *Leptogenesis* calleth *Shaue*, [z] *Comestor* calleth her *Chalmana*, [a] *Philo*, *Themech*) *he built a Citie which he called by the name of his sonne* [b] *Henoch*, to crosse that curse of his wandering to and fro on the earth, or to arme him against others, which his guilty conscience caused him to feare, or to be a receptacle and store-house of those spoyles, which, *Iosephus* saith, hee robbed from others by violence, when as the earth was barren to him. *Philo* (if we may so entitle that Author which hath written of the Antiquities of the Bible) ascribeth vnto him other Cities, *Masili*, *Leed*, *Tobe*, *Iesca*, *Cele*, *Iebbat*, adding that hee liued 730. yeeres. These things may bee probable, although that Author be otherwise fabulous, considering that men did ordinarily liue many hundred yeeres in those times, and were also exceeding fruitfull, especially after that *Polygamy* was embraced of that Family. And [c] if that in *Abrahams* posterity, the seed of *Iacob* in lesse then three hundred yeares was multiplied to so [d] great a people, it is like that the *Cainites* [e] were no lesse populous, liuing in more freedome. Hee first (saith *Iosephus*) found out weights and measures, and assigned proprieties in possessions of Land, before common as the ayre and light, and was Author to lewd persons, of a lewd and vngodly life. Probable it is that the Citie was called *Henoch*, because the Curse suffered not the father to stay in a place, but to leaue a hasty inheritance to his Son to finish and rule it. *Iabal* and *Iubal* and *Tubalcain*, were inuenters of Arts: the first to dwell in Tents and keepe Cattell; the second of Musicall instruments: the third of working in Mettals, and making of Armour, which some thinke to be *Vulcan*, by the neerenesse of name and occupation. His [f] Sister *Naamah* is accounted by some Rabbines, the first inuenter of making Linnen and Woollen, and of vocall Musique; yea, they make her the wife of *Noah* also.

Thus let vs leaue this Family multiplying in numbers, in Sciences, in wickednesse, fauouring nothing diuine, or at least nothing but humane in their Diuinitie (therefore called *the sonnes of men* [g]) and let vs looke backe to *Adam*, who in this wicked fruit of his body, might read continual Lectures of repentance for [h] the sinne of his foule. *Adam* begat a child *in his own likenesse*, [i] that is, not in that likenesse of God, wherein he was created, but like vnto himselfe, both in humane nature, & natural corruption, his name he called *Seth*, of whose posteritie the whole world was by *Noah* re-peopled. Vnto *Seth* was born *Enosh. Then began men*, saith Moses *to call vpon the name of the Lord*. This some interpret of the beginning of Idolatry, that men began to profane the name of the Lord: some to call the name of the Lord, that is, after *Rabbi Salomo*, to apply the name of God to Images, Stars and Men: But the more likely opinion is, that when *Adam* had obtained a more holy posteritie, which was now multiplyed in diuers families, [k] Religion which before had been a priuate In-mate in *Adams* houshold, was now brought into publike exercise, whereof *Prayer* hath alwaies been accounted a principall part, and God himselfe in both Testaments calleth his house *a house of Prayer*; the calues of the lips, and the ejaculations of the heart being the body and soule of Diuine worship, whereof Sacrifices were in a manner but the apparel, fashioned to that infancy of the Church. Of the names of [l] the posteritie of *Adam*, and his hundred yeeres mourning for *Abel*; of *Seth* his remouing after *Adams* death to a mountaine neere Paradise, and such other things, more fauouring of fabulous vanity in the false-named [m] *Methodius*, *Philo*, and others that follow them, I list not to write. And wel might *Genebrard* haue spared his paines in searching for the antiquitie of Popery in this first Age of the World. Easily may we grant a Church then, truely Catholike, in the Posteritie of *Seth*, instructed partly by Reuelations, partly by Traditions, concerning the Creation, the fall, the good and euill Angels, the promised Seed, the Vnitie and Trinitie, punishments and repentance for sinne, publike and priuate Deuotions, and other like Articles gathered out of *Moses*: but for the Rabble of Rabbinicall Dreames which hee addeth hereunto, we had need of the *implicite faith* of some simple credulous Catholike to receiue them: as namely, Purgatory resembled in the *fiery Sword* at the entrance of Paradise, Free-will grounded on that which GOD speaketh to CAINE, *Thou shalt rule ouer him* (the prerogatiuely spoken, and so perhaps was meant.

x *Hieron. Heb. Trad.*
y *Antiq. l. 1. c. 2.*
z *P. Comest. hist. Scriol.*
a *Pseudo-Philo. in antiq. Bibl.*
b *Pseudo-Berosius* nameth the City *Oenus* by *Libanus*.
c Euen I my selfe know one *W. Collin* of Broxted in Essex, whose posteritie by one woman (which also survived him) was such, that his sonne reported to me, that there were 21. of them liuing at his funerall, and one of his daughters had aboue an hundred then of her Progenie. d 600000. men of warre.
e *Iosepb.* saith the *Lamech* had seuenty seuen children
f *Genebrard. in Chron.*
g Gen. 6. 1. 2.
h The Iewes fable, that none of *Adams* children which he had after *Abel*, till the birth of *Seth*, had the true forme of a man, and that in that 130. yeeres space he begat *Reubiel*, that is, Diuels. *R. Mos. Egyp. Dec. dub. lib. 1. c. 6.* He interpreteth *Adams begetting a child in his owne likenesse*, of that instruction wherby *Seth* was taught, and became a perfect man, the others being beasts and *Reubiel*, which in an Allegorical sense may be

i *Broughton Concent. Mat. tr. in Gen.* k *Luther in Gen. Tremell. Patabius, Calu. in Gen. Perer. in Gen. l. 5.* l Some are of opinion that all those Fathers mentioned *Gen. 5.* were Ecclesiasticall Fathers also, & Priests for diuine worship: which function of Lordship and Priesthood vnited, continued to the first borne many generations after the flood. *Betram. pol. Iud. cap. 2.* m *Methody Reuel. Chilia. de Antiq. Genebrard. Chron. ex Edit. Vet. Vid. Palma Cant. Parif. An. 1600.*

tiue of the elder Brother ouer the yonger fastly applyed to the rule of the minde ouer sinfull lusts) the choice of meates in the first Fathers abstinence from flesh, fish, and wine (as hee saith) which had not beene permitted to them, as it is to vs: Traditions, when as yet they had no Scripture: Superstitious Obsequies to the dead, because the Iewes in their office for the dead call vpon the [n] Fathers which lye buried at Hebron (namely, *Adam, Eue*, and the rest) to open the gates of Paradise: Deuotion to Saints, because the Cherubins were set betweene Paradise and Sinners; (as if their Saints were honoured to keepe them out of Heauen) and not the bloudie Sacrifices onely in *Abels* offering, but that vnbloudie Sacrifice (so they stile their *Masse*) in the offering of *Caine*: (wee enuie them not their Founder) yea, he finds their Sacrifice of *Orders* in Gods executing the Priestly function, of *Matrimony* in *Adam* and *Eue*, of *Baptisme* in the *Breeches* which they ware, of *Penance* because GOD said, *Thou art dust, and to dust thou shalt returne*, of *Confirmation* in those words, *Shee shall breake thy head* (the Truth will breake their heads for so reading it) of *Vnction*, in that *Seth* went to the Cherub which kept Paradise; and receiued of him three graines of the Tree of Life, whereof we read in the *Apocalips, the leaues shall heale the Nations*; with these graines was an Oyle made, wherewith *Adam* was anoyed, and the stones put into his mouth, whence sprang the Tree whereof the Crosse of our Lord was made, hidden by *Salomon* in the Temple, and after in the Poole of *Bethesda. Spectatum admissi risum teneatis amici?* Did not *Genebrard* deserue an [o] Archbishopicke? or if the obseruation he his, did not *Petrus Victor Palma* (which set him forth with such Comments) deserue the *Palme* and *Victory* for *Peters* pretended Successors, which could find such antiquitie for proofe of their Catholicisme? Much good may it doe their Catholike mawes with such Dainties. *Iust art thou, O Lord, and iust are thy iudgements, which because they will not beleeue thy Truth, giuest them ouer to such strong delusions, to beleeue so grosse and palpable Lyes.*

n *Officium Iudæorum, &c. inter p. Genebr.*

Apoc. vlt.

o *Aquensis Archiepisc. fuit.*

CHAP. VII.

Of the cause and comming of the Floud.

THus wee haue seene in part the fulfilling of the Prophesie of the Seed of the Woman, and of that other of the Serpent, in the Posteritie of *Caine* and *Seth*. The Family of *Caine* is first reckoned, and their forwardnesse in humane Arts, [a] *as the children of this World are wiser in their generation*, in the things of this life, which they almost onely attend, *then the children of light.* As for the [b] Iewish Dreames, that *Lamech* was blind, and by the direction of *Tubalcaine* his sonne guiding his hand slew *Caine*, supposing it had beene a wilde beast, which when he knew, so inraged him, that he killed his sonne also, they that list may follow. *Moses* reckoneth the Generations according to the first-borne in the Posteritie of *Seth*, as enioying the Principalitie and Priesthood, that so the promised Seed of the Woman (after such a World of yeares comming into the World) might iustifie the stablenesse of GODS promises, his Lineall Descent from *Adam* with a due Chronologie, beeing declared. After *Seth, Enosh, Kenan, Mehalaleel, Iared was Henoch the seuenth from* ADAM, *who walked with God, whom God tooke away that he should not see death.* This before the Law, and *Heliae* in the Law, are Witnesses of the Resurrection; being miraculously taken from the Earth into Heauen, not by death, but by supernaturall changing of their bodies. That hee should bee still in [c] an Earthly Paradise, and that hee and *Elias* should come and preach against Antichrist, and of him be slaine, is a Popish Dreame; the Scripture [d] saying, that HENOCH *was taken away that he should not see death*; of *Elias*, that he is [e] *alreadie come in* the person of *Iohn Baptist: the Spirit and power*, or spirituall power of walking with GOD, reforming Religion, and conuerting soules, beeing communicated to many of those Ministers which haue lien slaine in the *streets of that great Citie.*

This his Assimption is [f] supposed to be visibly done. Hee was a Prophet, and *Iude* doth in his Epistle cite a testimonie of his, [g] which eyther by [h] Tradition went from hand to hand, as it seemeth the whole Word of GOD was deliuered before the dayes of *Moses*; GOD by Visionsand Dreames appearing vnto the Patriarkes; or else it was written and since is lost. Some hold it was penned by some Iew vnder the name of *Enoch*. [i] *Augustine* thinketh that the Booke entituled *Enoch* was forged in his name, as other Writings vnder the names of Prophets and Apostles: and therefore calleth it *Apocrypha* (as [k] *Hierome* doth also) [l] *Chrysostome* and *Theophilact* account *Moses* the first Pen-man of Holy Scripture. Although it seemes that Letters were in vse before the floud, if [m] *Iosephus* his testimonie

a *Luke 16.8.*
b *Martyr. in Gen. ex Rab. Solom.*
c *Bellar. tom. 1. cont. 3. l. 3. c. 6.*
d *Heb. 11. 5. &c.*
e *Luke 1. 17.*
Mutib. 17. 12.
f *Gibbex Rab. Aliba. Racanati, Targum.*
g *Perer. lib. 7. in Gen.* thinketh that *Iude* knew of this Prophesie by Reuelation, and reuealed the same to the Church.
h *Perk. Reform. Cathol.*
i *De Ciuit. Dei. lib. 15. c. 23.*
k *Eà quòd earũ Scripturarum occulta origo non claruit patribus. In his autem Apocryphis est inuenitur aliqua veritas, quam propter multa falsa nulla est canonica authoritas.*
Hier. in Tit. c. 1.
l *Chrysost. Hom. in Matth.*
m *Antiqu. l. 1. c. 2.*

monie be true, who affirmeth that *Adam* hauing prohpecied two vniuersall destructions, one by fire, another by water, his Posteritie erected two Pillars, one of bricke, another of stone, in both which they writ their inuentions of Astronomie; that of stone was reported to remaine in his time. Some [n] ascribe this to *Seth*, as also the first naming of the seuen Planets. The Science of Astronomie, they say, was much furthered by *Enoch*, who (saith *Eupolemon*) was by the Greekes called *Atlas*, to whom they attributed the inuention thereof. [o] *Plinie* was of opinion that Letters were eternall.

Howsoeuer, it is more then apparant, that the Booke bearing *Enochs* name, is very fabulous, which, because the Tales therein professe antiquity (although they were later dreames) I thought it not vnfit to borrow out of [p] *Scaliger* somewhat of that which he hath inserted in his Notes vpon *Eusebius*, the Greeke Copie being, as the Phrase testifieth, translated out of Hebrew, which had beene the worke of some Iew: the Antiquity appeareth, in that [q] *Tertullian* citeth it.

And [r] it came to passe when the sonnes of men were multiplyed, there were borne to them faire Daughters, and the Watch-men (so he calleth the Angels out of *Dan.4.*) lusted and went astray after them; and they said one to another, [s] *Let vs choose vs Wiues of the Daughters of men of the Earth.* And *Semixas* their Prince said vnto them, *I feare me you will not doe this thing, and I alone shall be debter of a great sinne.* And they all answered him and said; *We will all sweare with an Oath, and will Anathematise or Curse our selues not to alter this our minde till we haue fulfilled it*, and they all sware together. These came downe in the dayes of *Iared* to the top of the Hill *Hermon*. And they called the Hill *Hermon*, because they sware and Anathematised on it. These were the names of their Rulers, *Semixas, Atarcuph, Arachiel, Chabahiel, Orammame, Ramiel, Sapsich, Zakiel, Balkiel, Azalzel, Pharmaros, Samiel &c.*

These tooke them Wiues, and three Generation were borne vnto them: the first were great Gyants; the Gyants begat the *Nephelim*, to whom were borne *Elud*; and they taught them and their Wiues Sorceries and Inchantments. *Ezael* taught first to make Swords and Weapons for Warre, and how to worke in Metals. He taught to make Womens Ornaments, and how to looke faire, and iewelling. And they beguiled the Saints; and much sinne was committed on the Earth. Other of them taught the vertues of Roots, Astrologie, Diuinations, &c. After these things the Gyants beganne to eate the flesh of men, and men were diminished: and the remnant cryed to Heauen, because of their wickednesse, that they might come in remembrance before him. And the foure great Archangels *Michael, Gabriel, Raphael*, and *Uriel* hearing it, looked downe on the Earth from the holy places of Heauen: and beholding much blood-shed on the Earth, and all vngodlinesse and transgression committed therein, said one to another, That the Spirits and Soules of men complaine, saying, That yee should present our Prayer to the Highest, and our destruction. And the foure Archangels entring, said to the Lord, Thou art GOD of GODS and Lord of Lords, &c. Thou seest what *Ezael* hath done, hee hath taught Mysteries, and reuealed to the World the things in Heauen, &c. Then the Highest said, The Holy one, The Great one spake and sent *Uriel* to the sonne of *Lamech*, saying, Goe to *Noe*, tell him of the end approching, and a flood shall destroy the Earth, &c. To *Raphael* hee said, Goe *Raphael*, and binde *Ezael* hand and foot, and cast him into darkenesse, and open the Wildernesse in the Desart of *Dodael*, and there cast him, and lay vpon him sharpe stones to the Day of Judgement, &c. And to *Gabriel*, he said, Goe, *Gabriel*, to the Gyants, and destroy the sonnes of the Watch-men from the sonnes of men, set them one against another in warre and destruction. To *Michael*, he said, Goe, *Michael*, binde *Semixa* and the others with him that haue mixed themselues with the daughters of men (vntill seuentie Generations) to the hils of the Earth; vntill the day of their iudgement, till the iudgement of the World bee finished, and then they shall bee brought into [t] *the confusion of fire*, and vnto tryall, and vnto the Prison of the ending of the World, and whosoever shall be condemned and destroyed, from hence-forth shall be cast together with them till the finishing of their Generation, &c. And the Gyants which were begotten of the Spirits and flesh, they shall call them euill Spirits on the Earth, because their dwelling is on the Earth. The Spirits that depart out of their bodies shall bee euill Spirits, because they were engendred of the Watch-men and men.

But it were tedious to recite further. The antiquity of it, and because it is not so common, and especially because [u] some of the Ancients and of the Papists haue beene misseled by these Dreames (refused iustly by *Ierome* and *Augustine*) interpreting the sonnes of GOD in *Moses* to be spoken of Angels (as their Translation did read it) haue moued me to insert those Tales. Notable is the diligence of the Purgatorie Scauengers, who in *Viues* notes vpon *Aug. de Ciuit. Dei, Lib.15.cap.23.* haue in their *Index Expurgatorius*, set the Seale of their Office vpon a testimonie alleaged out of *Eusebius de Prep. Euang. Lib.5.cap.4.* as if they had beene *Viues* his owne words, to be left out in the Impression. The words, because they sauour

n *Otho Heurn. lib.1.*
o *Plin.l.7.c.56.*
p *Not. in Euseb. Chron. pag.244. Frag. Graec. ex l. 1. Enoch.*
q *Tertull. de Idolat.*
r A fragment of the Booke of *Enoch.*
s This Fable arose of the false interpretation of *Moses* word, *Gen. 6.12 The sonnes of God, &c.*
t Εἰς τὸ χῶνευστήριον.
u *Ioseph. Antiq. l.1. Iustin. Martyr. Athenag. Cyprian. Lactan. Euseb. Hugo de S. Victor. Strabus, Burgensis, Salchius Sacrat. lib. 1. Clem. Alex. cap. Photium.* This Fable of Angels, &c. the Saracens also receyue, see *lib.3.c.5.*

saiour of the former errour, haue I heere placed, *Non ergo Deos, neque bonos dæmones, Gentiles, sed perniciosos solummodo venerantur. Quam rem magis Plutarchus confirmat, dicens fabulosas de dijs rationes res quasdam significare, à dæmonibus antiquissimis gestas temporibus, & ea quæ de gigantibus ac de Titanibus decantantur, dæmonum fuisse operationes. Vnde mihi suspicio* (saith *Eusebius*, but *Viues* is fined for it) *nonnunquam nocibit, ne ista illa sint, quæ ante diluuium à gigantibus falsa diuina Scriptura tetigit, de quibus dicitur: Cum autem crassiori essent Angeli Dei filiæ hominum, quia essent speciosæ, elegerunt sibi ex illis vxores, ex quibus procreati sunt sæpissimi gigantes à sæculo. Suspicabitur enim fortasse quispiam, illos & illorum spiritus esse qui ab hominibus postea dij putati sunt, pugnasque illorum, tumultus & bella esse, quæ fabulosè de dijs conscribebantur.*

x *Lact. l.2.c.15* *Lactantius* x saith, that when the World was multiplied, GOD sent Angels to keepe men from fraudes of the Deuill, to whom he forbade all earth contagion. These were by the Deuill instiated with women, therefore deprived of Heauen: and their Progeny of a middle nature betwixt Men and Angels, became vncleane Spirits; so that hence grew two kindes of *Dæmones* or Deuillish Spirits; the one heauenly, the other earthly, which would now seeme to be keepers, and are destroyers of men.

The Angels are sometimes called y *the sonnes of God*: but that name is communicated to men, who z *by nature children of wrath*, by faith in the naturall and onely begotten Sonne of GOD, haue this prerogatiue to bee the sonnes of GOD, and fellow-heires with CHRIST. But some of the children of the Kingdome shall bee cast out, because they haue rebelled against their Father that begot them, professing themselues to be the sonnes of GOD, but a *doe the workes of their father the Deuill*: and of these Hypocrites and Apostataes it is said, that louing pleasure more then GOD, they matched themselues in *Caines* Family: a prouocation so mightie to euill, that strong *Samson* and wise *Solomon* are witnesses, that b *the strong men are slaine* by this weaker sexe. This was the Serpents policie at first, *Balaams* policie after, Babels policie now; c and *Balaams* wages doe moue many still to make such Linsey-woolsey Marriages, that the d *children speake halfe Ashdod*, and whilest the Father professeth one Religion, the mother another, the children become Gyants, to fight against all that is called GOD, and to make little or no profession (at least in their liues) of any Religion at all.

y *Iob.1.6.& 38.7.*
z *Ephes.2.3.*
a *Iob.8.44.*
b *Prou.7.26.*
c *Sheldon* in his Motiues obserueth these Marriages to bee a great meane for propagating Popetie.
d *Nehem.13.24*
e *Gib. in Gen.*

I denie not that then there were Gyants also in regard of bodily stature, e whom the Scripture calleth, because they were great and fearefull, *Rephaim* and *Emim*; of their pride *Hanakim*, of their strength *Gibborim*, of their tyrannie *Nephilim*, of their naughtinesse *Zamzummim*. Such were *Og* an *Goliah* after the floud. Yea, such haue beene in all Ages: which (to omit other Ethnike Authors) f *Augustine* affirmeth, that at *Vica* hee saw a mans tooth as great as an hundred of the ordinary sise. *Viues* on that place, saith he saw one as bigge as a mans fist. *Nicephorus* telleth of two men in the time of *Theodosius*, the one not so admirable for his height, which was fiue Cubits and an hand, as the other for his smalnesse, like to a Partrich in bignesse, yet wittie and learned. Our Histories of g *Arthur*, little *John*, *Corey* Earle of Vlster, and one in our times, 1581. seene in London, doe shew some such here and there, now and then in the World, which *Goropius* in his *Gigantomachia*, affirmeth of his owne sight: and euen whose Families of these monstrous men are found at this day in America, both neere to Virginia, as h Captaine *Smith* reporteth; and especially about the Straits of Magellan, i neere which he found Gyants, and in the same Straits were such seene of the k Hollanders ten foot in height, whereas yet other Families were but of the ordinary greatnesse. One *Thomas Turner* told mee, that neere the Riuer of Plate, hee saw one twelue foot high, and others whose limber part of their head was flat, not round. l Authours tell of *Maximinus* the Romane Emperour, that he was eight foot and a finger high, whose wiues Bracelets might serue him for Rings, that he often in one day drunke an *Amphora*, which is almost sixe Gallons of Wine, and eate fortie pounds of flesh: *Cordus* saith sixtie; hee could breake a Horse legge, or strike out his teeth with a blow of his fist, &c. Which occurrents in Nature no doubt haue giuen occasion to some of further fabling. *Qui de magnis maiora loquuntur.* m We read in *Pliny* of one of fortie sixe Cubits, in Crete, found by the force of an Earth-quake, breaking the hill wherein he stood, supposed to bee *Orion* or *Orus*: more credible is that he telleth of one *Gabbora* in *Claudius* time, nine foot and nine inches; and in *Augustus* time of another halfe a foot higher.

f *De Ciuit. Dei lib.15.cap.9.*
g *Giral. Cambr. Hector. Boet. Camden. Brit.*
h Map of Virginia.
i *Pigafetta.*
k *Oliuer Noort.*
and *Sebastia de Weert.*
l *Iul. Capitol. Herodianus.*
m *Plin.l.7.c.16*

Howsoever the bodies of these men before the Floud were composed, certaine their minds were disposed to all monstrous inhumanitie, which hastened their destruction. This made GOD *to repent* that he made man vpon the Earth, not that there was any change or repentance in him, but because a change for want of repentance happened to them. In long sufferance he gaue them an hundred and twentie yeares space, in which *Noah* might be a *Preacher of righteousnesse*: yea, the Arke it selfe, which *Noah* that while was prouiding, might preach to them repentance, that their teares might haue quenched his wrath, and preuented temporall

rall drowning and eternall burning. *Adam* liued till *Henochs* time, a witnesse and Preacher of the promise he himselfe had receiued. *Henoch* himselfe is made, not a verball but a reall Preacher, whiles his sonne *Methuselah*, and his Nephew *Lamech* the father of *Noah* liued: that GOD might haue witnesses to conuert some and conuince others. But whiles the World becommeth worse and worse, n (*Ætas parentum peior auis tulit Hos nequiores, mox daturos Progeniem vitiosiorem*) a deluge of sinne first, and a deluge of iudgement after, drowned the World.

n *Horat. Carm.*

For the circumstances of the Flood, *Moses* hath more plainly related them, then that I should here expresse them. *Noah* with his three sonnes and their wiues entred the Arke at GOD's appointment, to which by diuine instinct resorted both birds and beasts; of the cleane seuen, and of the vncleane two in euery kind. If any maruell at this distinction of cleane and vncleane in these times, supposing that GOD first in the Wilderness made this partition-wall: it is answered, that GOD before this had appointed Sacrifices of beasts, which might make the difference; for which cause also there was a seuenth of euery such creature, reserued for Sacrifice after *Noahs* going out. Besides, GOD had now purposed to adde the flesh of beasts vnto mans dyet, for which those, called by the Israelites cleane, were most fit, and most in vse: and in that respect more of such kinds were reserued, as more necessary for mans vse in food, clothing, and some of them also for labour. Otherwise no creature is vncleane in it selfe, the Hoose and Cudde being by Nature (GODS Hand-maid) and not by their owne vice, such as made this distinction. And after the flood GOD made no Law of difference, vntill the time of *Moses*, although each Countrey hath obserued their owne peculiar custome in this food, some loathing that which others esteeme daintie, not for Religion, but for naturall and ciuill causes. As at this day to the Tartars, Horse-flesh is royall fare; to the Arabians, Camels; to some Americans, Serpents, and other flesh to others, which our appetite more then our faith, our stomacke more then our soule, abhorreth.

Concerning the Arke, diuers doubts haue beene moued, through curiositie and vnbelieffe of some, who by diuine Iustice were in a manner depriued of sense and reason, hauing before through Deuillish wickednesse lost their conscience and Religion. Thus o *Apelles* one of *Marcions* Disciples, could not finde the Arke (after *Moses* dimension) to bee capable of foure Elephants in so small a quantitie; *Celsus* contrary to him (yet agreeing in a foolish impietie and impious folly) thought so great a vessell was too great for mans handy-worke. Thus, like *Samsons* Foxes, their heads are diuers wayes, but they are tyed together by the tayles, agreeing in disagreeing both from *Moses* and themselues.

o *Orig. hom. 16. Genes.*

But might not reason teach *Celsus*, that the direction of GOD might teach a man in an hundred and twentie yeares space to frame lo mighty a Fabricke? doth not sense and experience shew buildings not much lesse both on the Sea and on the Land? And what Arithmeticke or Geometry, nay, what wit or common sense had *Apelles* in his Assertion? The Arke was too little (forsooth) for so many creatures and their prouision for a yeare. We need not seeke for shifts from helpe of the Geometricall Cubite knowne to *Moses* in his Egyptian Learning, of three, fixe, or nine foot to the Cubite: as *Origen* and p *Hugo* doe: nor of the sacred Cubite, imagined twice as much as the common: nor of the larger stature and Cubites of men in those youthfull times and age of the World. The length hereof three hundred Cubites, and the breadth fiftie, doe make of square measure by common Rules of Art, fifteene thousand Cubites. Three floores or roomes were therein of that quantitie, each contayning ten foot in height. As for the beasts; a floore of fifteene thousand Cubits might yeeld fifty Cubits square to three hundred seuerall kinds, many more then are knowne by relation of the most Writers, *Aristotle, Plinie, Gesner, &c.* which scarce reckon halfe that number, and but fortie kinds or thereabouts that would take vp any great q roome. The height might yeeld commodious roomes for the fowles on Perches: and all this might one roome or floore afford. Iudge then whether two other roomes of equall bignesse, might not be sufficient for all other necessary employments? Besides, the roofe is not to bee thought vnproportionable, fitted for so long and tempestuous stormes, and therefore not vnfitted with roome for diuers necessaries. And if any accuse me for adding this of the roofe to *Moses* description, I say, that so it is translated by r some, *Et in cubitis longitudinem consummato eius tectum superne*, vnderstanding those words not of the window (as many doe) but of the roofe it selfe, which else is no where described, which should ouer-hang the Arke a Cubite breadth to defend it the safer from raines; as in our houses the eues and slope roofes are commodious both for roome within, and against the weather without. But if any would entertaine longer dispute about this, he may (among others that haue handled this question) resort vnto s *Goropius Becanus* his *Gigantomachia*, whom in this point I would rather follow, then in many other his *Beceselanical* Paradoxes.

p *Hugo de Arca Noe. l. 1.*

q Such Creatures as breed of putrifaction, and which liue in both Elements, perhaps were not in the Arke.

r *Tremel. & Iunius.*

s *Becesel. Antiq. Antuerp.*

Noah and his Family with this their retinue being entred, *the fountaines of the great deepes*

were

were opened, and the windowes of Heauen? the two store-houses of waters which GOD had separated in the Creation, beeing in a manner confounded againe, the Seas breaking their sindie barres, and breaking vp by secret vnderminings the priuie pores and passages in the Earth: the Cloudes conspiring with the Waters, and renuing their first league and naturall amitie, to the confusion of Nature and the World. The heauenly lights hid their faces from beholding it, and clothed themselues with blacke, as bewaylng the Worlds Funerall; the Ayre is turned into a Sea, the Sea possesseth the Ayrie Region, the Earth is now no Earth, but a myrie lumpe, and all that huger World is contracted into a briefe *Epitome*, and small abridgement in the Arke, euen there but a few inches distant from death. Thus do all [c] Creatures detest *Sinne*, which hath made them subiect to *Vanitie*; thus would the Elements wash themselues cleane from it, and the committers thereof: but the Arke preualeth ouer the preuailing waters: a figure of the Church, the remnant of the elder, and Seminarie of the new World.

c *Rom.8.20.*

Heurnius applieth the Fable of *Prometheus* to *Noah*, *lib.1. u De Fab. Mundi.*

This drowning of the World hath not beene quite drowned in the World, but besides *Moses*, many other Writers haue mentioned it: the time thereof being referred to that which in each Nation was accounted most ancient; as among the Thebans to *Ogiger*; in Thessalia, to *Deucalion*; among the Americans (although [u] *Mercator* thinke, that the Floud drowned not those parts, because they were not yet peopled, and because the beasts there are most-what differing kinds from those in our World) the people haue retayned the tradition hereof; *Mnaseas* among the Phœnicians, *Berosus* a Caldæan, *Hieronimus* of *Ægyptus*, *Nicolaus* of Damascus, the Poets Greeke and Latine, adding Fables to the Truth (which without some ground of truth they could not haue added) all mention the Floud; howsoeuer confounding the lesse and later with this first and vniuersall.

I might adde the testimonies of *Eupolemus*, *Molon*, *Abidenus*, *Alexander Polyhistor*, out of *Eusebius*, *Iosephus*, and others. *Lucian* in his *Dea Syria*, telleth the opinion of the Hierapolitans, but a little corrupted from *Moses* Narration, that Countrey wherein *Noah* liued most likely retaining firmer memorie of this Miracle: so plainly doth lie attribute to his *Deucalion* the Arke, the resort and safe-gard of the Lions, Bores, Serpents and Beasts: the repairing of the World after this drowning thereof, which lie ascribeth to periurie, cruelte, and other abominations of the former people. That *Berosus* which we now haue, is not so much as the ghost, or carkasse, and scarce a few bones of the carkasse of that famous Caldæan Author, mentioned by the Ancients, but the Dreames of *Annius* (no new thing in this last Age) coined for the most part in his name. Some fragments of *Berosus* wee haued cited in other Authours that conuince this Bastard.

Among others, somewhat of the Floud hath escaped drowning: his testimonie whereof set downe in *Polyhistor* and *Abidenus*, is in [x] *Eusebius*. He affirmeth, that *Saturne* gaue warning to *Sisithrus* of this Deluge, and willed him to prepare a great Vessell or Ship, wherein to put conuenient food, and to saue himselfe and his kindred and acquaintance; which hee builded of length fiue furlongs, of breadth two. After the retyring of the waters, hee sent out a Bird which returned: after a few dayes he sent her forth againe, which returned with her feet bemired; and being sent the third time, came no more: with other things to like purpose, which *Polyhistor* there, and *Abidenus* citeth out of *Berosus*. *Plutarch* hath also written of this Doue, sent by *Deucalion* out of the Arke, which returning was a signe of tempest, and flying forth of faire weather.

x *Euseb.Chron. Graec Scaig.lib. 1. & de Præpar. lib.9.*

Plutar. de Animant. cum ratione.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the re-peopling of the World: and of the diuision of Tongues and Nations.

a *Genes.8.1.*

b *Hos.2.21,22.*

c *Amb.l.de No. Rupert.l.4.*

NOW [a] GOD *remembred Noah*, saith *Moses*; not that GOD can forget, but that hee declared his Diuine Power, whereby *Noah* might know hee was not forgotten. Then did the [b] *Heauens remember* their wonted influence in the Elements: then did the Elements *remember* their naturall order: GOD made *a winde* to passe in Commission, and, as a common Vmpire, to end their vnnaturall strife, forcing the Waters into their ancient precincts aboue and beneath the Firmament. ([c] *Ambrose* interpreteth this *Winde* of the HOLY GHOST. *Rupertus* of the Sunne. The most of a wind, which yet naturally could not be produced from that *waterie masse*, but by the extraordinary hand

hand of [b] God.) Then did the Earth *remember* first inheritance, beeing freed from the tyrannicall inuasion and vsurpation of the Waters. And what could then forget or be forgotten, when GOD *remembred* NOAH *and all that was with him in the Arke.*

And in the seuenth [c] Moneth, the seuenteenth day of the moneth, the Arke rested vpon the Mountaines of Ararat. This fell out in the yeere from the Creation 1656. The [d] Septuagint, and the Fathers that followed them, reckon farre otherwise: which errour of theirs differing from the Hebrew verity, *Augustine* [e] ascribes to the first Coppiers of that Translation: others to their own set purpose, that they might contend with other Nations in the challenge of Antiquities: for that cause, and least the often halting of ages should trouble the faithlesse, 10 saith Master *Broughton*, they faine *Cainan*, betwixt *Arphaxad* and *Selah*: in which account it [f] *Luke* in his Genealogie had followed them, it is to be ascribed to them which would correct *Luke* by their corrupt translation of the Septuagint, for [h] some Copies of the Gospel haue wanted it. The place is commonly thought to be Armenia. The *Sybilline* Oracles (if at least we may so call those eight bookes in Greeke verse, translated into Latine by *Castalion*) doe place [i] Ararat in Phrygia, and say, it is the Hill whence the Riuer Marsyas issueth. But *Scaliger* censureth our *Sybils* to be counterfeit, inuented with zeale to vp-hold the Truth by falshood; in which our later Legendaries haue followed them.

[k] *Goropius* after his wont paradoxicall, holdeth it to be the Hill Paropanisis, or Paropamisus, a part of the Hill Taurus (vnproperly ascribed to Caucasus, which riseth betweene the 20 Euxine and Hircan Sea) supposed the highest part of the Earth, called now [l] Naugracot. Hee imagined, that the place first inhabited after the Floud was Margiana, whence those Colonies passed that with *Nimrod* built Babylon. His reason is, because [m] *they went from the East* to the Plaine of Shinar, whereas Armenia beareth somewhat Westward from thence. As though that iourney had been presently after the Floud, which was an hundred yeares after: in which space it is likely they followed the Mountainous Countries Eastward a long time, and from Assyria Adiabena, turned backe into that fertile Plaine, where pride, fulnesse of bread, and abundance of idlenesse, set them on worke against God. I hold it not meet, that a fewe coniectures should counterpoize the generall consent of all Ages. *Iosephus* saith, the place in Armenia was called Apobaterion, of this their going forth of the Arke: and alleadgeth *Berosus* testimonie, that a part of this Arke was then said to remaine in the Cordyæan (or Gordyæan) Hils, 30 the pitch whereof some scraping away, wore the same for Amulets. And out of *Nicol. Damascenus lib.96.* There is (saith he) aboue the Region of the Minyæ, a great Hill in Armenia, by name Baris, wherein, they say, many saued themselues in the time of the Floud, and one, brought in an Arke, there stayed (the remnants of the wood thereof continuing there long time after) which happily was he that *Moses* the Iewish Law-giuer writ of. This mountaine or mountainous Region the Caldean Paraphrast calleth [n] *Kardu*; *Curtius*, *Cordæi montes*; *Ptolomæus*, *Gordiei*: the people are called *Cardyæi*, or *Gordyæi*. In this Tract (saith *Epiphan.*) there is one high Mountaine called Lubar, which signifieth the descending place (Lubar in the Armenian and Egyptian language signifying the same that ἀποβατήριον before mentioned) and the 40 word *Baris* before cited out of *Damascenus* seemeth to be corruptly written for *Lubaris*.

The Armenians through all ages haue (as it seemeth) reserued the memorie hereof: and euen [o] in our dayes there standeth an Abbey of Saint *Gregories* Monkes neere to this Hill, which was able to receiue [p] *Shaugh Thamas*, and a great part of his Armie. These Monkes, if any list to beleeue them, say, that there remaineth yet some part of the Arke, kept by Angels; which if any seeke to ascend, carrie them backe as farre in the night, as they haue climed in the day. *Cartwright*, an eye-witnesse, saith, that this Hill is alwaies couered with snow; at the foote thereof issue a thousand Springs: there are adioyning three hundred Villages of the Armenians. He saith also that there are seene many ruinous foundations, supposed to be the workes of this first people, that a long time durst not aduenture into the lower Countryes, for 50 feare of an other flood. [q] *Abidenus* saith, that the Ship or Arke was still in Armenia (in his time) and that the people vsed the wood thereof against many diseases with marvellous effect.

After that *Noah* had obtained his deliverance, and was now gone out of the Arke; his first care was [r] Religion: and therefore he [s] *bee built an Altar to the Lord*, and tooke of euery cleane beast, and of euery cleane fowle, and offered burnt offerings vpon the Altar: And the Lord smelled a sauour of rest, and renued the auncient blessings and promises to *Noah* and his posteritie. The liuing creatures were also permitted to their food, and submitted to their rule, by whom they had in the Arke escaped drowning. Onely the bloud was prohibited to them, as a ceremoniall obseruation to instruct them in lenitie and hatred of cruelties: the politicall 60 Ordinance being annexed touching the bloud of man, against man or beast that should shead the same. This difference being [t] alleadged of the life of Man and Beast, that the life of the Beast is his bloud, the life of Man is in his bloud, Not that the bloud which we see shed is the life

b *Peter. in Genes. lib.13.*
c *An. Mund. 1656.* the Floud.
d After the Septu. 1442. and after the most auncient copies 2262. *Scaliger.*
e *De Ciuit. Dei lib.15.cap.11. & de in. ad 13.*
f *Iunius. Broughton.*
g *Luk.3.36.*
h *Beza, Annot. Luc.3.*
i *Sybil. Oracul. 1. Assurgit Phrygiæ mons, &c. Ararat quem nomine dicunt. Scal. Opusc.*
k *Gor. Bec. Indo-scythica, pag. 473.*
l *M. Paul. Venim Gen.11.2.*
m *Tremel. & Iun. Annot. Epiphan. lib.1. contr. Her.*
n *Cartwrights Trauels.*
o The Persian King.
p *In chron. Graec. Euseby & preparat. Euang. l.9.c.4. r. Gen.8.20.*
q *Ph. Ferdinandus* citeth euen precepts of *Noe*; first, to obserue iustice: secondly, not to blaspheme: thirdly, not to vse couer any mans nakedness: fourthly, not to kill: fifthly, not to eate a member of any beast yet liuing: sixtly, not to serue idols, seuenthly, not to rob. *EX R. Ab-Ben. Kattaa.*
r *Gibbins in Gen.9.*
s *Cic. de Fin. lib.2.*
t

life

life of the beast: for that is properly *Cruor*, not *Sanguis*, that is, the matter, whose forme was the life or vitall spirit, which being separated from the body, is feuered also from the forme or life. And the life of Beasts hath no other forme, but that which is vnited with the bloud, as the life of trees is the sappe of trees; their bloud being (as it were) their foule. But [u] the life of man is in his bloud, hauing his seate therein, liuing when it is by death separated from the bloud; meane while the Spirits being the pureſt part of the bloud, as conduits conueying life to the bodily members, and as firme bands of a middle nature, between the body and soule, vniting them together; which bands and carriages being broken by effusion of bloud, the soule subsisteth a spirituall substance without the body, not subiect to substantiall corruption or mortalitie. 10

u *Vt sit pseudum totum partibiliter, hominum vero substantialiter. Aquin. Sanguis vehiculum animæ. Aristot. de Gen. animal. l. 3.*

God did also make a couenant for Man with the beasts of the field, infusing into the Nature of all things, a dread and feare of man, whereby they feare the power, the snares, and slaughts of man; and therefore flee, or else submit themselues, not by that willing instinct, as to *Adam* in innocencie, but rather with a seruile feare. And although by hunger, or prouocation, or feare of their owne danger, they sometimes rebell, yet otherwise there remaines some impression of this naturall decree in them, as experience in all places hath shewed. Euen the Lyon, King of Forrests and sauage Creatures, doth not easily giue on-set but on such occasions; yea, the Moores meeting with this Beast, doe rate and brawle at him; this magnanimous beast passing by with a leering countenance, expressing a mixt passion of dread and disdaine, fearing the voice of one, that feareth not the weapons of many, and which himselfe, by the terrour of his voice, maketh the beasts to tremble. Hereunto the Lord addeth the Raine-bow, a newe Sacrament, to seale his mercifull Couenant with the Earth, not to drowne the same any more; which yet at last shall be burnt with fire, so to purge the Heauens and Earth of that [x] *vanitie*, whereto mans sinne hath subiected them. And thus much doe [y] some reade in the colours of the [z] Raineblow, of a waterish and fiery mixture, as a continued signe of the double destruction of the World; the first outward as alreadie past, the other inward as yet to come. Well, indeed, may this Bow be called the [a] *Child of Wonder*, both for the naturall constitution, and diuine ordinance: not that there was before no such [b] Creature, but that then this vse of the creature was ordained. The reflexion or refraction of the Sunne-beames in a watery cloud, the brightnesse from the Sunne, and the cloud meeting together, the varietie of colours proceeding from the varietie of matter; the fumish and dryer part of the cloud yeelding a purplish, the waterie a greenish Sea-colour, &c. borrowing the roundnesse from th Sunne halfe Eclipsed by the shadow of the Earth, are accounted the naturall causes of this wonder of Nature; sometime also by reason of abundance of matter, the same being doubled, one Bow within the other, their colours placed contrary, for that the one is the Image (by reflection) of the other. Neither is it to be thought, that there was no Raine-bow before the flood, any more then that there was no water, bread, or wine, before the institution of our Christian Sacraments, which name and dignitie, not Nature, but Vse, by the appointment of the God of Nature and Grace, doth giue vnto them. For not in the cloudes alone is this Bow to be seen, but as further witnesse of the naturall causes and constitution thereof, the same effect may bee shewed by concurrence of like causes in the Waters and Rockes where Riuers haue their fals; yea, on the buildings of men: as I my selfe haue seen a perfect Raine-bow by the reflection of the Sun-beames on a boorded wall of a Water-mil, the boordes thereof being very wet with the fall of the water, and opposite to the Sunne. 20 30 40

x *Rom. 8. 20.*
y *Greg. de Mag. hom. 8. in Ezech. Mel. ad Concil.*
z *Rabbins tres Iridis colores, referunt ad tres Patriarchas: scilicet & Christ. ani quatuor colores ad 4. elementa. Gib.*
a *Iria Thaumant. filia.*
b *Alcuinum & Chrysost. ad cap. 8. Pentecost. in suo opus. l. 14. in Gen.*

The sonnes of *Noah* were *Sem* (which because of Diuine priuiledge, from whose loynes Christ was to come, according to the flesh is first named) *Ham* or *Cham*, and *Iapheth*, who seemeth (as c learned men gather by the d Text) to be the eldest. Fabulous *Methodius*, contrary to *Moses*, speaketh of another Sonne *Ionithus* after the Flood, whereas the e Scripture saith, That of those *three all the Earth* was replenished.

c *Iunius & alij. Pererius cont. 1. lib. 15. in Gen.*
d *Genes. 10. 21.*
e *Gen. 9. 19.*

To shew directly which Nations descended of each of these three, were a hard taske: and now after this confusion of Nations by warres, leagues, and otherwise, impossible. But for the first beginnings of Nations, before that Colonies were by violence of Conquerors, or by themselues, in their exceeding multiplying, voluntarily transfated from one place to another, they are by *Moses* faithfully related, although the confusion of Languages and of Peoples do make the matter hard and harsh to vs. Yet the Names of Nations in the Greeke stories do in great part agree with the names of these first Patriarkes, as f M. *Broughton* hath shewed, by laying downe the names of *Noahs* house, which, vnvowelled, may admit sundry pronouncings, setting against them such names as Heathen Authors haue mentioned. Out of him, and *Arias Montanus* his *Phaleg*, and others, what I thought likeliest, I haue here inserted. 50 60

f *Broughtons Concent.*

g *Iosph. Ant. l. 1. Trem. & iun. An.*
h *Cand. Brit.*

Iapeth, Iapetus: Gomer, or after the Septuagint *Gamer*: Camaritæ Cimmerij, and Cimbri. *Iosephus* g saith, That the Inhabitants of Galatia were of *Gomer*, sometimes called Gomarę. Master h *Camden* deriueth the ancient Gaules and Britans from this *Gomer*: the name which they

they giue to themselues to this day implying the same, which is *Kumero*, *Cymro*, and *Kumeri*, a Brittish or Welsh-woman *Kumeraes*, and their Language *Kumeraeg*.

i *Magog* is supposed the Father of the Scythians, before (saith *Iosephus*) called *Magogei*, *Ezek.* 38.2. and 39.6. who after inuading those parts, left the name *Magog* to *Hierapolis* in Syria, *Plin.lib.5.c.23.* Of *Madai* came the Medes, of *Iauan* the Iones or Grecians. Of *Thubal* the Iberians, called sometime (saith *Iosephus*) *Theobeli*. The Iberians, saith *Montanus*, dwelt neere to Meotis, certaine Colonies of them inhabited Spaine; and called it Hiberia, and themselues Hiberians: whence the Spaniards haue a report, that *Thubal* was the first peopler of their Countrie. The Cappadocians were called Meschini of *Meshech*, whose Citie Alazaca was named of *Meshech*, since by *Tiberius* named *Cæsarea*, where *Basil* was Bishop. Hence was named *Moschius mons*, and Moschios, and the Moscouites.

i *Magog. Mass. sagetæ & Getæ.*

10 From *Thiras* came the Thracians. The name *Tros* may cause men to ascribe the Troians to this beginning. Of the Sonnes of *Gomer*, *Aschenaz* was Authour of the Nations in Asia, Pontus, and Bithynia, where was the Lake and Riuer Ascanius, a proper name also of men in those pares: the Axine or Euxine Sea: the Ascanian Iland, and Ascanis in Phrygia. Of *Riphath* came the Paphlagonians, sometimes called the Riphathæi, saith *Iosephus*: and the Riphæan Hils in the North: the Amazonians were also called Æorpatæ: k The Arimphei also, neere to the Riphean Hils.

k *Herod. Melapom.*

Thogarma gaue name to the Inhabitants of Armenia Minor, whose Kings, called *Tygranes*,
20 and Townes Tygranokertæ, witnesse it: some also attribute the Turkes or Turkeman Nation to this name and Authour. These peopled Asia first, and from thence by degrees these parts of Europe: of *Togarma*, *Africanus* deriueth the Armenians.

Of *Iauans* children, *Elisha* founded the Æoles, called also Ælisei: of *Tarshish* came the Cilicians, whole Mother-citie was Tarsus, *Paul* birth-place. *Montanus* thinketh that Tharsis was Carthage in Africa, which the Poeni after possessed: some referre the Venetians to Tharsis also. Cittim was another part of Cilicia. The Cretans (after *Montanus*) were called Chetim, and of others Cortini, of whom the Italian Coast called *Magna Gracia* was inhabited, and the Citie Caereta, builded. Of *Dodanim* came the Dorians and Rhodians. These peopled the North and West parts of the World in Asia and Europe.

30 *Chams* Posteritie was *Cush Mizraim*, *Put*, and *Canaan*: These possessed the South of Asia, and Africa. Of *Cham* is the name Chemmis in Ægypt; and *Ammon* the Idoll and Oracle so notorious. *Cush* gaue name to the Æthiopians and Arabians, knowne in Scripture by that name, *Mizraim*, to the Ægyptians, euen at this day so called in their owne and the Arabian Tongues. *Put*, to the Libyans, sometime called Phuthæi: the Riuer Fut is mentioned by l *Plinie*, not farre from *Atlas*. The Canaanites I need not mention: *Moses* plainly describeth them.

l *Lib.5.c.12.*

Of the Sonnes of *Cush*, *Seba* Author of the Inhabitants of Arabia deserta, *Psal.*72.10. or after *Montanus*, *Saba regio thurifera*. *Chauila* is a name more forgotten, supposed to bee Author of a People neere the Persian Gulfe. m *Sabbetha* left the name to the Inhabitants of
40 Arabia Fœlix, where was the Citie Sabbatha with threescore Temples therein. Other People of Arabia Fœlix came of *Raamah*, where *Ptolomæus* placeth Regama: the Garamantes also in Libya. *Sabtheca* was Author of the Sachalitæ in Arabia Fœlix. *Nimrod* the Sonne of *Cush*, some thinke to be *Zoroastres*, some *Belus*.

m *Sabbetha. Stabei super sinum Persicum. Messabbatæ exijs oriundi. Arias Montanus.*

Mizraim begat *Ludim*, the Inhabitants of *Maraotica prefectura*, in Ægypt: *Anamim*, the Cyreneans: and *Lehabim*, the Libyans: and *Naphtuhim* the Æthiopians neere to Egypt, whose Towne Napata is mentioned in *Ptolomie*; *Pathrusim* the Pharutians, *Casluhim*, at the entrance of Egypt, Cassiotis. *Montanus* interpreteth *Ludim* the Lydians; *Gbanamim*, the Troglodites; *Lehabim*, the Cyrenaikes; *Naphtuhim*, Africa the lesse; *Chasluhim* the Saracens; *Caphthorim*, the Cappadocians.

50 To *Shems* Posteritie befell the parts of Asia from Iudæa East-ward.

Shems Sonnes were *Elam* the Father of the Elamites, in the higher part of Persia: *Ashur* of whom came the Assyrians: *Arphaxad*; the Cadusians or the Chaldæans are (with little likenesse of sound) ascribed to him. *Lud* is hold en Father of the Lydians; and *Aram* of the Syrians, called also Aramæi; others of *Aram* deriue Armenia.

Arams sonnes were *Vz*, of whom the Region Ausanitis was named: *Chul*, of whom *Cholle* seemeth to haue his appellation in the Palmyrene Desarts neere to Euphrates. *Gether*, *Iosephus* ascribeth to him Bactria; others that part of Syria where Gnidar stood. *Atergate* and *Derceto*, that notorious Syrian Goddesse, happily borrowed the name hence: Of *Mash* is the name *Masius*, part of the Hill Amanus. *Montanus* saith, of *Mes*, *Missy* and *Missia*,
60 whom *Iunc* calls *Meses*.

——*de grege Mesorum.*

Iocian begat *Elmodad*, of whom the Hill Emodus in Asia seeme named; of *Shalah* the *Selebij* and *Sarophi*; of *Hazarmaueth*, the Sarmatians; of *Iarach*, the Arachosians; of *Hadoram*, the Ortes, People of India; of *Vzal* or *Auzal*, Auzakea a Citie in Scythia, and the Riuer

Oxus: of *Dikkah* (after *Arias Montanus*) Scythia *intra Imaum*, the reason I see not in the name: of *Obal* or *Ghobal*, the Cabolites, people of Paropanisus: of *Abimael*, *Imaus*: of *Sheba*, the Sabæ, which *Eustathius* placeth in India, or according to *Montanus*, the Sacæ: of *Ophir*, some thinke was so called *Aureà Chersonesus*, where Pegu and Malacca now are: *Montanus* thinketh it to be Peru: *Chauilah* hath not left so plaine impression behind. *Montanus* ascribeth to him India. Of *Iobab*, *Arias Montanus* coniecturetb Parias in the West Indies to haue come, but with little probabilitie which I can see. And of the most before named we haue probable coniectures, not certaine proofes, as appeareth by the difference of opinions of Authours concerning them. Neither may we thinke that *Moses* intended so much a Geographicall Historie of all the Nations of the World, many of which were not, long after this time, planted or peopled; but of the first Fathers, who peopled the places by degrees, as they increased in multitude which were neereft that Armenian Centre: and especially hee relateth and dilateth of them, whom it most concerned the Israelites to know, as the Canaanites, whose bounds and Nations are exactly described. I could adde much touching the seuerall Nations descending of these three Brethren, and the bounds of their Habitations, in which *Africanus* sometime tooke profitable paines, and *Eusebius* out of him, although both be in this part lost: somewhat hath beene barbarously translated into Latine by an vnknowne Authour, for the Solœcismes, tedious; for the substance of History profitable to the Reader: and therefore by *Scaliger* in his Edition of *Eusebius* communicated to the World. But the vncertaintie [n] maketh me vnwilling to proceed in this Argument further.

Of this vncertaintie no greater cause can bee alleaged, then the diuision and confusion of Tongues, the Historie whereof *Moses* declareth. For whereas God had giuen to Man two Priuiledges and principall Prerogatiues, whereof other creatures are no way capable, his inward [o] *Reason*, and abilitie to vtter the same by *Speech*: this benefit of God in Nature was turned into a Conspiracie against God and Nature. They said one to another, [p] *Come, let vs make Bricke for stone, and slime had they in stead of morter. Also they said, Let vs build vs a Citie and Tower, whose top may reach vnto the Heauen, that we may get vs a name, least we be scattered vpon the whole Earth.* This was their vaine arrogance and presumption, that when their guilte consciences threatned a dissipation and scattering by diuine Iustice: they would thus hearten and harden themselues against GOD and Man: instead of thankefulnesse to GOD, and honouring his Name, they would winne themselues a name and honour: in stead of preuenting punishment by Repentance, they would in this Gyant-like fighting against GOD preuent future iudgements. But euen that, by which they intended to keepe them from scattering, was the true and first cause of their scattering. So doth GOD scatter the counsels of his Enemies, and taketh the wise in their craftinesse. Babel, or confusion, is alway the Attendant of Pride. *Sibylla* alleaged by [q] *Iosephus* (for the Sibyls which wee haue in Greeke Verse, translated by *Castalion* into Latine, are but counterfeits, if [r] *Scaliger* iudge rightly, *Pseudosibyllina oracula, quæ Christiani gentibus obiecibant, quum tamen à Christianorum officina prodissent, &c.* but that more ancient *Sibyll*) testifieth of this confusion of Tongues in these words. When all men before vsed one speech, they erected a high Tower, as it they would ascend to Heauen: but the Gods by Tempests ouerthrew their Tower, and gaue to each of them seuerall Languages, whereof the Citie was named Babylon: According to that of *Moses*, [s] *Therefore the name of it was called Babel*, because the Lord did there confound the Language of all the Earth. From thence then did the Lord scatter them vpon all the Earth. The Atheists and Naturalists dreame the World to eternall, and conceiue that all men could not be of one; because of this diuersitie of Languages. If such had beene at Hierusalem, and heard the Apostles (one the experteft men in their owne vulgar) speake all Languages: they might then haue seene the like power in a contrarie effect to this of Babylon. Mans sinne caused this, Gods mercie that: the one came from Babylon, the other from Hierusalem, that old Hierusalem giuing a taste and earnest of that, which the new Ierusalem shall once fully accomplish, when *all shall be made new, all shall become one, and God shall be all in all.* It appeareth that these Builders lost the vnderstanding of their owne speech, and were endued with other Languages, whereto their Vnderstandings and Tongues were framed, in stead of that former.

What his former Language was, hath beene doubted, either of ignorance, or of curiositie and Idle-lone. *Theodoret* [t] esteemeth Syrian the first Language, and that Hebrew beganne with *Moses*, taught him by GOD as a sacred Language. [u] *Ioseph Scaliger* affirmeth, that the Syrian Marinites attribute greater Antiquitie to the ancient Syrian, then to the Hebrew, which is all one, saith he, as if one should contend, that the Italian Idiome were ancienter then the Latine. Hee concludeth, that the Bible was written in the most ancient Language, which at first was pure in Assyria, but by Merchandize and Warres corrupted. For Assyria, saith he, was first inhabited both before and after the Flood: and from thence were Colonies sent into Syria and Phœnicea, which held their Language pure, by reason few Strangers had recourse to them till after the time of the first Temple, as appeareth by the

n *Isidorus Etym. lib. 9 cap. 2.* also *Pererius*, *Osnerus*, and other Commenters on *Genesis*, and Chronologians, haue done some what in this argument, which yet as in many wee see much probabilitie, so very much is exceeding doubtfull of that they say.

o *Vinculum humanæ societatis & ratio & oratio. Neque solà re longius distamus à natura ferarum, &c. Cic. Offic. lib. 1.*

p *Gen. 11. 2, 3.*

q *Lib. 18. c. 4.*

r *Scal. Epist. ad Casaub.*

s *Genes. 11. 9.*

t *Theod. q. 59. in Gen.*

u *Scal. Orosio, Epist. Tamsion.*

Coynes of the Tyrians and Sidonians, which are digged out and found daily. [x] PSAMMETICHVS King of Egypt, caused two Children to bee closely brought vp by a Shepheard, who should at times put Goates to them to giue them sucke, without euer hearing humane voyce. After two yeares they vttered the word *Bec*, *Bec*, which was the voyce that they had heard of their Nurses the Goates; but not so interpreted by *Psammetichus*; for hee inquiring in what Language *Bec* was significant, and hearing that the Phrygians so called Bread, ascribed to them the prioritie of all Nations and Languages. *Melabdam Echebar*, the great [y] *Mogor* (as the Iesuites Epistles declare) made the like tryall of thirtie Children, whom hee caused, without hearing of man, to be brought vp, setting Guards to obserue the Nurses that they should not speake to them: purposing to bee of that Religion whereto they should addict themselues. But neither could [z] they euer speake, or would he euer addict himselfe to one certaine Religion. [a] *Goropius* by a few Dutch Etymologies grew into conceit, and would haue the World beleeue him, that Dutch was the first Language; which if it were, wee English should raigne with them as a Colonie of that Dutch Citie, a streame from that Fountaine, by Commerce and Conquests since manifoldly mixed. But his euidence is too weake, his authoritie too new.

The [b] common and more receiued opinion is, that the Hebrew was the first, confirmed also by Vniuersalitie, Antiquitie, and consent of the Christian Fathers and Learned men, grounding themselues vpon this Reason, That all the names mentioned in Scripture before the Diuision, are in that Language onely significant: besides, it is not like, that *Shem* conspired with these Babylonians, and therefore not partaker of their punishment. Now it is very probable and almost manifest, that hee was [c] the same which after is called *Melchisedech*, King of Salem; betwixt whom and *Abraham*, in that familiaritie, it is not likely, that there was much dissonance in Language. Hee is also called the Father of all the Sonnes of *Heber*, by a peculiar proprietie, although hee had other Sonnes, because the puritie of Religion and Language remayned in *Hebers* Posteritie. And why should *Heber* call his Sonne *Peleg* (Diuision) but of this Diuision which then happened? The Nation and Language of Israel borrow their name (Hebrew) of him. And if it had happened to himselfe, why should hee more then others, haue so named his Sonne?

[x] *Herodot. lib. 2.*

[y] *Relat. Regn. Mogor. Ioan. Oran.*

[z] *Loqui naturale est hominis, hanc vel illam linguam aut illam, artis. Viues de ciuit. dei l. 16. c. 11. c. 6.*

[a] *Indoscyth.*

[b] *Orig. in Num. 13. Hier. in Sophon. c. 3. Chrys. in Gen. 10. Aug. de Ciuit. Dei l. 16. c. 11. c. 6.*

[c] See *Brongton* on that Argument. *Genebrard. Chron. Gen. 10. 21.*

CHAP. IX.

A Geographicall Narration of the whole Earth in generall, and more particularly of ASIA.

Domini est terra & plenitudo ejus, orbis terrarum, & universi qui habitant in eo. Psalmo 24.

WE haue all this time beene viewing one Nation which alone was knowne in the Earth, vntill confusion of Language caused diuision of Lands; and haue taken notice of the Heads and Authours of those Peoples and Nations, that from that time were scattered ouer the World, and after settled in their proper Habitations. We haue not followed the opinion of some, both of the Ancients, and later Writers, in defining the number of Nations and Languages through the World, reckoned by them seuentie two. For who seeth not, that *Moses* in that tenth of *Genesis* is most carefull to describe the Posteritie and bounds of Canaan, which GOD had giuen to Israel, which it were absurd to think in so small a Territorie to bee of so many (that is, eleuen) seuerall Languages? And how many Nations were founded after that by *Abrahams* Posteritie (not to mention so many other Fountaines of Peoples) by the sonnes of *Hagar*, and *Ketura*, and *Esau* the Sonne of *Isaac*? Neyther could the World so suddenly bee peopled: and of that, which then was peopled, *Moses* writing a Historie of and for the Church, so farre mentioneth the Affaires and Nations of the World, as it was meete for the Church (and especially that Church of the Israelites) to know, according as it was likely they should haue then, or after, more or lesse to doe with them. [a] *Africanus* hath reckoned the seuentie two by name. But how easie were it in these dayes to set downe seuentie two more, of differing Nations, both in Region and Language; and how little of the World was then knowne, shall presently bee shewed. Besides it may bee a question, whether diuers of those, there mentioned, did not speake the same Language (as in Chaldæa, Syria, and Canaan) [b] with some diuersitie of Dialect, a little more then in our Northerne, Westerne, and Southerne English: Which may appeare, both by the Pilgrimages of the Patriarkes, *Abraham*, *Isaac*, and *Iacob*, in those parts (which had needed new Interpreters, by that rule, in euery two or three dayes trauell, except themselues had beene almost miraculously skilfull in Languages) and by the Chaldæan and Syrian Monuments and Bookes, which some obserue to come nigh to the Hebrew. [c] Doctor *Willet* reproueth *Philoes* opinion, That the Chalde and Hebrew was all one, because *Daniel*, an Hebrew, was set to learne the Chalde: or that the Syrian and Chalde, according to *Mercerus* opinion, was the same; yet grants, that in the first times the Syrian and Chalde little differed. [d] *Scaliger* (a fit man to speake of Languages, who could speake so many) saith, as before is obserued, That in Assyria was the first, both Man and Language, euen the same which thence passed with their Colonies into Syria and Canaan, where it remayned pure, euen then when in Assyria it selfe it was corrupted by entercourse of strangers. *Abraham* spake this corrupted Syrian, which tooke place only in the Tracts of Euphrates, at the first: but after, both he and his Posteritie vsed the Language of Canaan; so that *Laban*, whose Kindred, Countrey and Language was the same with [e] *Abrahams*, yet spake another and differing Language from that of *Iacob*, one calling that *Goled*, which the other calleth *Iegarsahadutha*. Thus it appeareth by him, that the ancient Syrian, Assyrian and Chaldæan, were first that which is now called Hebrew, because the Hebrewes obserued and retayned it, and onely haue left Bookes to vs written therein, (whom the Cananites called Hebrewes, as [f] *Scaliger* and *Montanus* affirme, because *Abraham* had passed ouer the Riuer Euphrates vnto them) but after degenerated first in the parts neere Euphrates, where it was first spoken: and when the Tyrians and Sidonians had the Empire of the Sea, by reason of their Traffique, it proued impure there also, howsoeuer in the time of *Elisa* or *Dido*, the Phœnician or Punicke, which shee carryed into Affrica, was pure Hebrew, as were also their Letters. The later Carthaginian Letters were read from the left hand to the right, as the Latine and Greeke, but those from the right hand; yet not the same which now are called Hebrew (but ought rather to bee called Iewish, as brought by them from their Babylonish Captiuitie) but the Canaan or Phœnician Letters, which the Samaritans still vse, and wherein *Moses* had innouated nothing, as some will haue him, neyther in the Letters, nor in the Language, but vsed them as they were long before his times. Warres and Traffique could not but further after those Languages in continuance of time: which appeared most after the Captiuitie, when the Iewes spake not Hebrew; but Syrian, and that also in likelihood more and more by time altered. Perhaps it was with these three Languages, as with the Frankes [g] Language, when they first seated themselues in Gallia, and that which is now called [h] French, or the Saxon and the present English: for there were no lesse mutations and transmutations, by times and Warres; in those parts then in these. It seemeth therefore probable, that at the first diuision of Languages, they that most disagreed, did furthest separate themselues, and they that spake eyther the same, or neere in likenesse to the same speech, obserued the same Neighbour-hood of Nation, as of speech; which, the names and words of the Phœnician, Syrian, Persian, Arabian and Egyptian Languages testifie. The diuision of Tongues was about an hundred yeares after the Flood, *Anno*

[a] *Augustine. Hieron. Arnobius. Eusebius. Broughton, &c.*

[a] *Excerpta barbaro. Latina apud Ios. Scaliger. Eusebium.*

[b] *Gibbins in Gen. 11.*

[c] D. *Willet in Dan. c. 1. q. 25.*

[d] *Scal. Epist. ad Tomf. & ad Vibert.*

[e] *Gen. 31. 47.*

[f] *But it transpositionibus ad illos venisse, Hebreos, hoc est, trans-eunt as, obcabant.*

[g] *See Wolfgan. Lat. de Migrationum, lib. 3. Beat. Rhenanus, R. Verstegans Antiq.*

[h] The olde French, and our old English are very like, both (in their originall) Dutch.

no Mundi, a thousand seuen hundred fifte seuen, as *Calusius* and *Buntingus* account.

Now that wee haue spoken of the first Authours of the principall and first Nations, let vs survey the Lands and Inheritance, which GOD gaue vnto them, which was the habitable Earth. This Earth, together with the Waters, make one Globe and huge Ball, resting on it selfe, supported by the Almightie hand of GOD, to the roundnesse whereof, the high Mountaines in comparison of the whole, can bee small impediments, and are but l as a few motes of dust flicking to a Ball. *Possidonius, Eratosthenes, Hipparchus, Plinie, Ptolomey*, and others, skilfull in Geographie, haue endeauoured by Art to finde out the true quantitie hereof: and although there appeare difference in their summes, yet that is imputed rather to the diuersitie of their furlongs, which some reckoned longer then others, then to their differing opinions. But neuer had they so certaine intelligence of the quantitie of the Earth, as in our time, by the Nauigations of k Spaniards, l English, and m Dutch, round about the same, is giuen vs; Art and Experience consulting, and conspiring together, to perfect the Science of Geographie. For whereas the Ancients deuided the World into three parts, n Asia, Africa and Europe, and yet neuer knew the East and North parts of Asia, nor the South of Africa, nor the most Northerly parts of Europe: not onely these three are by Land and Sea farre more fully discouered, but also o three other parts, no lesse (if not much greater) then the former, are added to them; namely, *America, Mexicana*, and *America Peruuiana*, and *Terra Australis*; or the Land lying toward the South Pole. As for the seuenth part, which some reckon vnder the North Pole, because we haue no relation but p from a Magician, a Fryer of Oxford, called *Nicholas de Linna*, which might with as good conscience lye to vs, as by Art-Magicke take view of those Parts (otherwise it is not certainly knowne, whether it be ioyning to Asia, or whether it bee Land or Sea) I therefore leaue it out in this diuision.

Europe is diuided q from Africke by the Mediterranean Sea; from Asia by the Egean and Euxine, Mæotis, Tanais, and a Line from the Fountaines thereof North-wards: on the North and West parts walshed with the Ocean; which running by the Straights of Gibralter, floweth along the Coasts of Africke, to the Cape of Good Hope, and thence passeth all alongst on the East-side thereof into the Arabian Gulfe, where, by a Necke of Land, it is encountred: This Necke, the Mediterranean, and Ocean, doe limit the bounds of Africa: The rest of the old World is Asia. *America, Mexicana*, or North, and the South called *Peruuiana*, are seuered by the narrow straights of Darienc, in other places compassed by the Sea: The South Continent is very little knowne, and contayneth the rest of the World; not bounded in the former limits. But in their particular places wee shall heare of each of them more fully.

It cannot be without some great worke of GOD, thus in the olde and decrepit Age of the World, to let it haue more perfect knowledge of it selfe; which wee hope, and pray, may be for the further enlargement of the Kingdome of CHRIST IESVS, and propagation of his Gospell. And as in former times, in those then discouered parts, the Iewes were scattered, some violently, some willingly, through ASIA, AFRICA, and EVROPE, to vsher the Gospell into those parts, and make way for that which the most of themselues reiected: who knoweth, whether in the secret Dispensation of Diuine Prouidence, (which is a co-worker in euery worke, able euen out of euill to bring good) the Donations of Popes, the Nauigations of Papists, the preaching of Fryers and Iesuites may be fore-runners of a further and truer manifestation of the Gospell, to the new-found Nations? for euen already it is one good step of an Atheist and Infidell to become a Proselyte, although with some soyle: and againe, the Iesuites there cannot play the Statesmen as in these parts, yea r (themselues in their Relations being witnesses) they rather take Euangelical courses of those, which heere they count Heretikes, and by laying open mens sinne through the fall, and Diuine Iustice, onely by CHRIST satisfied, doe beate downe Infidelitie with diligent Catechising: although vpon that golden foundation they build afterward their owne *Hay and Stubble*, with their racke of *Confession*, and rabble of *Ceremonies*, and (the most dangerous to new Conuerts) an exchanged Polytheisme in worshipping of Saints, Images, and the *Host*. But if GOD shall once shew mercy to Spaine, to make them truly Catholike, and, as a diuine Inquisitor, condemne that Deuillish Inquisition to perpetuall exile, how great a window may by that meanes be opened vnto this new World for their conuersion and reformation? And why may not the English Expedition and Plantation in Virginia, and the Nauigations of other Protestants, helpe this way, if men respected not their owne pride, ambition, and couetousnesse, more then the Truth and Glory of GOD? But lee that by Fishers conuerted the olde World, and turned the Wisedome of the World into foolishnesse, subdued Scepters by preaching the Crosse, yea, by suffering it in himselfe and in his members, is able of those stones to raise vp Children to *Abraham*, and that by the mouth

l Of this see more Chap. 14.

k *F. Magellanes*
l *F. Drake*.
T. Cauendisse.
m *Oliuer Noort*.
n Some of them made but two; ascribing Africa to Asia, as *Transsheuers*, *Varro*, *Silius Italicus*, or to Europe, as *Lactantius l. 9. & Paulinus*.
o *A. Magimus*. *Grog*.
p *Mercat. Tab. Vniuersal*.
q *Oriel. Mercat. Geom. Pherys. &c.*

t *Iesuiticus Epistole*. Thus did *Fr. Xauier*, and the sect of them.

mouth of *Babes and Sucklings*, by weakest meanes, when it pleaseth him. Let vs therefore *pray the Lord of the Harvest to send forth Labourers* into these wide and spacious fields, ripe thereunto.

But to returne to our parts of the World, whence this Meditation hath with-drawne me. The ancient [s] Geographers were ignorant of a great part of that three-fold diuision: as appeareth by their owne Writings. The vse of the Load-stone, found out by *Iohn Goia* of Melfi, an Italian (or as [t] *Bellonius* obseruieth, by one *Flauius*, but *Albertus Magnus* was the first that writ of the Nature of it) was a great and necessary helpe to further Discoueries, especially after that *Henrie* sonne of *Iohn* the first, King of Portugall, [u] beganne to make Voyages of Discouerie vpon the Coast of Africa, and *Iohn* the second seconded that Enterprise, and vsed the helpe of Mathematicians, *Roderigo* and *Ioseph* his Physicians, and *Martin Bohemus*, by whom the Astrolabe was applyed to the Art of Nauigation, and benefit of the Mariner, before vsed only in Astronomie. This *Iohn* also sent men of purpose into Arabia, and Æthiopia, and other Countries of the East, to learne further knowledge thereof. From these beginnings, daily increasing, hath Nauigation (first in Portugall, and by degrees in other Europæan Nations) by the helpe of Astronomicall Rules growne to her present perfection, and by it, Geographie. And if the longitude of places might as easily be found out as the latitude, which our Countriman Master *Linton* made [x] promise of, wee should yet grow to better knowledge in those Sciences, and of the World by them. Moreouer, as the Expedition of *Alexander*, and those flourishing Monarchies in Asia, brought some knowledge thereof to the Ancients: So the Histories of later times, but especially the great Trauels by Land of *Marcus Paulus, Odoricus, Will. de Rubruquis, Ioannes de Plano Carpini*, our Countriman *Mandeuile*, and others, before this skill of Nauigation, haue giuen much light to the knowledge of the In-land Countries of Asia, which wee are fit to speake of.

As for the Circles, the Æquinoctiall, which parteth the Globe in the middest, the Tropickes of Cancer and Capricorne in twentie three degrees and a halfe from either side of the Æquinoctiall, the Arctike and Antarctike Circles in twentie three degrees and a halfe from the North and South Poles, or not much differing (which are vsually set in Maps with red or double lines, for distinction:) The Meridians, which are Circles passing ouer our heads, in what part of the World soeuer we be, and also through both the Poles: the Horizon, which diuideth the vpper halfe of the World which we see, from the nether halfe which wee see not: the Parallels [y] of Latitude from the Æquinoctiall towards either Pole: The Climes or Climates, which are the spaces of two Parallels: Also the tearmes of Poles, which are two, the Arctike, and the Antartike; and the Axletree of the World (a right line imagined to passe from the one to the other, through the Centre of the Earth;) the Degrees, containing sixtie miles (or after *Cornelius de Indeis*, sixtie eight thousand ninetie fiue paces and an halfe, and after other Authors otherwise, according as they haue differed in opinion touching the measure of the Earth, or touching the furlongs, miles, and degrees, which they vsed in their computation; the variety whereof both auncient and moderne among the Greekes, Romans, Arabians, Italians, Spaniards, and others, Master *Hues* our Countriman hath studiously collected: into ninetie, of which degrees euery fourth part of the world is diuided, & amount in the whole to three hundred sixtie. Also the Geographicall tearmes of *Littus, Fretum, Insula, Sinus, Continens, Promontorium, Isthmus*, that is, Shores, straits, Ilands, Bayes, Continent, Capes or Headlands, Neckes of Land, and such like: All these (I say) and other things of like nature, needfull to this kind of knowledge, the studious shall find in those Authors which teach the Principles of Astronomy and Geography, with the vse of Globes or Mappes, as *Master* BLVNDEVILE, *Master* HVES and [z] others.

My intent is not to teach Geography, but to bestow on the studious of Geographie, a History of the World, so to giue him flesh vnto his bones, and vse vnto his Theorie or Speculation, whereby both that skill may be confirmed, and a further and more excellent obtained. Geographie without Historie seemeth a Carkasse without life and motion: [a] History without Geographie mooueth, but in mooning wandreth as a Vagrant, without certaine habitation. And whereas Time and Place are Twinnes and vnseparable companions, in the chiefe Histories to set downe the true time of chiefe Accidents, will adde much light to both; a great taske in one Country: but to take vp the whole World on my shoulders, which haue not the strength either of *Atlas* or *Hercules* to beare it; and in the whole to obtene the description of Places, order of times, and the History of Actions and Accidents, especially Religions, *(olim*

s *Legs Ortelij Æuis veteris descrip. & Mariè pacifici.*

t *P. Bellonij obser. l. 3. c. 16. sic & Kecker. Problem. nautica. Vid. Panciroll. l. 2. c. 100. & ad eum Salmuth. Gilbert. de Mag. l. 2.* saith, Some ascribe this inuention to *Paulus Venetus*, as if he had brought it out of China 1260 some to *Salomon*, &c. *Seb. Cabot.* first 1508 found out the variation of the Compasse.

u *Bar. Ant. l. 1. Asiæ Osorius de Reb. Em. A. lib. 1. Mass. l. 1. Hist. Ind. Dam. à Goes de mor. Æthiopum. Got. Æthiopa hist. ind.* This *Henrie* of Portugall, the great Discouerer, was son to *Philip* daughter to *Iohn* of *Gaunt* by his first Wife: so that by the Mothers side hee was English. Gen. Hist. of Spaine. l. 17. *Leon de Mayorn. Turquet.*

x Complement of the Art of Nauigation.

y Eucrie Region where the longest day is halfe an houre longer or shorter then it is in any other Region, must bee accounted in a seuerall Climate from it; halfe whereof is a Parallel: so betweene the Line and the Polar Circle are 48. Parallels, and 25. Climates on either side of the Equinoctiall. Beyond the Polar Circles, this distribution is improper and lesse certaine, the dayes increasing whole dayes, weeke, monethes, &c. See *Ia. Cheynius Geog. lib. 1. c. 10. R. Hues de Glob. pag. 53. Kecherm. Syst. Geog. libr. Rerum. Euclid. 3. Ptolomy* and the Ancient are not herein to be followed. z *Euclid. 3. de Sac. Bos. Clauius, Proclus, Simelius, A. Mizaldus. B. Kech. Sistem. Geog. Ia. Langius Elem. Math. Ia. Cheynius Geog. R. Record.* Castle of knowledge. *Dasius Cornel. Valerius Gem. Phys. c. 4.* a *Vita. historia est oculus prudentiæ politicæ, ita Geographia est oculus & lumen historiæ. Bod. Meth. c. 1. Cosmogr. sine comyte-robur*

robur & as triplex, thrice happy hee that could happily atchieue it) I confesse beyond my abilitie exactly to performe; but with the wisest, I hope that the haughtinesse of the attempt in a thing so full of varietie and hardnesse, shall rather purchase pardon to my ships, then blame for my rashnesse. And how can I but often slip, that make a perambulation ouer the World, that see with others eyes, that tell of matters past so many ages before I had a Beeing? Yet such is the necessitie of such a History, either thus, or not at all. But as neere as I can, I purpose to follow the best euidence, and to propound the Truth: my fault (where it is worst) shall be rather *mendacia dicere*, then *mentiri*, and yet the Talesman shall bee set by the Tale, the Authors name annexed to his Historie, to shield me from that imputation.

And first we must begin with ASIA, to which the first place is due, as being the place of the first Men, first Religion, first Cities, Empires, Arts: where the most things mentioned in Scripture, were done; the place where Paradise was seated; the Arke rested; the Law was giuen; and whence the Gospell proceeded: the place which did beare Him *in his flesh*, that by his *Word beareth vp all things*.

HONDIVS his Map of ASIA.

ASIA (after[b] some) is so called of *Asia*, the daughter of *Oceanus* and *Thetis*: which was wife to *Iapetus*, mother of *Prometheus*: Others fetch this name from *Asius* the sonne of *Manaus*: both with like certaintie and credit. It is greater then Europe and Africa: yea, the Ilands thereofare larger, if they were put together, then all Europe. It is compassed with the Easterne, Indian, and Scythian Oceans, on three parts: on the West it hath the Arabian Gulfe, that Necke of Land which diuided it from Africa, the Mediterranean, Aegean, Pontike Seas, the Lake Mæotis, Tanais, with an imagined line from thence to the Bay of S. *Nicholas*. Some make

b *A. Maginus Galardus Arthus Histor. Ind. Orient. Cornel. de Iudeis. Abr. Ortel. & al.*

make it yet larger, and make Nilus to diuide it from Africa, but with lesse reason. Taurus diuideth it in the middest: On the North side is that which is called Asia interior: on the South is Asia exterior. More vnequall is that diuision into Asia the greater and the lesse, this being lesse indeed, then that it should sustaine a member in that diuision. *Io. Barrius* diuideth it into nine parts, *Ortelius* into fiue, *Maginus* into seuen, which are these, First, That part of Tartaria, betwixt Muscouia, the Northerne Ocean, the Riuer Ob, and the Lake Ky tai, and a line thence drawne to the Caspian Sea, and that Isthmus which is betwixt that and the Pontike Sea: secondly, the great *Chams* Countrey, from thence to the Easterne Sea, betwixt the frozen Sea and the Caspian: thirdly, That which is subiect to the Turke, all from Sarmatia and Tartaria Southwards, betweene Tygris and the Mediterranean Sea: fourthly, The Persian Kingdome, betweene the Turke, Tartar, India, and the Red Sea: fifthly, India, within and beyond Ganges, from Indus to Cantan: sixtly, The Kingdome of China; seuentbly, The Islands. These diuisions are not so exact as may be wished, because of that variety & vncertainty in those Kingdomes. Many things doth Asia yeeld, not elsewhere to be had; Myrrhe, Frankincense, Cinamon, Cloues, Nutmegs, Mace, Pepper, Muske, and other like, besides the chiefest Iewels. It hath also Minerals of all sorts: It nourisheth Elephants, Camels, and many other Beasts, Serpents, Fowles, wilde and tame, as in the ensuing Discourse, in their due places, shall appeare; yet doth it not nourish such monstrous shapes of men, as fabulous Antiquitie fained. It brought foorth that Monster of Irreligion, *Mahumet*; whose Sect, in diuerse Sects, it fostereth, with long continuance of manifold Superstitions. It hath now these great Empires of the Turke, Persian, Mogore, Cathayan, Chinois; it had sometimes the Parthian, and before that, the Persian, Median, Assyrian, Scythian: and first (as it seemeth) before them all, the Babylonian Empire vnder *Nimrod*, which is therefore in the next place to be spoken of.

10 20 30

CHAP. X.

Of Babylonia: the originall of Idolatrie; and the Chaldeans Antiquities before the Floud, as BEROSVS *hath reported them.*

30

ONfusion caused diuision of Nations, Regions and Religions. Of this Confusion (whereof is already spoken) the Citie, and thereof this Countrey tooke the name. [a] *Plinie* maketh it a part of Syria, which hee extendeth from hence to Cilicia. [b] *Strabo* addeth, as farre as the Pontike Sea. But is vsually reckoned an entire Countrey of it selfe, which [c] *Ptolomey* doth thus bound. On the North it hath Mesopotamia, on the West *Arabia Deserta*; Susiana on the East; on the South, part of Arabia, and the Persian Gulfe. *Luke* maketh Babylonia [d] a part of Mesopotamia: *Ptolomey* more strictly diuideth them: whereunto also agreeth the interpretation [e] of the *Land of Shinar*, that it was the lower part of Mesopotamia, containing Chaldea and Babylon, lying vnder the Mount Sangara. In this Countrey was built the first City which we read of after the Floud, by the vngracefull World, moued thereunto (as some thinke) by *Nimrod*, the sonne of *Cush*, nephew of *Cham*. For as *Caines* posteritie before the Floud, were called the *sonnes of Men*, as more fauouring the things of men then of God: more industrious in humane inuentions, then religious deuotions: so by *Noahs* curse it may appeare, and by the Nations that descended of him, that *Cham* was the first Author, after the Floud, of irreligion. Neither is it likely, that he which derided his old Father, whom *Age, Holinesse, Fatherhood, Benefits, and thrice greatest Function of Monarchy, Priesthood and Prophecie*, should haue taught him to reuerence; That he (I say) which at once could breake all these bonds and chaines of Nature and Humanitie, would be held with any bonds of Religion; or could haue an eye of *Faith* to see him which is inuisible, hauing put out his eyes of *Reason* and *Civilitie*. Had hee feared God, had he reuerenced man, had hee made but profession of these things: in some hypocriticall shew, hee could not so easily haue sitten downe at ease in that *Chaire of Scorning*, whence we read not that euer hee rose by repentance. From this *Cham* came *Nimrod*, [f] *The mighty hunter before the Lord*; not of innocent beasts, but of men, compelling them to his subiection, although *Noah* and *Sem* were yet aliue, with many other Patriarches.

40 50 60

a *Plin. l. 5. c. 12.*
b *Strab. lib. 16.*
c *Ptol. Geog. lib. 5. c. 17. 20.*
d *Act. 7. 22.*
e *D. Willison D. in. 6. 2. 9. 15.*

THE NEW-YEARS GIFT.

f Gen. 10. 9.

As for *Noah*, the fabling Heathen, it is like, deified him. The *Berosus* of fabling *Annius*, calleth him Father of the gods, Heauen, Chaos, the Soule of the World. *Ianus* his double face might seeme to haue arisen hence, of *Noahs* experience of both Ages, before and after the Floud. The fable of [g] *Saturnus* cutting off his Fathers priuities, might take beginning of that act,

g *Saturnus filius Cœli, cui subfecit omnia.*

act, for which *Cham* was curſed. *Sem* is ſuppoſed to be that *Melchiſedech* King of Salem, the figure of the Lord, and the propagator of true Religion; although euen in his poſteritie it failed, in which *Abrahams* Father, as witneſſeth [h] *Ioſhua*, ſerued other gods. *Iapheth* pietie cauſeth vs to perſwade our ſelues good things of him; *Cham* and his poſteritie we ſee the authors of ruine. *Philo* [i] and *Methodius* (ſo are the two bookes called, but ſaldly) tell, That in theſe daies they began to diuine by Starres, and to ſacrifice their children by Fire; which Element *Nimrod* compelled men to worſhip: and that to leaue a name to poſteritie, they engraued their names in the bricks wherewith Babel was builded. *Abraham* refuſing to communicate with them (and good cauſe, for [k] he was not yet borne) was caſt into their Brick-kill, and came out (long after from his Mothers wombe) without harme. *Nahor, Lot*, and other his fellowes, nine in number, ſaued themſelues by flight. [l] Others adde, that *Aram, Abrams*, brother, was done to death for refuſing to worſhip the Fire. *Qui Bauium non odit, amet tua carmina Mani.*

To come to truer and more certaine reports, *Moſes* ſaith, That the beginning of *Kimrods* Kingdome was *Babel* and *Erech*, [m] and *Acad* and *Calne*, which three, ſome interpret Edeſſa, Niſibis, Callniſum. And whereas commonly it is tranſlated in the next words, *Out of that Land came Aſſhur, and built Niniueh: Tremellius* and *Iunius* read it, *Out of this Land, hee (Nimrod) went into Aſſhur*, or Aſſyria, and built Niniue and Rehoboth, Calah, and Reſen. But [n] moſt vſually this is vnderſtood of *Aſſhur*, the ſonne of *Sem*, who diſclaiming *Nimrods* tyrannie, built Niniue, which after became the chiefe City of the Aſſyrian Empire, to which Babylon it ſelfe was ſubiected not long after. *Xenophon de Æquiuocis* (if his authority be current) ſaith, That the eldeſt of the cheife families were called *Saturni*, their Fathers had to name *Cælum*, their wiues *Rhea*: and out of a piller, erected by *Semiramis* to *Ninus*, alleageth this inſcription, My Father was *Iupiter Belus*, my Grandfather *Saturnus Babylonicus*, my great Grandfather *Saturnus Æthiops*, who was ſonne of *Saturnus Ægyptius*, to whom *Cælus, Phœnix Ogyges* was Father. *Ogyges* is interpreted *Noah*, therefore called *Phœnix*, becauſe of his habitation (as is thought) in Phœnicia, not farre from whence, in Ieruſalem *Sem* raigned. *Saturnus Ægyptius*, may be the name of *Cham*, of whoſe name Egypt is in Scripture tearmed *the land of Cham*. *Saturnus Æthiops* is *Cuſh*; *Nimrod, Babylonicus*, the father of *Belus*, who begat *Ninus*. But this cannot be altogether true: For Niniue hath greater antiquitie then *Nimrod*: Nephew (howſoeuer the Greeke Hiſtories aſcribe this to *Ninus*, and Babylon to his wife *Semiramis*) except we ſay, that by them theſe two Cities formerly built, were enlarged and erected to that magnificence, which with the growth of the Aſſyrian Empire they after obtained.

Euſebius [p] in the firſt booke of his Chronicle attributeth the originall of Idolatry to *Serug*, the Father of *Nahor*. *Beda* [q] ſaith, In the daies of *Phaleg* Temples were built, and the Princes of Nations adored for gods. The ſame hath [r] *Iſidore*, *Epiphanius* [ſ] referreth it to *Serug*; and addeth, That they had not grauen Images of Wood or Metall, but pictures of men; and *Thara* the Father of *Abraham*, was the firſt Author of Images. The like hath *Sudas*. *Hugo de S. Victore* ſaith, *Nimrod* brought men to idolatrie, and cauſed them to worſhip the fire, becauſe of the fiery nature and operation of the Sun; which errour the Chaldeans afterwards followed. Theſe times, till *Abram*, they called *Scythiſmus*. The reaſon of their Idolatrie, [t] *Euſebius* alleageth, That they thus kept remembrance of their Warriours, Rulers, and ſuch as had atchieued nobleſt enterpriſes, and worthieſt exploits in their life time. Their poſteritie ignorant of that their ſcope (which was, to obſerue their memorials which had been Authors of good things, and becauſe they were their forefathers) worſhipped them as heauenly Deities, and ſacrificed to them. Of their [u] *God-making* or *Canonization*, this was the manner: In their ſacred Bookes or Kallenders they ordained, That their names ſhould bee written after their death, and a Feaſt ſhould be ſolemnized according to the ſame time, ſaying, That their ſoules were gone to the Iſles of the bleſſed, and that they were no longer condemned or burned with fire. Theſe things lasted to the dayes of *Thara*; who (ſaith *Sudas*) was an Image-maker, and propounded his Images (made of diuers matter) as gods to be worſhipped: but *Abram* broke his Fathers Images. From *Saruch* the Author, and this Practice, Idolatry paſſed to other Nations; *Sudas* addeth ſpecially into Greece; for they worſhipped *Hellen*, a Gyant of the poſterity of *Iapheth*, a partner in the building of the *Tower*.

Not vnlike to this, we reade the cauſes of Idolatry in the booke of [x] Wiſdome (ſuppoſed to be written by *Philo*, but becauſe the ſubſtance is *Salomons*, profeſſing and bearing his name) which of all the Apochrypha-Scripture ſuſtaineth leaſt exception, attaineth higheſt commendation: *When a Father mourned grieuouſly for his ſonne that was taken away ſuddenly, he made an Image for him that was once dead, whom now he worſhippeth as a God, and ordained to his ſeruants Ceremonies and Sacrifices.* A ſecond cauſe hee alleageth, viz. *The tyrannie of men, whoſe Images they made and honoured, that they might by all meanes flatter him that was abſent, as though hee had*

h *Ioſh.24.2.*
i *Philo de Antiq. Method.*
Reuel.
k The building of Babel was *An. Mun.*3757. and *Abraham* was borne *An.* 1948. or after *Broughton, Iunius*, and others 60. yeeres later. But the Iewiſh Chronicles *Sedar Olam Rabba* and *Sedar olam Zuta*, make it 3401 yeeres from the Floud to *Abraham*; interpreting the words of *Moſes* (*in his dayes*, (Phaleg) *the Earth was diuided*) of his laſt daies in the end of his life.
l *Abraham Leniſt* numbreth from the floud to *Abraham* 391. yeeres.
1 Chronic. before the Bible. *Gen.*10.9.
m *Kter. Scaliger* interpreteth *Arechei campi* mentioned by *Tibuld.*4.as hee readeth it.
n *Hugo de S. Vict.*
Ar. Montanus.
Melanchthon.
Chron.
Gramay. Aſia.
gibo Heuriuus.
o *F.*57.8.51.
p *Chron. Gr. Edit. Scal.*94.9. & 13.
q *Bed. Chron.*
r *Iſid. Chro.* But in *Eccles.*1.8. *euil*, he ſaith that after the Iewes account, *Iſmael* made the firſt Images of Earth, which the Gentiles aſcribed to *Prometheus.*
ſ *Epiphan. contheb.*1.1.*in initio.*
t *Annot. in Gen.*
u ἀποθεωσεως.
x *Wiſdom. cap.* 14.14.

been

beene present. A third reason followeth; *The ambitious skill of the workeman, that through the beauty of the worke, the multitude beeing allured, tooke him for a God, which a little before was honoured but as a man.* The like affirmeth [y] *Hierome, Cyprian, and Porphyrie de inuentoribus*; [z] LACTANTIVS (as before is shewed) maketh that the Etymologie of the word *Superstitio*, *Quia superstitem memoriam defunctorum colebant, aut quia parentibus suis superstites celebrabant imagines eorum domi, tanquam deos penates*; either because they honoured with such worship the suruiuing memory of their dead Ancestors; or because suruiuing and out-liuing their Ancestors, they celebrated their Images in their houses, as houshold gods. Such Authors of new Rites and Deifiers of [a] dead men they called *Superstitiosus*: but those which followed the publikely-receiued and ancient Deities, were called *Religiosus*, according to that Verse of *Virgil. Vana superstitio veterumq; ignara deorum.* But by this rule (saith *Lactantius*) wee shall find all Superstitious which worship false gods, and them only religious which worship the *one and true* GOD. The same * *Lactantius* saith, That *Noah* cast off his sonne *Cham* for his wickednesse, and expelled him. Hee abode in that part of the Earth which now is called Arabia, called (saith he) of his name Canaan, and his Posteritie Canaanites. This was the first people which was ignorant of GOD, because their Founder and Prince received not of his Father the worship of GOD. But first of all other, the Egyptians began to behold and adore the heauenly bodies: and because they were not couered with houses for the temperature of the Ayre, and that Region is not subiect to clouds, they obserued the Motions and Eclipses of the Starres, and whiles they often viewed them more curiously, fel to worship them. After that, they inuented the monstrous shapes of beasts, which they worshipped. Other men scattered through the World, admiring the Elements, the Heauen, Sunne, Land, Sea, without any Images and Temples worshipped them, and sacrificed to them *sub dio*, til in processe of time they erected Temples and Images to their most puissant Kings, & ordained vnto them Sacrifices & Incense so wandering from the knowledge of the true GOD, they became Gentiles. Thus farre *Lactantius*. And it is not vnlike that they performed this to their Kings, eyther [b] in flatterie, or feare of their power, or because of the benefits which they receiued from them, this beeing (saith [c] *Plinie*) the most ancient kinde of thankefulnesse, to reckon their Benefactours among the gods. To which accordeth * *Cicero* in the Examples of *Hercules, Castor, Pollux, Æsculapius, Liber, Romulus.* And thus the Moores deified their Kings, and the Romanes their deceased Emperours.

The first that is named to haue set vp Images, and worship to the dead, was [d] *Ninus*, who when his Father [e] *Belus* was dead, made an Image to him, and gaue priuiledge of Sanctuary to all Offenders that reforted to this Image: whereupon, mouued with a gracelesse gratefulnesse, they performed thereunto diuine honours. And this example was practised after by others. And thus of *Bel or Belus* beganne this Imagene, and for this cause (saith [f] *Lyra*) they called their Idols *Bel, Baal, Beel-zebub*, according to the diuersitie of Languages. [g] *Cyrillus* calleth him *Arbelus*, and saith, that before the Flood was no Idolatrie amongst men, but it had beginning after in Babylon, in which, *Arbelus* (next after whom raigned *Ninus*) was worshipped. *Tertullian* [h] out of the Booke of *Enoch*, before mentioned, is of opinion, That Idolatrie was before the Flood. Thus to continue the memorie of mortall men, and in admiration of the immortall heauenly Lights, together with the tyrannie of Princes, and policies of the Priests, beganne this worshipping of the creature, with the contempt of the Creator: which how they increased by the Mysteries of their Philosophers, the fabling of their Poets, the ambition of Potentates, the Superstition of the vulgar, the gainfull collusion of their Priests, the cunning of Artificers, and aboue all, the malice of the Deuils, worshipped in those Idols, there guiing answeres and Oracles, and receiuing Sacrifices; the [i] Histories of all Nations are ample Witnesses. And this Romane Babylon, now Tyrant of the West, is the heire of elder Babylon (sometimes Ladie of the East) in these deuotions, that then and still Babylon might bee *the mother of Whoredomes and all Abominations.* To which apely agree the Parallels of Babylon and Rome in [k] *Orosius*, the Empire of the one ceasing, when the other beganne first to haue a being; which hee further prosecuteth in many particulars.

But before we prosecute these Babylonian affaires after the Flood, it shall not be amisse to shew here the Chaldæan Fables of Antiquities before the Flood, out of *Berosus* a Chaldæan Priest, which liued in the time of *Alexander. Polyhistor* [l] citeth out of *Berosus* his first Booke this report of himselfe; and *Tatianus* [m] saith he was the Priest of *Belus*, and wrote his Chaldæan Storie to *Antiochus*, the third after *Seleucus*, in three Bookes. His name signifieth the Sonne of *Osee*.

Alorus raigned the space of ten *Sari* (*Sarus* with them is three thousand sixe hundred yeares) *Alasparus* three *Sari*; *Amelus* thirteene *Sari*; *Amemus* twelue; *Metalarus* eighteene;

Daonus

y *Hieron. in Osee. Ozp. de Idol. vanitate. Porph. l. 1. de inuentorib.*
z *Lactant. lib. 4. cap. 28. vid. Isid. Etym. l. 8. c. vlti.*
a *Omnia idola ex mortuorum erro e creuerunt, Hier. in Hosea.*
* *Lib. 2. c. 14.*

b *Bullinger. de Orig. erroris lib. 1. cap. 9.*
c *Plin. l. 34. c. 4.*
* *De Nat. D. l. 1.*

d *Ambros. in Ep. Ad Roman. cap. 1.*
e Some think, and with probable coniecture, that *Belus* was *Nimrod.*
f *Lyra in Sap. 14. Pro. Consib. Hist. &c.*
g *Cyrill. l. 13. cont. Iulian.*
h *Tertul. de Idol.*

i *Genemanus* out of *Eusebius* affirmeth the number of Gods in the World to bee 30000. which number hee saith was then much encreased. *Euseb. lib. de præpar. Ev. c. 18.*
k *Oros. l. 2. c. 3.*
l *Polyhist. in Euseb. Chron.*
m *Tatianus apud Scalig.*

60

Daorus tenne; *Ædorachus* eighteene; *Amphis* tenne; *Otiartes* eight; *Xixuthrus* eighteene: in his time, as is said before, the Floud happened. The whole space is an hundred and twentie *Sari*, which amounteth to foure hundred thirtie two thousand yeares. This I thought not vnfit (although incredible) to report from *Berosus*, both because my scope is to declare as well false as true Religions (it being not Theologicall but Historicall, or rather Historically Theologicall) and because the Ancients, *Cicero*, *Lactantius*, *Augustine*, haue mentioned this monstrous Computation of the Chaldæan Kalender, which yet they racke higher to foure hundred threescore and ten thousand yeeres. Here you haue the particulars out of *Apollodorus* and *Abidenus*, which both borrowed them of *Berosus*. [n] *Polyhistor* addeth, that there came one out of the Red Sea, called *Oannes* and *Annedotus* a Monster (other-where like a fish, his head, feet and hands like a man, as saith *Photius*, but *Al. Polyhistor* ascribeth two heads, one of a fish, and the other of a man) the Image whereof was vnto his times reserued. This Monster liued without meate, and taught them the knowledge of Letters and all Arts, buildings of Cities, foundations of Temples, enacting of Lawes, Geometry and Husbandry, and all necessaries to mans life. Afterwards he returned to the Sea; and after him appeared other such Monsters. Foure of them came out of the Sea, saith *Abideuus*, when *Dsos* (whom *Apollodorus* calleth *Daorus*) raigned; their names were *Euedochus*, *Eneugamus*, *Enchoulus*, *Anemenntus*. Pentabiblus (it seemeth) was then their chiefe Citie. That *Oannes* the first did write of the first beginning: That all was darknesse and water, in which liued monstrous creatures, hauing two formes; men with two wings, and some with foure; with one body two heads, one of a man, and another of a woman, with the priuities of both Sexes: others with hornes and legs like Goats; some with Horse feet; some like Centaures, the former part Men, the after part Horses; Buls also headed like Men and Dogges, with foure bodies, &c. with many monstrous mixtures and confusions of creatures, whose Images were kept in the Temple of *Belus*. Ouer all these ruled a woman, named *Omorka*, which signifieth the Sea, and by like signification of Letters, the Moone. Then came *Belus* and cut her in twaine, and made the one halfe of her Land, the other Heauen, and the creatures therein appeared. This *Belus* made men and beasts the Sunne, Moone, and Planets: these things report th *Berosus* in his first Booke; in the second he telleth of Kings (before mentioned) which raigned till the Floud; After the Floud also the same *Polyhistor* out of him sheweth, That *Sisuthrus* hauing by *Saturnes* warning before, built an Arke (as is before said) and laid vp all Monuments of Antiquitie in Sipparis a Citie dedicated to the Sunne, and now with all his World of Creatures escaped the Floud, going out of the Arke did sacrifice to the gods, and was neuer seene more. But they heard a voyce out of the Ayre, giuing them this Precept, *To bee Religious*. His Wife, Daughter and Ship-master were partakers with him of this honour, Hee said vnto them, the Countrey where they now were was Armenia, and hee would come againe to Babylon, and that it was ordayned, that from Sipparis they should receiue Letters, and communicate the same to men: which they accordingly did. For hauing sacrificed to the gods: they went to Babylon and digged out the * Letters, Writings, or Bookes, and building many Cities, and founding Temples, did againe repayre Babylon. Thus farre out of *Alexander Polyhistor*, a large Fragment of the true *Berosus*.

n *Fragmenta hæc extant in Chronico Eusebij lib. 1. per Scaligerum. Photij Bibliothecam in Hellanico.*

* γράμματα.

CHAP. XI.

*Of the Citie and Country of Babylon: * their sumptuous Walls, Temples, and Images.*

* The former Map of Paradise doth describe the Topography of the Country of Babylonia.

LEauing these Antiquities, rotten with Age, let vs come to take better view of this stately Citie. [a] *Herodotus*, [b] *Philostratus*, [c] *Plinie*, and [d] *Solinus* report concerning the compasse of Babylon, That the walls contayned foure hundred and eightie furlongs, situate in a large Plaine, foure square, inuironed with a broad and deepe Ditch full of water. [e] *Diodorus* saith, That there were but so many furlongs as are dayes in the yeare, so that euery day a furlong of the wall was built, and thirtie hundred thousand Work-men imployed therein. [f] *Strabo* ascribeth to the compasse three hundred and eightie furlongs: and [g] *Curtius*, three hundred fiftie eight, (ninetie furlongs thereof inhabited, the rest allotted to Tyl: and Husbandry.) Concerning the thicknesse of the walls, or the height, they also disagree. The first Authors affirme the height two hundred Cubites, the thicknesse [h] fiftie. They which say least, cut off halfe that summe. Well might [i] *Aristotle* esteeme it a Countrey rather then a Citie, being of such greatnesse, that some part of it was taken three dayes before the other

a *Herod. l. 1.*
b *Philostr. de vit. Apol. l. 1. c. 18.*
c *Plin. l. 6. c. 26.*
d *Solinus c. 60.*
e *Diod. l. 3. c. 4.*
f *Strabo lib. 16.*
g *Curt. l. 5.*
h *Et duo in admissum missi per mænia currus. Propert. 3.*
i *N. Eyr. in Dit. 4*

other heard of it. [k] *Lyranus* out of *Hierome* vpon *Esay* affirmeth, that the foure squares thereof contayned sixteene miles a piece, wherein euery man had his Vineyard and Garden according to his degree, whereswith to maynt aine his Family in time of siege. The Fortresse or Tower thereof he saith was that which had beene built by the Sonnes of *Noah*. And not without cause was it reckoned among the [l] *Wonders* of the World. It had a hundred Brazen gates, and two hundred and fiftie Towers. It was indeed a Mother of Wonders: so many Miracles of Art accompanyed the same, the workes partly of *Semiramis*, partly of *Nabuchodonosor*; which I would desire the Reader to stay [l] is hastie pace, and take notice of. Euery where I shall not, I cannot, be so tedious in these kinds of Relations. [m] *Diodor.* thus addeth of *Semiramis*; thee built also a bridge of fiue furlongs. The walles were made of Bricke and *Asphaltum*, a kind slimy kind of Pitch which that Countrey yeeldeth. Shee built two Palaces, which might serue both for ornament and defence; one in the West, which inuironed sixtie furlongs; with high Bricke walles; within that a lesse, and within that also a lesse circuit, which contayneth the Tower. These were wrought sumptuously with Images of beasts, and therein also was game and hunting of beasts: this had three gates. The other in the East, on the other side the Riuer, contayned but thirtie furlongs. In the lower Countrey of Babylonia she made a great square Lake contayning two hundred furlongs; the walls whereof were of Bricke, and that pitchie Morter; the depth thirtie fiue foot. In the middest of the Citie she erected a Temple to *Iupiter Belus* (saith *Herodotus*) with Brazen gates (now in his time remayning) foure square: each square contayning two * furlongs, in the middest whereof is a solid Tower, of the height and thicknesse of a furlong: vpon this another, and so one higher then another, eight in number. In the highest Tower is a Chappell, and therein a faire bed couered, and a Table of Gold, without any Image. Neyther, as the Chaldæan Priests affirme, doth any abide here in the night, but one woman, whom this God shall appoint. They say, the God himselfe ehere lyeth. In regard of this exceeding height, *Diodorus* affirmes, that the Chaldæans did thereon make their obseruations of the Starres. Hee also addeth, that *Semiramis* placed in the top three golden statues; one of *Iupiter* fortie foot long, weighing a thousand Babylonian Talents, till his time remaynng; another of *Opi*, weighing as much, sitting in a golden Throne, and at her feet two Lions, and iust by huge Serpents of siluer, each of thirtie Talents: the third Image was of *Iuno* standing, in weight eight hundred Talents. Her right hand held the head of a Serpent, her left, a Scepter of stone. To all these was common, one Table of gold, forty foot long, in breadth twelue, in weight fiftie Talents. There were also two standing cups of thirty Talents, and two vessels for Perfume of like value: three other vessels of gold, whereof one dedicated to *Iupiter*, weighed twelue hundred Babylonian Talents: (euery Babylonian Talent is said to containe seuen thousand *Drachme Attice*, sixtie three pounds, nine ounces and a halfe, and halfe a quarter Troy weight.) All these the Persian Kings tooke away. Without the Temple, by *Herodotus* testimonie, was a golden Altar, and another huge one besides, for their solemne Sacrifices, the other beeing not to bee polluted with bloud, except of sucking things. In that greater Chaldæans burnt yeerely in their sacrifices a hundred thousand talents of Libanotus. One statue of gold twelue cubits high, *Darius* affecting spared; but *Xerxes* both tooke it, and slew the Priest that forbad him.

I might here also tell of those *Pensile gardens*, borne vp on arches, foure square, each square containing foure hundred foot: filled on the roofe with earth, wherein grew great trees and other plants. The entrance was (as it were) a hill: the arches were builded one vpon another in conuenient height, still increasing as they ascended: the highest which bare the walls, were fiftie cubits high, and twelue in breadth: There were within these Arches, Innes. There was also a conueyance of water to the watering thereof. This Garden was made long after *Semiramis* time by [n] a King, which herein seemed to lord it ouer the Elements, and countermaund Nature, being himselfe the seruant of his wiues appetite, who in this lowly valley wherein Babylon stood, would faine haue some representation of her owne hilly and mountainous countrey of Media.

This King was *Nabuchodonosor*, as witnesseth [o] *Berosus* in *Iosephus*, who having conquered Egypt, Syria, Phœnicia, Arabia, inriched the Temple of *Belus* with the spoyles, and added a new Citie to the old, without the same. And prouiding that the enemie might not after turne the course of the Riuer, and approach to the Citie, he compassed the inner Citie with three Wals, and the vtter Citie with as many, these of bricke, those also with bitumen, or pitchie slime of that Countrie, adding thereunto stately gates. And neere his fathers Palace he built another more sumptuous: and this hee did in fifteene dayes. Thetein hee raysed stone-works like vnto mountaines, and planted the same with all manner of trees. Hee made also a pensile Garden. Many more things (saith *Iosephus*) doth *Berosus* adde, and blameth the Greeke writers for ascribing the building of Babylon to *Semiramis* an Assyrian.

This

k *Arist. Politic. l.3.c.2.*

l *Greg. Naz. in vit. Basil. Martial. Epig. Nicetas & Nun. in Naz.*

m *Diod. Sic. l.3.* (or after the Greeke. *l.2.*) *c.4*

Herod. l.3.

* τὸ ὁλόστατον, translated a furlong, is but six hundred foot.

In respect of this Idolatry, it is like that *Dionysius* Babylon a holy Citie.

n *A rege Syro. Diod.*

o *Berof. fragm. apud Iosph. contra Appion. lib. 1. & Scal. notas in hoc frag.*

This fragment of *Berosus* cited by *Iosephus*, doth well serue vs to cleare both the holy and prophane Historie. In the one, *Daniel* p induceth *Nabuchodonosor* walking in his royall Palace in Babel, with words answerable to his pride. *Is not this great Babel that I haue builded for the house of the Kingdome, by the might of my power, and for the honour of my maiestie?* His words (euen in the speaking) were written in the Booke of GOD, and an endictement thereof framed in the highest Court; where he was adiudged presently the losse of *Reason*; which he had thus abused, *Till hee knew that the most High bare rule ouer the Kingdome of men, giuing the same to whomsoeuer hee will.* Well might he say, he had built it, integard of this new Citie and Palace, with other miracles thereof: with more truth then some Expositors, which accuse him herein of a lie, for arrogating that which *Semiramis* did. His wife also, for whose loue he did this, was (as q *Scaliger* thinketh) *Nitocris*, mentioned by *Herodotus*; who also conieclureth that shee was the Daughter of *Aliattes*, that *Daniel* intendeth her, *Dan.*5.10. that shee administred the Kingdome in the time of her husbands madnesse, and in the times also of *Emlmerodach* and *Balthasar*: a woman no whit inferiour to *Semiramis*; that it may be said, *Semiramis* began Babylon, and *Nitocris* finished and perfected it, finishing and perfecting those workes which *Nabuchodonosor* her husband before the time of his madnesse had begunne.

And for *Semiramis*, profane histories generally make her the founder of this Citie, and among others t *Annius* his *Berosus*, who (contrary to this fragment of the true *Berosus* in *Iosephus*) saith, that *Semiramis* made Babylon of a towne a great Citie, that shee might be rather esteemed the builder thereof, then enlarger. *Nimrod* had before built the Tower, but not finished it, and did not u *found the Citie*, which hee had designed and set out, and *Belus* his sonne had u erected those designed foundations, rather of the Towne then the Citie Babylon. *Moses* testifieth that at the first building, they were (by confusion of language) forced to cease their worke, leauing a *name* of their *shame*, in stead of that *renowme and name*, which they had promised to themselues. It may be that *Semiramis* did amplifie this: and happily so did other Assyrian and Babylonian kings, as *Augustine* and *Abidenus* affirme. *Haec quidem putant condidisse Babylona, quam quidem potuit instaurare.* Likewise *Abidenus* saith, that the wals being by inundation fallen, were built againe by *Nabuchodonosor*, and agreeth in other things with *Berosus*. But the Græcians are children, in comparison of ancient Historie, and little of this matter can we affirme on their testimonie: their first Historian *Herodotus* liuing long after this age, in the time of the Persian Monarchie. Howsoeuer; *Nabuchodonosor* is hee which (by diuine and humane testimonie) there established that golden head of the Image, the seat of the Babylonian Monarchie, raising it to that high top of worldly excellence. Yea *Daniel* speaketh of one more sumptuous Image, then any mentioned by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, set vp by this King threescore x cubits high, and six broad, enioying a *Catholicke* and vniuersall idolatrie thereto, which the three Saints *Shadrach*, *Meshach*, and *Abednego* refused, and in a *fierie triall* were found both Martyrs and Confessors. y *Tyranus*, *Hugo Cardinalis*, *Peterius*, *Pintus*, *Pellicanus*, thinke that *Nabuchodonosor* set vp this Image for himselfe, requiring diuine honour to be giuen vnto it, as *Caligula* since amongst the Romans; but by his expostulation, *Will yee not serue my gods?* and the like answete of those three men: *We will not serue thy gods*, it seeme th to haue beene consecrated to *Bel*, or some other Babylonian Deitie. Which because it was erected in the plaine of *Dura* (this is thought to bee z *Dera in Susiana*, mentioned by *Ptolomey*) z *Daniel* might haue good occasion of absence from thence, whose office was to a *sit in the gate of the King*, at *Babylon*.

b *Strabo* out of *Megasthenes* (whom *Annius* hath set out as truly as he hath done *Berosus*, saue that he lisped in the name, and called him *Metasthenes*) sayth of this King, whom hee nameth *Nabacodrosor*, more esteemed of the Chaldæans then *Hercules*, that he came in his expeditions as farre as the Pillars of *Hercules* (the straights of Gibraltar) and as far as *Tearcon* the Æthiopian, and that he conducted an army out of Iberia into Thracia and Ponius. This *Tearcon* is he whom the Scripture calleth *Tirhaka*, which warred against *Senacherib*.

* But to returne to our pensile Gardens, which *Diodorus* and *Curtius* attribute to a Syrian King (which was no other but this Conqueror of Syria, à *Nabuchodonosor*) and both they and *Strabo* doe at large describe and account among the worlds wonders, as were also the Bridge and the Walls of the Citie. And no lesse wonderfull was that *Obeliske*, or Needle: a square stone made spire-fashion, cut by *Semiramis* out of the mountaines of Armenia, one hundred and fiftie foot long, and foure and twentie thicke, on many Waines brought to the Riuer, thence to Babylon, and there erected. *Plinie* testifieth, that the Temple of *Belus* stil remaineth in his dayes: and that *Belus* was inuentor of Astronomie.

This Temple was the same with the Sepulchre of *Belus*, which *Strabo* sayth, was raised by

p *Dan.*4.27.

q *Scal. note in Eus. Bros.*

r *Clara Carthaginis arces, Creatur & centum potit Babylona superbam: Iamitem struxisse labor. Claud.*

s *Pseudo. Berosus.*

t *Nec designatam vrbem fundauit, sed.*

u *Fundamenta designata Babylonis magis quam vrbis erexit. Gen.*11.8. *Aug. de Ciu. Dei.*lib.18.c.2. *Ap. Euseb. Prep. lib.*9. *Diana.*a.3.

x *Iyranus* thinketh that the Basis whereon it stood, is included in this height: for (as Symetrians obserue) the length of a man holdeth proportion but of six, and not of ten to the breadth.

y See D. *Willet* in *Dan.*3. *Ver.*14.c.18.

z *Ptol. Geog.* 1.6.cap.3.

a *Praefectus praetorio.*

b *Strabo.*L.15.

c *Metasthenes Anny.* Theruin. *Metasthenes* write about fifteen yeares before *Berosus*, hauing trauelled all the East, about the end of *Alexanders* raigne.

* 2.*King.*19.9.

d Syria comprehendeth in it (after the largest sense) Babylonia also. See cap.15.

e *Plinl.*l.5.c.12.

Xerxes; yet not so, but that *Alexander* would haue repaired it; but in regard that it asked so much labour and time (for onely the clensing of the earth required ten thousand men two moneths worke) he was not able to finish that which he had begunne. In the description he saith lesse then *Herodotus*, that it was a Pyramis, or spire-worke, a furlong, or six hundred foot in height, and each of the foure squares containing as much. *Arrianus* [e] affirmeth that *Alexander* had the same purpose of other Temples also. The Temples, sayth he, which *Xerxes* had ouerthrowne, he commanded to be repayred, and among them the Temple of *Belus*, whom the Babylonians with singular Religion worship. [f] At his returne homewards *Belus* in thankefulnesse (it seemeth) sent his Chaldæan Priests to meete him, and for bid him to enter the Citie, as he loued his life, whose Oracle *Alexander* contemning, there ended his dayes. The cause why he listned not to them, is thought a misstruit, that he conceiued of the Chaldæans. For whereas *Xerxes*, at his returne out of Greece, had razed this and all other sacred places of the Babylonians; *Alexander* minding the repaire hereof, hauing already remoned the rubbish, thought with his whole Armie to atchieue this enterprise. But the reuenue which the Kings of Assyria had left for the maintenance of this Temple sacrifices, after the ouerthrow thereof, was shared among the Chaldæans; which they by this attempt were like to lose, and therefore were willing to want his presence.

e *Arrian. de rebus gestis Alexand. lib 3.*

f *Ar. lib. 7.*

This Temple some suppose to be that Tower of Babel, mentioned by *Moses*, *Gen. 11.* and supposed still in part to remaine. For about seuen or eight miles from Bagdat, as men passe from Felugia a Towne on Euphrates, whereon old Babylon stood, to this new Citie on Tygris (a worke of eighteene houres, and about forty miles space) there is seene a ruinous shape of a shapelesse heape and building, in circuit lesse then a mile (some say, but a quarter of a mile) about the height of the stone-worke of *Pauls* steeple in London: the bricks being sixe inches thicke, eight broad, and a foot long (as master *Allen* measured) with Mats of Canes laied betwixt them, yet remayning as sound, as if they had beene laid within a yeeres space. Thus master *Eldred*, and master *Fitch*, master *Cartwright* also, and my friend master *Allen*, by testimony of their owne eyes, haue reported. But I can scarce think it to be that Tower or Temple, because Authors place it in the middest of old Babylon, and neere Euphrates. Whereas this is neerer Tygris: *Isidore* affirmeth, that first after the flood, *Nimrod* the Giant founded *Babylon*, which *Semiramis* the Assyrian Queene enlarged, and made the wall with Bricke and Bitumen. The height of the Tower was fiue thousand one hundred seuenty foure paces, [g] *Verstegan* addeth, the passage to mount vp was verie wide and great, winding about on the out-side: the middle and inward part for the more strength being all masse: and by Cart, Camels, Dromedaries, Horses and Asses, the carriages were borne and drawne vp: and by the way were many Lodgings and Hosteries both for man and beast; yea fields also for graine and pasture; if yee can believe it. But it is now, as weesee, come to *confusion*. Also there are yet beyond Tygris some ruines of a Temple, which is called the Temple of *Bel*, with high yron gates, as is reported.

Mentioned also by Sir, *Ant. Sherley* in his trauels into *Persia*.

g *Verstegan. Antiq. c. 1.*

Dominicus Niger [h] hath these words: Seleucia in processe of time hath changed her state and her site. For it was on the westerne banke of Tygris, which a Cut from Euphrates flowed into; in which place are now seene the ruines thereof, where the shepheards haue erected them cottages: and on the Easterne banke haue the Barbarians built the Citie, and called it Bachdad, right ouer-against the old. If this be true, vaine is the conceit of credulous Trauellers, which suppose those ruines to be the monuments of Babylons burial, and confound against this later world, with the reports of Babels Tower.

h *Domin. Nig. Asiæ Cam. 4.*

The Bitumen of slimie pitch which they vsed in stead of Morter in their building is as *Dominicus Niger* out of *Tragus* reporteth, common in those parts. *Herodotus* telleth, that eight dayes ourney from Babylon, was another Citie, named *Is*, with a small rill of the same name, which runneth into Euphrates, carrying thither (as tribute) much of this slimie matter. *Niger* mentioneth one place, where, out of a clift or opening of the earth, proceedeth such a stinke, that it killeth the Birds which flie ouer it. And at this day, two dayes iourney from Bagdat [i] at a place called Ait, is a mouth continually throwing forth boyling pitch, therefore by the Moores called Hel-mouth, which runneth into a great field, almost full thereof: and herewith they pitch their boates. The water, as my friend master *Allen* (who liued in Bagdat diuers moneths) told me, is waime, and accounted medicinable, for which cloured Creame, to vse his owne phrase.

i *R. Fitche. Hak. Voy. tom. 2.*

The Countrie of Babylonia hath beene the most fruitfull in the world, [k] yeelding ordinarily two hundred, and in some places three hundred increase: the blades of the Wheat and Barley about foure fingers broad, [l] *Plinie*, somewhat otherwise: They cut saith he) or mow their corne twice, and feed it a third time in Babylonia, otherwise it would be nothing but blade:

k *Herod. lib. 2.*

l *Plin. Nat. hist. lib. 18. cap. 17.*

blades: and yet so their barrener land yeeldeth fiftie, their best an hundred increase. Tygris and Euphrates ouerflow it, but bring not fatnesse to the soyle, as Nilus in Egypt, but rather cleanse that superfluous fatnesse which naturally it hath.

The soyle is of a rosennie clay, sayth master *Allen*, and would still retaine in likelyhood his ancient fertility, if it were watered with like diligent husbandrie. In digging, it yeeldeth corrupt waters, sauouring of that pitchie slime. In the Citie anciently, it seemeth that in euery Garden of any Citizen of sort, were rils made out of the Riuer. The ruines from the Tower aforesaid to Bagdat (which some call Babylon) and beyond on the other side of the Riuer, containe twentie two miles, yet to be seene: which happily are the ruines, not of old Babylon, so much as of the Neighbour townes here built Seleucia, Vologesoceria, and Ctesiphon: which I rather thinke, because they reach beyond Tygris as well as on this side.

To returne to the religious places in Babylon: *Celius Rhodiginus* tels, that in the Temple of *Apollo*, was found a golden chest of great antiquitie, which being broken by some accident, thence issued a pestilent vapour, that infected not those alone which were present, but the neighbouring Nations, as farre as Parthia. *Ammianus Marcellinus* [m] hath the like Historie of the Image of *Apollo Chomens* at Seleucia, which was brought to Rome, and there placed by the Priests in the Temple of *Apollo Palatinus*: and when as a certaine hole which the Chaldean *Wise-men* had by Art stopped, through the couetousnesse of certaine Souldiers breaking in thither for spoyle, was broken vp, the world was thence poysoned with a contagion, from Persia, as farre as France. [n] *Philostratus* reporteth (but who will beleeue his reports?) of *Apollonius*, that he saw at Babylon such stately Palaces, as scarce agree with the state of Babylon, in the time of *Apollonius*, which was while *Domician* raigned; amongst other things, hee saw Galleries full of Greeke Images, as of *Orpheus*, *Andromeda*, &c. He came also into a Gallerie, the roofe whereof was made bowing like the heauens, and couered with Saphire, so to resemble Heauen, and the Images of their gods, made of gold, were there set. From the roofe there hanged foure birds of gold, representing the goddesse of Reuenge, which they called the tongues of the gods, I know not by what art or mysterie, admonishing the King not to exalt himselfe.

Cel. Rhod. Lec. Antiq. l. 8. c. 12.

m *Ammian. l. 23.*

n *Philost. de vita Apol. l. 4. c. 18. Philost. aid Triu. de trad. disciph. & Magna Homeri mendacia maioribus mendacijs corrigit. Et postea, cum sem Apollonius pendentes signum esse rabiosum ac blasphemum, &c.*

CHAP. XII.

Of the Priests, Sacrifices, religious Rites, and customes of the Babylonians.

THe Chaldeans (saith [a] *Diodorus*) were of reputation in Babylon, as the Priests in Egypt; *Chaldean*, being a name sometime applyed to the whole Nation; sometime appropriated to the Priests, who spent their whole time in religious Seruices, and in Astrologie. Many of them by diuination foretold things to come, as wee haue shewed before in the Historie of *Alexander*; and the booke of *Daniel* witnesseth this their profession. By their auguries, or diuination by birds, by sacrifices and enchantments, they were accounted to doe good or harme to mankind. They were most expert in their sacred Rites, in the knowledge whereof they were brought vp from their child-hood; and continued in that course of learning all their liues, the child being instructed in his Fathers science. They professed the interpretation of dreames, and prodigious accidents in Nature. Their opinions were, That the world is eternall, without beginning and end: the order and furniture of all was done by diuine prouidence: all heauenly things were perfected, not by chance, of their owne accord, but by the determinate and firme decree of the gods. By long obseruation, searching the course and nature of the starres, they foretold things to come. But the greatest power they attributed to the fiue Planets, and especially to *Saturne*. They call them *Mercuries*, because when others are fixed, these haue their proper motion and shew future things, as the Interpreters of the gods, by their rising, setting and colour. Vnder their course they giue the title of gods [b] to thirty other starres, the one halfe, aboue; the other, vnder the earth, beholding all accidents. And in tenne dayes one of the higher is sent to the lower, as an Angell, or Messenger of the Starres, and one from them to the higher: And this course they take eternally.

They hold twelue principall gods, each of which hath his peculiar month, and his signe in the Zodiake; by which the Sunne, and Moone, and fiue Planets haue their motion. These Planets they esteeme to conferre much good or euill in the generation of men, and by their nature and aspect, things to come may be foreknown. Many things they foretold to *Alexander*, *Nicanor*, *Antigonus*, *Seleucus*, and to priuate men, beyond the reach of men. They

a *Diod. Sic. l. 3. capu. 8.*

b *Dij Consuentes.*

number foure and twenty constellations without the Zodiake, twelue towards the North, and as many towards the South. These Northernly are seene, which they attribute to the liuing: those Southernly are hidden, and present (they thinke) to the dead, which they hold the Iudges of all. Concerning the fire, motion, and Eclipse of the Moone, they hold as the Greekes; but of the Sunnes Eclipse they haue diuers opinions, and dares not vtter their opinion thereof, nor foretell the time. The earth they conceiued to bee hollow like a boate. *R. Moses Ben Maimon* out of a booke intituted *de Agricultura Ægyptiorum*, attributeth like things vnto them: that they beleeued the Starres were gods, and that the Sunne was the chiefe God, and next to him the Moone: that the Sunne ruleth the superiour and inferiour world. And concerning *Abraham*, that he was borne in a land which worshipped the fire, which when he reproued, and his Countrimen obiected the operations of the Sunne, hee answered that the Sun was as the Axe in the hand of the Carpenter. But at last the King cast *Abraham* into prison, and when as there hee still continued the same disputes and opinions, the King fearing hurt to his people, banished him into the vtmost bounds of *Chanaan*, hauing first spoyled him of all his good. This contradicteth the Historie of *Moses*, and of the old and new Testament, which commend *Abrahams* faith, in voluntary forsaking of his country at the commaund of GOD, and not by compulsion of man, although it reacheth not to the former [e] absurbitie, which ascribeth this to the time of *Nimrod*. And whether *Abraham* was an Idolater before that his calling, is handled [d] elsewhere. But to returne to our Rabbine (highly [c] admired by a most admired Author) he saith, that hence *Abraham* grew renowmed through the the World, all Nations honoring his memory, except some Heathens, as the Parthians on the left hand, and Indians on the right, which were remainders of the Chaldæans, and called *Zabij*. These *Zabij*, *Scaliger* also sayth were Chaldæans, so called *a vento Apeliote*, as one might say, *Eastern-men*, or *Easterlings*: and addeth, that the Booke so often cited by [f] *Rambans*, concerning their Religion, Rites, and Customes, is yet extant in the hands of the Arabian Muhamedans. Out of this booke our Rabbie reciteth their opinions: that *Adam* was borne of man and woman, as other men; and that hee was a Prophet of the Moone, and by preaching perswaded men to worship the Moone, and that hee composed bookes of husbandry: that *Noe* also was a husband-man, and beleeued not in Idols. For which the *Zabij* put him in prison, and because he worshipped the Creator. *Seth* also contradicted *Adam* in his Lunaric worship. They tell also that *Adam* went out [g] of the Land of promise, which is towards India, and entred into Babylon, whither hee carried with him a tree still growing with braunches and leaues, and a tree of stones, and leaues of a tree which would not burne, vnder the shadow of which tree he said ten thousand men might be couered, the height whereof was as the stature of a man. *Adam* also had affirmed in his booke of a tree in India, the bonghes whereof being cast on the ground, would tiir like Serpents; and of another, which had a root shaped like a man, endued with a kind of sounding voyce differing from speech; and of a certaine hearbe which being folded vp in a mans clothes, would make him walke inuisible, and the smoke of the same, being fired, would cause thunders: another tree they worshipped which abode in Niniue twelue yeeres, and contended with the Mandrake for vsurping her roome, whereby it came to passe that the Priest or Prophet, which had vsed to prophesie, with the spirit of that tree, ceased a long time from prophesying, and at last the tree spake to him, and bade him write the sute between her and the Mandrake, whether of them were the more honourable. These fooleries, saith he, they attributed to *Adam*, that so they might proue the eternitie of the world, and Deitie of the Stars. These *Zabij* made them for this cause Images of gold to the Sunne, of siluer to the Moone, and built them Temples, saying, that the power of the Planets was infused into those Images, whence they spake vnto men and taught things profitable. The same they affirmed of those trees which they apropriated to each of them with peculiar worships, rites, and hallowings, whereby that tree receiued a power to speake with men in their sleepes. From hence sprang magicall diuinations, auguries, necromancie, and the like. They offered to their chiefe god a Beetle, and seuen Mice, and seuen Fowles.

The greatest of their bookes is that of the Ægyptian seruice, translated into Arabike by a Moore called *Enennaxia*, which containeth in it many ridiculous things; and yet these were the famous wise-men of Babylon in those daies. In the said booke is reported of a certaine Idolatrous Prophet named *Tamut*, who preaching to a certaine King this worship of the seuen Planets, and twelue Signes, was by him done to a grieuous death. And in the night of his death, all the Images from the ends of the world came and assembled together at the great golden Image in the Temple at Babylon, which was sacred to the Sunne, and hanged between the heauen and the earth, which then prostrated it selfe in the midst of the Temple with all the Images round about, shewing to them, all which had be fall: n *Tamut*. All the Images therefore wept all night, and in the morning fled away each to his owne Temple.

R. Mos. Mo. lib. 1. c. 30. Vid. eius Epist. ed Mass. Iud.

Gene. 12. Heb. 11.

c Mentioned, *supra c. 10.*

d *Lib. 2. c. 2. e Ios. Scaliger Epist. ad Casaubon. Omnia alius Magistri opera sacris, ea solum illum inter Iudeos destituse nugari dicam*

f So the Iewes call the said *R. Mos.* of the first letters *R. M. B. M. Rab. Mos. Ben. Maimon.* contracted *Rambam.*

g These fables were some rubbish of Paradise, the trees and Serpent therein, &c. In his Epistle to the *Marsilian* Iewes, he writeth of Bookes which mention *Iambisor, Tegreth, Reem*, and say they were before *Adam*, and that *Sombasher* was *Adams* master: and of the Indians, which say they haue Cities 100000. yeeres old, &c.

Of this mourning for *Tamut* or *Thamur*, See *Ezek. 8. 14. & vid. infra c. 17.*

And hence grew that custome yearely in the beginning of the moneth *Tamuz*, to renew that mourning for *Tamuz*. Other bookes of theirs are mentioned by him, one called *Deiz ame-chamoche*, a booke of Images, a booke of Candles, of the degrees of Heauen, and others falsly ascribed to *Aristotle*, and one to *Alformor*, and one to *Isaac*, and one, of their Feasts, Offrings, Prayers, and other things pertaining to their Law, and some written against their opinions, all done into Arabike. In these are set downe the Rites of their Temples and Images of stone or metall, and applying of Spirits to them, and their Sacrifices, and kinds of meates. They name their holy places sumptuously built, the Temples of Intelligible formes; and set Images on high mountaines, and honour trees, and attribute the increase of men and fruits to the Starres: Their Priests preached that the Earth could not bee Tilled, according
10 to the will of the gods, except they serued the Sunne and Starres, which being offended; would diminish their fruites, and make their Countries desolate. They haue written also in the former bookes, that the Planet *Iupiter* is angrie with the Deserts and drie places, whence it commeth that they want water and trees, and that Deuils haunt them. They honoured Husband-men, and fulfilling the will of the Starres, in tilling the ground: they honoured Kine and Oxen for their labours therein, saying that they ought not to be slaine. In their festiuals they vsed Songs, and all Musicall instruments, affirming that their Idols were pleased with these things, promising to the doers long life, health, plentie of fruits, raines, trees, free-
20 dome from losses, and the like. Hence it is, saith *R. Moses*, that the Law of *Moses* forbid-deth these rites, and threatneth the contrarie plagues to such as shall obserue them. Tehy had certaine hallowed beasts in their Temples wherein their Images were, before which they bowed themselues and burned incense. These opinions of the *Zabij*, were holden also by the Aramites, Chanaanites, and Ægyptians.

R. Mos. l. 3. ti. 6. 33.

Cap. 38.

They had their magicall obseruations in gathering certaine hearbs, or in the vse of certaine metals, or liuing creatures, and that in a set certaine time, with their set rites, as of leaping, clapping the hands, hopping, crying, laughing, &c. in the most of which women were actors; as when they would haue raine, ten Virgins clothed in hallowed garments of red colour, danced a procession, turning about their faces and shoulders, and stretching their fingers towards the Sunne: and to preuent harme by haile, foure Women lay on their backes
30 naked, lifting vp their feete, speaking certaine words: And all Magicall practices, they made to depend of the Starres, saying, that such a Starre was pleased with such an incense, such a Plant, such a metall, such words, or workes, and thereby would beas it were hired to such or such effects, as to driue away Serpents, and Scorpions, to slay wormes in nuts, to make the leaues fall, and the like. Their Priests vsed shauings of the head and beard, and linsey wolsey garments, and made a signe in their hand with some kind of metals. The Booke of Centir prescribeth a woman to stand armed before the starre of *Mars*, and a man clothed in womans attire painted, before the starre of *Venus* to prouoke lust. The worshippers of the fire made men beleeue that they which would not causeth their children to passe through the fire, should lose them, and easily perswaded them thereunto as a thing easie, saith the Rabine,
40 for they did not burne them (although herein both diuine and humane testimonies make me beleeue the contrarie.) From hence, saith hee, descended the customes, obserued by women, in holding and mouing their children ouer the fire or smoke.

Moloch and *Saturnes* sacrifices of humane bodies. See Cap. 18.

They had their diuersities of Processions; and when they hallowed a tree to an Image, one part of the fruit thereof was offered, and the other eaten in the house of the Idoll: the like they did with the first fruits of euery tree; making men beleeue that otherwise the tree would become vnprofitable. They had their magicall enchantments in the planting or grafting of trees, with obseruations of the starres, incenses, words: but this most Diabolicall, that in the houre when one kinde was to be ingrafted into another, the science which was to bee ingrafted, should bee holden in the hand of some beautifull woman, and that some man
50 should then carnally, but vnnaturally, haue knowledge of her, the woman in that instant putting the science into the tree. They vsed also to make circles when they planted or sowed, and went about the same, some fiue times, because of the fiue planets, some seuen, in regard of the Sunne and Moone, added to that number. For this cause the Iew not vnprobably thinketh that mixtures in garments, seedes, and the like, were forbidden by the Law of *Moses*, with other rites any way resembling these.

Aversa Venus.

They further worshipped Deuils, beleeuing that they appeared to men in the formes of Goates, and therefore called their Deuils Kids, and held it vnlawfull to shearc or to eare their kids: but especially they abhorred the killing of Kine, but performed much worship to them, as they also doe in India to this day. They sacrificed Lyons, Beares, and wilde
60 Beasts, as is mentioned in the Booke *Zeuzit*. They held bloud in much abomination, accounting it a great pollution, and yet did eat it, because (they said) it was the food of

Deuils, and they which did eat it, should haue communion with them: and that they would come to such and reueale vnto them things to come. Some, whose nicer stomackes could not indure to eate it, receiued the same, when they killed a beast, [h] in a Vessell or in a ditch, and did eate the flesh of that Sacrifice, being placed about that bloud, thinking that the Deuils did eate the bloud, and that thus by this as it were eating at the same table, was entertained betwixt them and the Deuils mutuall familiaritie and societie. They beleeued also that in their sleepes, the Deuils came and reuealed secrets vnto them. Concerning a menstruous woman their custome was, that shee should sit alone in a house, and that the places where shee set her feet should be burned; whosoeuer talked with her was vncleane, yea if he but stood in the wind of her, the wind from her did pollute him. Likewise these Zabians thought, whatsoeuer went from their bodies was vncleane, as nailes, haire, bloud; and therefore Barbers and Surgeons were holden polluted: and after cutting off their haire, vsed much washing for expiation. But it needeth some expiation that I insist so long in these narrations, and haue need of some Barber or Surgeon to ease me of superfluities, if that can be superfluous which fitteth so to our proiect, and in the iudgement of the learnedst of the Iewish Rabbines in many ages, seemed the cause of so many prohibitions in *Moses* his Law, lest they should conforme, themselues in religious obseruances to these superstitious Zabians.

But let vs now returne to *Diodorus*, who affirmeth that the Chaldæans numbred fortie three thousand yeeres, vntill the comming of *Alexander*, since first they had begunne their obseruations of the Starres. These yeeres *Xenophon de aquinocis* interpreteth of moneths; for so (sayth he) the Chaldæans reckoned their antiquities; in other things they kept their computation according to the Sunne. But of their fabulous antiquities wee haue heard before: where wee haue also touched, that one beginning of Idolatrie did arise of this curious and superstitious *Starre-gazing*, especially in the Countries of Ægypt, where not at all vsually; and in Chaldæa, where diuers moneths [i] together, they haue neither raines nor cloudes.

Strabo diuideth the Chaldæans into sects, *Orcheni*, *Borsippeni*, and others, diuersly opinionate of the same things. Borsippa was a Citie sacred to *Diana* and *Apollo*. *Plinie* [k] addeth the *Hippareni*. *Daniel* [l] reckoneth vp foure kind of Wise-men among the Chaldæans: the first are called *Chartummim*, which were Enchanters; *Alhaphim*, Astrologers; *Mecasiphim*, Sorcerers or Iuglers, deluders of sense; and *Chasdim*, Chaldæans, which, howsoeuer it were a generall name of that Nation, yet was it appropriated vnto a certaine sect and profession of learning among them which seemed to excell the rest, and were their Priests, Philosophers, and Mathematicians, as you haue heard. In the seuen and twentieth verse of the same chapter are mentioned also *Cachimim*, Wisards, which by coniectures and casting of lots did gheesse of things to come: and *Gazrim*, of the word *gazar*, to cut; these opened, and diuined by the entrails of sacrifices. The vanitie of their diuinations appeareth in that Prophet, howsoeuer they haue beene renowned therefore among the Heathens: as in the foretelling of *Alexanders* death, and before that, when [*] *Darius* had changed his Seaberd into the Greeke fashion, the ruine of that Empire by the Greeks. When *Faustina* [m] the Empresse, wife to *M. Antonius*, had fallen in loue with a Fencer or sword-player, and being sicke confessed the same to her husband, the Chaldæans were sent for, who gaue counsell to kill the Fencer, and that shee should wash her selfe in his bloud, and then accompanie with her Husband: which was done and *Commodus* begotten, who in qualities resembled that Fencer vpon this occasion (as the people reported) though others esteemed him a Bastard. *Plutarch* [n] sheweth how vainely the Romans depended on their predictions. Thus *Iuvenal* reproues them:

> *Chaldæis sed maior erit fiducia, quicquid*
> *Dixerit Astrologus, credent à fonte relatum*
> *Ammonis.*
>
> Ioues Oracles no greater credit haue
> Then sooth-saying of Chaldæe coozening knaue.

Many Edicts were after made against them. *Otho Heurnius* [o] laboureth to bring the Grecian Philosophie from the Chaldæans: yea *Aristotle* himselfe, as hee had receiued the the Persian and Indian Philosophie by tradition of *Pythagoras* and *Democritus*, and the Ægyptian and Iewish learning from *Plato*, so was hee instructed (sayth hee) in the Babylonian sciences by *Callisthenes*. But *Celius Rhodiginus* [p] and *Iosephus Scaliger* [q] thinke them rather corrupters of learning, whereof they had no solid knowledge, and that the Greekes attained

h *Idem citat P. Ric. in explic. praecept. mos.* 210. *ex R. Mos. Gerundensis.*

i Eight moneths together Master *Eldred*, *Hak. Voy. tom. 2.*

k *Plin. l. 6. c. 26. Teris: Chaldeorũ Doctrina & Scaig* thinketh them named *Orcheni*, *&c.* of the place, and not of difference of sects, as if there had beene Vniuersities or Colledges of Chaldæans, the *Orcheni* were of *Erech*. *Scal. note in fragm. Bar.*

l *Dan. 2.* See *D. W. Ist. Comm. ibid. q. 7. & 29.*

* *Q. Curtius.*

m *Iul. Capitolin. M. Ant. Philos.*

n *Plut. in vit. Mar. & Syl.*

Iuven. Sat. 6.

o *Otho Heurn. Chaldaic.*

p *Cel. Rhod. Lec. Ant. lib. 16. c. 4. 4.*

q *Iu. Scal. pref. in Manil.*

attained thereunto by their owne industrie, without borrowing of the Chaldæans. *Peucer* deemeth [r] them too Philosophicall, the peruerters of Religion into Theoricall speculations of Nature, and consuteth their siue kinds of prognosticating. But their estimation could not haue beene such in *Daniels* time, if they had not beene very learned: and some what was added, as wee may well coniecture, to their learning by him, who by *Nabuchodonosor* was [s] *set ouer them*. For besides the gifts wherewith hee was enriched, and the ciuill authoritie wherewith he was dignified, he was exalted also to this Ecclesiasticall iurisdiction ouer the Schooles of the Wise-men, (as after *Iunius* and *Osiander*, *D. Willet* hath obserued) as it were their Superintendent: which though *Calvin* thinketh hee refused, yet it appeareth by the title which the King [t] after gaue him, that hee accepted it. In which his Superintendentship, sayth our Author [u], such laudable sciences as might safely be learned, he promoted and furthered; such corruption and superstitions as were practised among them, he corrected and reformed: but such abuses as could not be taken away, hee forbare, and kept himselfe free from them. And here haue we a testimonie of their Hierarchie, which Nature taught these and all people, contrarie to the Nouelties of Paritie. In the dayes of *Hezechiah*, when the Sunne went backwards, it appeareth how studious the Chaldæan Nation was, in that [x] *their Princes sent their Ambassadours into Iudæa to enquire thereof*. Yea the Delphian Oracle, as *Theodoret* citeth it out of [y] *Porphyrie*, ascribing the finding out of that learning which leadeth to the gods, not to the Greekes, but to the Ægyptians, Phœnicians, Chaldæans, and Hebrewes; in which the Chaldæans (as that Father out of *Daniel* obserueth) were furthered by the Hebrewes.

Some [z] doe call the Babylonian Priests, *Magi*: but because they were by this name best knowne, and most esteemed among the Persians, which in that vicinitie of Regions had as neere Neighbourhood in Religions, wee will speake of these *Magi*, in our Persian Relations. And it is thought that the Persian *Magi* came from these Chaldæans. *Mornæus* [a] reckoneth among the Chaldæan opinions, that of *Oromases*, *Mitris*, and *Arimnius*, that is to say, GOD, *Mind* and *Soule*: which hee applieth to the Christian doctrine of the holy Trinitie. The Oracle of *Apollo*, pronounced the Chaldæans and Hebrewes to bee onely wise.

The Chaldæan opinion concerning iudiciall Astrologie, was not receiued of all the Chaldæans, as *Strabo* reporteth. And *Bardesanes Syrus*, the best learned of the Chaldæans (it is *Eusebius* [b] testimonie) doth at large confute that opinion (which yet many Wisards, carkasses of Christians still follow.) He affirmeth that in those things which a man hath common with a beast, eating, sleepe, nourishment, age, &c. a man is ordered by Nature, as the beasts are. But man hauing also a reasonable soule, and freedome of will, is not subiect to that naturall seruitude; which at large hee prooueth by the diuers customes of men, both in diuers, and in the same countries, in diet, gouernment, and Religion; as the Reader, willing to reade so worthie a discourse, may find related at large in *Eusebius*.

Alexander Polyhist. [c] out of *Eupolemus*, telleth that in the tenth generation after the sflood, in Camyrine a Citie of Babylonia, which other call Vr, *Abram* was borne, which excelled all in knowledge, and was the inuentor of Astrologie among the Chaldæans. Hee by diuine precept went into Phœnicia, and taught the Phœnicians the course of the Sunne and Moone: and when the Armenians, warring vpon the Phœnicians, had taken his brothers sonne prisoner, hee by a band of his seruants recouered him, and freely dismissed the captiues, which he had taken. Hee after liued with the Priests at Heliopolis in Egypt, and taught them Astrologie; confessing that he had receiued that Art by succession from *Enoch*. Hee added that *Belus* raigned the second in Babylon, and was called *Saturne*, the father of a second *Belus*, and *Canaan*; which *Canaan* was the father of the Phœnicians and the Æthiopians, brother of *Mizraim* the Author of the Ægyptians: with many other things not much differing from the Diuine Historie.

Astronomie in all likelihood was knowne to *Abraham*, to whom the heauenly starres might be Remembrancers of that promise, *so shall thy seed bee*: his countrie also, where it was practised, might therein further him, and the excellencie of the science in it selfe. But this star-gazing destinie, Iudiciall, Coniecturall, Genethliacall Astrologie, Reason and experience, GOD and Man haue condemned. *Vr* signifieth light, which agreeth to the *Fire*, the Chaldæans deitie, [d] which the Persians and Chaldæans fained to haue receiued from heauen, and kept euer burning; as the Vestals in Rome. They held Water and Fire to be the beginning of all things. They made a challenge of their *fiery god* [e], to contend with any other gods of the godlesse Heathen: an Egyptian encountred and ouercame them thus: he caused his *Canopus* to be made full of holes stopped with waxe, and hollow in the middle, which hee filled with water: and the Chaldæans putting their fire vnder, the waxe melting, opened a quiuer of watrie arrowes, that cooled the heat of their deuouring god, and

r *Peuc. de diuinat. Theom. & Astrol.*

s *Dan.2.48. Præfectum antistitem super omnes sapientes Bab. constituit. Trem.*

t *Dan.4.6. Præfecti Magorum.*

u *D. Willet in Dan.2. & Iun.*

x *2.Chro.32.31.*

y *Theod. de curand. Græc. affect. ser.1.*

z *Philostrat. de vita Apol. lib.1.*

a *Ph. Morn. de Verit. C. R.*

b *Euseb. de præpar. Eu. l.6.c.8.*

c *Euseb. de præpar. l.9.c.4.*

d *Ammian. l.23. Plutar. de facie in orbe Lunæ.*

e *Suidas in Canopo. Ruffin. hist. eccl. lib.2.*

and deuoured him. They had yet a more foolish god, euen an [e] *Onyon* which they worshipped. They obserued diuers wicked Sciences of diuining, by Fire, Aire, Water, Earth, consulting with the dead, and with wicked spirits, —— *Chaldæa vocatis Imperat arte dijs*, sayth *Claudian*.

Every day the King [g] offered a Horse, furnished, vnto the Sunne; as did also the Persians. *Philostrat.* sayth, that it was a white Horse of the Nisæan race, sumptuously trapped

[e] *Alex. ab Alexand. l.6.c.26.*

[g] *Calpin l.5.c.2.*

lib.1.cap.20. They obserued a feast in Babylon (*Athenæus* [h] citeth it out of *Berosus*) on the sixteenth Calends of September, which continued fiue dayes; in which the Masters were subiect to their seruants, and one of them royally attired, was caried out of the house, whom they called *Zoganes*, *Baruch cap.6.* in the Epistle of *Ieremie* (Apocrypha) rippeth vp *their idolatrous Rites, Idols, Processions, bearing Idols on mens shoulders, the people before and behind worshipping: their Priests collusions to make gaines of the Idoll-offerings, together with their Priests shaues heads and beards, their rent cloathes, their roaring before the Idoll: their Temples wherein they stood with scepters, axes, or other weapons in their hands, hauing candles lighted before them, with other such rites*; that, in the reading, one would thinke hee were telling the discourse of the mysteries of mysticall Babylon in the West; so euenly they accord. The Chaldæans *inuocate their Belus, to doe miracles also*, sayth hee, *inuocating a dumbe Idoll to giue speech vnto another, which himselfe wanteth.* But above all, one Beastly rite was in vse among them. *The women*, sayth hee, [i] *sit in the wayes girded with* [k] *cords of rushes, and burne straw: and if one of them be drawne away, and lie with any such as come by, shee casteth her neighbour in the teeth, because shee was not so worthily reputed, nor her cord broken.* Thus was their glorie their shame. [l] *Herodotus* will yeeld vs a Commentarie on this place. The Babylonians haue an abominable law (sayth he) that all their women once in their life doe sit at the Temple of *Venus* to haue familiaritie with strangers: the richer sort comming in chariots, richly furnished and attended to this vngodly purpose. Their manner of sitting is, crowned on their Temples with garlands, their retiring places distinguished with cords, by which the stranger may haue accesse to which of them hee liketh best. And thus doe these Votaries of *Venus* sit, holding it religion to bee irreligious, none of them euer returning home, till some guest haue cast money into her lap, whom it is not lawfull for her to refuse, but to accept of him and his price, whatsoeuer he be, and follow him aside from the Temple, where hee desileth her. At the giuing of the money hee vseth these words, *Tanti tibi deam Mylittam imploro*, that is, at this price, or for so much, I implore into thee the goddesse *Mylitta* (so the Assyrians call *Venus* [m]) and this money is consecrated to a sacred vse. After this, with the goddesse good leaue, shee may returne home, although for no great price againe (saith our Author) to be hired. By this meanes the fairest are quickly dispatched, the rest endure a restlesse and irksome penance, sometime a yeere, two, or three, before they can be discharged of their honestie and the law together, and hence might arise that former ambitious vpbraiding in *Baruch*.

[h] *Athen. lib.14. cap.17.*

[i] *Baruch.6.12.*

[k] *Hispissatos funiculis*, which may be interpreted, with cords about them: which better answereth to *Herodotus* his reports.

[l] *Herod. Clio. Strabo.lib.16.* mentioneth the same.

[m] The Arabians called her *Alytta*, the Persians *Mitra*. The Babylonians called her also *Alambus*. *Tyl. G. rald. hist. Deor. Synt. 13. Mollusin, Commentarius Veteris (an? Sec. ephis. ad Cas) hoc est, Venerius.*

Among their many Idols, [n] *Bel* bare the bell, not here alone, but in all the countries of Assyria, and adioyning thereto; as appeareth in the Historie of the Bible: where *Bel* or *Baal* is so often mentioned, as the Idoll of so many Nations and the sinne of the apostaticall Synagogue. *They* [o] *built vnto him high places:* or else in stead thereof vsed *the rooffes of their houses to his worship: they built him houses, they made him Images, erected Altars, planted Groues, bended to him the knee, and kissed him in token of humiliation, vsed perfume and incense, obserued to him holy dayes, cut and lanced themselues in his seruice*, with other extaticall furies, and religious frenzies, with ornaments of gold and iewels, inuocations and immolations, yea of their owne children; he had also his peculiar prophets and priests. These and such like doth the Scripture mention of this Babylonian Idoll, whose contagion infected the East with a Catholike Idolatrie that could plead *Antiquitie, Vniuersalitie*, and *Consent*, by euidence of Scripture-historie (which later Babylon cannot doe) and yet was but Catholike and generall errour.

[n] *Bel, Belus, Nebo, Moloc, Scichoth. Vbi sunt Iuno, Venus, Mercurius, Iouis. Ioseph. Iosue. Ieremias.*

[o] *Ieremias. 1.Reg.13. & 16. 2.Reg.23. & 10. Osee.2. Esay.40.*

[p] *Plin. l.6.c.26. Oth. Heurny Indicus. Acosta, Nat. Hist. lib.13.cap.23.*

[q] *Herodot. l.1.* telleth this of *Nitocris. Rod. Tolcanus* reporteth as strange a prodigie of *Rodericus*, a little before the Saracens inuaded Spaine, *lib.3.cap.17.*

[r] *Rib. in Hosea.*

[s] *In 1.c.on.32.*

Bel was, sayth *Plinie* [p], *Inuentor sideralis scientiæ*, the inuentor of Astrologie, which (*Heurnius* addeth) hee defiled with impure Magicke, as did his daughter *Semiramis*, who warred vpon *Zoroaster*, in enuie of his greater learning; *Bels* magicke appeared in his sepulchre, which *Xerxes* opening, found a vessell of glasse, and therein a carkasse swimming in oyle, which reached not to the brim by a hand-breadth. In a little pillar iust by was engrauen, that he should dearely repent it, which opening the sepulchre, did not fill vp the vessell: this *Xerxes* assayed to doe in vaine, and therefore departe a very heauie, finding in his Grecian Expedition the truth of *Bels* prophecie. The like is said to happen, when *Darius* in hope of treasure [q] opened the sepulchre of *Semiramis*, hee found a chist, which being opened, a venimous pestilence issued, that consumed the third part of men.

Ribera affirmeth, [r] that diuers later Authors, and before them [s] *Theodoret*, doe esteeme the

the name *Bel* or *Baal* to be a generall name, agreeing to all the gods of the Gentiles, according to the signification of the word, to wit, a Lord. [c] It was a name generall to their Idols, when it was put alone, but particular with some addition, as *Bel-zebub, Baal-zephon.* There were so many *Baals* in Syria, sayth [a] *Drusius*, as there were Regions, and almost as many as Cities. The Moabites had their *Chamos*; the Ammonites *Moloch*, the Sydonians *Astarte*, in Gaza *Marnan*, in Hamath *Asima*, &c. all called *Baal* in like sort as the Europæans varied the names of *Iupiter*: as *Iupiter Capitolinus, Iupiter Ammon, Stygius, Olympius*, and the rest, *many gods and many lords*, sayth Saint *Paul* x, yet in the Easterne Dialecticke we may reade many *Baalim*, and in the Westerne many *Ioues*, the Greeke Ζεὺς, Ζεὺς πατὴρ, Ζεὺ, and the Latine *Iouis* the ancient nominatiue, *Ioues pater, Ioupiter*, and by contraction *Iupiter*, (not as *Tully, Lactantius* and others, *quasi iuuans pater*) being all deriued, that we may note this by the way, of that ineffable name which wee pronounce *Iehoua*. And had they not intended the true God, when they vsed *Baal* or *Ioue* absolutely without addition, neither [y] had the Lord prohibited *thou shalt call mee no more Baals*, that is, *my Lord*; nor *Paul* applied that speech of *Aratus*, τοῦ γὰρ καὶ γένος ἐσμέν. Wee are his generation, hauing foure verses before begunne his booke with ἐκ Διὸς ἀρχώμεθα. vnto the true God. *Seruius* is [z] Author, that *Belus* the father of *Dido* descended of that ancient BELVS *the first King of the Assyrians, which people worshipped* Saturne and Iuno, *which were after worshipped in Africa, whereupon the Punicks called* GOD, Bal, *(from whence came those names* Hannibal, Adherbal, *and such like) whom the Assyrians in some respect call* Bel, and *Saturne*, and the Sunne. This opinion that in *Bel* they worshipped the Sunne, is followed by *Tremellius* and *Iunius* in their notes on *Esaias*, Chap. 46. 1. because the Assyrians, Persians, and Babylonians, accounted the Sunne the greatest God, and worshipped the Fire as a particle thereof: To him the Iewes, with this borrowed forreine Idolatrie, dedicated Horses and Chariots, which [a] *Iosias* abolished, together with the Altars on the roofe of *Ahas* his house, & the high places, where their god might see their deuotions. *Hierom*, on that place of *Esay* sayth, that *Bel* was *Saturn*, which *Suidas* confirmeth. *Augustine* [b] relateth the vsuall opinion (on those words, *Iud. 2. They serued* Baal *and* Astaroth) that *Baal* in those parts was the name of *Iupiter*, and *Astarte* of *Iuno*, and produceth the Punicke language, in which *Baalsamen* signifieth the Lord of Heauen; and for *Astaroth* (which he readeth *Astartibus*) he sayth it is in the plurall number, in regard of the multitude of *Iunoes* Images, each bearing the name of *Iuno*. This also is exemplified in the blessed Virgin by *Ribera*, sometime called our Ladie of Loretto, sometime our Ladie of Montesferato, &c. according to the diuersitie of places, wherein they worship, not *Marie* the Virgin, but their owne Idols; the daughters of their whorish mother Babylon. For the Tyrians, Sydonians, Philistims, and other Syrian, and Assyrian Nations, the Scripture brandeth them with this *Bel* or *Baal*-Idolatrie: in hatred of which name, the Iewes called the Prince of Deuils, as the Acaronites did their principall Idols, by the name of *Beelzebub*.

Thus the Greekes and Latines hath confounded the Assyrian and Tyrian *Bel*, which by *Iosephus* [c] *Scaliger*, (who not vnworthily is called [d] *the Dictator of knowledge, and great Prince of learnings state*) are distinguished and made two: the one (sayth he) is written בעל and the later בעל and reproued *Hieromo* for making *Belus*, the father of *Ninus*, and the Virgilian *Belus* to be one. But in his notes on the fragments of *Berosus* and other ancient Authors, he sayth, the Tyrians and Sydonians called him בעל which the Greekes made *Belus*: and so Mr *Selden* also is of opinion, that these names בל and בעל differ onely according to the proprietie of the language, and not indeed: for the Grammarians obserue, that the Chaldee words often lose that middle letter. *Elias* in his *Thesbi* obseruech, that *Baal* signifieth the act of generation, which may well agree with those beastly *Baal*-rites before mentioned. *Baal* is read in the feminine gender *Tob. 1. 5. Rom. 11. 4.* In *Photius* is [e] mentioned, that the Phœnicians and Syrians called *Saturne* HA, and BÀN, *EL*, and *Bel*, and *Bolathes*. *Lilius Giraldus* [f] out of *Seruius* affirmeth that HA, in the Assyrian language signifieth the Sunne, from whence the Greeke ἥλιος is deriued: some attribute this to the Phœnician tongue, in which *Hal* signifieth GOD. The Assyrians named *Saturne* and the Sunne, *Hel*. The Indians called that *Hercules*, which *Tully de Nat. Deor.* numbreth the first *Belus*. But we find no end of these Labyrinths.

D. *Willet* in his Comment vpon [g] *Daniel* hath these words: The Chaldeans had fiue Idols, three gods and two goddesses. Their first god was *Bel*, a name contracted of *Behal*, which commeth of *Bahal*, which signifieth a Lord: to whom was built that Temple before mentioned. The second was the Sunne, which they called *Rach*, that is, a King; because he is chiefe among the Planets: and the Persians call him *Mithra*, as *Iustinus Martyr* sayth, *Dialog. in Triphon.* The Priests of this Idoll were called *Raciophantæ, Obseruers of the Sunne.* Their third god was *Nogo*, the *Fire*; so called of the *brightnesse*: this was carried about among

[c] *Nic. Serar. in Iudic.*
[a] *Drus. Pro. pag. 125.*
x 1. Cor. 8. 5.
y Hos. 2. 16. Act. 17. 26.
z On those words of *Virg. Implauitq; mero pateram, quam Belus & omnes à Belo solati, &c. Æneid. 1.*
a 2. King. 23. 11.
b *Aug. tom. 4. quæst. lib. 7. 16. Elias Cretens. Com. in Nazian. Orat. in Iul. 3.* doth also take, *Bel* and *Baal* for the same. *Et Nicet. in Orat. 15.*
c *Scalig. Can. Isagog. lib. 3. pag. 314.*
d M. *Selden* Annot. on M. *Drayton. Polybib.*
e *Phot. Bibliothe. in Damascio. 242. Sechonia-tho* (as after followeth *cap. 17.*) make *Elius* the father of S.
f *Lil. G. G. hist. Deor.*
g *Cap. 2. 1. Eadem 1 in Dan. cf.*

among them: the Priests were called *Ortophanta*. Their first goddesse was *Shacha*, which was the *Earth*, worshipped also of the Romans, vnder the name of *Tellus* and *Opis*: of the Syrians called *Doretha*. In the honour of this goddesse, they vsed to keepe a feast fiue dayes together in Babylon; during which time, the Masters were vnder the dominion of their seruants: one of which was vsually set ouer the rest, and royally clothed, and was called *Sogan*, that is, great Prince (our Lords of Misrule seeme to deriue their pedigree from hence.) This festiuall time was called *Shache*, whereof Babylon was called *Shesshach*, of keeping this Feast, *Ierem.*25.27. and 51.41. Their other goddesse was called *Mulitta*, which was *Venus*, whose Priests were called *Natiis*, or *Natophanta*. But the chiefest of their Idols was *Bel*. Hee also interpreteth [h] those words, *Dan.*1.4. *whom they might teach the learning and tongue of the Chaldeans*, of Schooles wherein youth was brought vp in good letters, to bee after employed in the State. So among the Egyptians they had the like vse, where *Moses* was taught the *learning of the Egyptians*. Among the Israelites eight and fortie Cities were appointed for the Leuites, which were as the common Schooles and Vniuersities for the whole Kingdome; *Samuel* and *Elizeus* had their Schooles and Colledges of Prophets; yea, the rude Indians had their *Gymnosophistes*; and the Romans had their Colledges of *Augures*. This *Bel* or *Baal* Idolatrie passed out of Asia into Europe, euen as farre as these parts of Britaine. For the Celtæ and Britanni worshipped *Abellio*, *Belenus*, or *Belinus*, as appeareth by inscriptions in *Lipsius* and *Scaliger*; and our famous Antiquatie Mr *Camden* mentioneth an Altar in Cumberland, inscribed *Deo sanctio Belatucadro*. And on the Coynes of *Cunobelinus*, the Brittish King, was stamped *Apollo*, or *Belenus* (which in heathen mysteries are the same with the Sunne) playing on a Harpe: and the name *Cunobelinus* makes euidently to our purpose. *Heliogabalus* is another Syrian idolatrous title for the Sunne, as appeareth by an inscription *Sols Alagabalo*; for so also is that name written. Neither is *Gabalus* from any other deriuation, the name of the Romane Emperour, Priest of that god, whose name he vsurped, deriued from the Hebrew *Abgol-Baal*, that is, the *Round* or *Circular Lord*, either in respect of the Sunnes Circular bodie and iourney, or of that round stone which the Syrians conceited (as the Troians of their *Palladium*, and the Ephesians of their *Diana*, to haue diuinely descended.) Such stones (as Mr *Selden* in relation of those things obserueth) were the *Betelia*, or *Betuli*, of the Ancients dedicated to diuers deities, somewhat of fashion like fire, round and sharpe vpwards, the beginning of which *Betuli*, some deriue from *Iacobs* stone at Bethel.

h *Dueth.16.*

In the seuenteenth Chapter of the second Booke of *Kings*, is mentioned *Succoth Benoth* an Idoll of the Babylonians. *Beda* interpreteth it the Tabernacles of *Benoth*, and so the word *Succoth* vsed, *Amos* 5.25. is by Saint *Stephen. Act.*7.43. interpreted. And so doth the [i] Glosse on that part of the *Kings* interprete; where *Lyra*, [k] according to the signification of the words (a Tabernacle of wings) relateth out of *Rab. Sal.* that this Idoll was made like to a Hen brooding her chickens: which Idols the Babylonians framed in worship of that constellation, called by the vulgar, *the Hen and chickens*, and of the learned *Pleiades*; as others did to the Sunne, others to the Moone. Some [l] applie it to the mysterie of their Idoll, (which Christ the Trueth, truly sayth of himselfe) protecting his worshippers, as a Hen her chickens. My learned friend, Mr *Selden* hath gathered by the signification of *Succoth Benoth* (the Tabernacles of the daughters) that thereby is meant the Temple of *Venus*, *Mylitta* or *Vrania*, where the daughters of the Babylonians sate, as before is said, to performe their filthie deuotions; yea, by an easie deduction hee deriueth the name of *Venus* from this *Benoth*: B and u, easily exchanged, the moderne Iewes pronounce v like *o Venus*; *Suidas* also calls her *Binos*. And in Africa was a Citie called *Sicca Veneres*, a name transported by the Punikes from this *Sicceth*, or *Succoth Benoth*, where was a Temple of like nature, in which the women purchased their marriage-money by prostituting their bodies. It seemeth the Idolatrous Priests carried the Tabernacle of their Idoll on their shoulder, in apish imitation of the true Priests: and Leuites: for so *Amos* sayth, [m] *Yee carried Succoth, or Siccuth your King, Chiun your Images*, which *Drusius* [n] interpreteth *Moloch* and *Hercules*.

i *Ra.in Gloss. ordin.*
k *Lyra in 4.Reg. 17.*
l *Wolph. in 2. Reg.17. Selden in it. ad. de DIS Syris.*
m *Amos 5.26.*
n *Drusius Amos.*

In the fourteenth Chapter of *Daniel* (as the Latines read) is a large historie both of *Bel*, a dead statue, and of a liuing *Dragon* which the Babylonians worshipped. The Priests of *Bel* were seuentie, besides their wiues and children, whose fraud and coozenage *Daniel* detected, making it manifest by their foot-steps in the ashes, which hee had strewed in the Temple, that they were the deuourers of that huge portion of fortie sheepe, twelue measures of mesle, and sixe great pots of wine, daily consecrated for *Bels* breake-fast. He after slew the *Dragon* also; for which the Babylonians forced the King to lodge him sixe dayes among the Lions. But howsoeuer generally more authoritie is to bee ascribed to the Apocryphall bookes, then to any humane Historie, or other Ecclesiasticall Authors, as [o] *Zanchius*

o *Zanc. confes.*

chius religiously holdeth, yet for this fragment of *Daniel*, it is accounted [p] the worke of *Theodotion* a bad man, who foysted it into his translation. And not onely the Reformed Churches account it as it is, but *Diodo* a learned Papist, *Erasmus* a Semi-christian (so *Bellarmine* calleth him) *Iulius Africanus* of old, and the Iewes generally, reiect it out of the *Canon*, as the Cardinall himselfe [q] hath obserued: and he is same to tell vs of another *Daniel*, of the Tribe of *Leui*, to maintaine the credit hereof. But *Hierome* in the Preface of his Commentaries stileth them, *Belis Draconisque fabulas, quas vero antepositio, eoque iugulante subiecit, ne videretur apud imperitos magnam partem voluminum detruncasse*: and alleageth *Eusebius*, *Origen*, *Apollinarius*, and other Ecclesiasticall Doctors, which were of his mind, and thought they needed not to answere *Porphyrie*, who had hence raked some obiections against the Christians for these things which had not authority of Scripture.

p *Whittak. de Scrip. quest. 1. cap. 9.*

q *Bellar. de verbo Dei lib. 1. c. 9.*

As for *Pyramus* and *Thisbe*, with *Cyparissus* and such like, I leaue them [r] *Ouid* and the Poets. It seemeth worthy relation that fell out at Assus, a Babylonian Citie, where a Dolphin so loued a boy, that following too far after their wonted sportings, he stucke fast in the sands: [s] which *Alexander* interpreting to be omious, preferred the Boy to the Priesthood of *Neptune*

r *Metamorph. 4. & 10.*

s *Solinus, c. 18.*

For the present Saracenicall Religion, now obserued in these parts, our third booke shall largely relate thereof. Concerning other Babylonian customes: *Herodotus. l. 2.* telleth of three families in Babylon which liued on fish. It may bee the Carthusians of our Westerne Babylon are of their ofspring: for whose sparing, their fellowes may eate the more flesh, with which those of old, and these later, may not (forsooth) pollute themselues. [t] *Curtius* telleth generally, that for fleshly vices, the Babylonians were most corrupt. They prostituted their wiues and daughters to their guests for rewards. They were addicted to excessiue banquetting, and drunkennesse. In the beginning of their feasts, their women were modestly attired; by degrees they stripped themselues of their clothes, beginning with the vppermost, till nothing was left to couer their shame, or forbid their shamelessnesse. And not their Curtizans alone, but their Matrons, (yea, in token of ciuility) did thus prostitute themselues to those shames of lusts which haue come from hell, and carrie thither. Here was *Alexander*, manly and victorious armie made effeminate, vnfit after to haue encountred with a strong enemy. [u] Some ascribe the loose liues of the Babylonians, to a law of *Xerxes*, who to chastise them for a rebellion, enacted that they should no longer weare armes, but addict themselues to Musicke, riot, and such like.

t *Quint. Curt. lib. 5.*

u *Cœlius Rhod. lib. 8. cap. 11.*

CHAP. XIII.

The Chaldean, and Assyrian Chronicle, or Computation of Times, with their manifold alterations of Religions, and Gouernment in those parts, vntill our time.

WHe haue before [a] shewed the prodigious Chronologie of the Chaldæans, reckoning the raignes of their Kings before the floud, 432000. yeeres. They tell also after the floud of diuers Dynasties or gouernements in this Country of Babylon.

a *Cap. 10.*

First, [b] the [c] Chaldæans, *Euechhoos* raigned 6. yeeres, *Chomusbolos* 7. *Poros* 35. *Nechubes* 43. *Abios* 48. *Oniballos* 40. *Zinzäros* 45.

b *Scalig. Cæl. Ioseph. l. 2. & 3.*

c The Chaldean Dynastie

He being dispossessed by the Arabians, [d] *Mardocentes* began the second Arabian Dynastie, and raigned 45. yeares, and after him *Sisimardichos* 28. *Abias* 37. *Parannos* 40. *Nabonnabos* 25.——41. The space of these two Dynasties is reckoned foure hundred and fortie yeares. Thus *Scaliger* relateth: but in my mind, as the former was beyond all possibility of truth (which they tell of before the floud) so this hath no great likelyhood, at least for so long space before *Belus*, with whom the most histories beginne their relations, and *Scaliger* his [e] third Dynastie, of one and fortie Kings in this order.

d The Arabian Dynastie.

e The Assyrian Dynastie. *Moses, Gen. 14. 1.* speaketh of *Amraphel* King of Sinar, that is, of these parts of Babylonia, as his companions raigned not farre hence.

1	*Belus*,	55	8	*Armamithres*,	38	15	*Mamylus*,	30
2	*Ninus*,	52	9	*Beluchus*,	35	16	*Sparthæus*,	42
3	*Semiramis*,	42	10	*Balæus*,	52	17	*Aschatades*,	38
4	*Nynias Zames*,	38	11	*Sethus*,	32	18	*Amyntes*,	43
5	*Arius*,	30	12	*Mamythus*,	30	19	*Belochus*,	25
6	*Aralius*,	40	13	*Asebalios*,	28	20	*Balatores*,	30
7	*Xerxes*.	30	14	*Spherus*,	22	21	*Lamprides*,	30
						22	*Sosares*,	

22	*Sosares,*	20	29	*Arbelus,*	42	36	*Laosthenes,*	45	
23	*Lamprates,*	35	30	*Chalaos,*	45	37	*Pyritiades,*	30	
24	*Panyas.*	43	31	*Anabos,*	38	38	*Ophrateus,*	21	
25	*Sosarmos,*	37	32	*Babios,*	37	39	*Ephatheres,*	52	
26	*Mithræos,*	42	33	*Thinæos,*	30	40	*Acracarnes,*	42	
27	*Teutamos,*	27	34	*Dercylus,*	40	41	*Tonos Concoleros,* qui & *Sardanapalus.*	20	
28	*Teutaus*	44	35	*Eupacmes,*	38				

The summe of this Dynastie, 1484. yeeres. 10

f The Median Dynastie.

The fourth Dynastie was f of the Medes, begun by *Arbaces*, who depriued *Sardanapalus*; he raigned 28 yeeres, his sonne *Mandauces* 50. *Sosarmus* 30. *Artycas* 50. (In the 19. yeere of this King *Nabonassar*, the Babylonian rebelled, and began a new Dynastie in Babylonia. And in the 43. yeere of his raigne *Salmanassar* capiued the ten Tribes) *Arbianes* or *Cardiceas* 22. *Arsaos* or *Deioces* 40. *Artynes* called also *Phraortes* 22. *Aitibaras* or *Cyaxares* 40. *Apandas* alias *Astiages* 40. In all 322. yeeres.

g The Persian Dynastie.

The fifth g Dynastie was of the Persians, begun by *Cyrus*, which ouerthrew *Astyages*, and raigned 30. yeeres; His sonne *Cambyses* 8. the *Magi* 7. moneths, *Darius* sonne of *Hystaspes* 36. yeeres, *Xerxes* 20. *Artabanus* 7. moneths, *Artaxerxes Longimanus* 40. *Xerxes* 2. moneths, *Sogdianus* 7. moneths, *Darius Nothus* 19. yeeres, *Artaxerxes Mnemon* 40. yeeres, *Artaxerxes Ochus* 26. *Arses* 4. *Darius* 6. In all, 231. yeeres. 20

h The Macedonian Dynastie.

The sixth h Dynastie was of the Macedonians, the first of which was *Alexander*, who after the conquest of *Darius* raigned 6. yeeres, *Antigonus* 12. *Seleucus Nicator* 32. *Antigonus Soter* 19. *Antigonus Theos* 15. (In the 12. yeere of his raigne, *Arsaces* the Persian rebelled) *Seleucus Callinicus* 20. *Seleucus Ceraunus* 3. *Antiochus Magnus* 36. *Seleucus Philopater* 12. *Antiochus Epiphanes* 11. *Antiochus Eupator* 2. *Demetrius Soter* 12. *Alexander Bala* 10. *Demetrius Nicanor* 3. *Antiochus Sidetes* 9. *Demetrius D.F.4. Antiochus Gryps* 12. *Antiochus Cyzicenus* 18. *Philippus* 2. In all 237. And from the beginning of the first Dynastie 2633. These I haue heere inserted out of *Scaliger*, rather to shew the continued succession of the Easterne Empire, then with any intent to perswade, that all these were Kings, and ruled the Country of Babylonia. For after *Arsaces* rebelled, the Parthians dispossessed the Syrian Kings, of these parts; and before, the Babylonians often rebelled; as in the time of the Persians, when *Zopyrus* by a strange stratagem, recited by *Iustin* and others, restored them to *Darius*: but especially in the times of the Medes, whose Dynastie was much disquieted: sometime the Scythians (sayth i *Orosius*) and sometimes the Chaldæans, and sometimes the Medes preuayling. Sometimes also (as the Scripture witnesseth) the Assyrians renewed their ancient power. Yea in the time of the Assyrian Dynastie, the Chaldæans are said to warre (in the raigne of *Panyas*) against the Phœnicians, which argueth that they were then free. 30 40

i *Oros.l.2.c.19.*

The Scripture and other Histories speake of *Phul*, *Teglath-Phalasar*, *Iareb*, *Sargon*, *Salmanasar*, *Senacherib*, *Asar-haddon*: which were great and mighty, not onely strong enough to defend themselues against the Medes, but to inuade forren Nations, yea did transplant people from one Kingdome to another, and k seated the captiues of Israel in the Cities of the Medes, and sent Babylonian Colonies to Samaria; which they could not doe, if they had not commanded both Assyria, and Media, with Babylonia.

k 2. *Reg.* 17.24.

Nabonassar rebelled, as is said, against *Artycas*, and began the Chaldæan Dynastie, from whom, for this restitution of liberty, the Chaldæans began their Astronomicall computations: hee raigned 14. yeeres, *Nassyus* 2. *Chinzerus* and *Porus* 5. *Dituluus* 5. *Mardokempadus* 12. l He sent Ambassadors to *Hezekiah*. *Arkeanos* 5. *Interregnum* 12. *Belibus* 3. *Apronadicus* 6. *Herigebalus* 1. *Nesinoemondacus* 4. *Interregnum* 17. *Isenaedin* 13. *Saosduchinus* 9. *Kinilladacus* 14. *Nabopollasarus* 29. (In the seuenteenth yeere of his raigne, hee sent his sonne *Nabuchodonosor* in Syria with an Armie.) *Nabuchodonosor* 30. *Euilmerodach* 6. *Nerregasolorus* 5. *Nabonidus* 17. This was a Mede by linage (not as some m say King of the Medes,) sonne of *Xerxes* a Mede, but borne at Babylon, and by conspiracie raised to the kingdome: not inuading Babylon with *Cyrus*, but raigning in Babylon, till *Cyrus* deprived him. *Megasthenes* cals him a Mede, and the Scripture *Darius Medus*. *Cyrus* came against him in the nineteenth yeere of his raigne, and eleuen yeeres before the seuenty of the Captiuity were ended; in which space *Cyrus* had enough to doe to besiege and conquer Babylon, and Borsippa where *Darius* was. From the beginning of *Nabonassar* to the end of *Cyrus* are 217. yeeres. From thence to the Asiatike Empire of the Macedonians 201. From thence to the rebellion of *Arsaces* the Parthian, of whom the Parthian Kings were called *Arsacidæ*, 79. And the Dynastie of the Parthians 50 60

l Called *Merodach.*

m *Scal. note in Fragm. Bero.*

thians continued 479. yeers: the last of them *Artabanus* being slaine. These Kings & the times of their raignes, are not easie to set downe, and *Ouuphrius* is therefore reproued of *Scaliger*, for vndertaking this taske, in which authority fayleth him. Of them we shall speak in due place.

The [n] second Persian Dynastie continued till the Mahumetans deprived them. The first, *Artaxerxes* raigned 12. yeers, *Sapores* 31. *Ormisdas* 1. *Wararanes* 3. *Wararanus* 2.—17. *Wararanes* 3. foure moneths. *Narses* 7. *Ormisdes* 7. *Sabores* was borne King, and Raigned 70. yeeres, *Artaxerxes* 4. *Sabores* 5. *Wararanes* 4.—11. *Ixdegerdes* 21. *Wararanes* 5.—10. *Isdegerdes* 2.—17. *Perozes* 24. *Obalus* 4. *Cabades* 11. *Zamaspes* 4. *Cabades* againe—30. *Cosroes Magnus* 48. *Ormizda* 8. *Casroes* 39. *Syroes* 1. *Adeser* 7. Monethis, *Barasas* 6. Moneths, *Baram* 7. Monethr, *Ormizda Ixdegird* 3. In all 402.

n The second Persian Dynastie.

The Saracens succeeded, whose names and times you may see in our [o] Saracenicall relation. After the Saracens, raigned the Tartars; and since, sometime one family, sometime another, among the Persians, till *Solyman* dispossessed the Sophian of the Babylonian dominion; vnder which Turkish scrutitude it groneth till our dales.

o *Lib.3.cap.1.*

I dare not take vpon me to be vmpire and decider of those many alterations among Chronologers: but haue simply followed *Scaliger*, whose very name is able to shield me from contempt, if not to yeeld mee commendation. Let others that haue more lust and leasure transerse these matters at their pleasure: my intent is, most of all, the *Historie of Religions*; and the successions and alterations of States, I haue *lightly* touched: but precisely to determine in what yeere of the world euery King beganne his raigne, and to dispute the same with all opiponets, would bee some what tedious to the Reader: to me (perhaps in these varieties of opinions) impossible. Leauing therefore the more studious to the Chronologers, let vs take a little reuiew of some principall occurrents in the former Catalogue.

Africanus begins the Assyrian Monarchie at *Belus*, and not, as the most, with *Ninus*: That *Belus* some thinke to bee the same with *Nimrod*, whom *Ninus*, as wee said before, consecrated. *Semiramis* is [p] reported to bee the first that caused Eunuchs to bee made. *Ninias* which succeeded, left not like monuments of is great exploites, as his Predecessors before him. *Buntingus* thinkes him to bee that *Amraphel King of Shinar*, mentioned *Genes.* 14. and that *Arioch King of Elasser* was his sonne. However, it breedes much difficulty, to reconcile the ancient Historie of the Babylonian and Assyrian great and long continued Empire, with the Kingdomes and Kings in that Chapter by *Moses* mentioned. *Eupolemus*, as before is cited out of *Eusebius*, saith that those Kings were Armenians; *Diodorus Tarsensis*, as *Pererius* affirmeth, reckons them Persians; *Iosephus*, Assyrians. *Pererius* himselfe thinkes them vassals, and tributaries to the Assyrians: *Genebrard* suspects the Historie of the Assyrian greatnesse: and truely, not altogether vniustly: neyther doe wee reade in all the Historie of *Mose* and *Iosua*, of any Kings in those parts, for ought can be gathered, yeelding subiection to Babylon. And the Sodomite and his neighbours had beene the tributaries of *Chedarlaomer* King of Elam, and not of *Amraphel* King of Shinar; vnlesse we say, that violent things are not permanent, and the yoake imposed before by the Assyrians, was now in *Ninias* dayes relected: *Semiramis* being weakened with her Indian expedition; and *Ninias* by killing her, giuing occasion of dissentent to her followers, the men of warre, which might hereupon (contemning this effeminate King, who had suffered his mother to possesse the Scepter to long) fall to sharing for themselues, and erect petty Kingdomes. *Arius* (happily) restored the Empyre thus decayed, if it be true that *Buntingus* writeth, that he was a great Warriour, therefore called *Arius* and *Mars*, and, as the god of warre, inuocated by the Assyrians. When *Teutamos* raigned, [q] *Diodor.lib.3* testifieth that *Priamus*, then beseiged by *Agememnon*, as vassall and tributary to the Assyrians, sent to him for ayde, who sent to his succour *Memnon*, with twenty thousand souldiers.

p *Celius.R.lib. 17.cap.29.*

q *Diodor.Sic. lib.3.cap.7.*

But to descend vnto times neerer both vs and the truth, and to view the ruine of that great estate: we reade in the same Author, and in others, that *Arbaces* (whom *Iustin* calleth *Arbactus*; *Orosius Arbastus*) was by *Sardanapalus* made Captaine of the Armie, which was yeerely sent to Nina, or Niniue, where a conspiracy was contracted betweene him and *Belesus* a Chaldean Priest, Captaine of the Babylonians, who by his Chaldean skill in diuination, had foretold *Arbaces* this destined Empire, and was promised for his share the Babylonian principality. Thus the Medes, Babylonians, and Arabians, enterprising rebellion, assembled to the number of foure hundred thousand, whom *Sardanapalus* ouerthrew in battel twice; but being stil animated by [r] *Belesus* predictions, which (said he) the gods by the Stars fore-signified; and by corrupting of the Bactrian Armie, sent to succor the King & adioyning themselues to the enemy, they at the third battell ouerthrew the forces of *Sardanapalus*, led by *Salamenus* his wiues brother. The King fled into Niniue, trusting to a prophesie, That the Citie should neuer bee taken, till the Riuer were enemie to it. After two yeeres siege, by extreme raines, the Riuer swelling, ouerflowed part of the Citie, and cast downe twenty fur-

r *Iustin. Lib. 1. Oros. lib. 2. c. 2.*

[s] Some thinke this *Belesus* to be *Daniel*, whom the Babylonian King called *Belthazzar*, *broughtous* Concerning

longs of the walls. Whereupon despayring, (as seeming to see GOD and man against him) he which before had chambered himselfe with women, and accustomed himselfe to the distaffe, in a womans both heart and habite; now in a manly resolution (if it may not more fitly be called a Feminine Dissolution, which thus runneth from that danger which it should encounter) gathered his treasures together, and erecting a frame in his Palace, there burnt them, himselfe, his wiues and Eunuches together. The Ashes, vnder pretence of a Vow thereof made to *Belus*, *Belesis* obtained of *Arbaces* the new Conquerour and Monarch, to carry to Babylon. But the coozenage being knowne, and *Belesis* condemned for the treasures, which with the ashes hee had conueyed, *Arbaces* both gaue them, and forgaue him; adding the præfecture of the Babylonians, according to promise. [c] Some say that *Belesis*, whom they call *Phul Beloch*, shared the Empire with him, *Arbaces* raigning ouer the Medes and Persians, the other ouer Ninive, and Babylonia: following hetein the forged *Metasthenes*, who (as *Annius* maketh him to say) out of the Susian Librarie penned his Historie, hauing before fabled a Catalogue out of *Berosus* of the ancient Kings, contrary to that which out of the fragments of the true *Berosus* before is deliuered.

c *Phrygio. Cariou. lib. 2.*

[d] *Sardanapalus* is written (saith [e] *Scaliger* in his Notes vpon *Eusebius*) with a double *ll*. *Sardanapalus*, a name fitting to his effeminate life. πολλὸς and φαλλὸς signifie the same, whence are those words of *Cicero* 3. *De Repub. Sardanapalus ille vltiis multo quam nomine ipso deformior. Sardanapalus* built Tarsus and Anchiale (saith *Eusebius*) at the same time: the one famous for the most famous Diuine that euer the Sunne saw (except the Sunne of Righteousnesse himselfe) PAVL the Apostle and Doctor of the Gentiles: The other for the Authors Monument and stony Image, [e] with this Assyrian Epigramme; *Sardanapalus, the sonne of Anaxyndaraxis, built Anchiale and Tarsus in one day; and thou O stranger, eate, drinke, play.* And Verses were annexed, which I haue thus Englished.

d *Euseb. Chron. per Scalig.*

e *Strabo. lib. 14*

Mortall, thou knowst thy selfe: then please thine appetite
With present dainties: Death can yeeld thee no delight.
Loe, I am now but dust: whilome a Prince of might.
What I did eate I haue; and what my greedy mind
Consum'd: how much (alas) how sweet, left I behind?
Learne this (O man) thus liue, best wisdome thou canst find.

This his Legacie hee hath bequeathed to all Epicures, the liuing Sepulchres of themselues breathing graues (not of so many Creatures onely, better than themselues, which they deuout, but) of Reason, Nature, Religion, Soule, and (if it were possible) of GOD, which all lie buried in these swine couered with the skins of Men. [f] *Let vs eate and drinke, for to morrow we shall die.* Who knoweth whether *Paul* did not allude to this speech of the Founder of his Citie? This subuersion of the Assyrian Empire was *Anno Mundi* 3145. after *Buntingus* account. Of the Medes, see more in their proper place.

f 1. Cor. 15. 32.

The Babylonian Empire renewed by *Nabonassar*, continued till *Cyrus*, of which times we haue little record but in the Scripture, as neyther of those Assyrian Kings, which before had captiued Israel, and inuaded Iuda. *Senacherib* is famous, euen in the Ethnike history, although they had not the full truth. For thus *Herodotus* [g] telleth, that *Senacherib* King of the Arabians & Assyrians warred on Egypt, where *Sethon* (before *Vulcans* Priest) then raigned: who being forsaken of his Souldiers, betooke him to his deuotion, amiddest the which hee fell asleepe. And the god appearing, promised ayde, which hee performed, sending an Armie of Mice, into the Armie of *Senacherib*, which did eate his Souldiers quiuers, and the leathers of their shields, and armour, insomuch, that the very next day they all fled. In witnesse whereof, the Image of the King, made of stone, standeth in the Temple of *Vulcan*, holding a Mouse in his hand, vttering these words, *Hee that looketh on mee, let him bee Religious.* This Historie the Ægyptians, in vanity and ambition, had thus peruerted and arrogated to themselues.

g *Herod. lib. 2.*

Funccius of *Osiander* made *Nebopollasar* and *Nabuchodonosor* to bee one and the same, and diues Commenters vpon *Daniel* hold the same opinion, whom *Scaliger* and *Calisius* confute at large. *Nabopollasar* is supposed to begin his raigne *Anno Mundi* 3325. which hee continued nine and twentie yeeres: in his [a] seuenteenth yeere *Nebuchadnezzer* (so the Masotites misse-call him, saith *Scaliger*) ot *Nabuchodonosor* his sonne was sent by him, to subdue the rebellious Ægyptians, Iewes, and Palestinians: at which time he carried away *Daniel* into captiuitie. [b] He beganne his raigne *Anno Mundi* 3354. and in the yeere 3360. destroyed Ierusalem. In the yeere 3386. *Euilmerodach* his sonne succeeded him, whom *Nerigliscorros* (as *Scaliger* [c] affirmeth) slew, thereby to aduance his owne sonne the Nephew of *Nabuchodonosor*, called *Laborosoarchadus*, to the Scepter; which himselfe swaied as Protector in the minoritie of his sonne. But he being dead, and his sonne more fit for a chamber then a

a *Scaliger. l. 3.*

b *Berosus apud Iosephum contra App. lib. 1. Calisius.*

c *Animaduers. in Eusebium, pag. 85.*

Throne,

Throne, *Nabonidus* conspired against him, and slew him. This *Nabonidus*, sayth he, is *Darius Medus*, and *Laborosoarchadus* is that *Baltasar* mentioned by *Daniel*, after *Scaligers* interpretation of the Prophet out of *Berosus* and *Megasthenes*.

It is a world to see how the Catholickes (so they call themselves) sweat in finding out that *Nabuchodonosor* mentioned in *Judith* 1. *Pintus* would make it a common name to the Babylonian Kings, as *Pharao* to the Egyptians: *Pererius* will haue two of the name; others will haue him to be *Cyrus*; others, *Cambyses*, *Artaxerxes*, *Ochus*; Once, *Babel* is a Mother of confusion to her children, and makes them *babble*, while they will Canonize Apocrypha-Scriptures.

D. *Willet* holdeth otherwise. *Com. in Dan.6.*

10 *Cyrus* ended the Babylonian Monarchie, and hauing wonne Babylon, and taken *Darius Medus* at Borsippa, he gaue him his life, and the gouernment of Carmania. *An. Mund.* 3409. As *Nabuchodonosor* had by Edict proclaimed the GOD of *Daniel*, so *Cyrus* ended the captiuitie of his people; giuing libertie to such as would, to returne. But many Iewes abode there still, and thence sent their yeerely offerings to the Temple. In the time of *Artabanus* the Parthian (when *Caligula* tyrannized at Rome) [d] *Asimeus* and *Anileus*, brethren of the Iewish Nation, grew mightie, and haughtie withall, forgetting GOD and themselues, which caused the Babylonians to conspire against them, and (after the death of the brethren, with thousands of their partakers) and slew in Seleucia fiftie thousand of the Iewish Nation. Neerda and Nibisis were then much peopled by the Iewes. And thus Religion

d *Iosephi Antiq. l.18.c.12.*

20 partly held the ancient course, partly was mixed (according to the custome of Conquests) with the Persian, Macedonian, Parthian, besides the Iewish and Syrian, vntill the Apostles preached here the Christian veritie. About the same time, *Helena* and her sonne *Izates* King of Adiabena (which is in these parts of Assyria) became Iewish Proselytes.

Seleucia [e] built by *Seleucus* (as it were the marriage-Chamber of Euphrates and Tygris, which there meete and mixe their waters; Nature being by mans industrie forced to yeeld to the match as *Plinie* sayth, for that purpose) emptied Babylon of her Inhabitants, and inherited her name also, with her people. It was from Babylon ninetie miles, or, as some reade it, fortie, inhabited with sixe hundred thousand Citizens. To spoile the spoiler, the Parthians built Ctesiphon three miles from thence, and failing of their purpose, *Vologesus*

e Seleucia was built by *Seleucus Nicator* on a channel, digged out of Euphrates into Tygris. *Plin.l.6. cap.26.*

30 built another Towne by, called Vologesocerta. Yet did Babylon it self remaine (but not it self) in the time of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, and after.

Ortelius thinketh that Bagdat was called Babylon (as Seleucia before had beene) because it stood neere to the place where Babylon had stood. For that old Babylon in [f] *Pausanias* time, had nothing left standing but the Temple of *Bel*, and the walls; sometimes, sayth he, the greatest Citie that euer the Sunne saw.

f *Pausanias Arcad.lib.8.*

In *Ieromes* time, [g] within those walls were kept beasts for the Kings game. It was after inhabited with many thousands of Iewes, and was laid euen with the ground, as *Ios. Scaliger* [h] affirmeth in the yeere, after the Iewish account 4797. and after the Christian, 1037. Master *Fox* hath a little [i] lengthned the date and fate thereof, shewing that *Almaricus* King

g *Hieron. in Esai.13.*

h *Scal. animaduers. in Euseb. pag.126.*

40 of Ierusalem rased and ruined it, and that it was neuer after inhabited *Ann.*1170. But in *Beniamin Tudelensis* his dayes, which seemeth to be somewhat before *Almaricus*, this Citie was vtterly subuerted, as in his Itinerarie is related, in these words: One dayes iourney from Gehiagan anciently called Resen, is old Babel, containing thritie miles space, now vtterly ruined, in which the ruines of *Nabuchodonosors* palace are yet seene, not accessible for diuers hurtfull kinds of Serpents and Dragons there breeding. There now [k] remaineth nothing but the small part of that great Tower, either of ornament, or of greatnesse, or of place inhabited.

i *Abl. & Mon. ex M.S. Carrico. pag.211.*

k Sic *A.Sh.Ty.*

Before that time was Bagdet built by *Bugiafar*, as [l] *Barrius* calleth him, or after [m] *Scaliger*, *Abugephar Elmanzur*, who beganne to reigne in the one hundred thirtie and sixe,

l *I.de Bar. Asdic.1.lib.1.*

50 and died in the one hundred fiftie and eight yeere of their *Aegeira*. *Scaliger* and [n] *Lydyate* agree of this place (which in their Emendations of Time disagree so eagerly) that it was Seleucia, or built in the place, and of the ruines thereof: an opinion not so improbable, as theirs altogether which thinke the present Bagdeto to be the old Babylon. The storie of this Bagdeto or Baldach, and her Chalifs, ye may reade in [o] our Saracenicall Historie. Authors [p] agree, that *Haalon* the Tartar sacked it, about the yeere one thousand two hundred and threescore, *Musstazem* being then Chalipha, the foure and fiftieth, and last of those Saracenicall Popes. Hee found a miserable death, where others with miserablenesse seeke a blessed life, being shut vp and starued amidst those Treasures, whereof he had store, which niggardise forbade him to disburse in his owne defence.

m *Scaliger. Scal.con. Isag. lib.2.& 3.*

n *Lydyat Emm. Tem. vid. Ott. Frisc. chron.1.7. cap.3.*

o *Lib.3.cap.20.*

p *Lopez Rod. lib.8. Knolls T.H. pag. 113. M. Polo Ven. Haiton Armen.*

60 There is yet a bone left of this *Caliphas* carkasse, or some ghost and shadow of that great and mightie bodie, I meane that ancient name and power of the *Caliphas*, which magnifiest *Solyman* the Turkish Emperour, in his conquest 1534. would seeme to ac-

knowledge, in accepting the royall ensignes of that new conquered state at the hands of their *Caliphs*: a ceremonie which the Soldans in Egypt and Persia vsed, more for forme then necessitie; this Assyrian and that Egyptian *Caliph* hauing but gesture and vesture, the Soldans themselues enioying both bodie and soule of this authoritie.

In the yeere one thousand one hundred fiftie nine, the Riuer Tygris ouer-flowed Bagded, and desolated many Cities. *Barrius* [q] affirmeth out of the Arabian and Persian Tarigh, which he saith he had seene, that Bagded was built by the counsell of an Astrologer, a Gentile named *Nobach*, and hath for ascendent *Sagittarius*; was finished in foure yeeres, and cost eighteene millions of gold. These studies of Astrologie did there flourish. One *Richardus* [r] a Frier Preacher sayth, That here was a Vniuersitie, the Students whereof were maintained at publique charge, of which number himselfe was one. That *Caliph* that founded it, for the preuenting of sects, banished Philosophie out of these Schooles, and accounted him a bad Saracen which was a good Philosopher. The reason whereof grew from some, which, in reading *Aristotle* and *Plato*, relinquished *Mahomet*.

Marco Polo [s] or *Paulus* the Venetian saith, that they studied here in his time, the Law of *Mahomet*, Necromancie, Geomancie, Phisiognomie, Physicke, and Astronomie: And that it was then a great Staple of the Indian Commodities. This was within few yeeres after the Tartar had wonne it. He addeth, that there were many Christians in these parts; and that in the yeere one thousand two hundred twentie and fiue, in derision of the Gospell, the *Caliph* commanding by a day that the Christians should *remoue a mountaine* in testimonie of their faith, according to the words of Christ, or else to abide the perill: this was effected by a Shoomaker, and the day in remembrance thereof yeerely solemnized with fasting the Euen.

The Iewes goe still to visite the Denne which is there shewed, as the place of *Daniels* imprisonment, with his terrible Gaolers, or fellow-prisoners, as Master *Allen* told me.

A certaine Merchant (the Discourse of whose voyage [t] *Ramusius* hath published) speaketh of [u] Orpha, a towne in the way from Byr to Babylon, wherein the people foolishly suppose, that *Abraham* offered *Isaac*: at which time (say they) there sprang a fountaine which watereth their Countrey, and driueth their Mils. Here was a Christian Temple called Saint *Abrahams*, after turned into a Mahumetane *Moschee*, and now called *Abrahams* Well, into which if any enter so many times (they haue a set number) with deuotion, hee is freed of any feuer: The fishes which are many, haue taken Sanctuarie in these waters, and none dare take them, but hold them holy. Sixe miles from hence is a Well holden in like sacred account, which cureth Leprosies. Nisibis, Carræ, and [x] Edessa, were chiefe Cities of Mesopotamia: at Edessa reigned *Abagarus*, betwixt whom and our Sauiour passed (if we may beleeue it) those Epistles yet extant.

At Carthæ [y] there was a Temple of the Moone, in which, they which sacrificed to the goddesse *Luna*, were subiect to the gouernment of their wiues; they which sacrificed to the god *Lunus*, were accounted their wiues Masters. As for this difference of sexe, ancient Idolatrie scarce obserued it. For wee reade of the god *Venus*, which the Cyprians (sayth *Macrobius*) accounted both male and female: and so doth *Trismegistus* mystically say of God himselfe. So is *Baal* in the Scripture sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine. Hee sayth, that the Babylonians allowed marriages of parents and children. [z] Case is two dayes iourney from Bagdet, [a] religious for the burial of *Hali* and his sonnes, *Hassan* and *Ossein*: whereunto is resort of Pilgrims from Persia, whose Kings were wont here to bee crowned. But this Citie *Curio* [b] calleth Cusa, assigneth it to Arabia, and sayth that of this accident it was called Massadale, or the house of *Ali*, slaine here by *Muaui* his Competitor.

Mesopotamia is now called Diarbech. The [c] chiefe Cities in it are Orsa, of seuen miles compasse, famous, say some, for the death of *Crassus*. Caramit [d] the mother Citie of the Countrey, of twelue miles compasse. Mosul and Merdin, of which in the next Chapter. Betweene Orpha and Caramit, was the Paradise of *Aladeules*, where hee had a fortresse destroyed by *Selim*. This [e] his Paradise was like to that which you shall finde in our Persian [f] Historie. Men by a potion brought into a sleepe, were brought into this supposed Paradise, where at their waking they were presented with all sensuall pleasures of musicke, damosels, dainties, &c. which (hauing had some taste of another sleepie drinke) after came againe to themselues. And then did *Aladeules* tell them, That he could bring whom hee pleased to Paradise, the place where they had beene: and if they would commit such murders, or haughtie attempts, it should bee theirs. A dangerous deuice. *Zelim* the Turke destroyed the place.

q *Decad. As. l. 1.*

r *Rich. contra. Alcoran. cap. 13.*

s *M. Pa. lib. 1. cap. 7.*

t *Cap. 8.*

u This may be Vr of the Chaldees, whence *Abraham* passed first to Canaan.

x *Volater. l. 11.*

y *Sport' ab. in Cæsaud. Ant. ab Alexand. gen. diet. lib. 4. cap. 9.*

z *Lib. 2. cap. 24.*

a *Carswright.*

b *Curio Sar. hist. lib. 8.*

c *Magimus.*

d *Assius Latio maculuisi sanguine Carras,* sayth *Lucan.*

e *Carswright.*

f *Inf. l. 4. c. 8. & c. 2. c. 10.*

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Ninive and other neighbouring Nations.

WE haue hitherto spoken of Babylonia, but so, as in regard of the Empire, and some other occurrents, necessitie now and then compelled vs to make excutsions into some other parts of Assyria, Mesopotamia, &c. And I know not how, this Babylon causeth confusion in that Sea of affaires, and in regard of the diuision of the pennes (as sometimes of tongues) of such as haue written thereof. Hard it is to distinguish betweene the Assyrian and Babylonian Empire, one while vnited, another while diuided, as each partie could most preuaile: and no lesse hard to reconcile the Ethnike and Diuine Historie touching the same. *Ptolemey* [a] straineth Assyria on the North, with part of Armenia neere the hill Niphates; on the West with Mesopotamia; on the South with Susiana, and Media on the East. But her large Empire hath enlarged the name of Syria, and of Assyria (which names the Greekes did not well distinguish) to many Countries in that part of Asia. The Scripture deriueth Syria from *Aram*, and Assyria from *Ashur*. Both were in their times flourishing, and mention is made from *Abrahams* time, both of the warres and kingdomes in those parts: yea before, from *Ashur* and *Nimrod*, as alreadie is shewed.

a Lib. 6. cap. 1.

Mesopotamia is so called, and in the Scripture *Aram* or *Syria of the waters*, because it is situate betweene Euphrates and Tygris: the countries Babylonia, and Armenia, confining the same on the North and South. Whereas therefore wee haue in our former Babylonian relation discourſed of Assyria, extending the name after a larger reckoning: here wee consider it more properly. Euphrates is a Riuer very swift; for they which goe to Bagdet, buy their boats at Birra, which serue them but one voyage, and sell them at Felugia for seuen or eight which cost fiftie, because they cannot returne. But Tygris is swifter; the Armenians bring victuals downe the same to Bagdet, on rafts made of Goats skinnes, blowne full of wind, and boords laid vpon them, on which they lade their goods; which being discharged, they open the skinnes and carrie them backe on Camels: *Dionysius* and *Strabo* tell of this Riuer, that it passeth through the Lake Thonitis without mixture of waters by reason of this swiftnesse, which also giueth it the name; for the Medes call an Arrow Tygris. *Lucan* sayth it passeth a great way vnder ground, and weatie of that burthensome iourney, riseth againe as out of a new fountaine.

Raph. Fitch. Hak. to. 2.

Strab. lib. 11. Dionys. Afer. Carm. Geog. Lucan. l. 3.

At Tygrim subito tellus absorbet hiatu
Occultesq; tegit cursus, rursusq; renatum
Fonte nouo flumen pelagi non abnegat vndas.

The chiefe Citie in these parts was Niniue, called in *Ionas*, [b] *A great and excellent Citie of three dayes iourney*. It had (I borrow the words of our reuerend Diocesan) an [c] ancient testimonie long before in the Booke of [d] *Genesis*. For thus *Moses* writeth, That *Ashur came from the land of Shinar, and built Niniueh and Rehoboth, and Calah, and Resin. At length he singleth out Niniue from the rest, and setteth a special marke of preeminence vpon it, This is a great Citie: which honour, by the iudgement of the most learned (though standing in the last place) belongeth to the first of the foure Cities, namely, to Niniue. Others* [e] *imagined (but their coniecture is without ground) that the foure Cities were closed vp within the same walls, and made but one, of an vsuall bignesse.*

b Ion. 3. 3.
c D. King on Ionas Lect. 2.
d Gen. 10. 11.
e Annius vpon Beros.

Some ascribe the building of Niniue to Ninus *the sonne of* Belus: *of whom it tooke the name, to be called either Ninus, as wee reade in* Plinie; *or after the manner of the Hebrewes, Ninue. They conceiue it thus, That when* Nimrod *had built Babylon,* Ninus *disdaining his gouernment, went into the fields of* Ashur, *and there erected a Citie after his owne name, betweene the riuers Lycus and Tygris. Others suppose that the affinitie betwixt these names. Ninus and Niniueh deceiued profane Writers touching the Author thereof, and that it tooke to name Niniueh, because it was beautifull or pleasant. Others hold opinion that* Ashur *and* Ninus *are but one and the same person. And lastly, to conclude, the iudgement of some learned, is, that neither* Ashur *nor* Ninus; *but* Nimrod *himselfe was the founder of it. But by the confession of all, both sacred and Gentile Histories, the Citie was very spacious, hauing foure hundred and fourescore furlongs in circuit, when Babylon had sewer almost (as some report) by an hundred: and as afterwards it grew in wealth and magnificence, so* (they write) *it was much more enlarged.* Raphael Volaterranus affirmeth, *That it was eight yeeres in building, and not by fewer at once then tenne thousand workemen. There was no Citie since, by the estimation of* Diodorus Siculus, *that had*

Volaterran. Plin. 6. Nat. hist. 13.

Ar. Mont. Iunius & Tremel.

Diod. Sic. Strabo.

had like compasse of ground or stateliness of walls; the height whereof was not lesse then an hundred foot; the breadth sufficiently capable to haue receiued three Carts on a row: and they were fortified and adorned besides with fifteene hundred Turrets. Thus farre our reuerend and learned Bishop.

Paulus de Palatio vpon Iunia.

Diodorus f telleth out of *Ctesias*, that *Ninus*, after he had subdued the Egyptians, Phœnicians, Syrians, Cilicians, Phrygians, and others, as farre as Tanais, and the Hyrcanians, Parthians, Persians, and other their neighbours, he built this Citie. After that, hee led an armie against the Bactrians of seuenteene hundred thousand footmen, and two hundred thousand horse; in which Expedition he tooke *Semiramis* from her husband *Menon*, who therefore (impatient of loue and griefe) hanged himselfe. Hee had by her a sonne of his owne name, and then died, leaving the Empire to his wife. His Sepulchre was nine *furlongs* in height (each of which is fixe hundred feete) and ten in breadth. The credite of this Historie I leaue to the Author, scarce seeming to agree with *Moses* narration of the building of Niniue, any more then *Semiramis* building of Babylon. Some write, That g *Semiramis* abusing her husbands loue, obtained of him the swaying of the Empire for the space of fiue dayes; in which shee depriued him of his life, and succeeded in his estate.

f Diod. Sic. l. 3. c. 1.

g Abydenus apud Euseb. l. 9. c. 1.

But left the name of this Citie call vs backe againe too much to those Assyrian Relations, before dilated, as much as concerneth our purpose; let vs see what can be said of their Religion here. Of this wee find little, but as before is shewed of the Babylonians.

Nisroch was the Idoll, in whose Temple *Senacherib* was slaine by his owne sonnes. But what this *Nisroch* was, I cannot find. Certaine it is, that hee which had vpbraided confidence in the true GOD, finds his Idoll, euen in the place and time of his worship, his Traytor; and he which had blasphemed the GOD of heauen, finds Heauen and Earth, and his owne Bowels, against him. *Venus Urania* h is reckoned among the Assyrian deuotions, and *Adad* was their chiefe god, which they interpret One, (and *Macrobius*, the Sunne, which, as before is said, they worshipped, and may well agree with that Latine Etymologie, *Sol quasi solus*) and *Atargatis*, the Earth. *Belus* also was here worshipped, as witnesse *Dion*, *Eusebius*, and *Cyrillus*. *Lucian* i sayth, That the Assyrians sacrificed to a Doue; the touching of which Fowle requited much ceremonie for expiation: Whereto accordeth the fable, that *Semiramis* k was turned into a Doue.

h Wolph. in 2. Kings. 19.

i Luc. in Iove Tragedo.

k Metam. 4.

l Saturnal. l. 1. c. 23.

m apud Macrob. Ada, Dominus Hada אדא id est vnus, Chaldeuus & Syrus est. Drusius in Luc. 18. fortasse (ait Seldenus meus) deducium ab אחד hoc. Iuid id eam vsitatius suis inscriptum gerebant: Illud Deut. 6. Dominus vnus, &c. sic Archaeus in Caldaeo. Apollo vocatur Sol, quia sine multitudine & Sol quia solus: est caelestis ignis, at Plato, animae decoquentis quae ad magni diuinitis cibum pertinent.

Concerning *Adad* and *Atargatis*, *Macrobius* l sayth, That the Assyrians ascribe all power to these two. The Image of m *Adad* shined with rayes or beames downwards, designing the Sunnes force: That of *Atargatis*, with beames vpwards, as it were ascribing to the heauenly influence all her plentie: vnder the same Image were the shapes of Lions, as also the Phrygians fained the Mother of the gods, that is, *the Earth*, to be borne on Lions. But of this *Atargatis* more in the next Chapter.

Ionas was sent to preach to the great Citie of Niniue, as some n thinke, in the dayes of *Sardanapalus* his next Predecessor. *Broughton* (with some other) thinketh in the dayes of *Pul*, or *Phul-assur*. Their repentance staid that iudgement. *Nahum* after denounced the like iudgement, which accordingly came to passe. *Phraortes* King of the Medes (mentioned in the former chapter) besieged it. His sonne *Cyaxares* succeeded in the kingdome, and in this siege. After that, the Scythians inuaded Media, and held it eight and twentie yeeres, according to the Prophecie of *Ieremie* 49. 34. and in the same Expedition obtained Niniue. But *Cyaxares* after preuailed against the Scythians, and *Astyages* his Sonne ouer-turned and destroyed Niniue, that it should no more bee a receptacle or encouragement to the Assyrians, to rebell against the Medes. *Nahum* threatned o *opening of the gates of the River, and destruction to the Temple*, as *Tremellius* readeth it, noting thereon the casting downe of the Ports on Tygris, and amongst them the Temple of *Belus* there erected; out of whose notes on the first Chapter of *Nahum*, I inserted the former Relation. *Herodotus* in the Historie hereof sayth, That *Phraortes* there perished in the siege, with most part of his armie. *Cyaxares*, to reuenge his Fathers death, renewed the siege, but was not able to hold his owne against the Scythians, vntill, after eight and twentie yeeres, that the Scythians had enioyed the Empire of Asia (vnder pretence of feasting being entertained in a banquet) the most of them, in their drunkennesse, were slaine by the Medes: and so the Scythians losing what before they had gotten, *Cyaxares* recouered the Empire, and destroyed Niniue. Thus was that Citie p destroyed, whose Riches, Beautie, Antiquitie, Largenesse, and Pusiance, the Scripture so often mentioneth.

n Gramay. Ad. Sigon. in Solin. o Nah. 2. 6.

p Dorotheus in his Synopsis, affirmeth, that by an Earthquake the lake which compassed the Citie drowned it, and a fire consumed the vpper part thereof.

A man may compare Ecbatana of the Medes, Babylon on Euphrates, and Niniue on Tygris, to the *Triumviri* at Rome: So did they both emulate and share the Easterne Empire, as each could make her selfe strongest; now Babylon, another while Niniue, and sometime Ecbatana preuailing; which is the cause of no small difficultie in these Histories. Mr *Cartwright*, an eye-witnesse, hath beheld (he sayth) the ruines of this Citie, and agreeth with

Diodorus

Diodorus in the equaltie of the sides: two of which contained an hundred and fitie furlongs, the two other but fourescore and ten on a side.

Mosul is supposed to be Ninive, haply for the neerenesse, or for that (as a posthume issue) it hath sprung from the former. The ashes yet haue not yeelded such a Phœnix as the former was, rather a witnesse of the others mightinesse, saith Sr. *Anthony Sherley*, and GODS iudgement, then of any magnificence in it selfe. ¶ Mosul is in fame for Cloth of Gold, and Silke, for fertilitie, and for the Patriarchall Sea of the Nestorian Christians, whose authoritie stretched to Cathay and India. Merdin, a towne on the same Riuer, is also a Patriarchall Sea of the Chaldees (or Mahumetane Sect.) In *Paulus Venetus* his daies [r] they were in the Prouince of Mosul, partly Mahumetans, partly Christians: and in the Mountaines dwelt the Curdi, that were Participles or Mungrels in Religion, professing partly Christ, partly *Mahumet*, in practice robbers and wicked. The Christian Patriarch hath Archbishops and Bishops vnder him, as the Romane Pope. The Mahumetans are called Arattie.

Of Mosull and the Nestorians here, see *Onuphrius* in vita *Iul.* 3. [q] *G.Bo.Bem. part.* 1. *l.*2.

[r] *M.Paul.l.*1. *cap.*6.

Assyria (saith [s] *Magninus*) is now called by *Niger*, Adrinsa; by *Giraua*, Azemia; by *Pinetus*, Mosul; by *Mercator*, Sarh; and of *Castaldus*, Atzerum. It sometime contained the Prouinces Arapachite, Adiabena, and Sittacene, now called (after some) Botan, Sarca and Rabia.

[s] *Magin.Geog.*

Boemus [t] telleth of a strange fashion, anciently vsed in Assyria; That the maids which were marriageable, were yeerely brought foorth in publike, and set to sale to such as would marrie them. The monie which was giuen for the fairest, was giuen to the mote deformed for their pottion in matriage.

[t] *I. Boem.l.*1.

The Assyrian vsed to wash themselues daily, but chiefly after carnall companie.

As for the Saracenical Religion, we shall more fitly handle the same by it selfe, then tediously repeat the same things. For this therefore, and other Countries subiect to Turkish or Persian seruitude, the Reader may reade of their superstitions in their due place, when we speake of the Sataceus, Turkes, and Persians. The relation of their Christian Rites belong to another Tome.

But let vs come out of Assyria into Syria; the Histories of which are not a little, as is said, confounded together, and many Rites were common to them both, and to all these parts, from the Persian gulfe to Asia the lesse, as being so often subiect to one Empire or rather still parts of that one Empire, which receiued often alterations vnder the Assyrians, Babylonians, Medes, Persians, Macedonians, Scythians, Parthians, &c.

CHAP. XV.

Of Syria, and the ancient Religions *there: Of the* Syrian Goddesse, *and her Rites at Hierapolis: Of the Daphnean, and other Syrian Superstitions.*

SYRIA is called in Scripture, Aram, of *Aram* the sonne of [a] *Shem*, as before is said. And *Strabo* calleth the Syrians Arammæi. Hence also his [c] Arimi are deriued, and Arami (*lib.*13.) It is diuersly bounded by diuers Authors: some confounding the names of Syria and Assyria. *Eustathius* doth reckon these fiue parts thereof, Commagena, Seleucide, Cœlesyria, Phœnicia, and Iudea. [c] *Mela* extendeth it further, and [d] *Plinie* nameth as part of Syria, Palæstina, Iudea, Cœle, Phœnice, Damascena, Babylonia, Mesopotamia, Sophene, Commagene, Adiabene, Antiochia. And in this large sense doth [e] *Postellus* and *Brocardus* stretch it beyond Tygris Eastward from the Mediterranean Sea, and from Armenia to Arabia. But *Dom. Niger*, and before him [f] *Ptolemie* (whom wee especially follow) make it to abut on the North vpon Celicia, and part of Cappadocia, by the mount Amanus; on the South, vpon Iudæa, and part of Arabia Petræa; on the East, vpon Arabia Desetta and Euphrates; on the West, vpon the Syrian Sea.

[a] *Gen.*10.22.

[b] *Strab.l.*13.&*l.*13.

[c] *Mela de st. Orb.l.*1

[d] *Plin.l.*5.*c.*12.

[e] *G.Post.Rar. Syr.descrip. Broc.descrip. Ter.san.*

[f] *Lib.*5.*c.*15.

This countrie is thought to haue beene the habitation of our first Parents, before the flood, and of *Noah* and his succeed Familie (as wee haue said) after. Yet how soone, and howmuch, they degenerated in the wicked off-spring of cursed *Cham*, whose posteritie peopled a great part hereof, till they were thence by the Israelites expelled, the Scripture is sufficient record. Yea, euen from *Noahs* time did they deriue their Idolatrie, as appeareth by [g] *Lucians* Narration of the *Syrian goddesse*, which he partly saw with his eyes, and partly receiued of the Priests report.

[g] *Lucian.de Dea Syria.*

This goddesse was with godles Rites serued and obserued at Hierapolis; which (although

Strabo

h *Lib.16.*
i *Lib.5.c.23.*

k *Gilb. Cognat. in Annot.*

Strabo h placeth it beyond the Riuer in Mesopotamia) is by i *Plinie* accounted in Cœlosyria, called also Bambyce, and, of the Syrians themselues, *Magog*; and by *Ptolemie* named among the Syrian Cities of the diuision *Cirrestica*, 71. 15 *Longit.* and 56. 15 *Latit.* And *Lucian* who himselfe was there; (k he calleth himselfe an Assyrian, and was borne at Samosata in Commagena) placeth it on this side the Riuer. *Plinie* and *Strabo* (deceyued in the name) mention the worship of *Atargatis* (called of the Greekes *Derceto*) in this place: *Athenagoras* in his Apologie for the Christians, hath these words: *Semiramis* the daughter of *Derceto*, a leacherous and bloudy woman, was worshipped by the name of the *Syrian goddesse*: but *Lucian* (other-where a scoffer, here an Historian) at large describeth it, making this difference betweene *This* and *That*, *Atargatis* was halfe a fish, but the Syrian goddesse wholly resembled a woman. 10

There was another Hierapolis in Phrygia, wherein was a famous Temple of *Apollo*, with a Caue or Vault vnder it, deadly to al entrers but the Priests yea, to he birds al o which flew ouer it. *Damas. in vita Isidor. ap. Phot.* 242.

The City he thinketh to haue receiued the name Hierapolis (*Holy City*) of these holy things here obserued; in which respect it giueth place to none other place in Syria: hauing a stately Temple, enriched with gifts, statues, and (as they esteemed them) miracles. Arabia, Phœnicia, Babylonia, Cappadocia, Cilicia, and Assyria, brought her presents, and celebrated her solemne Feasts.

This Temple was (in the Syrians opinion) first founded by *Deucalion*, whose Historie you would thinke *Lucian* had learned of the Hebrewes, not of the Syrians, or Greekes; so liuely doth hee expresse the Infidelity and cruelty of the old world; the manner of the floud; the Arke wherein, with himselfe, his wife and children, he fased also all other creatures that liued on the earth, which came to him by couples, by dispensation of *Iupiter*. Hereunto these Hierapolitans adde, That in their Territorie was made a great Clift, which swallowed vp those waters: which Clift (but then verie little) was shewed to our Author: to whom also they reported, That in memorie hereof, *Deucalion* instituted that Rite, which to his time continued; That twice euerie yeere, not the Priests only, but many out of all Syria, Arabia, and beyond Euphrates, went to the Sea, and from thence brought water, which they powred downe in the Temple, that he had built ouer that Clift vnto *Iuno*, all which water was receyued into the same. 20

Some ascribe the building of this Temple to *Semiramis*, in honour of her mother *Derceto*: others to *Attes*, for the worship of *Rhea*: which *Attes* was a Lydian, and was Author of the Superstitions of *Rhea*, to the Phrygians, Lydians, and Samothracians: but the opinion most probable was, that *Dionysius* or *Bacchus* was founder of it; two substantiall witnesses, besides others, affirming the same, namely two, *Phalli* or *Priapi* (huge Images of the priuie part of a man) erected at the entrie of the Temple, with an inscription, That *Bacchus* had consecrated them to *Iuno*. That ancient foundation being consumed by time, this later Temple was erected by Queene *Stratonice*, who being in a dreame enioyned this office of *Iuno*, and for neglecting the same, punished with sicknesse, vowed vpon her recouery to performe it. The King ioyned in Commission with her, as General of his Armie, and ouer-seer of these holy works, a beautifull young man, named *Combabus*, who fearing what might happen, gelded himselfe, and closing those his dismembred members (first for their preseruation embalmed) in a boxe sealed, as some great treasure, he committed to the Kings fidelitie, to be safely reserued to his vse. Which his practice saued his life accordingly, being after produced to cleare him of adulterie with *Stratonice*, which had beene laid to his charge by his enuious accusers, and by the iealous King greedily apprehended. In memorie whereof, a brazen statue of *Combabus* was set vp in this Temple, and both then (whether to solace *Combabus*, or by inspiration of *Iuno*) and yeerely euer after, many in this Temple gelded themselues, and put off together the nature and habit of men, attyring themselues like women. These man-women Priests were called *Galli*. 30 40

The Temple was built in the middest of the Citie, compassed with a double wall; the Porch looking Northwards, almost an hundred fadome high; where stood those *Priapi* aforesaid, about the height of three hundred fadome; vp to one of these, one ascendeth twice a yeere, and abideth in the top thereof seuen dayes. He carrieth with him a long chaine which hee letteth downe, and thereby draweth vp to him such things as hee needeth. Many offer gold, and siluer, and brasse, and one appointed receiued their names, which hee sheweth to him aboue, and he maketh his praiers for euery of them, sounding, while hee praieth, a little Bell. The temple within shineth with gold, and the Roofe is wholly of this metall. it yeeldeth so fragrant a smell, that the garments of those, which come thither, retaine this sent long after. 50

There is also another inner Roome or Quire, wherein to the chiefe of the Priests onely haue entrance; yet is it open without any dore. In this Sanctuary are the Images of the gods; *Iupiter*, supported with Bulls, but *Iuno* sitteth vpon Lyons, holding in one hand a Scepter, and in the other a Distaffe, in some thing or other resembling diuers other goddesses, by the 60

E.

gyptians, Indians, Armenians, Babylonians, Æthiopians, and Medes, adorned with many Iewels: and among the rest, shee hath on her head a stone called the *Lampe*, of the effect, yeelding light in the night season, as if all the Temple were hanged with Lamps. This statue goeth twice a yeere to the Sea, for the water before mentioned: neyther of the Syrians is called by any name, but onely the Image, not expressing of whom.

In the Temple is the Image of *Apollo* cloathed with a beard, (contrarie to the custome of the Greekes) and in a farre more glorious manner giuing forth Oracles: for it moueth it selfe; which, the Priests espying, lift it vp aloft (otherwise it sweateth and moueth it selfe forward neuertheless) and being thus supported, it turneth it selfe and them about, and leapeth from one place to another. Then doth the chiefe of the Priests, make supplication and request for all things: which if it misliketh, it goeth backwards: if it approueth, it carrieth them forwards: and without these Oracles they enterprise nothing neither priuate nor sacred: and *Lucian* saith, he saw it leaning the Priests (the supporters) and moueing it selfe aboue in the ayre. Here are also the statues of *Atlas*, *Mercurie* and *Lucina*, and without a great brazen Altar, and many brazen Images of Kings and Priests, and many others recorded in Poets and Histories. Among others standeth the Image of *Semiramis*, pointing to the Temple with her finger, which (they say) is the signe of her repentance, who hauing giuen commandement to the Syrians to worship no other god but her selfe, was by plagues (sent from heauen) driuen to reuoke that former Edict, and thus seemeth to acknowledge and point out another Deitie. There were also places inclosed, wherein were kept and fed sacred Oxen, Horses, Eagles, Beares, Lyons.

The Priests were in number aboue three hundred, some for killing Sacrifices: some for offerings: some ministring fire to others at the Altar; their garment all white; their head couered; and euery yeere was chosen a new High-Priest, which alone was clothed with purple, and a golden head-tire. A great multitude there was besides of Musicians, *Galli*, and Prophetiall women: they sacrificed twice a day, whereat they all assembled. To *Iupiter* they vse neyther sorg nor instrument, in sacrifice; as they doe to *Iuno*.

Not farre hence was a Lake of two hundreth fadome depth, wherein were preserued sacred Fishes, and in the middest thereof an Altar of stone, crowned alwaies with Garlands, and burning with odours. They haue a great feast, which they call *the going downe to the Lake*, when all their Idols descend thither.

Their greatest and most solemne Feast was obserued in the Spring, which they called *the fire*: they solemnized it in this sort. They felled great trees; and laide them in the Churchyard (as you may terme it) and bringeth thither the Goates, Sheepe, and other beasts, they hanged them on these trees; together with them, fowles and garments, and workes of gold and siluer, which being set in due order, they carrie the Images of the gods about the trees; and then set all on fire. They resort to this Feast out of Syria, and the coasts adioyning, and being hither their Idols with them; and great multitudes resorting to the sacrifices, the *Galli*, and those other sacred wights beate and wound each other. Others play on instruments, and others rauished by diuine furie, prophesie: and then doe the *Galli* enter into their orders: for the furie rauisheth many of the beholders. Whatsoeuer young man commeth prepared to this purpose, hurling off his garments, with a great voyce, he goeth into the middest, and drawing his sword geldeth himselfes and runneth thorow the Citie, carrying in his hands, that which he would no longer carry on his body. And into whatsoeuer house he casteth the same, he receiue it from thence his *womanish habite and attire*. When any of them die, his fellowes carrying him in to the suburbes, couer him and his horse with stones, and may not enter into the Temple in seuen dayes after: nor after the sight of any other carkasse, in one day, but none of that family where one hath died, in thirty dayes; and then also with a shaueu head. *Swine* they hold for vncleane beasts. And the [m] *Doue* they esteeme so sacred, that if one touch one against his will, hee is that day vncleane. This causeth Doues in those parts to multiply exceedingly: neyther doe they touch Fishes: This because of [n] *Dercete*, halfe a woman, halfe a fish; that, for *Semiramis* which was metamorphosed into a Doue, [o] *Iulius Hyginus* hath this fable, that an egge of marueilous greatnesse fell out of heauen into Euphrates, which the fishes rolled to land; on the same did Doues sit, and hatched thereout *Venus*, who was after called the Syrian goddesse, at whose

* Of the Knauteries of these effeminate Priests, in selfe-whippings, with whip-strings full of bones, and wounding themselues with weapons, their prodigious Sodomiticall lusts, thefts, fortune-tellings, and other abhominations see *Apuleius asin. Aur. l. 8. & 9. & Lucians asse*, where the former was taken. Euen still amongst the religious men of the Turkes, and others both Mahometans and Iuiuis, these seuere courses which themselues are vsed almost to a miracle in doing and suffering so *vaine*, so *vile a thing in mans*, to illude the world, and himselfe, and to doe homage to the deuill, with such austere hypocrisies, which imposed in, and for the veritie, might with the worlds admiration, to Gods glory, proclaime them holy Confessors and Martyrs; which buy hell at a deereerate following selfe deuotions and *will-worships*, then others (suing their selfe denying) get *the gifts of God eternall life*. [m] *Quid referam in voltes ceibos in aliis per vrbes Alba Palestinæ sacrilla columbia Syræ Tibul. lib. 1. Hen. e.* it seemeth the Iewes held Doues in that hatred, that that kept Doues, might not bee allowed for a witnesse, as being accounted a sinner. *Pro. Ford ex R. Ab. ben. Kaltem.* yet *Ia. 2. 16.* are mentioned sellers of Doues in the Temple, and they were an vsuall offering. *Luc. 2.* [n] *Euseb. de præp. lib. 4. c. 9.* [o] *Iulius Hyginus Fab. 197.*

request

request *Iupiter* granted the *Fishes* their heauenly constellation: and the Syrians for that cause eate not their Fish nor Doues, but number them amongst their gods. Their [p] superstition concerning Herrings and Daces was ridiculous, esteeming that the Syrian goddesse did fill the bodies of such as had eaten them with biles an vlcers, causing also the fore-part of the leg and the liuer to consume.

p *Plutarch. de superstitione.*

Many are the ceremonies also to be performed of the religious Pilgrims or Votaries that visit this holy City: for before hee setteth forth, hee cutteth off the hayre of his head and browes, he sacrificeth a sheepe, and spreading the fleece on the ground, hee kneeleth downe on it, and layeth vpon his head the head and feet of the beast, and prayeth to bee accepted: the rest hee spendeth in the banquet. Then doth he crowne himselfe, and his fellow Pilgrims, and after sets forward on his pilgrimage, vsing for his drinke and washing cold water, and sleepeth alwayes on the ground till his returne home. In this Citie were appointed publike Hostes, for diuers Cities diuers, called *Doctors*, because they expounded these mysteries: They haue also one manner of sacrificing, to hurle downe the beasts destined hereunto, from the top of the porch, which die of the fall. They haue a like rite to put their children in a Sacke, and cartie them downe, branded first on the necke or palme of the hand: and hence it was, that all the Assyrians were branded. The young men also consecrated their haire from their Natiuitie, which being cut in the Temple, was there preserued in some boxe of gold or siluer, with the inscription of the owners name thereon. And this did I (saith *Lucian* in my youth: and my hayre and name remaine in the Temple still. Of *Atergatis*, see more in the Chapter of *Phœnicea*. q *Suetonius* tels of *Nero*, that hee contemned all Religions, but this of the Syrian god desse; of which also he grew weary, and defiled her with Vrine. After which hee obserued a little *Needlet*, supposed to haue a power of fore-signifying danger: and because soone after he had it, he found out a conspiracie intended against him, he sacrificed thereto three times a day. *Plutarch* r calleth the Syrians an effeminate Nation prone to teares: and saith, that some of them after the death of their friends haue hidden themselues in Caues, from the sight of the Sunne many dayes.

q *Sueton. Ner.*

r *De Consolat. ad. Ap.*

Rimmon the Idoll of the Syrians, and his Temple is mentioned, 2. *King.* 5. 18. But I haue litle certainetie to say of him.

Some reckon among the Syrian Deities, *Fortune*, conceiuing the mention thereof, *Gen.* 30. 11. by *Leah* at *Zilpa's* trauel; the word *bagad* which shee vseth, is vsually in our translations and *Tremellius*, *a troupe commeth*: but in the vulgar Latine, *feliciter, in Vatablus, auspicato, in Pagnine & Montanus*, *venit prosperitas*. The Ebrew and Greeke Interpreters vnderstand it of an ominous and well-wishing presage; yea, some Comments (I know not whether Planet-like) expresse the Planet *Iupiter*, called *Mazal tob*, whose influence helpeth in the opinion of Astrologers, as *Munster* noteth, to generation of children, according to the Rabines liberality, which will not haue so much as the meanest hearbe on the earth, to want correspondence and intercourse with some or other starre in heauen. *Mazal* signifies a starre; hence their superstition mentioned to *Mazaloth*, 2. *Reg.* 23. And the Iewish Astronomers calls the Zodiake the circle of *Mazaloth*, which name also their Cabalists ascribe to an order of Angels. Many things could I here annex out of a learned worke, written by Master *Selden* of the Inner Temple, *de DIS Syris*, (which according to his, and the wont of all such as Nature hath made ingenious, and ingenuous arts truely liberall) hee hath imparted to me, and now also to the world, a rich magazine and treasury of manifold learning, Diuine and Humane, in multiplicity of tongues, arts, and reading, out of which I haue borrowed in this and diuers parts of this worke, no meane nor few Iewels to adorne my booke, and enrich the Reader. This Testimony I here once for all publish of that booke, newly in the time of this Impression published, Of himselfe, wee want not publike proofe of his due in that, which hee hath giuen to the world; and the world in her more solid and lucid parts, cannot but reflect againe vpon the Giuer, TITLES OF HONOR, a man whose worth I confesse, I rather admire then measure with my poore pittances of praise; which in this *God* or *Fortune* of the Syrians wanteth not his *Bagad*, *fœliciter*, or *venit prosperitas*, happily and prosperously obseruing many things to this purpose, out of the Chaldee Paraphrase, the Hebrew Rabbins, the Greeke Septuagint, the Latines, Cabalists, Astrologians and others, which (being somwhat beyond our common Reader) I forbeare to write, lest the contrary to *Leahs* wish be wished to me. Certaine it is that *Labans* daughters had not quite lost all their Syrian superstition, as appeares by *Rachels* stealing her fathers Theraphim, [t] Idols which (*Kimchi* and *Aben Ezra* thinke) were made according to Astrological call superstition, capable of celestiall influence and prediction, therefore stolne (as they conceiue) that her father should not consult with them touching their way in this flight. The like doth *Malmesbury* report of *Gerbertus*, which by inspection of the starres made an Idolls head, with which hee vsed consultations: (this was *Siluester* the second the Necromancer and Pope, *An. De.* 998.) and the like tale is related of Frieg

t *Vid. Ia. 2. 81*

G. *Malm. de gestis reg. Ang. l. 2. c. 10*

Frier *Bacon*. That *Dea Syria* before mentioned, was worshipped in the times of the Roman Empire: here also in this Iland, as appeares by an inscription, which Sir *Robert Cotton* hath DEAE SYRIAE, and diuers altar-stones inscribed DEABVS MATRIBVS, mentioned by Master *Camden*; which are thought to be the same with the Syrian god desse, whose image was iust the same with that of *Bereeynthia*, or the mother of the gods, interpreted also the Earth, and Heauen: For it is no vnusuall thing with superstition; *cœlo terram miscere*, to make a hellish confusion of all things: Yea, the *Astaroth* before mentioned, are thought to be the same with *Syria Dea*, and these *Deæ matres*. This *Astarte* is also accounted *Iuno*, and the Moone (as her Bull-head with homes in stead of a crowne, wherewith they paint her, argue) and *Minerua* and *Venus*, *Io*, and *Lucina*, and *Mylitta*, or *Alytia*, and *Mitra*, and *Astroarche*, and *Cœlestie*, or *Vrania* the Queene of Heauen, and all things, and nothing; for an Idoll *is indeed nothing in the world:* but the very beeing thereof is but the distracted, vaine, various, imagination, fancie, and phrensie of the Idolater. This is also the cause of ascribing difference or communitie of sexe to their Deities, as this *Astarte*, sometimes fœminine, sometimes masculine, as *Venus* likewise in some of the Greeke and Latine Poets, and the Egyptians mysterie of the Moone or *Isis*, with both sexes, as hath beene alreadie touched.

Ier. 44. 18.
1. Cor. 8. 4.

Antiochia built by *Seleucus*, (to whom, in honour of his memorie, in mount *Casius* they obserued sacred solemnities, as to a *demi-God*) some times the seat royall of the Syrian Kings, third Citie of the Roman Empire, third seat of the Christian Patriarchs, and first, where that melodious name of *Christian* was heard, is now the Sepulchre (sayth *Boterus*) of it selfe, or (as *Niger*) a greater wilderneſſe, wherein it selfe is the least part of it selfe, being left but a small Village (sayth another) in the middest of its owne walles.

t Cluuerius.

About fiue miles from Antiochia, was that faire and sacred *Daphne*, which *Ortelius* in his *Theater* hath presented to the Spectators, with a peculiar description, and of which the elder Authors *u* haue plentifully written. It was ten miles about: a place euery way enuironed with many stately Cypresses, besides other trees, which suffered not the Sunne to kisse their mother (Earth) whose lap was according to the diuersitie of the season replenished with varietie of flowers, her breasts flowing with streames of watery nourishment: A spring there was, deriuing (as men supposed) her water from the *Castalian* fountaines, to which, ancient (superstition and therefore superstitious Antiquitie) attributed a diuine facultie with like name and force to that at *Delphos*. This also was furthered by the Legend of *Daphne*, *x* recorded by the Poets, beleeued (and what will not Superstition beleeue, but the truethe?) by the credulous multitude: who was said to haue fled from *Apollo*, and here turned into a tree. But thus could not *Apollo* be turned from his loue, which he continued both to the Tree and place. This was Lettice suitable to the lips of vaine youth. *y Et quia consimilem Inferat* (sayth amorous *Chorea*, of *Iupiter* in the Comicke)

u Zozomen. l. 5. cap. 18.
Niceph. lib. 10. cap. 18.
Euseb. l. 1. c. 16.
Strab. l. 16.
x Ouid. Metam. lib. 1.
y Ter. in Eunuche.

Iam olim ille ludum, impendio magis, animus gaudebat vibi.
Ego homuncio hoc non facerem?

There needed no other lecture of sensualitie to them, then this Legend, especially in this schoole, where euery place might be a place of argument (vnder pretence of reason and religion) to shut true Religion, and reason out of the place, especially with schollers greedie of this conclusion. Here you might haue heard the whisking winds in a murmuring accent breathing this lustfull Oratorie: the Enamelled floore did offer her more then officious curtesie (a soft, sweet, and inlayed bed) to lie on; the ayre with temperature, seemed to further Intemperance. The eye of the day, and watchmen of the night, were prohibited by the Cypresse roofe, with their vnwelcome light, to testifie those *workes of darknesse*, which those guiltie boughs couered from discouering: Once, the concurring obiects of each sense, did in silence speake and persuade to sensuall pleasure, insomuch that by a generall Decree, *Temperance* and Temperate men were hence exiled, and scarce would the vulgar allow him the name of a man, which here would be transformed into a beast, or would presume, without a Curtezan, to tread on this *holy ground*. Needs must they goe whom the deuill drineth: such god, such religion.

Here were erected sumptuous buildings: the Temple of *a Apollo Daphneus*, with a stately Image therein; the worke (as was thought) of *Seleucus*: also *Dianas* Chappell and Sanctuarie. *Iulius Capitolinus* writeth, that *Verus* a voluptuous Emperour spent foure Summers here, and wintered in Laodicea and Antioch. *Seuerus* (more truly answering his name) did to death certaine Tribunes, by whose negligence the Souldiers here were suffered to riot.

Iul. Capit. Verus.

riot. The Oracles added renowne to the place, which were deliuered out of these *Daphnean* waters by a certaine wind or breath. *Adrian* the Emperour is reported to haue hence receiued the facultie of Diuining, by dipping a Cypresse leafe in the Fountaine. *Iulian* resorted hither often for that purpose: But his elder brother *Gallus*, (whom *Constantius* had called to be *Cæsar*, and after, saith *Ammianus*, for his outrages executed,) had in the time of his abode at Antioch, remoued the bones of *Babylas* their Bishop, and other holy Martyrs his companions in suffering, to this place, where also he built a Church. Now when as *Iulian* in his Persian expedition had sent others to visite all the other Oracles in the Roman Empire, himselfe here consulted with *Apollo*, (an Apostata Emperour with an Apostata Angell) about the successe of those warres. But all his sacrifices obtained no other answere, then that he could not answere, by the countermand of a more diuine power there liuing in those dead bones. Hereupon *Iulian* command the Christians to remoue those ill neighbours; which they did (saith *Theodoret*,) with a solemne procession, singing the Psalmes, and dancing with the heart, of *Dauid*, making this the burthen and foot of each verse, *Confounded bee all they that worship grauen Images*: wherewith, *Iulian* enraged, persecuted the Christians. *Euagrius* affirmeth, that hee built a Temple in honour of *Babylas*: how truely, I know not. But the true God confounded both the Idoll and Idolater, shortly after, calling the one to giue account of his ill-employed stewardship; vncertaine whether by diuine or humane hand: and for the other, his Temple was consumed with fire from aboue, together with the Image, one pillar whereof remained in *Chrysostomes* dayes. The Pagans attributed this fire to the Christians: and no maruell: for what did not that fire of blind Idolatrie (kindled with zeale) attribute to the innocent Christians? herein testifying that it came from hell, and must to hell againe, by that hellish Character and impression, of *so great fire, and as great darknesse*. Such is Hell, and such is ignorant Zeale: a fire, but no light. *Apollo's* Priest by no torments could be forced to confesse any author thereof: and the officers of the Temple affirmed it was fire from heauen, which certaine Countrey-people confirmed by their owne sight. *Iulian*, to satisfie his rage, caused some Temples of the Christians to be burned. *Nicephorus* [x] telleth of the continuance of this *Daphnean* groue, honoured with buildings and spectacles, by *Mammianus* and *Chosroes*. *Apollo's* Image was made of wood, couered ouer with gold. *Theodosius* forbad the cutting of any of those Cypresses.

Zeale without knowledge resembled to hell. x. *Nic.l.*16.23. & 17.14.

Orontes [a] is a Riuer which arisseth in Cœlesyria, and payeth tribute to all the three brethren: it visiteth *Pluto's* Palace, running with a long tract vnder the Earth, and then heauing vp his head, maketh his gladsom homage to *Iupiter*; and after his custome payed to the Antiochians, in fine powreth himselfe into ahe lappe of *Neptune*, entring the Sea neere to Seleucia. It [b] was called Typhon, vntill *Oronter*, building a bridge ouer it, caused it to be called by his name. They had here a tale of Typhon, a huge Dragon, which diuided the earth, as hee went seeking to hide himselfe, and perished by the stroke of a thunderbolt. Thus did he indent a passage for this Riuer. Not farre hence was a sacred Caue, called Nymphœum: also Mount Casius, and Anticasius, and Heraclia; and nigh thereto the Temple of *Minerua*. In Laodicea was this goddesse honoured, to whom they offered [c] in yeerely sacrifice, in old time a maid, after that in stead thereof a *Hart*.

a *Lambit. Apollinei memoria nutritor Orontes. Claudian.*

b *Strab.lib.16.*

c *Euseb.de laudib. Constantini, & de præp.Eu. lib.4.cap.8.*

I may here mention also that, which *Tacitus* [d] reporteth of the Mount Carmel (as hee placeth it) betwixt Iudea and Syria, where they worshipped a god of that name with Ethnicke rites. They had not any Temple or Statue to this god, an Altar onely and Reuerence was here seene. *Vespasian* did in this place offer sacrifice, where *Basilides* the Priest viewing the entrails, foretold him of his good successe. *Damascius* in the life of *Isidorus*, mentioneth a Syrian goddesse, named *Babia*, of whom infants newly borne, were by the Syrians, especially at Damascus, called also *Babia*: perhaps they were esteemed vnder her tutelage; and our English word, *Babes*, may hence borrow the originall.

d *Tacit.l.2. hist.*

Ad. Phot. Bibliotheb. 242.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Syrian Kings, and alteration in Gouernment, and Religion, *in those Countries.*

SYRIA quickly grew into Peoples and Kingdomes; although Time hath long since deuoured both them and their memories. Of *Menon* the husband of *Semiramis* (mentioned by *Diodorus*) is spoken before. *Adadezer* was in *Dauids* time, [a] King of *Aram Zoba*, which some take for *Chobal* in Syria, some for *Sophene* in *Armenia*, and some for the *Nubei*: whatsoeuer they were, *Dauid* made them tributarie, *Anno mundi* 2903. *Benhadad*, *Hazael*, and others, the Scripture also mentioneth: but certaine succession, we find not recorded of these Syrian Kings, till the time of *Alexander*, which conquering all from Macedonia, to India, by his inexpected death, left his huge Empire to bee shared among his chiefe followers. *Seleucus*, the sonne of *Antiochus*, a Macedonian, first master of the Elephants; then Tribune; after that Deputie of the Babylonians, at last obtained the Kingdome of Asia, *Anno Mundi* 3638. of whom *Appianus* thus writeth: The first King of Syria after *Alexander*, was *Seleucus*, called *Nicator*, because he was of very great stature; and as a wild bull had in a sacrifice of *Alexander* broken loose, hee held him with both his hands. Hee built sixteene Cities, called by the name Antiochia, of his father *Antiochus*: and sixe Laodicea's, in memorie of his mother *Laodice*: nine Seleucia's of his owne name: three Apamea's, and one Stratonicea, after the names of his two wiues. He prospered in his warres, tooke Babylon, subdued the Bactrians; pierced to the Indians, which had slaine *Alexander's* Gouernours (placed amongst them) after *Alexanders* death. He slew *Lysimachus*, and seuen Moneths after was circumuented and slaine of *Ptolomei*, (whose sister *Lysimachus* had married) being seuentie three yeeres old.

To him succeeded his sonne *Antiochus*, sur-named *Soter*. *Anno* 3667. who had obtayned *Stratonice* his mother in law, of his father (moued thereunto by his sonnes violent loue, and his Physicians subtile perswasion.) His sonne *Antiochus Theos* was (contrarie to his name) poysoned by his wife: whose sonnes *Seleucus*, *Callinicus* and *Antiochus* succeeded: and after them *Antiochus Magnus*, the sonne of *Callinicus*, who much enlarged his Empire, adding thereto Babylonia, Egypt, and Iudea: but inuading Græcia, prouoked the Romans against him, with whom he compounded on base and meane conditions: Hee did yet comfort himselfe for his losse among his friends, saying, that he was [b] beholding to the Romans, that eased him of so weightie a burthen, and lessened his cares of gouernment: (for they had cooped him in a corner of his Kingdome beyond *Taurus*.) After this, hee was slaine: exhibiting in himselfe a true example of the worlds falshood, that playeth with Scepters, and vseth Diadems, vsing *men* like Counters or Figures, in numbring and casting accounts, where the same, with a little difference of place, is a pound, shilling, or penie, one, ten, or an hundred. And yet as earthly happinesse herein comes short of heauen, that it is neuer meere and vnmixed, but harh some sowre sauce to relish it: so falleth it as farre short of hell, that not onely hope, but the most miserable hap, hath some glimpse of comfort.

But to come to our Historie. *Antiochus* his sonne, sur-named *Epiphanes*, and after, *Epimanes* for his furious insolence, (who beganne his raigne *Anno mundi* 3774.) was first sent to Rome in hostage, for security of his fathers faith: and after that *Seleucus* his brother (which sent [c] *Heliodorus* to rob the Temple at Ierusalem) had a while warmed the Throne, succeeded in the Syrian Kingdome. Of him and his tyrannie *Daniel* had long before prophesied in the interpretation of *Nabuchodonosors* Image, [d] whose legs are interpreted to be this Syrian, and the Egyptian kingdomes, [e] both heatie and hard neighbours to the *Church* in Iudea, lying betwixt them: but more especially in his [f] Visions in the seuenth Chapter. Where, after other things, he fore-telleth of the ten hornes, [g] which are the eight Kings afore-named, and two Egyptian *Ptolemies*, *Euergetes*, and *Philopater*, in their times preuayling in Syria, and infesting Iudea. And the last shall subdue three Kings, which were *Ptolemie* of Egypt, driuen out of Syria, *Seleucus* his brother, and *Demetrius*, to whom, after *Seleucus*, the right of the Scepter belonged. His policie, and blasphemie, and tyrannie, are also by *Daniel* plainely fore-signified, and in their euent as fully in the Historie of the *Machabees* related. There you may reade his wicked life, and wretched death: He tooke Ierusalem [h] *Anno mundi* 3781. and slew fourescore thousand people, robbed the Temple of eighteene

a *Nic. Damascenus* speaketh of this warres *Adad* (sayth *Scaliger* in his notes on that Fragment) was the common name of all the Syrian Kings: *Hic om.* sayth *Benhadad.* *Appian. Alex. de bellis Syriacis.*

Appian. ibid.

b *Val. Max. 4. cap. 1.*

c 2. *Mac. 3.*
d *Dan. 2.*
e *Grotius* interpreteth, and I boureth to proue, these two legs to be the Easterne Empire, vnder the Turke, and Westerne vnder the Pope: refuted by *D. Willet*, *in Append. ad Dan.*
f *Dan. 7. 24.*
g *Trem. Iun. in Dan.*
D. *Downam* of Antichrist.
D. *Willet* on *Dan. 8 cap. 7.*
h *Euseb.*

teene hundred talents, and of the holy Vessels, polluted the Temple; forbade the Sacrifice, named it the Temple of *Iupiter Olympius*; forced men by tortures from their religion; with other execrable outrages, which would require a iust volume to describe.

i *Ath.l.5.c.4.* As he was thus madde and raging against the true Religion: so [i] *Athenaus* sheweth his vanitie in his owne, whose pompous solemnitie at the *Daphneon* Feast hee thus relateth. *Antiochus*, in emulation to *Paulus Æmilius*, proclaimed this solemne festiuitie in the Cities of Greece, and performed it at Daphne. First, passed in order fiue thousand men, armed after the Romane manner: next followed fiue thousand Mysians, and three thousand Cilicians, with Crownes of gold: of Thracians three thousand, of Galatians fiue thousand, of whom, some had shields of siluer. Twentie thousand Macedonians, and fiue thousand with shields 10 of brasse: after these, two hundred and fortie couples of champions which should fight in single combate. There followed one thousand Pisæan horse-men, and three thousand of the Citie, the most whereof had Crownes and Vials of gold, other trappings of siluer: Next came the band, called *Socia*, nothing inferiour in pompe or number: then a thousand extraordinarie, and another thousand in the band called *Agema*. Lastly, the barded horses fifteene hundred, all these in purple vestures, which many had embroidered, or embossed with gold: Chariots drawne with sixe horses, one hundred and fortie drawne by foure; one drawne by Elephants, attended with six and thirtie other. The rest of the pompe is incredible and tedious: eight hundred youths with golden crownes: a thousand fat oxen, and three hundred persons to attend the sacrifices: eight hundred Elephants teeth. There were 20 also the Images of all the gods, and *Heroes* that can be reckoned, some gilded, some clothed with golden vestures, their fabulous histories being with great pompe annexed. After all these, the Images of *Day*, *Night*, *Earth*, *Heauen*, *Morning*, *and Noone*. Then came a thousand Boyes, each hauing a piece of plate of a thousand drams: sixe hundred with vessels of gold: eightie women were carried in chaires footed with gold, and fiue hundred in others, footed with siluer, very sumptuously attired: two hundred of them out of basons of gold strewed odours. These spectacles lasted thirtie dayes. A thousand (and sometimes twelue hundred.) Halls or dining roomes, were furnished for bankets, the King himselfe affecting too officious familiaritie therein, visiting the tables of the baser people, yea, and that as a base Minstrell with musicke; not of the best instruments, but such as the poorer sort vsed for 30 want of better, as learned *Casaubonus* hath on that place of *Athenaus* obserued. So base is the Pride of Ambition, tempering a confused distemper; according (in a strange harmonie) the harshest discord of proud-aspiring, and deiected baseneſſe; where a base and seruile mind begetteth pride, and pride produceth a seruil basenesse, a changeling which the doting World fathereth on Humility.

k *Percussiunt ducem & eos, qui cum eo erant & diuisiunt membratim, & capitibus amputatis foras proiecerunt, &c.* 2.*Mac.*11.
l *Ante Cæsus, loc.l.2.c.12.*
m *Bel.de ver. Lit.c.25.*
n *Gen.14.16.*

Of the death of this *Antiochus*, the former and second bookes of Machabees seeme to disagree: and, which is more strange, the second booke in the first chapter saith, [k] hee and his company were destroyed in the Temple of Nanæa in Persia: and in the ninth chapter saith that in Media, at Ecbatana, hee was smitten with an vncouth disease, and a fall from his 40 Chariot, whereof he died. Some [l] that would haue this history Canonical, apply it to two *Antiochi*, as *Lyra*, and *Ruperius*, and after them *Cæsus*: but *Bellarmine* [m] seeing that they will not agree with the times of any other, but *Epiphanes*, proueth himselfe *Epimanes*, and runneth mad with loue of that Trent-Minion: affirming, that in the Temple of Nanæa he fell but escaped (as [n] the King of Sodome is said to fall, when *Lot* was captiued, and yet was not slaine) and after persihed, as in the after part of the historie is expressed; whereas, it is there said, that they *shot the dores on him, and cut him and his fellowes in pieces, and made them shoter by the heads:* who yet after this (forsooth) could goe into Media, and there haue a fall from his Chariot. They must haue no delicate stomacks, that wil be Iesuits, any thing must down when they will vp, especially, if Trent or the Vatican command, though manifest reason and sense (that I say not Religion) countermand. I enuie not the red Hat with these labels. 50

o 2.*Mac.*15.39.
p *Conc.Trident.*

Wel fare that modestie of the Author [o] that confesseth his weakenesse: but Anathema to their Anathema's that enact [p] contradictions to be Canonicall.

I omit the successors of *Antiochus*, to wit, *Antiochus Demetrius*, *Alexander*, (who tooke away the golden Image of *Victoria* out of the Temple at Antioch, in his necessitie: iesting that *Iupiter* had sent him *Victorie*, and when hee would haue added *Iupiter* [q] to his sacrilledge, was chased away by the multitude, and after slaine by *Gripus*.) The rest with the times of their raigne are before expressed. [r] *Pompey* set an end to these Seleucidan Kings, and the Romans enioyed the Countries of Syria, till the Saracens dispossessed them; whose history you may reade [f] in their due place. The Turkes displaced those Saracens; the Christians of the West, by warre, made those parts Christian; but were expelled againe by the 60 Turkes, and they by the Tartars. The Mamaluke [t] slaues, and their Ægyptian Soldan after, held

q *Iustin.l.33.*
r *Supra c.22.*
f *Lib.3.c.12.*
t *Lib.6.c.6.*

held the Syrian Dominion, vntill *Selim* the great Turke subdued it to the *Ottoman* Empire, vnder which it still groneth. Of these things this our History will acquaint you in the proper reports of these Nations.

Aleppo is now chiefe Citie of Syria; but Damascus both in elder and later times hath born the greatest name, being *the head of Aram*, as [t] *Esay* affirmeth, called of *Iuliam, the Citie of Iupiter, and eye of the whole East, Holy and Great*, called also [u] the *Trophee of Iupiter*, because he there had conquered the Titans. It is interpreted *drinking blood*, by [x] *Hierom*, who telleth (from the Hebrewes tradition) that in this field *Kain* slew his brother; [y] *Chytreus* expounded it *faecus sanguinis*, [z] *Wolphius* deriueth it of two words, signifying *bloud*, and to *spoyle*: which in the times of *Hazael* and *Benhadad*, and of *Resin* it performed: but neuer so much, as when the Saracens made it the sinke of bloud and spoyle, which they executed on the Christians: [a] and *Noradine*, *Saladine*, and the Turkes, fitting themselues and this Citie to the name, before the Ægyptian Sultans, and Ottoman Turkes, were Lords of it. *Stephanus* ascribeth the name to one *Ascu* a Giant, which cast *Dionysius* there into the Riuer: Or because *Damascus*, the soune of *Mercury* comming hither out of Arcadia built it: or because *Dionysius* there fleid off the skin of *Damascus*, which had cut vp his Vines.

The Turkes now call it *Leunclauius*, and *Chytreus* testifie, *Scham*, and so is the whole Region called in the Arabian Chronicle, whose extract you may find [b] in our Saracenical history.

The Armies of *David*, *Ahab*, *Teglath Thalasar* preuayled much against it. The Babylonians subuerted it: After that, the *Ptolomeys* repayred it: *Pompei* wanneit, *Paul* hallowed it: The Saracens (as is sayd) polluted it. The Christians in vaine besieged it, in the yeere one thousand one hundred forty and seuen. [c] *Haulon* the Tartar, one thousand two hundred threescore and two, obtayned it, and about one thousand foure hundred, *Tamerlane* besieged it; and as he had done at Aleppo, filling the ditch with the bodies of captiues, and slain carkasses, cast wood and earth vpon them, and at last forced it and the Castle. Hee spared the Citie for the Temples sake, which had fortie Porches in the circuite, and (within) nine thousand Lampes, of Gold and Siluer. But the Ægyptians by a vile possessing it, he againe engirt it, and recouered it. Hee commanded *Mahomet* the Pope or Chalife, and his priests, which came to meete him, to repayre to the Temple, which they did with thirteene thousand Citizens, where he burnt them all; and for monument of his victory, left three Towers erected of skuls of dead men. The Ægyptians regained and held it till *Selim* the Turke dispossessed them 1517.

Now in thus many alterations of State, who doubteth of diuersity in Religions in Syria? First, the *true Religion* in the times of *Noah*, and the first Patriarkes. Next, those superstitions of *Rimmon*, and the rest before related, in the Assyrian, Babylonian, Persian, Macedonian and Roman gouernments: After which lengthight, the *Sunne of Righteousnesse* shione vnto the Syrians, and made a more absolute Conquest then all the former, not by Legions and Armies, but by a handfull of Fishermen, (manifesting his Power in their weakenesse) the Reason of Men, and Malice of Deuils, not being able to withstand their Euangelicall weapons, which [f] *were mighty through* GOD *to cast downe holdes, and bring into captiuity every thought to the obedience of* CHRIST, insomuch, that hence the [e] *Christian World* receyued first that name. And, how sweet would thy name remaine, O Syrian Antiochia, euen now in thy latest fates, which first was christned with the name *Christian*, had desti thou not out-liued thy Christianity, or rather, (after the soule departed) remained the carkasse of thy selfe; which ceasing to be Christian, hast long since ceased to bee, had not the Diuine hand resetued a few bones of thy carkasse to testifie this his iustice to the world! And what harmonie could haue beene more gratefull to the Gentiles eares, then thy memorie (*Damascus*) where the *Doctor of the Gentiles* was first taught himselfe, and made a Teacher of others? But in thee was the Chayre of Pestilence, *the Throne of Sathan*, the sincke of Mahumetan impietie to the rest of the world, infecting with thy contagion, and subduing with thy force more Nations, then euer *Paul* by preaching conuerted. Syria, first in the first and principall Priuiledges of Mankind, embracing in her rich armes (if so he bee right Suruciours) the promised Possession (the Seale of a further and better inheritance) was with the first subdued to Saracene seruitude vnder their Caliph, vnder the Turkes, vnder the Christians from the West, vnder the Tartars from the East, vnder the Mamalukes from the South, and from the North the *Ottoman*, by new successions and vicissitudes of miseries and mischiefes, become a common Stage of bloud and slaughter. And in all these later changes of State, and chauncies of Warre. *Religion* was the life that quickned those deathes, and whetted those murdering swords: no cruelrie or sacrilledge against GOD, or man, so irreligious, and inhumane, but *Religion* was pretended to be the cause, and bare the Standard to destruction; a new Religion alway erected with a new Conqueror.

t *Es.7.8.*
u *Tert.ad Iycophr.p.100.*
x *Hier.Com.in Ezech.8.*
y *Chytr.Onomastic.*
z *Wolphi Com. in 2.Reg.16.*
Genebrard, sanguinis mixtio.
a It was the seat of their *Caliphs* in their first rising, and after that, of *Noradine.*
See lib.3.c.2.
b *li.3.*
c *Ch.Adrichom. Tebatium Terra sanct.*
Twibell.Sanct. lib.17.
Herald.comis.6.
See more of Damasc.inf.l.3. c.2.
f *2.Cor.10.5.*
e *Act.11.26.*

For the Readers delight wee haue here added out of Hondius, *which hee had contracted out of* Ortelius) *the Map of* Pauls *Peregrination, for the plantation of the Gospell.*

CHAP. XVII.

Of Phœnicia, and of the Theologie, and Religion of the ancient Phœnicians: of their Arts and Inuentions.

a *Strabo l.16.*

b *Mat. com. in loc.*

c *Num. 13.30. Mat. 13.22 Mat. 7.26.*

d *Es. 23.8. Os. 12.7. Pro. 31.24. Dionys. Afer. in vers.*

PHœnicia is the Sea coast a of *Syria*, after *Plinie*, or that coast or tract bordering on the Sea from Orthosa (now Tortosa) to Pelusium. This Sea coast (saith *Andreas Masius*) b was of the Greekes called Phœnicia, and of the Hebrewes peculiarly stiled Chanaan, and the Inhabitants Chananites. So the Spies tell *Moses*, the c *Chananaites dwell by the Sea.* The woman in the Gospell which *Matthew* calleth a Canaanite, is by *Marke* named a Syrophœnicean: and the Septuagint in this place, for the Kings of Chanaan read the Kings of Phœnicea. And in the Scripture it is appellatiuely vsed for a d Merchant, because the Phœnicians or Chanaanites were famous for Merchandize, as appeareth both by diuine and prophane testimonie. Most properly the Northerly part is Chanaan Phœnicia, the Southern Palestina, although it is sometime extended, as wee haue said euen to Egypt. *Dionysius* (which maketh the Phœnicians the first Mariners, Merchants, and Astronomers) placeth Gaza and Ioppe in Phœnicia. *Sachoniatho* a e Phœnician, supposed to haue liued before the Troian warre, wrote in his owne language, the History of his Nation, which *Philo Biblios*

lius translated into Greeke. This *Philo* in the beginning of his worke sayth, That his Author, *Sachoniatho*, as he was generally learned, so especially he searched out those things which *Taautus*, called of the Ægyptians *Thoyth*, of the Greekes *Mercurie*, the first Inuentor of letters, had written: hee also blamed those, that by Allegories and Tropologies peruert and obscure the Historie of their gods: affirming plainely, That the ancient Phœnicians, Ægyptians, and others adored those men for gods, that had beene the Authors of good things to men, applying to them also the names of those *Naturall gods, the Sunne, Moone, &c.* so making some gods mortall, some immortall. According to this *Taautus* therefore, the first beginnings of all things were a darke disordered Chaos, and the spirit of the darke ayre. Hence proceeded *Moth*, which we may interprete Mire, from whence issued the seedes and generation of all creatures in the Earth and Heauen; the plants first, and from them the reasonable Creatures called *Thophasunin*, that is, the beholders of Heauen, formed in the shape of an *Egge*. From *Moth* also came the Sunne, Moone, and Starres. The Sunne by his heate separating these new-formed Creatures, their conflict in the ayre produced Thunder, which noyse awaked, and caused to leape out of their earth, this slimie generation; after of the Winde *Colpia* and *Baau* (which signifieth Night) were borne men, named [f] *Age* and *First-borne*; *Age*, taught men to liue of the fruites of trees: of these came *Kind* and *Generation*, who being troubled with heate, lifted vp their hands to the Sunne, which they tooke for a god, calling him *Beelsamen* (which signifieth the Lord of Heauen) whom the Greekes cal *Iupiter*. *Kind* begate *Light*, *Flame*, *Fire*. This last by rubbing of flickes together found out fire: From these descended in succeeding generations those Giants, that left their names to the hils where they dwelt, *Cassius* and *Libanus*, that contended against their brother *Vsoo*, who first aduentured the sea in the bodies of trees burned (in which manner the Indians, euen yet, make their canoas or boats) and he erected two Statues to the *Wind* and the *Fire*, whom hee adored with the bloud of beasts.

These first men after their death had Statues consecrated to them by posteritie, and yeerly solemnities. To these succeeded others, *Hunter* and *Fisher*, which had two Sonnes, one of which was named *Chusor* a great Magician: From these descended *Amynus* and *Magus*, Authors of Sheepe-cotes and flockes, or heards of Cattell. These were the *Titans*, Inuenters of Arts, hunting, fishing, building, yron-works, tents and such like. To *Misor*, one of these was borne *Taautus*, first Author of Letters. At that time was borne *Elius*, and *Beruth* his wife, which dwelt in Biblos, the Parents of *Celus* and *Terra* (his wife and sister) who deified with rites and ceremonies their father *Elius* being torne of wilde beasts. To these were borne *Saturne*, *Batilus*, *Dagon*, and *Atlas*.

But *Celus* taking other wiues, there arose a great quarrell betwixt him and his former, ayded herein by her sonnes; of whom *Saturne* the eldest, created *Mercurie* his Scribe, by whose Magicall Arts, and by those weapons (first by him, and *Minerua* the daughter of *Saturne* deuised) *Celus* was ouerthrowne: who, after two and thirty yeeres warre betwixt them, was taken by his sonne, and deprived of his genitories.

Saturne had issue (besides his daughters *Minerua* and *Proserpina*, *Amor*, *Cupido*, *Saturne Iupiter*, *Belus* and *Apollo*, of his Sisters, *Astarte*, *Rhea*, *Dione*. Then also were borne *Typho*, *Nereus*, *Pontus*, the Father of *Neptune*. *Saturne* suspecting his brother *Atlas*, buried him in the ground, and cast vp an high hill ouer him: where, not long after, was a Temple erected to him. *Dagon* was inuenter of Tillage; and therefore called [g] *Iupiter of the Plough*. But *Saturne* becomming a great Conquerour, bestowed Egypt on *Taautus* or *Mercurie*, who first made a mysterie of their Theologie, as the Sonne of one *Thalon*, the Phœnician Priest, first did among the Phœnicians; applying allegoricall interpretations thereof to Nature; and instituting Rites to posterity. This allegoricall Theologie of *Taautus* was interpreted by *Sumbolus* and *Thurro*. It followeth in the History, That it was then a custome in great calamities, for the Prince to appease the angry *Demon* with his best beloued sonne, and thus (in the time of a perilous warre) was *Leud* [h] the Sonne of *Saturne*, by a Nymph, named *Anobreth*, cloathed in royall apparrell, offered on an Altar erected for that purpose. This was practised long after by the King of Moab, [i] who being besieged by three Kings of Israel, Iuda, and Idumæa, sacrificed his eldest sonne: which yet some interprete of the eldest sonne of the King of Idumæa. *Taautus* ascribed Diuinitie to the *Serpent*, as being of a most fierie and spirituall nature, mouing it selfe swiftly, and in many formes, without helpe of feet, and a creature which renueth her age. [k] The Phœnicians and Ægyptians followed him herein, they calling it a happy Spirit of God, these *Eneth*; and framed thereto the head of a Hawke of which in his place wee haue spoken. And thus farre haue wee beene indebted to [l] *Eusebius*.

In the time of those warres betwixt *Saturne* and *Celus* was borne *Hercules*: to whom was a Temple of great Antiquity at Tyre. To *Hercules* were also celebrated games at Tyrus

e *Euseb. de præp. Euang. lib. 1. ca. 6. & 7.* An Author commended by *Porphyrius. l. 4. cont. Christ.* but not thus ancient, saith *Scal. in notis ad Sing.*

f *Seculum & primogenitus. Genus & Generatio.*

g *Iupiter Arativus.*

h *Hesynius* readeth it *Iud*, signifying an only sonne.

i *2. King. 2. 3.*

k *Trem. & Iun.*

l *Euse de præp. Euang. l. 1.*

rus eucry fiue yeeres, to which *Iason* sent three hundred drams for a sacrifice, [m] *Hiram* in *Solomons* time pulled downe the old Temples of *Hercules* and *Astarte*, and built new. He first erected a statue to *Hercules*, and in the temple of *Iupiter* consecrated a golden [n] Pillar.

The Sydonians also worshipped *Astarte*, in a stately and ancient Temple to her builded: whom [o] some interprete *Luna*, [p] some *Venus*, and one of her Priests, to [q] *Lucian, Europa.* She was worshipped of the Punickes (a Phœnician colony) by that name to *Iuno*. But *Philo Byblieusis* saith it was *Venus*, which may bee all one: for *Herodotus* saith, *Vrania* (which was also *Iuno*) was *Venus*; and *Luna* also after *Lucian*. And so it appeareth by her horne head wherewith *philo* saith, shee was painted; the Arabians called her *Alilat*, the Chaldæans *Militta*. The fame is called also *Beltis*, or *Baalis*, and *Belissama* in an old Inscription, tharis, *Iuno Olympia*, or Queene of Heauen; Shee ware on her head in stead of a Crowne a Bulles head: whereby what else could be meant but the Moone, Queene of the night? as the Sunne *Baalsamen* is King of Heauen or Lord of the day. But the manifold names giuen to the same Deities brought in confusion, and a numberlesse Polytheisme: nor can wee well distinguish betwixt *Minerua, Iuno, Venus, Luna*, and other names of their mystie mysteries. Shee is called also *Astroarche, Iuno, Lucina, Iltibyia*, which hath her mid-wife-mysteries, borrowed together with the name from the Iewish Lilith, (of which we shall after speake) as the name *Alilat* also is. The Syrian goddesse before related, and the Persian *Mithra*) which some deriue of *Mader*, that is in the Persian also, a mother) is no other but this *Astarte Vrania*, or as *Tertullian* cals her *Celestis*, or what other name before mentioned you please to giue her: which I know not how mystically, is also called *Cybele, Berecynthia*, and (with a confused mixture of Heauen and Earth) THE EARTH. *Astaroth* a word plurall is exemplified in the European *Iunones*, mentioned in Inscriptions, and in those altars in Master *Camden*, and Master *Selden*, inscribed DEABVS MATRIBVS, diuers of which haue beene found in this Iland, intended by them (as were also the *Beti*) which made vowes, DIS SYRIS.

Lucian sayth, that he saw also at Biblos the Temple of *Venus Biblia*: wherein are celebrated the yeerely rites of *Adonis*, (who they say, was slaine in their Countrie) with beatings and woefull lamentings; after which, they performe Obsequies vnto him, and the next day they affirme him to be aliue, and shaue their heads. And such women as will not bee shauen, must prostitute their bodies for one day vnto strangers, and the mony hence accrewing, is sacred to *Venus*. Some affirme that this ridiculous lamentation is made, not for *Adonis*, but *Osiris*; in witnesse whereof, a head made of Paper once a yeere in seuen dayes space comming swimming from Egypt to Byblos, and that without any humane direction: Of which *Lucian* reporteth himselfe an eye-witnesse. This is called the *mourning for Thamuz*, which *Iunius* interpreteth *Osiris*, whence the fourth moneth (commonly their Haruest) is called *Tamuz*. For *Isis* which instituted these rites, was their *Ceres*. *Hieron* interpreteth it *Adonis*; but it seemeth the difference is more in the name then the Idoll or rites. Women were the chiefe lamenters, if not the onely, as *Ezechiel* testifieth, and the proneesse of that sexe to teares, and to superstitious deuotion also, (which they seeme to acknowledge, whose praying stile is, *pro denoto fœmineo sexu*) likewise Ethnike Authors are witnesses. *Plutarch* sayth, the women kept the Adonia, or feast of *Adonis*, euery where through the Citie, setting forth Images, obseruing exequies and lamentation. *Ammianus* reported of this festiuall solemnized at Antiochia, at the same time when *Iulian* entred the Citie, then filled with howlings and lamentings: and elsewhere compareth the women which lamented the death of their young Prince, to the women which obserued the rites of *Venus* in the feasts of *Adonis*. *Iulius Firmicus* affirmeth, that in most Cities of the East *Adonis* is mourned for, as the husband of *Venus*, and both the smiter, and the wound is shewed to the standers by. For, *Mars* changed into the shape of a Bore, wounded him for the loue of *Venus*. Hee addeth, that on a certaine night, they lay an Image in a bed, and number a set bead-roll of lamentations: which being ended, light is brought in, and then the Priest anointeth the chappes of the Mourners, whispering these words, *Trust in God for wee haue saluation* or deliurance, *from our griefes*. And so with ioy they take the Idoll out of the Sepulchre. Was not this mourning, thinke wee, sport to the Deuill? especially when this *Adonia* was applyed vnto the buriall and resurrection of Christ, the Pageant whereof followeth the Good-Friday, and Lenten fast of the Papists. Yet is this worse then the former, not onely because *Corruptio optimi pessima*, the best things by abusing are made worst; but also because the treason of *Iudas* and *Peters* denial is proposed in action to the peoples laughter, *& inter tot cachinnos & ineptias solus Christus est serius & seuerus*, saith *L. Viues*, complaining of this great wickednesse of the Priests (*magno scelere atque impietate Sacerd.*) but here and elsewhere often, when he telleth tales out of Schoole, the good mans tongue is shortned, and their *Index* purgeth out that where with he seeketh to purge their leauen. But let vs backe from Rome to Biblos: Hereby runneth the Riuer Adoris also, which once a yeere becommeth red and bloudie:

g 2. *Mac.* 4. 19.

n *Ie.* 6. *Ant.* l. 8.

o *Luc. Dea Syr. cum annotat. Gilberti Cognet. Vid. Stel. not. in frag.*

p *Pet. Mart. Comm. in* 1. *Sa.* 7.

q *Ci de Natur. deor. lib.* 3. So *Clytreus*, & before him *Eusebius* and *Plautus*, in *Mercator*. The fable of *Tamuz* is before recited, *Ez.* 11. and mentioned *Ezek.* 8. 14.

Plutarch. Nicias Ant. Marce. L. 22 & *Ib.* 19. his wounding in his thigh, saith hee, signified the cutting off the ripe corne.

Iu. Fir. de errore profan. relig.

L. Viues in Aug. de C. D. li. 8. *c.* 27.

Expunxit Index Expurgatorius.

bloudie: which alteration of the colour of the water, is the warning to that that *Mourning for Adonis*, who at that time they say is wounded in Libanus: whereas that redneſſe ariſeth indeed of the winds, which, at that time blowing violently, doe with their force carry downe alongſt the ſtreame a great quantity of that red Earth or *Minium* of Libanus, whereby it paſſeth. This conſtancy of the wind night yet ſeeme as marueilous as the other, if diuers parts of the world did not yeeld vs inſtance of the like. In Libanus alſo was an ancient Temple dedicated to *Venus* by *Cynyras*.

Aſtarte or *Aſtaroth* was worshipped in the formes of ſheepe, [r] not of the Sydonians only, but of the Philiſtims [ſ] alſo, in whoſe Temple they hanged the armour of *Saul*. And wiſe *Salomon* was brought by doting on women, to a worſe dotage of Idolatrie [t] with this Sydonian Idoll among others. And not then firſt did the Iſraelites commit that fault, but from their firſt neighbour-hood with them, preſently after the dayes of *Ioſeua*, [u] This Sidon, the ancient Metropolis of the Phœnicians (now called Saito) in likelihood was built by *Sidon*, eldeſt Sonne of *Canaan*, [x] and fell to the lot of *Aſher*, whence it is called *Great Sidon*. It was famous [y] for the fiu ſt Glaſſe-ſhops, and deſtroyed by *Ochus* the Perſian. This faire mother yeelded the world a Daughter farre fairer; namely, Tyrus, now called Sur, (whoſe glory is ſufficiently blazed by the Prophets, *Eſay*, and *Ezechiel*) being ſituate in an Iland ſeuen hundred paces from the ſhore, to which *Alexander* in his ſiege vnited it; whom it held out eight moneths (as it had done *Nabuchodonoſor* thirteene yeeres, which long ſiege is mentioned in *Ezee.26.7*) in nothing more famous, then for helping *Salomon* vnder *Hiram* their King. [z] to build the Temple, a hundred fiftie fiue yeeres before the building of Carthage. This *Hiram* ([a] *Ioſephus* reports it out of *Dius* a Phœnician Hiſtoriographer) inlarged the Citie, and compaſſed within the ſame the Temple of *Iupiter Olympius*, and (as he addeth out of *Menander Ephesius*) therein placed a golden Pillar: he pulled downe the old Temples and built new, and dedicated the Temples of *Hercules* and *Aſtarte*. *Ithobalus*, *Aſtartes* prieſt, ſlew *Phelles* the King, and vſurped the Crowne. He was great Grandfather to *Pygmalion* the brother of *Dido*, Founder of Carthage.

The Phœnicians, famous for Marchandiſe and Marinerſhip, ſailed from the red Sea round about Affrike, and returning by *Hercules* pillars, arriued againe in Ægypt the third yeere after, reporting (that which *Herodotus* [b] doubted of, and to vs makes the Storie more credible) that they ſailed to the South-ward of the Sunne: They were ſent by *Pharaoh Neco*. *Cadmus* a Phœnician was the firſt Author of Letters alſo to the Greekes. At Tyrus was the fiſhing for purple; not farre off was Arad, a populous Towne, ſeated on a rocke in the ſea, like Venice.

Alongſt the ſhore is *Ptolemais*, neere which runneth the Riuer *Belens*, and nigh to it the ſepulchre of *Mennon*, hauing hard by it, the ſpace of an hundred cubites, [c] yeelding a glaſſie ſand; and how great a quantitie ſoeuer is by ſhips carried thence, is ſupplied by the Winds, which miniſter new ſands to be by the nature of the place changed into glaſſe. That would ſeeme ſtrange, if this were not yet ſtranger, that this new glaſſe, if it bee caſt vpon the brinkes of this place, receiueth the former nature of ſand againe.

Belus and *Hercules Tyrius*, and the Sunne, called of them *Heliogabalus*, were Phœnician Deities. When *Alexander* the great imployed the greateſt of his force and cunning to winne Tyrus, and to pluck it out of the armes of *Neptune*, a faſter friend vnto her then euer *Hercules*, or *Heliogabalus* had beene; one of the Tyrians dreamed, that *Apollo* (ſo the Greekes call *Heliogabalus*) meant to forſake the Citie, whose therefore preuented with a golden chaine, wherewith hee waſtied to the Image of *Hercules* (whom ſuperſtition honoured as their moſt aſſured Patrone) from which golden thraldome *Alexander* freed him in the conqueſt of the Citie. Glorious *Alexander*, ſhall I admire thy greatneſſe, to become a Patron and Freer of the gods? or rather the blindneſſe and vanitie of Superſtition, which acknowledgeth ſuch Patrones of freedome, whom friends can binde, or enemies free; ſo making ſomewhat more colourable *Alexanders* ambition of Deity, to whom his Fortunes had made former Deities indebted for libertie. [d] *Druſius* is of opinion that diuers of theſe Phœnician Idols were deriued from names vſed in the Scriptures, ſo interpreting the words in 1. *Mac.* 3.48. *Taautus* of the Phœnicians, and the Ægyptian *Thoth* from *Thohu*, and *Baau* from *Bohu*. *Bel* from *Baal*, as *Beelſamen*; alſo *Aſtarte*, *Aithoreth*, from the ſtore of ſacrifices offered to her. [e] *Euſebius* relateth other Phœnician abominations, both bloudie and beaſtly: the one in yeerely ſacrifice of the deareſt pledges of Nature to *Saturne*: the other in that Temple of *Venus*, built in the moſt ſecret retreit of *Libanus*, where Sodome (burned with fire from aboue, and drowned in dead ſea) ſeemed to reuiue: ſuch was their practice of impure luſts, intemperately vſing the Naturall ſexe, and vnnaturally abuſing their owne: worſe in this then the Sodomites, that theſe intended ſenſualitie; they pretended Religion. *Conſtantine* raſed theſe ſuburbs of Hell, and deſtroyed both the cuſtomes, ſtatues, and temple it

r Others think this forme of ſheepe to be a ſhepeſh conceit of the R.R and ſo tribe this numerator to the multitude of ſacrifices.
ſ 1.*Sam.31.*
t 1.*Reg.11.5.*
u *Iudg.2.13.*
x *Gen.10.15.*
Iaſ.16.8.
y *Curtius Onomaſt.*
z *Aſtro mandi 2933 & d.*
a *Ioſ.cont. Ap. lib.1.*
b *Her.lib.4.*
c *Ioſeph. debel. Iu.lib.2.c.9. Pli.5.19.& 36.26. Strab.16.*
d *Druſ. note in lib.1.Maſmon.*
e *Euſeb.de laudib.Conſtan., orat & de Prep. lib.4.cap.7.*

it selfe. [f] *Augustine* saith, That the Phœnicians prostituted their daughters to *Venus*, before they married them. Of *Melcanthor*, *Vsor*, and other their gods (sometimes men) I forbeare to speake. *Alexander* [g] *ab Alexandro*, affirmeth, That the priest of the Sunne in Phœnicia, was attired with a long fleeued garment, hanging downe to the feete, and a golden Crowne.

Wee may adde to these Phœnician superstitions, their mystical interpretation by [h] *Macrobius*. Hee expoundeth *Venus* and *Adonis*, to signifie the Earth and the Sunne. The wild Boare which wounded *Adonis*, is the Winter, which for the absence of her Louer maketh the Earth to put on her mourning weedes (at whose approach she after *putteth on her new apparell*, saith [i] our English Arcadian Oracle;) This was shadowed in a certaine Image in Mount Libanus, pourtrayed in mourning habite. And to this sense he applyeth the Ægyptian rites of *Osiris* and *Isis*, and of *Orus*, which is *Apollo* or the Sunne, and likewise the Phrygian mysteries of *Attinis*, and the mother of the gods. Hee saith that they abstained from Swines flesh.

The Philistims and all that Sea-coast, by [k] *Strabo* and *Plinie*, and *Dionysius* (as is said) are reckoned to the Phœnician. Their original is attributed to *Misraim*, whose posteritie the [l] *Casluhim* and *Caphtorim* chased the *Avims*, which formerly had inhabited Palestina, and by dint of sword purchased their Countrie. They had fiue principall Cities, Ascalon, Accaron, Azotus, Gath, Gaza. Of their sheepish *Astarte* yee heard euen now, and of their Legend of *Dagon*. Their Superstitions the Scripture often [m] mentioneth. What this *Dagon* was (saith [n] *Martyr*) is not well knowne. But by the deriuation of his name (which signifieth a fish) it seemeth hee was a Sea-god. For such Sea-deities had the Greekes and Latines, as *Neptune*, *Leucothea*, *Tryton*: aboue his belly hee was of humane shape, beneath like a fish. Such is Idolatrie, diuine it will not bee, it cannot content itselfe with humane, but prouoth monstrous; in the vglie and deformed Image, exhibiting the character of the true Author of this falshood. When *Cicero* [o] saith, the Syrians worshipped a fish; it may be construed of this *Dagon*. Happily (saith [p] *Martyr*) they intended *Neptune*, or I know not what Deuill. [q] *Tremellius* thinketh *Triton*. That which in the tenth Chapter is spoken of that Monster *Oannes* fitly agrees to this *Dagon*: yea and all the legend of *Atargatis* and *Derceto*: for wee need not repeat how little constant they are in the sexes of their [r] gods, which they made male, female, or Hermaphrodites at pleasure. This may wee see and say, when men are giuen ouer to themselues, when they become beasts, monsters, deuils: yea worse then such, for while they worship such, they professe themselues (as Clients and Votaries) to be worse and baser then their Deities. *Drusius* deriueth not this *Dagon* of *Dag* a fish; but of *Dagon*, which signifieth Wheat, whereof *Eusebius* saith, *Dagon inuento frumento & aratro vocatus est, ὡς ἀφῶρος & Thilo Biblius, Dagon, ἐν ἐστι σίτος*: that is, is called Wheat or Bread-corne. But *Scaliger* [s] blameth *Philo* for that interpretation, and agreeth to that fish deitie: for *Dagon* (saith hee) is one, and *Dagon* another. He addeth that they worshipped gods in the likeness of stones, which they called *Betul* or *Baitul*, whence came the fable of the stone giuen to *Saturne* in stead of his children, to be deuoured. This (as wee haue said) seemeth borrowed from *Jacobs* anointing the stone at *Bethel*. *Saturne* had many names, *Il*, *Israel*, *Melcom*. The Tyrians worshipped his starre; *Amos* 5.26. not the planet *Saturne*, but *Luicifer*. They had their purifications in the midst of their gardens to *Adad*, of which is spoken before.

When the Philistims had placed the captiued Arke in *Dagons* Temple, hee fell on his face before the Arke: But they placing him againe in his roome, with a second fall, his head and hands were cut off vpon the threshold: *The stumpe* (or as *Tremellius* and *Vatablus* read it) *Dagon*, or that part of him which resembled a fish, remained. And, *therefore the Priests of* DAGON, *and all that come into* DAGONS *house, tread not on the threshold of* DAGON. Thus true Religion, the more opposed, the more it flourished: the prison-house of her captiuitie is the throne of her Empire: blind superstition, the more it is detected, the more enraged, addeth new deuotion, to encrease (not caring to amend) the former.

Derceto or *Dagons* Image *Lucian* [t] saith he saw in Phœnicia, not vnlike to that which is reported of the Mermayde, the vpper halfe like a woman, the other like a fish: (therefore of *Plinie* called [u] *Portiniosa*;) in reuerence of whom the Phœnicians were said to abstaine from fish. Authors doe also call this Idoll *Atergatis*: and [x] *Athenaeus* reporteth, That the Countrey-law of the Syrians deprived them of fish: and that *Gatis* (a Syrian Queene) prohibited the eating of fish *Ater Gatis*, that is, *without Gatis*, without her licence, and therefore was called *Atergatis*, as a fore-staller of the fish to her owne delicate tooth. *Mopsus* a Lydian, after drowned her in the lake of Ascalon, where this fish-deuourer was of fishes deuoured. They yet esteemed her a goddesse, and offered vnto her fishes of gold and siluer: and the Priests all day long set before her true Fishes rosted and sodden, which after themselues

f *Aug. de Ciui. Dei lib. 4. c. 10.*
g *Lib. 1. c. 8.*
h *Macrob. Saturn. lib. 1. c. 21.*
i *S. P. Sid. Art. libr. 1.*
k *Strabo lib. 16. Plin. l. 5. c. 12.*
l *Gen. 10. 14. vid. Iun. annot. Deut. 2. 23.*
m *Iudg 16. 23. 1. Sam. 5. 2.*
n *Comm. Petr. Mart. in Iud. 16.*
o *Cic. de Natur. deor. lib. 3.*
p *Petr. Mart. com. in 1. Sam. 5.*
q *Trem. annot. in Iudg. 16. 27.*
r *Drus. Quest. heb. lib. 1. qu. 22.*
s *Scal. not. in Sang.*
t *Luc. dea Syr.*
u *Plin. l. 5. c. 25*
x *Athen. l. 8. c. 6.*

10 20 30 40 50 60

selues did eate; and it is not to be doubted but the metall-mawes of those Ostriges could also digest the other.

Diodorus Siculus [x] telleth, That hard by a lake full of fish, neere vnto Ascalon was a Temple dedicated to this Fish-woman: her Storie followeth, That shee yeelding to the lust of a young man, had by that copulation *Semiramis*, whom (now too late repenting of her follie) shee exposed on the rockes, where shee was nourished by Birds: of which Birds (called in their language *Semiramis*) shee receiued that name. The Shepheards after espying this hospitalitie of the Birds, found the childe, and presented her to *Simma* the Kings Shepheard, who brought her vp as his owne daughter. The mother (not able to swallow her shame and griefe) cast her selfe into the lake to bee swallowed of the water, but there by a new Metamorphosis, was turned into a Fish, and hallowed for a goddesse; and (for company) the fishes of that lake, and the Birds of that Rocke were canonized also in this deifying deuotion.

In Ascalon was a Temple of *Apollo*: and *Herod* Father of *Antipater*, [z] Grandfather to *Herod* the Great, hence called *Ascalonita*, was seruant to *Apollo's* Priest. At Accaron was worshipped *Baalzebub*, that is, the Lord of Flies, [a] either of contempt of his idolatrie, so called; or rather of the multitude of Flies, which attended the multitude of his sacrifices, where from the sacrifices of the Temple at Ierusalem, as some say, were wholly free: or for that hee was their Larder-god (as the Romane *Hercules*) to driue away flies: or for that [a] forme of a Flie, in which he was worshipped, as *Nazianzene* against *Iulian* reporteth, He was called *Swinthius*, and as some say, *Myiodes*, and *Myiagrus*, how soeuer one of these names commeth from Mice, and the other from Flies: such mouse-eaten, flie-blowne diuinity did they professe. *Nec Muscam quærent deum Accaron*, saith *Nazianzene*, of this *Baal* or *Beelzebub*. The Arcadians [b] sacrificed and prayed to *Myiagrus*, and by that meanes were freed from danger by Flies. *Plinie* [c] reporteth, that at the Olympian games, they sacrificed a Bull to *Myiodes*; which done, clouds of Flies departed out of that territorie. And in another place [d] he sheweth that the Cyrenians sacrificed to the god *Achor* (haply the god *Accaron* here mentioned) when the multitude of Flies caused a pestilence, all which Flies thereupon presently dyed. The Iewes [e] in detestation of this Idoll tearmed him *Beelzebul*, that is, dung-bill, or dung-Iupiter. Yea *Scaliger* saith, [f] the name *Beelzebub* was in disgrace also, and that the Tyrians and Sydonians did not so call him; *Baal* or *Belus*, being a common surname to their gods, which they distinguished with some addition, as *Iupiter* was named *Beelsamen* Lord of Heauen: but the Hebrewes (and not the Phœnicians) in contempt called him *Beelzebub* or fly-Lord. This was *Iupiter Olympius*. So *Ixno* was intituled *Ἀιγυπτία* or *Heauenly*. Shee was painted at Carthage sitting on a Lyon with a Thunderbolt in her right hand, in her left a Scepter. But for *Beelzebub*, he was there *Æsculapius* or Physicke-god, as appeareth by *Abaziah* [k] who sent to consult with him in his sicknesse. And perhaps for this cause the blaspheming Pharisies, rather applyed the name of this then any other Idoll to our blessed Sauiour, [h] whom they saw indeed to performe miraculous cures, which superstition had conceiued of *Baalzebub*: and if any thing were done by that Idoll, it could by no other cause bee effected but by the Deuill, as tending (like the popish miracles) to the confirmation of Idolatrie.

What the deuill had at *Beelzebubs* shrine to this end performed, blinded with rage and malice, they imputed to the miracles of Christ, which, in regard of the *Efficient*, were more excellent then could be Satans impostures, as countermaunding him and all his proiects: for the *matter*, were meerely supernaturall; in the *Forme* were acted by his will, signified by his naked word: and for the *end* (which is [i] the onely touch-stone for vs to trie all miracles) were to seale no other truth then was contained (for substance) *in the Law and the Prophets, which hee came not to destroy, but to fulfill. If an Angell from heauen*, yea with heauenly miracles, (if it were possible) should preach vnto vs otherwise, *Paul* biddeth vs to hold him accursed: and cursed be that deuill of Hell, that vnder colour of miracles (one of Antichrists ensignes) [k] hath taught the World to worship the [l] Lipsian, [m] Lauretan, and I know not what other Ladies: not that *Virgin*, on Earth holy, in Heauen glorious; but their Idol-conceits, and idol-blockes of her. Our Lord hath taught vs plainly in *Matthew, to serue God only*, without sophisticall distinctions.

As for the Heathenish and Popish, and all those other packets of miracles, which we receiue by the Iesuits annuall relations from the East and West Indies; I esteeme them with Doctor *Hall* (a hall of Eleganee) *That they are either falsly reported, or falsely done, or falsely miraculous, or falsely ascribed to Heauen*. But I know not how (pardon it Reader) I am transported to *Hale*, *Zachem*, and *Loretto*, from our Phœnician ports. The name of *Beelzebub* hath beene occasion of this parenthesis. But the power of *Beelzebub* (I feare) hath induced *Bellarmine* [n] to fall downe, and thus to worship him, for his *purple* aduancement. For amongst the Notes of the Church, he hath reckoned for one, *this of miracles, maius ipse miraculum*, a greater

x *Diod. Sic. li. 3. cap. 2.*

y *Ioseph. l. 1. c. 9*

z *Pet. Martin 2. Reg. 1.*

a *D. Chytræ. onomast.*

b *Pausan. Arcad.*

c *Plin. l. 29. c. 6. vide Lil. Gyral. Syntag. 1. & Anna. Gent. Hermet. in Clem. pag. 45.*

d *Plin. l. 10. c. 28.*

e *Drusgrat. ad Mat. 10. Exsyber. Misnoth. gad. Iupiter stercoreus.*

f *Scal. not. in frag. Berosi.*

g *2. Reg. 1. 2.*

h *Math. 10. 25*

i *Deut. 13. 2.*

k *2. Thes. 2. 9.*

l *L. pius virgo Halensis &c.*

m *Historia Lauretum. Turselini.*

Mat. 4. 10.

D *Hall dec. 2. Epist. 6.*

n *Bell. de notis Ecclesiæ sic Tho. a Iesu l. 8. alij.*

greater miracle hee, that now will not beleeue without miracles *that Gospel*, which at first was thereby sufficiently proued. We reade that the [o] *Iewes seeke for signes*, and are therefore called, [p] *an euill and adulterous generation*; and not onely *false Christs and false prophets, and Antichrist himselfe*, but the heathens had their Legends of miracles: as the whole course of our Historie will shew. Goe now and reckon a Catalogue of miracles through all Ages, euen to the time of blessed *Ignatius* and his *Societie*: and aske of vs miracles for proofe of our doctrine. Our doctrine hath alreadie by the Apostles and Prophets (Pen-men of holy Scriptures) beene prooued that way; and we leaue ro you the stile of *Mirabiliary* Miracle-mongers, which *Augustine* for like bragges of things miraculously wrought by them, gliueth the Donatists. With vs, Miracles must be prooued by the Truth and the Church, and not they by miracles. But let vs come backe to Phœnicia.

o *Mat.12.38.*
p *Mat.24.24.*
Aug.B.Tract. in 10.13.

The Phœnicians are accounted first Authors of Arithmeticke and Astronomie; as also of the Art of Nauigation (*Primo ratem ventis credere doctus Tyrus*, saith *Tibullus*) and obserued the North-starre to that Sea-skill. The Sydonians are reputed first authors of Weights and Measures. [q] *Herodotus* affirmeth, that the Phœnicians, which came with *Cadmus* into Greece, taught the Grecians both other Sciences, and also *Letters* [r] which before that time they knew not. These letters after changed their sound and forme, being by the Ionicks principally learned, who called them *Phœnician*, and called their Skinnes or Parchments *biblos* (haply of *Biblos* in Phœnicia.) Hee saw the Cadmean letters engrauen in a Temple at Thebes, much like the Ionike, then the onely Greeke letters, out of certaine old inscriptions, much resembling the present Latine Letters; and the auncienter Phœnician (I may say with him, the auncientest) vsed by the Canaanites and Hebrewes of old, and by the Samaritanes at this day: For those which the Iewes now vse, he affirmeth to be new, corrupted from the Syrian, and these from the Samaritan. His learned discourse thereof were worthy the reading, but here would be too prolixe.

q *Herod.Terpsi.*
r *Phœnices primi, famæ si credimus ausi, Mansuram rudibus vocem signare figuris. Lucan. Hic geni li ter ac primus, & docuit & auxit, Curt. vnde & ab Ausonio Cadmi Nigra filæ vocantur.*
1. Amin.ad.in Eusebi Chron. pag.1.23. & d. 1.13.
t *Ortho Herr. Caldæus.*

Heurnius (I know not by what authoritie) saith, that the Phœnicians before the Israelites departed out of Ægypt, vsed Hieroglyphicall letters, which hee thinketh they learned of *Abraham*, the same with *Seth* and *Henoch* had vsed before. *Moses* (if yee beleeue it) receiued the first Alphabetary letters in the table of the Decalogue: and from the Hebrews the Phœnicians. Out of an old booke he citeth these verses which I thought not vnworthy the transcribing, concerning the first Authours in inuenters of letter.

o Moses inuented the Hebrew letters, the Phœnicians the Arabic, *Nicostrata* the Latin, *Abraham* the Syrian (he meaneth the Phœnician) & Chaldæan, *Isis* the Ægyptian, *Gussila* the Gotish.

Moses [u] *primus Hebraicas excaruit literas:*
Mente Phœnices sagaci considerunt Atticas:
Quas Latini scriptitamus edidit Nicostrata:
Abraham Syrias & idem reperit Chaldaicas:
Isis arte non min. re protulit Ægyptias:
Gussila pr. mpsit Getarum quas videmus vltimas.

He addeth also that the ancient learning which the Phœnicians had receiued from the Hebrewes and Chaldees, passed into Europe by *Cadmus* who founded Thebes, and into Affrica by *Elissa* (after her selfe inflicted death called *Dido*, i. *Virago*, a woman of resolution & courage) who fleeing *Pygmalion*, first seyzed on the Iland Cothone, and nine yeeres after tooke Tharsus, which the posteritie of *Gomer* had there built, which she called Karthada, that is, halfe citie, because the one halfe thereof were Phœnicians: to which agreeth the testimony of *Saluianus*, that Carthage had in it Schooles of liberall Arts and Philosophie. Hee citeth *Aristoteles* testimonie of *Hog* a Phœnician Philosopher, whom hee thinketh to bee that King of Bashan which *Moses* conquered. *Dyllis Cretensis* (if his testimonie be authentical) testifieth that the Grecian Gallants which besieged Troy, chose *Agamemnon* for their Generall, writing his name in Punike Letters. And this storie was also written in Punike letters, as the Interpreter affirmeth.

Karthage.
Dyll. Cret. lib. 1.
Q. Septim. Rom.
P. Æmyl. in L. Crassi.

But how the posteritie of Letter-inuenters were by letters circumuented, it will not bee an vnwelcome stratagemme to our Reader. When the Christian forces in the time of *Ludouicus Crassus* besieged Tyrus by sea and land, a Doue was seene to come flying, and deemed by expert men which had seene experience of the like, to carry letters to the besieged: whereupon a terrible shout was raised through the armie, which rent the aire with such violence, or else so amazed the seely Doue, that downe shee fell; They tooke her letter from her, wherein was contained that the Tyrians should be of good courage, and shortly relieife should be sent. This tooke away and fastned another of contrarie tenure to this swift carrier, which presently conueyed the same to her home at Tyrus, and with her counterfait newes caused the Tyrians to yeeld. *Dionys. Alexandrinus* called *Tyrus Sycyolus* for the Antiquitie. The Greekes, because they could not pronounce the letter Tsadi, called it *Tyrus*, for Sur, or Tsur, as it is there called.

They carrie Doues from their houses or Louures into farre places, & fastning a letter ther fly *Dion. in Amos.*

Of

Of the Phœnician Kings here might be inserted a large Historie; but I feare tediousnesse. Their Catalogue is thus in *Scaligers* x Canons; first *Abibalus*, two yeeres; *Hiovom*, the sonne of *Abibalus* 38. yeeres; *Leazaros*, 7. *Abdesharrus*, 9. the Nurces sonne 12. *Asharrus Dalezastri F.* 12. *Aserymus*, 9. *Pheles*, 8. moneths; *Itholbal*, the Priest of Astarte, 32. yeers; *Badezorus*, 6. *Margenus* 9. *Pygmalion*, 47. In his time *Dido* fled into Libya. A long time after this raigned another *Itobalus*, 19. yeeres; *Baal*, 10. and then Iudges ruled: *Ecnibalus*, 2. moneths; *Helbes*, 10. moneths: *Abbarus*, the high Priest, 11. moneths; *Balator*, 1. yeere; *Mytgonus* and *Gerestratus*, 6. *Merbal* (sent from Babylon) 4. *Hierom* his brother, 20. Thus much out of the Phœnician Antiquities: the rest of their Historie is for substance, the same with the Syrian before handled.

x *Can. Isaong. l. 1. ex. M. E.*

Ioppe y (saith *Mela* and *Plinie*) was built before the Floud; and *Cepheus* raigned there, witnesse certaine ancient Altars, there obserued religiously, and bearing titles of him and his brother *Phineus*. They shew monstrous bones, the Reliques of the Whale, from which *Perseus* freed *Andromeda*. Mount Casius had in it the Temple of *Iupiter Casius*, and *Pompeys* tombe. *Albertus Aquensis* relating the exploits of the Westerne Christians in that inuasion of *Godfrie* of *Buillon*, saith that in the parts of Tyre and Sidon they were stung with a kind of Serpent called Tarenta, which caused them with intollerable burning, swelling, and thirst to perish. The remedies are strange, the touch of some Chieftaines, in the armie vpon the wound, or this, *vt vir percussus coiret cum muliere, cum viro mulier.*

y *P. Mela lib. 2. c. 11. Plin. l. 5. cap. 13.*

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Palestina, and the first inhabitants thereof, the Sodomites, Idumeans, Moabites, Ammonites, and Canaanites, with others.

PHœnicia is stretched by some (as you may reade) euen to Ægypt, all alongst that Sea-coast, and in that respect partly, and partly because they obserued some neerenesse in Religion, I haue adioyned the Philistims to the Phœnicians: howbeit, others doe confine Phœnicia betwixt the Riuer Valania and Mount Carmel. Thus hath a *Brocard* written, and after him *Maginus*; who doe reckon vnto Palæstina, Galilæa, Samaria, Iudæa, and Idumæa, leauing out Phœnicia, bounded as aforesaid, to make a part of Syria by it selfe. Of this Region I purpose to make larger discourse in the next Chapter; here intending to rake out of their dust the ancient Nations which inhabited this Land, before the Israelites were Lords thereof. The Sodomites sometimes inhabited a pleasant and fertile valley, watered by Iordan, which *Moses* compareth b *to the garden of the Lord, and the Land of Ægypt*, for pleasure and plenty. To the Sodomites I reckon also those other Cities partakers of the same both fertilitie and vengeance, *Gomorrha, Adma, Zeboim, and little Zoar*, faued at the request of *Lot*. Their Kings and their Warres are mentioned, *Gen.* 14. Their *wickednesse* in many places of Scripture; which *Ezechiel* c reduceth to these foure heads, *Pride, Gluttonie, Idlenesse, and Cruelties* or hard-heartednesse. Their *Iudgement* both *Moses* and others, and the place it selfe doe record. Their *Religion* was an irreligion, and prophane contempt of God and man. Europe (I would I could not say England) can now yeeld the like: sauing that in our subtile, and more warie age, Policie, hauing eaten vp Religion, hath with the bloud thereof dyed her cheekes, and would seeme more shamefac'r than those former Sodomites. Thus did d *Esay* speake to *the Princes of Sodome* (in his time) *and the people of Gomorrha*, in respect of *that* their wickednesse, which suruiued them, and hath fructified vnto vs, among whom yet the Lord of Hoasts (as with them) hath reserued a small remnant from this worse plague then *Sodoms* brimstone, *a Reprobate sense*. The difference betwixt ours and them is, that they were more open, ours more close, both in like height, but not in like weight of wickednesse; our darknesse excelling theirs both in the sinne, and in the punishment, in as much as a greater light hath shined, which we *with-hold in vnrighteousnesse*. And if you will haue the maine character of difference betwixt these and those; the one are beastly Men, the other are Deuils in the flesh.

a *Brocard. de script. Terræ sanctæ, Maginus Geogr.*

b *Gen. 13. 10.*

c *Ezek. 16. 49.*

d *Esa. 1. 10.*

First, from a sparke of Hell *Concupiscence*, (guided by *Sensuall Lust*, attended by e *Ease and Prosperitie*, and further inflamed and blowne by the Deuill) an *vnnaturall fire*, (which still beareth the name of *Sodomie*) was kindled; which gaue coales to a supernaturall flame, *raised by the* LORD *in Brimstone and fire from the* LORD *out of Heauen*, and burning euen to Hell againe (the *Alpha* and *Omega* of wickednesse) where they suffer, (saith *Iude*) f *the vengeance*

e *Pro. 1. 32.*

f *Iude v. 7.*

f 2.Pet.3.6. *geance of eternall fire. This* f *is written for our learning, on whom the ends of the world are come,* their ashes being made an example vnto them that should after liue vngodly. Let not any obiect the Preacher here, and require the Historian, seeing that Historie builds no castles in the ayre, but preacheth both cuill and diuine knowledge by examples of the paised, vnto the present Ages. And why should not I preach this, which, not me calling alone, but the very place it selfe exacteth? *Discite iustitiam monits*, is the quintessence of all Historie.

They being dead, yet speake, and the place of their buriall, is a deare memorie, being turned into a Sea (but a *Dead Sea* g) which couereth their sinnes, that it may discouer ours; which, as astonished at their vnnaturalnesse, hath forgotten her owne nature. It drowneth the Earth, which it should haue made (as whilome it did) fertile: it staies it selfe with wonder and indignation, and falling in a dead swowne, sincketh downe with horrour, not wakened, not mouued with the windes blustering; refusing the light of the Sunne, the lappe of the Ocean, the Commerce of strangers, or familiarity of her owne; and (as it happeneth in deepe passions, the colour goeth and commeth, changing three times euery day: it gasperh foorth from her dying entrailes a stincking and noylome ayre, to the neere dwellers pestiferous, sometimes voyding (as it were excrements) both lighter ashes, and grosse *Asphaltum*: The neighbour fruits participate of this death, promising to the eye toothsome and wholesome foode, performing only smoake and ashes. And thus hath our GOD shewed himselfe *a consuming fire, the* LORD *of anger, to whom vengeance belonged*; all Creatures mustering themselues in his sight, and saying, at his first call to execution, *Loe, we are heere*. That which I haue said of these miracles, still liuing in this dead-Sea, is confirmed by testimonie of many h Authors. *Brocard* telleth of those Trees with ashes growing vnder Engaddi, by this Sea; and a vapour, rising out of the Sea, which blasteth the neighbour-fruits; and the i slimie pits on the brinkes of the Sea, which hee saw. Neither strangers nor her owne haue accesse there, where Fishes (the naturall inhabitants of the Waters) and Water-fowles (the most vsuall ghests) haue no entertainment; and men, or other heauie bodies cannot sinke. *Vespasian* prooued this experiment, by casting in some bound, vnskilfull of swimming, whom the waters (surfetted with swallowing her owne) spewed vp againe. This is mentioned by *Aristotle* k also, who saith that the saltnesse there of is the cause why neyther man nor beast (though bound) can sinke in it, nor any fish liue therein; which yet in the salt-sea wee see no otherwise. The Philosopher could see no further then reason, nor all that neither: but *Moses* guideth vs beyond Philosophie to diuine vengeance, which thus subuerted Nature, when men became vnnaturall. The Lake, *Iosephus* saith, is fiue hundred and foure score furlongs in length, (*Plinie* hath an hundred myles) the breadth, betweene sixe and fiue and twenty myles. *Strabo* telleth of thirteene Cities still, whereof Sodome was chiefe, of threescore furlongs compasse; whereof some were consumed by fire, or swallowed by Earth-quakes and sulphurous Waters, the rest forsaken: some Remainders (as bones of those carkasses) then in his time continuing, and that the Earth is without water, and barren, and (a greater miracle) hath a kinde of bloody mixture, somewhat like red waxe, the depth of three or foure cubites. The ruines of the Cities are there seene still. *Georgius Cedrenus* in his Greeke History written aboue fiue hundred and fiftie yeeres since, writeth, that hee had seene this dead-Sea, and reckoneth thereof these matuells: That it produceth no quicke Creature; that dead carkasses sinke therein; a liuing man can scarcely diue vnder water; lamps burning swimme, but being put out, they sinke; there are fountaines of Bitumen; allume also and salt, but bitter and shining. Where any fruit is found, nothing is found but smoake. The water thereof is holesome to such as vse it, but differing from other waters in contrarie accidents. Not long after his time *Fulcherius Carnotensis* (in the beginning of the Westerne kingdome in these parts) testifieth the vnrolerable saltnesse of this sea from his owne taste: And that neere the same is a hill, which in diuers places thereof is likewise salt, shining therewith like ice, and hard as stone; and ghesseth that the saltnesse of this sea proceedeth partly from that cause, partly from the intercourse which vnder the earth it holdeth with the greater sea. Compassing this lake on the South side, we came to a Village which they say is Segor, abounding with Dates, where the Inhabitants were blacke. And there (saith he) did I see apples on the trees, which when I opened, I found blacke and dustie within. * The like is read *Sap.10.7. Of whose wickednesse euen to this day, the waste Land that smoketh is a testimony, and plants bearing fruits that neuer came to ripenesse, and a standing pillar of Salt, is a monument of an vnbeleeuing soule. They left behind them to the World, a memoriall of their foolishnesse, &c.* And *Moses, Deut.29.23. their vine is of the vine of* Sodom, *and of the vine of* Gomorrah, *their grapes are grapes of gall, their clusters are bitter, &c.* Which allegorie must haue his foundation in the naturall disposition of those places and fruits. Later Trauellers (as *William Lithgow*, and

g Iordan runneth into the Dead Sea, and there flayeth without issue to the Ocean.

h *Ioseph. de bel. Iud.l.5.c.5. Cornel. Tacit. hist.lib.5.* These two describe it at large. Also *Strabo, lib.16. Plin.lib.5.c.16.* besides the moderne and elder Christians. *Ptolemey* placeth the middest thereof in 66.50.& 81.10.& 7.c.16.

i *Gen.14.10.*

k *Arist.Meteor. lib.2.cap.3.*

l *Lyver.l.1.c.9.*

and I haue heard the like of Master *Eldred)* which haue seene these parts, say, there are now no such fruits: which may come to passe by that alteration which so long space may cause, or else, because they visited not those parts which *Fulcherius* mentions. *Lithgow* addes, that the water of this dead Sea (contrarie to the former report) beares nothing on the top, no not the weight of a feather. The water is blackish, and at sometimes presents terrible shapes; perhaps of bituminous matter congealed. There growes neither bush nor treenectre to Sodome by many miles: and in his Journey thither they passed such sands, that their Mulets could not bear them, and lighting they waded therein sometimes to the middle, and sometimes ouer head and eares, the Arabs also at the same time molesting them
10 with arrowes shot from places of more secure footing.

Idumæa lieth Southward from Iudæa: it had name of *Edom*, the sir-name of *Esau*, sonne of *Isaak*. The historie of this people, and the Horites, whom the children of *Esau* expelled, succeeding in their inheritance, is related by [m] *Moses*. It was subdued by *Dauid*, according to the prophecie, *The elder shall serue the younger*. They rebelled vnder *Ioram*, the sonne of *Iehosaphat*; as *Isaak* had also prophesied. From that time they continued bitter enemies to the people of GOD, [n] till *Hircanus*, the sonne of *Simon* compelled them to accept both the Iewish Dominion and Religion: after which they were reckoned amongst the Iewes. Of the Idumæans, were the Amalekites, [o] destroyed by *Saul*. They were South from Iuda. [p] *Eliphaz* the Themanite, it seemeth, was of *Esau* his generation, and of the
20 right *Religion*. The Idumæans, Moabites, and Ammonites, are by some placed in Arabia, of which I will not contend: I here mention them, as both borderers and subiects to the Israelites; of which wee reade much in the Scripture; little elsewhere that maketh to our purpose. South from Amalek was Kedar, a Countrey abounding with flockes of Sheepe and Goates, But I may not now dwell *in the Tents of Kedar*, till I come to the Ismaelites.

On [q] the East-side of the Lake of Sodome, is that Region which the Moabites (so often in Scripture mentioned) sometimes inhabited: and before them the Emims, which were Giants, tall as the Anakims, *Deut.* 2. 10. The Moabites were the posteritie of *Lot*, by incest with his daughter. [r] *Moab* had on the East the Mountaines of Horeb; on the
30 West the salt Sea, and part of Iordan; Arnon on the South, and the North border stretched from Iabbok to the Mountaines of Pisga. That part of their Countrey, betweene Iabbok and Arnon, *Sihon* King of the Amorites had taken from them, and lost againe to the Israelites. *Balac* their King fearing to lose the rest, sent for *Balaam* the Wizard to curse the Israelites; who yet, by Diuine power, was forced to blesse them. Yet the lustre of *Balacs* promises so dazeled his eyes, that [s] hee taught *Balac to put a stumbling blocke before the Israelites*, and by sending amongst them their women to draw them to carnall and spirituall whoredome; so to prouoke the wrath of GODS iealousie against them. But the zeale of *Phineas* stayed it; and *Balaam*, in his returne homeward to his Countrey of Mesopotamia, was slaine by the Israelites among the Madianites, partakers with the Moabites in *Balaams*
40 idolatrous proiect. These Madianites descended of *Abraham*, [t] by *Keturah*, and dwelt in a part of Arabia, neere to the Moabites, on the East. Some of them dwelt neere to Mount Sinai, *Exod.* 2. 15. and in the Desart, on the East side of the Red Sea. Their mightie Armie was miraculously destroyed by [u] *the Sword of the* LORD, and *Gedeon*. The Moabites were subiected to Israel by *Dauid*, and so continued to the Kings of Samaria, till, but State being rent, they freed themselues. It seemeth they worshipped the Sunne: as the names *Kircheresheth*, *Beth-Baalmeon*, and *Balacs* high places doe shew, and wee haue obserued before in the worship of *Bel* and *Baal*. *Chemosh* was another Idoll of theirs, to which *Salomon* built an high place. *Peher* also, and *Baal-peher*, and the rest, whose Rites are now
50 rotten, and the memorie worne out. This his name, it seemes, was borrowed of the hill *Peor*, mentioned by *Moses*, Where it is likely he had his Altars and Temple. [x] *Origen* saith, the name *Baal-peor* signifieth filthinesse, but what filthinesse hee knew not: *Salomon Iarchi* writeth, that they offered to him ordure, placing before his mouth the likenesse of that place which Nature hath made for egestion. Saint *Ierome* [y] thought him to bee the same with *Priapus*, and worshipped of the women *ob Obscœni magnitudinem*. And so *Isidore*. *Moses* mentions *Beth peor*, whereby it appeares hee had a Temple. *Dauid* ascribeth to his worship the eating of the sacrifices of the dead: such it is like as the Heathen offered in memorie of the dead. But some [z] ascribe these conceits of dung-offerings to Iewish malice: and agree not to that *Priapeian* coniecture.

In their Rebellion against *Ieboram* King of Israel, hee and *Iehosaphat* King of Iuda, with
60 the King or Vice-roy of Idumæa, went to recouer them by force. The Moabite, in despaire, offered a bloudie Sacrifice of his eldest sonne and heire; or, as *Tremellius* readeth it, *The* [a] *King of Edoms sonne*: which caused the Israelites to returne. The Ammonites and

m *Gen.* 36. *Deut.* 2. 22.

n *Ios. Antiq* 13.

o 1. *Sam.* 15.

p *Iob.* 2. 11.

q Moabites & Madianites.

r *Arius Montanus.*

s *Apoc.* 2. 14.

t *Abrahams* children by *Keturah* were authors of the Nations called *Filij Orientis*, the children of the East, which inhabited the parts of Arabia betweene the Moabites, Ammonites, & the Persians, & Chaldæans, from Mesopotamia to the Persian gulfe.

u *Iudg.* 7. 20.

x *Orig. in Num. hom.* 20.

y *Hier. in Osee.* 4.

Isid. Etym. l. 8.

Deut. 34.

Psal. 106.

z *Seld. de D. Syr.*

a 2. *Reg.* 3. 27.

Moabites might not enter into the Congregation of GOD, vnto the tenth Generation, because [a] they met not the Israelites *with the bread and water in their way, when they cam out of Ægypt, and for hiring* Balaam *against them*. *Arias Montanus* saith, That the Moabites were circumcised in imitation of the Israelites, but worshipped not their God, but their owne Idols.

a *Deut.* 23. 3.

The [b] Ammonites (their brethren in the euill both of *Lot* their father, and their owne) inhabited Northward from Moab; on the East were the hills Arabim; on the West the Amorite; the hills Luith, Basan, &c. made it a valley. Their chiefe Citie was Rabbath, after called Philadelphia. These Ammonites had beene troublesome to the Israelites, in the times of [c] *Iephte* and of [d] *Saul*. And after, *Dauid* in iust reuenge, for violating the Law of Nations, destroyed them. *Moloch*, or *Melchon*, was their Idoll, which is supposed [e] to be *Saturne*, whose bloudie but chetly sacrifices are before spoken of. The word signifieth a King: as Mithra signifies a Lord: and it is like, that these Easterne Nations intended, (as the Phœnicians also in their Adad) that *One* and Great GOD, *Rex deorum*: although as to the King of visible creatures, these mysteries were applied to the Sunne likewise. Certaine it is that these *Moloch-sacrifices* passed hence into Affrike, as there shall bee obserued. It was a hollow Image (saith [f] *Lyra*) of Copper, in forme of a man. In the hollow concauitie was made a fire, with which the Idoll being heated, they put a child into his armes, and the Priests made such a noise with their Timbrels, that the cries of the child might not moue the parents to compassion, but they should rather thinke the childs soule receiued of the god into rest and peace: others [g] adde, That this *Moloch* had seuen Roomes, Chambers, or Ambries therein; one for Meale; a second for Turtles; a third for Sheepe; the fourth receiued a Ramme; the fift a Calfe; the sixt an Oxe: if a man would offer sonne or daughter, the seuenth was readie for that cruelti. Some interprete *Moloch* and *Remphan*, *Act.* 7. to bee the Sunne and Moone. The Talmudists [h] would persuade men that they did not burne their children in this *Moloch-sacrifice*, but only the father tooke his children and moued them to and fro thorow the fire, none otherwise then at this time on Saint *Iohn Baptists* day, when the Sunne passeth thorow *Cancer*, children vse to leape thorow bone-fires. But both Scripture and Heathen Authors write otherwise. *Moloch* is also [i] called *Baal*.

b The Ammonites succeeded the Gigants called Zamzummims. *Deut.* 2. 20.
c *Iud.* 11. 5.
d 1. *Sam.* 11.
e P. *Martir* in 2. *Reg.* 2. *Vatab.* in *Leu.* 18.
f *Lyra* in *Leu.* 18.
g *Aret.* in *Act.* 7. ex P. *Vag.* *refert.* I. *White.*
h *Lib. Sanhedrim, vid.* P. *Ric.* *proc. prohib.* 40. & *Rombam Moreh, Neb.* l. 3. c. 38.
i *Ier.* 19. 5.

There was a valley neere Hierusalem (sometime possessed by the sonne of [k] *Hinnom*) where the Hebrewes built a notorious high place to *Moloch*: it was on the East and South part of the Citie. It was also called Topheth, or Tymbrell, of that Tymbrell-rite, which those *Corribantes* and bloudie Priests did vse; or else for the spaciousnesse of ire. [l] *Ieremie* prophecieth, That it should be called the Valley of slaughter, because of the iudgements for the idolatrous high places in it. Vpon the pollution hereof, by slaughter and burials, it grew so execrable, that Hell inherited the same name, called *Gehenna*, of this place: first, of the lownesse, being a Valley: secondly, for the Fire, which neere the children, there the wicked, sustaine: thirdly, because all the filth was cast out of the Citie hither, it seemed they held some resemblance. The Ammonites also were (as *Montanus* affirmeth) [m] circumcised.

k P. *Mart.* in 2. *Reg.* 2. *Chyr.* *Onomast.*
l *Ier.* 7. 31, 32.
m *Vt Ægypti, Arabes, &c.*

Canaan was the sonne of *Cham*, Father of many Nations, as [n] *Moses* declareth, *Sidon* and *Heth*, *Iebusi*, *Emori*, *Girgashai*, *Hivi*, *Arki*, *Sini*, *Aruadi*, *Zemari*, *Hamathi*; the most of which were expelled their Countrey, slaine or made tributarie by the Israelites. Their border was from Sidon to Gaza West, and on the East side from Sodome to Lasha or Callyrrhoe. [o] *Arias Montanus* is of opinion, that according to the number of the twelue Tribes of Israel, so were the people of Canaan: and therefore to those eleuen before rehearsed, he addeth their Father *Canaan*, who left his name to them all; and where he liued, retained a part to himselfe, betweene the Philistims and Amorites. Of those his sonnes, *Sidon*, the eldest, inhabited the Sea-coast: and Eastward from him *Heth*, vnto the hill Gilboa: of him came the Hittites. *Iebus* went further, on the right-hand: *Emor* inhabited the midland Countrey Westward from the Iebusites. The Girgashite dwelt aboue the Hittite, next to Iordan, and the lake Chinereth (so called, because it resembleth the forme of a Harpe) after called Gennezareth. The Heuite or Hiuite inhabited betweene the Amorite and the Philistim. The Arkite possessed the rootes of Libanus. The Sinite dwelt beyond the Hittite, Eastward, neerer to Iordan. *Aruadi* enioyed the Countrey next to the Wildernesse of Cades. *Zemari* obtained the Hills, called of him Semaraim. The Hamathite possessed the Countrey nigh to the Fountaines of Iordan. As For the most notable Mountaines and Cities, which each of these Families enioyed, they which will, may reade further in the same Author.

n *Gen.* 10. 15.
o *Antiq. Iudaic.* lib. 3. cap. 7.

Of these and their ancient Religions and Policies wee find little or nothing but in the Scripture, where the Lord testifieth, that for their sinnes, *the Land spued them out*. Some of them

them (as some thinke) fled into Africa: where *Augustine* p saith, that the Countrey people, inhabiting neere Hippon, called themselues in their Punike Language *Chanani.*

p Exposit. ep. ad Rom. inchoat.

Procopius, in the fourth booke of the Vandale warre, affirmeth, That all the Sea-coast, in those times, from Sidon to Ægypt, was called Phœnicia: and that when *Iosbua* inuaded them they left their Countrey, and fled into Ægypt, there multiplied, and pierced further into Africa; where they possessed all that Tract, vnto the Pillars of *Hercules*, speaking halfe Phœnician. They build the Citie Tinge or Tanger in Numidia, where were two Pillars of white stone, placed neere to a great Fountaine, in which, in the Phœnician tongue, was ingrauen: *Wee are Canaanites, whom* IOSHVA *the Thiefe chased away.* Which if it were so, the name of *Hercules* might therefore bee ascribed to those Pillars, as accounted the chiefe Phœnician Idoll.

Philo q (or the Author of those fabulous Antiquities) sayth, That the Israelites found among the Amorites, seuen golden Images, called *Nymphes*, which, as Oracles, directed them in their affaires, and wrought wonders: the worke of *Canaan, Phut, Selah, Nebroth, Elath, Desvat*, of admirable workmanship, yeelding light in the night, by vertue of certaine stones, which could not by mettall be broken, or pierced, or be consumed by fire, but must needs haue an Angell to burie them in the depth of the Sea, and there *let them lie.*

q Pseudo Philo de Ant. Bib.

This people was not vtterly at once destroyed, but sometime, as in the dayes of r *Iabin* and *Sisera*, conquered their Conquerors, and retayned some power and name of a People, till the times of *Dauid*, who destroyed the Iebusites, and dwelt in the Fort of Sion, calling it after his owne name, s The Citie of *Dauid*. And in the dayes of *Salomon, Pharao*, King of Ægypt, tooke and burnt Gezer, and slue the Canaanites that dwelt in the Citie, and gaue it for a present to his daughter, *Salomons* wife. And all the people that were left of the Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Hiuites, and Iebusites, whom the children of Israel were not able to destroy, those did *Salomon* make tributaries vnto this day, 1. *King.* 9. 16, 20, 21. The posteritie of these *seruants* of *Salomon* are mentioned t among the Israelites, which returned from the Babylonian Captiuitie, and accrued into one People with them.

r Iudg. 4. 2.

s 2. Sam. 5. 7.

t Nehem. 7. 60.

OF THE HEBREW NATION, AND RELIGION, FROM THE BEGINNING THEREOF TO OVR TIMES.

THE SECOND BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

The Preface of this Booke: and a Description of the Region of Palæstina, since called Iudæa, and now, Terra Sancta.

IN the former Booke we haue traced the foot-steps of Religion, following Her in Her wanderings from the Truth, and Her selfe through diuers Nations, till we came into *this Land*, sometime *flowing with Milke and Hony*; whose first inhabitants we last tooke view of. The Hebrews were, by the Soueraign Lord of all, made heires of their labours, and possessed both their place and wealth; *Houses and Cities which they builded not, Vineyards which they planted not*; and which is more, these were a type vnto them of the true and heauenly Countrey, which not by their merits, but by the mere mercy of the Promiser, they should enioy. These did GOD choose of all the Kindreds of the Earth, to make vnto himselfe [a] *a Kingdome of Priests, a holy Nation, and his chiefe treasure aboue all people, though all the Earth be his: He made them the Keepers* [b] *of his Oracles*, bestowing on them [c] *the Adoption, and the Glorie, and the Couenants, and the giuing of the Law, and the Seruice of God, and the Promises: of whom were the Fathers, and of whom concerning the flesh Christ came, who is God ouer all, blessed for euer, Amen.* These things were not onely communicated, but appropriated to them: [d] *He shewed his Word vnto* IACOB, *his Statutes and his Iudgements vnto* ISRAEL: *He dealt not so with any Nation, neither had the Heathen knowledge of his Lawes:* hee was their prerogatiue, and they his peculiar: [e] *In Iewrie was* GOD *knowne, his Name was great in Israel: In Salem was his Tabernacle, and his dwelling in Sion.* And Christ himselfe ratified it, acknowledging himselfe [f] *sent to the lost sheepe of the house of Israel*, [g] *a Minister of the Circumcision*, and said to the Canaanite woman which besought him for her daughter, *It is not good to take the childrens breed, and to cast it to Dogs.* Such, in spirituall reputation before GOD were all people, excluded (as vncleane Dogs) out of his heauenly Ierusalem, till this [h] *partition wall was taken downe, and they which had beene farre off, were made neere by the bloud of Christ, who abrogated through his flesh that hatred, and made of twaine* (Iewes and Gentiles) *one new man in himselfe.* So that the Gentiles (the name of all the World, exceptingthis people) which had beene *without Christ, and aliants from the Common-wealth of Israel, strangers from the Couenants of promise, had no hope, and were without* GOD *in the world; were now no more strangers and forreiners, but Citizens with the Saints, and of the houshold of* GOD; *built vpon the foundation of the Prophets and Apostles, Iesus Christ himselfe being the chiefe corner stone.* Let it not bee tedious to heare of this, which the Angels reioyced to learne, [i] *a Mysterie which from the beginning of the world had beene hid in* GOD: *and vnto Principalities and Powers in heauenly places, was made knowne by the Church.* But *the Word* (whereby we haue fellowship in this mysterie) *came out of Sion, and the preaching began at Ierusalem.* This (and not Rome) by the confession of *Eusebius*, aleaned Pruist [k], was *Emporium fidei Christiana, & Ecclesiæ Mater: The Mart of Christian faith, and Mother of the Church.* [l] *Yea, it was necessarie that the Word of* GOD *should first be spoken vnto them, which they by incredulitie put from themselues, and gaue place to the Gentiles.* [m] *The fall of them became the riches of the World, and the diminishing of them the riches of the Gentiles,*

a *Exod.19.5, 6.*
b *Rom.3.2.*
c *Rom.9.4,5.*
d *Psal.147.20.*
e *Psal.76.1,3.*
f *Mat.15.24.*
g *Rom.15.8.*
h *Ephes.2.14, &c.*
i *Ephes.3.9,10.*
k *C. Euseb. in 1. Tim. 4.*
l *Acts 13.46.*
m *Rom.11.12.*

Gentiles, as a Glasse, wherein *we may behold the bountifulnesse and seuerities of* GOD, *and in both the deepnesse of the riches of the wisedome and knowledge of* GOD, *whose Iudgements are vnsearchable, and his wayes past finding out.* I may fitly compare them to *Gideons Fleece*, [n] *which receiued the dew, when all the Earth besides was drie, and after, it was drie vpon the Fleece onely, when the dew couered all the ground.* Sometimes they alone receiued all those Dewes, Showers, Riuers, Seas of sauing Bountie, and all the world besides was a parched wildernesse. Now, [o] *he turneth the fruitfull Land into barrennesse, for the wickednesse of the Inhabitants*; but that *Wildernesse he turneth into Pooles of water, and the drie Land into water-springs. Hee hath* [p] *called them his people which were not his people, and her beloued which was not beloued*; *and where it was said, Ye are not my people, there they are now called the children of the liuing* GOD. Thus hath hee [q] *set vp all vnder vnbeliefe, that he might haue mercy vpon all, that his free election might appeare (not of works, lest any should boast themselues, but) of grace.* Behold therefore, all Atheists, and wonder! The Iewes branded with iudgement, wander ouer the World, the contempt of Nations, the skum of People, the hissing, derision, and indignation of men, for refusing Him whom they expect, denying Him whom they challenge, hating Him whose Name is in life and death vnto them, the sweetest tune, and most melodious harmonie; still waying for, and glorying in that Messias, *whom (vnknowne) they crucified and slue*: and still pursue with the deadliest hatred in all his followers: GOD *they please not, and are contrarie to all men.* Yet such is GODS manifold wisedome in his deepest Iudgements, that his enemies shall fight for him, euen against themselues: the Midianites [r] shall sheathe their swords, which they haue drawne out against GOD, in their owne bowels, and Christian Truth shall preuaile, and *let our* [s] *enemies themselues be iudges.* Out of their premisses, which they maintayne, as earnestly as thou (O Atheist) securely deridest, which they will seale with that which thou makest thy heauen, thy GOD; we will and doe conclude, against thee and them, that, in which, with which, for which we will liue and die. Let the old Testament yeeld the Proposition in prophesie, and the new Testament assume in Historie, and euen be thou the Iudge, if that Reason, which thou hast as a man, and peruertest as a Deuill, will not by force of their scriptures, which they preferre before their liues, necessarily in the conclusion, demonstrate the Christian Truth. Neither (I appeale vnto our common Reason) canst thou more wonder at vs for beleeuing, things in thy seeming incredible, absurd, and impossible, then at them (vpon such grounds which with vs they hold) not [t] beleeuing.

For what beleeue we, but, for the maine and chiefe points of our Faith, are as plainly in their Euangelicall Prophets, as in our Prophetical Euangelists? All the Historie of Christ, in a more diuine way, seemeth rather told then foretold, a Historie, not a Prophesie; as is easie by conference of both to shew, and thou, if thou beest not idle, or wilfully malicious, mayest finde. That then which thou seest come vpon them, *a spirit of slumber, eyes that they should not see, and eares that they should not heare*; which yet haue the light of the first Scriptures (had they not a *veile ouer their hearts*) the same see in thy selfe, that when greater light doth offer it selfe, willingly shutteest thine eyes, as though there could be no light, because thou liuest in, and loueest thy darknesse. It is the same hand that giueth vp both thee and them, [u] *because yee will not beleeue the Truth to be saued, to strong delusions, that yee might beleeue lyes, and be damned.* To me, and all Christians, let the Iewes bee both reall and verball teachers of the Truth, which they let fall, and we take vp; the one, in their Oracles of sacred Writ; the other, in their exemplarie iudgement. And to them, Let (O thou Lord of all, heare and grant it) let all Christians be that which *Moses* prophesied, [x] *a pronocation* to emulation, not of enuie and hatred, which hitherto hath beene in these, amongst all the Christian enemies, the most implacable and despiteful, but of imitation, that *as* [y] *their casting away hath beene the reconciling of the World, their receiuing may be life from the dead*, which *Paul* seemeth plainly to fore-signifie.

n *Iudg.6.*
o *Psal.107.34, 35.*
p *Rom.9.24.*
q *Rom.11.32.*
r *Iudg.8.*
s *Deut.32.31.*
t The Iew is a witnes against the Atheist, that we haue not those prophesies of Christ, seeing the Iew holds the prophesies dearer then his blood, and yet hateth Christianitie more deadly then the Atheist. *Peior persecutor in Christianos quàm Ethnicus, ait Hieron. in Abd. 1.*
u *2.Thess.2.*
x *Deut.32.21.*
y *Rom.11.*

THus much being premised as a preparation to our Iewish Historie, which, as of more importance then any other, deseruedly more ample view; let vs in the next place suruey that Countrey which their Progenitors had, with those priuiledges, and their Posteritie (together with those priuiledges) haue lost.

This Countrey was first [z] called the Land of *Canaan*, after that the Posteritie of Canaan, the sonne of *Cham*, had possessed it. [a] *Moses* and *Iosua* conquered it to the Posteritie of *Iacob*, of whom it was called the Land of *Israel*: after the diuision of the ten Tribes, from the house of *Dauid*, by *Ieroboam*, in the time of *Rehoboam* the sonne of *Salomon*, the name of *Israel* was more particularly appropriated to those ten rebellious Tribes, and the other two were knowne by the name of the Kingdome of *Iuda*. Yet *Israel* remayned in a generall sense, the name of them all, especially in the new Testament. *Paul* of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, [b] calleth himselfe an Israelite: and all Israel, saith he in that Chapter, shall be saued.

z The name of the country.
a *Moses* subdued the Kingdomes of he Amorites on the one side, *Iosua* the rest on the other side of Iordan.
b *Rom.11.1. & 2.*

After

After the Babylonian [c] captiuitie they were called *Iewes*, of the chiefe and royall Tribe, and their Country *Iudæa*: It was also called *Palestina* of the Philistiims, which inhabited the Sea-coast. And after, in the times of the Christians, it was generally called the *Holy Land*, Phœnicia also being vnder that name comprehended. It is situated betweene the Mediterranean Sea, and the Arabian Mountaynes; *Ptolomey* [d] calleth it *Palestina Syriæ*, and *Iudæa*, abutting it on the North with Syria, on the East and South with Arabia Petræa, on the West with part of Egypt, and the Sea, *Adrichomius*, who hath bestowed a large Volume on this subiect, which he calleth the *Theater of the holy Land*, on the East confineth it with Syria and Arabia; on the South, the Desart Pharan and Egypt; on the North, Mount Libanus; on the West, the Sea. *Maginus*, placeth a part of Phœnicia on the North; on the North-east, Libanus; on the South, and part of the East, Arabia; on the West, part of the Mediterranean Sea. It is extended from the South to the North, from the one and thirtieth degree, to the three and thirtieth, and somewhat more. Others set it downe in other words; but these and they agree for the most part in substance. It is commonly holden [e] to bee an hundred and sixtie Italian miles in length, from Dan to Bersebee, and sixtie in breadth. An exact diuision thereof into twelue shires or shares, *Iosiua* setteth downe at large, with their Bounds and Cities, from the thirteenth Chapter of that Booke, to the one and twentieth, as they were by lot and diuine dispensation allotted to the twelue Tribes, the posteritie of *Iacobs* twelue sonnes; onely *Ephraim* and *Manasses*, the sonnes of *Ioseph*, constituted two Tribes, and therefore had the double portion, descending of *Iacobs* eldest sonne, by *Rachel* his first intended wife: and *Leui* had no portion, but was scattered in Israel, to keepe Israel from scattering, and to vnite them in one Religion to one GOD, who disposed that curse into a blessing. *Reuben, Gad*, and halfe the Tribe of *Manasses*, had their portion on the East side of Iordan: the other halfe of *Manasses*, with *Simeon, Iuda, Beniamin, Ephraim, Naphthali, Aser, Dan, Izachar, Zabulon*, had their portions assigned betwixt Iordan and the westerne Sea. They which would be fully acquainted with their seuerall diuisions, may finde in *Iosiua* himselfe to satisfie them, and in the Commentaries which *Andreas Masius*, and others, haue written on that Scripture. *Lauessaine, More, Stella, Adrichomius*, and *Arias Montanus*, haue in Maps presented them to the eye.

c *Ios. Antiq. 11. 5. Iustin. Mart. Apol. 2.* saith, they were called Iewes of *Iudas* the sonne of *Iacob*; but *Elias in Thisbi rad. Ishadi*, deriueth this name from the Kingdome of Iuda, when the ten Tribes rebelled, saying, that the two Tribes were then called Iewes, and their language Iewish, which is also the opinion of Saint *Hieromes, Com. in Ionam, c. 1.* d *Ptol. 5. c. 16.* e *Hieron. Epist. c. 29. vix 160. mih. in longum spacio tenditur Pad. t. dicere latiuus, &c.*

30 HONDIVS *his Map of* Terra Sancta.

Neither in the whole World beside, is there (I thinke) found any Region, having more Cities in so small a space, then this sometime had, except we beleeue that which is told of the thousands of [f] Egypt. Some reckon [g] in each Tribe, twelue as toyall Cities: in *Aser*, Achsaph, besides Sidon and Tyrus: in *Beniamin*, Bethel, Gabaa, Ieriuslem, Iericho: in *Dan*, Lachis, besides Acaron and Gath: in *Ephraim*, Gazet, Samaria, Saron, Taphuaz: in *Gad*, Rabba: in *Isachar*, Apheee: in *Iuda*, Arad, Bezee, Eglon, Hebron, Lebna, Macedah, Odolla, Taphua: in *Mannasse*, 1. Dor, Galgal, Iezrael, Mageddo, Thersa: in *Mannasse*, 2. Astaroth, Edrai, Gessur, Machati, Soba, Theman and Damascus: in *Nephthalim*, Asor, Cedes, Emath: in *Reuben*, Hesbbon, Madian, Petra: in *Simeon*, Dabir, Gerara: in *Zabulon*, Ieconan, Semeron. The like Catalogue hee maketh of Episcopall Cities in this Land, while it was Christian. My purpose is not to write of sail, but especially of such as are in some respect eminent.

f See l. 6. c. 2.
g Adrichom. Prefat.

And first let me dip my Pen in Iordan. This, saith *Plinie*, [h] is a pleasant Riuer, and as fat as the situation of places will permit, ambitious; prodigally imparting it selfe to the Inhabitants, and (as it were vnwilling) passeth to that cursed Lake Asphaltites, of which at last it is drunke vp, losing his laudable waters, mixed with those pestilent. As soone therefore as the Valleyes giue oppottunitie, it spreadeth it selfe into a Lake, called Genesera, sixteene miles long, and sixe broad, enuironed with pleasant Townes; Iulias and Hippo on the East; on the South, Tarichea; and Tiberias on the West, made wholesome with his hot waters. The Fountaynes of this Riuer are two, called [i] Ior and Dan, which compounding their Streames, doe also compound their Names, as Tame and Isis with vs bring forth (happy Parents) our Tames or Thamisis. [k] Here was the Citie Dan, so called of the Danites, before Laish, *Ind.* 18. 29. and Lesham, *Ios.* 19. 47. But before this time, both the Riuer had the same name, Iordan, and the place it selfe at the foote of Libanus, whence the Fountayne springeth, was called Dan, *Gen.* 14. 14. when *Moses* wrote; except wee beleeue *Masius*, that the Pentateuch and other Scriptures, were by *Ezra* after the captiuitie, digested into that forme with those names, which wee now haue. Here was after built Cæsarea Paneadis, called afterward of *Philip* the Tetrach, *Cæsarea Philippi*; and after that by *Agrippa*, *Neronia*. This ioyning of Ior and Dan, is the beginning of the apparant streame; but the true [l] and first conception of it is in Phiale, one hundred and twentie furlongs from Cæsarea, a Fountayne of vnsearchable depth, which yet (like some miserable Churle) alwayes contayneth the waters in it selfe, till sinking, and as it were buried in the earth, those treasures being by Natures stealth conueyed vnder ground vnto Dan, or Paneas, who is liberall of that Vsurers wealth (for into that Phiale, powre as much as you will, it neuer increaseth or decreaseth) and thence it becommeth a Riuer. *Philip* the Tetrach of Trachonitis, by casting chaffe therein, which was paid him againe at Dan, first found out this vnder-earth passage. The Saracens call that Phiale, in this respect [m] Medan, that is, the waters of Dan. Before it maketh the Lake of Genezareth, it maketh another called Samachonitis. This is especially filled, when the snowes on Libanus are melted, which causeth [n] Iordan then to swell, and ouer-flow his barkes, in the first moneth, yeerly (and made the miracle in *Iosuah's* [o] passage thorow it the more miraculous) but in Summer, it is almost dried vp: and by reason of that matter which therein groweth, is a harbor for wild beasts. It is called the waters of Meron, halfe way betweene Cæsarea Philippi, where the marriage betweene Ior and Dan is solemnized, and the Lake of Genezareth. *Elias*, and after his assumption, his cloke diuided these streames; *Naamans* leprosie was here cleansed; and a greater Leprosie then *Naamans* is daily cleansed in the Church by the lauer of Regeneration, first sanctified to that vse in this streame, where the holy *Trinitie* [p] did first yeeld it selfe in sensible apparition to the world, thereby to consecrate that Baptisme, whereby wee are consecrated to this blessed Trinitie, the Father, Sonne and Holy Ghost. In which respect [q] Pilgrims, in memorie thereof, doe still wash themselues in this riuer, sporting themselues further (I feare) by this washing, with some myre of superstition.

h Plin. l. 5. c. 15.
i Ex fontis nomine atque decliuis descrit. Iordan & Elius. Ar. Mont.
k Ac si dicas (vt is Mas. in Ios. 1.) descendens e Dan, sicut 2 Mand.
l Ios. Bel. Iud. l. 3. c. 8. Brocard.
m Or, Mededan Masius Ios. 1.
n Wolffenbarg. & Trem. 1. Chro. c. 12. 15.
o Ios. 3.
p Matth. 3.
q Vtriac. l. 1. c. 13. Adricom. Tunberley.

I cannot blame this sacred streame, if it seeme loth, as *Plinie* sayth, to leaue so fertile a Countrey, and lingreth as long as it may in [r] lakes by the way, not only for that salt Sea, or hellish Lake, which shutteth vp his guiltlesse waues in perpetuall imprisonment, but also for those pleasures in the passage, the fruits of the earth, without exaction freely yeelded, as Roses, Sage, Rue, &c. of the trees, in Oliues, Figs, Pomegranates, Dates, and Vines (which last the Mahometan superstition doth not cherish, and the Westerne Christians did so husband, that one Vine [s] by their arte & industrie, yeelded three vintages in August, Septemb. October.) The [t] *grapes of Eshcol*, which could lade two men with one closter, were not so famous as *the Balme of Gilead* [u], which *the* [x] *first Merchants* we teade of, from that Mart, vented to other parts of the world. These Balme-trees grew in the Vale of Iericho, which being cut, yeelded this precious liquor; whereof, besides the admirable effects in cures,

r R. David. Eschol. 2. 2. ait in Ezra Israel Maria 7. fuisse, quæ ibi sua nominibus recensetur. t Brocard.
s Num. 13. 24. u Genes. 3. 22. & 46. 12.
x Gen. 37. 25. Trem. Ios. Antiq. 15. 5.

other

THE NEWBERRY LIBRARY

other wonders are told by ancient and later Writers, too long heere to relate. *Bellonius* y will doe it for mee, if any list to reade his *Observation*. Hee is not of their mind, which thinke there is now no true Balsam in the World (these in Iudæa being perished) but thinketh in Arabia-Fœlix it groweth naturally, from whence some shrubs he saw in z Cairo. But I should be too tedious if I should insist on this Argument; That instance of such a world of people, in such a patch of the world, doth sufficiently declare the fertilitie, when as *Dauid* a numbred them an eleuen thousand Israelites, and of Iuda, foure hundred seuentie thousand, or as in 2.*Sam*.24.9. fiue hundred thousand which drew Sword; and yet *Beniamin* and *Leui* were not reckoned in this number: and in the dayes of *Ieroboam*, b *Abija* King of Iuda, brought into the field foure hundred thousand, and *Ieroboam* eight hundred thousand, and on this part were slaine in one battell fiue hundred thousand all choice men; which Historie cannot bee matched with the like in all Ages and places of the world: that a Countrey, an hundred and six-te miles long, and not aboue sixtie in bredth, should nourish at once, or lose in a battell such multitudes, not to speake of impotent persons, women and children. But this multitude by ciuill warres and inuasions of enemies decreased, till first the reliques of Israel, and after, the remnant of Iuda were by the Assyrians and Babylonians led captiue, and *the Land enioyed her Sabbaths*.

y *Bellon. lib.2. cap.39.*

z *Dioscorid.* sayth that it groweth in Egypt. *Strabo* also in Cœlosyria, &c.

a 1.*Chron.*21. See *Tremell.* notes on 2.*Sam*.24.9.

b 2.*Chron.*13.

For the Kingdome of Israel consisting of ten Tribes, (some reckon *Simeon* also to *Iuda*, because of his portion mixed with *Iudaes*, as *Beniamins* was adioyning thereto, to whom the Leuites c like wise, and Priests forsaking their Cities, and all the religious Israelites annexed themselues) forsooke d not the house of *Dauid* onely, but the house of the Lord, and set them vp Calues (Ægyptian superstitions) at Dan and Bethel, and made Priests for their Idolatrous purpose. This their rebellion and apostasie, GOD plagued with ciuill dissention and forren hostilitie, vntill at last, the Assyrians e remoued them altogether, and repeopled those parts with new Colonies. Such is the end of religion, which hath not GOD for the beginning, but is grounded on humane policie, a sandie foundation. *Iuda* could not take warning, but prouoking GOD by idolatrous courses, at last was carried to Babel, and thence after seuentie yeeres, returned. The historie of these things, so fully related in Scripture, I should but marre in the telling.

c 2.*Chron.*9.14.

d A great part of *Beniamin*, and *Simeon* was subiect to *Dauid*'s posteritie.

e 2.*Reg.*17.

After this their returne, the Land was not as before, named after the portions of the seuerall Tribes; but was called by a generall name, f *Iudæa*, and the people *Iewes*, because the Tribe of *Iuda* had before inhabited those parts, or at least the principall of them, dilating themselues further, as they encreased in number and power. But more especially Iudæa was the name of one g third part of the Countrey, by that name distinguished from the other two, Samaria and Galilea, which two last are sometimes referred to Phœnicia.

f *Ios. Antiq.* 11.5.

g Palestina diuided into 3. parts { Galilea, Samaria, Iudæa.

Galilæa was the most Northerly, confining on Libanus and Antilibanus toward the North, Phœnicia Westerly, Cœlosyria on the East, and Samaria, with Arabia, inclosing her Southerly borders; Iordan parteth it in the middest. It was diuided into the higher and lower Galilee: the higher called also Galilee of the Gentiles, containeth the springs of Iordan, and those Cities which *Salomon* gaue to *Huram*. The lower was also called Galilee of *Tiberias*, that Citie giuing name both to the Lake and Region: in which Nazareth was famous, and the hill Thabor.

Samaria is seated betwixt Galilee and Iudæa, much lesse then either of them. Iudæa is the most Southerly; betweene the Mediterranean and Dead Seas, Samaria and Idumea. *Plinie* h maketh Galilæa a part of it, and Peræa another part, separated from the rest by Iordan. The rest he diuideth into ten Toparchies; Iericо, Emaus, Lidda, Ioppe, Acrabatena, Gophnitica, Tharnnitica, Betholene, Tephene, Orne, in which was Ierusalem farre the fairest of the Cities of the East, not of Iudæa alone: Herodium, with a famous Towne of the same name. Hee addeth vnto these the Region of Decapolis, so called of the number of the Townes, and the Tetrarchies; Trachonitis, Paneas, Abila, Arca, Ampeloessa, Gabe. Those ten Townes of Decapolis, were Cæsarea Philippi, Alor, Cedes Neptalim, Sephet, Corozain, Capharnaum, Bethsaida, Iotapata, Tiberias, and Bethsan, otherwise called Scythopolis, and before Nysa, where *Bacchus* buried his Nurse. But these are parts of those former parts above mentioned; and so may wee say of the rest, sustaining in diuers respects, diuers diuisions, best fitting to the present politics, and little to our purpose.

h *Plin. l.5.c.14.*

Those things which of old were famous in those places, are mentioned in the Scripture: Those things which since haue beene more remarkable; I purpose in the next part of this Worke, of Christian Religions, to handle, and especially the rarities of Ierusalem, sometimes *the holy Citie, and Citie of the great King, now a Den of Theeues*; an habitation of Mahumetans, or rather now not at all: for this which is now, is a new Citie, called by the Founder *Ælia Capitolina* i, built by *Ælius Adrianus*, who caused the plough to passe through, and salt

i *Hieron. in Ezech.5.& Epist.129.*

salt to be sowne in the old, as testifying her eternall desolation, and fulfilling Christs prophesie to the vtmost, not leaving a stone vpon a stone, it *Titus* had not fully accomplished the same before. *Arias Montanus* in his *Nehemias* affirmeth, that Ierusalem was founded on three [k] hills; to wit, Sion, on which the Iebusites built their Tower; and which in *Dauids* time was further builded on, and called the Citie of *Dauid*. The second hill was Mount Moriah, which *Dauid* bought of *Arauna*, to erect thereon the Temple. The third was the higher Acra, called the Suburbe. These were compassed with one wall without, and within diuided with three walls, by which the Citie of *Dauid*, and Moriah, and the higher Acra, were seuered. In the circuit of the walls were nine gates. Hee that desireth further to reade, or rather to see the old Ierusalem, with her holy Fabriques, let him resort to *Arias Montanus* his *Antiquitates Iudaicæ*, where he both relateth, and in figures presenteth these things. It is supposed that *Melchisedech* built it about the yeere of the World, 2023. and called it *Salem*. *Hieromo* in his 139. Epistle hath these words: *Ipsa Metropolis tua prius Iebus, postea Salem, tertio Hierosolyma, & nunc Ælia*; As if it were called Iebus, before it had the name of Salem, which is not so probable. Yea, *Ierome* himselfe in his 126. Epistle confutes *Iosephus*, and the vulgar opinion that Salem was Ierusalem: and sayth, that Salem was a Towne neere to Scythopolis which remayned to his time, where also were still shewed the ruines of *Melchisedeks* Palace, the monument of her ancient and antiquate splendor. The like Saint *Ambrose* in his Commentarie on *Hebr.7.* The Kings thereof were anciently called *Melchi-zedek*, or *Adoni-zedek*, that is, Kings or Lords of Iustice, or of *Zedek*, which some will haue the first name thereof, and Salem the second; this signifieth *Peace. Righteousnesse* [l] indeed and *peace* did here kisse each other, when the [m] Lord *our righteousnesse here preached peace, and was made our peace* and righteousnesse, the true *Melchizedek*, whose *Kingdome* [n] *is righteousnesse, peace, and ioy in the holy Ghost*. It was after called Ierusalem by addition of the word *Iereth*, as some thinke, to the former name *Salem*. For so it is said of *Abraham*, [o] when GOD tried his obedience in here offering his sonne, hee called the place Iehoua ireh, *the Lord will prouide*, from which and Salem by composition ariseth this name, so fitting both the Citie and mysterie. *Iosephus* [p] sayth, it was first called Solyma, and by *Melchisedech* named Hierosolyma, of a Temple by him there built, as if *Iosephus* had beene the language of Ierusalem: else where [q] he attributeth it to *Dauid*, from an Hebrew deriuation, which and other like Etimologies haue caused *Masius* [r] to pronounce him ignorant of the Hebrew, and educated onely in the Greeke, as *Scaliger* somewhere affirmeth of *Philo* his companion in Nation, learning, and in that Greecian eloquence wherein they neuer had companions, neither of their owne, nor fearse of any other Nation. The Iebusites after possessed (and of them some deriue the name Ierusalem, *quasi Iebusalem*) till *Dauid* expelled them: who had before raigned in Hebron (called Cariatharbe, the Citie of foure men, say some, because of *Adam*, *Abraham*, *Isaac* and *Iacob*, their both dwelling and buriall there; yet *Adam*, others say, was buried in mount Caluarie, with other speculations curious, and vncertaine.) Hee translated the highest seat both of spirituall and temporall Regiment to Ierusalem, where he raigned after, three and thirtie yeeres, to whom succeeded *Salomon*, and the rest in order. It then contayned in circuit fiftie furlongs, compassed with a great ditch threefoote foot deepe, and two hundred and fiftie broad. *Nabuchodonosor* destroyed it, *Nehemias* re-edified it, three and thirtie furlongs in circuit: The *Machabees*, *Herod*, and others, added to her excellence, till *Titus* besieged and tooke it; in which siege are said to haue perished eleuen hundred thousand people; and being now a Sepulchre of dead carkasses, was made a spectacle of diuine vengeance, for murthering the Lord of Life. But those struggling spirits, and small remnants of life, which remayned in this forlorne carkasse of the sometime Ierusalem, breathed a new rebellion, in the time of *Adrian*, and thereby breathed her last, as before is said. *Bernard de Breidenbach* sayth, he neuer saw any place which had a fairer prospect then Ierusalem, presenting to the eye Arabia, the Plaine of Iericho, and the dead Sea. But what doe wee now in *Ælia* or the now Ierusalem: whose rarities the iournals of many [s] testifie. Concerning the former, The Historie of this Citie the Scripture hath re cordd; and where Diuine Historie endeth, *Iosephus* and *Hegesippus* (that I speake not of late Writers) haue largely supplied, especially concerning her latest fates, and as I may terme it, in her funerall Sermon. [t] *Strabo, Iustine*, and others, haue written of this people, but not sincerely. But the fountaines are cleere enough to acquaint vs with their true originall, which commeth next to bee considered.

k Description of old Ierusalem: this was sayth *Hierome*, in the midst of the world, and the nauell of earth hauing on the East Asia, on the West Europe, Africa, on the South, Scythia, &c. on the North.

l Psal.85.11.
m Ier.23.6.
n Rom.14.17.

o Gen.22.14.

p Ios. de Bell. lib.7. c.18.

q Antiq.l.7 c.3.
r Iosephus and Philo vnskillull in Hebrew. Mas. in Ios.10. Scal. Elench. Ser.

s Beniam. Tyd. Breidenb. Ludolph. Suth. Brocard. vel Betchard. B de Salignaco, &c.
t Iustin. lib. 36. Strabo, lib. 16.

CHAP. II.

Of the Hebrew Patriarchs, and their Religion before the Law: also of their Law and Politie.

§. I.

Of the Patriarchs, and Religion before the Law.

THE name of Hebrewes some deriue from *Abraham*, as if they were called *Hebræi, quasi Abrahai.* *Arias Montanus* [a] telleth vs that this name of Hebrewes was not appropriate to any familie, but common to all such, as hauing passed ouer the Riuer Euphrates, fixed their Tents and abode betweene that Riuer and the great Sea. Hee gathereth this from the Hebrew word [b], which signifieth to passe ouer. Such an one first of all was *Heber*, seeking a life answerable to his name: whose example (sayth hee) *Thare* imitated: and after, *Abram* for his two fold transmigration from Chaldæa, and from Haran, deserued that name, and left it to his posteritie. But [c] *Iosephus*, [d] *Augustine* and others, more stily (in my mind) of *Heber* the fourth from *Shem*, the sonne of *Noah*, with whose familie, as wee haue sayd, continued the ancient Language of the world, called of his name, Hebrew: his sonne *Peleg* or *Phaleg*, bearing the name of that diuision, which at the time of his birth the rest of the world in their Languages sustained. This *Peleg* was grand-father to *Serug*, whom some affirme to haue beene the first maker of Idols, which were afterwards worshipped by *Nahor* his sonne, and *Thare* his Nephew, the father of *Abram*, who preached openly that there was but [e] one God, Creator, and Gouernour of all things; and by this doctrine prouoking the Chaldæans against him, warned by Oracle, departed towards Canaan.

Bellarmine [f] so eagerly swalloweth this opinion, that he taxeth *Calvine* of heresie, for attributing to *Abraham* the contrarie; namely, that *Abraham*, before GOD called him out of Vr, was an Idolater: an opinion so much more probable then the other, as hauing better authoritie. For *Iosuha* [g] obiecteth to the Israelites their fore-fathers Idolatrie, and nameth *Abraham* amongst them. And *Genebrard* [h] doth so interprete it; & *Masius* [i] in his Commentaries on that place, both zealous and learned Papists: yea, *Lindanus* [k] specifieth the Idolatrie, and calleth him a worshipper of *Vesta*. [l] *Suidas* sayth, that *Abraham* by the obseruation of the Creatures in his studie of Astronomie, lifted vp his mind aboue the starres, and by the glorie, and order of them, learned the knowledge of GOD, neuer ceasing that diuine search, till GOD appeared to him. Which opinion may reconcile both the former: that first he was, and after ceased to be, an Idolater, before God appeared in vision to him. He alledgeth *Philo* for his Author, that at fourteene yeeres *Abraham* reproued *Thare* for seducing men vnto Idolatrie (moued by his priuate lucre) with Images: and seeing the Heauen sometime cleare, sometime cloudie, he gathered, that that could not bee GOD. The like hee concluded of the Sunne and Moone, by their Eclipses (for his father had taught him Astronomie.) At last, GOD appeared, and bade him leaue his Countrey. Whereupon hee tooke his Fathers Images, who (as before is said) was an Image-maker, and partly broke, partly burnt them, and then departed. *Suidas* further thinketh him the first inuenter of Letters, of the Hebrew tongue, and of the interpretation of dreames; which I leaue to the Authors credit. But for the fault of *Abraham* before his calling, and other blemishes after, in him and the rest of the Patriarchs; what [m] doe they else, but in abounding of mans sinne, set our the superabounding grace of GOD? and are profitable, as learned *Morton* [n] in his answere of this cauill, hath out of one of their owne [o] obserued against them, what he had obserued out of *Augustine*, to these foure purposes: *Faith*, *Instruction*, *Feare*, and *Hope*: the *Faith* of the Historie which flatteretb, or concealeth the faults of none: *Instruction* to vertue, by seeing others faults taxed: *Feare*, for what shall Shrubs doe, if Cedars fall? and *Hope*, that wee imitate their repentance, by seeing their pardon.

But to returne to our Historie. Many of the Ethnike histories mention him: *Berosus* commendeth him for his iustice, and skill in Astronomie. *Nic. Damascenus* sayth, that hee raigned at Damascus, and that in his time, his house continued in Damascus, and was still called by his name: *Hecateus* wrote a booke of him, and *Alexander Polyhistor* telleth, that hee was borne in the tenth generation after the flood in Camarine (or Vrien) a Citie of Babylon. *Iosephus* [p] addeth, that when famine draue him into Ægypt [q], hee disputed with the

a *Mon. de Antiq. Iud. Canaan, vel lib. 3. cap. 9. & ante eum Hieron. in Ion. 1. Idem Scal. Epist. ad Tomson. & ad Steph. Vbertum.*

b עבר transiens vel transmittens.

c *Ios. Antiq. lib. 1. cap. 6.*

d *Aug. de Ciuit. Dei 1. 16. c. 13.*

e *Ios. Antiq. lib. 1. cap. 7.*

f *Bell. de Verb. Eccles. l. 4. c. 9.*

g *Ios. c. 24. 2.*

h *Genebrard. Chron. lib. 1.*

i *Mag. in Ios. 24.*

k *Lindan. in Panop.*

l *Suidas.*

m *Quasi vno e manu tanto illustrior sit Dei gratia, quanto ipse fuit sceleratior, &c. Masius Ios. c. 24.*

n *Mort. Ap. p. 8. lib. 1. cap. 10.*

o *Sixtus Senes. Bibl. l. 2. 8.*

p *Antiq. l. 1. c. 8.*

q *Gen. 12.*

the Priests, and most learned Ægyptians, in questions of Diuinitie; and in their diuided Sects, having confuted one by another, he communicated to them the truth, both in this, and in Arithmeticke and Astronomie, whereof before the Ægyptians were ignorant. *Abram* (sayth Master *Broughton* in his Consent) was borne sixtie yeeres later then the common account; a: appeareth [r] by computation of *Terahs* age, who died at two hundred and fiue yeeres, and after his death, [s] *Abram* went from Chatan into Canaan, the threescore and fifteenth yeere of his owne life; and therefore was borne in the hundred and thirtieth, and not in the seuentieth yeere of his father, in the three hundred sixtie and two yeere after the Floud; whereas the common opinion reckoneth the two hundred ninetie and two. To *Abram* GOD had giuen commandement, saying: *Gee from thy Country, and from thy Kindred, and from thy Fathers house into the Land which I shall shew thee, and I will make of thee a great Nation, &c.* 10

His *Historie* is fully related by *Moses*, and his progenie also; whereof *Ismael* his Sonne by *Agar*, and other his sonnes which he had by *Ketura* his second wife, he sent to inhabite the East Countrey (Arabia) in his life time; but *Isaac* was made his Heire, both temporall and spirituall: to whom *Iacob* succeeded in the promised blessing: who with his sonnes and familie went downe into Ægypt, where his posteritie multiplied exceedingly, and were called sometimes *Ebrewes*, [t] their ancient pedegree; sometime Israelites, of the name *Israel*, giuen to *Iacob* by the Angell, *Gen.* 32.28. Their whole Historie so largely and plainely in holy Writ recorded, I feare to make [t] *Mine*, by euill reciting: Those *Fountaines* are more open to all, then that any should neede ours, or others *Brookes*, mixed with some myrie earth (at least) in the passage: (and my intent is to bee largest in relation of those things which are not in the Scriptures; onely touching those things briefly for order sake.) Their Religion, meane while, was the best amongst the best, though stayned in some, as *Rachel*, which stale her father *Labans* Idols; and *Iacob* was forced to reforme his Familie in this respect; and after in Ægypt they were corrupted with the Ægyptian superstition, as [u] *Ezechiel* protests against them. The manner of Diuine worship was not so straitly limited, as afterwards to persons and places. By Reuelation and Tradition they receiued the religious worship, wherein they instructed their posteritie: vntill that in their extremest thraldome GOD sent *Moses* and *Aaron* to deliuer them: vnder whose conduct they passed through the Sea and Wildernesse to the brinkes of Iordan, receiuing in the [x] way that Law, which as a Tutor or Schoole-master, was in that their nonage to traine them vp, vntill that full and ripe age, when [y] GOD *sent his Sonne made of a woman, made vnder the Law, that hee might redeeme them that were vnder the Law, that wee might receiue the adoption of Sonnes.* 20 30

r See the Chronologie, Chap. 11. *Genes.* 12.4.

s *Sed malè dum recitas, incipit esse tuus. Martial.*

t Exo. 20.8. & 23.3.

u Ezek. 20.8. & Exod. 16. & Exod. 18. and *Moses* at the first was King & Priest, hauing the first borne as inferiour Priests vnder him

x *Galath.* 4.4.

y *Galath.* 4.4.

§. II.

Of the Law of MOSES, *the twelue Tribes, and of Proselytes.* 40

IF this Law, although *Moses* hath giuen vs an absolute relation in Scripture, whereof he was the first Pen-man (of that at least which remayneth vnto vs) yet if wee shall out of him, bring them into their order, and ranke them vnder their seuerall heads, as *Sigonius* [a] and others haue done; it shall not be, I thinke, ouertedious to the Reader. The Law is diuided vsually, into the [b] *Morall, Ceremoniall*, and *Iudiciall*, as parts of the same: the first deliuered on the Mount Sinai, by the dreadfull voice of the Almightie God, and by the finger of God, written after in Tables of stone, called *Ten words*, summarily abridged into *two Commandements*, by the Law-giuer himselfe; [c] *The first and great Commandement enioyning the loue of* GOD; *the second, of our* NEIGHBOVRS; 50 that God, who himself is *Charitie*, imposing nothing but the louely yoke of Loue and Charitie vnto his seruants. This Law is eternall, written first in the hearts of our first Parents, which being defaced, it was written againe in the stone Tables of the Law, where it was but a killing letter, till Grace and Truth by IESVS CHRIST indited and indented it in the fleshy Tables of the Gospell, as [d] *Christs new Commandement* written in renewed hearts, and shall for euer be then grauen in those spirituall Tables, when wee that here are [e] *Naturall men, shall rise againe Spirituall men*; and shall be the Law of that *holy Citie, the new Ierusalem*; this being then perfected, when [f] Faith, and Hope, and this *World* shall bee finished. The other parts Ceremoniall and Iudiciall, were (for the particulars) proper vnto that Nation, the one respecting the manner of Diuine seruice, the other of ciuill Government: not giuen (as the other) immediatly to the Israelites by GOD himselfe, but communicated in the Mount to *Moses*, that hee might acquaint the people withall. In the 60

a *Car. Sigon. de Rep Hebr. Bertramus de Pol. Iud. &c.*

b *Lex moralis externa, iudicialis quoad suas circumstantias &c. iam mortua, Ceremonialis autem mortifera. iun. de Pol. Mos.*

c *Mat.* 22.38.

d *Ioh.* 13.34.

e 1. *Cor.* 15.44.

f 1. *Co.* 13.

death

death of Christ these died, and had their consumption with his *consummatum est*, the Iudicials remaining euer since dead, the ceremonies deadly: only they were as it were for their more honourable funerall after that their death, detayned some time aboue ground: and those ceremonies which before Christ were necessarie, in the times of the Apostles, till the Iewish Church might be instructed, became indifferent, but since meerely vnlawfull; neither can it now but be sacrilegious to violate the sepulchres of the dead.

This Nation was diuided, as is said, alreadie, into Tribes, according to the number of *Iacobs* sonnes, amongst whom *Leui* had no portion, (but the Lord was their portion, they seruing at the Altar, and liuing of the Altar) but eight and fortie Cities with their suburbs assigned for their habitation, amongst other Tribes, that being so dispersed, they might dispersse also, and preach the Law to the test: and were reckoned 5 to that Tribe with which they dwelled: and whereas others might not marrie [h], for feare of alienation of their inheritances, into another Tribe, this of *Leui* either had, or tooke libertie herein, as *Iudg.*19. and 2. *Chron.* 22. *Ioiada* married the Kings sister; and thus *Elizabeth*, wife of *Zacharie* the Priest, might be Cousin to *Marie* the Mother of our Lord. The number of twelue remayned yet entire, in reckoning of these Tribes, because *Ioseph* had a double portion, and his sonnes, *Ephraim* and *Manasses*, made two Tribes. Neither were they alone reckoned Israelites, that naturally descended from some one of these twelue sonnes of *Israel*, but such also of other Nations as embraced their Ceremonies and Religion; being for distinction sake called Proselytes. The Hebrew [i] word which is interpreted a Proselyte, signifieth *extracted*, or *drawne forth*, because they esteemed such, drawne forth of Hell: whom yet *they made the children of Hell*, more then themselues, in burthening their consciences, not onely with those Ceremonies whereunto the Law and their Tradition tyed them, but with diuers others also. The name Proselite, as *Drusius* affirmeth, [k] is either taken largely for any stranger, or strictly for a conuert to their Religion. A Proselyte was made with obseruation of three things, Circumcision, Baptisme or Washing, and Oblation. The first was a signe of the Couenant, in which they were receiued: the second as a badge of their cleannesse; (for all the Gentiles were vncleane) the third, for the atonement with GOD. This was while the Temple stood, and now is not in force: but whether Baptisme be still vsed, I know not. Hee ought to be circumcised in the presence of three. And if by nature [l] or accident he were before circumcised, and wanted that fore-skin, yet did they cut him there, and made him bleede not withstanding: and when his wound was whole, then before three witnesses was hee baptised, in which ceremonie they couered the whole body with water. This manner of baptising they vsed also in reconciling and receiuing penitents, which had giuen scandall by notorious offences, in token of repentance, & newnesse of life, hauing first before this washing testified their humiliation by fasting and prayer. Of this washing they were so scrupulous, that [m] *Clemens Alexandrinus* testifieth, they were often washed in their beds. A woman Proselite was admitted by Baptisme onely, and the offering of two Turtles, or two Pigeons. *Serarius* sayth, Baptisme and Circumcision are still required: the like is written by *P. Ricius* and [n] *Munster*, who adde, that when any desireth to become a Proselyte, they propound to him the hardest things of the Law, with the promises of future happinesse, as of the Sabbath, not eating fat, &c. with some penances that hee should not after say, had I wist; and they would seeme to bee willing by these meanes, to driue them from their Religion, as being corrupted by such new commers; but Christ affirmeth otherwise.

g *Iudg.*17 7.
h Some say that only heirs were tyed by that law: as thought the death of diuers neeter might not make roome for others further of, to inherit.
i *Ar. Montan. in Matth.*23.
k *Drus. de 3. sect. lib.2.*
l *P. Ricius de Celestia ritu.l.3.c.* & *ad proc.c.*17.
m *Clem. Alex. strom. l.4.*
n *Munster. in L. Precept. Mosaicum exposit. Rab. Eliin Euangel. Matth. Hebr. Annot.cap.*22.

§. III.

Of the Hebrew Politie and ciuill Gouernement.

THe gouernement of this people was, as [o] *Betramus* thinketh, (before *Iethro's* aduice had brought in those Gouernours of thousands, hundreds, fifties, and tens) vnder seuentie Elders, according to the number of persons, which descended with [p] *Iacob* into Egypt: and that the seuentie assigned after to *Moses* for assistants in the gouernement, were continued in their former office with further ratification and increase of gifts, and not newly instituted. Yea this number, hee sayth, gouerned in Egypt, howsoeuer *Pharaohs* tyrannie did afterward much eclipse their authoritie, and were by *Moses* and *Aaron* assembled together, *Exod.*4.29. So that the thirteene Tribes consisted of seuerall Families, according to the number of the chiefe heads thereof mentioned by [q] *Moses*, to which the thirteene Princes of the thirteene Tribes being annexed, made vp the number. His reasons let such as will, learne of himselfe.

o *Bet. de Pol. Iudg.c.*5. *Exod.*18.
p *Num.*11.16.
q *Num.*3.& 26.

The gouernement in that time of *Moses* was mixt the Monarchy being in *Moses*, but qualified with an Aristocratie in these seuenty, and the other Officers before mentioned; a Democratie also appeared in the Assemblies so often mentioned. In lighter matters the Chiliarchs, Centurions, Quinquagenarij, and Decurions iudged: in more weighty, the seuenty. Thus it continued in *Ioshua's* time, till they had conquered and inhabited Cities. And then each Citie had their Senate or Councell of the Chiliarchs, and other Officers before named, proportionable to the greatnesse thereof. [r] *Iosephus* numbreth seuen Elders, and two Leuites in euery City, which seemeth more to agree with his time then this former. Euen in Bethlehem *the least of the thousands of Iuda, Boaz* [s] assembled ten Elders about the matter of *Ruth*. It seemeth that they had Leuites assisting in the iudgements and Tribunals, as men learned in the Law: and so we reade of the times of *Dauid* and *Iehosaphat*. But I had rather send my Reader for these things to the Scriptures, and to the labors of *Beiramus* and *Sigonius*: from all which it is also apparant, that the State was after *Moses* and *Ioshua*, managed by Iudges of diuers Tribes, not by Election nor inheritance succeeding in that Office, but by appointment of God, till they desired a king, whereas before God was their king, and by his Law partly, partly by Oracle ruled the State, being, as some thinke, an Aristocracy. There were also in the times of these Iudges, Princes of each Tribe, and the heads of Families: There was also a gouernement in each City by the Elders or Senate, exercised in the Gates thereof, as before is obserued. They had accordingly their Councels or Assemblies, either of the whole Nation, or of a whole Tribe, or of some one Cirie.

The kingdome of Israel, after it was diuided from the house of *Dauid*, continued the like forme of gouernement, as is most probable. After the Captiuity, it appeareth by the Histories of *Hezra* and *Nehemiah*, that the chiefe sway was vnder the Lieutenant or Deputie of the Persian king, according to commission from him. Other Offices happily receiued some alteration in regard of their numbers and estate, weaker and lesse then in those former times of prosperity, so that what *Iosephus* hath written of seuen Elders in each City, and those things which in the *Talmud* are written of their Politie, had now first (as some [t] thinke) their beginning. Concerning this, because it is not so common, let me haue leaue for a larger discourse out of the *Talmudical Sanhedrin*, which thus recordeth. [u] Matters which concerne goods are determined by three; criminall cases by a Councell of three and twenty. But such things as belong to a whole Tribe, a false Prophet, or the high Priest, by the great Councell at Ierusalem of seuenty and one. The high Priest iudgeth and is iudged: he sitteth at Funerals on a little Seate, all the multitude sitting on the ground. The king iudgeth not and is not iudged, giueth testimony against none, nor none against him. Hee maketh Warres, but not without consent of the *Sanhedrin*: he may not haue aboue eightteene wiues: he ought to haue the booke of the Law written, and hanging about his necke. In ciuill causes, each of the Litigants chooseth a Iudge or Arbitrator [x], and both these thus chosen choose a third. Of this Office are vncapable, Dicers, Vsurers, and such as practise dishonest courses for gaine: They also which are of neere kindred to the parties, may neither be Iudges nor Witnesses. Their Companions or Aduersaries may giue testimony, but not iudgement. Women and Seruants might not be witnesses, *Ios. Antiq* 4.7. Nor a Thiefe, Robber, Vsurer, Publican, Child, or keeper of Doues. *Ph. Ferdinand.* This last *Ricius* doth not mention, but addeth a Gentile, Foole, Deafe, Blinde. The ancientest witnesse is first examined: and that from his owne sight, or the debters mouth, or else it is nothing. Thirtie daies after sentence giuen, the Defendant may alleage what hee can for himselfe. The odde number is the casting voice. In criminall causes decided by three and twenty, one odde voice absolueth, but there must be aboue twelue of the three & twenty to condemne; and when sentence is giuen, nothing may be alleaged further for accusation, which for absolution is lawfull. And he which hath spoken for the accused, may not after speake against him. Ciuill causes are examined in the day, and sentenced in the night; but criminall y only by day: and sentence of condemnation may not be pronounced the same day, and therefore on holy-dayes Euens examinations are forbidden. Proselytes and Bastards may determine ciuill causes: Priests and Leuits with other Israelites, are required in criminall. These Iudges sate in a semicircle, [z] hauing one Scribe or Register on the right hand, & another on the left: In the Session-house were present besides, three orders of Students which sate on the ground according to their degree, out of which the number of the Senators were supplied when neede was, so that one of the first order being made Senator, another was chosen out of the second order into his place, and out of the third in the roome of the second, and out of the people into that third Order. The witnesses must testifie only from their own sight, and that exactly, what [a] seuenth yeere of the Iubilee, what yeere of that seuenth, what moneth, what day of the moneth, and weeke, and in what houre and place hee saw it. For to

r *Ios. Antiq.* 4. *cap.* 8.

s *Ruth.* 4. 2. *Chron.* 23. 4. & 26. 29. 2. *Chron.* 19. 8.

t *Beiramus.* 6. 13.

u *Sanhedrin sub. Tal. Iud. vid. Paul. Ric. de Tu'mud & Gala. de Arcan.* 4. *cap.* 5. & 6. To these three Courts, Christ alludeth *Mat.* 5. 22. Which place may hereby be vnderstood.

x These Arbitrators were not those three Iudges before mentioned, but others besides.

y They deale otherwise with Christ, either for feare of the people, or that thus their tyrannie, and his iustice might appeare, such a worke of darknesse to extinguish the light of the world, best fitting the night.

z One wrote the absolutes sentences, the other of theirs which condemned, whereto perhaps Christ alluded, *Mat.* 25. 41. saith *Drusi. Prect. p.* 532.

a They vsed also other questions and circumstances, which I for breuitie haue omitted.

to saue or lose an Israelite, is asmuch as to preserue or destroy the frame of the World; if one witnesse be ignorant of any of those circumstances, or contradicteth another, his testimony is vaine. None of the Students which sit by may be suffered to accuse, if they can say any thing in defence of the partie they may. If they cannot finde sufficient to absolue him that day, the Senators or Iudges scanne that matter seriously, two or three together all night, vsing a spare diet. If twelue condemne, and the rest cleere him, they adde to the number of Iudges till they make vp seuenty and one to make further search. When sentence is pronounced, the condemned person is carried away, and brought againe foure or fiue times, to see whether hee or any other can say any thing for his purgation. And if nothing
10 bee alleaged sufficient to reuerse the sentence, he is led to execution, [b] the Cryer going before him and proclaiming the crime and sentence and accusers, that if any can then say any thing in his behalfe, he may speake. When he commeth within ten cubits of the place of execution, he is admonished to confesse his fault, and so hee shall haue part in the life to come: and if he know not the forme of confession, it is enough for him to say; Let death be vnto me the remission of all my sinnes. Being within foure cubits, he is stripped naked all but his priuities: if it bee a woman, shee is led forth in her cloathes. The stoning place was built twice the height of a man, from whence by one of the witnesses he was cast downe head-long, the ground beneath being set with flints; and if he died not with the fall, another of the witnesses smote him neere the heart with a stone, which if it did not finish
20 his death, the whole multitude cast stones at him. They might not condemne aboue one in one day, to death. He which was stoned, if he were a man, was presently hanged on a Gibbet, and after taken downe and buried with other persons which had before suffered in like manner. When the flesh was there consumed, his bare bones might bee laid in his owne, or his fathers Sepulcher. After this, his friends and kinsemen went to the Iudges and witnesses, and saluting them, acknowledged the iustice of their fact. Besides this punishment of stoning, [c] they punished with the fire, sword, or strangling. The manner of burning was, to put the condemned person in dung vp to the arme-holes, and one executioner on one side, and another on the other, graned him with a linnen cloth about his neck, pilling the same till they forced him to gape, and then a bar or rod of burning metall was thrust downe
30 into his body. The sword was vsed in beheading. Strangling was done with a course piece of linnen, pulled close about his neck, till he were dead. It would be too long to shewe what faults were appropriated to each of these kindes of execution. If a man had deserued two of them, he was to be punished with the most seuere. In some cases of homicide, the guilty person was put in a little-case prison, where he was forced alway to stand, and was fed onely with Barly till his belly rotted, and his bowels fell out. Any one might presently slay him which had stolne any of the holy Vessels, or blasphemed the name *Iehoua*. The Priest which exercised his function, while he was polluted, was not brought to iudgement; but other Priests, chosen to that purpose, led him out of the holy place and knocked out his braines. From the *Sanhedrin* was no appeale: They were also called *Mehokekim*,
40 that is, Scribes or Law-giuers, because whatsoeuer they deliuered or writ was receiued for a Law.

Their Colledge, saith *Galatinus* [d], (who from their fayling proouedth that the Messias is come) represented that Scepter, by the holy Ghost in *Iacob* promised to *Iuda*: and therefore not only vnder the Kings and Iudges did exercise iudgement, but also when there was no King or Iudge in Israel. Of their qualitie it is thus written. They appointed none [e] (said *R. Iohanan*) but men of wisedome, stature, and of goodly presence, and of old age, and cunning in exorcismes, and vnderstanding the seuenty Tongues, that they might not need interpreters. Their Stature and comlinesse, Rabbi *Selomoh* saith, was required to acquire them reuerence; and skill in enchantment, to conuince such Wizards. There were required the whole number of seuenty and one, in determining the going to Warre, in adding to a Citie, or the reuenues of the Temple, or in conuening the ordinarie Iudges of the Tribes; To constitute one of this number, they vsed imposition of hands (*R. Iudas* saith) of fiue. A Wolfe, Lyon, Beare, Leopard, and Serpent, were to be slaine by the three and twente.

The great Colledge called *Sanhedre ghedola*, consisted of seuenty and one, the lesse of three and twenty. That odde number aboue seuenty, was to supply the roome of *Moses*, which was ouer those first seuenty. Hereby *Galatinus* gathereth, that in the Councell that condemned Christ, there was the whole number of seuenty and one, which is true, if *Herod* had not before disanulled that society. The greater *Sanhedrin* ordained the lesse; for
60 those seuenty ordained all the Sessions of Iudges, which in other Cities and Places ruled the people: and to this Court of the seuenty in Ierusalem they were all subiect. The place where they sate was called Gazith, that is, Carued, whereof this Court had the name (as

b *Ph. Fed.* reckeneth eighteene crimes to be punished with stoning, ten with burning, five with strangling. *P. Rio.* 24. deadly vnclaennesses in the law, and twenty other by the *Talmud. AA. Praecaep.* 111.

c He which was stoned for Blasphemy, was hanged vp Sunne-set, and then his gaphee and he buried together. The stone which they vsed in his death, was also buried, lest with the Sword which they vsed in beheading and the linnen cloth vsed in strangling, were buried. *Tyrnfgrett. Ia. p.* 139. *Eliezer* speaks of a punishment vsed amongst them, to drown them with a stone about their neck. *in Math.* 18.

d *P. Galat. de Arcanis lib.* 4. *cap.* 5. & 6. *Scalig. in Ep. ad Casaub.* saith, that *Galatinus* his worke was *a compendium* of two huge volumes of *Raimund. Schon* a Dominican, called *Pugio fidei*, yet extant *in Collegio Tuxensis Toscano.*

e They are aidto goe into Aegypto, to exercise sorceries, to know them that they might beware of them. *Isaac Leuita ad Epist. Rambam.*

the Starre-chamber with vs.) Other Courts or houses of Iudgement, they had diuers, of the three and twenty. One [f] of them fate in the Gate of the Mountaine of the Temple: another in the Gate of the Court: others in euery Citie. And when there was a controuersie, it was first brought to that Citie or Towne, and so to the rest, if occasion required (in order) to that in the Gate of the Mount, after to that in the Court-gate, and last to the Gazith Consistory, in which they sate from Morning till Night. On Sabbaths and solemne dayes they sate on the Wall.

f Three Courts of Iudgement Ierusalem,

But when *Herod* obtained the Scepter, he slew *Hercanus* and his sonne *Antigonus*, which had beene King and Priest, and also all of the seede Royall, and burnt the Genealogies of their Kings: And further to establish his Throne in blood, hee killed the Scribes and Doctors of the Law, and caused all the *Sanhedrin* to be done to death. Because the *Rabbanan* (they are the words of the Talmud) had said according to *Deut.17. From among thy brethren thou shalt set a King ouer thee*: He slew the Rabbanan or Masters, referuing only *Baba*, the sonne of *Bota*, whose eyes hee after put out. And therefore the *Sanhedrin* perished: for, as is said, fiue, or at least after *R. Ismal*, three were necessary to the ordination by the imposition of hands. But there were by *Herods* permission, other Iudges instituted to be vnder the King, like the former Colledge, but had no authority of sentence in waighty and criminall causes: and therefore they said to *Pilate, It is not lawfull for vs to put any man to death*, g as some thinke. But others maintaine the contrary. *Betramus* taketh a middle course, that the Iewes might examine and condemne, but then were to present the condemned party to the Roman Magistrate for execution: except in the cause of stoning, wherein they tooke more libertie, as in the Acts of the Apostles, by *Stephen* and *Paules* example appeareth. After their false sentence pronounced against Christ, they were expelled from the Consistory Gazith, fortie yeeres before the destruction of the Temple: and afterwards, by the commaundement of the Romanes, were all slaine. They being expelled Gazith, held their Consistory at Hamith, another place in Ierusalem; but, saith *R. Abdimi*, with the place they lost their power in criminall Iudgements, which might not bee giuen but in Gazith. So do the Rabbines interpret the words, *Deut.* 17.10. *According to the words which they of that place (shew thee, thou shalt doe.* They had inferior punishments with the whippe for smaller offences: In which the Law had stinted them at forty stripes, and they abated one of that number for feare of exceeding: as h *Paul* saith, Hee had fiue times receiued forty stripes saue one. The i whippe was of Calues leather, as *Drusius* affirmeth. *Betramus* saith, that they had in each City seuen Iudges in money matters, whereof three were principall, two Leuites, and one of the rest, from whence the number is said to be but three. They had also ten Aediles, Taskers or Iudges of the Market, one of which was of the Priestly Stocke. They had in Ierusalem an vnder-Prouost, or k Captaine of the Temple. In other Cities of their dispersion, they had Synagogues and Magistrates, as at Alexandria, Antiochia, Sardis and other Cities, where they had obtained priuiledges and immunities.

g *De hoc vid. Erasti thesis, Betramum, Sigonium, & Drusii et al. pag.* 147. Where is mention of a Priests daughter burned (for whoredome) with Vine branches. Some say this power was taken away forty yeeres before the Citie was destroyed: but *Scaliger* hath it, when *Archelaus* was banished. *Scal. Annot. in Euseb. pag.* 182.

h 2 *Cor.* 11.24.

i *Drus. Pract. Pag.* 271.

k *Betramus de Pol. Iud. cap.* 13.

2. *Mac.* 3.4.

l *Buxtorf. abbreuiat Heb. dic.* אבד

Thus Iewish Excommunications, *Drusius* [2] hath obserued, that the Iewes had three kinds and degrees of Excommunications. *Niddui, Herem, Sammatha*: the first signifieth a Remouing; the second, Anathema; the third, the same which the Apostle calleth *Maran-atha*. by the first they are made ἀποσυνάγωγοι (of which is an example, *Gen.*4.4.) excommunicated from the Ecclesiasticall Assemblies. Hee which

2 *Quest. Heb. lib.* 2.

b *Dud. Pocator.* מרן אתא *est Ecclesiam sine Tabernaculo quod penetrat in* 248. *membra hominis.*

§. IIII.

Of the Iewish Excommunications.

NOW concerning the Iewish Excommunications, *Drusius* [2] hath obserued, that the Iewes had three kinds and degrees of Excommunications. *Niddui, Herem, Sammatha*: the first signifieth a Remouing; the second, Anathema; the third, the same which the Apostle calleth *Maran-atha*. by the first they are made ἀποσυνάγωγοι (of which is an example, *Gen.*4.4.) excommunicated from the Ecclesiasticall Assemblies. Hee which

which was thus Excommunicated was called *Menudde*, and the denouncers *Menuddim*. There were foure and twenty causes for the which it was inflicted, If any died therein without repentance, they iudged him worthy of stoning, and therfore stoned his coffin: where of they [c] giue example in one *Eleazer* the sonne of *Henoch*. They might enter the Temple when they were excommunicated; but that they might enter the Synagogue is vnlikely. Thus they write, [d] *Salomon* made two doores in the Temple; one for mourners and excommunicates, the other for the newly married: At this, if any entred, the Israelites which came on the Sabbaths, and sate betwixt those doores, said; He whose name dwelleth in this house, glad thee with children, If any entred at the other doore with his vpper lippe couered, they knew that he was a mourner, and said; He which dwelleth in this house, reioyce and comfort thee: If his lippe were not couered, they knew that hee was *Menudde*, Excommunicate, and said; He which dwelleth in this house, put into thy heart to heare the words of thy fellowes, &c. When the Temple was destroyed, they decreed that the Bridegroomes and Mourners should enter the Synagogue, and the men which saw them reioyced with the one, and sate on the ground with the other. If they did not amend, they were excommunicated with a greater curse, or Anathema: And if they persisted obstinate, they did Samatize them. The word Anathema is sometimes taken generally, but heere for a particular kinde. *Maran-atha* signifieth, The Lord commeth; and to doth *Sem-atha*. For by *Sem*, and more emphatically, *Hassem*, they vsed to signifie the *name*, meaning that *Tetragrammaton*, and inefFable name of God, now commonly pronounced [e] *Iehouah*. It may also be compounded of *Sama*, after the Chaldee forme; or of *Sem* and *mitha*, which signifieth; *There is death*. Some Authors ascribe this to the institution of *Henoch*: which they gather out of *Iudg.* 14.

c *Drusi Praeter. lib. 4. pag. 236. & 2. 3. lib. Mass. c. 12. 12.*

d *Mas. fol. 95. 1.*

e *Hous. ad. Drusi Praeterit. N. T in fine) praecium significat, ex assimilatione habet cum Iour Gentilium, corruptum ejus est ex illorum corrupta &c. idemque parat nomen cum eo, i. pyst. videlicet ita gramo ad quantum illud ajit & forsasse melius.*

CHAP. III.

Of the Religious places of the Israelites: their Tabernacle, Temples, Synagogues.

IN the discouery of their antient *Religion*, it seemeth fitest to discourse first of Places; secondly, of Times; Thirdly, of Rites; Fourthly, of Persons consecrated to *Religion*. And first of the first. Neither were the first men, [a] nor first Hebrews very Religious in this point of dedicating Places to Religion; as appeareth in Histories both holy and Prophane: And if for some vision, made vnto them in some places, they did for a time hallow the same with Altars and Sacrifices: yet neither were they alway, or only thus esteemed. But Hee, *Whose is the Earth, and all that therein is*, did by his Law appoint, as it were, a place of his residence amongst these, whom he had chosen for his owne people. And commanded them to erect a Tabernacle in the wilderness, fitting that their peregrination. Afterward *Salomon built him an house in Ierusalem*: which therefore is called *the holy Citie*, and *the Citie of the great King*.

a *Hottinian. de Templis cap. 1.*

The TABERNACLE (a moueable Temple that might be taken asunder, and ioyned together again) was, by Gods commandement, erected in the wilderness, in the same manner, and of the same matter, which God had both commanded and shewed to *Moses* in the Mount; the matter and forme whereof, with all that thereunto appertained; the Arke; the Candlesticke, the Altar, &c. In the booke of *Exodus* are liuely declared. It was after (as we reade in the booke of *Iosuna*) with great solemnitie carried miraculously thorow Iordan, by the Leuites deputed to that seruice: And, after their conquest of the Countrey, [c] placed in Shilo, a Citie of Ephraim. There did *Iosuna* diuide the Land to her new Conquerors; there were their solemne Assemblies for State and religion. In the time of *Heli* they remoued the Arke from the Tabernacle into the Armie, which they had gathered against the Philistims, of whom the Arke was taken. The Tabernacle in the time of *Saul*, was carried to Nob; and, in the time of *Dauid*, to Gibeon, where *Salomon* offered a thousand burnt offerings. The Philistims forced by Diuine iudgements, sent backe the Arke, receiued by the Bethsamites, curious to their cost; It was after placed in Kiriath-Iarim, in the house of *Aminadab*, next of *Obed Edom*, and then by *Dauid* in the place, which hee had fitted for the same in Ierusalem: Whence it was remoued into the Temple, which *Salomon* had built; where it was till the time of the deportation: in which time [d] it was (saith the Author of the second booke of the *Maccabees*) hidden by *Ieremie* the Prophet. But that Author is beholden

b *Iosh 3. 10. 15.*

c *Iosh. 18. 1.*

d *2. Mac. 2. 5.*

holden to the Councell of Trent for his credit: the Iewes themselues in that point, not beleeuing him; [e] who affirme, that the second Temple came short of the former, *by the want of the fire from Heauen, of the Arke, of the Vrim and Thummim, of the succession of Prophets, and the glory of God betweene the Cherubims*,

The TEMPLE was built on Mount Moriah by *Salomon*, according to the [f] patterne, which he had receiued of *Dauid*: to which worke he had gathered a greater masse of wealth, then easily we shall reade of in the Persian, Greeke, Romane, or any other Christian, Turkish, or Heathen Empire; [g] namely, one hundred thousand talents of Gold; ten hundred thousand talents of siluer, and afterward three thousand Talents of Gold, and seuen thousand Talents of Siluer: to which was added, by the offerings of the Princes, ten thousand talents of siluer, and more then fiue thousand talents of Gold, besides Iewels, and brasse, and iron, without weight, with Cedars and stones without number. The Gold amounteth after the common computation of the common talent, at sixe thousand crownes, to six hundred forty eight millions of crownes, and vpward: the siluer to about the same summe. But that which by vs is vnderualued (accounting to the talent but six thousand crownes, as some doe) Master *Brerewood* in his learned worke *de ponderibus & precijs &c.* raiseth to a higher summe; estimating the talent at foure thousand fiue hundred pound, so that the hundred thousand talents of Gold, which *Dauid* had prouided for that worke, amount to foure hundred and fifty millions of out pounds: and his million of *siluer talents* (each of which is three hundred seuenty fiue pound) to three hundred seuenty fiue millions: besides thirteene millions and fiue hundred thousand pounds in *gold*, and two millions sixe hundred twenty fiue thousand pounds in *siluer*, afterwards by *Dauid* offered to the same purpose: and by his *Princes* twenty two millions fiue hundred thousand seuen thousand and fiue hundred pounds in *gold*; and three millions seuen hundred and fifty thousand pounds in *siluer*: * That I speake not all other prouisions of *iewels, metals and timber*, and the rest. Now all that *Cyrus* got by the * conquest of an Asia, is valued but at one hundred twenty fiue millions, if wee summe his fiue hundred thousand talents, after the Ægyptian account, which is a great deale more then *Alexander* found in the Persian Treasury (so much renowned) both at *Susis* and *Persepolis*, which (as *Strabo* hath numbred) were but thirty two millions, and seuen hundred and fifty thousand pounds. That summe of *Dauid*, I confesse, had often troubled mee, nor could I euer finde satisfaction in that doubt. But in my opinion, Master *Brerewoods* coniecture is probable, that the Hebrew word in that place doth not signifie a *Talent*; or that the word *Talent* doth not alway signifie the same summe in Scripture: euen as amongst other Nations it also varied, and sometimes was vsed for a small summe, as hee sheweth out of *Homer, Pollux* and others. How soeuer therefore, I will not so vilifie this *Talent* here, as to esteeme it with some * but a *shekel*; yet I would take it (as the notation of the word may inferre) but for some massie piece of metall.

This beautifull frame I should deforme with my description, if (after a double narration of all the parts, forme, and contents thereof in the History of the Bible) I should recite the particulars. This Temple, fleeced by some, repaired by others, continued in variety of state, till the sacking and ruine of it, together with the City, by *Nebuchodonosor*. And after their reture, by the edict of *Cyrus*, and other the Persian Kings, it was rebuilded (but farre inferiour in glory) in the space, as the Iewes say, [h] vnto Christ, of six and forty yeeres: after others it was longer in hand, by reason of impediments from their cauilling, and malicious neighbours. But this error (if we vnderstand them of the building of *Zorobabel*) proceeded from the Iewish ignorance of the Persian [i] Chronologie, which knew no other Persian *Darius* but one, attributing to *Cyrus* one and thirty yeeres, to *Cambyses* nine, to the *Mags* seuen moneths: and in the sixth yeere of *Darius* which followed (as they accounted) was the Temple finished: all which amount to six and forty. They confound *Darius Nothus* (to whose times the most and best of our moderne Chronographers, *Scaliger, Iunius, Calusius, Liuely*, and others referre this rebuilding of the Temple) with that former *Darius* the sonne of *Histaspes*, and from that second yeere of *Darius Nothus*, wherein the Edict was made for the Temple, doth [k] *Scaliger* beginne the reckoning of *Daniels* seuenty weekes and a halfe (as he interpreteth) accounting from thence to the destruction of this Temple, foure hundred foure score and thirteene yeeres and a halfe. This second Temple hauing receiued accesse of magnificence in succession of times, was spoyled and polluted vnder *Antiochus*, who dedicated the same to *Iupiter Olympius*; but being freed and dedicated anew by *Maccabeus*, it recouered great part of the former beautie; till, as [l] *Iosephus* saith, and his abbreuiator *Iospipus*, it was pulled downe by *Herod*, and built anew. Herein both that allegation of the Iewes of six and forty yeeres, is against this assertion of *Iosephus*, and the History also of * *Hegesippus*; who reporteth, that he onely compassed the circuit about the Temple with a wall, and beautified the same with costly buildings, erected from the foundatiõ the Porches about the Sanctuary

c R. Samuel in lib. Sanhedrim. Hieros. fol. cap. 8. Rabbin haggad. Pet. Galat. in l. 4. Genebrard. in Chron.

f 1. chron. 28. 21. 12.

g 1. Chro. 22. 14.

* The summe of all was eight hundred sixty and seuen millions, three hundred eighty two thousand fiue hundred pounds.

* Plin. l. 33. c. 3. 1. Chron. 22. 14.

* Eupolem ap. Iust. l. 8. Iud. de asse.

h Iohn. 2. 20.

i Vid. Drus. Pract. prag. 150.

Seder Olam. Rabin & S. O. Zuta reckon otherwise, with a greater absurdite, ascribing to *Cyrus* three yeeres, to *Assuerus* (who they thinke, succeeded) foure-teene: and then *Darius*, &c.

k Scalig. Em. Temp. Ed. vlt. in Prolegom. & lib. 6.

l Iosep. Ant. q. lib. 12. Iospp. de bel. Iud.

m Egesip. lib. 2.

ctuary, and fortified it with the Castle Antonias: but some account this *Hegesippus* a counterfeit.

Chrysostome[n] more probably vnderstands those words of the Iewes, *Forty and six yeeres was this Temple a building*, of the Herodian Temple: and herein [o] *Scaliger*, *Hospinian*, and the great Cardinall *Baronius* follow him: accounting exclusively from the eighteenth yeere of *Herode* raigne, which *Funccius* reckoneth *An. M.* 3947. to the yeere 3993. in which *Iohn* baptized, and Christ vttered these words: in all which they coniecture that some what was still a doing about the new building thereof, although the principall part thereof, was performed and finished by *Herod*, in eight yeeres. This they gathered by *Iosephus* his owne Testimony, that the building continued till the time of *Nero*, and in another place, where he affirmeth that the East porch, which *Luke* calls [p] *Salomons Porch*, was still remaining of the ancient building; in the dayes of *Nero*. For thus hee saith in the last booke of his Antiquities, speaking of the times of *Albinus*, fourescore and three yeeres after *Herod* began this worke, as *Scaliger* reckoneth. Now the building of the Temple was finished. The people therefore seeing eighteene hundred worke-men, which had before been wont to liue by that building, idle, and vnwilling that the money should be laid vp, lest it might become a prey to the Romans: carefull also to prouide for the worke-men: perswaded the [q] King to redefie the East Porch, which closed vp the outside of the Temple, hanging ouer a deepe and narrow valley, borne vp by a wall of foure hundred cubits height, and the length of euery stone was twenty cubits, the thicknes six; the worke of King *Salomon* which first built the Temple. But the King, to whom *Claudius Cæsar* had committed the building of the Temple, seeing that it required much time, great expence, &c. refused. Thus it is apparent, that all the Temple was not demolished till the finall destruction thereof vnder *Titus*. Neither doe the Iewes in the Talmud speake of any third Temple: Nor can the Prophecy of [r] *Haggeus* be fulfilled; *That the glory of the second Temple, should exceede the glory of the former*; if Christ (of whose comming it is interpreted) had not by his presence, preaching, and miracles, not only supplied the defects (before mentioned) but made it surmount the other in effects of Maiesty and glory. And the zeale vnto this Testimony, not the meanest which the Christian veritie [s] vrgeth against the Iewish Incredulitie and Apostasie (which is necessarily demonstrated and euinced, whilest yet they continue their vaine hopes of a Messias, so many Ages after the desolation of the Temple whereof *Aggee* prophecied) hath caused me to vse so many words in this matter. But to satisfie the fancies of great men, their great workes are commonly made greater: For howsoeuer it was very great in it selfe, that *Herod* should haue, eight yeeres together, many worke-men at worke (which *Iosephus* numbreth for some part of the time ten thousand and a thousand Priests) yet sustaining, no doubt, some intermission after his time, either wholly, or in part, it could not be so great as to haue accomplished it wholly from the foundation, wherein *Salomon* spent seuen yeeres: and besides, what any of the naturall Israelites performed in this worke, hee imployed an hundred three and fifty thousand and six hundred worke-men of the Strangers, or Forrainers found in the Countrey. And whereas the second Temple was but halfe the height of the former, perhaps it is true, that (according to *Iosephus*) he perfected it to that height of an hundred and twenty Cubits, whereof twenty cubits sanke downe in the settling of the foundations. If any yet will rather thinke this Temple the worke of *Herod*, then *Zorobabel*, as a thing which *Iosephus* by his owne eyes might obserue; *Scaliger* doth neuertheless salue that prophecy of *Aggee*. by distinction of the *Building*, and of the [t] *Continuall Sacrifice*: Saying, that if it had beene ten times reedified, yet the continuall Sacrifice continuing, causeth that there is no interruption, and that it should still be called but one Temple. It was builded by *Herod* of white stones, fiue and twenty cubits long, eight thick, and twelue broad. He that would further reade the particulars, let him haue recourse to *Iosephus*, in his sixteenth booke of Antiquities. This Temple was burned by *Titus*, in the sack of the City, the same day that before it had beene fired by the Chaldæans. *Adrian* the Emperour [u] did after destroy the Reliques thereof, that a stone was not left vpon a stone; and there, in the same place, dedicated another Temple to *Iupiter*, that former being ouer-whelmed with earth. *Iulian* gaue leaue to the Iewes to re-edifie the Temple, in despight of Christian Religion, and contributed frankly thereto: but *Ammianus Marcell.* [x], a Heathen Writer, witnesseth; *That fire issued out of the Earth, y and burned both worke and worke-men*: when as an Earth-quake (which had before, saith [z] *Zozomen*, killed a great many, in the very attempting of this Worke) could not deterre them from proceeding in their purpose: And Crosses, miraculously fallen on the garments of many, did both teach them to forsake their Iudaisme, and to become Christians.

Chrysostome [a] mentioneth this, and saith, That vnder *Adrian* the Iewes sought to recouer their liberty, and lost their Countrey. Vnder *Constantine* they attempted the like, who there-

n *Chrysost. in Ioan. Hom.* 22.
o *Hospinian. de Temp. cap* 3. *Cæsar Baronius Tom.* 1. *Annal. An.* 31. *Scal E. T. lib.* 6.
p *Ant. l.* 12.
q *Agrippa.*
r *Hag.* 2. 10.
s *Morn. de veri. Christ. Relig.*
t ἀνδιαχρονικῶς.
u *Dion Eiecus in Adriano.*
x *Amm. Marcellinus, lib.* 23.
y *Metuendi flammarum globi prope fundamenta crebris assultibus erumpentes, secere locum exulibus aliquotiens operantibus in accessum.*
z *Sozomen. lib.* 5
a *Chrys. Hom.* 3. *contra Iudæos.*

therefore cut off their eares, and branded their bodies for Rebels, as the elder of you (saith he to his Auditors) doe know. And in our daies, about twenty yeeres since, *Iulian* the Emperour was at great expences, appointed Officers, sent for worke-men from all places, thinking to frustrate Christs Prophecie concerning the Temple, and to bring the Iewes to Idolatrie. But so soone as they had attempted this businesse, and bared the foundation, had drawne foorth the Earth, and were now ready to beginne their building; a fire burst forth from the foundations, and burned many, which caused them to cease. And if you now goe to Ierusalem you may see the foundations naked: hereof we all are witnesses. Neither did this happen vnder Christian Empertours, lest any should impute it to the Christians, but vnder an Ethnick, when Christianitie was persecuted. Thus much in effect, *Chrysostome, Gregorie Nazianzen* [b] also testifieth the same, affirming that the Earth (as it were taking a vomit from the Diuine hand) spued out the stones, which yet till this day had continued therein, and dispersed them to the great damage of the neighbour-buildings.

b *Greg. Naz. Orat. 1. in Iuliã.*

Other holy places they had, which the Scripture mentioneth as high places, which were high hills, or other open and lofty places, shaded for the most part with Trees: The Prophets enuey against them, and they were commanded to be destroyed, together with the Groues: some yet were permitted, either by extraordinary command for a time, as to *Gedeon* [d] and to *Manoah* [e]; or because of the Tabernacle at Gibeon, or of the Arke at Ierusalem. The not reforming this toleration of high places is reckoned as an eclipse of *Iehosaphats* and *Asas* glory; which *Ezekiah* and *Iosiah* quite remoued and polluted. These high and open places it seemeth were consecrated, as sitting to the celestiall bodies; to which, and to *Baal* (who is interpreted the Sunne) they vsed for the most part on them to Sacrifice. They had also their Houses and Temples for *Baal*, in Israel and Iuda; and Dan and Bethel were by *Ieroboam* dedicated to his Ægyptian Idolatrie: and Gilgal was a place of request in this kinde. *Salomon* also built Temples or houses for his Idolatrous wiues. And to reckon euery particular in this kind, were a worke endlesse: in the 2. *Reg.* 17. & 23. and other places enough is of them recorded.

c *Deut.* 12. 3.
d *Iudg.* 6. 24.
e *Iudg.* 13. 19.

Two other Temples were erected of some reputation: one by *Sanballat* at Samaria, on Mount Garizin, by licence obtained of *Alexander* the Great, whose part he followed, rebelling against *Darius* his true Lord. The occasion was, because *Manasses*, brother of *Iaddis* the High Priest had married, contrary to Gods law, *Nicaso* [f] daughter of *Sanballat*, and was forced either to leaue his Priesthood or Heathenish bed. Whereupon *Sanballat*, hauing obtained licence to build that Temple aforesaid, constituted him the High Priest thereof, many other Priests for the like fault, resorting thither to him. But of these Samaritanes wee shall haue fitter occasion to say more, when wee come to handle their Sects.

f *Ios. Ant. l. 11.*

Ptolemæus Philometor [g] granted licence to *Onias* (the sonne of the high-Priest *Onias*, whom *Antiochus* had slaine, who for the same cause had here throwded himselfe) to build a Temple, induced hereunto by a false interpretation of the Prophecy of *Esay* at *Leontopolis*, in the shire, as I may tearme it, or *Nomus* of *Heliopolis*: hauing Priests and Leuites ministring therein, and other things answering in some sort to that of Ierusalem. When the Temple of Ierusalem was burnt by *Titus*, this Temple was shut vp also by *Lupus* the Deputie, three hundred and thirty yeeres after it had beene builded: and after by his successor *Paulinus* vtterly despoyled both of the wealth and the Religion. The Citie was called of *Onias*, *Onion*. [h] It had a Tower and an Altar like that of Ierusalem, but in steade of a Candlesticke, a Lampe of gold hanging on a chaine of gold; enriched by the Kings with large reuenues.

g *Ios. Ant. l. 13. 6.*
Esay 19. 19.
h *Ios. l. 7. c. 10. de Bel. Iud.*

Synagogues [i] the Iewes had many, both in Ierusalem, where are said to haue beene foure hundred and fourescore, and all Cities of Iudea, and among the Gentiles where the Iewes were dispersed. When they first began to be builded, is vncertaine. *Cornelius Bertramus* [k] thinketh; That the eight and forty Cities of the Leuites had their fit places for Assemblies, whence Synagogues had beginning. In these Synagogues the Archisynagogi were in place of Leuites and Prophets, sometimes diuers in the same Synagogue, as *Sosthenes* and *Crispus* in that of Corinth, which on festiual daies did performe the publque prayers, and read the Law and the Prophets, expounding the same themselues, or authorising others hereunto; so that they which first were called Prophets, were afterward Scribes and Lawyers, and in the Synagogues *Archisynagogi*. They had authority also, as it seemeth, of Iurisdiction in punishing offenders. The Cities of the Leuites were as Nurseries of learning, and Vniuersities for the studies of Diuinitie. And in the reformation of Religion by *Elias* and *Elisha*, the Schooles of the Prophets were as Colledges, and the sonnes of the Prophets students of Diuinitie, which had a Rector ouer them, as may seeme by 2. *King.* 6. and other places: where also their gesture in hearing their Lectures appeareth to be sitting; and therefore

i Called also *Proseuchæ*: so *Iuuenal in qua tequoero proseuchæ?* An Oratorie.
k *Cor. Bert. de Re. Iud. c. 16. & 18.*
Act. 13. 15. & 18. 8. & 17.
2. *Reg.* 6. 1.

fore their Schooles or Academies were called Sessions. In their Synagogues also they kept both their Ciuill and Ecclesiasticall Courts. The Synagogues of Forreiners [l] at Ierusalem were also Colledges of Students. [l] *Sigonius* conieccturech, That their Babylonian exile ministred occasion to them to helpe themselues with these Houses of Prayer and instruction. The word Synagogue [m] is taken both for the Assemblies, whether in this place, or out of it, and for the place it selfe; hauing a Ciuill as well as a Religious vse. And these Synagogues they haue in the place of their dispersion vnto this day. The order they obserued in their Synagogues was this; They disputed and preached sitting; the [n] Elders sate in Chaires which were set in order, of which Christ saith, *They loue the chiefe seates in Synagogues*; those of meanest sort sate in seates, and the meanest of all on the floore vpon Mats; and not onely one did dispute or interprete, but others in order, not of the Elders alone, but of the inferiour rankes also, if any thing were reuealed to them: which Tradition of theirs, Saint *Paul* saith, hee applied to the Christian Assemblies of those times. They vsed to pray in their Synagogues standing [n], as did also the Primitiue Christians.

Besides these Temples and Houses consecrated to God, Ambition, the Ape of deuotion, founded some of other nature. *Herod* the Great, erected a sumptuous Temple and Citie in the honour of *Cæsar*, which sometime had beene called *Stratonis turris*, and after Cæsarea. The Temple of *Cæsar* was conspicuous to them which sailed farre off in the Sea, and therein were two Statues, one of Rome, the other of *Cæsar*. The sumptuousnesse of *Herods* ambition in this Citie, Temple, Theater, and Amphitheater, &c. *Iosephus* amply describeth. [o] He built another Temple at Panium, the fountaine of Iordan in honour of *Cæsar*; and lest this should stirre vp the peoples hearts against him to see him thus deuotely prophane, and prophanely deuout, he remitted to them the third part of the tributes. Hee consecrated Games, after the like Heathenish solemnitie, in honour of *Cæsar*, to be celebrated euery fifth yeere at Cæsarea. He built also the Pythian Temple at Rhodes of his owne cost. Hee gaue yeerely reuenue to the Olympyian Games, for maintenance of the Sacrifices and solemnity thereof: *Quis in rapacitate auarior? Quis in largitione effusior?* He robbed his owne to enrich (or rather vainely to lauish out on) others. He spared not the Sepulchers of the dead. For the Sepulchre of *Dauid* had lent before to *Hyrcanus* three thousand talentes of siluer; which filled him with hope of the like spoyle; and entring it with his choise friends, hee found no money but precious clothes; and whiles he in a couetous curiositie searched further, he lost two of his company, by flame (as same went) breaking out vpon them. Hereupon he left the place, and, in recompence, in the entry of the Sepulchre, built a monument of white Marble.

He built also [p] Sebaste in the Region of Samaria, wherein hee erected a Temple, and dedicated a Court of three furlongs and a halfe of ground beforeit, to *Cæsar*. Thus *Cæsar* was made a God by him, who would not allow Christ a place among men, but, that hee might kill him, spared not the infants of Bethleem, no not his owne sonne amongst the rest, as this his god iested of him, [q] saying; That hee had rather bee *Herods* Swine then his Sonne. For his Iewish deuotion prohibited him to deale with Swine, but not Religion, not Reason, not Nature could protect those Innocents from slaughter.

[l] *Vid. Scal. 6. 9. Gran. Sig. l. 2. c. 8.*

[m] *Erasmus de excommunicat. Thesis.*

[n] *Ambros. in 1. Cor. 14.*

[n] *Vid. Drus. prat. pag. 19.*

[o] *Ant. l. 15. 13.*

[p] *Ios. de Bell. Iud. l. 1. c. 16.*

[q] *Macrob. Saturn. l. 2.*

CHAP. IIII.

Of the Iewish computation of time, and of their festiuall daies.

THE day amongst the Iewes was (as amongst vs) Naturall and Artificiall: this from Sunne-rising to Sunne-setting, to which is opposed Night, the time of the Sunnes absence from our Hemisphere: that comprehended both these, called of the Greekes Νυχθήμερον, containing one whole reuolution of the Sunnes motion to the same point of the Horizon or Meridian, in twenty foure houres. This Naturall [a] day the Babylonians began at the rising of the Sunne, the Athenians at the setting, the Vmbrians (as the Astrologians) at Noone, the Egyptians and Romane Priests at Midnight. The Iewes agreed in their reckoning with the Athenians, as did the Gallilan [b] *Cæsars* time, reporting *Pluto* to be the author of their Nation; and some relickes hereof is in our naming of time by a *seuen-night*, and a *fort-night*; although otherwise wee reckon the day betweene two midnights. The most naturall computation of this naturall day, is, to follow that order of Nature, wherein darkenesse had the prioritie of time, [c] *and the euening and the morning were made one day*, or the first day: which faith

[a] *Plin. l. 2. c. 77. Fabri Hadriani Catena temporum 28. Scal. de Emend. Temp. l. 1.*

[b] *Cæsar. Com. l. 6.*

[c] *Gen. 1. 5.*

(faith [d] *Hoffinian*) the Italian and Bohemian Clockes doe yet obserue. The day was not diuided of the first Hebrewes (before the Babylonian captiuity) into houres, but was distinguished by *Vigilie*, or * Watches, of which they had foure; the first began at euening, the second at mid-night, the third in the morning, the fourth at noone, Neither is there any Hebrew word signifying an houre, although some interpret the degrees of the *Dyall of Ahaz.* [e] to be houres: some (as *Tremell.*) halfe houres. Afterwards it was diuided into houres, twelue in the night, and as many in the day: not equall as ours, but longer or shorter, according to so many equall portions of the day or night; so that with them the first, second, third, fourth, fift, fix, seuenth, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleuenth, and twelfth houre, was answerable with our houres of seuen, eight, nine, ten, eleuen, twelue, one, two, three, foure, 10 fiue, and sixe, if we consider them in the Equinoctiall; otherwise they differed from our equall houres more or lesse, according to the vnequall lengthening or shortning of the daies, but so that an easie capacitie may conceiue the proportion. These houres sometimes they reduced into foure, the first containing the first, second and third, ot with vs, the seuenth, eighth, and ninth houres: the second; the fourth, fift, and fixt, or after our reckoning, ten, eleuen, and twelue of the clock, and so forwards. This was the Ecclesiastical Computation according to the times of Prayers and Sacrifices, imitated still in the Church of Rome in their Canonicall houres. Thus is *Marke* reconciled to the other Euangelists, [f] in relating the time of Christs passion, the first calling it the third houre when they crucified him, or led him to be crucified, whereas *Iohn* saith, That it was [g] about the sixt houre when *Pilate* 20 deliuered him. Thus may the parable of the Labourers in the Vine-yard bee vnderstood, *Matth.* 20. and other places of Scripture. The night also was diuided into foure Watches, each containing three houres accordingly, They had three houres of Prayer, the third, the sixt, the ninth, as both the Iewish and [h] Euangelicall Writers mention: the first of which they say *Abraham* instituted, the second *Isaac* (it began when it was halfe an houre past the sixt houre, and continued till halfe an houre after the ninth: at this houre the Disciples of the *Wisemen* tooke their meate, which before this Prayer tasted nothing) the third began when the former left, and continued till the Euening. And this was obserued both for their publike and priuate Prayers, although it beenot likely that the whole time was that way spent, especially in priuate deuotions; for then their particular callings had beene frustrate, 30 and cancelled by this exercise of the generall.

Seuen daies were a [i] weeke, whereof the seuenth was called the Sabbath; others had no particular name, but were called the first day of the weeke, or the first day of (or after) the Sabbath, and so of the rest. The Christians called them [k] *Feria*, as the first second or third *Feria*, for Sunday, Munday, Tuesday: the reason whereof was, the keeping of Easter weeke holy. For that being made in their Calender the first weeke of the yeere, and by Law being wholly *feriata*, freed from working, and sanctified to holy vses; therefore the daies also of other weekes receiued that name from this first weeke. Touching which there is a Law of *Constantine* the great, to keepe both it and the weeke before it also ἀφύλακτως, without working, which for the later was by custome obtained, and by a Canon [l] enioyed, to spend it 40 wholly in the Church with Psalmes and Hymnes and spirituall Songs. Yea, the antient Christians obserued a continuall * festiuall from Easter to Whitsuntide, in which they neither kneeled nor fasted.

Their Moneths, as with vs and the Grecians, tooke their name of the Moone, and with them also their measure, reckoning the order of their daies according to the age of the Moone, and by course they contained, one thirty dayes, the next twenty nine, and therefore were constrained euery second or third yeere to *intercale*, or adde, as in a Leape-yeere one moneth of two and twenty daies, and in euery fourth yeere, of three and twenty daies. This they called [m] *Veadar*, because it followed the twelfth moneth *Adar*, for the supply 50 of ten daies, one and twenty houres, and two hundred and foure scruples, which the twelue moneths of the Moone came short of the yeere of the Sunne. And this they were forced to doe for the obseruation of the Passouer, and their other feasts. [n] Before their Babylonian thraldome, foure onely of these moneths were knowne by proper names; the first called *Ethanim*, the second *Bul*, the seuenth, which after was made the first, *Abib*; the eighth *Zif*: but afterwards the rest receiued names, which had beene before distinguished only by order, and the former names also were altred; that being reckoned the first moneth of the yeere, in which befell the fifteenth day of the Moone, after the Equinoctiall Vernall, and their names follow, *Nisan, Iar, Sinan, Thamuz, Ab, Elul, Thischri, Marcheschuan, Cislen, Tebeth, Schebath, Adar.* Thus *Hoffinian*; but *Scaliger* and *Ar. Montanus* in his *Daniel*, or 60 ninth booke of Iewish Antiquities, say, That the antient yeere had twelue moneths, as appeareth by the Historie of *Noah*: but those moneths had no proper names, but of their order, the first, second, third moneth, &c. Those names, which after they were knowne by,

were

d *Hoffinian. de fest. Ethnic. l.1.c.8.*
* *Iunius in Ex. 12. plane hac & plene.*
e *Isa.38.8.*
f *Marc.15.25. & 33. vid. Bez. annot. ib.*
g *Iohn 19.*
h *Act. 10. & 3. vid. Drusi. pract. in Act.3.1. & 10.3.*
i *Septimana, sic omnibus quidem Orientis populis ab vltima vsque Antiquitate vsitata: nouis autem Europeis vix tandem post Christianismum recepta. Scal. de Emend. T. l. 1. Antiquius & appellatio dierum septimane sub nominib. 7. Planetorum quam horarum. Hore nouæ appellatio, a Græcis, ibid. lib 7. & causet. ad Aiben. l.1. allegnate post Arist. temporu.*
k *Scal. E T l.7. pag.730.*
l *Can. 66. in Trullo.*
* *Amb. Ser 61. Inst. p. dominice tota 50. dierum curricula celebratur &c.*
m *Vid. Hoffin. de Fest. Christ.*
n *Deadar*, that is, *and Adar*, or *Adar* doubled.
n *Hoff. de fest. Scal. Em. T. l.1.*

were Chaldean; and so *Elias* in *Thesbit.* They were all Chaldean or Persian names, not mentioned in any of the Prophets before the captiuitie, and they also name but seuen. But in *Thargum Hierosol.* they are all expressed in their order. The Iaponites, Chinois, and Indians, haue no names yet for their monethis, but name them by their order and number. The Romanes also named some of their moneths by their order; others after their Emperours, as *Iulius* and *Augustus*, to which *Domitian* added; *Germanicus* for September, his owne name for October. *Commodus* made an Edict, for the naming of August *Commodus*, September *Herculeus*, October *Iunicius*, November *Exuperatorius*, December *Amazonius*.

10 The Hebrew yeere before *Moses*, began at the new Moone next before the Autumnall Equinoctiall, that being supposed by some to be the time wherein the World was first created, euery Plant and Tree hauing the fruit and seede ripe; and this reckoning of the yeere in ciuill affaires, is obserued of the Iewes vnto this day; and from hence they began their Iubilee and seuenth Sabbatticall yeere, lest otherwise they should haue lost two yeeres profits, not reaping the fruit of the olde yeere, nor sowing in the next. Their Ecclesiasticall or festiuall yeere began at the Spring, as wee haue said afore, by the commandement of GOD, at, and in remembrance of their departure out of Egypt at the same time, *Exod.* 12. as with vs wee haue an Ecclesiasticall yeere moueable, according to the fall of Easter, differing from the Ciuill beginning at our Lady, as with others at Christmasse, or New-yeeres day.

20 *Scaliger* thus obserueth concerning the Iewish yeere: The Iewes (saith he vse a double reckoning of their yeere; one after the course of the Moone, the other after the *Tekupha's*, or course of the Sunne. *Tekupha* * anciently was that moment, in which the passed yeere ended, and the following began. But the later Iewes diuided the yeere of the Sunne into foure equall parts, each whereof consisted of ninety one dayes, seuen houres and a halfe. And they diuided the said yeere into twelue equall parts, each containing daies thirty, houres ten, and thirty minutes. They began at the fifteenth of Aprill, moued by the authority of *R. Samuel*, an antient Criticke, who ascribed the first *Tekupha* to that moneth which before they began in Autumne: the reason was, because at that time *Moses* led the Israelites out of Ægypt. The moderne Iewes are so superstitious in the obseruation of their *Tekupha's*, that

30 they esteeme it danger of life to alter their reckoning of them. They also attribute to each of them his proper Element, as to the *Tekupha Tamuz* (the Summer Solstice) the Fire; and he which should drinke or eate in the moment of that *Tekupha*, they thinke, should bee taken with a burning feuer. *Tekupha Nisan*, is on the fifteenth of Aprill, *Tekupha Tamuz*, on the fifteenth of Iuly, *Tekupha Tisri*, on the foureteenth of October, *Tekupha Tebeth*, on the fourteenth of Ianuarie. In times past they obserued superstitiously the beginnings of euery moneth, thinking, that then the Sun entred into that Signe which was attributed to that moneth. Now they onely obserue the foure Tropicall Signes. Such is their folly, as though now the entrance of *Aries* were not more then fiue and thirty dayes before the *Tekupha* of *Moses*. But their leaden braines know not what *Tekupha* is, nor why, nor when it was insti-

40 tuted. So much *Scaliger*.

If the new Moone happened after noone, then the moneth and their New-Moone-Feast began the next day, and the yeere likewise, which began at the New-Moone. They were so scrupulous concerning the Moone, that *Clemens Alexand.* out of another Author obiects the worship thereof vnto them. They thinke (saith * he) that they alone know GOD, not knowing that they worship Angels and Arch-angels, and the *Moneth*, and the *Moone*; and if the Moone appeare not, they keepe not that Sabbath, which they call *The first*, nor the *New-Moone*, nor the *Vnleauened*, nor the *Feast*, nor the *great Day*. This fabulous ¶ Author cited by *Clement* vnderstood not himselfe, saith *Scaliger*; for they still obserue the appearance or first sight of the Moone, not to ordaine the solemnitie thereby (which was done by

50 a certaine rule) but to sanctifie it: and therefore as soone as they saw the *New-Moone*, they say *Good lucke* (or a good signe) *be it to vs and to all Israel*. The same also do the Muhamedans obserue. By the *first Sabbath* he meaneth the New-yeeres day, called a Sabbath, because it was holy-day: by the *Feast*, Pentecost; by the *great-Day*, that of Tabernacles. Although in regard of vse, some daies were more holy then other, yet had euery day appointed † sacrifices morning and euening.

Their Feasts were either weekely, of which was the *Sabbath*; or monethly, euery *New-Moone*; or yeerely, of which were the *Easter* or *Passeouer*, *Pentecost*, or *Whitsuntide*, the Feast of *Tabernacles*. These were chiefe, to which were added the Feast of *Trumpets* of *Expiation*, and of the *Great* † *Congregacion*. To these we may reckon the seuenth yeeres *Sabbath*, and

60 which was, (saith *Rambam*) to accomplish there in those kinds of ioy which required houses, and could not be done in Bothes. *Moseh. Mishnah. 3. cap. 44.* On the next day was the Feast of the Law, called also *Blessing*, because they reade then the last Chapter but one of Deuteronomie. See *Nehem. 9.*

o *Hospinian, Ar. Montanus*, in his *Daniel* & others, begin the world in Autumne; but our English yeere doth (as also *Scaliger* did, who in the 1st Edition of *Eus.7.* hath now altered his opinion, and agreeth with the former) suppose the world was created in the Equinoctiall vernall. And of this opinion is *R. Iehosua, Basi, Ambrosij, Historum, Augustine, Beda, Isidorus, Damascene*, and other later Diuines, and Astronomers, whose reasons *Hospinian* laboreth to confute & adduce sub iudice lis est.

p *Ios. Scal. de Emend. Temp. l. 4.*

* *Tekupha* is the fourth part of a yeere. *Sic Iosephus Paraph. Chal. Gen. 8. vlt. Semenin in Tekupha Tisri. messis in Tek. Nisan fructum in Tek. Tabith, ephus in Tek. Tamuz.*

* *strom l. 6. ex Petri Predicatio. libro.*

q *Scal. prolegom. in Em. Temp. Edit. vlt.*

r *Exod. 29. 38. Num. 28. Leuit. 23.*

† The Octaues at the end of the Feast of Tabernacles

the

the yeere of *Iubilee*. These Feasts GOD had prescribed to them, commanding, that in those three principall Feasts, euery male (as the Iewes interpreted it, that were cleane and sound, and from twenty yeeres of their age to fiftie) should appeare there where the Tabernacle or Temple was, with their offerings, as one great Parish, *Deut.16.* hereby to retaine an *vnitie* in diuine worship; and a greater *solemnitie*; with increase of *ioy* and *charitie*; being better confirmed *in that Truth*, which they here saw to be the same which at home they had learned, and also better strengthened against the errors of the Heathen and Idolatrous feasts of Diuels. To these were after added vpon occasions, by the Church of the Iewes, their foure Feasts, in memory of their calamities receiued from the Chaldeans, their Feast of *Lots*, of *Dedication*, and others, as shall follow in their order. 10

(*Leu.23.32.* They began to celebrate their Feasts at Euen: so *Moses* is commanded, [f] From *Euen to Euen shall ye celebrate your Sabbath*; imitated in the Christian Euen-songs, on holy Euens; yet the Christian Sabbath is by some supposed to begin in the morning, because Christ did rise at that time. As for the causes of Feasts, many they are and great: That the time it selfe should in the reuolution thereof, be a place of Argument to our dulnesse; *This is the day which the Lord hath made, let vs reioyce and be glad in it.* And what else is a festiuall day, but a witnesse of times, light of truth, life of memory, mistresse of life? A token of publike thankfulnesse for greatest benefits passed, a spurre to the imitation of our Noble Ancestrie, the Christian Worthies; a visible word to the Ethnieke and ignorant, which thus, by what we doe, may learne what we beleeue; a visible heauen to the spirituall man, that in festiuall ioyes doth, as it were, open the vayle; and here *sides* is turned into a *vides*, whiles in the best exercises of Grace, he tasteth the first fruits of Glory, and with his *Te Deums*, and *Hallelu-iahs*, begins that blessed *Song of the Lamb*; whiles time it selfe puts on her festiuall attire, and acting the passed, admonish the present ages, teacheth by example, quickneth our Faith, strengtheneth hope, inciteth charitie, and in this glimpse and dawning, is the day-starre to that Sunne of Eternitie, when time shall be no longer, but the Feast shall last for euerlasting. These the true causes of festiuall Times. 20

[f] *Psal.118.24.*

CHAP. V. 30

Of the Festiuall dayes instituted by God in the Law.

AS they were enioyned to offer a Lambe in the morning, and another in the Euening euery day, with other Prayers, Prayses, and Rites; so had the SABBATH a double honour in that kinde, and was wholly sequestred and sanctified to religious duties. Which howsoeuer it was ceremoniall, in regard of that seuenth day designed, of the Rites therein prescribed, of that rigid and strait obseruation exacted of the particular workes prohibited, and of the deadly penaltie annexed; yet are we to thinke, that the Eternall Lord, who hath all times in his hand, had, before this, selected some time proper to his seruice, which in the abrogation of Ceremonies [a] *Legall*, is in *Morall* and *Christian* duety to be obserued to the end of the World: euen as from the beginning of the Would he had sanctified the seuenth day to himselfe, and in the Morall Law (giuen not by *Moses* to the Iewes, but by GOD himselfe, as to all creatures) is the remembrance of that sanctification vrged. Friuolous are their reasons, who would reuue the Iewish Sabbath amongst Christians, tying and tyrising vs in a more then Iewish seruitude, to obserue both the last and first dayes of the weeke, as some haue preached, and of the Æthiopian Churches is practised. Neither can I subscribe to those, who are so farre from paying two, that they acknowledge not the debt of one vpon diuine right, but only in Ecclesiasticall courtesie, and in regard of the Churches meere constitution; and haue thereupon obtruded on many other dayes as Religious respects or more, then on this (which yet the Apostles entituled in name and practice, *The Lords day*) with the same spirit whereby they haue equalled traditions to the holy Scriptures. 40

a See l.1.c.4.

Thus Cardinal [b] *Tolet* allowes on the Lords day iourneying, hunting, working, buying, selling, Fayres, Fencing, and other priuate and publike workes by him mentioned; and saith, a man is tyed to *sanctifie the Sabbath*, but not to *sanctifie it well*; (a new kinde of distinction) the one is in hearing Masse, and ceasing from seruile workes; the well-doing it, in spirituall contemplations, &c. Another [c] Cardinall is as fast as he is loose, affirming, That other holy daies also binde the Conseience, euen in cases voide of contempt and scandall, as being truely more holy then other daies, and a part of diuine worship, and not only in respect of order and politie. 50 60

b *Tolet. Instruct. lib.4. cap.24.25.*

c *Bellarm de cultu sanct. lib.3. cap.10.*

But

But to returne to our Iewish Sabbath. *Plutarch* thought, that the Sabbath was deriued of Σαβάζιος, which signifieth to keepe Reuell-rout; as was vsed in their Bacchanals of Σαβάζιος, which is interpreted *Bacchus*, or the sonne of *Bacchus*, as *Coelius Rhodiginus* [d] shewseth out of *Amphitheus* and *Musæus*; who is therefore of opinion, That *Plutarch* thought the Iewes on their Sabbaths worshipped *Bacchus*, because they did vse on that day to drinke somewhat more largely (a Sabbatizing too much, by too many Christians imitated, which celebrate the same rather as a day of *Bacchus*, then the *Lords day*. [e]) *Bacchus* his Priests were called *Sabbi*, [f] of this their reuelling and misse-rule. Such wide coniectures we finde in others, whereas the Hebrewes call it *Sabbath*, of שבת, which signifieth *To rest*, because of their vacation to Diuine Offices, and not for idlenesse or worse imployments. And for this cause all the festiuall solemnities in the Scripture [g] are stiled with this generall title and appellation, as times of rest from their wonted bodily seruices. Likewise their seuenth yeere was Sabbathicall [h], because of the rest from the labors of Tyllage. In those feasts also, which consisted of many daies solemnitie, the first and last were Sabbaths, [i] in regard of the strictnesse of those daies rest.

Luke [k] hath an obscure place, which hath much troubled Interpreters with the difficulty thereof, ἐν σαββάτῳ δευτεροπρώτῳ, our English reades it; *The second Sabbath after the first.* * *Isidore* saith, it was so called of the *Pascha*, and *Azyma* comming together. *Chrysostome* thinkes (as *Sigonius* cytes him) it was when the 1 New-Moone fell on the Sabbath, and made a double Festiuall. *Sigonius*, when they kept their Passeouer in the second Moneth. * *Stella* takes it for *Manipulus frugum*, alledging *Iosephus* his Author. [m] *Ambrose*, for the Sabbath next after the first day of the Easter Solemnitie. [n] *Hospinian*, for the Octaues or last day of the same: * *Maldonatus*, for the Feast day of Pentecost, which was the second of the chiefe Feasts: But *Iosephus Scaliger* * saith, That the second day of the Feast was called ΔΕΥΤΕΡΑ ΤΟΥ ΠΑΣΧΑ, (being the sixteenth day of the Moneth, called *Manipulus frugum*) and the Sabbaths which fell betwixt that and Pentecost, receiued their denomination in order from the same; *Secundo-primum, Secundo-secundum, &c.* And hence doth *Luke* call that first Sabbath which fell after that δευτεροπρώτῳ. or second day of the Feast δευτεροπρώτου. Of this we shall haue occasion to say more when we come to the Samaritans. [p] The name Sabbath is also taken for the [q] whole weeke. But I list not to stand on the diuers significations of the Word.

[r] *Iosephus* and *Plinie* tell of a Riuer in Syria, in the kingdome of *Agrippa*, called *Sabbaticus*, which on other daies ran full and swift, on the Sabbath rested from his course. *Petrus Galatinus* [s] alledgeth the ceasing of the Sabbaticall streame, for an argument of the abrogation of the Iewish Sabbath.

The Iewes were superstitiously strict in the obseruation of their Sabbath: *Ptolomey* without resistance captiuating their Citie, and themselues by this aduantage, as did *Pompey* afterwards. And in the dayes of *Matathias*, father of *Iudas Maccabeus*; a thousand were murthered without resistance, till that by him they were better aduised: Which appeared by the Pharises, that cauelled at the plucking and rubbing of a few eares of Corne, by the hungrie Disciples, and at their Master for healing on that day, though by his Word: which their superstition, the Iew that fell into a Priuie at Maidenbourg. *An.* 1270. on his Sabbath, and another at Tewksburie, 1220. (and were the one by the Bishop of the place, the other by the Earle of Glocester constrained to abide the Christian Sabbath, whence on their owne they would not be freed) testified to the world by a stinking penance, and the later leauing also his stinking superstitious soule behinde to seale his deuotion. They added of their owne, fasting that day till noone, their Sabbath daies iourney, which was (saith Saint *Ierome*) [t] by the institution of *Barachibas*, *Simeon* and *Hellis*, (*Rabbines*) not about two thousand paces, * or two miles. Thus did this holy ordinance which God had instituted for the refreshing of their bodies, the instruction of their Soules, and as a type of eternall happines, vanish into a smoky superstition amongst them. The Sacrifices and accustomed rites of the Sabbath are mentioned, *Num.* 28 *&* *Leu.* 23. *&* 24. Where we may reade, that the daily burnt-offering, and meate-offering, were doubled on the Sabbath, and the Shew-bread renued, &c.

The sanctification of daies and times being a [u] token of that thankefulnesse, and a part of that publike honor which we owe vnto God, he did not onely enioyne, by way of perpetuall homage the sanctification of one day in seuen, which Gods immutable Law doth exact for euer, but did require also some other part of time, with as strict exaction, but for lesse continuance; besides, accepting that which being left arbitrarie to the Church, was by it consecrated voluntarily vnto like religious vses. Of the first of these (the Sabbath) we haue spoken: of the Mosaicall Feasts, the *New-Moones* are next to be considered. The institution hereof we reade, *Numb.* 28. and the solemne Sacrifice therein appointed; so

d *Cal. Rhodig. Lect. Antiq. l.* 4. *c.* 15.

e *Apoc.* 1. 10.

f *Plutarch. Sympos. lib.* 4. Σαββοῖ τὴν ἡμέρ ἣν πολλοὶ τῶν βάκχων καλοῦσι

g Exod. 20. 12.

h *Leuit.* 25. 2.

i *Leuit.* 23.

k *Luc.* 6. 1.

* *Isid. in Thom. Catena.*

l *Car. Sigon. de Rep. Heb. l.* 3. *c.* 13.

* *Stella. in Luc. c.* 6.

m *Ambr. in Luc.*

n *Hospin. de fest. Indeot. c* 3.

* *Maldonat. in Matth.* 12.

o *Scaliger. Can. Isag. l.* 4.

p *Infra. cap.* 9.

q *Luc.* 18. 12.

r *bis in Sabbat.*

s *Iosde Bell. Iud. l.* 7. *c.* 14. *Inter Arcas & Raphoneas. Plin. l.* 31. *c.* 2. *in Iudea.*

f *P. Galat. de Arcan l.* 11. 9.

t *In vita Iosephi.*

* *Drus.* saith two thousand cubites, his Authors are the Chaldee paraphrast. *Tarium. Theophil. Oecumenius* giueth the reason, because the Arke and Tabernacle did so farre go before the people. See *Trem. in Syr. transl. All.* 1. 12.

u *Hooker. l.* 5. *Ecclesiast. Polit.*

to glorifie GOD the Author of Time and Light, which the darkened conceites of the Heathens ascribed to the Planets and bodies Cœlestiall, calling the Moneths by their names. Besides their Sacrifices, they banqueted on this day, as appeareth by [x] *Dauid* and *Saul*, where the day after was festiuall also, eyther so to spend the surplusage of the former daies sumptuous Sacrifice, or for a further pretext of Religion and Zeale, as *Martyr* hath noted: *Sigonius* [y] maketh these New-Moone daies to bee *professes*, that is, such wherein they might labor, the Sacrificing times excepted: but those coueteous penny-fo-thers seeme of another minde. [a] *When* (say they) *will the New-moone be gone, that we may sell Corne, and the Sabbath, that we may sell Wheate?* And *Esay* 1. the Sabbaths and New-moones are reckoned together.

x 1. Sam. 20. 5.

y *Mart. in* 1. *Sam.* *Sigon. de Repub. Heb.* l. 2. c. 4.

a *Amos* 8. 5.

Their PASSEOVER called of them *Pasach*, so called of the Angels passing ouer the Israelites in the common destruction of the Ægyptian first-borne. For *Pasach*, the Greeians (as some note) vse *Pascha*, of πάσχω to suffer, fitly in regard of the body of that shadow Christ himselfe, who [b] was our Paschal Lambe, in his suffering sacrificed for vs.

b 1. Cor. 5. 7.

The institution of this Feast is set downe, *Exod.* 12. as *Hospinian* hath noted in the yeere after the creation of the world 2447. [c] after the flood. 791. after the promise made to *Abram* 430. It was celebrated from the fifteenth to the one and twenty day of the moneth *Abib* or *Nisan*, those two dates being more specially sanctified with a holy Conuocation and abstinence from worke, except the dressing of their meate: the other being obserued with vnleauened bread: and the fourteenth day being the *Parasceue*, or preparation: in the eueninge of which fourteenth day, as some men hold opinion, after Sun-set in the twy-light; others in the fourth houre, or fourth part of the day, as containing three houres space, before the going downe of the [d] Sun, the Paschal Lambe was slaine: about which time (the ninth houre) *Christ* the true Pascha yeelded vp the ghost, [e] hauing eaten the Passeouer on the night before, which was the true time, and was then altered by the Iewes: which corruption continued to the destruction of their Temple, Christ suffered (saith *Scaliger*) on the third of Aprill, the fourth yeere compleate after his Baptisme. From which ninth houre the Iewes began their Vespera or Euening; and therefore it was inioyned them *inter duas Vesperas* [f], to kill the Passeouer. In these Vespers, as also in the Eeuen of euery Feast and Sabbath, after the euening Sacrifice they which do any worke, saith the Iewish Canon, shall neuer see good signe of a blessing: which was the cause that they hastened so much the death of the theeues which were crucified with Christ.

c *Scaliger & Calusius*, accounts 2447. *Iudgest.* 3501. others otherwise.

d *Ios. de Bell.* 7. 17. saith, *a nona: sic ad sanctissimam hostiam celebant.*

e *Proleg. in* 7. *Ed. Scal.* f *Ita dua fuerunt Vesperæ vna diti inc'inata ab hora nona, altera, ad Lucernam, sub hora duodecima.* *Mishn. in Ex.* 12.

This Lambe or Kidde was chosen a male of a yeere old, the tenth day of the Moone, which they kept till the fourteenth day tyed (after their traditions) to the foote of some bench or fourme, so to minister occasion to their children, of questioning about it, to themselues of Preparation and Mediation, and so espie in this meane while, if any default were in the Lambe. It was first a private Sacrifice, to be performed in euery house, after in that place only, where the Tabernacle or Temple was; they were dispersed by companies, according to *Iosephus*, not fewer than tenne, sometime twentie in a companie; with Christ there were thirteene, and of those sacrifices and companies in time of *Cestius*, were numbred two hundred fifteen thousand and fiue hundred, so that reckoning the least number, there were ten times so many, besides those that by diseases or other manifold lets were not partakers thereof: and in regard of this Feast being assembled thither through GODS iust iudgement, their whole huge multitudes were couped or caged together in the wals of this Citie to destruction, vnder *Titus*.

The bloud of the Lambe they were to receiue in a vessell, and to sprinkle the same with a bunch of Hysope on the doore posts, and to eate it in the night, which was the beginning of the fifteenth day, roast with fire, with sowre herbes and vnleauened bread; both the head, feete, and purtenance; girded, shod, with staues in their hands, in haste, standing, burning whatsoeuer was left of the same. After the eating the Sacramentall Lambe standing, they had other prouision which they eate sitting, [g] or after their manner of lying at Table, in remembrance of their libertie, as appeareth by *Iohn*: leaning on his breast, and *Iudas* his sop at *Christs* supper. In the Law it was commanded that they should eate the Passeouer standing; which they onely practised in the first celebration in Ægypt. For so the Iewes set forth the difference of a Paschall night from other nights, in their twice washing, which on other nights they do but once: in their vnleauened: in their Endiue or sowre herbes: And whereas on other nights, they sit or lie, now they lie onely, in token of their securitie. The washing was therfore necessarie, lest they should defile the beds whereon they lay with their dusty feete. In which respect the [h] Gentiles also vsed to wash their feete; the Iewes their whole bodie. And the Pharise marueiled at Christ, ὅτι οὐ πρῶτον ἐβαπτίσθη that he was not thus baptized or washed before he sate downe. Some contented themselues onely with washing of the feete; the want of which Office Christ obiected to another of his Pharisaicall hostes.

g *Lipsius.*

Scal. Em. T. 1. 6. p. 536.

h *Plautus, Persa, locus hic tuus est, hic accumbe, ferte aquam pedibus.* *Luk.* 11. *Iohn.* 7.

But

But in the Paschall rite a double washing was requisite, because of their double Supper; which in the flourishing state of the Iewes, was also vsed in other their chiefe solemnities of the Pentecost and Tabernacles. In the former they eate their Sacrifices, in the later certaine Prayses were sung, and it was called the supper dimissorie. But this second Paschall Supper differed from that in other solemnities, wherein they vsed iunkets, which in this were forbidden; and instead therof they had Endine and wilde Lettice, mingled with Vinegar, and other things, which now they make as thick as mustard. The Housholder first dipt his vnleauened soppe therein and eate it, and then tooke from vnder the carpet or cloth another, which he brake into as many pieces as he had Communicants in his company, every piece
10 being as big as an Oliue, which was giuen to each of them in order. When he eate that sop, first he said, Blessed be thou, Lord our God, King of the world, which hast sanctified vs with thy Commandements, and hast giuen vs the precept of vnleauened bread.

And when he had eaten, he said (as he distributed to the rest) This is the bread of affliction, which our fore-fathers ate in the land of Ægypt. Euery one which is hungry, come and eate: euery one which hath neede, come and obserue the Passouer. After the destruction of Ierusalem, they added these words; Now we are here seruants, but hereafter wee shall be in the land of Israel: now we are here seruants, hereafter in the land of Israel free. After this, he tasted of the Cuppe, and deliuered to the next, and he to the third, and so on through the company. This was called the Cup of thanksgiuing, or of singing the Hymne,
20 which he deliuered with these words; Blessed art thou O Lord our GOD King of the world, Creator of the fruite of the Vine. Then did they sing a Hymne and depart; for the Canon forbad them to eate or drinke any thing after the Hymne. These were the Paschall rites in the time of CHRIST, who also vsed that reiterated both washing (saith *Scaliger*) and Supper, and also the Hymne. They were in the Eeuen of the foureteenth day to purge their houses of leauen, and that throughout the Land, where the Lambe might not be eaten. All the Israelites were inioyned this dutie: And they which by occasion of iourneying or vncleaneneſse, could not now celebrate the Passouer, were to obserue it the next moneth, *Numb.9.*

The day after, or second day of this Paschall Feast, they were to bring to the Priest a
30 Gomer of the first-fruits of their Corne, and a Lambe, with other duties for a burnt offering to the LORD: before which time they might not eate of the new yeeres fruites, which at that time in those Countries beganne to ripen, and so to acknowledge GOD the giuer thereof. [i] *Philo* saith, That each priuate man, which otherwise brought in his Sacrifice to the Priest, Sacrificed or slew this Sacrifice, with his owne handes: And elsewhere [k] hee affirmeth the same. *Eleazarus*, 1 or as other say, the *Synedrium*, ordayned three hundred and fiftie yeeres before the birth of Christ, that the Passe-ouer should not bee solemnized on the second, fourth, or sixt day of the Weeke: And therefore when it fell on the sixt day, which wee call Fridaie, it was deferred to the seuenth, at the time of Christs Passion, & he with his Disciples ate it the night before, according to the Law of God.

40 This *Eleazarus* ordained, that the feast of Lots should not be celebrated on the second, fourth, or seuenth: or Pentecost on the third, fift, or seuenth; Or that of the Tabernacles, on the first, fourth, and sixt: Or the Fast of Expiation, on the fist, third, or sixt: Or their New-yeeres day, on the first, fourth, and sixt, which decree is extant in the booke of *Gamaliel Pauls* Master, which they did superstitiously, to auoide two Sabbaths, (in so strict a rest) together, and carrying boughes on the Sabbath, if that Feast fell thereon, and on other such reasonlesse reasons.

After this sixteenth day of the moneth, or second day of the vnleauened bread, in which first of all, sickle was thrust into the Harueſt, to offer the first fruits thereof vnto GOD, were numbred seuen intire *Weekes*, and the next day, which was the fiftieth (accounting inclusiue-
50 ly) was celebrated the feast of PENTECOST, receiuing his name of that reckoning of fiftie: And *Schefnoth*, that is, *of Weekes*, because of this reckoning of seuen weekes, it is called also the *Feast of the Harueſt of the first fruites*: the [m] rites thereof are prescribed, *Leuit.*23. The institution was in respect of the Law then giuen on Mount Sinai, and a type of that Euangelicall Law, which Christ, hauing ascended vp on high, did write not in Tables of stone, but in fleshly Tables of the heart, when (at the same time) hee gaue the holy Ghost to his Disciples, as a remembrance also of the Author of their Harueſt-fruits, and of their possession of that land where they had seede-time and harueſt, which in the wildernesse they wanted.

As the seuenth day in the weeke, so the seuenth moneth in the yeere, was in a great part festiuall: fitteſt for that purpose, as the fruits of the Earth being now inned.

The first day of this moneth was, besides the ordinarie *Kalends* or *Festiuall New-Moone* [n], the Feast of *Trumpets*, in respect of that rite then obserued of sounding Trumpets, being their

i *Philo Iud. de vita Mos. l. 3.*
k *In Decalog. Hæsion de festis, iudic. 3. Maldonat. in Mat. 26.*
l *Philo Iud. de vita Mos. l. 3.*
m *Exod. 23. 16. Ad. 2. 1.*
n *These New-moone feasts, or Sabbaths, it seemeth Horace Serm. l. 1. Sat. 9. habit tricesimus Sabbata: quis tu Curtis Iudeis oppetere?*

New-yeeres day, after the ciuill account: the institution is read, *Leuit.* 23. and *Num.* 29. Whether, as some of the Rabbines will haue it, for *Isaacs* deliuerance, that in remembrance of that Ramme, these Rams-horne Trumpets should be founded, or in regard of the wars, or in respect of that spirituall war-fare which continueth our whole life, or that this was so festiual a moneth, or the beginning of their yeere for ciuill accounts, and for the Sabbaticall and Iubilee yeeres, or for some other cause, let the wiser Reader iudge.

On the tenth day of this moneth was the Feast or Fast of *Reconciliation* or Expiation, a day of *publike penance*, fasting and afflicting themselues, described in *Leuit.* 16. throughout the Chapter, and Chap. 23. wherein is liuely in that type shewed the Office of Iesus Christ, the eternall high-Priest, who hath alone wrought our atonement, entred into the Holy place of Heauen, and laid our sins on the Scape-Goate, bearing them, and satisfying for them in his owne person on the Crosse, and by the sprinckling of his blood sanctified vs for euer to God his Father. *Paul, Heb.* 9. doth vnfold the misterie of this dayes rites, wherein onely, the high Priest alone might enter into the holy-place, and himselfe alone performe the other Offices of Expiation. The Iewes thought, that this fasting and afflicting themselues, was in respect of their Idolatrie with the golden Calfe, and therefore it seemed, that in *Theodorets* time they did not afflict themselues, but sported rather in obscure and prophane manner. The Sacrifices are set downe, *Num.* 29. 8, 9, 10, 11.

Theodoret. qu. 32. in Leuit.

The next Feast was that of *Tabernacles*; in remembrance tha. howsoeuer they now dwell in strong Cities, goodly houses, &c. yet their fathers liued in Tents in the wilderness, where God by a cloude in the day time, and fire in the night protected that people. It is expressed *Leu.* 23. *Num.* 29. *Deut.* 16. It was obserued from the fifteenth to the one and twentieth, the first and last of them being (as at the Passeouer) more solemnely festiual, with abstinence from labor, and a generall Conuocation. They were the first day to take boughes and branches of Trees, and to make therewith Booths, and to dwell in booths seuen daies. This was neglected from the time of *Iosuah*, till the dayes of *Nehemiah*, o when he and *Ezra* solemnized this feast seuen dayes with booths on their house-tops, and in their Courts and streetes, with Lectures euery day out of the Law, and a solemne assembly on the eight day. The Hebrews report that they made them bundles of that matter, which they carried, euery day of the seuen, vp and downe in the morning before they might eate, whereupon it was called the Feast of Palmes or Willowes. The seuenth day, saith *Paulus Fagius*, p they compassed the Altar with these boughes seuen times, in remembrance of the fall of Iericho. *Andrew Osiander* affirmeth q that they vsed this carrying about boughes euery day, especially the seuenth, in which they obserued a kinde of *Procession* or *Letanie*, singing, *Ana Iehona Hosanna ana Iehonabatz elicha-na*: first reckoning vp a great number of the names of God, then of his attributes: thirdly, of the things which they wish to be saued, then of themselues and other things, interlacing euery particular of these with singing *Hosanna*, like their *Oro pro nobis* in the Popish Letanie. Then they altar it in another forme, Pray redeeme the Vine of thy planting, *Hosanna, &c.* then in another, As thou saue dst the strong in Ægypt, when thou went'st out for their deliuerance, so *Hosanna, &c.* Then in a longer forme of prayers, with this foote of the song *Hosanna*: and lastly all rings *Hosanna, Hosanna*: and hereupon the later Iewes called this feast *Hosanna*, as also those bundles of boughes: and although that the later Iewes haue now added much, the Iewes of Italie differing from them of Germanie, yet in *Christs* time the acclamations of *Hosanna*, when he came riding on an Asse into Ierusalem, testifie some such obseruation then amongst them.

o *Nehem.* 8.

p *Fag. in cap. Leu.* 23.

q *And Osiand. Annot. Harmon. Euan. l.* 3. *c.* 36.

The Sacrifices of euery day are designed *Num.* 29. The first day, thirteene bullocks, the second, twelue, and euery day one lesse to the seuenth: in all seuentie (as the *Rabbines* interpret it) according to the number of the seuentie languages of the Nations, which shall be subdued to the Messias; and ninetie eight Lambs, in respect of so many curses in the Law, against the transgressing Israelites.

The eight day was the Feast which they called, *Hazzeph* and *Azzereth*, that is, Collection, called also *the great day of the feast*, in the two and twentieth day of this moneth *Tisri*. In this they were to contribute to the continuall Sacrifices, and publike thanksgiuing was made for the fruites of the Earth, and the *first fruites* of the latet fruites were offered. *Ieroboam* r in an irreligious policie remoued the feast of Tabernacles from the seuenth moneth to the eight, from *Tisri* to *Marchesuan*.

Ioh. 7. 37. *Num.* 29. 35.

r *Hosius. de festi. cap.* 7.

The seuenth yeere, was appointed a Sabbaticall yeere, wherein they were neither to sowe nor to reape, but to leaue that which should voluntarily grow in their fields and yards to the poore; and secondly, should not exact debt of their brethren of the same Nation, but remit it, *Deu.* 15. *Exod.* 23. *Leuit.* 25. and the obseruation hereof is expressed in the time of *Nehemiah*.

Nehem. 10. 31.

After seuen times seuen yeeres which make fortie nine, they were to reckon Iobel or yeere

yeere of *Iubilee*, *Leu.*25. beginning on the day of Reconciliation: Wherein seruants were freed, debts remitted, possessions, that had beene alienated, returned, the law allowing no further sales, proclaimed with sound of a Trumpet of a Rammes-horne, and therefore called *Iobel*, which signifieth a Ramme, or Rammes-horne.

Touchingthis yeere of *Iubilee* is much controuersie. The ancient Authors account it the fiftieth yeere. *Scaliger* [t] refuseth their authoritie herein. Many moderne writers hold the same opinion, as [u] *Hospinian*, [w] *Melanchton*, *Fabritius* [x] *Paduanus*, *&c.* [y] *Calusius* hath at large disputed this question against *Crentzhemius* and *Bucholcerus*, by diuers arguments proueing that the *Iubilee* was but fortie nine yeeres complete, and that the fiftieth yeere was the first onwards of another *Iubilee* or Sabbath of yeeres: Yet is this space reckoned by fifties, as *Ouid* calls the *Olympiad*, *quinquennis Olympias*: *Aristophanes*, [z] and *Ausonius*, [a] affirming the like: and yet the *Olympiad* is but foure yeeres complete, and reckoned from the fift to the fift exclusiuely. Otherwise they should haue had two Sabbaticall yeeres together, namely, the fortie ninth being the seuenth yeere, and the next which was the fiftieth yeere. As for the later Writers, they might be deceiued by following the streame, and beguiled by the *Popish Iubilee*, which *Boniface* the eight, before called *Benedictus* (and yet neither was good sayer nor doer) instituted *Anno.* 1300. to be obserued euery hundreth yeere: and *Clement* the fixt abridged to the fiftieth; as *Auentinus*, *Trithemius*, *Crantzius*, and others haue written. Whether they were Heathenish in imitating the *Ludi seculares*, or Iewish, in following the legall Iubilee: Certaine it is, Rome thereby becomes a rich Mart, where the [b] *Marchants of the Earth* resort from all places of the Earth to buy Heauen: and *Babylon* [c] *the great Citie is cloathed in fine linnen and purple and scarlet, and gilded with gold and precious stone and pearles*, with the gaines of her *Wares*, giuing in exchange [d] *the soules of men*, washed from their sinnes; A thing more precious to Christ then his *most precious blood*. But his pretended Vicars haue learned to effect it (the filling of their purse) with greater ease: deuout Pilgrims from all parts visiting Saint *Peters* shaires, whence they goe truely Saint *Peters* heires (e *Silner and gold haue I none*) and yet finde their Pardons too cheape to be good. But to returne to *our Pilgrimage*, and to obserue the obseruation of the Iewish Iubilee; This feast was partly ciuill in regard of the poore, of the inheritances, of the Israelitish Families, specially that of the Messias, and of the computation of times, as amongst the Greekes by *Olympiads*, and amongst the Romanes by *Lustra* and *indictions*: partly also it was mysticall in regard of the Gospell of Christ, preaching libertie and peace to the Conscience, *the acceptable yeere of the* LORD.

And thus much of those Feasts which GOD himselfe instituted to this Nation; which how the Iewes of later times haue corrupted, and doe now superstitiously obserue, instituting others also of their owne deuisings, shall bee handled in due place. Wee are next to speake of those Feasts, which vpon occasions they imposed vpon themselues before the comming of CHRIST: to which wee will adde a briefe Kalender of all their Fasts and Feasts.

t *Ios. Scal. animad. in Euseb. pag.* 13.
u *Hospin. de Temp. & Festi. Iud.*
w *Melan. chron. lib.*5.
x *Fab. Pad. Catena temp. annul.*40.
y *Calusi. Sagoge cap.*23.
z *Aristo. h. in Pluto.*
a *Ausonius de ludis.*

b *Apoc.*18.11.
c *V.*16.
d *V.*13.
e *Act.*3.6.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Feasts and Fasts, which the Iewes instituted to themselues: with a Kalender of their Feasts and Fasts through the yeere, as they are now obserued.

THE Prophet *Zacharie*, in his seuenth and eighth Chapters mentioneth certaine fasting daies, which the Iewes by Ecclesiasticall Iniunction obserued. One in the tenth day of the tenth moneth, because, on that day Ierusalem began to bee besieged, 2. *Reg.* 24. A second Fast was obserued on the ninth day of the fourth moneth, in remembrance that then the Chaldeans entred the Citie,

A third Fast they held on the ninth day of the fift moneth, in respect of the Citie and Temple burned on that day. First, by *Nabuchodonosor*; Secondly, by *Titus* on the same day: Which the Iewes doe yet obserue with strict penance, going bare-foote, and sitting on the ground, reading some sad Historie of the Bible, and the Lamentations of *Ieremie* three times ouer.

Their fourth Fast they celebrated on the third day of the seuenth moneth, in remembrance of *Godoliah* slaine by *Ismael*, *Iere.* 41. 42. 2. *Reg. vlt.* To these are reckoned the Fast

of *Easter*, in the thirteenth day of *Adar*, their twelfth Moneth; and on the seuenteenth day of the fourth moneth, in the remembrance of the Tables of the Law broken by *Moses*: the institution whereof seemeth to be late, seeing the Scripture doth not mention it. In this moneth the Ægyptians kept the Feast or Fast of their *Osiris*, lamenting for him, which seemeth to be the same that is mentioned, *Ezech.*8. Where women are said to mourne for *Tammuz*, whom *Plutarch* calleth *Amuz*, and from thence deriueth *Iupiters* title of *Ammon*. Of him was this fourth moneth called *Tamuz*.

On the 14 foureteenth and fiftenth daies of *Adar*, they kept the feast of *Phurim*, or Lots, instituted in remembrance of that deliurance from *Haman*; by the authoritie of *Ioachim* the high-Priest, as *Funtius* relateth out of *Philo*, *An.M.*3463. *Antonius Margarita*, a christened Iewe, reporteth that on these daies the Iewes reade the Historie of *Ester*, and so often as *Haman* is mentioned, they smite on their seates with their fists and hammers, otherwise spending the time of this feast in Bachanall riots and excesse.

a *Ester.9.21.*

*Calaiss*3477.

b *Iosph. de bello Iud.li.1. c.17.*

They also had the feast of Wood-carrying, called ξυλοφορία, mentioned by b *Iosephus*, in which the custome was for euery one to carry Wood to the Temple to maintaine the fite of the Altar.

The Feast of Dedication, otherwise called the feast of *Lights*, and the institution thereof is largely described, 2.*Maccab.*4. in remembrance of the institution of Diuine worship and Sacrifice in the Temple, which had beene, by *Antiochus* polluted, and sacred to *Iupiter Olympius*, all the seruices appointed by the Law being abolished. By *Iudas Maccabeus*, the Temple and Altar, and other holy instruments, were dedicated the same day three yeeres, after their first pollution, called therefore the feast of *Lights*, as I thinke, saith c *Iosephus*, because so vnexpected a light shon forth vnto them. But *Franciscus Iunius*, in his Annotations vpon the Syrian translation of the tenth of *Iohn*, where this Feast is mentioned, alleageth out of the *Talmud*, another cause as followeth. When on the fiue and twentith day of *Cislen* they entred into the Temple, they found not pure oyle, except in one little vessell, which contained sufficient for the Lamps but one day, of which Oyle they lighted the Lamps in order, which lasted eight daies, till they pressed out of the Oliues cleane Oyle. And therefore the wise-men of that time decreed, that yeerely those eight daies, beginning at the fiue and twentith of *Cislen*, should be daies of ioy, and that euery one in the doores of their houses euery euening, during those eigh daies, should light Lamps, for declaration of that miracle, wherein they must not fast nor lament.

c *Ios.Ant.12. c.2.*

Likewise 1.*Mac.*13. is ordained festiuall the three and twentieth day of *Iar*, for the expiation of the Tower of Ierusalem, by *Simon Mac.*

On the last day of the feast of Tabernacles, they finish the reading of the Law with much ioy and solemnitie, calling it the feast of the *ioy of the Law*. The next Sabbath begins their Reading of the first *Parasch* or Section, which was also read that day they made an end of the last, lest they should seeme weary of it, and glad it were ended. These *Paraschs* or Sections of the Law (as our Lessons in our Seruice) were ancient, as appeareth *Act.* 15.21. in number fifty foure, for twice they put together two short ones. When *Antiochus* burned and prohibited the Law, they reade in stead of *Moses*, the Prophets: and after *Antiochus* his death they continued both, as the first and second Lesson with vs. That of the Prophets they called *haphtara*, that is, a dismissing, because after it the people were dismissed, euen as the name Missa, for like cause was guen to the Christian holies. They reade *Moses* not onely on the Sabbaths, but also on Mundaies, and Thursedaies; which by them that would seeme more holy, were fasted also, as *Luc.*18. appeares by the bragges of that supercilious Pharise, *I fast twice in the weeke*.

Sigonius reckoneth also the feast of *Iephta*, in the end of the yeere, which yet is not like to haue continued insuccceding ages: and of the *fire* that we find mentioned in 2.*Mac.*1. and the feast of *Iudith*, for killing *Holofernes*: and on the fourteenth day of *Adar*, for the victorie against *Nicanor*, *Ios.l.*12. Their later feasts I shall mention, and declare their seueral ceremonies, when wee come to speake of their later times, and of the present Iewish superstition. In the meane time I thinke it not amisse to set downe here out of *Scaliger*, a view or Kalender of their moneths, with the Feasts and Fasts, as they are obserued therein at this day.

De fest. Iud. vid. Phil. Ferdinand.

Ios. Scal. Can. Isag. l.1.c.6.

TISRI habet dies 30.

*Tisri plenus. die.*1. Clangor Tubæ 3. Ieiunium Godoliæ, *qui cum Iudæis occidebatur in Mazpa, Ier.*41. 5. *Ieiunium. Moriuntur* 20. *Israelitæ. Rabbi Akiba filius Ioseph conijcitur in vincula vbi moriitur.* 7. *Ieiunium. Decretum contra Patres nostros, vt perirent gladio, fame, ac peste, propter vitulum fabricatum.* 10. Ieiunium Kipputim. 15. Scenopegia. 21. ἡ πάνδημος 22. Octaua Scenopegias. 23. Festiuitas Legis.

Marchesv. 29.

Marchesv. poſt 29. *Intercalatur dies vna in Annopleno.*

Casleu

Casleu plenum. 25. Encœnia. 28. *Ieiunium: Ioiakim combussit volumen quod scripserat Baruch dictante Ieremia.* 30. *Eximitur dies in Anno defectiuo.* Casleu.30.

Tebeth Cauus. 3. *Ieiunium, Scripta est lex Græce diebus Ptolemæi Regis, Tenebræ triduo per vniuersum orbem.* 9. *Ieiunium. Non scriptorum, Magistri nostri quare ea dies notata* 10. *Ieiunium. Obsidetur Ierusalem à Rege Babylonis.* Tebeth.29.

Sebat plenus 5. *Ieiunium: Moriantur Seniores qui fuerunt æquales Iosue filij Nun.* 23. *Ieiunium. Congregati sunt omnes Israelitæ contra Beniaminem propter pellicem & idolum Michæ.* 30. Locus Embolismi. Sebat.30.

Adar Cauus. 7. *Ieiunium. Moritur Moses Magister noster qui in pace quiescit.* 9. *Ieiunium: Schola Sammai & schola Hellel inter se contendere cœperunt.* 13. *Festinitas decreta: interficitur Nicanor.* 14. Mardochæus Phurim. Adar.29.

Nisan plenus 1. *Ieiunium. Mortui sunt filij Aaron.* 10. *Ieiunium. Moritur Mariam. Elegitur agnus Mactandus* 14. *die.* 14. PASCHA. Exterminatio fermenti. 15. Azyma. 16. ΔΕΥΤΕΡΑ ΤΟΥ ΠΑΣΚΑ, Manipulus frugum, ΗΜΕΡΑΙ ΠΕΝΤΗΚΟΣΤΗΣ. ΕΒΔΟΜΑΣ ΔΕΥΤΕΡΟΠΡΩΤΗ, 21. *Solemnitas finis Azymorum.* 23. ΕΒΔΟΜΑΣ ΔΕΥΤΕΡΟΔΕΥΤΕΡΑ. 26. *Ieiunium, Moritur Iosue filius Nun.* 30. ΕΒΔΟΜΑΣ ΔΕΥΤΕΡΟΤΡΙΗ. Nisan.30.

Iiarcauus. 7. ΕΒΔΟΜΑΣ ΔΕΥΤΕΡΟΤΕΤΑΡΤΗ. 10. *Ieiunium. Moritur Eli Pont. Max. & ambo filij eius: capitur arca testimonij,* 14. ΕΒΔΟΜΑΣ ΔΕΥΤΕΡΟΠΕΜΠΤΗ. 21. ΕΒΔΟΜΑΣ ΔΕΥΤΕΡΟΕΚΤΗ. 23. *Solemnitas Simon Gazam capit.* 28. ΕΒΔΟΜΑΣ ΔΕΥΤΕΡΟΕΒΔΟΜΗ. *Ieiunium: Moritur Samuel Propheta: plangitur ab omni populo.* Iiar.29.

Siuuan plenus, 6. ΠΕΝΤΗΚΟΣΤΗ ΠΛΗΡΩΜΑ ΤΩΝ ΗΜΗΡΩΝ ΤΗΣ ΠΕΝΤΕΚΟΣΤΗΣ. 23. *Ieiunium. Desistunt ferre primogenita & primitias Ierosolyma in diebus Ieroboam filij Nabat.* 25. *Ieiunium. Occiditur Rabban Simeon filius Gamaliel, Rabbi Ismael, R. Hanania secundus à pontificib.* 27. *Ieiunium. Combustus est Rabbi Hanina filius Tardion vna cum libro legis.* Siuuan.30.

Tamuz Cauus 17. *Ieiunium. Frangunturr Tabulæ legis Cessat ἐσθιαγχωμὶς. vrbs fissa Episcopon cremat librum legis. Ponit statuam in templo.* Tamuz.29.

Ab plenus. 1. *Ieiunium. Moritur Aharon Pontifex.* 9. *Ieiunium. Decretum contra patres nostros ne ingrederentur in terram Iudæus. Desolatio Templi prioris & posterioris.* 18. *Ieiunium. Eximitur est Lucerna vespertina in diebus Ahaz.* Ab.30.

Elul cauus. 17. *Ieiunium. Moriuntur Exploratores qui diffamaverant terram.* 22. *Xylophoria,* Elul.29.

As for the Sabbaths, New-moones, and daies not solemnized with feasting or fasting, I haue passed ouer this Kalender, as impertinent or needlesse.

CHAP. VII.

Of the ancient Oblations, Gifts, and Sacrifices of the Iewes: of their Tithes, and of their Priests, and Persons Ecclesiasticall, and Religious.

---

§. I.

Of their Oblations, Gifts, and Sacrifices.

ALthough *Moses* doth handle this matter of their Rites and Sacrifices, and is herein seconded and interpreted by the succeeding Prophets, so fully, that it may seeme a powring of water into the Sea, to speake needlessly, or by our Discourse, to obscure, rather then illustrate, that which is so largely and plainely there expressed; yet because of that subiect which we haue in hand, I cannot altogether be silent (at least of the kindes and heads) referring the desirous Reader; for his more perfect satisfaction in particulars, to those clearer prophetically fountaines. Their Rites for time and place we haue already described: The next intended part of this Iewish relation shall be of their *Oblations*, which were either *Gifts* or *Sacrifices*. Their Sacrifices were such oblations, wherein the thing offered was in whole or part consumed in diuine worship, for the most part by fire or shedding of blood. These were of eight [a] sorts. *Burnt-offerings, Meate-offerings, Peace-offerings, Sinne-offerings, Trespasse-offerings, the offerings of the Consecration, Cleansing, and Expiation.* [b] *Philo* reduceth them to three

a *Car. Sigon. de Republ. Heb. l.4.*
b *Philo de Sacrif.*

three: *Burnt*, *Peace*, and *Sin-offerings*, according to the three causes of sacrificing; *The worship of God, the obtaining of good things, and freedome from euill.*

The *Burnt-offerings* were by fire consumed, the Rites and manners hereof are expressed, *Leuiticus* 1. the fire was to be perpetuall on the Altar, being that which GOD miraculously sept from heauen to consume *Abihu* sacrifice; for neglecting which, and vsing other, his two sonnes *Nadab* and *Abihu* were stricken by a reuenging fire from GOD. The *Meate-offering* was made of fine flowre, without hony or leuen, and with oyle and incense on the Altar, or frying pan, or ouen, or caldron, according to the rites prescribed, *Leuit*, 2. partly sacred to the Lord by fire, the rest to be the Priests. The *Peace-offerings* are with their proper ceremonies enioyned, *Leuit.*3. and 7; the fat and kidnies were to be burned on the Altar (the fat and blood being vniuersally forbidden them for foode) the brest and right shoulder was the Priests: the rest to the Sacrificer, to be eaten the first, or at furthest on the second day; or else on the third to be burned with fire. The *Offering for sinnes of ignorance*, for the Priest, Prince, People, or priuate man, is set downe, *Leuit.*4. and 6. The *Sinne-offering, in case of contempt*, where the sinne is committed against God and man willingly, with the due manner thereof is expressed, *Leuit.*6. To these were adioyned *Prayers and Prayses*, with musicall voyces, and instruments, Cymbals, Viols, Harpes, and Trumpets resounding, *For he is good, for his mercy endureth for euer.* The sixt kinde of Sacrifices was proper to the Priests at their consecration, recorded, *Leuit* 6. 20. The seuenth mentioned Sacrifice is of *Purification* or cleansing, as of a woman after childe-birth, *Leu.*12. or of a Lepet, 13. 14. or for vncleane issues of men and women, *chap.*15. The eight is the sacrifice of *Expiation* or Reconciliation, on that festiuall or fasting-day before spoken of, *Leuit.*16. Hereunto may we adde the lights and the daily offerings of incense, morning and euening, *Exod.*30. on a golden Altar, whereunto the Priests only had accesse, with such perfume only as is there prescribed.

The *Gifts* which we haue reckoned a second sort of Oblations that were not as the former in whole, or in part consumed in their offering, but presented whole and found, were giuen, either according *to the Law, or by Vow*, or of *free will.* The Law prescribed, *First fruits and Tithes, and the personall half shekell*, The *first fruits* of Man, of beasts, and of the fruits of the Earth, the law exacteth, *Exod.*22.23. and are assigned to the Priests, *Num.*5. and 18. which, of men and vncleane beasts, were to be redeemed, of others to be sacrificed.

§. II.

Of Tithes and their manner of Tithing.

OF *Tithes*, when we consider the assignement of them to the Tribe of *Leui*, we must so farre acknowledge them *Leuiticall* and Ceremoniall. But considering the paying of them to a Priest, so soone as we reade of a Priest, in Scripture, and that by *the Father of the Faithfull*, which the Apostle vrgeth against Leuiticall Ceremonies, in that *Leui* himselfe in *Abraham* payed them; and his Nephew *Iacob* vowed the payment thereof, so soone as God should giue him whereof to pay Tithes: and that God required this dutie of Tithe, *Exod.*22.29. before the *Leuites* were called to the seruice of the Tabernacle; which are not so much as named, till *Exod.*38.21. the Scripture also speakes of them as anciently due, nor hath it any originall commandement for giuing Tithes to GOD: yea, the law of Nature taught it the Heathens, which paid them to their Idolls: and the first times of the Christian Church excepted, wherein there was no such settled order for things of this and like nature, Tithes were constantly paid to the Church, vntill the Arch-enemie of God and his Church, in his Antichristian supremacie robbed the Ministers of that due, which in GODS right they before held, *impropriating* the liuing of the Altar to them that *lined not at the Altar*, but yet ordinarily leaving them to the *Church*, as they then accounted the Church: Some cannot so easily subscribe to that opinion, perhaps more common then true, which disanull *diuine* right for the paying Tithes, as being then a Iewish and Leuiticall Ceremonie. But I leaue the Reader to discusse this matter further, with a D. *Carleton* Mr. *Roberts* and others, in Treatises of that argument, not to speake of the Canonists. And let me here mention also that little book full of great learning, & fauoring of great pietie, of S. *Henry Spelman* Knight, a true *Knight of the Temple*, that thus engaged himselfe for the Temples right; that whereas the Temple and Ruines of the Church hath raised so many Knights and cruell Gentlest at haue pill'd and spill'd the men and meanes of the Church; the Church in that Order hath found a Champion, a *Spelman* in name and deede, who out of *Godspel* (so was the Gospell and holy writ significantly stiled by our Religious Ancestours) and *man-spell*, that is, the learning of men, in the reasons and authorities of Fathers, Councels, Doctors in seuerall

a *Carleton* of Tithes due by Diuine right, & *Roberts*.
b *Rebuffus de decimis, item Tinders Tract. de Dec. Rebuffus statuit de iure diuino dictame ratione naturali, decimas inuentas q.*1.§.12.*à iure vero canonico formam & declarationem esse factam. Tinderus* §. 25. *precepium (ait) decimarum partim est morale, partim iudiciale, &c.*

seuerall ages, hath shewed himselfe a *Spelman*, an *Oracle* or man of hidden knowledge, as *Verstegan* interprets and spels this word spell. These shew also another argument (besides this of the Nature and practice of Tithes) almost beyond cauillation, namely, that Tithes are due to Christian Ministers by Vow: Christian Common-weales, and Councels hauing consecrated them to GOD and his Church, wherein our Kings, Parliaments, and Ecclesiasticall Lawes haue added their confirmations: neither is it now time *after the Vowes to enquire*, and [c] without Diuine dispensation to alter it, without satisfaction sufficient. But leauing this sore too tender to be touched, and yet little touching and mouing some Consciences pretended tender; let vs view the Tithes, as they then were, Iewish. In *Leuit.* 27. 30. is a declaration of the Lords right, *All Tythes are the Lords*; and an assignation of the same, *Numb.* 18. 21. *Behold, I haue giuen the children of* LEVI *all the tenth, &c.* Saint [d] *Hierome* reckons foure sorts of Tithes: first, that which the people paid to the Leuites: secondly, that which the Leuites hence paid to the Priests [e]: thirdly, that which they reserued for expence in their solemne Feasts when they went to the Tabernacle or Temple [f]. The fourth was a third yeeres Tenth, which was then laid vp for the Leuite, and the poore amongst them [g]. The practice hereof *Nehemiah* restored in the reformation of Religion, *Nehemiah* 10. when the First-fruits and Tenths were brought to the treasurie or chambers of the house of GOD.

[h] *Ioseph Scaliger* hath written a Treatise of Tithes, the summe whereof is this. Euery thing which was foode for man, and was laide vp for preseruation, if it receiued increase from the Earth, was subiect to offerings, and consequently to first fruits and Tithes. Garden-herbes were not exempted: they tithed Mints and Annise. (But [i] *Drusius* saith this was of tradition, and not of the Law: for the Law required onely the tenths *prouentus tui*, of the encrease: vnder which name (saith he) those came not.) Out of these they first paid the first fruites: secondly, [k] *Theruma*: thirdly, a two fold Tithe, and these all in their due order. The Husbandman might not touch any of his increase before these deductions. First fruits of Corne, Grapes and Oliues were offered in the basket: but the *Theruma* and Tithe onely of the kindes already dressed and prepared, as wheate fanned, oyle and wine, corne in the eare, and so the rest was called *Tabal*: after they were made readie, the *Theruma* was taken [l] from the heape, and giuen to the Priests: this was called the great *Theruma*, and was not defined by *Moses*, but the ancient Lawyers determined that it might not be lesse then the fourtieth or fiftieth, or at least the sixtieth part: the first they called the *Theruma of a good eye*, the second indifferent, the last of *an euill eye*, and niggardly. When this was taken away for the Priests, the rest of the heape was tithed for the Leuite: [m] this was called *the first Tithe* [n]; and the tenth part thereof the Leuites [o] gaue to the Priests [p] which was called the *Tube of the Tithe*, or the *Theruma* of the Tithe. For the former *Theruma* they named *the great Theruma*, because it was more then this. After this deducted, the Leuites might freely vse the other nine parts of the Tythe (which before they might not) whether in, or out of Ierusalem. The Husband-man or Lay-man, was yet to pay another called the second *Tithe*, namely, the tenth part of that which remained to him after the first *Tithe*: and this also was *holy*, nor might be spent, but before GOD in the Court of the Temple. And therefore it was to be carried to Ierusalem, or if the way were long or tedious, they might be sold, and a fist [r] part was then to be added: with this money they were to buy Wine, Oyle, Sacrifices, and other necessaries at Ierusalem, where with the Husband-man and the Leuite were to feast in the Temple. After this *second Tithe* paid, they might (and nor before) vse the rest as *lay chattells* (to borrow the word of my learned friend Master *Selden*) *Scaliger* giues them a Latine name, *Pollucta*, that is, *exposed, vix.* to common or prophane vse. For better view hereof: if the husbandman had six thousand measures of wheate, wine or oyle, he must pay a fortith or fiftith or at least a sixtieth part, that is, an hundred in the name of his [q] *Theruma*. Of the fiue thousand and nine hundred remaining, *the first Tithe* will deduct fiue hundred fourescore and ten, of which the Leuites must pay to the Priests, fiftie nine; as *Tithe of the Tithe*. Now out of the fiue thousand three hundred and ten yet remaining, the husband-man is to pay the *second Tithe*, which come to fiue hundred thirtie and one, and then there remayne to his owne vse, *exposed* or *lay chattels* foure thousand seuen hundred seuentie and nine. So that the first and second Tithe were in proportion as nineteene of the hundred, besides the greater *Theruma*; all these out of the Corne readie fanned; before which also they paid the first fruits in the eare. Further, [r] the husband-man was bound to carry them to Ierusalem, and there to deliuer them to the Treasurers, which were Leuites [s] deputed in diuers offices, to the custodie of these things, as fully appareeth, 2. *Chron.* 31. And if he did not carry them himselfe, he must send them by his Delegates: touching whom, the Law exacted that they should not

c D. Downam. & Leuit. 27. 28.

d Hierom. super Ezech. l. 14. c. 45. & Num. 18. 26.

e Deut. 14. 22.

f Deut. 14. 28

g Ios. Scal. diatriba de decimis in Opusc.

h Drus. Pract. ad Matth. 23. ex lib. praecep. 145. Idem & Hier. in Ezec. 45.

i Theruma, id est, leuatio & qualquam res separata.

k Deut. 18. 4. This Theruma seemeth a second kinde of first-fruits: for the first were an offering in the Eare, &c. as appeareth, Leuit. 23. 10. S. Hieron. vbi sup. calles it primitiua.

l Num. 18. 12. 25. 26. 27. 28.

m Tob. 1. 7.

n Num. 18. 26.

o Some interpret Nehemiah, Neh. 10. 38. To the high Priest alone, for the maintenance of his state, & partly for perhaps to establish the Papall challenge, since.

p Which made it twelue of an hundred. Deut. 14. 22. Leuit. 27. 51.

q P. Rice. ad praef. 133. ex Deut. 18. 4. Ait harum primitiarum quantitas elargiuntis animis restituitur. Talmudei tamen 50. partem Ratuum. q R. Ab. ben Kattan prec. 87. r Scaliger saith, that the Leuites obserued their course according to their foure and twentie families, as the Priests had their foure and twentie Luke, 1. s Tob. 1. 7, 8.

be of the Gentiles. (This opinion is reiected by others, & seemes impossible, that the Tithes of so spacious a Country, should with much labor, cost, & losse, be carried to Ierusalem, which might with more ease, & conueniencie euery way, be reciued at home in the seueral cities of their tillage, as it is written, *Neh.* 10. 37.) As for the *second Tithe*, they might redeeme it, with adding a fift part ouer and aboue the price. *Tobit* is a perfect patterne of this: *The first Tithe of all increase* (they, are his own words) *I gaue to the sons of* Aaron, *who ministred at Ierusalem; the second Tithe I sold, and went and spent it euery yeere at Ierusalem: And the third I gaue vnto them to whom it was meete.* The vulgar Latine reades this last, *So that he ministred euery third yeere, all his tithing to the Proselites and strangers.* And it ought, saith *Scaliger*, rather to be called the *Tithe of the third yeere*, then the [t] *third Tithe*: for this was no other but the *first Tithe*, so that what was paid in the first and second yeere, and in the fourth and fift of that weeke of yeeres, or seuen yeeres space (the seuenth whereof was alway Sabbaticall, and freed from tillage, first fruits, *Theruma* and tithing in the name of the *first tithe*; the time in the third and sixt yeeres were not carried to Ierusalem, but laid vp in the barnes and store-houses of the husband-man, who to vse the words of *Moses*, * *was to lay them vp within his Gates: And the Leuite, because he had no part nor inheritance with thee, and the Stranger, and the fatherless, and the widow, which are within thy gates shall come, and shall eate and be satisfied.* Thus *Ioseph Scaliger*. But others hold it due euerie yeere, but onely of such things as were vsefull for mans meate, as being imployed in Feasts, and no other then that which *Scaliger* calls *the second Tithe*, before mentioned. The remainder of the surplusage (to vse the words of Master *Mountague*) the three feasts ended, serued for those Priests and Leuites, that dwelt at Ierusalem, and had no abiding in the Countrey, and for those that in their courses came vp, and serued at the Temple, for want of which *Malachie* complayneth, and in *Nehemias* time, the Leuites fled to their Land, *viz.* where he had maintenance, by payment of the *first Tithe*. Euery third yeere, they added a third *Tithe*, to be distributed to the poore and Leuite, besides the former two for the Leuites, and for Feasts, as *Ioseph*us hath obserued. Thus in all there were foure payments, or Tithes, as is before obserued out of Saint *Hierom*. What I haue said of the Tithes of Vegetables, I vnderstand also (though some gainesay) of the Tithes of all they possessed, *Luke* 18. *Mat.* 23. euen of Cattell in like payments as the former, as of all other things for mans vse. *Scaliger* proceedes: The Iewes still in all places of their habitations obserue the seuenth yeere Sabbatticall, and therefore pay not then any first fruits or *Theruma*; as for Tithes they were not to be, as *Scaliger* holdeth, paid but at the Temple, which is now destroyed: neither haue they any certaine flocke of Priests or Leuites (howsoeuer many are so named) and therefore being asked of vs, saith *Scaliger*, if they might repaire the Sanctuarie in Mount Moriah, whether they would offer any Sacrifices; they answeered, no, because there is now no Priest-hood in Israel. So desperate is their desolation. Now least any deceite might be vsed in tithing, there were officers appointed, which were called * *Faithfull*: these searched the houses suspected of non-payment; that increase whereof the tithing was vncertaine, was called *Eamai*. From the *Dedication* of *Maccabaeus*, to the time of *Iohn Hyrcanus*, all paid their first fruits and *Theruma*, but fewe their Tithes, because those *Faithfull* were vnfaithfull, and corrupted with gifts: But then the greater Councell decreed that none should be chosen to that Office, but such as were, as they were called. From thence y to the destruction of the Temple they were truely paide. The First fruits, *Theruma*th and Tithes were not payed all at one time, but each kinde at their owne time, as Wheate in *Sivan* after Pentecost, Wine in *Tisri*, Oyle in *Tebeth*: and so of the rest. Thus farre *Scaliger*: For my owne part I hold that diuision of Saint *Hierome* the best: and that of those foure sorts of Tithes, the first is Naturall, Morall, Diuine tribute, equally due, though not alike exacted in all ages, and then Leuiticall onely by speciall designement of God, which appointed *Leui* for a time, to the worke and wages of his Priest. The second payd to the high-Priest by the Leuite, was (as that high Priest-hood it selfe) meerely ceremonial. The Popes couetousnesse reuesting Christianitie, recalling Iudaisme, made it Canonically due to him, which since with vs is made Iudicial or Statutatie: And whereas *Aaron* alone, and *Leui* once receiued, now they must, if not alone, pay perpetuall Tentes, besides ten times as much subsidiarie payments, as temporall men (all things considered) of their abilitie, when the publique neede requires, and that notwithstanding our owne inheritance is so many waies diuerted, peruerted, subuerted. This I speake not as grudging *Cesar* his due (for God and man loue a cheerefull giuer) but to satisfie the euill eye of them that haue euill will at Sion, and grudge the remaines of the ruines of *Leui*, willing euery way to further the Priests hindrances. Ceremoniall was the third Tithe, as dependant on the Temple and Feasts. The Fourth Iudicioll, as relieue to the poore of that Iewish state, whether Leuites or Lay-man, in their seuerall habitations. But if any lust to fill themselues with matter of this argument, let them reade what hath beene written by Master *Selden*, and his Antagonists,

t *Ioseph Antiq. lib.* 4. calleth it *the third Tithe of the third yeere*, which, Iosiah he (besides the two yeerely tithes, one to the Leuite, the other for Sacrifices and Feasts) was for the poore, &c. euery third yeere.

u *Deut.* 14. 28, 29.

x Heral.

y About one hundred and fifty yeeres.

Antagonists, which maintaine the portion of *Leui*, in the Euangelicall Priest-hood, against his Historie of Tithes, seeming by way of Storie to vndermine it. Wherein Sir *Iames Sempills* labours (that I mention not many of our owne more interessed) deseue honorable mention in all *Leui's* Tents, and to all his generations.

§. III.

10 *Of their Personall Offerings, and of their and our Ecclesiasticall Reuenues.*

BEsides First-fruits and Tithes, they payed to the Treasurie personall offerings, as *Exod.* 30.12. Euery man payed halfe a shekel, [a] which the Hebrewes interpreted to be perpetuall for the maintenance of the Sacrifices; others temporarie, then onely put in practice. As for that collection, 2. *King.* 21. made by *Ioas* for the repayring of the Temple, and that after by *Nehemiah*, *Chap.* 10. the circumstances shew much difference. This Treasurie, in regard of this Poll-money, grew very rich, as appeared in [b] *Crassus* robbing the same of ten thousand talents at one time, besides a great beame of gold, which *Eleazarus* the Treasurer, vpon *Crassus* his Oath (after wards violated neuertheless) to redeeme the rest, deliuered to him, weighing three hundred *Mina*, euery *Mina* being two pounds two ounces, and a quarter Troy. *Tully* [c] and other Authors mention these Oblations of the Iewes to their Treasurie yeerely. These Gifts and offerings the Law exacted: they performed many other also, either of their free-will, or of Vow, otherwise little differing from the former, *Leuitici vltimo.* Many other Ceremonies of their meates, garments, fastings Trumpets, and in other cases, I hope I shall haue leaue to omit in this place, and remit him that would further know of them to the Scripture it selfe, hauing pointed out the principall.

But by this is apparant, which Doctor *Downame* [d] hath obserued, that all these being deliuered them in the Lords Treasurie; without their labour or cost, together with their eight and fortie Cities assigned them, amounting to a farre greater proportion for the maintenance of that small Tribe: then all the Bishoprick, Benefices, Colledge-lands, or whatsoeuer other Ecclesiasticall endowments and profits in this Land, although the prophane Ammonites or hypocriticall Cloysters had neuer conspired to shaue off our e beards, and our garments by the Buttocks, not leauing to f couer our naked nesse, or their shame. And yet how sicke is *Ahab* for *Nabaths* Vineyard? And would God we had no *Iezabels* to play the (too cunning) Physicians in this disease. Let me haue a little leaue to say no more then others (for the substance) in bookes and Sermons haue said alreadie; although those *Bellies* to whom we speake, haue no eares. The first stroke that wounded vs, and causeth vs still to halt, was from Rome, *The mother of abominations and whoredomes.* Here, as in the suburbs of Hell, were founded the Churches Ruines: Our *Bulls of Basham* (Abbey-lubbers, and Cloysterers) with the leaden homes of those Romane Bulles, haue pushed downe our Churches (our Chauncels at least) and made them to fall into those g *Capes of vncleane Byrds*, the Popish Monasteries. Of nine thousand two hundred eightie and foure Parishes in England, after h Master *Camdens* account, three thousand eight hundred fortie fiue were (it is properly termed) *impropriated.* And who knoweth whether those Appropriations did not supplant their Supplanters, and dispropriate them of that which in a iuster proprietie was giuen them in their first foundations, for that three-fold maintainance of *themselues, of learning, and of the poore?* yea, happily yet (if we obserue the course of Diuine Iustice) we m y see many, whose former inheritances haue by the addition of these, as of a contagious g rmient, beene infected, and haue either died, or beene sicke at the least of this plague. The Arke when it was in *Dagons* Temple (because imprisoned in an Idoll-Temple) brake *Dagons* neck: and when it was thence translated to their Cities, they also were filled with diseases. Our Arke hath thus dealt with the Temples, and cannot well brooke the Cities and Lay-lands which imprison, or if they will *appropriate* it. O that they would once send it home where it should be. How sicly and sully doe those words of *Habacuk* i agree to the houses founded for Religion, by this and like irreligion peruerted, and at last subuerted? k *They coueted an euill coueteousnesse to their house, they consulted shame to their owne houses, by destroying many people, and sinned against their owne soules. The stone hath cryed out of the wall, and the Beame*

a *Siclus habet 4. denarios, denarius 6. obolos, obolus 16. hordea mediorum, quadorat Drac. ex Ie. Mandaro.* The Sicle was *tertadrachmus*, and weighed, saith *Gernadensis*, halfe an ounce of siluer, wherefore saith he saw one at Prolemais, it had on the one side the figure of *Aarons* Almond rod, on the other the pot of Manna, written about with Samaritan letters, on the one side was a *Sicle of Sicles*, on the other *Ierusalem the holy.* The price of a talent, saith *Rambam*, was thirtie sicles (so they valued Christ) of a free-man it was twice so much. On the first and twentieth of *Adar* the *Nummularyes* or money-changers sate in the Temples that they which had not this base sicle, might haue it of them for other money, or for a price.

It was in figure like the white sicle. I rather a pot or vessell of Manna in the Oyne, seemed to mee in one which I saw of the Dignitie, &c. c 2. *Sam.* 10. f *D. Smith*, ser. Black-smith. g *Apoc.* 12. 2. h *Camden Brian. Edit.* 5. 1. i *Hab.* 2. 9, 10. 11. 12. k *Gen.* 31. 47.

out of the Tymber hath answered it; *Woe vnto him that buildeth a Towne with blood, and erecteth a Citie by iniquitie.* Thus we see, the stones haue cryed *out of their walles* indeede, and by their demolished heapes may receiue *Labans* name, *Iegar sehadutha, the heape of witnesse*, their ruines remayning testimonies of GODS iudgements. A violent streame (saith Master [l] *Camden*) breaking through all obstacles, hath rushed out vpon the Ecclesiastick state of this Land, and ouerwhelmed, to the worlds wonder, and Englands griefe, the greatest part of the English Clergie, with their most beautifull buildings: and those riches which the Christian pietie of the English had from the time of their first Christianitie consecrated to God, were (as it were) in a moment dispersed, and (if I may so say) prophaned.

l *Vbi supra.*

And let not our Temporall men pretend inheritances, and humane Lawes in these things of diuine right. For how can Kyrkes (so called as κυριακὰ, that is, *the Lords houses*, before giuen vp by solemne consecration into diuine possessions with their liuings) become humane, without surrender of the owner, or satisfaction to him? As the word since hath receiued a double aspiration, so the things themselues a doubling and deceiuing alteration, wherby we haue *robbed our* GOD as in *Malachie* * he complaines: worse then the heathen, which he there iustifies; and which in that extreme Ægyptian * famine, alienated all Lay possessions, but wanted this *Aura sacra fames sacri*, left the Priests Lands inuiolated, which yet were very large, as in our Ægyptian Relations shall appeare. Poore *Vzzah* offered in a good intent (which I also thinke of many which were forward in suppression of Religious houses in the daies of King *Henrie*, and of other Church lands in King *Edwards* time) but GOD accepted not such zeale, and he by his vntimely fates left the name to the * *place Perez* Vzzah *vntill this day*. Nor did King *Henry* long enioy that his Ecclesiasticall purchase; or long continue much wealthier by it, but was forced to *base monies* before his end; that I speake not of the short raigne of King *Edward* his sonne, that vertuous Prince, whose times rather then his holy hands, caused the desolations of the Chauntrie lands (and how many other vanished away in that cloude?) after the dissolution of the former. And doe not our eyes see (in other respects to the ioy of our eyes, but to him a iudgement) notwithstanding so many wiues, a *Perez Henry*, a *rupture* of the kingdome from his loynes, and that iust so many yeeres (as some * haue obserued) after that his attempt, as the *golden head* of the Babylonian Monarchie continued in that familie after the Temple prophaned and the holy vessels transported; when *Belshazzar* escaped not, though he could pleade prescription of possession, succession and inheritance as our proprietaries, with a deerer purchase by costly siege, then these things cost the first purchasers after the suppression. I might heere also end with the tragicall ends of those that were forwardest in those enterprises: But I spare their names, and referre the Reader to our Histories, which yeelde to vs examples many of *Salomons* rule (from *Wolsey* downwards) that *it* * *is a snare to deuoure that which is sanctified.* So suddenly were they caught, so surely were they holden, in this snare; and as their zeale did eate vp Gods house (deuoured that which was sanctified, and got so *many houses of* God *in the Land* into Lay possession) so the diuine zeale *of Gods House did eate* vp them in bloody vntimely morsels. And let the present possessors heare and feare.

* *Mal.*3.8.
* *Gen.*47.22.
* 2.*Sam.*6.8.
* S H.S.
* *Pro.*20.25.

Let none traduce me as a troubler of Israel, and a traducer of our Law and State, which haue thus both changed and settled these things. I enueigh against *Absoloms* conspiracie, and *Achitophels* deuices, which were the troublers of Israel, and so disturbed the iust heart of righteous *David*, that on the sudden he a little forgat the exact rule: & commanded, *Thou* [m] *and* Ziba *diuide the Lands.* So (if losers may haue leaue to speake) our Parliament (perhaps with some extasie of ioy, for remouing the sinkes and stinkes of superstition) had in those busie times but negligent consideration of *Mephibosheths* right; and our Vicar-*Mephibosheths*, the Clergie then, did not much vrge it; yea, he would still say of these our halting *Zibaes*, *Let them take all* [n], rather then we should want our *Lord and his Gospell*, to *come home to vs in peace.* And in peace let them rest which were Authors of this peace to vs; and let vs pray that a worse *generation of Vipers* do not arise, and that the [o] *Canker-worme eate not what the Grashopper hath left, and the Caterpiller the residue of the Canker-worme.* I meane those Latron-patrons, and Patron-latrons, whereof these extend to the vtmost, whatsoeuer might, and whatsoeuer colour of right, in exemptions, Customes, Priuiledges and prauileges, whereby euery *Iohn-a-stile* shall intercept the Churches due, or by a weightier fee, force a composition, or wrangle out some broken Title, or breake the necke of the Case with a Prohibition: the other hauing a trust committed, maketh himselfe a Bawde, and selleth his Church (which cost no meaner price then the blood of Christ) for money. Oh Christ, ouerthrowe the Tables of these money-changers, and with some whip driue them, scourge them out of thy Temple, which supplant thy plantations, and hinder the gayning of Soules for gayne. Withstand these *Balaams*, which for *Balacks* blessing, care not what curse they bring vpon Israel, which present for presents, and scrape to maintaine their carnall liuing, out of our spirituall

m 2.*Sam.*19.29.

n And *all* they challenge as theirs, driuing the poore Vicar to shew composition or prescription: They know who cast at *all*, *Luke* 4.7. and said, *Mihi tradita sunt*, (ye may English it here) they are betrayed to me

o Let me haue the like liberty to inueigh against vices here, as *Espenseus* was allowed among the Papists, who speaking of the Romish proceedings saith, *Sedis Apostolicæ summa iura, hoc est summæ iniuriæ, priuilegia, hoc est abusus, consuetudines, hoc est, corruptelæ.* I speake onely against abusers of Law and Right.

rituall Liuings; to bestow on their Hawks, their Hounds, their! But whether hath this passion or zeale (Truth I am sure) transported me? Truely, the fixed Starres in our *Westminster* firmament (and may not I so call it, where is such a *Star-chamber*, shining with the bright beames of Iustice?) I admire, and almost adore in silence; only those wandring Planets which selfe guiltines accuseth, doe I here accuse.

And for these and all the Churches enemies; *Let* GOD *arise, and his enemies* (or their enmitie) *be scattered*, that there be no more such p *Ahabs*, as I mentioned, which hauing more then enough, seeme to haue nothing, as long as *Naboth* hath something which they can long for: and that there be no q *Eliashibs, which shall prouide Tobias the Ammonite a Chamber in the house of the Lord*: that neyther any abuse the profession of Law, directly; nor the possession of Patronage, indirectly; (for abuses onely I taxe) so to discouer out Churches nakednesse, that euery *Cham* (the prophane Atheist, and superstitious Papist) may espie and deride the same, wherein themselues are the most guiltie amongst vs; although none are more ready to r *tell it in Gath, or publish it in the streetes of Askelon, that the daughters of Babylon may triumph.*

p 1. *King.* 22.
q *Nehem.* 13.
r 2. *Sam.* 1. 20.

§. IIII.

Of their First-borne, Priests, Leuites, and other Religious Persons.

AFter that we haue spoken of the Times, places and Rites sacred to God, order requireth next to speake of those persons, whose Office and Function it was to procure and manage those Diuine and Religious affaires. And first, amongst the first Hebrewes, we find no Priest named before *Abrahams* time, in which *Melchisedech* was interpreted by the most, to be *Shem* the sonne of *Noah*, Father both of this and other Nations: And Master *Broughton* hath written a whole booke in confirmation hereof. The heads of Families then exercised the Priestly office of teaching, praying, and sacrificing in their owne houshoulds, as we reade of a *Abraham*, b *Isaac*, c and *Iacob*: After that, the first borne of all the Tribes of Israel were consecrated to this businesse, when as God had destroyed the first-borne of Ægypt, d and these offered Sacrifices, e vntill that the Leuites were chosen in their roome; f God turning the Propheticall curse of *Iacob*, of g *scattering them in Israel*, into a blessing, for the instructing of the Israelites. The cause of this their consecration was, because they, h in a zeale of GODS glorie had *sanctified their hands* to this ministerie *in the blood* of the neerest of their Idolatrous kindred, that had sinned in adoring the *golden Calfe*.

a *Gen.* 18. 19.
b *Gen.* 37.
c *Gen.* 49. &c.
d *Exod.* 13. 2, & 15.
e *Exod.* 24. 5.
f *Num.* 3. 41.
g *Gen.* 49. 7.
h *Exod.* 32. 29.

Now in the third of *Numbers*, where the first-borne of the Israelites, and the Leuites are numbred, appeareth a difficultie, which most of the Interpreters which I haue Read of that place, haue neglected: namely, that of the Israelitish first-borne there were found, from a moneth-old vpward, two and twenty thousand, two hundred seuentie and three; and of the Leuites, but two and twenty thousand; so that therefore there must be fiue sickels apiece payed for the redemption of euery of those two hundred seuentie and three in surplusage more then the Leuites; whereas yet in the parcels of the Leuiticall account, are found more of the Leuites then of the Israelites, as appeareth; the family of the Gershonite, containing seuen thousand and fiue hundred; the Kohathites, eight thousand six hundred; and the Family of *Merari*, six thousand and two hundred, which being added together, amount to two and twentie thousand and three hundred; and therefore are seuen and twentie more then the Israelites. To this i *Lyra, Dionysius Carthusianus*, and *Iunius* (for the most are wholly silent) answere, that those three hundred ouer and aboue the two and twentie thousand were first-borne themselues, and therefore in right of the former challenge of the first-borne, were the Lords already. And if it seeme as much wonder (which Authors obserue not) that of two and twentie thousand, were but three hundred first-borne; k That their exploite of executing their kindred for Idolatrie (before mentioned) in which sinne, the first borne, as Priests, were likeliest to haue followed *Aaron*, a chiefe man of their Tribe, might answere for me. And that cruell Edict l of *Pharaoh*, and their miraculous fruitfulnesse, may make it lesse strange, that both in these Leuites there were so few first-borne, and in the other Israelites also, with whom amongst 603550. men from twentie yeeres olde vpwards, there were (though reckoning but from a moneth olde, as is said) but two and twentie thousand two hundred seuentie three, which is little more then one of seuen and twentie, besides that inequalitie of the persons numbred. Likewise as *Phil. Ferdinand* hath obserued out of *Abraham ben Dauid*, if a woman first brought forth a female, neither that nor the sonne, if shee had any after, were of these sanctified first-borne. This excursion vpon this occasion,

i *Lyra in Num. Dionys. Carthus. Iun.* addeth also in the number of Priests.
k But one of 74.
l *Exod.* 9.

occasion, wherein I haue found diuers Interpreters mute, will (I hope) find pardon with the Reader, who happily himselfe may finde some better resolution.

To returne to our Historie; God had before appointed *Aaron* to be high Priest, and his Sonnes [m] to be Priests, to whom the Leuites were assigned after (as we haue said) as assistants in inferiour offices of the Tabernacle. *Aaron*, from whom is reckoned the succession of the high Priests, in the same office, had appointed to him eight holy garments, a Brest-plate, an Ephod, a Robe, a broidered coate, a Miter, a Girdle, a Plate of gold, and linnen breeches. Also his sonnes had appointed to them Coates, and Bonets, and Girdles, and Breeches: Which their attire is described at large, *Exodus* 28. *Iosephus* writeth of the stones there mentioned; That that on the Priests right shoulder shined forth very bright, when God was pleased with their Sacrifices, as did also those twelue in the brest-plate, when in the time of Warre God would assist them: Which ceased miraculously to shine two hundred yeeres before his time; or as the Talmudists say, from the building of the second Temple.

m *Exod.* 28. *Leuit* 24.4.

The consecration of the Priests, and Rites thereof are mentioned, *Exodus* 29. The conditions required in the high Priest, as that hee should not haue the bodily defects of blindnesse, lamenesse, maymednesse, &c. nor should vncouer his head, and many other such like, are expressed, *Leuit.* 21. His office was daily to light the Lights at the euening, and to burne incense at Morning and Euening, and once euerie Sabbath to set the Shew-bread before the Lord to Sacrifice, and once a yeere to make reconciliation in the holy-place, &c. This office they executed till the captiuitie, after which they ruled also in the Commonwealth, and the familie of the *Maccabees* obtayned temporall and spirituall iurisdiction, being both Priests and Kings. But the state being vsurped by others, they also appointed high Priests at their pleasures: and thus were *Annas* and *Caiphas* high Priests, although *Caiphas* alone administred the office, which was abrogated to *Annas*, the name only remayning: and thus *Iosephus* saith, that *Annas* was most happie, who had himselfe beene high Priest, and seene all his sonnes in that office, whereas in the institution, and before the Captiuitie, this office continued ordinarily with their liues: which after they enioyed longer or shorter, at pleasure of the Conqueror.

Next vnto the high Priest, were the Priests lineally descended from *Eleazar* and *Ithamar*, the sonnes of *Aaron*, as in number many, so in their Priestly rayments, Consecration, Condition, and Office, much differing from the former, as appeareth, for their Garments, *Leuit.* 28. their Consecration 29. their Conditions required in them, *Leuit.* 10. and 21. and their Office in some things, as Preaching, Praying, Sacrificing, not much vnlike to the former, but in degree, sometime assisting him in these things, sometime alone, and in some things, nothing participating, as in *Moses* plainely may be seene. These Priestly families, being of the house of *Eleazar* sixteene, and of *Ithamar* eight, which *Dauid* by Lot distributed into foure and twentie orders, according to the number of the heads of families, those foure and twentie men, chiefe of those orders, being to the high Priest, as *Aarons* sonnes were vnto him in their ministerie, 1. *Chron.* 24. and tooke turnes by course [n] in performing of the same, as *Luke* showeth [o] in the example of *Zacharie*. *Iosephus* [p] testifieth the same, and affirmeth; That in each of these rankes were more then fiue thousand men in his time: And in the Historie of his life, saith, that himselfe was of the first of these orders, betwixt which was no small difference, and the heads of these were also called *Chiefe Priests* [q] in the old and new Testament. [r] It was by their Lawe forbidden on paine of death to any Priest or Leuite, to intermeddle in anothers Function. But at the three solemne Feasts any of the Priests, which would, were permitted to Minister, and to participate with those whose course it then was: Onely they might not offer the Vowes, or Free-will, or ordinarie Offerings.

n The course listed from one Sabbath to the next, and so in order, being renued euerie Sabbath: from hence *Scaliger* gathereth by demonstration that *Iohn Bap.* was borne a-bouttthe beginning of *Aprill*.

o Of their Academical times, studies, degrees, &c. See *Iun. Academia. cap.* 4. & 6.

p *Luke* 1.5.

q *Iosiph. App. & in vita.*

r *Ex.* 38. *Mar.* 14. *Acts* 4.

s *Vide de his Scal. Can. Isag. l.* 3. *pag.* 198.

t 1. *Chr.* 23. 24.

The

The Gibeonites, called after Nethanims, were at hand vnto the Leuites in the meanest Offices about the Tabernacle and Temple, *Ios.9.21.* and *1.Chron.9.* assigned hereunto first by *Iosiua*, after by *Dauid* and the Princes, for the seruice of the Leuites to cut wood, and draw water, for the house of God, *Ezra.8.* Besides these Ecclesiasticall persons in the ordinarie Ministerie of the Temple were other, which may no lesse be counted holy: either in regard of Vow, as the [f] *Nazarites* for a time: *Sampson* is an especiall example hereof, and *Iames* the Iust, brother of our Lord: or else they were Prophets by extraordinarie calling, as *Samuel, Esay, Ieremie*, and others; to whom God manifested his will by dreames, visions, and reuelations; whose ordinatie habite seemes to be a rugged hayrie garment, by the example of [t] *Elijah*, and the false [u] Prophets, and of [x] *Iohn Baptist* afterward. And thus much of those persons, which according to the Law were sacred to God: it followeth that wee should obserue their superstitious deuoting of themselues, according to their owne deuices and traditions, vnto a supposed seruice of God, in a more strict manner then ordinarie, or some-what in opinion and practice differing both from the Law, and the rest of the Iewish people. Of this kinde were many Sects, whereof we are next to speake.

f See the institution of them *Num.6.2.*

t *2.Reg.1.8. 1Ka.20.2.*

u *Zach.13.4.*

x *Mat.3.4.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of the diuers Sects, Opinions, and alterations of Religion, amongst the Hebrewes.

§. I.

Of their ancient Diuisions and Idolatries.

IN this matter of Alteratio s, and alterations amongst them, about *Questions* and practice of *Religion*, we are in the first place to obserue their often Apostasies [a] from the truth of the Law to the Idolatrous superstitions of the neighbouring Nations: as the Reliques of the Ægyptian Idolatrie in the golden Calfe, *Exod.32.* their often murmurings in the desart, the presumption of *Nadab* and *Abihu*, and after of *Aaron* and *Mirjam*, the conspiracie of *Korah, Dathan*, and *Abiram. Baalams* stumbling-blocke, to couple them in Idolatrous seruice to *Baal-Peor* the Idoll of the Moabites: And after their possession of the Land, when *Iosiua* and the Elders were dead, they serued [b] *the gods of the people that were round about them, as Baal and Ashtaroth*: Of the Idols and their Rites is before spoken. And although *Gideon* cut downe the groue, and destroyed the Altar of *Baal*, [c] yet *he made an Ephod of the earrings of the prey, and put it in* Ophrah *his Cittie, & all Israel went a whoring there after it* [d]: and after his death, made *Baal-berith* their God. They serued also the Gods of Aram, Zidon, Moab, Ammon, [e] and the Philistims: *Michah* [f] an Ephramite made an house of Gods, an Ephod, and Teraphim, and consecrated one of his sonnes to be his Priest; and after set a Leuite, *Ionathan*, in his roome, the occasion of Apostasie to a great part of the Tribe of *Dan*, all the while the house of God was in Shiloh: besides, the corruption of state and religion by the [g] *Beniamites*, and by [h] *Hophni* and *Phinehas* the sons of *Eli*.

[i] *Elias Leuita* describeth the forme of sacring or hallowing their Teraphim in this sort. They killed a man which was a first borne, wee thing his head from his bodie, and embalming the same with salt and spices: and then wrote vpon a plate of gold, the name of an vncleane spirit, and putting the same vnder the head, set it vpon a wall, and burned Candles before it and worshipped the same. *R. Abraham* [k] saith, they were Images of men made to receiue power from aboue, as the Idolaters conceiued of them.

But after the reformation of Religion by *Samuel, Dauid*, and *Salomon* (who yet became after an Idolater) befell their greatest Apostasie, to wit, of the ten Tribes; from God, their King, and Religion, by the our-wise policie of *Iereboam*, which corrupted and subuerted both it and himselfe. He (lest those reuolted Israelites should, by frequenting Gods appointed worship at Ierusalem, re-acknowledge their former and truer Lord) consecrated two Egyptian Calues at Bethel and [l] Dan, and made an House of High Places, and Priests of the lowest of the people.

Iudah also made them, in the same times, High Places, Images, and Groues, on euery high hill, and vnder euerie greene Tree. Yet had the kingdome of Iudah their entercourses of corruption and reformation, according as they had good or bad Kings; but in Israel the Com-

a *Philastrius* reckoning therein their Idolatries, numbreth 28. Iewish Sects: and as *Scaliger* obserueth, and the Scripture willbeare it, might by that rule haue reckoned many other.

b *Iud.2.12,13.*

c *Iud.6.27.*

d *Iud.8.27,33.*

e *Iud.10.6.*

f *Iud.17,18.*

g *Iud.19.*

h *1.Sam.2.12.*

i *In Rad. Theraphim.*

k *Ap. Pagnin.*

l *1.King.12.*

Common-wealth and Church receiued, by that sinne of *Ieroboam*, an vncureable wound and irrecouerable losse, vntill that in Gods iust punishment, they were carried away by the Assyrian Kings into Assyria, and into Hala, Habor, and the Cities of the Medes, as 2. *King.* 17. appeareth, where is recorded a summarie collection of these and other their Idolatries. Of these exiled Israelites (if wee beleeue the reports and coniectures of diuers Authors) are descended those Tartarians, which since ouer-ranne, with their Conquests, a greater part of Asia and Europe, then euer any other Nation, before or since: Of which, their Originall and Exploits, wee shall in fitter place further discourse. But it is farre more probable, that in, and after the Babylonish Captiuitie, the Israelites adioyned themselues in Religion to the other Iewes, at least, the greatest part of them. And though not many returned with *Esra*, yet those parts remayned full of Iewes, hauing their Vniuersities and some kinde of gouernment, till the Saracenicall deluge, and in some tolerable condition after, as *Beniamin* relates, which continued till the time of the Tartars, which had they beene of this Nation, they would haue preferred them; whereas euer since their times the estate of the Iewes hath beene more contemptible then before. I denie not, that many of them might mixe themselues with the Nations with whom they liued, and grow into one people with them: and that there might be in diuers places some remnants of this Israelitish dispersion, as *Beniamin* reckons some, and *Trigaut* in China, coniectures of others. But this Tale of the Tartars, and that [m] other of the inclosed Iewes, seeme but idle dreames, without any good ground of truth or credit.

The other Kingdome of Iudah, although it receiued sometime some breathing and refreshing vnder hee more Vertuous and Religious Kings, yet for the most part, groning vnder Tyrannie and Idolatrie, was at last a prey to the Babylonians: From which seruitude being freed by the Persian Monarches, vnder varieties of aduerse and prosperous fortunes, it was afterwards rent and torne by the Macedonians, being made a common Stage for the Armes and Armies of the successours of *Ptolemey* in Ægypt, and *Seleucus* in Asia, remayning meede vnto the Conquerour, and receiuing no small impressions and wounds in Soule as well as Bodie, in Religion as in Politie. But being after deliuered from Macedonean thraldome by the Famille of the *Macchabees*, the Gouernement, Ecclesiasticall and Temporall, became theirs, but the mindes of this Iewish people was in those times diuided in diuersitie of Sects and Opinions, of which the Euangelicall and other Histories make mention.

One diuision * was of the whole Nation, not so much for opinion as for the differing habitation, which brought also some circumstances of other differences. The Iewes therefore were generally thus distinguished. The Hebrewes which dwelt in Palestina, and the *scattered strangers*, [n] as *Peter* calls them; to wit, the Græcians (these two sorts are mentioned by *Luke*, *Acts* 6.1.) and the Διασπορὰ Βαβυλῶνος, or the remainders of the deportation of Babylon, the Metropolis whereof was Babylon, while it remayned, and after Bagded. The Metropolis or head of the [o] Διασπορὰς Ἑλλήνων or Ἑλληνικῶν was Alexandria, where also in *Beniamin Tudelensis* his time, there was a Synagogue of the Babylonian dispersion. The Asian Iewes were most of this Babylonian sort; to these Saint *Peter* wrote from Babylon, which therefore he nameth not in the inscription. The Hellenists were so called of hellenizing or vsing the Greeke tongue in their Synagogues (in which they had the Scriptures translated) in Ægypt, Greece and Italie. By reason of this translation [p] the Hebrews and Hellenists often disagreed (for the Hebrewes called it [q] backward reading, because it is read from the left hand to the right) which sometime brake forth into open violence. *R. Eleazar* [q] assaulted the Synagogue of the Alexandrians at Ierusalem, and committed there in much outrage: And Christian Charitie could scarce combine them, as *Luke* mentioneth, *Act.* 6.1. This Greeke translation was vsed by them throughout Europe: they had it in Hebrew Letters, as *Tertullian* testifieth in the Serapium at Alexandria. Thus *Philo* and other of these learned Hellenists, were ignorant of the Hebrew. Likewise of those Hebrewes, there was small reckoning had of the Galilæans by their supercilious and superstitious brethren of Iudæa, as the Gospell hath taught vs.

m The Iewes haue a tale of *Alexander*, opening certaine mountaines by magick, and therein inclosing a multitude of Iewes beyond Babylon in the hill Cappion, which haue a King over them, and are called red Iewes, &c. *vide Vitl. Carbonf. lib.1.22.*

* *Vid. Scal. in Euseb pag.124. & Cas. Nag. pag.378.*

n *Διασπορὰ 2. Pet.1.1.*

o *Ioh.7.35.*

p The Hebrews ordained a fast in remembrance of the translation of the 70.

q *In sine cap. Megillah.*

§. II.

Of the Karraim and Babbinists, and of the Hasidai.

THE opinions of the Iewes may be reduced [a] into these two generall heads: the one were such as contented themselues with the Law of God, and were called *Karraim*, or *Koraim*, of which sort there are diuers at this day in Constantinople, and other where: The other *Rabbinists*, Superetogatorie (as Doctor *Hall* calls them) and Popish Iewes, called *Hasidim*, professing a more strict holinesse then the Law required. Yet at first these both pleased themselues, and did not *by opposition of Science*, displease each other, and disagreeing in opinion, they yet in affection agreed. But when these voluntarie seruices beganne to bee drawne in Canons, and of arbitratie became necessarie, they were rent into sundrie Sects. Of these and their originall, let vs heare *Scaliger* speake.

There were [b] (saith he) before the times of *Hasmonai*, two kinds of Dogmatists, men holding differing opinions, among the Iewes: the one onely accepting the written Law; the other Tradition, or the addition to the Law. Of the former kinde arose the *Karraim*, of whom came the Sadduces; of the latter, the Pharises. These Pharises were the issue of the Hasideos.

The Hasideos were a Cotporation, Guild, or Fraternitie, which voluntarily addicted themselues to the Offices of the Law, 1. *Maccabees, chap.* 2. *verse* 42. [c] Their originall was from the times of *Ezrah*, or *Esdras*; *Haggai* and *Zacharie*, the Prophets, being Authors of this Order. These, in regard of their institution, were called *Holy*, *Hasidim*; and in regard of their Combination; *Hasidei*. And besides that which the Law enioyned (which is iust debt) they supererogated, and of their owne free accord disbursed vpon the Temple and Sacrifices. They professed not onely to liue according to the prescript of the Law, but if any thing could by interpretations and consequences be drawne thence, they held themselues bound to satisfie it, and when they had done all, to seeme to haue done nothing, but accounted themselues *vnprofitable seruants* notwithstanding.

Euery one paid a tribute to the reparations of the Temple, from the times of *Esdras* and *Nehemias*. [d] The Hasideans added further (of their owne free-will) to the Sanctuarie, Walles, and Porches, neuer (almost) going from the Temple, which they seemed to hold peculiar to themselues, and by which they vsed to sweare, *By this Habitacle*, or, *By this house*: Which the Pharises, their posteritie, also did [e], as like wise they learned of them to *build the Sepulchres of the Prophets*. They were therefore called *Hasidim*, either because their Colledge was instituted of the Prophets; or of their holy and religious workes, and the sacred buildings by them eyther repaired, or reared from the foundations. And therefore when wicked *Alcimus* had killed threescore men of this Corporation or Guild, the people thought their death was prophesied in the [f] Psalme, such reputation was there of their holinesse.

These Hasidæi were not in proper sense a Sect, but a Fraternitie, which euery day assembled in the Temple, and offered in daily Sacrifice a Lambe, which was called, *the sin offering of the Hasidim*. One day was excepted, the eleuenth of *Tisri*, in which that Sacrifice was omitted. They offered not themselues (for they were not Priests) but the Priests in their name. *Abraham Zacuth* [g] saith, That *Baba*, the son of *Buta*, daily of his owne accord offered a Ram for a sin-offering, except one day, which was the day after the *Expiation*. And this was called, *the Sacrifice of the Saints for Sin*: And he sware, *By this Habitacle*, that is, the Temple. Of this kinde, or much like thereto, *Scaliger* [h] thinketh the *Rechabites* were, which *Ieremia* [i] mentioneth, whose immediate father he accounteth *Ionadab* (not him which [k] liued in the daies of *Iehu*, but another of that name) and that their austere order began but a little before it ended (namely, in the same Prophets time) quickly ending, because of the captiuitie. After the Captiuitie these sonnes of *Ionadab*, renuing their former obseruations, were called Hasidæi, which went not from the Temple, and obserued the orders aboue mentioned: so *Scaliger* interpreteth *Ieremies* Prophesie, that *Ionadab should not want one to stand before the Lord*, that is, to minister & attend holy duties in the temple, like to *Anna* the Prophetess. This, saith he, is the true beginning of the *Hasidei*, which abstained from wine, as did also the Priests, as long as they ministred in the temple. Thus much *Scaliger*. As for that which *Serarius* hath written against *Scaliger* and *Drusius* in this argument, both in his *Triberesium* and his Minerualt, or elsewhere, I refer the Reader to himselfe, choosing rather to expresse what I thinke probable then entertainmen with long vanecessarie disputes. *Drusius* [m] prouueth, that diuers of the Pharises and Essees also were of these *Hasidei*, wherby it appeareth, that it was rather a Brotherhood, as *Scal.* calleth it, then a Sect. He sheweth their Rites and Discipl ne, out of *Iuchasin*. [n] They spent 9. houres of the day in praier. They beleeued that a man might sin in thought, & therfore they had care thereof; their will was not without the will of Heauen, that is, of God. Ten things were peculiar to them: Not to lift vp their eyes aboue ten cubits: 2. Not to goe bare-headed: 3. To establish three refections: 4. To dispose their hearts to Prayer: 5.

a *D Hall*, Pharisine and Christianitie. *Synagoga Iudaic. cap.* 2.

b *Iof. Scal. Elench. Trine. Nich. Serar. c.* 2.

c He calls these two sects, *cap.* 2. *Karraim*, of *Kere*, which signifieth the Scripture: and *Rabbanim*, which were the *wisemen*, *Σοφοὶ*, after called Pharises.

d *Iunius* translateth it *Asidei*, and saith they were such, as for religion were scattered and disperfed about for feare of the King. *Cont. Drus. & Serar. Triber. li.* 3. *c.* 7.

e *Nehe.* 10. 32.

f *Mat.* 23. 16. *&* 29.

f *Psal.* 79. 2.

g *Abr. Zacuth. lib. Iobasiu.*

h *Scal. ibid. cap.* 24.

i *Ier.* 35. 19.

k 2. *Reg.* 10. 15.

l *Luke* 2. 37.

m *Drus. de* 3. *Ser. li. c.* 18.

n Or *Iehasin Ab. Zec.*

Not to looke on eyther side: sixtly, To goe about, that they might not bee troublesome to any companie; Seuenthly, Not to eare at the Tables of great men: eightly, If they had angred any man, quickly to appease him: ninthly, To haue a pleasant voyce, and to descend to the interpretation of the Law: tenthly, to accustome themselues to their Threads and Phylacteries.

Rab (one of his Fraternitie) did not lift vp his eyes aboue foure cubits, Tenne or twentie daies before their death, they were diseased with the Collicke, and so all cleare and cleane they departed into the other life.

To returne vnto *Scaliger* touching the originall of Sects, and to leaue those Hasidæan obseruants. As long (saith he) as Supererogation onely was vsed, there was no Sect in the people of GOD: But when the precepts thereof were brought into *Canons*, and committed to writing, then arose many doubts, disputations, altercations, growing and succeeding daily, from whence sprang two Sects, differing in opinion; the one admitting onely the Law, the other embracing the interpretations and expositions of their Rabbines. The former in processe of time, was diuided into two. For at first, the *Karraim* were only such as obserued the Law and the Prophets, till the times of *Sadok* and *Boethi*, or *Baithi*, who first doubted of the punishment of sinnes, and rewards of good works, from whom sprang the heresie of the *Sadducees*. The *Karraim* were not before this diuided in Sect from the *Hasidim*, but onely in those voluntarie Functions and Supererogations, wherein the Law, by iniunction, ruled the former, and these, as is said, supererogated. But when Canons and Iniunctions began to bee written, then of these *Hasidim* arose Dogmatists, which called themselues *Perushim*, *Holy*, and *Separated* both from the other *Hasidim*, and from the Vulgar; making a necessitie of that obseruation, which before was voluntarie. This sort was againe diuided into those which retained the name *Perushim*, or *Pharises*; and the *Essens*; both receiuing from their Authors the Rules and Precepts of their Sect. After this, the Pharises were diuided into many kindes: The Iewes reckon seuen. The Essens also were diuided first into *Cloysterers*, or Collegians, which liued in a common societie; and *Eremites*, or solitarie persons; and those former into such as *married*; and others which remained *continent*.

§ III.

Of the Pharises.

NOW let vs consider of these more particularly; and first of the Pharises, *Drusius* [a] deriueth the name from the Syrian, as most of the names of the new Testament are, and not from the Hebrew; for then it should not bee Pharises, but Pharuses: as after the Hebrew, it should rather be *Masius*, then *Messias*. The Etymologie some fetch from *Phares*, which signifieth Diuision, as *Epiphanius*, and *Origen*, with others [b]: against which *Drusius* excepteth, because in *Phares* the last Letter is *Tsaddi*; here it is *Schin*. Others [c] deriue it from *Parash*, signifying to explaine, because they did all things openly, to be seene of men: it is not likely: for Hypocrisie loues her *works* should be seene, but not her *Humor* (then should it be hypocrisie:) she would not be seene in her affection to be seene: And this name, in this sense would haue beene to their infamie, and not to their reputation, which they most aymed at. A third deriuation of this name, is from another signification of the same Verbe, [d] to expound. But to expound the Law, was more proper to the *Scribes*; and some of the Pharises were not expositors. Howbeit, the most probable opinion is, that they, were so called of *Separation*; because they were, or would seeme to be, separated from others [e]: first, in cleannesse of life; secondly; in dignitie thirdly, in regard of the exquisitenesse of those obseruations, whereto they were separate disfourthly, in their habit, wherein they were (as our Monkes) distinguished from the people; yea, they did abhorre the garments of the people.

Their opinions are gathered by [f] *Iosephus*, and others, out of whom *Drusius*, *Serarius*, *Scaliger* and others. They attributed (saith *Iosephus*) all things to Fate, *Abraham Zacuth* interpreteth their opinion thus. They beleeue that God knoweth and disposeth all things, and the Stars helpe; yet so, as free-will is left in the hand of man. And if a man by his free-will chuseth the good, God will helpe him [*] in his good way. They say; That there is no Hearb in Earth which hath not his proper Planet in Heauen.

The ascribe immortalitie to the Soule, holding, that iudgement passed on it vnder the Earth; and that if it had done euill, it was adiudged to perpetuall prisons; if well, it had easie returne vnto life by a [f] transmigration, or going into another body. So *Zacuth*: The good Soules take delight of their good workes; the bad descend, and ascend not. They beleeued

a *Drusius de 3. Scil. L.*

b *Ambros. in Luc. li. 3. Damascen. de heres. Suidas.*

c *F. Feterius, Bis. 1. 10. Forsterus levit.*

* *Sic Iansen. in Concord. Euan. c. 13. Serar. L. 1. c. 10*

d *Quasi egregij Iudeorum Aetas. 30 de verb. Dom.*

e *Iosepb de Antiq. li. 18. de bell. Iud li. 2.*

* *Serarius in* clineth to a more Stoicall interpretation, ἡ μαρμένη [illegible] *ωτ.* Thus Christ was, after this opinion called *Eliae*, or one of the Prophets.

leeued that there were both Deuils and good Angels. They conceiued, that he which kept the most of the commandements, although he transgresse in some, is *iust before* GOD; against which opinion g *Burgensis* thinketh, that *Iames* alledged that saying in his *Epistle, He that sayleth in one, is guiltie of all.* He citeth *Rab. Moses* for his Pharisaicall opinion; That GOD iudgeth according to the pluralitie or paucitie (to vse his owne words) of merits or demerits. Like stuffe haue I read in S. *Francis* Legend, of the ballance wherein mens deeds are weighed, and the Deuil lost his prey by the weight of a Chalice, which one had giuen to the Saint; which heauie metall caused the Scale wherein his good dee des were put (before too light) to weigh heauiest. They (the ancienter Pharises) confesse the Resurrection of the
10 flesh. Here of are three opinions h; one; That all, good and bad, shall rise against; another, That the iust onely shall rise; a third, That the iust, and part of the wicked shall rise.

They call their Traditions the Law giuen by Word, and the vnwritten Law, which they equall to the written, deriuing both from *Moses*, as more fully else-where shall bee said. These Traditions they called Δευτερωσεις, as both *Epiphanius* and *Hieronymus* witnesse: the Teachers thereof Σοφοι or Wise-men, and when they lectured, they were wont to say, Οι Σοφοι Δευτερωσεις i. *The wise-men teach Traditions.* Of these Traditions were, concerning the
20 Sabbath, That they might iourney from their place two thousand cubites; (*Hierome* l accounteth feete, *Origen* k Elnes) That none might carry any burthen that day, but they interpreted, if one carried on one shoulder, it was a burthen; if on both, it was none; if his shooes had nailes, they were a burthen, otherwise not. Concerning fasting, the Pharise boasteth, *Luke* 18.12. *I fast twice in the weeke*: which they obserued (sayth *Theophilact* l) on the second and fifth day, Mundaies and Thursdaies. Happily our Wednesdaies and Fridaies succeeded in this Penance, that we might not seeme to be behinde them in dutie, howsoetter we disagree with them in their time. And yet *Mercerus* saith, The Iewes fasted the fourth day, Wednesday, because they held that vnluckie, in which children are taken with the Squinancie. Further, the Pharises eate not vnwashed ἐὰν μὴ πυγμῇ βαπτίσωνται *Marke* 7.3. *Except they wash with the fist*; as *Beza* translateth. *Scaliger* m expoundeth it, not by washing one fist in the other, but composing the fingers into such a frame, that all their ends meete on the top of the thumbe, which for want of another name is called πυγμή, a Fist, although it
30 be not properly so. In this forme they hold vp their hands in washing, that the water may slide downe to the elbow, and thence fall to the ground, as the Iewes vse to this day. They *washed* n *when they came from Market*, because sinners & vncleane persons were there, whose touch might pollute them. They washed also *Cups* and *Brasen vessels and Beds*, not Chamber-beds to lie on (*Drusius* o expoundeth) but dining-beds, which they vsed in stead of Tables.

They would not p *eate with Publicans or sinners*, yea, they accounted themselues polluted with their touch.

Their hypocrisie in prayer Christ mentioneth, that it was *long*, and open *in the streetes, &c.* It was thrice in the day, at the third, sixt, and ninth houre: Their words submisse and softly, as of *Hannah*, 1. *Sam.* 1. and toward the Temple.

40 They Tythed all, *Luke* 18. *Math.* 23. euen the smallest matters. For Tythes (saith *Akiba*) are the *Hedges of thy Riches.* And another Prouerbe (learne it) *Tythe, that thou maist be rich.* *Epiphanius* q addeth, they paid first fruits, thirtieths, and fiftieths, Sacrifices and Vowes.

Their Phylacteries or Scrutatories, Defensiues (so the word signifieth) in Hebrew r *Totaphoth*, they vsed as Preseruatiues, or Remembrancers of the Law, and ware them larger then other men. *Hierome* calls them *Pittaciola*, resembling to them herein some simple superstitious women, wearing little Gospels, and the wood of the Crosse, and such like, of zeale, not according to knowledge, straying a Gnat, and swallowing a Cammell. This superstition, then complayned of by *Hierome*, yet remaineth (saith s *Scaliger*) among Christians and Mahumetans, which weare about them the Gospell of S. *John.* Christ condemneth not the Rite,
50 but their ambition, for dilating, not for wearing them, to which all the Iewes were bound, and all the Iewes and Samaritans obserued. They vsed the like ambition in their Fringes or twisted Tassels, which the Iewes call *Tzizit*, and vse them still, as after shall appeare. Their Oathes were, By Ierusalem, the Temple, the Heauen, Earth, their Head, by the Law. t *Fagius* obserueth, that the Iewes in swearing, lay their hand on the booke of the Lawe at this day. Other Oathes are little esteemd. Hence it seemeth came our corporall oathes on a booke. The Iewes (saith u *Capito*) thinke it no Oath, if one forsweare by Heauen, or Earth, vnlesse he say by him which dwelleth there, &c. And none is subiect to that Curse, in which the name of God is not added.

That of *Corban* pertayneth to this place, mentioned *Mat.* 15. 5. & *Marke* 7.11. which
60 some interprete, as if a Iew should say to his x Parents, That he had alreadie dedicated all that to God (to whom vowes are to be performed) wherewith he might haue helped them. Doctor *Reinolds* y saith, That the Iewes, as they were prone to vngodly vowes, so this was an

g *Burgens. Addit. 1. in Epist. Iac. 2.10.*

h *Drus. l. 2. c. 1. 4.*

i *Hier. ad Algas.*

l *Theoph. in Luc. 18.*

m *Scal. Elench. Set. cap. 7.*

Sprer. Tribet: lib. 2. c. 2.

n *Mat. 7.4.*

o *Drus. lib. 2. vbi supra.*

p *Luk. 7. 39. Epi. 65. 5.*

q *Epiphan. heres. 8.*

r Of these read the 35. chapter following.

s *Scal. Elench. cap. 8.*

t *Fag. annotat. ad Gnat. cap. Dt.*

u *Capito in Hos.*

x They otherwise acknowledge much pietie to their parents: so *Hiscuni*, God is to be honored with thy goods if thou hast any, but if thy parents, if thou hast not, thou must beg from doore to doore: but their traditionall pietie disanulled this textuall. *Vid. Drus. praeim. Mat. 15.*

y *Rain. & Harf. 6. 7 & 4.*

an vsuall vow amongst them, and they would binde it with an Oath, That such or such a man should haue no profit by them. The Oath which they herein vsed as most solemne, was, *By the Gift*: for so they were instructed, [a] *That if any sware by the Altar it was nothing, but if by the Gift, he was a debtor.* The Pharises therefore taught, if any had said to his father, *By the Gift thou shalt haue no profit by me*, then he might in no ease doe them any good, against the Commandement, *Honour thy Father, &c.* The Iewes vsed to binde their vowes with a curse, as they which vowed [a] *Paules* death, vsing yet to suppresse the curse in selfe, as, [b] *If they shall enter into my rest*: So these, *By the gift, if they haue any profit by me*, meant, they should haue none. Thus the *Talmud* (saith he) the Booke of their Canon Law, and Schoole-Diuinitie, saith; That a man is bound to honor his Father, vnlesse he vow the contrary. *Masius* [c] explaineth it thus; That they did consecrate (by saying *Corban*) all, where-with they should haue benefited their parents: as if they had said; Let it be Anathema, or deuoted, whatsoeuer it be, with which I may profit thee. And therefore those Rabbines, vnder pietext of Religion, allowed not to spend on his parents, that which he had thus vowed to God. *Scaliger* [d] thus interpreteth the place, as if a sonne being by his parents admonished of his duti[e], should put them off, with this exception, *vnlesse that which I haue offered for thee*, free me of this burthen. But let the more cutious teade it in himselfe, and what *Masius*, *Serarius*, and others haue written hereof.

[a] *Matth.* 23.
[a] *Act.* 23. 14.
[b] *Heb.* 3. 11.
[c] *Mas. in Ies. 4. Dr.*
[d] *Scal. Elench. cap. 3.*

The Pharises were esteemed pitifull: The Sadduces more [e] cruell. [e] They were much addicted to Astrologie, and the Mathematikes; whose names of the Planets, *Epiphanius* [f] reheareseth, as also the twelue Signes.

There were [g] seuen sorts of the Pharises, which the *Talmud* reckoneth: first, *Sichemita*, which measure pietie by honour and profit, as the Sichemites, which for the marriage of *Dina* endured circumcision: Secondly, *Naephi*, which lifted not his feete from the ground: the third, *Kisai*, Draw-blood, which smiteth his head to the wall, to cause the bloud to come, and also shutteth his eyes, that he behold not a woman: The fourth, that standeth on his perfection, called *Mahchobathi*: *What is my sinne?* as if there wanted nothing to his Righteousnesse: The fift, *Meduchia*, which goe lowly and stooping: The sixt, The Pharisee of *Loue*, which obeyeth the Law for loue of vertue or reward: The seuenth, the Pharisee of *Feare*, which is holden in obedience by feare of punishment. This they call, *Iobs Pharisee*, the former *Abrahams*.

[e] The one after the Letter of the Law exacted eye for eye, &c. the other accepted a price in lieu thereof, *D. Mf. Pret. in Mat.* 5. and *Hieronim.* of a Pharise became a Sadduce, and his son *Alexander* slue six thousand Pharises, and persecuted the rest, that they fled into other countries. *P. Ric. de Caelestis Agricultura, l.* 1.
[f] *N. Lyra, in Mat.* 16.
[g] *Epipha. her.* 6. *Drus. de Ies. Sect.* 2. c. 22.
[h] *Epiph her.* 16.
[i] *Scal. El.* 6. 13.
[k] *Ar. Mont. in Euang. Mat.* 23.

Epiphanius [h] describeth their strict obseruations. Some (saith he) prescribed to themselues ten yeeres, or eight or foure yeeres continence. Some lay on plankes, which were onely nine inches broad, that when they slept, they might fall to the pauement, so to be awakened againe to prayer, and keepe themselues waking. Others put stones vnder them for the same end, by pricking to awake them: Others lay on Thornes for that purpose. *Scaliger* [i] reproueth *Epiphanius* for affirming, that the Pharises ware womans attire, as not agreeing to their austeritie, which despised all beds, beate themselues against walles, and put thornes in the stinges of their garments, to prick them: he thinketh him deceiued by some Iewes report; and addeth, that the moderne Iewes haue little or no knowledge of those ancient Pharises, but as they learne it of the Christians, or of *Pseudo-Gorionides* (so hee calleth the Hebrew booke, ascribed to *Ioseph Ben Gorion*, whom *Drusius* esteemeth, and *Scaliger* prouueth to be a counterfeit, wherein *Serarius* and *Ribera* concurre with them.)

The Pharises in a selfe-conceit and singularitie, called, all but themselues, in a disgracefull scorne, [k] *Other men*: so said he, *Luke* 18. *I am not as other men*; whereas they accounted themselues Masters of others, on whom also *they bound heauie burthens*, in their Rules and Cases, the breach whereof they iudged *Sinne* in the people, but yet held not themselues bound thereto. For example, Euery Israelite ought euery day, by their Rule, to say ouer the ten Commandements, and that in the first Watch, which might not be deferred, for danger of sinne; and yet amongst themselues they esteemed it lawfull at any houre of the night. But vpon the Proselytes they imposed more then on the other Israelites, all which they were bound to (in their censure) vnder paine of *Hell fire*; and therefore Christ said, *They made them two-fold more the children of Hell then themselues*; for they freed themselues from many of those impositions they laid on the Consciences of others: And these Proselytes the lesse ttusted, and therefore burthened them with more obseruations.

§. IIII.

Of the Sadducees.

AFter we haue spoken of the Pharisees, which loued the first roomes (which they haue heere obtained) it followeth to speake next of the Sadducees, [a] who in the New Testament are often mentioned. [b] *Beda* giueth an vniust interpretation of their name, saying, the Sadducees are interpreted *Iust. Epiphanius* [c] also fetcheth their name from *Sedec*, which signifieth Iustice. *Lyra* [d] alleageth a reason, because they were seuere and rigorous in iudgement, they gaue this name of *Iust* (not iustly) to themselues. *Burgensis* [e] otherwise; as of *Arrius* were the Arrians, so of one *Sadoch* (saith hee) are the Sadducees called, who was the first inuentor of their Hetesie. *Serarius* deriueth the name from both. The Phatisees were esteemed more iust then they, as appeareth *Luke* 18.9. They counted themselues iust, and despised others; *Summum ius, summa iniuria.* Their rigorous Iustice, was vniust rigour. [f] This *Sadoc*, or rather *Sadue*, liued vnder *Antigonus Sochæus*, who succeeded to *Simeon the iust*: His fellow Scholler was *Baithos*, of whom came the Baithosæans. So saith *Abraham ben Dauid* in his historicall Cabball: *Antigonus* said, *Bee ye not as seruants, which Minister to their Prince, on condition to receiue reward.* Sadoc *and* Baithos *asked him of this thing: And he answered, that they should not put confidence in the reward of this life, but in the world to come. But they denied his words, and said; We neuer heard any thing of the world to come; for they had beene his Disciples: and they dissented from him, and went to the Sanctuarie of Mount Garizim, where the Princes were.* They vpbraided the Phatisees with their Traditions, saying; The Tradition is in the hand of the Phatisees, to vexe themselues in this World, whereas in the World to come, they haue no reward. *Antigonus* his words are in the Treatise *Pirke Aboth. Be yee not seruants which minister to a Prince, to receiue of him reward: But be yee as seruants which minister to their Prince, with this condition, that they receiue no reward, and let the feare of God be vpon you.* [g] *Elias Leuita* thus reporteth it: *Antigonus Sochæus* had two Disciples, *Zadok* and *Baiethos*, which leauing their Master after to follow wicked men, first beganne to deny the Lawe, which was giuen by word of mouth, and beleeued nothing but that which was written in the Law: Wherefore they were called, *Karraim*, that is, Bible-men, or Textuals, and in the Romane Tongue they call them Sadducees. These two are reported also to haue forsaken their Master *Antigonus*, and as Apostaticall Heretikes, to haue embraced *Sanballats* new Samaritane Religion at Carizim.

Baithos had a certaine family from *Sadoc*, otherwise held the same opinions, as *Hillel* and *Sammai* among the Phatisees; so these were two chiefe Masters of the Sadducæan Schooles. The Baithucæans ministred to *Baithos* in vessels of siluer and gold. These Sadduces were called *Mmim*, or *Minei*, that is, Heretikes. They are called *Karraim*, because they would seeme *Textuall*, and Scripture-men, disallowing Traditions, [h] of *Kara*, which signifieth the Scripture: which was called *Kara*, or *Cara*, of *Cara* to reade, saith *Drusius*, [i] because of the diligence which ought to be vsed in reading the Scriptures, whereunto men should designe (after the Iewish precepts) the third part of their life. *Abraham Zachuth* calls them *Epicures.* The Scriptures they interpreted after their owne sense, nor regarded they the words of the *Wise-men*; that is, the Phatisees. They were of the ancient *Caraæus*, or *Karraim*, but not of those which now are so teatmed; Which as *Zachuth* confesseth, confesse the Resurrection, and Reward. *Scaliger* [k] affirmeth, by the testimonie of *Philip Frederike* a Christian Iew, who had great familiaritie with these Karraim at Constantinople, and had beene often present at their Synagogue, that they differ nothing from the other Iewes, but in reiecting Traditions, and are farre more honest and faithfull then the *Rabbanim*, of whome they are no lesse hated for their integritie, then for reiecting Tradition. But in comparison of the [l] *Rabbanim*, there are but fewe of the *Karraim*: And these are of the Reliques of the olde Sadducees. These two Sects haue nothing common betweene them, but the Text of the Scripture: They haue a differing account of their *New-Moones*: the other Iewes reckoning from the Coniunction, these *Karraim* from the time of apparition, as doe the Arabians.

Concerning the *Karraim* now remayning, it is reported that the other Iewes, and they will not speake one to another: so inexpiable hatred doe the other Iewes conceiue against them. And *Postellus* saith, [m] There are three principall Sects of the Iewes in the Eastern parts; *Thalmudista*; *Carraim*, which reiect those Glosses. They are rich, but so hated of the rest, that a great part of their Virgins remaine vnmarried: And if (saith the common Iew) it should so happen, that a *Caraim* & a *Christian* should fall together into the water, with like possi-

a Sadducees.

b Beda in Act. 5.
c Epiph. her. 14.
d Lyra in Act. 5.

e Burgens. ibid.

f Drus. de 3. Sec. l. 3. c. 3.
Elias Thisb. vad. Sadoc. Pirke Aboth c. 2. vid. Ser. Tr. l. 3. c. 19.

g El in vad. Zadok.

h Scalig. Elenc. Triber. cap. 2.
i Drus. quæst. lib. 1. quæst. 44.

k Scal. quo sup. It seemeth that Philip Ferdinandus, by his Phariseeis Sadducees and intendeth the Rabbanim, and Karraim.
l Scal. l. 8. T. l. 2.

m G. Postel. Alphab. 12. long ap. Dr.

possibilitie of sauing either, he would make a bridge of the *Carraim* to saue the Christian. The third sort is the Samaritan, of which afterward. *Buxdorf.* n saith, that there are of these *Carraim* also in Poland; and *Leo* o mentioneth some places in Barbarie, where this sort of Iewes do inhabite; as you may hereafter reade in our sixt booke, and the eleuenth Chapter. Some also are in Palestina.

First, their difference from the Pharisees was about the future reward, which being denied, they by consequence of that error fell into the rest, to denie the Resurrection: the subsistence spirituall, &c. They cooped vp God in Heauen, without all beholding of euill. They denied *Fate*, which the Pharisees held. They denied *Spirit* altogether, saith *Lira*, p for they held God to be corporeall; the soule to die with the bodie: Angels and diuels they denied: Good and Euill they ascribed to a mans free-will q. They were inhospitall and cruell; and as cruelly hated of the people. They are charged (the Diuell may be slandered) to denie all Scripture but *Moses* r: But first in Scripture, this opinion of theirs is not mentioned: and *Iosephus* affirmeth, that they receiued the Scriptures, and reiected Tradition. Neither would the zealous people of the Iewes haue endured them in the Temple, if they had denied their Prophets, for feare of whom they durst not professe otherwise of *Iohn Baptist*, although hee had left no monument of miracle, or Scripture. *Drusius* s would reconcile this opinion of the Fathers, which, say they, denied all but *Moses*; and the other, saying, that some of the Sadducees liued in Iudæa, others in Samaria. These later happily, with the Samaritans, denied all saue *Moses*. Amongst these were the *Apostitas*, which liued in Sichem, mentioned by *Iosephus*, *Antiq. lib.* 11. *cap.* 8. and *Eccles.* 50. 27. *Iunius* thinketh that they fell from the Iewish Religion with *Manasses*, in the time of *Nehemias*.

n *Buxdorf. Synag. Iud. c.* 12.
o *Leo Africa. Beniam. Itinerar.* squoteth in his time sortie of them at Beniberta: at Damascus two hundred.
p *Lyra in Act.* 23.
q *Iosep. de Bel. Iud. lib.* 2. *c.* 7.
r Reade this Argument handled by *Scaliger Elench. ca.* 16. *& Serarius Tyber. & Mist. Drus. de* 3. *Sectd.* 3. *cap.* 10.
s *Gaon* was a degree, as a Doctor with vs, created by imposition of hands, &c.

The Sect of the Sadduces was diminished, if not worne out, after the destruction of the Temple, till in the yeere 4523. or after *Scaliger*, 4515. and *Anno Dom.* 755. one *Anan* and *Saul* his son reuiued that Doctrine, because he had not receiued his expected promotion to the degree of *Gaon* t. He wrote bookes against the other Iewes. The like did one *Carcesynai*. But of these Sadduces too much.

§. V.

Of the Hessees.

OF the a *Essees*, *Essens* or *Hessees*, followeth in the next place. Their name *Scaliger* b deriueth of a c word which signifieth *Rest*, or *quietnesse* and *silence*: both which well agree to their institution. He disproueth that opinion of *Eusebius*, and others, that therein followed him, which thought these Iewish Heretikes were Christian Monkes and Catholikes. Such Catholikes let *Baronius*, d and *Bellarmine* e boast of, as the Authors of their Monkes, for so they would haue them; which you may beleeue as well as before the Flood, *Enoch*, and after, *Elias*, *Iohn Baptist*, the Nazarites, and Rechabites, were Monkish Votaries, as the Cardinall would haue you. As for these *Essees*, hee makes no small adoe against the Centuries, f for vnderstanding *Philo* of Iewish, and not of Christian Monkes. But the loue to Monkery hath dazeled the eyes of men too much: and euen their Historie (which followeth) will conuince that opinion of falsehood. Besides, Christianity should haue small credit of such associates. Indeed the later Monkes are much like them in superstition and idolatrie, though farre behind in other things. But he that will see this Argument disputed, let him reade *Scaliger* his Confutation of *Serarius* the Iesuite. He sheweth also that the Ossens, Sampsæans, Messalians, and diuers heresies amongst the Christians, sprang from these *Essees*: That the Egyptian *Essees*, of which *Philo* speaketh, out of whom *Eusebius* first collected that conceit, and that *Philo* himselfe, had no skill in the Hebrew, but knew onely the Greeke tongue: that *Paulus* the Eremite in Thebais, was the first Author of Monastical liuing. But now to come to our Historie of these men.

These *Essees*, *Hessees*, or *Essens*, are placed by *Plinie* on the West of dead Sea g, a people solitarie, and in the whole world most admirable, without women, without money; a Nation eternall, in which none is borne, the wearinesse of others fortunes being the cause of their fruitfull multiplyings, *Philo* in that booke which he intituled, *that all good men are free*, saith, that there were of them aboue foure thousand, called *Essei*, *quasi* ὅσιοι, that is, *Holy*, not sacrificing other creatures, but their mindes vnto God. Some of them are Husband-men, some Artificers, for necessitie, not for abundance: they make no weapons of war, nor meddle with Merchandize. They haue no seruants, but are all both free and mutually seruants to each other. They liue perpetually chaste, sweare not at all, nor lye: esteeming God the giuer of all good, and Author of no euill: Their societie is such; that one garment, one house, one foode,

a *Essei.*
b *Scalig. Elenc. cap.* 26.
c חשאים to be written *Hessees*, not *Essees cont.* 5. *par.* 4. *c.* 40. 3.
d *Baron. Annal. tom.* 1.
e *Bellar. de Mon. lib.* 2. *cap.* 5.
f *cent.* 1. *lib.* 2. *cap.* 3.
g *Plin.* 5. *c.* 17.

foode, one treasurie, one getting, one spending, one life, is in common to them all; carefully prouiding for their sick, and holding the elder men in place of parents.

Iosephus, who himselfe liued among them, doth more largely describe them. [h] He teporteth that they were by Nation Iewes, auoiding pleasures and riches as sinnes; accounting continence and contentednesse great vertues. They marrie not, but instruct the children of others, respecting them as their kindred, in their manners: not denying the lawfulnesse of marriage, but the honestie of women. He which becommeth one of their fraternitie, must make his goods common. Oyle and neatnesse they shunne, yet weare alwaies a white garment. They haue officers for their common prouision. They haue no one certaine Citie, but in each, many of them haue their houses: to strangers of their owne Sect, they communicate their goods and acquaintance; and therefore carry nothing with them in their iourneyes, but weapons for feare of theeues: and in euery Citie haue of the same Colledge an especiall Officer which prouideth for strangers. The children vnder tuition of Masters are alike prouided for; nor doe they change their rayment till the old be worne; They neither buy nor sell, but mutually communicate. Deuout they are in the seruice of God. For, before the Sunne riseth, they speake of no prophane or worldly matter, but celebrate certaine Prayers, as [i] praying him to rise. Then by their Officers are each appointed to their workes, till the fifth houre, at which time they assemble together, and, being girded with linnen garments, wash themselues with cold water. Then doe they goe into their dining-roome, as into a Temple, where no man of another Sect may be admitted; and there staying with silence, the Pantler sets them bread in order, and the Cooke one vessell of broth. The Priest giueth thankes, as after dinner also. Then laying aside those their holy garments, they plie their worke till the Euening; and then suppe in like manner. There is neuer crying or tumult, they speake in order, and obserue euen without the house a venerable silence. In other things they are subiect to their ouerseer, but at their owne choice may helpe and shew mercy to others. To their kindred they cannot giue without licence. What they say, is certaine: but an Oath they hate no lesse then periurie. They studie the writings of the Ancient, thence collecting such things as may benefite the manners of the minde, or health of the bodie. They which are studious of their Sect, must a yeeres space endure tryall, and then after that probation of their continencie, must bee probationers yet two yeeres longer, and then vpon allowance of their manners, are assumed into their fellowship; making first deepe protestation of Religion towards God, and iustice towards men, to keepe faith to all, but especially to Princes, and if they shall come to rule ouer others, not to abuse their power, not to exceede others in habit, not to steale, not to keepe any thing secret from them of their owne Sect, or communicate it to another, although vpon perill of life: not to deuise new doctrines: to keepe the bookes of their owne opinions, and the names of the Angels. Offenders they put from their fellowship; and hee which is thus excommunicate, may not receiue foode offered of any other, but, eating grasse and hearbs, is consumed with famine, except they in compassion receiue him againe, in extremitie. They giue no sentence of iudgement, being fewer then an hundred. If ten sit together, one speakes not without consent of the rest. They may not spit in the midst or on the right hand. They will not so much as purge Nature on the Sabbath [k], and on other daies do it very closely, for offending the Diuine light, and couer it with an instrument in the Earth, and that in the most secret places; and are washed after.

They are of foure rankes, according to the time of their profession, and the yonger sort of these are so farre inferiour to the rest, that if one of these do touch them, hee washeth himselfe, as if he had touched a stranger. They liue long: feare not death: nor by any tortures of the Romans, could be compelled to transgresse their lawes; but derided their tormentors rather: beleeuing to receiue their soules againe presently, holding the bodies to be corruptible, and the prisons of the immortall soules: which if they haue beene good, haue a pleasant place assigned them beyond the Ocean, but the euill to be in tempestuous stormie places of punishments. Some of these *Essens* also foretell things to come. And another sort is of them which allow of marriage, but make a three yeeres tryall first of the woman; and if by a constant purgation they appeare fit for child-bearing, they wed them, not for pleasure but procreation: and therefore after conception, do not accompanie with them. These women when they wash, haue their sacred linnen garments also, as the men. Thus far *Iosephus*: who in his [l] *Antiq.* addeth to these, their opinions of Gods prouidence ruling all things; and that they thinke their Ceremonies more holy then those of the Temple, and therefore send thither their gifts, but do not there sacrifice, but by themselues, following the same course of life, which the *Pissi* [m] do amongst the *Dacians*.

Some of these *Essees* liued solitarie, like to Hermites, as is said before. Happily that *Bannus* was of this sort, to whom *Iosephus* [n] resorted for imitation. He liued in the wildernesse, clothing

h *Ioseph de Bell. Iud. lib. 2. cap. 7.*

i The *Essees* were worshippers of the Sunne, hence came the *Hieryoyoai*, and *Samysei*.

k They go not to stoole on the Sabbath, because of that instrument which they could not vse to dig and couer their excrement, without Sabbath breaking. *Scaliger.*

l *Ios. Antiq. lib. 18. cap. 2.*

m *Scaliger* readeth not *Pissi*, but *Polissi*, called also *Cissi*, *Scythian Nomades.*

n *In vita Iosep.*

thing and feeding himselfe with such things, as the trees and plants of their owne accord yeelded him, and with often cold washings in the night and day, cooling the heate of lust; with him *Iosephus* abode three yeeres.

§. VI.

Of the Scribes.

THE *Gaulonites* or *Galilaans*, [a] had their [b] beginning of *Iudas* (elsewhere hee calleth him *Simon*) a Galilæan, whose doctrine was, That, *Only* GOD *was to be accounted their Lord and Prince*: In other things they agreed with the Pharises: but for their libertie they would rather endure any the most exquisite tortures, together with their kindred and friends, then call any mortall man their Lord. *Theudas* happily mentioned, *Act.* 5. and that Egyptian, *Act.* 21. were of this rebellious and traytrous Sect, and those *Sicary* which wore short weapons vnder their garments, therewith murthering men in assemblies. That Egyptian, [c] *Iosephus* cals a false Prophet, who vnder pretence of Religion, and name of a Prophet, assembled almost thirtie thousand men to Mount Oliuet, hee was defeated by *Fœlix* the Gouernour. Such were their *Zelotæ* in the siege of Ierusalem, vnder the mantle of Religion, all of them harbouring and cloaking Treason and villanie.

The Scribes [d] are not a Sect, but a function: of which were two sorts, γραμματεῖς τῆ νόμω. and γραμματεῖς τῦ λαῦ, the one expounders of the Law, the other publike Notaries, or Actuaries, Recorders, Secretarie. *Epiphanius* maketh difference betwixt the Scribes that were νομοδιδάσκαλοι, Teachers of the Law, and the ῥήτορες, or Lawyers, which prescribed formes of Law, Law-cases, and taught Ciuill actions. But these are often taken one for the other. *Ezra* is called a Scribe, whose Pulpit is mentioned, *Nehem.* 8. and *Moses* Chaire was the Seate of the Scribes, that is, they taught the Law of *Moses*, which they vsed to do sitting: as Christ also did, *Math.* 5. 2. Their expositions, *Epiphanius* [f] saith, were of foure sorts, one in the name of *Moses*; the second in the name of their Rabbine *Akiba* (he is said to haue liued a hundred and twentie yeeres, and to be standard-bearer to *Barchocba*) the third in Andan or Annan; the fourth after the *Assamonæi*. But little is to bee said of these Scribes, more then what is before said of the Pharises, this being not a differing Sect, but an Office or Ministerie, wherof the Pharises also were capable, and are for false teaching blamed by our Sauiour, together with the Scribes.

The Scribes are said in their expositions [g] to haue beene more textuall, the Phatises more in their Glosses and Traditions: The Scribes had chiefe reputation for learning, the Pharises for holinesse, taking more paines (saith our English *Iosephus*) to goe to hell. The Scribes professed both disputation and obseruation of many things, saith *Arias Montanus*, [h] but not so exact as the Phatises. For the Pharises, though not so learned as the other, thought themselues more holy then them, because they obserued not onely those things, which in the common opinion were thought meete, but those things which were least, which the people obserued not, which others had added. This they were ambitious of, as of some great perfection, for there was a threefold state of men. *The Doctors, Pharises, and people of the Land.* The Prouerbe was, *The people of the Land, are the foote-stoole of the Pharises.* And this, [i] *The people of the Land is not holy*: and *they discerne not the Law nor wisedome*: yea, saith the booke *Musar*, hee shall not take the daughter of the people of the Land, because they are abomination, and their wiues ate abomination; and of their daughters it is said, Cursed be hee that lyeth with a beast. Thus did these proud Doctors and Pharises tread the way to the Popish Clergie, in contemning the Laytie, as vnworthie of the Law and Scripture, which in an vnknowne tongue was sealed from them, and feasted them at high Feasts with an halfe Sacrament, and in their ordinarie priuate Masse, with none at all. Were not these faire reasons? [k] *The Laytie might* (if they had a whole Communion) *touch the Cup, and some of them haue beards, and some haue the palsie, and their dignities inferior to the Priestly, &c.* The Booke *Aboth* sheweth how the people of the Lord required this supercilious generation, talking of them, and scoffing at them for their obseruations. When I was of the people of the Land, *R. Aquiba* there saith, I said, Who will giue me a Disciple of the wise? I would bite him as an Asse; for that insolence, and because they would not suffer themselues to be touched of them. The people were tyed to obserue the precepts mentioned, or by necessitie of consequence drawne out of the Bible. The Pharises (as is said) added their Traditions. The Scribes manner [l] of teaching was colde and weake, consisting in certaine arguments, which rather afflicted then affected the mindes of the hearers; in certaine niceties

a *Galilæans.*
b *Iosph. de Antiq. lib.* 18. *cap.* 2. *de Bello Iud. lib.* 2. *cap.* 7.
c *Iosph. de Bell. lib.* 2. *cap.* 21.
d *Scribes.*
e *Rainolds and Hart.*
f *Epiph. hær.* 15.
g *D. Hall Phariss. & Christian.*
h *Ar. Mont. in Euang. Mat.* 23.
i *Vid. Drusi. pract. in Io.* 7. 49.
k *Gersom. 12. de comunion. sub vtroque spec.*
l *Ar. Mont. in Matt.* 1. 22.

ties, and scrupulous questions, and sometimes inextricable. And therefore the people heard Christ, *as speaking with authoritie, and not as the Scribes*. But to let passe these *Schoole-men*, and those *Canonists*, let vs come to their other Sects and sorts of professions.

§. VII.

Of many other Iewish Sects and Heresies.

THe *Hemerobaptists* [a] are numbred by *Epiphanius* [b] among the Iewish heresies, which, saith hee, in other things differ not from the Scribes and Pharisies; but in their doctrine of *the resurrection, and in infidelitie*, are like to the Sadduces: And euerie day in all times of the yeere, they are baptized or washed, whence they haue their name. But this custome of daily washing, saith *Scaliger* [c] was common to all the antient Iewes, which would seeme better then their fellowes, and not only obserued of the Pharisees Essees, and Hemerobaptists (if such a Sect may be added.) At this time in Palestina, many doe it, not once, but often in the day. The Mahumetans obserue it. The Iewes (as a [d] Iew hath written) were so zealous herein, that they would not eate him that did eate with vnwashed hands: and one of their holy men being inuited by such an host, rose vp and went his way, alleaging to him, when he would haue recalled him, that he must not eate *the bread of him which had an euill eye*: and besides his meate was vncleane. The Priests, when they kept their courses in the Temple, abstained from Wine, and ate not of the Tithes before they had washed their whole body. The Pharisees and Essees composed themselues to this sanctitie: the greater part of the Pharisees, and all the Essees abstained from Wine, and both vsed daily washings, especially before they ate. And as many Heretikes professing themselues Christians, retained many things of Iudaisme; so these Hemerobaptists learned them this daily washing. It seemeth by him, that these were Christian rather then Iewish Heretikes.

And so were the *Nazaræans* [e] also, which some reckon among the Iewish Sects, who embraced the Gospell of Christ, but would not relinquish their Iudaisme; vnlesse wee say with *Hierome*, that whiles they would be both Iewes and Christians, they were neither Iewes nor Christians. These Nazaræans, or Nazoræans, *Scaliger* affirmeth, were meere *Karraim* Scripture Iewes, but because of their obstinacie in the Law, the first Councell of the Apostles determined against them. As for the Nazarites of the old Testament, *Moses* describeth them and their obseruations, not to cut their haire, not to drinke wine, strong drinke, &c. Such was *Sampson*: But these could be no Sect, holding in euery thing the same doctrine with the Iewes, and onely, for a time, were bound by vow to these Rites. But for those Nazaræans, *Epiphanius* [f] maketh them a Iewish Sect, not without cause, if such were their opinions, as he describeth them. Their dwelling was beyond Iordan, in Gilead and Bashan, as the same goeth (saith he) by Nation Iewes: and by observing many things like to the Iewes. Herein they differed: They did not eate any thing which had life, they offered not sacrifice: for they counted it vnlawful to Sacrifice, or to eate flesh. They disallowed the fiue books of *Moses*: they indeed confessed *Moses*, and the Fathers by him mentioned, and that he had receiued the Law, not this yet, which is written, but another. [g] *Philastrius* saith, they accepted the Law and Prophets, but placed all righteousnesse in carnall obseruation: and nourishing the haire of their heads, placed therein all their vertue, professing to imitate *Sampson*, who was called a Nazarite: from whom the Pagans afterwards named their valiant men *Hercules*.

Next to these doth [h] *Epiphanius* place the *Ossens* [i], dwelling in Itureæ, Moab, and beyond the Salt or Dead Sea: to these one *Elxeai* in the time of *Traian* ioyned himselfe: hee had a brother named *Iexai*. *Scaliger* (here and euery where acute) saith, [k] that the *Essens* and *Ossens* are the same name, as being written with the selfe-same Hebrew Letters, differing onely in pronunciation, as the *Abyssynes* pronounce *Osrael*, *Chrostos*, for *Israel*, *Christus*. And the Arabian *Elxai*, and his brother *Iexai*, were not proper names, but the appellation of the Sect it selfe, as hee proueth. But they agreed not so well in profession, as in name, with the *Essens*, for they were but an issue of those ancient *Essens*, holding some things of theirs, others of their owne: as concerning the *Worship of Angels*, reproued by the Apostles, *Colos.* 2. 21. In which the *Essens* and *Ossens* agreed, and other things there mentioned, *Touch not, taste not, handle not*: and in worshipping of the Sunne, whereof they were called Sampsæans, or *Sunners*, *Sun-men*, as *Epiphanius* interpreteth that name. Those things wherein they differed, were brought in by that Innouator, who (of this his Sect) was called *Elxai*.

a *Hemerobaptists.*
b *Epiph. her.* 17.
c *Scal. Elench. cap.* 31.
d *Mahabem. apud Drusi. pract. l.* 1.
e *Nazaræans.*
f *Epiph. her.* 18.
g *Phil. Brix. de Heres.*
h *Heres.* 19.
i *Ossens.*
k *Scal. Elench. cap.* 27.

He was, saith *Epiphanius*, a Iew, he ordained *Salt*, and *Water*, and *Earth*, and *Bread*, and *Heauen*, and the *Skie*, and the *Winde*, to be sworne by in Diuine worship. And sometimes he prescribed other seuen witnesses; *Heauen*, and *Water*, and *Spirits*, and the *holy Angels of Prayer* and *Oyle*, and *Salt*, and *Earth*. He hated continencie, and enioyned marriage of necessitie. Many imaginations he hath, as receiued by reuelation. He teacheth Hypocrisie, as in time of persecution to worship Idols; so as they keepe their Conscience free: And if they confesse any thing with their mouth, but not in their heart. Thus ancient is that Changeling *Æquinoccion*. He bringeth his Author, one *Phineas* of the stock of the ancienter *Phineas*, the sonne of *Eleazar*, who had worshipped *Diana* in Babylon, to saue his life. His followers esteeme him a *secret vertue* or power. Vntill the time of *Constantine*, *Marthus* and *Marthana* (two women of his stocke) remained in succession of his honour, and were worshipped in that Countrey for gods, because they were of his seede. *Marthus* died a while since, but *Marthana* still liueth: Their spittle, and other excrements of their body, those Heretikes esteemed, and reserued for Reliques, to the cure of diseases, which yet preuayled nothing. He mentioneth Christ, but it is vncertaine whether he meaneth the Lord Iesus. Hee forbids praying to the East-ward, and bids turne towards Ierusalem from all parts. He detesteth Sacrifices, as neuer offered by the Fathers: He denieth the eating of flesh among the Iewes, and the Altar, and Fire, as contrarie to God, but water is sitting. He describeth Christ after his mesure, foure and twentie Schœm in length, that is, foure-score and sixteene miles; and the fourth part thereof in breadth, to wit, six Schœni, or foure and twentie miles; besides the thicknesse, and other fables. He acknowledgeth a holy Ghost, but of the female sexe, like to Christ, standing like a statue aboue the Clouds, and in the midst of two mountains. He bids none should seeke the interpretation, but only say these things in prayer: (words which he had taken out of the Hebrew tongue, as in part we haue found.) His prayer is this, [l] *Abar anid moich wochiel daasim aes daasim machile moib anid abar selam.* Thus *Epiphanius* relates it, and thus construes, I cannot say expounded (although they like our deuout Catholiques, needed no exposition.) *Let the humilitie passe from my Fathers, of their condemnation, and consolation, and labour: the consolation in condemnation by my Fathers, from the humility passed in the Apostlesship of perfection.* Thus was *Elxai* with his followers opinionate: otherwise Iewish. *Epiphanius* speakes of his Sect else where often, as when he mentioneth the Ebonites, [m] and the Sampsæans: This booke both the Ossees and Nazoræans, and Ebionites vsed.

The Sampsæans [n] had another booke (they said) of his brothers. They acknowledge one God, and worship him, vsing certaine washings. Some of them abstaine from liuing creatures, and they will die for *Elxai* his posteritie; which they had in such honour, that if they went abroad, the people would gather vp the dust of their feete for cures, and their spittle, and vsed them for amulets and preseruatiues. They admit neither the Apostles nor Prophets: they worship water, esteeming it as a god, beleeuing that life is from thence.

Scaliger also affirmeth, that the [o] Massalians (which word *Epiphanius* interpreth *ὀρξευτοι*, *Such as pray*, according to the opinion and practice of those Heretikes) were [*] first a Iewish Sect, and a slip of the Essees, and after by marriage with some false Christians, made such a gally-mausry, as after when we come to speake of the *Pseudochristian* sects shall (God willing) be related: for of Iewish they became Christian Heretikes.

The [p] *Herodians* [q] otherwise agreeing with the rest, thought *Herod* to be the Messias, moued by *Iacobs* Prophecy falsely interpreted, *that the Scepter should not depart from Iuda til Shilo came.* When as therfore they saw *Herod* a stranger to possesse the Kingdom, they in-terpreted as aforesaid. Some make question whether this was the name of a sect, or of *Herods* souldiers. *Drusf.* [r] obserueth out of a Cõmenter vpon *Persius, Sat. 5. Herodis venere, &c.* These words; *Herod raigned among the Iews in the parts of Syria, in the daies of Augustus. The Herodians therfore obserue the birth-day of Herod, as also the Sabbaths: in the which day they set Lamps burning, and crowned with Violets in the windows.* Elsewhere he citeth out of a Lexicon of the Hebrew Law, that they were called *Herodians* of *Herods* name, and Dorsians of the place whence they were brought; for by Nation they were Greekes: so saith the Author of *Baal, Aruch, Herod* the King brought Greekes out of the desart, and brought them vp in the habitable land. *Scaliger* saith that they were a corporation or guilde, *instar earum societatum, quæ vulgo confraternæ vocantur*, and besides their Heretical opinion that he was the Messias, entred into societie for costs and charges in common, to be bestowed on sacrifices and other solemnities, wherewith they honoured *Herod* aliue and dead. *Arias Montanus* [s] thinketh that the Herodians were politicians, that little respected Religion. They thought the Common-wealth should be established, and that could not stand without Princes, nor could Princes nourish themselues or theirs without money, and therefore propounded that question to our Sauior touching *Cæsars* tribute. Others thinke they made hotchpotch of Iudaisme and Gentilisme, as *Herod* had done: in which it is like his successors succeeded him. This coniecture is mentioned

l *Scaliger* thinketh they are three sentences, and not a Prayer.

m *Epiph. her. 53.*

n *Sampsæans.*

o *Massalians.*

* *Scal. ele. c. 28.*

p *Herodians.*

q *Epiph. her. 20*

r *Drus. de 3. sec. 1. lib. cap. 3.*

Scal. ad Euseb. pag. 150.

s *Ar. Mont. in Evang. Matth. 22. 6.*

ned by [e] *Beza*, who yet rather thinketh that the Herodians were *Herods* courtiers, moued thereto by the Syrian translation, which hath *debeth Hiraudis*, *Herods* domesticals. Thus thinketh [u] *Iunius* of them also, who saith that when the Pharises could not intrap him in the Law, they sent their disciples to question him of Tribute, hauing before agreed (which vsually they did not) with the Herodians to stand by (vnknowne) as witnesses, if he had answered any thing whereat *Cesar* might haue beene offended. And this seemeth most likely: for after *Herods* death, how could they hold him for Messias?

Another Sect among these of the Circumcision, [x] *Eusebius* out of *Hegesippus* nameth the [y] *Masbothei* or *Masbotheani*; for *Theobulis* (saith *Hegesippus*) was of their number, which arose out of seuen sects in the Iewish people; which Sects had their beginning *Symon*, of whom the Symonians; and *Cleobius*, of whom the Cleobians, *Dositheus*, of whom the Dositheans; and *Gortheus*, of whom the Gortheans, and *Masbotheus*, of whom the Masbotheans. And from the same fountaines issued the Menandrians, Marcionists, Carpocratians, Valentinians, Basilidians, and Saturnilians. And a little after, *There were diuers Sects amongst the Israelites, Essees, Galileans, Hemerobaptists, Masbotheans, Samaritans, Sadducees, Pharisees.*

The word *Masbothei*, [z] *Scaliger* saith, signifieth *Sabbatists* or *Sabbatarians*, because they professed to haue learned the obseruation of the Sabbath from Christ, and therein differed from the other Iewes.

He there nameth (and little else haue we but their names, *euen the name also of the wicked shall rot*) diuers other Sects, if they may beare that name: as the Genites [a] or Genists, which stood vpon their stock and kindred: the reason *Breidenbachius* alledgeth, because in the Babylonish captiuitie or after, they married not strange wiues, and therefore boast themselues of the purisie of *Abrahams* seede. The [b] Merissæans or Merists, which were (as the name importeth) sprinklers of their holy-water, *Breidenbach* saith, they made a *diuision* of the Scriptures, and receiued only some *part* of them: The Morboneï, he addeth, Sabbatise in euery thing. The [c] Helienians, of *Hellenius*, [d] The Cleobians and [e] Theobulians we can but mention. Of the [f] Tubiens as little, saue that they are said to be a Colledge or fellowship: and lesse of [g] *Ganei*, and such like, if there be any other names that remayne as the rotten bones of the consumed carkasses of heresies and Heretikes; and either are vnknowne, or degenerated into some or other sect of *Pseudo-christians*, which require another taske.

The [h] *Cœlicole* were Iewes, [i] but corruptly embracing Christianity, for they were Massalians, which had their houses or places of Prayer abroad in the open ayre, of whom *Isuenal* is vnderstood, *Nil præter nubes & cœli numen adorant. So Scaliger* Readeth, not *numen*: and *Petronius, Indaus licet & porcinum nomen adoret, Et cœli summas adoret auriculas.* These also were an off-spring of the Essees: and from these proceeded the Massalians: they being baptized, reuolted to their former Iudaisme, and bearing the name of Christians, retayned the rites of those *Cœlicole* or Heauen-worshippers.

The [k] *Cannei* were a deuout society and order, giuen to holinesse of life, and obseruation of the Law; of whom was *Simon Kannanis*, *Mat.* 10. called *Zeloies*, the interpretation of the former, as [l] *Beza* and [m] *Scaliger* shew. *Suidas* calleth them obseruants of the Law, whom *Ananus* shut in the Temple. Their *Sphwbol*, or [n] Mourners were such as lamented with continuall fasting, praying, and weeping, the destruction of their Citie, * Temple and Nation; as else-where is said, I might adde out of that ancient father *Philastrius* (whom S. *Augustine* saith he had seene at Millan with S. *Ambrose*) diuers other heresies amongst the people of the Iewes before the incarnation of Christ, no fewer then eight and twentie; of which we haue already mentioned the most and principall. Hee addeth the Ophitæ or Serpentines, which worship a Serpent, saying, that he first procured vs the knowledge of good and euill; for which God [o] enuied him, and cast him from the first heauen into the second, whence they expect his comming, esteeming him some vertue of God, and to be worshipped. Another sort are the Caiani, which commend *Cain* for fratricide, saying, that *Cain* was made of the power of the Deuill, *Abel* of another power, but the greatest power preuailed in *Caine* to slay *Abel*. A third sort reckoned by *Philastrius* are the Sethiani, worshippers of *Seth* the sonne of *Adam*, who affirme, that two men being created in the beginning, and the Angells dissenting, the fæminine power preuailed in [o] heauen (for with them are males and females gods and goddesses) *Eue* perceiuing that, brought forth *Seth*, and placed in him a Spirit of great power, that the aduersaries powers might be destroyed. Of *Seth* they say, that Christ should come of his stock, yea some of them conceiue him to be the very Christ. The Heliognosti, called also Deuictaci, worshipped the Sunne, which (said they) knew all the things of God, and yeelded all necessaries to men. Others there were which worshipped Frogges, thereby thinking to appease Diuine Wrath, which in *Pharaohs* time brought Frogges vpon the Land of Ægypt. He reckoneth the Accaronites which worshipped

x *Euseb. hist. Eccles. l. 4. c. 22.*
y *Masbothei.*
z *Scalig. Elenc. cap. 9.*
a *Genites.*
b *Merissæans.*
c *Helleniani.*
d *Cleobiani.*
e *Theobuliani.*
f *Tubiens.*
g *Ganei.*
h *Calicolæ.*
i *Scal. Elench. tribæ. Serac. cap. 31.*
k *Cannei.*
l *Beza Annot. in Matth. 10.*
m *Scal. El. c. 7.*
n Mourners.
* *See cap. 10.*
Philast. Episc. Brixiens. lib. de heresib.
Ophita.
Caiani.
Sethiani.
o Here our Author is obscured.
Heliognostice.
Deuictaci.
Frog worshippers.

a Flie; of which elsewhere is spoken: as also the Thamuzites, of Thamuz, which he saith was the sonne of a Heathen King, whose Image the Iewish woman worshipped with teares and continuall sacrifices; and that *Pharao* which ruled Ægypt in *Moses* time was of that name. *Assar* also and *Assaros*, he saith, were Kings of Syria and Ægypt, worshipped after their deaths. But (perhaps more truely) we haue expressed these things in our former booke. *Benjamin Tudelensis* speaketh of a sect in his time, which he calleth Cyprians and Epicures, who prophaned the euening before the Sabbath, and obserued the euening of the first day. I might adde to their sects the diuers Christs or Messiases, which in diuers ages they had but that I haue referred to the tenth Chapter.

10:

CHAP. IX.

Of the Samaritans.

IT remaineth to speake of the Samaritan Sects. Samaria was the Citie royall of the ten Tribes, after that *Omri* (who, as other his predecessors, had raigned before at Ticzah) had bought the Mountaine Shomron [a] of one *Shemer*, for two talents of siluer, and built thereon this Citie, which he called after the name *Shemer*, Lord of the Mountaine. In vaine therefore is it to seeke 20 the name of the Samaritans from the signification of the [b] word (which is keeping) seeing they are so called of the place, and the place of this their ancient Lord. It remayned the chiefe seate of the kingdome, as long as the same endured, and namely, till the dayes of *Hoshea* their last King, in whose time [c] *Salmanasar* the Assyrian carried the Israelites thence *Esarhaddon*, the son of *Senacherib*, otherwise called *Osnappar* (thus saith [d] *Hezra*: and therefore *Epiphanius* was deceiued in ascribing this act to *Nabuchodonosor* in the time of the captiuitie, sortie yeeres before the returne) sent to inhabite that Region, Colonies from Babel, and from Cuthan, and from Aua, and from Hannah, and from Sepharuaim. Babel is knowne: Cutha and Aua [e] are esteemed parts of the desart of Arabia, the other of Syria and Mesopotamia. It seemeth that most of them were of Cutha, because all of them 30 after passed into that name, and were of the Iewes called Cuthæi, as witnesseth [f] *Iosephus*. [*] *Elias Leuita* gloseth the same reason; and addeth, that a Iew might not say Amen to a Samaritans or Curhans blessing. The Cuthi, saith he, were the subtlest beggers of all men in the world, and from them, as he thinke-th, came those cosining Roging Gipsies or Egyptians, which so many ages haue troubled so many countries of Europe.

These Heathens serued not the Lord, and therefore the Lord sent Lyons among them, which slew them; wherefore they sent to the King of Assyria, who sent thither one of the captiued Priests of Israel, to teach them how to worship GOD (*Epiphanius* calleth his name [g] *Esdras*.) He dwelt at Bethel; and as some conceiue, taught rather that Idolatrous worship, where of Bethel had beene before the Beth-auen, where *Ieroboam* had placed his 40 golden Calfe, then the true worship of the *True Iehouah*. Howsoeuer, euery Nation (saith the Text) *made them gods, and put them in the houses of the high places, which the Samaritans had made. The men of Babel made Succoth Benoth; and the men of Cutha made Nergal; and the men of Hamath, Ashima; and the Auims, Nibhaz, and Tartak; and the Sepharuaims burnt their children in the fire to Adrammelech, and Anammelech their gods. Thus they feared the Lord, and serued their gods after the manner of the Nations*, and so continued: A mungrell Religion, begotten of a bastard or hæreticall Iudaisme, and wilde Paganisme. What those gods were it is vncertaine, and interpreters agree not. Of *Succoth Benoth*, is [h] already spoken. *Wolphius* interpreteth [i] *Nergal* a wilde Hen, *Ashima* a Goate, *Nibhaz* a Dogge, *Tartak* an Asse, *Adrammelech* a Mule, *Anamelech* a Horse: Thus (saith he) the Hebrewes expound them; and hee 50 supposeth these creatures were among them canonized and sacred: as the Persians are said to worship a Cock, the Proembari of Africa a Dog: other people other creatures. Some are of opinion that *Nergal* was that continuall fire which these Cuthæans after the Persian manner kept in their Pyræthi (places inclosed for that purpose) as in our Persian relations shal follow; and *Kimchi* saith that Adramelech had the forme of a Peacock. Anamelech of a Pheasant. But neither are the trifling RR. too far to be trusted, nor haue we any other good testimonie. Thus their Religion continued till after the returne of the Iewes from captiuitie, to whom they would haue beene officious helpers in building of the Temple: which being refused they became their enemies, and hindred a building the long time. But the Temple being built, and Religion established among the Iewes, and their state flourishing, [k] *Sanballat* 60 *Darius* the last Persian Monarch. This *Nehemiah* mentioneth, but deigneth not to name him,

a 1. Reg. 16.24.

b *Rejph. heb. 9. Chpir. Onomast.*

c 2. Reg. 17.

d Ezr. 4. 2. 10.

e *Tremel. annot. in Reg. 12.7.*

f *Iosephus* thinketh *Cutha* to be Persian.

f *Iosepb. Antiq. l. 9. c. 14. & l. 11. 4.*

* *Elias Thisbitad. Cuth.*

g The Hebrewes call him *Dathai* as *Drusius* citeth. *Senacherib* sent to Samaria *Rabsaris*, the son of *Iaanu*, to teach them the Law, *Drus. l. 13. de sec. c. 4.* *Tertullian* cals him *Dastitcus*, and so doth *Ierome*, fathering the Samaritan Sect on him.

h *L. 1. c. 13.*

i *Wolph. in 2. Reg. 17.*

* *Seld. de d. Syri.*

Ezr. 4.

k *Ios. Antiq. 11. 7.*

him, affirming that he chased him from him, of which some [l] descant whether it were by exile or excommunication, or some other punishment. *R. Salomo* interpreteth it of exile, *Peccan* of excommunication.

Drusius [m] hath a discourse out of a Iewish Author, which relateth the forme of that first Anathema and iudiciall curse (not vnmeete here to be mentioned) denounced against the Samaritans for hindring the worke of the Temple. *Zorobabel* and *Iosua* (saith hee) gathered all the Congregation into the Temple of the Lord, and brought three hundred Priests, and three hundred Trumpets, and three hundred Bookes of the Law, and as many children, and sounded: And the Leuites singing and playing on instruments, cursed with all kindes of Anathema's the Chutheans, in the secret of the name *Tetragrammaton*, and in writing written vpon Tables; and with the Anathema of the house of the higher iudgement, and the Anathema of the house of the lower iudgement, that none of Israel should eate the bread of the Cuthean (whereupon it is said, *He which eateth a Samaritans bread, be as he that eateth Swines flesh*) and that a Cuthean should not bee a Proselyte in Israel, nor should haue part in the Resurrection of the dead. Thus they writ, and sealed, and sent vnto all Israel which were in Babylonia, which heaped vpon them Anathema vpon Anathema. That, concerning their becomming Proselytes, *Drusius* doubteth whether it may not bee translated, that *a stranger Cuthean should not abide in Israel:* which is more likely. The other had beene more impious: their zeale to make Proselytes of all Nations is knowne.

To returne to *Manasses*, *Iosephus* saith, that the high Priests and the Elders put him from the Altar, who therefore went to *Sanballat* his Father in law, and told him that he loued his daughter well, but would not for her lose his Priest-hood. *Sanballat* replied, that if he would retaine his daughter, he would not onely maintayne him in his Priest-hood, but procure him a high-Priests place, and make him Prince of all his Prouince; and would build a Temple like to that of Ierusalem in mount Garizim, which looketh ouer Samaria, higher then the other Hills, and that with the consent of *K. Darius*. Hereupon *Manasses* abode with him, and many Priests and Israelites being intangled with like marriages, reuolted to him, and were maintayned by *Sanballat*. But now *Alexander* preuailing against *Darius*, *Sanballat* (whose *Religion* was *Policie*) rebelled, and tooke part with *Alexander*, and in reward thereof obtayned leaue to build his Temple, whereof *Manasses* enioyed to him and his successors the Pontificall dignitie. Then was the Circumcision diuided *some* (as said the Samaritan woman) [n] *worshipping in this Mountaine*, others at Ierusalem. The zeale which the Samaritans had to their Temple, appeared [o] in the time of *Ptolomaus Philometor*, when at *Alexandria*, *Sabbaus* and *Theodosius*, with their Samaritans, contended with *Andronicus* and the Iewes, these challenging to Ierusalem, those to Garizim, the lawful honor of a Temple, both parties swearing by God and the King, to bring proofe of their assertion out of the law; and beseeching the King to do him to death that should not make his part good; and thereupon the Samaritans failing in proofe, were adiudged to punishment.

The Samaritans in the prosperitie of the Iewes professed themselues their kinsmen and allies: in aduersitie disclaymed them, and their God also, as appeareth in their Epistle to *Antiochus*, that figure of Antichrist, and persecutor of the Iewish Religion, in which they call themselues Sidonians dwelling in Sichem, and say, that moued by ancient superstition, they had embraced the Feast of the Sabbath, and building a Temple of a nameless Deity, had offered therein solemne Sacrifices: whereas therefore their originall was *Sidonian*, and not Iewish; pleased him to enact that their Temple might beare name of *Iupiter Graecicus*, and they might liue after the Greekish Rites. These things *Antiochus* easily granted. This Sichem is called Sichar, *Io. 4. 5.* It was after that called Neapolis, and lastly (of the Colonie which *Vespasian* or *Domitian* placed there) *Flauia Cesarea*. Of that Colonie was (it is *Scaliger's* testimony, *Animad. Euseb. pag. 201.*) *Iustin Martyr, omnium Scriptorum Ecclesiasticorum qui hodie extant, vetustissimus*; which occasioned *Epphanius* his error, that of a Samaritan he became a Christian; whereas he was neuer a Samaritan in Religion, but only of this Samaritan Colonie. In this were in the age of *Beniamin* * one hundred Samaritans: the words of *Beniamin* are worthy the inserting. I came, saith he, to Samaria, in which the Palace of *Ahab* is yet to be knowne: a place very delectable, with Springs, Riuers, Gardens, &c. and hath not one Iew inhabiting. Two leagues from hence is Nables, sometime called Sichem, in mount Ephraim, where are no Iews. The Citie is situate between the hills of Garizim and Hebal; there are about a hundred Cuthizans, which obserue only the law of *Moses*. They are called Samaritans: they haue Priests of the posterity of *Aaron* which resteth in peace, who marry not with any other but the men or women of their owne stock; and are there commonly called Aaronites; they sacrifice and burne their offerings in a Synagogue which they call Mount Garizim, citing out of the law, *Thou shalt giue a blessing vpon the Mount Gerizim*: this, say they, is the house of the Sanctuarie, and on the Paschall and other solemnities, they Sacrifice on an

l *Wolph. in Nehem.*

m *Drus. de 3. sec. l. 3. c. 2.*

n *Ioh. 4. 20.*

o *Ios. Antiq. li. 13. c. 6.*

p *Antiq. l. 12. c. 7.*

* *Itin. Beniam.*

Altar in Mount Garizim made of stones, taken by the Israelites out of Iordan. They boast themselues to be of the Tribe of *Ephraim*. With them is the Sepulchre of *Ioseph*. He addeth (which *Scaliger* saith, is a slender) that they want three Letters, *He*, *Cheth*, *Ain*: whereas they read the *Pentateuch* in so many and the same Letters, in which *Moses* wrote them; as *Postel* and *Scaliger* affirme, and those which the Iewes vse, are later counterfeits: the example whereof *Scaliger* hath giuen vs in their *Computation*, in the last Edition of his *Emendation*: yea, they are now also further from Idolatrie then the Iewes themselues, howsoeuer in their *Talmud* and elsewhere, they brand them with false and odious imputations. *Beniamin* also testifieth, that they abstaine from pollution by the dead, or bones, the slaine and the Sepulchres. And euery day when they goe into the Synagogue, they put off their vsuall clothes, and hauing washed their bodies with water, put on other clothes, sacred only to this purpose. *Beniamin* found of these Cuthæans two hundred in Cæsarea: at Benibera or new Ascalon three hundred, and at Damascus foure hundred.

Hircanus by force tooke both *Sichem* and *Garizim*. Two hundred yeeres after the foundation of this Temple, as testifieth *Iosephus*, q hapned this desolation thereof. The zeale yet continued as appeareth by many testimonies of Scripture. *The Iewes medled not with the Samaritanes*, which made r the woman wonder that Christ asked drinke of a Samaritan. Another time the Samaritans would not receiue him, because s *behaviour was as though he would goe to Ierusalem*, for which fact of theirs *the sonnes of thunder* would haue brought lightning from heauen vpon them. And the Iewish despite could not obiect worse in their most venemous slander, then, t *Thou art a Samaritan*. This Ierusalem-iourney through the Samaritans countrey caused bloudie warres and slaughter betwixt the Galileans u and them, in the time of *Cumanus*, to the destruction of many. And before that in the daies of *Pilate*, a cosining Prophet abused their zeale, bidding them to assemble in mount *Garizim*, x with promise there to shew them the sacred vessels, which, said he, *Moses* had there hidden. Whereupon they seditiously assembling, and besieging *Tirabatha*, *Pilate* came vpon them with his forces, and cut them in peeces.

q *Antiq. l. 13. cap. 17.*
r *Io. 4. 9.*
s *Luke 9. 52.*
t *Ioh. 8. 48.*
u *Ios. Antiq. l. 20. c. 5.*
x *Antiq. l. 18. c. 5*

Their opinions (besides those aforesaid) were, y that onely the fiue bookes of *Moses* were Canonicall Scripture, the rest they receiued not. They acknowledge not the Resurrection, nor the *Trinitie*: and in zeale of one GOD, abandon all Idolatries, which it seemeth was receiued of them after the building of the Temple, and mixture with the Apostate Iewes: the Scripture testifying otherwise of their former deuotions. They wash themselues with Vrine, when they come from any stranger, being (forsooth) polluted. And if they haue touched one of another Nation, they diue themselues garments and all, in water. Such a prophanation is the touch of one of another faith. They haue a dead corps in abomination presently.

y *Epiphan. haeres. 9.*

The Samaritan, z if he meeteth a Iew, Christian, or Mahumetan, he saith vnto them, *Touch me not*. *Scaliger* out of the Arabian Geographer, a telleth of an Iland still inhabited with these Samaritans, in the red Sea, which appeareth by their custome, when any comes on shore, forbidding to *touch them*. This arrogant superstition remaineth with them.

z *Drus. de 3. sect. l. 2.*
a *Scal. de Em. Tem. l. 7.*

The Samaritan Chronicle is cited by *Eusebius*, *Chron. graec. l. 1.* b *Scaliger* saith, hee had a copie of their great Chronicle, translated out of Hebrew into Arabian, but in Samaritan Letters: It differeth some what from the Hebrew account. The Iewes confound c the Samaritans and Sadducees, as if they were but one Sect. The difference hath appeared, for the Sadducees accept all the Bible; the Samaritans, *Moses* only. The Sadducees denyed the soules immortalitie and reward. The Samaritans in their Chronicle acknowledge both a place of reward and punishment after this life. But whether they beleeue the Resurrection or no, he doubteth. The Sadducees denie Spirits, Angels, Diuels; the Samaritans confesse them. The Samaritans also vse still those ancient Letters called Phœnician, which the Hebrewes vsed before the captiuitie, which whoso listeth to view, let him see their Characters, and *Scaligers* large notes thereon in his Annotations vpon *Eusebius* Chronicle, and a briefe of their Chronicle and Kalender therein written in his *Emendation*, as before is said; Which they beginne very Religiously after their manner. *In the name of* Iah *the* GOD *of Israel. There is none like to* Iah *our* GOD. *One* Iehoua, GOD *of* GODS, LORD *of* LORDS, *a great* GOD, *strong and terrible. There is none like to the* GOD Ieschurun, *the* GOD *of* ABRAHAM, ISAAC, IACOB, IOSEPH, *and our Lord* MOSES, ELEAZAR, *and* PHINEAS. *He confirme vnto you the blessing of our Lord* MOSES, IEHOVA, GOD *of our Fathers, adde vnto you, as many as yee are, a thousand times and bless you.* This inscription the great Synagogue of Garizim alwaies vse, when they write to other Samaritan Synagogues, the Kalender of the yeere following. They are very ignorant of Antiquities, and know none other but that they came thither with *Moses* out of Ægypt: neither can they tell any thing of the old Kings, or defection of the ten Tribes vnder *Ieroboam*. They lightly

b *Scal. Annot. in Eus. Chron. & in Isag. Can.*
See *Em. T. vlt. edit. pag. 616.*
c *Ios. Abo.* saith, they denied the Resurrection and immortalitie of the soule.

lightly touch the names of *Samson*, *Samuel*, *David*, and others, in their Chronicle, which they call the booke of *Iosue*. *Ptolemeus Lagi* conueyed Colonies of them into the Cities of Ægypt, the Reliques whereof are those Samaritans which haue a Synagogue in the great Citie Cairo: And those also in the Iland before mentioned. In respect of the Mount Garizim, the seate and Sanctuarie of their holies, the Samaritans call themselues *men which belong to the blessed Hill*: and still, euery yeere they in Ægypt receiue from the great Synode of Garizim, the type of the yeere following, two of which *Scaliger* had seene, and hath expressed one of them.

The Samaritans were diuided also into diuers sects, as *Epiphanius* [a] rehearseth: One whereof were called [d] *Dositheans*; if it be lawfull to reckon them Samaritans, which acknowledged (as *Epiphanius* acknowledgeth of them) the Resurrection of the dead. They abstaine from such things as haue life; some of them from marriage, after they haue beene before married, and some continue in Virginitie. They obserue circumcision and the Sabbath; and they touch no man, but hold euery man in abomination. Report goeth also of their fasting and exercises.

They had name of *Dositheus*: who being a Iew, and hauing well profited in their Law, but not receiuing promotion suitable to his ambition, reuolted to the Samaritans, and hatched this sect amongst them. And when afterwards in a singularitie he had gone aside into a Caue, and there mewed vp himselfe, and persisted in hypocrisie and fasting, he there died (as the fame goeth) through his wilfull want of bread and water. After a few daies, some reforting to him, found his dead body crawling with wormes, and compassed with flies. Of this name *Dositheus* there were diuers. [e] Two of them liued after the comming of Christ. One a Iew, sonne of *R. Iannai*, the other a Samaritan, which endeuoured to perswade his Countrimen, that he was the Christ which *Moses* had prophecied of, as [f] *Origen* reporteth, and faith: of him are the *Dositheans* named. Another is mentioned in [g] *Iohasin*, who liued in the time of Christ, the Disciple of *Sammai*. And before these was another *Dosthai*, the sonne also of *Iannai*, of whom it is said in [h] *Ilmedenu*, that *Senacherib* sent *R. Dosthai*, to Samaria, to teach the Samaritans the Law. This seemeth to be he, whom before out of *Epiphanius* wee haue called *Esdras*, the first founder of the Samaritan heresie. And so *Tertullian* [i] faith of him; *Dositheus* the Samaritan, was the first that reiected the Prophets, as not hauing spoken by the holy Ghost. The like testimonie *Hierome* giueth of him. His colleague and companion is said to be one *Sebua*, the supposed author of the *Sebueans*. In *Ilmedenu* [k] he is called *Sebaia*, or *Sebuia*. [l] *Dositheus* also taught, that how and in what position of body he was in the Sabbath morning, in the same he ought to continue all that day, without change of gesture or place: that if he did sit, he should sit in the same place all day long; and so of lying or other habit of body. The Author of this *Dositheans* Sect (properly so called) liued as *Scaliger* [m] thinketh, about or at the destruction of the Temple, and could not be that first *Dustai* or *Dosthai*.

The *Sebueans*, [n] you haue heard, in *Drusius* opinion, haue their name of *Sebuia*, the companion of *Dosthai*, sent by *Senacherib*, or rather by *Esarhaddon*; which if it be so, it seemeth this Sect is ancient, haply nothing differing from the other Samaritans. *Epiphanius* maketh a difference, [o] but the cause he alledgeth, was the Iewes refusall of their helpe at Ierusalem, which was common to all the Samaritans. The difference he alledgeth, is the transposing of their solemnities (for that quarrell betwixt them and the Iewes) from the Iewish times, so that they kept their Passe-ouer in *August* (which they made the beginning of their yeere) Pentecost in *Autumne*, and that of Tabernacles, when the Iewes kept their Passe-ouer: neither might they sacrifice in Garizim, obseruing such differing solemnities. [p] *Scaliger* (whom I shame not thus often to name, in relation of these things too intricate for mine owne, or for common wits to finde) both in his Treatise against *Serarius cap.* 1. and 21. and in his Canons *Isagog. lib.* 3. dissenteth from *Epiphanius*, saying, that they dissented not from the other Samaritans, but that the name was a common name, which the Iewes ascribed to the Samaritans. It signifieth ἐξωμολίτας, *Weekers*: Which name they gaue them, because that euerie weeke betweene the Passe-ouer and Pentecost, they obserued that day of the weeke, in which the computation of the fiftie daies beganne, with as great solemnitie as the feast of Pentecost it selfe. This day, from which the reckoning beganne, was called δευτέρα the second, because it was the next day after the Azyma or Feast day. But the Samaritans reckoned the second after the Sabbath, and so in all that space of fiftie dayes, kept the first day of the weeke, that is, Sunday, holy. Thus they kept seuen Pentecosts in a yeere. And perhaps (be but coniectureth) as they had these imaginarie Pentecosts, so they might another, the second day, and next to the feast of vnleauened bread, the Sabbaths, saith *Scaliger* in the same place, were called in order, the first δευτεροπρώτου σάββατον, the second Sab-

[a] *Epiph. haeres.* 33.
[d] *Dositheans.*
[e] *Drus. de 3. sect. l. 3. c. 6.*
[f] *Orig. cont. Celsi. l. 2.*
[g] *Iohasin. Ab. Zach.*
[h] *Lib. Ilmedenu.*
[i] *Tert. praescrip. haeres. cap. 1.*
[k] *Ap. Drus. pag. 260.*
[l] *Orig. de princip. 4. c. 2.*
[m] *Scal. Elench. Serarij tribar. cap. 15.*
[n] *Sebueans.*
[o] *Epiph. haer. 18.*
[p] *Scal. Canon. Isagog. l. 3. pag. 218. 219.*

Sabbath after that day, Δευτεροσαββατον, and so the rest: and thus hee expoundeth those words of *Luke cap.6. v.1. Secundo primum Sabbatum*, that is, the first Sabbath *after that Saturday, or first day of the festiue*, which beganne to be reckoned the next day after Easter till Pentecost. A place hitherto very obscure. *Epiphanius* doth number for Samaritan Sects; The *Essens*, p of which is before shewed that they were Iewes, and otherwise hereticall and Idolatrous in respect of their morning deuotions to the Sun, for which it seemeth they might not (certaine they did not) communicate with other Iewes in the Temple and Sacrifices. These pertaine not to this place; as not Samaritans. A fourth Samaritan Sect he accounteth the *Gortheni*, q which differed from the rest, at least from the *Sebuans*, in keeping their solemnities, Paschal, Pentecost, and of Tabernacles at the Iewish times, and obserued but one day holy: as likewise the fasting day. The Iewes still obserue the Sabbaticall yeere, and so do the Samaritans also, but not at the same time; for that which is the fourth of the seuen with the Iewes, is the Sabbaticall of the Samaritans.

p *Essenii.*

q *Gortheni*, or *Gortheneni. Scal. de E.T. l.5.*

CHAP. X.

The miserable destruction and dispersion of the Iewes, from the time of the desolation of their Citie and Temple to this day.

§. I.

Of the Destruction of the Iewes vnder TITVS.

a *Deut.28.28.*

THE curse threatned vnto this superstitious and Rebellious Nation, a *madnesse, blindnesse, astonishment of heart, to grope at noone-daies, as the blinde groupeth in darknesse, to be a wonder, a prouerbe, and a common talke among all people, among which they should be scattered from one end of the World to the other, in this day fulfilled in our eyes*, both in respect of their *Politie* and *Religion*, GODS iust iudgement, sealing that their owne imprecation, b *His blood be on vs,*

b *Matth. 27.25.*

and on our children, and pursuing them in all places of their dispersion through the reuolutions of so many ages. Odious are they, not to the Christians alone, but to the Heathen people that know not GOD: c nor will the Turke receiue a Iew into the fellowship of their Mahumetane superstition, except he hath passed first from his Iudaisme through the purgation of a Christian profession, vnto that their no lesse ridiculous and miserable deuotion.

c *P. Galat.3.4. c. 28. Rudolph. letter.*

d *1.Thes.2.15.*

d *God they please not* (saith *Paul*) *and are contrarie vnto all men.* This their wretchednesse, although it seemed to beginne, when *Herod* a stranger seized their state, yet was that infinitely more then recompenced, when their Messiah, so long before prophecied and expected, *came among his owne, but his owne receiued him not*: yea, *they crucified the Lord of Glorie.* But euen then also did not the long-suffering GOD reiect them, Christ prayed for them, the Apostles preached to them remission of this and all their sinnes, till that (as *Paul* chargeth them) they e *putting these things from them, and iudging themselues vnworthie of eternall life*, GOD remoued this golden *Candlestick* from amongst them to the Gentiles; and *letteth his Vineyard to other husband-men.* Famine, sword, and pestilence at once assayled them (And what shall not assayle, what will not preuaile against the enemies of GOD?) Ierusalem, sometimes the glorie of the Earth, the type of Heauen, *The Citie of the great King*, and Mother-citie of the Iewish kingdome, from this incomparable height, receiued as irrecouerable a fall, besieged and sacked by *Titus*, and yet more violently tortured with inward conuulsions, and ciuill gripes, then by outward disease, or forraine hostilitie. *Iosephus* and *Iosippus* f haue handled the same at large, both which can acquaint the *English* Reader with the particulars. Besides many thousands by *Vespasian* and the Romans slaine in other places of Iudæa, Ierusalem *the holy Citie* was made a prison, slaughter-house, and graue of her owne people. First had diuine mercie g by Oracle remoued the Christians to Pella out of the danger, that without any impediment the floud-gates of vengeance might be set wide open for Desolations black-guard to enter. Here might you see the strong walls shaking and falling, with the pushes of the yron Ramme; there the Romans bathing their swords in Iewish entrales; here the seditious Captaines disagreeing in mutuall quarrels, written in blood; there agreeing in robbing and burning the Citie, and in slaughter of the Citizens there hunger

c *Act.13.46.*

f *Iosepb. de Bel. Iud. & Antiq. Iosippus Hebr.* both Englisht.

g *Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib.3.c.5.*

ger painted with pale colours in the gastly countenances of the starued inhabitants; there, dyed in red with the blood of their dearest children, which the tyrannie of famine forceth to re-enter into the tendrest-hearted mothers wombe, sometime the place of Conception, now of buriall. Euery where the *Eye* is entertained with differing spectacles of diuersified Deaths, the *Eare* with cries of the insulting Souldier, of the famished children, of men and women, euen now feeling the tormenting or murthering hand of the seditious: the *Sent* receiueth infectious plague and contagion from those humane bodies, with inhumanitie butcheted, whom no humanitie buried: the *Taste* is left a meere and idle facultie, saue that it alway tasteth the more distastfull poyson of not-tasting and emptinesse: what then did they 10 *feele*, or what did they not feele? where all *senses* seemed to bee reserued that they might haue sense of punishment? Where all outward, inward, publike, priuate, bodily, ghostly, plagues were so ready executioners of the Diuine sentence. The continuall sacrifice first ceased for want of Priests of the last course, to whom in order it had descended; after, for want of a Temple, before polluted with Ethnick sacrifices, and murthers of the Priests and Souldiers, and lastly ruined, the sacred vessels thereof being carried to Rome for ornaments of the Temple of *Peace*, which *Vespasian* had there [h] erected.

Eleuen hundred thousands are numbred of them which perished in this destruction: The remnant that escaped the Roman Sword, for the most part, perished after in Warres, or killed themselues, or were reserued eyther for solemnitie of triumph, or (if they were vnder se- 20 uenteene yeeres of age) sold vnto perpetuall seuerie, [i] ninetie seuen thousand of these Iewish slaues were numbred: *Galatinus* [k] accounteth two hundred thousand. And that the hand of GOD might be the more manifest, they which at their Passe-ouer feast had crucified the Sonne of GOD, are at the same time gathered together in Ierusalem, as to a common prison-house of that whole Nation: and they, which had bought Christ of the Traytor *Iudas* for thirtie peeces of siluer, were sold thirtie of them for one peece. Thus were these men forsaken of GOD, that had forsaken GOD made man, who for man had vouchsafed to crie to GOD, *Why hast thou forsaken me?* Their owne Talmud relates how GOD had before forsaken their holies, in these words. Fortie yeeres before the desolation of the Temple, the lot no more ascended on the right hand, nor did the peece of scarlet grow white, 30 nor the euening Lampe burne, and the doores of the Temple opened of themselues. The time is the passion of Christ, when *the vaile of the Temple was rent*; which is here called a selfe-opening of the doores. The Lot is that *Leuit.*16.8. which was cast for the two Goates, that on the right hand was sacrificed, the other was sent into the Wildernesse, and a peece of scarlet put betweene his Hornes at the doore of the Temple, which if it looked white, they reioyced, as hauing their sinnes pardoned, according to that *Es.*1.18. their scarlet sins should be as white as snow. These signes ceasing, argued a ceasing of that Ceremoniall Religion, which then died when Christ died: although for the more honorable funerall they were not quite buried so soone, till the Apostles had preached, and by miracles confirmed the Gospell, and GODS Iustice had made the Temple it selfe (sometimes the throne, now) the 40 Sepulchre of those ceremonies, buried in the ruines of that *holy Citie* and Temple, not thence to be raked or reuiued by any without Antichristian Sacrilege. But let vs see what followed amongst the Iewes which reiected Christ the Truth, body and substance of their typicall Ceremonies.

h *Ios. de Bel. Iud. l.7. c.24.*

i *Iosep. de Bell. Iud. l.7. c.17.*

k *P. Galat. de Arcan. l.4. c.21.*

§. II.

Of the Destruction of the Iewes vnder ADRIAN.

50 *Galatinus* tels vs of two false Prophets, whom *comming in their owne name*, they receiued for their Messias, hauing before refused IESVS that *came in his Fathers name*: both these were called *Ben* or *Barchosba*, that is, the sonne of lying. The one, not long after the Passion of CHRIST (if the Iewes bee not the *sonnes of lying* which write it) the other in the time of *Adrian*. *Rabbi Akiba* (famous for his wisedome, for his twentie foure thousand Disciples, and for his long life) receiued both in their succeeding ages: and interpreted to the first, that place of [a] *Haggai, I will shake the heauens, &c.* But afterward they slew him as the *Salmud* witnesseth, which also affirmeth [b] that *Titus* enioyned the Iewes, which he suffered to remaine, that from thence they should no more obserue Sabbaths, nor abstaine from menstruous women.

Sanhedrin. lib 2. Helech. R. Moses Ben. Maimon.

a *Hag. 2. 7.8.*

b *Tractat. Megbila.*

60 Fortie eight yeeres after the destruction of Ierusalem, the Iewes made the Citie [a] Bitter to be their chiefe Citie, and rebelled by the persuasion of *Benecochab* (so he called himselfe) that is, the sonne of the Starre. Of him *Hierome* testifieth, that he had a iuggling tricke to kindle

a *Bethoron. Hieron. adu. Rufin. l.3. c.9.*

kindle straw in his mouth, & breath it forth as if he had spit fire. Of him did *R. Akiba* (which had beene Armour-bearer to the former) interpret [e] that Prophecie of *Balaam, Num.* 23. *There shall arise a starre of Iacob. Adrian* then Emperor besieged them in Bitter (where if you beleeue the Iewish [d] fables) were 80000. which founded Trumpets, euery one of them captaines of many Bands, which helped *Barchosba* (so they called him after) that is, the sonne of lying, who had two hundred thousand Souldiers, which to testifie their loue and valour, had cut off euery man a finger from his hand. After three yeeres and six moneths, the Citie was taken, and [e] this their Messias slaine, together with such multitudes, that the blood reached to the horses mouthes, and carried downe great streames with the streame thereof, running to the Sea foure miles from Bitter. And *Adrian* had a Vine-yard eighteene miles square, which he hedged with those slaine carkasses, as high as a man can reach (a reacher I think.) There were two Riuers [f] in the Region of Iericо, and the third part of them by estimation of the Wise-men was the blood of the slaine : and seuen yeeres together did the people of the Gentiles fatten and hearten their Vines, only with the blood of the Iewes. *Adrian* slue also at Alexandria in Egypt, seuen hundred thousand Iewes.

Dion Niceus [g] (a more credible Author) affirmeth, that *Adrian* sent *Seuerus* against the Iewes, who in regard of their multitudes would not trie it with their ioynt forces in set battell, but taking his occasions and best oportunitie, proceeded more slowly and more surely : tooke fiftie of their fortified Castles, rased nine hundred and fourescore of their best Townes, slue at sundry times, fiue hundred and eightie thousand of their men, besides innumerable multitudes, which perished of famine, sicknesse, and fire, these gleanings being greater then the other Harueft. *Salomons* Sepulchre, by falling downe had fore-signified this their downe-fall : And Hyænas and Wolues prodigiously entring their Cities, seemed to howle their Funerall obsequies. All Iudæa was left almost desolate. [h] *Eusebius* out of *Ariston Pellæus* addeth, that *Adrian* prohibited the Iewes by an Edict to come neere to Ierusalem, or once from any high place to looke towards the same, or the Region adioyning. Neuer did *Nabuchodonosor* [i] or *Titus* so afflict the Iewes as *Adrian* did. *Salmanticensis* saith, there was a Decree made at Rome, that no Iewe should euer enter Cyprus, where the Rebellion beganne, and that *Adrian* destroyed twice as many Iewes, as had come out of Egypt with *Moses*. Wee haue alreadie shewed how hee destroyed this Citie, and built a new (the present Ierusalem) called of his owne name *Ælia*. Hee made Swine ouer the Gates of this new Citie, which Images were most faithfull Porters to prohibite the Iewes (faithfully superstitious in their faithlesse superstitions) to enter. And as hee had erected a Temple to *Iupiter*, in, or neere the place where the Temple had stood, so (to afflict the Christians also) hee built another Temple of *Iupiter* in *Golgatha*, and of *Venus* at Bethleem, which continued till the time of *Constantine*. The Christian Iewes gayned by this losse : For when as they might not come to Ierusalem, they afterwards relinquished their wonted Iewish Ceremonies. This was the end of *Barchosba*. And such is the end of all which fight against God and their Soueraigne; their Arrowes which they shoote against the Cloudes, fall downe vpon themselues : Hee proues a falling *Star*, which being but a grosser elementarie exhalation, is eleuated by his owne aspiring course (not to the firmament) but to some higher Region of the ayre, where it shineth with the fire which burnes it, and moueth with some short glance, till with selfe-ruine it returneth (whence it had beginning) to the Earth.

Thus haue we seene the Iewes banished their countrie (about the yeere 135.) agreeing to which their miserable estate was that *order* of Men, mentioned by [k] *Scaliger*, called *Aluudai Mourners, Heraclitus* his Heires, which spent their time in weeping, and intended nothing but Lamentation for the Desolation of their Sanctuarie. These haue beene among the Iewes (saith he) euer since this destruction, and were once a yeere, on the ninth day of the Moneth *Ab*, allowed entrance into Ierusalem by *Adrians* Edict. But then also, saith Saint *Hierome*, they are forced to pay for it, that they which sometime bought the blood of Christ, now must buy their owne teares. There may you see, saith he, on that day whereon Ierusalem was taken by the Romans, decrepit women, and old ragged men (*annis pannisq; obsitos*) and many wretched people (but pittied of none) which blubbered cheekes, blacke armes, disheueled hayre, howling and lamenting for the ruines of their Sanctuarie, in their bodies and habite beating and wearing the markes of Diuine vengeance : Of whom the Souldier exacteth his fee also, for liberties of further weeping. It is written in an ancient Iournall of Burdeaux, [*] that not farre from the Images there is a stone boared thorow, to which the Iewes come yeerely, and anoint it, lamenting grieuously, and rending their garments, and then depart. *Beniamin* [l] (an Hebrew Author) relateth, that one and twentie dayes iourney from Kupha, through the Wildernesse, he trauelled to the Region of Seba, where dwelled Iewes, called the children of *Rechab*, or men of *Thoima*, which gaue Tithes to

[e] *Talmud. Ierosol. L. Ta. mith.*

[d] *Tract. Bereschith. rabb.*

[e] *Lib Echa. rabbothi.*

[f] *Lib. Massecheth Gittim.*

[g] *Dion. Niceus. Adrianus.*

[h] *Euseb. Hist. Eccles. L. 4. cap. 6. Niceph. lib. 3. 24. Cæs. Baron. anal.*

[i] *Drus. Ex. lib. M.S. & ex Inchofin.*

[k] *Ios. Scal. Euseb. Tyther. Ser. cap. 13.*

Hierom. ad Sophon. 1.

[*] *Itinerarium Burdegal.*

[l] *Beniamin Tudelensis* translated by *Ar. Mont.*

to the Disciples of the wise, who continually applied themselues to learning, and to Sermons, alway sitting in the Schoole, and to the *humbled Israelites*, and deuout persons, which lament Sion, and bewayle Ierusalem. These dwell in Caues, or in ruined houses, fasting all the daies of their life, except on the Sabbaths and Festiuals, beseeching mercy continually at the hands of God, touching the banishment and deportation of Israel: they neuer eate flesh nor drinke wine. The same also do all the Iewes of the Countrey Theima and of Talmaas pray: All which go with rent clothes, and fast fortie dayes for the Iewish captiuitie. And so let them mourne which refuse [m] *the glad tidings of great ioy to all people, that vnto vs is borne* IESVS *a Sauiour, which is Christ the Lord.*

m *Luc.* 2.11.

10 But yet what rockie heart can but mourne with them, and for them, thus made spectacles to the World of bodily and spirituall misery, which both in these times mentioned, and (before) in the time of *Traian*, and in all ages since, hath pursued them in all places of their *habitation*, if that name may be giuen to this World-wandring and Vagabond-people? In the time of *Traian*, [n] *Adrians* predecessor, the Iewes had rebelled in Egypt, and Cyrene, where they committed much outrage and mischiefe, vnder one *Luke* their Captaine, against whom the Empetour sent *Martius Turbo*, who destroyed many thousands of them; and fearing that the Iewes in Mesopotamia would do the like, commanded *Lucius Quietus* to destroy them vtterly; in recompence of which seruice, executed to his minde, he made him president of Iudæa. *Dion* [o] saith, That the Captaine of the Iewes was named *Andrew*, and that 20 they slue many Greekes and Romans, did eate their flesh, gyrt themselues with their guts, were imbrued with their blood, and clothed with their skinnes; many they sawed asunder, from the crowne downewards, many they cast to the Beasts, and many were found to kill one another with mutuall combats, so that two hundred and twentie thousand persons perished by this vnspeakeable cruelties. In Egypt and Cyprus, vnder their Captaine *Artemion*, they destroyed two hundred and fortie thousand. They were subdued by *Traians* captaynes, specially by *Lucius*: And it was made a capitall crime for a Iewe (although forced by tempest) to set foote in Cyprus. Africa was re-peopled (where they had destroyed) with new Colonies. No maruell if the Romans, thus prouoked, both in the time of *Traian* & *Hadrian*, destroyed so many thousands of them. *Iulian* afterward gaue them leaue to return 30 into their Countrie, & re-build their Temple, more for hatred of the Christians, then for loue to their Nation: Whose wickednesse and answerable successe herein, is plainely detected and detested by *Gregorie Nazianzene*, [p] and other Fathers, as [q] we haue before related.

n *Euseb. l.4.c.2.*

o *Dion. N. Traianus.*

p *Greg. Naz. Orat. 4. cont. Iulian.*

q *Cap. 3.*

§. III.

Of other their False Christs and Seducing Prophets.

40 TO adde further of their bodily confusions, and the illusions of their bewitched minds: *Nicephorus* mentioneth a *Pseudo-Moses* of the Iewes in the parts of Arabia destroyed by the forces of the Empire, together with his Complices in a like Rebellion. *Socrates* [a] describeth a further madnesse of theirs (for true is that saying of Saint *Paul*. *That they which will not beleeue the Truth, are giuen ouer to strong delusions to beleeue lies.*) In the Ile of Creete was [*] a false Prophet, that affirmed himselfe to be *Moses*, which led the Israelites thorow the Red-Sea, and to be sent from Heauen to those Iewes to conduct them thorow the Red-Sea, into the continent of the holy Land. This he perswaded them for the space of a whole yeere, going from Citie to Citie: And at last induced them to leaue their riches to them that would take them, and to follow him; at a day 50 appointed he went afore them vnto a Promontorie of the Sea, and there bid them leape in; which many obaying, perished in the waues, and many more had perished, had not some Christian Merchants and Fishers beene at Land, which saued some, and forbad the rest to follow. The Iewes seeking to be reuenged of this counterfeit *Moses*, could no where finde him: and therefore thought him to be some Deuill in humane shape, which sought their destruction, and thereupon many of them became Christians. *Beniamin Tendelensis* reporteth of one in Persia called *Dauid Elroi*, sometime the Disciple of *Hasdai*, which was [b] *Head of the captiuitie*, one learned in the Law and *Talmud*, in forraine learning, in the Ismaelites tongue and in Magike, who gathered together the Iewes in *Hhapthon*, and would needes warre on all Nations, and winne Ierusalem, affirming that God had sent him therefore, 60 and to free them from the Gentiles. Many beleeued him to bee the Messias. The King of Persia sent for him, imprisoned him in the citie Dabasthan, whence they are not freed during life. But he three dayes after, when the King and his Counsel sate to examine and take order for this businesse, came amongst them: And when the King asked who brought him thither,

a *Socr. l.7.c.37.*

* *Anno* 434.

b See append. to this Chap.

thither, he said, his owne wisedome and industrie. The King bid lay hold on him, but his seruants answered, they could heare him, but not see him: and away he went, the King following him to a Riuer, ouer which *Dauid* stretching his hand-kerchiefe, passed ouer, and was then seene of them all, who in vaine pursued him with their boates. This *Dauid* the same day went ten dayes iourney from thence to Elghamaria, and declared to the Iewes there all which had passed. The Persian sent to the Caliph of Bagded, that he should cause the *head of the Captiuitie*, to persuade him to other courses, otherwise threatning destruction to all the Iewes in Persia; which Iewes likewise for feare thereof writ to the *head of the Captiuitie*. He therefore writ to *Dauid*. *We would haue thee to knowe that the time of our deliuerance is not yet come, nor haue we yet seene our signes, and therefore enioyne thee to desist from these attempts: otherwise, be thou cast out from all Israel.* But he proceeded neuertheless, till *Zimaldin*, a Turkish King, subiect to the Persian, corrupred his Father in Law with ten thousand peeces of Gold, who accordingly with a Sword slew him in his bed. And thus ended *Dauid*, but not his designes: for the Iewes in Persia were forced by many talents of gold to buy their peace with the King. About the same time *Rambam* tells of another, which tooke him to bee the Messenger of the Messias, which should direct his way before him, preaching, that the Messias would appeare in the South. To him resorted many Iewes and Arabians, whom he led alongst the Mountaines, professing to go meete the Messias, who had sent him. Our Brethren in the South countrey, wrote to me a long Letter hereof, declaring the innouations he made in their Prayers, and his preachings amongst them, asking my aduice. And I writ a booke, saith *Rambam*, for their sakes, touching the signes of the comming of the Messias. This Seduceer was taken after a yeeres space, and brought before one of the Kings of the Arabians, which examined him of his courses, who answered that he had so done at the commandement of God, in witnesse whereof he bad him cut off his head, and he would rise againe and reuiue: which the King caused to be done, without any such miraculous effect ensuing. The like telleth *Isaac Lewita*, of one *Lemlen*, a Iew, in the yeere 1500. as also of *R. Dauid*, which about the same time was burned for like cause. The Iewes haue Legends (as that of *Eldad*, translated by *Genebrard*) of multitudes of Iewes in Æthiopia: whom when wee come thither, we will visit. But alas, it is small comfort, being burned in the fire, to make themselues merry with smoke.

In Epist. ad Massil.

Isaac Lewita ad Epist. sup.

Eldad Danius hist. de Iudeis clausis.

Of their miseries sustained in all places of their abode, all histories make mention. And yet their superstition is more lamentable then their dispersion, as also their pertinacie and stubbornenesse in their superstition. And certainely me thinks, that euen to him that will walke by sight, and not by faith, not obliegingis his credit to meete authoritie, as the case standeth betwixt vs and the Scriptures, but will be drawne by the cords of Reason onely and Sense, euen to such a one, me thinks, this Historie of the Iewes may be a visible demonstration of the Truth of Christian Religion: Not onely because the truth of the Prophesies of [d] *Iacob*, of [e] *Moses*, of [f] *Esay*, and other the Prophets is fulfilled in them, and because Gods iustice still exacteth the punishment of the betraying *and murthering that iust one*; but especially in this, that the bitterest enemies, cruellest persecutors, and wilfullest Haters that euer were of the Christian truth, are dispersed into so many parts of the World, as witnesses of the same Truth; holding and maintayning to death the Scriptures of *Moses*, and the Prophets; then which, euen Reason being Iudge (as is said before) we will not desire founder and fuller proofes of our profession. Neither is our Gospell wherein we differ from them, any other then the fulfilling of their Law: and Christ came not to destroy the Law, but to fulfill the same, the same truth being deliuered in both, veyled in the one, and reuealed in the other. In him the Promises, in him the figures, in him the righteousnesse of the Law, righteousnesse in Doctrine, righteousnesse in practice, righteousnesse of Doing, righteousnesse of Suffering, to satisfie the debt, to merit the inheritance, are the witnesses, that *in him they are all, yea, and Amen*, haue receiued their perfect being and accomplishment. But [g] *the vayle is ouer their hearts, eyes they haue and see not, eares and heare not*: They hold out to vs the light of Scripture, themselues walking in darkenes; and reserued to darkenesse; like to a Lampe, Lanthorne, or Candlesticke, communicating light to others, whereof themselues are not capable, nor can make any vse.

[d] *Genes. 49.*
[e] *Deut. 28.*
[f] *Esa. 6.*

[g] *2. Cor. 3. 15.*

§. IIII.
Of the Miserable Dispersions of the Iewes.

WE haue shewed how they were vtterly cast out of their countrey: And Italie, and the Empire was filled with Iewish slaues. Nor was this their first dispersion; but as the Assyrians had carried away the other ten Tribes: So the Babylonians carried away the two Tribes remayning, which might haue returned vnder the

the Persian Monarchie; but many remained in those Countries till the dissolution of that Iewish state and after. They had there diuers famous Vniuersities, and that at Bagdet endured till the yeere of Christ, one thousand three hundred (so writeth [a] *Boterus.*) At which time they fleeing the persecutions of the Arabians, disperſed themselues into [b] India, where many are found at this day. These, through continuall conuersing with the Gentiles and Christians, haue small knowledge of the Law, and lesse would haue, but for other Iewes that resort thither out of Egypt. Before that time also, if we beleeue the Ethiopian History, twelue thousand [c] Iewes (of each Tribe a thousand) went with the Queene of Sabaes Sonne, which they say, she had by *Salomon*, into that Country, and there remaine their posteritie to this day.

Thus is ASIA and AFRIKE fraught with them, but EVROPE much more. *Adrian* [d] banished fiue hundred thousand into Spayne, where they multiplied infinitely, and founded an Vniuersitie at Corduba, about the yeere of our Lord, one thousand: And at Toledo was a Schoole of twelue thousand Iewes, about the yeere of our Lord, one thousand two hundred thirty and sixe, as writeth [e] *Rabbi Moſche Mikkatza*: from hence it seemeth they swarmed into England and France.

Anno [*] 1096. innumerable numbers of men and women of diuers Nations, according to the zeale of those times, trauelling to Ierusalem, compelled the Iewes in places whereby they passed to be baptized, euery where making terrible massacre and slaughter of such as refused; may of the Iewes also killing themselues in zeale of their Law. At Mentz they slew of them 1014. of both sexes, and fired the greatest part of the Citie. The rest rested not long in their impoſed Christianitie, but [*] willingly renounced that which against their wils they had accepted. *Auentinus* numbreth 12000. Iewes slaine in Germanie in this irreligious quarrell. *Otto Frisingensis* attributes these Iewish slaughters to the zealous preaching of *Rodolph* a Monke, which furie was appeased by the preaching, and authoritie of Saint BERNARD. These Pilgrims (saith *Albertus Aquensis* which then liued) being a gallimaufry of all Nations, in pretence of this holy quarrell against the Turkes, gaue themselues to all vnholy and filthy courses amongst themselues, and against the Christians, where they passed, may whoores attending and following the Campe, to which they added excesse in dyet, robberies, especially all cruelties against the Iewes, chiefly in the kingdome of Lorraine, thus beginning the rudiments of that war against the enemies of the Faith. First, they destroyed them and their Synagogues in Collen, and taking two hundred of them, flying by night to Nuis, they slue and robbed them all. At Mentz the Iewes committed themselues and theirs to the Bishop *Rothard*, who bestowed them with their infinite masse of treasure in his owne house, which yet could not protect them from the murthering and spoyling Souldier, who entring by force, slew seuen hundred of them; adding also the like butcherie on their wiues and children. The Iewes hereat Iewishly moued (pardon the want of a fitter word) layd violent hands on each other, and slew their owne children, wiues and brethren, the tender mother eschewing the souldiers cruelty by a greater, in cutting the throate of her owne childe, and with obdurate concision, preuenting the sword of the vncircumcised. Laden with these spoyles, they passed by the way of Hungary, where for some outrages, GOD *punished both those and these* with the Hungarian forces. Their miseries here in our Land endured, are by our Authors mentioned, and you shall anon heare a particular discourse thereof by it selfe [g]. Out of France they were thrice banished by three *Philips*, although in Auinion there still remayne some of them. Being expelled France, they sought habitation in Germany, where *Conradus* the Emperor admitted them into the countrey of Sueuia: and thence they flowed into other parts, into Bohemia (in the City of Prage, are about fifteene thousand of them) and into Austria, and into Hungaria, whence, for the crucifying of a child, they were banished by king *Mathias*: as at Trent, for the like fact, and poysoning of Welles, they sustained much trouble in Germany; and many passed to Venice; many also went from thence into Russia (where the people cannot abide to here them named) and Poland, where *Cassimere* the Great, for loue of an Hebrew Lasse, gaue them many priuiledges. They liue dispersed in the townes and Villages, occupied in handi-crafts and husbandry. They haue great Synagogues in Craconia, Leopolis, and at Trochi, a towne of Lituania: and Master *Barkeley*, a Marchant of Londou, who hath spent many yeeres in Liuonia, Polonia, and other of those cold countries, told me, That the Iewes farme the Custome of the Kings, and at Samaiden in Cur-land, one of these Iewish Customers beat out the braines of a Polonish Marchant, for deferring to open his packe: but in regard of the people's hatred, prouision is made, vnder great penalties, for their securitie, and yet many Iewes were there executed by occasion of a murren, procured (as was suspected) by Iewish exorcismes, intending a plague to the men, and not a murren to the beasts, if their working had forted: but the Iewes said, it was but a pretence to deprue them of their riches.

[a] *G. Boterus. Ben. Tertia part. lib. 1.*

[b] *Viz.* First at *Bab.* after at *Bagdet.*

[c] *Kamb. Mar. Nol. 1. c. 70. & 13. c. 18. & 24.* Tels of certaine effects of Iewes called, *Separatists*, and *Intelligents*, or *Vnderstanders*, which they learned of the Moores, and therefore in our *Mahammodan* reports, will be fitter place for them.

[d] *Vadd. c. 7.*

[e] *Damian a Goes. Ludouic. Cerretus.*

[*] *Beer. ibid.*

[e] *Rab. Moſche. Mik. apud Buxt. c. 1.*

[*] *Adrian. ad Lambert. Schaffnaburg. Sigeb. Gemblac. Otto frising. Fred. l. 1. c. 37.*

[*] *Marianus Scotus* saith, that *Hen. 4.* Emperor gaue them leaue.

[f] *Foxe* Acts and Monuments, History of *Barnwell &c.*

[g] *Inf. §. 7.*

They herein Poland print what bookes they list.

They were cast out of Spaine by *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*, in the yeere 1492. It is thought
h *Ioannes Reuclinus Cabal. l. 1. sayth 400000 persons.*
i *Basanum.*
k that there went out of Spaine a hundred and twentie thousand families of them (besides Moores) and out of their kingdomes of Naples and Sicill. Hence they passed, *Anno Domini* 1539. into Tuscane, and the Popes Dominions, whence they were banished by *Paul* the fourth, and *Pius* the fifth: and receiued againe by *Pius* the fourth, and *Sixtus* the fifth; Rome and Venice hauing great store of them. This is the *Popes holinesse*: he that would not willingly endure a Protestant in the World; besides, the Stewes vnder his Holinesse Nose, can endure the Græcians, yea, and these Iewes, Rome it selfe hauing ten thousand, or i after others reckoning, twentie thousand of them priuiledged with heir siue Synagogues, Liturgies, and publike Sermons; and to straine vp their vsurie to eighteene in the hundred: hauing also in some places (it may be in all) a peculiar Magistrate to decide controuersies, betweene Christians and them, with particular direction to fauour them in their trade. *Dulcis odor lucri ex re qualibet.* The beastly trade of Curtizans, and cruell trade of Iewes is sufferred for gaine, these paying a yeerely rent for the heads they weare, besides, other meanes to racke and wracke them in their purses at pleasure, they being vsed as the spunge-like Friers, to suck from the meanest, to be squeezed of the greatest; insomuch that the Pope, besides their certaine tribute, doth sometimes (as is said) impose on them a Subsidie for ten thousand crownes extraordinarie for some seruice of State. So well is the rule of *Paul* obserued by this Bishop, *not to be a louer of filthy lucre*, from filthie Stewes, from filthie Iewes.

i Relat. of Relig. Mysts.

Out of Spaine they went into Barbarie, and diuers other countries, and some into Portugall: where *Iohn* the second made them pay eight crownes for a poll, and yet limited them short time of departure. *Emanuel* his successor did the like 1497. except they would become Christians, for which he assayed diuers meanes. But not preuayling, he caused their children, vnder the age of foure and twentie yeers to be baptized; some rather hurling their children into pits, some killing themselues: many for feare were baptized, some went into Italie, and abode in Ferrara, Mantua, Venetia, in the name of *Maranes*, and haue a Synagogue at Pisa. But the greatest part of them went into the East to Constantinople and Salonichi, in which two Cities there are about an hundred and sixtie thousand of them. There are of them in all the chiefe Cities of traffike in the Turkish Empire. k Tyberias is wholly inhabited with Iewes, l which Citie *Zelim* gaue to *Graziola* a Iewish Matron. In Ierusalem there are about an hundred houses of them. There abide not many, because of a superstitious opinion, That before the *Messias* shall come, a great fire from heauen will consume that Citie and Countrie, to purge it of the abomination committed there, by prophane Nations. At Zante they are so hated, that from Maundie Thursday, vntill Saturday noone, they dare nor come abroad: for the people, in a foolish zeale, would stone them: and some refuse to eate of their meate or bread. The Turkes in their reproach vse such a kinde of imprecation; *If this be not true, would God I might die a Iew.* The old Testament is read of them in these parts in the Hebrew *, but their *Kahamin* and *Cohens*, that is, their wise-men and Priests preach in Spanish. Onely at Salonichi (anciently Thessalonica) in Macedonia, and at Safetta in the Holy Land (two Vniuersities) they speake Hebrew. They will rather in blasphemie testifie their hatred of Christ, then any abilitie to dispute.

k *Theatrum vrbium ad Rom.*
l There is reported to bee an Vniuersitie of Iewish studies to bee beene as *Drusi* reth out of *Iuchasin.* and *Elias in rad. Tiberias*, saith that the Iewes there had the most elegant language of all the Hebrewes: and from thence were the Authors of the Masoreth.
* *Lege Biblia Ieb.*

§. V.

Of the Estate of the Iewes, and their dispersed Habitations in the time of Beniamin Tudelensis.

BENIAMIN TVDELENSIS, a Iew of Nauarre, who hauing trauelled Spaine, France, Italy, Greece, Natolia, Syria, and many other Countries of Asia, Africke, and Europe (worthily reckoned one of the greatest Trauellers that euer liued:) at his returne into Spaine about foure hundred and fortie yeeres since, related what Iewish Synagogues he had seene in the world (one chiefe end as it seemeth, of his trauels) And because it appertayneth to this matter we haue in hand, and the booke (translated out of Hebrew by *Arias Montanus*) is very rare, I thought meete to adde here a briefe of those things which concerne the Iewes out of the same. At Barchinon they found a populous Synagogue, another, but smaller, at Gerunda: Narbone was, as it were, Ensigne-bearer of the Law to all the Countries about, where was chiefe, *Kalonymus* of the seede of *Dauid*, there were three hundred Iewes. Foure leagues thence was the Citie Bidrach, where was an Vniuersitie stored with Disciples of the wise: whereof also there were ar Mompelier: Lunel was a famous Vniuersitie, where liued *Asser* the Pharisee, which studied night and day, fasting and perpetually abstayning from flesh, with *Messulam, Ioseph, Iacob, Aaron*, which by the bounty of the Vniuersitie gaue foode, rayment, and teaching to such as came from far to

Rudy

ſtudie there, as long as they ſtayed. Theremas a Synagogue of three hundred Iewes. At Bothiaquiers fortie, at Nogheres about an hundred, at Atles two hundred, at Maſſilia two Colledges, and three hundred Iewes. At Rome two hundred free from tribute, at Salern ſix hundred. At Beneuent an Vniuerſitie of two hundred. At Taraam two hundred. At Tarentum three hundred. At Omedo fiue hundred. At Thebes two thouſand. At Corinth three hundred. There were people liuing in the Mountaines, which robbed and ſpoyled all, but dealt more fauourably with the Iewes (whoſe liues they ſpared) then with Chriſtians, whom they not onely robbed, but ſlew alſo. Theſe ſaid they were deſcended of the Iewes: they were called *Balachi*. At Arimbon were foure hundred, at Seleuca fiue hundred. Conſtantinople would not ſuffer a Iew to dwell in the Citie, nor to ride on horſe-back, except one *Solomon* the Kings Phyſitian, yea, the people would beate them in the ſtreets. At Pera liued two thouſand Iewes. Two daies ſayling from thence. At Doroſtum was an Vniuerſity of foure hundred, at Rhodes were foure hundred, at Dophros were Iewes, and *Cyprian Epicures* before mentioned. At Behalgad, were a Sect of Iſmaelites with a peculiar Prophet of their owne. At Tripoli many Iewes and Gentiles had a little before periſhed with an Earth-quake, whereof dyed in all Iſrael twentie thouſand. At Gebal was a place, where the Ammonites had ſomtimes a Temple, and it was an Idoll of ſtone couered with gold, ſitting with two Images of women ſitting by, and an Altar before. There were an hundred and twentie Iewes; At Beeroth fiftie; at Sidon twentie. Hero-awayes liued a people called *Dogzijn*, of whom we ſhall ſpeake more fitly in another place. At Cæſarea were few Iewes, but two hundred Samaritans, at Sebaſte an hundred. This is betweene Garizim, an hill fertile & well watred, and Gebal, an hill ſtony and drie. In the place of the ſometime Sanctuarie at Ieruſalem, was a faire and large Temple, called the *Temple of the Lord*, built of *Ghemar ben Alchetab*: there the Chriſtians had no image but reſorted hither only for prayer. Ouer-againſt it is a wall, made of the wals of the Sanctuarie, this they call the *Gate of mercy*: to this place the Iewes come to pray. The Pillar of *Lots* wife was then continuing, which was ſaid to grow to the former bigneſs, if at any time the flocks had diminiſhed it with licking. At [a] Hebron was a great temple: and in a vault ſix Sepulchres, of *Abraham* and *Sara*, *Iſaac* and *Rebecca*, *Iacob* and *Leah*: a Lampe perpetually burning: and in the Caue it ſelfe were tubs full of bones of the ancient Iſraelites. At Benibera or new Aſcalon in the border of Egypt were two hundred Iewes, forty Carraim, and three hundred Samaritans. At Tiberias were fifty Iewes, and the Synagogue of *Caleb*, ſon of *Iephunneh*: at [b] Damaſcus were three thouſand. There dwelt the *Head of the land of Iſrael*, called *Eſdras*, and his brother *Sarſalem*, which was ouer the *Iudgement*, and *Ioſeph* the ſiſt of the Synedrian, and *Maſſiah* head of the order of *Readers*: there were two hundred Carraim, and foure hundred Samaritans, amongſt all which waspeace, but no intercourſe of marriages, in differing Sects. In Thadmar were foure thouſand Iewes: here and at Baghala were buildings of ſtone, ſo great that it was ſaid to be the worke of *Aſmodeus* (with as good reaſon as *Dinels dike* with vs.) At Hamath was an Earth quake in thoſe times, which deſtroyed fifteene thouſand people in one day, and only an hundred and ſeuenty remayned. *Haleb* in old times called *Aram Tezoba*, had fifteene hundred Iſraelites. At Petra in the Deſart were two thouſand. At Dakia (ſometime Chalne) ſeuen hundred. Here was a Synagogue built by *Eſdras* in the returne from Babylon; and another alſo of his building at Charan, two dayes iourney thence, the place where *Abraham* had dwelt, had no building on it, but was frequented by the Iſraelites, to pray there. At Alchabor were two thouſand Iewes, at Niſibis one thouſand, at Gezir ben Ghamar, a Citie on the bankes of Tigris were foure thouſand. It is foure miles from the place where *Noahs* Arke reſted, which Arke *Ghamar* ſon of *Alchetab* brought from the top of the hill, to the vſe of a Moſchee: neere to which was the Synagogue of *Eſdras*, whither the Iewes on feſtiual dayes reſorted to Prayer. Two daies iourney thence was [c] *Almuſal*, ſometime called *Aſſur*, the beginning of the kingdome of Perſia, retaynng her ancient greatnes, ſituate on Tigris, a bridge onely being betweene that and Niniue (now wholly deſtroyed, only Caſtles and ſtreetes remayned in the circuit thereof) at *Al-Muſal* were ſeuen thouſand Iewes: and three Synagogues of the three Prophets, *Abdias*, *Ionas*, and *Nahum*. In Rahaban, anciently Rehoboth, were two thouſand. At Karkeſia (on the ſame banke of Euphrates with the former) fiue hundred; at Aliobar, two thouſand; at Hhardan, fifteene thouſand; at Ghukbera, built by *Ieſtronia*, tenne thouſand. Two dayes iourney thence is [d] *Bagdad* of the kingdome of the *Caliphs*, named [e] *Amir Almumanim Alghabaſſi Hhabtiſi*, the chiefe of the Iſmaelite Sect. Here was a thouſand Iewes, and ten Synedria or Courts, the heads or chiefe whereof (he nameth them) are called *Vacantes*, becauſe they attended no other function, but the adminiſtring of the ſocietie. They giue iudgement to all Iewes, which reſort vnto them on any day of the weeke but the ſecond, in which they all meet together before *Samuel*, the head of the Synedrium. But ouer all theſe was *Daniel*, ſon of *Hhabdai*, entitled the *Head of the* [f] *Captiuitie*, deſcended from *Dauid*, whom the

a *Hebron.*

b *Damaſcus.*

c *Moſul.*

d *Bagdad.*

e *Imperator credentium qui miſeré & mafle vitam degeuit. Vide l. 3. cap. 2.*

f *Caput Captiuitatis.*

Iewes called *Our Lord*; the Ismaelites, *Sydna ben Dauid, Our L. son of Dauid.* Hee had great Authoritie ouer all congregations of Israelites, warranted to him with the Amits seale, who caused that all Israelites and Ismaelites should rise to him, vnder paine of an hundred stripes. When he goeth to see the King, it is with very great pompe. This dignitie is bought with a great summe of money giuen to the King and Princes at his confirmation; and then is the second Chariot of the King prouided for him. He excrciseth imposition of hands on the men of the Synedrium. There were eight and twentie Synagogues in Bagdad, and the Suburbe on the other side Tigris. But the Synagogue which pertayned to the *head of the Captivity*, was of Marble of diuers colors, adorned with gold & siluer, spacious: and on the pillers were verses of the Psalmes, written in gold. Before the Arke were ten rowes of seates, with marble steps, in the highest whereof sate the *Head of the Captivitie*, with the Iewes of the family of *Dauid.* 10

In Gehiagan (sometime Rezen) two dayes iourney from thence, were fiue thousand Israelites. One dayes iourney from hence was [g] *Babel*, now wholly ruinated, in which are yet seene the ruines of *Nabuchodonosors* Palace, but inaccessible, by reason of diuers kindes of Serpents. Twentie miles from these ruines dwell twentie thousand Israelites, which there pray in the Synagogues, the chiefe whereof is that of *Daniel*, of squared stones. There were at Fhilah (fiue miles thence) ten thousand Iewes in foure Synagogues. Foure miles thence it is to the Tower which the Sonnes of Diuisions built with Brickes, which the Arabians call Lagzar: the length of the foundation is about two miles, the breadth of the wals, two hundred and forty cubits: where it is broadest, it is an hundred reedes; and betweene euery ten reedes space, are waies in manner of spires continued thorow the whole building, on the top of which one may see twentie miles about. Halfe a dayes iourney from hence is Naphahh, where were two hundred Iewes. And three leagues thence, the Synagogue of [h] *Ezechiel* neere Euphrates, and in the same place sixtie Towers one against another, and a Synagogue betweene euery one. The monument of *Ezechiel* was built by *Iechonias* with fiue and thirtie thousand Iewes. And this is a holy place, whither they resort from the beginning of the yeere, to the day of *Expiation*, to pray and keepe festiuall. Thither commeth the Head of the Cap iuitie, and other chiefe men from Bagdad, and two and twentie miles about they pitch their Tents here and there: and the Arabians keepe then and there a great Faire. At this time they reade on the Expiation day out of a booke which *Ezechiel* writ: and there is a holy house full of bookes since the time of the first and second Temple, the custome being, that they which die without children, should bequeath their bookes hither. The Iewes in Persia and Media make vowes to bee performed in this place, to which also the Ismaelites resort to pray. The Sepulchre of the three Saints, companions of [i] *Daniel*, is halfe a dayes iourney from hence, with fayre and great Arches. Three miles thence is Alkotsonath, and in it three hundred Iewes. At Kupha the Sepulchre of *Ieconia*, and seuen thousand Iewes. One and twentie daies iourney thorow the wildernes is the Region of Seba, now called the Land of Aliman, where dwell Iewes, the children of [k] *Rechab*. This Region extended sixteene daies along the mountaines, subiect to no forren Nation, hauing therein foure hundred strong Cities, two hundred Townes, an hundred Castles. The Metropolis is Themai. In all those Cities are about three hundred thousand Iewes. In the Region of Tilmaas an hundred thousand. Three dayes iourney hence is Chibar, in it fiftie thousand. These (they say) are of the deportation of *Ruben, Gad* and *Manasses*. From hence twentie fiue dayes iourney is Vira, which is a Riuer running into Eliman, where were three thousand. And seuen iourneys from thence Neasar, & in it seuen thousand. Fiue daies iourneyes from thence Bosra vpon Tygris, and in it one thousand. Two dayes iourneyes from thence the Riuer Samura, the beginning of Persia, with a Towne of the same name, wherein, were fifteene hundred. The place is famous by the Sepulchre of *Esdras*, who in his returne to Babylon in Embassage, here died. There was a Synagogue honoured also by the Ismaelites. In Susan were seuen thousand Iewes in foureteene Synagogues, before one of which was the Sepulchre of *Daniel*: about which rose a controuersie betweene the inhabitants of the one and other side of the Riuer: They which dwelt on that side where the Sepulchre was, seeming to the other the more fortunate; this caused blowes, but was after agreed, that euery yeere it should be remoued by course, which was done with solemne procession, till [l] *Senigar* the Persian King, thinking it a prophanation to the holy Coffin, caused it to be hanged in a chest of glasse for all men to see, and forbad to take fish within two miles of that place in the Riuer.

g Babylon.

h *Ezechiel.*

i *Daniel*3.

k Rechabites, or men of Thcima.

l *Senigar*, of Persia.

From hence was three dayes iourney to Robad-Bar, where were twentie thousand Iewes. Two iourneyes from hence was the Riuer Vaanath, where were foure thousand Iewes. Foure iourneyes further, Malhhaath: here they were not Ismaelites, nor vnder the Persian; they had two Colledges of Israelites, which acknowledged, neuertheless, the *Head of the Captiuitie* in Bagdad. At Ghaatian, fiue iourneyes beyond, were fiue and twentie thousand.

Here

Here began the mountaines of Hhaphthon, wherein were an hundred Synagogues. This is the beginning of Media: they speake Chaldee; and there were amongst them the [m] Disciples of the wise. Ghamaria is vnder the Persian, where *Daud Elroi* was. It was ten dayes iourney thence to Ehhamdan, chiefe Citie of Media, there were fiftie thousand Iewes in that Region, and the Sepulchre of *Mordecai* and *Esther*. Foure iourneyes further was Debarzethaan, neere this Riuer Gozen, in it foure thousand Iewes. Beyond that, seuen iourneyes, Asbahan the chiefe Citie; twelue miles in compasse; and therein fifteene thousand Israelites, euer whom, and all the Persian Iewes, was *Salomon* by authoritie from the *Head of the Captiuitie*. Foure iourneyes hence was Siaphaz, called of old Persis, whence the whole Region was named Persia, therein ten thousand. Seuen dayes iourneys thence, Ginah vpon Gozen, a famous Mart; in which were eight thousand. *Samarcheneth* was the fut theft Citie of that Kingdome, fiue iourneyes from Ginah, where were fiftie thousand. Foure iourneyes thence Tubot: and twentie eight further I passed to the mountaines Nisbon, which ouer looke the Riuer Gozen, where were many Israelites; and they say, there dwell the foure Tribes of *Dan, Zabulon, Asser, Naphthali*. Their Countrey extendeth twentie dayes iourney, and hath many Cities, free from subiection to any Heathen: They are gouerned of *Ioseph Armacala Levita*; they till the ground, and hold warres with the children of *Chus*, trauelling through the desart thither. They are in league with the Copher Althorech a people that worship the Windes, and liuing in the Wildernesse; they haue neither bread nor wine, but eate raw flesh, eyther new or dried: they haue no [*] nose but onely two holes. Fifteene yeeres since, they tooke and sacked Ral, a chiefe Citie in Persia; whereupon the King warred against them, and passing through the wildernesse to them, was deceiued by his guide, and his people almost starued, and after forced to flie; with whom passed into Persia *Moses* one of the Iewes in those parts, which told me (*Beniamin* our Author) all this. Hence I went to Cheuzzthaan vpon the Riuer Tigris; which runneth thence into Hoduor the Indian Sea, hauing in the mouth the Iland Nekrokin a famous Mart, where were fiue hundred Iewes. I sayled ten dayes thence to Kathiphan, where were fiue thousand Israelites. Thence to the Kingdome of Haaulem, a people of *Chus* which worship the Sunne: Thence after twentie two dayes sayling, I came to the Ile Chenerag, where they worship the fire, where were twentie three thousand Iewes. Fortie dayes sayling from thence was the Kingdome of Sinne, from which to Gingalan was fifteene dayes; there were ten thousand Israelites. Thence I went to *Ethiopian Iudea*, which they call Baghdaan, in which were high mountaynes, and in them many Israelites, subiect to none, which warred on the *Hamaghtani*, that is, the Libyans. From thence to Azzan westwentie daies iourney through the wildernesse Sebor, the King whereof was *Sultan Alhabas* an Ismaelite. Twelue dayes thence is Hhalauan, where were three hundred Iewes; from which they passe in troupes through the desartal-Tsahaca, into Zeuila in the tract of Geena or Ginæa, where they encounter showres of sands. This Region is in the land of Chus, and is called Alhhabas, towards the West. Thirteene dayes iourney from Hhalauan is Kits the beginning of Egypt. And fiue from thence Pium, once Pithon, where were twentie Iewes, and many monuments of our fathers to be seene. Thence to Misraim is foure iourneyes, where were two thousand Iewes in two Synagogues, which differed in their distribution of the Lectures of their Law: the Babylonians finishing it in a yeere, as in Spaine, the Israelites in three. But twice a yeere they assembled together in Prayers, on the feast *Lettie Legis*, and on the feast *Late Legis*. *Nathaneel* was chiefe ouer all the Vniuersities (or Synagogues) of Egypt, and appointed Masters, and *Ædituí*. He was familiar with the King *Amir Almumaum Elh* sonne of *Abulalib*. At Alexandria were three thousand Israelites. But for his trauels in Egypt, and the Synagogues which there he found, as also backe againe into Sicilia, Germany, Boheme, Prussia, &c. because there are yet knowne Synagogues of them, I surcease relation. And much may I feare I haue too much wearied the Reader in so long a Iewish Pilgrimage; but seeing Authors of best note, *Scaliger, Drusius, Lipsius, &c.* cite him, and *Arias Mont.* hath taken the paines to translate him, and his trauels are such ample testimonies of this onpresent subiect of Iewish dispersions, I haue beene bold to annex these things. If any list not to beleeue such multitudes of Iewes, I will not vrge him; howsoeuer that deluge of Tartars in all those Asian Regions soone after *Beniamins* dayes, brought a new face of all things in these Easterly parts: 222 Iew, and relating these things to Iewes, and by Iewes passing to vs, it is like he reported, and we haue receiued, with the most. For his Geographie, some of his names are easily reconciled to the present, some hardly, which I leaue to the Readers industrie.

m Students of the Talmud vnder the *RA.*

[*] The Tartars esteemed it beautie to presse downe their nose flat, and hence perhaps was this opinion of *Moyses*.

Misraim or Cairo.

§. VI.

Of some Iewes lately found in China, and of their late Accidents in Germany.

Nic. Trigaut. expedi. Sinicf. l. 1.

AFter these relations of *Beniamin*, I thought it not vnfit to insert out of *Ricci & Trigautius, Iesuites*, lately residing in China, somewhat appertaining to these Iewish affaires. It is but few yeeres since the Iesuites could settle themselues at Paquin, the Royall Citie of China. Thither did a certaine Iew (moued with report of these strangers, hauing an imagination that they were Iewes) resort vnto them. This Iew was borne at Chaifamfu, the mother-Citie of the Prouince Honan, his name was *Ngai*, his countenance not resembling the Chinois: he neglecting Iudaisme, had addicted himselfe to the China studies, and now came to Paquin to the Examination, in hope of proceeding Doctor. There did he enter the Iesuites house, professing that he was of their Law and Religion. *Ricci* leades him into the Chappell, where on the Altar stood the Image of the Virgin, Iesus, and *Iohn* Baptist kneeling; which hee taking to be the Image of *Rebecca* and her twinnes, did worship vnto them, contrarie (he said) vnto their custome. The Images of the Euangelists he supposed to be so many of *Iacobs* sonnes. But vpon further questioning, the Iesuite perceiued that he was a professor of the Law of *Moses*: he confessed himselfe an Israelite, and knew not the name of Iew; so that it seemed, the dispersion of the ten Tribes had pierced thus farre. Seeing the Hebrew Bible, hee knew the Letters, but could not reade them. He told them, that in Caifamfu were ten or twelue Families of Israelites, and a faire Synagogue, which had lately cost them ten thousand Crownes; therein the Pentateuch in rolles which had beene with great veneration preserued fiue or six hundred yeeres. In Hamcheu, the chiefe Citie of Chequian, he affirmed, were many more Families with their Synagogue: many also in other places, but without Synagogues, and by degrees wearing out. His pronunciation of Hebrew names differed from ours, as * Herusoloim, Mosciа for Messia, Ierusalem. His brother (he said) was skilfull in the Hebrew, which hee in affection to the China preferment had neglected; and therefore was hardly censured by the Ruler of the Synagogue.

* So the Abyssines call Israel, Chrostos.

To this Citie did *Ricci* send one of his to enquire, who found these reports true, which also copied the beginnings and endings of their bookes, which they compared and found to agree with their owne Pentateuch, saying that they wanted pricks or points. He writ also in China Characters to the Ruler of their Synagogue, that he had the rest of the bookes of the old Testament, and other bookes of the New, which contained the acts of the Messias being already come. The Ruler doubted, saying, that he would not come till ten thousand yeeres were expired. He also promised, that because he had heard much good of him, if he would come thither, and abstaine from Swines-flesh, they would make him Ruler of their Synagogue. After this, three Iewes came from thence to Paquin, and were almost perswaded to become Christians. These complained, that through ignorance of the Hebrew, their Religion decayed, and that they were likely all of them in a short time to become Saracens or Ethnikes. The old Archisynagogue was now dead, his sonne a young man succeeded in place, but ignorant of their Law. And that their Iewish Religion was indeede languishing, appeared by this, that they both worshipped the Popish Images, and complained, that in their Synagogue and priuate houses they had none. They were offended that they were forbidden the eating of any creature, which themselues had * not killed, which had they obserued in this iourney, had cost them their liues. Their wiues and neighbours esteemed Circumcision of their infants on the eight day a cruell thing, which they could be willing to altar, with acceptation of the Christian Law, nor would much stand about Swines-flesh. They told them of certaine Christians also, or worshippers of the Crosse in China, which with the Iewes and Saracens were all called by the Chinois, Hoei, adding some distinction from their differing Rites, calling the Saracens, Hoei which refused Swines flesh: The Iewes, Hoei which abstaine from the sinew; the Crosse-worshippers, Hoei which abstaine from round-footed beasts, whereas the Iewes, Saracens and Chinois eate the flesh of horses, asses, and the like. This Historie I haue added, to shew how the Iewes haue bin dispersed into the furthest parts, and how time, the deuourer of all things, hath almost eaten them out, or their Religion at least. Somewhat also may be hence coniectured touching the deportation of the ten Tribes, the Hebrew pricks, and moderne Characters, * which I leaue to others discussing. Once, it is by all Historie manifest, that by the inundations of Saracens, Tartars, Turkes, &c. both the Iewish and Christian Religions (sometimes frequent) haue beene by degrees consumed and almost worne out of many parts of Asia.

* See *infra.* 19.

* Some thinke the Hebrew Letters which now we haue, to be inuented by *Esra* since the captiuitie.

The late miseries inflicted on the Iewes in Frankfort and Wormes may here be inserted.

In

In *Aug.* 1614. at the same time * which they solemnize with fasting for the destruction of Ierusalem, their little Ierusalem (so they call the Iewes streete in Frankfort) was spoiled by the vnruly Citizens, and gaue them a new cause of mourning. The Iewes at first defended themselues, and the Magistrates fought to allay the furie of the people: but at last consented to depart the Citie, one thousand and foure hundred, presently passing downe the Mæne in boates, and the rest following them the next day. It seemed a prodigious and dismall signe vnto them, that the Oxe, which they vse to keepe all the yeere in their Church-yard or buriall place, now being shut vp for the slaughter, brake away from them.

* *Merc. Gallob. Arthus & Janson.*

The Mother gaue fatal example to the Daughter: for Frankfort they account the Mother of Israel, which led the way to Wormes in expulsion of the Iewes. This should haue hapned the seuenth of *April.* 1615. being good Friday, but was deferred till Munday following, when early in the morning they sent word to the Iewes into their streete, that trussing vp their choiicest goods, they should within one houre depart, which with much lamentation they did. Neither could the Magistrates preuayle in their defence, so odious had their vsurious exactions of long time beene to the Citizens. Thus the Iewes take their way to the Rhene: And the same day was the roofe of their Synagogue pulled downe, and a Decree made, not to leaue one stone thereof vpon another, six hundred of them presently putting the same in execution, These spared not the monuments and graue-stones, but brake them in peeces, notwithstanding some of them seemed scarce possible to be raised from the Earth. The Iewes hearing this ruine of their Synagogue, which they say (if you beleeue it) had continued one thousand and eight hundred yeeres, rent their garments, and mourned in sackcloth and ashes.

§. VII.

Of the Iewes sometimes liuing in England, collected out of ancient Records, by Master John Selden *of the inner Temple.*

ALthough I haue had already a long tedious iourney, wearisome to my Reader and my selfe, whilest I haue accompanied these miserable Iewes in their dispersions: yet did I conceiue, this following relation would rather seeme as a welcome recreation, then irksome progresse; because wee shall containe our selues in our owne Countrie: Wherein I must acknowledge the laborious industrie of our learned Countriman and Antiquarie, Master *Selden*, who out of ancient Records hath thus traced the foote-prints of this antiquated and out-worne people: mine is but the transcribing and abbreuiating. Of the Iewes first comming to this Land is vncertaine: It seemes that some little notice was taken of them before the Conquest; after which we haue diuers testimonies, and besides others, the Statute *de Iudaismo*, both before and after, their state and condition was very seruile, as appeareth in *legib. Confess. cap.* 29. *Iudæ & omnia sua Regis sunt, &c.* The Iewes and all they had was the Kings. What they suffered in succeeding ages, our common Stories discouer. There was one amongst them which had the office of *Presbyteratus omnium Iudæorum totius Angliæ* (which I take to be their chiefe Priest-hood in their Synagogues: For if it had signified a meere Lay Eldership, I ghesse I should haue met with it in the pleas of their Exchequer) and this lay in the Kings grant, as by King *Johns* Charter of it may be seene. *In Rot. Chart.* 1. *Iohan. Reg. ch.* 171. *memb.* 28. *Omnibus fidelibus suis, & omnibus & Iudæis & Angliæ salutem. Sciatis nos concessisse, & presenti charta nostra confirmasse Iacobo Iudæo de Londonijs Presbytero Iudæorum Presbyteratum omnium Iudæorum totius Angliæ habend. & tenend. quamdiu vixerit, liberè & honorificè, & quietè & integrè, ita quod nemo ei super hoc molestiam aliquam aut grauamen inferre præsumat. Quare, &c, apud Rothomagum* 31. *die Iulij Anno Regni nostri primo.* Therein is also mention of a former Charter granted by *Rich.* 1. Certaine Iustices were appointed *ad custodiam Iudæorum*, before whom pleas twixt them, and others and them, were held, and matters adiudged *secundum legem & consuetudinem Iudaismi*, as the entry often is. In most Townes of note were two Christians and two Iewes, or one of both sides, appointed as publique Notaries for all their Deeds of contract, and those Notaries had one chest and seuerall keyes for the safe-keeping of such Deeds, and they were called *Cyrographarij Christiani & Iudei arcæ Cyrographicæ Oxoniæ* or other such Towne. And hence must you interpret *les houches Cyrographes in statuto de Iudaismo.* And by these Notaries or Cyrographers the Deeds of the Iewes were tried. These Deeds and such like they called vsually *Starra*, of their Hebrew word *Shetar*, that is, a Deede or contract: as *Salomon de Stanford agnouit per starrum suum*, and the like. And howeuer Iand was not subiect to execution for debt, till 13. *Ed.* 1. yet it seeme by 52. *Hen.* 3. That fot debts of the Iewes, land was

30 40 50 60

Tustodiam.

was

was seized by writ for the debtor. *Constat Iusitiarij & per inspectionem rotulorum de Scaccario nostro Iudeorum, quod Aaron, &c.* When any man had dealt much with them, and after all discharges doubted further ill measure by any such Starres or Bonds lying bid, the course was to send out a processe to the Sheriffe of the County, or Constables of the Castles of great Townes, to make proclamation on their Sabbaths, Summoning all Iewes of this or that Synagogue to be at their Exchequer to account with such as doubted in that kinde. Thus 52. *Hen.* 3. *preceptum est vice-comiti Essex quod clamari faceret per scholas Iudaorum Colcestriæ per duos vel tres Sabbata, si aliquis Iudæus vel Iudæa aliquod debitum exigere poterit de Rogero filio Petri, &c.* that then he or she should come *ad computandum. Et Vice-comes mandauit tam literis Latina quam Ebraica, quod nullus Iudæus nec Iudæa aliquod debitum exigit de prædicto Rogero.* 10 So do all other Sherifes and Constables returne in Hebrew and Latine. For in those times both Languages were vsed not only in Deeds of the Iewes, which I haue often seene with the Hebrew on the one side, and the same in Latine on the other, but also in Records of Law, as in 43. *Hen.* 3. *in regist. Monasterij de Boxgrene in Sussex, &c.* And as both tongues were vsed, so in trialls twixt Christians and them, the *venire faciat was: sex probos & legales homines, & sex legales Iudeos*, as often appeares. What Oath was giuen them I finde not, but *R. Moses Mikkotzi* that liued in the time of *Hen.* 3. writes in *præcaffirmat.* 123. that holding the booke of the Pentateuch betweene their Armes, they called to witnesse the *God of Israel which is merciful, &c.*

Vpon their conuersion their goods were confiscate: which was (it seemes) after such 20 time as the *Domus Conuersorum* (that which is now the Rolles) was in 17. *Hen.* 3. built for them, where they might liue *sub quadam honesta vmendi Regula, & certum haberent in tota vita sua domicilium, tutum refugium & sufficiens vitæ sustentamentum, sine seruili labore & fœnoris emolumento*, as the words of *Mat. Paris* are. In 52. *Hen.* 3. *Iosiam ben Salomon* a Iew of Marlebrow shewes to the Court of the Iustices of the Iewes, that one *Isacca* his sister was married to one *Salon*, the sonne of *Lombard* of Kirklade, & *quod ipsa habuit in arca Cyrograph. Merlebrigiæ vnum Cyrograph. xxxij. marcarum*, which vpon her conuersion became the Kings, as the Roll saith, and *quod hoc totum sit verum, obligat omnia bona sua, &c.* Which all were confiscate for not prosecuting the suit. But in the time of E. 1. it was granted, that the house 30 should haue one halfe of the goods of the Conuert, and that he himselfe should haue the other halfe. So *placit. 9. Ed. 1. In de Santto Dionys. custos domus conuersorum* hath a writ for the moity of the goods of *Belenger* & *Huccoth* Iewesses of Oxford, late Conuerts, &c. the other halfe allowed to them.

One cruell and (to speake the properest phrase) Iewish crime was vsuall amongst them, euery yeere towards Easter, though it were not alwayes knowne (see *Mat. Paris in* 39. *H.* 3.) to steale a young boy, circumcise him, and after a solemne iudgement, making one of their owne Nation a Pilate, to crucifie him out of their diuellish malice to Christ and Christians. For their circumcising alone, take this record *inter Placita* 18. *H.* 3. *Rot.* 21. *Norff. Benedictus in physicus appellat Iacobum de Norwico Iudæum, quod cum Odoardus filius suus puer ætatis* 5. *annorum iuit ludendo, &c.* that foure yeeres before that, *James* the Iew, had taken his sonne 40 *Ed.* as he was playing in the streete, and carrying him to his house, circumcised him, and there detayned him one day and night, till by force of Christians hee recouered him, hauing his circumcised member then swollen, &c. The childe being examined, confessed that they tooke and carried him to the house of *James* aforesaid, where, while one held him and couered his eyes, another circumcised him with a knife; the peece cut off they put in a bason of sand (*in quodam vacuo cum fabelone, & quæsierunt peciam illam cum parvis sufflestis*) and there they with small puffes of wind out of their mouthes sought it, and the Iew which first found it, was called *Iurnepin*, and therefore they gaue the same name to the childe, calling him *Iurnepin*. The Archdeacons Officiall came to testifie this with a great companie of Priests, all in the word of GOD, saying as aforesaid, that they saw his members swolne: and the 50 Coroners of Norwich with thirtie six of the Citizens testified as much. Hereupon the Iewes were all put in prison, and found accessories except *Mosse* the sonne of *Salomon*. Order was taken, that because the case was strange, and they had no precedent of the like, it should first be enquired of by the Ecclesiasticall Ordinary, and that he should certifie to the King. The Iewes after procured the boy to be seene, and his member was found couered. But this is not repugnant to the former testimonie: seeing by Chyrurgery, * the skinne may bee drawne forth to an vncircumcision. In the yeere following of *Hen.* 3. *Mat. Paris* reports such a deede of the Iewes of Norwich, and in 24. *H.* 3. that they circumcised a Christian childe, and called him *Iurnin*, and meant to haue crucified him. All the Iewes of the Citie were questioned about it: and when they would haue referred themselues to Lay authority, *William de Ralegh* the Bishop sayes, *Hæc ad Ecclesiam spectant, non ad regalem curiam, cum de circumcisione & de fidei lesione quæstio ventiletur.* Foure Iewes conuicted hereof were 60 drawne

* *Celsde remed. l. 7. c. 25. Epiphan. de pond. & 3. Cent. 7. 18.*

drawne at Horses tayles, and hanged on a gibbet. In 39. *H.*3. the case of *Hugh* Lincolne crucified is in the same Author, and for it eighteene Iewes were at once drawne and hanged. This *Hugh* is reckoned as a Saint in *Chaucers* Prioresses tale. By reason of their exactions and vsuries they were all banishe, (their moueables allowed them; but *Walsingham* sayes, only their expences for passage) in 18. *Ed.* 1. *Math. Westm.* numbers them one hundred and sixty thousand, fiue hundred and eleuen. The house of Conuerts in *Pat.* 51. *Ed.* 3. *memb.* 20. is giuen to the Master of the Rolles.

By the Statute Iudaisme they were to weare (euery one being past seuen yeeres olde) a cognisance of yellow vpon their vpper garment, thereby to be knowne (some such distinction had beene generally enioyned in the Councell of Lateran see the *Statute, & cap. de Iud. 6. R.* 1. *Rog. de Houeden. fol.* 424. They were forbidden to build new Synagogues, made subiect to the payment of Tithes, and were to weare on their vpper garment, on the brest two peeces of woollen cloth of another colour plainly to be discerned; each of them two fingers broade, and foure in length, by the Prouincial Councell of Oxford vnder *Stephan* Archbishop of Canterbury in 8. *Hen.* 3.

CHAP. XI.

A Chronologie of the Iewish Historie from the beginning of the World, briefly collected.

THE Floud happened (as *Moses* reckoneth the Parcels in the Ages of the Patriarchs) in the yeere of the World 1656. which are thus accounted: *Adam* at the hundred and thirtie yeere begat *Seth*: *Seth* at a hundred and fiue begat *Enos*: *Enos* at ninetie *Kainan*: he at seuenty *Mahalaleel*, who at sixty fiue begat *Iared*: *Iared* being one hundred six-ie two yeeres olde, begat *Henoch*, who at sixtie fiue begat *Methuselah*; and hee at a hundred eighty seuen begat *Lamech*, who in his hundred eightie two yeere begat *Noah*; in the sixe hundreth yeere of whose life the Floud came: Whereof euery Nation almost in the World hath some tradition; howsoeuer as *Censorinus* citeth out of *Varro*, from the beginning of the world to that first deluge, is called ἄδηλος, or vnknowne; as from thence to the first Olympiade was μυθικὸς or fabulous; onely that deseruedh the title of ἱστορικὸς from the Olympiads forwards, if we regard humane Historie. But the Diuine hath made the former more cleere then the later. Some difference is in what part of the yeere the World was created, which is supposed to be Autumne, because the trees were then in those parts of Eden laden with fruits: and the Iewes still obserue that time. *Scaliger* also sometime of a contrary opinion, hath now yeelded to this. And the Egyptians in the time of *Fermicus* held that the world was created in the thirtith part of *Libra*. The Flood after *Scaliger* began in the yeere 1657. on Saturday the seuenth of Nouember. 1656.

The second age of the World is reckoned from the Floud to *Abraham*: Whose birth was after the Floud 292. yeeres: *Sem* two yeeres after the Floud begat *Arpacsad*: hee at thirtie fiue yeeres *Selah*, who in the thirtith yeere begat *Heber*: *Heber* at thirtie foure *Peleg*, who being thirtie yeeres old begat *Regu*, and he at thirty two *Serug*, in whose thirtith veere *Nahor* was borne, who at nine and twenty begat *Terah*, who at seuentie yeeres begat *Abram*. Thus *Scaliger*, *Calusius*, *Buntingus*, *Arias Montanus*, *Genebrard*, *Pererius*, *Adrichomius*, *Opmeerus*, &c. But *Iunius*, *Broughton*, *Lydiat*, *Codomannus*, &c. adde sixtie yeeres more. For *Moses* saith, *Gen.* 11. 32. That *Terah* died in Charan, aged two hundred and fiue yeeres, and then *Abram* (as it is in the next Chapter) was seuentie fiue yeeres old; so that *Terah* when *Abram* was borne, was a hundred thirty yeeres old. Whereas therefore he is said at seuentie yeeres to beget *Abram*, *Nahor*, and *Haran*, it is to be vnderstood, that he then began to beget: [a] *Abram* being named first for diuine priuiledge, not because hee was eldest. The like phrase is vsed, *Gen.* 5. 32. *Noah* being fiue hundred yeeres old begat *Shem*, *Ham* and *Iaphet*, and yet neither were they all borne at once, nor was *Shem* the eldest: let the Reader choose whether of these opinions he best liketh.

a *Anno Mundi* 2008. *Abram* borne.

In the seuentie fiue yeere *Abram* went out of Charan, hauing receiued the promise; from whence to the departure of the Israelites out of Egypt, are numbred 430. yeeres. Rather herein we are to follow *Pauls* interpretation of *Moses* then *Genebrards*, who *Gal.* 3. 17. accounts those foure hundred and thirtie yeeres mentioned by *Moses*, *Exod.* 12. 40. from the promise made to *Abraham*, and not from the time that *Iacob* went downe with his familie into Egypt. So that the departure out of Egypt, after *Scaligers* computation, and some o-

thers

thers, *Perkins, Adrichomius, &c.* happened in the yeere of the World 2453. whereto if we adde those sixtie yeeres of *Terahs* life before mentioned, it amounteth to two thousand fiue hundred and thirteene. And so *Broughton* reckoneth. *Iunius* and *Lydyat* account two thousand fiue hundred and nine. The difference seemes to arise from hence, that one accounteth from *Abrams* departing out of Vr of the Chaldees; the other from his departure from *Haran*, after his fathers death about fiue yeeres after. But it were an endlesse worke to reconcile Chronologers in their different computations. Some reckon the fiue and twentieth, [b] *Scaliger* the fifteenth of Aprill, the day of their departure. And then the Hebrewes began their yeere at the Spring-Equinoctiall, which before they began in Autumne.

b *Ios. Scaliger annot. in Euseb.*

From this departure, to the building of *Salomons* Temple, [c] *Scaliger* reckoneth foure hundred and eightie yeeres, whose first foundations (he saith) were laid the nine and twentieth of May being Wednesday, *Anno Mundi* 2933. and of the great Iulian Period (which differeth sixten hundred sixtie foure yeeres from the yeere of the World) 3697. In this computation of foure hundred and eightie yeeres, betwixt the departure and foundation of the Temple, many Chronologers agree, *Arias Montanus, Adrichomius, Broughton, Perkyns, Lydyat, &c.* although some dissent much. The somme arisseth of these parcels. *Moses* died fortie yeeres after their deliuerance. *Ioshua* ruled seuenteene; *Othoniel* fortie; *Ehud* fourescore; *Gideon* fortie; *Abimelech* three; *Thola* twentie three; *Iaer* twentie two; *Iephte* sixe; *Ibsan* seuen; *Elam* ten; *Abdon* eight; *Sampson* twentie; *Heli* fortie; *Samuel* and *Saul* fortie; *Dauid* fortie; *Salomon* in thesouth yeere and second month beganne to build his Temple, after which hee raigned thirtie seuen yeeres.

c *Ios. Scaliger. de Em. T. lib. 5. & in notis p. 131. Lydyat. 2988. Troy was taken by the Græcians A. M. 2767. Scal. E. T. l. 5.*

* *An. M.* 3360. d *Ezek.* 4. 5. *Lydy.* 3417.

* Then thence to the destruction of the Temple vnder *Zedekias*, are a counted foure hundred twentie and seuen. This agrees with [d] *Ezekiels* account, reckoning a day for a yeere, three hundred and ninety daies or yeeres after the Apostasie of Israel from God, the rebellion against the house of *Dauid* in the beginning of *Rehoboams* raigne, by the meanes of *Ieroboam*; to which if we adde seuen and thirtie yeeres which *Salomon* raigned after the foundation of the Temple, the summe is foure hundred twentie seuen. The same appeareth thus; *Roboam* reigned seuenteene yeeres; *Abiam* three; *Asa* fortie one; *Iehosaphat* twentie fiue; *Iehoram* eight; *Ahaziah* one; *Athaliah* sixe; *Ioash* fortie; *Amazia* twentie nine; *Azaria* or *Vzzia* fiftie two. Betwixt *Amazia* and *Azaria* the kingdome was ruled eleuen yeeres by the States, as some gather out of 2. *Reg.* 15. 1. (others reckon it not.) *Iotham* sixteene; *Ahaz* sixteene; *Ezekiah* twentie nine; *Manasses* fiftie fiue; *Amon* two; *Iosias* thirtie one; *Iehoahaz* three moneths; *Eliakim* or *Iehoiakim* eleuen yeeres; *Iehoiachin* three moneths; *Zedechiah* or *Mattaniah* eleuen yeeres. The little difference from the former number may be ascribed to the current, and vnfinished yeeres of some of their raignes.

From this time of *Sedekias* ruine, some begin the reckoning of the seuentie yeeres captiuitie; in which time others comprehend all *Sedekias* raigne, and account the returne vnder *Cyrus* to bee fiftie nine yeeres after this desolation; and from thence a hundred and eight to the Edict of *Darius Nothus*; from which time are numbred two hundred fiftie nine to the Dedication of *Iudas Maccabeus*; and from thence a hundred sixtie two yeeres to the birth of Christ. So [e] *Scaliger*.

e *Scal. de Em. lib. 7.*

It were a worke irksome to my selfe, and tedious to the Reader, to recite the variable opinions of Chronologers, or to trauerse their arguments about these points.

They which list to see the varietie of opinions of Iewish, Greeke, Latin, old and new Chronologers, may see *Genebr. Chron. lib. 1. in fine.* Likewise see our fourth booke, *cap. 4. & Ios. ph. Antiq. & Cat. Sign. de republ. hebr. l. 5.* haue set down the analogue of high Priests from the first to the last. *Ian in 1. Mac. 1. Scal. E. T. l. 5.*

To recite here their high Priests and later Kings, with the time of their pontificalitie and raigne, out of *Arias Montanus*, I hold not vnfit. First, *Iesus* returned with *Zorobabel*, and built the Temple, whose time of Priest-hood, after *Scaliger*, *Iunius*, and those that reckon vpon the Edict of *Darius Nothus*, must needs be very long. To leaue that therfore his sonne *Ioacim* [f] succeeded in the Priest-hood twentie eight yeeres, besides twentie yeeres with his father. *Eliasib* held the Priest-hood one and fortie yeeres; *Ioiada* twentie fiue; *Ionathan* twentie foure; *Ieddoa* twentie seuen, till the time of *Alexander*; *Onias* twentie seuen, after *Philo*: but *Eusebius* saith twentie three; *Simon Iustus* thirteene; *Eleazar* twentie, *Manasses* twentie seuen, *Onias* thirty nine.

f *Ios. ph. Antiq. & Cat. Sign. de republ. hebr. l. 5.*

Afterwards the Syrian Kings appointed high-Priests, of whom *Iason* was Priest three yeeres; *Menelaus* twelue yeeres, in whose seuenth yeere *Iudas Maccabeus* began to administer the Common-wealth. *Ionathas* brother of *Iudas* ruled eighteene yeeres, *Simon* his brother was both Priest and Captaine eight yeeres; *Ioannes Hircanus* his sonne, thirtie one. Whereas they had vsed to date their contracts according to the yeeres from *Alexander*, as we reade in the bookes of *Maccabees*: when *Simon Hircanus* was high Priest, that order was abolished, and another taken, that euery date (should be expressed in such or *such a yeere of N. high Priest of the great God.* But lest the writing being cancelled, should bee neglected, and perhaps *the Name of God* cast with it on the dung-hill, the wise-men abolished that order on the third of *Tisri*, which they instituted a holy-day. As for the name of *Maccabees*, *Iunius*

mus saith, it came from the inscription of those foure letters *M. C. B. I.* in the banners of those Princes which deliuered the Iewes from the Macedonian thraldome. *Scaliger* saith, that *Iudas* onely and properly was so called, but by abuse of speech was not onely giuen to all of that kindred, but to all which suffered in those times persecution for Religion; as the seuen brethren and others. The name *Hasmonai* began with that *Hircanus*, *Scaliger* thinketh, because in the sixty eight *Psalme* it is by the Iewes interpreted *Prince*.

Aristobulus sonne of *Hircanus*, first after the captiuitie called himselfe king, and raigned one yeere: *Ioannes Alexander* his brother, twentie seuen; after him his wife *Alexandra*, nine: *Hircanus* her sonne three moneths: *Aristobulus* his brother three yeeres: Ierusalem was taken of *Pompey*, and *Hircanus* recouered the Priest-hood, which he held two and twentie yeeres: *Antigonus* by aide of the Parthians possessed Iudæa fiue yeeres, and in his second yeere *Herod* was proclaimed King by the Romans, who tooke the Citie the fift yeere of *Antigonus*, and raigned foure and thirtie.

Scaliger [d] ascribeth to *Herod*: kingdome the number after *Eusebius* account, reckoning from the birth of *Abram* 1977. he died 2016. *Archelaus* his son was made by *Augustus* Tetrarch of Ierusalem 2016. & was banished 2025. *Agricola* was made king by *Caligula* 2053. *Agrippa* his son by *Claudius* 2060. and died 2116. thirtie yeeres after the destruction of the Temple. The Dynastie of the Herodians lasted 139. yeeres. Thus *Scaliger*. He attributeth the Natiuitie of Christ to the 3948. yeere of the world.

d *Can. Isag. l. 2.*

Here we must leaue the Chronologers contending of the yeere of the world, in which this blessed Natiuitie happened; some adding many more yeeres, some not allowing so many. It is certaine by the Scripture, that he was borne in the one and fortieth, or two and fortieth of *Augustus*, baptized in the fifteenth of *Tiberius*, then beginning to be about thirtie yeeres of age: in the thirtie three yeere he was crucified. In the seuentie two, as *Baronius*, and seuentie one yeere of Christ, as *Buntingus* and *Linely* account, Ierusalem was destroyed by *Titus*, in the second of *Vespasian*. *Arias Montanus* reckoneth this the yeere of the World 3989. and saith, that the Hebrewes reckon it the 3841. which must needes be false. The fault ariseth from the false computation of the Persian and Græcian Monarchies. [e] *Iosephus* counteth from the time of *Herod* to the destruction of the Temple, twentie eight high Priests, and a hundred and seuen yeeres. After *Scaliger* in his *Can. Isag. l. 3.* this yeere 1612. is the 1614. of Christ, of the World 5461. after the Iewish account of *Hillel* 5372. of the Armenians 1061. of the Iulian Period 6525. of the Hegira 1021. *Anno* 4. *Olymp.* 597. The Dionysian account, which wee vsually follow, was not generally receiued till after the time of *Charles* the Great.

e *Ios. Antiq. lib. 20.*

Scal. Ep. T. 5. p.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Iewish Talmud, and the Composition and estimation thereof: also of the Iewish Learned men, their succession, their Cabalists, Masorites, their Rabbines, Vniuersities, Students, Rabbinicall creations, their Scriptures, and the translations of them.

§. I.

Of the Talmud.

Rabbi *Moshe Mikkotzi*, [a] in a worke of his, set forth *Anno* 1236. as *Buxdorfius* citeth him, [b] saith, that the *Written Law* which God gaue to *Moses*, and *Moses* to the Israelites, is obscure and hard, because it speaketh some things contradictorie (which hee seeketh to proue by some places [c] misinterpreted) and because it is imperfect, and contayneth not all things meete to be knowne. For who shall teach vs (saith he) the notes of Birds and Beasts? (a Franciscan might answere him [d] out of the Legend of Saint *Francis*, the Patron of his Order) who shall teach them the propriteis and nature of points & accents of Letters? Also, what fatte might be eaten, what not? &c. Many such things are defectiue in the Law, and therefore there is neede of some other Exposition of the written Law, whence these things

a *R. Mos. in Sopher. mitzvas gadol.*

b *Synag. Iudaic. Buxd. latine reddit. ab Herm. Gormberg. c. 1.*

c *Exod. 12. 15. Deut. 16. 3. & Levit. 23. 6. Ex. 19. 11. & Exod. 20. 12. &c.*

d Legend of Saint *Francis*, where hee is said to preach to the beasts, and speake to the Swallowes.

e *Pirke seu capita R. Eliezer. cap. 1.*
f *Radicalia pregesta auditores scriptis, accepertunt, annexa vero ore exposita dictierunt P. Rit. Epist. de Talmudica doctrina in præfat. ex Rambam.*
g *R. Abra. E. Ezra. R. Salom. Iarchi & alij in Deut. 4 14.*
* *R. Bechai. E. odo. 34.*

things might be learned. This Exposition (for-sooth) must be their Talmud, the generation of which Viper, touched before, we will here more fully declare.

They say, that *Moses* on Mount Sinai was not with GOD forte daies and fortie nights *to keepe Geese.* And GOD could haue written those Tables of the Law in an houre, and sent him a way with them; so to haue preuented that Idolatrie with the *Golden Calfe.* But GOD brought *Moses* into a Schoole, e and there gaue him the Law in writing first, and then in all that long time expounded f the same, shewing the cause, manner, measure, foundation, and intention thereof in the true sense. This vnwritten and Verball Law did *Moses* 5 teach *Iosuna*, he the Elders; from these it was deriued to the Prophets. After *Zacharie* and *Malachie*, the last of these, it came to the great *Sanhedrin*, and after them, by Tradion from father to sonne.

And * *Rabbi Bechai* saith, That *Moses* learned the *Law written*, in the day time; and this *Traditionall Law* by night: for then he could not see to write. *Rabbi Moseche Mikkatzi* shewe-th the cause why God would deliuer the same by mouth only, and not in writing, left (I wisse) the Gentiles should peruert this, as they did the other which was written. And in the day of Iudgement, when GOD shall demand who are the *Israelites*, the Gentiles shall make challenge, because of the *Law written*, but the Iewes onely shall be acceped, as hauing this *Simani*, this verball exposition. GOD also (say they) gaue them *Chachamim*, Wise-men, authors of diuers ordinances amongst them, as to blesse GOD at the Sunne-rising, and Sunne-setting: And of Schooles where children should be taught the Law of *Moses* in euery Citie, and where the Law of *Moses* should be read weekely; and that the Israelites should not eate or drinke with the Gentiles, nor what they had dressed; after the example of * *Daniel*, &c.

* Dan. 1. 8.

But when the Temple was destroyed, and the Iewes carried away captiues, then arose vp *Rabbi Iuda Hannasi*, who is called (for his humilitie and godlinesse) our *Great Master*; to whom GOD procured such fauour in the eyes of *Antoninus* the Emperour, that hee had authoritie to assemble out of all places of the Empire, the most learned Iewes, to consult in this their almost desperate Estate, what course to take for the preseruation of the Law amongst the people. And although this *Rabula* or Law, giuen by word of mouth, might not bee committed to writing; yet in consideration and commiseration of their 30 miserie, whatsoeuer thereof was remayning in memoye; hee writ in a booke which hee called *Misshna*, that is, a h *Deuteronomie*, or Law reiterated, containing sixe summes, diuided into sixtie lesse parts or tractates, and these into fiue hundred thirtie two Chapters. Thus saye *R. Mikkatzi*: The contents of the sixe summes and their seuerall Tractates, you may see in * *Buxtorfius.*

In this booke were contayned the Traditions and ordinances of the Elders, according to the prescript whereof, the Iewish Synagogue was to bee ordered; and it was receiued and approued of the Iewish Synagogue, i in the yeere of Christ 219. k Some yeeres after, Rabbi *Iochanan*, Rector of the Vniuersitie of Ierusalem for the space of eightie yeeres, enlarged that booke, and called it the *Talmud of Ierusalem* (being fitted for their vse which dwelt in the land of Israel, as the other for Forreners) which for the difficultie and obscuritie thereof was not had in such estimation as the former, nor is it at this day. After him, Rabbi *Asse* read in the Schooles those Tractates, handling euery yeere two of them; so in the sixtie yeeres of his Rector-ship, hee went twice through it all; but finished in writing onely fiue and thirtie Tractates. After him in the yeere l 427. *Marremar* was made Rector, to whom *Mar* the sonne of Rabbi *Asse* adioyned himselfe. These perfected that which Rabbi *Asse* had left vnfinished. And that which they thus added, was called *Gemara*, or the complement.

Thus the *Mischnaios*, and *Gemara* made vp the whole Talmud m. These two spent in their labours threescore and thirteene yeeres. And so in the yeere of our Lord 500. the Talmud was perfected, receiued for authenticall, and called the *Babylonian Talmud*, according to which the Iewes to this day behaue themselues in cases spirituall and temporall, accounting it as their ciuill and cannon Law. The Iewes ascribe the Ierusalem Talmud to the yeere of the World 4229. the other 4265. This is called the Talmud of Ierusalem saith *Serarius*) not because it was written there: But was compiled not in the Babylonian Vniuersitie, but in one of Israel, and in the Ierusalem language, which at that time was very corrupt and confused with Greekish, Persian and Roman mixtures. This was both begun and ended by R. *Iochanan* aforesaid, between the times of the Misna and Gemara. About the yeere 4860. and 1100. yeeres after Christ, *R. Isaac ben Iacob* in Spaine writ (so it is called) *The little Talmud.* And in the great and true Thalmud are the additions of R. *Barkaphra. Eldad Daniut* 60 sableth, that it is in Hebrew amongst his *enclosed Iewes.* Note also, that the name Thalmud or Talmud, is giuen sometimes to the whole worke, sometimes and often to the Gemara only, calling it the booke of the Misna and Talmud.

h *Pirqi Abot.*
* *Buxt. recens. op. Tal. 1 Chron. Heb. Tesmuch Dauid.*
k The Talmud is (in manner saith *Rambam*) nothing but a commentary on that *Misna*: a worke full of diuine, natural and politicall wisdome, saith *Galatinus*, of the parts thereof, see his first booke, c. 5. & *Buxd. Recens. op. Talm & Sext. Sen. Bib. l. 2. Pius* saith, it was compoied about the yere 150 Others say in the yere 220. *Wolf. Bibliot. Mundi. Centenar. 2. Scalig.* otherwise, *vid. E. T. pag. 614.*
l *Pet. Galat.* hath 436.
m Talmud is, the same that *Doctrina* or *Disciplinatio. Elias Thisb. vocat. Thalmud.*

And

And this is that Law verball, or deliuered by word of mouth, which is equalled to the other, without which the written law cannot be conceiued or vnderstood: The ioy of the hart (saith [o] *Aben Ezra*) and refreshing of the bones; betwixt which and the written Law here can finde no [p] difference, but being deliuered to them from their Elders. In one of their bookes, [q] printed at *Cremona* 1556. is this sentence. Thinke not that the Law written is the foundation, but rather the Law Traditionall is the right foundation: and according to this Law did God [r] make couenant with the Israelites; for God foresaw their captiuitie in time to come: and therefore left the people, among whom they should dwell, should write out and interpret this Law, as they did the other, God would not haue it written. And although in process of time this Law be now written, yet it is not explained by the Christians, because it is hard, and requireth a sharpe wit. That which is spoken of the Law, is applyed to commend their Talmud: *If you can frustrate* (saith the Lord) *my Couenant with the* [s] *day and the night*, that is, according to their booke *Tanchuma*, when you will no longer learne and obserue the Talmud. And in the [t] Talmud is thus recorded; To studie and reade in the Bible is a vertue, and not a vertue, that is, a small vertue: but to learne their *Mischna* or Talmud text, is a vertue worthy reward; and to learne by heart *Gemara* (the complement of the Talmud) is a vertue so great, that none can be greater. The [u] Wise men (say they) are more excellent then the Prophets; and the wordes of the Scribes more louely then those of the Prophets: and therefore the one forced to confirme them with miracles, the other simply to bee beleeued, as is said, *Deut.* 17.10. When some of his Schollers visited *R. Eliazer* in his sicknesse, and said, *Rabbi*, teach vs the wayes of life, that we may finde euerlasting life: his answer was, Giue honour to your fellow Students, and turne away your Children from the studie of the Bible, and place them betwixt the knees of the wise. Neither can hee (saith the Talmud in other places) haue a quiet conscience, which returnes from the studie of the Talmud to the studie of the Bible. And, Nothing is more excellent then the most holy Talmud. And, it is impossible to stand on the foundation of the written Law, but by the traditionall. And to dissent from his Doctor, is as to dissent from God; to beleeue the words of the wise, is as to beleeue God himselfe. They say, The Law is like to water, the Misna to wine, the Gemara or Talmud to Preserues: the Law like to Salt, the Misna to Pepper, the Talmud to Spices. They blispheme, that God studies the Bible in the day time, and the sixe orders of the Talmud by night.

Hence it is, that the Rabbins are more exercised in their Talmud, then in the Bible; as on which their Faith is founded more then on the other: and according to this doe they expound the Scripture. And as their Talmud is most certaine, so also is that (whatsoeuer) exposition of their Rabbins, according to the same. Thus saith Rabbi *Isaac Abbuhabb*, whatsoeuer our Rabbins in their Sermons and mysticall explainations haue spoken, wee are no lesse firmely to beleeue then the *Law of Moses*. And if any thing therein seeme repugnant to our sense, we must impute it to the weakenesse of our conceit, and not to their words, as for example: it is written in the Talmud, [x] that a Rabbin once preached, that the time would come, when a woman should euery day bee deliuered of her burthen: according to the saying, *Iere.* 31. 7. *Concepit statimque peperit.* One not beleeuing this, the Rabbin answered, that hee spake not of a common woman, but of a Henne, which should euery day lay an egge.

Such are their expositions, I know not, whether fitter to be heard of *Heraclitus*, or *Democritus*, more lamentable or ridiculous; and yet is it there said, that their wordes are the words of the *liuing God*, whereof not one shall fall to the ground; and must not bee deride either in word or thought, whether yee respect the persons, or workes of their Rabbins. Therefore in a Dutch booke, printed in Hebrew characters at Cracouia 1597. it is written, that the Iewes are bound to say Amen, not onely to their Prayers, but to all their Sermons and Expositions, according to the Prophet *Esay*, [y] *Open the gates, the people commeth (sehomer amunim) which keepeth righteousnesse*, that is (say they) which saying *Amen*, beleeueth all things which the wise Rabbins haue written. And if any bee so simple, that he cannot vnderstand, yet must hee beleeue.

When two Rabbins (saith their Talmud) maintaine contrary opinions, yet must not men contradict them, because both of them hath his Kabala or Tradition for the same: and this is a rule in their Rabbins, Remember rather the word of the Scribes, than of the Law of *Moses*. *R. Salomon Iarchi* vpon Deuteronomie, chap. 17. verse 12. *Thou shalt not decline from the word that they shall shew thee, to the right hand, or to the left*, hath these words; And when he saith vnto thee, Of the right hand, that it is the left; and, Of the left hand, that it is [z] the right, thou must beleeue it; how much more if hee saith, The right hand is the right, &c.

They haue a story in their [a] Legend for the same, That there came a *Goi* (a Gentile) to *Sammai*, and asked how many Lawes they had? who answered two, a Written and a Verball.

o *Ab. Ezra in Proem. Pentateuch.*
p *Sic Tridentina Synodus sess. 4. dec. 1 & dicit:*
q *Semqh, vel Sephur mitzuot keton R. Isaac.*
r *Exod. 34. 27.*
s *Ps. 18. 20. Esa. 59. vlt. Ierem. 33. 25.*
t *Tractat. Bamamaziah.*
u *Vid. de his plura ap. Buxd. Syn. Iud. & in lib. Rezenhuyik operis Talmud, impress. 1613.*
x *Tract. de Sabbat. c. 2. p. 30.*
y *Cap. 26. 2.*
z *A.R. must be beleeued, though he say the right hand is the left.*
a *Talmud. tract. de Sabbat.*

Hee replyed, the written Law I acknowledge no lesse then thou; make mee therefore a Iew, and teach me the other. *Sammai* refused; and hee went to *Hillel* (these both liued a little before the time of Christ) who admitted and instructed him; after hee had him pronounce the letters in order, *Aleph, Beth, Gimel, &c.* which he did. The next day he bade him say the same letters backward, *Gimel, Beth, Aleph.* The Gentile said, Rabbi, yesterday you taught me otherwise; and yet, said *Hillel* you beleeue me, and so leeame of me; which you must no lesse doe in the Traditionall Law, beleeuing all that is therein.

I had almost thought in reading of this *Hillel*, I had heard the Catechizing of some Romish Conuert, that with an implicite faith (beleeuing and worshipping hee knowes not what) *repente prodit Catholicus*, is foole Catholike in an hower, resigning himselfe to whatsoeuer that Church teacheth vpon an *ipsa dixit*; or else that I had beene reading the life and precepts of [b] *Ignatius Loiola* the Iesuite-founder (so I keeis the story, though the names differ) who prescribed himselfe, and trayned vp others, *Ad sapientiam hanc sanctamque stultitiam caeca, vt ipse appellabat, obedientia*, saith *Maffeus* in a large Discourse hereof: *Paulo Omnia probate* was in those dayes; but *prudentiam non obedientia, sed imperantia esse respondit Ignatius: negabat obedientia nomine dignum haberi oportere, qui legitimo superiori non omni voluntate iudicium quoque submitteret: in superiorum iussu examinando esse arrogantiam.* And thus writeth *Ignatius* himselfe: *Perit celebris illa Obedientia caeca simplicitas, chim apud nos ipsos in questionem vocamus rectene precipiatur an secus: perit humilitas, perit in rebus arduis fortitudo, &c.* To obey in outward execution, and effecting the command of a Superiour, may proue no vertue of patience, but a cloake of malice, a very imperfect perfection, not worthy the name of vertue, vntill the inward affect bee ioyned to the outward effect: neither is this a whole sacrifice, except hee not onely *will* the same, but *iudge*, and bee of the same sentence with his superiour: hee must in the person of his superiour behold Christ, who can neither deceiue nor be deceiued; ready alway to defend, neuer to mislike his command; yea, whatsoever his superiour enioyneth, hee must accept as the precept and will of God; and as hee is readie to beleeue the Catholique faith, so [c] to be carried *without further search*, with a blind force of the will, desirous to obey. Thus did *Abraham* when hee was commanded to offer *Isaac*; and therefore thus must the Iesuite doe when an Ignatian Superiour commands, or else hee is no Holocaust for the Loiolan Altar. Euen as a *Corkesse*, saith the Iesuitical Constitution, [d] which will bee drawne any way, or a *Staffe* in an old mans hand plyant as he pleaseth: so, and so must [e] our waxen Iesuites bee; Asses without vnderstanding; nay, carkasses without life, statues and statues and blockes, guided by their guides, though it bee to cracke the *Crowner* of Kings. And as his legacie hee bequeathed this a little before his Death to the societie, that they should bee asplyant waxe, as an Image, flexible at pleasure: yea, though it seeme against Conscience, yet must a man beleeue his Superiour rather then himselfe. And if the Pope should bid him crosse the Sea in the next Boat hee met with, though destitute of sayles, oares, mast and helme, and without all kind of prouision, he would doe it willingly. This hee called *Mortification*. Others which are not thus blind, haue their sinnes still remaining, and haue but one foot in Religion. This obedience (saith another [f] of them) is the character imprinted by Diuine, and not humane hand in this societie.

What Diuell of Hell could euer haue taught Murthers and Treasons to be tollerable, nay commendable, nay meritorious, if his Scholler should not first passe this Iesuitical Retrograde, from a Christian and a Man, with the losse of Religion and Reason, to become (as these *Rome*-Rabbins terme it) a Carkasse indeed, an Image, or a Staffe in the hand of *That old one*, which (like the Ægyptian Inchanters) hee might make a Serpent at his pleasure? But let the truth preuaile, and *Moses* Rod eate vp these Serpent-rods of the Ægyptians. And what more could old *Hillel* say to his Disciples? Or doth God himselfe exact? *Bernard* throughout his seueneth Epistle, teacheth more soundly of the Pope and those religious Superiours; [g] *Nec dico praepositorum mandata esse à subditis indicenda, vbi nihil iubere deprehendunter diuinis contrarium institutis. Sed ne estariam esse dico & prudentiam qua aduertatur, si quid aduersetur, & libertatem qua ingenuè contemnatur. Hanc ego nunquam amuler obedientiam: talem mihi nunquam libet modestiam, vel potius molestiam imitari. Talis siquidem obedientia omni est contemptu deterior: talis quoque modestia vltra omnem modum extenditur. ----- O patientia, omni digna impatientia!* But to leaue this question and our Iesuites till further time; Iewish Rabbins auerre, that whosoeuer mocketh or contemneth their sayings, shall bee punished in hot and boyling *Zoub*, or excrement in hell. And thus much of their Talmud, the originall and authoritie thereof. More modest yet were those Fathers [h] of Trent, that would ascribe but equalitie of reuerence, and respect to their Traditions with the Scripture. *(With equall affection and esteeme*, say they, *wee receiue and reuerence Traditions, and the bookes of the old and new Testament:)* which must needs acknowledge themselues beholding

b *Ignatij vita l.3.c.7. per P. Maffeum.*

Ignatij Loiolae Epistola de obedientia ad frat. in Lusitania & Hispaniae vita Ignat. l.5.c.4.

c *Sic ad esaciendo, quatenus, superior dixerit, caeca quadam impetu voluntatis pertinacia cupiebat sine vllo prorsus disquisitione seramini.*

d *Vide Reg. Soc. Iesu. fam. constitut. 31. ad 37. ac si ced. ner essent, quod quoque versus ferri se sinit, atque senio hac illac, qui vbicunque & quacunque in re, &c. Ribad. vbi sup.*

e *Iesuites stare diuinitus.*

f *Orlandini trist. pr. lef. l.12.*

g *Bern. Epist. 7.*

h *Sess. 4. dec. 1. Pari pietatis affectu & reuerentia traditiones, vnà cum libris veteris & nouiTestamenti suscipimus & veneramur.*

holding to them; left if they complaine they follow not their Traditionarie Masters in making fit lower: and they haue their Anathema as ready as the Rabbins their Zoab; and their Traditions, Canons, and Constitutions must interpret as well as their Kabala.

And some of that hotter societie [i] haue found fiue priuiledges of Tradition aboue Scripture, as being written in the hearts of men by the finger of God, being more ancient, giuing confirmation to the Scripture, not subiect to wrestling, and containing all truth: whereas poore Scripture (for no better defending of the Iesuiticall, Iebusiticall, Iezabelicall assertions) is condemned first of her meane originall, as being written but by the Apostles (not the finger of God.) Secondly, as a later vpstart: and thirdly, as receiued vpon the Churches authoritie: and fourthly, a dead letter written in paper or parchment with Inke, subiect to wrestling; like a sheath which admits any blade whether of leade, wood, or brasse, as well as the true one. And lastly, not containing all the mysteries of Religion explicitly, as being not therefore giuen to prescribe an exact forme of Faith, but written by some, vpon some occasions, to some Churches; and therefore in controuersies, as of Images, Inuocation of Saints and the like, where Scripture seemes to speake for heretikes, wee must haue recourse to the other kind of Scripture written in the heart of the Church, as Interpreter of all Scriptures, Iudge of all opinions, and whatsoeuer else foule-mouthed blasphemie with faire pretext can arrogate to this, or derogate from the other. O that men would therefore *hate that Whore* which these impudent Panders prostitute thus decked with the spoyles of diuine Scriptures, which haue another testimonie of themselues; (and therefore the testimonie of God) that [k] *All Scripture is giuen by inspiration of God, and is profitable for Doctrine, for reproofe, for correction, for Instruction in righteousnesse*: yea, and hereunto sufficient, *that the man of God* (whose men, whose emissaries are these gaine-sayers?) *may bee perfect* (throughly perfected) *vnto all good workes*. But leaue wee *Simeon* and *Leui*, brethren in euill together. Yet, before wee leaue their Talmud (though highly esteemed amongst them) I thought meet also to speake more largely both of that and of their learned Rabbins, out of *Petrus Galatinus, Sixtus Senensis, Paulus Ricius, Rambam*, and others that write thereof.

The [l] Traditionall Law they call *Tora sebebalpe*, that is, the Law which is in the mouth, or deliuered by word of mouth. Rabbi *Moses Aegyptius* telleth the passages thereof thus; *Iosbua* receiuing it of *Moses*, deliuered it to *Phineas* the sonne of *Eleazar* the Priest: *Phineas* to *Heli* the Priest: hee to *Samuel* the Prophet: *Samuel* to *Dauid*: hee to *Achias* the Prophet, who deliuered the same to *Elias*, the teacher of *Elisha*: *Elisha* to *Elisaeus* to *Ioiada* the Priest: this *Ioiada* to *Zacharias*: *Zacharias* to *Hosea*, and hee to *Amos*: *Amos* to *Esay*, of whom *Micheas* receiued it, and of him *Ioel*: *Nahum* from him, and from him againe *Habacuck*, who taught it *Sephonie*, the Instructer of *Ieremie*, of whom *Baruch* the Scribe learned it: *Baruch* taught it *Ezra*. Vntill this time the Iewes had none other but the written Scripture.

Now for their Scriptures; they call the same *Arbaa Veesrim* (that is, the foure and twentie) of the [m] number of the bookes after their computation, all which they reduce to foure parts; The first of which they call *Tora*, the Law, or *Humas*, the Pentateuch, or fiue bookes: and they call euery booke after the first words in the beginning thereof. The second part hath foure bookes; *Iosbua, Iudges, Samuel*, and *Kings*. The third part comprehendeth foure other, which they call the last Prophets; *Esay, Ieremie, Ezekiel*, and the booke of the twelue smaller Prophets. The fourth part is called *Chettuuim*, and hth eleuen bookes, Paralipomenon or Chronicles, the Psalmes, the Prouerbes, *Iob, Ruth, Ecclesiastes*, Lamentations, Canticles, *Ester, Daniel, Ezra*, which they make one with *Nehemia, Ecclesiasticus, Iudith*, and *Tobias*; and the first booke of *Maccabees* they haue, but reckon not among the foure and twentie. The third and fourth bookes of *Ezra* I haue not seene (saith *Galatinus*) in Hebrew; but some of them say, that they are lately found at Constantinople: but the second of *Maccabees*, and the Booke of *Philo* (called the Wisedome of *Salomon*) I neuer saw but in Greeke, nor those additions to *Daniel*. But after the Babylonian captiuitie, *Ezra* writing out the Law, which had beene burned in the destruction of the Citie, other Wisemen writ out the Exposition of the Law, left, if another destruction should happen, the same might perish. And from that time, all the Wise-men, which are called the men of the *Great Synagogue*, in their teaching the Law, deliuered the same both in word and writing, vntill the Talmud was written. (It was then, saith *Picus*, in seuentie bookes, after the number of the seuentie Elders.)

These mens authoritie hth the next place to the Prophets. And are in this order mentioned in their Talmud. *Ezra* deliuered the same to *Simon* the Priest, called *Iaddus*, who was honoured of *Alexander*. This *Simon* deliuered this explaination to *Antigonus*: *Antigonus* to *Iosephus* the sonne of *John*, and to *Iosephus* the sonne of *Iebezer*: They to *Nuatus Arbelensis*, and *Iosbua* the sonne of *Peratria*, whose Auditor the Iewes falsly affirme, that Iesus our

i *Galati. de Arcanis lib. 1. per totum vsq. de P. Ricius. de Talmud. dist. & praefat. 13. praef. R. Mos. Aeg. Misraios proem. Reichlin. de arte Cabal. lib. 1. & c. 10. D. Whitak. de script. quest. 6. 6.* the with, that the Iewes accounted so many bookes of the Bible, as they had letters in the Alphabet, to wit, two and twentie here alledgeth authors, *Gregor. Naz. Hilary, Cyrillus Hierosol. Epiph. Hieron. Isidorus, Niceph. Leontius, &c.*

k As all wee write & speake is expressed by 22. letters, so all our Christian doctrine in 22. volumes, saith *Hugo*. As for 24. or 27. as some number, *Epiph. haer. 8. & de Mens. & pond. Ruth* 1. saith hee, reckoned with the booke of Iudges, *Nehemie* with *Ezra*, and *Samuel, Kings* and *Chronicles* are not diuided. *Inuenuntur in veteri Canone cap. 777. in lege versus 5845. in Ecclesiastic. 9324. Hugo 8064. vid Sixt. S. Bibliothec. l. 1.* The diuision into Chapters was first by *St. Lignton* Ar. Bp. or *Cant.* for olde bookes are after the Canon of *Eusch. c. 8.*

l *Costeri. Enchirid. de fac. scripsit. 2. Tim. 3. 16.*

m *Galat. de Arcanis lib. 1. per totum vsq. de P. Ricius. de Talmud. dist. & praefat. 13. praef. R. Mos. Aeg. Misraios proem. Reichlin. de arte Cabal. lib. 1. & c. 10. D. Whitak. de script. quest. 6. 6.*

n The Talmud blameth *Helifeus* for too much curiosity to Greeke, and *Rabbi Yehoia*, for the like toward Iesus of Nazareth, who had followed this his Master to Alexandria, being persecuted by King *Iannai*, who returning to Ierusalem, and commending his sinnes that his Scholler thinking hee had spoken of his Hostesse, said, Shee had round eyes. What, Varlet (said the R.) hast thou such a thought? and presently commanded him to be proclaimed an Anathema, with the sound of foure hundred Trumpets, nor would after vpon his repentance admit him, whereupon hee became an Idolater, a Magician, &c. This *Iannai* was *Hircanus*, sonne of *Simon*, 110. yeeres before our Sauiour, and therefore it was another Iesus: or else this is a malicious deuice of the Talmudist, which conuerteth it selfe with the foolish computation of time.

blessed Sauiour n was, which liued an hundred and ten yeers after. Those two deliuered the same to *Iuda* the son of *Tibeus*, and *Simon* the sonne of *Sata*. These to *Semaia* and *Abatalion*: and they to *Hillel* and *Samaus*. *Hillel* flourished an hundred yeeres before the destruction of the second Temple, and had eightie Schollers or Disciples, all of excellent wit and learning: the other thirtie of them for their excellence, had the Diuinitie descending vpon them as *Moses*, and other thirtie obtained that the Sunne should stand still for them, as *Iosuna*; the rest were accounted meane. Of these, the greatest was *Ionothas* sonne of *Vzziel*, the least *John* the sonne of *Zacheus*, which yet knew the Scripture and Talmud, and all things else to the examples of Foxes, and Narrations of Diuels.

Hillel and *Samaus* deliuered this explaination to this *John*, and to * *Simeon* the Iust, sonne of the said *Hillel*, who after receiued Christ in his armes, and prophesied of him in the Temple. *Rabbi Moses* proceeded, and saith, that *Simeon* taught *Gamaliel*, *Pauls* Master; and *Gamaliel* instructed his sonne *Rabban Simeon*, who was slaine of *Hadrian* the Emperour, after he had taught his sonne *Iudas*, whom the Iewes for his Learning and Holinesse call *Rabbenu Haccados*, (that is, our holy Master) of which honourable name there had beene another in the time of the Roman Consuls. These for the most part, besides almost infinite others of their hearers, haue left many things written of the explaination of the Law; of which the *Talmud* was compacted.

Of the vnreasonable absurdities and impious blasphemies of the *Talmud*, howsoeuer abominable in themselues, yet let it not be irkesome to the Reader to see some mentioned, therein to obserue the depth of diuine vengeance, which in this blinded Nation wee may *beare and feare*. For who would thinke it possible that any could entertaine in his heart, that which there they haue written of GOD? as, that * before the creation of this world to keepe himselfe from idlenesse, hee made and marred many other worlds: that he spends three houres euery day in reading the Iewish law? that *Moses* one day ascending to Heauen, found him writing accents therein: that GOD euery day maketh deuout prayers: that GOD hath a place a-part, wherein hee afflicteth himselfe with weeping, for bringing so much euill on the Iewes: that euery day hee putteth on their Tephilin and Zizis, and so falleth downe and prayeth: that as oft as hee remembreth their miseries, hee lets fall two teares into the Ocean, and knocks his breft with both his hands: that the last three houres of the day, hee recreateth himselfe in playing with the Fish Leuiathan; which once in his anger he slew, and powdred for the feast, whereof you shall after * heare: that hee created the Element of fire on the Sabbath day: that the *RR.* one day reasoning against *R. Eliezer*, because GOD with a voyce from a heauen interposed his sentence for for *Eliezer*, the other *RR.* anathematized GOD, who thereat smiling, said, *My children haue ouer-come me*. But I am weary to adde the rest of their restlesse impieties against the Almightie. Neither haue the Creatures escaped them: Thus the *Talmud* telleth, That GOD once whipped *Gabriel* for a great fault with a whip of fire: that as *Adam*, before *Eue* was made, had carnally vsed both Males and Females of other Creatures; So the Rauen p which *Noe* sent out of the Arke, was iealous of *Noah*, lest hee should lye with his Mate; that *Iobs* storie was fayned: that *Dauid* sinned not in his murther and adulterie, and they which thinke hee did sinne, are Heretikes: that vnnaturall copulation with a mans wife is lawfull; that he is vnworthy the name of a Rabbine, which hateth not his enemie to death; that GOD commanded them by any manner of meanes to spoyle the Christians of their goods, and to vse them as beasts; yea, they may kill them, and burne their Gospels, which they entitle, *Iniquitie reuealed*. Iniquitie reuealed indeed, is the declaration of these things: as of their opinion of the * soule; if it sinne in one body, it passeth into a second: if there also, into third: if it continue sinning, it is cast into Hell: the soule of *Abel* passed into *Seth*, and the same after into *Moses*: the soules of the vnleamed shall neuer recouer their bodies. Two *RR.* euery weeke on Friday created two Calues, and then did eate them. Nothing ought to be eaten by euen numbers, but by vneuen, where with GOD is pleased. Perhaps they had read in *Virgil, Numero Deus impare gaudet*; but this is common to all Magicians. And what doe I weary you and my selfe, anticipating the following discourse, wherein wee shall haue further occasion to relate the like absurdities? which yet if any deny, they say hee denyeth GOD.

* *Luk.* 2. 28.
* *Vid. Sixt. Sen. bib. l. 2. obi. trac. & loci citatur.*
o *Cap.* 20. p *Lyr. in Gen.* 8. mentioneth this, and *Pisk. Carb. lib.* 1. c. 10. hath a long Iewish tale of the Rauen, euen still iealous, &c.
* μετεμψυχωσεις.

§. II.

Of the ancient Iewish Authors, and their Kabalists.

AFter the Times of Christ, *Philo* and *Iosephus* are famous: and after the Resurrection of Christ, the Iewes were of three sorts; some true beleeuers, others absolute denyers, the third would haue the Christian Religion, and the Iewish Ceremonies to bee conioyned in equall obseruation; against which third sort the first Councell, *Act.* 15. was summoned.

The moderne Iewes insist principally on the litterall sense of Scripture; the Elder sought out a spiritually and mystically sense, accounting this a great matter: the literall but small, like to a candle of small value [q], with the light whereof, the other (as a pearle hidden in a darke roome) is found. The Talmudists followed the allegorically sense; the Cabalists, the Anagogicall.

As concerning this *Cabala*, in olde times [r] they communicated not that skill to any, but to such as were aged and learned; and therefore nothing thereof, or very little is found written of the Ancient, except of *Rabbi Simeon Ben Iohai*. But the Doctors of the later Iewes, lest thar learning should perish, haue left somewhat thereof in writing, but so obscurely, that few know it, and they which doe, account it a great secret, and hold it in great regard. So saith *Elias* [s]: in the bookes of the *Kabala* are contained the secrets of the Law and the Prophets, which man receiued from the mouth of man, vnto our [t] Master *Moses* (on him be peace) and therefore it is so called, and is diuided into two parts, Speculatiue and Practike. But I am not worthy to explaine this businesse, and by reason of my sinnes haue not learned this wisedome, not knowne this knowledge of those Saints. The word *Cabala* signifieth a *receiuing*, and in that respect may bee supplyed to all their Traditionall receipts; but in vse (which is the Law of speech) it is appropriated to that faculte, which (as [u] *Ricius* describeth it) by the type of the Mosaical law insinuateth the secrets of diuine and humane things: and because it is not grounded on reason, nor deliuered by writing, but by the faith of the hearer receiued, it is called Cabala. Or (if you had rather haue it in [x] *Reuchlines* words) it is a Symbolicall receiuing of diuine Reuelation deliuered, to the wholesome contemplation of God, and of the separated formes; and they which receiue it, are called Cabalici, their Disciples Cabalæi, and they which any way imitate them, Cabalistæ. The Talmudists therefore and the Cabalists are of two facultes, both agreeing in this, that they grow from Tradition, whereunto they giue credite without rendring any reason: herein differing, that the Cabalist, as a *super-subtill transcendent*, mounteth with all his industrie and intention from this sensible World vnto that other intellectuall: but the [y] grosser Talmudist abideth in this, and if at any time hee considereth of God, or the blessed Spirits, yet it is with relation to his workes, and their functions, not in any abstract contemplation, bending his whole study to the explaination of the Law, according to the intent of the Law-giuer, considering what is to bee done, what eschewed, whereas the Cabalists most indeauour themselues to contemplation, leaving the care of publike and priuate affaires to the Talmudists, and reserving onely to themselues those things which pertaine to the tranquillitie of the minde. As therefore the minde is more excellent then the body, so you must thinke the Cabalist superiour to the Talmudist. For example, *In the beginning God created Heauen and Earth*, saith *Moses*: *Heauen* [z] here, after the Talmudist, is all that part of the World which is aboue the Moone, and all beneath it, *Earth*: also by *Heauen* hee vnderstandeth *forme*, and by *Earth*, *matter*; the composition whereof hee effected not by labour of the hand, but by that nine-fold Oracle of his word: for so often is it mentioned, [a] *and God said*; likewise hee findeth the foure Elements in those words, *Darkenesse, Spirit, Waters, drie Land*. But the Cabalist frameth to himselfe two Worlds, the Visible and Inuisible; Sensible and Mentall; Materiall and Ideall; Superiour and Inferiour: and accordingly gathereth out of the former words, *God created Heauen and Earth*, That hee made the highest and lowest things, meaning by the highest the immaterial, by the lowest this materiall; and this is gathered out of the first letter *Beth*, which in numbring signifieth two, and insinuateth there these two Worlds. Yea, they also finde two Paradises, and two Hells, one in this World, and the other in the other and future, for the body heere, and the soule hereafter. Euen as, saith *R. Saadia*, the white of the Egge comprehendeth the yolke, so that soft intelligible World insolideth the second: in this are nine Spheres, mooued of the immoueable *Empyreon*, in that nine orders of Angels, ([b] *Ricius* reckoneth ten, *Hayes, Hakadesch, Offanim, Erelim, Hasmalim, Seraphim, Malachim, Elohim,*

q *R. Moses Maimonius in præfatione. Morch. Nebu.*

r I the wisemen would not a long time write the Talmud, how much lesse the secrets of the law? *idem. c. 1. cap. 70.*

s *Thisbi. rad. Kibbe.*

t Yea *Raziel* the Angell taught it *Adã*, from whom it passed to *Enoch, Noe, Sem, Hiber, Abraham* &c. if you beleeue the Cabalists *vid. Reuch. lib. 1. Leon. Heb. Dial. 3.*

u *Ric. de Cælest. Arithmet. lib. 1.*

x *Reuchlin. de Arte Cabal. l. 1. pag. 620. & 632 & d. ex Edit. Basil.*

y The Talmudist also goeth no higher then *Moses*: the Cabalist beginneth with *Adã*, for this Tradition: *Leo H. d. 3. in Dial.* 2 hee playeth the Cabalist also with the Ebrike Theologis; more to the praise of his learning then their Diuinitie.

z *Vid. cap. 24. lege etiam, si placet, Leon. Heb. de Amore Dial. 3. de essu. Gen. 1. 1.*

a *Gen. 1.*

b *Theorem. 16.*

Elohim, bene Elohim, Cherubim. Some Diuines count them thus out of *Dionysius*; *Seraphim, Cherubim, Throni, Dominationes, Virtutes, Potestates, Principatus, Archangeli, Angeli*: The tenth Order, the *Peripatetikes* terme *Anamastica*, the *Cabalists Ischim*, that is, *Men*) moued of the vnchangeable GOD, who in vnmoueable silence first created altogether, and after by nine times speaking, moued and promoted each thing to its owne distinction. The Talmudists dreame of an earthly Messias to free them from this their seruerie; the Cabalists (if our Cabalists haue not feene these things through spectacles) expect a spirituall deliuerie from sinne. Doubtlesse they deliuer many excellent assertions, howsoeuer their collection seemeth curious and vncertaine, gathering the same on grounds without ground, beyond all Sense, Reason, Scripture, and therefore often leauened with other superfine absurdities. *Buxtorfius* in his abbreuiat. Heb. faith, that by his abbreuiation אגא they vse to signifie the three parts of the Art Cabalastica, *Gematria*, *Notarikon*, *Temurah*. *Gematria* is that part which by like numbers contained in the letters of diuers words, explaineth one by the other, as *Tzemach*, *Zach.* 3.8. hath in the numerall letters 138. and so many are in *Menachem*, a name which they giue to the Messias, and therefore by *Tremach*, they there vnderstand the Messias. So in *Gen.* 49.10. *Shilo shall come*, containe 358. and so doth Messiah, which is therefore there meant; and many like examples. *Notaricon*, is when euery letter in one word shall note so many other words, and make vp a sentence. Thus the Maccabees are so called of these foure letters, which they inscribed in their banners. *m. c. b. i.* the first letters of so many words, *Exo.* 15.11. *Who is like thee amongst the gods, O Lord?* So in *Adams* name they finde (as the cause thereof) words beginning with the same letters, signifying *ashes, blood, gall*, whence ate noted his corruption, losse and calamitie: as the Greekes in the same name find the the East, West, North and South, *Α, ἀνατολή Δ, δύσις Α, ἄρκτος Μ, μεσημβρία*. *Temurah*, is when one or two words are changed into one or more other by transposition of letters, or inuersion of qualitie. So out of the Hebrew words, *Psal.* 21. 2. *The King shall reioyce in thy strength, O Lord*; they expound the King Messias; for this is gathered by transposition of the letters. So *Cherem*, *Anathema*, is חרם mercy, and רבא, which in the numerall letters hath 248. the iust number (in their anatomie) of the members of mans bodie. The glosse is, he which is anathematized, if her repent, shall haue for חרם, רחם, that is, *mercy*; if not, it pierceth his 248. members, and destroyes the whole man. Hence came out Anagrammatismes and Chirosogrammatismes, wherein some doe sometimes leaned ly trifle, and spend their wits foolishly. This of all their Caball is true, that it may be terme to conuince the Iewes with testimonie of their owne, then for an instruction to vs, who cannot enforce arguments out of Symbolicall senses. If any be in loue with these mysteries, let him resort to *Paulus Ricius* his *Theoremes*, to *John Reuchlin*, to *Iohannes Pacus* and his Commenter *Archangelus*, to *Abrahams* supposed Booke of the creation, c to *R. Ioseph Castiliensis* his *Porta lucis*, which *Ricius* hath also translated and epitomized, to *Galatinus* and others. d Commendable is the labour of some of these, and of many e others both conuerted Iewes, which haue sought to reclaime their peruerse brethren; and of our owne, as *Mornaeus*, *Gregentius*, *Pomeranus*, out of whom, they which please, may borrow arguments to conuince the Iewish incredulitie, and stubbornenesse, and to confound them by their owne testimonies, both from these elder Writers aboue mentioned, and also from the later. *So great is the Truth, and mightily it preuaileth*, that it extorteth not onely her owne weapons, vsurped and stollen by her enemies: but their owne also, wherewith they come armed against the *Truth*, and retorteth them on themselues; as *David* serued the Philistims: f *Who cut off* Goliahs *head, with* Goliahs *sword: as* g Benaiah, (one of his Worthies) *slew an Ægyptian, a man of great stature fiue cubits long, and in the Ægyptians hand was a speare, like a Weauers beame; and hee went downe to him with a staffe, and plucked the speare out of the Ægyptians hand, and slew him with his owne speare.* Thus did h *Dionysius* the Champion (if forrainers delight any) deale with *Horratius* the Macedonian in a set combate; and thus hath our i Worthie and Champion come often into the field against the Popish Giants, armed inwardly with Truth, outwardly with Arguments, wrested (without wrestling) from his enemies. Here, in his Latine, and English workes, hath obserued the two-fold rule of policie: *Diuide and Rule*, against the Papists: *Vnite, and Rule*, for the Protestants, which *Breereley* would haue brought into the like bryers. But those his troupes are shewed not to bee Men, but Apes, like those that held *Alexanders* Armie in suspence: and like *Semiramis* Elephants, which were but stuffed Oxe-hides, kill-cow-frayes. But *Malle virtute esto* (worthy Deane.) Euen so goe on still, and *fight the Lords battels*: that thy *Sparta* (so happily vndertaken) still adorne, and shew the confusion of Babels bablers: *Diuide that Societie*, which now in their last age haue hissed with their forked venemons Tongues; feared and enuyed at home for their arrogance; no lesse then hated abroad for their heresies and treasons

c *Sephir. Iezira*
d *Pid. Catalog. Cabalist. script. in Reuch. lib. 1. pag. 6.o.*
e *R. Samuel Marochi Vitter. Caretus, Hieron. à S. Fide, &c. Morn. de Verit. C. 8.*
f 1.Sam.17.51.
g 1.Chro.11.23.
h *D. Curt. l. 9.*
i *D. Mor. Apolog. Catholica &c.*

Let

Let Saint *Iohn*, Let England and the whole Church still sing the *ten thousands*, that thou doest thus slay with their owne weapons; and let the Apostolicall Truth escape, whiles her Apostaticall Enemies, the Pharisies and Sadducees, are set together by the eares. A happie and diuine stratagesme, which (not to detract from others iust prayses, in this or other parts of the battell) hath beene singled, and singularly managed by thy prowesse, which speakest (more iustly then he which vied those words) to these Babylonians, [k] in their owne Language, *that they may eate their owne dung, and drinke their owne pisse together.*

Doctor *White* also, in (that *Lacteavia*, his *Milke-white*) [l] Way to the true Church, challengeth in all points of Poperie both authoritie of Scriptures, Fathers, and later Romanists, and to produce the same against the Trent-Councell, and the Iesuites.

But how hath that fatall name of Babel confounded mee? Truely, the likenesse of these Traditionaries, Cabalists, muddie Talmudists, and Legendaries (as will appeare to an easie Obseruer and Comparer of this ensuing Historie to their practice) which haue beene mustered from the Easterne and Westerne [m] Babel, and the like manner of their confusion, hath almost made mee forget the Historie and my selfe, but neuer a whit the Truth. And this will be further manifested in the rest of this Booke, where their Superstitious Deuotion is related.

k 2. Reg. 18.

l Pag. 341.

m Both *Bellarmine* and *Baronius* approue, and proue Rome to be Babylon.

Asfor those Testimonies of the Iewes against themselues, besides the Scriptures (which, in regard of the true sense, *the veile ouer their hearts* will not suffer them to reade, but it is a *sealed Booke vnto them* and they left the riches thereof vnto vnto vs, as the [n] Aramites left their Tents, with their Horses and Treasure, to the pined Israelites.) Their other Authoiurs are so plaine and plentifull in the Mysteries of our Religion, as I know not whether it cause greater pleasure to reade their Writings, or astonishment and wonder at the Nation; so stricken with madnesse, and with blindnesse, and with astonishment of heart, since they haue shut their eyes against the *Sunne of Righteousnesse*: on whom that threatned plague is come, [o] *Thou shalt groape at Noone-dayes, as the Blind doth groape in darknesse.* For out of their Talmud-Authors is plainly deliuered the mystery of the Trinitie, the Incarnation of the Sonne of GOD, his two Natures, his Birth of a Virgin, his spirituall Kingdome, the time of his Comming, the truth of his Prophesies, and power of his Miracles; the Redemption of Mankind by his Death, his Crucifying, Descent, Resurrection, and Ascension: and that their Nation was to be reiected, the old Law to cease, New to succeed, &c. All which as they agree vnto that sweet and blessed Name and Person of Iesus (which name, and that of *Emanuel*, is also found in their Writings) so doe they argue the seueritie of GOD'S Iudgements, when men will not beleeue the Truth, *that by the efficacie of errour, they shall haue eyes, and see not, eares, and heare not* (neitherours nor their owne) as *Paul*, and CHRIST himselfe often told them. But those particulars, as rather appertayning to Disputation, then Historie, (and therefore too much impertinent to our purpose) the desirous Readers may at large find in *Morney* and *Galatinus*, not to mention [p] others.

n 2. Reg. 7. 7.

o Deut. 28. 29.

p Lud. Viu. de V. C. F. Seb. Munster. de fide Christi. & Iud. Censura.

The witnesse of *Iosephus*, being one, whose name we often vse in this Historie, may iustly challenge me, if I should omit him, especially seeing hee liued in the very dayes of the Apostles, who, as he witnesseth of *Iohn Baptist*, and of many other things mentioned in the Gospell, fully agreeing therewith: so concerning our Lord and Sauiour, hath this Testimonie. [q] In the time of *Tiberius*, there was one *Iesus* a wise Man (if at least-wise he was to be called a man) who was a worker of great Miracles, and a Teacher of such as loue the Truth and had many followers, as well of *Iewes* as of *Gentiles*. This was Christ. Neuertheless, being accused vnto *Pilate*, by the chiefe of the Iewes, hee was *crucified*. But yet for all that, those which had loued Him from the beginning, ceased not to continue still. For hee shewed himselfe aliue vnto them three dayes after his Death, as the Prophets had foretold of him, both this and diuers other things: And euen vnto this day doe those continue still, which after his name are called *Christians*. Thus much *Iosephus*. Thus did the Truth force him to confesse, whose Historie of the destruction of his Nation, what is it but as a Commentary on *Iesus* Prophesie thereof, and their fearefull Imprecation, [r] *His blood be vpon vs and our children*, shewing that the wrath of God was come vpon them to the vtmost? From Mount Oliuet, where Iesus was first apprehended, and where last those blessed feet touched the Earth, (as if there *Mercie* had left a print of *Iustice*) was Ierusalem besieged, and at their Feast of Passeouer (when they had crucified Christ) they were cooped vp, as it were, assembled by Diuine Iustice from all quarters to destruction, together with that their Citie, where they had slaine the Lord. But of this before.

q Iosef. antiq. 18. cap. 4.

r Mat. 27. 25.

It will not bee vnsauourie to the Reader, obseruing herein Diuine vengeance, to relate as vnsauourie a Tale as euer was deuised, which their Talmud telleth in derogation of Christs Miracles, in which I know not whether to call them beasts, or Deuils; so witlesse, and with-

with all so wicked is their blasphemie. For sooth, in *Salomons* Temple there was [f] (say they) a certayne stone of very rare vertue, wherein *Salomon* by his singular Wisedome had engrauen the very true Name of GOD, which it was lawfull for every man to reade, but not to conne by heart; nor to write out. And at the Temple doore were two Lyons tyed at two Chaines, which rored terribly, that the feare thereof made him to forget the name that had committed the same to memorie, and him to burst asunder in the middest, that had put it in writing. But IESVS the Sonne of *Mary*; say they, regarding neither the Curse annexed to the Ptobihition, nor the roaring of the Lyons, writ it out in a Bill, and went his way with it joyfully. And lest he might be taken with the thing about him, he had a little opened the skinne of his legge, and put it in there, and afterwards wrought his miracles by the vertue of that name. I should be almost as absurd as they, if I should dispute against it, seeing in this, and most of their brain-sicke Dreames, the very recitation is sufficient refutation.

[f] *Vide, de Carben. lib. 1. c. 13.* The Iewes haue a horrible and blasphemous curse directed against our blessed Saiour: whom they will not call by his name fully pronounced, but abbreuiated with Relation to the Curse. Of which (for I loath to mention it) let him which will, see *Bux. de abbreuiaturis Heb.*

It cannot be denyed, that there haue beene many Rabbines very Learned, as *R. Moses Ægyptius*, *Abben Tibbon*, which translated *Euclide* and other Authours out of Arabicke into Hebrew, and some parts also of *Aristotle* translated into Hebrew, are accounted his doing, many others of them writ in Philosophie likewise: and for Physicke, who haue beene more famous? But he which will haue notice of the RR. and their workes, let him reade *Buxdorfius* his *Bibliotheca Rabbinica*, printed 1613. yet euen the best of them haue much Chaffe, which needs much fanning from the Corne. Many wise Sentences and Proverbs haue beene by [e] *Drusius* and others gathered out of some of their workes which would haue beautified this Discourse; as these for a taste. Vowes are the hedge or wall of defence to holinesse; Tithes are the same to Riches: he which increaseth his flesh, encreaseth Wormes, Who is wise? he which learneth of euery one; Who is valiant? hee which brideleth his affections: Who is rich? he which is content with his portion: If I care not for my selfe, who shall care for me? And if I, what am I? and if not now, when? The day is short, and the worke much, and the Labourers slow, and the wages great; and the Housholder calleth vpon vs. But me thinkes you call vpon me to proceed. But of these and such like Sayings, there is a whole Treatise called *Pirke Anoth*, which is as it were their *Medulla Patrum*, or *Flores Doctorum*, gathered by *R. Nathan Babylonius*, set forth by *Fagius*, and since by *Drusius*: yet hauing spoken thus much of their Learned men, I thinke it would to some louers of Learning not be vnfauourie, to adde somewhat of their Vniuersities, degrees of Schooles and the like, in the next Section.

[e] *Buxt. de abbreuiaturis Heb.* *Drus. vet. sap. sententiæ.*

§. III.

Of the Rabbines, the Rites of their Creation, the Iewish Vniuersities, and Students.

Serar. Rabbinus, Prim. c. 1. & seqq. Bartorf. de abbreuiat. Heb. affirmeth, that none of these titles were vsed till Christs time. *Serarius* thinks them more ancient, as We see.

AMongst the Iewes all these Titles were of one Root, *Rab*, *Rabrab*, *Rabba*, *Rabbi*, *Rabban*, *Rabbana*, *Rabbanan*, *Ribbi*, *Ribbun*, *Ribbon*, *Ribbona*, *Ribbuni*, *Rabbuni*, *Rabboni*, some of which are more vsuall then others, but all of them in generall signification betoken either a Prince or Lord, or a Master, and Doctor. Of the foremost signification are few Examples in Scripture, in their *Thargumim*, many; and those commonly with some word annexed, signifying the thing or mayne subiect: of the later the New Testament is full. The *Root*, from whence these Titles spring, is *Rabab*, or *Rab*, which signifieth to multiply: for a Prince *multiplyeth* his power, a Doctor his Learning, and one such is as many; according to the moderne vse which speaketh to great men, and they of themselues in plurall [n] Pronounes. Of Rab is Rabbim and Rabboth in the plurall number; that vsed for any multitude in other things, this appropriated to signific Rabbins. Some also of those Titles are Hebrew, some Chaldee or Syriake; some indifferently signifie a Lord or Master, some more especially the one or the other; also in regard of place, one of Babylon was called Rabbi, of *Ispael Rabbi*, of those two famous Vniuersities in Babylonia and Iudæa. In regard of excellence, one of lowest estreme was stiled Rab; of higher, Rabbi or Ribbi; of of highest, Rabbenu, Rabban and Rabbanan. Yet doe not these rules alway hold: for they haue much alteration amongst themselues, why some are named without any Title, as Hillel, Shamai, and diuers others; and why some more eminent are called Rab of Rabbi, as *Rabbi Eliezer*, *Rabbi Iuda Habkadosh*. *R. Hakiba*, *Rab Ase*, Authour of the Gemara, *Rab Haai*, *Rab Baruch*; and why the Title of Rabban is appropriated to some few, *Rabban Gamaliel*, *R. Symeon*, &c. This is affirmed for currant, that he which hath Disciples, may

[n] *Vide Serar. Prim. c. 1.*

may bee called Rab or Rabbi; that the younger are not so called by the elders; that they which want Imposition of hands, may not be so called; that the Rulers amongst the people called *Nessim*, were in manner onely called Rabban; and for Rabbenu, that is our Master, it was ascribed to very few, as to *Moses* first; and after to *Hakkadosh, Hillel, Gamaliel, &c.* Those Rabbans were only seuen; all of the posterity of *Hillel*, as *Buxtorfius* witnesseth: and these were so called, rather because they were Princes or Lords, then Doctors. *Buxtorf. de Abbreu. hebreor. dist.* רבנו.

Other Titles besides these were also giuen them, as Chacham, that is, wise, so *Hierom.* The Doctors of the Iewes are called σοφοὶ; from which Greeke word perhaps came that other Title giuen them, *Sopher*: so that which *Esay* hath *Sopher*, the Apostle interpreteth σοφὸς; They were also called by other Doctorly Titles, as Mascilim, Malphan and Malphana, Moreh (whence commeth the Moderne Title Morenu, that is, our Masters, attributed to their Arch-rabbines) Mar, Abba and Abbothenu, Zekkenim; that is, our Fathers old men, and the like. *Esa.33.18. 1.Cor.1.20.*

The RR. were of two sorts: one numbered by a succession of time, another, named of their studies and employments. Of the first kind were the Thanæi, Amoræi, Seboræi, Geonim, Marbithe Thoræ, Chechame Thalmudim. Of the other, the Masorites, Cabbalists, Thalmudists, Medakdekim, Methargemim, and others. For the former ranke, *thana* signifies to *learne*, whence those Masters, which followed the times of the last Prophets till the Reigne of *Commodus*, were called Thanaim. Of these are numbred twelue Generations. *R. Abraham Dauidicus* reckoneth from *Zorobabel* to the destruction of the Temple ten, and fiue after. These Thanæi are sometimes reckoned by couples, of which before the destruction of the Temple, one was called *Nasi* × or *Prince*, the other *Ab beth Din*, the Father of the Councell: of these Colleagues or paires they reckon fiue, the last of which was *Hillel Nasi*, and *Schamai Ab beth Din. Hillel* had thousands of Disciples, but eightle principall, the chiefe of which was *Ionathan*, Author of the Chaldee Paraphrase. He and his House or Sect held many peculiar Opinions, to which *Shamai* and his House or Schoole opposed themselues, and maintayned the contrarie. To these succeeded the *Amoraim*, which were so named, because *hain omerim memoroth*, *They vttered wise Sentences*. Of these they account seuen Generations. These continued till about fiue hundred yeeres after Christ. The *Seboræi* succeeded: so called of *Sabar*, that is, *to bee of opinion*: for they made not Canons and Constitutions as the former, but onely shewed their Opinions. Of them were fiue Generations, which ended about *A. D.* 680. and then followed the *Geonim*. The word *gaon* signifieth both *proud* and *magnificent*. Of these they number eight Generations, continuing till *Anno Dom.* 1038. Some of them being of Europe, in France, Germanie, and especially in Spaine, their Easterne Academies then decaying. Of their Chachime Thalmidim afterwards. × *Vid. sup. c.2.*

The other ranke or *classis* of RR. hath first the Masorites, of *Masor* to *deliuer*, *tradere*, so called, in respect of their Traditionall Law in a generall sense, and more especially, of their Tradition of reading the Bible, as the Distinctions, Accents and Prickes obserued, prescribe, and that other tradition of Marginall Notes concerning the diuers Readings of the Text. They which committed this Masoreth ɣ to writing, beeing before deliuered by word of mouth only, were called Masorites. These Masorites, by *Cunnius*, *Genebrard*, *Galatinus*, *Bellarmine*, and (whom in this part of our Discourse we principally follow) *Serarius*, that I speake not of *Scaliger*, *Martinius* and others, are acknowledged Authors of the Prickes and Accents as they are now in vse (howsoeuer there were some other vsed before) which some ascribe to *Ezra*, and some to *Moses*: So doth *Sohar Chadasch* printed at Cracouia, 1603. which sayth, the Points were deliuered by the secrer of the Law in Sinai: And without them, words are as women without clothes, may not come abroad, there is no light in them, &c. These Masorites are holden to haue liued after the Talmud was finished (and therefore to be of the Seboræi Rabbines) and that at Tiberias, where they had many Synagogues and Libraries, sometimes also if *Zacuths* testimony be true) the Sanhedrin it selfe. Of the Kabbala, and the Kabbalist called Kabbelan and Mekubbal you haue heard a little before: and likewise of the Thalmud and Thalmudist. ɣ See the next §. following. *Sup. §. praeced.*

The Medakdekim are the Grammarians, as Dikduk signifies Grammar. *R. Iuda* is reported to be the first Hammedakdek or Grammarian, before whom was no Dikduk of the holy Tongue: after him *R. Ionah*, and after him *R. Saadias Haggaon*: after whom innumerable others, *Ioseph*, *Moses*, and *Dauid*, all Kimchi's, *Elias*, &c. That which is said of *R. Iuda*, is to be conceiued of the moderne Prickes and Accents: for before his time *R. Ioseph Cæcus*, the Amoræi, the Scribes, and *Moses* himselfe were therein expert.

Th rgum signifies an Interpretation, and thence Thurgemana and Mechurgeman an Interpreter, as Dargoman with the Arabs and Turkes at this day. And as the bodie of Scripture was diuided into three parts, the Pentateuch, Hagiographa and Prophets, so haue they

they three Thargums, of Onkelos, *Ionathan* and *R. Ioseph* the blind, which liued about *Anno Dom.* 400. And as the Thalmud, so the Thargum is of two Diakests, the Babylonian and of Ierusalem; of this the Authour is vnknowne: the Babylonian was written, the Pentateuch by *Onkelos*, the Prophets by *Ionathan*, the Hagiographa by *R. Ioseph Caecus*. As for the Iewish Fables of a Voyce to *Ionathan*, and of the consuming with fire from Heauen, any slye that should disturbe him in his writing, his super-excellence among the most excellently learned Schollers of Hillel, &c, and of their many other supposed Thargums, with other Rabbinicall workes, testifying truly of Christ, collected and related by *Galatinus*, and others, I forbeare further recitall. I might heere amongst their Doctorall Titles reckon the *Archipercette* mentioned by *Iustinian*; a stile giuen to such as were skilfull, either in times, or rather in the Thalmud, as chiefe Masters and Archrabbines. Of their Sanhedrin is already spoken. The name is (if wee receiue *Seranus*) borrowed of the Greekes, with whom *Sunedrion* signifies Senators. These may well be reckoned amongst their learned men. *Bahal midrasch* is the Author of a Commentary, or a Preacher, as *Darsan* also. But I haue too long examined Titles.

z *Nouel.146.*

Sup.cap.2.

If in the next place we obserue the power of the Rabbines, they were had in great reuerence and respect: they sate in lofte and stately seates, had power to create others Masters and Doctors, to weare Rings and Hoods, and enioyed other Priuiledges, differing according to the times, places, and differing Estates of the Iewes vnder diuers Lords. For as we haue obserued in this Countrey of England, so in other Countries their power was lesse or more after the will of their Lord: in Babylonia, Egypt, and Spaine somewhat, in some places nothing. In *Iustinians* time they challenged power of Excommunication, which the Emperour forbad vnder paine of bodily punishments, and losse of all their goods. The like Ecclesiasticall censure was lately sought by the Iewes of Frankford, examined by the Emperours Commissioners at Mentz.

Now for the Rites of creating the *R.* in this Doctorall or Rabbinicall Degree. First, there was some tryall of his worth. So *Lampridius* testifieth of the Emperour *Alexander*, that hee nominated those which were to be sent to gouerne the Prouinces, and to will such as could say ought against them, to make good proofe thereof, or else as Slanderers to lose their heads, alleaging that *if the Iewes and Christians made such tryals of the Priests*, it was necessary in these to whom the liues and goods of men were to bee committed. By the Iewish *Priests* wee vnderstand the RR. as the chiefe of them at Wormes is by the vulgar called Iuden Bischoff, receiuing some Iurisdiction vnder the Bishop. Next after this tryall followed Imposition of hands, called by them Semicah, which was done by some Rabbine whom they stiled Somech: neither before this Imposition might any rightly be termed Rab, Rabbi, Rabban or Gaon. This Rite is ancient, *Moses* hauing vsed it to *Iosuua*, and the Apostles and Christian Bishops still observing. He was also placed in a Chaire which the Hebrewes call Cisse, whence come those Phrases, he sate in thoseat of such or such a Rabbine: as of *R. Iose*, a *the hand being imposed, he was there* (in Babylon) *made Gaon, and placed in the Throne Rab Hasi*. To this seemes to allude the *fitting in Moses Chaire*. A fourth Rite was, a set forme of words, anciently these, *Eni somech otheca: Thibieh Samuch*: that is, *I lay hand on thee, be thou bee on whom hand is laid*: or, I make thee Master, bee thou a Master. *R. Iuda* (whom *Adrian* the Emperour slue) added a fuller forme of words. This Imposition was publikely done in their Schooles where their Chaire was. This Imposition of hands (some conceiue) might not be done *extra terram*, but onely in the Land of Israel: which howsoeuer it bee true or false, this is certayne that now in their Rabbinicall Creations it is omitted, as the chiefe RR. of Frankford, in their Epistle to other *Iewes* complaine: and therefore they ordayne, tha none in Germany bee esteemed a Morenu (our Master) without the Approbation of their Archrabbines, which keepe an Academie in Germany. None shall bee Chaber, which hath receiued Imposition of Hands out of Germany. None Bachur till the second Yeere after his Marriage, especially if hee dwell in a place where is not an Academie, that tryall may bee had of his Life and Learning. These are three Degrees, Morenu, as a Doctor, Chaber, as a Licentiate, Bachur as a Bachelour b in the Christian Vniuersities. Of the Morenu there is difference, one beeing chiefe, the rest vnder him; and these are made of the RR. and if a Rabbine will bee a Morenu, he must be examined vsually of three Morenu: But to become a Rabbine, needs no Examination, their Masters testimonie beeing sufficient, who is a Morenu, or else one chosen by the Congregation to this purpose: for one simple R. cannot make another. The place is in the Synagogue, the day commonly the Sabbath: at which time and place the Morenu standing before the Arke, or place where the Law is kept, speaking to the Assembly, saith, that such and such haue now spent many yeeres profitably in studie of the Law, and is thought worthy of the honour of a Rabbine or a Morenu: And then cals the partie foorth by

Num.27.23.
Acts 8. 6c.

a *In Kab.75.b.*

The present manner of making a Rabbine.

b Or with vsa Master of Arts, Bachelour and Doctor in Diuinitie.

by name, and appoints him to reade presently to the people, and then is he accounted a R. or Moreu. And if he be to trauell into any place farre distant, he carryeth the testimoniall of this Doctor of the Chaire, or Father of the Act, which conferred his degree vpon him. A Chaber is the Colleague or Companion of a Rabbine, but inferiour to him. For as (in Vniuersities there are Regents and Non-Regents, so a Rabbenu or Moreu, as one which actually teacheth, and as it were a Regent) is more then a Rab or Rabbi. *Scaliger* saith that he was not presently after this his Commencement or Proceeding intituled Master, but Chaber, which had also his Relatiue annexed, as *R. Ismael Chaber* of *R. Eleazar*: which was the same with γνώριμος amongst the Greekes, as *Speusippus*, γνώριμος *Platonis*: and whiles hee was so called, he neuer sate whiles his Master sate, but was prostrate on the pauement. And when they were both Masters, the younger stood whiles the elder sate and taught, as in the Primitiue Church, the younger Bishop called the Elder *Papa*. *Serarius* and he cannot agree about these points. *Elias* sayth, that the Doctorall Title of *Gaon* was giuen them for their perfection in the Talmud, for *Gaon* signifieth fixtie. And so many parts are there of the Misna. These *Wisemen* in Spaine added Aben to their Titles, as *R. Abraham Aben Ezra*; his Fathers name was Meir, but Aben the name of the Family. As *Paul* and *Aquila* sometimes, so many of those Iewish Masters exercised some Handicraft to sustayne themselues without trouble of others. So was *R. Iose* a Dresser of Leather, *Nahum* and *Meir* Scriueners, *Iochanan* a Shoomaker, and *R. Iuda* a Baker.

Scal. Elench. cap. 10.

El. Thesbiteus. Gaon & Aben.

Next vnto the Masters, it is meet to say somewhat of the Schollers, Thalmidim. If hee were a Boy, he was called Ianik, and Katon (rather for his little Learning then age or stature) a forward Scholler was named Bechir and Bachur, in which time *Scaliger* affirmes (*Serarius* denies) that he was called by his Fathers name, his owne not added, as *Ben Bethira* before, after Imposition *R. Iosua ben Bethira*. *Thalmid chabar* is spoken of: *Beniamin* often mentions in his Iournall, *the Disciples of the wise Thalmidim charam*: which some think to be a name attributed to themselues in modestie, as the name σοφὸς in Greeke turned to *Philosophi*: but generally all Students are called the *Sonnes of the Wise*, as sometimes the *Sonnes of the Prophets*. In *Pirke Auoth* is this speech of *Baghag*: a Boy of fiue yeeres to Mikra, or the Text of Scripture; at ten yeeres to Misna; at thirteene yeeres to the Precepts; at fifteene to the Thalmud or Gemara; As *Paul* sayth, *He was brought vp at the feet of Gamaliel*: so it was a Rule in their Pirke Auoth, *Teipsum pulueriſa in pedum illorum pulvere*, that the Student should all to *bedust himselfe in the dust of his Masters feete, and with assiduous diligence attend his Sayings, drinking his words with thirst.* That person of whom hee hath learned but one Chapter, or Lesson, or Verse, or word, is to be had in honour. The Student is to be obsequious and seruiceable to his Master. They heard with great silence, sitting or else prostrate on the floore or pauement at the feete of the Doctor; and if at any time they stood, it was a good distance from him, for reuerence sake: yea, the Chaber durst scarce (if scarce) sit while the Rabbine sate. The Disciple (say they) must arise to his Master as farre as he can see him; and if hee doe not stand vp to him, hee is wicked, shortens his life, and forgetteth the Thalmud. They might not reprehend their Masters, nor depart from their Assertions: and when they recited any thing which they had learned of them, they did it in their Masters name, euery way seeking to winne them credit: yea, they called him an Epicure which did sit before his Master, or citing him, did it by his bare name without some honourable Title annexed, as my Lord, or Masters, &c. excluding such out of the World to come. To conclude, this sentence of *R. Eleazar ben Shamua*, in their Pirke Auoth briefly expresseth these mutuall duties: *Let the credit of thy Disciple bee as deare vnto thee as thine owne; and let the honour of thy companion* (Chaber) *bee as the feare of thy Master, and the feare of thy Master or Rabbin, as the feare of God.*

Acts 22. 3.

As for the Iewish Academies, they call them Mekom thorah, *the place of the Law*, and the holy Congregation of them which are occupied in the Law, and vsually *Iesehibah* and *Methibata* of sitting, for there was the Rabbinicall Chaire. It seemes, all the fortie eight Cities of the Leuites were such; and all the Schooles of the Prophets, where *the Sonnes*, or Scholers of *the Prophets abode*, as in the dayes of *Samuel*, *Elias*, &c. is mentioned. Ierusalem could not but be most eminent. And after the Babylonian Captiuitie, they had two Vniuersities famous, one *Nehardea* in Babylonia vpon Euphrates, by *Iosephus* called Nearda, the other Ierusalem, which beeing destroyed with the Citie, it was called the Vniuersitie of Israel, of which the first Rector was R. *Iochanan*, the second Rabban *Gamaliel*, the third R. *Akiba*: and when *Adrian* had forbidden all Iewes to enter the Land, it is like it was subuerted, yet after renewed, and the Rector thereof R. *Iochanan* the Authour of the Ierolymitan Thalmud, who dyed, *Anno Dom.* 279. In meane while two other Vniuersities were famous in Babylonia, one at Sura, and the other at Pombaditha: Betwixt which in processe of

c Some say, this name Academie was so called of *Cadmus*, inuentor of learning and Letters in Greece: some of a god *Academus*, *Ora. V. d. Initio Acad.*

of time grew great contentions, factions and remouings to Kamisin fiue dayes Iourney Eastward, and to Neres. That of Sura somewhat eclipsed that of Nehardcha, because there for the most part resided the *Chiefe* of the Iewish Captiues. These decayed, and almost vanished about *Anno Dom.* 668. which it seemes happened by the fatall alteration of the World in that new Saracenicall Deluge, although many Ages after, the Iewes held vp their head highest in these parts, as appeares by *Beniamins Head of the Captiuitie*. resident in Bagdat before mentioned. But the Iewes now dispersed, haue through the World erected in places of their abode, such Academies as they could, [d] as ye haue seene in *Beniamins* Relations alreadie; and *Rabad* mentions some in Spaine and Afrike, and some yet remayne at Constantinople, Cairo, Cracouia in Poland, Prage in Bohemia: and lately the Synagogue of Frankford, which calls it selfe *the Mother of Israel* in Germany, constituted fiue, *viz.* Frankfort, Wormes, Fridberg, Fulda, Kinsbirg. Yet [e] these three are accounted the ancientest Synagogues in Germany, Spire, Wormes, Mentz; and therefore their Matrimoniall Contracts are signed with these three Letters *S. W. M.* if they write short, to shew that it is according to the ancient custome and constitution of Spire, Wormes and Mentz. The Iewes had *Schooles* wheresoeuer were any store of them, but ten (saith *Rambam*) was a number fit to haue a *Synagogue*. They call their Schoole *beth Midrasch*, the house of exercise, *Gymnasium*; the Synagogue *Beth cenesseth*, the Congregation house. Sometimes these are distinguished (for in the Synagogue they must pray for him that neeseth, in the Schoole they might not) sometimes the same; and their Synagogues in Germany are now called Schooles. Of these are reported foure hundred eightie one in Ierusalem before the destruction. The Ruler thereof was called Archisynagogus.

d Tiberias of old, and Thessalonica since, are of principall note.

e *Buxt. Abbr.*

As they vse to giue glorious Titles one to another, according to their supercilious Conceits of themselues, as *the glorie of thy Excellence*, for the second person, *Thou*, or *the glorie of their Excellence*, for *they*, so especially their *RR.* Names are not mentioned without smokie fumes of arrogance, as the glorie of our Master Doctor, &c. For an instance take these Titles giuen to the Author of the Talmudicall Lexicon Aruch in the Title thereof. *Illustris Dominus R. Nathan Iustus, benedictæ memoriæ, filius honorificentissimi & sanctissimi Doctoris & Rabbini nostri Iechielis faustæ memoriæ, filij honorificentissimi magnificentissimi & sanctissimi Doctoris & Rabbini nostri Abrahami faustæ memoriæ.* So vastly ambitious are their hearts, so wide gaping mouths in their *sesquipedalia & decempedalia verba* haue these Tirasonical Pygopolyniceticall Bragadochio's after so long captiuitie, and so extreme seruitude and basenesse: that it may appeare how farre God hath forsaken them, so farre from humilitie in this humiliation, that they swell euery day into greater vanitie, as the Sunne then greatest when lowest, and bladders then biggest, when they haue nothing but wind to fill them. Euen their glorious Titles so much insisted on in this Discourse, then seeme to haue had beginning, or at least to be in greatest vse, when they were neere the end and Sun-set of their glorie, and since haue encreased to this rabble of Rabbinicall stiles here deliuered; and that which in these dayes is of greatest reckoning, the Title Morenu, our Doctor, hath beene hatched (saith *Buxtorfius*) in Germany within these two hundred yeeres, and thence passed into Italy, in Imitation of our Academicall degree of Doctors (say some) or else (as others) it was ordayned to be a speciall Title of honour, with a kind of Iurisdiction ouer other *RR.* to preuent their lauish loosenesse in granting Bils of Diuorce, that this power should bee appropriated to the Morenu. The first which enioyed this Title in this proper sense (for in a common it was common before, as in *Rambams Moreh Nebuchim* appeates) were *Maharasch*, and his Scholer *Maharil* who dyed *Anno Dom.* 1427.

Buxt. Abbr. Hebr.

§. IIII.

Of the Scriptures and their Interpretations.

§ *Sect. 4. In publicis colloquiis, disputationibus, prædicationibus, aut expositionibus, pro authentica habeatur: & quod eam nemo vereare quemquam textu audeat vel præsumat.*

BEfore we shake hands with the Learned Writers of the Iewes, it is not vnmeete in my opinion, heere to meete with some question which some haue mooued concerning them, and their dealing in and with the Scriptures. For since that the Councell of Trent hath decreed, in the yeere 1546. both the diuine authoritie of Scriptures Canonicall, to the Apocrypha-bookes, which the Iewes receiue not, nor euer did; and hath made the vulgar Translation [f] Authenticall in publike Lectures, Disputations, Preachings and Expositions, that none, vnder any pretence whatsoeuer, shall presume to reiect it; it is wonder to see how eagerly (that I say not impudently) diuers of them haue sought to slander the originall Text: and haue blamed, as Authors thereof, in the New Testament, Heretikes; and in the Old, Iewes; couering their malice to vs with pretence of the

malice of Heretikes and Iewes, and forgetting the true Rule, *That it is a shame to belie the Diuell.* Thus haue [a] *Canus* and *Pintus*, and *Gregorius de Valentia*, *Sarrobosius*, and others, traduced the Iewes in this behalfe; themselues refuted by their owne (which yet by consequent ouerthrow that former Decree) *Sixtus Senensis*, *Ribera*, Cardinall *Bellarmine* himselfe, *Andradius*, *Andreas*, *Masius*, *Arias Montanus*, *Isaac Leuita*, &c. Besides, of ours many, and especially our owne learned Countrimen, *Whitaker*, *Reynolds*, *Morton*, &c.

[a] *Lib.2.cap.13.*

[b] *Bellarmine* hath both taught vs the vanitie of their opinion, that hold, That the Scriptures were all lost in the Babylonian Captiuitie, and were by *Esra* renewed miraculously (who is rather [i] commended for his industrie in interpreting and obseruing them, and for ordering and compacting them in one Volume, then for such needlesse reuelation, to finde that which was neuer lost: an Author rather, as [k] *Hierome* hath obserued, of the present Hebrew Letters, then of their ancient Scriptures) and hath also prououed the absurditie of their conceit, that imagine the Hebrew Fountaines corrupted. First, by [l] the Argument of *Origen* and *Hierome*, That such corruption must haue beene either before or after Christ: if that; Christ would haue reproued and not commended the *Scriptures to their search*: if this; how commeth it, that the Testimonies, cited by him and his Apostles, are found now in *Moses* and the Prophets, as they were then cited? Secondly, out of *Augustine*, That it is not likely they would put out both their eyes (in depriuing their Scriptures of truth) that they might put out one of ours: nor was it possible that such a generall conspiracie could be made. Thirdly, from their more then reuerent estimation of their Scriptures, for which they would die, if it were possible, an hundreth deaths, and euen still (as *Isaac* [m] answereth B. *Lindan* his Scholler) they proclaime a Fast to expiate, if by some accident that Booke but falls to the ground. Fourthly, some places in the Hebrew are more strong against the Iewes then our Translations are, and the Prophesies, which make most against them, remaine there vncorrupted. And lastly, the prouidence of GOD would neuer herein faile his Church, but hath left them, with their bookes, to bee dispersed through the world, to beare witnesse to that Truth which they haue and persecute.

[b] *Bellar. de verb. Dei lib.cap.1.*

[i] *Esra 4.14.*

[k] *Hier. Prolog. Galeat.*

[l] *Bellibid.cap.2.*

[m] *Isaac Leuita def beb.ver. in Epist.ded.*

These are *Bellarmines* Arguments; which, because they are the Truth, are also ours: and therefore we haue beene bold with the Reader to insert them. *Leuita* [n] addes, that the Hebrew Texts concerning Christ, are more cleere and perspicuous then in any translation whatsoeuer: who affirmes also of himselfe, that reading the fiftie third Chapter of *Esaias* 1000. times (by which he was conuerted to the Christian Faith) and comparing it diligently with many translations, he found a hundred times more, touching the mysterie of Christ, in that, then in these. Many Prophesies are in the Hebrew, which make for the Christians, and yet in the 70. are omitted. The Iewes hold it a crime inexpiable to alter any thing therein, which if any (say they) should doe but in one word of ignorance, or malice, it would bring the whole world in danger of perishing. They will not lay their Bible but in a pure place, nor touch it but with pure hands, and are not religious alone, but superstitious also in respect thereto. As for that Emendation or Correction of the Scribes, which *Galatinus* mentioneth, wherein they haue corrupted the Text, hee proueth it to bee a late dreame of the Talmud, and answereth the Arguments of his fellowes, herein not so Catholike as himselfe.

[n] *I.S.Leth.l.2.*

Now although this may seeme more then enough to conuince that folly, yet it shall not bee impertinent to adde out of *Arias Montanus* somewhat touching the same, because it openeth another mysterie touching the Hebrew Learning, and the *Masoreth*. [o] When the Iewes (saith he) returned into their Country after the Captiuitie threescore and ten yeeres in Babylon, it befell them partly by occasion of their long troubles, which did distract their mindes, partly by corruption of their Natiue Tongue, which was growne out of kinde, first into the Chaldee, and afterward into the Syriacke, that they neither knew nor pronounced so well the words of the Scripture, written (as the manner was) without vowels. Whereby it came to passe, that in the writing of them there crept in some fault, either through iniurie of the Times, or by reason of troubles which fell vpon the People, or by negligence of some Scriueners. But this inconuenience was met withall afterward by most learned men, such as *Esdras* was, and afterward *Gamaliel*, *Iosua*, *Eleazar*, and other of great name, who prouided by common trauell, with great care and industrie, that the Text of Scripture, and the true reading thereof, should bee preserued most sound and vncorrupt. And from these men, or from their instruction, being receiued and polished by their Scholers in the Ages following, there came, as wee iudge, that most profitable Treasure, which is called *Masoreth*, that is to say, a Deliuerie, or Traditionall, because it doth deliuer abundantly and faithfully all the diuers Readings that euer were of the Hebrew Bibles. Wherein there appeareth an euident token of the prouidence of GOD, for the preseruation of the sacred Bookes of Scripture whole and sound, that the

[o] *Refert Reuchlinus ex pref. Bibl. part. 6. Antuerp.*

Masoreth hath beene kept till our times these many hundred yeeres, with such care and diligence, that in sundry Copies of it, which haue beene written, no difference was euer found. And it hath beene added in all the written Bibles that are in *Europe*, *Africke*, or *Asia*, each of them agreeing throughly therein withother, euen as it is printed in the Venice Bibles, to the great wonder of them, who read it. Thus farre *Montanus*: and by this *Masoreth*, their Obiection of *Caari*, and *Caaru*, in the two and twentieth *Psalme*, is answered, in that certayne Readings haue the later and truer, as the *Masoreth* reflisteth. Wee haue alreadie shewed, That these Masorites inuented p the prickes where with the Hebrew is now read, to supply the lacke of vowels; herein vsing religious care, lest by inuenting new Letters to that purpose, they should haue changed that ancient forme of writing, and somewhat impayred the Maiesty thereof. They tell q that when a certayne Rabbine had read *Zacar* for *Zeeer*, he was slaine of his Scholler *Ioab*, for violating Scripture.

r *Genebrard* denying their opinion, that make *Ezra* or *Esdras* Authours of these Hebrew prickes and Accents, saith, That they were inuented after the times of *Hosorius* the Emperour, in the yeare, after the Temple was destroyed, 436. which is (sayth hee) from Christ, 476. in Tyberias a Citie of Galilee; the chiefe Authours were *Aaron*, *Aseries*, and *Iames*, Sonne of *Nephthali*, whose dissenting one from another caused a diuision among the Iewes, the Westerne Iewes fellowing the former, the Easterne, which dwelt in Babylonia, the later.

The Syriake Tongue some hold to haue sprung from the corruption of the Chaldee and Hebrew mixt. The Editions and Translations of the Scriptures, out of the Hebrew into the Greeke, are s reckoned nine, besides that which *Clement Alexandrinus* sayth, was before the time of *Alexander*, whereof *Plato* and the Philosophers borrowed not a little. The first (already mentioned) of the Seuentie. The second, of *Aquila*, first a Gentile, after a Christian, and now last a Iew, in the time of *Adrian*, whom *Serarius* thinketh to bee *Onkelos*, or *Ankelus*, Author of the Targum. The third, of *Theodotian*, a Marcionist, vnder *Commodus*. The fourth of *Symmachus*; first a Samaritan, and after that a Iew. Of the fist and sixt are nor knowne the Authors. Of all these *Origen* compounded his *Hexapla*. The seuenth, was the correction rather then a translation. The eighr was of *Lucian*, Priest and Martyr. The ninth of *Hesychius*. But the most famous and ancient, which the Spirit of God hath by often allegations, in some measure, confirmed, is that of the Seuentie.

As for that conceit of the Celles, which t *Iustine* sayth, were threescore and ten, in which they were diuided, and which u *Epiphanius* placeth by couples, and numbreth sixe and thirtie Celles, in which, by Miracle, these thus diuided did all agree, in words and sense. x *Hierome* deridieth the same as a Fable, because neither *Aristaeus*, which then liued, nor *Iosephus*, doe euer mention it. Now whereas *Iosephus* mentioneth oneiy the Law translated by them; *Iustinus*, *Irenaeus*, *Clemens*, *Eusebius*, write, That they translated all. And although *Aristaeus* name but the Law, yet who knoweth not, that by this generall name they sometime comprehended all the Scripture, as in the New Testament is seene? as 1. *Cor.* 14. 21. and *Iohn* 10. 34. Some y accuse this *Aristaeus* for a Counterfeit.

p *Mart. Gram. Heb. Tayyen. Vid. Drusi Praef. in Luc.* 16. 17. *Phil. Ferdinand. de Post excursum. templi.* 2. *periere dissertes & scientia, postea surrexerunt Tiberiae vel Masoritae, inuentoij; nolui deleruni. Sic Bluss in Matt. vet Hamonyeus. Vid. Buxdorf. Thes. Grammat.*

q *Isaac. Levita defens. Heb. v.*

r *Genebrard. Chron.* 4.

s *Bell. q. sup.* c. 5 *Strom* 1. 1.

t *Pareus. ad Gen.*

u *Epiph. de Pon.*

x *Hier. praefat. in Pentateuch. Bellar. l.* 2. c. 6. *de verbo Dei. Vid. praefat. And. Masi in Ios.*

y *Scal. in Epist. eusae. Aristin. Bibl. Patrum.*

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Moderne Iewes Creed, or the Articles of their Faith, with their Interpretation of the same, and their Affirmatine and Negatiue Precepts.

§. I.
Of their Creed.

a *Esay* 29. 9. *Tay* a *your selues and wonder* (sayth the Lord of this people:) *they are blind, and make blind: they are drunken, but not with Wine: they staggar, but not by strong drinke*, &c. And after, because of their Hypocrisies, *And their feare toward me is taught by the Precept of* b *Men. Therefore behold, I will againe doe a marueilous worke in this People; euen a marueilous worke and a wonder: for the wisedome of their Wise-men shall perisso, and the vnderstanding of their prudent men shall bee hid. This day is this Scripture* (as it hath beene many Ages heretofore) *fulfilled in our eyes*: as it hath appeared by our former declaration of the Talmud, and further followeth, in rehearsing the thirteene Articles of their Creed, c thus briefly expressed in their daily Prayer-bookes.

b *Verse* 14.

c *Bux. Syn.* c. 1.

1. I

1. I *Beleeue with a true and perfect Faith, that* GOD *is the Creator, Gouernour, and Preseruer of all Creatures, and that he hath wrought all things, worketh hitherto, and shall worke for euer.*

2. *I beleeue with a perfect Faith, that* GOD *the Creator is one, and that such an Vnitie, as is in him, can be found in none other, who alone hath beene* OVR GOD, *is yet, and for euer shall continue* OVR GOD.

3. *I beleeue with a perfect Faith, that* GOD *the Creator is not bodily, nor indued with bodily properties, and that no bodily Essence can be compared to him.*

4. *I beleeue that* GOD *the Creator is the first and last, and that nothing was before him, that he shall abide the last for euer.*

5. *I beleeue that he alone is to be adored, and that none else may be worshipped.*

6. *I beleeue that all whatsoeuer the Prophts haue taught and spoken, is sincere Truth.*

7. *I beleeue that the Doctrine and Prophesie of* MOSES [d] *was true; that hee was the Father and Chiefe of* Wise men, *that liued then, or before his time, or should be in times to come after.*

8. *I beleeue that all the Law, as it is this day in our hands, was so deliuered by* GOD *himselfe to* MOSES.

9. *I beleeue that the same Law is neuer to be changed, nor any other to bee giuen vs of* GOD.

10. *I beleeue that he knoweth and vnderstandeth all the works and thoughts of men, as it is written in the Prophet,* He hath fashioned their hearts together considering all their works, *Psal.*33.15.

11. *I beleeue that* GOD *will recompence to all men their works: to all, I say, which keepe his Commandements, and will punish all Transgressers whomsoeuer.*

12. *I beleeue that the* MESSIAS *is yet to come, and although he doe long deferre his comming, yet will I hope, that he will come, waiting for him euery day, till he doth come.*

13. *I beleeue with a perfect Faith, that there shall be an awakening of the dead, at that time which shall seeme fit to* GOD *the Creator: the name of which* GOD *the Creator be much blessed and celebrated for euermore.* AMEN.

Comebrard out of the Spanish *Breuiarie* hath annexed this their Creed-prayer. O GOD and King, which sittest on the Throne of Mercies, forgiuest Iniquities, &c. O GOD which hast taught the thirteene Articles of Faith, remember this day the Conuenant of thy thirteene Properties, as thou reuealedst them to *Moses* in thy Law. 1. Lord, Lord. 2. Strong. 3. Mercifull. 4. Gracious. 5. Long-suffering. 6. And of great goodnesse. 7. And Truth. 8. Which keepest Mercy for thousands. 9. Which takest away the Iniquitie. 10. Transgressions. 11. And sinnes. 12. Which absolues not. 13. But rendrest the Iniquitie of the Fathers vpon the Children to the third and fourth Generation: then follow those thirteene Articles in forme of an Hymne, with the Exposition of R. *Moses:* which also you may reade in the Treatise of *Philip Ferdinand* a Polonian Christned Iew. And hee which thus beleeueth, sayth *Ferdinand*, is a Iew, and as a Brother to bee loued; and though hee commit all the sinnes of the World, howsoeuer hee shall bee punished for his sinne, yet shall he haue part in the Kingdome of Heauen, though he be reckoned among the Sinners of Israel. But he which shall ouerturne one of these Precepts, shall bee blotted out of the number of the Saints, and be reckoned an Heretike, Apostata, Epicure, worthy to bee hated of all.

This is the *Iewish* Faith, in which with much vexation, doubting, and lamentation, they liue and dye; vpon which, their *Religion* hath beene alway founded: but it was first put in writing, and brought into this Order by *R. Moseh ben Maimon,* [e] who dyed in the yeere after their reckoning 4964. *Anno Dom.* 1104. and straite charge was giuen, That the

d He attained (saith *R. Moses* hereon) to the height of humane perfection, and is reckoned among the troops of Angels. Neither sensitiue facultie, nor appetite was amisse in him, nothing left but only Spirit & spirituall vnderstanding. The difference betweene him and other Prophets he handleth *Morch. Neb. lib.* 2. *cap.* 36. that the name of the Prophet is *equiuocal*, of him and others, and his signes were of another kind then others, thereunto applying those words, *Exod.*6.3 *&c.* They alleage foure excellencies in *Moses.* First, That hee prophesied not by mediation of an Angel. Secondly, Others prophesied in the night, and in dreames. The Scripture saith, God appeared in Visions: But *Moses* in the day, standing betweene the two Cherubims. Thirdly, Their Members were in manner disioyned, and their Minds distracted: But God spake to *Moses* as one doth to his friend. Fourthly, they prophesied not at their will, but when the Spirit was sent, *Moses* alway when hee would. *Moses* otherwise, *Deuteronomie* 18.15. *Acts* 3.21. And *Paul, Heb.*1.1,2. and 2.2,3.

e *Parvia Cordubensis, in Egypto educatus & studijs consecratus: de quo dictum, à Mose ad Mosen non fuit sicut ipse Mosen. Vid. Bux. de ab. Heb. & Seal. Ep.*

Iewes thenceforth for euer confessing it in this Order, should according to the same, liue and dye. This their Creed, howsoeuer Charity may construe much of it to a better sense, yet according to their vnderstanding doth it principally ayme at the subuersion of *Christian Religion*; as appeareth in a more strait Examination, after their sense of the 2, 3, 4, and 5, the 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12. Articles: All which make against the person or the Office of the Sonne of GOD, as they vnderstand them; denying his God-head, and disanulling his Office, affirming, as a Iew shamed not to professe and vtter vnto M. *Buxdorfius*, That it needed not that any should satisfie for them; for euery Fox must yeeld his owne skinne and haires to the slayer. And the Iewish Faith, saith R. *Ioseph Albu*, is founded vpon three foundations: vpon the vnitie of the Diuine Essence; vpon the Law of *Moses*, and vpon the eternall reward of good workes, and punishment of euill, contenning the Passion of Christ, [f] *by whose stripes we are healed, and on whom* GOD *hath laid the iniquities of vs all.* It is written also in their [g] Talmud, that all the Israelites haue their portion in the World to come, not all alike, but he shall haue a greater part that hath done more good workes, and the wicked and Impenitent shall be punished twelue moneths in Hell or Purgatorie, after which time they also (and some sooner, if they haue beene lesse sinners) shall haue their part, but a lesse then the former: but to them which deny GOD (which become Christians) their fore-skinne growth againe, and as vncircumcised, eternally are punished in Hell. And the Sonne of a deceased Iew is bound to say, for the space of one yeere, [h] a Prayer called *Kiddisch*, thereby to redeeme him from Purgatorie, in which respect the Father dyeth with ley. A good woman may doe the like for her Husband. But R. *Bechai* (who excludeth all other Nations from their part in the Resurrection, preferring the Iewes in a foure-fold Priuiledge, *viz.* the Land of Canaan, the Law, the Prophets, and the Resurrection) receiteth out of the great [i] Talmud, That three sorts of men shall rise againe at the Day of Iudgement: one of the best Israelites; a second sort, of the wicked and worst; the third of a meane, who haue done as much good as euill. The good shall presently goe into life eternall; the wicked shall be cast into Hell, as in the twelfth of *Daniel*, and shall be for euer in torments of bodie and soule. The third and meaner sort of sinners shall bee tormented for twelue moneths space for their sinnes in Hell; at the end of which time their bodies shall be consumed, and the wind shall scatter their ashes vnder the soles of the feet of the Iust, &c. and as worthily doe they proue it out of the [k] Prophet: *And in that day two parts shall be cut off, and dye, and the third shall be left therein: and I will bring that third part thorow the fire, and will fine them as siluer is fined and will try them as Gold is tryed.* And in another place, [l] *The Lord killeth, and maketh alive, bringeth downe to Hell and raiseth vp*; Iust as fitly applyed, as 1. *Cor.* 3. and such like places by our Purgatory Spirits. R. *Dauid Kimchi* vpon the first Psalme, and *Esay* 26. commenteth, That the wicked shall not rise, but in the day of death their soule shall dye together with their bodie. And *Aben Ezra* in his Exposition of *Dan.* 12. writeth out of R. *Higgaon*, That many shall rise, and many not rise, but suffer euerlasting reproch; and expounded it thus, That the good Iewes which dye in Exile, shall rise against when the *Messias* shall come, and shall liue as long as the Patriarkes before the Flood; and then they shall make mertie with the great Fish *Leuiathan*, and the great Bird *Ziz*, and the great Ox *Behemoth*, [m] of which we shall speake after. When this is done, they shall dye, and at the last Day shall be rayseed vp againe, and shall possesse eternall Life, where shall bee no eating nor drinking, but glory, &c. *Iacob* [n] desired to be buried in Canaan, not in Egypt, for three causes (saith R. *Salomon Iarchi*) because he foresaw, That of the [o] *Dust* of Egypt shall bee made *Lice*: Secondly, because the Israelites which dye out of Canaan, shall not rise against without much paine of their *rolling thorow the deepe and hidden Vaults of the Earth*: Thirdly, lest the Egyptians should make an Idoll of him. For the better vnderstanding hereof, let vs heare what is said out of the Booke *Tanchum* (an Exposition of the Pentateuch) concerning this subiect. The Patriarkes (saith he) desired to be buried in Canaan, because they which are there buried, shall first rise in the time of the *Messias*. And R. *Hananiah* sayth, That they which dye out of Canaan, must endure two deaths: and the same appeareth, *Ier.* 20. where it is said, *Pashur should go into Babel, and should there dye, and there be buried.* What (quoth R. *Simon*) shall then all the Iust perish, which dye out of Canaan? No, but God will make them [p] *Mechillot*, that is, deepe Clifts and Caues vnder the Earth, by which they may passe into the *Land of Promise*; whither when they are come, GOD shall inspire into them the breath of life, that they may rise againe, as it is written, [q] *I will open your Graues, and cause you to come out of your Sepulchres, &c.* The like is written in their *Targums* or Chaldæan Interpretation of the *Canticles*: When the dead shall rise, Mount Oliuet shall cleaue asunder, and the Israelites which haue beene dead shall come out of the same, and they which haue dyed in strange Lands, comming thither by holes vnder the Earth, shall come forth. And for this cause I my selfe (saith our Author) haue heard the Iewes say, That sometime some of the

f *Esay* 53.5.6.

g *Tract. Sanhedrin. cap.* 13.

h See *Cap.* 19.

i *Tract. de nouo anno, cap.* 1.

k *Zach.* 13.8.

l 1. *Sam.* 2.6.

m See *Cap.* 20.

n *Gen.* 47.30.

o *Exod.* 8.17.

p Note that the Moderne Iewes pronounce *Theuolone* like the Letter S. *Burtorf. in fine Bibliot. Rab.* and therefore I haue followed him, in setting downe many words ending with S. which haue *Theu* in the Hebrew termination, as *Mesilos, Lilos.* So we as, heeses, faies, has's; forseeth, sayth, hath.

q *Ezek* 37.12.

the wealthiest and deuoutest amongst them goe into the Land of Canaan, that their bodies may there sleepe, and so be freed from this miserable passage vnder to many deepe Seas and rough Mountaynes. There be three sorts of r men; sayth *Salmanticensis* in the Booke *Iuchasin*, which see not the face of Hell; those which are extremely poore, those which are in debt, those which are troubled with the Collicke (the *Hasidai* chastised themselues tenne or twentie dayes before their death with this paine of the bowels, that so they might cleanse all, and goe s pure to the other World) some adde in this exemption from Hell, or comming to Iudgement, him which had an euill Wife, and some also Magistrates. But in *Pauls* time, *they themselues did allow* (saith t he) *a Resurrection of the dead, both of the Iust and Vnio iust.* They did then hold also a αυτοψυχωσις, in which sense it is likely, the Iewes thought u Christ to be *Elias*, or *Ieremie*, or one of the Prophets: and the Disciples some what sowred with this Leauen, asked of the blind man, x *whether he had sinned*, vnderstanding, as it seemeth, according to the Iewish Errour, when his soule had beene in some former bodie. And the Cabalisticall Authors, sayth y *Elias Leuita*, are of opinion that euery soule is three times created, they meane, it rolleth or passeth thorow three mens bodies, according to that z *Iob*, God *worketh all these things with a man thrice.* So the soule of the first man (saith hee) rolled it selfe into the bodie of *Dauid*, and shall thence returne into the bodie of the *Messias*. So they say that the soules of Sinners passe into the bodies of beasts; as if a man committeth Sodomie, his soule passeth into a Hire, because that creature is sometimes Male, 20 sometimes Female: the soule of the Adulterer passeth into a Camell.

r *Drusi. Pract. in Ios. 24. & 31.*

s Shrew-Purgatorie.

t *Acts 24. 15.*

u *Mat. 16. 24.*

x *Io. 9.*

y *Thisvad. Gilgul.*

z *Iob 33.*

Now to come from their Faith to their Workes: The wise Rabbines perswade the silly people, That they are the only Elect people of God, who easily can keepe, not the *Decalogue*, or ten Commandements alone, but the whole *Law of Moses*. They diuide the whole Law into fixe hundred and thirteene Commandements, and them againe into Precepts and Prohibitions: Of the commanding Precepts, they number two hundred fortie and eight; iust so many as (according to the Rabbines Anatomie) a man hath members in his bodie. Of the prohibiting Commandements, they reckon three hundred threescore and fiue, a as many as are dayes in the yeere, b or (as in the Booke *Brandspiegel*) veines in a mans bodie. Therefore if euery member of a man doe euery day performe one of the *Precepts*, and omit one of 30 the things prohibited, the whole Law of *Moses* shall be euery yeere, and so for euer, fulfilled. Their wise Rabbines say further, That the men only are to obserue those fixe hundred and thirteene Commandements, the women are onely subiect to the *Prohibitions*; yea, of those prohibitorie Mandates, onely to threescore and foure are they obliged by some, and to fixe and thirtie of the former; and this because of their other houshold-businesse, and subiection to their Imperious Husbands. Some of their deeply-wise Rabbines adde to those fixe hundred and thirteene, seuen other Commandements, making vp the number of fixe hundred and twentie; iust so many as are p Letters in the *Decalogue*, and as arise of the word *Keter*, signifying a Crowne: for were it not for the Law, God would not haue created the World; and for the obstruation thereof it yet subsisteth. And they which keepe 40 all the Commandements, doe set a Crowne on the head of God, and hee vpon the head of those which crowne him, shall see seuen Crowines, and make them to inherit seuen Chambers in Paradise, and will keepe them from the seuen Infernall Dungeons, because they haue obtayned the seuen Heauens, and the seuen Earths.

a *Rambius de precis.*

b *Brandsp.*

c *In decem, praecepta sunt tot literae quot sunt praecepta in Biblijs fo. 613. & 7. literae sunt praeterea quae obtenduni 7. plagas quae debentur legis transgressoribus, Leuit. 26. : 8 Et hoc est quod dixit Moses, Ego vobis proposui vitam & mortem, id est, 613. praec. ad vitam, & septem plagas ad mortem. R. Abben Kattan. praec. 251*

Their Wise-men affirme, that euery veine of the bodie of a man doth prouoke him to omit that which is forbidden, and he which doth omit such their vaine veine-warning, hath no good veine in him: euery of his members also doe prouoke him to performe those *iustory Inuentions*. But as veine should I be as they, if I should not make some end, where they can find none. We would now from these generalities proceed to the particulars of their Superstitions, tracing them herein from their birth to their graues, Religion being in the presence 50 of their Law, the square of all their (otherwise ciuill) actions; at least to speake of their Superstitions in the same. But first, seeing *Sebastian Munster* hath written a whole Booke, both in Hebrew and Latine, of those fixe hundred and thirteene Precepts, taken out of *Moses*, with the Exposition of their Rabbines, as also *P. Ricius* hath done, and *Philip Ferdinand* likewise out of *Ben Kattain*, I thought good to cull out some which seeme most remarkeable and strange to entertayne our Reader.

p *Iuchasin.*

§. II.

Of the negative Precepts expounded by the q Rabines.

q *Praec. Mos. cum exp. Rab. Maimon. Vide hec apud Rambam in sine Moreh. & R. Ricium & Genebrard. & R. Abben Kattani. per Phil. Ferdin.*

1 *Thou shalt haue no strange Gods in my sight.* Exod. 20. The Name of God is forbidden to be communicated to any creature.

2. *Thou shalt not violate r mine holy Name.* Thou shalt not destroy a Synagogue or Temple bee it neuer so old, nor shalt blot out one of the holy names, wheresoeuer thou findest it written. The Rabbines say, If any doe against any Affirmatiue Precept, and repent, it is sinne is forgiuen him: but hee which transgresseth a Negatiue Precept, is not cleansed by repentance, but it remaineth to the day of *Expiation* (which is the day of their solemne *Fast and Reconciliation.*) But hee which committeth a sinne, whereby he deserueth Death, or Excommunication, is not then purged, but must abide thereunto the diuine chastisements: and hee which violateth the Name of GOD, cannot bee absolued from that sinne but by death.

r *Leuit. 19. 17.*

5. *Thou shalt not s hate thy brother in thy heart.* He which is wronged by another, should not hate him, and hold his peace, but reproue him openly; and if hee repent, he ought not to be cruell to him: But if any be often reproued, and will not amend, it is lawfull to hate him. This Christ t confuteth.

s *Leuit. 19. 17.*

t *Matth. 5. 43.*

12. *No u Idoll as to bee adored.* If a man haue a thorne in his foot, hee may not bow before an Image to pull it out: and if money fall out of his hand, hee may not there, before an Image, stoope to take it vp, lest he might seeme to adore it, but he must sit downe on the ground to doe it. And if the water of a Fountaine be caused to passe thorow the mouth of an Image, he may not drinke thereat, lest he should seeme to kisse the Image.

u *Exod. 34. 14. Vide. Ex. officium. Brium praecipuo P. Ricium, contra. Maiquorum ipse profitita.*

22. *An x Image may not bee made, viz.* The Image of a man in siluer or gold, if it be embossed or set out, but if it bee stamped in metall (in manner of a seale) it is lawfull. But of Beasts, Birds, Trees, and Flowers, those prominent Images (which are made standing out) are lawfull. Otherwise of the Sunne, Moone and Starres.

x *Exod. 20. 23.*

45. *No y commoditie is to bee raised from Idols.* If a tree bee planted neere an Image, one may not sit vnder the shadow thereof, nor passe vnder it, if there bee any other way: and if he must passe, it must be running. Things imployed to Idolatry, may be vsed or vs, if the Gentiles haue first prophaned them. It is not lawfull to sell them Waxe or Frankincense, especially at their Candlemasse Feast; nor bookes to vse in their seruice. Our women may not performe a Mid-wiues office to them, nor nurse their children.

y *Deut. 7.*

65. *Thou shalt z doe no worke on the Seuenth day.* Nothing that belongeth to the getting of Food or Rayment. It is vnlawfull to walke on the grasse, lest thou pull it vp with thy feet; or to hang any thing on the bough of a tree, lest it breake; or to eate an Apple, plucked on the Sabbath, especially if the tayle or woodden substance, whereby it groweth, be on it; or to mount on a horse, lest he bee galled; or to goe into water, lest thou wipe thy clothes: which holdeth also, if they be moystened with Wine or Oyle (but not in a woman that giueth suck, who may wipe her cloathes, for the more puritie of her prayers). The stopple of a Vessell if it be of Hempe or Flax, may not be thrust in, though it runne, especially if any other Vessell be vnder. To mixe Mustard-seed with wine or water; to lay an Apple to the fire to roast; to wash the bodie, chiefely with hot water; to sweate; to wash the hands; to doe any thing in priuate, which may not bee publikely done: (but some say, it is lawfull priuately to rubbe off the dust with his nayles from his cloathes, which publikely hee may not:) To reade by a Light, except two reade together: To set sayle: (but if thou enter three dayes before, it is not necessarie to goe forth on the Sabbath) to be carryed in a Waggon, though a Gentile driue it: If fire happen on the Sabbath, to carrie any thing out, but thy food, rayment, and necessaries for that day, and that wherein the *holy Booke* lyeth: to put to pasture Horses or Asses, coupled together: to receiue any good by the Light, or Fire, which a Gentile hath made for the Iew; (otherwise, if he did it for himselfe:) To play on any Instrument; to make a bed; to Number, Measure, Iudge, or Marry, lest they should write any thing: To reade at home, when others are at the Synagogue: To speake of buying and selling (which it seemeth they obserue not:) To visite Field or Garden: To Runne, Leape, or tell Tales, &c. All these on the Sabbath day are vnlawfull. For dangerous diseases it is lawfull to violate the a Sabbath: Such are the three first dayes after a womans trauell, &c. But of this see b also the obseruation of their Sabbath. It is not lawfull to walke out of the Citie, but their limited space: but within the Citie, as farre as they will, though it bee as big as Niniuie.

z *Exod. 20. 10.*

a *Imminente vitae discrimine, non modo Sabbata sed & vitae salutem consistitutae praetermittere licet sententia, sanctissimi doctorum cultus mandatis seclusis. Ricius hoc praec.*

b *Cap. 17.*

c *Leuit. 22. Non facies aliquid quod causa esse potest vt reteatur in Ecclesia multitudo: id est, velociolari, vel cum ita saltare, vel manum tangere, R. Ric. Kattan pr. 186.*

120. *It is forbidden c to hurt the Seed-members of Man or Beast.* Neither Males nor Females may be gelded or spayed: and yet wee may vse such Beasts.

126. *It is punishable to know, kisse, or embrace one which is forbidden by the Law, Levit.* 18. Therefore our Masters haue forbidden to smile on such, or vse any meanes or tokens of Lust. Likewise they haue forbidden men to know their Wiues in the day-time, vnlesse it bee in the darke, or vnder some Couering. The same is forbidden to a drunken man, and to him which hateth his wife, lest they get wicked Children betweene them. Also to follow a woman in the streets, but either to goe before or besides her. And hee which is not married, may not put his hand beneath his Nauell, nor touch his flesh, when he maketh water. And because [d] a man may not weare Womans attire, neither may hee looke in a glasse, because that is womanish. d *Idem.*

138. *The fat may not bee eaten.* The fat of the Heart may: but not that which is on the Inwards, and Reines, and Stomake, and Guts, and Bladder; the rest may be eaten.

176. *If thy Brother bee* [e] *poore, thou mayest not abuse him*; to wit, to base Offices, as to vntie the shooe, or to carrie Vessels to the Bath. Concerning liberalitie [f] to the poore, they limit it at the fift part of a mans goods; lest men should become poore by releeuing the poore. e *Levit.* 25.39. f *R. Leui Ex.* 33.4. *Drus. prae. adrom.* 5.8.

191. *Thou mayest* [g] *not lend to an Israelite on Vsurie, nor borrow on Vsurie.* Nor be a witnesse or suretie in cases of Vsurie; nor receiue any thing besides the principall, especially on any Couenant going before. g *Deut.* 23.19.

201. *He that by constraint doth any thing worthy of Death (although hee violate the Name of God) ought not be slaine.*

213. *Wicked* [h] *men are not competent witnesses.* Hee is accounted wicked, which transgresseth any Precept, for which hee is worthy to be beaten. A Theefe and a Robber is not sufficient to bee a witnesse, after he hath made restitution: Nor a Vsurer, nor a Publicane, nor he which is enriched by play, nor Children, till they haue beards, except hee be twentie yeeres olde. h *Exod.* 23.1.

222. *The* [i] *King ought not to multiply Wiues.* Our Masters say, that the King may haue eighteene Wiues. i *Deut.* 17.17. *Rex habebit legem duplicitet: vnum librum sibi tenet alterum filis sertibat. Ebr. Gerde.* 500.

225. *If any of the seuen* (Canaanitish) *Nations shall come in the hands of a Iew, hee ought to slay him.*

242. *The Father or the Husband may disannull the vowes of their Children or Wiues.* And the *Wise-men* may release the vowes of those which repent of their vow. A Sonne of thirteene yeeres and a day, and a Daughter of twelue and a day (if they be out of their Parents tuition) haue power to vow. [k] A bastard may not marry an Israelites daughter to the tenth generation. k *Deut.* 23.3.

308. *There are fiftie defects which make a Man or Beast vncapeable of Sacred Functions*; to bee either Sacrificer, or Sacrifice: fiue in the Eares, three in the eye-lids, eight in the eyes, three in the nose, sixe in the mouth, twelue in the seed-vessels, sixe in the hands and feete, and in the bodie foure, &c. Besides, there are foure-score and tenne defects in Man, which are not in a Beast. No defect, vnlesse it bee outward, maketh a man vnfit.

§. III.

Of their [l] *affirmatiue Precepts.*

l *Prec. Mosaicum Exp. Rab.*

12. *Every one* [m] *ought to teach his Sonne the Law:* Likewise his nephew; and *Wisemen* their Disciples: and he which is not taught it of his Father, must learne it as he can. He which teacheth another the written Law, may receiue a reward; but not for teaching the Traditionall. m *Deut.* 11.19.

13. *Rise before thine* [n] *Elder:* That is, (saith R. *Iosi*) a *Wiseman*, although young in yeeres. To him thou must rise when hee is foure cubites distant; and when he is passed by, thou mayest sit downe againe. n *Lev.* 19.32.

16. *The sinner must turne from his* [o] *sinne vnto God.* And being returned, he must say, *I beseech thee, O Lord, I haue sinned and done wickedly before thy face: so and so haue I done, and behold, it repenteth mee of my wickednesse, I am confounded for my workes, I will doe so no more.* And thus ought all to say, which offer sacrifices for sinne; and they which are condemned to death for their crimes, if they will that death doe away their offences. But hee which hath sinned against his Neighbour, ought to make restitution, and aske pardon; otherwise his sinne is not remitted. And if his neighbour will not pardon him, let him bring three other to entreat for him: if hee then grant not, he is to bee accounted *cruell.* If the offended partie bee dead before, let the offender bring ten men to his Graue, and say before o *Numb.* 5.7.

before them, *I haue sinned against God and this man*, and let restitution bee made to his heyres.

19. *Prayer* p *must bee vsed euery day.* Therefore they of the great Synogogue, *Esra, Zerubbabel*, and the rest, ordained eighteene blessings, and other prayers, to be said with euery sacrifice. They ordayned these Rites of Prayer; the eyes cast downe to the ground, the feet set together, the hands on the heart, in feare and trembling. as a seruant speaketh to his Master: a place where is no dung, especially of an Asse and a Henne; a window in the roome which looketh toward Ierusalem, turning his bodie that way. He which is blind, let him direct his heart to his *Father* which is in heauen.

p Deut.11.13.

23. *The Sentence* Heare Israel, &c. *and another sentence is to bee* q *written on the posts of the House.* He which hath his *Phylatteries* on his head and armes, and his knots on his garment, and his Schedule on his doore, is so fenced that he cannot easily sinne.

q Deut.6.9.

24. *Euery Israelite is bound to write for himselfe a booke of the* r *Law.*

r Deut.31.12.

29. *Sanctifie the Sabbath*; that is, Remember those things on the Sabbath which make to the honour and holinesse of that day. And wee are perswaded that Sathan and the Diuels flie into darke mountains, abhorring the holinesse of the day; and after it is past, returne to hurt the Children of men. s To apply spittle to the eyes is then prohibited, beeause it is a medeine.

s Cicet. Drusex Ilmedeau.

40. *Hee which is twentie yeeres olde and marryeth not, breaketh the Precept of increasing and multiplying*: except it bee for contemplation and studie of the Law. But if hee feele in himselfe *Iezer*, Lust to preuaile, he must marrie, least he fall into transgression.

52. If a man refuse to marrie the wife of his brother deceased without issue, he must by the sentence of the Iudges, pull off his shooe, which must not be made of Linnen, but of the Hide of a cleane Beast; and the woman, whiles she is yet fasting (for then it is most truely spittle) shall spit in his face, saying, *So let it be done to him which will not build his brothers house.*

63. *Hee which will eate the flesh of Beast or Birds, must kill them after the due manner.* Nor may any be allowed to be a Butcher, except hee know our Rites.

98. *When the Iudges dissent in any case,* t *the greater part is to bee followed.* When Sentence is past, Execution must follow the same day; and the Cryer must goe before, proclaiming the Crime and Penalie, with the circumstances of Time, Place, and Witnesses. If any can say any thing for his innocencie, he may cause him to be carryed backe to the Judges: if he be led againe to death, hee must haue two *Wise-men* by to heare his words, that if they see cause, he may be carryed backe to the Judges. If hee yet be found guiltie, he must be led to the place of execution, and there slaine by two Witnesses. But before his death, let them exhort him to say, *Let my death bee vnto mee for the remission of all my sinnes.* After this confession let them giue him a cup of Wine, with a graine of Frankinsence to drinke, that hee may be depriued of the vse of reason, and made drunke, and so slaine.

t Exod.23. Vid. sup. c.2.

112. *Honour thy Father and Mother. R. Simeon* saith, That the Scripture more esteemeth the honour of Parents, then of GOD; for we are bidden honour GOD with our substance; but for thy Parents, if thou hast nothing, thou ought est to labour in the Mill to succour them: yea, saith u another, thou must beg for them from doore to doore.

u Hiscuni ap. Drusiprat. in Mat.15.

132. *At this time wee can sanctifie nothing, because wee haue no Temple.*

I might adde diuers other things of like moment, which (to auoyd prolixitie) I omit: and for the same cause I let passe many things which I might hither bring out of x *Munster*, in his notes vpon *Matthew*, by him set forth in Hebrew and Latine; where hee both reiecteth and refuteth diuers of the Iewish vanities; especially their blasphemous cauils against CHRIST.

x S. Munster. Euang. Matth. cum Annotat.

Such is that their fooleric (by him y reeited) in *Matth.* 15. *Annotat.* about their scrupulous niceties in their festiuals: They may not then take Fish; Geese and Hennes they may: When one maketh fire, and setteth on the Pot, hee must order the sticks so vnder it, that it may not resemble a building. No more then shall be spent that day, may then bee made readie. No Cheese may then be made, nor hearbs cut. Heat water to wash thy feet; not so for thy whole bodie. Touch not (much lesse mayest thou eate) an Egge layde on a festiuall day; yea, if it bee doubtfull whether it were then layd, and if it be mixt with others, all are prohibited. But hee which killeth a Henne, and findes Egges in the bellie, may eate them. According to the number of the three Patriarches, *Abraham, Isaac*, and *Iacob*, they expect a third Temple, after those two aforesaide perished, z interpreting the Scriptures; of the first, *I see heard mee from his holy Hill*; of the second, ISAAC *went to meditate in the field*; of the third, *The glory of this last house shall be greater then of the first, &c.* Et Iewish handling of the Scriptures. But I haue beene so plentifull of their barrennesse, that I feare to ouer-lade or ouer-loath the Reader.

y Annot. in Matth.15.

z In Mat.22.

Munster * hath likewise written seuerall small Treatises of the Faith of the Christians, and of the Faith of the Iewes, and of the Iewish Cauils against our Religion, and of diuers fabulous

* Munsteri Tractatus Heb. & Lat. contra Iudeos.

fabulous fictions which they haue deuised in disgrace thereof; they that will, may in them further see their blindnesse. For what greater blindnesse then to thinke that their Messias was borne that day the Temple was destroyed, and to remaine at Rome till that time, when hee shall say to the Pope, *Let my people goe*, as *Moses* borne so long before, at last said to *Pharaoh?* That he should bee anointed by *Elias?* That he should destroy Rome? That *Elias* shall re-vnite the soule to the bodie in the Resurrection, which shall bee of all the Iust, but not of all the wicked; not in the same bodie, but another created like to the former? which resurrection shall bee effected by *Messiahs* prayer: That the Temple at Ierusalem shall be the very middle of the world? That in the *Messiahs* dayes Wheate shall grow without renewing by Seed, as the Vine? But of these and the like, more then enough in this booke following. *L. Carretus* a Conuert from the Iewes, setteth downe these fixe, as the maine differences betwixt them and vs, The Trinitie, the Incarnation, the manner of his comming, whether in humilitie or royaltie, the Law ceremoniall, which the Iew holdeth eternall, faluation by and for our owne workes, which the Christian ascribeth to Faith in Christ crucified, and lastly, of the time of his comming, whether past or present. To these he thinketh all other may be referred. But let vs examine the particulars.

L. Carretus Iudeus conuersus.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the Iewish opinions of the Creation, their Ceremonies about the birth of a Child: Of their Circumcision, Purification and Redemption, of the first-borne, and Education of their Children.

§. I.

Of their Exposition of Scripture, a taste in Gen. 1. 1.

THeir Exposition of Scripture is so absurd; that wee haue hence a manifest argument, that as they denyed the Sonne that *Eternall Word and Truth*, whose written word this is; so that Spirit which indited the same, the *Spirit of Truth, hath put a vayle on their heart*, and iustly suffered the spirit of errour to blind their eyes, *that seeing they should see and not vnderstand.* This will appeare generally in our ensuing Discourse; but for a taste let vs begin with the beginning of *Moses*, whereon R. *Iacob Baal Hatturim* hath left to the world these smoakie speculations. [a] The Bible beginneth with *Beth*, the second letter in the Alphabet, and not with *Aleph* the first, because that it is the first letter of *Beracha*, which signifieth blessing, this of *Arour*, that is, a curse. Secondly, *Beth* signifieth two, insinuating [b] the two-fold Law, *written and vnwritten*: for *Bereshith* hath the letters of *Bara shtei*; first, hee made; secondly, Lawes; thirdly, *Bereshith* (the first word of *Genesis*) hath as many letters as *Aleph be Tsiurei*, that is, the first of *Tsiurei* or *Tsiri*, on which the Iewes say the world began: fourthly, *Bereshith* hath the letters of *Baiyth roshe*, that is, the first Temple, which he knew the Iewes would build, and therefore created the world: fifthly, it hath the letters of *Aare shabbath*, that is, to keepe the Sabbath; for God created the world for the Israelites which keepe the Sabbath; sixthly, also, of *Berith esh*, which signifieth the Couenant of fire, to wit, Circumcision and the Law, another cause of the creation: seuenthly, likewise it hath the letters of *Bara iesh*, that is, hee created as many worlds as are in the number *Iesh*, (that is, three hundred and ten) that the Saints might [c] reioyce therein. Now if I should follow them from these letters and spelling, to their mysticall sententious exposition of greater parts of the sentence, you should heare *Moses* tell you out of his first words that the world was created for the *Talmudists*, for the *fixe hundred and thirteene precepts*, because *hee loued the Israelites more then the other people:* Again, that *hee foresaw the Israelites would receiue the Law* (but hee is now an Asse, saith he, which beareth Wine and drinketh water.) There are in the first verse seuen words, which signifie the seuen dayes of the weeke, seuenth yeere of rest, seuen times seuenth the Iubilee, seuentimes seuen Iubilees, seuen Heauens, seuen lands of Promise, and seuen Orbes or Planets, which caused *David* to say, *I will praise thee seuen times a day.* There are 28. letters in it, which shew the 28. times of the World, of which *Salomon* speaketh, *Eccles.* 3. 1. There are in it fixe *Alephs*, and therefore the world shall last fixe thousand yeeres. So in the second verse, *The earth was without forme and voyde*, are two *Alephs*, which shew the world should

a Of this their Cabalisticall interpreting Scriptures, see before *cap.* 12. § 2. *R. Isac. B. H. in Gen. 1. vid. Ph. Ferd.*

b Two worlds are hence gathered by the Cabalists, materiall and immaterial. *vid. Kuchlin. lib. 1.* I might haue added other as strange conceits of the Cabalists on these words, out of *P. Ric. de col. syr. l. 4.* We finde the father in *Beth*, the sonne in *Bereshith*, *Bara*, *Bithim*, the Spirit and Widdome, &c.

c *Ad possidendam Iesh. pro. 8. 21.*

d *Let there be light:* Thus is the light darkned.

should bee two thousand yeeres voyde: now in the third [d] verse are foure *Alephs*, which shew other foure thousand yeeres, two of which should bee vnder the Law, and two vnder Messias.

§. II.

Their Dreames of Adam.

e *Tract. Sanhedrin.*

NOw for the first man, his body (saith R. *Osia* in the [e] Talmud) was made of the earth of Babylon, his head of the land of Israel, his other members of other parts of the world. So R. *Meir* thought hee was compact of the earth, gathered out of the whole earth, as it is written, *Thine eyes did see my substance*: now it is elsewhere written, [f] *The eyes of the Lord are ouer all the earth.* There are twelue hours of the day, saith R. *Aba*, in the first whereof the earth of *Adam*, or earthly matter was gathered: in the second, the trunke of his body fashioned: in the third, his members stretched forth: in the fourth, his soule infused: in the fift, hee stood vpon his feet: in the sixt, hee gaue names to the Creatures: in the seuenth, *Eue* was giuen him in marriage: in the eighth, they ascended the bed two, and descended foure: in the ninth, hee receiued the Precept, which in the tenth he brake, and therefore was iudged in the eleuenth; and in the twelfth was cast out of Paradise: as it is written, *Man continued not one night in honour.* The statute of *Adam* was from out end of the world to the other, and for his transgression, the Creator by laying on his hand lessened him more before, saith *R. Eleazar*, with his head he reached (a reacher indeed) the vtmost firmament. His language was Syriacke or Aramitish, saith *R. Iuda*, and as *Reschlakis* addeth, the Creator shewed him all generations, and the wise-men in them. His sinne, after *R. Iehuda*, was heresie; *R. Isaac* thinketh the nourishing his fore-skin.

f *Psal.139.16.*

He knew or vsed [g] carnall filthinesse with all the beasts which GOD brought vnto him before *Eue* was made, as some interpret *R. Eleazar*, and *R. Salomon*: but *Reuchline* laboureth to purge them of that sense: who affirmeth, that hee had an Angell for his Master or Instructor: and when he was exceedingly dejected with remorse of his sinne, GOD sent the Angell *Raziel* to tell him that there should be one of his progenie which should haue the foure letters of *Iehouah* in his name, and should expiate original sinne. And heere was the beginning of their Cabala: and also presently hereupon did hee and *Eue* build an Altar, and offer sacrifice. The like offices of other Angels they mention [h] to other Patriarchs, and tell that euery three moneths are set new watches of these watchmen, yea euery three houres, yea and euery houre is some change of them. And therefore wee may haue more fauour of them in one houre then another: for they follow the disposition of the starres; so said the Angell *Samael* (which wrestled with him) vnto *Iacob*, [i] *Let mee goe, for the day breaketh*: for his power was in the night. But let me returne to *Adam*: of whom they further tell [k] that he was an Hermaphrodite, a man-woman, hauing both Sexes and a double bodie, the Female part ioyned at the shoulders, and backe parts to the Male, their countenances turned from each other. This is proued by *Moses* his words. *So* GOD *created man in his Image, Male and Female created hee them. And he called their name* ADAM: yet after this is mention of *Adams* solitarinesse, and forming of *Eue* out of his side, that is, cutting the female part from the Male, and so fitting them to generation. Thus doth *Leo Hebraus* reconcile the Fable of *Plato's Androgynus* with *Moses* narration, out of which he thinketh it borrowed. For as hee telleth that *Iupiter* in the first forming of mankinde, made them such Androgyni, with two bodies of two sexes ioyned in the breast, diuided for their pride, the nauill still remaining as a skarre of the wound then made: so with little difference is this their interpretation of *Moses*.

g *Reuchlin de Arte Cabal.l.1.*
h *So (say they) Iophiel* another Angell instructed *Shem, Zadkiel, Abraham, Raphael, Isaac, Peliel, Iacob, Gabriel, Ioseph, &c. vid. Reuch. l.1. & Archangeli Commeni in Cabalist Dogma.*
i *Gen. 32.26.*
k *Pistor de Cabeh. l.1.c.10. Gen.1.27. & 5.1,2. Leo Hebr. Dial. 3. de Amore. Rambam. More Neb. l.2.c.3.*

§. III.

Of the Iewesses Conception and Trauell, and of Lilith.

l *Buxdorf. Synaud. c.2. Elias Thisr. ad. Lilith.*

WHen a Iewish woman [l] is great with Childe, and neare her time, her chamber is furnished with necessaries; and then some holy and deuout man (if any such may bee had) with Chalke maketh a circular line round in the chamber vpon all the walls, and writeth on the doore, and within and without on euery wall, and about the bed in Hebrew Letters, *Adam, Chaua, Chuts, Lilith* or (after the Iewish pronunciation) *Lilis*, that is, *Adam, Eue, away hence Lilis.* Hereby they signifie their desire, that if a woman

woman shall bee deliuered of a sonne, GOD may one day giue *him* a wife like to *Eue*, and nor a shrew like *Lilis*. This word *Lilis* is read in the [m] Prophet, interpreted a Skritch-Owle: but the Iewes seeme to meane by it a diuellish *Spectrum* in womans shape, that vseth to slay or carry away Children, which are on the eight day to be Circumcised. *Elias Leuita* writeth, that hee hath read, that a hundred and twentie yeeres *Adam* contained himselfe from his wife *Eue*, and in that space there came to him Diuels which conceiued of him, whence were ingendred Diuels and Spirits, Fairies and Goblins: and there were foure mothers or dammes of Diuels, *Lilith*, *Naemah*, *Ogereth*, and *Machalath*. Thus is it read in *Ben Sira*, when GOD had made *Adam*, and *saw it was not good for him to bee alone*, hee made him a woman of the earth, like vnto him, and called her *Lilis*. These disagreed for suspicion, not suffering [n] *Cesarue priorem, Pompeiusue parem*: *Lilis* (made of the same mould) would not be vnderling, and *Adam* would not endure her his equall. *Lilis* seeing no hope of agreement, vttered that sacred word IEHOVA, with the Cabalistic all interpretation thereof, and presently did flie into the Ayre. *Adam* playning his case, GOD sent three Angels after her, *viz. Senoi, Sensenoi, Sammangeloph*, either to bring her backe, or to denounce vnto her, That a hundred of her Children should dye in a day. These ouertooke her ouer the troublesome Sea (where one day the Ægyptians should bee drowned) and did the it message to her: shee refusing to obey, they threatned her drowning: but she besought them to let her alone, because shee was created to vexe and kill children on the eight day, if they were men; if women children, on the twentieth day. They neuertheless forcing her to goe, *Lilis* sware to them, That whensoeuer she should finde the name or figure of those Angels, written or painted on Schedule, Parchment, or any thing, shee would doe Infants no harme, and that she would not refuse that punishment, to lose a hundred children in a day. And accordingly a hundred of her children or young Diuels, dyed in a day. And for this cause doe they write these names on a Scroll of Parchment, and hang them on their Infants neckes. Thus farre *Ben Sira*.

In their Chambers alwayes is found such a scroll or painting; and the names of the Angels of Health (this office they ascribe to them) are written ouer the chamber doore. In their Booke [o] *Brandspiegel*, Printed at Cracouia 1597. is shewed the authoritie of this Historie, collected by their Wise-men out of those words; [p] *Male and Female created bee them*, compared with the forming of *Eue* of a Rib in the next Chapter, saying, That *Lilis* the former was diuorced from *Adam* for her pride, which shee conceiued, because she was made of earth, as well as hee; and GOD gaue him another, *Flesh of his flesh*. And concerning her, *R. Moses* [q] tells that *Samael* the Diuell came riding vpon a Serpent, which was as bigge as a Camell, and cast water vpon her, and deceiued her.

When this Iewesse is in trauell, shee must not send for a Christian Mid-wife, except no Iewish can bee gotten: and then the Iewish women must be very thick about her, for feare of negligence or iniurie. And if she be happily deliuered of a sonne, there is exceeding ioy through all the house, and the father presently makes festiuall prouision against the Circumcision on the eight day. In the meane time ten persons are inuited, neither more nor fewer, which are all past thirteene yeeres of age. The night after her deliuerie, seuen of the inuited parties, and some others sometimes, meet at the Child-house, and make there great cheere and sport all night, Dicing, Drinking, Fabling, to solace the Mother, that shee should not grieue too much for the childs Circumcision.

m *Isa.* 34. 14.

n *Ben Sirab. quæst.* 60.

n *Luanib. l.*1.

o *Brandsp.*

p *Gen.* 1. 27.

q *Moseh. Neb. lib.* 2. *c.* 31.

---

§. IIII.

Of the Iewish manner of Circumcision.

THE Circumciser is called *Mohel*, who must bee a Iew, and a Man, and well exercised in that facultie: and hee that will performe this office, at the beginning giueth money to some poore Iew, to be admitted hereunto in his children, that after his better experience hee may be vsed of the richer. And this *Mohel* may thence-forwards bee knowne by his thumbes, on which he weareth the nayles long [r] and sharpe, and narrow-pointed. The circumcising Instruments is of stone, glasse, yron, or any matter that will cut; commonly sharpe knives like Rasors, amongst the rich Iewes closed in siluer, and set with stones. Before the Infant be Circumcised, he must be washed and wrapped in clouts, that in the time of the Circumcision hee may lie cleane: for otherwise they might vse no prayers ouer him. And if in the time of Circumcision (for paine) he defileth himselfe, the *Mohels* must suspend his praying, till he be washed & laid cleane again. This is performed commonly in the morning, while the child is fasting, to preuent much fluxe of bloud.

r *In arcium acuminatos vnguet.* Buxd.

In

In the morning therefore of the eight day all things are made readie. First, are two seates placed, or one so framed, that two may sit in the same apart, adorned costly with Carpets, and that either in the Synagogue, or some priuate Parlour: If it bee in the Synagogue, then the seat is placed neere the *holy Arke*, or *Chest*, where the Booke of the Law is kept. Then comes the surete ie or God-father for the child, and placeth himselfe at the said seat, and neere him the *Mohel* or Circumcifer. Other Iewes follow them, one of which cryeth with a loud voyce, That they should bring prefently whatsoeuer is needfull for this businesse. Then come other Children, whereof one bringeth a great Torch, in which are lighted twelue waxe Candles, to represent the twelue Tribes of Israel: after them two other Boyes, carrying cups full of red Wine. After them another carrieth the circumcising knife: another brings a dish with salt; another brings another dish with Oyle; in which are cleane and fine clouts, which after the *Mohel* applyeth to the wounds of the child. These stand in a ring about the *Mohel*, the better to marke and learne: and these their Offices are bought with money by those children. Some come thither also with Spices, Cloues, Cinnamon, strong Wine to refresh, if any happen to swoune. These being thus assembled, the God-father sitteth downe vpon one of those two seats: right against him the *Mohel* placeth himselfe, and sings the [f] song of the Israelites, and others. Then the women bring the child to the doore, all the congregation presently rising vp. The God-father goeth to the doore, taketh the child, sitteth downe on his seat, and cryeth our, *Baruch habba*, that is, Blessed be hee that commeth; in their Cabalistical sense, *habba*, being applyed either to the eight day, which is the day of Circumcision, or the comming of *Elias*, whom they call the *Angell of the Conenant*, (so they interpret [t] the Prophet) and say, that *Elias* commeth with the Infant, and sits downe on that other empti seat. For when the Israelites were prohibited Circumcision, and *Elias* complained thus, [u] *The children of Israel haue forsaken the Conenant*, that is, Circumcision, God promised him, That from thence-forwards hee should be present at Circumcision, to see it rightly performed. And when they make readie that seat for *Elias*, then they are bound in set words to say, *This seat is for the* [x] *Prophet* ELIAS, otherwise (as a vnbidden gheest) he commeth not. This seat remaineth for him three whole dayes together.

Then when the God-father holdeth the child in his lap, the *Mohel* takes him out of his clouts, and layeth hold on his member, and holding the *fore-skinne*, putteth backe the top thereof, and rubbeth the *fore-skinne*, so to make it haue the lesse sense of paine. Then he taketh from the Boy the circumcising-knife, and saith with a loud voyce; *Blessed bee thou, O God our Lord, King of the World, which hast sanctified vs with thy Commandements, and giuen vs the Conenant of Circumcision*: and whiles he thus speaketh, cuts off the fore-part of the skin, that the head of the yard may bee seene, and presently hurleth it into the [y] Sand-dish, and restoreth his knife to the Boy againe: taketh from another a cup of Red Wine, and drinketh his mouthfull, which hee presently spitteth out on the Infant, and therewith washeth away the bloud; and if he see the child begin to faint, he spitteth out some thereof on his face. Presently he taketh the member of the child in his mouth, and sucketh [z] out the bloud, to make it stay from bleeding the sooner, and spitteth out that bloud so sucked into the other cup full of Wine, or into the dish of Sand. This bee doth at least thrice. After the bloud is stayed, the *Mohel* with his sharpe-pointed thin nayles rendeth the skinne of the yard, and putteth it backe so farre, that the head thereof is bare. Hee is more painefull to the Infant, with this rending of the remaining skinne, which action is called *Priah*, then with the former. This being done, hee layeth the clouts (dipped in oyle aforesaid) to the wound, and bindeth them three or foure times about; and then wrappeth vp the Infant againe in his clouts. Then saith the Father of the child; *Blessed bee thou, O God our Lord, King of the World, which hast sanctified vs in thy Commandements, and hast commanded vs to succeed into the Conenant of our Father* ABRAHAM. To which all the Congregation answeth, *As this Infant hath happily succeeded into the Conenant of our Father* ABRAHAM; *so happily shall hee succeed into the possession of the Law of* MOSES, *into Marriage also, and other good workes*. Then doth the *Mohel* wash his bloudie mouth and his hands. The God-father riseth with him, and standeth ouer-against him; who raking the other cup of Wine, saith a certaine prayer, and prayeth also ouer the Infant, saying; *O our God, God of our Fathers, strengthen and keepe this Infant to his Father and Mother, and make that his name, in the people of Israel, may bee named* (heere he first nameth the Child, calling him *Isaac*) ISAAC, *which was the sonne of* ABRAHAM. *Let his Father reioyce in him that hath come out of his loynes; Let his Mother reioyce in the fruit of her wombe*, as it is written, [a] *Make glad thy Father and Mother, and her that bare thee to reioyce*. And GOD saith by the Prophet, [b] *I passed by thee, and saw thee troden in thy bloud, and I said vnto thee, In thy bloud thou shalt liue; yea, I said vnto thee, In thy bloud thou shalt liue*. Heere the *Mohel* puts his finger into the other cup of Wine, wherein hee had spit the bloud, and moysteneth the Childs lippes three times with that wine, hoping, that accor-

f Exod. 15. 1.
t Mal. 3. 1.
u 1. Reg. 19. 10.
x Nam vulgus credit esse adhuc viuere. Doctores opinantur animã eius reuersuram in aliud corpus simile. Vnde cum viuus sit R. Dauid, Malach. 3. redyt ad terram suam, cum descendetes ipso, quilicet omne elementium de elementum suum, pulquam vero vixerit in corpore ita mittetur cum Deus ad Israelem ante diem iudicij Drusius ad Ia. 1.
The Rabbinns haue another as senseless a dreame, that *Phinees* was *Elias*, & therefore *Elias* in his *Tsbithi* gatheneth that *Elias* liued when *Iabes Gilead* was destroyed *Iud.* 21. & was one of the Inhabitants thereof, which escaped, and after returned. *Rad. Tsbisbbi.*
y The Eastern Iewes circumcise ouer water the Inhabitants of the Citie called *Matha, Mahasi*, and *Sara* vse water wherein is boyled mirtle, and some kinds of spices. *Altare auenum ap. Drusi.*
z If the Circumciser doe not suck in this fashion, he is degraded from his office, and if he doe not rend the skin of the yard, he is no Circumcision. *Drusi. Iosi. 7.*
a Prou. 23. 25.
b Ezech. 16. 6.

10

20

30

40

50

60

according to the former sentence of the Propher, he shall liue longer in the bloud of his Circumcision, then otherwise he should. *Dauid* also saith, [c] *He is mindfull of his marueilous acts which hee hath done, and of his wonders, and the iudgements of his mouth, &c.* Then hee continueth his prayer for the present assembly, and that God would giue long life to the Father and Mother of the Boy, and blesse the child. This done, he offers the blessed Cup to all the yong men, and bids them drinke. Then with the Childe (who is thus made a Iew) they returne to the Fathers house, and restore him to his Mothers armes. This last prayer he makes neere the Arke, and some of the deuouter Iewes, before and after Circumcision, take the Childe, and lay him vpon *Elias* pillow, that *Elias* may touch him. [d] The skinne cast into the sand, is in memorie of that promise, [e] *I will make thy seed as the sand of the Sea*; and of *Balams* saying, [f] *Who can number the dust of* IACOB, that is, his posteritie, whose fore-skin is cast in the Sand or Dust, and because the Curse [g] on the Serpent is thus fulfilled, *Dust thou shalt eat*, that is, this skin in the dust: thus to their enemie the Serpent fulfilling also that precept, [h] *If thine enemie hunger, feed him.* And by this meanes the Serpent can no more seduce this man.

c *Psal.* 105.8.

d *Glos. Talmud.*

e *Gen.* 32.12.

f *Num.* 23.10.

g *Gen.* 3.14.

h *Prou.* 25.21.

If a Childe bee sicke on the eight day, they defette Circumcision till his recouerie: they hold also the blowing of the North winde necessarie to this action, and therefore thinke that their Fathers for bate circumcision those fortie yeeres in the Wildernesse, because the North winde blew not all that time, lest it should haue blowne away the piller of smoake and fire: and besides, this winde is wholsome for wounds, which else are dangerous. But lest they should stay beyond the eighth day expecting this Northerne breath, their Talmud tels that euery day those blow foure windes, and that the North is mixed with them all, and therefore they may Circumcise euery day. If the Child dye before the eight day, he is circumcised at the graue without any prayers: but a signe is erected in memorie of him, that GOD may haue mercie vpon him, and raise him at the day of the Resurrection. In some places all the people stand, except the God-father, because it is written, [i] *All the people stood in the Couenant.* But to pursue the rest of their niceties, grounded vpon such interpretations, would bee endlesse. We will follow the childe home, if you be not alreadie weatie, and see what rout is there kept.

i *Cap.* 2. *pag.* 94.

k *Gen.* 21.8.

l *Pib. Ferdinan. pag.* 164.

m The Iewes make small accompt of women, because they are not Circumcised, and because it is written, *Pro.* 8. *O men, I call vnto you*, they thinke women are not worthy of life eternall. Yet are they more eagerly zealous of their superstition then the men. *Vid. Carb. lib.* 1. *cap.* 15.

Ten must bee the number (you haue heard) of the inuited ghests, and one or two of these learned Rabbins, who must make a long prayer and Sermon at the table, although others meane while are more busied in tossing the cups of Wine. I was once present (saith [i] *Buxdorfius*) at one of their Circumcision feasts, and one of their Rabbins preached on *Pro.* 3.18. *Wisedome is a tree of life*; but more *wooden* or ridiculous stuffe, I neuer heard in all my life. This feast they obserue by example of *Abraham*, who [k] *made a great feast when the childe was weaned*: their *Kabal* peruerts it, *when hee was circumcised.* [l] The Circumciser abideth sometime with the Mother, lest the bloud should againe issue from the childe. The mother keepeth within, six weekes, whether it bee a male or female: all which time her husband must not so much as touch her, or eate meate in the same dish with her.

If a female child [m] bee borne, there is small solemnitie; onely at six weekes age, some young wenches stand about the Cradle, and lift it vp with the child in it, and name it; shee which stands at the head, being God-mother: and after this they iunket together.

§. V.

Of the Iewish Purification, Redemption, and Education.

WHen the fortie dayes are accomplished, before the wife may accompanie or haue any fellowship with her husband, shee must bee purified in cold water, and put on white and cleane garments. Their washing is with great scrupulositie, in a common watering, or in priuate Cisternes, or Fountaines; which must bee so deepe, that they must stand vp to the necke in water: and if it bee muddie in the bottome; they must haue a square stone to stand on, that their whole feete may stand in cleere water, and that the water may passe betwixt their toes: for the least part not couered with water, would frustrate the whole action: and for this cause they lay aside all their haire-laces, neck-laces, rings: they diue vnder the water, so that no part may bee free from the same. Some Iewesse must stand by for witnesse hereof, which is twelue yeers old and a day at least.

n The redeeming of the first borne.

n They redeeme their first-borne in this sort; when the child is one and thirtie dayes old, his Father sendeth for the Priest o with other friends, and sets the child on a Table before him; adding so much money, or monies-worth, as amounteth to two Florens of gold, or two Dolars and a halfe: My wife (saith he) hath brought me forth my first-borne, and the Law

o There is none of them now to impudent, that dare sweare he is a true Priest or Leuite: and therefore this is but a shadow of that which it felse was but a shadow, and now is nothing: as appeareth by their owne doubtfull *Isi* that follow. *Vid. Schal. Distr. h. de dec.*

bids me giue him to thee. Doest thou then giue me him, saith the Priest? He answereth, Yea. The Priest asketh the Mother, if she euer before had a childe, or abortion? If shee answere, No: then the Priest asketh the Father, Whether the childe or the money be dearer to him? he answereth, The childe: then doth the Priest take the money, and lay it on the head of the Infant, saying: This is a first begotten child, which God commanded should be redeemed, and now, saith hee to the childe, thou art in my power, but thy parents desire to redeeme thee; now this money shall be giuen to the Priest for thy redemption: And *if I haue redeemed thee, as is right, thou shalt bee redeemed*: If not, yet thou being redeemed according to the Law and custome of the Iewes, shalt grow vp to the feare of God, to marriage and good workes, *Amen*. If the father dye before the childe be one and thirtie dayes old, the mother hangeth a scroll about his necke, wherein is written: This is the first-borne, and not redeemed: and this child when he commeth of age must redeeme himselfe.

The Iewish *Chachamim*, or Wise-men, haue left no part of life vnprouided of their superstitious care: as we haue seene concerning the birth and circumcision of their children, with the *Purification* of the mother, and *Redemption* of the first-borne. To proceed with them: they enioyne the mother, while she giueth sucke, to eate wholesome food of easie digestion, that the Infant may sucke good milke; so that the heart and stomacke be not stopped, but may come so much more easily to obtaine wisedome and vertue. For God hath great care of children, and hath therefore giuen a woman two brests, and placed them next her heart; yea, in the dangerous persecution vnder *Pharaoh*, *Exod.* 1. hee [p] caused the earth to open it selfe, and receiue their Male children, and created therein two stones, from one of which the Infant sucked milke, and from the other honie, till they were growne, and might goe to their Parents: yea, and if you beleeue their *Gemara* (can you choose?) a poore Iew hauing buried his wife, and not able to hire a nurse for his childe, had his owne brests miraculously filled with milke, and became nurse himselfe. Yea, *Mardocheus* (saith their *Medrasch*) sucked the brests of *Hester*, and for this cause did she, after her exaltation, so preferre him. The conclusionis, if she giue grosse food to her Infants, she shall be cast into hell, She must not go naked brested, nor too long fasting in a morning, nor carrie her Infants, or suffer them to goe or be naked, leit [q] *the Sunne burt them, if it bee in the day, or the Moone in the night*: and that they may soone learne that the earth is filled with the Maiestie of diuine glory: and for this cause must they beware, that they neuer goe bare-headed: for this were a signe of impudencie, and ill disposition. And as religiously they must prouide, that they be alway girded with a girdle: for the girdle distinguisheth betwixt the heart and the priuities; and in his morning prayer, he saith, *Blessed be thou, O God, which girdest Israel with the girdle of strength*: which, if he should not haue a girdle on, would be in vaine. Their Mothers therefore sow their girdles to their coats: with great care they auoid going bare-foot, especially in Ianuary and February.

p In the booke *Medrasch*.

q Psal. 121. 6.

When they can speake, they are taught sentences out of Scripture, and to salute their Parents with good-morrow, good-Sabbath, &c. and after seuen yeeres they adde the name of God, God giue you good-morrow, &c. but they must not name the name of God but in a pure place. These teach them the names of things in the vulgar, and some Hebrew names among, that so they may not commonly be vnderstood: for pure Hebrew they cannot speake, except their most learned Rabbines onely. Their Children must not conuerse with children of Christians, and their Parents make all things in Christians odious to them, that they may season them from their child-hood with hatred of them. When they are seuen yeeres old, they learne to write and reade: and when they can reade, they learne to construe the Text of *Moses* in their vulgar tongue. When the Mother carrieth him first to the schoole to the Rabbi, she maketh him cakes seasoned with honie and sugar, and as this cake, so (saith she) let the Law be sweet to thy heart. Speake not vaine trifling words in the schoole, but onely the words of God. For if they so do, then the glorious Maiestie of God dwelleth in them, and delighteth it selfe with the ayre of their breath. For their breathing is yet holy, not yet polluted with sinne; neither is hee [r] *Bar-mitzuah*, bound to obey the Commandements, till he bee thirteene yeeres old.

r Filius mandatorum.

When he is ten yeers old, and hath now some smatteringin *Moses*, he proceedeth to learne the Talmud: at thirteene yeeres, his Father calleth ten Iewes, and testifieth in their presence that this his sonne is now of iust age, and hath beene brought vp in their manners and customes, their daily manner of praying and blessing, and hee will not further stand charged with the *sinnes of his Sonne*, who is now *Bar-mitzuah*, and must himselfe beare this burthen.

Then in their presence hee thanketh God, that he hath discharged him from the punishment of his sonne, desiring, that his sonne by diuine grace may be long safe, and endeuour to good workes. At the fifteenth yeere of their life, they are compelled to learne their *Gemara*, or the complement of their *Talmud*, Disputations, and subtill Decisions about the Text of their

their Talmud. And in these they spend the greatest part of their liues, seldome reading any of the Prophets, and some not in the whole space of a long life reading one Prophet through, and therefore know so little of the Messias.

At eighteene yeeres their male children Marrie, according to their Talmud-constitution, and sometimes sooner, *to auoyde fornication.* Their Maydens may marrie, when [f] are twelue yeeres old and a day. At twentie yeeres they may traffike, buy, sell, and conuersant all they can: for their *neighbour* in the Law, is (in their sense) such a Iew as you haue heard described. But because these things are ioynted together in one of their sentences or Apophthemes of the *R R.* called *Pirke Aboth*, I thought good to adde the same, as containing a mappe of the Iewes life. A sonne of fiue yeeres to the Bible: a sonne of ten yeeres to the Mischna: a sonne of thirteene yeeres to the Precepts: a sonne of fifteene yeeres to the Talmud: a sonne of eighteene yeeres to marriage: a sonne of twentie yeeres to follow (the affaires of the world,) a sonne of thirtie yeeres to strength: a sonne of fortie yeeres to wisedome: a sonne of fiftie yeeres to counsell: a sonne of sixtie yeeres to old age: a sonne of seuentie yeeres to gray haires: a sonne of eightie to the height: a sonne of ninetie to the graue: a sonne of one hundred yeeres is as a dead man departed out of the world.

[f] *Postquam produxerit pilos, vocatur puella usque ad sex menses integros* (*R. David postquam germinauerint duo pili.*) *A principio autem dies quo sex illi menses consumti sunt & excepti, vocatur adulta, ita ut sint amplius quam sex menses inter puellam* נערה *& adulam* בוגרת *Drusi. ex Maimon. de casis.*

[g] *Pirke Ab. & Fagnot.*

CHAP. XV.

Of their Morning Prayer, with their Fringes, Phylacteries, and other Ceremonies thereof.

§. I.

Of their Behaviour before they goe to the Synagogue.

THe good-wife is to waken her Husband, and the Parents to awaken their Children, when after thirteene yeeres they are subiect to the Iewish Precepts: before their Pentecost, they rise before it is light, and after, the nights being shorter, when it is now day. They are to awaken the day, not to tarrie till it awaken them. For their Morning-prayer must bee made while the Sunne is rising, and not later: for then is *the time of hearing*, as they interpret, *Lamen.* 2.19. And hee which is deuout, ought at that time to bee sad, *for Ierusalem*, and to pray euerie morning for the re-edifying of the Temple and Citie: if in the night-time, any sheddeth teares for their long captiuitie, God will heare his prayer, for then the Starres and Planets mourne with him: and if he suffer the teares to trickle downe his cheeke, God will arise and gather them into his bottle: and if any decree be by their enemies enacted against them, with those teares he will blot out the same. Witnesse [a] *David, Put my teares in thy bottle, are they not in thy booke?* And if any rub his fore-head with his teares, it is good to blot out certaine sinnes that are there written. In there beginning of the night, God causeth all the gates of heauen to be shut, and the Angels stay at them in silence, and sendeth euill spirits into the world, which hurt all they meet: but after mid-night, they are commanded to open the same. This command and call is heard of the Cocks, and therefore they clap their wings and crow, to awaken men: and then the euill spirits lose their power of hurting: and in this respect the *Wise-men* haue ordained them a thanksgiuing to be said at Cock-crowing: *Blessed art thou, O God, Lord of the whole world, who hast giuen vnderstanding to the Cocke.*

They must not rise vp in their beds naked, nor put on their shirts sitting, but put their heads and armes into the same as they lye, least the walls and beames should see their nakednesse. It is a brag of *Rabbi Iose*, that, in all his life, hee had not herein faulted. But to goe or stand naked in the chamber, were more then piacular: and much more, to make water standing naked before his bed, although it be night. Hee must not put on his garments wrong: nor his left shoe before the right, and yet he must put off the left foot shoe first: When he is clothed, with his head inclined to the earth, and a deuout minde (in remembrance of the destruction of the Temple) hee goeth out of the chamber, with his head, face, and all couered, because of the holy *Schechinam* (diuine glorie) ouer his head. Then hee goeth to stoole in some priuie place; for so hath *Amos* commanded, [a] *Prepare thy selfe (O Israel) to meete thy God:* and DAVID; [b] *All that is within mee praise his holy name:* That is, all within the body emptie and cleane: For euse must not God bee named; and therefore his garments must not be spotted and fouled. To restraine nature too long, were a sinne, and would cause the seule to stinke: and (fauing your reuerence) hee must wipe with the left hand, for

Buxdorf. Syn. Judai. 5. Orant ter in die & mane, & horas quatuor primi, diana, & vespertina, cubitum. Prof. Amathusa. Sacr. Lit. quinque etc. sine oratione agreditur. Ph. Ford. prac. 80. P. Heyrat. assist. 19.

[a] Psal. 56. 8. *Quis indenda sua in se vertit, atque in vertus eius robur protiectat.* Ric. Epist. 3. Tabbi et etiam inspicere quadrupedes cocantes: erigere membrum vel motu vel alio facto, ne gaudium accidat in mute, conuertere cogitationem etc. Rambam lib. 3. cap. 50. de M. Lin, ne hebræ cachinnaffiat, aut illo, cap. 9. 6. prohibuit vomere fornicationis aut membra quæ committitur, non habeat.

[a] Amos 4. 12.

[b] Psal. 103. 1.

for with the right he writeth the name of God, and the Angels. And in this place and busi-
nesse hee must take heed, he thinke not of God or his Word; much lesse name him, for God
will shorten the dayes of such a one. *R. Sira* told his Scholers, that the cause of his long life
was, that in an impure place hee neuer though of the Word, nor named the name of God.
Besides, hee must turne his face, and not his binder-parts toward the Temple of Ierusalem.
Hee ought not to touch his body with vnwashen hands, in regard of the euill spirits which
rest thereon till they be washed, and if hee should touch his eyes, hee would be blinde; his
eares deafe; his nose dropping, his mouth stinking, his hand scabbed with these vnwash-
ed, and therefore venemous hands: and when hee washeth, he must powre water three
times on his right hand, and as oft on the left, before one hand may touch the other: hee 10
must not bee sparing in his water, for *store of water, store of health*: after the hands, the
mouth and face must bee washed, because they were created after the Image of God: and
how should *the name of God* be vttered out of a foule mouth? hee must wash ouer a boson,
not ouer the ground: he must drie his face very well, for feare of wheales and wrinkles: and
that with a cleane Towel, not with his shirt, for this would make them blockish and for-
getfull. After all this followeth his *Brachah*, or blessing, *Blessed bee thou, O God, our God,*
King of the whole world, who hast commanded vs to wash our hands. Their hands they must al-
wayes wash on these occasions: in the morning; at their returne from the stoole; from ba-
thing; when they haue cut their nayles; haue scratched their naked bodie; hauing pul-
led off their shooes with their hands; haue touched a dead bodie; haue gone amongst the 20
dead; haue companied with their wiues; or haue killed a louse; If hee respect not washing
after these, if he bee learned, he shall forget his learning; if vnlearned he shall lose his sense.

§. II.

Of their Zizis and Tephillim and Holy Vestments.

b Of the Iewes *Arba-canphot*, and *Zizis*: they call this garment *Tabith. vid. El Thib. rad. Tabith. vid. R. Mos. Md. N. 1.3. c.33.*

IHey [b] haue a foure-cornered garment, which some put on with the rest, when they rise, others then, when they will pray. The foure cornered parts thereof are made of linnen silke, tyed together with two winding bands, of such length, that they may draw through their head betwixt them, so that those two quadrangu- 30 lat pieces may hang downe, one on his brest, the other on his backe. In euery of those foure corners hangeth a labell, made of white woollen threds, by a little knot, downewards to the ground, and the same is foure, or eight, or twelue fingers broad. These labels they call *Zizis*. Those which are deuout, weare this garment euery day, vnder a long outward coat, in such sort, that those labels may appeare our a little, so that they may alwayes see them, as monitories of the *Commandements of God*. When they put them on, they praise God that hath commanded them to weare these *Zizis*. Hee (say they) that keepeth duely this

c *Num.15.38.* Fringes and Phylacteries.

Precept [c] of *Zizis*, doth as much as if hee kept the whole Law: for there are in all fiue knots, compared to the fiue bookes of *Moses*: eight threds added to them, make thirteene. 40 And the word *Zizis*, maketh fixe hundred, altogether amounting to fixe hunded and thirteene, the number (as you haue heard) of Gods Commandements. They ascribe the continencie of *Ioseph* in *Potiphars* house; and of *Boaz*, when *Ruth* slept by him, to the *Zizis*. May it please your patience, a storie out of the Talmud. One *Rab. Iochanan* saw a boxe full of Iewels, which one of his Schollers, *Bar-Emorai* purposed to steale, but was forbidden by a voyce sounding out of the ayre, Let it alone, *Bar-Emorai*, for it belongeth to *R. Chaninas* wife, which in the other world shall put into the same violet woollen, to make thred for *Zizis*, that of them, the iust men there may haue their fringed garments sewed. Once, hee which weareth this garment without intermission, is fortified against the Deuill, and alleuill Spirits.

d Of their *Tephillim*.

[d] Besides this memorable Vestment, they weare a certaine knot neare their nose, out of 50 *Deut.6.8. They shall bee frontlets betweene thine eyes*. They make it thus: They take a little blacke foure-square calfe-skin, which they fold eight times, that it may haue foure double folds and distinct breadths. They put into these, distinct Scriptures, the same being foure-fold of parchment. These Scriptures are taken [e] out of *Exod.13.* and *Deut.6.* Then take they haires out of a Cow or Calues tayle, and wash them cleane, and binde them about those writings of Scripture, so that any one may see, that they are good, by the ends of them appearing out of the skin. This skinne they sew with cleane and fine strings, taken out of Calues or Kines bodies, or made of Bulls sinewes, or if such strings cannot bee had, with strings of Calue-skin-parchment. Then doe they sew a long and blacke thong to that thick hide or skin, and knit a knot about it. This piece of worke they call *Tephillim*, to put them 60 in minde of often prayer: and tye it so about their heads, that the thicke knot, wherein the Scriptures are, may hang betwixt the eyes. After this, they take another foure-cornered skin,

e The foure-teene first verses in *Exod.13.* & 4,5,6,7,8,9. of *Deut.6. Pagn.*

which

which they fold as the former, and write certaine verses out of *Exodus* in parchment, and put it into a little hollowed skinne, and sew it vpon the thicke-folded skin; to which they adde a long thong, and call it *the Tephillim of the hand.* This they tye to the bare skin, aboue the elbow of the left arme, that so that which is written may bee ouer-against the heart, which may hereby be the more enflamed to prayer. That long string is so fastned, that it commeth to the fore-part of the hand, thus fulfilling that Commandement, [f] *The words which I command thee this day, shall bee on thine heart, and thou shalt tye them for a signe in thy hand.* They tye on first this *Tephillim* of the hand, and then that of the head, and make their *bracchab* or prayer, saying; *Blessed bee thou, O God, our Lord, who hast sanctified vs in thy Commandements, and hast commanded vs to put on Tephillim*; looking, while hee speaketh, diligently on the knot on his fore-head. In folding, sewing, knitting, and tying them, they verie subtilly frame the name of God *Schaddai*: Other their manifold ceremonies about these *Tephillim*, I willingly omit. Their sanctitie is such, that he which weareth them must be pure within and without: and if hee lets them fall on the ground, all that shall see them so lying, must fast with him one whole day: they must not bee hanged vp bare, but in a bagge: nor may they be left in a chamber, where a man and his wife lye together, except in a triple chest or bagge. A man must not sleepe while he hath them on, nor may hee breake winde; and if he haue lift to the stoole, he must lay them foure ells from the place of his easement, or lay them against his heart in a double bagge. Their women seruants, and sicke folkes, are free from wearing them. It is sufficient for women to say *Amen* to their prayers. And all this *Moses* learned in Mount Sinai.

f Deut.6.8.

§. III.

Of their Schoole or Synagogues, Rites, and their Mattins.

WEE haue beene tedious in furnishing our Iew to his Mattins; at Sun-rising is their houre, as you haue heard; but their Rabbins haue inlarged and lengthened that time to about nine of the clocke. Where many of the Iewes liue together, they resort at a set houre to their Synagogue. Thither they must goe cheerfully: before their Synagogue they haue an Yron fastned, to make cleane their shooes, according to *Salomons* counsell, [g] *Keepe thy foote when thou goest into the house of God.* He that hath Pantofles, must put them off, as it is written, [h] *For the place where thou standest is holy ground.* At the entrance in at the doore, he pronounceth some things out of *Dauids* Psalmes: they must enter with feare and trembling, considering whose presence it is; and for a while suspend their praying for the better attention. And euerie Iew must cast in a halfe-penie at least into the Treasurie, as it is written; [i] *I will see thy face in righteousnesse*, that is, in almes, as they interpret it. In this attention they bow themselues towards the Arke, in which is the booke of the Law, and say, [k] *How faire are thy Tents, O IACOB! and thy dwellings, O Israel?* And [l] *I will enter into thy house in the multitude of thy mercie, I will bow downe in thy holy Temple in thy feare.* And, [l] *O Lord, I haue loued the habitation of thy house, and the place of the Tabernacle of thy glorie*: and diuers other verses out of the Psalme. After these things they begin to pray, as is contained in their common Prayer-booke; and because these prayers are verie many, therefore they runne them ouer; hee that cannot reade, must attend and say *Amen*, to all their prayers. These prayers are in Hebrew rimes. Their first prayer is, *The Lord of the World*, which raigned before any thing was created, at that time, when according to his will they were created, was called King, to whom shall bee giuen feare and honour. He alway hath beene, is, and shall remaine in his beautie for euer. Hee is *One*, and besides him there is none other, which may bee compared or associated to him, without beginning and end; with him is rule and strength. He is my GOD and my deliuerer which liueth. He is my Rocke in my need, and time of my trouble, my Banner, my Refuge; my Hereditarie portion, in that day, when I implore his helpe. *Into his hands I commend my Spirit.* Whether I wake or sleepe, hee is with me, therefore I will not be afraid.

g Eccles.4.17.
h Exod.3.5.
i Num.24.5.
k Psal.5.7.
l Psal.26.28.

It seemeth 1.Cor.11.4. that they prayed bare-headed: but in the booke *Musat cap.4.* It is said, a man ought to couer his head when hee prayeth, because he standeth before God with feare and trembling, and Cap.6. he giueth a reason why a man is bare, a woman couered, because saith he, Eue first sinned.

This done, they say then their hundreth [m] benedictions one after another, which are short, and twice a day repeated. First, for the washing of their hands, that if hee then forgot it, he might now in the Congregation recite it. Then for the creation of man, and for that hee was made full of holes, wheteof, if one should bee flopped, he should dye: then a confession of the Resurrection: then for vnderstanding giuen to the Cocke (as you haue

m Grounded on *Deut* 10.12. Now Israel, what doth God require of thee? they reade not *Mashchael*, but *Meashchael*, hee requireth an hundred. And in the Treatise *Porta lucis*, is hereof a Cabalistical speculation, that hee which any day shall missie any of his hundreth benedictions, he shall not haue one blessing to his minde, &c. See *P. Kirc. de Cultis. Agricolb* 4.

heard) to discerne day and night a sunder, and with his crowing to awaken them; and in order, *Blessed,&c.* That he hath made me an Israelite or Iew, *Blessed,&c.* That hee hath not made me a seruant, *Blessed,&c.* That he hath not made me a woman (The women heere say, that he hath made me according to his will) *Blessed,&c.* That exalteth the lowly, *Blessed,&c.* That maketh the blind to see; which they should say at their first wakening, *Blessed,&c.* That rayseth the crooked; at his rising, *Blessed,&c.* That cloatheth the naked; at his apparelling, *Blessed,&c.* That raiseth them vp that fall, *Blessed,&c.* That bringeth the prisoners out of prison, *Blessed,&c.* That stretcheth the world vpon the waters; when hee setteth his feet on the ground, *Blessed,&c.* That prepareth and ordereth the goings of man; when hee goeth out of his chamber, *Blessed,&c.* That hath created all things necessarie to life; when he puts on his shooes, *Blessed,&c.* That girded Israel with strength; his girdle, *Blessed,&c.* That crowneth Israel with comelinesse; when he puts on his hat, *Blessed,&c.* That giueth strength to the wearie. *Blessed bee thou God our Lord, King of the world,* who takest sleepe from mine eyes, and slumber from mine eye-lids. Then adde they two prayers to be preserued against sinnes euill spirits, and men, and all euill. After this, humbling themselues before GOD, they confesse their sinnes, and against comfort themselues in the couenant made to *Abraham, Wee are thy people, and the children of thy Couenant, &c.* O happie wee! how good is our portion? how sweet is our lot? how faire is our heritage? Oh happie we, who euery morning and euening may say, *Heare, Israel, The Lord our Lord is one God.* Gather vs that hope in thee from the foure ends of all the earth, *that all the inhabitants of the earth may know that thou art our God, &c. Our Father which art in Heauen,* be mercifull vnto vs for thy names sake, which is called vpon vs: and confirme in vs that which is written, [n] *At that time will I bring you, and gather you, and make you for a name and praise among all the people of the earth, when I shall turne your captiuities, saith the Lord.*

n *Zeph.n.3.10*

Then follow two short prayers for the Law giuen them. And then they goe on to the Sacrifices, which, because they cannot execute in action our of the Temple, they redeeme with words, reading the precepts concerning sacrifices, according to their times, comforting themselues with the saying of HOSE, [o] *We will sacrifice the calues of our lippes.* Then repeat they an Historie of Sacrifice, and a Prayer of the vse of the Law, and how many wayes it may bee expounded. This done, they (with a still voyce that none can heare) pray for the re-edifying of the Temple, in these words; *Let thy will bee before thy face,* O GOD our Lord, Lord of our Fathers, that the holy house of thy Temple may bee restored in our dayes, and grant vs thy will in thy Law. After, rising with great ioy and clamour, they sing a prayer of prayse in hope hereof; and sitting down e again, they reade a long prayer, gathered heere and there out of the Psalmes; and some whole Psalmes, and part of 1. *Chron.*30. And lastly, the last words of *Obadiah,* [p] *The Sauiours shall ascend into Mount Sion, to iudge the Mount of* Esau, *and the Kingdome shall bee the Lords.* Which they speake in hope of the destruction of the Christians, whom they call Edomites, and of their owne restitution. (In some of their close writings, which they will not suffer to come into the hands of Christians, they say that the sonk of *Edom* entered into the bodie of Christ, and that both hee and wee are no better then *Esau.*) They proceed [q] singing, *And God shall bee King ouer all the earth:* In that day GOD shall bee one, and his name one, as it is written in thy Law, OGOD, *Heare, Israel,* GOD *our* GOD *is one* GOD: And these words in their next Prayer they repeat, resounding that last word [r] *One,* by the halfe or whole houre together, looking vp to Heauen: and when they come to the last letter thereof, *Daleth, d.* they all turne their heads to the foure corners and windes of the World, signifying that GOD is *King of the whole world:* hauing in the word, *Echad,* many superstitious subtilties; that the letter *Daleth* in regard of his place in the Alphabet, signifieth foure; and the word *Echad* containeth in numerall letters two hundred fortie and fiue, whereunto adding three *haet elohechem emes, God our Lord is true,* they make vp the number of two hundred fortie and eight, and so many members there are in mans bodie: for euerie member, a prayer secures them all. And this verse thrice recited, secureth against the ill spirit. They [s] esteeme it a holy prayer, by which miracles may bee wrought, and therefore vse it morning and euening. They haue another prayer called *Schone esre,* that is, eighteene, because it containeth so many thanksgiuing, which they say twice a day, and the chiefe chanter of the Synagogue singeth it twice by himselfe. They thinke by this prayer to obtaine remission of their sinnes. They must pray it standing so, that one foot must not stand more on the ground then the other, like the Angels: [t] *And their foote was a right foote.* When they come to those words in it, *Holy, holy, holy, Lord God of hosts;* they leape vp three times aloft. And hee (say their *Chachamim*) which speaketh a word during this prayer, shall haue burning coales giuen him to eate after his death. These eighteene thanksgiuings, are for the eighteene bones in the chine or back-bone, which must in saying hereof be bended.

o *Hos.*14.3.

p *Obad.ver.*21.

q *Manscst.praecept.Mes cum expos. Rab.*

r *Echad.*

s They may not say it within foure cubits of a graue, nor in sight of an vnclean place, where dung or wine is, etc: ept: they be hardned and dryed vp, or else couered. They must not stirre their eyes, or fingers. It is a preseruation against duels. *Manscst.*

t *Ezek.*1.7.

After

After this, followeth a prayer against the Iewes reuolted to Christianitie, and against all Christians, saying; *These which are blotted out* (that is, reuolters) shall haue no more hope, and all vnbeleeuers shall perish in the twinkling of an eye, and all thine enemies which hate thee, GOD, shall be destroyed, and the proud and presumptuous Kingdome shall quickly be rooted out, broken, layd euen with the ground, and at last shall vtterly perish, and thou shalt make them presently in our dayes obedient to vs. *Blessed art thou God*, which breakest and subduest them which are rebellious. They call the Türkish Empire the Kingdome of *Ismael*; the Roman, Edomiticall, proud, &c. They are [u] themselues indeed exceeding proud, impatient, and desirous of reuenge. The Talmud sayth, That the lying spirit in the mouth of *Achabs* Prophets, which perswaded him to goe and fall at Ramoth Gilead, was none other but the spirit of [x] *Naboth*, whom hee had before slaine. And [y] *Victor Carbonsis*, a Christian Iew, testifieth, That there are not vnder heauen a more quarrelsome people, themselues acknowledging the Christians farre meeker then themselues; when they haue this Prouerb, that the modestie of the Christians, the wisedome and industrie of the Heathens, and faith of the Iewes, are the three pillers which sustaine the world.

u *Tract. Sanhedrin.*

x 1. *Kin.* 21. 22.

y *Vict. de Carbon. lib. 3. cont. Iud. cap.* 8.

But to returne to their deuotions: After those other before mentioned, followeth a prayer for the good sort, for Proselytes, reedifying of the Temple, for sending the Messias, and restauration of their Kingdome. In the end they pray GOD to keepe them in peace, and when they come to these words, *Hee that makes peace aboue, shall make peace ouer all Israel*, Amen: they goe backe three paces, bow themselues downewards, bend their head on the right hand, then on the left: (if some Christian bee there with an Image, they must not bow, but lift vp their heart.) This they doe for honours sake, not to turne their hinder parts on the Arke: and thus they goe (like Crabbes) out of the Synagogue, vsing certaine prayers; not running, but with a slow pace, least they should seeme glad, that their Mattins were done.

Other their niceties in praying, as laying the right hand on the left ouer the heart; not spetting nor breaking winde vp or downe; not (interrupted by a King) to cease prayer; to shake his bodie this way and that way; not to touch his naked bodie; and to say *Amen*, with all his heart: for they that say *Amen*, are worthie to say it in the world to come. And therefore [z] *Dauid* endeth a Psalme with *Amen, Amen*: signifying that one is to bee said heere, and the other in the other world: also in a plaine eminent place, purged from all filth, seeed from the sight of women, his face to the East, standing, his feet close together, fixing his eyes on the ground, eleuating the heart to heauen, &c. I hold it enough thus to mention.

P. *Ric. prec. affirmat.* 19.

z *Psal.* 72. 19.

Their praying to the East must be vnderstood from our Westerne parts, because Ierusalem standeth that way: for otherwise *Rambam* * sheweth that *Abraham* prayed in Mount Moriah toward the West; and the *Sanctum Sanctorum* was in the West, which place also *Abraham* set forth and determined. And because the Gentiles worshipped the Sunne toward the rising, therefore *Abraham* worshipped Westward, and appointed the Sanctuarie so to stand. The Talmud saith, Praying to the South bringeth wisdome; toward the North, riches.

* *Mar. Neb. l. 3. cap.* 64.

I might heere also adde their Letanie and Commemoration of their Saints almost after the Popish fashion. As thus for a taste. Wee haue sinned before thee, haue mercie on vs. O Lord, doe it for thy names sake, and spare Israel thy people. Lord, doe it for *(Abraham)* thy perfect one, and spare Israel thy people. Lord, doe it for him which was bound in thy porches, (to wit, in Mount Moriah, where the Temple was afterward builded) and spare Israel thy people. Lord, doe it for him which was heard in the ladder *(Iacob)* from thy high place, and spare Israel thy people. Lord, doe it for the merit of *Ioseph* thy holy one, &c. Lord doe it for him which was drawne out of the waters *(Moses)* and spare, &c. Lord, doe it for *(Aaron)* the Priest, with *Urim* and *Thummim*. Lord, grant it for him that was zealous for thy name *(Phineas.)* Lord, doe it for the sweet Singer *(Dauid.)* Lord, doe it for him which built thine house. They name not any, but expresse him after this sort. And then proceed in like manner, with the titles, attributes, and workes of GOD. Doe it for thy Name, Doe it for thy Goodnesse, for thy Couenant, thy Law, thy Glorie, &c. in seuerall versicles. And then to their Saints in a new passage. Doe it for *Abraham, Isaac* and *Iacob*. Doe it for *Moses* and *Aaron*, for *Dauid* and *Salomon* (as if their combined forces should effect more then single.) Doe it for Ierusalem the holy Citie, for Sion, for the destruction of thy house, for the poore Israelites, for the bare Israelites, for the miserable Israelites, for the Widdowes and Orphans, for the sucking and wained; and if not for our sake, yet for thine owne sake. Then in another forme, Thou which heaest the poore, heare vs; thou which heaest the oppressed, heare vs: Thou which heardest *Abraham*, &c. With reuning a commemoration of their Saints larger then before: and (after some repeating the diuine titles) in another tune they oppose their Saint and wicked ones together: as Remember not the lye of *Achan*, but remember *Iosua*, forgiuing him, and remember *Heli* and *Samuel*, and so on in a tedious length.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of their Ceremonies at home, after their returne, at their Meales and otherwise: and of their Euening Prayer.

Buxdorf c.6 7.
a Relation of Religion in the West.

THus haue wee seene the Iewish Mattens, which they chant, (sayth [a] another) in a strange wilde hallowing tune, imitating sometimes Trumpets, and one ecchoing to the other, and winding vp by degrees from a soft and silent whispering, to the highest and loudest notes that their voyces will beare, with much varietie of gesture: kneeling they vse none, no more then doe the Græcians: they burne Lampes: but for shew of Deuotion or Eleuation of Spirit, that yet in Iewes could I neuer discerne: for they are reuerend in their Synagogues, as Grammar boyes are at Schoole, when their Master is absent. In summe, their holinesse is the veric outward worke it selfe, being a brainlesse head, and a souelesse bodie. Meanewhile, the good-wife at home, against her husbands returne, sweepeth the house, that nothing may disturbe his holy cogitations, and layeth him a booke on the Table, either the *Pentateuch* of *Moses*, or a booke of Manners, to reade therein the space of an houre, before he goeth out of the house about his businesse. This studie is required of euerie deuout Iew, eyther in his owne house, or else in their Schoole or Synagogue. And being thus come home, they lay vp their *Tephillim* in a Chest, first that of the head, then that of the hand.

They account it healthfull also to eate somewhat in the morning, before they goe to worke: for whereas there are threescore and three diseases of the gall, a bit of Bread, or a draught of Wine can cure them all. About eleuen of clocke his wife hath prepared his dinner pure meates, purely dressed; but if she haue Pullen or Cattell, shee must first feed them. For it is said, [b] *I will giue grasse in thy field for thy Cattell, and thou shalt eate and bee satisfied:* you see, the Cattell are first mentioned. And to keepe such Domestic all cattell, is good in respect of the disasterous motions of the Planets, which must some way sort to effect. But if they bee studious of almes, and good works, then *Saphyra Rabba* the great Chancellor (some Angell) according to his office, registreth the same, and commendeth them vnto GOD, saying; *Turne away that planetarie misfortune from such a one, for hee hath done these, and these good workes.* And then doth it befall some wicked man, or else some of the Catell. Before they come to the Table, they must make tryall againe in the priuie what they can doe: for it is written, [c] *Thou shalt carry out the old, because of the new.* Especially let there bee cleane water, wherein the housholds must first wash, then the wife, and lastly the good-man, who presently without touching or speaking ought else, might more purely giue thankes. Hee (sayth *R. Iose* in the [d] Talmud) that eateth with vnwashen hands, is as hee that lyeth with an Harlot, for it is written: [e] *For the strange woman a man commeth to a morsell of bread.* They must wash before meat and after, so strictly, that they may not keepe on a Ring on their finger, for feare of some vncleanesse remaining vnder it. I had rather (sayth *R. Akiba*) dye for thirst, then neglect this washing *tradition of the Elders*; when hee had onely so much water brought him into prison, as might serue him but to one vse of washing or drinking, at his owne choyse.

On the Table cleanely spred, must bee set a whole loafe well baked, and the salt, and then the housholder or the chiefest Rabbi at Table, taketh the loafe into his hands, and in the cleanest and best baked part thereof, maketh a cut into it, and then setting it downe, and spreading his hands on it, saith, *Blessed art thou Lord God, King of the world, who bringest Bread out of the earth:* and then breaketh off that piece of bread which hee had cut before, and dipping it into the salt or broath, eateth it, without speaking a word; for if hee speake, he must say ouer his Grace againe: After this, hee taketh the loafe, and cutteth for the rest. Then hee taketh a cup of Wine [f] (if they haue any) with both hands, and with the right hand holdeth it vp a handfull higher then the Table, and looking stedfastly on the cup, saith, *Blessed, &c. who hast made the fruit of the Vine.* Ouer water they pronounce no blessing: and if there bee not three at least at the Table, each man must blesse for himselfe: If three or more, the rest say, Amen. Salt is religiously set on in remembrance of the Sacrifices. If when they eat, they should cut off the piece of bread, it would offend GOD. Both hands they spread ouer the loafe, in memorie of the ten Commandements, which GOD hath published concerning Wheat, of which bread is made. The bread must bee had in speciall honour, no vessell supported with it, or set vponit: and a spirit [g] called *Nabal* giueth attendance, as

b *Deut.* 11.13.
c *Leuit.* 26 10.
d *Tract. Berak. Sotah. cap.1.*
e *Prou.6.26.*
f They may not drinke any wine with the Gentiles, because it is doubtfull whether it hath beene offered to Idols or no: and though it be alleaged, that the Gentiles now doe not sacrifice Idols, yet because it was determined by a certaine number of Rabbines, till by a Counsel of so many, that decree bee disanulled, it must stand, *Elias Thysbad. Nesech.*
g Robin good-fellow, or the spirit of the buttery among the Iewes. Concerning Angels, it is thus written in the booke *Aboth, fol.*23. from the earth to the firmament all is full of troupes and rulers, and below are many hurtfull and accusing creatures, which all haue their aboode in the ayre, no place being free, of which some are for peace, some for warre, some prouoke to good, some to euill, to life and death, *&c. Drusius lib.7. ipsa.* They say the Angell *Raziel* is Gods Secretarie, of which name are two Cabalisticall bookes. *Elias Thysb. Samael* is the Diuell. Eutric one hath two Angels, one at his right hand, the other at his left. *Rambam. M.N. lib.3.23.*

deputed

deputed to obserue such as (through negligence) tread it vnder foote, and to bring them into pouertie: and another man (dogged by this spirit, which sought to bring him to pouertie) eating victuals one day on the grasse in the field, the spirit hoped to effect his purpose: but this deuout Iew, after he had eaten, pared away the grasse, and threw it with the crummes scattered into it, into the Sea for the fishes, and presently heard a voyce, saying; Woe is me foole, who haue attended to punish this man, and cannot haue occasion: They dreame that *Elias* and euerie mans proper Angell attendeth at Table, to heare what is said, if they talke of the Law; otherwise an ill Angell commeth, and causeth brawles and diseases; and in respect of these spirituall attendants, they cast not their bones beside or behind them. They are curious not to eate flesh and fish together: but first flesh, and then scoure their teeth from the flesh, and eate a bit of bread, and drinke a draught of drinke before they eate the fish. They must not vse the same knife to meats made of milke, which they vsed in eating flesh. Milke must not stand on the table with flesh, nor touch it.

Besides the 23. Psalme set before them in the meale time, they testifie their deuotion by multitudes of *new graces or thanksgiuings*, if any better wine or dainties bee set before them, yea, besides the particulers of their cates, euen for euery good sent, as of Oyle, Roses, Spices, &c. and are of opinion, that to vse anything without *thanksgiuing*, is to vsurpe and steale it. Let this bee spoken to the shame of many *prophane Esaus* with vs, that will rather *sell Gods blessings for their meat*, then seeke them to their meat; although in them the payment of these by tale, and not by weight, is no better then a *bead-superstition*. They make a religion of leauing some leauings of their bread on the [h] table; but to leaue a knife there were dangerous, euer since that a Iew once in the rehearsing that part of their grace after meat, which concerneth the re-edifying of Ierusalem, in a deepe agonie tooke his knife so left, and thrust into his heart. This their grace is long, containing a commemoration of the benefits vouchsafed their fore-fathers, and a prayer for regaining the same to send *Elias* and the *Messias*; and that they may not be brought to begge or borrow of the Christians: and for his blessing vpon all that house, &c. whereunto is answered with a loud voyce, Amen: and they say to themselues: [i] *Feare the Lord, yee his Saints, for they that feare him, haue no want: the Lions lacke and suffer hunger, but they which seeke the Lord, shall want nothing that is good*: and while this is said, there must not a crummee bee left in their mouthes. The prayers must bee in that place where they haue eaten: or else they shall lose the benefit of burial: and a certaine deuout Iew in the field, remembring that he had forgotten his grace, returned backe to the house, and there performing his dutie, had *miraculously* sent vnto him a doue of gold.

h Hee that leaues nothing on the Table, shall not bee prosperous. *Sanhed. c. helek.*

i *Psal.* 33.10.11

In Cities where are Synagogues, about fiue in the afternoone, their [k] Clerke (or some such officer) goeth about, and with knocking at their doores, giues them notice of Euening prayer: thither being come, they sit downe, and say this prayer (of the first word, called *Ashre.*) [l] *Blessed are they which dwell in thy house, praising thee continually, Selah. Blessed are the people that are thus, blessed are the people whose God is the Lord. I will magnifie thee, O God my King, &c.* all that 145. Psalme throughout: hee which saith this Psalme thrice a day, shall haue his portion in eternall life. Then the chiefe Chorister or Chanter singeth halfe their prayer, called *Kaddesch*: and then all say those eighteene prayses mentioned in Morning Prayer. Then goeth their Chorister out of his Pulpit, and kneeleth downe vpon the steps before the Arke, and falleth downe with his face on his left hand (all the people doing likewise) saying *O merciful and gracious God*, I haue sinned in thy sight, but thou art full of mercy: be mercifull vnto me, and receiue my prayer proceeding from an humble heart. *Reproue mee not, O Lord, in thy wrath, nor correct mee in thine auger*, and so proceedeth through that whole sixt Psalme, his countenance couered and inclined to the ground. This is done in imitation [m] of *Iosuna*. Then the *Precentor* or chiefe Chorister againe rising vp, saith: And we know not what to doe, but that wee direct our eyes vnto thee. And then they say vp the other halfe of their *Kaddesch*, and so endeth their Euensong.

k *Schola pulsatur*, among the Iewes, is as our Sexten. They will not admit of bels, because it is an inuention of the Christians, & because (sayth *Carbonsis*) they are baptised: they vse this prouerbe thereof, Hee which ringeth a bell, let him fall in the dungbill, and hee which hangs on the Bell rope, may he hang in hell. *Vide Carbo lib. 1. cap. 11.*

l *Psal.* 84.4. & 144.15. & 145.5.

m *Iosh* 7.6.

Now should they goe home, and after supper returne to performe their Night-deuotions: but because a full belly would rather be at rest, and might easily forget his dutie, after some pawse and stay, they proceed before they goe to their other taske: and in that time of pawsing betweene their *vespers* and *nocturnes*, if there bee any strife betweene any, and reconciliation cannot be made, then hee which cannot reconcile his neighbour, goeth to the common prayer-booke, and shutting it, knocketh thereon with his hand, saying, *anikelao*, I conclude the businesse; as if he should say, I conclude praying, till mine aduersarie be reconciled to me; vntill which thing be effected, they may not pray further: and so sometimes their prayers are intermitted then and diuers dayes together, if one partie will be stubborne. These prayers are for substance much like the former: as against the Christians, and for their owne restitution by their Messias. They depart out of the Synagogue with repetition of those sentences mentioned in the former Chapter.

At Supper they behaue themselues as at Dinner. Going to bed, they put off the left shooe before the right; their shirt they put off, when they are couered in their beds, for feare of the walls beholding their nakednesse. Hee that maketh water naked in his chamber, shall be a poore man: and the prayer, [n] *Heare Israel*, must be his last words on his bed, and sleeping on the same, as in *Psal. 4.5. Speake in your heart on your bed, and bee silent. Selah.* If hee cannot by and by sleepe, he must repeat it till hee can; and so his sleepe shall prooue good to him. The bed must be pure; for how else should they thinke on the name of GOD? And it must beso placed, that they must lye with their heads to the South, their feet toward the North; for by this meanes they shall bee fruitfull in Male children. They haue also their Chamber Morals, instructing of duties betwixt the Man and Wife, vnmeet for sober and chaste eares. Tis time for our Pen to sleepe with them, and end this Chapter.

n *Deut.6.4.*

CHAP. XVII.

Their weekely obseruation of Times, viz. Their Mundayes and Thursdayes, and Sabbath.

§. I.

Of their Mundayes and Thursdayes.

HItherto haue wee heard of their prayers euery day obserued. They haue also their times designed to the reading of the Law. In the [a] Talmud is reported, that *Ezra* in the Babylonian Captiuitie was Author vnto the Iewes of ten Commandements. First, that on the Sabbath: seconds, on Munday and Thursday, with singular solemnitie, some part of the Law should bee read: thirdly, that Thursday should be Court or Law-day for deciding controuersies: fourthly, that it should bee a day of washing, sweeping, and cleansing in honour of the Sabbath: fifthly, that men should then eate Leekes: the sixt, that women should arise and bake their Bread so earely, that at Sunne rising they might giue a poore man a piece of bread; the seuenth, that they should for modesties sake gird their Linnen to them; the eighth, that in the Bathes they should combe and pait their haires verie carefully; the ninth, about selling their commodities to Marchants, and buying womanly ornaments for the honour of their feasts, and pleasing their husbands: the last is, of cleansing after vncleane issues. Their learned men confirme this institution of *Ezra*, by authoritie of Scripture, [b] *They went three dayes in the desart, and found no waters.* By *waters*, they vndersand the *Law*: For so it is said, *Esay 55.1. Come yee to the waters*: that is, *to the Law*: and therefore they ought not to let three dayes passe without some solemne reading of the Law. Munday, and Thursday, are chosen to bee the dayes, because on [c] Thursday *Moses* went the second time into the Mount, and returned with the two Tables on the Munday, on which day [d] also the Temple was destroyed, and the Law burnt.

a *Tract. Rabba Kama c.4.*

b *Exod.15.22.*

c *Li. Muser c.4*

d *Principio sap. ap. Drus.*

This their deuotion is as ancient, as that Pharisee, *Luke 18. I fast twice in the weeke*; that which [e] the most deuout amongst them doe to this day obserue. Yea, it seemeth the deuouter sort fast foure dayes, saith [f] another, on Munday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday; the first for Mariners and trauellers by Sea, the next for such as passe thorow desart places, the third for Children which are troubled with the Squinancie: (of this [g] *Eliae Leuita* testifieth, that after the beginning of the World it first assayled children, and after that, men; so that sometimes when they neezed, their spirit fled away and they dyed, whence came that custome of saluting and praying well to men [h] in neezing. The strangling of *Achitophel*, they also interpret of this neezing farewell.) The fourth dayes fast is for Women which are with childe or giue sucke: but the Tuesday and Wednesday in likelyhood were not ordinarie, as the other. Sunday might not bee thus honoured being the Christian Sabbath; and Friday was the preparatiue to their owne. Those two dayes are generally halfe holy-dayes. Assembling earely in their Synagogues, besides their ordinarie prayers they annexe many other. Among others they vse one Prayer called *Vehnrachum*, of miraculous effect, as appeared in *Vespasians* time, who committing three Ships full of Iewes, without Oare or Mariner to the wide Seas, which arriued in three seuerall regions, Louanda, Arlado, Burdeli (worke for Geographers:) Those which arriued in this last port, by tyrannicall Edict of the King, were to be tryed whether they were true Iewes, as *Hananias, Misael*, and *Azarias* made proofe of their Religion. Whereupon three dayes being required (as they

e The deuouter Iewes fast euery Munday and Thursday. *Vide Bacdon. sp. cap. 9. & Drus. pres. in Luc. 1.8. & 18.12.*

f *Li. Muser. 26.*

g *In Thisbad. facar.*

h In their Synagogues they might do this, but not in their Schooles. See c.12. Sup. §.3.

they said *Nebuchadnezzar* had granted them) wherein to betake themselues to fasting and prayer: in this time of respite three deuout Iewes, *Ioseph, Beniamin* and *Samuel*, inuened each of them a prayer, which they ioyned into one, and continued in praying, the same three dayes, at the end whereof they cast themselues into the fire, and there continued till it was consumed. Hence arose this ordinance euery Munday and Thursday to vse the same prayer, which is this; *And hee is merciful, and pardoning sinne doth not destroy the sinner. Hee often turneth his anger from vs, and doth not kindle all his wrath. Thou, O my God, suffer me not to want thy mercie: let thy gentlenesse and truth keepe mee always. Helpe vs, O God, our God, and gather vs from the Gentiles, &c.* for their restitution, as in other their prayers and destruction of their
10 enemies, the Christians. After this they prostrate themselues on their faces (as before) with many other orisons to the like effect.

§. II.

Of their Law-Lectures.

THeir solemne ceremonie of the Law-lecture followeth; In all [i] their Synagogues they haue the fiue bookes of *Moses*, written in great letters on Parchments of Calues-skins, sowed together in length, which at both ends are fastened to pieces of wood, by which the booke may be lifted and carried. This booke is kept in
20 an Arke or Chest set in some wall of the Synagogue. Before the doores of the Arke is a hanging of Tapestrie, more or lesse precious, according to the qualitie of their Feasts, and for the most part wrought with Bird-worke. The booke is wrapped in a linnen-cloath, wrought with Hebrew words: without that, is hanged about some other cloath of Linnen, Silke, Veluet, or Gold, to which is fastened a plate of Siluer by a chayne of Gold, vpon the which is written, *The crowne of the Law*, or *holinesse of the Lord*. Then goeth one aboue, crying, Who will buy [k] *Getilah etz.chaiym*. This is an office whereby they are authorized to handle those pieces of wood, and to open the booke of the Law. Hee which giueth most for
30 it, hath it; the money is reserued for the poore. The pieces of wood are called *etz.chaiym*, tree of life, according to [l] *Salomon: Wisedome is a tree of life to them that lay holde thereon.* When the [m] *chiefe Chanter* hath taken out the booke, and goeth with it into the Pulpit, they all sing out of *Num.* 10.35. *Arise, O Lord, and let thine enemies bee scattered, and let them that hate thee, flye before thee:* And out of *Esay* 2.3. *Many people shall goe and say, Come let vs ascend to the mount of the Lord, to the house of the God of* IACOB, *and hee shall teach vs his wayes, and wee will walke in his pathes; for the Law shall goe out of Sion, and the Word of the Lord from Ierusalem.* When this *Precentor* layeth the booke on his arme, hee saith, [n] *Magnifie the Lord with mee, and let vs exalt his name together*: to which all the people answer, [o] *Exalt yee the Lord our God, and bow before his foot-stoole, for it is holy: exalt yee the Lord our God, and*
40 *bow to the mountaine of his holinesse, for Iehouah our God is holy.* There, vpon a Table couered with silke, hee layeth downe the booke; and he which hath bought the Office, taketh from it the cloathes wherein it is wrapped. Then these two call some one of the Congregation by his owne and his Fathers name, who commeth foorth and kisseth the booke, not on the bare Parchment (for that were a sinne) but on the cloathes which couer it; and taking it by those pieces of wood, saith aloud, *Praise the Lord, &c. Blessed bee thou, O Lord, who hast chosen vs before any people, and giuen vs thy Law. Blessed bee thou, O God, the Law-giuer.* Then the *Precentor* readeth a Chapter out of the booke; and then hee which was called foorth, with like kissing and blessing returneth. Then another is called foorth, and doth likewise. After him another, who had need bee of strong armes: for hee lifteth vp and car-
50 rieth this booke that all may see it, all crying, *This is the Law which Moses gaue to the Israelites.* This Office is called *Haghabah*, and is sold as the former. The women meane-while contend amongst themselues in this Synagogue by some Lattice, to haue a sight of the Law: for the women haue a Synagogue apart seuered with Lattices, so (besides their pretence of modestie) to fulfill the saying of *Zacharie*, [p] *The family of Dauid shall mourne apart, and their wives apart, &c.* If he which carrieth the booke, should stumble or fall, it were ominous, and should portend much euill. These two Officers fold vp the booke as before; and then come all and kisse the same, and then it is carried to his place with singing. After this they end their Prayers as at other times, saying, *Lord, leade mee in thy righteousnesse, because of mine enemies, direct thy way before me:* And, *The Lord keepe my going out and comming in from henceforth*
50 *for euer.* Which they also say when they goe foorth on a iourney or to worke.

i The manner of the Law-Lecture.

k The folding of the wood of Life.

l Prou. 3.18.

m *Precentor*,

n Psal. 34.4.

o Psalm. 99.9. *Legem legebant, primum Sacerdos, deinde Leuita, postremo Israel: nam tres erant quæ eam legebant.* Drus. ex li. Mas far.

Women haue a Synagogue apart from the men.

p Zach. 12.12.

§. III.

§. III.

Of the Iewish Sabbath.

q This preparation or *Parasceue* they obseruе before the Sabbath, and other feasts. *Tertullian* calls them *cenæ pure.*

r *Exod.16.25.*

THey prepare q themselues to the obseruation of their Sabbath, by diligent prouision on the Friday before night of the best meates well dressed; especially the women prouide them good Cakes. They honour the Sabbath with three banquets: first, on the Friday night when their Sabbath beginneth, another on the Sabbath day at noone: the third before sunne-set. r *Eate yee it to day, to day is the Sabbath of the Lord, to day yee shall not find it* (Manna) *in the field:* do you not see *To day* thrice mentioned, and therefore by *Moses* owne ordaining, that *Manna* must so often bee eaten on the Sabbath? The richest Iewes and most learned Rabbins disdaine not some or other office, as chopping of hearbs, kindling the fire, or somewhat toward this preparation. The Table remaineth couered all that night and day. They wash, and if need bee, shaue their heads on the Friday, and very religiously cut their nayles, beginning with the fourth finger of the left hand, and next with the second, then with the fifth, thence to the third, and last to the thumbe, still leaping ouer one: in the right hand they begin with the second finger, and after proceed to the fourth, and so forth. These parings if they treade vnderfoot, it is a great sinne; but hee which burieth them, is a iust man, or which burneth them. Now must they also whet their knives, and put on their Sabbath-holy-day-rayment, to salute *Malchah* the Queene, so they terme the Sabbath. The Clarke goeth about and giueth warning of the Sabbath; and when the Sunne is now ready to set, the women light their Sabbath-Lampes in their dining roomes, and stretching out their hands toward it, say ouer a blessing. If they cannot see the Sunne, they take warning by the Hennes flying to roost. The cause why the women now and at other feasts light the Lampes, is *Magistrally* determined by the s Rabbins, because *Eue* caused her husband to sinne, yea, with a cudgell belaboured him, and compelled him to eate, which they gather out of his words, t *The Woman gaue mee of the tree* (so wee, a sound rib-rosting) *and I did eate.* Now after they had eaten, the sunne which before shined, as it shall doe in the other life, diminished his light, and for dimming that light, shee lightens this. And for three causes (you shall beleeue their u *Talmud*) women dye in trauell; for forgetting their dough where with to make Cakes with Oyle, *Exod.*25. for neglecting their termes; and not lighting the Sabbath-Lampes which their Cabalists gather out of three letters of the name of *Eue* or *Chauah.* These lights are two or more, according to condition of the roome.

1 2 3

s *Orach. chayim, cap.*2.

t *Gen.*3.12.

u *De Sab.r.*2.1.

They begin their Sabbath thus soone, and end it also later then the iust time, in commiseration of the Purgatory-soules, which begin and end with them this Sabbaths-rest, being the whole weeke besides tormented in that fire. *Iudas* himselfe, in honour of the Christian Sabbath, from Saturday Eeuen-song obtained like priuiledge: witnesse Saint *Brandon* in the Legend (can you refuse him?) who found him cooling himselfe in the Sea, sitting vpon a stone which hee had sometime remoued out of a place, where it was needlesse, into the high-way. (So meritorious euen in *Iudas* is any the least good worke.) x There did *Iudas* acquaint *Brandon* with this Sunday-refreshing of the hellish prisoners, and desired his holy company to scarre away the diuels, when they should after Sunday Eeuen-song come to fetch him again, which for that time *Brandon* granted and performed.

4

x Like to this is the storie of *Tarnus* and *R. Akiba* in the Talmud, *Truth, Sanhed. cap.*7.

The Iewes will not quite empties any place of water, that on the Sabbath these fierie soules may finde where to coole them. Two Angels attend them home from the Synagogue, one good, and the other euill, which if they finde all things well, that is, Iewishly prepared for the Sabbaths honor, the good Angell saith, It shall be so the next Sabbath, and the euill Angell (will he, nill he) answereth, Amen. If otherwise, the good Angell is forced to say Amen to the euill Angels denunciation of the contrary. They feast it with much ceremonie, pronouncing their blessing on the wine: with looking on the Lampe, to repaire that fifteeth part of their eye-sight, which they say in the weeke time ordinarily is wasted: they couer the bread meane-while, that it should not see the shame thereof, in that the Wine is blessed, for the Sabbaths vse before it. This good cheare on the Sabbath is of such consequence, that for this cause in their y Talmud is reported, that a Butcher in Cyprus, which still reserued his best meates for the Sabbath, grew by Diuine reward so rich, that his Table and all his Table-furniture were of gold. You may receiue with like credite the Legend of *Ioseph* following, who buying continually the best Fish, to honour the Sabbath with it, found in the belly of one of these Sabbath-fishes, a Hat-band of Pearles, worth no lesse then a Kingdome. The Table remaineth spred till the next night. The Lampes must not bee put out, nor the light thereof applyed to the killing of fleas, to reading or writing, &c. The good man

y *De Sab. c.*16.

5 6

man must honour that night with more kindnesse to his wife, then on other nights: therefore eate they Leekes before: Therefore also they marry on the Sabbath: and the children, then conceiued, must needes be [a] wise and fortunate. If a Iew trauell, and on Friday Euening be further from his home, then a Sabbaths-dayes-iourney, he must there abide, be it in the midst of a Wood or Wildernes till the Sabbath be past. They sleepe longer on the Sabbath morning; so with their greater pleasure to honour it. They then vse more prayers in their Synagogues; and reade seuen Lectures of the Law. They now also reade the Prophets. They stay here till noone, and no longer, lest by longer fasting and praying they should breake the Prophetical commandement, *a Thou shalt call my Sabbath a delight*. After dinner also they reade in their Law: for [b] on a time, the *Sabbath* and the *Law* put vp their complaints to God for want of a companion and learner, and the Israelites were giuen as a companion to the Sabbath, and on the Sabbath a learner of the Law. But for all this they take not more busily all the weeke through of Vsurie, buying and selling, then on the Sabbath, and haue their trickes to deceiue God Almighty. Their Euen-song they haue soone done, that they might returne, and while the day yet lasteth, make an end of their third banquet, by which they are secured against Hell, and against *Gog* and *Magog*: They conclude it with blessings and singings, till it bee late, to prolong the returne of the soules into Hell: for presently after they haue ended, there is proclamation through hell, to recall them to their dungeons. In these Songs they call vpon *Elias* to come; so iustly are they deluded, who scoffingly imputed vnto [c] *Christ the calling of Elias*. But their *Elias* being *busie* (as he sometime said of *Abibs Baal*) and not comming, then they request him to come the next Sabbath. But he (it seemeth) is loth to leaue his place vnder the *Tree of life* in Paradise: where he standeth (say they) enrolling their good workes in the keeping of the Sabbath. When this their deuotion is done, the women in haste run to draw water, because the Fountaine of Miriiam, *Num.*20. flowing into the Sea of Tiberias, doth from thence emptie it selfe in the end of the Sabbath into all Fountaines, and is very medicinable. After this doe the Iewes make a diuision betweene the Sabbath and the new weeke. The Householder lighteth a great Candle, called, *The Candle of Distinction*: at whose light he vieweth his walls, [d] blesseth a cup of Wine, and a little siluer boxe full of sweet spices, powreth a little of the Wine on the ground, and applieth the boxe to euery ones nose to smell to, thus to remedie the stinke, which is caused at the new opening of hell for the returne of the soules: or else to keepe them from swowning at the departure of one of their soules. For they are of opinion, that themselues haue a superfluous Sabbatharie soule, which on that day is plentifully sent into them, to in large their heart, and to expell care and sorrow. *Antonius Margarita* affirmeth, that they dreame of three soules in each man, besides the Sabbatharie soule, two of which leaue him in his sleepe; one mounting to Heauen, where it learneth things to come; the other called brutish, contemplating sinne and vanitie. The viewing of their nailes at the candle, is in remembrance of *Adams* nakednesse, all sauing where the nailes couered his fingers and toes ends. The wine they powre on the ground, to refresh *Corah* and his complices vnder the ground.

For their Sabbath-workes they are determined Rabbinically: a horse may haue a halter, or a bridle to leade, but not a saddle to lade him: and he that leadeth him, must not let it hang so loose, that it may seeme he rather carrieth it, then leadeth the horse: A Henne may not weare her hose sewed about her legge, but this marke must on friday be taken off. And if any cattell fall into a pit, yet may they not helpe it out on the Sabbath: so spitefully haue their Talmudicall Rabbins endeuoured to make (where they could not finde) a fallhood in the [e] wordes of Christ, testifying the contrary: *But from the beginning it was not thus*. The Iew may not milke his cattell, nor eate of the milke when he hath procured a Christian to milke them, except he first buy it but at his owne price. A Taylor may not weare a needle sticking on his garment. The lame may vse a staffe: the blind may not. Clogges or Pattens to keepe them out of the durt they may not burthen themselues with. It is lawfull to carrie a plaister on their sores, but if it fall [f] off, they may not lay it on againe; nor may they binde vp a wound a new; nor carry money in their purses or garments; nor rubbe their durtie shooes against the ground, though they may wipe it off against a wall; nor wipe their hands, fouled with durt on a Towell, but with a Cowes or Horse-taile they may doe it. If a Flea bite, hee may remoue it, but not kill it; a Lowse hee may. But their Doctors disagree in this lowsie question: for *R. Eliezer* saith, One may as well kill a Camell. If a Flie [g] light on meate, or a Spider runne thereon, it may not bee remoued: they will let men take their money vpon pawnes, but not deliuer it themselues; as the Franciscan hath his boy to take your almes, which his vow will not suffer his holy fingers to touch. He must take heede of leaning more come to fowles that day then they shall eate, if it be in an open place, lest it may

a *Dicunt ea-bdisse, quod qui vxorem suam cognoscit in media nocte nocti Veneris adueniente Sabbato, & non aliter, prosperi erit ei generatio: tales vnimquam cerebunt berede, & bonas pecer cerbunt filios: & tales dicuntur Eunuchi quibus Deus etiam dat bona temporalia: quia sicut tunc Tiberes conpulatur vxori Malcut, ratione Sabbati sic vir tunc de influxu Tiberes participabit. Arthung. in Cabal. quem consule de Tiberesch & Malch. pag.769.*

b *Eliz.18.23.*

c *Mindrasym Pag.13.*

d *Matth.27.47.* d This holy wine they sprinkle about their houses and themselues, as effectuall against diseases and diuels.

e *Matth.12.11.*

f *Iob.9.* they accused Christ for anointing the eyes of the blinde, &c. yet they except the danger of life. *Thanchuma.8.1.& Imeden.fol.41.*

Aquiba saith, on may raise the dead by Necromancie except on the Sabbath, and *Mishnah.200.* he determineth a Sabbath iourney out of towne (for which thou sh as wide as Niniue it had none) at 2000. cubites, which is there is a measured mile.

g *Pirkeh. arbosf. 42.*

there grow, and hee be said to sowe corne on the Sabbath. To whistle a tune with his mouth, or play it on a instrument, is volawfull; as also to knocke with the ring or hammer of a doore, and therefore the Clarke knocks with his hand when he calleth them to the Synagogue. To knocke on a Table to still a childe; to draw a Letter in dust or ashes, or a moysined Table, is volawfull; in the ayre not so. Of these Sabbath-labours they haue nine and thirtie chiefe Articles: whereto the smaller (as these) are referred, with much ridiculous nicetie, as the first Article is of tilling ground, wherein is reserued digging, filling vp ditches, &c. and to this, going ouer a fallow, rubbing his durtie shooe on the ground, &c. Tis time this ditch be now filled, and wee proceed further.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Iewish Passe-ouer, as they now obserue it, and other their Feasts and Fasts.

§. I.

Of their Passe-ouer.

Buxdorf Syn. Iud.

OF the Iewish Feasts, as they were celebrated before the comming of Christ, wee haue alreadie spoken. In these dayes they blindly and stubbornly persist in like *Obseruation of times*, though with some variation of ceremonie. Their Talmud reckoneth foure New-yeeres dayes; one [a] in March, and another in September, whereof wee haue spoken. The first of August beginneth their yeere of breeding Cattell, accounting from thence their time of Tything. In Ianuarie the first, or as *R. Hillel* would haue it, the fifteenth began their new yeere for Trees, in reckoning the time of lawfulnesse to eate or tythe their fruit. Their moneths and moueable feasts are guided by the Moone: of which they tell [b] this storie; The Moone, say they, expostulated with God, because the Sunne shined with her, whereas no Kingdome could endure a partner: whereat God being angry, darkened her light, that from the fourth day wherein shee was created, till man was made on the sixth, shee shined not. Hence it comes to passe, that at the change in two dayes space she is neuer seene. This is the Rabbinicall custome, if they cannot vntie the knot, they haue (not a cutting-sword, as *Alexander* for that *Gordian*) but some leaden Legend or fable Rabbinic-all-ly to determine it. *Hieronimus a S. Fide* (who about two hundred yeeres since was the Popes Physician, and turned from Iudaisme to Christianitie) thus relateth it: The Moone, before equall with the Sunne, expostulated with God for the reason aboue recited, and therefore was commanded to goe lessen her selfe. Shee (like some shrewish Iewesse) replyed, she had wrong, and had spoken but reason: hee to satisfie her, said, the Sunne should not shine by night, and yet should shee appeare in the day. What, saith shee, is a candle before the Sunne? He then promised, that his people Israel should obserue their solemne festiuals, according to her designement. But when all this would not content her, as yeelding himselfe guiltie, hee enioyned a peculiar meate-offering euery New-Moone, for indulgence of that sinne. Thus doe they both dreame ridiculously, and blaspheme also beyond all names of impietie, in their Talmudicall Tract *Holyn*. And this they prooue out of *Num.* 18. as truely, as in another place out of *Esa.* 40. that God hauing polluted himselfe with burying of *Moses*, purged himselfe with fire; the water not being sufficient thereto.

a Of their Tekuphas see *sup. c. 4.*

b *Sed Rm. Tem. fol. 4. p. 592.*

The [c] richer Iewes prepare thirtie dayes before for their Passe-ouer *(dentem non mentem)* good Wheate for their vnleauened Cakes. The Sabbath before the Passe-ouer is solemne and sacred, wherein they haue a Sermon concerning the *Paschall Lambe*. Two or three dayes before the Passe-ouer, they scowre their houshold implements of Wood and Mettall, with much curiositie and varietie of Rites. For hee that in this Feast vseth an impure vessell, is as he that hath layne by an vncleane woman. The night before the Feast, the good-man of the house with a Waxe Candle, a Dish, and Wing, beginneth his search for vnleauened bread; and with other men or boyes to helpe him, after their *Amen* to his blessing, with Waxe Candles in their hands, they leaue not a [d] Mouse-hole vnsearched, and hide that bread which they meane to eate that night, lest they should finde that, and bee forced to burne it. That which they finde, they curiously couer, lest some Mouse by carrying it, should make them haue new worke: and for this cause suppe also in a corner, with great care that nothing fall to the ground. When hee hath ended his search, Whatsoeuer Leauen (saith hee) is vnder mine hands, which I haue not seene, let it bee tossed too

c Their order of celebrating the Passe-ouer at this day.

d Thus curious were the Roman women in the rites of *Bona Dea*, not leaving a Mouse-hole vnsearched, lest some male Mouse might marre the solemnitie.

and

and fro, *like the dust of the earth.* In the morning they make their vnleauened Cakes of meale, grownd three dayes at least. The kneading-trough must bee lined with Linnen, lest some of the leauened Meale should cleaue thereto, the goodman himselfe must draw the liquor that it is kneaded with, and that at Sunne-setting. The Cakes are made with as much scruple, round, and pricked full of holes in a cold place, &c. to keepe them from leauening. They eate little, and the first-borne nothing, till night, that then they may haue the better Paschall-stomacke. At the Euen-song they obserue much-what the same ceremonies, as at the Sabbath. They make at home the fairest shew of their plate, and riches, and seate themselues on Chaires (as it were) of State, and acco unt now of themselues as great Lords, triumphing ouer their late *Ægyptian seruitude*; at their returne from the Synagogue, they haue a Dish with three Cakes set before them, representing the high Priest, the Tribe of *Leui*, and the people of Israel: another Dish hath in it a loine of Lambe or Kidde, with a hard Egge: another containeth a Gallimawfrey of Apples, Nuts, Figges, Almonds, &c. dressed with Wine in Bricke-fashion (with Cinamon strewed on it, in remembrance of the *Ægyptian Fornace.*) They haue also a *Sallet of heerbs*, and a Sawcer of Vineger set on the Table. Then sit they downe, and euery one (to the child in the Cradle) hath his cup filled with wine. And here with a carowse after a blessing begins the feast, with a scrupulous vse of these things mentioned: then followeth *the supper it selfe*, with much riot till midnight, with such cheere as they haue, with diuers ceremonies, cursing their enemies, calling for *Elias*, praying for the reedifying of the Temple; vsing many Diuine Attributes, as, *Merciffull God, Great God, Bountifull God. High God, Faire God, Sweet God, Mightie God, and God of the Iewes, now build thy Temple shortly, very soone, very soone, in our dayes, very soone, very soone. Now build, now build, now build, now build, now build thy Temple quickly: Strong God, liuing God, &c.* ouer and ouer with such battologies. This night they thinke themselus secure against men and Diuels; they leaue their doores open all night to entertaine *Elias*; and one to their solace playeth *Elias* in a white linnen garment. Each man drinketh foure cups full of the blessed * wine, in regard of foure deliuerances, which the Rabbins finde in *Exod. 6. ver.* 6,7. The ceremonies of *Moses* they are not yet tyed to (forsooth) because they are not in Canaan.

In the morning they visit the Synagogue with their Sabbath-rites. They bring two Bookes out of the Arke, and call forth fiue men (and if this feast be on the Sabbath, seuen) to reade out of the same. Nice are their determinations what workes they may doe on this day, and what not: they may dresse no more meat then is this day eaten. If they beate spice, the morter must lie side-wise, for distinctions sake of the day, &c. fasting and weeping must be auoided; if any sarse a Hen, the needle must be threeded the day before, and the threed must be burned, not bitten or broken asunder. In such trifles the Schoole of *Schammai* licenseth to eate the same day an Egge laide on a festiuall day. *Hillel* denies it, and betwixt them they haue set the Rabbins by the eares, in this & such profane questions. Their Euen-song hath a short dispatch: and then the next day they † reiterate the same ceremonies, and that for certaintie, because they doubt of the first day of the moneth, and therefore obserue two. The foure daies following are halfe-holy daies. Some workes may be done in them, & not some, & what they do (to make a difference) must be done otherwise, as writing crooked, &c. & that which cannot without losse be deferred, may now be done. The seuenth day they obserue in more complete holinesse, and the eight too, for the reason before alledged, to be more secure of the true day. After the feast ended, they satisfie with fasting their festiuall-riots, and that on two Mundaies and one Thursday: vnto the three and thirtieth day after, they are sad & heauy in remembrance of *R. Akiba*, of whose Disciples foure & twenty thousand died in that space, and were buried by women in the night, and therefore after Sunne-set, all this while the women lay aside their worke; on the three and thirtie day the men bath them and shaue their beards, and are merrie, because then his Disciples ceased dying.

* *Hac nulla pos legunt historiam de exitu Ægypti, & bibunt 4. Cyathos vini, & post cœnam frangunt panem, & dant partem suam uniuersi, id mensa cum tanta sanctitate ac si ipsum Pascha maclassent Pbil. Ferdinand. prec. 19.*

† *Abundans cautela non nocet.*

§. II.

Of Pentecost.

FRom the second night of their *Pisach*, they number to their *Pentecost* ‡ fifty dayes inclusiuely, and say, *Blessed be thou, &c. which hast sanctified vs by thy precepts, and commanded vs to number the dayes before hanuest, of which this is the first or second, &c.* they number the same *standing*, § praying withall for the restitution of Ierusalem. They let not bloud on the Euen of the Pentecost, because of a supposed winde *Tubbach*, ‖ the dayes betweene Easter & Pentecost, in token of ioyfull hope of the resurrection, *Iust. Martyr. quest. 135 Amb. Aug. &c.* perhaps in imitation of this Iewish rite, applyed to that mystery.

‡ Pentecost.

§ So the Primitiue Church neither fasted nor kneeled all *ser. 81. Nicer.*

which should haue slaine all the Israelites, if they had refused next day to accept of the Law. They keepe it two dayes, for the former doubt. They take the Booke twice out of the Arke, and reade there-out the precepts concerning this Feasts sacrifices, now that they cannot performe the things. In remembrance of receiuing the Law, they strew the pauement of their houses, streets and Synagogues with grasse. They eate meates made of milke and cakes. One Cake they make seuen times folded in thicknesse, in remembrance of the seuen Heauens, by which GOD descended to Mount *Sinai*. Now they must haue good cheere, because at this time the King married his daughter, that is, the *Law* vnto them.

§. III.

Of the Feast of Tabernacles.

HE [i] Feast of *Tabernacles* is obserued eight dayes: the two first, and two [k] last more solemnely: the middle foure are halie holy. They mutter ouer their prayers with such haste, that hee is the perfectest who speakes most with a breath. They make them Tabernacles with boughes of foure kinds [l] of Trees (more scrupulous then the Law) in which they sup, but doe not lodge. The Præcentor in the Synagogue taketh a bundle of boughes, and blesseth and shaketh them: for it is written, [m] *The trees shall clap their hands*, and mooueth them three times to the East, and as often to the West, and to the North and South, and then vp and downe like a Fencer, and then shaketh them againe, as hauing now put the Diuell to flight. Then one taketh out the booke, and layeth it on the Pulpit, which they all with their boughes compasse seuen times a day during the Feast; in hope of like destruction to the Christians, as befell Iericho, and then renew the shaking of their boughes. The seuenth day is most solemne, called by them *Hoschaua rabba, the great Hosanna*; as if one should say, [n] the great feast of saluation or helpe, because then they pray for the saluation of all the people, and for a prosperous new-yeere; and all the prayers of this Feast haue in them the words of *sauing*, as, *O God, saue vs*, and *O God of our saluation*, and as thou hast *saued* the Israelites, and such like; the prayers are therefore called *Hosannoth*. Then they produce seuen bookes, and in euery of their seuen compassings lay vp one againe. This night they know their fortunes by the Moone: for stretching out their armes, if they see not the shadow of their head by Moone-light, they must dye that yeere; if a finger wanteth, hee loseth a friend; if the shadow yeeld him not a hand, hee loseth a sonne; the want of the left hand portendeth losse of a daughter; if no shadow, no life shall abide with him, for it is written, [o] *Their shadow is departed from them*. Some Iewes goe yeerely into Spaine to prouide Pome-citrons, and other necessaries, for the furnishing this feast; which they sell in Germany, & other places to the Iewes at excessiue prices. They keepe their Tabernacles in all weathers, except a very vehement storme driue them with a heauie countenance into their houses. They wiues and seruants are not so strictly tyed hereto. They say also that on that day God foreshweth how much it shall rayne all the yeere following: of plenty also and dearth, &c. and direct their prayers accordingly.

i Tabernacles.
k The last day they may kindle fire from another, not strike fire with stone or metall, nor quench it, although to saue their good: nor blow it with bellowes, but with a reede they may: with many trifling obiurations else, mentioned by *Munst. Præcept. Mos. cum expos. Rab.*
l Palme and Willow, and Pome-citron, and Myrtle: the cause hereof *Rambam* deliuers, *Moreh. Neb. p. 3. c. 44.*
m *Psal. 96. 12.*
n *Rav. de abbreuiat. hab.*
o *Num. 14. 9.*

§. IIII.

Of their New Moones; and New-yeeres day.

HE [p] *New-Moones* are at this day but halfe festiuall to the Iewes, accounting themselues free to worke, or not in them; but the women keepe it intirely festiuall, because they denyed their Eare-rings to the molten Calfe, which after they bestowed willingly on their Tabernacle. The deuouter Iewes fast the day before. Their Matins is with more prayers, their dinner with more cheere then on other dayes; and a great part of the day after, they sit at Cardes, or telling of Tales. That day when the Moone is eclipsed, they fast. When they may first see the New-Moone, they assemble, and the chiefe Rabbi pronounceth a long Prayer, the rest saying after him.

The Iewes beleeuing that GOD created the world in September or *Tisri*, conceit also, that at the reuolution of the same time yeerely, hee sitteth in iudgement, and out of the bookes taketh reckoning of euery mans life, and pronounceth sentence accordingly. That day [q] which their great *Sanhedrin* ordayned the *New-yeeres* festiuall, God receiuing thereof intelligence by his Angels, sent thither to know the same, causeth the same day a Senate of Angels to bee assembled, as it is written, *Daniel* 12. All things prouided in the solemnest manner, the three bookes are opened, one of the *most Wicked*, who are presently registred

p New-Moon day.
q New-yeeres day. *Vitt. de Carben. l. 1. c. 16.* Where hee rehearseth these ceremonies, saith some *RR.* beleeue the world began in March.

registred into the *Booke of Death*: the second, of the *Iust*, who ate inrolled into the *Booke of Life*: and the third, of the *meane* sort, whose Iudgement is demurred vntill the day of *Reconciliation* (the tenth of *Tisri*) that if in the meane time they seriously repent them so, that their good may exceed their euill, then are they entred into the *Booke of Life*; if otherwise, they are recorded into the *Blacke Bill of Death*. Their Scripture is produced by *R. Aben*: *Let them bee blotted out of the Booke of the liuing, and not bee written with the Iust*. *Blotting* points you to the Booke of Death: *Liuing*, that of Life; and *not writing with the Iust*, is the third Booke of Indifferents. All the workes which a man hath done through the yeere, are this day examined: The good workes are put in one ballance, the bad in the other (what helpe a siluer Chalice or such heauie metall could affoord in this case, you may finde by experience in Saint *Francis* Legend, who, when the bad deeds of a great man lately dead, out-weighed the good, at a dead lift cast in a siluer Chalice, which the dead partie had sometime bestowed on Franciscan deuotion, and weighed vp the other side, and so the Diuels lost their prey:) GOD (say they) pronounceth sentence of punishment or reward, sometime in this life to bee executed, sometime in the other. In respect hereof, their Rabbines ordaine the moneth before to be spent in penance, and morning and Euening to sound a Trumpet of a Rams-horne, as *Aue Marie Bell*, to warne them of this Iudgement, that they may thinke of their sinnes; and besides, to beseole the Diuell; that with this often sounding being perplexed, hee may not know when this New-yeeres day shall bee, to come into the Court to giue euidence against them. The day before they rise sooner in the morning, to mutter ouer their prayers for remission: and when they haue done in the Synagogue, they goe to the gtaues in the Church-yard, testifying, that if GOD doe not pardon them, they are like to the dead, and praying, that for the good workes of the Saints (the iust Iewes there buried) hee will pitty them, and there they giue large almes. After noone, they shaue, adorne, and bathe themselues, that they may be pure the next day; (for some Angels, soyled with impuritie heere below, are fine to purge themselues in the fierie brooke *Dinor*, before they can praysse GOD; how much more they?) and in the water they make confession of their sins; the confession containeth two and twentie words, the number of their Alphabet; and at the pronouncing of euery word, giue a knocke on their breft; and then diue wholly vnder water. The Feast itselfe they begin with a cup of Wine, and New-yeere Salutations: and on their Table haue a Rammes head, in remembrance of [f] *That Ramme which was offered in Isaacks stead*: and for this cause are their Trumpets of Rams-horne; Fish they eate, to signifie the multiplication of their good workes: they eate sweet fruits of all sorts, and make themselues merry, as assured of forgiuenesse of their sinnes: and after meat, all of all sorts, resort to some bridge to hurle their sinnes into the water: as it is written, [t] *Hee shall cast all our sinnes into the bottome of the Sea*. And if they there espie any fish, they leape for ioy, these seruing to them as the scape-goate, to carrie away their sinnes. At night they renew their cheere, and end this feast.

x *Psal.69.28*

F.Rie. de Calest. Agricult.l.3. Reuchlin.l.1 c.1 de verbo Mirifico.

f *Gen.22.18.*

t *Mich.7.19.*

§. V.

Of their Lent, Penance, and Reconciliation Fast.

FRom this day to the tenth [u] day, is a time of Penance or Lent, wherein they fast and pray for the cause aforesaid; and that if they haue beene written in the *Booke of Death*, yet God seeing their good works, may repent, and write them in the *Life-Booke*. [x] Thrice a day very early they confesse three houres before day, and surcease suits at Law, &c. And on the ninth day very early [y] they resort to the Synagogue; and at their returne, euery male taketh a Cocke, and euery female a Henne; if she be with childe, both: and the housholder, saying out of the hundred and fift Psalme, verses 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22. and out of *Iob*, chapter 23. verse 23, 24, 25. swingeth the Cocke three times about his head, euery time saying, *This Cocke shall make an exchange for me: he shall dye for mee: and I shall goe into life with all the people of Israel, Amen*. He doth it three times for himselfe, for his children, for the strangers that are with him. Then hee killeth him, and cutteth his throat, and hurleth him with all his force to the ground, and roasteth him: signifying, that he himselfe deserueth death, the sword, stoning, and fire: the inwards they hurle on the top of the house, that the Crowes may with it, carrie away their sinnes. A white Cocke for this purpose is principall; a red Cocke they vse not, for they are full of sinne themselues by *Esaias* authoritie, [z] *If your sinnes were red as scarlet, &c.* [a] *Antonius Margarita* saith, [b] giill grudge, to bestow their curse vpon him in these words, *God make thee my Cocke this yeere*.

u Reconciliation.

x *Hospinian. ex Lombardo.*

y *Buxdo f.c.10 Vist. Carben.l.1. c.17.* addeth, that the men and women that morning euise the first Christian they meete: and therefore will waite two or three houres for some to whome they owe some spe-

z *Esa.1.18.*

a *Anth. Margar.*

That this propitiatory creature should bee an *Ape*, as most like to man; but they vse a Cocke for the names sake: a man in Hebrew is *Gebber*, which is the Talmudicall or Babylonish name of a Cocke. Thus those that with a Rams horne beguile the Deuill, and with a Cocke beguile GOD, iustly beguile themselues, who refuse that sacrifice of Christ, *in whose stripes they might be healed.* They haue another fable of a Cocke mentioned by [b] *Victor Carbensis*, thinking that as often as a Cocke stands on one leg, and his combe lookes pale, that GOD is angry: which hapneth, they say, euery day, and onely in the day time, and that but the twinckling of an eye. And therefore they praise GOD which hath giuen such vnderstanding to a Cocke.

b *Vict. Carben. l.1. cõt. Iud. c.11.*

After the performance of this Cocke-sacrifice, they goe to the buriall place, vsing like Ceremonies there, as on New-yeers eeuen: and after noone, bathe them like wise. After Eeuensong, he which hath offended others, askes them forgiuenesse, which if he obtaine not at first, then the offender taketh with him three other, and asketh the second and third time: if all this bee in vaine, he taketh ten others and renueth his suite; if he obtaine, it is well; if not, GOD will hold him excused, and the other partie shall be guiltie. [c] If the partie offended be dead, the offender with ten other, goeth to the graue, & there confesseth [d] his faults. They confesse one to another also, and that in a secret place of their Synagogue, where each receiueth mutually at his fellowes hand with a leather belt nine and thirty blowes: at each blow the partie beaten beateth himselfe on the brest, and saith one word of his Confession, taken out of the seuentie and eight Psalme, and eight and thirtieth [e] Verse, being in the Hebrew thirteene words, which he thrice repeateth: then the striker lyeth downe, and receiueth like penance at the hands of the former, you may iudge with what rigour. This done, they runne home, and make merry with the Cockes and Hens before mentioned, supping largely, because of the next dayes fast, Their Supper must be ended before Sunne-set: for then begineth their fast. They put on their cleanest rayment, and ouer the same, a great and large shirt downe to the shooes, to testifie their puritie. They resort to their Synagogues with waxe candles (in Germanic they haue for euery man one) and then light them. The women also light Candles at home, as on the Sabbath. It is ominous if the Candles burne not cleerely. They spread the floore with Carpets, for soyling their purest cloathes.

c Shillbee called a *sanctifi. Mascar. fol.18.*

d Saying, I haue sinned against God, & this my brother, and done thus and thus: if hee oweth him money, he payeth it to his heire still he knoweth none, hee confesseth it, and leaues it in the Court. *Ibid.*

e Yet he being merciffull, &c.

Their fast humiliations at the feast of Reconciliation.

Their humiliations at this feast are fiue: first, fonre and twentie, or seuen and twentie houres fast, whereunto children are subiect: the Males after twelue yeeres, the Females after eleuen. Secondly, they weare no shooes. Thirdly, they must not annoint them. Fourthly, nor bathe them, no, not put a finger into the water. Fiftly, nor companie with, no not touch their wiues. Before they begin prayers, thirteene of the principall Rabbies, walking in the Temple, giue licence to all, both good and bad, to pray. And the *Precentor* or *Reader* fetcheth the booke out of the Arke, and openeth it, singing a long Prayer, beginning all compacts, vowes, and oathes, &c. insinuating, that all the vowes, promises, oathes, and couenants, which eucrie Iew had that yeere broken, bee disanulled and pardoned: and that, because now all haue power to pray and praise GOD. They continue singing till late in the night. Some remaine all night [f] in the Synagogue: yea, the deuouter some stand vpright singing and praying without intermission all that feast, the space of seuen and twentie houres in the same place. Those that departed the Synagogue, returne in the morning before day, and there stay all that day. Often they prostrate themselues with their face couered, at euery word of their Confessions knocking their brest. When it beginneth to bee night, the Priest draweth his *Tallies* (a large cloath made of haires) before his eyes, and pronounceth the blessing, *Numb.6.* holding his hand towards the people, who meane-while couer their faces with their hands; for they may not looke on the Priests hand, because the spirit of GOD resteth thereon. Then hee singeth a Prayer seuen times together, sometimes higher; sometimes lower with his voyce: because that GOD now ascendeth from them into the seuenth Heauen: and they with their sweet melodie bring him on the way. Then they make a long and shrill sound with their Rams-horne-trumpet: and there followeth presently a voyce from Heauen, *Goe eate thy bread with ioy and gladnesse, &c.* After this they returne home, some carrying home their lights, to distinguish the holy Times (as you haue heard) from the prophane: some leaue them in the Synagogue all the yeere, at certaine times lighting them. Some *Saint-Iewes* prouide to haue a waxe-light continually burning all the yeere long in the Synagogue. In their returne they wish to each other a good yeere. For the bookes before mentioned, are now closed; nor may they expect any alteration. They sup largely, and betimes the next morning returne to the Synagogue, left Sathan should complaine at so soone a cooling of their zeale. But the Deuill may bee quiet; for when the Law was given, [g] *Samael* the euill spirit complained, that hee had power ouer all people, but the Israelites: GOD answered; That he should haue power ouer them, if on the *Recon-*

f *Manent 24. horas in Synagoga, & putant Deum illis remittere omnia peccata: precipuia superiori anno ben. Kat. pag.233.*

g *Eirke c.46.*

ciliation-

vilation-day hee found any sinne in them; But he finding them pure, sayd, That this his people were like the Angels liuing in vnitie, without eating or drinking. The Iewes haue a ceremonie to giue the Deuill gifts on this day, either not to hinder them; or else [h] because *Gifts blinde the wise.* h Exod.23.8.

§. VI.

Of their other Feasts.

THe Iewes diuide the Law into two and sixtie parts, and reading euery Sabbath one, the last falleth on the next day after the Feast of Tabernacles, about the three and twentieth day of September. In this [i] day they leape, dance, and make much ioy. They assemble in their Synagogue, and take all *the bookes of the Law* out of the Arke (leauing in it meane-while, that it bee not left emptie, a burning light) they reade the first Lecture and the last thereof, and leape about the Arke with the Bookes; and they hurle Peasses Nuts, and such fruits among the youth, which in their scrambling sometimes fall together by the eares, and marre the sport. On this day they sell their Synagogue-offices, the Clarke making proclamation: who will giue most at the third time, obtayneth first the office of lighting the Lights all the yeere, then that of prouiding the Wine, which they vse to begin the Feasts with, in respect of the poore, which haue no wine to hallow at home. Thirdly, is set to sale the office *Gelilah*, of folding vp, and vnfolding the Law. Fourthly, *Hagbohah*, of lifting vp the Law, and carrying it in Procession. Fifthly, the office *Etzchaijm*, of touching those turned pieces of wood, whereto the Law is fastened; which the young-men are forward to buy, in hope of holinesse and longer life. Sixtly, *Acheron*, to bee called foorth last on the festiuall dayes, to reade somewhat of the Law. Seuenthly, *Schetria*, to be deputed or substituted in place of the negligent officer, &c. The money hence arising, is for the vse of the poore, and reparations of their Synagogue; but in these sale-offices, wealth hath more honour then worthinesse. i The feast of the Law finished.

Their feast of *Dedication*, wee cannot say much more of, then that which alreadie hath beene said: much nicenesse herein is obserued, about the Lights wherewith they solemnize this darknesse, which I willingly omit: these lights thy vse in their houses all the space of these eight dayes burning.

Their [k] feast of *Lots* they keepe with all riot two dayes, as with some at Shroue-tide: the men disguising themselues in womens habite; the women in mens: they holde, that hee shall be fortunate which then laboureth; women especially then make merry in remembrance of Queene *Esther*, and they with their infants are present in the night, at the reading of the booke of *Esther*, which is all written in a large sheet of Parchment, and reade from the beginning to the end. In times past they had two stones, in one of which was written *Hamans* name, which they beat together, till the name was blotted out, to fulfill that Scripture, *The name of the wicked shall rot. Cursed bee* HAMAN, *blessed bee* MORDECAI, *cursed bee* ZERES (*Hamans* wife) *blessed be* ESTHER, *cursed bee all Idolaters, blessed be* ISRAEL. When they come to the place where *Hamans* ten sonnes are named, they reade it all in one breath, for in a twinkling of an eye they were all slaine. They make great cheere, for so did *Esther* in feasting *Assuerus*. In these two dayes they doe nothing, but eate, drinke, dance, pipe, sing, play, &c. The rich are bound to send to the poore Iewes double presents, which must not be spent but on this solemnitie: they quaffe, (it is, saith *Rabbi Isaac, Tirna*, a good worke) till they finde no difference betweene *Arur Haman*, and *Baruch Mordecai*; *Cursed bee* HAMAN, *blessed bee* MORDECAI; vociferations that day obserued, and hold it lawfull to drinke till they cannot tell their fiue fingers on the hand. k Hoffinian. & M. Lombard.

They [l] obserue festiuall the Equinoctials and Solstices; and a certaine *Rogation day*: they vse the Fasts before mentioned out of *Zach.7.* with other superstitions. Some of [m] them fast also, as is said, on Mundayes and Thursdayes; and some on the tenth of March for the death of *Miriam*: at whose departure a certaine Fountaine dryed vp, and the people were left without water; but in this moneth the Rabbins will not allow fasting, because of their deliuerance therein out of Egypt. Some fast for the death of *Samuel*, April 28. and for the taking of the Arke, April 10. and at other times for other Prophets. Some fast on the New-Moones Eeuen: some, when they haue had an infortunate dreame; and all that day in which their Father dyed, through their whole life. Their fasting is an abstinence from all eating and drinking till night. But of these fasts and other their solemnities, is said before in the abstract of their Kalender, taken out of *Ioseph Scaliger*. Their fast on the 17. of the fourth Moneth for the destruction of their Citie, is rigourously kept, and from thence to the ninth day l Hoffinian. m Syn. Iud. Buxdorf.

day of the moneth following, ate holden vnluckie dayes, in which Schoolmasters may not beate their Schollers, nor any man will sew at the Law. And for the burning of the Temple in the ninth day of the fifth moneth, they goe bare-foot, reade heauie stories, and *Ieremiahs* Lamentations, and mourne among the graues of the dead, and are sad all that moneth: nor cut their hayre; they sew not at the Law; for *Hosea* saith, *The moneth shall deuoure their portion:* and *they shall bee taken*, saith *Ieremie, in their moneth.* On the eight day they eate onely Lentils; for they may not eate Pease or Beanes, because they haue blacke spots like mouthes, which Lentils want, and therefore more fitly represent a heauie man, which wanteth his mouth for sorrow: egges they may eate in the night for their roundnesse: for sorrow, as if it were round, rolleth from one to another. They haue their fasts also on speciall occasions, as they tell of one *Chone Hammagal*, which in a great drought, put himselfe into a pye made fit for his body, and prayed, saying, *Lord of the World, the eyes of thy children are vpon me, as one whom they thinke familiar with thee: I sweare by thy holy name, that I will not come hence till thou shew mercy.* And then it rayned presently: for how could it choose? They tell the same pye-tale of *Moses* likewise, and of *Habbacuc*, expounding that *Hab. 2. 1. I will stand on my watch*, I will stand in my Pye. Their manner is, saith *Victor Carbensis*, to curse *Titus*, and say, he was of the generation of *Agag* the *Amalechite*, and such a blasphemer as neuer was any, and that for his blasphemies he was stricken with madnesse.

Hos. 2. 7.

CHAP. XIX.

Of their Cookerie, Butcherie, Marriages, Punishments, Funerals.

Buxdorf. Syn. Iud. c. 16. & d.

VT why doe wee entertaine you so long in Feasts and Fasts? both almost violent to humane nature, howsoeuer the Glutton is neuer glutted with the one, and the superstitious rather kill the flesh, then the vices of the flesh with the other? *Medio tutissimus ibis.* We will soberly recreate your spirits with a walke into the Cooke-roome, and thence to the Butcherie, and then to the Bride-chamber, to take view of their Espousals, Marriages, Diuorces, and thence diuorce your eyes from these spectacles, and thence diuert them to their Beggers, Penances, and to that fatall diuorce, ending your walke where the walkes of all flesh end, at Death, and the Graue.

§. I.

Of their Cookerie.

THey haue * Kitchin vessels of two sorts, one for flesh, another for white-meates. Their milke vessels of wood are marked with three cuts, because that sentence, *Thou shalt not seethe a Kid in his mothers milke*, is three times in the Law repeated. Euery Iew carrieth two knives with him, one for Flesh; the other for Cheese and Fish, and these also are marked with three cuts. And if these vessels should bee [a] intermingled, our Iew might not eate that which is dressed therein: yea, the innocent vessels are broken, if of earth, most accurately washed, if of wood, and purged in the fire, if they bee of yron. They seethe not milke and flesh at one time, and ouer one site, ouer against each other: nor set them together on the Table, but seperate them with somewhat set betweene. One cloath is layde for flesh, and another for white-meate. Hee which eateth flesh, or broth thereof, may not eate white-meates an houre after, yea the most religious will [b] abstaine sixe houres after. Yet may they eate a Henne together with Almond-milke. If any haue not the gift of such abstinence, very carefully must hee cleanse his teeth, and wash his mouth, and with a piece of drie bread take away the taste of the flesh. If any suet fall into their white-meates, they may not be eaten, except there bee sixtie times as much of the meat, as of the suet. An Egge may not be poched in a flesh vessell: they breake it also, and diligently obserue, that none of that bloudie resemblance in the top of the egge remaine. If in cutting vp of a Henne they finde egges, they may not eate them till they bee washed, and softned in water and salt. Flesh and fish may not be dressed, or set on the Table, or eaten together: for this (they write) would bring the leprosie. In their dyet-difficulties they consult with their

* They ground these abiuridities on *Moses* his words. *Exo. 23. 19.*

a The knife may not after be vsed except heated red hot in the first three houres, and three dayes hidden in the earth, & three times put into water. *Thil. Carb. l. 1. c. 12.*

b Nine houres saith *Carbensis*. This they gather out of *Num. 31. 23.*

their Rabbines. Glasses, Kniues, and all their Kitchin vessels new bought, must bee curiously washed, and if they will beate it, purged with the fire.

§. II.

Of their Butcherie.

BVtcherie is with the Iew exalted aboue the *liberall Sciences*, and must bee learned by much bookishnesse and long experience. They haue a booke of shamble-constitutions, and in harder cases they aduise with some learned Rabbi. Neither may any practise this Art without licence from the Rabbi, whereby he signifieth, that hee had taken examination and proofe of the partie, and found him expert therein both in word and deed, and therefore hath permitted him to kill, and others to eate the meate by him killed: prouided that he diligently reade euery weeke for one yeere, and euery moneth the next yeere, and once a quarter during his life, the Constitutions aboutsaid. They haue their especiall knives for this businesse, great ones for greater Cattell, and small for the smaller: the greater haue blunter and broader points: if they haue any rifts in them, they may not vse them. The greater beasts feete must be bound, in remembrance of *Abrahams* binding *Isaac*, and then with one cut or thrust hee cutteth the Wesand a sunder; which done, he lookes on his knife if there bee any rift in it, for that would terrifie the beast, and cause the bloud to recoile backe to the heart, whereby the beast would not be fit for vse as retaining some of the bloud. After this, he hangs vp the beast, takes out the inwards, and cutting a hole on both sides of the heart, thrusteth his hand through the same into the body of the beast, to search if there be any bloud: and if there be any fault in the beast, it is not for their dyet, applying that which the Law saith of a *Carcasse found torne in the fields*. They cut the throat of a bird in like manner, if it bee a Fowle which hath quills in the wings, in remembrance of an office performed by the fowles sometimes, as [a] they say, to *Rebecca*, when she descended from her Camell at the sight of *Isaac*: and therefore they let the fowle bleed into a heape of ashes, and therein couer the bloud. They couer the bloud also of other creatures in the ground, because the Earth *opened her mouth to drinke in the bloud of* ABEL: and because Sathan should not accuse men of iniustice for slaying the innocent beasts, seeing so much bloud shed by them. When they haue killed a great beast, they cut out all the veynes and sinewes (of which subiect they haue written speciall Treatises) and likewise all the Suet: which done, they diue them in water to mollifie them, and wash them throughly, to rinse away all the bloud; and then lay them on a board, that all the water may passe from them: after which they salt them in a vessell full of holes, that the salt may draine out all whatsoeuer bloudinesse yet remaining. They eate not the hinder parts in remembrance of *Iacobs* [d] thigh.

But in Italy they haue inuented a new anatomizing tricke, by taking away the veynes and sinewes to make them lawfull. Pittie they cannot doe the like for Swine and other forbidden meates: but you see they haue some trickes to coozen GOD, as before to coozen the Diuell: but the most coozenage (saue that in the former they coozen themselues) is to Christians which buy those hinder parts of them, in polluting those meates, before they sell them, with filth, and with vrine of their Children, adding curses and imprecations to the eaters. Thus you see the Iew-butcher had need be no bocher, but halfe a Physitian in anatomizing, and halfe a Rabbine in cases of conscience. And who knoweth whether so many Iewish Physicians come not from (and perhaps also carrie to) the Shambles?

a Exod. 22. 31. Leuit. 22.

b Exod. 22. 31. Leuit. 22.

c Tunc temporis (aiunt) infirmitas mulieribus eam inuasit: & eiusforte exisset de terra; voluerat eadem lacrimat; sanguinemque virginitatis eius in terram occulnerunt; idtoq; deus mutauit, sanguinem auium mactatarum tegere.

d Gen. 32.

§. III.

Of their Espousals and Marriages.

BVt wearie of this bloudie spectacle, let vs take a more pleasant view, of their Virgins and Espousals. These were made, saith [e] *Moses de Kósi*, either with money, or with an instrument, or with copulation. It seemeth this last is vnderstood of such as had lyen with a mayde, and therefore must by the [f] Law marrie her (if the father denyed him not his daughter) whereas otherwise they might not haue carnall company before the marriage were solemnized, this being forbidden: no [g] lesse then to lye with a woman in her disease. Their Prayer-booke [h] saith thus, He which shall espouse a woman, bringeth witnesses, and before them doth betroth her with mony, or somwhat mony-worth, which

e Lib. Precep. 124. vid. Drusius pract. pag. 3.

f Exod. 22. 17. & Deut. 22. 29.

g Lib. Musafer. cap. 6.

h Fol. 364.

which he giueth her, saying, Be thou espoused to me according to the law of *Moses* & *Israel*. If there be no witnesses, it is nothing, notwithstanding they both confesse it. If one shall assiance a woman to another, he saith, Be thou espoused to *N.* with this Ring, according to the Law of *Moses* and *Israel*. [i] *Buxdorfius* (to whom I am most beholding in many of these reports) writeth, that when promise hath passed between two, many Iewes are called together into a great chamber: where euerie of the youthes holdeth a pot in his hand. Then comes one, and reades the letters of contract, that *N.* sonne of *N.* and *N.* daughter of *N.* haue promised marriage to each other, each giuing so much in dowrie, which marriage is to be solemnized on such a day: and the partie which faileth in the promises, shall giue the other fifty Florens. This done, they wish ioy to each other: and the Iewlings presently breake their earthen pots, whereby they signifie to the parties prosperitie and abundance. At parting, euery one hath a cup of wine giuen them. Eight dayes after neither partie goeth out of the house: and many youthes come and make merry with the Bridegrome, imitating (they thinke) *Sampson* herein. Some say, [k] that the man taketh the espoused Bride home to his house, to be both witnesse and keeper of her virginity till the marriage solemnitie. The day before the marriage, the Bride must wash her in that absolute manner [l] before described, certaine women ringing with some what when shee goeth in and out of the water, some of them also leaping and dancing. The Bridegrome sends the Bride a wedding girdle embossed with [m] gold, and shee him another with siluer studs. On the wedding day the Bride adornes her selfe in the best Iewish dresse, with her marriage attire, and by women singing their sweetest *Epithalamia* is conueyed into a chamber, and their placing her on a faire seate, braid her haire into goodly curles, and put a vaile ouer her eyes (in imitation of *Rebecca* modestie) singing meane-while, dancing, and expressing the greatest signes of ioy, thinking they therein please God, as being taught by their Rabbines, that God vsed the like curling, singing and dancing, when he presented *Eue* to *Adam*; [n] yea, refused not to serue that new couple, and with his owne hands made the canopie vnder which they were to receiue their marriage blessing, the Angels with pipes and trumpets making musike to leade the dance. That which *Moses* saith [o], *God built a woman*, The Talmud interpreteth, *Hee made curles*, and *hee brought her* to *Adam*, to wit, with leaping and dancing. When the marriage benediction is to bee solemnized, foure boyes beare a [p] canopie on foure poles into the place appointed, which is some street or garden [q] abroad in the open aire, the people sounding their acclamations, *Blessed be he which commeth*. The Bride (being led by others) goeth three time about the Bridegrome, as a cocke goeth about a hen, and that forsooth to fulfill that Prophecie, [r] *A woman shall compasse a man*: hee also must fetch one compasse about her. The people also besprinkle the Bride with wheat, crying out, *Increase and multiply*, according to that of the Psalmist, [s] *He filleth thee with the fat of wheat*. In some places they mingle money with the wheat, which the poore Iewes gather vp. The Bride stands on the right hand: for it is written, [t] *Thy wife standeth on thy right hand*: with her face also to the South, for then she shall be fruitfull. The Rabbi which marrieth them, taketh the end of the Vestment about the Bridegromes necke, (they call it *Tallet*) and puts it on the Brides head, after the example of [u] *Boaz* and *Ruth*: and then takes a glasse filled with wine, ouer which hee vtereth the marriage blessing, praying God, by whose instinct these persons were espoused: and so teacheth the glasse to them, and bids them drinke. This glasse, if shee bee a Virgin, hath but a narrow mouth, at Wormes they vse an earthen pot. Now the Rabbi receiuing a Ring of pure gold, without any [x] Iewell in it, sheweth it to some witnesses, asking them if it bee good, and worth the money it cost, and then puts it on the Brides finger, and with a loud voice pronounceth the spousall letters. After this he takes another glasse of wine, and blesseth God that the Bridegrome and Bride haue accepted of each other, and giues it them to taste. This done, the Bridegrome breaketh the former glasse against the wall or ground, in remembrance of the destruction of Ierusalem: in which respect, in some places they put ashes on the Bridegromes head. He weareth for this cause a black-hood on his head like a mourner: and the bride likewise weareth a black cloth, fit to terrifie children with the deformitie. Thus do they mixe mirth and mourning, as *David* warneth, *Reioyce vnto him in trembling*. This ended, they sit downe at table, and then must the Bridegrome make trial of his breff in singing a long prayer: others in the meane time call to make ready the hens. Then is there a hen and an egge set before the Bride: of that the Bridegrome carueth her a piece, and then presently all the company, men and women, teare the hen amongst them like hungrie hounds, snatching out of each others hands and mouthes, all to glad the new married couple. The eggeis not sodde, but in another scene of mirth, one casteth it in the face of another, of some Christian especially, if any bee present at the nuptials. In the same is a mysterie included for the Bride, that she shall haue as easie trauell in child-birth, as the hen layeth her egges. After this they fall to their cheere, and dances; one

Syn. Iudic. 28.

k Drus. vbi sup.

l Cap. 14.

m Idque (vt hat Iudaeus) quia femen viri, album, mulieris rubrum.

n Pirke sue cap. R. Eliezer. c. 11. Brandsp. gel. c. 34

o Gen. 2. 22.

p Vid. Elh. Thisbi. rad. Chupha.

q In token that they shall multiply like the Starres in numbers

r Ierem. 31. 22.

s Psal. 147. 14.

t Psal 45. 10

u Ruth. 3. 9. & Ezek. 16. 8.

x Some superstitiously engraue therein, *Good fortune commeth*, or the Planet *Iupiter*, which they would borrow from *Leahs* words, Gen. 30. 13. vid. Mauffler ibid. The R. saith *Tisser Cathen*, marketh diligently whether shee put forth her fore-fingerfor the Virgin *Mary*, say they, wore the Ring on her middle-finger, and therefore all Iewesses refuse that, and vse the forefinger.

one they call the *Mazuah* or commandment-dance, as if GOD had enioyned it. The chiefe ghest takes the Bridegroome by the hand, another him, and so on through the companie: likewise the chiefe woman takes the Bride, another her, and so one another: then doe they dance in a long row with a tumultuous noyse, and so end the nuptiall sports. Among all their other blessings, the Bridegroome is to say one, *Vbi perspexeris sanguinem virgineum*, to vse the words of *Genebrard*, who expressetb it, being borrowed from some words of the Canticles, fleshly abused by such application.

The Marriage commonly lasteth eight dayes: and on the Sabbath they dance the lustiest of all, doing the Sabbath herein a singular honour, because that also is called a Bride. It is prohibited to bid any vncircumcised ghest to this banquet: for [x] *Salomon* saith, *The stranger doth not intermeddle with his ioy.* Yea, the good Angels seeing such there, will depart; and the euill will come and raise strifes and contentions. For they think no [y] place emptie from the earth to the skie, but all full of good or bad Angels flying or standing in the same. The marriage [z] is in publike, lest whoredome should be couered vnder that pretext, pretending themselues married when they were not.

x Prou. 14. 10.

y Com. sup. Abath. fol. 83. cap. Drus.

z Rambam. M. N. lib. 3. cap. 50.

§. IIII.

Of Coniugall Duties.

LEt it not grieue you to heare somewhat of the Duties betwixt man and wife. The Husband oweth ten things to the Wife: [a] three according to the Law; her nourishment, her cloathing, and her time; namely, of due beneuolence to bee performed: and seuen things according to the words of the Scribes: The first whereof is the foundation of dowrie, *viz.* two hundred *denarij*, if she bee a virgin, other wise an hundred. The other concerne the condition of the dowrie. The woman which rendereth not her husband his due, is rebellious and refractarie; and hee is bidden to expell her without a dowrie. The conditions of the dowrie were: first, to cure her in sicknesse: secondly, to redeeme her being captiue: thirdly, to burie her being dead: fourthly, to nourish her out of his owne goods, and that she dwell in his house in her widdow-hood: fifthly, to keepe her daughters till marriage: sixtly, that her sonnes inherit. They appoint not onely loue, but honour to the wife (as *Peter* also enioyneth to this weaker vessell) which honour, they say, is in meate and drinke, and goodly garments, for which hee shall (this was a womans friend) haue fauour with God. The Author of *Arbaa Turim*, addeth, That a man should loue his wife as his owne bodie, and honour her aboue his bodie, and keepe her as one of his members. For the wife is the other halfe of man, and a man without a wife, is but halfe a man. And let him take heed of striking his wife, said [b] another, or to bee vrulent in termes against her. For, for her teares (how pittifully easie are they to some?) his punishment is neere. And howsoeuer since the destruction of the Temple, the *doore of Prayers* hath beene shut, yet the doore of teares hath not beene shut, as saith *Dauid*, *Bee not thou silent at my teares.* And should not a man honour his wife? Yes, saith [c] *R. Hauina*, for a man hath no blessing but for his wife, as it is written, *Hee blessed Abraham for her.* Let a man cloath himselfe (I would not haue women heare it) beneath his abilitie, his children according to his abilitie, and his wife aboue his abilitie. Let the wife honour her husband as her father, and feare to displease him, and let him spare her in his anger, remembring that shee was taken out of his ribbes. But for the wiues choyse, A man ought, saith [d] one, to sell all that hee hath and buy a wife, the daughter of a wise Disciple: if he finde not such an one, let him take a daughter of the Great men of his time: if not such, the daughter of a Synagogue-Ruler; in that defect, let him take the daughter of one which gathereth Almes: if not, then of a Schoole-master, and not the daughter of *the people of the Land*, of whom the Scripture saith, [e] *Cursed bee he that lyeth with a Beast.*

They say that a man ought [f] not to lodge in the same chamber, no not with his Sister, Daughter, or daughter in Law: yea, there Wife men forbid conference with a woman altogether.

a Vid. Drus. prae lib. 6. in 1. Cor. 7. 2. Idem vid. ap. R. Ab. ben Kattan. pr. 150. P. Rie. in prae. neg. 81: horam non minuet, id est, debitum coniugale, iuxta canudum vetustum Talmud. traditionem tria vacantes quotidie; mercanicus operarius bis in hebdomade; Asinarius, qui sarciculas nectit, semel: qui portat per camelos semel in mense: nauta semel in dimidio anni. Com. sup. Abath. 10. Drus. pret. pag. 284.

b Musar. cap. 6.

c Vid. Drus. pag. 376.

d Musar. 74.

e Vid. sup. 4. 8.

f Drus. pras. L. 7.

§. V.

Of Diuorce, and other Marriage obseruations.

g *Vid. Ele. 7 bis. Pad. gr. & Drusi. pract. pag. 13. & Buxt. Syn. c. 28.*

THe bill of diuorce is still practised among the Iewes: it must bee written in twelue lines (it is therefore called g *Get*) neither more nor lesse, and deliuered to the woman before three credible witnesses, vnder their hands and seales. Then doth the husband deliuer it to her, saying, *Loe, woman, the bill of thy Diuorce, take it of me, by it being diuorced from mee, bee thou free to another husband.* The tenor of this bill is this: The second day of the weeke, the eight and twentieth of the moneth, *N.* in the yeere of the world, 5363. as we heere at Mentz vpon Rhene vse to reckon, I *Isaac*, sirnamed *Eckendorf*, sonne of R. *Abr.* now dwelling at Mentz: of my free will, without constraint, thee *Sara*, sir-named *Turmmerle*, daughter of R. *Leui*, which hitherto hath beene my wife, haue determined to free, forsake and diuorce: And now to forsake, free, and put thee from me, that thou mayest bee thine owne, and at thine owne free will and pleasure mayest depart whither thou wilt, and none from hence-forth for euer shall prohibite thee: And thou art so freed, that thou mayest marrie 10 any other man.

This diuorce may not bee done in euery place, but they haue some speciall place appointed, noted, and knowne, situate on some knowne Riuer: whereto certaine chiefe Rabbines are called by writing, if there bee none there dwelling, which consummate the busi-
h *Drusi pract. pag. 121.* nesse. By the old h Law, a woman might be reconciled to her husband before the Bill of diuorce giuen, not after.

The obseruation of the brother, to marrie the wife of his brother deceased without issue, *Buxd. Syn. c. 30.* or else to lose the inheritance, which was testified by pulling off his shooe, and spetting in his face; is now thus ruled by the Rabbins, that none shall marrie such a widdow, but rather suffer the premised ignominie; which is performed in this sort. She comes before the chiefe Rabbi with fiue witnesses, where the Rabbi demands, if she haue been three months a widdow, if her husband had a brother vnmarried, if the partie conuented bee he, &c. and lastly, if shee be fasting (for otherwise she might not spet in her brothers face.) Of him also the Rabbi asketh like questions, and receiuing a denyall of marriage, there is brought a shooe of singular fashion for that purpose, which hee putteth on his right foot bare, and then fetteth himselfe against a wall. The woman comes, and disclaiming his affinitie, stoopeth, and with her right hand (for if she want a right hand, it putteth the Rabbines out of their right wits to skan, whether with her teeth, or how else it may be done) vnloosseth the shooe, and taking it off, spets in his face, so that the fiue witnesses may see it, saying, Thus it shall be done with him which will not build the house of his brother.

For this they alleage, *Leuit. 22. 4.* In the time of her vncleannesse, a woman may not enter into the Synagogue, nor pray, nor name the Name of God, nor handle any holy booke; which if they obserue, the Rabbines promise them longer life. As soone as she knoweth of her vncleannesse, she presently seperateth her selfe from her husband the space of seuen dayes, not touching him, nor sitting on the same seate, nor eating in the same dish, or on the same cloath, nor may drinke out of the same cup, nor stand against him, nor speake in his face. If one will giue any thing to the other, one layeth it on a bench or table, and goeth away, and the other commeth and takethit. They say it procureth the Leprosie in the Children which are then gotten, which they obiect to Christians.

i *Adiuc hebdomades cursu ad eam accedere, vno iuxta iuniorum Talmudicorum decretum, tangere non permittitur. P. Ric. ad praec. neg. 111*

When shee hath numbred seuen i dayes of her vncleannesse, shee proceedeth to number as many of her purification: after which time finding her selfe pure, shee cloatheth her selfe in white, and taking a woman with her, washeth her selfe in cold water, (some in winter put in warme water to it, which others in the coldest season refuse) and leaues not a hayre of her head vnwashed, as before is described. Some k fast till they haue done it, lest the flesh in the teeth should hinder the water from comming to them: for mouth and eyes must bee open, and they must stoope, that the pappe keepe not away the water from the brest: and if they haue a playster on a sore, it must off, and their nayles must bee pared.

k *Sup. cap. 14.*

l *Phil. Ferdinandus pr. 1.*

They l write, that if any shall exceed twentie yeeres and not marrie, or if hee shall marrie a wife which is barren, he sinneth as much as if hee had slaine a man, and deserueth the punishment of *Onan*, whom God slew. Prouided, if hee addict himselfe to the studie of the Law, and findeth no need of a wife: but if he finde concupiscence preuaile, hee ought to marrie notwithstanding. And this necessitie remaineth m till he hath begotten a sonne and a daughter.

m *P. Ricius ad praecep. 49.*

§. VI.

§. VI.

Of the Iewish Beggers, Diseases and Penances.

THe poorer Iewes on the Friday night, and euery Festiuall, entering into the houses of the richer, beg prouision for the Feast. And if any be exceeding poore, the Rabbines make him a licence to beg, therein testifying of his honestie and Iewish faith; wherewith hee wandereth through the Countrey, visiting all the Iewes he can finde. And if hee come to a place where are many Iewes, hee sheweth his licence to the chiefe Rabbi; or to the Clarke which calls men to the Synagogue, or to the Elders, or Ruler of the Synagogue, which is as their Consull, or to the Ouer-seers of the poore, and craueth their fauour: which granted, hee standeth with two others at the doore of the Synagogue, and beggeth; or else those two goe from house to house and beg for him. The like is done when a poore Iew hath a daughter marriageable, to beg for her dowrie. When poore Iewes trauell, they may turne into another Iewes house, where (their prouerbe is) the first day hee is a ghest, the second a burthen, the third a fugitiue. *Buxdorf c.33. Iewish beggers*

The falling sicknesse is vsuall among the Iewes, and they vse to imprecate it to each other in their anger, as they also doe the plague. In a generall pestilence they write in their Chamber strange characters and wonderfull names, which (they say) are the names of the Pest-Angels. And I once saw (sayth our Author) *Adiridon, Bediridon*, and so on, the word *Diridon* riding on quite through the Alphabet, written with great letters in their houses, as a present remedie for the Plague. The Leprie they haue seldome, which may bee attributed to their dyet. *Cap.34. Diseases of the Iewes.*

Now the Sword and Scepter is taken from them, in stead of other penalties, they inflict sharpe penances according to the nature of the crime. Thus the Adulterer satisfieth for his hot lust in cold water, wherein hee is inioyned to sit some winter dayes, and if the water be frozen, the Ice is cut, and hee set therein vp to his chinne, as long as an Egge is roasting. In Summer time hee is set naked in an Ant-hill, his nose and eares stopped, and after washeth himselfe in cold water. If the season bee neither cold not hot, hee is inioyned a certaine kinde of fasting, in which he may not eate any thing till night, and then onely a little bread and water is allowed him, and yet hee must after endure the Ant or water-penance. In *Medrash* is written, that *Adam sate* vp to the nose in water an hundred and thirtie yeeres, till he begate *Seth*, for eating the forbidden fruit. If the penance seeme lighter, they enioyne him further to runne thorow a swarme of Bees, and when the swelling of his bodie through their stinging is abated, he must doe it againe and againe, according to the measure of his offence. If hee hath often that way offended, hee is bound to endure that penance many yeeres, yea sometimes a three yeeres fast together, eating bread and water at supper, otherwise nothing, except hee rather chuse to redeeme this, with fasting three whole dayes together in each yeere, without tasting any refection at all, as Queene *Esther* did. When any hath lyen with a woman in her vncleannesse, hee incurreth the penance of fortie dayes fast, and twice or thrice euery of those dayes to receiue on his bare backe with a leather thong or girdle nine blowes: to eate no flesh or hot meate, nor drinke any wine, but on the Sabbath. If a man kisse or embrace his menstruous wife, the case is alike. A Robber is adiudged three yeeres banishment, to wander three yeeres thorow the Cities where Iewes dwell, crying aloud, *I am a Robber*, and suffer himselfe to bee beaten in manner aforesaid. He may not eate flesh, nor drinke wine; nor cut the hayre off his head or beard: hee must put on his change of garments, and shirts vnwashed. He may not wash himselfe: euery moneth once he must couer his head: hee must weare his arme, wherewith he committed murther, fastened to his necke with a chayne. Some are enioyned that where they sleepe one night, they may not sleepe the next, that they may wander ouer the world like *Cain*. Some are constrained to weare an yron brest-plate next their skinne: and some to throw themselues downe before the doore of the Synagogue, that they which goe in may treade on him. That Iew which accuseth another before a Christian Magistrate, is accounted a Traytor and neuer made reckoning of after. *Cap.35. Iewish penances.*

But why doe I tyre the Reader, to whom I feare I haue beene ouer-tedious? But in this matter of Religion, of whom is it fitter to protract discourse, then of them, whom the old world yeelded the only example of Truth, and the present age, a principall example of falsehood and superstition? Let it nor grieue the Reader, to performe the last office of humanitie to our *Iew*, and as hee hath seene his birth, his Synagogue-Rites, and home superstitions, so to visit him on his Death-bed, and helpe lay him in his graue: and examine his hope of the Resurrection, and of their *Messias*, and wee will end our Pilgrimage in this Holy Land.

§. VII.

Of their visitation of the sicke, And funeralls rites.

n Ceremonies about the sicke.

WHen n a man lieth sicke, the Rabbines visit him; and if he be rich, order is taken for his Will, and then they exhort him to perseuere constantly in their Faith: They aske him if hee beleeue that the *Messias* is yet to come. Hee maketh his confession on his bed, saying: I confesse before thee, my *God and Lord, God of my parents, Lord of all Creatures*, that my health and death is in thy hand, I pray thee grant me recouery of my former health, and heare my praier, as thou dideſt *Hezekiah* in his sicknes. And if the time of my death be come, then grant that death may bee a remission of all my sinne, which of ignorance or knowledge I haue committed, euer since I was a mangrant that I may haue my part in Paradise, and the world to come, which is reserued for the iust; grant that I may know *the Way of euerlasting life, fill mee with the ioy of thy excellent countenance by thy right hand for euer and euer.* Blessed bee thou, O GOD, which heareſt my prayer.

Thus they which refuse the merits of Christs death, ascribe remission of sinnes to their owne. When he giueth vp the ghost, o all the ſtanders by rend their garments, but in a certaine place of the same, where they doe no great harme, about a hand-breadth. They lament the dead seuen dayes. They presently after his death powre out all the water in the house into the ſtreete: they couer his face that it may no more bee seene: they bow his thumb in his hand, framing a resemblance of the Hebrew name *Sohaddai*: his other fingers are ſtretched out, to testifie a forsaking of the world: they wash him with hot water, and hauing anointed his head with wine and the yolke of an Egge mixed together, they put on him a white vestment, which he vsed to weare on the Feast of Reconciliation. When they carry him out of the house, they burle after him a broken sherd, signifying, that with him all heauinesse should bee expelled and broken. When they are come to the place p of buriall, they say, *Blessed be* GOD *which hath formed you with iudgement and iustice, hath created, fed, sustained, and at last hath deprived you of life*, (speaking to the dead.) *Hee knoweth the number of you all, and will quicken you againe in his time. Blessed be God, which doth to die, and maketh aliue. Let the dead liue, with my carkasse let them rise againe. Awake and reioyce yee that lie in dust, because thy dew is the dew of light, and the earth shall cast foorth her dead.* This the Minister sayth alone; then he goeth on with a long prayer of three and twenty sentences, which the people say after him, going about the sepulchre. They call this prayer *Tsiddduck haddin*, the subiect whereof is the iustice of GOD; calling for pardon in the name of *Abraham, Isaac*, and *Iacob*, acknowledging that by three things the foundations of the world are founded, the Law, worship, and piety to the dead: calling for deliuerance for the bloud of his seruants shed in the 856. yeere for the confession of his holy Name, and for the merit of the onely-begotten, which was seuen and thirty yeeres old, in whose place a Ramme was taken; concluding with mention of their Captaines slaine in the 136. yeere. Heere they take downe the corps: and then the Minister singeth, the people following: *This is the way of the world, let him sleepe in peace, &c. Yee Fathers of the world which sleepe in Hebron, open vnto him the gates of the garden of Eden, and say, His comming be in peace. Yee euerlasting hills of the double caue, open vnto him the gates of the garden of Eden, and bid him welcome. Yee Angels of peace, go forth to meete him, vnlocke to him the gates of Paradise. Yee keepers of the treasures of the garden of Eden, open the gates, and let* N. *enter, & enioy the fruites of Paradise; good things bee at his right hand, pleasant things at his left. Heare thou, O Lord, and let his comming be in peace.* Then lay they him into the ground, and his neereſt kinsmen cast in the first earth: after which they turne to the East with diuers other blessings. When q they returne, they blow themselues backwards three times, and throw grasse ouer their heads, signifying their hope of the resurrection, according to that *Esai.66.14.* and *your bones shall bud as the grasse*; saying also, *Dust thou art, and to Dust thou shalt returne.* Then doth euery one murter a Prayer to himselfe, as he goeth out of the buriall place. In the porch of the Synagogue, *God r shall destroy death for euer* (say they) *and wipe away all teares from ther eyes, and will take away ther reproach from all the earth, for the Lord hath spoken it.* Then enter they into the Synagogue, and leape vp and downe, and change their Seates seuen times, and there say ouer their Purgatorie-prayer *Kaddisch*. The Mourners goe bare-foote seuen dayes, and eate not Flesh, nor drinke Wine, except on the Sabbaths and Festiuals. They bathe not in three and thirty dayes after, cut not their nayles, worke not, make a pitiifull howling, &c. The first night the Mourner eateth nothing of his owne, but meate sent him from his friendes. The

o And about the dead in the house.

p At the graue. They may not bury the corps in silke or needlis worke, (*Iacob/ 54*) no not a Prince: for this were waste, and a worke of the Gentiles. *Officium Lugentium ex lib. precationum beb. Mahzor. vid. Genebrard.*

q After the buriall.

r *Esay 25.8.*

The childe mourneth for his Father a yeere. The sonne eleuen moneths saith ouer his *Kaddisch*; for meane sinners are freed sooner: but the wicked stay the whole twelue moneths: and therefore to persist the twelfth moneth in his prayer, should be to acknowledge his father a wicked man. And for the effect hereof, Rabbi *Akibba* met once in the way a man, with an Asse-like burthen of sticks, which vpon examination confessed, That hee was a Purgatorie-ghost, carrying to burne himselfe, such bundles euery day. Rabbi *Akibba* enquired if hee had a Sonne or Wife, and where; and finding out his sonne, taught him this prayer, which was so effectuall, that in a dreame this Ghost returned to the Rabbi with thankes for his deliuerance, and say'd, hee was now in *Gan Eden*, or Paradise. Rabbi *Akibba* signified this to the Iewish Synagogues, with iniunction to teach their Children this prayer.

But to returne to our Funerals: when they are come backe to the mourning house, they wash their hands, but obserue not the Mosaicall Rites, because the Temple is not standing. Then doe they powre out a long blessing ouer a cup of Wine, and another ouer their Meate, exceeding much longer. Their Purgatorie-Prayer, or (as *Genebrard* calleth it, their) *Requiem, vel libera*, is this: It is better to go into the house of mourning, then into the house of feasting, in which is the end of all men: which let the liuing remember. Let vs heare the end: Feare GOD, and keepe his Commandements; this is the dutie of euery man. A sure rest in the high habitation vnder the wings of GOD, in the degree of the Saints, shining as the brightnesse of the skie. The change of bonds, pardon of sinnes, grant of saluation, indulgence and mercie from the sight of him which dwels in Heauen, and a portion in the life to come: there let the portion be, and the dwelling of the soule of the wise Master *N.* The Spirit of the Lord make him to rest in Gan Eden, and giue him peace, as it is written in *Esay*, Let peace come, and let him rest in beds, walking before it, he and all the deceased of Israel, through his mercie. Amen. They write also on the Tombe, *Let his soule bee in the Garden of Eden, Amen.* Or, *Let his soule bee bound in the bundle of life.* And sometimes, Thou art the Tombe of *N.* which departed into Eden, such a day of such a moneth and yeere. Thus poore Purgatorie with Iewes and Romists is preached by walking Ghosts. They haue a light burning for the dead seuen dayes. They powre the water out of the doores, because the *Angell of Death* washed his sword (lately vsed) in water, and enuenometh it. This his sword he holdeth in his hand at the beds head, hauing on the end thereof three drops of gall. The sicke man spying this *Deadly Angell*, openeth his mouth with feare, & then those drops fall in, of which one killeth him, the second maketh him pale, the third rotteth and putrifieth. *Elias* f *Levita* addeth, that after a man is dead, the Angell of Death commeth and fetteth on his Graue, and presently the soule entreth into his body, and hee maketh him stand on his feet, hauing to that purpose, in his hand a chayne, halfe of yron, and halfe of fire, wherewith hee striketh him. At the first blow his members are dissolued, at the second his bones are scattered; then come the Angels, and gather them: at the third hee is brought to dust and ashes, and returneth into his Graue. And this, saith R. *Meir*, is more grieuous then the iudgement of Hell: for the iust, and the sonnes of the Princes, and abortiues are iudged therewith, except they which dye on the Eeuen of the Sabbath, and in the land of Israel: of which you haue heard their rolling opinion before; neither will wee roll this stone to our Reader againe.

f *In vad. Chibut Hakebur.*

Sup. cap. 13.

CHAP. XX.

The Iewes faith and hope touching their Messias.

§. I.

Of the Signes of the comming of their Messias.

THE Iewes generally beleeue, hope, and pray for a *Messias*; but such a one, whose Kingdome shall bee of this world, and who shall (to vse the Apostles a phrase, who were also, euen after Christs death and resurrection, partakers of this dreame) *Restore the Kingdome to Israel.* And because the Scripture speaketh sometimes of the poore, contemptible, and deiected state of the *promised Messias*, sometimes of the puissance, renowne, and glory of his Kingdome: they therefore frame to their conceits, two Messiahs, one poore and simple, but a mightie warriour, whom they call *Messias Ben-Ioseph*, the other *Messias Ben-David*;

a *Act. 1. 6.*

David; after the other in time, but before him in glory, and the true *Messias*: howsoeuer euen this also bee in their opinions but a meere man, and one which shall marry and leaue behind him a remaynyng and raigning posterity. The Cabalists (according to their transcendent mysteries) out of the name *Adam*, which the Hebrewes write without points, *Adm*, gather, that the soule of *Adam*, by a Metempsychosis passed into *David*, and that of *David* into Messias, which yet lyes hid for the sinnes of the Iewes.

The ancient Iewes looked for this *Messias* to bee sent them about that time, when Iesus came in the Flesh: as that Prophesie which is fathered on *Elias* testifyeth, to wit, that the world should bee two thousand yeeres *Tohu*, empty and without law, two thousand vnder the Law, two thousand vnder the *Messias*: and accordingly Christ Iesus came into the world about the yeere after the Creation, 3963. The Iewes reckon 202. yeeres fewer in all their computations, then the Christians. Vpon this occasion, and in regard of the generall expectation of the *Messias*, about that time rose so many Sects, and especially that rebellion of *Ben-Cochab*, before spoken of, to whom R. *Akibha* (famous for his foure and twenty thousand Disciples) gaue testimony, and called him *Messias the King*. But this *Ben-Cochab*, the *sonne of the Starre, Numb.* 23. was by *Adrian* (as you haue seene) besieged, taken, and executed, and was called after [b] *Ben-Cozabh*, the sonne of lying. They therefore, when as they found no *Messias*, said, that the time was deferred, because of their sinnes: and after denounced *Anathema* to him, that should set downe the time of his comming: And being conuinced in their consciences, that the [c] Prophesies of this time were already past and accomplished, they affirmed in their writings, that hee was then borne, but did not yet reueale himselfe, because of their sinnes. R. *Salomon Iarchi* writeth, that the ancient Iewes thought he was borne on that day, in which Ierusalem was last destroyed; but vncertaine where he hath lyen hid. Some say that he abideth in Paradise, tyed by the haire of a womans head: so interpreting that of the *Canticles*, *The* [d] *heyre of thy head is as purple, The King is tyed in the rafters*; by *rafters* meaning Paradise. The Talmudists [e] write, that hee lay at the gates of Rome among the Lazars and Leapers, according to *Esay* 53.

b *Ben-Cobat, & Cozabh, or Cuzibba.*

c *Gen* 49.10. *Hag.*2. *Dan.*9.23.

d *Cantic.*7.5.

e *Sanhed.c.*11.

Before he commeth, they write, that ten notable miracles shall happen to warne them thereof. First, God shall raise vp three Kings, which shall make profession of the true Faith, but shall indeed betray it, and seduce men, and cause them to deny God. The louers of the Truth shall flee and hide themselues in caues and holes of the earth, and these Tyrants shall pursue and slay them. Then *shall there be no King in Israel* (as it [f] is written) no Pastor, no holy men. The heauens shall bee shut vp, the people shall be made few; for these Tyrants (which yet by diuine dispensation shall raigne but three months) shall impose ten times as much, as was before exacted, and they which haue not to pay, shall lose their heads. And from the ends of the earth shall come men, blacke and loathsome; the dread of whose countenance shall kill men: for they haue two heads, and seuen eyes, sparkling like fire.

1.

f *Hos.*3.4.

2. The second Miracle shall bee a great heate of the Sunne, causing Feauers, Pestilences, and other diseases, so that the Gentles shall digge themselues graues, and there lye and wish for death. But the Israelites shall haue this heat to be as wholesome medicine to them: so interpreting the [g] Prophet.

g *Malac.*4.2.

3. God shall make a bleudy dew fall on the earth, of which the people, and the wicked of the Israelites shall drinke, thinking it to be good water, and shall die: it shall not hurt [h] *the iust, who shall shine, &c.*

h *Dan.*12.3.

4. Fourthly, God shall make a wholsome dew to fall, whereof the indifferent meaner sinners, sicke of the former dew, shall drinke and liue, *Hos.*14.6.

5. Fifthly, *The* [i] *Sunne shall be darkened* thirty dayes, and then receiue againe his light, whereby many shall embrace *Iudaisme*.

i *Ioel.*2.31.

6. Sixthly, God shall permit the Edomites (or Romans) to rule ouer all the world: but one especially, at Rome, shall raigne nine moneths ouer all the world, wasting large countries, laying heauy tributes vpon the Israelites. Then shall the Israelites haue no helper (as sayth *Esai* 49. 16.) But after nine moneths God shall send *Messias Ben-Ioseph* of the children of *Ioseph*, whose name shall be *Nehemias*, the sonne of *Hufiel*. Hee shall come with the race of *Ephraim, Manasse, Beniamin*, and *Gad*, and the Israelites hearing of it, shall flocke to him, as *Ieremie* sheweth, [k] *Conuert yee to the Lord, yee rebellious children, I will take yee, one of a City, and two of a Tribe, &c.* This *Messias* shall ouerthrow the Edomites, and slay their King, and destroying the Empire, shall carrie to Ierusalem, holy vessels, reserued in the house of *Ælian* for a treasure. The King of Egypt also shall make peace with the Israelite, and shall kill the men about Ierusalem, Damascus and Ascalon; the fame whereof shall affright all the inhabitants of the earth.

k *Ierem.*3.14.

Seuenthly, There is at Rome a marble Image of a Virgin net made by mans hand, to

7.

which

which shall resort all the wicked of the world, and shall incestuously conuerse therewith. Hence shall GOD frame an Infant in the Fame, which shall with breach of the marble cone foorth. This shall bee named *Armillus* the wicked, the same which the Christians call Antichrist, of ten elles quantitie of bredth and length; a spanne bredth betweene his eyes, which shall bee red and deepe in his head; his hayre yellow, the soles of his feet greene, deformed with two heads. Hee shall professe himselfe the Romane *Messias* and GOD, and shall bee accepted of them. He shall bid them bring him the Law which hee hath giuen them, which they shall bring with their Prayer-booke: hee shall cause them to beleeue in him, and shall send Ambassadours to *Nehemias* the sonne of *Hushel*, and to the people of Israel, commanding them also to bring him their Law, and to acknowledge him for GOD. Then shall *Nehemias* goe vnto *Armillus* with three hundred thousand Ephraimites, carrying with him the booke of the Law; and when he comes at him, hee shall reade out of the same this sentence, *I am the Lord thy God, thou shalt haue none other Gods in my sight.* *Armillus* shall reply, that there is no such sentence in their Law, and therefore they should acknowledge him for God, as well as the Gentiles. Then shall *Nehemias* ouerthrow two hundred thousand of *Armillus* his Armie: whereat *Armillus* shall bee so wrathfull, that hee shall assemble all his forces into a deepe valley, and there shall destroy (with many other Israelites) this *Nehemias*. But the Angels shall take and hide him, that *Armillus* may not know of his death, lest hee should not leaue one of Israel liuing. All Nations shall then expell the Israelites, and such affliction shall befall them, as neuer since the beginning of the world. At this time shall the *Angell Michael come foorth*, and seperate the wicked from Israel, as writeth [l] *Daniel*. They which remaine, shall flye into the desart, and for fiue and fortie dayes space, liue with grasse, and leaues, and hearbes; but all the wicked Israelites shall dye. *Armillus* shall after subdue Ægypt, and shall turne thence against Ierusalem, and seeke againe to waste it. These things after their manner, they fable out of the eleuenth and twelfth of *Daniel*.

l *Cap.12.vers.1.*

The eighth Miracle is the arising of *Michael*, who three times shall winde his great horne, *Esa.27.13.* and *Zach.9.14.* At the first sound, the true *Messias Ben Dauid*, and *Elias* the Prophet, shall shew themselues to those deuout Israelites in the desarts of Iuda, who shall then gather courage: and all the Iewes in the world shall heare this sound, and shall confesse GODS deliuerance, and all that haue beene led captiue into Assyria shall assemble together. The same horne shall strike feare and diseases into the Christians and other people. Now shall the Iewes make great iourneyes towards Ierusalem, and together with *Elias* and *Messias* shall come thither with ioy. *Armillus* hearing this, in his proud furie shall re-assemble his Christians against the Messias and Ierusalem. But GOD not suffering his people to fall out of one trouble into another, shall say to the Messias, Come place thy selfe at my right hand; and to the Israelites, *Bee still, and wait for the great succour of the Lord this day.* And then shall GOD rayne fire and brimstone from Heauen, as *Ezekiel* [m] reporteth, wherewith *Armillus* and his Armie shall dye, and [n] *The house of Iacob shall bee a fire, and the house of Ioseph as a flame, and the house of Esau* (the Idumæan Atheists which destroyed GODS house) *as stubble.*

m *Ezek.38.22.*
n *Obad.18.*

At the second sound or blast of this horne of *Michael*, the graues at Ierusalem shall open, and the dead arise, and *Messias Ben Dauid* with *Elias* shall reuoke into life, that *Messias Ben Ioseph*, and the Israelites shall send *Messias Ben Dauid* into all Countries of the Iewes dispension, to cause them to come to Ierusalem; and the Nations with whom they are, shall bring them in their Chariots, and on their shoulders. 9.

The last Miracle, is the third time of *Michaels* winding his horne, when GOD shall bring foorth all the Iewes, which are by the Riuers Gosan, Lachbach, Chabor, and in the Cities of Iuda, and they without number or measure, shall with their Infants enter into the Paradise of *Moses*; and the ground before them and behind them shall be meere fire, which shall leaue no sustenance to the Christians. And when the ten Tribes shall depart out of the Nations, then *the piller of the cloud* of Diuine glory shall compasse them, and GOD shall goe before them, and shall open to them the fountaines flowing from the tree of Life, *Esa.49.10.* I might adde to these miracles that of the [o] Asse, which *Abraham* rode on when hee went to sacrifice his sonne; which *Moses* also vsed when he returned into Ægypt (and some say, *Balaams* Asse was the same) this shall the *Messias* ride on, according to *Zacharies* Prophesie, *Zach.9.5.* 10.

o *Vide C.vb.l.8. cap.15.*

Against these ten miraculous signes, fore-shewing *Messias* his comming, the most being full of troubles, they haue ten consolations: first, The certaintie of Messias comming: secondly, That hee shall gather them from all places of the dispersion, *Ierem.31.8.* but the *Lame* there mentioned shall bee so cured, that [p] *They shall leape as Harts, &c.* thirdly, GOD will raise vp the dead: fourthly, GOD will erect a third Temple, according to the figure

p *Esa.35.6.*

of that in *Ezekiel* 41. fifthly, That the Israelites shall then raigne ouer all the earth, *Esa.*60. 12. yea, all the world shall bee subiect to the Law, *Soph.*3.9. sixtly, GOD will destroy all their enemies, *Ezek.*25.14. seuenthly, GOD will take from them all diseases, *Esa.*33.24. eighthly, GOD will prolong their liues, that they shall liue as long as an Oake, *Esa.*65.22. and as in the times from *Adam* to *Noe*: ninthly, *They shall see God face to face, Esa.* 40.5. and *They all shall Prophesie, Ioel.*2.28. tenthly, GOD shall take away from them all euill concupiscence, and inclination to euill, *Ezek.*36.26. Thus fare out of the booke *Abbkas Rochel.*

§. II.

Iewish tales of monstrous Birds, Beasts, Fishes and Men.

THeir cheere in these dayes shall bee the greatest Beasts, Birds, and Fishes, which GOD euer created; and no other wine then that which grew in Paradise, and was kept in *Adams* Celler till that time: the great Oxe *Behemoth* mentioned in *Iob* 41, and *Psal.*50.10. *All the Beasts of the wood are mine, and the beasts feeding on a thousand hills*, that is, *Behemoth*, which euery day feedeth on a thousand hills. But lest this deuouring beast should consume all the hills in the world, they tell you that hee is a stalled Oxe, till abiding in the same place, and what hee eateth in the day, groweth againe in the night. The huge Whale *Leuiathan*, or, as they pronounce it, *Lipiasan*, must honour also this Feast: of this they write in the [r] Talmud; that to preuent filling the world with these huge monsters, GOD gelded the male *Leuiathan*, and the female is staine, and preserued in pickle, for the iust, to be eaten in the times of the *Messias, Esay*,27. The male *Behemoth* was gelded also, and the female was stored vp for this feast. *Elias Levita* [s] reporteth of a huge huge Bird, also called *Barsuchne*, to bee rosted at this feast; of which the [t] Talmud saith, that an egge sometime falling out of her nest, did ouerthrow and breake downe three hundred tall Cedars; with which tall the egge being broken, ouerflowed and carryed away sixtie Villages. Wee will haue the Wheatstone before we part. *R. Barchasanah* saw a Frogge as big as Akra, a village of sixtie households: then came a huger Serpent and swallowed that huge Frogge. Lastly, the hugest, hugest Crow that euer the Rabbine saw, flew and deuoured these both; and flying away, sate on a tree, which tree sure could not be lesse then the three hundred Cedars before mentioned, if this Crow were but as bigge as that egge. *R. Papa* answeteth, that he would neuer haue beleeued it, but that hee saw it. (I hope they will pardon vs if wee be of the same minde.) But would you not faine heare of a man, holding like proportion? then lei *R. Saul* tell you of his aduentures in the burying of a dead corps, whose bee encountered with a bone of a man, into which there flew a Rauen, and the Rabbi would needs follow after to see what became of her: and so, he went, & he went, three leagues in the hollow of the same bone, and could find no end thereof; and therfore returned: so he perceiued it was one of the bones of *Og* the Giant, whom *Moses* had slaine. Perhaps you will marueil how *Moses* could atchieue such an exploit. Forsooth, you must vnderstand, that *Moses* was ten cubits high, and had an Axe ten cubits long, and leaped other ten cubits in the ayre, and so gaue the deadly blow to *Og*, who (it seemes) was layde alongst some deepe Trench, or else you will thinke the Rabbine lyed. Tush, your incredulitie makes you vnworthy to heare their storie of *R. Osua*, who beguiled the Angell of Death, of whom (when hee came to smite him) hee would in kindnesse needs learne his future place in Paradise; where with the deadly Angell was content, and went with him; yea, for his securitie, at his request resigned his deadly weapon into his hands. Thus at last they came at Paradise, where hee shewed him his place, which he desirous to take better view of, required his helpe to lift him higher, and then with a quicke deliuerie leapt into Paradise. Thus did the poore coozened Angell misse his prey, and was glad with much a-doe to recouer his sword from the Rabbine. And that you might see their skill, no lesse in Cosmographie then Theologie: Another was carryed to the place where Heauen and Earth meete, and kisse each other; where, whiles hee might take the more diligent view in obseruing those parts (which the Frier of Oxford neuer saw, not *Faustus* with his *Mephostophiles*) hee hanged his Cloake on a window in Heauen; and suddenly it was conueyed out of sight. Hee at amazed that there should bee theeues in Heauen; a voyce told him it was the heauens motion, and at such an houre the next day he might attend, and againe obtaine his Cloake; which hee did accordingly. But to take view of other strange creatures, make roome I pray, for another Rabbi with his Bird; and a great deale of roome you will say is requisite: Rabbi *Kimchi* on the 50. *Psalme* auereth out of Rabbi *Iehudah*, that *Ziz* is a bird so great, that with spreading abroad his wings, hee hideth the Sunne, and darkneth all the world.

q *Iob.*40.10. Of these huge creatures, see the same huge reports and hideous vanities. 4. *Esdras* 6. 49.

r *Baua Basta, cap* 5.

s *Rect. Tullum.*

t *Bechoros cap. vlt.*

Vid. Hieron. à sancta fide contra Iudeos 1.2.

Homers Polyphemus, and *Guids* courtesy of *Thoeton* were petite matters: the Iewes (some such pedling.

world. And (to leape backe into the Talmud) a certaine Rabbi sayling on the Sea, saw a bird in the [a] middle of the sea, so high, that the water reached but to her knees; whereupon he wished his companions there to wash because it was shallow; *Doe it not* (saith a voyce from heauen) for it is seuen yeeres space since a Hatchet, by chance falling out of a mans hand in this place, and alwaies descending, is not yet come at the bottome. I perceiue by your incredulous smiles, you will scarce beleeue [x] that a Lyon in the wood Ela, roared suddenly, that all the women in Rome (foure hundred miles from thence) for very horror proued abortiue; and when he came an hundred miles neerer, his terrible noyse shooke the teeth out of all the Romans heads; and the Emperour himselfe, that caused the Rabbi to obtaine of GOD by his prayer, to make this triall of the Lion, fell downe from his Throne halfe dead: and with much importunity requested his helpe, to cause him retire to his dennes. But this roating hath almost marred our Feast.

u Like the fish in the Legend of Saint *Brandon.*

x *Cholm. cap.* 3

§. III.

Their Messias his Feast.

VT Wine you haue heard of, fetched out of *Adams* Celler, *Esay* 27.2.3. and *Psal.* 75.9. Before the Feast, *Messias* will cause these prety creatures, *Behemoth* and *Leuiathan* [y] to play together and make them sport: but when they haue wearied themselues in the fight, *Messias* with his sword shall kill them both, *Esa.*27.1. Then followeth the Feast, and afterwards his Marriage; [z] *Kings Daughters shall bee among thine honourable women: at thy right hand standeth the Queene in the golde of Ophir.* Amongst the *Messias* his excellent women (Rabbi *Kimchi* expoundeth) shall bee Kings Daughters, for euery King shall repute it to his owne glory to bestow a daughter on the *Messias*: But the true Queene shall bee one of the faireſt Israelites daughters, and shall continually conuerse with him, whereas the others must come onely at call. He shall thus beget children, which shall raigne after him, *Esay* 53.10. when he is dead.

y *Iob.*40.15. *Psal.*104.26.

z *Psal.*45.10.

Now the state of the Iewes in his time shall be such, that the Christians shall freely build them houses and Cities, and till their grounds, and bestow on them their goods; yea, Princes shall serue them, and they shall walke in faire garments, *Esa.*60.10,11,12. and *Esa.*61. 5,6. The ayre also shall be new and wholesome, *Esa.*65.17. by the benefit whereof, they shall abide sound, and liue long, and in their age bee as fresh as if they were yong, *Psal.*92. 14.15. The Wheat once sowne shall alway grow vp of it selfe, no otherwise then the Vines, *Hosea* 14.8. And if any shall desire any raine for his field, or garden, or one hearb by it selfe, he shall haue it, *Zach.*10.11. Then shall be peace among men and beasts, *Hos.*2.19. *Esa.*11. 7. If there arise any warre among the Gentiles, the *Messias* shall accord them, *Esa.*2.4. They shall liue in great felicitie, full of the knowledge and praise of GOD. The earth shall be full hereof, &c. The Talmud also speaketh of a thousand yeeres, wherein the world shall be renewed (somewhat like the opinion of some Ancients in the Primitiue Church) in which time the iust shall haue wings giuen them like Eagles, whereby they may flie ouer the face of the waters. But the bodies of the iust which shall rise againe, shall neuer returne to dust. *Ricius* in this and many other of their absurdities, seekes to giue an allegorical interpretation: but which of the Heathen haue not so patronized their superstitions and Idolatries? as appeareth in the Poets, Philosophers, Chaldæan and Egyptian Priests, whose mystical learning cannot free their religions from being *mysteries of iniquitie.* Sixe thousand yeeres the world endureth, saith *R. Katina*, and a thousand yeere shall be a desolation, and GOD onely shall be exalted in that day (for one thousand yeeres is one day of the Lord) as it is written, *A thousand yeeres in thy sight are as yesterday*; and this is a Sabbath wherein shall be the feastings aboue mentioned. And thus did [a] *Elias* affirme, as is said two thousand yeeres the world was emptie, two thousand the Law, and two thousand *Messias*; but for the sins of men that is wanting, which we see wanting. (This last clause, *Ricius* saith, is added by the Talmudists, which still expect their Messias) eighty fiue Iubilees shall the world indure, and in the last, saith this *Elias*, shall come the Sonne of *David.*

Tract. Sanhed. c. Helek. & tract. de Idolat. & de Sabbato.

a This was not *Elias* the Prophet, mentioned in the Scripture but b Talmudicall Rab. and therefore no sure ground to *Schelto* his positions in his Treatise of the end of the World, Englished by *T.R. Vid. Genebrard. Chron. in initio.*

Thus haue wee heard the infancie of the Church in the time of her nonage, and of those Hebrew Patriarchs; wee haue seene also their present Infancie in these Iewish Fables, the iust reward of [b] *Louing darknesse rather then light.* And so with our prayers to GOD, at last to take that *Veile of* MOSES *from their hearts*, that there may be *One proper Shepheard, and one sheepefold*, and that meane-while, we may learne preciously to esteeme, and reuerently to make vse of that light we haue; warned by the spectacle of Diuine Iustice in them, through so many ages blinded in so palpable fooleries; we will now leaue them and this Holy Land, and

and seeke further what aduentures we shall light on the next neighbouring Nation; hoping and crauing for pardon of such prolixitie in this part of our Discourse, fittest, of all the other in this part of our worke to be considered.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the hopes and hinderances of the Iewes Conuersion.

WHen I had now (as I thought) brought this *Iewish Relation* to an end, and euen wearied the Reader with that which might much more wearie the writer: that Prophesie of [a] *Paul, That all Israell shall bee saued, &c.* which by most Interpreters is construed of the generall conuersion of that Nation, after *the fulnesse of the Gentiles bee come in* (as in the beginning of this Worke is said) caused my straying Pen (ready to wander from these, so farre wandering from their holy Progenitors) to vndertake this taske, also to declare, what future hopes, and what present feares and lets may be conceiued of their conuersion to Christianitie. The hope (though it be yet tossed vpon surges of almost desperate Seas, yet) hath *Anchoram sacram*, a sure Anchor to relye on, and a kinde of obscure kenning of that wished-for Hauen, where it would bee. For [b] *Non ita periuerunt ad vnum Iudæi, vt nulla superst de illorum salute spes.* The destruction of the Iewes (saith *Peter Martyr*) is not so desperate, but that their is some *Hope* left of their saluation. And a little after (alluding to the Apostles mysterie) *Cum enim plenitudo fuerit iam ad Christum conuersa ex gentibus, tunc & Israelita accedent:* For when there shall haue beene a full conuersion of the Gentiles vnto Christ, then shall the Iewes also come in. So *Chrysostome:* [c] *Quia* [e] *subintrauit plenitudo Gentium, in nouissimo saluabitur omnis Israel*; because the fulnesse of the Gentiles hath come in, at last all Israel shall bee saued. The same hope is generally cherished by the rest of the Fathers. And D. *Willet* in a booke [e] written of this argument, brings to this purpose many authorities of Scriptures and Fathers, *Gen.9.27.* and 49.10. *Deut.33.7. Psal.125.1. Ezek.37.1.* and *47.4. Zach.2.12.* and *12.10. Mal.3.5. Luk.15.31. Iob.10.16. 2.Cor.3.16. Apoc.3.9.&c.* and especially that in the eleuenth to the *Romani*, wherein many arguments are compiled together: confirmed also by the interpretations and testimonies of *Origen, Athanasius, Chrysostome, Hieronme, Augustine, Beda, Hugo Cardinalis, Aquinas, Gorrham, Calvin, Beza, Bullinger, Martyr*, to whom wee may adde diuers others. These indeed further our hopes, which yet depend more vpon *Diuine goodnesse* then on humane probabilitie; the stabilitie of his Truth, which hath promised (as *Paul* also *Rom.11.* expounderh the former Prophets) *The vnchangeablenesse of Gods Election, the bottomelesse Sea of his Mercies, the vaseachablenesse of his Iudgements*, minister hope beyond hope. Hereunto also may bee added, the common grounds, both of Reason, which they hold with vs in Nature; and of the Scripture, the ancientest parts whereof, and especially the Law of *Moses*, they maintayne with equall acknowledgement, (and for the most part) with more forward industrie and zeale, then doe the commoner sort of Christians.

But the [d] impediment which haue hitherto, and doe yet with-hold them from Christianitie, doe exceed in number and power. For that fore-stalled preiudice of theirs, *the glory of the Temple*, the sacrifices and legall worships past, their hopes then and still of such a Monarch to their *Messias*, as you haue heard of, the splendour of their renowmed Ancestors, the keeping of the Diuine Oracles, their peculiar tytle of being Gods people, haue bred in them such a swelling pride, that they naturally enuie and abhorre the very thought thereof, that the Gentiles should in these things either equal or succeed them.

Sooner (saith *Martin* [e] *Luther*) then they would endure that the Gentiles (which in their daily prayers they curse and reuile) should haue any part with them in their *Messias*, and bee accounted co-heyres thereof, they would crucifie ten *Messiahs*: yea (if it were possible) would doe to death God himselfe, with all the Angels and creatures else, although they should therefore vndergoe a thousand hels.

Hence, in a great part, proceedeth their naturall and long continued obstinacie. And besides that prejudice, pride, and enuie, they are not a little scandalized from the Christians themselues, somewhat in regard of the mutuall differences and disagreements among Protestants; which, though in it selfe bad, is made much worse by the vnseasonable and vnreasonable exaggeration of their common Aduersarie, the Papist: but more, in respect of those which *call themselues Catholikes, and are not*, but euen by these men are found to bee manifest Idolaters. A [f] scandall it is to see *Gods Law* neglected, and mans exacted with

a Rom.11.25, 26.

b P.Mart. in Rom.c.11.

c Tom.1 Hom. 11.in Matt. de verbis Dom. circa finem.

* De generali & nouiss. Iudeor. vocatione.

d Impediments of the Iewes conuersion.

e Luth. in Mich. c.1.3. See also a whole booke of his cont. Iudeos, vbi hec fusius.

f Relation of Religion of the West parts.

with rigour; a greater matter, at some times to eat flesh, then adulterours pollution of the flesh at any time: the blasphemies of some Nations; these being interiections to the vulgar, and phrases of gallantrie to the Princes: the forging & packing of miracles; wherin the Friers and Iewes concurre with equall diligence, the one in continuing, the other in discouering them. A scandall are the alterations which they are forced by the Inquisitors, to make in their Authors and Monuments of Antiquitie: thinking, that these deuices are our best guidences. A scandall is the vowing and praying to Angels and Saints, yea, more to the *Mother of Christ*, then to Christ himselfe, or to GOD, to whom alone they repute this is a due sacrifice. But the greatest scandall of all others, is the *worshipping of Images*. Indeede it seemed strange to me, and doth to the rest of my Brethren according to the flesh, (*Nathaniel*, a Iew borne, baptized in London, before the Congregation at All-hallowes made this confession) euen vnto this day, in whom this *blindnesse and hardnesse of heart is in part continued*, through occasion giuen by them that professe the name of Iesus: and not onely in vs, which are of the house of Israel, but in others, as the Turkes and Mahumetanes, which are the race of *Ismael*. We and our Fathers and Elders say, and in our bookes call them by no other name, but *Baale abodazara*, Idolatrous Masters: a thing so detestable vnto vs, as nothing more, &c. They say vnto vs oftentimes, that they doe not worship him as gods, but GOD in them. Neither are the Heathen, we say, that are round about vs, so blinded, that they thinke the stocks and stones to be GOD, but they are perswaded that God may be worshipped in them. And yet they goe farther: for the Christians in Spaine and Portugall haue it written in their Bookes, That the Virgin *Mary* is the Lords Treasurer, and that she bestowes gifts and graces vpon her seruants: That her Mercie pardoneth them, whom the Iustice of her Sonne might condemne, and that our saluation lieth in her hands. But our Law teacheth, That GOD is All-sufficient, hee giueth to whom he listeth, *He will not giue his glory to another, &c.* The Reader may (if hee please) from that Iew himselfe, in his printed Confession, be further informed of that *Partition wall*, which separateth the Iew and Catholike.

§ *Apr.* 1577.

They are so much the more scandalized, when they see the Catechismes recite the *Decalogue*, with omission of that second Commandement, which they thinke (as one of their greatest Rabbins contested with our [h] Author) was the Ordinance of Christ himselfe. Yea, the Priests and Friers let passe in their Conferences with them for currant, their Iewish vpbraidings, that Christ, *a Carpenters Sonne*, was an Image-maker, or at least an Author of their worshipping. As for those speculatiue plaisters of Δουλεία and λατρεία, of intention instrumentall and finall in worship of *Images* of the true, and *Idols* of the false gods, they are (as euen now you heard) the vnsauoureist dregs to the Iew in the world.

h Rel. West.

The poore Idiot, among the Christians, can as little distinguish as the Pagan, and both amongst the Christians is like honour done to Gods Image, and to that of Saints, and to them both, in like forme of worship, as amongst the Pagans. They are forced to be at some Sermons, and there are well edified by their hearing, when they see the Preacher direct his prayer to a Crucifixe, calling it his *Lord and Sauiour*. Their *Transubstantiation* is a monster, as hideous as the former.

The meanes [i] vsed to their conuersion are weake; especially in some places, where they haue not the New Testament in such Language as they can vnderstand: and the Inquisitors haue inhibited and taken from them all bookes written on that Theame, in defence of *Christian Religion*, or against it, alledging, they will haue no disputing in *matters of Religion* either way, like the Iesuits Edict at Dola, forbidding all talke of GOD, either in good sort or in bad.

i *Ibid.*

But of all other, this is a good furtherance, that when in their Baptisme *they deny the Deuill and all his workes*, they must renounce their right and propertie in all their goods and possessions; the shamefull couetousnesse of hypocriticall Christians, hauing brought these *testamenta malorum* within the compasse of the *Deuils workes*, presupposing (forsooth) that either the conuerted Iew, or his corrupt ancestors, haue scraped together such heapes of wealth by vsurie, or oppression, or some vnlawfull meanes or other. Therefore for the good of his soule, his body shall be left to beg or starue; while, with the leauing of his Iewish superstition, hee must like wise leaue all that he hath: and his new-receiued *Religion* must be a meanes to strip him of his riches, and to weane him from his wel-beloued *Mammon*, which that Nation is naturally so farre in loue with. This alone, to the world-bewitched Iew, is such a *Partition-wall* to keepe him from Christianitie, that he will venture soule and all, rather then thus betray himselfe, his wife and children, to extreme beggerie and want. And so much the worse, saith [k] *Victor Carbensis*, one of these Conuerts, because in their Iewish estate they had not learned any Art which now might minister vnto them sustenance. Thus are they driuen to beg from doore to doore for their food, exposed not onely to this extremitie of want, but to the opprobries also of vnchristians Christians, who Iewishly hate the name of a Iew; nor can

k *Vict. de Carben. ant. Iug. l. 1. c. 4, 5.*

can the Iew be waſhed from it with the ſacred tincture of Baptiſme; whiles the ſcumme of the irreligious-religious vulgar ſcoffe and point at them, ſaying, There goes a baptized Iew (a name beſt ſitting themſelues) and on the other ſide their owne Countreymen hate and abhorre them as Apoſtataes, Renegadoes, and Fugitiues. And if any ſhew them kinder entertainment; yet (as a nine-dayes wonder) it laſteth but a little while, where-of the Iewes haue this prouerbe, *A new Conuert is as a new or cleane cloth*, which at firſt is pleaſant, but after a little wearing groweth foule and loathſome: Eſpecially, ſince the faireſt of his preferment (to welcome him to our *Religion*) is to turne Frier: then which profeſſion, nothing can be more hatefull to *him*, who accounteth it a courſe againſt Nature; and a breach of that Ordinance of [1] GOD (*Creſcite & multiplicamini*) of multiplying the world by a holy propagation in that [m] *Honourable eſtate of Marriage*, which that [n] *doctrine of Deuils* hath made the Frier vncapable of. As for the example of *Elias*, and ſome other holy Men (whom our Popiſh Votaries would make Patrones of their diſorderly *Orders*;) the Iew (herein more truely-Chriſtian then the Papiſt) holdeth it a courſe extraordinary, and ordinarily preferreth *holy Marriage* farre before that ſeeming-holy Vow of Virginitie. Thus we ſee what outward ſcandals, beſides their generall preiuntice againſt Chriſtianitie, doe hinder them from it: which offences, in behalfe of the Chriſtians, together with that preiudice, Pride, and Enuie, and aboue all, that *Veile* which Diuine Iuſtice hath left vpon their hearts, GOD in his good time remoue, and grant, according to that Prophecie, *That all Iſrael may be ſaued.*

Rel. Weſt.

1 *Gen.* 1. 28.

m *Heb.* 13. 4.
n 1 *Tim.* 4. 1, 4.

CHAP. XXII.

The later Inhabitants of Paleſtina, and the parts adioyning, ſince the diſperſion of the Iewes till this day.

§. I.

Of the Chriſtian times before the Saracens.

AND thus haue we ended our Iewiſh Relations; our next iourney is into Arabia: a way dreadfull ſometimes to the Iſraelites paſſing this way to Canaan, where yet their expected inheritance, their *pillar of a cloud by day, and fire by night*, their *Manna*, and many other miraculous effects of Diuine preſence, night arme them againſt heates, droughts, deſarts, ſerpents, enemies, and all oppoſition. Not ſo your Pilgrime: now leauing Palæſtina and the Holy Land, to viſite theſe Arabian deſarts full of emptineſſe, ſtored with wants, and yet moſt fruitfull of that which is worſe then barrenneſſe, the very Seminary of Mahumetane impious pietie. The very conceit whereof makes him (like the Riuer Iordan, which loſeth himſelfe in this wilderneſſe, and therefore lingers as long as he may, diffuſing himſelfe in lakes by the way, as loth to mixe his Freſh-waters with the Dead Sea) to ſtay and ſtray ſo long in Palæſtina: as he which knowes a Heatheniſh and Moriſh *Mare mortuum*, will ſwallow him (if he could ſinke) as ſoone as he is paſſed hence. Let vs therefore ſtay here a little longer to refreſh our eyes wearied with Iewiſh ſpectacles, and take view of thoſe which haue ſince ſucceeded them in habitation, in ſinne, in iudgement. And where might wee better ſtay, or what part of the world can yeeld ſuch varietie and multiplicitie of obiects to both the eyes of the minde, Curioſitie and Deuotion? No where ſuch manifold alterations and diuiſions of ſtate, ſo diuerſified a Map of Nature, ſo multiplied rites of Religion in ſuch differing ſects of Heathens, Hebrewes, Mahumetans, Chriſtians: No where Antiquitie ſhewing a grauer countenance: no where the Monuments of ſuch mercies, the ſpectacles of ſuch iudgements, ſuch conſolations, ſuch deſolations, ſuch ambition of Potentates, and forraine ſutors from the Eaſt, the Weſt, the North, the South; ſuch Miracles, ſuch Oracles, ſuch confluence of Pilgrims looking as farre oppoſite as *Sampſons* Foxes, with as fierie diuiſions, whether in differing hereſies of *one*, or differing names of *diuers* Deuotions; both Catholike and Hereticall Iewes, Saracens and Chriſtians, concurring in viſiting, adorning, adoring, theſe places with Titles and Rites of Holineſſe. How often hath this country emtied our Weſterne world with Armes and Armies to recouer it, and the Eaſterne in like manner to retaine it? How often hath it brought Armies of Angelicall ſpirits out of the higheſt Heauens, to couer theſe Hilles *with Chariots and Horſes of fire*, round about the holy men of GOD? How oft? But what ſpeake I of Men or Angels? GOD himſelfe *loued the gates of Sion, more then all the dwellings of the*

m *Heb.* 13. 4.
n 1 *Tim.* 4. 1, 4.

the world: and IESVS CHRIST, *the Angell of the Couenant, true* GOD, *and perfect* MAN, here was borne, here liued, practised, died, ascended, and hence he sent his Apostles to bee fishers of men, that the soules of men might bee made the heires of GOD, co-heires with himselfe.

After, the Iewes for reiecting him, were reiected out of both the heauenly and earthly Canaan; this countrey was inhabited partly by Roman Colonies, there planted for securitie of the countrey by the Roman Emperours, partly by such Syrians as submitted themselues peaceably to the Roman Empire, both that Ethnike before *Constantine*, and after in farre more flourishing estate vnder the Christian Emperours, till the daies of vn-christian *Phocas*.

a This was the murtherer of *Mauritius* his Lord, the vsurper of the Empire, the exalter of the Roman See vnto the Ecclesiasticall Supremacie (with as good right as himselfe had to the state) a monster of mankinde, vnder whom the Empire was neere an vtter ouerthrow, as by the Hunnes, Auares, and other Nations in the West; so especially by the Persians in the East; whose Emperour *Chosroes* ouerthrew that Armie which had conspired against *Mauricius*, and b in the fourth yeere of *Phocas* ouer-ranne Mesopotamia and Syria; in the next yeere after carried much prey and many captiues out of all Syria, Palestina and Phœnicia; in the seuenth yeere of his raigne possessed Armenia, Galatia, Paphlagonia, and spoiled all as farre as Chalcedon. Yet saith *Cedrenus*, *Phocas* did more harme at home, then the enemy in the field. At the same time the Iewes made a commotion at Antioch, and slew (besides many other Citizens) *Anastasius* the Patriarch, in despight also putting his priuitiues in his mouth. But the Iewes paid much bloud for this butcherie; and *Phocas* also himselfe the chiefe Butcher, was most mercilessly butchered presently after by *Heraclius* his successour. They tell of a Reuelation to a certaine Holy man, that GOD had made *Phocas* Emperour, because hee could not finde a worse man by whom to punish that people: which I mention, that the world might see what a good Mid-wife Rome (then in trauel) had to helpe her babe *Antichrist* into the world. But to returne to the Storie, *Heraclius* could not withstand the Persian insolence, but lost in his first yeere Apamea, and Edessa, and in the next Cæsarea, from whence they carried many thousands into captiuitie: in the fourth Damascus was taken, and in the fifth Ierusalem, where (by reason of the Iewish cruelties, who bought all the Christians they could to slaughter them) there were sliine c ninetie thousand. *Zacharias* the Patriarch, together with the *holy Crosse*, and exceeding store of captiues and spoile, were carried into captiuitie. The next yeere they ouercame Egypt, Africa and Ethiopia. *Chosroes* neglects all ouertures of peace made to him by *Heraclius*, except they would deny their crucified God, and worship the Sunne. He also caused the Christians in his dominion to become Nestorians, the cause perhaps why almost all the farre Easterne Christians to this day are, or at least are called, Nestorians. Against him *Heraclius* continued a six yeeres expedition, in which hee ouerranne his countries, ouerthrew his Armies, sacked his Cities, Castles, and Palaces, and at last assisted his eldest sonne *Siroes* (whom *Chosroes* sought to disherit) against him, who tooke him, and hauing before exposed him to all contumelious insultations, and almost starued him in a darke prison, and slaine all his other children in his sight; with abominable tyrannie shot his tyrannicall father to death. So died *Chosroes*; a successour of *Sennacherib*, in the dominion of many the same countries, subiection to the like blasphemous impietie, and reward by like parricide. *Heraclius* in the nineteenth yeere of his raigne visiteth Ierusalem, restoring the captiued crosse and Patriarch by restitution of *Siroes*. He banished thence all the Iewes, prohibiting by Edict that none should come neere it by three miles.

a *An. Dom. 595. aly 604. Plat. Bonifac. 3. & Phoco Imp. magna tamen contentione obtinuit vt sedes B. Petri, &c.*

b *P. Bizant. Hist. Persi l. 6. Mar. Sanut. Torsel. Geor. Cedreni Hist. compend.*

c *G. Tyrens. l. 1. saith 36000.*

§. II.

Of the Saracens and Turkes in Palestina.

THe Saracens had done good seruice in these wars against the Persians, which in the time of *Heraclius* began a new Religion and Empire, vnder Mahomet the founder of both: the second, after whom *Omar* ouerthrew *Theodorus* the brother of *Heraclius* in battell, and after him another *Theodorus* and *Bonnes* his Generals, & forced the Emperour to abandon Syria, carrying the holy crosse from Ierusalem to Constantinople.

In the 26. of *Heraclius* hee entred Ierusalem hypocritically and pseudoprophetically clothed in a homely garment of Camels haire, and sought out the place of *Salomons* Temple, thereto erect another; subduing soone after the whole Persian State, and a great part of the Roman. *Anno Dom.* 641. did *Homar* build his Temple at Ierusalem with incredible costs in matter and workmanship, enriching the same with many and large possessions and reuenues; in the Musaike worke of the inner and out ward part thereof expressing in Arabike letters

G. Tyrens. l. 1. c. 3.

letters, the Author, time, and charges of the building. The forme whereof is thus described by *William* Archbishop of *Tyrus*. [a] The Church-yard was square, about a bow-shot in length and bredth, compassed with a high wall, hauing on the West square two gates, one on the North, and another on the East: on the South was the Palace. On euery of these gates, and on the corners were high steeples, on which at certaine houres the Priests after the Saracenicall manner called them to prayers.

[a] Lib. 8. c. 3.

In this compasse none were suffered to dwell, nor to enter but with bare and washed feet, Porters being assigned to that purpose.

In the midst of this square, was another some what higher, whereto they ascended by staires in two places on the West side, as many on the South, and one on the East: in euery of the corners were Oratories or Chappels erected. In the middle hereof was the Temple raised of eight-square forme, crusted within and without with Marble and Musaike worke, hauing a spherical roofe, artificially couered with Lead. Both the inner and outward square was paued with white stone, whereby the raine water descended into many cisternes for that cause prouided.

In the midst of this Temple within the inner row of pillars, there was a Rocke of prettie height, with a Caue vnder it of the same stone, vpon which, they say, *Dauid* saw the Angell standing which smote the people with pestilence; after he had numbred them; where also he then built an Altar. This remained open to the view, till the Westerne Christians, winning the place, couered it with Marble, and erected thereon an Altar and Quire. *Baumgarten* (who was at Ierusalem a hundred and nine yeeres since) and was thrust downe the staires by the Saracens, saith, this Temple is not now very large, and that it is twelue-cornered, with a round steeple in the midst thereon, (as on their steeple vsually) a halfe Moone: within were reported to burne continually two thousand Lampes. The floore of the Church-yard being white Marble, occupying a bow-shot about the Temple, maketh such a reflexion of the Sun-beames, that a man is not able to endure it.

This Temple the Saracens haue in such reuerence, that the Soldan did then entitle himselfe *the high Priest and defender* of it. They call it *the Holy Rocke*. If any Iew or Christian enter therein, they compell him to deny his Religion, and turne Turke, or else they cut him asunder in the middle: which hapned to a Christian Maronite, about sixe moneths before, who in a Turkish habite had entred: but being knowne, for feare denied his Faith, but with reluctation of his conscience reuoked this act soone after, and liued after such a dismembring three hours. Neere this Temple is another, sometimes called *Salomons* porch, by the Christians dedicate to *our Ladie*, larger then is now that of *Salomons*, in which eight hundred Lampes were said to burne continually. Vnder both these wee are told, that there is a large Vault with admirable rowes of pillars, able to receiue many thousands. *Breidenbachius* Chancellor and Deane of Mentz, who visited those places aboue twentie yeeres before him, writes almost the same things; saue that he placeth but seuen hundred Lampes in this Temple of *Salomon*, or (as the Saracens called it) *the Holy Rocke*. The Soldan then liuing had built another neere it with eightie eight Lampes continually burning. Hee with his companions had like to haue beene slaine by the Saracens, for offering to enter another Temple in Mount Sion, wherein was said to bee the sepulchers of the Kings of Iuda. The Saracens come farre in pilgrimage to the *Holy Rocke* (so they call it of the Rocke aforesaid, which is grated about with iron) which they dare not touch, for the reputed sanctitie and reported rarities thereof; *Melchisedechs* offering, *Iacobs* dreame of the Ladder (which yet some haue ascribed to the stone now at Westminster) *Ieremies* enclosing the Arke, by some supposed to be still therein; and a world of wonders told thereof. *Ludolphus Suthenensis* relateth of that bloudie dissection of such as entred therein. But it is high time for vs to bee gone out of it, least some wish vs cut asunder in the midst, and this prolixe Historie made shorter by the halfe.

Tantum reuerebantur Saracens Templum domini: quantũ Christianis sepulch. Iesu Christi. Sanutus Tut. l. 3. p. 12. c. 12.

Bre. Breid. 1483.

L. Suthenens. Adrichomius, &c.

Thus Palestina continued wholly subiect to the Saracens; who after being diuided into sects, the Egyptian called *Siba*, preuailed against the Persian or Easterne called *Sunni*, and obtained all as farre as Antioch, and the Christians of those parts were in some tolerable condition, till the dayes of *Hequen* the Calipha, who rased to the ground the Temple of the Resurrection built in the time of *Constantine*, and repaired by *Heraclius*: hee forbade them the keeping of holy solemnities, and afflicted them with manifold other oppressions, forcing many to Apostacie. In the time of *Daher* sonne of *Hequen* the Church was re-builded. *Ann. Dom.* 1048. But the greedie gouernours cruelly exacted on the Christians, still threatning if their purposes were not effected, to demolish their Temple. Yet these full flies were farre more gentle then those their meagre and hungry successours, the *Turkes*, which hauing conquered these parts, tyrannized most cruelly both here and in the parts of the lesser Asia, *Belpheth* [b] the Turke hauing ouerthrowne & taken *Diogenes* the Christian

[b] Thus *Tyr.* but others ascribe it to *Aiion*, and tell of very honourable vsage of the captiue Emperour. *Kn. T. H.*

stian Emperour in battell, whom hee vsed as a Settle, ascending or descending his Throne. This *Tyrius, Raimond de Agiles* testifieth, that the Surians or Christians of those parts, of whom remained about Libanus sixtie thousand, at that time of the Franks inuasion, (so called as hee supposeth of *Sur*, the name of *Tyrus* till this day) endured such miserie both in this Turkish and that former Saracenic all sauerie, that many were compelled to forsake their Religion, and be circumcised: some others for feare deliuered their young children to Circumcision, and some were violently taken to this purpose out of their mothers bosomes, the father being slaine, and the mother violated. Churches were subuerted, Altars ouerthrowne, and superstitious Images by a contrary superstition were done away: and if any mans deuotion desired them in priuate, they were forced by a monethly or yeerely price to redeme them. They prostituted in Stewes their sonnes and daughters, and yet the mother durst not weepe at the sight.

§. III.

Of the exploits of the Frankes and other Westerne Christians in Palestina.

Fiftie eight yeeres they groaned vnder this Turkish yoke, from which they were freed by the Franks and other Westerne Nations, vnder the conduct of *Godfrey* of *Buillon*, *Robert* of Normandie sonne to the *Conquerour*, and other, who by the instigation of *Peter* the Eremite first, (whom [f] they so admired, that his words and deeds were accounted diuine, and the very hayre plucked off his Mule for Reliques) and after of Pope *Vrban* (calling a Councell at *Claremont* to this purpose) crossed themselues [g] to warre in and for the Holy land against the Infidels. GOD blessed their designes, and gaue into their hands all the three Palestina's: for so they were diuided according to the three chiefe Cities, Ierusalem the first, the second vnder Cæsarea, the third adiacent to Scythopolis, and subiected by the Christians to Nazareth. From Antiochia to Ægypt, and as farre as Edessa, was subdued to the Christian Faith and Scepter, farre more then *David* or *Salomon* possessed. They had (saith *Vitriaco*) foure principalities, that of Edessa, chiefe Citie (after his account) of Media, the second of Antiochia, the third of Tripoli, the fourth of Ierusalem. But of their happie atchieuements another place is fitter. They which list to be acquainted with these warres; besides *Tyrensis, Vitriacus, Sanutus* and others of later times, may out of the writings of diuers eye-witnesses which were in that first expedition, satisfie themselues, as *Robertus Monachus, Raimundus de Agiles, Fulcherius Carnotensis*, and diuers [h] others.

Ierusalem was entred on the twelfth of July 1099. being Friday; and after much bloud and slaughter in the Citie, they set vpon those which had betaken themselues to *Salomons* Temple (so was that called which *Homar* built) where, saith *Robertus Monachus*, was so much bloud shed, that the slaine bodies were rolled by the force thereof, and armes or dismembred hands swamme vpon the bloud, and were ioyned to strange bodies: the killing souldiers were scarce able to endure the hot vapours of the blood of the slaine. *Guibertus Abbas* saith, the bloud reached to the ancles; *Baldricus*, to the calfe of the legge; *Raimond de Agiles*, that they rode in bloud vp to the knees, and to the brydles of the Horses, and *Fulcherius*, that there were slaine in this Temple about ten thousand, and many of them were tipped vp by the Frankes to finde gold which they had swallowed, and the bodies after burned in heaps to finde the mettall in the ashes. *Albertus Aquensis* addeth, that the third day after the victorie, for feare of the remained captiued Saracens, (lest they might ioyne with the enemie against them) and in furious zeale, they made a fresh massacre, slaying those which for pittie, or couetousnesse of ransome, they had in hotter bloud spared: not the honour of Noble Matrons, not the delicacie of tender Maydens, not the children yet in the wombes of their pregnant mothers, not the Infants now sucking at the brest, not the hopes of innocent yonglings, playing or crying by the mothers hands; not tears, teares, promises, prayers, lamentable eyes, twyning embraces of the legges, bodyes, hands of the bloodie Souldier, could stay the hand euen then giuing the fatall blow, but Ierusalem was now againe filled with slaine carkasses. Generally it is agreed, that they found much wealth in the Citie to pay them for their paines. Soone after they encountred an Armie of three hundred thousand Saracens, which they ouerthrew, being but twentie thousand Christians: where *Robert* Duke or Earle (for I finde both Titles often giuen him, but in ancient Stories of those times, both hee and King *William* his father are oftenest called Earles) of Normandie

f *Guibert. Abbas hist. Ierosol.*

g *Illo in tempore spiritu peregrini dei Occidentales populi se flati, &c.*

Or. pref. Fris. ad Frid. 1.

h See *Gesta Dei per Francos* in two large Tomes. *Rob. Mon. hist. Ierosol. Guibert. ab. hist. Ierosol. Baldricus Arch. hist. Ierosol. Ita etiam Gesta Francos. Raimund de Agiles hist. Ier. Fulch Carnot. Gesta. Peter. Albert. Aq. hist. Ierosol.*

tooke with his owne hand, the chiefe standerd of the Enemie (being a long speare couered with siluer, with a golden Globe or Apple on the top, hauing slaine the bearer, and thereby terrifying the enemie and putting them to rout) which was long after reserued as a monument in the Temple of the Sepulchre.

Many other victories being obtained, the Saracens were either expelled Palestina, or subiected to the Franks, and the Christians, which were poorer & few, recouered freedom. Yet as few as they were in the Cities, *Raimond* tells of threescore thousand Surians or Christians of that Countrey, which in this long Saracenicall night continued their habitations in the Mountaines of Libanus. But of this is no maruell: for euen till these dayes, notwithstanding the manifold changes and chances of those Regions and peoples, there haue in the Mountaines and Desarts of Palestina and Sytia liued some Nations, neither acknowledging the Saracenicall Law nor Empire.

§. IIII.

Of the Azopart and Assysine.

Azopart.

VVch were the Azopart which liued in Caues in the Desarts of Ascalon, which King *Baldwin* the successour of *Godfrey* sought to smoake and fire out of their dens, and by cunning Stratagems destroyed as many as hee could: and iustly. For these being blacke in hue, blacker in conditions, vsed to rob and slay such as they could lay hold on. Such were the *Assysines*, which liued in the Prouince of Tyre, as *Tyrius* reports of them: not farre from Antaradus, which had ten strong holds with the Countrey adiacent, and were thought to bee in number sixtie thousand. Their gouernment went not by inheritance, but by Election: the chiefe or Grand Master of them being called *The Old Man*, who was obeyed in whatsoeuer hee commanded, were the attempt neuer so dangerous. If he gaue to one or more of them a weapon, and enioyned the killing of such an Enemie, Prince or priuate man, they gladly vndertookeit, with the death of that partie, or themselues in attempt. Both Saracens and Christians called them (the reason of the name vnknowne) Assysines. For the space of foure hundred yeeres they were zealous followers in a precise course of the Mahumetan Sect. But about the time when our Author the Archbishop of Tyre wrote this, their OLD MAN grew into distaste of his Religion; and by reading the Scriptures, became desirous of Christianitie. Hee persuaded his Subiects also to forsake Mahumetisme, prohibiting their Fasts, demolishing their Moschees, allowing Swines flesh. He sent also to *Almaricus* King of Ierusalem, offering to turne Christian, if hee might liue peaceably, and beeleased of two thousand Byzantines, which he yeerely payd for quietnesse to the Knights Templers, who had certaine Castles bordering on him. The King was content to pay this money himselfe; but by the treacherie of the Templers, the Legat was slaine, and foule scandall inflicted on the Christian name, the Assysines neuer after returning to their old Mahometrie, or turning anew to Christianitie. *Mathew Paris* relateth, that these Assysines thus closely and treacherously murthered *Raimund* Earle of Tripolis *Anno Dom.* 1150. *Paulus Aemylius* affirmeth, that these Assysines came out of Persia, that they were taught from their child-hood diuers Languages, and to conceiue it meritorious of heauenly reward to kill the enemies of their Faith, that their OLD MAN was called also *Arsacida*. Two of them (saith hee) slew *Raimund*, two of them after slew *Conrad Ferratensis* [b] walking in the Market-place of Tyre, which Citie hee had defended against the enemies, who being executed therefore, seemed very cheerefull. And Saint *Lewis* himselfe hardly escaped the like treacherie.

Assysines, Tyr. l.20 c.31.

Mat. Paris in Steph & Pontanus. Lud. Vinior, &c.

b *Vid. G. Nubrig. l.4.c.4. & seq & l.5.c.16. King Richard* was taken by the Duke of Austria vnder this colour.

c *See l.4.c.8. of this Hist. M.P. do. l.1.c.21 Odoricus.*

Marcus Paulus reporteth of one in the North-East parts of Persia, called *The Old Man* of the Mountaine, by proper name *Aloadin*, [c] which had built a strong Castle, and therein an imaginarie Paradise, who vsed that Assasine mysterie, promising to reward these murtherers with the pleasures of Paradise, a taste of which in all fleshly delights he had before giuen them. In the Tartarian conquest (Cyth *Odoricus*) he had so slaine diuers Tartars, which therefore besieged his Castle, and after three yeeres siege forced it for want of victuall. So *Paulus*; but *Haithonus* hath seuen and twentie yeeres, and that then it was yeelded for want of cloathes, and not of meates: hee calls this Castle Tigado, and the inhabitants by the former names of Assasines. This was done by *Haalon* the Tartar *Anno* 1262. About a hundred yeeres since they [d] tell of the like Paradise of *Aladeules* in those parts destroyed by *Selym* the Turke: but I thinke it was rather the memorie of *Aloadin*, then any truth of *Aladeules*. It is most remarkeable, that *Marcus Paulus* testifieth of two Deputies or Lieutenants vnder him, the one in [e] *Curdistan*, where the like generation of irreligious and

Haith. c.24.

d *Cartwright.*

e *See l.4.c.1.*

and robbing *Curdi* do yet remaine: the other neere to Damasco, of whom we haue spoken. The place where this OLD MAN liued, was called *Mulehet*, that is, a place of Heretikes; for so the Saracens deemed them. *Beniahim Tudelensis*, aboue foure and tortie yeeres agoe, hath written that these *Hhassissin* neere Baalgad vnder Libanus, followed not the doctrine of the Ismaelites, but of one whom they esteemed a Prophet, whose word they *obeyed*, whether to liue or die. Him they call Hhesich alli Hhassissin: he is their Senator, ar whose command all the Mountaines goe out and in. His seate is in the Citie called Karmos, which was sometime the biginning of the Country of Sehon. And they haue a Religion amongst themselues, according to the doctrine of their Senator. They are a terrour to all men; for they kill euen Kings with the Sawe. Their Dominion continues eight dayes iourney. They hold warre with the Christians called Frankes, and with the King of Tripolis, of the Region of Saam (Damascus) wherein hapned not long since an Earth-quake, whereby were slaine in that Region, many both Iewes and Gentiles, and in the Land of Israel * twenty thousand. Thus farre out of the Iew. *Iacobus de Vitriaco* Bishop of Acon, in his Easterne Storie, accounts it no small grace of GOD, that in the siege of Damiata (where himselfe was present *An.* 1219.) their chiefe men escaped these Assasines; they being (after that murther by the Templaries committed on their Legate) for the most part enemies vnto them. Yet one he mentioneth, the sonne of the Earle of Tripolis * being at his deuotions, in the Church of our Lady at Carchusa, slaine by them as he was kneeling before the Altar. Whereupon the Templers warred on them and forced them to the Tribute of three thousand Byzantines. In his first Booke, he telleth their customes at large. The place of their first originall, whence they came into Syria, he placeth neere Baldac or Bagdet, in the confines of Persia: they willingly and cheerefully obey all the commands of their *Abbat*, *Master*, or, OLD MAN *of the Mountaines*, in all things absolutely, esteeming it meritorious *: who also bringeth vp children of purpose, in secret and pleasant places, and in diuers languages, where they neuer see any but their Masters, till their Lord send them thence for hatred of his enemies, or at request of his friends, or for reward and price, giuing them a sharpe knife or blade for such exploits. If they dye, they are accounted Martyrs, and reuerenced as Saints; their Parents rewarded with gifts: and if they were bond, with freedome. Hence it is, that they take vpon them so cheerefully this deadly Legacie, with no lesse wariness and subtile in *Protean* insinuations and fashion-imitations, then vehemencie of desire and resolution, studious to effect the same, sometimes in the habit of the Clergie men, or Monkes, sometimes like marchants, alwayes applying themselues to others fashions, that it is impossible to preuent them: inferiour persons they disdaine to deale with, but mightier Potentates must either purchase their security, or alwayes bestrongly garded. *Vitriacus* affirmeth, that they were imagined to bee descended from the ancient Esses; and that they still retained the Iewish writing, hauing letters mixed of the Hebrew and Chaldee, which perhaps may bee the Samaritan Letters.

Marinus Sanutus Torsellus, about three hundred yeeres since, wrote a large booke, entituled *Secreta fidelium Cruces*, touching the recouerie of the Holy Land, in which he mention: these Assasines, or as he cals them Arsasidæ; of whom besides other things hee relates this Storie. *An.* 1194. *Boamund* Prince of Antiochia sends for *Leuuon* Lord of Armenia his vassall (so great where then the Christian affaires) to come to him, which he at first refused; because he had in like manner sent for his brother *Rupinus*, and made him prisoner: but after, vpon condition he came with such an Ambuscado, that when *Boamund* would contrarie to Couenant haue taken him, himselfe was taken and carried prisoner into Armenia: from whence he was deliuered by meditation of *Henry* then Gouernour of the Holy-Land, vnder Q. *Isabell*, at whose hands the said Lord of Armenia desired, and received the Title and Crowne of a King. And this was the beginning of that Royall Title to those Kings of Armenia. But this *Henry* in his returne, visited (according to his request) the King of the Arsasidæ (so he calles him) who brought him to a Castle where was a very high Tower, and in each corner thereof stood two men clothed in white. Then said the King to his ghest, Your Subiects will not obey you in like manner as mine will me; and withall gaue a humane * or spetting token: and presently two of those white ones cast themselues downe, and with the fall died instantly. Then did hee offer the like experimen in the rest, but *Henry* refused, as hauing more proofe then he desired of this, more then Votarie *obedience*. He offred him also, that if he had any enemie, he would procure him to bee slaine by these his seruants.

I stay the longer on these cursed Assassines, that the Reader may make comparison, and obserue their resemblance with the latter Iesuiticall brood, in totall and simple obedience, the opinion that it is tolerable, nay lawfull, commendable, meritorious of heauen, to kill, and treacherously to murther the Princes of the earth, and the glorious martyrdome of such as are thereforе executed.

See. l. 4. c. 1.

Ben. Tudelensis

* *Gualterus* in his *Bella Antioch.* mentions this or such another terrible Earthquake about this time.

Iac. de Vitr. l. 3.

* *An. Do. 1172.*

Edward the first, his father then liuing, warred in these parts, and was by one of these Assasines almost slaine. *d. l. 1. c. 14.*

* *Omnem indifferenter obedientiam superiori suo exhibitam, sibi creduit esse vita æterna meritoriam.* Vitriac. Vit. l. 1. c. 81.

Mar. Sanut. l. 3. par. 10 c. 8.

Haply this name Arsasidæ was either taken or giuen them of Arsaces the first founder of the Parthian Empire in those parts whence these came.

* *Excretuit.*

§. V.

Of the Dogzijn and Drusians, and other Pagans there.

Dogzijn or Drusians.

ANother like both People and Sect, *Brethren in euill*, were the Dogzijn, of whom *Beniamin* thus writeth. About ten miles from Sidon, there is a certaine people which holds warre with the Sidonians, called in their language Dogzijn, of others called Pagans, of no Religion or Sect: They dwell in the Mountaines, in Caues, and holes of Rocks, obeying no King or Gouernor, but liue at randome in the highest Hills, and steepest Rockes, three dayes iourney vnto the Hill Hermon. They are infamously incestuous, the Fathers polluting their owne Daughters. And in a solemnitie which they yeerely celebrate, all both men and women come to a common Feast, where they change Wiues with each other. They hold that the soule, when it departeth out of the body of a good man, passeth into some Infant then begotten: but of a bad man, into a Dog or other Beast. Their knowledge is according to their life. There are no Iewes amongst them, but sometimes Artificers, and diuers come vnto them for Marchandize, and goe away againe, and the Iewes are gently entertained of them. This people is very swift in running vp and downe those hills, and not to bee vanquished of other men. Thus farre *Tudelensis*.

Martin a Baumgarten relateth, that the Venetian Consull told him of a Sect not farre from Tripoli, which vse at certaine times promiscuous lusts, the Father with the Daughter, the Mother with the Sonne, and each with his next Mate: The issue thereof if Male, to be killed with needles, as sacrificing their bloud, the Females preserued. Hee names them not. But it is likely to be the posteritie of those Dogzijn, perhaps that of killing their Males being added by such as make bad things worse (and yet *Epiphanius* reporteth of the Gnostikes, as great or worse abhominations) for euen the Diuell himselfe may be slandered. But long before his time, *Iacobus de Vitriaco* did write of a certaine miserable people liuing in the Mountaines, and not farre from Tripoli, which in great part obserued the Law of Mahomet, but had another *hidden Law* which they said they might reueale to no man, but to their owne Children, when they grew to be of ripe age. Their wiues and daughters, with an implicit faith professe a beliefe in the same, but know it not. And if the Sonne should vpon any cause reueale it to his Mother, the Husband would slay his Wife, and the Father his Sonne. These eate Swines flesh, and drinke Wine, and of other Saracens are accounted Heretikes. These haue their workes of darknesse in secret, wherein they practise filthinesse, and such things as are contrarie to the Female sexe, and therefore feare lest their wiues would not endure their execrable rites, if they were there with acquainted.

Epiph. her. 28. Iac. de Vitr. l. 1. c. 13.

Howsoeuer the case standeth, a filthy Sect it was and is. For euen still it continues: and (if my coniecture deceiue not) these are those Drusians of which many Authors haue written, falsely surmising them to bee the Relikes of the Latine Armies, and of those Frankes which sometime possessed these parts of Syria. I deny not but that some of these might ioyne vnto them, in and for that fellowship of filthinesse; as beere in these parts, many debauched beasts, with those beastly Gypsies: yea, I think that the Assassines and these, since the Tartars destroyed the chiefe of that Sect in Persia, and possessed the parts of Syria, haue growne into one people; receued also into their societie whatsoeuer dregges of Nations, malecontents, exiles, and vnruely borderers, those Mountaines could secure, in, and throw all the changes of State and Dominion, which those Countries haue suffered; which freedome they retayned not onely to the weaker, and more vnsetled gouernment of the Mamalukes and Ægyptian Soldans, but euen still continue (in some sort) notwithstanding the Ottomaii greatnesse. Circumcision they embrace with the Turkes, vse the libertie of Christians in drinking Wine, and more then beastly licentiousnesse in incestuous copulations with their owne Daughters. Thus *Botero. Knolles* in his Turkish Historie saith, they follow one *Isman*, a Prophet of their owne, and are not Circumcised. But I haue learned of a friend of mine, one Master *Pountesse*, who hath had acquaintance with them, that they are Circumcised. And that they are of those Dogzijn which *Beniamin* mentions, it is apparant by their place of abode, by their hereticall Sect and Customes so like, and by their name easily changed from Dogzijn to Dorzijn, and so to Drozijn or Druzijn, an easier change then so long a time, and sortaine pronunciation vsually admit.

G. Bot. Ben.

Biddulph writes, that they retaine still Baptisme, and the names of Christians, but are called Rafiues, that is, Infideles. *Selym* the second sought to bring them vnder the Turkish yoke, and his successors likewise till these dayes, yet both these and the Arabians were neuer made fully subiect. Thus the ancient Scythians, the Reisbuti in the Mogols Country of Cambia, the Curdi,* other Mountaine inhabitants and borderers (as also a long time the Welshmen in

Biddulph. l. c.

* *Cartwright, Barbaro, and others.*

in Wales) vnder the greatest soueraignties haue enioyed a kinde of freedome, secured by the mountainous situation, their naturall hardinesse, and the greatest cause, their pouertie, as a bootlesse bootie, and worthlesse conquest, to buy barenesse and barrennesse with the price of bloud. These Drusians are a people warlike, and religious obseruers of their owne superstition, yeelding due obedience vnto their naturall Lords: they weare long coats, reaching to the knees, but toned before, and no breeches: and vse the Arcubuse and Scimitar. They are increased in numbers, (which might come to passe by the long warres, which the Westerne Christians with often inuasions made in those parts after they were dispossessed of the Kingdome of Ierusalem; the same seconded by the Tartars a long time; and after it was the consines of the Turkish and Mamalukes Empires: so that it is no maruell if they bee of sundry Nations and Religions, being the confluence of so many people, and sinke of so many Sects, howsoeuer the Drusians name bee predominant. They inhabit from Ioppa, to Cæsarea and Damasco. Some dissensions among their Princes gaue opportunitie to *Ebraim Bassa, An. Dom.* 1585. to spoyle their Countrey, and extort what hee could, one of them helping to cut the others throat, yet neuer could he force *Man-Ogli* to come in and submit himselfe, although herein he vsed the Turkish forces, and wiliest stratagems, then also inuesting *Aly Ebre-Cæsus* in the soueraigntie, swearing him to the Turke, and carrying with him *Ebne-Mansur*, and *Serafadin*, two of the Drusian Princes which had submitted themselues in his Galleyes, as prisoners to Constantinople. *Knolles Amur. 3.*

They are still (it is the Relation of a Traueller) gouerned by a succession of Princes whom they call *Emyrs*. The present *Emer* of Sidon, is Faccardine, a man neuer seene to pray, nor in a Mosque; small of stature, couragious and tyrannicall. Hee neuer commenceth battell, nor executeth any notable designe, without the consent of his Mother a woman skilled in Magicke. To his Towne hee hath added a Kingly Signiorie, what by his sword, and what by his stratagems. He picked a quarrell with *Ioseph Emer* of Tripoli, and dispossest him of Barut, and after sacke Tripoli it selfe, and forced the *Emer* to flie to Cyprus: and when with the forces of Damasco (for hee got to be made Seidar or Gouernour of the Souldietie there) he sought to repayre his losses in the field, the Damascens were foyled, and pursued to the gates of their Citie, the conquerours lodging in the Suburbs, whence they were remouued by the force of fifteene hundred thousand Sultanies. This was *Anno* 1606. Thus vnder the tytle of a Subiect to the Turke, but yeelding obedience at large, he holdeth Gazir, Barut, Sidon, Tyrus, Acre, Saffet, or Tybetias, Diar, Camer, Elkiffe, the two heads of Iordan, the Lake Bemochon his (now called Houle) and Sea of Tyberias with the hot Bath adioyning, Nazareth, Cana, and Mount Tabor. Saffet is his principall Citie, in which are many Iewes. The grand Signior often threats his subuersion, both for his increasing, and intelligence with the Florentines, which hee diuerteth with gifts and fauour: but yet prouides for it by fortifying his holds, able to hold out a long warre, hauing also sortie thousand expert souldiers in continuall pay, besides the aduantage of the Mountaines, and in greatest extremitie, the Sea and the Florentine. Hee hath the fifth part of the increase of all things, and head-money for all Cattell within his dominions, and two Dollers yeerely for the head of euery Iew and Christian. The Marchants are there so safe, that they may trauell with their purses in their hands, yet subiect to tyrannicall seizures, vpon the death of Factor or Owner. But more then enough of these Drusians, and other peoples mingled with them. *Biddulph* mentions *Vseph Beg*, or *Lord Ioseph*, which in the Mountaines holds out against the Turke: he tells also of one *Asan Bashaw*, which ruleth like a King in an ancient Citie called *Achilles*, paying duties to the Turke successiuely from his predecessours of the house, as it is sayd of *Sanballat*, and is called *Eben Sumbolac*, and his Kindred call one another *Amiogli*, for they account themselues Ammonites. This Bashaw is old, and referreth matters of gouernement to his kinsman *Vseph Beg*. It should seeme they are some relickes of the Cutheans or Samaritans, which perhaps ioyne with the Drusians in many things. There are also in these parts of Palæstina many Arabians, which it seemes haue pestered those places euer since the inuasion of *Homar*, if not before; and these still vse to prey vpon the Pilgrims that trauell to Ierusalem, notwithstanding the conduct of Ianizaries. Of these Arabians, one Sect is called * Beduines, which imagining the day of euery mans death fatally destined, neuer goe armed to battell, vsing onely Speares and Swords, disdaining Bowes and Arrowes, as tokens of cowardise. These are false alike to Christians and Saracens, easily betraying either, alway addicting themselues to the strongest: dwell in Tents, goe cloathed with skinnes, wander vp and downe in Tribes, still seeking fresh pastures, feed on Milke, and commit the care of all businesses to their wiues. Some of the Easterne people worship to the East, which they say, they learned of their fathers that were Christians, themselues being Mahometans, yet account other Saracens heretical: and some esteeme the Sunne to bee the chiefe God. Thus *Vitriacus*.

M. Sandys l. 3. p. 210.

* *Iac. vit. l. 1. c. 12. Vlaster. l. 11.*

§. VI.

Of the vnchristian Christians.

SVch are and haue beene the vnholy Inhabitants of the Holy Land since the Iewes expulsion, neither can wee say much better of their conquerours the Persians, Arabians, Turkes, Tartars, Mamalukes, and after these the Turkes in the *Ottoman* Dynastie: no, nor can wee commend the Christians for much Christianitie, whether the natiue Surians, (some of which haue passed through all these changes without any great change, either to the Saracenicall or Westerne Rites from their Greekish) or their inuaders and conquerours. For these soone degenerated into an vnchristian Christianitie, and were called Pulam, successors of the places, not the conditions of those which passed thither with Duke *Godfrey*. They gaue themselues to effeminate delicacies, to excesse in diet and apparell, full of intestine discords and ciuill contentions, coozners and false, addicted to Witch-crafts and Diuinations, contumeliously abusing Pilgrims, whom deuotion had brought from farre Countries thither, or which came to helpe them against the Saracens, calling them in scorne *the sonnes of Hernaud*. The Maronite Christians were in times past sixtie thousand, but now are few: neither is this a fit place for discourse of that and other Sects of Christians liuing in, or frequenting these holy places, Nestorians, Iacobites, Abassens, Armenians, Georgians, Greekes and others. But the conditions of the Inhabitants at that time, wee mention as the cause of the losse of that Countrey to the Saracens: the Clergie minding more (as a Clergie man of their owne expresseth) the Churches goods then her good; to fleece, then to feed their flockes; the Regulars enriched with possessions, religion brought foorth wealth, and the daughter ate vp the mother. The Natiue Laytie melted in lusts and pleasures, grew more fearefull then women, except they were assisted with the Frankes, English, or other Westerne people: strengthning themselues in the strength of their contentions, against their Christian brethren with Saracenicall assistance. Their wiues they mewed vp very close from the sight, almost of brethren and neerest kindred, scarce suffering them to visit the Church once in a yeere: some of the greater ones erecting Altars in their wiues bed-chambers, whereon some sillie Priest might mumble his *Parrot mumsimus*. They the more enraged, vsed all meanes with womens wiles and deuillish wils by Sorceries, or any other meanes to effect their filthy purposes. It was also made a refuge and receptacle of the most disordered persons in these Westerne parts, Theeues, Robbers, Periured, Adulterers, Traytors, Murtherers, Parricides, Pyrats, Apostate Monks, and Nunnes, which became common harlots, and other monsters in shapes of men and women, passing the Sea to this Land entituled Holy; where *Cœlum non animum*, changing foyle not soule; they practised the like villanies with lesse shame, being further from their friends. And easily might they escape after greatest mischiefes, either running as Rennegadoes to the Saracens, or escaping by ship to some neere Iland, or to such priuiledged Sanctuaries, as euery Religious house afforded, to the preiudice of iustice and Religion. Some also which in Europe had beene condemned for some crimes, by mediation of friends obtained this exchange of punishment to bee sent hither, where they became harbourers of Whores, Gamers, Murtherers, and for further impunitie were at a yeerely see with the great ones. Neither could the feare of humane Iustice, or diuine Iudgements reclaime them, many terrible Earthquakes happening amongst them, (by one of which Tyrus was almost vtterly together with the Inhabitants destroyed) shake their earthie hardned hearts, or mooue them to relent. No maruell if the Land could no longer brooke such Inhabitants, but exposed them to the sword of the Saracens, and then againe (for so the father when hee hath chastened his children, casts the rod into the fire) to the Tartars, and from one to another, till the Turke now Lords it amongst them in sort as you haue heard. And euen still the wickednesse of the people in vnnaturall lusts, and nameless filthinesse is such, that I abhorre further to write of it: so is this paradise of the world, both in bodily and spiritual pleasures and fruitfulnesse, now become a desolate wildernesse for the one, and disconsolate in the other, whiles one is loath to sow for another to reape. *Iustus es Domine, & Iusta sunt iudicia tua.*

Sanu. l. 3.

Viriaco. l. 1. c. 71. 72.

Vit. l. 1. c. 8.

OF

OF THE ARABIANS, SARACENS, TVRKES, AND OF THE ANCIENT INHABITANTS OF ASIA MINOR: AND OF THEIR RELIGIONS.

The Second Booke.

CHAP. I.

Of Arabia, *and of the ancient Religions, Rites, and Customes thereof.*

ARABIA is a very large Region, [a] lying betweene two Bayes or Gulfes of the Sea, the Persian on the East, and that which hereof is called the Arabian, on the West: On the South is the Ocean; on the North is Syria and Euphrates. [b] *Plinie* sets downe the Northerne Limits, the Hill Amanus, ouer against Cilicia and Commagena; many Colonies of them being there planted by *Tigranes* the Great: it thence (saith hee) declineth to our Sea and the Ægyptian shore, and to the heart of Syria to Mount Libanus. By a certaine workemanship of Nature, it much resembleth the forme and site of Italy. [c] *Arabia* signifieth *Holy*, as *Solinus* affirmeth. But in the Scripture ערבי Harabi signifieth both a robber by the way, and an Arabian. So *Ier.* 3.2. *In* [d] *the wayes thou hast sate for them as the Arabian in the Wilderness*, in the vulgar Latine is translated, *Expectans eos quasi latro insidians in solitudine.* Saint *Hierome* interprets ערב [e] *Arabia & vesper & coruus & planicies & occidens*, and acknowledgeth the sitnesse of the former name in *Ieremie*, answering the condition of the people giuen to robbe on the borders of Palestina, and all Trauellers from Ierusalem to Iericho. Thus hee comments on that place of *Ieremie*, which he translates, *Quasi latro in solitudine*, the Hebrew being *Harabi*. Hence *Martin del Rio, Adeo autem latrocinijs infames, vt Hebrais Arabs latronem denotet, sicut Chananeus Mercatorem, Chaldeus Mathematicum.* From the practice of the people their proper names became appellatiues, an Arabian for a robber, (as *Sarak* also) a Chananite for a Marchant, a Chaldean for a Mathematician. The Nations of this wide Tract of Land are many. It is the next to bee spoken of in this our Discourse, according to Geographicall methode, as confining vpon Iudæa, whence wee last departed.

[f] Some deriue the name from *Arabus*, the sonne of *Apollo* and *Babylonia*. And the forged *Berosus* of *Annius* telleth, That *Ianus Pater* sent one *Sabus* into Arabia Fœlix, *Arabius* into Arabia Deserta; and *Petreius* into Petræa, all Nephewes of *Cham*; all indeed the Sonnes of *Annius* his braine. Truetit is, that Arabia is commonly diuided into those three parts, Petræa, Deserta, and Fœlix. Of the Nations in Arabia, *Plinie* writeth largely, amongst the rest naming

a *Magiinus.*

b *Plin.l.6.c.28. Orosius.l.1.*

c *Solin.36.*

d So our English transl. and the *Spon. Ital. Pagnine, Pat. Tremel. &c.*

e *Hier. in Ez.c.12. in Ezec.27.*

f *Draudius in Solin. Berosl.4.*

naming the Saracens, whom S. *Hierome* often, *Epiphanius* also, and other of the ancient Fathers mention, of which wee are anon to speake at large. But long before *Plinie*, the Scripture speaketh of the people of this Region, not only those which are faid to descend of *Cush*, the sonne of *Cham*, but of many others, which descended of *Abraham*, as *Ismael* the sonne of *Abraham*, by *Hagar*; and *Zimram*, and *Ioksham*, and *Medan*, and *Midian*, and *Ishbak*, and *Shuah*, with their posteritie, the issue of *Abraham* by *Keturah*: who, after that *Seba*, and *Sabbetha*, and *Rama*, and *Sabtheca*, had peopled some parts of Arabia, *were sent away with their portions Eastward to the East Countrey*, that is into Arabia; where it is likely they mingled their Seed and Generations with those former of the posteritie of *Cham*: for therefore it seemeth *Moses* wife, *Zipporah*, was called a [h] *Cushite*, or (as some reade) an Æthiopian, not that shee was of the Countrey Æthiopia in Africa, but a Midianite of Arabia, of *Abrahams* race: which Countrey, because the posteritie of *Cush* had first inhabited, and happily had mingled themselues in marriages with them, shee is called a Cushite, which some wrongly expound, an Æthiopian, if they vnderstand it properly; although *Cush* were also the Father of the Æthiopians. But of this name Æthiopia, sometimes taken more largely, otherwhiles more straitned, you shall see more in our seuenth Booke, the first Chapter. This posteritie of *Abraham* are, in Scripture, often called *the children of the East*. Saint *Hierome* [i] reckons also to Arabia the Idumæans, Moabites and Ammonites: and certaine it is, that the places sometimes by them inhabited, are now accounted to Arabia. The many names of the Arabian Nations, they which will, may reade in *Plinie* and others. *Mohamed* [k] *Ben-Iacob Siraeita*, Author of the Arabike Dictionaty, affirmeth, that *Iaarob* (called *Ierab*, *Gen.* 10. 25.) sonne of *Cahhtan*, or *Ieftan*, was Author of the Arabike tongue, which was brought to perfection by *Ismael* son of *Abraham*; who dwelt in a Region called Araba of that *Iaarob*, whence the whole land of Arabia tooke name.

The name *Felix*, or *Happie*, is giuen to the Southerly parts of Arabia, for the fertilitie thereof: [l] the name *Petræa* to a second part, of *Petra* the seat-Royall, after called *Arach*, of *Aretas* an Arabian King.

The Desart Arabia hath a name answerable to the nature thereof; being, in great part, without Inhabitants, for the barrennesse of the soile: as is also a great part of that which is called *Petræa*. This Desart Arabia is also [m] called *Aspera*, *Inferior*, *Cauia*, and of the Hebrewes *Cedar*. It is bounded on the East with Babylonia, and part of the Persian Gulfe; on the North with Mesopotamia, neere to Euphrates; on the West, with Syria and Arabia *Petræa*; on the South, are the Mountaines of Arabia *Felix*. Neere to them and to Euphrates it hath some Townes, and is frequented with Marchants, otherwhere partly vnpeopled, partly (*Strabo* therefore termeth it [n] *Scenitis*) fed with such *Roming Arabians*, as haue no dwelling houses, but remoue to and fro, seeking where to finde pasture for their Beasts, and lodge in Tents.

David accounteth himselfe [o] *miserable for this dwelling in the Tents of Kedar*, or (as *Tremelius* reades it) [p] *as the Scenites of Kedar*. Thus did the Patriarkes of old, thus did the Scythians, and thus doe the Tartars, and the Arabians in Asia, Africa, and Europe, at this day, toming, rouing, robbing: and therefore the [q] Iewes call the Tartarians *Kedarim*, because of their like course of life.

They [r] which dwell in Townes and Cities, obseruing a more ciuill life, are called Moores, the other Arabians, in more proper appellation, or *Beduines*. The name Moores was giuen them of the Spaniards, because out of Mauritania they inuaded Spaine, and now [s] is taken vsually, not so much for the Inhabitants of the Arabian Cities, as for all of the Arabian and Mahometan superstition. Bosra is the chiefe Citie.

Arabia Petræa adioyneth on the West and North to Syria; on the East to the Desart Arabia, on the South to the Happie. *Plinie*, *Strabo*, and *Ptolemie*, call it Nabathæa: Some thinke, of *Nebaioth*, sonne of *Ismael*. *Tyrius* calls it Arabia Secunda. Now it is called by *Ruscelli*, Baraab; or after *Zizlerus*, Barra; or Bathalatha, after *Castaldus*. [t] *Mela* ascribeth the Hill Casius hereto: which, saith hee, is so high, that from the fourth watch of the night, or the last quarter thereof, it sheweth the Sunne-rising. But *Nonius Pintianus* correcteth him, saying, there are two *Casij*, the one of Syria, the other of Arabia, and that this report is to be applied to the Syrian Casius: where in *Sebottus* is of another minde.

Nigh to Syria it is more plentifull [u], then in other parts. The scarcitie of wood and water, with the barrennesse of the soile in other places, shew how it is maligned of the Elements. Both in this part, and the former, they had need goe strong and well accompanied, for feare of robberie and spoile, which the Arabians attend.

This part is famous vnto all Generations, not so much for the Amalakites, Midianites, and other their bordering Neighbours (of whom, and their Religion somewhat is spoken [x] before) as for the miraculous passage of the Israelites through the same, and abode therein fortie

g Gen. 25. 2.

h Numb. 12. 1.

i Hier. in Esa. 21.

k Gabriel and Iohn Marenite translators of the Nubian Geographer, who hath the most exact description of Arabia.

l Arias Montan. Calch.

m Magiuus, Ptolom. l. 5.

n Scenite, vel Nomades, ἀπὸ τῶν σκηνῶν i. Tentorij.

o Psal. 120. 5.

p Tanquà Scenie Kedarenij.

q Elias Thisbites. Kedar.

r Boter. relat. part. 1. l. 1.

s Adrichom. Theat. T. 8.

t Mel. l. 1. c. 10. & ad eum Casiig. Pintian. & Sicilig. A. Schot.

u Diod. sic. l. 3. c. 12.

x Lib. 1. c. vlt.

y R. Petteteran.

fortie yeeres, in which time they *receiued the Law, were fed with Manna*; their Meate, Drinke, Clothing, Iudgements, Mercies, continually yeelding miraculous euidence of *Gods presence* amongst them.

Bellonius visited the *Mount Sinai*: he [z] saith, it is a mile and a halfe from Horeb, and farre higher: from whose top, (which is hard stone [a] of yron colour) may both shores of the Red Sea be seene. This Sea is not therefore called *Red*, because either the ground or the sand, or the water thereof is Red, as *Bellonius* hath obserued, for none of them are [b] so. The people thereabouts take care for no other houses then the boughes of Palme-trees, to keepe them from the heat of the Sunne (for raine they haue but seldome:) the cattell are lesse there then in Egypt. In the ascent of Mount Sinai are steps cut out in the Rocke: they beganne to ascend at breake of day, and it was afternoone before they could get to the Monasterie of Maronite Christians, which is on the top thereof. There is also a Mesehit there for the Arabians and Turkes, who resort thither on pilgrimage as well as the Christians. There is a Church also on the top of Mount Horeb, and another Monasterie at the foot of the Hill: besides other Monasteries, wherein liue religious people, called *Caloieri*, observing the Greeke Rites, who shew all (and more then all) the places renowmed in Scriptures, and Antiquities to Pilgrims. They eare neither flesh nor white meates. They allow food vnto strangers such as it is, rice, wheat, beanes, and such like, which they set on the floore without a cloth, in a woodden dish, and the people compose themselues to eate the same, after the Arabian manner, (which is to sit vpon their heeles, touching the ground with their toes, whereas the Turkes sit crosse-legged like Taylors.) There is extant an Epistle of *Eugenius* Bishop of M. Sinai, written 1569. to *Charles* the Arch-duke, wherein hee complaineth, that the Great Turke had caused all the reuenues of the Churches and Monasteries to bee sold: whereby they were forced to pledge there Holy Vessels, and to borrow on Vsurie.

Arabia Felix stretcheth from hence Southwards, hauing on all parts of the Sea: against which it doth abutt the space of three thousand fiue hundreth and foure miles. *Virgil* calls it Panchæa, now [d] *Ayaman*, or *Giamen*. This seemeth to bee the Countrie wherein Saba stood, chiefe Citie of the Sabæans, whose Queene visited *Salomon*: for so the Iewes reckon, howsoeuer the Abassines challenge her to themselues. *Aben Ezra* on *Dan.* 11. calls this Saba Aliman or Alieman: and *Salmanticensis*, Ieman, [e] which is all [f] one (for all is but the Article) signifying *the South*: as the Scriptures also call her *Queene of the South*. For so it was situate, not to Iudæa alone, but to the *Petræan* and *Desart Arabia*. The name *Seba* or *Saba* agreeth also with the name of *Sheba*, *Gen.* 10. 7. As for *Sheba* the Nephew of *Abraham* by *Keturæ*, it is like he was founder of the other Seba or Saba in Arabia Deserta, the elder posteritie of *Chush*, hauing before seated themselues in the more fertile Southerne countries: and because both peoples, these in Arabia, and those in Africa were comprehended vnder one generall name of Æthiopia, hence might those of Africa take occasion to vsurpe the Antiquities of the other. Yea, it is more likely that these Abassens in Africa a thousand yeeres after that the Queene was buried, were seated in Arabia, and thence passed in later ages into Africa, subduing those Countries to them. For so hath *Stephanus*, Ἀζωριοι οἱ καὶ Ἄραβες: ἐξ οὗ τὸν Ζαβέαν. The Abassens (so we now call those Æthiopians in the Empire of *Presbyter John*) are Nation of Arabia, beyond the Sabæans: and the Nubian Geographer diuers times mentions *Salomons* wife in Arabia, which I cannot interpret but of that Queene; so that out of Arabia they carried this Tradition with them, as it is likely, into Africa, where want of learning, and plentie of superstition, had so increased their Legend of this Queene, as we shall after heare. *Beniamin Tudelensis* writeth likewise, that the Region of Seba is now called *the Land of Aliman*, and that it extendeth sixteene dayes journeys alongst the Hills: in all which Region there were of those Arabians, which had no certaine dwellings, but wandred vp and downe in Tents, robbing the neighbour Nations (as is also reported of the Saracens neere Mecca, which gouernment of Mecca, both *Beniamin* and *Salmanticensis* [g] adioyne to that of Aliman, or the Kingdome of Saba: for so, saith he, the Iewes in those parts still call the chiefe Citie of that Kingdome.) It hath store of Riuers, Lakes, Townes, Cities, Cattell, fruits of many sorts. The chiefe Cities are Medina, Mecca, Ziden, Zebit, Aden. *Beniamin* addeth Theima, or Theman, a Citie walled fifteene miles square, enclosing ground for tillage in the walls. Tilmaas also, Chibar and others. There is store of siluer, gold, and varietie of gemmes. There are also wilde beasts of diuers kindes. As for the Phœnix, because I (and not I alone) thinke it a fable, as neither agreeing to reason nor likelihood, and plainly disagreeing to the Historie of the *Creation*, and of *Noahs* Arke, in both which God made all Male and Female, and cõmanded them to increase and multiply, I thinke it not worthy recitall. One wonder of Nature done in Abisa Citie of this Region, will not, I thinke, bee distastfull: cited by *Photius* out of *Diodorus Siculus*, written in some part of his workes which is now wanting. One *Diophantus* a Macedonian being married to an Arabian woman in that Citie Abis, had by her daughter

z *Obser.* l. 2. c. 10. & d.

a *Moses Narbonens.* writeth that he obserued in the stones of Sinai a bush or bramble figured, whereof some thinke Sinai is named of *Seneh*, which signifieth a bush. *Drusius* pag. 343. 269.

b Of this see more *I.* 7. c. 11.

c *Magnus Dom. Negot. Com. Asiæ. l.* 6.

d *Adrich* saith, it is now called Mamorta.

e *Cap. Dunton* (which traded a little while since in the Red Sea) calls it *Yeman*.

f *Vid. Drus. pract. p.* 32. 33.

Rhodoman. calls her Ἀβισσηνία.

Step. de vrb.

Beniam. Itiner.

g *Tuchosin. pag.* 2. *Beniam. pag.* 61. *Mecca in terra Æthiman sita.*

Phot. Bibliothec. 244.

daughter called *Herais*, which in ripe age was married to one *Samiades*, who hauing liued a yeere with her, did after trauell into farre Countries. In the meane time, his wife was troubled with an vncouth and strange disease: A swelling arose about the bottome of her belly, which on the seuenth day breaking, there proceeded thence those parts whereby Nature distinguisheth men from the other sexe: which secrets shee kept secret notwithstanding, continuing her womans habit till the returne of her husband. Who then demanding the companie and dutie of his wife, was repelled by her father, for which he sued him before the Iudges, where *Herais* was forced to shew that which before her modestie had forbidden her to tell: and afterwards naming himselfe *Diophantus*, serued the King in his warres, with the habite, and heart of a man, and leauing her feminine weaknesse, as it seemed, to her husband, who in the impatience of his loue slue himselfe. Our Author addeth also, that by the helpe of the Physicians, such perfection was added to this worke of Nature, that nothing remained to testifie her had beene a woman: he annexeth also like examples in some others.

g *Lud. Vertum. l.1.c.7.*

Ludouicus Vertomannus, or *Barthema* (as *Ramusius* nameth him) tells g at large his iourney through all this threefold Arabia: he trauelled from Damasco to Mecca *Anno* 1503. with the *Carauan* of Pilgrimes and Marchants, being often by the way set vpon by Armies of those Theeuish and Beggerly Arabians. This iourney is of fortie dayes trauell, trauelling two and twentie houres, and resting two for their repast. After many dayes they came to a Mountaine inhabited with Iewes, h ten or twelue miles in circuit, which went naked, and were of small stature about fiue or sixe spannes high, black of colour, circumcised, speaking with a wominish voice. And if they get a Moore in their power, they slay him a liue. They saw there certaine white thornes, and in the same two Turtles, which seemed to them as a miracle: for in fifteene daies and nights they had neither seene Birds nor Beasts. They giue their Camells by the way not aboue fiue Barly loaues at a meale, as bigge as a Pomegranate, and drinke once in three dayes. At the end of eight dayes they flayed a day or two to rest them. Their Pilot directed their iourney by the Compasse (in *Diodorus* times, they obserued the North-starre) no lesse then if it had beene at Sea. They trauelled fiue dayes and nights through the sandie Sea, which is a great plaine Champaine, full of a small white sand-like meale: where if, by some disaster, the winde blow from the South, they ate all dead men. And although they had the winde at North, yet could they not see one another aboue ten paces off. And such as tide on Camels, are inclosed with wood, with holes to receiue the aire; the Pilots going before with their Compasse for direction. Many dyed there for thirst, and many with tulnesse, drinking too much when once they came at water. When the North windes blow, those sands are driuen to a heape. He supposed that i *Mummia* was made of such as the sands had surprised and buried quicke: but the truer *Mummia* is made of embalmed bodies of men, as they vie to doe in Egypt, and other places. For I haue read, not onely of Women, but Infants also, (which were not likely to take such dangerous iourneys) whose bodies haue beene thus vsed to *Mummia*. As for the other parts of Arabia, they which list, may by this our Author, by *Plinie*, *Niger*, and others be informed further. The like iourney to this of *Barthemas*, is related by diuers latter Trauellers, *Monsieur de Monface*, *Anno* 1608. went with a Carauan of 10000. from Alleppo to Bagdat. Their trauell (he sayth) was all by night, a swell to auoide the vehement heate of the day, as to be guided by the starre. Their guides call themselues Pilots. They trauelled thirty dayes till they came to *Nane*, where they take water vpon Euphrates. They saw no beasts but Asses, Roes and Gazels (a kinde of wilde Goates) and Stagges innumerable, so wilde, that they often ranne through the Carauan: No fowles but Pigeons, which nestle in the ruines of olde Townes, sometimes inhabited, where also they made vse of olde welles, otherwise hauing no water but what they carryed in Borachoes made of whole Goates skinnes. There can bee no path, by reason of the continuall motion of the sand by the wind. Their King hath 100000. horsemen subiect to him (gallant horse, men almost naked) himselfe subiect to the Turke.

h *Beniamin* tells of many Iewes in the Arabian Mountaines, subiect to no Potentate, as it seemeth of these.

i *Iul. Scaliger. Exerc* 104. *& Ios. Scal. Ep. ad Casab. Lib. ad Chyer. Aegypt Mis.*

To come to the disposition of the people, they are small, naked, beggerly. What they haue done in Asia, Afrike, and Europe by force of Armes, vnder the name of Saracens and pretence of Religion, shall follow in the next Chapter: What they still doe, if they meete with purchase, Trauellers know to their cost. Vsually Arabians are reckoned eyther Marchants or Theeues: the one hauing certaine habitations, or else trading abroad. *Strabo*, *Plinie*, and *Solinus* admire their wealth, as selling much to others, and buying nothing, thus treasuring vp the wealth of the East and West, the Parthians and Romanes. Their Marchandize was golde, siluer, frankincense, with other spices. Their golde by *Diodorus* testimony was often found in whole pieces, pure and shining, so that it gaue splendor and lustre to the gemmes inclosed therein: whence happily that of the Psalme, *To him shall beeginen of*

Plin. 6.28. Sol. c.48. Strab. l.16. Diod. l.3.c.12. Psal.72. Vid. Petr. Aldrete Antig. l.2.

of the gold of Arabia. The ancient practice of Marchandise among some of the Arabian people, and namely, the Ismaelites, the [k] Scripture recorderh. For their ancient *Religion*, it is not like it could be good, when as they had so bad an Author of their stocke, *accurseth Cham*: the sonnes of *Abraham* were better instructed; but as they were borne *after the Flesh*, and not according *to promise*, so if they and some of their posterrie did a while hold the *Truth*, (as the History of *Iob* and his friends cuiuteth) yet this lasted not long; but soone after *in Iewrie was God knowne, and hee dealt not so with any other Nation*. *Herodotus* [m] (Father of the Greeke History) affirmeth in his *Thalia*, that the Arabians worshipped *Dyonisius*, whom they named *Vrotalt*; and *Vrania*, whom they called *Allat*; these alone they esteemed gods. They shaue their Maidens like to *Dionysius*, in a round forme about the temples. *Suidas* telleth [n] that they were excellent Archers, their Arrowes were as long as themselues: their Bowes they bent not with hands, but with feet.

Curio [o] in his Saracenicall History testifieth of them, that as they descended in great part of *Abrahams* race by *Ismael*, the sonnes of *Keturah*, and by *Esau*: so they of old had, and still retaine many rites obserued by the Hebrewes; as numbring by Tribes, and marrying onely within their owne Tribe; euery Tribe also had their owne King (which it seemeth the *Tent-wandring*, or *Scenite Arabians* obserue still.) That sonne succeeded not which is eldest, but hee which is borne first, after hee is proclaimed King or Ruler, being of Noble race on both sides. They vsed also Circumcision. For their Religion in old times; some were Christians, of which (about the times of *Mahomet*) there were many Sects; some were Iewes; others worshipped the Sunne and Moone; others, certaine Serpents; others, some kindes of Trees; and some a Tower called *Alcaba*, which they supposed *Ismael* had built; and some others, some other Deities. [p] *Clemens Alexandrinus* obiecteth to the ancient Scythians the worship of a Sword, to the Persians the like deuotion to a Riuer, adding, that the Arabians worshipped a Stone. [q] *Arnobius* hath also the same Testimony, explaining that stone to be rude and vnformed: a fit Deitie for rude, stony, senseless worshippers.

Eusebius [r] tells that they vsed humane sacrifices, which not onely *Sardus* confirmeth, saying, that they sacrificed euery yeere a child, whom they buried vnder the Altar: but *Nicephorus* [s] also reported of one *Naaman a Scheniteo-Arabian*, a Chiefetaine amongst them, who in zeale of that superstition, killed men with his owne hands; and sacrificed them on the Altars to his gods: In the time of *Mauricius*, warned by a vision, became a Christian, and with him an innumerable company of his, whom hee offered a liuing, vnbloudie sacrifice in Baptisme vnto Christ.

When they entred league with any, their manner was, that one standing in the midst betweene both parties, did wound the hand with a sharpe stone, in the palme neere to the thumbes of them both, and taking flockes of the garments of them both, anointed with that blood seuen stones set in the midst of them: Meane while inuoking *Dionysius* and *Vrania*: and then this Mediator becommeth suretie for the partie, who thereby esteemeth himselfe bound to obserue it. And this did [t] they make league with *Cambyses*. To these two Arabian gods, Great *Alexander* would haue added himselfe a third (saith [u] *Arrianus*, in his life.) He made great prouision to inuade them, both because they had sent him no Embassage, and for that they worshipped onely these two Deities; *Heauen*, for that it containeth the Sun and Stars; and *Dionysius*, because he had inuaded the Indians: and therefore equalling this his owne expedition to that of *Dionysius*, hee would also for robbing of men, bee reckoned a god. *Strabo* [x] saith, that inrespect of the wealthinesse of this Countrey, he had thought (had not death preuented him) to haue made Arabia the Imperiall seat. Hee affirmeth also that *Sesostris* the Egyptian King, passing through Arabia, in that his renowmed expedition, erected there in diuers places Egyptian Temples and superstitions: that the Troglodytæ which dwelt in Caues, and bordering on the Egyptians, by some reputed Arabians, were circumcised as the Arabians and Egyptians were. The Arabians by testimony both of old and late Writers are accounted no warlike people. *Virgil* sings of them, *Molles sua thura Sabæi*. In elder and later times they were gouerned by their *Phylarchi*, [y] or heads of the Tribe or Linage. They take Tributes and Customes accordingly, rather by a robbing force, then ciuill forme; making their will their law. On the one side of Euphrates, they acknowledge some obedience to the Turkes, such as it is; On the other side not so much, as appeares by the passage downe Euphrates, recorded by *Gasparo Balbi*, *William Parry*, and others, in some places paying a Custome, in others like to bee robbed of all. The ancient Arabians which dwelt in the Cities, are said to haue in each Citie a Prince, faire houses and Temples after the Egyptian manner: and then *Strabo* saith, Arabia Felix was diuided into fiue Kingdomes.

The Nabbathæans worship the *Sunne*, burning Frankincense on an Altar vnto him. They neglect the bodies of the Dead, burying euen their Kings in a dung-hill. Of the other Arabians hee reporteth, that they vsed incestuous copulation with Sister and Mother. Adultery with

k *Gen.* 37. 28. *Exod.* 27.

l *Psal.* 76. 1. & 147. 20.

m *Herodot. l.* 3.

n *Suid. Hist.*

o *Gulielmus Aug. Curio Hist. Sar. lib.* 1.

p *Clem. Alex. Paræn.*

q *Arnob. l.* 6.

r *Euseb. de laudib. Constant. Sardus. l.* 3. *c.* 15.

s *Niceph. Hist. Eccle. l.* 18. *c.* 23.

t *Herod. l.* 3.

u *Arrian. l.* 7.

x *Strabo l.* 15.

Circumcision in Arabia.

y *Am. Mar. Cellin.*

with them is death: but that onely is Adultery, which is out of the same Kindred, otherwise all of the same bloud to vse the same woman is their (incestuous) honestie. When fifteen brothers (Kings Sons) had by their continuall company tyred their owne and only sister, she deuised a meanes to rid her selfe, or at least to ease her some what of that trouble. And therfore whereas the custome was, that he which went in, left his staffe at the doore to prohibite others entrance, shee got like staues, and alway hauing one at the doore, was disburthened of their importunitie; euery one that came, thinking some other had beene there before them. But they being once altogether, one of them stole from his fellowes, and finding this staffe at the doore, accused his sister to his father of adultery, whereof by discouery of the Truth shee was cleered. *Linschoten* [7] telleth of the like practice obserued by the *Nairos* in Cochin, leauing their Armes at the doore, when they enter to their *Nairo*-Kinswomen, which they vse likewise in common, being neuer married.

[7] *Linschoten*, History of the Indies.

Their Circumcision they obserued, as [a] some write, at the thirteenth yeere of their age, imitating *Ismael* herein. Euery one abideth in his Fathers profession. The possessions and wealth are common to the whole kindred. *Alexander ab Alexando* nameth *Dysares* an Arabian Deitie. Their Priests hee saith were attired in linnen garments, with Mitres and Sandals. [b] *Solinus* affirmeth, that they abstaine from Swines flesh: neither will that sweet aire of Arabia breathe life to that sordid and stinking creature. This is the *Hoppo Arabia*, where happinesse maketh them vnhappy: their sweets [c] breeding bitter effects in diseasing their bodies, which they are forced to cure with the sents of Brimstone, and Goats beards burnt. That which others admire, and almost adore for rarenesse and excellencie, is here there common fuell for their fire: [d] *Vulcans* deuouring fawes being fed with heathes, shrubs, trees, gummes, spices, for humane and diuine vses most esteemed.

[a] *Drusius in Solin.*

[b] *Sol. Polyhist.*

[c] *Strab. l. 16.*

[d] *D. Sic. l. 3.*

Frankincense (saith [e] *Plinie*) groweth onely in *Arabia*, but not in euery place thereof. About the midst of the Countrey is Sabota (the chiefe Citie of the Sabæans) in a hie Mountaine: eight Mansions from thence is the Region of Frankincense, which is called Sabba, that is, a mystery: looking toward the East, euery way guarded and made vnpassable with Rockes. The soyle is Reddish, inclining to white. The length of the Frankincense-wood is twentie *schœni*, the breadth halfe as much; (a *scœnus* in this account is fiue miles.) Other Arabians besides these and the Mingæi see not this tree, nor all of these, but onely some three hundred Families, vnto whom the right of these Rites deuolueth by succession. Therefore they are called *Sacri*, Holy, neither may they in the time, when they cut them, bee polluted with knowledge of Women or with Funerals. What manner of tree it is, *Plinie* saith he knew not, nor any Roman to his knowledge. They gathered it in the Spring and Autumne; they cut the trees from whence it sweateth. There needes no watch to keepe them, but the innocencie of the Inhabitants. When *Alexander* in his youth bestowed large store of Frankincense in his deuotions, *Leonides* his Master told him, hee should so doe when he had conquered the Countrey where it grew: Hee after enioying (some part of) Arabia, sent him a ship laden with Frankincense, and bade him serue the gods plentifully. The Frankincense, when it is gathered, is carried on Camels to Sabota by one way, out of which to goe were capitall. There they pay the tythes to a god which they call *Sabis*. The Priests take it by measure, not by weight. Certaine portions are allowed to them and to the Kings Scribes. *Plautus* therefore [f] calls it Frankincense *Odor Arabicus*. *Virgil* calls it *Panchæan*, and *Sabæan* Frankincense. The manifold Rites which the Heathens vsed in their holy things with this drug, *Struckius* [g] sheweth at large. Here also grew the Myrrhe in the same woods, and among the Troglodits. But this and Cinamon, and other things which grew elsewhere as well as here, need not much discourse. They vsed yet some Religion in gathering of their Cinamon, as [h] some obserue, sacrificing before they began, and after diuiding what they had gathered, with a sacred speare assigning a portion to the Sunne: if the diuision be iustly made, the Sun seateth his consent by fire, with his beames consuming the same. Thus much of their Spices, and holy drugs.

[e] *Pl. in Panult & in Millie.*

[f] *Plautus de sacris.*

[g] *Struckius de sacris.*

[h] *Ioan. Baemus.*

Of their other riches I meane not to speake, saue of their sheepe with great tayles, some of which weigh fortie pound. These kinde of sheepe are common through Africa, euen to the Cape of Good Hope, neere to which, at Soldania, our men haue bought many for little pieces of old iron. [i] *Leo* saith, he saw one at Cairo, whose tayle, supported by a Cart with wheeles (for else she could not haue carried it) weighed fourescore pound, and heard of such as weighed a hundred and thirtie pound. [k] *Paul*, presently after his conuersion, preached the Gospel in Arabia.

[i] *Leo Africanus.*

[k] *Gal. 1. 17.*

Panchæa, and another Iland, called Sacra, are adioyned by [l] *Diodorus* to Arabia, both fertile (as hee saith) of Frankincense. In Panchæa is the Citie Panara, whose Inhabitants are called the Ministers of *Iupiter Trophilus*, whose Temple is thence distant threescore furlongs, admirable for Antiquitie, Magnificence and nature of the place, it is two hundred foot long,

[l] *Diod. Sic. l. 6. cap. 10.*

long, the bredth answerable, hauling in it large Statues; and about it the houses of the Priests. Many fountaines there springing make a nauigable streame, called *the water of the Sunne*, which is medicinable to the bodie. The Countrey about, for the space of two hundred furlongs, is consecrated to the gods, and the reuenue thereof spent in Sacrifices. Beyond is a high mountaine, called the seate of heauen, and *Olympus Triphylius*: where *Cælus* is said to haue instituted the Rites there yeerely obserued. The Priests rule all in Panchæa, both in ciuill and religious cases: and liue very deliciously, attired with linnen Stoales and Mitres, and party-coloured Sandals. These spend their time in singing Hymnes, and recounting the acts of their gods. They deriue their generation from the Cretan *Iupiter*. [l] They may not goe out of their sacred limits assigned them, if they doe, it is lawfull to kill them. The Temple is enriched with gifts and offerings. The doores excell for matter and workemanship. The bed of the god is six Cubits long, and foure broad, all of gold faire wrought. The Table stands by, nothing inferiour. In the middest is another bed of gold, very large, grauen with Ægyptian letters; in which are contained the gests of *Iupiter*, *Cælus*, *Diana*, and *Apollo*, written by *Mercurie*. Thus fatre *Diodorus*. *Iustine* [m] mentioneth *Hieromus* an Arabian King, which had six hundred children by Concubines. Some [n] are of opinion that the *Wise-men*, which by the ancient conduct of a *Starre came to Ierusalem*, (the first fruites of the Gentiles) came out of Arabia. *Scaliger* [o] mentioneth a conquest anciently made and holden by the Arabians in Chaldæa. *Philostratus* [p] saith, the Arabians are skilfull in Auguries, or Diuinations, because they eate of the head and heart of a Dragon, That they eate Serpents, *Solinus* affirmeth. *Athenæus* [q] saith, That the Arabians vsed to maime themselues, if their King hapned to bee maimed, and that in the same member: and in [r] another place hee citeth out of *Heraclides Cumæus*, the delicacies of this Arabian King, and his quiet or idle course of life, committing matters of iudgement to Officers: and if any think e himselfe wronged by them, hee pulls a chaine fastned to a window in the highest part of the Palace: Whereupon the King takes the matter into his hand, and whether part hee findeth guiltie, dyeth for it. His expences were fifteene Babylonian Talents a day. The Arabians kill [s] Mice, as a certaine supposed enemy to the gods, a custome common to them with the Persians and Æthiopians. The [t] women couer their faces, contented to see with one eye, rather then to prostitute the whole face. They kill not vipers, but scarre them away with Clappers from their Balsame-trees, saith [u] *Pausanias*, when they gather that commoditie, because they thinke them consecrated to those Balsame-trees, vnder which they liue and feed of that liquor, with which also they cure themselues if they are bitten of them.

The Arabike tongue is now the common language of the East, especially among such as embrace the Mahumetan Religion: this language in the first diuision of tongues, according to [x] *Epiphanius*, was begun in *Armot*, the first speaker and Author thereof. It is now the most vniuersall in the world, as *Bibliander*, *Postellus*, *Scaliger*, *Aldrete*, and *Claude Duret* in his late Historie *del Origine des Langues de cest vniuers*, doe proue at large; from the Herculean pillars to the Molluccas, and from the Tartars and many Turkes in Europe, vnto the Æthiopians in Afrike, extending it selfe; which was neuer granted to any other language, since that first confusion and babbling at Babel.

l *Eadem scribit Euseb. de præpar. Euang. lib. 2.*

m *Iustin. hist. lib. 39.*

n *Gramey Ass. Arab.*

o *Ios. Scal. Can. Isag. lib. 2.*

p *Philost. de vita Apol. 1.*

q *Athenæus l. 66 cap. 6.*

r *Ath. l. 12. c. 4.*

s *Plutarch. de Iuuid. & odio.*

t *Tertul. de veland. Virg.*

u *Pausanias Bœotica.*

x *Epiph. cont. Sethian.*

CHAP. II.

Of the Saracene Name, Nation, and proceeding in Armes: and the succession of their Chalifaes.

§. I.

Of the Saracens before MAHOMETS *dayes.*

THE Arabians are distinguished by many sir-names; the chiefe whereof (saith [a] *Scaliger*) are the Hagarens (so called of *Hagar* the hand-maid of *Sara*) whom the Arabians call *Erabelhagiari*, and *Elmuggarin*; and the Saracens, still called by their neighbours *Essaraè*, that is, theeuish. The Hagarens were more ciuill, whose chiefe hold was Petra, and their Princes were all entitulled *Arete*, as the Egyptians *Ptolomæi*: *Hieronie* in many places affirmeth, that the Ismaelites, and Hagarens are the same which now are called Saracens: so in his Commentarie on the second of *Ieremie*, Cedar (saith [b] he) is *the Region of the desart inuiron of the Ismaelites*

a *Scal. E.T. l. 2. c. 3. p. 96.*

b *Idem in Ier. 2. c. 10. E. 42. & alibi.*

maelites, whom now they call Saracens. And on the twentie fiue of *Ezekiel, the Madianites, Ismaelites, and Agarens, are now called Saracens.* And on *Esay* twentie one, he extendeth their desart from India to Mauritania, and to the Atlantike Ocean. [c] *Epiphanius* likewise affirmeth, That the Hagarens and Ismaelites in his time were called Saracens.

Plinie [d] mentioneth that the Saracens; placing them neere to the Nabathæans. *Ptolemey* [e] likewise nameth the Scenites, so called of their tents, which with themselues, their flockes, and substance, they remoued vp and downe from place to place. Posteritie hath called all these Tent-wanderers (saith [f] *Scaliger* out of *Ammianus Marcellinus*) *Saracens*: and so doth *Ptolemey* in the next words call the next adioyning people, seating them in the Northerly bounds of Arabia *Fœlix*. In the same Chapter he setteth downe *Saraca*, the name of an Arabian Citie. 6 Some Authors haue written, that because *Ismael* was sonne of *Hagar* a bondwoman, his niece posteritie haue disclaimed that descent, and deriued their pedegreee, and name from *Sara*: *Peruersonomine, saith Hierome, assumentes sibi nomen Saræ, quòd scilicet de ingenua & domina videantur esse generati. Iosephus Scaliger*, in his Annotations vpon *Eusebius* Chronicle, after that hee hath cited the former testimony of *Ammianus*, and of *Onkelos* on the thirtie seuen of *Genesis*, addeth the authoritie of *Stephanus*; who affirmeth *Saraka* to bee a Region of Arabia, neere the Nabathæans, of which hee thinketh that the *Saracens* borrowed their name. *Wee know* (saith *Scaliger*) *that the Arabian Nomades are so called; for* SARAK *in Arabike soundeth as much, that is,* (*furaces & κηρτικοὺς*) *theeuish or robbers, such as the Cosak-Tartars, bordering on the Turkes, the Bandoliers in the Pyrenean hills* (and the Borderers some times between England and Scotland.) *De Sara, periculum: To call them Saracens of* SARA, *is ridiculous: for then either they must bee called* SARARI, *or shee* SARACA. Mr. *Brerewood* saith that *Sarra* signifies a Desart, and *Shakan* to inhabit, in the *Arabike*: and therefore as they are called *Scenites* of their Tents; so might they also of the Desarts their not habited habitation be called *Saracens*. Booke of *Lang. c.* 13. And *Erpenius* saith, that this name is vnknowne to themselues, but all the *Muhammedans* generally call themselues *Muslimos*, or *Mosleman*, which signifieth *Beleeuers*, as if all else were Infidells or Heretikes. [h] *Marcellinus* thus writeth of them; this people stretcheth from the Assyrians to the falls of Nilus: all warriours, half naked, in coloured jackes. None ploweth or planteth, but they wander vp and downe without houses or lawes; their life being alwayes in flight. Their wiues they hire & couenant with for a time: which breed child in one place, and bring forth in another, and neuer rest. Their food is Venison, Milke, Hearbes, and such Fowles as they can take: the most that wee haue seene, know not the vse of Wheat or Wine. Like Kites they snatch their prey, but stay not by it whether they winne or lose. They are such, as the Romanes need neuer wish them their friends or their enemies. In the time of *Iulian* [i] they made our rodes and spoyles on the Roman Prouinces, be cause they were denied their wonted stipends by *Iulian*, who told them tha hee had better store of iron then gold. Saint [k] *Hierome* interpreteth that Prophesie concerning *Ismael*, *That hee should be a wilde man, his hand against euery one, and euery mans hand against him*, of this robbing, rouing, roguing life of his posteritie: *Significat semen eius habitaturum in eremo, id est, Saracenos vagos incertisque sedibus, qui vniuersæ gentes quibus desertum ex latere iungitur, incursant, impugnantur ab omnibus.* In his second Booke against *Iouinian*, hee testifieth that their food was the milke and flesh of Camels, a creature easily bred in those barren desarts: but they thought it vnlawfull to eate swine flesh, and that swine were seldome, or not at all found among them. The Prophet [l] *Ieremy* reckoneth their Tents Camels, and Flockes, as their greatest wealth, in that his Prophesie of their destruction by *Nabuchodonosor*.

This name *Saracene* may well befit that course of life which they embraced. In the more Southerly parts of Arabia, they are more ciuill and rich, dwelling in Cities, and haue quicke trade, which all are wanting about Medina and Mecca, places so renowmed by the life and death of *Mahomet* [m]. Neither doth it seeme probable, that those which are called Agarens in the continued succession of so many ages, as appeareth, 1. *Chron.* 5. 10. and *Psalm.* 83. 6. would after grow ashamed of that: or that *Ismael*, which *derided the hopes conceiued of* ISAAC *the sonne of* SARA, would nourish his posteritie in the same hope, or leaue them any honourable memory of SARA, who had reiected him together with his mother. Yea, and their owne superstitious Legend proueth the contrary, as shall appeare in the next Chapter.

For their Religion in old times, One saith, [n] That the Saracens adore the Starre of *Venus*, and in their praying cry, *Alla, oua, cubar* [o], that is, God, and *Venus*. *Ioannes Meursius* noteth thereon, That they worshipped the Image of *Venus*, set on a great stone, on which they beleeue, that *Abraham* lay with *Hagar*, or else that hee tied his Camell thereunto while hee was sacrificing *Isaac*. [p] *Scaliger* calleth her *Chubar* and *Chobar*, and saith that neither Circumcision, nor the Friday Sabbath, were of *Mahomets* institution, but of ancient

c *Epiph. ad her. lib.* 1.
d *Lib.* 6. *c.* 28.
e *Geograph. lib.* 6. *cap.* 7.
f *Scenitæ Arabas quos Saracenos nunc appellarunt. A. M. Marc.*
g *Rosinus, Cur. 2, alg.*
h *Am. Mar. lib.* 14.
i *Lib.* 25.
k *Hierom. Trad. heb. in Genesim.*
l *Ierem.* 49. 28. *Vid. Hieron. in loc.* 21.
m Or *Mahammed.*
n *Constantinopolitanus, de admin. Imp. cap.* 15.
o *Rubruquis* calleth it *Χαβὰρ.*
p *Scal. Ex. N. 75.*

ancient time both those rites had beene vsed by the Arabians, and left by him as hee found them. q *Herodotus* testifieth that the Arabians worshipped *Alilat*, which is the Moone; for still they call the Moone newly horned *Helal*: and the Turkes and Saracens salute the new Moone at her first appearance, with a kind of veneration. In *Sylburgius* his *Saracenica*, is reported, that the Saracens, till the time of *Heraclius*, worshipped the Morning-starre and *Venus*, which they called *Chabar*, that is, r *Great*. *Cedrenus* also affirmeth this to bee an ancient superstition of the Arabians, in worship of *Venus*, whose Starre they say is *Lucifer* the Morning Starre, which for the greatnesse they call in their language *Chabar* to this day (saith hee) ἣν Ἀφροδίτην θεὸν ὀνομάζουσι, naming VENVS a god. For proofe whereof wee will vnfold a great mysterie of theirs. The workes of their profane prayer are, ἀλλὰ ἀλλὰ, ὦ κύριε, ἀλλὰ. *Alla, alla*, signifieth GOD, GOD, *Ona* greater, *Chabar* great, or *Luna*, and *Venus*, that is, GOD is the greater GOD, and *Venus* a great god. And certaine both in earth and in their Paradise, their chiefe deuotions seeme still to hold of *Venus*. In the beginning of the Spring, and in the beginning of Autumne, the Sunne entering into *Aries* and *Libra*, the Arabians vsed (which they had borrowed from the *Zechians* and *Albiarachuma*, people of India) to cast stones vpon heapes, being naked and bareheaded, with great cries, and going about their Idols, kissing the corners in honour of their gods. This they vsed at Mecca in honour of *Venus*: and therefore in that solemnitie did they cast stones vnder their priuities, because those parts were vnder her dominion. Onely whereas nakednesse was immodest, some ordained that they should bind a cloth about their reines. This *Mahomet* found before his time, and did not reiect, as hee did some Idolatrous Rites; but in their pilgrimage Rites they still obserue it. Properly they called the morning Starre *Chobar* or *Chubar*: but as the Phœnician *Astarte* was with them in their confused worship, both *Iuno*, *Venus*, and the Moone: So they intended the like in this Arabian deitie. For as *Orania*, and *Alilat*, and *Venus*, were the same, as *Herodotus* auerreth: so the same confusion of deuotion was in Arabia, as well as in their neighbour-countrey, Phœnicia. Their Circumcision, it seemeth, came from *Ismael* and the rest of *Abrahams* sons of old: their Friday-sabbath from this *Chubar*-deuotion: both before *Mahomets* time, as was also the abstinence from Swines-flesh, as we before haue obserued out of Saint s *Hierome*, who also mentioneth this their worship of *Chobar*, so interpreting those words of *Amos*, *The Starre of your God*, that is, saith hee, *Chobar*, or *Lucifer*, *which the Saracens still worship to this day*.

q Herod. lib. 3.

r *Arabi nob. ap. Vincent. bellar. lib. 24.*

s *Hieron. in Amos 5.*

And in the life of *Hilarion*, hee telleth, that *Hilarion* passing thorow the Desart, came to a Citie or Towne called Elusa, on that very day whereon their Annuall solemnitie had gathered all the people into the Temple of *Venus*, for they worship her (for the Morning-Starre, to the worship whereof the Saracen Nation is addicted.) These hearing that *Hilarion* passed by, who had before cured many of them, came flocking about him with their wiues and children, crying in Syriake, *Barab*; that is *Blesse vs*. Hee in courteous and milde words, perswaded them rather to worship the liuing God, then those stones; promising, if they would beleeue in Christ, hee would visite them oftner. Maruellous was the grace of God: they suffered him not thence to depart, before hee had laid the line for building of a Church; and their Priest, crowned as hee was, was marked with the signe of Christ. Thus farre *Hierome*.

Some t of the *Arabians* dwell in Cities, some in the Desarts: those better ciuilized & fit for Arts; these which inhabit the Desarts are called *Bedaune* or *Bedouis*, that is, the people of the Desart; exceed in numbers, and wander without houses, vsing tents made of Cotton wooll, or of Goats and Camels haire, alway mouing and remouing as water and pasture mooue them, carrying their wiues, children, and vtensils on their Camels. Their horses are leane, little, swift, laborious, bold, and the horse-men actiue beyond beleefe, darting and catching with their hand the same Dart in the horses swiftest race before it commeth at the ground; and auoiding a Dart throwne at them by sleightie winding vnder the horses sides or belly: also taking vp weapons lying on the ground whiles the horse is running, and in like swift race, hit the smallest marke with Arrow or Sling. Their armes are Arrowes, Iauelins with iron heads, swords, (which they vse not to thrusts, but strokes) Daggers, Slings, and vse the same in aduerse fight, or in auerse flight. They lie in wait for Cartauans, prey vpon trauellers, liue at rapine and spoile, and often make themselues the Great Turkes Receiuers and Treasurers; and raise new Imposts on all such as they can enforce, whether Trauellers or Cities; obeying neither the *Ottoman* nor any other Soueraigne, but being diuided in innumerable Families, obey the heads of their owne Families or Tribes. These Tribes are distinguished by the Names of their first Parents, as *Abi-Helal*, *Abi-Risce*, *Abi-Zaid*, and six hundred others, all esteemed and saluted gentle, and equall in rights. Their food is browne bread, new and sowre milke, cheese, goats, and camels flesh, pulse, hony, oile and butter.

t *Gabriel Sionita & Ioan. Hesronita.* *Bedouis or Bedaunes actuity.*

Their Tribes or Families.

Their Food.

Foolish and blasphemous traditions.

Rice is esteemed a great delicacie, by reason of their Tradition that it came of *Mahomet*; sweat. For say they, when *Mahomet* compassed the Throne of God in Paradise, God turned and looked on him, which made the modest Prophet sweat, and wiping it off with his finger, six drops fell out of Paradise: one whereof produced the Rose, the second Rice, the other foure his foure associates. They vse a certaine hodge-podge or frumentie of boiled wheat laid after a drying in the Sun, then beaten & boiled with fat flesh til the flesh be consumed. This they call *Herose*, & say that *Gabriel* the Angel taught it *Mahomet* for the strengthning his reines; whereby one night he fought against fortie men, and in another had fortie times carnal dealing with women. These might seem calumnies, deuised by some *Mahometan* aduersarie, if the former author (both learned in and zealous of the law of *Mohamed*) had not related the same in a chapter *of the choise of meats. Mohamed* or *Mahomet* commended also the eating of gourds of the *Melongene*, affirming, that hee had seene this plant in Paradise, and measured the quantitie of mens wits by their eating store hereof. When he was once in prison (saith *Ben-fidi-Ali*) the Angell *Gabriel* came downe from heauen, and carried him in *Gennet Elenaam*, or the Garden of Pleasures, where amongst others he saw this shrub, and he asking why it grew there, the Angell answered, because it hath confessed the vnitie of God, and that thou art a true Prophet. Their garments are base, a cotton shirt with very wide sleeues, an vpper garment of woull woven with white and blacke lines of Goats or Camels haire; their feet are bare. Their nobler sort go better clothed and vse shooes, a red lether girdle, a white tulipan of cotton or linnen of few folds. Their women goe almost naked, in a blew smocke of cotton, linnen head tire, and face vaile d. They vse eare-rings, chaines, broochen, and rings of glasse, or other base matter, and die or paint with blew markes made with a needle their cheekes, armes, and lips. Thus much of the *Beduines*.

Melongene.

Their apparel.

§. II.

Of the Saracenicall beginnings and proceedings vnder MAHOMET, *and his successors of the Maraumian race.*

Cedren. Comp. a *Saracen. hist. Curio. l. 1. Dresseri Chron. Boiv. Pirys. Chron. Car. Chron. Sabel. Æn. 8. l. 7 Volaterr. l. 22. Chron. Arab.*

His robbing and roguing people liued in much obscuritie, vntill that darkenesse brought them to light, and a *Religion* newly stamped by *Mahomet*, in a secret and iust iudgement of God, for the contempt of the Truth, was by as new a kind of preaching (*viz.* force of Armes) obtruded on the luke-warme world. For when as *Mahomet*, of whose life followeth a large discourse) had obserued that sicke state of the Empire afflicted with Iewish rebellion, Persian inuasion, and Nestorian infection, besides the securitie of the Head it selfe, *Heraclius* then Emperour: he thought good to take *Occasion* by the *Fore-locke*, and to strike whiles the yron was hot. First, [a] vnder pretence of Religon, hauing inueigled a multitude of Disciples, he made a commotion in Arabia: and being therfore driuen out of Mecca, many of his followers resorted to him: Of whom hee appointed Captaines and Leaders of the rest, *Vbequar, Omar, Oxmen, Alifre, Talaus, Azubenus, Zadimii, Zaedinus*, and *Abroheid*. The Arabians (as some affirme) aided *Heraclius* in his warre against *Cosdroes* the Persian: and after that warre ended, the Arabians complaining for want of pay, the Treasorer answered, that there was scarce sufficient for the Greek and Romane Souldiers, much lesse for that company of Dogs. Whereupon, as long before on like occasion they had rebelled in the reigne of *Iulian*, to now enraged, they departed into Syria, and adioyned themselues vnto *Mahomet*, who euen then after the Persian victorie had obtained (some say) of the Emperour whom he serued in those warres, to himselfe and his followers, a Religion to inhabite; the Emperour so rewarding his exploits in the late warres. *Mahomet* with this supply assailed Mecca, which diuers times before he had in vaine attempted, and tooke it, with other pieces in Arabia, *viz. Hunaim, Ietrip, Tambie, &c.* He afterwards created foure Generalls, whom he called *the foure sharpe swords of* GOD, and commanded them to goe into the foure parts of the world, and to kill all such as would not embrace his Law. These foure were *Ebubezer*, [b] or *Vbequar, Omer, Osmen*, and *Ali. Ebubezer* went into Palestina, but was ouerthrowne by *Theodorus Begarius, Cæsars* Lieutenant. About the same time died *Mahomet*, and this [c] *Ebubezer* succeeded him; although *Mahomet* had designed *Ali* his successour. At his death (saith *Cedrenus*) a Comet appeared thirtie dayes together, at Noone in forme of a sword from the South to the North, foresignifying the Empire of the Arabians. *Eubocara* or *Abubacher* (for diuersly is this *Ebubezer* called) hauing by his might, and the assistance of *Homar* and *Osmen*, obtained to be [d] *Califa*, ouerthrew the Imperiall, and soone after died. *Homar* the next *Califa*, wanne Bosra, the chiefe Citie of Arabia, and all the

Countrie

Countrey as farre as Gabata, and put *Theodorus*, the Emperours brother, to flight. Hee besieged Damascus, and hauing broken the forces that came to reskue it, obtained it: subduing also all Phœnicia. After that, turning his forces into Egypt, *Cyrus* the Bishop of Alexandria staied him, with promise of two hundred thousand pieces of gold for yeerely Tribute. This was disannulled by *Heraclius*, and *Emanuel* the Deputie denied the payment: whereupon entring the second time vnder conduct of *Hamrus*, Egypt was conquered. After two yeeres siege, Ierusalem also was wonne, into which hee entred clothed in a garment of Camels haire, and very homely, professing great sanctitie. Hee built a superstitious Temple, where that of *Salomon* had stood. *Iaidus* one of his Captaines subdued Edessa, and all Mesopotamia. Afterwards placing *Muauias* ouer all the Countries betweene Euphrates and Nilus, he inuaded Persia: where the Persians lost both their King *Hormusdas*, their State, Religion, and Name: of Persians being conuerted into Saracens. This victorious *Homar* made Ierusalem his Royall seat, and while he was praying, was murthered by his seruant.

Oxmen, c the succeeding *Caliph* sent a great Armie into Africa, vnder the leading of *Hucba*: who ouercomming *Gregorius Patritius*, and destroying Carthage, subducd all that Prouince to their Empire; making Tunes the Mother-citie: but soone after transl ted that honour to *Chairoon*, which he built thirtie six miles from the Sea, and a hundred from Tunes. In the third yeere of his raigne *Muauias* the Deputie of Egypt, with a Nauie of seuen hundred, or as others say, of a hundred and seuentie saile, assailed Cyprus, and taking Constantia, wasted the whole Iland: and hauing wintred his Armie at Damascus, the next yeere besieged Arad in Cyprus, and won it, and dispeopled all the Ile. Thence hee inuaded the continent of Asia, and carried away many prisoners: and after in a Sea-fight with *Constans* the Emperour, dyed the Lycian Sea with Christian bloud. Hee wan Rhodes, and sold to a Iew the brazen Colosse or pillar of the Sun, which laded nine hundred Camels, sometimes reckoned one of the worlds seuen wonders, made in twelue yeeres space by *Chares*. After this hee afflicted the Cyclides Ilands in the Archipelago, and then sent his Fleet against Sicilia, where they made spoile with fire and sword, till by *Olympius* they were chased thence. *Muauias* himselfe with an Armie by land entred into Cappadocia; *Iaid* hauing ouer-run all the neighbouring Armenia, vnto the hill Caucasus. But meane while *Oxmen*, besieged in his house by *Ali* his faction, slew himselfe, when hee had liued eightie and seuen yeeres, and raigned twelue. The Saracens could not agree about their new Prince; *Muauia* and f *Ali* with great armies, being Corriuals of that dignitie; and *Ali* being treachetously murthered by *Muauias* meanes, in a Temple neere Cufa, a Citie of Arabia, was there buried, and the place is of him called Masadalle or *Ali* his house: for (if you beleeue the Legend) his corps being laid on a Camell, which was suffered to goe whither hee would, he staid at this place. Of this *Ali* or *Hali*, *Mahomets* Cousin, the Persians deriue their sect, and tell of him many Legendary fables. *Bedwell* calls this place, in his Arabian Trudgman, *Masced Ali*, that is, the Mesqed, Mosque, or Temple of *Ali*. g *Albacem*, the sonne of *Ali* and *Fatima Mahumets* daughter, was by *Muauia* his owne hands crowned, h and by him soone after poysoned. Thus was *Muauia* sole *Caliph*, who granted peace to the Emperour, on condition that hee should pay him euery day i tenne pounds of gold, and a Gentleman-seruant with a horse. Damascus was now made the Seat-Royall. Of which Citie, although wee haue said somewhat in our first booke, yet let vs bee a little beholden to *Beniamin Tudelensis*, to shew vs the Saracenicall face thereof. In his time it was subject to *Noraldine* (as hee termeth him) King of the children of Thogarma, that is, the Turkes. The Citie, saith hee, is great and faire, containing on euery side fifteene miles; by it sliideth the Riuer Pharphar, and watereth their Gardens: k Amana is more familiar, and entreth the Citie, yea, by helpe of Art, in Conduits visiteth their priuate houses; both striuing in emulous contention whether shall adde more pleasure or more profit to the Citie, by *Naaman* therefore in the heate of his indignation preferred before *all the waters of Israel*. But no where is so magnificent a building, saith *Beniamin*, as the Synagogue of the Ismaelites, which is therein: the people call it the Palace of *Beohadad*. There is to be seene a wall of Glasse, built by Art-Magicke, distinguished by holes as many as the yeere hath dayes, and so placed, that euery day the Sunne sideth them fitted in order to his present motion; each hole hauing therein a Diall with twelue degrees, answering to the houres of that day, so that in them is designed both the time of the yeere and of the day. Wit in the Palace are Baths and costly buildings, so rich of gold and siluer as seemeth incredible: I saw there hanging a ribbe of one of the Anakims or Giants, nine Spanish palmes long, and two broad, on the Sepulchre was written the name of *Abchamaz*. After this, in the time of *Tamerlan*, the magnificence of their Temple was not quite extinct, but as is reported, it had some great Porches in the circuite thereof, and within, nine thousand Lamps hanging from the roofe, all of gold and siluer. For the Temples sake at first he spared the Citie, but after, prouoked by their rebellion, he destroyed

c *Othman. 4. A. D. 655.*

f *Hali 5.*

g *Hasen Ben Ali.*

h Some say, he resigned, and he with *Moauia* are reckoned but the sixth Caliph of the Arabians.

i This daily tribute was both ceased &, inserted soone after, when *Abdimelech* made peace with the Emperour, with promise to pay him the like tribute. *P. Diacon.*

k *Historicis Adonis, vt & Plur. Oronter. 2. Reg. 5. 12.*

destroyed it and them. Neither were the walls of Damascus rebuilded, till a certaine Florentine for loue of the Gouernours daughter denying his faith, became Mahumetan, and after that both Gouernour and repairer of the Citie; in the walls engrauing a Lyon, the Armes of Florence. He was honoured after his death with a Moskee, and worshipped after the manner of their Saints, the Saracens visiting his tombe, and (hauing touched the same) stroking their beards with their hands. There did our Author [a] see a large house compassed with high walls, which was inhabited with Catts. The reason forsooth is this: *Mahomet* sometime liuing in this Citie, made much reckoning of a Cat, which he carried in his sleeue, & by lucky tokens from her, ordred his affaires. From this dreame the Mahumetans make so much of Catts, and hold it charitable almes to feede them, thinking that he should prouoke the iudgement of God, which should suffer a Cat to starue. And many of them are found in the shambles begging or buying th. inwards of beasts to nourish Catts: a superstition more likely to descend from the Egyptians, who for the benefit they receiued by Catts in destroying their vermine, of which that Countrey yeelds store, in a Heathenish superstition deified them. But let vs returne to *Muauia*; hee subdued the Sect of *Ali* in Persia, and after inuaded Cilicia, and sent (to aide *Sapores*) a band of Saracens, which afflicted Chalcedon, and sacked Armaria a City of Phrygia; and with a Fleete inuaded Sicill, rooke Siracuse, and carried away with them the riches of Sicilia, and of Rome it selfe, lately fleeced by the Emperour, and here horded. Another Armie of Saracens, ouer-running the Sea-coast of Africa, led away eight hundred thousand prisoners.

Muauia and *Ceiso* on he other side subdued to Muauii, Lydia, and Cilicia; [a] and after, with *Seuus* another Saracen Generall, besieged Constantinople, from Aprill to September, and taking Cizicum, there winted their forces, and in the spring returned to their siege, which they continued seuen yeeres; but by Diuine assistance, and force of tempest, they were chased thence. And *Constantine* slew three hundred thousand Saracens, in a battell (nor long after) against *Susa* the Nephew of *Muauia*, and compelled the Saracens to pay a great tribute. [b] *Iezid* raigned after the death of *Muauia* his father (a better Poet then Souldier) he soone died. Neither did his successours *Marwan* and *Abdalan* liue two yeeres in the roome. [c] *Abdimelec* was chosen *Caliph*, who descended from *Hali*, when as *Abdalan* of the linage of *Eubocara* (the Arabians call this the *Marauanian* race, the other *Abazian*) had possessed himselfe of that title by force, whom *Ciasa* the kinsman of *Abdimelec* ouerthrew. *Ciasa* after this victorie, entring Damatcus, pluckt *Iazid* (one of the former *Caliphs*) out of his graue, burned his bones, and hurled the Ashes into the riuer, and cruelly persecuted all the Marauanian stocke.

Hereupon [d] *Abebramon* one of that house, with a great number of his friends and followers fled into Mauritania Tingitana, where he was welcomed of the Saracens there being, and first intituled himselfe *Miralmumim*, which signifieth *The Prince of Beleeuers*, and then builded [e] Marocco. *Addimolec* hauing other yeres in the fire, neglected this: first, appeasing tumults in his owne state; then ouerthrowing the Emperour in the field: after, receiuing (by treason of the Deputie) Armenia; winning that part of Persia, which yet was subiect to the Romans, and by his forces spoyling Thracia, whiles the Greeks were diuided amongst themselues. Hee also chased the Romane Garrisons out of the coast-Townes which they held in Afrike. *Abdimelec* being dead, [f] *Vlitus* the sonne of *Abedramon* succeeded, vnder whom the Saracens, besides the spoile of Galatia, conquered all Afrike betwixt Niger and the Sea, a little piece excepted at the mouth of the straites, subiect to *Rodericus*, the King of Spaine: *Mucas* was made Lieutenant of the Saracen Empire in Afrike. To him *Iulianus* Earle of Ceptа full of indignation against his Prince, for deflouring his faire daughter *Caba*, about the yeere 712. offereth the conquest of Spaine, if hee would furnish him with some competent forces of his Saracens. This traytor, thus strengthened with the authoritie of this place (being Gouernour of the Ile *Peridis*, and diuers places in Africa and Spaine) backed with his friends, and aided with the Saracens, ouerthrew the Gotish Empire, which had now ruled Spaine about three hundred yeeres: *Rodericus* losing the field and his state, and spending the remnant of his dayes with an Hermite, in a solitarie desart of Lusitania. *Iulianus* himselfe was after slaine by the Saracens, as were the Spanish Traytors; the iust end of vniust treacherie. *Scaliger* out of an Arabian Geographer, calleth that Captaine, *Muses* or *Moses*, son of *Nuzair* of the Marawan stocke, who had with him a valiant Captaine named *Tark* or *Tarik*, of whom the Hill and the Strait is named (as the vulgar pronounce it) *Gibraltar*, properly *Gebal Tarik*, [g] that is, the Hill of Tarik, because hee had shipped ouer his Barbarians thither, and fortified himselfe in that Hill, in the nintieth yeere of the Hegira: which hee did, least his barbarous souldiers should forsake him, and therefore also caused his ships to bee burnt. This *Vlit*, *Quabd*, *Walid*, or *Oelid* (for thus I finde his name diuersified in Authors) besides [h] these his conquests in Afrike and Europe, atchieued by his Captaines great

[a] *Baumgartis. Peregr. l. 3. c. 5. A.D. 1507.* The Egyptians still and Turkes are more charitable to dogs and cats then to men.

[a] About these time another false prophet called *Mesloar*, obtained Persia, and the Arabians were troubled. *P. Diacon. in Iustin.*

[b] *Anno 679. ex Vrb.*

[c] *Abdimelec* sonne of *Marwan Seal. & P. Diacon. in Iustiniano.* d Others call him *Abdul Mumen.*

[e] *Leo* writeth otherwise, as in our sixth Booke shall appeare: he saith Marocco was built in the 404. yeere of their Hegira.

[f] Called of *Leo*, *Quabd*, and of *Scaliger*, *Walid*, *Vlito & Tarik Marqond.*

[g] *Oelid. Scal. E.T. lib. 6. pag. 584. Turquet. Span. Hist. lib. 5.*

[g] M. *Beeuwelin* hi Arab. *Trudg.* saith, it was of the situation: Tarifa signifies the *end or out most bound* of any thing.

[h] *Tarik Mirkond hist. Persic.*

great exploires in Asia; among which, one called *Koteybah Eben Mosselem*, conquered Korasan as farre as Tarquestan, with all the Countrie of Maurenaher and Koarrazin. On the other side *Mosseleima ben Abdel Malek* forced the Græcian Emperour to tribute. Hee also erected many publike buildings, the most famous of which was the Mosque at Damascus. *Osiasge* his Deputie in Karason was so cruell, that he put to dearh above a hundred thousand persons in that Countrey during his gouernment, besides an infinite number slaine in the warre. Hee had thirtie thousand slaues of diuers Nations. This Caliph died, *Anno Dom.* 715. *A. Heg.* 95. after *Mirconds* account. Persia was not yet fully subdued; Gerion and Tarbestan, two Prouinces thereof, were brought vnder in the time of *Soleyman*, *Suleiman*, or as *Curio* calls him *Zuleiminius*, the next [a] Caliph. He sent *Maslimas* with a great power into Thrace, where hauing spoyled the Countrey, he laide siege to [b] Constantinople: *Zuleiminius* his Master assaulting it by Sea, with a Nauie of three thousand Ships, in which siege hee died, *Anno Dom.* 719. *Aumar*, [c] his successour, had no successe in this attempt, partly, through the violence of frost, causing famine and diseases in his Campe, and partly, by force of artificall Glasse, wherewith *Leo* the Emperour cast fire amongst the enemies Fleete, and fiering euen the Seas about the ships: that by this subtilitie & force of tempest, of three thousand saile, fiue ships onely are said to haue escaped. [d] *Gizid*, sent with supply of three hundred and threescore ships, durst not approach for feare of this fire: and the Saracens by their *Caliph* were reuoked, when the plague had slaine in Constantinople three hundred thousand people. In his time *Aly Eben Abas*, one of the descendents of *Abas*, Vncle to *Mahomet*, warred for the Chalifate, challenging it to his stocke. But *Aumar* or *Homar* was poysoned by *Ocbon*, and *Yezid* or *Gizid* succeeded: whose reigne was troubled with the warres of *Aly* aforesaid, still continuing his challenge.

After him *A.* 724. succeeded *Ochon* his brother, which had poysoned *Homar*. Persia had some broiles which he pacified. He being murthered, succeeded *Walid*, or *Euelit* sonne of *Iezid*; in whose time the bottome of the Sea, neere the coasts of Asia *minor*, burned, and sent foorth smoake first, and after, heapes of stones, with which the shores of Asia, Lesbos, and Macedonia were filled, and a new Iland [e] tooke beginning of the heaping together of earth, which was annexed to the Iland called *Sacra*.

The Saracens in Spaine erected amongst themselues many pettie Kingdomes, and by their diuisions made way to *Pelagius*, with some remainder of the Spaniards to recouer some of their lost countrey, who dying in the yeere 732. his sonne *Fasila* succeeded, in whose time the Saracens passed the Pyrenæan Hills into France, where *Theodoricus* the second was then King, but [f] *Charles Martell*, Master of the Kings house, ruled, as did his father in that office before, and his sonne, (both *Pipins*) after him. The Saracens tooke Narbone, and after Burdeaux killing in it, man, woman, and childe, and raising the Temples to the ground; they passed Garunna, and euerturned Angolesme and Bloys, and came into [g] Turon, where *Eudo* the Goth King of a great part of France, in wars with *Martell*, for feare of the common enemy, entred league, and with their ioynt forces slew [h] three hundred and seuentie fiue thousand Saracens; and those of Nauarre slew the rest that escaped, in their returne. But when *Eudo* was dead, *Martell* tooke part of his Kingdome from his sonnes, *Hunoldus* and *Vlisfarus*, who thereupon recalled the Saracens, which vnder the leading of *Atimus* tooke Auenion by the treason of *Mauricius* then Gouernour, from whence, and out of France they were driuen [i] by *Martellus*.

The Saracens made foure inuasions into Thrace while *Euelitus* was Caliph, to whom succeeded, *Anno* 744. [k] *Gizis* the third, who wasted Cyprus, and carried away the people into Syria. After him and [l] *Ices* (which two ruled not two yeeres) *Maruan* taigned; and after, another of the same name, and the Saracens were diuided, *Tobid Dadac*, and *Zuleiminius*, challenged each to himselfe the Soueraignrie: and when all these were ouerthrowne and slaine, *Asmulinus* amongst the Persians raised vp the seruants to murther their masters, and with them he ouerthrew *Iblinus* with one hundred thousand Saracens; and after, *Maruan* himselfe with three hundred thousand, who fleeing into Egypt, was there also vanquished and slaine in a Temple.

This murther grew through the faction of the *Abassian* stocke, who conspired against him, because he had slaine one of their kindred. *Abulabas* the chiefe of this conspiracie, succeeded him, in the [m] yeere 749. and remoued the *Chalphate* to that family from the *Maruanians*, in the yeere of their *Hegeira* 132. after the Arabian computation; as wee follow *Scaliger* herein; and he the Chronicle which *Abraham Zacuthi* gathered out of the Monuments of the Ismaelites. In the former relations, we haue principally followed *Curio* his Saracenical History; though by the way we haue borrowed of others also.

a *Anno.* 717. *Sule.man.*
b *Curio.lib.2.*
c *Wolfgang. Drosbier. Chr. & Omar.*
d *Iezid.*
e *P. Diac. I. &.*
f *Paul. Aemil. lib.2.*
g *Tours.*
h *Scal. E.T. l.6. pag. 584.* saith, that the country people keepe fresh memorie thereof, as if it were lately done. It was *AD.* 725. *Hegire* 106. sixteene yeere after they had inuaded Spaine.
i *Annis.* 735. & 737. & 738.
k *Iezid.*
l *Hisan. Mirkon* calls him *Elwabi m.*
m *Ios. Scal. Can. Is. lib.2. & lib.3*

§. III.

§. III.

Of the Abasian Chalifaes, their Citie Bagadet, with many Persian, Indian, and other occurrences under them.

TARIK MIRKOND writes, that the family of *Abas* had still from the first challenge continued their quarrell, and that *Ocloid*, to satisfie them, had caused the sonnes of *Abdala* (one of the Abasians) to be proclaimed his successours: one of which, *Safa*, in this warre against *Mruuan*, forced him to flee to Mesera, or Cairo in Ægypt, where hee was taken and put to death, and with him eightie persons of the family of *Ben Humia*. They did also breake open their Sepulchers, and burnt the bones, sparing onely one of that line *Hamarben Abdala Axis*. *Safa* was sonne of *Abdala* the sonne of *Aly*, whose father was *Abdula* the sonne of *Abas*. Hee had for Wazir or Vesir (which I mention, to shew the antiquitie of this custome in the Saracenicall regiment, still observed by the Turkes and Persians, as chiefe Counsellour and swayer of the State) *Abuz-alemah*, whom for conspiracie hee put to death, placing in his roome *Kaleb Barmaqui*. He made his three Vncles chiefe Gouernours of the Prouinces, *Dauid*, or *Daud* of Medina and Mecca; *Abdula* of Syria, Ægypt, and Africke; and *Safa* hee sent to Korosan, the chiefe Citie whereof is called Mechad, whereas *Ismael Sophi* and his successours are interred. This Citie is fortified with three hundred Towers, each from other a Musket shot distant. Thus *Mirkond*.

g *Anno Dom.* 753. *Hig.* 836. This *Safa*, or (as *Curio* calls him) *Abulabas* being dead, *Abugephar Elmantzar* g succeeded. Hee imprisoned the twelue sonnes of *Hasin*, the sonne of *Ali*, where they perished: He began first to build the Citie of Bagded. *Mirkond* saith, that in the 145. yeere of the *Heg.* having finished a warre against some Rebels in Arabia, parting from Cufa, hee crossed Mesopotamia, and comming to the bankes of Tygris, the bountie of the soyle, and commodious situation for the visiting of his Prouinces, caused him to build this Citie, which, by reason of many pleasant and delightfull Gardens which are in that Countrey, the people called Bagadad, of Baga a Persian word, which signifies a *Garden*. Hee dyed vpon the way to Mecca *A. Heg.* 759. or after *Zacuth* 758. *Iohn de Barros* h ascribeth this Citie to the same *Bugiafar* also, for so hee calleth him; but *Curio* to one *Muamat* long after. *Scaliger* i thinketh this to bee Seleucia, a Citie built nigh vnto Babylon by *Seleucus*, neere the meeting and mixing of Euphrates and Tygris; of which see our Babylonian Historie in the first booke.

h *Asdec. 1. lib. 1*

i *Animad. in Euseb. Chron. Lydyat. in tem.*

Mahdi his sonne succeeded *A. H.* 165. *Mirkond* calls him *Mahadi Bila*. In his time *Alkemben Ocem* (sometime Secretarie to *Abuseleem*, Gouernour of Karason, slaine by *Abuiafar*) reuolted from his subiection and Religion. Hee had but one eye, and was of terrible aspect: hee not onely sought to bee acknowledged for King, but would bee worshipped as a God; couering his face with a vaile, saying, That men were vnworthy to see his face, and many Prouinces received him for King. But *Mahadi* sending a strong power against him, his partakers poysoned him, and then gaue out, that hee was ascended into Heauen. But as many of his kindred and followers as were taken, were burned, and the Countries subdued *A. Heg.* 169. To *Mahadi* succeeded *Elida Bila Musa*, which after fifteene moneths dyed, and *Arachid Bila Harun* his brother succeeded. Against him rebelled *Rasib Eben Nacer* of Samarkand, who entituled himselfe King, in expedition against whom *Arachid* dyed *A. H.* 193. *Mahamid Amin* was his successour, to whom hee gaue all he held in Alep, and thence Westward: to *Mahamun* another sonne hee had given Persia and Karason; to *Racem* the third, Aderbaion and Diarbek. This division caused another, in which the Chalife seeking to dispossesse *Mahamun* by force, was ouerthrowne, Bagadet (whither hee was pursued) taken, and himselfe slaine *A.* 198. *Mahamun* or *Mamon* was the next Chalife, against whom the Gouernours of Aderbaion and Karason rebelled, which hee pacified as he could. Hee spent much to haue all the bookes of Phylosophie, the Mathematikes, and Physike, which hee could get, to bee translated out of the Greeke. He dyed *A. H.* 210.

Abu Ezach Mataeon, or *Mutetzam*, the fourth sonne of *Harun*, succeeded. Hee built Samarrah on Tygris Northwards from Bagdet, which soone after was ruined. Sistom, a Prouince neere the Persian Gulfe, rebelled, and long warres continued in Persia. This *Mataeon* wanne much from the Grecian Emperour. Hee dyed after he had raigned eight yeeres, leauing behind him eight Sonnes, and eight Daughters, with eight thousand Slaues. Hee had taken eight Cities, (the chiefe of eight Realmes) and put to death the eight Kings thereof. Hee left eight millions also of Treasure, hauing lued (to make vp eight eights) fortie and eight yeeres.

Wacek succeeded, in whose time by a three yeeres famine Karason was almost dispeopled. Afterwards they returned, and warred against the Mayusi, Heathenish people in Persia, (whereof

(whereof, saith *Mirkond*, there are great numbers at this day) which worship the fire, of whom they made a great massacre. *Methucal*, or *Almoto Wakel Bila Iafar* succeeded, *A.* 222. In whose raigne the descendants of *Aly* did rise, for that he sought all meanes to hinder their pilgrimage to his Sepulchre, breaking the bankes of Euphrates, with the inundation thereof into the desart, stopping their passage. *Montacer* sonne of this Chalife, murthered him by his slaues, *A.H.* 234. but dyed himselfe within fixe moneths after. *Abul Abas Hamed* his next heyre, after fiue yeeres rule, was cast into Prison by his Souldiers, and there famished. In Persia the Deputies or Gouernours had vnder many Chalifes succeeded by a kinde of inheritance, the Chalife confirming the succession to the heyre. But in these dayes arose one *Acem Ben Zeyd Alauuy*, that is, *Sent of God*: hee entred into Persia, and tooke diuers Cities and Prouinces thereof: *Mostabbin* the next Chalife enioyed the seate but sixteen moneths. He dyed *A.H.* 242.

Almatez Bila followed the thirtie three in order of their Chalifes. He sent *Mesa Ben Buka* against *Acem Ben Zeyd*, and recouered much from him which he had seised on in Persia: But after thee yeeres and a halfe, this Chalifa was forced by his souldiers, finding him in a Stoue bathing himselfe, to drinke a pot full of cold water, which sodainely killed him. *Mortady Bila* succeeded with like fortune, slaine of his Souldiers, after eleuen moneths. In these combustions the Chaliphate was deuided, one raigning in Bagdet, the other in Ægypt, whose historie you may finde in our Ægyptian relations.

Almat Hamed Bila succeeded in Bagdet the thirtie fiue Chalife. Persia was now rent with many factions: for besides *Taher* the allowed Gouernour, and *Ahem Ben Zeyd* which still continued his warres, a new Captaine *Yacub Leys* arose, who ouerthrew *Taher*, and slew him. This *Yacub* was a Tinker, as his Father also; after that, a Captaine of Robbers: then (fishing in those troubled waters) tooke part with another Rebell in Sistom, and sharing the Countrey, by his fellowes misfortune became sole Lord. After this hee preuayled against *Taher* and *Acem*, and brought Persia vnder him, following his designes against the Chalife himselfe, now much terrified with his fame, and was likely to haue preuayled, if hee had not dyed by the way *A.H.* 268. His brother *Hamer Ben Leys* succeeded in Persia, Karason and the rest of his conquests, the Chalife himselfe adding thereto Hierak, the chife Citie whereof (sayth our Author) is *Hispahon*, making him Chena of Bagadet, which is the soueraigne Magistrate of iustice, next the Chalife; but *Mahiazed Bila Hamed* the next Chalife slew him, being before vanquished by *Ismaël*, to whom he gaue the tytle of King of Maurenahar, Karason, Scyras, Sistom and Kermon; Gerion also and Tabersian, which hee tooke from *Mahamed Ben Zeyd Alauuy*. *Moktafy Bila* was next Chalife, and after him his brother *Mottader Bila*, who dyed *A.H.* 301. And *Iafar Ben Matazed* succeeded. All this while was Persia and the neighbour-Countries subiect to warre and contention, each calling his owne, whatsoeuer hee could get and hold by force. The particulars I forbeare to recite. In these times the Arabians robbed Mecca, carrying from thence great spoyles, which the superstitious Moores had offered: amongst the rest, carrying away a stone to Cusa, a holy Relique, brought (forsooth) by *Adam* out of Paradise, and afterwards it befell to *Ismael* the sonne of *Abraham*, and (I know not when) was brought to Mecca. It is white by nature, but being touched by sinners (it were a sinne to deny it) prooued blacke. But Saint *Rumwald* at* Boxley, and many other Popish stones or blockes had like vertue.

* *Lambertus Peramb. Kent.*

Iafar our Chalife dyed *A.H.* 320. About these times *Abusuia* (*Zacuth* calls him *Bawia*) a poore Persian dreamed that he pissed fire, which inflamed the countrey, and deuiding it selfe into three parts continued long. An Astrologer interpreted, that hee should command great Prouinces, in which his sonnes should succeed him. *Elkaher*, or *Kaher Bila Mahamet Ben Mathazed* was the next Chalife, whose eyes his Souldiers put out after eighteene moneths, and gaue his place to *Razibila*. Hee cut off the hand of *Eben Mokale* his Wazir, and hanged it on a gibbet, for writing a Letter without his priuitie. Hee ordayned also that the Wazirs should preach the Law to the people, which till that time the Chalifes themselues had performed. *Muktafy* succeeded. In his time was a great famine and pestilence. The Souldiers put out his eyes, *A.H.* 330. after which he liued fortie two yeeres. But his sonne *Mostachfy Abdela* was Chalife. Now did the three sonnes of *Abusuia* finde meanes to make themselues Lords of Persia, and the adiacent Regions, one of which warred vpon the Chalife, tooke him and put out his eyes. *A.H.* 334. and placed *Moiyah Bila Fazele*, in that dignitie. In his time the stone aforesaid was recouered from Cusa (being redeemed at the weight in gold) and restored to Mecca. And now the Chalifes began to bee but shadowes of that *quondam* bodie, and Lords in name. *Tayabu*, *Abdel*, *Carim* was Chalife after *Moiyah*: in whose time the posteritie of *Abusuia* had ruinated *Bagadet* by their warres, which was by *Azudu Daule* (one of them) re-edifyed *A.H.* 368. This Prince shewed himselfe fauourable to his Diuines, Phylosophers, Physitians, and Poets, and gaue leaue also to the

Christians

Christians his subiects to build Churches, bearing part of the charge. Hee built a goodly Hospitall at Bagadet, *A.H.* 371. and endowed it with great reuenues, and another at Scyras not inferiour. Hee dyed, *A.* 372. and left his inheritance to his three sonnes, of which *Scersa Daule* went into Persia, and *Scams Daule* to Bagadet, which soone after possessed his brothers state then dead, and associated *Bahao Daule* the third brother with him in gouernment, who proued sole heyre by the treason of mutinous Souldiers which murthered *Scams Daule*, *A.H.* 380. *Bahao* deposed the Chalife in the first yeere of his raigne; although the possession of the place since the time of the *Daules* or *Abussia's* race, was but an Ecclesiasticall power, plumed of the Temporall soueraigntie. Hee gaue the place to *Kader Bila Hamed*, the sortie sixe in order of Chalifes. At this time *Mamud Gasney* raigned in Karasan and Maurenahar: who taking the aduantage of the minoritie of *Fakoro Daules* sonnes, (*Fakoro* himselfe and *Bahao* being dead) much altered the face of the Persian and Mahumetane affaires.

From this time forward, the *Daules* with ciuill contentions weakened each other. Great were the broyles also in all the Northerly adioyning Countries; the Kings of Bokara, Turquestan, Nichabur, Dairband, Samarcand, with all the Prouinces in, or neere those parts of Persia, fryed in ciuill combustions, euery man measuring his right by his Sword and Speare. *Mamud* at this time hauing chased away his brother *Ismael*, contracted friendship with *Ilechkan* King of Turquestan, and made a prosperous expedition into India, as his Father *Sabutaquin* had done before; which *Ilechkan* enuying, treacherously entred into his country, and forced *Mamuds* returne; but *Mamud* being victorious, *Ilechkan* strengthned himselfe with a new confederacie of *Kaderkham*, King of *Katao kotan* (a country in Catay) whose great forces forced *Mamud* to vse the helpe of the Turkes, and with the Calauges, Gazneys, and Auegarys, aduanced, and (fighting on a Elephant) obtayned the victorie. *A.H.* 397. Now did *Mamud* returne to his Indian expedition, seeking to conuert the Indians to his Religion, where hee fought with *Bal* an Indian King, and ouerthrew him in battell, taking sortie Elephants, and rich spoyles: and the Indians retyring with their treasures, and the riches of their Pagodes (or Idoll temples) *Mamud* entred heere also, where *Mirkond* sayth, hee tooke seuen millions of dragines of gold, 700. Ingots of gold, with store of pearles and gemmes. Hee ouerthrew also the Gaores or Guzarates. In Karasan was at this time such a famine, that the people did eate vp one another. This being done, *A.H.* 400. *Mamud* went against *Bagadet*, and by strait siege forced *Kader Bila* the Chalife to yeeld himselfe, and redeeme his peace with money. After this, and some new exploites in Persia, hee returned into India, where he againe did great Acts: and at his returne, ouerthrowing Nealataquin, gaue the gouernment of Korarrazin to *Altuntar* one of his Captaines. In a fourth iourney into India, hee ouerthrew *Gulkand* a Pagan King, who seeing himselfe vanquished with the losse of fiftie thousand men, fearing a beautifull wife which he had, should come into his enemies hands, slew her, and himselfe also. In a fifth expedition hee ouercame *Gipal* and *Iandebal* two Indian Kings, and returning to Gaznehen, built a stately Temple or Mosque, as a Thanksgiuing for his victories: and then entering into Persia, tooke Rey and Hispahon in Hierak (now the seate of *Abas* the Persian King) from *Maiudu Daule*, whom hee dispossessed of his Kingdome. At this time were great quarrels among the *Daules* in Persia, *Kermon*, and *Diarbek*; and *Mocheraf* preuayling against *Sulton*, called himselfe King of Kings. *A.H.* 411. *Gelala* (another of the *Daules*) was the yeere after made King of Bagadet.

A.H. 416. *Mocharaf* dyed at Bagadet, and the yeere after, the Turkes tooke, fired, and spoyled Bagadet. This made them call *Gelala* againe to their succours, who not long before was defeated at Bagadet, and forced to flee to Basora; and now entring, went to the Chalifes house to kisse his foot, *A.H.* 419. But the Turkes which hee brought with him, falling to mutinie for their pay, the Chalife was forced to become pay-master. *Mamud* amidst his conquests dyed, *A.H.* 421. and *Mahamed* his sonne succeeded, and the next yeere followed *Kader* the Chalife, which had enioyed (without great ioy in it) his place sortie one yeeres, and *Kahem* his sonne succeeded. *Masud* the other sonne of *Mamud* warred vpon his brother, whom by treacherie of *Issuf* and *Amor Aly* traytors to their Master, hee tooke and put out his eyes. Hee that loued the treason, rewarded the Traytors, the one with irons in a dungeon, the other with more open, and yet more close ayre, in hanging. Thus hee ruled Karasan, Gaznecken and Hierak, and sent *Altuntax* Gouernour of Korarrazin against *Taquin*, who held Samarkand and Bokara, which warres were bloudie. But *A.H.* 424. his Garrisons in India, and the Countrey of Gibal reuolted, in recompence of which hee subdued Gerion and Taberstan. *Togotel* * or *Togozelbek*, and *Iakarbek*, *Saluquis*, two Turkish Captaines, subdued many of his Townes in Karasan, and forced *Alaon Daule* and *Abussia* out of their Gouernments; whereupon *Masud* returning, was by other of his enemies ouerthrowne.

Mamuds exploites in India, Persia, &c.

* This was Tangrolipi: *Sec. 6.8.*

throwne. Herewith enraged, hee put many Turkes to death which had fought in this last battell, but faintly on his part: and making an expedition into India, by treacherie was taken of his followers, and soone after slaine: his blinde brother *Mahamed* recouering the state, but not his eyes; and therefore resigning to his sonne *Hamed*, who againe was dispossessed by *Moadud* the sonne of *Masud*. But the Turks in Karasan and *Maurenahar* would not acknowledge him, and in the 435. of the *Heg.* had the victorie against his armie. Other Turkes also going out of Turquestan, spoyled the Countries of Garmeer and Kandachar. This seemes a truer storie of the Turkes beginning of greatnesse in Persia, then that which is vsually receiued: and is thus by *Mirkond* a Persian Historian deliuered. *Moadud* hauing relieued *Lahor*, which his Vassals in India rebelling had besieged, marched against the Turkes, but dyed in the way *A. H.* 441.

At Bagadet matters had continued in confusion. They had reuolted from *Gelata Daule*, and proclaimed *Abulganiar* King, but hee refused: and the Turkes soone after fired the Towne, and spoyled it. This continued till *A. H.* 428. when the cold was so extreame, that the riuer Degile or Tygris was frozen twelue dayes together, and the Snow lay three spans deepe there. *A. H* 434. *Ebrahem Neaby Saliuqui* a Turke, entred Persia in the Prouince of Hierak, and tooke Amedon. *Tokzelbek* before mentioned tooke Rey, and spoyled all Persia with a victorious Armie. Hee also through the dissentions of the sonnes of *Abulganiar*, after their fathers death, found meanes to encrease himselfe. And the Chalife of Damascus forced *Kaiem* the Chalife of Bagadet to flee to *Tokzelbek* for succour: whereupon hee entred Bagadet, and put all to fire and sword, rifling the very Sepulchers to search for Treasures. He tooke *Malek Rhaym* the successour of *Abulganiar*, whom before hee had helped to winne Scytas, and the best part of Persia, and imprisoned him, where hee dyed. And thus the Emirate of the *Daules* being deadly sicke, soone after dyed. *Abd Rachid* also the successour of *Maodud* was so pursued by *Tokzelbek*, that at last in a Fort he was (through the corruption of his Guard by money) taken and murthered. Then did hee, marrying a sister of the deceased, proclaime himselfe King. But not long after being in a publike place to receiue the salutations which they are accustomed to make in those parts, ten of the chiefe men conspiring together, slew him.

Kaiem or *Alkaiem* dyed *A. H.* 467. and *Almokteady Byla* was Chalife the sortie eight in order. In his time the Turkes and *Ferrogozad* (the other sonne of *Masud*) came to composition. *Almostazer Byla* succeeded his Father in the Caliphate, *A. H.* 487. in whose time Bagadet hauing beene ruined by the ouerflowing of Tygris, the situation was changed, and it was new built on the other side of the riuer towards the East, where it now stands in a more commodious seat, hauing had twentie fiue Chalifes since the foundation by *Abuiaffar*, and yet not one of them dyed in it. Hee liued in peace and dyed *A. H.* 512. This storie is thus told by *Zacuth*. In his time the Astrologers fore-told an exceeding deluge, not so great as in the dayes of *Noah*, because then (said they) were seuen Planets in conjunction with *Pisces*, whereas now there were but sixe, *Saturne* being excluded. This made the Inhabitants of Bagdet afraid, because of the low situation: and caused them to stop the passages of the waters. The Ismaelites, which of deuotion performed their Pilgrimage, were most of them drowned. The *Caliphs* for this cause arayed the Astrologer, which fore-told this, in royall apparell. *Almostarched Byla Fazele* his sonne succeeded; hee warred against some Princes of Persia, and seized vpon some Prouinces of *Masud Saliuqui* King of Karasor, but *Masud* had the better, and slew the Chalife *A. H.* 529. His sonne and successour *Rached Bila* sought to reuenge his death, but hauing conquered a great part of Persia, was slaine also by *Masud A.* 532. He following his victories, made himselfe Master of Bagadet, and placed *Almokessy Bila* in the Califate, who taking aduantage of *Masuds* death, which hapned soone after, marched into Persia, and recouered that which *Masud* had vsurped, which he enioyed peaceably, and dyed *A. H.* 555. And now the Chalifes became great Potentates against his sonne *Almostanget Byla Issuf* succeeded the fiftie three Chalife. After his death which was through heate, by shutting the doore when he was in the Bath, succeeded *A.* 566. *Almostanzy Benur Elah Acen*: and hee * dying, *A.* 577. *Nacer* held the place fortie seuen yeeres: vnder whom Bagadet did greatly flourish. During his gouernment the *Saliuquis* were vanquished by the *Koarrasmians*. *Altahar Byla Mahamed*, the next Chalife enioyed it but nine moneths; his sonne *Almostancer Byla* seuenteene yeeres, in whose time the Mogoles or Tartarians wanne some Prouinces, but by him were diuers time defeated. *Almostaem*, or *Musteatzem Byla Abdula* was the fiftie eight, (others reckon but fiftie foure) and the last of the Chalifaes of Bagadet the thirtie seuen of this family, which had commanded about fiue hundred twentie three yeeres, in the Persian Chronicles of *Mirkond*, and others esteemed as Kings thereof. Hee dyed *A. H.* 655. I confesse *Zacuth* and *Mirkond* doe not fully agree in names, times, and relations, nor yet much disagree. I haue heere most obserued

* In his time the Abasian Chalifes were receiued in Ægypt, which the Phrian Arians of *Ali* had seperated. *Zacuth.*

ued the later as the larger. Not long before, one *Bada* professing himselfe a Prophet sent of GOD, had of the summe of all Nations gathered an Armie, wherewith hee committed much excesse and slaughter in Asia, both of Iewes and Christians. In the time of this last Chalife, the Tartar King *Chita*, made his brother *Halacho* King of Irak and Mesopotamia, who besieged and sacked Bagdet, and slew *Musteazem*. This Chalipha was starued by his commandement in the middest of his treasures, because hee would not employ the same (through niggardise) for his owne defence. From that time there hath been no Caliph (saith this Arabian Historie) in Bagdet. In him ended the *Abassian* line, of which had beene fiue and thirtie Chaliphaes.

§. IIII.

Of their Titles, Greatnesse, and Learning.

AFter *Mahumet* or *Muhammed* the false Prophet, the first Captaines of warre were called *Emirelmumenim*, [a] that is to say, *Præfecti orthodoxorum*, the *Captaines of the Sound-beleeuers:* and after, because, vnder cloake of Religion, they seized on the Primacie and tyrannie (spirituall and temporall) they named themselues *Caliphes*, that is, Vicars. *Bedwell* interprets, successours. The first *Emirelmumenim*, was *Abubecher*. When by his successours, Gouernours [b] were sent into Spaine and Affrica, they for a time held the same as Deputies, although to their power nothing lacked but the Tytle of a King, yet they professed to doe all in the name of the *Emirelmumenim*, vntill afterwards they tooke that Tytle also themselues, and became absolute. Whence all the pettie Kings of Spaine, and the African Potentates, were called *Emireelmumenim*; and the Kings of Barbarie are so stiled at this day, euen as the French King is called *Christianissimus*, & the Spaniard *Catholicus*. The Legats of the Chalipha were called *Naibin*, which also signifieth the same that *Chalipha*; but this was made peculiar to those Saracen tyrants, which vsed both Swords (to speake in the Remish language) supreame in matters Diuine and Humane. Thus obserueth *Ioseph Scaliger* [c] of these names: whereby appeareth, that *Emire elmumenim* was not giuen onely to *Abedramon* and his successours in Affrica, as is before obserued out of *Curio*.

Beniamin Tudelensis name th the Chaliph, which in his time ruled in Bagdet, *Amir Almumenin Alghabassi*, which *Montanus* interpreteth, *The Prince of the beleeuers which liue in penance*, or heauinesse: But I rather encline to Mr. *Seldens* coniecture, that it is *Emirelmumenim of the Abassian race* or kindred: for so *Beniamin* adds after that the proper name of this great King was *Al ghabassi Hhaphisi*, whom I take to bee the same whieh is before called *Moktaphi*, the first syllable in that name being common (as you see) to many of them, and *Ktaphi* or *Chaphisi* not so vnlike as many names proue in their transmigration from one language to another. He reports that he had a Palace of three miles compasse within the Citie, within which was a wood or groue of Trees of all sorts, both barren and bearing, Beasts also of all sorts for game, and in the middest thereof a great lake with plentie of Fish, neither wanted there Fowles for varietie of disport. He was skilfull of the Hebrew, and well respected that Nation. He had imposed this rule on himselfe, not to vse any meate or apparell, which hee had not [d] first earned: to which purpose hee made fine Mattes, which being sealed with his owne Seale, were by his Courtiers solde, the great men buying them for their vse. None of the Ismaelites (so he calleth the Mahumetans) might see his face: and the Pilgrimes which came from Mecca, in the Land of Eliman, and passing this way, desired to see him, vsed to enter the Palace, and there cryed out, *O Lord, Light of the Ismaelites, and Sun-beame of our Law, shew vs the brightnesse of thy face.* But hee answered them nothing, as not seeming to regard them. Then his Courtiers and great Attendants sued for them, saying, *O our Lord, spread thy peace ouer these men which come from farre Countries, &c.* Then would hee let out at the window a skirt of his garment, which they deuoutly kissed; and (when one of those great men had said, *Goe in peace*) returned full of gladnesse to their home, where they were receiued almost with veneration for so happie an exploit. Euery of the Princes which attended on him, had their seuerall Palaces within the great Palace, and were duely obserued, wearing also yron chaynes, because they had once conspired to set vp his brother. But they had the reuenues of Townes and Cities belonging to them, brought them by their Officers, notwithstanding.

Thus did hee conserue his Maiestie with the people, and securitie with his owne. I omit the Edifices and pillars of gold and siluer, adorned with Gemmes, which he mentioneth in that Palace: Out of which the Chaliph came but once in the yeere, in the moneth *Ramadan*, or

a *Iacob de Vitriaco. Hist. Ierosol. c. 9.*
Amir, Amira, Amiras, Admirans, à themate AMARA præcepit. Bedwel. Hence is our title *Admirall* compounded, and of *Aloss*, the Sea.
b Such were the Gouernors of Chorasan, Irak, Siras, Damasco, Iaman, Muzul, Halep, Guma, Mahaan. The Arabian calleth them Kings: and their heyres succeeded them.
c *Can. Isag. l. 3.*

d The great Turke obseruеth some shadow of this custome in vsing one or other handicrafts.

or their Easter solemnitie, at which time they resorted thither out of farre Countries to see him, as if hee had beene *Mahomet*. He was then carryed on a Mule, royally apparelled, and crowned with a Diadem of vnspeakable price, on which he ware a black cloth, in token that the day of death would obscure all that pompe and splendor. The Princes of Arabia, Media, Persia, Tuboth, did attend him: and thus he went to the great Temple built in the pare *Bosra*. The people, men and women, all cloathed in silke & purple, salute him, *Peace be on thee our Lord King*: He refusting them with his hand, or mouing his garment. Being thus conueyed to the Porch, with musicke also of all kindes, and dances, he ascendeth a Tower of wood, and there maketh a Sermon of his Law; the wise-men of the Ismaelites applauding his learning, the people answering, Amen. After this, hee giueth them all his blessing: and a Camell is brought to him, which hee killeth for the Paschall Feast, and causeth the Princes to distribute pieces of the flesh of the beast which himselfe had slaine; this they esteeme a great gift. This done, they depart, the King returning by another way, by the bankes of Tygris, alone, (the Princes passing in the Ruer) vnto the Palace. Hee had built a Palace on the other side of Tygris, on a branch of Euphrates, which floweth by one side of the Citie, in which hee had rayled great Houses, Hospitals for the sicke, and for the poore, and for mad men, with all prouision for them at his charge. This I haue beene bold to insert out of this Iew, because I know none other Author that can acquaint vs with the State of Bagdad in the time of her chiefe flourishing, before it was destroyed by the Tartars.

Thus haue wee giuen you a Coronographicall view of the ancient Chaliphaes, with their first and greatest Conquests, omitting the lesser and later: as in the yeere 807. in Sardinia and Corsica: in 826. in Creete; 843. in Sicill; and presently after in [e] Italy, ouer-running Tuscan, and burning the Suburbes of Rome it selfe, with the Churches of *Peter* and *Paul* 845. the next yeere in Illyria, Dalmatia; besides the taking of Ancona: in 847. chased by Pope *Leo* [f] from Ostia. These with other their affaires of warre in Lucania, Calabria, Apulia, at Beneuentum, Genua, Capua, (which Cities they tooke) I passe ouer. After this great bordegrew lubberly and vnwieldie, it fell vnder the weight of it selfe, none so much as the Saracens ouerthrowing the Saracens, as their Sects and Diuisions make plaine. Neuertheless, this dissioyning and dishouring not withstanding, their Religion euen still couereth a great part of the world. For besides the triumphing sword of the Turke, Persian, Mogore, Barbarian, and other Mahumetan Princes: such is the zeale of the superstitious Mahumetan, that in places furthest distant, this their Religion hath beene preached, which they trade together with their Marchandize, euen from the Atlantike Ocean vnto the Philippinaes: It hath sounded in China, it hath pierced Tartaria: and although the name of Christian extendeth it selfe into so many Sects and Professions in the Countries of Asia, Afrike and America, besides Europe (almost whole Christians;) yet it is hard to say, whether there bee not as many Disciples and Professors of this ridiculous and impious deuotion, as of all those which giue their names to Christ, in whatsoeuer Truth or Heresie. Master *Brerewood* accounteth the Mahumetans more then the Christians, in proportion of fiue to fiue.

Thus hath the Field and the Church stooped to *Mahomet*: wee may adde more, (*Saul among the Prophets:*) learning hath flourished among the Mahumetans, at first vnlearned and rude, but enemies to learning in others. Yea, they [h] sought to propagate their impious Mahomettie, and extirpate the Christian truth by that pollicie of *Iulian*, prohibiting all learning to their Christian subiects. Such a decree of *Abdilla, A. 766.* is recited by *Theophanes*.

When the Kings of Africa possessed Spaine, they founded Vniuersities both at Marocco (it is [i] *Scaligers* report) and in Spaine, allowing yeerely stipends to the Professors. And in those times was great ignorance of good learning in the Latine Church, when good Disciplines flourished exceedingly amongst the Muhammedans. Yea, whatsoeuer the Latines writ, after the industrie of the Arabians had acquainted them with their ignorance, is wholly to be ascribed to the Arabians, both their Philosophie, Physicke, and Mathematikes. For they had no Greeke Author which was not first translated into Arabike, and thence into Latine, as *Ptolomey*, *Euclide* and the rest; till Constantinople being taken by the Turkes, the Greeke Exiles brought vs backe to the Fountaines. *Iohn Leo* testifies, that many ancient Authors and great volumes are amongst them, translated out of the Latine, which the Latines themselues haue lost. But now the Muhammedans are growne artlesse in Africa: only in Constantinople may good Arabike & Persian works be gotten by the helpe of the Iewes. *Lud. Viues* [k] saith, That they translated Arabike out of the Latine, but he was not so well able to iudge thereof, although he rightly ascribeth the corrupting of Arts to vnskilful translations, and sheweth the difference of *Abenrois* or *Auerrois* as *Aristotle* (as the Latins haue him) from the Greeke. But his inuectiue is too bitter in condemning all the Arabians, as *vnlearned, doting, and fauouring*

e *Lud. Rel. l. 8.*

f *Platina vita Pont.*

g Cairoan became a Papacie absolute though sch smaticall, as they call dit: so did Marocco: the Persians were alway prone to such Schismes: and other, as is seruid for their aduantage.

h *Ber. Aldrete, vor Antiqu. l. 3. c. 13.*

i *Scal. Epist. Step. Pierio.* Heeselith that the figures which we vse in Arithmetike, came to the Arabians of Moores to the Spaniards, and thence to vs, about three hundred yeeres since, and then much differing from those characters which now wee vse

k *De Trad. Disciplinis. & Ludouicus Viu. de caus. corrupt. Artis l. 4. Omnia illa Arabice videntur mihi, respersa, & plena nenia Alcoran, & blasphemiae Mahumetanae, quibus spiritibus illa potest, indicium insultus, frigidum.*

more of the Alcoran, then of Art: and the Spaniard might beare some grudge to that Nation, which so many hundreds yeeres had spoyled Spaine; still leauing the fourth part of the Spanish Language (as *Scaliger* [l] testifieth thereof) Arabike, in monument of their Conquest.

Of their learned men were [m] *Auicen, Auerrois, Auempace, Algazel*, &c. Philosophers; *Mesue, Rasis*, and many other Physicians and Astrologers, mentioned in the Chronicles of *Zacuthi*; *Leo*, and *Abilfada Ismael*, Geographers; Cairaon, Bagded, Fez, Marocco, Corduba, &c. were Vniuersities of Saracen students. But now Learning and Schooles are decayed and ruined: euen as at first also it was amongst some of them little countenanced, as appeareth by that *Hagag* in the 96. yeere of the *Hegira*, who being Gouernor or King of [n] Irak, in his sicknesse consulted with an Astrologer, Whether the Stars had told him of any Kings death that yeere: he answered, That a King should die, but his name was *Cani*: Whereupon *Hagag* remembring that at his birth his mother had imposed that same on him; I shall die, saith he; but thou shalt go one houre before: and presently caused his head to be smitten off. An vnhappie Harbengership in regard of his Art: an vnhappie Art which can better tell others Destinies then their owne. But no maruell in *Hagag*, who was fleshed in bloud, that his Herodian Testament should bee thus bloudie, who in his life had in that Median Prouince slaine an hundred and twentie thousand men, besides fiftie thousand men, and fourescore thousand women, which perished in his imprisonments.

Baghdad (which is also called Dar-assalam, that is, *The Citie of Peace* *) receiued that name of a Monke called *Bachdad*, who as *Ben-Casem* writeth, serued a Church builded in that Medow. But *Abu-Giapar Almansur* the second Abassæan Chalipha, who wanne it, *A. Heg.* 150. named it Dar-assalam. It is the Citie Royall of Mesopotamia, now called Diarbect, which the said *Almansur* placed in a large Plaine vpon Tigris, and diuided by the Riuer into two Cities, ioyned by a Bridge of Boats. This Citie built in this place, *Almansur* ruled many yeeres, and after him other Chaliphaes, till the 339. yeere of the *Hegra*, in which King *Aadhd-eddaule* and *Saif-eddaule* tooke it, vpon with their Successours enioyed it till *Solymus* the Ottoman Emperour subdued, and is now ruled by a Bascia, with many Ianizaries. But hereof *Ahmad Abi Bacr* of Bachdad, in his Annals, will shew you more. This Citie is famous for Schooles of all Sciences, both in former and the present time. Here *Ahmad Assalami* a famous Poet wrote his Verses. Here *Alpharabius* the renowned Philosopher and Physician, borne at Farab in Turcomannia, professed these studies publikely with great applause, and leauing many of his Schollers in this Cities, went to Harran of Mesopotamia, where finding *Aristotles* Booke, *De Auditu*, hee read it forte times, and wrote vpon the Booke, that he was willing againe to reade it. Hence hee went to Damascus, and there dyed, *A. H.* * 339. Thus *Ben-Casem* in his Booke, *De viridario Electorum*.

Bochara is an ancient Citie vpon Euphrates, in a Village belonging whereto *Honain Ali Bensina* (whom the Latines call, *Auicenna*) was borne, *A. H.* 370. Hee gaue himselfe to Physicke very young, and was the first which became Physician to Kings and Princes, who before in that Country vsed [o] no Physicians. He published neere an hundred bookes, many of Physicke, some of Philosophie, a Dictionarie of Herbes and Stones, Verses of the Soule, &c. He liued eight and fiftie yeeres, and dyed in Hamadan. He had runne thorow all Arts, at eighteene. Thus *Ben-Casem*. But others affirme, that a certaine Physician flourishing of great note, vpon whom no praying nor paying could fasten a Disciple, lest the secrets of his Art should bee made common: the mother of *Auicenna* offers her sonne to doe him seruice in decoctions, and other meaner offices, which hee could not doe himselfe, nor was there feare of danger from him whom nature had made deafe, and therefore dumbe. Her made trysals, and found *Auicenna* deafe, as he thought, and entertayned him, who watched his times, and transcribed his bookes and notes, sending them closely to his Mother, which after his mothers death hee published in his owne name.

Damascus is called of the Arabians, Sciam, and Demasc, of the Syrians Darmsuc. It is luxurious in Fruits of all kinds, rich in Oliues, and Yron of excellent temper by nature, and so bettered by Art, that no Helme or Shield can withstand it. It is seated in a large Plaine at the roots of Libanas, there called Hermon, fixe miles in compasse, double walled, with a strong square Tower in the midst, built by a Florintine, beautified with Springs, Market places, publike Buildings, Meskits, Bathes, Canes, and all sorts of like weauing, and in all ancient times with Learning and learned men. Here flourished Saint *Damascen*: and here *Almotannabbi* excelled in Arts and Armes, emulous of *Mahomet*, but not with like successe. Hee was called *Nabion*, that is, The Prophet; this *Motannabbi*, that is, Prophecying: he wrote the *Alcoran* elegantly and eloquently; this excelled in Prose and Verse: both having Followers, but this mans Disciples after his death were dispersst, which hapned, *A. H.* 354. *Ben-Casem* also relates, that *Mohamed Abi Abdillah* professed Philosophie in this Citie, and to dispute with all commers, and wrote a huge Booke, *De vnitate existendi principiorum*. He dyed there, *A.H.* 638.

habitant

l *Scal. Epist. ad Casaub.*

m *Lind Reg.* 7.14.

n Whereof Tamuss chiefe Citie: *M. Polo lib.* 1. *cap.* 9. called it *Hierach, Magin, Med. a maior.*

Baghdad or Bagdet.

* The Deuils Ierusalem. The Tartarian conquest is here omitted.

Aristotles books of Physicks admired.

* This number seemeth false, Bochara the Citie of *Auicenna*: some say in Bocara neere Samercand.

o This seemed to arise of their opinion of Fate. *Auicenna.*

His dissimulation.

Damascus.

Comparison of *Mahomet* & *Almotannabbi*. M. *Abi Abdillah*

Aleppo is called of the Inhabitants, Haleb, the chiefe Mart of all the East, frequented by Persians, Indians, Armenians, and all Eutopians. The Port is Scanderoone, called by the Inhabitants Escanderuoch. The soyle is very fertile, and nourisheth abundance of Silke-wormes. *A.H.* 922. *Sultan Selim* tooke it, and found therein infinit wealth. *Sciarfeddin* which wrote the Victories of the *Othomans* in two Tomes, saith, that it had of Gold and Siluer coyned 115000. & a mightie masse vncoyned; Vests of cloath of Gold, tissued or wrought with gold, silk, and scarlet, aboue 300000. besides abundance of Gems & Pearls. And besides other wealth innumerable, it had eight Armories well furnished. It now flourisheth in the next place to Constantinople and Cairo, and may be called, Queene of the East: Here are store of Gems, Amber, Bengeoin, Lignum Aloes, and Muske, which is taken from a little reddish beast, beaten with many blowes on one place that the bloud may all come thither. Then is the skin so swolne and full of bloud bound straight that the bloud may not issue: and put into one or more bladders, is dryed on a beasts backe till the bladder fall off of it selfe, and that bloud after a moneth becomes excellent Muske. At *Aleppo* was borne that great Grammarian *Othaman Abu Homar*, surnamed *Ben-elhhageb*, which wrote *Casia* and *Sciasia* of Grammer, and dyed, *A. H.* 672.

Aleppo.

Sciarfeddin a Turkish Historian.

Muske how made.

CHAP. III.
The Life of Mahumet, Mahammed, or Muhammed the Saracen Law-giuer.

§. I.
Mahumets Life after the Histories of Christians.

THE life of *Mahomet* is at large described by diuers Authors, but I finde it no where so fully as before the Alcaron in the Italian Edition, the sum whereof, and of the other reports touching the same, is this. *Ismael* was the first (according to that Italian Author, others ascribe it to *Abraham*) that built the Temple at Mecca, and hauing to wife an Egyptian Idolatresse, had by her twelue sonnes, which (as he saith) being dispersed in Arabia, Persia, Armenia, sowed so many sorts of Religion: and *Chedar* his second sonne, placed in the Temple of his father (vpon an high Tower called *Alquibla*) an Idoll named *Alleeh* and *Alleze*, instituting certaine ceremonies: and amongst the rest, the sacrificing of a Ram, in remembrance of that Ram which was presented to his grand-father *Abram at the offering of Isaac*. Of *Chedar* [a] descended *Thebic*, and so in order, *Caab, Numbib, Almucauen, Abluccn, Acaba, Amubaſoa, Amir, Celif, Niſca, Abbimaiſia, Aadirem, Scaad, Mudhar, Ilges, Mudicia, Hudhaiſa, Chinene, Anaſcere, Melich, Phaiſce, Paliſſ, Lunai, Cabnai, Merta, Cbelef, Facien, Abdamanef, Abdalmutalif, Abdalla* the supposed father of *Mahomet*: his mothers name was *Hennina* or *Hemina* a Iewish (as some [b] write) his father was an Ethnicke or Pagan Idolater. His base condition and obscuritie was such, that the Turkes themselues doubt whether he were an Arabian or Persian, notwithstanding that genealogicall rabble. [c] *Richerius* reporteth, that he was a Cyrcuean by birth, and that in the time of his minoritie or child-hood, he was by some Plagiarie stolae away from his friends, and sold to the Ismaelit-Marchants. Others say, that her was abandoned both of father and mother, and (according to the cruell custome of that barbarous people) sold to strangers. From so base a beginning did this cunning Impostor and Seducer of the world arise to be the scourge of Princes, and disturber of the world.

He was somewhat comely of person, and of sharp wit, and therefore was made outer-seer of the businesse of *Abdalmutalif* his Master, or (as some say) his Grand-father: and traded for him in Soria, Egypt, and Persia, and after his death, inherited his goods: continuing his trade of Marchandize with a great man of Corozan, he succeeded him in his bed & wealth, by the marriage of his widdow *Gadiſa* (whom [d] others call *Adega* the daughter of *Holest*) and that (as some suspect not vnprobably) by the helpe of Sorcetics and Incantations. With this widdow, after shee was become his wife, he liued in his wonted course of life thirteene yeeres, and had by her one sonne, and three daughters. And by this meanes growne great, he aspired higher; assembling to himselfe a company of theeues, vnthrifts and out-lawes, which with him became voluntaries and aduenturers in the warres of the Emperour *Heraclius* against the Persians: in which he valourously behaued himselfe, and was wounded in the visage, and *Coſdroes* the Persian King was ouercome.

After this, *Mahomet* deuising further how to satisfie his ambitious desire of Soueraigntie, met with occasion fitting those his aspiring designes. The Arabians being denied their pay

a *Fortalicium fidei* reckoneth another genealogie: and the Saracen Chronicle continueth this, euen from *Adam*; not agreeing with themselues or any truth.

b *I. Bo. Bem. Volater. &c.*

c *Christ. Richer.*

d *Arabs Nabi'il in Alcor. refut. Cedrenus* calls her *Chadiche*.

(as is said) raised a mutinie and [e] rebellion: these chose *Mahomet* to be their Captaine, who vsed them as his instruments of robbery and violence about the countries of Mecca. But the Nobles opposing themselues against him; hee, perceiuing that their power and authoritie would be a perilous rub in his way, thought it his safest course to insinuate with them; and therfore sought by alliance to winne their better liking, taking some of their daughters to his wiues; of which he had at one time eleuen, and in all his life fifteene, besides two slaues.

Heraclius at that time fauouring the Heresie of the *Monothelites*; & neglecting the affaires of the Empire, *Mahomets* proiects tooke better effect. *Hummar* also and *Mauchia* caused all Soria, and Iudæa and Egypt to rebell. *Sergius* at that time a Nestorian Monke of Constantinople (thence for that Heresie excommunicated) reforting to *Mahomet* kindled these spatkes into a great fire, perswading him to countenance his Rebellion, with the pretence of Religion; the rather now that *Heraclius* had offended the Christians by his exactions and Heresies, and the Iewes, by new cruelties, because by Magicke he had beene warned to beware of the *Circumcised Nation*. Thus some male contented Iewes, and some heretical Christians being called to counsell, it was agreed, that hee should professe himselfe to be chosen in this turbulent state of the world, to bring vnto the same a *New Law*, appointed hereunto by Diuine authoritie: to the Iewes affirming himselfe their *expelled Messias*; to the Christians promising amiddest so many Heresies, *The rule of Truth*; to the excommunicate Heretikes, restitution of their persons and goods; to seruants, libertie; to subiects, immunity from tribute.

And thus hee caused himselfe of *Sergius* to bee baptized, and to bee [f] circumcised also of *Abdalla* a Iew, hauing before beene a Paynime. After, hee got himselfe into a Caue two miles from the Towne called *Garbe*, continuing there two yeeres in companie of *Sergius* and *Abdalla*, which acquainted him with the Christian and Iewish Principles: and in the night reforted to his wife, whom he perswaded to this vaine beliefe by *Zeidinus* his seruant, rewarding him therefore with freedome, and proclaiming (as by an Edict from Heauen) the like libertie to all seruants of all sorts, which would follow him. This rout reforting to him, and by their numbers strengthening his faction, their masters not a little aggrieued, gaue out a rumour, that *Mahomet* was mad, and possessed of a Diuill, and that an euill end would befall him and his followers. And although they might haue gotten him into their hands, yet in regarde of his nine vncles, and some noble Families linked him in kindred, viz. the Corassits, the Hassinists, the Benitamines, they abstained from further rigour.

Thus with the helpe of *Sergius* and [g] *Bara* a Iacobite; and *Cillenus* in the caue, with the fauour of his two vncles, *Hanza*, and *Alabem* at Mecca, with his elder brother (that tooke his daughter *Fatima*) and *Eubocara* (a chiefe man of that place, afterwards his father in law) he composed after his and their pleasure (*Constitutions and Canons*, and published the same at Mecca; with protestation that the *Angell Gabriel* had been sent to him from God, as in old times to the Prophets, to teach him these things. And in the first place commanding them to *beleeue in God the Creator of heauen and earth*, the causer of raines and fruites, that inflicteth death on men, and after raiseth them vp to giue them either, in reward of their good workes, *Paradise*; or of their bad, *Hell*; and such other things, neuer before heard of among these simple Idolatrous Inhabitants of Mecca, he grew in great estimation.

For in Persia and Arabia, before this time, some worshipped a Tree, which they called *Putulangua*, offering sacrifices thereto: some an Idoll, called *Bhomum*; and some the Sunne; and others vsed other Idolatries; spred by the so many sonnes of *Ismael*: and therefore the ruder multitude, astonished with these Propheticall and Angelicall titles, were easily bewitched. And by degrees he published his intended wickednes, not sparing outragious villanies, as [h] the stealing of a Camell, the murthering of a Iew sleeping vnder a tree. Yea, hee pretended not humane infirmitie, but diuine authority, to his most mischieuous designments. For example, being lustfully affected to [i] *Zameeh*, the daughter of *Gaiffi*, the wife of *Zaidi*, [k] he writ in his Law, That after vow or promise of marriage, it was lawfull for him to enioy her, and (if he pleased) to take her to his wife. And being reprehended, that *Aissa* his [k] wife was dishonest with *Zaphagam*, the son of *Almuibathum*, the Angell (forsooth) said, she was chast. And being found by his wiues, with *Mary* the wife of *Macobe*, the King of the Iacobites, he in another Chapiter is absolued of his oath, and free to lye with any woman, not being able to containe himselfe, notwithstanding he had sworne so to do. And by the same authority he enioyned them penance, for blaming the Prophet. And willing to diuorce one of his wiues, but fearing the greatnesse of her kindred, hee frameth one Chapiter, blaming him for fearing man more then God. Meeting once with a woman on the way, hee would haue abused her, but she refusing, he set vpon her Asse (Lettice befitting his lippes) affirming that that woman had mote sinned, then if shee had slaine an hundred men. And the Saracens to this day, saith [l] *Petrus Alfonsi*, deplore that fact of this Saracen woman.

[e] This mutiny, according to others, hapned many yeeres after that *Mahomet* had vnder the cloake of Religion furthered his ambition and rebellion.

[f] He neither was circumcised himselfe. (saith in Arabian noble-man in confusation of the Alcoran) nor did command any thing thereof in his law, but the Arabians vsed Circumcision before his time.

[g] *Sanfouino* calleth him *Bacira*, and addeth also *Nicholas* a Priest of Rome.

[h] *Mahomet* a Theefe and Murtherer.

[i] An Adulterer.

[k] A Witrall.

[l] *Per. Alf. apud. Breidenbach.*

He

He wanteth not his miracles also in his Legend. As he iourneyed in the heate of the day with [m] his Camels, a Cloud couered his head from the scorching heate of the Sunne, about the seuenteenth yeere of his age. And when hee first entered the Caue, he saw the Angell *Gabriel* in his proper shape, with white wings on a seate of gold betwixt Heauen and Earth, who brought him his Prophecie: and going to Mecca to tell his wife; the Beasts, Trees, Stones, and Hearbs, saluted him with the name of a *Prophet, and a messenger of God*; and the trunke of a Tree standing in the way, diuided it selfe for him to passe betweene, and then after closed againe. Hee also, to satisfie his incredulous vncle *Bugellimus*, caused the Moone to descend from heauen, which entred into his sleeue, and after parted it selfe in two, and then ascended againe. To satisfie the peoples doubtings, he caused a Bull (taught before to come at his call) to bring on his hornes a Chapter, which hee there had tyed, to testifie the truth of *Mahomet*.

m *Mahomets* miracles.

But while the fame of this Propheticall Function filled the mouthes of the vulgar with acclamations, it no lesse filled the hearts of the Nobles of Mecca with disdaine, who sought therefore to apprehend him; but hee closely fled to Iettrib or Medina with his followers, where he liued with the name of a Prophet thirteene yeeres. From this flight they begin the computation of their *Hegira*: the word *Hegrath* signifieth a persecution for Religion. Wherein *Mahomet* imitated the Christians of those parts, who accounted their yeeres from the persecution of *Diocletian*. That his flight hapned on the sixteenth of July *An. Dom.* 622. on Friday: Therefore doe they keepe holy the Friday. And because then the Moone shewed her new hornes, that became a sacred ensigne to the Mahometans: and on Towers where they watch to obserue the new Moone, they set vp an horned Moone, as Christians on Steeples vse to erect the Crosse. For then there was no *new Moone* day of there moneth *Muharram* [n], but was the second day after the Iewish account: and therefore the new Moone might then be seene. But for the Friday it was obserued, before *Mahomets* time, as shall after be shewed. Hee deprived a certaine Carpenters poore Orphans of their patrimonie, and consecrated their House into a Temple. This Citie being for most part inhabited with Iewes, they asked a signe in confirmation of his Office. He said, That hee was not sent with miracles, but denunciation of Armes heere, and Hell hereafter: and those which would not receiue his new Doctrine, he expelled by force. Being absolute Lord heere, he aspired also to the Dominion of Mecca. He sent thirtie Horse with *Hanzeta* to rob the Marchants, trauelling thither: but being then preuented, hee sent foure yeeres after, sixe hundred of his best Souldiers vnder *Hugaida* to assault Mecca, but hee also was discomfited: yet not desisting his enterprize, seuen yeeres after he atchieued it, and after eleuen battels entered and sacked the Towne, and gaue the spoyle to his souldiers: and for feare, the neighbouring Cities submitted themselues. *Mahomet* herewith encouraged, assaulted the Persians and Ægyptians, exchanging with those hee conqueted, his *new Religion* for their old wealth and libertie, binding the Gouernours thereunto. But now being old, and through his intemperances weake, and diseased also with the falling Sicknesse, he coloured his often falling with pretext of *Gabriels* brightnesse, and the vnsufferable splendour of his presence.

n For the vnderstanding of this, reade *Scal. E. Tilha. c. 5.*

Hee was of meane stature, large sinewes, browne colour, broad face, with a cut lip, and had one of his fore-teeth stricken out in one Expedition, and in another his face wounded. He had a great head, thinne haires, long shankes, not proportionable to his head. He was of few words, but deceitfull; couetous, and withall prodigall, (but of other mens goods) and in deeds of lust equalling himselfe to fortie other men, or (as some say) fiftie. When hee was threescore and three yeeres of age, he dyed; of which he liued in trade of Marchandize thirtie eight, and in the Caue two; at Mecca ten, in Medina thirteene. He had commanded, that they should not burie him; for that on the third day after hee would ascend in bodie and soule into Heauen. Meanewhile the Earth being poysoned with the stinke of his Carkasse, they buryed him, not at Mecca (as some affirme) but at Medina. His Law, in his life-time, sustained many alterations; *Cellenus* his Scribe writing what himselfe pleased: and the seuerall parcels of the same being collected by *Odmen*, one of his successours, this Booke was thereupon called *Alcaron*, that is, a Summarie, or Collection of Precepts. Thus *Mahomet* aduantaged himselfe with the mutinous Rebels, Fugitiues, Vnthrifts, Apostata-Iewes, and hereticall Christians in that diseased State of the Empire: the body whereof was afflicted on the East by the Persians, on the West by the Gothes and other Barbarians, and fretted within in his owne bowels by intestine rebellions: the Soule thereof being no lesse torne and rent by the Sects and Heresies of the Arians, Donatists, Nestorians, Pelagians, and others. He fishing in these troubled waters, set on foot his new Religion, to bring light to the Gentiles, and to mitigate to the Iewes and Christians the seueritie of the Law and Gospell. But the Mahometans themselues doe report otherwise, fabling of this Fabler great matters, as if hee had been the *Promise and Hope of Nations*, and the most excellent personage of the World.

§. II.

The Saracens storie of Mahomets life.

o Legend of *Mahomet, Hermano Dalmata interprete.*

THey haue written a Booke of the generation of *Mahomet* to this effect: o The Booke of the generation of *Mahomet*, the Messenger of God, (the Prayer and Saluation of God bee vpon him) from *Adam* and *Eue*, to the time when God brought him forth, gracious perfect, and fit for himselfe. When as *Kabachbar* had learned out of the p Scriptures, and by Astrologie, that this Prophet should be borne to the world, hee heard, That there was a man borne in Iseseras, a Citie of Arabia, hauing all such markes and tokens, as hee had fore-seene by the Prophecies and his Art, *viz.* A spot on his fore-head, a print betweene his shoulders, &c. And to satisfie his desire, hee went thither to see; where finding those tokens fulfilled in young *Mahomet*, hee thereupon expounded the darke mysterie of his farre-fetched *Light*, learned of his Master *Kabelmedi*, in this manner: When *Adam* was newly created, as he stood vp, his braine shaked and made a noyse, as the leaues doe, which are shaken with the winde: whereat *Adam* wondring, God said vnto him, The sound which thou hast heard, is the signe of the Prophets and Messengers of my Commandements. Take heed therefore that thou commit the Seed of *Light* onely to worthie Loynes, and to a cleane Wombe. And this q *Light of Mahomet* that should be borne, shined from the face of *Adam*; as the Sun or Moone at the full. And when hee had begotten *Seth*, that *Light* passed instantly from the face of *Adam* into the face of *Eue*, in so much, that the birds of the Aire, and beasts of the Earth, wondred at her beautie. Yea, the Angels, euery day saluted her, and brought her odours out of Paradise, till she brought forth *Seth* alone, hauing before at euery burthen, brought forth a brother and a sister.

p These prophets were *Abnabdalla, Abnalmuiatra, Abbizeid, Abamacamet, Alabee, Alfaid, Abulambex, Ezgrigi, Abnamate, Kabalchabar* (this let of *Kabalmedi*) or *Kabalachbar.*

q Ambulmetin Chronicle saith, That this Light clue to the hands of God two thousand yeeres before *Adam*, worshipping him as the Angels; after inclosed in the Rib of *Adam*, &c.

Seth inherited this *Light*, which remained betweene heauen and earth, the Angels thereby ascending and descending vpon *Seth*, and crying alwaies, *Reioyce thou Earth, worthie of the Light of* Mahomet, *on him be Prayer and Saluation of God.* *Adam* drawing neere to his end, declared vnto him, by his Testament, the mysterie of that *Light*, and the Genealogy of the Prophets. Then descended *Gabriel* accompanied with threescore and ten thousand Angels, bearing euery one of them a white leafe and a pen, which signed the writing, for the continuance of the order of the Propheticall generation. *Seth* receiued this writing, & was cloathed with a double red garment, shining as the Sunne, as fast as the violet-flower.

From him it passed by succession to *Noe* and *Sem*; then to *Abraham*, at whose birth two lights from the East and West (meeting in the middest) lightned the whole world: and the Angels were heard singing, That it was the Light of the Prophet, *Mahomet* who should be borne of his Seed, whose Word should bee in the vertue of God. This Light passed from *Abraham* to the face of *Hagar*, being with childe, and after to *Ismael*; and God told him, That the soule of *Mahomet*, in the beginning of the Creation, was mingled with his, and that his name in Heauen should be *Asmet*, in Earth *Mahomet*, in Paradise *Abualtrazim*. At this *Sara* grieued, vntill three Angels comforted her with *the promise of* ISAAC. From *Ismael* it remoued to *Keidar* his sonne, who being indued with r *seuen Gifts*, married *Nulia* of the Land of *Isaac*, but, being warned by an Oracle, he tooke to wife *Algodira* an Arabian; and after, by diuine warning, carried the chest of this *Light* vnto *Iacob*. Then was *Hamel* borne to him, and receiued the same *Light*; in which succeeded *Thebicht, Hamiessa, Adeth, Aduue, Adne, Machat, Nixar, Musar, Alex, Madraca, Horeima, Kniena, Anofra, Melic, Falhrem, Luie, Galiben, Kab, Murran, Cudai, Abdamenef, Hesim*, a man by diuine testimonie free of all vncleannesse. To him did all Kings offer their daughters in marriage, and among the rest *Constantine*, which he refused, and married *Selue*, the daughter of *Zeit*, and had by her *Abdalmutalib*, whose Light caused raine in drought. To him an Elephant postrated himselfe, and said so with mans voice, *Saluation be on you, and on the Light that shineth out of your Reines*, Dignitie, Fame, Honor, and Victorie bee on you, and that there should proceede from him a King, greater then all the Kings of the earth: Another time, as hee slept on the stone which was placed by *Abraham* in his Oratorie at Mecca, hee dreamed of a chaine reaching East and West, and to Heauen, and to the Depth, which was presently conuerted into a flourishing heard. *Noe* and *Abraham* presented themselues interpreters of this Dreame. *Abdalla* his sonne, the father of *Mahomet*, had a Tutor giuen vnto him: to defend him from his enemies, who seemed a man, but was none. Hee was preserued from the lying in waite of the Iewes, by threescore and ten Angels, which seemed Men. Hee wedded t *Ermina*, and therefore two hundred Women perished for his loue; some hanging, some burning themselues.

r Sound, courageous, faire, swift, tall, a Hunter, and Archer.

t Or *Hermina* Daughter of *Abdemenef.*

When the prescribed time was come, in the moneth *Dulhera*, on a Fryday-night, God bad

bad *Arabian* to open the gates of Paradise, that the innermost of his secret might be manifested: for it pleaseth mee (saith hee) this night to transport the Light of my Prophet from the reines of *Abdalla* into the wombe of *Ermina*, and that it come into the world. This being done, as *Abdalla*, the Iudge and Lord of the Arabians, went into the house of Prayer, hee perceiued a great light to lighten from his house vp toward Heauen, and presently dyed. On the twelfth day of *Rab*, on a Tuseday, *Mahomet* was borne, circumcised and all frolik. And then all Idolls fell and became blacke: All Kingdomes were destroyed, and not one stood vp-right. *Lucifer* was cast into the bottome of the Sea, and in fortie dayes could not get out, and then called his fellowes, and told them, that *Mahomet* was borne with the power of the sword, who would take away all their power. The same also, GOD caused to bee proclaimed in Heauen and Earth. His mother said, that she was deliuered of him without paine, and Angelicall Birds came to nourish the child, and a man clothed in white presented him with three keyes, like to Pearles, which he tooke; the key of Victorie, the key of the Lawes, and the key of Prophecie. And after came three persons with shining faces, presenting him a Cauldron of Emeralds, with foure handles, which *Mahomet* accepted as a signe of his rule ouer all the world. The Birds, Clouds, Windes, Angels, contended for the nourishment of the childe. But the cause was determined by heauenly voice affirming. That hee should not bee taken from the hands of men. An Asse, almost famished, worshipped him, and receiuing him on her backe, became Herald to this new Prophet, with mans voyce proclaiming the worthinesse of her Carriage. Three men carried him vp into a Mountaine: of which, one opened him from the breast vnto the Nauell, and washed his entrailes with snow: the second cleaued his heart in the middest, and took out of it a black graine, saying, That it was the portion of the Deuill. The third made him whole again. *Seraphin* nourished him three yeeres, and *Gabriel* nine and twentie, who gaue vnto him, in the fortieth yeere of his age, the Law, and carried him to Heauen. This his iourney is related by Frier *Richard*, sometimes a studient in the Vniuersitie of Baldach, Chapter 14. and in his [t] life.

Gabriel, with threescore and ten paire of wings, came to *Mahomet*, in the chamber of *Aissa*, his best beloued wife, and said, That GOD would haue him to visit him where he is; and brought with him the beast *Elmparac*, or *Alborach*, of nature between a Mule and an Asse. This beast told *Mahomet*, That hee would not take him on his backe, till he had prayed to God for him. His steps were as farre as one could see, so that in the twinkling of an eye hee had brought *Mahomet* to Ierusalem. Then *Gabriel* with his girdle tyed the beast to a Rocke, and [x] carried *Mahomet* on his shoulders into heauen: where he knocked, and the Porter opened. Here *Mahomet* saw [x] troupes of Angels, and prayed twice on his knees for them: and amongst the rest, old Father *Adam*, reioycing for such a Sonne, and commending him to his prayers. Then hee brought him to the second Heauen, which was a iourney of fiue hundred yeeres, and so forth on to the seauenth Heauen: Heere hee saw the Angelicall people, euery of which was a thousand times greater then the World, and euery of them had threescore and ten thousand heads, and euery head threescore and tenne thousand mouthes, and euery mouth seuenteene hundred tongues, praysing God in seuen hundred thousand Languages. And he saw one Angell weeping, and he askedthe cause: who answered, That he was *Sinne*. And *Mahomet* prayed for him. Then *Gabriel* commended him to another Angell, and he to another, and so forth in order, till he came before GOD and his Throne. Then GOD (whose face was couered with threescore and ten thousand cloathes of light, and from whom *Mahomet* stood two stones cast below) touched him with his hand, the coldnesse whereof pierced to the marrow of his back-bone. And GOD said, I haue imposed on thee and on thy people Prayers. When hee was returned as farre as the fourth Heauen, *Moses* counselled him to returne back, to obtaine ease vnto the people, which could not beare so many praiers, which he did oftentimes, till there remained but few, thus returning to his *Elmparac*, he rod backe to his house at Mecca. All this was done in the tenth part of the night. But when he was requested to doe thus much in the peoples sight, he answered, *Praysed be* GOD, *I am a Man, and an Apostle.*

The Booke *Ascar* (saith *(Bellonius)* telleth further, That in this iourney *Mahomet* heard a womans voice, crying *Mahomet, Mahomet*, but hee held his peace. Afterwards another called him, but he gaue no answere. *Mahomet* asked the Angell, who they were? He answered, That the one was shee which published the Iewes Law, and if hee had answered her, all his Disciples should haue beene Iewes: the other was shee which deliuered the Gospell, whom if he had answered, all his followers had beene Christians.

[t] See also *Bellon. Obseruat. lib 3. cap. 7.*

[u] *La vite Mahomet* saith, In a shining ladder they went vp to heauen, where the stars hung by golden chaines, as big as mount Nebo by *Medina*.

[x] There were in the first heauen Angels of the shapes of all creatures, praying for the creatures of their shapes: and a Cock, whose feete touched one Heauen, and head the other, whose crowing moued the Cocks of the earth to doe so. In the second was *Noe*. This heauen was of gold; the third of Pearles, wherein was *Abraham* and the huge huge Angel of Death, with a booke & pen in hand, writing the times and mens liues:

[y] which fatall opinion maketh them hardie.) The fourth was of Emerald, here was *Ioseph* and the Angell of Compassion, weeping for the sinnes of men. The fifth of Diamond, and in it *Moses*. The sixth of Rubie, and in it *Iohn Baptist*. The seuenth of fire, and in it *Iesus Christ*. All these recommended their liues to his Prayers.

The

The said Booke telleth, That GOD gaue him a fiue-fold priuiledge. First, that he should bee the highest creature in heauen or earth: Secondly, the most excellent of the sonnes of *Adam*: Thirdly, an vniuersall Redeemer: Fourthly, skilfull in all languages: Fifthly, that the spoiles of Warres should be giuen him. *Gabriel*, after (saith that Booke) carryed him to Hell, to see the secrets thereof, and the seuen gates thereof, &c. where (as in the place fitest for him) wee will leaue him. The booke of the vertues of *Mahomet* saith, That in glorying of his strength hee would boast, that hee had knowne his eleuen wiues successiuely in one houre.

One of their Chronicles telleth of his Martiall affaires. This Chronicle reckoneth from *Adam* to *Noe* one thousand two hundred fortie and two yeeres: From thence to *Abraham*, one thousand and fourescore: Hence to *Moses* fiue hundred and fifteene: After him to *David*, fiue hundred threescore and nine; and from this time to *Christ*, one thousand three hundred and fiftie: from whence to *Mahomet* is numbred six hundred and twentie; in all fiue thousand three hundred threescore and sixteene, from *Adam* to *Mahomet*. All the Prophets were in number an hundred and twentie thousand, and the Messengers of GOD three hundred and fifteene: whereof *Adam, Seth, Esdrik, Noe, Abraham*, were Hebrewes; *Huth, Schale, Ismaiel, Schaib, Mahomet*, were Arabians.

If this Historie of *Mahomets* life be long and tedious, I thought good, out of an Arabian Chronicle, to adde this Epitome thereof. His Mother dyed in a iourney to Mecca, when he was fourescore yeeres old, and his Nurse restored him to his Grand-father *Abdalmutalif*, with whom hee liued eight yeeres. The Seraphim preserued him, but was neuer seene. After that, *Gabriel* was his Guardian, of whom hee receiued the Law, which he kept close three yeeres, communicating it onely to some of his owne opinion, by whose helpe hee became Priest and Prince of the Arabians and Sataceus, and about eighteene moneths after was carried into Heauen: and being returned into the Earth, he tooke *Eubocara, Ali*, and *Zaid*, to be his companions in this enterprise. He went to Zaif, or Atharf, and preached publikely, and thence to Mecca, ten yeeres going from place to place. And of his Conuerts, he chose some for guard of his Person, who sware the obseruance of his Law, to the number of fortie, who now with Word, now with the Sword, set forward this Doctrine. After ten yeeres, Mecca was peopled onely with beleeuers; and all Arabia was conuerted without difficultie. Then hee sent to the neighbouring Kings to become of his Religion; to the King of Persia, to the Roman Emperour, to King *Cinna*, to the Lord of the two Seas, to the King of Æthiopia, &c. After he returned to Ietrib, and on Tuesday, the twelfth of Rab, in the eleuenth yeere, dyed. His Sepulture was appointed by GOD, in the house of *Aysa* his Wife, in the chamber where hee was wont to sleepe, where, at this day is a Temple of bricke. His bodie was wrapped in three white clothes, without any pompe. His seale was a siluer Ring, with this inscription, *Mahomet the Messenger of God*. He went twise on Pilgrimage, and nineteene times conducted an Armie.

The place of his burial is at Medina, surnamed of him Talnabi *, that is, of the Prophet; not (as some write) at Mecca. Neither doth his corps hang in the ayre by force of Loadstones drawing vp his yron Coffin or Chest, but lieth buried in the ground (if any whete) as *Ludouicus Verttomannus*, by his owne view, hath obserued. Of this place, and of Mecha, we shall speake more, in relating the Rites of the Pilgrims that visit them.

* *Nabi*, a Prophet.

The Booke of the Policie of the Turkish Empire.

Some relate otherwise of the death of *Mahomet*, as that hee dyed at fortie yeeres of age, being poysoned by one of his disciples, called *Albunor*, to make triall of his boasting Prophesie, that he would rise againe within three daies after his death. This *Albunor* after comming to see him, found his bodie torne in pieces, and deuoured of dogs: whereupon gathering together the bones that remained, into a Coffin, hee caused them to bee buried. Which in my minde is not so probable as the former report. The day of his death *Scaliger* accounteth the tenth yeere of the *Hegira*, on Munday the twelfth of *Rabie* 1. or rather the euening before, that is, the sixteenth of *Iune*, in the yeere of our Lord 631. and was borne the fifth of *May, An. Dom.* 570. on the same day and moneth, sixtie three Arabike yeeres before.

Scal. E. T. p. 741.

Vnto this which hath been spoken, I haue thought good to adde out of Arabike Authors, collected by *Gabriel* and *John* the Maronites this which followeth. *Mahomed* was borne at Mecca, and in the fortieth yeere of his age, and as *Ben-Casem* hath, in the 933. of *Alexander* the Great, began to vtter his doctrine, first priuily, after that publikely; whereupon hee was banished the Citie in the fiftie two of his life, or according to *Abdillatif Ben-Iusef*, the fiftie three, and fled to *Iathreb*, from which flight, which they call *Hegeraton*, or *Hegera*, which hapned *A. D.* 622. or thereabouts. And although this yeere 1623. bee to them 1032. Yet, because they reckon according to the yeeres of the Moone, which they say consist of three hundred fifte foure dayes, the Moones course hath in this space exceeded that of the Sunne, some moneths about thirtie one yeeres. Whereupon their moneths are vncertaine.

Computation of their *Hegera*.

Note for reconciliation thereof with Christian account.

saine. In this Citie by subtile hypocrisies, *Mahomed* became Politicall and Ecclesiasticall Prince; and beganne to procure the friendship of many, and to promulgate his lawes by degrees. In the second yeere of his flight, he enacted his lawes of Fasting; in the third, forbade wine and swines-flesh; and so proceeded with the rest, that within eight yeeres, hee brought into subiection Mecca (whence he had beene expulsed) and Muna, and went forward with his law and conquest. As concerning his wiues, *Ben-Casem* saith, he had foure: hee is also reported to haue many harlots and concubines: and in this Chapiter *Surato-lbaqra*, or *de vacca*, hee bids them *marrie one, two, three, or foure wiues a man, and to take as many concubines as they are able to keepe. Ben-Sidi Ali* saith, That he gloried that he had the power of ten Prophets in copulation giuen him by God: yea, he ascribed all his villanies to God, by ministerie of the Angell *Gabriel*. His first wife was named *Chodaige*, by whom he had two sonnes, and foure daughters, *Zainab*, *Fatema* (whom *Ali* married) *Om Kalthum* the third, and *Rakia* the fourth (both which *Abu-beer* married.) His second wife was *Aisee* daughter of *Abu-Beer* the first *Chalifa*, which was but six yeeres old (*Ben-Casem* is our Author) when *Mohamed* tooke her to wife: the Mosllemans call her *The Mother of the faithfull*: who besides the knowledge of tongues, perused diligently the Arabike histories, loued exceedingly, and alway prailed *Mohamed*. The third was named *Mary*, which brought forth to *Mohamed Ebrahim*, sirnamed *Casem* (whence *Mohamed* is often called *Abulcasem*) though *Ben-Abdilatif* will haue *Ebrahim* to be one, and *Casem* another; but *Ben-Casem* saith, he had but three sonnes, of which *Ebrahim Casem* dyed at eighteene moneths, and *Taiheb* and *Taher* his sonnes by *Codaige*, dyed both in their cradles. *Mohameds* last wife was *Zainab*, whom also they call the *Mother of the faithfull*, before the wife of *Zaid Ben-Harteh*, *Mohameds* Master, who diuorced her, whereupon *Mohamed* gladly tooke her to wife.

Mohameis fifth wife.

His foure wiues and his children.

Mother of the Mosllemans.

He had foure Councellors or Companions; the first, *Abdollah*, or *Abu-Bacr*, his sincerest and most inward friend, a man very rich, and releeuer of *Mohameds* necessities, his successour after his death. He dyed the thirteenth yeere of the *Hegira*, and sixtie three of his age, and was buried in the same graue with *Mohamed*. The second was *Homar* the sonne of *Chattab*, sirnamed *Farnq*, who succeeded *Abi-Bacr*, and ruled ten yeeres and six moneths. Hee was the first which was called *King of the faithfull*, and writ the Annalls of the Mosllemans, and brought the Alcoran into a Volume, and caused the Ramadam Fast to be obserued. He was slaine the twentie three of the *Hegira*, and buried by *Abi-Bacr*. The third was *Otbman*, who in his twelue yeeres raigne subdued Cyprus, Naisabur, Maru, Sarchas, and Maritania, and dyed *A. H.* 35. and was buried in the buriall place of the Citie. *Aali* is the fourth, who is called also *Emir Elmumenin*, that is, *King of the faithfull*; Hee was slaine *A. H.* 40. in the sixtie three of his age, and was buried in the Citie Kerbelai. Hee was Vncles sonne, or Cosin-German to *Mohamed*, and his sonne-in-law, and deare familiar from his youth, and receiued the Mosleman law together with *Mohamed*; whereupon hee was wont to say, *I am the first Mosleman*. And therefore the Persians detest the other three *Chalifas*, as heretikes, burne their writings wheresoeuer they finde them, and persecute their followers, beecause forsooth they were so impudent, to prefer themselues before *Aali*, and spoiled him of the right-due by Testament. Hence are wars & hostile cruelties betwixt them & the Turks, and Arabs. *Mohamed* the false prophet, in the eleuenth yeere after his *Hegira* or flight, and the sixtie three of his age, dyed at Medina, and was buried there in the graue of *Aaisee* his wife. Here is a stately Temple and huge, erected with elegant and munificent structure, daily increased and adorned by the costs of the *Othomans*, and gifts of other Princes. Within this building is a Chappell not perfectly square, couered with a goodly roofe, vnder which is the Vme of stone, called *Hagiar Monaiiar*, sometimes belonging to *Aaisee* aforesaid. This is all couered with gold and silke, and compassed about with yron grates guilded. Within this, which shineth with gold and gems, *Mohameds* carcasse was placed, and not lifted vp by force of Load-stone or other Art; but that stone-Vme lieth on the ground.

His foure associates, or counsellors. *Abi-Bacr*. *Homar*.

Otbman.

Aali.

Mohameds death and Sepulchre.

The Mosleman Pilgrims after their returne from Mecca, visit this Temple, because *Mohamed* yet liuing was wont to say, That hee would for him which should visit his Tombe, as well as if he had visited him liuing, intercede with God for a life full of pleasures. Therefore do they throng hither with great veneration kisse and embrace the grates (for none haue access to the Vme of stone) and many for loue of this place leaue their Country, yea, some madly put out their eyes to see no worldly thing after, and there spend the rest of their dayes. The compasse of Medina is two miles, and is the circuit of the wall, which *Aadhd Addaule* King of Baghdad built *A. H.* 364. The territorie is barren scorched Sands, bringing forth nothing but a few Dates and Herbes.

CHAP.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the Alcoran, or Alfurcan, containing the Mahometan Law: the summe and contents thereof.

§. I.

Of the Compositions of the Alcoran.

THe Booke of *Mahomets* Law is called by the name of ALCORAN, which signifieth *a collection of* [a] *Precepts*; and *Alfurcan*, (as it is expressed and expounded in a Booke, [b] called, The Exposition or Doctrine of the Alcoran) because the sentences and figures thereof are seuered and distinguished, for *Al* is the Article, and *phurcan* signifieth a *distinction*, or as some say, *Redemption*. *Claude Duret* citeth an opinion that of the Hebrew word *Kara*, which signifieth the *Law* or *Scripture*, commeth this word *Koran*, which with the Article *Al* signifieth τὴν γραφὴν *the Scripture*, as with them it is esteemed: The like hath *Soranzo*. Master *Bedwel* in his Arabian Trudg-man, saith, that the *Thema* is not KARANA, *coniunxit, colligit*, as before is deliuered; but KARA which signifies to read, so that *Alkoran* in Arabike, is iust as much as *Hammikra* is in Hebrew, that is, *the Text, Corpus iuris*, the authentical bodie of their Law. It is called in that language the *Koran*, without the Article *Al*, and *Korran* (so *Cantacuzenus*, τὸ βιβλίον Αἰβραϊστὶ Κοῦρραν ἀναγιγνώσκουσι) as if one should say, their *Bible, Scripture*, or *Booke of the Law*.

a Robertus Retinensis.
b Hermen. Dal. interpretes.

The Word of GOD (saith *Mahomet* in that Booke) came not to mee all at once, as the Law vnto *Moses*, the Psalmes to *Dauid*, and the Gospell to *Christ*. The Sentences or Chapters thereof are called Azoaras, which is interpreted a Face, as wee call them *Capita, Heads*. So saith one which hath written Notes vpon the *Alcoran*: but Master *Bedwel* (who hath published an Index or Table of all these Azoara's or Chapiters with their Arabike Titles, as they are named and cited by the Mahometans) saith, That they call the name of the Chapiter *Sura*, and with their Article *Assura*, or *Suraton, Assurato*. And hee deriues of the Hebrew word *Zobar* that *Azoara*: but this Arabike *Sura* is expressed not by *Zain, He*, but by *Sin, Waw*, and *Resh*, differing letters, being no other then the Syrian Suriya, which signifieth, *principium initium*. For as the Bookes of *Moses* in the Hebrew, and the Sections of the Ciuill and Canon Law: so these Chapiters, for the most part, are denominated of some notable word in the beginning of the same: and are so cited by Mahometans and learned Christians. Yet these sometime name it by the interpretation, as the chap. Albacara, the chap of the Cow, because the word so signifies. The stile [c] is not in Meter, as some haue imagined: for *Iosephus Scaliger* [d] (a great Criticke, and reputed one of the greatest Linguists in the world) affirmeth, That that Language is not capable of metricall measures by quantities of Syllables; as neither the Hebrew, Abyssine, or Syrian. Hee saith yet, That the Alcoran is composed in Rime, but such, as is not in any tunable proportion; but that word, which maketh vp the Rime, being sometimes neerer, and sometimes farre beyond all harmony, distant from that word whereto it answereth. A hobbling kinde of Rime, saith Master *Bedwel* (in his *Index Alcorani*) and rude Poeme, without all care, for (it is *Postellus* his testimony) you shall haue a petiod of two hundred Syllables to rime, and hold like cadence to as other very short. *Scaliger* addes, that at the end of such Rimes are set the figures of Flowers, or some such matter: which if it beso, the Turkish nicetie of making no likenesse of any thing in their Carpets, or other workes, is stricter then these Alcoran bookes themselues: and indeed is not common with them vnto other Mahometans, who vse their liberties in this point.

c The stile of it.
d *In annotationibus in Euseb. Chron. Solum Canticum Moses extremo Deuteronomio, Proverbia Salomonis, & totus fere liber Iob, quædã rythmi necessitate cohibentur, qui rythmus est instar duorum dimetrorum Iambicorum.— Sed aliquando pauciorum sunt syllabarum, aliquando plurium, &c.— Nam vt in Hebraico, Syriaco, Arabico & Abyssino idiomate vlla metris species coniici possit, nemo efficere possit, quia id natura sermonis non patitur.*

For the words and [e] phrase; no man euer writ any thing in Arabian more rudely (saith an Arabian Christian in confutation hereof) and much better might *Muzeilenia, Heltaiy*, and *Alabazbi* the Æthiopian, and *Calliata Ellecedi*, which vpon emulation composed also euer one an Alcoran, glory of those their Workes, containing more honestie and truth. Neither hath it pleased any noble or wise man, but the rude vulgar: of which sort the wearie Labourers gladly gaue eare to his promise of Paradise, the poore delighted to heare of Gardens in Persia, and Bankrupts and Felons easily listened to security and liberties. The language is vulgar, (*Postellus* also testifieth) and without all Art of Grammar: such as is obserued of their learned Writers; without all bounds of reason or eloquence. The Method [f] is so confused, that our Arabian Author (who liued before it was so generall embraced

e The Phrase.
f The method

embraced, and in freer times) saith, That hee had heard euen good Saracens affirme with griefe, that it was so mixed and heaped together, that they could finde no Reason in it. Bad Rine, as you haue heard, and worse Reason. *Hierome Sauanorola* [e] hath the like saying, That no man can finde herein any order: Nor could so confused and foolish a Worke proceed from any naturall or supernaturall light. It is yet craftily [f] contriued, when hee hath set downe some wicked doctrine, presently to lace and fringe it with precepts of Fasting, Prayer, or good manners: alwayes taking away things hard to bee beleeued or practised: and where it deliureth any truth, it is mayned with defect, eclipsed with obscuritie, and serueth for a bale to falshood. *Erpenius* hath translated the Chapiter of *Ioseph*, containing a hundred and seuen Verses; the second of which calls it Coran, and the next Alcoran, the Article added. His Annotation is *Per verbum Dei intelligunt legem suam quæ Coranus ipsis dicitur, & quam Mahamed ijs persuasit vaticus ad se demissam.* And although the matter bee absurd and impious, yet he saith (others perhaps haue of zeale said other wise) that this Coran is composed with such puritie of speech, accurate analogie, and expressed with perfection of writing, that deseruedly it is to them the matter and rule of Grammar. They call it Koran of a word which signifies to *read*, as a *reading* Lecture, or *collection of Chapiters*, as the learned Arabs will haue it. It is not much lesse then the New Testament in words. The Arabs extoll it aboue all creatures, and ranke it next to God, and thinke him vnworthy to liue, which toucheth it vnreuerent as a contemner of God. They vse it therefore with all reuerence, nor will permit a Christian or a Iew to touch it: to sit on it is a grieuous crime capitall to Iewes or Christians. Nor may they themselues touch it vnwashed, and therefore write on the couer thereof, *Let no man touch it but he which is cleane.* In it are one hundred and fourteen Chapiters of vnequall quantitie (that of *Ioseph* the twelfth) the second as large as the last fortie. The first is but of six Verses, and therefore not reckoned a Chapiter by our Country-man *Robert* of *Reading*, who also diuides the sixe following into more by tenne, that the seuenth is his seuenteenth. Euery Chapiter hath the name of the first word, or of the subiect, as this is called *Ioseph*; the first, *opening*, because it presents it selfe at the opening of the booke. It was composed out of diuers papers of *Mahamed*, found at his house (which hee professed to receiue from *Gabriel* at diuers times) by *Abubecr* his father in law, the *Numa* of that Saracen Empire. Each Chapiter is called *Sourato*, and with the Article *Assurato*, whence the Latine call it *Azoara* (*z.* for *ss.*) and *o.a* for *o.u*) as in the word *Alcoran*: it is not to be construed *vultus*, but *gradus*, a *degree* or *step*; for these steps the whole is passed: and each of these was a *lesson* also to be conned of children and of his disciples. After these fancies had caused him to bee expelled Mecca, he sled ten dayes off to Iathrib, and there diuulged the rest. This is called Medina, and Medinatalnabi, the *Citie of the Prophet*: and hence some Chapiters haue title of Mecca, some of Medina. This flight was the fifteenth of *Iuly* at night, *A.* 622. which is their *Era* or computation of their yeeres, reckoned by the Moone: so that their 1026. began the twentie ninth of *December A. D.* 1616. Euery Chapiter consists of Verses very vnequall and lame affected rithmes. Yea, sometimes a sentence is patched in, to make vp a rithme. Before euery Chapiter is prefixed *Bismillahirrahmanirrahimi*, for so they read it coined together with Articles, as if it were all one word: the signification is, *In nomine Dei miseratoris misericordiæ*, that is, *In the name of God shewing mercie, merciful*, which is as much as *summè misericordis*, exceedingly merciful (or merciful in Act and Nature.) To these words they ascribe innumerable mysteries and vertues; so that they thinke that almost no worke can haue good successe, vnlesse they preface it with this sentence. Therefore in the beginning of their bookes they vse it, and whatsoeuer businesse they goe about (*if it be to mount their horse, or set forth to rowe a boat*, &c. as I haue beene told.) Also there are in the beginning of Chapiters, fourteene mystical words of the signification, whereof the Arabs professe their vncertaintie, and *Abubecr* was wont to say, That in euery booke God kept some what secret to himselfe, which in the Alcoran were those mystical beginnings of Chapiters. Diuers haue diuersly deuised to hunt out Cabalistical senses and state-periods, with other vanities from them. They hold that all the Alcoran was sent in one night, which they call therefore, *nox demissionis & nox potentiæ*, and lest it might breed a contradiction that some parts were deliuered at Mecca (for so it must be written, not Mecha) they say, that *Mahamed* receiued them by pieces of the Angell, as occasions required; but hee from God all in one night: and so they will haue the name signifie also a booke sent from heauen. Thus much *Erpenius* in his Annotations on that Chapiter, wherein also he blameth the old translation of *Robert Reading*, as in other things, so in that, that when his mistresse brought *Ioseph* before other women, they were all (saith the translation) *menstruous, and cut their hands, saying, hee was rather an Angel then a man.* He translates for *menstruate sunt, magnificarunt eum*, they *magnified him*; adding concerning that cutting off the hand, that it is still an vse of the Arabs, Persians, and people of the East to expresse loue. My friend Mr. *Bedwel* forte yeeres studious of Arabike, hath

e *Hieron. Sauan.*

f The subtilty.

Rit. Florentinus.

hath told mee that that translation of *Reading* is generally reasonable well done; nor is so faultie as some will haue it, or much reading supply that way. As for other supply, it needs a sword (like that Gordian knot) rather then a penne, that (as by the sword it hath beene obtruded on the world, as a iust punishment of ingratitude to the Sonne of God the eternall Truth; and not by reasons or Scriptures, which it corrupts, mingles, mangles, maimes, as the Impostors obliuion sometimes, sometimes the memorie of his owne designes occasioned, so) by the sword and fire it may be rooted out of the world againe. The first Surat or Chapiter, which is the *Pater noster* or daily prayer of the Muhamedans, I will transcribe out of *Erpenius*, called by them, *Opening*, as before is said, and the *Mother of the booke, foundation, treasure, and perfection. In the name of God, the shower of mercie, mercifull. Praise to God the Lord of the Creatures, the shower of mercie, mercifull; the King of the day of Iudgement. Wee worship thee, and we call vpon thee. Direct vs into the right way, the way of them who are gracious towards them, without anger against them, and not them which erring not, Amen.* The Copies of [d] the Alcaron were diuers; and after *Mahomets* death made (if it could be) worse, at least otherwise, then he left them. For *Hali* had one Copie left him by *Mahomet*, which the Iewes corrupted, adding, racing, changing at their pleasure, and promised him their assistance, if hee would professe himselfe a Prophet. But *Ozimen* commanded all the Bookes to be brought and deliuered into the hands of *Zeidi* and *Abdalla*, to bring all into one booke, and, where they dissented, to reade after the Copie of *Corais*, and to burne all the rest.

d The agreement of Copies.

They thus composed the Alcoran, whereof they left foure Copies, which after were lost. And yet *Hali*, *Abitalib*, and *Ibenmuzad* then refused to deliuer their Bookes: Whereupon arose diuers Readings, and afterward diuers Schismes; which to compound, others often endeuoured by like labours after, but could not throughly perfect the same. Neither doth that which we haue translated, agree with those things which Frier *Richard*, and others cite out of it, in their confutations thereof.

e The truth of the matter in it.

f *In. Ludouic. Viu.*

The [e] truth thereof is such in his deuisings of new, and seeking and altering the old, that it is not probable in *Viues* opinion, that euer hee read the Old and New Testament: For (saith [f] he) though I think of him exceeding badly, yet think I him not so mad to change and wrest the Scripture, there especially, where it made nothing against him; but he had partly heard of such things, partly was so perswaded by his fellowes, Apostata-Iewes and Christians. This timing, hath, confused, packing worke, disagreeing each Copie from other, and all from truth and honestie, hath beene translated into Latine [h] once by an English man, *Robertus Retinensis*; and after by *Ioannes Segobiensis*, a Spaniard, at the Councell of Constance; and after out of Arabian into Italian, published by *Andrea Arimabene*. The first and last of these, (that of *Robert* of *Reading*, and the Italian) translations are here by vs followed. For the Arabike I vnderstand not, nor can warrant this, when so great a man as *Scaliger* findeth great fault with it: He that vnder ooke to mend the Latine stile, marred the sense; and the Italian beguileth the world, in professing to haue translated out of the Arabike. Thus *Scaliger*, who mentioneth another translation then in hand, which we are almost out of hope to see. In the meane while, such as we haue, we giue to you.

g The Translators.

h *Anno* 1141. Moued by *Pet. Cluniacensis*, who c. Epistle thereof to S. *Bern.* is extant.

It containeth Chapters, or *Azoara's* 124. euery of them beginning, *In the name of the mercifull and pittifull God. Euthymius Zigabenus* mentioneth but 113. Mr. *Bedwel* saith, that all the Arabike copies which euer hee saw, whether written in the East, or West amongst the Moores in Barbarie, doe constantly with one consent reckon 114. The reason of this difference is this, some Interpreters doe not account the first for any Chapiter, but make it a kinde of Preface. *Robert* of *Reading* of the second Chapter maketh foure, of the third three, of the fourth foure, of the fifth two, of the sixth three. The first [i] of these are the words of *Mahomet*, and is called the *Mother of the Booke*, and is as it were their Creede: the rest are all deliuered as the words of GOD; hee being induced as speaker. The first is in this sense. *In the name of the mercifull and pittifull God. Thankes bee vnto God, the Lord of the World, mercifull, pittifull, Iudge of the day of Iudgement. Wee pray vnto thee: wee trust in thee. Lead vs into the right way, the way of them whom thou hast chosen, not of them with whom thou art angrie, and of the Infidels. Postellus* [k] thus translateth it. *In the name of God, mercifull, pittifull. Praise bee to God, King of the World, mercifull, and pittifull; King of the day of Iudgement; O let vs serue him, and wee shall bee helped; Direct vs in the right point; the point of them with whom thou art well pleased; without anger against them; and they shall not erre.* This prayer is (saith hee) as common to them as the Lords Prayer to vs: and is so ouer and ouer with battologies by some of them repeated, that they will say ouer the same word, or two, or three words an hundred times, saying, *Alhamdu lillah, hamdu lillah, hamdu lillah*, and so on with these, and the other words in like manner. And thus doth the Priest [l] in their publike prayers; which (they say) supplieth the defects of such as are negligent in praying: some will say, and repeat it in the fields, till with wearinesse they fall downe.

i In the Italian are 114. chapt. besides this first: and the Easterne Saracens reckon it but one *Azoara* to the fifth. *Bellon. l. 3.* diuided it into foure bookes and 1 at. chap.

k *Postel. de orbis concordia. l. 1. c. 13.*

Others

Others with wheeling about their bodies, till they be besides themselues, and then in imitation of *Mahomet*, vtter some ridiculous, obscure, phantasticall speeches. They diuide it into seuen periods, which they call miracles, as they are here by the points. That which is before them, *In the name, &c. Mahomet* vsed to vtter alwayes, when hee arose from his sicknesse or trance; and therefore is prefixed to all the Chapters; and by deuout Authors also in the beginning of their Philosophicall workes. By these words, *the point, and the right point* they vnderstand the Alcoran. Now let vs see the Doctrine contained in this booke, which with much labour I haue thus reduced into Theologicall heads, reducing that which therein is confusedly heaped and handled in diuers places, to this Method, naming the Chapter or Azoara, where the Reader may finde each sentence.

§. II.

The Doctrine of the ALCORAN *brought into common Places.*

OF * GOD he a writeth, that he is *One*, necessary to all, incorporeall, which neither hath begotten, nor is begotten, nor hath any like him: the Creator, long-suffering, searcher of the heart, true. That he will confound inchantments, that without his gift, none can beleeue (this his Alcoran) that hee hath no sonne, for hee needeth nothing b, and he which setteth a second in the place of GOD, shall goe into hell, *Az.* 31. and he hath no partaker, 32. yet in *Azoar.* 67. hee induceth God, speaking thus: To Christ the sonne of *Marie*, wee haue giuen the Gospell, that by him men may obtaine the loue and fauour of GOD: and that the beleeuers amongst them (Christians) shall receiue a great reward: as also in *Az.* 2. he saith, Euery one whosoeuer liueth rightly, be he Iew or Christian, or if he leaueth his owne Law, and embrace another, if hee worship GOD, and doe good, shall vndoubtedly obtaine Diuine fauour. *Az.* 2. The Creator said, I am the onely Creator, *always the same*, pittifull, merciful, besides whom there is none other; whose miracles and great workes are vnto the wise the frame of Heauen and Earth, the intercourse of night and day, the ships in the Sea fit for the vse of men, raine for the refreshing of the earth, the composition of all creatures, the windes, the cloudes, &c. 15. Inuoke and worship one GOD alone. 43. All the miracles of GOD cannot bee written, if all the Trees in the world were pennes, and the Sea seuen times greater, and were inke; with whom it is a small thing to raise the dead.

* Of God and Christ.

a *Az.* 112.

b *Az.* 20.

OF THE BIRTH OF CHRIST hee writeth thus, *Azo.* 29. Wee sent our *Spirit to Marie* (the best of all women, and the wombe vntouched, *Azoar.* 31.) in likenesse of a man, professing himselfe a Diuine Messenger concerning a Sonne, &c. And when shee in trauell plained, Christ came from vnder her, and said, *Feare not:* and when some chid with her about the childe, the childe it selfe made answere, *I am the Seruant and Prophet of God.* He saith, the Iewes did not slay Christ, but one like him: *Azo.* 11. and vpbraideth them for not receiuing him, *Azo.* 2. and chap. 4. To Christ the Sonne of *Marie*, properly communicating our owne soule, wee haue giuen him strength and power more then other Prophets: yet chap. 13. he disclaimeth that worship which is done him and his mother.

Of Christ.

Az. 4. Wee giuing our soule to Christ, the Sonne of *Marie*, preferred him before all others, that had beene exalted by me, to speake with GOD, to power and vertue. He inserteth the Prayer of the Virgins Mother, when shee felt her selfe with childe by *Ioachim*; and matcth *Zacharie* to be the Virgins Tutor. 5. Who (hee saith) for his vnbelieffe was dumbe three dayes. The Angell saluted *Marie*, saying, O thou the pureft of all women and men, deuoted to GOD. Ioy vnto thee of that great Messenger, with the Word of GOD, whose name is IESVS CHRIST, an excellent man, at the command of the Creator: he shal come with Diuine power, with knowledge of all learning, with the Booke of the Law and Gospell; shall giue Commandements to the Israelites; shall giue life; cure diseases; shew what is to be eaten, and to be done; shall confirme the Old Testament; shall make some things lawfull, which before were vnlawfull, &c. Hee acknowledgeth that his Mother knew not man. 11. They say (the Iewes) that they killed Christ, the Sonne of *Marie*, the Messenger of GOD, but it was not true, but they crucified in his stead another like him; for the incomprehensible GOD caused him to goe vnto Him. IESVS is the Spirit, and Word, and Messenger of GOD, sent from heauen. 11. And GOD spake to him (*Az.* 13.) and gaue him a cleane and blessed soule, whereby he made yellow formes of birds, and breathing on them, made them flie. Hee cured one borne blinde, and the leprous, and, raised the dead. GOD taught him the Booke and Wisdome, and the Gospell and Testament.

c Of his law, and the followers therof.

Concerning c his LAVV and ALCORAN, he handleth it in the second Chapter of *Azoara*, which beginneth thus. *In the name of the mercifull and pittifull God.* This booke without any falsehood or errour, shewing the Truth (to them which loue, feare, and worship GOD, and are studious of prayers and almes) and the obseruation of the lawes giuen of GOD from heauen to thee and other thy Predecessors, and the hope of the world to come, hath manifested the true Sect. For this bringeth the followers thereof to the highest, inricheth them with the highest good, as to the vnbeleeuers and erroneous, it menaceth truely the greatest euill to come. This hee after applieth to Paradise and Hell, which is due to the Enemies of GOD and *Michael*, and the *Archangels*. This his Alcoran hee calleth the establishing of the Law of the Israelites: and *Az.* 21. hee arrogateth to his Booke, wisdome and eloquence: and 47. hee saith, d it was composed of the incomprehensible and wise GOD, euery where agreeing with it self, and calleth it (63.) the Booke of *Abraham*: and (69.) if it should be placed on a Mountaine, that Mountaine for Diuine feare would be dissolued. Those which will not be conuerted, take and slay, by all meanes intrapping them: and fight against them till they be your Tributaries and Subiects. And 18. the fifth part of all the prey is due vnto GOD, and his Prophet, and to your Kindred and Orphans, and the poore. Those that are taken in Warre, kill or make slaues; but pardon them if they will turne to your Law, and GOD also will pardon them. Such good Warriours shall haue full pardon. The Iewes and Christians (contrarie to that he had said before) let GOD confound. He hath sent his Messenger with the right way and good law, that he may manifest and extoll it aboue all lawes. Of the twelue moneths, foure are to be consecrated to fight against the enemies. Those that refuse this war-fare, lose their soules, and they which flie in the day of battell (*Az.* 6.) doe it by the Deuils instigation, thus punishing them for their former sinnes: Yea, the Deuils themselues *Az.* 56. being conuerted thereby, say to their Diobolicall Nation, We haue heard a Booke sent after *Moses*, which approoueth all his sayings, and teacheth the true and right way. And *Az.* 12. he calls the Alcoran a Booke of truth sent from aboue, a Confirmer of Christs Precepts: Hee saith, *Az.* 15. That *Moses* deliuered some things in writing, more vnwritten. He makes his Booke to bee the same which GOD had taught *Abraham, Ismael, Isaac, Iacob, Moses*, and CHRIST. *Az.* 5. he saith, his booke containes some things firme, and without exception, some things contrarie, which froward men peruert to controuersies: but the exposition thereof belongs to GOD onely, and to the wisest which beleeue that all of it came from God. *Az.* 6. he excites them to defend it when hee shall be dead or slaine, and God will reward them. Neither can any die, but by the will of God, to wit, in the *time appointed*. They which in the expedition shall haue pardon, which is better then all possessions, and an easie iudgement. And they which die in the wayes of God, are not to bee esteemed dead, for they liue with GOD. That life is firme, this and all worldly things mutable. 7. If the Alcoran (*Az.* 9.) were not of God, it would haue many contrarieties in it, which himselfe yet *Az.* 5. confesseth. They which are well (*Az.* 10.) and remaine at home, are not of like merit, as they which goe to warre. The fire of Hell is hotter then the danger of warre. And although thou (Prophet) shouldest pardon the resisters of God and his Messenger seuentie times, yet God will neuer pardon them. The sicke and weake, and such as haue not necessaries, are excused from this necessitie of warre: but to the good Warriours God giueth Paradise, in reward of their soules and goods, whether they kill or be killed. *Az.* 18. 19. And in 57. Kill the vnbeleeuers whom you conquer, till yet haue made great slaughter. God could take vengeance on them, but hee chuseth rather to doe it by you: he shall lay deafenesse and blindnesse on the faint-hearted. Yet in 32. and 98. as contrary to himselfe hee affirmeth, that hee is sent onely to teach, not to compell and force men to beleeue: and *Az.* 4. Offer no man violence for the law; then the right way and the euill are opened: except wee expound it rather, that Iewes, Christians, and all vnbeleeuers, are compelled to bee tributaries and their slaues; not forced to their Religion, but instructed onely; which agreeth with their practise. From this Doctrine and the of Destinie in the 50. *Az.* hath risen their forwardnesse to the warre, and the greatness of their Conquests. Agreeable to this doctrine is their manner of teaching: the Reader or Preacher (as saith Frier *Richard*, Student amongst them in the Vniuersitie of Baldach) holdeth a bare sword in his hand, or fetteth it vp in an eminent place, to the terrour of the gaine-sayers.

d *Azoara*. 47.

c *Mahomet* disclaimeth diuine miracles, and humane Disputations, prouing with the sword.

But *Disputation* e and reasoning about his Law, hee vtterly disliketh, *Az.* 32. To such a will dispute with thee, answer that God knoweth all thy doings, which in the last day shall determine all controuersies. And 50. Nothing but euill cleaueth to the heart of such as vnwisely dispute of diuine Precepts: but commend thou thy selfe vnto God, that knoweth a thing

things. And Chap.4. 15. Hee is commanded to goe away from such. This Booke is giuen to take way discord from men: miracles he distlaimeth as insufficient proofe: for though it should make plaine the mountaines, and make the dead to speake, yet they would be incredulous: But it is thy dutie onely to shew them my Precepts, *Ac.o.* 23. And *Ac.* 10. Yee which ate good, beleeue in GOD. in his Messenger, and in the Booke sent from Heauen. They which first beleeue, and after deny, and become incredulous, shall haue no pardon nor mercy of GOD, but shall goe into the fire. And (11.) We will bring infinite euill vpon him, that will not obey GOD and his Messenger, and will be *Disputing*. To them which f demand that the Booke may raine vpon them from Heauen, thou shalt say, That some asked a greater thing of *Moses*, that he would shew GOD vnto their eyes, and were therefore smitten with lightning from Heauen. (12.) To Iewes and Christians, GOD hath giuen disagreements, till GOD shall determine the same at the day of Iudgement. Make not your selues Companions of them which deride our Law. No man receiueth the perfection of the Law, but he which beleeueth the Testament, the Gospell; and this Booke sent of GOD. 14. They which erte will say, Let GOD shew vs miracles. These hurt none but their owne soules, for if they should see all g miracles done, they would dispute with thee, saying, That they could not be done but by inchantments. Thou shalt not come to them with manifest miracles; for they would refuse them, as odious things. 15. Dispute not with them which will not heare; and if they demand miracles, say, GOD only doth them: I know not the secrets of GOD, and follow nothing but that which GOD and the Angell hath commanded; and if Angels should speake to such, they would not beleeue. 16. GOD himselfe and his holy Spirit haue compounded this most true Booke. 26. 44. They which say his Law is new or fained, go to the Deuil. 47. He inducerh some gaine-sayers, saying, We will not leaue worshipping our Images for this Iester and Rimer. Yet is he alone come with the truth, confirming all the other Messengers. 55. He saith, I (GOD) writ this Booke with my owne hand. 56. The vnbeleeuers say I am a Magician, and haue fained it: but then I pray GOD I may haue no part in him when he shall be our Iudge. Say not there are three GODS, but one GOD alone without a Sonne, to him all things are subiect. Christ cannot deny but that he is subiect to GOD, as well as the Angels. 12. We sent Christ, to whom we gaue the Gospell, which is the light and confirmation of the Testament, and the right way to him which feareth GOD: The complement of the Iewish law. Therefore let euery seruant of the Gospel follow his precepts, otherwise he shall be a bad man. No religion or law attaines to perfection, but such as obey the precepts of the Testament and the Gospel, and this Booke (the Alcoran) sent from GOD. To beleeuing Iewes and Christians he promiseth pardon: but *Ac.* 13. preferres the Christians to the Iewes. All that say that Christ is GOD, are vnbeleeuers and lyers (Christ which will be partaker, shall be cast into the fire eternall. Christ is but the Messenger of GOD, before whom were many Messengers: and his Mother was true, and they did eat. Christ was cleane and blessed, he cured the leprous, raised the dead, taught wise come, the Testament, and the Gospell. The vnbeleeuing Israelites beleeued that he was a Magician. And 4. We haue giuen a good place and abounding with water to the Sonne of *Marie*, and to *et*, for hauing done such miracles in the world.

Of the h Creation he affirmeth (*Ac.* 2.) that when GOD had made the world, he disposed the seuen Heauens: he told the Angels he would make one *like vnto himselfe* in the earth: they answer, We in all things are subiect to your Maiestie, and giue praise vnto you: But he will be wicked, and a shedder of blood. Then GOD testifying, that he knew a thing not known to the Angels, taught *Adam* the names of things by himselfe, not knowne to the Angels, and therefore commanded the Angels to doe reuerence before *Adam*, which wicked *Belzebub* refused; they obeyed. And *Ac.* 25. We made man of clay, and I breathed in him a portion of mine owne soule, after that I had created the Deuill of pestiferous fire: and because *Belzebub* refused to humble himselfe to this man (made of blacke mire) he was damned, and when he desired respite till the resurrection, it was denied: and therefore he said he would teach all euill things, that they shall not giue thee thankes, &c. Of the Angels affirmeth (45.) that some of them haue two wings, some three, some foure: and (52.) the Heauen would fall vpon men, were it not for the Angels that call vpon GOD.

OF i PARADISE he dreameth in this sort. *Ac.* 5. and 65. He which feareth GOD, shall receiue the two Paradises full of all good, pleasant with streaming fountaines. There they shall possesse rings of Gold, Chaines, Iewels, clothed with Cloth of Gold; their beds shall be of Gold, and this for euer. There they shall lie on silken and purple Carpets, and shall be accompanied with many Maidens, beautifull as the Hyacinth and Pearles, neuer deflowred of men or Deuils, neuer menstruous, sitting in pleasant shades with their eyes

f Not to dispute not seeke a signe in proofe of the Law.

g The Fox will creeple gripes because they are lowe, and hang too high.

h *Creation.*

i *Of the Angels.*

k *Belzebub* said, he was made of fire, & therefore better the which was made of earth. *Acor.* 17.

l *Paradise.* The Turkes Paradise a beastly carnall one.

fixed on their husbands: their eyes large, with the white of them exceeding white, and the blacke very blacke. lying on the shining greene. Faire young men shall serue them with Vials and other Vessels, full of the most excellent liquor, which shall neither cause head-ach nor drunkennesse, and shall bring them the choiseſt fruits, and flesh of fowles. They shall there heare no filthy or displeasing word: and (*Az.* 86.) In Paradise shall be administred to them in well-wrought vessells of glasse and siluer, drink, as the sauourie Ginger, out of the fountaine *Zelzebil*: they shall haue garments of silke and gold, chaines of siluer, blessed Wine, Maidens likewise with pretty breſts: there shall be tall trees of colour betweene yellow and greene. They shall haue in Paradise all pleasures, and shall enioy women with eyes faire, and as great as Egges: sweet smelling Riuers of Milke and Honie, and fruits of all sorts. *Az.* 1 6. He saith, Paradise is of as great capacitie as Heauen and Earth.

l *Of Hell.* OF HELL l hee fableth that it hath seuen gates; that it shall make the wicked like to fleas, that they shall be fed with the tree *Ezecum*, which shall burne in their bellies like fire; that they shall drinke fire; and being holden in chaines of seuentie cubits, shall be kept sure; the fire shall cast forth embers like Towers or Camels. They which contradict, shall bee punished with the fire of hell: they which feare, shall goe into Paradise; and as it were in a

m *Of Purgatorie.* m MIDDLE SPACE betwixt the one and the other, there shall stand some other with hope and expectation of Paradise. We haue set Angels ouer hell, and haue appointed their members 84. 98. There shall be fountaines of scalding waters, and they shalll eate vpon a reede, but shall not satisfie their hunger: they shall be bound in chaines. 121.

n *Of the Prophet Mahomet.* He n sometimes excuseth *his owne* basenesse, as *Az.* 17. where he saith he could not write nor read, adding that his name and mention is in the Testament, and Gospel, and 36. The vnbeleeuers (saith he) murmure that he is followed onely of Weauers, and the raskall-rout. And 53. That the Alcoran was not committed to a man of great possessions; and they say, that it is Art-magike, and that I haue fained it. And in 64. The Moone was diuided, and they say, it is Sorcerie. (The tale is told by Frier *Richard* thus: *Mahomet* pointed to the Moone with his thumbe, and middle finger, and it was diuided, the two pieces falling on the Hills of Mecha, which entring into *Mahomets* coat, was made whole againe.) Hee

o *Mahomet* guilty of his witchcraft, often speaketh of it: that he may not bee thought such a on.

o sometimes extolleth himselfe, blasphemously inducing Christ, thus saying to the Israelites; O yee Israelites, I being sent a Messenger vnto you from GOD, affirme by the Testament which I haue in my hand, that a Messenger shall come after me, whose name is *Mahomet*, of whom they shall say he is a Magitian. 71. His beastly prerogatiue he boasteth, (43.) saying, he is the seale & last of the Prophets. To Thee, O Prophet, we make it lawfull to lie with all women which are giuen thee, or which thou buyest, and thy Aunts, thy Kindred, and all good women which freely desire thy company, if thou be willing: and this is permitted to thee alone. Diuorce these, couple thy selfe to those at thy pleasure. And being by someother of his wiues found in bed with *Marie* the wife of a Iacobite Christian, hee sware that he would neuer after vse her company: but after being impotent in his lusts, hee ordaines a Law to himselfe, *Az.* 76. Why doest thou, O Prophet, make that lawfull for the loue of thy woman, which GOD hath made vnlawfull? GOD full of pittie, and giuer of pardon, hath commanded thee to blot out, or cancell thine oathes.

Of his *iourney to Heauen*, to receiue the Law, he speaketh. *Az.* 63. and 82. mingling iniunctions of deuotion. 83. Thou, O Prophet, rising in the night, spend halfe the night, or a little more or lesse, in watching, and continually and deuoutly reade ouer the Alcoran: bee thou iust, patient, and refuse not to wash thy garments, O thou man cloathed in woollen. 43. Let none enter into the house of the Prophet, before hee call; but let him stand without the gate: let none doe dishonestie within his house, let none hurt the Prophet in any thing, or haue his wife after him.

p *Of the Prophets in Scripture.* *Some* p *Prophets* hee mentioneth, not named in Sripture; and of those there named hee telleth many fables. *Ismael* was a true Prophet, and found a good man before GOD. *Ioseph* nine yeeres imprisoned for the Queene. *Abraham* ouerthrew his Fathers Idols, and should haue beene burned for the same; but the fire lost his force. The Mountaines and Birds that praise GOD, were subiect to *Dauid*. q *Salomon* learned Magick of *Arot* and *Marot*, Diuels so called: hee knew the language of Birds: and when hee was in the middest of his Armie, consisting of Deuils, Men, and Birds; the Lapwing brought him newes of the Queene of Saba's comming, to whom by this Lapwing hee sent a Letter, &c. Of the Armie the Ants of Pismires being afraide; one Ant perswaded her fellowes to get them in to their holes, lest they should bee troden on. *Moses* married *Pharaohs* Daughter. (37.) On *Ascemel* made the golden Calfe in the Desart against *Aarons* will. *Pharaoh* requested *Hamen* to build a Tower, whereon to climbe to heauen, to the GOD of *Moses*: (50. In the time of *Noe* they worshipped Idols, whom hee nameth *Huden, Schuan, Iaguta, Iamus, Nacem.*

q Such tales as these of *Abraham, Salomon*, &c. you shall finde lies in the Iewish and Popish Legends, as if the Iew, Papist, & Mahometan, had contended for the whetstone: which any one that readeth shall finde.

Th

The Prophet *Huth* was sent to the Nation Haath, to teach them the worship of *one* GOD: and *Schale* to Themuth; and *Schaibe* to Madian; and *Abraham* and *Lot* to the Sodomites; on whom, because they were incredulous, it rained yellow and sharpe stones. (*Az.* 21.) *Moses* was sent to *Pharaoh, &c.* His scope of these Narrations is, that hee is sent likewise a Prophet, and therefore iudgement will pursue them which refuse him, as it did those incredulous Nations. These fauour of a Iewish helpe. Hee telleth also of *Alexander* [r] *Mag.* that hee had all knowledge: he found the Sunne, (where it lay resting in a yellow fountaine) and the mountaines in which it riseth. And finding men without vse of speech, hee diuided them from other men, &c. *Az.* 28.

[r] *Alexander, Mahomets* hiest Saint to follow.

He proueth [s] substantially that there shall be a RESVRRECTION by the History of the seuen Sleepers, which slept in a Caue 360. yeeres. (28. *Az.*) and (49.) Hee saith, that at the time of death, GOD taketh away the soule at an houre knowne, restoring it to some; to some, neuer: at the first sound of the Trumpet all shall die, except those which shall bee protected by the will of GOD: at the second sound all things shall reuiue, and be iudged: and (66.) The earth shall tremble, the mountaines shall be brought to dust, and the whole company shall bee diuided into three parts: some before, others on the right hand, both which sorts shall bee blessed: but those on the left hand, in their left hands shall receiue the scroll or sentence of their condemnation. And (79.) In the last Iudgement the earth shall be ouerthrowne, the heauen shall be powred forth. (8.) Angels shall beare vp the Throne of God. And (80.) The heauens shall vanish as smoke, and the earth shall bee plucked as wooll. And (111.) There shall be set vp the ballance of Iudgement: they to whom shall befall a light weight, shall liue, but they which haue a heauie weight shall be cast into fire. The booke of bad Workes shall bee kept in the bottome of the earth; the booke of good Workes in a high place.

[s] *Of the Resurrection, and last Iudgement.*

In diuers places of the Alcoran, the better to colour his filthinesse, hee hath dispersed *good* SENTENCES, like Roses scattered on a dung-hill, and flowers in a puddle: concerning Alms, Prayer, Tithing, Iustice, &c. Othershe hath of another sort, establishing his owne Tyrannie and Religion. *Az.* 26. Swines-flesh, Blood, that which dieth alone, and that which hath the necke cut off, not in Gods Name, is vnlawfull. [t] Be chaste euery where, but with your owne wiues, or such as are subiect to you, and doe serue you. Euery Adulterer shall haue an hundred stripes in the presence of many. He which accuseth a woman of Adulterie, not prouing it by foure witnesses, shall haue eightie. The iealous husband accusing his wife, must sweare foure times that hee chargeth her truely; and a fifth time curse himselfe, if it bee otherwise. The woman must doe the like to cleere her selfe. (43.) After [u] a woman be diuorced from one, any other may marrie her. (19.) Trust not a sonne or a brother, except hee be of your owne Law. 72. On Friday when they are called to prayer, they must lay all businesse apart: when prayers be ended, they may returne to their commodities. Redeeme captiues; and thy sinnes by good workes. About Circumcision I finde no iniunction in the Alcoran. In the 3. 8, and 9. *Az.* Hee permitteth all licentiousnesse with all women which they haue of their owne: but prescribeth washings after Venery, and after naturall easements. Loue not your enemies: the women of another faith proue first: and if they fauour the vnbeleeuers, diuorce them. 52. The women must couer their faces. 43. Wilfull murther is prohibited. *Az.* 10. But casuall killing is to be satisfied with redemption of some good man, and the kindred recompenced, except they forgiue it.

Morals and Iudicials.

[t] *Agar.* 33. 34.

[u] See more in the Tide of *Women*, following.

THE *going on* [x] PILGRIMAGE, and the perpetuall abode at the Temple of *Haran* (that is, *vnlawfull*, because nothing but there holies are there [y] lawfull we repute of equall merit. They which loue it not, or doe it iniurie, shall suffaine grieuous euils. *Abraham* founded this Temple, *Az.* 6. and blessed it, and cleansed it, for them which abode there, and for the Pilgrims. Hee [z] preached one GOD without partaker, and the pilgrimage to this Temple, that on the dayes appointed they might, in naming GOD, sacrifice beasts, wherewith to feast themselues and the poore, and might fulfill their vowes, and goe in Procession round about the old Temple, a worke which GOD will greatly reward. *Az.* 32. and 19. In the times of fasting and pilgrimage hunting by land is vnlawfull, except that so gotten bee bestowed on the poore at Mecca: taking fish by Sea as they goe or returne, is lawfull. *Az.* 13. The vnbeleeuers are not worthy to visit the Temple *Haran*. And these good Pilgrims are not equall to the good warriours. 38. He entred into the Temple *Haran* with his head shauen.

[x] *Pilgrimage to Mecca.*

[y] Contrarie to which is the word *common* in Scripture, for that which is lawfull in common vse. *Mecha* (saith *Sal.*) alwaies in the Alcoran is called *Haram* and the Pilgrims *Horomuis*: that is, votaries.

[z] *Abraham* Author of pilgrimage rites.

Az. 2. We enioyne vnto you (as to your Predecessors) FASTING in the time thereto appointed, and in a certaine number of dayes, that is, in the moneth *Romadan*, in which, this Booke (which discerneth betweene good and euill) was sent you from heauen. Euery one must obserue it, but the sicke and traueller, and let them doe the same in the remainder of the time. The rich vse to satisfie their fasting with alms; let them doe both the one and the other. He permitteth you the vse of your wiues in the night, because it is hard and impossible to

to abstaine. But let none vse their company in the Temples. Fast all the day, and when night is come, eate and drinke as much as you please, till the morning. By the Moone is knowne the time of Pilgrimages, and of Fastings, whereby is knowne that you loue and feare GOD. Spend your money in the loue of GOD in Pilgrimage, not despairing. Hee that is impotent, and that is not accompanied with his wife in the Pilgrimage, must fast three dayes in the voyage, and seuen after his returne. To the sick, fasting with almes is sufficient. They which purpose this Pilgrimage, let them not giue their mindes to any euill. Let them not be ashamed to aske necessaries. 2. Hold it for iust and good to enter the house at the doore, not at the side, or back-side thereof. 35. Salute those which yee meete, when ye enter into the house.

His oathes. Ridiculous is the confirmation of this holy Law, by such variety of OATHES, as I am almost afraide to mention, in regard of our *Gull-gallants* of these times, who would sometimes bee at a set in their braue and brauing phrases, if they should not haue variety of Oathes and curses, to daube vp with such intrections all imperfections of speech, and make smoother way for their current of their gallantrie. But yet euen for their sakes, let vs mention a few, that they may see *Mahomet* had as braue a humor this way as they. He induceth GOD *swearing by lesse then himselfe*, as by the order of Angels, by the Alcoran, by the blowing Winds, by the watrie Cloudes, by the sayling Ships, by the Mount Sinai, the Heauen, the Sea, the euening Sãtre, the West, his Pen and Lines, the guiltie Soule, the Deuils, by the Morning, ten Nights, the Passeouer, by the Figges and Oliues, by the Dawning, and Twilight, and a World more of the like: onely he saith (*Azoara* 100.) that he may not sweare by the earth, nor by the Sonne like to the Father. Yet he allowes not others to sweare or forsweare: as after you shall see.

Inheritances and iust dealing. *Az.* 8. They which eate the *inheritance* of Orphans, euerlasting fire shall eate them. Be faithfull in keeping and deliuering their goods, for GOD taketh knowledge of all accounts. Let one Sonne haue as much as two Daughters. In bargaining vse no lying, slaying your owne soule. The couetous shall haue endlesse punishment: he that killeth vnwilliingly, shall giue to the Kindred of the partie slaine, another man, or if he cannot doe that, let him fast two monethes together: he which killeth wilfully shall be cast into the fire. *Az.* 70. It is no sinne to reuenge iniuries.

Courtesie. Salute him which saluteth thee, for saluation is much pleasing to GOD.

Mortall Sentences. *Az.* 27. Worship one GOD alone. Honour thy Father and Mother, and doe them good.

Sententiae loquitur Carnifex. Giue them no bad word when they are old. Be subiect with all humility, and pray GOD to pardon them. Giue to the poore and to your kindred, but not superfluously: for they that doe superfluously are of Kinne to the Deuil. Slay not your children for no cause. Bee yee not Fornicators; for that is wickedneste, and a bad way. Be reuenged on Murtherers. Say nothing till yee know it; for you must giue account of your saying. 26. In disputing or reasoning vse onely good words. Answere in honest sort to him which asketh thee. 27. Be iust in weight and measure. 37. The Deuill standeth ouer the makers of songs and lies, that is, the Poets, if they amend not, doing good. 68. If you cannot giue, be daily in prayers. Pay your tithes, following GOD and the Prophet. They which do not good but for vaine glory and ostentation, shall bee damned. 118. The Histories which are in the Old Testament are so cited by him, as if hee neuer had read them, so many dreames and lies are inserted.

Washings and Prayer. *Az.* 12. Before PRAIER WASH the face, the hands, the armes vp to the elbow, the feete vp to the ankles; and after carnall company wash in the Bath: and if water cannot bee had, with dust of cleane earth. GOD desireth cleannesse. 9. In prayer let them be sober, that they may know what they say. 2. GOD will not aske why men pray not toward the East, for the East and West is his; but will demand of the workes which they haue done, of their Almes, Pilgrimages, and Prayers. He commandeth that they be humble in prayer, and that in prayer they turne towards Mecca. Euery one which shall pray, asking that which is good, which way soeuer hee shall turne him, shall be heard of GOD: although the true manner of praying be toward the Center of the Temple of Mecca. They which are good, make their prayers to helpe them by their patience and abstinence. GOD dwelleth in such men. Pray according to the vsuall custome in all places, the foot-man on foote, the horseman on his horse.

Almes. *Az.* 3. He that *giueth* his owne for Gods sake, is like a graine that hath seuen eares, euery of which containeth an hundred graines. Good men loose not your Almes by vaine glorie. 4. Giue almes of the good gaines of your money, and of that which the earth produceth; but GOD respecteth not gifts of that which is vniustly gotten. Satan perswaded you to giue nothing for feare of pouertie. To giue almes publikely is good, but to giue priuately is better: and this blotteth our sinnes. Giue especially to those which stay in one place, and

and are ashamed to aske. 6. GOD will giue Paradise to them which in time of famine and scarcetie giue liberally, and which receiue iniuries, and repent of their sinnes.

Az. 2. Euery one which draweth nigh to death, let him leaue of his money to his family and kindred to distribute in almes, and they which shall change that vse, shall be iudged of the Creator, &c.

Az. 2. They which are intreated to beleeue the Diuine Precepts, say, they will follow their Ancestors in their Sect. What, would yee follow your Fathers if they were blinde or deafe? Will yee be like them in being mute, blinde, and foolish? *Tradition.*

Az. 2. O good men, EATE that good which he hath giuen you, and giue him thanks; aboue all other things calling vpon him. Abstaine from that which dieth of it selfe, from Swines flesh, from bloud, and from euery other creatur that is killed, and not in the name of the Creator. But in case of necessity it is not sinne; for GOD is merciful, and will forgiue you this. 12. Eate not of that which is drowned, burned in the fire, and touched of the Wolfe. 16. Eate nothing which hath not before beene blessed. To the Iewes we made many things vnlawfull, because of their wickednesse. 2. Hee which shall contradict this Booke, shall continually bee consumed in vnquenchable fire, and none of his workes shall helpe him. *Meates. vncleane.*

Az. 3. To them that doubt of WINE, *of Cheese, Scailes, and of Tables*, thou shalt say that such sports, and such drinkes are a great sinne, and although they be pleasant or profitable, yet are they hurtfull sinnes: if they say what shall we then doe, thou shalt say, the good things of GOD. Persuade them to seeke the Orphanes, and succour them as their Brethren, or else GOD will make them so poore, that they shall not bee able to helpe either themselues or others. 13. Wine, Cheese, and Tables, are not lawfull, but the Deuils inuentions, to make debate amongst men, and to keepe them from doing good. Let none goeon hunting in the Pilgrimage moneth. *Drinkes and Games.*

Az. 3. Take not a WIFE of another Law, nor giue your daughters to men of another Law, except they before conuert to your Law. Let no man touch a woman in her disease, before she be well cleansed. Vse your wiues, and the woman which are subiect to you, where, and how you please. Women which are diuorced, may not marrie till after foure moneths, hauing had three times their menstruous purgation. Let them not deny their husbands their company at their pleasure. They are the heads of the women. After a third diuorce from one man, they may not marrie the same man againe, except they haue in the meane time beene married to another, and be of him diuorced. Let the woman nurse their children two yeeres, receiuing necessaries of the fathers. After burialL of a husband, let them stay vnmarried foure moneths and ten daies; and not goe out of the house in a yeere after. Take yee two, three, foure wiues, and finally, as many as inyour minde you are content to maintaine and keepe in peace. It is vnlawfull to marry with the Mother, Daughter, Sister, Aunt, Neece, Nurse, or the Mother or Daughter of the Nurse; and take not a whore to wife. 9. Let the wiues keepe their husbands secrets, or else let them be chastised, and kept in house and bed, till they be better. 10. Let the husband seeke to liue peaceably with his wife. 31. Cast not thine eyes on other mens wiues, though they be faire. A woman conuicted of adulterie by testimonie of foure women, must be kept in her house till shee die and let none come at her. *Az.* 8. If you loue not your wiues you may change them: but take away nothing of that which is giuen them. *Women, Marriage, Diuorce.*

Az. 3. *Sweare* not in all your affaires by GOD and his names. They which forsweare themselues shall haue no good thing in the world to come. And 35. Sweare not rashly, for GOD seeth euery thing. They which sweare from their hearts are bound thereto before GOD; and not else. To redeeme such an oath, they must feede or cloath ten poore men, or fast three daies. *Az.* 13. *Swearing.*

Az. 4. *Offer violence* to no man in respect of the Law, for the way of doing good and euill is open. 4. GOD gaue first the Testament, then the Gospell, and lastly the true Booke, the *Alfurcan* of the Law, in confirmation of those former. *Forceing to baleeue.*

Az. 4. They which liue of VSVRIE shall not rise againe otherwise then the Deuils: they embrace that which GOD hath said is vnlawfull: but they say vsurie is as Merchandize. Ye which are good feare GOD, and forsake Vsurie, lest the anger of GOD, and of the Prophet assaile you. Take onely the principall; and if he cannot pay you, stay still he can, and giue him almes; for this shall be better for you. And *Az.* 6. Euery one which feareth GOD, must very much beware of this vice, fearing the fire prepared for vnbeleeuers. And *Az.* 11. ascribeth the miseries of the Iewes to their wickednes and vsuries. *Vsurie.*

Az. 4. & 15. He which *repenteth* him, and leaueth his sinne, obtaineth pardon, and the cancelling of that which is past; but returning againe thereto, hee shall suffer eternall fire. In the 5. Vnto bad men is denied humane and diuine mercie, except they repent. GOD careth *Repentance.*

reth little for the conuersion of them, which, after that of Infidels they are made beleeuers, become worse. Such shall suffer without any remission intolerable punishment. 10. GOD pardoneth lesse faults, but not criminall.

Friendship. *Az.* 5. Let no man reckon him a good *friend*, which is an vnbeleeuer, except it be for feare. If betwixt you there grow discord, laying aside all stomacke, doe the will of GOD, and become Brethren together, imitating GOD, who hath deliuered you from the fire, and from dangers. 6. GOD would not that any should doe euill to those of his owne Nation, and those which consent to your Law, but rather their profit and commoditie.

Infidels. *Az.* 6. Thinke not that euer Paradise shall be open vnto you, if you be not first valiant and courageous in battaile: and before you enter into battaile, prepare your selues for death: 10 and after the death of the Prophet *Mahomet*, defend the orders by him giuen with Armes. No man can die, but when GOD will, that is, when his time is come. Those which flee out of the warre, are prouoked of the Deuill; but GOD pardoneth them which repent. They which die in the way of GOD, are not truely called dead: They liue with GOD. Let none feare them which are gouerned of the Deuill. 7. Be patient, and you shall haue eternall life. 10. Accompanie not with vnbeleeuers, neither in friendship, nor other businesse. They which goe on warfare for GOD and the Prophet, shall receiue abundance in the Earth, and after death the mercie of GOD. They which refuse (except they be sicke or children) shall be cast into Hell. Neglect not prayers in your expeditions. Some may pray, whiles other stand in Armes. Pray not for them which hurt their owne soules. 18. Looke to your selues that 20 there be no discord amongst you.

His last *Azoara* is this: *In the Name of the merciful and pittifull* GOD; *sanctifie thy sesse, and pray continually, and humbly vnto him, which is Lord of all Nations, Lord of all,* GOD *of all, that he will defend and deliuer thee from the Deuill, which entreth into the hearts of men, and from deuillish and peruerse men.* (From *Mahomet* himselfe, and from his diuellish and peruerse Law. AMEN.

§. III.

The Saracens opinion of their ALCORAN. 3

THus haue I endeuoured to bring some order out of confusion, and haue framed these heads out of that Alcoran-Chaos,[a] where is scarce either head or taile: this tale they haue and beleeue (for what will not? What shall not they beleeue, which refuse to beleeue the Truth?) that he which readeth[b] this Booke a thousand times in his life, shall haue a woman in Paradise, whose eye-browes shall be as large as the Raine-bow.

a *Magdeburgenses* in *Centuria* 7. haue no gathered some heads of this headlesse Monster, the same is done by *Cantacuzenus, & in summula sectæ Saracenicæ*, but not thus fully.

b *Anonymus* in Alcoran. *Autotat.*

But amongst the more studious and iudicious the manifold contradictions therein, hath bred no scruple, as in their ordinary discourses in speech and writing may appeare. For (as 4 many Marchants and such as haue liued with them, report) it is a common thing c to heare from themselues obiections and doubts touching their Law: in their Bookes also and Tractates are contained many Morall sentences and exhortations to vertue and holinesse of life, and those things called in question which the Alcoran hath seemed to determine. Of these their Bookes Master *Bedwel* hath lately translated and published one, a Dialogue written some six hundred yeeres since, in which many scruples are propounded and left vndecided: many things found contradictory: yea, and the Bookes of the Old and New Testament, commended and approued, and the Doctrine of the Trinitie explained: the exceptions also made by the other Mahumetans to the Gospell, answered. In that booke it is affirmed, that there were written by *Mahomet* a hundred and twentie thousand sayings, of 5 which onely three thousand are good: the residue false; that the descent of the Moone into *Mahomets* sleeue is impossible: that shedding of blood is too slippery an argument for proofe of Doctrine: that the Sunne, his beames, and heat, doe represent the Trinitie and Vnitie: that the state of Paradise is like to that of Angels, without meate, drinke, women; and therefore that voluptuous Paradise is one of *Mahomets* fictions; for himselfe, saith hee, did write some things in iest: that it seemeth absurd, and against reason and faith, to follow a Law, which (it false saith) none can vnderstand but GOD: that the Alcoran in the Assora *Ionas*, sends men to the Iewes and Christians for the right vnderstanding thereof: that whereas it sayes Christ is the word of GOD, it followes hee is the Sonne of GOD, as reason and speech, the Sunne and his rayes, are one Essence, and the Vnderstanding, Will, Memory, in 6 one Man: that the Christians could not (as the Mahumetans obiect) blot the name of their prophet out of their Scriptures, seeing the Iewes and Christians, and Heretiques and Christians

c M. *Bedwels Mahomedis impostura*, in the preface.

stianshaue alway beene watchfull aduersaries to each other; and they are more ancient fiue hundred yeeres then *Mahomet*: that the storie of the speaking Ant, and other things are trifuiall and impertinent: that *Moses* Law was giuen with open miracles, and the Gospell approued with diuers languages, and martyrdomes; that these nor any Law of GOD hath therein any contrarietie: that virginitie is a chiefe and bodily good, and their prophet writes of himselfe, polygamy, adulteries and the like, with many libidinous precepts and practises: that these things seeme contrarie, that the Deuills shall be saued, the Iewes also and Christians, which yet he counselleth to slay, with other the like contradictions: that their prophet onely vnderstood the Arabike, and by an Interpreter heard that which is contained in the Bookes of Iewes and Christians (which easily appeares in his falsifying the Histories of the Bible) that hee hath no Testimony but his owne: that there are many absurd things in their law not confirmed by Miracles: and others excuse them by Metaphors, &c.

These things are there religiously discoursed with shew of reuerence to their Law, but exceeding magnifying of Christ and his Gospell; which is so generall with the more learned sort, that some also naue hazarded their liues in this quarrell. And *Aucen* that learned Physician saith against their Paradise, that wise Diuines more respect the minde, the coniunction whereof with truth is a felicitie beyond those sensuall pleasures of the bodie. And were it not for sensualitie, ignorance, and the sword, these Alcoran-fables would soone vanish. c *Relat. Master Hark.*

CHAP. V.

Other Muhameticall speculations, and explanations of their Law, collected out of their owne Commentaries of that Argument.

FSuch writings as haue come to our hands, touching *Mahomets* doctrine and Religion, that seemeth most fully to lay them open, which is called by some, *Scala*, a booke containing the exposition of the Alcoran, in forme of a Dialogue, translated into Latine by *Hermannus Dalmata*, and made the twelfth Chapter of the first Booke of the Alcoran in Italian. I haue therefore presumed on the Readers patience; to those former collections out of the Alcoran it selfe, to adde these ensuing; as a further explanation of their opinions. *The Messenger of* GOD (so beginneth that booke) was sitting amongst his fellowes (the praier and saluation of GOD bee vpon him) in his Citie Iesrab; and the Angel *Gabriel* descending on him, said, GOD saluteth thee, O *Mahomet*, &c. There came foure wise-men, *Masters in Israel*, to prouue thee; the chiefe of whom is *Abdia-Ben-Salon*. *Mahomet* therefore sent his cousin *Hali* to salute them; and they being come to *Mahomet*, after mutuall salutations, *Abdia* telleth him, that he and his fellowes were sent by the people of the Iewes, to learne the vnderstanding of some obscurer places of their Law. *Mahomet* asketh, if he come to enquire, or to tempt. *Abdia* saith, to enquire. Then *Mahomet* giuing him full leaue, he beginneth; hauing before gathered out of the whole bodie of their Law, an hundred most exquisite questions. The principall dregs you shall here haue. a F. *Sansou. & Bellar. lib. 3.*

Abdia. Tell vs (O *Mahomet*) whether thou bee a Prophet or a Messenger? *Mahomet*. GOD hath appointed me both a Prophet and a Messenger. *Ab*. Doest thou preach the *Law of* GOD, or thine owne Law? *Mah*. The Law of GOD: this Law is Faith, and this Faith is, that there are not *Gods*, but *one* GOD, without partaker. *Ab*. How many Lawes of GOD are there? *Mah*. One, the Law and Faith of the Prophets, which went before vs, was one; the Rites were different. *Ab*. Shall we enter Paradise for Faith or Workes? *Mah*. Both are necessarie; but if a Gentile, Iew, or Christian, become a Saracen, and preuent his good Workes, *Faith onely* shall suffice: But if Gentile, Iew, or Christian, doe good Workes, not in the loue of GOD, the fire shall consume both him and his worke. *Ab*. How doth the mercie of GOD preuent his anger? *Mah*. When before other creatures *Adam* rose vp, he sneesed and said, GOD be thanked: and the Angels hearing it, said, *The Pittie of* GOD *be vpon thee, Adam*, who answered, *Amen*: Then said the Lord, *I haue receiued your Prayer*. *Ab*. What be the foure things which GOD wrought with his owne hands? *Mah*. Hee made Paradise, planted the tree of the Trumpet, formed *Adam*, and did write the Tables of *Moses*. *Ab*. Who told thee this? *Mah*. *Gabriel*, from the Lord of the world. *Ab*. In what forme? *Mah*. Of a man standing vpright, neuer sleeping, nor eating, nor drinking, but the praise of GOD. *Ab*. Tell me in order what is one, what is two, what three, foure, fiue, sixe, &c. to an hundreth. *Mah*. One is GOD without Sonne, partaker or fellow; Almightie Lord of life and death. Two, *Adam* and *Eue*. Three, *Michael, Gabriel, Saraphiel*, Archangels, Secretaries of GOD,

GOD. Foure, The Law of *Moses*, the Psalmes of *Dauid*, the Gospell, and Alforcan (so called of the distinction of the Sentences.) Fiue, The prayers which GOD gaue men and my people, and to none of the other Prophets. Six, The dayes of the Creation. Seuen, Heauens. Eight, Angels which sustaine the Throne of GOD. Nine, Are the Miracles of *Moses*. Ten, Are the Fasting-dayes of the Pilgrimes: three, when they goe, seuen in their returne. Eleuen, Are the Starres whereof *Ioseph* dreamed. Twelue moneths in the yeere. Thirteene, Is the Sunne and Moone, with the eleuen Starres. Fourteene, Candles hang about the Throne of GOD, of the length of fiue hundred yeeres. Fifteene, The fifteenth day of *Ramadam*, in which the Alcoran came sliding from heauen. Sixteene, Are the Legions of the Cherubims. Seuenteene, Are the names of GOD betweene the bottome of the earth and hell, which stay those flames, which else would consume of the world. Eighteene, Interpositions there be betweene the Throne of GOD, and the ayre; for else the brightnesse of GOD would blinde the World. Nineteene, Be the armes or branches of *Zachiis*, a Riuer in hell, which shall make a great noise in the day of Iudgement. Twentie, The day of the moneth *Ramadam*, when the Psalmes descended on *Dauid*. The one and twentieth of *Ramadam*, *Salomon* was borne. The two and twentieth, *Dauid* was pardoned the sinne against *Vriah*. The three and twentieth of *Ramadam*, Christ the Sonne of *Marie* was borne; the prayers of GOD be vpon him. The foure and twentieth, GOD spake to *Moses*. The fiue and twentieth, the Sea was diuided. The sixe and twentieth, He receiued the Tables. The seuen and twentieth, *Ionas* was swallowed of the Whale. The eight and twentieth, *Iacob* recouered his sight, when *Iudas* brought *Ioseph's* coat. The nine and twentieth, Was *Enoch* translated. The thirtieth, *Moses* went into Mount Sinai. *Ab.* Make short worke, for thou hast done all this exactly, *Mah.* Forte are the daies of *Moses* his fasting. Fiue thousand yeeres shall the day of Iudgement continue. Sixtie are the veines, which euery of the heauens haue in the earth, without which varietie there would be no knowledge amongst men: Seuentie men *Moses* tooke to him elle. Eightie stripes are due to a drunken man. Ninetie, the Angell said to *Dauid*, This my fellow hath ninetie sheepe, and I but one, which he hath stollen from mee. An hundred stripes are due to the Adulterer.

Ab. Well, shew vs how the earth was made, and when? *Mah.* GOD made man of mire; the mire of froth: this was made of the tempests; these, of the sea: The sea, of darknesse; the darknesse, of light; this, of the word, the word of the thought; the thought of Iacinth; the Iacinth of the commandement; *Let it be, and it was*. *Ab.* How many Angels are set ouer men? *Mah.* Two, one on the righe hand; which writeth his good deeds; another on the left, which registreth his bad. These sit on mens shoulders. Their pen is their tongue, their inke is their spittle, their heart is the booke. *Ab.* What did GOD make after? *Mah.* The bookes wherein are written all things past, present, and to come, in heauen and earth; and the pen made of the brightest light, fiue hundred yeeres long, and eightie broad, hauing eightie teeth wherein are written all things in the world, till the day of Iudgement. The booke is made of the greatest Emerald; the words, of Pearles, the couer of pitie. GOD ouer-looketh the same an hundred and sixtie times in a day and night. The heauen is made of smoake of the vapour of the sea: the greennesse of the sea proceedeth from the mount *Kaf*, which is made of the Emeralds of Paradise, and compasseth the world, bearing vp the heauens. The gates of heauen are of gold, the locks of light, the keyes of pietie. Aboue the heauens are the sea of life, aboue that the cloudie sea; then the aric sea, the stony sea, the darke sea, the sea of solace, the Moone, the Sun, the Name of GOD; Supplication, *Gabriel*, the parchment rased, the parchment full written, all these in order one ouer another. Then aboue all these, the threescore and ten spaces of light: then threescore and ten thousand hils, with threescore and ten thousand spaces between; and threescore and ten thousand troupes of Angels on them, in euery troupe fiue thousand Angels alway praising the Lord of the world: aboue these the limits or bounds of Angelical dignitie: and aboue the same the banner of glory, and then spaces of pearles, and in their orders one aboue another, the spaces of Grace, of Power, of Diuinitie, of Dispensation, the Foot-stoole, the Throne, the house of the Vniuerse.

Ab. Are the Sunne and Moone faithfull or not? *Mah.* They are faithfull, and obey euery command of GOD. *Ab.* Why then are they not of equall light? *Mah.* GOD created them equall, but by this it came to passe, that the vicissitude or intercourse of day and night was vncertaine, till *Gabriel* flying by the Moone, darkened her with the touch of his wings. *Ab.* How many orders are there of the Starres? *Mah.* Three, the first of those which hang by chaines from the Throne of GOD, giuing light to the seuenth Throne: the second chase away the deuils, when they would enter into heauen: the third, in the sight of the Angels. There are seuen seas betweene vs and heauen. There are three winds: the first barren, the second tempestuous, which shall blow the fire in the day of Iudgement: the third ministreth to

to the earth and sea. *Ab.* Where is the Sunne? *Mah.* In a hot fountaine; this, in a Serpent, which is a great space in the mount *Kaf*, and this *Kaf* is in the hand of the Angell, which holdeth the world till the day of Iudgement. *Abd.* What is the manner of them, which beare vp the Seat of GOD? *Mah.* Their heads are vnder the Seat of GOD, their feet vnder the seuen Thrones, their neckes are so large, that a bird in a thousand yeeres continuall flight, should not reach from the one eare to another. They haue hornes, and their meate and drinke is the praise and glory of GOD. *Abd.* How farre is it to heauen? *Mahom.* Fiue hundred yeeres iourney to the lowest, and so from each to other. *Abd.* What birds are betweene vs and heauen? *Mahom.* Some which touch neither heauen nor earth, hauing manes like horses, haire like women, wings like birds, and lay their Egges, and hatch them on their tailes till the day of Iudgement.

Ab. What was the forbidden tree? *Mah.* Of wheat, which had seuen eares, whereof *Adam* plucked one, wherein were fiue graines; of which, two hee eat, two hee gaue, to *Eue*, and one hee carried away. This graine was bigger then an Egge, and being bruised, brought forth all kindes of feed. *Ab.* Where was *Adam* receiued after his expulsion from Paradise? *Mah. Adam* in India, *Eue* in Nubia. *Adam* was recouered with three leaues of Paradise; *Eue*, with her haire: They met together in Arafe. Further, as concerning *Eue*, she was made of a rib of the left side, for otherwise she had beene as strong as the man.

Ab. Who dwelt in the earth before? *Mah.* First the Deuils, seuen thousand yeeres after them the Angels: lastly *Adam*, a thousand yeeres after the Angels. *Ab.* Who begunne the Pilgrimage? *Mah. Adam. Gabriel* shaued his head, and hee circumcised himselfe; and after him *Abraham*. *Ab.* To what land spake GOD at any time? *Mah.* To Mount Sinai, that it should lift vp *Moses* to heauen: *Abitabil* and *Moses* are the two men whose sepulchres are knowne. *Moses* by chance found a sepulcher, which while hee measured with his bodie, the Angell of Death drew from him his soule out of his nostrils, by the smell of an Apple of Paradise.

Ab. Where is the middle of the earth? *Mah.* In Ierusalem. *Ab.* Who made the first ship? *Mah. Noe*: hee receiued the keyes thereof of *Gabriel*, and going forth of Arabia, compassed Mecca seuen times, and likewise Ierusalem. In the meane while *Mecca* was receiued vp into heauen, and the Mount Abikobez preserued Ierusalem in her belly. *Ab.* What shall become of the children of the Infidels? *Mah.* They shall come in at the day of Iudgement, and GOD shall say vnto them, Would yee doe that thing which shall be commanded you? And he shall command to flow forth one of the riuers of hell, and bid them leape into the same. They which obey, shall goe into Paradise. This shall bee the triall of the children of the faithfull also, which are borne deafe, blinde, &c. *Abd.* What resteth vnder these seuen earths? *Mah.* An Oxe, whose feet are on a white stone, his head in the East, his taile in the West; he hath fortie hornes, and as many teeth; it is a thousand yeeres iourney from one horne to another. Vnder that stone is *Zobat*, a mountaine of hell, of a thousand yeeres iourney. All the Infidels shall ascend vpon the same, and from the top shall fall into Hell. Vnder that Mount is the land Wereka; vnder that, the Sea Alkasem: the Land Alicleu, the sea Zere: the land Neama, the sea Zegir: the land Theris, the land Agiba, white as Milke, sweet as Musk, soft as Saffron, bright as the Moone: the sea Alknicar; the fish *Alhebbut*, with his head in the East, his taile in the West: all these in order one after another. And beneath all these in like inferiall order the Winde, the Mountaine, the Thunder, the Lightning, the bloudie Sea, Hell closed, the fierie Sea, the darke Sea, the Sea *Po*, the cloudie Sea, Prayses, Glorification, the Throne, the Booke, the Pen, the greater Name of GOD.

Ab. What hath come out of Paradise into the World? *Mah*, Mecca, Iesrab, [b] Ierusalem: as on the contrarie, out of Hell; Vastat in Egypt, Antiochia in Syria, Ebberan in Armenia, and Elmeden of Chaldæa. *Ab.* What say you of Paradise? *Mah.* The ground of Paradise is of gold, enamelled with Emeralds, and Hiacinths, planted with euery fruit full Tree, watered with streames of Milke, Hony, and Wine: the day is of a thousand yeeres continuance, and the yeere of fortie thousand yeeres. The people shall haue whatsoeuer can be desired, they shall be clothed in all colours, except [c] black, which is the proper colour of *Mahomet*: they all shall bee of the stature of *Adam*, in resemblance like Christ, neuer increasing or diminishing. As soone as they are entered, shall bee set before them the Liuer of the Fish *Alhebbut*, and whatsoeuer dainties they can desire. They shall not need going to stoole any more then the childe in the wombe, but they shall sweat out all superfluities, of sent like Musk. They shall eat but for delight, not for hunger. Vnlawfull meates, as Swines flesh, they shall refraine. And if you lift to know why this beast is vnclean, vnderstand that Iesus on a time called Beth *Iophes* to tell his Disciples the Historie of the Arke: Who told them, that by the weight of the Ordure, the Arke leaned on the one side, whereupon *Noe*, consulting with GOD, was bidden bring the Elephant thither, out of whose dung, mixed with mans, came forth a Hog, which

b Ierusalem was rased of them, *An.* 1219. yet durst they not destroy the holy sepulchre, because of that Testimony of Iesus in their Alcoran: yea, they kiss the Gospels in reuerence, especially, *Luc.* 1. *missus est Gabriel*, which they will often reiterate. *Vir. l.* 3. They call it not Ierusalem, but BEITALMIKDAS, that is, the house of the Sanctuary, and *Cudsi Mabarak*, that is, the blessed Sanctuarie.

Bed. Trad.

c The Turkes reckon Greene the Prophets colour.

which wrooted in that mire with his snout, and by the stinke thereof was produced out of his nose a Mouse, which gnawed the boords of the Arke: *Noe* fearing this danger, was bidden to strike the Lion on the forehead: and by the Lions breath was a Cat engendred, mortall enemie to the Mouse. But to returne from this stinking tale, to refresh our selues with the like sweets of this Paradise. He addeth, that there they haue the wiues that here they had, and other Concubines, whom, how, when, wherefoeuer they vsed.

Abd. But why is Wine lawfull there, and here vnlawfull? *Mah.* The Angels *Arot* and *Marot*, were sometime sent to instruct and gouerne the world, forbidding men, Wine, iniustice, and murther. But a woman hauing whereof to accuse her husband, inuited them to dinner, and made them drunke. They inflamed with a double heat of Wine and Lust, could not obtaine that their desire of their faire Hostesse, except one would teach her the word of ascending to heauen, and the other of descending. Thus she mounted vp to heauen. And vpon enquirie of the matter, shee was made the Morning-Starre, and they put to their choice, whether they would bee punished in this world, or in the world to come: they accepting their punishment in this, are hanged by chaines, with their heads in a pit of Babel, till the day of Iudgement.

Hell, saith *Mahomet* there, hath the floore of Brimstone, smoakie, pitchy, with stinking flames, with deepe pits of scalding Pitch, and sulphurous flames, where in the damned are punished daily: the trees beare most loatsome fruits, which they eate.

The day of Iudgement shall be in this sort. In that day GOD will command the Angel of Death to kill euery Creature; which being done, hee shall aske him if nothing bee aliue: *Adreiel* the Angell of Death shall answere, Nothing but my selfe. Then goe thy waies betwixt Paradise and Hell; and last of all kill thy selfe. Thus he, folded in his wings, prostrate on the earth, shall strangle himselfe with such a bellowing noise, as would terrifie the vetie Angels, if they were aliue.

Thus the world shall bee emptie fortie yeeres. Then shall GOD hold the Heauen and Earth in his fist, and say, *Where are now the mightie men, the Kings and Princes of the World? Tell mee (if yee be true) whose is the Kingdome, and Empire, and Power?* Repeating these words three times, he shall rise vp *Seraphiel*, and say, Take this Trumpet, and goe to Ierusalem, and sound. This Trumpet is of fiue hundred yeeres iourney. At that sound all Soules shall come forth, and disperse themselues vnto their owne bodies, and their bones shall be gathered together. Fortie yeeres after hee shall sound againe, and then the bones shall resume flesh and sinewes. After fortie yeeres the third sound shall warne the Soules to re-possesse their bodies: and a fire from the West shall driue euery creature to Ierusalem. When they haue here swum fortie yeeres in their owne swear, they shall with much vexation, come to *Adam*, and say, Father *Adam*, Father *Adam*, Why hast thou begotten vs to these miseries and torments? Why suffereft thou vs to hang betweene hope and feare? Pray to GOD, that hee will finish his determination of vs, between Paradise and Hell: *Adam* shall excuse his vnworthinesse for his disobedience, and send them to *Noe*, *Noe* will post them to *Abraham*, *Abraham* to *Moses*: He shall send them to Iesus Christ: To him they shall come, and say, The Spirit, Word, and Power of GOD, let thy pitie moue thee to make intercession for vs. He shall answer them, That which you aske, you haue lost. I was indeed sent vnto you in the power of GOD, and Word of Truth, but yee haue erred, and haue made me GOD; more then euer I preached to you: and haue therefore lost my benefit. But goe to the last of the Prophets, meaning him with whom thou now talkest, *Abdia*. Then shall they turne to him, and say; O faithfull Messenger, and friend of GOD, we haue sinned, heare vs, holy Prophet, our only hope, &c. Then shall *Gabriel* present himselfe to helpe his friend, and they shall goe to the Throne of GOD. And GOD shall say, I know why you are come: Fatre be it that I should not heare the prayer of my faithfull one. Then shall a bridge be made ouer Hell, and on the top of the bridge shall bee set a ballance, wherein euery mans workes shall bee weighed, and those which are saued, shall passe ouer the bridge, the other shall fall into Hell. *Abd.* How many bands of men shall there be in that day? *Mahom.* An hundred and twentie; of which, three only shall be found faithfull; and euery Band or troupe of men shall be in length the iourney of a thousand yeeres, in breadth fiue hundred. *Abd.* What shall become of Death? *Mah.* He shall be transformed into a Ram, and they shall bring him betweene Paradise and Hell. Then shall arise much dissentions betweene these two peoples, through feare of the one, and hope of the other. But the people of Paradise shall preuaile, and shall slay Death betweene Paradise and Hell. *Abd.* Thou, O *Mahomet*, hast outcome, and I beleeue, that there is but one GOD Almightie, and thou art his Messenger and Prophet.

In this long and tedious Summarie, of that longer and more tedious Dialogue, compared with the former Iewish opinions, touching their *Behemoth*, *Leuiathan*, *Ziz*, Ierusalem, Swines flesh, the Angell of Death, and other their superstitious opinions, it may

may appeare, that the Iewes were forward Mint-masters in this new-coyned Religion of *Mahomet*.

In the beginning of this Dialogue, are mentioned their fiue Prayers, and their *Ramadam*, or *Ramazan*: Of which, that Arabian Noble-man, in consutation of the Alcoran, writeth thus: [h] He which hath fulfilled these fiue Prayers, shall bee praised in this world, and in the next. They are as follow: Two kneelings in the morning, after-noone, foure; at Vespers, or a little before Sun-set, foure; after Sun-set, foure; at their beginning of supper, two; and after supper, when it is darke, two; in all eighteene kneelings in a day.

Their Lent [i], or Fast of the Moneth *Ramazan*, is thus: In the day time they must fast from Meate, Drinke, and Venerie, till the Sunne bee downe: then is Riot permitted them, till a white threed may be discerned from a blacke. But if any be sicke, or in iourneying, he may pay at another time the same number of dayes.

Sampsates Isphacanes, a Persian, in a letter written to one *Meletius*, which had conuerted to Christianitie, and fled to Constantinople, to reduce him to his former vomit, alleageth this saying of GOD to *Mahomet*: *I haue made all things for thee, and thee for mee*: obiecteth to Christians the worship of three Persons, the Father, Mother, and Sonne, the worship of many gods. And how (saith he) can GOD haue a Sonne without a woman? And how can they agree together? How can GOD be made Man? And why could he not haue saued man by a word, but, as if he had beene hindred through weaknesse, did therefore become man? And if he were GOD, how could he suffer? Yea, the name of *Mahomet*, saith hee, was expressed both in the Old Testament, and the Gospel, Christ himselfe commending it, which the Christians haue raced out: yea, from euerlasting it was written on the right side of the Throne of GOD. And the Musulmans deriue their faith from *Abraham*. This I haue inserted, to shew the vaine conceits they haue of our Religion, and their blinde confidence in their owne, with their carnall dreames of Diuine Mysteries, and diuellish slanders of our Scriptures, which they know not: their scandall also from the worship of Images and Saints.

Frier *Richard* [k] reciteth among *Mahomets* opinions, That of threescore and thirteene parts of the Saracens, one onely shall be saued; and, that the Deuils shall once bee saued by the Alcoran; and that the Deuils call themselues *Saracens*, fit companions with them in their holy things.

Some [l] make it a Canon of *Mahomet*, That they should looke toward the South when they pray, that when they pray they should say, GOD is one GOD, without equall; and *Mahomet* his Prophet: which, *Lod. Bartheme* saith, Are the Characters of the profession of a Mahumetan, and that, by the pronouncing of those words, hee was tried whether he was an Infidell, or no. These words, saith the aboue-said Arabian (as they affirme) before the beginning of the world were written in the Throne of GOD.

Bellonius [m] in his Obseruations telleth out of their Bookes, that there is a Tree in Paradise which shadoweth it all ouer, and spreadeth her boughes ouer the walles, whose leaues are of pure gold and siluer, each of them after the Name of GOD, hauing therein written the name of *Mahomet*. And that if a Christian, at vnawares, should pronounce the said Prayer, *La illah*, &c. GOD is one GOD, and *Mahomet* his Prophet, hee must either die or turne Turke. Such reputation haue they of this forme, which they call a Prayer, with as good reason as the *Aue Marie* among the Romists, wherein yet they pray not for any thing. *Bellonius* also saith, That they hold the Heauen to be made of Smoke, and the Firmament stablished on the horne of a Buffall, by whose stirring Earthquakes are caused: That there are seuen Paradises, with Houses, Gardens, Fountaines, and whatsoeuer sense accounteth delectable; where they shall enioy all delights without any sorrow, hauing Carpet, Beds, Boyes, Horses, Saddles, Garments, for cost and workmanship most curious, and readie for attendance. Those Boyes richly adorned, when they haue satisfied their hunger and thirst, shall present euery Saracen a huge Pome-citron in a golden Charger, and as soone as they shall smell thereof, there shall thence proceed a comely Virgin in gallant attire, which shall embrace him, and he her; and so shall they continue fiftie yeeres. After which space ended, God shall shew them his face, whereat they shall fall downe, not able to endure the brightnesse, but hee shall say, Arise, my seruants, and enioy my glory; for heereafter yee shall neuer die, nor be grieued. Then shall they see God, and each lead his Virgin into his Chamber, where all pleasures shall attend them. If one of those Virgins should come forth at midnight, shee would lighten the world no lesse then the Sunne, and if shee should spet into the Sea, all the water thereof would become sweet. *Gabriel* keepeth the keyes of Paradise, which are in number threescore and ten thousand, each seuen thousand miles long. But hee was not able to open Paradise, without Inuocation of the Name of GOD, and *Mahomet* his friend. There is a Table of Adamant seuen hundred thousand dayes iourney long and broad, with seates of gold and siluer about it, where they shall be feasted.

h *Arab. Neb. in Confut. Alcor.*

i Of *Mahomets* Lent.

k *Richardus Confut. Alcor.*

l *Pietro Messia tradotto per F. Sansovino, lib. 4. cap. 1.*

m *Bell. Obseru. lib. 3. cap. 9.*

Methodij Constitut. in Bib. Patr. ibi & Abucara disput. cent. Sect.

There is extant a Constitution of *Methodius*, Patriarke of Constantinople, touching the diuersities of Penances (according to the diuersitie of the offence) to bee performed by such as haue reuolted from the Faith to Mahometisme. Likewise, there is a fragment of *Nicetas*, wherein are expressed the abiurations, and renunciations of *Mahomet*, and his Law by new conuerts, both before Baptisme, when they were admitted into the number of the *Catechumeni*, and at Baptisme, as was then vsed in the Church, some of which I here mention, as fitting to our purpose. After the *Anathema* pronounced against *Mahomet*, *Ali* his sonne-in-law, *Apompicertus*, *Baeicer*, *Amar*, *Talcan*, *Apupachren*, *Sadicen*, and the rest of his consorts and successours; also against *Gadise*, *Aise*, and others his wiues, with *Phatuma* his daughter: he Anathematiseth the *Core*, that is, *Mahomets* Scripture, and all his learning, lawes, Apocryphall narrations, traditions, and blasphemies. The fifth Article is against *Mahomets* Paradise, there thus expressed, That in it are foure Riuers, one of cleare water, a second, of sweet milke, a third, of pleasant wine, a fourth, of honie: and that the Saracens at the day of Iudgement (which shall be fiue hundred thousand yeeres after his time) shal liue carnally with their wiues vnder the shadowes of certaine trees, called *Sidra*, and *Telech*, and shall eate what fruits and birds they will, and shall drinke of the fountaines Caphura and Zinciber, and wine out of the spring Theon. Their age shall be the same with the heauens: their members foure cubits: they shall haue their fill of lust in the presence of God, who is not ashamed. Sixthly, He Anathematiseth *Mahomets* Angels, *Aroth*, *Maron*, *Tzapha* and *Marona*, with his Prophets, *Chud*, *Zalech*, *Sonip*, *Edrei*, *Duaciphel* and *Lechima*. Seuenthly, His doctrine of the Sun & Moone, and his challenge to be the *Key-bearer* of Paradise: also his house of Mecca, in the middest whereof, they say, is a stone representing *Venus*, on which *Abraham* lay with *Hagar*, and tied thereto his Camell, when he should haue sacrificed *Isaac*: where the Pilgrimes holding their eare with one hand, point to the stone with the other, and so turne round till they fall downe with giddinesse. Hereuuncedth likewise their casting seuen stones against the Christians, and the tale of *Mahomets* Camel, and them which worship the Morning-starre, or *Lucifer* and *Venus*, which the Arabians call *Chobar*, that is, *Great*. And thus hee proceedeth in two and twentie Articles, abandoning his former sect: after which he desireth Baptisme.

See of this in the next Chapter, and in the second Chapter. *Catechef. Mysp. pro adventu ex Secta Mahom.*

Of like subiect are the *Catechises Mystagogice*, or instructions of *Peter Guerra de Lorca*, concerning conuerting and keeping from Mahometisme, in which are rehearsed, and refuted a great part of their superstitions, dedicated to King *Philip* the second: But King *Philip* the third, hath otherwise conuerted the Moores of Spaine, for whom he writ his booke, by an vtter subuersion & turning them quite out of his dominions. He therin telleth of the deuils appearing to *Mahomet* in forme of a Vulture, with a beake and feathers of gold, professing himselfe to be *Gabriel*, sent of GOD to teach him his Law: that *Mahomet* would not permit Iewes to turne to his Law, without baptizing them first vnto Christianitie: that the Saracens worship the New-Moone: that the women spend all their time and care to adorne themselues for their husbands lust, and because they respect fatnesse in their wiues, these therefore with idlenesse, sleepe, and diet according, doe fat themselues like Swine: that a Mahometan may attaine to that perfection, that he may satisfie for sinne past, and after liue without sin, especially by Fastings and Pilgrimages: that the blessed Virgin shal (as they dreame) in the other life bee married to that cursed monster *Mahomet*: that women shall rise againe in the male sex, and shall also haue women for their lust, which shall bee produced out of certaine trees: with diuers other things scarcely obiected to them by others. *Thesaur. sapientie diuinæ in salute om. gent. procuranda.*

Thomas à Iesu another Spaniard, hath written prolixly of this Argument, but I may not heere now follow him.

Let me yet be bold out of certaine Arabikes of the best note to adde the Creed, the Commandements, Mesciuites, with other Mahometan Rites and Custome, collected by *Gabriel* and *Iohn*, two Maronites, and first touching the Easterne Languages and Authors.

Easterne languages.

THere are in the East eight principall Languages, the Arabike, Persian, Turkish, Hebrew, Chaldee, Syriake (which little differs from Chaldees) Greeke, and Armenian. The Arabike is most noble and vsuall, and is extended as far as *Mohameds* name, as their sacred Language, know to all *Moslemans* of better fashion. In this is their Alcoran and their publike Prayers, and most of their Lawes. Yea, saith *Zaheri*, the blessed in Paradise vseit. In this also are written their Bookes of Physicke, Astrologie, Rhetorike. The Persian hath little but Poets and Historians, the Turkish almost nothing; the Chaldee and Syriake are nigh lost, as the Greeke. But *Auerroes*, *Algazeles*, *Abu-Becer*, *Alfarabius* (called of the Moslemans, the second Philosopher) *Mohamed Ben-Isaac*, and *Mohamed Ben-Abdillah* adorned the Arabike: besides very many Astrologers, Mathematicians, Physicians, and Historians. *Ben-Sid Aali* reckons one hundred and fiftie, which haue written on their Law; *Ben-Casem*, innumerable Grammarians and Rhetoricians.

Arabike Authors.

Nov

Now for the Moslemans Religion, *Ben-Sidi Aali* expresseth it to consist herein, *that they beleeue all the speeches made by* Gabriel *the Angell to our Prophet, when hee questioned him of the things to bee beleeued and done: which are these, to beleeue in one God to whom none is equall* (this against Christians) *and that the Angels are the Seruants of God. to beleeue in the Scripture sent to the Apostles, diuided in their opinion into one hundred and foure Bookes, of which tenne were sent to* Adam, *sixtie to* Seth, *thirtie to* Enoc (*called* Edris) *ten to* Abraham, *the Law to* Moies, *the Psalmes to* Dauid, *the Gospel to* Isa, *or Iesus Christ; lastly, the Alcoran to* Mohamed. *That they hold these sent for mens good; and beleeue in the Resurrection after death, and that some are predestinate to fire, some to Paradise, according to the will of God (for it is said in the Alcoran; there is none of you which hath not his place in Paradise, and a place determined in Hell) that they beleeue also the reward of the good and punishment of the bad; and the intercession of the Saints. Also this is of the things to bee holden, that they firmely beleeue in the Diuine Pen, which was created by the finger of God. This Pen was made of Pearles, of that length and space that a swift Horse could scarcely passe in fiue hundred yeeres. It performeth that office, that it writes all things past, present, and to come: the Inke with which it writes is of light; the Tongue by which it writes, none vnderstandeth but the Archangel* Seraphael. *That they beleeue also the punishment of the Sepulchres; for the Dead are vsed often to be punished in their Graues, as happened in a certaine Sepulcher betwixt Mecca and Medina.*

Moslemans Creed.

The Precepts of the Moslemans are, first *Circumcision*, not on the eight day, as to the Iewes, but at the eight, ninth, tenth, eleuenth, twelfth yeere, that they may know what they doe, and may professe their Faith with vnderstanding. And although most hold women free therefrom, yet in *Egypt* they circumcise women at thirteen, fourteene, or fifteene yeeres old (many of them till then goe starke naked) and *Sidi-Ben Aali* saith, that it was commanded to men, but is vsed to women for honour.

Mosleman Precepts are; Circumcision. Fiue houres Prayer.

The second Commandement is *Prayers hourely*, which in the Church, at home, or abroad, they are bound to performe, fiue times in the day and night: first, at breake of day: the second, about noone; the third, in the afternoone; the fourth, after Sun-set, when the Starres begin to appeare: the last, in the first watch, or before mid-night (for after, it is vnlawfull, saith *Ben-Sidi Aali*) neither may any transgresse these houres without sin; yea, saith he, if one were cast into the Sea, and knew the houre of Prayer, if he be able, he ought to doe it; as also women in trauell must hide the Infants head as they can, and doe it. Trauellers when they perceiue that houre is come, goe out of the way and wash; or if they haue no water; lightly dig the Earth, and make shew of washing, and go not thence till they haue finished their Deuotion. Thirdly, *Almes* is also commanded; and they which are so poore that they cannot giue to Orphans and the poore, must helpe in Hospitals and High-waies, by such seruice to satisfie God. Fourthly, *Ramahdan* Fast of thirtie dayes is commanded from morning to Sunset, and the Stars appearing: for then after euening Prayer they eate any food (except Wine) with Bacchanall cheere, and tumults. Fifthly, *Pilgrimage* once in their liues to Mecca and Medina is also commended; and sixthly, *to fight against the enemies of their Faith* is no lesse commanded; not to preach by the Word and Meekenesse, as Christ, but by the Sword and Warre, to inuade and reuenge. And if by their persons and blood they cannot, they must (saith our Author) by their purse and goods helpe the Prince herein. And if they die in War, the sensuall pleasures of Paradise, Riuers of Milke and Honey, beautifull women and the like, are their present purchase. Therefore do they giue to Apostatses, which become Moslemans, an Arrow borne vp by their fore-finger; the Arrow signifying Warre, and that one Finger the Vnitie of the Deitie. Their last Commandement is *washing with water*, which is three-fold, one before Prayers, handled in three Chapiters by *Ben-Sidi Aali*, thus performed; the armes stripped naked to the elbow, they wash the right hand and arme, then the left, after the Nose, Eares, Face, Necke, Crowne, Feet to the ioynts, if they bee bare, or else their shooe-tops; lastly, their Priuities: meane-while mumbling their Deuotions. These washings they thinke to wash away their Veniall and lighter sinnes; for their greater they vse Baths, and say all the bodie must be washed to wash away Crimes. The third washing is of their secrets by themselues, or their Seruants after the Offices of Nature, deliuered by him in two Chapiters, too foolish and filthy to be related. Adde the prohibition of Images painted or carued, Thefts, Homicides, Robberies, Adulteries, Swines-flesh, Wine, strangled bloud, and things dying of themselues, and all vncleane creatures.

Almes. Fast. Pilgrimage. Fighting. Note. Washings.

He also instructs at large of their Testaments and Funerals. The Moslemans being sicke, presently send for an *Abid*, Religious man, or *Santone* to strengthen them in the Faith, and propound heauenly things to him, reciting some what out of the Alcoran. And if the Disease be very dangerous, they wash and make their Testament; and are bound to restore all ill-gotten goods, giuing the creditors a bill of their hand. And if they know not to whom to restore, they must bequeath a summe of money to publike vses, Hospitals, Mesquits, Baths, the poore and Religious persons: yea, for that respect they set Captiues at liberte, as is read

Order of visiting the sicke, of Wills, Restitutions, and Burials.

that *Auicenna* did; some giue Bookes to publike vses; some, other things. *Ben-Sidi Aali* saith, it is *Mohameds* precept, that the third part of mens goods bee bestowed on publike vses. And if a man die intestate, they say other dead men will chide him. When they are dead, the bodie is washed, the Nose, Eyes, Mouth, and Eares stopped with cotton; better apparell is put on, white shirts, and Tulipants. Then is the bodie carried to the buriall place without the Citie with a great troupe; the *Santones* or Religious going before, then the men promiscuously, after the Corps; followed by women howling, lamenting, shrieking, till they come to the Graue. There are those Garments taken away, and the Corps shrowded in a white sheet, and put into the Graue with the face to the South. After the couering with Earth, many Prayers are made, and much Almes is giuen to the poore to doe the same.

Mescuites, or Moschees, and their Ceremonies in them.

Touching the Easterne Customes. *Ben-Sidi Aali* hath written of the structure of Mescuites. Before them is a large floore paued with Marble, in the midst is a square Lauer, where they which come to pray vse to wash themselues. After this is a great Hall without Images or Pictures, the Walls bare, not shining with Gold or Gems: the Pauement matted, on which the vulgar sit; the Rich vse Carpets spread for them by their Slaues. From the Roofe hang many Lampes, which are lighted in Prayer time, and that being ended, are put out. These Churches are for the most part round & couered with Lead; and haue adioyned high Towres which serue for Steeples, with foure Windowes open to the foure Windes; whereon the Priests at set-times ascend, and with a strong voyce call men to Prayers. Which being ended, and their Legall washing being done, all of them leauing their Shooes on a rew at the threshold of the Gate or Porch, they enter with great silence. The Priest beginneth the Prayer, and all follow, and whiles hee kneeleth they doe so, and rise when hee stands vp, and imitate him in the eleuation or depression of the voyce. None yauneth, cougheth, walketh, or talketh, but in great silence, after Prayers they resume their Shooes and depart. No woman may come to the Mescuites at these set houres, if there bee any men, nor may haue any societie of men, except the Priest, which directeth and goeth before them with his voyce in their manner of praying, as saith the said Author.

Mosleman women dis-respected. Hence some ascribe to the Turkes sallly, that women haue no soules. Easterne attire

They are permitted not to enter the Mescuites, but to stand at the doore, and must bee gone quickly before the men haue done their Prayers. He addes that the womens Church is the inner part of their owne house. Such is their dis-respect of women; notwithstanding, *Mohameds* promises in his Alcoran, that many, say they, enter not Paradise, but may stand at the doore with Christians, and see the glorie of the men.

The Garments of the East are commonly long, some slit on the right and left hand, some whole. The vpper Garment hath wide sleeues. Their head-tire is a Tulipant but differing, of Princes white and fine, artificially wreathen, rather long then round: of their *Cadies* and *Mufeis* very large, of fifteen or sixtie Els of Calico round and wreathed; of Citizens lesse, of *Serifs* or *Mohameds* posteritie greene: of Souldiers and Seruants long and white. Christians vse not white nor round ones: the Maronite Patriarke and his Suffragan Bishops weare a huge Tulipant, round and blue, with a blacke hood vnder it: other Priests lesse, and no hood. The women ate pompous, but cõming abroad weare a couering made of Horse-haire before their face, that they may see and not be knowne, not if their owne Husbands meet them; neither if they did know, would they salute, it being a shame for a woman to bee seene speaking with a man. Their Chaines, Brooches, and other Ornaments, and Painings of their Eyes, Browes, and Fingers ends, I omit. Both men and women are so addicted to neatnesse, that they are very carefull lest any drop of vrine spot their clothes in making water or going to stoole, and would then thinke themselues vncleane. They therefore then sit downe (like women) and wash; or if no water may bee had, wipe with three stones, or a three cornered stone, as *Ben-Sidi Aali* in his Chapiter of washing warneth. They thinke it vnlawfull to spit or pisse on a brute creature. In food they abstaine from strangled and bloud; and Mosleman, from Swines-flesh. They loue Iunkets: they breake bread anu cut it not. Their Table is a round piece of Leather, to which they come with washing and Prayers promised. They vse not Forkes, but Spoones of Wood of diuers colours, and where they need not them, three Fingers, as *Ben-Sidi Aali* warneth. Pewter and Porcelane is in much vse, but other Vessels of Plate or Gold, saith hee, *Mohamed* forbade, saying, The Deuill vsed such, the common drinke is water; the better sort adde Sugar, sometimes Amber and Muske, &c.

A note for trauellers in these parts, not to prouoke them without liberty in vrine, &c. a cause of quarrell often to Christians.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.
Of the Pilgrimage to MECCA.

WE haue heard of the antiquitie of this Pilgrimage in the former Chapter, deriued from *Adam*, who was shauen and circumcised for that purpose: and the Alcoran nameth *Abraham* the founder of the Temple, &c. Pittie it were, that the last of the Prophets should not honour that which was first instituted by the first of men. If wee will rather beleeue that Arabian before mentioned, we shall finde another originall; namely, That whereas two Nations of the Indians, called Lechian and Albarachuma, had vsed to goe about their Idols naked and shauen, with great howlings, kissing the corners, and casting stones vpon an heape, which was heaped vp in honour of their gods, and that twice euery yeere, in the Spring, and in Autumne: the Arabians had learned the same of the Indians, and practised the same at Mecca, in honour of *Venus* casting stones backe betweene their legs, the parts of *Venus*) in the time of *Mahomet*. Neither did *Mahomet* abrogate this, as he did other Idolatrous Rites: onely for modesties sake they were enioyned to gird a piece of linnen about their Reines. *Petrus Alphonsi* [a] an ancient Author, who of a Iew had become a Christian, thus relateth this Historie. The Ammonites and Moabites erected two Idols, one of white stone called *Mercurie*, in honour of *Mars*: the other of blacke, called *Chamos*, in honour of *Saturne*. Twice a yeere these men ascended to worship them; when the Sunne entred into *Aries*, in honour of *Mars*, and then at their departure they cast stones (as before is said:) when the Sunne entred into *Libra*, in honour of *Saturne*; at which time they sacrificed naked, with their heads shauen. The Arabians also worshipped them: *Mahomet* did not abolish them, but placed the Image of *Saturne* in a corner, with his back-part forwards; and buried the Image of *Mars* in the ground, and laid a stone ouer it. These stones he permitted them to kisse, and with shauen crownes, and naked backes to cast stones backwards betweene their legs, which they say, is done to scare away the Deuill. This is suffered to bee done at Mecca in honour of *Venus*. But wee haue alreadie heard, that *Venus* was the ancient Arabian and Saracenicall Deitie, to whom they performed such Rites of old.

a *Ap. Breidenbach.*

Mecca, or (as they call it) Macca, signifying an Habitation, containeth in it about sixe thousand houses fairely built, like those of Italy: Other walls it hath not, then such as Nature hath enuironed it with; namely, With high and barren Mountaines round about. [b] Some report. That betweene the Mountaines and the Citie are pleasant gardens, abundance of Figs, Grapes, Apples, Melons, and that there is store also of Flesh and Water. But it seemeth, that this is of later industrie, not of Natures indulgence, if it be true. For *Lud. Barthema* [c], or *Vertoman*, being there in the yeere 1503. saith, That the place was accursed of God, as not bringing forth Hearbs, Trees, Fruites, or any thing, and besides, hauing great scarcitie of water, and is serued with these things from other places. It is gouerned by a King (tributarie, then to the Soldan, now to the Turke) called the *Seriffo*, lineally descended from their great Seducer, by his daughter *Fatima* (the onely issue of this libidinous pogamous Prophet) married to *Hali*. All of this kindred are called *Emyrs*, that is, Lords, loathed with (or at least, wearing Turbants of) greene, which colour the Mahumetans will not suffer other men to weare.

b Pilgrimage to Mecca. M. *Hak. tom. 2.*

c *Vertoman. lib. 1. cap. 14.*

The number of Pilgrimes which resort hither, is incredible. From Cairo commeth a Carouan of deuotion, some to *Mammon*, some to *Mahomet*, either for trade of Merchandize, or for Superstition, and another yeerely from Damascus: besides those which come from the Indies, Æthiopia, Arabia, Persia, &c. *Lud. Barthema* saith, That (at his being at Mecca) of the Carouan of Damasco wherein he went, were fiue and thirtie thousand Camels, and about fortie thousand persons: of that of Cairo were threescore and foure thousand Camels, and now in these times about fortie thousand Camels, Mules, and Dromedaries, and fiftie thousand persons, besides the Arabian Carouan, and of other Nations.

This Mart of Mecca is much impaired, since the Portugales haue intercepted the Indian commodities, which by a Carouan from thence, were wont to be brought hither.

Let me desire the Reader to haue patience, and goe along on this Pilgrimage, with one of these Carouans, thorow these Arabian Desarts to Mecca and Medina: and because that of Cairo is the chiefe, wee will bestow our selues in it, and obserue what Rites they obserue before they set forth: what by the way, and at the intended places of their deuotion. [d] Touching the necessitie whereof, they thinke, that they which goe not once in their liues, shall, after death, goe to the Deuill. Yea, some, for deuotion, plucke out their eyes after so holy a sight.

Sup. cap. 5.

d *Alcorr. Italic.*

The moneth *Ramazan* (or *Ramadham*, the ninth moneth in their Kalendar, containing thirtie daies, as you haue heard) is their Lent; falling sometime high, sometime low, being that whole moneth, during which time the Pilgrimes and Merchants resort to Cairo from Asia, Greece, Barbarie, &c. After their [m] Lent ended, they obserue their Easter, or Feast, called *Bairam*, three dayes. Twentie dayes after this Feast, the Carouan is readie to depart. Against this time, they assemble themselues at a place, two leagues from Cairo (called Birca) attending the comming of the Captaine. This Captaine of the Carouan, whom they call *Amarilla Haggi*, is renewed euery third yeere; and to him the Grand Signior, euery voyage giueth eighteene Purses (each containing fixe hundred twentie fiue Duckats of gold) for the behoofe of the Carouan, and also to doe Almes vnto needfull Pilgrimes. He hath foure Chausi to serue him, and foure hundred Souldiers, two hundred Spachi, mounted on Dromedaries, and as many Ianizaries riding on Camels. The Chausi and Spachi, the Captaine maintaineth at his owne charges: The Ianizaries haue their prouision from Cairo. He hath eight Pilots for guides; which Office is hereditarie.

m Pilgrimage to Mecca. *Haly.*

They carrie fixe pieces of Ordnance to terrifie the Arabians, and to triumph at Mecca. The Merchandize that goeth by Land, payeth no custome; that which goeth by Sea, payeth ten in the hundred. At the Feast, before the Carouan setteth forth, the Captaine, with his Retinue and Officers, resort vnto the Castle of Cairo, before the Basha, which giueth vnto euery man a Garment, and that of the Captaine is wrought with Gold, the others according to their degree. Moreouer, he deliuereth vnto him the *Chiffua Tunabi*, or Garment of the Prophet; a Vesture of Silke, wrought with these letters of Gold, *La illa ill' alla Mehumet Resullala*; that is, There are no gods but God, and *Mahomet* is the Messenger of God. After this, he deliuereth to him a Gate, wrought curiously with gold; and a couering of greene velvet, made in manner of a *Pyramis*, about nine palmes high, wrought with fine gold, to couer the Tombe of the Prophet *Mahomet*, and many other couerings besides of gold and silke to adorne it. The two former are for the house of *Abraham* in Mecca.

Then the Captaine having taken his leaue, departed accompanied with all the people of Cairo, in manner of a Procession, with singing, shouting, and a thousand Ceremonies besides, and passing the gate *Bab. Nassara*, laieth vp, in a Mosquita, the said Vestures very safely. This Ceremonie is performed with such publike resort, that it is not lawfull for any man to forbid his wife the going to this Feast: for shee may, vpon such a cause, separate her selfe from her husband, and lie with another man. The Camels which carrie the Vestures, being adorned with clock of gold, and many little bels, the multitude strewe th flowers and sweet water on them; others with fine cloth and towels touch the same, reseruing these for reliques. Twentie daies after this Feast, the Captaine, taking the vestures out of that Mosquita, repaireth to Birca, where his Tent abideth some ten daies. In this time, they which meane to follow the Carouan, resort thither, and amongst them, many women attired with trifles, tassels, and knots, accompanied with their friends, mounted on Camels. The night before their depar ure, they make great feasting and triumph, with discharging their Ordnance, Fire-works, &c. showing, till, at the breake of day vpon the sound of a Trumpet, they march forward on their way.

From Cairo to Mecca is fortie daies iourney, trauelling from two a clocke in the morning till the Sun-rising: and then hauing rested till noone, they set forward, so continuing till night, obseruing this order till the end of their voyage, without change; except [n] at some places, where, in respect of water, they rest sometimes a day and a halfe to refresh themselues. The Carouan is diuided into three parts; the fore-ward, the maine battell, and the rere-ward. The fore-ward containeth about the third part of the people; and amongst these, the eight Pilots, a *Chausi*, and foute knaues, with bulls sinewes, which punish offenders on the soles of their feet. In the night time they haue foure or fiue men goe before with pieces of drie wood, which g ue light: they follow the Starre, as the Matiners. Within a quarter of a mile followeth the maine Battell, with their Ordnance, Gunners, and fifteene Archers, *Spachi*; The chiefe Physician, with his Ointments and Medicines for the sicke, and Camels for them to ride on. Next goeth the faireſt Camell that may be found in the Turkes Dominion, decked with cloth of gold and silke, and carrieth a little chest, made of pure *Legmame*, in forme of the Israelitish Arke, containing in it the Alcoran, all written with great letters of gold, bound betweene two tables of Massie gold. This chest is couered with silke, during the voyage; but at their entring into Mecca and Medina, it is couered with cloth of gold, adorned with Iewels. This Camell is compassed about with Arabian Singers and Musicians, singing alway and playing vpon Instruments. After this follow fifteene other most faire Camels, euery one carrying one of the abouesaid vestures, being couered from top to toe with silke. Behinde these, goe the twentie Camels, which carry the Captaines money and prouision. After followeth the Standard of the great Signior, accompanied with Musicians and Souldiers,

n *L.Bar.* wi h the Carouan of Damasco, trauelled two and twentie hours of foure and twentie.

Souldiers, and behinde these, lesse then a mile, followeth the rere-ward, the greatest part Pilgrimes; the Merchants for securitie, going before: for in this voyage it is needfull and vsuall, that the Captaines bestow Presents, Garments, and Turbants vpon the chiefe Arabians, to giue him free passage, receiuing sometimes, by pilfe rings some damage notwithstanding. They passe by certaine weake Castles in the way, Agerut, Nachel, Acba, Biritem, betweene which two last is the Riuer of Iethro, and the Ponds of Midian, where *Moses* sate down. At Iebbir, the first Towne subiect to the Seriffo of Mecca, they are receiued with much ioy, and well refreshed with the plentie which that place yeeldeth. They finde other filthy *Commodities* also more then plentie, which fact (they hold) purgeth them from a multitude of sinnes, and encreaseth their deuotion to prosecute the voyage. The next day they goe towards Bedrihonem, in which place groweth shrubs, whereour issueth balme. Hereby they lodge one night, in memory of a victory here obtained against the Christians, at the earnest prayers of their Prophet, dreaming of Drums, heere stillsounded by Angels, as they passe. The next morning by Sun-rising, they arriue at Bedrihonem, where euery one washed himselfe from top to toe, couering their priuities with a cloth, and their shoulders with another white one; and they which can goe in this habite to Mecca, merit more; they which cannot make a vow to offer a Ram at the *Mountaine of Pardons*. After this washing, it is not lawfull for any man or woman to kill a Flea or Lowse with their hands or nailes, till they haue accomplished their Vowes at that Mountaine.

This night they come within two miles of Mecca. The next morning they march on, and the Seriffo meeting them, resigneth his gouernment to the Captaine, during his abode there: and the Captaine giueth him a garment of cloth of gold, with other Iewels. After this, having eaten together vpon Carpets and Hides, they rake with them the gate and garment aboutsaid, and goe, attended but with few, to the Mosquita, and there cause the old to bee pulled downe, and put the new couerture on the house of *Abraham*: and the old vesture is the Eunuches which seue in the said Mosquita, which sell it deare to the Pilgrimes, euery little piece being accounted a most holy Relique. And well may it be so, for (can you doubt of it?) putting the same vnder the head of a man at his death, all his sinnes must, by vertue heereof be pardoned. They take away the old doore, which is the Seriffoes fee, and set in place the new. Thus after some Orisons, the Captaine returneth to his pauilion, the Seriffo remaineth in the Citie.

That you may be the better acquainted with this Mosquita, & house of *Abraham* you are to know, o that in the middest of the Citie is the great Mosquita, built (they say) in the time when their Prophet liued. It is foure-square, euery square halfe a mile, being in all the circuit two miles, in manner of a Cloyster: The galleries round about are in manner of foure streets; these streets being separated from each other with Pillars, of Marble some, and some of Lime and Stone. In the middest of all separate from the rest, is the house of *Abraham*. This Mosquita hath fourescore and nineteene gates, and fiue steeples, from whence the *Talismani* call the people to their deuotion. And the Pilgrimes, which are not prouided of Tents, resort hither, men and women lying together: their *House of Prayer becomming a den of Theeues*. *Barthema* saith, that this Temple is round, like the *Coliseo* at Rome. That at euerie entrance is a descent of ten or twelue steps, on both sides whereof stand Iewellers, which sell gems onely. Within it is vaulted, gilded, and odoriferous, beyond what can be spoken: for there are foure or fiue hundred men which sell powders to preserue dead corpses, and other sweets. It seemeth, that since his time the temple and house of *Abraham* are altered. This p house is foure-square, made of speckled stone, twentie paces high, and fortie in circuit. And vpon one side of this house, within the wall, there is a stone of a span long, and halfe a span broad, which stone (they say) fell downe from heauen; a voice from heauen at the same fall, being heard, that wheresoeuer this stone fell, there should be built the house of God, wherein hee will heare the praiers of sinners. Then was the Stone q as white as snow, but now, through the kisses of sinners, it is become so blacke as it is. The entrance into this house is small and high. There are without this house one and thirtie pillars of brasse vpon square stones, sustaining a threed of Copper, reaching from one to another, on which are fastened many burning Lampes. The founder of these was *Solyman*. Being entred into this house through that difficult passage, there stand two pillars of Marble at the entrance: in the middest are three of Aloes-wood, couered with tyles of India, of a thousand colours, which serue to vnder-prop the *Terratza*, or roofe. It is so darke, that they can hardly see within for want of light; nor is it without an euill smell. Without the gate fiue paces, is the Pond *Zunzun*; that blessed Pond which the Angell shewed to *Agar* for her sonne *Ismael*.

o Description of the Mosquita at Mecca.

p The house of *Abraham* described.

q Of this stone see *sup. c. 2.*

Of their Feast *Baraim* is said alreadie: About fixe daies after they be come hither to Mecca, they celebrate another Feast called *Bine Baraim*, that is, the great Feast, which is also called, The *Feast of the Ram*. In those daies space they prepare themselues hereunto with due ceremonies:

ceremonies. First, departing from the Carouan, guided with such as are skilfull in the way, they goe twentie or thirtie in a companie walking thorow a street, which ascendeth by little and little, till they come vnto a certaine gate, whereon is written in Marble, *Babel Salema*; that is, the gate of Health. And from this place is descried the great Mosquita, and twice saluted, saying, *Peace to thee, Messenger of God.* Then proceeding on their way, they finde an Arch on their right hand, whereon they ascend fiue steps, vpon which is a great void place made of stone: after descending fiue other steps, and proceeding the space of a flight-shoot, they finde another Arch, like vnto the first; and this way, from the one Arch to the other, they goe, and come seuen times, saying alwaies some of their prayers, which (they say) the afflicted *Hagar* said, whiles she sought and found not water for her sonne. After this Ceremonie, they enter into the Mosquita; and drawing neere vnto the house of *Abraham*, they go round about it other seuen times, alwaies saying, *This is the house of* GOD, *and of his seruant* ABRAHAM. This done, they goe and kisse that blacke stone aboue said; and then goe they to the Pond *Zunzun*, and in their apparell, as they be, wash themselues from head to foot, saying, *Tobab Allah, Tobab Allah*, Pardon Lord, Pardon Lord; drinking also of that muddie vnsauourie water: and thus returne they, cleansed from all their sins. Euerie Pilgrime performeth these Ceremonies once at the least; the deuouter sort often.

An hundred yeeres since these Ceremonies were somewhat different, after *Barthomaes* relation. On the three and twentieth of May, the people (before day) compassed that house of *Abraham* seuen times, alway touching and kissing euery corner. Ten or twelue paces from this house was another, in manner of a Chappell with three or foure gates, and in the middest thereof a pit of brackish water, threescore and ten yards deepe. Thereat stand fixe or eight men, appointed to draw water for the people; who after their seuen-fold Ceremonie come to the brink, and say, *All this be for the honor of God, and the pittifull God pardon me my sins.* Then doe those other powre vpon them three buckets full of water, from the top of their heads to their feet, be their garments neuer so costly.

r *Vertoman. lib. 1. cap. 15. A. D. 1503.*

f The Pilgrims going to the Mountaine of Pardon.

The Carouan f hauing abode at Mecca fiue dayes, the night before the euening of their Feast, the Captaine with all his company, setteth forwards towards the *Mountaine of Pardons*, called *Iabel Arafata*, distant from Mecca fifteene miles. This Mountaine, or small Hill rather, is in compasse two miles, inuironed round about with the goodliest Plaine that mans eye hath seen, and that Plaine compassed with high Mountains. Vpon the side towards Mecca, there are many pipes of cleare fresh water, wherewith the people refresh themselues and their cattell. *Adam* and *Eue*, when they were banished Paradise, after they had beene separated fortie yeeres, one in Nubia, and the other in India (as you heard before) met in this pleasant place, and here inhabited and built a little house, which they call at this day *Beyt-Adam*, the house of *Adam*.

Hither come also the same day the other Carouans of Arabia and Damasco, and all the inhabitants for ten dayes iourney round about, so that at one time here is to be seene about two hundred thousand persons, and three hundred thousand cattell. Now all this company meeting together, the night before the Feast, the three Hostes cast themselues into a triangle, fearing the Mountaine in the middest, and fill Heauen and Earth with shouting, singing, hallowing, gun-shot and fire-works all that night. The next day being their Feast, in silence they attend their sacrifices and prayers onely. And in the euening, they which haue horses mount thereon, and approach as nigh vnto the Mountaine as they can: others make the best shift they can on foot, giuing euer vnto the Captaine of Cairo the chiefe place, the second to the Captaine of Damasco, and the third to the Captaine of Arabia. And being all approached, there commeth one of the *Santones* mounted on a Camell well furnished, who at the other side of the Mountaine ascendeth fiue steps into a Pulpit made for that purpose, and there maketh a Sermon to the people. The Contents whereof, are the benefits which GOD hath bestowed on them deliuerance from Idolatrie, giuing them the house of *Abraham*, and the Mountaine of Pardons: adding, that the mercifull GOD commanded his Secretary *Abraham*, to build him an house in Mecca, wherein his successours might be heard, at which time all the Mountaines in the world came together thither with sufficiencie of stones for the building thereof, except that little low hill, which for pouertie could not goe to discharge this debt: for the which it became sorrowfull, and wept thirtie yeeres, at the end whereof God in compassion said vnto it, Weepe no more, my daughter, comfort thy selfe: I will cause all those that goe to the house of my seruant *Abraham*, that they shall not be absolued from their sinnes, vnlesse they first come to doe thee reuerence, to keepe in this place their holie Feast. And this I haue commanded to my people by the mouth of my friend and Prophet *Mahomet*. This said, he exhorteth them to the loue of God, to prayer, and almes. The Sermon ended, at the Sun-setting they make three prayers: first for the Seriffo, second for the grand Signior, the third, for the people: to which prayers all with one voyce, cry *Amen*,

Ad.

Alla, Amin la Alla; Be it so Lord. *Barthema* addeth to the Sermon the *Cadi* or *Santones* exhortation to weepe for their sinnes, and knocke their breasts, with inuocation of *Abraham* and *Isaac*, to pray for the people of the Prophet; and reporteth further, that there were killed on the first day more then thirtie thousand Rams, or Sheepe toward the West, and giuen to the poore; of which there were thirtie or fortie thousand. Thus hauing had the *Santones* blessing, and saluted the Mountaine of Pardon, they returne the way they came, in the middest of which way, is a place called *Mina*: and a little from thence foure great Pillars, two on each side of the way. If any passe not thorow the middest of these, he loseth all the merit of his Pilgrimage. And from the *Mount of Pardons* till they be passed these pillars, none dare looke backeward, for feare lest his sins, which he hath lefsin the Mountaine, returne to him againe.

Being past these Pillars, euery one lighteth downe, seeking in this sandie field fiftie or threescore little stones, which they binde in an handkerchiefe, and carry to that place of *Mina*, where they stay fiue dayes, because at that time there is a Fayre, free and franke of all custome. And in this place are other three Pillars not together, but set in diuers places. Monuments of those three Appatitions, which the Deuill made to *Abraham*, an to [t] *Ismael* his sonne: for they now a dayes make no mention of *Isaac*, as if he had neuer beene borne. They say, that when as *Abraham* at Gods command went to offer his sonne *Ismael*, the deuill deported him from the same: but seeing his labour lost, he went to *Ismael*, and bid him pittie himselfe. But *Ismael* tooke vp stones and threw at him, saying, *I defend me with God from the Deuill the offender*. These words the Pilgrimes repeate in their visitation of these Pillars, hurling away the stones they had gathered. From hence halfe a mile is a Mountaine, whither *Abraham* went to sacrifice his sonne. In the same is a great den whither the Pilgrimes resort to make their prayers, and there is a great stone separated in the middest by the knife of *Ismael* (they say) at the time of this sacrifice. *Barthema* reporteth that here at Mecca he saw two Vnicornes: which I mention, because since that time I haue not found any Author which hath testified the like sight. They were sent to the *Seriffo* for a present by an Æthiopian King.

t *Barthema* saith *Isaac*.

The Carouan departing for Medina, as soone as they come in sight thereof (they call the place *The Mountaine of Health*) they alight, and going vp the hill, shout with loud voyces and say, Prayer, and health be vnto thee, O Prophet of God, Prayer and health be vpon thee, O beloued of GOD. They proceed on their iourney; and lodge that night within three miles of Medina, and the next morning are receiued with solemnitie of the Gouernour. Medina [u] is a Citie two miles in circuit, with faire houses of lime and stone, and a square Mosquita in the middest, lesse, but more sumptuous then that of Mecca. This is called *Medina al Nabi*, that is, the Citie of the Prophet; in *Barthemaes* time, it contained about three hundred houses, and was very barren, one garden of Dates excepted: but now they haue store of fruits. This Temple is square, an hundred paces in length, fourescore in breadth. It hath in it an Ile made Arch-wise, supported with foure hundred Pillars, and supporting as he saith) three thousand Lampes. In one part of this Mosquita was a Librarie of fortie ue Mahumeticall bookes. Also within the same (in a corner thereof) is a [x] Tombe built upon foure Pillars with a Vault, exceeding in height the Mosquita: being couered with lead, and the top all inameld with gold, and an halfe Moone vpon the top, wrought within serie artificially with gold. Below there are round about great iron staires ascending vp to the middest of the Pillars, and in the middest lyeth buried the bodie of *Mahumet* (not in an yron chest attracted by Adamant at Mecca, as some affirme.) Or to say the truth, neither here nor at Mecca can they shew this Seducers bodie. For the Captaine of that Carouan of Damasco, in which *Barthema* went on this Pilgrimage, offered to the chiefe Priest of that Mosquita, three thousand Saraffi of gold, to shew him the bodie of the *Nabi* or *Prophet*; that (saith he) being the onely cause of my comming. The Priest answered proudly: How can those eyes, wherewith thou hast committed so much euill in the world, see him by whom GOD hath created Heauen and Earth? The Captaine replied, True Sir, but doe me that fauour, to let me see his bodie, and I will presently plucke out mine [y] eyes. The Priest answered, O Sir, I will tell you the truth. It is true, that our Prophet would die heere to giue a good example: for hee might haue died at Mecca, but such was his humilitie for our instruction: and presently after hee was dead, he was carried by the Angels into heauen. And there (saith the Captaine) is Iesus Christ the Sonne of *Marie*? The Priest answered, At the feet of *Mahomet*.

u Description of *Medina*: the word signifies the people.

x In *Barthema* it is said that it was a graue (*fossa*) vnder the earth: and there were also *Hali*, *Othman*, *Bubecher*, and *Homar*, with the bookes of their ordinances and Sects.

y Which some are reported to doe indeed after their solemnitie pilgrimage-sights, not further pulling their eyes.

In the night time by some fire-workes in the steeple, they would haue gulled the credulous people with opinion of miracle, vsing out-cryes in the night, saying, *Mahomet* would rise againe: and when the Mamalukes could see no such light shine forth of *Mahomets* Tombe, as they rumoured, they said, It was because they were slaues, and weake in the faith, and could not see heauenly sights.

To returne to the discouery of this supposed Sepulchre: Ouer the bodie they haue built a Tombe of speckled stone, a brace and halfe high, and ouer the same another of *Legmans*, foure-square in manner of a *Piramis*. Round about the Sepulchre there hangeth a curtaine of silke, which hideth the Sepulture from their sight that stand withour. Beyond this in the same Mosquita are other two Sepulchres of *Fatima* and *Hali*: (who yet, as some say, was buried at Massadalli, neere Cusa: others say, hee neuer died, but his comming is still expected.) The attendants on these Sepulchres are fiftie Eunuches, white and tawnie, of which, three onely of the eldest and best esteemed white Eunuches, may enter within the Tombe; which they doe twice a day to light the Lampes, and for other seruices. The other attend on the Mosquita, and those two other Sepulchres: Where euery one may goe and touch at his pleasure, and take of the earth for deuotion, as many doe. The Captaine with great pompe presenteth that Pyramid-like Vestment (whereof you haue heard) for the Tombe, the Eunuches taking away the old, and laying on the new: and after this, other vestures for the ornament of the Mosquita. And the people without deliuer vnto the Eunuches, each man somewhat to touch the Tombe therewith: which they keepe as a Relique with great deuotion.

Here is a stately Hospitall built by *Cassachi*, or *Rose*, the wife of great *Soliman*, richly rented, and nourishing many poore people. A mile from the Citie are certaine houses, in one of which they say *Mahomet* dwelt, hauing on euery side many Date-trees, amongst which there are two growing out of one stocke exceeding high, which their Prophet, forsooth, grafted with his owne hands. The fruit thereof is alway sent to Constantinople for a Present to the Grand-Signior, and is said to be the *Blessed fruit of the Prophet*. Also there is a little Mosquita, wherein three places are counted holy. The first, they affirme their Prophet made his first prayer in, after hee knew God. The second is that, whither he went when he would see the house of *Abraham*. Where when he sate downe to that intent, the Mountaines opened from the top to the bottome, to shew him the house, and after closed againe as before. The third, is the middest of the Mosquita, where is a Tombe made of Lime and Stone foure-square, and full of sand, wherein they say was buried that blessed Camell which *Mahomet* was alway wont to ride vpon. Euen still (as one Mr. *Simons* a Merchant and beholder thereof reported to me) they haue a superstitious custome at Cairo, of carrying the leg of *Mahomets* Camell (as they affirme) in a Coach, the women in zeale of their blinde deuotion, hurling their Shashes to receiue thence some holy and blessed touch, for their Mahumetical edification: as the Papists ascribe no small holinesse to the touch of our Ladies Image at Loretto with their beades, or other implements of their superstition, as my friend Mr. *Barkley*, an eye-witnesse, hath told me. Marueil much we may, that the Souldiers which crucified Christ, and parted his garments by lot, and *Iudas* which kissed him, and the Deuill also which carried his bodie out of the wilderness, and set it on a pinacle of the Temple, did not from such holy touches acquire much holinesse. But here a good intent was wanting, which though the Mahumetans haue, yet a Camels leg is not so holy as our Ladies Image; Grant it: but they pretend Tradition and Deuotion no lesse then these: and otherwise, there is as little warrant [m] for that house and Image of our Ladie that they are true, as of the other. Blessed VIRGIN! whom *all generations call blessed*, and iustly admire for that holinesse, which with thankefulnesse to God, and chastitie to man, wee are to imitate; then these stones and blockes should thus vsurpe thy name, and (in a worse sacrilege) diuine worship, yea more then those holies of diuine institution, which were so farre from conueying [n] holinesse by touching, that being themselues touched by any vncleane thing, they receiued thence infection of vncleanesse. And if Christ himselfe should thus be honoured, where, in all the Christian world are such Vowes, Pilgrimages, and Deuotions in his name, as here to the supposed Ladie of Loretto? As if they would rather be *Mariani* then *Christiani* in their Religion. But who brought vs now to Loretto? Nay, who can but inreading the one, thinke of the other, both being frequented so generally in Pilgrimages, Offerings, and I know not what superstitions? Only in this is Loretto worse, that it abuseth more holy names of God, and his Saints, to like vnholy holies. But of this subiect, that Reuerend and learned Deane, Dr. *Sutcliffe* hath largely and learnedly written, both in confutation of that impious Pamphlet of [o] *Gifferds Calvino-Turcismus*, and plainely paraleling the Mahumetans and Turkes in verie many points of their Religions. To him I referre the industrious Reader. Yea, the verie Narration of the Saracenicall and Turkish Rites by vs in this Booke, shall bee sufficient to them which know the Popish, in many things to discerne and acknowledge the Kindred, and like hellish descent both; like *Sampsons* Foxes, hauing their tayles knit together with fire-brands, which both fill and empire the world with their flames; howsoever their heads looke contrarie, one toward *Christ*, the other toward *Mahomet*. That which I speake of *Popish*, I vnderstand of that which our Aduersaries maintaine by authoritie (not from Scriptures, or the ancient Councels

m They pretend visions and miracles, &c. But haue not Antichrist and all Idolaters their miracles? saith hath euer relation to the word of God.

n *Agg.2.12,13*

o *Calvino-Turcismus Giff. Turco-Papismus, D. Sut.*

Councels and Fathers, but) from the Popes pretended Supremacie and visible Monarchie, as Head and Vice-God in the Church; the Alcoran, wherof is his *Decretals, Extrauagants, Consistorie, Constitutions*, and such *Canons* as p *their holy Ghost sent from Rome in a boxe*, lately hundered at Trent besides, and against the Canonicall Scripture, *which holy men of God writ as they were moued by the holy Ghost.* But let vs backe to Medina. On the other side of the Citie are Tombes of the holy Mahumetans, *Abubachar, Ottoman, Omar*, which *Bartema* saith, were buried in the same Temple with *Mahumet*, and all vnder the earth. A daies iourney from Medina is a steepe mountaine, hauing no passage but one narrow path, which was made by *Iali*: who fleeing from the pursuing Christians, and hauing no way of escape, drew out his sword, and diuided this mountaine, and so saued his life. The Captaine at his returne q Cairo, is with a sumptuous Feast receiued of the Basha, and presented with a garment of cloth of gold the against the presenteth the Alcoran, out of the chest to the *Basha* to kisse, and then it is laid vp againe. By this time your pilgrimage hath more then wearied you, I haue made bold to trouble you a little longer, with this argument of *Mahomets* Meccan pilgrimage, out of the Maronites collection from Arabike Authors.

Mecca chiefe Citie of Arabia Deserta, is called also in the Alcoran, *Becca*, the holy Citie of the Mossemans, both for *Mahomets* reuelations there had, and for the Temple especially, called by them *Kabe*, or, The Square House, which they fable, was first built by Angels, and often visited by *Adam* himselfe: and lest it should bee destroied by the Flood, was lifted vp to the sixth Heauen, called *Dar-assalem* (The habitation of peace) after the Flood, *Abraham* built another house like to the former, by the shadow thereof sent from heauen to him. Thus writeth *Iacub Ben-Sidi Aali*. This is a Chappell, not very large, of square figure, open with foure Gates, by one of which the Ministers haue access; the other are, opened but once in the yeere. It glittereth all with Gold, and is couered with vests of Gold, an encompassed with elegant Iron-worke, to keepe off neere commers. No man may enter it but certaine Elders, which haue long beards to their breasts, and remaine there night and day. Neere to this Chappel is a large marble Floore adorned about with eight huge Lights, and sixe and thirtie Lamps of Gold, perpetually burning. Three paths leade thereto whereon men and women goe bare-foot to the Chappel, which they compasse seuen times with great reuerence, mumbling their deuotions; kisse the corners, sigh and implore the aide of *Abraham* and *Mohamed*. Round about all this space is a stately building of very elegant structure, as it were a wall; in which are numbred sixteene principall Gates to goe in and out, where hang innumerable Lamps and Lights of incredible greatnesse. Within this space betwixt the rewes of Pillars are Shops of Sellers, of Gemmes, Spices, Silkes, in incredible store from India, Arabia, Ethiopia: that it seemes rather the Mart of the World, then a Temple. Here doe men kisse the Territorie of Mecca. Before this, saith *Iacub Ben-Sidi Aali*, *Mohamed* commanded *to weepe, to aske God pardon for sinnes, and to crie with sighs and teares for ayde against their enemies.* After they haue visited that Chappel, and the Stone, they goe to another large Chappel within the Temple, where is the Well, called *Zam Zam*; which is (saith the said Author) the Well which flowed from the feet of *Ismael*, when hee was thirstie and wept: which *Hagar* first seeing, cried out *Zam Zam*, in the Coptite or old Ægyptian Tongue; that is, Stay, stay. There are many which draw water thence and giue to the Pilgrimes, who are commanded to wash therewith their bodie and head three times to drinke thereof, and if they can, to carrie some of it with them, and to pray God for health and pardon of sinnes. To this building is added a Noble Schoole or Vniuersitie, *A. H.* 949. by *Solyman* who adorned it by his costs by maruellous structure, and endowed it with reuenues.

After these visitations, all the Pilgrimes goe to a certaine Temple on a Hill, ten miles from the Citie, and flocking in great numbers, buy according to their abilitie, one or more Rams for sacrifice. And because some are of opinion, that the Mohamedans haue no sacrifices, we will relate what *Iacub Ben-Sidi Aali* hath written of their meremonies. *Dhabhia* (so the Arabs call a Sacrifice) *is a killing of beasts in the worship, and for the offering of God, and they are Lambs of sixe or seuen moneths at least; Camels of fiue yeeres, Bullocks of two yeeres. The males are to be chosen before females, and those cleane, white, infected by no natural or violent defect, fatte, corpulent, horned. Euery man must kill his owne Sacrifices, and rippe them with his owne hands, except in vrgent necessities, and then he may substitute others to doe it for him. For euery one before they eate anything, are bound to eate some piece of the Sacrifice; the rest, if they can, to giue cheerefully to the poore. They which are admitted to these Oblations, let them offer one Ram for themselues, another for sake of the Dead, another for* Mahomed, *that in the day of Iudgement he deliuer them from calamities. These Sacrifices are offered to God in imitation of* Abraham, *which would haue offered his sonne* Ismael *to God; who going out of the Citie with him to a certaine Hill, called* Mena,

p Because at Trent nothing might bee debated, but what was first sent and ordered from Rome: hence grew the Prouerbe.

q When the Soldans raigned in Egypt, they had a Ceremonie after the Pilgrimage, to cut in pieces a Camel which had carried the Alcoran in great solemnitie to the Soldans Palace: euery particle of the beast, and of his furniture being esteemed, and reserued as a holy Relique: the same is now performed (saith *Doussa*) at Constantinople. The like was in Benianins dayes at Bagedat: & I know not what Camel superstition is often mentioned in the Alcoran.

Mecca and the Temple.

Rabe like, to the house at Loretto in Angel-legends.

The blacke stone.

Zam Zam, *Ismaels* Well.

Mahumetan sacrifices.

Lying Tradition.

where

where he would haue offered him to God: but when the sword could not cut his wecke, a white Ram appeared betwixt his hands, fat, and horned, which he sacrificed to God in stead of his sonne.

Territorie of Mecca.

Whiles the Pilgrims are heere busied in their sacrifices, *Beduine Arabs* assault the Carauans, and robbing them, flee to the Hils, and inaccessible refuges, so swiftes as if they did flie. And although all Armes are forbid den in the Territorie of Mecca (which containeth on the East sixe miles, on the North twelue, on the West eighteene, on the South foure and twentie, in which respect Mecca & Medina are called *Atharamain*) yet they cease not to inseff, & Pilgrims are here forced to Armes. This Territorie is barren for want of water and raine, hath very few Herbs and Plants, or other pleasures of Groues, Gardens, Vines, or greene obiects; but is roasted with the Sunne, both land and people. And this haply is the cause that no man may breake a bough if they finde any Tree. Only the shrubs of Balsam, brought hither from Cairo thriue well, and are now so propagated, that all the sweet liquor of Balsam is carried onely from this Citie, thorow all Regions in great plentie. Heere are store of Pigeons, which because they are of the flocke of that which came to *Mahomeds* eare (as the Mossemans fable) no man may take or scarre them. A certaine *Scerif* enioyeth the dominion of this Citie, and all the Land of Medina by inheritance, called *Alamam-Alhascemi*, that is, the Captaine or chiefe *Hascemee*, descended of *Hascem* great Grand-father of *Mohamed*; Who were neuer depriued of their dominion by the *Ottoman* or *Soldan*. Yea, the *Ottoman* calls not himselfe the Lord of Mecca and Medina, but the humble seruant. Yet this *Scerif* notwithstanding his reuenues and gifts by Pilgrims and Princes, through the Beduines spoiles, and his kindreds quarrels seeking the Soueraigntie, is alway poore. Therefore doth the *Ottoman* bestow the third part of the reuenues of Egypt, and to protect the Pilgrims from the inuasions of the Arabs.

Balsam brought from Gilead to Cairo, thence to Mecca.

Scerif of Mecca.

Medina.

Medina is called *The Citie* by *Antonomasia*, and *Medina Alnabi*, that is, *The Citie of the prophet*: because *Mohamed*, when he was forced to forsake his Countrey Mecca, betooke himselfe to this Citie, then called *Iathreb*, and was made Lord thereof. It is an errour that he was borne here, for he was borne and brought vp at Mecca.

Mohameds birth and life.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Successors of MAHOMET, *of their different Sects, and of the dispersing of that Religion, through the World.*

MAHOMET hauing with Word and Sword published his Alcoran (as you haue heard) his followers after his death succeeding in his place, succeeded him in tyrannie. *Eubocar*, surnamed *Abdalla*, vndertooke the defence of that faithlesse Faith and Kingdome, and that (as his Predecessor had done) partly by subtiltie, partly by force. For when as *Mahumets* Disciples has buried their new Religion, with their old Master, except a few of his kindred, hee applied his wits to recall them; and whereas [a] *Hali*, *Mahomets* neerest kinsman and sonne-in-law disagreed from him, and was persuaded by the Iewes to professe himselfe a Prophet, with promise of their best aide and assistance: *Eubocar* (or *Ebnber*) reconciled him, and as the Arabian Chronicle witnesseth, conuerted many Infidels, and slue the goine-sayers. He raigned one yeere, and three moneths and thirteene dayes. The next successour *Aomar* (saith the same Author, *Leo* [b] termeth him *Homar*) ordained their prayers in the moneth Ramzan, and that the Alcoran should be read through, which he caused to be written out, and vnited in one booke: He conquered Egypt by *Hanir* his Captaine; after that Damasco, Ierusalem, Gaza, and a great part of Syria were subdued. He raigned ten yeeres and sixe moneths. [c] *Odmen* or *Oximen* succeeded, and raigned twelue yeeres, and after him *Hali*; and next to him his sonne *Alhacem*; and then *Moaui* the great Conquerour, &c. These foure *Eubocar*, *Aomar*, *Oximen*, and *Hali*, are the foure great Doctors of the Mahumetan Law: and *Mahomet* before his death prophesied that they should succeed him, and of their worthinesse.

But as *Mahomet* had pretended the name of *Gabriel*, to the dreames of *Sergius*, and other Apostata's of the Christians and Iewes, disagreeing both with the truth and themselues: so it was not long, that this *vntempered mortar* would hold together these buildings. For, the [d] Alcoran being (according to diuers Copies thereof) read diuersly, was cause of different Sects among them. *Oximen*, to preuent the danger hereof, commanded that all the Copies of their Law should be brought and deliuered into the hands of *Zeuds* and *Abdalla*: who

a *Arab. Nob. ref.*
b *Leo. l. 1.*
c *Odmen. 12. Hali. 4. yc. Alhacen* sixe moneths and twenty dayes. *Moaui* 17. yeeres. *Iezid.* three yeeres eight moneths, who say that the Prophet commanded not to blame, but to pray for and to obey rulers, though wicked: for yee shall haue mercy, & they punishment.
d *Ref. Ara. Nob.*

who conferring their Copies, should make one booke, and where they dissented, should read according to the Copie of *Corax*. Thus these two according to the Kings Edict, to stablish an vniformitie in the reading of the Alcoran, hauing out of all those Copies framed one to be Athenticall, burned all others. Yet were they deceiued of their hopes, partly, because *Hali*, *Abitalib*, and *Ibenmuzad*, would not bring in their bookes, of which that of *Hali* was the same which *Mahumet* had left, and was after by the Iewes altered, putting out and in at their pleasure: & partly, because that booke, which they had thus culled out of the rest, to remain *Canonical*, was lost, & of the foure Copies which they had written therof, by fire & negligence al perished. *Eletragig* would haue vsed the like policie after; but this many-headed serpent, which could not in the shel be killed, much lesse in his riper growth could be reformed.

Those foure Doctors aforesaid, emulous of each other, intending their owne priuate ends, sowed the seeds then, which fructifie in their venemous multiplication till this day. [e] *Hali* or *Halli* was Author of the Sect *Imemia*, which was embraced of the Persians, Indians, and of many Arabians, and the *Gelbines* of Africa. *Ozimen*, or *Odmen*, began the Sect *Bazesia* or *Xefaia*, and hath in diuers Countries his followers. *Homar* founded the *Anesia*, followed of the Turkes, Syrians, and in Zahara in Afrike. *Ebocar* (otherwise called *Ebuber*, or *Abubequer*) taught the Sect *Melchis*, generally possessing Arabia and Africa. These are holden as saints in the Saracene Kalender, as [f] *Scaliger* testifieth, who had one in Semiarabike and Persian, wherein ouer against the 27. of December was written, *the death of Phetima*, (the was the daughter of *Mehamad*) *God haue mercy on her*. Against the 10. of Ianuary, *the death of Abuber; God haue mercy on him*: and so of the rest. Against the 16. of Nouember, *the beginning of the fast Cephar*: so they call the Christians: & on the 25. of December, *the birth of Iesus*. On the 7. of Ianuary, *the birth of Moses*: Which I mention to shew what honor they ascribe to them or rather, that dishonor, which in this confusion of light with darknes, the Prince of darknes in the form of an Angel of light, doth vnto them. Fro these 4. in proces of time arose other 8 68. Sects of name, besides other pedling sections of smaller reckoning. Amongst the rest the *Mobahites* haue bin famous; liuing for the most part as Heremites, and professing a morall Philosophie, with principles different from the Alcoran. One of these not many yeers since, shewing the name of *Mahomet* in his brest (there imprinted with *Aqua fortis* or some such like matter) raised by a great number of Arabians in Afrike, & laid siege to Tripolis: where being betrained by one of his Captaines, his skin was sent for a present to the grand Signior. These *Morobites* affirm, that when *Hali* fought, he killed a 100000. Christians with one stroke of his sword, which was a 100. cubits in length. The *Cobtini* are a sect ridiculous. One of them shewed himself riding in the Country of Algier, on a Reed, reyned and bridled as a horse; much honoured, for that on this Horse, this Asse had (as he said) rid an 100. leagues in one night. *R. Moses Egyptius* [h] writeth of two Sects of *Moores*, the one called *Seperatists*, the other *Intelligents*, & *Vnderstanders*, both followed in their opinions by many Iewes. These later were of opinion, that nothing in the world commeth to passe by chance or accident, neither in generall nor particular, but all are disposed by the will and intent of God, as well the fall of a leafe, as the death of a man. The *Seperatists* in a contrary extreme, allow to man and beast a freedome, and that God rewardeth all creatures according to their merits or demerits: his prouidence extending it selfe to the fall of the leaues, to the way of the Ants: & if one be borne defectiue, it better for him, then if he had bin perfect, and so if any aduersitie befall him; for his reward. Louse shall not lose his reward from the Creator: the Mouse also which hath not sinned, & killed of the Cat, shall there be recompenced. (Now beasts pray for their soules, and Flea and Lice prey vpon their bodies which hatched this beastly louse Diuinitie.) The *Intelligent* the *Creator would*: the *Seperatist* thinketh that vniust; and that whatsoeuer is punished in this life, shall be rewarded in the next, because such is the Creators *wisdome*. Neither may we betrue the *Rabbine*, who reciting 5. diff. ring opinions concerning the prouidence of God: first, of the *Epicures*, which exclude it wholly: secondly, of *Aristotle*: that it descended not beneath the Moon: thirdly, of the *Intelligents*: fourthly, of the *Seperatists*: fifthly, his own, which he attributeth to the law of *Moses*, that euery man hath free-wil, and all good befals him in reward, euil for punishment, & what measure any man meteth, shal be measured to him again: but for other creatures, beasts, plants, and their operations, as of a spider catching a fly, & the like [i] he tributeth with *Aristotle* vnto chance, & not to diuine prouidence, which he appropriateth in things below vnto man. These opinions he ascribeth; that of *Aristotle* to *Iob*, that of the *Seperatists* to *Bildad*, that of *Sophar* to the *Intelligents*, that of *Elephaz* is the same with his own: & men let him with *Elephaz* sacrifice to expiate it, *I. Leo. l. 3.* writeth, that one *Elefacin* had written a large of the Mahumetan sects: of which he reckoneth 72. principall (which agreeth with our former number) euery one accounting his owne to be good and true, in which a

e G. *Bot. Ben. Curio* calleth these Sects *Malcis*, followed in Africa: *Alasy* professed in Arabia and Syria; *Arambeli*, in Armenia and Persia; *Buanisi*, in Alexandria and Assyria; & all foure are followed in Cairo. *lib. 5. t.* f *Scal. E. T. l. 4.* § 68. Sects Sarrac.

h *Moreb Neb. l. 1. c. 70. & l. 3. c. 18. & 24.*

i God is a co-worker in euery worke, of whom, and in whom all things are and moue: & not a sparrow not a haire from our head falleth to the ground, without diuine prouidence. *Pd. Lanci. de Nat. D. 5. c. 1.*

man may attaine saluation. And yet *Leo* there addeth, that in this age there are not found abouc two. [c] One is that of *Lesbari*; which in all Turkie, Arabia and Africa is embraced: the other *Imamm*, currant in Persia and Corosan (of which in his proper place more.) So that by *Leo's* iudgement, all which follow the rule *Lesbari* or *Hasbari*, are Catholike Mahumetans; although of these the same Author affirmes, that in Cairo and all Egypt are foure Religions different from each other, in Spirituall or Ecclesiastical Ceremonies, and also concerning their Ciuill and Canon Law; all founded on the Mahumetan Scripture in times past, by foure learned men, diuersly construing the generall rules to such particulars, as seemed to them fitter for their followers; who disagreeing in opinion, agree in affection, and conuerse together, without hatred or vpbraiding each other. As for those other Sects, it seemeth that they are, for the most part, long since vanished: and those differences which remaine, consist rather in diuersitie of rule, and order of profession, then in differing Sects and Heresies of Religion: except in some few, which yet remaine, of which [d] *Leo* thus reporteth: Foureforcc yeeres after *Mahumet*, one *Elhesenibnu Abithasen* gaue certaine rules to his Disciples, contrarie to the Alcoran principles, but writ nothing. About a hundred yeeres after *Elhasrit Ibnu Esed* of *Bagadded* writ a booke vnto his Disciples, condemned by the Caliphs and Canonists. But about foureforcc yeeres after that, another great Clerke reuiued the same doctrine, and had many followers; yet hee and they were therefore condemned to death. But obtaining to haue triall of his opinions by disputation, he ouerthrew his Aduersaries, the Mahometane Lawyers: and the *Califa* fauoured the said Sect, and erected Monasteries for them. Their Sect continued, till *Maliesah*, of the Nation of the Turkes, persecuted the same. But twenty yeeres after it was againe renewed, and one *Elgazzuli* (a learned man) writ seuen bookes, reconciling these Sectaries and the Lawyers together: which reconciliation continued till the comming of the Tartars: and Asia and Afrike was full of these Reformers of their Law. In old time none but learned men might be admitted Professors thereof: but within these last hundred yeeres euery ignorant Idiot professeth it, saying, That learning is not necessary, but [e] the *holy Spirit* doth reuealc to them which haue cleane hearts, the knowledge of the truth. These contrary to the Alcoran sing loue-songs and dances, with some phanatsticall extasies: affirming themselues to be rauisshed of diuine loue. These are great gluttons: they may not marry, but are reputed Sodomites.

c But two principall factions Mahumetans, at this day.

d *I. Leo. l. 3.*

e What difference herein, betweene the *Mahumetane* & our *Seperatist*.

The same our Author writeth of some which teach, that by good workes, fasting, and abstinence, a man may attaine a Nature Angelicall, hauing his minde so purified that he cannot sinne, although he would. But he must first passe through fifty degrees of Discipline: And although he sinne before hee be past these fifty degrees, yet God doth not impute it to him. These obseuie strange and inestimable Fasts, at the first; after they liue in all pleasures of the world. Their rule was written in foure volumes, by a learned and eloquent man, *Essbrauar*: and by *Ibnul-farid*, another Author, in exact and most learned Verse. That the Spheres, Elements, Planets, and Starres, are *one God*, and that no Faithnor Law can be ertoneous, because that all men (in their mindes) intend to worship that which is to bee worshipped. And they believe that the knowledge of God is contained in one man, who is called *Elcorb*, elected and partaker of God, and in knowledge as God. There are other forty men amongst them, called *Elamed*, that is, [f] Dunces, because of their lesse knowledge. When the *Elcorb* or *Elcotb* dyeth, his Successour is chosen out of these: and into that vacant place of the fortie, they chuse one out of another number of seuentie. They haue a third inferiour number of a hundred threescore and fiue (their Title I remember not) out of which they chuse, when any of the threescore and tenne die. Their Law or Rule enioyneth them to wander through the World in manner of Fooles, or of great Sinners, or of the vilest amongst men. And vnder this cloke many are most wicked men, going naked without hiding their shame, and haue to deale with women in the open and common streets like beasts. Of this basesort are many in Tunis, and farre more in Egypt, and most of all in Cairo. I my selfe (saith our Author) in Cairo, in the street called Bain Elcasraim, saw one of them with mine eyes, take a beautifull Dame comming out of the Bath, and laid her downe in the middest of the street, and carnally knew her, and pretently when hee had left the woman, all the people ranne to touch her clothes, because a holy man had touched them. And they said, that this Saint seemed to doe a sinne, but that hee did it not. Her husband knowing of it, reckoned it a rare fauour and blessing of God, and made solemne feasting and gaue alms for that cause. But the Iudges, which would haue punished him for the same, were like to bee slaine of the rude multitude: who haue them in great reputation of sanctitie, and euery day giue them gifts and presents.

f *Tronchi.*

There are another sort that may be termed Caballists: which fast strangely, nor doe they eate the flesh of any creature, but haue certaine meates ordained and appointed for euery houre of the day and night, and certain particular praiers, according to the eloyes and month numbers

numbring their said Prayers: and vse to carry vpon them some square things, painted with Characters and Numbers. They affirme, that the good Spirits appeare, and acquaint them with the affayres of the world. An excellent Doctor, named *Boni*, framed their rule and prayers, and how to make their squares; and it seemeth to me (who haue seene the worke) to be more Magicall then Cabalisticall. One booke sheweth their prayers and fastings: the second, their square: the third, the vertue of the foure score and ninteene names of God; which I saw in the hand of a Venetian Iew at Rome. There is another rule in these Sects, called *Sunnach*, of certaine Hermites which liue in Woods, and solitary places, feeding on nothing but hearbs and wilde fruits, and none can particularly know their life, because of this solitariness. Thus farre *Leo*.

Beniamin Tudelensis [E] telleth of a Nation, neere to Mount Libanus, which hee calleth *Hhassissin*, which varied from the ordinary sort of Ismalites, and followed a peculiar Prophet of their owne, whose word they obeyed, whether for life or for death. They called him *Elheich al Hhassissin*: his abode was at Kamos. They were a terror to all about them, sawing asunder euen the Kings if they tooke any. They warred with the Frankes (the Christians which then held Ierusalem) and the King of Tripolis. Their dominion extended eight dayes iourney. *Zachuth* mentioneth one [h] *Baba*, which about the 630. yeere of the *Hegira*, fained himselfe a Prophet sent of God, vnder which colour hee gathered together a great Armie, wherewith he filled all Asia with slaughter and spoile, slaying Christians and Ismaelits without difference: till *Giatheddin* King of Gunia, ouerthrew and destroyed him and his Host.

Besides the former; they haue other Heremites of another sort; one is mentioned by *Leo*, [i] who had fiue hundred Horse, a hundred thousand Sheepe, two hundred Beeues, and of offerings and almes, betwixt foure and fiue thousand Duckets, his fame grew in Asia and Afrike, his Disciples many, and fiue hundred people dwelling with him at his charges; to whom he enioyneth not penance, nor any thing: but giueth them certaine names of God, and biddeth them with the same to pray vnto him so many times a day. When they haue learned this, they returne home: he hath a hundred Tents for strangers, his Cattell, and Family: hee hath foure wiues, besides slaues, and (by them) many children sumptuously apparrelled. His fame is such, that the King of Telensin is afraide of him: and he payeth nothing to any: such veneration haue they towards him, reputing him a Saint. *Leo* saith, hee spake with him, and that this Heremite shewed him Magick-bookes, and he thought that this his great estimation did come, by false working of the *true science*; so the Heremite termed Magicke.

But these Heremites we cannot so well reckon a Sect, as a Religious Order; of which sort there are diuers in these Mahumetane Nations, as in our ensuing discourse shall appeare: To returne therefore to the consideration of the meanes vsed to preuent the varietie of Sects among them: The Caliphs sought to remedie these inconueniences by their best policie. [k] *Moaui*, about the yeere of our Lord 770. assembled a generall Councell of their learned men to consult about an Vniformity; but they disagreeing among themselues, hee chose six men of the most learned, and shut them vp in a house together with their Scriptures, commanding them that out of those Copies disagreeing (as you haue heard) they should chuse that should seeme best. These reduced the Doctrine of *Mahomet* into six bookes; forbidding any on paine of death to speake or write otherwise of their Law. But because the Arabians of subtle and piercing wit, which studied Philosophy in the Vniuersities of Bagdet, Marocco, Cordoua, and other places, could not but spie and discerne the mad folly of the law, so palpable to any reasonable iudgement: It [l] was therefore ordained, that the Phylosophy Lecture should be taken away, and in place thereof they should read the *Alcoran*; prouiding, for all these Students of their Law, their expences out of the publike charge, and inhibiting all further studie in Philosophy: insomuch that they now (saith our Author, who himselfe was a Student in that Vniuersity) repute him not a good Saracen, who is addicted to that studie. This Frier *Richard* mentioneth another Prophet, named *Solem*, had in estimation with these Babylonians, which was after slaine by the Tartars. He and Cardinall *Cusanus* affirme, that the Saracens of the East differ in their Alcoran from those of the West, [m] making the first fiue Chapters but one; and that they differ in the exposition thereof, and in the same Schooles or Vniuersities, one Sect condemneth another.

But in these times the Mahumetane Professors are chiefly distinguished by the seuerall Nations; of which are foure principall: the Arabians, Persians, Turkes, and Tartars (to which wee may adde the Mogore, as a fifth; whom the Iesuites, in their Epistles, report to halt from his former Mahumetisme, and to incline to Gentilisme.) Of all these, the Arabians are most zealous in their superstition; the Persians most agree to Reason and Nature; the Tartars are more Heathenish and simple, the Turkes are the freest and most Martiall. The Arabians account it their peculiar glory, that *Mahumet* was of that Nation, and that Mecca and Medina are there seated: and therefore haue laboured in the dayes of

g *In Itinerario Assassinus*, of these see *l. 2. c. 22.*

h *A. Zach. Chron. Serac.*

i *Leo l. 8. c. 3.*

k *Io. Bot. Bend*

l *Fr. Richard. cap. 13.*

m This difference is in the Latine translation, not in the Arabike, as *Erpenius* hath obserued.

their former puissance by the sword; since, by their trafficque and preaching, to spread their Mahumetisme through the World. Their first Seducers had possessed Syria and Palestina: *Homar* had added Egypt, and in a short time their Successors had preuailed in Asia, Afrike, and Europe, as we [c] haue before shewed. All Mahumetans are called by vs *Saracens*, which *Erpenius* in his Annotations on his *Ioseph*, saith, is a name to them vnknowne (so is China to the Chinois, Peru, to the Peruans, &c.) but giuen them by others. They call themselues *Musimos*, or *Mussemans*, of a word which signifieth Beleeuers (as one would say in their sense, Catholike and Orthodoxe beleeuers.)

c *Sup. c. 2.*

They haue beene such in Armes: and in diligence of Preaching they haue beene as forward, and so continue. Seuen hundred yeeres since, *Perimal* raigning in Malabar; they there sowed their Tares: and the more easily to take those Ethnikes in their net, they tooke their daughters in marriage; a matter of much consequence, in regard of their wealth, and practised of them to this day. They were Authors of great gaine vnto them by their trades and traffique for Spiritualty: and were suffered to inhabite, and plant Colonies amongst them. By their meanes, Calicut, of a small thing, became a great and rich Citie. And *Permal* himselfe was peruerted by them to their faith: who zealously inclined to their persuasions, resolued to end his dayes at Mecca, and put himselfe on the voyage, with some ships of Pepper, and other things of price, but perished by tempest in the way. From Malabar they passed to the Maldiuæ, and Zeilan, Sumatra, Iaua, Molucca, the Philippinaes, and in the Continent to Cambaia, Bengala, Siam, Malucca, Ior, Pam, and the huge Kingdome of China, preaching and planting their superstitions, as in the particular Histories of these Nations shall further appeare. They are in this respect so zealous, that euen the Arabian Mariners will slay behinde in the Countries of the Ethnikes, there to diuulge this their Sect: and in the yeere 1555. one of them pierced as farre as Iapon, there to haue laied their Leauen: but the Portugalls in these Easterne parts, treading in the same steps, by their trafficque and preachings, haue much hindered their proceedings. The Tartars, Persians, and Turkes, require longer and seuerall discourses in their due places; and first, we will speake of them which are first in this ranke, the greatest of all Mahumetane States, the Turkes.

Io. Bat. Ben.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Turkish Nation: their Originall, and Proceedings.

§. I.

Of the Turkish Name, and first Originall.

ALthough some may thinke, that I haue beene so tedious, in the relation of the Mahumetan opinions and superstitions, that, to speake any thing more, would seeme but as powring water into a full Sea: Yet, because there is in this World nothing certaine, but vncertaintie; it being diuine prerogatiue to be *yesterday, to day, the same for euer*: and that this Saracenical Religion hath sustained her chances and changes, according to the diuersitie of times and places where it is and hath beene professed: so doe I hold it fit, as wee haue seene the foundation, to behold also the frames and fabriques thereon builded, and from that Fountaine (or sinke-hole rather) of superstitition, to lead you along the gutters and streames thence deriued. And because the Turkes are preeminent in all those things, which this profession accounteth eminent, it is meetest to giue them the first place heere, which elsewhere we take it: and after we haue set downe a briefe Historie of that Nation, and the proceedings of their state, to ascribe their theorie and opinions, and then their practice and rites of Religion. But before we come to the discouerie of their Religion, it is not amisse to search the beginning and increase of this Nation.

The name of Turkes signifies (saith *Chitræus*) Shepheards, or Heard-men: and such it seemeth was their ancient profession, as of the rest of the Scythians vnto this day. *Nicephorus* [a] (and before him *Simocatta*, from whom *Nicephorus* borroweth it) speaketh of the Turkes, and placeth them about Bactria: their chiefe Citie he calleth Taugast, which is supposed to be the worke of *Alexander*. Their Religion, hee saith, at that time was to worship the Fire, Aire, Water, and Earth, which they adore, and sing Hymnes to. They acknowledge God the maker of Heauen and Earth, to whom they sacrifice Horse, Kine, and Sheepe: they haue Priests which diuine things to come. The Prince of Taugast, they called the sonne of

a *Lib. 18. c. 30.*

of God; They worship Images. The Prince spendeth the night with seuen hundreth women. The Tattars haue now possessed the same Countrie; but long before, the same rites, as you may reade in our Historie of them. To deriue them (as some doe) from Troians and Iewes, is somewhat farre [b] fetched: nor is there much likelihood that they should receiue their name of Turca [c] a Persian Citie: the name is ancient, and applied by [d] *Mela* and *Plinie* to a Nation of the Scythians, and their original is accounted Scythian by the [e] most and best Authors. *Beniamin Tudelensis* calleth them alway by the name *Togarma*. There are which bring a long Genealogie from *Noahs* Arke, vnto the *Ottoman* Family: herein disagreeing, while some will haue *Magog*, others *Tubal* the Author of their Nation. *Leunclauius* [f] reciteth and refuteth the same. He writeth the name *Turki*, alleaging *Herodotus* for his Author: and citeth many Authors to proue, that they descended of the *Vnni* or *Vngri*, which were called Turkes, of which there were two sorts, one Westerly in Pannonia, another Easterly neere Persia, called by the Persians *Magores*, he concludeth, that the *Vnni* or *Iurchi* came from Iuchra or Iuchria (whence the name *Iuchri* might easily be deflected to *Iurchi*) beyond Tanais; and first after they had forsaken their owne Countrie, settled themselues neere Mœotis, from whence they passed to Chazaria, and some went Westward to Pannonia, some Eastward to Armenia, and thence into Persia.

b *Turci quasi Teucri. Rich. t. de rib. Turc. & Mart. Bartistius de Scodrensis expug. lib. 1.* mention, this opinion, *& Andr. à Lacuna.*

c *Lonicer. Chr. Turc. to. 1. l. 1.*

d *Pom. Mela. 1. c. vlt. Plin. l. 6. c. 7.*

e *Luin. Chalcondyl. lib. 1. to. Bapt. Egnatius. Nic. Rubo c. Sagun. Ep. Knolls, &c.*

f *1. Leunel. hist. Musulm.*

Many probable Arguments might bee brought, to proue that they descended of the Scythians, whose wandering shepheardly-life, both the name, and their practice (in old times, and in some places still) expresseth. The first Expedition and militarie employment, which I haue read of the Turkes, (except what the feare of them compelled the Persians vnto, as in their Historie wee shall after see) was [g] vnder *Varamus* a rebellious Persian, aboue a thousand yeeres since, when *Cosroes* was King of Persia, and *Mauritius* the Roman Emperour: at what time many of them were slaine, and many taken, which confessed, that famine had forced them to those warres, for which cause they marked themselues with a blacke Crosse; a Ceremonie which they said they had learned of the Christians, thinking thereby to expell hunger. This hungrie Nation hath since beene a greedie and insatiate deuourer of Nations. Another expedition of theirs (which some reckon the first) [h] was in the yeere 755. or after another account 844. at which time, passing through the Georgian Countrie, then called Iberia, they first seized on a part of the greater Armenia, which their posteritie holdeth at this day, called of them Turcomania. In this wide and spacious Countrie they romed vp and downe, without certaine habitation, a long time with their Families and Heards of cattell, like the ancient Scythian *Nomades*; and the *Tartars*, and the same Turcoman Nation at this day. Their language also, as *Megiserus* in his Turkish Grammar sheweth, hath great affinitie, with the Tartarian, as also with the Persian (neere whom, and sometimes, as now will appeare, amongst them, they liued.) But from the Arabike it differeth altogether. Yet in their holies they most vse the Arabike, by reason of the Alcoran written in that language: likewise they vse the Arabike Letters and Prickes. The beginning of their greatnesse is thus by Christian Historians related.

g *Nicef. Chalcondyl. lib. 3. to. 1. Ex. Knolls, Turc. Hist.*

h *Hieron. Megiserus Ling. Turc. Institut. Interp. Lipsiæ 1731.*

§. II.

Of the Turkish Kingdome in Persia, and their other Conquests.

WHen as the Saracens Empire grew now vnweldie, though her owne greatnesse, and the Soldans, which were wont to conquer for the Chaliph, began now to share with him in his large Dominion; *Mahomet* (then Sultan, or Soldan of Persia) was for this cause hardly beset with the Chaliph of Babylon; assailed also on the other side by the Indians. He sought to strengthen himselfe against these enemies, with the new friendship of these Turkes, of whom he obtained for his aide three thousand hardie Souldiers, [a] vnder the conduct of *Togra Mucalet*, the sonne of *Mikeil*, a valiant Captaine, and chiefe of the Selzuccian Tribe or Familie, whom the Greekes commonly call *Tangrolipix*, and some *Seldue*, or *Sadoc*. By the helpe of this *Tangrolipix Mahomet* the Persian Sultan ouercame *Pisafirie* the Caliph. The Turkes, after this warre, desiring leaue to passe ouer the Riuer Araxis to their Country-men, were both denied, and threatned, if they againe should seeke to depart. Whereupon they withdrew themselues into the Desart of *Caramonitis*; liuing there, and thence making roades into the Countries adioyning. *Mahomet* sent against them twentie thousand men, which by a sudden surprize in the night, *Tangrolipix* defeated, and furnished himselfe with their spoiles. And now durst *Tangrolipix* shew his face in the field, where his Armie was increased by the resort of lawlesse persons, seeking after spoile. *Mahomet* on the other side, impatient of his losse, put out the eyes of the Captaines,

a *Hist. Musulmanidis. 1. Theodor. Gaza de Orig. Turcar. Epist. to. Bapt. Egnat. de Orig. Turc.* But see also *sup. c. 2.* which is more likely. For I read not of *Pisafirie* in all the Catalogue of their Chalifs. *Mirkond* writes of many Turkish incursions into Persia before this.

taines, which had the leading of the Armie, and threatned to attire the Souldiers, that had fled, in womens apparell; and raising another great Armie, set forward against *Tangrolipix*, who was now fiftie thousand strong, and was presently made stronger by those threatned Souldiers, who fled from their Lord vnto him. They met at Ispahan (a Citie of Persia) and there *Mahomet* falling with his Horse, brake his necke: vpon which misehance both Armies comming to agreement, by common consent proclaimed *Tangrolipix* [b] Sultan in his stead; and so made him King of Persia, and the Dominion thereunto pertaining, which was done *Anno* 1030.

b *Tangrolipix* first Sultan amongst the Turkes, *An. Do.* 1030. some call him *Tangrolipix* and some *Toncrolipix.*

Tangrolipix opened the passages of Arazis to the rest of his Countrie-men, whom hee exalted to the highest places of command, so bridling the Persians, and he and his receiuing in their new Conquests the yoke of the *Mahometan Religion.* Ambition inciting him to further exploits, he warred also vpon *Pisafiris* the Chaliph; and after diuers ouerthrowes, slue him, and seized on his state. Hee sent *Cutlu-Moses* his Kinsman against the Arabians, by whom hee was discomfited: whereat aggrieued, hee went against them himselfe, but with like successe. Hee sent *Asan* his brothers sonne to inuade Media, who in that enterprise was slaine: he sent againe *Habraime Alim* his brother, with an Armie of an hundred thousand men, who tooke prisoner *Liparites* Gouernour of Iberia (who came to aide the Emperours Lieutenant in Media) whom *Tangrolipix* frankely set free, and sent his Embassadour to the Emperour, prouidly demanding him to become his subiect.

Such haps, and such hopes had *Tangrolipix*, the first Turke that euer was honoured with a Diademe. His sonne [c] and successour *Axan* tooke *Diogenes* the Emperour of Constantinople prisoner in the field: But *Cutlu-Moses*, with his Cousin *Melech* (who in his Fathers dayes had fled into Arabia) rebelling and taking armes against him; as *Axan* was readie to ioyne battell with them, the Caliph (who retained the highest place still in their superstition, although disposyled of his Temporalities) letting aside all his Pontificall formalitie, whereby he was bound not to goe out of his owne house, thrust himselfe betweene these Armies: and with the reuerence of his place, and person, together with his persuasions, moued them to desist, and to stand to his arbitrement; which was, that *Axan* the Sultan should still enioy his Dominions entirely: And that *Cutlu-Moses*, and his sonnes aided by him, should inuade the Constantinopolitan Empire, and should be *absolute*, and onely Lords of whatsoeuer they could gaine thereof. There was neuer any thing to that impietie more commodious, nor to our Religion more dangerous. For by this meanes *Cutlu-Moses*, with his sonnes in a short time conquered all Media, with a great part of Armenia, Cappadocia, Pontus, and Bithynia; which their designes were much furthered, by treasons and dissentions in the Greeke Empire. *Axan* the Sultan also gaue to his Kinsman *Ducat* and *Melech*, the gouernement of Aleppo, and Damasco, with the adioyning parts of Syria, by that meanes to encroach vpon the Egyptian Caliph, which accordingly they in short time did.

c *Knolles* Turkish Historie. *G. Tyr.* see *sup. l. 1. c. vlt.*

But these their haughtie attempts were stayed, and being now in the flowre, were cut shorter by that fortunate Expedition [d] of the Christian Princes of the West, agreed vpon at the Councell of Claremont, and performed by *Gualter Sensauier*; *Peter* the Hermite, first and principall mouer here of; *Godfrey* Duke of Lorraine, with his two brethren *Eustace* and *Baldwin*, of the honourable house of Buillon; *Hugh*, surnamed the Great, brother to *Philip* the French King; *Raymond* and *Robert*, Earles of Flanders; *Robert* of Normandie, sonne to *William* the Conqueror; *Stephen de Valois*, Earle of Chartiers; *Ademar* the Popes Legate; *Bohemund* Prince of Tarentum, and others, conducting, as the most receiued opinion is, three hundred thousand Souldiers, in defence of the Christian Faith, against the Turkes and Saracens, which bothouerthrew the Turkes in the lesser Asia, and recouered also the holy Land. The Principalitie, or (as some stile it) the Kingdome of Antioch was giuen him by common consent to *Bohemund* Prince of Tarentum; the Kingdome of Ierusalem, to *Robert*: who (hearing of his Fathers death) refused it, in hope of England; and *Godfrey* of Buillon was saluted King.

d The memorable Expedition of diuers Christian Princes into the holy Land. *Historia belli sacri G. Tyr.* and many others write at large of these Warres, *vide Gesta Dei per Francos*, see also *sup. l. 2. vlt.*

The Turkes and Saracens, seeking to recouer that which they had lost, lost also themselues; a hundred thousand of them being slaine in one battell: the like successe had the Turkes after against *Comrade* the Emperour, at *Meander*: leauing for trophees and triumphall arches to the Christians, huge heapes, or hills rather, of their bones. Hereunto helped the dissentions among the Turkes, and diuisions of their state among diuers brethren. The Egyptians also paied tribute to the Christians: which *Dargan* the Sultan detaining, hee was by *Almericus*, the King of Ierusalem ouerthrowne in battell. *Noradine* the Turke, King of Damasco, sent thither also *Saracon* to aide *Sanar* the Sultan (before expulsed) to recouer his state from this *Dargan*: but hee hauing won certaine Townes, kept them to himselfe, so that *Sanar* betooke him to the patronage of *Almericus*, who ouerthrew *Saracon* in battell, and after besieged and tooke Alexandria, and Pelusium, seeking also to conquer Egypt to himselfe

selfe: but indeed (as the euent proued) so subuerted his owne state. For *Sanar* sought helpe of *Saracon*, and for feare of both their forces, *Almericus* left Egypt. *Saracon*, moued with ambition, treacherously slew the Sultan, and by the Caliph was appointed Sultan, the first of the Turkes that euer enioyed the same, to whom *Saladine* his Nephew succeeded. Hee (not respecting the Maiestie of the Caliph, as the Sultans before had done) strucke out his braines with his Horse-mans Mace, and rooted out all his posteritie; the better to assure himselfe, and his Turkish successours in the possession of that Kingdome, vnder whom it continued to the time of the Mamalukes. *Noradine* also the Turke being dead, the Nobilitie disdaining the gouernement of *Melechsala* his sonne (yet but a youth) betrayed [e] that state vnto *Saladine*. And thus did he hem in the Kingdome of Ierusalem on both sides: and not long after, *Aleppo* was betrayed vnchristianly into his hands by a traitor, which gouerned the same for the Christians: Neither was it long, before he had (through diseord and treason amongst the Christians) obtained [f] Ierusalem it selfe, *Anno* 1187. and after Ascalon, and Antioch also: Neither could the Christians of the West euer recouer the possession of that Kingdome; the cause continuing the same, which before had lost it, *viz.* dissention and treacherie, as the examples of *Richard* and *Edward* (first of those names) Kings of this Land doe shew.

e Damasco betrayed to *Saladine*.

f Ierusalem lost again. *Anno* 1187.

About 1202. yeeres after Christ, the Tartars (of whom in their due place) hauing conquered East, West, North, and South, among others, ouerthrew that Togrian Kingdome of the Turkes in Persia, one hundred and seuentie yeeres before founded by *Tangrolipix*. The Turks which remained (driuen to seeke shelter from this violent storme) fled out of Persia into Asia the lesse: where *Cutlu-Muses* his successours (their Country-men) enioyed some part of the Countrie. And there many of them arriuing vnder the conduct of *Aladin*, the sonne of *Cei Husreu*, descended also of the Selzuccian Family in Persia, taking the opportunitie offered by the discord of the Latines, with the Greekes, and the Greekes among themselues, seized vpon Cilicia, with the Countries thereabout: and there first at Sebastia, and afterward at Iconium, erected their new Kingdome, bearing the name of the Aladin [g] Kings or Sultans.

g *Hist. Musulman. Leunclauij lib. 1.*

The Tartars, vnder the conduct of *Haalon*, sent by *Mango* the great *Cham*, hauing conquered and starued the Caliph of Babylon (as is before) ouerthrew the Turkish Kingdome of Damasco, and raced [h] Aleppo; the other arme of this faire spreading Tree, being surprized by the Mamaluke slaues, who after *Haalons* departure, recouered Syria and Palæstina, and were againe with great slaughter dispossessed of the same by *Cassanes* [i] a Tartarian Prince, who repaired Ierusalem, and gaue it to the Christians of Armenia, and other the Easterne Countries. But *Cassanes* retyring into Persia to pacifie new broiles, the Sultan recouered the same; the Christians of the West neglecting the iust defence thereof, specially through the pride and contention of *Boniface* the Pope (contrarie to his name) filling a great part of Europe with faction and quarrells.

h *An. D.* 1200.

i *Haiton. Armen.*

§. III.

Of the Ottoman Turkes, their originall and proceedings.

THe Turkes in Asia paid tribute to the Tartar *Cham*, till (succession in the bloud of *Aladin* failing) this Kingdome was diuersly rent, euery one catching so much as his might could bestow on his ambition. The greatest of these shatters was [a] one *Caraman Alusirius*, who tooke vnto himselfe the Citie Iconium, with all the Countrie of Cilicia, and some part of the frontiers of Lycaonia, Pamphylia, Caria, and the greater Phrygia, as farre as Philadelphia: all which was after him called Caramania. Next neighbour and sharer to him was *Sarnchan*: of whom *Ionia Maritima* is called *Sarnchanili*. The greatest part of Lydia, with some part of the greater Mysia, Troas, and Phrygia fell to *Carasius*, called of him *Carasi-ili*: some part of Pontus, and the Countrey of Paphlagonia fell to the sonnes of *Omer*, which Countrey is called Bolli. These all were of the *Selzuccian* Family. But the foundations of farre higher fortunes, were then laid much lower by diuine prouidence, exalting *Ottoman* of the *Oguzian* Tribe or Family, who then held one onely poore Lordship, called Suguta in Bythinia, not farre from Olympus, giuen before to his father *Ertbogrul* in meed of good seruice: which he increasing, by winning somewhat from the weaker Christians his neighbours, afterwards erected into a Kingdome, which hath deuoured so great a part of the world, as is at this day subiect to the Turkish greatnesse. When the Tartars chased (as is said) the Turkes out of their Persian Kingdome, which *Tangrolipix* had there established, one *Solyman* a Turke (of the *Ogusian* Tribe) reigned in Machan [b] ouer a small

a Knolles Turkish Historie.

b *Leunc. histor. Musul. l. 2. Iac. Bossards Vitæ & Icones Sultan. Turc.*

His pedigree is thus reckoned, *Oguzan, Ogurcx, Gieqaloci, Versakhen, Tzzhmur, Iuces Ago, Bakis Agi, Bosunger, Oicdlucs, Bainder, Cusluwga, Calisecs, Solymon*: some make *Ottoman* to be of base parentage: but not so probably.

small Realme, which for feare of those Tartars he also forsooke, and with a thousand of his people, sled, and seated himselfe in a part of Armenia, about Erzerum; and after, vpon some better hopes, resolued to returne againe into Persia, but in seeking to passe the Riuer Euphrates, was drowned, and his followers dispersed, following their ancient Trade of wandring Heardsmen. Hee left behinde him foure sonnes, *Tencur-Teken*, *Inudogdit*, *Ertogrul*, the father of *Ottoman*, and *Dunder*. The two eldest returned into Persia. The two youngest stayed, and with them foure hundred Families, with their Tents and Carts, their moueable Houses. And insinuating into the Sultan *Aladins* good liking, by sute and desert, this *Ertogrul* was rewarded, as yee haue heard, being made Lord of Suguta, and Warden of those Marches: and liued there in securitie, till he was of great yeeres, and had seene much alteration in that state. He died *Anno* 1289. having liued ninetie three yeeres. And him succeeded by common consent, as Lord ouer the Oguzian Turkes, his sonne *Ottoman*, saluted therefore by the name of *Osman Beg*, or Lord *Osman*. Hee first [d] got into his subiection a great part of the Castles and Forts of the greater Phrygia; equally protecting his Subiects, both Christians and Turkes: he conquered Nice, the name whereof is reuerend for the first Generall Councell of Christendome; and *Aladin* the second, Sultan of Iconium, sent vnto him a faire Ensigne, a Sword and Robe, with ample Charters, that whatsoever he tooke from the Christians, should be his owne: and that publike prayers should be said in their Temples for his health, which was of him humbly accepted, and such prayers made by one *Darsa*, whom hee had appointed Bishop and Iudge of Carachiser, *Anno* 1300. Neapolis was made his sear Royall. Hee fished so well in the troubled streame of the Greeke Empire, that hee subdued the most part of Phrygia, Mysia, and Bythinia; and Prusa after a long siege was yeelded vnto his sonne *Orchanes*, and made the Royall seat of the *Ottoman-Kings*, where *Ottoman* himselfe was buried 1328. His sonne *Orchanes* succeeded: *Aladin* his brother contenting himselfe with a priuate life, who after built two Mahumetan Churches, and another at Prusa. *Orchanes* also erected in Nice a sumptuous Temple, appointing a Preacher to preach to the people euery Friday, and two faire Abbies: in the one of which, hee with his owne hands serued the strangers and poore the first-dinner. Hee was the first that builded Abbies among the Turkes, followed herein by most of his Successours. Hee got Nicomedia, and the Townes adioyning. He also wonne all Charasia, and at his returne built a Church and Abbey at Prusa, placing therein religious men, sought out with all diligence. His sonne *Solyman*, first of the Turkes that had possessed any foot in Europe, crossed the Hellespont, and wanne the Castle Zemeenic, and after that *Maditus*, receptacles for the Turks, which came ouer in multitudes, hee transporting Christians into Asia, to dwell in their roome. And after, [e] he wan Gallipoli, spoyling the Countrie, and winning from the Greekes, who were negligent in preuenting or remedying this danger. But *Solyman* dying with a fall, his old father *Orchanes* liued not two moneths after; a Prince very zealous in his superstition, who besides building diuers Churches, Abbies, Colledges, and Cells, allowed Pensions to all such as could in the Church say the booke of *Mahomets* law by heart, and competent maintenance to the Iudges that they should not sell iustice.

Amurath [f], which succeeded, exceeded him in his blind zeale. Hee kept in awe the Turkish Princes in Asia, and wanne many Townes and Castles in Thracia: and amongst others, Adrianople the seat Royall of the Turkish Kingdome, vntill Constantinople was after subdued. This was done 1362. Hee ordained, that euery fifth captiue of the Christians, aboue sixteene yeeres old, should bee taken vp for the Turkish King, which were distributed among the Turkish husbandmen in Asia, to learne the Turkish Language, Religion, and Manners; and after two or three yeeres, choice was made of the better sort, to attend vpon the Princes person, and for his warres, called Ianizaries, that is, new Souldiers: which Order after grew to great account, and is yet a principall pillar of the Turkish greatnesse. He ouerthrew *Aladin* the Caramanian King, which made the other Princes of the Seluccian Family to submit themselues vnto him. And busying himselfe in his new Conquests in Europe, after a great victorie obtained against *Lazarus, Despot* of Seruia, as he viewed the slaine carkasses, was slaine of a wounded and halfe-dead Souldier; who comming staggering (as it were) to beg his life, stabbed this great Cõqueror, with a dagger, hidden vnder his garments.

Baiazet [h] his sonne and successour, oppressed most of the Mahumetan Princes in Asia, inuadeth Valachia, besieges Constantinople eight yeers, ouerthrowes the King of Hungarie in battell, subdueth the Caramanian Kingdome, and amidst his aspiring fortunes, is by [i] *Tamberlane* deprived of his Kingdome and libertie, shut vp and carried about in an yron Cage; against the barres whereof he beat out his braines, *Anno* 1399. [k] *Mahomet* his sonne (after much warre with his brethren) wholly possesseth the *Ottoman* Kingdome, both in

d *Laon. Chalcondyles lib.* 1. *Abrahm Zaeuthi* hath written a Chronicle of the Turkes, together with the Saracens, translated by *Ios. Scal. Can. Hispalen.* 2. see *P. Iouius, Knolls, &c.*

ORCHARIES.

e *Anno* 1358.

f *AMVRATH.*

g *An.Do.*1390.

h *BAIAZET.*

i *Lac. Soranze, Ottom. pat.* 2. saith it should be written *Tamurchan*, which signifieth King *Tamur*, as *Lenuncla* interprets, who yet affirmeth, that *Tamur lane*, or *lens*, signifieth *lame Tamur*, for his leg was broken. There is a history of *Tam*, translated out of Arabike into French, & thence into English, containing a full & happily more true discourse of his life, differing much from our common reports, which *Pet. Perond. Leunc. Iouius* in their Treatises thereof, *Io.* and *Phil. Camerarius, c. Maiolus*, and almost all the Turkish Historians haue written.

k *MAHOMET.*

Europe

Europe and Asia, almost quite ouerthrowne before by *Tamerlane*. Hee tooke the Caramanian King, and his sonne *Mustapha* prisoners, who became his Vassals, as did also the Valachian Prince: he died 1422. [l] *Amurath* his successor winneth Thessalonica, the greatest part of Æolia, inforceth the Princes of Athens, Phocis, and Bœotia, to become his Tributaries, oppresseth the Mahumetan Princes of Asia, subdueth Seruia, spoileth Hungarie. Hee after retired himselfe to a Monasticall life in a Monasterie, which yet the affayres of State forced him to leaue againe. [m] He inuading *Epirus*, at the siege of Croia dyed, 1450.

Mahomet [n] was there saluted *Sultan* in the field, a man equally vnequall and troublesome to the Christian and Mahumetan Princes. He wanne Constantinople the twentieth of *May*, 1453. the taking whereof, is by *Leonardus Chiensis*, [o] declared in a Treatise composed of that vnhappie argument, and likewise by Cardinall [p] *Isidorus Ruthenus*. Hee wanne Trabezond, the Imperiall seat of another Christian Empire, [q] *Anno* 1460. Hence hee was called Emperour (a name not giuen to the Turkish Kings.) He burnt Athens, *Anno* 1452. Hee obtained Epirus and Mysia, *Anno* 1456. and did much harme against the Soldan and Mamalukes. He conquered Eubœa and Illyricum, in the yeere 1474. ouerthrew the Persians; and in the last act of his bloodie life, he tooke (by *Achmeter* his Captaine) Otranto or Hydruntum in Italy, with no small terrour to all Italy. Hee was sir-named Great, and is said to haue conquered two hundred Cities, twelue Kingdomes, and two Empires: which he left to *Baiazet* his sonne, *Anno* 1481. His other sonne *Zemes* was forced to flee into Italy, where a great summe of money [r] was yeerely allowed the Pope to keepe him for his owne securitie, and for loue of his brother, whom *Alexander* the Bishop is reported [s] to poyson, as some thinke, by composition with the grand Seignior. He had some warres against the Mamalukes, some against the Christians, more vnnatural against his brother, but most most vnnatural and monstrous against his sonne *Selym*. His conquests were in Cilicia, Caramania, and Peloponnesus.

Selym, not content to haue thrust his father out of the Throne, aspired to a further effect of aspiring ambition, depriuing him of life, from whom himselfe had receiued it. To this end he corrupted a Iew, *Baiazets* Physician (whom *Knolles* calleth *Hamon*; but [t] *Menauino*, an eye-witnesse, nameth him *Vizarabi*) who with the powder of beaten Diamonds poysoned him; and for reward, when hee slayned *Selyms* promise, had his head stricken off in the Tyrants presence. So much did he hate the Traytor, whose treason he so much loued. The body of *Baiazet* was embalmed, and interred at Constantinople, in a beautiful Sepulchre, neere to the Meschit, which himselfe had built, and Priests were appointed, which should euery day pray for his soule. Two of his Pages did *Selym* put to death, for wearing blacke and mourning apparell for their Masters death: and three others (where of *Menapino* was one) hardly, by intreatie of *Selyms* daughters, and some Bassaes, escaped.

This Viper, that spared not his father, proceeded with bloudie hands to make an end of the rest of his *Ottoman*-kindred, beginning with fiue sonnes of his brethren, and adding the remnant, as hee could bring them into his power. And hauing thus founded his Throne in bloudie cruelties of his owne at home, no marueil if abroad his proceedings were no lesse cruell and bloudie towards his enemies. Of whom, the first which offered himselfe (after his domesticall warres appeased) was *Ismael* the [u] Sophie: who with thirtie thousand Persian horse-men gaue battell to *Selym* (notwithstanding his three hundred thousand Turks) where was fought in Armenia, neere Coy, a terrible and mortall battell betwixt them: the Turkes at last (very hardly) preuailing, by helpe of their great Ordnance: but so little cause had they to reioyce of their victorie, that this is reckoned among the dismall and disastrous dayes, termed by the Turkes, *The onely day of Doome*. The next [x] yeere he entred againe into the Persian Confines, and there tooke Ciamassum, ouerthrew *Aladeules*, the Mountaine King, who raigned in Taurus and Antitaurus, and slew him. But his most fortunate attempts were against *Campson Gauurus*, the Egyptian Soldan, and his forces of Mamalukes, whom by his multitudes (notwithstanding their fame and valour, not inferiour to any Souldiers of the world) hee ouercame; the Soldan himselfe being left dead in the place, *August*. 7. 1516.

Neither had *Tomumbeius* his Successor any better successe, but succeeded as wel in his fortune, as to his Scepter, who by treason of his owne, and power of his enemy, lost both his life and Kingdome; all Egypt and Syria therby accrewing to the *Ottoman*, *Selym* from thence-forth purposing to turne his forces from the Sunne-rising against the Christians in the West, came to his owne Sunne-set, the period of his raigne and life: a miserable disease (as an angrie Pursuiuant) exacting and redemanding his bloudie cruell spirit, an implacable officer of that implacable Tyrant to Tyrants, and Prince of Princes, Death, who at last conquered this Conqueror: or rather (if his [y] Epitaph written on his Tombe say true) conuiced him hence to seeke new Conquests. His disease was a Canker in the backe, (eating out a passage for his rapirous soule) which made him rot while he liued, and become a stinking burthen to himselfe and others. He died in *September*, 1520. hauing before bequeathed bloudshed and desolation

l *AMURATH. II.*

m A History of Scanderberg, *MAHOMET. II.*

n *Leon. Chiens. Archiep. Mytyl. de cap. Constant.*

o *Isidorus Ruthen. ep. to. Ram. de rep. Turc. lib. 3.*

p *Bem. de Breidenbach de cap. Hydrunt.*

q *BAIAZET. II.*

r Forte thousand Dukets yeerely.

s *Guicciard. hist. Ital. Boissardi iacouet.*

SELYM.

t *Menauino l. 3. c. 12.* reiteth all this at large.

u *Henricus Pania de gestis Sophi, cont. Turc.*

x *Anno Dom.* 1515.

y *Licet ossa iacent, animus bella quærit. Phil. Lan. cor. tom. 3. lib. 2.*

solation to the Christians, and ordained *Solyman*, his sonne and heire, executour of that his hellish Testament: And further, to excite him thereunto, had left him the liuely counterfeit of himselfe, with sundrie bloudie Precepts annexed: His title therein written, was, *Sultan Selym* Othoman, *King of Kings, Lord of all Lords: Prince of all Princes, Sonne and Nephew of God.* Wee may adde, *Heire apparant to the Deuill, that breathed his last in bloud, resembling him that was* z *a Murtherer from the beginning.*

z *Iob. 8. 44.*

CHAP. IX.

A Continuation of the Turkish Warres and Affaires: together with the succession of the Great Turkes, till this present yeere 1616.

§. I.

Of SOLYMAN *the Magnificent.*

SOLIMAN.

SOLYMAN, sir-named the *Magnificent*, succeeded his Father *Selym* in place, and surmounted him exceedingly in exploits. Belgrade, (which ominous name, did presage happinesse vnto him in his Warres and proceedings) was the beginning of his Conquests, wonne by the Turkes, *August. 29. 1521.* a Rhodes receiueth him on Christmasse day, 1522. but withall exileth both Cheere, Christmasse, and Christians. Hee inuadeth b Hungarie, and in the field discomfiteth and killeth *Lewes*, and slayeth, or captiueth two hundred thousand Hungarians in that expedition, 1526. Hee entereth Hungarie the second time, 1529. and (after some butcheries therein) marcheth to Vienna in Austria, where he lost fourescore thousand of his Turkes, and then with shame & anger returned. In the yeere 1532. he returneth with an Armie of fiue hundred thousand men; to whom *Charles* the fifth opposed himselfe, and the Christian forces, in greater numbers, then hath in many ages been seene, mustering in his Armie, at Vienna two hundred and threescore thousand men, whereof fourescore and ten thousand Footemen, and thirtie thousand Horse-men were old Souldiers, to whom *Solyman* did not, nor durst not, bid battell. Poore Hungarie rues in meane while, whether he getteth or loseth in Austria, being made his thorow-fare as he went and came.

a See the History at large in *Hofi. to. 3. & Iacob. Fontanus Brogeofs.*
b *Mart. Fume. Hist. of Hun. lib. 1. Melchior Soirens de bello Pannonico.*

After this he treteth his successe against the Persian, where hee taketh Tauris and Babylon, with the Countries of Assyria and Media, *Anno* 1534. each of which had sometimes beene Ladie of the World. At incredible costs he prepared a Fleet in the Red Sea, 1537. and taking Aden and Zibyth, two petie Kingdomes in Arabia, by his forces c besieged Dium, a Castle of the Portugals in the East-Indies, but without his wished successe. For the Portugals still retaine their Indian-Seas and Traffique, and not onely freed that their Castle from Turkish bondage, but had meanes to fortifie it better, by the Ordinance, which the Turkes in their hastie flight had left behinde. A more dangerous plot did *Solyman* meane while contriue against Christendome, preparing his forces to inuade Italy, and to that end was come to Aulona, an Hauen in Macedonia, with two hundred thouland Souldiers, where *Barbarussa*, and *Lutzis Bassa*, his great Admirall, met him with his Fleet, to transport his Armie. But *Solyman*, first employed these Sea-forces on the coast of Italy, and tooke Castrum; his Horse-men (which he had sent ouer in great Pollendats) carried away the people, cattell, and substance, betwixt Brundusium and Tarentum, fortie miles space; all the countrey of Otrento terrified with feare of a greater tempest. But the Venetians turned it from the rest of Italy, vpon themselues (notwithstanding their league) by vnseasonable exacting of that Sea-courtesie, the vayling of the bonnets, or top sayles of some Turkish Gallies vnto them, as Lords of that Sea; for which neglect some of them were sunke. d *Auria* also, the Emperours Admirall, had surpised some of the Turkes stragling Fleet, and after held cruell fight with twelue great Gallies, full of Ianizaries and choice men, whom he ouerthrew and tooke. But the Ianizaries that were left, cast their Scimiters ouer-board, least such choice weapons should come to the Christians hands. *Solyman* conuerting his forces against the Venetians, for the indignities mentioned, had almost fallen into the hands of the Mountaine-Theeues, which liued in the Acroceranian Hills: who in a strange resolution had conspired to kill him in his Tent, and had almost (to the wonder of the world) in a night, by vnknowne wayes, suddenly effected it, had not the cracking of a bough discouered their Captaine, who in a tree was taking view of

c *Dam. à Goes Ulensis oppugnatio.*

Turkish Historie. Ka.

d *Andrew & Oree*, a famous Sea-Captain.

of the Campe, how to bring to passe his desperate designes. This their Captaine, (by name *Damianus*) was, after confession hereof, torne in pieces, and those wilde Mountaineers (liuing in robberie, without Law or Religion) were, like wilde beasts, hunted to destruction.

The Turkes inuaded Corfu, whence they carried sixteene thousand of the Islanders captiues. They likewise, in their returne, committed great spoyle in Zante, and Cythera, sacked Egina, Paros, and other Ilands in the Archipelago; bringing Naxos vnder tribute. *Barbarossa* sacked Bortotus, a Venetian Citie: The like did *Vitrif* to Obroatium, and the Castle of Nadin. Nauplium also, and Epidaurus were besieged. But *Ferdinand* (who had entituled himselfe King of Hungarie, after *Lewis* his death) receiued a greater disgrace in Hungarie, by the Turkish forces, then befell the Venetians in all their losses: *Cazzianer* (the General of the Christians) shamefully flying and betraying his associates to the Turkish cruelrie. The next yeere 1538. *Barbarossa* chaseth the Christian Fleet, in which the Emperours, Venetians, and the Popes forces were ioyned.

In the yeere 1541. *Solyman* againe inuadeth Hungarie, professing himselfe Protector of the young King, which *Iohn*, late King of Hungarie (who had held long warres with *Ferdinand*, about that Title) had left behinde him his heire and successor. But vnder colour of protection, hee maketh himselfe Lord of Buda, the chiefe Citie, turning the Cathedrall Church into a Meschit: and maketh Hungarie a Turkish Prouince, bestowing Transyluania (and what he pleased, on the Orphan. Two yeeres after he recentereth Hungarie, and taketh Strigonium: turning the Christian Temples into Maluomeran, sacrificing there for his victorie, (is he had done at Buda. Hee entred also into [e] Alba Regalis, (where the Hungarian Kings lye entombed) another chiefe Citie of that Kingdome, and slew the Magistrates. I speake not all this while of the spacious Countries in Africa; which, from the Riuer Muluia, hee added to his Dominions: the Kingdomes of Algier, Tremisen, Tunes, Tripoly, &c. being annexed to his Turkish Soueraignetie. Howbeit Tunes, by ayde of *Charles* the Emperour, somewhat recouered her selfe, but breathed out againe her last gaspe of libertie, in the daies of *Selym* his sonne. And thus was [f] *Solyman* victorious and happy; otherwhile victorious and vnhappy, when he was forced to bee reine battell against his owne bowels, and hauing murdered *Mustapha* his eldest sonne (the hopefull'est branch in Turkish estimation, that euer grew out of the *Ottoman* stocke) hee warred against *Biiazet*, another of his sonnes; whom, with foure of his children, he procured to be done to death in Persia. And after much domesticall trouble, in his seueenth Expedition into Hungarie (his Fleet in the siege of Malta, being before, with great disgrace repulsed) he dyed at the siege of Zigeth, the fourth of *September*, 1566.

e *Iean Martini Stelle op. ad fist.*

f *Solyman* as vnnaturall to his children, as *Selym* was to his father *Baiazet*.

§. II.

Of SELIM *the second, and* AMVRATH *the third.*

SELYM, the onely sonne, which the bloudie father had left aliue, succeeded in the Throne, not in the prowesse and valour of his father. Neither hath any Turkish Sultan since his dayes, led their forces in person, but committed it to their Deputies and Generals; except once, when *Mahomet* the third, had almost lost his Armie and himselfe. Yet did this *Selym*, by his Bassaes, make him Lord of [g] Cyprus, and also of the Kingdome of Tunis. But this sweet meate was sourely sauced, by his exceeding losse in the Sea-fight betwixt *Hali Bassa*, Admirall of the Turkes, [h] and *Don Iohn* of Austria, Generall of the Fleet set forth by the Pope, Spaniard, and Venetian, 1571. wherein an hundred threescore and one Gallies were taken, fortie sunke or burnt, and of Galliots, and other small vessels were taken about threescore. The Turkish Admirall was then slaine. Wittily did a Turke descant vpon this losse of the Turkes, and their gaine of Cyprus, comparing this to the shauing of a mans beard, which would grow againe: that, to the losse of an arme, which once cut off, cannot bee renued. Lastly, Tunes came in, and *Selym* went out of this Turkish Soueraignrie, both in manner together, 1574.

Amurath his heire, began his Empire, with the slaughter of his fiue brethren. The mother of *Solyman* (one of that number) slew herselfe with a dagger, for anguish of that losse. He in viewing a new Gally, by the breach of a Peece, hardly escaped death, thirtie of his company being slaine. And because the Plague was exceeding hot, hee by deuotion sought to appease diuine anger: and therefore prohibited all vse of Sodomie, Blasphemie, and Polygamie, and himselfe put out fiue hundred women out of his *Serail*. In a priuate habite hee visited the Markets, and hanged vp the hoorders of corne. He by the Tartars inuaded Polonia: and *Henry* of France, secretly leaving the Kingdome of Polonia, hee wrote vnto him to chuse *Stephen Batter* for their King; in which letters he called himselfe, *God of the Earth, Governour*

g Of the wars of Cyprus, see the Relations of *Nellor Martiningoin Hakl. tom. 2. part. 1.* h Our gracious Soueraign King *Iames*, hath written a Poem of this battell.

Michael ab Isselt. tom. Anno 1575.

uenour of the whole World, Messenger of God, and faithfull seruant of the great Prophet: which wrought so much with the Nobilitie, that either they would not, or durst not doe otherwise, howsoeuer *Maximilian* had beene before by many of them chosen.

Tamas [i] the Persian (at the same time dying) bequeathed his Crowne to *Ismael* his sonne, whom *Aidere* his brother seeketh to depriue, but is therefore himselfe depriued of that ambitious head, which he sought to adorne with the Crowne; and *Ismael* adding the slaughter of eight his younger brethren, ascendeth the Throne, which, together with his life, hee lost by vnnaturall treacherie of *Periaconcona* his sister, the foure and twentieth of *November*, 1577.

Mahomet his brother succeeded in this troublesome State, which *Amurath* the Turke (in these troubled watets) thought fit time for himselfe to fish for. Hereunto also helped the hatred and ciuill broyles in Persia, for the head of *Periaconcona*, preferred to *Mahomet*, with the haire disheuelled on a Launce, and for other vncouth and bloudie spectacles; *Sahamal* and *Lement Ogli* (two Georgian Lords) seeking also innouations. *Amurath* therefore, in the yeere 1578. sent *Mustapha Bassa*, which had lately conquered Cyprus, with an Army of an hundred and tenne thousand into Persia: who, in the first battell he had with them, slew fiue thousand, and tooke three thousand Persians: and to strike that Nation with terrour, commanded a bulwarke to be framed of those heads: but by an exceeding tempest, which lasted foure dayes together (whereby the Heauens seemed to melt themselues in teares for the Persians losse, and with lightnings, to shew that indignation against the Turkes, which in their thundering Dialect they aloud vttered) there grew such horror to their mindes from aboue, and such sicknesse to their bodies, from those putrified carkasses beneath, that *Mustapha* was forced to remoue, missing forty thousand of his first Musters. After hee had fortified the Armenian Castle of Teflis, his Armie being driuen to shifts for lacke of victuals, ten thousand of his forragers were slaine by the Persians, who were recompenced with like slaughter by *Mustapha*, that came vpon them whiles they were busie about the spoyle, and spoyled the spoylers. In passing ouer the Riuer Canac, he lost fourescore thousand Turkes, which the Riuer seemed to take for Custome (as it had many of the Persians in the late conflict) whereof his violent current was a greedy and cruell exactor. *Mustapha* erected a Fortresse in Eres, and tooke Sumachia, chiefe Citie of Situan (Derbent offering her selfe to the Turke) and then returning into Natolia. But *Emir Hausse Mirsse*, the Persian Prince retcouered, after his departure, both Eres and Sumachia, slew and captiued the Tartars, thirtie thousand of whom were newly come to the Turkes ayde. He rased Sumachia, euen with the ground. The next yeere *Mustapha* fortified Chars in three and twentie dayes, wherein they were hindered with Snowes, on the fiue and twentieth of *August*, although it standeth in fortie foure Degrees. *Anno* 1580. *Sinan Bassa* was chosen Generall for the Persian Warre; who, as hee departed from Teflis, lost seuen thousand of his people, besides such as the Georgians and Persians, together with the spoyle cartied away. This was earnest, the rest was but sporrfull shewes of warre, in trayning his Souldiers; after which he returned. In 1583. *Ferat Bassa* was sent Generall: but little was done, till *Osman Bassa*, a new Generall, 1585. tooke Tauris, the ancient Ecbatana (as *Minadoi* is of opinion.) But the Persian Prince carried with indignation, reuenged this losse on the Turkes with his owne hands, slaying *Caraemit Bassa*, Generall in the place of *Osman* then sicke, and gaue his head (as *opima spolia*) to one of his followers: and after wards at Sancazan slew twentie thousand Turks. *Osman* dyed of sicknesse; and the Persian Prince (the Morning-starre of that Eastetne State) was soone after murthered. In that and twentie great Innes were burned in Constantinople, the tumultuous Ianizaries not suffering the fire to be quenched. An Impost was leuied of the subiects, to satisfie the pay due to the Souldiers for the Persian warre, which raised these stirres. Yea, the Priests dissuaded the people from those new paymenrs, and persuaded them to mainraine their ancient Liberties, his Mandates, and deliuer the Authors of that counsell, (whereof the Beglerbeg of Grecia was chiefe Citie of Croatia, was yeelded to the Turke. The next yeere Sisog was besieged, but reuolted by the Christians, who slew eighteene thousand Turkes, and tooke their Tents; yet was it soone after taken by the renewed forces of the Turkes. *Sinan* tooke Vesprinium in Hungarie, and Palotra, but their losse was fatte greater then their gaines; which continuing, and a broyle of the Ianizaries added thereto, brought *Amurath* into melancholy and sicknesse, whereof he dyed, the eighteenth of *Ianuarie*, 1595. Transylsania, Valachia, and Moldauia, hauing before reuolted from him to *Sigismund*, who was entitled their Prince. This *Amurath*, in a letter to Queene *Elizabeth*, entituleth himselfe, *By the Mercie of God free from all sinne, with all height of Grace made possessor of great blessednesse, aboue the 72. Lauies of the world.*

i *Minadoi* Historie of the warres betwixt the Turkes & Persians, translated by *Abraham Hartwell* in nine bookes, reliteth these things at large.

k To his *Amurath* was M. *Hertson* her Maiesties Embassador: and after M. *Barton*, of which see *Book 1. part*, 1. There also, *pag.* 293. you may read of the Turkes officers, treuenues, payments, forces, &c. Also the letters of the Great Turke to the Queen, and of the Sultanesse, and of *Sinan Bassa*, & many other things worthy obseruation. That I rode into Turkie, then begun, still continueth, reuealed to the kings Maiestie that now is.

§. III.

Of MAHOMET *the Third.*

MAHOMET his sonne succeeded: who inuiting his nineteene brethren to a Feast, sent them to learne his fathers death in the other world, accompanied thither with ten of *Amurathes* women, from whom issue was feared, which, with drowning them he preuented. Much adoe he had with his Ianizaries at home, much losse in his Dominions abroad, for which cause he sent for *Ferat Bassa* out of Hungarie, and strangled him, and sent *Sinan* his emulous corriuall in his roome, whom the Transyluanian Prince ouerthrew in battell, and after chased him ouer a Bridge (which he made a mile in length for his armie to passe ouer Danubius) with great losse of his people. His Bridge the fire and water diuided betwixt them; and the conceit of this ill successe (as was thought) procured his death soone after. In the yeere 1597. *Mahomet* in his owne person enterprised these warres, and not are from Agria, on the sixteenth of *October*, fought a cruell battell with the Christians, wherein (had not Couetousnesse, rightly called *the root of all euill*, hindered) had beene atchieued the most glorious victorie against those Barbarians, that euer Christendome was blessed with. *Mahomet* [a] himselfe for feare, seeing his Ordinance (an hundred fourescore and tenne great Peeces) taken, and his men slaine in multitudes, fled with *Ibrahim Bassa* towards Agria, shedding teares by the way, which he wiped off his bloudie face with a piece of greene silke, supposed to be a piece of *Mahomets* garment, carried with him as a holy Reliquie. But whiles the Christians were now halfe Conquerours, by greedie turning to the spoile, their victorie was wholly lost, and twentie thousand of them slaine, who had slaine threescore thousand Turkes. Mr. *Barton* the English Embassador, was present in the fight, and Mr. *Thomas Gloner* also, who in a large iournall of this Expedition, testifieth that the great Turk was in great feare; but being animated by some about him, he tooke his bow and arrowes, and slew three Christians therewith. Those former reports hee mentioneth not. Not long after, the Bassa of Buda was taken, and the Bassa of Bosna, with some thousands of Turkes slaine, *Anno* 1599. Yet did not all his losses in the West, by the Christians vexe the Great Sultan so much, as a rebellion [b] raised in the East, which many yeeres continued. *Cusabin* Bassa of Caramania rose in armes against his Master, and hauing now done great matters, his Souldiers before false to their Prince, became now also false to him: hee flying, was after taken and tortured to death. His rebellion out-liued him, and was maintained by one, called the Scriuano, who ouerthrew *Mehemet* Bassa in the field, and the second time, in the yeere 1601. ouerthrew him with his Armie of fiftie thousand, and foraged all the Countrey almost as far as Aleppo, proclaiming himselfe the defender of the Mahometan faith, and soon after gaue the Bassa a third ouerthrow. The Turkes Embassadour, sent into Persia to demand the Sophies sonne in hostage, for the assurance of the peace betweene those two Monarchs, was for his proud message put to the Bastinado, and grieuously threatned, sent backe to the Grand Signior. The Scriuano's proceedings was much furthered, by the dissentions betweene the Ianizaries of Aleppo and Damasco: but death stayed him, not his rebellion, which a younger brother of his prosecuted, against whom *Hassan* Bassa was sent, but lost himselfe and his Armie. The Rebels besieged Angole, and forced them to giue two hundred thousand Duckets to buy their peace. Meane while the Ianizaries, after their insolent manner, in a mutinie forced *Mahomet* to commit the Capi-Aga, one of his greatest Officers, and some others, to whom the successe of these Rebels was imputed, to their cruell execution. The Rebels sacked Butze, one of the chiefe Cities, the Turkes Store-house for his Warres and and Treasurie for his reuenues; and the great *Sheugh* of Persia had taken Cotberie also from the Turkes. The Gouernour of Babylon inclined now also to the Rebels. *Mahomet* not able with force to preuaile, by faire meanes sought to winne them, and gaue them their demands, making *Zellahe* one of their Chiefetaines, Bassa of Bosna. Whereupon his men of warre entered into a resolution, to depriue him of the State, and to inuest therewith *Mahomet* his eldest sonne: about which an Astrologian being consulted, promised all happie successe: (vnhappie foole, that knew not his owne approching ruine, which *Mahomet* executed on him, together with young *Mahomet* the Prince, and fiftie other conspirators.)

He sent forth a Fleet of gallies against the King of Fesse; which hauing encountred with a tempest, was forced with a great losse to retire to their former Port. The chiefe rebel making shew he would come into Europe, as *Zellaly* had done, *Mahomet* sent certain gallies to receiue him, but hee receiued them, and possessing himselfe of the gallies, slew the men, and mocked the Sultan. *Hassan*, a great Bassa, joyned himselfe also vnto them, about Iudea the Tauris [d] was again recouered by the Persian. All these disastors draue *Mahomet* to his deuotions for refuge, accounting these crosses to be inflicted for his sinnes; and therefore appointed

a *Mahomets* Armie was reported to be six hundred thousand, saith *M Wrag. apud Hakl. tom. 2.*

b The long and dangerous rebellion in Turkie by *Cusabin*, the Scriuano, &c. See *Knol.* Turkish Historie.

c This Embassage is otherwise, and perhaps more truly related by Sir *A. Sherly* then present.

d Tauris recouered by the Persians.

publike Prayers in all the Mosques of his dominion, and sent two Priests bare-headed and bare-footed to Meeca, on pilgrimage to pray for him. But not *Mahomet* either had no care to heare *this*, or else was so farre entreated, as to be better acquainted with this great Sultan in the place of his eternall residence, whither (about the yeere 1603.) *Mahomet* the Turke [a] was by death soone after sent. His sonne *Achmat* succeeded; for his eldest was strangled in his sight. He was buried in a faire Chappell, by himselfe for that purpose built, about fiftie foot square, with foure Turrets or Steeples: in the middest is his Sepulchre, in a great Coffin of white Marble: his Turbant at his head, two exceeding great Candles of white Waxe, (standing but neuer burning) the one at his head, the other at his feet. The floore is couered with Mats, and faire Carpets on them. Round about are like Tombes for his wiues and children, but not so great and faire. Diuers such Chappels there are neere to the Temple of *Sophia*, as of his father *Amurath*, with his fiue and fortie children, entombed about him, and of the other great Sultans, two *Selymis*, *Solyman*, *Baiazet*, *Mahomet*, each hauing a faire Hospitall for the relieefe of the poore adioyning. Some of the great Bassaes imitate the same. No other Turkes are buried in the Cities, but in the fields, with stones laid ouer, or set vpright, fashioned with some resemblance of the head, which beareth ensigne of his dignitie, & whether it be a man or woman, with letters engrauen further to testifie the same.

a Of the disposition of this *Mahomet*, his cruelties, forces, power, gouernement, & celee *Seraglio* his *Ottomans*.

§. IIII.

Of ACHMET.

ACHMAT [b] set a sure guard about his brother, and to preuent the insolencie of the Ianizaries and Souldiers, distributed among them two millions and a halfe, and being fifteene yeeres old, was crowned Emperour. He is said in behaiour and resemblance much to resemble *Mahomet* the Great, first Conquerour of Constantinople. At the same time the warres in Transyluania had procured such famine; that roots, herbes, leaues of trees were their food: yea, a mother is said to haue brought backe into her wombe (by vnnaturall meanes satisfying Nature) her fix children: two men to eate their mother: others to eat downe malefactors from the gallowes, and eate them. Horses, Dogs, Cats, and such like were rarities to the poore, and dainties beyond their reach. And if the State can be made worse, theeues by robberies, and Souldiers by continuall spoyles, intiking away their goods, adde to their miseries. *Cicala* Bassa is sent against the Asian Rebels, and receiueth an ouerthrow; the second time he renewesth his forces, with renewing his fortunes, namely, the losse of thirtie thousand of his men. The Persian recouered the Countie of Sirvan, and the Citie of Arusta, with the Countrie thereabouts, and all that from the daies of *Solyman* had beene taken from them, except two or three places. *Hassan* Bassa is sent against the Christians in Hungarie, assisted with the Tartars, alwayes readie to helpe the Turkes, both because they are linked in marriages, like in conditions, and that huge Empire, for want of heires male of the *Ottomans*, is entailed to the Tartar Chamy: pay and spoile are no small motiues also to setch them into these Expeditions. *Cicala* Bassa is sent against the Persians, but defeated with all his power by the Persian.

In Hungarie they doe more with their money, to maintaine rebellions, then with open force. In the yeere 1605. a tumult arose among the Ianizaries in Constantinople, and fiue hundred shops and ware-houses, with two hundred Iewes, and other persons to whom they belonged, were burnt: the Ianizaries enriched themselues with the spoile. The Iewes haue made them Vaults, made fire-free to preuent the like danger from the Ianizaries, who are thought purposely to fire them sometimes, and alway haue the office to quench it, or pull downe houses in neere danger, which they willingly protract, or performe in places fittest for pillage: *Ignis ruina extinguitur*: the remedie no lesse then the disease. Hungarie is at once vexed with forraine and ciuill warres: the mutinous Christians doing more harme then the Turkes, and the people flee into Polonia, or the Mountaines for refuge. The Rebels take great Townes, yea, they spoyle Stiria and Austria. The German name growes odious to the Hungarian. *Boiscay*, chiefe of the Rebels, is assisted by the Turkes, and called Prince of Transylvania; all Hungarie in manner following his ensignes. But the Rebels in Asia, and the Persian exploits, detained the Turkes from making vse of these occasions, else likely to haue swallowed Hungarie and Austria both: yet Pesth was before taken by them, and now Strigonium. *Cicala* Bassa is againe ouerthrowne by the Persian, and with three hundred fleeth to Adena. The Bassa of Trebczond is sent to succour him, but is discomfited, and almost all his Armie slaine. *Achmat* enraged, causeth *Cicala* Bassa to be slaine at Constantinople, full of wealth and treasure, to be rifled. Adena is yeelded to the Persian. The Bassaes of Damasco and

b *Achmat*.

Al eppo

Aleppo had before fallen out, & taken armes. Damasco had ouerthrown [c] Aleppo in the field, besieged him, and forced him to composition. Now againe, Aleppo ouerthroweth him, and the Bassaes of Tripolis and Gazara his companions, with their Armie of threescore thousand men; tooke Tripolis; the Bassa whereof againe hee ouerthrew, and added to his garlands Damasco, the treasurie of the Turks reuenue, and chief Citie of Syria. The Beglerbeg of Natolia sent his Lieutenant with a great Armie against him, but to their own ruine. He intercepted a Ship laden with the tributes of Egypt. The Persian sent him, in token of loue, a present worth fiftie thousand Crownes. *Achmat* is hereby forced to peace with the Christians, and to recall his forces out of Hungarie for this employment, *Anno* 1606. The Emperour yeeldeth satisfaction to the Discontents in Hungary, with free vse of religion to all, and Transyluania to remaine to *Botscay* and his heires male for euer.

c Ciuill warres betweene the Bassies of Aleppo and Damasco.

A fire at Constantinople kindled in a Iewes house by the Tartars, burnt many houses and Iewes, and foure millions of goods. *Achmat* in great magnificence went to his Moschee, to render thankes to *Mahomet* for a peace concluded with the Emperour. Hee now looketh Eastward with his power, and as Master *Henrie Lello* in his letter from Constantinople, dated *April* 2. 1606.) testifieth of him, he would needes at first be a Souldier, but the last Winter, hauing felt the cold windes from the tops of the hils in Bursia, which are all the yeere long couered with snow, and receiuing some hurt in his stomacke by drinking those cold waters, hee proued stomack-sicke to this expedition also, and giuing ouer his enterprise against the Rebels, is become one of *Venus* Knights, therein surmounting his Grand-father *Murad*, or *Amurath*. *Anno* 1607. hee sent the Visier Bassa, with an hundred and thirtie thousand against the Rebels, who preuaileth more by discreet appeasing of them, then by force. The Bassa of Aleppo three times withstood his whole forces; the fourth time fleeth towards Persia with his treasure. Aleppo is left to be taken, and the Garrison put to the sword: But the Bassa himselfe obtained pardon, with restitution of his goods taken from him in Syria. Another fire arose at Constantinople, and consumed two millions of goods, and 3000. houses to the ground. The Duke of Florence doth much harme to the Turks by the sea, 1608. The rebels make new commotions in Asia. *Matthias* the Arch-Duke standeth out with his forces against the Emperor, and commeth with his army toward Prague, obtaineth the Crowne and Royalties of Hungarie by composition, comes King to Vienna; but the Protestants refuse to sweare alleageance, till free vse of Religion in Austria by King *Matthias* was granted. Hee was crowned at Presburg. And in the yeere 1612. the Emperour *Rodolph* being dead, he was chosen in his place. *Anno* 1610. the Persians [d] ouerthrew the Turkes in diuers battels, wherein many thousands of them were slaine. In the yeere 1613. The Turke [e] had prouided a great Armie at Adrianople, to passe into Transyluania, and his Garrisons began some stirs in Hungarie, and a new warre was there feared: but new occurrents in Asia altered that course. For the people in Natolia rose againe in rebellion, committing spoile and rapine: and in Arabia a certaine Rebell vsurped the title of a King, and gathering together abouse fiftie thousand followers, had possessed himselfe of Aden, a commodious Citie for the Indian Merchandize, and fitly seated for the command of the Red-sea. The Persian King put his Embassadour to death, because hee had capitulated with the Turke, that his Master vnder colour of gifts should pay him a yeerely tribute: and sent the Turkish Legate, which was sent with the Persian Legate, backe to Constantinople, hauing first cut off his hands, and put out his eyes. Heereby the Turke was forced to employ his forces this way, which he had intended for Transyluania: and by the Bassa of Buda hath promised to keepe peace: hath sent also his Embassadour into Poland with a great present to the King, swearing by *his God, his Horse, and Sword*, to conserue the peace. This yeere also about Aprill was a great fire at Constantinople, which burned two thousand houses: the Merchants meane while labouring to conuey and saue their goods, [f] the Bassa Nassuffensis pretended, that a certaine Merchant of Aleppo (whom vpon that occasion hee found there weaponed) intended violence against him, and confiscated his goods (the chiefe cause of the quarrell) which amounted to an hundred thousand Chekins: which I mention, to shew the miserie of Turkish subiection.

d *A. Iansonij M. Golloblig.*
e *M. Gallobelg. G. Arthus.*

f The Citizens dare not quench the fire; an office belonging to the Ianizaries, which are thought purposely to set them sometimes on fire. *Mer. Gall. Iansen.*

In September the Duke of Arragon (hauing intelligence that the Turkish Admirall had departed from Constantinople with seuentie Gallies, with intent to send aide against the Rebells in Syria) with his Nauie of ten Sicilian Gallies fell vpon ten of the Turkish, and tooke seuen of them, with three Bassaes, and the Beg of Cyprus: freeing out of seruitude a thousand Christian slaues. These at Palermo went in procession with Olives in their hands, the Turkes also following chained: and the Beg of Cyprus (when a huge summe was not accepted for his ransome) killed himselfe.

g *L. 2. c. 21.*

Of the Emir of Said or Sidon [g] wee haue spoken elsewhere. Hee about the same time came with three Gallies to Liuorno, bringing with him his foure wiues, tenne children and much treasure. Hee presented the Great Duke at Florence a Turkish sword richly set with

stones, and the Dutchesse with two Pearles esteemed at 60000. Crownes. Newes also came from Cyprus, that the Bassa of Damasco making an expedition against the Emirs sonne which he had left in Sayd, was by him overthrowne and forced to flee, leaving 20000. slaine in the field. The Emirs request was assistance of shipping. These broiles in Syria continuing, forced the Turke to seeke peace with the Emperour; the sonnes of Emir having slaine the Bassa of Damasco, and receiving succour from the Persian. The Heiducks also in Hungary in the yeere 1614. having done the Turkes much scathe: besides the vprores in Transylvania, where the Prince *Gabriel Bathore* was by a wile of the Imperials brought into an ambush and slaine, and *Gabriel Bethlin Gabor* obtaining to succeed, was by the Turke assisted, molested by the Imperials. The Persian also dispossessing the Georgians of most of their country for taking part with the Turke; and the sonne of the Bassa *Nussuffensis* before mentioned, (who was lately strangled after the manner of the Turkish execution of their Great ones) arose in rebellion, and committed much spoile by fire and sword in Asia: the Cossaks being as trouble some in the European frontiers. All these things forced him to seeke conclusion of a peace, to which purpose the twelfth of May, 1615. *Achmet Chiaia* his Embassadour entred Vienna, with rich Presents to the Emperour, and obtained a confirmation of the same for twentie yeeres ensuing.

Iansen. & Arthus in Di M. 66.

1

G. Sandys.

The Turkes strength at Sea is so small, that the Florentine with six Ships onely, hath these three yeeres kept the bottome of the Streits in despight of them, the whole Armado not daring the onset: the Admirall employing the Pyrats of Tunisand Algiers, who by our fugitiue Pyrats are instructed to the spoile of Christian Merchants. One cause of this weakenesse is their want of slaues for their Gallies, thorow their peace with Christendome.

2

HONDIVS *his Map of the* Turkish *Empire.*

§. V.

Of Sultan ACHMETS *Person, Family, Gouernment, and Greatnesse of State.*

SVltan *Achmet* is now *Ann.* 1616. eight, or twentie nine yeeres old, of a iust stature inclining to be fat, readie sometimes to choke as he feeds, some purposely attending to free him from that danger. He is full faced, and (which they esteeme a great beauty) great eyed. A little haire he hath on his lip, lesse on his chin. He is an vnrelenting punisher of vice. For Sodomie he caused some of his Pages to be drowned. He is now building a magnificent Moschee for the health of his soule, all of white Matble, himselfe first breaking the earth, and working three houres in person. Hee hath not so few as foure thousand which feed and liue in the Seraglio, besides fiue hundred Capagies, who wait by fifties at euery gate. He hath three thousand Concubines and Virgins for his lust, as Mr. *Knolles*; Mr. *Sandys* saith, seldome so few as fiue hundred Virgins in a Seraglio by themselues attended by Women and Eunuchs, taken in warre, or from their Christian Parents. They haue their purgations and dyets much like the Persian custome in the time of *Esther*. When it is his pleasure to haue one, they stand ranked in a gallery, and shee prepareth for bed to whom he giues his handkerchiefe, then deliuered to the *Aga* of the women. Shee that beares the first sonne is honoured with the title of *Sultana*. He had but two sonnes and three daughters, *A.* 1610. and yet is that way vnsatiably addicted. He cannot make a free woman his Concubine, and therfore *Roxolana* procuring vnder colour of deuotion her freedome of *Solyman*, forced him to marry her, doting still on her. This also hath married the mother of his younger sonne (the mother of the eldest being dead) called *Casek Calous*, that is, the Lady without haire, natute both greeing and shaming her. His eldest sonne is about twelue yeeres old. He is much delighted with pleasures of the field, for which in Græcia and Natolia he hath fortie thousand Falconers: his Huntsmen are not much fewer. And whereas their Religion binds them once euery day to practise some mutuall trade, as his father did, making of arrowes: This Sultan euery morning after his deuotions maketh horne-rings, which they weate on their thumbs for the better drawing of their bowes.

His Officers [a] are thus deliuered: the *Capi Aga*, by whom hee speakes to such as haue suites to him; Treasurer of the houshold, Cup-bearer, Steward, Ouer-seer of his women, and principall Gardner. These six are in great place: he hath Mutes (persons borne deafe and dumbe) which attend him; he hath fifteene hundred gelded men, from whom their priuities are wholly cut, and they make water thorow short quills of siluer, which to that end they weate on their Tutbants. He hath fifteene hundred Visiter Bassies, or Priuie-counsellers, whereof there are nine at Constantinople, and were wont to be much fewer, are now thirtie. The rest of them are in their charges, or Beglerbegs places abroad. They sit euery Saturday, Sunday, Munday, and Tuesday, in the Diuano or Counsell-hall. The Aga is Captaine of the Ianizaries. The Chiaushes are his Pursuiuants. The Spahi his guard of Horse-men. The Ianizaries are his best Foot-men, who in their child-hood are taken from their parents, and brought vp in all hardnesse, and in the rules of their Religion. Then are they put to Schooles, where vnder most seuere Masters they are taught the vse of diuers weapons, and such as proue fit are enrolled for Ianizaries. Of whom in all are fortie thousand, and about sixteene thousand with their Aga, attend the Grand Seignior his person at Constantinople, where they are employed as Constables, Clerkes of the Market, Wardens of the Gates, Sergeants for Arrests, to guard Embassadors, and other Offices. The Aga is the third place in repute through the Empire: to whom iealousie makes too much loue of the Ianizaries, fatall. The Ianizaries call the Great Turke Father, he reposing greatest trust in them, they acknowledging no dependance but on him. In their marches they carry certaine dayes prouision of victuall with them, which is no great cumber, being a small portion of Rice, with a little Sugar and Hony. The most of them that attend the Court, haue their being in three large Seraglios, where the Iuniors reuerence their Seniors, and all obey their Commanders with much silence. Some are married (a breach of their first institution) and liue in priuate houses. Many of them vndertake to guard such Christians as will be at the charge, both about the Citie and in their trauells, from violence and iniuiilities, wherein they are most faithfull. This appeared in one of them of late, stricken by a swaggering Englishman, as they trauelled through Morea, whom yet with much patience and fidelitie hee brought safe to Zante. They are all of some trade: receiue but fiue Aspers a day (to which pension his eldest sonne is admitted from his birth) two gownes yeerely, one of violet the other of stammell: they beare in their hand a great tourch reed tipped with siluer, wherewith they strike such as displease them. No justice may bee

[a] The chiefe Officers of the Turke, and his other instruments of priuate and publique seruice: see *Knolles* and *Ordinar. Politiæ Turcicæ, &c.*

M. G. Sandy.

publikely administred on them, but priuately are by their *Aga* corrected, and sometimes throwne into the Sea in the night. They are most tumultuous when the Emperour is dying, or dead: for which cause it is by all industrie concealed from them till the next be established, who must bestow a largesse present, and encrease their pensions an Asper a day. They haue lately admitted (besides Renegados) naturall Turkes, of which one is now Bassa of the Port, which was neuer before knowne.

He hath a so in pay, others, called Topegi, six thousand which are Gunners; and twelue thousand Gebegi, which haue charge of the powder and shot in the Armies. He hath Seminaries for the training vp of those youuglings, the one sort of which are called Iehoeglani, whereof are fiue thousand, which neuer goe out of the Seraglio in sixteene or twentie yeeres, neuer see any but their Officers, where they are trained vp to future seruice. The Gemoglani (who are also tithed children of the Christians) are brought vp with some more libertie, and to base offices of husbaudrie, and such like, and may alio pioue Ianizaries. Of these are twentie thousand. The Ian zaries and tithed children, with his Timariots, are the maine pillars of his Empire. His [b] Timariots, which hold land in Fee, to maintaine so many Horsmen in his seruice, are in Europe two hundred sixtie seuen thousand; in Asia and Africa foure hundred sixtie two thousand.

He hath chir ie or sortie thousand Achingi, Hindes of the Country, which serue on horseback, without other pay then what they get by foraging; but of small reckoning: as are also the Azapi which serue on foot (yet properly belonging to the Gallies) whose best seruice is, w th their dead bodies to fil vp ditches, to make way for the Ianizaries, and to weare the Enemy with multitude. Many voluntaries also attending the Campe, in hope to succeed the shine Spa i or Ianizaries. When they march, the Tartars scowre the Country two days iourney before, then follow the Achingi, and after them the Timariots, next the Iemoglans, after them the Ianizaries, then the Chauses on horse-backe: the Sultan followes with the Officers of his Court, and Archers of his Guard foot-men, the stipendary Spahi marching on either side of him. His Coaches which carry the Pages and Eunuchs come after, and then the carriages and Voluntaries. The Royall Standard is a horse cayle tied to the end of a staffe. The Ianizaries haue woodden models of Elephants, boots, swords, and the like, borne before them.

b Some say there are in all a million of seruiceable men, finding as many horse, as his farme doth double the yeerely value of 60. Sultanes, readie to be commanded by their Sanacks, these be then Bassas: some Sanziack commaunds 1000. Timariots.

Beglerbeg signifieth Lord of Lords; of which were wont to be two; one in Europe, another in Asia: but by *Solyman* increased, that though Romania, and Natolia haue still the chiefe titles, yet in Europe are foure others; in Asia before these Persian warres, nine and twentie, in Africa foure, in all nine and thirtie, which are as Vice-royes, and haue their Begs or Sanzacks vnder them. His Admirals place is as great by Sea. If these great ones doe iniustice, the oppressed will sometimes in troupes attend the comming forth of the Emperour, and by burning straw on their heads, or holding vp torches prouoke his attention: who being brought by his Mutes deliuer their Petition, which often turnes to the ruine of the other. Tribery is but l tely knowne, yet now the best Aduocate. Euery Bassa keepes a Diuan or Court of Iustice in his Prouince: the chiefe is at Constantinople foure dayes of the weeke in the Seraglio, whence is no appe le but to the Musti. The Great Visier Bassa is President of the rest: in three dayes all causes are determined. All they haue for assurances of purchases, is a little schedule, manifesting the possession of the Seller, which vnder-written by the Cadi frustrates all after-claimes: and as for law-quelks they are vnknowne. Rebellions rarely happen, both because the greatest Commander submits his necke to the Executioners bow-string, sent with Commission by the Tyrant enclosed in a boxe: neither may any hope for partakers in resisting, where one mans fall is anothers rising: their kindred and alliance not so much as knowne to themselues: to haue had eminent parents is argument of neglect; of ruine to be beloued: and for wealth they are but spunges, all which a greedie lise on th ir posterme. Neither may any slaue promise much to himselfe, where damnable policie strangleth the Imperiall bloud, if males: and the issue of the females by their slaues (for so is the greatest Bassa giuen by the Sultan, when made husband to his sister or daughter) rarely attaine aboue the degree of a priuate Captaine. This great Empire may be constituted to grow neere a period, in respect it hath lately decreased Eastward, and in the Sea-forces: their discipline is neglected, and not exacted to ancient rigour: their late Emperours effeminate, the bowells of the State much infested with rebellions, and it hath alreadie been a long-liued Tyrannie, out-liuing the wonted period. It may seeme the greatest Empire now in being: yet is that of China farre exceeding in reuenues, in naturall situation for defence, in Prouinces better vinted, and better peopled; not inferiour in that kinde of policie which preuents alienations and rebellions: but in Souldiery not to bee compared, except we say herein he hath full recompence, that hee is strong enough in that kinde, which cares

not

not to conquer, nor need feare to be conquered. The Persian hath not so vast Countries subiect, but better subiection, and himselfe a better Commander, and his Souldiers better disciplined and experimented. The Mogoll is great, wealthy, and mightie, but Asia is not comparable to European valour. But compare the Turkish greatnesse to that of some of the first Califas, which stretched from India to Spaine, France, and Barbary; or to the Tartarian, which awed more in Asia, then euer Turke possessed in the Vniuerse, perhaps twice told (for proofe read out Tartarian Relations) and yet they pierced as farre as Asia in Europe, ouer-running Russia, Polonia, Hungaria, and making Italy to quake with the rumour of their armes: or to the Roman, which held almost all the Turke hath, when it was better worth the holding, besides, this Westerne World which the Turke knowes not. Herein, I thinke, the Turke ouer-matched beyond comparison: nor any whit exceeding the power and possessions of *Alexander*; no, nor the Persian greatnesse before him, except in martiall discipline, wherein they now also degenerate. Thus much of Turkish affaires of state: if we adde also this *Summa totalis* for a conclusion, that the Turke commands on the Sea-coast (after some mens [b] Arithmetike) 11280. miles in Asia, Affrike, and Europe, and the superficies of all his Dominions come to a million two hundred three thousand, two hundred and nineteene miles euery way square. Let the Author answer it, if the summe be transcendent. The Turkes reuenues, besides his Timariots, are esteemed but fifteene millions of Sultanies [c]: which may seeme strange in so huge an Empire. But tyrannie in wasting and desolating Nations, and Lording ouer euery mans state (none willing to toyle for that whereof he hath no certaintie, nay, which may procure him the greater danger) hath caused thin habitations (I except the Cities) and poor inhabitants. To this his reuenue may be added his taxes, customes, spoyles, and extortions: as the greater fish preying on the smaller, and pray to the greatest; so here, the great ones spoyling others, and themselues spoyled of all with their liues, or else necessarily leauing him their heire at their deaths.

The Persians and Mogol haue no power by sea.

b States of the World, pag. 939.

c The Turkes haue but two sorts of coyne. The Sultanie equall to the Venice Zeccene, and the Asper of siluer, of which 120. make a Sultanie about eight shillings six pence.

§. VI.

An Appendix touching the succession of MVSTAPHA *twice, and of* OSMANS *murther, and other ciuill, vnciuill late Combustions.*

ACHMET before he [a] died, to make all sure, resolued to strangle his brother *Mustapha*, and according to custome will leaue no Competitors in such an Empire. For which purpose a Guard of Capagies attend at the Iron gates of the Seralio, and the Mutes are placed in a roome accordingly. Thus is *Mustapha* to be dispatched, but see how the stronger arme puts out the strong men? The same night *Achmet* had a *dreame* or fearefull *vision*, which some of the Deruices would needs presume to rumor abroad, in this manner; that he thought, as hee was entring into the seuen Towers, the Princely prison of his predecessors, his brother kneeled downe before him, and cried out, Oh when shall we leaue this horrible custome of shedding innocent bloud? Looke among all the heathens, and see, how quickly they loathed and cast away that cruelty Sin of sacrificing of humane flesh? But in stead of replying he drew his Semiter to strike off his head, had not one (as hee conceited) held it fast, that hee could not strike; whereupon hee demanded angerly, What art thou? I am the good *Genius* of *Mustapha*, and will not suffer him to perish, therefore leaue, and very shortly shall strange things happen in the Empire. *Achmet* contrary to all expectation the next morning after his Dreame, sent for him into the roome of State, where he lay on a starely Pallet, with all his Vice-Roys and Bashaws groueling on the ground, and the principall Muftie kneeling before him reading on a booke. It should seeme that glad tidings came first to the Citie; For he was taken out of the prison with great respect and obseruation: he was a smitted to his galley with high Ceremonies, and yet solemne countenance: hee was accompanied on the Sea with thousands of boats, and ten thousand of weeping eyes: hee landed at the Emperours owne Casks, with great respect and modest stilnesse: hee walking through the Garden of Cypres trees, and at last came to an Iron gate, where his owne company left him, except two Bashawes, who led him by the armes: the gate opens and he must through a Guard of Cupogies; they bend to the ground, and yet looke cheerefully: they brought him into the roome where the Mutes stood; whose presence did more appale him then the rest, but that hee saw the cruelnie confirmed, and their very sight was worse then an vnseuerable iudgement: but when he perceiued no violent hands laid vpon him, and that he must yet goe further, he was the more astonished, and the more vexed to endure such a procrastination.

a This is taken out of a booke written of that argument. *Achmet* reigned about fifteene yeeres.

At

At last he came where the Empetour lay sicke on his Pallet, before whom his prostitution was as the ordinary slaues: but contrary to all expectation he bad him rise, and commanded certaine Persian Carpets to be spread, and rich Cushions to be laid; on which, according to their manner, hee sate crosse legg'd by him, and when the Mustie had raised the Emperour vp a little, with a faint voyce he discouered an vnlookt for louing heart, and bequeathed to him the succession.

He had no sooner done, but he began to faint, and so read them all a lesson of mortalitie by opening a booke, wherein they saw death writ in Capitall letters, and himselfe sinking past recouery, which made them recouer new Spirits, and presently bring his brother out into the Sophia, where the principall Mustie proclaimed *Mustapha* Empetour, intimating to the Ianizaries the charge of *Achmat*, to the discharging their duties: and the pleasure of *Mustapha* to giue them a larges, which equalling the bountie of other Princes, outerswayed nicer exceptions, and so with great acclamations they ratified the Election, and cried out, *Liue and raigne great Mustapha.* Thus is *Mustapha* Emperour, and they had two yeeres triall of his disposition, whereby they found him harmelesse (if innocent in both senses) Encomions of no great and stirring Spirit.

Scander, and *Mehemet* Bashaw take the young *Osman* after this out of the Seralio, and present him to the Ianizaries, a comely sweet young youth of nine or ten yeere old, demanding withall, if such an heire of the *Ottoman* Family were to bee reiected without cause, or why they should bring an harmlesse Prince (as they reputed *Mustapha*) into the danger of vsurpation, and differing no further from a Traytor, but that it was not imputed to him, as for *Achmats* Will? Empires are not so translated, and what could they tell, but priuate men for their owne ends had wrought vpon his weaknesse, making a diseased tongue speake that, which a healthfull heart, and perfect sense would not consent to: For it was probable, that a Father would disinherit his children for any brother in the world: Besides, there was no triall or cause either of insufficiencie, or disabilitie, and therefore they could not beleeue it. Last of all, for any thing they saw, *Mustapha* himselfe was not stirring or strong enough to play the Steeres-man in such an high built Ship, considering the Seas were tempestuous, and many dangerous shores and rockes were to be passed by.

These speeches to the turbulent Ianizaries, were like fewell to fire, and the presence of the louely youth, made them amazed at their inconstancies: that by way of penitencie and satisfaction, they quickely altered the acclamation of *Liue Mustapha*, into the cries of, *God saue young Osman*, and so without further disputing, hee was aduanced into the Throne, and brought into the Seralio, when *Mustapha* least thought of the alteration. But now there is no remedie, hee must needs bee deposed, and sent prisoner once againe into the *seuen Towers*.

Now doth *Osman* begin his *Phaetons* flourish, and runneth the course of pleasures with his youth, spending foure or fiue yeeres in wantonnesse and iollitie, while his Bashawes spent the time in couetousnesse and ambitious ouer-ruling others: yet not without carefull ouer-looking the Ianizaries, and prouident preuenting their discontents, & turbulent disposition: but all doth helpe; for they ouer-accustomed to actiue imployment, and liuing vpon the spoile of forraine Nations, as much as the Empetours entertainment, cried out to the warre, and when answer was made, that the Persians had contracted a new league, and the Emperours of Germanies old couenants were not yet determined or ended. They presently replyed, the incignities which the Russians had offered vnto their neighbors the Tartarians, were not to be endured, for they need gee no further then the piracies of the blacke Sea, and the iniuries of the Cossacks and Polonians: Nay, why should they not march to the expugnation of Loepolis, and the foraging of the Countries of Moldauia and Bogdonia, and so forward to teach Poland a better lesson, then to displease the *Ottoman* Family and mightinesse.

The Bashawes knew there was no replying, nor now the fire was kindled no other quenching it, then letting it consume to cinders, whereupon they presently answered, they were glad that the Souldiers were so memorable of the glory of the Empire, and so readie to imploy themselues for the dignitie of the Nation, and therefore they would not by any meanes hinder them, or the cause: But they should finde the Emperour as carefull to satisfie their demands, as they were willing to augment his Greatnesse: so that if they would giue way vnto time for the preparing of all things fit for the Armie, and the sending for the Tartarians to accompany them in the iourney, the Emperour should goe in person into the field, and Poland soone finde, what it was to exasperate such a Maiestie.

The King of Poland sent to the Emperour, to the French King, to the Pope for assistance; as also to his [e] Maiestie of England with intimation of the terrour, and his well deliuered discourse made such impression on his Maiesties Princely heart, that he had a present supply:

[e] The Polish Emb. Oration is printed.

In

In a word, his Armie was soone readie, and his Cossacks prepared: by the end of Iuly hee was encamped in the fields of Bogdonia, and within eight dayes entrenched with twentie Peeces of Ordnance mounted: but the Cossacks quartered by themselues, and after their accustomed manner lying between two Riuers, were the more emboldened to make their daily excursions vpon the Tartars: For hauing a bridge in the reare of their Campe, with which the Turkes were vnacquainted, they quickly transported their men, and as quickly endamagified their enemies.

When the Grand Signeur was made acquainted with the forwardnesse of these Polonians, and vnderstood they were alreadie encamped, and expected his comming, hee was too young to apprehend any feare, and not old enough to lay the blame of his retardance where it was: therefore they made the more haste, when he vnderstood the occasion, and so according to former preparation, the establishment of diuers Gouernments, the ordering the Prouinces, the settling the great Citie, the mustring his Gallies, the guarding of his Castles, and the watching of the Blacke Sea: the Tartars vnited themselues to his Armie, and both together made a bodie of 200000. which with all magnificent preparation hee presented in the same Fields, and within sight of the Polonians, where hee pitched his Imperiall Tent. The Tartars thought to haue made but one battell, and day of triall of the businesse, but when they came to passe ouer Riuers, and assaile Trenches; they knew not what to say, and lesse to doe, though the Ianizaries came as a second vnto them; whereupon they retreated, and were altogether appauled to be so disappointed: Both they & the Ianizaries were glad to retire with losse, & the yong Emperor vnacquainted with the war, was yet acquainted with Oathes and Curses, to chide both himselfe and Fortune. At last the Bashaw es seeing no remedie, and finding so great obstacles of their attempt, proiected the preseruation of the Emperours person; but it may bee to secure their liues, and so entrenched themselues, being (as they said) the first time that euer so great an Armie of Turkes was enclosed within walles.

The Polonians also endured both hunger & cold, slacknesse of payment, and their entertainment came many times short: The Noble Generall died in the Campe, the Prince lay sicke of a Feuer, their horse miscarried, and other lamentable effects raught them extraordinary patience, which made them attend good conditions of peace, and secret workings of more nimble spirits. A Priest of Moldauia was set on worke to go among the Polonians, and by way of generall complaint against the outragious effects of warre, to enlarge the happinesse of peace, and inferre what a blessing it were to procure the same: whereupon hee was brought to the young Prince of Poland, and Commanders of the Armie, with whom hee at last preuailed so well, and so farre, that they sent a solemne Embassie to the great Turke, as hee lay entrenched in the fields, to entreate a peace, and desire the renouation of the *antiqua pacta*, which had beene euer betweene the two Nations. The Turke had learned his lesson so well, that he seemed to make the matter strange and of great humiliation, if hee should consent thereunto, and rather a courtesie granted, then a necessitie imposed, and so deferred them awhile, till at last (as if he had beene ouer-wrought by the intercession and mediation of his Bashaw es) he was contented to capitulate the matter, and after many meetings, and a great deale of conference, Articles were drawne and confirmed, with a kinde of solemnitie, and proclaimed by sound of trumpet in both the Campes, and so brake vp the Campe with a kinde of murmuring and repining.

Of these and other occurrents in the Polish warres, are tractats & letters printed.

The Great Turke tooke easie iourneys toward Adrinopolis, where he discharged the Tartars, and sent most of his Ianizaries before hand to Constantinople. *Sigismond* King of Poland raised his Armie, and rewarding the Cossacks, dismissed them home againe into their Countrey: he went in person to Leopolis, from whence (by this time *Osman* was come to the *Great Citie*) hee sent a solemne Embassadour to be there a Leiger, as it had beene in former times.

By Christmasse, *Osman* comes home, and had the accustomed acclamations of the people, with all the Ceremonies of his returne, whereupon he goes in great pompe to the Sophia, and had the vsefull Guard of his Court Ianizaries to attend him: but within short space many fearefull accidents appalled them all. First, they were astonished at a blazing Comet. Secondly, they were affrighted at a great fire happning amongst the Iewes, which they presaged ominous to the gouernment. Thirdly, a sore Earth quake made their hearts quake for feare: but this is vsuall in those parts, by reason of the ascending vp the Hills, and many Caueres vnder ground. The Sea also swelled extraordinarily. And a great dearth happed. These might bee concurring Symtomes: the disease was *Osmans* great spirit, emulous of his Ancestors glory, and ambitious to adde the rest of Europe to their Conquests; but hereto his owne auarice, and the decrepit, or at least that vndisciplined age of that Empire were agreed correspondent: and this first disastrous Polonian attempt, filled him with repining indignation.

Another Earth quake had happened in their Polish expedition. S.T.R.

dignation. He is said to vndertake that warre against the will of his Souldiers, and without the aduice of his Viziers, and his gaines to be the losse of 100000. horses for want of fodder, and 80000. men for want of fighting, to which hee could neuer incite his Ianizaries, though he hazarded thereto somewhat farre his owne person. Hereupon he complained hee was no King, subiect thus to his owne slaues, which would neither fight in war, nor obey in peace, without exacting new bounties and priuiledges.

Deluair Bassa.

Deluair Bassa, a man of great courage, lately called from the Easterne parts was suddenly made Vizier; and wrought vpon the Kings discontent, giuing him counsell to prouide a new Souldiourie about Damasco, and from the Coords in stead of these degenerate Ianizaries, and of them to entertaine 40000. for his Guard, and that the Begh-lerbegh of euery Prouince should traine vp some of the inhabitants in Martiall discipline, with which men of new spirits and hopes hee might be able to doe something. *Osman* extreamely pleased with this deuice consented and left all to his discretion. Hereupon it was concluded that the King should pretend to goe in person against the *Emirde Zaida*; and after interceding against that, a pilgrimage to Mecca was pretended. May seuen, 1622. he began to passe his Tents to Asia side with great store of treasure, to the defacing of his Palace, and of Churches. The Ianizaries had secret intelligence, and vpon a word giuen met at the Hippodrome, and thence ranne to the Seraglio in tumult, taking order to stop the passage by water. There they cried out for the King; who appearing, they first demanded his continuance in the Citie: Secondly, the chiefe Officers to be deliuered to them; *Deluair* the great Vizier, the Hoia or Confessor, the Treasurer, the Gouernour of the Women, the Cadileskar, or Chiefe Iusticé, and others as enemies to the State, and authors of that iourney. Hee granted the first, but stucke at the second, and they returned discontent.

A new militia.

Mustapha restored.

The next day they renewed the mutinie, slew the Vizier and the Gouernour of the Women, and not finding the King, they called for *Mustapha* before deposed, a man esteemed holy (or fantike) and fitter for a Cell then a Sceptet. Him they found almost starued in a Vault, where in the beginning of these tumults hee had beene put; who first feared death, and the next thing was hee begged water; whom they presently proclaimed Emperour.

Osman consulted with *Huzein* Bassa, late Vizier in the Polish warre, and the Aga of the Ianizaries, both faithfull to him: sent to haue strangled *Mustapha* in the Seraglio, but a new vproare happened, and hee was remoued and guarded. The next day the King, with the Mufti went to them, where after much intreatie, their hearts somewhat relenting, yet with new furie possessed, they slew *Huzein* Bassa, and the Aga; the Mufti was conueyed away secretly; and *Osman* led to *Mustapha*, pleads for his life, and at last is cast into the *Seuen Towers* prisoner.

Osmans brethren & death.

Daoud Bassa, the new Vizier, enquires and finds that *Osman* had two brothers liuing, one about twelue, the other seuen yeeres old, and thereupon goes to the prison with a packe of executioners, which finde him new falne asleepe, and by their intrusion awaked and discontent. At first they are amazed, and hee made shew to defend himselfe, till a strong knaue strooke him on the head with a battle axe, and the rest leaping on him strangled him with much adoe. And soone after they mourned for their dead King, as freshly as they had raged vnseasonably, this being the first Emperour they had betrayed, and hauing set vp one, which in all likelihood they must change for disabilitie.

New broiles.

The first of Iune following, the Capiaga had received secret order to strangle *Osmans* brethren, which going to doe, they cry out, and he by the Pages was slaine. The Ianizaries mutinie afresh, and will haue account of this treason, whereof the King denies knowledge; so did *Daoud* (who was suspected) but to please them is degraded, and *Huzein* Bassa late Gouernour of Cairo put in his place.

Const. Lett. Febr.

There is later report of the said *Daoud*, to be strangled in the same place where hee had caused *Osman* to die. Neither can wee expect otherwise then monstrous and portentuous births, after such viperean conceptions.

Daoud strangled

CHAP. 6

CHAP. X.

Of the Opinions holden by the Turkes in their Religion, and of their Manners and Customes.

HOw the Turkes from so small beginnings, haue aspired to this their present greatnesse you haue seene; bought indeed at a deare price, with their temporall Dominions accepting of a spirituall bondage, becomming the Lords of many Countries, and withall made subiect to those many Mahumetan superstitions. The occasion and chiefe cause of Sects in the Saracenicall deuotions, yee haue heard in the fourth and seuenth Chapters: to which wee may adde here out of [a] *Bellonius*. He saith, that besides the Alcoran, they haue another booke called *Zuna*, that is, the Way, or Law, or Councell of *Mahomet*, written after his death by his disciples, but the readings thereof being diuers and corrupt, the Caliph assembled a generall Councell of their *Alphachi*, or learned men at Damasco, wherein six Commissioners were appointed, namely, *Musselin*, *Bochari*, *Buhorayra*, *Annecey*, *Atermindi* and *Dent*, to view and examine these bookes, each of which composed a booke, and those six bookes were called *Zuna*; the other copies (being two hundred Camels-lading) were drowned in the Riuer; those six onely made authenticall, esteemed of equall authoritie among the Turkes, with the Alcoran, and after by one of their Diuines contracted into an Epitome; which booke was called the *Booke of Flowers*. But this *Zuna*, being not *Vna* (one as the *Truth* is) but full of contrarietie, hence haue risen Sects amongst them, the Turkes differing from other Mahumetan Nations, and diuided also amongst themselues.

a *Obser. l. 3. c. 46.*

§. I.

Of their Eight Commandements.

ANTHONY [a] MENAVINVS (who liued a long time in the Turkish Court) saith, that the Booke of their Law is called *Musaph*, or *Curaam*, which *Georgiouitz* reckoneth another booke; not the Akoran it is in Arabike; and they hold vnlawfull to translate it into the vulgar. If any like not of *Georgiouitz* his opinion, but thinke it to be the Alcoran (for *al* is but the Article, and the name little differs, as before is shewed) I could thinke it likely that this containeth some Extracts and Glosses thereof; or is to their Alcoran, as our Seruice booke to our Bible; hauing some sons and proper methodes, but grounded on the other. Some things I finde cited out of the *Curaam*, that are not in the Alcoran, as that of the Angels mortalitie, which perhaps may bee the mistaking of the Interpreter. The ignorance of the Arabike hath caused much mis-calling of words and names. They haue it in such reuerence, that they will not touch it, except they bee washed from top to toe; and it is read in their Churches by one with a loud voyce, the people giuing deuout attendance without any noyse: nor may the Reader hold it beneath his girdlestead; and after he hath read it, he kisseth it, and toucheth his eyes with it, and with great solemnitie it is carried into the due place. Out of this booke are deriued eight principall Commandements of their Law. The first is, GOD *is a great God, and one onely God, and* MAHOMET *is the Prophet of God*: this Article of the *Vnitie* (they thinke) maketh against those, who beleeue a *Trinitie of Persons*: in detestation whereof, they often reiterate these words, *Hu, hu, hu*, that is, *He, he, he*, is onely GOD, who is worthy to be praised for their limbes, health, &c. and for that he hath prouided sustenance for euery one sortie yeeres before his birth.

a *Menau. lib. 1.*

b The Turkes vse to repeate one word of their prayers so often, and with such continued feruor, that sometime they fall down with weariness, or seeme rauished in a trance and deuout extasie.

c Policie of the Turkish Empire, *Biddulph.*

The second Commandement is, Obey thy Parents, and doe nothing to displease them in word or deed; they much feare the curses of their parents. 3. Doe vnto others, as thou wouldest bee done vnto. 4. That they repaire to the Meschit or Church at the times appointed, 5. of which after. 5. To fast one month of the yeere, called *Romezan*, or *Ramadan*. 6. That they giue alms to the poore liberally and freely. 7. To marry at conuenient age, that they may multiply the sect of *Mahomet*. 8. Not to kill. Of these Commandements is handled at large in *Menauino*, and in the booke [c] of the Policie of the Turkish Empire, and in others.

d Some say that the Turkes now vse to resort to their Oratories but three times a day, and *Biddulph* saith foure; omitting that in the

Their times of prayer, according to the fourth precept, are [d] in the morning, called *Salahe nighe Bubeg. Biddulph.* They measure the time of prayer by houre-glasses of water. Some say six, and the deuouter sort, seuen.

namazzi,

namazzi, before Sun-rising: the second at noone, called *Vlenamazzi*. The third, about three houres before Sun-set, called *Inchindinamazzi*. The fourth at Sun-set, *Ascannamazzi*. The fifth, two houres within night, before they goe to sleepe. Master *Sandys* nameth seuen times of prayer enioyned daily: the first *Tingulnamaz*, two houres before day, not mentioned by *Septemcastrensis*; and another *Gimnamamaz* at ten in the morning, duely obserued on the Fridayes by all, at other times by the more religious. When the Priest calls to prayer, they willspread their garments on the earth, though they bee in the fields, and fall to their deuotions. Moreouer, I haue seene them conioyntly pray in the corners of the streets, before the opening of their shops in the morning. They spend but a part of Friday (their Sabbath) in deuotion, and the rest in recreations: but that so rigorously, that a Turke had his eares nay-led to his shop-boord for opening it too soone. Their seruice is mixed with Songs and Responds. They neuer looke backe till they come to the saluation of *Mahomet*; whom they expect to come againe, and thinke it will be behinde them: They hearken to the Priest reading the Alcoran, or Legend, or intermixing instructions and expositions, with such attention and such steadie postures of bodie, as if they were intranced. They number their often repetitions of the names of GOD, with short eiaculations of prayer and praise vpon beades. If they finde a paper in the streets, they will thrust it in some creuise of the adioyning wall, lest the name of GOD may be therein, and prophaned. Of their publike prayers you shall see more after. They which meane to goe to prayer, goe first to the house of Office, and there purge their bodie: they wash their priuie parts: and then going thence, wash their hands, their mouth, their nose, their countenance, and their wrists, each of them three times, and after their eares and neckes, saying a certaine Psalme, and then wash their feet to the midlegge, saying another Psalme; and after all this, with a graue pace, walke to Church: without these washings they hold their prayers vnprofitable, *Septemcastrensis* saith, That for this cause of washing they cut their nayles, and all their haire; except on their heads and beards (which yet they combe, and bestow curious paines about, that the water may haue free passage to all parts) yea for this cause he thinketh they obserue Circumcision, that nothing be left couered and vnwashed. They haue three kindes of washings: the first of all the body, no part being left free, called *Zecoagirgmeg*, which is necessary after any pollution. The second is called *Tachrim*, of the priuities and hinder parts after stoole, vrine, or breaking of winde. The third, *Aptan*, or *Abdas*, in the instruments of the fiue senses, beginning at the hands, from thence the wrists to the elbowes, then the mouth and nostrils; then all the face; with the eyes; then the eares, and from thence to the feet, which he washeth as hie as the ankles. This is not necessary before euery Prayer, except some vncleannesse happen, but may serue for all day.

Their Almes, enioyned in the sixth Commandement, are publike or priuate. Their publike Almes is a sacrifice (if we may so call it) or offering of some beast once euery yeere. For whereas of old they should haue giuen a certaine pension of money to the poore; namely, two in the hundreth, *Mahomet* vpon their complaint eased this heauy burthen, and conuerted it into this sacrifice. This beast must bee cut in pieces, and giuen to the poore; neither must they themselues eate of it, yet may each man eate of his neighbours offering: and this sacrifice ought to be of the faireſt and best Horse, Veale, or Mutton. The place for this sacrifice is called *Canaara*: where are many Butchers, which cutting the throat thereof, say; In the name of him which hath made heauen and earth, and all things else; this sacrifice be to his honour and worship, and let his infinite bountie accept the same. They vse the like vpon occasion of vowes, if any of their house be sicke. As for their priuate Almes, they hold it necessarie: hauing a vaine conceit, that it freeth them from all imminent misery, which (they say) together with the Almes, turneth from them to the poore man; whence it commeth that the poore are so full of diseases. But for all this charitable Precept, many poore people die amongst them for want of relieſe: and [c] if the poore pay not their head-money to the King yeerely, they are beaten, and their women and children sold to pay it: and yet I haue seene (saith Mr. *Sandys*) but a few beggers amongst them: sometimes you shall meet with couples chained together, begging to satisfie their Creditors.

c Biddulph.

Marriage ought to be sought (they say) for procreation, not for lust. They which liue vnmarried (after fit time, which is about fiue and twentie yeeres of age) are not iust, not please GOD. Their Law enioyneth them to performe their marriage-ceremonies, with prayers and praises, and modest shamefastnesse; and they ought to learne each other to read, if either partie be ignorant. But their marriage is now farre degenerate from that ancient simplicitie: [d] For if a man like a young woman, hee buyeth her of her Father, and then enroolleth her in the *Cadies* booke; the marriage following with all Bacchanall solemnities. Many women are inuited by the Brides mother the night before, when after the feasting they bathe her, and the next morning tricke her in her richest ornaments, tying on her silken buskins

Mettauina.

d The Turkes commaryed vnmarry themselues at their pleasure.

Mr. G. Sandys l. 1.

buskins with knots easily not vnknit (which the Bridegroome must vntie, though with his teeth,) after that with much solemnitie, his companions on horseback, riding two in a ranke, & conducted by the Sacdich, who is necrest of his kindred haue fetched her home: The Bride being deliuered with her face close couered, set astride on horseback, with a Canopie ouer her, and receiued of him at his doore, thence led (if shee be of qualitie by an Eunuch to the Bride-chamber. The guests honour him with Presents, yet come not in. The Father also giueth onely some pieces of houshold, carryed openly by particulars through the streets. Now hee is to entertaine the Wiues with an equall respect: alike is their diet, apparell, yea and beneuolence (vnlesse they consent to change or giue turnes) or else they may complaine to the Cadi, and procure a diuorce: but the husband may put away his wiues at pleasure, who may marry vnto another within foure moneths after, except shee proue with childe, and then shee must stay so long after her deliuerie. But if hee will haue her againe, hee must buy her; and if after the third diuorce, another is first to lye with her, as a punishment for his leuitie. They will sell some of them, or giue them to their friues. The wiues giue him the reuerence of a Master. They are at no time to deny him their embracements, whom hee toucheth not againe, vntill they haue beene at the Bath. They hold their chastisement, which they receiue from him, as an argument of affection. They intermeddle not with houshold affaires: onely it is required of them to content their husbands, to nurse their owne children, and to liue peaceably together, which also they do without iealousie or enuy. They are exceeding beautifull, for the most part ruddy, cleere and smooth as the polished fuory; tender and soft, as frequenting the Baths daily, and neuer open to the weather: but wither quickly. Great and blacke eyes are the greatest fayre to the eyes of a Turke. They sit not at Table with their husband, but waite and serue them; and then they dine by themselues, admitting no mankinde with them aboue twelue yeeres old. And they neuer go abroad without leaue, except to the Bath, and on Thursday to weepe at the graues of the dead: They rise to their husbands, and stand while they are in presence; and besides them, come in no company of men, nor doe they speake with a man, or in any part of their body are seene of any man, because they thinke sight, especially where beautie or comlinesse is, cannot bee without sinne. Onely the brother may bee permitted to see the sister, but not the husbands brother. Yea, their sonnes when they come to growth, are separated from them. For this cause that sexe is not suffered to buy and sell, but is closely mewed, saue that their law alloweth them to frequent the publike Baths. The wife and Concubine differ in the right to a dowrie, which the later wanteth; but the wife must cause the other to bee her husbands bed-fellow, when hee commandeth, without gainesaying, except on their Sabbath, or Friday night, which is the wiues peculiar. Yet are the Turkes giuen in both Sexes to vnnaturall lust (in these times) euen the women in publike Baths, sometimes are so enflamed in that filthinesse, as is intollerable. *Busbequius* tells of one woman, which falling in loue with a young maide, and no way else preuailing, clothed her selfe in mans apparell, and hyring a house neere, procured the fathers good will to haue that his daughter in marriage; which being solemnized betweene them, and the truth discouered (which the blacke mantle of night could not couer from *Hymeneus*) complaint was made, and the Gouernour quenched the hot flames of this new Bridegroome, causing her to bee drowned for that offence. If the man abuse the wife to vnnaturall lust, shee may haue her remedie by diuorce, if shee accuse her husband: which modestie forbiddeth to bee done in words, and therefore shee puts off her shoee, and by inuerting the same, accuseth her to her husbands peuersenesse. One Master *Simons*, which liued amongst them, told me, that there are some which keepe boyes gallantly arraied, to serue for the worse then beastly lust of such as will hyre them. He affirmed also, That they haue this lothsome punishment for that lothsome sinne of whoredome, to take the panch of a beast new killed, and cutting a hole thorow, to thrust the adulterers head in this dung-wallet, and so carrie him in pompe thorow the streets. It is death, either to the bodie by iudiciall sentence, or the soule by turning Turke, for a Christian to haue carnall dealing with any of their women. A Iew which had dealing with a Turkes wife, with her husbands consent, could not escape hanging therefore, (this indeed was a fauour, for hee should haue beene burned) notwithstanding his rich countrey-men offered 2000. Duckets to saue him: Her husband was hanged for his wittolily permission, and she her selfe drowned. *George Dousa* reporteth the like danger, which an Armenian hardly escaped, but for talking with a Turkish woman, both of them being therefore imprisoned, and thence deliuered at a deere rate. Hee telleth of their Pædersastie that they buy boyes at an hundred or two hundred Duckets, and mew them vp for their filthy lust, till they proue bearded; they will also steale boyes for that villanie, as hee instanceth of one which came with the Polonian Embassadour so stolne, and neuer could after bee heard of.

Septemastrensis. Busbequius Epist.

St. Gerlach. Ep.

George. Dousa in itin. Constantinop.

Murther (prohibited in their eight Commandement) they hold vnpardonable, if it bee done wilfully. Often will the Turkes braule, but neuer in priuate quarrels strike one another for feare of this Law, and the seuerities of the Magistrate. And if one bee found dead in a street or house, the Master of the house, or the Parish, must finde out the murtherer; otherwise hee himselfe shall be accused of it, and the whole Contado shall be fined, and likewise in case of robberie. During the time that I remained amongst them (you heare Mr. *Sandys*) it being aboue three quarters of a yeere, I neuer saw Mahometan offer violence to a Mahometan, nor breake into ill language: If any giue a blow, hee hath many gashes made in his flesh, and is led about for a terrour; but the man-slayer is delivered to the friends of the slaine, to bee by them tortured to death. For publike punishments (to mention that heere) they haue impaling on stakes, thrust in at their fundament; ganching on hookes, on which they are cast from some high place, there to hang till famine (if some more gentle cruelties haue not made a sudden dispatch) consumed them: they also haue another inuention to witch the offender about the waste with a towell, enforcing him by often prickings to draw vp his breath, till they haue drawne him within the compasse of a spanne; then tying it hard they cut him off in the middle, and setting the bodie on a hot plate of copper, which seareth the veynes, vp-propping him during their cruell pleasure: who not onely retaineth sense, but discourse also, till hee be taken downe, and then departeth in an instant. Little faults are chastised by blowes on the soles of their feet, by hundreths at a time. Parents correct their children by stripes on their bellies.

§. II.

Of other their Opinions and Practices in Religion.

MEnauinus reckoneth seuen mortall sinnes; Pride, Auarice, Lecherie, Wrath, Enuie, Sloth, and Gluttonie. The first, they say, cast *Lucifer* out of heauen. The second is the root of many other sinnes. The third is most rife amongst them, and that in the most filthy and vnnaturall kinde of Sodomie; their Law to the contrarie notwithstanding. Their fourth maketh a man a beast. The fifth shutteth men out of Paradise, and so forth of the rest. Wine [a] is also forbidden them; but yet they will bee drunke with it, if they can get their fill of it. And *Mahomet* the third (*Anno* 1601.) imputing diuers insolencies of the Ianizaries to their excessiue drinking of Wine (by the Mufties persuasion) commanded on paine of death, all such in Constantinople and Pera, as had Wine, to bring it out and staue it (except Embassadours onely) so that the streets ranne therewith. One drinking Wine [b] with *Busbequius*, made great clamors; being asked the cause, hee said hee did it to warne his soule to flee into some corner of the bodie, or else be quite gone, lest it should bee polluted with that sinne. Yet in their Fast or Lent they abstaine very religiously. [c] If it be proued against a Priest, that he hath drunke wine but once, hee shall neuer be beleeued as a witnesse after it. Swines flesh is prohibited too; in abstaining from which they are more obedient; it being vtterly abhorred.

[a] Drinking of Greeke wine, is too wee as sinne first e Turkes to forbeare.

[b] *A.Gis. Busbe. Epist. 1.*

[c] *Villamont.*

The Turkes [d] generally hate (saith *Septemcastrensis*) that lightenesse in apparell, speech, gesture, &c. vsed of the Christians, whom for this cause they call Apes and Goates. Likewise they are not sumptuous in their priuate buildings. They go to the warre as if were to a wedding, esteeming them blessed which are therein slaine. The wiues and women-seruants agree in one house, without ielousie and grudging; they are in their habite and behaviour modest: and, where himselfe dwelt, the Father-in-law had not seene the face of his Daughter-in-law, liuing in the same house with him, in twentie yeeres space; so religiously doe they veyle themselues.

[d] The Turkes are no sash-mongers.

On Friday they pray more deuoutly, but (as the Alcoran also permitteth) they abstaine not from all labour. He saw the Grand Signior himselfe goe to their Church, and likewise to the Bath, attended onely with two youths; none vsing any acclamation to him. And in the Church he praied on the pauement couered with a carpet, like to the rest, without any throne or ensigne of royaltie. And hee obserued the like modestie in his other behaviour. But this (as other things from their ancient simplicitie) is now altered. Thus Mr. *Sandys* of *Achmet*. Euery other Friday highly (besides at other times on occasions) hee goeth abroad to the Mosque; and when in state, there is not in the world to bee seene a greater spectacle of humane glory, or (if so I may speake) of a sublimated manhood. For although the Temple of St. *Sophia*, which hee most vsually frequenteth, bee not aboue a stones cast from the vtmost gate of the Seraglio, yet hath he not so few as a thousand horse, besides the Archers of his guard foot-men, in that short procession: the way on each side enclosed with

Cappagies

Cappagies and Ianizaries in Scarlot. The Aga, Captaines, Bassaes, Beglerbegs, and the rest attending in exceeding pompe, and yet (which is the greater maruell) in exceeding silence, the eares discerning no more then in midnight sleepe, except when they salute him with a soft and short murmur: So likewise in entertainment of Embassadors, he sits in a rich roome vpon a low Throne, the Bassaes standing by like Statues without speech or motion. The stranger is led betweene two, and goes backward from him, neuer putting off his hat; for to shew the head they hold it an opprobry.

The Turkes are so zealous in their superstition, that they will rather lose their life then Religion: as among other examples in *Scanderbegs* time at Dibra, many Turkes chose rather to die Turkes, then to liue Christians; yea some, as it is reported, rather to kill themselues, then to leaue their superstition: and in the yeere 1568. The Persian Embassador was shot at, and one of his followers hurt by a Turke, who being apprehended, confessed that hee did it because he was an Heretike, and sent from an Heretike: for which fact he was drawne at an horse-tayle thorow the Citie, and then had his right hand cut off, and after his head. They hate the Persians, as *Rustan* Bassa told *Busbequin*, more then they doe the Christians: like as the Traditiouarie Iew doth the Textuarie, and the Papist the Protestant. *Busbeq. Epist. 3.*

Images they haue in such detestation, that (besides the scratching out the eyes of those in the *Mosaique* worke of Saint *Sophies* Temple) when *Solyman* ouerthrew King *Lewis* of Hungary, he carried away three Images of cunning worke in Brasse, representing *Hercules* with his Club, *Apollo* with his Harpe, *Diana* with her Bow and Quiuer, and placed them in the Tilt-yard at Constantinople: but by the perswasion of the Mufti, they were molten into great Ordnance. They haue no Scutchions or blazing of Armes: nay, they vse no scales in their letters or other writings, which seeme to them to sauour of superstition, or superfluitie.

When they conquer any Citie, they turne the Temples into Mosques, and sacrifice there. Thus did *Solyman* [e] at Buda, and *Amurath* sacrificed sixe hundred captiues to his Fathers ghost.

They are moderate in their priuate buildings, and detest [f] the Christians for their excesse and superstitious expences that way: *What* (say they) *doe those Pagans thinke they shall liue euer?* They often lodge (saith [g] *Villamont*) at the Signe of the Moone; and the like moderation they vse in diet and apparell. They haue a brasse pot, and their other meane houshold implements with them in the warres, which they vse in peace. Ready money is their surest riches, because the Grand Signior is their surest Heire.

They haue the rising of the Sunne in great reuerence; and especially the appearing of the new Moone: as [h] when *Mahomet* the great besieged Scodra, the new Moone beginning to shew her selfe, the Mahumetane Priests, going about the Armie, gaue the Souldiers warning thereof, as the manner is, by singing of a Song in manner of a Procession; whereunto the whole Armie answered with a short respond, and at the same time bowing themselues to the ground, saluted the Moone with great superstition.

They may [i] haue twelue lawfull Wiues, and as many Concubines as they will (some say, but foure Wiues.) The children of the one are equally legitimate as well as the other, and inherite alike: yet few of them keepe two Wiues together in one house: but in seuerall places where they haue dealings, they haue seuerall Wiues, which they diuorce at pleasure. Some say, but foure Wiues are allowed them: no great matter, where all their owne are allowed to their vse, with others they may not medle. The offending man they ganish, the woman they drowne.

They tell many things of Antichrist (whom they call [k] *Tethschel*) and of the Resurrection, and of the last Iudgement, of Hell, and Purgatorie: And that *Mahomet* after Iudgement shall deliuer all of all Religions from thence.

They haue no knowledge of liberall Arts, of cases of Conscience, of Originall sinne, or of actuall, further then the outward act.

Their respects to Reliques appeare by *Mahomet* [l] the third, 1597. who in the discomfiture of his Armie fled towards Agria, shedding some teares as he went, and wiping his eyes with a piece of *Mahomets* garment, which he carried about him as a Relique.

The Turkes may neither eate, drinke, nor make water, standing.

In their aduersitie they seeke with earnest prayers to their Prophets; and publike supplications are sometimes decreed. At [m] the taking of Alba Regalis, 1601. the Bassa of Buda (then prisoner at Vienna) hearing of it, abstained from meate, with his two seruants a whole day, prostrate vpon his face, praying vnto his Prophet *Mahomet*, who hee said had beene angrie all that yeere with the Turkes. They [n] endure punishments inflicted by the Magistrate with great patience, thinking they shall escape all torment in those parts in the World to come: they therefore reward the whipper, and esteeme the whip (which I enuie not to them) sacred.

e *Knolles.*
f *Septemcast.*
M. *Simon* told me that now they are herein more superstitious.
g *Voyag. du Villamont. l. 3. c. 6.*
h *Knol. p. 421.*
i *Septemcast.*
k *Leuncla.* saith *Degnol.*
l *Knoll.*
m *Ka.p. 1136.*
n *Busbeq.*

They are (but contrarie to the Alcoran) addicted to sorceries and dreames: their Priests write them letters or spells, to keepe them from danger and harme of shot, &c. called f *Haymasly*. They will write any thing for money, as letters of freedome for seruants to run away from their masters, and such like. They make a shew of holinesse, but are closely wicked, ignorant of their owne law (to couer which, they answere in darke sentences) and the people much more. Nothing is sinne, to count of, but that which endamageth ciuill societie.

They esteeme for good workes, g the buildings and endowings of Hospitals, making Bridges and High-wayes, digging of Pits and Wells, and conueying waters to High-waies and Cities, building Bathes, and founding of Churches, and such like publike workes. *Rosian* h Bassa left his wife, the Daughter of *Solyman*, at his death fifteene millions of gold, and shee had of yeerely reuenue halfe a million: shee, amongst other her workes, attempted one most famous, which was a conduit to conuey water, for the vse of the Pilgrims betwixt Cairo and Mecca, sortie dayes iourney, and for the same intent procured the Sultan *Selym* her brother, to write to the Venetians for a licence to extract out of Italy an hundred thousand pound of Steele, only to make Chizzells, Hammers, and Mattocks, for the cutting of certaine Rockes, by which this water must passe.

Their i Oathes (especially of their Emperours) are of many cuts, and varietie of fashion. And for Vowes; in necessities and dangers, they wil promise vnto God the sacrifices of beasts in some holy places, not vpon Altars, but k hauing flaied off the skin, they giue it with the head, feet, and forth part of the flesh to the Priest; another part to the Poore; the third to the Neighbours; the fourth is for the Guests.

They are so addicted to the opinion of Fate, that God is esteemed to bleese whatsoeuer hath successe, as namely, *Selym* murthering his Father; and to detest what wanteth good euent, whatsoeuer ground it had. They feare not the Plague, accounting euerie mans time limited by Fate, and therefore will wipe their faces with the cloathes of such as haue dyed thereof.

They hold l it alike acceptable to God, to offer alms to beasts, and to bestow it on men, when it is offered for the loue of God. Some there are, which will redeeme birds, imprisoned in their cages or coopes, and hauing payed their price, let them flie. Others (for the loue of God) cast bread into the water to feed the fishes, esteeming it a worke greatly meritorious; but Dogges are accounted vncleane, in stead whereof they delight in Cats, following (they say) their Prophet *Mahomet*, who falling asleepe at table, and awaking to goe to his deuotions, rather cut off his sleeue, whereon he found his Cat fast asleepe, then he would disturbe her. Master *Simons* told mee, that he hath seene them at Cairo feed Dogges with baskets of bread, one standing by with a club to keepe them from fighting: and one gaue alms for a Bitch which had Whelps vnder a stall. Herein perhaps (as in other things) the Egyptians ate more superstitious then the Turkes, especially in this of Dogs, which saiuours of their old *Anubis* and dog-worshipping. Yea, and in Constantinople, m though they suffer them not as vncleane creatures, to come into their houses, yet they thinke it a deed of pietie to feed them, and buy bread therefore, prouiding them kennells also: most of them haue no particular owner: they repaire to the Sea-side nightly, where they keepe a grieuous howling, heard (if the winde be Southward) to Pera.

They say *Moses* was the first great Prophet, to whom was giuen the booke of *Tefrit*, that is, the Law, and they which obserued it in those times were saued. But when men grew corrupt, God gaue *Dauid* the booke *Zabur*, or the Psalter: and when this preuailed not, *Iesu* was sent with the booke *Ingil*, or the Gospel, whereby in that time men were saued. They hold that Christ was borne of the Virgin *Marie*, at her breasts, hauing conceiued by the smell of a Rose, which the Angell *Gabriel* presented her. And preferring Christ before *Moses*, they admit not a Iew to turne Turke, but hee must first be a Christian, and eate Swines-flesh, and after two or three dayes abiuring Christ, hee is made *Musulman*. For so *Mahomet* came last in order of the Prophets with his Alcoran. This Law and Lawgiuer is so sacred to them, that in all their prayers, euen from their mothers breasts, they obserue this forme: *La ilah, illelah Mehemmet irresullellah sanre rupeghamber hace*: That is, there is no God but one, and *Mahomet* his Prophet: one Creator, and more Prophets. This they sucke in with their milke, and in their first learning to speake, I spe out this deuotion. The infants goe with the rest to their Mosques or Meschits, but are not tied to other ceremonies, saiuing washing, till they are circumcised. Euery man n hath (in their opinion) from his birth to his death two Angels attending him; the one at his right hand, the other at his left. At foure or fiue yeere old they send him to the Schoole to learne the Curaam, and the first words which their Masters teach them are to this sense; God is one, and is not contained in any place, but is through all, and hath neither father nor mother, nor children, eateth not, nor drinketh, nor sleepeth, and nothing is like to him. The two Angels before said, are called

f *Septemcast.*

g Their good Workes.

h *M. Harbors.*

i Their oathes and vowes.

k *Andr. Andouere.*

l *Munster. Cos. lib. 4. Busb. ep. 3. & 4.*

m *M. G. Sandys.*

n *Ant. Mocu.*

called *Chiramim* and *Chiratibin*, which write the good or euill that men doe against the day of Judgement. The Turkes o abhorre blasphemie not onely against *God* and *Mahumet*, but also against *Christ* and the Virgin *Marie*, and other *Saints*: and they punish blaspheamers of whatsoeuer Sect: they account it a sinne for a man to build a house which shall last longer then a mans life: and therefore howsoeuer they are sumptuous and magnificent in there publike buildings, yet are their priuate dwellings very homely, and ill contriued. They eate much *Opium*, thinking it maketh them couragious in the warres. They p haue a remedie for paine in the head or elsewhere, to burne the part affected with the touch-boxe (which they alway carry with them) or with some linnen cloth, whereby they haue many markes on their foreheads and temples, witnesses of their needlesse and heedlesse respect to Physicians.

As the Scripture containeth some Prophecies q of the arising and proceedings of the Turkish Nation, the rod of God, whereby hee scourgeth his Christian people; so haue they also prophecies amongst themselues of their end and ruine, when God in his mercie to Christians shall execute iustice vpon the Turkes, and cast the rod into the fire, wherewith he had chastised his children. Such an one is that which *Georgiovitz* r translateth and expoundeth: and such is that which s *Leunclavius* hath transcribed out of their Booke called *Messabili*, wherein is written, that Constantinople shall be twice taken before *Degnal Lain*, that is, the cursed Antichrist, shall come; once by the Sword, another time by the force of the praiers of the sonnes of *Isabac*. *Lain* t is an Epithete which they giue to *Degnal*, signifying wicked or mischieuous. Of this *Degnal* the Turks fable, that before his comming, shall *Mechds* enioy the Empire. This *Mechds*, they say, u was descended of their Prophet *Mahumet*, and walketh inuisible; one day he shall come into light, and raigne for a time; and after him shall *Degnal* their Anti-Prophet, or Antichrist, come. A certain Deruise offered to assault & murther *Baiazet* the Great Turk, professing himselfe to be that *Mechds*, and was slain by one of the Bassas.

o *Magni Gozy.*

p *Voyages du Villamont. l. 3. cap. 6.*

q *Th. Brightman & sere omnes qui in Apoc. comment. ediderunt.*

r *Bart. Georg. Italicè & Latinè apud Lonicerum 10. l. 2. & Anshel. 17. Fov. Act. & Mon. 10. 2. in fine.*

s *Hist. Mu'slim. l. 15.*

t *Phil. Camerarius Medit. Hist. Cent. 3. c. 10.*

u *Hist. Musul. l. 16.*

§. III.

Of the Turkish Manners, their Ciuill and Morall behaiuour.

AS for the bloodie practises, which each Emperor vseth in murthering his brethren to secure him in his Tirone, in rooting out of the Nobilitie of the Countries which they conquer, in rasing the Wals & Fortresses of the Cities, least they should be receptacles for conspiracie, in transplanting people from one Countrie to another, with other their practises and policies of state, I purpose not to adde any more: but refer the Reader to others Treatises. But to present vnto you a Turke set forth in the ordinary Turkish disposition, manners, and fashions, will not (I thinke) seeme tedious. Thus therefore haue wee viewed him with others x eyes. They be generally well complexioned, of good statures, and full bodies, proportionably compacted. They nourish no haire about them, but a locke on their crowne, and on their faces onely, esteeming it more cleanely: and to bee better prepared for their superstitious washings. But their beards they weare at full length, the marke of their affected grauitie, and token of freedome (for slaues haue theirs shauen) scoffing at Christians which cut or want them. All of them weare on their heads white Shashes and Turbants, the badge of their Religion: as is the folding of the one, and size of the other, of their vocations and qualitie. Shashes are long Towells of Callico wound about their heads. Turbants are made like great Globes, of Callico too, and thwarted with rolles of the same; hauing little copped caps on the top, of greene or red veluet; being onely worne by persons of ranke, and he the greatest that weares the greatest, except the Mufties, which ouer-sizeth the Sultans. Some Christians (Turkising in fashion) are permitted as a great fauour to weare white heads in the Citie. The next, that they weare is a smocke of Callico with ample sleeues, much longer then their armes: vnder this, a paire of Calsouns of the same, which reach to their ankles, the rest naked: their slip-shooes yellow or red, picked at the toe, and plated on the sole: ouer all a halfe-sleeued coate, girt vnto them with a Towell: their necke all bare: and this within doores is their Summer accoutrement. Ouer all, when they goe abroad, they weare gownes buttoned before, vngathered in the shoulders. In the Winter they adde to the former, Calsouns of cloth, which about the small of the legge are sewed to short smooth buskins of leather without soles, lining their gownes with Furres, as they doe their coates. They weare no gloues, nor alter their fashions, which (except in richnesse) are alike in all. They retaine the old worlds custome in giuing change of garments, one vest fitting all. The Clergie goe much in greene, as *Mahomets* colour: whose kinsmen weare greene Shashes, and are called *Emers*, or *Lords*, as doe their women also somewhat of greene on their heads: an il-fauoured race, seeming branded of God, for their hereditarie presumption of holinesse from so vnholy a stocke. If a Christian weare greene, they will

x M. George Sandys.

teare off his clothes, if not beate him. They carry no weapons about them in the Citie: only they thrust vnder their girdles great crooked kniues of a dagger-like size, in sheaths of mettall, the hafts and sheaths sometimes richly set with stones. They beare their bodies vpright, of a stately gate, and elated countenance. In their familiar salutations they lay their hands on their bosomes, and a little decline their bodies, almost to the ground, if to a Great man, with kissing the hemme of his garment. The ornaments of their heads they neuer put off vpon any occasion. They affect cleanlinesse euen religiously, neuer making water, but they wash their hands and priuities: this they doe secretly and couching, reuiling the Christian, or striking him for pissing against a wall. This they doe also, lest they should pollute their garment, which might frustrate their prayers. They neuer walke vp and downe for recreation, nor vse any other exercise but shooting, and then also sit on carpets in the shadow, and send their slaues for their Arrowes. These pierce deepe, through Targets of Steele and pieces of Brasse two inches thicke: the Bow for forme and length like the lath of a Crosse-bow, of Buffolos Horne, intermixed with sinewes of admirable workmanship. Wrestling and rope-walking are professions, not recreations. Of Cardes and Dice they are happily ignorant: at Chesse they will play all day long, auoiding yet the hazard of money. The better sort delight in Horses, which are quickly jaded if held to a good round trot (for amble they doe not) in an indifferent iourney. But they ride not so fast to put them to it. They feed them in their stable with Barley, which there is very cheape, as onely seruing for that purpose.

They greatly reuerence their Parents and Superiours, and the young, the aged: the left hand as they goe, hath the prioritie of the right, in that they are made Masters of the others sword, and the chiefest place the furthest from the wall. They liue brotherly together, but come not, except on speciall occasion, in each others house, and then but into the more publike parts thereof. Their houses and furniture are meane, hauing nothing on the inside but white walles (except some speciall roome) the roofes of many curiously seeled, the greater part of the floore, and that a little aduanced, couered with carpets, the cause they at entring put off their slip-shooes. They lie on Matresses of Silke, or stained Linnen, with Bolsters of the same, and Quilts sutable, but much in their clothes: as for lowfuesse which followes, it is no great shame. They haue neither Tables nor Stooles, but sit crosse-legged on the floore all in a ring. They haue a skinne spread before them in stead of a cloth. The better sort sit about a round boord standing on a foot, halfe a foot high, and brimmed like a Charger. Rice sod in the fat of Mutton is their ordinarie food; Pottage also, fried Eggs, Pasties, Tansies, Flesh little in gobbits, London spending as much flesh in one day, as Constantinople in twentie. Fish they haue in indifferent quantitie. The Commons commonly feed on Herbes, Rootes, Onions, Garlick, Hodge-podges, &c. vile fare, and at as vile rate in so great plentie. They are attended by their slaues, of which to haue many is to bee rich. When one hath fed sufficiently he riseth, and another takes his roome, and so continue till all bee satisfied. They eate three times a day: but when they feast they sit all day long, except they rise and exonerate nature, forthwith returning. They abstaine from Hoggs-flesh, Bloud, and that which dies alone, except in necessitie. Their vsuall drinke is water: the richer infuse diuers confections. Wine is prohibited, but so greedily swallowed where they can get it, that but few goe away vnled from the Embassadours table. Our Beere they preferre before all other drinkes, which would in all likelihood prouoke exceedingly profitable to such as would bring it in amongst them, where wine is forbidden, and Barly is at nine pence a bushell. They haue Coffa houses more common then Ale-houses with vs [b], in, or neere to which on benches in the street, they will sit chatting most of the day, drinking their Coffa (so called of a berry it is made of) as hot as they can indure it. It is blacke as soot, and tastes not much vnlike it, good (they say) for digestion and mirth. Of the boyes which some Coffa-men keepe as stales, wee haue spoken before. *Opium* they much vse, it seemes for the giddinesse and turbulent dreames it causeth, which they (as all kinde of stupifying, astonishment and madnesse) religiously [c] affect. This perhaps the cause why Tobacco is so liked, a thing brought them by the English, the worst here, passing currant, and excellent there. But *Morat* Bassa, not long since, caused a pipe to be thrust through the nose of a Turke, and so be led in derision through the Citie. They take it through reeds with great heads of wood annexed.

The vnder garments of the women differ little from those of the men. These weare on their heads a cap sugar-loafe-fashion, the better sort vse Bracelets and Iewells. When they goe abroad they weare ouer all, long gownes of violet or scarlet cloth, tyed close before, the large sleeues hanging ouer their hands. They haue the sweetest children that are lightly seen, which they carry a-ride on their shoulders. They anoint their bodies with the earth of Chios, which makes the skinne soft, white, and shining, freeing the face from wrinkles.

[b] Biddulph.

[c] In imitation, I feare, of their Prophet Mahomet, which had the [illegible] & [illegible] it to [illegible], &c.

For

For the Readers further pleasure I haue here presented a Turkish Woman in Picture.

They vse their bond women with little lesse respect then their wiues. Their Markets yeeld Men, Women, Virgins, Children, to as ample tryall and full purchase as Horses with vs: saue that the Men-slaues may compell their Masters before the Cadi to limit the time of their bondage, or set a price of their redemption, or else to sell them to another. Bu- Galley slaues are seldome released, or those that belong to great men beyond the Cadies authoritie. They buy little children, and geld many of them, as you haue heard, which some say was begun by *Selym* the second, after he had seene a Gelding couer a Mare: and by *Menauinus* his relation with their Masters: yea, the second Vizier of the Port is now an Eunuch.

Turkish women. Though they be courteous to each other, and will aske how himselfe, child, slaue, horse, cat, &c. doe? yet neuer of the wife: yea, if you aske a child how his mother does, he will throw stones and reuile you. *Bildulfus.*

For Arts; some haue some little knowledge in Philosophie. Necessitie hath taught them the practise of Physicke, not the grounds of Arts. In Astronomie they haue some insight, and vndertake to tell fortunes. They haue a good gift in Poetrie. Their Musicke is very vile.

The Grand Signior was once perswaded to heare some Italian Musick, but while they spent much time in tuning, hee (perhaps esteeming that their Musick) commanded them to depart. Logick and Rhetorick they reiect. Some write Histories, but few read them, thinking none dare write the truth of the present, or can, of the times past. Printing they reiect, the most of their Priests liuing by writing. Euery one hath some trades, such I ghtly as seldome holding compact with the Christians that holds not with their commoditie.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Religious places amongst the Turkes: their Meschits, Hospitalls, and Monasteries: with their Liturgie and Circumcision.

§. I.

Of their Temples: A description of S. SOPHIES.

THE places [a] of most Religion to the Turkes abroad, are those which *Mahumet* himselfe polluted with his irreligion: as Mecca, Medina, &c. The places of most Religion amongst themselues are their Mosches, or Meschits [b]: that is, their Temples and Houses of Prayer (whereof they haue many in all Turkie) and next thereunto their Hospitals for the relieſe of the poore, impotent, and Pilgrims. Neither are the Turkes sparing in these or the like (seeming) charitable expences. For when a Turke falleth sicke, and thinketh he shall thereof dye, hee sends for his friends and kinsfolkes, and in their presence maketh his Testament: the greatest Legacies whereof are bequeathed to publike vses, which they thinke will be meritorious to their soules.

Such are the making and repayring of Bridges, Cawseyes, Conduits to conuey water to their Hospitalls or Temples. Some also giue to the Redemption of Captiues. Many of their Women (the deuouter Sexe, whether in Religion or superstition) bequeath money to be distributed amongst such Souldiers as haue slaine any certaine number of Christians: a deed in their conceit very religious. These are the Wills and Deeds of the inferiour sort. But the Emperors, and great Bassaes, appoint Legacies to expresse a greater magnificence with their deuotion, as the building of Temples and Hospitalls.

Their Temples or Meschites are for the most part foure square, not much vnlike to our Churches, but larger in length then bredth. The Temple of St. *Sophia* in Constantinople is of all other in the Turkes Dominion the most admirable, built long since by *Iustinian*, and (by *Mahumet* the Conqueror) peruerted to this Mahumetan vse aboue nine hundred yeeres after. Of this Temple they write, [c] that it was first built by *Constantius*, sonne of *Constantine* the Great, with a roofe of timber: and burnt by the Arrians in the time of Great *Theodosius*, who againe repayred it. *Sozomenus* [d] saith, that in the broyles, which hapned not long after in the raigne of *Arcadius* and *Honorius* about *Chrysostome*, the Church was fired, his enemies ascribing it to his partakers, and they againe to his Aduersaries. It is reported that *Theodosius Iunior* rebuilt it. But in the time of *Iustinian*, *Procopius* [e] testifieth, that base and wicked men burnt it againe, which *Iustinian* built a-new in such sumptuous and manificent sort, that in regard of this change it might haue beene wished that it had perished long before. His chiefe worke-men were *Anthemius*, and *Isidorus*, who raised it into a most goodly frame, which might amaze the beholders, and seeme incredible to the hearers. Both he and *Euagrius* [f] recite the particulars. The length was two hundred and threescore feet: the bredth one hundred and fifteene: the height a hundred and fourescore. *Zonaras*, *Agathias*, and *Georgius Cedrenus*, tell of the harmes it receiued by Earthquakes, whiles *Iustinian* liued, which yet he repaired, as did *Basilius* and *Andronicus* after him. *Nicephorus* [g] saith, that *Constantine* raised the Temple of *Peace* (which before was but small) to that large and stately greatneſse, which in his dayes it retayned: and his sonne *Constantius* finished the Temple of *Sophia* so neere it, that they seemed to haue but one wall. It was [h] burned by *Constantine* his father: and was burnt in a sedition of the people, in the raigne of *Iustinian*, in which rebellion thirtie thousand of the people were slaine, and partly to pacifie the wrath of God (saith hee) for so great a slaughter, hee built this Temple. From the side of the Temple hee tooke [i] foure hundred twentie and seuen Pillars or Images of Heathen gods, and of the twelue signes of the Zodiake: and fourescore Statues of Christian Emperours, which hee distributed in the Citie. But more then enough of the ancient structure thereof.

As it is at this day, diuers haue described it: but of them all most diligently, *Petrus* [k] *Gellius*. The walls and roofes thereof are of Brick, the inner part lyned with Marble most excellent, and of diuers sorts, the roofe is set with Stones, and pieces of Glasse gilded: Nature and Art conspiring to breed the beholders both pleasure and wonder. It is so composed and the Pillars and Arches so placed, that the middle lie within (considered by it selfe, seeme:

a The policie of the Turkish Empire.
b Meschea, Mesgid, Mesceta, Mesbich, Mequita, Moquita, signifie a Church, Temple, or Synagogue of the Mahometans, as *Mesgid-Adjuere* Casa i. *Templum Alij*, vsually write on *Mesgid-Adje*: where *Aly* was buried, *Bidwell*.

c *Pet. Gyllius, Topographia Constantinop. l. 2. c. 3.*
d *Sozom. l. 8. c. 20.*
e *Procop. de Ædificijs Iustinian. l. 1.*
f *Euag. hist. Eccles. l. 4. c. 30.*
g *Nicep. Eccl. hist. l. 9.*
h *Nicep. Lib. 14. c. 10.*
i *Suidas in Voce Sophia.*
k *P. Gyll. Topog. Constant. l. 2. c. 4. Mamamino.* Pieces of the T. E. *Gellonius* and others.

seemes like the forme of an Egge, long and round: but the whole fabrick both within and without, yeeldeth to the curious obseruer a square forme. All the inner part hath Arches (in the top open to receiue light) which are sustained with Marble Pillars of diuers colours, and there are, saith *Bellonius*, (if one may say it) as many doores in that Temple, as are dayes in the yeere. It is farre more admirable then the Roman *Pantheon*: The worke of that being grosse, solid, and easie for a workeman to conceiue. But this *Sophian* Temple is more subtle to the view of the eye and minde. It hath two rewes of Pillars each ouer other, those vpper ones supporting the hemisphere, louuer, or steeple, which is wrought all with Mulaike worke, garnished with gold and azure. The doores or gates are couered with fine Latten of Corinth: one of which (they imagine) was made of the wood of *Noahs* Arke. And therefore there are in it three places lefe vncouered for the deuouter people to kisse, for the pardon of their sinnes. It had sometimes aboue three hundred thousand Duckets of yeerely reuenue. The Turkes, when they turkeised it, threw downe the Altars, turned the Bells into great Ordnance, and either tooke away the Images, or put out their eyes, for (say they) God, and not walls and pictures, is to be adored. *Nicolas* [l] *Nicolai* saith, that it had in compasse more then a mile, within which were comprehended the houses of Cardons and Priests: of the most part of the Cloyster (because it was neere the Serailo) they [m] made a stable for horses; as *Constantines* Palace for Elephants; and a Temple (neere the Tilt-yard, or *Hippodromus*) for wilde beasts, which are tied to the seuerall pillars thereof, Lyons, Beares, Wolues, wilde Asses, Ounces, &c. No Christian may enter into this Meschit, but he may put his bodie in at the doores and view it: But Master *Simons* saith, they are not now so scrupulous: for he hath beene suffered to goe in: as *G. Dousa* also reporteth of himselfe. There haue been at once (in the time of *Baiazet*) numbred [n] thirtie and sixe thousand Turkes assembled for deuotion at an Easter-solemnitie. Perhaps (it is Master *Sandys* his obseruation) the ancient fabrick then standing entire, whereof this remaining was little more then the channell. Better to be beleeued then *Bellonius* his report of so many doores, whereas if it hath fiue, it hath more by one, then by me was discerned. It is almost euery other Friday frequented by the Sultan. The Christian Emperours ascended the stately Galleries on horse-backe. Before the entrance there is a goodly Portico, where the Christians, that visit it on curiositie, as well as the Turkes, doe leaue their shooes before they doe enter. It had in *Iustinians* time Porches or Galleries on both sides, one of which it seemeth fell by some earthquake. The innumerable windowes, and vnspeakable ornaments of the Temple, would easily detaine our pen, as a willing prisoner in the relation thereof. But besides the ancient, *P. Gyllius*, *Mænauinus*, *Bellonius*, *Nicolai*, *Dousa*, and many others haue done it already: neither will my *Pilgrimage* suffer mee to stay long in one place, which am to visite so many, both heere and elsewhere in the World. Let vs proceed therefore to their other Temples: especially seeing this is such, that none is able to expresse the excellencie, nor could euer worthily expresse the least part thereof. Besides, what others haue reported, *Dousa* telleth of a Marble Pillar therein, which continually sweats forth a certaine liquor, which the Turkes wipe off with their handkerchiefs, as (in their opinion) profitable against diuers diseases.

Mahomet the Conqueror [o] built one in like fashion without any figures, which hath about an hundred houses couered with Lead for their Doctors and Priests, and for all Strangers and Pilgrims of any Nation or Religion, where they may refresh themselues, their seruants, and horses for three dayes, with meat and lodging at free cost. There are also without the precinct of the Mosche, an hundred and fiftie other Tenements for the poore of the Citie, which haue there an Aspera day, and as much bread as they need: but they account that kinde of life so vnhappy, that oftentimes those Tenements stand emptie: but the money which should this way be bestowed, is sent to the Hospitalls of the diseased. There are also fiue other Meschits, in forme resembling the former, but not so great nor so rich. The rest of [p] the Meschits are of diuers sorts, some high, some low, of seuerall fashions. The Turrets, vpon which their Priests call the people to prayers, are of a great height, made in manner of Watch-towers; their greater Churches hauing two, the lesser one of them. Vpon the top is set an halfe Moone or Crescent, which is the Turkes Ensigne, as the Crosse is vsuall to the Christians. Within their Temples they haue no kinde of ornaments, but bare walls, with Arabike Letters (some in gold) written thereon, saue onely their Bookes, and Lamps burning with oyle in great abundance, and clothes of Tapestrie, on the which being spread ouer Mats vpon the pauement, they prostrate themselues in prayer time.

l *N. Peregrination. l. 2. c. 20.*

m *Bellon.*

n *Mænauino.*

o *N. Nicolai.*

p *Pol. of the T. E.*

§. II.

§. II.

Of their Hospitalls and Monasteries.

THeir Hospitalls they call *Imarets*; of these there are great vse, because they want Innes in the Turkes Dominions. They found them for the reliefe of the poore, and of Trauellers, where they haue food allowed them (differing according to the vse of the place) and lodging places, without beds. They are open for the most part to all men of all Religions. The chiefe Hospitalls in Turkie, are in Constantinople: two of 10 which *Mahomet* and *Baiazet* his sonne founded. Both these haue about fiue and twentie round Turrets couered with Lead; one of which, being in the middest of the other, is larger and greater then the rest, and vnder are lodgings for the Priests: On one side are beds for Pilgrims and Trauellers, on the other for Lepers. Thrice a day may any man resort thither into a certaine place for meate. There are maintained fourteene Doctors of their Law. Some say, that the reuenues of *Mahomets* Hospitall amount to an hundred and fiftie thousand Duckets, and the other to as much or more. Each of which hath a little Chappel adioyning, in which the Founders are buried, who were at this great charge, that the Priests and such as are there refreshed, should pray for their soules, and say, *Alla Rahsmetelesoñ*: that is, God haue mercy 20 on them. *Selym* finished that which *Baiazet* his father had begun to build. But his sonne *Solyman* erected one farre surpassing the former. *Orchanes* was the first of these *Ottoman* Princes which founded Monasteries. *Mahomet* the first, finished [a] the great Temple at Hadrianople, the seat Royall of the Turkes in Europe before Constantinople was won. He built also, besides a Palace, another Temple, with a most sumptuous Abbey, and a publike Schoole adioyning, endowing the same with great reuenues. He also gaue great summes of money to be distributed yeerely at Mecca and Medina, for the reliefe of poore Pilgrims. [b] *Solyman* erected, in memoriall of *Mahumet* his eldest sonne, a stately Tombe, a sumptuous Church, a Monasterie and Colledge, with other things for the health of his soule. He was buried himselfe in a Chappell which hee had in his lite time built most stately, with a Colledge and Ho- 30 spitall; his wife *Roxolana*, and some of his murthered children lying intombed by him: his Scimatar also hanging by him, in token that hee dyed in warres, which honour they graut not otherwise to their Princes. The reuenues of the Country about Sigeth in Hungary (lately wonne from the Christians) were giuen to the maintenance of those houses, which his deuotion had founded. Neither is it lawfull for them to conuert any Lands to such sacred vses, except they haue first with their owne sword wonne them from the enemies of their Religion; the most acceptable seruice to their Prophet. And therefore *Selym* the second, sonne and successour of *Solyman*, intended to build a Magnificent Temple, and Munificent Colledge, Monasterie and Almes-house at Hadrianople, where hee intended his Sepulchre, brake his league with the Venetians, & wan Cyprus from them, that thence he might endow the same 40 with maintenance. But it were tedious to insist further in declaring their expences, which deuotion in all Turky hath procured: their Emperors and Bassaes esteeming nothing of more honor in the world, or merit for heauen. Let vs come to their Church-rites and Ceremonies.

a *Knoll.* Turkeith Hist.

b Whosoeuer will read of the Temples, Hospitals, Colledges, &c. founded by their Kings, let him read *Leunclau.* at the end of the life of euery Sultan, in the end of his Generall bookes, where hee reiteteth them at large, *Hist. Musulman. lib.* 18.

§. III.

Of their publike Prayers and Church-Rites.

THE Temples in Turkie are (as hath beene said) innumerable, both publike, and priuate of meaner buildings: on which is a Tower, as with vs a Steeple, whereupon on the [c] *Muetden* or *Thalisman* ascendeth: and it being open with Pillars of foure Windowes, first he goeth to that on the East-side, and calleth the people to prayer with a loud voyce, stopping his eares with his hands, crying: There is no God but one, and *Mahumet* his Messenger: come to make prayer for remission of your sins, and know that there is no stronger then the God of *Mahumet* his Messenger. This hee saith in order on euery side of the Steeple. If there be in the Citie any Mosches, the Cathedrall begineth, and then all other Parishionall follow. This they doe fiue times a day, and on Friday (their Sabbath) sixe times. First, at Sun-rising, with foure bendings to the earth, and twice praying. The second about noone, with ten bowings, and fiue prayings. The third, at afternoone before Sun-set, with eight inclinations, and foure prayings. The fourth, with fiue bendings and three prayings about Sun-set. The fifth, longer then the rest, with fifteen bowings, and eight prayings. This bending or bowing they call *Lykes*, which is a double bowing with

c *And. Ariouab. Iacomes Thesaurarius Reg. Tran.*

with prostrating himselfe: their prayer they call *Czalamet*, which they make facing after every *Erket*, with a salutation on the right hand and on the left, and the impression or signe of peace, which is done with bringing both hands ouer the face. Every Basurman is bound to resort to these their Liturgies, at his Parishionall Meschit, except hee haue some lawfull impediment: and if not at all of them, yet at least at one to be well washed, for which purpose they haue innumerable Baths in Turkie fairely built; nor may any enter into the Temple, especially in the morning, but first well washed in the Bath, as is said before: and if hee keepeth him not clean the rest of the day, that washing will serue: but [a] if he haue committed any carnall sinne, or be any way soyled, or haue eaten any vncleane thing, then in some secret place he washeth his hands and armes to the elbow, his hinder parts [b] and priuities; and this sufficeth without going to Bath, except he be otherwise polluted. For defect hercin they haue inquisitions, and appointed penalties; respect or pardon being giuen to none that faile, especially on Friday, and in their Lent: Such a one is carried about the Towne with a board fastned to his necke, all be-hanged with Foxe-tayles, besides a penalticacording to his state in money; and he that will not thus order himselfe, shall not be allowed their burtall rites. After they are thus washed, they put off their shoots in imitation of *Moses*, and then enter into the Meschita, where the floore is couered with Mats or Carpets, nor is any other thing seene but white walls, and great store of burning Lamps, and in golden Arabike letters those [c] words before mentioned.

There is a Pulpit, on which the Choza or Focqui ascendeth, and the first thing he doth is to stretch out his hands at large, and then joyning them together, he kneeleth and kisseth the ground: then he lifteth vp his head, and stopping his eares with his hands, standing a good space, as it were [d] distracted or rauished in his prayers, after lifting vp his hands, hee againe kisseth the ground so many times, as the houre of prayer according to that former rule, requireth; and then lifting vp himselfe againe, he stretcheth out his hands againe, so standing about a quarter of an houre, and againe kneeling with his mouth to the ground, so continueth mouing it euery way about a *Pater noster* while, and then lifting vp his head, and setting his hands to his eares, falls to his praying another quarter of an houre, and then beneseth the people to depart. There is no noyse he rd [e] as if there had beene nothing within. Not so religious is their course (and yet that religion admits it) which *Martin Breidenbach* reporteth to be practised by them in a Moschee on Mount Sinai, where *Moses* receiued the Law; for the Saracens vse to get therein Prophets, thinking the issue there gotten is holy, and full of the Propheticall spirit.

Menauino thus describeth their Rites. After their mysticall washing (as before) they goe with a sober pace to the Meschit (not like one which runneth away) and if he happen to breake winde by the way, his former washing is vnsufficient, and hee must returne to renue it. Being assembled in the Meschit, they all turne their faces [f] Southwards, and the Meizin or Muetden, Clerke, Sexton, Priest, Bell-ringer, or Bell rather) standeth vp and readeth that Psalme, which before hee had cried to them in the steeple, and euery one standeth vp, holding his hands fastned to his waste, and bow their heads to their seeie with great reuerence, and without stirring. Then ariseth another Priest of another order called *Imam*, and readeth a Psalme aloud, the Meizin as his Clerke answering, which being ended they fall on the ground, and say, *Saban alla, Saban alla, Saban alla*, that is, God haue mercie on vs most wretched sinners, abiding prostrate till the Priest *Imam* singeth againe his Psalme, and then they rise. And this they doe foure or fiue times, according to the order of their seruice. After this they all kneele and prostrate themselues on the ground, the Meizin obseruing a long Ceremonie, in which with a loud voyce hee prayeth God to inspire the Christians, Iewes, Greekes, and generally all Infidels to turne to their Law. This being said, euery man lifteth his hand to heauen, crying aloud, *Amin, Amin*: and then they touch their eyes to wipe them with their hands, (which is, as crossing among the Papists, a blessing of themselues) bringing their hands ouer their face, and so they depart. In the English Treatise of the Turkish Policie these things are related, with some other Ceremonies; as that they say together with the Priest the first *Azoara* or Chapter of the Alcoran, &c. *Bartholomaus* [g] *Georgiuitz* saith, that onely the chiefe sort are bound to assemble to the daily deuotions, which they obserue fiue times a day; others, which cannot spare the times, are not tyed. On their Sabbaths it is otherwise.

a *Semtemcasse.*

b *Menauino* saith, that after the secret washing of their parts, &c. They come forth and wash their hands, face, and the rest, each three times, obseruing equally that vnequall number, and saying the Psalm *Elcsche Motte: hi assso*, and after, another, *La illaghi Cirasion.*

c *La illah, illa lah Mahomet irresul alah tanre hir paganber hach.*

d *Quasi in abstratto in oratione.*

e Their deuotion, silence, honestie, and order is such, saith *Septemcasse*, that I cannot but admire comparing it with the contrarie in the Churches of Christians.

f They pray towards Mecca, as the Iewes towards Ierusalem.

g *Bar. Georgiuitz, Nobili & gli obiosi.*

§. IIII.

Of their Sabbaths, and of their Lent and Easter.

THE women enter not their Mesquitas, but on Fridayes at nine a clocke, or at Easter, and then they are in a Gallery or Terasse apart, where they may see and not bee seene, and this is not common to all, but the wiues and mothers of the chiefe of the place. And as we haue said of the Priest, so it is to be vnderstood, that all the men and women there doe the same without failing in any point. They suffer not [e] a Christian to enter therein; and yet will they enter into the Churches of the Christians to heare the Church-musicke. The women abide in their Churches from nine of the clocke to midnight, continually praying with certaine motions and strange cries, continuing so long in this act, that they fall vpon the ground as in a swoune through wearinesse: and if any feele her selfe at that time to bee with childe, the Turkes hold that they are conceiued by the holy Ghost, and presently vow that childe to God, and call such *Nefses Ogli*, that is, sonnes of the holy Ghost. And on Friday at nine or ten of the clocke, the Priest vseth to preach to the people: and these their discourses last aboue two houres. That which is said is not verie manifest; yet they say, that he preacheth the miracles of *Mahomet*, sometime exalting their faith, sometime commending obedience, and sometime rehearsing fabulous tales to terrifie the bad, as that such mens soules are carried of certaine Camels (there being some sixe thousand flying about in the ayre for this purpose) into the Sepulchres of wicked Christians, and that the good Christians are put in their emptie Sepulchres, inueighing against the blasphemers of *Mahomet*, Christ and the Saints, exhorting to Almes, rehearsing their commandements of the law. And if they preach scandalous doctrine, the Mufti and the Cadilescher deprive them, and correct them as Heretikes; yea, some of them, for preferring Christ before *Mahomet*, are put to death; of which one *Ibraim Schec* a Priest of Constantinople (reported to haue wrought miracles amongst the Turkes in the dayes of *Solman*) was stoned to death, his head cut off, and his bodie burned; & of his Disciples some were beheaded, others thrust into the Gallies, for preferring Christ, and denying *Mahomet*. And were it not for the terrour of the sword, there would be more innouations of religion; and some haue perswaded the Grand Signior, not to suffer the Alcoran to bee so common to be read, and interpreted of euerie one; guiltie of the absurdities therein contained. But to returne. After this preaching ended, two young Clerkes goe vp to him, and sing certaine prayers, which ended, the Priest againe beginneth to sing with the people in a base voyce, with wrigling euery way for the space of halfe an houre, saying nothing but *Lailla, illellah*, that is, there is but one God. And these Ceremonies are done onely on their Lenten Fridayes. Their Lent is one Moone or Moneth in the yeere, which, if this yeere it be *July*, the next it shall bee *August*, and so in order: that in twelue yeeres they haue fasted all times of the yeere, making no other difference of meates, then at other times, but eating onely in the night. They prepare [d] themselues by diminishing their fare (not as the Christians at Shrouetide) that they may the better endure it: for on the day, in which they fast, they will not so much as taste a cup of water, or wash their mouthes therewith, till the Starres appeare: And eight or ten dayes after it beginneth, some Officers ride about the towne, crying; Such a day beginneth the Fast, prepare yee, prepare yee; and when it is begun, the Cadi and Subassi, if they finde any shops open, or any body caring in the day, set him on an Asse backwards, with the tayle in his hand, as Adulterers are punished: and to drinke wine at this time, is death. Neither will they suffer Iewes or Christians to scandalize their Turkes this way. And when their Lent is neere the end, they goe all to the Baths and plucke off all their haires, but of the head and beard, with an ointment for that purpose: they colour their nayles red, with an enduring colour, called *Chiua*, with which they dye also the tayles and feet of their horses; and the women their hands, feet, and priuie parts. This they doe in honour of their solemnitie, which lasteth three daies with great feasting, in which nothing else but meates and drinkes may be sold. They goe to the Sepulchres of the dead there to eate, full of gladnesse, and salute each other, saying: *Bairam glutiotz ang*, that is, God giue you a good Feast: and if they meete with a Iew or a Christian, woe vnto them. On the first day of their Bairam, the Sultan rideth to S. *Sophia* with all pompe: and then did we see (saith Master *Sandys*) a fight full of horror, many mourne with age, yet dead before death, and reuolting from their Christianitie, therefore throwing away their bonets, and lifting vp their fore fingers, to which the Tyrant bowed himselfe, as glorying in such conuersions. The Turks keepe [e] another Easter, especially in Mecca, more solemne to the Tartars, Moores, and Arabians, then to the Turkes, except the Pilgrims, which resort thither.

[e] Some say they are now lesse curious in this point.

[d] *Knol. Tur. Hist. p. 777.*

[e] This second Easter is called *Gouccharam.*

§. V.

§. V:

Of the Turkish Circumcision.

THE Turkes say they are [d] circumcised, because they are the sonnes of *Ismael*, and because they may be cleane when they goe to their Temples, no filth lying hid vnder the skinne. At seuen or eight yeeres of age, or later, this Ceremonie is performed. The first thing they doe, is, to inuite many thither, both Turkes, Iewes, and Christians, besides the friends and kindred, to make the greater gaine, euery one giuing somewhat according to his abilitie. When the day is come, they which are inuited mount on horse-backe, for else it is [e] no solemnitie, and goe to the house of the childe, who being mounted on a faire horse richly clothed, with a great Tulipant on his head is carryed to Church, with a long speare borne before him, hauing a torch on the top worth a crown, more or lesse, according to the state of the partie, adorned with roses and garlands, which with the speate is left a gift to the Church, the fees of the Priest: all the way they sound on instruments: after the sonne follow weth the father, the kindred, and the rest of the friends, that sometimes there are a hundred horse; at Church they alight, and accompany the childe to the Priest, which wayteth for them. Here one of the friends sitteth downe, and on his lap the child is set presently another pulleth off his shooes, another holdeth his hands, and others his feet, and many hold him in talke with words, and these are the Gossips. The Priest seeing all things readie, taketh the end of the skinne of his yard, and draweth it out, and nipperh it with siluer Pinsers, so to mortifie it, and cut it off with lesse paine: then making him beleeue he will deserre it: till the next day, he ariseth, the other holding him fast; and after, as if he had forgôt somewhat to be done about it, with fizzers, which he holdeth closely in his hand, suddenly cutteth it off, and another layeth thereon a certaine powlder to ease the paine, and in sue and twentie dayes they looke to the curing of it, laying on it sale, and marmalade of Quinces, and thence forwards he is called a *Musulman*. But his name is not then giuen him, but at his birth, and that according to their qualitie. *Bellonius* writes that they must answete the Circumciser to certaine questions (somewhat like it seemes to that, which in the Baptisme of elder persons is performed by themselues, of younger by their Godfathers) and therefore they are so old before they bee circumcised. Hee also affirmeth, that it is neuer done in the Mesbit (wherein none vncircumcised may enter) but in the house. The name *Musulman*, *Musliman*, or *Muslim*, signifies an Orthodoxe Mahometan, as Christian or Catholike with vs: *Verus Turca*, saith *Bellonius*, *Salutatus*, or *sane fidei homo*, after *Cantacuzenus*.

After the childe is loosed (who to shew himselfe of courage smileth, and lifting vp his greatest finger saith those former words of their profession) and is againe mounted, all the company, after a little prayer and offering at the Church, with like pompe conueigh him home, where is great feasting prouision; some feast it three dayes together.

Amurath circumcised his sonne *Mahomet* at sixteene yeeres old. Vnto which solemnitie many Christian Princes were solemnly inuited, who sent thither their Ambassadors with Presents, who had there their scaffolds prepared for them, and furnished according to their states. The solemnitie lasted fortie dayes, and fortie nights, in the great Market-place of Constantinople. And to end these [f] solemnities, *Mahomet* the Prince was circumcised, not publikely, but in his Fathers chamber, by *Mechmet* one of the inferiour *Bassaes*, sometime the Emperour *Solyman*; Barber. And it is done of other Turkes also most commonly in the Fathers house, not in the Church.

The women-children, about the same age among other women, without other solemnity, say ouer those words, *La illah, &c.* and likewise the renegado-Iewes; but the Christian renegadoes are carried about the streets of the Cities with much solemnity, and many gifts giuen them, besides freedome from tribute: many blinded by couetousnesse offer themselues to this circumcision. But if any for blasphemie against *Mahomet*, or iniurie to a Turke, be by force circumcised, they haue no such gifts: which punishment the Cadilescher (by the testimony of two accusing Turkes) inflicteth. And therefore to preuent the same, the Christians obtaine the Grand Seigniors safe conduct, that in cases of conscience they may not be iudged of any, except they were accused at the Court before the foute *Bassaes*, and the Cadilescher of Constantinople, and that by the witnesse of Priests onely, which had not in twelue yeeres drunke wine.

d Circumcision.

e No solemnitie without horses.

f *Knol. p. 957.*

g *Georgiuitz.*

CHAP. XII.

Of the Sepulchres, Funerall-Rites, and Opinions touching the Dead, among the Turkes.

NOw if you be wearie of viewing their Temples, and their Prayers, and other Ceremonies seeme tedious, I haue thought fit to present you with another sight, and to conclude with (that which is the conclusion of all flesh) a discourse of their Funerals. When [a] a Turke is sicke and like to die, his friends visite him, and putting him in minde of his sinnes, aduise him with a penitent heart to bewayle them. Then doe certaine of their Priests, or one of his kinsmen, read some Psalmes and Prayers. And if the pangs of death doe still continue, they read seuen times: and if hee shall die of that sicknesse, they thinke hee will die before they read seuen times: and if hee shall die of that sicknesse, they thinke hee will die before they read thrice read it: and if they see breath still remaine, they read another Psalme, called *Iasinnel Curanil Hécim*, to the end that the Deuill cause no impediment to his soule. When hee is dead, they lay him forth in the middest of the house vpon Carpets, and place him on his right side, with his face towards the South. Then doe assemble certaine Priests to bury him, [b] who bring with them a string of Beades (such as the Papists vse in mumbling and numbring their deuotions) being a thousand of them, of *lignum aloes*, and there with compasse the bodie, and then say to euery one *Sabahan alla*, that is, God haue mercie on him, and turne it about foure or fiue times. After this, their Priests (which are twentie or more) carrie the corps into the Garden, and lay it on a Table two hands breadth from the ground, taking away his shirt, and couering his shame with a new cloth made of fine bombast, with warme water and sope washing him from top to toe: Then do they take two sheets of bombast, in which they wrap the corps, wetting the same with Rose-water, perfumes, and odoriferous things, and laying him on the Beere, couer him quite ouer with his best garments, placing his Turbant on the head thereof, all bedecked with flowers. This done, the Priests begin their deuotions, and some of the company take vp the Beere, carrying the same with the head forwards to the Mosqit: the kinsmen follow, and the women remaine at home weeping, and make readie to eate for the Priests. When they come to the Church, they set him downe without doores, and goe and make an end of their seruice. After that, they carry him forth of the City to the buriall place: (for it is not lawfull to bury in their Cities.) Some prouide their Sepulchres in their life time, some haue them made after by their friends, either in their Gardens, or some solitarie place: They haue also common buriall places, as are our Church-yards, wherein are many Tombes of Marble, Brick, or other matter, according to the qualitie of the person.

If the deceased were a man of high condition, his horses are led with his corps, and his Tombe is adorned with many Epitaphs. And if he were a great Commander, those horses are sadled the contrary way, and richly furnished, hauing certaine things hanged at their noses, which cause them to neigh, as it were lamenting the losse of their Master. They carry also the truncheons of their Lances, with their Standards and Ensignes, trailing along the ground. There are planted also about their Sepulchres violets and other pleasant flowers. The common sort haue their Tombes of Marble engrauen with letters.

When they are come to the place, with those sheets they let the corps into the graue, couering him on euery side with boords, only on the face they lay a little earth, and there leaue him, and returne home, where they finde store of cheere, & there make a prayer for his soule. *Georgieuitz* c saith, that they make ouer the graue the forme of an Altar, lest the beasts should goe ouer it, and defile it. They also often repaire thither with teares, and set on the Monument flesh, bread, wheat, egs, milke, &c. which is done for the dead mans soule in almes to the poore, or to the birds, or ants, which they also account an act of mercy, no lesse meritorious than the other. The Priests haue fiue aspers a piece giuen them for their paines. And if the partie be poore, they gather money to pay the Priests, and to discharge the funerills. They weare d blacks eight dayes in token of mourning: and those that are of great account, three dayes; at which time the friends of the dead assemble, and vsing some words of mutuall consolation from thenceforth resume their wonted habite. Howbeit their kindred, specially of the female sexe, often repaire to the graues to lament there.

Bellonius in his *Obseruat.* e obseruedh, that they sew not the sheet at the head nor at the feet. The reason is their dreame of certaine Angels, sent in commission presently after the buriall, to examine the deceased partie, into whom they say God hath then put a new spirit. These Angels *Menanine* cals *Nechir* & *Remonchir*, who come with dreadful countenances and burning

a *Menuino l.* 2.19. Policie of the Turkish Empire.

b If be a woman which is dead, the women take this office and paines about her, to lay her forth, &c.

c *Lib.* 2.

d M. *Sandys* saith, the better sort mourn in white, and for blacke he neuer saw it worne by Turke.

e *Bellon. lib.* 3. *cap.* 5.

burning fire-brands, and examine him of his life, which if they finde wicked, they scourge him with fierie whips, if good, they become goodly Angels, and comfort him. *Bellonius* a little otherwise teileth, that those Angels (which hee calleth *Guanequir* and *Mongir*) come, the one with an yron hammer, the other with a hooke, which set the corps vpon his knees, and put a new soule into it; and then aske if he haue beleeued *Mahomet* and obserued his precepts, if hee haue done good workes, kept their Lent, paied his Tithes, giuen Almes. Of which, if hee can giue good account, they depart from him, and two other Angels come in their places, white as snow, and one of them puts his armes, in stead of a pillow vnder his head, the other sits at his feet, and defends him vntill the day of Iudgement. But if hee satisfie not the demands of those blacke Angels, hee wish the yron mallet strikes him at one blow there with nine fadome vnder the ground: and neither of them ceaseth, the one with his hammer, the other with his hooke, to torment the deceased partie vntill the day of Iudgement. For this cause the Turkes write vpon the dead carkasses the name *Croco*, and make their Sepulchres hollow, that they may haue roome to kneele, and some lay boords ouer, that no earth fall in. The feare hereof makes them in their morning praier to say, Lord God, from the questioning of the two Angels, the torment of the graue, and euill iourney, deliuer me, *Amin*. Yea, hence are the praiers which the Turkes, men and women, say at the graues of the dead, for deliuerie from these Angels.

Concerning the day of Iudgement, they [a] hold that there is an Angel standing in Heauen, named *Israphil*, holding alway a Trumpet in his hand prepared against Gods command, to sound the consummation of the World. For at the sound thereof, all Men and Angels shall die, for so they finde it written in their *Curaam*, which Bookes of high authoritie with them. The Turkish Doctors would dissent from that opinion of the Angels mortalitie, if this Booke would giue them leaue: for to contradict the authoritie thereof is punished with fire, or else their tongues are pulled out of their heads. They hold, that after this dismall sound shall bee a great Earthquake, which shall tumble the Mountaines and Rockes from their places, and grinde them to meale. After this, God will returne to make anew the light, and the Angels as before, and will cause to fall a pleasant raine, called *Rahemet sui*, that is, the raine of mercie: and so shall the earth remaine sortie dayes, although those dayes shall bee of a larger size then these. Many also hold, that from thenceforth there shall bee no darknesse of the night, as now, but that it shall be most cleere; neither shall there need any more sleepe for the sustentation of our bodies.

a *Bellonius*, l. 2. c. 20, 21, 22, 23.

After sortie dayes God will command *Israphil* to sound his Trumpet the second time, at which sound all the dead [b] shall bee raised againe by the will of God, the dead euen from *Abel* to the end of the world, throughout all the earth, hearing the sound thereof, and rising in manner as they were buried. Amongst them shall be seene diuers faces and countenances, some shining as the Sunne, many like the Moone, many as the Starres. Others shall bee obscure and darke, and others with hogges faces, with swolne tongues. Then shall euerie one crie *Nessi, Nessi*, that is, Woe is me wretch, who haue suffered my selfe to be ouercome with my filthy lusts. The Angels shall with their fingers point at the faces which shine, which are they that haue wrought good workes, and shall shew them to one another. The wicked shall haue enuy thereat. They say, that those with faces like hogs, are such as haue beene Vsurers; and those with the swolne tongues, Liers and Blasphemers. There shall be other trodden vnder foot, to wit, the proud persons of this world. God, say they, will then demaud account of the Kings, Princes, Emperors, and Tyrants, which vse oppression and violence. [c] Then shal God diuide this raised company into seuentie parts, all which shall be examined; presenting their sins before their eyes, and all that they haue in this world done well or ill: whereto hee shall need no testimony; euerie member bearing witnesse against it selfe of the deeds, yea, and very thoughts. There shall be also *Michael* the Angel, holding in his hand the ballance of diuine Iustice, and shal weigh soules, and distinguish the good from the bad. There shal be *Moses* with his Standard, vnder which shall all the obseruers of his law bee assembled. Neere to him shall be Iesus Christ, the Sonne of the Virgin *Mary*, with another great Standard, and all his Christians, the obseruers of his Faith. On the other side shall be *Mahomet*, with his Standard and faithfull Mahumetans: they which haue done good shall be all gathered vnder he said Standards, where they shall haue a pleasant shaddow; the rest shall be extremely scorched by the heat of the Sun, according to the measure of their sinnes. Thus shall both parts abide, till God shall pronounce his eternall sentence. When that doome is pronounced, the Angels shall stand diuided into squadrons, all like adorned, the Seraphins on one side, the Cherubins on the other: of the which one part shal sound instruments of diuers sorts, & other shall sing hymnes: and many shall stand at the gates of Paradise, singing and gratulating the blessed soules which haue obserued the diuine Precepts; Christians, Iewes, Turkes, and Moores, being all of equall beautie and beatitude, if they haue done well. But sinners shall be

b The resurrection.

c The iudgement.

Paradise.

knowne asundet. They affirme also, that God will giue those soules of Paradise a large space in heauen for their euerlasting habitation, goodly and shining. They shall also haue *Barachi*, Sun-beames, on which they may tide and take their view round about Paradise, of the precious delights therein. There shall they haue pleasant fruits, and if they eate one apple, two shall grow in the roome; and to quench their thirst, they shall haue riuets cleere as Crystall, sweet as Sugar, by drinking of which their sight and vnderstanding shall increase in such sort, that they shall see from one Pole to the other. The meates which they eate, shall consume by a subtile kinde of sweat. Further they say, they shall haue their women called *Vri*, that is, shining, which shall euerie day be Virgins, with which they shall continue for euer. Neither shall there be any danger of olde age; the men alway being as of thirtie yeeres old, the women of fifteen or twentie. Those three Standard-beateis shall be the principall, each of them having a peculiar part of Paradise assigned him for his dominion.

Those which for their bad deeds shall be condemned to hell, shall be all knowne by proper names, which they shall beare in their fore-heads; and they shall beare the number and greatnesse of their sinnes on their shoulders. Thus shall they bee led between two Mountaines where Hell is situate, at the mouth whereof is a most venemous Serpent: and from one Mountaine to another is a Bridge thirtie miles long, which is so made, that they ascend on the first part, the other part is plaine, the last descendeth. This Bridge (say they) is made of thin yron and sharpe: (they call it *Serat Cuplisi*, that is, the Bridge of Iustice.) Vpon this shall passe the sinners with the heauie weight of their sinnes vpon their shoulders: and they which haue not beene altogether euill shall not fall into Hell, but into Purgatorie: but the other shall suddenly bee plunged into the bottome of Hell, where they shall burne, more or lesse, according to the quantitie of the fire of their sins, which they haue carried out of this world: and after the burning they turne to bee refreshed, and presently againe to the fire. In the midst of Hell they say is a tree full of fruit, euerie Apple being like to the head of a Deuill; which growth greene in the midst of all those flames, called *Zoaccum Agacci*, or the tree of Bitternesse, and the soules that shall eate thereof, thinking to refresh themselues, shall so finde them, and by them and their paines in Hell, they shall grow madde. And the Deuils shall bind them with chaines of fire, and shall drage them vp and downe through Hell. Those soules which sometime shall name God in their aide, they say, after many yeeres, shall goe into Paradise; and none shall remaine in Hell, but such as despaire of their saluation and Gods mercie. Thus farre *Menauino*. To this agreeth *Bellonius*, and addeth, that in the day of Iudgement, they beleeue a resurrection of the Birds and Beasts: and that the Rams which they kill at their Easter, shall goe into Paradise; and therefore, though one would seeue, they kill many. For the Booke of *Zuna* saith, that those Rams shall pray for their Sacrifices in the day of Iudgement. It telleth that the Starres are hanged in the ayre by golden chaines, to watch lest the Deuils should learne the secrets of Paradise, and reueale them to Sooth-sayers. Also, that the Ramme which *Abraham* offered in stead of his sonne, was a blacke one, which had been nourished forte yeeres in Paradise; that *Mahomet* shall be tutned at the end of the world into a Ramme; and the Turkes into Fleas; whom hee shall cattie sticking to him, out of Hell into Paradise, and there shake them off, where they shall againe receiue the formes of Turkes: That hee shall wash them with the water of that Fountaine in Paradise, to purge the blacknesse which they got by the scorching of Hell, from whence hee will deliuer all good Turkes.

Hell. Mr Sestiandis saith, he was told by a Sicilian denout Renegado, that the burning Globe of the sunne, was the continent of the damned.

Bellon. obseru. l.4.3.cap. 6. Resurrection of Rumisses.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Religious Votaries amongst the Turkes, and of their Saints, Sects, Miracles, and Hypocriticall holinesse.

TO proceed vnto the differences of opinions amongst the Tutks: *Septemcestrensis* (who liued vetie many yeeres amongst them) saith, that although they consent against Christ, yet doe they much dissent among themselues, wrestling the *Alcoran* to their purposes, and scarcely one of a hundreth agreeing with his fellow about *Mahomet* and their Law. And besides their differences in Ceremonies, there are, saith he, foure sects, differing in maine grounds of Religion; which would not be appeased without bloud, if they feared not the higher power, and were not thereby kept in awe. One of these sects is that of the Priests, holding that none can be saued, but by the Law of *Mahomet*. The second, of their religious *Dermschler*, reputed

reputed the Successors of the Saints, the friends of GOD and *Mahomet*, who are of opinion, that the Law profiteth nothing, but the grace of GOD: and these ground their opinions on miraculous illusions, of which he reporteth one in the time of *Amurath* the second, who examining this contention betwixt these Seculars and Regulars, and being purposed to giue sentence in the behalfe of the Priests, and against the religious, one of these *Dermschelers* [a] appearing to him in a Vision, (others also ground Faith on Visions) and deliuering him out of a great danger, altered his minde: for going to stoole in the night, the boords gaue way, and he fell in, staying on a crosse Timber, where this religious man in their wonted habite appeared to him, and bid him now vse the helpe of his Priests for his deliuerance. This after so affected the King, that himselfe became a religious man, till the necessitie of State-affaires compelled him to resume his gouernment. (Hee that listeth may compare with this, *Dunsians* deuices for his Regulars:) The third he calleth *Cassilar* speculatiue men; which Sect is founded on Tradition, holding that they are saued by Merit, without Law or Grace. These are verie earnest in praiers, neuer ceasing; and meeting in the night, and sitting in a circle, they begin to say, *Layla illalach*, with shaking their heads till they fall downe senselesse: these three sorts are manifest to the people, and as it were of equall esteeme with them. The fourth are called *Horse*, that is, Heretikes, holding, that euerie man is saued in his owne Law, and all Lawes to be a like good to the obseruers; these are burned if they be taken.

a Visions and Apparition among the Turkes as well as among the Papists.

Strange it is, that he reporteth of the miraculous workes of some of them, that they may seeme (as he saith) incarnate Deuils: Some going naked, with their priuities onely hidden, and some of these are impassible, besides the violence of Winter and Summer, enduring, like stones, the branding with fire, or wounding with sword: some seldome eate or drinke, and some not at all: others, but from hand to mouth: some are perpetually silent, hauing no conuersation with men, of which he saith he saw one; and some haue their supernaturall traunces or rauishments: some dwell amongst men, some by themselues apart, and some in Wildernesse: some keepe hospitalitie in Cities, at least to harbour men, if they haue not food for them: some carrying about water in leather bagges, giuing it to all, and demanding nothing for the same, except any voluntarily gratifie them. Some inhabite at the Sepulchers of the Saints, keeping the same, and liuing on the vowes and offerings of the people, not obseruing the washings and ceremonies of the Law. As concerning those Water-carriers, *Nicholas Nicholai* saith, that he hath seene in a morning at Constantinople fiftie of those *Sacquas* (so he calleth them) in a company, all furnished with their Scrips of leather, full of Cisterne or Fountaine-water hanging on their side, with cups of fine Corinthian Latten, gilded and damaskined, bearing in the same hand a Looking-glasse, which they hold before their eyes of them whom they giue to drinke, admonishing them to thinke on death: and if any giue them any thing, they out of a Viol cast on their faces sweet smelling water. Hee telleth of some that would seeme to liue a solitarie life amongst beasts, but indeed liue in shops in most popular Cities, the walls whereof are couered with skins of diuers beasts, and vpon the hornes thereof they hang Tallow Candles. In the midst of this their sacred shop standeth a stoole couered with a greene cloth, and vpon the same a great Latten Candle-sticke without any Candle. Moreouer, they haue painted a Cimitterre hung in the middest, in memorie of *Haly*, who forsooth with his sword cut the Rockes in sunder: and they breed vp with them beasts, as Bulls, Beares, Harts, Rauens, Eagles; so that in stead of their liuing with beasts, beasts liue with them. And if sufficient be not brought to their shops, they with one of these beasts in their hand gõe about the streets begging.

Miracles as well with the Turkes as Papists.

Mock-cremites

In the Armie of the Turkes that assaulted Malta, in the yeere 1565. were [b] thirteene thousand of a certaine kinde of men amongst the Turks, which liue of the reuenues of the Church, who had at Constantinople [c] vowed their liues for their superstition. *Antonio Pigafetta* [d] reporteth, that as the Emperours Ambassadors were conueyed from the presence of the Great Turke to their lodging, by the Ianizaries and their Aga, there were amongst them certaine Religious men, called *Haagi*, which vse to follow the Ianizaries, who continually turning about, and in their going singing, or rather howling certaine Psalmes or Prayers for their great Sultans welfare, made them wonder that they fell not downe for giddinesse. And this my friend Master *Simons* hath seene them doe, taking one another by the hand in a ring; and so continuing their whirle-gigg-deuotions with continuall turnings (fitly agreeing to so giddie and brain-sicke a Religion) till with the great applause of Turkes, and admiration of others, sweat, and a long protracted wearinesse makes an end of this dancing their round.

b *Knol. p. 794.*
c Turkish *Dicij.*
d *Knol. p. 834.*

But amongst all their orders of Religion, *Nicholas Nicholai*, [e] and before him *Menauino*, reckon foure which are most common amongst them, the *Giamailer*, the *Calender*, the *Dermisi*, and the *Torlachi*.

e *N.N.l.3.c.15 & Infilaph. Rhoberius.*

The *Giamailer*, are for the most part faire young men, of rich houses, which giue themselues

to trauell through diuers Regions, at other mens charges, vnder colour of Religion, carrying with them none other apparell then a little Cassocke of purple colour, girt with a girdle of silke and gold; vpon the ends whereof hang certaine Cymbals of Siluer, mixt with some other cleere-sounding metall: and they doe ordinarily weare sixe or seuen of these about their girdles, and vnder their knees. In stead of a cloake, they are couered with the skinne of a Lyon or Leopard, being whole and in his naturall haire, which they make fast vpon their breast, by the two former legges. All the rest of their bodies are bare; sauing that they weare great Rings on their eares, and a kinde of Sandalls on their feet; their haire groweth long like womens disheueled ouer their shoulders. They beare in one of their hands a Booke, written in the Persian language, full of amorous Sonnets. And thus with their Voyces and Cymbals, they make pleasant Musicke, especially if they meet some faire stripling, whom they fet in the midst of them, and incompasse with their Morice-musicke. These are the *Pilgrimes of Loue*; and vnder pretext of Religion, doe draw vnto them the hearts of women and youtlings, and are called the men of the *Religion of Loue*, vnto which order of Religion youth is prone more then enough. The partakers of their Musicke ordinarily impart to them of their Coyne.

f Ioh. Ant. The *Calender* f is of a contrarie profession to the former, glorying of abstinence and chastitie. They haue for their dwelling certaine little Churches, which they call *Techie*, ouer the gates whereof they doe write these or the like words, (*Qada normas dil ersin cuseunge al, tachecciur*: that is, They which will enter into their Religion, must doe workes like theirs, and remaine in their Virginitie. These Calenders are clothed with a little short coat without sleeues, after the fashion of Haire-cloth, made of Woolland Horse-haire, and doe not let their haire grow long, but cut the same, and couer their heads with felt Hats, like the Priests of Grecia, about which hang certaine strings, about the breadth of an hand, made of Horse haire: in their eares, and about their neckes and armes they weare great rings of Iron. They pierce their skinne vnder their priuy member, thrusting thorow the same a ring of an indifferent bignesse and weight, to barre them from venerie, if they were thereunto otherwise willing. They also goe reading of certaine Songs, made by one of their Order, called *Nerzami*, the first Saint and Martyr, after their reckoning, of their Religion, who for certaine words spoken against the Law of *Mahomet*, was in *Axamia* stridquicke. *Menauino* g saith, he had read to one of his writing agreeing with the Christian Faith in many points. Some h say, he was martyred for confessing Christ.

g Elk. 1. c. 10. In Policie of the Turkish Empire.

The *Dernis* goe bare-headed, and cause their head and beard to be cut with a razor, and all the hairie parts of their bodie: and burne also their Temples with a hot Iron, or an old piece of cloth burnt; hauing their eares pierced, wherein they doe weare certaine great rings of Iasper. All their clothes are two sherpes or goat skins, the haire thereof being dried in the Sunne, one before, and the other behinde, embracing the bodie in forme of a girdle, otherwise naked Winter and Summer. They dwell without the Cities, in Suburbs and Villages. Thus vnder the colour of Religion they trouble vp and downe, and make no conscience to rob, kill, and murther (if they finde themselues the stronger, with a small Hatchet which they beare vnder their girdle) all men of whatsoeuer Law or Nation. They are fornicators, and most detestable in that most detestable sinne of Sodomie. For shew of holinesse they cate of a certaine herb i called *Mastach*, the violent operation whereof maketh them to become madde, so as through a certaine furie, they with a certaine knife or razor, doe cut their necks, stomacks and thighes, vntill they be full of most horrible wounds; which to heale, they lay vpon them a certaine herbe, letting it lie vpon their hurt, vntill it be altogether consumed into ashes, suffering in the meane time extreme paine with marueilous patience. Thus do they in imitate their Prophet *Mahomet*, who, through abstinence in his den, fell into such a furie (say they) that hee would haue throwne himselfe from the top of it. And therefore fooles and madde men are in great reuerence; yea, they account such for Saints: and if such madde men strike or rob them, they take it in good part, and say they shall haue good lucke after it. They erect stately Monuments ouer such mad mens graues, as at Aleppo, one k *Sheh Beubac* (who being mad, went alwayes naked) being dead, they built a house ouer his grave, where to this day (saith our Author) there are Lampes burning day and night; and many of these Dariuises there remained, to locke to his Sepulchre, and to receiue the offerings of such as come, as many do euery weeke out of Aleppo. If any be sicke or in danger, they vow to offer money or other things to *Sheh Beubac* if they recouer.

h This seemes to be the same herbe which *Mandeuille* saith *Agnel.*

k *Eldiosph ep.* Iesus saite esteemed below vnto God: if such be Christians they circumcise them by force, and esteeme them Saints, saying, God hath made him a fool, thus mocked and by their meanes.

The same account they make of one *Sheh Mahammet* a mad man, yet liuing in Aleppo, going naked with a spit on his shoulder. Men and women will come and kisse his hard, or some other part of his body, and aske him counsell, for they hold that mad mens soules are in heauen talking with GOD, and that he reuealeth secrets to them. And euen the Bassaes themselues will kisse and consult with this Oracle. Hard I deeme it to say whether is the mad man.

man. In a late victorie against the Christians, they affirme that this *Sheh Mahommet* was seene in the field many thousand miles distant, fighting against their enemies, whom by his helpe they ouercame.

But to returne to our Dariuises, this our Author saith, that oftentimes great Bassaes, in displeasure with the Emperor, will retire themselues into this Order, as the Hospital and Sanctuarie of their diseased and dangerous state. Their witnesse is of better account then any other mans, although he were an *Emir*, or of the kindred of *Mahomet*. They liue of Almes, as the other Religious doe, which they begge in the name of *Haly*. They haue [l] in Natolia a Sepulchre of a Saint called by them *Scidibattal*, who (say they) conquered the most part of Turkie, and about the place of the Sepulchre is an habitation and couent, where aboue fiue hundred of these Deruises dwell: and there once in the yeere they keepe a generall assembly, in which their Superiour (whom they call [m] *Assambaba*) a present and President; their Counsell or Chapter consisting (saith *Menauinus*) of aboue eight thousand of their Order. One of these Deruises [n] drawing neere vnto *Baiazet* the second, as if he would haue received an Almes of him, desperately assailed him with a short Scimitar, which he closelly hid vnder his hypocriticall habite. But *Baiazet* by the starting of his horse (afraid of this Hobgoblin) auoided the deadly blow, but not vnwounded: neither had he so escaped, had not *Iskender* Bassa with his Horsmans Mace presently struck downe the desperate villaine, as he was redoubling his blow, who was forthwith rent in pieces by the Souldiers. *Baiazet* thereupon proscribed all them of that superstitious Order, and banished them out of his Empire. The like (as *Septemcastrensis* saith) they had attempted against *Mahomet* his father in his youth, while *Amurath* was yet liuing. And in our daies *Mehemet* or *Muhemet*, the great Visier Bassa, who swayed almost wholly and onely their mightie Empire (as appeareth in the Historie of that State) in the daies of *Solman*, *Selym*, and *Amurath*, and as Master *Harborne* relateth, was esteemed to possesse two and twentie millions of gold, was not assaulted only, but murthered by one of these Deruisses. For whereas it is a custome of the great men, that at ordinarie hours all their Chaplaines, or Priests, assemble themselues in the Diuano, there together mumbling their superstitions: and this Deruisse [f] ordinarily thither admitted, vpon an old grudge, for that *Mehemet* had before depriued him of a Souldiers place and pension, when the Visier sate there to giue publike audience, sitting right against him, after his *Muspsimus* finished, the Visier reaching vnto him his wonted Almes, he with a dagger closely before prouided, stabs him into the breast, and was therefore of *Mehemets* slaues with exquisite torments done to death. In their great Counsell before mentioned, there are young men clothed in white, which tell the most memorable obseruations in their trauells, which they present to the *Assambaba* in writing, subscribed with their names. On the Friday they vse after praier and eating the herbe [o] *Asseral*, to read the same with dances, and after their dance (which is about a huge fire, made of as much wood as an hundred beasts can carie) they cut the skin of their armes, legs, or breasts, engrauing some figure thereon, where to they after apply ashes and vine. In the doing hereof they vtter this speech: This I cut for the loue of such a woman. Vpon the last day of the Feast, they take leaue of their Gouernor, and depart in troupes like Souldiers with Banners and Drums; and so returne vnto their own Monasteries.

The Turkquis (by others called *Durmsturs*) cloath themselues with sheeps and goats skins like vnto the *Deruis*: aboue the same they wrap about them in manner of a cloake the skinne of a great Beare, with the haire, made fast vpon their stomacke with the legs: vpon their heads they weare a white Bonnet of Felt folded with small plaits, hauing the rest of their bodies altogether naked. They also burne their Temples as the former. A beastly generation. For they know not, nor will not learne to read, write, or doe any ciuill profitable act, but liue idlely vpon almes, roaguing thorow the Countrey alone, and in troupes thorow the Desarts, robbing such as they meet handsomely apparelled, causing them to goe as they doe, naked. They professe palmistry and fortune-telling, the people feeing and feeding them for such vanities. And sometimes they carry with them an old man, whom they worship as a *God*: lodging themselues neere the best house of the Towne where they come. And there this new *numen*, and *old impostor*, faining himselfe rauished in spirit, pronounceth graue words and spiritual commandements; at sundry times lifting vp his eyes to heauen, and after turning to those his disciples, willeth them to carry him from thence, for some imminent iudgement there to be executed, as is reuealed to him. They then pray him to auert that danger by his prayer, which he accordingly doth: which the people (deluded by their hypocrisies) reward with a large beneuolence, at which they after amongst themselues doe merrily scoffe. They eate also of the herbe *Matsatz*, and sleepe vpon the ground naked of clothes and shame, and commit also abominable Sodomitrie. And thus much of their misorderly orders of an irreligious Religion. He that will read more at large of them, let him read the Booke of the

Policie

l *Nic. Nichol.*

m That is, the Father of Fathers.

n *Kõ p. 463.*

f *Knol. Turk. Hist. p. 950.*

o *Asseral* is an herb, that maketh men merrie, as if they were drunken.

Policie of the Turkish Empire, which out of *Menauino* discourseth more largely of these things, and other the Turkish Rites.

p Cap. 15.

Septemcastrensis p telleth of certaine Saints of exceeding estimation for holinesse, whose Sepulchres are much frequented of deuout Votaries: as that of *Sedichasi* (which signifieth a holy Conquerour) in the confines oof Caramania. Another is called *Hatsehpertesch*, that is, The Pilgrims helpe. Another q *Asciik passa* who helpeth in loue-matters, and for children in barrennesse. Another *Van passa*, for concord: and *Scheych passa*, in trouble and affliction: and *Goi* or *Musehin*, or *Bartschin passa*, inuoked for their cattle: and *Chidrelles* for trauellers, to whom he sometime appeareth as a traueller; and any one that hath extraordinarily liued, is reputed a Saint after his death.

q *Asciik* is the Goddesse of loue with the *Georgians*.

They haue many whose names I remember not (saith hee) in like reuerence with them, as are the Apostles with vs. When they would seeke for things lost, they go to one Saint; when they are robbed, they goe to another; and for the knowledge of things secret, they repaire to a third. They haue their Martyrs, and Miracles, and Reliques. Thus they tell of certaine religious men condemned wrongfully, for suspition of treason, to the fire; which they entred without harme (as r those three companions of *Daniel*) and their shooes were hanged vp for a Monument. Their *Nephes ogli*, that is, soules or persons begotten of the holy Spirit (such is their fancie) without seed of man, they hold in such reputation, that they account themselues happy, which can doe them any good, yea that can touch them: and if their haires be laid vpon any, they say that their sicknesses are cured.

r Dan. 3. 27.

In this reputation of sanctitie, they haue a certaine old woman, which hauing a dog with her (in her pilgrimage to Mecca) readie to die for thirst, made water in her hand, and gaue it to the dog: which charitable act was so highly accepted, that a voyce was presently heard from heauen, saying, *This day thou shalt be in Paradise*. And at the same time shee was caught vp bodie and soule into heauen: and hereupon are they liberall to their dogs. If this crosse an opinion, which some Saracens hold, that women come not to Paradise, no marueil, seeing falsehood is commonly contrarie both to the *Truth*, and it selfe. He that would read the miraculous tales which they tell of their Saints, may haue recourse to that namelesse Author, which of his Countrey is called, and heere often cited by name, *Septemcastrensis*: who telleth s of his Master and his Mistris their deuotion and vowes to *Goi* and *Mortschin*, for preseruation of their cattell, sometimes miraculous (so reade is the Deuill with his fauing destruction, and destroying preseruation) yea hee saith, that the Deuill doth turne himselfe amongst them into *an Angell of light*, with such *effectuall illusions*, that there are seene, or (at least) beleeued amongst them, the dead raised to life, diseases of all sorts cured, secrets of the hearts disclosed; treasures, long before hidden in the ground, reuealed: and besides, such ostentation, and shew of dissembled holinesse, that they may seeme not to come short of the Fathers and Apostles in that behalfe: if *bodily exercise* were the triall of sanctitie.

s *Septemcast.* ca. 18.

Busbequius t tells, that they haue like conceit of one *Chederles*, amongst them, as some superstitious persons haue of St. *George*, and the Turkes affirme to bee the same: The *Dervis*, haue a great Temple dedicated in his honor at Theke Thioi, not farre from Amasia, the chiefe Citie of Cappadocia. The Country and both Legends agree, for the killing of the Dragon, deliuering the Virgin, &c. They say that hee trauelled many Countries, and at last came to a River, the waters whereof yeelded immortalitie to the drinker, and now cannot be seene. *Chederles* hereby freed from death, rides about euery where on his horse (which thence also dranke in immortalitie) and delighteth in battells, taking part with the best cause: and to make vp the tale, they say hee was one of the companions of *Alexander* u the Great; they affirme, that *Alexander* was *Salomons* chiefe Captaine, and *Job* his high Steward. In that Mosche or Temple at Theke Thioi is a fountaine of water, which they say, sprang vp of the striking of *Chederles* horse. Like Stories haue they of his horse-keeper, and nephew, whose Sepulchres they shew, where deuout Pilgrims obtaine many blessings. They shew for relikes the pieces of the shooes which *Chederles* his horse brake in that Dragon-fight, & vse the same in drinke against agues and head-aches. These places are full of Dragons and Vipers. Sultan *Murat Chan*, x or *Amurath* the second in a battell against the Christians, vsed this prayer, O righteous God, giue vs strength and victorie, O *Mahamet*, O *Mustapha* the top of glory, by abundance of miracles, by the abundance of *Gaberenlers*, which are friends to the Musulmans, and walke inuisible, by the abundance of the *Cheders*, grant vs victorie. In the time y of *Orchan*, or *Orchanes* the sonne of *Ottoman*, they say these Gaib-erenlers appeared on white horses in a battell against the Christians, and slew them. These (they say) are friends to the *Islams*, that is, Catholike, or right beleeuing Musulmans, and are diuine protectors of the Imania or Mahometan Law. Such tales you may read in the Spanish relations of the West Indies, as at the battell of Tausco, z where a strange horse-man discomfited the Indians, &c. And our inuocation of God and Saint *George*, is rather Turkish, then truely Christian: For God

t *Busbequius epist.* 1.

u *Alexander Mag.* was also one of their Saints.

x *Leuncla. hist. Musul. lib.* 14.

y *Leuncla. Hist. Mus. lib.* 4.

z Historie of the West Indies, *cap. de Cem.*

God alone [g] *is our strength, which teacheth our hands to fight, and our fingers to battell*: and *whom* [h] *have I in heauen but thee, and I haue desired none in earth wth thee?* As for *George* and *Cheederles*, I know them both alike in matter of Inuocation, saue that it is worse to abuse to impietie a Christian name then a Turkish: and King *Edward* the third seemed to inuoke *Edward* as much as *George*, *Ha Saint Edward*, *Ha Saint George* (saith *Thomas Walsingham*.) But that of *George* is rather an Embleme of euery Christian, as nor onely the Heroique Muse of our *Spencer*, [i] in Poetical fiction, but the Diuiner of great Diuines, [k] in their iudiciall censure true manifested. It seemeth that the *Cheederles* and *Gaib-erenders* are diuers: and perhaps that Martiall Nation in conquest of the Christians of those parts, would soone reconcile themselues to that Martiall Saint, and drinke in those further deuotions which his horse pissed. Such Emblemes were those of *Christopher*, *Catherine*, *George*, which the Papists inuocate as Saints; an errour proceeding from those pictures (as it seemeth) in Churches, according to that of the Prophet, [l] *The stocke is a doctrine of vanitie*, and [m] *the image is a teacher of lies*. The vnder posteritie in that mist of Antichrist, and *smoke from the bottomlesse pit*, not being able to discerne an Embleme and Historie asunder, haue made Saint *George* the *Mars* [n] of the Christians, *quem nostra iuuentus pro Mauorte colit. Bellarmine* [o] struggleth much, rather then hee will lose his Saint, and yet confesseth the Historie Apocryphall, *Baronius* [p] his fellow Cardinall, but beyond in truth, acknowledgeth it an Image of a Symbole, rather then of a Historie, which *Iacobus de Voragine* without good authoritie, in his Golden Legend maketh historicall. He saith the Virgin representeth some Prouince, which imploreth the Martyrs helpe against the Deuill. But *Hyperius* [q] and *Vilaucentius Possenni* interpret it more fitly, to signifie the Church assaulted by the Diuell, protected by the Christian Magistrate: in which respect our *Defender of the Faith*, may iustly be termed the Patron of that renowned Order, which hath now learned their *George* to be Symbolicall, not a Cappadocian, and (as Princes, of [r] *Gods husbandrie*, which gaue name to Saint *George*) to fight against the Dragon, and the beast with *hornes like the Lambe, but speaking like the Dragon*. As for the Popish *George*, *Baronius* also hath another originall from the Arrians, worshipped of them for a Martyr. But if any would bee further acquainted with this Knightly Saint, let him resort to Doctor *Raiuolds* [s] his larger Discourse touching these Romish Idolatries: which howsoeuer *Serarius* seekes to confute, mustering a huge [t] Armie of eight and twentie Arguments to fight for this fighting Saint: Yet doe none of these *Georgian* Souldiers strike one stroke to proue that their Legendary Martyr, not so much as conclude his Horse tayle, or Dragons teeth, or his owne sword or speare: nor nor shew whether *This George thus related, pointed, worshipped*, bee the childe of Historie or Mysterie; heire of the Painter, Poet, or Historian; Symbolicall or Historicall. As for *George*, *Christopher*, *Catherine*, *Hippolitus*; that some Saints haue beene called by these names, wee much deny not, care not: if these thus deliuered in their Stories, bee but monsters, or mysteries.

g *Psal.* 142. 24
h *Psal.* 73. 25.
i *Spenser.* Red Crosse Knight in the Fa. Q.
k *Reinold de Rom. Eccles. Idolat. lib.* 1 *cap.* 5.
l *Ierem.* 10. 8.
m *Habac.* 2. 18.
n *Bap. Mant. Fast. lib.* 4.
o *Bel. de Eccles. Tri. lib.* 1. 20.
p *Baron. Notat. in Martyr. o'oq. Rom. Apr.* 23.
q *Hyp. de tat. fuel. Tit o'ig. Lib.* 3. *cap.* 7.
r Θεῦ γεωργοί. 1. *Cor.* 3.
s *Rain. de Idol. R. E.*
t *Serar. Litanenticus l.* 2. *c.* 20.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of their Priests and Hierarchie: with a digression touching the Hierarchie and Miserie of Christians subiect to the Turke.

AFter the discourse of their Regulars (which in estimation of deuotion haue with the Turkes, and therefore in this Historie, the first place) their Secular Priests follow to be considered. These are of differing degrees, which *Menauino* [a] thus reckoneth: first, the *Cadilescher*, vndet which the *Mofti* or *Mufti*; the third, the *Cadi*; and after these (in subordinate orders) the *Modecii*, *Antippi*, *Imam*, *Meizani*, and besides these the *Sophi*. A certaine Ragusian, [b] in an Oration before *Maximilian* the Emperour doth not much disagree: but for *Cadilescher*, he calleth the first *Pescherobadi* whereof (hee saith) there are two, one in Romania, the other in Natolia, chiefe Iudges of the Armie, hauing power to reuerse the sentence of the Emperour, if it be against the law of *Mahomet*. A second Magistrate (saith hee) is called *Muchti*, the chiefe Interpreter of the law, from whose sentence is no appeale.

Nic. Nicolai [c] saith the same of their two Cadileschers, and that they are chosen out of their most learned Doctors of their Law, and alway follow the Courr, and with the consent of the Bassiaes, constitute and depose the Cadi; hauing for their annuall stipend seuen thousand of eight thousand duckets, besides their ordinary gaines. They haue teune Secretaries kept at the Grand Seignioris charge, and two Mooloi bassis, which are busied about the horses:

a *Lib.* 2. *cap.* 34.
b *Edit. Aicarom Latin.*
c *Peregrination. lib.* 3. *c.* 1. 2.

horses: they haue also two hundred or three hundred slaues. They vse few words, but such as are of their Law and Religion altogether, with very much shew of grauitie. *Arinabene* [d] (in his Preamble to the Italian Alcoran) maketh Cadileschcher [e] to be a generall name to all their Orders of Priests. Others doe place the *Mufti* in the highest place, and the *Cadileschcher* in the second ranke: and perhaps others gaue the *Cadileschcher* the first place, beeause their life was more in action and gouernment, as attending on the Court, and on the warres: but the *Mufti* being highest Interpreter of their law (though without gouernment) must indeed haue preeminence. And so *Menauino* [f] seemeth to affirme, who, though he placeth the *Cadileschcher* first, yet saith, that [g] when happily appeale is made from his sentence, they haue recourse to the *Mophti*. And this opinion is now generall and most current, which ascribeth to the *Mufti* the chiefe place.

d *Alcoran. Ital. ab Arabico Casiano dicti, Iudices sunt superemi, &c.*
e *Kadilesker* Lib. 2. Cap. 4.
f Lib. 2. Cap. 4.
g *Quando per caso appella a sua sententie, si recorre al Mophti.*

Master *Harborn*, sometime Embassador into Turkie for *Englands Queene* (the worlds wonder, our Westerne *Hesperus*, that shined so farre ouer and beyond all Christendome, into the East; but my words are too base to vther in that renowned name) ELIZABETH, thus [h] reporteth. The Turkes doe hold for head and chiefe of their Religion the Mufti (the choice of whom is made by the Great Turke himselfe) such a one as is knowne to be wise and learned, and chiefly of a good life. His authoritie is so esteemed, that the Emperour will neuer alter a determination made by him. He intermedleth in all matters as best him liketh, whether they be ciuill or criminall, yea, or of State. And yet he hath no power to command; but is in each mans free libertie, when there happeneth any doubt of importance, to make in some few words by writing a declaration of his matter, in forme of a question: to whom the said Mufti, in writing likewise (called *Zetfa*) giueth a briefe answere containing his iudgement thereon. This *Zetfa*, brought to the Iudge, is the rule of his sentence; prouided, that the declaration, made before to the Mufti, contained no vntruth. Also the Grand Signior, to shew that he is religious and iust, doth seruе himselfe of the authoritie of this Mufti, in affaires of warre and peace, demanding his iudgement (in manner aforesaid,) by this course, the subiects being inclined to more forward obedience. But yet the Mufti will commonly flatter him, and leane to that part, to which he seeth him incline: as in the time of *Selym* the second, the Mufti hauing discouered the Emperours intent to warre vpon Cyprus, approued the same in his *Zetpha*. But after, vpon great offers made to *Mehemet* the Visier, to breake that resolution, the Mufti, by him wonne to fauour the matter, affirmed still, that the warre against Cyprus was good and iust, but that his Maiestie had a greater obligation in conscience, which hee was bound to take in hand, namely, to procure the reuolt of the Moores in Spaine, there oppressed by the Christians, wherein hee was so bold with the Emperour, as to tell him to his face, that if hee did neglect the cause of those Mahumetans, hee might be thereunto by his subiects compelled.

h *Lib. Manuscript.*

Concerning the Mufti, and other steps of their Hierarchy, Master [i] *Knolles* writeth, That the Turkes haue certaine Colledges, called *Medressa*, at Constantinople, Adrinople, Bursia, and other places, in which they liue, and studie their prophane Diuinitie and Law, and haue among them nine seuerall steps or degrees vnto the highest dignitie.

i *Knol. p. 1302.*

The first is called *Softi*, which are young Students. The second are *Calfi*, who are Readers vnto the first. The third *Hogi*, Writers of Bookes (for they will suffer no Printing.) The fourth, are *Naipi*, or young Doctors, which may supply the place of Iudges, in their absence. The fifth, *Caddi*, Iudges of their Law, and Iustices to punish offenders; of which there is one at least in euery Citie through the Turkish Dominion: and are knowne from other men by their huge Turbants, two yards in compasse. The sixth, are *Muderisi*, which ouersee the *Caddies* doings, and are as Suffragans to their Bishops; who are the seuenth sort, and are called *Mulli*, which place and displace Church-men at their pleasure. The eight, *Cadelescari*, who are but two great and principall Iudges or Cardinals, the one of Græcia, the other of Natolia: and these two sit euery day in the Diuano among the Bassaes, and are in great reputation. The ninth is the *Mufti*, who is among the Turkes, as the Pope among the Roman Catholikes. When the Bassaes punish any offence against their Law, they send to him. Hee may not abale himselfe to sit in the Diuano, neither when hee comes into the presence of the Grand Seignior, will he vouchsafe to kisse his hand, or to giue any more reuerence, then he receiueth. The Great Sultan ariseth ro honour him, when hee comes vnto him, and then they both sit downe face to face, and so talke and conferre together. No man can ascend to this place, but by the dignities aforesaid.

Mahomet [k] the third, forced by a tumult of the Ianizaries to present himselfe vnto them, came accompanied with the *Mufti*, and some few others of the reuerend Doctors of their Law, who were by the Sultan commanded to sit downe, whiles the great Bassaes abode standing. Such respect it had to these men. Thus much *Knolles*.

k *Knol. 1163.*

In the Booke [l] of the Policie of the Turkish Empire, it is said, that the *Mufties* authority is

l *Cap. 24.*

s like to that of the Iewish High Priest, or Roman Pope. I rather esteeme it like to that of he Patriarkes of Alexandria, Antioch, &c. as binding not all Mahumetans, but the Turkes onely: whereas the one had, the other challengeth a subiection of all, which professe their religion. That Author also affirmeth, that whensoever the *Mufti* goeth abroad forth of his own ouse (which he vseth to doe very seldome) his vse and custome is, first to goe and visit the Emperour; who as soone as hee seeth him comming to salute him, and doe him reuerence, resently ariseth out of his seat, and embracing him with great kindnesse, entertaineth im very friendly and louingly, causing him to sit downe by him, and giuing him the honour f the place.

His authoritie, saith [m] *Soranzo*, is so great, that none will openly contradict the *Muftiee* ntence: but yet if the Emperour be setled in a resolution, the *Mufti* with feare or flattery clines vnto him.

Next to the *Mufti* is the *Cadileschor*, who being also chosen by the Emperour, may bee ompared to those, whom the Christians call Patriarches, or else to the Primats and Metroolitans of a Kingdome. Of these there are now in this encreased greatnesse of the Turkish empire, three; whereas it seemeth that they had in the time of *Bauazet* but one, and long aer (as before is said) but two. To one of these is assigned Europe, namely, so much therof as is subiect to the Turke, for his Prouince: To the second, Natolia or Turky; to the third, yria and Egypt, with the parts adioyning. There were but two Cadileschers, till *Selym* wan yria and Egypt, and erected a third. But [n] *Soranzo* saith, that this third of *Cairo* is not ightly called *Cadileschor*, but should rather be called the great Cadi. Out of all which Prouinces, whatsoever causes come to be determined, by appeale or otherwise, they are brought o be decided before the Cadileschor of the same Prouince whence they arise: now thsianing that the abode of each of them be continually, or for the most part, at Constantinople, r elsewhere, wheresoever the Emperour holdeth his Court. The honour done to them, is little lesse then to the *Mufti*, for that their authoritie is ouer Priest and people, temporall and pirituall: they are also learned in their law, aged and experienced. Of the *Muderiss* and *Mulli*, can say no more then I haue done.

Next to these are the *Cadi*, which are sent abroad and dispersed into euery Citie and ownne of the Turkish Empire: which besides their [o] Ecclesiasticall iurisdiction (as I may erme it) in forcing man to their religious obseruations, are as it were, Iusticers and Gouernours of the places. So neere glued are the Offices and Officers, the religion and politie of he Turkes. There are other which are not sent forth, which are called *Choza*, that is, Elders. These, with the *Talismans*, haue the ordering of their Parishionall Churches: The *Talismans* alling the people to prayer, and the *Choza* executing the Seruice and Preaching; and in abence, each supplying others Office. *Menanimo* more distinctly, and in other names, numbreth hose Church-officers. The *Modeccie* is a Gouernour of an Hospitall, receiuing and disposing he rents, with the other customes thereof. Their Schoole degrees are before spoken of, out of *Knolles*. Some [p] adde to these former, these other Priests, of baser condition. The *Anippi* are certaine Priests, which vpon Friday (called of them *Glumaagun*, and is obserued as heir Sabbath, because *Mahomet* (as some hold) was borne on that day) and on other their asting and feasting-dayes, after they haue vsed diuers Ceremonies in a certaine place, in the iddest of the Temple, about thirtie steps high, from thence read vnto the people somehing concerning the life of *Mahomet*. After which, two little boyes stand vp, and sing certaine Prayers: Which being ended, the Priest and all the people sing a Psalme with a low voyce, and then for halfe an houre together they cry *Illah, illelah*, that is, there is but one God. After all this, one of these *Antippi*, out of that high place, sheweth forth vnto the people a Lance and Scimitar, with exhortation to vse their Swords and Lances in defence of their Religion. Of the *Imam* and *Meizin*, is elsewhere shewed, that the one calleth the people to the Mosche or Meschit, the other there celebrateth publike Orisons. The *Sophi* also are certaine Clerks or Priests, employed in the singing of Psalmes and Hymnes, after their manner, in their Churches at the times of publike Prayers.

All these inferior Orders of Priests are chosen by the people, and haue a certaine stipend allowed them by the Emperour, which yet is so small, that many of them are driuen to vse either writing of Bookes, or Handicrafts and Trades for their liuing, and are clothed like Lay-men. They haue [q] no great learning, it is sufficient if they can read the Alcoran, which being written in Arabike, they are as loth to haue translated into the vulgar, as the Papists are to haue the Scripture. Hee which can interprete, and make some Exposition of the Text, is of profound learning. Yet are they reuerenced: and if a Turke doe strike or offer outrage to them, he loseth his hand; and if he be a Christian, his life; being sure to be burned. Some say, that now of late some of them are more studious of Astronomie and other Arts. As for those superiour rankes, no doubt may be made of their high account. The Chadileschor is clothed

m *L. Soranzo. part. 2. cap. 61.*

Cadileschor.

n *Magin.*

Cadi.

o *Andr. Arius*

Modeccie.

p Policie of the Turkish Empire. *Anippi.*

Imam.

Meizin.

Sophi, perhaps the same with the *Sofi* before mentioned.

q *Bar. Georgiuius.*

in Chamlet, Satten, Silke, Damaske, or Veluet of seemely colour, as Russet, or Tawny, and in Purple-coloured cloth with long sleeues. Their Tulipan on their head is of marvellous greatnesse, sharpe in the middest, of Purple Russet colour, deeper and thicker then others; their beards great. They ride on Geldings, with Purple foot-cloths fringed; and when they goe on foot, they goe slowly, representing a stately and sacred gravitie.

There is another order of sacred persons, which yet are neither regular nor secular, by any vow or ordination, but had in that account for their birth, being supposed to descend of the line of *Mahumet*. The Turkes and Tartarians call them *Seiti* or *Suhi*, the Moores *Seriffi*. These weare greene Tulipans, which colour none else may weare, and that onely on their head. Some Christians, ignorant hereof, haue had their apparell cut from their backes, for wearing somewhat greene about them. These they call *Hemir*. They enioy many priuiledges especially in giuing testimony, wherein one of these is as much as two other, which they abuse to iniury and wrong. The most of them are Moores, which goe ten or fifteene in a company, with a banner on a staffe, hauing a Moone on the top; and that which is giuen for Gods sake, they fit and eate in the street, where also they make their praiers, and are poorly clad. Like to these (in priuiledge and prauiledge) are the *Chagi*, or *Fagi*, which liue on almes like Fryers. They attend on the publike prayers, on the holy Reliques, on the Corpses and Funerals of the dead, and to prey on the liuing by false oathes.

A digression touching the Hierarchie, and Miseries of Christians vnder the Turke, &c.

AND thus we haue taken a leisurely view of the Turkish Hierarchy, from the poore *Softi* to the courtly *Cadileschor* and pontificall *Mufti*, flourishing and triumphing together with that Monarchy, which is exalted, and hath exalted them, with the power, not of the Word of GOD, but of the Sword of Man. But with what words meane whiles shall wee deplore the lamentable and miserable estate of that Christian Hierarchy and Ecclesiasticall Politie, which sometimes flourished there with no sewer, nor lesse titles of dignitie and eminence? Where are now those Reuerend Names of *Bishops*, *Archbishops*, *Metropolitans*, *Patriarkes*, and the swelling stile of *Oecumenicall*? Nay, where are these things, the lise and liuing? for the stile, names, titles, still continue; continue indeed, but as Epitaphs and Inscriptions on the Monuments of their deceased and buried power, as the ghosts and wandring shadowes of hose sometimes quicke and quickning bodies of rule and gouernment. *Great Citie of great* CONSTANTINE, seated in the Throne of the World, the fitest situation to command both Sea and Land, through Europe, Asia, and Africa; at thy first Natiuitie honored with a double Diadem of Christianitie & Souerainetie: to which the Sea prostrateth it selfe with innumerable multitudes of Fish, the Land payeth continually all tribute of rare fertilitie; for which old Rome disrobed her selfe to decke this her *New-Rome*, Daughter and Imperiall heire, with her choisest Iewels and Monuments: a Compendium of the World, Eye of Cities, Heart of the habitable earth, *Academie* of learning, *Senate* of gouernement, *Mother* of Churches, *Nurse* of Religion, and (to speake in the language of thine owne) [a] *A new Eden, an earthly Heauen, modell of Paradise, shining with the varietie of thy sacred and magnificent buildings, as the Firmament, with the Sunne, Moone, and Starres*. This was thy ancient greatnesse, great now, onely in miserie and mischiefe, which as chiefe seat of Turkish Greatnesse, is hence inflicted on the Christian Name. And thou, the *Soule* of this Bodie, the goodliest Iewell in this Ring of Perfection, which so many wonders of Nature conspired to make the Miracle of Art, *the* TEMPLE *of that* WISDOME *of* GOD, which is [b] *A terrestriall Heauen, a Cherubicall Chariot, another Firmament, beyond all names of elegance; which I thinke* (saith another) [c] *the very Seraphins doe admire with veneration*, and (which hath here moued thy mensfwayed all the East, and contended with Westerne Rome for Souerainetie; now excluded rule, rites, yea persons Christian, wholly hallowed, to the damnable holies of ridiculous and blasphemous Mahometisme; the multitudes of other Churches, as silly captiued Damsels, attending and following thee into this *Mechiticall* slauerie, O CITIE, which hast beene (woe worth that word, that hastie *hast-beene*) which hast been! but who can say what thou hast beene? let one word, the sum of all earthly excellence, expresse what floods of words and seas of Rhetorick cannot expresse, which hast beene CONSTANTINOPLE; which art (that one name may declare thy bottomlesse hellish downfall) indeed, though not in name, *Mahometople*; the Seat of *Mahomets* power, the settling of Mahumetan dregs: What words

Constantinople decyphered, with due Epithets and titles.

a *Niceph. Callist. in Pref.*

Temple of Saint *Sophia*.

b *Georg. Phrancza Chron. lib. 3. cap. 17.*

c *Cons. Monas. ap. Pontan.*

words can serue to preach thy *funerall Sermon*, and ring thy *knell* to succeeding ages? Sometimes the Theatre of worldly pompe, but then on that dismal day of thy captiuitie, the stage of earthly and hellish Furies, the sinke of bloud, and slaughter-house of Death. What sense would not become senselesse, to see the breaches of the walls filled vp with the slaine? the gate by death shutting out death, closed vp to the arch with confused bodies of Turks and Christians? the shouts of men fighting? the cries, groanes, gaspes, of men dying? the manifold spectacles and [e] *varietie* of death? and yet the worse estate, and more multiplied deaths of the liuing? women rauished; maidens forced; persons, vowed to sanctitie, deuoted to lust, slaughter, slauerie; reuerend age no white reuerenced; greene youth perishing in the bloome, and rotten before it had time to ripen; the father seeing the hopes of his yeeres, deare pledges of Nature, slaine or sold before his face: the children beholding the parents passe into another captiuitie; all taking an euerlasting fare well of all wel-fare, as well as of each other. Well may we in compassion weepe for those miseries, the bitter passion whereof, like a violent whirlewinde, did to them drie vp the fountaines of teares! Euen he which writ the Historie of these things, *quorum pars magna fuit*, *George Phranza*, Counseller, and great Chancellor to the Emperour, might much moue vs with his owne particular; himselfe sold to one, his wife to another, his daughter (richly espoused) now married to the Seraile-lauerie, his sonne slaine with the Sultans owne hand, for not being obsequious to his beastly lust: if particular and priuate cases could finde any proper place in publike calamities; and if the Emperours owne Historie, were not (as some haue told it) more tragicall. O *Sunne*, how could thy brightnesse endure to see such hideous spectacles! but clouds of shot, dust, and smoake, hid them from thee! O *Earth*, which otherwhiles at that time [f] of the yeere, deckest thy selfe with thy fairest roabes, embroidered with varietie of flowers! how wast thou then couered with dead carkasses, and furrowed with rills of bloud? O GOD, that the sinnes of man should thus prouoke thy iustice, by vniust and sinfull instruments, to punish iniustice and sinne! and to chastise thy Christian seruants, by Antichristian and deuillish enemies! *Iust art thou, O Lord, and iust are thy iudgements*, which in iudgement remembrest mercy, which saueth the soules of thine, in and by the affliction of their bodies, but wilt cast thy *Rod of thy wrath* into a fire that neuer shall be quenched.

But mee thinkes I heare some excepting at this long digression, and quarrelling at this Tragedie in stead of the proceeding Historie. Shall I craue pardon? Or shall I rather desire the Reader a little to consider with mee in this narration of Constantinople (as the Map and Epitome of Easterne Christendome) the miserable and perplexed estate of all Easterne Christians, by like meanes brought and trampled vnder the feet of the *Ottoman* Horse? The larger storie of their rites and opinions is referued to another taske: this I haue propounded as the glasse of their miseries, that being now to take leaue of the Turkes, wee might not so much honour them with this peale of Rhetorical Ordnance; as by this mirror of miserie, be touched with feare in our selues for like punishments, if in time we *meet not God* with repentance; and *remembring the afflictions of Ioseph*, to pray for those our brethren, that God would saue mercy on them, and giue them patience, and (in his time) deliuerance. They which would take more view of the miseries of Christians vnder the Turke, may in *Vines*, *Georgiorite*, *Septencastrensis*, and others, read them; for mee, the parallels of the Turkish and Christian Hierarchy, was some occasion of this digression, touching which, let mee borrow a few words with our Reader.

Mahomet the Conqueror, for the repeopling of the Citie, pretended great fauour to the Christians, gaue them licence to elect a new Patriarch, whom he honoured with the wonted rites and solemnities: and vouchsafed to conferre with him about the Christian mysteries (for his mother was a Christian, and he himselfe a [d] delicate to studies of learning, being [a] skilfull in the Greeke, Chaldee, Persian, Latin, Arabike, besides his Turkish, languages, professing knowledge also in Astrologie) and receiued at the hands of this Patriarch, (his name was *Gennadius*) a large treatise thereof, [b] yet extant in Greeke and Turkish, and gaue him [c] priuiledges. But things fained cannot continue; and partly through his owne couetousnesse, partly through the ambition and disagreeing of the Clergie, heauie fines were imposed on them, and the Seat receiued in his time nine successions, and eight in the raigne of *Maiazet* his sonne, and so groneth vnder that burthen to this day. And howsoeuer the Patriarch enioyeth [e] Spirituall and Ecclesiasticall respect amongst the Christians, yet is hee contemned of the Turkes, some of them vpbraiding both him and other Christians, with the names of dogs, Ethnicks, vnbeleeuers, and the like zealous Rhetorick: nor is he admitted a Groome amongst the Bassaes, except when he brings his tribute of 4000. duckets, with almost as much besides to the Bassaes and other officers. In his Monastery and Patriarchiall Church and Palace, are no Bishops or great Prelates nourished, but a few Monks and some Lay-officers and Counsellors. Hee sometimes (but seldome) preacheth, on some chiefe Feasts at

d *Bist. Polit. Turcogr. lib.*
e *Plurima mortalis imago. Virg.*

Cura leues loquuntur, ingentes stupent. Sen. He after turned Monk, and scarce had bare bread to sustaine him. *Zacharias.*

f *Tb. Zygomal.*
g *Cant.* was taken, *May* 29. 1453.

a *Phranza l. 1. cap. 33.*

b *Confes. Christi. fi. Geennady. in Turcogr. l. 2. & in Bibliotb. Patrum*
c *Steph. Gerlachius ep. Gallob. 2. 1574 & c.*

the Consecration of some Bishop or Archbishop: and very little preaching they haue amongst them, and that which is, in the old pure Greeke, which very few of them vnderstand thinking it sufficient if two or three of their audience conceiue them, and very few can preach. They haue not the Scriptures in the vulgar Greeke. The reuenue of the Patriarch is about 20000. Dollers. They gather much in their Churches; and hee sendeth his Collector to gather abroad, and the other Prelates pay an annuitie to him. To preuent abuses from Turkes, he hath a Ianizarie or two at the Church-doore in the time of the Lyturgie. They reade in their Churches great Legends of the lies of Saints, as well as the Papists. Their Religion is almost altogether in rites, like the other. The difference betweene new and old Rome was one principall occasion of the losse of Constantinople, as appeareth p by the Embassie of *Iohn* his going to Rome to follicite aydes, (which had been giuen him but for refusing a Papall ceremonie) and the proceedings of the Councell of Florence. The Patriarkes of Alexandria, Antiochia, and Ierusalem, acknowledge this of Constantinople Oecumenicall, and his iurisdiction extendeth through Asia Minor, the Archipelago, Greece, Mysia, Walachia, Moldavia, Dalmatia, Russia, and Muscouia. The Calogeri or Monkes haue their Gardens and Vineyards, which they till and dresse with their owne hands to sustaine themselues. The other Patriarchs also pay a yeerely tribute to the Turke. The Priests are poore and liue of Alms: and the prices of their holies, which are most gainefull in exequies. The Laitie is no lesse miserable for the most part, of spare diet, but giuen to drinking. Both Iewes and Christians pay for themselues and euery of their Children aboue twelue yeeres old, a Ducket by the poll; and much more for the maintenance of the Nauie, besides their tribute of children for Ianizaries.

Wecker Eudoxus Ep. 1580.

p *Pack. Turcograd. E. G. Treatys.*

The Greekes are ignorant and vnlearned, and haue exiled (in a blinde zeale) Poetical and Philosophicall Authors, for feare of pollution to their studies. And as *Simeon Cabasilas* writ to *Crusius*, they haue about seuentie Dialects of the Moderne Greeke tongue, the purest of which is at Constantinople, the most barbarous of all (*O Times!*) at Athens, (q ΑΘΗΝΣ, before called Ἑλλὰς ἡ Ἑλλάς, *The Greece of Greece; and that which the sight is in the eye, that which the minde is in the soule, such was Athens in Greece*, Seat of the *Muses Graces, Empire, Arts!* O ΑΘΗΝΣ! but I am forced silence. Let *Zygomal*, an eye-witnesse speake; There now (saith he) remaines no more but the skin thereof, her selfe is long since dead: the True Athens and Helicon are come into our Westerne parts. And how can any of them labour in learning, which must labour to liue? Necessitie hath *no law*, no learning. Euen where now behold a British Athens, or rather an *Attike Britaine*, where whilome our Ancestors (euen after Learning and Religion had here now flourished) found through the Danish pestilence, a brutish barbarisme. *Alfred*, the sonne of a King, and after King himselfe could not finde a Master in all his Dominions to teach him the Latin tongue: and procuring with care and cost, forreiners to teach him, first learned that language at fixe and thirtie yeeres of his age: hauing begun to reade the vulgar at twelue yeeres, which his elder and lesse studious brethren could not then doe. And himselfe in the Preface of *Gregories* Pastorall, (to vse his owne words in our later English) saith, That *learning was so fallen in the English Nation, that very few were on this side Humber, which their service could vnderstand in English or an Epistle from Latin into English declare: and I weene that not many beyond Humber were no. So few of them were, that I also one onely may not remember by South Thamise, when a to reigne vndertooke.* I could shew the like in Italie also by testimony of Pope *Agatho*, in the sixth Synode at Constantinople vpon like cause. But I forget my Greekes, as they have done their Greeke; I feare rather, I seeme to remember them too much, and that seuere Censors will iudge this an abortiue issue, borne before the time. I will therefore stay my willing pen till better time, referring the more studious to those which haue written of this subiect, especially to *Martin Crusius* his *Turcogracia*, where out of the Letters of *Gerlach* and others, as also of the Greekes themselues, *Iohn* and *Theodosius Zygomale*, and of the Patriarcks, *Metrophanes, Ioasaphus, Ieremias*, (betweene this last Patriarch and *D. Andreas Crusius* there passed some writings of Religion) they may haue further satisfaction. Their title is, *Ieremias by the mercie of God Archb. of Const. New Rome, Oecumenicall Patriarch. Michael by the mercie of God Patriarch of great Theopolis, Antiochia,* q *and of all the East. Sophronius by the mercie of God Patriarch of the holy Citie Ierusalem, and of all Palestina.* In Testimoniall to *D. Albert Lewenstein*, the Patriarch of Alexandria stileth himselfe, *Ioachim Pope and Patriarch of the great Citie Alexandria, Iudge of the World, &c.* Others *Hermilis Metropolita Rhodi Callistus. Gabriel Archb. of Philadelphia.* And if to the Patriarcks *Archb. of P. Seruant to your Holinesse, Gabriel.* A Bishop, πανιερώτατος, or *humilis Episcopus*? made a profession of his faith at Rome, in his and the Patriarch of Antiochises name: the like was done by *Sulaka* elect Patriarch of Antiochia, 1583. both translated by *Andr. Mossius*, which may bee iugglings, as well as that of *Gabriel* Patriarch of Alexandria, as *George Doisa* testifieth against *Burnium*.

Athens described.

q *Hier. Steph. ad Decretab. Bl. Ἑλλάδ. A bene Vadis scriptus, quo sit Athenae. Ex m. Portus Gr.*

Sic Constantinopolis, called *Antomastice* Πόλις, *&* when they went thither, their phrase was εἰς τὴν πόλιν, of which words contrad. Cod. and constituted, rule Turker call it Istambol: at this day, *G. Posid. Compend. Cosmog. Asser. Men. in vita Mahomet.*

Alfredus Rex. Sax. Syn. Const. A. 4.

Cr. p. Turcogr. hist. Ecclesiast. &c. Censura Orient. Ecclesiae per Ierem. Patriarch.

q *Moses Mardaeus* 1552.

Gerasim

Gerasimus. They make publike mention of the foure Patriarchs in their Church Lyturgies. The Venetians allow the Greekes free vse of their religion through all their Dominion: and Crete is a chiefe place for their learned men.

The greatest misery which accompanieth the Turkish thraldome, is their b zeale of making Proselytes, with manifold and strong inducements, to such as haue bin more nuzzled in superstitions, then trained vp in knowledge, and see such contempt of Christians, and honours which befall to many Renegadoes: and very many are peruerted and bewitched those wiles.

Yea, many voluntarily offer themselues to Apostasie, and others, by c hopes, feares, griefes, despaires, importunities, distracted: by that vigor of vertue in the Turkish grauity, sobriety, bodily purity, and spiritual zeale (after their sort) with whole rabbles of Satanicall miracles deluded: wanting all intercourse of Sacraments, preaching, reading, and all Christian holines: and full of wants in necessaries, for this life; forget a better, and turne Turke. Thus do they sell to the Deuil their soules, bought by the bloud of Christ Iesus. We may well despaire of words to vtter this misery, and to describe this Mart of Hell; seeing it exceedeth all words to see the Markets made of Christian bodies, the remainders of cruell and bloudy warres, chained together in more then beastly bondage, so brought to the markets: if any bee sicke by the way, driuen on as long as they can goe, and when their feet faile, laid ouer a horse, like as butchers deale with small cattle, and if they die, lest for a prey to the fowles and beasts: the places of their abode by the way, filled with cryes of younglings of both sexes, abused to vnnaturall lust. In the markets they are stripped, viewed, and (modestie forbids to speake, O Image of God thus abased!) openly in the secretest parts handled, bee they male or female: forced to goe, runne, leape; and if shame or disdaine make them vnwilling, by whips and stripes compelled: the infant plucked from the mothers breast and sold from euer againe seeing her, or libertie: the wife thus openly deluded and dealt with before the husbands face, and for a base price giuen by some baser Turke, euerlastingly diuorced from his face: his daughters virginitie, openly, secretly! my words are swallowed vp with horrour of the fact: himselfe, at home, reuerend for his yeeres, now in that respect contemned, and hanging long on hand as vnprofitable ware, before hee finde a buyer. Priest, Souldier, Merchant, Artificer, Husbandman, all equally subiect to this iniquity, saue that Gentlemen, and those of most liberall education are least esteemed and most abused, because they can bring least profit to their Masters. Where besides filthy lusts, they suffer hunger, thirst, cold, and stripes; and which redoubleth those blowes, euen there is the passion of Christ, in this passion of their owne, vpbraided to them. Some in impatience reuolt, some runne away, and are brought backe to a worse estate, if possible: some kill themselues; and some! But I can say no more. Let vs pray for them: and let vs at last leaue this Tragedie, and take view of former Antiquities.

b *Septemcast. c. 5.*

c *Septemcast.* handleth this at large.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Regions and Religions of ASIA MINOR, *since called Natolia and Turkie.*

NExt after the Turkish Religion thus related, it seemeth fittest to discourse of the ancient names and limits of Regions, and of the former Heathenish Religions of that part of the Turkish Dominion, which among Authors a hath since, in a singular eminencie, obtained the name of Turkie. And if it seeme strange, that the Turkish Religion (a new vpstart) be declared before those former of the Pagans, the matter wee had in hand hath thus altered our methode, that after wee had described the deformed disiointed lineaments of the *Mother*, an Arabian Saracen, her more mis-shapen *Daughter*, this Turkish *Mopsa*, might attend her hard at her heeles. As for the Region, we haue followed the Turkish forces hither: and now that we haue glutted our selues with the view of their late affaires of State and Religion, let vs cast our eyes about vs, and obserue the Country it selfe, which because of her long and entire subiection to this Nation, is styled by their b name. The Greekes c called it Natolia, ἀπὸ τῆς ἀνατολῆς, because it was the Easterlie part of that Empire, as they called Thracia, the Country about Constantinople (which was named Νέα Ῥώμη) Romania. This Natolia, or Anatolia, is of others called Asia Minor: and yet Asia, in a most proper and right account, is specially applied to one Region in this great Chersonesus, or Peninsula, which contai-

a *Gem. Phrysi. Haiton. Magninus. Francisco Thamara, & alij.*

b *Turcia, & Turcea Maior.*

c *Meloch. Ieacer. lib. 5.* The Greekes called this, Asia simply, as being best knowne to them.

neth besides that, the Regions of Pontus, Bithynia, Lycia, Galatia, Pamphilia, Paphlagonia, Cappadocia, Cilicia, and Armenia Minor. It was bounded on the East with Euphrates, (now Frat:) on the South, with the Mediterranean Sea: on the West, with the Archipelago: on the North, with the Black-Sea, stretching in length from 51. to 72. degrees of Longitude, and in breadth from 36. 5. to 45. This Countrey hath beene anciently renowned for Armes and Arts: now the [d] graue of the carkasses, or some ruinous bones rather, and stonie Reliques of the carkasses of more then foure thousand Places and Cities, sometimes inhabited. Many changes hath it sustained by the Egyptian, Persian, Macedonian, Roman, Tartarian, and Turkish generall Conquests, besides such exploits, as *Crœsus* and *Mithridates* of old, the Saracens, and the Westerne Christians of later times, haue therein archieued. Let the studious of these things search them in their proper Authors: our task is *Religion*, whose ouer-worne, and almost out-worne steps, with much curious hunting in many Histories, wee haue thus weakely traced. Of the Turkes we haue already spoken, and we leaue the larger Relations of the Christians (for why should wee mixe Light with Darknesse?) to their proper place. For euen yet, besides the Armenians, there remaine many Christians of the Greek Church in Cappadocia, and other parts of this Region.

d This part of Asia hath been exceedingly subject to Earthquakes: in the time of *Tiberius*, twelue Cities were by them prostrate in one night. *Nigr.*

HONDIVS *his Map of* ASIA MINOR.

CAPPADOCIA Next vnto those parts of Sytia before deliuered, are situate in this lesser Asia, Cilicia, Armenia Minor, and Cappadocia. CAPPADOCIA, called also Leucosyria, and now Amasia, stretcheth foure hundred and fiftie miles along the Euxine Sea, bounded on the West with Paphlagonia, Galatia, and part of Pamphylia; on the South, with Cilicia; on the East, with

with the Hills Anticaurus and Moschius, and part of Euphrates. Heere runneth *Halys*, the end of *Crœsus* Empire, both in the site and fate thereof; the doubtfull Oracle here giuing him a certaine ouerthrow. For when hee consulted with the same, touching his Expedition against *Cyrus*, he receiued answer, That *passing Halys, hee should ouer-turne a great State*; which he interpreting actiuely of his attempts against *Cyrus*, verified it passiuely in himselfe. And here, besides other streames, slideth Thermodon, sometime made famous by the bordering Amazons. Of which manly Fœminine people, ancient Authors disagree: *Theophrastus* deriuing them from the *Sauromatæ*; *Salust* fetching them from Tanais; *P. Diaconius* describing them in Germany; *Trogus* and *Iustine* reporting them Scythians; *Diodorus* crossing the Seas to finde them in Lybia, and thence also, in a further search, passing into an Iland in the Atlantike Ocean; *Ptolomey* and *Curtius* placing them neeter the Caspian Sea; *Strabo* [f] doubting whether there euer had beene such a people, or no. Some haue found them out a-new in the new World, & naming that huge Riuer of them. *Goropius* confidently auouched them to bee the Wiues and Sonnes of the Sarmatians or Cimbrians; who, together with their Husbands, inuaded Asia. And this hee proueth by Dutch Etymologies and other coniectures. Which, if it be true, sheweth, that their *Religion* was the same with the Scythian. They [h] are said to haue worshipped *Mars*, of whom they faine themselues to be descended. Religion it were, to speake of their *Religion*, of whose being wee haue no better certaintie. *Strabo* [i] writeth, That in the places ascribed to the Amazons, *Apollo* was exceedingly worshipped.

Amazons?

f *Strab.lib.12.*

g Riuer of Amazons.

h *Gram. ex. Statio.*

i *Strab.l.12.*

In Cappadocia was seated the Citie Comana, wherein was a Temple of *Bellona*, and a great multitude of such as were there inspired and rauished by deuilish illusion, and of *sacred Seruants*. It was inhabited by the people called *Cataones*, who being subiect to a King, did neuertheless obey the Priest that was in great part Lord of the Temple, and of the Sacred Seruants, whose number (when *Strabo* was there) amounted to fixe thousand and vpwards of men and women. The Priest receiued the reuenue of the Region next adioyning to the Temple, and was in honour next to the King in Cappadocia, and commonly of the same kindred. These Idolatrous Rites are supposed to haue beene brought hither out of Taurica Scythia, by *Orestes* and his sister *Iphigenia*, where humane Sacrifices were offered to *Diana*. Here, at the solemne Feasts of *Bellona*, those Sacred Seruants before mentioned, called Comani, wounded each other in an extaticall furie, bloudy Rites fitting *Bellona's* solemnities. [k] *Argans*, whose hoary head was couered continually with snow, was reputed a religious Hill, and habitation of some God.

k *Salinus.*

Strabo [l] reporteth of the Temple of *Apollo Catanius*, in Dastaeum; and of another of *Iuiter* in Morimena, which had three thousand of those Sacred Seruants or Religious Votaries, which as an inferiour Order were at the command of the Priest, who receiued of his Temples reuenue fifteene Talents, and was reputed in the next ranke of honour to the Priest of Comana.

l *Strab.l.12.*

Not farre hence is Castabala, where the Temple of *Diana Persica* [m], where the sacred or deuoted women were reported to goe bare-footed on burning coles without harme. It is reported [n], that if a Snake did bite a Cappadocian, the mans bloud was poyson to the Snake, and killed him.

m *Strab.l.12. Cal.l.10.c.33.*

n *Valiani epist.*

Many excellent Worthies hath this Region yeelded to the world. Mazaca (afterwards of *Claudius* called Cæsarea) was the Episcopall Seat of Great *Basil*. Cicersum, the Receptacle of exiled *Chrysostome*: Amasia (now a Prouinciall Citie of the Turkish Beglerbegs) sometime the Country of *Strabo*, to whom these our Relations are so much indebted: Nissa and Nazianzum, of which, the two *Gregories* receiued their surnames. But that Humane and Diuine learning is now trampled vnder the barbarous foot of the *Ottoman-horse*. Here is Trapezonde also, whilome bearing the proud name of an Empire. Licaonia, the chiefe Citie whereof is Iconium, celebrated in holy Writ, (and a long time the Royall Seat of the first Turkes in Asia, and since of Caramania, now Conia, or Cogne, inhabited with Greekes, Turkes, Iewes, Arabians and Armenians) is of *Ptolomey* adioyned to Cappadocia. And so is Diopolis, called before Cabira, since Augusta, which *Ortelius* placeth in the lesser Armenia.

Licaonia.

Diopolis.

In Diopolis was the Temple of the *Moone* had in great veneration, much like, in the Rites thereof, to that before mentioned of Comana: which although it bare [o] the surname of Cappadocia, yet *Ptolomey* placeth it in this Armenia; and Comana Pontica, in Cappadocia, of the same name and superstitious deuotion to the same Goddesse. Thence haue they taken the patterne of their Temple, of their Rites, Ceremonies, Diuinations, respect to their Priests. And twice a yeere in the Feasts, which were called, *The Goddesse her going out*, the Priest ware a Diademe. He was second to none, but the King: which Priest-hood was holden of some of *Strabo's* progenitors. *Pompey* bestowed the Priest-hood of this Temple vpon *Archelaus*, and added to the temples reuenue two *Schœni*, that is, threescore furlongs of ground, commanding

o *Comana Cappadociæ, & Pontica, Strab.l.12.*

commanding the inhabitants to yeeld him obedience. Hee had also power ouer the Sacred Seruants, which were no lesse then sixe thousand.

Lycomedes after inioyed that Prelacie, with foure *Schœni* of land added thereto: *Cæsar* remoued him, placing in his roome *Dieutus*, the sonne of *Adiatorix*, whom (with his wife and children) hee had led in triumph, purposing to slay his elder sonne, together with him. But when the younger perswaded the Souldiers that he was the elder, and both contended which should die, *Dieutus* was of his parents counselled to yeeld to the younger, and to remaine aliue, to bee a stay to their family. Which pietie *Cæsar* hearing of, grieuing for the death of the other, hee thus rewarded. At the Feasts aforesaid, is great recourse of men and women hither. Many Pilgrims resort to discharge their vowes. Great store of women is there, which for the most part are deuoted; this Citie being as little Corinth. For many went to Corinth, in respect of the multitude of Harlots, prostituted or consecrated to *Venus*.

Zela. Zela, another Citie, hath in it the Temple of *Anias*, much reuerenced of the Armenians; wherein the Rites are solemnized with greatest Sanctimony, and Oathes taken of greatest consequence. The sacred Seruants and Priestly Honours are as the former. The Kings did sometime esteeme Zela, not as a Citie, but as a Temple of the Persian Gods: and the Priest had supreme power ouer all things; who, with a great multitude of those sacred Seruants inhabited the same. The Romans encreased their Reuenues.

In Cappadocia the Persian *Religion* was much vsed: but of the Persian Rites see more [a] in our Tractat of Persia. The [b] lewdnesse of the Cappadocians grew into a Prouerbe; if any were enormiously wicked, he was therefore called a *Cappadocian*.

a *Lib. 4.*
b The infamous lewdnes of the *Cappadocians.*

GALATIA or GALLOGRÆCIA, so called of the *Galli*, which vnder the conduct of *Brennus* (saith *Suidas*) assembled an Army of three hundred thousand, and seeking aduentures in forraine parts diuided themselues: some inuading Greece; others Thrace and Asia, where they seiled themselues betweene Bithynia and Cappadocia. On the South it is confined with Pamphilia, and on the North is washed with the Euxine Sea, the space of two hundred and sixt e miles. Sinope, the mother and nursing Citie of *Mithridates*, is heere seated: one of the last Cities of Asia that subiected it selfe to Turkish bondage, in the dayes of *Mahomet* the second. Of the *Galatæ* were three Tribes, *Trogmi*, *Tolistobogi*, and *Tectosages*: all which *Goropius* deriueth from the *Cimmerij*. At Tavium, which was inhabited with the *Trogmi*, was a brazen Statue of *Iupiter*, and his Temple was a priuiledged Sanctuarie. The *Tolistobogi* had for their chiefe Matt *Pisonis*, wherein was a great Temple of the *Mother of the Gods*, whom they called *Andigistia*, had in great veneration; whose Priests had sometime beene mightie. This Temple was magnificently builded of the Attalian Kings, with the Porches also of white stone. And the Romans, by depriuing the same of the Goddesses Statue (which they sent for to Rome, as they did that of *Æsculapius* out of *Epidaurus*) added much reputation of *Religion* thereunto. The Hill Dindyma ouer-looketh the Citie, of which shee was named *Dindymena*, as of *Cybelus* (which *Orletius* supposeth to bee the same) *Cybele*. Of the Galatians, *Deiotarus* was King: but more fame hath befallen them by *Paules* Epistle to them.

Plutarch [c] tells of a Historie of a Galatian woman, named *Camma*, worthy our recitall. Shee was faire and noble (the daughter of *Dianaes* Priest) and richly married to *Sinatus* the Tetrarch. But *Sinorix*, a man richer and mightier then hee, became his vniust corriuall, and because he durst not attempt violence to her, her husband liuing, he slew him. *Camma* solaced her selfe as she could, cloystering her selfe in *Dianaes* Temple, and admitting none of her mightie suiters. But when *Sinorix* had also moued that suit, she seemed not vnwilling: and when he came to desire her marriage, she went forth to meet him, and with gentle entertainment brought him into the Temple vnto the Altar, where shee dranke to him a cup of poysoned liquor; and hauing taken off almost halfe, she reached him the rest: which after hee saw he had drunke, she called vpon her husbands name aloud, saying; Hitherto haue I liued sorrowfull without thee, wayting this day, now welcome me vnto thee: for I haue reuenged thy slaughter on the most wicked amongst men, and haue beene companion and partner with thee in life, with him in death. And thus dyed they both. The like manly woman-hood (if a Christian might commend that, which none but a Christian can discommend) *Valerius Maximus* [d] sheweth of *Chiomara* her country-woman, wife of *Ortyagon*, a great man amongst the Tectosages: who, in the warres of *Manlius* the Consul, being taken prisoner, was committed to the custodie of a Tribune, who forc'e her to his pleasure. After that agreement was made for her ransome, and the money brought to the place appointed, whiles the Tribune was busie about the receit thereof, shee caused her Gallo-græcians to cut off his head, which she carryed to her husband, in satisfaction of her wrong.

c *Plut. Serm. & Disputatio amatoria.*
d *Val. Max. l. 6. c. 1.*
e *Alex. ab Alexandro, genial. dierum, l. 3. c. 7.*

At the Funeralls of the Galatians [e] they obserued this custome, to write letters and hurle them

them into that latest and fatall fire, supposing that their deceased friends should read them in the other world. At their sacrifices [f] they vsed not an *Aruspex*, or Diuinor, which gazed in the entrailes, but a Philosopher, without whom they thought no Sacrifice acceptable to their gods. The Deuill certaine was the god to whom their humane Sacrifices were acceptable, which in deuillish inhumanitie they offered at their bloudie Altars [g], when they diuided of things no come, which they did by his falling, by the dismembring and flowing forth of his bloud. [h] *Athenaeus* out of *Philarchus*, telleth of one *Ariamnes*, a rich Galatian, which feasted the whole Nation a whole yeere together, with Sacrifices of Bulls, Swine, Sheepe, and other prouision, made ready in great Caldrons, prouided of purpose for this entertainment, that he made them in spacious Boothes, which he had therefore built. *Pausanius* saith, That the Pesinuntian Galatians abstained from Swines flesh. The Legend of *Agdistis* and *Atte*, which he there addeth, is too filthy to relate.

f *Gen. dicr. l. 4. cap. 17.*

g *Iliid. l. 6. c. 28.*

h *Athenaeus.*

Betweene i the mouth of Pontus, the Thracian *Bosphorus*, and part of Propontis on the West, and Galatia on the East, part of the Euxine Sea on the North, and Asia (properly so called) on the South, is scuate the Prouince called by the double name [k] of PONTVS and BITHYNIA. There were sometimes two Prouinces, diuided by the Riuer *Sangarius*: now they are called Bursia by *Giraua*; by *Castaldus Beessangial*. The most famous Cities therein are, or rather haue beene, NICE, famous sometimes for *Neptunes* Temple, but more for the first Generall Councell therein celebrated, against *Arrius*, in defence of the Trinitie, and Christs Diuinitie: Nicomedia, sometimes the Seat of Emperors, now ruinous: Apamia, and Prusa or Bursa, nigh to the Mount Olympus, where the first *Ottomans* had their seat Royall, and all of that race, except the Great Turkes themselues, are still buried: Chalcedon, built eueneteene yeeres before Byzantium; and therefore the builders accounted blinde, which neglected that better Seat. Here was a famous Councell of six hundred and thirtie Bishops, against the Heresie of *Eutyches*: heere *Iason* had built a Temple to *Iupiter*, in the straights which seuer Europe from Asia, after *Melas* measure fiue furlongs. Of their ancient Kings others haue related: but *one* cannot passe this our Historie without obseruation, and that is *Mithridates* [l], the sixth King of that name; who loosing his father in the eleuenth yeere of his age, by his Tutors was treacherously assailed, but escaped, and by vse of that antidote, whilst of him still beareth the name *Mechridate*, out-liued their poysoning conspiracie. Hee liued indeed to the death of thousands, which either his cruelties or his warres consumed. Foure yeeres together (to auoid their Treasons) he liued in the fields, and woods, vnder a shew of hunting; both preueenting their designes, and inuring himselfe to hardnesse. Hee spake two and twentie languages, being Lord of so many Nations. Hee held warres with the Romans six and fortie yeeres, whom those renowned Captaines, *Sylla*, *Lucullus*, *Pompey*, did so conquer, as he alway arose against with great lustre, and with great terror: and at last dyed, nor by his enemies command, but voluntarily in his old age, and his own Kingdome, neuer made to attend the Roman triumphs; *Syllaes* felicity, *Lucullus* prowesse, and *Pompeyes* greatnesse notwithstanding. His aspiring thoughts had greedily swallowed the Soueraignty both of Asia and Europe. He caused in one night, all the Romans in his Dominions to be slaine; in which massacre perished a hundred and fiftie thousand, as some haue numbered. But it cannot be conceiued (saith [m] *Orosius*) how many there were, or how great was the griefe both of the doers and sufferers, when euery one must betray his innocent guests and friends, or hazard his owne life; no Law of Hospitalitie, no Religion of Sanctuary, or reuerence of Images, being sufficient protection. And no maruell, if he spared not his enemies, when [n] he slew *Exipodras* and *Homochares* his sonnes; and after the poysonings and voluntary death of *Monyma* his wife, *Statira* and *Roxane* his daughters; his sonne *Pharnaces* (like to taste of the same cup) won to his part his fathers Armie, sent against him, with which he pursued his father so hotly, that hee, hauing denounced a heauy curse vpon him, entred amongst his Wiues, Concubines, and Daughters, and gaue them poyson, pledging them in the same liquor; which his body accustomed to his *Antidotes*, easily ouer-came, and therefore was faine to intreat another to open a bloudy passage for that his cruell soule. A man (saith *Orosius*) of all men most superstitious, alway hauing with him Philosophers, and men expert in all Arts, now threescore and foureteene yeeres old. The Religion in Pontus was little differing from the Greekes. Wee read of the Sacrifices of this King to *Ceres*, and to *Iupiter Bellipotens*, in which the King brought the first wood to the fire. He powred also thereon Hony, Milke, Wine, Oyle, and after made a Feast. In honour of *Neptune* they drowned Chariots, drawne with foure white Horses, with which (it seemed) they would haue him ease himselfe in his Sea-voyages. [o] At the mouth of Pontus was the Temple of *Iupiter Iasus*, called *Panopeusis*: and nigh thereto, a Promontory sacred to *Diana*, sometime an Iland, ioyned to the Continent by an Earthquake. Hereabouts was the Caue *Acherusium*, whose bottomlesse bottome was thought to reach to Hell.

PONTVS and *BITHYNIA.*

i *D. Niger. Asiae Comm. Magiuus.*

k *Pontice gentes à pontico cognominatae Mela 1. L. Flor. l. 3. c. 5.*

l *Gramoyse. Pontica. Iustin. l. 37. L. Florus. T. Liuij Epitom.*

m *P. Oros. l. 6. cap. 2.*

n *Cap. 5.*

o *Ortel. in Pareig. Dom. Nig. Asiae Comm.*

I may

PAPHLAGONIA.

p *Maginus Gramey. Strab.l.12. Epitom.in Strab.*

q *Magiius.*

I may in the next place set downe Paphlagonia, which, as it fareth with such as haue mighty Neighbours, can scarcely finde her proper limits. Some p reckon it to Galatia, before described; and sometimes Pontus hath shared it: and either the force of Armes, or bountie of Emperours hath assigned it at other times to Phrygia, Cilicia, or other parts, the bounds thereof are thus deliuered: Pontus confineth on the North; on the East, the Riuer Halys; on the South, Phrygia and Galatia; on the West, Bithynia. Of the people hereof, called *Heneti*, some q deriue the Veneti of Italy. They now call it Roni. It had the name Paphlagonia of *Paphlagon*, the sonne of *Phinesu*. The Mount Olgasys is very high, and in the same are many Paphlagonian Temples. Sandaracurgium is another Mountaine, made hollow by the Metall-miners, which were wont to bee slaues redeemed from capitall Sentence, who here exchanged that speedie death for one more lingring. So deadly is the *Alpha* and *Omega*, the beginning and ending, of this *Idoll of the world*: which the Spaniards haue verified in the West, by the destruction of another world. *Vitruuius* tells of a Fountaine in Paphlagonia, as it were mixed with Wine, whereof they which drinke without other liquor, proue drunken.

r *Cel. Rhod. l.18.c.3c.*

Tibareni.

The Heptacometæ and Mossynœci inhabited about those parts; r a people of that beastly disposition, that they performed the most secret worke of Nature in publike view. These are not so much notorious for being worse then beasts, as their neighbours, the Tibareni, for surpassing in iustice other men. They would not warre on their enemy, but would faithfully before relate vnto him the Time, Place, and Houre of their fight; whereas the Mossynœci vsed to assault strangers that trauelled by them very treacherously. They haue also a venomous kinde of Hony, growing out of their trees, with which they beguiled and slew three troupes of *Pompey*. The Tabareni obserued one strange fashion, that when the woman was deliuered of a childe, her husband lay in, and kept his chamber, the women officiously attending him, a custome obserued at this day amongst the Brasilians.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Asia propriè dicta, *now called Sarcum.*

a *Pol.l.5.c.2. Magimus. Ortelius in Parerge.*

b *Vadianus.*

c *Act. 16.6.*

PHRYGIA.

THis Region (in the strict sense) being a particular Prouince of the lesser Asia, is a bounded on the West with part of Propontis, and Hellespont, the Ægean, Icarian and Mertoan Seas; on the South, with the Rhodian Sea, Lycia and Pamphilia: on the East, with Galatia; on the North, with Pontus and Bithynia, and part of Propontis. In which space are contained Phrygia, Caria, and both Mysias, Æolis, Ionia, Doris, Lydia. Some b circumcise from hence both Phrygia, and Mysia, alledging the authoritie of c Saint *Luke*. But in the Apocalypse, Chap. 1. these parts are also added; and, 1. *Pet.* 1. 1.

PHRYGIA is diuided into the greater, which lyeth Eastward; and the lesse, called also *Hellespontiaca* and Troas, and of some Epictetus. The greater PHRYGIA hath not many Cities. Here stood Midaium, the Royall Seat of Mydas, and Apamia, the Phrygian Metropolis. d Phrygia is called of the riuer Phrygx, which diuideth it from Caria. *Herodotus* telleth that e the Phrygians were accounted the most ancient of all people; for the triall whereof *Psammetichus* King of Egypt had shut vp, without societie of any humane creature, two children, which they had learned of the goates; but be cause that (with the Phrygians) signified *bread*, therefore they accounted the Phrygians first authors of mankinde. Before *Deucalions* flood, *Nannacus* f is reported to raigne there, and foreseeing the same, to haue assembled his people in to the Temple, with supplications and prayers. Hence grew the prouerbe to say, A thing was from *Nannacus*, which was exceeding old. Many antiquities are told of their gods; whose Theologie thus is recited g by *Eusebius*. The Phrygians tell, that *Meon* was the most ancient King of Phrygia, the Father of *Cybele*, who inuented the pipe called *Syrinx*, and was named the *Mountaine mother*, beloued of *Marsyas*. But when as *Attis* had raised her belly, her father slaying him, and his fellowes, shee enraged with madnesse, ranne vp and down the countrey. *Marsyas* roamed with her, who after, being ouercome in a Musicall contention of *Apollo*, was slayed quicke. After these things did *Apollo* loue *Cybele*, with whom she wandred to the Hyperboreans: and by his command the bodie of *Attis* was buried, and the young mans death. In Pessinus a City of Phrygia (after reckoned to Galatia) they erected a Temple to *Attis*, and *Cybele*. After the death of *Hyperion*, the children of *Cœlus*

d *Plin.l.5.c.29.*

e *Herodot.l.2.*

f *Suidas.*

g *Euseb. de præp. l.2.4.*

patted

parted the Kingdome amongst them, the most famous of which were *Atlas* and *Saturne*: to the first of which befell the parts adioyning to the Ocean. He had great skill in Astronomy. Of his seuen daughters were procreated many of the Gods and *Heroes*: and of *Maia* the eldest, and *Iupiter*, was *Mercury* begotten. *Saturne* the sonne of *Atlas* being couetous and wicked, martied *Cybele* his sister, and had by her *Iupiter*. They tell of another *Iupiter*, brother of *Cœlus* and King of Crete (but there and here they are so intangled with Fables, that the least inquirie hath most ease, and no lesse certaintie.) This *Cretan* held the Empire of the World, and had ten Sonnes, whom they call *Curetes*; his Sepulchre they shew to this day. *Saturne* (the Brother of *Atlas*) reigned in Italy and Sicilia, till *Iupiter* his Sonne dispossessed him, who proued a seuere Prince to the wicked, and bountifull to the good. Thus much *Eusebius* of the Phrygian Diuinistie out of their owne Legends, the Mysteries whereof he after vnfolideth. Other Tales they had, as that *Minerua* killed there a fire-breathing beast; of *Philemon* and *Baucis*, and such like, mentioned by the Poets. *Meander* making Warres with the Pessinuntians, vowed for Sacrifice whatsoeuer be first met after hee returned with Conquest, which he performed on *Archelaus* his Sonne, ouercomming, h saith one, Pietie with Pietie. Impious is that Pietie which destroyeth Humanitie, and Deuillish cruelties both in the Idoll and Idolater; as appeared also in the euent (if our Story bee true) the father rewarding such Pietie with greater Impietie on himselfe, and casting himselfe into the riuer, left his name therunto. The like is told of the Riuers Sagaris and Scamander. *Hercules* when he went with the Argonautes to Colchos, came on shoare on Phrygia to amend his Oate, and being thirstie sent his sweeting *Hylas* to the riuet for water, who falling therein was drowned, whereupon he (leauing his cõpanions) wandred in the woods, bemoaning his *Hylas*.

h *Gramsp.*

About these times *Tantalus* i liued in these parts, a man besides other vices exceedingly couetous, not sparing the Temples of the Gods. Hence arose the Fable, that he was punished in Hell with perpetuall hunger and thirst, whiles pleasant waters and dainty fruits did offer themselues to his mouth, but when he would haue tasted them, fled from him. So indeed doth *Mammon* torment his followers, making them to want as well that which they haue, as that which they haue not, the Medicine being the increaser of the Disease, as when fire is quenched with Oile: like Gardners Asses laden with good herbs (a burthen to them, food for others) themselues glad to feed on Thistles. And how many *Tantali* do we daily see enduring a hunger and thirst in the midst of their abundance? a monstrous and vnnaturall sicknesse, to hunger after that which they haue; yet cannot, yet will not feed on; a Dropsie-thirst, saue that they dare not drinke that, which they haue and thirst. Vnworthy of that life, which he sacrificeth to that, which neuer had the dignitie to be mortall: vnworthy that body, which he pineth with plenty; or that soule, which he damneth for a fancie of hauing; or that nature of man which he confineth to the Gallies, to the Mynes, in the seruice of a piece of earth, vnworthy of the name of Christian, whose Christ was, to one of his k Fore-fathers, worth thirty pence, but now this will sell him for three halfe pence, for a piece of bread; yea, like *Æsops* Dog, for the shadow of a piece of Bread: vnworthy of any thing, saue that his couetise, to be his Tempter, his Tormentor, his Fury, his Deuill: Once, pitty it is, that he pulzeth a Halter so deare, else would he rid the World of a burthen, and himselfe of his worthlesse life. But whither hath *Tantalus* carried me? Take heed (Reader) he doe not carry thee further, or thou him, beyond words: They say he would haue sacrificed his Sonne *Pephlops*, had nor Diuine power releued him: thou art like to find him *Tantalus* still. What the Poets tell of *Ganymedes* cuety one knowes; of *Niobe* famous for her sonnes & daughters, which she lost all in one day: of *Midas*, (another *Tantalus*) whose couetousnesse became a new *Alchymie* l to turne all into Gold. And how doth this two-fold Alchymie gull the world? the one making with vaine hopes a rich estate become poore, the other with ful haps making all Gold but the Man; onely the Romance m Alchymist is Master of that Art which the former professe, that turnes so easily a little *Lead* into so much good Gold: onely the wiseman, wise in the latter to be Master of himselfe & his wealth, not a slaue to passion or pelse. And yet *Midas* in a publike calamity (hapning by an Earthquake, which swallowed vp Houses) warned by an Oracle, to cast into those gaping jawes of the earth that which was most precious; hurled therein much treasure (what could he thinke more precious: and how much more easily would many a *Mydas* haue hurled in himselfe?) But the Earth not yet satisfied, would not close vp her mouth, till his sonne *Anchurus* (esteeming nae to be most precious) leaped in, and the reconciled Element receiued an Altar in witnesse of his haughty courage. There were many Phrygian Kings named *Midas*.

i A mirrour for *Misers*.

k *Iudas, Mat.* 26.15.

l The Fable was that *Midas* hauing his wish granted, wished all that he touched n [illegible] becomes Gold, and so his meate was Gold and stauetued him.

m *La Noue* Discourse of the Popes Bulls

The Phrygians sacrificed to the riuers *Meander* and *Marsias*: they placed their Priests after death vpon a stone, ten cubits high. They n did not sweare or force others to an oath: they were much addicted to diuination by Birds. *Macrobius* o applyeth their Tales of *Cybele*, and *Atis*, to the Sunne. *Silenus* is reckoned among the Phrygian Deities: whom p *Goropius* fetcheth

n *Stobeus.*
o *Macrob.* l. 1. c. 21.
d *Goropius Becc.*

fercheth out of Scythia, and maketh him *Midas* his Master in Geography and Philosophy: The diligent attendance of the Scholer was occasion to that Fable of his long eares: the learning of the Master gaue him diuine Honours.

p *Ar. l. 2.*

In Phrygia on the riuer Sangarius stood Gordie (or as *Arrianus* p calleth it, *Gordion*) of which he reporteth, that when *Alexander* came thither, he had a great desire to see the Tower, in which was the palace of *Gordius* & *Midas*, that he might behold the shafts or beame of *Gordius* his Cart, and the indissoluble knot fastned thereto. For great was the fame thereof amongst the next adioyning people: that *Gordius* was one of the ancient inhabitants of Phrygia, hauing a little place of ground, and two yokes of Oxen, the one hee vsed to the plough, the other to the Waine or Cart. And while he was one day at plough, an Eagle sate vpon the yoke, and there continued till euening. *Gordius* astonished at so ominous a token, went to the Telmissean Sooth-sayers (for to the Telmissean, both men and women, this diuining science seemed hereditarie) and there met with a Virgin, whom hee acquainted with this accident: she counselled him to returne thither, and to sacrifice to *Iupiter* the King, for the augury was good. *Gordius* entreated her company with him, that she might instruct him how to sacrifice, which shee granted vnto him, and afterwards her selfe also in Marriage. These had betwixt them *Midas*, a proper stripling. Now a sedition happing among the Phrygians, they consulted with the Oracle, which answered that a Cart should bring them a King, that should end that sedition. And whiles they were musing on this answere, *Midas* came riding in his Cart (with his parents) into the throng, and was by the Phrygians forthwith acknowledged King. The Car in memory thereof, was hanged vp to *Iupiter* in the Tower (or Temple of *Iupiter*, so *Curtius* calleth it) with thankes for that Eagle (*Iupiters* bird) sent before to foresignifie thus much to his Father. The knot fastned vnto it, was of the barke of the Cornell or dog-tree, wouen with such Art, that a man could neither finde beginning nor end thereof. Bruted it was amongst the Phrygians, that hee which could vntie it should be Lord of all Asia. *Alexander* turning it to and fro, and with vaine curiositie searching how to loosen it, at last with his sword chopped it in sunder, lest he should otherwise leaue some scruple in the hearts of his Souldiers. Thus farre *Arrianus*.

Qu. Curt. l. 3.

In the LESSER PHRYGIA, (of a Hill herein, called Idæa; of a Riuer, Xanthe, of the Kings, Troas, Dardania, &c.) stood that eye of Asia, and Starre of the East, called *Ilium* or TROY. Of which, all that I can say, will but obscure the renowne and glory which all Heathen Antiquitie haue by an vniuersall consent of Poesie and History giuen to it. And what Greeke or Latine Author hath not mentioned her ruines, and done exequies to her Funerall? *Dardanus* is named her founder, after whom, and his succeeding sonne *Erichthonius*, *Tros* ruled, who erected the Temple of *Pallas*, and reedified the Citie, leaving thereto his name. To him succeeded *Ilus*, and after him his sonne *Laomedon*, whom *Neptune* and *Apollo* helped in repayring the Citie: which *Hercules* sacked, and *Priamus* restored, but to a greater losse, by the Grecians tenne yeeres siege, and one nights spoyle. *Dares*, r and *Dictys*, supposed Historians of those times, besides *Homer*, and the Greekes and Latines his followers, haue more then enough related the particulars. *Hesione*, sister to *Priamus*, was by *Hercules* giuen to *Telamon* for the first entring the walls. Her did *Priam* demand in vaine by *Antenor*, and *Æneas* his Ambassadours. *Paris*, otherwise called *Alexander*, one of the fiftie children of *Priamus* and *Hecuba*, was sent in the same businesse, and returned with *Helena*, the wife of *Menelaus* a Lacedemonian Prince, who consulting with the other Grecian Lords for her recouery, first *Diomedes* and *Vlysses* were sent to intreat; after a thousand sayle of ships, to force her restitution: which after a tedious warre, with much losse on the one side, and vtter ruine on the other, was effected. The league of the Greekes was made by *Calchas*, who diuiding a Boare in two parts, caused the Princes with their swords drawne, and besprinkled with bloud to passe betweene, swearing destruction to *Priamus* and the Troians. The like rites of solemne couenant we read obserued by GOD himselfe: and by the s Iewes.

r *Dares, Dictys, de quibus Scal. in Eu. ad Cas. Isiusmodi. a'ωσβολιμαίων, ἤτοι τοῦτο μονῶδια, &c. ita Vlixes figmenta e rum vocat, qui de bello fame ipsi volerunt iudere. de troia. dictis. Homer. Eurip Virg. Ouid. Horat. Seneca. Silius. Statius. Claud. &c.*

s *Gen. 15. 15.*

t *Iosue. 24. 18.*

The Religion of Phrygia and Troy, and all these Grecian parts of Asia were little, (if little) differing from the Greeke superstitions: of which in our Europe-discoueries wee are to redeuotions. In Troy were the Temples of *Iupiter*, *Hercules*, at whose Altar *Priam* was slaine; *Iupiter Fulminator*, of *Iuno*, *Apollo*, *Minerua*, *Mercury*, *Neptune*. To *Neptune* they which sayled, did sacrifice a Black Bull and Oxen, whose hinder parts were burnt, the inwards they tasted; Rams and Hogges were sacrificed also to him. To *Mercury* clouen tongues hurled into the fire; To *Venus*, on the Hill Ida; To *Scamander*, to the Nymphes in caues. To the dead, also they sacrificed Black Sheepe ouer a ditch or hole in the ground, with wine, water, & flower, thinking that the soules dranke the bloud. They had whole flockes sacred to the Gods, vntouched by men. They obserued auguries, thunders, dreames, Oracles of *Apollo*, and other superstitions. The Trojan Virgins when they were to be married, bathed themselues

selues a little before in Scamander, vsing these words to the Riuer; *Take, O Scamander, my Virginitie.* This gaue occasion to one *Cimon* to deflioure *Callirrhoe*, hauing hidden himselfe in the reeds, and vpon that watch-word lifted vp his Reedie-head, and forced his Maiden-head, which caused the ceasing of that foolish and superstitious custome. But of all their superstition, the most famous was their fatall *Palladium* (a name giuen to all Images, which superstition beleeued not made with his hands) was said to haue fallen from heauen a Pessinus, or (as s *Apollodorus* witnesseth) at Ilium, at the prayer of *Ilus* when he built it. For he hauing a pyed Oxe giuen him by the King of Phrygia, and warned by him to build a Citie where that Oxe should lye downe, followed him to this place, where he built a Citie, which hee called of his owne name *Ilium*; and desiring *Iupiter* to send him some signe, found this Palladium the next morning before his Tent. Some t say *Asius* a Philosopher made it by Magicall Art: *Apollodorus* addeth, that it moued vp and downe, holding in the right hand a Iauelin; in the left, a Distaffe. It was three cubits long. *Apollo's* Oracle fore-warned, that that Citie should neuer be taken, in whose walls it was kept. They hid it therefore in a more secret part of the Tower, that it should not be publikely knowne, making many other like it, to deceiue all future deceiuers. A woman-Priest attended the holy things in honour thereof, keeping fire continually burning. It was valawfull with common hands or eyes to touch or see it. And therefore when *Ilus* saued it from flames, the Temple being on fire, he was for his blind zeale punished with blindnesse; of which, soone after hee recouered by diuine indulgence. *Vlisses* stole it from them. And thus perished that famous Phrygian Citie, if that may be said to perish which still continueth, farre farre more famous, by *Homers* pen, then *Priams* Sceptre, or *Hectors* valour.

s *Apollod. l.3.*

t *Nat. Com. l.3.c.5.*

The ruines thereof are as yet very apparant (according to *Bellonius*, x an eye-witnesse, his report) the walls of the Citie yet standing, the remnants of her decayed building still, with a kinde of Maiestie entertaining the beholder: the walls of large circuit, of great spongie blocke and hard stones, cut foure square. There are yet to be seene the ruinous Monuments of the Turrets on the walls. They spent foure houres, sometime on horse, and sometime on foot, in compassing the walls. Great Marble Tombes of ancient workemanship are seene without the walls, made chest-fashion: and their couers yet whole. There are also extant the ruinous shapes of two great Towers; one in the top of the hill, (on the bending whereof the Towne stood) the other in the bottome: and another in the middle. Many great Cisterns made to receiue raine water are yet whole. There are the ruines also of Churches built there, by the sometime inhabiting Christians. The soile about it is dry and barren: the Riuers (so much chaunted) *Xanthus* and *Simois* are small rilles, in Summer quite dry: as also *Mela* testifieth. *fama quàm natura maiora fluminа.* A later Trauellers y saith, That they are not so contemptible as made by *Bellonius*, who perhaps mistaketh others for them, there being sundry riuolets that descend from the mountaines. He addeth that these ruines are still ruined, and beare not that forme lessened daily by the Turkes, who carried the pillars and stones vnto Constantinople, to adorne the buildings of the great Bassaes, as they now doe from Cyzicus.

x *Bel. l.2.c.8.*

y Mast. Gottg Sandys. l.6.p.1.

This *Ilium* (whose Sepulchre only *Bellonius* hath seene) is not in that place where old *Ilium* stood, but thirtie furlongs Eastward, if *Strabo* z be receiued, yea it changed the place and situation often, and here at last abode, by warning of the Oracle, which also now had his Fates as well as *Ilium*. A small Towne was this later *Ilium*, hauing in it the Temple of *Pallas*, which *Alexander* in his time graced, enriching the Temple with offerings, and the place with name of a Citie, with building and immunitie. After his victory ouer the Persians, hee sent them a fauourable Epistle, with promise to build them a sumptuous Temple, and there to institute sacred games, which *Lysimachus* after his death in great part performed, peopling it from the neighbour Cities. The Romans also planted there a Colonie, when as *Lysimachus* afore had walled it, and built the Temple. *Fimbria*, in the warres against *Mithridates*, hauing treacherously slaine the Consull *Valerius Flaccus*, and seeking to enter, vpon denniall assailed it, and in the eleuenth day entred by force; glorying that he had done as much in eleuen dayes, as *Agamemnon* with a thousand sail of Greeks, had done in ten yeeres. Not so much, replied an *Ilian*, for *Hector* was not heere to defend the Citie. *Cesar*, emulous of *Alexanders* attempts, and deriuing his pedigree from *Iulus*, confirmed their former libertie, adding a new Region to their Territory. *Mela* telleth a strange wonder of the Hill *Idæ*: Soone after midnight they which looke from the top therof, discerne certain disperied fires, which as the light approcheth are more vnited, and at last gathered into one flame, like a fire, which by degrees groweth into a round and huge globe, and then the degrees diminishing in quantitie, but in qualitie of like increasing, is at last taken vp into the Chariot of the Sunne.

z *Lib. 13.*

Achilles among the later *Ilians* enioyed a Temple and a Tombe: *Patroclus* also and *Antiochus* had their Tombes: to them all and to *Aiax* did the *Ilians* sacrifice; an honor denied to

Hercules

Hercules for sacking their Citie: an vniust quarrel, if this yet may be a iust excuse of their partiall superstition. *Thymbra* is a field hard by, through which side th *Thymbræus*, disembocking it selfe into *Scamander* there, where standeth the Temple of *Thymbræan Apollo*.

b Lib. 1.

Arrianus b repoteth, that *Alexander* sacrificed to *Protesilaus*, (erecting Altars on his graue) who was the first of the Grecians, that in the Troian warre set foot in Asia; as he had before in the Straits of Hellespont offered a Bul to *Neptune* and the Sea-Nymphes, powring a golden Viall into the Seaand in the places from whence he set saile, and where he arriued, he set vp Altars to *Iupiter Deceuisor*, to *Pallas*, and to *Hercules*. And being come to *Ilion* he sacrificed to Troian *Pallas*, and fastening the armes, which he vsed, in her Temples, (a rio which the Philistims c obtained in *Saul* their enemy, and *Dauid* d with the armor of *Goliah*, hee tooke thence the armout sacred to the Goddesse; Monuments till that day of the Troian warre, afterward the weapons e of his guard. Hee f appeased also *Priamus* his Ghost, performing his exequies at the Altar of *Iupiter Hircius*, so to reconcile him to *Neoptolemus* his house, of which he, by his mother, descended. He crowned *Achilles* his Tombe: calling him happy e, who had *Homer* to blaze abroad his praises to the world: in which he was greater then *Great Alexander*.

c 1. Sam. 31. 10
d 1. Sam. 21. 9.
e Arcetaspides.
f Curt. l. 2.
g O fortunate young man whose vertue found So brave a Trumpet thy noble deds to sound. Spencer Ruines of Time.

Not farre hence is the Citie and Hauen Priapus, so called of the beastly God: like to *Orthanes* and *Comisalus* and *Tychon*, drunken Gods of the Athenians. This God or Deuill (o more iniquitie, then antiquitie) was not knowne of *Hesiod*. This Region was called *Adrastia* h of King *Adrastus*, who first built a Temple of *Nemesis*, calling it *Adrastia*. In the country adioyning was an Oracle of *Apollo Actæus*, and *Diana*: whose Oratorie being demolished, the stones was carried to Parium, where was built an Altar, famous for fairenesse and greatnesse. Of this Adastria was a Temple at Cyzicus.

h Strab. l. 13.

This Cyzicus was a Citie of MYSIA-MINOR; (for there is another Mysia, called Maior, according to *Ptolomeys* i diuision:) the former is called Olympica, the later by k *Galen* Hellespontica: there is another Mysia in Europe, which *Volateran* distinguisheth, calling it Mæsia. Some ascribe this Cyzicus to Bithynia. We list not to vmpire betwixt Geographers, but to relate our Historie, m which telleth that this Citie was renowned for Antiquitie, giuen by *Iupiter* in dowrie to *Proserpina*; whom thetefore the Inhabitants worship. The greatnesse, beautie, lawes, and other excellencies of Cyzicus let others shew you: their Temple I cannot but stay to view with wonder, n whose pillars are measured foure cubits thicke, fiftie high, each of one stone: in which, the whole building was of polished stone, and euerie stone was ioyned to his fellow with a thread o or line of gold: the Image of *Iupiter* was of Iuory, crowned with a Marble *Apollo*. Such was the beautie of the *worke*, and costlinesse of the *matter*, that the earth, whether with loue seeking to embrace it, or with iust hatred for the idolatrous curiositie, swallowed vp both it and the Citie in an Earthquake. The like befell to Philadelphia, another Mysian Citie (one of *the seuen Churches* p to which *John* writ) and to *Magnesia* q in the same Region. Neere to Cyzicus was the Hill Dyndima: and thereon *Cybele* Temple built by the *Argonautes*: who had also vsed a certaine stone for an anchor, which they fixed sure at Cyzicus with Lead, because it had often plaid the fugitiue, r called therefore the *fugitiue Stone*. The Cyzican Towers yeelded a seuen fold Eccho.

i Ptol. l. 5. c. 2.
k Galdes. sanscuida, l. 5.
Orte. Thesaur.
m Apian. in Mithridatica. Gramty.
n Xiphilinus ex Dione apud Grem.
Pin. l. 5. c. 15.
o Filum aureum
p Apo. c. 3. 7.
q Plin. l. Asia.
r Plin. l. 36. c. 25

The Mysians for their great deuotion were called *smoke-climers*, a fit name for all superstitious. They had in honour the s Nymph *Brythia*: vnder colour of religion the Parians cousened the Lampsacens of a great part of their territory. Of this City was *Priapus* aforesaid, a man monstrous in lusts, admirable in his plentifull issue; hated of the men, (how soeuer of the women beloued) and by them exiled to a wilde life in the field, till a grieuous disease sent amongst them, caused them, by warning of the Dodonæan Oracle to recall him; Fit seruitour for such a god. Hence the tale of his huge Genitals, and of his Garden-deitie. Offering to rauish a Virgin at the time of her wedding, he was scared by the braying of an Asse, a creature for this cause consecrated to sacrifices. Lettice most sutable to such lips.

s Polianus l. 6. ap. Gra.

A little hence standeth Abydus, t where was a famous Temple of *Venus*, in remembrance of their libertie recouered by a Harlot. Ouer against the same on Europe side, was Sestus, chaunted by the Poets, the guard of the Hellespont, one of the keyes (saith *Bellonius*) of the Turkish Empire; the Castles being for that purpose well furnished, the Straits not aboue against the Greekes alone, but against the Elements. To Mount Athos u did this Mount *Atheos* write his menacing Letters. To the Hellespont hee commanded three hundred stipes to be giuen, and fetters to be cast in, with reuiling speeches for the breach of his new-made bridge, which the Sea (disdaining the stopping of his passage, and infringing his liberie) had by tempest broken.

t Cæ. Agrip. de vau. fol. 63.
u Herodot. l. 7.

In Mysia x was that famous Pine-tree, foure and twentie foot in compasse, and growing intire threescore an ten foot from the root, was diuided into three armes equally distant, which

x Strab. l. 13.

which after gathered themselues close into one top; two hundred foot high, and fifteene cubits. *Apollo Cilleus* had a Temple dedicated to him at Cilla; another was erected at Chryse to *Apollo Smynthius*; and twentie furlongs thence, another to *Diana Astirina*; another (with a sacred Cave) at Andira to the mother of the Gods: this Caue reached vnder the earth to Palea, a hundred and thirtie furlongs. *Attalus* reigned in these parts, who furnished the Library of *Pergamus* with two hundred thousand Volumes, for the writing whereof those parchment skins were inuented, therefore called to this day *Pergamene*. Of this name *Attalus* were three of their Kings; the last of which made the Romans his heires. Heere was that cruell Edicts of *Mithridates* published to murther the Romans, whereby many, driuen to seeke helpe of *Æsculapius* in his Temple at *Pergamus*, found him either vnmercifull, or vnskilfull to cure them, although his Physick-shop was in this Citie. Here were inuented (by King *Attalus*) Tapestrie hangings, called *Aulæa* of *Aula* his hall, which was hanged therewith. Here was also a yeerely spectacle of the *Cock-fight*. The Mysian Priests abstained from flesh and marriage. They sacrificed a Horse, whose inward parts were eaten before their owes. *Pergamus.*

South-wards from hence along the Sea-coast, vtendeth *Æolis*: whereunto adioyneth LYDIA, called [p] anciently Asia, and the Inhabitants, Asiones. It was called Mæonia of *Mæones* their first King, who begat *Cotys*, and he, *Attys*, and *Asius*, of whom some say Asia taketh name. *Cambletes* [q] a Lydian King (saith *Athenæus*) was so addicted to gourmanlize, that in the night he did teare and eate his wife; and finding her hand (in the morning) in his mouth, the thing being noysed abroad, he killed himselfe. The same Author telleth [r] of King *Andramytes*, that he made women Eunuches for his attendants: that the Lydians were so effeminate, that they might not endure the Sun to looke vpon them, for which cause they had their shadie bowers: that in a place, therefore called *Impure*, they force women and maidens to their lust, which *Omphale* (who had indured this violence, comming after to beheir Queene) reuenged by as vniust iustice. For assembling all the seruants or slaues, shee put vp among them their masters daughters, permitting them to their pleasures. Shee was slaughter of *Iardanus* of the posteritie of *Atius*, who set *Hercules* his taske to spin amongst her maides. Her husband *Timolus* deflowred *Arripbe* in *Diana's* Temple. Of him haply was named the hill Timolus, which yeelded golden sands to the Riuer Pactolus. *Halyattis* [s] was after a long succession the Lydian King, father to *Cræsus*, whose Sepulchre was an admirable Monument, being at the bottome stone; elsewhere, earth: built by men and women, slaues, and hired persons. It is six furlongs in compasse, and two hundred foot; and a thousand and three hundred foot broad. All the daughters of the Lydians prostitute themselues, and thereby get their liuing and dowrie. These were the first inuenters of coyning money: the first Huesters and Pedlers: the first players at Dice, Balls, Chesse, in the time of *Attys* the first: driuen to this shift by famine, which when they knew not otherwise to redresse, they deuised these games, passing the time of euery second day with these pastimes, then beguiling their emptie bellies, and (according to their ominous inuention) now not so much the companions, as the hatbengers and forerunners of emptinesse, although some contrarie to their first originall, vse them to ease their fulnesse. Thus did the Lydians liue (if *Herodotus* be beleeued) two and twentie yeeres, eating and playing by course, till they were faine to diminish their multitudes by sending Colonies vnder *Tyrrhenus* vnto that part of Italy, which [t] of him receiued that name.

LYDIA.

[p] *Strabo l. 14.*

[q] *Athen. l. 10. c. 14. ex Xantho Lydo.*

[r] *Lib. 1. c. 4.*

[s] *Herodot. 1.*

[t] *Silius l. 4.*

Here on the winding streames of *Meander* (or nigh thereto) was situate *Magnesia*, (not that by *Harmus*) whose Inhabitants worshipped the *Dyndimene Mother of the Gods*. But the old Citie and Temple perishing and a new builded, the Temple was named of *Diana Leucobryna*, exceeding that of Ephesus in workmanship, but exceeded in greatnesse and multitude of oblations. And yet this was the greatest in Asia, except the Ephesian and Dindymene. Of Tralles a neighbouring Citie was *Metrodorus* the Priest of *Iupiter Larysseus*. In the way from thence [u] to Nyssa, is a Village of the Nyssæens, Acharaca. There is the Plutonium (compassed with a Groue) and the Temple of *Pluto* and *Iuno*, and the Caue Charonium, admirable to the view, ouer-hanging the Groue, which it threatneth, seeming to deuoure it. They say, that sicke men, which are deuoted to those Gods, goe thither, and in a street neere the Caue, stay with such as are expert in those mysteries, who sleeping for them, inquire the course to cure them by streames. These inuoking diuine remedies many times lead them into the Caue, where abiding many dayes with fastings, and sweatings, they sometimes intend to their owne streames, by the counsells of the Priests. To others this place is pestilent and inaccessible. Here are yeerely festiuals solemnized, and then most of all are these deuotions practised. Youths and stripling naked and anointed, draw or lead a Boll into the same Caue with great speed, who falls anon dead. Thirtie furlongs beyond Nyssa is a festiuall place solemnly

[u] *Strab. l. 14.*

frequented by the neighbouring Inhabitants, which is said to haue a Caue dedicated to the same Gods, and reaching to Acharaca.

After *Omphale, Hercules* posteritie, which he had by her, raigned: carrying for their royall Ensigne that Battle-axe, which *Hercules* had taken from *Hippolita* the Amazon. *Candaules* vsearie of the burthen, gaue it to one of his Courtiers to beare, interpreted an ominous presage of that which happened. He thinking it not enough happinesse to enioy the beauties of his wife, vnlesse some other eyes were witnesses of his possession, placed *Gyges* his friend where he might see vnseene (happily the occasion of that x Tale of *Gyges* Ring, where with he went inuisible) to take view of his wiues nakednesse. But being perceiued by her at his departure, shee put him soone after to his choyce, whether hee would enioy what hee had seene, and the Kingdome for dowrie, without other ioynture then *Candaules* bloud, or would there himselfe bee slaine. Easie to iudge his choyce, by which *Heroulus* his race failed. Of him descended *Croesus*, whose History is knowne. Him did *Cyrus* ouerthrow, y and had set him on a pyle of wood to burne him, who then cryed *Solon, Solon, Solon:* which *Cyrus* not vnderstanding, caused him to be asked, why he so called: he answered, That sometimes drunken with wealth and pleasure, he thought himselfe happy, but then was taught by *Solon*, not to iudge any happy till his end; which lesson hee now learned to his cost: to his good indeed; for *Cyrus* for this pardoned his life, now the second time saued: which a little before a Souldier in taking the Citie had bereaued, had not naturall affection in his sonne (before this time dumbe) violently inforced Nature to loosen the instruments of speech, and proclaime, *It is the King*. Thus had the Oracle prophesied, that the day would be dismall and disastrous to the father, when the sonne should speake (whereto hee had before in vaine sought hope of God and men) and he could speake freely all his life after. And this was all that *Croesus* by his sumptuous z prefents, and superstitious deuotion could get of *Apollo*, which had foretold him, what he himselfe had no power to auert or alter, not to speake of his enigmaticall answeres, snares, not instructions; nocuments, not documents vnto him.

x *Cic. Off. 3.*

y *Herodot. l. 1.*

z *Croesus* had bin exceeding liberall to *Apollo*, who deluded his Votaries with riddles, as is more Persian relation on you may reade.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Ionia and other Countries in that Chersonesus.

IONIA.

IONIA is situate on the Icarian Sea, ouer against the Iland Chios. The Inhabitants are accounted Athenian Colonies (whereas Athens may rather seeme to bee Ionian) deducing their name from a *Ion* the sonne of *Creusa* and *Xuthus*. But more probable is b their opinion which deriue them from *Ianus*, as is c before obserued by vs. Of the Ionians in Asia, were reckoned ten principall Cities in the Continent, Miletus, Myus, Priene, Ephesus, Colophon, Lebedus, Teos, Clazomenæ, Phocæa, Erythræa, besides Chios and Samos in the Ilands, to which they imparted their names.

a *Callius Rhod. lib. 7. 10. Euseb. l. 3.*

b *Ar. Monton. 1 v. Iunius, &c.*

c *Lib. 1. c. 8.*

The Ionians had their common Sacrifices and Ceremonies at the Promontorie of Mycale, generally by all the Ionians dedicated to *Neptune Heliconius*, erecting there vnto him a Temple: the place was called Panionium, and the feast in which those sacrifices were offered, Panionia. To those twelue Cities, d *Strabo* mentioning the founders of them, addeth also Smyrna, and saith, that they were called to the Panionian solemnities by the Ephesians, who were sometime called Smymæans of *Smyrna* the Amazon, who is named the founder of Ephesus. Against those Smymæans the Sardians warred, and would on no condition raise their siege, except the Smymæan Matrons were permitted to their lusts. e The maide-seruant of one *Philarchus* amongst them deuised, that those of her condition might in their Mistresses habite be sent, to saue their Masters beds, which was accomplished.

d *Strab. l. 14.*

e *Gram. 3.*

EPHESVS.

As for EPHESVS, the place was designed by Oracle for the building thereof, which warned them there to build, where a Fish aid a Bore should shew them. It happened, that as certaine Fishermen at the sacred fountaine Hypeleus were broyling their fish, one of them leaped with the coales into an heape of straw, which thereby was fired; and a Bore which lay couered therein, leaping out, came from thence as farre as *Trachea*, and there fell downe dead of a wound which they gaue him, grunting out his last gaspe, where *Pallas* after was honoured with a Temple. Greater then *Pallas* and her swinish deuotion, was that f *Gram.* *Diana of the Ephesians*, (so proclaimed in the madnesse of their zeale) and *that Image which came downe from Iupiter, which all Asia and the world worshipped.* This Image (as g *Plinie* writeth) was thought by some to be of Ebonie; but *Mattianus* thrice Consul, writ, That it was of the Vine, neuer changed in seuen alterations or restitutions, which the Temple receiued. It had many holes filled with Spikenard, the moysture whereof might fill and close vp the rifts. The doores

f *Act. 19. 17, 28.*

g *Plin. l. 19. c. 40*

doores of the Temple were of Cypresse, [h] which after foure hundred yeeres were as fresh as if they had beene new. The roofe of the Temple was Cedar. The Image, which superstition supposed came from *Iupiter*, was made (saith the same *Mutianus*) by one *Canetia*. The Temple (reputed one of the worlds seuen wonders) was first the building of the Amazons, as *Solinus* affirmeth. But [i] *Pausanias* reproueth *Pindarus*, for affirming that the Amazons had built it, when they made their Expedition against *Theseus* and the Athenians: for at that time (saith he) the women going from Thermiodon, sacrificed to the *Ephesian Diana* in their way, as they had done before in the times of *Hercules* and of *Bacchus*. Not the Amazons therefore, but one *Crœsus* of that Countrey, and *Ephesus* (supposed the sonne of the Riuer *Cayster*) founded it. Of him the Citie also receiued her name. About the Temple dwelt both diuers other supplants, and women of the Amazonian race. These were spared by *Androclus* the sonne of *Codrus*, who here planted his Athenian Colonie, and chased out the *Leleges*, which before were the Inhabitants; who being slaine in this Expedition, his Sepulchre remained in *Pausanias* his time, on which was set a man armed. *Xerxes* when hee burned all other Temples in Asia, spared this, vncertaine whether for admiration or deuotion; most certaine, a bootless clemencie. For [k] *Herostratus*, to lengthen the memory of his name with detestation of his wickednesse, fired this Temple on that day in which *Alexander* was borne at Pella. *Diana* forsooth, (who in her Midwife-Mysterie is called also *Iuno Lucina*) in her officious care to helpe *Olympias* in her trauell, was then absent. It was after restored to a greater excellencie by *Dinocrates*, or (as *Strabo* termes him) *Chermocrates*, who was also the Architect of Alexandria. Some [l] affirme, That two hundred and twentie yeeres were spent in building this Temple, by all Asia: *Plinie* saith, foure hundred. It was built on a Marish, because of Earthquakes (which are said to be more common in Asia then other parts) being founded on Coles, the second foundation Wooll. There were therein an hundred twentie seuen Pillars, the workes of so many Kings, threescore foot in height, and sixe and thirtie of them very curiously wrought. The Temple was foure hundred twentie fiue foot long, two hundred and twentie broad; of the Ephesians holden in such veneration, that when *Crœsus* had besegirt them with a straight siege, [m] they deuoted their Citie to their Goddesse, tying the wall thereof with a rope to the Temple. It was enriched and adorned with gifts beyond vaine. It was full of the workes of *Praxiteles* and *Thrasa*.

The Priests were Eunuches, [n] called *Megalobyzi*, greatly honoured, and had with them sacred Virgins. Some [o] call these, or else another order of *Diana's* Priests, *Essitatores* and *Essenæ*, that is, Good fellowes (after the appellation of this bad age) which by yeerely courses had a peculiar diet assigned them, and came in no priuate house. All the Ionians resorted to Ephesus, [p] at *Diana's* festiuall, which with daunces and other pompe they solemnized, with their wiues and children, as they had done before at Delos: the Temple had priuiledge of Sanctuarie, which *Alexander* extended to a furlong, *Mithridates* to a flight-shot, *Antonius* added part of the Citie: But *Augustus* disanulled the same, that it should no longer bee a harbour for villaines. This the Romans finde (saith [q] Roman Pope relating this Historie) among whom are so many Sanctuaries, as Cardinals houses, in which theeues and ruffians haue protonage, which make the Citie (otherwise quiet and noble) a *denne of theeues*. A lake named *Selinusius*, and another which floweth into it, were *Diana's* patrimonie, which by some Kings being taken from her, were after by the Romans restored. And when the Publicans had seized the profits, *Artimedorus* was sent in Ambassage to Rome, where hee recouered them to *Diana*, for which cause they dedicated to him a golden Image in the Temple. In the midst of the lake was the Kings Chappell, accounted the worke of *Agamemnon*. *Alexander* [r] not onely restored the Ephesians to their Citie, which for his sake they had lost, and changed the gouernment into a popular state, but bestowed also the tributes, which before they had paied to the Persians, vpon *Diana*, and caused them to be slaine which had robbed the Temple, and had ouerthrowne the Image of *Philip* his father therein, and such of them as had taken Sanctuarie in the Temple he caused to be fetched out and stoned. While hee staied at Ephesus, hee sacrificed to *Diana* with very solemne pompe, all his Armie being arranged in battell array. But this Temple of *Diana*, together with their *Diana* is perished: But neuer shall that Truth perish, which *Paul* writ in his Epistle to them; for obseruing which by Christ himselfe in another Epistle written by S. *Iohn*, they are commended [s] and which in a Councell there holden, was confirmed against the Heresie of *Nestorius* and *Celestius*. But alas, that *golden Candlesticke* (as was threatned) is now almost by Greekish superstition and Turkish tyrannie *remoued* thence: a Bishop with some remnants of a Church still continuing.

The Ephesians were obseruers of curious Arts, which not onely *Luke* [t] mentioneth, but the proueribe also confirmeth [u], *Ephesæ literæ*: so they called the spells, wherebey they made themselues invnrestling, and other conflicts, inuincible. The summe of those Magicall bookes

h *Solinus c. 40.*

i *Pausanias. lib.*

k *Lucian de morte peregrini.*

l *N. Pirot. Cornucopiæ. Munst. Cosm. l. 5. Plin. l. 36. c. 40.*

m *Herodot. l. 1.*

n *Strab. l. 14.*

o *Gramay. Ionius.*

p *Thucyd. l. 3.*

q *Pius secundus Asia.*

r *Arrian. l. 1.*

s *Apoc. 2.*

t *Alb. Magnus.*

u *Suidas.*

burned by them, *Luke* rateth at 50000. pieces of siluer, which *Budæus* summeth at 5000. Crownes. The many Temples [u] of *Venus* at Ephesus, are not worth memorie. Memorable is the History of an Ephesian maid, [x] who, when *Brennus* inuaded Asia, promised him her loue (which he much desired) and withall, to betray the Citie to him, if hee would giue her all the Iewels and Attire of the women; which the Souldiers were commanded to doe, who heaped their gold so fast vpon the Damosell, according to their command, that shee was therewith couered and slaine. The *Asiarche*, which *Luke* [y] nameth, *Beza* [z] saith were certaine Priests, whose office it was to set forth publike playes and games in honor of their Gods; as also were the *Syriarche*. The Ephesians, [a] as all other Ionians, were much addicted to niceness and sumptuousnesse of attire, for which, & other their delicacies, they grew into a prouerbe.

Bud. de Asse l.5.
u *Agrip. de V.S. c.63.*
x *Celius lect. antiq. l.8. c.13.*
y *Acts 19.*
z *Beza annot.*
a *Atheneus l.12.9.*

The Ionians had other places and Temples amongst them, famous for deuotion and antiquitie, such as no where else are to be seene, as the Temple and Oracle of *Apollo* at Gemini. Myus [b] had a small arme of the Sea, whose waters by the means of *Meander* sayling, the soyle brought forth an innumerable multitude of fleas, which forced the Inhabitants to forsake their Citie, and with bagge and baggage to depart to Miletus. And in my time (saith *Pausanias*) nothing remaineth of Myus, in Myus, but *Bacchus* Temple. The like befell to the Atarnitæ neere to Pergamus. The Persians burnt the Temple of *Pallas* at Phocea, and another of *Iuno* in Samos, the remaines whereof are worthy admiration: the Erythræan Temple of *Hercules*, and of *Pallas* at Prienæ; that for antiquitie, this for the Image. The Image of *Hercules* is said to be brought in a ship which came (without mans helpe) to the Cape, where the Chians and Erythræans laboured each to bring the same to their owne Citie. But one *Phormio* a Fisher-man of Erythræa was warned in a dreame, to make a rope of the haires cut off from the heads of the Erythræan Matrons, by which their husbands should draw the same to the Towne. The women would not yeeld; but certaine Thracian women which had obtained their freedome, granted their haire to this purpose, to whom therefore this priuiledge was granted, to enter into *Hercules* Temple, a thing denied to all other the Dames of Erythræa. The rope stil remaineth: and the Fisher-man which before was blinde, recouered his sight. In this Towne also is *Minerues* Temple, and therein a huge Image of Wood, sitting on a Throne, holding with both hands a Distaffe. There are the *Graces* and *Hours*, formed of white Marble. At Smyrna was the Temple of *Æsculapius*: and nigh to the Springs of the Riuer Meles, a Caue, in which they say *Homer* composed his Poems. Thus much *Pausanias*. The Ionian [c] letters were more resembling the Latine, then the present Greeke are, and were then common, as in our first Booke is shewed in our Phœnician Relations.

b *Pausan. Achaica, lib. 7.*
c *Scaliger. in Euseb. Chron. annotat.*

At Miletus, a mad phrensie had once possessed their Virgins, where by it came to passe, that they in great multitudes hanged themselues. Neither cause appeared, nor remedie: Needs must they goe whom the Deuill driues. Whom [d] neither the sweetnesse of life, bitternesse of death, teares, intreaties, offers, custodie of friends could moue, Modestie detained from proceeding in this immodest butcherie: and which is more to be wondred at, a *Posthume* modestie, which could not be borne, till they were dead. For a Law was made, That the naked bodies of such as had thus strangled themselues, should bee drawne through the streets: which contumely, though it were but a Gnat to those Camels, which with the halter they swallowed, yet strained they at it, and it could not bee digested, but stayed their fury. Before the Troian warre, was *Hercules* famous at Militus. The Ionians were subiect to the Assyrians; after that to the Egyptians; next to the Lydians, Persians, and the other Empires, which successively followed.

d *Polyen. lib. 3. Stratagem.*

From Ephesus to Colophon are seuentie furlongs. This Towne grew into a Prouerbe; for [e] thought their excellencie in Horse-manship they vsually made the victorie (otherwise doubtfull) to bee certaine on that side which entertained them. Before Colophon was the Groue of *Apollo-Clarius*. And here dyed *Calchas*, that famous wizard for griefe, that when vpon his demand *Mopsus* had certainly answered how many Pigs were in the belly of a Sow, by him propounded: *Calchas* could not doe the like, when *Mopsus* asked of the number of Figs growing on a Fig-tree thereby.

e *Colophon, cum addere Rhos. Ad.*

Not farre from hence is Erythræ, the Towne of one of the *Sybils*, which liued in the time of *Alexander*, of which name also there were others in other places and times, renowmed for their prophesyings. Beyond Clazomenæ is the Temple of *Apollo*, and Smyrna famous in those blinde times, for the Temple and Statue of *Homer*; since, for the Prelacie of *Polycarpus*, whom our Lord himselfe so highly commendeth. *Plinie* [f] writeth of one in Smyrna, which being a maide, changed her sexe, and became a stripling: of which fort he affirmeth he had seene one in Africa, then liuing when hee writ, which on her marriage day sustained that alteration. *Phlegon* relateth of *Philotis*, another Smyrnæan maide, thus made a male. *Pontanus* telleth the like of a woman at Cseræ, married to a Fisher foure yeeres, and of another the wife of *Antonio Spensa* twelue yeeres, which after married a wife and had children.

Apocal. 2. 9.
f *Plin. l. 7. c. 4. Plutarch. vita legis 49. De l. Dis. Mag. & Mauil. D. 6.*

And

And in late times Spaine hath yeelded two such examples; of which I list not to play the Philosopher, whether they were imperfect males, or perfect Hermaphrodites. But to hold on our Asian iourney. *Neleus* builded Miletus (who also erected the Altar at Possidium.) The Milisian Oracle was sacred to *Apollo Didymeus* [g] amongst the Branchidæ, who betrayed the treasures of their God to *Xerxes* the burner of their Temple; and therefore for feare of punishment followed him after his flight. Afterwards the Milesians builded a Temple, which for the exceeding greatnesse remained without roofe, compassed with dwelling-houses, and a Grove, adomed sumptuously with gifts of ancient workemanship. Here was the Legend framed of *Branchus* and *Apollo*, whom they called *Ulios* and *Artemis*, of healing. Neere vnto the Temple of *Neptune* at Possidium was Heræum, an old Temple and Oratory, after conuerted into a Store-house, but then also retaining diuers Chappels full of old workes, as was also a Court-yard without, from whence when *Antonius* had taken three Colosses (the worke of *Miro*) standing on one basis, *Augustus* placed there againe *Pallas* and *Hercules*, but translated *Iupiter* to the Capitoll, and built him a Chappell.

Solmissus is not farre from hence, where the *Curetes* or Priests of *Iupiter* dulled the eares of *Iuno* with the sound of weapons, whiles *Latona* was deliuered. Heere were many Temples, some old, some new. The [h] *Curetes* or *Corybantes*, for so they were also termed, were a shauen order of Priests, who, rauished with a sacred fury, played vpon Cimbals, and danced, shaking their heads to and fro, drawing others into the same rage of superstition. These first began their deuotions at Ida, a Hill of Phrygia, and after sailed into Crete, and here with their furious sounds they deliuered *Iupiter* from *Saturnes* gullet (who had before couenanted with *Titan* to kill all his male children) while hee could not by meanes of their noyse heare *Iupiters* crying. *Diodorus Siculus* writeth, That *Corybantus* was the sonne of *Iason* and *Cybele*, and with *Dardanus* brought into Phrygia the rites of the Mother of the Gods, and calleth his Disciples in that sect *Corybantes*. *Natalis Comes* [i] trauerseth many opinions about their originall and rites: their dances were in armour.

The Region of the Dorians was almost rounded with the Sea; Herein was Gnidus a City of name for the Marble Image of *Venus*: and Halycarnassus, the Countrey of *Herodotus* and *Dionysius* famous Historians, and of *Mausolus*, whose Sepulchre, erected by *Artemisia* his wife and sister, was accounted one of the worlds seuen wonders.

In the Suburbes of Stomalymne was the Temple of *Æsculapius* of great reputation, and riches. In it was *Antigonus* of *Apelles* workmanship: there was also *Venus* naked, after dedicated to *Cæsar* at Rome, as the mother of that Generation by *Augustus*.

Neere to Bargolia was a Temple of *Diana*. Mylasa another Citie of Caria had many publike buildings and faire Temples; among the rest, two of *Iupiter*, (surnamed *Osogo*) in the one; and in the other, *Labrandenus*, of Labranda a Village, a little off, which had an ancient Temple of *Iupiter Militaris* much frequented. The way leading thither was called Sacred, paued sixtie furlongs, through which their Procession passed in pompous solemnitie. The noblest of the Citizens were ordained Priests, which function dured with their liues.

There is a third Temple of *Iupiter Carius*, common to all the *Carians*, of which also the Lydians and Mysians are partakers. *Strabo* reporteth of [k] two Temples, at Stratonica, one at Lagina, sacred to *Hecate*, where were celebrated yeerely solemnities; the other neere the City of *Iupiter Chrysaoreus* common to all the Carians, whither they resort to sacrifice, and to consult of common affayres: which their assembly is called *Chrysaoreas*. In Caria was Alabanda, a Citie of no great note, except for that notorious, impious, and impudent flattery of theirs in building a Temple to ROME, and appointing annuiversary games to bee there celebrated, in honour of this new Goddesse; that Citie (since the mother of whoredome to the Christian world) euen then receiuing without scorne of the giuers, or shame of the present, the title of deitie (they are the words of a worthy [l] Historian of ours) at the gift of such a rascall Citie as Alabanda.

LYDIA, called also [m] *Maonia*, was a rich Countrey, whose mother Citie was Sardis, the Royall Seat of *Crœsus*, washed by golden *Pactolus*, where idlenesse was a speciall fault, and punished by the Law. Fiue miles from the Citie is a Lake called *Colous*, where is the Temple of *Diana Coloena*, very religiously accounted of, wherein on their festiuals, Apes were reported to dance. The Region, called *Burned*, stretcheth it selfe heere, about the space of fiue hundred furlongs, mountainous, stony and black, as if it were of some burning, wanting trees altogether (Vines excepted) which yeeld a verie pleasant Wine. Heere was another Plutonium at *Hierapolis* ouer against *Laodicea*. It was a hole in the brow of a Hill, so framed, that it might receiue the bodie of a man, of great depth. Below it was a squared trench of halfe an acre compasse, so cloudie and darke, that the ground could scarcely bee seene. The ayre is not hurtfull to them which approach; but within it is deadly. *Strabo* put in Sparrowes, which presently dyed. But the gelded Priests, called *Galli*, might approch to the

g *Mela. Herm. Barb. Cassig.*

h *Dict. Hist.*

i *Nat. Co. l. 9. c. 7*

Mela. l. 1. c. 16.

k *Lib. 14.*

l *S. W. R. hist. of the Wal. 5. c. 6. §. 6.*

LYDIA.

m *Ælian. lib. 4. Strabo. lib. 13.*

the mouth, and looke in, and diue in as long as they could hold their breath, without harme, but not without signes of working passions, whether of diuine inspiration, or reluctation of the naturall forces. No lesse maruellous then the dampe of the ayre, is the hardning qualitie of the waters, which being hot, doe harden themselues into a kinde of stone. n *Warner* mentioneth the like in Hungarie, and *Acosta*, in Peru. Those *Galli* heere mentioned with Priests of *Cybele*, so called of *Gallus*, a Riuer in Phrygia; o the waters whereof, temperately drunken, did exceedingly temper the braine, and take away madnesse; but being sucked in largely, caused madnesse. These Priests drinking heereof vnto madnesse, in that fury gelded themselues, and as their beginning, so was their proceeding also in madnesse, in the execution of their rites, shaking and wheeling their heads like mad-men. *Volateran* P out of *Polyhistor* reporteth, that one *Gallus* the companion of *Attys* (both gelded) imposed this name on the Riuer, before called Teria. Of *Cybele* and *Attys* we haue spoken before. I adde, that after some, this *Attys* was a Phrygian youth, which when hee would not listen to *Rhea* in her amorous suites, gelded himselfe; so consecrating his Priesthood vnto *Rhea* or *Cybele*: others q affirme, that shee preferred him to that Office, first hauing vowed perpetuall chastitie, and breaking his Vow, was punished with madnesse, in which r hee dismembred himselfe, and would also haue killed himselfe, but that by the compassionate Goddesse hee was turned into a Pine-tree. That the Fable I this the History! that these gelded Priests wore also long womannish attire, played on Tymbrels and Cornets, sacrificed to their Goddesse the ninth day of the Moone; at which time they set the Image of the Goddesse on an Asse, and went about the Villages and Streets, begging with the sound of their sacred Tymbrell, corne, bread, drinke, and all necessaries, in honour of their Goddesse: as they did also in the Temples, begging money in her name, with some musicall Instruments; and were therefore called *Matragyrtæ*. Thus did the Priests of *Corona* also begge for the maintenance of their Goddesse, with promises of good fortune to their liberall contributors. *Lucian* in his *Asinus* relateth the like knaueries of the Priests of *Dea Syria*. Concerning his Image, *Albricus* thus purtrayeth it: A Virgin sitting in a Chariot, adorned with varietie of gemmes and metals. Shee is called Mother of the Gods and Giants: these Giants had Serpentine feet, one of which number was *Titan*, who is also the Sunne, who retayned his Deitie, for not ioyning in conspiracie against the Gods with his brethren. This Chariot was drawne with Lions. Shee wore on her head a Crowne fashioned like a Tower. Neere her is painted *Attys* a naked boy, whom in iealousie shee gelded. *Macrobius* applies this to the Sunne: t *Boccace* to the Earth (Mother indeed of the Ethnike Deities, which were *earthly, sensuall, deuilish*) who addeth to that former description of *Albricus*, a Scepter in her hand, her garment embroydered with branches and herbs, and the *Galli*, her gelded attendants with Trumpets. The interpretation whereof, they which will may reade in him, as also in *Phornutus*, *Fulgentius* and others, with many other particulars of her Legend. *Claudian* calls her both *Cybele* and *Cybelle*, which name *Stephanus* thinketh she received of a Hil of that name in Phrygia (as doth *Hesychius* likewise) so was shee called *Dyndimena* of the Hill *Dindymus*. I could weary the Reader with long narrations out of *Pausanias*, *Arnobius*, *Lilius Gyraldus* and others, touching these things: but in part wee haue before shewed them in our narrations of *Adonis* in Phœnicia, & of the Syrian goddesse (to which *Phornutus* referreth this) and when we come to a larger handling of the Grecian Idolatries, we shall finde more fit occasion.

It is now high time to leaue this (properly called) Asia, and to visit LYCIA, washed by the Sea two hundred miles, wherein the mount Taurus ariseth, hence stretching it selfe Eastward, vnder diuers appellations, vnto the Indian Sea. They were gouerned by common Councell of three and twentie Cities, till the Romans subdued them. Here was Cragus, a Hill with eight Promontories, and a Citie of the same name, from whence arose the Fables of *Chymera*. At the foot of the Hill stood Pinara, wherein was worshipped *Pandarus*: and a little thence the Temple of *Latona*; and not farre off, *Patara*, the worke of *Patarus*, beautified with a Hauen, and many Temples, and the Oracles of *Apolle*, no lesse famous (if *Mela* bee beleeued) for wealth and credit, then that at Delphos. The Hill *Telmessus* was here famous for Soothsayings; and the Inhabitants are accounted the first Interpreters of Dreames. Here was *Chymera* a Hill, said to burne in the night. PAMPHYLIA beareth Eastwards from Lycia, and now together with CILICIA of the Turkes, is called CARAMANIA. Herein was Perga, neere whereunto on a high place stood the Temple of *Diana Pergæa*, where were obserued yeerely Festiuals. Sida had also in it the Temple of *Pallas*.

There remaine of this *Chersonessus*, t ARMENIA *minor*, and *Cilicia*. u *Armenia minor*, called also *Prima*, is diuided from the Greater, or Turcomania, by Euphrates on the East: it hath on the West Cappadocia, on the South Cilicia, and part of Syria; on the North the Pontike Nations. It was sometimes reckoned a part of Cappadocia,

n As strange is that which is reported of the waters of the lake Tatta, that if a rope be drawne thorow it, or a bird touched it with her wings they are kerned with salt.

o *Warn. de aqua Hungarie.*

p *Vol. l. 1 to.*

q *Natal. Com. lib 9. cap. 5.*

r *Macr. Sat. l. 1. cap 21.* calls him *Attinis*, and apply. th this as the tale of *Pyramus* and *Adonis*, to the Sunne and Earth in the Winter. *Cybele* is drawne with Lions, which signifieth the influence of the Heauens, *Attinis* by purtrayed with his rodde, the marke of his power, and a pipe, noting the windes caused by the Sunne. Their mourning ended on the eight Kalends of April: the first day in which the Sun maketh the day longer then the night, they solemnized the Feast, call. d *Hilaria. Sic lib. 1. c. 17. de Phen.*

s *Boc Genealog. Deor. lib. 2.*

t *Dam. Nigr.* ARMENIA *minor.*

docia, till the Armenians by their inuasions and Colonies altered the name: As for their rites I finde little difference, but they either resemble the Cappadocians, or their Armenian Ancestors.

CILICIA abutteth on the Eastern borders of Pamphylia, and was diuided into Trachea, and Campestris; now hath in it few people, many great Mesquitaes, and well furnished; the chiefe Citie is Hamsa, [u] sometime called *Tarsus*, famous for the studies of learning, herein (saith *Strabo*) surmounting both Athens and Alexandria; but most most famous for yeelding him to the world, then whom the whole world hath not happily yeelded any more excellent that was meerely a man, that *great Doctor of Nations*, who filled these Countries and all Regions, from *Ierusalem euen to Illyricum*, (now full of barbarisme) by preaching, and still filleth the world by his writings, with that truth which hee learned, not of man, nor at Tarsus the greatest Schoole of humanitie, nor at Ierusalem the most frequented for Diuinitie, but of the *Spirit of Truth* himselfe: who both was at first from Heauen conuerted, and after in the *third Heauen* confirmed in the same. *CILICIA.* u *Strabo.*

Strabo mentioneth the Temple and Oracle of *Diana Sarpedonia* in Cilicia; where being inspired, they gaue answeres. The Temple of *Iupiter* also at Olbus, the worke of *Aiax*. From Anchiale, a Cilician Citie, *Alexander* passed to Solos, where hee sacrificed with prayses to *Æsculapius*, for recouery from a strong Feuer, gotten before in the waters of Cidnus, and celebrated Gymnicall and Musicall [x] Games. The Corycian and Triphonian Dennes or Caues were held in much veneration among the Cilicians, where they sacrificed with certaine Rites: They had their Diuination by Birds and [y] Oracles. Of the Corycian Denne or Caue (so called of the Towne *Corycos*, almost compassed with the Sea) *Mela* [z] writeth, that from the Hill which ascendeth the space of ten furlongs, this Caue or strange Valley descendeth by degrees, the further, the more spacious, enuironed with a greene circle of pleasant shadie Groues, filling the eyes and minde at once, with pleasure and wonder. There is but one passage into it, and that narrow and rough, which continueth a mile and halfe vnder delightfull shades, the Rills running heere and there, resounding I know not what strange noyse in those darkened Bowers. When they are come to the bottome, another Caue presently presents it selfe, which terrifieth those that enter, with the multiplied sounds of Cymbals and vncouth minstrelsie. And the light fayling by degrees, it brings them into a darke vault, where a Riuer riseth; and hauing runne a swift course in a short channell, is againe drunke vp of the earth: so soone dieth that streame which is yet immortall, the Earth dealing with this, that as some with their children begotten and borne in *darknesse*, smothering that breath which but euen now from them they receiued, alway bearing, and alway barren. There is a further passage, but none durst view it, possessed with a superstitious fancie of the Gods inhabiting; that conceit presenting all things to the minde as venerable and full of Deitie, which to the sense were dreadfull and full of horror. Beyond this was the Tryphonian, alway couered with a blacke mantle of darkenesse, fabulously supposed the bed of *Typhon*, and naturally exstinguishing the naturall life of whatsoeuer entred. x *Ardibus.* y *Gramais.* z *Mela.*

Vnto these things which haue beene said of the Temples, Priests, and Rites, obserued in Asia, thus much may be added out of [a] *Sardus*, of their Sacrifices. The Phrygians sacrificed Swines bloud. This did the *Galli*, Priests of *Cybele*, and this did the Bedlem Votaries, to recouer of their madnesse. The Colophonians offered a dog to *Enodia*, which is *Hecate*, as did also the Carians to *Mars*. The Phaselites in Pamphilia sacrificed Fishes to *Caber*, the sonne of *Vulcan*; and the Lydians, Eeles to *Neptune*. The Cappadocian Kings in their Sacrifices to *Iupiter Stratiptcus*, or *Militaris*, on a high Hill, built a great fire, the King and others bringing Wood thereto: and after that another lesser, which the King sprinkled with Milke and Hony, and after fired it, entertaining those which were present with good cheere. a *Lib. 3.*

Peucer [b] tells of Diuinations vsed in some parts of Lycia: betwixt Myra and Phellus there was a Fountaine full of Fishes, by whose forme, nature, motion, and feeding, the Inhabitants vsed Diuination. The same Lycians in the Groue of *Apollo*, not farre from the Sea, had a drie ditch, called Dina, in which the Diuiner put in fishes, and ten gobbets of rosted flesh, fastened on spits, with certaine Prayers: after which, the drie ditch became full of water, and fishes of all kindes and formes, by which the Priests obserued their Predictions. And not farre from hence, at Myræ in Lycia, was the Fountaine of *Apollo Curius*, where the fishes being three times called with a Pipe, assembled themselues, and if they deuoured the meats giuen them, it was interpreted a good bode and happy presage: if they struckc away the same with their tayles, it was direfull and dreadfull. At Hierapolis in Lycia, the fishes in the Lake of *Venus*, being called by the Temple-keepers, b *Peucerus de diuinatione.*

keepers, presented themselues, enduring to bee scratched, gilled, and mens hands to bee put into their mouthes. They diuined by lots six moneths of the yeere together, at Patara in Lycia, in *Apolloes* Temple. But *Saturne* hath swallowed his owne Children; and *Time*, which brought forth these, both Gods and Religions, hath also consumed them, not leauing any such memoriall of them, as might satisfie any curious searcher: yet in relation of the Greekish Rites (from which these, for the most part, haue not much swarued) you may expect a more full and ample Discourse. It is now time at last to rest our weatie limbes: enough and more hath the Pilgrim tolde you of the Arabian Deserts, of the Monster *Mahomet*, and his Vicars the [c] Caliphaes (euen in this title they will parallel Rome) of their Rapines answerable to their [d] name: of their Viperous off-spring the Turkes, and of the elder Inhabitants of that Asian Tract. Let mee here a little breathe mee, before I ascend the Armenian Hils.

c *Caliphe* signifieth Vicars. *Scal.* of the vnlike likenes. See *Fox*, *Brightman* and others vpon the *Reuelat.*

d *Sarak*, *Thieuish.*

OF

OF THE ARMENIANS, MEDES, PERSIANS, PARTHIANS, SCYTHIANS, TARTARIANS, CHINOIS, AND OF THEIR RELIGIONS.

The fourth Booke.

CHAP. I.

Of ARMENIA MAIOR, *and* GEORGIA: *and the neighbouring Nations.*

LOWLY hitherto haue wee proceeded in the discouerie of a part of Asia; sometime the store, sometimes the want, of conuenient matter, detaining our pen: In the one, Time, the Consumer of things, causing much time and paines to be spent in curious search, that wee might produce some light out of darknesse: In the other, store of Stories, and varietie of varying Authors hath dimmed our weaker eyes with multiplicitie of lights; vncertaine in so many Tracts and Tractates, where to begin, and when to end. Now at last are wee passed Euphrates, into a Countrey that often exalteth it selfe, as though it would pierce the skies, and as often receiueth the due punishment of aspiring pride, being cast downe into so many lowly valleyes and deiected bottomes. The World, which after the Flood was repeopled from hence, still carrieth in the seuerall Ages, Places, Peoples, and Men thereof, the resemblance of her Cradle, now vp, now downe, in all varietie and vicissitude of chance and change, constant in vnconstancie, treading this Armenian Measure with vnequall paces, ouer Hills and Dales, like it selfe onely in vnlikenesse. Here *Noes* Arke setled, and here must our Ship hoyse sayle.

§. I.

Of the Armenians and Turcomanians.

ARMENIA hath a great part of Cappadocia and Euphrates on the West; Mesopotamia on the South; on the North part, Colchis, Iberia, Albania; on the East, the Caspian Sea, and Media. Part of this greater Armenia is now called Turcomania, the other part is contained in Georgia. *Ptolomey* [a] reckoneth in it principall Mountaines, the Moschici, Paryarges, or Pariedri, Vdacespes, Antitaurus, Abos, and the [b] Gordæi, which

a *Ptol. lib. 5. c. 13.*
b *Iun. in Appian. Geo. 8.*

which the Chaldean Paraphrast calleth *Kardu*; and *Q. Curtius*, *Cordes*; *Berosus*, *Cordyes*.

On these Hils the Arke rested, whereof we haue spoken in the first Booke. [c] *Hathon* (if we believe him of his owne Countrey, where hee was of royall linage) calleth this Mountaine Arath, little differing from the Scripture-appellation Ararat, and addeth, That altho'gh, in regard of abundance of Snow, alway possessing the top thereof, none be able to goe vp thither, yet there alway appeareth in the top a certaine blacke thing, which the vulgar people esteeme to be the Arke. Perhaps it may be some cloud or mist, which grosse vapours doe often cause on the tops of high Hills. For before *Hathons* dayes, *Benjamin Tudelensis* telleth that one *Ghamar ben Alchetab* had taken thence the remainder of the Arke, and therewith built an Ismaeliticall Meschit. And yet a man may herein doubt also: for concerning reliques pretending such Antiquitie, Faith can finde no foundation in such ruinous rubbish; and wee haue before shewed out of *Berosus* and *Nicolaus Damascenus* of old, and *Cartwrights* later trauels, what may be thought thereof.

c *Hathonus, or Antonius, Armenius.*

Lib. 1. c. 8.

Armenia (as *Strabo* [d] affirmeth) received the name of one of *Iasons* companions, which followed him in his Nauigation out of Haemonia, a Citie of Thessaly, betweene Phetra and Larisa. The wealth of this Region appeared, when *Ptolomey* appointing *Tigranes* to bring in to the Romans five thousand Talents of Siluer, he added voluntarily, beyond that summe, to euery Souldier in the Campe fifteene drammes of Siluer, to euery Centurion a thousand, to euery Deputie of a Countrey, and Chiliarch, a Talent.

d *Lib. 11.*

Their Religion must at first be that which *Noah* and his Family professed; after by time corrupted. Here ([e] saith out *Berosus*) *Noah* instructed his posteritie in Diuine an Humane Sciences, and committed many naturall secrets vnto writing, which the Scythian Armenians commend to their Priests onely; none else being suffered to see, or reade, or teach them. He left also Rituall Bookes, or Ceremoniall, of the which hee was termed *Saga*, that is, Priest, or Bishop. Hee taught them also Astronomy, and the distinction of yeeres and moneths: For which, they esteemed him partaker of Diuine Nature, and surnamed him *Olyhama* and *Arsa*, that is, the Heauen and the Sunne, and dedicated to him many Cities; some (saith he) remaining at this day, which beare these names. And when hee went from thence to gouerne Cytim, which now (as hee affirmeth) they call Italy, the Armenians were much affected to him, and after his death accounted him the Soule of the heauenly bodies, and bestowed on him Diuine Honors. Thus Armenia, where hee began, and Italy, where he ended, doe worship him, and ascribe to him Names, *Heauen, Sunne, Chaos, the Seed of the World, the Father of the greater and lesse Gods, the Soule of the World, mouing Heauen, and the Creatures, and Man; the* GOD *of Peace, Iustice, Holinesse, putting away hurtfull things, and preserving good.* And for this cause both Nations signifie him in their writings with the course of the Sunne, and motion of the Moone, and a Scepter of Dominion, persecuting and chasing away the wicked from among the societie of men, and with the *chastitie* of the bodie, and *sanctimony* of the minde, the two keyes of Religion and Happinesse. They called also [f] *Tidea*, the mother of all, after her death, *Artia*, that is, the Earth; and *Esta*, that is, the Fire, because shee had beene Queene of the Holy Rites, and had taught maidens to keepe the holy euerlasting fire from euer going out. *Noah*, before he went out of Armenia, had taught men Husbandry, more ayming at Religion and Manners, then Wealth and Dainties, which prouoke to vnlawfull things, and had lately procured the wrath of GOD. And first of all men he found out and planted Vines, and was therefore called *Ianus*, which to the Aramaeans foundeth as much as The Author of Wine. Thus farre *Berosus lib.* 3. and in the fourth Booke hee addeth, that *Nymbrot* (the first *Saturne* of Babylon) with his sonne *Iupiter Belus*, stole away those Rituall or Ceremoniall bookes of *Iupiter Sagus*, and came with his people into the land Sennaar, where he appointed a Citie, and laid the foundation of a great Tower, a hundred thirtie and one yeeres after the Flood; but neither finished this, nor founded the other. Old *Ianus* when hee went hence, left *Scytha*, with his mother *Araxa*, and some inhabitants, to people Armenia, being the first King thereof; *Sabatius Saga* being consecrated High Priest, from Armenia vnto the Bactrians: all which space (saith he) in our Age is called Scythia Saga. In his fifth booke hee reporteth, That *Iupiter Belus*, possessed with ambition of subduing the whole world, closely endeuoured to make (or take) away *Sabatius Saga*, who, being not able otherwise to escape his treacherie, fled away secretly. But *Nmus* the sonne of *Belus*, pursued his fathers intent against *Sabatius*, who substituted his sonne *Barzanes* in his place, and fled into Sarmatia, and after from thence into Italy, to his father *Ianus*. *Barzanes* was subdued by *Nmus*.

e *Pseudo Berosus, lib.* 3.

f The wife of *Noah*.

But to come to an Author of better credite, [g] *Strabo* saith, The Armenians and Medes haue in veneration all the Temples of the Persians; but the Armenians especially esteeme the Temples of [h] *Tanais*, as erecting them in other places, so in Acilesina. They dedicate vnto them men-seruants and women-seruants: the most noble of that Nation there (dedicating

g *Strab. l.* 11.

h *Tanais* an Armenian Goddesse; Some terme her *Anaitis*.

cating shall I say? or) prostituting their daughters; where after long prostitution with their Goddesse, they are giuen in marriage, none refusing such matches. How much con the shadow, how little can the substance of Religion perswade men to? The Image of *Tanais*, or *Anaitis* was set vp in her Temple, all of solid gold: and when, as *Antonius* warred against the Parthians, this Temple was robbed. The fame [i] went, That hee which first had layed sacrilegious hands on the spoyles, was smitten blind, and so diseased, that he died thereof. But when *Augustus*, being entertained of an ancient warriour at *Bononia*, asked him of the truth of this report, he answered, Thou now, O Emperour, drinkest that bloud; for I am the man, and whatsoever I haue came by that bootie. This Goddesse is supposed to be the same with *Diana*. A Region of Armenia bare the same name *Anaitis*.

[i] *Cael. Rhodig. l.18.c.29.*

How bloudy Rites the Armenians sometimes vsed, appeareth [k] by the Historie of the Riuer Araxes, before called Halmus, borrowing this later name of a King there raigning; to whom, in warres betwixt him and the Persians, the Oracle prescribed the sacrifice of his two faire daughters. Pietie forbade what pietie commanded; and whiles the King would be an Vmpire between Nature and the Oracle (which is the vsuall euent in arbitrements) he satisfied neither. That the Oracle might bee fulfilled, he sacrificed two of noble birth, of notable beautie: that Nature might not be wronged, hee wronged Iustice (the true touch-stone of true pietie) hee spared his owne, and offered the daughters of *Miesalcus*: but so hee lost both his daughters by *Miesalcus* reuenging sword, and himselfe in this Riuer by himselfe drowned. *Bacchus* loued *Alphœsibœa*, an Armenian Damsell, and while Tygris, then (if you beleeue the Story) called Sollax, was too coole a Mediatour betweene the two hot louers, hee swam ouer on a Tygers backe. Hence the Fable of his Metamorphosis into a Tygre: hence that name left to the Riuer. Armenia was subdued to the Persians by *Cyrus*: one part thereof payed to the Persians twentie thousand Colts for yeerely tribute. [l] *Sariaster*, sonne to *Tigranes* the Armenian King, conspired against his father: the Conspirators sealed their bloudie faith with a bloudie ceremonie; they let themselues bloud in the right hands, and then dranke it. Wonder, that in such a treachery (as immediately before the same Author affirmeth of *Mithridates* his sonne) that any man would helpe; or that hee durst importune the Gods: no wonder, that so bloudie a seale was annexed to such euidence.

[k] *Grantz. Armen.*

[l] *Valer. Max. l.9.c.11.*

The Temple of *Baris* (mentioned by *Strabo*) may happily be some Monument of *Noahs* descent, by corruption of the word *Lubar*, as before said, [m] *Iosephus* out of *Nicolaus Damascenus* calling it *Baris*, with losse of the first syllable.

[m] *Antiq.l.1.c.5.*

Iuuenal accuseth the Armenians of Sooth-saying, and Fortune-telling, by viewing the inwards of Pigeons, Whelpes, and Children. His words are in *Sat. 6.*

Spondet Amatorem tenerum, vel diuitis orbi
Testamentum ingens, calida pulmone columbæ
Tractato, Armenius vel Commagenus Aruspex
Pectora pulmonum rimabitur, exta catelli,
Interdum & pueri:

That is,
A tender Louer, or rich Legacie,
Of child-lesse Rich man, for your destinie,
Th'Armenian Wizard in hot Lungs doth spie
Of Pigeons: Or of Whelpes the inwards handling,
Or sometimes (bloudie search) of Children mangling.

The Mountaines [n] of Armenia pay tribute vnto many Seas: by Phasis and Lycus vnto the Pontike Sea; Cyrus and Araxes vnto the Caspian; Euphrates and Tygris vnto the Red or Persian Sea: these two last are famous for their yeerely ouerflowings, the former of them arising amidst three other Seas, yet by the incroaching violence of the beetle-browed Hills enforced to a farre longer, more intricate, and tedious way, before hee can repose his wearied waues: the other, for his swiftnesse, bearing the name of Tygris, which with the Medes signifieth an Arrow. *Solinus cap. 40.* saith, That it passeth through the Lake Arethusa, neither mingling waters nor fishes, quite of another colour from the Lake: it diueth vnder [o] Taurus, and bringeth with it much drosse on the other side of the Mountaine, and is againe hidden, and againe restored, and at last carrieth Euphrates into the Sea. The Armenians, besides their naturall Lords, haue been subiect to the Persians; after that, to the Macedonians, and againe to the Persian; after to *Antiochus* Captaines; then, to the Romans and Parthians, tossed betwixt the Grecians and Saracens; subdued after successiuely to the Tartarians, Persians, and Turkes. Of these present Armenians Master *Cartwright* [p] reporteth, That they are a people very industrious in all kinde of labour: their women very skilfull and actiue in shooting and managing any sort of weapon, like the ancient Amazons. Their Families are great, the father

[n] *Plin. 2.*

[o] *Simocatta* hath Melabsus, which is a part of Taurus. *l.2.c.10.*

[p] Preachers Trauels.

ther and all his posteritie dwelling together vnder one roofe, hauing their substance in common: and when the father dieth, the eldest sonne doth gouerne the rest; all submitting themselues vnder his Regiment: after his death, not his sonne, but the next brother succeedeth; and so after all the brethren are dead, to the eldest sonne. In diet and clothing they are all alike, of their two Patriarches, and their Christian profession, wee are to speake in fitter place.

The Turcomanians (later inhabitants) are as other the Scythians or Tartarians, (from whence they are deriued) theeuish, wandring vp and downe in Tents without certaine habitations, like as the *Curdi* also their Southerly neighbours, their cattell and their robberies being their greatest wealth. Of their Religion (except of such as after their manner bee Christians, which wee must deferre till a fitter time) wee can finde little to say, more then is said alreadie in our Turkish Historie. This wee may here deplore of the vnhappy fight of Armenia, which though it repeopled the world, yet is it least beholding to her vniperous offspring, a Map of the worlds miseries, through so many ages. For being hemmed alway with mightie neighbours on both sides, it selfe is made the bloudie List of their ambitious encounters, alway losing whosoeuer wonne, alway the Gauntlet of the Challenger, the Crowne of the Conquerour. This (to let passe elder times) the Romans and Parthians, Greeke Emperours and Saracens, Turkes and Tartarians, Turkes and Mamulukes, Turkes and Persians, doe more then enough proue.

§. II.

Of IBERIA.

PTOLOMEY placeth to the North of Armenia, Colchis, washed by the Pontike Sea; Albania by the Caspian; and betwixt these two Iberia, now together with some part of Armenia) called Georgia, either for the honour of their Patron Saint *George*, or kaply because they descended of those Georgi, which *Plinie* [a] nameth among the Caspian Inhabitants. *Strabo* [b] recorderh foure kindes of people in this Iberia: of the first sort are chosen two Kings, the one precedent in age and nobilitie, the other a Leader in Warre, and Law-giuer in Peace: the second sort, are the Priests: the third, Husbandmen and Souldiers: the fourth, the vulgar seruile people. These haue all things common by Families, but hee is Ruler was his eldest; a thing obserued of the Armenian Christians (as before is said) euen at this day. *Constantinus Porphyrogenitus* [c] the Emperour writeth, That the Iberians boast and glorie of their descent from the wife of *Vriah*, which *Dauid* defiled, and of the children gotten betweene them. Thus would they seeme to bee of kin to *Dauid* and the Virgin *Mary*: and for that cause they marry in their owne kindred. They came (say they) from Ierusalem, being warned by Vision to depart thence, and seated themselues in these parts. There departed from Ieusalem *Dauid*, and his brother *Spanduates*, who obtained (say they) such a fauour from GOD, that no member of his could bee wounded in warre, except his heart, which hee therefore diligently armed; whereby he became dreadfull to the Persians, whom hee subdued, and placed the Iberians in these their habitations. In the time of *Heraclius* they ayded him against the Persians, which after that became an easie prey to the Saracens. Of the Roman conquests and exploits in [d] Armenia, Colchis, Iberia, Albania, I list not here to relate.

a *Lib.6.c.13.*
b *Strab.l.11.*
c *Const. de administrando imperio ad Romanum F.6.45.*
d *Dion Cassius lib. 37. & 49. Agathias lib.4. Iornandes de reb.Get.*

§. III.

Of ALBANIA.

ALBANIA [e] (now Zuiria) lyeth North and East, betwixt Iberia and the Sea, of which *Strabo* affirmeth, that they need not the Sea, who make no better vse of the Land: for they bestow not the least labour in husbandrie, and yet the earth voluntarily and liberally yeeldeth her store: and where it is once sowen, it may twice or thrice be reaped. The men were so simple, that they neither had vse of money, nor did they number aboue an hundred; ignorant of weights, measures, warre, ciuilitie, husbandrie: there were in vse among them sixe and twentie languages. They had [f] Spiders which would procure death vpon men smiling, and some also which did men to die weeping.

They worshipped the Sunne, *Iupiter*, and the Moone, whose Temple was neere to Iberia. The Priest, which ruled it, was next in honour to the King: hee performeth the Holy Rites, ruleth

e *Euterius Calsus Rodiginus lect. Antiquarum. lib.18.cap.27. Pius secundus, Asia.*
f *Ransouinus & Pius secundus, report of such Spiders in Italy, in Calabria, called tarantele.*

uleth the Holy Region, which is large and full of people: of the sacred Seruants, many be-
ng inspired, doe Diuine or Prophecie. Hee which is most rauished with the spirit, wandreth
lone through the Woods: him the Priest taketh and bindeth with a sacred Chaine, allow-
ng him sumptuous nourishment the space of a yeere, and after bringeth him to bee slaine
vith other sacrifices to the Goddesse. The Rites are thus: One which is skilfull of this busi-
nesse, holding the sacred Speare, wherewith they vse to slay the man, stepping forth, thrusteth
it into his heart: in his falling they obserue certaine tokens of diuination: then doe they
ring out the bodie into some place, where they all goe ouer it. The Albanians honoured
lde-age in all men, death in none, accounting it vnlawfull to mention a dead man: with
hom they also buried his wealth. g *Plinie* out of *Isigonus* affirmeth, that a people call-
d Albani (not these I thinke, if any) were hoarie haired from their childhood, and saw
well by night as by day.

g *Plin. lib. 7.*

§. IIII.

Of Colchis or Mengrelia.

MENGRELIA (sometime *Colchis* h) adioyneth to the Euxine Sea, in which Coun-
trey *Strabo* mentioneth the Temple of *Leucothea*, builded by *Phryxus*: where was
also an Oracle, and where a Ram might bee slaine. This Temple was sometimes
very rich, but spoiled by *Pharnax*, and after of *Mithridates*. This country the Poets
aue made famous by the fables of *Phryxus*, and *Iason*. *Phryxus* the sonne of *Athamas*,
rince of Thebes, and of *Nephele*, with his sister *Helle* fled from their cruell stepdame *Ino*,
on the backe of a golden Ram, from which *Helle* falling into the water, gaue name there-
of her called *Hellespont*: *Phryxus* comming safe into Colchis, sacrificed to *Iupiter*, and
anged vp the fleece of his Ram in the Groue of *Mars*; which custome was yeerely practised
his posterrtie. *Iason* after by command of *Pelias* (seeking by a barbarous enemy, or a
angerous Nauigation to destroy him) with fourescore and nineteene other companions in
e Ship, called *Argo*, fetched this Fleece from hence by the helpe of *Medea*: and the Ship
d the Ram filled Heauen with new Constellations. That fable i had ground of Historie,
howsoeuer by fictions obscured. For the Riuers here in Colchis are reported to carrie gold
owne with their streames and sands, which the people take with boords bored full of holes,
d with fleeces of Wooll. Spaine hath of late yeelded many such Argonauts, with longer
oyages, seeking the golden Indian Fleece, which their Indian conquest may make the En-
gne of their Order more stily, then the Burgundian inheritance. *Suidas* applieth this Fleece
d Ram, to Bookes of Alchymie, written in parchments made of Rams skins, which
Petro accounted an Art of Naturall Magicke, and possible, howsoeuer these Colchians, as
ell as the Armenians, Egyptians, Persians, and Chaldeans were infamous for that other,
hich hee calleth *Demillsho*: and *Medea* is most renowned for that science, the ignorance
hereof is best learning.

Herodotus k is of opinion that *Sesostris* left some of his Armie here at the Riuer Phasis, per-
vaded hereunto by the agreement of the Colchians and Egyptians. In the same ceremonie
Circumcision, and in the like workes of Hempe. *Vadianus* citeth out of *Valerius Flaccus*
e like testimonie. *Plinie* in his sixth Booke, and sixth Chapter, reporteth of Dioscurias a City
Colchis, whilome so famous, that *Timosthenes* affirmeth that three hundred Nations of
ffering languages liued in it, and afterwards the Roman affaires were there managed by
hundred and thirtie Interpreters. l *Cornelius Tac.* saith, that they accounted it vnlaw-
ll to offer a Ram in Sacrifice, because of *Phryxus* his Ram, vncertaine, whether it were a
east, or the ensigne of his Ship. They report themselues the issue of the Thessalonians.

h *Meletius tradit Colchidem, Albaniam, & Iberiam, vno hodie nomine CONTANIA vocari. Ortel. Thes. Geog.*

i *Diod. Sic. l. 4. Nat. Com. l. 6. Iustin. l. 42.*

Strabo l. 11. Suid. in voce Δερας Δεβιο disq. Mag. l. 14.

k *Lib. 2.*

Dioscurias.

l *Annal. l. 6.*

§. V.

Of the present Mengrelians and Georgians.

THe present Mengrelians are rude and barbarous, defending themselues from the
Turkes by their rough Hils and ragged Pouertie: so inhumane, that they sell their
owne children to the Turks. I reade not of any other Religion at this day amongst
them but Christian, such as it is. Some adde these also to the Georgians. The wiues
diuers of these people, reported to bee exercised in Armes and Martiall feates, happily
aue occasion to that Fable or Historie of the Amazons.

Quadus.

a *Aug. Busbeq. Epist.3.*

Busbequius [a] saith, that Colchos is a very fertile Countrey, but the people idle and carelesse: they plant their Vines at the foot of great Trees, which marriage proueth very fruitfull, the husbands armes being kindly embraced, and plentifully laden. They haue no money, but in stead of buying and selling they vse exchange. If they haue any of the more precious metals, they are consecrated to the vse of their Temples, whence the King can borrow them vnder pretence of publike good. The King hath all his tributes payed in the fruits of the earth, whereby his Palace becomneth a publike store-house to all commers. When Merchants come, they giue him a present, and he feasteth them: the more wine any man drinketh, the more welcome he is. They are much giuen to belly-cheere, dauncing, and loose Sonnets of loue and dalliance. They much carroll the name of *Rowland* or *Orlando*, which name it seemeth passed to them with the Christian Armies, which conquered the Holy Land. No maruell if *Ceres* and *Bacchus* lead in *Venus* betwixt them; which so raileth in these parts, that the husband bringing home a guest, commends him to his wife and sister, with charge to yeeld him content and delight, esteeming it a credite, that their wiues can please and be acceptable. Their Virgins become mothers verie soone; most of them at ten yeeres old can bring witnesses in their armes (little bigger then a great frogge, which yet after grow tall and square men) to proue that there is neuer a Maide the lesse for them. Swearing they hold an excellent qualitie, and to bee a fashion-monger in oathes, glorious: to steale cunningly winnes great reputation, as of another *Mercurie*; and they which cannot doe it, are holden dullards and bjocks. When they goe into a Church, they giue meane respect to other Images: Saint *George* is so worshipped, that his horses hooses are kissed of them. *Dadianus* the King of Colchos or Mengrelia, came a suiter to *Solyman*, while *Busbequius* was there. Betwixt them and the Iberians their Neighbours, is much discord. And thus much of their present condition.

b *Heitonus cap.7*

Haithon [b] the Armenian, extending the confines of Georgia to the great Sea, saith, In this Kingdome is a thing monstrous and wonderfull, which I would not haue spoken nor believed, had I not seene it with mine owne eyes. In these parts there is a Prouince called *Hamsem*, containing in circuit three dayes iourney; and so farre is it couered with an obscure darknesse, that none can see any thing, nor dare any enter into it. The Inhabitants thereabouts affirme, that they haue often heard the voyce of men howling, cocks crowing, neighing of horses; and by the passage of a Riuer, it appeareth to haue signes of habitation. This is reported by the Armenian Histories, to haue come to passe by the hand of God, so deliuering his Christian seruants (by *Saworeus* a Persian Idolater, Lord of this place appointed to dye) and so punishing with outward darknesse, the inward former blindnesse and rage of those persecuting Idolaters. Thus *Haithonus* or *Antonius à Churchs* (for so *Ortelius* names him) but this darknesse seemeth more ancient, and to haue beene the cause of that prouerbe [c] *Cimmeria tenebra.*

c *Tull. in Academ. Cimmerij, quibus assiduus solis, sine Deus aliquis, sine Natura edentis, sine eius quem incolunt loci situs.*

The Georgians (girt in with two mightie aduersaries, the Persian and the Turke) haue endured much griefe and vexe them both; and, in the late warres, especially from the Turke who [d] hath taken and fortified many of their principall places of importance, Gori, Clisca Lori, Tomanis, Teflis the chiefe Citie of Georgia, vnto which from Derbent, there yet remaines the foundation of a high and thicke wall built by [e] *Alexander. Ortelius* esteemeth Derbent to be *Caucasiæ porta*, which *Plinie* [e] calleth a mightie worke of Nature, &c.

d *Io. Bot. Ben.*

e *Plin. l. 6. c. 13.*

§. VI.

Of the Circassians.

WEstward from hence is entrance into the Circassian Countrey, extending in fields on *Meotis* fiue hundred miles, and within land two hundred. Christians they are in profession: from hence the Soldans of Egypt had their slaues, of which were raised their Mamalukes. Their chiefe Cities are Locoppa and Cromuco: at the mouth of Tanais, the Turke hath fortified Asaph. They liue in great part on robberies. In old time in this Tract was *Phanagoria*, and therein the Temple of *Venus* surnamed *Apatouria*, [f] because, that when the Gyants assaulted her, she implored the aide of *Hercules*, who slew them all one after another. Cimmerium a Towne at these straits, gaue name thereunto of *Cimmerius Bosphorus*. But little can be said of these in particular, more then generally may be said of the *Scythians*, to whom they are reckoned.

f *Strab. lib.11.*

g *Apud Ramus.*

Georgius Interianus [g] hath written a Tractate of these *Zychi*, or *Circassi*, called of themselues *Adiga*, expressing their vnchristian Christianitie, and barbarous manner of liuing: which hold fittest in our discourse of the diuers professions of Christian Religion to relate.

§. VII.
Of the Curdi.

SOme [h] adde vnto Armenia, in their moderne Maps and Discoueries, besides the Turcomani, a people that came thither out of Tartaria, the Curdi, both still retaining the Tartarian and Arabian manner of life in Tents, without Cities, Townes, or Houses. Their Religion halteth betwixt diuers Religions of the Turkes, Persians, and Christians, of the Iacobite and Nestorian Sects. In heart, they are neither fast to God nor Man; dissembling with the Persian and Turke; and better skilled in robberie, murther, and faithlesse treacherie (their daily practise) then mysteries of Faith and Religion. They are also Lords of Bitlis, and some other Cities and Holds in those parts. They are called *Courdines* by Sir *Anthony Sherley*, who saith, they know no other fruits of the earth, but what belonged to the sustenance of their cattell, vpon the milke, butter and flesh of which they liue, ruled by certaine Princes of their owne, which giue partly an obedience to the Turke, partly to the Persian, as they are neerest the confines of the one or the other. Yet in that simplicitie of liuing, through ambition, warres grow daily among them, euen to the extirpation of a whole Nation. As we found freshly when wee passed by one of their Princes, called *Iederbeague*, all whose people were deuoured by the sword, or carried away captiue by *Coathaeague*; and himselfe remained onely with some twentie soules in a Rocke. Ten thousand of their Courdines, subiect to the Turke, abandoned their Country, and requested some waste land to be giuen them by *Abas* the present Persian, which gaue them entertainment: the occasion of quarrell betwixt him and the Turke. They are supposed to be a remnant of the ancient Parthians, and neuer go abroad without their Armes, Bowes, Arrowes, Scimitars and Bucklers, euen when age seemeth to haue fastned one foot in the graue. They adore and worship the Deuill, that hee may not hurt them, nor their cattell: they are cruell to all sorts of Christians: their Country is therefore called *Terra Diaboli*. One of their Townes is named *Manusonte*, a mile from which is an Hospitall dedicated to Saint *Iohn Baptist*, much frequented as well by Turkes as Christians, whom superstition hath perswaded, that whosoeuer will bestow Kidde, Sheepe, or Money, to releeue the poore of that place, shall both prosper in his iourney, and obtaine the forgiuenesse of his sinnes.

h G. Bot. Bem. Abr. Hart. Mal. Cand. Rauns.

Sir A. S. his Trauells into Persia.

i Curtwights Trauells.

CHAP. II.
Of the Medes.

ARmenia extending it selfe (if *Iustine* [k] haue measured rightly) eleuen hundred miles, on the East encountereth Media, in which lieth our next perambulation. It receiued the name of *Madai* the sonne of *Iaphet*, not of *Medus* the sonne of *Medea* and *Iason*. It limited [l] on the North, with the Caspian Sea; on the South, with Persia; on the East, with Parthia. *Ecbatana*, the chiefe Citie, built (as *Plinie* [m] affirmeth) by *Seleucus*, (indeed farre more ancient, and by them happily reedified) is distant from the Caspian straits twentie miles. These Straits are a narrow way made by hand thorow the Hills, scarce wide enough for a Cart to passe, eight miles in length, the Rocks manifesting their indignation at this interruption, by obstinate frownes, and salt [n] teares continually streaming from them, which I know not by what hidden horror are presently congealed into Ice; also all the Summer time armies of Serpents keeping the passages. Well may this bee the house of *Enuie*: so fitly doth that fable of the Poet [o] agree with the nature of this place.

k Lib. 42.

l Strab. lib. 11.

m Plin. l. 6. c. 14.

n Solin. cap. 50.

o Ouid. Metamorph. lib. 2.

——Domus est imis in vallibus huius,
Abdita, loue carens, non vllis pernia vento,
Tristis, & ignaui plenissima frigoris, & qua
Igne vacet semper, caligine semper abundet.
——videt intus edentem
Vipereas carnes, vitiorum alimenta suorum,
INVIDIAM——

Of *Ecbatana* we reade in the Historie of [p] *Iudith*, that *Arpachsad* built the walls of hewen stones, seuentie cubits high, and fiftie cubits broad, &c. *Herodotus* [q] affirmeth, that after the Assyrians had raigned in Asia fiue hundred and twentie yeeres, the Medes rebelled, and those *Deiaces* to be their King, and at his command builded him this Royall Citie, and a Palace of great

p Iud. 1.

q Lib. 1.

great beaurie (the timber whereof was Cedar, ioyned with plates of siluer and gold; it was seuen furlongs in compasse) his successours are there reckoned, *Phraortes, Cyaxares, Astyages.* seuen furlongs in compasse) his successours are there reckoned, *Phraortes, Cyaxares, Astyages.* *Iustine* [r] reporteth that *Arbaltus* or *Arbaces*, Lieutenant of the Medes vnder *Sardanapalus*, rebelled against him for his effeminate life, and translated the Empire from the Assyrians with whom it had continued thirteene hundred yeeres to the Medes. *Diodorus Siculus* [s] and *Mela.* *Chron.* 1.2. deth in this conspiracie, vnto this *Arbaces* the Mede, *Belesus*, whom some call *Phul Belochus* the Babylonian, who shared the state betwixt them; the Babylonian possessing *Babylonia*, and *Assyria*; and *Arbaces*, *Media* and *Persia*. Of this more is [t] said before.

In the time of *Ninus*, *Farnus* (saith [u] *Diodorus*) was King of Media, who, encountring with *Ninus* in battell, was there taken, with his wife and seuen sonnes: all which the bloudi Conqueror commanded to be crucified. And thus remained *Media* hand-maid to the Assyrians, till the time of *Sardanapalus*; but not without some disquiet. For in *Semiramis* time the Medes rebelled, and destroyed Nineue. But *Semiramis* inuaded their Countrie with a mightie Armie: and comming to the Hill *Bagistanus*, sacred to *Iupiter*, there pitched her Tents; and [x] in the plaine fields made a garden, containing twelue furlongs. Beyond this garden, she cut a Rocke seuenteene furlongs high, grauing therein her own Image, and an hundred others, bringing her gifts. Some [y] tell this otherwise, that shee pourtrayed her owne Image in that huge quantitie, and appointed an hundred Priests continually to attend the same with offerings and diuine worship. At Chaona a Citie of Media, shee espying an other huge Rocke in the Plaine, caused another Garden to bee made in the middest thereof with sumptuous houses of pleasure therein, whence shee might behold all her Armie, and there gaue her selfe a long space to rest and voluptuousnesse, making choice of the likeliest Gallants in her Campe for her bed-fellowes, all whom she after did to death. Thence to Ecbatana she made the way shorter, and more passeable, casting downe Hills, and exalting the Valleyes into a plaine, still bearing her name. At Ecbatana [z] she built a Palace, and brought water thither from the Hill *Orontes*, by a laborious and costly channell. And thus did she not onely subdue the rebellious Medes, but made a conquest of Nature in ostentation of her puissance. The same [a] Author telleth, that multitudes of Sparrowes which eate vp their feeds forced the Inhabitants to leaue their soile; as did Mice cause some parts of Italy, and Frogs (rayned out of the clouds) the *Attarioe*, and (as wee haue [b] obserued) the Fleas chased away the Inhabitants of Myus. How great is the Creator, that of the smallest of his creatures can muster Armies to the conquest of them, which swell in conceit of their owne greatnesse: Wee like Gyants by our wickednesse defie the Heauens, and defile the Earth, saying (by our workes) [c] *Who is the Almightie, that wee should serue him?* When as yet the Lord of Hosts necessitate vs with Legions of Angels (one could destroy *Senacheribs* Host) nor set the Heauens in their courses to fight his battells (as against the Canaanites) nor arrange the *Elements* with an ouer-whelming *Chaos* to confound vs, by a Sodomiticall *fire*, or *ayrie* pestilence, or deluge of *waters*, or deuouring of the *earth*: nor needes hee *Lyons* to challenge a part of his glorie to their strength and prowesse: *Frogs*, and *Lice*, and *Flies* shall bee *Pharaohs* Challengers, Conquerors, Taylers: And how many Nations in Africa haue the insulting triumphing *Grasse-hoppers* exiled from their native dwellings? Proud MAN, well may the basest of thy basest seruants thus make thee to see thy basenesse; and by rebelling against thee, argue thy rebellions against their and thy Creator.

Et quæ non prosunt singula, multa iuuant.
Et quæ non possunt singula, multa nocent.

But that wee bee not too farre transported with this not vniust passion; let vs returne to our Prouince of Media; which *Arbaces* [d] deliuered from Assyrian seruitude, and subiected it together with the Easterne Empire to himselfe, vnder whose posteritie it continued three hundred and two and twentie yeeres. *Astyages*, the last, was by *Cyrus* his Nephew, conquered, according to two dreames, which had fore-signified this vnto him. In the first he dreamed, that he saw so much vrine streaming from his daughter *Mandane* (his onely child), that all Asia was drowned therewith: in the other, a Vine grew from her, which shadowed all Asia. His *Magi* [e] told him, that hereby was fore-told his Nephewes greatnesse with the losse of his Kingdome. To preuent this, hee wedded his daughter to *Cambyses* a Persian: and when shee was deliuered of a child, hee committed it to *Harpagus* (one of his truste Councellors) to be made away. He fearing reuenge from the daughter, if shee should after succeed her father, deliuereth the Infant to *Mitradates* the Kings Heard-man, commanding him in *Astyages* name, to expose it on the Mounraine. Hee returning home, found his wife newly deliuered of a dead child, which, by her entreatie was laid forth in stead thereof. Her name was *Spaco*, which in the Median language signifieth a Bitch: whence the fable grew, that *Cyrus* being so exposed, was nourished by a Bitch. This Infant growing vp, and called by the Heard-mans name, after ten yeeres was knowne by this occasion. [f] A company of boyes playing together, chose this stripling for their King, whom sed his childish Royaltie, with more then childish discipline. For he ordained diuers Officers, some of them to

r *Iustin. lib.* 1.
s *Diodo. Sicul. l.*2.*c.*7.
t *See* 1.1.*c.*13.
u *Diodor. Sic. lib.*3.1.
x *Diodorus.l.* 5. *cap.*5.
y *Stuck in de sacris Gentium.*
z *Ecbatana* was built before Deocces, yea before *Semiramis* time.
a *Diodor. Sic. lib.*2.*cap.*3.
b *Lib.*3.*cap.*15.
c *Iob* 21.15.
d *Reade lib.* 1. *cap.*13.
e *Herodot.l.*1. *Val.Max.c.*6.
f *Iustin lib.* 1.

o be his Guard, some Builders, Messengers, &c. as hee thought fit. Amongst whom was a onne of one *Artembares*, a man of great estimation, who for neglecting his office, was by his young Kingling secretely chastised. He complained thereof to his father, and the father brought the child to the King, accusing the indignitie of the fact, that his Heard-mans sonne hould deale so malapertly and cruelly, shewing his beaten shoulders to *Astyages*. The Heard-man and his supposed sonne was sent for, that *Artembares* might bee satisfied: where he young King gaue so good account of that his fact, that *Astyages*, much amazed, tooke he Heard-man aside, and with busie inquirie learned of him all the truth of this matter; wherewith enraged against *Harpagus*, who ought himselfe to haue done that dismall execution, but dissembling the same, he told him that hee would doe sacrifice for the childes safetie, and bade him send his child to beare *Cyrus* company, inuiting him also to sup with him, where hee feasted him with the flesh of his owne sonne, whose head, fingers, and toes, were set before him at the last seruice. *Harpagus* bare it as patiently as hee could, till fitter occasion of reuenge offered it selfe, which thus fell out. The *Magi* told *Astyages*, that in this childish Kingdome of *Cyrus*, the danger of his dreame was alreadie passed, and that hee needed not to feare any further danger. Wherefore hee was sent into Persia to his Parents. After he was now a man, *Harpagus*, hauing secretly sollicited the Medes to rebellion against their cruell Souereigne, acquainted *Cyrus* with his proiect, to that end enclosing a letter in a Hares belly, which hee sent to *Cyrus* by one, of his Huntsmen: which was with such industrie and successe prosecuted, that *Astyages* lost his Sceptter, and *Cyrus* translated the Empire to the Persians. For *Harpagus* being made Generall of the Armie of the Medes, reuolted to *Cyrus*, with all such as he had made acquainted with his treason. And when the Medes after rebelled in the time of *Darius*, they were forced againe to subiection. The *Magi* were by *Astyages* command, crucified: and he himselfe re-enforcing his power, and bidding battell to *Cyrus* the second time, was taken aliue, and by his Nephew set ouer the Hyrcans.

The *Magi* had large and fertill possessions (thus reporteth [g] *Ammianus*) assigned them in Media. Their Science, called *Magia*, is by *Plato* termed *Machagistia*, which mystical word signifieth the purest worship of the gods: to which Science *Zoroastres* of Bactria in olde times added many things out of the mysteries of the Chaldees. But because the Persians had from hence their Empire, and this Religion, by whose Armes they were made knowne to the World: there shall bee fitter place to speake of these *Magi*, when wee treat of the Persian Rites. In this Region was made the oyle *Medicum*, wherein their Arrowes were steeped, which being shot out of a loose Bow (for a swifter shot extinguished it) did burne the flesh in which it did sticke, and if water were applyed to it, the fire thereof encreased. Nor could any remedie cure the same, but hurling dust thereon. It was composed of *Naphta*. The Medes made league with this ceremonie. [h] They wounded the Souldiers of each partie, either licked others bloud. The North parts of Media were barren, and therefore they liued on Apples dyed and stamped together: of rosted Almons they made bread, and wine of the roots of herbs. This and venison was there food. In one plaine [i] of Media were pastured fifteie thousand Mares, belonging to the King: the herbe whereon they principally fed, is still called *Medica*. The race of Horses, called *Nisæi*, were here bred, and hence dispersed allouer the East.

Among [k] the Medes, none might be King by the Law of the Country, except hee were in stature and strength eminent. All the Medes (saith *Bardesanes* [l] a famous Chaldæan) nourish Dogs with great care, to which they cast men readie to die (whiles they are yet breathing) to be deuoured of them.

The Medes [m] worshipped the fire, with barbarous honours done thereto. Their Kings held such Maiestie, that none might laugh or spit before them: They were seldome seene of their people: They had alway Musitians attending them. Their wiues and children accompanied them in their battells.

The name of the Medes remained famous after the Persian Conquest, as appeareth by the stile which the Scripture [n] giueth them: *The Law of the Medes and Persians which was vnchangeable*, the King himselfe not hauing power to reuoke his sentence.

As for the Catalogue of the Kings which succeeded *Arbaces*, vntill the time of *Astyages*, and the times of their raigne, wee haue before shewed it out of *Scaliger*, [o] in our first Booke, *Chap.* 13. True it is that all agree not in that account. *Reinerus* [p] *Reineccius* leaueth out diuers of them, and numbreth the yeeres of the Median Dynastie but 261. whereas our former account hath 322. But I had rather referre the Reader to that Catalogue, then trouble him with new out of this or other Authors.

Media hath beene [q] diuided into *Media Maior*, and *Atropatia*; the former containeth Tauris, supposed by *Ortelius* to be the forenamed *Ecbatana* (yet now wanting walls altogether) containing in circuit sixteene miles, and of people two hundred thousand; subdued to the Turke 1585. and before by *Selim* and *Solimán*; but since recouered by the Persian

g *Amm. Marcel. l. 23.*

h *Boem. lib. 3. Francisco Thomaso, lib. 2.*

i *Pius Secundus Asia.*

k *Alex. ab Alex. l. 4. c. 23.*

l *Bar. apud Euseb. de Preparat. Euang. l. 6. c. 8.*

m *Plutarch de Orb. Lun. Gramaye. Curtius, l. 3.*

n *Dan. 6. 8. Ester 1. 8.*

o *Scal. g Can. Isag.*

p *R. Reinec Syntag. de Imm. Christom. 1.*

q *Magius Tab. Geog.*

r G.B.B. *Sultania* r famous for the fairest Moschee in the East. Casbin, to which the Persian hath remoued the Royall Seat from Tauris. The Lake of *Van* three hundred miles long, and an hundred and fiftie broad (after *Strabo* s, *Manhannus Lacus*) of salt-water the greatest next to *Meotis*. *Gyllius* t affirmeth, that eight great Riuers runne into it, without any apparant issue to the Sea.

s *Strab.l.11.*
t *Pet Gyll.in Ortely.Thes.*

Atropatia is now called Seruan; the chiefe Citie is Sumachia, or Shamaki, in which the Sophi not long since u built a Turret of flint and free-stone, and in a ranke of flints therein did set the heads of the Nobilitie and Gentrie of the Countrey, for a terrour to the rest; the quarrell was pretended for Religion, intended for Soueraignitie.

u *Hak.Ant. Ienkynson.*

Their ancient *Religion* x differed not much from the Persian, and such also is it still. Their Kings y had many wiues, which custome extended after to the Villages and Mountaines, in so much that they might not haue lesse then seuen. The women z also esteemed it a credit to haue many husbands, and a miserable calamitie to haue lesse then fiue. *Cyrus* subdued them to the Persians, *Alexander* to the Macedons. What should wee speake of the Parthians? who made Ecbatana their Seat Royall in the Summer time: and of the Saracens, Tartars, Persians and Turkes, who haue successiuely vexed these Countries?

x *Plut. de facie in Orb. Lua.*
y *Strab l.11.*
z *Cur.l.8.c.29*

Not farre from Shamaki, saith Master *Ienkinson* a, was an olde Castle, called Gullistone (now beaten downe by the Sophi) and not farre from thence a Nunrie of sumptuous building, wherein was buried a Kings daughter, named *Ameleck Channa*: who slew her selfe with a knife, for that her Father would haue forced her (thee professing chastitie) to haue married a Tartar King: vpon which occasion the Maidens euerie yeere resort thither to bewaile her death.

a *Hak.Voyag. Tom.1.*

There is also a high Hill called Quiquifs; vpon the top whereof (they b say) dwelt a Gyant named *Arneoste*, hauing on his head two great Hornes, and Eares, and Eyes like a Horse, and a tayle like a Cow, who kept a passage thereby, till one *Haucoir Hamshe* (a holy man) bound him with his woman *Lamisache*, and his sonne *After*; who is therefore had in Saint-like reputation.

b A fabulous report of the Medes.

Obdolowcan King of this Country vnder the Sophi, besides gracious entertainment, granted vnto Mr. *Anthony Ienkinson* for our English Merchants great priuiledges, *Anno* 1563.

Gilan, also anciently *Gela*, is reckoned to *Media*. Into these Cities of Media the c Israelites were transported, together with their Religion by *Salmanesar* the Assyrian: GOD in his manifold wisdome so punishing their sinnes, and withall dispersing some sparks of diuine truth.

c 2.Reg.17.6.

CHAP. III.
Of the Parthians and Hyrcanians.

§. I.
Of Parthia.

PArthia is placed by *Plinie* d in the rootes of the Hills; hauing on the East the Arians; on the West, the Medes; on the South, Carmania; on the North, Hyrcania, rounded with desarts. Hee affirmeth, that the Kingdomes of the Parthians were eighteene. Eleuen of them neere to the Caspian Sea; and the other seuen neer the Red Sea. The word Parthian signifieth with the Scythians *an exile*. Their chiefe Citie was Hecatompylos, now (as some e affirme) Hispaham, for the excellencie thereof called of the Persians, *Halfe the world*. These Scythian exiles in the times of the Assyrians, Medes, Persians, and Macedonians, were an obscure people, the prey of euery Conquerour, which after seemed to diuide the world with the Romans. Their speech was mixt of the Median and Scythian; their Armies consisted most part of seruants, which they held in great respect, instructing them in feats of Armes. In an Armie of fiftie thousand where with they encountred *Antonie*, there were onely eight hundred freemen. The Parthians f had no vse of gold or siluer, but in their armour. They had many wiues, whereof they were so iealous, that they forbad them the sight of other men. They performed all businesse priuate and publike on horse-backe; this being the distinction of free-men from seruants. Their buriall was in the bellies of birds, or dogs. Their naked bones were after couered with earth; they were exceedingly superstitious in the worship of their gods: a stout, vaquiet, seditious, vnfaithfull people. *Arsaces*, first a famous thiefe, after, the Founder of that Kingdome, left no lesse memorie of himselfe amonst the Parthians, then *Cy-*

d *Lib.6.29.*
e *Maginus.*
f *Iustin.41.*

rus

rus among the Persians, or *Alexander* among the Macedonians. The day wherein hee ouerthrew *Seleucus*, was solemnly obserued euery yeere amongst them, as the beginning of their libertie. Of him they called all their Kings *Arsaces*, as the Roman Emperors are named *Cesars*. They g called themselues the brethren of the Sunne and Moone, which are in those places worshipped. This *Arsaces* was worshipped after his death. They were no lesse bloudie to their brethren, when they came to the Crowne, then the *Ottomans* are at this day. *Phrahartes* h slew thirtie of his brethren; and before them his father; and rather then he would endure a possibilitie of a Competitor. About i 224. yeeres after Christ, *Artabanus* the last Persian King, being slaine by *Artaxeres*, or *Artaxares* the Persian, the Empire returned to the Persians, who were thereof depriued by the Saracens; and they againe by the Tartars: and is now for the greatest part vnder the Sophi: they had their cup-quarrels, striuing who should draw deepest: which custome wee need not goe into Porthia to seeke. *Strabo* mentioneth among the Parthians, a Colledge or Senate of *Magi* and Wise-men. Their ancient religious Rites I finde not particularly related.

g *Amm. Marcell. lib. 23.*

h *Iustin l. 42.*

i *Vediantes, sect. 5.*

The Parthian affaires are thus by some k related. After *Alexanders* death, none of the Macedonians vouchsafing so meane a Prouince, *Stragonor* a forrainer obtained it: after which (the Macedonians contending in ciuill quarrels for the Soueraignetie) Parthia wauered in vncertaintie, till in the time of *Seleucus* the nephew of *Antiochus*, *Theodotus*, Deputie of Cachia, entituled himselfe King: so giuing example of rebellion to the Easterne Nations, which *Arsaces* among the Parthians easily followed. Hee combining himselfe with *Theodotus*, and after his death, with his sonne, strengthened himselfe in his new erected gouernment of two Cities. But *Seleucus* taking armes against him, was by him ouerthrowne in battell: which day first gaue light to the Parthian greatnesse, not vnworthily obserued therefore of their posteritie with solemnitie. For *Seleucus* being by more important affaires called home, the Parthians had leisure to establish their hopes. *Athenaus* reporteth that *Arsaces* tooke him prisoner, and after gentle vsage he sent him home.

k *Iustin l. 41. Dion Cassius, lib. 40. Pius Secundus Asia Graecye Parthiae; P. Bizonus Rerum Persicarum, f. 50.*

After this first, came a second *Arsaces*, who encountered with *Antiochus* the sonne of *Seleuchus*, comming against him with an Army of an hundred thousand foot-men, & twentie thousand horse. The issue was, they parted friends in mutuall league. *Priapatius*, or *Paupatius* was their third King, to whom *Phraates* his sonne succeeded; and next, his brother *Mithridates*, who subdued the Medes and Heliimæans, enlarging the Parthian Empire, from Mount Caucasus to Euphrates. Hee tooke *Demetrius* King of Syria prisoner: and died in his old age. His sonne *Phraates* was the fourth: on whom *Antiochus* warred, and the Parthian opposed against him his brother *Demetrius*, till then detained prisoner. But whiles he warred against the Scythians, by treason of his owne subiects hee was slaine; and *Artabanus* his Vncle placed in his roome. He also soone after died of a wound receiued in the field: and his sonne *Mithridates* succeeded, whom the Parthian Senate expelled and deposed. But others reckon betweene *Artabanus* and *Mithridates*, *Pacorus*, and his sonne *Phraates*. So vncertaine is the Parthian Historie; for which cause also l *Scaliger* blameth *Onuphrius* for being too peremptory in such vncertainties.

l Reade *Scal. l. 13 c. 13*

Next in orders reckoned *Orodes* or *Herodes*, who besieged his said brother *Mithridates* in Babylon, and tooke both it and him, and caused him to be slaine in his sight. Against him *Crassus* the Roman Consull (moued with couetousnesse, m hatefull to God and man, saith *Florus*) led the Roman Legions to win the Parthian gold: And by the way n passing through Iudæa, spoiled the sacred Treasury which *Pompey* spared, amounting to two thousand talents, and robbed the Temple of eight thousand talents besides. Hee also carried away a beame of solide gold, weighing three hundred *Minæ* (euery *Mina* is two pound and a halfe Roman) deliuered vnto him by *Eleazarus* the Treasurer, vpon condition to take nothing else. But *Crassus* violated the oath which he had giuen to *Eleazarus*, and carried all he liked. Many dismall o presages prohibited *Crassus* his expedition, as the curses of the Tribune, whom *Dion*, *Plutarch*, and *Appian* call *Atteius Capito*. Those curses were denounced with inuocation of some vnknowne gods. Also the Roman ensignes were drowned, with sudden tempests in Euphrates: and when p hee had sacrificed to *Venus*, his sonne stumbled and fell, and *Crassus* with him. He reiected the Legates of the Parthian, alledging the former league with *Pompey*. Thus posting to his destruction, one *Mazarus* (as *Florus* calls him; or as *Plutarch*, *Artamnes*; *Dion*, and *Appianus* name him *Augarus*) encountred him, not with Armes, but with Arts and wiles, professing great hostilitie to the Parthians. *Crassus* following his aduice, led his Army into by-ways and deserts, till being brought into the Parthian snares, his new guide forsooke him, and the couetous Consull, with his sonne were slaine, and eleuen Roman Legions taken or left in the place. His head and periured right hand were sent by *Surenas* the Parthian General (who was said to haue then in the field with him twelue hundred Concubines, and a thousand Camels laden with his own furniture) vnto King *Orodes*: who contumeliously,

m *L. Florus l. 2. c. 11.*

n *Ioseph. Antiq. l. 14. c. 12.*

o *Stadius in Homum.*

p *Plutarch. Crassus. Liuy Epitome l. 106. Eutropy l. 6. Dion. Cas. l. 40. Sim. Maiuli dies Canic. Colloq. 10.*

contumeliously, (if contumely and merite can ioyne societie) vsed the same, powring into his iawes (sometimes greedie of that metall) molten gold. *Orodes* enuying *Surenas* the gloty of his victorie, slew him, and committed the remnants of that warre to be pursued by his sonne *Pacorus*, adioyning to him in that exploit *Osaces*. In the ciuill warres they tooke part with *Pompey* against *Cæsar*. *Pacorus* being receiued into societie of the Kingdome with his father, inuaded Iudæa, and placing *Antigonus* in the Kingdome, captiued *Hircanus*. But whiles he aspired to greater hopes, hee lost himselfe and his Armie, in which were twentie thousand Horse-men, in a battell with *Ventidius*; who by a wily Stratageme, counterfeiting flight and feare, and suffering the Parthians to come vp to their Tents, that they had now no space for their Arrowes, effected this ouerthrow. 10

Pacorus his head reduced the Cities of Syria to the Roman subiection, without further warre. This newes made his father madde, who before boasting of the conquest of Asia by *Pacorus*, now in many dayes did neither speake nor eate: but when hee once did open his mouth, all his speech was *Pacorus*, who still seemed present vnto him. In this extaticall mood, *Phraates*, one of his thirtie sonnes, which he had by so many Concubines, slew him, and after them his brethren, with a sonne also of his owne. This cruelties caused many Parthians to betake themselues to voluntary exile, among which *Monæses* prouoked [f] *Antonius* to warre vpon this Tyrant. Hee did so, but with bad successe, of sixteene Legions scarce bringing the third part backe again. *Phraates*, impotent and vncapable of so glorious aduentures, grew into such insolences, that the people exiled him, and placed *Tiridates* in his roome; who was sonne after displaced by the Scythians, and *Phraates* restored to his place. *Tiridates* fled to *Augustus* (then warring in Spaine) for refuge and aide, carrying with him the sonne of *Phraates*, whom *Cæsar* sent backe against to his father without any price, maintaining neither partie against the other, but allowing liberall prouision to *Tiridates*. 20

f *Flor. l. 4. c. 12. Dion. lib. 49.*

But after this, [g] *Augustus* going into the East, the Parthians fearing ill measure, redelivered all the Roman captiues, and ensignes, and gaue hostages also, his two sonnes, with their wiues and children, and resigned Armenia to the Romans. *Phraatax* his sonne slew him, with greatest iniustice, repaying that which was most iust, and due to his former paricide. This *Phraatax*, vsing incestuous acquaintance with his mother, *Thermusa* (an Italian, whom *Augustus* had bestowed on *Phraates*, and by whose helpe hee was slaine) was killed in an vprore, leauing his sonne *Orodes* his successor. Hee also in a conspiracie was killed: and *Vonon* substituted, whom the Parthians not long enduring, forced to seeke helpe of the Romans, where he was perfiduiously slaine. 30

g *Suetonius in vita Augusti, cap. 21.*

h *Sueton. in vita Tiberij, c. 49.*

Artabanus obtained the Empire, [i] from whence hee was after chased by *Vitellius*, who placed *Tiridates* in the Throne, which hee had scarce warmed, when *Artabanus* recouered it, and after left it to his sonne *Bardanes*; the Arsacian stocke being now dispossessed. This *Bardanes* [k] whiles hee minded warres against the Romans, is killed of his owne. *Gotarzes* his brother succeeded to the Scepter: which he held, notwithstanding the decree of the Roman Senate for *Meherdates* the sonne of *Vonon*, whom hee tooke and cut off his eares: *Vonones* was his successor, a little while, and presently after *Vologeses* his sonne. The next was *Artabanus*, and after him *Pacorus*; and in the next place *Cosdroes* his brother: against whom *Trajan* warred with good successe, who extended the Roman Empire to the Indians. But *Adrian* renewed league with the Parthian. *Parthamaspates* succeeded; and soon after *Vologeses*, who left heire his sonne of the same name, deprued by his brother *Artabanus*. He being vniustly dealt with by the Romans treacherie, driue them to sue for peace: which, after that *Antoninus* [l] the author of the breach was dead, was easily obtained by *Macrinus* his successour. But *Artaxerxes* a Persian preuailed better, in a third battell ouerthrowing him, and reducing the Kingdome after such a world of yeeres to the Persian name. Some reckon this 472. yeeres from *Arsaces*, and 228. after Christ. *Scaliger* [m] reckoneth the time of the Parthian Dynastie 479. yeeres. The number of their Kings after this computation is nine and twentie. They which list to see further of their warres with the Romans, may reade the Roman Authors, which haue written the same: the summe whereof is here presented to your view. 40 50

i *Herodianus Macrinus.*

l *Herodianus Macrinus.*

m *In Scal. Canon. Isagog. l. 2.*

Cornelius Tacitus [n] tells a merry tale (for I think these Tragedies haue wearied you) and pertinent to our purpose, of a good-fellow-like *Hercules*, whom the Parthians worshipped. This kind-hearted god warneth his Priests in a dreame, that neere to his Temple they should set his horses readie furnished for hunting, which they doe, lading them with quivers full of Arrowes. These after much running vp and downe the Forrest, returne home at night blowing and breathless, their quivers being emptied. And *Hercules* (no niggard of his venison) acquainteth the Priests at night by another vision, with all his disport, what woods hee hath ranged, and the places of his game. They searching the places, finde the slaine beasts. 60

n *Cor. Tac. l. 12.*

Better fellowship, certaine, had their *Hercules*, then their Kings, when they inuited any to their Feasts. For the King [o] had his table alone and loftie, the guests sit below on the ground, and,

o *Athenæus lib. 4. c. 14.*

and, like dogs, feed on that which the King casteth to them. And many times vpon occasion of the Kings displeasure, they are haled thence and scourged, and yet they then prostrate on the ground, adore their striker. They [p] worshipped the Sunne at his rising. *Bardesanes* [q] in *Eusebius*, saith of them, that to kill his wife, or sonne, or daughter, or brother, or sister (yet vnmarried) was not prohibited by the Law to any Parthian, nor any way subiect to punishment. The Parthian [r] Ensigne was a Dragon; the Royall Ensigne a Bow: their stile was, *King of Kings*; they ware a double Crowne. They had an ointment made of a certaine composition, which no priuate man might vse. Nor might any else drinke of the waters of *Choaspes* and *Eulaus*. None might come to the King without a present. The *Magi* were in great authoritie with them. Their Rites were mixt of the Persian and Scythian. Nothing was more seuerely punished then adulterie. A seruant might not bee made free, nor might be suffered (except in the warres) to ride, or a free-man to goe on foot. Their fight was more dangerous in flying, then in standing or giuing the onset.

Terga [s] *conuersi metuenda Parthi.*
The Parthians flight doth most affright.

They account [t] them the most happy which are slaine in battell. They which die a naturall death are vpbraided with cowardise. Their fight *Lucan* [u] describeth:

Pugna lenis, bellumq; fugax, turmaq; fugaces,
Et melior cessisse loco, quàm pellere, miles:
Illi a terra dolis, nec Martem comminùs vnquam
Ausa pati virtus, sed longè tendere nervos.
That is,
Light skirmish, fleeing warre, and scattered bands,
And better Souldiers when they runne away,
Then to beare off an enemy that stands,
Their craftie caltrops on the grond they lay:
Nor dares their courage come to right-downe blowes,
But fightteth further off most trusting to their Bowes.

Many Cities amongst them, and two thousand Villages are said [x] to haue been ouerwhelmed with Earthquakes. They are said to bee of spare diet, to eate no flesh, but that which they take in hunting: to feed with their swords giue to them, to eate Locusts; to be false lyers and perfidious: to haue store of wiues and strumpets. Their Countrey is now called Arach; in it is made great quantitie of Silkes. *Isidorus Characenus* [y] hath set downe the seuerall Countries, with their dimensions, how many Schœni each of them containeth, with their chiefe Cities, and their wayes and distances: which giueth great light to Geography, and the knowledge of the Parthian greatnesse. *Schœnus* is accounted threescore furlongs.

p *Herodianus Alexandrum.*
q *Eusebius de præpar. Euang. lib. 6 cap. 8.*
r *Sueton. Caligula. 5.*
s *Seneca in Oedip.*
t *Am. Marcel. lib. 23.*
u *Lucanus.*
x *Plin. secundus Gramaye Parth.*
y *Is. Char. ex Mael. wayboicus.*

§. II.

Of the Hircanians Tappyri and Caspians.

HYrcania (now called Straua or Diargument) hath on the West, Media; on the East Margiana; on the South, Parthia; on the North, the Sea, which hereof is called the *Hyrcane*, otherwise *Caspian*. Famous it hath beene, and is, for store of woods and Tygers. There are also other wilde beasts. Here in the Citie Nabarca was an Oracle, which gaue answeres by dreames.

Some Riuers in this Countrey haue so steepe a fall into the Sea, that vnder the waters the people resort to sacrifice or banquet; the streame shooting violently ouer their heads, without wetting them. *Iouius* writeth, That the ayre is vnwholsome by reason of the Femes. Straua the chiefe Citie abounderh in trafficke for Silke. The Ilands before it in the Sea, were no lesse refuge to the Inhabitants in the *Tamberlaine-tempest*, then to the Italians in the time of *Attila*, whose places, [z] where now Venice standeth. Their Religion, as the State, both in times past and present, hath followed the Persian, of whom we are next to speake.

It is reported [a] of *Tappyri*, inhabiting neere to Hyrcania, that their custome was to bestow their wiues on other men, when they had borne them two or three children: so did *Cato* his wife *Marcia*, on *Hortensius*: and such, saith *Vertomannus*, is the custome at this day of the Indians in Calechut, to exchange wiues in token of friendship.

They had wine in such estimation, that they anointed their bodies therewith. The [b] Caspij shut vp their parents, after they are come to age of seuentie yeeres, and there in respect of pietie

z *Contareni hist. of Venice.*
a *Strab. l. 11.*
b *Cœlius Rhod. lib. 18. cap. 28.*

pietie (what more could the impious doe?) statue them to death. Some say, That after that age they place them in some desert, and a farre off obserue the euent. If the fowles seize on them with their talents, and teare them out of their coffins, they account it a great happinesse: not so, if dogges or wilde beasts prey thereon. But if nothing meddle therewith, it is accounted a miserable and lamentable case. The Derbices account all faults (though neuer so small) worthy of the vtmost punishment. The *Earth* was their Goddesse: to their holies they admitted nothing female, nor to their tables. They killed such as were aboue seuentie yeeres old, calling to that bloudie banquet their neighbours, esteeming such miserable, as by disease were intercepted and taken away. Old womens flesh they eate not; but strangled, and then buried them; they likewise buried such as died before that age.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Persia, and the Persian State, in the first and second Persian Dynasties.

PErsia, if wee take it strictly, is thus bounded by [a] *Ptolomey*: It hath on the North, Media; on the East, Carmania; on the West, Susiana; on the South, part of the Persian Gulfe. But this name is sometimes stretched as farre as that wide and spacious Kingdome; all that Empire being often called in Authors, Persia, and differing in the bounds and limits, according to the enlarging or contracting of that Monarchie. It is supposed, that the Persians descended of *Elam*, the sonne of [b] *Shem*; whose name remained vnto a Region called *Elymais*, mentioned by [c] *Ptolomey*, placed in the North parts of Media. *Plinie* mentioneth [d] the *Elamite*, on the South next to the Sea, which name *Ierome* [e] in his dayes gaue to one of that Nation, *frater quidam Elamita, &c. Xenophon* also nameth the Tribe of the Elamites. *Moses* telleth of the raigne and power of *Chederlaomer* King of Elam, [f] in that morning of the world extended to the borders of Canaan. [g] *Herodot.* reports, that they were called of the Greckes *Cephenes*; of the neighbourings Nations, *Artes. Suidas* [h] affirmes, that they were called of the Innabitants *Magog* and *Magusai*. Other names are by *Ortelius* [i] added, *Chorsori, Achameni, Panchaia*, &c. It was called Persia of *Perseus* the sonne of *Danae*, or of *Perses* the sonne of *Andromeda*; or (as others) of *Perses* the sonne of *Medea*.

a *Lib.6.cap.40.*
b *Genes.11.*
c *Ptol.lib.6.c.2.*
d *Plin.l.6.c.18.*
e *Hieron. in Es. 13. Xenophon.*
f *Gen. 14.*
g *Herodot.li.7.*
h *Suidas in verb. Magog.*
i *Ortely Theat. & Thesaur.*

§. I.

Of the beginning of the Persian Monarchie by CYRVS.

FRom the time of *Chederlaomer*, whom *Abram* with his houshold-armie ouerthrew, vntill the time of *Cyrus*, little mention is made of them, hee freed them from the Median seruitude, and erected first that mightie Persian Monarchie. *Bizarus* [k] (which hath written twelue bookes of the Persian affaires) supposeth that in that time of their subiection to the Assyrians and Medes, they had Gouernours, and Lawes, of their owne: onely owing a tributary subiection to the other, as their supreme Lords. This hee collecteth out of *Xenophon. Cyrus* was by name foretold by *Esay* [l], and the re-building of Ierusalem and the Temple by his authoritie, before that Babylonian Monarchie was erected which destroyed them. GOD after reuealed to *Nebuchadnezzar* and *Daniel* by dreames, this Persian both rising and fall. And by dreames did he make way vnto the effecting of his decree; as appeareth in *Herodotus, Iustine* and others. For *Astyages* [m] dreaming that hee saw a Vine growing on the wombe of his daughter *Mandane*, which couered all Asia (interpreted by his Wizards, of the subuersion of his Kingdome by his daughters future issue) married her, as before is said, to *Cambyses*, a Persian, descended of the stocke of *Perseus* sonne of *Iupiter*, and *Danae*, and the sonne of *Achemenes*, [n] so that in that remote Region, meanes might faile vnto any aspiring designes. The Chaldæans report, as *Alphens* recorded out of *Megasthenes*, that *Nabuchodonosor* hauing conquered all Libya, and Asia, as farre as Armenia, at his returne rauished with diuine fury, cryed out, That a Persian Mule should come and subdue the Babylonians. This agrees some what both with the dreame, and the madnesse recorded of that King by *Daniel*, Chap. 2. and 4. The Oracle of Delphos made like answere to *Cræsus*, That the Lydians should then flee, when a Mule should gouerne the Medes. He was termed a Mule, [o] because of his more noble parentage by the mother, then the

k *P. Bizar. Historia rerum Persicarum. Christ. Vrsel. melisfic. histori. pars 1.*
l *Esa.44.28.*
m *Herodot.l.1. Iustin.lib.1.*
n *Of this family and others of the Persians, see Ke.neccius, tom.1.*
o *Christ. Vrsel. Melisf. histor. pars.1.*

the father, and their diuersitie of Nation. *Strabo* p thinkes he was called *Cyrus* of a Riuer in Persia, being before called *Agradatus*. *Plutarch* q saith, hee was called *Cyrus* of the Sunne, which with the Persians hath that name. *Polyænus* r calleth his wife *Nitetis*, daughter of *Apries* King of Egypt. *Suidas* saith it was *Bardane*, and that shee was daughter of *Cyaxares*, otherwise called *Darius Medus*. Hee conquered the Median Empire first; and after added two other, the s Lydian and t Babylonian. *Cræsus* the Lydian consulting with the Oracle about the successe of his warre, receiued answere:

Κροῖσ' ἁλὸν διαβὰς μεγάλω ἀρχὴν καταλύσει,

That is,

Crœsus *passing Haile great state shall make to fall.*

This he interpreted of the ouerthrow of *Cyrus*, but proued it in himselfe; *Cræsus* his sonne had beene mute, till (now seeing the sword of his enemy readie to giue the fatall stroke vnto his father) violence of sudden passion brake open those barres, and stops which Nature had set before as impediments to his speech, and by his first most fortunate-vnfortunate language, cried to the bloudie Souldiers to spare his u father. After his many great exploits, hee warred vpon *Thamyris* the Scythian Queene, where he lost his life, I know not how, Diuine Prouidence seemeth to haue set those Scythian flints to the Persian proceedings; those great Monarches, both in the elder, and our later world, euer studing those Northerne windes crossing, and in some dismall successe prohibiting their ambition that way.

Cyrus was of so firme memory, that hee could call all the souldiers (some say, but all that had any place of command) by their proper names. He ordained, that his souldiers should in the first joyning with the enemy sing certaine Hymnes to *Castor* and *Pollux*, that by this meanes they should not bee surprised with sudden feare. He gaue leaue to the Iewes to returne and re-people their Countrey, and to re-build the Temple. x *A.M.* 3419. *Esra* calleth this the first yeere of *Cyrus*; not the first of his reigne, but of his *Easterne Monarchie*, as in his Edict himselfe proclaimeth; *The Lord* GOD *of Heauen hath giuen mee all the Kingdomes of the Earth*. For after he had ouercome *Darius Medus* (whom *Berosus* calleth *Nabonnidus*) in battell, and forced him to keepe himselfe in Borsippa; hee besieged and obtained Babylon, where spending some time for the setling of his affaires, he after that forced *Darius* to yeeld; and returning to Babylon, made a conquest of Susiana. All which atchieued, the ninth yeere after the taking of Babylon, the seuentieth of the Iewish Captiuitie, the nine and twentieth of his raigne, and the first of that his Babylonian Empire, hee made the decree aboue mentioned, and dyed the second yeere after. It is probable also, that the Persians who held *Cyrus* in such veneration, began their Æra, or new Computation, from this time of his setled Empire: an honour giuen after by the Easterne world to *Alexander* in like manner. The Babylonian Kingdome was thus *diuided and giuen to the Medes and Persians*; first to *Darius*, by bloud and descent a Mede, and after, by conquest to *Cyrus* a Persian.

We haue large Fragments of *Ctesias* (who was present in the battell betweene *Artaxerxes* and *Cyrus*, as was *Xenophon* also, who hath written the same at large) collected and reserued by *Photius*, who saith, hee had read foure and twentie Bookes of this *Ctesias* his Persica, in which hee much differeth from the reports of *Herodotus*; professing, that hee had either seene those things which hee writeth, or receiued them of the Persians themselues. He affirmeth that *Astyges* (so he calleth *Astyages*) was nothing of kinne to *Cyrus*, but being by him conquered, was first imprisoned, and after inlarged, and kindly intreated; *Cyrus* taking his daughter *Amytis* (her husband *Spytama* being slaine) to his wife. He subdued the Bactrians, and tooke *Amorges* King of the Sacæ prisoner. But his wife *Sparethra* with an Army of three hundred thousand men, and two hundred thousand women, came against *Cyrus*, and taking him and *Pæmyses* the brother of *Amytis* prisoners, in exchange of them redeemed her husband *Amorges*, after this helped *Cyrus* in his warres against *Cræsus*, who (the Citie being taken, and his sonne, which had beene giuen in hostage, slaine before his face) fled vnto *Apollos* Temple, whence by Magicall illusions he made an escape; and being taken againe and bound faster, his bands with thunder and lightning were loosed, whereupon *Cyrus* freed him, and gaue him the Citie Barene, neere to Ecbatana. *Cyrus* after that warred against the Derbices, who by the helpe of the Indians and Elephants, ouerthrew *Cyrus*, who receiued there a wound by an Indian, whereof hee three dayes afterwards died. But by helpe of *Amorges* the Derbices were ouercome, and their King *Amorans* slaine with his two sonnes. *Cyrus* before his death made *Cambyses* his eldest sonne his heire, and *Tanyoxarces* his younger, Lord of the Bactrians, Choramoians and Parthians, and set *Spytades* sonne of *Spytama* ouer the Derbices. He reigned thirtie yeeres.

p *Strab lib.15.*
q *Plutarch. in vita Artaxerxis.*
r *Polyænus l.8. strat.*
s *A. M. 3402.*
t *3409. Calisthenes.*

u Great were the Treasures which *Cyrus* gate in his warres; but his expenses in his daily diet (engrauen in a Pillar, which *Alexander* caused to be razed) seeme incredible: the particulars whereof, see in *Polyen. lib.4.* and *Opmeerus pag.105.*

x *Scaliger. Calistius. Alg. A. M. 3421.*

Esra c.2.

Scal. Proleg. ad Emend. doctrinæ & in not. Frag. Dan. 5.28.

Xen. de exped. Cyri. Iun.

Phot. Bibliotheca 72.

§. II.

§. II.

Of the succession of CYRVS: *and of* CAMBYSES.

CAMBYSES (*Ctesias* addeth in his twelfth Booke) sent his fathers bodie into Persia. He warred vpon Egypt, and sent *Amyrtæus* the King with fixe thousand Egyptians Captiues into Susa, hauing slaine fifte thousand Egyptians, and lost seuen thousand and two Persians. In the meane time *Sphendadates* one of the Magi, being corrected by *Tanyoxarces* for some offence, accused him to *Cambyses* his brother, who caused him to die with a draught of Buls bloud, deceiuing his mother and his brothers followers, as if hee had put the Magus to death for that slander. And so neerely did they resemble each other, that *Sphendadates* was sent to the Bactrians, where fiue yeeres after, the mysterie of this iniquitie was detected by *Tybetheus* an Eunuch (by him chastened) vnto *Amitis*, who, when shee could not obtaine him of *Cambyses* to punishment, poysoned her selfe. *Cambyses* after hee had reigned eighteene yeeres, died at Babylon of a wound which he had receiued in his thigh, by whisling a sticke to passe away the time, hauing receiued before direfull presages of this disaster, in his sacrifice not bleeding, and *Roxane* bringing him forth a sonne without a head. *Bagapates*, and *Artasyras* his chiefe Eunuches procured the Kingdome to the Magus, reigning with the name of *Tanyoxarces*, till *Ixabates* detected him, who fleeing into a Temple was drawne thence and slaine. But seuen chiefe men, *Onophas*, *Idernes*, *Norodabates*, *Mardonius*, *Barises*, *Ataphernes*, and *Darius* sonne of *Hystaspes*, conspired against the Magus, and by the helpe of *Artasyras* and *Bagapates*, slew him in his bed-chamber, hauing reigned seuen moneths, ordaining the solemne festiuall *Magaphonia* in remembrance thereof. *Darius* being mounted to the Throne by the neighing of his Horse (as these Princes had before agreed) built him a Sepulchre in his life time, in a Hill; which when hee would haue seene, the Chaldæans forbade him, and his parents curious of that sight, were let downe by the Priests with ropes: but they terrified by the sudden sight of Serpents, let goe their hold, and *Darius* for that losse of his parents slaine in the fall, cut off the heads of the Priests, in number fortie. He marched with eight hundred thousand men into Europe against the Scythians; but returning with losse, dyed after hee had reigned one and thirtie yeeres.

Plutarch in the *Life of Artaxerxes* accuseth *Ctesias* of absurd fables, &c.

But before we follow *Ctesias* any further, let vs see what the common report by *Herodotus* and others hath deliuered of these proceedings: and let the iudicious Reader chuse whom hee will embrace. *Scaliger* and others, rather follow *Herodotus*, who relateth of *Cambyses*, that succeeding his father, hee tooke, and after slew *Psammenitus* King of Egypt. And when hee would haue added Æthiopia [a] to his new Conquests, with the spoiles of the Temple of *Ammon*, for which purposes he sent two Armies; the one was almost consumed with famine, the beasts and prouisions failing, and that barren desart denying grasse; the remainder by consuming one another, were (a strange remedie) preserued from consumption, euery tenth man being by lot tythed to the shambles, and more returning to their fellowes mawes, then on their owne legs. The other Armie was quite buryed in the sands. At his returne, finding the Egyptians solemnizing the feast of their Idoll *Apis*, hee slew the same (it was a *Bull* which they worshipped:) and after dreaming that *Smerdis* reigned, hee sent, and slew his brother which was so called, in vaine seeking to frustrate this presage, which was fulfilled in another of that name. He fell in loue with his sister; and asking whether it were lawfull for him to marry her, the Iudges (whose authoritie with the Persians lasted with their liues) answered, that they had no such law, but they had another, that the King of Persia might doe what him liked; whereupon hee married her. His cruelties appeared, in that *Praexaspes* presuming to admonish him of his too much inclination to drunkennesse, he answered, he should see proofe of the contrary, and presently sending for *Praexaspes* his sonne, with an arrow shot him to the heart: the father not daring but to commend his steadie hand and Art in shooting. He dyed of his owne sword, which falling out of his scabbard as hee mounted his horse, killed him, not fearing in this Countrey of Syria any such disaduenture, because the Oracle of *Latona* [b] in Egypt had told him he should dye at Ecbatana; which he vnderstood of Media, and was fulfilled at another Ecbatana (more obscure) in Syria. Hee caused a Iudge, which had beene corrupted with money, to be flayed, and made of his skin a couering for the Tribunall. *Polyænus* tels, That against the Egyptians hee vsed this stratagame; to set the gods (dogs, cats, sheepe, &c.) in the fore-front of his battell. He neither deserued nor obtained thae honourable funerall which *Cyrus* had, who was buryed at Pasargadæ, a Tower shadowed with trees, hauing in the vpper part a Chappell furnished with a bed of gold, a table, cups, and vessells of the same metall, with store of garments and furniture, set with iewells. Certain *Magi* were appointed to attend it, with daily allowance of a sheepe,

[a] *Herodot. l. 3.*

Seneca de Ira, l. 3. c. 14.

[b] *Bizæ. l. 1.*

sheepe, and once a moneth a horse for sacrifice. His Epitaph was, *O man, I am* CYRVS, *King of Asia, Founder of the Persian Empire; therefore envy me not a Sepulchre.* *Alexander* opened the same in hope of gold, but found nothing, saving a rotten shield, a sword, and two Scythian bowes: he crowned it with gold, and couering it with his owne apparell, departed. These things [k] *Strabo, Arrianus*, and *Curtius* report.

k *Strab.15. Arrian 6. Curtius.l.9.*

§. III.

Of the succeeding Monarchs vntill ALEXANDER'S *Conquest.*

NExt to [a] *Cambyses* succeeded, for a small time, one *Smerdis*, which was slaine as an Vsurper, by the seuen Princes; and [b] *Darius*, the sonne of *Hystaspes*, succeeded, designed to that greatnesse by the first neighing of his horse. For when no male issue Royall was left, these Princes agreed, That meeting in a place appointed, he whose horse first neighed, should be acknowledged Emperor. *Darius* his horse-keeper, the night before, had suffered his horse there to vse his brutish lust with a Mare; which the place presently causing him to remember, he there (by his lustfull neighing) aduanced his Master to the Sceptet. *Darius* for his couetousnesse (first exacting tribute) was called a Merchant, *Cambyses* a Lord, *Cyrus* a Father of his people. Babylon rebelled, and was [c] recouered by the costly stratagem of *Zopyrus* [d], who cut off his nose and eares, and fleeing in that deformed plight to the Babylonians, accused *Darius* of that cruelties. (*Ctesias* telleth this of *Megabyzus.*) They beleeuing, entertained him, and knowing his Nobilitie and Prowesse, committed their Citie to his fidelitie, which he vpon the next opportunitie bestsied to his Master. *Darius* warred against the Scythians, but vnfortunately. His Army was of 700000. men. After *Darius* his death *Xerxes* [e] reigned (whom *Scaliger* proueth to bee *Assuerus*, the husband of *Esther*. This *Esther* is by some thought to be *Amestris*, whom the Ethnike writers blame for cruelties: moued haply thereto by the execution committed vpon *Haman*, and the Iewish enemies in the booke of *Esther* related. They adde (perhaps in slander and hatred) that shee killed fourteene children in one bloudie vow, and other things which I will not rehearse; but retume to *Xerxes*.

a 3428.
b 3429.
c 3476.
d *Iustin.l.1. Plutarch. in Apophthegm.*
e 3466. *Scal. Animad. in Eusebiad. 301.*

He made league with the Carthaginians, warred vpon the Grecians with an Armie (as *Herodotus* [f] numbreth) of 1700000. foot-men, 80000. horse-men, 20000. Chariot-men: Others say, That there were 2317000. foot-men in land-forces, besides 1208. ships. *Ctesias* hath only 800000. men, besides Chariots, and 1000. sayle of ships. Before the Army was drawne the sacred Chariot of *Iupiter*, by eight white horses; no mortall man might ascend the Seat. Hee offered to *Minerua* at Troy 1000. oxen. He, taking view of his huge Army, wept, in thinking, that of all that number in a hundred yeeres none would be aliue. At the passing of the Hellespontike straits, he (besides other deuotions performed) at the Sun-rising took a golden Viall full of sacred liquor, and cast the same into the Sea, with a golden Bowle & a Persian Sword; vncertaine whether in honour of the Sun, or in satisfaction to the angry Hellespont, which a little before, in more then madde arrogance, he had caused to be whipped, and hurled fetters therein, with many menacing threats. Hee wrote letters with like threatnings to Mount Athos, and accordingly pierced his bowells, and made way by force thorow that high and huge Mountaine. This Expedition was in the yeere of the World 3470. *Leonides*, with his Spartans, enlarged his glory at the Thermopylæan straits [g], or narrow passage, which a long time, with a handfull of men, hindred the Persians from passing. *Mardonius* was slaine, and *Xerxes* fled out of Greece, after hee had taken Athens, and lost great part of his Army, which in two yeeres space receiued fiue ouerthrowes, at Thermopylæ, at Artemisium, at Salamis, at Platæa, at Mycale. *Xerxes* being slaine of *Artabanus* his kinsman, A. M. 3485. *Artaxerxes* succeeded, in whose time Egypt rebelled, helped therein by *Inarus* and the Grecians.

f *Herodot. l.7.*

g *Xerxes* sent first 15000. after 20000. and lastly 50000. choyce men against them, which all had the worse: till a Trayitor taught *Xerxes* another way where to passe and come vpon their backs: and then *Leonides* in the night entred the Persian Campe, and slew 20000. with his 300. men, which were killed being wearie with killing.

Among other the mad parts of *Xerxes*, it is reported, That he fell in loue with a [h] Plane tree in Lydie, which hee adorned with chaines and costly furniture, and appointed a Guardian thereto. *Artaxerxes* writ to *Hystanes*, Gouernour of Hellespontus, That hee should giue *Hippocrates Cous* (who then liued, and whose writings still remaine the Physicians Oracles) as much gold and other things as hee would, and send him vnto him. In his time the Egyptians rebelled, and created *Inarus* their King, to whom the Athenians sent three hundred Gallies for defence; but by *Artabazus* and *Megabyzus* they were subdued. *Artaxerxes* dyed, *An. M.* 3525.

h *Aelian. Var. Hist. l.1.*

After this *Artaxerxes*, surnamed *Long-hand*, another *Xerxes* succeeded and reigned a small time, as did also *Sogdianus*, or *Ogdianus*, or (so *Ctesias* calleth him) *Secyndianus*, whom *Darius Nothus* slew, and possessed the Throne. *Ctesias* nameth him *Ochus*, and saith that hee

changed his name to *Darius*. In the time of this King was the Peloponnesian Warre, which *Thucydides* hath related. *Artaxerxes Mnemon* his sonne succeeded, *An.M.*3545. He slew his brother *Cyrus*; *Ctesias* was there present with *Artaxerxes*, whom hee cured of a wound giuen him on the brest by *Cyrus*, with whom was then present and partaker, that great Philosopher, Captaine, and Historian hereof *Xenophon*. *Artaxerxes* was a name giuen (as some write) to all the Persian Kings: it signifieth a great Warrior, as *Brisson* and *Drusius* obserue. This *Mnemon* reigned fortie yeeres. After his death succeeded *Ochus*, and reigned three and twentie yeeres. Next to him was *Arsei*, or *Arsames*; and last of all *Darius*, whom *Alexander* ouerthrew the second time at Arbela, *An.M.*3619. & conquered that Persian Monarchy to the Macedonians. Of the Macedonian successors of *Alexander* (so much as concerneth this place) is before handled in our Syrian relation. They were depriued of these parts by *Arsaces*, of whom & all his Parthian followers, euen now ye haue read in the Chapters of Parthia.

§. IIII.

Of the Persian Chronologie.

Concerning these Persian Kings, Chronologers (after their wont) differ not a little. Master [a] *Linely* hath taken great paines in this Argument; besides the painefull labours of *Scaliger*, *Iunius*, and many others, both Rabbins, and Greeks, and Latines, in whose streames Elephants may swim, and the greatest Students may finde enough to busie their studious braines: for mee, it is sufficient to taste, or at least to enter so farre as a Lambe may safely wade, without perill of drowning. The Hebrewes, through ignorance of the Olympiades, and humane Authors (where they are destitute of their owne) are most absurd, some [b] reckoning but foure Persian Kings in all, till *Alexanders* time: some account [c] fiue: and some [d] three. Against these, *Pererius* and *Temporarius* [e] most sharpely (and not vnworthily) enueigh, as also against their [f] Chronicles, which ascribe to the Persians, from the first yeere of *Darius* the Mede, but two and fiftie yeeres. *Iosephus* better seene in Ethnike Authors dissenteth from them. As for *Metasthenes* of *Annius*, wee haue before shewed him to be counterfeit, and the rest of his brethren, to bee either the bastards of *Annius*, or Changelings, which hee hath nursed, and would father vpon those Authors, whose names they beare. *Viues* [g] calls them *Portentosa, & vel solo auditu horrenda*; monstrous reports, dregs, friuolous pamphlets of vncertaine Authors; which, if any bee in loue with, hee may enioy without him his corriuall. [h] *Goropius* bestowes much paines in the vncasing of them; and learned men [i] doe now generall diffaste them. *Iosephus* [k] cites *Megasthenes in quarto Indicorum*, the fourth Booke of his Indian Historie; from whence *Petrus Comestor* alledgeth the same testimonie, with deprauing the word *Indicorum*, and making it *Iudicorum*. *Annius* addes, not onely the corrupting of the name *Metasthenes* for *Megasthenes*, but a Historie vnder his [l] name, *de Iudicio Temporum & Annalium Persicorum*, wherein no marueil if hee proceed in the Storie, as he began in the Title. *Beroaldus* [m] in the Persian Chronologie faineth diuers names to the Persian Kings; as *Assuerus*, *Artaxerxes*, *Darius Assyrius*, *Artaxerxes Pius*. *Linely*, and other moderne Writers out of the Greeke Olympiads and Histories, haue giuen truer account of the Persian Times and Gouernment, beginning with the fiue and fiftieth Olympiad, and continuing the same to the third yeere of the hundred and twelfth.

Scaliger and *Calusius* (as you haue seene before) doe a little differ from this account of Master *Linely*, which he liuely proueth by conference of other Histories, both Humane and Ecclesiasticall, *Clemens*, *Eusebius*, *Herodotus*, *Diodorus*, *Polybius*, *Xenophon*, *Thucydides*, *Dionysius*, *Halicarnassaus*, *Liuie*, and others. As much adoe is made about the beginning and ending of *Daniels* weekes, and the time of the building and finishing the second Temple, both which are much illustrated by the right knowledge of the Persian Chronologie. [n] *Iunius*, *Linely* [o], and some others begin the account of the threescore and ten weekes, and reckon the building of the second Temple, in the second yeere of *Darius Nothus* [p], to whose reasons I referre the Reader, and returne to our Persian affaires. How this Persian Empire agreed to the dreame of *Nabuchodonosor*, and the visions of *Daniel*; *Broughton* [q], *Reuisnerus*, and others haue written; it were too tedious here to relate. *Artaxerxes* (others call him, perhaps more truely, *Artaxeres*) recouered the Persian Name and Empire fiue hundred thirtie eight yeeres, as *Biraarus*, *Lib.4.* reckoneth, after *Alexander* the Great had extinguished them, and in the yeere of our Lord 230. Others say it was in the yeere of Christ 233. and in the yeere of the World 4182. and 563. after *Alexanders* Conquest: others otherwise. The Catalogue of [r] the Persian Kings in that their second Dynastie, you may reade before, *Lib.1.c.13.* But for better satisfaction of the Reader, we will here present a short view of their Historie.

a *Linely* his Chronologie of the Persian Monarchie.
b *Aben.Ezra.*
c *Rab.Moses.*
d *R. Sadiah & Alir. Dauison.*
e *Temporarius.*3.
f *Seder Olam Rabba, Sedar Olam Zota*, Historicall Cabala. See *l.1.c.3.*
g *L.Viues, in proœm.l.18.de Ciuit. Dei.*
h *Goropius Becceselan.*
i *Mercator. Iof.Scaliger, Volsterranus, Pererius, Temporarius, &c.*
k *Iosepho. contra Ap.lib.1.*
l *Metasthenes Annij.*
m *Beroaldi Chron.l.3. Vid. Reinec. p.2. D. Angelo. Chrono.l.1. &c.*
n *Iun. Annot. in Dan.9.*
o *Linely* his Chronologie. p *Olymp.89. An.3.*
q *Brought. Concent. Eluc. Reusners Isag. hist.l.2.*
r Of this later Persian Dynastie, See *Agathias, Biraarus, Pergelius*, and *Lampadius in Mathesicia Hist. part.2. & 3. Cedrenus & Zonaras, Ann.3. &c.*

§. V.

§. V.

Of the second Persian Dynastie.

ARTAXARES being a man of hautie spirit, sought three battells with *Artabanus* the Parthian, and at the third time depriued him of life and Scepter together. Hee proceeded ro subdue the neighbouring Barbarians; and passing ouer Tygris, disturbed the Romane Prouince of Mesopotamia, deuouring in hope, and threatning in termes, all those Asian Prouinces, sometimes subiect to the Persians, before the Macedonian deluge. *Alexander Seuerus* (sonne of *Mammea*) the Emperour writ to him, to stay his course: But Pikes, not Pens, were like to preuaile with *Artaxares*, who brought into the field seuen hundred Elephants, and eighteene hundred Chariots, and many thousands of Horse-men, but with much bloud-shed was forced to leaue the honor of the day to the Romanes. *Herodianus* seemeth to write harder fortunes of the Romans in this warre. But *Lampridius, Eutropius, Orosius*, and *Zosimus* write, That *Seuerus* obtained the victory, and tooke Ctesiphon and Babylon, and subdued also Arabia. *Agathias* [a] affirmeth, That *Artaxares* was called *Magus*.

Valerianus was ouer-throwne by *Sapores*, the successor of *Artaxares*, in Mesopotamia, and there taken, & was made a foot-stoole for *Sapores*, on whose necke he vsed to tread, when he tooke horse; and at last was flayed aliue, and sprinkled with salt. *Zosimus* saith, That he was treacherously taken at a meeting for conference: and *Trebellius Pollio* ascribeth it to the treason of his guide. This cruell Tyrant afflicted the Roman Prouinces, to Cilicia and Cappadocia, filling with dead bodies the broken spaces betweene the Hils, feeding (as it were) those deformed gaping iawes with cruell banquets of mans flesh. *Odenatus Palmirinus* brought some light to the Romans in this darkened and dreadfull Eclipse of their Sun, and recouered the Roman Territories. His wife *Zenobia* after his death, like another *Semiramis*, proued a fortunate Generall & Warrior against the Persians, and also against the Romans, from whom she withheld Syria, til *Valerius Aureliauus* carried her to Rome, being by vnexpected accident surprised. As for *Valerianus*, it was the iust iudgement of God for his cruell persecution of the Christians, whom he had at first fauoured, till one of the Egyptian Priests had perswaded him to this, and other wickednesse, as humane sacrifices, and such like. *Euseb. l. 7. c. 9.* He was taken of *Sapores, An. Dom. 260.* after *Calusius* computation. *Buntingus* hath two yeeres lesse.

In the time of *Probus* the Persians sued for peace, and obtained it; he procuring such peace in the East (saith *Vopiscus*) that a rebellious Mouse was not heard to peepe. *Carus* his successor warred against the Persians, and hauing entred their Country as farre as Ctesiphon, was slain with a Thunder-bolt (no Roman Emperour, by, I know not what secret destinie, from the time of *Crassus*, passing those parts, without vnfortunate successe.) This was *An. Dom. 283.*

Diocletian sent *Galerius* against *Narses* the Persian, sonne to *Varranes*, or *Vararanes*, the second: (for after *Sapores*, *Hormisda* his sonne had reigned a yeere; *Varranes* the first, three yeeres; *Varranes* the second, sixteene; and a third of that name onely foure moneths, as *Agathias* reckoneth.) But not farre from Carrhæ (fatall to the Romans) *Galerius Cæsar* lost [b] almost all his Armie, and therefore found homely welcome at his returne, *Diocletian* suffering him to lacquey (in his purple Robes) some miles after his Chariot. Indignation supplying his former defects, he recouered his credit with the ouer-throw of the Persians; *Narses* fled, leauing his wiues, sisters, and children to the Conqueror. A league was made, with returne of Armenia, Mesopotamia, and Assyria to the Romans.

Misdates the Persian, began his reigne *An. Dom. 301.* To him *An. 309.* succeeded his sonne *Sapores*, and reigned (which I think was neuer read of any) longer then he lined in view of the World, beginning his reigne before his birth, which he continued threscore and ten yeeres. For *Misdates* [c] dying without issue male, and leauing his wife great with child, the Princes consulted with the *Magi*, whether this future birth would bee male; which they affirmed, obseruing their predictions by a Mare, then ready to foale; and the Princes set on the Crowne, or Royall Ensigne, on the mothers belly, acknowledging him for their King. This *Sapores*, in a letter to *Constantius* the Emperour, intitulled himselfe *King of Kings, partaker of the Starres, brother of the Sunne and Moone*: he demanded all that had before belonged to the Persians, to bee restored. Betwixt them grew a bloudie warre, as *Ammianus* relateth. *Sapores* tooke Singara and Bezabde, *An. Dom. 359.* but was repelled into Persia by *Constantius*. *Iulian* his successor seeking to subdue the Persian, lost himselfe. The best part of himselfe he had lost before in Apostasie, which plucked this destruction vpon him, *An. 362.* It is vncertain whether diuine or humane hand executed this iustice on him. *Iouinian* was presently saluted Emperor, but forced to agree on dishonourable conditions with the Persians, leauing the Rabdicens, Carduens, Rhesens, Zalens, and Nisibis to the Persian Dominion. And a little

Artaxares.

a *Agathias. l. 4.*

Sapores.

b *Oros. & Rom. Letus, A.D. 296*

Sapores 2.

c *Agathias. l. 4.*

Little after, in the reigne of *Valens*, the league was broken by *Sapores*, who wonne Ctesiphon: *Valens* intending this war, was by the Gothes ouerthrowne, and burnt aliue, before he could effect any thing, *An.* 377. When *Theodosius* reigned, the peace was renewed.

After *Sapores* succeeded *Artaxerxes*; and after him *Sapores* his sonne, both which reigned nine yeeres. Then followed *Varanes Cermasar* eleuen yeeres, to whom succeeded [d] *Isdigertes*, who held peace with the Romans. *Procopius* writes, That *Arcadius* the Emperour on his death-bed, *Ann.* 407. ordained in his last Will, this *Isdigertes* the Tutor and Protector to his sonne and heire *Theodosius*, which he faithfully performed. *Agathias* also acknowledgeth it a currant report. [e] *Maruthas* was in credit with this King. Hee was a Christian Bishop, and by his prayers had cured him of a grieuous sicknesse, which the *Magi* with their *Fierie* superstition, and all their labour, could not effect. The *Magi* conspiring against *Maruthas*, watched opportunitie, that when the King should come (after the Persian wont) to worship the *Fire*, a man (whom they had hidden before within the earth for that purpose) cried aloud, That the King should goe forth, as being accounted of their god impious, who so loued a Christian Bishop. Hereupon the King bethought him of sending him away. But *Maruthas* suspecting the knauerie, counselled the King to cause the earth to be digged vp; for the *Fire*, saith hee, cannot speake. The King going into the Chappell or Sanctuarie, and hearing this voyce against, followed *Maruthas* his counsell, and found out their packing, and punished the authors, allowing *Maruthas* to build a Church, wherefoeuer hee pleased in Persia. And whiles the *Magi* yet added to their treacheries, he not onely punished their persons, but distasted their Religion, and purposed to become a Christian, but by death was preuented, which happened *An.* 421. *Varanes* or *Vararanes* his sonne, followed not his steps, but both brake league with the Romans, and persecuted the Christians. *Narses* his Generall, with his forces, were defeated, Azamzæ wasted, Nisibis besieged by the Imperialls: The Saracens, which ayded the Persian, stricken with a strange fustie and amazement, drowned themselues in Euphrates. It is said, a hundred thousand men perished. *Theodosius* then Emperour, knew these things by *Palladius* [f], who in three dayes did ride from Constantinople hither, and backe againe in as many, vsing to flie in this manner to any the remotest parts of the Empire, with such admirable, and almost miraculous expedition; with his celeritie making that spacious Empire seeme but narrow and strait. *Vararanes* sent an Armie of those expert Souldiers which were among them, for their excellencie, called *Immortall*, but the Romans swords soone proued them mortall. Thus succeeded that Warre which he had begun, for despight to the Christian Religion and profession. He was forced to seeke peace, and ended or mitigated his persecution. To him succeeded, *Ann.* 441. another *Izdigerdes*, who reigned seueneeene yeeres; and after him *Perozes*, who reigned foure and twentie yeeres; after him, his brother *Obalas* (*Bizarus* calls him *Bleses*) ruled foute yeeres. *Cabades* his successour renewed the Warres with the Romans; and no maruell, for hee was cruell to his owne people, and worred euen against Nature: for hee ordained (as some report) That women should be common, any wedlock-bands notwithstanding. Whereupon his Nobles conspired against him, depriued and imprisoned him. *Bleses* was enthronized (*Scaliger* hath *Zamasses*) who foure yeeres after resigned the State vnto *Cabades* again, who hauing before reigned eleuen yeeres, added thereto thirtie more. *Nicephorus* [g] tells, That hee became friend to the Christians, and permitted free libertie of that Religion vpon this occasion. Betweene Persia and India was a Castle, called *Tzurcadaber*, wherein *Cabades* had heard, that much money and iewells were kept. *Cabades* vsed all meanes to obtaine it, but in vaine; so strongly was it (as the Storie saith) garded with Deuills. Hee therefore vsed all the Persian Exorcismes to dispossesse them; and when they preuailed not, he sought to effect it by the Iewes, but with the former successe. At last hee made vse of the Christians, who expelled the spirits, and deliuered the Castle vnto him.

It is reported, that he slew *Zethobes*, King of the Hunnes, for playing on both hands, and comming to helpe him in his Warres against the Romans, having before sworne to assist the Emperour. About these times were the *Manichees* [h] destroyed in Persia, for corrupting his sonne *Phatharsa* with their infectious leauen. He therefore slew their chiefe Prelate *Indagarus*, and many thousand *Manichees*, all in one day, hauing assembled them with a wise professing, that he would make that his sonne King. He assembled also the chiefe of the *Magi*, *Glonazdes*; and *Boazanes* a Christian Bishop, for the greater solemnitie, with like deuotion as *Iehu* sacrificed to *Baal*, with the presence and assistance of *Iehonadab*, 2. *Kings* 10. *Calmusius* saith this was done *An.* 523. *Cabades* dyed, *An.* 531.

His sonne *Cosroes* the Great succeeded, and reigned eight and fortie yeeres. Hee about the thirteenth yeere of *Iustinians* Empire, *An.* 539. inuaded the Roman Dominions, tooke Sutus, burnt Berræa, destroyed Antiochia, and with lesse successe besieged Edessa. *Agathias* preferreth this *Cosroes* for his great exploits before *Cyrus* and *Xerxes*. Yet was his end ignoble,

d *A.* 400. Bunt. *Isdigertes.*

e *Niceph. Callist. lib.* 14. *cap.* 18.

f *Socrat. hist. Eccles. l.* 7. *c.* 19.

g *Niceph. Callist. l.* 16. *c.* 36. *Cedrenus*, *Zonar. An.* 1.3.

h *Manes*, first Author of his Heresie, was flayed aliue, and cast to the Dogs. *Niceph. lib.* 6. *cap.* 22.

Cosroes.

ignoble, and vnworthy his high spirit. For *Mauritius* in the time of *Tiberius*, entred into the Persian Dominions, and burnt some Villages neere to the place where *Cosroes* then was for his recreation, and saw this burning spectacle: wherewith Indignation and Griefe mustering greater multitudes of fearefull, vnquiet, enraged thoughts in his heart, then *Mauritius* had Souldiers in his Armie, vnable to beare such vnwonted sights of hostile flames in his Countries, and such vnwonted sights of inward perturbations, euen greatnesse of spirit made way to Pusillanimitie, and being weakned with collucta̅tion of contrary passions, a feauer, taking that occasion and aduantage, apprehends him, and soone after kills him.

Some say, his sonne *Ormisda* reigned seuen yeeres with his father. Hee succeeded and reigned eight yeeres. Hee was exceeding cruell, by reason of a prophecie that his subiects should dispossesse him, which caused him to dispossesse thousands of them of their liues: and made him so odious, that they easily after apprehended the occasion to fulfill that subtill deuillish Oracle. Against him *Mauritius* performed worthy attempts, which made way vnto him for the Romane Empire. And then also hee had good successe against the Persians, by the valour of *Philippicus* his Generall: insomuch, that the Persians moued with these and other discontents, by incitement of *Varamus*, deposed *Ormisda*, killed his wife and sonne before his eyes; which hauing remained to performe vnto him that their last, vncouth, vnnaturall seruice, were presently after put out, with burning needles thrust into them; himselfe first imprisoned, and after beaten to death with clubs, by *Cosroes* his sonne. That *Varamus* had, a little before, beene sent as Generall against the Roman Armie: which his seruice being found vnseruiceable, and the Romans preuayling, he was not onely deprued of his place; but, to his further disgrace, was, by the Kings commandement, [f] clothed in womans attyre: which indignities he repayed, not in words alone (in his letters stiling *Ormisda*, The *Daughter of Cosroes*) but with those vnnaturall and disloyall practises: which hee continued also against *Cosroes*, sonne and heire of *Ormisda*, forcing him to flee to *Mauritius* the Emperour for succour. For *Varamus* did not approue his succession, but writ vnto him to relinquish his royaltie, for feare of succeeding in his fathers fortunes. In that letter he stileth himselfe, *Friend of the Gods, Enemy of Tyrants, Wise, Religious, Vnblameable, Happy, Prouident, &c.* CHOSROES giueth him an answere, wherein he thus writeth, CHOSROES *King of Kings, Lord of Lords, Ruler of Nations, Prince of Peace, Saluation of men, amongst the gods a man good and eternall, amongst men a god most Illustrious, most glorious Conqueror, rising with the Sunne, giuing eyes* (Starres) *to the nights, Noble from his ancestrie, &c.* But for all these great Titles, he was compelled to flee, as is said, and write in a lower stile to *Mauritius*.

Simocatta Hist. Maur. l. 3. c. 16.

f Simocat. l. 3. c. 8. & l. 4. c. 3.

Simoc. l. 4. c. 7, 8.

Theophilactus Simocatta, speaking of the Abares, a Scythian Nation dwelling neere Ister, saith, that they were descended of the Hunnes, and that *Bocolabras* (which word signifieth one that is a Priest and *Magus*, for their Priests were their Diuiners) hauing offended *Chagan*, the Prince of these Abares, fled vnto their originall Nation, dwelling in the East, neere to the Persians, commonly called Turkes. This I mention to shew the Turkish originall, and their common descent with the Hunnes (with whose posteritie in Hungarie they now hold such continuall dissentions) by the testimonie of an Author, which writ his Historie a thousand yeeres since. In his third Booke and sixth Chapter, hee saith, the Hunnes which dwell in the North-East, whom the Persians called Turkes, were subdued by King *Hormisdas*; and whereas before the Persians had vsed to pay them fortie thousand pieces of gold to buy their peace, they now forced these Hunnes to pay so much for tribute to the Persians. The Persian Gold bred such surquedrie and excesse amongst the Turkes, that they had their Beds, Tables, Horse-furniture and Armours of solide Gold: which prodigalitie made them couetous, and to demand larger contribution from the Persians; hence arose those warres and that thraldome of the Turkish Nation. This Author, first of all other to my knowledge, mentioneth the Turkish warres, which since haue yeelded matter for Authors more then enough.

Simoc. hist. Mauric. l. 1. c. 3. & 8.

Turcomanzia.

These Turkes are [g] said to helpe *Varamus* in his rebellion; but both hee and they receiued discomfiture by *Narses* the Roman Generall, and sixe thousand were taken and slaine. The Turkes being asked why they helped *Varamus*, answered, That they were forced thereto by famine: they were also maked with a Black Crosse, which (they said) they learned of the Christians, thereby to expell hunger. *Cosroes* thus recouered the Kingdome by aide of the Empire, which *Varamus* had vsurped to himselfe.

g Bizarbiss. Pers. lib. 5. Simocat. lib. 5. cap. 1c.

Hee [h] was deeply seene in the Chaldæan mysteries, and being by a Roman Gouernour reproued for some excesse, in those times when he so much needed their helpe: he answered, That the times did a duantage him to those reproofes: but know (saith hee) that calamities shall also befall the Romans, and the Babylonian Nation shall rule them three weekes of yeeres. After that, in the fifth weeke, the Romans shall subdue the Persians: which being come to passe, a day shall come that shall haue no nighr, and the expected end of the Empire

h Niceph. l. 17. & 18. ex Simocat. lib. 5. c. 15.

shall be at hand; in which time corruption shall be abolished, and men shall liue according to Diuine Ordinance. This, either false or vncertaine prophecie (according to that *Deepenesse of Satan*) he vttered, but what effect answerable hath followed, I know not. [i] In his time the Saracens, confederate with the Romans, spoyled the Countries of Babylonia.

i *Simocat. l. 8. c. 1.*

This *Cosroes* reigned nine and thirtie yeeres. He held peace with the Romans whiles *Mauritius* liued; but when *Phocas* cruelly and treacherously had slaine him, a world of euills at once assaulted the Empire. The Germans, Gaules, Italians, Hunnes, and Persians, by their Armies afflicted the publike State; and the Roman Bishop then began to aspire to an vniuersall Soueraigntie, which that *Murtherer* first entituled him vnto. That Armie which was yet red with the bloud of *Mauritius*, by the Persians sword was punished, and died in their owne bloud: who hauing ouerthrown the Romans in two battailes, made way for further conquests. Thus did God punish that Murtherer, and besides (to pay him in his owne coyne) *Priscus*, *Heraclon*, and *Heraclius* conspired against this Conspirer, and murthered the Murtherer, and hauing cut off his Priuities, and his Head, hurled him into the Sea, and destroied his Issue.

Heraclius succeeded in this troubled state of the Empire: *Chosroes* preuailing by his victorious Armies entred Apamea, Edessa, Cæsarea, Cappadocie, and subdued Asia, whiles the Auares, or Abares wasted and spoiled Europe: the Saracens also (as in preludes of their future fortunes) committed great spoyle in Syria. This in the third yeere of *Heraclius*: in the fourth, the Persians tooke Damascus; in the fifth, Ierusalem (carrying away k the Crosse) and slew therein by instigation of the Iewes 90000. and subdued Palæstina. In the seuenth, he inuaded Egypt and Africa, and conquered all, euen to Ethiopia. In the ninth, the Auares entred Thrace with an Armie, and *Chagan* chased *Heraclius* into the Citie, spoiling many Townes: but the next yeere compounded on peaceable conditions; the Persians at the same time tooke Ancyra a Citie of Galatia. In the twelfth yeere of *Heraclius*, a certaine Astrologer, *Stephanus Alexandrinus*, prophecied, that the Saracens should rule in power and dominion three hundred and nine yeeres, and then should endure much disquiet and trouble fiftie sixe yeeres. What he saw in the Starres we know not: but their Fates were longer liued. *Saes* at this time sent with an Armie from *Chosroes* wasted all the East, and held fraudulent conference with *Heraclius*, who sent with him seuentie chiefe men Embassadours to *Chosroes*. All these *Saes* treacherously lead captiues and bound into Persia, which yet could not satisfie his tyrannicall Master, who (because hee had seene *Heraclius*, and had not brought him aliue) caused him to bee flaied quicke: and sent *Sarbarus* against the Romans. *Heraclius* beganne his expedition with penitent, and lowly seeking peace with GOD, who made his warres prosper against the Persians. Some say he sent Embassadours to *Chosroes*, who refused all conditions, except they would renounce their crucified GOD. This GOD preuailed against that presumption, and deliuered Gazacum into the hands of *Heraclius*, in which Citie was the Temple of the Sunne, the treasure of *Croesus*, and imposture of *Coles*. There he found the abominable image of *Chosroes*, in the Globe-fashioned [l] roofe of the Palace, as it were sitting in heauen. About this were the Sunne, Moone, and Starres, which hee worshipped superstitiously, and certaine sceptre-bearing Angels standing about the same. There were certaine deuices to imitate showers of raine, and the noise of thunder. These all, together with the Temple of the *Fire*, and the Citie, *Heraclius* committed to the deuouring, not the deuotion of the fire. Hee after ouerthrew *Sarbarazus*, and *Sarbarancas*, and *Sais*, Persian Generalls, with all their forces; and so preuailed, that *Chosroes* in impious reuenge, robbed all the Christian Churches in his dominion of their gifts and treasures, compelling all the Christians (a worse sacrilege) to the Nestorian heresie. He also sent *Sais* with a great Army against *Heraclius*, and *Sarbarus* with another against Constantinople, stirring vp the Slauins and Gepeds to helpe him, with the Westerne Hunnes or Auares. *Heraclius* sent one Army to the safeguard of the Citie, another against *Sais*, and with the third hee went to the Lazikes, seeking to winne the Easterne Turkes, called Chazari, to his partie. These breaking through the Caspian Straits vndet *Zebeelus* next in dignitie to *Chagan*, committed exceeding spoyles. *Heraclius* meane while ouerthrowing *Sais*, who dying with indignation of this losse and griefe for his Masters displeasure, could not thus appease his fury, but his carkasse was despightfully intreated; although the Heauens fought for *Heraclius*, and with a sudden shower of Haile caused that Persian ouerthrow. Tenne dayes was Constantinople besieged, but by diuine power preserued, as *Cedrenus* and others write, by a miraculous Vision. *Chosroes* makes *Razates* his Generall, who encounters with *Heraclius*, not farre from Ninive, and lost his life and the field. This victoriously he proceeded, chasing *Chosroes* before him fiue and twentie miles in a day, which could not before go fiue. And when some had accused *Sarbarus*, as inclining to the Romans, he sent to *Cardarichas* his Colleague to kill him; which letter being intercepted, caused *Sarbarus* to become such indeed; who adulterating his Masters

k *Sup. l. 2. c. 22.*

Cedrenus pag. 334.

l ἐν τῷ θολοειδεῖ φαντάσματι, &c.

Chron. Alexandrinum de hac reb. fusius, quod & hac illi temporis scriptum videtur.

Masters letters, and putting in other foure hundred chiefe men, called an assembly, and publikely reading the letters, caused a rebellion. And in the yeere 626. *Cosroes* now at his wits end, or rather quite beyond them, appointed *Medarses* his sonne to bee his successour and heire apparent: where with *Siroes*, his elder sonne, being discontented, conspired to betray his father and brother to *Heraclius*: and soone after caused them both to bee slaine at Ctesiphon. Peace [m] was concluded with the Romans, and their Prouinces restored. Onely Arabia was by *Mahumet* holden, as a Seminary of a greater mischiefe, vnder which the world with griefe and amazement still groneth. *Lope Obregon* in a large Spanish booke, of the consutation of the Alcoran, which, hee saith, hee gathered out of the Moores writings, tells that *Mahomet* serued *Heraclius* in his warres against *Cosroes*, with more then ten thousand horse-men; the victorie denied pay, conquered a great part of Persia to himselfe. And when *Siroes* successour to *Cosroes*, withstood him; he gaue him the ouerthrow, and therefore the Persians chose a new King to represse these Arabians: and that after this, *Heraclius* sending for the Crosse which hee had recouered from the Persians, from Ierusalem to Constantinople, (this *Palladium* being gone) hee wanne Ierusalem, and the Countries about. Other prodigious miracles hee farseth into his storie, and describes a Throne which *Cosroes* had made a Tower of siluer garnished with precious stones, vnder the same on one side the Sunne, on the other the Moone, and iust with it the Crosse, which he had taken from Ierusalem, and that hee would be adored for King and Lord of the World. But I will not ingage my selfe farre for this Historian.

Siroes, *Adeser*, *Barazas*, and *Baram* the daughter of *Cosroes*, in their order of succession in that disordered and turbulent estate, had scarse two yeeres allowed to them all: to whom succeeded *Ormiz.da Iezdegird*, who about the yeere 632. was ouerthrowne and slaine by the Saracens: and that Persian Kingdome (then weakened by ciuill dissentions) was subdued to Saracenicall seruitude; and that second Persian Dynastie (continued as *Scaliger* [n] reckoneth in eight and twentie successions, the space of foure hundred and two yeeres) had an end. From thence vnto this time their Religion is Saracenicall: their State gouerned by the *Caliphs*, [o] and such Commanders or Sultans as they had placed ouer them, till their Sultans warring with the Califa for Soueraignie, procured aide from the Turkes: who dispossessed them of their Kingdome presently, after they had disburthened them of their enemies: The Turkes were displaced and chased away by the Tartars. Of these both Saracens and Turks, you haue the historie in the former booke, and therefore needlesse here to be related: Of the Tartars shall follow in their order. Now let vs a little looke backe to the Greatnesse, and other things most remarkable in the Persian Kings.

m *In Chro. Alex.* you may reade the letter of *Siroes* to *Heraclius*.

n *Ioſ. Scaliger. Can. Iſag.*

o *Io. Lampadius Mellific. Hiſt. part.* 3. and our third booke sheweth the order in succession of them.

CHAP. V.

Of the Persian Magnificence, and other their Antiquities.

THe time of the first Dynastie, howsoeuer *Dionisius Halicarnass.* contradicteth it to two hundred yeeres, and *Cedrenus* to two hundred and fourteene: yet *Q. Curtius* (who writ the ouerthrow of the same by *Alexander*, in the time of *Claudius*, vnder whom, if *Brissonius* [a] hath gathered truly, he was Proconsull of Africa) and *Hieron.* and *Clemens Alexand.* and others little disagree from that our former account reckoning two hundred thirtie one. In which space the greatnesse of their Kings appropriated the Title of the *Great King* vnto themselues, as *Drusius* in his *Obseruations*, and *Brissonius* out of *Dio. Chrysostomus*, *Aristides*, *Isocrates*, and others haue obserued: so *Artaxerxes*, *Ezra.*7.12. calleth himselfe *King of Kings*, which the Parthian after annexed to his Stile. The Kingdome was Hereditarie both in Persia and Parthia, the eldest Sonne begotten in Wedlocke, succeeding. In long Expeditions the Heire apparant was nominated. They vsed to be inaugurated or crowned (after our Phrase) at Pasargadæ, [b] by their Priests, which *Plutarch* thus describeth. The designed King goeth into a Chappell of the Goddesse of Warre (it may be thought *Minerua*) and there putting off his former Habit, puts on that which *Cyrus* ware before he was King: then doth he eate a lumpe of Figges, and Turpentine, and drinkes a cup of sowre Milke: their other Ceremonies are not knowne. On his head was set a Cidaris or Tiara; this was a kind of Cap or Turbant, not like a Felt of wooll, but of diuers pieces of cloth sewed together, *Tritis pileis sutis de lacertis*; the Kings differing from the common sort, because his ascended strait with a sharp top not bowed any way; to the other Persians it was deadly to weare a Tiara, except the top bowed (in token of subiection) to their forehead. Only the posteritie of those, which with

a *Briſ. de Reg. Perſiſh.* 1. *Curt. lib.* 4. *Hier in Dan.* 3. *Clem. Strom. lib.*

b *Plut. in vita Artaxerxis.*

Tiara what it was, *de hac plura vid. ap. Tertullian. de Idolo.*

with *Darius Hystaspis* slew the vsurping *Magus*, might weare them bending to the middle of their head, and not hanging downe to their browes, as the other. The Kings Tiara was properly called *Cidaris*, and was set on by the *Sarena*, which was an hereditarie dignitie next to the King. About this Cidaris hee wore a Diadem, which some Authors [c] confound, and make to be the same; others otherwise: it was a purple band, or of blew colour, distinguished with white, which was wreathed about the Tiara. The right or strait Tiara, with that purple and white band, was the note of royalties, as the Crowne in these parts. The Diadem in [d] other Countries, was a white band wreathed about the forehead. The new King was placed also in a golden Throne, and (if hee pleased) changed his former name, as *Codomannus* to *Darius*.

His subiects adored him as a god (so did the Greekes [e] interprete it, and *Mordecai* which refused this ceremonie to *Haman*) prostrating themselues on the ground with a kinde of veneration; turning their hands behind their backe, if they had any sute to the King. *Sperchies* and *Bulis* Lacedemonians, and *Conon* [f] the Athenian refused this Rite: *Iscnenias* [g] the Theban dissembled it with taking vp his ring, which for that purpose hee let slip from his finger, when hee came before the King. *Timagoras* [h] was put to death by the Athenians for doing it. In the time of *Apollonius* [i], none might come to the presence of the King, which had not before done the like adoration to his Image. They also when they came into the presence of the King, held their hands within their sleeues; for default herein, *Cyrus Iunior* slew *Antafaces* and *Mitraus*, as *Xenophon* writeth. Likewise, for the greater Maiestie they seldome were seene of the people, and then neuer on foot: neither might any enter the Palace without licence of the King, signifying his attendance first by a messenger: this honour was reserued to the Princes which slew *Smerdis*, which might enter at all times, but when the King was in bed with his wife; which *Intaphernes* (one of the seuen) transgressing, therefore lost his head. Yea, the Scripture [k] noteth the danger hereof in *Haman*, the Kings greatest fauourite, and *Esther* the Queene, neither of which had libertie of entrance, without the Kings call or admission. It was a capitall offence to sit on the Kings Throne, to weare the Kings garment, or in hunting to strike any beast before the King had stricken. The King (as before is noted, of *Cambyses*) was not subiect to any law: the people were held in much slauery, if that may be so called which is voluntarie. In this affection, they which were [l] scourged at the Kings command, were thankfull to him, for that they were had in remembrance with him. Their obedience appeared, when *Xerxes* [m] being in a ship in danger, many at his word leaped into the Sea to lighten the ship. Yea, they would be their owne executioners when they had offended the [n] King. None might salute him without a present. His birth-day was obserued a sacred and solemne festiuall. His death was bewailed with a silence of lawes and sutes sue daies, and with extinguishing [o] that *Fire*, which euery one obserued in his house, as his household deitie.

The Kings abode was according to the season: seuen moneths saith *Zonaras* [p] in Babylon, three in Susa, and two in Ecbatana. *Ælian* therefore compares them to Cranes, and *Aristides* to the Scythian Nomades: alway by this shifting, enioying a temperate season. *Susa* or *Shushan*, was so called of the abundance of Lillies, which in that language are so named, saith *Stephanus*: a Region so defended by high mountaines from the Northerne blasts, that in the Summer the vehement heat parched their [q] Barly (it is *Strabo* es report, and therefore they couered the roofes of their houses with earth two cubits deepe) and it killed the snakes as they crossed the ways. It was situate on Choaspes, and entertained the Kings Court in Winter, as Ecbatana in Summer the chiefe Citie of the Medes. Sometimes it also remoued to Pasargadæ; and sometimes to Persepolis, the richest Citie, if *Diodorus* [r] bee beleeued, vnder the Sunne, wherein was a Tower enuironed with a three-fold wall, the first of which was sixteene cubits high, and made with battlements, the second twice as much, the third square, and sixtie cubits in height of hard stone with brazen gates: on the East thereof was a Hill of foure acres, wherein were the Sepulchres of the Kings. *Alexander* in reuenge of the burning of Athens, and by instigation of wine, and *Thais* his Concubine (*Mars, Bacchus, Venus*, three heauy, vnruly, tyrannicall enemies, conspiring) burned this sometime Treasure-house of Persia.

The Persian Court or Palace had many Gates, and Guards which took turnes by lot; (you reade the words of *Aristotle* in his booke *de Mundo*, hereby manifested to bee his, or at least as ancient, in that he writeth of the Persian State flourishing before *Alexander* in his time had subuerted it) some, hee saith, were called the Kings *eares*, others his *eyes*, and others had other offices, by which the King learned whatsoeuer was any where done, and therefore holden as a God: And besides his Posts which brought newes, by Fires or Beacons, he might in one day learne the State of that huge Empire, extended from the Hellespont to India. The Palace-roofe admirably shined with the brightnesse of Iuorie, Siluer, Amber, and Gold. His Throne

c *Druf. Observ. lib. 12. cap. 12. Brisf. l. 1. pag. 44.*
d *Diademata sciola candida, &c.*
Am. Marcel.
e *Iosc. in Pentateug. Esther 3. 14.*
f *Iustin. lib. 6.*
g *Ælian. V. hist. lib. 1.*
h *Valer. Max. lib. 6. 2.*
i *Philost. lib. 1.*
k *Ester 5. & 6.*
l *Stob. ser. 12.*
m *Herodot. l. 8.*
n *Ambros. Hex. 5. 21.*
o *Diodor. Sic. lib. 17.*
p *Zon. Annal. 1.*
q *Strab. l. 15. & Eustath. in Dionys.*
r *Diodor. Sic. lib. 17.*

Throne was of Gold, borne vp with foure Pillars, beset with gemmes. His bed was also of Gold (which was propounded the reward to *Zorobabel* and his companions, [illegible] 3. 3) yea, *Herodotus* tells of a Tabernacle of Gold, of a Plane tree, and a Vine of Gold giuen to *Darius* by *Pithius* the Bythinian. This Vine *Athenaeus* f reporteth, was adorned with iewels, and hung ouer the Kings bed, the Grape-clusters being all precious stones: in a Parlour at his beds feet were three thousand Talents of Gold, in another at the head, called the Kings bolster, were fiue thousand Talents. Gardens were t adioyning, which they called Paradises: some very large, wherein were kept wild beasts, as Lions, Beares, Bores, for the Kings game, with spacious Woods and Plaines, inclosed in wall. *Tully* out of *Xenophon* relateth the industrie of *Cyrus*, which with his owne hand had measured, planted, ordered, and husbanded, one of those pleasant Paradises. *Alexander* enriched them with Trees and Plants out of Greece. The Persian Kings dranke the water of Choaspes onely, which to that purpose was boyled, and carried with them in Siluer vessells wheresoeuer they went. The Parthian Kings dranke of this u and of the Riuer Eulæus (a Riuer rising in Media, which after it hath buried it selfe, againe recouering the light, compasseth the Tower of Susa, and the religious Temple of *Diana*. *Daniel* calls it *Vlai*; it seemeth to be, or to become the same with Choaspes; and so doth *Ptolomey* confound them) they dranke also onely Chalybonian wine, made at Damascus in Syria, and their bread was made of the wheat of Assos in Phrygia. Their sumptuous feasting x appeareth in the Scripture, beyond what is read in any storie of any King: in which was somewhat of euery y Nation subiect to him, set before him: his Salt was brought out of Egypt. Amongst the baggage and stuffe of *Darius*, which *Parmeno* tooke at Damascus, were found two hundred seuentie seuen Cookes, nine and twentie Scullians, thirteene which had charge of white-meates, seuentene which were to minister water, seuentie which belonged to the wine-celler, fortie which looked to the ointments, and sixtie sixe which made Crownes. How many may we thinke, were there in his setled Court? His dining-roome was full of musicall women, whereof one began the song, the rest followed: three hundred of these creatures singing, playing, dancing, spent the night in his bed-chamber. Hee z which could deuise any new pleasure, was highly rewarded: for which purpose *Xerxes* promised largely to such Epicurean-Masters by an open Proclamation. The King vsually fate alone, sometimes his mother and wife were admitted: other guests fate where hee might see, but not be seene of them: yea, they had slaush sauce to their sweet meates, being narrowly watched by the Eunuches, whether they cast any liberall lookes towards any of the Kings women. Yet, the Parthian guests had more seruile entertainment, as euen now we shewed. Concerning the multitudes of their women, and curiositie of their lusts, the booke of *Ester* yeelds ample testimonie. *Cicero* addeth, that they bestowed for the maintenance of their wiues robes, and dresses; one Citie for their haire, another for their necke; yea, the reuenues of whole countries on such excesse. *Socrates* in *Platoes Alcibiades* telleth of an Embassador into Persia, which was almost a whole day in trauelling through a Region, called the *Queenes Girdle*, another called the *Queenes Head-tire*, and so for euery other part of her Wardrobe.

The Kings a children (especially the eldest sonne) were presently after their birth committed to Eunuches, which beside education did compose and order their limes: at seuen yeeres of age they learned to ride and hunt, hauing skilfull instructers for that purpose: at foureteene yeeres they were committed to the discipline of the *Royall Masters*, which were foure choisely learned; the first in Prudence, which taught the *Magia* of *Zoroastres*, and the institution of a King: the second, in Iustice; who taught to speake and deale truly: the third, in Temperance, wherein hee instructed his new disciple: as the fourth in Fortitude. The Persian King had one, whose office was to salute the King with these words; *Arise, O King, and thinke on such things as Mesoromasdes would haue thee.* Almost euery day hee performed his holy Rites, for which cause were slaine b euery day one thousand sacrifices, amongst which were Oxen, Asses, Harts, the *Magi* being present. Before their sacrifices they discoursed of pietie: and when they went to this their deuotion, there were men on both sides the way set in rankes, with officers called *Mastigophori*, who suffered none but great personages to enter. First, were led Bulls, foure and foure together, which were sacrificed to *Iupiter*. After them, were led Horses to bee offered to the Sunne. Then followed a Chariot drawne with white Horses, hauing a golden beame, and crowned, sacred to *Iupiter*: after that, the Chariot of the Sunne like the former. Then a third Chariot, the Horses couered with Scarlet; after which followed men carrying fire, and next, the King in his Chariot; before which went foure thousand Target men, and two thousand Speare-men about it: There followed three hundred with Darts on horse-backe: two hundred horses with golden bridles: and after them three thousand Persians, and in the last place the Medes, Armenians, Hircans. *Xenophon* indeed, which writes this in his *Institution of Cyrus*, intends rather the frame of a iust Empire, then the truth of History, yet protesteth to relate no other Rites and Customes then which

f *Athen. l. 12.* *vid. Rud. de As. l. 4.*
t *Ester 1. 5. 6.*
Cic. de Senectute
u *Plin. l. 6. c. 27. & l. 36. 3.* *Dan. 8. 2.*
x *Ester 1.*
y *Athen. l. 8.*
Idem. l. 12.
z *Cic. Tusc. quæst. l. 5. Val. Max. l. 9. c. 2.*
Cic. in Verr. l. 5.
a *Vid. Xenoph. Sard. l. 1. c. 1.* *A du verdier. Brisson. Keckerman. polit. &c.*
b *Athen. l. 3.*

which the Persians embraced: neither doth hee in these things disagree from *Herodotus* and *Curtius*. The Kings Chariot was drawne with white horses, the drowning of one of which was the cause of drying c the Riuer Gyndes. For *Cyrus* enraged for the losse of his white Palfrey, diuided the riuer by force of men into three hundred and twentie rills; so that it wilderd and lostit selfe in those many by-wayes: an argument what Diuision can doe. These horses were of the Nisæan race in Media. When the King descended from his Chariot, a golden stoole was set him to step on: one alway attending his Chariot with such a stoole. While her rode in his Chariot, hee spent the time in whitling with a knife, not in reading, or any graue meditation, and therefore was vnleamed. When hee went on progresse into Media, d he enioyned the Countrey to spend three dayes before to hunt Scorpions, which there abounded; allowing rewards therefore. They vsed by themselues or their Legats, to visite their officers in the Prouinces, and to punish or preferre them according to their merits. In iudgements they not onely considered the crimes and accusations, but the counterpoise also of their vertues: and the clemencie e of *Artaxerxes* (in their irreuocable law) appeared in cutting off the *Tyare* of condemned persons, in stead of their heads.

c *Sen. de Ira. l.3 c.22.*

d *Ælian. v.h. 14.12. & l.15. de Animal. c.26.*

e *Am. Marcel. l.30.*

As often as the King entred into Persepolis, euery Matron was to haue a piece of gold giuen her: the men also were rewarded which multiplied children: but especiall rewards were bestowed on them which were called *Orosange*, which had deserued well of the King, whose names and facts were therefore recorded, as we reade of *Mordecai*, and his recompence. *Themistocles* received of the Kings bountie the Citie Magnesia, to finde him bread (which Region was worth fiftie Talents yeerely) Lampsacum for wine, Myus for cates. The chiefe gift giuen to any was a mill of gold. The Kings birth-day was a solemne feast called f *Tyta*, that is perfect, for the magnificence thereof: in which hee gaue gifts to the people: yea, hee might not denie any petition then made to him. The King nourished so many Indian dogs for hunting, that foure great villages in the plaine of Babylon were assigned to their sustenance. *Artaxerxes* caused *Megabyzus* (as *Ctesias* writeth) to bee beheaded for striking a Lyon with his dart, which was readie to assault the King, because he therein transgressed the Law, and preuented the Kings triall of his valour. The reuenues of the tributes were 14560. Euboike Talents: the siluer and gold were melted and kept in earthen vessels, which were broken when they came to vse the same. Besides this, the subiect prouinces yeelded to the maintenance of the King other things: as Armenia, horses; Babylonia, foure moneths victuals, and the rest of Asia the other eight; and other Regions their peculiar commodities. The Kings ordinarie guard, night and day guarded the Palace, the most of them Persians: another band of 10000. choice horse-men were wholly Persian, and were called *Immortall*: one thousand of the best of them, called *Doryphori* and *Melophori*, were chosen into the Kings guard. They receiue no money but allowance of victuall for their wages. *Curtius* mentioneth a guard nexr to the Kings person, called the Kings kinsemen, which were 15000. But it were tooredious to recite the *Homotimi*, *Megistanes*, and other his court-officers and attendants, the *Surena* which was the chiefe Magistrate and others, whereof *Brissonius* hath written. As their liues were burthened with voluptuousnesse, so they prepared for their deaths (that *they might descend suddenly into the graue*, as *Iob* saith of the prosperitie of some wicked, *without any bands*, to vse *Dauids* phrase, of a lingring *death*) certaine poysons, tempered of the excrements g of the Dirczius an Indian bird, which in short time, without sense of griefe deprived them of life. After the Kings death they extinguished the SACRED FIRE, which rite *Alexander* obserued h in *Hephæstions* funerall. In Persepolis were erected vnto them statelie Monuments, with Titles and Epitaphs inscribed. The Monuments of the Kings there, i with other Antiquities haue conquered Time and *Alexanders* Fires, yet remaining so fresh, as if they were new made, many still shining like glasse. Among which a Jasper Table is remarkable, inscribed with letters which none can reade, all of a Pyramide or Delta forme in diuersifyed postures. Twentie such Pillars remaine of admirable greatnesse, beautie, and likenesse, of a lasting Marble, with Images in long habits like the Venetian Senators, with wide sleeues and long beards: others sitting as in high arched seats, with footstooles in great Maiestie. There are also huge Colossean horses, with giantly riders, of Marble. And although a goodly fertile Countrey doth inuite habitation, of ten leagues extent euery way, yet is there now but one poore village of foure hundred housholdes, called *Margateon*, in this plaine of Persepolis. Our Author acknowledgeth *Diodorus* his relations iustly agreeing with his eyes: and esteemeth these Monuments farre beyond all other the worlds miraculous Artifices.

Ester. 2. 2. 3. Æmil. Probus.

f *Herod. l.9.*

Curt. l.3.

Ber. de reg. Pers.

Iob. 21. 13
Psal. 73. 4

g *Ælian. de Animal. l.4.c.41.*

h *Diod. S. l.17.*

i *Garcias. Figueroa. Bipsl.*

I might here terrifie the delicate and already-wearied Reader, with representation of their Martiall marching, discipline, numbers, armors, and the like; of which *Brisson* hath written a whole booke. Yet because wee haue thus farre waded in matters of the Persian Magnificence; let vs take a little view of the Heyre and Successour to that Greatnesse, Great *Alexander*,

Alexander, in state entring Babylon, thus by *Curtius* related. Many came forth to meet him: the wayes were all strowed with flowers and garlands, on both sides were erected siluer Altars, laden with Frankincense and all kinde of odors. There followed him for presents droues of Horses and Cattell: Lions and Leopards in grates were carried before him. The *Magi* after their manner of Procession singing, had the next place; after them the Chaldæans, and the Babylonians both Diuiners and Artificers, with musicall Instruments. Then the Horsemen, furnished beyond magnificence in excesse of prodigalitie. The King with his Armie followed, and last of all the Townsmen. Hee that will compare with these relations, that which in the bookes of the Romane Ceremonies is written of the Popes strait Tiara, enuironed with a triple Crowne: the veneration performed to him by all, euen Emperours kissing his feet, holding his bridle and stirrop, putting their shoulders vnder his Chaire, when hee lists to ride on mens shoulders, holding water to his hands, and bearing the first dish to his Table: the change of his name at his election: his Palfrayes alwayes white, like the Niszan, other Rites; shall see some hence borrowed, most exceeding the Persian Excesse. Once, all Religion with them seemeth turned into State and Ceremonie, the soule being fled, and this *(bodily exercise)* bodie of exercise, in exercise of the body, onely left.

Sac. Cer. Rom. Eccl. 1.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Persian Magi.

THe name of *Magi* is sometimes applied (say some) to all the Persians, or else to a particular Nation amongst them: sometime it signifieth the most excellent in Philosophie, and knowledge of nature, or in sanctitie and holinesse of life. Thus [a] *Suidas* calls the Persian *Magi*, *Philosophi*, and *Philothei*, studious of knowledge, of nature, and of God. Sometimes it signified such as wee now call *Magicians*, practisers of wicked Arts. Among the Persians this name was ancient and honourable, saith [b] *Peucerus*, applyed onely to the Priests, which liued in high reputation for dignitie and authoritie, being also Philosophers, as the Chaldæans were. To these were committed the custodie of Religion, of ancient Monuments, of later Histories, of publike records, and the explanation of the Persian wisdome, whose account appeareth in that after *Cambyses* death, one of them is reported to succeed in the Throne. Now, whereas the Ethnicks had a tradition of two [c] *Genij*, which attend euery man, one good, the other euill; proceeding (in likelihood) from Diuine Truth, concerning good and euill Angels, which are either *ministring Spirits* for mans good, or *tempters* vnto euill: curious men hence tooke occasion to deuise new Arts, which were called μαγεία and γοητεία; by the one calling vpon the good *Daemon* or *Genius*; by the other on the euill: which *euill One* could easily *turne himselfe into an Angel of light*, to delude blind people, being indeed (as in our *White* and *Blacke* witches at this day) worse when an Angel, then when a Deuill.

Beckhiori Arx Cath.

a *Suidas ibid. Magus. Psellus de Dem. Scal. ex 337.*

b *Peucerus de diuinat. cap. de Magis, & Delrio disquis. Mag. l. 1. Proclus de An. & dæm.*

c *Brutus* was terrified with such a *spectrum*: the like they tell of *Marius* & many others

Hereof were diuers kindes; [d] *Necromancie*, which inuocated the spirits of the dead: of which smoaky Soot, the Heathens Diuine Poets, and our Poetical Diuines in the tales of Hell and Purgatory, strique who shall haue the blackest tincture. They had also their *Lecanomancie*, which was obserued in a Bason of water, wherein certaine plate of gold and siluer were put with Iewels, marked with their iugling Characters, and thence after pronuntiation of their words were answeres whispered; [e] *Gastromancie* procured answere by pictures, or representations in glasse-vessels of water, after the due Rites. *Catoptromancie* receiued those resemblances in cleere glasses: *Chrystallomancie*, in Crystall; *Dactyliomancie*, was a diuination with Rings (which perhaps *Gyges* vsed) consecrated by certaine position of the heauens, and diuellish Inchantments. *Onymancie*, with Oyle and Soote daubed on the Nayle of an vndefiled Childe, and held vp against the Sunne: *Hydromancie*, with water: *Æromancie*, with ayre. But what should I adde the many more names of this Artlesse Art, vnworthy the naming? *Tibi nomina mille, Mille nocendi artes*; Infinitely diuersified are these blind by-wayes of darknesse and mischiefe. *Delrio* hath other diuisions of Magicke, which from the efficient hee diuideth into *Naturall*, *Artificiall*, and *Diabolicall*: from the end, into *Good and Bad*; and this bad (which is by explicite or implicite compact with Deuills) into *Magia specialis*, *Diuinatio*, *Maleficium*, & *Nugatoria*. *Zoroaster* is supposed Author both of the good and bad vnto the Persians. Naturall Magicke is by *Delrio* diuided into that which worketh wonders (not miracles) and that which diuineth. But I am weary of this Magicall search. Leaue wee them in their Mazes, Circles, Labyrinth of Errour, and let vs take view of the Persian Magi, from whence *Plinie* [f] deriueth the first originals of Magi: all Vanities; which are (saith hee) compounded

Diuers kindes of Diuination, d Νεκυομαντεία

e γαστρομαντεία κατοπτρομαντεία. κρυσαλλομαντεία. δακτυλομαντεία, ὀνυχομαντεία, ὑδρομαντεία, ἀερομαντεία. *Cum multis alijs de quibus Peucerus & Reginald. Scot. in Detect. Mag. & Celius Calcag. Amat. Mag. Comp. Agrippa de van. sci. c. 42. & seq.*

f *Plin. l. 30. c. 1.*

compounded of three Arts, that exercise most imperious power ouer the mindes of men; *Physicke*, and that offering her selfe more sublimate and pure, in the sacred name and rites of *Religion*, beautified also with the addition of *Mathematicall* Sciences; (*a threefold cord not easily broken*, like a three-headed *Cerberus*, or trible crowned Prelate holding the world in feare, or loue thereof) *Zoroastres* (who liued at *Eudoxus* testifieth, fiue thousand yeeres before *Plato*) first inuented it in Persia: *Hermippus* affirmeth, that *Agonax* taught him. *Apuleius* (*Plato*) first inuented it in Persia: *Mermaridius* the Babylonian, *Hippocus* the Arabian, *Porsus* and *Zorates* among the Medes; *Marmaridius* the Babylonian, *Hippocus* the Arabian, and *Zarmocenidas* the Assyrian, haue been famous for their practise and writings of this Art. *Pythagoras*, *Empedocles*, *Democritus*, *Plato* sailed farre to learne it, vndertaking long exiles (rather the pilgrimages or peregrinations) to that end. He impiously addeth *Moses* and *Iochabel* (it may be he meaneth *Iosoua*) to this impious number. The Scripture tells of *Iannes* and *Iambres*, and *Simon Magus* famous in this infamie. *Hierom* saith, they were the Philosophers of the Chaldeans, and that the Kings did all things after the direction of their Art; which (they are *Plinies* words) in the East ruleth the King of Kings. *Porphirius* affirmeth, that they which were wise in diuine mysteries, and performed them, were called of the Persians *Magi*: the same, saith *Picus*, that *Philosophers* were amongst the Greekes. The like hath *Philo*, and *Proclus*, and *Arnobius* of *Hostbanes Magus*. They were studious in prayers, instituted sacrifices, and mysteries, as the Indian Brachmanes, and Græcian Theologie; acknowledged Angels, Paradise, the soules immortalitie. *Patricius* also addeth to this their Philosophie and Theologie, Astronomie and Physicke, and all knowledge of Nature. It is like that in the Persian *Magi* concurred both a certaine stocke or kindred, which were also so called (as is said) and the Philosophicall Inquisition of Nature, and the Priestly function, and also some either implicite or explicite societie with Deuills. The same they were, at least in profession and reputation, that the Philosophers with the Greekes, the Priests in Egypt, *Gymnosophistes* in India, Chaldeans in Babylon, *Druydes* in Gallia and in this our Ile, the Italian *Aruspices*, and other religious persons (the Treasurers of their Theologie and Philosophie) in other places. As for those *Magi* mentioned in the Gospell, some suppose them to come from Æthiopia; some from Arabia; some from Mesopotamie; some from Chaldea; and some from Persia; and some from diuers of those Regions. Whencesoeuer they came, they had a brighter *Starre* to guide them with diuiner light, then those Magicall brans of hellish fire could yeeld.

Hier. in Dan. 2. Plin. l. 30. c. 1.

Vid. Patric. Zoroast.

g *Matth. 2. 1. Knighter Ara Cœli.*

Plato h commends this *Magia*, and calls it *Machagistia*, and *Θεραπεία* the worship of the Gods; and saith, that the Kings of Persia learned it, as a knowledge of Diuine Mysteries, wherein by the worlds Common-wealth, they were instructed to gouerne their owne. Others, as they were led by differing affection, doe as much discommend them. And truely (as in the Chaldean, and Ægyptian Priests) their searching out the mysteries of Nature cannot but deserue commendation, but their abusing this naturall Philosophie to vnnatural conspiracie with deuils, cannot but be detested of those which are not themselues detested of God. And either from this deuillish conspiracie, or ouer-curious vanitie, did arise their predictions of future euents: in which respect the Ethnikes had them in high reputation. *Ammianus Marcellinus* i saith, that *Zoroastres* added much to this Art from the Chaldean mysteries, and *Hystaspes*, the Father of *Darius*, from the *Brahmanes*, which he in his Indian trauels had found in a woodie solitarinesse, and learned of them the motions of the Starres, and pure rites of sacrifices: which he taught the *Magi*, and they, together with the skill of diuination, deliuered to their posteritie by Tradition: and that progenie is alway consecrated to Diuine Seruices, and keepe continually burning certaine fire which first came from heauen; a small portion whereof was wont to bee carried before the King of Asia. There were but a few of them at the first: and it was vnlawfull to touch the sacrifice, or approch to the Altar, before the *Magus*, with a certaine secreet speech had powred on his sacred preparatiue liquors. Afterwards being increased in number they grew into an entire Nation, and inhabited vnwalled Townes, being gouerned by their owne lawes, and honoured for Religion. *Cicero* writeth, that the *Magi* did assemble together in *Fana*, into certaine Temples or consecrated places, to consult about their diuinations. They presaged to *Cyrus* thirtie yeeres reigne. They dranke the herbe *Theangelus*, and vsed also the herbe *Agleophon* or *Marmaritis* when they would diuine. They diuined by the notes and markes of the bodie: they foretold the euents of prodigies. They might not teach any but Persians the mysteries of their science, without the Kings leaue. And yet *Plinie* saith, that *Plato*, *Democritus*, *Empedocles*, and *Pythagoras*, vndertooke exiles (as is said before) rather then trauels, to learne the same, which after their returne they taught. *Apollonius* also for the same cause went into Persia and India; whose Philosophie plainly appeareth by the history of his life to bee foyled with Magicall impuritie. And although some commend one sort of *Magia*, as being their Theologie and Philosophie, yet seeing their Philosophie was corrupted with curiositie, and their

h *Plato Alcib. Apul. Apolog. Persarum lingua Magus dicitur nostra sacerdos.*

i *Am. Marcellin. l. 23.*

Cic. de Diuin. l. 1.

Plin. l. 24. 17. Vel. Pater l. 2.

Plin. l. 30.

Theologie

Theologie with superstitious Idolatrie, it could not be free from some kinde of (at least implicite) sorcerie, as the examples of those [c] which were most eminent herein, do shew. Such as one *Pafes* was, who by enchantments would make shewes and resemblances of sumptuous feasts, with many attendants: and had a Magicall [d] or enchanted halfe-peny, which would returne to him againe, when he had bought any thing therewith. Yea, howsoeuer, *Patricius* would not excuse only, but highly commend the Oracles (as he termeth them) of *Zoroaster*, yet doth he cite out of him, that *Barbarous names must not bee changed. For all things haue their names of God, which haue an vnspeakeable power in holy things:* which words seeme to incline to Charmes, which are commonly in barbarous vnsignificant termes. Other things which he with great paines hath gathered out of the Platonikes, stamped with *Zoroasters* name, are many of them diuine, being interpreted in the best sense. For they are for the most part obscure, and many exceeding the sense of such weake Readers, as I confesse my selfe. Some I haue here expressed.

In all the world shineth the Trinitie, of which the beginning is Vnitie. The Father perfected all things, and deliuered them to the second Minde, which all mankinde calleth the First: He remaineth in the paternall profunditie. It is the minde of the Minde which is stamet of the fierie world. All the world is of fire and water; and earth, and ayre. Hee fathed a great company of not-wandring Starres, and seuen wandring creatures, ioining fire to fire, the earth in the midst, and the water in the receptacles of the earth, and the ayre aboue them. Let the immortall soule lift her eyes vpwards, not downewards into this darke world, which is vnstable, mad, heady, crooked, alway encompassing a blind depth, hating the light, of which the vulgar is carried. Seeke Paradise. The soule of man will after some sort bring God into it selfe: hauing nothing mortall, it is wholly rauished of God. It resoundeth the harmony, vnder which is the mortall body, extending the fiery minde to the worke of pietie. I desire not sacrifices and inwards, these are playes, flee these things if thou wilt open the sacred Paradise of pietv, where vertue and wisdome, and the good law, are gathered together. If these things are harsh, what would these obscurities be in his Theologie, wherein he first placeth One beginning, then a paternall profuditie of three Trinities, euery of which hath the Father, the Power, the Minde. Next in order is the *Intelligible lynx*, and after it *Synochous*, *Empyreus*, and *Aetherealis*, and *Materialis*; and after these the *Teletarcha:* after which the *Fontani Patres*, *Hecate:* and such a rabble of names follow, that the recitall would seeme to coniure the Reader into some Magicall maze or circle. They which are curious of those inextricable labyrinths, may resort to *Psellus*, *Patricius*, and the Platonikes, which ascribe these things to the Assyrians and Chaldeans, as they doe to *Zoroaster* also. *Delrio* and *Patricius* finde fixe of the *Zoroasters* mentioned in Authors, (*Geropius* after his wont, paradoxicall, none at all) the first of which was inuentor of this Magike, a Chaldæan, supposed to liue in the time of *Abraham*. *Berosus* first, and after [e] *Iulianus* a Magician, both Chaldæans, communicated these mysteries to the Greeks: and diuers of those Heretikes [f] in the prime age of the Christian Church, were not a little sowred with this Magicall leauen, as appeareth by *Irenæus*, *Epiphanius*, *Augustine*, and others that write against them. *Basilides* his *Abraxas* (the mysticall Characters of which name make three hundred sixtie fiue, the number of dayes in the yeere, and of heauens after his opinion) is supposed the same with *Mithra* the Persian Deitie, and hence to haue deriued his Magicall descent: which wee may note of others, if this belonged not to another labour.

The *Magi* had one chiefe among them in their Societie, called by *Sozomene*, [g] *Princeps Magorum*. *Cicero* [h] affirmeth, that none might be Kings of Persia, before they had learned the discipline of the *Magi:* neither was it any more lawfull for euery one to bee a *Magus*, then to be a King: Such was their estimation in Persia. *Strabo* [i] tels that they vsed carnall company with their mothers: and when they are dead are cast forth vnburied, to bee a prey to the Birds. *Heurnius* maketh *Zoroaster* Author of incestuous copulations of all sorts, and [k] of the not-burying rite, but either to burne or cast forth the carkasse, (yea Authors write that he himselfe desired and obtained to be consumed with fire from heauen.) Nothing seemed to them more vnlucky, & signe of former lewdnesse, then that no bird or beast would prey on their dead. And the souldiers which sicked in their Armies, were laid forth yet breathing, with bread, water, and a staffe to driue away the beasts and fowles, which yet when their strength failed them, easily deuoured both the meat and keepers. If any recouered, and returned home, the people shunned him as a ghost, nor would suffer him to follow his former trade of life, till he were expiated by the *Magi*, & as it were restored again to life. The Romans in pittie, passing thorow some part of Persia, where they found a carkasse in the field, buried it; but the night following, in a vision, a graueold man in habit of a Philosopher, reproued that fact, willing them to leaue the naked bodie to the dogs and birds, and the mother Earth (saith hee) will not receiue those which haue polluted their mothers. Which in the

c *Apollonius, Hostianes, Chirondas, Democritus, & Pythagorici & Platonici.*

d Suidas, hence come the Prouerbe, τὸ Πάσητος πρόσωβολον.

„ *Zoroast. Orac.* „ 324. *ap Patric. Vide.* „ *etiam Heur.* „ *Durei, &c.* „ „ „ „ „ „ „ „ „ „

e *Suidas in verbo Iuliannis.*

f *Vid. Iren. Tertul. August. & ad num. Dam. &c.*

g *Sozom. l. 2. c. 5.*

h *Cicero de diuinat. l. 1.*

i *Strabo l. 15. Nam Magus ex matre & gnato gignatur oportet (saith Catullus) Si vera est Persarum impia religio.*

k *Otho Heurn. Indicus. c. 18.*

Agath. l. 2.

the morning they found verified, the earth having vomited vp that carkasse, which there lay on the top of the graue. The *Magi* hereby appeare to haue had intercourse with the deuill: as by their predictions also, of *Sylla*, *Ocbus*, *Sapores*, and others, mentioned by *Paterculus*, *Ælianus*, *Agathias*, and other Historians. Thus were the *Magi* buried in the bowels of beasts and birds. *Tully* saith, that the other Persians were wrapped in waxe, and so preserued. The *Ostanes* and *Astrampsychi* are by *Suidas* reckoned successours of the *Magi*. *Hierome* [l] citeth out of *Eubulus* three kinds of the *Magi*; the most learned of them liued onely on meale and hearbes. *Pausanias* [m] reporteth, that in Lydia, in the Cities Hierocesarea, and Hypæpo, he saw Temples hauing Persian surnames, and in euery of those Temples a Chappell and Altar, whereon were Ashes, not like in colour to the ordinary sort. The *Magus* entring into the roome, layeth drie wood on the Altar, after that hee hath set his mitre on his head, and then at the name of a certaine God, singeth barbarous hymnes (which the Greeks vnderstand not) out of the booke: which being done, the heape is fired, and the flame breakes forth. *Diogenes Laertius* [n] relateth, that these *Magi* spent their time in the seruice of their Gods; offering vnto them prayers and sacrifices; as if none but they might bee heard; they disputed of the substance and generation of the Gods, whom they reckoned to bee the *Fire*, *Water*, and *Earth*. They reprehended Images, especially such as made a differing sexe of Male and Female, among the Gods. They discoursed of Iustice. To burne their dead bodies, they held it impious: but to lye with their owne mothers, or daughters, they accounted lawfull. They practised Diuinations, and sore-tellings: affirming, that the Gods appeared to them, that the ayre was full of formes [o] or shapes, which subtilly, and as it were by euaporation, infuse themselues into the eyes. They forbad outward ornaments, and the vse of gold. Their garments were white, the ground their bed, Hearbs, Cheese, & Bread, their food. *Aristotle* saith, that they held two beginnings; a good spirit and an euill calling the one *Iupiter* and *Oromasdes*; the other *Pluto* and *Arimanius*. (*Empedocles* [p] translated this plant into Philosophy, and long after, [q] *Manes* a Persian heretike into Diuinitie.) *Theopompus* addeth these opinions of theirs; That men should againe be restored to life, and become immortall, and that all things consisted by their praiers; *Hecataus* that the Gods were begotten: *Clearchus*, that the *Gymnosophistæ* descended from the *Magi*. Thus farre *Diogenes*.

Plutarch in his Treatise *de Osir. & Isid.* citeth, approueth, and applyeth the opinion of the *Magi* vnto many others, which they conceiued touching their two beginnings, *Arimanius* and *Oriuazes*: for whereas they saw such a mixture of euill in euery good, (which made *Salomon* to brand them all with the title of *vanitie*) they gathering that good could not bee either cause or effect of euill, found out this remedy worse then the disease, to hold two Authors of all things, calling [r] *Orimazes* a God; and *Arimanius* a the fountaine of euill, a deuill; the one cause of light: the other of darkenesse. Betwixt these two they placed *Mithres* as Mediator or Intercessor. *Zoroastres* was author of this opinion. To the first of these was praise and vowes offered: to the later mournfull deuotions. For, rubbing a certaine hearbe called *Omomi*, they call on *Dis Pater* & *Orcus*, then they wash it with the bloud of a slaine Wolfe, and carry it into a shadowie place, where they powre it out. They assigne plants partly to the good, partly to the bad God: as they doe also quicke creatures; the earthly creatures to the good, the watery to the bad, and therfore esteem him happy that hath killed most of them. *Oromazes*, say they, begotten of pure light, and *Arimanius* the childe of darkresse, warre one against another. The first created six Gods, *Benevolence*, *Truth*, *Politie*, *Wisdome*, *Riches*, *Honest delight*: the later as many contrarie. When *Oromazes* had thrice enlarged himselfe, he was as farre beyond the Sunne, as the Sunne is from the Earth, and formed the Starres: Of which, one he fixed as a Gardian and Watch-man, the Dogge-starre: hee made other twentie foure Gods, which hee closed in an Egge. *Arimanius* did as much, but his twentie foure brake their shell; and so became good things and euill mingled. But a fatall time shall come, when *Arimanius* the Author of plague and famine shall perish, and then shall bee one societie of all mankinde in happinesse, vsing but one language. *Theopompus* saith, according to their opinion, that one of these Gods shall raigne three thousand yeeres, the other being discomfited; and other three thousand they shall fight and labour to destroy one another: at last *Dis Pater* shall be destroyed, and men shall bee happy. This opinion of the *Magi*, the Chaldeans haue applied to their Astronomy; in the seuen Planets, making two good, two bad, three indifferent: The Grecians to their *Iupiter*, *Dis Pater*, and *Harmonia*: *Empedocles* to his *Friendship* and *Discord*: *Aristotle* to his *Forma* & *Priuatio*: *Pythagoras* to his *One* and *Two*: *Plato* to his *Idem* & *Alterum Manes* to his deuilish heresie, as before is said. The Persians in this respect, as some expound their mysteries, called *Mithra triplex*, as a third person and reconciler of the other two. And there haue not wanted, which ascribe this threefold *Mithra* to that threefold day, as they interprete that Signe of the Sunnes going backe ten degrees, in the dayes of *Hezekiah*, which if there were houres made,

Cic. Tusc. 1.

l Iouin. l. 1.

m Pausan. l. 6.

n Diog. Laert. de vit. Philos. l. 1.

o ἐιδωλοις.

p Empedocles.

q Manes father of the Manichees.

Plut. de Osir. & Isid.

r Or Ormisdas, or Oromazes: this was the Sunne.

made, the day twice ten beside the ordinarie twelue houres. But (as in *Hercules* his generation) a threefold night attends these mistie mysteries, which I could as willingly construe of some misconstrued notice of the blessed Trinitie. *Dio Chrysostomus* telleth of *Zoroaster* the Author of this science, that enflamed with the loue of vertue, hee forsooke the world, and went apart into a mountaine. And afterwards leauing that habitation, he seemed (to those to whom hee would shew himselfe, which was onely to the *Magi*) to shine with a fire which shining face of *Moses*. *Ap. Brisf.*

Onely Persians, saith [f] *Gramay*, were chosen into their number. The name *Magi* is among Authors applied also to the Chaldeans, which in Babylon professed the same Arts and superstitions: the Disciples (saith [t] *Lucian*) of *Zoroastres*, of whose cunning in charmes you may reade in his *Necromantia*, a pleasant discourse: *Mithrobarzanes*, a Chaldean *Magus* and *Menippus*, whom hee washed twentie nine dayes in *Euphrates* by the Moone, and in the morning sets him against the rising Sunne, with long charmes; after that spirting three times in his face, hee brings him backe againe, not once looking aside. Their meate was Acornes, their drinke Milke, Mulse, and the water of Choaspi, their lodging on the wide field on the grasse. After all this, he breught him about midnight to Tygris, where washing him, hee purifieth him with a Torch, and the herbe *Squilla*, and other things, &c. which howsoeuer *Lucian* suteth to his scoffing humour, yet I haue inserted, as somewhat expressing their superstitions, obserued in charming and diuinations. f *Gramay Asia.* t *Luciani. Necrom.*

CHAP. VII.

Of the religious, and other rites of the ancient Persians.

§. I.

Of their Gods and superstitions out of HERODOTVS.

LEauing these *Magi*, let vs take a view of the Persian religious rites which [u] *Herodotus* thus describeth. The Persians neither erect Images, nor Altars, nor Temples, and impute it to madnesse in such as doe: therefore, as I thinke, because they are not of the Greekes opinion, that the Gods haue risen from men: Their custome is ascending vp the highest Hils, to offer sacrifice to *Iupiter*, calling the whole circle of heauen *Iupiter*. They sacrifice to the *Sunne* and *Moone*, and *Earth*, to the *Fire*, and *Water*, and *Winds*; to these onely they haue accustomed to sacrifice from the beginning. They sacrifice also to *Vrania*, which they haue learned of the Assyrians and Arabians. The Assyrians call *Venus*, *Militta*; the Arabians, *Alitta*, the Persians, *Metra*. u *Herodotus lib.1.*

Their rites in sacrificing are these. Being to sacrifice, they neither ser vp Altar, nor kindle fire, nor vse vestments, pipes, cakes, or libaments; but he which intendeth to sacrifice, placing the sacrifice in a cleane place, calleth vpon that God, wearing their *Tiara*, [x] girded about with myrtle. The sacrificer prayeth not for himselfe alone, but generally for all Persians, and especially for the King. And after that the sacrifice is cut into small pieces, he strweth vnder the sodden flesh, small herbes, chiefly Trifoly; and setting the flesh in order thereon, the *Magus* standing by singeth [y] some hymnes (of the generation of the Gods) which they hold to be a most effectuall inchantment. Without one of their *Magi* no sacrifice is accounted lawfull. After all this, the sacrificer vseth the flesh at his pleasure. x *See sup. c.5.* y *Theogonias*

Of all daies, euery man accounteth his owne birth-day to be most solemnly obserued: and then maketh greatest cheare. The richer sort then set whole Beeues, Camels, Horses, Asses, baked in an ouen or furnace; on the Table the poorer, smaller beasts. The Persians are small eaters: but in their drinking, consult of the weightiest affaires. Of which they deliberate fasting, but pronounce sentence after they are well in drinke. To vomit or make water openly, is vnlawfull to them. Those that are equall, salute when they meete each other with a mutuall kisse; which is fastened on the cheeke only, if they be of vnequall degree. They hold themselues the best of all men, their neighbors so much better, how much neerer them they dwell. They are much addicted to Venerie with both sexes. Next vnto Martiall valour, they repute excellent the procreation of many Children; the King allowing annuall presents to him who hath begotten most Children, and therefore they vse many women. The childe commeth not in his fathers sight till hee be fiue yeeres old, but lieth with the women, that if hee die before, his father should thence conceiue no griefe. From that time till hee bee

twentie, hee learneth three things, to ride, to shoot, to speake truth. For *to lie* is with them the most shamefull thing; the second, *to be in debt*. For one fault onely no man ought to bee punished. Whatsoever is not meet to be done, ought not to be spoken. A Leprous person, if hee bee a Citizen, may not enter into the Citie, nor haue any societie with men: for this disease is sent (say they) for some offence against the *Sunne*: if hee bee a forrenner, they banish him out of their Region, and for the same cause carry into that Region white Pigeons. In a Riuer they neither spit, nor make water, nor wash, but haue them in very religious veneration. They might not cast any carkasse or pollution therein. These things, saith *Herodotus*, I affirme of the Persians out of mine owne kuowledge: that which followeth I doe not so well know; that they burie not their dead bodies before they bee torne of some Fowle or Dogge: but I well know that their *Magi* doe wrap them vp in Waxe, and then bury them. These *Magi* differ both from other men, and from the Egyptian Priests in this, that these pollute themselues with the death of nothing but their sacrifices, but the *Magi* with their owne hands kill any thing: except a man and a dogge: yea, they esteeme it some great exploit, if they haue killed very many Ants or Serpents, or other things which creepe or flye. Thus farre *Herodotus*.

§. II.

Of the same and other Rites out of STRABO.

STRABO [a] nameth *Anaitis*, *Amanus*, and *Anandatus*, Gods of the Persians: When the Persian Emperors had ouerthrowne the [b] *Saca*, they encompassed with a wall a certaine rocke situate in a field, and erecting a Temple of the aforesaid Gods, there instituted yeerely solemnities, named *Saca*, which of the inhabitants of Zela are yet celebrated (so they call the place.) That Towne in great part belongs to them which are called *Sacred Seruants*, to which *Pompey* added a great Country. Some report that *Cyrus*, hauing ouercome the *Saca*, attributing this victory to diuine power, consecrated that day to his Country-Goddesse, naming it *Saccan*, and wheresoeuer the Temple of that Goddesse is, there also are celebrated those Saccan feasts, in manner of the Bacchanals, day and night, the men and women drinking themselues drunken. *Strabo* in the end of the same eleuenth Booke mentioneth their Temples, and amongst others the Temples of *Tanais*, which before in *Herodotus* is denied to be the vse of the Persians: [c] *Cicero* blameth the *Magi*, for procuring *Xerxes* to burne all the Temples of Greece, because they included their Gods in walls, and to whom the whole world was a Temple and house. Their deuotion to the Sun and Moon made them spare *Delus*, sacred to *Apollo* or the Sun, and the Temple of *Diana*, or the Moone at Ephesus, as an Interpreter of *Aristophanes* hath glossed. Some hold that *Xerxes* burnt the Grecian Temples for reuenge of the burning of Sardis, and the Temple of *Cybele* by the Athenians, and not for hatred of all Temples. The Greekes would not permit the Temples so burned to bee re-edified, that those ruinous places might be places of argument for reuenge to all posteritie. The Ionians, as *Isocrates* testifieth, cursed them which should repaire them. [d] *Strabo* thus also reporteth of the Persians: They haue neither Images nor Altars: they sacrifice in an high place, they thinke heauen to be *Iupiter*: they worship the Sunne, whom they call *Mithra*, the Moone also and *Venus*, and the Fire, and the Earth, and the Winds, and the water: they sacrifice in a cleane place, and present their sacrifice crowned; and when as the *Magas*, ruler of this businesse, hath diuided the flesh in pieces to euery one, they goe their wayes, leauing no part thereof to the Gods, who (say they) are satisfied with the soule of their sacrifice. Some, as it is reported, lay a part of the Numbles on the fire. They sacrifice especially to the *Fire* and to the *Water*, laying on the fire drie sticks, the barkes pulled off, and laying thereon fat Tallow, and powring on the same, Oyle, they kindle the same, not blowing with their breath, but fanning, or otherwise enforcing the winde thereto: If any bloweth the fire, or cast any dead thing or dust therein, he is punished with death. They performe their *Water-ceremonies* in this sort: Comming to a Lake, Riuer, or Fountaine, they make a Ditch, and there slay a sacrifice, with great heed that none of the next water be touched with the bloud: after laying the flesh on Myrtle and Lawrell, the *Magi* burne the same with small twigs, and making certaine prayers, sprinkle oyle mixed with milke and honey, not in the fire or water, but on the earth. They are a long while muttering their prayers, holding a bundle of small Tameriske-twigs. That which in one place *Strabo* saith they worshipped *Mars*, onely, is a fault of the negligent Writers, as [e] *Casaubon* hath obserued in his Notes.

In Cappadocia, where is very great store of the *Magi*, which (of the Fire) are called *Pyrethi*, and many Temples of the Persian gods, they slay not the sacrifice with a knife, but a club

a *Libr. 11.*
b The [e] *Gorgias* with Dutch Etymologie, and interpretations bringeth from the Cimmerians & Saxons. See his *Saxonica pag. 606.*

c *Cic. de Leg. lib. 2.*

d *Strab. lib. 15.*

e *Is. Casaubon. in Strab 15. Strabo lib*

club or mallet, wherewith they beat it. The *Pyretheia* are great inclosed places in the midst, whereof there is an Altar: thereon the *Magi* keepe much ashes, and a fire continually burning, whither they euery day resort, and make their prayers about an hours space, holding a bundle of twigges before the fire, hauing their heads couered with a kind of labelled Mitre, hanging downe on both sides, that the ttings couer their lips. These things are done in the Temples of *Anaitis* and *Amanus*. For there are their Temples, and their Image of *Amanus* is carried in procession. These things we haue seene.

It seemeth, that whereas *Herodotus* reporteth they had no Temples, Altars, nor Images: and *Strabo* so often mentioneth their Temples, and here the Altar and Image of *Amanus*; that in *Herodotus* dayes they had none: which grew afterwards in vse, as a forraine rite brought in among the Persians after the Macedonians had conquered them: or else that there were differing Sects among their *Magi*, some (as these in Cappadocia) embracing Altars, Images, and Temples, some refusing some or all these. For otherwise *Strabo* disagreeth not onely from *Herodotus*, but from himselfe, before denying them the vse of Altars and Images, and here affirming it of the Cappadocian *Magi* (in other things) of the Persian Religion. Perhaps the burning of the Grecian Temples purchased to them that conceit with the vulgar: we know they honoured the Temple and Altar at Ierusalem. And lesse matters set on the Friers lasts, make seely Papists beleeue now, that Protestants haue no Churches nor Religion, nor scarcely the shape of men.

Iulius Firmicus f in his Treatise of the mysteries and errors of prophane Religions to *Constantine* and *Constans* Emperours, speaketh of the Assyrians and Persians: that the Assyrians ascribed the principalitie of the elements to the ayre, the Image whereof they worshipped, stiling it with the name of *Iuno*, or *Venus the Virgin*, whom the Quires of their Priests worshipped with effeminate voyces and gestures, their skin polished, and attire fashioned like women. Yea their Priests became impure *Ganymedes*, and sustained the Sodomitical lusts of others in the Temples, not shaming, but glorying of such deuotions, and composing themselues to all delicate, lasciuious, filthy behauiour: and thus wantonly dressed, with much minstrelsie call vpon the Goddesse to infuse into them a diuining and prophetical spirit. Easily may that *Impure spirit* finde access and entertainment in such impure bodies. But the Persians and all the *Magi* preferre the fire. These diuide *Iupiter* into two powers, metamorphosing his nature into both sexes. They make the woman with a three formed countenance, wound about with monstrous Serpents (sit ensignes for the Deuils worship:) and worship a man which had driuen away kine, applying his holies to the power of the Fire: him they call *Mithra*, whose blinde deuotions were done in places answerable, namely in hidden Caues.

f *Iul. Fir. cap. 4. & 5.*

§. III.

Of the same out of Christian and other Authors.

HESYCHIVS saith, that *Mithras*, or the Sun was chiefe god with the Persians: and therefore the most religious and inuiolable oath of the King was by *Mithra*. And this is confirmed by g *Firmicus* also, who saith, that the Persians preferre the Fire before all the other Elements, and that they call the same *Mithra*. (The reason is, because they held, as in the beginning of this worke we noted out of *Zoroaster*, that the Sun and all the Stars are celestiall fires.) They performed their deuotions to the same in dark Caues, where they could not see the brightnesse of that light. This *Hieronie* calls *Mithras* Den: and *Tertullian* affirmeth that *Mithras* Knights or Souldiers were initiated in the same. To whatsoeuer god they sacrificed, they first called vpon the Fire, and poured out their praiers thereto. To this Fire they dedicated certaine Chappels or Oratories, wherein to keepe it alway burning; these were called *Pyreia*: of which *Claudian*: *penetralibus ignem Sacratum rapuere adytis*. They supposed that it came downe from heauen. They worshipped all πυροειδῆ whatsoeuer h had any resemblance of fire, as the Carbuncle stone. They obserued differing ceremonies in their Fire and Water-deuotions. To the Fire i they vsed these set words when they added fewell thereto, *Lord Fire eat*. They offered wine in a cup, which they called *Coidy*. The costly sacrifices of their Kings wee haue alreadie mentioned. *Plutarch* k tels that *Artaxerxes* married his owne daughter *Atossa* (*Heraclides* addeth his other daughter *Amestris*.) And when *Atossa* was leprous, his loue notwithstanding continued, and he beought *Iuno* for her, touching the ground with his hands, replenishing the way between the Temple and Palace (which was sixteene furlongs) with offering of gold, siluer, purple, horses. *Plutarch* l willeth that *Amestris* the wife of *Xerxes*, in sacrifice to *Pluto* for her health, buried twelue men quicke in the earth. To *Mithra*, (saith *Photius*, they offered men, women, and children. And as they

g *Iul. Firm. de errore pro. fal. cap. 5.*

h *Eusteth. in Dionys.*

i *Max. Tyr.*

k *Plutarch. in Artax.*

l *De superstit. Phot. in vit. Ath. n. 258.*

they tell of *Molochs* seuen ambries, so also is related of *Mithra* [d] according to the number of the seuen Planets.

d *Celsi. ap. Orig. l. 1.*

We may further adde (from *Gramay* [e] his Collections out of diuers Authors, and from others, concerning the Persian Religion) that they sometimes obserued the Græcians Deities, calling *Iupiter, Bel*; *Hercules, Sandes*; *Venus, Anaitis*. To *Iupiter* was sacred a Chariot with a beame of gold. They Sunne the worshipped (by the name of *Mithra*, and *Eldibius*) at Sun-rising: and adored also the painted Image thereof. They accounted the Horse the Suns peculiar beast, and offered vnto him white Horses. Ouer *Darius* his Tabernacle, the Image of the Sunne, enclosed in the Christall, shone forth so that it might bee seene of all. The order also of *Darius* his march, when he warred against *Alexander*, had in their first place their Fire, which they called *Sacred* and *Eternall*, carried on siluer Altars. Next hereunto the *Magi* singing their country-Hymnes, followed by three hundred sixtie fiue young men, (so many as their yeere had dayes) clothed in bright red, then came *Iupiters* Chariot, drawne by white Horses: after whom followed a horse of exceeding greatnesse, consecrated to the Sun. Their riders had white garments and golden rods. Likewise both sides of the Kings Chariot were adorned with Images of gold and siluer: two being most eminent among them; the one of *Peace*, the other of *Warre*.

e *Gram. As. Persica.*

That Souldier, which was initiated in *Mithraes* hollowed orders, was first proued by eightie seuerall kindes of punishment: and if he continued stedfast, he was washed, putting on his head a [f] crowne with a sword interposed. Chaste Virgins were hollowed the Sunnes Priests or Nuns. They worshipped *Diana*, whom they called *Nannea* (as some will haue it) in that History of [g] *Antiochus*. They solemnized certaine Feasts, the chiefe whereof was that of *Mithra*. Another holy day they called the *Destruction* [h] *of vices*, in which the *Magi* killed venemous things, and offered; and the seruants lorded it fiue dayes together, ruling both the Family and their Masters. *Magophonia* they celebrated in memory of the *Magi* slaine by *Darius Histaspis*, and his Colleagues. Of their holy-day *Sacæa* before is spoken: in which (some report, that) the seruants changed offices and garments with the masters. *Minutius Felix* [i] obiecteth against them their incestuous copulation with their mothers. *Arnobius* derideth their worshipping of Riuers. The Christian Fathers, and Heathen Authors are plentifull in the narration of the Persian vanities. *Eusebius* [k] citeth a saying of *Bardesanes Syrus*; Among the Persians there was a law to marry their sisters, daughters, and mothers: which custome the Persians obserued also in other Countries, and therefore other Nations hating them, called them *Magusseis*, of which are many in Egypt, Phrygia, and Galatia, whose posteritie succeedeth them in the same wickednes. This name *Magussai* is deriued of *Magi*.

f *Tertull. de Coron. milit. & Prescr. adher.*
g *2. Mac. 1. 13.*
h *Athenæus lib. 12.*
i *Min. Fel. Octau. Arnob. con. Gent. lib. 6.*
k *Euseb. de præpar. lib. 6. c. 8.*

§. IIII.

Of the Persian Education and Schooles.

BVt of all other things this is most commendable and admirable, which the Persians obserued for learning and practise of vertue, if we giue like credite to [l] *Xenophon* herein, as [m] others haue done. They had a kinde of publike Schoole, called the *Free or liberall Market*, not for the sale of merchandize (which kinde of Markets the ancient Persians [n] wanted) but the learning of ingenuous, liberall, and vertuous conditions. This was diuided into foure parts, one for children till seuenteene yeeres of age, the second for youths to seuen and twentie, the third for men till fiftie, the fourth for old men. In this liberall Market or Colledge was a Palace, and Iudgement-place. Early in the morning the children resort hither: here also were the striplings, and the riper-aged men, daily: the old men often. The striplings boarded and lodged there (except they were married) and presented themselues to the Magistrates in Armour. Each Court had twelue Prefects, according to the number of the Persian Tribes. To the children are old graue men appointed, like wise to the youths men of riper age, as masters of Manners. The children come not in the Fathers sight till fiue yeeres of age, or as *Valerius Maximus* [o] hath, till seuen, and especially learne truth: they were taught by these Prefects the rules of Iustice, not by bare rules, but by examples (for which cause also, *Augustus* [p] would haue the Senators children present in the Court.) Yea a good part of the day was to this end spent by those Prefects, in hearing and deciding such cases as fell out amongst these their schollers, about thefts, reproaches, or other wrongs. Next to Truth and Iustice, they learned Sobrietie, Abstinence, Continence, and Temperance, wherein they were well futthered by the examples of their Masters: neither might they [q] eat but in their presence and with their leaue, and that not of the choisest fare, but bread and cresses, whereto they added drink from the next riuer. They planted in them a hatred of vices,

l *Xenophon. Cyrop. lib. 1.*
m *Brissl. lib. 3. A. du Verdier, &c.*
n *Herod. lib. 1.*
o *Val. Max. l. 2. cap. 6.*
p *Sueton. Aug. cap. 36.*
q *Cic. Tusc. quæst. lib. 5.*

vices, especially of lying, and in the next place of debt, which cannot but bee attended with much disquiet: and therefore wisely did *Augustus* command to buy him the pillow of a Roman Gentleman, that died incredibly indebted, as if there had therein rested some sleeping power, whereon, one so much indebted could take any rest. Ingratitude was as little grateful as the former, and by the Persian lawes, ingratefull persons were subiect to accusation and punishment, as not *Xenophon* onely, but [r] *Marcellinus* also hath marked, howsoeuer *Seneca* [i] findes such a law onely amongst the Macedonians, which perhaps was hence borrowed. They hated such as forsooke their friends and country-men in need. Their awfull respect to their parents was such, that they might not sit in the mothers presence without her leaue: the father had tyrannicall power ouer his children, for life and death. That which was vnto them vnlawfull in deed, was not permitted in obscene and filthy words to bee spoken. Thus were the Noble-mens children brought vp neere the Palace gates; and in the Prouinces neere the gates of the Deputies or Gouernours.

r *Am. Marcel. lib. 23.*
i *Senec. de Beneficiis lib. 2. cap. 7.*

For bodily exercise, they learned to shoot, to cast darts, to ride and manage vnruly horses, and to fight on horse-backe. And this was their education till seuenteene yeeres of age: at which time they were of the second ranke of Springals and youths, and for ten yeeres after did not repaire home at nights, but lay and abode in this Court or College. When the King went on hunting, halfe of them attended him in armour. Their dyet was the same, but somewhat larger, as is before related of the children: and in hunting, if it continued two dayes, had but one dayes allowance. They vsed to run long races, of thirtie or fortie furlongs: they exercised the sling, leaping and wrestling, the King propounding rewards to the Victor. The helpe of these were vsed by the Magistrates against robbers, murtherers, and the like wicked persons: as also of the *Men*, which was the third order, the Seminary of Magistrates and Souldierie of the Persians, till they were fiftie yeeres old or somewhat more, at which age they were freed from musters and forraine employments, but at home were employed in publike and priuate iudgements. None might attaine this honour in Age, but by those degrees before expressed: nor might any haue that education but the children of the rich, which were able to beare the charge. It was vnlawfull amongst the Persians [t] to laugh in loud manner openly, or openly, or by the way to doe the easements of nature by siege, vrine, or vomit [t] or to make water standing.

t *Am. Marc. lib. 23.*

§. V.

Of the Persian Luxurie, and Marriages, Funerals, &c.

BVt this ancient Persian discipline and sobrietie, with wealth and loosenesse were afterwards corrupted, especially in drinking; to represse which, the Kings made an order, *Est.* 1. that none should bee compelled to forget their health, in remembring of healths, or other Bacchanal deuices, whereof would Goo wee had lesse cause to complaine. The vse of Harlots [u] were also added to their drinkings, which when the Embassadors sent to *Amyntas* King of Macedon, to demand *Earth and Water* (which was the Persian custome when they exacted full subiection and possession) extended to Matrons. *Alexander* his sonne [x] sent young men armed in womens habite amongst them, which quenched their hot flames of lust with their blood. Hence haply it was, that *Assuerus* would needes make shew of *Vashti* the Queene in his magnificent Feast, which occasioned her depriuation, and *Esters* succession. Amidst their cups they consulted of warre and weightie affaires; but some say, they decreed not till afterwards. The Persians vsed banquettings vnder Arras hangings, before the time of *Assalus*, from whom the Romans first borrowed the vse of them, of his *aula* or hall hanged therewith, calling them *aulæa*. But the wals of the richer Persians were hanged with them, the flours spread with costly carpets, their cupboards furnished with rich plate, their bodies shining with curious & costly ointments, their kitchin stored with garlick, as a preseruatiue against serpents and venemous creatures, their chambers swarming with Concubines; yea, mothers, daughters, and sisters wedded and bedded with them: their second seruices called in Scripture, *The banquet of wine*, when after the belly full farced with meats, with which they dranke water, they had other tables set with wine, on which they gaue a new onset, as a fresh enemy: these and the like excesses would glut our Reader. Loth were I to bring him to their mourning [y] rites, in which they shaued themselues, their Horses, and Mules; they vsed sackcloth, and entred not the Court: they couered the face of such as incurred the Kings anger, as we reade of *Haman*. Their executions were flaying, crucifying, burning, burying aliue, stoning, cutting asunder, &c. This pertaineth to their religion, their diuination by lots, as before *Haman*, they perhaps

u *Amiot. de Heliod. cap. 15.*
x *Iustin. lib. 7.*
Ester 5. 6.
y *Vid. Brusq. Obs. lib. 12.*

haps the *Magi, cast Phur*, that is, *a lot, from day to day, and from month to month*, to see which would be the most lucky and fatall time for his mischieuous plot against the Iewes. Their mariages they celebrated in the Spring: and on their mariage day the husbands eate nothing but an Apple, or the marrow of a Camel. The Persians are accounted authors of making Eunuches [2], which [a] *Petronius Arbiter* and *M. Seneca* impute to the curiositie of their lust, which might thus be longer serued of them. They vsed in salutation to vacouer [b] or put off the Tiara. Here I might lade you with the Persian wardrobe, the length and varietie of their gatments; and I might tell you of their earings and Iewels, painting of their faces, long haire: of their kissing salutations, if they were equall, and of the knee of the superiour by the inferiour, and adoration of the chiefe: of their womans womanly detestation in the eagerest degree of hatred and indignation, the fingering of wooll: of their inhumane cruelties to the kindred of those which had committed some grieuous crime, to punish all for the offence of one. The Persians made banquets to their gods, and gaue them the first fruits thereof. But it is time to leaue their gods and them; and let mee obtaine pardon, that this great Monarchie, sometime stretching from India to Ethiopia in one hundred twentie seuen Prouinces, hath stretched so farre, and commanded mee so long attendance in this Discourse. Let mee now looke vpon the Mahumetan face thereof.

2 *Domitian Teretat. Eunuch.*
a *Petron. Arb. Satir. M. Senec. Controu. 4. lib. 10.*
b *Eustath. in Dionys. Cyri. lib. 3.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of the alterations of the State and Religion in Persia, vnder the Saracens.

§. I.

Of the Saracenicall Conquest and Schisme in Persia: the third Dynastie.

THE Saracens (as is alreadie shewed) a people bred, as it were of putrifaction in that corrupt estate of the world, dispossessed of his state and life *Ormisdas*, the last Persian King. Their Religion had sustained small alteration in Persia before this time, for ought I finde, saving what the Christian had in these parts preuailed, (which belongeth to another taske.) But from that time that the Saracens were Conquerours, the soules of the Persians haue no lesse been subiect to those foolish Mahumetan superstitions, then their bodies too cruell slauerie: yea, when *Iezid* the sonne of *Muauia* was Priest and King (such are the Caliphs) of the Saracens; *Mutar*, the Deputie or Gouernour of Persia, proclaimed himselfe a Prophet, and seized on the State: from him the Persian Sophi deriueth his originall. When *Iezid* was dead, the Inhabitants of Cufa in Arabia proclaimed *Hocem* the sonne of *Ali* Caliph: but *Abdalam* the sonne of *Iezid* intrapped and slew him: and at his Sepulchre was after erected the Citie Carbala. This *Hocem* had twelue sonnes, *Zeinal, Abadin, Zeinal, Muamed, Bagner Muamed, Giafar Cadened, Giafar Musa, Cazin Musa, Holi Macerat, Ale Muamed Taguin, Muamed Halmaguin, Alle Hacem Asqueriu, Hacem Muamed Mahadin*: This last, [d] the Persians say Nations: beginning in Massadalle, where *Ali* his grandfather lieth buried. And therefore festiuall day, they bring with Lights burning to the Temple, in which *Ali* is buried, praying people, as a Portugal chronicler present, said, he had neuer seen the like. The other eleuen brethren were buried in diuers places. To returne to *Mutar*; *Abdimelec* one of the following Caliphs, sent *Cusa* against him, by whose ouerthrow that new Prophet was new and greater estimation then before. But another Tyrant *Abdala Zubir*, arising amongst the Saracens, sent his brother *Musab* against *Mutar*, who slew *Mutar*, and was soone after slaine himselfe of *Abdimelec*, who recouered against the Prouince of Persia. *Abdimelec* being dead, in the yeere seuen hundred and two and twenty, *Gezid* his sonne [e] succeeded, and another *Gezid* vsurped the Scepter in Persia, but was ouerthrowne by *Masabner* the Captaine of *Abdimelecs* sonne.

In the raigne of *Marman*, *Asmulin* tooke on him the protection of *Mutars* Sect, affirming *Ali* to bee greater then *Mahumet*: hee was Prince of the Corasens in Persia, and by one *Catabanus* his counsaile incited the seruants, by force or treacherie to kill their Masters: and these being growne great by their Masters wealth, were diuided into two factions, the *Caisme*,

c *Curio Saracc. hist. lib. 1. Bondu* saith, that *Mahumet* was present at their first conquest, and that by his command they relinquished their name, and accepted the Saracen. *dec. 1. l. 9.* So also affirmeth *Lope Gioregon* in confut. of the Alcoran. *fol. 44.* See *supl. 3. c. 2.*
d *Burr. As. dec. 2. lib. 10. c. 6.*
e *Curio Saracc. hist. lib. 2.*

Caisme, and the *Lamonites*. *Asmulin* Captayne of the *Lamonites*, destroyed the *Caisme*: and with his *Lamonites*, and *Catabanus* inuaded Persia, and were there encountred by *Solemes* the Lieutenant, with an Army of an hundred thousand men; but the *Lamonites*, by the incouragement of *Asmuline* and *Catabanus*, (whom they reckoned Holy men) discomfited him and his; and afterward encountred *Maruan* himselfe with three hundred thousand men, and made him to flee with foure thousand into Egypt, where *Salos* the sonne of *Asmulin* ouerthrew him. Thus the Maruanian race being expelled (the reliques whereof settled themselues in Fesse and Spayne) *Asmulin*, from whom the family of the Sophi descendeth, with *Catabanus*, reigned ouer the Saracens. But let the Reader obserue what in the former Booke and second Chapter: we haue written of the diuisions and schismes often happening in Persia, following the relations of *Mirkond* a Persian Authour; and therefore more to be obserued then the more vncertayne relations of Christian Authors.

By all which hath beene said, appeareth a continuall difference betwixt the Persians and other Saracens about their Religion; either (as some affirme) for that the Persians prefered *Ali* before *Mahumet*, or for that (which is more likely) they accounted *Ali*, and not any of the other three (*Eubocar*, *Osmen*, or *Homar*) to be the true successor of *Mahumet*. The Sultans or Deputies of Persia, which gouerned there vnder the Caliph, vsed that their Schismaticall fancy, as they saw occasion to their owne ambitious designes, vnder colour of Religion. Some say that the Turkes obtayning Persia, stripped the Chalifa of Bagadet of his temporalty, which (the sword being decider of controuersies in their Religion) was no new thing. Nor did it become old or continue long. For by the relations of *Benjamin Tudelensis*, and others, it appeareth that the Caliphas of Bagdet recouered their state, till the Tartar dispossessed both the Turke and them, as we haue already shewed out of *Zachulis*, and *Mirkond* in our History of the Saracens.

§. II.

Of the Tartars ruling in Persia, which was the Fourth Dynastie.

WE are to speake more fully of the Tartars afterwards; heere yet we are enforced by necessity of the Persian story to mention them. *Mirkond* writes, that *Chingis Kan* great founder of the greatest Empire the Sunne hath seene, in the yeare 1219. inuaded Maurenahar (which is to the North of Persia) and chased *Mahomet Kouarzmcha* into Karason. The Tartar put all he found to the sword; the like he did at Balk; and thence sent 30000. men after *Mahomet*, which ouer-tooke and slew him in Gueylon, and put the Countrey to fire and sword. In Rey and the Countrey about, the Tartars are said to haue slaine 600000. persons (some say 1600000.) and in the Province of Nichabur 115000. men, besides women and children, committing the like spoyles during a whole yeare throughout all the Prouinces of Persia. *Alnosslancher Bysa* the Chalife forced them to retyre into Maurenahar. But *Oktoykahon* or *Occoda Can* his successour both subdued Persia, and rooted out the whole Family of *Mahomet Kouarzmcha*, *Gelaladin* his sonne being vanquished neere Multon in India, whither had retyred himselfe. *Mauge Chan* gaue Persia to *Vlah Kukhan* or *Halaon*, who ouerthrew the Saracens, tooke Bagdet, staying therein and in the Countries about 1600000. persons. In the yeare 1261. he subdued Alep and Damas. Hee dyed in Persia and gaue his Countries to his three sonnes; to *Habkakikhan* (*Haithon* calls him *Abaga*) Hierak, Mazandaron and Karason: to *Hyachemut*, Aron or Armeni, and Aderbaion: to *Taudon*, Diarbek and Rabyah. To others other parts, as Bagadet to *Atalmok Iaumuy* to repayre it, which he did. *Habkakukhan* the eldest raigned in Persia seuenteene yeares, and then his fourth brother *Neudar Oglan* (*Haithon* calls him *Tangador*) succeeded him, who made himselfe a Mahumetan and called himselfe *Hamed*. After whose short raigne *Argonkhan*, *Geniotukhan*, *Baidukhan*, *Gazan* (he made Casbin his Imperiall Citie) *Alyaptu*, succeeded in order. This last made himselfe Mahumetan, kept his Court at Tauris, and first brought in the custome of tribute children, which he tooke from their parents (Christians and Iewes) to serue to his seruice. Hee built Sultania. His sonne and successour *Abuzayd* spent his summer at Sultania, and his winter at Bagadet: after whose death, which happened A. H. 736. the Tartarians were diuided into Persia, euery one making himselfe King of that which he held, which continued till the time of *Tamerlane*. Thus haue I out of *Mirkond* related these Tartar-Persian affaires. But if I adde somewhat out of *Haithon*, which liued in the middest of these times, let it not seeme tedious: first of a Paradise destroyed by the Tartar *Haalon*: and then of the successors till his time, not mentioning some which ruled but a little while in Persia.

Mirkond Hist. Persica.

Aleppo and Damasco.

a Caisme.

In the North-East parts of Persia (which of this new Heresie they called *Mulchet*) there was an old man, named *Aloadin*, a Mahometan (as all those parts then were) which had inclosed a goodly [b] Valley, situate betweene two Hills, and furnished it with all variety, which Nature and Art could yeeld, as Fruits, Pictures, rills of Milke, Wine, Honny, Water, Palaces, and beautifull Damosells richly attyred, and called it *Paradise*; to which was no passage, but by an impregnable Castell. And daily preaching the pleasures of this *Paradise* to the youths which he kept in his Court, sometimes he would minister a sleepie drinke to some of them, and then conueigh them thither; where being entertained with these pleasures foure or fiue dayes, they supposed themselues rapt into *Paradise*. And then being againe cast into a trance by the faid drinke, hee caused them to be carryed forth; and after would examine them of what they had seene, and by this delusion would make them resolute for any enterpiise, which he should appoint them; as to murther any Prince his enemie. For they feared not death, in hope of their Mahumetically *Paradise*. But this [c] *Haolon* or *Vlan*, after three yeeres siege, destroyed him, and this his *Fooles Paradise*. Some tell [e] this of *Aladeules*, in the time of *Zelim* the first. *Abaga* succeeded him in the gouernement of these parts, *Anno* 1264. but not in the Christian Religion: *Tangodor* the next, became a Saracen, and called himselfe *Mahomet*, and at Tauris and other places destroyed the Churches of the Christians, as *Haolon* had done of the Saracens: he banished the Christians: and peruerted as many Tartars as he could to Mahumetisme. But *Argonus* the sonne of *Abaga* rebelled, and taking him, cut him asunder in the middle, succeeding in his place, *Anno* 1285. After him *Kegayto*, whom the Tartars slew, placing in his stead *Baydo* a Christian, who forbad the preaching of Mahumetisme among the Tartars, and reedified the Churches of the Christians: *Casan* succeeded in his Dominion and Deuotion: and after his death *Carbaganda*, who in his childhood had beene baptized, and named *Nicholas*, but when his Christian Mother was dead, he became a Saracen.

Thus farre out of *Haithonus*; in which History appeareth the vicissitude of diuers Religions, sometime Tartarian, sometime Christian, sometime Mahumetan, as in the Princes who gouerned these Countries vnder the great *Cham* or *Can* of the Tartars: so also no doubt in a great part of the Countries themselues, which vsually are of the Kings Religion. This *Carbaganda* reigning about 1305. is the last Tartar Prince which ruled in the parts of Syria: and in Persia the stare was soone after diuided into many Souerainties. For as their Religion, so also their Empire fayled; the Egyptian Soldans preuayling in Syria; the *Ottoman* Tukes, in Asia; and *Gempsas*, in Persia. This *Gempsas* was Soldan of the Parthians [f]: and about the yeere 1350. restored that Persian Kingdome to the Parthians [g]. Thus our Christian [h] Historiographers. *Mirkond* mentions him not. Likely it is, when all fell to sharing, he got his part. Of *Tamerlan*, *Mirkond* relates, that when *Chingius* sent *Occoda* into Maurenahar, *Carachar Noyon* was made his first Visier, in which dignity hee and his posterity continued there, till *Teymur* or *Tamurlan* the fifth from him, with other great gouernments. *Teymur* being Visier and Captayne Generall to *Sciorgat Meckhom*, which raigned in Chagaty, and dyed *A.* 1370. was proclaymed King in his steed. He by his prosperous armes subdued *Maurenahar*, *Turquestan*, *Koarrazm*, *Karasan*, *Sistom*, *Industan*, *Hyerakben*, *Pare*, *Kermon*, *Mazandaron*, *Aderbaion* and *Kussstan*, *Bagadet*, *Alep*, *Damasco*: defeated Sultan *Farache* King of Egypt, and after tooke *Baiazet* the great Turke prisoner. He dyed, *Anno* 1405. His victories are by [i] others enlarged to Russia and China; and the great *Chams* stare fertled on him. *Mirzab-Charok* his fourth sonne succeeded him in the Empire: and after him, *Anno* 1447. his sonne *Mirzab Oleghbek*: but as after *Alexander*, so after *Tamerlan*, their hastie gotten Empire was much distracted among the great Souldiers his followers, which held great shares to themselues, making warre on their Masters sonnes. And one of the descendants of them. *Abtelatife* slew *Oleghbek*, in the field, *Anno* 1450. and was slaine of his Souldiers sixe moneths after. Sultan *Abusayd*, grand-child to *Miromcha*, the third sonne of *Tamerlan* succeeded, slaying *Abdulach* the brother of *Abdelatife*. But he also was slaine by *Mirzab Tadigar Mahamed*, one of *Acombee* or *Vsuncassans* partakers, who had before slaine *Ioncha* (*Contarini* and *Barbaro*, which were in Persia with *Vsuncasan*, call him *Iausa*, others, I know not why, *Malaonchres*, others *Demir*) after whose death *Abusayd* was called to the gouernment of Kermon, Hierak and Aderbaion, and being solicited for peace by *Asembeius*, *Acombee* or *Vsuncassan* aforesaid, reiected it, and so lost himselfe, and left those parts of the Persian Empire to the Conquerror. But in Maurenahar Sultan *Hamed* his sonne succeeded 28. yeeres: and after him his nephew *Babor*, the last of *Tamberlans* bloud there raigning, *Ichaybekan* comming from Vlbek, *Anno* 1500. and dispossessing him. Yet did *Babor* possesse Gaznehen, and some part of India, till his death 1532. where his sonne *Homayon* succeeded him, and to him his sonne *Gelaladin Akbar*, commonly called *Melabdim Ecbbar* the Great *Mogol*, Father of him which now raigneth, of whom in the next booke. *Tadigar* that slew *Abusayd* was also of *Tamerlans* race,

b *Aloadins* Paradise.

c A right *Fooles Paradise*. Of the many foolish opinions touching Paradise, see *sup. l.1.c.* 3. and if that weary him not, let him reade *Mossis Receptaculis* disputes there of in three Bookes: *in Biblior. Pat. to.* 6. which he shall also finde many of the ancient Fathers conceits thereof.

d *M. Paul. & Odor.*

e *Cartwright.*

f *Pracci. l.* 4. *c.* 5.

g Or to the *Turcomans*: for *Mirkond* makes that the Nation of Vuncassan.

h The stories of Christians touching these parts are much defective: neither agreeing with *Mirkond* nor *Contarini* and *Barbaro* which were in Persia, and learned these things more exactly.

i *Alcaces* in the life of *Tamerlan*.

race, the sonne of *Mahamed*, sonne of *Bayfangor*, sonne of *Mirzah Charok*. He by *Acembees* helpe chased *Ocem*, another of *Tamerlans* posterity, by *Hamar Cheque* his third sonne, King in Karason and Strabat, out of those parts into Faryab and Mayman neere Balk, whereuse he suddenly returning with a small force, by aduantage of *Tadigar* or *Hiadigar* his negligence, slew him, and recouered his Realme. He dyed, *Anno* 1506. Two of his sonnes succeeded him, *Bahudy* and *Musafar*, whom *Chaybee Vbek* chased out of their Kingdome. *Bahudy* fled to *Ismael Sophy* who gaue him the lands of Chambe Gazon in Tauris, and tenne Serafs [i] of gold by the day; thence he was after carryed prisoner by the Turke to Constantinople, where he dyed.

i A Serafis eight shillings.

10 Besides these of the posterity of *Tamerlan* there were other Princes in Persia, and the parts adioyning, as those of the factions of *Blacke Sheepe*, and *White Sheepe*. Of the former was *Kara Iusuf*, which conquered Tauris, Sultania, Casbin, and the countries of Setuan and Diarbech; but dying was spoyled to his shirt of his Souldiers: yea, they cut off his eares for his iewells, and left him in the open field. *Charrok* held long warres with *Scander*, and *Ioancha* his sonnes, the latter of which after many conquests was slaine by *Acembee*, and *Acen Aly* his sonne and successour: and thus the *White Sheepe* faction preuayled, *Ozun Acembee* or *Vusun-Casan* the head thereof, of the *Tarcoman* Nation, heire of Diarbech, and Lord of many Prouinces which hee conquered (as before is noted) but defeated by *Mahumet* the great

20 Turke, He dyed *Anno*, 1471. His sonne *Calil* succeeded, who was slaine by his brother *Iacob* or *Tacub*, whose wife bearing dishonest affection to one of the Court, sought by the murther of her husband to aduance this Courtier to her husbands bed and Empire. And k hauing conueyed venome into a golden cup, presents her husband the same to drinke, who somewhat suspecting her, caused her to begin; himselfe and his sonne following her both in drinking and dying. And thus was Persia, by the wickednesse of one woman, made the Stage of ciuill warres, whiles the chiefe Nobles sought each to possesse himselfe of the State, which at last after fiue or sixe yeeres war, befell to l *Alumut* or *Elnan-beg*, then being but fourteene yeere old, who was slaine by *Ismael* in the yeere 1499.

k *Viaggio di mercante e, ad Ramusi.*

l *Mirfond* reckons of this family Kings after *Iacob*, *Bayfangor*, *Rustan*, *Hagmet*, *Alunus* and *Morat*.

30 And thus yee haue had the succession of the Persian Kings in the first and second Dynastie: of the Saracens you heard in the former Booke; next after whom, the Tartars and these here mentioned, till *Ismael* obtayned the state, whose posterity still hold it.

Benjamin Tudelensis telleth that *Senigar* then King of Persia, had two and fortie Kingdomes subiect to him, and that his Dominion extended foure moneths iourney, and speaketh as though hee were not subiect to the Caliph in his temporalities: Master *Polo* reckons eight Kingdomes of Persia, Casibin, Curdistan, Lor, Suolistan, Spaan, Siras, Soncaia, Timocaim; m not reckoning Hira k, the chiefe Citie wherof was Tauris, and diuers other Countries, now, and before his time subiect to the Persian. And by most Historians it appeareth that Persia had before the dayes of *Tangrolopix*, and till the Tartars conquest, Sultans, which yeelded small subiection to the Chaliphs.

m In this discourse wee haue reckoned many other Regions, in regard of subiection, Persian.

§. III.

Of Ismael Sofi, first founder of the present Persian Empire, or fifth Dynastie.

THe Historie of *Ismael*, because it giueth much light both into the State and Religion of Persia, is more fully to be reported. After that *Mustacen Mumbila*, or *Almusitacembila Abdula*, the Caliph of Bagdet, had bin by the Tartars done to death in the yeere after *Haithonus* account 1258. about the yeere 1369. there arose in

10 Persia n a Nobleman called *Sophi*, Lord of the Citie Ardouil, reporting himselfe to be of the blood of *Alle* or *Hali*, descended from *Musa Cazim*, or *Cersin*, one of the twelue sonnes (as is faid) of *Hocem*, thirteene descents distant. This *Sophi*, or (as our *Tarik Merkend* aforesaid call) him *Cheque Safy*) had issue *Cheque Mucha*, the father of *Cheque Ali*, who begate *Cheque Ebrahem*, and he *Sultan Iuneyd*, father of *Cheque Aydar*, who begate *Ismael*. These continued their *Hali*-holies. Our Authors mention none from *Sophi* to *Iuneyd*, whom they make his sonne, calling him *Guinne*, otherwise written, *Guini*, *Guine*, and *Guinet*. o *Minadoi* saith, That *Scechiuni*, or more distinctly, *Siec Gunnet*, was Authour of the Persian sect, who vnder the name of p *So*, and of *Siec* (that is, of a wise man, and an Author of Religion) or rather vnder

20 the pretence of holinesse, began to persuade the people, that the three first successors of *Mahomet* were vsurpers, onely *Ali* ought to be named lawfull successor, and ought to be called vpon in their prayers, and by all meanes to be honoured. From this time forward the Sepulchre of *Ali* and his sonnes in Case grew in great credit, and was visited euery yeere after the

n I. B. B. per. 2. Lib. 10. Sarum comment.

o *Minadoi*, l. 2. p E. T. pag. 490. *Mirkhond* reckons *Ismael* the thirteenth after *Morts Aly*: being the sonne of *Aidar* he of *Tamyd*, he of *Ebrahem*, he of *Aly*, he of *Mucha*, and he of *Safy*, whom *Iuneyd* time.

same

same sort that the Turks visit the Sepulchre of the other three: and the Kings of Persia vsed there to bee crowned, and girt with their sword, and their great Calife there kept his residence. Because this Case was neere Babylon, hence grew the common error, that these things were done at Babylon or Bagdet. *Iouius* also is deceiued, where he maketh *Ardueller* or *Aidere*, author of the Persian faction. *Sofis* by *Minadoi* deriued of *Sofiti*, a people subdued by *Alexander*: but *Scaliger* more fitly *Teophi*, which in Arabike signifieth a man of pure Religion. In this respect there is no lesse contention betweene these & other Muhammedans, then between the Samaritans and the Iewes: so that the Persians are a kinde of Catharists or Puritans in their impure Muhammedrie. *Claudet Duret* mentioneth another Etymologie, that *Sophi* signifieth Wool, and that this profession in token of humilitie, wearing nothing on their heads more precious then wool, were so called. But the former deriuation is more probable. *Nic. Nicolai* in his third Booke hath also that woollen deriuation: and *Geffrey Ducket* saith, that *Sophi* signifieth a Begger, and that the King is not there in Persia so called, but *Shaugh*; which agreeth with their report, which say that *Ismael* renewed or continued the name *Sofi* or *Sofiti*: but his successors leauing that, and the name of *Siec*, haue retayned onely the Title of *Saba*, which some write *Shaugh*, some *Xa*, a Royall title communicated by the head of this superstition to those Kings which participate with them therein. *Ioseph Scaliger* p saith, that *Sa* or *Scha* is the same with Monsieur among the French, and Don among the Spaniards. The Iewes and Arabians write it פרס and the Grecians σοφ. It is sometimes set before the name, as in the present King *Scha Habas*; sometime comes after, as *Melixa* for *Melic-scha*. *Barrius* q begins this pedigree at the father of *Guinet*, or *Guine* (so he calls him) and not as *Minadoi*, with *Guinet* himselfe. He addeth, That for the Ensigne, Character, or Cognisance of his Sect, he ordayned, that in the midst of their Turbant (which they weare with many folds) there should arise a sharpe top, in manner of a Pyramis, diuided into twelue parts (in remembrance of *Ali* his twelue sonnes) from the top to the bottome. They vsed the colour Red on their heads (saith *Minadoi*) by ordinance of *Ardueller*, and therefore were called *Chefelbas*, that is, Red-heads; some write it *Cusilbas*. *Sophi*, as *Mirkond* affirmeth, was holden in such reputation of holinesse by *Tamerlane*, that he came to visit him as a Saint; and at his request, set free 30000. slaues, which he had taken in the warres against *Baiazet*, to whom *Cheque Sophi* gaue appatell and other necessaries, and sent them home to their houses: whereby hee was great fame and affection. *Barrius* and others attribute this to *Guine*, and say that these slaues became his disciples first, and after Souldiers to his sonne *Aidar* against the Christian Georgians.

p *Scal. Can. Isag. lib.3.*

q *Io. Bar. Asia. Dec.2.l.10.c.6.*

This r *Aider Erdebil* (or after *Iouius*, *Hardueller*) forsaking (as some say) the world, led a streight life in continency and austerity, and was therefore admired as a Prophet, and resorted to, out of all parts of Armenia and Persia, comming to Tauris to see him: Hee inueighed against the common opinion concerning *Mahomets* successors, as *Guine* and *Sophi* had done, shutting vp heauen to all, saueing *Hali* his followers. For so the Persians vse to say in their prayers; Cursed be *Ebubeker*, *Omar*, and *Osman*: God be fauourable to *Hali*, and well pleased with him. *Vsuncassan* moued with his fame, gaue him in mariage his daughter *Martha* begot of the Christian Lady *Despina*, daughter of *Calo Ioannes* Emperour of Trapezond; both of them by this alliance strengthning themselues against the Turke. *Aidar* had by this *Martha*, *Ismael*, whom she trayned vp in the principles of Christian Religion. *Iacob* successor of *Vsuncassan*, iealous of the multitude of *Aidars* disciples, and the greatnesse of his fame, caused him to be secretly murthered; persecuting all his professed followers with fire and sword. *Ismael* then a child, fled into Hyrcania to one *Pyrchales*, a friend of his fathers, who afterwards ayded him to the recouering of his patrimonie. *Botersus* saith, that *Iacob*, after the murther of *Aidar*, committed his two sonnes, *Ismael* and *Solyman*, to *Amanxar* (a Captayne of his) to be conueyed to *Zalga*, a strong mountaynie place: but he brought them vp liberally with his owne children, and in his last sicknesse, gaue them horse and two hundred Ducats, *Hali*, and the reuenge of his fathers death, his enterprises succeeded prosperously. t *Giouan Maria Angiolelio* saith, that *Iacob* being poysoned 1485. the Signorie was possessed by a kinsman of *Iacobs* called *Iulauer*, after whose three yeeres raigne succeeded *Bayfingir* two yeeres; after *Rustan* seuen yeares, who sent *Solimanbee* against *Sechaidar* the father of *Ismael*, who made challenge to the State in right of his wife the daughter of *Vsuncassan*, who slew him in the field. *Rustan* would also haue killed the mother and her sonnes, had not treatie of his Nobles preuented it. He committed them to ward in the Iland of the Armenians in the Lake *Altumar*; whither he sent for them againe after three yeeres, but they for feare fled to Ardouil, & there liued closely for a time. *Rustan* was slaine by *Agmat* through his mothers procurement, who loued that *Agmat*, who abode Sultan fiue months, & was slaine by *Rustans* Souldiers. And *Aluan* the kinsman of *Vsuncassan* was Signior, whom *Ismael* slew.

r *Surius Com. Konil. T. Hist. pag.464.*

t *Gap.11.*

r *Mirkond* saith *Solyman* was sent by *Iacob* in succour of *Farrok* King of *Seyrian*, vpon whom *Aydar* warred.

A certaine * Merchant (who abode a long time in Tauris, and trauelled thorow the most part of Persia, skillull of the Turkish, Persian, and Arabian languages, either seeing himselfe; or learning of them which did see, in the time of *Ismael*) relates this history somewhat otherwise, whom, as learning of the Persians themselues the Persian affaires, we may reckon worthy to be followed. Hee saith, that this *Sechaidar* in Ardouil was this head of the Sophian Sect, and had three sonnes and three daughters by the daughter of *Vsoncassan*. He was a zealous enemie against the Christians, ostentimes with his followers repaying into Circassia; doing the people much damage, which when in the daies of *Soltan* *Alumut* hee attempted as before times, he was by *Alumuts* order forbidden at Darbent further passage: but seeking to make way by force, he was by the forces of *Alumut* taken, and his head, on the top of a Lance, presented to *Alumut*, and by his command, giuen to the Dogges to bee eaten; the cause why the Sophians are such enemies vnto Dogs, killing all they finde. This newes comming to Ardouil, his three sonnes fled, one into Natolia, another to Aleppo, *Ismael* the third to an Iland in the Lake of Van, in which is a Citie of Christian Armenians, where he abode foure yeeres in the house of an Armenian Priest, being then about thirteene yeeres old, who vsed him courteously, and instructed him in the rudiments of Christian Religion. A yeere after he went from Arminig to Chillan, where he kept with a Gold-smith his fathers friend. In this time hee had intelligence, by mutuall writing, with his friends at Ardouil, and with this Gold-smith hauing gathered together eighteene or twentie men of their Sect secretly to take a strong Castle, called Maumuraga, and hidden in ambush two hundred horse-men of his friends in Ardouill, suddenly slaying the Guard, and possessing himselfe of the Castle; he entred a Towne not farre from the Castle, killing the Inhabitants, and carrying the spoile to the Castle. This Castle was verie rich, because it was a principall Hauen of the Caspian Sea; and so strong, that when *Alumut* had newes hereof, hee was dissuaded from sending any power thither to besiege him. Two daies iourney from hence is Sumachia: which with his power, now encreased, he also took, and diuided the spoiles euery where to his Souldiers, which with fame of this liberalitie came from all parts vnto him. He sent also into Hiberia, three or four daies iourny from thence, which was then gouerned by seuen great Lords, three of which, *Alexander Sbec*, *Gorgirambec*, and *Mirzambec*, with many promises of present spoiles and future exemptions from tribute, hee won to his side, receiuing from each of them three thousand horse, so that he was now growne fifteene or sixteene thousand strong. *Alumut* with thirtie thousand valiant Souldiers went to meet him between Tauris & Sumachia, and hauing passed a great Riuer, ouer which were two Bridges, he presently caused them to be broken: *Ismael* arriuing there the next day, with great diligence found a passage thorow the streame, and with his whole forces, in front, in the breake of the day, assailed *Alumut* his armie, little suspecting such a good morrow, that *Alumut* with a few companions hardly escaped. The pauilions, horses, and other bootie, *Ismael* bestowed on his Souldiers: and then hasted to Tauris, where entring without resistance, hee made great slaughter, killing all the race of *Iacob*, opening his Sepulchre, and the Graues of other Noble-men, which had been at the battaile of Darbent against his father, and burning their bones; three hundred harlots he caused to be cut asunder in the middle: hee killed all the Dogs in Tauris, and because his mother had married to one of those Nobles, which were in the battaile of Darbent, he caused her head to bee stricken off in his presence. In this while many Townes, Cities, Castles, and Lords submitted themselues to him, and weare his red-coloured Turbant: but the Castle Alangiachana (whereto were subiect eighteene Villages of Christians, which vsed yeerely to send to Rome two men from the Patriarch to the Pope, of whose faith they were, speaking *Armenian*, hauing some bookes, but quite lost the vse of the Italian language) this Castle (I say) held out for *Alumut* vntill his death.

While *Ismael* was Sultan in Tauris, the Sultan in Bagadet *Murat Can* son of *Iacob*, with an army of 30000. marched against him, and in a plaine, meeting with *Ismael* was there ouerthrown not seuentie persons escaping to Bagadet with *Murat Can*: the place bearing witnes of the slaughter, buried vnder many new hils of bones. All these things were done *An.* 1499. And while I was in Tauris, many came from Natolia, Caramania, and Turkie to serue him; of whom they were graciously entertained. *An.* 1507. our Author being then in Malacia, saw with his eyes, the Sultan *Alumut* conueyed prisoner by *Amirbec*, who with foure thousand men going from Mosull (neere to the sometime-Niniue) to Amit, where the Sultan kept, with promise and profession of his succour, being admitted the Citie, tooke him, and cast a chaine about his necke, whose head *Ismael* smote off with his owne hands. He was presented to him by *Amirbec* in the Country of Aladuli, against whom *Ismael* was now warring: where taking the Citie Cartibirt, he cut off the head of *Becarbec* sonne of *Aladuli*, Lord thereof, with his owne hands. From thence returning to Tauris, hee had almost done as much to his two brethren, whom hee had left Gouernours in his absence, for transgressing their

* *Aud Ramusium, to. 2.*

Commission: but with much intreatie of his Lords, spared their liues, yet confined them to Ardouil, not to depart from thence. The next yeere hee pursued *Murat Can*, who was come to Syras, a Citie not inferiour to Cairo in Egypt, with thirtie sixe thousand men, but malecontent, and therefore many of them flying vnto *Ismael*. Whereupon *Murat Can* sent two Embassadours with fiue hundred followers, with offer of Vassallage vnto him. *Ismael* cut them all in pieces, saying, That if *Murat Can* would be his Vassall, hee should come in person, not by Embassage. *Murat Can* had closely sent Spies to obseruе the sequell of his businesse, and being hereof by them aduertised, fled: For many of his Nobles had alreadie put on the red Turbant, of whom he feared to bee taken, as *Alumur* had beene; and therefore with three thousand of his most faithful he fled vnto Aleppo: but the Soldan of Cairo not admitting him, he went to *Aladuli*, who entertained him honourably, and gaue him his daughter to wife.

9 *Ilphan.* *Ismael*, after great slaughter in Siras and Bagadet, was forced to returne to Spaan with his Armie. For *Iesselbas* the Tartar had taken all the Countrie of Corasan, and the great Citie of Eri, which is in compasse betwixt sortie and fiftie miles, well peopled, and full of Merchandize; He had taken also Straua, Amixandaran, and Sari, on the Caspian shoare, and with intent to beguile *Ismael*, desired leaue to passe thorow his Countrey to Mecca on Pilgrimage. *Ismael* with deniall, and other sharpe words repelled his suit, and abode a yeere in Spaan, to withstand his enterprises. After he returned to Tauris, where were great triumphs solemnized in his honour. This Sophi is so loued and feared (saith this Merchant) that they hold him as a God, especially his Souldiers: of which some goe into the warres without Armour, holding it sufficient, that *Ismael* will succour them: others, because they content themselues to die for *Ismael*, goe into battaile with naked breast, crying, *Schiak*, *Schiak*, that is, God, God. And they forget the name of God, alway naming *Ismael*: they hold, That hee shall not die, but liue euer. And where other *Mosulmans* say, *La ylla ylla la, Mahamet resul-lalla*, the Persians say, *La ylla ylla la, Ismael velliella*, reputing him a God and a Prophet. I haue learned, that *Ismael* is not contented to be called or worshipped as god. Their custome is to weare red Bonnets, with a certaine thing like a girdle, large below, and straighter vpwards, made with twelue folds, a finger thick, signifying the twelue Sacraments of their sect, or those twelue brethren, nephewes of *Ali*. *Ismael* was of faire countenance, of reasonable stature, thicke and large in the shoulders, shauen all but the mustachees; left-handed, stronger then any of his Nobles, but giuen to Sodomie. At his second comming to Tauris, hee caused to take twelue of the fairest boyes in the City to serue his lust, and after gaue to each of his Nobles one for the like purpose, & before tooke ten of the best mens sonnes for the same intent.

Osorius de Reb. Emman. lib. 10. 1. Bot. Ben. Thus farre haue wee had commerce with this nameless Persian Merchant in *Ramusius* his shop, who sometime attended on his Court and Campe. Others adde hereunto, that he sent Embassadours to all the Mahometan Princes of the East, to receiue that Red-hat Ensigne, together with his Sect; as did his sonne *Tammas* after him, when *Niz-zamulmeco* onely accepted thereof. But it is the common opinion, that the greatest part of the Mahometans in Soria and of Asia Minor are secretly of that Sect. *Ismael* after this wasted, and wonne, vpon the Zagatai Tartars, and other adiacent Nations, that hee left vnto his successours a verie

Knol. Turk. Hist. great estate, reaching from the Caspian Sea to the Persian, and betweene the Lake Iocco and Tygris, the Riuer Abbiam, and the Kingdome of Cambaya, mote then twentie Degrees from East to West, and eighteene from North to South. Hee ordained a new Lyturgie, and forme of Praier differing from the ancient. Such was his authoritie, that they would

Ismael called Chaliph. sweare, By the Head of *Ismael*, and blesse his name, saying, *Ismael* grant thee thy desire. Vpon his Coyne, on the one side, was written, *La illahe illalahu Muhamedun resulalallahe:* And on the other, *Ismaill halife Iullahe*, that is, *Ismael* the Vicar of GOD. The Iewes, at the

Sanius. Comm. in An. 1500. first, had this *Ismael* in such admiration, that they foolishly reckoned *Ismael* to be their promised *Messias*, gratulating themselues in this conceit, thorowout the most part of Europe,

Ant. Ienkinson. celebrating festiuall Solemnities, with mutuall Presents, in testimonie of their ioy; which yet was soone dashed, none hating the Iewes more then *Ismael*. He lieth buried at Ardouil, in a faire Meskit, with a sumptuous Sepulchre made by himselfe in his life time; where is a faire Stone-Hospitall erected by him for strangers, allowing to all trauellers three daies relieſe for horse and man freely. Ardouil is in latitude thirtie eight degrees.

Angiolello, c. 13. The life of *Ismael* had beene answerable to the bloudie presages in his ominous birth; for he came forth of his mothers wombe with both his hands shut, and full of bloud: for which cause his father would not haue brought him vp, but commanded him to be slaine: but they

Ph. Cameron. Medi. Histor. Cent. 2. c. 4. which carried him away, moued with compassion, secretly nourished him three yeeres, and after presented him to his father, who then acknowledged and receiued him with loue and kindnesse: for this his bloudie and warre-like spirit dwelt in a louely and amiable bodie, adorned with all the Ensignes of beautie. Hee died *Anno* 1524.

HON-

HONDIVS *his Map of* PERSIA.

§. IIII.

Of SHAVGH TAMAS *the Persian troubles after his death.*

SHIACH THECMES, or *Shaugh Tamas*, succeeded, and reigned aboue fiftie yeeres. Hee liued denoutly, and yet (for their Law reconcileth both) verie voluptuously, inheriting his fathers Throne, but nor his valour, and spending the greatest part of his time amongst his women. So zealous hee was of their superstition, that when *M. Ienkinson* came to his Court with the Queenes Letters, to treat with him of Traffique and Commerce for our English Merchants, before his feet touched the ground, a paire of the Sophies owne Shooes or Basnackes (such as himselfe vsed to weare, when he arose in the night to pray) were put vpon his feet, left their holy ground should be polluted with Christian steps. And being admitted into his presence, and asked of his Religion, whether he were a *Gower*, that is, an Vnbeleeuer, or a *Muselman*, (so they call them of their owne profession) hauing answered, that he was a *Christiaen*, beleeuing Christ to be the greatest Prophet: Oh thou vnbeleeuer (said hee) wee haue no need to haue friendship with the vnbeleeuers, and so willed him to depart: which he did, and after him followed a man with a Basanet of Sand; sifting all the the way that he had gone within the said Palace, euen from the Sophies sight vnto the Court-gate.

Michael Isselt. in An. 1576. a Bustequ. epist. 3.

Ant. Ienkinson. Hak. to. 1. p. 349

In his time *Solyman* (as our Turkish Relations before is shewed) much endamaged the Persians, and tooke Babylonia, Tauris, and other parts of their dominions; yet did *Tamas* recouer some part thereof againe, and draue *Solyman* out of Tauris, (or Ecbatana, as *Mandos* interpreteth, and by a composition, caused him to rase the Fort of Chars, erected by the Turkes in his frontiers. Hee dyed the eleuenth of May, 1576. leauing behind him eleuen children: *Mahamet* the eldest, who had liued a while in Heri (sometime called Aria) and

lib. 3. cap. 8.

Mandos of the Warres betweene the Turks and Persians. 1.

and after in Siras (anciently named Persepolis;) his second sonne was *Ismahel*, whom for his fiercenesse his father had confined to the Castle Cahaca: the third, *Aidere*; the rest, *Mamut*, *Solimano*, *Mustassa*, *Emanguls*, *Alichan*, *Amet*, *Abrahim*, and *Ismahel* the younger. Hee appointed his second sonne *Ismahel* his successour, esteeming him more worthy then *Mahomet Codabanda* (this surname was giuen him for his diseased eyes b) as being giuen to a studious and quiet life, and contenting himselfe, that *Abas Mirize* (which now reigneth) was confirmed in the Citie of Heri, and honoured with the title of the Visier of that Countrey.

b Others say, blind: *Mirkond* and Sir *A. S.*

Periaconcona, the daughter of *Tamas*, and elder then any of the brethren, being in Commission with other Counsellors of State to see her fathers Will executed, whiles the Posts to ranne with aduertisements to *Ismahel*, was attempted by *Aidere* with earnest solicitation for the Crowne: whose ambitious desire she so farre satisfied, as that shee caused him to bee inuested in Regall apparell, and settled in the great Gallerie, attending the acclamation of the people; being publikely installed, as though hee were elected King. But meane while shee set sure guards of men, deuoted to *Ismahel*, at the gates of the Palace; thus purposing to entertaine him (with dreames of dangerous honours) till *Ismahel* arriued at Casbin. But whiles hee (suspecting the deceit) sought to flee, hee left his head behinde in the hand of *Sahamal* his vncle, which he cast, all-bloudie, in the middest of his conspiring partakers. *Ismael* soone after came, and receiued with publike applause the desired Soueraignetie: and as he had before adicted himselfe to the studie of the Turkish Law; (enough, if it had beene knowne, to haue barred his succession) so now, after the Turkish manner, he founded his Throne (a foundation to slipperie to stand) in bloud, causing the heads of his eight younger brethren to be cut off, together with all such as were neere them in bloud or affinitie, and all the fauourites of the late slaine *Aidere*. Thus is Casbin dyed in the bloud of her hopefull Gallants, and entertaines her beholders eyes with streames of bloud running from the slaine, which cause another streame of teares to issue from their liuing friends; who filling the ayre with mournefull complaints (which returning answere by ecchoes, seemed to sympathize their griese) and in compassion of those dying bodies, then gasping their fatall breaths, imitating (with true affection, and not affected imitation) the same in deepe and broken sighes: viewing also their owne dangers in the present ruine of their nereest and deerest, some-time allies & acquaintance: tossed with this variety of turbulent passions, conceiue, in this confusion of thoughts (that which is truely the daughter and mother also of confusion) *Treacherous Disloyaltie* to the Author of these their sorrowes. *Ismael* posting on to his owne destruction, had now forbidden the deuotions of *Aly* the Persian Prophet, and enioyned the Turkish Rites of *Abubacher*, and other the followers of *Mahomet*, by imprisoning, rayling, pulling out the eyes, and killing *Ali* his obseruants, establishing his Decree, not sparing, in this persecution, to torment the tender Ladies (some of them of his owne bloud) nor reuerencing age or profession, depriuing euen the Califfe of Casbin (the eye of their blindnesse) of both his eyes, because he would not see equitie in this nouelties: and purposing (as the Fame went) to goe to Bagdat, there to receiue the Crowne from him whomsoeuer hee should find the successour of the great Califfe. In the middest of his cruelties hee was (with like crueltie) murthered by *Periaconcona*. The *Executer* of her fathers Will is thus made an *Executioner* of her fathers sonne, hauing brought in the conspirators, apparelled in womens weeds, to strangle him among his Paramours. This was done the twentie foure of Nouember, 1577. after he had reigned one yeere, seuen moneths, and fixe dayes.

Turkish Parricide imitated in Persia.

§. V.

of MAHOMET CODABANDA, *and his sonnes* ABAS.

MAHAMET CODABANDA thought it now time for him to looke to his right, which by meanes of *Mirize Salmas*, the chiefe of the Sultans, hee obtained. This Sultan presented him with the head of that *Virago Periaconcona*, vpon the top of a Launce, with the disheuelled haire, gastly lookes, and bloudy impressions, yeelding an vncouth (though not vndeserued) spectacle to the beholders: which (if like the Snakie scalpe of *Medusa* it did not transforme them into stones: yet, as if it had been the Banner of *Megera*) seemed to display new quartels, kindling inward hatreds, tumultuous for him to fish with his Turkish nets in this troubled Persian streame. Of these warres is already spoken. c Much losse did the Persians by this meanes sustaine, and much more had followed, had not *Emir Hamze*, *Mahomets* eldest sonne, with his valorous attempts, stopped the Turk ish

De Medusa & Megera, vide Poetas.

c *Lib. 3. cap. 8. I. Silueß. in Du Bartas transl.*

THE NEWBERRY LIBRARY CHICAGO

proceedings, and like the Eastetne Sun, with his greater brightnesse dispersed those weaker beames of *The Moone Standards of proud* OTTOMAN.

But soone was this Sunne eclipsed, not by the Moones interposition (for that is naturall, if we vnderstand it of the heauenly; and ordinary, if of the earthly and Turkish) but by extraordinarie and vnnaturall procurement (as was thought) of his ambitious brother *Abas*, or (of others suspected) of his father; effected by a treacherous Eunuch that guarded him, which suddenly struckc him thorow the bodie and slew him. *Abas* his brother, by solemne oath cleared himselfe of this odious imputation. And yet hee is no lesse suspected of a more monstrous and vnnaturall treacherie against his owne father, who is thought [d] to bee poysoned by his meanes, that by these bloudie steps hee might ascend to that Throne, which now he enioyeth. But (all this notwithstanding) he hath since so subtilly handled the matter, that hee is both beloued of his owne, and feared of his enemie: his subiects sweare and blesse in his name. [e] He hath recouered from the Turke both Tauris, and other Regions of Seruania and Georgia, which the Turke had before taken from the Persians. Hee was reported also to haue taken Bagdat, but (it seemeth) not truly. *Iansonius* [f] in his Newes 1610. reporteth of diuers victories obtained by him against the Turke (which cause of publike Fasts and supplications to be appointed at Constantinople:) and of the Persian Embassage, with rich Presents and holy Reliques to the Emperour at Prage. *Gotardus Arthus* likewise in his [g] *Gallobelgicus*, relateth of *Abas* his Embassage to Constantinople about a Peace: but when his Embassadour returned with Articles, whereby the Persian was bound, vnder shew of gifts, to pay an annuall tribute to the Sultan, he therefore put him to death; putting out the eyes also, and cutting off the hands of the Turkish Embassador which was sent with him. Of Bagdat and old Babylon wee haue spoken elsewhere: let this be here added out of *Balbi*, [h] that trauelling from Felugia to Bagdat, which hee reckoneth a dayes iourney and a halfe, one whole dayes iourney thereof, was by one side of the ruines of Babylon, which hee left on the left hand.

As for Tauris, in the yeere 1514. *Selim* tooke it (as some say) on composition, which hee brake, and carried thence three thousand of the best Artificers to Constantinople. *Anno* 1535. *Solyman* gaue it for a prey to his souldiers; *Anno* 1515. *Osman* spoiled it with vncouth and inhumane cruelties; whatsoeuer the insulting Conqueror, in the vtmost extent of lawlesse lust, could inflict, or the afflicted condition of the conquered could in the most deiected state of miserie sustaine, was there executed. *Abas* in recouerie hereof vsed the Canon, an Instrument which before they had, to their owne losse, scorned. The Prince is (saith our [i] Author) excellent both of composition of bodie, and disposition of minde, of indifferent stature, sterne countenance, piercing eyes, swart colour, his mustachees on the vpper lip long, his beard cut close to the chin. Hee delights in Hunting and Hawking, Running, Leaping, and trying of Masteries; He is an excellent Horse-man and Archer. In the morning he vseth to visit his stables of great Horses, and hauing there spent most of the forenoone, he returnes to his Palace: About three of the clocke in the after-noone, he goeth to the At-Maiden, which is the high street of Hispaan, the Citie of his residence, round about which are scaffolds for the people, to sit and behold the King and his Nobles at their Exercises of Shooting, Running, Playing at Tennis, &c. all on horse-backe. In this place very often, in his owne person, he heareth causes, and pronounceth sentence, executing Iustice seuerely.

Now that we may mention some of the chiefe Cities of Persia (vnder which name I here comprehend, as vsually in this Historie, their [k] Dominion, not as it is measured by the Pens of Geographers, but by the Swords of their Princes.) In Sumachia, Master *Cartwright* saith, They saw the ruines of a cruell spectacle, which was a Turret erected with Free-stone and Flints, in the midst whereof were placed the heads of all the Nobilitie and Gentrie of the Countrie. A mile from this Towne was a Nunnerie, wherein was buried the bodie of *Amaleke Cauna*, the Kings daughter, who slew her selfe with a knife, for that her father would haue forced her to marrie a Tartarian Prince: the Virgins of the Countrey vsfort hither once a yeere to lament her death. Sechi is foure dayes iourney thence, not farre from which is Eres, which, because they yeelded to the Turke, were by *Emir-Hamze* vtterly destroyed, man, woman, and child. Araffe is the chiefe Citie of Merchandize in all Seruania, especially for raw Silks. Tauris hath out-liued many deaths, and is very rich by reason of continuall Trade, nourishing almost two hundred thousand people within her compasse; for walze it hath [l] not. This was sometime the Seat-Royall, and after that, Casbin, which is situate in a fertile Plaine, foure dayes iourney in length, wherein are two thousand Villages. The buildings are of Bricke dried in the Sunne, as in Persia is most vsuall: The At-Maidan, or chiefe street, is foure square, almost a mile in circuit. Neere to it is Ardouil, of chiefe note for beginning of the Sophian Superstition. Gesian is foure dayes iourney from Casbin, and stands neere to the Caspian Sea. Neere to Bachu is a Fountaine of black oyle; which scructh all the

d *Minadoi*, in his nine bookes, translated by Master *Hartwell*, the Reader may see the chiefe wars at full.

Relatione di Persia, & in Thesoro politico. Henricus Possinus, Lauretanus Rastburgius. Anonymus quidam de eodem bello scripsit.

e *Cartwright. Anno* 1603.

f *Iansen. Merc. Gallobelg.*

g Got. *A. Merc. G.* 1613.

h *Gasper Balbi.*

i *Cartwright.*

k Media Gheilan Mesandran, or Hyrcania, Parthia, Aria, Candahar, Heri, Corassan, Ferfor, Persia, with the Caramanian desart, the Kingdome of Lar, and the Turcoman nation are subiect to this King: and he hath also subdued and ruined the houses of some great men which in his fathers dayes would doe what they list.

l Sir *Anthony Sherley* saith it hath mud walls.

the Countrey to burne in their houses. Cassan is well seated, and rich in Marchandize, but subject to heat more then other parts of Persia. No person is there permitted to be idle. Hispaan is thought by some to be Hecatompolis: the walls are a dayes iourney about on horseback; before the greatest, now the Royall Citie of the Persians. It hath a strong Fort, two Seraglio's, the walls whereof glister with red Marble and Parget of diuers colours, paued all with Mosaique worke, all things else combining Maiestie and Loueliness, Magnificence and Beautie. The inhabitants, as did the ancient Parthians (whose chiefe Citie it sometime hath beene) buy, sell, talke, and performe all their publike and priuate affaires on horse-backe; the Gentlemen neuer go on foot. Sciras is thought to bee Persepolis, it is rich of Trade, and there is the best Armour made in all the East, of Iron and steele, cunningly tempered and with the iuyce of certaine herbes. The Gouernement of this State in Warre and Peace, I leaue to [m] others.

m *Satisfaine del gouerno di reg. Lib. Botero, &c.*

§. VI.

An Appendix touching the present Persian King, out of Sir ANTHONY SHERLEY.

HAuing thus followed the currant of Authors in these Relations of Persia: there hath since the first Edition been published the Trauels of Sir *Anthony Sherley* into these parts (with Sir *Robert Sherley* his brother) penned by himselfe: with some extracts whereof to furnish this Chapter (areadic tedious) as with a second seruice after a full stomacke, will (I hope) reaue appetite, with the varietie (so farre fetched and so deare bought) howsoeuer before cloyed with fulnes: To let passe therefore those worthy Brethren (Worthies indeed in this kinde, beyond the reach & worth of my blurring praise, and eclipsing commendations) and to come to their Trauell and obseruation. Hauing passed not without manifold dangers to Aleppo: and thence to Birr, and so downe Euphrates: by the way they a duentured to see the Campe of *Aborsei* King of the Arabs, inhabiting the desarts of Mesopotamia, a poore [n] King with ten or twelue thousand beggerly subiects, liuing in tents of blacke haire-cloth, well gouerned. They came to Bagdat, which is wholly on the other side of Tygris, except one Suburb in the Peninsula, to which men passe by a bridge of boats, euery night dissolued for feare of the Arabs, or stormes: whence, through the bountie of an Italian Merchant, Sir *Vittorio Speciaro*, they escaped (for they were not vnsuspected) with a Carauan of Persian Pilgrims wich came from Mecca. Thirtie dayes they were on the way to the Confines: and sixteene from thence to Casbin, where they staied a moneth attending the Kings arriuall; being in the meane time well vsed, vpon conceit that the King would like well of their comming: the people otherwise are ill in themselues, and onely good by example of their King, and strict obedience to him. For of the ancient Persians there are few, these being the posteritie of those which haue been here seated by the transplantations of *Tamerlane* and *Ismael* (not to mention any, more ancient) out of [o] other Countries.

n This King was a Saniack of the Turke, whereas they on the West-side of the River in an huge extent, and infinite numbers roue, and rob all: the Turke keeping against them fifteene hundred Ianizaries at Damasco, and twelue thousand at Cairo. Old Babylon is North from Bagdat about fiue and twentie miles. *Io. Newbury.*

o *Guerdis, Tartars, Turkmans, &c.*

The King himselfe, by our Authors Relation, in his vertues and gouernment, is, as if some Philosopher should discourse of what should be, rather then an Historian declare what is: as did *Xenophon* [p] sometimes in his *Cyrus*: Of those imputations of Paricide and ambition, not a word. His order of attaining the Crowne, is thus reported.

The Persian custome, being that onely the elder brother euleth, the rest are made blinde by burning basons, hauing otherwise all contentments fit for Princes children: when *Xa-Tamas* was dead without issue, his brother (so hee calleth him, contrary to our former relations, and to that of *Mirkond* the Persian, which I more maruell at) *Xa-Codabent*, was called, Blind to the Kingdome. He had issue Sultan *Hamzire Mirza* the eldest, who succeeded him, and this present King called *Abas*. The eldest in his fathers life time administred all things, which blindnesse made the other vnfit for: but *Abas* at twelue yeeres of age, vnder the gouernment of Tutors held the Prouince of Yasde, where the loue of the people made him suspected to his Father, who secretly resolued his death. *Abas* by his friends hearing it, fled to Corasan a Tartar people on the East of Persia, both by their religion and dependnouted *Abas* as his sonne. His father soone after dying, *Sultan Hamzire* succeeded, who was by force he subdued, beheaded their Princes, & for his securitie slew twentie thousand of the ablest amongst them for the wars. And then wholly bending his thoughts against the Turk, was by treason slaine by his Barber. His Princes, Authors of this fact, shared his State amongst them, euery one making himselfe Lord of that Prouince which he gouerned: writing their resolutions against *Abas*, whom also the Turke (which had his hand in the busnesse) had

p Some haue toolishly beleeued as History, those things which *Xenophon* writ as a Philosophicall Poem, &c.

had vndertaken should bee kept still in Corazan. *Abas* neuertheleſſe ſo wrought, that the King of Corazan diſmiſſed him, with three thouſand horſemen, to winne poſſeſſion of that State, which ſince hath deuoured the Tartars, and is growne terrible to the Turke, being no leſſe in Extent then the Turke hath in Aſia, and better both peopled, gouerned, and deuoted to their Soueraigne. But it was not eaſily atchieued. In Siſtane one of the necreſt Prouinces, hee was encountred with twenty thouſand, his troupes cut in pieces, himſelfe forced to flee to the mountaines, where he liued three moneths vnknown amongſt the heardmen, ſhifting vp and downe with tenne or twelue followers. Wearie of this life, hee determined to ſhew himſelfe in Yaſd, his *quondam* Prouince, which ſo well ſucceeded, that numbers come flocking to him, and *Ferrat Can* alſo a great Prince (diſcontent with the preſent State, no part of which had falne to him, hauing at that time no Prouince in his gouernement, when the King was ſlaine) reſorted to him with his brother, and tenne thouſand followers. They were welcome, but hee much more, as a great Souldier and a wiſe Prince. With theſe forces hee ouerthrew his neereſt enemies, which cauſed thoſe of Shyras, Aſphaan, Caſſan, aſſiſted by the Kings of Gheylan and Mazandran, to gather mighty forces. In the meane time, the Turkes armed at Tauris, and the Prince of Hamadan, hauing called in a ſtrength of the Courdines, was marching towards Casbin. Thus beſet with Armies, hee leaueth *Ferrat Can* with *Zulpher* his brother and fiue thouſand men in Casbin: & himſelfe with the reſt of his power, marched towards the *Can* of Hamadan. Now did *Ferrat Can* (according to former agreement betweene the King and him) proſeſſe himſelfe altered from the Kings part, and writeth to the Rebells, offering to ioyne his ſtrength with theirs, and to mutinie the Kings Armie alſo, which was lodged in the Mountaynes, in ſhew to keepe the ſtraits, indeede to expect the euent. Thus the Cans aſſembled at Casbin, and after long deliberation, concluded, that it was needeleſſe and not ſafe to call in the Turkes forces, and diſpatched a meſſenger and preſent to the Baſſa of Tauris, to reſerue his fauour till a time more needfull. Hereof *Ferrat* ſent word cloſely to the King, and of a banquet which ſhould bee at his houſe a few nights after, where the Principalls of the Army ſhould meet. Hither *Abas* bid himſelfe a gueſt, poſting thither with fiue thouſand of his beſt horſe, which he diſpoſed in the mountaine, couered with *Ferrats* troupe, expecting the appointed ſigne: which being giuen late in the night when the whole company was heauie with wine and ſleepe, the King was receiued into the houſe with three hundred men, where without any vprore he ſlew ſeuentie. And at the breake of the day the Kings people made as great ſhouts & noyſe, as if all the Army had bin there, whereat the Alarme being giuen, all betooke them to their armes, repairing to *Ferrats* lodging to their Princes; whoſe heads laced vpon a ſtring, were there preſented to them out of a Tarras, vpon which the King preſently ſhewed himſelfe with *Ferrat Can*; *Zulpher* hauing his fiue thouſand men ready in a troupe in the great place. All theſe things together ſo amazed them, that they thought the Kings pardon a high preferment, which he freely granted both them, and the ſuccours ſent thither by the Kings of Cheylan and Mazandran. The reports hereof made *Hamadans* Armie to vaniſh, and the King tooke order preſently by new *Cans* for the gouernment of thoſe parts. Hee led his ſouldiers to Hiſphaan, giuing out that the treaſures of the Kingdome were there layd vp by the Rebels; a good policie to winne it, which with as much pretended indignation he raſed, for fayling of his ſeeming hopes. To ſatiſfie his Souldiers better, he led them againſt the Kings of Cheylan and Mazandran, where the entrances by Nature difficult, thorow the vnpaſſable woods and hilles, were made eaſie by the reuolt of thoſe to whom the charge of keeping the Straits was giuen, whoſe liues *Abas* had before ſpared at Casbin. The ſucceſſe was, the two Kings were ſlaine, and the ſouldiers enriched with the ſpoyle of a Countrey exceeding fertile, thus ſubdued to his Scepter. The people he remoued into other parts of his Dominion, ſending the former inhabitants into Cheylan and Mazandran.

Not long after the brother of that King of Coraſſan, which had beene Tutor to *Abas*, rebelled againſt his brother, and ſlew him and all his children, except one with whom his Tutors fled into the Mountaines. This occaſion *Abas* apprehended for the ſubduing of that Countrey in the Infants right, which (notwithſtanding the treaſons of *Ferrat*, now weary of his former loyalty, and conſpiring with the Turke and Tartar to betray his Maſter to them) hee effected. Theſe things with larger circumſtances *Abas* himſelfe related to Sir *Anthonie* and Sir *Robert*. As for his gouernment, the ſame is there alſo deſcribed, but I haue beene too long in the former. Hee hath Poſts once a weeke from all parts. The Viſite fitteth in counſell with the Kings counſell euery morning, and the King himſelfe euery Wednesday. The pooreſt may offer him any ſupplication, which he readeth, regiſtreth, orderth. One example of Iuſtice is admirable, which he ſentenced on the Gouernour of Casbin, conuict of many extortions, briberies, and other crimes: That all his goods and lands ſhould be ſold for ſatisfaction to thoſe whom hee had ſpoyled; and if any thing wanted, ſince the

King

King by giuing him that authoritie, was partly the cause of those excesses, hee condemned himselfe to pay the residue out of his treasurie. If any thing aduanced, it should bee giuen to his children, with a grieuous Edict, that no succour should be ministred to himselfe. Neither should hee at once end his punishment by death, but during his life weare a Yoke like a Hogs-yoke, and haue his eares and nose cut off: nor might any relieue him; but hee should get his liuing with his owne hands, that hee might feele in himselfe the miserie of pouertie. This made the Turks Embassador there present sweare, that such fortune & such vertue must needs be his Masters ruine. His bountie to our Author, his magnificence otherwise, let the Reader there learne, as likewise his priuate disports and exercises. At his entrance into Hisphaan, the ways were couered two English miles with Veluet, Satin, and Cloth of Gold, 10 where his horse should passe. He feasted Sir *Anthony*, before his employment in that honorable Embassage to the Princes Christian (after the maner [m] of the ancient feasting vsed by the Persians) thirty dayes together, in a Garden of two miles compasse, vnder Tents pitched by small rils of water; where euery man that would come, was placed according to his degree, vnder one or other Tent, prouided abundantly with meate, fruit, and wine, drinking as they would without compulsion. The ioy of which feast was augmented by the Tartars of [n] Buckhawrd, yeelding themselues to his subiection, and by the great Mogors great offer with his eldest sonnes daughter, to the young sonne of King *Abas* in marriage. But I referre the more desirous to Sir *Anthonies* owne booke; hauing thence gathered this, because it differeth so 20 much in some things from others; then whom, he had farre better meanes of intelligence.

He carryeth with him 500. Dogs, and as many Hawkes for all game: Sparrowes for Flies, Marlins for birds, Eagles, &c.

m *Bibar. 1. Athene. Lat.* tels of 15000. guests, & 400. talents spent in one of those Feasts, but that of *Assuerus* was greater.

n *Bacara* or *Bagharre.*

CHAP. IX.

Of the Sophian Sect, or Persian Religion, as it is at this present.

§. I.

30

The differences betwixt the Turke and Persian, with the zeale of both parts.

IT hath beene already shewed, how the Saracens had one Calysa, or Caliph, whom they esteemed the Head of their Religion and Empire, in right vnto both succeeding their grand Seducer, *Mahomet*: and how the foure Captaines or Doctors, each ayming, vnder colour of Religion, to further his ambitious Proiects, made way to difference of Sects in the beginning, and in succeeding Ages the Sword decided, who was rightfull successor, the postenty 40 of each challenging to himselfe that right, according as they were able in the Fielde to maintaine it. These Persians affected *Hali*, as truest interpreter of their Law, and Lord of the State, to whom *Mahomet* gaue his daughter in his life time, and his *Alcoran* at his death, being his kinsman also by birth; and although, by the violence of the contradicting Caliphes, they didnot alway make hereof open profession, yet euer and anone, as occasion was offered, this fire brake out, yet neuer into so great a flame, as after the yeere 1369. by *Sophi, Guine, Aider, Ismael*, and their successors, vnto this day: their Sect being that onely, of the seuenty two Saracenicall (so many some [a] account) which shall in the Persian estimation haue admission into Paradise, all the rest (and why not this also?) leading to hell.

a *Theodorus Cantacuzen. ap. Cruf. Io di Bar. As. dec. 2. l. 10. c. 6.*

From that diuision betwixt the Persians and Arabians, about the successor of *Mahomet* (it is *Barrius* his Relation; in which the Persians call themselues *Sia*, which signifieth the vnion of one body, but the Arabians call them *Raffadin*, that is, vnreasonable, and themselues *Cunin*) proceeded other Sects amongst the Mahometans; and amongst the Persians, two called *Camorata* and *Mutazels*, which follow little the saying of the Prophets, but would haue all proued to them by naturall reason, not allowing *Moses* or *Mahomet* any further. 50 There is one Sect amongst them called *Malabeda*, which subiecteth all things to *Chance*, and to the *Starrs*, not to Diuine Prouidence. There are other called *Emoxaidi*, which reiect many things in the Alcoran, and follow the doctrine of *Zaidi*, the Nephew of *Hocem*, second sonne of *Ali*, these inhabite on the confines of *Prester Iohn*, and in Melinde.

But to come to the common Persians, and to obserue out of *Barrius* the diuersity of opinion betwixt them and the Arabians; their Doctors reduce these differences into seuenteene conclusions. The Persians say, That GOD is the Author and worker of euery good, 60 and that euill commeth from the Deuill: The Arabians say, That would bring in two Gods, one

Deuill, *quasi* doe-euill: or Deuill, of *Diaβolos.* an Accuser or Cauiller.

one of good, the other of euill: the Persians say, that God is eternall, and that the law and creation of men had a beginning: the Arabians answere, That all the words of the law are prayses of the works of God, and therefore eternall, like himselfe: the Persians say, That the soules of the blessed in the other world cannot see the essence of God, because he is a Spirit of Diuinity; onely they shall see his greatnesse, mercy, pitty; & all other good things which he works in the creatures: the Arabians answere, That they shall see him with their eyes, euen as hee is; the Persians say, That when *Mahomet* receiued the Law, his soule was carried by the Angel *Gabriel* into the presence of God: the Arabians affirme it in his body also: the Persians say, That the children of *Ali*, or *Alle*, and *Fatema*: and their twelue Nephewes, haue preheminence aboue all Prophets: the Arabians grant it aboue all other men, but not aboue the Prophets: the Persians say, that it is sufficient to pray thrice a day vnto God; in the morning when the Sunne riseth, which is called *Sob*; the second *(Dor)* at noone; the third *(Magareb)* before Sunne-set, because these three containe all the parts of the day: the Arabians require twice besides, according to their law, called *Hacer*, and *Assa*. The rest of their seuenteene Articles of difference, mine Author hath not expressed. These are sufficient, to shew that they not onely differ about the successors of *Mahomet*, as *Minedoi* affirmeth, but about Dogmatical points also in their ridiculous Theologie, and interpretation of their law.

These differences haue continued of old and long continuance; what hath in latter times accrewed hereunto by the Sophian additions of *Guine* and his followers, is in part touched in the former Chapter. Let vs now take view thereof, as the same at this present hath infected Persia and the neighbouring Regions.

There is resident in [b] Casbin their profane Priest, called *Mustaed-Dini*, that is to say, the chiefe of the law, who is as the *Mufti* among the Turkes; and in the other subiect Cities are certaine peculiar heads obedient to this chiefe Priest, who notwithstanding are not chosen or displaced at his pleasure, but by the King himselfe, who should not onely be a King, but a Priest, as *Ali* and *Mahomet* were; from whom hee challengeth succession. And we haue shewed before that *Ismael* was called *Halife*, or *Chalife*, that is, the Vicar of God. Howbeit, for auoyding of greater trouble, he granteth that fauour, and putteth ouer that burthen from himselfe vnto others; to whose iudgements he also referreth himselfe, whensoeuer there is any Consultation or Treatie touching their law and religion. Vnder the *Mustaed-Dini* are the Califs (sayth *Minadoi*) and these are they that execute their dayly Seruice in their Mosches or Temples. The chiefe of these Califs is hee that putteth the Horn vpon the Kings head, when he is first enthronized: a ceremonie now performed in Casbin, because the Turkes forbad it to bee performed in Case, neere vnto Babylon, according to the ancient wont. Other Cities also haue a *Mustaed-Dini* and Califs, although inferiour to them of Casbin. These inferiour Califs seeme to be Vicars (so the word signifieth) of the *Mustaed-Dini*.

b *Minadoi lib.* 2. The chiefe is now at Hispaan. *Corim.*

The difference betweene the Turke and Persian (as commonly it happeneth in case of Religion) is so hotly pursued on both sides betwixt them, that they neither vse mutuall marriage, nor Merchandize, as some affirme: there can be no certaine Peace, or continuing Truce. And if one altar his Religion and turnes to the other side, hee is not receiued without a new [c] Circumcision. *Baiazet* the great Turke burnt two hundred Houses in Constantinople, infected with this Sect, together with the inhabitants, and set forth a publike Edict against it. *Ismael* is sayd, in like hatred of the Turkes to haue caused a Swine to be nourished, which, in despight of the *Ottoman* he named *Baiazet*. *Solyman* returning from Amasia, was entertained in the house of one of this Sect, who therefore, after the departure of his Prince, purified his house with washings, perfumes and other ceremonies; as if it had beene polluted with a Turkish guest; for which cause himselfe was slaine, and his house rased. But let vs take a further view of this Sect in other Countries.

Phil. Camerar. l. 1. c. 80. fol. 16. cent. 3. c. 12.

c There hee means to drew vp that skinne by Art, which may endure a new cutting.

§. II.

Of the spreading of the Persian Opinion.

NEither could it containe it selfe in the limits of the Persian Kingdome, but was spread further, and receiued euen in the heart of Turkie, and skirts of India. For amongst other the Disciples of *Aidar*, *Chasan Sheiste*, and *Schach Culi*, afterwards surnamed *Cafelbai*, fleeing the fury of the Persian King, who had slaine their Master, and persecuted his followers, came into Armenia *Minor*, and there tooke vp their dwelling at the great Mountaine Amiticarus, at the foot whereof the broken Rocks haue many darke Caues, the worke of Art partly, partly of Nature; which place of the inhabitants is called *Teke-ili*, whereof *Schach Culi* was after called *Techelli*. Here these two gining themselues

Kool. T. H. Swiss Comm. in An. 1560.

selues wholly to a contemplatiue life, in a strict austerity contenting themselues with such things as the earth voluntarily affoorded, began to grow in knowledge, first of the Heardsmen and Shepheards; after, of the Husbandmen and Countrey people, admiring their new holinesse. Yea, *Baiazet* himselfe, then Emperor of the Turkes, moued with zeale of their deuotion, sent them yeerely fixe or seuen thousand Aspers. Afterwards becomming Fortunetellers, and prognosticating things to come, they were by the superstitious people drawne into Villages and Cities, where they preached *Hali*, according to *Aidars* doctrine, enioyning their Disciples the red Band on their Turbants; of which the Turkes tearme them *Cusselbas*, that is, Red-heads, with which, in short time, the Cities and Townes were filled.

When they were thus multiplied, there met ten thousand of them at a Fayre at Tascia, or Attalia, where they executed the chiefe Magistrate; and being perswaded by these new Masters, they sware neuer to forsake their Captaines, or refuse any labour for their most holy Religion, vowing their soules and bodies in defence thereof. These Captaines not hauing otherwise to maintaine their followers, gaue them leaue to forrage the Countrey adioyning, and to liue vpon the spoyle of them that would not receiue their new doctrine, which they in many troupes, and with many preyes accordingly performed. They entred into Lycaonia, and the people fled out of the Countrey into Iconium. These two Prophets set vp Proclamations of blessings to all such as would receiue their Sect, and of destructions to the gainesayers. *Ismael* also, to encrease their strength, had sent them some troupes of horsemen. In the *Politike Historie* which *Crusius* hath giuen vs, in the first booke of his *Turcograecia*, it is sayd, that two hundred thousand followed *Such Cules*: In this war *Baiazets* two Nephewes, with the forces of the Countrey, encountring them in battell, receiued the ouerthrow: *Corcutas*, the sonne of *Baiazet*, with his Armie durst not assayle them. Thus marched they into Bithynia, where neere vnto the Riuer Sangarius, *Caragoses Bassa*, Viceroy of Asia, affronted them, hauing before commanded *Achmetes*, the eldest sonne of *Baiazet*, to leuie forces in his gouernment of Cappadocia and Pontus, to shut them in at their back. But *Techellus*, after the losse of seuen thousand men, and all his Ensignes, chased him out of the field into Cutaie the seat of the Vicetoy, where he besieged and tooke him with his wiues and children: and after being pursued by *Ali Bassa*, with forces out of Europe, hee impaled this *Caragoses* in the way on a sharpe stake fastened in the ground. Here was hee forced to fight, and his fellow *Chusan Shelife* slaine; but *Techellis* recouering the battell almost lost, left *Ali Bassa* slaine in the place; the Turkes fleeing before him. *Ionuses Bassa* was sent against him, when hauing lost a great part of his strength, hee had retired his weakened forces into Antitaurus, out of the Woods and Mountaines, often assayling the Turkes: whence at last he fled into Persia. *Ionuses* caused strait inquisition to be made for these new Sectaries, doing such to death with exquisite torments, as had borne armes in the late rebellion, and burned the rest in the forehead with an hot yron: and after transported them, together with the friends and kinsemen of such as had beene executed, into Europe, there to bee dispersed through Macedonia, Epirus, and Peloponnesus, for feare of a second returne of *Techellis*. The remainder of *Techellis* his power, as they fled into Persia, robbed a Caratan of Merchants; for which outrage, comming to Tauris, their Captaines were by *Ismaels* command executed, and *Techellis* himselfe burnt aliue; but yet is this Sect closely fauoured in Asia.

§. III.

Of their Rites, Persons, Places, and Opinions, Religious.

Gef. Duck. Hist. tom. 1.

WE haue now seene the Proceedings of this Sophian Sect, both in Persia and Turkie, both here kept downe, and there established by force. To weare red on the lower parts of their body, were to these *Red-heads* scarsely piacular. Touching *Hali*, they haue diuers dreames: as that when they doubted of *Mahomets* successor, a little Lizard came into a Councell assembled to decide the controuersie, and declared that it was *Mahomets* pleasure, that *Mortus Ali* (or *Morts Ali*) should be the man. He had a sword wherewith hee killed as many as he stroke. At his death he told them that dy and the sword, and was therewith taken vp into heauen; for whose returne they haue long looked in Persia. For this cause the King kept a horse ready sadled, and kept for him also a daughter of his to be his wife; but she died in the yeere, 1573. And they say further, that if he come not shortly, they shall be of our beleefe.

Some say it is for one of his Nephewes.

They haue few bookes, and lesse learning. There is often great contention and mutinie in great Townes, which of *Mortus Ali* his sonnes was greatest: sometime two or three thousand

sand people being together by the eares about the same; as I haue seene (sayth Master *Ducket*) in Shamaky, and Ardouill, and Tauris, where I haue seene a man comming from fighting, and in a brauery bringing in his hand foure or fiue mens heads, carrying them by the hayre of the crowne. For although they shaue their heads commonly twice a weeke, yet leaue they a tuft of hayre vpon their heads about two foot long, whereof, when I enquired the cause, They answered that thereby they may bee the easier carried vp into heauen when they are dead. In praying they turne to the South, because Mecca lyeth that way from them. When they be on trauell in the way, many of them will as soone as the Sunne riseth, light from their horses, turning themselues to the South, and will lay their gownes before them, with their swords and beads, and so standing vpright doe their holy things, many times in their prayers kneeling downe, and kissing their beades, or somewhat else that lieth before them.

When they earnestly affirme a matter, they sweare by God, *Mahomet*, and *Mortus Ali*, and sometime by all at once, saying, *Olla Mahomet Ali*, and sometime *Shaugham bassie*, that is, by the *Shaughes* head, *Abas* the young Prince of Persia charged with imputation of treason, after other Purgatorie speeches, sware by the Creator that spread out the ayre; that founded the earth vpon the deepes; that adorned the heauen with Starres; that powred abroad the water; that made the fire; and briefly of nothing brought forth all things: by the head of *Ali*, and by the Religion of their Prophet *Mahomet*, that hee was cleare. If any Christian will become a Bosarman, or one of their superstition, they giue him many gifts: the Gouernor of the Towne appointeth him a horse, and one to ride before him on another horse, bearing a sword in his hand, and the Bosarman bearing an arrow in his hand, rideth in the City cursing his father and mother. The sword signifieth death, if hee reuolt againe. Before the *Shaugh* seemed to fauour our Nation, the people abused them very much, and so hated them that they would not touch them, reuiling them by the names of *Cafers* and *Gawers*, that is, Infidels or Misbeleeuers. Afterwards they would kisse their hands, and vse them gently and reuerently. Drunkards and riotous persons they slate; for which cause *Richard Iohnson* caused the English, by his vicious liuing, to be worse accounted of then the Russes.

Knol. Turk. hist. pag. 964.

Arthur Edwards. Hak. tom. 1.

Rich. Chainir.

Their opinions and rites most-what agree with the Turkish and Saracenicall. Their Priests are apparelled like other men: they vse euery morning and afternoone to goe vp to the toppes of their Churches, and tell there a great tale of *Mahomet* and *Mortus Ali*. They haue also among them certaine holy-men called *Setes*; accounted therefore holy, because they, or some of their ancestors, haue beene on pilgrimage at Mecca; these must be beleeued for this Saint-ship, although they lie neuer so shamefully. These *Setes* vse to shaue their heads all ouer, saue on the sides a little aboue the Temples, which they leaue vnshauen, and vse to braide the same as women doe their hayre, and weare it as long as it will grow. *Iosafa Barbaro* at Sammachi lodged in an Hospitall, wherein was a graue vnder a vault of stone, and neere vnto that a man, with his beard and hayre long; naked, saueing that a little before and behind, he was couered with a skinne, sitting on a peece of a matte on the ground; I, (sayth hee) saluted him, and demanded what hee did: he told mee hee watched his father: I asked who was his father; He, quoth he, that doth good to his neighbour; with this man in this Sepulchre I haue liued thirty yeeres: and will now accompany him after death; and being dead, be buried with him: I haue seene of the world sufficient, and now haue determined to abide thus till death.

Ducket.

Iof. Barb. apud Ramus.

Another I found at Tauris on all-Soules day, in the which they also vsed a commemoration of Soules departed, neere to the Sepulchre in a Church-yard, hauing about him many birds, especially Ruens and Crowes: I thought it had beene a dead corpse, but was told it was a liuing Saint, at whose call the birds resorted to him, and he gaue them meat.

Another I saw, when *Assambei* was in Armenia, marching into Persia against Signior *Iausa*, Lord of Persia and Zagatai, vnto the City of Hermy; who drew his staffe in the dishes wherein they are, and sayd certaine words, and brake them all: the *Sultan* demanded what he had sayd: they which heard him answered, that he said hee should be victorious, and breake his enemies forces, as hee had done those dishes: whereupon he commanded him to be kept till his returne; and finding the euent according, he vsed him honourably. When the *Sultan* rode thorow the fields, he was set on a Mule and his hands bound before him, because he was sometime accustomed to doe some dangerous folly: at his feet three attended on him many of their religious persons, called *Darwise*. These mad trickes he vsed according to the course of the Moone, sometimes in two or three dayes not eating any thing, busied in such fooleries, that they were faine to bind him: Hee had great allowance for his expences.

One of those holy men there was, which went naked like to the beasts, preaching their faith: and hauing obtained great reputation; hee caused himselfe to bee immured in a wall forty dayes, there to abide without any sustenance: but when this time was expired, and

some

some wondered, one more nose-wise then the rest, smelled the sent of flesh: the *Sultan* hearing it, committed him and his disciple to the Cadilasher, who by torments caused them to confesse the coozenage; for, thorow a hole which was made in the wall by a cane, he had broth conveyed to him, and therefore they were both put to death: In the yeere 1478. *Chozamirech*, an Armenian, bring in his shop in Tauris, an Azi or Saint of theirs came to him, and willed him to deny his Christian faith: he answered him courteously, and prayed him not to trouble him: but when he persisted, hee offered him money: the Saint would not haue the money, but importuned his first suite: *Chozamirech* sayd hee would not deny his Christian faith: whereupon the other plucked a sword out of a mans scabard which stood by, and with a wound which hee gaue the Armenian in the head, killed him, and ranne away. But 10 the Armenians some complaining to the *Sultan*, procured his apprehension at Merin, two dayes iourney from Tauris: and, being brought before him, he with a knife killed him with his owne hands, and caused him to be cast on a dung-hill for the dogges to eate: saying, Is this the way to encrease the faith of *Mahomet*? But when some of the more zealous people went to one *Darwiscassan*, which was in guarding of the sepulcure of *Assambei* the former *Sultan*, and (as it were) Prior of the Hospitall, and requesting of him, obtayned the body to burie it: the *Sultan* hearing it, sent for him, and sayde to him, Darest thou countermand my commands? Away and kill him: which was suddenly dispatched. Hee further to be reuenged of the people, committed the Towne to the sick, which for the space of three or foure 20 houres was done. And then he forbad further spoyle, and fined the Towne in a great summe of gold. Lastly, hee caused the Armenians some to come before him, and with many kind words comforted him. This long history I haue inserted, to shew the extremity of blind zeale, and religious fury in the seculars and votaries of these Persians, if iustice should not withstand their rage.

Before is mentioned the commemoration of their dead, which is thus performed ouer their Sepulchres. Thither resort great multitudes of men and women, olde and yong, which sit on hepes with their Priests, and with their candles lighted: the Priests eyther reade or pray in their language; and after cause to bee brought some what to eate in the place: the place containeth betweene foure and fiue miles; the pathes which leade thither are full of 30 poore people, which beg alms, some of whom offer to say some prayer for their benefactors. The sepulchres haue stones vpon them, engrauen with the names of the buried parties: and some haue a Chappell of stone thereon.

Ios. Barb. At Merdin he saw a naked man, which came and sate by him, and pulling forth a booke, read thereon, and after drew neere and asked him, whence he was; hee answered, a stranger; I also am a stranger, saith he, of this world, and so are we all; and therefore I haue left it, with purpose to goe thus into mine end; with many words besides touching meekenesse, and the denial of the world. He said, I haue seene a great part thereof, and finde nothing therein that contents me, and therefore haue determined to abandon it altogether. To this Merdin a man cannot passe, but by a way made of stone, continuing a mile: at the head thereof is a gate 40 and way to the Towne; and within the Towne is another hill with a like way of fiue hundred paces in height. There is an Hospitall for entertainment of all strangers, made by *Ziangirbei*, the brother of *Vssuncassan*: and if they be of better sort, they are entertained with carpets spread for them, worth an hundred ducats a peece: and victuals for all comers.

We might heere take further view of their stately Temples, their great and populeus Cities, and other things worthy obseruation, if that our Turkish History had not related the like also among them, especially touching the persons and places religious. For the rest I referre the Reader to other Authors.

Sir Ant. Sher. The present King *Abas* (more, as it seemeth, in policie, to secure himselfe of factions, and against the Turke, then conscience) is a great persecutor of that sect of *Mahomet* which followeth the interpretation of *Vssen* and *Omar*. This hee labours to extirpate and make odious: hauing in vse, once a yeere with great solemnitie to burne publikely (as maine heretikes) the images of *Vssen* and *Omar*. Then doth he cause his great men publikely, in scorne of their institution, to goe with a flagon of wine, carried by a footman, and at euery village, or where they see any assembly of people, to drinke: which himselfe also vseth, not for loue of the wine, but to scandalize the contrarie religion. Yet are there of the greatest, exceeding precise Turkes, if they durst shew it.

I. Ward to M. Heywood. In a Letter of *John Ward*, written in Tauris, May 14. 1605. this King is blamed for making slaues of poore Armenians, and forcing many to Mahumetisme, pulling downe Churches, and vsing more rigour then the Turke.

§. IIII.

Of Natures wonders, and the Iesuits lyes of Persia.

HE [f] wonders of Nature in these parts are; neere Bachu, a fountaine of oyle continually running, and fetched into the farthest parts of Persia: and another neere Shamakie, of Tarre, whereof we had good vse and proofe in our ship. Heteabouts you shall haue in the fields, neere to any Village in the night, two or three hundred Foxes howling. Kine they haue like ours, and another sort great boned and leane, as hard fauoured as those which *Pharaoh* dreamed of. In Persia groweth great abundance of Bombasin cotton: this groweth on a certaine tree or brier, not past the height of a mans waste, with a slender stalk like to a briar or carthaion luly-flower, with very many branches, bearing on euery branch a fruit or cod round, which when it commeth to the bignesse of a Wall-nut, openeth and sheweth forth the cotton, which groweth still like a fleece of wooll, to the bignesse of a mans fist, and then being loose is gatheered: the seeds are flat, and blacke, as big as pease, which they sow in their fields, and plowed ground in great abundance.

I had thought I had ended this Chapter and our Persian Expedition; but our good friends the Iesuites would needs entertaine your wearie eyes, with reading an exploit of theirs, related by g one, sometimes their fellow Catholike, now (I hope) our fellow Christian. For the credit of this honest and loyall (of their *honest* returne not with *a non est*, and loyall with a lie-all) Societie, was a French pamphlet by them dispersed (a little before the Powder-treason) amongst their Catholike friends in England, reporting the miraculous conuersion of the King of Persia, by one *Campion* a Iesuite, an English-man, that had expelled a Deuill out of a possessed partie; and commanded the Deuill at his departure to giue a signe thereof, by striking downe the top of a steeple. Which being effected, the Kings conuersion followed, together with many of the Nobilitie, to the Roman faith; libertie also being granted to preach it openly, and to build Churches and Monasteries thorowout the Kingdome. This was beleeued in England, especially by a friend of our Authors, vnto whom that Pamphlet was sent, who requested him to say Masse in thanks-giuing to God for so great a benefit. But in the end, that Iesuite who sent the Pamphlet gaue out, that it was but a thing deuised by French Hugoners, to disgrace their societie. Gracious societie! that can sometime cure their lies with a distinction of *piefraudes*, h sometime couet them with a robe of the new fashion, *Aequiuocation*: sometimes can expose their bastards at other mens doores, to shield themselues from shame, with laying the blame on others; and haue a mint in their pragmaticall heads of such superfluble inuentions: what are they now disgraced? and that by Hugonets? Euen as truly as the Parliament-house should haue beene blowne vp by Puritans i (this also was the Ignatians deuice) or like to that newe or the late Queene k whose Ambassadours were at Rome for the Popes Absolution: or that of *Bezaes* recantation, and Geneuaes submission to the Pope. Blessed *Ignatius* (let mee also inuocate, or let him deigne to read in that all-seeing glasse l this poore supplication) infuse some better spirit, or some cleanlier and more wittie conueyance at least, into thy new progenie, lest the Protestants grosser wits sent, see, feele the palpablenesse, and impute the Iesuitical courses to that Author which said, he m *would go out and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all* ACHABS *Prophets, which,* n *when he speaketh a lie, speaketh of his owne, because he is a liar, and the father thereof.* Hitherto wee tooke *Ignatius* for their father, but now we find a New, of whom they borrow Banktuptly shifts, beseeming onely the Merchants of Babylon, disgracing humanitie, defacing diuinitie, worthily *raunged* o *amongst the poore policies of the Hospitall of the desperate.* Since also, *Iansonius* in his *Mercurius Gallobelgicus* hath told vs newes of the Kings graunt to build a Temple and Monasterie for Christians, himselfe, as hee faith, much enclining to that religion: whereupon many haue been baptized, and not a few through the power of holy-water, p haue beene cured. The King hath further sent to the Georgians to vnite them to the Romish Church: and the Armenians also, by an embassage to Rome haue protested all obedience to that See, as they before had done in the Couent of Saint *Augustine*, which is in the chiefe Citie of Persia. He setteth downe the copie of King *Abas* his Letter to the Pope, wherein he requested him to send a Prelate to gouerne at *Tres Ecclesia*, where the chiefe of the Armenian Christians vsed to reside. The like he writeth in another letter to the King of Spaine: which, if it be so, argueth rather his policie, to obtaine good will and helpe of the Christians against the Turk, then any loue to Christian Religion.

f *Duchat.*

g *Iohn Copley* his Doctrinall and Morall Obseruations concerning Religion. *p.* 85.

h Deuoid deceits: *spectatum admissi risum teneatis amici?* Had euer any but a Iesuite dispensation to many Deuotion and Deceit, Goddlinesse and Coufenage together?

i Proceeding against the Traitors.

k Relat. of Religion.

l *Speculum Tremintis.*

m 1. *Kin.* 22. 22.

n *Iohn* 8. 44.

o *Act.* 18. 15.

p Sir *Ed. Sands* Relat. of Religion in the West.

A.t. Mere. Gal. 1610.

q Who can cure these miracles of lying? *Ad.* 1608.

CHAP. X.

Of the Scythians, Sarmatians, and Seres, and of their Religion.

§. I.

Of the Scythian Name, People, Region, Language, and manner of life.

1 NDer the name Scythia, is contained a verie great part of the world: It was diuided into *Scythia, Europæa,* and *Asiatica. Pliny* [a] saith, That this name reacheth vnto the Sarmatians and Germans, and to those fartheſt Nations, which were vnknowne to other men. And *Strabo* in his firſt booke saith, That all knowne Regions towards the North were called Scythians or Nomades: and in his eleuenth booke he affirmeth, that the Greekes called all those Northerne Nations, Scythians, and Celtoſcythians. Those beyond the Adriatike and Pontike Seas, and the Riuer Iſter or Danubius, were called Hyperborei, Sauromatæ, and Ariaſpi: those beyond the Caſpian Sea, Sacæ and Maſſagetæ. Some [b] will haue this name to be giuen them ἀπὸ τῆς σκύζης τῶν ἀνθρώπων, which ſignifieth to be angrie: Others of their *Shooting,* [c] called ſtill of ſome of those Nations, and in ſome other languages. *Schieten,* of which our word Shoot is deriued: *Mela* in his third Booke and fifth Chapter, calleth them all Sagæ: and in the fragment which beareth the name of [d] *Cato de Originibus*, is mentioned *Scythia Saga:* this word *Saga, Beroſus* [e] interpreteth a Prieſt: ſaying, that *Noah* left the Scythian Armenians his rituall bookes, which onely Prieſts, and that onely among Prieſts, might reade, who were therefore called *Saga,* as *Noah* himſelfe had been. These peopled the Countries from Armenia to the Baſtians, all which place was called *Scythia Saga:* ouer which *Sabatius* reigning in the time of *Iupiter Belus*; *Araxa* with his ſonne *Scythia* poſſeſſed all from Armenia Weſtward, to Samatia in Europe. The Grecians fable, *Hercules* to be the father of theſe Nations, begetting *Scythes* [f] on a monſter, whoſe vpper halfe reſemble a Woman, the nether part a Viper. It were an endleſſe and boundleſſe worke, to ſeeke and ſet out the true and proper beginnings and bounds of this ſo large a Tract of the world, called Scythia: the particular Nations of them would be but harſh to recite out of *Pliny, Mela, Strabo,* and others: the multitude whereof he that will may find in [g] *Ortelius* his *Theſaurus* collected together. The Sarmatæ, or Sauromatæ, are ſometime made one peculiar people of the Scythians: and ſometimes the names are confounded, Sarmatia alſo being diuided into Europæa and Aſiatica, whereof the one is interpreted by [h] *Oliuerus, Polonia,* by *Ortelius, Ruſſia,* and the other *Tartaria.*

Goropius [i] in his *Beccefelana* admiring his owne language, conieCtureth that while *Nimrod* and his company fell to babel, or after our pronunriation, babble at Babel, others, namely, the Cymbrians, or poſtetitie of *Gomer* ſtaied ſtill in Margiana, a Countrie fruitfull of Vines; whither hee imagineth *Noah* deſcended out of the Arke, and there abode after the Floud. Theſe he ſuppoſeth, being not at Babel, retained their old and firſt vniuerſall language. But Margiana growing too little for their multiplied numbers, they were forced to ſend out Colonies. And thus the Saxons, Tectoſages, Sauromatæ, Getes or Gothes, the Danes, Galles, and other Scythian Nations, the true poſteritie of *Gomer*, and keepers of the firſt language, as he by Dutch Etymologies gathereth, peopled both Scythia and Sarmatia in Aſia, and Europe, together with all Germanie, France, England, Norway, Denmarke, and ſome parts of Aſia Minor. Hee that will bee further informed of his Reaſons, let him reade his *Saxonica, Gotodanica,* and other Treatiſes of his *Beccefelanian* Antiquities.

Ptolomey [k] diſtinguiſheth Scythia from Samatia: hee confineth Sarmatia Europæa, with the Sarmatian Ocean, and the land vnknowne on the North: with Viſtula on the Weſt: the Eaſterne border is Tanais: from whence vnto the Hircanian Sea Eaſtward, is Sarmatia Aſiatica, on the North aburting on the vnknown parts of the earth, on the South with the Euxine Sea, and a line drawne right from thence to the Caſpian Sea. Scythia is by [l] him placed to the Eaſt of Sarmatia, diuided by the hill Imaus, extending vnto the Region called Serica, hauing on the North vnknowne places: on the South, the Sacæ, Sogdiana, Margiana and India. But our purpoſe is to take them here in their more generall ſenſe, vnderſtanding all the North paſs of Aſia, now Tartaria Aſiatica (for of Europe, ſauing wherein the Europæan Scythians agree with the Aſian we are not now to ſpeake:) And of theſe, firſt to conſider their ancient Scythian Rites, and in the next place their later Tartarian appellation and Religion.

Iuſtin [m] out of *Tragus* relateth the arguments vſed of the Egyptians and Scythians, each ſeeking

a *Plin.l.4.c.12.*

b *Scythe ἀπὸ τῆς σκύζης τῶν ἀνθρ. Celsus li. 18.24.*

c *Plin.l.7.c.56.* ſaith that *Scythes,* ſonne of *Iupiter,* inuented the Bow and Arrowes.

d *Cato Anno de orig. & ap. A.Riccolon.*

e *Pherecle Beroſus lib.2. & 3. & 5.*

f *Herod.lib.4. Diod.Sic.lib.2.*

g *Ortel. Theſ.*

h *Oliu. in Melam.Ortel. Theſ. g.a.*

i *Gotop.Beccefel.*

k *Ptol.l.3.c.5.*

l *Ptol.l.6.c.14.*

m *Iuſtin.lib.2.*

seeking to challenge to themselues, to bee the ancientest of Nations: in which quarrell the Scythians preuailed. Their manners and customes hee thus reporteth. They haue no limitation of lands, nor tillage, nor house, but alwaies wander thorow places not inhabited, feeding their Heards & Flocks. They carrie their wiues and children with them on Carts, which also being couered with hides, they vse for houses. No offence is more hainous amongst them then theft: gold and siluer they as much contemne, as others desire. Milke and hony is their food; their clothes, skinnes of beasts, for the vse of wooll they know not. They haue three times fought the Empire of Asia, neuer conquered of others. They chased *Darius* the Persian King out of their coasts: they slew *Cyrus* with all his armie: they ouerthrew *Zopyron* a Captaine of *Alexander* the Great, with all his forces. They onely heard of, neuer felt the Roman armes, and themselues founded the Parthian Empire.

That which credulous and fabulous antiquitie hath reported, of the monstrous peoples inhabiting the Northerly and vnknowne parts of Scythia, is not here to be recited, the Countries being at this time discouered, and knowne to haue no such men, as either by nature are bald and flat nosed, with huge chins; or haue but one eye, where there are also Gryphons, keepers of their treasures; or men with Goats feet: or other monsters of men, which *Pliny, Herodotus*, and others, haue rather mentioned then beleeued; *Mandauil* and *Munster* following them in like Relations. Next to these both in place and credit, wee may reckon the Hyperboreans, of whom the Delians [o] report that they sent to *Delos* Virgins, with sacrifice to *Lucina*, bound vp in wheat-straw: through so many Nations inhabiting betweene. Of the Issedones is reported, that when one dieth, his kindred bring thither beasts, which they kill, and cut, and dresse, and eat together with the flesh of the dead man, whose skull also they keepe and gilde, vsing it as an Idoll, to which they performe yeerely ceremonies: these exequies doth the sonne there performe to his dead father.

n *Plin lib.7. Solinus cap.10.*

o *Herod lib.4. Pius Secundus in historia Asiæ,* confuteth this tale. *Vide Mela lib. 2. cap. 1. Cum not. Hertab. &c.*

§. II.

Of the Religion, Diuination, and other Scythian Rites.

GEnerally of the Scythian Religion thus. Of the gods, they worship first *Vesta*, whom they call in their language *Tabiti*: next of all *Iupiter*, in their speech *Papæus*, and the Earth, supposing her to bee the wife of *Iupiter*, and call her *Apia*. In the next place they worship *Apollo* and *Venus*, by the names of *Oetosyrus*, and *Artimpasa*, and *Mars*, and *Hercules*. Some of them sacrifice also to *Neptune*, or *Thamimasades*. Images, Altars, and Temples, they thinke ought not to bee made, except to *Mars*. Their manner of sacrificing is generally this: The sacrifice is presented with the fore-feet bound, the Sacrificer at his back hauing laid aside his holy vestment, woundeth the same, and while it falleth, calls vpon that god to whom he sacrificeth; and then putteth a halter about the necke, and strangleth it, without kindling any fire, or vowing, or other ceremonie, and slayeth it: the flesh plucked from the bones, hee casteth into a great Caldron, the bones hee vseth for fewell to seeth the same (for wood the Countrie doth not yeeld:) And if they haue not any such vessell, they put all the flesh with water into the paunch, and so the beast doth seeth it selfe. After it is boyled, he which sacrificed offereth the libaments, or offerings of the flesh and inwards: their sacrifices are, besides other beasts, especially of horses.

Scythian Temples.

Their Temples to *Mars* they build on this manner. They heape together bundles of twigges, three furlongs in length and breadth, and aboue on them is made a square plaine, three sides thereof are vpright, the fourth is made slope, and the bending-wise, thereby to get vp: thither they bring euerie yeere an hundred and fiftie Waines of twigges to supply the waste of them. Vnderneath this worke is erected an old iron sword, and this is their Image of *Mars*, to which they offer yeerely sacrifices, both of other cattell and of horses: and more to this blade then to other gods. Of their captiues they offer one of an hundred, but after another manner. For after they haue offered wine on their heads, they kill them by a certaine vessell, and after lifting them vpon that their heape or Temple, they embrew the Sword-god with the bloud. This they doe aboue: beneath in the Temple they cut off all the right shoulders of the slaine men, and hurle them vp in the aire together with the hands; wherefoeuer the hand shall fall, there it lieth, and the dead bodie apart. When they haue performed all their solemnities, they depart. Swine are so odious to them, that they will haue none of them nourished in their Countrie.

Scythian Diuination.

There are among them Diuiners, whose Rites are these. They bring great bundles of willow twigs, which they lay on the ground, and vntie, and laying them asunder one by one, diuine. Some of them practise diuination with the leaues of the Teil-tree, which they fold

and vnfold in their hands. The King, when at any time hee falleth sicke, sendeth for three choice men of those Diuiners; who for the most part name some man vnto him, which hath forsworne himselfe, hauing sworne by the Kings Throne, an oath vsed of the Scythians: presently the man is brought forth, who, if he denieth what their art hath accused him of, the King sendeth for twice the number of Diuiners: and if they by new practise of their art find him guiltie, his head is cut off, and the first Diuiners share his goods: but if they shall absolue him, more Diuiners are sent for; and if the most of them doe absolue him, then those three first are thus done to death. They lade a waine with twigs, and binding the Diuiners hand and foot, and stopping their mouthes, cast them into the waines, and set all on fire, burning Oxen; waine, and men together, vnlesse some of the Oxen by the burning of their harnes escape. This punishment inflict they on their false prophets. They make their leagues with other Nations in this sort. They powre wine into a great bowle, mixing therewith the bloud of them which ioine in league, cutting some part of the body with a knife or sword; and then dip in that bowle or mazer a sword, arrowes, an axe, a dart, and after curse themselues with many words, last of all drinking the wine. *Nicephorus* p *Gregoras* relateth the Scythian Customes and Expeditions, and their contempt of gold and ignorance of the vse of it. These on the one side, and the Christians on the other, forced the Turkes, which were also a kind of Scythians, to settle themselues as they could, in the parts of Mesopotania, Chaldæa, and Assyria, where they left there owne, and learned the Rites and Customes of the Mahumetans. The Kings are buried amongst the *Gerrhi*, with many ceremonies, carrying the dead bodie through all the Countries ouer which hee reigned, which cut and shaue themselues; and with him is buried his best beloued Paramour, his Cup-bearer, Cooke, Master of his horse, Waiter, Messenger, Horses, and the first fruits of all other things, and also golden Cups: and then they cast on earth, making a verie great hill.

p Nic. Greg. hist. kom. lib. 2.

When the yeere is gone about, they take fiftie of his principall attendants, which are not slaues, but freeborne Scythians, and strangle them with so many horses of the best, and fasten the dead men on the dead horses with much solemnitie. But to relate all the particulars hereof, and their burials also of priuate men (whose dead bodies are carryed about foritie daies, from one friend to another, entertained euerie where with feasts, &c.) would be too tedious. He that would haue a sight of these things, let him resort to *Thomaso Porcacchi* his *Funerali Antichi*, where these things are not onely discoursed in words, but described in artificiall pictures.

The Scythians so farre hate forraine Rites and Religions, that *Anacharsis*, a Scythian Philosopher, hauing traucled through a great part of the world, and vowed to the mother of the gods, if he returned home in safetie, that he would sacrifice to her, with such Rites as hee had seene obserued in *Cyzicus*: in the performance of his vow, was slaine by King *Saulius*.

q Ph. Camerar. Med. hist. Cent. 1. 58. yet the Turkes (their ofspring) hold diuers Religions.

Scyles q also being King of the Scythians, when he brought in forraine Rites, and obserued the mad *Bacchanal* solemnities, which hee had seene among the Greekes, lost both his Kingdome and life. r They cut off the noses of men, and imprinted pictures in the flesh of women, whom they ouercame: and generally their Customes of s war were bloudie: what man soeuer the Scythian first taketh, he drinketh his bloud: hee offereth to the King all the heads of the men he hath slain in battaile; otherwise he may not share in the spoile: the skins of their crownes flayed off, they hang at their horse-bridles: t their skins they vse to flay for napkins and other vses, and some, for cloathing. Once a yeere the chiefe men haue a solemnitie amongst them, in which they powre wine into a Mazer, of which none may drinke, which hath not slaine an enemy.

r *Atheneus lib. 13. cap. 8.*
s *Herodot. li. 4.*
t *Plin. lib. 7. c. 2.*

These Customs were generall to the Scythians in Europe and Asia (for which cause u *Scytharum facinora patrare*, grew into a Prouerbe of immane crueltie, and their Land was iustly called x Barbarous:) others were more speciall and peculiar to particular Nations Scythian.

u *Pasch. hist. l. 9.*
x *Barbara nec Scythiæ telus, &c. Tibul. lib. 3.*

§. III.

Of particular Nations in Scythia, their Acts and Rites.

y *A. Mar. l. 22.*

OF the barbarous 7 crueltie of the Scythians, the sea confining was called *Euxinus* by the contrarie, as the furies were called *Eumenides*, saith *Ammianus*, because they sacrificed strangers to *Diana*, whom they worshipped vnder the name of *Orsiloche*, and hanged vp their heads on the walles of their Temples. The Ile *Leuce*, neere to *Taurica*, was dedicated to *Achilles*, where none of his deuout worshippers durst abide in the night-time; for none might spend the night on shoare without danger of his life. *Arrianus* in his *Periplus* (or *sailing about*) of the Euxine Sea, speaketh of this Iland,

Iland, and the deuotions therein performed to *Achilles* and *Patroclus*: that certaine birds keepe the Temple, watering and sweeping the same with their wings, and the Goates which feed in the Ile there present themselues for sacrifice, when the price is first paid at the Altar to the contentment of that Deitie, or Diuell, whose illusion (if not others collusion) it must needs bee: But because this Iland adioyneth to Europe, I must forbeare these things till another time. He also describeth the Nations, both in Asia and Europe, which abutt round about that Sea. *Iornandes* z bringeth these Scythians bordring from Scanzia (so hee calleth that Peninsula, which others name, Basilia, Scandia, Scandinauia, &c. Wherein are the Kingdomes of Sweden, Gothland and Norway) and attributeth to the Goths those warres, which the Egyptians and Persians are said to haue made against the Scythians. Neere to Mæotis King *Filimer* planted himselfe and his followers; in Dacia, Thracia and Mæsia *Zamolxes*, who was also a great Philosopher. These and the rest were not onely a terrour to the skirts of Asia, but to the heart of Africa and Europa, in processe of time sacking Rome, and shaking that Roman Monarchy almost to the ground. *Simocatta* a in his Mauritian History giueth the preeminence of Martiall valour, amongst the many many Scythian Nations to the ABARES. *Chaganus* the Scythian King, sent Embassadors to *Mauritius*, with an Epistle, wherein he sileth himselfe Gouernour of seuen Nations, and Lord of the seuen Climats of the world. He conquered the Abdelæ or Nephthalites, the Abares (some of which fled to Tangast to the Turkes) and the b Ogor-Nation which dwell by the Riuer Til (or Volga) whose ancient Princes were called *War*, and *Chunnai*. He conquered also the Prince of Colch, in which war hee slew three hundred thousand people, their carkasses lying scattered foure daies iourney. Hee subdued also the Turkes at the hill Icar, which is foure hundred miles distant from the golden Mountaine: so they call a mountaine in the East, because of the fertilitie and store of cattell therein: which alwayes the greatest Chagan amongst the Turkes possesseth. For *Chagan* is not a proper name, but a Princely title, which in those parts, and the Countries adioyning is still continued: the Tartars calling their Princes *Chan* (which c some perhaps falsly, write *Cham*) and the Persians and Turkes still vsing that title. These Turkes vaunted themselues neuer subiect to Earth-quakes or Pestilence. They cal their Priest *Taisan*, that is, the Sonne of GOD. Their Religion I haue before mentioned. They haue a custome that the males neuer weare gold. This Citie was diuided by a streame, which sometimes separated two disagreeing Nations, no lesse distinguished by their disioyned mindes and differing habites, the one wearing blacke, the other red. This Citie, they say, was built by *Alexander*, when hee had ouercome the Sogdians and Bactrians. The Kings wiues shining with Iewels, are carryed in golden Chariots, each drawne with one Bull, the bridles embossed with gold. The Prince (as is said elsewhere) spent the night with seuen hundred women. Fame attributeth another Citie, not farre hence, to *Alexander*, called Chubdan. The Prince thereof being dead, his wiues in blacke, with shauen heads, continually mourne, and may neuer forsake the Sepulchre. These haue many Elephants, and traffique with the Indians which dwell Northwards, and make Silke. Thus much I thought worth the adding out of *Simocatta*, for better knowledge both of the Turkish and of the Tartarian Historie, as well as of the Scythian.

The MASSAGETAE, d famous for the ouerthrow of *Cyrus*, esteeme the Sunne alone for God, and offer vnto him a horse. They haue one wife to each man, and yet euery one vseth also his Neighbors wife openly, hanging meane while his quiuer on the Waine or Cart: The best death, and most happy amongst them, is, when they are become old, to bee cut in pieces, and to be eaten together with sheeps flesh: if hee dye naturally, they burie him in the earth, as dying a base and beastly e death. Their weapons are of brasse, their furniture of gold, of both which they haue much store, little of yron and siluer. f The BACTRIANS, when they were old or worne with sicknesse, cast their Parents to Dogs, which they kept for this purpose, and called *Buryall Dogs*. The Bactrian women are pompous, g riding in great state, and lye with their seruants, and with strangers. They haue among them Brachmanes; *Zoroastres* the Bactrian is accounted first author of the Magi, and of liberall Arts: he liued twenty yeeres in a wilderness with cheese; but others account this another *Zoroastres*.

The SACAE sometimes made neerer, sometimes further inuasions: they possessed Bactria, and a great part of Armenia, which after of them was called *Sacasena*, and proceeded vnto Cappadocia, where, in the midst of their feastings, being in the night surprised by the Persians, and slaine, they left their name *Saca* or *Sacea*, to a yeerely solemnitie among the Persians, in memory of this victory. Of the *Saca*, some hold h our Saxons to be descended. *Dionysius* in his Greeke verses giueth them the highest praise for shooting of all others.

The AMAZONS, of whom is before related, are said i to be descended of the Scythians, who vnder the conduct of *Plinos* and *Scolpythus*, settled themselues by the Riuer Thermodon, and possessed the field of Themiscyra: But when they continued to spoile the adioyning

z *Ior. de reb. Geticis. Scanzia Officina gentium Vagina nationum. vid. W. Lex. de Migrat. Gent. lib. 8.*

a *Simocat. hist. Maur. lib. 7. c. 7. Cedrenus compend.*

b *Ant. ex hist. Mogor natio Tartarica.*

c *Vid. Ant. Pont. Antonius Simoc.*

Sup. lib. 3. c. 8.

Niceph. ex Simocat.

d *Strab. lib. 11.*

e *Ioan. Boem.*

f *Celius lib. 11. cap. 11.*

g *Euseb. de præp. Euang. lib. 6. cap. 8.*

h *Goup. Verces.*

i *Iustin lib. 2. Iornandes de reb. Get.*

Countries, they were by secret conspiracie of those people destroyed. Their wiues [k] became Watriours both in defence and offence, and did great acts vnder their two Queenes, *Marthesia* and *Lampedo*: after, *Oberia* and *Antiope* the daughter of *Marthesia*, in the time of *Hercules*, reigned: then *Penthesilea*, who in the Troian warres was slaine. Yet the reliques of that Nation continued vntill *Minthia* or *Thaleistris*, in *Alexanders* time; and by degrees ware out altogether. One of their Queenes instituted the sacrifice to *Mars* and *Diana*, called *Tauropolum*, saith *Diodorus* [l], who addeth that they liued not without men, but that they put the men to domesticke drudgeries, and exercised the women in the field. Yet doth he no lesse then *Strabo* make doubt of these Amazonian, or Vnimammian Nation [m]: and no lesse of the HYPERBOREAN, which hee thus relateth out of *Hecateus*, that they dwell in an Iland in the Ocean neere vnto the Pole, in which *Latona* was borne, and *Apollo* was most of all worshipped: and that the Ilanders generally are *Apolloes* Priests, euerie day chanting Hymnes in his praise: they haue also a huge Groue, and a round Temple dedicated to *Apollo*, to whom their Citie is sacred. These and other things fable they of the *Hyperborei*, to which *Solinus* [n] addeth many other, of the elemencie of the ayre, of the innocencie of the men, of their freedome from sicknes, and voluntarie seeking for death in the sulnes of daies (after they haue made merrie, casting themselves from a certaine Rocke into the Sea) all these pleasures concurring notwithstanding; things contrarie both to Truth and Nature, except with *Goropius* [o] wee turned some parts, at least of this Historie into an Allegorie. He yet historically interpreteth, that they which placed the *Hyperborei* beyond the *Arimaspi*, these beyond the *Issedones*, and those also beyond the Scythians, and these againe beyond the Cimmerians, intended the European Scythians, or inhabitants about *Maotis*, the Liuonians and Muscouites, the *Issedones* to be in *Scandia*, and all alongst those frozen or Icy Seas, as he proueth by Etymologie of the word: North-East, and East wards from these in the continent of Asia he placeth the *Arimaspi*, and in the continent of *America Mexicana* hee seateth the *Hyperborei*: They which list to haue recourse to his learned discourses of this argument. *Porcacchi* [p] telleth of some Scythians, which hanged their dead on trees (as the Colchi of old, and some Tartarians are still reported to do) esteeming it a disgrace to be buried in the earth. The Tautici buried with their Kings some of their best friends. The DERBICES [q] feasted with the flesh of their kinsmen, which were seuentie yeeres old: the women at that age they strangled, and after buried. The SACIANS [r] straitly imprisoned such as attained to that age, and their famished them. Some say they laid them amongst the woods [s], and obserued what became of them; esteeming them (as is said before of the Persians) highly honoured, and next to a canonizing, whom the Birds tare with their talons. In the next degree of happinesse, whom Dogs or wilde beasts praied on: but beneath all disasters and disaduentures, which could find neither the one nor the other, to become vnto them such enemies-friends. The TIBARENI [t] crucifie those old men, which they haue beft loued. The HERVLES being sicke or old, were placed by their kindred on a pile of wood, and there by another, which was not of that kinne, slaine with a dagger, who being descended, the pile was fired. His wife was forced to hang her selfe, or else to abide perpetuall infamie. But I am loth to burie you in these burialll Rites.

The Scythians punished [u] no fault more seuerely then theft. They would make themselues drunken with the smoake of hearbs burnt in the fire. They sware *by the Kings Throne, by their Sword, and by the Wind* [x]. When they had sacked Athens, and piled a heape of bookes to the fire, which others had compiled with studious paines, one of the companie dissuaded burning of them lest that the Greekes neglecting the *Muses*, would become Martiall. [c] They doubled their numbers at foure, as we doe at ten, thtough vnskilfulnesse in numbring.

[k] *Garop.* thinks (& I with him) that these Amazons were but the wiues which exercised armes, and followed warfare with their husbands.

[l] *Diodor. Sicul. 2. cap. 11.*

[m] The Amazons are still one Nation, further then the relaters or their Authors haue trauelled. In two places of Asia, two of Africa, two of America; the Amazons haue beene till that mencome there and found none.

[n] *Sol. 21.*

[o] *Garop. Bec. l. 9. pag. 1034.*

[p] *Porc. Funer. Antichi.*

[q] *Oct. Var. hist. lib. 4. cap. 1.* calls them *Berbicce*, where he saith also that the Sardoan custome was to kill their old men with clubs, *Et lib. 3. cap. 34.* That the *Cey* being old, at a seeleemne feast or sacrifice, ended their age with a draught of Hemlocke.

[r] *Alexab. Alex. lib. 3. cap. 12.*

[s] *Zonar. Ann. tom. 2.*

[t] *Plin. de trad. disci. 2.*

[u] *Sol. cap. 53. Plin. l. 2. vt Dionys.* Calls them ὑδρεῖς βαρβαρικὰ ἔθνη.

[x] *Io. Boemus. lib. 2. cap. 9.*

Strabo lib. 15.

§. IIII.

Of the SERES.

WE might proceed further in these cold Scythian narrations, if the deepe Snowes, long Desarts, beastly Men, and man-kind beasts, Men-eaters, and other monstrous aduentures in the way, did not make it both perplexed and dangerous. Leaving therefore these horrid and vncouth Nations: the first ciuill Countrie Eastward is the [a] *Seres*, the quietest and mildest of men, fleeing the commerce and trafficque with other Nations; bartering yet with such Nations as resort to them, not valuing wares Mutheter, nor Hailes, nor Pestilence, nor such like plagues. A woman after conception, or in her putgation, is not desired. None eateth vncleane flesh; none knoweth sacrifices, but euerie one is iudge to himselfe of that which is right. They [x] tell, that they liue two hundred

dred yeeres, that the Common-wealth is gouerned by a Councell of fiue thousand, euery one of whom findeth an Elephant to the Common-wealth. They haue this name of *Sera* the chiefe Citie, by *Ptolomey* [y] placed in 177. 15. and 38. 36. This Region he limiteth on the West with Scythia *extra Imaum*; on the East, with *Terra incognita*; and likewise on the North (here some place the Promontorie *Tabin*, there the Easterne Ocean) on the South with part of India *extra Gangem*. Our silkes haue the name of this Region, where it is made of a most fine woull, growing on the leaues of trees: *Dionys.* saith, of flowers of the earth. *Tam multiplici opere*, saith PLINY, *tam longinquo orbe petitur vt in publico matrona transluceat.* This *Serica*, [x] *Castaldus* calleth *Cataio*: and so doe most of our new writers. *Orosius* [a] numbreth thians, and from thence Westward to the Riuer Tanais thirtie foure. The Region betwixt Albania and the Caspian, he attributeth to the Amazons. The [b] *Seres* are supposed to inhabite the Countrey now called *Cathay*, which name *Niger* deriueth from a Scythian Nation, called *Chata*. They had a law against Idolatrie, & worship of Images. They had no Temples.

y *Ptol. l. 6. c. 16.*

x *Cast. ad Oriel. Thes.*

a *Oros. l. 1. c. 1.*

b *Dom. Niger. Asiæ com. 8.*

CHAP. XI.

Of the Tartarians, and of Diuers Nations which they Subdued; with their Pristine Rights.

THe names of *Scythia* and *Sarmatia*, are now together with those Nations swallowed vp and drowned in that Tartarian deluge, which about foure hundred yeeres since, with a sudden torrent ouerwhelmed the greatest part of Asia; that we speake not of Europe, the heart whereof, quaked and trembled with feare of this Tempest. From Rome did Pope [a] *Innocent* the fourth send Embassadors, by entreaties to preuent their Armes, when as they had alreadie ouerrunne (besides those Countries which still beare their name) Russia, Polonia, Silesia, Moratuia, Hungaria, euen as farre as Austria. So farre was the huge vnwealdie Empire of [c] *Alexander*, or of the Romans, short of the Tartarian greatnesse, that the expedition of some *one* [b] of *the Subiects* of this Empire, hath pierced as farre into the West, as euer *Alexander* into the East, and that happily among more resolute courages, then the Persians or Indians, effeminated with wealth and Peace, could affoord: and *Tamerlane* alone some ages after (if wee credit that Historie [c] of his life, translated out of the Arabike) subdued and obtayned more (besides his owne inheritance) then all that which the Romanes had atchieued in that eight hundred yeeres and vpwards, wherein their Empire was growing to the full: but of him afterwards.

a *Vincent. Bellaux. spec. Hist. lib. 30.*

b *Bathu.*

c *Albagen. Arab. of the life of Tam. plane.*

§. I.

Of the beginning of the Tartarian Nation.

THe name *Tartar* is proper to a Riuer in Mongull, from whence it was deriued to the people inhabiting neere the same, which after gaue both name and lawes to so great a part of the world. For thus writeth *Ioannes* [d] *de Plano Carpini*, which was sent Embassador to the Tartarian Court, from Pope *Innocent*, *Anno* 1246. There is a Countrey in the East part of the world called *Mongol*: which had sometimes foure sorts of Inhabitants: *Teka-Mongol*, that is, the great Mongols; *Sumorgul*, that is, water-Mongols; these called themselues [e] *Tartars*, of a Riuer which runneth thorow their Countrey, named *Tartar*: the third *Merkas*, the fourth *Metrit*. These all were alike in person and language, but diuided amongst themselues into seuerall Prouinces, and vnto seuerall Princes. In the land of *Teka-Mongol*, was [f] *Cingis*, who *began to bee a mightie hunter before the Lord*: for he learned to steale men. He ranged into other Countries, taking as many captiues as he could, and ioyned them vnto himselfe. Also he allured the men of his owne Countrey vnto him, who followed him as their Ring-leader to doe mischiefe. Then began he to warre vpon the Sumongols or Tartars, and slew their Captayne, and after many conflicts subdued them to himselfe, and brought them all into bondage. Afterward he vsed their helpe against the Merkats, whom also hee vanquished in battell. Proceeding from thence, hee fought against the Metrites, and vanquished them also. *Naimani* hearing that *Cingis* was thus exalted, greatly disdayned thereat: for they had a great and mighty Emperour, vnto whom all the fore-

d *Io. de Plano Carpini apud Hak. tom. 1. Mar. Sanut. l. 3. fat. 13. c. 3.*

e *Tatari vocant, id est, exules, Mercat.*

f *Chingis secund. Vincentium in Spec. Hist. Cengius, Haiton. Sec. Lud. Reg. Lampadius in melisse. etc. Niceph. Greg. Hist. Rom. lib. 3. calls him Zitzschan.*

foresaid Nations payed tribute. Whose sonnes (when hee was dead) succeeded him in his Empire. Howbeit, being yong and foolish, they knew not how to gouerne the people, but were diuided, and fell at variance among themselues. These inuaded *Cingiú* his Countrey, putting the Inhabitants to the sword, but were after ouerthrowne by the Mongols, and either slaine or made captiues.

g G Botero Ben. h Ortel. Theat.

Some g fetch the Tartarian pedigree from the ten Tribes of Israel, which *Salmanasar* carryed captiues: and in their Maps h place hords of Danites, Nepthalites, &c. in the furthest Northerly and Easterly bounds of Asia; which yet are a great part of the world, not only from Media (whither those people were conueyed) but from any part of the Assyrian Empire. (The King of Tabor, or Tybur, in these parts, is said to haue come into France, to *Francis* the French King about the yeare 1540. and was after at Mantua by *Charles* the Emperor burned, for secret sollicitation of him and other Christian Princes to Iudaisme.) And *Opmeeru* i reporteth of that their iourney passing thorow Euphrates, miraculously staying his streame (to wonder at the vanitie of Writers) when they went into a Region called *Asparch*, which was a yeere and a halfes trauell, there to keepe their Law; where neuer before had beene any habitation. But these things haue small probabilitie.

i Opmeés Chro. in An. M. 3433.

M. Paulus k (who with his Father and Vncle liued many yeeres in the Court of the great *Chan*, aboue three hundred yeeres since) saith, that they dwelled at first (if such wandring may be so called) in the North, where they had no Lord ouer them, but payed tribute to a great Signor (there called *Vncam*, and here in these Countries *Presbyter Iohn*) to whom they payed the tenth of their beasts. But this *Vncam*, or *Presbyter Iohn* fearing their numbers every where multiplying, deuised to disperse them through the World: which the Tartars perceiuing, with ioynt consent forsooke their former habitation, and departed thence farre off into the North, denying further tribute vnto *Vncam*.

k Cap. 41. apud. Ram. (The Latine Copie of M. Paul. is very vnperfect) G. Mercat. tab. Vn. Mirhon. recites Chingiú his pedigree, &c.

After they had there continued a certayne time, they chose to their King about the yeere 1162. one which was called *Cingiú Can*, who ruled them with such modestie and iustice, that they loued and feared him as a god, his fame reducing all the other Tartars in other parts vnder his obedience. He thus strengthened, weary of those desarts, commanded them to arme themselues with bowes, and other weapons, and began to inuade and conquer Cities and Prouinces to his subiection, the principall inhabitants whereof hee carryed with him, kindly entertayning them, leauing such discreete Gouernours in the same, that the people were secured in their persons and goods. When he had thus subdued about nine Prouinces, he sent his Embassador to l *Vncam*, to demand his daughter in marriage: which *Vncam* with much indignation and many threatnings denying, *Cingiú* assembling his forces, matched against him, and by the way enquired of his Astrologers and Diuiners touching his successe. They taking a greene reed, cleft it a sunder, placing the parts thereof a good distance one from another, and writ vpon the one the name of *Vncam*, and *Cingiú* on the other; telling the King, that whiles they were reading their coniuring charmes, these reeds would fight together, and the victory should remaine with him whose reede got the better: which accordingly came to passe in the fight of the Armie: *Cingiú* his reed ouercomming the other, as after *Cingiú* himselfe did *Vncam*, whom he slew in the field, and possessed his daughter and state, wherin he continued sixe yeeres conquering Cities and Kingdomes, and at last was wounded at a Castile called Thaigin, in the knee, whereof he dyed, and was buryed in Mount Altay.

l Vncam subdued.

The next Emperour (after his account) was *Cin Can*; the third, *Baythu Can*; the fourth, *Ailau* the brother of *Mangu*; *Esu Can*, the fifth; *Mengu Can*, the sixth; the seauenth *Cublai Can*, who not only inherited what the former had conquered; but in the sixtieth yeere of his raigne subdued in a manner the rest of (those parts of) the World. The word *Can* signifieth Emperour. Wheresoeuer these Emperours dye, they are buryed in Altay aforesayd; they which carry him killing all they meete within the way, bidding them goe to the other world to serue their Emperor. For this end they also slay the best horses, to serue their dead Lord in another world. When *Mangu Can* was buried, there were more then ten thousand men slaine by the Souldiers which conueyed him. In this Historie of *M. Paul*, obserue that this Catalogue of Emperours is vnsound: for *W. de Rubruquis* in *Bathyes* time, was at the Court of *Mangu Can*, to whom *Bathy* was subiect. *Occoday* is left out, and *Esu* put in. The cause of this errour seemeth to bee, the giuing of this name *Can* to the chiefe Dukes, as *Bathy*, &c. and the want of exact written Chronicles in those times amongst them.

§. II.

§. II.

The great Exploits of CINGIS *or* CANGIVS *the first* Tartarian *Emperor.*

FOr further light into this Historie, I thinke it not amisse to set downe what *Haithon* or *Anthony* the Armenian hath written of the Tartarian beginnings. This our Author was Royally descended in Armenia, where hee liued about three hundred yeeres since, and at the request of Pope *Clement* the fift, writ the Historie of the Tartars, from *Cingis* or *Cangius* till *Mango Can*, taken out of the Tartarian Histories: the rest he partly saw with his eyes, and partly learned of his Vnckle, an eye-witnesse of the same, who had attended on *Haithon* the Armenian King, in the great *Cans* Court. The Countrey where the Tartars first dwelt (saith [m] *Haithon*) is beyond the Mount Belgian, where they liued like beasts, hauing neither letters, nor Faith, nor Habitation, nor Souldierie, nor reputation among their Neighbour-Nations. There were of them diuers Nations, called by one common name *Mogli*, which were diuided into seuen principall Tribes, whose names were *Tartar*, *Tangut*, *Cunat*, *Talair*, *Soniek*, *Monghi*, *Tebeth*. These all being subiects to their Neighbours, a poore old man being a Smith (who, as they beleeue, was ingendred of the Sun beames) saw in his sleepe an armed man on a white horse, which said vnto him, *O Cangius*, The will of the Immortall GOD is, that thou bee the Gouernour of the Tartarians, and Ruler of the seuen Nations, to free them from their bondage and tribute. This his vision, when he reported to others, they would not beleeue him, vntill that the night following, the chiefe men amongst themselues saw the same man, with command from the immortall GOD, to yeeld obedience vnto *Cangius*. This they performed with all reuerence, and spread in the midst of them a black felt, with a seat thereon, on which the seuen Princes or chiefe men placed *Cangius*, calling him *Can*, that is, Emperor, and kneeled before him. This happily was then the most sumptuous [n] Throne their State could afford, but continued in the Royall inuestiture of their succeeding Soueraignes, their exceeding Riches and Conquests notwithstanding: at two of which solemnities (saith our Author) I my selfe haue beene present. *Cangius* thus inthronized on his felt, commanded them many things: first, to beleeue the immortall GOD: and from thence forwards, the Tartars began to call vpon the name of the immortall GOD, seeking for his ayde in all their enterprises: secondly, hee commanded to make a generall view of all such as were able to beare armes, appointing Captaines ouer tens, ouer thousands, and ouer ten thousands, which made a full Regiment. Hee commanded also those seuen principall heads of their Tribe, to bereaue themselues of their dignities; and for further triall of their obedience, each of them to bring thither his eldest sonne, and to cut off his head, each with his owne hand: which they refused not to doe, in reuerence to that diuine ordinance, whereby hee was made their Soueraigne. *Cangius* hauing thus made tryall of their fidelitie, subdued many Nations: and one day hauing his horse slaine in battell vnder him, was forsaken of his Tartars, dispayring his recouerie after they saw him fall, and might easily haue beene slaine, had not his enemies through ignorance neglected him, to pursue the rest: which *Cangius* perceiuing, conueyed himselfe into a thicker of shrubs; and when his enemies returned to despoile the dead, an Owle came and sate on the shrub, vnder which *Cangius* was hidden, which caused them not to suspect any to lurke there, and so they departed. He the next night fled to his people; who seeing him, and hearing the order of his escape, gaue thanks to the immortall GOD, who by meanes of that Bird had preserued him. They also had (after this) that [o] Fowle in such reuerence, that it is accounted a happy thing to weare one of her feathers on their heads. *Cangius* afterwards assaulting his enemies, brought vnder, both them, and all the Countries on that side of Belgian. The exact time of these things *Haithon* could not learne, notwithstanding his much enquiry: which he imputeth to their want of letters at that time.

These Countries thus conquered, the armed man appeared to him the second time, and commanded him in the name of the immortall GOD to passe the Mountayne Belgian, and goe towards the West, where he should conquer Kingdomes, Signories and Lands. And that thou mayest be assured that this is the will of GOD, arise and goe with thy people towards the Mountayne, to that part which ioyneth on the Sea: There thou shalt dismount, and turne thee toward the East, and kneeling downe nine times, thalt worship the immortall GOD, and he which is Almightie shall shew thee the way by which thou mayest commodiously passe. *Cangius* presently commands his people with their wiues and families to accompanie him in this enterprise; and when they were come to the Sea, forgat not with his followers to performe those nine worships; and staying there that night in his prayers, the next day

m The Tartars Legend of *Cangius*, *Hait. Armen.*

n A fell the Tartarian throne in their Coronation.

o The Owle obscured.

day hee saw that the Sea had gone nine foot backe from the Mountayne, and left a spacious way, by which they with all their substance passed Westward. Hence it is that the Tartars ascribe some happinesse to the number of nine, and hee that will offer a present to any Tartarian Signor, must offer nine things, which custome they vse in their tributes vnto this day, as Master *Ienkinson* found by experience to his cost. *Cangius* after many aduentures, and many lawes which of him were called *Iasack Cangis Can*, hauing first persuaded his twelue sons (wherein I thinke his nephewes were also reckoned) to concord, bidding each of them to bring him an arrow, which together, none of them, asunder, the least of them might easily breake; hee dyed.

p The number of nine.

This Historie of *Cingis* or *Cangius*, I haue thus fully related, for knowledge both of the beginnings of their State and Religion: and if these Visions seeme fabulous, yet might *Cingis* in his subtilty deale with them, as *Mahomet* with his Arabians, or *Numa* with the Romans; the one making *Gabriel*, the other *Ægeria*. Authors of their policies: and what hee in part pretended, might by Fame and Time be augmented. Although I see not, but that this History of *Cingis* may as well be credited, as that of *Alexander* in *Iosephus*, to whom appeared one in the habite of the Iewish High Priest, commanding him to vndertake that enterprise, with promise of assistance; for which cause, he whom the World worshipped as a King, and as a God, did worship, himselfe prostrate before *Iaddus* the High Priest. And the same Author also saith, that the Pamphylian Sea diu deed it selfe to giue way vnto his Macedonian Souldiers, hauing no other way to destroy the Empire of the Persians.

10

q *Antiq. lib. 11.*
r *Ios. Antiq. lib. 2. in fine.*

20

To returne to our Fryer with whom we began; he reporteth s that *Cingis*, after his victorie against the *Naimani*, wasted vpon the Kythayans, where hee was ouerthrowne, and all the Nobles, except seuen, slaine. Hauing breathed himselfe a while at home, hee inuaded the Huyti, a Christian people of the Nestorian Sect, whom they ouer-came, and receiued of them Letters, of which before they were ignorant. After them, he subdued the Satoyur, Karaaites, and Huditat. This done, he waged Warre against the Kythayans or Cathayans, whose Emperour he shut vp into his chiefe Citie, where *Cingis* besieged him, till that Victuall fayling in his Campe, he commanded that they should eate euery tenth man of the Armie. They of the Citie fought valiantly with Engines, Darts, Arrowes: and when Stones wanted, they threw Siluer, especially molten siluer. But by vnder-mining the Tartars made way from the Armie into the middest of the Citie, where they issued vp, and opened the gates by force, and slew the Citizens. This is the first time that the Empetour of the Kathayans being vanquished, *Cingis Chans* obtayned the Empire. The men of Kaytay t are Pagans, hauing a speciall kinde of writing by themselues, and, as it is reported, the Scriptures of the Old and New Testament. They haue also recorded in Histories the liues of their fore-fathers, and they haue Eremites, and certayne houses made after the maner of our Churches, which in those dayes they greatly reported vnto. They say, that they haue diuers Saints also, and they worship one God. They adore and reuerence *Christ Iesus* our *Lord*, and beleeue the Article of eternall life, but are not baptized. They doe also honorably esteeme and reuerence our Scriptures. They loue Christians, and bestow much almes, and are a very courteous and gentle people. They haue no beards, and they agree partly with the Mongals in the disposition of their countenance. There are not better Artificers in the world. Their Countrey is exceeding rich in Corne, Wine, Gold, Silke, and other commodities. Of their writing, Fryer *Bacon*, from the Relations of *W. Rubruquis*, which liued in his time, and *Rubruquis* himselfe (as in the Manuscript thereof appeareth) testifie that it was done with pencils and in characters: as the *Chinois* and *Iaponites* still vse. The *Iugres* write from the top to the bottome of the page, and from the left hand to the right: the men of Tebeth as wee doe: those of *Tangat* from the right hand to the left, but multiply their lines vpwards. The Cathayans (saith *Rubruquis*) are little men, and speake thorow the nose. They are good artificers, the sonne succeeding in the fathers trade. Their Physitians deale with heardes, but not with vrines. There were amongst them Nestorians, who had a Bishop residing in Segni. Their bookes were in Syriake: themselues ignorant of that tongue. They were drunkards, vsurers, and some of them had many wiues. They washed their lower parts when they entred their Churches: they feast and eat flesh on Fridayes, as the Saracens. Their Bishop visits them seatce once in fiftie yeeres. And then all their Males, euen infants also, are ordred Priests. The Idolaters amongst them are more moderate, some of which weare yellow broad cowles: some ate Eremites, and leade an austere life in woods and hills. Cathaya had not then any vines, but they selues drunken with that pleasant Liquor: out of whose neckes they tooke the bloud wherewith they died purple.

s *Io. de Plano. Carpini.*

t Kytayans, and their Religion.

30

40

50

60

After the conquest of Cathay, *Cyngis* sent his sonne *Thossut Can* (for so they termed him also) against the people of Comania, whom hee vanquished. Another sonne he sent against the

the Indians, who subdued India Minor. These Indians are the blacke Saracens [u], which are also called Æthiopians. Thence hee marched to fight against Christians, dwelling in India Maior, whose King was commonly called *Presbyter Iohn*, who by a stratagerme repelled them out of his dominion. In travelling homewards, the said Armie of the Mongals came vnto the Land of Buirthabeth, the inhabitants whereof are Pagans, and conquered the people in battaile. This people haue a strange custome: When any mans father dieth, hee assembleth all his kindred, and they eat him. They haue no beards, but with anirion instrument plucke out the haires, if any grow. *Cyngis* himselfe went vnto the Land of Kergis, which they then conquered not, And in his returne home his people suffered extreme famine: and by chance finding the fresh entrailes of a beast, they cast away the dung, sod it; and brought it before *Cyngis*, and did eate thereof. Hereupon *Cyngis* enacted, That neither the blood, nor the entralles, nor any other part of a beast, which might bee eaten, should be cast away, saue onely the dung. Hee was afterward slaine by a thunderclap, leaving behind him foure sonnes; the first *Occoday*, the second *Thossut Can*, the third *Thinday*, the name of the fourth is not knowne.

u Blacke Saracens.

§. III.

Of OCCODAY *the next Emperour, and* CVINE CAN.

CYNGIS being dead, *Occoday* was chosen Empetour. He sent Duke *Bathy* his nephew, the sonne of *Thossut Can*, against the Countrey of *Altisoldan*, and the people called Bisermini, who were Saracens, but spake the Language of Comania, whom hee subdued. Thence they marched against Orna, a Port Towne on the Riuer Don, where were many Gazarians, Alanians, Russians, and Saracens, which he drowned with the Riuer running thorow the Citie, turning it out of the chanell. Thence they passed into Russia, and made foule hauocke there, destroying Kiou, the chiefe Citie. They proceed against the Hungarians and Polonians, and in their returne inuaded the Morduans, being Pagans, and conquered them in battaile. Then they marched against the people called Bykri, or Bulgaria magna, and vtterly wasted the Countrey. From hence they proceeded towards the North against the people called Bastarci, or Hungaria magna, and hauing conquered them, subdued also the Parossitæ and Samogetæ, thence proceeding vnto the Occan Sea.

Occoday 2. *Tart. imp.*

The *Kergis*.

At the same time *Occoday* sent *Cerpodan* against Kergis, who subdued them in battaile. These are Pagans, hauing no beardes at all. They haue a custome, when any of their fathers die, in token of lamentation, to draw (as it were) a Leather thong ouerthwart their faces, from one eare to the other. Hence hee marched with his forces Southward against the Armenians, which they conquered, with part of Georgia, receiuing tribute of the other part; and from thence into the Dominions of the mightie Soldan, called *Deuruin*, whom they vanquished in fight. And to be shorr, they went on further, facking and conquering euen vnto the Soldan of Aleppo, whose Countries they subdued. They marched against the Caliph of Baldach, and exacted at his hands the daily tribute of foure hundred Byzantines, besides Baldakines, and other gifts. Thus farre of their Conquests out of Frier *Iohn* aforesaid, who was in person with *Bathy*, or *Baydo*, and at the Court of *Cuine* the Emperour.

Haithon x calleth *Baydo* the second sonne of *Occoday*, or *Hoccota Can*, affirming, That hee sent his three sonnes; *Iochi* into the West, as farre as Tygris; *Baydo* towards the North: and *Chagaday* towards the South. Hee sent also one *Baydo* (whither the same, or another) with thirtie thousand horse, against the Soldan of the Turks, whose Realme hee subdued in the yeere 1244. He addeth, That *Baydo* hauing conquered Cumania y, (which hee confineth on the East with the Corasmians, on the West with the Euxine, on the North with Cassia, haply Casan, on the South with the Riuer Etil) he subdued Russia, Gazaria, Bulgaria, and so passing into Austria, following the streame of his victories, in the passage of a great streame was there drowned. His heires succeeded him in the places which he had conquered; which Signotie *Tochay* possessed in *Haythons* time. This Historie of *Baydo* his death is not likely: For *Yvo* of Narbona, in an Epistle to the Archbishop of Burdeaux, recorded by z *Matth. Paris* in the yeere 1243. saith, That in the same present summer they had departed out of Hungarie, and laid siege to Nusser, wherein this *Yvo* then was: and in the yeere 1246. Frier *Iohn* was with the said *Baydo*, who also rehearseth that Hungarian Expedition, and his returne vnto those parts aboue Volga, or Etil. Likewise *William de Rubruquis*, a Frier Minorite, was sent to *Baatu* (so he calleth him) from *Lewes* the French King, in *Anno* 1253.

Occoday 2.

x *Haithon Armen.*

y *Cumania.*

z *Mat. Paris.*

And

a *Mat. à Michou de Sarmat. lib. 1.*

And to this agreeth *Matthias a Michou* a in his Sarmatian Historie, who witnesseth, That in the yeere 1241. the Tartars, vnder *Buthu*, came into Russia, and destroied Kiou, a Citie before stately and beautifull, having in it three hundred Churches and more, very faire, of which some remaine to this day among the shrubs and briers, receptacles for wilde beasts. It was the Seat of the Metropolitan, who had vnder him many Bishops thorow Moldauia, Valachia, Russia, and Muscouia. Hee sent *Peta* into Polonia, who destroied the Countrey, and on Ashwednesday turned Cracouia into ashes, abandoned before both of the Prince and People; and after ouerthrew Duke *Henrie*, and other Noblemen, with the forces of the Countrie assembled against them, together with *Pompo*, the great Master of the Dutch Order in Prussia: in which battaile, a certaine Tartarian Standard-bearer, carrying in a great Standard the Greeke letter X, and on the top of the staffe a blacke and terrible Image, with a long beard, began b with inchantment strongly to shake the head of the Image: whereupon a smoake and cloud of intolerable stinke was presently dispersed ouer the Polonians, and they became heardlesse and vnable to fight. Duke *Henrie*, and Duke *Boleslaus*, and *Pompo*, with the flower of their Nobility, were heere slaine, and the Countrie miserably spoiled. From hence they went into Morauia, where they put all to fire and sword more then a moneth together: and thence to Hungary to *Bathy*, who entred Hungarie with 500000. souldiers; where first ouerthrowing those forces which King *Bela* had sent to prohibite them passage, they after chased the King himselfe, with the power of his Kingdome opposing himselfe against them, out of the field, who fled into Austria, and after into Sclauonia, leauing his Countrey a prey to the Tartars: who making spoile on that side of Danubius, the next Winter passed ouer the Riuer, then frozen, and filled all with bloud and slaughter. *Bathy* sent *Cadan* to pursue the King into Sclauonia, still fleeing before him, who wasted Bosna, Seruia, and Bulgaria. And after two yeeres sackage in Hungarie, they passed by the fennes of Mœotis into Tartaria, and haply had returned to make fresh spoiles in Europe, if the Embassage of Pope *Innocent* had not diuerted their purpose: or rather, that *Occoday* their great *Chan* being about that time poisoned, they were to expect a new Commission from his successour, which was *Cuine*; who when he was installed, euen in the presence of Fryer c *Iohn*, the Popes Legat, erected a Banner against all Kingdomes of the Christians, except they would bee subiect to him: for their intent was to subdue all the world, as *Cyngis Cham* had ordained; and the superscription of his Seale was, *God in Heauen, and* Cuine Chan *vpon Earth, the strength of God, the Seale of the Emperour of all men.* Hee kept his Court vsually in the land of Naymans, the plaines whereof were extended like to the Sea, without the rising of any hill. The cold most eager and sharpe till March, little winde, nor snow, except in the end of Aprill. At Caracarum *Rubruquis* met with an English man borne in Hungaria, which was expert in many languages; his name was *Basilius*. Heere hee found two Mosches and one Church.

b Tartarian Sorcerie.

c *Io. de Plano. C.*

W. Rubruq. M. S

§. IIII.

Of MANGV CAN *and his successor* CVBLAI.

Cuine 3. Imp. Mangu 4. d Haulomus de Tart.

BVt *Cuine* in short time after died, and left the Empire to *Mangu Can*; to whom *Aytonus* d the Armenian King went voluntarily in person, about the yeere 1257. and receiuing gracious entertainement, made vnto him seuen petitions: first, That he and his people should become Christians: secondly, That there should be perpetuall peace betweene the Tartars and Christians: thirdly, That in all Countries conquered by the Tartars, the Churches and Clergie-men of the Christians should bee free from tertitude and tribute: fourthly, That hee would redeeme the Holy Sepulchre and the Holy Land from the Saracens: fifthly, That hee would destroy the Caliph of Baldack: sixthly, That himselfe might haue aid, as neede should require, in his defence, of such Tartars as were neere vnto Armenia: seuenthly, That such parts of Armenia as the Saracens now possessed, and the Tartars should recouer from them, might returne to the Crowne of Armenia. *Mangu-Can* answered, after deliberation with his Nobles, to the first, That himselfe would bee a Christian, and perswade other his subiects, but force none thereunto: and to the rest in order, that his requests in all should be fulfilled, and to that end hee would send his brother *Haolon* into those parts, as is before already shewed. Thus was *Mangu* baptized by a Bishop, then Chauncellor of Armenia, and all his houshold, and many Nobles of both sexes. But before Ierusalem could bee recouered, *Mangu* died, and *Cobila*, or *Cublai Can* succeeded, in whose time *M. Paulus* e was an eye-witnesse of the Tartarian proceedings, who affirmeth, That the *Cublai* exceeded in power, not his predecessours onely, but all the Kingdomes of Christian-

Cublai 5. Imp. e M. Paul. L. 1.

ans and Saracens, although they were ioyned in one. Before hee obtained the Soueraigntie, hee shewed himselfe a valiant Souldier; but after hee was Emperour, hee neuer fought field but once against *Naiam* his vncle, who was able, out of the Prouinces wherein he gouerned, to bring together foure hundred thousand Horse, to whom *Caidu* should haue added a hundred thousand Horse more. These both conspired against their Master and Lord *Cublai*: but before their forces were ioyned, *Cublai* stopping the passages, that none might passe to carrie newes, suddenly assembled, within ten dayes iourney of Cambalu, three hundred and threescore thousand Horse, and an hundred thousand Footmen. With this power riding day and night, he came suddenly on his enemies, and hauing first consulted with his Diuiners, after their manner, gaue the on-set, and tooke *Naiam* prisoner, whom hee strangled betwixt two Carpets, lest the Earth should drinke, or the Sunne should see the bloud of that imperiall family. *Naiam* had beene secretly baptized, and now also had the Crosse for his Banner, which occasioned the Iewes and Saracens to scoffe at the Christians; but *Cublai* vnderstanding hereof, called them all before him, and said, that the Crosse would not helpe such wicked men as *Naiam*, who was a Traitour to his Lord; say yee not therefore, that the GOD of the Christians is vniust, to forsake his followers; for hee is the chiefe Bountie and Iustice. *Cublai* by his Captaines conquered the Kindomes of Mien, Bengala, Mangi, &c. *Anno 1286.*

HONDIVS *his Map of* TARTARIA.

CHAP. XII.

A Continuation of the Tartarian Historie, and the question discussed, whether Cathay and China be the same: and the iourney of BENEDICT GOES *by land from Labor.*

§. I.

Of the Tartarian Succession to our dayes.

2 M. P. l. 2. c. 5. Tamor 6.

AFter [a] *Cublai Can* succeeded *Tamor Can*, sonne to *Cingis*, the eldest sonne of *Cublai*: in whose time *Haithon* (which then liued) saith, That there were besides, three great Tartarian Princes, but subiect to the great *Can*: *Chapar*, which ruled in Turquestan, who was able to bring into the field foure hundred thousand Horsemen armed: *Hotchtay*, in the Kingdome of Cumania, who was able to arme six hundred thousand horsemen to the wars, but not so resolute as the former. *Carbanda*, the third, ruled in Tauris, able to assemble an Army of three hundred thousand Horse, well prouided. And all these liued in the Westerne bounds of the Tartarian Empire, euerie way inferiour in wealth and numbers to the Southerly and Easterly parts thereof.

Tarik Mecond a Persian, in his Catalogue of the Cans or Tartarian Emperours, calleth *Cublai*, by a transposition of the syllables, *Vlaku*. For thus doth hee recite their names, with the yeeres of their coronations. *Chinguis* in the yeere of the Hegira 602. *Oikay Khaon* 636. *Gayuk Khaon* 643. *Manchu Khaon* 644. *Vlaku Khaon* 657. *Haybkay Khaon* 663. *Hamed Khan* or *Nicudar Oglan* 680. *Argou Khon* 683. *Ganiaru Khan* 690. *Bukukhan* 693. *Gazunkhan* 694. *Alsaptukhan* 703. *Sulton Abu-sayd Bahader Khan* 716. These from *Cublai* or *Vlaku*, are the Cans or Vice-royes of Persia and those parts adioyning, and not the great Cans themselues. But of these and of *Tamerlane* and his sonne, wee haue before related at large, in the fourth Persian Dynastie. I haue seene the transcript of a letter sent by King *Edward* the Second, written 1307. in the first yeere of his reigne, October 16. to *Dioloietus* King of the Tartars, against *Mahomet*, and in behalfe of *William Liddensis Episcopus* and others to preach to his people. But these Tartars it seemeth were of the neerer Mahumetans, and not the great Can of Cathay.

EX SCRIPTORES BIBLIOTH.

Since *Tamor Can*, we haue not so continued a Historie of their Empire and Emperours as before, and yet wee haue had succeeding testimonies a long time of their State and Magnificence, but neither so diligent obseruers, nor so exact Writers as the former: besides that, their Histories seeme in some things more fabulous. Of this later sort are *Odoricus* [b], a Friar, which liued three yeeres in the Emperors Court, and trauelled as farre as Quinsay, which died in the yeere 1331. Sir *John Mandeuile* [c] our Country-man spent many yeere in those Countries, a few yeeres after *Odoricus*, and writ the Historie of his Trauels, in the reigne of *Edward* the third of England; *Echiant Can* being then Emperour of the Tartars: in which, if many things seeme not worthy credit, yet are they such as *Odoricus*, or some others, not of the worst Authors had before committed to writing, and haply by others after his time, in those dayes when Printing wanted, foisted into his booke. Once, hee setteth downe the distances, and passages of Countries so exactly, as I think he could not then haue learned, but by his owne Trauels. After his time [d] *Nicholo di Conti*, a Venetian, trauelled thorow India and Cathay, after twentie fiue yeeres returning home: and going to *Eugenius* the fourth, then Pope, to bee absolued, because hee had denied the Christian Faith to saue his life, his enioyned penance was, truly to relate to *Poggius* the Popes Secretarie his long peregrination: This was in the yeere 1444. About the same time [e] *Iosafa Barbaro*, a Venetian, in the yeere 1436. had learned of a Tartarian Embassadour (which had beene at Cambalu, and returning by Tana, was entertained of the said *Iosafa*) some particulars touching the great Cham and Cathay, some part whereof he heard after confirmed by the mouth of *Vsun-cassan*, the mightie Persian King, in the yeere 1474. So that from the yeere 1246. thus farre we haue continued succession of the Cathayan Historie, besides that which an Arabian [f] hath written in this Historie of *Tamerlane*, now extant in English.

b Odoricus ap. Hak.

c Sir Iohn Mandeuile.

d Nic. di Conti. ap. Ramus. Ios. Barbaro.

e Ios. Barbaro.

f Albacen Arab.

§. II.

§. II.

The question discussed whether Cathay be the same with China.

AM the more curious in naming these Authors, lest any should thinke that which is written of this people to bee fabulous (all these, in a manner, concurring in the most substantiall things) and because many confound [h] the Countries and affaires of China and Cathay. The cause of both which opinions may bee, because that in these last hundred yeeres and more, in which more of the World, then euer before hath been discouered, yet nothing of moment is found out of this Countrie or People. Whereunto may bee answered, That since, diuers of the great Tartarian Lords, before subiects to the great *Cham*, hauing made themselues absolute Lords of their seuerall States, the way hath not bin so open to passe, being otherwise of it selfe exceedingly both long, difficult, and dangerous: and the adioyning Princes recouering themselues from Tartarian seruitude, will neither suffer their owne to goe out, nor others freely to enter their Dominions; as the Muscouite, the King of China, and others. Master *Ant. Ienkinson*, which went as farre thither-ward as Bogharte, could not passe further for warres in those parts. Neither haue any gone thither by Sea. And yet euen in this time wee haue not altogether wanted witnesses. *Ludouicus* [k] *Vertomannus*, an hundred yeeres since, in Bengala, met with diuers Christians, who affirmed, That there were in their Countrie diuers Signiors, Christians, subiect to the great *Cham*. These were whitemen, of a Citie called Satnau. In M. *Hakluits* [l] painefull labours we may reade of diuers passages out of Russia and Persia by Carauans into Cathay. *Ramusius* also, in his Annotations [m] before *M. Paulus*, telleth of one *Chaggi Memet*, a Persian Merchant, who had beene at Campion and Succuir in Catay (*Damircan* then reigning) and had acquainted him with diuers particulars thereof.

Also in the Epistle of [n] *Emanuel Carualius*, a Iesuite, dated at Malaca in Ianuarie, 1599. is contained the transcript of *Ierome Xauerius* his letter from Lahor, the Citie Royall of the great Mogor, dated August. 1598. Wherein the Iesuit relateth, That whiles he was in conference with the Prince, there entred into the Palace an olde man of *Mahomets* Religion, threescore yeeres of age, who affirmed to the Prince, That hee had come from Xatai by the way of Mecca. Presently some which knew him, affirmed, That hee had distributed in almes an hundred thousand pieces of gold at Mecca. The Prince asking if it were so, hee affirmed, That he did it because he was old, and could not long liue, nor carrie those things away with him. Being demanded of the State of Xatai, he answered, That he had there liued thirteene yeeres in the Citie Royall, Ximbalu, the King whereof was verie mightie, and had in his Empire a thousand and fiftie Cities, some of them verie populous. He said, he had often seene the King, with whom no man speaketh but by a supplication, nor is answered but by an Eunuch. Being asked how he had accesse thither, he answered, That he sustained the person as well of the Embassadour of the King of Caygar, as of a Merchant: and being detained in the first City by the Magistrate, he shewed his Commission, and post was presently sent to the King who returned in a moneth, riding nintie or an hundred miles a day, with change of Horses, bringing him letters of admission. No man was troublesome to him in the way. They punish theeues seuerely (which also is obserued of the Cathayans in *Iosapha Barbaro*, and in *Marcus Paulus* aforesaid.) The people he affirmed were white, comely, long-bearded, and very personable. In Religion he said they were *Iesuites* (or Christians, professors of Iesus) and some among them *Mulauites*, or Iewes, and many Mahometans, who hoped to draw the King, being a Christian, to their Sect. The Iesuit addeth, That he further conferred with him another day about their Religion, who told him, that they had many Churches, and some very great many Images, both painted and carued, especially of the Crucifixe, which they religiously worship. Euerie Church hath his Priest much reuerenced. The Priests liued single, and kept Schooles, wherein they instructed the youth, which should after take Orders: they had also one among the Priests supereminent, and were all maintained at the Kings costs, as were the Churches also both built and repaired. They ware blacke clothes, and on Holy-dayes, red; with Caps much like the Iesuites, but greater. He added, That hee had often seene the King go to Church: That there were many of both Sexes, which in Cloysters liued a Monasticall life, some obseruing also a single life in their owne houses. He reported, That the Countrie was rich, and had in it many Mines of Siluer: the King had foure hundred Elephants, which they said were brought from Malaca. And from Pegu [o] also hee said, that Merchants resorted thither, which voyage was half a yeere (it seemeth thorow the Sea betweene China and Iapan.) *Xauerius* addeth, That while he was at Caximir, he heard of many Christians in Rebat, a Kingdome ioyning to Xatai, who had Churches, Priests, and Bishops, to whom he had written three wayes in the Portugall and the Persian Tongues.

h *Ludouicus Reg. Literæ Lapponice. Contugo Contugh. in Thes. Pala. quæs. 4. &c.*

i *Hak. tom. 1. pag. 303.*

k *L. Vertoman.*

l *Tom. 1. pag. 336. & seq.*

m *Ramusius.*

n *Emanuel Carual. Epist. vide eadem ap. Purchas. lib. 4. del. Pilgrim des Indes Orient. cap. 16.*

This agreeth with *Vertomans* report.

The greatest obiection against this History, that distinguisheth Cathay from China, is the report of *Iacob Pantogia* [o], a Iesuite, in a letter dated from Paquin, the Seate Royall of China, in March 1602. in which hee blameth a double errour of our Maps, both for making China larger then it is, and for adioyning to the same this questioned Kingdome of Cathay, whereas (saith he) China, or Sinay, is Cathay, and this Paquin, where now wee liue, is Cambalu. This hee proueth by the incredible riches which he here saw, agreeing to that which is commonly reported of Cathay, and by the testimonie of certaine Moores and Mahumetans, whom he found in Paquin, which vsually, euerie fifth [p] yeere, resort hither vnder shew of an Embassage, and paying of Tribute; indeed for gaine, by way of traffique: (their tribute meane while obtaining sufficient retribution out of the Kings Coffers, who sustaineth them and theirs, all the time of their abode in China, at his owne costs, besides other gifts.) Of these Merchants, which resorted hither out of Persia and the Countrie of the Mogores, the Iesuites by enquiry learned, that this Countrie of China was called Cathay, and had no other name in Persia, and among the Mogores, nor did they know any other Countrie so called. And asking further, how they called the Citie Paquin, they answered, Cambalum hereupon the Iesuit concludeth without all scruple, as is said. And again, in the Chinian Epistles, dated 1607. is reported, That [q] *Benedictus Goes* (sent fiue yeeres after of the Iesuites by the way Mogor to finde out Cathay) remained in the borders of China, in the Province of Xanti, from whence he writ, *Anno* 1606. That he could finde no other Catay, then the Kingdome of China. This report furtherseth *Pantogioes* opinion.

But if it be not sufficient to oppose the former report of *Xanier*, to these of *Pantogia* and *Goes*, and the different qualities of the Chinians and Cathayans (as in their proper place shall follow) both in things priuate and publike, Diuine and Humane; I answere, That the name of Cambalu is by *Marcus Paulus* [r] and others interpreted, *The Citie of the Prince*, or *Cam*. And *Pereira* [s] interpreteth Pachin, or Paquin, where the King of China alwaies resideth, to signifie the Towne of the Kingdome [t], as he was there aduertised, the same signification (in manner) remaining to the diuers appellations in differing languages, as a common name to be applied to any Citie [u] Royall.

Now for custome of both, whereas in China theeues and malefactors are seldome executed (and none hath power to execute any, without speciall Commission from the King) but either they die by stripes, hunger, or imprisonment, except some few once in a yeere: *Marcus Paulus* and *Iosafa Barbaro*, from the relation of eye-witnesses affirme, That in Cambalu was such sudden and rigorous execution of Iustice, that one taking a iarre of Milke from a womans head, and beginning to drinke, vpon the womans out-cry was apprehended, and presently with a sword cut in sunder, that the bloud and milke issued together; a Tartarian Embassador affirming both this, and that he had seene the like execution vpon another, for taking a piece of Bayes from a woman, so chopped in twaine. But the relation of the Chinian and Cathayan differing Rites will further yeeld scruples in this case. As for the name of Cathay, ascribed to China by the Moores, I answere, That *William de Rubruquis* [x], who was in the Court of *Mangu Can*, supposeth Cathay to be *Serica Regio* described by *Ptolomey* farre more Northerly, then the Iesuite reporteth China to bee, by his owne Astrolabicall obseruation. And to these *Seres* [y] *Ptolomey* ioyneth the *Sinæ*, or Chinois, on the South, and our later Geographers generally concurre in this opinion. Hee also which readeth [z] *Ioannes de Plano Carpini* shall finde, that the Tartars conquered the Kara-Kitai, or blacke Cathayans, and then the Emperour of Kithai, bewndermining his Citie, as is said, in the daies of *Cyngis*; and yet a great part of Kitai remained still vnconquered, and withstood his forces; and namely that part which is neerest the Sea. And this wealthy countrie of great Cathaya hath many Prouinces, the more part whereof doe yet withstand the Moals or Tartars (it is the last Printed period in *William de Rubriquis.*) I hence gather that the name Kitai was applied to a great part of the North-East of Asia, happily no lesse generall to many Regions on that side, then India to the Southerly parts. And why may not the name of Kathay, as well by the Mogores and Persians, bee giuen to the North parts of China (one parcell of the North-East of Asia) as the name of India, not onely to so great a part of Asia, but to America also, which was called India, because the first Discouerers thought they had encountered the Indian Continent? And these parts of China, may much fitter retaine the name of Cathay, to which Empire it had so long been subiect, and by the Cathayan conquest was first knowne to our world. Since my first Edition I met with the other part of *Rubriquis*, which Master *Hakluit* (then whom I know none in this kind more industrious) copied out of an entire booke in the Librarie of Bennet College in Cambridge. Where betweene Cataya and India he placeth a Sea: which fitly agreeth to the Chinian Map, made by the Chinois themselues, who paint a great Bay or Gulfe of the Sea betwixt the Northern parts of China, which we reckon to Cathaia, and the Southerne which may be accounted to India.

o *Iacob Pantogia.*

p *Goes* saith fixe.

q *Bened. Goes.*

r *Marc. Paulus lib. 2. cap. 7.*

s *Galeotto Pereira vide notes Chin. Pequim fig.*

t *Trigautius Borealem Cuilum, ad similitudinem australis quæ dicitur Nanquin.*

u *Lit. Soc. Anno. Anno 1603.*

x *Wil. de Rupr. Hak. tom. 1.*

y *Ptol. l. 6. c. 16.*

z *Io. de Plano Carp. cap. 5.*

India. Further, hee addeth, That all the Nations of Great Cathaya (which Epithete is not a little to bee obserued) are situate amongst the Caucasean hils, on the North side, euen to the Easterne Sea.

But they knew no countrie else so named! True [e]; for the Lawes of the Cathayans forbidding egresse of the Natiues and ingresse of Aliens, and a more forcible law of Mountains and Desarts, wilde beasts, and wilder men; the manifold smaller and more beggerly Segniorieies betweene, euerie one challenging their ninth (if not themselues confiscating, or theirs robbing all) now in so long a space, may burie euen the name and knowledge of the Great *Can*, whereas neither Armes of Princes, nor trafficque of Subiects can open any new, or retaine the olde notice of Nations. What dreames did the West conceiue of the East in Asia, and South in Africke, till the Armies first, and Merchants after, of the Carthaginians, Macedonians, and Romanes discouered them? And yet how did those floods of barbarous people afterwards drowne with barbarous ignorance the knowledge of all Arts, and this of Geographie amongst the rest? And till the Tartarians, like a terrible thunder-clap, with the lightning and noyse of their Armies, brought a more sudden then welcome knowledge of themselues to the world[f], who euer in Persia or Assyria had heard of their names, or of diuers people else (and these Cathayans among the rest) first knowne by their conquests? Further the Iesuite himselfe, to Paquin ascribeth iust sortie degrees: and *Marcus Paulus* his Father and Vncle went from Boghar (the altitude whereof Master *Ienkinson* [d] at his being there, obserued to be thirtie nine degrees, and ten minutes: or as [e] *Abilfada Ismael* placeth it, thirtie nine and an halfe, North, and North-East to goe into Cathay. The like course did the same men hold going into Cathay, from Armenia afterwardes with *Marcus* himselfe, [f] *sempre alla volta di Grecco & Tramontana*; whereas a course directly East, or inclining to the South, must haue beene taken, if China had beene Cathay. Neither is it likely that their iourney would haue beene so much letted by Frosts and Snowes. The same may be gathered out of the discourses following in *Marcus Paulus*, [g] where he abutteth the countries in succeeding linkes to Cathay, from the East to the Northwards, and from the North-East declining Westward in reckoning from thence. And whereas *Pantogia* raiseth the most Northerly part of China but to fortie two degrees at the most, wherein, as to an eye-witnesse wee yeeld him credit: How can it stand with reason, how can it be likely that in those temperate climes, the world can yeeld but a few Nations, and those base Moores and Ethnikes, when as a good part of Spaine, halfe Italy, Greece, all France, Germanie, and Hungarie (to omit other wealthy parts of the world) are subiect to the same parallels? And indeed herein *Pantogia* hath well helped vs, whereas our moderne Maps haue caused no small scruple to a diligent obseruer, in placing Cathay, a countrie reported to bee so fertile and ciuill in so Northerly a clime, very indiscreetly [h] raising *Cambalu* to the height of sixtie degrees, and parallellin g Cathay with Norway: which cannot stand with other things thereof reported, howsoeuer the Tartars themselues were happily of a more Northerly climate then this mentioned. Others go not so farre, yet they place *Cambalu* too farre within land, which *Paulus* saith is within two dayes iourney of the Sea. It seemeth that now this great Tattarian Prince (if there be any such) hath no strength at Sea, and therefore is lesse knowne. And herein participate other great and mightie Princes, *Prester Iohn* (so called) of Æthiopia in Africa, and the *Sophi*, and great *Mogor*, in Asia, ranked iustly amongst the greatest Emperours of the world: who hauing some part of their Dominion adioyning to the Sea, make little or no vse thereof. *Abilfada Ismael* a Syrian Prince, who wrote an exact Geographie in Arabike about [i] three hundred yeeres since, placeth *Cambalu* in 144. 8. *Long.* and 35. 25. *Latit.* it may happily bee 45. degrees in Latitude, one Figure being falsified, or else inuerted for 53. And as this Latitude disagreeth from that of Paquin, so the Longitude a great deale more: this confirming this opinion further, that *Chaggi Memet, Mar. Polo, Mandeuil, Odoricus, Nicolo di Conti*, and others, eye-witnesses, speake of China, or Mangi, and of Cathay, as diuers Countries.

And *Farfur* King of Mangi [k] possessed his Countries, now knowne by the name of China, in peace, till *An.* 1269. being counted a richer Countrie then Cathay it self, which was conquered before, if wee vnderstand it properly: and *Cambalu* seemeth to bee the Citie wherein *Cingis* the first *Cham* besieged and tooke the Cathayan Empetour. *Paulus* also mentioneth among the greatest Cities of Mangi, Panghin, and Nanghin, reporting further that Mangi alone had in it a thousand and two hundred great, rich, and illustrious Cities (as much as is reported of whole China, and more) and that after *Cublai Can* had conquered that State, he diuided it into nine tributarie Kingdomes, gouerned by so many Vice-royes vnder him: And these Cities bee fortified with Garrisons, not of the Naturall inhabitants, but of Cathay. And these things ate reported by him, who long liued in these parts, *& non interfuit solum sed etiam præfuit, & quorum pars magna fuit*, possessing the place of Gouernour

e The names of China haue oftentaltered, and so we may thinke of Cathay that sometimes more generall, it is now restrained by the Sarracens (the only trauellers into these parts of China where they trade.

d *Hak.*

e *Abilfada Isfap. Ramusf.*

f *Lib. 1. cap. 1.*

g *Lib. 1. & 1. 2.*

h *Hond. tab.*

i *Ab. Ismael* cited by *Ramusf. vol. 2.*

k *M. P. l. 2. 55.*

vnder the *Can* three yeeres(according to the Tartarian custome)in *Iangui* f one of the chiefe Cities of Mangi, hauing vnder it twentie seuen other Cities; and the whole Prouince of Mangi hee placeth South-East from Cathay. And wherefore doth the King of China alwayes abide in Paquin, in the Northerly part of his Kingdome; but, as all which write hereof affirme, because of the Tartars which from those parts conquered the Kingdome? which if they were so base a people, as *Pantogia* affirmeth, could not be so dreadfull to the Chinois, that their King for their sakes should there make his residence in the skirts and borders of the Kingdome. *Albacen* g a learned Arabian wrote the Historie of *Tamerlanes* life, wherein hee telleth of the great *Cham* of Cambula, and the King of China: as diuers Princes of diuers Countries, one of which accrewed to *Tamerlaine* by marriage of the *Chams* onely daughter, and the other by conquest. What needed such a wall (which I my selfe haue seene drawne in a Map of China, of a verie large forme, and made in China it selfe with Chinian characters, hanging in Master *Hakluits* Chamber at Westminster) made by the Chinois, if the Tartars were not mightie neighbours, especially themselues being so mightie and populous? But it is vnknowne! And who knew that there was such a Kingdome as China an hundred yeeres agoe? Or who hath sayled that way to seeke this, since? And how long was it before it was knowne in our world, that there was such a Prince in the world, as the great *Negus* aboue mentioned, in Æthiopia; especially hee hauing no Ships for Warre or Merchandize, nor many (scarce any) good Hauens by Sea, to make himselfe knowne: and within land Nature hath as it were imprisoned him, barring vp the passages with Mountains and Desarts: which seemeth now to be the case of the Cathayan; furthered by the ealousie of many great Princes, not to admit any Forreiner in; or licence any of theirs to passe out, for feare of innouation. *Sed plenum alea est*, saith h SCALIGER, *de ijs aliquid statuere quæ nobis per caliginem duntaxat nota sunt.* It is hard to determine in these mistie mysteries. Euen as in Nature it falleth out that the Sunne shineth there many houres before it ariseth to vs, so in Historie it may happen that there may shine a Tartarian Sun in Cathay, when as a darke night in this long iniquitie of distance hideth him from our eyes.

Thus haue I argued the question, and well know not which way to determine. If this could any thing further the Iesuiticall vow to the Papacie, I could then suspect this opinion of Nouelties(they indeed being the *Nouatores*, a word which *Serarius* so delights to fixe vpon vs; or *Veteratores*, as *Scaliger* answeres him; *quibus nihil antiquius quàm antiquare antiquitatem*, as *H. Stephanus* obiects to some Lypsian Mimikes:) but in matters of Geographie wee may follow him more safely then in Ouranographie, as neerer of kinne to that Great *Compasser of the Earth*, I know not how to answere many obiections against this Chinian Cathay, but by deniall of truth in Trauellers assertions, some taking too Hyperbolicall and Diabolicall i authoritie: or in the coniectures of Saracens, which, seeing Paganisme in China, so conspire with Popish Imagerie, in selfe-imagined worship: with whites, lights, funerall rites, and other blacke, darke, dead, deuotions, wherein the Chinois and Iesuits seemed alike; thought them of one religion (the Iesuites k owne coniecture:) or that, Time the consumer of all things hath deuoured Cities, Peoples and Religions: or what else fœuer.

If any respect my opinion in this controuersie, I confesse the iournall of *Goes* lately published, and hereafter inserted, hath made mee make a new search, and take a neerer view: and though Time the Father of Truth must determine the question more fully, yet this is for the present my iudgement (if I may so stile it:) That neither they which confound Cathay with China, nor they which wholly separate them are to be followed. *Medio tutissimus ibis.* They seeme in this altercation to let truth fall betweene them, which in my conceit is this, that the present Kingdome of China comprehends the best part of Cathay, besides the ancient Chinian limits, by *Polo* called *Mangi*. For *Mangi* (which is the true China) was by the great *Can* diuided into nine Prouinces or Kingdomes, as *Paulus* (which assisted in that Conquest) relateth. But when *Humvu* expelled the Tartars out of China, hee indeuoured the same in all the best parts of Cathaya (now the Northerly parts of the Chinian Kingdome) where the Tartars were strongest, and had kept their residence. These Northerly parts were gouerned by *Tuulo* his Nephew and Generall of his Forces, who after *Humvu* his desth dispossessed his Sonne, and fixed his vsurped Imperiall seat at *Paquin*, or *Pequim* in the North, as being better secured there of his friends, and against the Tartars also his practising neighbours. This Citie hee called Pequim, that is the *Northerne Court*, in relation to *Nanquim* or *Nan quin*, which signifieth the *Southerly Court*, where *Humvu* had before resided; both which continue Royall Cities or supreme Courts to this day. The same which in respect aforesaid, they call in China language *quim*, the Tartarian founders called in their Idiome, Cambalu, *Citie of the Prince*, which name the Tartars and Saracens (as you haue heard) continue. But that all Cathay is not included in these sixe Prouinces, subiect to China, our reasons before out of *Rubruquis* are sufficient. And that there is yet a Grand *Can* in

f *Marc. Paulus lib.2.cap.60.*

g *Albacen* his Historie of *Tamerlane*, translated by *Icon. du Ecc.*

h *Scal. de reb. Sinarum. Cap. 1.pag.lib.3.*

Scal. Elench. Tr. N. 5. Step. de Lyps. Latinitate.

Iob.1.27.

i *Diab. Pater mendac.*

k *Trigaut.l.5. c.11.*

N.Trigaut.l.1.

in those parts, Lord of great Cities, which are also rich and fortified, hauling Printing, Ordinance, and other ciuill Arts, as in China, may appeare by the Persian *Chaggi Memet* his iourney into these Countries, related by himselfe to *Ramusio*. *Goes* from Camul in nine daies came to the Northerne parts, those famous walls of China: but *Memet* trauelled from Camul fifteene daies to Succiur; fiue daies further to Gauta, and then fixe to Campion, not mentioning any wall or impediment from the Chinois. These Cities hee placeth in Tanguth, which *Paulus* also doth, more Northerly the China or Cathay: both of them mentioning the plentie of *Rheubarb*, which draweth Merchants thither from farre. *Marcus Paulus* calleth Tanguth a great Prouince, containing many Prouinces and Cities; himselfe hauing liued at
10 Campion a whole yeere. The Emperour raigning (about seuentie yeeres since) *Memet* cals *Damurcan*, this last syllable vsually being annexed to all Princes names in those parts: and cals him the Grand *Can*, affirming that Succiur and Campion, were but the beginning of his Estate, and his frontire Townes towards the Mahumetans: his people being Idolaters: Now, Tanguth was neuer that I know, by any reckoned either to Cathay (in proper signification) or China. And therefore still wee may beleeue, that there is a Great *Can* (though little in comparison of those times, when all Asia was in manner subiect to them) still holding some Northerly and worse parts of Cathay, with Tanguth and other [m] better Countries, and per-
20 haps another *Cambula* too (this being a name appellatiue) though the King of China bee Lord of the best parts of Cathay (of the world) which will bee more apparant by the Relation of this ensuing iourney, through a great part of the Tartarian Prouinces on the West of China, here for the studious Geographie inserted out of *Ricci* and *Trigantius* their Relations of China published *Ann.* 1615. touched before out of the Iesuites Epistles.

[m] Such as those which *Presbyter Iohannes Asiaticus* held in *Paulus* his time.

§. III.

The long and dangerous Iourney from LAHOR, *a Citie of the Great* MOGOL *to* CHINA, *by* BENEDICTVS GOES.

30 Vpon the Relations of that Mahometan, before mentioned out of *Xauerius* his Letter, *Pimenta* the Father Visitor of the Iesuites sent notice thereof into Europe to the Pope and Spaniard. They hearing of so mightie a Nation Christian, the Viceroy of India was commanded to follow *Pimenta's* directions, who employed *Benedictus Goes* a Portugall Iesuite in that Expedition, furnished as an [n] Armenian Merchant, changing his name to *Abdula Isai*, this later appellation signifying a Christian. Thus obtaining the Great *Mogol Achabar* his Letters Patents to his Viceroyes and neighbour Princes, accompanied with one *Isaac* an Armenian, he departed from Lahor the sixth of Ianuary 1603.
40 Euerie yeere there is a Carrauan of Merchants which passe out of these parts into the Kingdome of Cascar, about fiue hundred together, for their better defence against Robbers. With these adioyning himselfe, in a moneths trauell hee came to Athec in the same Prouince of Lahor. After passage of a riuer and some stay, hee came after two moneths to Passaur: thence trauelling to a small Towne, they met with a certaine Heremite, who told them that thirtie daies thence was the Citie Capherstam, [o] in which no Saracen was permitted entrance, but Ethnikes may enter except in to their Temples. Hee tasted also of their wine, of which the countrie is fertile. They goe to their Temples in blacke. Here where they met this Heremite, they stayed twentie daies, and were faine to hire foure hundred Souldiers of the Gouernour for their defence. In twentie fiue daies they trauelled from hence to Ghideli, the Merchants trauelling armed on the toppe of hilles, the carriages at the bottome, to preuent theeues
50 which vse from those toppes to stone the Trauellers. They were yet assaulted and many wounded by these Robbers. After twenty dayes more, they came to Cabul where they stayed eight moneths. At this place there hapned into their company the sister of *Mahamet Can* King of Cascar, by whose countrey they were to passe towards Cathay. Shee was called *Agebane*, *Age* being an honourable title annexed to her name for her Pilgrimage to Mecca (from which place shee had now returned) who being in some want borrowed sixe hundred Ducats in Merchandize of *Goes*, which shee repayed after in most fitting Marchandize for Cathay; namely, a kind of Marble (they call it *Iasper*, the Chinois *Tusse*) which is of two sorts, one taken out of the bottome of the Riuer Cotan by such [p] Diue for it, as they doe for Pearles, it is like to great Flintes: the other meaner, drawne forth of the Mountaine
60 called Confangui Cascio. The solitarinesse of the place distant from Catan twentie dayes, and the hardnesse of the stone, which they mollifie with fires ouer the place, make it costly; the Merchants which buy this Priuiledge of the King, carrying with them a yeeres prouision for their Labourers. From Cabul they went to Ciarcar, where the *Mogors* Patents (which had

[n] Armenians are permitted free passage then others.

[o] Ie seemes to be therefore so called, for *Capher* signifies an Infidell.

Pilgrimage to Mecca, by and from the skirts of China.

Diuers for stones, as for pearles: this is also mentioned by *Marcus Paulus*.

had made him hitherto tribute-free) were neglected by the vnruly borderers: from thence to Parua the last towne in the *Mogors* subiection. After fiue dayes stay they passed in twentie dayes ouer exceeding high mountaines to the Region of Aingharan, and fifteene dayes after to Calcia, where the people resemble the Hollanders. Ten dayes being past, they came to Gialalabath, where the Bramenes exact custome, granted them by King *Brmarate*. Fifteene dayes after they came to Talhan, where by ciuill broyles they were stayed a moneth, the Calcians being in rebellion. Thence they trauelled to Cheman, vnder *Abdulaban* King of Samarhan, Burgauia, and Bacharate, and other confining Kingdomes, where the Calcians robbed them of great part of their goods: In eight dayes troublesome trauell they came to Badascian, where they were againe fleeced: neyther were they free at Ciarciunar their next resting, from whence in ten dayes they came to Serpanill, a desart place, and twentie dayes after to Sarcil a countrey full of villages. Two dayes iourney from this place they came to Ciecialith a hill couered with snow, where in fixe dayes trauell, many of the company perished with cold. Thence they attained to Tanghetar in the Kingdome of Cascar, and in fifteene dayes more to Iaconich; which iourney was so irksome that *Goes* lost fixe horses. He went from hence to Hiarchan p the royall City of Cascar in Nouember, 1603. a Mart famous for concourse of Merchants and variety of Marchandize. He presented the King with a Watch, a looking glasse, and other Europæan gifts, obtayning his letters patents for furtherance of his iourney.

p *Paulus* cals it Ciarcian.

This iourney for the principall places vnto Camul agrees with that report of *Chozgi Memet* In Ramusius.

From hence hee went with the Caruaan Bassa or Captaine (which buyes this place at a deare rate of the King) about the middest of Nouember 1604. to Ioloci, Hancialix alceghet, Hagabatesh, Egtiar, Mesetelec, Thalec, Horma, Thoantac, Mingrieda, Capetalcol, Zilan, Sarc Gucbedall, Canbasci, Aconsersec, Ciacor. Acsu, in twentie fiue dayes, a very tedious way by stones and sands. In this Iourney they passed the desart of Caracathay. Thence they trauelled to Oitograch Gazo, Casciani, Dellai, Sarcgabedal, Vgan, and Cucia. And after a moneth stay here, in twentie fiue dayes more to Cialis, gouerned by the King of Cascars base sonne: with whom at first he had some diffetence about Religion, which with a gift was pacified. And in a disputation with the Mahumetan Doctors before him, the Viceroy tooke part with *Goes*, affirming that the Christians were the true q Misermans, and that their Ancesters professed that law: a thing worthy by the way to bee obserued. Here hee met with some Merchants returning from Cathay, which could tell him of *Ricci* and the other Iesuites at Paquin, as before you heard out of Pantogia. And here first did he learne, that China was Cathay. At his departing from Cialis, the Viceroy gaue him his letters of passe, and inscribed him a Christian according to his desire, whereat a Mahumetan Priest much wondered, affirming, that theirs with the Region shifted also their Religion.

q Musulmans, that is, right beleeuers.

In twenty dayes they came to Pucian, thence to Turphan a fortified Citie: thence to Aramuth, and so to Camul, the last City of this Kingdome of Cialis. In nine dayes they passed from Camul to the Northerne walles of China, where they stayed twenty fiue dayes, expecting the Viceroyes answere for their admission, at a place called Chiaicuon. And then being entred the walles, they came in one dayes iourney to the Citie Soceù. All the space betweene Cialis and the borders of China, is subiect to the out-rodes of the Tartars; the cause that Merchants trauell in great feare, in the day time, looking not whether the coast be cleare, and trauelling the night with great silence and feeresie. They found many Saracens slaine in the way. The countrey people they seldome kill, but rob of their cattell: as for corne and rice, they hold it food for beasts, and not for men, feeding on flesh, and liuing about an hundred yeeres. The Saracens in these parts are effeminate, and might easily bee subdued by the Chinois if they would. On the West parts of China is that Wall before mentioned to exclude the Tartars: and two fortified Cities with stong Garrisons, hauing their proper Viceroy and other Magistrates, Canceu the head City of the Prouince Scensi; and Soceù, which is diuided into two parts, one of which is inhabited by Saracens, which trade here for Merchandize, the other by Chinois, whom the Saracens heere call Cathayans. Euery night the Saracens are enclosed in their owne Citie, in other things as the Chinois, subiect to the same Lawes and Magistrates. Neyther may any forreyner returne into his countrey which hath stayed there nine yeeres. Euerie sixth yeere, seuenty two Legates come after an olde custome to pay a kind of tribute to the King: this but a shew; the intent being to inrich themselues (as is sayd) with Marchandize, being maintained in respect of that pretence at the Kings Charge. Into Soceù *Goes* came at the end of the yeere, 1605. and here met with other Saracens returning from Paquin, which told him of the Iesuites there residing, adding that the King did not tell, but powred out of a measure a dayly allowance of money to them; which I mention, to shew that a man must bee sparing of credite to Saracen Trauellers and Merchants. But *Goes* could not a long time certifie these his fellowes of his artiuall, being ignorant of their China names, and it was foure moneths iourney to Paquin from Soceù;

ceu; & the force of Winter is there very great: yet did they send in that vnseasonable season one of their Conuerts a Chinois called *Ioannes Ferdinandus*, who, after a tedious iourney found *Goes* then lying on his death-bed, when hee brought him the letters from the Society. Eleuen dayes after, he dyed, not without suspition of poyson, giuen him by the Saracens, who had also before deuised by the way many shifts to make themselues Masters of his goods; they haue like wise a custome, that if any dye by the way, his goods are shared amongst the rest. Here did the Saracens offer to seize all into their hands; but *Ferdinandus* professed himselfe his Nephew, (borne of a China Mother) and with much a doe, eating Swines flesh together with the Armenian, in token they were not Saracens, obtayned that little which was left of *Goes* his substance, scarcely enough to pay charges: yet this and all the other tedious circumstances of this long Narration, I haue thus largely related, for the instruction of Geographers and Merchants of these parts, desirous to know or trade those Countryes, the knowledge whereof I thinke no Europæan else hath learned by experience in some hundreths of yeeres last past. His Companion the Armenian was sent from Paquin to Macao, and thence to India, and being taken by Hollanders in the way at Sincapura, was redeemed by the Portugals, and returned to Ciaul, where he yet liues, as *Trigautius* our Authour affirmeth. But it is high time for vs to take view of our Tartarian Religion.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Religion of the Tartars, and Cathayans.

IOANNES [t] DE PLANO CARPINI thus writeth of their Religion. They believe that there is one GOD, the maker of all things visible and inuisible, the Authour of good things and punishments, yet do they not worship him with prayers, prayses, or any certaine rites. They haue also Idols of Felt, in the fashion of a man, and the same they set on both sides of their Tent-doores, and vnder them they put a thing of Felt fashioned like a Dugge. These they account the keepers of their Cattell, Authors of their Milke and young store. Others they make of Silke, and doe them much honour. Some place them in a faire Chariot couered, before the doore of their station; and whosoeuer stealeth any thing out of that Chariot is slaine without all pitty. Their Captaines haue one alway in the middest of their Tent. To these Idols they offer the first fruits of their Milke: and the first morsels of their meate, and first draught of their drinke, at meales. And when they kill a beast, they offer the heart to their Idoll, leaving it before him till the morning, and then they take and eate it. They make an Idoll also to their chiefe Emperour, and offer thereunto with great solemnitie, as well other creatures as horses, which none after dare ride on till death. They breake not a bone of the beasts which they kill for meate, but burne them with fire. They bend themselues to this Idoll towards the South, as to a God. They worship the Sunne, Lights, and Fire; Water also, and the Earth, offering thereunto the first of their meates and drinkes, and in the morning before they eate or drinke. They haue no set rites prescribed by Law, nor doe they compell any to deny their Religion simply: although in some of their customes they are very rigorous. Thus they martyred *Michael* Duke of Russia, because he refused to doe reuerence to the Image of *Cingis Can*, which had beene their first Emperour: and compelled the younger brother of *Andrew* Duke of Satuoglein Russia, to marie his said brothers wife according to their custome, after that they had slaine her former Husband.

[t] *In. de Pl. Car. c.3. ap. Hak. 10.1*

They haue certaine traditions, according to which they reckon these things following to bee sinnes. To thrust a knife into the fire, or any way touch the fire with a knife, or with their knife to take flesh out of the Cauldron, or to hew with an hatchet neere to the fire. For they thinke that they should so cut away the head of the fire. They account it sinne also to leane on the whip wherewith they beate their horses (for they ride not with spurres.) Also to touch arrowes with a whip, to take or kill young Birds, to strike an horse with the raine of their bridle, and to breake one bone against another. Likewise to powre out meat, milke, or any kinde of drinke, vpon the ground: or to make water within their Tabernacle, which whosoeuer doth willingly, is slaine: but otherwise he must pay a great summe of money to the Inchanter to bee purified: who causeth the Tabernacle, with all things therein, to passe betweene two fires. Besides, if any hath a morsell giuen him which hee is not able to swallow, and for that cause casteth it out of his mouth, there is an hole made vnder his Tabernacle, by which hee is drawne forth, and slaine without all compassion. Likewise whosoeuer treades vpon the threshold of any of the Dukes Tabernacles, hee is put to death. Thus are these *Gnats strained*, when as hostile inuasions, murther, and such other *Camels*, are easily

Their sinnes.

easily amongst them *swallowed*. They thinke that after death they shall liue in another world, and there multiply their cattell, eate, drinke, and doe other actions of life. At a new Moone, or a full Moone, they begin all new enterprises. They call her the great Emperour, and bow their knees, and pray thereto. The Sunne they say is the Moones mother, because shee hath thence her light.

Their Sorcerie.

They are giuen to Diuinations, Auguries, Sooth-sayings, Witchcrafts, Inchantments: and when they receiue answere from the Deuill, they attribute the same vnto God, whom they call *Itoga*, and the Comanians call him *Chan*, that is, Emperor, whom they maruellously feare and reuerence, offering to him many Oblations, and the first fruits of their meate and drinke. According to his answere they dispose all things. They beleeue that all things are purged by fire: therefore when any Embassadours, Princes, or other personages whatsoeuer, come vnto them, they and their gifts must passe betweene two fires to be purified, least peradauenture they haue practised some Witchcraft, or haue brought some poyson or other mischiefe with them. And if fire fall from heauen vpon men or beasts, which there often hapneth; or if they thinke themselues any way defiled or vncleane, they thus are purified by their Inchanters. If any be sicke, a speare is set vp in his Tent with blacke felt welted about it, and from thenceforth, no stranger entereth therein. For none of them which are present at his death, may enter the hord of any Duke or Emperour, till a New-Moone. When he is dead, if he be a chiefe man, he is buried in the field where pleaseth him. And he is buried with his Tent, sitting in the midst thereof, with a Table set before him, and a platter full of meate, and a Cup of Mares-milke. There is also buried with him[t] a Mare and Colt, a Horse with bridle and saddle: and they eate another Horse, whose bones the women burne for the soule of the dead, stuffing his hide with straw, setting it aloft on two or foure poles, that he may haue in the other world a Tabernacle and other things fitting for his vse. They burie his gold and siluer with him: the Chariot or Cart in which he is carried forth is broken, his Tent is destroyed, neither is it lawfull to name his name, till the third generation. They obserue also other Funerall Rites, too long to rehearse. They lament their dead thirtie dayes, more or lesse. Their Parents, and those of their family are thus cleansed: They make two fires, and pitch neere thereunto two Speates, with a line from the top of the one to the other, fastening on the same line some pieces of Buckram, vnder which, and betwixt the fires, passe the Men, Beasts, and Tents. There stand also two women; one on this side, the other on that, casting water, and repeating certaine charmes: if any thing fall, or be broken, the Inchanters haue it. And if any be slaine of Thunder, the men in the Tent must thus be cleansed and all things in the Tent, being otherwise reputed vncleane, and not to be touched. No menare more obedient to their Lords then the Tartars. They seldome contend in words, neuer in deeds. They are reasonably courteous one to another: their women are chaste; adulterie is seldome heard of, and theft is rare, both punished by death. Drunkennesse common, but without brawles among themselues, or discrediit among others. They are proud, greedie, deceitfull. They eate Dogs, Wolues, Foxes, Horses, and in necessitie, mans flesh, Mice, and other filth, and that in as filthy a manner, without Clothes, and Napkins (their Bootes and the Grasse can serue to wipe their greasie hands:) they haue no bread, Hearbs, Wine, Meate or Beere, nor doe they wash their dishes. It is a great sinne amongst them to suffer any of their food to be lost: and therefore they will not bestow a bone on a Dogge, till they haue eaten the marrow.

Their sicknes and Funerals.

Their conditions.

t Vinc. l. 30, c. 86.

t Mat. Paris.

Two Narbonensis in an Epistle recited by *Mat. Paris*[t] *Anno* 1243. reporteth the confession of an Englishman, which was taken with other Tartars by the Christians. He saith, that they called by the Name of Gods, the auncient founders and fathers of their Tribes, and at set times did solemnize feasts vnto them, many of them being particular, and but foure onely generall. They thinke that all things are created for themselues alone. They be hardy and strong in the breast, leane and pale-faced, rough and huf-shouldred, hauing flat and short noses, long and sharpe chinnes, their vpper jawes low and declining, their teeth long and thin, their eye-browes extending from their foreheads downe to their noses, their eyes inconstant and blacke, their thighs thicke, and legges short, yet equall to vs in stature. They are excellent Archers. Vanquished, they aske no fauour; and vanquishing, they shew no compassion. They all persist as one man in their purpose of subduing the whole world.

Their proud swelling titles appeare in the Copies of those Letters of Duke *Baiothnoy* and *Cuin Can*, expressed by [u] *Vincentius*. One of them beginneth thus: By *the precept of the liuing* GOD, CINGIS CHAM *sonne of the sweet and worshipfull* GOD *saith, that* GOD *is high above all, the immortall* GOD, *and vpon Earth* CINGIS CHAM *onely Lord, &c.* These Letters of the Emperour, the Tartars called the Letters of GOD: & so beginneth Duke *Baiothnoy* to the Pope, who had sent Friar *Ascelline*, with *Alexander, Albericus*, & *Simon*, thither in Embassage. *The word of* BAIOTHNOY, *sent by the diuine disposition of* CHAM, *Know thou O Pope, &c.*

u *Vincent. Bel. Spec. hist. l. 31. c. 51. & 52.*

Frier

Frier *Iohn*,[x] saith he, stiles himselfe, *The power of God, and Emperour of all men*: and hath in his Seale ingrauen words of like effect, as is alreadie shewed. *Mandeuill*[y] hath the same report. *Will. de Rubruquis*[z] saith, that they haue diuided Scythia amongst them, from Danubius to the Sunne rising, euery Captaine knowing the bounds of his pastures which they feed, in the Winter descending Southwards, ascending in the Summer Northwards. Their houses are moueable, remoued on great Carts which containe twentie foot betweene the wheeles; they take them downe, they turne the doore alwaies to the South. Ouer the Masters head is an Image of Felt, called the *Masters brother*: and another ouer the head of the good wife or Mistres, called her *brother*, fastened to the wall; and her wixt both of them is a little leane one, which is the keeper of the whole house. She hath also at her beds feet a Kids skin, filled with wool, and a little Image looking towards the Maidens and Women. Next to the doore on the Womens side (which is the East, as the mans side is on the West) there is an Image with a Cowes Vdder for the Women, whose office it is to milke the Kine: on the other side another with a Mares Vdder for the Men. When they make merrie, they sprinkle their drinke vpon these Images in order, beginning at the Masters. Then goeth a seruant out of the house with a cup full of drinke, sprinkling thrice toward the South, and bowing the knee at euery time: and this is done for the honour of the *Fire*. Then performeth he the like superstition toward the East, for the honour of the *Ayre*: next to the West for the honour of *Water*: and lastly, to the North, in the behalfe of the *Dead*. When the Master holdeth a cup in his hand to drinke, before he tasteth thereof he poureth his part vpon the ground: if he drinketh sitting on horse-backe, he first poureth part thereof on the Mane of the Horse. After the seruant aforesaid hath discharged his cups to the foure quarters of the world, he returneth to the house: and two other seruants stand readie with two cups, and two Basons, to carry drinke vnto their Maister, and that Wife, which lay with him the last night, sitting together on a bed. Their Sooth-sayers or Inchanters are their Priests. To this may be added out of the Manuscript aboue mentioned, their Diuination by three bones, thorough which (being first burned blacke) the Diuinor lookes; and if the sight passeth straight and right, it is a good token; but if it be inwardly crooked or broken, he then vpon this euill presage ceaseth from his enterprise. (Master *Ienkinson* travelled with certaine Tartars, which diuined by the blade-bones of sheepe, sod, and then burnt to powder, which being mingled with the bloud of the sheep, they writ therewith certaine Characters, with diuers words and Ceremonies, and thence diuined of their successe, which they found true to their cost.) They vsed Diuination also by foure swords. *Mangu Can* desired a conference betwixt the Christians, Saracens, and Idolaters, to see which of them could make best proofe of his Religion. The Moal Tartars professed to beleeue one onely GOD, the Author of life and death: but as the hand, which is one, hath diuers fingers, so thought he and they, that this one GOD was pleased with diuers waies of deuotion. Their Priests were diuiners: they were many, but had one Captaine or chiefe Bishop, who alwaies placed his house or tent before that of the great *Can*, about a stones cast distant. He had charge of the Waine which carried the Idols: the other Priests had their places appointed them. Some of them were Astrologers, specially that High-Priest, which foretold the Ecclipses of the Moone. All the people prouided them their meat, that they might not go out of their Tents. When an Ecclipse happens, they sound their Organs and Timbrels, and make a great noyse: and when it is past they make great feasting, drinking, and mirth. They foretell Holy-dayes, and those which are vnluckie for enterprises. No warres are begun or made without their word. They cause all presents which are sent to the *Can* to passe through the fire: they purifie the houshold of the dead by the like rite, which before may not be touched. On the ninth day of May they assemble all the white Mares, and hallow them: at which the Christians must be present with their Censors. They then cast on the ground new [a] *Cosmos*, and make a great feast. They foretell the destinies of Infants newly borne: and when one is sicke, they diuine by charmes whether the disease be naturall, or proceed of Sorcerie. They are themselues Witches, Sorcerers, Inuokers of the Deuill: this they doe in the night, setting flesh in the midst of the house readie boiled, vsing charmes, Timbrells, and falling into mad fits are bound. Then comes the Deuill and giues them answeres. Thus much *Rubruquis*.

M. Paulus thus reporteth of their Religion: They say, [b] that there is a GOD on high in heauen, of whom lifting vp their hands, & smiting their teeth three times together, euery day with Censer and Incense they desire health, and vnderstanding. They place a Table aloft in the wall of their house, in the which is written a name, that representeth this god. They haue another, which they call *Natigay* (or *Itogay*) of Felt or other stuffe in euerie house. They make him a wife and children, and set his wife on the left hand, and his children before him, which seeme to doe him reuerence. This they call the God of earthly things, which keepeth their

x *Io. de P. C.*
y *C. 37.*
Sir *Io. Mand.*
z *W. de Rubr.*

Rubruq. pars alt. M. S.

a Churned Mares-milke.

b *L. 1. c. 46.*
L. 2. c. 36.

their children, beasts, and corne: and when they eat they annoint his mouth with the fat, and the mouthes of his wife & children, and then cast out the broth out of the doore vnto other spirits. And when their God hath had his part, they take theirs. Of this *Natigay*, they with like Ceremonies of lifting vp their hands, and smiting of their teeth, desire temperature of the ayre, fruits of the earth, children, and such like. Their wiues are exceeding chaste and obseruant: and though they be: many yet can *Rachel* and *Leah*, yea, ten or twentie of them, agree with a maruellous vnion, intent vnto their houshold, and other businesse, whereby they are gainefull, and not chargeable to their Husbands. When they marry, the Husband couenanteth with the Father of the Maide, who hauing giuen him power to take her wheresoeuer he shall find her, he seeketh her among some of her friends, where shee hath then of purpose hidden her selfe, and by a kinde of force carrieth her away. They marry with any, except their owne Mother and Sister. Their Widdowes seldome marry, because of their seruice to their former Husbands in another world, except the sonne marrie his fathers wiues, or the brother his brothers, because they can there in the next world be content to resigne them to their former Husbands againe. The women buy, sell, and prouide all necessaries into the house, the men intending nothing but their Armes, Hunting, and Hawking. If one hath buried a Male-child, and another a Female, the Parents contract a marriage betwixt those two, and painting in papers Seruants, Horses, Clothes, and Houshold, and making writings for the confirmation of the Dower, burne these things in the fire, by the smoake whereof they (in their smokie conceits) imagine all these things to be carried and confirmed to their children in the other world: and the Parents of the two dead parties claime kindred each of other: as if they indeed had married their children while they liued.

L. 2. c. 26.

n *W. de Rich.* in this sort.

In *Xamdu* did *Cublai Can* build a stately Palace, encompassing sixteene miles of plaine ground with a wall, wherein are fertile Meddowes, pleasant Springs, delightfull Streames, and all sorts of beasts of chase and game, and in the middest thereof a sumptuous house of pleasure, which may be remoued from place to place. Here he doth abide in the moneths of Iune, Iuly, and August, on the eight and twentieth day whereof, he departeth thence to another place to doe sacrifice on this manner: He hath a Heard or Droue of Horses and Mares, about ten thousand, as white as snow, of the milke whereof none may taste, except he be of the bloud of *Cingis Can*. Yea, the Tartars doe these beasts great reuerence, nor dare any crosse their way, or goe before them. According to the direction of his Astrologers or Magicians, he on the eight and twentieth of August aforesaid, spendeth and poureth forth with his owne hands, the milke of these Mares in the ayre, and on the earth, to giue drinke to the Spirits and Idols which they worship, that they may preserue the men, women, beasts, birds, corne, and other things growing on the earth.

Their Sects and Orders.

These Astrologers, or Necromancers, are in their Art maruellous. When the skie is cloudy and threatneth raine, they will ascend the roofe of the Palace of the *Grand Can*, and cause the raine and tempests to fall round about, without touching the said Palace. These which thus doe, are called *Tebeth*, and *Chesmir*, two sorts of Idolaters, which delude the people with opinion of their sanctitie, imputing these workes to their dissembled holinesse: and for this cause they goe in filthy and beastly manner, nor caring who seeth them, with dirt on their faces, neuer washing nor combing themselues. And if any bee condemned to death, they take, dresse, and eate him: which they doe not if any die naturally. They are also called *Bachsi*, that is, of such a Religion or Order; as if one should say a Frier-Preacher, or Minor, and are exceedingly expert in their diuellish Art. They cause that the Bottles in the Hall of the Great *Can* doe fill the Bowles of their owne accord, which also without mans helpe, passe ten paces through the ayre, into the hands of the said *Can*; and when hee hath drunke, in like sort returne to their place. These *Bachsi* sometimes resort vnto the Officers, and threaten plagues or other misfortune from their Idols, which to preuent they desire so many Muttons with black heads, and so many pounds of Incense, and *Lignum Aloes*, day, sprinkling Broth before their Idols. There be of these, great Monasteries, which seeme like a small Citie, in some whereof are two thousand Monkes, which shaue their heads and beards, and weare a religious habite, and hallow their Idols Feasts with great solemnitie of Hymnes and Lights. Some of these may bee married. Other there are, called *Sensim*, an Order which obseruedh great abstinence and strictnesse of life, in all their life eating nothing but Bran, which they put in hot water, and let it stand till all the white of the meale be taken away, and then eate it being thus washed. These worship the Fire, and are condemned of the other for Heretikes, because they worship not their Idols, and will not marry in any case. They are shauen, and weare hempen-garments of black or bright yellow, and although they were Silke, yet would they not alter the colour. They sleepe on great Mats, and liue the austerest life in the world.

Tebeth and *Chesmir*.

Bachsi.

Sensim.

Of

Of their Astrologers in Cambalu were not fewer then fiue thousand; Christians, Catayans, and Saracens, maintained with food and rayment at the Great *Cans* charge. These, by their Astrolabe foretell of the change of weather, mortalitie, warres, diseases, &c. And if any enterprise any great worke, he resorteth vnto them, and relling the houre of his Natiuitie, by their Art is informed of the successe. They hold the soule to be immortall, and according to euery mans merits in his life, to passe into a more noble creature, till it be desified; or ignobler, as to a Pesant, and then to a Dogge, and so by degrees to the vilest. They shew much reuerence to their Parents, to whom if any be vngratefull in their necessitie, there is an Office and Officers appointed to trie and punish the offence. In the Emperours hall none dare spit; but for that purpose carrieth a little vessel to spit in: nor dare any there make any noyse or loud talking. The Tartars were at first very vncharitable to the poore; and would curse them, saying, That if God had loued them, he would haue prouided for them; but after the idolatrious *Bachs* had commended Almes for a good worke, there was great prouision made for them, and euery day at least twentie thousand dishes of Rice, Mill, and Paniks, by certaine Officers distributed amongst them. And for this liberalitie they adore him as a God.

Georgia amongst his first Lawes enacted (as saith *Vincentius*) the punishment of death to bee inflicted vpon offenders in those three vices, which before time had beene most rife amongst them, namely, lying, adulterie, and theft: of which yet towards other men that were not Tartars they made no conscience. *Vincent. Bel. spec. histor. lib. 30. ca. 70.*

They are great Vsurers, taking ten in the hundreth for a moneth, besides vse vpon vse: insomuch, that a Souldier in Georgia, which had borrowed fiue hundred pieces of coyne, called *Yperpera*, retaining the same fiue yeeres, was constrained to repay seuen thousand. And a Tartarian Lady for seuen yeeres vse of fiftie sheepe, demanded seuen thousand *Yperpera*. They are so couetous; that though they abound in cattell, they will scarce allow any to their owne expence, while it is sound and good, but if it die, or be sicke. They are addicted to Sodomie or Buggerie. They eate sometimes for necessitie, mans flesh, sometimes to delight themselues, and sometimes to terrifie others, reckoning it a great glorie to haue slaine many, and that by varietie of cruelties. Their heads they shaue from eare to eare, in manner of a Horse-shoe: wearing long lockes at their eares and necke. There be some of the Tartars, which when they see their fathers grow old and diseased, they giue them fat meates which may choake them. And when they are thus dead, they burne their bodies, reseruing the ashes as a precious Iewell, sprinkling their meates with that powder. But if any thinke not this enough (which I am afraid the most will deeme too much) let him resort to the large reports of *Vincentius* in his three last Bookes, an Author, I confesse, otherwise fabulous and monkish; but herein to be beleeued, as receiuing his Reports from the eye-witnesses. *Ca. 75. Ca. 76. Ca. 77. Ca. 78.*

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the festiuall Solemnities, and of the Magnificence of the Grand Can.

WE haue alreadie spoken of the solemne sacrifice obserued on the eight and twentieth day of August: we readein our Author [a] *Marcus Paulus*, an eye-witnesse of these his Relations, of other the *Grand Cans* grand solemnities. Of which, two are principall; one, on his birth-day, which in *Cublai Cans* time was the eight & twentieth of September. On which him selfe was royally clothed in cloth of gold, and twentie thousand of his Barons & Souldiers were all apparelled in one colour, and like (excepting the price) to himself; euery one hauing a girdle wrought of gold and siluer, and a paire of shooes, some of their garments richly set with pearles and iewels, which they weare on the thirteene solemnities, according to the thirteene Moones of the yeere. On this day all the Tartars, and seuerall Princes subiect, present him with rich gifts, and all sects of Religions pray vnto their gods for his health, and long life. [a] *Marcus Paulus.*

But their chiefe feast is on the first day of their yeere, which they begin in February celebrated by the *Grand Can*, and all the Countries subiect to him: in which they are all arrayed in white, a colour in their estimation portending good lucke. And then he is presented with many Clothes and Horses of white colour, and other rich presents, in the same religiously obseruing the number of nine: as nine times nine Horses, if they be able, and so of pieces of Gold, Cloth, and the rest. Then also the Elephants (which are aboue fiue thousand) are brought forth in sumptuous furniture: and Camels couered with Silke. And in the morning they present themselues in the Hall as many as can, the rest standing without in their due order. First, those of the Imperiall progenie; next, the Kings, Dukes, and others, in their due place. Then commeth forth a great man or Prelate, which cryeth out with a loud

voyce; Bow downe your selues, and worship; which they presently doe, with their faces to the earth. This Prelate addeth, GOD saue and preserue our Lord, long to liue with ioy and gladnesse. They all answere; GOD grant it. The Prelate againe; GOD increase his Dominion, and preserue in peace all his subiects, & prosper all things in all his Countries. Whereunto they answere as before. Thus doe they worship foure times. After this, the said Prelate goeth to an Altar there, richly adorned; on which is a Red Table, with the name of the Great *Can* written in it, and a Censer with Incense, which he incenseth in stead of them all, with great reuerence performed vnto the Table. This done, they returne to their places, and present their gifts, and after are feasted.

When *Cublai* had ouerthrowne *Naiam* his vncle (as before is said), vnderstanding that the Christians obserued their secrely solemnitie of Easter, hee caused them all to come vnto him, and to bring the Booke of the foure Gospels, which he incensed often with great Ceremonies, deuoutly kissing it, and caused his Barons to doe the like. And this he obseruedh always in the principall Feasts of the Christians, as *Christmasse* and *Easter*. The like he did in the chiefe Feasts of the Saracens, Iewes, and Idolaters. The cause (he said) was because of those foure Prophets, to which all the world doth reuerence: IESVS of the Christians, *Mahomet* of the Saracens, *Moses* of the Iewes, and *Sogomambar Can* the first Idoll of the Pagans; and I (saith he) doe honour to them all, and pray him which is the greatest in Heauen, and trueth, to helpe me. Yet hee had best opinion of the Christian Faith, because it contained nothing but goodnesse: and would not suffer the Christians to carrie before them the Crosse, on which so great a man as Christ was crucified. Hee also sent *Nicolo* and *Massio*, the Father and Vncle of *Marco Paulo* our Author, in Embassage to the Pope, to send him a hundred wise men which might conuince the Idolaters, that boasted of those there Magical wonders, whereas the Christians that were there, were but simple men, not able to answere them; which if it had beene effected, he and his Barons would haue beene baptized. *Thomas à Iesu*, a Iesuite in his second booke of *Procuring the conuersion of all Nations*, reporteth, that *Clement* the fifth ordained *Iohn à Monte Coruino*, a Minorite, Archbishop of Cambalu, and nine other of the same Order he consecrated Bishops, and tooke order for the successour of the Archbishop, when he died. Whether these went or no, is vncertaine. Great pitie it is, that the Iesuites, men of so refined wits, and such mightie miracle-mongers, (our world must witnesse the one, and the East and West the other) were but of yesterdaies hatching, and that *Ignatius* had not broken his legge before those times. These had been (if they then had been) the onely men to haue remoued those obiected scandals of the simplicitie of Christians, and to haue confronted these Magicall Mountebankes, as the Can here required. But these were reserued to times more fatall to the Pope, to helpe at a dead lift, by peruertings here, and conuertings there, to hold vp the supposed sanctitie of the triple Diademe. But looke wee to our Tartars.

h *Odoricus Vior. & Io. Bocm.*

h *Odoricus* saith, that in his time the *Can* celebrated, besides the former, the Feasts of his Circumcision, Marriage, and Coronation. But before the Conquest of Cathay, they obserued not any day at all with festiuall solemnities.

Cublai Can was of meane stature, of countenance white, red, and beautifull. He had foure wiues, which kept seuerall Courts, the least of which contained at least ten thousand persons. He had many Concubines; euery second yeere hauing a new choice of the fairest Maidens in the Prouince of Vnguc, most fertile (belike) of that commoditie: which passe a second election at the Court, and the fairest and fittest of them are committed to Ladies, to prouie and to instruct them. Their parents hold it a great grace so to haue bestowed their children: and if any of them proue not, they impute it to their disastrous planet. They hold it for a great beautie, to haue their noses flat betweene the eyes.

The Grand *Cans* Palace.

In December, Ianuary, and February, he abideth at Cambalu, in the North-East part of the Prouince of Cathay, in a Palace neere to the Citie builded on this manner. There is a circuit walled in, foure square, each square containing eight miles, hauing about them a deepe ditch, and in the middle a gate. A mile inwards is another wall, which hath fixe miles in each square; and in the South side three gates, and as many on the North. Betwixt those wals are Souldiers. In euery corner of this wall, and in the middest, is a stately Palace, eight in all, wherein are kept his Munitions. There is a third wall within this, containing foure miles square, each square taking vp one mile, hauing fixe Gates and eight Palaces, as the former, in which are kept the *Grand Cans* prouisions. And betweene these two wals are many faire Trees and Meadowes stored with many beasts. Within this is the *Grand Cans* Palace, the greatest that euer was seene, confining with the wall aboueside, on the North and South. The matter and forme thereof is of such cost and Art, with such appurtenances of pleasure and state, as were too long heere to recite. Hee for a superstitious feare suggested by his Astrologers, of a rebellion which sometime should be raised against him in Cambalu, builds

built a new Citie neere thereunto called Taidu, [i] twentie foure miles in compasse, and yet not able to receiue the Inhabitants of the old Citie, whence hee remoued such as might moue suspicion, hither. This Citie was built by line, in foure squares, each whereof contained sixe miles, and three gates, so streight, that vpon the wall of one gate one might see the gate right against it. In the midst of the Citie is a great Bell, which is rung in the night, to warne men to keepe within doores. The Great *Can* hath 12000. Horse-men, vnder foure Captaines to his Guard, He keepeth Leopards, Wolues, and Lions to hunt with, and with them to take wild Asses, Beares, Harts, &c. and one fort of Eagles able to catch Wolues. The two Masters of his hunting game had ten thousand men vnder each of them, the one part clothed in red, the other in skie-colour: and when the Emperour hunteth, one of these Captaines goeth with his Men and Dogges on the right hand, the other on the left, compassing a great quantitie of ground, that not a Beast can escape them. From *October* to *March*, they are bound daily to send in a thousand head of Beasts and Birds. He hath also when hee trauelleth, ten thousand Falconers, diuided in diuers companies, himselfe abiding in a chamber, carryed vpon foure Elephants, whence he may see the game, having also his tents pitched for his solace neere thereby. None may carry Hawke or Hunting-dog out of his Dominion, nor may Hawke or Hunt neere the Court by many daies iourneys, nor at all, in their times of breeding, from *March* to *October*.

i *Odoricus* calleth it *Caido*.

Odoricus reckoneth a greater number.

But he, that list to be more fully informed herein, let him reade *M. Paulus* and [k] others, which haue written of this Argument. It is Religion to vs, further to suspend our discourse of Religion.

k *Vincent.* l.30. 31. *Io. Boem. Mariner. Magimus.G. B.B.&c.*

CHAP. XV.

Of the alteration of Religion among the Tartars: and of the diuers Sorts, Sects, and Nations of them now remaining.

§. I.

Of the Precopite, or Crimme Tartars.

AFter so long narration of the Religion of the ancient Tartars, and of the Cathayans, where their Emperours fixed their abode: it followeth to consider of the times following, wherein they haue beene diuided both in Policie and Faith, *Maginus* [l] diuideth them into fiue principall sorts; which may likewise bee subdiuided into many inferiour branches of *Hords*. The first of these he calleth *Tartaria Minor*, or the lesse, which is in Europe betwixt *Boristhenes* and *Tanais*, comprehending *Taurica Chersonesus*, inhabited by the *Precopite* Tartars, or as *Broniouius* [m] termeth them, *Perecopenses* of Perecopia, a Town and Castle in Taurica: they are called also *Ossouenses* and *Crims*, of two Townes bearing those names. These are now subiect to the Turke both in State and Religion, hauing some Towues and Mahumetane Temples, and Monasteries, and Turkish Garrisons, and a few Temples and persons Christian, of the Armenian, Grecian, and Westerne profession. They liue in their homely Cottages in the Winter, but in the Summer wander in their Catts, as the other Tartars, then whom they are somewhat more ciuill. They pay three hundred Christians yeerely to the Turke for tribute: of whom their *Can*, since the time of *Zelim*, receiueth a banner, and his approbation to the Empire, giuing his children or brethren in hostage. They elect also an heire apparant to their Empire, whom they call *Galga*: and if the *Can* will preferre his sonne to that dignitie, he killeth all his brethren, as the Turkes also deale with theirs:

l *Mag. Geogr. Precop. Desert. Zagathai. Cazgi & Margat.*

m *Mart. Broniu. Tartaria.*

It should seeme that they deriue their pedigree from *Cengis*, descended (if I may coniecture, where certaine Historie fayleth) of some of the sonnes of *Bathy*, the great Conqueror in those parts of the World. *Letchiton Can* was the first which ruled in Taurica: long since *Bathy's* time. They [n] vse the Chaldæan and Arabian Letters: they haue their *Cadiers* to administer Religion and Iustice, as haue the Turkes.

n *De his Tabiid. S. Chalcond. l.3. A. Guag. de Sarmat. Sigism. ab Herberst. Rer. Rossicarum tab. Chytreus, Ortelius, Geuffreus de imperijs c. 4. sect. Mahum. &c.*

They count the Don or Riuer Tanais holy, in respect of the commodities which it yeeldeth them. These [o] Tartars passing through the confines of Polonia and Podolia, to helpe the Turkes in the warres of Hungary, the wayes being secured and defended with the Garrisons, they vsed a new stratagem to make way, by driuing a multitude of Buls before them, which contrarie to their expectation, affrighted with the Ordnance; recoiled vpon their driuers, treading them downe, and scattering them. The *Chan*, when Saint *Bathor*, King of Poland,

o *Ph. Cameraf. de Med. disse. cent. cap. 98.*

was dead, sent his Embassadours to be elected their King; affirming, that their Pope should be his, their *Luther* his also: and for dainties, Horse-flesh would content him. His suit was rejected with laughter. *William Bruse* a Scot, from the relation of *Anthony Spinola*, descended of that Family in Genua, and then Embassador from *Casphere* the *Crim*-Tartar into Polonia, affirmeth diuers things of the Tartarians, as namely, of threescore and ten diuers Kingdomes of them, the names whereof are scarce known to any Tartar: differing in language and manners, but all agreeing in the Tartarian appellation, warring, wandring, hard and spare diet; all sometimes subiect to the Great *Can*, now inferiour in power (as the *Crims* say, which know nothing of him but by tradition) to the *Crim* or *Precopie*.

Guil. Brussus de Tar.

These Precopites abhor Drunkennesse, punish Adulterie with death; steale not from their Countrey-men, nor conceale any thing which they find, walke not with weapons, haue few Lawes, the Interpreters of which are their Priests, which they greatly reuerence, as they doe also those of the Christians: if any thing bee not expressed by Law, they referre it to that generall Head, whereon hang the Law and the Prophets, *To doe as men would be done to.* The *Sar* or Emperour sitteth himselfe in Iudgement, with the *Galga*, and *Soldant* (so they call the Princes children) and the Chancellour, with other Senators, whose sentences being first deliuered, hee determineth, and present execution followeth. All mettalls are the *Sars* prerogatiue (except gold, which is the Turkes peculiar) he hath also the tenths of the spoiles, and of euerie Captiue a Chekine, and if he be of great estate, three. He receiueth 2 3500. Duckets a yeere from the Turke, for which hee is bound to warre vpon none but the Muscouite without his leaue. He brings into the field 150000. Horse-men (leauing at home but one man in a house) and when the Circassians and Astracans adioyne their forces, two hundred thousand. It is paine of death not to come. They bring with them three moneths victuall, which are dried Flesh, Cheese, Garlicke, Rootes, and a spare Horse for food, besides a better for seruice. Their haires tied to long poles, are their banners; onely the Prince receiueth from the Turke one of silke. Both Horse and Men are exceeding skilfull in swimming. In passing ouer large streames, they set their Saddles and Baggage on Reedes or Rushes, which they tye to diuers Horse-tailes, themselues holding them by the Manes, and guiding them: sometimes they sit themselues on those Rushes, and sometimes they kill and slay 3 some of their Horses, and turning the inside outward, timbering them with the ribs of the Horse, and sowing them with the hayre, make Boates for transportation. They take off the wheeles of their Carts, and setting them on Rushes, as aforesaid, transport them. The spoile is diuided in common, and euery mans losse thence made good: to conceale any thing is death, whether pillaged from the enemie, or found of their owne people.

In the yeere 1571, they came to Musco and fired the Suburbs, which being of wood, burned with such rage, that in foure houres space it consumed the greatest part of the Citie, being thirtie miles or more in compasse. The rufulnesse of this sight was seconded with a more dismall euent, the people burning in their houses, and streets, and whiles they sought to flye out of the Citie, they wedged themselues with multitude so fast 40 in the Gate (which was furthest from the enemie) and the streets adioyning, as that three rankes walked one vpon the others heads, the vppermost treading downe those that were lower: so that there petished at that time, as was said, by the fire and the presse, the number of eight hundred thousand people or more. The Tartar sent the *Russe* a knife, (as vpbraiding him this losse and his desperate case) therewith to stab himselfe. The cause of this quarrell is, the Tartars title to Cazan, Astracan, and Mosco it selfe, which the Moscouite was wont to acknowledge with this homage yeerely in the Castle of Mosko, to giue the *Cans* or *Crims Basilius* changed into a tribute of Furres, which also by his sonne *John* was denyed. Hereupon once or twice euery yeere, sometime about Whitsontide, but oftner in haruest, hee inuadeth the Country: either in great numbers, if the *Can* himselfe come, or otherwise in fewer, 50 with lighter border-skirmishes. Their common practise is to make diuers Armies, and drawing the *Russe* to one place, to inuade another: They are all Horse-men, carrying nothing but a Bow, a sheafe of Arrowes, and a Fauchion Sword: they are expert Riders, and shoot as readily backward as forward. The Morses or Nobles haue Armour like the Turkes, the Common-people none other then their apparell, *viz.* a Black-sheeps skin, with the woull-side outward in the day time, and inward in the night, with a cap of the same.

D. Fletcher *Desc. of Russia*, 29.

They haue a rule, that Iustice is to be practised but towards their own: and therefore will promise any thing when they besiege a Citie, but being once possessed of the place, performe all manner of hostilitie. When their number is small, they make greater shew with counterfeit shapes of men set on horse-backe. In giuing onset, they make a great shout, crying 60 together, ℣ *Olla billa, Olla billa*; they will dye rather then yeeld, contrary to the Turkes custome. The chiefe bootie they seeke for is store of Captiues, specially yong boyes and girles: for

℣ God help vs

for which purpose they haue bands intending nothing else, and baskers like Bakers Pannyers, to carrie them tenderly. If they tyre or sicken on the way, they dash them against the ground or some tree, and so leaue them dead. The Russe borders being vsed to their inuasions, keepe few other cattell but Swine, which their Religion abhorreth to touch.

They differ herein from the Turkish Religion, that they haue certaine Idoll puppets made of silke or like stuffe, of the fashion of a man, which they fasten to the doore of their walking-houses, to be as *Iannisses* or Keepers of their house. And these Idols are made not by all, but by certaine Religious women, which they haue among them for that and like vses. They haue besides, the Image of their King of an huge bignesse, which they erect at euerie Stage, when the Armie marcheth: to which euery one must bow as he passeth by, both Tartar and Seranger. They are much giuen to Witch-craft and ominous coniectures. In marriage they onely abstaine from the Mother, Sister, and Daughter: neither doe they account that woman a wife, which hath not honoured them with the name of a Father, and then beginneth he to take a dowrie of her friends of Horse, Sheepe, Kine, &c. If shee bee barren after a certaine time, he turneth her home againe. Their Images.

Vnder the Emperour they haue certaine Dukes or Morseys, which rule ouer hords of ten, twentie, or fortie thousand, which are bound to serue the Emperour, with a certaine number of men double-horsed. They preferre horse-flesh before other meates, esteeming it stronger nourishment: this notwithstanding, they vsed to send thirtie or fortie thousand horse yeerely to Musko, to exchange for other commodities. Their Herds of Kine, and Flocks of black Sheepe, they keepe rather for the Milke then the Flesh, though they sometime eate it. They drinke Milke or warme Bloud, and for the most part curde them both together: as they trauell they sometime let their horse bloud, and drinke it from his bodie. Townes they plant none nor standing Villages, but haue walking houses built vpon wheeles, like a Shepherds Cottage; which they moue in the Spring from the South to the North, and so with Winter returne Southwards; when they come to their Stage or standing Place, planting their houses in a rank, making the forme of a Towne and Streets. Gold and siluer they neglect, as they do also Tillage, which freeth their Countrey from inuasions.

For person and complexion, they haue broad and flat visages, of a tanned colour into yellow and blacke, fierce and cruell lookes, thin haired vpon the vpper lip and pit of the chin, light and nimble bodied with short legs, practising themselues to ride and shoot from their child-hood, their Parents not suffering their children to eate till they haue shot within a certaine scantling of the marke. Their speech is sudden and loud, as it were out of a deepe hollow throat, their singing like a Cowes lowing. In the description of these *Crims* I haue been thus long, because they are now the chiefe knowne Nation of the wandring Tartars, and the rest differ little from them, except in greater Barbarisme.

Master *George Barkly*, a friend of mine, a Merchant in London, hauing trauelled Liuonia, Russia, Lithuania, and Poland, went from Cracouia, with a Tartar Duke, (which had come thither to the Parliament to sue for his two Daughters, taken by the Polachs) and staied with him in his hords (which consisted of about a thousand households of a kindred) six moneths. These Tartars sowed a three square graine, called Totarka; they liued in great ease and pleasure, euerie day hunting, that for worldly pleasure he neuer any where enioyed such a life, with such loue and liking of his Tartar-Host, as if he had beene his sonne. These vsed to make sudden inrodes vpon the Polachs: the Gentlemen of Poland not dying without their Peeces and Souldierly-seruing-men, readie to giue them entertainment. If the Christians make head against them, they know not where to find them. Resolute they are, and will ride with their Bowes in the face of a Peece. G. Barkly.

§. II.

Of Tartaria Deserta.

THE second part in this diuision is attributed to *Tartaria Deserta*, so called of the Desart huge tract of the Country betweene Tanais, the Caspian Sea, and the Lake Kitay: sometime knowne by the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, It containeth many Tribes: of which the principall are, *Zunolbensis*, called *Burgar Tartars*, of *Volga*: betweene which Riuer and *Iaick* they haue their abode. This they called the great *Hord*, and the Emperor thereof *Vincan*, in the yeere 1506. subdued by the *Crim*-Tartars before mentioned: and after that by *Basilius* the Muscouite, to whose large stile Bulgaria is added, taking that name of *Volga*, as it were *Volgaria*, or of *Bulgar*, a Towne vpon that Riuer. *Cazan* and *Astracan*, Hords of these *Zanol*-Tartars, haue bin subiect also many yeeres to the said Great Duke;

h *Anth. Jenkinson.*

Duke, [h] who caused the Prince of Cazan (being taken prisoner when hee was young) to bee baptized. Neere vnto Cazan is Vachen, the people whereof are Gentiles; and the *Cheremizes* halfe Gentiles, halfe Tartars, and *Mangat*, or *Nagai*, Mahumetan Tartars, which in the yeere 1558. were thorow ciuill warres, famine, and pestilence, destroyed to the number of aboue a hundred thousand. These Nagayans haue their diuers Hords subiect to their seuerall Dukes, whom they call *Murzes*, hauing no vse of Money, Corne, or Atts. They, in the time of their distresse, would sell one Loafe of bread, worth fixe pence, haue sold Sonne or Daughter to Master *Ienkinson*, if hee would haue bought a thousand, although other-whiles they deride the Christians, as liuing on the tops of weedes (so they call our Corne.) This our Author and Country-man trauelled downe the Riuer Volga to Astracan, which Riuer, after it had runne aboue two thousand English miles, hath threescore and ten mouthes or falls into the Caspian Sea. Through this Sea hee passed to Mangustlaue, another part of the Desart Tartaria. The Prince whereof (*Timor Soltan*) he found and saluted in a [i] little round house, not hauing Towne or Castle, made of Reeds, couered without with Felt, within with carpets, accompanied with the great Metropolitane of their country, esteemed of amongst that field-people, as the Bishop of Rome is in most parts of Europe. And had he not presented himselfe to him with the Great Dukes Letters, he had been spoyled of all that he had.

i *Regum; tuvres, Pauperum tabernae.*

They passed thence with a Caruaan of Merchants twentie dayes, not finding water, but as they drew out of old deepe Wells, brackish and salt: and passed sometimes two or three dayes without the same. After that, they came to a Gulfe of the Caspian Sea againe, where the water is fresh and sweet. Not so the people; for the Customers of the King of Tutkeman tolled of euery fiue and twentie, one; and seuen ninths for the said King and his brethren. Into this Gulfe the Riuer *Oxus* did sometimes fall, but is now intercepted by the Riuer *Ardock*, which runneth toward the North: and (as it were) loath to view so cold a Clime and barbarous Inhabitants, after he hath run with a swift race a thousand miles (as it were) in flight, hee hideth himselfe vnder ground for the space of fiue hundred miles, and then looking vp, and seeing little amendment, drowneth himselfe in the Lake of Kithay.

Thence they had three dayes iourney to *Sellizure*, where finding *Azim Cau*, to whom hee presented a ninth, hee receiued there the like festiuall entertainment as before with *Timor*, that is, the [k] flesh of a wilde Horse, and Mares milke without bread. Hee and his brethren ruled all from the Caspian Sea to Vrgence, and had continuall warres with the Persians; which space is called *Turkeman*: for the other Hords of that huge Tartarian Desart, the *Kirgessen*, *Melgomazan*, *Scibanki*, *Thumen* (which still is said to remaine vnder the obedience of the *Grand Can*) *Bascherdi*, *Heseliti*, harsh names of harsher people in those most hatsh and horrid Desarts, will hasten my pen and your eares, to some mote pleasing subiect. The Thumen and their Neighbours are great Inchanters, and by their Art (they say) raise tempests, and ouerthrow their Enemies. The Kirgessen obserue these stinking holies: their [l] Priest mixeth bloud, milke, and Cow-dung together with earth, and putting them in a Vessell, there with cliimeth a tree, and after his deuout exhortation to the people, hee besprinkleth them with this sacred mixture, which they account diuine. When any of them dye, they hang him on a tree instead of buryall.

k *Minime conuenia Natura.*

l *Oracula.*

The Tartars in Turkeman vse to catch wilde Horses with Hawks, tamed to that purpose, which seising on the necke of the Horse, with his beating, and the Horses chasing, tyreth him, and maketh him an easie prey to his Master, who alwayes rideth with his Bow, Arrowes, and Sword. They eate their meate, and say their prayers sitting on the ground crosse-legged, spending the time very idlely. As Master *Ienkinson* with his company trauelled from hence towards Boghar, they were assayled with fortie theeues; of whom they had intelligence somewhat before, and therefore certaine holy men (for so they account such as haue beene at Mecca) caused the Caruaan to stay while they made their praiers and diuinations touching their successe. They tooke certaine sheepe and killed them, and rooke the blade-bones of the same, which they first sod, and then burnt, mingling the bloud of the said sheepe, with this poulder of their bones, with which bloud they wrote certaine Characters, vsing many other Ceremonies and words, and thereby diuined that they should meete with enemies, which after much trouble they should ouercome: which accordingly proued true. Of the faithfulnesse of these holy men he had good proofe, both heere and elsewhere, they refusing not to expose themselues to danger, and (faithfully-faithfull) to forsweare themselues, rather then betray him and the Christians to their theeuish Country-men. For these robbers would haue dismissed the *Bussarmans*, so they call their Catholikes, if they would haue deliuered the *Cephars*, that is, Infidels, as they esteeme the Christians, vnto their power. One of their holy men (which the enemies had surprized) by no torments would confesse any thing to the preiudice of his fellowes. But at last they were forced to agree, and giue the theeues twentie ninths,

ninths, that is, twentie times nine seuerall things, and a Camell to carry the same away. This Country of Turkeman or Turchestan, is the first habitation of the Turkes, and the people were called by that name, both in *Haithons* time, and in the time of *Mauritius*, as in the Turkish Historie you haue heard. *Pliny* nameth the Turkes neerer *Maotis*: but whether in deuouring the people with their swords, as they did the pastures with their cattel, they came from hence, or these from thence, or that *Pliny* might easily wander in so wandering a subiect, all auer, that from hence they went first into Persia, and in succeeding ages haue made many heath whereon the cattell feed: The *Ottoman*-horse blasting with his breath the ground he treads on (according to their owne Prouerbe) there neuer groweth graffe more. The Turkeman Nation is (saith *Haithon*) for the most part Mahometan, and many of them without Law at all. They vse the Arabike Letters.

Simocatta & Niceph. Cal. l. 11. cap. 30.

§. III.

Of the Zagathayan Tartars.

THese Desarts and Theeues haue almost made vs forget our diuision, according to which we should haue told you, that from the Caspian Sea hither, you must (according to *Maginus*) call the Tartars generally *Zagathayans*, [m] so called of *Zagathay*, the Great *Cans* brother, sometime their Prince. Which name [n] comprehendeth also diuers other Nations more ciuill then the former, possessing the Countries, sometime knowne by the names of *Bactriana*, *Sogdiana*, *Margiana*, now *Iesebas*, that is, Greene heads, of the colour of their Turbants: differing from the Persians, whom they call for like cause, Red-heads. These haue cruell warres continually with the Persians, whom they call *Caphars* (as they doe the Christians) for their supposed heresie, of which in the Persian relation hath beene shewed, and for that they will not cut the haire of their vpper lips, for which they are accounted of the Tartars great sinners. In [o] *Boghar* is the seat of their Metropolitane, who is there more obeyed then the King, and hath sometime deposed the King, and placed another at his pleasure. There is a little Riuer running through the Citie, whose water breedeth in them that drinke thereof (especially strangers) a worme of an ell long, which lieth in the leg betwixt the flesh and the skin, and is plucked out about the anckle, with great Art of Surgeons well practised herein. And if it breake in plucking out, the partie dieth. They pluck out an inch in a day, which is rolled vp, and so proceed till she be all out. And yet will not the Metropolitane suffer any drinke but water or Mares milke, hauing Officers to make search, and punish such as transgresse, with great seueritie. *Zagatai* liued the space of one hundred twentie and one yeeres before *Marcus Paulus*, and was (as hee saith) a Christian, but his sonne followed him in his Kingdome, nor in his Religion.

m *M. Paulus. l. 1.*
n *G. Boter.*
o *Ant. Ienkins.*

Here in this Country is Samarcand, the Citie of Great *Tamerlaine*, (of some called *Temir Cutblu*, that is, as *Mathias a Michou* [p] interpreteth it, *Happy Sword*) whose Armie contained twelue hundred thousand: whose Conquests exceed (if Histories exceed not) all the Great *Alexanders*, *Pompeys*, *Cesars*, or any other Worthies of the World. And one of the greatest Monarchs now of the Earth. The *Great Mogore* is said to [q] descend of him.

p *Michouius Lib. 1. Cap. 8.*
q *Iesuit. Epist. Rel. Mag. 1.*

Of him are many Histories written by some [r] that haue liued since his time, and could not well know his proceedings, it being generally deplored, that this *Achilles* wanted a *Homer* [s], which *Alexander* applauded in him, but wanted for himselfe: onely one *Albacen* (an Arabian which then liued) hath written largely thereof, and that (as he saith) by *Tamerlans* command, which *Iean du Bec* [t], Abbot of Mortimer, in his voyage into the East Countries, met with, and had it interpreted to him by an Arabian, and wee vpon his credit: which if any thinke to be insufficient, I leaue it to his choice and censure. That Author saith, that *Tamerlan* descended of the Tartarian Emperours, and *Of* his father was Lord of Sachetay, who gaue to his sonne *Tamerlan*, (which name signifieth *Heauenly grace* in their Tongue) his Kingdome, while hee yet liued, appointing two wise Counsellours, *Odmar*, and *Aly*, to assist him. Hee was well instructed in the Arabian learning, and a louer of Learned men. Nature had set in his eyes such rayes of Maiestie and beautie, that men could scarce endure to looke on them. He wore long haire, contrary to the Tartarian Custome, pretending, that his mother came of the race of *Sampson*. He was strong, and had a faire leg: whereas *Leuuclauius* saith, he was called *Tamurleng*, of his lamenesse. His first Warre was against the Muscouites, whom he ouercame: The second, against the King of China, with like successe (I mention not his battailes in ciuill warres:) The third, against *Bauazet* the Turke (whom he captiued) passing thither by the way of Persia; where *Gumes* Author of the Sophian Sect, a great Astrologer;

r *Leuuclau. Pand. Iouius, &c.*
s *Lib. Orat. pro Arch.*
t This Historie of *Albacen*, or the principall parts thereof, I haue published in my Pilgrimes, *To. 2. li. 1.*

Brissius also tels of his lameness, with other things of his schooling in Carmania, where his fellow schollers chose him their King, and other things not seeming credible.

longer, and accounted a holy man, encouraged him with prophecies of his good successe. This Warre he made against *Baiazet* in behalfe of the Greeke Emperour, and others, whom the Turke oppressed. He went priuately to Constantinople, and had sight of the Citie, with all kindnesse from the Emperour. He inuaded Syria and Ægypt, ouerthrew the Soldan, and won Cairo; destroyed Damascus, visited and honoured Ierusalem, and the holy Sepulchre, and granted great Priuiledges thereunto. The Princes of Lybia and Barbarie, by their Embassages in Ægypt, acknowledged his Soueraignetie: In his returne by Persia he was encountred by *Gimnes*, who brought with him an infinite number of sundry kindes of beasts, which he made tame, and by which he taught men. As soone as he saw *Tamerlan*, he made his Praiers towards the Heauens for his health, and for the Religion of the Prophet, excommunicating the *Ottomans*, as enemies to the faithfull beleeuers. *Tamerlan* gaue him fifteene or sixteen thousand of his [u] prisoners, which he instructed in his opinion: and after conquered Persia, and so returned to Samarcand, where he had vowed to erect a Church and Hospitall, with all sumptuous Magnificence: thence he went to Mount Althay, to burie his vncle and father in law, the Great *Chan*, in whose State he succeeded. He enriched Samarcand with the spoiles gotten in his warres, and called the Temple which he there built, the Temple of *Salomon*, wherein he hanged vp Trophees and Monuments of his victories, and caused all his battailes there to be ingrauen, thereby (said he) to acknowledge the Goodnesse of GOD. His Religion was not pure Mahumetisme, for he thought GOD was delighted with varietie of worships; yet he hated Polytheisme and Idols, onely *one* GOD he acknowledged, and that with much deuotion, after this manner. Thus he beat downe all the Idols in China, but honoured the Christians, with great admiration at the strict life of some Votaries. When *Aly* his Counsellour was dead, he built a stately Tombe for him at Samarcand, and caused prayers to be said three dayes for his soule. Being neere his end, hee blessed his two sonnes, laying his hand on the head of *Sautochio* the elder, and pressing it downe, but lifting vp the chinne of *Letrochio* the younger, as it were presaging vnto him the Empire, although the elder were proclaimed. But this Empire was too great, and too suddenly erected to continue. Of his successe and successors in Persia, you haue heard before in the eight Chapter of this Booke.

u Some say 30000.

These three sorts of Tartars which we haue hitherto mentioned, are all, for the most part, Mahumetans. There are some yet (as *Michouius* [x] affirmeth) neere the Caspian Sea, which are nor Mahumetans, nor shaue their haire off their heads, after the Tartarian manner; and therefore they call them *Calmuch*, or Pagans.

x *Lib.1. Cap.7.*

§. IIII.

Of the Cathayan and Mogol Tartars, &c.

THE fourth are those which in greatnesse are first, namely, the Cathayans, called *Carabas* (that is Black-head) of their Turbants, as the former, *Iesolbas*. But of their Religion, further then that which hath beene before expressed, we can say little. And it seemeth by the relations mentioned in the former Chapters, that they are Gentiles or Christians, and not of *Mahomets* errour. *Chaggi Memet* y, a Persian Merchant, related (as in part is said before) to *Ramusius*, that he had beene at Campion, *Damir Can* then raigning, and that vnto *Camul*, the Westerly part of Tanguth, they were Idolaters and Ethnikes: from thence Westwards, Musulmans, or Saracens. In the Epistle of *Caruallius* z the Iesuite, it is reported by a Mahumetane Merchant, that they were Christians, for those reasons (it seemes) yee haue heard before. By *Benedictus Goes* his obseruations yee haue seen them so detested to *Mahomet*, that a tender Lady of the weaker sexe (in the strength of sect) from the remote parts of Cascar, bordering on China, visited Mecca in Pilgrimage. And their zeale, or pretence thereof, put him into often perils, for his faith shall I say, or his goods? yet doth he make a difference between the Saracens and the Tartars; these it seemes professing robbery, and little minding any religion. They worship in those parts to the West, for that way stands Mecca.

y *Chag. Memet.*

z *Caruall. Epist.*

The fifth and last forme of our Tartars, are those which abide in those places, whence the Tartars first issued to ouer-whelme all Asia with their Armies: of which is related at large in the eleuenth Chapter: of which, for want of probable intelligence, I can say little more. Our Maps place there the Hords of the Danites, Nephthalites Circmissians, Turbites, and other, which some deriue from the dispersion (as is said) of the ten Tribes. Here is Tabor also, whose King was by *Charles* the fifth, Emperour in the yeere 1540. (as before is said) burned at Mantua, for soliciting to Iudaisme.

Pope

Pope *Innocent*, King *Lewes* of France (by meanes of *William de Rubruquis*) and the King of Armenia, solicited (as you haue partly heard) both the great *Can*, and his chiefe Princes, to become Christians: and it is likely that the Tartars might, if diligence had beene vsed, and some Superstitions had not darkened the Christian profession, haue thereunto beene perswaded, which many also of them were, as appeareth in *Haiton. Mat. Westmonast.* and *Vincentius*.

But the Saracens which had before polluted those Countries, where the Mahumetan Tartars now abide, by their suttlenesse of their Law to their lawlesse lusts of Rapine and Poligamie, preuailed (as *Michouius* a reporteth) with *Bathi* and those other Tartars, to embrace *Mahumet*, and refuse Christ. They say, *Essa Rocholla*, that is, Iesus is the Spirit of the Lord; *Mahomet Rossollai*, that is, *Mahomet* is the Iustice of GOD. They obey (saith hee) the Pentateuch of *Moses*, are circumcised, obserue the legall Ceremonies: they haue no Bels, but euery day crie, *La illo illo lob*, which signifieth, that there is but one GOD. They professe themselues Ismaelites, the Christians they call *Dzintzis*, that is, Pagans; and *Gaur*, Infidels b. They obserue three Feasts: the first *Kuiram*, to which they prepare themselues, with their thirtie dayes Lent, and in that Feast offer Rammes, Birds, &c. The second they celebrate for *All Soules*, for which they fast a moneth, visit the graues, and doe workes of mercie. The third, they keepe for themselues and their owne saluation, and fast twelue dayes.

a Lib.3.Cap.5.

b See the Saracen History.

Iosafa Barbaro c (a Venetian, which liued among the Tartars about the yeere 1437.) saith, That they embraced not the faith of *Mahomet* generally, but as euery man liked, vntill about that time, in the dayes of *Hedighi*, a Captaine vnder *Sidahemeth Can*, who first compelled them thereunto, being before free vnto their Idolatries, if they pleased. And of the other Tartars neere the Zagathayans, he saith, That many of them were Idolaters, and carried Idols in the Carts: yea, some of them vsed to worship whatsoeuer Beast they first met with, after they went abroad in the morning: This *Doctor Fletcher* reporteth of the Mordiuit Tartars, adding that they vse to sweare by it all that day, whether it bee Horse, Dog, or whatsoeuer else. And when his friend dieth, hee killeth his best Horse, and flaying off the skin, carrieth it on high vpon a long Pole, before the corps to the place of buriall.

c L.1.apud Ram.

The *Moxij*, at a certaine time in the yeere, take a horse, which they set in the field, with his foure legges tyed to foure posts, and his head to another post, fastened in the ground. This done, one of them standing in a conuenient distance, shooteth him to the heart. Afterwards they flay him, and obserue certaine ceremonies about the flesh, eate the same. The skin they fill with chaffe: and in each of his legges thrust a straight stick, that hee may stand vpright, as if hee were aliue. Lastly, they goe to a great Tree, and loppe there from as many boughes as they thinke good, and make a Roome or Sollar in that tree, where they set this horse on his feet, and worship him, offering vnto him Foxes, and diuers Beasts which beare rich Furres; of which offerings the Trees hang full.

Master *Ienkinson* mentioneth a Nation liuing among the Tartars, called *Kings*; which are also Gentiles, as are also the *Kirgessen* (of whom wee haue spoken) and the *Colmockes*, which worship the Sunne, as they doe also a redde Cloth, fastened to the toppe of a Pole, and eate Serpents, Wormes, and other filth. Neere to which hee placeth (in his Mappe of Russia) certaine Statues, or Pillars of Stone, which sometime were *Hords* of Men and Beasts feeding, transformed by diuine power (if it bee not humaine errour) into this stonie substance, retaining their pristine shape. These Nations are eyther Tartars, or, in manner of life, like vnto them, and may therefore passe vnder that generall appellation. And this may suffice touching the Tartarian Nation and *Religion*, which In the West and South parts of their abode is Mahumetane, in the more Northerly and Easterly, partly Heathenish, partly Iewish, or Moorish, or mixed, or as may best aduantage them, and most please them, wandring in opinion in like sort, as in their habitation. *Doctor Fletcher* reckons these things as generall to all the Hords of Tartars. First, to obey their Magistrates whatsoeuer they command about the publike seruice. Secondly, Except for the pulique behoofe, euery man to bee free and out of controlement. Thirdly, No priuate man to possesse any Lands, but the whole Countrey to bee common. Fourthly, To neglect all daintinesse and varietie of meates, and to content themselues with that which commeth next to hand. Fifthly, To weare any base attire and to patch their clothes, whether there bee any need or not. Sixthly, to take or steale from any stranger whatsoeuer they can get. Seuenthly, Towards their owne to bee true in word and deede. Eighthly, To suffer no stranger to come within their Dominion, but the same to bee slaue to the first taker, except they haue a Pasport.

D. Flet. desc. of Rus. Cap. 19.

But by this time I thinke the Reader will wish mee their pasport to bee gone from them, who haue shewed my selfe no Tartarian, whilest I dwell so long on this Tartarian discourse, happily herein as tedious to him, as staying in one place would be to the Tartar; a thing so abomi-

abominable, as in anger he wisheth it as a Curse, *Would* GOD *thou mayest abide in one place, as the Christian, till thou smell thine owne dung.* Indeed this Historie, not throughly handled before by any one, drew me along, and I hope will purchase pardon to this prolixitie.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Nations which liued in, or neere to those parts, now possessed by the Tartars: and their Religions, and Customes.

M. Paulus 1.c.

FRom those Countries, inhabited by the Persians and Zagathayan Tartars Eastward, we cannot see with *M. Paulus* his eyes (the best guides we can get for this way) any *Religion* but the Saracen, till we come to Basscia, a Prouince somewhat bending to the South, the people whereof are Idolaters and Magicians, cruell and deceitfull, liuing on Flesh and Rice. Seuen dayes iourney from hence is Chesmur, wickedly cunning in their deuillish Art, by which they cause the dumbe Idols to speake, the day to growe darke, and other maruellous things, being the wel-spring of Idols and Idolatrie in those parts. They hane Hereimites after their Law, which abide in their Monasteries, are very abstinent in eating and drinking, containe their bodies in straight chastitie, and are very carefull to abstaine from such sinnes, wherewith they thinke their Idols offended, and liue long. There are of them many Monasteries. They are obserued of the people with great reuerence. The people of that Nation shed no bloud, nor kill any flesh: but if they will eate any, they get the Saracens which liue amongst them, to kill it for them. North-eastward from hence is Vochan, a Saracenicall Nation, and after many dayes iourney ouer mountaines (so high, that no kind of birds are seene thereon) is Beloro, inhabited with Idolaters. Cascar (the next Countrey) is Mahumetan, beyond which are many Nestorian Christians in Carchan. There are also Moores, or Mahumetanes, which hane defiled with like superstition the Countries of Cotam and Peym (where the women may marrie new husbands, if the former be absent aboue twenty dayes [a], and the men likewise) and of Ciarcian, and Lop. From Lop they crosse a Desart, which asketh thirtie dayes, and must carrie their victuals with them. Here (they say) spirits call men by their names, and cause them to stray from their companie, and perish with famine. When they are passed this Desart, they enter into Sachion, the first Citie of Tanguth, an Idolatrous Prouince, subiect to the Great *Can*: there are also some Nestorians and Saracens, where they haue had the Art of Printing these thousand yeeres. They haue Monasteries replenished with Idols of diuers sorts, to which they sacrifice, and when they haue a male child borne, they commend it to some Idoll, in whose honour they nourish a Ramme in their house that yeere, and after on their Idols festiuall, they bring it, together with their Sonne, before the Idoll, and sacrifice the Ramme, and dressing the flesh, let it stand till they haue finished their prayers for their childs health: in which space (they say) their Idoll hath sucked out the principall substance of the meate: which they then carrie home to their house, and assembling their kinsfolke, eate it with great reuerence and reioycing, sauing the bones in goodly vessels. The Priests haue for their fee, the head, feet, inwards, skinne, and some part of the flesh.

[a] This marriage admits no Non-residence.

When any of great place dieth, they [b] assemble the Astrologers, and tell the houre of his natiuitie, that they may by their Art finde a Planet fitting to the burning of the corps, which sometime, in this respect, attendeth this fiery constellation a weeke, a moneth, or halfe a yeere: in all which time they set before the corps a Table furnished with bread, wine, and other viands, leauing them there so long as one might conueniently eat: them, the Spirit there present (in their opinion) refreshing himselfe with the odour of this prouision. If any euill happen to any of the house, the Astrologers ascribe it to the angry soule for neglect of his due houre, agreeing to that of his Natiuitie. They make many slayes by the way, wherein they present this departed soule with such cates, to hearten it against the bodies burning. They paint many papers, made of the barkes of trees, with pictures of Men, Women, Horses, Camels, Money, and Rayment, which they burne together with the Body, that the Dead may haue to serue him in the next World. And all this while of burning, is the Musike of the Citie present, playing.

b Funerall obseruances in *Sabean.*

CHAMUL, the next Prouince, is Idolatrous, or Heathenish: for so we distinguish them from Saracens, Iewes, and Christians, which I would were not as guilty of Idolatrie as the former, in so many their forbidden Rites, although these haue all; and the other, part of the Scrip-

Idolaters, how vnderstood in this Booke.

Scriptures, whereof those Heathens and Idolaters are vtterly ignorant. Here they not onely permit, but account it a great honour to haue their wiues and sisters at the pleasure of such strangers as they entertaine, themselues departing the while, and suffering all things to be at their guests will: for so are their Idols serued, who therefore for this hospitalitie (they thinke) will prosper all that they haue. And when as *Mangu Can* forbad them this beastly practice, they abstained three yeeres; but then sent a pitifull Embassage to him, with request; That they might continue their former custome, for since they left it, they could not rhriue: who ouercome by their fond importunitie, granted their request; which they with ioy accepted, and doe still obserue.

10 In the same Prouince of Tanguth is Succuir, whose Mountaines are clothed with Rheubarb, from whence it is by Merchants conueyed through the World. Campion is the another Citie of the Countrey, inhabited by Idolaters, with some of the Arabian and Christian Nations. The Christians had there, in the time of *St. Paulo*, three faire Churches. The Idolaters had many Monasteries, abounding with Idols of wood, earth, and stone, couered with gold, and artificially made, some great, ten paces in length lying along, with other little ones about them, which seeme as their Disciples, to doe them reuerence. Their religious persons liue, in their opinion, more honestly then other Idolaters, although their honestie is such, as that they thinke it no sinne to lie with a woman, which shall seeke it at their hands; but if the man first make loue, it is sinfull. They haue also their Fasting-dayes,

20 three, foure, or fiue in a moneth, in which they shed no bloud, nor eate flesh. They haue many wiues; of which, the first married hath the first place and preheminence. Here *Marcus Paulus* liued about a yeere.

Touching the Religion and Customes in Tanguth, the reports [e] of *Caggi Memet* in *Ramusius* (who of late yeeres was in Campion) are not much diserent. He sayth, That their Temples are made like the Christians, capable of foure or fiue thousand persons. In them are two Images of a man and woman, lying in length fortie foot, all of one piece, or stone: For which vse they haue Carts with fortie wheeles, drawne of fiue or sixe hundred Horses and Mules, two or three moneths iourney. They haue also little Images, with sixe or seuen heads, and ten hands, holding in each of them seuerall things, as a Serpent, Bird, Flower,

30 &c. They haue Monasteries, wherein are men of holy life, neuer comming forth, but haue food carried them thither daily: Their gates are walled vp; and there are infinite of Frier-like companions passing to and fro in the Citie. When any of their kindred die, they mourne in white. They haue Printing, not much vnlike to that which is vsed in Europe; and Artillerie on their walls very thicke, as haue the Turkes. All the Carayans and Idolaters are forbidden to depart out of their native Countrey. They haue three Sciences, *Chimia, Limia*, and *Simia*: the first, Alchymie; the second, to make enamoured; the third, Iugling, or Magicke.

e *Ramusius.*

Succuir also is, according to his report, great and faire, beautified with many Temples. Their Rheubarbe they would not bestow the paines to gather, but for the Merchants, which

40 from China, Persia, and other places fetch it from them at a cheape price. Nor doe they in Tanguth vse it for Physike, as we here, but with other ingredients make perfumes thereof for their Idols: and in some places they burne it in stead of other firing, and giue it their Horses to eate. They set more price by an herbe which they call *Membroni cini*, medicinable for the eyes, and another called *Chuai Catai*, growing in Catay at Cacianfu, admirable against very many diseases, an ounce whereof they esteeme as good as a facke of Rhubarbe; whose description you may see at large, according to the relation and picture of the said *Chaggi*, in *Ramusius*: for (to adde that also) they haue many Painters, and one Countrey inhabited onely by them. These Tanguthians are bearded as men in these parts, especially some time of the yeere.

50 Northwards from Tanguth is the Plaine [d] of BARGV, in customes and manners like to the first Tartars, confining with the Scythian Ocean, fourescore dayes iourney from Ezina, in the North parts of Tanguth, and situate vnder the North starre. Eastward of Tanguth (somewhat inclining to the South) is the Kingdome of Erginul, addicted likewise to Ethnike superstitions, wherein yet are some, both Nestorians and Mahumetans. Here are certaine wilde Bulls as big as Elephants, with manes of white and fine haire, like silke; of which some they tame, and betwixt them and their tame Kine engender a race of strong and laborious Oxen. Here is found a beast also as big as a Goat of exquisite shape, which

d *M. Paul.*

Musk of a beast.

60 euery full Moone hath an apostemation or swelling vnder the belly, which the Hunters (at that time chasing the said beast) doe cut off, and drie against the Sunne, and it priueth the best Musk in the world.

The next Easterly Country is EGRIGAIA, idolatrous, and hauing some Christians of the Sect of *Nestorius*. But Tendue, next adioyning, was at that time gouerned by King *George*, a Chri-

Christian and a Priest of the posteritie of *Presbyter Iohn*, subiect to the *Grand Can*. And the *Gran Cans* giue commonly their daughters in mariage to this generation and stocke of *Presbyter Iohn*. The most part of the inhabitants are Christians, some Idolaters and Mahumetans being there also. There bee also that are called *Argon*, descended of Ethnikes and Moores, the wisest and properest men in those parts. All the people from hence to Cathay, are Christian, Mahumetan, and Gentile, as themselues like best. In Thebet, the next Countrey, the people in times past (saith [e] *William de Rubruquis*) bestowed on their parents no other Sepulchre then their owne bowels, and yet in part retaine it, making fine cuppes of their deceased parents skuls, that drinking out of them in the middest of their iolitie, they may not forget their progenitors. They haue much gold, but hold it an high offence to imprison it, as some doe with vs, in Chests or Treasuries; and therefore hauing satisfied necessitie, they lay vp the rest in the earth, feating otherwise to offend GOD. Cambalu is in the North-east parts of Cathay: and fortie miles Westward from hence (all which way is enriched with Palaces, Vineyards, and fruitfull Fields) is Gouza, a faire Citie, and great, with many Idoll-Monasteries. Here the way parted, leading Westward into Cathay, and Southeastward vnto Mangi, or China. TANIFV and Caciansu are Prouinces, which tend Westward from hence, inhabited with idolatrous Nations, and here and there some of the Arabian and Christian profession, full of Cities. Cunchin and Sindinfu are Ethnikes; as is *Thebeth*: where they haue a brutish custome, [f] not to take a wife that is a Virgin; and therefore, when Merchants passe that way, the mothers offer vnto them their daughters, much striuing which of them may be the most effectuall bawde to her childe. They taking to their pleasure such as they like, gratifie them with some iewell, or other present, which on her mariage-day shee weareth, and shee which hath most of such presents, bringeth the most accepted dowrie to her husband, as testimonies of the great fauour of their Idols. This Thebeth contained sometimes eight Kingdomes, with many Cities, but was now desolated by the Tartarians. There are great Necromancers, which by their infernall skils cause Thunders and Tempests. They haue Dogges as bigge as Asses, with which they catch wild Oxen & all sorts of beasts.

CAINDV is an Heathenish Nation, where in honour of their Idols, they prostitute their wiues, sisters, and daughters, to the lust of Trauellers; which being entertained in the house, the good man departeth, and the woman setteth some token ouer the doore, which there remaineth as long as this stallion-stranger, for a signe to her husband, not to returne till the guest be as well gone from her house, as honestly from her heart, and wit from his head. They make money of salt, as in Cathay of paper. In Caraian also, (a large Prouince adioyning) there are some Christians and Saracens, but the most Ethnikes, which are not discontented, that other men should lie with their wiues, if the women be willing.

CARAZAN is of like irreligion, their soules captiuated to the *Olde Serpent*, and their bodies endangered to mighty huge bodies of [g] Serpents, tenne paces long, and tenne spannes thicke, which that Country yeeldeth. They keepe in their dennes in the day, and in the night prey vpon Lyons, Wolues, and other Beasts, which when they haue deuoured, they resort to some water to drinke, and by their weight leaue so deepe impression in the sand, that hereby men knowing their haunt, doe vnderset this their Tract with sharpe stakes, headed with yron, couering the same againe with sand; by this meanes preying on the spoyler, and deuouring the deuourer; esteeming nothing more sauerie then the flesh, nor more medicinable then the gall of this Serpent. More Serpentine then this diet, was that custome which they vsed, when any proper and personable Gentleman, of valourous Spirit, and goodly presence, lodged in any house amongst them: in the night they killed him, not for the spoyle, but that his soule furnished with such parts of body and mind, might remaine in that house. Much hope of future happinesse to that house did they repose in so vnhappy attempts. But the great *Can* killed this Serpent also, ouerthrowing this custome in the conquest of that Prouince.

CARDANDAN confineth on the Westerne limits of Carazan. They make blacke lists in their flesh, razing the skinne, and put therein some blacke tincture, which euer remaineth, [h] accounting it a great ornament. When a woman is deliuered of a child, the man lyeth in, and keepeth his bed, with visitation of Gossips, the space of fortie dayes. They worship the ancientest person of the house, ascribing to him all their good. In this prouince, and in Caindu, Vocian, and Iaci, they haue no Phisicians, but when any be sicke, they send for their Witches or Sorcerers, and acquaint them with their maladie. They cause Minstrels to play while they dance and sing, in honour of their Idols, not ceasing till the Diuell entereth into one of them, of whom those Sorcerers demand the causes of the parties sickenesse, and [i] meanes of recouerie. The *Demoniake* answereth, for some offence to such, or such a god. They pray that God of pardon, vowing that when he is whole, he shall offer him a sacrifice of his owne bloud. If the Diuell see him vnlikely to recouer, he answereth, that his offences are so

e *W. de Rubr. c. 28. Odoricus* saith the same.

f *I. Vat.* reporteth the like custome in Calicut.

g The serpents of Carazan.

h Naked pride

i Infernall Physicke.

so grieuous, that no sacrifice can expiate; but if there be likelihood of recouery, he enioyneth them a sacrifice of so many Rams with blacke heads, to be offered by these Sorcerers, assembled together with their wiues & then will that god be reconciled. This is presently done by the kinsmen of the sicke, the sheepe killed, their blood hurled vp towards Heauen. The Sorcerers and Sorceresses make great lights, and incense all this visited house, making a smoke of *Lignum Aloes*, and casting into the ayre, the water wherein the sacrificed flesh was sodden, with some spiced drinkes, laughing, singing, dancing in honour of that God. After all this reuel-rout they demand again of the *Demonake*, if the God be appeased? If so, they fall to those spiced drinkes, and sacrificed flesh with great mirth, and being well apayed, repaire to turne home; if not, they (at his bidding) renue their superstition, ascribing the recouerie (if it happen) to that Idoll, and if he dyeth notwithstanding, they shiere it off to the want of their full due, fleecing, or tassing the same before, to the Idols defrauding. Thus doe they, in all Cathay and Mangi. Thus much out of the large reports of *Paulus* that renowmed Venetian, k to whom our Relations are so much indebted.

Rubruquius telleth the like of CAIRAK and CARACORAM, where he had beene in these Cataian Prouinces, concerning their *Christophor* of Giant-like Idols, and Idol Temples: in one of which he saw a man, with a crosse drawne with inke on his hand, who seemed by his answers to bee a Christian; with Images like to those of Saint *Michael*, and other Saints. They haue a Sect called *Iugures*, whose Priests are *hanen*, and clad in Saffron-coloured garments, vnmarried, an hundred or two hundred in a Cloyster. On their holy-dayes they place in their Temples two long formes, one ouer against another, whereon they sit with bookes in their hands, reading softly to themselues. Nor could our Author (sitting amongst them) by any meanes breake his their silence. They haue, wheresoeuer they goe, a string about them full of nut-shells, like the Popish beadrols; alway they are vttering these words, *Ou niam hallani*, God thou knowest, expecting so many rewards, as they make such memorials of God. They haue a Church-yard, and a Church-porch, with a long pole on it (as it were a steeple) adioyning to their Temples. In those porches they vse to sit and conferre. They weare certaine ornaments of paper on their heads. Their writing is downewards; and so from the left hand to the right; which the Tartars receiued from them. They vse Magicall Characters, hanging their Temples full of them. They burne their dead, and lay vp the ashes in the top of a *Pyramis*. They beleeue there is one God, that *he is a Spirit*; and their Images they make not to represent God, but in memoriall of the rich after their death, as they professed to *Rubruquius*. The Priests (besides their Saffron-jackets buttoned close before) weare on their left shoulder a cloake descending before and behind vnder their right arme; like to a Deacon carrying the Holiest-boxe in Lent. They worship towards the North, clapping their hands together, and prostrating themselues on their knees, vpon the Earth, holding also their foreheads in their hands. They extend their Temples East and West in length; vpon the North side they build (as it were) a Vestrie; on the South, a Porch. The doores of their Temples are alwayes opened to the South. A certaine Nestorian Priest told him of so huge an Idoll, that it might be seene two dayes before a man came at it. Within the Quiet, which is on the North side of the Temple, they place a chest long and broad, like a Table, and behind that chest stands their principall Idoll, towards the South; round about which, they place the other lesse Idols: and vpon that chest they fet candles and oblations. They haue great Bels like vnto ours. The Nestorians of those parts, pray with hands displayed before their breasts, so to differ from that *Iugurian* Rite of ioyning hands in prayer. Thus farre *Rubluam de Rubruquius*, who was there *Anno*, 1253. In Thebet (saith *Odoricus*) resideth the *Abassi*, or Pope of the Idolatrers, distributing Religious preferments to those Easterne Idolaters, as the Roman Pope doth in the West.

k Of his wealth and family see *Ramusi*. Preface: his Palace is yet in Venice, now deuided into 70. dwellings. *Mich. Lock.* saw both it & his *Mappa mundi* mentioned by *Ramusi*, and his Sepulchre.

l Hypocrisical Shauelings.

CHAP. XVII.

Of other Northerne people adioyning to the Tartars, and their Religions.

THE Permians and Samoits that lye from Russia North, and North-east, are thought to haue taken their beginning from the Tartar-kind, whom they somewhat resemble in countenance. The Permians are subiect to the *Russe*, they liue by hunting and trading with their furres, as doe the Samoits, which dwell more toward the North-Sea. The Samoit, or Samoed hath his name as the *Russe* saith, of eating himselfe, as if they had sometime beene Cannibals: and at this time they will eate raw flesh, whatsoeuer it be, euen the very carrion that lyeth

D. Fletcher. c. 10

lyeth in the ditch. They say themselues, that they were called *Samoie*, that is, *of themselues*, as if they were Indigenæ, *there bred*, and not transplanted from any other people. I talked (sayth our Authour) with certaine of them, and finde that they acknowledge one God, but represent him by such things as they haue most vse and good by: and therefore they worship the Sunne, the Olen, the Loſy, and such like.

a *W. Purſglaue.* b. *Ruſſes* teacuels translated by *Rich. Finch. Oneeko hiſt. ap. Heſſel. Gerard.* Whose Mappe makes these things more plaine.

The PERMACKS, [a] and SERYRIANS are of the *Ruſſe* Religion. The Yougotians are clothed after the Permacke fashion, but worship Images as doe the Samoeds. The Tingoseys a people farre more Easterly, are sayd to worship the Sun and Moone. They weare their apparell all of Deere-skinnes, made closer to them then the Samoeds, being also a taller people. Beyond [b] the Tingoseys liue the Boulashees: beyond them the Seelashee. Beyond the riuer Yeniſey the Imbaki, and Oſtaki, a kind of Tartars. Beyond the Tingoseys is a Riuer called Gera. This space extending Eastward from Ob, a *Ruſſe* was a Sommer in trauelling, and liued there six yeeres, *Oneeko* another *Ruſſe* was first occasion of subduing the Samoyeds to the *Ruſſian* Dominion, in the raigne of *Pheodor Iuanowich*. He sending his sonnes into the Samoyeds Country, found that about the Riuer Ob they were gouerned by the ancientest, had no Cities, liued in hords or companies, eate the beasts they tooke, knew not corne nor bread, were good Archers, sharpning their Arrowes with fish bones and stones: sewed Furres with bones and sinewes for their clothing, which they ware inward in Winter, outward in Summer, couered their houses with Elkes-skinnes: He grew rich by trading with them for Furres. The *Muſcouite* sent thither Messengers gallantly attired, which easily obtayned leaue to erect Castles neere Ob, to which he sent condemned persons, and brought it into the forme of a petty Kingdome. *Boris* the next Emperour built Toboma 200. leagues vp the riuer Ob, and many other Townes on both sides the Riuer, the which were peopled with Samoyeds, Tartars, & Ruſſes. It is ten weekes trauell from Ob to the Tingoseys through the Desarts. They in hords, haue deformed swellings vnder the throat. These trauelling Eastward passed a Riuer which they called c Pisida, & heard the sound of brazen beds: which if it be so, is argument of some more ciuill people, eyther of Cathay or the parts adioyning. The Cathayans are said to trade to Sergolt: From the mouth of Pechora to Ob is tenne dayes sayling. Ob and Ieniſey runne North and South. The Samoyeds report that in Ieneſey are great veſſels drawne with ropes.

c. The Ruſſes call it great Ob.

W. Purſglaue & Ioſ. Logan.

In the yeare 1611. *Ioſias Logan* and *William Purſglaue*, sailed to Pechora, where they anchored July the tenth, and on the sixteenth came to Puſtozera: where Master *Logan* wintered, but *Purſglaue* trauelled from thence by Land to Colmogro. The nine and twentieth of November hee departed with Ruſſes and Permacks, for Slebotca in a sled drawne with two Deere: in their Argesney (so they call their whole company) were two hundred and tenne sleds: and they had aboue fiue hundred for change when the other were weary. These kept company till the fourth of December, and then in company of foure sleds and a Samoyed for a guide, he left the laden sleds, and went in post for Slebotca, where he arriued the ninth day at night: and thence trauelled day and night to Colmogro, where he arriued the twelfth being two hundred and fifte Verſts or Ruſſe miles, somewhat shorter then ours. He returned againe with a better passage to Pechora, by reason of much snow falne in the meane while and frozen, passing ouer the mountaines, which are not high, but a Champaine Countrey. Here left the company the fift of January, and in forty houres continuall post, passed (by report) three hundred and fifty verſts. About the mouth of the Riuer Ob, d is sayd to bee an ancient Idoll, in forme of an olde woman, holding in each arme a child, and a third at her feet, called by her worshippers (the *Iugri*, *Obdarans* and *Condorans*) *Zlata Baba*, that is, the golden olde wife, to which they offer precious Furres, and sacrifice Harts, besmearing the mouth and eyes of the Idoll with the blood. In the time of their sacrificing, the Priest demands of the Idoll touching things to come, and sometime receiueth answere. *Doctor Fletcher* e found this to be a very fable, Onely (saith he) in the Prouince of *Obdoria*, on the Seaside neere the mouth of Ob, there is a Rocke, which naturally (being some what helped by imagination) seemes to beare the shape of a ragged woman with a child in her armes (as the Rocke by the North Cape, the shape of a Fryer) where the *Obdorian Samoites* vse to resort, by reason of the commoditie of the place for fishinge and there sometimes practise their Sorceries, and ominous coniecturings about the good or bad successe of their iourneyes, fishings, huntings, and such like.

d *Zlata Baba Ortel. G. B. E.*

e *D. Fletcher Deſc. of R. c. 20.*

The Samoits or SAMOYEDS are clad from head to foot in Deeres-skinnes, or in Seale-skinnes, with the hairy side outwards downe as low as the knees, with their breeches and nethersto cks of the same, both men and women. They are all blacke haired, naturally beardlesse. And therefore the men are hardly discerned from the women, but by the lockes which the women weare downe their eares. They liue a wilde and sauage life rouing from one place to another, without any property of House or Land. Their leader in euery company is their *Papa* or Priest.

The

The *Samoyeds* are Idolaters and Witches, obseruing Deuelish superstitions, as witnesseth *Rich. Iohnson*, who on the fifth of Ianuary, in the yeere, 1557. saw amongst them, as I followeth. The *Samoyeds* about the bankes of Pechore, are in subiection to the Muscouite, and when they will remoue from one place to another, then they will make Sacrifices, in manner following. Euery kindred doth Sacrifice in their owne Tent, and he that is most Ancient, is their Priest. And first the Priest doth begin to play vpon a thing like a great Siue, with a skinne on the one end like a Drumme; his Drumme sticke is about a spanne long, and one end is round like a ball, couered with the skin of an Hart.

f *R. Johnson apud Hak. to. 1.*

Also the Priest hath as it were a white garland on his head, and his face is couered with a peece of a shirt of male, with many small ribbes, and teeth of fishes, and wild beasts hanging thereon. Then he singeth, as we vse here in England to hollow, whoope or shout at Hounds, and the rest of the company answere him with this Outes *Igha, Igha, Igha*, to which the Priest with his voyce repleyeth. And they answere him with the selfe same words, so many times, till in the end, he become, as it were, madde, falling downe as he were dead, hauing nothing on him but a shirt, and lying on his backe. I perceyued him yet to breath, and asked why he lay so: they answered, Now doth our God tell him what wee shall doe, and whither we shall goe. And when he had lyen still a little while, they cryed thus three times together, *Oghao, Oghao, Oghao*, and as they vse these three cals, he rseth with his head, and lyeth downe againe; and then he rose vp & sang with like voyces as he did before, with the like answere, *Igha, Igha, Igha*. Then he commanded them to kill fiue Ollens, or great Deere, & continued singing still, both he and they as before. Then he tooke a sword of a Cubite, and a span long (I did mete it my selfe) and put it into his belly halfe way, and sometime lesse, but no wound was to be seene; they continuing their sweete song still. Then he put the sword into the fire, till it was warme, and so thrust it into the slit of his shirt, and thrust it thorow his body, as I thought, in at his Nauell, and out at his fundament, the point being out of his shirt behind, I layd my finger vpon it. Then he pulled out the sword, and sate downe.

This being done, they set a Kettle of water ouer the fire to heate, and when the water doth seethe, the Priest beginneth to sing againe, they answering him. For so long as the water was in seething, they sate and sang not. Then they made a thing being foure square, and in height and squarenesse of a chaire, and couered with a gowne very close, the fore-part thereof, for the hinder part stood to the Tents side. Their Tents are round and are called *Chome*, in their language. The water still seething on the fire, and this square seat being ready, the Priest put off his shirt, and the thing like a garland, which was on his head, with those things which couered his face, and hee had on yet all this while a payre of hosen of Deere-skins with the hayre on, which came vp to his buttockes. So he went into the square seat, and sate downe like a Taylor, and sang with a strong voyce or hollowing. Then they tooke a small line made of Deere-skinnes of foure fathomes long, and with a small knot the Priest made it fast about his necke, and vnder his left arme, and gaue it to two men standing on each side of him, which held the ends together. Then the kettle of hot water was set before him in the square seat, which seat they now couered with a gowne of broad cloth-without lining (such as the Russes vse to weare.) Then the two men which did hold the end of the line, still standing there, began to draw, and drew, till they had drawne the ends of the line stiffe, and together; and then I heard a thing fall into the kettle of water, which was before him in the Tent. I asked what it was, and they answered, his head, shoulder and left arme, which the line had cut off, I meane, the knot which I saw afterward drawne hard together. Then I rose vp, and would haue looked whether it were so or not, but they layd hold on me, and sayd, that if they should see him with their bodily eyes, they should line no longer. (And the most part of them can speake the Russian tongue, to be vnderstood, and they took me to be a Russian,) Then they beganne to hollow with these words *Oghaoo, Oghaoo, Oghaoo*, many times together: in the meane while I saw a thing like a finger of a man, two times together, thrust thorow the gowne from the Priest. I asked them that sate neere to me what it was, that I saw, and they sayd, not his finger for he was yet dead; and that which I saw appeare thorow the gowne, was a beast, but what beast they knew not, nor would not tell. And I looked vpon the gowne, and there was no hole to be seene. At last, the Priest lifted vp his head, with his shoulder and arme, and all his body, and came out to the fire. Thus farre of their seruice, which I saw during the space of certaine houres. But how they doe worship their Idols, that I saw not: for they put vp their stuffe to remoue from that place where they lay. And I went to him that serued their Priest, and asked him what their God sayd to him, when hee lay as dead. He answered, that his owne people doth not know, neither is it for them to know, for they must doe as he commanded.

William Purseloue tolde mee of the like eyther iuggling or Magicall prankes practised by Samoyed-Coniurours or Priests, whom they haue in great veneration. They haue (as he reporteth)

reporteth) certaine Images, some in likenesse of a Man, others of a Beare, Wolfe, &c. which they behang with the richest Furres they can get, hiding them in Caues in the Woods, for feare of the *Russes*: who trauell those Countries to hunt after wild beasts, as Sable, Fox, and Beuer: who, if they light vpon those furred Deities take away the Furres, and bestow on them greater heat in fites. *Pustozera* is in 68. degrees 50. minutes. The inhabitants hold trade with other Samoieds, which haue traffique with the *Ougerians* and *Molgomsey*, for Sables, blacke and white Foxes, Beauers, Downe, Whales-Finnes. The *Russes* maleguing others that gaine which themselues find in the Samoied-trade, traduced the English amongst them as Spies. The *Ozera* or lake before the Towne was frozen ouer, the thirteenth of October, and so continued till the twentieth of May. *Iosias Logan* there obserued, and the eleuenth of December, hee could see but the way of the Sunne-beames: on the thirteenth, the beames burnot the Sunne: which on Christmas day he saw rising at South and by West, and setting at South West and by South: not wholy eleuated from the Horizon, but all the way the neither part of the Sunne seeming iust and euen with it. They found the harbor of Pechora full of Ice in Iuly, the tide strong and dangerous. The Towne of Pechora is small, it hath three Churches; the poore in the Spring and Summer time liue by catching Partridges, Geese, Duckes, Swans: salt the flesh and liue on them most of the Winter. Sayling from *Pustozera* in August towards *Nouaziemla*, they fastened themselues to a piece of Ice, which caused their returne homewards.

Ios. Leg.

R. Finch.

W. Gourden.

W. Rossglone.

The Samoieds know these vnknowne Desarts, and can tell where the Mosse groweth, wherewith they refresh their wearied Deere, pitching their tents of Deere-skins neere the same. Their wiues and daughters fetch wood sometimes tenne versts off, they hang kettles on the fire with snow, of which melted, euery one drinkes a carouse. When they haue supped, they spread a Deeres skinne on the snow with in the Tent. Whereon he resteth couered with his day-apparell. Tenne or twelue of the boyes, or maides watch the Deere to keepe them from Wolues or Beares: making a great shout if they see any. For two hundred and fifty sleds they pitch euery night three Tents. The light of the Moone and snow helpe them in their trauels.

The Hollanders in the yeere 1494, sent to discouer a way to Cathay and China, by the North-East, g which by Master *Burrough*, *Pet* and *Iacman*, Englishmen, had a beene long before in vaine attempted. *William Barents* was the chiefe Pilot for this discouerie. This yeere h they sayled thorow the straits of Vaygats, and thought themselues not farre short of the Riuer Ob, The next yeere they returned for the same discouery. They i landed in the Samogithians or Samoyeds Countrey, and named a place, because they there found Images carued of wood, *Idall nooke*. They giue names to places long before discouered by the English, as if they had beene the first founders. They learned of certaine Muscouits, that the Inhabitants of *Noua Zemla*, had neither religion, nor Ciuility prescribed them by any Law, but worshipped the Sunne, Moone, and North-Starre, and euery yeere offered vnto them sacrifices of Deere and other things. On the nine and twentieth of August there arose a thicke fogge, whereupon *Oliuer Brunel* (which had beene three seuerall yeeres sent by the King of Denmarke, for the discouery of Groenland) reporteth that in 76. Degrees hee had often obserued such thicke fogges, that some perished thereby. These happened most commonly in October and Nouember. The last of August they had speech with the Samoyeds, they were of k short stature, scarsely foure foot high, with long hayre, broad faces, great heads, little eyes, short and bow legges, very swift, clothed with beasts skins, whereof the hayrie side was outward. They know no God. The Sunne (whose presence they are long deprised of in the Winter (which is recompensed in their nightlesse Summer:) is worshipped amongst them. And when the Sunne is declining out of their sight, the Moone or North-Starre, is his receiuer or successour (if you will) in that tribute of their deuotions. They haue besides, many Idols rudely carued. In times past they had no King; but now they chuse one to that dignity. They bury the dead, and offer yeerely their sacrifices for them to the Sunne, Moone, and North-Starre, of their Deere, which they burne, except the head and feet. They eate the flesh of wild beasts, eyther raw, or dryed in the ayre; which make them haue very vnsauory breath. On the sixth of September two of them went on shore, on the Continent of Moscouia, and encountred with a Beare, which killed one of them: his crie brought in other of their fellowes (which were also straglingabout) to his rescue, but the Beare said hold also vpon one of them, and could not be driuen to forsake his prey, till himselfe became a prey in recompence. The two torne carkasses were there buried. They tooke from one Beare which they killed, an hundred pound of fat, which serued them for their lamps: the skinne was nine foot l long, and seuen wide.

g *Hak. Voy. to. 1. Gotad. de Veer. 4p. De Bryn. 3. par. Ind. Orient.*
h *Naug. 1.*
i *Naug. 2.*

k Description of the Samyeds.

l From Cherry Iland they brought home a Beares skin 13 foot long. *Ionas Poely.*

In the yeere 1596. m there were sent other two shippes, to prosecute this Discouerie, which on the fourth of Iune had sight of a triple Sunne, attended and guarded with a double Rainbow,

m *Naug. 3.*

Rainbow, one encompassing them, the other crossing them ouerthwart. After many dreadfull combats with the Ice, and one of the ships departing from the other, they were forced to winter in *Noua Zemla*; where they built them a house to serue them for a fortification against the sauage Beares, tempestuous stormes, continuall snowes, Ice, and vnspeakeable cold; and (if worse may bee) a worse then all these, they endured a continuall night of many weekes, wherein neither the Sun, nor any of his courtly traine, the least rayes to be the harbingers of his desired presence, did present themselues to their eyes: and the fire could scarcely preuaile against the insulting tyranny of the cold to warme them. The Beares together with the Sun forsooke them, but plentie of Foxes remained; and with the Sun the Beares also returned, sometime laying violent siege to their house. From the fourth of *Nouember*, till the seuen and twentieth of *Ianuarie* they saw no Sun. Their Watch also or Clocke was by violence of the cold forced to stand still, that they could not measure their times. Thus did they waite in expectation of the Sunnes returne, that they also (not able futher to pursue the voyage) might returne home, which eleuen of them did in *October* following.

But seeing these North-easterne Seas are so frozen and vnpassable, I will therefore in an inkie Sea finde an easier passage for the Reader, with more, both ease end securitie, to the mightie Kingdome of China, whereof wee are next to speake.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Kingdome of China.

§. I.

Of the Names, Prouinces, Cities, and situation thereof.

CHina is supposed of some, to be that Countrey, whose people of *Ptolomey* are a called *Sinæ*. Some thinke them to bee the people mentioned by the Prophet *Esai* [b], whereunto *Iunius* also inclineth. The Arabians call them צין *Tzinim*: and the Portugals first of all other (because they could not pronounce it aright) called them *Chinians* (saith [c] *Ioseph Scaliger*) *Pierre du Iarric*, saith, [d] that before that time in all the East they were called *Chin*, and the Inhabitants of Ceilan were called *Chingalee*, because they were mixed with the Chinois; and Cinamom, was of the Persians named *Darchini*, that is, wood of China, as some thinke: he addeth their opinion that deriue that name from the Chinian salutation, in which they vse the word *Chi*, *Chin*, as a nickname therefore giuen them: and others that thinke the Title Chincheo gaue name to the whole Region: but it were tedious to recite heere the seuerall opinions in this question. And fitter it is to heare *Riccius* his iudgement, who being sent into the Indies *Anno* 1578. after foure yeeres stay at Goa and Cochin, was by the Iesuiticall Visitor employed for China, in which he liued, about eight and twentie yeeres; some of which he spent in Nanquin and other places, but the ten last in Paquin, the Royall City, and Residence. He out of his experience could best informe vs of China affaires, and a little before his death (which hapned the eleuenth of *May* 1610.) writ certaine Commentaries of his obseruations, which *Trigautius* another Chinian Iesuite hath since reuised and published; protesting sincere truth in his Relations, which (he saith) many former Writers, euen of their societie, wanted in many things, partly receiuing by heare-say of China Merchants, partly staying small time, and but in the skirts of the countrey. This premise, that gape impute to me a fault, so much after so good intelligence, to haue increased this History of China, the most admirable this day in the world. For the name he acknowledgeth *Ptolomey* his *Sinæ*, and the ancient *Serica Regio*, to agree with this, where the poorest are clothed in silke, and whence other countries are therewith stored, the inuention whereof (saith report) 2600. yeeres before Christ. But of all these names [e] the Chinois know none: whose custome is, that when any new family attaineth the soueraignie, the Countrey receiueth with the new Lord, new Lawes, and a new Name. So they write that it hath sometimes beene call. d *Thao*, which signifieth *Broad*; after that *Tu*, that is, *Rest*; next *Ssin*, or *Ordre*; afterwards *Scam*, *Adorned*; then *Chen*, which is *Perfect*; *Tho*, the *Milken way* in Heauen, with other names many. But in the reigne of this family, which is called C I V, the Kingdome is stiled M I N, which signifieth *Brightnesse*, to which they adde T A, calling it [f] *Tamin*, or *Great Brightnesse*. Fewe of the neighbour Nations obserue this, and businesses of them selues diuersly named; Those of Siam and Cochin call it *Cin*, whence the Portugals call it *China*;

a *Ptol. Geog. 7. 5. cap. 1.*
b *Esai. 49. 12. Ost. in par. ap. Iun. Annot.*
c *Scal. Can. Isag. 43.*
d *Pierre du Iarric. I. 6. del' histoire des Indes. Orient. cap. 17. Gouard. Artius hist. indiæ Orient. c. 49.*

Silke when inuented.

e *Ex Riccius Commentaries of China, Cochin China, Bunchina, Cattay, &c.*

f *Petrus* hath this name. Eccelanus Tangis. *Odorico, N. di Conti, Mangi. Polo* this, and *Cam. Langhord* saith, that the Magistrates called the Counsels far from the court *Mangin*: that is, barbarous.

China; the Iaponites, *Than*; the Tartars *Han*; the Westerne Saracens (as hath beene obserued) *Cathay*: and the Chinois themselues haue one name common to all ages *Cumquo*, as also *Chiuen hoa*; which signifie, the former, *a Kingdome*, the other *a Garden in the middest*: they conceiuing the Earth square, and their Country in the midst thereof, which made them offended with our Maps that placed them in the furthest East: and *Ricius* so disposed his Maps after, that he placed them in the middle of the same. The King is entituled *Lord of the Vniuerse*, which how boysterous soeuer, is more excusable then in many other inferiour Potentates, the Chinois thinking (according to their Geographie) that the World contained but few other Nations, and those for the most part so contemptible, that they willingly relinquished them, or thought them not worth the conquering. Neither was euer any one Kingdome so worthy the name of GREAT, beginning at the Ile *Hainam* (which signifies the South Sea) in the 19. degree, and extendeth Northwards to 42. and from the 132. degree in Longitude (reckoning from the Canaries) in the Prouince Yinnan, to the 132. Eastwards. This hath been obserued by Mathematicall Instruments and obseruations of Eclipses in their Kalenders, and especially for the Northerne computation, it is out of doubt. But for illustration hereof, we will adde out of one of their owne bookes, entituled *A description of the Kingdome*, printed 1579. thus interpreted. In this Kingdome are two Royall or Parliament Prouinces, Nanquin and Pequin (the one signifying the South Court, the other the North) and besides these, thirteene others. In these fifteene Prouinces or Kingdomes, are numbred by another diuision 158. Regions or Shires (they call them Fu) the most of which haue twelue or fifteene Cities, besides Townes, Villages, Castles, and Hamlets. In these are two hundred seuen and forty great Cities, which they call CHEV, rather in dignitie then greatnesse, or otherwise, exceeding the inferiour Cities, called *Hien*, of which are 1152. The persons of such as are growne to mans estate (all which pay tribute to the King are 58. millions, 550. thousands, 801: not reckoning the feminine Sexe, Boyes, Stripling, or Youths, Eunuches, Souldiors, Magistrates, the Kings kindred, Students, and many others. And yet of Souldiors, notwithstanding their long peace, are maintained in perpetuall pay and seruice aboue one million; the three Northerne Prouinces, being almost halfe of them in militarie stipend. The bordering Kingdomes tributaries, are to the East three, to the West fiftie three, numbred in that Booke; though this tribute bee of no great value. The Kingdome is also fortified by Nature and Art: the Sea on the South and East, and steepe Precipices ioyned together with a strong wall, the space of foure hundred and six leagues to the North, and a sandie Wildernesse on the North-west; all conspiring to the strength thereof; and for the South-west it is full of Hills and Desarts, with a few small Seignories, vnworthy their feare or desire. It is diuided into fifteene Prouinces, six whereof border on the Sea, *Cantan, Foquien, Chequiam, Nanquin, Xantum, Paquin*: the other nine be inland, *Quidonsi, Hunnam, Honan, Xiensi, Xansi, Suchion, Quoichen, Iunan, Coansi*. Some found these names some what otherwise. The Kings residence is at Paquin, though Paquin enioyeth also a Court Royall, as being the Royall Seat of the ancient Kings; which some place in Quinsay; but of that afterwards.

1. *Pantoia.*

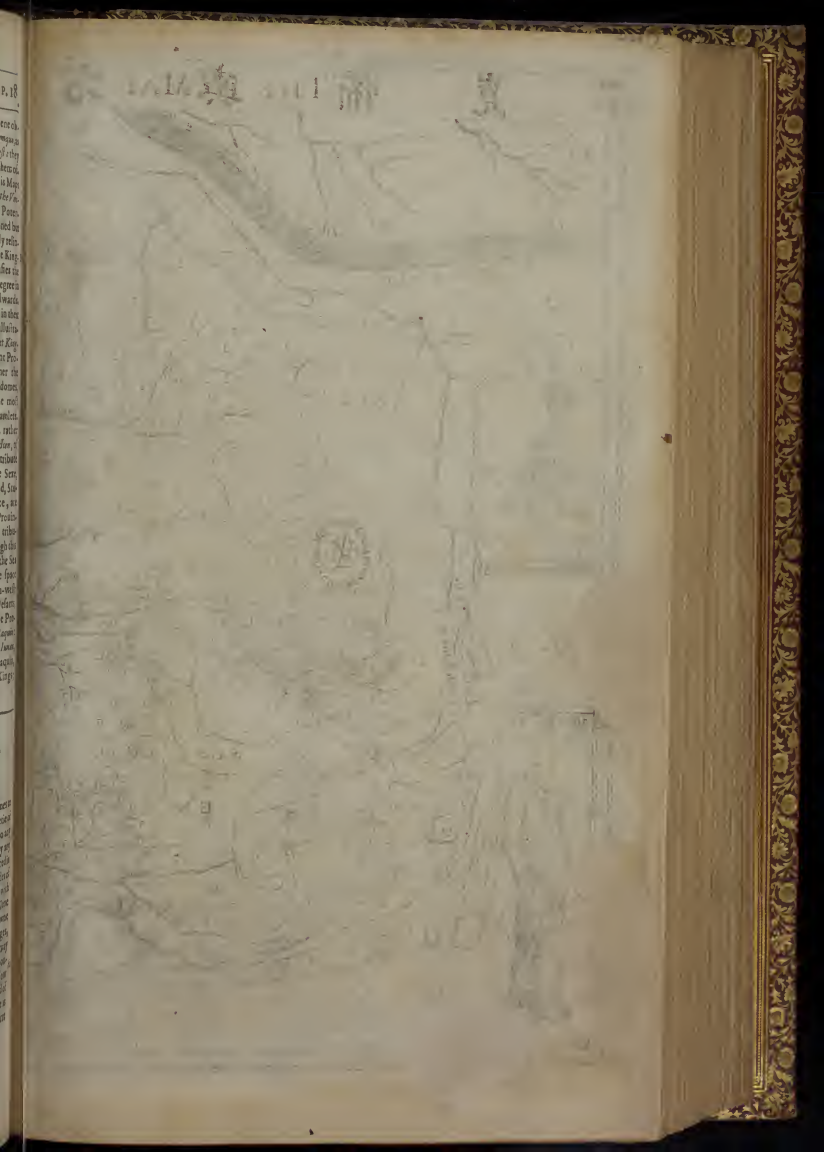
§. II.

Of the Commodities of China; and commodious Riuers and shipping: with two Maps, one made by HONDIVS, *the other* h *taken out of a China Map made there by the Chinois.*

h Of the large *China* Map, see an exposition, Tom. 2. of my Pilgrimes, Mag. 3.

BY reason of this large extent both East and West, and North and South, it comes to passe, that no Country yeelds such varietie of things, growing in such varietie of Clime and Soyle; making others indebted to it, but it selfe not indebted to any Country, either for necessitie or delicacie of diet. Neither haue wee scarcely any thing in Europe, which is not there found; and what is missing, is more then recompenced in other things exceeding. There is store of Wheat, Barley, Millet, Panike, and other kindes of graine. In Rice (their chiefe food) it farre excelleth Europe. Of Beanes and Pease (wherewith they feed their Beasts) in some Prouinces they haue two or three Haruests in a yeere. None of our principall fruits, but Olives and Almonds, are wanting: others they haue vnknowne to vs, as those which they call Longanes, Coco-nuts, and other Indian fruits. Their Oranges, Limons, Pome-Citions, farre excell the European in varietie and delicacie. The like we may say of their Garden herbes, which Religion to some, to others Pouertie, haue made their onely food. Great is their varietie of Flowers: many heare vnknowne; but there, the colour more respected then the sent. As for distillations, they neuer, till of late by vs, had heard of such an Art, Beetele and Arecca i growes in the foure Southerne Prouinces. Their Wine is farre

i See 1. c. 18.



方輿備覽 THE MAP

102
107
112
117
CAR
ACATAI vel Cattaia regna.
REGNUM CIALIS
SCI
EN
SI
QUI
CHEU
HU
SUS
CU
CO
EN
IU
SI
NAN
Flumen
Lacus Constantinum
Flu men Tarsis
chiam
Cauchinchina
MATHAEUS RICIUS.
A Picture of a Chinese man

127
132
137
142
SCI
PE
AN
QUIN
YI HO
Pekin
Polo Cam
NAN
NAN
China
Fluv. Jaune
Nanquin
CHI
AN
AM
Nan
Nanquin
CAN
TON
Canton
Amacao
S CHUAN
TUM
CORAI vel COREA Regnum China vectigale
Sciantu
QUIN
CHE
QUIAN
FU CH
SI
IAN
Picture of a China woman
30
35
40
25
20

THE NEWBERRY
LIBRARY

HONDIVS *his Map of China.*

fatre inferior to ours; for their Grapes are fewer, and lesse pleasant: nor doe they make Wine of them, but of Rice and other things; which is both well tasting, and not so burning as ours. They commonly feed on Porke: they haue store also of Beefe, Mutton, Goats flesh, Hennes, Duckes, Geese: they feed also on Horses, Mules, Asses, Dogs, which are sold in the Shambles as well as other flesh. But in some places, either for Superstition or Husbandry, they spare their Beeues and Buffalls. Venison, especially of red Deere, is plentifull, Hares, and other things, all verie cheape. Their Horses are not so comely as in these parts, but in number, cheapenesse, and vse for burthen, excelling. Yet is there lesse need of such carriages, by reason
50 of plentie of Riuers, which Nature or Art hath prouided through all the Countrey. Hence is there such store of shipping, that a moderne Author hath written, that there liue as many on the Waters, as on the Land: which, to such as sayle in those Streames, will not seeme too excessiue an hyperbole. And I dare affirme this as a thing credible, that there is as much shipping in this Kingdome, as in all the world besides; vnderstanding this assertion of fresh-water vessels: for their sea-vessells are fewer and worse then ours. *Pantoeia* [k] reporteth his owne iourney from Macao to Paquin, the space of six hundred Spanish leagues (which the next way, by land, is reckoned [l] 450.) in all that space trauelling but one day by land; for shortning his way; otherwise all the way by water, carried in a Riuer, called of the Chinians a little Sea for the greatnesse, (being the greatest which euer he saw, in some places two or three myles
60 broad, often tempestuous, and cause of many shipwrackes.) The Chinois dare not sayle in it by night: and they say, That if one fall in, hee is so whirled, that swimming can scarcely saue him. They call it Yamsu, or the sonne of the Sea. It abounds with Sea-fish a hundred leagues

k *Pantoeia & Ric. Rapel.*

l *Ricius* accounts from the chiefe City of Canton to Paquin 7065. China measures, fiue of which make a mile, fifteene a league.

leagues from the Sea. Here sayled after that in another Riuer of like bignesse, whose waters were thicke and myrie, which they clarifie with Allome, before they can drinke it: All the rest of the streames that hee passed, were made by mens hands, aboue two hundred leagues. That yellow or muddie streame, at his beginning makes a Lake, and then runnes Westward beyond the walls, to the Tartars, and then backe againe by those walls, compassing the Prouince of Sciensi, running South, and after East, to the Sea. It often ouerflowes, and doth much harme, not subiect to their walls and lawes, and often changes the sandie channell. Some Magistrates are appointed to appease the Spirit therof with rites, (for they ascribe Spirits to the rule of many things.) From Nanquin to Paquin, the space of three hundred leagues, it seemed to be, as it were, a continued street of ships: and though they came in the morning betimes to Nanquin, yet were thete the same houre aboue fiue hundred sayle of Vessels vnder sayle, readie to enter, which were laden with prouision for the Citie. The Kings ships in that Region, about Nanquin, are reported to be about ten thousand, to carrie his rents and tributes, besides a thousand sayle belonging to priuate men. The ships wherein the *Mandarines* or Magistrates and Officers are carried, are not inferior in sumptuous statelinesse to the ships Royal in Europe; and some exceeding them, hauing Parlors, large Hals, Kitchens, with other Offices; and many windowes, with silke curtaines, and curiously painted; without, cauitoned with galleries; the height, as of high houses; and painted within and without with a certaine liquor, made of a gumme, called Claran, of shining brightnesse, and long continuance, besides great store of carued workes, that they seeme Princes Palaces. *Escalanta* and *Gaspar de Cruz* report a Prouerbe of the Chinois, That their King is able to make a bridge of ships from China to Malacca, which is neere fiue hundred leagues. They haue so great store of timber, that a ship may there bee built for a fourth part of that which it will here cost. The Riuers are no lesse adorned and beautified with Cities, Townes, and Villages; so many, as that in all this way being neere or against one, they had alway sight of another, that all the way seemed a continuall habitation; and so great, that sometime they sayled two or three houres alongst the walls of some Citie. Their Townes and Cities haue high walls.

But to returne to their Horses: Such as are for Warre, are innumerable, but vnfit for seruice, running away at the first neighing of a Tartarian Horse: besides that, they are vnshod with yron, and therefore too tender-hoofed, for hard trauell: neither haue they skill to manage them. Fish is there aboundant, by the neighbour-hood of the Sea, store of Riuers, and Lakes (for their greatnesse and depth) as it were little Seas; besides Fish-ponds plentie, maintained to that intent and purpose, which euerie day store the Market.

Their Forrests breed no Lyons, but great quantitie of Tygres, Beares, Wolues, Foxes: Elephants none, but at Paquin, for shew in the Court. Flaxe they haue not, but Cotton enough for the world; and yet not aboue foure hundred yeeres since it was brought thither. Silke is plentifull and cheape: of Hempe and certaine other hearbes they make cloth: their wooll they sheare, and make thereof slight clothes; but good cloth they know not how to make; although that [b] which is thither brought, bee deare sold. And this note I would commend to our English Merchants, that can best furnish them. For the cold in the Northerne Prouinces, seemes more then the Climate threatens, farre beyond the Countries of Europe in the same height; their huge Riuers and Lakes being frozen ouer; the cause vnknowne, but guessed to bee the Tartarian Mountaines snowie tops, not farre distant: against which, they vse furred garmentes.

b A note for our English East-India Merchants.

All sorts of Metalls are here found. Besides the ordinarie Brasse and Copper, they make another kind, white as Siluer, no dearer then the former. Of melted yron, they make Cauldrons, Bells, Mortars, Furnaces, Ordnance, and the like, all cheaper far then here. Their gold is not base, but not so fine as ours. Siluer is vsed for money, but by weight, not by coyne; and so in all bargaines they vse the ballance, the price higher or lower, as the Siluer is in finenesse: wherein much fraud is vsed. In many places they haue small coynes of Brasse, which come out of the publike Mint. Their great men haue vessels of siluer and gold, but not so common as in Europe. But the women spend much gold & siluer in adorning their heads. Porcelane is their vsuall Table-furniture: the most excellent whereof, is made in the Prouince of Kiamsi, of yellow earth: whence it is dispersed into the other Prouinces, and euen to vs. They will with wyre sew the broken pieces together, and make them hold liquor, as we doe with woodden dishes. Their glasse is not comparable to ours. Their buildings are of Timber, euen the Kings houses, the lower walls sometimes of Bricke; which, together with their store of shipping, argues their plentie of Timber: the kindes, most part, such as with vs. Portugalls therefore call *Iron*, being like it also in colour. Cedar they vse for Funeralls Coffins and Tombes, in which they are curious and costly. They haue also a kind of Reed (the Portugalls call it Bambu) almost as hard as yron, the greater sort, though hollow, and distinguished

guished with knots, yet supplying the roome of studs, or posts, in smaller houses, being as big as with both hands may be griped: the smaller serue for launces, and other manifold vses. Of these is exceeding plenty and cheapnesse.

For Fuell, they haue Wood, Coales, Reeds, Stubble, and a kinde of pitchy bituminous matter, called [1] *Mui* (they haue the like in the Bishopricke of Leege) digged out of the earth, very cheape, and not troublesome with the smoake. Here growes plenty of Rhubarbe, and *Lignum sanctum*: here is also store of Muske. Salt is made not only by the Sea-side, but of diuers waters within land. Sugar is more vsed then Honey, yet like plenty of both. Wax is there not of Honey alone, but another whiter and better, and burning clearer, made by certaine Wormes, which they keepe on Trees to this purpose: and a third sort, made of the fruit of a Tree. Their Paper will not last with ours, nor beare Inke but on one side: yet they haue as white as ours, made of Cotton.

1 This seemes to be some kind of Coale, such as is found in diuers places of our Iland.

They haue Marbles of diuers colours, precious Stones, odoriferous Woods, and Gems, with other rarities. Amongst the rest, a certaine Shrub, the leaues whereof are gathered in the Spring, and dried in the shadow, and so preserued to their daily decoctions; which they drinke continually, both at Table, and when one friend enters anothers house, or oftner, if he makes any stay. They call it *Cia*, sup it hot, more healthsome then toothsome, for it hath a bitter smacke. The Iaponians will giue ten or twelue duckats for one pound of the best, and drinke it in powder mingled with two or three spoonfuls of boyling water: but the Chinois steepe the leaues. They haue another pitchy substance like milke, which they straine out of the barke of a certaine Tree, whereof they make their *Cie*, the Portugals call it *Ciacon*, wherewith they varnish their houses and household-stuffe, and ships, in diuers colours, with glasse-like shining to the eye, smoothnesse to the touch; besides the long continuance, pleasingly maiesticall: the cause they need no clothes for their Tables; which are easily restored to their crystall lustre with a little washing, if by any satty substance dimmed. Oyle is also expressed out of the fruit of another Tree, of vse like the former, but inferiour somewhat, and more plentifull. Cinnamon and most excellent Ginger are here growing; Pepper, Nutmegs, Aloes, and other like, are here plentifully, out of the Ilands and bordering Kingdomes. Gunpowder they haue in great store, which they vse not so much in Peeces (whereto they are more vnapt) as in Fire-workes; in which they are curiously artificiall, liuely expressing Trees, with their fruits, and other rarities. In the first moneth of the yeere wee saw as much this way spent at Nanquin, as would haue serued for two yeeres continuall warre.

§. III.

Of the Cities and Castles in China: and of Quinsay.

OF the number of their Cities and their differing sorts is mentioned before. Besides these, they haue two sorts of Castles, both for fortification and habitation, with priuiledges also of Market, the greater sort named *Hay* 293. the lesse of greater number 2593. Their Villages are innumerable. In each City is an Officer that hath charge of the walls, whereby they are kept faire and strong: and for further beauty, besides commoditie of shadow, they plant trees at their doores, which continue greene all the yeere long. The Cities generally are like one another, except in greatnesse. *Ant. Dalmeida Barros. Bisalanta c.8. Gaspar de Cruz.*

The streets are strait, yeelding prospect from one gate to another. Canton (so the Portugals call it, according to the name of the Prouince: the Chinois call it Quamcheu, or Canceu) is accounted the least of the Metropolitan Cities: it hath on one side a great navigable Riuer, elsewhere enuironed with a deepe trench, filled with water, which is nauigable also; the walls haue fourescore and three Bulwarkes; the streets so broad that ten men may ride in front, and paued, adorned with many triumphant Arches, and shops on both sides: the bridges there and elsewhere in the Kingdome are many, of large free stones very costly, the high wayes very stately which leade to the Cities: and the Kings houses for the publike Officers very magnificent after their manner. Such was the plenty and abundance, that in this one City were spent euery day betweene fiue and sixe thousand Hogs, and betweene ten and eleuen thousand Duckes, besides a great number of Kine, Birds, Hens, Conies, Frogs, Dogs, Fish of many sorts: and yet the most vsuall meate of the Chinois is Rice boyled with water.

Nanquin standeth in two and thirtie degrees, and is eight or ten leagues from the Sea, with a Riuer leading thither. [m] It hath three faire brick walls, with large and stately gates. The first wall contayneth the Kings Palace, which it selfe also is compassed with three walls, in

m *Pantagia.*

in manner of a Castle, with ditches full of water round about them. This I dare be bold to say (it is [n] *Ricius* his report) that no King in the world excells this King in a Palace, if we compare not particulars, but all things together. This first wall is in circuit foure or fiue Italian miles. The second wall containeth the first; and withall, the best part of the Citie, hauing in it twelue gates plated with Iron, furnished with Ordnance; it comprehendeth eighteene Italian miles. The third wall is not continued, but Arte supplying Nature elsewhere fortifying it; the compasse whereof can scarcely be knowne. The Inhabitants say, that two went out on horsebacke, one this way, the other that, and met againe at night, hauing spent the day, each in his semicircle. The greatest part is very populous, howsoeuer there are also Mountaines, Gardens, Groues, and Lakes within the Citie. This circular forme is to be obserued, as of greatest capacitie. There are forte thousand Souldiers in continuall garrison. It is full of Palaces, Temples, Bridges, Towers; of best aire, fertilitie, and ingenious Inhabitants. The Riuer doth not onely passe by, but entreth the Citie with diuers channels made by arte, capable of great ships.

n *Christ. exp. l. 3. cap. 10.*

The streets are (saith *Pantogia*) of two leagues, or of two and a halfe in length, wide, and paued. The compasse is at least eleuen or twelue leagues, and containeth by coniecture two hundred thousand houses, and (according to all the opinions of the Iesuites there abiding) equalling, or exceeding in people foure of the greatest Cities in Europe.

Paquin in 40. degrees.

Paquin (or as *Ricius* alway calls it Pequin) is situate about a hundred miles from that famous Wall against the Tattars: in greatnesse and neatnesse exceeded by that of Nanquin, but in multitude of Inhabitants, Souldiers, and Magistrates, exceeding it. Two high and strong walls compasse the South parts, so wide, that twelue horse may easily runne thereon together, without hinderance. These walls are of bricke, sauing at the foundation of huge stones, filled with earth in the midst, farre higher then those in Europe. On the North side there is but one. On these walls as diligent watch is kept euery night, as in the hottest warre: in the day-time Eunuches watch at the gates, or rather exact customes. The Kings Palace is within the inner Southerne wall, neere the Gates, and so runnes vnto the Northerne wall, the rest of the Citie stretching on both sides. It is lesse then the Palace at Nanquin, but more glorious, that seeming by the Kings long absence a carkasse without life. The Citie is troublesome (being little of it paued) in winter with durt, in summer with dust, which in that Region, wherein it seldome raines, vpon any blast of winde, fills their houses, and to preuent the trouble, there is none of any ranke which goes on foot, or rideth without a vaile hanging downe to their breasts and couering their faces, so thinne that it may hinder the dust and not the sight, preuenting also the tedious knowledge and salutations by others. There are Muletters and Hackney-men in euery corner, to let their beasts to such as will hire them, who also know all chiefe places, and make way in those populous streets vnto their customers, both for a little money. But for this there is also a Booke which relateth the scite and streets of the Citie: they may also hire chaires and beaters to carrie them.

In the Prouince of Sciantum is Cinchiamfu (which in *Paulus* his time, had two Churches of Christians) whence is a Riuer made by hand (a thing vsuall in China) whereby they haue passage to Suceu, and to the Metropolitane Citie of Chequian, Hamceu. This Riuer is so cloyed with ships, because it is not frozen in winter, that the way is stopped with multitude: which made *Ricius* exchange his way by water into another (more strange to vs) by wagon, if we may so call it, which had but one wheele, so built that one might sit in the middle as it were on horse-backe, and on each side another; the wagoner putting it swiftly and safely forwards with leuers or barres of wood (those wagons driuen by wind and saile, he mentions not) and so he came speedily to Suceu and Hamceu, which are of the Chinois esteemed Paradises. They haue a prouerbe, *then Xam thien tham, ti Xam su Hamo: that which the Hall of heauen or Presence-chamber is in heauen, that on earth are Suceu and Hamceu.* And first for Suceu, the beautie, plentie, frequency, situation, make it admirable. It is seated as Venice, but better, in a pleasant Riuer of fresh water, if it may not rather be called a Lake for the stilnesse. They may passe quite through it, either by water or land, all the streets and houses are founded vpon piles of Pine-tree, and the merchandise brought from Marao, and other parts and ports are here sold, as the fittest centre for dispersion. It hath one gate into the land, other passages by boat; innumerable bridges, very stately and durable, but in those narrow tills hauing one oaly arch: butter and milke-meates no where more spent, nor better wine of rice, which is carried thence to Paquin: by the frequencie of the Hauen and multitude of ships, almost denying saith to the eyes, which would thinke all the ships of the Kingdome here assembled, and notwithstanding the continuall going out so supplied as if they neuer weighed: the hand-made Riuers that are made from Nanquin-ward hither, so peopled with Townes, Cities, Villages, as no where in the Kingdome more, as from

Trig. cap. 16. 12.

Suceu.

from hence also to Hamceu. It is scarsely two dayes iourney from the Sea, and the head of that Region, in which are eight Cities. When *Hiumni* expell'd the Tartars, this Region held out longest against him, and therefore to this day payes an excessiue tribute, euen halfe of all which the earth brings forth: some two small *Prouinces*. not paying so much as this one *Region*, and the * Citie alone (as in the printed Booke of the Kings tributes is extant) payes twelue millions to the King, more then the greatest Kingdome in Europe, if some haue not accounted P falsely; and he which knowes this Citie will not marueil at it. It is still kept with a strong Garrison, for feare of innouation.

* *Paniegio.*

P *Botero. Relat. part. 2.* which yet of *France*, &c. cannot be instituted. *Trigant. ep. 1615*

But Hamceu or Hanceu, the Metropolitane of Chequian, is perhaps more to be admired, O situate South-east from Nanquin almost nine dayes iourney, not two dayes from the Sea, in 30. degrees. This Prouince of Chequian is the chiefe of the thirteene washed on the East with the Sea, hauing Nanquin and Kiamsi on the West, Fuquian on the South, Xanton on the North; numbring twelue greater Cities, the chiefe of sixtie three lesse, besides innumerable Townes, Castles, Villages; the best wits, and most learned students in the whole Kingdome; it yeelds a fertile soyle, Art contending with Nature for varietie of Riuers, so many as may seeme impossible to humane industrie, adorned with numberlesse Bridges of many arches, made of huge stones, equall to the Europæan workmanship, and so abounding with Mulberrie trees and Silke-wormes, that all the China Markets, besides other Countries, are hence furnished; and ten vests of Silke may be here had at a cheaper price, then one of Cloth in Europe. Hamceu is the chiefe Citie of this Prouince, yea, in all this Kingdome, lesse perhaps somewhat in compasse of walls then Nanquin, but better peopled: no place in the Citie emptie, nor occupied with Gardens, but all builded, and all the buildings almost with diuers stories, which in other Cities of China is not vsuall. The Inhabitants are so many, and the Tribute so much, that the Iesuites durst not relate that which hereof they had heard by graue testimonie, for the incredibilitie: the description would aske a whole volume. The chiefe street is almost halfe a dayes iourney in length, and cannot be lesse then admirable. For whereas the Chinois vse to erect triumphall Arches, as Monuments; to well-deserving Magistrates and ornaments to their Cities; this one street hath at least three hundred such (besides very many others in other parts of the Citie) of massie stones, and exceeding curious workmanship, that if the houses on both sides yeelded the like splendour, the world could not shew such a spectacle. But they occupie it all with shops, and build the most magnificence of their houses inwards, and yet those not like the Europæan Palaces. There is also a Lake close to the Citie, which the eye can scarcely measure, which sliding into a valley encompassing, embossed with diuers hillocks; hath giuen occasion to Arte to shew her vtmost in the adorning the same, beautifying all those spacious bankes with houses, gardens, groues; a very Labyrinth to this bewitched eyes, not knowing whereat most in this maze to be most amazed, wherein most to delight. And in delights doe they spend their dayes, filling the Lake with vessels, furnished with feasts, spectacles and playes on the water. There is a pleasant Hill in the middle of the Citie, whereon is a faire Tower or Steeple, where they measure their hours by a strange deuice. Out of huge vessels water droppeth from one to another, the lowest being very large, in the middle whereof is perpendicularly raised a rule, distinguished with houre-spaces, which by the ascent or descent of the water, diuide the rising and declining day, and declare the houres: euery halfe houre some men appointed by tables with cubitall letters, to giue notice of the time to all men. From this Hill is a prospect ouer all the Citie. All the streets being set with trees, make shew of pleasant gardens. It is so full of Riuers, Lakes, Rills, Ponds, both in the Citie and Suburbs, as if a man would frame a *Platonicall Idea* of elegancie to his minde. The Idoll Temples are many and stately, which Idolattie where it is wanting in China, hath a worse successour, Atheisme.

Hamceu, Hamcheu, or Hanceu.

The Lake. See the Map.

Quinsay, *cinitas cælis*. See it described *supr.* 98.

Let vs stay a while and gaze (for where haue you such an Obiect?) Is not Quinsay (whilome the Royall Seat of the Kings of Mangi, as *Venetus* recordeth, supposed by our moderne Geographers to be swallowed vp with some Earthquake, or in *Bellona's* all-consuming bellie) here raised vp from the graue? The *Lake* situate on the one side, (so *Paulus* reports of Quinsay) the *Name* Quinsay signifying the Citie of Heauen, and this called a Heauenly Paradise by the Chinois; and Han signifies *Lactea via* in Heauen; and Ceu, *perfect*: yea, Quinsay, or as *Odoricus* calls it, Cansaia, and Han or Chanceu, not so disagreeing in sound, as different Dialects are wont: the *excellency* being chiefe Citie in the Kingdome, and this Prouince sometimes royall, as Pequin now and Nanquin are; the *situation*, South-east from Cinczianfu, and * fiue and twentie miles from the Sea: the *high houses*, and *shops* vnderneath: the exceeding trade, reuenue, pastimes by water, multitudes, fairenesse, and length of the streets; all so conspiring to proue this Han or Hamceu to be that Quinsay of *Paulus*. True it is, that Quinsay was then greater, being as *Venetus* sayth, an hundred

q *Ha da una banda un lago, &c.*

* That which is before said almost two dayes iourney, is to be vnderstood of the Chinois iournies, which make slow passage, sometime but five miles a day.

hundred miles about: But the euertiing of that *Fiefor* and his Paniffie, then ratifying, the diuertiing of the Court to Cambalu by the Tartars, and after to Nanquin by *Hanyow*, and neuer returning hither, might lessen the fame. And might not warres, in that long siege by the Tartars, in the recouerie thereof by the Chinois, easily circumcise her superfluitie? Besides, who knoweth whether all this huge Lake might be contained in that account of *Paulus*, still compassed about with buildings? Or before those warres, the Lake it selfe might (as Suceu now is) be builded on; which Time and Warre hath consumed; nor since the remoue of the Court were so necessarie. *Mandeville* mentions warres at Quinsay in his time; *Nicolo di Conti* (which was here about the yeere 1440.) saith Quinsay was in his time new built, of thirtie miles compasse. Or if any like better, that Suceu it selfe (to which also many of these arguments agree) should be this Quinsay, I contradict not. That which sometimes I haue thought that Quinsay, after so long a sicknesse, and consumption of warres, died; bequeathing her Land-greatnesse to Nanquin, her Sea-treasures to Suceu, both arising out of the ashes of that Quinsay-Phenix; I find cannot (I meane for Nanquin) agree with the distance betwixt Suceu and Nanquin, aboue foure dayes iourney. Of this Quinsay, let the Reader take a large and leasurely view in *Marcus Paulus*, which but for tediousnesse I could hither haue transcribed. Whether Hanceu or Suceu be it, or whether both these Paradises doe now succeed that *Citie of heauen*, or wheresoeuer else it be, it was (which these are) the wonder of the world; reported (saith *Paulus*) to haue 12000. bridges, 1600000. households: in which was a rich Mart of all commodities of the world; there was spent euery day 9589. pounds of Pepper, it had ten principall Market-places, square, each square halfe a mile, the chiefe streets leading thereto being fortie paces wide, and running strait from one end of the Citie to the other, these Market-places foure miles asunder. But I forbeare the rest; this Citie had twelue principall Companies or Arts, each of which had 12000. shops: the adioyning Countrey (reckoned the ninth part of Mangi) paide fixe millions and 400000. Duckats to the Great *Chan* yeerely for custome of Salt, made of the Sea-water, by the heat of the Sunne in large plaines: besides sixteene millions and 800000. Duckats otherwise.

M.P.l.1.c.5. 68.

But let vs looke on some of the meaner Cities, one (of those called *Hien*) is Scianhai in the Prouince of Nanquin, in 29. degrees ouer-against Cerra, and within foure and twentie houres sayle of Iapon, and therefore is defended with a Garrison and a Naule; it hath about 40000. households, and the iurisdiction adioyning seemes a continued Citie with Gardens intermixed; payes to the King 300000. Duckats: there is great store of Rice and Cotton, and in this Citie and the Suburbs liberties are 200000. Weauers thereof: the aire wholsome, and they liue ordinarily to a great age, some to fourescore, and fourescore and ten, and many to a hundred yeeres. The keyes of Cities are euery night brought to the Gouernours, and thousands appointed to watch to preuent theeues, themselues being the worst: they ring bells at certaine spaces to each other.

These Cities of China ordinarily want that elegance and magnificence, which stately Temples and sumptuous building doe afford vnto out Cities of Europe. Their houses are 4
lowe; without the ornament of Porches, Galleries, Windowes, and prospect into the streets. Besides these habitations, they haue many which dwell not on land but in their ships. For their shipping is of two sorts, one for sayle, another for habitation also, and these meaner or fairer, according to the wealth of the owners. In the one side they carrie their families, in the other side their passengers. Many Barques are as victualling houses by the way, and likewise as shops of merchandize. Many of the poorer water-dwellers get their liuing by labour on land: their wiues ferry ouer passengers, and vse meanes to get fish. They bring vp thousands of Duckes, hatched with artificiall heate in dung, which hauing fed with a little Rice in the morning, they put out at a doore into the water, which presently swim on land, and eate the weedes which grow among the Rice (these weeders thereby procuring 5
some wages of the husband-men to their owners) and at night are called home with a Tabor, each resorting to their owne Barque. They haue certaine Sea-crowes or Cormorants, wherewith they fish, tying their gorges that they cannot swallow the fishes which they take, till their Masters turne being serued, they are suffered to hunt for themselues: which one in this Citie of London hath lately imitated and effected.

In the winter [f] they haue store of Ice and Snow, whereby the Riuers are frozen euen about Nanquin. They haue abundance of all things necessarie to the life of man, fruits, flesh, and fish, with prices correspondent. They haue two, and somewhere three harueests in the yeere. Few Mountaines, but Plaines of an hundred leagues. Wine they make of Rice. They eare thrice a day, but sparingly. They drinke (be it water or wine) they drinke hot, 6
and eate with two stickes of Iuorie, Ebonie, or like matter, not touching their meate with their hands; and therefore little napery seruedh them. Their warme [t] drinkes and abstinence

[f] *Anth. Dalmeida.*

[t] Of the wholsomenesse and vse of warme drinkes: See *A. Persi. del ber oaldo.*

nence from fruits, are great preseruatiues of their health, which for the most part they enioy, and none of them haue the stone, which some say is with vs caused by cold drinkes: but let vs take more full view of their persons and conditions.

§. IIII.

Of their Persons, Attire, and many strange Rites.

SOme of the Chinois haue faces almost square: many in the Prouinces of Canton and Quamsi, haue two nayles on their little toes, a thing common to all the Cauchin Chinois. Their women are all of low stature, and accoutre small feet their greatest elegance, and therefore binde and swaddle them so from their infancy all their liues, that they seeme, in going, stump-footed: which seemes to be by deuice of some to keepe them within doores. Neither men nor women euer cut off their haire (which is generally blacke, and other colour a deformitie) they let it growe on their crownes only till fifteene yeeres of age, after that all their heads ouer, idisse on their shoulders till twentie yeeres, when they put on their *virilia* u *pileus*, the cap of *manhood*, and then gather it vp, the men into caules or hats, hollow at the top for the haire to passe thorow; which the women vse not, but trimme vp their haire on knots with gold, siluer, stones, and flowers, eare-rings also at their eares, but no rings on their fingers. Both men and women weare long garments with wide sleeues. The men weare shoogs of silke with curious workes and knots: none weares of leather but the basest: yea, their soles they make of cloth. The learned men weare square caps or hats, others round. They beskow long time euery morning in trimming their haire. They vse no shirts, but weare their inmost garment of white cloth, and vse often washing. They haue visants or vmbrellas to keepe off the sunne or raine, borne ouer them by their seruants; the poorer carrie them of lesse forme, themselues. The generall colour of the Chinois is white, more or lesse according to the climate. Their beard is thin, long before it comes, of a few staring haires (in some none) noses little, scarce standing forth; eyes prominent, blacke, little, of egge-fashion; (many dreames they had of *Pantogia's* eyes of a darke gray colour, as if iewels and precious things might thereby be knowne where they were hidden) their eares are small. If they would paint a deformed man, they giue him a short garment, great eyes, and beard, with a long nose, like to vs.

u *Virilia pileus* to the Chinois as *virilia Toga* to the Romans.

Their custome of names is very strange. The surname is ancient, vnchangeable and significant, of which there are not a thousand in all China. The name is also significant, and arbitrary, at the fathers pleasure, if a sonne: For daughters haue no names, besides the surname, but are called after their age and order; the sonnes also are so called by others; first, second, or otherwise, with their surname; the parents onely and ancestors calling them by their names, and themselues in their writings. It would be accounted an iniurie if any other should call them thereby: or if he should call his father or kinsman by his name. When first a childe betakes himselfe to studie, his Master giues him another name, which hee and his schoole-fellowes may call him by, and no man else. When he puts on his *Mans hat*, and marries a wife, some chiefe man giues him another name more honorable, by which all men may call him, but his seruants, or such as are subiect to him. This they call the *Letter*. Lastly, when he is of full ripe age, some graue man giues him his most honorable name, which they call *Great*, and by this any one may stile him: which yet his parents and elders doe not, but onely by the *Letter*. If any make profession of Religion in any of their Sects, his ghostly Father or Authour of his profession giues him a new name (which they call) of Religion. When one visits another, if hee doe not write in his letter (of which afterwards) his honourable name or surname, the Visitee askes him of it, that he may call him thereby without iniurie. And the Iesuites did also take to themselues in China-fashion such honorable names.

Names. Surnames sects.

They are studious of Antiquities. Pictures artificially drawne with inke, without other colours they haue in highest price; the characters also and writings of the Ancients, with their Seales annexed. For many will seeke to gull men with counterfeits. All Magistrates haue the Seale of their office deliuered to them by *Humvin*, which if they lose, they are both depriued and punished, most diligently therefore preserued, carrying it with them to all places, and laying it vnder their heads at night. Men of good sort goe not in the streets on foot, but are carried in a close chaire by foure men, the curtains drawne on all parts but before: to distinguish them from Magistrates, whose chaires are euery way open. The Matrons are also carried in chaires closed euery way, by the forme easily knowne from those of Men. Coaches and Chariots the law forbids. Dice and Cards are common players in China; Chesse also somewhat vnlike ours; for the King goes not out of foure places next him,

Seales.

and the two Bishops haue their Queenes: two men also goe before the Knights, besides the ordinary pawnes. They haue another play which makes the skilfull therein well esteemed, though he can doe nothing else, with two hundred men, some white, some blacke, on a table of three hundred diuisions. This is vsed by the Magistrates. Women goe not abroad, except seldome to see their neerest kindred, or some of baseft condition.

In their offices of vrbanitie and courtesie they goe beyond all others, haue many bookes thereof, and reckon it one of those fiue vertues, which they call Cardinall. I feare to be in the relation, as they in action, tedious: and will but salute their salutations. They vncouer not the head to any, nor stirre the knee or foot, or vse embraces or kissing the hand. Their hands are hid and ioyned in their wide sleeues, except they doe some worke or with a fanne coole themselues, and in salutations first lift vp both sleeues and hands aloft in a modest manner, and then let them fall again, standing face to face, and saying, *Zin, Zin*, which word is a rituall interiection, without any signification. When one visits another, or when friends meet in the streets, they doe thus, bowing also their bodies with their heads almost to the ground: they call this *Zo ye*: the inferiour placing the superiour, and the visited the visitor, on the right hand (in the Northerne Prouinces on the left) and then turne themselues both to the North. In solemner salutations, on high dayes, or after long absence, after the first bowing they kneele and touch the ground with their forehead; and then rise and doe it again three or foure times ouer. In visitations, after other officious ceremonies, they offer him *Chia* to drinke (of which we haue spoken) with other iunkets. Except there bee great familiarity, he which will salute a friend, must at the doore deliuer to the seruant a letter before for his harbenger, to signifie his name in modest termes and affection towards him, with termes answerable to his estate. He is hereby warned to prepare himselfe for entertainment, clothing himselfe with apparell for that purpose, as must the guest also. If they were vnknowne to each other, they prostrate themselues, and knocke the ground diuers times with their foreheads. If they send a Present, they send withall a Letter, containing the Inuentorie of the things sent, with termes very complementall; which he must answere with another Letter of thankes, and a Present of like or greater value besides a recompence to the messenger. Their partings from each other are as full of ceremonie. In their feasts, they set each guest to tables, one furnished with flesh and fish, the other with fruits and iunkets. They send a *Paitre* or Letter (the day, and sometime fiue or sixe dayes) before, to inuite them; and he which cannot come, with another Letter must excuse himselfe. On the day, with the first light he sends new inuitations, and againe a little before the time, or else his guests will not come. Much curtesie is in the meeting, exceeding much straynin and striuing about the place of sitting, as much solemne ceremonie in eating, as if they were bidden to be witnesses of their Hosts ostentation, to view and a little to taste his meates: but after sixe houres spent in this banquet, they may goe home to fill their bellies. In this officious trifling the Chinois spend a great part of their liues; but especially at the beginning of the new yeere fifteene dayes together, and at their birth-dayes.

When seruants salute their Masters, or the baser people their Superiors, they fall on their knees and thrice touch the ground with their foreheads, iust as they doe to their Idols: and when the Master speakes to his seruants, they stand at his side, and at euery answere fall on their knees: and so doe the people to the great men. When one speakes to another they neuer vse the second person, nor the first when they speake of themselues, except Masters and Superiours to their seruants or inferiours. Many formes of complementall modestie in termes they haue, but the lowest, to call himselfe by his proper name, as we vse the pronoune *I*: and if they speake of any, they vse some more honorable name and circumlocution, if of themselues some modester termes. The Iesuites obserue a state and keepe within doores, not easie to be spoken with, because the Chinois contemne such as obserue modestie, and price men by their maiestie and solemne reseruations.

When they send presents to each other, they may without inciuility take some and refuse others: they also vse to send presents in money. If a man be not within, when one comes with his Letter to visit, they leaue the Letter at the doore, to signifie his purpose: and this is enough also for the visited partie when in reuisiting he finds him absent. For euery one that visits must within three dayes be visited, in which respect the Iesuites were forced to cause their Porter or Seruant to keepe a note of them all, lest they should forget to repay these offices. If one meet another which hath not on his saluatory habits, he may not perform these rites till the other be vested for it; for which cause their seruants attend them with these robes; or else he that was attired must put off, and both salute in ordinary habit.

In drinking, the Inuiter beginnes, holding vp his cup in a dish with both hands, all the guests turning to him, and pledging him together at once: supping vp their liquor, at foure or fiue times, although it be water, and not at one draught. No bread is brought into their feasts,

feasts, nor Rice. None are compelled to drinke more then they please. The maiestie of feasts is in variety of dishes, none being taken off the table that are once set on, till the feast ended, and then bestowed on the guests seruants.

Their bookes are full of precepts of obseruance to Parents and Superiours, which outwardly is there performed more then in all the world besides. They neuer sit in equall site, or ouer-against their betters, but on the lower side. This the Scholers performe to their Masters, speaking to them with great reuerence, and (if they bee poore) nourishing them whiles they liue with their owne labour. And when one is admitted Scholer to another, the Master sits in the higher end of the Hall (which is ordinarily to the North, all the Temples, and priuate buildings, if it may be, opening to the South) with his countenance to the doore. The Scholer comes before him, and foure times bowes his body, and as often kneeles downe and toucheth the ground with his forehead: euer after (though higher preferred) sitting at his side in euery meeting: although he hath beene his Scholer but one day. *Trigaut.*

§. V.

Of the mechanicall Arts in China, their Printing, &c.

WHere Nature is so prouident of Materials, Art is easily induced to triall of experiments: of which we will name such as to vs seeme rarest. They generally are not so curious for exquisite workmanship, as to make things saleable at easier and cheaper rates: where Nobilitie is wanting, & the Mandarines pay what they please, and sometime force their employments. They build for themselues, not minding continuance to posteritie; nor will they beleeue without much astonishment the magnificence and antiquitie of European buildings. Foundations they lay not deepe (vsually not at all) within the earth: which makes the greatest buildings short-liued, and their Cities walls to be often repaired. The roofes of their houses, euen where the walls are bricke, are sustained with pillars or posts of wood, and not on those walls. Printing is with them of ancient vse, at least fiue hundred yeeres, some say, more then a thousand and sixe hundred. Their manner differs much from ours, and is rather an expression then impression: they prouide a table of Peare-tree, or other smooth wood, and vpon the same lightly glue the whole sheet or written copie, which being dried is cunningly taken off, so as the characters remayne on the same table, which is presently carued and cut with Iron instruments, that nothing but the draughts or lineaments of the letters are eminent and standing vp. Then with incredible celeritie and facilitie they print off the same, one man sometimes fifteene hundred in one day. And in cutting their tables they are so ready and expedite, that one of our Compolers seemes to mee as long in setting a sheet of ours, as they in cutting theirs. The reason is, the greatnesse of their characters; for so small as our letters could not easily bee engrauen in their tables. This commoditie they haue, that they may bee layd by for as many impressions as they please, and in the meane time he may print off, for number of copies, as he finds sale: both which are wanting in our manner of printing. This makes their bookes so many and so cheape: and this easinesse made the Iesuits print at their owne houses, what bookes they liked. They haue also another way of printing. An Epitaph or other copie being cut in stone or wood, they lay thereon a leafe of moist paper, and on the same a woollen cloth: and then beat it on with a hammer till the thinne paper insinuate it selfe into the emptie spaces of the mould or forme, and then lightly lay on inke or what other colouring they please, so that the Epitaph or Copie remaynes in an elegant white: prouided that this be vsed where there is vse of greater characters. *Maffei.l.1.c.4.* *Printing.*

That which some hold of steeping and burning the earth, of which their Porcelane is made an hundred yeeres in the earth, remouing it euery eight dayes, others gainsay, and our Iesuits is silent. *Linschoten* affirmeth, that the earth is naturally hard, beaten small, steeped, often stirred, and of the finest swimming in the top the finest made. Painting is much vsed but not in such perfection as with vs: which is true also of grauing and carving. For adorne their pictures with oyle, or shadowes and landskips they know not, and in statues they haue no other rule of symmetrie but the eye. Their bells haue woodden clappers, and seeme not able to indure Iron, and therefore not comparable in sound to ours. Musicall instruments they haue many and manifold: but they want Organs (except some blown with the mouth) and all such as goes with keyes, their strings are wouen of raw-silke, and know not our way of making them. Nor doe they know the discord-concord in musicall harmonie of diuers voyces, so that their musicke to vs is harsh, in their owne opinion glorious. For measuring houres they vse houre-glasses of water and other deuices, but in this and dyalling very rude. *Scal. Ex. 3. Mouf. de Mag. fari. Linsch. l. 1. c. 23.*

They are much addicted to Comedies and therein excell vs: many young men trauelling through the Kingdome in this profession and practice, or abiding in chiefe places of resort. But there (as here) the dregs of mankind. They are hired vnto feasts, whither they come prouided for what play shall be demanded: offering to that end their booke of Comedies to the feast-Master, to chuse which he liketh: which the guests behold in their feasting-time with such pleasure, that they continue sometimes ten houres in feeding their eyes, and tastes, with one seruice after another in both kinds. Their Comedies are ancient, few of later writing, which the Actors pronounce in a singing accent. They haue also dancers on the rope, tumblers, and other feat-workers. *Mathew* an Eunuch feasted the Iesuites, where all these kindes were employed, being of his owne familie. One of them cast three knives vp into the aire, still catching them by the hafts. Another lying on his backe, tossed with his feet lifted vp, an earthen vessell euery way, so as hardly might be done with the hands: the like tennisse-play with his feet he vsed with a bell, and a great table. They had also dumbe shewes acted: and a boy dancing very artificially: on a sudden start vp a boy of earth keeping the same measures, and much admirable sport betwixt them.

Seales are in much vse, not onely for their Letters, but for other their writings, Poems, Pictures, and other things: they contayne onely their name, surname, degree and dignitie. They vse not one, but diuers, not in waxe, but coloured red; the *Grandes* hauing at table a box full of Seales, which contayne their diuers names engrauen (for euery Chinois is called by many names) and are of diuers matter, Wood, Marble, Iuorie, Brasse, Crystall, Corall, and other stones more precious. The makers of them are many and those learned, the characters differing from the vulgar, and fauoring antiquitie. The arts of Inke-making also is not here illiberall, which they make vp in balls, × of the smoake of oyle, and grind with water on a stone, and then take it vp with pensils made of Hares haire, and write therewith, not with pens, their paper being like thin transparent parchment.

× I haue had of it in a square forme, to be carried in a mis-pocket, as it were a marking stone.

They all of both sexes vse fangs, without which none of them come abroad, not so much for necessity (especially in colder places and seasons) as for a kind of grace: Euen as gloues with vs are most for ornament, and the most vsuall presents, so are fangs in China; of diuers matter and forme, Reed, Wood, Iuorie, with Paper, Silke, or a kind of odoriferous Straw; round, square, ouall, with sentences written therein. In these things these differ from vs, in other things are very like, in the vse of tables, stooles, beds, which other people neere and farre obserue not, but sit, feede, and sleepe on carpets spred on the ground.

y *Pautogie, & Mendoza, c.4.*

Things are there exceeding cheape: y a hundred pound of Sugar may be bought for nine or ten fix-pences; and other things proportionable: so that though there are none rich, as we interpret the word in Europe, for such and such redenues: yet this cheapnesse doth recompence that other defect. They haue Artificers of all grades: and in idlenesse none may liue. The impotent are well prouided for in Hospitals. They haue no Gentlemen, but euery man is a Plebeian vntill his merits raise him. Preferment is atchieued onely by learning. This maketh them generally studious.

§. VI.

Of their language, writing, Astrologie, Philosophie, and Phisike.

THe beginning of this discourse must be with their words, letters, and writing: wherein this is first to be admitted, that they haue not one booke written in the vulgar idiome or common language. But they haue one language called *Quanhoa*, for their Courts, and writings, which is common through all China, which alone the Iesuites learned, and which the learned and strangers commonly vse; women also and children attayning by this common vse to the vnderstanding thereof. As for the differing languages of each Prouince, it is not so necessary nor commendable, being but of vulgar both vse and reckoning. But in euery Tongue and Dialect the words are euery one Monosyllables, howsoeuer sometimes two or three vowels fall into one diphthong. As for them, they mention not vowels or consonants, or letters, but in writing, the letter, syllable, and word is all one, being nothing else but hieroglyphicall characters, of which there are no fewer then words, or things, which yet they to compound and connexe, that they haue not aboue 70. or 80000. If we pronounce any of their words in two syllables, it is when two of their characters are applyed to signifie one thing. Some 10000. of these characters are necessary for vsuall writing: for to know them all, is that which few either can, or need. Their sound also is in great part the same, and yet both figure and signification different: so that there is no so equiuocall a language; neither can a Hearer write out an Oration or Speech from

Quanhoa signifieth *the Court*, by this meanes the Magistrates need not in euery new Prouince learne a new language.

from the Speakers mouth, nor a booke be vnderstood of them which heare it read, but they must look, and discerne with their eyes that equiuocation which their eares cannot. And in speaking they are often hereby forced sometime to repeat that which hath before been elegantly deliuered, sometimes to write it, or (if such meanes be wanting) with water on the Table, or Characters formed with the finger in the ayre, to expresse their minde; to the conceit of others: and this is most common amongst the most learned which speake in print, and affect inke-horne Rhetorike. They haue fine accents, by which they also distinguish this equiuocation, that one and the same word thus by accents diuersified, shall signifie fiue seuerall things nothing alike. This makes the language hard to be learned of strangers; which
10 yet the Iesuites haue learned to write and read: and I would all the Equiuocators amongst them (that teach to illude oaths, and delude the World by their two-fold, two-forked, serpentine Equiuocation in *Mental* reseruations, & *Verbal* double-significations) were all there, learning the China language to conuert Heathens, rather then here practising the Romish equiuocating Dialect to peruert Christians to worse then Heathenisme. Peruerse Masters, louers of *strange language*, in Prayers to God, in Oathes and Assertions to Man; in the one, Parrats without reason; in the other Deuils, without Religion: this being the strongest bond which Religion hath, binding at once to God and Man, and yet these *Religious* Mountebanks, by iuggling querks disoluing these bonds, and at once deluding both God & Man. Foolish Romans! that sent backe the Legates to *Hannibal*, that by equiuocation had before
20 fulfilled their Oath of returning! foolish *Regulus*! that returned st to thy Tormentors, chusing thy selfe rather then thy Oath to be tortured! and p[illegible] most foolish Martyrs, that so sleighty for want of this sleight, ran vpon Fire, Swords, Lyons! And might not we begin a contention with that assertion, That *an Oath for confirmation is to men an end of contention*, which in this equiuocating *Hydra* is rather multiplied? That neither Rome Ethnike, nor primitiue Christian Rome, could (at least by imitation of diabolicall ambiguous Oracles) deuise in those dayes so transcendent a sutlety, but Moderne Rome by Iesuiticall midwiferie, must be the Mother of so super-fine a babe! But what doth this Brat in our way? I will rather follow the Iesuits in China then in Rome (except when Rome followes them thither too) and herein with thankfulnesse accept their report. The reason of this equiuocall sound of words
30 is ascribed to the Chinois account of eloquence, in writing rather then speaking, and therefore to furnish that, neglecting this: insomuch as familiar messages are sent by writing, and not by word of mouth. Musicall skill was a good helpe to the Iesuites in learning the language, by reason of their varietie of accents. And although this multitude of Characters be to the Memory burthensome, yet it helps it as much another way in sauing the labour of learning diuers languages, whiles euery Prouince of China speaking diuersly, agree in writing; the Iaponians, also Corayans, Cauchin-Chinois, Leuhiees, all conceiuing the same Characters, although the Iaponians haue an Alphabet of letters to write after our manner, which the Chinois haue not. They write their lines from the top of the Page to the bottome downewards, which they multiply from the right hand to the left: whereas our custome is
40 quite contrary, from the left hand, side-ways. We haue three consonants B. D. R. which the Chinois neither vse, nor can by any Character expresse: and in our words which haue them they borrow some sound neereth the same. Likewise they neuer haue two consonants without a vowell betweene: and all their words end in vowells, except M. or N. of consonants onely. This and the diuers pronuntiation of their Characters in diuers places, made the Latin forme of Baptisme hard to be expressed by the Iesuites.

Equiuocation, Mentall and Verball.

Cic. Offic. l. 3.

Heb. 6. 16.

China writing.

Now for the Obiect of their studies, their chiefe is *Morall* Philosophie: in *Naturall* they are rude: and their *Ethikes* are confusedly deliuered, not digested into formall method (for of Logicke they are ignorant) but in confused sentences and discourses. The greatest of the Chinian Philosophers was *Confusius*, who was borne fiue hundred and fifty one yeeres be-
50 fore the Incarnation of our Lord, and liued aboue seuentie yeeres in great stiew of learning & holinesse. And few of our Ethnike Philosophers haue equalled him, many he hath exceeded. The Chinois haue him in such reputation, that they thinke there neuer liued man more holy, and all his sayings are of authoritie beyond gaine-saying amongst the learned. And the Kings themselues haue euer since had him in veneration, not as a god, but as a most excellent man and Author of their learning; honouring his posteritie, the chiefe of which enioyeth by inheritance ample titles, immunities and reuenues.

They are also indifferently skilled in Astrologie and diuers Mathematicall Sciences: in Geometry and Arithmetike they haue beene more expert. The Constellations they doe not distinguish as we do, and number foure hundred Stars more then our Astrologers, reckoning
60 some smaller, which doe not alway appeare. They tell the Quantities, and foretell Eclipses, but not exactly: and referre all their Astrologie to that which is called Iudiciall, esteeming a fatall dependance of all things from the Stars: and haue borrowed in these Arts many things

Astrologie. *Vid. Ep. Theaetetis Sine ed. Rat. See the next Chap. §. 4.*

things from the Saracens. The Author of this Royall Family forbad the ſtudie of Iudiciall Aſtrologie to all but one Family, in which it continueth by inheritance. But he which now reigneth maintaine many at great coſt, both Eunuchs in his Palace, and Magiſtrates without, which haue two Courts in Paquin, one obſerving China Kalenders, the other the Saracenicall, and compare both together. Both of them haue an open place on the top of a ſmall Hill to contemplate the Starres, in which they haue Mathematicall Inſtruments, of exceeding greatneſſe, of molten braſſe, which ſeeme to be ancient. On this Hill alwayes one of their Colledge doth watch by night to obſerue, if any new Comet, or other raritie appeare in the Heauens: which if it happen, the next day they by libell admoniſh the King thereof, together with their opinion of good or euill enſuing. This place of contemplation at Nanquin, is within the Citie, and in maſſineſſe of Inſtruments excells that at Pequin * or Paquin. The Pequin-Aſtrologers haue priuiledge of foretelling the Eclipſes of Sunne or Moone; and the Magiſtrates and Prieſts are commanded to meet in a certaine place in their Robes and Veſtments, to helpe the labouring Planet: which they thinke they doe with muſicall ſound of Cymballs, often bowing their knees, all the time of the Eclipſe; fearing (as I haue heard) leſt ſome, I know not what Serpent ſhould then deuoure the ſame.

Colledges of Aſtrologie in Paquin and Nanquin, and not elſewhere.

* *Ricci.* calls it alway not Paquin, but Pequin.

In Naturall Philoſophie they were too Naturall, and haue very little Art. They knew not the cauſe of the Moones Eclipſe, by the interpoſition of the earth, but thought that being opposite to the Sunne, it loſt the light by ſome amazement: others thought that the Sunne had a hole in the midſt, againſt which when the Moone came, ſhee loſt her light. That the Sunne was greater then the earth ſeemed to them a ſtrange paradoxe, much more that this might be ſpoken of the Starres: the like was it that the Earth was round (for they thought it ſquare, and the middle and beſt part thereof to be their Kingdome) or that there could be Antipodes without falling, or that heauy things were attracted by the Center, or that there were Orbes; and for the ayre they thought it a *vacuum* or emptineſſe, not reckoning it amongſt the Elements, of which yet they numbred fiue, Metall, Wood, Fire, Water, Earth. Their Arithmetike was with beades on wyre-ſtrings faſtned to a linnen cloth. In theſe things *Ricius* declaring their ignorance and the Europæan Science, wan great admiration, they (which before thought all beſides themſelues Barbarians) ſaying, that they were to vs as the rude Tartars to them, and that they left where we began, namely at Rhetorike and Grammar, which with Ethikes and Politikes are the chiefe. Some of the Idolatrous ſects had more monſtrous and ridiculous fancies, that the Sunne hid himſelfe euery night in a certaine Hill called Siunni, which they ſaid was fixed in the Sea 24000. miles vnder the water: and for Eclipſes, they held that a certaine god named *Holochon* eclipſed the Sunne, couering it with his right hand; and ſo the Moone, with his left. Their Aſtrologers rather obſerued their old rules, little knowing or ſeeking the Naturall cauſes. The Inſtruments which they had in their two Colledges at Nanquin and Paquin, were alike, very admirable, ſeeming to be made in the reigne of the Tartars. Foure of them were very great; One a Globe marked with paralells and meridians, as great as three men could fathom, ſet vpon a great Cube of braſſe likewiſe: the ſecond was a Spheare, fiue foot in the Diameter, with Chaines in ſtead of Circles, diuided into 365. degrees, and a few minutes: the third was a Gnomon, ten foot high on a huge Marble: the fourth, and greateſt conſiſteth of three or foure Aſtrolabes, each fiue foot in the Diameter, with other appurtenances very admirable.

Naturall Philoſophy.

Flowers of China-learning.

Their Rules of Phyſicke differ much from ours: yet agree with vs in feeling the pulſe, and are not vnhappy in their cures. They vſe ſimple medicines, roots, hearbs, and the like, their whole Art in manner the ſame with our Herbariſts. They haue thereof no publike Schoole, but as each priuately learneth of ſome Teacher. In both the Royall Cities, Degrees are granted to the Profeſſors after Examination; but both this and that of little worth: none being thereby of greater authoritie, or without it hindered to practiſe. And neither in Phyſicke nor Aſtrologie doth any take great paines, which hath any hope of proficience in their Ethikes, thoſe being the refuges of Pouertie, this the high-way to Honor. Their Geography was ſuch, that they called their Countrie *Thien-hia*, that is, *All vnder heauen*, thinking the World to haue little elſe of any worth.

Phyſicke.

§. VII.

Of their Ethikes, Politikes, and Degrees in Learning.

CONFVTIVS, their Philoſophicall Prince, compyled foure Volumes of the Ancient Philoſophers, adding a fifth of his owne; theſe he called the *Fiue Doctrines*. They containe Morall and Politicall Precepts of good Life & Gouernment, with the Examples, Rites, Sacrifices, and Poems of the Ancients. Beſides theſe fiue Volumes,

Volumes out of *Confutius*, & some of his disciples, are gathered into one Tome, diuers Rules, Sentences, Similes, touching the well ordering of a mans selfe, family, or the kingdome; which is called the *Foure-bookes*, and into so many parts diuided. These nine arte their ancientest, and fountaines of the rest of their books, containing most part of their Hieroglyphicall Characters; authorized by royal Priuiledges & ancient Customes to be the Principles and Foundations of all Chinian Learning: wherin it is not enough to vnderstand the Text, but suddenly to write of euery sentence; to which purpose, that [a] *Tetrabiblion* must be cunned by heart. a Foure bookes aforesaid.

They haue no publike Schoole, or Vniuersity, where Readers vndertake to expound them: but euery one is to prouide him a Master, at his owne choice and charge; of which are great numbers: because in that multitude of Characters, one cannot teach many, and each man desires to haue his children taught at home. They haue three Degrees, which are conferred vpon such, as by examination are found worthy. This examination is onely in writing. The first Degree, called *Siencai*, is bestowed in euery Citie by the *Tibio* (a learned man appointed thereunto by the King) in that place which is named the *Schoole*; and some what resembleth our Batchellors. This *Tibio* visiteth euery Citie in the Prouince, for this purpose: whither when he is come, all the Students in the Citie and Confines, that aspire to that Degree, resort, and submit themselues to a three-fold Triall. First, he is examined of certaine *Masters*, which are set ouer the Bachellors, till they attaine a higher Degree: in which, all are admitted to vtiall that will, sometimes foure or fiue thousand in one Citie. These Masters are maintained by the King to this Office. These passe them ouer to a second proofe, by the *Foure Magistrates* of the Citie; which, of so great a number, chuse some two hundred of the best Writers, whom they commit to the third Examination by the *Tibio*, who intituleth twentie or thirtie of the chiefe of them, and numbreth them with the Bachellors of former yeeres. These are priuiledged to weare a Gowne, Cap, and Boots; in token of their Degree: and in publike Assemblies, haue higher Places, besides larger Complements and Immunities, and are subiect to their *Tibio*, and those *Foure Masters*; other Magistrates little meddling with their cases. This *Tibio* doth also examine those former Bachellors, to see how they haue profited or decayed; which, according to their writing, are diuided into fiue ranks: the first, are licenced vnto some publike Offices, of lesse reckoning: the second, haue a reward, but not so great: the third, haue neither reward, nor punishment: the fourth, are publikely scourged: the last, degraded, and ranked with the Communaltie. Schoole-Masters, Graduates, and Commencements. 1. *Siencai.*

Their second Degree is called *Kingin*, somewhat like the Licentiates in some European Vniuersities. This is conferred but once in three yeeres, in the chiefe Citie of the Prouince, in the eight moneth, and with greater solemnitie, to fewer, or more, according to the dignitie and largenesse of the Prouince. In Pequin, in Nanquin, 150. doe proceed Licentiats; in Cequian, Quiansi, and Fuquiam, 95. in the rest, fewer. Vnto this Triall, onely Bachellours, and but the choice of them, are admitted, not aboue thirtie or fortie of one Citie; which yet, sometimes, in one Prouince, amount to 4000. Competitors. That third yeere therefore, which happened with them 1609, 1612, 1615, &c. a few dayes before the eight Moone, which often falls out in *September*, the Magistrates of Pequin present vnto the King the Names of 100. the chiefe Philosophers in China, out of which, he chuseth thirtie (two for euery Prouince) to bee sent Examiners. One of these two, must bee of the Kings Colledge, called *Han lin yuem*. As soone as euer they are named by the King, they must post to their designed Prouince, many Spies attending, that they speake not with any one man of that Prouince, before the *Kingin* are entitulled. Other principal Philosophers also of that Prouince are chosen to assist these Examiners in the first Triall. In euery Prouinciall Citie is a huge Palace erected for this end, enclosed with high walls, in which are many roomes, wherein, without noyse, they may discusse those writings: and in the midst of the Palace aboue 4000. Cels, or little Studies, which can hold nothing but a small table, a stoole, and one man, out of which, one is not permitted to see or speake with another. When these Posets are come to the Citie, they, and their Assistants of that Prouince, are shut vp in their seuerall Stations, before they may speake with each other, or any one else, and so continue all the time of this Act or Commencement, many Souldiers and Magistrates attending to prohibite all commerce & conference, on all hands, with any within or without the Palace. 2. *Kingin.*

In this examination, three daies, the ninth, the twelfth, and the fifteenth of the Moone are spent in euery Prouinciall Citie, from the earliest light, til the euening darkenesse, the doores carefully shut; some refection being the day before allowed them, at publike charge. When the Bachellers come into the Palace, they are narrowly searched, whether they bring any Booke or Writing with them; and are allowed only their Pensill, Paper, Inke, and writing Plate or Stone. If any fraud bee found, they are both excluded and punished. Then the doores being shut and sealed, the two Examiners propound out of their *Tetrabiblion*, three sentences, on which euery one is to write so many Theames: also, out of those *Five Doctrines*, foure

foure sentences, the arguments of so many other Theames or Orations. These seuen Writings must bee adorned both with eloquent phrase, and elegant sentences, according to the Chinian Rhetorike; not any one Writing exceeding fiue hundred Characters or Words.

The next day of triall they haue three questions of state propounded out of the old Chronicles, or of things which may after happen, to which they returne answer in three Writings. Likewise, the third day three cases propounded of such things as may be demanded in executing publike functions, which they answere in so many writings. Thus euery one hauing that dayes arguments written out, is by some thereunto appointed, brought vnto his designed Cell, where he writeth in a Booke his Meditations, subscribing his owne, his fathers, grandfathers, and great grandfathers Names; then closing the booke, that none but they which are deputed, may open it, to whom they offer it. These bookes, before they come to the Examiners, are new copied and transcribed by others in red inke, whereas the former were in blacke: and these transcripts, without the Authors names, deliuered to these Prouinciall Examiners, which are chosen to assist the two Principall, which reiect the worst, and offer twice so many of the best as are to proceed at that time, vnto the Kings Examiners. These make a new examination, chusing out so many as are to bee admitted Graduates, and obserue which are best, second, and third, composing them in their due order. This being done, all the Examiners together compare the Copies with the Originalls (knowne by certaine numbers indorsed) and taking out the Authors names, expose them, written on large Tables, in Cubitall letters, about the end of the eight Moone, with great concourse of Magistrates, and applause of their friends. This degree enioyeth sare greater priuiledges and immunities, with a peculiar habit: and if they seeke not to proceed further, they are capable of many publike Offices. After this, the Kings Examiners publish a booke, which containeth the names of the Licentiates, and the chiefe writings on euery Theame; especially his, who obtained the first name amougst all the Competitors, who is called *Quieyuen.*

In these studies they so spend their ambitious spirits, that many die thereof. *Pantoq.*

3. *Cin-su.* The third degree answers to our Doctor: they call it *Cin-su.* This is conferred euery third yeere also, but only at Pequin, the yeere next after the former Proceeding. Euery Kiugin, or Licentiat, out of all Prouinces may bee admitted to the Examination, but onely three hundred are Speeders of fiue thousand Competitors. The Examiners are principall Magistrates: the time, the second Moone; on the same dayes, and in the same manner, as the former. These being created and pronounced Doctors in that place where the Licentiates are made, all in the Kings Palace, before the chiefe Magistrates of the Court (the King himselfe was wont to be present) doe vndergoe a new Triall, and make a writing on a Theame propounded; according to which, the order of Offices, whereof they are made capable, is declared, being of three Rankes or Formes. He which had the first place in the examination of Doctors, is here sure to haue the third: but he which here obtaines the first or second place, is dignified with an honorable title (like to that of a Duke or a Marquesse with vs, if it were hereditary) all his life, and obtaineth the highest places in the gouernment. *Anno* 1604. three hundred and eight Doctors were made; and then another Triall was made for the Kings Collegiats of Hanlinyen: of that number were named twentie foure, chosen out of those three hundred and eight, as in the former Trialls. These are chosen to the chiefe Magistracies in the Kingdome: but so, as after many other trialls, onely twelue or fifteene of those twentie foure be chosen.

These Doctors enioy their proper Vest, Cap, Boots, and other ensignes of Magistrates, and are admitted vnto the best functions, so as they alway exceed the Licentiates, and are suddenly become the Grandes of the Kingdome. Those Licentiates which are reiected from their Doctorship, if they haue no further hope, are admitted, and betake themselues to some places of gouernment. But if they intend to make and abide a new triall, the studie hard at home other three yeeres: some of them ten times aduenturing the same, without desired successe, wearing and wearying out their liues in priuate. There is a booke also published of the Doctors Commencement or Act, as of the former: and another yeerely, containing all the Doctors names in the Kingdome, with their Countrey, Parents, Offices, and places of Residence. They also which are fellow Commencers, and proceed either Licentiates or Doctors the same yeere together, euer after affect each other as brethren, and their Examiners as Parents or Masters, although they sometimes attaine higher preferments then these. In some Cities they haue Exercises of Learning, euery learned man of chiefe note hauing his day appointed whereon to lecture or discourse of some Moral Vertues. And they haue also an especiall Officer, called *Tanti*, which on certaine dayes is to call an Assembly (he is a great Magistrate) and to exhort the people to vertue, as it were by preaching.

Militarie degrees. Militarie Honors are conferred in the same yeeres, places, titles, vnto the Professors thereof: the time, is the Moone following: the solemnitie much lesse, according to the Chinian account of Souldierie. Their first triall is on Horse-backe, and then in full carriere they shoot nine Arrowes: in the second, three at the same marke, on foot. And they which

with

with foure arrowes mounted, and with two standing, haue hit the marke, are admitted to the third triall: in which, they are enioyned to write an Oration, or Theame, of some question propounded. And the Iudges declare in each Prouince some fiftie of these Licentiates: and when Doctors are made at Pequin, an hundreth of the best militarie Licentiates in all the Kingdome, after a threefold examination are there declared Doctors. The Doctors of this Societie, sooner then Licentiates, but not without bribes, are admitted to some militarie place of commaund. And both Philosophicall and Militarie, being admitted Doctors, write ouer their doores, in Cubitall letters, their Degree and Title. The Presidents and Iudges, in all Examinations, whether of Militarie, Mathematicall, Physicke, or Ethicke Sciences, are their Philosophers, without assistance of any of other professors: so much doe they account of this Confutian Philosophie, as if it had made them able to iudge of all things.

§. VIII.

Of the King, his Court, Issue, Reuenue, and Maiestie.

CHina is a Monarchie, not knowing the names of Aristocratie, or Democratie, or any other Polycratie: nor so much as Dukes, or great Nobles, enioying either Title there, or Dominion, (whereof in ancient times were many) these 1800. yeeres past. Sometimes it hath beene subiect to ciuile broyles, and sometimes diuided into many petty kingdomes: but was neuer quite subiected to forraine Soueraignitie, till the Tartarian Conquest vnder one *Tiemor* (so the Chinois call that great Chan) which so continued till the yeere 1368. When one of their Chieftaynes (whom they called of the euent *Hum-vn*, that is, a flood of weapons) expelled the Tartars, compelled the Chinois to his subiection. The Kingdome passeth by inheritance. Some ancient Kings are yet commended for commending the Kingdome to the vertuous succession of some rarer men then their kindred yeelded: and sometimes the people rebelling haue dispossessed one and substituted another. In this kingdome are no ancient Lawes: But the first of any Family which obrayneth the Soueraignitie, makes new Lawes at his pleasure, which his Successors in that family doe not easily alter. This *Hum-vn* the Conqueror is the founder of their present Lawes, either ordaining new, or confirming the old, as he saw good. From ignorance of Geographie they esteemed their King Lord of the World, and therefore call him *Thiencu*, the Lorne of Heauen: for they esteeme Heauen the greatest God. Yet commonly the people call him *Hoangsi*, that is, the greatest Monarch. *Hum-vn* was a great both Warrior and Politician. He ordayned that none of the Kings children should deale in publike functions or affayres of state: yet hee made them seeming princes, with assignation of most ample reuenues, and the title of Quam, or Prince or petty King. Their reuenue is paid out of the Exchequer, to preuent Clients and dependance of Tenants. Much complement of reuerence is done them by the Magistrates, but no subiection. Their Children and Nephewes are honoured also, but their key and reuenues still decreasing as they descend further from the Royall stemme; till, at last no more beg allowed them, then may supply their necessitie without trade or worke. Like care is had of the Royall daughters marriage and maintenance.

The Commanders which assisted him in the Conquest, hee vouchsafed honourable titles, militarie preeminences, with rich immunities and reuenues, still descending to their posterizie, who are subiect neuertheless to the Ciuile Magistrates. One strange priuiledge of theirs is this. The exploits *of the head* of their family vnder *Hum-vn*, are grauen in an iron plate. This continueth with the first borne of that family, who thereby may challenge pardon for any misdeed in any ciuill or criminall sundrie times, if hee offer the same to the King. Only treason is vnpardonable, which perrueth the Traytor and all his posterizie for euer of all dignitie. The bonds doe the Kings sonnes or fathers in law enioy, and some others who haue well deserued of the State.

Only the Doctors and Licentiates are admitted to offices of gouernment, not preferred by fauour of others, or the King himselfe, but by the Law and his merits. All Magistrates are called *Quoofu*, that is, Presidents: and as an honourable title b *Laoye*, or *Lau ye*, a Lord of Princes. The Portugalls stile them *Mandarines*. And although these Magistrates can finde nothing, till by Petition they obtayne the Kings confirmation: yet he enacteth nothing which they doe not first sollicite. And if any priuate man preferre a Petition to the King (which seldome happens, because there is an Officer appointed to examine them before the King receiueth) yet the King referres them to that Tribunall where to they belong. This I haue diligently searched and found for certaine, that the King himselfe may not giue a single dit penny, or office to any man, vnlesse he be first petitioned by some of the Magistrates,

b Some stiling *Lopia* or *Lauies*

ſtrates, except in his owne houſhold: for thoſe gifts are not taken out of the publike treaſure, but the priuie purſe. His Cuſtomes and Tributes, which exceede without controuerſie a hundred and fiftie millions yeerely (euery houſe not priuileged, paying tribute) are not brought into the Treaſurie of the Palace; nor may the King ſpend them after his pleaſure: but all the money and prouiſion is brought into the publike Treaſuries and Store-houſes, which are through the Kingdome. Out of theſe a certaine allowance is appointed by Law, and nothing more or leſſe, for the Kings expences, his Wiues, Children, Eunuchs, and Family. Thence the Magiſtrates and Souldiers ſtipends, and other officers through the Kingdom are diſcharged. Thence alſo the publike Edifices of the Palaces of the King and his kinſemen, Cities, Walls, Forts, and all prouiſions of Warre are mentioned. And ſome yeeres it happens, that this huge reuenue will not ſerue for neceſſary expences, but they are forced to new impoſitions. The ordinary Cenſus or *poll-money* is three Mazes or halfe Duckets; beſides the *profits of the earth* and handicrafts. The reſt are *Cuſtomes*, which in Canton, one of the leaſt *Prouinces*, are neere eight millions.

The Kings reuenues.

Cenſus Tributum Vectigal.

Vectigal.

Vanlie, that is now King, hath raigned fortie yeeres, a man of great wiſedome, but vicious and tyrannicall. Hee vſeth his ſonne and apparant Heire very hardly, and hath indeuoured to make a ſecond ſonne, which he had by a more beloued wife, his ſucceſſor: but was gainesaid by all the Magiſtrates in the Kingdome, thoſe of the Court reſigning their robes and hanging them on the Palace walls, ſo that he was forced to proclaime the eldeſt. Whoſe mother lately lying on her death-bed, the Prince could hardly obtaine his fathers licence to viſit her, and then attended with two Eunuchs: the mother comforted her ſonne, ſaying, It neuer yet happened that the heire of the kingdome dyed of hunger: (For the King ſcarſe allowes him neceſſaries, none elſe daring for feare.) The King forbad mourning and publike pompe vnto her funerralls. The King reſpects beautie only in choice of his wiues (as doe all of the Royall bloud) nor doe the great men care to preferre their daughters to the Royall bed. For it is little they can doe, and much they muſt ſuffer, euer incloſed in the Palace, neuer admitted the ſight of their friends, who alſo are not thereby aduanced to further preferments. The King hath Officers which make choice of women for him. One wife is chiefe and is as it were legitimate: the King and Heire apparant, marry other nine a little inferior: and after them fixe and thittie others; all which enioy the title of wiues: to which are added many more Concubines, not entituled Wiues or Queenes. Thoſe which bring the King ſonnes, proue moſt gracious, eſpecially the mother of the eldeſt ſonne: howſoeuer it fared otherwiſe in this before mentioned. This King was not the ſonne of the firſt wife, nor is his Heire.

Vanlie.

The Chinois are a deceitfull and treacherous people, and therefore the Kings in this age come not abroad in publike: and when in times paſt they did it, they obſerued a thouſand cautels for ſafetie, the Palace and the ſtreets being all in armes for his guard, nor was he ſeene which thus hee was ſeene, nor the ſeat knowne in which he was carried, many other being then carried to preuent intelligence. And when hee came in, o the Tribunall, hee appeared from a high window, couering his face with an Iuory table in his hand, and hauing another table on his head a cubit long, halfe ſo broad, ſo behanged with ſtones that they hid his face. The Kings colour is yellow, his garment being embroidered with golden Dragons. Theſe alſo are painted or carued in all the Palace, Place, and houſhold furniture; the tiles alſo being yellow, and ſet forth with Dragons. This hath cauſed ſome to thinke them to be of gold or braſſe, whereas they are of earth (as I haue often felt) and yellow, greater then ours, and faſtned on the rooſe with nailes, the heads whereof are guilded. If any priuate man ſhould vſe the yellow colour, or Dragons in priuate vſe, except of the Kings bloud, it were high treaſon in him. Theſe of Royall poſteritie (being now aboue 60000. all maintained at publike charge, and daily encreaſing) are a great burthen to the common-wealth: being idle, and as occaſion is offered, licentious, on whom the King hath continuall ſpies. None of them without the Kings leaue may goe out of the City appointed him, vnder grieuous puniſhments: nor may any of them reſide in the Royall Cities Pequin or Nanquin. The Kings Palace hath foure oppoſite gates, by which whoſoeuer paſſeth, they alight off their horſes or ſeates in which they are carried, and paſſe by on foot, which is alſo obſerued at Nanquin. The South ſide hath three gates both within and without: by the middle of which the King paſſeth in or out, and is neuer elſe open; others at the right or left hand. No man ſpeakes to the King but the Eunuchs, and the reſt of his Family: others of all ſorts ſpeake to him only by Petition, and thoſe ſo full of complement, that euery learned man cannot make them; beſides, peculiar Magiſtrates are as it were Maſters of Requeſts to examine all Petitions to be exhibited. At the beginning of euery yeere (which is at the new Moone which next goeth before or followes the *Nones* of February, the beginning of their Spring) a Legate is ſent out of euery Prouince to the King, which is done with more formall ſolemnity euery third

Ricius.

third yeere. And in euery Citie, euery new-Moone-day, all the Magistrates assemble to a place in the Citie, where is the Kings Throne, and his Armes (gilded Dragons) and doe worship on their knees before the same, praying *ten thousand yeares of life* to the King. The same is done yearely on the Kings Birth-day; on which day, the Magistrates of Pequin, and other Legats out of the Prouinces, and all his kindred, come to the Court with gratulations and presents. All others that haue obtained presements, by the Kings nomination, are to goe before day, and with appointed Rites to doe veneration to the Kings Throne, hauing on a Vest of purple, siluer and gilt head-tyres, for that purpose. The kingdomes adiacent are willingly refused of this King, whose predecessors sometime possessed, after freed them, as bringing more burthen then profit: which of late appeared in Corea, which the Iaponites inuaded, the Chinois defended, as abutting on the frontiers: but when the enemy left inuading, the defender soone after voluntarily relinquished these new subiects. Yet these, Cochin-China, Sian, and other adioyning, pay a tribute rather voluntarie, for hope of protection or gayne, then required, exacted, or by the Chinois regarded. Fiue Prouinces, Chansi, Cechian, Nanchin, Vquam, and Sciantum, pay their tributes in Rice and Wheat, which are carried in the Kings Vessels, and Ships thereto appointed, which are before related to bee more then ten thousand, belonging to these fiue Prouinces, besides those belonging to Magistrates and Merchants: insomuch, that Merchants that dwell Southwards from it, are forbidden to enter those streames, lest the multitude of vessels should cloy vp the passage, or endanmage the King: and yet they are so many, that sometimes they are forced to stay many daies, especially in diuer seasons, notwithstanding flood-gates made against Bridges, wherewith they stay, and heighten the waters; which being full, are opened, and sometimes in the Cataract, Vessels drowned as they goe out or in; the King being at a million of gold yeerely charge to make one Streame, called the yellow Streame of the muddie colour, nauigable and safe for his ships, which are drawne against the Streame by thousands of men. Neither dare they aduenture passage by *Sea*, for feare both of Pyrates, and of the *Sea* it selfe, which would bee farre more speedie, and lesse costly. The other tenne Prouinces pay their Tributes in Siluer. His Courtiers are Eunuchs; whom their poorer parents haue gelded in their youth, in hope of this Court-preferment: where, after they are admitted by that *Manderine*, appointed to this Office, they are trained vp vnder elder Eunuchs, to bee made seruiceable. Of this drosse of mankind, are in the Court ten thousand; *Pantogia* supposeth sixteene thousand. This King is esteemed more tyrannicall then his predecessors: neither doth hee euer come abroad, as they were wont once in the yeare, to sacrifice in the Temple sacred to Heauen and Earth. His Palace is farre more spacious, but not equall in workemanship to those in Europe. It is compassed with a triple wall, the first whereof might enuiron a large Towne. Herein, besides the many lodgings of the Eunuchs, are Hills, Groues, Streames, and other things of pleasure. The Iesuite our Author saith, That he passed eight huge Palaces, before hee came to the lodgings of those Eunuchs, which were appointed to learne how to order their Clockes or Watches, where with they had presented the King: and there were as many beyond. And ascending vp a Tower, hee saw Trees, Gardens, Houses, exceeding all that euer he had seene in Europe, who yet had beene in many the most sumptuous buildings therein. Within the third wall is the King, with his women, children, and such seruants as are thither admitted. When the heire apparant is proclaymed, all his other sonnes are sent away soone after, and confined to certaine Cities, where they nothing participate in affaires of State: otherwise, are honoured as the Kings kindred, liuing in pleasure in their Palace prisons, vnto the third and fourth generation. Neither is any meanes of greatnesse left to any: the Royall kindred not dealing with affaires of Gouernment, the Gouernours neither inheriting their Offices, nor leauing either place or name of Gentrie to their Families. And those which haue command of the Souldiers, pay not their wages; nor haue their Treasurers command of their persons: and their imployments are (out of their natiue) in some remoter Prouince. Vpon occasion of the warres against the Iaponites in Corea (which much terrified this vnwarlike Nation) the Royall Treasure being exhaust, tyrannicall meanes were vsed to supply them. There is report of many Gold and Siluer Mynes in China, which the ancient Kings, vpon some policies, shut vp, and this now commanded to bee opened. He exacted also an imposition of two in the hundreth on all goods that were sold in the Kingdome: which had beene tolerable, if the Magistrates had beene employed: but hee vsed his Eunuchs; a proud, shamelesse, slauish, and imperious Nation; which, in stead of searching for Mynes, vsed their Commission in weak by Cities, where euery rich mans house was a Myne; and except they would haue digged it vp, must bee redeemed. Some Cities and Prouinces compounded a certaine summes, which was payd to the King, as extracted out of his Mynes. Some zealous and courageous Magistrates made complaint by Libels to the King, but themselues therefore punished. One *Fumocein*, of the Prouince of

c *Pantogia.*

of Vquam, was cruelly beaten, and cast in close prison: whom his Prouince so honored euen then, that they published his worthie acts in bookes: they made his picture to bee sold through all the Prouince, that all men might priuately honour him as a Saint; and erected vnto him some publike Temples, with tapers and odours continually burning. But the Eunuches, to the extreame distaste of all the subiects, continued in their tyrannicall exactions (or robberies rather) throughout the Kingdome; into one of whose hands the Iesuites fell, with their presents: The Magistrates hate them, and they insult ouer the Magistrates. At Nanquin are also some thousands of these Eunuches in the Palace, one being chiefe ouer the rest. Some of them are so arrogant, that they looke for appreciations of a thousand yeeres life (which is the custome to the Queenes and Kings children; whereas to the King they say, *Van van sui*, that is, ten thousand yeeres, as *Daniel* to *Nebuchodonosor*, *O King liue for euer*) besides the bending of the knee, as to the chiefe Magistrates. The King will for light causes sometimes cause his Eunuches to be beaten, till they die vnder the blowes. When *Ricius* was dead, they coffined him after the China fashion, till they could find some place for his Burial (which till that time was at Macao, whither they sent their dead) *Pantogia* put vp a petition to the King, in behalfe of *Ricius* his corpes, (this storie will be, I hope, acceptable, as shewing the manner of obtaining any thing at the Kings hand.) I IAMES PANTOGIA, *a stranger of a most remote Kingdome, moued with the vertue and fame of your Noble Kingdome, haue in three yeeres sale, with much trouble, passed hither aboue 6000. leagues. In the twentie eight yeere of* VANLIE (for so, as we, they account their yeres by the Kings reigne) *in the twelfth Moone, I, with* MATTHEVV RICIVS, *came into your Court, where wee presented some gifts, and haue since beene sustained at the Kings charge. The nine and twentieth yeere of* VANLIE, *in the first Moone, we petitioned your Maiestie for a place of residence, and haue many yeeres enioyed the Royall bountie. In the eight and thirtieth of* VANLIE, *the eighteenth day of the third Moone* RICIVS *died, I, a Client of the Kingdome of the great West, remaine a fit subiect of pitie. The returne vnto our Countrey is long, &c. And I now, after so many yeeres stay, suppose that we may be numbred to the people which followeth your Royall Chariot, that your clemencie, like that of* YAO[a], *may not containe it selfe in the Kingdome of China alone, &c.* So proceeds hee to set forth the good parts of *Ricius*, and with a long supplication to beg a place of buriall, *some Field, or part of a Temple; and he, with his fellowes, should obserue their wonted prayers to the Lord of Heauen, for thousands of yeres to him and his Mother.* This Libell was written with peculiar formes, Characters, Seales; many Rites herein necessarily obserued. Before any be offered to the King, it must be viewed of some Magistrate, and they got this to be allowed by one which is Master of Requests, which sent it presently to the King. They must also haue many Copies thereof, to shew to those Magistrates, to whom it appertaines; which they did: one of them affirming, That *Ricius* deserued a Temple also, with his Image to bee there set vp. This message he sent them by another: for when they fauour a cause, they shew great strangenesse. The King commonly answers the third day (except he mislike, for then he suppresseth) and sends it to the Magistrate that had presented it, who shewes which of the six is the peculiar Court, which iudgeth of these things: This being sent to the *Rituall Tribunall*. Their answere is sent to the King within a moneth (which there is a short space) and repeating the Petition *verbatim*, and the Kings command to the peculiar Office, answeres what the Law sayth in that case, and concludes the Petition to bee agreeing to Iustice, and earnestly pleads and sues for confirmation. The King sends this answere to the *Colao*, which subscribed his approbation; which being sent againe to the King, he subscribed with his owne hand *Xi*, that is, *Fiat*, or be it done: which the third day after was deliuered them.

These petitions, see verbatim, Exped. Sinica. l. 5. Of the Officers, see the next §.

[a] He was a King of old, accounted a Saint.

§. IX.

Of the Magistrates, Courts, and Gouernment.

THat which the Philosopher wished, That Kings might be Philosophers, and Philosophers Kings, is in part fulfilled in China; where all the Gouernment is in their administration, which haue attained thereto, not by birth, fauour, wealth, or other Mediators, but their Philosophicall proficience and degrees, of which we haue spoken. Of these, there are two Orders: one, of the Court, which, besides their Offices in that Citie, moderate euen all those of the second sort, which are Prouincial Magistrates, abroad in the Cities or Prouinces. Euery two moneths there is a new booke printed at Pequin, of all their Names, Places, and Degrees. First, of the Officers of Court. There are sixe Tribunals, or chiefe Courts: the first, called *Li pu* (*pu* signifieth Tribunall) which is the Court of Magistrates,

1. *Li pu*, Court of Magistrates.

ſtrates, who are hence nominated throughout the Kingdome; which nomination is guided by the excellencie of their writings aforeſaid. And all beginning with inferiour Offices, come by Degrees preſcribed by the Lawes, in order, to the higher: except Iniuſtice caſt them lower, or quite degrade them; which makes him paſt hope of regayning his dignitie. The ſecond Tribunall, is *Hopu*, or the Treaſurie, which receiueth and payeth out the Kings reuenues. The third, is *Lypu*, the Court of Rites, whence are ordered matters of Sacrifices, Temples, Prieſts, Schooles, Examinations, Feſtiuall dayes, Gratulations to the King, Titles, Phyſicians, Mathematicians, Embaſſages, with their Letters and Preſents (for they thinke vnworthy the Maieſtie of their King, himſelfe to write to any.) The fourth Court is called *Pimpu*; to which are ſubiect all Militarie Matters, and Charges, and Examinations. The fifth, is *Cumpu*, that hath the handling of publike Ædifices; as the Palaces of the King, of his Kindred, of the Magiſtrates; the Naule, Bridges, Walls of Cities, and the like. The ſixe, is *Himpu*, of criminall Caſes, Priſons, and Impriſonments.

2. *Hopu*, Court of Treaſurie.
3. *Lypu*.
4. *Pimpu*.
5. *Cumpu*.
6. *Himpu*.

All the publike affaires depend of theſe Courts, which haue their Officers and Notaries in euery Citie and Prouince, which informe them of all things. One in euery of theſe Courts is Preſident, called *Cham*, who hath his two Cilam, or Aſſiſtants, one at his right hand, the other at the left: Theſe are accounted the higheſt Dignities in the kingdome. Next to theſe, euery Court hath their ſeuerall Offices, and ouer each, many Officers, beſides Notaries, Apparitors, and others. Beſides theſe Courts, there is another, the greateſt in the whole Court and Kingdome, called *Colaos*, which are three, foure, or ſixe Councellors of State, hauing no peculiar charge, but looking to the whole. The King was wont to ſit with them in Counſell: but now they doe it without his preſence; euery day admitted into the Palace, and there remaining in conſultation, ſend Libels many and often vnto Him, who approueth, diſallowethⁿ, or altereth at his pleaſure.

Colaos.

Beſides theſe and other Magiſtrates, there are two ſorts, one called *Choli*, the other *Zauli*, of each aboue threeſcore, all choiſe Philoſophers, which haue before giuen approued teſtimonie of their ſufficiencie. Theſe are employed in affaires of moment extraordinarie with the Court or Prouinciall officers, with Royall authoritie: and their eſpecial Office is, to admoniſh the King by Libell, if any thing bee done contrary to Law through the Kingdome; not diſſembling the faults of the greateſt Magiſtrates, nor of the King himſelfe, or any of His: which they performe, to the aſtoniſhment and wonder of other Nations, at their integritie and libertie; neuer giuing ouer (frownes or threats notwithſtanding) their complaints and admonitions, till they procure redreſſe. This is alſo lawfull to euery Magiſtrate, yea, to euery priuate man: but theſe are moſt reſpected, becauſe it is their peculiar Function. Theſe Libels and the Kings anſwers are printed by many, and ſo paſſe through the Kingdome, whence their Hiſtorians may bee furniſhed with intelligence. This was lately apparant in the caſe of the Prince, whom the King would haue diſherited, the King being ſo incenſed with numbers of Libels or Bils of Complaint, that hee deprived or deiected to inferior places aboue a hundred; whereupon the reſt abdicating themſelues (as is ſaid) he was forced to surceaſe his attempt. And lately, when the greateſt of the *Colaos* tooke indirect courſes, hee was accuſed by theſe Officers in a hundred Bills, within two moneths ſpace, though in greateſt grace with the King; which (as it was thought) killed him ſoone after with thought.

Choli & Zauli.

Beſides theſe Magiſtrates in Court, there are diuers Colledges inſtituted, to diuers purpoſes; the nobleſt of which, is *Han lin yuen*, conſiſting of choiſe Doctors, which deale not in the Gouernment, and yet are accounted of greater Dignitie. Their Office is, to compoſe the Kings Writings, to compyle the publike Annales, and to write out the Lawes and Statutes. Of theſe, are choſen the Schoole-maſters of the Kings and Princes. They wholly addict themſelues to Studie, haue their Degrees of honour in the Colledge, which they attaine by their writing; and are preferred to the greateſt Dignities; but in the Court onely. None is choſen to be of the *Colaos*, but theſe. They gaine much, by compoſing Writings for their friends, as Epitaphs, and the like, which for their very name are precious. They are alſo Preſidents and Iudges in the Examinations of the Licentiates and Doctors.

Han lin yuen Colledge.

All theſe Magiſtrates (except the *Colaos*) are as well at Nanquin as Pequin. The Cities attributed to them both, are gouerned as other Cities in other Prouinces. The gouernment of thoſe thirteene Prouinces depends of one Magiſtrate, called *Pucinſu*, and of another, called *Naganzaſu*, the former iudging ciuill caſes, the later criminall. Their Reſidence, is in the chiefe Citie of the Prouince, with great pompe. In both theſe Courts are diuers Colleagues, called *Tiuls*, which are alſo principall Magiſtrates, and ſometimes reſide without the Mother-Citie, in ſome other, where they haue ſpeciall charge. The Prouinces are diuided into diuers Regions, which they call *Fu*, and the proper Gouernor of each Region, *Cifu*. Theſe are alſo ſubdiuided into *Cen* and *Hien*, that is, nobler, or meaner Townes, as bigge yet as our

Prouinciall Gouernments.

Europæan greater (not greatest) Cities. Each of these hath a Prouost, called *Cicen*, or *Chiun*. *Ci* signifies to gouerne. These Prouosts or Gouernours haue their foure Assistants to helpe them. That which some thinke, that they are only in repute of Cities, which are intituled *Fu* and the rest *Ceu* and *Hien* but villages, is a tale. For both the Prouincall Citie hath her *Cifu* and *Chien*, and the Lieutenant of the Shire, or Region, hath no more power in the Shire-Towne, then in other Cities of the Shire, that is, the right of first Appeale. The second Appeale is to the *Pucinsu* and *Nagan zasu*, Gouernours of the Prouince. Besides these in euery Prouince, there are other two of more eminent place, sent from the Court: one of which is resident there, called *Tusam*; the other sent yeerely from the Court, called *Cia yuen*. The former hath power ouer all, both Magistrates and Subiects, and in militarie affaires, and may be compared to our Vice-royes, or Deputies. The other is a Commissioner, or Visiter, who enquireth into all Officers, and punisheth the faultie (except the greatest, whom he accuseth to the King) and onely of all Magistrates executeth the sentence of death. Many other Officers in Cities, Towns, and Villages, many Captaines and militaty Commanders, many which haue charge of Wals, Gates, Bridges, Forts, (euen as it were in time of Warre:) Musters daily, and Wrestlings might here be recited.

All the Magistrates, both Philosophicall and Militarie, are reduced to nine Orders, and according to their seuerall Order, they receiue Money or Rice monthly: which, in such maiestie of Magistrates, is very small; the stipend of the highest not amounting to a thousand duckats yeerely, and euery one of the same Order receiuing alike; the chiefe in the militarie Order receiuing the same stipend, which the chiefe in the Philosophicall. True it is, that more accrues to them by industrie, gifts, or otherwise: but this is the Legall allowance. All Magistrates weare the like Cap of blacke cloth, with eares or wings on both sides, of Ouall forme, apt to fall off: which is done purposely, to make them walke grauely, without light mouing of their heads. They weare all like attire, Bootes alike, of peculiar fashion and substance, of fine blacke Leather. They weare also a faire girdle, about foure fingers broad, large and loose, of curious embroiderie, and on their breasts and backes they haue square pieces of Cloth embroidered: by both these are discerned their Places and Dignities. They are also knowne by their Vmbrelas, which are carried ouer their heads, some blew, some yellow; some two, three, and some one: the meanest on horse-back, the greater on chayres, carried on foure or eight mens shoulders, according to their Dignitie. They haue other Ornaments, Banners, Chaines, Censers, multitudes of Sergeants, or inferiour Officers, going before them, two and two in a ranke, with Halberds, Maces, Battle-axes, Chaynes, Canes, crying out to giue way, with such clamours and noyse, that euen dogs shrinke away, and not a man to be seene in most populous streets: this more or lesse, according to the degree of the Magistrate. Thus haue we seene a Philosophicall Empire, all, euen the Souldiers, being subiect to them; yea, the Captaines beaten by them, as boyes by their Masters: Neither is the sentence of Militarie men, in matters of Warre, of authoritie with the King, like theirs; no, not their valour comparable: these, in maintainance of their loyaltie, being (as yee haue seene) prodigall of preferment and life. The Souldiers betake themselues to Handy-crafts, or Seruice of great Men, making shew of themselues on Muster and Pay-dayes. Their Weapons, as their courage, ridiculous for offence or defence. I haue seene many Gunnes (saith *Pantoqia*) in their Souldiers hands, but none, whose barrell was aboue a span long: a little Ordnance on their wals, but little seruiceable. Militarie men are little esteemed, in so long peace, where they feare no enemy, nor care for encrochmens; that which some say, of their extending their Dominions to the Indies in former times, being a fable, and disagreeing with their Chronicles, which are studiously continued foure thousand yeeres to these times. Neither doe they conceiue the rest of the world worth the conquering. Marueilous also is the Symmetrie of all the Magistrates, the members of this great Body, both with the Head and each other, both in reall obedience and complementall Rites. The inferiors, whether priuat men or Magistrates, seldome speaking to their superiors, in the Court, or elsewhere, but on their knees, and with honourable termes, how meane soeuer knowne before their Degree.

a This is is like, was mistaken by the Translator or Printer: for Captaine *Saris* hath seene many, & saith they are as long as pistols but the cock such, as makes them esteeme seruice. *Botero Iarie, &c.*

No man also enioyeth any place aboue three yeeres, except he be a new confirmed by the King: but vsually is preferred to a greater; but in another Region, to preuent acquaintance, an occasion of vniustice, or popular affection. And all the *Pucinsu*, *Cifu*, *Cicen*, *Chien*, and the like principall Officers, must euery third yeere appeare solemnly at the Court at Pequin: at which time, diligent inquisition is made of all Officers in the Kingdome, with great rigour, euery one rewarded according to his desert. I haue obserued, that the King himselfe dares not alter any of those things, which in this Inquisition are constituted. In the yeere 1607. foure thousand Magistrates, in this publike Disquisition, were condemned, as appeared by their names published in a Booke: some for couetous corruption, vsurping

vsurping publike or priuate goods; these were wholly depriued: some for rigorous, seuerity were so serued: a third sort were such, as were old, sickly, or remisse; these might vse the ensignes of Magistrates, but liue a priuate life: the fourth were rash and vnaduised, which were put into inferior Offices, or sent to places of easier gouernment: The last ranke was of such as gouerned not themselues, or their families, in good order; and such were also for euer depriued. The like Inquisition euery fift yeere is obserued, concerning the Officers of Court, and Militarie. The Iesuites were acquainted with one great Magistrate, which was thrust into an inferior Office three yeeres space, onely for being too often at Feasts, and too much addicted to Chesse-play.

No man may beare Office (except Militarie) in that Prouince where he was borne. Thus the Militarie men haue spurres of fidelitie, and the other want occasions of corruption: for which cause also, his house-hold seruants and children may not stirre out of doores, whiles he executes his Office; but when he goes out, he seales vp his doores, both priuate and publike, hauing all necessarie seruices performed by such as are appointed thereto by the State. None weare any Weapons in the Cities, not Souldiers or Captaines, nor men of Learning, but then when they goe to their Masters, Exercises, or Wares: onely some attend the chiefe Magistrates with weapons. Nor hath any weapons at his house, except some rustie Blade, for feare of Theeues when he trauaile: and further then scratching, or pulling off the haire, they manage no quarrels, esteeming no iniurie a mortall indignitie, and him the wisest and most valiant, that flyes the furious, and offers no wrong. When the King dies, none of his bloud, but the heire onely, may stay in the Citie Royall, or remoue out of the Cities where they are confined, on paine of death. And when any contention ariseth amongst them, one of the chiefe of them, which is their Gouernor, decides it: if with others, not of the bloud Royall, the publike Magistrate.

When the King preferreth any Magistrates to some higher dignitie, if they haue verie well deserued, they are requested to leaue their Boots behind, which are kept in the publike Chests, together with verses in their praise, and are honoured with gifts. If they be of supereminent worth, a publike Marble Pillar is erected, with inscription of their deserts. Yea, there are two whom Temples are built at publike charge, and their Images as like as the workemen can make, set on the Altars; with a yeerely reuenue, and certaine men appointed to keepe perpetuall odours and lights there burning, (supplications excepted) in manner as they doe to their Idols. The Cities are all full of these Temples, sometime by fauour more then merit, to which at certaine times they goe, and exhibite kneelings, with meat-offerings, and other things.

In some Prouinces, vpon speciall occasions, they alter their course, as to preuent Pyracies and Robberies. Some were constituted, with Commission extended into diuers Prouinces, some bordering parts of all those Prouinces obeying him as Vice-Roy: As at Canceu, one superior to the Vice-roy of the Prouince, hauing part of Chiansi, Fuchien, Canton, and Vquam subiect, hauing out of euery Prouince two Regions, all adioyning together, assigned to him.

Although they haue no Nobilitie employed in Magistracie, yet there are some descendents of those Captaines and Great men, which helped *Hum-vu* in expelling the Tartars, which are borne Noble, called *Quocum*, as we haue elsewhere shewed. These are capable of Militarie places. One head of one of these families, resides at Nanquin, which liues in great magnificence, carried on eight mens shoulders; his Gardens, Palaces, houshold Furniture, Royall. *Ricius* was entertained in his Garden, wherein (besides other rarities) he saw an artificiall Mount made of vapolished Marbles, which in the hollow places thereof contayned Chambers, Halls, Stayres, Trees, Ponds, and other Deuices; this increasing both delight and wonder, that it was of Labyrinthian forme, in a little space of ground detayning the steps two or three houres, in passing the many Mazes thereof. The coolenesse of this place was conuenient both to their Studies and Feasts.

§. X.

Of their Punishments Diuine and Humaine, and a Catalogue of their Kings.

WHen the King preferreth any to the dignitie of a *Mandarine*, or to a higher Office, their custome is, to put vp a Libell or Supplication, inferring their insufficiencie, with many modest refusals: yet loth to be beleeued, and that the King should accordingly refuse them; as sometimes (against their will) hee doth, and certainely would, if this officious forme of deprecation be omitted by them. Notwithstanding all

all prouisions to the contrarie, they are couetous, cruell, and exceedingly addicted to bribes: and where they finde not (as it often happens) they make Lawes, sometimes contrarie to others, alway for their owne will and aduantage.

None may execute the sentence of death, but by speciall commission from the King. And therefore the Malefactors are consumed in the prisons. But they haue authoritie with certayne Canes to beat men on the legs, thighs, and hammes, in such terrible cruelties, that a few blowes may either lame or kill the partie. And therefore no King is more feared then these *Mandarines* or Magistrates. In the middest of their Cities are Palaces of the Kings for these Officers to reside in. In Paquin and Nanquin the multitude of these Magistrates is incredible, one of these Cities containing more then two thousand and fiue hundred, as many as somewhere are of Citizens. These alsewice a day heare causes, and execute iustice.

These Magistrates are no way comparable in wealth to the Nobles in Europe. Their sentence against guiltie persons is without solemne furniture of words; as, Let him haue twentie strokes more or lesse, which by those Canine Cane-men is suddenly executed, the partie lying grouelling on the ground. These Canes are cleft in the midst, three or foure fingers broad: twentie or thirtie blowes will spoyle the flesh, fiftie or threescore will aske long time to be healed, an hundred are vncurable. They vse also the Strappado, hoysing them vp and downe by the armes with a cord. They bee aboue measure patient in hearing causes; and their examinations are publique. Condemned persons haue a pillory-board fastned about their necke, and hanging downe before them to the knees, in which his Fellony or Treason is expressed; which boord neither suffereth them well to sit or lye, to eate or sleepe, and in fine killeth them. There be in euery Metropolitane Citie foure principall houses, for those chiefe Officers before mentioned; the fourth for the *Taissu*, wherein is the principall Gaole or Prison, walled about high and strong, with a gate of no lesse force: within the same are three other gates before you come where the prisoners lye, in the meane space are such as watch and ward day and night. The prison within is so great, that in it are streets and market-places, and neuer void of seuen or eight hundred men, that goe at liberty. In Canton alone are said to bee 15000. prisoners: and in this and euery other Metropolitane Citie, thirteene prisons, six of which are alwayes possessed, or doe possesse rather, those which are condemned to death. In euery of them are a hundred Souldiers, with their Captayne to keepe them. The offendors are allowed to worke in the day-time for their liuing; for little almes are giuen in China, and but a little Rice allowed them by the King. Such prisoners as are in for debt, haue a time appointed for payment: at which if they fayle, they are whipped, and a new time assigned: and so they proceed till the debt bee paid, or the debtor dead. If any man remoue his dwelling from one place to another, the Neighbours cause a Cryer to proclaime it with ringing of a Basson, that his creditors, if hee haue any, may come to demand their debts, which the Neighbours, if they neglect this duty, are charged with. Executions of deadly sentence are seldome, and that with many ceremonies. Thus it comes to passe, that of whippings and imprisonment there die thousands yeerely. Theeues are slightly punished the first time. The second they are burned with two characters on the 4
armes: the third receiueth the same punishment on the face. If he steale oftner, hee is whipped more or lesse, or condemned for a certayne time to the Gallies. This makes pilfries common: for they are neuer done to death for theeuery. Many extraordinary crimes haue new deuised extraordinary punishments, as after in this history followeth. One had so freely libelled against the Kings tyrannies, that many were cruelly tormented being thereof suspected, and one by torments confessed the fact, and was therefore adiudged to haue 1600. pieces of his flesh cut from him, his head vntouched that his eyes might see this mangling; and lastly, his head cut off, which amongst them is a great abomination. Others accused of treason at Nanquin, were forced to stand in those pillory boords till they rotted, some continuing fifteene dayes in torment. Those which out-liue their beatings, must passe vnder 50
the Surgeons hands for cure, which ordinarily proue new tormentors, except money make them propitious: and this the Iesuites report of their owne fauours amongst them in all difficulties, money hath bin their best friend; without which is no friendship in China, no Faith, no Loue, no Hope of them. But by following *Pereira* (sometime a prisoner there) into his prison, & others, I find my selfe almost imprisoned, and therfore will flee hence into their Temples, & there take Sanctuary. Here they deale as madly with their gods, as there with their men. Yet first let vs take view of some rare workes of diuine Prouidence in this Countrey.

b *Magnus* and *Ortelius.* *Ludouicus Georgius* in his Map of China, b describeth a huge Lake in the Prouince of Sancij, made by inundation, in the yeere of our Lord 1557. wherein were swallowed seuen Cities, besides Townes and Villages, and innumerable multitudes of people: one only 60
Child in a hollow tree escaping so great a destruction. Such as escaped drowning, were, as *Boterus* addeth, destroyed with fire from heauen. *Gasper de Cruz* reciteth a Letter of the

Manda-

Mandarines to the King 1556. containing newes of a terrible Earth-quake in the Prouinces of Sanxi and Santon; wherein the day waxed darke. The earth opened the yeere before in many places, vnder which was heard the noise, as it were, of bells: there followed wind and raine. The winde, which they call *Tufan*, is so violent, that it driueth ships on the land, ouerthroweth men and houses: it commeth almost euery yeere once, lasteth foure and twenty houres, in which space it compasseth the Compasse. In Vinyanfu the Earth-quake caused a site to breake out, which consumed all the Citie, and innumerable people. The like happened to another Citie neere it, where none escaped. It caused the Riuer at Leuchimen to encrease and drowne multitudes. At Hien the fall of the houses slue eight thousand. In Puchio the house of the Kings kinsmen fell, and slue all therein but a child. Cochu with fire from aboue, and waters from beneath, was left desolate. At Enchinoen almost an hundred thousand perished. At Inchuinen the Riuer ebbed and flowed ten times in a day and night. This perhaps was the same with that which *Georgius* and *Botero* mention.

Botero ascribeth vnto China seuentie millions of people, whereas he alloweth to Italy scarce nine, and to Spaine lesse, to England three, to all Germany, with the Switzers, and Low-Countries, but fifteene, and as many to all France. Lamentable it is that the Deuill should haue so great a tribute in this one Kingdome. *Gonsales* (in his Discourse of China, translated by *Parkes*) reckoneth (I know not how truely) almost seuen millions of Souldiers in continuall pay. *Dalmeida* numbreth seuentie millions, and two hundred and fifty thousand Inhabitants, besides Souldiers, and reckoning but the principall in each Family; often-times not aboue three of ten, as their Bookes testifie.

l. Gon. de Mendoza.

I thought it not impertinent here to adde the Catalogue of the Kings of this country, according [m] to their owne stories, which although it be in part fabulous (as what ancient prophane storie is not?) yet, because I haue done thus in other Nations, and haue so worthy a patterne in this, as the Worthy of our Age [n] *Iosephus Scaliger*, pardon me to trouble thee with this Chronicle of their Kings.

[m] Historie of China.
[n] *Iosephus Scaliger. Canon. Isagogicus. lib. 2.*

The first was *Fuey*, a Giant-like man, a great Astrologer and Inuenter of Sciences; hee reigned an hundred yeeres. They name after him an hundred and fifteene Kings, (whose names our Author omitteth) all which reigned two thousand two hundred fifty and seuen yeeres; all these were of his lineage: and so was *Tzintzon*, the maker of that huge wall of China, which killed many of the Chinois, of whom hee tooke euery third man to this worke. For which cause they slue him, when he had reigned fortie yeeres, with his sonne *Aquiza*. They ordained King in his stead *Auchosan*, who reigned twelue yeeres; his sonne *Fuey* succeeded and reigned seuen yeeres; his wife eighteene; his sonne, three and twentie: then followed *Gunter*, foure and fiftie: *Gunter* the second, thirteene: *Ochamey*, fiue and twentie: *Coantey*, thirteene: *Tzentzey*, fiue and twentie, and foure moneths: *Anthey*, fiue: *Pintatey*, fiue: *Tzinizumey*, three and seuen moneths: *Hay Hannon*, fiue: *Cuoum*, two and thirtie: *Bomthey*, eighteene: *Vathey*, thirteene: *Oibey*, seuenteene: *Tanthey*, eight moneths: *Antey*, nineteene yeeres: *Tantey*, three moneths: *Chitey*, one yeere: *Linthey*, two and twentie yeeres: *Tanthey*, one and thirtie yeeres: *Lanpy*, one and fortie yeeres: *Cuythey*, fiue and twentie yeeres: *Fontey*, seuenteene yeeres. Fifteene other Kings reigned, in all, one hundred seuentie and fiue yeeres. The last of which was *Quoutey*, whom *Tzobu* deposed, who with seuen of his lineage reigned threescore and two yeeres: *Cotey*, foure and twentie yeeres: *Dian*, fiue and fiftie yeeres: *Tyan*, one and thirtie yeeres: *Tzeyn*, seuen and thirtie yeeres: *Tance*, with his lineage (which were one and twentie) reigned two hundred ninetie and foure yeeres: *Bausa* Nunne, wife of the last of them (whom she slue) one and fortie yeeres: *Tauizon* slue her, and reigned with his posteritie (which were seuen Kings) one hundred and thirtie yeeres: *Dian*, eighteene yeeres: *Outon*, fifteene yeeres: *Outzim*, nine yeeres and three moneths: *Tozon* foure yeeres: *Auchin*, ten yeeres: *Zuyizon*, and seuenteene of his race, three hundred and twentie yeeres: *Teppma*, the last was dispossessed by *Vzon* the Tartar, vnder whom, and eight of his Tartarian successours, China endured subiection ninetie and three yeeres: *Gombu* or *Hum-vu* expelled *Tzintzoum*, the last of them. He with thirteene successours haue reigned about two hundred and fortie yeeres. Their computation [o] of times is more prodigious then that of the Chaldæans, after which this present yeere of our Lord 1614. is in their account from the Creation 884793.

[o] *Scal. Em. T. lib. 1.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Religion vsed in China.

§. I.

Of their Gods and Idols in former times.

HOw much the greater things are reported of this so large a Countrey, and mightie a Kingdome, so much the more compassion may it prouoke in Christian hearts, that amongst so many people there is scarce a Christian, who amongst so ample reuenues, which that King possesseth, payeth either heart or name, vnto the *King of Heauen*, till that in so huge a Vintage, the Iesuites of late haue gleaned a few handfulls to this profession. Before wee come to the Narration of their gods, I thinke it fit to deliuer what out ancienter Authors haue obserued of their Religion, and then to come to the Moderne. They were before the Tartarian Conquest [a] giuen to Astrologie, and obserued Natiuities, and gaue directions in all matters of weight. These Astrologers or Magicians told *Farfur* the King of China or Mangi, that his Kingdome should neuer be taken from him, but by one which had a hundred eyes. And such in name was [b] *Chinsanbaian* the Tartarian Captaine, which dispossessed him of his state, and conquered it to the great *Can* about 1269. This *Farfur* liued in great delicacie, nor did euer feare to meet with such an *Argus*. He brought vp yeerely two hundred thousand Infants, which their Parents could not prouide for: and euery yeere, on certaine of his Idoll-holy-dayes, feasted his principall Magistrates, and all the wealthiest Citizens of Quinsay, ten thousand persons at once, ten or twelue dayes together. There were then some few Nestorian Christians; one Church at Quinsay; two at Cinghianfu, and a few others. They had many Idoll-Monasteries. They burned their dead: the kinsmen of the dead accompanied the corps, clothed in Canuas, with Musicke and Hymnes to their Idols: and when they came to the fire, they cast therein many papers, wherein they had painted Slaues, Horses, Camels, &c. as of the Cathayans is before reported, to seruе him in the next world. They returne, after their Funerall Rites are finished, with like harmony of Instruments and Voyces, in honor of their Idols, which haue receiued the soule of the deceased. They had many Hospitals for the poore, where idle persons were compelled to worke, and poore impotents relieued.

Odoricus [c] affirmeth that at *Kattan* or *Zaiton*, hee found two Couents of Minorite-Fryers, and many Monasteries of Idolaters, in one whereof hee was, in which (as it was told him) were three thousand Votaries, and eleuen thousand Idols. One of those Idols (lesse then some others) was as big as the Popish *Christopher*. These Idols they feed euery day with the smoake of hot meats set before them: but the meat they eate themselues. At Quinsay a Chinian conuert led him into a certaine Monastery, where hee called to a Religious person, and said, This *Raban Francus*, that is, this Religious French-man commeth from the Sunne-setting, and is now going to Cambaleth, to pray for the life of the great *Can*, and therefore you must shew him some strange sight. Then the said Religious person tooke two great baskets full of broken reliques, and led mee into a little walled Parke, and vnlocked the doore. We entred into a faire greene, wherein was a Mount in forme of a steeple, replenished with Hearbs and Trees. Then did hee ring with a Bell, at the sound whereof many Creatures, like Apes, Cats, and Monkeyes, came downe the Mount, and some had faces like men, to the number of foure thousand and two hundred, putting themselues in good order, before whom he set a platter, and gaue them those fragments. Which when they had eaten, he rung the second time, and they all returned to their former places. I wondred at the sight, and demanded what creatures they were. They are (quoth he) the soules of Noble-men, which we here feed for the loue of GOD, who gouerneth the World. And as a man was honourable in his life, so his soule entereth after death into the body of some excellent beast, but the soules of simple and rusticall people, possesse the bodies of more vile and brutish creatures. Neither could I dissuade him from the opinion, or persuade him that any soule might remaine without a body.

Nic. de Conti [d] saith, that when they rise in the morning, they turne their faces to the East, and with their hands ioyned, say, *God in Trinitie* keepe vs in his Law.

a *M. Polo.*

b The name signifieth a hundred eyes.

c *Odoricus, Ep. Hek.*

d *Nic. di Conti ap. Ramus.*

§. II.

§. II.

Of their present Gods and Idols.

THeir Religion at this time is Idolatrous and Pagan, wherin the common people are somewhat [e] superstitious; but the King himselfe, & the *Mandarines* or Magistrates, as seeing the vanitie thereof, and not able to see the truth, are in manner irreligious and profane: the first worship that which is *Nothing in the World*, and these find nothing in the World, but the World and these mostentany things, to worship.

e *Gascar. Arthus cap. 32.*

Ricius reports, that the ancient Chinois worshipped one only great GOD, which they called the *King of Heauen*, or otherwise, *Heauen and Earth*: whereby he gathers, that they thought Heauen and Earth to be endued with life, and the Soule thereof to be the greatest GOD. Beneath which they worshipped also diuers Spirits, *Tutelares*, preseruers of the Mountaines, of Riuers, and of the foure parts of the World. They held that Reason was to be followed in all actions, which light they confessed to receiue from Heauen. They neuer conceiued yet such monstrous absurdities of this god, and these spirits, as the Egyptians, Grecians, and Romanes haue done: whence the Iesuite would haue you thinke (euen in this Idolatry) many of them to be saued, by I know not what *congruitie*, which *merits* not the mention. In succeeding ages, this Idolatry became more manifold in some, whiles other became Atheiste, of which their King and Magistrates are blamed. And yet this King, when some few yeeres since his Palace was sieed with lightning, being guiltie of his owne vnworthinesse, he commanded his sonne to pray to Heauen for reconciliation.

Fryer *Gasper de la Cruix*, being in Canton, entred a certaine Religious house, where he saw a Chappell, hauing therein, besides many other things of great curiositie, the Image of a woman, with a child hanging about her necke, and a Lampe burning before her. The mysterie hereof (so like the Popish *mysterie of iniquitie*) none of the Chinois could declare. The Sunne, the Moone, Starres, and especially Heauen it selfe, are gods of the first forme in their Idol-schoole. They acknowledge *Laocon Tzantey* the Gouernour of the great god (so it signifieth) to be eternall and a spirit. Of like nature they esteeme *Cansay*, vnto whom they ascribe the lower Heauen, and power of Life and Death. They subiect vnto him three other spirits, *Tanquam, Teyquam, Tzuiquam*: The first, supposed to be: Author of Raine; the second, of humane Natiuitie, Husbandrie, and Warres; the third, is their Sea-*Neptune*. To these they offer Victualls, Odors, and Alter-clothes; presenting them also with Playes and Comœdies. They haue Images of the Deuil with Serpentine lockes, and as deformed lookes as here he is painted, whom they worship, not to obtaine any good at his hand, but to deraine and hold his hand from doing them euill. They haue many Hee and Shee-Saints, in great veneration, with long Legends of their liues. Amongst the chiefe of them are *Sichia*, the first inuenter of their religious Votaries of both Sects; *Quannia*, an Anchoresse; and *Neomia*, a great Sorceresse. Frier *Martin* in one Temple in *Vcheo*, told a hundred and twelue Idols. They tell [f] of one *Huiuusin*, in the Prouince of Cechian, which did much good to the people, both by Alchimy, making riue Siluer of Quick-siluer, and by freeing the Metropolitan Citie from a huge Dragon, which hee fastened to an iron pillar, still shewed, and then flew into Heauen with all his House, Mice and all (lye and all) and there they haue built him a Temple; the ministers whereofare of the Sect *Thausu*. *Trigautius* writes of certaine Gods, called *Foe*, which, they say, goe a visiting Cities and Prouinces: and the Iesuites in one Citie were taken for these Idols *Foe*. At Sciauchin, they in time of drought proclaimed a Fast, euery Idoll was sollicited with Tapers and Odours, for Raine. A peculiar Officer, with the Elders of the people, obserued peculiar Rites to these purpose, the Priests went on Procession, all in vaine. When the Citie-Gods could doe nothing, they fetched a Country-Idoll, called *Locu*, which they carrie about, worship, offer to: But LOCV *is now growne old*; thus they said of his deafenesse. At last they goe to a Witch, who told them, *Quonin* (a Goddesse) was angry, that her backe was burned; meaning the Conuerts, which burnt their Idols, which incensed them against the Christians. *Hoaquam* is the name of an Idoll, which hath rule ouer the eyes, which they carry about in Procession, and beg in his name. In time of trouble they haue familiaritie with the Deuill; *Pedro de Alfaro* obserued, being in a Ship with the Chinois, in this sort. They cause a man to lye on the ground groueling, and then one readeth on a booke, the rest answering, and some make a sound with Bells and Tabors. The man in short space beginneth to make visages and gestures, whereby they know the Deuill is entred, and then doe they propound their requests, to which he answereth by word or Letters. And when they cannot extort an answer by word, they spread a red Mantle on the ground, equally dispersing all ouer the same a certaine quantitie of Rice. Then do they

f *Ricius.*

they cause a man that cannot write to stand there, themselues renuing their former inuocation, and the Deuill entring into this man, causeth him to write vpon the Rice. But his answers are often full of lyes. In the entries of their houses they haue an Idoll-roome, where they incense their Deities morning and euening. They offer to them the sweetest odours, Hens, Geese, Duckes, Rice, Wine; a Hogs-head boyled is a chiefe offering. But little hereof falleth to Gods share, which is set in a dish apart: as the tippes of the Hogs-eares, the bylls and feet of the Hens, a few corncs of Rice, three or foure drops of Wine. Their Bookes tell much of Hell; their deuotions little. Their Temples are homely, and filthy: no Oracle is in any of them. They haue fables of men turned into Dogs or Snakes, and againe metamorphosed into men. And they which beleeue the paines of Hell, yet beleeue after a certaine space, that those damned soules shall passe thence into the bodies of some beasts. But their Idolatries and religious Rites will better appeare, if we take view of their different Religions and Sects.

§. III.

Of their three Sects: and first of that of CONFVTIVS.

Ric. l. 1. c. 10. THey reckon in the World, and obserue amongst themselues, three Sects; the first, of the *Learned*; the second, *Sciequia*; the third, *Lancu*. One of these three, euery Chinois professeth, as doe their Neighbours also, which vse their Characters, the Iapanders, Corians, Lequians, and Cochin-Chinois. The Sect of the *Learned* is peculiar to the Chinois, very ancient and famous, which they drinke in together with the Studies of Learning, all their Students and Magistrates professing the same, obseruing *Confutius*, the Author thereof. These worship not Idols, nor haue any. One God they worship, as preseruer of all things; certaine Spirits also, in an inferiour honour. The chiefe of them neither acknowledge, Author, Time, or Manner of the worlds creation. Somewhat they discourse of Rewards, of Good and Euill, but such as are bestowed in this life vpon the Doer or his Posteritie. The Ancients made no question of the Soules immortalitie, speaking often of the Dead as liuing in Heauen. But of the punishments of wicked men in Hel, not a word. The later Professors teach that the Soule dies with, or soone after the Body, and therfore beleeue neither Heauen nor Hel. Some of them hold that good mens soules by the strength of vertue, hold out some longer time, but of bad men to die with the bodie. But the most common opinion, taken from the Sect of Idolaters, and brought in fiue hundred yeeres since, holdeth that the World consisteth of one substance, and that the Maker thereof, together with Heauen and Earth, Men, Beasts, Plants, and the Elements, doe make vp one bodie, of which euery Creature is a distinct member: thence obseruing what loue ought to be amongst all things, and that Men may come to become one with GOD.

Although the learned men acknowledge one supreame Deitie, yet doe they build him no Temple, nor depute any place to his worship, no Priests or Ministers of Religion, no solemne Rites, no Precepts or Rules, none that hath power to ordaine or explaine their Holies, or to punish the Transgressors. They doe Him no priuate or publike deuotions or seruice, yea, they affirme, that it belongs to the King only to do sacrifice and worship to the King of Heauen; and that it is treason for others to vsurpe it. For this cause the King hath two Temples very magnificent in both the Royall Cities, the one consecrate to *Heauen*, the other to *Earth*: in the which hee was wont himselfe to sacrifice, but it is now performed by some principall Magistrates, which slay there many Sheepe and Oxen, and performe other Rites many to *Heauen* and *Earth*, in his stead. To the other spirits of Hills, Riuers, and the foure Regions of the World, onely the chiefe Magistrates doe sacrifice, nor is it lawfull to priuate men. The Precepts of this Law are in their nine Bookes before mentioned.

Nothing in this Sect is more generall, from the King to the meanest, then their yeerely Obits to their Parents and grand-fathers, which they account obedience to Parents, though dead; of which afterwards. The Temple they haue is that, which in euery Citie is by the Law built to *Confutius*, in that place where there Schoole or Commencement house is. This is sumptuous, and hath adioyning the Palace of that Magistracie, which is ouer the Bachellors or Graduates of the first degree. In the chiefe place of this Temple or Chappell is placed his Image, or else his name in golden Capitall Letters, on a faire Table: besides which stand other Images of his disciples, as inferiour Saints. Into this Temple euery new and full Moone, all the Magistrates of the Citie assemble with the Bachellors, and adore him with kneelings, wax-lights and incense. They do also yeerely on his birth-day, and other appointed times, offer vnto him meat-offerings or dishes with great prouision, yeelding him thanks for

The Temple of *Confutius*.

for the learning they haue found in his Bookes, as the cause of their Degrees and Magistracies. But they pray not to him for any thing, no more then to the dead in their Obits.

There are other Chappels of the same Sect vnto the *Tutelare* spirits of each Citie, and proper to euery Magistrate of the Court. Therein they binde themselues by solemne oath, to obseruе the Lawes in their function, and that at their first entrance: heere they offer meats, and burne odours, acknowledging diuine Iustice in punishing periurie. The scope of this Sect of the learned, is the publike peace and well ordering of the priuate and publike state, and framing themselues to Morall vertues, wherein they doe not much disagree from the Christian veritie. They haue fiue concords in their Moralitie, in which as Cardinall vertues, they comprise all Humanitie; the duties namely of Father and Child, Husband and Wife, Master or Superiour, and those vnder them, Brethren amongst themselues, and lastly, Equals and Companions. They condemne single life, and permit polygamie. This precept of Charitie to doe to others as one would bee done to, is well handled in their Bookes, and especially the pietie and obseruance of Children to their Parents, and Inferiours to their Superiours.

Longobardus saith, that euery new and full Moon-day, a little before Sun-rising, in all the Cities of this Kingdome, and in all the streets, at one and the same houre, they make publication of these six Precepts. First, Obey thy Father and Mother. Secondly, Reuerence thy Elders and Superiours. Thirdly, Keepe peace with thy Neighbours. Fourthly, Teach thy Children. Fifthly, Fulfill thy Calling and Office. The last prohibiteth crimes; Murther, Adulterie, Theft, &c. *Nic. Longobard.*

Many mixe this first with other Sects: yea, some hold not this a Sect, but an Academie; Schoole, or Profession of Policie, and gouerning the priuate and publike State.

§. IIII.

Of the Sect Scicquia.

THe second Sect is called *Scicquia*, or *Omitofo*, in Iapon pronounced *Sciaccu* and *Amidabu*, the characters to both are the same: the Iaponites call it also the *Tetagui* Law. This was brought into China from the West, out of a Kingdome called Thiencio, or Scinto, now Indostan, betweene Indus and Ganges; *Anno Dom. 65.* I haue read, That the King of China, moued by a dreame, sent Legates thither, which brought thence Bookes, and Interpreters, which translated those Bookes: from hence it passed into Iapon; and therefore the Iaponders are deceiued, which thinke, that *Sciaccu* and *Amidabu* were Siamites, and came into Iapon themselues. Perhaps they then heard of the Apostles preaching in India; and sending for that, had this false doctrine obtruded on them. *2. Scicquia.*

Theie hold, that there are foure Elements (whereas the Chinois foolishly affirme fiue, Fire, Water, Earth, Metals, and Wood, not mentioning the Aire) of which they compound this Elementary World, with the creatures therein. They multiplie Worlds with *Democritus*, and with *Pythagoras*, hold a Metampsychosis, or passage of Soules out of one body into another. They tell of a Trinitie of Gods, which grew into one Deitie. This Sect promiseth rewards to the good in Heauen; to the euill, threatens punishments in Hell; extolleth Single life; seemes to condemne Marriage; bids fare-well to house and houshold; and begs in Pilgrimages to diuers places. Their Rites doe much agree (it is the Iesuites assertion) with the Popish: their Hymnes and Prayers with the *Gregorian* fashion, Images in their Temples, Priestly Vestments, like to their *Planaba*. In their *Mumsimus* they often repeate a name, which themselues vnderstand not, *Talome* which some thinke may be deriued from that of Saint *Thomas*. Neither in Heauen or Hell doe they ascribe eternitie: but after certaine spaces of yeeres, they allow them another birth in some other Earth, there allowing them penance for their passed sinnes. The seuerer sort eate not flesh, or any thing that had life: but if any delinquish, their penance is not heard; the gift of some money, or the mumbling ouer their Orisons, being (they promise) of power to free from Hell. These things made a faire shew; but their corruptions made them distastfull: and this also (which the *Learned* often obiect to these Sectaries) that the King and Princes, which first gaue way hereto, died violently and miserably, and fell into publike calamities. Yet hath it euen to these times, in diuers vicissitudes, encreased and decreased, and many Bookes haue beene thereof written, which contayne many difficulties, inextricable to themselues.

Their Temples are many and sumptuous; in which, huge monstrous Idols of Brasse, Marble, Wood, and Earth, are to be seene; with Steeples adioyning, of stone, or timber; and therein exceeding great Bells, and other ornaments, of great price. Their Priests are called

Osciami-

Osciami: They continually shaue their heads and beards, contrary to the Countrey custome. Some of them goe on Pilgrimages: others liue an austere life, on Hills or in Caues; and the most of them (which amount to two or three millions) liue in Cloysters, of their reuenues and almes, and somewhat also of their owne industrie. These Priests are accounted the most vile and vicious in the Kingdome, being of the baser raskalitie: sold, when they are children, by their parents, to the elder Priests; of slaues, made Disciples, and succeeding their Masters in Sect and Stipend; few voluntarily adioyning themselues to these Cloysterers. Neither doe they affect more liberall learning, nor abstaine (but perforce) from disauowed Luxurie. Their Monasteries are diuided into diuers Stations, according to their greatnesse: in euery Station is one perpetuall Administrator, with his slaue-Disciples, which succeed him therein. Superiour in the Monasterie they acknowledge none, but euery one builds as many Cells, or Chambers, as he is able, which they let out to strangers for great gaine, that their Monasteries may be esteemed publike Innes, wherein men may quietly lodge or follow their businesse, without any explication of their Sects. They are hired also by many to Funerall Solemnities, and to other Rites, in which wilde Beasts, Birds, or Fishes, are made free and let loose; the seuerer Sectaries buying them to this meritorious purpose. In our times this Sect much flourisheth, and hath many Temples erected and repaired; many Eunuches, women, and of the rude vulgar embracing the same. There are some Professors, called *Cuicum*, that is, Fasters, which liue in their owne houses, all their life abstayning from Fish and Flesh, and with certaine set prayers, worship a multitude of Idols at home, but not hard to be hired to these deuotions, at other mens houses. In these Monasteries, women also doe liue separated from men, which shaue their heads, and reiect Marriage. These Nunnes are there called *Nicu*. But these are but few, in comparison of the men. One of the learned Sect, famous in the Court, relinquished his place in the Colledge, and shaued his haire, wrote many Bookes against the *Confutians*: but being complayned of, the King commanded he should be punished; which he punished further on himselfe, with cutting his owne throat. Whereupon a Libell or Petition was put vp to the King against the Magistrates, which relinquished *Confutius*, and became of this Sect: the King (notwithstanding all the Queenes, Eunuches, and his Kindred, are of this Sect) made answere, That such should goe into the Desarts, and might bee ashamed of their Robes. Hence followed orders, That whosoeuer in his Writings mentioned an Idoll, except by way of Confutation, should be vncapable of degrees in Learning; which caused much alteration in Religion; for many of this Sect had preuayled much in Court, and elsewhere. Amongst the rest, one *Thacon* was so honoured of the chiefe Queene, that shee worshipped daily his garments, because it was not lawfull for himselfe to enter the Palace, but dealt by Eunuches. One libelled to the King against him, but had no answere (which is the Kings fashion, when he denies or disallowes it) which made him more insolent. But being suspected for a Libell made against the King, and some writings, in zeale of his Idols, against the King, being found, he was beaten to death, howling in his torments, which before had vanted a Stoicall Apathie. The other Sect-masters were banished the Court.

Fasting.

§. V.

Of the third Sect Lauzu.

3. *Lauzu.*

THeir third Sect is named *Lauzu*, of a certaine Philosopher which liued in the same age with *Confutius*. They fable, that he was fourescore yeeres in his mothers wombe, before his birth, and therefore call him *Lauzu*, that is, old Philosopher. He left no booke written of his Sect, nor seemes to haue intended any such institution. But his Sectaries called him after his death *Tausa*, and haue fathered on him their opinions, whereof they haue written many elegant bookes. These also liue single in their Monasteries, buying Disciples, liuing as vile and vicious as the former. They shaue not their haire, but weare it like the Lay-men, fauing that they haue a Hat or Cap of wood. There are others married, which at their owne houses professe greater austeritie, and recite ouer set prayers. They affirme, That amongst other Idols, they also worship the God of Heauen, but corporeall, and to whom their Legends tell, that many indignities haue happened. The King of Heauen which now raigneth, they call *Ciam*; he which raigned before was *Leu*, who on a time came riding to the Earth on a white Dragon. Him did *Ciam*, who was a Diuinor, giue entertainment, and (whiles *Leu* was at his good cheere) mounted vp his Dragon, which carried him to heauen, & there seized on the heauenly Royaltie, and shut out *Leu*, who yet at last was admitted to the Lordship of a certaine Mountaine in that Kingdome.

Thus

Thus they professe their god to be a coozener and vsurper. Besides this King of Heauen, they faine another threefold Deitie; one of which they say was the head of their *Lanzu* sect. They promise to theirs Paradise, which they shall enioy both in bodie and soule, and in their Temples haue pictures of such as haue the Images of such Saints. To obtaine this, they prescribe certaine exercises, which consist in diuers postures of sitting, certaine prayers and medicines, by which they promise to the obseruers through their gods fauour an immortall life in Heauen, at least a longer mortall in the bodie. The Priests of this Sect haue a peculiar Office of casting out Deuils, which they do by two meanes: one is to paint horrible shapes of Deuils in yellow paper with inke, to be fastned on the walls, and then fill the house with such sauage clamors, that themselues might be thought to be Deuils: the other is by certaine prayers or coniurations. They professe also a power of faire weather and foule, and other priuate and publike misfortunes: and some of them seeme to be Witches.

These Priests reside in the Kings Temples of Heauen and Earth, and assist at the Kings sacrifices, whether by himselfe performed, or his Deputie Magistrates, and thereby acquire great authoritie. At these sacrifices, they make musicke of all sorts which China yeelderh, harsh to Europæan eares. They are called likewise to Funerals, to which they come in precious Vestments, playing on Musical Instruments. They assist also at the consecrations of new Churches, and in pompous Processions through the streets, which the chiefe Inhabitants at certaine times obserue at the common cost of the Neighbours all about.

This Sect hath a Prelate, called *Ciam*; which dignitie these thousand yeeres together hath descended by inheritance, and seemes to haue receiued originall from a Southsayer, which liued in a Caue in the Prouince of Quiamsi, where his posteritie still continue, and with them his iuggling sorceries. This their Prelate liues for the most part at Paquin, in estimation with the King; being admitted into the Palace for hallowings, and chasing away ill spirits. He is carried through the Citie in a chayre, otherwise accomplished as the chiefe Magistrates, and receiues a large salarie of the King. I haue heard that in these times the Prelates are so ignorant, that they know not their owne Deuillish charmes and rites. This Prelate hath no iurisdiction ouer any but those of his profession. Many of these doe worke by Alchimy to obtaine the Precepts of longer liuing, of both which their Saints (they say) left certaine rules. These are the three Sects of the Chinois, which are fine by their vaine Sectaries so diuersifyed, that they may seeme rather three hundred. *Hum-vu* that raised his now raigning Family to the Scepter, was himselfe professed Religious in one of these Sects, and authorised all three Sects, admitting onely the first to the Gouernment. Hence it is that One seekes not the ruine of the Other Sect: and the Kings themselues foster all, as they see occasion, building and repairing their Temples. The Queenes are more prone to the Idoll Sects, and bestow much almes on the Priests, maintaining whole Monasteries, to be helped by their prayers. The multitude of Idols is seene not onely in the Temples, but in priuate houses (in a place appointed after the fashion of the Countrey) in the Market-place, in Streets, Ships, publike Palaces: and yet it is certaine that few beleeue their Legends, but thinke if these things do them no good, they yet will doe them no harme. The wisest in these times thinke, that all these three Sects may concurre and be all obserued together, and esteeme varietie most acceptable. From this hotchpotch, vniting and separating, perhaps haue risen those confused and various reports of these confusions and varieties of rites: wherein if any haue like pleasure in varietie, and be wearie of hearing *Ricius* and *Trigautius*, the latest spectators, I will not defraud them of those things, which out of former Authors I had more confusedly before gathered.

They haue (if *Mendoza* be not *mendax*) m many Monasteries of foure differing orders of Religion, distinguished by the seuerall colours of their habit, black, yellow, white, and russet. These foure Orders are said to haue their Generalls (whom they call *Tricon*) which reside in Paquin. These ordaine Prouincials, who againe haue subordinated to them the Priors of seuerall Houses or Colledges, in those their houses acknowledged chiefe. The Generall is clothed with silke in his owne colour, and is carried on mens shoulders in an Iuorie chaire, by foure or six men of his habit. They liue partly of reuenues giuen them by the King, & partly by begging: which when they do, they carry in their hands a certaine thing, wherein are prayers written, whereon the almes are laid, and the giuer thereby cleered (of his money, I should haue said) of his sinne. They are n shauen, vse beades, eate together, and haue their Cells, assist at burials, arise two houres before day to pray vnto the Heauen and *Sinquian*, who (they say) was the inuenter of that their manner of life, and became a Saint, in which their deuotion they continue vntill breake of day, singing and ringing of bells. They may not marry in the time of their Monkish deuotion, but they may (acquainting the Generalls therewith) at their pleasure relinquish their vow. The eldest sonnes may not enter into Religion, because they are bound to sustaine their aged Parents. At the admittance

m Discourse of China, *lib.* 2.

n It seemes that some Romish Friers haue beene there of old.

admittance of any is a great feast, made by their friends. At the lanching of any ship, they dedicate the same to the Moone, or some Idoll: and besides, there resort thither these Monkes, to make sacrifices in the poope, and reuerence the Deuill, whom they paint in the fore-castle, that he may doe them no harme. Else would shee make an vnfortunate voyage. The people weare long haire, in combing whereof they are womanishly curious, these hoping by their locks to be carried into Heauen; the other, professing a state of greater perfection, refuse any such helpe. There be of their religious more austere, o which liue (in deserts and solitary places) the liues of Hermites, with great abstinence and austeritie of life.

o Iacob. Anton. 1602. Adm. Reg. Sinensis.

Nancan p is a Citie at the foot of Mount Liu, on which are many Anchorets, which haue each a house by himselfe, and there exercise themselues in voluntary chastisements. There are said to be as many of those houses on this Hill, as are dayes in the yeere: they obserue it as a prodigie, that when it is elsewhere cleere sun-shine, there it is cloudie and mystie alway, so that the Hill cannot be seene from a Lake neere it, which Lake also deserues mention, being great and as farre as the eye can discerne, crowned with innumerable Townes, Castles, and Habitations.

p Ricius, l. 3. c. 9 Anchorets.

They haue Hils consecrated to Idols, whither they resort in heapes on pilgrimage, hoping hereby to merit pardon of their sinnes, and that after their death they shall be borne againe more noble and wealthy. Some of these will not kill any liuing creatures, especially such as are tame, in regard of this their Pythagorean opinion of the q transmigration or passage of soules into beasts. The Iesuites conuerted one man neere vnto Nanquin, which had thirtie yeeres together obserued a fast, not strange among the Chinois, neuer eating flesh or fish, and on other things feeding temperately. Vsurers are punished in China, with the losse of that money so imployed. Their fast is not a totall abstinence, but from flesh and fish.

q μετεμψυχωσις.

Of their Priests is before shewed, that they haue both secular and regular: r the one weareth long hayre and black clothes, and hath priuate habitation; the other liue in Couents and are shauen. Neither may marrie, though both doe (and not here alone) farre worse. They much commend in their bookes t the consideration and examination of a mans selfe, and therefore doe esteeme highly of them which sequester themselues from humane societie to diuine contemplation, that (as they say) they may restore themselues to themselues, and to that pristine state, wherein the Heauen created them; And therefore haue not onely Colledges of learned men, who leauing the affaires of state and secular distractions, doe in priuate Villages liue together, observing these contemplations with mutuall conferences: but euen women also haue their Nunneries, & liue a Monastical life vnder their Abbesses after their manner: although euen such as are marryed liue closely enough: their feet to this end so strictly swadled in their infancie, that they grow but little (and to haue little feet is with them great commendation) whereby they cannot but lamely walke abroad. And if any widdow refuse a second marriage, shee obraineth hereby much praise and many priuiledges. Their *Bonzij* are so little accounted of, that the Iesuites wearing their habit were litle set by, and therefore taking the Mandarine-habit, were exceedingly honoured of all sorts, as professors of learning.

r Scalans. ap. Ortel.

t Nic. Longobar.

§. VI.

Of their superstitious Diuinations, and curious Arts.

OF their Mechanicall and Liberall Arts wee haue already spoken, the same in this Surucy of their Religion, you may expect of those Arts which are curious and superstitious. None of which is so generall, as their vaine obseruations of luckie and vnluckie dayes and houres, by which they measure the oportunities of all their actions. To this end they haue Almanacks or Kalenders yeerely set forth by the Kings Astrologers with publike authoritie, in such numbers that no house wants them. Somewhat of these hath beene spoken alreadie. *Trigautius* writeth at large of their mysteries in this kind, comparing the differences thereof with ours in Europe. They follow certaine rules, the first Authors whereof liued 3970. yeeres since in the reigne of *Yao* (whom they still obserue as a Saint) who set two brethren on worke to finde out the celestiall motions. Their names were *Hi* and *Ho*: these wrote certaine rules, which two thousand yeeres after were burned by *Xi Hoam*, and not a booke left that was knowne, till some Copies were againe discouered in the time of King *Vu ti* aboue an hundred yeeres after. These rules haue beene fiue and fiftie times examined, and as it were new reuised and allowed, the last of which was three hundred yeeres since, by *Co xeu kim*, while the Tartars reigned. As for the Theoricall Astrologie they know it not, and in the practicall they are not so practised, but their rules deceiue them.

Annus sinica, pag. 159. & D. 2611.

them. So it hapned about fiue yeeres since, they foretelling an Eclipse falsly, for which One libelled against them to the King, and they confessed the errour, but blamed their grounds: whereupon consultation was had, and the Iesuites employed by publike Commission to ioyne with their Mathematicians in reforming their Kalender: which they intended to doe by bringing in the Europæan. This, and the Kings grant of an Idoll-Temple to them a little before 1610. for the buriall of *Ricius*, wanne the Iesuites great respect in this Kingdome. Their yeere they reckon by the Moone like the Hebrewes. Their day they account from mid-night to mid-night, dividing it into twelue equall spaces. But that which I intend, is not to shew their want of Art so much, as their wanton Art, and artlesse trifling in superstitions without ground. As, such a Day is fit for sacrifice, for bankets, for a iourney, a suite to the King, building of a house, or the like, what is to be done or not, wherein they are not more ridiculous prescribers, then the people superstitious obseruers. *Ric. l.1. c.19.*

There are others also that get their liuing by this profession, appointing dajes and houres: many deferring their necessary affaires till the Wizard finde out a luckie houre for the beginning, and then wil he begin, although the blustering winds, lowring skie, and all the elements forbid him, and force him to a present retrait. This hath beene a generall folly in the East, g and thence hath infected the West also, but China runs mad therof. The like care they vse in calculating Natiuities, an Art professed by many: as is that also by the course of Stars, or certaine superstitious numbers, to foretell things. Physiognomie and Palmistrie, and Diuination by Dreames, by words in communication, by casuall gestures, auguries, sunne-beames, and innumerable other fancies, haue conspired to this phrensie: wherein it is hard to iudge whether is more absurd, the fraudulent Impostor impudently promising without feare or wit, what the impotent Consultor with a witlesse feare, makes credible by his credulitie; Many of them sicking and sometimes almost dying, vpon meere conceit of sicknesse on such a day, foretold. Many also consult with Deuills and familiar Spirits (of which before h is mentioned) and diuers wayes receiue his Oracles, by the voyces of Infants, of Beasts, of Men distracted, or otherwise. Besides these fooleries, they haue one more peculiar namely, in choosing a plot of ground for priuate or publike buildings; which plot they compare with the head, tayle, feet, of certaine imagined Dragons, which they thinke liue vnder the earth, from whence all aduerse or prosperous fortunes befall Families, Cities, Prouinces, and the whole Kingdome. And therefore many chiefe men spend their wits in this so profound a science, and are employed, especially in publike structures. As Astrologers view the Heauens, so these the Earth, and by the Mountaines, Riuers, Site, foretell the Fates: and make good or bad fortune to depend on the placing of the doore, window, or other part of the house, on this or that side, or site. i It is a world to see what a world of these Impostors their are in this their world (so they call the Kingdome) of China, which gull the learned, the Magistrates, and the King himselfe.

g So *Hamon, Rel. 3.7. &c.*

h *Sup. §.1.*

Strange is their Diuination by Idolatrous Lots, which some tell on this manner. They haue their Idols in their houses, with which they consult, sometimes praying, and sometimes beating them, and then setting them vp againe with renewed incense and flatteries, and with (as they see occasion) redoubled stripes, being cruell or propitious (as *Tertullian* obiected to the Romanes) to their Gods. And in a word, the Mandarines are the Gods (or Deuils rather) whom the people must feare, as dreading blowes from them, which they themselues at pleasure can and doe inflict on the other. This God-beating they vse with Lots. i For when any is to vndertake a iourney or any matter of weight, as buying, lending, marrying, &c. They haue two sticks flat on the one side, otherwise round, as bigge as a Walnut, tyed together with a small thread, which after many sweet Oraisons they hurle before the Idoll. If one or both of them fall with the flat side vpwards, they reuile the Image with the most opprobrious termes: and then hauing thus disgorged their choller, they againe craue pardon with many fawning promises. But if at the second cast they find no better fortune, they passe from words to blowes, the deafe God is hurled on the earth into the water or fire, till at last with his vicissitude of sweet and sowre handling, and their importunate reiterations of their casts, he must needs at last relent, and is therefore feasted with Hens, Muscke, and (if it be of very great moment, which they consult about) with a Hogs-head boyled, dressed with Herbes and Flowers, and a pot of their Wine. They obserue another kind of Lots, with sticks put together in a pot, and drawing out the same, consult, with a certaine booke they haue, of their destinie.

Admirandis Rerib. Sinensib. Mossoulib. 6. Mendoza.

i *Mossoul. l.6. Discol. China.*

Lots.

Mongst other their curious Arts, there are two in chiefe request, Alchimie, to bring siluer out of other metalls, and the other to procure a long or endlesse life. They fable that some of the Ancients, which they hold in estimation of Saints, diuised these Arts, and after ascended bodie and soule into Heauen. Many volumes are written in both these Arts, and many printed. Both seeme to haue like successe, the one lessening their siluer for siluer, the other

shortning their liues to lengthen them. The Alchymist passeth his dayes, and euaporateth his substance in smoake, either aduanced by great labour and cost to beggerie; or if he attaine to any siluered siluer-science, it furthers him in deceiuing himselfe and others. One only Alchymist (said a madde lad of this generation, that had melted a faire house in these furnaces) hath beene in this kind happy, that can turne so little Lead into so much Gold. But these Chinois want such sanctified fires, howsoeuer herein also besides their exceeding diligence, many of them seeke to better their attempt by many yeeres fastings. No people more bewitched with this (though vniuersall) foolery; no harmes, frauds, losses, teaching them more discretion. And yet greater madnesse may be ascribed to the other, who hauing obtained some prosperous condition of life, thinke nothing wanting to felicitie but continuance. Few there are in this City Pequin (saith *Ricius*) of the Magistrates, Eunuchs, and chiefe men, which are not sicke of this disease, none being warned by the ordinary deaths of Masters and Schollers in this kinde. I haue read in the Chinese Chronicles of one of their ancient Kings, who by these Impostors helpe had procured a potion, which hee thought would make him immortall. A friend of his sought to dissuade him from this vanitie, but in vaine: whereupon watching opportunitie, he catched the cup and dranke vp the potion. The King in his furie offered to kill him; whereat the other, *How canst thou kill mee* (said hee) *whom this cup hath made immortall? and if thou canst, then haue I freed thee of this error.* The King rested satisfied; but not so this people, which though many write against both these professions, doe now more then euer practise them. *Trigautius* writes of one man which had obtained the second Degree of learning, which by this profession had gotten much wealth. He had bought many children and killed them secretly, composing his *Recipes* of their bloud, as if hee could adde life to others which he had taken from them. This came to light by one of his Concubines, and he apprehended and thereof conuicted. A new punishment was inuented for this new inuention, that hee should be bound to a stake, and three thousand pieces of his flesh should be cut from him with a Rasor, the vitall parts being spared as much as might be. This sentence being sent to the King, was by him confirmed.

Discourse, la Nom.

The Pope the best Alchymist in his leaden bulls.

A pleasant historie.

There be which fable themselues to be very old, vnto whom is great recourse of Disciples, as to some heauenly Prophets, to learne lessons of long liuing. They supposed the Iesuites (whom they tooke to be of great learning) did not truely tell them their Age, but suspected, that they had alreadie liued some Ages, and knew the meanes of liuing euer, and for that cause abstained from marriage.

The Spaniards of the Philippina's being feasted by the Viceroy, two Captaines, appointed Stwards, or Feast-masters, before they sate downe, did take each of them a cup full of liquor in his hand, and went together, whereas they might discouer the Heauen, and offered the same to the Sunne, adding many prayers, that the comming of their guests might bee for good, and then did fill out the wine, making a great curtesie. And then proceeded they to their feast. The Chinois [k] in the Eclipse of the Sun and Moone, are afraid that the Prince of Heauen will destroy them, and pacifie him with many sacrifices and prayers; they hold the Sunne and Moone, Man and Wife.

k *Linschot, c.23.*

§. VII.

Of the Marriages, Concubines, and other vices and errours of the CHINOIS.

THeir Marriages and Espousals want not many Ceremonies. Both are done in their youth. They like equalitie of age and state betwixt the parties. The Parents make the contracts, not asking their Childrens consent, neither doe they euer refuse. As for their Concubines, euery one keepes according to his pleasure and abilitie, respecting in them especially their beautie, and buy them for the most part, the price being a hundreth Crownes or lesse. The common people also buy their wiues, and sell them at their pleasure. The Magistrates marry in their owne ranke their legitimate wife. This chiefe wife only sits at table with her husband, the rest (except in the Royall Families) are as seruants, which in the presence of either of the former may not sit, but stand. Their children also call that wife their Mother, not their naturall Parent, and for her Funeralls alone solemnize their three yeeres mourning, or leaue their Office, not for their owne Mother. In their marriages they are very scrupulous that the wife haue not the same surname with her husband, although there be no kindred betwixt them, and the surnames in all China are not a thousand (as before is said) neither may any deuise new, but must haue one, & that the same which their Ancestors by the fathers side (not the mothers) had, except he be adopted into another Family. 5 6

They

They heed not degrees of affinitie or consanguinitie, so this surname differ, and therefore marry in the Mothers kindred be it almost neuer so neere. The Bride brings no portion to her husband, and yet the first day she comes to his house, she hath to attend abundance of houshold-furniture, euen the streets being therewith filled, all at the husbands cost, who some months before sends her a great summe of money to this purpose. There are many, which being poore doe for lust make themselues slaues to rich men, that so they may be furnished with a wife amongst his women-slaues, whereby also the children become perpetually bond. Others buy their wiues, but seeing their increasing family grow chargeable beyond their abilitie, sell their young sonnes and daughters at the same price they would sell a swine or beast, or some two or three duckats more, yea though they bee not by dearth compelled thereto. Thus this Kingdome abounds with seruants, not taken in the warres, but home-bred Citizens.

The Spaniards also and Portugalls carry many of them out of the Countrey into euerlasting seruitude. But this child-sale is the more tolerable, because the estate of seruants is here more easie then in other Nations, & the number of the poore which liue hardly is exceeding, and they may redeeme themselues at the same price if they be able to giue it. And lastly, a greater villany in some Prouinces vsed, makes this seeme the lesse, which is to murther those their children (especially of the female sexe) which they thinke they cannot bring vp: which fact also is with them the lesse heynous, not by preuenting that sale and transportation of their children (an impious pietie) but by a pious impietie, that opinion of transmigration or passage of soules into other bodies, thinking that by this vntimely and sudden murther, they may haue more timely and quick passage, and be borne againe in richer Families. And therefore they seeke no corners, but execute their bloudy parricides publikely. Yea, greater abominations then these are here perpetrated vpon as sleight grounds, many laying violent hands vpon themselues, both in desperation and impatience, and in malice also, so to hurt their enemies. Thus, they say, many thousands both of men and women euery yeere drowne themselues in Riuers, hang themselues, sometimes at their aduersaries doors, or poyson themselues; whereupon their kindred complaine to the Magistrates on those, which gaue cause or occasion to these extremities, which sometimes are seuere in these cases to the accused. It may be reckoned among their cruelties (which in the Northerne Prouinces is practised) the gelding of their Male-Infants, so to make them capable of the Kings seruice, none other being admitted to attend or speake with Him, and the whole sway of the Kingdome, being in great part in these vn-manly hands, of ten thousand scarce any but Plebeian, illiterate, seruile in condition and conditions, impotent, impudent, of weake both conceit and performance. Neither is this a little cruelties, that the Magistrates are thought to kill as many against the Lawes, as the Lawes themselues by execution of iudiciall sentence, by their custome of beating men with Canes, in manner at their owne lust. This makes men that they are not Masters of their owne, but are in continuall feare to be vndone by calumny and tyranny. The Choinois are also a fraudulent and treacherous people.

Metempsychosis.

They contemne strangers, scorning to learne any thing out of their bookes, as being vnlearned and rude: yea all the Characters whereby they expresse the name of strangers, are compounded of such as signifie beasts, hauing indeed a beastly and diabolicall conceit of them. When Embassadors come to them from Neighbour-Countries to pay their tributes, or for other busines, they are very suspiciously intreated, entertained as captiues all the time of their iourney, not permitting them to see any thing. They shut them vp (like beasts in stables) within their Palaces, neuer admit them the Kings presence, themselues dealing with few of the Magistrates, and all their businesse being ordered by Officers thereto assigned. Nor may any natiue trauell out of the Kingdome without diuers caueleſſe. *Petreius* the Portugall Embassador died in prison at Canton. They will not suffer strangers (which haue staid long in China (in some places the custome is nine yeeres) to returne from thence. Their Souldiers are base, meere mercinaries, not regarding honor where they are not rewarded with honor, alike vile in estimation and action, the most part slaues, thereto by their owne or parents wickednesse legally condemned; except at times of employment, being Porters, Horse-keepers, or of like seruile drudgerie. Their Captaines and Commanders haue some shaddow of dignitie, but the substance we haue before rightly attributed to them, who can punish these as the meanest. Long nayles are (some say) accounted a Gentlemanly signe, as of hands not employed to labour. Their exceeding pride (in which they are not exceeded of any) appeared in this, that they thought the Iesuites must needs attaine the Popedome at their returne into Europe, as hauing so much bettered their learning by the Chinois Authors. But These haue since euen by the opinion of learning, obtained a better estimation.

Osor. lib. 1.

Pantegin.

It were tedious to tell of their opinions touching the Creation. All being a rude and vnformed Chaos, *Tayn* (say they) framed and settled the Heauen and Earth. This *Tayn* created

Pitizom and *Pauzona*, *Pauzon* by power of *Tayn* created *Tanhom*, and his thirteene brethren. *Tanhom* gaue names to all things, and knew their vertues, and with his said brethren multiplied their generations, which continued the space of ninetie thousand yeeres. And then *Tayn* destroyed the world for their pride, and created another man named *Lotzitzam*, who had two hornes of sweet sauour, out of which presently did spring forth both men and women. The first of these was *Alazan*, which liued nine hundred yeeres. Then did the Heauen create another man (*Lotzitzam* was now vanished) named *Aizion*, whose Mother *Luium* was with child with him only in seeing a Lions head in the ayre. This was done in Truchin, in the Prouince of Santon: he liued eight hundred yeeres. After this, *Vfao* and *Hautzui*, and *Ochentey* with his sonne *Ezomlum*, and his nephew *Vnei* the first King of China (they say) were the inuenters of their many Arts.

1 *Litera à Mat. Ri.*

In the later [1] Epistles from China, dated 1606. and 1607. little is there to further this Historie. As for their tales of Miracles in those and the Iaponian Epistles (beating the same date) wherein *Ignatius Loyolaes* picture is made a miracle-worker; I hold them not worth relation. The Chinois beleeue (as is there reported) that there is a certaine spirit which hath power of the life and death of children that are sicke of the measells, and therefore when their children are sicke thereof, they hang a glasse before the dore of the chamber where he lyeth, that the spirit comming to destroy the child, seeing his Image in that glasse, should not dare to approach neerer. Their Baptisme cured the disease: a new remedy for measels, a new vertue of Baptisme.

Their order for the Poore may be a patterne vnto Christians: they suffer none to beg, nor to be idle. If any be blinde, yet he is set to some worke, as grinding in a Querne, or such like; of which sort (after [m] *Boterus* account) there are foure thousand blind persons that grind still in Canton alone. If they be impotent, that they cannot work, their friends (if they be able) must prouide for them; if not, they are kept in Hospitalls, out of which they sieuer passe, and haue all necessaries prouided them by Officers appointed in euery Citie to this busi esse. Common women are confined to certaine places, and may not goe abroad, nor dwell in the Citie, for infecting others, and are accountable to a certaine Officer of their euill earnings, which when they are old, is bestowed on their maintenance. Their dwelling is in the Suburbs of Cities.

m G. B. B. blind persons in the Citie of Canton, feed on grind. Rice.

They are great Sodomites, although they haue many Wiues and Concubines, which they buy of their Parents, or in the Markets, in like manner as the Turkes. They are not by Law prescribed to obserue this or that Sect: and therefore they haue many Sects, some worshipping the Sunne, some the Moone, some nothing: and all, their selues best like, as is in part before shewed. They take their oathes (as here by kissing a booke) with thrice drinking of a certaine liquor. *Antony Dalmeida* [n] saith, that in saying Masse, they were so thronged with the people, that they were almost trodden vnder foot. And of a Chinian Priest (contrarie to the zeale elsewhere in any Religion) they were inuited to dinner, and feasted together with many other of their Priests that vsed them kindly.

n *A. Dalmeida.* 1586.

§. VIII.

Of their Temples.

Triguatium.

IT followeth now that we speake of places Religious amongst the Chinois, of which their Temples challenge the first place, their Sepulchres the next. Of their Monasteries we haue already spoken. Their Temples, as their other structures, come short of the Europæan magnificence: yet are they many, and that about Paquin it selfe. For howsoeuer the King hath little deuotion to any Religion at all, yet his Mother is very zealous, repaires and builds Temples in diuers places, and in one Monasterie sustaineth aboue a thousand Ministers of her Holies: so that this kind elsewhere contemned, is in the Royall Citie better respected. Hence they haue a Prouerbe, In the Citie Royall, *Hô-xam* (so they call their Priests) in the Prouinces the Magistrates are worshipped. We haue mentioned the Temples dedicated to men of Merit and publike Benefactors. Such an one is in the confines of the Prouince of Conton erected to the Honor of One, which for the benefit of Trauellers made a passage ouer a steepe and vnpassable hill, diuiding the rocks, as *Annibal* did the Alpes; where are such Precipices, as cannot but strike horror to the passenger: & yet they are safely carried, without descending from their chayres, borne on men shoulders. On the top of this hil is a Temple built to the *Colaus*, that made this way, with his Image therein and odours burning perpetually: the walls and floore thereof adorned with many Poems and inscriptions to his praise, cut in Marble. This Mountaine is one dayes iourney, standing betweene

Colaus signifieth the Fortresse of the Kingdome: a chiefe Office.

betweene two great Riuers, whereby there is continuall trafficque betwixt this of Canton and the other Prouinces, there being aboue three thousand Porters, or bearers of Burthens, which carrie those wares, besides Beasts of carriage, and that with great fidelitie; a rare vertue in other parts of China. When they haue passed out of Canton, ouer this Mountaine, they come into the Riuer, which is called the Sonne of the Sea for the largenesse, but in Winter (which is their driest season) full of shoalds, the cause of much shipwrackes. But lest my Relation stay, or beee wracked in these shoalds: let vs take view of that which the King bestowed on the Iesuites for their Residence, and for the Behall of *Matthew Ricius*, to whom our China Relations are so much indebted.

10 It was aboue a quarter of a myle from one of the Citie gates, built by an Eunuch, who now was condemned for some crime; and lest his Palace which he had here builded, with the expence of aboue 14000. duckats (which in China is a great summe, in that cheapenesse of all things, far beyond Europæan computation) should fall into the hands of spoilers (the goods of Eunuchs in this kingdome vsually becomming his, which first can catch them) he consecrated his Palace, and made it a Temple, maintaining therein one Priest. Such Palaces many of the Magistrates haue neere to the Cities, as retyring places and *Tusculanes* for their Muses. The portraiture of this whole House, with the Garden, and other appurtenances, *Trigautius* hath set forth in picture; being after the China building, with the doore Southwards, and so running a great length into the North, with foure great Halls one beyond another; 20 in the middle parts, and on each side, Chambers and other roomes; beyond all the Garden, the pillars of Timber bearing vp the roofe; the walls and pauement of Bricke. The outmost of these Halls was conuerted into a Temple or Idoll-Chappell, in which was a great Altar of Stone and Bricke, cunningly fretted, painted red (a colour forbidden to priuate houses) and vpon the midst thereof sate a huge Monster of Earth, gilded from top to toe, of massie quantitie. The Chinois call it *Ti cam*, the God (as they fable) of the Earth and Treasures, as *Pluto* in the Poets. In his hand was a Scepter, on his head a Crowne, not vnlike those vsed by our Kings. On each side stood foure ministers of the same matter: on both sides of the roome two great Tables, and on each of them fiue Kings, or great Officers of Hell. On both the wals were painted the same Officers, or Iudges, sitting on their seuerall Tribunals, giuing 30 sentence on wicked men, euery one according to the condition of his Court. Before them stood many Deuils, more terribly formed then with vs. The paines of Hell also were so deciphered, that could not but strike terror to the beholders; some rosted in yron beds, some fried in scalding oyle, some cut in pieces, or diuided in the middle, or some of dogs, or otherwise tortured. The first of those Iudges examined the faults, which they said hee saw in a certaine glasse. Those which he found guiltie, were sent to the other Iudges, according to the qualitie of the crimes. One of these was Iudge in cases of *Transmigration*, which sent the soules of cruell men into Tygres; of vncleane persons, into Swine, and the like: or if their crimes were smaller, into the poorer sort. There was a great Ballance; in one of the Scales, a man laden with sinnes; in the other, one of their hypocriticall prayer-bookes, which counterpoysed the other Scale, and freed the sinner. There ran through the midst of Hell a discoloured Riuer, which carried away many. For ouer it were two Bridges, one of Gold, the other of Siluer, by which, those passed ouer, which had been deuout Idolaters, carrying in their hands ensignes of the same: these were guided by the Priests, which led them through the midst of Hell to faire and pleasant Groues and Gardens. In another part were painted the dungeons of Hell, with horrible Serpents, flames, Deuills. To the brazen gates there of there comes an Idolatrous Priest, which in despight of all the Deuils deliuers his mother from those flames. There was no infernall punishment painted, but had such an inscription: *He which shall pray to such an Idoll a thousand times shall be free from this punishment.* The Iesuites beat the earthen Idols to dust, and burnt those of wood, wherein the Chinese Conuerts were 50 the forwarder, because the Countrey custome is to fill the hollow bellies of these Images with deuoted money or iewells. They demolished the Altar and plastred ouer the pictures, and in place thereof erected the Image of Christ. No priuate man may erect a Temple by Law, which yet the mightie Eunnchs transgresse.

A little before this exchange of Idols into Images (after their distinction, and a silly one it is) some tooke their last leaue of *Ti cam*: one kneeling and bidding it farewell; another chasing, said; *Thou masse of dung and earth, if thou hast no power to maintaine the Temple and thy selfe, what helpe may I looke for at thy hand? neither art thou worthy of any honour at mine.* Others said, that this had sometime borne the name of some other Idoll, and therefore was auenged for that change.

60 At Xauceum is the Temple of *Nanhoa* vpon a goodly Hill, and nigh to it a Monasterie, in which are maintained one thousand of their Religious Regulars, the lands adioyning being theirs. They tell that about eight hundred yeeres since liued one *Lusu* in great austeritie, alwayes

Place assigned to the Iesuites. Spoylers spoyled.

Chappell of *Ti cam* the China. *Pluto* his Image or Idoll.

Deuils & Hell.

Minos, Æacus, Rhadamanthus here haue two other assessors. *μετεμψυχωσις*

Ballances like those in diuers Legends, as of S. *Francis* in *M. Paris*, &c. *Stiv.*

Elysian fields.

o The Iesuites say, that the Chinois maintaine their Idolatries, saying they worship not the Idoll, but God thereby represented, &c.

alwayes girded with a chaine next to his flesh, which vsed to grinde as much rice as might serue one thousand of them a day. When the wormes (by reason of that chaine breeding in his flesh) fell off, he would place it there againe, and aske if it had nothing to gnaw. His carkasse is still kept there, to which are pilgrimages out of all the Kingdome, and this Temple built to his honor. The Regulars are diuided into twelue stations, and each hath a Superior, besides One supreme ouer all the rest. They professed chastitie, but their house was both a stewes for whoredome, and a denne of theeues and robbers. Here were many huge Idols of brasse, and other metall, and of wood, gilded, in one station fiue hundred. They had diuers steeples and bells in them, one so great, that they had neuer seene so great a bell in Europe.

The Corpse of *Lusu* was shewed them, which they worship (but many doubt whether it be the true, for could it escape the wormes, which had seised on it aliue?) kept in the midst of the Temple in a high place, where hang fifteie lamps, which burne at appointed times. The Abbot of this Monasterie confessed that in ancient times the Chinois had worshipped no Idols, but that they were politically appointed by Magistrates, left the vulgar should bee without all Religion. They haue their Chappels in great mens houses. But we will take view onely of the Kings Temple at Nanquin, and so end. This is a Royall one indeed for greatnesse and statelinesse. It is built in a groue of Pine-trees neere the Citie, which is compast with a wall twelue miles in circuit. The Temple after the China manner of building is most of timber, the wals of brick; diuided into fiue Ile with rowes of pillars on both sides, which are of round timber as big as two men can fathome: the roofe is carued and guilded verie faire, hauing lost nothing of the beautie, though not vsed by the Kings for sacrifice in this their two hundred yeeres absence. In the midst is an eminent place of precious Marble, in which are two Thrones of Marble, one for the King to sacrifice in, the other left emptie for him to whom he doth sacrifice. The Cloisters without the Temple are beautified with elegant turnings, and all the windowes netted with yron to keepe out birds, which is vsed also in all the Palace. All the doores of the Temple are couered with plates of brasse guilded and richly carued: without the Temple are many Altars of red Marble which represented the Sun, Moone, Starres, and China Mountaines; whereby they inferre that the god there worshipped created all things, which are therefore set without the Temple as acknowledged not to be gods. No man vnder grieuous penalties may cut a bough off any of the trees in that groue, which makes them great and old. About the Temple are many Cels, which were baths in which the Kings and Ministers washed before sacrifice. There Altars are of the Dutch fashion that one may goe round about them.

§. IX.

Of their Funeralls.

Linschot. l. 1. c. 23.

THe Chinois are very superstitiously conceited of Death, and are exceeding loth to leaue any die in their house. *Linschoten* writeth, That when a man lies on his deathbed, they present vnto him the picture of the Deuill, with the Sunne in his right hand, and a Poniard in his left, bidding the sicke man looke well on him, that hee may be his friend in the other world. How euer the sicke be visited, let vs now performe our last office to these Chinois, and follow them to their graues.

Funerals.

Many are the Ceremonies which they there obserue in Funerals. As they honor their parents in their life time (being otherwise lyable to grieuous punishments p, yea some of their chiefest Mandarines will sue for the Kings licence, to leaue their publike function, to giue priuat and more diligent attendance to their parents:) so, after their death, they mourne three yeeres in white Hats and Garments, although they beare the highest Magistracies in the Kingdome, as the *Colai*, &c. the militarie Magistrates excepted. The first moneths they gird vnto them a rough Vesture with a rope, like the bare-foot Friers. This is not onely obserued of the meaner sort; but the mightiest Mandarines, after newes of their fathers death, leaue their function, and in their priuate houses bewaile their losse. The wealthier sort keepe them aboue ground two or three yeeres, q in a Parlour, fitted for that purpose, whither they daily resort vnto them, to salute them, and to burne Incense, and set meates before them. Sometimes also the *Bonzij*, or Priests, resort thither with their Dirges and holy things. Their wiues, children, and neighbours come likewise to bewaile them, being admonished of the death by the sonne or neerest of the kindred, in a solemne Libell mournfully composed. The Hall is spread with white Clothes or Matts: in the midst thereof is an Altar, and thereon the Coffin and Image of the dead. To that Hall, within foure or fiue dayes, all the kindred come in mourning attyre, one after another, euery houre of the day, and burne odours, and set

p Some are heroi by Libell accused to the King, and deprived of all dignitie.

q They haue a kind of Hatch, which closeth the Coffin, so that it stinkes not.

two Wax-lights to the dead, making foure bowings and kneelings, after their fashion, before deliuered; the sonne, meane while, standing by, and modestly lamenting. Behind the Coffin are the women of the house hid, behind a curtaine, in mourning weeds, and howling behaiiour. They burne Paper and white-Silkes, so thinking to minister apparell to the dead. They will not vse their wonted lodging, diet, and delights; but lye on Straw Mattresses, on the bare ground, neere the Coffin; eate no Flesh, or Dainties, drinke no Wine, Bathe not, companie not with their Wiues, come not at Feasts, nor for certaine moneths space, abroad; alwayes remitting more of this austeritie, as the three yeares grow neeter an end. They vse not the same apparell, house-hold furniture, salutations. They colour part of the Paper in which they write, with another colour. They obserue not their wonted proper names, but call themselues other wise, as *Disobedient*, or such like. Musick is banished; their dyet is hard. When the corpes is to bee buried, all the kindred come together, being re-inuited with another Libell, in mourning habit. The pompe is in manner of Procession: diuers Statues of Men and Women, Elephants, Tygres, and Lyons, all of Paper, diuers-coloured, and gilded, goe before, which at the graue are burned. A long rancke of Priests also attend, which performe many Rites by the way, pattering their prayers, and playing on Tymbrels, Pipes, Cymballs, Bells, and other Instruments. Likewise, huge Centers of Bell-metall are carried on mens shoulders. Then followes the Coffin, adorned sumptuously, carried of forty or fifty Bearers, vnder a great Canopie of Silke. The children come after on foot, leaning on their staues, as fainting: Then then the women, vaseene, vnder a white curtaine; and then other women, further in bloud, carryed in mourning chayres. They assemble as many Priests as they can, which on musicall instruments, and with their voyces, tune their mournefull Ditties. The place whither the corpse is carried, is adorned with diuers Images. The Coffin is very large, the prouiding of which they commit not to their heire, but themselues in their liues take order for the same, bestowing great care and cost for the best wood and workemanship which they are able to pro cure, there in spending sometime seuenty, eighty, or a hundred ducats. They hold it vnfortunate to die before they haue prouided the same. They are no lesse curious for the place of their buriall, thinking that hereon dependeth the fortune of their posterity, and therefore sometime spend a whole yeare in consultation, whether it shall bee toward the North, or some other Region. Their Sepulchers are in the fields on some hillocke neere the Cities, each family by themselues where they fortifie them, and oft-times resort thither to performe their obsequies. To bee buried within the walls were a thing most miserable, neuer to bee forgotten. At these Sepulchres they haue their yeerely meetings, where their kindred burne odours and make a Funerall banket. Their Sepulchres are very great of maible, with the images of diuers beasts and men standing by. Their Epitaphs also in marble, magnificent, with elegant inscriptions of their exploits. For some time after they will eate no flesh, in regard of that passage of soules before spoken of. This opinion is of more authoritie and credite with them then that of Hell or Heauen, although (as is said) their Bookes and Pictures depaint horrible things in that kinde. Others r adde, that as soone as one is dead, they wash him, and clothing him in his best apparell, all perfumed, set him in his best chaire, and there all his neerest kindred kneeling before him, take their leaue with teares. They Coffin him (as before) and place him in a roome richly furnished, and couer him with a sheet, in which they paint his portraiture. A table standeth by full of Viands, with Candles on it. Thus doe they keepe him fifteene dayes, euery night the Priests executing their superstitious exequies, burning and shaking certaine papers before Him. By the Sepulchre they plant a Pine tree, which is sacred, and may not be cut downe, nor conuerted to any vse, if the weather ouerthrow it. Their funerall pompe is in manner of Procession; with Candles carried in their hand. They burne vpon the graue many papers, painted with men, cattell, and prouision for his vse in the next world. It is now time to leaue them quietly resting in their graues; only a word of their Times reputed holy.

r *Mess.* and Discourse of China. *Escalon. l. 1. c. 15.*

The times religious are the new Moones, and full Moones (as yee haue heard) in which they make great banquets, and then also they muster their Souldiers, who alone may weare weapons is China. They solemnize t also their Birth-dayes, whereunto their kindred doe resort of custome with presents, and receiue good cheere. The Kings birth-day is a great festuall. But u New-yeeres day is their principall feast. This is solemnized of all Sects alike the first new Moone, and then again the first full Moone in the beginning of the yeere: This is their Candlemasse u feast, euery man deuising artificiall lanterns of paper, glasse, cloth, the Halls seeming to bee on fire with the multitude of lights; some carrying in the night with great reuels, lights and twisted lanthornes Serpentine fashion, and many deuices are practised of fire-workes with gunpowder. Then they send New-yeeres-gifts to each other, as *Mendoza* writes. They haue no Sabboth nor weekely solemnity.

t *Peters.*

t Discourse of China.

u Iragreess in time & lights.

§. X.

Of Strangers, and Forren Religions in China.

IF the Iewes in China were haue spoken already: with their Ethnike rites we haue toyled and tyred you. It may haply be some refreshing to looke vpon Sarecenicall or Christian obiects, if it bee but for variety. How inhospitall the Chinois are to strangers wee haue in part heard, neither permitting egresse to the Natiues, nor ingresse to aliens except in three respects. The first, such as come to pay [z] their annuall tributes. The second, such as pretending honour and tribute come (as we haue heard) from the West with seeming tribute, a colour to their gaine by Merchandise. The third, such as in admiration of the Chinian vertues and learning, come thither (as the Queene of *Sheba* to *Salomon*) to learne the same, which is the Iesuits pretence: but these must here fixe their habitation, nor may bee suffered to returne; such is their iealousie, of discouering their mysteries to others. And this made the Iesuites, after so long stay, free from feare of expulsion, which yet fince complaine of [y] persecution. But it may not bee knowne, that they haue any intelligence or commerce with strangers: and therefore the Iesuites, which haue obtained two so great priuiledges, the Eunuchs Palace for their Residence, and the imployment in correcting the China Kalender, both by Royall approbation; yet could not obtaine leaue to goe into the Prouince of Canton, though with Mathematicall pretexts for that Kalender-busiuesse, ro obserue Longitudes and Latitudes of Places, because they were said to bee countreymen to those of Macao. Yea, a *Colao*, or Counsellor of State, was deprtiued, for sending a message to a bordering King; a tempest of libelling complaints thundering and showring against him therefore. In the bordering Prouinces they set narrow watch at Custome-houses, Bridges, and in the very Riuers, by ships of warre thereto appointed. But if they bee once gotten into the inner parts of the Kingdome, there are no such officers, nor Searchers. Neither may any stranger passe out of the Kingdome, after once entring, without the Kings licence. The Iesuites steale their ingresse and egresse by meanes of the Portugalls, which had the Towne of Macao assigned them by the Chinois for traffique. These come vsually twice a yeare to the chiefe Citie of the Prouince of Canton, which is not called Quantum, or Canton, (the name of the Prouince) but Quam ceu. All the [a] day time they haue free entrance into the Citie about their Merchandise, but must lye on shipboord at night. In the midst of the Riuer there is a little Iland, and therein a Temple, in which they are allowed their Catholike deuotions. There by Boat did they prouide to steale in or out of the Country. The Mahometans that come in by land, if they stay nine yeeres (as is obserued) may neuer returne home againe. Of these there are now many thousand Families in China, dispersed into most of the Prouinces and chiefe Cities. They haue there their Temples very sumptuous, and their Circumcision. But as fare as I could euer learne, they neyther teach, nor care to teach others their deuotions, but are vnskilfull of the Saracen Tenets, and are contemned of the Chinois. It seemes, that their comming in was in the time that the Tartars raigned here, which since haue increased, and after so long continuance, are not held in suspition, as other strangers. Some say, after the fourth generation they are reputed as Natiues: yea, they are admitted to the studies of Learning, Degrees, and Magistracie, as well as the Chinois. But most of these, thus dignified, relinquish their former Superstition, retaynning nothing thereof, but abstinence from Swines flesh, which rather by Nature, then for Religion, they abhorre. They differ in countenance from the Chinois. *Perera* saith, hee saw at Fuquien certaine Moores, who could say little of their Religion, but, *Mahomet* was a Moore, my father was a Moore, and I am a Moore, with some other words of their Alcoran, wherewithall, in abstinence from Swines flesh, they liue (saith he) vntill the Diuell take them all. He reasoned with them, because hee had in many Chinish Cities seene the Reliques of *Mahomet* kept; and they answered, That they came in great ships fraught with Merchandize from Paquin-ward, to a Port appointed to them by the King, where they conuerted to their Religion the chiefe *Mandarine* or *Loytia*; whereupon the people began to turne Mahumetan. They now waxing bolder, prohibited the eating of Swines flesh, the peoples chiefe food: who hereby prouoked, complayned of a conspiracie betwixt these Moores and the *Loytia*, against their King. Hereupon he, and the chiefe of them were executed, and the rest dispersed into certaine Cities, where they remained slaues to the King.

Christians. Touching Christians in China, there is not so great certaintie. Certaine Mogores told *Ricius* of some in the Xensian Prouince, in the North parts of China, at a place called Xucheo, which were white, bearded, vsed Bells, worshipped *Isa*, that is, *Iesus*, and *Mary*, and honoured the Crucifix; their Priests married, which cured diseases without medicines. A Iew at Paquin

Trigaut.

[z] Euen these that are of the next and tributary countries, are as much as vnknowne people, forbidden entercourse, as those of *Corea*: this by custome more then law. *Ric.*

[y] *Trigautius* hath published one large Booke of Epistles, and since another larger with pictures, of the persecutions of Iesuites. See also Captaine *Saris* and Captaine *Cocke* in my Pilgrimes. *lib. 4. c. 1.* & 3. and extracts of *Pinto, To. 2. lib. 1. cap. 2.* in which at large are contained many particulars here omitted.

[a] This is also testified by *Mons. de Montfart.*

Many Mahumetans in China.

quin gaue more full intelligence, that at Caifumfu, and at Lincin, in the Prouince of Scian-tum, and in the Prouince of Sciansi, there liued certaine strangers, whose ancestors had come out of forraine parts, which worshipped the Crosse (which the Chinois expresse by the Characters of Ten) and made the signe thereof with the finger on their meate and drinke. They also made the same signe with inke on the foreheads of their children, to preseruethem from misfortunes. A Iesuite also saw, in the hands of an Antiquary, a Bell with a Church and Crosse thereon grauen, circumscribed with Greeke letters. The Iew also reported, that those Crosse-worshippers had the same deuotion in their prayers which the Iewes held: this the Iesuite interpreted of the Psalter common to them both. He affirmed that there were many of them in the Northern prouinces, which so flourished in letters and armes, that they grew suspicious to the Chinois, which he thought was caused by the Saracens some sixty yeeres before. The Magistrates were so incensed hereby, that they for feare were dispersed, some turning Iewes, some Saracens, others Idolsters: and their Temples were also conuerted into Idolatrous Temples, one of which he mentioned in his country. Euer since they liue, like professors; and when the Iesuits send one of their Conuerts to make enquiry, he could learne of none: which they thought proceeded from their feare, taking him for a Spie sent from the Magistrates.

All these Sects the Chinois call *Hoei*, the Iewes distinguished by their refusing to eate the sinew of leg; the Saracens, Swines flesh; the Christians by refusing to feed on round-hoofed beasts, Asses, Horses, Mules, which all both Chinois, Saracens and Iewes doe there feed on. The Saracens called the Christians also *Isa* as before; and *Terzai*, which is a name giuen in Persia to the Armenian Christians (as an Armenian affirmed to *Ricius*) whence hee conjectured, that these Christians came out of Armenia. And by the report of *Haithon* the Armenian, which saith, their King came to the Great Chan of Cathay (which we haue before obserued, at least the best parts thereof, to be the North parts of China) to persuade him and his to become Christians; which in great part also he affected, besides other Christians there reported to bee, by *Paulus*; and those of Sarnau, subiect to the Great Chan, mentioned by *Vertomannus*, which seeme to be neere these in China. The Malabar [b] Christians haue Chaldee memorials of China, conuerted by S. *Thomas*; and their Metropolitan hath his style of all India and China.

a *Sie sup. c. 9.*

b *Vid. Christ. Exped. 4. in. l. 1. in fine.*

Now, for the later Christianitie there preached by the Iesuits, their owne Commentaries and annuall Epistles are full. *Xauerius* [c] attempted it often and carnestly but could neuer obtaine entrance; which by others of that societie was after affected, and with much trouble effected. When the Portugalls came first into those parts, the Chinois were suspicious of them, their Ordnance and great shipps, seeming dreadfull. The Saracens told them, they were called *Franks* (so they call all the Europeans, since the Expedition of *Godfrey* of Bullen) which name the Chinois in Canton still giue them, calling them and their Ordnance *Folanks* (pronouncing *l* for *r*, as *sh* for *d*, *p* for *b*) and by relating the Conquests of Malacca, and other places in India, brought them into greater iealousie. Yet couetousnesse of gaine opened them a way first to merchandise in a desart Iland, called Sancian, seuenty miles off in the Sea, and after to a habitation assigned them in a Peninsula (part of a greater Iland) neere to China, called of an Idoll *Ama*, there honored, Amacao, or *Amar harbour*, shortly Macao: which since that time hath beene inhabited by people of diuers Nations, together with the Portugal's, and hath become a City, with a Bishops See, and a College of Iesuits, and a famous Mart of European and Indian commodities. After that they admitted them traffique in the chiefe City of Canton, two dayes sailing from Macao: whereby they found meanes, by degrees, to bring in suit *Roggerus*, and after *Ricius*, with other Iesuits; which insinuating by gifts and obsequiousnesse into the Magistrates affections, furthered the same by reputation of Sanctitie, and especially of Learning. Many yeeres they spent to little purpose, till *Ricius* by his Mathematicke, and the Art of Memorie, in both which the Chinois admired him; then by changing his habit into that of the Learned men in China, professing also a maintenance of the Sect of *Confutsius*, which he professed, and confutation of the Idoll Sects; and lastly, by presents to the King, he made way into the Kings Palace & fauour, who also bestowed an Idoll Temple for his Church, and the Residence of his Societie. Many troubles they encountred meane while, to get or keepe their Residences; that inhospitall people, sometimes accusing them to the Magistrats with deuised Calumnies, sometimes tumultuously stoning their houses, sometimes charging them to be the cause of Dearth, or that their Idols sent them not raine; calling them *Deuill strangers*, fathering on them curious Arts, not only of Alchymie and Long life, which they honour, but others: as that they knew by means countenance, that they had a precious stone in their heads, to I know not what purposes; that they plotted deuices against the State; & the Crucifix was accused also, as deuised by inchantments to destroy the King. The Hollanders likewise, among other their insultations of the

c *Xauerij vita l. 5. c. 8. & d.*

Macao.

An. Dom. 1610.

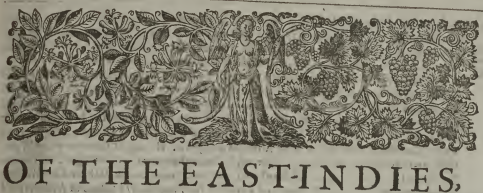
Port-

Portugalls in all the parts of India, brought these of Macao into such feare, that they went about to Compasse some part of their Towne with a Wall: which the Chinois there dwelling, thinking to be done against them, caused such an vprore, that they fell together by the eares: and another quarrell happening betweene a Religious and a Secular Priest, the Chinois gaue out, that *Catauem* the Iesuite went about to make himselfe King of China (as one that knew the Countrey, and had bin in both the Royall Cities) with the helpe of the Iesuites there residing, Iapanders, and others. This made the Chinois to flye from Macao, and to divulge such rumors in Canton, that there was a sudden muster of souldiers through the Prouince, and one thousand houses of the chiefe Citie without the Walls pulled downe, one of the Iesuites Societie apprehended and beaten with Canes to death, and with much adoe, this little adoe was after pacified. And now the Iesuites thinke themselues in better case then euer, and haue (as they say) conuerted fiue thousand to their Faith in this Kingdome, after thirty yeares labours, hauing foure or fiue places of Residence. And would God, as I professe my selfe indebted to them for this Light of History, so they might haue iust cause of thankefulnesse to God and them, for the Christian Light; and that it were not confused with such Heathenish exchange, of one Image for another, and rather the names, then substance of deuotion, altered; Beads, Tapers, Single Votaries, Processions, Monasteries, Altars, Images, Hee and she Saints, with other Rites, being there alreadie: and the very art of their Images causing an Ethnike adoration (as they tell of a Vice-roy, that would not looke vpon one of them, but in a Chappell, in the higher part of his house, set on an Altar, with Tapers and Odours dayly burning thereto) and their manner of Preaching being not by Word, so much as by Writing; and that not by Authorities of Scripture, but by Arguments of Reason, furthered by their owne Philosophie, and commended by Mathematicall Sciences: strange Ground-workes to Faith and Theologie.

Ep. 16. 12.

1. Cor. 2. 5. Heb. 11. 1. *Vbi vides non est fides: εἔλεγχος & ἔλαυστεῖον.*

OF



OF THE EAST-INDIES, AND OF THE SEAS AND ILANDS ABOVT *ASIA*, WITH THEIR RELIGIONS.

THE FIFTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Of India in Generall, and of the Ancient Rites there obserued.

§. 1.

The Limits, and the ancient People and Inuasions of India.

THE name of *India*, is now applyed to all farre-distant Countries, not in the extreme limits of Asia alone; but euen to whole America, through the error of *Columbus* and his fellowes; who at their first arriuall in the Westerne world, thought that they had met with *Ophir*, and the Indian Regions of the East. But the Ancients also comprehended vnder this name a huge Tract of Land, no lesse in the iudgement of *Alexanders* followers in his Eastern Inuasions, then the third part of the Earth; *Ctesias* accounted it one halfe of Asia. Yea, a great part of Africa also is comprehended vnder that name. So *Turnebus* [a] In his *Aduersaria*, not onely findeth the Barbarians and Parthians, called by that name in *Virgil*; but *Thebes* in the higher Egypt, and *Ammons* Temple in *Higinus*; and Æthiopia also, as in our discourse [b] thereof will further appeare. But taking India more properly, *Dionysius* [c] bounds it betweene Caucasus, and the Red-Sea, Indus and Ganges: *Ouid* likewise in that Verse,

a *Tur. Adu. 21. cap. 9. Higin. Fab. 275.*

b *Vid. l. 7. c. 3.*

c *Dion. Asser.*

Decolor extremo quâ cingitur India Gange.

But *Ptolemy* [d] and other Geographers, did vsually diuide India by the Riuer Ganges, into two parts, one on this side Ganges, and the other beyond. Although here we finde no lesse difficultie concerning Ganges, which the most, with my selfe, account the same with Guenga, that falleth into the gulfe of Bengala, which they also imagine to be that, which of the Ancients is called *Sinus Gangeticus*: Others [e] esteeme the Riuer Canton (whereon standeth the supposed Canton, chiefe City of one of the Chinian Prouinces, whereof we haue so lately taken our leaue) to be that Ganges: of which minde are *Mercator*, *Magninus*, *Gastardius*, *Arthus*, and their disciples. *M. Pauius* [f] diuideth India into three parts, the Lesse, the Greater, which he calleth *Malabar*; and *Abassia*, betwixt them both, *Dom. Niger* recko-

d *Ptol. lib. 7.*

e *Mercat. Tab. vniuers. Magin. Geog. G. Arthus, Hist. Ind. Or.*

f *M. Pauius, lib. 3.*

reckoneth g the same number. The Name of India h flowed from the Riuer *Indus*. *Semiramis* is reported to inuade India with three millions of foot-men, and 500000. horse, besides counterfeit Elephants, made of the hides of 300000. Oxen, stuffed with hay. Yet *Staurobates*, at that time the Indian Monarch, brake her Forces, and chased her out of the field.

g *Nig. Com. Ast. x.*

h *Steph Byzant. Ἰνδὸς ποταμὸς, ἀφ' οὗ ἡ Ἰνδική, &c.*

Megasthenes reckoneth one hundred twenty two Indian Nations. *Arrianus* in his eight booke makes a large description of this Indian world, saying, That they liued like the Scythians, without Houses, Cities, Temples, in a wandring course with their Tents, on the barke of the Tree *Tala*, and wild Venison, the skins whereof were their garments. In all India were no seruants, but all free-men. These things were altred by *Bacchus* or *Dionysius*, who made an Expedition hither, not so much with Armes as with Arts. He taught them the vse of Wine, Oyle, and Sacrificing: in memorie whereof, Posteritie honoured him for a god. Of this the Poets, and Histories of *Alexander* & others, make much mention. So doth *Suidas* tell of one *Brachmãn*, that prescribed the Rites and Lawes of the *Brachmanes*: *Solinus* of *Hydaspes*; and others, of *Ganges*, *Hercules*, & the rest, with much vncertaintie. *Postellus* i strangely conceiteth himselfe, that *Abrahams* posteritie by *Keturah* seated themselues in India, and were there knowne by the name of *Iewes*, before the *Iewes* in Palestina: that they obserued Circumcision, and dispersed it into Syria, Egypt, Armenia, Colchis, Iberia, Paphlagonia, Chaldea, and India, before *Moses* led the Israelites out of Egypt: and that the *Brachmanes* were so called, *quasi Abrahamanes*, as following the instructions of *Abraham*. *Abraham* we beleeue *the Father of the faithfull*, but cannot father on him such vnfaithfull and degenerate generations, no more then with the same *Postellus* we acknowledge the Turkes the posteritie of the ten Tribes, and the Tartars k to be the remainder of those Turkes, following Cabalisticall conjectures. But that which he speaketh of the name *Iewes* and *Abrachmanes* in India, may perhaps arise from a testimony cited out of *Megasthenes* his *Indica*, by *Clem.* l *Alex.* That *all things obserued by Naturall Philosophers in Greece had beene handled before, partly by the Brachmanes amongst the Indians, partly of those which in Syria are called Iewes*: in which testimonie he toyneth Iewes and Brachmanes in Profession of the same learned Science of Naturall Philosophy. *Apuleius* m maketh the Brachmans first Founders of the Pythagorean learning: and reporteth further, That at dinner-time the Table was made readie, and the youths from diuers Places and Seruices resorted thither: at which time the Masters questioned with them what good they had done that day: one answereth, Hee had beene a Peace-maker to reduce such & such which were at odds, to amitie: another had done this or that for his Parents: another had studied or meditated on such a point. Once, he which could not giue good account of his mornings worke, might not be admitted to receiue any dinner-wages.

i *Post. de Origin. c.6.13.& 15.*

k This word signifies a *Remnant*, and *Otto Heurnius* with like Cabalisticall conceit, imagineth the gifts of *Abraham* to the sonnes of *Ketura*, to be Magicke and Astrologie.

l *Clem Strom. lib 1.*

m *Apul. Florid. lib. 2.*

Strabo in his fifteenth Booke is large in this Indian subiect. Hee reporteth out of *Aristobulus*, that the River Indus by force of an Earth-quake, changed his channell, thereby a great part of the neighbour Region being turned into a desart. For in this Indus is like vnto Nilus, in that, without it, the Country would be a Wildernesse, and therefore is also worshipped of the Inhabitants. It receiueth fifteene other Riuers into it. Hee mentioneth the *Cathei* not farre from thence, which after happily gaue name vnto Cathay.

n *Plin. l. 6.c.19. Ar. lib.3.*

The Indians are of seuen sorts: n The first in estimation, and fewest in number, were their Philosophers. These kept publike Acts once a yeere before the King, & he which in his Obseruations was found three times false, was condemned to perpetuall silence. The second sort were Husband-men, which payd the King (the onely owner of all the Land) a fourth part of the increase. The third, was of Shepheards and Huntsmen, which wandred in Tents. The fourth, Artificers. The fifth, Souldiers. The sixth, Magistrates. The seuenth, Courtiers, and those of his Priuie Councell. If any woman killeth the King in his drunkennesse, shee is rewarded with the marriage of his Sonne and Heire. If any deprue another of a member, besides like for like, he loseth his hand; and, if he bee an Artificer, his life. They strangle their sacrifice, that it may be so offered whole to their Idols.

§. II.

Of their Philosophicall or Religious Sects.

o *Brachmanes, Vid. Strab. Cl. Dion. Alex. &c.*

OF their Philosophers, or men Learned and Religious, the o *Brachmanes* obtaine the first place, as being neerest in Sects to the Greekes. These are after their manner *Nazarites* from the wombe. So soone as their Mother is conceiued of them, there are learned men appointed which come to the Mother, with Songs, containing Precepts of Chastitie. As they grow in yeeres they change their Masters. They haue their places of Exercise in a Grotte nigh to the Citie, where they are busied in graue conferences. They

They eate no liuing Creatures, nor haue vse of women, liue frugally, and lye vpon skinnes. They will instruct such as will heare them, but their Hearers must neither Sneeze, nor Spit, nor Speake. When they haue in this strict course spent seuen and thirtie yeeres, they may liue more at Pleasure and Libertie, in Dyet, Habit, proper Habitation, and the vse of Gold, and Marriage. They conceale their mysteries from their Wiues, lest they should blab them abroad. They esteeme this life as mans Conception, but his Death-day religious. They hold the World to bee Created, Corruptible, Round, ruled by the high God. Water they imagine to haue beene the beginning of making the World; and that besides the foure Elements, there is a fifth Nature, whereof the Heauen and Starres consist. They intreate of the immortalitie of the Soule, and of the torments in Hell, and many such like matters.

The P *Germanes*, another Order of Religious or Learned men, are honoured amongst them: especially such of them as liue in the Woods, and of the Woods, both for their dyet of those wilde Fruits, and their habit of the Barkes of Trees, not acquainted with *Bacchus* or *Venus* any more then with *Ceres*. They speake not to the Kings, when they aske counsell of them, but by messengers; and doe pacifie the angrie gods, as is supposed, by their holinesse.

p The Indian *Germanes*.

Next in honour to these, are certaine *Mendicants*, which liue of Rice and Barley, which any man at the first asking giueth them, together with entertainment into their houses. These professe skill in Physicke, and so remedie Diseases, Wounds, and Sterilitie; very constant in labour and hardship. Others there are, Inchanters and Diuiners, Masters of Ceremonies about the Dead, which wander thorow Townes and Cities. Some there are more Ciuil and Secular, in their life professing like Pietie and Holinesse. Women also are admitted vnto the fellowship of their studies in this Philosophie, not to their beds. *Aristobulus* writeth, That he saw two of these *Brachmanes*, the one an old man shaun, the other young with long haire, which sometimes resorted to the Market-place, and were honoured as Counsellors, and freely tooke what they pleased, of any thing there to be sold, for their sustenance. They were anointed with Sesamine oyle, wherewith, and with honey, they tempered their bread. They were admitted to *Alexanders* Table, where they gaue lessons of patience q: and after going to a place not farre off, the old Man lying downe with his face vpward, sustained the Sun and showers terrible violence. The yonger standing on one foot, held in both his hands a peece of wood of three cubits lifted vp, and shifted feet, as the other was weary: and so they continued euery day. The young man returned home afterward, but the old man followed the King, with whom he changed his Habit and Life, for which, when as he was by some reproued, he answered, That he had fulfilled the fortie yeeres exercise, which he had vowed. *Onesicritus* saith, that *Alexander*, heating of some Religious Obseruants, which were naked, and exercised themselues to much hardship, and would r not come to others, but would bid Men, if they would haue any thing with them, to come to them; sent him vnto them, who found fifteene of them twentie furlongs from the City, each of them observing his own gesture of sitting, standing, or lying naked, and not stirring til sun-setting, in that vnsupportable heat, at which time they returned into the Citie. *Calanus* was one of them. He afterward followed *Alexander* into Persia, where beginning to be sicke, hee caused a great Pile or Frame of wood to be made, wherein he placed himselfe in a golden chayre, and caused fire to be put to, in which he was voluntarily consumed, telling (if they tell true) that he would meet *Alexander* at Babylon, the place fatall to *Alexanders* death. *Aelianus* s saith, That this was done in a suburbe of Babylon, and that the fire was of Cedar, Cypres, Mirtle, Laurell, and other sweet woods: and after he had performed his daily exercise of running, he placed himselfe in the midde st, crowned with the leaues of Reeds, the Sunne shinning on him, which he worshipped. This adoration was the signe which hee gaue to the Macedonians to kindle the fire, in which he abode without any stirring till he was dead; *Alexander* himselfe admiring, and preferring this victorie of *Calanus* before all his owne. This *Calanus* told *Onesicritus* of a golden World, where Meale was as plentiful as dust, and Fountaines streamed Milke, Hony, Wine, and Oyle. Which Country, by men turned into wantonnesse, *Iupiter* altered and detayned, imposing a life of hardnesse and labour, which while men followed, they enioyed abundance; but now that men begin to surfet and grow disobedient, there is danger of vniuersall destruction. When hee had thus spoken, hee bad him, if hee would heare further, strip himselfe, and lie naked vpon these stones. But *Mandanis*, t another of them, reproued *Calanus* for his hastinesse, and, commending *Alexander* for his loue to learning, said, that they inured their bodies to labour, for the confirmation of their minds against passions. For his nakednesse he alledged, that that was the best house which needed least furniture of houshold. Hee added, that they searched the secrets of Nature, and that returning into the

q Practise of prescribed patience.

r The like stubbornnesse is yet in their *Iogiates*.

s *Aelian Var. Histo. l. 5. c. 6.*

t *Arr.* calleth him *Dandamis*, *lib. 7.*

Citie, if they met with any carrying figs or grapes, they receiued of him *gratis*: if oyle, they powred it on them: and all mens houses and goods were open to them, euen to the Parlors of their wiues. When they were entred, they imparted the wisdome of their sentences, as the other communicated his meats. If they feared any disease, they preuented the same with fire, as [u] was now said of *Calanus*. *Megasthenes* reproueth this *Calanus*, as *Alexanders* Trencher-Chaplaine, and commendeth *Mandanis*, saying, That when *Alexanders* messengers told him that he must come to the *sonne of Iupiter*, with promise of rewards, if he came, otherwise menacing torture: he answered, That neither was he *Iupiters* sonne, nor did possesse any great part of the earth: as for himselfe, he neither respected his gifts, nor feared his threatnings; for while he liued, India yeelded him sufficient; if he dyed, he should be freed from age, and exchange for a better and purer life. Whereupon, he saith, *Alexander* both pardoned and praised him. *Plutarchus* reporteth also, that to the *Brachmanes* are opposed another sect, called *Pramna*, men full of subtilitie and contention, which derided the studies of others in Physiologie and Astronomie. He diuideth the *Brachmanes* into those of the Mountaines, clothed in Deere skins, which carried scrips, full of roots, and medicines, which they applied with certaine charmes to cure diseases: and the second sort he calleth *Gymnetæ*, those naked ones before mentioned (whereof it seemeth they were called *Gymnosophistæ*) which had women amongst them, but not in carnall knowledge: the third he calleth Ciuill, which liued in Cities and Villages, wearing fine linnen, and apparrelled in skins. *Clemens* [x] *Alexandrinus* speakes of their fastings, and other austere courses, out of *Alex. Polyhistor, de rebus Indicis*. The *Brachmanes* (saith he) neither eate any quick thing, nor drinke wine. But some of them eat euery day, as we doe: some onely euery third day. They contemne death, nor much esteeme of life, beleeuing to be borne againe. Some worship *Pan* and *Hercules*. But those Indians which are called *ἐυσεβεῖς* for their grauitie and austeritie, liue altogether naked. These practise Truth, and foretell things to come, and worship a certaine Pyramis, vnder which they thinke are laid the bones of some god. Neither the Gymnosophists, nor these *ἐυσεβεῖς* vse women, but thinke it vnlawfull and against Nature, and therefore obserue chastitie. Likewise there are Virgins, which are called *ἐυσεβεῖς* of the female sexe. They seeme to obserue the heauenly bodies, and by their signification to foretell future euents. Thus farre *Clemens*.

u Quis, cum frixere pyras, viuit, calentes Conscendere rogos, &c. Lac. l. 3.

x Clem. Al. Strom. l. 3.

Nicolaus Damascenus saith, [y] That at Antiochia hee saw the Indian Embassadors, sent to *Augustus* from *Porus* the King (as his letter contained) of sixe hundred Kings, with presents, among which was a female-Viper of sixteene Cubits (one of the like bignesse *Strabo* saith, he saw sent out of Egypt) and a Cray-fish of three Cubits, and a Partrich bigger then a Vulture. *Zarmanochagas*, one of these Indian Philosophers, was one of the Embassadours, who at Athens burned himselfe, not moued thereto by aduersitie, but by prosperitie, which had in all things followed his desires, lest in his succeeding age it might alter: and therefore entered the fire, anointed, naked, laughing. His Epitaph was, Here lyeth *Zarmanochagas* the Indian, of Bargosa, which according to his Countrey-custome, made himselfe immortall.

y Nic. Damasc. Suetonius mentioneth this, in vita Augusti, cap. 21.

But it is not such maruell that their Philosophers thus contemned death, whereas their Women, the weaker and more fearefull sexe, wherein out-went their sexe and weakenesse. For their custome admitting many wiues, the dearest of which was burned with the deceased husband: *He igitur contendunt inter se de amore viri* (they are [z] *Hieromes* words) *& ambitio summa certantium est, ac testimonium castitatis, dignam morte decerni*. They ambitiously contend amongst themselues, to obtaine this fatall testimonie of their husbands loue, and their owne chastitie; and the conquerresse in her former habit, lyeth downe by the carkasse, embracing and kissing the same, contemning the fire which thus marryeth them againe in despight of deaths diuorce. A thing to this day obserued in many parts of India, as we shall see anon. *Arrianus* [a] reporteth of a place called *Ómar* (it seemeth the Cape Comori ouer-against Zeilan) wherein is a Hauen, to which vsed to resort certaine Votaries, which had deuoted themselues to a single life, to wash themselues in those holy-waters. The like was done by their Nun-like women. They had a tradition of a certaine goddesse, which vsed to wash her selfe there euery moneth.

z Hier. Aduers. Iouin. lib. 1.

a Arr. Peripl. Mar. Erythr.

Suidas telleth of a Nation called *Brachmanes*, inhabiting an Iland in the Sea, where *Alexander* erected a pillar, with inscription, that he had passed so farre. They liue an hundred and fifteene yeeres, and haue neither bread, wine, flesh, nor metals, nor houses, but liue of the fruits, and cleere water, and are very religious. Their wiues liue apart on the other side Ganges, to whom they passe in *July* and *August*, and after fortie dayes, returne home againe. When the wife hath had two children, shee neither knoweth her husband after, nor any other man; which is obserued also, when in fiue yeeres he can raise no issue of her, hee after abstaineth. These [b] slay no beasts in sacrifice, but affirme, That God better accepteth vnbloudie sacrifices of Prayer, and more delighteth in Man, *his owne Image*.

b Io. Bleum.

In

In the Hills, [c] called *Hemodi*, *Bacchus* is said to haue erected pillars, to witnesse his Conquest, as farre in that Easterne Ocean, as *Hercules* did in the West. He built the City Nysa, where he left his sicke and aged Souldiers, which *Alexander* spared, [d] and suffered to their owne libertie, for *Dionysius* or *Bacchus* his sake. And as *Bacchus* erected Pillars, so did *Alexander* Altars to the Twelue chiefe gods, as high as Towers, Monuments of his farre trauels, where he obserued solemne games and sacrifices. Hee [e] sacrificed also, not to his Countrey gods alone, but to *Hydaspis*, *Acesine*, and *Indus*, Indian Riuers, and to other gods, with other Rites and Sacrifices, then he had before vsed: drowning a golden bowle in Indus, and another in the Ocean, in his Ethnicke superstition. To him did the Indian *Magi* (so doth *Arrianus* [f] call their *Brachmanes*) say, That he was but as other men, saying that hee had lesse rest, and was more troublesome, and being dead, should enioy no more land, then would serue to couer his body. And euery man (said they) stamping with their feet on the ground, hath so much as he treadeth on. *Eusebius* [g] reciteth out of *Bardesanes Cyrus*, that amongst the Indians, and Bactrians, were many thousand Brachmanes, which as well by Tradition, as Law, worshipped no Image, nor ate any quick Creature, dranke no Wine nor Beere, only attending on Diuine things: whereas the other Indians are very vicious, yea, some hunt Men, sacrifice, and deuoure them, and were as Idolaters.

Plinie, besides his Relations of Monsters in these parts, telleth of their Philosophers (called *Gymnosophists*) like things to that, which is before mentioned of their beholding the Sunne from the rising to the setting, with fixed eyes, standing on the hot sands all day long, on one foot by course. Tooth ache, with other diseases of the head and eyes, spitting, and other sicknesses, are either exiles or strangers to the Indians. *Tully* saith, [h] That in this naked plight these Philosophers endure the cold of Winter, and Snowes of Caucasus, while they liue, and the burning fire at their end without any playning. The Indian women also strue which shall be marryed to her husbands corps, in a fierie Chariot, riding with him into another World.

Hystaspes, [i] the Father of *Darius*, is reported to haue learned of the Indian Philosophers or *Brachmanes*, both Astronomie and Rites of Religion, with which hee after instructed the Persian *Magi*. None [k] might sacrifice without one of these to direct him, who onely among the Indians had skill of Diuination, and authoritie to sacrifice, and were free from other seruices.

c *Laur. Corsin.*

d *Arrian. lib. 5.*

e *Arrian. lib. 6.*

f *Arrian. lib. 7.*

g *Eusseb. de Præp. Euang. lib. 6. cap. 8.*

h *Tusc. quæst. lib. 5.*

i *Am. Marcel. lib. 23.*

k *Arrian. lib. 1.*

§. III.

Many doubtfull and fabulous reports of the Indians.

THe Indians are said to worship *Iupiter*, *Ganges*, and other *Heroes* of their Countrey. Some of the Indian Nations accounted it dishonourable (as they doe also at this day) for the wiues not to be burned with their deceased husbands. *Thomas* [l] the Apostle preached the Gospell to the Indians, and so did *Bartholomew* also, and destroyed their Idols (which wrought great wonders amongst them) *Astaroth*, *Berith*, and *Waldath*; as *Abdias* [m] reporteth, who euen in this Historie may easily be conuinced to be counterfeit; in ascribing the Names and Religions of the Grecians, *Iuno*, *Neptune*, *Bereinthia*, to the Indians; besides those vnchristian reuenges, in killing so many of their Aduersaries, and old Heathenish, new Popish Ceremonies, fathered on those Apostles.

To let passe that *Abdias*, a fit Bishop of that *mystical Babylon*: [n] *Alexander ab Alexandro* reckoneth among their gods, the greatest Trees (to cut which, was with them a capitall crime) and a Dragon, in honor of *Liber Pater*. *Hercules* they honored in a Gyant-like statue; whose daughter *Pandæa*, the Pandeans say, was their first Queene. These affirme, that in the Hill Meros, which they account sacred to *Iupiter*, is a Caue wherein *Liber* or *Bacchus* was nourished, from whence the fable grew, that hee was borne of *Iupiters* thigh; for so *Meros* signifieth. Some of the Indians (saith [o] *Solinus*) kill no beasts, nor eate flesh: some liue onely on fish. Some kill their Parents and Kinsfolks, before Age or sicknesse withereth them, and deuoure their flesh: an argument, not of villany, but pietie amongst them. Their Gymnosophists [p], from the Sun-rising to the setting, fixe their eyes on the bright Orbe of the sun, thence observing certaine secrets. Hereunto he addeth the tales of Men with dogs-heads; of others with one leg, and yet very swift of foot: of Pigmeis, of such as liue onely by sent: of hoarie Infants; of some like *Polyphemus*, with one eye in their fore-head; of others with eares to the ground, wherein many of the old Writers are Poets, and the Moderne, Painters, as in many other Monsters of Men and Beasts. We seeke credit with the wise, and not admiration of fooles.

l *Dorotheus in vita Bartholo. & Thom.*

m *Pseudo-Abdias. lib. 8. Hist.*

n *Gen. di lib. 6. cap. 16.*

o *Solin. cap. 55.*

p *Plin. l. 7. c. 2.*

q *Phot. 72.* *Ctesias* in his *Indica* (which *Photius* q hath preserued rather as a Monument of *Ctesias* his lying, then of Indian truth) hath told the like incredible tales; that it neuer raineth in India, that there is a Fountaine of liquid gold receiued into pitchers of Earth, that the Sea in the top is boyling hot, with the monstrous *Martichora*, a man-like beast, and other more hortible beast-like men, with tailes and heads of dogs, without speech: the little truth in his little Pigmeis both beasts and men; his great lyes of great Gryphons, Lyon-Eagles, Keepers of golden Mountaines, with other like fables, scarce in one thing agreeing with our Moderne, and more certaine obseruations, and such, as if of purpose he had in challenge of the World cast downe the Gantlet for the Wheststone, which for my part, I thinke he best deseruetb. This hath the lyer gotten by lying, that in his Persian storie, which he had better r meanes to know, he is the more doubted: and such relations haue made Indian reports r accounted fabulous.

r *Veique loca fabulosus Lambit Hydaspes, Horat.*

s *Alex. ab Alex. lib. 4. cap. 17. Ælian. Var. hist. lib. 4. cap. 1.*

The s Indians neuer sacrificed, or saluted their Idols without dances. They were neuer rewarded with militarie honor or spoile, except they brought into the Campe an enemies head in their hand. They punished periurie with the losse of fingers and toes; and such as deceiued their Clients, with perpetuall silence; and besides, they were disabled vnto any Office. Their Lawes are not written; their Contracts without seales, or witnesses. They vsed no pledges; nor might borrow or lend vpon vsury.

t *Phil. 2. c. 4.*

Philostratus in his large Legend of the life of *Apollonius Tyaneus*, their Philosophicall Saint, relateth t his Pilgrimage into India, to the Brachmanes, in which he came to Nysa, 2 where was a Temple of *Bacchus* built by himselfe, planted about with Bayes, Vines, and Ivy, whose shadie roofe couered the same. In the middest was an Image: all Instruments belonging to the Vintage were there, some of Gold, others of Siluer hanged vp, sacred to *Dionysius*. Hee after u came to Taxilla the Citie Royall, where he found the Temple of the Sun, and in it, the yuorie Image of *Aiax*, with golden statues of *Alexander*; and ouer-against the same, the brazen Images of *Porus*. The walls of red Marble shined like fire, interlaid with Gold, resembling lightning. The *Mosaicall* floore pouldred with Pearles. The King here offered sacrifice to the Sun. For the x Pepper-trees, which (he saith) are great, and abound with Apes, who gather the Pepper for the Indians *gratis*, brought thereunto by a wyle of the Indians, who first gather some, and lay it on heapes, and then go away: at their returne, 3 finding many the like heapes made by the emulous Apes; I leaue it to the Author's authoritie, and Readers credulitie: as that also which followeth of the Inhabitants of Paraca in these parts, who by eating a Dragons heart and liuer, attaine to vnderstand the Language (if so I may termeit) of Beasts. And if you matuell at this, y that which followes will amaze you: of Men which doe not, as the former, communicate with the nature of Beasts, but of Spirits, making themselues at their pleasure inuisible. Here in a holy Hill was a pit, whereof no man drinketh, by which the Indians bind their faith, as by the most solemne and inuiolable oath. In this pit was a fierie receptacle, where men were purged from their offences; and two tubs (of *Wheststones*, I should say) of raines and winds, the one being opened yeelding raines, and the other winds. In this place were many Indian, Grecian, and Egyptian statues, with their 4 Rites obserued accordingly. This Hill was reported the middle of India, and euery noontide they sing Hymnes to the Sun for that fire, borrowed (they say) from his beames. The Brachmanes sleepe on the ground, on heathes strewed two cubits thick, that by this eleuation they might more signifie their deuotion to the Sun, whom they laud night and day. Hee found z *Iarchas* their Principall, with seuen Associats, sitting on Thrones of Brasse. *Iarchas* could tell *Apollonius* his Name, Nation, and Aduentures, which had betaine him all his life. They anoint themselues, then wash in a Fountaine, and after this being crowned, enter the Temple in solemne Procession, with Dances, smiting the ground with Rods, where with the earth, like vnto waues, did moue and raise it selfe. *Iarchas* being asked by *Apollonius*, What he thought of himselfe and his company? answered, That they were Gods; because they 5 were good men: that hee himselfe had sometime beene *Ganges*, and *Apollonius* before hath beene an Egyptian Mariner: an Attendant, which there waited on them, had beene *Palamedes*, whose misfortunes wee read of in the warres of Troy, thus in new bodies presenting themselues to the world. The World, he said, was a liuing creature, compounded of fiue Elements, with diuers other things of Pygmies, which liued vnder the earth, of Gryphons, &c. Thus much I thought to adde of *Apollonius*, because some vaine Philosophers haue impudently compared him to our Sauiour, that the Reader might parallell this Legend with the Gospel; out of this darknesse, the more to admire that more then admirable *Light*. And thus much out of *Philostratus*, of the Brachmanes. The Gymnosophists are by him placed, and by that name knowne, in Ægypt and Æthiopia, whither also *Apollonius* went to visit them, and we in due place will follow him.

u *Cap. 9.*

x *Lib. 3. cap. 1.*

y *Cap. 3.*

z *Cap. 4.*

CHAP. II.

Of later Indian Discoueries, and an Apologie for the English Trade in the East Indies.

§. I.

Of the Portingals and Dutch.

AFter this glut of Fables (which commonly attend whatsoeuer is farre distant in Time or Place) the Indian Truth will be more welcome, as the Sun after a stormes. And Time, her Father, (which was said before to deuoure her) hath now brought her out of her obscure Prison, and by *Neptunes* helpe *shipped* her into Europe. In this Expedition, the Portugalls were first in Commission, the Hollanders and English since annexed. These are the Triumviri, which of all the European Nations haue subdued those Seas: Happie Three, if they enuied not each others happinesse: a *three-fold-cord*, by no humane power *to be broken*. The Portugalls in the yeere 1498. (hauing about eleuen months before passed from Lisbone, the Cape of Good Hope happily compassed) first entred the Indian Ocean, and came to Calicut, *Vasco di Gaiama* being Generall of that Fleet, which King *Emanuel* set forth. Their Exploits by Sea and Land, as well on the Westerne Coast of Africa, euer since *Henry* the Infant had begun this Discouerie, vntill this time, as on the Easterne, beyond the Cape: their Conquests by *Gamma*, *Alboquerque*, and others, which subdued to the Portugall Scepter so many Territories, peopled so many Ilands, erected so many Forts both on the African and Asian Shoares, made Tributarie so many pettie Kingdomes; their owne Writers, *Barrius*, *Osorius*, *Maffaeus*, and others, haue sufficiently recorded. Besides what they held in Barbarie, they reckon theirs the Açores, Madera, the Ilands of Cabo Verde, the Fortresses of Arguin in Guinea, and of Mina; the Ilands del Principe, S. Thomas, Actibon, with some places in Congo and Angola, and Brasile also, on the American shoare: beyond the Cape, Soffala, Mosambique, Bombassa; the Iland of Ormuz, in the Persian Gulfe; in India, the Castles and Townes of Diu, Daman, Baçayn, Chaul, Goa, Honor, Barcela, Mangalor, Cinanor, Cranganor, Cochin, and Coulan: in Seylan, Columbo; Negapatan and S. Thomas, on Choromandel Coast, Porto Pequene, Porto Grande; Serapure, in Bengala; Serone, Malacca, Molucca Ilands, Malao, and Nangasacke, in Japan, with other their Conquests; which, besides their Empire euer these Seas, and Riches by Merchandise, made Portugall the least part of the Portugall Crowne; *pars minima est ipsa Puella Sui*. And worthy of praise they are, that being so small and poore a Nation, haue thus enlarged their State and Soueraignetie, which they haue bravely defended against all the power of the Saracens in those parts, and the mighty Kings of Cambaya, Deccan, and the Great Turkes Forces, in strong Sieges. But whiles they sought a Monopoly of Indian Merchandise, and as *Neptunes* Minions, would engrosse all Sea-fauours to themselues; not onely (I know not with what right) forbidding the Indians to Trade their owne Seas, but those European Courages, which gloried in as good *Neptunian* bloud as themselues; the Hollander steps forth, and borrowing his words and rage together, challengeth the Portugall,

Non illis imperium Pelagi, saeuumque tridentem,
Sed mihi sorte datum.

And for proofe alledgeth *Cannon* Law, and *Steele* Arguments, making Prize of all he can get from them. And so haue they preuailed within these twentie yeeres (for in the yeere 1595. were their first Ships sent from Amsterdam) that now, besides many mischiefes executed on the Portugalls in Africa and India, by Land and Sea, they had thirtie seuen Factories, and twentie Forts and Castles in the East Indies, long since mentioned in *Nicolas Bangaans* Iournall: and since haue further [b] preuailed in *Iacatra*, *Banda*, and other places, and scarcely could brooke the English their old friends, that new Indian neighbour-hood.

Tempus edax. Saturni fabula. Veritas Temporis filia.

Cornel. Houtman Generall.

[b] See my Pilgrimes, Tom. 1. l. 2. c. 5. Especially *pag.* 86. & 706. & *seq.* and generally the fifth booke is of actions of or with the Dutch.

§. II.

Of the English Trade there; many arguments in defence of it.

NOw, if that this Collaterall Line of that Sea-Soueraigne may promise thus much of his fauours to themselues, how much more may the English? Hee but kisseth Them in passing by, but euer embraceth in neuer-vnclasped armes this Brittish Nymph, and long since offered all his Shoares in Dowrie. Yea, let this be added to the English glorie, that Prince *Henrie*, first Founder of the Portugall Discoueries, was of English bloud, sonne to *Philip* the daughter of *Iohn* of Gaunt. And for the Hollanders, I say not their free Nauigation, but that they are a free Nation (I would they did not forget this in the Indies) may be ascribed to English Protection and Assistance. About the beginning of this [c] Secular Account (as in the Ocean Iubilee with largest Indulgence) began the Englisch Societie their Indian Nauigation and Commerce, Sir *Iames Lancaster* being thither sent, with the *Dragon*, *Hector*, *Ascention*, and *Susan*: which their Endeuours haue since so well succeeded, that they haue set and sent forth twentie seuerall Fleets or Voyages, planting their Factories, and placing a Trade in Surrat, and other places of the Great Mogoll, in Messuloparan, Bantam, Patane, Siam, Sagadan, Macassar, and as farre as Firando in Iapan; endeauouring a mutuall good both to themselues and the Indian, without spoyling Portugall or Flemming.

[c] *An. Dom.* 1600.

True it is, that many *open their mouthes wide* in traducing this Trade, and detracting our Traffique this way: nor am I entertained, or once inuited, to plead their Case against calumnious Aduersaries: nay, they need not such a Defender, nor feare such Quarrellers. But because euen honest Minds are possest with Scruples and Doubts, raysed by Ignorance, or malignant imputations of busie Braines; for their sakes, if I say somewhat, I shall not erre from my Geographicall Historie; this Studie receiuing principall supportation by the aduenturing Souldier and Merchant, Honor and Gaine breaking through all Obstacles, and opening all parts of the World to entry part. As obliged therefore to the Iournalls, which (borrowed of that Societie) haue led mee alongst the Indies; Gratitude thrusteth me forth an Orator and Patron, not so much for their Persons, or personall Actions, which I know not (and can wee know any, either Men, or Societies, free from personall Euills? or is it so rare, that in Merchants of all sorts, Couetousnesse and priuate Ends should haue place? yet herein I doe not, I cannot accuse, no more then excuse them:) but for the Societie, and iust Grounds of this Indian Aduenture (which some affirme gainefull to the Aduenturers, but with publike detriment to the State) I haue aduentured on this Stage, and opposed and exposed my selfe to Imputation.

[d] The Indian Societie commended by the 1. Equitie.

For [d] the Generall Equitie thereof, it is consonant to all kinds of *Lawes*; to the Law of *GOD*, who *hath given the Earth to the Sonnes of Men*; each Man being by naturall Inheritance Κοσμοπολίτης hauing an [e] vniuersall Tenure in the Vniuerse: of *Nature*; which by mutuall Offices insinuateth a Generall Good: of *Nations*; which flourish most in communicating their Superfluities, by Exchange for Necessaries; and concurreth with the Lawes of *this Kingdome*; which being placed in the bosome of the Ocean, hath enacted many Prouisions for the maintenance of Nauigation, which yeelds vs woodden Walls, and moueable Fortresses, in defending our Selues, or offending the Enemie.

1. 2. 3. 4.

[e] *Seneca de Benefic. l. 7. c. 4.*

And particularly, let it be no disparagement vnto this Action, that it was Nobly borne, the Daughter of a famous *Mother in Israel*, Renowned ELIZABETH, who by her Letters Patents, *for the Honour of her Realme of England, for the increase of her Nauigation, for the aduancement of the Trade of Merchandise, and for other important Causes and Reasons*, first conceued, and gaue first breath to this Societie. Blush Englishman, if thou hast true English bloud in thee, that darest on rash Surmises, Censure (I had almost said, Examine) the Constitutions of that *Cyrus*, *Arsaces*, *Augustus*, (I want a Name) that more then they All, if not in Founding, yet in Grounding, Establishing, Adorning, the English Nation. Happie *ELIZABETH*, the *Virgin-Mother* of thy Countries *Peace*, *Religion*, *Arts*, *Armes*; Mother to thy distressed Neighbors; Mother to so many famous Expeditions in and about the World; and the same Mother of the Indian Trafficque! Happie ELIZABETH, in thy Glorious Successe (that when our Sunne was set, no Night ensued) succeeding (if not with Masculine Excellence exceeding) in *Fatherly* Care, as well as in the Royall Throne. In his dayes our *Peace*, before, subiect to the infirmities of Conception, Birth, Infancie, hath growne to her Mature and flourishing age: *Religion* hath not since *Salomons* dayes, found so Royall and Learned a *Defender of the Faith*: *Arts* elsewhere diffused, combined in that Heroike Center, haue proclaimed Him King of a larger extent of Learning, then the Muses professed

2. Founders. 1. *Q. Elizabeth.*

3. *K. Iames.*

professed. Admirable (almost miraculous) are his Armes, who without Armies poysoth and bullanceth the Westerne World in an euen Counter-poyse; like herein to that OMNIPOTENT MAJESTY which being vnmoueable moueth all things. But alas, why doe I eclipse so brightshining Praises with my intercedingintercepting prapsings; obscure Candles before This *Sunne* (long may he shine) in Our, or That Other (descended shall I say to the Lower, no) exalted to the Highest Hemisphere? Pardon Reader, if when I looke vp to the Authors of this Attempt, Two so bright Lights haue dazeled my weaker eyes, and made me almost lose my selfe in this Maze of more then Humane Worth. Yet this thou seest, Two, propositions beyond *Castor* and *Pollux* are the Badge of our Indian Ship; and the
10 Glone of our Nation is the glorie of this Action, Queene ELIZABETH, and (long and farre may He flourish) the Maiestie of King IAMES.

Neither can the English bee charged with annoying eyther Christian or Heathen, except in Necessarie Defence, or Iust Reuenge: Neyther [a] doe they shut vp the Seas to the Inhabitants: They plant Factories, not Fottresses, on the Land; where by Others ouer-awe the Nations, proue vnfriendly to their Friends, seeke to eat out other aduenturing Nations, and make prey of Christians and Ethnikes vnprouoked.

And is it not [b] a profit to our Nation, to vent Clothes, Iron, Lead, and other Commodities? To set on worke so many of all Trades and Professions? To employ so many Mariners? To build so many, so able, so capable Ships? To enrich the Kings Coffers and publike Treasurie, in Customes, Imposts, and other Duties? Yea, that by enriching the priuate Aduenturers, the State hath so many more seruiceable Members for the good of the whole Bodie?

And is it not for the Honor of our Nation, that the English Name hath pierced the remotest Countries, and filled the Indians with admiration of the English? That Asia clothes vs with her Silkes, feedes vs with her Spices, cures vs with her Drugges, adornes vs with her Iewels, and almost adores the English Valour? That Turkie is made so neere, whiles our Indian Ocean makes our way to the Persian, the Mogoll, the Iapan Monarchs, Awfull Names of Greatnesse, not heard of by our Ancestors, now delighting in our new Amitie, These and other mightie Eastern Potentates entertaining Commerce of Letters, and Embassies, with Great Britaines Greatest Soueraigne? And is it not for the Honor of our Nation, that the
30 Mariner, Merchant, and Souldier, here together conspire the English Glorie? Every one in this Action as it were trayned in all three Functions, and becomming at once a Mariner (in so long Nauigation) a Merchant (where a little Stocke promiseth great Gaine) and (in necessarie Defence by Sea and Land) an exercised Souldier? Oh, how doth my Soule honour those glorious Exploits in the Indian Ocean, by those two worthie Generals, *Best* and *Downton*, in the yeares 1612. and 1614. the Sea becomming an Amphitheatre; where the Easterne World might bee Spectators of the Westerne Worth; the Asian Shores filled with Troupes, to behold the Tragicall Euent of those Terrible Fights: which all, with all the Numbers, Gallantrie, Malignitie, Subtletie, Iniquitie, Indignation, Resolution, Preparation, and strength of the Country, serued to encreate the english Victory and Glory. The [h] Storie is fitter in another place: but the Honor which there was gayned by our Nation, hath
40 filled the Mogols huge Dominions with Admiration, pierced to the Persian Court (where our Nation hath since procured Priuiledges) and extended beyond the large Extents of India. Yea, the Persian Gulfe hath beene awed, and the Arabike or Red Sea stined, in requitall of the Turkes and Buluches Treacheries: not by inuading Violence, but Christian Iustice. GOD [i] Himselfe hath honored this Action also with prosperous successe, rewarding the English with Honor and Profit, their Aduersaries with Losse and Confusion; besides, fame fewer Casualties by shipwrack, or other Disasters, then Other aduenturing Nations haue sustained. Neithe[k]are we able only with these Nautike long Armes to reach the Worlds remotest parts, but at home also are more dreadfull to all daring Attempters: where, to the
50 Nauie Royall, such *Succenturiate Copie* are adioyned; the States of the Societie continually encreasing, and being able to furnish a puissant Armada of themselues; which but few (if a few) forraine, of Ships Royall, can equall. I adde, that in the present estate of Things, [l] Necessitie may bee alledged for a Vertue. For doe wee not see want of Trade? The Merchant wanting Traffique, and consequently, the Mariner employment, whiles Barbarie is many yeeres together trodden vnder foot by barbarous Cissill vncuill Warres; the Straits brought into Straits, by loosenesse and abundance of Turkish Robbers, and Christian vnchristian Rouers; the Spaniard and Portugall forbid Trade to both the Indies; the Russian Warres bereaue vs of Russian Wares; should I adde Diuisions of our Merchants at home? Or should I not rather [m] fixe mine eyes on Others neere our home; which can preoccupate our Mari-
60 ner by cheaper Seruice; haue followed our Trade into Turkie and other places, by vs frequented; take more libertie in remote Seas, making prize and spoyle of Portugalls, and others; by their Trade into the Indies, haue weakened our Turkie, and weakened this Indie

Trading

[a] 3. Iustice.
1.
2.
3.
4. Comparison with others.
5.
[b] 1. 6. Profit to our
2. selues.
3.
4.
5.
6.
[c] 1. 6. Honor to the Nation.
2. on.
3.
4.

[h] See the Stories in their due place.

[i] 7. Fortunate successe.
1.
2.
3.
[k] 8. Strength added to the Nauie Royall. See the Catalogue of their Ships in Sir *Dud. Digges* his booke.
[l] 9. Defect of other Trade.
[m] 10. Others preuented.

Trading (selling their Spices at cheaper rates then the Turkie Merchant could afford); yea, haue haunted vs euen into Greene-land, and followed English Examples round about the World? Let none traduce me as a deprauer of their Actions, whose Noble Attempts I honour: but I speake in defence of the Indian Trafficque; without which, our needie Mariner must haue sued to serue them at Sea, no lesse then our needie voluntary Souldier hath done on Land; which, without the profits now reaped, would haue procured the inconueniences, so much quarrelled.

§. III.

Answer to obiections made against the Indian Trade and Societie, with other Arguments for it.

1. c 11. Euils 2. else 10 3. Mariners. 4.

FOr must not our Mariner [a] either die at Wapping, or other dismall place of Iustice, for Iniustice? Or else liue to the Death, or losse of Honest men, thriuing in vnthriftinesse and Pyracies? Or else (most of them) want employment? Or be forced to serue Forreiners? Better a *death* at Bantam, then in other places more infamously fatall: and better this bad Aduenture there, for Englands Wealth, then Forreiners. And yet with due sobrietie and temperance (not wracking themselues on their [o] Racks) a very Rocks, or on their Quicksands, filthie diseased Women, extreamely both deare and vile) how many of those dying many, might escape? Better that our Men should carrie forreine [p] *Siluer* into Those parts, to bring Money and Wares for the publike benefit, then all this Money to be intercepted by strangers (for it growes not in England) Europe no lesse disfurnished, and we to buy those Wares with more expence of Money at a worse hand. *Non est lacus ista homicis sed temporum*, (say) *Tully* [r] of *Attilius Regulus*, his returning vpon Oath to the Punike Tortures; *Non est fraus ista hominum sed temporum.* I may answere touching these losses of Men and Money, which in Dutch, or other Employments, and Transporting, would happen, though England held no Commerce with India. And yet if our Mynts lacke worke, let vs examine our store of Plate, encreasing with our Pride, our Clothes of Siluer, Gold, Tissue, and rich-metalld Stuffes, our Laces and Embroideries; from the Hat-band to the Shoo-strings, exhausting so much Siluer and Gold in the Materials, that I speake not of the communicating it to Others, now happily vnited vnto Vs; which all cannot but diuert worke from the Mint, especially since our Men of Warre haue had so little out of American spoyles. And for Men, how prosperously hath Captain *Newport* made two Returnes from the Indies? If Mariners are lost, are not Mariners made and bred in this Employment? Must we not disarme our selues [t] of shipping, and leaue our Ilands waterie Walls destitute of their Mouing Bulwarkes, if our Sea-Trade faile, which without Gaine and Glorie (*Honos alit Artes*) must faile and fall too? SAVL *and* IONATHAN *onely may bee armed* (the Kings Royall Nauie royally furnished) but (for Merchants ships wonted Assistance) *not a Sword nor a Speare found in the hands of any of the people: they might sharpen their Mattockes, Weedling-Hookes, and Axes, amongst the Philistims.* But a SMITH *in Israel* doth far far better, that can fit vs with Weapons of Warre, that we shall not need borrow of strangers. And long so (and not on other Conditions, but Israels flourishing) may our SMITH flourish in our Israel. If say thinke these feares fantastical, let him but looke on the face of Things before this Trade was well settled; how many, in little space, of the best Merchant-ships were alienated into Spaine and Italy; the *Alcoder*, the *Bewis*, the *Royall Merchant*, the *May-Flower*, the *Prosperous*, the *Susan Parnell*, the *Gold Noble*, t. *Consent*, the *Concord*, I know not with what Concent, nay Discord rather to our Sea-Concent and Harmonie. If Fluxes and Diseases pursue vs in the Indies, haue they not so done? I name not Kentish and Essex Marishes, and other vnwholesome English Habitations) in Ireland? O Ireland, the Land of ire indeed, in the death of so many Commanders and Souldiers, by Warre and Diseases, in the late Rebellion: yea, euen still, neither *salo, solo, cielo, gente*, nor *mente*, like our owne Homes, which yet how many are glad to leaue, there to trie their fortunes? There? Where not prodigall [u] of their best bloud, in Dutch, Danish, Sweden, Poland, Russian Warres? For small stipends voluntarily aduenturing more certaine Deaths, then in this Indian Aduenture; no lesse (perhaps more then some of the former) iustifiable to a scrupulous conscience. What should I speake [u] of the highest Worke of Conscience, in propagating Christian Religion, and warring vpon the Regions and Legions of Infernall Powers, captiuating silly soules in Ethnicke darkenesse? And O that our Merchants would mind this Merchandise, the gaine of soules; settling learned Ministers in their Factories, to be Factors for Christ; then might we looke for a Blessing: Yea, now we haue great [x] Hopes, that

o A Wine made of Rice distilled, as hot as *Aquauitæ*, which they drinke, and cold water after, to coole them.

p Brought out of Spaine, &c.

q The mane obiections of *Men* and *Money*.

r *Cic. Offic. l.* 3.

s 12. Euils to the State. 1. *Sam.* 13. 22. Sir *Thos. Smith* the present Gouernor of the East India Company. 1617. to whom Alderman *Holiday* hath since succeeded, and now happily gouerneth that Societie.

t 13. Compared with other forereine Employments, more dangerous, lesse profitable.

u 14. Propagation of Religion.

x 15. Hopes of better bodily estate.

that Iapan may yeeld siluer; and if men prouse better in soule, their bodies may lesse miscarry. How euer, my prayers shall be to GOD ALMIGHTIE, for His Blessing vpon their Endeauours. For my Selfe, I haue beene bold to say this in their Defence, as a most indifferent looker on, lesse then others (more able, more interested) haue, or can, and no: more then Reason and Religion may admit: which I would haue interpreted with the same Equitie, wich which, for which, it is written; not imputed to itching busie fingers, sicke of the Scribling disease; nor to base insinuating Flattery of Ours; nor to malicious Intimations, and barking against Forreiners (whose worthy Exploits I honoure;) but let Themselues (the prouoking Portugall, and not-prouoked Flemming) be Iudges, that I call not the Admiring Ethnike to honour the English Worth, if our Trade hath not beene the farthest from first offering, from suspition of iniurie, and therefore neerest to Innocence and Iustice; the true cause of (that which they need not) this ruder, but iust and true Apologie. As for other Obiections, they are friuolous, and either ridiculous, or merely accidentall: and it is Puritanisme in Politie, to conceit any great Good, without some Euills attendant, in any Enterprise whatsoeuer; where the Heauens Great Lights are subiect to Eclipses, the longest Day hath a Night, the Summer yeelds vicissitude to Winter, all Bodies are *mixed* and compounded, and in the greatest Lustre make an apparant Shadow. Apparant Shadowes are, the obiected expence of Victuall (as if these mouths would not exceed farre more in quantitie and qualitie at home;) of Timber (as if this be not the most honourable vse thereof, though Ireland yeelds supply in this kind;) of eclipsing or sinking other Trades (*sic inter Stellas argentea Luna minores*; will they be angrie, that so few Starrs appeare, when *Aurora* is preparing the Sunnes Chariot?) They adde, Oppressions, and Dealing cruelly; I know not whether this be a cruell lye: and many other, alledged against these Indian Nauigations, bee but English Knauigations. This I know, that the Wiseest hath forbidden, *to answer a foole according to his foolishnesse, lest thou also bee like him.* Easie it is for fooles, to moue Scruples in the Actions of the Wiseest; and not hard for euill minds, to make that, which they find not, euill. But Christians are to imitate Him rather, which *commanded the Light to shine out of Darkenesse*; with a candide Mind (the true Image of GOD) alway construing doubtfull things to the best; which the best will doe: to whom, and for whom, this is intended. As for Cauillers, they haue their *Dos* here, according to *Salomons* Prescipt, *Answere a foole according to his foolishnesse, lest he be wise in his owne conceit.*

See Sir *Dudley Digges* his Defence of Trade against the *Increase of Trade*, a Booke taxing the Indian Companie: where the Reader may sarre better certifie himselfe of the State, and satisfie himselfe in the obiections against it. Since which also *M. Munne* hath published a treatise of that argument, which I haue added to my Pilgrimes, *Tom. 2. lib. 5. cap. vlt.*

Prou. 26. 4.

§. IIII.

The Conclusion with commendation of the Mariner, &c.

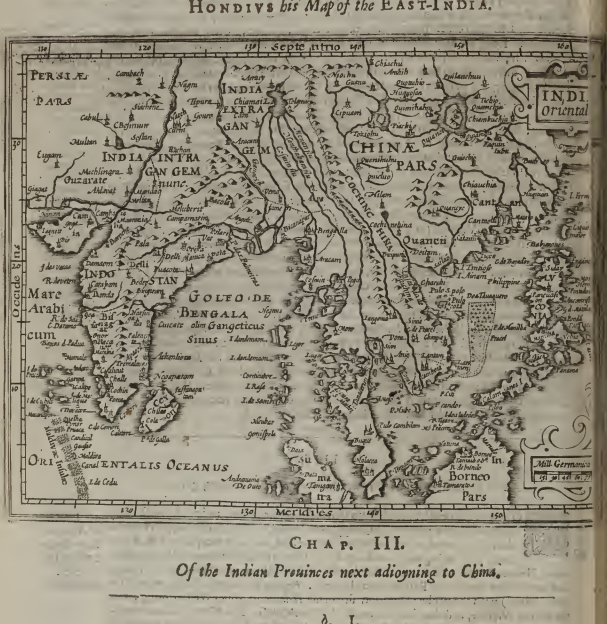
NOw that I haue after my ability answered the obiections, and produced so many Arguments (the most of which are Store-houses, and Heads of many) Let this be the last argument, which some was not the least, and here was placed first, the Increase of learning and knowledge by these worthy Discoueries of Marine Worthies. How little had we know ne of the World, and the Wonders of God in the World, had not the Sea opened vs a Passage into all Lands. *Pegasus* the winged Horse, which (the Poets fained) with the stroke of his foot, first made *Helicon* the Muses Well to spring, was the issue of *Neptune*, and that sinky-headed Monster *Medusa*. The Mariner seemes roughhewen and rude, according to the Ocean that breeds him; but bee that can play with those dangers which would transforme others into stones, and dares dwell within so few inches of death; that calls the most tempestuous Elements his Parents; He (I say) is the true *Pegasus* that with his wing-like Sailes flies ouer the World; which hath helped to deliuer *Andromeda* (Geography) before chained to the Rockes, and ready to bee deuoured of that Monster *Ignorance*; and out of whose salt waters wisely distilled, *Clio*, *Urania*, and the best of the Muses, drinke their sweetest and freshest liquors. Howsoeuer Others, My Selfe must confesse, and this Booke will witnesse, that My *Helicon* hath in great part flowne from the footing of this *Pegasus*. And let it be the Honour of Our Honourable SMITH, that His hand hath fitted this *Foot* of *Pegasus* to this Indian Iourney, whither he is now carrying you: at Whose *Forge* and *Anuil* haue beene hammered so many irons for *Neptune*; not like *Xerxes* his Arrogance, which proudly cast Fetters into the *Hellespont*, but with true effects of Conquest. Me thinkes I here see the Sterne that with little locall stirring Siteteth so many Ships to so many Ports visited by your *Pilgrim*.

16 Increase of Arts and Knowledge by farre Discoueries. *Bright. fab. 151.*

Sir *Thomas Smith* Gouernour of the East Indie Companie: at whose House are holden the Consultations

60 for them. And, 1 For *Virginia*, *Summers Ilands*, *Muscouie*, *North-West Discoueries*, *&c.* I must also acknowledge His fauour to Me, as of Sir *Dudly Digges*, *M. Abbot* Deputy of the East Indie Company, for communicating to me their Iournals.

HONDIVS *his Map of the* EAST-INDIA.



CHAP. III.

Of the Indian Prouinces next adioyning to China.

§. I.

Of Cauchin, China, Camboia and the Laos.

a *Magnum.*

CAuchin-China [a] is an Indian Kingdome, situate betweene the Prouince of Canton on the North, and Camboia on the South, in the bottome of a great Bay, diuided into three Prouinces, and as many Kings, but one of them is *Paramount*. It [b] abounderh with Gold, Siluer, Aloes, Porcelane, and Silke. They are Idolaters and Pagans, and [c] haue had some deuotion to the Popish Christianity, moued thereto by certaine Pictures of our Lady, of the last Iudgement, and Hell (a new kind of preaching) and haue erected many Crosses amongst them, of which the Priers report (after their fashion) some miracles. Their Religion seemeth little to differ from that of the Chinois, to whom they are also Tributaries, and vse their Characters. 50

b Discourse of China, p. 381.
c Ibi. 801. 820.

Richard Cocke.

One *Richard Cocke* Englishman, in a Letter dated December the tenth, 1614. from Firando in Iapan (where hee was left in Factory by Captaine *Saris*) writes of an vnhappy accident which befell Master *Tempest Peacocke*, who with *Walter Carrwarden* arriued not long before with our Kings Letter, in Cauchin-China, with a Present also, and goods to the Value of 60

of seuen hundred and thirty pounds. But whiles he with some principall Hollanders (who were there like wise entertained) was passing by water, they were set vpon and slaine with harping irons, together with their interpreters and followers, Iapanders: neither had they heard further what became of the rest of the Company. The cause was reported to bee a quatrell against the Hollanders for staud and violence, deceiuing them with false money, and burning a Towne. Here is much of the wood called Palo Daguilla, and of the most sweet wood Calamba, with other merchandize of China. Betweene this and the Ile Aynao ten miles from the land is a fishing for Pearles.

Linschot. c. 22.

To the South of this Kingdome is Champa, the name of a Kingdome, and chiefe City thereof, of great Traffique, especially of *Lignum Aloes*, which groweth there in the Mountaines, prized at the weight in Siluer, which they vse in Bathes, and in the Funerals of great Princes. In Religion they are as the former. This Tract beares also the name of Camboia.

Camboia on the North abutteth on Cauchin China, on the South the Kingdome of Siam, on the East the Sea. It is a great and populous Countrey, full of Elephants and Abada's (this Beast is the *Rhinoceros*:) Here also they begin to honour the Crosse, as Friet *Silnester* (a man, as they say, much reuetenced by the King, and honoured of the people) hath taught them. When the King dieth, [d] his women are burned, and his Nobles doe voluntarily sacrifice themselues in the same fire. The women are generally burned with their husbands at their death. The Camboyans dealt treacherously [e] with the Hollanders, *Anno* 1602. whom they inuited to the shore, with promise of certaine Buffolos, and then cruelly slew them. They detained the Admirall on shore, to be redeemed with some of their Ordnance. When they intend a iourney, they vse diuination with the feete of a Hennie, to know whether it will be luckie, or no; and as the Wizard shall answere, they dispose of themselues, either to goe or stay.

d *Summario di pop. Orientali.*
e *Nauigatio. Iac. Neccy per Cornel. Nicolai.*

This Land hath much of the sweet Wood Calamba, which being good, is wayed against siluer and gold. Through this Kingdome runneth the Riuer Mecon into the Sea, which the Indians name Captaine of all the Riuers: for it hath so much water in the Summer (their Winter) that it drowneth the Countrey as Nilus doth. The people of Camboia beleeue that all Creatures, both Men, and Beasts of all sorts doe here receiue reward for their worke, whether it be good or bad. Vpwards in the Land are the *Laos*, a great and mighty people, the *Anas* and *Bramas* also, which dwell further vp by the Hills; and the *Gneos* vpon the Hills, which liue like wilde men, eate mans flesh, marke all their bodies with a hot iron, in gallant brauery.

Linschot. vbi supra.

Gaspar de Cruz mentioneth that People called *Laos*, Northwards from Camboia, which come thither downe [f] a Riuer, which hath his beginning in China, and is of eight, fifteene, and twenty fadoms depth: it passeth thorow desarts, where are Elephants and Bados, or Rhinocerotes, the males of which beasts haue a horne arising out of their snowt, accounted good for the Piles. This Riuer comming to Cudurmuch, twelue leagues from the principall Citie of Camboia, makes a passage to another Riuer, which descendeth from a great Lake, in the midst of which one cannot see Land. When the great waters come downe from the Laos Riuer, they enter that other Riuer with such violence, that it reuerseth and turneth backe the streame, with a swift current, and ouerfloweth all Camboia, leauing no passage for Trauellers, but by Boat, their houses also being in the lower roomes ouerflowen, themselues remaining in the higher roomes, with their houshold. This Riuer runneth vpward from Iuly to September. The Portugals shewed our Author a great Hill, ouer which a ship had sailed, being of sufficient burden to haue passed from India to Portugall. These Laos bring Musk from Camsi, being the flesh and blood (as he saith) of a certaine beast. They goe naked from the waste vpwards, trussing vp their haire like a capon. Their Priests weare yellow cloaths and yellow Copes, with certaine folds and seames: Their Religion is as in Siam.

Gasp. de Cruz.
f This seemeth to be Mecon the riuer before mentioned.

Iarric writes of these Laos or Laios, that they liue about the springs of Mecon, in Cottages of Timber, and in open boats, neere the banks and Lakes of the Riuer, which is said to extend foure hundred Leagues within the Land, neere the Tattarian and China confines. These Laios about the yeare 1578. descended the Riuer in great multitudes, with an army of two hundred thousand, which all were slaine, drowned, or captiued in fight with the Camboyans. In this battell the King of Camboia was slaine also. He left behind him a young sonne, which became vassall to the King of Siam. This Kingdome hath great Townes, and many Temples, which haue Bonzij, Priests or Religious Men after the maner of Iapan and China, but lesse superstitious then the Iaponians. As for the Laios, they are rude and barbarous, but rich in Gold. The King of Camboia in the yeare 1598. sent to the Iesuites for some of their Society, to liue and preach amongst his people, and bestowed vpon *Iames Velosa* a Portugall which had serued him in the warres against the Siamites, a *Tennisula* stretching three

P. Iarric. Thesaurum Indicum l. 2. cap. 2. c. 25.

three Leagues into the Sea, which he offered to the Portugall subiection, vpon condition of conuerting the Inhabitants. There are not (as in other Maritime parts of the Indies) any Saracens amongst them, they are courteous and mild people, and haue trade with the Iapoueans.

§. II.

Of the Kingdome of Siam.

10

g *Mexinus.* G. *Bot. Bem.*

ON this side of Cambaia, is g Siam, Sion, or Silon, Mother-City of a Kingdome bearing the same name, in which are reckoned thirty thousand families of Moores, besides the Naturals. In these parts are huge Woods, harbours of Lions, Tigres, Ownces, and (they tell also) *Mariches*, which haue Maidens faces and Scorpions tailes. Here runneth Menan out of that huge Lake Chia may, which yeeldeth this and other Rivers of like Nature to Nilus in Egypt.

Gas. B. cap. 35.

For this cause, *Balbi* affirmeth, that they build their houses in Silon (so hee termeth it) very high, and euery house hath a boat belonging thereto for passage and transportation of the familie in that their Winter-time, or annuall deluge. And some poore persons haue slight houses of Reed, or timber set vpon plankes tied together, or Liters, which they can remoue whither they please, as moueable shops to buy and sell; which is there done most by the women. This name of Sion, Silon, or Siam, may worthily moue a *Quære* to Geographers, whether this be not the *Sinæ* mentioned by *Ptolemey*, *Marcianus*, and other Ancients: the rather because *China* is a name vnknowne to the Chinois, and their Countrey abutts on the Sea Eastward, and the Cities thereof haue more Northerly Situation, then those by them ascribed to the *Sinæ*; which name is heere little altered, and in other things this seemeth rather to agree thereunto. But let the curious enquire, and the learned iudge.

h Discourse of China, p. 350.

They haue amongst them many Religious h Men, which leade an austere life, and therefore had in great reputation of Holinesse. These liue in common: they may not marrie, nor speake to a Woman (which fault is punished with death) they goe alway bare-foot, in poore array, eating nothing but Rice and greene herbes, which they begge from doore to doore. They receiue it not, nor take it with their hands, but goe with a wallet at their backes alwayes, with their eyes modestly fixed on the ground, and calling or knocking, stand still, till they receiue answere, or some thing be put in their wallets. Many times they set themselues naked in the heate of the Sunne: notwithstanding that himselfe, with such direct beames, together with his frie (whole armies of Gnats) doe their vtmost malice on them. They rise at midnight to pray vnto their Idolls, which they doe in Quires, as the Friers doe. They may not buy, sell, or take any Rents, which, if they should doe, would bring on them the imputation of Heretiques. Some Merchants of Siam being at Canton, and hearing that Frier *Martin Ignacio* and his companions, were there imprisoned, for entring that Chinian Kingdome without License, they visited them, and seeing their poore Friers Weedes, they, besides other almes, offered to pay their ransome, if money would doe it.

i G. Bot. Bem. lib. 2. par. 3.

The Siamites i commonly hold, that God created all things, rewardeth the good, punisheth the bad: That Man hath two Spirits; one good, to keepe; and the other euill to tempt, continually attending him. They build many and faire Temples, and place in them many Images of Saints, which sometime liued vertuously, and now are in Heauen. They haue one Statue fifty paces long, which is sacred to the Father of men. For they thinke that he was sent from aboue, and that of him were borne certaine persons that suffered Martyrdome for the loue of God. Their Priests are clothed in yellow long garments. (This colour is esteemed holy: and euery yellow thing, for the resemblance which it hath with Gold, and with the Sunne, is hallowed to God.) Besides that which is before said of their strict orders, they may not nourish Hennes, because of their female Sexe. To drinke Wine, is punished in their Priests with stoning. They haue many Fasts in the yeare, but one especially, in which the people frequent the Temples and their Sermons. They haue their Canonicall houres by day and night for their holy things. They hold, that the World shall last eight thousand yeares, whereof six thousand are passed, and then it shall be consumed with fire: at which time shall be opened in Heauen seuen eyes of the Sunne, which shall drie vp the Waters, and burne vp the Earth. In the ashes shall remaine two Eggs, whence shall come forth one Man and one Woman, which shall renew the World. But there shall be no more Salt, but fresh Riuers and Lakes, which shall cause the Earth, without mans labour, to abound in plenty of good things. The Siamites are the sinke of the Easterne Superstitions, which they deriue to many Nations.

Gasper

Gasper de Cruz [k] testifieth that the Bramenes in Siam are Witches, and are the Kings principall seruants. They worship one god called *Probar Missur*, which (say they) made Heauen and Earth: and another called *Praloeussur*, who obtained of a third, named *Praessur*, that power vnto *Probar Missur*. Another called *Praput Prasar Metrie*. He thinketh the third part of the Land to be Priests or Religious persons. These Religious are proud, the inferiour worshipping their superiours as gods, with prayer and prostrating. They are reuerenced much of the people, none daring to contradict them: so that when our Frier *Gasper* preached, if one of those Religious came, and said, This is good, but ours is better, all his Auditors would forsake him. They number in their opinion, seuen and twentie Heauens, holding that some of them are (like *Mahomets* Paradise) fraught with faire women, with meate also and drinkes; and that all liuing things which haue soules goe thither, euen Fleas and Lice. And these lousie heauens are allotted to all secular persons which enter not into their rule, and habit of Religion. They haue higher heauens for their Priests which liue in wildernesses, ascribing onely this felicitie to them, there to sit and refiesh themselues with winde. And according to the higher merits they assigne other higher heauens among their gods, which haue round bodies like bowles, and so haue these that goe thither. They hold also that there are thirteene Hells, according to the differing demerits of mens sinnes.

Of their Religious men, some are supreme and sit aboue the King, called *Massanchaches*: a second Order they entitle *Nascendachet*, which sit with the King, and are as Bishops: a third and lower ranke sit beneath the King, named *Mitires*, which are as Priests, and haue the *Chapuzes* and *Sazes*, two inferior degrees, vnder them: all reuerenced according to their place. Except the Priests and Religious, all are slaues to the King, and when they die, their whole state deuolueth to him, how hardly soeuer the wife and children shift: which was caused through a rebellion against the brother of the King, which then reigned when the Frier writ this.

In the yeere 1606. *Balthasar Sequerius* a Iesuite, landing at Tanassary, passed from thence partly by goodly Riuers, partly ouer cragged and rough Hills and Forrests, stored with Rhinocerots, Elephants, and Tigres, (one of which tare in pieces one of their company before his eyes) vnto Odia. Conferring with the Talipoies or Religious men, he learned their conceits; That there was now no God in the world to gouerne it: Three had beene before, now dead, and a Fourth is expected, which deferreth his comming. In the meane while, lest this huge Frame should want a Ruler, it is ordered by a certaine [l] *Bubble* or Brooch which some of the Former Gods had left. The vulgar people heare these bubbles, bables, and fables with great reuerence and silence, holding vp their ioyned hands. They obserue their Festiuals, according to the course of the Moone: and then open their Temples, whither the people resort to doe their deuotions. These are built strong and stately, with Art and Beautie: hauing their Porches, Cloisters, Quires, and lower Ile, great Chappels being annexed on both sides and large Church-yards. In one of these he saw a Statue of eighteene Cubites length, dedicated to the great God. They are of marueilous abstinence, and think it a great sinne to taste wine. In their Quires, they haue singing men, which after the Europzan fashion sing there, especially in the shutting in of the Euening, and about midnight. Very early in the morning, warning is giuen for them to goe to beg from doore to doore. They haue their funerall Holies and Obits for the dead. The carkasses are burned, being put into painted Coffins, with great solemnitie (if they be great men) with Musicke and dances, and great store of victuals to be bestowed on the Talipoys. Thus farre *Sequerius*.

The Inhabitants of this Kingdome are much giuen to pleasure and riot: they refuse the vse of Manuall Arts, but addict themselues to Husbandry. They haue [m] publike Schooles, where they teach Lawes and Religion in the vulgar Language: other Sciences they learne in a more learned Tongue. They worship innumerable Idols, but especially the foure Elements; according to which his Sect, each man maketh choise of his burial. They which worshipped the Earth, are therein buried; the Fire burneth the dead carkasses of them which obserued it: in the Ayre are hanged (to feast the airy-winged people with their flesh) those which adored the Ayre, being aliue. The Water drowneth those which had aliue beene drowned in that *Waterie Religion*. Euery King, at his first entrance to the Crowne, erecteth a Temple, which he adorneth with high Steeples, and innumerable Idols. In the City of Socotay is one of mettell, fourescore spans high.

The Kingdome of Siam, comprehendeth that *Aurea Regio* of *Ptolemey* by *Arrianus* in his *Periplus* (the Map whereof *Ortelius* set forth 1597.) called *Aurea Continens*; nigh to which is placed that *Aurea Chersonesus*, then (it seemeth) by a necke of land ioyned to the Continent; since [n] supposed to be by force of the Sea separated from the same, and to be the same which is now called *Sumatra*: which *Tremellius* and *Iunius* iudge to be *Salomons* Ophir. The Land trendeth long and narrow, and containeth fiue hundred leagues of Sea-coast,

k *G. de Cruz.* See my Pilgrims, Tom. 1. l. 6. c. 6.

l *Bulla.*

Balth. Sequer.

m *Magnus G. Hist. Ben.*

n Treatise of the Circumference of the Earth. *Osor. Mossaus. Bdrtius.*

coast, compassing from Champa to Tauay. But of this space the Arabians, or Moores, haue vsurped two hundred, with the Townes of Patane, Pahan, Ior, and Malacca (now in possession of the Portugals) and the Kingdomes of Aua, Chencran, Caipumo, and Brema, haue shared also therein. Odia c is the chiefe Citie thereof, containing foure hundred thousand households, and serueth the King with fiftie thousand Souldiers: and to the Riuer Caipumo (on which it standeth) belong two hundred thousand vessels. This King hath nine Kingdomes subiect to him, and thirtie thousand Elephants, whereof three thousand are trained to the warres: His Nobles hold their Lands in a kinde of *Knights-seruice*, like the Turkish *Timars* (yet onely for terme of life) without the Kings pay serue him, whensoeuer hee appointeth, with twentie thousand Horse, and two hundred and fiftie thousand Foot. The Country is compassed with the high Hills of Iangoma, Brema, or Brama, and Aua, and is it selfe plaine, in situation and fertilitie (caused by inundation) like to Egypt. The *Lai* are tributaries to Siam, for feare of the Gueoni, Caniballs, and Man-eaters, liuing in the Mountaines adjacent; against whom the Siamite defendeth them, and inuaded those Gueoni one time with twentie thousand Horse, two hundred and fiftie thousand Footmen, and ten thousand Elephants, for Carriages and Warre.

c Iota. Bar. lib. 9. cap. 2.

d cap. Frid.

Cæsar d *Frederike* reporteth, That in the yeere 1567. the King of Pegu besieged the King of Siam his chiefe Citie, with an Armie of one million and foure hundred thousand men, and lay before it one and twentie moneths, and had fiue hundred thousand fresh Souldiers sent him in supply, end yet had not preuailed, if treason had not more furthered his designes then force. The gates were one night set open, and the Peguans entred; which when the Siamite perceiued, hee poysoned himselfe, leauing his children and Kingdome a prey to the Conqueror: whose triumphall returne, *Fredericke* (then in Pegu) beheld. Since that time the Kings of Siam haue been tributaries to Pegu. After this Peguan had reigned seuen and thirtie yeeres, he left his Kingdomes, but not his fortunes, to his sonne: who taking displeasure against the Siamite, his vassall, sent for him to come to him, which he refused. And thereupon he entred into his Country, with nine hundred thousand men, and besieged him in his chiefe Citie: which hee, seeking politike delayes, made semblance still to deliuer, vntill in the third moneth after (which was March) the Riuer ouerflowed the Countrey fiue score miles about, after his yeerely custome, and partly drowned, partly committed to the Siamites (attending in Boats for this booty) to be slaughtered, that huge Army; of which, scarce threescore and ten thousand returned to Martauan, and those without Elephants and Horses. And when the King of Pegu proceeded in his attempts with like successe, the Siamite at last besieged him in Pegu, his royal Citie, *Ann.* 1596. But hearing a rumor of the Portugals comming to helpe him, hee raised his siege. These are the reports of *Franciscus Fernandes*, a Iesuite. Of the Peguan we shall speake more in the next Chapter.

Iesuit. Epist.

Peter Williamson Floris a Dutchman, which liued long in the East Indies, employed first by his Countrey-men, afterwards by the English; hath giuen vs the latest intelligence of these parts. When Siam (saith he) was tributarie to Pegu, the two brothers sonnes to the King of Siam, brought vp in the Court of Pegu, made an escape home. Where the eldest (called in the Malaya tongue Raia Api, that is, *fierie King*, by others, the *blacke King*) had such successe against Pegu, as you haue heard: and Pegu falling, raised himselfe to high fortunes, subiecting the Kingdomes of Camboia, Laniangh, Lugor, Patane, Tenesary, and diuers others. This victorious King deceased *Ann.* 1605. and dying without issue, left the Throne to his brother, which was termed the *White King*, of peaceable and milde disposition. He lying on his death-bed, *Anno* 1610. by the instigation of *Iockrommeway*, one of his principall Lords, (who sought to deriue the succession vpon himselfe) caused his eldest sonne to be slaine, being a young man of great hope. Yet his brother, the second son succeeded, and gaue *Iockrommeway* his desert. This man had besides other slaues, two hundred & eightie Iapanders, which to reuenge their masters death ran in ioynt furie to the Court, and possessed themselues of the young King, whom they compelled to commit vnto their massacring hands foure chiefe men, as the authors of their masters death: and after many other abuses, forced Him to subscribe to a composition of their owne making, and to giue them some of the chiefe Palapos or Priests for hostages, and so departed with a great treasure; vsing much violence at their departure, the Siamites as meere spectators daring nothing to the contrary. (The King of Siam sent to the Iapanian Emperour to complaine of this insolence, who promised to send these Iapanians to Him, there to receiue their due punishment. Generall *Saris* then in Iapan saw the men going to the Court as he came from thence.)

Pet. W. Floris M. S. you haue his Iournall in my Pilgrims, To. 1. lib. 3. ca. 14.

Vpon this newes the Kingdomes of Camboya and Laniangh rebelled, and also one *Banga de laa a Pegner*, who in the yeere 1613. reuolted to the King of Aua, and came to him with fifty thousand of his country-men, before subiect to the King of Siam. The King of Laniangh made also an Expedition into Siam, within three dayes iourney of Oudija, hoping to find the Countrey

Countrey still intangled with the Iaponian slaues; but was met by the King of Siam, and forced to retire. But the report was (saith hee) that the two Kings had combined in league against the Siamite to dispossesse him, being then of two and twentie yeeres, which yet without intestine rebellion, they are not able to effect.

On August the fourth, 1612. the English arriued at Siam, the town being thirty leagues vp the riuer: September, seuenteenth, they had audience of the King, who granted them free trade, and a faire house. The Country at this time of raining was couered with water, October the twentie six, they had such a storme, that old folkes had not seene the like, which besides other harmes, blew downe the Kings fathers faire Monument. Their ship was neere a wrack, but by great care and paines was saued, fiue of the company being drowned, of which many supposed one to be deuoured of a Whale. The Kings in the Indies are all Merchants: none at Siam might buy any commodities till the King had first serued his owne turne.

§. III.

Of the Kingdome of Malacca.

MAlacca is now subiect to the Portugals (if not since our last intelligence taken from them by the Kings of Achin and Ior, who held it in siege, as the fame went, conquered by *Alphonsius Albuquerke*, or f *Albiecher* (so King Emanuel in his Letter to Pope *Leo*, containing all this exploit, termeth him) who was their greatest Conqueror in the Indies, subduing more to that sceptet then all before him or since. *Iohn de Barros* relates at large the founding and proceeding of this City, who writes that some two hundred and fifty yeeres before the Portugals arriuall in the Indies, it was first founded. Anciently Cingapura was the chiefe place of trade & habitation in all that coast, which lies in the most Southerly point of all Asia, about halfe a degree North from the Æquinoctiall; then resorted to by the Merchants of China, Camboia, and the rest of the continent, & many Ilands to the East and West, which they called Dibananguin and Atazanguin, that is Leuant and Ponent, or, *vnder the winds* (West) and *beyond the winds* (East) all the Nauigation in those parts being by the Monsons or certaine winds which obserue their set seasons of the yeere. In those times reigned in Cingapura, one *Sangesinga*, and in the neighbouring parts of Iaua one *Pararisa*, who dying, left to the care of his brother his two sonnes: which slaying the eldest, & making himselfe King, by his tyrannies caused diuers of the Iauan Nobilitie to forsake their Country. Amongst the rest *Paramisora* fled to Cingapura, who with his many followers was entertained kindly by *Sangesinga*, whom not long after he vngratefully slew, and by the helpe of his Iauans possessed himselfe of the state. The King of Siam (whose tributary and son-in-law *Sangesinga* had bin) forced him to leaue his ill gotten throne, and to seek new habitation one hundred and fortie miles thence, where he settled himselfe at the riuer Muar with two thousand followers, some of which were called Cellati, men that liued on the Sea by fishing and pyracie: these he would not receiue into his new fortresse of Pago, as not well trusting them, though before they had made him lord of Cingapura. These therefore seated themselues fifteene miles from Muar, in the place neere which Malaca now standeth, ioyning with the Natiues, halfe Sauages, whose language is called Malayan. The place growing strait, they remoued three miles vp the riuer, where was a Hill called Beitan with a large plaine, the commodiousnesse whereof inuited *Paramisora* to leaue Pago, and to ioyne with them in this new foundation, which was after called Malaca, signifying *a banished man*, in remembrance of this Iauans exile. In succeeding times the merchandize and Merchants too remoued from Cingapura to Malaca, *Saquem Darsa* then succeeding his father *Paramisora*, who subiected himselfe as vassal to the King of Siam, which assigned to his obedience all the Country from Cingapura on the East to Pulo Zambilan, which is to the West of Malaca one hundred and twentie miles, all which space of coast is two hundred seuentie miles by Sea. The Monsons or winds in these parts continue West and Northwest, from the end of August to the end of October: November begins Northerly winds and Northeasterly, which blow till the beginning of April. From May till the end of August, the South and Southwest beare sway, according to which the Mariner must direct his course, and take his proper season.

The situation of Malaca is vnwholsome, by reason of the marishes and neereness to the line (little aboue two degrees to the North) else it would haue bin the most populous Citie in the Indies. The successors of *Saquem Darsa* by little and little eased their shoulders of the Siam subiection, especially after the Moores, Persians, and Guzurats had conuerted them to Mahomets sect, and at last vsurped absolute Soueraignitie. But the King of Siam nine yeeres before the Portugall conquest, sent a Fleet of two hundred saile, and therein

f See *Nouus orbis.*

Bar. dec. 2. l. 6. c. 1.

The Monsons.

fixe thousand men against Mahumet King of Malaca, the General of which Fleet was *Poioan* his Vice-roy of Lugor, to whom the Gouernours of Patane, Calantan, Pan, and other Coast-cities were to pay their tributes for the King of Siam. From Lugor to Malaca is six hundred miles saile along the coast, much subiect to tempestuous weather, which diuided this Fleet; some of which fell into *Mahumets* hand by treachery, to the ouerthrow of the rest. The Siamite in reuenge prepared a great Armie by Land, and Armada by Sea, foure hundred Elephants, and thirtie thousand men: but without expected euent, by the insolencie of some of his Souldiers in Rapes and Robberies, which raised the Country against them, whiles *Poioan* was in the siege of Pan or Pam, another Citie in rebellion. The King of Siam further enraged, sent two Armadas, one by the way of Calantan, the other by the way of Tenaz-zary, one on the East side, the other on the West of this long tract of land, but before *Mahumet* could be punished by the Siamite, the Portugall had preuailed against him.

King *Emanuel* had sent *Diego Lopes de Sequeira* from Lisbone, *Anno* 1508. who came the next yeere to Malaca, and there vnder faire colours of traffique, Himselfe and his whole Fleet were in danger of betraying and murthering, by this perfidious King and his Bendara or chiefe Iustice. This ruled all cases Ciuill, the Lacfamqua or Admirall, all Marine, and the Tamungo or Treasurer all the Reuenue, and these three the whole gouernment; which treachery in the yeere 1511. was requited by *Albuquerke*, who by his proper valour, and wonted Fortunes, with secret intelligence amongst the Malayans, conquered the Citie, expelled the King (who in few dayes vomited His soule after this pill) and built there a Fortresse and a Church, establishing the Portugall Lawes, but so as both the Ethnikes and the Moores had their owne Magistrates, appeale reserued to the highest. The most remarkable things in this exploit were, the Chaine which one *Naodobequea* (one of the principall conspirers against *Sequeira*, now encountred in a Sea-fight by *Albuquerke* in his voyage to Malaca) ware on his arme, with a bone of a Iauan beast called Cabal therein, by vertue whereof, notwithstanding many and wide wounds, he lost not one drop of blood, till that Chaine being taken off, his veines suddenly and at once emptied themselues of blood and life: the store of artillery of which they tooke three thousand Peeces, of eight thousand, which the Portugals affirmed had beene there: their venomed Arrowes, and Calthrops strowed in the way, the poyson whereof once touching the blood, made them mad, with other symptomes, as in the biting of a mad dog, which they learned after to heale by chewing the leafe of a certaine hearbe growing in the Countrey: the vndermining the street of the Citie to blow it vp together with the Portugals: the disaduantage of the fight with Elephants, which being here enraged with wounds, would not be tuled, but brake the ranks of their owne side: the treacherie of this people first to the Portugals, then to their King, after that to the Portugals again: the prey and spoile (besides all that the King and they which fled carried away, and all the Gold, Siluer, prouision of watre and concealements excepted) amounted to two hundred thousand duckets for the Kings due, which was the fifth part.

Alodinus the sonne of King *Mahomet* busily bestirred himselfe, but in vaine, to recouer his lost Pattimonie, neither the Ile Bintam, which he fortified, as he did also Pagus, nor force nor fraud being able to defend him from his fathers fates and fortunes. The Moores haue enuyed this successe to the Portugals, and often haue attempted to deprive them of Malaca. The Hollanders also vnder *Cornelius Matelmius*, *Anno* 1608. laid siege thereto, whiles the Portugall was seeking new conquests at Achen, who in their returne might easily haue defeated them, had they not beene vnaduised in too long adusing. When the Portugals went to Malaca, the King of Pans marriage with the daughter of *Mahomet* was to bee solemnized, a banqueting house of timber couered with silke, sumptuously prepated to this putpose on thirtie wheeles, to be drawne with Elephants, the Principals of the Citie being therein. But this Kings affaction was soone cooled by these disasters.

From Cingapura to Pulo Cambian, there is no other habitation of any reckoning, but a few huts where Fisher-men dwell, and a few Villages within Land. This is the Centre of the Easterne Traffique. They are proud of their language (which some say was deuised by the founders:) wherein they deuise many Sonnets and amorous Poesies. The *Malayos*, or Country people, goe naked, with a cloth about their middle, and a little roll of cloth about their heads. *Lodouico Barthema* (who was there before the Portugals knew it) supposed, that here arriued more ships then in any Citie in the world. The Riuer Gaza neere thereunto, is more after his reckoning, then fifteene miles ouer. The people in the Countrey lodge in Trees, for feare of Tygres.

It is strange that *Barros* writes of these Tygres, that in the height of eight yards they will reach and deuoure men: their chiefe preseruatiues against them are their night fires: the multitude is such that many enter by night into the Citie for prey, of which hostels that after the Portugals had taken it, that a Tygre leaped ouer a high wall, and carried away three slaues

See this historie in *Messeus hist. Ind. l. 4. Osorius l. 6. & 7. Barros As. Dec. 2. l. 10. c. 4. & l. 6. c. 4. & seq.*

The bone of the Cabal.

Linschot. R. Fitch.

g Barr. dec. 2. l. 6. cap. 1.

slaues tied to a piece of timber, together with the wood, leaping againe vpon the wall with admirable lightnesse. The Countrey being barren, the Citie abounded neuertherlesse with plentie of necessaries, exceeding those places whence they were brought.

After that [f] *Alphonsius Albuquerke* had conquered Malacca; the Moores dispossessed there, seated themselues in diuers places along the coast, & some of them vsurped the title of Kings.

f *Icon. Bar. l. 9.*

§. IIII.

Of Patane and the neighbouring petie Kingdomes.

PAtane [g] is a Citie Southwards from Siam, chiefe of that Kingdome, whereto it giueth name, in the height of seuen degrees. The buildings are of Wood and Reed, but artificially wrought. The Mesquit (for many of them are Mahumetanes) is of Bricke. The Chinois are more then the natiue Inhabitants. They are of an Ash-colour. They vse [h] three languages; the Malayan (which to them is naturall) the Sian, and Chinan. The first is written like the Hebrew, from the right hand; the second, like the Latine from the left, and almost in like Characters; the third, from the right to the left, with a descent from the top to the bottome. The Chinois haue Idolatrous Temples, and so haue the Sians, wherein are many golden statues; the Priests which attend them are clothed in yellow. They haue sacred youths which are their Oracles. The people when they enquire of them, sit a conuenient distance from the Images, and obserue the young mans gestures (who with his haire disheuelled lyeth prostrate before the Idoll) singing and playing on Instruments, vntill he arise, and standeth vp. For then, as possessed of the Deuill, he runneth vp and downe with a terrible countenance, and maketh a stirre, as if he would kill himselfe, and them that stand by, with a sword which he hath in his hand. Then the people prostrating themselues, request him to declare the Deuils Oracle, and he answereth as pleaseth him; his lies being accounted Oracles. Adulterie is here a capitall offence, the father of the malefactor being the Executioner, or his next kinsman, if he be dead: yet is this vice common (notwithstanding this rigor) by reason of the womens vnbridled lust.

g *G. Arthus Damisc. Hist. Ind. Orient. pag. 333.*

h *Nauig. Iacob Neccip.*

The Kingdome hath bin gouerned many yeeres by a Queene, who gaue good entertainment to the Hollanders, *Iames Neccip* and his fellowes, *An. 1602.* after their double misfortune and madnes, which had befallen them, the one in iest, the other in earnest; this at Macao in China, where they were, and knew it not, and setting twentie men on [i] shoare, neuer saw them againe, but heard, that the Portugals had caused fifteen of them to be hanged: the other at Auarella Falca, in 11. degrees and an halfe, where they found the Tract of Carts, and footings of beasts, but could not see a man, nor shoot a beast. They ghessed that the people liued as the Tartars, wandring in Carts and Tents, without any settled dwelling. The place was by them called *Sotterynm*, by reason that many of their company had lost the vse of reason, and became mad with eating a certaine fruit there growing like to Plums, with a tender stone, which continued till they had slept. Had they knowne then the easinesse of the cure, it had bin better then any Comedie to haue tickled their Spleene, and prouoked [k] laughter, to see one fighting against the enemies, which assaulted him at his Cabbin to heare another with piteous shrikes crie out on the multitude of Deuils and Hobgoblins, which affrighted him: a third sees strange sights, and cries out, The ship is full of strangers: and whiles one, in more pleasing distraction, enioyeth (and ioyeth in that distracted pleasure) the sight of God and his Angels, another (transported by this humoured *Charon*) with dreadfull and gastly lookes, and trembles at his supposed sights of the Deuill, and his hellish associates. It were a madnesse to relate how exceedingly this their madnesse was diuersified, and how many Acts this Tragicall Commedie had, till sleepe had dispersed those fumes, wherewith that fruit had distracted their braines. From thence (as is said) they came to Patane, where the Queene entertained them in good sort, and to their contentment.

i The Hollanders saw many men & women of China in their boats, which were Fishers, and dwelt in them: but saw not a Portugall, nor could procure any of the other, at any sum, to deliuer them a letter on shoare. After, 1603. the Hollanders tooke a rich ship of the Portugals at Macao, laden for Iapan. *Conrad. de Vend.*

k A merry madnesse of *Emery one in his humour.*

As the difference of their writing, in such neerenesse of dwelling, is very much, so no lesse is found in their Religions. The Pataneans are Mahumetanes. The Chinois and Siamites are Ethnicks, in that diuersitie of Rites which you haue heard. Whiles the Hollanders were there, one of those youths, in that Prophetic ill distraction before mentioned, warned them to depart from thence; for a great fire would otherwise consume them: whereupon many forsooke their habitation, and yet no fire happened. They also saw the execution of their seuere Law against Adulterie, on two noble Personages, whose lewd familiaritie being detected, they chose to bee strangled, and he to bee stabbed (the Law permitting them their choice of the kindes of death) which by the fathers of the parties was executed on them. In single persons it is accounted no crime. And if a forreine Merchant come to trade there, they vse to aske

aske him if he need not a woman: yea, many young women offer their seruice: and the price and time being agreed on, she whom he pleaseth to chuse, goeth with him to his house, and in the day performeth the office of a seruant, in the night of a Concubine; but then neither of them may seeke change of pleasure, without great perill.

1 Orbells. The Siamites that liue here, weare two or three [1] balls of Gold or Siluer, as bigge as a Tennis-ball, in their yards, as we shall after obserue in Pegu. The Mahumetans weare them not. The Queene keepes her selfe close at home among her women; of which some may not marry (but yet may doe worse) others may, hauing first obtained the Queenes licence. It is seldome that shee is seene; yet sometimes she rideth on an Elephant in Progresse, for her recreation. And for Elephants, they haue a deuice to take them in this sort. Some ride into the [m] woods on a tame Elephant, and when they espie a wilde one, they prouoke him to fight. Whiles these are fastned in the encountet by the teeth or tuskes, each striuing to ouer-throw the other, some come behinde the wilde Elephant, and fasten his hinder feet, and so either kill him for his teeth, or by famine tame him.

m See the next Chapter of another way to take them.

Peter Williamson Floris. *Anno* 1612. June the two and twentieth; Some of the English came to Patane, with a Letter from His Maiestie to the Queene, accompanied with a present from the Merchants, of six hundred Rials of Eight. This Letter was deliuered in great pompe, being laid in a bason of Gold, carried on an Elephant, furnished with many little Flags, Launces, and Minstrels; The Queenes Court also being sumptuously prepared to this businesse. They obtained grant of a Trade on like conditions to the Hollanders, who had their Factory their ten yeeres before that time, and their House in that space twice burned.

The Iaponites had twice destroyed Patane by fire in fiue or six yeeres space. The Countrey adioyning was also full of wartes: the King of Ior ouer-runne, and burned in September that yeere, all the Suburbes of Paan: those of Camboya, Laniam and Iagoman, ioyning their force against the King of Siam. On the one and thirtieth of December, the Queene of Pantanie went to sport Her selfe, accompanied with sixe hundred Prawes, where wee (saith *Floris*) saluted Her, being a comely old woman, about sixtie, tall and full of Maiestie, such as they had seene sew in the Indies. Shee had in company Her sister, which is Heire apparant, commonly called the young Queene, vnmarried and about sortie sixe yeeres of age. The Queene had not beene forth of her house in seuen yeeres before, and now intended to hunt wild Bulls and Buffes, of which there is great abundance. The waters this yeere were extraordinarily high, carrying away many houses. The Queenes younger sister was married to the King of [n] Pahan, whom shee had not seene in twentie eight yeeres, notwithstanding Her often Embassies to that purpose. At last, prouoked with the Kings dallying and delaying to send Her, Shee sent out a Fleet of seuentie Sayle, with foure thousand men to Pahan, to bring her Sister by force, in April 1613. Her (being distressed by warres which the King of Ior had made on him, burning his Houses, Barnes and prouisions; and the Queene of Patanie making stay of all Iunkes of Rice laden for Pahan) arriued there, July the twelfth, with the Queenes Sister, and her two sonnes: and all the Dogs were for his sake killed, because he can indure none. August the second, her was entertained with a feast, at which the English were inuited guests, where they saw a Comedie played all by women, after the manner of Iaua, with antique apparell, very pleasant to behold. Once before, in the Queenes presence they had seene twelue women and children dance very well, after them the Gentlemen, and last of all the Hollanders and the English were requested to doe it. This Queene is well monyed, both the English and Dutch tooke vp money of Her at vse: this and merchandise, being in the Indies the practice of Kings.

n *Pan* or *Pam*, or *Pant*. This King promised much taunts to the English, if they would resort to his Citie, which is in a little Iland

On the first of October, there happened a lamentable Fire on a strange occasion. Two great men, *Datoe Besar*, and *Datoe Laxmanna*, dwelling neete together, both rich in Slaues, it fell out that *Besar* (hearing that his Iauan Slaues had treatned to kill him with *Laxmanna* and others) caused two of his most suspected Slaues to be bound: which the [o] Ponyonla of the Slaues would not suffer, and thereupon was stabbed by him with his Creese. His Iauan Slaues seeing this, would haue taken him, but by rescue of his other Slaues, hee escaped. They neuertheless slew all that came in their way, and presently set the houses on fite. *Laxmannas* Iauan Slaues could not by any threats be detained from ioyning with them, and set all on fire as they went, so that the whole Town, except the Queenes Court, the Meskit, and some few houses, were burned. The Iauans tooke such Bond-women, as they best liked, away with them, and fled into the Countrey. Few of them could be taken.

o Gouernor or chiefe ouer them.

Iohor or Ior, in this yeere 1613. was taken by the forces of the King of Achen after twentie nine dayes siege. The Hope (a Holland ship of sixe hundred Tun, which set saile from Bantam in March, with eightie men, twentie foure Peeces, and seuentie thousand Rials of Eight in Siluer, and the worth of ten or twelue thousand in Cloth) had the ill hap to come to this Riuer of Iohor, and some went vp to the Towne: but before they could returne, the Achin

Achin Armada came to this Siege; so that twenty three of their men were taken. The rest came October the one and twentieth to Patanic. Master *Copland* then at Achin with General *Bell*, writes, that the Kings Armada returning, arriued Iuly the third, Gallies and Frigats a hundred and twenty, or more, with which *Laxaman* the Generall had subdued the Kingdomes of Ioar and Siak, bringing with him both the Kings and two of their brethren, which he saith, were honourably sent backe, and remained tributaries to Achin.

The p Hollanders haue had much trading at Patane; and the King of Iohar or Ior moued with their good successe against the Portugals, ioyned his Nauie to theirs, to chase them out of those parts. Yea, they haue braued the Portugals euen before Goa, the Seat of their Vice-Roy; and in Nouember, 1604. at Calecut q entred into solemne league with the Samatyn, (at least offered it *Iarric* denies the acceptation) against them: and the next yeere they wonne from the Portugals, the Castles of Amboyne and Tidore, rot to mention many other Prizes taken from them by the Hollanders at Macao, one ship worth a Million; at Sincapura, &c. at sundry times. In the yeere 1605. *Cornelius Matelinius* was sent to the Indies with twelue Ships; and the next yeare after *Paulus à Caerden*, with twelue more. And *Matelinus* r besieged Malaca, as before is said. But in this attempt they had not successe answerable to their desire; and yet not so ill as was likely. For the s Portugals vpon this newes returning from Achin, vpon espiall of a Flemish Saile, called a Counsell, and made it the next day before they came vp; in which space the Hollander had leisure to bring all his Ordnance (then on shore for battery) aboord his Ships, and to prepare himselfe for fight, which he held two dayes with the Portugall with two Ships losse on each side, the Portugall giuing way. So little counsell is sometimes in consultation, and easily is opportunity lost in the very seeking.

Iarric writeth that the Hollanders hauing taken the Fortresses of Amboin and Tidor, entred League with ten neighbour Kings, enemies to the Portugals, and with eleuen Ships, seuen t Barkes, came before Malaca in the end of April 1606. The Kings Confederate had of all sorts of Shipping, three hundred twentie seauen, with foure thousand men. The Iapanders which were then in Malaca vpon affaires of Merchandize, did performe good seruice for the distressed Portugal. The Siege continued almost foure moneths, in which the citie endured fifty thousand great shot, before the Vice-Roy *Alphonsus Castrius* freed the same; He leauing the charge of Goa to the care of *Menesius* the Arch-Bishop, with a great Armada set forth in the beginning of May, ignorant of this Siege: and set vpon the Acheners by the way, where hee got blowes and shame. Sixe leagues from Malaca the Hollanders fought with him August the eleuenth. The first day was little difference, the next day one Holland Ship was burnt, and the Admirall fired; two Portugall ships burned, one of them the Admirall. On the third and fourth the Portugall had the better: but so as neither part were absolute Conquerours. Hee that will not onely reade, but in manner see, the moist of these exploits of the Hollanders, with other rarities of the Indies, may resort to *Theodoricke* u and *Israel de Bry*, who haue in liuely stamps expressed these Nauigations; with the obseruations of *Linschoten*, and others.

Floris their Country-man complaynes, that they suffer and assist Moores and Ethnikes in this Indian Trade, which they forbid to their Seruants, Country-men and Brethren, vpon paine of Death and losse of Goods. They haue in the Easterne Iiands done much harme to the Portugalls and Spaniards. Capteyne *Schot* tooke the Castle and Iland of Solor, with a great quantitie of Sandel wood, and sent the Portugalls to Malacca.

He mentioneth one Fleet of theirs in the Moluccos of two and twentie saile, and that they expected the next yeere (1614.) fourteene saile more. *Bangam* nameth seuen and thirtie Factories, and twentie Forts and Castles of theirs all beyond the Cape Comori. In those places where they haue Castles, he saith, They threatned to carry such (as Prisoners) to their Fort, that should sell their commodities to the English. In some places where the People are poore, and haue nothing but their Cloues to liue on, the Hollanders buy it at a cheap rate (as fifty Ryalls of Eight the Bahar) which they sel dome giue in money, but in Rice, Clothes, and Commodities, to that eight Ryalls of Eight well employed on the Coast of Coromandel, may here yeeld a Bahar, which is sixe hundred twentie fiue pound of Cloues. Hee addeth, That they will not suffer the Malayans and Iauans to haue Cloues but of them, at sixtie sixe Ryals readie money. *Richard Cocks* from Iapan writes, That the Spaniards feare the losse of the Philippina's by their force: which is sufficient to do in those Seas what they list. The Spaniards succeeded the Portugals in the Moluccos, which the Hollanders tooke from them: and the Vice-roy of Mexico, with the Gouernor of Manilla, haue ioyned in their endeuors against them: the Country people also better affect the Spaniard, as more Liberall and Bountiful. The Spaniards haue in these Easterne parts besides Manilla, the Castles of Gamalamma in Temate, of Tidore, Gelola, Battachina, as *Bangam* obseruesh. Thus much haue I thoughts

p I Hermanus Hillebrand. ab 1602. ad 1614.

q Step. ab Hagen.

r Cornel. Matelin. Nauig. & pug. Amsteldam. Hist. lo. Isacq Pontani.

s Ex relat. Gen. Sarin.

t Their Shipboats.

u Indiae Orientalis, partes 8. per T. & Isac. de Bry.

Nic. Bang. Itinerat.

thought to speake here of the Hollanders, who haue worthily fought & found much Honor, especially by their Marine exploits, round about the world; which if it bee attended with some vnneighbourly quarrels with Ours, and other foyle of couetousnesse, in this humaine frailty, and their proper thriftinesse, is no great wonder.

Balbi mentioneth an Iland on this Coast called Carnalcubar, the Inhabitants whereof goe from one Iland to another (as the Caribes were wont) to hunt men for their cruell diet. For the most part they liue on fish, goe naked, without Law, and had almost seized on him and his company. *Dauid Middleton* * affirmeth the like of another Iland called Seran, which prouoked by wrongs from the Portugals, eate all Christians they can get, rosting them aliue, without regard of any ransome.

a *D. Mid. voyage 1609. M.S.*

CHAP. IIII.

Of the Kingdome of Pegu, or Brama, and the subiect and neighbouring Kingdomes.

§. I.

Of the Greatnesse of the King of Pegu.

OF the Kingdome Brema, or Brama, the Citie Royall is a Pegu, the Nation where began the greatnesse of the late Kings. These Bramans inhabited neere the Lake Chiamay, among whom the King of Pegu had his Lieutenants or Viceroyes: one whereof (the Deputy of Tangu) about threescore and ten yeares since, rebelled against him, and surprised the Kingdomes of Prom, Melintay, Calam, Bacam, Mirandu, Aua, all peopled with the Bramans, trending Northwards a hundred and fiftie leagues. Hee after attempted Siam with an Armie of three hundred thousand, and spent three moneths in making way through the huge Woods and inaccessible place, but atchieued not his purpose. After his returne hee assayled Pegu, and conquered it; and then returned the second time 1567. as in the former Chapter is mentioned. b Hee subiected to his Seignorie twelue Kingdomes, which *Fernandez* thus rehearseth: The Kingdome of Cauelan, where are the best Rubies and Saphyres. Secondly, that of Aua, the bowels whereof are filled with Mines of Copper, Lead, and Siluer: The third Bacan, enriched with Mines of Gold: Tungran, the fourth abounderh with c *Lac* and Lead: such is Prom, the fifth: the sixth is Iangoma, stored with Copper, Muske, Pepper, Silke, Siluer, Gold: Lauran, the seuenth, hath *Beioin* enough to lade ships: the eight and ninth are the Kingdomes of Trucon, Staples of China-Merchandize: the tenth and eleuenth are the Diademes of Cublan, betweene Aua and China, powdred with precious stones: Siam, whence wee last came, is the last of the twelue; in the inuasion whereof hee armed a million and threescore thousand men (which number is short of d *Fredericks* reckoning, except wee ascribe that surplusage to Victualers, Voluntaries, and Seruants and Attendants on the baggage;) which Armie (saith *Fernandez*) hee tythed out of his people, taking one only of ten.

a *G. Bot. Ben.*

b *N. Pimenta fit. F. Fernandez.*

c A kinde of gum, wrought by Pismires as Bees make wax, whereof is made our hard wax, colours, &c.

d *Fredericke* saith, he had 26 crowned Kings at command, and there no King in the world was of greater power. *Cas. Fred.*

c *Balby*, saith 1500000.

Fredericke then in Pegu saith he had fiue hundred thousand, sent him in supply of those which were slaine and lost of the first Armie, which consisted of * fourteene hundred thousand men: after one and twentie moneths siege, hee preuayled by Treason of the Siamites, which opened one of their Gates in the night, and received his Forces into the Citie: whereupon the King of Siam poysoned himselfe, leauing a rich bootie to the Conqueror. Hee saw at the Kings returne the Elephants ordered in a triumphall square, laden with Gold, Siluer, Iewels, and with the Great Prisoners of Siam. This King (saith the same Author) hath no power by Sea, but in the Land, for People, Dominions, Gold and Siluer, hee farre exceeds the Great Turke. He hath diuers Magazions full of Treasure, which is euery day encreased without diminishing, besides that hee is Lord of the Mines of Rubies, and other Iewells. The King in his Feasts vsed to ride on a triumphall Chariot all guilded, drawne by sixteene Horses, it was high with a goodly Canopy ouer it, twentie Lords attended the same, holding in their hands a Rope, fastned to this Chariot, to keepe it vpright. The King sits in the middle, and about him stand foure of his chiefe Fauorites. Before marcheth the Armie, in the midst, all the Nobilitie, and round about the Chariot, exceeding pompoully and orderly. The King hath one principall Wife, three hundred Concubines. The voyage from

from Saint *Thomee* vsed by the Portugals, is by Negrais, where on the left hand stood a Varella all guilded, seruing for a Sea Marke, the Sunne shining thereon causing it to bee seene farre off: Neere thereto is the Iland of Flies, so called of the store of Flies, caused by the multitude of Fishes there salted. Thence Balby passed to Cosmi, the Territory whereof is full of Woods, and these full of Tygres, wild Swine, Partats, Apes, and other Creatures. Cosmi is in sixeteene Degrees one third part, the Houses are of Canes, couered with thatch, much annoyed with Tygres, which enter often into the Towne and deuoure Men or Beasts. From hence they passe in Paros or Barkes by diuers Villages alongst the Riuet to Iacebul a great Citie, and a little beyond to another called Tegiasden. Dian is a great Towne a little further, where they make Barkes or Vessells as bigge as Galeasses, hauing on both sides quite through, roomes for Merchandize, and in the midst a kinde of dwelling-house, where they trade: they passed further by Bedagiamana, Lagapala, Purdabin, Gungibin (where they anchored in the midst of the streame, for feare of the Tygres, which in the water sometime assault men.) Coilan a Citie foure square, each square three miles; Tuuagnedan another Citie full of Varellas or Temples and Images; Lenagon a pleasant Citie full of Palme-trees; Siluanpedi, where many victualling Barkes are made, and serue for dwelling and victualling downe to the Sea; Dala, where the Kings stables for his Elephants were; Dogon, the most Religious; Moccio, where they vn-laded their goods to passe by Land to Pegu. All this way is by fresh Riuers with swift Tides, the houses on both sides, many, built vpon Timbers ascended by Ladders, to preuent Tygres, for which cause also some keepe Buffals in their houses, the sent of whom the Tygres cannot endure. All this way they vse *Manini* in stead of money, made of glasse. The Varellas or Temples in this way, are innumerable, of diuers fashions. This King held himselfe the greatest King in the World, and caused himselfe to bee entitüled, *The liuing God vpon earth*: which the LIVING GOD in heauen auenged on him, as you shall heare. Caplan is the place where they find Rubies, Spinels and Saphires, digged out of high Hils, to which none may haue accesse but by leaue. It is six dayes iourney beyond Aua. The Buffals in these parts are of Ash-colour, so great that they are like Elephants. In any great solemnitie the foure white Elephants went before the King with furniture all of gold, their teeth also in a iewelled sheath. Hee hath much artillery, but wants men to manage them; much materials for shipping, but wants Shipwrights and Mariners. His iewells are inestimable. *Balby* saw him weare two Rubies, each as bigge as two Dates, but not so long, of admirable lustre. Hee so abounded with wealth, that a hundred ships, fraughted with Rice, seemed to diminish nothing of the plentie. The fields are said to yeeld three harueests in a yeere: and of Gems the store is beyond estimation, and almost maketh them there short of the estimation of Gems. But this wealth, then wanting no store, had, when *Fernandez* writ this 1598, a contrary vicissitude, of no store, but of want, euen of those things which Nature exactteth, as necessary props of life. Scarcely of so many millions were left seuen thousand persons, Men, Women, and Children, to participate in the Kings imprisonment, or siege, in his Tower, and those feeding on mans flesh, the Parents requiring of the Children that life which before they had giuen, to sustayne their owne, and now layed them not in their bosome, but in their bowels; the Children became liuing Sepulchres of their scarce-dead Parents. The stronger preyed vpon the weaker: and if their flesh was eaten vp before by their owne hunger, leaving nothing but skin and bones to the hungrie assault of these Raueners, they ripped the belly, and deuoured their inward parts, and breaking the skull, sucked out the braynes raw. Yea, the weaker sexe was by the strength of famine, armed with no lesse butcherly despight, against whomsoeuer they could meet in the streets of the Citie; with their knives, which they carryed about them, as Harbengers to their teeth, in these in-hospitall inhumane-humine banquets.

G. Balby, cap. 34.
R. Fitch.
Cities in the way from Negrais to Pegu.

And thus did the besieged Citizens, while the King endured in his Tower no small part of like misery, besides the indignitie, so to bee by his owne Vassals straitned, and after slaughtered. But such is the iust hand of the *King of Kings*, who regardeth not persons, but as Hee sheweth *Mercy* to the *Mercifull*, so doth He reserue *Vengeance* for *Cruelties* and *Tyrannie*. Pardon me, Reader, if on this spectacle I cause thee, with my selfe, to stay a while and wonder. The Sunne, in his daily iourney round about this vast Globe, saw Few equall (that I say no more) to this Peguan Greatnesse, and yet in a small space *He that is higher then the highest*, hath abated and abased this Magnificence lower then the lowest of his Princes.

§. II.

§. II.

Of the destruction and desolation of Pegu.

AFter the death of that Braman Conqueror, his sonne, in the second moneth of his succeeding reigne, hearing that the King of Aua, his Tributarie and Vncle, was plotting some Conspiracie, committed to prison fortie of his Nobles, Partners in that new Proiect, & bringing them all with their Parents, Wiues, Children, Friends, and Acquaintance into a Wood, set y fire thereon, commanding to cut them in pieces, whosoeuer escaped out of the flame. This kindled another fire in the hearts of his discontented Subiects, which was not quenched but with his ouerthrow. Hee warred on his Vncle, the King of Aua, with no great aduantage, till they both agreeing to trie it by single combate on Elephants, *Pegu* obtained the Conquest. Their fight was first with Harquebusses, after with Darts, lastly with Swords. By the helpe of his Elephant *Pegu* preuailed, yet so as their perished aboue two hundred thousand of the three hundred thousand he led forth in this Expedition, and almost as many of the Auan side. Of his Elephants teeth which dyed in this battell, were made little Images or Idols. In the meane time the Siamite with an Army marched to the borders of Pegu, diuulging rumors, That he came to succour his Lord against the Auan Rebell. The King enraged hereat, sent presently part of his Forces to take him, and present him Captiue; but the Souldiers refused to follow the Generall in this enterprise, and returned to their owne houses. The King, after his returne, sent to *Siam*, by faire speeches to perswade him to come to him: he refused his presence, but denied not his wonted Tributes. Hereupon the King, after two yeres prouision for the war, made that vnhappy Expedition in the former Chapter mentioned. And there the waters taking part with the Siamite, he tried once and againe the like fortunes of warre. He sent his brother the King of Iangoma, and his owne Son, twice; which did much harme to the Siamites, and receiued no little themselues; neuer returning without losse of halfe their Armie, & of his own Son, in the last inuasion slain with a shot. Relentlesse he (inflamed rather with his losses) determined another Expedition in his owne person; and therefore laid vp store of prouision in Barnes at Martauan, Murmulan, Tauay, and Tanassarin, three yeeres together, purposing then to employ all the Peguans in this enterprise. But they weary of forreine calamities, hid themselues in Woods and Wildernesses, and some turned *Talapoyes*: so they call their Religious persons. Many sold themselues slaues. The King persisting, in his Person gaue order to his Vncle *Xmibogus*, to take a muster of all the People, and to entertaine halfe of them for the warres. But he missing so many, which had by those new courses preuented this seruice, acquainted the King therewith; who enioyneth the late professed *Talapoyes* to resigne their habit, the young-men to be compelled to warfare, the old men to be exiled to the Bramans, where after he caused them to be exchanged for horses. He caused all the Peguans also to be branded in the right hand, that they might be knowne. This made them entertaine thoughts of Rebellion, which was first practised by the Cosmians, who set a new King ouer them.

y There were destroyed by this flame and execution 4000. persons, *Arthus 149. 326. & Gasper Balby, c. 37.* hath the same number, saying, That all the Citizens of Pegu were enioyned to be present at the execution. He calls the place not a Wood, but a Prison. He was then at Pegu.

The Peguan sent an Armie against them, with charge to burne or bring away all they could find amongst them, which they did, together with many of the People of both sexes, which he (after his manner) setting wood about them, burned. And when the rest (not able to warre against their King and Famine at once) submitted themselues, with exquisite torments he slue them all. He then sent to his Son, the King of Aua, to transplant those People of euery Age and Sexe, to people these forlorne desolations of Pegu. They, vnacquainted with this ayre, brake forth in diseases, wherwith they infected also the naturall Inhabitants: which plague made such hauoke, that many in impatience cast themselues into the Riuer. The Murmulans with helpe of the Siamites, seised on their Castle, whom the King besieged 2 yeere together, and then was forced from thence by the Siamites sudden irruption, with losse of the most of his People, the Horses, Elephants, and Country it selfe remaining their recompence. And the Peguan Captaines also, fearing their Masters tyrannie, became subiects to the Siamite, whose whole Families this tyrant with Fire and Water destroyed; so that all the Tract from Pegu to Martaua and Murmulan was made a Wildernesse. These things done, he sent for his younger Sonne, the King of Prom, and commanded him to the siege of Murmulan; who, vtterly misliking the attempt, conueyed himselfe in the night homewards, with purpose of rebellion.

z The cruell tyrannie of the King of Pegu.

The King of Siam not ignorant of this Peguan estate, inuaded the country in Harueste-time, and therefore that which they could they conueyed into Barnes, the rest was fired. He proceeded and laid siege to Pegu; in which at that time was a hundred and fiftie thousand Men, and three thousand Peeces of Ordnance, a thousand whereof were Brasse: but

(as is said) for feare of the Portugalls, which were reported to haue entred into Siam by the way of Cambora, he departed, leauing Famine behind, as Lieutenant of his Wartes, which caused the Forreigners, then in Pegu for the defence thereof, to get them to their owne homes. Those few which remained, liued with prouision from Tangu. The King sent to his Deputie in Tangu, to come to him with all the Inhabitants of the Countrey and their store, leauing his Wife, and some few to guard the Citie. He answered, That he would send halfe, and to demand all were vnreasonable. The King sends foure Noble-men, with Souldiers to force him hereunto. But he slayeth the Leaders, and seizeth on their Followers. Thus the Famine encreasing, and the People eating one another, the King numbreth the Citizens, among whom he findeth seuen thousand Siamites, whom he commanded to be slaine, not leauing aboue thirtie thousand of all sorts in the Citie. His sonne, the King of Prom, which had now stood out three yeeres, began to relent and sue for pardon, with promise to bring the Promans (to the number of fiftie thousand) to the Citie, whereat his Father reioyced, and sealed his pardon, which he sent him with many gifts. But his chiefe Counsellor, Author of this Rebellion, fearing all the blame would be laid on him, poysoned the Prince; himselfe aspiring to the Kingdome, was within one weeke destroyed: and the Nobles, euery man seeking to seize the State to himselfe, caused that of those fiftie thousand, within two moneths space, whiles euery weeke they had a new Prince, scarce remained fiftie men sit for Warre, which departed to Pegu, three or foure in a ship, leauing their Countrey to the habitation of wild Beasts.

Iudas cannot be secure, till he hang himselfe.

The Natiues of Pegu are not quite extinct, but many of them are fled into other Kingdomes; of whom, and of the Bramans, *Iangoma* numbreth a hundred and twentie thousand: *Oracan*, twentie thousand: *Siam*, a hundred thousand; and the King of Iangoma is able (they say) to arme a million of Men.

The Talapoyes perswaded the Iangoman to depose his brother of Pegu. He alledged his Oath vnto his Father, while he liued. They reply, That no Oath might prohibite, if he placed his brother in a *Vabat* (or golden Throne) to be adored for a god. And partly with this (I may not call it) Reason: and partly, as *Xerxes* alledged for himselfe, because that his elder Brother was borne before his Father was King, and because his Mother was the former King of Pegu's Daughter, he perswaded himselfe that it was lawfull.

And thus was the State of this mightie Kingdome, in the yeere 1598. brought to one Citie, which also was now become a withered carkasse, and well-neere the Sepulchre of it selfe, and (as mischiefe come not alone) besieged by *Magus*, King of Orracan.

Andreas [a] *Bones* (in his Letters the eight and twentieth of *March* 1600.) thus finisheth this Tragedie. When the King of Pegu saw himselfe in such straits, besieged by the King of Orracan, or Arracan, and Tangu, in his Castle of Macao, in *Decemb.* 1599. he yeelded himselfe to the King of Tangu; who dealt treacherously with him, and cut off his head, as he did to the Queene likewise, and the Prince. He then hasted to the Tower of Pegu, where he found as much Gold and Iewels as laded [b] six hundred Elephants, and as many Horses, besides Siluer and other Metalls of smaller price, which he left behind. The King of Arracan then absent, and angrie that the King of Tangu (contrary to promise) had seized all the treasure to himselfe, purposed to inuade his Kingdome, and to that intent, had the ayde of many Portugalls (amongst whom this Iesuite was one) who saw the wayes and fields, lately so fertile, now full strewed with Dead mens bones and skulls, and in the Riuers all passage of Ships hindered by the carkasses of Men. The King of Arracan found in the Towne aforesaid, three millions of Siluer, with two and thirtie hundred Peeces of Ordnance, and then remained Lord of Pegu. But the Kings of Siam and Iangoma preuented his enterprise for Tangu, which they inuaded, to depriue him of his Treasures. The King of Siam twice assailed Martauan with repulse, whereupon he caused two of his cowardly Captaines [c] to be cast into Cauldrons of scalding Oyle: and the third time conquered that Kingdome.

a *And. Bones.*

b *Iarric* hath 700. Elephants & 700. Horses.

c A cruell punishment of Cowards.

Peter Williamson Florio hath giuen vs later relations. He reports that the King of Pegu had in his flourishing greatnesse twentie Kings subiect to him, which fell to the Siamite, *Raia Api* before mentioned. He besieged Vnxa or Pegu two Moneths without effect. Dearth and death made Pegu resigne himselfe to the King of Tangu, that so he might also preuent the King of Arracan, who comming with his power tooke the Citie and the Countrey. The King of Tangu agreed with him to restore certaine Treasures, the white Elephant, and the Kings daughter (both which I saw, saith *Florio* in Arracan, *Anno* 1608.) and the King of Pegu, or else that he himselfe would kill him; which he afterwards did with a pilon wherewith they stampe their Rice, as being free (I know not by what Art) against any stabbing. Thus came this Empire, after the destruction of many millions of Peguans, to desolation, that at this day there is no remembrance of it. The King of Arracan gaue the Towne or Fort of Siriangh on the Riuer of Pegu to the Portugals in keeping, especially to *Philip de Britto de Nicote*,

Sitian.

Nicote, whom he stiled *Xenga*, that is, honest: who scarcely so proued: for three or foure yeeres after taking this Kings sonne prisoner, he made him ransome him at 110000. Tangans, and ten Galeas of Rice, after that growing insolent and caring for no bodie. But in March 1613. the King of Aua tooke Siriangh, and slew all the Portugals, and spitted, or otherwise tortured (as the Fame went) this *Philip de Britto*. This King gaue order for the building vp againe of the old Towne, and called together the Peguers, making them many faire promises, and so went forward to Tenesseryn, where *Banya* came to him with fiftie thousand Peguans, before subiect to Siam. Thus farre *Floris*.

Iarric. Thes. Indic. part. 1. l. 2. cap. 24. Equus Seianus Elephas Peguanus.

Some tell of this white Elephant, (for so they speake as if there were but one, whereas *Fitz. Balbi* and *Frederike* saw foure, but it seemes one was of principall estimation) that it was obserued with no lesse honour then the King, and came not abroad without great pompe. It hath beene a dismall and disastrous Beast to fiue or six Kings, which had the possession thereof, all hauing Tragicall ends. The King of Arracan, *Anno* 1599. returned home in triumph, this white Elephant richly adorned going before, the Brother and two Sonnes of the King of Pegu following.

P. Ia. Thes. Rer. Ind. l. 6. c. 31.

Iarric writes that the King of Pegu yeelded himselfe, his Wife and thirteene children (three other, the King of Arracan had two sonnes in hostage, and a daughter in marriage) to his sisters husband the King of Tangu, trusting the rather to his fidelitie, because when his eldest Sonne had forsaken him, and gone to Tangu in hope of the Queene his Aunts fauour, She caused his lesse of loyaltie to be punished with the losse of his head. Tangu killed all this royall Family.

Iar. ex Fernand. lit.

Martauan.

Martauan, before mentioned, was a goodly Peguan Kingdome, but by wars was brought into like miseries. The Region was so fertile that it yeelded three Harueſts in a yeere, and sent yeerely fifteene Ships to Malaca, as many to Cochin, laden with Rice: the Woods abounded with excellent fruits, the Hearbes and shrubs were generally odoriferous or medicinall: diuers kindes there grew of Rices not like to ours: store of Pines and Tecam, a Wood not subiect to rottennesse. A Countrey rich in Mines of Iron, Lead, Steele, Brasse, Siluer, Gold and Rubies, Springs and Riuers, Indian Palmes, and Sugar-Canes. The Forrests had Buffolos, Harts, Boares, wild: the Hauen open at all times of the yeere, and not choaked with sand, as vsually in the Indian Winter. The Citie stands in 16. degrees: of great trading, a temperate ayre (the Megrim is vnknowne nor Physicions.) The King *Bannalains* ninetie nine yeeres of age, who with his Heire apparant were chased out of the Kingdome, and hid themselues in the Forrests, as before that time aboue two hundred thousand of their Subiects had done, onely three thousand staying with the King.

Thus haue you heard of the power and subuersion of this great Monarchie: so much the more lamentable, because their fall was from such a height. The Countrey is so fertile, that at what time soeuer corne be put into the ground, the payment is good with increase. I haue seene with mine eyes (saith *Cæsar Fredericke*) that they haue eaten Serpents, Scorpions, all manner of hearbs, and grasse. Such fertility, and such stomacks, as they make credible the reports of their huge Armies, so doe they make more terrible the reports of their desolations. This that I speake of their dyet, I vnderstand not of their extreamitie and famine, but ordinarily. Master *Fitch* saith the same, that they eate Roots, Hearbs, Leaues, Dogs, Cats, Rats, and Snakes; they refuse almost nothing.

§. III.

Of the Peguan Rites and Customes.

THat is aboue a hundred yeeres since *Vertomannus* was there, who in company of a Persian Merchant went to visit the King, who then had wars in Aua. They went in a Boat all of one piece of wood, fifteene or sixteene paces long. The Oares were Canes, and the Mast was one Cane as big as a Herring Barrell. The King wore as many Iewels as were worth a great Citie, which made him in the night time to shine as the Sunne. He had a sacrifice to doe to the Deuill, and the next day the Persian presented him with rich Corralls, which he tooke in so good worth, that he gaue him as many Rubies as were worth a hundred thousand Duckets. Some yeeres [d] before, *Hieronymo de Sancto Stephano* found him in the same warres with *Aua*, and saith of him, that hee had ten thousand Elephants, and bred or brought vp euery yeere fiue hundred.

[d] 1496.

The King, that liued when M. *Fitch* [e] was there, Sonne to the Conqueror, had one Wife, and three hundred Concubines: of whom hee was said to haue fourescore and ten Children. He sate in iudgement almost euery day. They vse no speech in their Sutes, but giue vp their Suppli-

[e] 1588.

M. R. Fitch, Cæs. Fred. Balby.

Supplications, written in the leaues of a tree, with the point of an yron bigger then a bodkin. These leaues are of an Ell long, and two Inches broad; they are also double. He which giueth in his Supplication standeth a little off, with a present; which, if the King graunteth his request, he accepteth, if not, he returneth with his present.

They kneele downe thrice, lifting vp their hands, and kisse the ground thrice: this they doe foure times before they come where the King sits, who speakes by an Interpreter, and not immediatly to the Suppliant, who with these Rombees (so they call these kneelings) present their gifts ouer their heads: His Guard lies prostrate to the earth.

Pegu is (or at least in a more vnhappy tenie, when they were there, was) a Citie great, strong and very faire, with walls of Stone, and great Ditches round about it, with many Crocodiles in them. There are two Townes; the old, in which the Merchants abide, and the houses are made of Canes, called *Bambos*: and the new, for the King and his Nobilitie: the Citie is so subiect to fire, that euery day Proclamation is made to take heed to their fire. The Citie is square with faire walls, hauing in each Square fiue Gates, besides many Turrets for Centinels to watch, made of wood, and gilded very faire. The Streets are strait as a line, from one Gate to another; and so broad, that ten or twelue men may ride a-front through them. On both sides at euery mans doore is set a *Coco*-tree, yeelding a faire shew and comfortable shadlow, that a man might walke in the shade all day. The houses are made of Wood, and couered with Tiles. The Kings house is in the midst, walled and ditched about: and the houses within of Wood, sumptuously wrought and guilded. And the house wherein his *Pagode* or Idoll standeth, is couered with Tiles of Siluer, and all the walls are guilded with Gold. Within the first gate of the Kings house was a large roome, on both sides whereof were houses made for the Kings Elephants. Among the rest he had foure white Elephants, a thing rare in Nature, but more precious in his estimation. For this is part of his Royall Title, *The King of the white Elephants*. And if any other hath any, he will seeke by fauour or force to haue the same, which (some c say) was the cause of the quarrell betwixt him and the King of Siam. Great seruice was done vnto them. Euery one of these white Elephants stood in an house guilded with Gold, and were fed in vessels of Siluer gilt. One of them, as he went euery day to the Riuer to bee washed, passed vnder a Canopie of Cloth of Gold or Silke, carried by sixe or eight men: as many going before playing on Drums or other Instruments. At his comming out of the Riuer, a Gentleman washed his feet in a Siluer Bason. There were of blacke Elephants nine Cubits high. The King was said to haue aboue fiue thousand Elephants of Waure. There was about a mile from Pegu, a place builded with a faire Court in it, to take wilde Elephants in a Groue: which they doe by the female Elephants, trained to this purpose, and anointed with a certaine Oyle, which causeth the wilde Elephant to follow her. When the Huntsmen haue brought the Elephant neere to the Citie, they send word thereof, and many Horse-men and Foot-men come out and cause the female to take a streight way, which leadeth to the place where she entereth, and bee after her; for it is like a Wood. When they are in, the gate is shut, and they get out the female. The wilde one seeing himselfe alone, weepeth and runneth against the walls, which are made of strong trees; some of them breake their teeth therewith. Then they pricke him with sharpe Canes, and cause him to goe into a strait house, and there fasten him with a rope, and let him fast three or foure dayes, and then bring a female to him, with meat and drinke, within few dayes taming him. When they goe into the Waures, they set a frame of wood vpon their backes (bound with great Cordes) wherein sit foure or six men, which fight with Guns, Darts, Arrowes, and other weapons. All Authors agree, that no beast commeth to neere the reason of a man as the Elephant, yea they seeme to goe before some men in conceit, haughtinesse, desire of glory, thankefulnesse, &c.

The Peguans are beardlesse: and carie pinsers about them to plucke out the hayres if any grow. They blacke their teeth, for they say a Dogge hath white teeth. The men of Pegu, Ava, Iangoma, and Brama weare balls in their yares, which they put in the skinne being cut, and weare for euery childe one; till they haue three, and may take them out at pleasure: the least as bigge as any Wall-nut: the biggest as bigge as a little Hennes Egge. They were inuented to preuent Sodomie, which they vse more then any people in the world: Abusing the Male-Sexe, causeth the women also to weare scant clothes, that as they goe, their thigh is seene bare to prouoke men to lust. Both these were ordained by a certaine Queene for those causes, and are still obserued. If the King giue any one of his Balls, it is a great Iewell accounted: they heale the place in sixe or eight dayes. The Bramans that are of the Kings bloud, pricke some part of their skinne; and put therein a blacke colour, which lasteth alway. If any Merchant resort thither, he shall haue many maydes (saith d *Linschoten*) offered him by their parents to take his choyse, and

c *Linschot.*

R. Fitch, 18. Gas. Balby, c.38. A ish. hist. ex 4. tells of taking the wilde with fighting on the tame, and weaeying them.

d *Lins. c.17.*

and hauing agreed with their parents, hee may for the time of his abode, vse her as his slaue, or his Concubine, without any discredit to her. Yea, if hee come againe, after shee is marryed, hee may, for the time her stayeth there, demaund her in like sort to his vse. And when a man marrieth, hee will request some of his friends to lye the first night with his Bride. There are also among them that sow vp the priuie part of their Daughters, leauing onely passage for Vrine; which, when they marry, passe vnder the Surgeons hand for remedie. *Gasper Balby*, and *Ger. Arthus*, tell of another custome of their Virgins, if that name may be giuen them. For, saith hee, e *Virgines in hoc regno omnino nullus reperire licet: Puelle enim omnes statim à pueritia sua medicamentum quoddam vsurpant, quo mulieribria distenduntur & aperta continentur: idque propter globulos quos in virgis viri gestant: illis enim admittendis virgines arctiores nullo modo sufficerunt.* Their money is called *Ganza*, and is made of Copper and Leade, which euery man may stampe that will. Gold and Siluer is merchandise and not money. The tides of the Sea betweene Martattan and Pegu by f *Cesar Fredricke* are reputed the greatest wonder which hee saw in his trauels; being so violent, that the ayre is filled with noyse, and the earth quaketh at the approach of this watery element, shooting the Boats that passe there with as arrowes, which at a high water they suffer not to anchor in the Channell, which would betray them to the deuouring rawes of the returning tide, but draw them toward some Banke, where they rest in the ebbe on dry land, as high vpon the Channels bottome as any house top. And if they arriue not at their certaine stations, they must backe againe whence they came, no place else being able to secure them. And when it encreaseth againe, it giueth them their calls or salutations: the first waue washeth ouer the Barke from sternne to sterne: the second, is not so furious: the third, raiseth the Anchor. In Negrais in Pegu g diuers people dwell in Boates, which they call *Parees*; the Countrey being full of Riuers, in which they goe to and fro with their Families: as strange is the dwelling here on the Land; their houses being set on high posts, and their going vp on Ladders for feare of Tygres. From hence to Pegu is tenne (as is said before) or eleuen dayes iourney by the Riuers, as before is expressed, where their Markets are (as their dwellings) vpon the water in Boates, with a great *Sombrero*, like a Cart-wheele, to keepe off the Sunne made of Coco-Leaues. They vse in riding to carry bits in their mouthes, which make them swell: and puffing cheekes. The husbands buy their wiues, and if they mislike, put them away. And if the wiues Parents will take away their daughters, they must restore that which was giuen in price for her. If a man dies without children, the King is his Heire. And if hee hath children, the King hath a third, they the rest. They vse to carrie men somewhat after the fashion of Congo, in a kind of Couerlet of Cotton, called Delingo of diuers colours, made commodiously to keepe off the Sunne, and Raine, and easie to lie on as a bed, carried by foure men, which alway runne from morning to night, resting onely once in the day. The wife, children and slaues of the Debtor are bound to the Creditor: who may carry the Debtor to his house, and shut him vp, or else sell the wife, children and slaues. The Noble and Ignoble obserue one fashion of attire, differing in the finenesse of the matter, which commonly is bombast. One piece for a shirt, another large and painted, tied vp betweene the legges; On their heads a kind of Mitre, of the same, and some like a Hiue: they goe bare-foot, but the Nobles vsually are carried in Delingos, or on Horse-backe. The women weare a smocke to the girdle, from thence a strait cloth, of purpose to shew that they are Women, in sort before related. They goe bare-foote, their armes laden with Hoopes of Gold and Iewels, and their fingers full of precious Rings, with their haire rolled vp about their heads. Many weare a cloth about their shoulders in stead of a Cloake. In Pegu they vse much Opium. Aracan is mid-way betweene Bengala and Pegu, on the Coast. Hee is able (saith *Fredericke*) to arme many Austs by Sea, and by Land hath certaine Sluces, with the which, if the King of Pegu his greatest enemy, assaulted his Countrey, hee could at pleasure couer a great part with waters. In Pegu they haue a custome of buying and selling by Brokers, which vndertake for the performance on both sides. Also that others standing by may know what is bidden for commodities, they haue their hands vnder a cloth, and by touching the fingers, and nipping the ioynts (each finger and ioynt hauing his proper signification) they make vp their bargaines.

Arthus.
e *Bass. Indiæ Orient. p. 313.*
& Balby e. 37.
f *Ces. Fred.*
so Balby also.
g *R. Fitch.*
G. Balby.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of the Religion in Pegu, and the Countreys sometime subiect thereto.

THeir *Varellaes* or Idol-Temples in the Kingdome of Pegu are many. [a] They are made round like a Sugar-Loafe, or a Bell: some are as high as a Church, or a reasonable Steeple, very broad beneath: some a quarter of a mile in compasse: in the making of them, they consume many Sugar-Canes, with which they couer them from the top to the bottome. Within, they be all earth, done about with stone. They spend thereon much gold, for they be all gilded aloft, and many of them from the top to the bottome: and euery ten or twelue yeeres, they must bee new gilded, because the Raine consumeth off the gold, for they stand open abroad. Were it not for this vaine custome, gold would there be good cheape. About two dayes iourney from Pegu, there is a *Varelle*, [b] or *Pagode*, which is the Pilgrimage of the Pegues. It is called *Dogonne*, and is of wonderfull bignesse, and all gilded from the foot to the top. This house is fifty fiue paces in length, and hath in it three Iles or Walks, and forty great Pillars gilded, which stand betweene them. It is gilded with gold within and without. There are houses very faire round about for the Pilgrims to lie in; and many goodly houses for the Tallipoys to preach in, which are full of Images, both of men and women all ouer gilded: I suppose it the fairest place in the world. It standeth very high, and there are foure wayes to it, which all along are set with Trees of Fruits in such wise, that a man may goe in the shade aboue two miles in length. And when their Feast-day is, a man can hardly passe by Water, or by Land, for the great preasse of people, which resort thither from all places of the Kingdome. There are on the shoares of Dogon two Statues, which from the head downward represent young men, but haue the faces of Deuils, and two wings on their backes. In Pegu there is *Varelle*, or Temple, like to this, which the King frequented to doe his Holies therein, mounting vp staires, at the foot whereof were two Tygers, gaping wide, seeming as if they had beene aliue. Besides the many Magazins (or Treasuries full of Treasure) which the late Braman King had, hee had neere vnto the Palace a Court walled with stone, the gates whereof were open euery day. Within this Court are foure gilded Houses, couered with Lead; and in euery of them certaine Idols of great value. In the first house was a great Statue of Gold, and on his head a Crowne of Gold, beset with rare Rubies and Saphires, and about him foure little children of Gold. In the second House is another of Siluer, as high as an House, set as it were sitting on heapes of money, crowned, his foot is as long as a man. In the third house there is the like Idoll of Brasse: and in the fourth, of *Ganza* (which is their Mony-mettall, tempered of Lead and Copper.) In another Court, not farre from this, stand foure other Colosses, or huge Images of Copper, in Houses gilded faire, as they are themselues, saue the head. *Balby* [c] tells of fiue made of *Ganza*, so monstrous, that the toes of their feet were as big as a man, and sitting crosse-legged, were yet as high as one could hurle a stone, and were all gilded. *Fernandez* [d] relateth of threescore and seuen Images of Gold, richly adorned with Iewels, and three hundred threescore and sixe *Combalengas*, or Gourds of Gold, molten by the Kings Father, each weighing a hundred & fourescore pound, besides his other Treasures; to conceale which, he slew two hundred Eunuchs his attendants.

Their Tallipoys, [e] before they take Orders, go to Schoole till they be twentie yeeres old, or moreover they come before a Tallipoy, appointed for that purpose, whom they call *Rowli*. Hee (as chiefe and most learned) examineth them many times, Whether they will leaue their Friends, and the company of all Women, and take vpon them the habite of a Tallipoy. If hee be content, then hee rideth vpon an Horse about the streets, very richly apparrelled, with Drums and Pipes, to shew, that hee leaueth the riches of the World to bee a Tallipoy. In few dayes after, he is carried vpon a Thing like an Horse-litter, which they call a *Serion*, vpon ten or twelue mens shoulders, in apparell of a Tallipoy, with Pipes and Drums, and many Tallipoys with him, and all his friends; which accompany him to his House, standing without the Towne, and there leaue him. Euery one of them hath his House (which is very little) set vpon sixe or eight Posts, to which they ascend on a Ladder, of twelue or fourteene steps. These Houses are commonly by the High-wayes side, and among the Trees, and in the Woods. They goe strangely apparrelled, with one *Camboline*, or thin Cloth, next to their bodie, of a browne colour; another of yellow, doubled many times vpon their shoulders. These two bee girded to them with a broad Girdle; and they haue a Skin of Leather hanging on a string about their necks, whereon they sit, bare-headed and bare-footed, with their right armes bare, and a broad *Sombrero*, or shadow, in their hands, to defend them in

[a] *R. Fitch. Cas. Frederike.*

[b] *Gas. Balby* saith that many of these *Varelles* were burned, together with four thousand houses in Pegu, by negligence of a Portugall Mariner.

[c] *Balby p. 38.*

[d] *Fernandez Epist.*

[e] *R. Fitch.*

Summer from the Sunne, and in Winter from the raine. They are shauen on their heads, beards[f], and all their bodies. They obserue perpetuall Chastitie, and are modest in their going. When one of them dies, his body is kept many dayes with Feasts, and after is set on a high Scaffold, many Tallapoys feasting about it. Thus it is carried to the place of burning, by a great number of people, where it is consumed with sweet Woods to the bones, these buried neere their Houses, and the ashes cast into the water. *Balby* resembles them in Habite and Ceremonies to their Friers.

f *Balby c.37.*

They goe with a great Pot made of Wood or fine Earth, and couered, tyed with a broad Girdle vpon their shoulders, which commeth vnder their arme; wherewith they goe to beg their Victuals which they eate, which is Rice, Fish, and Hearbs. They demand nothing; but come to the doore, and the people presently doe giue them one thing or other; which they put together in their Pot. They keepe their Feasts by the Moone; and at a new Moone is their most solemne Feast: and then the people send Rice and other things to that *Kiack*, or Church, of which they be; and there all the Tallipoys of that Church meet, and eate that which is sent them. They Preach against all abuses, and many resort vnto them. When they enter into their *Kiack*, at the doore their is a great Iatre of Water, with a Cocke or a Ladle in it, and there they wash their feet, and then enter in, lifting vp their hands to their heads, first to their Preacher, & then to the Sun, and so sit downe. When the Tallipoys preach, many of the people carry them gifts vnto the Pulpit, where they sit and preach. And there is one that sitteth by them, to take that which the people bring, which is diuided among them. They haue none other Ceremonies nor Seruice that I could see, but onely Preaching.

Bomferrus a Franciscan, and after him *Boterus*, say, That they hold an innumerable multitude of Worlds, from all eternitie succeeding one after another; and also an innumerable number of Gods, but not all at once. They imagine, that fiue haue gouerned this present World, whereof foure are passed aboue 2090. yeeres agoe. Now they are without a God, and expect the fifth many Ages hereafter: after whose death, they conceiue, that the World shall perish by fire, and then another World shall follow, and others Gods to rule it. They reckon likewise in the number of their Gods certaine Men, which yet haue first passed into Fishes, Beasts, and Birds, of all sorts. After death they beleeue three Places; one of Pleasure, *Scuum*, (like the Mahumetane Paradise;) another of Torment, *Naxac*; the third of Annihilation, which they call *Niba*. The Soules, after their phantasie, abide in the two former places, whence they returne so often into this life, till at last they be holden worthy that *Niba*. Hee addeth, that they haue Couents or Colledges of Priests, which liue three hundred together, or more, in one place, haue no vse of Women, are harbourers of Strangers, and liue some of Almes, some of Rents. They haue like Nunneries also for the Women. There is supposed to be in one Idol-Sanctuary (whereof they haue many) 120000. Idols. They fast thirtie dayes in the yeere; in which they eat nothing till night. They are of opinion, That he which in this world robbeth another man, shall in the next world bee his seruant for recompence. They hold it a sin also to kill a liuing creature, although this be not strictly obserued amongst them. Some Iewes are of opinion, That this people descended of those Israelites which *Salomon* sent to Ophir, which they place in this Kingdome. [g] But the Peguans themselues ascribe their Religion to a Dog, and a China woman, which escaped shipwracke.

G. B. B. L. *part.3. Arthus. p.329.*

g *Pars.1.l.2.*

The Deuill is highly worshipped of these Peguians, [h] to whom they erect a stately Altar, and adome it with varietie of Flowers, and Meates of all sorts, so to see and feede him, that hee should not hurt them. This is principally done when they are sicke: for then they make Vowes, and build Altars, which they couer with Clothes and Flowers. They entertaine him also with diuersitie of Musicke, and appoint him a Priest, whom they call the *Deuils Father*, which procureth his Rites and Musicke. Some, as soone as they rise from their beds, bring a basket of Rice, and meates, and a burning Torch in their hands, running vp and downe in the streets, openly professing to feede the Deuill to preuent harme from them that day. And if Dogs follow them, they hold them to be sent of the Deuill, to deuoure those meates in his name. Some will not eate till they haue first cast something behinde their backes to the Deuill. And in the Country Villages some of the richer inhabitants leaue their houses furnished with store of food three moneths space to bee inhabited of him, keeping meane while in the fields: that so the other nine moneths they may bee out of his danger. And howsoeuer the Tallipoys preach against this deuillish deuotion, yet they cannot reclaim the people. The Tallipoys euery Munday, arise early, and by the ringing of a Bason call together the people to their Sermons, which are of Iustice to man, but nothing of Religion to God. They wash themselues once a yeere, [i] and the water wherewith they are washed, the people account holy, and reserue it for their drinke, as a holy potion. They hold that all which doe well, of whatsoeuer Religion, shall be saued, and therefore care not, as *Balby* affirmeth, if any of their Nation turne Christian.

h *Gaspar Balby. Got. Arthus. Hist. ind. p.321.*

i *G Balby.c.37.*

They

They haue many Feasts very solemnly obserued. [k] One Feast (called *Sapan Giachie*) is kept twelue leagues from the Citie; whither the King rides in a triumphall Chariot, with his Queene in exceeding pompe (so adorned with Iewels, that the eye cannot endure their shining) his Nobles attending. Another [l] is kept in Pegu, against which day all the Courtiers prouide them certaine Pillars or Images of diuers formes, kept closely, that none may see what others haue prouided, till the Day. These are made of Indian Reedes, carued and gilded, and on the Festiuall presented to the King, who praiseth the most artificiall of them. All that night huge lights of Wax [m] are burnt in honor of their Idoll, whose Feast it is, that all may see to haue access to him; to which end the Citie gates are left open. But none may approach vnto him emptie-handed. They haue [m] a Feast of Watering celebrated in the old Citie, where the King, Queene, and his Children, with Rose-water sprinkle one another. And all the Captaines likewise besprinkle each other, that they seeme as wet as if they came out of a Riuer. It is said of the last King's Father, that when the people were thus washing, he would send amongst them an Elephant, which slew many of them, whereat he laughed; the people lamented. Another Feast [n] they haue, wherein they haue a triall of their Ships, which can saile best: this Feast lasteth a moneth. A fifth Feast [o] is called *Gratnosegienon*, in honor of a certaine Idoll. They haue many other Feasts, but these the most solemne. *Antony Correa* a Portugall, concluding a league with the King of Pegu, the Kings Deputie, caused the Articles of accord, written in Portugall and Pegu-languages with golden Letters, to bee read aloud, and then rent the scrole, and with a few leaues of an odoriferous tree, caused the same to bee burned to ashes, vpon which hee laid both hands of the Priest, who in the Name of the King, sware to those Articles. These things being done with great attention and silence, *Correa*, both in a superstitious fancie, to defile Holy Writ, with confirmation of an Oath to a Gentile, sware on a Booke of amarous Sonnets to keepe inuiolable the said Articles.

In the yeere of our Lord 1585. the King of Aua rebelling (as is before shewed) the King of Pegu, by single combate, slew the Traytor. The fight was on Elephants: in which, the Pegusians Elephant, and the Auan Prince, died. The liuing Elephant was preferred to the place of the former; but in fifteene dayes space (let the beastlinesse of Men imitate the humanitie of a beast) he sorrowed so [p] for his Master, that nothing might comfort him. And although hee had continually two seruants attending him, and telling him of his amended estate vnder a mightier Master, yet would he scarce cease to weepe, or begin to eate, till his fifteene dayes exequies were finished.

Bomferrier, a Franciscan, spent three yeeres in learning the Pegu's Language, and Mysteries, that hee might preach the Christian Religion amongst them; but was soone forced to giue ouer, and returne into India: For they could not endure to heare any better Knowledge then they had. This was *Anno* 1557.

Crocodiles and Apes [q] ate accounted holy and sacred creatures: for which cause, Apes multiply exceedingly; none taking them, except for the vse of their *Vareller*, or Temples, where they tye them, and keepe them with diligent respect. And though the Crocodiles in the Towne ditch deuoure men daily, yet in a blind zeale they will drinke no other water, accounting this holy, and account their foules certainly sued; whose bodies are thus certainly lost and deuoured of those Beasts, which sometimes are thirtie foot in length; one of which, *Balby* saw draw in a woman; and not a day, but some were said to be deuoured, till the King caused one of those, which was obserued to be most manslaying, to be slaine.

The Kings, subiect to the King of Pegu, did their homage, and presented themselues before him, kneeling; yea, they not only kneeled to him, but to his white Elephants also. When the King dyeth, they make two Ships, with golden couers, and betwixt them erect a golden Theatre; in which they place the corpse, applying thereto Musk, and the most sweet Woods, with other things; and so set forth the same to Sea, setting that Theatre or Pageant on fire. In one of the Ships [r] Tallapois, which sing till they rinke the bodie to bee consumed to ashes. Then doe they make a masse or lumpe of these ashes and milke, and commit the same to Sea in the Hauen of Sirian, at an ebbing water: The bones which remaine, they carrie to another place, and there erecting a Chappell, doe burie the same therein. After this, they returne to the Palace, and, according to the accustomed Rites, inaugurate the new King. The father of that King (whose Tragedie yee haue heard) had his bones buried in Dogon.

In Iamahey, or Iangoma, (fiue and twentie dayes iourney from Pegu) when the people be sicke, they make a vow, to offer meat vnto the Deuill, if they escape; and when they be recouered, they make a Banquet, with many Pipes and Drummes, and many other Instruments, and dancing all the night. Their friends bring them presents, *Cocos*, Figges, *Arrecaes*, and other Fruits; and with great dancing and reioycing, they offer to the Deuill, and say, They giue the Deuill to eate, and driue him out; and to this end, in their dancing, they crie and hallow very loud. Likewise, when they be sicke, a Tallipoy, or two, euery night doth sit by them,

k *Sapan Giachie.*

l *Sapan Catena.*

m *Sapan Daicke.*

n *Sapan Donzo.*

o *Sapan Giainosegienon.*

p *Gasper Balby* was there with other Merchants, which saw him weeping.

q *G. Balby.*

them, and sing, to please the Deuill; that hee should not hurt them. When one is dead, hee is carryed vpon a great Frame (as is said before of the Tallipoys) made like a Tower, with a couering all gilded, made of Canes, carried by fourteene or sixteene men, with great Minstrelsie, to a place out of the Towne, and there is burned. He is accompanied with all his friends and neighbours, all Men: and they giue to the Tallipoys, or Priests, many Mantes and Cloth; and then returne to the house, where they feast it two dayes: which being expired, the Women accompanie the wife to the place where hee was burned, and there spend a while in mourning: Then doe they gather the pieces of bones, which beeseft vnburned, and burie them, and then returne to their houses. The neere of kindred doe also shaue their heads, both men and women.

CHAP. VI.

Of Bengala, and the parts adioyning: and of the holy Riuer Ganges.

§. I.

Of Bengala.

THE Kingdome of Bengala [a] is very large, and hath of Coast one hundred and twentie leagues, and as much within Land. *Francis Fernandes* measureth it from the Confines of the Kingdome of Ramu or Porto Grande to Palmerine, ninetie miles beyond Porto Pequene, in all six hundred miles long. The Riuer Chaberis (which some call Guenga, and thinke to bee the ancient Ganges) watereth it: it is plentifull in Rice, Wheat, Sugar, Ginger, Long-pepper, Cotton and Silke; and enioyeth a very wholsome ayre. The Inhabitants neere the shoare, are (for the most part) Mahometans, and so also was the King, before the Great *Mogore* (one likewise of his owne Sect) conquered Him. Gouro the seat Royall, and Bengala are faire Cities. Of this, the Gulfe, sometimes called *Gangeticus*, now beareth name *Golfo di Bengala*. Chatigan is also reckoned amongst their Cities. They are [b] a most subtile and wicked people, and are esteemed the worst slaues of all India: for that they are all Theeues; and the Women, Whores; although this fault is common through all India, no place excepted. They haue a custome, neuer to dresse or seeth meat twice in one pot, but haue euerie time a new one. Whensoeuer they are found in Adulterie, they haue their [c] Noses cut off, and are thence forwards narrowly looked to, that they keepe not each others company. The Portugalls haue here *Porto Grande*, and *Porto Pequino*, but without Forts and Gouernment; euery man liuing after his owne lust: and for the most part, they are fuls as dare not stay in their places of better Gouernment, for some wickednesse by them committed.

In Bengala are found great numbers of *Abdas* or *Rhinocerotes*, whose horne (growing vp from his snowt) Teeth, Flesh, Blood, Claws, and whatsoeuer he hath without and within his bodie, is good against poyson, and is much accounted of throughout all India. The skinne vpon [d] the vpper part of this Beast, is all wrinkled, as if hee were armed with shields. It is a great enemy of the Elephant. Some thinke that this is the right Vnicorne, because as yet there is no other by late Trauellers found, but onely by heare-say. Onely *Lodouicus Vertomannus* [e] saith, he saw a couple of those other Vnicornes at Mecca; one whereof had a horne of three Cubits, being of the bignesse of a Colt of two yeeres and a halfe old; the other was much lesse: both sent to the Sultan of Mecca, for a rare present out of Æthiopia. *Gesner* in his Booke of Foure-footed Beasts, citeth this testimony, and some others, whereby he perswadeth, that there are diuers sorts of these Vnicornes: but it cannot seeme otherwise then strange, that in this last hundred of yeeres, wherein the World hath vn-veyled her face more then euer before; none of credit (that I haue heard) hath affirmed himselfe to haue seene this Vnicorne, but in picture. And in picture they haue larely abused *M. T. Coryate*, who writing that he saw Vnicornes at the Mogors or Mogols Court (which, as some that were there, told me, were Rhinocerotes) they haue published the same with picture of the Painters Vnicorne, with a long horne out of his forehead, whereas this groweth out of the middle of the Nose, and is but short, the length of a mans hand being a large Hornes measure. That which is reported of their vertue against poyson, proceedeth from the hearbs which Bengala yeeldeth: for in other places they are not neer the price of these. There are here also certain wild goats, whose hornes are in account against venome: as I my selfe (saith *Linschoten*) haue proued.

The

a *Magin. Geo. Bat. Ben. Gast. Atribus hist. Ind. Orient. pag. 282.*

b *Linschot. c. 26*

c Adulterie punished.

d *Linschot. c. 47*

e *Lud. Vert. lib. 1. cap. 19. Gesnerus de Quadrup. Scal. Exerc. 205.*

The Kings [f] of Bengala, in times past, were chosen of the Abassine or Æthiopian stiues, as the Soldans of Cairo were sometime of the Circassian Mamalukes. Northward from Bengala lyeth the Kingdome of Arracan, before mentioned. The great *Can* subdued these parts and the Kingdome of Mien, about the yere 1272. while *Marcus Paulus* listed there. Arracan, Chandican, and Siripur are by *Fernandez* placed in Bengala, as so many Kingdomes: Patane or Patenau by *Fredericke* and *Fitch* reckoned to another Bengalan Kingdome; which our Country-man Master *Fitch*, calleth the Kingdome of Gouren: so that vnder this name, Bengala, are comprehended many Seignioties; all, or the most part now subiect to the *Mogor*.

f *G. Bot. Ber.*

§. II.

Of Ganges, and the Superstitions there obserued.

VR Maps seeme not to describe the Riuer Ganges (so will wee here terme it with *Ortelius*, *Castaldus*, *Barrius*, and all our later Trauellers, both Merchants and Iesuites) according to the due course thereof. For Chaberis they bring from the North, enclining to the East, Guenga from the West; but Master *Fitch*, which continued fiue months in passing downe first in Iamena from Agra, which falleth into Ganges, and then in Ganges it selfe to Bengala (although he confesseth it may be done in shorter time) saith, it commeth from the North-west, and runneth East into the Sea. Some call Chaberis, Ganges; and some hold Guenga to be Ganges; and some make but one Riuer of them both: and hence may happily arise in part, that seeking of Ganges so farre off. Both Ganga and Ganges are in sacred account (saith [g] *Barros*) and therefore the Mahometan Kings, will not suffer the superstitious washing of the Ethnikes therein without a Custome or Imposition.

g *Bar. Dec. 1. l. 9. c. 1.*

There is in Ganges [h] a place called *Gongasagie*, that is, the entrie of the Sea, in which are many Fishes called Sea-Dogs. They which are weary of this World, and desire to haue a quicke passage to Paradise, cast in themselues here to bee deuoured of these Fishes; perswading themselues, that the next and readie it way thither, is by their iawes.

h *Bally, cap. 42.*

Ganges [i] ouerflowing his bankes, in times past drowned many Villages, which so remaine; and hath changed his wonted channell: the cause that Tanda (a Citie of trafficke, where the people goe naked to the waste) standeth now a league from the Riuer. It waereth a fruitfull Countrey and populous, and (as the Oceans high Collector) receiueth into him many Riuers by the way, some no lesse then it selfe, so that in the time of raine you cannot see from the one side of Ganges to the other. The superstitious opinion conceiued, in those parts, of this Riuer, appeareth by the reports of all. [k] *Emanuel Pinner* at Cambaia obserued many to resort thither on Pilgrimage, sometime out of that Citie foure thousand; and was told by the Gouernour of Bengala, vnder the *Mogor* then at Lahor, that there came thither sometime three hundred thousand, or foure hundred thousand Pilgrims. And adderh, That not long before his comming to Cambaia there assembled there, to this deuout iourney, fiftie thousand people. Happy they esteeme that man which washeth himselfe therein, and secure of saluation, if at the point of death hee may drinke of this water. Hee conferred with one *Gedachum*, a great man, which had been on this holy voyage, and had there weighed his Mother three times; first, by her weight in Siluer; secondly, in Gold; thirdly, in Pearles, all which he gaue to the poore. A brother of his, called *Ram*, being to goe to the great *Mogor*, offered one hundred and fiftie thousand [l] *Pardaos*, that his [m] *Pagods* or Idols should send him good successe. They make an Image also to this Riuer, whereunto they doe diuine honor. The King of Calecut, and the other Kings of Malabar keepe a solemne feast euery twelue yeeres, in honor of this Riuer; because that long since a certaine *Brachmane* (falsly accused) fled vnto Ganges, & there led an austere life twelue yeeres, worshipping that Streame and his Idoll, to whom, when hee purposed to returne home, after those twelue yeeres expired, that Image of Ganges appeared, and said, That on the last day of *February* he would appeare in a Riuer of his owne Countrey, and cause the Waters thereof to arise, and run backward in witnesse of his innocencie, and bade him assemble all the Lords of Malabar to the sight, which accordingly came to passe, and the memorie thereof is by this Feast solemnized.

i *R. Fitch.*

k *Hier. Xau. Eman. Pin.*

l *Pardaos* is three Testons Portugall.

m *N. Pimenta.*

Bannaras [n] is a great Towne on Ganges, to which the Gentiles out of farre Countries come on Pilgrimage. The men are shauen all but the crowne. Alongst the water-side are many faire Houses, in which stand Images of euill fauor, made of stone, and wood, like Leopards, Lyons, Monkeys, Men, Women, Peacocks, and Deuils, with foure armes and hands, sitting close-legged, and holding somewhat in their hands. There are diuers old men, which on places of earth, made for that purpose, sit praying, and they giue the people (which by breake

n *R. Fitch.*

breake of day, and before, come out of the Towne, to wash themselues in Ganges) three or foure strawes which they take, and hold them between their fingers where they wash themselues: and some fit to marke them in the foreheads, and they haue in a cloth a little Rice, Barley, or Money, which they giue to these old men. After that, they goe to diuers of their Images, and giue them of their sacrifices, those old men in the meane while praying; which maketh all holy. They haue one Idoll called *Ada*, with foure hands and clawes. On certaine great carued stones also they powre Water, Rice, Wheat, &c. They haue a great place like a Well, with steps to goe downe, wherein the water standeth foule, and stinketh, by reason of those many flowers, which they continually throw there into. Many people are alwayes therein, with imagination of pardon for their sinnes, because GOD (as they blaspheme) washed himselfe therein. They gather vp the Sand in the bottome, as a holy Relike. They pray not but in the water, and wash themselues ouer-head, lading vp water with both their hands, and turne themselues about, and then drinke a little of the water three times, after which they go to their gods in their houses. Some of them will wash a place which is their length, and then pray vpon the earth, with their armes and legs at length out, and will rise vp and lye downe, and kisse the ground twentie or thirtie times, but wil not stirre their right foot. Some vse fifteene or sixteene Pots, little and great, ringing a Bell, while they make their mixtures, ten or twelue times; and make a circle of water about their Pots, and pray: others sitting by, one of which reacheth them their Pots. They say ouer these Pots diuers things 20 many times, which done, they goe to their gods and strew their Sacrifices, which they thinke are very holy, and marke many of them, which sit by, in their foreheads, esteemed as a great gift. There come fiftie, and sometime an hundred together, to this Well, and to these Idols.

About their Idols, in some houses, sitteth one in warme weather, to blow the winde with a Fan vpon them. And when they see any company comming, they ring a little Bell, and many giue them their almes. None of these Idols haue a good face. Some are blacke, and haue clawes of brasse; and some ride on Peacocks or other Fowles. One there is alwayes attended with his Fan, to make winde, which (they say) giueth them all things, both food and rayment. Here some are burned to ashes, some scorched in the fire, and throwne into the water, when they are dead: the Foxes presently eat them. The Wiues doe burne with their 30 Husband when they dye: if they will not, their heads are shauen, and neuer any account is made of them after. If a Man or Woman be sicke, and like to die, they will lay him before their Idols all night: and that shall mend or end him. And if hee doe not mend, that night his friends will come and fit a little with him, and crie, and after will carrie him to the water side, and set him vpon a little raft made of reeds, and so let him goe downe the Riuer. The chiefe Idols are very euill-fauoured, their mouthes monstrous, their eares gilded, and full of Iewels, their teeth and eyes of gold, siluer, glasse, coloured blacke, with Lampes continually burning before them. Into their Houses or Temples you may not enter, with your shoogs on. When the scorched Indians are throwne into Ganges, the Men swim with their faces downwards, the Women with their faces vpwards; which I had thought they had by some meanes 40 caused but they denied it. The people goe all naked, with a little cloth about their middle. Their Women are exceedingly on their necks, armes, and eares, decked with Rings of Siluer, Copper, Tinne, and Iuorie hoopes: they are marked with a great spot of red in their foreheads, and a stroke of red vp to the crowne, and so it runneth three wayes. Their marriages are in this sort: The Man and the Woman come to the water-side, where standeth a *Bramane* or Priest, with a Cow and a Calfe, or a Cow with Calfe: these all goe into the Water together, the *Bramane* holding a white cloth of foure yards long, and a basket crosse bound with diuers things in it. This cloth he layeth vpon the backe of the Cow. And then he taketh the Cow by the tayle, and saith certaine words. Shee hath a Copper or a Brasse pot full of water. The man holdeth his hand by the Bramans hand, and the wiues hand by her husbands, 50 and all haue the Cow by the tayle. Then they powre water out of the pot vpon the Cowes taile, which runneth thorow all their hands, and they lade vp water with their hands, and then the Brachmane tyeth their clothes together. After this, they goe round about the Cow and Calfe, and giue somewhat to the poore there attending, leauing the Cow and Calfe for the Bramans vse, and offer to diuers of their Idols money: then lying downe vpon the ground, they kisse it diuers times, and go their way. Betweene this and Patanaw are diuers Theeues, like the Arabians, without certaine abode.

The manner of their Marriages.

60

§. III.

§. III.

Of Patane, Couche, Orixa, Botanter, Candecan.

PAtane or Patanaw is a great Towne and long, with large ſtreets, ſimple houſes of earth, couered with thatch, the people tall and ſlender, many old; ſometimes a Kingdome, now ſubiect to the Mogor. They haue gold, which (as in America) they dig out of the Pits, and waſh the Earth in great Bolls. The Women here are
10 ſo decked with Siluer and Copper, that it is ſtrange to ſee, and by reaſon of ſuch Rings vpon their Toes, they can weare no ſhoes. Here I ſaw a diſſembling Prophet, which ſate vpon an Horſe in the Market-place, and made as though hee ſlept, and many of the people came and touched his feet with their hands, and then kiſſed their hands. They tooke him for a Great Man, but I ſaw he was a lazie Lubber: and there I left him ſleeping. The people here, are great Praters and Diſſemblers. As I came from Agra downe the Riuer Iemena, I ſaw alſo many naked Beggars, of which the people make great account; they call them *Scheſche*. Here I ſaw one, which was a monſter among the reſt, wearing nothing on him, with a long beard, the hayre of his head couering his priuities. The nayles of ſome of his fingers were two Inches long: for he would cut nothing from him *. Neither would he ſpeake, but was accom-
20 panied with eight or ten which ſpake for him. When any man ſpake to him, hee would lay his hand vpon his breſt, and bow himſelfe, but ſpeake he would not to the King. The King of Patanaw was Lord of the greateſt part of Bengala, vntill the Mogoll ſlue their laſt King. After which twelue of them ioyned in a kinde of Ariſtocratie and vanquiſhed the Mogolls (it ſeemes this was in the time of *Emmaupaxda*) and ſtill notwithſtanding the Mogolls Greatneſſe, are great Lords; ſpecially he of Siripur, and of Ciandecan, and aboue all *Maafudalim*. Nine of them are Mahumetans. Thus *Fernandes*. Theſe Pataneans ſeeme by the Ieſuites report to come of the Tartars.

* A right niggard.

In thoſe parts they had many ſtrange Ceremonies. Their Bramans or Prieſts come to the Water, and haue a ſtring about their necks made with great Ceremonies, and lade vp Water
30 with both their hands, and turne the ſtring firſt with their armes within, and then one arme after the other out. Here alſo about Iemena, the Gentiles will eate no fleſh, nor kill any thing. They pray in the Water naked, and dreſſe their meate and eate it naked: and for their penance they lye flat vpon the earth, and riſe vp and turne themſelues about thirtie or fortie times, and vſe to heaue vp their hands to the Sunne, and to kiſſe the earth, with their armes and legs ſtretched out along, their right leg being alwayes before the left. Euery time they lye downe, they ſcore it with their fingers, to know when their ſtint is ended. The Bramans marke themſelues in their foreheads, eares, and throats, with a kinde of yellow geare which they grinde; euery morning they doe it. And they haue ſome old men which goe in the ſtreets with a boxe of yellow powder, and marke them which they meet on their heads
40 and necks. And their Wiues doe come, ten, twentie, and thirtie together to the water-ſide, ſinging, and there doe waſh themſelues, and vſe their ceremonies, and marke themſelues on the fore-heads and faces, and carry ſome with them, and ſo depart ſinging. Their Daughters bee marryed, at, or before the age of ten yeeres. The men may haue ſeuen wiues. They are a craftie People, worſe then the Iewes. The way from Bannaras to Patanaw is a faire and fertile Countrey, beautified with many faire Townes.

I went P from Bengala into the Countrey of Couche, which lieth fiue and twentie dayes iourney Northwards from Tanda. The King was a Gentile, named *Sucksel Counſe*: his Countrey is great, and lyeth nor farre from Cauchin-China. All the Countrey is ſet with Canes made ſharpe at both ends, and driuen into the Earth; and they can let in the water, and
50 drowne the Countrey knee-deepe. In time of Warre they poyſon all the waters. The people haue eares which be marueilous great, of a ſpan long, which they draw out in length by deuices when they bee young. They are all Gentiles, and will kill nothing. They haue Hoſpitalls for Sheepe, Dogs, Goats, Cats, Birds, and all other liuing Creatures. When they be old and lame, they keepe them till they dye. If a man catch or buy any quick thing in other places, and bring it thither, they will giue him money for it, or other victuals, and keepe it in their Hoſpitals, or let it go. They will giue meat to the Ants. Their ſmall money is Almonds, which oftentimes they eat. We paſſed thorow the Country of Gouren, where we found but few villages, and almoſt all Wildernesse (for wee choſe this Deſart way for feare of theeues) and ſaw many Buffes, Swine, and Deere; graſſe longer then a man, and very many Tygres.

p R. Fitch.

60 Orixa is the next Countrey, which hath beene a Kingdome, but conquered by the King of Patanaw, and both ſince, by *Echebar*. Orixa ſtands ſixe dayes South weſt from Satagan. There is much Rice, cloth of Cotton, and cloth made of graſſe, called Yerua like ſilke. (They

speake

speake of the like in Virginia.) Through this Kingdome (*Fredericke* writes) a man might haue gone with Gold in his hand without danger, while the old King reigned, who so befriended Merchants that he tooke no custome of them. And there were laden in the Port of Orisa yeerely, fiue and twentie or thirtie Ships, with Rice, Lacca, long Pepper, Ginger, Mirabolins, and the Yerua aforesaid, made of an herbe growing in the Woods wild, then gathered when the boll is growne round, as bigge as an Orange. In the Hauen of Angeli are yeerely many Ships laden with many kindes of commodities. Satagam is a faire Citie (for a Citie of Moores) and very plentifull, sometime subiect to Pataiaw. In Bengala such is the estimation of Ganges, that they will fetch of it a great way off, though they haue good water neere: and if they haue not sufficient to drinke, they will sprinkle a little on them, and then they are well. From Satagam I trauelled by the Countrey of the King of Tippara, with whom the *Mogor* hath continuall warre. The *Mogores*, which be of the Kingdome of Recon and Rame, be stronger then this King of Tippara. Foure dayes iourney from Couche is Botanter, and the Citie Bottia: the King is called *Dermaine*: the People are tall and strong: the Countrey great, three moneths iourney, and hath in it high Mountaines, one of which a man may see, fixe dayes iourney off: Vpon these Mountaines are people with eares of a span long; otherwise they account them Apes. Hither resort many Merchants out of China, and Tartaria. From Chatigan in Bengala, I went to Bacola, the King whereof is a Gentile; thence to Senepare, and after, to Simergan, where they will eate no flesh, nor kill no beast; and thence to Negrais in Pegu and Colmin. Thus farre hath our Countrey-man led vs in the view of so many superstitions of these Bengalans, and their Northerly Neighbours.

p *Histor. Relatio de Rege Mogor.*

In that part of Botanter, which is next to Lahor, and the *Mogor*, the People p are white, and Gentiles. Their garments are close girt to them, that a wrinkle or pleit is not to be seene, which they neuer put off, no not when they sleepe, as long as they are able to hang on: their head attyre is like a Sugar-loafe, sharpe at the top. They neuer wash their hands, lest, say they, so pure a Creature, as the Water, should be defiled. They haue but one Wife; and when they haue two or three children, they liue as brother & sister. Widdowers and widdowes may not marry a second time. They haue no Idols, nor Townes, nor King, in those parts of Batanter. They haue their Sooth-sayers, which they aske counsell of. When any is dead, they resort vnto these Wisards, to know what is to be done with their dead. They search their Bookes; and as they say the word, they burne them, or bury them, or eate them, although they vsually feed not on mans flesh. They also vse dead mens skulls in stead of dishes, as in *Thebet*, wee haue obserued the like custome. They are liberall Almes-giuers. They liue on Weauing and making Clothes, which they sell at Calamur and Negariot in Summer, for in their Winter they cannot passe for Snowes. They are like in colour and haire to men of these parts.

q *Linschot.*

The Bengalans q haue a Tradition or Fable amongst them, That this Riuer commeth out of Paradise, which was proued by one of their Kings, who sent men vp the streame, till they came to a pleasant Ayre, still Water, and fragrant Earth, and could row no further. Hence happily grew this conceit, That this Water should wash away sinne, and that without it they cannot be saued. This Riuer hath in it Crocodiles, which by water are no lesse dangerous then the Tygres by land, and both will assault men in their Ships. There is also a little small Beast, which by his barking maketh the Tyger to run away.

r *N. Pimenta.*

The King of Candecan (which lyeth at the mouth of Ganges) r caused a Iesuite to rehearse the *Decalogue*: who when he reproued the Iudians for their polytheisme, worshipping so many *Pagodes*: I see said, That they obserued them but as, among them, their Saints were worshipped: to whom how fauoury the Iesuites distinction of λατρεία and προσκυνεῖν was for his satisfaction, I leaue to the Readers iudgement. This King, and the others of Bacala and Arracan, haue admitted the Iesuites into their Countries, and most of these Indian Nations.

§. IIIII.

Of Arracan, and the Warres betwixt them and the Portugals.

Sundiua.

BEtwixt the King of Arracan and the Portugals haue beene late warres, not vnworthy Relation, because they serue for better knowledge of all the Countries adiacent. The King of Arracan or Rachim (so *Fredericke* cals it) had giuen to *Philip de Britto* the keeping of Syrian, as before is expressed, which he fortifying, became suspicious to the King: this was one cause of war; and another the Portugals surprisall of the Ile Sundiua, fixe leagues distant from the Continent of Bengala, ouer-against Siripur. This Iland, *Fredericke* admires for the cheapnesse and plentie of necessaries, where he bought two salted Kine for a Larine, which is twelue shillings and fixe pence, very good and fat; foure

Cap. Fredericke.

wilde

wilde Hogs readie dressed at the same price ; a fat Hen for a peny (and yet the People said they paid twice the worth) & other commodities at like price. It belonged to the Kingdome of Bengala ; distant a hundred and twentie miles from Chatigan, the people Moores. It is thirtie leagues in compasse, so strong by Nature, that they may hinder any from landing. *Porto Grande.*

Two hundreth Ships are yeerely laden from hence with salt. The Mogols with the Conquest of Bengala had possessed Sundiua, Cada-ragi still continuing his Title, vnder colour whereof *Carualius* and *Matua*, two Portugals conquered it, *An.* 1602. Heereat the King of Arachan was angry, that without his leaue they had made themselues Lords of that which hee challenged to belong to his protection; fearing that by this meanes, and the fortification
10 of Sirian, he should finde the Portugals vn-neighbourly Neighbours. Hee sent therefore a Fleet of a hundred and fiftie Frigats or little [p] Galleys, with fifteene Oares on a side, and other [q] greater furnished with Ordnance : and *Cadaray* (which they say was true Lord of it) sent a hundred Cossi from Siriput to helpe Him. The Portugals preuailed and became Masters of a hundred and nine and fortie of the Enemies Vessels. [p] *Iaiee.* [q] *catures.*

In this time *Britto* had built his Fort at Sirian, and founded a Towne for the dispersed Peguans, which had here assembled to the number of 15000. The Saracens enuying hereat, proferred the King of Arracan a great reuenue to commit this Hauen to them ; *Britto* obiected, That so the Mogol would swallow all (Manasingua the Gouernour of Bengala hauing promised to King Achebar to bring Him the White Elephant in Arracan) adding great
20 gifts to the King and his Councellors. At the same time a Peguan *Bagua* (that is, a Great Man or Ruler) by the Kings Command and Letters commendatorie to *Britto* kept in Pegu ; But *Britto* fearing the Peguans would cleaue to their Countrey-man, *An.* 1603. beseageth and taketh his Fortresse, flayeth three hundred of his Companie, Captiuing nine hundred. Whereupon the Peguans which had followed him reuolted to *Britto*, *viz.* two hundred Ships [r], twentie Horses, and great store of prouision, with the Harnest which the *Bagua* had sowne, then on the ground. Hee with fifteene of his Company escaped : perhaps the same which before out of *Florus* wee haue [s] mentioned. *Britto* now grew great, and in the Portugall name made League with the Kings of Tangu, Iangoma, Siam, and Prom, for their ioynt ayde against Arracan, if he should be beseiged. He went also to Goa to acknowledge
30 fealtie to the Crowne of Portugall for the Kingdome of Pegu, whence he brought with him sixteen Gallies, and three hundred Portugals, to the defence of Sirian, with which and a hundred others of the Portugals (threescore at Sundiua, thirtie at Arracan, and ten at Chatigan) he easily thought to become Master of those Seas. A matter of great consequence, where they might haue all matter for shipping (which caused the Great Turke once to prouide here, at an easier charge carried from hence to [t] *Suez*, then from Alexandria) and here they might both build their Fleets, and be furnished of sustenance, might send at any time to all places in the South (which from Goa cannot be done but with the Monsons) and might cause that no Ship of Moores should lade Pepper, Cinamon, or other commodities at Martauan, Reitau, Iuncalao, Tanasserin, and Queda, for Surat or Mecca, but with custome to them and passe
40 from them. [r] Indian ships are generally smaller of no great force for warre, especially with such souldiers you may call them Boars. [s] *Sup. c. 3. §. 2.* [t] Sues in the bottome of the Red Sea.

The King of Arracan foreseeing such a storme, prouided a Nauie of a thousand saile, the most Frigats; some Greater, Catures and Cosses, and assailed the Portugal Fleet at Sundiua vnder *Carualius*, who had but sixteene of diuers sorts of shipping which staid by him, and yet got the victorie, neere two thousand of the Enemies being slaine, a hundred and thirtie of their Vessels burnt, with the losse but of six Portugals. Which so vexed the King of Arracan, that he put many of the Captaines in Womens habit, vpbraiding their effeminate courages, which had not brought one Portugall with them aliue or dead. Yet were the Portugall Ships so tome, that they were forced for feare of another tempest, to forsake the Iland, and to transport that which there they had to Siriput, Bacala, and Chandecan in the Continent,
50 and thus Sundiua became subiect to Arracan : *Carualius* staid at Suriput (where he had thirtie Fusts or Frigates) with *Cadary* Lord of the place, where he was suddenly assaulted with one hundred Cosses, sent by *Manasinga* Gouernor vnder the *Mogol*, who hauing subiected that Tract to his Master, sent forth this Nauie against *Cadaray*, *Mandaray* a man famous in those parts being Admiral where after a bloudie fight *Mandaray* was slain, & *Carualius* carried away the honor. From thence, recouering of a wound in the late fight, He went to Golin or Gullum, a Portugall Colony vp the streame from Porto Pequino, where hee won a Castle of the Mogors kept by foure hundred men, one of that company onely escaping. These exploits made *Carualius* his Name terrible to the Bengalans, insomuch that one of the Arracans, Commander of fiftie Arracan Ships, dreaming in the night that hee was assaulted by
60 *Carualius*, terrified his fellowes, and made them flie into the Riuer ; which when the King heard, cost him his head. *Iaiee. Iartic. l. 6. c. 33.*

But this Day had an end, and this Sun was set in a Cloud. For whiles the King of Arracan hauing

hauing lately atchieued so great matters in Pegu, and added Sunditua, and the Kingdome of Baccala, intended to annexe Chandecan to the rest of his Conquests: the King of Chandecan thought to purchase his peace with *Caruallius* his head; which hee treacherously accomplished, sending for Him, that they might ioyne together against Arracan, and watching his oportunitie, tooke Him in his Palace with others of his companie, after that inuading and spoyling his ship.

Britto remayned in his Fort at Sirian, against whom in the yeere 1604. the King of Arracan sent a fleete of fiue hundred Frigats, and fortie Caturs, vnder the conduct of his eldest sonne, with fifteene thousand men. The Portugals had eight ships well prouided, and one hundred and eightie Souldiers in the Fort. Necre to Negrais the Armadas met, the Portugall obtayning the victorie, slaying and drowning almost one thousand of the enemies. This at Sea; and waiting a better oportunitie in the Riuer, they left not one Vessell to carrie newes thereof to Arracan. The Prince with his Souldiers sought to returne by land, but Penurie pursued him, separated his companie, and betrayed Him to two hundred and fiftie Portugals and Peguans, which to these straights had added the locall straights of a certaine passage, where the Prince with some of the chiefe yeelded; redeemed at a great summe, (as before is mentioned) and couenants of Peace on both sides ratified by Oath. One of the Articles was the deliuerie of Sunditua, for the performance of which *Britto* sent his sonne *Marke* with two Captaines to take possession, which all were treacherously dispossessed of their liues, and three thousand Portugals captiued. Hee prepares for a new siege, but in the midst of these designes, that part of his Palace where the white Elephant stood, and his chiefe Oratorie were fired with lightning: which some Talipois interpreting of Diuine vengeance for breach of Oath, went to the King, and told him these things presaged further disasters. It so presaged indeed to Them, who for this presage were presently, to the number of thirtie of the chiefe of them slaine. Twelue hundred ships (so wee call them all by a generall name, though not comparable, for the most part, to our Europæan) the King of Arracan set forth in this new expedition; of which seuentie fiue were of greater burthen, each hauing twelue Peeces of Ordnance, and well furnished; the rest Fusts, or Frigats. In this Fleete were thirtie thousand Souldiers and Sea-men, Pataneans, Persians, and Malabars; of them eight thousand with Hand-gunnes, and three thousand fiue hundred greater Peeces of diuers sorts. The King himselfe, his sonne, and best Souldiers, were therein, accompanied with the King of Chocor. *Britto* sent forth that Nauie which hee had (but twelue ships in all) vnder the command of *Paulus Regius*, a famous Sea-Captaine; which meeting them at the Cape of Negrais, the Admirall of Arracan, Marucha, was with his Fust, taken and slaine: and the Night parted the Fight, or rather renewed the Fight; many of the Arracan ships mistaking and warring vpon their fellowes, to the losse of diuers ships, and (in the whole fight) of almost two thousand men. Foure dayes after, the fourth of Aprill, they encountred the second time, and the Portugall Admirall runne her selfe vpon pyles vnder the water; whence shee could not bee freed: and when another Portugall ship came to relieue them, *Rhegius* would not bee perswaded to stirre, till fire entring the Gunners roome, blew vp him and his companie, and the other Captaine, which moued him to remoue. The Portugall ships betooke them to their Fort: whither the King of Tangu had sent his sonne, with sixe hundred Horse, eighteene Elephants, and sixteene thousand Men, to besiege it. But both these and the Arracan forces doing their vtmost, in May following were forced to depart without effect, leauing the Towne and Fort in a deformed case, and most of the people wounded. Yet greater was *Arracans* losse: onely twelue greater, and two hundred and fiftie lesser of those twelue hundred ships remayning, the rest drowned, forsaken, or burnt, partly by the Portugals, partly by themselues wanting men to guide them. Most of the Ordnance they buried in the Sands. Ten thousand men they lost in the siege. The Portugals lost of their Nation (besides helpes) eightie sixe, ten Captaines, and the Admirall. The next yeere their Fort was fired, and their dwelling Houses, Temple, Household, and Prouision. *Britto* himselfe escaped hardly with his wife. His courage yet remayned, and resolued to build it in an higher and stronger place. Easily had Arracan with this aduantage effected his designes, had not the Portugals elsewhere molested him, and taken Dianga. And thus farre haue wee followed the Iesuite *Iarric*, in these Arracan affaires: If with iarring from truth in any place, I haue named my Author, nor can accuse, or excuse him: Further he cannot guide vs.

Sup. cap. 3. §. 2.

1607.

1608.

1613. *Britto* empayled, and cruelly slaine.

But where his Intelligence failes, *Floris* helpes. The last Act of this Tragedie was reserued to the King of Aua, who tooke Sirian (as before Master *Floris* hath told vs) slue all the Portugals, and was reported to spit this *Philip de Britto*. He settled the affaires of Pegu, and sought what hee could, to reduce them from their dispersions to their native Habitations.

tions. But you are wearie of warre and bloud, in which you see all these Kings embrued; it is time to entertaine you elsewhere, and though as tragically, yet with differing Obiects pleasing at the least with varietie.

CHAP. VII.
Of the Great Mogor, or Mogoll.

§. I.
Of the Mogors Countries and of; MELABDIM ECHEBAR.

THE Great Mogor (according to *Boterus*) hath vnder his subiection seuen and fortie Kingdomes, which lie betweene Indus and Ganges on the East and West, and betwixt [a] Imaus and the Ocean, contayning all that which the Ancients called *India intra Gangem*, or *India Citenor*. Hee is called of the people the Great Mogor, for the same cause that the *Ottoman*-Turkes are called Great. The style of him that was King [b], when the Iesuites imparted to vs these Relations, was *Mahumeth Zelabdim Echebar*, King Mogor, or Mogoll; for so they call him in the Countrey, and not Mogor, as the Iesuites. This Mogoll seemes to argue their Tartarian Originall from the Moai Tartars; of which, see our Tartarian Relations. The true Mogors, or Mogols, liue on the hither side of Indus, in the Kingdome of Quabul, or Cabul, which is vnder the brother of *Echebar*; against whom, *Anno* 1582. hee led a strong Armie, in which the Iesuites say, were fiue thousand Elephants armed. These weare plates of Iron on their foreheads, carrie foure Archers, or else foure Gunners, with great Peeces; and goe not before the Armie, lest they should hinder their sight, or (being hurt) disturbe the rankes; and therefore are set in the Rere, a Sword bound to their trunke, and Daggers fastened to their great teeth. King *Echebar* was borne in the Prouince of Chaquata, which hath Indostan on the South, Persia on the West, the Tartars East. Their Language is Turkish; but the Courtiers to this day speake Persian. *Babursa* his grand-father chased the Parthians vnto Bengala, before possessors of the Region of the Mogors; after whose death, the Parthians, or (as they are now called Pataneans, of Patanat before mentioned) recouered themselues, and warred on his sonne. Their descent is from [c] *Tamerlan*, whose third sonne was *Mironcha*, grandfather to *Abusayd*, who slue *Abdula*; successor to *Abdelatife* which had slaine *Oleghbek*, the sonne and successor of *Mirzab Charrok*, the fourth sonne and first successor of *Tamerlan*. Sultan *Hamed*, sonne of *Abusayd*, obtayned Maurenahar, and after him *Babor* his sonne, which in the yeere 1500. was dispossessed by the Vsbechs, yet still possessed Gaznehen, and some parts of India; succeeded by his sonne *Homayen*, the father of this *Achabar*. Thus *Mirkond*. The Iesuites say, they are Parthians, descended of *Cingis* (therefore rather to be called Tartars;) *Achabars* grandfather they call *Baburxa*, which by his sword entred Indostan, and chased those Tartars into Bengala. But they againe preuailed after his death: insomuch, that *Achabars* father *Emmaupaxda* (as the Iesuites report) being driuen to great straights by the Parthians, Tartars, or Pataneans, was driuen to aske aide of the *Sophi*, or Persian King; which he obtained, with condition of submitting himselfe to the Persian Religion. The Mogors speake the Turkish language. The Empire of this Mogor is exceeding great, contayning the Countries of Bengala, Cambaya, Mendao, and others, comprehende d by some vnder the name of Indostan. This Mendao is said to be ten leagues in circuit, and that it [d] cost the Mogor twelue yeeres siege. Agra and Fatipore are two Cities in his Dominion, great, and full of people, much exceeding London; and the whole space betweene, is as a continuall populous Market. Many Kings he hath conquered, and many haue submitted themselues and their States voluntarily to his subiection. Twentie Gentile Kings are numbred [e] in his Court, which attend him, equalling the King of Calecut in power. Many others pay him tribute. In his Countries are many Spices, Pepper, Ginger, Cassia, and others: many precious Stones, Pearles, Metals of all sorts, Silkes, Cotton, Horse, and other Commodities, which yeeld him many millions yeerely beyond his expences. About the yeere 1582. the Iesuites first entred there; after whose report, his Dominions were then as followeth since much more enlarged. Eleuen great Riuers run through his Dominions: Taphi, Haruada, Chambel, Iamena, Ganges: the other sixe, are Indus, or *Sebind* (as they call it) and Catamul, Cebcha, Ray, Chenao, Rebeth, tributaries to Indus. The whole Mouarchie enuironeth nine hundred

a Or Cumaus, on which dwel Gentils, called *Cumai*. This mountaine separates the Mogols and Tartars.

b 1495. & 1599.

c *Vid. sup. p. 8. §. 2.*

d R. Fitch.

e Relat. de Reg. Mog.

hundred leagues. King *Echebar* hath many Lords; each of which is to maintayne eight, ten, twelue, or fourteene thousand Horse in readinesse for the warre, besides Elephants; of which, in the whole Kingdome are said to bee fiftie thousand. Himselfe can further bring of his owne into the Field fiftie thousand Horse, and Foot-men innumerable. To those Lordes hee alloweth certaine Prouinces, for such Militarie seruice; for hee is Lord of all; nor hath any else possession of any thing, but at the will of the King. Once a yeere they appeare before the King, where they present a view of those their enioyned Forces. Many millions of Reuenue doe besides accrew vnto his Coffers: yet his Port and Magnificence is not so great, as of many other Princes, eyther for Apparell, Diet, or the Maiestie of his Court-seruice. Hee cannot write or reade, but heareth often the Disputations of others, and Histories read before him, being of deepe iudgement, piercing wit, and wise fore-cast. In execution of Iustice hee is very diligent; insomuch, that in the Citie where hee resideth, he heareth all Causes himselfe: neither is any malefactor punished without his knowledge; himselfe giuing publike Audience twice euery day: For which purpose, he hath two wide Halls, or rather open Courts, and in them Royall Thrones, where hee is attended with eight Councellors, besides Notaries. Yet doth hee stand, and not sit; and at other times sit on Carpets, after the Turkish manner, notwithstanding his Chayre of Estate standing by. He hath twelue Learned men alway about him, which ordinarily reason and dispute in his presence, or relate Histories. Hee is a curious discourser of all Sects. Hee is both Affable, and Maiesticall, Merciful, and Seuere; delights himselfe in diuers Games, as fights of Buffals, Cockes, Harts, Rammes, Elephants; Wrestlers, Fencers, Dances, Comedies, and in the Dances of Elephants and Camels, thereto instructed. In the midst of these Spectacles he dispatcheth serious affaires. He delights in Hunting, vsing the Panther to take wild Beasts. Hunting Dogs hee had none. They vse tame Harts to take the wild, with Nets fastened to their hornes; wherewith they intangle the other. When hee goes to warre, hee will cause a whole Wood to bee round beset with men, hand in hand; sending others in, which raise the Beasts, and driue them into the others armes; which, if they let them goe, are punished, to make sport that way. He was skilfull in diuers Mechanicall Trades; as, making of Gunnes, casting of Ordnance, hauing his Worke-house in the Palace for that purpose. But we haue obserued, that this is common to all Mahumetan Priests and Princes, the Great Turke, yea, the Great Chalifa himselfe (as *Tudelensis* writes of his Times) practising some Mechanicall Mysterie. Theeues and Pyrates He punished with losse of the hand; Murtherers, Adulterers, Robbers by the high way, with empaling, hanging, or other deaths; not executed, till the Sentence had beene thrice pronounced: Loued and feared of his Owne; Terrible to his Enemies; Affable to the Vulgar; seeming to grace them and their Presents, with more respectiue Ceremonies then the *Grandes*; of sparing Dyet, scarce eating Flesh aboue foure times in the yeere, but feeding by Rice, Whit-meats, and Electuaries; sleeping but three houres in the night; curiously industrious.

This King detesteth the Mahumetan Sect, which, as you heard, his Father embraced for his aduantage; and therefore hath ouerthrowne their Moschees in his Kingdome, razing the Steeples, and conuerting the rest to Stables, and more trusteth and employeth the Gentiles in his affaires then the Moores: whereupon many of them rebelled against him, and stirred vp the Prince of Quabul, his Brother, to take Armes: against whom *Echebar* opposed himselfe (as is said) and caused him to retire into his owne Countrey. It is vncertaine [d] what Religion hee is of, some affirming him to bee a *Moore*, some a *Gentile*, some a *Christian*, some of a fourth Sect, and of none of the former. Indeed it appeareth that he wauereth, vncertaine which way of many to take, able to see the absurdities of the Arabian and Gentile professions, and not able to beleeue the high mysteries of the *Christian Faith*, especially the *Trinitie* and *Incarnation*. He hath addmitted the Iesuites there to preach, and would haue had them by miracle to haue proued those things to him, which they (elsewhere so much boasting of Miracles) wisely refused. For he demanded that the *Mulla's*, or Priests of the Mogores, and they, should by passing thorow the fire, make tryall of their Faith. Hee hath many Bookes and Images, which the Christians there doe vse, and seemeth to haue great liking to them, vsing the same with great reuerence. But his Religion is the same (it seemeth) with that of *Tamerlane* his predecessor, to acknowledge *One God*, whom varietie of Sects and Worshippings should best content. Hee caused [e] thirtie Infants to bee kept (like that which is said of *Psammetichus*, King of Egypt) setting certaine to watch and obserue, that neither their Nurses, nor any else, should speake vnto them, purposing to addict himselfe to that Religion which they should embrace, whose Language these Infants should speake; which accordingly came to passe. For as they spake no certaine Languge, so is not hee setled in any certaine Religion. He hath diuers Idols sometime brought before him: among which, is one of the Sunne; which early euery morning, and three other times a day,

d The vncertainitie of his Religion, *Bailly* reth of reports amongst the Portugals, of the conuersion of this King, and of the Kingdome of China also to Christianitie: both with like truth, and fitting Popish reporters.

e *Ioan. Oranus.*

day, at noone, euening, and in the night, he worshippeth. He worshipped also the Image of CHRIST, and our LADY, which hee set on the crowne of his head, and wore Relikes about him. He is addicted to a new Sect, as is said, wherein he hath his followers, which hold him for a Prophet. The profit which they haue by his gold, addicteth them to this new Prophet. [c] Hee professeth to worke Miracles; by the water of his feet curing diseases. Many Women make Vowes vnto him, either to obtaine children, or to recouer the health of their children; which if they attaine, they bring him their vowed Deuotions, willingly of him receiued: yea, euery morning, as he worshipped the Sunne, so he delighted to be worshipped himselfe of the people: to whom he made shew of himselfe at a window; and they kneeling, performed like Ceremonie to him, as to their Idols: and he was thought to entertaine men skilfull in diuers Sects and Religions, that of euery one he might take somewhat to the constitution of a new one. He hath three sonnes; *Sciec* the eldest, which is honoured with the title *Gio*, and called *Sciecigio*, that is, the Soule, or Person, of *Sciec*; he much fauoureth the Iesuites: the second, *Pahari: Dan*, or *Daniel*, is the youngest. Some call them by other names. His Presents are exceeding, besides his Tributes and Customes. [d] Hee mentions One, which in their presence offered his Vassalage, and withall a Present, valued at two hundred thousand crownes and more; a Horse with furniture of Gold and Iewels; two Swords, and the Girdles of like worke; Camels, Carpets, &c. taking himselfe dignified in the acceptation of his Present. Himselfe after often bowings, and touching the ground with his head, comming neerer, was searched, whether hee had any weapons, and then was admitted to touch his foot, *Echebar* laying his hand on his necke, and allowing him to stand with his other Nobles. The Kings sonne, Sultan *Morad*, at the same time offered a Present of fiftie Elephants, worth a hundred and fiftie thousand Duckats; one Chariot of Gold, another of Siluer, others of Mother of Pearle, with other things of great value. The Vice-Roy, or Gouernour of Bengala, followed with another Present, esteemed worth eight hundred thousand Duckats, *vic.* three hundred Elephants. Almost dayly hee receiueth such Presents, especially at a certaine Feast, called *Nerosa*; in which, one Great Man was thought to present him with neere the worth of one Million of Gold.

c *Hier. Xauier.*

Some call the second sonne, Sultan *Horat*: some, *Morad*, the first *Selim*, &c.

d *Eman. Pinner.*

§. II.

Of the Conquests and death of ECHEBAR, *and of his Sonne and Successour* SELIM, *now reigning.*

VR Relations of *Echebar* or *Achebar*, his Rites Humane and Diuine, as also of his Possessions and Greatnesse, we haue alreadie seemed long; yet cannot be so satisfied, without further satisfaction to the Reader, if he be (such as he of whom we write) curious and desirous to know remote Affaires and farre distant Occurrences. Great *Echebar* added vnto that Greatnesse which his Father left him, the Kingdome of Caxemir, of Sinda, of Guzzarat, of Xifchandadan, and a great part of Decan, with all the Tract of Bengala. Such was his felicitie, that it grew into a Prouerbe, *As happie as* ECHEBAR; seldome attempting any thing, without prosperous successe: I speake of worldly happinesse. Euen in Natures treasures hee was rich, both Wit and Memorie: this so happie, that of many thousands of Elephants which hee had, hee knew the names; yea, of his Horses (to each of which hee gaue names) of his wilde Beasts and Harts, that he kept in a place appointed; and euen of his Pigeons, which hee kept for sport. Yet, was not this happinesse so perpetuall, but that he had some, especially domesticke, Crosses. His second sonne, Sultan *Morad*, being sent into Guzzarat, against *Melic* King of Decan (sometime Lord of Chaul) was slaine, with many other Commanders: which newes was then brought to *Echebar*, when hee was celebrating their New-yeeres Festiuall (the day that the Sunne enters into *Aries*) whereupon hee sent thither another of his sonnes. Another time, when hee was solemnizing the Sunnes Festiuall, on Easter day, 1597. (about which time the King of China sustained the like Casualtie) Fire fell from Heauen vpon his Tent, richly adorned with Gold and Iewels, and consumed it to ashes, with all the Tents adioyning, together with his Throne of solide Gold, valued at 100000. Duckats, consumed or melted: from whence it proceeded to the Palace; which being of Timber, was for the most part brought into ashes. Some millions of Treasure there reserued, could not bee there preserued from this flame, which made a Streame of Gold and Siluer, mixed with other Metalls, runne alongst the streets. For this cause hee forsooke Lahor (where hee had built the Iesuites a Church, and where hee kept his Court, as hee did before at Fatepore, and sometimes at Agra) and went to Caximir, or Cascimir, a Kingdome which a little before

Iarric. Thes. rer. Indicarum, l. 4. c. 5.

Caximir.

fore he had subdued. This yeelds not to any Indian Region, in goodlineſſe and wholeſomeneſſe, being encompaſſed with very high Mountaines, couered moſt part of the yeere with Snow: the reſt a delicate Playne, diuerſified with Paſtures, Fields, Woods, Gardens, Parkes, Springs, Riuers, euen to admiration. It is coole, and more temperate then the Kingdome of Rebat, which adioyneth to it on the Eaſt. Three leagues from Caximir is a Lake, deepe, and beset round with Trees, in the midſt thereof an Iland, and thereon hee built a Palace. The Countrey hath ſtore of Rice, Wheat, and Vines, which they plant at the foot of the Mulburie, the ſame Tree ſeeming to beare two Fruits. Had they not beene at Contentions amongſt themſelues, hee could neuer haue conquered ſo ſtrong a Kingdome. In times paſt they were all Gentiles; but three hundred yeeres before this, the moſt of them became Mahumetane. This Countrey he left when Summer was paſt, and returned to Lahor, loſing many Elephants and Horſes in the way, both by Famine then oppreſſing the Countrey, and the difficultie of the Paſſages; the Elephants ſometimes, in the aſcent of Hils, helping themſelues with their Trunkes, leaning and ſtaying themſelues, being burthened, thereon, as on a ſtaffe. The Prince, which is now King, was aſſaulted by a fierce Lioneſſe, as he rode on a Female Elephant, which yet hee wounded firſt with a Dart, then with a Shot, and laſtly, ſmote her with the hand-Gun it ſelfe; wherewith being ouerthrowne, a Souldier came in and ſlew her, but with loſſe of his owne life.

Elephants trunke as a ſtaffe to them. I haue obſerued of this young Elephant now in *London*, ſent out of *Spaine* to his Maieſtie, that in riſing vp when he is laid on the ground, hee raiſeth himſelfe on his two great teeth

The next yeere, 1598. *Echebar* went to Agra, chiefe Citie of a Kingdome, which hee had also conquered, a hundred leagues from Lahor towards the South, paſſing that way to Decan. Hee had eight hundred Elephants, and ſeuen thouſand Camels, to carrie his Tents and Prouiſions: yea, his Secretatie had at the ſame time ſeuen hundred Camels, and ſeuentie Elephants for his owne furniture; and therefore it is leſſe marauile of the Kings. The King conducted in this Expedition aboue a thouſand Elephants, inſtructed to fight, and a hundred thouſand Soldiers. Hee paſſed the Mountaines of Gate, by almoſt impaſſable Paſſages, ſpending ſometimes a whole day, in paſſing the ſpace of a Musket-ſhot. One of his Captaines went before with fiftie thouſand, who tooke one of the Decans ſtrongeſt Holds, and made eaſie way to the Conqueſt of the reſt of Melics Dominions, which hee left in the Gouernment of his ſonne. Brampore fell into his hands, being deſtitute of defence. This was *Anno* 1600. *Miram* the King thereof had forſaken it, and betaken himſelfe to Syra, a ſtrong Hold both by Nature and Art. It was ſeated on the top of a Hill, which reacheth fiue leagues, enuironed with a triple Wall, ſo built, that one might bee defended from the next. Within, was a Well of running Water, and all neceſſarie Prouiſions for threeſcore thouſand perſons, for many yeeres. It had three thouſand great Peeces of Ordnance. In this Caſtle (according to the Country cuſtome) the next of the Bloud Royall were kept, with their Families; nor might depart, except (the Throne emptie) the next Heire was hence deliuered, much after that which is written of Amara, in the Abaſſens Countrey, and it ſeemes borrowed from thence; ſo many ſlaues of thoſe parts being here entertained, and ſome in the higheſt Employments. At this time, beſides King *Miram*, there were ſeuen of theſe Princes. The Gouernour was an Abaſſine, with ſeuen other Vnder-Commanders, all renegado-Mahometanes. The Mogoll layde ſiege thereto, with almoſt two hundred thouſand men: but more preuailed (as before in Melics Countrey) with Bribes and Promiſes, then Force. Thus inuiting *Miram* to a Conference, ſwearing, *By the Kings head* (accounted an inuiolable Oath, as is that, *By their Fathers head*) that hee ſhould bee permitted ſafe returne: Some of his Councellours perſwaded him to goe; hee went, with a kinde of Stole on his necke, hanging to his knees, in token of ſubiection: And comming before the *Mogoll*, bowed himſelfe, but was caſt to the ground by ſome of his Captaines, and forceably detained. The Abaſſine Gouernour ſent his ſonne to demand performance of *Acbebar* his promiſe, who being queſtioned of his Father the Abaſſen, and the hopes to obtaine the Caſtle, freely anſwered for his Farhers fidelitie, and that if *Miram* were not reſtored, they ſhould not want a Succeſſour; with which libertie he prouoked the *Mogol* to cauſe him to be ſlaine: which his Father hearing, ſtrangled himſelfe. And the wals were ſoone after battered (at leaſt entred, and a breach made through the open gates) by golden ſhot; none of theſe ſeuen for feare of treaſon, daring to take the Royall Soueraigntie. Theſe with the King, were diſperſed into diuers parts of his Kingdome and maintenance allowed them. Thus remained *Echebar* Lord of theſe parts, and longed to adde the reſt of Iudia, whatſoeuer is betwixt Indus and Ganges ° euen to the Cape Comori, to his Dominion.

Brampore.

Syra an admirable fortreſſe.

° Goa, Idalcans countrey, *Malabar*, &c.

He writ a Letter about this time to the Vice-Roy of Goa, beginning thus (I mention it to ſhew you his Titles which he arrogated) *The Great and Mightie Lord of the Law of* MAHOMET, *The Renowmed and Great King, Vanquiſher of the Kings, his Enemies, Obſerued and Honoured of Great Men, Exalted aboue other Kings in ample Honour and Dignitie, The onely Man*

Maufor Gouernment amongst all the Princes of the World, His Ambassage to ARIAS DE SALDAGNA, &c. *The ninth day of Frauuard* (the first moneth of the yeere beginning at the Æquinoctiall Vernall) *in the fortie sixe yeere, viz.* of His Reigne.

At this time dyed the Gouernour or Vice-Roy of Lahor, which left to the King (who is Heire Generall, and Successour of euery mans wealth) three millions of Gold coyned, besides other Gold, Siluer, Iewels, Horses, Elephants, furniture and goods almost inualuable. This also for a taste of the meanes accrewing to this Kings Treasure. *Echebar* returning to Agra, gaue libertie to the Iesuites to conuert as many as would to Christianitie.

The King of Candacar or Candahar, not able to defend himselfe against *Abduxen* King of the PVsbechs, surrendred himselfe and his Kingdome to *Echebar*. The particulars of his other Conquests I cannot relate: His last victory I know not whether to impute to his happinesse or not. It was against his Sonne, in which the griefe to haue such an enemy could not but be more then the glory of the exploit. This happened, *Anno* 1602. *Echebar*, being forced to giue ouer his Decan Conquest, by his Sonnes vntimely challenge of the Scepter, who weary of his Fathers long life, stiled himselfe King, and his Father the Great King. Armies were gathered on both sides; on both sides were sent Letters and Messengers. The Mother of *Echebar*, being nintie yeeres old, laboured a peace, but not preuailing, fell sicke, which caused him to returne from this expedition against his Sonne. But her body not able to ouercome the disease, yeelded to death. Her Sonne shaued his head, beard, and eye-browes, and mourned after the Country fashion in blue, his Nobles doing the like three dayes. Her huge Treasure which shee had bequeathed to her children and Nephewes, the King seized on. The Prince was perswaded to come to his Father without an Army, which he did, and after some rebuke, was reconciled, and remained content with the Kingdome of Cambaia or Guzzerat. He seemed much addicted to the Iesuites, and obtained his Fathers Licence for a Temple at Agra, to the building whereof hee gaue a thousand pieces of Gold.

p *Vbechs* neere the Persians.

Blue, a mourning colour.

On the twentie seuen of October, *Anno* 1605. *Echebar* dyed in the Climacteriall yeere (63.) of his age, and fiftie of his reigne. In his sicknesse, *Selim* the Prince (whom some suspected of dealing as the Turkish *Selim* had done with his Father *Baiazet*) came not into the Presence; and much consultation was amongst the Great ones to conferre the Succession vpon *Cussero* his sonne. But the issue was, that vpon his Oath to maintaine the Law of *Mahomet*, and of full pardon to his Sonne and all his Partakers, hee was brought into his Fathers presence. *Echebar* was past speech, but made signes that hee should take the Royall Diademe, and gird himselfe with the sword hanging at his beds head. The Prince performed the solemne *Iordam*, or Rite of Adoration, with the head bowed to the Earth, and, his Father signing with his hand that hee should depart, did so; as did his Father presently after out of the world. His body was carried on the shoulders of his Son and Nephew out of the towre where he lay, the wall being broken (after the fashion) for passage, and a new gate there erected: and being brought into his Garden a league from thence, was interred with small attendance, neither the King, nor his Nobles (except *Cessero* and a few others) wearing mourning habite. So little was He in his West, a little before the great Terrour of the East.

Selim poysoned *Baiazet*.

Eight dayes after *Echebars* death, the Prince entred the Palace, and seated himselfe in the Throne, the people crying *Padiausa*, or *Padasha Iamat*, GOD saue the King. His first endeauours were to giue contentment to the Mahumetans; causing their Mosches to bee purged, and their Rites to bee established: yea, hee tooke a new Name, NVRDIN MOHAMAD, IAHANVIR, that is, the *Splendour of* MAHOMETS *Law*, *Subduer of the World*. And by this Name IAHANVIR, or (as our Countrey-men, lately come from thence, pronounce it) IAHANGERE, hee is vsually called, and not by his ancient Name SELIM.

M. Clarke, and *M. Withington*.

In Aprill after, his sonne rebelled, and (taking the Title of SVLTAN IA, that is, Sultan the King) brought into his partie two Great Men, and so went to Lahor, which (not being admitted entrance) hee besieged eight dayes; or (as others say) presented himselfe with his Forces (about twelue thousand) before it, without any great hostilitie offered him. His Father in person pursued him, which being rumor'd, so dismayed the sonne that he fled, hauing euen then put some of the Kings men to rout. For by a notable stratagame hee lost the day, the aduerse Generall sending many with flying tales into the Princes Armie, buzzing the neerenesse and Greatnesse of the Kings power, and seconding the same (like GIDEONS Policie) with multitude of Trumpets and Drummes, scarted them, and notwithstanding the Princes gaine-saying, hee was by his owne almost compelled to flight. Hee tooke his way towards Cabul, and being to passe a Riuer, the Captaine of the place caused all Boats to be taken away, and commanded the rowers, that if the Prince came, they should fasten the Boat (as by mischance) on a Shelfe or Iland of sand in the middle of the Riuer, which being done, they should seeme to call for helpe, and so giue notice.

This was done, and the Gouernour came, and after due reuerence (promising all fidelitie and securitie, wherein hee was vnfaithfully faithfull) brought Him into the Castle, and sent the King word thereof, who sent presently and brought Him inſetters, together with his company. The King bitterly checked him, committed him to priſon. Some adde, that hee ſealed vp his eyes: Others ſay, that his eyes were put out. But their eyes were not put in (onely cares put on) that ſay ſo; for hee hath lately beene freed, and hath the vſe alſo of his eyes, as I haue beene tolde from the eyes of diuers. His two great Captaines had a ſtrange puniſhment, the one ſowed vp cloſe in an Oxe-skinne, the other in an Aſſe-skinne, both new flayed, that drying they might withall ſtraightly pinch in their Priſoners in a cloſe and narrow Little-eaſe. The next day they were carried through the Citie on Aſſes, their faces to the taile-wards, the one conſpicuous with his Oxe-hornes, the other with his Aſſes-eares: The ſhame and ignominy ſo pierced one of them, that hee fell downe dead; his head was cut off, and the pieces of his diſmembred bodie were ſet vp in diuers places. The other by way of fauour, was permitted to haue water powred on his hide, which brought a worſe euill, by the heate of ſo neere a Sunne, cauſing a filthy ſtinke, and multiplication of Vermine, till at laſt his pardon was procured. Two hundreth of the Princes Souldiers were ſet on both ſides the way, as hee ſhould paſſe to be executed. He cauſed his ſecond Sonne to be proclaimed Prince, as his Father had before transferred the Title from him to This his Son.

There was a famous Prophet of the Ethnikes, named *Goru*, eſteemed there of his Sectaries as the Romiſh Pope is of the Popiſh Romaniſts: with him, as a man famous for Sanctimony did the Prince conſult, who in adulation adorned his head with a Diadem, which in an Ethnike to a Mahumetan was ſtrange: but hee coloured it with the Gentiliſme of the Princes Mother. Vpon this *Goru* was committed, but vpon promiſe by an Ethnike of 100000. pieces of Gold to bee payd to the King, hee was pardoned. Hee that vndertooke this, hoped on the Kings pardon, or that *Goru* would procure this ſumme, which failing, hee ſeized, on all hee had, not ſparing his wife and children: adding tortures alſo to extort money from him, and taking away his meate, thinking him rather a miſer then a begger. Thus in varietie of miſery the flattering Prophet loſt his life: and his Suretie alſo thinking to eſcape by flight, was taken and ſlaine, his goods all confiſcate.

This King at firſt made great ſhew of zeale to *Mahomet*, which ſince is cooled, and his Religion ſeemes to bee the ſame with *Echebars*. Contrary to the Mahumetan practice, hee delighteth much in Images, as of CHRIST, the Virgin, and other Saints, with which his chambers and publike roomes are ſtored: and to all his Letters and Charters, beſides the Kings Seale, addes the Images of CHRIST, and the Holy Virgin, engrauen in a paire of tongs (as it were) of Emeralds, with which hee ſeales his Letters on both ſides the pendent waxe. The laſt newes that wee haue from the Ieſuites (of whom wee haue borrowed almoſt all the former Relations) is of Captaine *Hawkins* comming to the Court, and kind entertainment of the King, who made him (ſay they) a Gentleman of foure hundred Horſe, and aſſigned him thirtie thouſand Rupies ſtipend: adding other reports of his pride, obſtinate hereſie, and ſupplantarion by the Portugals; with other things of Him, and thoſe of the Aſcenſion, were wracked, partly true, partly falſe. I haue thought good to ſet before you in the next ſeruice, ſome of Captaine *Hawkins* obſeruations whiles hee ſtaied there, and after of other our Country-men, which now haue a ſeuled trade in theſe vaſt Dominions. Obſerue by the way that the Ieſuites to the laſt, doe accuſe Captaine *Hawkins* of his obdurate hereſie, contrarie to the calumnies of ſome that ſay hee became deuoutly Popiſh at their perſwaſion.

They ſay hee preſented the King with the worth of 25000 crownes, one Iewell being worth 20000.

§. III.

The Relations of Captaine HAWKINS, *Embaſſador there.*

MAſter *William Hawkins* [a] being Captaine in the Ship called the *Hector*, after a long and tedious voyage (from March 1607. to the foure and twentieth of Auguſt 1608.) arriued at Surat, ſubiect to the *Mogor* or *Mogol* (ſo he calleth him) and after much kindneſſe offered, and indignities ſuffered, by reaſon and treaſon of the Portugals (who had by bribes and ſlanders wrought the Vice-Roy or Deputie, called *Mocreb Chan* againſt him) paſſed thence to Agra, to the Court, as Embaſſadour, with a Letter from the King of England. *Peniero* a Ieſuite, before in this Booke mentioned (obſerue the *Conuerſions* and conuerſations of that Societie in thoſe parts) like a worthy Factor for his Nation, had proferred to *Mocreb-Chan* fortie thouſand Rials of Eight, to ſend them to *Damaw*, that ſo hee might become their priſoner, and the Engliſh negotiation might bee hindered;

a His booke or large iournall, written by him-ſelfe, was communicated to me, by the right worſhipfull Sir *Tho. Smith.*

b *Emmanuel Pinceius.*

hindered: and now, when the name of an Embassadour had protected him from such courses, plotted with him to ouerthrow his iourney, both by detraction of necessitie forces to assist him in a way so full of Out-lawes and Rebels, and suborning his Trudge-man and Coach-man, to poyson or murder him by the way; which was not farre from effecting. The Portugals had also dealt with the Lord of Cruly, to bee readie with two hundred Horsemen to assault him in the way: so that hee was forced to hire a strong conuoy for the securitie of his person. Being come to Agrá, hee was brought with great State to the King, who kindly entertained him, and swaree by God, and by his Fathers ioule, to performe the Kings Maiesties request, in the Letter contained, notwithstanding the deprauation thereof by the
10 Iesuite, to whom the King had giuen it to reade. He promised also to allow him three thousand and two hundred pound a yeere, or foure hundred Horse (for so they reckon all their fees, much like the Turkish Timariots) and caused him to take a wife of the Countrey, the daughter of an Armenian Christian, called *Mubarikesha*, sometimes a Commander in the warres of *Ekbar Padasha*, [c] Father to this present *Mogor*, or *Mogol*, whose name is *Selim*. This King is so fickle and inconstant, that what hee had solemnly promised for an English Factory, was by the Portugals meanes reuersed, and againe promised, and againe suspended, and a third time both graunted and disanulled: so that the second of Nouember, 1611. Captaine *Hawkins* departed from Agra, and the last of December came to Cambaya, where hee heard of English shipping, in which hee passed first to the Red Sea, after to Sumatra and
20 Bantam,[d] and dyed on the Irish shoare in his returne homewards. Whiles he kept at Agra, his liuing assigned him by the King was much impaired by the Officers, who appointed to him such places where Out-lawes and Rebels liued, so that hee neuer receiued aboue three hundred pound. His attendance whiles hee was in fauour, was honourable and neere the King; so that the Mahometans enuying a Christian such dignitie, became his priuie enemies, and assistants to the Portugals: which was increased by a Present the King sent him publikely, being a wilde Boare, killed in his hunting-Progresse, and by him and his eaten. The insolencies of the Guzarates, if they may bee suffered, and as much basenesse of their deiected cowardly courages, being kept in awe (which is also the disposition of all the Indian Ethnikes, both white and blacke) the Portugals pride and treachery: the fittest places
30 for our Indian trafficque, whether wee follow the colours of *Mars* or *Mercury*: and other his diligent obseruations I omit. But so I cannot, the rarities of the *Mogols* Court, customes, puissances, wealth, and gouernment (notwithstanding our former Discourse) hauing met with so rare a guide. For the greatnesse of his State; heereporteth that his Empire is diuided into [e] fine great Kingdomes, the first named Pengab, the chiefe Citie whereof is Lahor: the second, Bengala, and Sonargham the mother Citie: the third, Malua, the chiefe Seat Vagain: the fourth Deckan, in which Brampoit is principall: and so is Amadauer in the fifth Kingdome, which is Cambaya. Hee hath fixe principall Castles for the keeping of his treasure, at Agra (which is in the heart of all his Kingdomes) Guallier, Neruit, Ratamboore, Hassier, Boughtaz. There are three Arch-Rebels, which with his forces hee cannot call in,
40 *Amber* [f] *Chopa* in Deckan; in *Guzerat*, the sonne of *Muzafer*, sometime their King, called *Bahador*; and *Raga Rabana* in Malua. Hee hath fiue sonnes, *Sultan Cussero*, *Sultan Pernis*, *Sultan Chorem*, *Sultan Sharier*, *Sultan Bath*; two young daughters, and three hundred wiues, of which foure are principall. None hath the title of *Sultan*, but his sonnes. *Mirza* is also ascribed to his brother and children; *Chan*, as a Duke. Their degrees and titles are according to their proportion of Horses allowed them: foure are of the *fame* of twelue thousand, the King, his mother, eldest [g] sonne, and one of the blood Royall, called *Chum Azam*. Of the *fame* of nine thousand Horse are three; these are as Dukes; Marquesses of fiue thousand, of which are eighteene; Earles of three thousand; Vicounts (so may wee parallell them with our titles of honour) two thousand; Barons of one thousand Horse; Knights, foure hundred;
50 others fewer, to twentie: all which are called *Mansibdars*, men of liuing or Lordship, of which are three thousand. Of *Haddies*, which receiue monethly pay, from fixe Horse to one, are [h] fiue thousand. Officers of Court and Campe, fixe and thirtie thousand, as Gunners, Porters, Water-men, Cookes, Gardiners, keepers of Horses, Elephants, &c. whose wages are payed them monethly, from ten to three Rupias. A Rupia is two shillings [i] of our coyne. His Capraines or Mansibdars are to maintaine vpon their allowance, and haue in readinesse at a seuen nights warning, three hundred thousand Horse.

The Kings reuenue of his Crown-land, is fifrie Crou of Rupias: euery Crou is one hundred Leckes, and euery Lecke a hundred thousand Rupias: all which in our money is fiftie millions of pounds: a summe incredible, and exceeding that which is said of [k] China. His daily
60 expences are fiftie thousand Rupias, for his owne person, as apparell, victuals, and other houshold expences, with the feeding of sundry sorts of beasts, and of some few Elephants: his expences on his women by the day amount to thirtie thousand Rupias.

c *Padasha* is a Person word, and signifieth King.

d Dec. 21. 1611.

e Others say, that his proper title is King of Delly: all Indostan is his patrimony and his country diuided by three famous high wayes, *Pettab*, *Padzan*, *Dekan*. W. Clarke.

f *Allahban.*

g *Sultan Pernis.*

h M. *Clarke* (who hadiuers yeeres serued the *Mogol* in his warres, and was one of these *Haddies*) saith 300.0.

i Others say, 2.2.6.d. others 2.5.3.d.

k 150. millions of crowns.

In

1 M. *Withington* (which situed a Factor diuers yeeres in the Country) receiued of the Iesuites, whilst reside there, this same story of the *Mogols* treasures.

In his Treasurie of 1 Agra are in Gold, of Serassins Ecberi (which are ten Rupias a piece) threescore Leckes. Of another sort, which are one thousand Rupias, each twentie thousand pieces; and ten thousand of another sort, halfe the value. Of Toles (euery Tole is a Rupia of Siluer, and ten of those Toles is the value of one of Gold) thirtie thousand. Of another sort of ten Toles, fiue and twentie thousand. Of another sort of fiue Toles, fiftie thousand. In Siluer, of Rupias Ecberi thirteene Crou. Of a kinde of coyne worth a hundred Toles a piece, fiftie thousand. Of another halfe as much, one Lecke. Of thirtie Toles a piece, fortie thousand pieces. Of twentie Toles a piece, thirtie thousand pieces. Of ten Toles a piece, twentie thousand pieces. Of fiue Toles a piece, fiue and twentie thousand. Of Sauoys (each of which is a Tole and a quarter) two Leckes. Of Iagaries (whereof fiue make sixe Toles) one Lecke. 10

In Iewels of Diamants one Batman and a halfe: a Batman is fiue and fiftie pound weight English: these are rough, and of all sorts and sizes, but none lesse then two Carrets and an halfe. Of Ballase Rubies, two thousand. Of Pearles, twelue Batmans. Of Rubies of all sorts, two Batmans. Of Emeralds of all sorts, fiue Batmans. Of Eshime, which stone comes from Cataya, one Batman. Of stones of Emen, a kinde of red stone, fiue thousand. Of all other sorts, as Corall, Topazes, &c. the number is innumerable.

Of Iewels wrought in Gold, two thousand and two hundred Swords, the Hilts and Scabbards set with rich stones: two thousand Ponyards. Of Saddle Drums of Gold, set with stones, vsed in Hawking, fiue hundred. Of rich brooches for their heads, in which their feathers are set, two thousand. Of Saddles of Gold and Siluer, set with stones, one thousand. Of Tuikes, fiue and twentie. This is a great Launce couered with gold, and the fluke set with stones: and are carried when the King goeth to warres in stead of colours. Of Kittasoles of State to shadow him, twentie. None else in his Empire may haue any of any sort carried for his shadow. Of Chaires of State, fiue, and of other sorts which are of siluer and gold, one hundred. Of rich glasses, two hundred. Of Vases for Wine set with Iewels, one hundred. Of drinking Cups, fiue hundred, of which are fiftie very rich, as of one stone, &c. Of Chaines of Pearle, and other Chaines, of Rings with Iewels, &c. are infinite, which the Keeper onely knowes. Of all sorts of Plate wrought, as Dishes, Cups, Basons, &c. Two thousand Batmans. Of gold wrought, a thousand Batmans. 20 30

Of Beasts: twelue thousand Horses: as many Elephants, fiue thousand with teeth, the rest female and young. Camels, twentie thousand: of Oxen for seruice, ten thousand. Of Moyles, a thousand. Of Deere for game, three thousand. Ounces for game, foure hundred. Hunting-Dogs, foure hundred. Lyons tame, an hundred. Buffles, fiue hundred. Hawkes, foure thousand. Pigeons for sport, ten thousand. Singing-Birds, foure thousand. He hath also Armour to arme fiue and twentie thousand men at an houres warning.

All this concerning his Treasure, expences, and monethly pay, is in his Court or Castle of Agra: and euery one of the Castles, aboue named, hath a seuerall treasure: and so hath Lahor also, which was not mentioned. And if any censure this Story for want of truth, and Mee for want of iudgement, in relating such sulnesse so fully: for it, I must leaue it to the Authors credit; for my selfe, I was induced by the raritie of the subiect (not easie in this distance to be knowne, nor by Trauellers, except such as this Author, whose Embassage, and exceeding grace with the King, for the greatest part of his residence, might further his Intelligence herein) besides the rarenesse of the Copie, whereof I know but one, and that written by himselfe. Time may make further triall. Nor may any measure those parts of the Indies for wealth in these kindes, with our Europæan, or any other: and that which so many Kings and States had in many ages stored together, by the euent of warre became *Ecbars*, the father of this *Selim*: of which you haue heard of the incredible wealth of the King of Cambaia [m] alone. Besides, if you obserue his customes, it makes it so much neerer credite. For when any Noble-man dies, all deuolueth to him: and well is it with the wife and children, if he bestoweth the Land, and what he pleaseth, on them, and the fathers Title on the eldest sonne. One dyed in my time (saith our Author) named *Raga Gaginat*, on whose goods the King seized, which besides Iewels and other treasure, amounted to three score Maunes in gold, euery Maune is fiue and fiftie pound weight. None like wise may come before the King with any Petition emptie-handed: and on certaine Festiuall dayes they bring him rich Presents, as before is said. India, besides Mines, must needes be rich in money, for all Nations bring it, and carrie commodities for it: so that once in twentie yeeres it commeth to the King. All Lands in his Monarchy are his, giuen and taken at his pleasure. Escheats are many by reason of his seuerities. And of those lands which hee giueth in Fee, the third part still remaines to the King; and of the Crowne Lands two thirds, the rest to the Occupiers. For Presents and Mortuaries, wee haue before giuen diuers instances. And my ielousie hath made mee verie inquisitiue of such as haue liued there in the Misterie,

m See Chap. 7.

40 50 60

nisterie, Factorie, Souldiorie, all which affirme that Captaine *Hawkins* hath written with the least.

Of all sorts of his wealth (except Coyne) is brought daily a certaine quantitie before him, for which purpose his Beasts, and all things of value, are diuided into three hundred and threescore parts: so that the same things come but once in the yeere to his view. Hee hath three hundred Elephants royall for himselfe to ride on, which are brought with pompe, richly couered; twentie or thirtie men going before with Streamers, his female with her yongling or yonglings following, besides foure or fiue other yong ones attending as Pages. Theie are dispersed amongst the great ones to ouer-see them, the King allowing them for it, but scarcely sufficient, and they dare not make shew of them in euill plight. One of them eats ten Ropias euery day in Butter, Graine, Sugar, Sugar-canes, &c. they are very tame. I saw one take vp the Kings owne son by his appointment, being a child of seuen yeeres. There are thought to be in this Empire fortie thousand Elephants, * of his, and his Nobles; of which, twentie thousand are trained for warre.

* *M. Clarke* saith 50000.

When the King rides in progresse, his Tents are in compasse about as large as London, two hundred thousand people vsually following his Campe. This King is esteemed the greatest Emperour in the East. Hee hath many Dromedaries, whose swiftnesse auailed his Father much in his sudden Expedition of warre. Those valiant Captaines which *Ecbar* had, *Selim* hath by tyranny much diminished. Fiue times a weeke hee commands his Elephants to fight before him, which often in their comming in, or going out, kill many: & if any be but wounded, and might escape, yet hee commands him to bee cast into the Riuer, saying, Hee will curse him as long as he liues, and therefore best to dispatch him: Hee delights to see men executed, and torne with Elephants. Of these tyrannies he reckons many particulars which he saw: and some for no fault, but for his lust set to fight with the Lyon, and one valiant man to buffet with a very fierce Lyon, without any weapon offensiue or defensiue. If any of his subiects haue any precious stone of value, and make not him the offer of it, it is death to him: hee must haue the refusall of all, and yet gines not the worth by a third part. That Iewell hee weareth this day, is not worne againe till that day twelue-month; all his Iewels being proportioned to such a course. All his seuerities and tyranny cannot cleere (perhaps this causeth them) his Countrey of Out-lawes. There is one betweene Agra and Amadauar, which commands as much Land as a good Kingdome; he is strong, twentie thousand Horse, and fiftie thousand Foot, and keepes on the Mountaines. Men can scarcely trauell for Out-lawes. The often shifting of men from their lands, makes them exact more cruelly in the time they hold them, grinding the face of their poore Tenants in ruefull manner. If they continue but fiue yeeres, they raise a great state; sometimes they hold not halfe a yeere: If any be employed in warres or businesses in another place, he must forgoe his land here, and be assigned it there. The Kings allowance otherwise is exceeding, as for euery Horse twentie Ropias a moneth for the warres, and for so many more which hee hath of *Fame*, hee is allowed two Ropias a moneth for the maintenance of his Table.

Concerning the Kings Religion and behaiour, it is thus. In the morning about breake of day, hee is at his Beades, his face to the Westwards, in a priuate faire roome, vpon a faire Iet-stone, having onely a Persian Lambe-skinne vnder him. Hee hath eight Chaines of Beades, euery of which containeth foure hundred: they are of Pearle, Diamants, Rubies, Emeralds, Lignum aloes, Ethen and Corall. At the vpper end of this Iet-stone, are placed the Images of Christ and our Lady, grauen in stone. Hee turneth ouer his Beades, and saith so many words, to wit, three thousand and two hundred, and then presenteth himselfe to the people to receiue their Salames or good morrow; for which purpose multitudes resort thither euery morning. This done, hee sleepeth two houres more, then dineth and passeth his time with his women: at noone, he sheweth himselfe again to the people, sitting till three or foure a clocke to view his pastimes, by Men and Beasts, euery day sundry kindes. At three all the Nobles in Agra, whom sicknesse detaineth not, resort to the Court: and the King comes forth in open audience, sitting in his Seat-Royall, euery man standing in his degree before him; the chiefe within a Red raile (which was allowed to our Author, hauing but fiue before him) the rest without. This Red raile is three steps higher then the place where the rest stand. Men are placed by Officers: there are others to keepe men in order. In the middest, right before the King, standeth an Officer, with his master Hang-man, accompanied with fortie others of the same profession, with hatchets on their shoulders, and others with whips. Here the King heareth causes some houres * euery day: and then departs to his house of prayer; which ended, foure or fiue sorts of well dressed meates are brought him, whereof hee eateth what hee likes, to stay his stomacke, drinking once of his strong drinke. After this he comes forth into a priuate roome, where none may come, but such as himselfe nominates. Two yeeres together our Author was one of the Attendants.

Selim Religion and Customes.

* The Kings of India sit daily in Iustice themselues, and on the Tuesdayes doe execution.

tendant:. In this place he drinkes other fiue cups, which is the portion that the Phyficians allow him, after which he eateth Opium, & then layes him downe to sleep, euery man departing home. When he hath slept two houres, they awake him, and bring his supper to him, thrusting it in his mouth, not being able to feed himselfe. This is about one of the clocke at night; and so hee sleepeth the rest of the night. In this cup-space he doth many idle things: but nothing without writing, be he drunken or sober. For he hath writers by course, which write all, not omitting his going to the stoole, or how ought he lieth with his women, and with whom: to the end, that when he dieth, those writings may be brought forth, and thence what is thought fit may be inserted in their Chronicles.

When any poore men come to demaund Iustice of the King, they goe to a certaine rope fastened to two pillars, neere where the King sits: this rope is full of Bels, plated with gold, and with shaking the rope, the King hearing the sound, sends to know the cause, and doth Iustice accordingly. 10

While our Author was with him, hee made his brothers children Christians, not for zeale (as the Iesuites thought) but in policie (to disappoint a Prophecie of certaine learned Gentiles, which fore-told their succession in the Kingdome) to make them odious to the Mooies. God take the *wise in his craftinesse*, and conuert this peruerse policie to their true Conuersion.

One of his sonnes, *Sultan Sharier*, of seuen yeeres, could not by diuers cruelties purposely inflicted on him by his father, be forced to cry, pretending his Nurses instructions to the contrary. 20

Feasts.

Hee keepes many Feasts in the yeere, but some principall: one called Nourous, or New-yeeres day. Then hath he a rich Tent pitched, curiously and costly wrought, two acres of ground in compasse, so richly spread with silke and gold Carpets, and preciously hanged, as is more admirable then credible. There are roomes also for his Queenes to see vnseene, round about, so that in all it may bee fiue acres. Euery Noble-man makes his roome, each striuing to excell other in cost. The King will come, to which of them he effects, and is sumptuously feasted and presented: But because hee will not receiue any thing as a Present, he allowes as much as the Treasurer values it, which is halfe the worth: Thus all prouide and present. At this Feast commonly euery mans state is augmented: it beginneth at the beginning of the Moone in March. Some foure months after is the Feast of his Birth-day, which euery one striueth to honor with his richest Apparel and Iewels: after many Palace-pastimes, hee goeth with the greatest pompe to his Mothers, to whom euery Noble-man presents a Iewell. After banket ended, hee weigheth in a ballance of gold against himselfe in one scale, other things of diuers sorts to the worth of ten thousand pound, which is giuen to the poore: but his richer Subiects present him that day tenne times as much. On his Fathers Funerall-day is solemnized a Feast at his Sepulchre, where himselfe meaneth to bee buried with all his posteritie: at which time much meate and money is giuen to the poore. It hath beene fourteene yeeres in building, and is thought will not bee finished in seuen yeeres more; notwithstanding three thousand at least be daily at worke thereon. But one of our workemen will dispatch more then three of them. It is by his description three quarters of a mile about, made square, hath seuen heights each narrower then other, till the top, where his Hearse is. At the vtmost gate before you come to the Sepulchre is a stately Palace in building; the compasse of the wals ioyning to the gate, &c. may be at least three miles: it is foure miles from Agra. 30 40

Mogol, Sepulcher. *Couers* saith, the matter is fine Marble, the forme nine square, the compasse two English miles about, & nine stories high, and that the King protested he would bestow thereon one hundred millions.

The Kings custome is euery yeere to make a hunting progresse of two moneths: but when hee comes forth of his Palace, if he mounts on a horse, it is a signe of his going to the war: if on an Elephant or Palamkin, it is but a hunting iourney. 50

§. IIII.

Of the setling of the English Trade in these parts, and of the two Sea-fights betwixt ours, and the Portugals.

Iarric. Thes. rer. Indic. l. 5. c. 23.

WE haue heard how by the Portugals working the English trade was disanulled in the Mogols Dominion, Captaine *Hawkins* despairing of any good that way, and leauing the Countrey. The Iesuites had closely wrought *Mocrab Chan* against him, with other great men; and one of them (*Pinnerius*) was employed in publike Embassage betwixt the Vice-Roy of Goa and the Mogoll, to the same effect: The Portugals alledged the league was broken, because the English were entertained; Neither could the Mogol easily lose their friendship, because they were then Masters at Sea: and could 60

could hauc hindered him and his from all Marine trades. *Andreas Hurtadus de Mendosa*, the Vice-Roy had forbidden the Merchants their Cambayan trade, and alreadie hostilitie had begun on both sides: both ceasing with the departure of the English. Sir *Henry Middleton* came to Surrat, after his Red-Sea-disasters in expectation of trade, but found nothing but dissembling, so that after much losse of time, he was driuen with his Ships to seeke new aduentures, to repaire the losses which by Turkish treachery, & the Mogols inconstancie and falsehood he had sustained. Hereupon he returned to the Strait of Aden, and intercepted the Ships that came from the Mogols Country to this Turkish Trade, easily stopping the mouth of the Turke, and cutting off the Mogols Nautike hands in hindring the mutuall Traffike of their Subiects: so weake in those Seas are these Two, iustly called GREAT, the Greatest indeed, and most puissant Princes (all things considered) in the Vniuerse. Yet did not the English make prize of them, only they set prices to them of their English commodities, and exchanging them at their prices for such Indian goods as they had brought thither (both estimated as they were worth in India) [n] making them further allowance of two in the hundreth. One Ship of this company, called the Rehemee, had one thousand fiue hundred persons in her. Many haue cauilled this forced trade, not considering that they had first found both fraude and force at the Turkes handes, and at the Mogols much expence and losse of time and goods contrary to Couenant, which I see not how the Law of Nature and Nations might not warrant them to make good; the King himselfe being wronged, and they armed with the Kings Commission, and their owne power. And perhaps others would haue taken all without any goods giuen in exchange. Certaine it is, that the euent (which those Mahumetans make the rule of equitie) was good, the Cambayan Merchants so terrified, that when *Gen. Best* (ignorant of these passages) not long after came to Surrat with the Dragon, he was promised good dealing; *Mill Iaffee*, one of the chiefe Merchants of Surrat affirming, *that they must else burne all their ships, and giue ouer their trade by Sea.* So true was that obseruation of Captaine *Hawkins* (an Actor, perhaps Author, in this businesse) of these people, insolent, if suffered, and base, if curbed.

An. 1612.

n *Nie Bangam.* They had money of these Ships, some 32000. rials of eight, where of the Rehemee payd 15000.

M. Downton saith, They had goods for goods to a halfe-penny. *Nic. Withington.*

On the third of October, 1612. *Sheke Suffe*, Gouernour of Amadauaz, chiefe Citie of the Guzzurats came to Surrat, and thence to Swally, and on the one and twentieth, concluded vpon certaine Articles, with the English Generall, which I haue read in his owne Relations, too tedious to bee here inserted. Not so the famous fights betwixt him and the Portugals, who had alreadie in their insulting insolent hopes swallowed the English, but Dragons are harsh morsels, and of ill digestion. Master *Canning*, an English Merchant had beene prisoner with the Portugals, but in a confident brauery, the Vice-Roy commanded to set him on shoare at Surrat, that *hee might goe helpe his Countrey-men fight, and then wee will take their ship, and the rest of them altogether.* But not altogether, nay, not at all, could hee performe this, with all his great Fleet of foure huge Gallions, with fiue or sixe and twentie Frigates: the Dragon being assisted onely with the Osiander a little Ship (scarcely a Ship, I had almost called her a little Pinnasse) but of great performance in this Fight. *Nunno d' Acuna* was Admirall of the Portugals, who by the Sabandore or Treasurer vnder the Mogoll in those parts, an experienced Man, who had a little before come aboord the English to spie out their strength, was counselled not to aduenture present fight, with such present courages, but to keepe betwixt them and the shoare, to hinder them from watering, and so (like another *Cunctator*) to weary the English, and force them from thence. But *Acunas* high pride disdained stratagems, and *scorned (for sooth) to spend a weekes prouision on his Men in hindring Ours, whom hee could force in an houre.* Thus, on the nine and twentieth of Nouember, came hee in fight with his Fleet, with Red colours displayed, where he receiued an vnwelcome welcomming by the Dragon, which after the Generals encouraging speech, went to meet them, and when he came betweene the Admirall and Vice-Admirall, opened his fierie mouths, and in a thundering Dialect gaue them the first salutation. The other two were not yet come vp, nor could the Osiander get cleere of her Anchor. But the next morning the fight was renewed, and three of the Gallions driuen on ground, not a man of them daring to looke aboue Hatches, and had beene their left but for the Frigates; the Osiander danced the Hay (saith one) about them, or played like a Salmon (my friend Mr. *Nathaniel Salmon*, was Master and Commander in her) swimming, frisking lightly (but not with light effect) leaping about these huge Whale carkasses, which in the afternoone got a-flote, and continued the fight till night. In the night they * manned a Frigate, with sixe or seuen-score of their best men, thinking to haue fired the English, but found both Fire and Water conspire against themselues to their destruction: the Osiander keeping diligent watch, and with a shot sinking them, there were eightie foure of them taken vp drowned. The shallownesse of the Bay gaue occasion to the Dragon, which drew much water, to remoue to the other side, neere vnto Mendofrobag, or Medhafrabadh, sometime a faire Citie, and walled, ruined by the Mogols

M. T. Best.
M. Patrick Copland.
M. Nathaniel Salmon.
M. Withington.

Nunno d' Acuna.

M. Withington.

o *M. Copland.*

gols warres. Here was a Castle of the Razbooches (some call them Reisbuti) which haue beene the Natiue Lords of that Countrey, now as it were out-lawes, spoyling and robbing, besieged by Sarder Chan, a Great Man of the Mogols, who had many thousands in his Campe, which all became witnesses of the English valour, Spectators of the Portugals confusion. Sarder Chans Tent was stately and spacious, couered aboue with Cloth of Gold, on the floore with Turkie Carpets. Hee sent a Horse, and two Vests wrought with Silke and Gold to the Generall, and foure Vests for foure other of his company. Himselfe would not stirre out of his Tent, till he had taken the Castle, but gaue Them licence to take view thereof. But the Portugals approaching with their force, the Mogols by many Arguments dehorted the English from the fight, which yet they presently made good before many thousand gazing, admiring, astonished Eyes, the Portugals being forced to cut their Cables, and to escape by flight, being swifter of sayle then the English. Thus the Portugals wanted a *Hercules* for this Dragon (more watchfull then the Hesperidan, more terrible then the Lernæan) or, a Medæa to Charme this, as sometimes the Colchian (these three Dragons the Poets faine Monsters, begotten of *Typhon*, and *Echidna*, but none of them breathing Fire, nor roaring Thunders, like this fell Indian Dragon here spoken of.)

In these fights, after Master *Salmons* reckoning, the Dragon spent sixe hundred thirtie nine, and the Osiander three hundred eightie seuen great shot, besides three thousand small. The Great Mogoll, which before thought none comparable to the Portugall at Sea, much wondred at the English resolution, related to him by *Sardar Cham*. The Portugals lost by their owne Confession, one hundred and sixtie, by others report, fiue hundred men (the *Sabandar* reckoned three hundred and sixtie) in these fights: the English three men, and the arme of another shot off. The Articles agreed on before by the Gouernour, were confirmed by the Kings *Firma*, which they receiued January the eleuenth, Captaine *Best*, returned to Swally, December one and twentieth, and sent Letters of this successe for England by land, but the Messenger [p] with his Indian, were both poysoned by two Friers in the way homewards: another Letter sent by a Mariner, came to the Companies hands in very good season: and they sent sent forth foure ships hither, besides three to other places, vnder the Command of Generall *Downton, viz.* The New yeeres Gift, the Hector, the Merchants Hope, and the Salomon.

These leauing England in March, on October the fifteenth following, 1614. anchored at South Swally, not farre from Surrat: where they found the Countrey in Armes against the Portugals, which had a little before taken a Ship of the Mogols, in which was said to bee three millions of Treasure, and two women bought for the Great Mogol. They also tooke a [q] Guzzarate Ship worth one hundred thousand pounds, with seuen hundred persons therein, at the barre of Surat (notwithstanding their owne Passe granted them) and sent them to Goa. The Decanims laid siege to Chaul, and *Mocrob Chan* was to doe his vtmost for his Master the Mogol. The Moores on all bands, sought their Destruction; and they were driuen to send away many hundreths of the Banyans out of their Townes, to free themselues of vnprofitable Mouths; three Barkes of which came to Surat, others to Cambaya. *Mocrob Chan* laboured very earnestly with the Generall, to ingage himselfe in that warre against the Portugall, which because he could not doe (except in a defensiue quarrell) by his Commission, the *Nabab* (so they call this *Mocrob Chan*, then Vice-Roy or Gouernour of the Countrey about Surat: the Iesuites interprete *Nabab*, supreame Iudge) was strange to the English, and offered the Merchants some hard measure; yea, the Iesuites which were with *Mocrob Chan*, tooke occasion from this refusall to counterfeit a Letter from the Vice-Roy, threatning that except they yeelded to peace, He and his friends the English would ioyne against Surat: which suspition Master *Aldworth*, one of our Merchants, furthered, ignorant of the former; but threatning that their abuses would cause the English to ioyne with the Portugall. Thus ticklish were the termes on which they stood. December the sixteenth, the Generall receiued a Letter, that the Portugals had burnt [r] Goga, with many Villages thereabouts, and ten great Ships, one of which was the Rhemee, with one hundred and twentie small vessels: hee read the Letter of a Iesuite, in which the King of Spaine commanded the Vice-Roy to burne Surat, if they receiued the English. On December the seuen and twentieth, two and twentie Portugall Frigates sought to lay the Hope aboord, but by force of shot were put off. The Vice-Roy sent offer of Friendship to *Mocrob Chan*, on condition that hee would turne the English out of Surat, and suffer him to build a Fort at Swally, otherwise threatning bloudie warres. And so on Ianuary the fourteenth, came two Fleets of Frigates, and on the eighteenth, sixe great Gallions, with three lesser Ships. Two Gallies were yet behinde. The Frigates were threefore, some adde fifteene more. This great force made *Mocrob Chan* to feare, whereupon hee sent a Present to the Vice-Roy, with some Treatie of peace, whereof the Vice-roy made light account, thinking first to ouercome vs (a thing not

p *Aut. Starky.*

Ex *Relat. M.S. Gen. Nic. Downton. Martin Pring. Benjamin Dey. Iohn Leman. William Mashaw, etc.* Master *Downton*, both buried his sonne, and died himselfe in this Voyage, which since we haue published with other our Pilgrims, continued by M. *Elsington*, and M. *Dodsworth*, his successiue successour.

q *N. Withington.*

r Goga is a rich towne, on the other side of the Bay. Some say that there was no so much harme done.

not hard in his conceit) and then to treate of peace on his owne termes. Much policie was vsed on both parts, the *Nabab* complementing and sending Presents to the Vice-Roy, and our Generall also; the Vice-Roy promising much to himselfe, but reckoning without his hoste: and therefore when after the fight hee would haue concluded vpon the conditions that *Mocrob* had offered, hee was then refused with a scoffe, that hee would not make peace with so weake an enemy, that could not preuaile against foure Merchants Ships.

On the twentieth of January, their three smaller Ships had thought to haue Stemmed the Hope, then riding at an Anchor, neere the Barre of Swally, some distance from the rest: these laid her aboord on the Star-boord side; and one Gally, and fiue and fortie sayle of Frigates on their Larboord: the Gallions followed as farre as the Sands would permit. The Admirall made to their helpe, and for the better speed cut their Cable; but the Enemies had alreadie entered (with great shew of resolution) without feare or wit (saith one of the Hopes men) thirtie or fortie were entered on the Fore-castle. But the Gift in this fatall Moneth answered her Name, and gaue them for a *New-yeeres-Gift*, such Orations (roarations yee may call them) that they were easily perswaded to leaue the Hope, and all hopelesse to coole their hote bloods with leaping into the Seas cold waters; where many for want of a Boat, made vse of *Cherons*: those that were of most hope and courage, held still their possession of the entered Hope, but with entered hopes, and dispossession of their liues. *Mashum.*

I know not what *Salmoneus, Dum flammas Iouis & sonitus imitatur Olympi,*
Æris imitans nimbos, & non imitabile fulmen;
or what *Prometheus* hath taught these later Ages to steale *Iupiters* Fires; and instructed so many Cyclopean Artificers to imitate those heauenly, infernall Thunders, and sulphurous lightnings; these Mettall-Deuils, as Angels of Death, with Brazen sides, and Iron Mouths, proclaiming Destruction and Desolation to the World. These Bullets are the true fire-breathing Buls (such the Poets fained at Colchos) and this Ordnance the fire-foaming horses of *Diomedes* feeding on the flesh of men: which yet I know not whether very cruelties haue made sparing, whiles the Terror hath made men sparing in the vse of it; this Age for this cause yeelding fewer pitched battels, and in them fewer slaine numbers, then the former, which neuer heard of this *cruell-merciful Engine*. Inuention of Ordnance first vsed by the Venetians against the Genoues *An. Dom.* 1378. who besieged Possa-Clodia, a town of theirs: inuented by a German Alchymist a Monke called *Berholdus Swartus*: Others say *Constantinus Arklitens.* Printing was also first inuented by a German: the first Printed booke being *Tullies Offices*, at Mentz, by one *Iohn Fust*, which some thinke to be the same with *Gutemberg*, who had made triall of this Art before, without any perfection. This Booke is still at Augsburg printed. 1466. *Econ. P. Vergg. Pancirol. Salmuth &c.* d So doth another nameless Copy, which I haue seene.

But let vs leaue this Parenthesis. The Portugals, whether themselues by casualtie or industry, see fire on their ships, or that the fire which Master *Mullineux*, the Master of the Hope cast into one of them, after that by helpe of Fresh-men sent in the Pinace, they were got cleere of them; certaine it is, that all three driuing away vpon the ebbe (the English had entered before and killed all they found) fell on fire, and running on the Sands, there offered vp themselues at once to all the Elements, the Sayles still standing embracing the Ayre, the Keele kissing her Mother Earth, till their more churlish brethren, the Fire and Water, put them out of possession, and shared all betwixt them. One of the Gallies lost her Nose with a shot, and was content after that, with their Other to looke on. The Gallions rode beyond the Sands. The Frigates could not but participate in their fellowes disaduentures: many of them, saith *Leman*, were sunke and torne in pieces. *Mashum*, another d of the Hopes Company, numbreth fiue and twentie thus perishing. The Hope lost three men, and had fourteene wounded, the Hector lost two. One shot of stone, which the Hope receiued, was measured seuen and twentie Inches about: but the hurt was by fire in her tops, by one of her owne men there slain, whiles he sought to fire the Enemy. The Portugals losse is vncertaine: three hundred and fiftie men were said to be carried to Daman to be buried, besides all that the Sea and Fire had shared betwixt them, which were thought to make vp fiue hundred, some report of eight hundred, and yet themselues gaue out, not aboue fortie or fiftie, whereas the tide cast vp at one place eighteene drowned carkasses.

After this they tried experiments: First by poyson, and this was the Iesuites Iesuitisme (I cannot call it Christianitie) who sent to the Mueedan of Swally, to entice him to poyson the Water of the Well, whence the English fetched for their vse: but the Ethnike had more honestie, and put in quicke Tortoises, that it might appeare by their death, if any venemous hand had beene there. But when *Virus & virus* wanted *vires*, *Dolus* is added, and the Vice-Roy having two ships sent him for supply, two Iunkes, eight or ten Boates, these, or the most of them were employed with great secreecie and subtiltie to fire our ships by night two full of fiery entrailes on the ninth of February, the next night two others chained together and towed with Frigates, and after that in the same night foure other chained together, one of which being fired with an English shot, burnt her selfe and her fellowes, they put fire to all the rest which deuoured them all, without harme to the English. They tooke some of these Fire-workers, & one of which being examined, confessed after M. *Pringes* Relation thus.

I omit the nam s of the Captaines.

The Admirall, called *Todos los Santos*, a ship of eight hundred tuns, had sixe hundred men; eight and twentie Peeces, most brasse. The Saint Benito, Vice-Admirall of seuen hundred Tuns, three hundred and threescore men, twentie Peeces. Saint Lorenzo, a Ship of sixe hundred Tuns, three hundred men, twentie Peeces. The Saint Christopher likewise. The Saint Ieronimo, of fiue hundred Tuns, three hundred men, and twentie three Peeces. Saint Antonio, foure hundred, two hundred men, and fifteene Peeces. Saint Pedro, two hundred, a hundred and twentie men, and eight Peeces. Saint Paulo as many. A Fly-boat of a hundred and fiftie Tuns, fourescore men, and foure Peeces. The two Gallies had fiue and twentie Oares on a side, and in both a hundred Souldiers. Threescore Frigates, with eighteene, and twentie Oares on a side, in each fifteene Souldiers. So great their forces, and (blessed be God) so little their force. The [e] Vice-Royes name was *Don Ieronimo de Saucedo*, sometimes Captaine of Mosambike, after that of Zeilan eighteene yeeres, and now Vice-Roy, by the Kings strait command, and others importunitie drawne into this action. Every day was hee braued with the English Ordnance, but neuer aduentured any other triall by fight: the English siding neere his great Fleet, and dispatching all their other affaires of Merchandise, and mending the Hope, which they sent home with this Newes when they departed from thence; they seemed to stay for them in the way, yet let them passe without any blowes.

e *Ben. Dos.* Another hath *Saucedo.*

This wonder them much glory among the countrey people, *Mocrab Chan* giuing stately entertainment to the Generall, in his Tents on shoare, which one saith were a quarter of a mile about, in the midst, his owne of Crimson Sattin richly embroidered with Gold and Pearle, and couered with Cloth of Gold; he had many Elephants: he gaue the Generall his Sword, made (said hee) in his owne house, the Hilts of massie Gold: (this is their custome to deseruing Captaines) and He gaue him his Girdle, Sword, and Dagger, and Hangers of as faire show, but lesse worth.

Nic. Withington.

Because I haue mentioned the Iesuites Arts in these parts, let this also be added, that Master *Canning* chiefe Merchant, and Agent for the Company, writ to Surat for some others to assist him, being in great feare of poysoning by the Iesuites at the Court; and before any could bee sent, hee was dead, May the nine and twentieth, 1613. One English-man dying a little before, was buried in their Church-yard, whom they tooke vp and buried in the high-way, but were compelled by the King to lay him in his former place, threatning to tume them out of his countrey, and their buried bodies out of that Church-yard. But this later wattes brought them into further miseries: being denied their stipend, and therefore forsaken of their new Conuerts, who bringing them their Beades, did vpbraid them the want of their pay, one of the best Arguments (though no great miracle) wherewith they had perswaded them to their Religion. A French Iesuit at Amadabar begged reliefe of the English, wanting necessary sustenance. Before, the King allowed the Superior seuen Rupias a day, and the rest three. But now this and their faire Church also is denied them, and they say their holes in their chamber. *John Milkhall*, an English Papist, had learned (it is reported) the Art of poysoning; by which he made away three other English-men in Persia, to make himselfe Master of the whole stock; but I know not by what meanes himselfe tasted of the same cup, and was exceedingly swelled, but continued his life many moneths with Antidotes, which yet here left him at Agra, where hee left the value of twentie thousand Dolars, after through the Kings Iustice recouered by the English.

Many other Sea-fights haue since happened in diuers parts of the Indies, betwixt Our men and the Portugals, as that by Captaine *Ben.* f *Iosph* (in which he was slaine, and Captaine *Pepwel* succeeded in the place and quarrell) with *Manuel de Menefes*, whose Carrack was consumed with fire by themselues (as was thought) rather then so great Treasures should be made English spoyles: also in the Persian Gulfe, g by Captaine *Shillang* (slaine there in) Captaine *Blithe* and others, which chased the assaylyng Portugals, *Ruy Frere de Andrade* their Commander, called the Pride of Portugall getting a fall; and since that Ormus h it selfe taken by the Persians; diuers other Portugall prizes, and that especially of the i *Richard*, a small Pinnasse of about twentie Tuns, which tooke a Portugall Ship supposed of two hundred and fiftie; that hauing about fourteene men and boyes, this two hundred and fiftie: These and other fights with them, and more vnfortunate with the Dutch, in k those parts I haue deliuered at large in my *Pilgrimes*, or Bookes of Voyages, which now together with this commeth to the publike view of the World.

f See M. *Terris* Booke, and *Childs* Iournal, & Sir *Tho. Roe* in my voyages.
g See Swans Iournall, and Letters of *Blithe, Browne*, &c.
h Let. of *T. wilson*, and also of *Robert Smith*.
i One *Philips* in the *Richard* was principall cause of that victory by his Mahomed. k Of Dutch and English vnkind quarrells, see Relations of M. *Cocke, Tho. Sparway*, Captaine *Courthop, Rob. Hawes*, Captaine *Fring, John Hatch, William Isard*; Letters of *Cap. Daniel, George Iackson, Ia. Lane, G. Ball, Ch. Willes, Kellum Throgmorton, Ric. Hasse, S. T. Dale, Io. Jordan, A. Spaldwin, G. Maschamp, W. Anthony, H. Fitzherbert, Th. Knolles, B. Churchman, G. Petty*, &c.

§. V.

Of the Trauels of diuers English-men in the Mogols Dominions.

OF the Trauells of Master *Fitch* in these parts, wee haue alreadie spoken: and of Captaine *Hawkins*. In the yeere 1609. the *Ascension* by wilfulnesse of the Master (as is reported) foundred in the Sea, twentie leagues from shoare, which yet they attained, being fiue and fiftie persons, in the Riuer of Gandeuee, from whence they trauelled twelue Course, or eighteene Miles to Sabay, and twelue Course more to Surrat: from thence to Daytaotore, which Citie, hee saith, could not bee conquered by the Mogol, and yeelded vpon composition, hauing still a Banyan King. Sixe and twentie Course further is Nutherbery, a great Basar or Market of Brazen wares, Armour and Beasts. Eight and twentie Course beyond is the Towne Saddifee on the Riuer Tyndee, which runs to Surrat, and diuideth the Bannians and Guzurats. Thence they trauelled twelue Course to a Monasterie, and the next day came to Bramport, where the Great Generall called *Can Cannaw* liueth, who on the twelfth of October returned from the Warres, with fifteene hundred Elephants, thirtie thousand Horses, ten thousand Camels, three thousand Dromedaries. This Citie is farre bigger then London, of great Trade, and faire. From hence they went fifteene Courses to Caddor, fourteene to Sawbon, and thence with the Carauan many daies, leauing which they ioyned with a Can of the Countrey bound for Agra, trauelling fiue daies through a Desart, wherein are store of wild Elephants, Lions, Tygres, Cat of Mountaines, Porpentines, and other wild Beasts innumerable; but these they saw, and were forced to make fires in the nights about their Tents to guard them. These Desarts are a hundred Course long, each Course being a mile and halfe. They had in their way after they were past this Desart, the Citie Handee, where the King hath a Castle and House cut out of the maine Rock, and wrought with carued worke round about, in it fiftie Pecces of Ordnance, a Fort impregnable, and made a Prison for great Men. Heere were also two Hospitals for Captaines maymed in the Warres. The next day they came to Tamlico, which runneth into Indus, and two daies after to Agra.

Rob. Coucr.

He tells of Elephants fighting before the Mogol, parted with Rackets of wilde fire, made round like hoopes, which they runne in their faces: some fight with wild Horses, fixe Horses to an Elephant, which he kills with clasping his trunke about their necks, and pulling them to him, breakes their necks with his teeth. Hee hath also Deere, Rams, Verualhoes, or Bezors, Lyons, Leopards, Wolues, that fight before him. Condemned persons may craue the combate with the Lyon: one he saw that at the first encounter felled the Lyon with his Fist, but was soone torne in pieces, before the King. Hee saw also Allegators or Crocodiles kept in Ponds for like purpose, one of which killed two stoned Horses at one time.

Agra.

There are foure great Markets euery day, where things are very cheape, a Hen for two pence, a Sheepe for two shillings, a good Hog sold by the Bannians for two shillings, and other things proportionable. They craued the Kings Passe for England, who granting it vnder his Hand and Seale, the Secretary went with them to the Third Queene (of which he is said to haue ten, and a thousand Concubines, and two hundred Eunuchs) which was Keeper of the Great Seale. Hence they passed fiue in number to Fetterbarre [a] twelue Course, and twelue more to Bianie, which is the chiefe Place for *Indeco* in all the Indies, where are twelue Indico Mills. *Indico* growes on small bushes, like Goose-berry bushes, and beares a seed like a Cabadge-seed, and being cut downe lies on heapes for halfe a yeere to rot, and then brought into a Vault to bee trodden with Oxen from the stalkes, and so is grownd fine at the Mils, and lastly, boyled in Fornaces, refined and sorted, the best there worth eight pence a pound.

[a] *Fatipore*, a Citie as bigge as London, 1. of Salbank. Indico.

Thence they passed to Hendown, fiue and twentie Course, an ancient faire Citie, to Mogol, a small Market Towne fourteene, to Halstot twelue, to Chatsoe twelue, to Ladanna twelue, to Mosabad eight, to Bandason twelue. Thence to Paddar, a Riuer that runnes into the Persian Gulfe, and parts the Indostans and Hendownes. Twentie Course beyond, Roree, Buckar, and Suckar, in the Riuer of Damiadee which runnes into the same Sea. At Buckar lyes *Allee Can*, Vice-Roy of the Bulloches, a stubborne People: this Towne stands like an Iland in the Riuer. Sucker is a clothing Towne, the first of the Bulloches, and Roree the last of the Moltans, which are Mahumetans. Here they staid foure and twentie daies for a Calisa or Carauan (a great company of Merchants trauelling together) because the Countrey was full of Theeues. Seuenteene Course from Sucker is Gorra, a Towne of the Bullochees, which (he saith) worship the Sunne, and are Man-eaters, of Gyant-like proportion. Norry, ten Course: the last Towne of the Bullochees, the next Puttans. Here for their entertain-

ment, Aprill the first, 1610. they were befet with Theeues, twelue Fiddlers first meeting them, but their Musicke cost deere by bribes and composition, the Mogols passe hindering further outrage. Seuenteene Course they trauelled to Daddor; foure and thirtie ouer the Mountaines to Vachesto; from thence seuen and fiftie ouer the Mountaines to Candahar, a great Citie of the Puttans, where *Sauder Can* resided as Vice-Roy, where are continually seuen or eight thousand Camels occupied in Trade to and fro. The Gouernour hath b fortie thousand Horses in redinesse for Warre.

b 12000. or 15000. within the Citie, *Still*, *R. Still* or *Steil*, and *I. Crowther*.

Richard Still and *Iohn Crowther*, were lately sent from Azmere, Asimere or Agimere, where the Mogoll now resides to Spahan in Persia, to obtaine Trade for the English, by Sir *Robert Sherlies* meanes, which was effected. They passed by the way of Lahore, and therefore I would desire You to beare Them company, for better knowledge of the Countrey. Their way was first towards Agra, and Fetipoie, which is a faire Citie, and hath in it a goodly House of the Kings, built by *Echebar*, with many spacious Gardens: now it goes to ruine, much of the stone carried to Agra, much ground sowne within the Wals. April the ninth, 1614. they come to Dillee, a very great and ancient Citie, where many Kings lye buried (and as some say the Rites of Coronation are still solemnized) many Nobles and Captaines haue their Houses of Pleasure, and their Sepulchres: the vulgar sort beggarly, most Banians. On the seuenteenth, they came to Sinan an ancient Citie. On the one and twentieth to the old Citie Sultanpoare. Sixe Courses from it they passed a Riuer as broad as the Thames called Viau, which runnes West into Sinda or Indus. Here was *Pitchie Can* his Tents pitched like a little Citie: he was Embassadour into Persia. On the foure and twentieth they came to Lahore. Their Report of this agrees with Master *Coryats*, whose Relation thereof is lately published. They say it is the best of India, plentifull of all things, or in Master *Coryats* words, such a delicate and euen Tract of ground as I neuer saw before (and hee hath seene a great deale, besides his Europæan sights at Venice, & since at Constantinople, hauing added more Asian Titles to his before c *Admired* Name, then the ancient Roman *Scipio's* or *Cæsars* dreamt of, yea more then *Iustinian* in the Proœme of his d *Imperiall Institutions* hath marshalled and mustered together; the furthest foot English-Traueller that our dayes haue had, and the longest English stile which our eares haue heard, with many rests for your wearied breath by the way, a stile indeed so high you can hardly get ouer, HIEROSOLYMITAN--SYRIAN--MESOPOTAMIAN--ARMENIAN-MEDIAN-PARTHIAN-PERSIAN--INDIAN LEGGE--STRETCHER OF OBCOMB) Euen this our Odcombian Foot-Pilgrime, which makes your Pen-Pilgrime in I know not what liking or likenesse, at the very mention of his Name to sympathize, and his braines to fall in Trauell as learnedly mad, scarfly able to containe wonted words and wits, in this extaticall gaze and maze of that *Propetetike* Foot: ready to admire, adore and kisse, and yet (O braines, No braines) no enuy that his lowest part: For who is able to know his better parts? He doubts whether the like be to be found, within the whole Circumference of the habitable World. A row of Trees extends it selfe on both sides the way from the Towns end of Lahore, twentie dayes iourney, to the Townes end of Agra: most of them bearing (saith e *Still*) a kinde of Mulbery. The way is dangerous by night for Theeues, by day secure. Euery fiue or sixe Course there are faire *Serues* of the Kings or Nobles, for beautifying the way, memory of their Names, and entertainment of Trauellers, where you may haue a Chamber and a Place to set your Horses, with store of Horse-meat; but in many of them little prouision for Men, by reason of the Banian Superstition. When a man hath taken vp his lodging in one of these, no other man may dispossesse him. About day-breake all make readie to depart together, and then the Gates are opened, till then shut for feare of Theeues. After the Sun hath beene vp two houres, the heat makes trauell irksome.

March. 17.

T.Cor. his letter to *M. L. W.*

c *Vers. Hist.*

d *Flosius Iustinianus, Alimnicus, Gabicus, Francicus, Germanicus, Antiquus, Alanicus, Vandalicus, Africanus*: so that which followes, *Pius, Felix, Inclytus, Victor, ac Triumphator, semper Augustus*, I hope his friends in the Vertes before his booke, haue sworn him more prodigious: and himselfe before he comes home must needs multiply further, hauing such huge bundles of papers abreeding in so many places, at *Aleppo, Spahan, Asmere, &c.*

e *R. Still.*

Lahore is one of the fairest and ancientest Cities in India, standing on Indus: It containeth at the least (M. *Coryat* tells you) sixteene miles in compasse. Twelue daies before hee came there, he passed Indus, there as broad as the Thames at London. In the mid-way betwixt Lahor and Agra, ten miles out of the way on the left hand, a Mountainous people, are said to haue but one Wife to all the Brethren of one Family, as wee haue elsewhere spoken of the Arabians. Merchants resort to this Citie out of all parts of India, imbarking their goods here in great Boats for Tutta, the chiefe Citie in Sinda, a Trade of much importance in times of Peace to the Portugals, which by this way Traded to Ormus and Persia, and this way also furnishing India with Pepper. Twelue or fourteene thousand Camels lading yeerely passeth from hence to Persia by Candahar, before the Wars with the Portugalls but three thousand; this mountainous way, being in Winter cold, in Summer hot. The Carauans spend sixe or seuen moneths betwixt Lahor and Spahan. Spices are deere in Persia by reason of the long land-carriage from Mesulapatan this way. *Still* and *Crewther* departed from Lahor, May the thirteenth, and on the two and twentieth came to Multan, a great and

and ancient Citie, within three Course of Indus, but poore; for which cause they detaine the Carauans there diuers dayes, eight, ten, or twelue, to benefit the Citie. They entred the Mountaines, the second of Iune, where they had brackish water: the third and fourth daies they trauelled all night, climing high Mountaines, and following water-courses, and so continued till they came to Chatcha on the tenth. In all these eight dayes trauell, is no sustenance for Man or Beast, except in some places a little grasse, and therefore at Lacca in the beginning of this way they hyred an Oxe to carry Barly for their Horses. On the nineteenth, they came to Duckee, another Fort of the Mogols, and the seuen and twentieth passed the *Durwat*, or straits of the Hills, dangerous narrow wayes on both sides menaced by high Rocks, from whence a few with stones may stop great multitudes, and diuers Carauans are thus cut off. For the Agwans or Puttans, the Mountaine Inhabitants are a theeuish people. The second of Iuly, they came to Pesimga, another Fort, and passing thence ouer a mightie Mountaine, on the seuenth came to Candahar. The Agwans are white, stout, strong, rob Carauans, sell all stragglers; but now with feare, and the gaine they get by selling their Cattell to the Carauans, they are more tractable.

Chatcha, a Fort.

Couerts saith, they weare their beards long, are not Mahumetans; their Priests weare Sack-cloth, with great chaines about their middles, falling downe and praying in Sack-cloth and Ashes. At Candahar they hire Camels for India, or Persia: hence into Persia the Countrey is barren, and therefore they go in smaller companies, sometimes in two or three dayes trauell not seeing a greene thing: at their lodging-places, water, but often brackish and stinking. Hence they departed, Iuly the three and twentieth, and on the fiue and twentieth came to Cusheeunna, the vtmost Garrison in the Mogols Frontiers, thirtie Course from Candahar. On the seuen and twentieth they came to Grees, a Castle of the Sophies, a Course from the Riuer Sabba, which separateth the Persian and Mogoll Confines. The people of Grees are Theeues, and the Captaine little better then a Rebell.

From hence they reckon their way by farsangs (*parasange*) fiue of which make two Courses. They trauelled [m] August the sixth, to Farra, a Towne walled with Sun-dryed Brick, and stored with Water, without which here is no store, and therefore they carry it in some places, if there be good ground, three or foure miles vnder ground. Heere they vse men kindly as they goe into Persia, for feare of complaint, but in their returne to India very hardly, searching them to the skin for Gold, which to carry out, or any Siluer coyne but the Kings, is death. On the twelfth day, they were faine to dig for water. On the two and twentieth, they came to Deuzayde, where they pretend all to be Religious people. On September the fifteenth (I still follow *Still*) they came to Spahan, where they found Sir *Robert Sherly*, then dispatched in Embassage for Spaine from the King of Persia [n], by the way or Ormus for Goa, and thence to Lisbon. Hee procured the Kings Great Seale to all his Gouernours of Sea-Ports, kindly to entertaine the English at Iasques, &c. dated Sertember the thirtieth, 1615. the same day that Sir *Robert* and his Lady departed with great pompe to Siras.

m *Still. Couerts* Trauels are extant in his Booke.

n Hee saith, that he hath put to death his own sonne, and done 1000 other tyrannies, *Iohn Crowther. W. Nichols. Iohn Mildnall.*

Iohn Crowther returned October the twentieth, towards Lahor, and he on December the second, towards Bagdat, and thence by Aleppo for England.

William Nicols, one of the *Ascensions* company, trauelled the Mogols Countrey Eastward to Mesulopatan, where the Hollanders had then a Factorie. *Iohn Mildnall* in his Letters, dated from Casbin in Persia, 1606. October the third, testifieth, that he had beene at Lahor and at Agra, where hee presented the King with nine and twentie great Horses, at fiftie or threescore pounds a Horse, with diuers Iewels and Rings, and obtained Articles of Trading. Of his comming since into those parts, is before mentioned from Master *Withington's* Relations. And his Trauells are the next Trauells of our Pen; first, from Surrat to Amadabar, by Periano, Cosumbay, Barocho (a Citie walled, on a high Hill, a Riuer running by as broad as the Thames, where are the best Calicoes in the Kingdome) Saringa, Carron, Boldra (a City fairer but lesse then Barocho, where *Mussaf Chan* hath three thousand horse) Nirtiand a great Towne where they make Indico. These are in the way from Surat to Amadabar, chiefe Citie of Guzerat, neere as great as London, strongly walled, situate in a plaine by the Riuers side, much frequented by Merchants, Christians, Moores, and Ethnikes. The Gouernour is *Abdala Chan* of fiue thousand Horse pay. From thence hee went to Cambaya. At Serkesse three Courses from Amadabar, hee saw the Sepulchres of the Kings of Guzerat, very faire and well kept, much visited from all parts of the Kingdome. Their Temple is very faire. A Course from hence is a goodly House by the Riuers side, and a Garden a mile in compasse. It was built by *Chon Chonnaw*, the chiefe of the Mogol Nobilitie, in memoriall of a great Victorie there obtained on the last King of Guzerat there captiued, and his Kingdome subdued, the battell was fought in this place. They lodged one night in this House, where none dwelleth. Only poore men are appointed to looke to the Garden. Hauing newes of three English ships arriued at Lowribander the Port Towne of Gutu Negar Tutta (commonly

Mic. Withington.

88. Courses.

1601. (commonly called Tutta) chiefe Citie of Sinda, hee was sent thither, and December the thirteenth, came to Cassumpauo, and thence with a Caphilo trauelled on the fourteenth to Callitalowny a faire Castle, and the fifteenth to Calwalla, a prettie Village, which *Echebar* gaue to a company of Women and their Posteritie for euer, to bring vp their children in dancing, &c. They practised this in the Carauan, euery man giuing them money, and then impudently asked if any man wanted a bed-fellow. The next day they came to Carrya, a well-manned Fortresse, and staying a day for more company because of Theeues, came the next to Deccanaura, losing one Camell stolne from them, and a Man slaine. Thence to Bollodo, a Fort kept by *Newlock Abram Cabrath*, which that day came with a hundred and threescore and nine heads of the Cælies, a robbing Nation. The next day to Sariandgo another Fort, and on the one & twentieth to Radempoore, a great Town with a Fort, where they staid to make prouision of Water, & other necessaries for their iourny through the Desarts.

Calwalla, a Towne of filthy Women.

Desart.

On the three and twentieth they went seuen Course, lay in the Fields, and met a Carauan which came from Tutta, robbed of all their goods: on the foure and twentieth, twelue: on the fiue and twentieth, fourteene, lodged by a Well of water so salt that their Cattell could not drinke it: the six and twentieth ten Course, to such another Well; and their gaue their Camels drinke, not hauing drunke before in three dayes: the seuen and twentieth fourteene course. The eight and twentieth ten, and came to a Village called Negar Parkar. In this Desart they saw great store of wilde Asses, red Deere, Foxes, and other wilde Beasts. At Parkar they met another robbed Carauan. This Towne payes Tribute to the Mogol. From hence till you come within halfe a dayes iourney of Tutta, they acknowledge no King, but rob and spare whom they please. When the Mogol sends any Armie against them, they fire their Houses (which are made of Straw and Mortar, in forme of Bee-Hiues soone rebuilded) and flye into the Mountaines. They take for custome what they please, and then guard Passengers and Merchants, loth any should rob them but themselues.

From hence they went fixe Courses, and lay by a Tanke or Pond of Fresh-water, and on the last of December, eight Courses, and lodged by a brackish Well, Ianuary the first, they trauelled ten Courses to Burdiano. The Water is brackish, and many were sicke of it; yet they were forced to make prouision thereof for foure dayes, the space of fortie Courses; and on the fifth they came seuen other Courses to three Wels, of which two were salt, the third not perfectly fresh: the next day ten Courses to Nauraquemire a prettie Towne, where their *Raddingpore Cassila* forsooke them. He and two other Indian Merchants, with their nine Seruants, ten Camels, and fiue Camel-men remained to goe for Tutta, whither they had now three dayes iourney.

Desart.

From this Paradise (so it seemed after so tedious a Desart) they departed, Ianuary the eight, hauing hired one of the *Ragi*, or Gouernour his kindred for twentie Laries (which make about twentie shillings) to conduct and conuoy them, and went ten Courses to Gundayaw, where they had beene robbed, but for their Guard. The next day were twice assaulted, and forced each time to pay fiue Laries, came to Sarruna, a great Towne of the Razboothes with a Castle: whence it is fourteene Courses to Tutta. *Ragi Bouma* the Gouernour, is eldest Sonne to *Sultan Bulbull*, who had beene lately captiued by the Mogoll, and spoiled of his eyes, and two moneths before our comming had made an escape to these Mountaines, animating his kindred to reuenge that losse of his sight. This *Ragi* was kinde to our Author as a stranger, and made him sup with him: the occasion that they hired him for fortie Laries, with fiftie Horse-men to conduct them to the Gates of Tutta. Hereunto they were the rather perswaded by aduice of a Banian, which had then come from Tutta, who also told Master *Withinton*, that Sir *Robert Sherly* had beene much abused by the Portugals, and the Gouernour at Lowribander, his House fired, and his Men hurt in the night: and arriuing at Tutta thirteene dayes after, was there vnkindly vsed by *Meersa Rusto* the Gouernour. This *Ragi* led them fiue Courses, where they lay by a Riuer side, and at two of the clocke in the morning they departed, but were led a contrary way, and about breake of day brought into a Thicket, where he made them vnlade, tooke away their Weapons and bound them; suddenly with their Camell ropes drawne close with a Truncheon, hanged the two Merchants and their fiue Men, stripped and buried them. Mee (as a farre Countreyman, not knowing the language) hee spared with my Pions or Seruants, but tooke my Horse (giuing me a Iade) and foureescore Rupias from mee, sent mee twentie Courses with my men vp to the Mountaines to a brother of his, where I continued two and twentie dayes a close prisoner, and then order was sent to conuey mee to Parker: but in the way was robbed of my clothes and all that I had: so that I and my men were forced to liue vpon the charitie of people by begging: onely my Horse, as not worth taking, was left me, for which I could get but foure mamoodees (foure shillings) but chancing on a Banian whom I had knowne at Amadabar, I was relieued and sold not my Horse. Wee came to Radingpoore

Rebuild.

S. R. Sherly.

Mr. Withington robbed.

May the nineteenth, and April the second, to Amadabar: thence to Cambaya, and (passing the Riuer seuen Courses broad, yeerely drowning many) to Saurau, a Towne and Castle of the Razbootches, and fiue and twentie Courses further to Borocho, and passing that Riuer, to Cassimba, and thence to Surat. In all this Countrey of Sinda, no Citie of greater Trade then Tutta; the chiefe Port thereto is Lowribander, three dayes iourney from thence, where is a faire Roade without the Riuers mouth, cleere of Wormes, which about Surat, and other places of the Indies infest the ships, so that after three or foure moneths riding, if it were not for sheathing, they were not able to returne. The Ports and Roades of Sinda are free of them. In two moneths they passe from Tutta to Lahor, and returne downe the streame in one. And from Agra goods may bee conueyed on Camels in twentie dayes, which is on Sinda Riuer, and thence in fifteene or sixteene dayes aboord the Ships at Lowribander, as soone as to Surat, if Theeues did not make it lesse secure.

Sinda.

Wormes dangerous to ships

May the fourth, 1614. Master *Wathington* went from Surat to Brampore, where Sultan *Parwise* lyes. It is situate in a Plaine by a great Riuer, hauing a large Castle; and thence to champaigne Countrey, full of Riuers, Brookes, and Springs. From Brampore to Agra very mountainous, hardly passable for Camels by Mando the neerest way: there are many high Hils and strong Castles in the way, Townes and Cities in euery dayes iourney well inhabited, the Country peaceable and cleere of Theeues. Betweene Agimere or Azmere and Agra, are a hundred and twentie Courses: at euery Course end a great Pillar erected, and at euery Course end saying his prayers, and lodging at the tenth. Agra is a huge Towne, situate by the great Riuer Geminie or Iamena. The Castle is the fairest thing in it, compassed with the fairest and highest Wall that I haue seene, two miles about, well replenished with Ordnance: the rest, except Noble-mens houses (which are faire and seated by the Riuer) ruinous. Fatipore is decayed, but hath a very stately Temple built by Geometry; as *Echebars* Sepulchre, the fairest thing that euer I saw. I went to Ganges, two dayes iourney from Agra, the Water whereof is carryed a hundred miles by the Banians for deuotion, which say it will neuer stinke, how long soeuer it bee kept. From Agra Master *Fitch* went to Satagam in Bengala by Water. So that if you obserue all these Trauels of [o] *Fitch, Couert, Still, Wathington*, and the rest of our Countrey-men, and adde thereto the iourney of *Goes* from thence to China, with other Relations of the Iesuites before expressed, you shall haue a better Corographie of this Countrey, then any of our Maps haue yet deliuered. And their want hath made me thus full and tedious. I might adde the Trauels of [p] *William Clerke*, one of the *Ascensions* Company, which serued the Mogol in his Warres diuers yeeres (and returned in the last Ship, whiles these things are publishing) against the Rasboots and Decans, hauing two Horse pay, which is neere fixe pounds a moneth, and had some moneths pay allowed him before-hand, that so hee might furnish himselfe: for they must buy and maintaine their Horses.

o *Fitch* to the South-East and to the East from Agra. *Nieuh* S.E. by Land. *Goes* N. E. to China. *Couert* N. and S. quite through. *Still* to Lahor N. E. and to Persia N.N.W. *Withington* the Westerle parts to Sinda, &c.
p *W. Clerke.*
q *W. Payton.*

Master *Walter* [q] *Payton* was Master in the Expedition, and carried Sir *Robert Sherly*, whom they had thought to haue landed at Gauder or Guader in Masquerano, in fiue and twentie Degrees, and fix and twentie Minutes, but the people were then in Rebellion against the Persian, and by damnable treachery had possessed themselues of the Ship and all the goods, had not one *Hoge Comal*, a Surgeon amongst them reuealed this mysterie of their iniquitie: they had thus betrayed three ships before. By this villany of the Bulloches, they were forced to goe further to the mouth of Sinde, which is East and by North, in foure and twentie Degrees, and foure and thirtie Minutes. They landed the Embassador, September the nine and twentieth, 1613. at Diul, in the Mols Dominion, fifteene miles from the ships. The Portugals reported them to be Theeues, according to their custome. And when they fought for Trade in Sinda, the Gouernour had yeelded but for the Portugals, which threatned to depart if the English were admitted, whose custome hee was loth to lose, being worth, hee said, a *Lack* of Rupias, ten thousand pound English and more (which shewes the exceeding Trade of Sinda) by the yeere.

But this Country, and the disposition of their King, are most amply described to vs together, with the remarkable Rarities of those parts, by the *Hon.* industry of Sir *Thomas Roe*, Embassadour for his Maiestie with the Mogoll, whose Map of those parts wee heere present you; as likewise by his learned Chaplaine, Master *Edward Terry*: both whose Obseruations wee haue presented in our first Tome of Voyages. To them I referre the industrious Reader, for more ample relations of these parts, then in this Worke were conuenient to insert.

Amongst

Amongst other things, the Reader shall see the true course of Indus (which all Moderne Geographers haue exceedingly falsified) and of *Ganges*. *William Finch* hath also written of those parts. I thought good heere to adde that which Master *Steele* and his wife told me of the Women of those parts. Master *Steele* hauing a project of Water-works, to bring the water of Ganges by Pipes, &c. carried fiue men with him to the Mogol, who gaue them entertainment with large wages by the day, and gaue to each an Arabian Horse. One of these was a Painter, whom the Mogol would haue to take his picture; and because hee could not speake the language, Master *Steele* (who could speake the language of the Court, which is Persian) was admitted (a thing not permitted to Men) into the Mogols lodgings, where he did sit for the said Limner. At his entrance, the chiefe Eunuch put a cloth ouer his head, that he should not see the Women (which hee might heare as hee passed, and once also saw them, the Eunuch purposely putting on a thinner cloth ouer his head) there being of them some hundreds. His wife had more access at *Chan Channas* Court, whose daughter (sometimes wife to the elder brother of this Mogol, and liuing still a widdow) had a desire to see the English-woman, and *Chan-Channa* intreated her husband to permit it. Shee was fetched in a close Chariot drawne by white Oxen, attended by Eunuchs; and was first brought into an open Court, in midst of which was a Tanke or Well of Water, where sate many women, slaues to *Chan-Channas* daughter, of diuers Nations and complexions; some blacke, exceeding louely and comely of person notwithstanding, whose haire before did stand vp with right tufts, as if it had growne vpward, nor would ruffling disorder them; some browne, of Indian complexion; others very white, but pale, and not ruddy: many of them seemed goodly and louely, all sitting in their slight, but rich garments on the floore couered with carpets. The Lady came forth in meaner attire, whereat they all arose and did her reuerence, with their faces to the ground. Mistresse *Steele* made her three courtesies, after the English fashion (being also in English attire) and deliuered her a Present (without which there is no visitation of great persons) and the Lady caused her to sit by her, and after discourse, entertained her with a Banket; and began familiaritie with her, continued and increased with often visitations, and rewarded with many gifts, as of womens vestments of of those parts; some of which I saw, the vpper garment like a smocke, of thin Calico, vnder which they weare a paire of breeches close aboue, the neather parts very long and slender, loosely ruffling about their legs, of thin stuffe also; the mans garment differing from the womans, by the fastning on the side vnder the arme, whereas the womans is fastened before, both tyed with ribbands. *Chan Channa* caused his Taylor to take view of Master *Steele*, and without other measure hee made him a cloake of cloth of gold, after the English fashion very comely, which I also saw.

§. VI.

Of the Rasboots, and other people subiect to the Mogol, and of their Countries, Religion, and Rites.

THus haue we delineated this huge Giantly Body of the Mogol Empire. The Soule or Religion thereof, is more inuisible. What lurking places and labyrinths the breasts of the Kings haue had in their vnknowne, curious, vncertaine Faith, yee haue heard, and may heereby guesse at the rest. As the people are manifold, so are their Rites; some of which, about Ganges, and in other parts, haue alreadie beene touched: and some hereafter, as the People and their Rites are diffused and disperses in diuers Tracts of India, we shall elsewhere mention. Besides Christian Forreiners, the principall Religion is Ethnike, though that of the Prince be Mahumetan.

The *Reiabuti*, *Rasbootes*, or *Rasbooches*, the ancient Inhabitants of the Countrey of Sinda, are Gentiles. How strong one of them is, you haue heard Captaine *Hawkins* report. His name, as I haue since learned of Mr. *Rogers*, Mr. *Clarke*, and Mr. *Withington*, is *Ranna*; some of them affirming, That hee is lately come in, and hath sent his sonne a pledge to the Mogols Court, who for this cause, and his sake, hath beene so long resident at Azmere. But Mr. *Clarke*, employed in these wars, saith, That it is not a subiection, but voluntarie friendship and neighbourhood, with acknowledgement of himselfe the Inferior. A Rebell or Outlaw he cannot be called, because hee was neuer subiect; accounting the Mogoll Superior in power, but not his Lord. There are of these many Casts, or Tribes, each of which haue supreame and independent Lords: Nature building them, with little helpe of Art, impregnable Fortresses, or inaccessable Hils. One of which, called *Dewras*, is said to haue very many populations; able on the Hill tops to gather sufficient prouisions for themselues, and the neighbour-

r 20000. horse, 50000. foot, and a mountainous Countrey, hardly inuaded and conquered.

Mr. *Clarke*.

bour-Markets; impossible without corruption to be conquered. When any of these Castes, or Tribes, disagree, the Mogoll interposeth himselfe, professing to take part with the right. Their Countrey lies in the direct way from Surat to Agra, the wayes by Amadauar, or by Brampore, both much about, yet frequented by Merchants, for feare of them. The Countrey people [b] are rude, naked from the waste vpwards, with Turbants differing from the Mogol fashion. Their Armes are Sword, Buckler, and Launce. Their Buckler is great, in fashion of a Bee-hiue, in which they will giue their Camels drinke, and Horses prouender. Their Horses are good, swift, and strong, which they ride vnshod, and back at a yeere old. A resolute people; which the Mogoll saith, knowes as well to die, as any in the world. They eate no Beefe nor Buffolo, but haue them in superstitious respect. The Rasbutche husband dying, the wife is burned. The manner is this: The wife accompanies the dead bodie of her husband in her best array, pompously attended with her friends and kindred, and with Musick. The fire being made, she compasseth the same twice or thrice: first bewayling her husbands death; and then reioycing, that she shall now liue with him againe; and then embracing her friends, sits downe on the top of the pyle, taking her husbands head in her lap, and bids them kindle the fire. This done, her friends throw Oyle and other sweer Perfumes on her, shee enduring the fire with admirable patience, loose, and not bound. I haue seene many (it is M. *Withingtons* report) the first at Surat, the woman being but ten yeeres old, and not yet a woman hauing not knowne her husband, who was slaine in the wars, and his clothes brought home. Yet would she needs burne with his clothes: and the Gouernour not permitting, because shee was a Virgin, her friends intreated and bribed him thereto, shee seeming impatient of that delay, and saying, her husband was a great way before her, with much blind ioy entring into endlesse sorrowes. The kindred of the deccased husband doe not force this vnkind kindnesse, but the wiues owne kindred; holding it a disgrace to their family, if shee refuse, which she hath power to doe: but few will; and then shee must shaue her haire, and breake her iewels, and is not suffered to eate, drinke, sleepe, or company with any bodie, till her death. If, after purpose to burne, impatient of the flame, she leapes out, her father and mother will bind and burne her perforce. But such weaknesse seldome happens. In some places they obserue it, with Rites a little differing: carrying the woman in great pompe on a Pageant, and binding her to a stake, all her kindred kneeling round about her, and praying to the Sun, and their other Idols. Shee hath betwixt her legs, and vnder each arme, a bag of Gun-powder; the fire made all of sweet Woods. Wee shall mention other Rites in other places.

b M. Withington.

R. Coueri.

The *Hendownes* possesse the Countrey North from Asmere toward the Multans: degenerate Gentiles, and refusing no manner of Flesh or Fish. They pray naked, dresse and eat their meat naked; and where they dresse and eate their meat, make a Circle, within which, none must enter during that time. Their women are brought vp from their child-hood with shackles, some of Siluer, some of Brasse, and some of Iron, on their legges, and Rings in their eares; all which encrease with themselues, being made bigger, as they grow; so that in time a man may thrust his hand through the holes of their eares. Also they weare Bracelets of Elephants teeth about their armes, from the wrist to the elbow. Wee haue already spoken of the Bulloches, their Northerly neighbours, Sunne-worshipping. Giantly Bignesse, and Inhumane humanitie, in eating mans-flesh (and likewise of the Puttans or Agwans.) The Bulloches in Sinda, and vpon the Persian Gulfe (it seemes of this generation) are Mahumetans, Robbers by Land, and Pyrats by Sea, whereto they adde the murther of those they rob. Their treachery to Sir *R. Sherly*, and the Expedition, is before mentioned; which had ir had expedition according to their plot, they had murthered all but the Surgeon, the Musician, the Boyes, and the Women. When I was in Sinda (saith M. *Withington*) they tooke a Boat, with seuen Italians, and one Portugall Fryar, this ripped vp by them, to seeke Gold in his entrailes, the rest slaine in the fight. Yet there are very honest men of them in Guzerat, and about Agra.

R. Coueri.

M. Peyton.

M. Withington.

Touching other Superstitions of this Kingdome, thus writeth *Ioannes Oranus*, in the Narration of this Kingdome c. Not farre from the Citie Lahor is an Idoll, resembling a woman, which they call *Nazar Coto*, framed with two Heads, & six or seuen Armes, and twelue or fourteene Hands; one of which brandisheth a Speare, another a Club. Hereunto resort many Pilgrims to worship; and hereof they tell many miracles: as, that many cut off their tongues, which are againe restored whole vnto them, but remaine mute. Some thinke our breath to bee our Soule. Some affirme, That all things are the same thing. Some, that God onely hath a being, other things are shadowes and appearances. Some thinke all things, and some, the round Circle of the World; and some, themselues, to bee God. Almost all doe hold the commigration of Soules into the bodies of Beasts. They say, the World shall last foure Ages, or Worlds; whereof three are past. The first lasted seuenteene *Laches* (euery

c Narratio Reg. Moger. Lahor is 300 miles from Agra.

Laches

Laches contained an hundred thousand yeeres) and eight and twentie thousand yeeres. Men in that World liued ten thousand yeeres, were of great stature of bodie, and great sincerities of minde. Thrice in this space did God visibly appeare on the Earth: First, in forme of a fish, that hee might bring out the Booke of the Law of Brama; which one *Causacar* had hurled into the Sea: The second time, in forme of a Snaile, that he might make the Earth dry and solid: Lastly, like a Hog, to destroy one that said he was God; or as others of them as truely say, to recouer the Earth from the Sea, which had swallowed it. The second World lasted ten *Laches*, and ninetie two thousand and six yeeres; in which, men were as tall as before, and liued a thousand yeeres. God did appeare foure times: First, in a monstrous forme, the vpper part a Lion, the lower a Woman, to represse the pride of one, which gaue out himselfe for God: Secondly, like a poore Bramane, to punish a proud King, that would by a new-deuised Art fly into Heauen: The third time, to be reuenged of another King, which had slain a poore Religious man, he came in the likenesse of a Man, named *Parcaram*: and lastly, like one *Ram*, the sonne of *Giocorat*, which had slaine *Parcaram*. The third World continued eight *Laches* and foure thousand yeeres, wherein men liued fiue hundred yeeres; and God appeared twice in Humane likenesse. The fourth Age shall endure foure *Laches*, whereof are alreadie passed foure thousand fiue hundred fourescore and twelue yeeres. They say God will also appeare in this Age. Others imagine, That he hath alreadie appeared, and that *Echebar* is hee. Some hold, That those ten Appearances were but creatures, which had receiued Diuine power. They themselues easily perceiue the vanity of these *Chimera's*, and monstrous opinions, but will not leaue them, lest they should (at the same cast) lose their Wealth and Superstition together.

f 8. *Fitch.* In the Countrey of the Mogor they haue f many fine Carts, carued and gilded, with two Wheeles, drawn with two little Buls, about the bignesse of our great Dogs in England, and they will runne with any Horse, and carry two or three men in one of those Carts. They are couered with Silke, or fine Cloth, and be in vse as our Coaches in England.

T. Coryat. But we will shut vp this too great discourse of the great Mogols Greatnesse, in the words of the Worlds Greatest Foot-post. He tels vs, from the very Mogols Court, That this present Prince, is a man of three and fiftie yeeres of age, of complexion middle, betwixt white and blacke, in a more expressiue Epitheton, Olive; of a seemely composition of bodie, of stature little vnequall to Mine, but much more corpulent (hee neuer trauelled so much on foot, nor ten moneths together with fiftie shillings expence.) His Dominion is little lesse then foure thousand English miles: which, if it come short of the Turke in Geometricall dimension of ground, it is with a great pleonasme supplied by the fertilitie of his Soyle, and in the vnion of all his Territories. Against hee exceeds him in Reuenue (a great deale more then M. *Coryats* reckoning) hee presenteth himselfe thrice euerie day: at the rising of the Sunne, whilst hee adoreth by the eleuation of his hands; at noone, and at fiue of the clocke in the euening: but he standeth in a roome aloft, alone by himself, and looketh from a window that hath an embroidered sumptuous Couerture, supported with two siluer Pillasters, to yeeld shadow vnto him. In feeding of his Beasts, hee spendeth at the least ten thousand pound sterling a day, and keepeth a thousand women for his owne body, whereof the chiefe is *Normal*. Thaue bin in a Citie in this Country, called *Detee*, where *Alexander* ioyned battell with *Porus*, & in token of his victory, erected a brasse Pillar, which remaineth there to this day. There arriued foure English ships at Surat, and in the same Sir *Thomas Rowe*, the English Embassador to the Mogol: the newes whereof came to Asmere, Octob. 8. 1615. and did much resoillate M. *Coryats* spirits (as did M. *Brownes* verses from Amadavars) and so I hope will yours.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Cambaya, Decan, and the neighbouring Nations.

§. I.

Of the Cambayans.

ALthough we might seem to haue spoken sufficiently of the Cambayans alreadie, in our former Mogol-Relations; yet, both as better knowne, and because such was our Order in the former Editions, wee haue allowed them a Chapter here by themselues. Cambaya is also called Guzarat a, containing in length, from the Riuer Bate to Circam, a Persian Region, fiue hundred miles of Sea-coast, being on other parts enuironed b with the Kingdomes of

a *Maginus.*

b *Maff. lib. 48.*

of Dulcinda and Sanga, on the North; Mandao, on the East; on the West, Nautacos, or the Gedrosians. The Sea, and the Confines of Decan are the Southerly bounds. It hath in it, by estimation, threescore thousand Populations, or inhabited Places, watred with many Streames, the chiefe whereof is Indus, which diuideth it in the middle, running from Caucasus, or Naugrocot, and after nine hundred miles iourney, with two nauigable mouths disembogling it selfe into the Ocean. This Countrey is very fertile, not yeelding to any other in India; in the fruits which the Earth and Trees bring forth, besides their store of Elephants, Gems, Silke, Cotton, and such like. The people are of an Oliue-colour, and goe naked, except about their priuie parts. They eate no Flesh, but Rice, Milke, Barley, and other liue-lesse Creatures. The Inhabitants are, for the most part, Gentiles; and so were their Kings, vntill the Mahumetan Superstitions prevailed. There are c vp within the Land, People called *Rebiburi*, which are the natural Nobles of this Kingdome, chased by the Moores to the Mountaines, whence they make often excursions and spoyles in the Country; and the Cambayans pay them tribute, that they might liue in peace: of these as spoken alreadie. Their chiefe Sea-Townes are Daman, Bandora, Surate, Rauellum, Bazuinum; and within Land, Cambaya, Madabar, Campanel, Tanaa, &c. Surat (now an English Factory) hath a Castle of d Stone, with good Ordnance: The Houses are faire, of Stone and Brick, square, with flat roofes: they haue goodly Gardens, with Pomegranats, Pome-Citrons, Melons, Limons, Figs all the yeere long, curious Springs of fresh Water. The people neat, tall, louing, graue, iudicious, clothed in long white Calico, or Silke.

c *Ioseph. Ind. Linsch. l. 1. c. 7.*

d *Pat. Copland.*

Cambaya hath bestowed the name on the whole Kingdome, which they call the Indian Cairo, for the excellencie thereof: it standeth three miles from Indus. The Tides here e encrease not, as with vs, at the full, but in the decrease of the Moone they are at the highest. Of this Riuer Indus, *Ptolomey* and *Arrianus* in his *Periplus of the Erythrean Sea*, reckon seuen Mouthes or Entrances into the Sea; and *Theuet* (I know not with what Friar-like, and Lyar-like boldnesse) nameth seuen at this day: but *Arrianus* saith, in those times six of the seuen were ouer-growne, and but one nauigable. But *Dionysius*, *Pomponius*, *Strabo*, and the other *Arrianus*, which writ the life of *Alexander*, ascribe but two vnto it: which is confirmed by the Portugals. *Arrianus* hath in his eight Booke largely described the Voyage of *Nearchus* and *Onesicritus*, from this Riuer, about the Coast, into the Persian Gulfe, employed by *Alexander* the Great. It is not 160. yeeres since *Machamut*, a Moore, expelled the Guzarat King.

e *L. Vertom. l. 4*

This *Machamut* deserueth mention for one thing, wherein the Sunne hath scarce beheld his like. Hee so accustomed himselfe to poysons, that no day passed wherein hee tooke not some; for elsehee himselfe had dyed, saith *Barbosa*; as it fareth with *Amfian* or *Opimus*, the vse whereof killeth such as neuer tooke it, and the disease, such as haue. And beyond that which we reade of *Mithridates* in the like practice, his Nature was transformed into so venemous a habit, that if hee did meane to put any of his Nobles to death, hee would cause them to be set naked before him, and chewing certaine fruits in his mouth, which they call *Chofolos* and *Tambolos*, with lime made of shells, by spitting vpon him, in one halfe houre deprived him of life: if a Fly sate vpon his hand, it would presently fall off dead. Neither was his f loue to be preferred to his hatred, or with women was his dealing lesse deadly. For he had three or foure thousand Concubines, of whom, none liued to see a second Sunne, after hee had carnally knowne them. His Mustaches (or haire of his vpper lip) was so long, that hee bound it vpon his head, as women doe with an haire-lace; and his beard was white, reaching to his Waste. Euery day when he arose, and when hee dined, fiftie Elephants were brought into the Palace, to doe him reuerence on their knees, accompanied with Trumpets and other Musicke.

f *Od. Barbosa.*

Coelius Rhodiginus g mentions the like of a Maid, thus nourished with Poysons, her Spettle (and other Humours comming from her) being deadly: such also as lay with her carnally, presently dying. *Auicenna* hath also a like example of a Man, whose Nature, infected with a stronger Venome, poysoned other venomous Creatures, if any did bite him. And when a greater Serpent was brought for triall, he had by the biting thereof a two-dayes Feuer; but the Serpent dyed: The other did not harme him.

g *Cal. Rhodig. lib. 11. cap. 13.*

Mamudius, the Successor of King *Machamut*, was a great enemy to the Portugals. *Badurius* succeeded in state and affection, and exceeded in greatnesse and ambition. Hee inuaded h Mandao, and Sanga, where hee besieged Citors then gouerned by a warlike woman: which not able to hold out longer against him, fled, and left the people in forlorne plight; who in a desparate resolution (like *Sardanapalus*) heaping vp their Treasures, set fire thereto, and then cast themselues therein. This fire continued three dayes, and consumed threescore and ten thousand persons.

h *Maffeus. lib. 11.*

Hence *Badurius* triumphantly marched against the Mogor, whom *Maffeus* calleth *Miramudius*, with an Army of an hundred and fiftie thousand Horse, whereof thirtie thousand were

were barded; and fiue hundred thousand Foot-men: of great brazen Ordnance, a thousand; whereof foure Basiliskes were drawne (such was their weight) by so many hundred yokes of Oxen: with Shot and Powder hee laded fiue hundred Waynes, and as many with Gold and Siluer, to pay his Souldiers. These Forces, with this prouision, might rend the Ayre with Thunders, might make the Earth to shake with Terror; might dry and drinke vp Riuers of Water, might frame another fiery Element, of Arts inuention; but could not either terrifie the Mogor, or saue *Badurius* from a double ouerthrow; first, at Doceri; next, at Mandoa, where hee loseth his Tents and Treasures; and shauing his beard, flyeth disguised to Diu: in which, that the Portugalls might be engaged in the same warre, hee gaue them leaue to erect a Fortresse: A thing of such moment vnto them, that *John Boselius* (confined before vnto India, for crimes obiected) thought, by being the first Messenger thereof in Portugall, to purchase his libertie: whereof he might well bee reputed worthy, who in a little Vessell, scarce eighteene foot long, and sixe wide, with vndaunted courage contemning that wide, long, and tempestuous Ocean, arriued with his small companie, great newes, and greater admiration, at Lisbone. *Badurius* after altering his minde, and therein entertaining a treacherous Proiect against the Portugalls, coloured the same with kindnesse, and he (which feared all [i] men, no lesse then hee was feared, as guiltie to his owne Tyranny, which sometime made *Dionysius* of a King, a Barbar, and now this, a King of others, and his own Cooke, trusting no man to dresse his meat) aduentured to visit the Portugall Vice-Roy in his ships, professing great friendship, with great dissimulation, and by a meane Mariner, at his returne, was slaine; whereupon the whole Iland submitted it selfe to the Portugall yoke. And because we haue in this Chapter mentioned so many Wonders, let this also haue place among (if not aboue) the rest, which presently happened [k]. Whiles the Portugalls were busie in their Buildings, a certaine [l] Bengalan came to the Gouernour, which had liued, as hee affirmed, three hundred thirtie fiue yeeres. The old men of the Countrey testified, That they had heard their Ancestors speake of his great age, and himselfe had a sonne fourescore and tenne yeeres old, and not at all Booke-learned, yet was a speaking Chronicle of those passed times. His teeth had sometimes fallen out, [m] others growing in their places; and his beard, after it had beene very hoatie, by degrees returned into his former blacknesse. About an hundred yeeres before this time, he had altered his Pagan Religion into the Arabian or Moorish. For this his miraculous age, the Sultans of Cambaya had allowed him a priuiledge to liue on; the continuance of which he now sought, and did obtaine of the Portugals. Friar *Ioano dos Santos* [n] tells a long story of one yet aliue, *Ann.* 1605. of whom the Bishop of *Cochin* had sent men to inquire, who by diligent search found that hee was then three hundred eightie yeeres old, and had married eight times, the father of many generations. They say his teeth had thrice fallen out, and thrice renewed: his haire thrice hoary, and as oft black againe. Hee could tell of nineteene successiue Kings, which reigned in *Horan* his Countrey in *Bengala*. He was also borne a Gentile, and after turned Moore, and hoped, he said, to dye a Christian, reioycing to see a picture of Saint *Francis*, saying, Such a man when he was twentie fiue yeeres old had foretold him this long life.

But to returne; *Mamudius*, successor to *Badurius*, sought with all his forces to driue these new Lords out of Diu, as *Solyman* had done before, by a Nauie and Armie sent thither; but both in vaine: of which Wars, *Damianus à Goes* [o] hath written diuers Commentaries. But this whole Countrey is now subiect to the Mogor. It was, in *Alexanders* time, peopled by the Massani, Sodræ, or Sabræ, Præstæ, and Sangadæ, as *Ortelius* hath placed them; where *Alexander* (as in diuers other places he had done) erected a Citie of his owne name, called Alexandria. Daman, another Key of this Bay, and entrance of the Riuer Indus into the Sea; fell to the Portugals share.

The Land of Cambaya [p] is the fruitfullest in all India; which causeth great trafficque of Indians, Portugals, Persians, Arabians, Armenians, &c. The Guzarates, or Cambayans, are the subtilleſt Merchants in all those parts. They haue [q] amongst them many Histories of *Darius* and *Alexander*, which sometime were Lords of this Indian Prouince. The Portugals [r] haue at diuers times conquered diuers of the chiefe Townes in this Kingdome, some whereof they keepe still. The women in Diu, by Art dye their teeth black, esteeming themselues so much the more beautifull, and therefore go with their lips open, to shew the blacknesse of their teeth, drawing away the couer of their lips, as if they were lip-lesse, giuing the *prize of Beautie* to a double deformitie, Blacknesse, and a Mouth *O Hellish wide*. When a Cambayan dyeth, they burne his body, and distribute the ashes vnto the foure Elements (of which man consisteth) part to the Fire, part to the Ayre, to the Water also and Earth their due portions, as *Balby* hath obserued.

M. *Patrike Copland* (Minister in the *Dragon*, with Captaine *Best*) writes, that hee rode in this Countrey, from Medhaphrabadh to Surat, in a Coach drawne with Oxen, which is the most

i *Cic. Offic.*
k *Maff. Histor. Ind. lib.* 11.
l This same man appeared before *Solyman* the Turkish General, at the siege of Diu. *Vlitz. di un Comite Venetiano. Nic. di Conti* saith, hee saw a Bramane three hundred yeers old.
m *Maffæus part.* 3. c. 3. saith the same of the Irish Countesse of Desmond (mentioned also by S. *W. Ral.*) and that she liued 140. yeeres.
n *Ia. Santos. l.* 4. *deaus. hist. de India orientali.*

o *Dam. à Goes, op. Di. & Bell. Camb.*

p *Linschot.*
q *Od. Barbos.*
r *Gotardus Arthus Hist. Ind. Orient. cap.* 23. *Balby, cap.* 18.

most ordinary, though they haue goodly Horses. He saw at once the goodliest Spring and Harueſt that euer he had seene: Fields ioyning together, whereof one was greene as a meadow; the other yellow as gold, ready to be cut, of Wheat and Rice. All along, goodly Villages full of trees, yeelding Taddy (the Palme; of which after) a new sweet Wine, strengthning and fattening. A Smith which loued his liquor, said hee could wiſh no other wages, but a pot of this Taddy alway at his girdle.

§. II.

Of the Kingdomes of Decan.

IF the Deccans we haue ſpoken before, in the Mogol conqueſts. Decan is the name of a Citie, fixe leagues from which is a Hill, out of which the Diamond is taken. This Hill is kept with a Garriſon, and walled about. Of the Decan Kingdomes, *Barros* hath reported, That about the yeere 1300. *Sa Noſaradin* reigned in Delly, or Delin, and inuaded the Kingdome of Canara (which reacheth from the Riuer Bate, North of Chaul, vnto the Cape Comori) and wonne much from the Anceſtors of the King (now termed) of Biſnaga. At his returne, he left *Habedſa* his Lieutenant, who added to the former Conqueſts, gathering a Band of all mixtures, Gentiles, Moores, Chriſtians. His ſonne was confirmed in the Gouernment, therefore called *Decan*, and the people Decanins, becauſe of this confuſion of ſo many Nations, of which, his Fathers and His forces conſiſted: for *Decanins* ſignifies Baſtards. He ſhooke off allegeance to his Lord, and acknowledged none Superiour. Hee alſo much encreaſed his Dominions. His name was *Mamudſa*. Hee appointed eighteene Captaines or Commanders, allotting to each, ſeuerall Prouinces. Theſe Captaines hee made, were but ſlaues, that ſo hee might the eaſier hold them in ſubjection. He commanded, that each of them ſhould build a Palace at Bedir, his chieſe Citie, and there reſide certaine moneths in the yeere; his ſonne remayning there in perpetuall hoſtage. Theſe, in proceſſe of time, grew fewer, and therefore greater; the King holding nothing but his Royall Citie; all the Empire being in the hands of theſe ſlaues: which, when the Portugals came thither, were no more, but *Sabay*, *Nizam-Maluco*, *Madre Maluco*, *Melio Verida*, *Coge Mecadam*, the Abeſſine Eunuch, and *Cota Maluco*. The mightieſt of them was *Sabay*, Lord of Goa: His ſonne was *Hidalcam*. Thus *Barrius*. *Garcias ab Horto* writes, That the Mogors had poſſeſſed the Kingdome of Delly: but a certaine Bengalan (rebelling againſt his Maſter) ſlue him, vſurped his State, and by force of warre added this of Canara alſo to his Dominion; he was called k *Xaholam*. This King made his ſiſters ſonne l his Succeſſor, who was much addicted to Forreiners. He diuided his Kingdome into twelue parts, or Prouinces, ouer which, he ſet ſo many Captaines: *Idalcam*, from Angidaua to Cifarda: from thence to Negatona, *Nizamaluco*: Ouer Balaguate, or the vp-hill Countrey (for *Bala* in the Perſian language ſignifieth The toppe, and *Guate* a Hill) *Imadmaluco*, and *Catalmaluco*, and *Verido*, &c.

These all rebelled, and captiued *Daquem* their King at Beder, the chieſe Citie of Decan, and ſhared his Kingdome amongſt themſelues, and ſome Gentiles, partners in the conſpiracie. They were all forreiners, but *Nizamaluco*. This, and the other names, before mentioned, were Titles of Honour, giuen them, with their Offices, by the King, corrupted by the vulgar in pronouncing. *Idalcam*, is *Adel-ham*; *Adel* in the Perſian language, ſignifieth *Iuſtice*; *Ham* is the Tartarian appellation, ſignifying a Prince, or King (which name might well be the Reliques of the Tartarian conqueſts in thoſe parts) ſo *Adelham*, is *King of Iuſtice*. *Neza* in the Perſian (which *Scaliger* m faith is of like extent in the Eaſt, as Latine in the Weſt) is a Lance: *Maluco* ſignifieth the Kingdome. *Neza*, or *Nizamaluco*, the Speare or Lance of the kingdom. So *Cotamaluco* the Tower of the kingdom, *Imadmaluco* the Throne of the Kingdome, &c. *Nizamaluco* is alſo called *Nizamoxa*: which *Xa*, or *Scha*, is a Perſian title (ſignifying n as *Monſieur* in France, *Don* in Spaine) and giuen by *Iſmael* the Sophi, and *Tamas* his ſonne, to all thoſe Kings that would communicate in their Sect, which *Nizamoxa* only yeelded to, Other of them made ſhew, but ſoone recanted. Thus farre *Garcias*.

The Decan o Kings being now ten or twelue, make ioynt warre againſt the Mogoll, hauing one Lieutenant Generall, which is *Amber Chapu* an Abaſſen ſlaue (before mentioned, out of Captaine *Hawkins*) who hath many Lecks of Rupias in ready money, and is Protector of the Kingdome of Amdanagar, the titular King being a childe. One *Robert Johnſon* an Engliſhman turned Moore, and was entertained with much reſpect of one of the Decan Kings, but died eight dayes after his Circumciſion. So were *Robert Claxon*, and *Robert Trelly*, voluntarily robbed of that which they neuer had (Faith and Religion) and turned

k *Xaholam*, that is, Lord of the World, a Title, and not a proper name.

l *Daquem.*

m *Ioſ. Scal. de Emend. temp. lib. 7.*

n *Ioſ. Scal. Can. Iſag. lib. 7.*

o *Clarke.*

Moores. The Decans dominians reach from the West Sea to that of Choromandel, or very neere thereto. The chiefe reason of their Mahumetan Religion was that Conquest by *Nosaradin*, and his successors Moores: that there are so many Kingdomes proceed from that diuision before mentioned.

§. III.

Of the Banian and Cambayan superstitions.

Banians. M. Withington. THe Religion in Cambaya is partly Moorish, partly Heathenish. The Banians are many, in Sinda and other Countries of the Mogol. There are some thirty Casts of them in Sinda (this is the Country which Indus last forsaketh, inhabited by Boloches, and Rasboochies, and Banians, the great Townes and Cities gouerned by Mogols.) These are of thirty different Sects, which may not eate with each other. They must also marry in their owne Cast, Tribe and Sect, and which is more, in the same trade, as the Sonne of a Barber with a Barbers Daughter. These marriages are made when they be yong, sometime almost before they be. For when two women are pregnant, the Parents will make a match betweene their Children, if death or the sexe disappoint not. When they are three or foure yeeres old, the Parents which haue agreed on a match betweene their Children, make a great feast, and ser this young couple on horsebacke (a man behind each of them to hold them) in their best clothes, accompanied with the Bramenes or Priests, and many others according to their state, and so leade them vp and downe the Citie where they dwell, and then to the Pagode or Temple. After Ceremonies there done, they come home and make festiuall cheere certaine dayes, as they are able. At ten yeeres of age they lie together. The burning their dead is common to all their Sects. They are of the Pythagorean, or he was rather of their fancy, which he learned of the Indians. When the husband dies, the wife shaues her head, and weares her jewels no more, so continuing till death. Thus farre Master *Withington*. M. *Coneri* relateth that they haue God in pictures of stone, hanging their Beades on the heads of the pictures, and then with their faces towards the Sunne doe worship it, saying all their comforts proceed from it. I saw a Kow adorned with Iewels and a Veil of gold, her head bedecked with garlands & flowers, and then being brought to a burial place, where they vse to make Sermons, they kisse her feet and teats and worship her. I asking why they did so? they answered that she was the mother of beasts, & brought them milke, butter, cheese, and the Oxe to till the ground, and lastly, her Hide did make leather to make them shooes. Moreouer they say, she is blest by the Mother of God to be honored aboue all beasts.

Marriages solemnized betwixt infants.

R. Coneri.

Antonius. Another writes that these Banians are the wisest Merchants in the East, exceeding the Iewes, very rich, some worth 2. or 300000 li. He addes that they pay a great summe to the Mogol to preuent killing of Oxen: and when our men have shot a Turtle-doue through the wings, they will giue a Riall of eight to redeeme and preserue it. P General *Downton* in his last Iournall writes, that when they would haue obtained a Bazar or Market by the shoare: answere was made that they might, but not for Bullocks. For the Mogol had granted his Firma to the Banians for a mighty summe yeerly to saue their liues. For Souldiery these are but shadowes of men, all their Fortitude smoking out in these superstitious speculations, and therefore an easie prey to any Inuader. So true a μετεμψύχωσις haue they sustained, being metamorphosed and transfanimated from men to blockes, and liuing statues, or to ghosts. *Beniamin Day* nameth one of their Sects called *Ashmen*, whose bodies being most part naked, are couered with ashes, whereby they looke like ghosts or dead men. They liue idlely on reliefe not so much as begging. One of these was in great account, with haire hanging to his feet platted together, his nailes fiue or sixe inches long. *Vertomannus* q is Author, that they worship not Idols, or *Pagodes*. Others report, That this way, and others, they are exceeding religiously deuoted. They obserue a strict kind of r fasting, which lasteth with some eight dayes, with others fifteene, twenty, or thirty dayes: in all which space they eate not a bit; onely, when they thirst, drinke water. One could not see when to make an end of this his penance, till his left eye fell out of his head, as both had done before out of his heart. In Cambaia they had one Bramene in such reputation of holinesse and honour, that they would salute him before they meddled with their worldly affaires. One affirmed to this Iesuite, That if his Bramene should command him to distribute all his goods to the poore, he would doe it, yea, he would lay downe his life at his command.

p *N. Downton.*

Ben. Day.

q *L. verb. lib. 4.*

r *Eman. Pinner, Baldy* saith at other times they eate but one meale a day. *cap. 10.*

On the eight day of Ianuarie s, in that Citie, were giuen in almes twenty thousand Pardawes, (which is in value about a Flemish Dollar;) one man had giuen fiue thousand thereof, another three thousand, another fifteene hundred. The cause was, because that day (as their

s *An. Dom.* 1595.

their Bramenes assumed) the Sunne departed from Sur to Horte. Of their Pilgrimages is spoken before; some Eastward to Ganges; some Westward to Mecca, to wit, the Moores; not men alone, but women also: and because *Mahomet* hath forbidden all vnmarried women this holy Iourney, they will marrie before they set forth, and dissolue the same marriage againe, after their returne. Hereby they thinke to purchase merit with God.

I went one day (sayth *Pinnerus*) to the publike Hospitall, which the Citizens of Cambaia had founded for all kindes of Birds, to cure them in their sicknesse. Some Peacockes were there incurable, and therefore might haue beene expelled the Hospitall. But (alacke for pitie of so rusull an accident) a Hawke had beene admitted thither for the cure of his lame legge, which being whole, he in hospitally slue many of these co-hospitall weaker Fowles, and was therefore expelled this Bird-Colledge by the Master thereof. For Men they had not an Hospitall, that were thus hospitall to Fowles.

They haue certaine Religious persons, called *Verteus*, k which liue in a Colledge together, and when I went to their House, they were about fiftie in number. They ware white cloth, were bare-headed, and shaueu; if that word might bee applied to them, who pull off their haire on their heads and faces, leauing onely a little on their crowne. They liue on almes, nor receiue they but the surplusage of the daily food of him that giueth them. They are viueless. The Orders of their Sect are written in a booke of the Guzarates writing. They drinke their water hot, not for Physike, but deuotion, supposing that the water hath a Soule, which they should slay, if they dranke the same vnsodden. For the same cause they beare in their hands certaine little brushes, with which they sweepe the floore, before they sit downe, or walke, lest they should kill the soule of some Worme, or other small creature. I saw their Prior thus doing.

k The Religious in Cambaia. *Pinner.*

The Generall of this Order is said to haue an hundred thousand men vnder his canonicall obedience, and is newly chosen euery yeere. I saw amongst them little boyes, of eight or nine yeere old, resembling the countenances of Europe, rather then of India, by their parents consecrated to this Order. They had all in their mouth a cloth foure fingers broad, let thorow both their eares in a hole, and brought backe againe thorow their eares. They would not shew me the cause; but I perceiued it was, lest some Gnat or Flie should enter thither, and so bee slaine. They teach that the world was made many hundred thousand yeeres agoe: and that God did then send three and twentie Apostles, and now hath sent the foure and twentieth in this third age, two thousand yeeres since, from which time they haue had writing, which before they had not.

The same l Author in another Epistle saith, That the most of the Inhabitants of Cambaia are Banians. They eat no flesh, nor kill any thing, yea they redeem the beasts and birds maymed or sicke, and carry them to their Hospitals to be cured. In Guzarat he had seene many *Gioghi*, a religious Order of Monks, which yeeld to none in Penance and Pouertie. They go naked in cold weather: they sleep on the dung-hils vpon an heape of ashes, with which they couer their head and face. I saw the place where one of these Gioghi kept in the middest of the Citie Amadeba, to whom, in conceit of holinesse, resorted more numbers of people then to the shoares of Lisbon at the retume of the Indian Fleet. This Gioghi was sent for by the Prince *Sultan Morad*, sonne of the *Mogor*, and refused to come, m bidding that the Prince should come to him: *It is enough that I am holy*, or a Saint *to this end*. Whereupon, the Prince caused him to be apprehended, and (being soundly whipped) to bee banished.

l *Em. Pinner. Banians.*

m *Onesicritus* reporteth the like of the Gymnosophists.

This people killeth not their Kine, but nourisheth them as their mothers. I saw at Amadeba, when a Kow was ready to die, they offered her fresh grasse, and draue the Flies from her: and some of them gaue this attendance two or three dayes after, till shee was dead. A league and a halfe from this Citie, I saw a certaine *Cœmiterium* or burying-place, then which I had neuer seene a fairer sight, wherein had beene buried one *Cazzi*, the Master of a King of Guzarat, who had erected this fabrike, and three other were buried in another Chappell. The whole worke and pauement was of Marble, containing three Iles: in one whereof I told foure hundred and fortie pillars with their chapiters and bases of Corinthian worke, very royall and admirable. On one side was a Lake, greater then the *Rozzio* at Lisbon; and that building was curiously framed with faire windowes, to looke into the Lake.

Balbi telleth of a certaine Temple at Cape Bombain, not farre from Chiul, which is cut out of a Rocke: ouer the said Temple growe many Tamarinds, and vnder it is a Spring of running water, whereof they can finde no bottome. It is called *Alefante*, is adorned with many Images, a receptacle of Bats; and supposed the worke of *Alexander* the Great, as the period of his Peregrination. And hereto agreeth the report of *Arrianus* in his n *Periplus* of many memorials and monuments of *Alexanders* Expedition to these Parts, as of Chappels, Altars, Camping-places, and great Pits. These hee mentioneth about Mimnagara, which *Ortelius* in his Map placeth here-away.

n *Arrian. Peripl. Mar. Erythr.*

Linschoten [u] affirmeth, the same things of their Pythagorean errour, and addeth that they sometimes buy Fowles or other beasts of the Portugals, which meant to haue dressed them, and let them flie or runne away. In the High-wayes also and Woods they set pots with water, and cast Corne or other graine vpon the ground, to feed the Birds and Beasts. and (to omit their charitable Hospitals before mentioned) if they take a Flea or a Louse, they will not kill it, but put it in some hole or corner in the wall, and so let it goe: and you can doe them no greater iniurie, then to kill it in their presence, which with all intreatie they will resist, as being a hainous sin, to take away the life of that, to which God hath imparted both soule and body: and where words will not preuaile, they will offer money. They eate no Radishes, Onyons, Garlike, or any kind of Herbe, that hath red colour in it, nor Egges, for they thinke there is bloud in them. They drinke not Wine, nor vse Vinegar, but only Water. They would rather starue, then eat with any, but their countrey-men: as it happened when I sailed from Goa to Cochin with them in a Portugall Ship, when they had spent all their store, the timefalling out longer then they made account of; they would not once touch our meat. They wash themselues euery time they eate, or ease themselues, or make water. Vnder their haire they haue a star vpon their foreheads, which they rub euery morning with a little white Sanders tempered with water, and three or foure graines of Rice amongit, which the *Bramenes* also do as a superstitious ceremony of their law. They sit on the ground in their houses, vpon Mats or Carpets, and so they eate, leauing their shooes (which are piked and hooked) at the doore: for the which cause the heeles of their shooes are seldome pulled vp, to saue labour of vndoing them.

u *Linsch. c.37. Andrea Corsali.*

The Moores [x] amongst them will sometimes abuse the superstition of these Cambayans to their owne couetousnesse, bringing some Worme, Rat, or Sparrow, and threatning to kill the same, so to prouoke them to redeeme the life thereof at some high price. And likewise if a malefactor be condemned to death, they will purchase his life of the Magistrate, and sell him for a slaue. The Moores will sometimes make semblance, as if they would kill themselues, that these foolish *Guzzarates* may see them in like sort. They will go out of the path, if they light on an Ant-hill, lest they might happily treade on some of them: they sup by day light, lest their candle-light should occasion the death of some Gnat or Fly. And when they must needs vse a Candle, they keepe it in a Lanthorne for that cause. If Lice doe much annoy them, they call to them certaine Religious and holy men, after their account: and these Obseruants [y] will take vpon them all those Lice which the other can find, and put them on their head, there to nourish them. But yet for all this louise scruple, they sticke not at coozenage by false weights, measures, and coyne, nor at vsury and lies.

x *Od.Rabusa.*

y The likelowsie trick is reported in the Legend of S. *Francis*, and in the life of *Ignatius*, of one of the first Iesuitical pillars, by *M. Sieus.*

Some are said [z] to be so zealous in their Idol-seruice, as to sacrifice their liues in their honour; whereunto they are perswaded by the preachings of their Priests, as the most acceptable deuotion. Many offer themselues, which being brought vpon a scaffold, after certaine ceremonies, put about his neck an Iron coller, round without, but within very sharpe: from which hangeth a chaine downe his brest, into which, sitting downe he putteth his feet, and whiles the Priest muttereth certaine words, the party before the people with all his force stretcheth out his feet, and cuts off his head: their reward is, that they are accounted Saints.

z *N. di Cont.*

CHAP. IX.

Of the Indian Nations betwixt Cambaia and Malabar; and their Religions.

§. I.

Of the seasons of the yeeres: and of the parts next to Cambaya.

THE mightie Riuers of *Indus* and *Ganges*, paying their fine to the *Lord of waters*, the Ocean, almost vnder the very Tropick of *Cancer*, do (as it were) betwixt their watery armes, present into that their *Mothers* bosome, this large *Chersonesus*; A Countrey, full of Kingdomes, riches, people, and (our deuest task) *superstitious customes*. As Italy is diuided by the *Apennine*, and bounded by the Alpes, so is this by the Hils which they call *Gate*, which goe from East to West (but not directly) and quite thorow to the *Cape Comori*, which not only haue entred league with many In-lets of the Sea, to diuide the soyle into many Signiories and Kingdomes, but with the Ayre and Natures higher officers, to dispence with the ordinary orders,

orders, and established Statues of Nature, [a] at the same time, vnder the same elevation of the Sun, diuiding to Summer and Winter, their seasons and possessions. For whereas cold is banished out of these Countries (except on the tops of some Hills) and altogether prohibited to approach so neere the Court and presence of the Sun; and therefore their Winter and Summer is not reckoned by heate and cold, but by the faireness and foulenesse of weather, which in those parts diuided the yere by equall proportions: at the same time, when on the West-part of this *Peninsula*, betweene that ridge of Mountaines and the Sea, it is after their appellation Summer, which is from September till April, in which time it is alwayes cleere skie, without once or very little raining; on the other side the hils, which they cal the coast of Choromandell, it is their Winter; euery day and night yeelding abundance of raines, besides those terrible thunders; which both begin and end their Winter. And from April till September in a contrary vicissitude, on the Westerne part, is Winter, and on the Easterne, Summer; insomuch that in little more then twentie leagues iourney in some place, as where they crosse the Hills to Saint *Thomas*, on the one side of the Hill you ascend with a faire Summer, on the other you descend attendant with a stormy Winter. The like, saith *Linschoten*, hapneth at the *Cape Rosalgate*, in Arabia, and in many other places of the East.

a *Gio. Bot. Ben. Mass. lib. 1. Linschot. lib. 1. cap. 24. Ia. Fab. l. 3. c. 1.*

Their Winter also is more fierce then ours, euery man prouiding against the same, as if he had a voyage of so many moneths to passe by Sea, their ships are brought into harbour, their houses can scarce harbour the Inhabitants against the violent stormes, which choake the Riuers with Sands, and make the Seas vnnauigable. I leaue the causes of these things to the further scanning of Philosophers; the effects and affects thereof are strange. The Sea roareth with a dreadfull noyse: the Windes blow with a certaine course from thence: the people haue a Melancholike season, which they passe away with play. In the Summer the Wind bloweth from the Land, beginning at Midnight, and continuing till Noone, neuer blowing aboue ten leagues into the Sea, and presently after one of the clock vntill midnight, the contrary winde bloweth, keeping their set-times, whereby they make the Land temperate, the heate otherwise would bee vnmeasurable. But this change commonly causeth diseases, Fluxes, Feuers, Vomitings, in dangerous (and to very many, in deadly) manner, as appereth at Goa, where, in the Kings Hospitall (which is onely for white men) there die fiue hundred in a yeere. Here you may see both the North and South Starres; and little difference or none is found in the length of day and night throughout the yeere.

Dely, is the next Kingdome to Camboia, now not the next, but the same; the Mountaines which before diuided it, not prohibiting the Mogors Forces to annexe it to his Crowne. Of it is spoken before in the Chapter of Cambaya, as also of Decan, which lyeth along the Coast, betwixt the Riuers Bate and Aliga two hundred and fiftie miles. Here [b] was, as is said, sometimes a Moore King; who, leading a voluptuous and idle life, by his Captaines was dispossessed of his State: the one of these was called *Idalcan*; whose Seat-Royall is Vispore, who in the yeere 1572. incamped before Goa, which the Portugals had taken from him, with an Army of seuenty thousand Foot, and fiue and thirty thousand Horse, two thousand Elephants, and two hundred and fiftie pecces of Artillerie. The other was *Nizzamaluco*, which resideth in Danager, & besieged Chaul (now belonging to the Portugals) with not much lesse forces, against a Captaine of the Venazarie, which are a people that liue on spoyle, as the Resbuti in Cambaia, the Belemi in Delly, Canara or Concam, seemeth to haue beene a part of Decan, but is possessed by the King of Narsinga, whose state is on the East side of the Mountaines. It hath in it the Coast-townes of Onor, Barticalla, Mayander and Mangalor, [c] famous for trafficke, but eclipsed by the Portugals neighbourhood.

b *Gio. Bot. Ben. Garcias ab Horto. l. 2. c. 28. Linschot. p. c.*

c *Lins. l. 1. c. 27.*

The Religion of these parts is partly Mahumetan, partly Heathenish. These haue their proper Idolatries, as wee haue before noted, peculiar Idols and Sects to peculiar Tribes and Trades. They haue also more common Rites, worshipping the Images of diuers Beasts, Elephants, Kine, Apes, and the like, to which they dedicate Pagodes or Temples. They haue other common deuotions, & haue appropriated to War, to Seed, to Fortune, to Life, to Death, seuerall Deities. The Deuill they worship in horrible forme, as we shall after see; for in this confusion the Reader must pardon, if we do not keep exact order alway, besides that in seuerall places the Rites somewhat differ in these which are accounted of one Sect. They paint him blacke, because to that colour they ascribe beauty: and in more solemne Festiuals with Oile, Suet, and fat Grease, and make them as lothsome to the Sent, as to the Eie. So senselesse is their Religion, and yet addicted the sense, and sensible Images (as they do their Temples they call these Pagodes) and sacrifice there to Goates, Sheep, and other Beasts, but not Kine, which they doe account sacred, and worship the same, esteeming that man most happy that dyeth in the presence of that beast or touching the same; perswading themselues, that the departing soule passeth into one of these creatures. They will performe more pietie (let Piety

Iarric. Thesauri rerum Indicarum.

No exact order can be vsed in relating so confused Rites.

pardon such abuse of the Name) to a Cow dying, then to their deceasing Parents: And would account it a hainous crime at vnawares to haue killed such a beast, seeking by sacrifices and offerings to turne away Diuine vengeance, after so Humane and accidentall error.

§. II.

Of Goa, the Heathens and Christians liuing therein, and the Countrey about.

GOa o is the Seat of the Vice-Roy, and of the Arch-Bishop, and of the Kings Counsell for the Indies, and the Staple of all Indian commodities. It standeth in a little Iland, in sixteene degrees, called *Tizuarin* p nine miles long, and three broad, in circuit one and twentie. *Bardes* on the North, and *Salzette* are both in like subiection to the Portugalls; the King letting them to Farme, and employing the Rents to the payment of the Arch-bishop, Cloysters, Priests, Vice-Roy, and other his Officers. Salsette is nine miles from Goa, being a Peninsula twentie miles about, containing sixtie fixe Villages or Townes, and about fourescore thousand Inhabitants. *Antonius Norogna* the Vice-Roy, destroyed therein two hundred Temples, some of them sumptuous, 1567. and many *Pagodes*, which caused them to rebell, and afterwards they slew some of the Iesuites and their company.

o Of Goa, reade *Arthus hist. Ind. c. 15. Linschot. Al. Valignan.*

p *Tizguarin* signifies thirtie villages; for so many it seemes were then there.

Barros q relates, that the King of Bisnaga, hauing warres with the Moores of Decan, and being then Lord of the Ports of Batecala and Onor, where hee had store of Horses out of Arabia, and Persia, brought thither by Merchants, seruiceable for his Warres: the Moores in those parts forestalled the Market, and sold the Horses to the Decans his Enemies. Whereupon he commanded the King of Onor his Vassall, to kill all the Moores in the Countrey, which was effected to the death of ten thousand Moores. The rest that escaped gate them to the Iland of Tizuarin, and first peopled this Citie of Goa, transiating the Mart from Onor thither: but the King of Onor by a power at Sea forced the trade to be kept still at Onor, till the Portugals came into those parts. This murther of the Moores was done, *An.* 1479. The Founders name was *Mellique Hocen.* This is to be vnderstood of this New Towne, for of the Ancient there is no memory. It seemes by a Crosse there found, that it had beene inhabited by Christians. It stands in that part which is reckoned to the Kingdome of Canara. *Sabaius* (one of those Decanine Captaines, which shared their Masters state, as before is deliuered) when he died, left his sonne *Idalcan* very young; whereupon his Subiects rebelled, and the King of Narsinga warred vpon him, to dispossesse him of his Dominion. *Abulquerke* taking that opportunitie, besieged, and vpon composition, tooke Goa with the Iland. Which was soone after recouered by *Idalcan*, comming with a strong Armie thither, the Portugals flying away by night. But when the King of Narsinga againe inuaded *Idalcan.* He was forced to resist the more dangerous Enemy, leauing a strong Garrison at Goa, which yet *Albuquerk* ouercame, and sacked the Citie. Euer since, as standing in the midst of that Tract of land, from Cambaia to Comori, it hath beene thought the fittest Staple for Merchandize, and Seat for the Vice-Roy, the Chiefe of the foure chiefe Cities in the Indies. The three other, Ormus, Diu, and Malaca.

q *Dec. 3. l. 8. c. vlt. & Dec. 4. l. 5. c. 1.*

There dwell in Goa of all Nations and Religions. The Gouernment is as in Portugall. Onely publike vse of forraine Religion is forbidden them: but in their houses priuately, or on the maine land, they may practise the same. The Portugals many of them are married with Indian women, and their posteritie are called *Mestikos*, and in the third degree, differ nothing in colour and fashion from naturall Indians. Of the Portugals they reckon two sorts, married Men, and Souldiers, which is a generall name to all Batchellers, although they are at their owne command. Of these are many Knights, and are called *Caualhiero Fidalgo:* for if a man doe any thing worth reckoning, presently his Captaine imparteth this honour to him; whereof they much boast themselues, albeit that this Knight-hood hath descended to Cookes boyes. Many of the Portugals liue onely by their slaues. They vse great Ceremony or Pride (whether you will call it) in their behaiuiour: the particulars whereof let r *Linschoten*, that there liued amongst them, teach you.

r *Lins. l. 1. c. 20. 29, 30, 31, 32.*

Besides both Abassine and Armenian Christians, Iewes, and Moores, here are many Heathens. The Moores eate all things, but Swines flesh, and dying, are buried like the Iewes. The Heathens, as *Decanijns, Guzarates*, and *Canarijns*, are burnt to ashes, and some women alive are buried with the Gentlemen or Bramenes, their husbands. Some will eate nothing that had life; some all but the flesh of Kine, or Buffles. Most of them pray to the Sunne and Moon; yet all acknowledge a God that made all things, & ruleth them after this life, rendring to all according to their works. As for the Idols or *Pagodes*, they worship them, saith *Balby*, euen

Balb. c. 12.

euen as wee adore in the Images that which they represent vnto vs. A good Argument for Image-worship.

But they haue *Pagodes*, which are Images cut and framed most vgly, and like monstrous Deuils, to whom they pray and offer; and to Saints which here haue liued holy, and are now Intercessours for them. The Deuill often answereth them out of those Images, to whom also they offer, that he should not hurt them. They present their *Pagode* (when a marriage is to be solemnized) with the Brides mayden-head; two of her necrest kins-women forcing her vpon the fuory pin or member of stone (leauing the bloud there for a monument) of that Deuilish Idoll; the husband herein applauding His happinesse. Not much vnlike the beastly custome of the Romane Dames, [d] which being newly married were caused to sit on *Priapus* his ? But who can honestly name that which they dishonestly doe ? They haue for the most part, a custome to pray vnto the first thing they meet withall in the morning, and all that day they pray vnto it; be it Hog, or any other thing. But if they first meet with a Crow (whereof there are great store) they will not for any thing stirre out againe that day, after so vnlucky a signe. They pray likewise to the New Moone, saluting her first appearance on their knees. They haue *Iogos* or Hermites, reputed very holy. Many Iuglers also and Witches, which shew deuilish tricks. They neuer goe forth without praying. Euery Hill, Cliffe, Hole, or Den, hath his *Pagodes* in it, with their Furnaces hard by them, and their Cisternes alwayes full of water, with which euery one that passeth by, washeth his feet, and then worshippeth and offereth Rice, Egges, or what else their deuotion will affoord: which the Bramene eateth. When they are to goe to Sea, they will feast their *Pagode* with Trumpets, Fires, and hangings, fourteene dayes before they set forth, to obtaine a good voyage: and as long after their returne; which they vse to doe in all their Feasts, Marriages, Childbirths, and their Harueft and Seed-seasons.

The Indian women in Goa, when they goe forth, haue but one cloth about their bodies, which couereth their heads, and hangeth downe to the knees, otherwise naked. They haue rings thorow their noses, about their legs, toes, neckes, and armes, and seuen or eight bracelets vpon their hands (according to their abilitie) of glasse or other metall. When the woman is seuen yeeres old, and the man nine, they marry, but come not together till the woman is able to beare children. Mr. *Fitch* mentioneth [e] the solemnitie of these marriages, and the cause to be the burning of the mother when the father is dead, that they might haue a father-in-law to bring them vp.

To leaue Goa with this Iland. The Canaras and Decanijns weare their beards and haire long, without cutting, as the Bramenes. They except from food, Kine, Hogs, and Buffles. They account the Oxe, Cow, or Buffle to be holy, which they haue commonly in the house with them, and they besmeere, stroke, and handle them with all friendship in the world; feed them with the same meat they eate themselues; and when the beasts ease themselues, they hold vnder their hands, and throw the dung away: they sleepe with them in their houses, he eby thinking to doe God seruice. In other things they are as the Bramenes. For those are the Laitie, these are the Spiritualtie. When they take their oathes, they are set within a circle of ashes, on the pauement, and laying a few ashes on their heads, the other on their breasts, sweare by their *Pagodes* to tell the truth.

The Canarijns and the Corumbijns are the rustickes, and Countrey-husbandmen, the most miserable people of all India: their Religion is much as the other. They couer only their Priuities, and eate all things, except Kine, Oxen, Buffles, Hogs, and Hens flesh. Their women binde a cloth about their Nauell, which reacheth halfe way the thigh: they are deliuered alone by themselues, without other helpe: their children are brought vp naked, till they be seuen or eight yeeres old, without any trouble about them, except washing them in a little cold water, and liue to be an hundred yeeres old, without head-ache or losse of teeth. They nourish a tuffe of haire on their crownes, cutting the rest. When the man is dead, the wife breaketh her glasse-jewels, and cutteth off her haire; his bodie is burnt. They eate so little, as if they liued by the ayre: and for a penny would endure whipping.

In Salsette are two Temples, or holes rather of *Pagodes*, renowned in all India: one of which is cut from vnder a hill, of hard stone, and is of compasse within, about the bignesse of Village of foure hundred Houses: with many Galleries or Chambers of these deformed shapes, one higher then another, cut out of the hard Rock. There are in all three hundred of these Galleries. The other is in another place, of like matter and forme. It would make a mans haire stand vpright to enter amongst them. In a little Iland called Pory, there standeth a high Hill, on the top whereof is a hole, that goeth downe on the Hill, digged and carued out of the hard Rocke; within, as large as a great Cloyster, round beset with shapes of Elephants, Tygres, Amazons, and other like worke, workemanly cut, supposed to be the Chinois handy-worke. But the Portugals haue now ouerthrowne these Idol-Temples. Would God

[d] *Lasf. l. 1. c. 20. Augde C. D. l. 6. c. 9. Rosinus Antiq. 1. 2.*

[e] *Fitch.*

Balb. c. 22.

God they had not set new Idols in the roome; with like practice of offerings and Pilgrimages, as did these to their *Pagodes*.

u *Linschot.* I once [u] went into a Temple of stone, in a Village, and found nothing in it, but a great Table that hung in the middle of the Church, with the Image of a *Pagode* thereon painted, hellishly disfigured with many hornes, long teeth out of the mouth downe to the knees, and and beneath his nauell with such another tusked and horned face. Vpon the head stood a triple crowne, not much vnlike the Popes. It hung before a wall, which made a partition from another Chambet, like a Quire, close without any light: in the middle whereof was a little doore, and on each side of it a furnace within the wall, with certaine holes, thereby to let the smoake or sauout of the fire to enter into that place, when any offering should bee made. Whereof wee found there some Rice, Corne, Fruits Hens, and such like. There issued thence such a filthy smoake and stinke, that it made the place black, and almost choaked such as entre'd. We desired the Bramene to open the doore, which with much entreatie he did, offering first to throw ashes on our fore-heads, which wee refused, so that before hee would open vs the doore, we were forced to promise him not to enter beyond the doore. It shewed within like a lime-kill, being close vaulted, without hole or window: neither had the Church it selfe any light but the doore. Within the the said Cell hung an hundred burning Lampes, and in the middle stood a little Altar couered with Cotton Cloth, and ouer that with Gold; vnder which, as the Bramene told vs, sate the *Pagode* all of Gold, of the bignesse of a Puppet.

Hard by the Church without the great doore, stood within the earth a great foursquare Cisterne, hewed out of freestone, with staires on each side to goe downe into it, full of greene, filthy, and stinking water, wherein they wash themselues, when they meane to enter into the Church to pray. In the euening they carried their *Pagode* on Procession, first Ringing a Bell, where with the people assembled, and tooke the *Pagode* out of his Cell with great reuerence, and set it in a *Palamkin*, which was borne by the chiefe men of the Towne; the rest following with great deuotion, with their vsuall noise and sound of Trumpets, and other Instruments; and hauing carried him a prettie circuit, brought him to the stone Cisterne, washed him, and placed him againe in his Cell, making a foule smoake and stinke, and euery man leaving his offering behind him, intended to the *Pagode*, but consumed by the Bramene and his family. As we went along by the wayes, we found many such shapes vnder certaine couertures, with a small Cisterne of water hard by, and halfe an Indian Nut hanging thereby, to take vp water withall, for the Trauellers to wash and pray. By the said *Pagodes* doe stand commonly a Calfe of stone, and two little Furnaces; before which they present their offerings. My fellow leaping on one of those Calues in the Church, the Bramane called out, and the people came running, but we stayed their fury, by gentle persuasion of the Bramene before. And thus much of these deformed formes, and misshapen shapes, with their worshippings and worshippers sutable. Like lips, like lettice. Vaine Rites, stinking sinks and smoakes, vgly Idols, conspiring with Internall *Darkenesse* of the Mindes, and Externall *Darkenesse* of their Temples, to bring an Eternall *Darkenesse* to the Followers, that all may shut vp (as they are begun) in an hellish period.

Don Duart de Menezes. He summeth the publike ordinary expences of the Port in India, at 334159. li. 5. sh. 11. d. 07. x in Salt, are fiue Churches. S. F.

I haue seene in Mr. *Hakluytes* hands a large Treatise, written by *Don Duart de Menezes* of the Customes, Courts, Officers, Expences, and other remarkeable obseruations, for knowledge of the Portugall State and affaires, in the East Indies. He saith, that the Iland Tisoare (so he writeth it) in which Goa standeth, hath thirtie two Townes and Villages therein. The Iesuits College in Salsete enioyeth x the Rents before belonging to the *Pagodes*, being two hundred and fiftie pound yeerely, besides their Glebe-lands of Rice grounds, and other commodities; also the Parishes subiect to them are worth two hundred ninetie eight pounds, and sixteen shillings. In Goa they receiue seuen hundred and fifteene pound, twelue shillings and sixe pence *per Annum*, and their yeerely Presents amount to three hundred seuentie fiue pound. In Cochin also they haue three hundred thirtie seuen pound. The Monastery of Saint *Francis* in Goa hath Rents fixe hundred and thirteene pound and ten shillings, and one hundred fortie three pound twelue shillings and sixe pence in other duties. The Dominicans receiue fiue hundred pound, and fourescore and ten pound in other rights. The Friars of Saint *Augustine* fourescore pound twelue shillings and sixe pence. The Inquisition one hundred three pound and ten shillings (besides the Rents of the Hospitall, one thousand eight hundred seuenty fiue pound, and an Almes-house for Widowes and Orphans two hundred and fiftie pound.) These things I thought worthy relation, not so much to satisfie the curious, as to answere the ordinary brags of that *World-wandring Generation*, pretending Mortification to the World, strictnesse of their Vow, loue to Religion, and compassion to the poore Pagans; when as they haue such *Golden chaines* to draw them thither. Whereunto if wee adde the bountie of Christians in those parts vnto these pretended holy Fathers,

Fathers, their gaines from the pearle-fishings, the vowes y of such as become of their Societie, and many other wayes accruing to their Coffers, together with those nouelties and rarities, wherewith euery sense in varietie is here presented; wee may see the *World* a sufficient argument to lead them about the world, whatsoeuer other pretences notwithstanding. But this hath beene learnedly handled against them by others already: amongst others and before others, Our most Reuerend and learned Metropolitan, in *vnmaking the reasons of Hill* for Popery, hath shewed both this our *Hill* to be an ignorant Mountebanke, and our Iesuites in India rather enrichers of their owne Societie in Europe with Gold, Pearle, Spice, and other Indian wares, then of those Asian Proselites with found Europæan Christianitie; besides that, they seeme necessary to their Nation for the establishing of their Trading and ciuill affaires, vnder colour of Religion, winning estimation with the Pagans, and remaining there as well for Intelligencers, and as it were Leeger Embassadours with their Kings, as for Conuersion of the Heathens. For me, what I can shew against this their allegation, belongeth to another taske.

y See *Linschot* in the story of *1. Newbery, &c. l. 1. c. 92.*

Arch. *Abbot* against *Hill*, Reason 4. & 5.

§. III.

Of the Indian Bramenes, both Secular and Religious.

Linschot.

THe Indian Wisemen may be diuided into two Sects, the Baniones, of whom is already spoken; and the Bramenes. These obserue the Indian Heathen custome, that no man may change his fathers trade, but must succeed in the same, and marry a wife also of the same Tribe. The Brachmanni, or, as they are at this day called, the Bramenes (who haue their shops, as well as other Merchants, throughout the Cities) are the chiefe Tribe, and of best reputation, and weare in signe of their profession (from the shoulder, crosse vnder the arme, vpon their naked body, downe to the girdle) three strings like sealing threeds; which for their liues they will not, nor may by their vow put off. They are naked, saueing that about their middles they haue a cloth bound to hide their priuities. And sometime when they goe abroad, they cast a thin Gowne ouer them. Vpon their heads they were a white cloth, wound twice or thrice about therewith, to hide their haire, which they neuer cut off, but weare it long, and turned vp as the women doe. They haue commonly hanging at their eares, Gold-rings. They are very subtill in writing and accounts, making other simple Indians beleeue what they will. Whatsoeuer they meet first with in the streets, they pray to all day after.

When the Bramenes die, z all their friends assemble together, and make a hole in the ground, in which they throw much sweet Wood, Spices, Rice, Corne, and Oyle. Then lay therein the dead body; his wife followeth with Musicke, and many of her neerest friends, singing praises in commendation of her husbands life, encouraging her to follow him, which accordingly she doth. For parting her Iewels among her friends, with a cheerefull countenance she leapes into the fire, and is presently couered with Wood, and Oyle, whereby shee is quickly dead, and with her husbands body burned to ashes. And if it chanceth (which is seldome) that any woman refuseth this *Fiery Coniunction*, they cut the haire cleane off from her head; neither may shee after that weare a Iewell, but is accounted a dishonest woman. This custome is (as may appeare) very ancient, and supposed to haue beene ordained because of the libidinous disposition of the Indian women, which for their lusts would poyson their husbands.

z Ceremonies at the death of a Bramene.

The Bramenes obserue Fasting-dayes with so great abstinence, that they eat nothing that day, and sometime not in three or foure dayes together. They tell many miracles of their *Pagodes*. They hold the immortalitie of the Soule, both of Beasts and Men, and that so often mentioned Pythagorean succession, and reuiing of mens soules in beasts; and contrariwise. They by the direction af the Deuill (the author of their miracles) frame such deformed Statues to their Idols.

Botero saith, the Bramenes also worship a one *Parabrammo*, and his three sonnes, and in honour of them weare those three threeds aforesaid. He affirmeth that the *Iogbi* wander vp and downe through India, abstaining from all carnall pleasure, but a certaine time; which being expired, they are past possibilitie of further sinning, and are then called *Abduti*, as the *Illuminate Elders of the Familists*, polluting themselues in all filthinesse. The Bramenes b haue Images of the *Trinitie*, and haue in religious estimation the number of *Three*. They acknowledge and pray to the *Trinitie in Vnitie*; but affirme many Demi-gods, which are his Deputies in gouerning the World. They honour the Portugals Images also, as approaching to their owne superstition. They marry but one wife, and admit no second succeeding mar-

a *Gi. Bot. Rea. 2. part. 3. Mist. l. 1.*

b *Od. Barbosa.*

riage.

riage. The Bramenes must descend of the Bramene Tribe, and others cannot aspire to that Priesthood: but some are of higher account then other. For some serue for messengers, which in time of warre, and among theeues may passe safely, and are called *Fathers*. They will not put a Bramene to death for any crime. *Heurnius* reporteth that they haue bookes and Prophets, which they alledge for confirmation of their opinions: that they thinke God to be of blacke colour: that they worship the herbe *Amaracus* or *Marioram* with many superstitious Ceremonies: that they haue in their writings the Decalogue, with the explanation thereof: that they adjure all of their Society vnto silence touching their mysteries: that they haue a peculiar language (as Latine in these parts) wherein they teach the same in their Schooles: that their Doctors hallow the Sundayes in diuine worship, adoring the God which created heauen and earth, often repeating the sentence, *I adore thee, O God, with thy grace and aide for euer:* to take food from the hands of a Christian, they account as sacrilege.

Heur. Indie. c. 3.

When they are seuen yeeres old, [d] they put about their necke a string two fingers broad, made of the skinne of a beast called *Cressuamengan*, like a wilde Asse, together with the haire: which he weareth till he is fourteene yeeres old, all which time he may not eate *Betelle* [e]. That time expired, the said string is taken away, and another of three threeds put on, in signe that hee is become a Bramene which hee weareth all his life. They haue a Principall amongst them, which is their Bishop, which correcteth them if they doe amisse. They marrie but once, as is said, and that not all, but onely the eldest of the brethen, to continue the Succession, who is also heire of the fathers substance, and keepeth his wife straitly, killing her, if he finde her adulterous, with poison. The yonger brethren lie with other mens wiues, which account the same as a singular honour done vnto them; hauing libertie, as *Balby* affirmeth, to enter into any mans house, yea of the Kings no lesse then of the Subjects, of that Religion: the husbands leauing the wiues, and the brethren their sisters vnto their pleasures, and therefore departing out of the house when they come in. And hence it is that no mans sonne inheriteth his fathers goods, (and I knowe not whether they may inherite that name of father or sonne) but the sisters sonne succeedeth, as being most certaine of the bloud. [f] They eate but once a day, and wash before and after meate, as also when they make water and goe to stoole.

d *Od. Barbosa.*

e *Betelle*, a leafe.

Balb. vopag. c. 26.

f *Nicolaus Wythington.*

They haue great reuenues belonging to their Churches, besides offerings, and at set houres of the day resort thither to sing, and doe other their holy Rites. Twice in the day, and as often in the night, their *Pagode* is taken out of the Altar, and set on the Bramenes head, looking backward, and is carried in Procession three times about the Church; the Bramenes wiues carrying lights burning: euery time they come to the principall doore of the Church, which is on the West side thereof (some Churches haue two doores on a side) they set it downe on their offering-stone, and worship it. Twice a day they bring it to eate of their sod Rice, as often (it seemeth) as the Bramene is hungry. When they wash them (which is often) they lay a little ashes on their heads, foreheads, and breasts, saying that they shall returne into ashes. When the Bramenes wife is with childe, as soone as he knoweth it, he cleanseth his teeth, and abstaineth from *Betelle*, and obseruieth fasting till shee bee deliuered. The Kings of Malabar will scarce eate meate but of their dressing. They are of such estimation, that if Merchants trauell among theeues and robbers, one Bramene in the companie secureth them all: which Bramene will eate nothing of another mans dressing; and would not become a Moore for a Kingdome. *Nic. di Conti* saith, [g] he saw a Bramene three hundred yeeres old: hee addeth that they are studious in Astrologie, Geomancie, and Philosophie. To be short, they are the Masters of Ceremonies and the Indian Religion, in whose precepts the Kings are trained vp.

Sumario di pap. Orient.

g *Nic. di Conti.*

Maffeie. l. 3. Thes.

The Bramenes haue (it seemeth) much familiaritie with the Deuill, so strangely doe they foretell things to come, though they bee contingent. They also interpret Prodigies, Lots, Auguries, and thereby growe into great credit, the people depending on them, and the Kings becomming of their Order. They perswade the people that their *Pagodes* doe often feast together, and therefore would haue such dainties offered, which they and theirs deuoure: threatning if they be sparing and niggardly, plenty of Plagues and diuine wrath.

Besides these Secular, There are other Religious or Monasticall Bramenes, which are called *Jogues*; anciently called by the Greekes, Gymnosophists, because they went naked; and so they still doe, professing much austeritie of life, at least for a time, with long Pilgrimages, and much *bodily exercise little profiting* the soule, possessing nothing but want and beggarie, seeking thereby to winne credite to themselues and their Sect. The Verteas I take to bee another Sect, the religious Votaries of the Banians or Pythagoreans. Both those and these are kindes of Ethnike Monkes, which professe by strict penance and regular obseruations, to expiate [h] their sinnes, and procure saluation to their soules. There are also

1. *Tim. 4. 8.*

h *Seb. Tordinandus.*

also some that liue as Heremites in Deserts, some in Colledges, some wander from place to place begging: some (an vnlearned kind) are called *Sanasses:* [1] some contrary to the rest, nothing esteeme Idols, obseruc chastitie twenty or fiue and twenty yeeres, and feed daily on the pith of a fruit called *Carueu*, to preseruc in them that cold humour, neither doe they abstaine from flesh, fish, or wine, and when they passe along the way, one goeth before them crying *Poo, Poo*, that is, way, way, that women especially may auoid: for their vow will not permit the sight of a woman. These weare not the three threads which the other Bramenes weare, neither are their bodies burned after death, as of the rest, yea, the King himselfe honoreth them, and not they the King: some liue inclosed in iron Cages all fil hie with ashes, which they strew on their heads and garments: some burne some part of their body voluntarily. All are vain-glorious, and seeke rather the shell, then the kernell, the shew, then the substance of holinesse.

1 *Rio. Pimenta. Lettre. l.6. c.22.*

Xauerius once in conference with the Bramens, demanding of them what their God commanded to those that would come to Heauen, was answered; Two precepts, one to abstaine from killing of Kine, in whose shape the Gods were worshipped: and the other to obserue the Bramenes, the Ministers of their Gods. But they haue more mysticall learning, which one of them secretly disclosed to the Iesuite. This was of a famous Schoole, College or Vniuersity of those Bramenes, all the Students whereof at their first Admission, he said, were sworne by solemne Oath vnto their Doctors, neuer to reueale any of their secrets: First, that there was one God, maker of Heauen & Earth, who alone, & not the *Pagodes*, ought to be worshipped: after that, they were instructed in precepts necessary to saluation. *Xauerius* asking what? he repeated the Ten Cõmandements in order as we do, and that in a mystical language known to few, which their Doctors obserue in their holy things. But the Bramene pronounced and explained them in the vulgar. Further, that the eight day, or Sunday is to be kept holy, & then often to repeat the prayer *Oncery Naraina Noma* (the same which before is related and interpreted out of *Heurnius*) this to be spoken with a lowe voice that they breake not their Oath: likewise that their old bookes foretell of a time when all shall be of one Religion.

Xauier. vita l. 2. c. 9. Lettre. l.4. c.8.

The Decalogue.

Fenicius another Iesuite learned of one of their Doctors, other their mysteries contained in their Bookes, that God produced all this world out of an Egge: out of one part thereof the Land, Sea, and inferiour creatures: out of the other, the Heauens for habitation to the Gods: that this World was founded on the end of a Buffals horne, and because this beast leaned on one side ready to fall, a huge Rocke was placed vnder him to support him. But as before, so here also followed some notice of better things. For there was a Malabar Poet which writ 900. epigrams against their *Pagodes*, each consisting of eight verses; wherein he speakes many things elegantly of the Diuine Prouidence, of Heauen, and the torments of Hell, and other things agreeing to the Christian Faith; that God is present euery where, and giues to euery one according to his estate, that Celestiall blessednesse consists in the vision of God, that the damned in Hell shall be tormented 400. millions of yeeres in flames, and shall never die: The bramenes he calls fooles and blockes. By this booke, and by Mathematicall doctrine of the Sphere, which they had scarcely euer heard of, he made way for conuerting the people.

Iacob. Fenicius

I haue thought good to say thus much together of them, as in one view representing the Bramenes; a name so anciently, so vniuersally communicated to the Indian Priests, although some particulars before haue beene, or hereafter may be said touching some of them in other places, according to the singularitie of each Nation in this so manifold a profession, which they all demonstrate in their singular Superstitions.

CHAP. X.
Of the Regions and Religions of Malabar.

§. I.
Of the Kingdome of Calicut.

MAlabar extendeth it selfe from the Riuer Congeraco to the Cape Comori; which some take to be the Promontory *Cory*, in [a] *Ptolomey: Maginus* doubteth, whether it be that which he calleth *Commaria Extrema.* In the length it containeth little lesse then three hundred miles, in breadth from that ridge of *Gate* to the Sea, in some places, fifty. From Cangerecora to Purupatan are [b] 60. miles of Coast; therein Cota, Colan, Nilichilan, Marabia, Belepatan, Cananor, where the Portugals haue a Fort, in 12. degrees; Tramapatan, Chomba, Main,

a *Ptol. l.7. c.1.*

b *Bar. Dec. 1. l.9. c.1.*

Main, and Perepatan. From thence to Chatua is the Kingdome of Calicut foureſcore miles in coaſt: therein Pandarane, Colete, Capocate, Calecut in 11. 15. Chale a Portugall Fortreſſe, Patangale. Tanora Citie Royall, Panane, Baleancor and Chatua. Then followes the Kingdome of Cranganor. Next to that the Kingdome of Cochin: then that of Porca without a good Port in her foure and fortie miles coaſt. Coulan is next, and then that of Trauancor, which the Portugals called the Great King, as being greater in State then the former, ſubject to the King of Narſinga. It is full of people, diuided into many States, by variety of Riuers, which cauſe Horſes to be vnſeruiceable in their Warres, and nouriſh many Crocodiles, enrich the ſoyle, and yeeld eaſie tranſportation of commodities, which are ſpices of diuers kindes. They haue Bats, in ſhape reſembling Foxes, in bigneſſe Kites. The chiefe Kingdomes in this tract are Kanonor, Calicut, Cranganor, Cochin, Carcolam, and Trauancor. About [c] ſeuen hundred yeeres ſince it was one Kingdome, gouerned by *Soma* or *Sarama Perimal*, who by perſwaſion of the Arabian Merchants became of their Sect, in which he proued ſo deuout, that he would end his dayes at Mecca. But before his departure he diuided his eſtate into theſe pety Signiories, among his principall Nobles and kindred: leauing vnto *Coulam* the ſpirituall preeminence, and the Imperiall Title vnto his Nephew of Calicut, who onely enjoyed the title of *Zamori*, or Emperour, and had prerogatiue of ſtamping coyne. Some exempt from this Zamorin Empire and Allegeance, both Coulam, the Papall See of the high Bramene, and Canaunor: and ſome haue ſince by their owne force exempted themſelues. This *Perimal* died in his holy Voyage: and the Indians of Malabar reckon from this diuiſion, their computation of yeeres, as we doe from the bleſſed *Natiuitie of our Lord*. He left (ſaith *Caſtaneda*) to himſelfe but twelue leagues of his Countrie, which lay neere to the ſhoare, where he meant to embarque himſelfe, neuer before inhabited: this he gaue to a Couſin of his then his Page, commanding that in memorie of his embarquing there it ſhould be inhabited, and the reſt to take Him for their Emperour (except the Kings of Coulan and Cananor) whom yet with the reſt he commanded not to coine money, but onely the King of Calicut. For Calicut was therefore here built: and the Moores for the embarquing tooke ſuch deuotion to the place, that they would no more frequent the Port of Coulan, as before (which therefore grew to ruine) but made Calicut the Staple of their Merchandiſe.

c *Lop. Caſtaneda lib. 1. Od. Barboſa. G. Bat. Ram. Linſchot. G. Arthus, hiſt. c. 26. 27. & ſeq.*

Calicut, the firſt in order with them, ſhall bee ſo with vs. The Citie is not walled nor 3
faire built, the ground not yeelding firme foundation, by reaſon of the water which iſſueth if it be digged. This Kingdome hath not aboue fiue and twenty leagues of Sea-coaſt, yet rich both by the fertilitie of the ſoyle, which yeeldeth Corne, Spices, Cocos, Iaceros, and many other fruits: and by the ſituation; as the Staple eſpecially before the Portugals vnfriendly neighbourhood, of Indian merchandiſe, and therefore in her varietie of Merchants, being a Map (as it were) of all that Eaſterne World. The [d] Egyptians, Perſians, Syrians, Arabians, Iudians; yea euen from Catay the ſpace of fixe thouſand miles journey, here had their trade and traffique. The Palace alſo contained foure Halls of Audience, according to their Religions, for the Indians, Moores, Iewes, Chriſtians. Of their Bramenes or Prieſts 40
we haue already ſaid. They yeeld diuine honours to diuers of their deceaſed Saints, and build Temples vnto beaſts. One of which (dedicated to an Ape) hath a large Porch for cattell, to the vſe of Sacrifice, in which are (ſaith [e] *Maffæus*) ſeuen hundred marble Pillars, not inferiour to thoſe of *Agrippa* in the Roman *Pantheon*. It ſeemeth that the ground in that place is not of ſo queaſy and watery a ſtomacke, but that it can digeſt deepe foundations. To Elephants they attribute like Diuinitie: but moſt of all to Kine, ſuppoſing that the ſoules of Men departed doe moſt of all enter into theſe beaſts. They haue many bookes of their ſuperſtition, neere the *Augurall* diſcipline of the Hetrurians, and ſond fables of the Græcians: and diligently conceale the ſame from vulgar knowledge, except ſome Bramene Proſelyte doe detect thoſe myſteries. They beleeue *one God, maker of Heauen and Earth*, 50
but adde that he could haue no pleaſure in ſo weighty a charge of gouerning the world, and therefore hath delegated the ſame to the Deuill, to reward euery man according to his workes; Him they call *Deumo*: they name God *Tamerani*. The King hath in his Palace the Chappell of *Deumo*, carued full of Deuils, and in the midde ſtteth this Image of metall in a Throne of the ſame matter, with a triple Crowne, like the Popes, and foure homes, with teeth, eyes, and mouth wide and terrible, hooked hands, and feet like a Cocke. In each corner of this ſquare Chappell is a Deuill ſet in a fiery Throne, wherein are many Soules, the Deuill putting one with his right hand into his mouth, and taking another from vnder him with his left hand. This Idoll is waſhed by the Bramenes with ſweet water, incenſed, and worſhipped euery morning. Somtime in the weeke they ſacrifice on this manner 60
They haue an Altar ſtrewed with flowers, on which they put the bloud of a Cocke, and coales of fire in a ſilue Chaſing-diſh, with much perfumes incenſing about the Altar, and

d *Ioſephus Indus.*

e *Maff. lib. 1.*

Lud. Vert. lib. 5. cap. 2.

often

often ringing with a little Bell of siluer. They hold in their hands a siluer Knife, with which the Cocke was killed, which they dip in the bloud, and put into the fire with many Apisti gestures. All the bloud is thus burned, many Waxe-candles burning meane-while. The Priest hath on his wrists and legs as it were Morrice-bels, which make a great noise, a certaine Table hanging at his necke: and when he hath ended his Sacrifice, he taketh his hands full of Wheat, goeth backward from the Altar (on which hee alwaies sixeth his eies) to a certaine Tree, and then hurleth the Corne vp ouer his head as high as he can: after which he returneth and vnsurmsheth the Altar. The King of Calicut eateth no meate, before foure principall Bramenes haue first offered thereof to the Deuill, which they do lifting both their hands ouer their heads, and shutting their fists draw back the same with their thumbe, presenting of that meate to the Idoll, and then carrie it to the King on a great Leafe, in a Treene Platter. The King sitteth on the ground at his meate, without any ching vnder him, attended with Bramenes, standing foure paces off, with their hands before their mouthes in great reuerence. And after the King hath eaten, those Priests carry the Relikes into the Court, where they clap thrice with their hands, whereat presently certaine Crowes resort thither to eate the Kings leauings, which Crowes are hereunto accustomed, and may not bee hurt of any.

When the King marrieth a wife, * one of the principall Bramenes hath the first nights lodging with her, for which he hath assigned him by the King foure hundred or fiue hundred Ducats. The King and his Gentlemen, or Nayros, eate not flesh without license of the Bramenes. The King committeth the custodie of his Wife to the Bramenes when he trauelleth any whither, and taketh in too honest part their dishonest familiaritie. But for this cause, the Kings Sonne succeedeth not in the Crowne, but his sisters Sonne, as being certainly of his bloud. These sisters of the King choose what Gentleman they please, on whom to bestow their Virginitie; and if they proue not in a certaine time to be with child, they betake them to these Bramene-stallions.

* *Castaneda & Bathola* saith, that he is not married, but as his Concubine

The Gentlemen and Merchants haue a custome to exchange Wiues, in token of great friendship. Some women amongst them haue sixe a or seuen Husbands, fathering her children on which of them shee best pleaseth. The Men when they marry, get others to vse them (if they bee Virgins) sifteene or twentie dayes before they themselues will bed them. This Author affirmeth, that there were a thousand Families of Christians in Calicut, at the time of his being there, a hundred and twentie yeeres since.

a *H. de Sauiffe.* *Stephane.*

If a Debtor breake day with his Creditor, and often disapoint him, hee goeth to the principall of the Bramenes, and receiueth of him a Rod, with which he approcheth to the Debter, and making a Circle about him, chargeth him in the name of the King, and the said Bramene, not to depart thence till he hath satisfied the Debt, which if he do not, he must starue in the place: for if he depart, the King will cause him to be executed. The new King for one yeeres space eateth neither Fish nor Flesh, nor cutteth his Haire or Nailes, vseth certaine Prayers daily, eateth but one meale, and that after he hath washed, neither may hee looke on any man till he hath ended his repast. At the yeeres end hee maketh a great Feast, to which resort aboue ten thousand persons to confirme the Prince and his Officers: and then much Almes is giuen. Hee entertaineth tenne thousand Women in diuers Offices in his Palace. These make to the King (after his fasting yeere is out) a Candlemasse Feast, each of them carrying diuers lights from the Temple (where they first obserue many Idoll idle Ceremonies) vnto the Palace with great Musicke and other iollitie.

Old. Sarrusa.

§. II.

Of the King of Calicut.

OF the election and erection of the Zamoryn, we haue spoken in the beginning of the Chapter: let vs here adde out of *Castaneda* b concerning his deuotion. Hee saith, that this King of Calicut is a Bramene, as his Predecessors also. And for that it is a custome that all the Kings die in one *Pagode*, or Idoll Temple, hee is elected for that cause. For alwaies there is and must be in that House a King to serue those Idols; and when hee seruedh there dieth, then must the King that then raigneth leaue his Empire, and goe serue in that place as the other did; another being elected to succeed him in the Kingdome. And if any refuseth to forsake his Court for the *Pagode*, they enforce him thereunto.

b *Hernan. Lop. de Castaneda, l. c. 144.*

The Kings of Malabar be browne men, and goe naked from the girdle vpward, and from thence downward they are couered with cloth of Silke and of Cotton, adorned with Iewels.

For their Children; the Sonnes inherit not, but the Brother, or if there bee none, the Sisters Sonne. When their Daughers are ten yeeres old, they send out of the Kingdome for a Nayro, and presenting him with gifts, request him to take her Virginitie: which hauing done, hee tieth a Iewell about her necke, which shee weareth during her life, as a token that from thenceforth shee hath free power of her bodie to doe what she will, which before shee might not. After their death [c] these Kings are carried forth into a plaine Field, and their burned with sweet wood very costly, their kindred and all the Nobilitie of the Countrey being present: which done, and the ashes buried, they shaue themselues, without leauing any haire except on the browes and eye-lids, euen on the least child: and for the space of thirteene dayes cease to eate [d] *Betele* (his lips are cut that doth it) and all that time is an *Inter-regnum*, wherein they obserue if any will come in to obiect any thing against the new future King. After this [e] hee is sworne to the Lawes of his Predecessor, to pay his debts, to recouer whatsoeuer belonged to his Kingdome being lost; which Oath he taketh hauing his Sword in his left hand, and in the right a Candle burning, which hath a Ring of Gold vpon it, which he toucheth with two of his fingers, and taketh his Oath. This being done, they throw or powre vpon him a few graines of Rice, with many other Ceremonies and Prayers, and he worshippeth the Sunne three times: after which, all the *Caymailes* or principall Nobles sweare their fealtie to him, handling also the same Candle. The thirteene dayes ended, they eate their *Betele* againe, and Flesh and Fish as before; the King except, who then taketh thought for his Predecessor, and for the space of one whole yeere (as is before obserued in part out of *Barbosa*) eates no *Betele*, nor shaueth his beard, nor cutteth his nailes: eateth but once a day, and before hee doth it, washeth all his bodie, and obseruetb certaine houres of Prayer daily. The yeere being ended, he obseruetb a kind of *Dirige* for his Predecessors soule, whereat are assembled 100000. persons, at which time hee giueth great Almes, and then is confirmed. All these Malabar Kings haue one speciall Man, which is the chiefe Administrator of Iustice, who in matters of gouernment is obeyed no lesse then the King himselfe. The Souldiers are *Nayros*, none of which can be imprisoned or put to death by ordinarie Iustice: but if one of them kill another, or esse kill a Cow, or sleepe with a Countriewoman, or speake euill of the King: the King after information giues his Warrant to another *Nayro*, who with his Associates kill him wheresoeuer they find him, hewing him with their Swords, and then hang on him his Warrant, to testifie the cause of his death. These *Nayros* may not weare their Weapons, nor enter into combate, till they be armed Knights, although that from the Age of seuen yeeres they are trayned vp in Feates and practice of Armes. He is [f] dubbed or created by the King, who commandeth to gird him with a Sword, and laying his right hand vpon his head, mutteretb certaine words softly, and afterward dubbeth him, saying, [g] *Hauie a regard to keepe these Bramenes, and their Kine.* These are the two Great Commandements of the Bramene Law. The King sometimes commits this Ceremonie to their Panicall or Master in the Feats of Armes, whom they euer honour as their Father, and next to the King most reuerence. They teach them to Run, Leape, Fencing, and managing of Weapons, and anoint them with Oyle of *Gergelin*, to make their linewes pliant for all winding and tumbling gestures. They begin to goe to Schoole at seuen yeeres olde. In fight they are valorous, and account it no shame to flee, but will doe it in policie, and yet when they yeeld themselues to any mans seruice, they bind themselues to die with him, and for him, which they faithfully performe, fighting till they bee killed. They are great Southsayers, haue their good and bad Dayes, worship the Sun, the Moone, the Fire, and the Kine, and the first they meet in the morning. The Deuill is often in them (they say it is one of their *Pagodes*) which causeth them to vtter terrible wordes; and then hee goeth before the King with a naked Sword, quaking and cutting his flesh, saying with great cries: I am such a god, and I am come to tell thee such a thing; and if the King doubteth, he roreth lowder, and cutteth himselfe deeper till he be credited. The Portugals haue much eclipsed the greatnesse of the King of Calicut, and caused many other alterations in all the East in this last Age of the World. Of whose exploits, *Castaneda, Barrius, Maffeus, Osorius*, and others haue written at large. Our *English-Indian* Societie haue setled a Factorie at Calicut, touching the conditions and condition whereof you may reade at large in *Roger Hawes* his Iournall, deliuered amongst other our Pilgrimes. He telleth of the perfidiousnesse of this people, how hardly they could get in debts, they chusing rather to spend much in bribes then to pay debts. Ours made vse of their Superstition to Iustice: for vnderstanding that they would neither eate nor wash while the English were in their houses, they would threaten not to depart till they were payd; hauing meane while Nayros for their Guard. Thus Iustice made them iust, and vncharitablenes charitable. For rather then be long troubled with their company, most of them would pay part of their debts, so that they got fifty *Fanos* (kind of Coine) of one, 100. of another, but one notwithstanding their three dayes abode, would pay nothing: it seemes, equally prophane, superstitious and vniust.

c Funerall Rites.

d A leafe of which see c.13.

e Inauguration of the new King.

f The dubbing of the Nayros. *Bar. Dec. 1. l. 9.*

g *Pagesco Bramenis Bisquera.*

* My Pilgrims or Voyages. *Tom. 1. l. 5. c. 1.*

§. III.

§. III.

Of their differing Sects.

BArbosa reckoneth eighteene Sects that haue no mutuall conuersation, nor may marrie, but in their ownerankes or order. Next to the King and Bramenes, * he placeth the Nayros, which are Gentlemen and Souldiers, and are not professed Nayros (notwithstanding their blood) till they be by their Lords or by the King made Knights or Souldiers. And then hee must neuer from that time goe without his Weapons, which commonly are a Rapier and a Target, and sometimes Pecces or Bowes. They neuer marry, but lye with such of the Nayros Women or Daughters as like them, leauing his Weapons meanewhile at the doore, which forbid any man else, although it be the goodman himselfe, to enter, till he hath ended his businesse and be gone. And if one of the common people once touch a Nayro, it is lawfull for the Nayro to kill him: and he is also vncleane, and must be purified by certaine washings. And for this cause they cry as they goe in the streets, *Pa, Pa*, that the baser Raskality may giue place. They haue a Pit of standing Water at their doores, hallowed by the Bramenes, wherein euery morning they wash themselues, although it bee greene, slimie, and stinking, imagining thus to be clensed of their sinnes. They are brought vp altogether to Feats of Armes and Actiuitie, from their Child-hood, admirably able to wind and turne themselues, and are very resolute and desperate, binding themselues by oath to liue and die with their King or Lord. No Nayro's women may enter into Calicut but one night in the yeere, when the Citie is full of Lights: and then they goe with the Nayros, to behold and gaze their fill. They intend nothing but their lust, and thinke that if they die Virgins, they shall neuer enter into Paradise.

* *Maffeus* reckoneth foure orders. The Cavaliers, or Nobles, the Bramenes or Priests, the Nayros or Souldiers, the Vulgar. The Nayros.

The Biabari are another sort, and are Merchants Gentiles, and enioy great priuiledges. The King cannot put them to death, but by sentence of the principall of themselues. They were the only Merchants before the Moores traded there, and still enioy many possessions. These marry one Wife, and their Children inherit, and they may touch the Nayro's. The Cugianem are a Sect of the Nayros, hauing a Law and Idols by themselues, which they may neuer alter. They make Tiles to couer the Temples and the Kings Palace. The Nayro's may lie with their women, but must wash themselues before they goe home. The Biabari.

Another Sect is called *Mannumar*, which are Landerers, nor may they or their Posterite be of other function: nor may they mingle themselues with any other Generation. They haue Idol-ceremonies and Temples by themselues. The Nayros may vse their Wiues (or Women rather,) Their Brethren or Nephewes are their Heires. The *Cahen* are Weauers, and haue a distinct Idolatrous Sect; otherwise are as the former.

Besides these of better condition, there are of baser sort eleuen Sects, which may not marie nor meddle with others. The first of these are called *Tiberi*, Husbandmen; the second, *Moger*, and are Mariners; both hauing their proper Superstitions, and vse their women in common: the third are *Astrologers*, whom they call *Cunium*. Great men aske their counsell, but may not touch their persons. The *Aggori* are Masons and Workers in Metals. The *Muchoa* or *Michie* are Fishers, dwelling in Villages by themselues; the men Theeues, the women Harlots, with whom they please. The *Berua* are Salt-makers: the *Paerun* are Iugglers, Inchanters, and Physicians (if such damnable Deuillish practices may deserue so honourable Name) which, when any are sicke and require their helpe, vse Conturation to cause the Deuill to enter into some of them, and then by his suggestion declare the euent of the Disease, and what Sacrifices or other things are to be performed. They may not touch or bee touched of other men.

The *Rowler* are a baser sort of Gentiles, which carry wood into the Citie to sell, and herbs. The *Puler* are as excommunicate persons, and liue in Desarts, where the Nayros haue no occasion to passe, and when they goe neere any of these Nayros, or any of the better sort, they cry as lowdas they can (as the * Lepers among the Iewes) that others may auoid them. For if any touch them, their Kindred may for such action or passion slay them, and as many of these *Puler* also, as may make satisfaction for such disparagement. Some nights they wil go of purpose, seeking to touch some of the Nayro women with hand, sticke, or hurling of a stone: which if they effect, there is no remedie for the woman but to get her forth and sing with these Villaines, or to be sold, to escape killing by the hands of her Kindred. These *Puler* are Theeues and Sorcerers. The *Pareua* are of worse esteeme, and liue in Desarts without commerce of any, reputed worse then the Deuill. These ten sorts (or eleuen, if you reckon two sorts of the *Tibers*, as our Author doth; where of one are Warriors, distinguished by a certaine cudgell, which they must carry in their hands; from the Nayros, are as well differing in Re-

* *Leuit.* 13. 45.

ligions, as matters of common life: though for their seuerall Rites, it were wrong to the Reader at large to recite them, if we had the particulars to deliuer. But this is common in India, that each Trade and Tribe distinguish a new Sect.

There are besides these Gentiles, Naturall of Malabar, many strangers of Indians, Moores, and Christians. But in other Kingdomes of Malabar, the Heathenish Religion is little differing from that in Calicut.

Cranganor. Cranganor is a small Kingdome: the Inhabitants of the Citie, which giueth name to the Region, are Christians of Saint *Thomas* profession, about seuentie thousand in number. Cochin is now growne great by the Portugals traffique and friendship. Of the rest there is not much worth the recitall. The Papall honour among the Bramenes, was by ordination of *Perumal*, which placed there the Supremacie of the Bramens, because He to whom he gaue *Coulam*, was a greater Man then the rest. This Papall title was *Cobritin*, a dignity which the King of Cochin still retayneth to be supreme Head of the Bramenes. For the ancient Kings of Coulan remooued their seate to Cochin, which was then in their Territories. But Warres haue since much altered the face of things in those parts. [h] In these parts are now many Christian Proselites of the Iesuites Conuersion, besides many of the olde *Thomas Christians*. Both Men and Women in Cochin, account it a great Gallantry to haue wide Eares, which therefore they stretch by Art, hanging Waights on them till they reach to their shoulders.

h Bar. Dec. 1. l. 9.

Porca is a Kingdome Southwards from Cochin, but little we can say of it. In *Trauancor* betweene Coulan and the Cape were many Christians, if they may be so called, which want Sacraments. For in fifty yeeres together they had not seene a Priest, only they had the priuiledges and name of *Thomean-Christians*. These *Thomeans* are now, as the Iesuites report, reduced to their Catholicisme.

i Coulan.
k Od. Bar.

The King of i *Trauancers* Dominion k stretcheth beyond the Cape *Comori*, (where *Malabar* endeth) on the East-side fourescore and ten miles, as farre as *Cael*: which diuers great Lords hold vnder him. Among the rest is the Signiory of *Quilacare*. In the City of *Quilacare* is an Idoll of high account, to which they solemnize a Feast euery twelfth yeere, where the Gentiles resort as the Popish Christians in the Romish Iubilee. The Temple sacred to this Idoll hath exceeding great reuenue. The King (for so he is called) at this Feast erecteth a Scaffold couered with silke, and hauing washed himselfe with great solemnity, he prayeth before this Idoll: and then ascendeth the Scaffold, and there in presence of all the people cutteth off his Nose, and after that his Eares, Lips, and other parts, which he casts towards the Idoll, and at last he cutteth his throate, making a butcherly sacrifice of himselfe to his Idolls. He that is to be his Successor, must be present hereat: for he must vndergoe the same Martyrdome, when his twelue yeeres Iubilee is come. Along this Coast dwell the *Parauis*, simple people, and Christians, which liue by fishing of Pearles. The *Nayros* make such holes in their Eares, that l *Cæsar Fredericke* say th, hee thrust his arme vp to the shoulders in one of them. They are prodigal of their liues in the honour of their King. *Osorius* m telleth of some, which, like the renowned *Decij*, had vowed themselues to death, and not to returne from the enemy without victory. *Aloisius Goncaluus* numbreth in the Sea Coast of Coulam three and twenty townes, of which nineteene had Christian Churches.

l Cæs. Fred.
m Osorius de Reb. Eman.

The *Malabars* n are generally of one Language, and one kind of writing. This their writing was in leaues of Palme, which they call Olla, two fingers broad, and long as the matter they intended, written on both sides with a stile of Iron, which they binde vp in Bookes betweene two boords in greater or lesser formes as they pleale. Their writing is from the left hand to the right. They reckoned their times before the *Portugals* came into the *Indies*, from the departure of *Perimal*. There are two sorts of Moores, one Mestiços of mixed seed of Moore-fathers and Ethnike-mothers, called *Naiteani*, Mungrels also in their Religion: the other Forreiners, which come thither in trading. There are also many Iewes, which haue almost lost their Iudaisme, minding more their merchandize then superstition.

n Bar. Dec. 1. l. 9

Step. de Brit. 1600. Malcas.

Besides those former Sects, *Stephanus de Brito* speaketh of the *Malcas* which inhabit small Villages in the Mountaynes, which are Hunters of Elephants: amongst whom are no thefts or robberies, and therefore they leaue their doores open when they goe abroad. They haue no Idoll amongst them; only they obserue their Ancestours Sepulchres. These haue no Commerce with their Neighbours, nor are much subiect to Kings, only pay them a kinde of tribute, hauing *Arelli* set ouer them as Iudges or Magistrates, vnder each of them fiue or sixe thousand men. Their houses are made of *Indian* Canes dawbed with earth, and some liue on trees laying beames from one tree to another, and so building them lofty Cottages free from Tygres and wilde Elephants, whereof the Mountaynes are full, which they take in Pits couered ouer with leaues. They haue fertile fields and Valleyes, but not diligently husbanded. They are content with one Wife, which they carry with them

whi-

whithersoeuer they goe, though but a Hunting-voyage. They are as other Malabars naked from the waste vpwards, a long garment hangs thence to the ankles, and on their heads a Turbant as the Mores. Their necke, eares, and nostrils, are laden with gold. For the Malabars weare gold aswell for nose-rings, as eare-rings. These Maleas are of better estimation then the base vulgar, nor is it accounted a pollution to touch them, no more then other Nairos or Thomæan Christians. They haue their Pipes and Tabors on their Feasts. They are also Sorcerers and diuine by familiar Spirits, but vse not to kill or hurt men by Witch-craft, as other Indians and Malabars doe. A witty, docible, honest people, perhaps descended of those Malliani, which *Plutarch* and *Curtius* mention in the life of *Alexander*.

10 Of the Feast which all the Malabar-Kings hold euery twelfth yeare in honour of the Riuer Ganges, we haue there spoken * where we haue discoursed of the Riuer. This Feast lasteth eight and twentie or thirtie dayes with great solemnitie: the Samorin euery day washing himselfe and offering Sacrifices to Ganges: after which hee returnes to his Palace with innumerable troupes of men, riding vpon an Elephant in great pompe: and three dayes after in the morning and euening with greatest Royaltie, makes shew of himselfe in a high Throne, many Lampes of gold and siluer burning about him, many Peeces discharged, with other ceremonie of State. The King prostrates himselfe on the ground, and three times doth reuerence to the People, and they to Him, the Kings Vassals then doing him homage. After this, many Champions exercise their Fencing-skill before him, and at the sound of Instruments, the chiefe Nobles by twō and two in a ranke, with their faces to the ground, doe reuerence: the Elephants are likewise to honour Him. Twentie thousand Crownes are spent on this solemnitie by the King. Another more diuellish rite followes. About the yeare 1520. the Zamorin slue a certaine King. In memorie whereof the Successors of that King send a certayne number of their Souldiers to reuenge his death, themselues being sure to be slaine: these are called Amocæ, which are Clients to that King, and are either to come themselues, or to send so many Souldiers, to the number of thirtie, which rush among the People, and kill as many as they can; themselues certayne to be killed of the Kings Souldiers.

* *Supra lib.*

CHAP. XI.

Of the Kingdome of Narsinga and Bisnagar.

§. I.

Of their Funerall and Idolatrous bloudie Rites.

FRom those places where our feet last rested (or touched rather) vnto the Cape Guadauerin [a], betwixt that ridge of Mountaines called Gate, and the Ocean (which is there named the Gulfe of Bengala) trendeth the Kingdome of Narsinga, or Bisnagar; those two Royall Cities contending which shall giue name to this mightie Empire, containing two hundred leagues of Sea-coast. The King hath in continuall pay forty thousand Nairos. But as occasion seruedh, he can bring into the field many many thousands more: as in that Expedition against *Idalkan*, specified by *Barrius* and *Boterus*; in which, was a world of people (seuen hundred thousand foot, fortie thousand horse, seuen hundred Elephants, twentie thousand harlots.) Hee sacrificed also vnto Idols twentie thousand seuen hundred and threescore head of Beasts and Fowles in nine dayes space, which in Idoll-deuotion were all bestowed after on the poore.

a *Magin. Oli. Boter. Bem.*

In the yeare of our Lord 1565. Biznagar [b] was sacked by foure Kings of the Mores (as saith *Frederike*) naming them *Dialkan*, *Zamaluc*, *Cotamaluc*, and *Viridy*, through treason of two More Captaines, which had seuen or eight score thousand Souldiers vnder them; but being of the same Religion with the Kings of Decan, betrayed their owne King, forsaking him in the midst of the battaile. This was a iust reward of treason to the true King of Biznegar. For three Captaines had kept the King thirtie yeares as prisoner, once a yeare shewing him to the people, themselues ruling the State. When he dyed, then *Ramaraio* exalted himselfe to the Throne. *Temiraio*, the second, swayed the gouernment, and the third *Bengube* was General of the Armie. Onely *Temiraio* escaped and returned (when the Decans had sacked the Citie, and were gone) to Beznegar, and sent to Goa great promises for Horses, if any Merchants would bring any. Whereupon *Frederike* went with other Merchants, which carried store of them, but brought no store of money in payment; the Tyrant accepting the Horses, but paying nothing. *Temiraio* remoued his Court from Bezineger to Penegorde,

b *Fred.*

gorde, eight dayes iourney within Land. And his sonne put to death the sonne of that King before mentioned, which had beene imprisoned, as this also had beene, till Death by a murthering hand freed him. Hence grew many broyles, the Nobles refusing to acknowledge this New King: and thus Bizneger being forsaken, remained after this an Habitation for Tygres and wild Beasts, containing in circuit foure and twentie myles, as our Author (that stayed there seuen moneths) affirmeth. He neuer saw Palace exceeding that of Biznagar. It had nine Gates with guards of Souldiers. Here hee obserued their Rites in burning the women, so often mentioned, which after his and *Balby* his relations are thus. (I haue declared the like for substance before; this, as in some Rites differing, I adde also.)

e The solemnide of burning of the wife after her husbands death. The Ancients mention this Rite. *Vid Æl. var. Hist. l. 5. c. 18. Hier. ad Iou. L. 1.* See the same described in *Porchacchi Fun. Antichi Tav. 17*

The woman e taketh two or three moneths respite after her husbands death: The day being come, she goeth earely out of her house, mounted on a Horse or Elephant, or else on a Stage, carried by eight men: apparelled like to a Bride, adorned with Iewels, and her haire about her shoulders; holding in her left hand a Looking-glasse; in the right an Arrow: and singeth as shee passeth through the Citie, saying, That she goeth to sleepe with her husband. She is accompanied with her friends, vntill it be one or two of the clocke in the afternoone: then they goe out of the Citie, passing by the Riuers side to the burning-place, where is prepared a great square Cane, full of Wood. Here is made a great Banquet, the woman eating with ioy, as if it were her wedding-day; and after, they sing and dance, till the woman bid to kindle the fire in the Caue: then she leaueth the Feast, and taketh her husbands neerest kinsman by the hand, and goeth with him to the banke of the Riuer, where she stripperh her of her cloathes and iewels, bestowing them at her pleasure, and couering herselfe with a cloth, throweth herselfe into the Riuer, saying, *O wretches, wash away your sinnes.* Comming out of the Water, she rowleth herselfe into a yellow cloth; and againe taking her husbands kinsman by the hand, goeth to the said Caue, by which is erected a little Pinnacle, on which she mounteth, and there recommendeth her children and kindred to the people. After this, another woman taketh a pot with oyle, and sprinkleth it ouer her head, and there with annoyntetb all her bodie, and then throweth it into the Furnace, the woman going together with the same. Presently after the woman, the people throw great pieces of Wood into the Caue, so that with those blowes, and the fire, she is quickly dead, and their great mirth is on a suddaine turned into great lamentation and howling.

When a Great man dyeth, all the women of his house, both his wiue and slaues, with whom hee hath had carnall copulation, burne themselues together with him. Amongst the baser sort, I haue seene (saith Master *Frederike*) the dead man carried to the place of buriall, and there set vpright: the d woman comming before him on her knees, casteth her armes about his necke, while a Mason maketh a wall round about them: and when the wall is as high as their neckes; one comming behind the woman, strangleth her; the workeman presently finishing the wall ouer them: and this is their buriall.

d The wife immured with her dead husband.

e *Lud Vert. l. 6*

Ludouicus Vertomannus e relateth the same Funerall Rites of Tarnassari (as in other parts of India) saying that there fifteene or twentie men, in their idolatrous habit, like Diuels, doe attend on the fire wherein the husband is burned; all the Musicians of the Citie solemnizing the Funerall pompe: and fifteene dayes after, they haue the like solemnitie, at the burning of the woman; those diuellish fellowes holding fire in their mouthes, and sacrificing to *Demo*, and are her intercessors to that Diuell for her good entertainment.

f *Odericus.*

The cause of burning their wiues, is by some ascribed to their wonted poysonings of their husbands, before this Law; f by others, that the husband might haue her helpe and comfort in the other world.

g *Odericus.*

Odericus g telleth of a strange and vncouth Idoll, as bigge as Saint *Christopher*, of pure Gold, with a new band about the necke, full of precious stones, some one whereof was of value (if he valued iustly) more then a whole Kingdome: The roofe, pauement, and seeling of the walls, within and without the Temple, was all Gold. The Indians went thither on pilgrimage, some with halters about their neckes, some with their hands bound behind them, some with knues sticking on their armes and legges; and if, after their pilgrimage, the wounded flesh festered, they esteemed that limbe holy, and a signe of their Gods fauour. Neere to the Temple was a Lake, where into the Pilgrims cast Gold, Siluer, and Gemmes, for honour of the Idoll, and reparation of his Temple. At euery yearely Feast, the King and Queene, with the Pilgrims and People, assembling, placed the said Idoll in a rich Chariot, and with a solemne procession of Virgins, two and two in a ranke, singing before him, and with Musicall Instruments carrie him forth. Many Pilgrims put themselues vnder the Chariot wheeles, where they are crushed in pieces. More then fiue hundred persons vsed thus to doe, whose carkasses were burned, and ashes kept for holy Reliques. Otherwise also they will deuote themselues to such a martyrdome in this manner: The parents and friends assemble and make a Feast to this Votarie, and after that, hang fiue sharpe knues

kniues about hisnecke, and so carrie him before the Idoll; where he taketh one of his kniues, and cryeth, *For the worship of my God I cut this my flesh*; and cutting a piece, casteth it at the face of the Idoll; and so proceeding, at the last sayth, *Now doe I yeeld my selfe to death on the behalfe of my God*; and being dead, is burned as before.

Our Country-man [h] Sir *John Mandeuile* reporteth the same Historie of their Idoll-Procession, and the ashes of those voluntary Martyrs; which they keepe, to defend them against tempests and misfortunes. He also sayth, That some Pilgrims, in all their peregrinations, not once lifted vp their eye-lids; some, at euery third or fourth pace fell downe on their knees, to worship: some whipped; others wounded themselues; yea, killed themselues (as is before said.) *Nicolo di Conti* [i] reporteth the same in his time.

Neither is this bloudy custome yet left, as *Linschoten* [k] affirmeth, by report of one of his chamber-fellowes that had seene it. They haue (sayth he) a Waggon, or Cart, so heauie, that three or foure Elephants can hardly draw it, which is brought forth at Faires, Feasts, and Processions. At this Cart hang many Cables or Ropes, whereat all the people hale and pull, of deuotion. In the vpper part of the Cart standeth a Tabernacle, and therein the Idoll: vnder it sit the Kings wiues, playing on Instruments. And while the Procession passeth, some cut pieces of their flesh, and throwe at the *Pagode*; some lay themselues vnder the wheeles of the Cart, with such euent as you haue heard.

Gasparo Balby [l] relateth the same, and addeth, That the Priests, which haue care of this Idoll, and certaine women, are consecrated to these deuotions from their Cradles, by their *Zeale-blind* parents. And the women prostitute their bodies, to gaine for the Idoll what soeuer they can get ouer and aboue their owne maintenance. This filleth the Citie with Strumpets; there being of this *Sacred* (you may interpret it *Cursed*) crue, foure hundred in one place of the Citie. These haue their place in the Idoll-procession, some of them in the Chariot which is drawne by men; euery one accounting himselfe happy, that can touch, or draw the same. This he sayth was at Negapaton.

He further affirmeth, That not farre from the Citie of Saint *Thomas* is the Towne Casta: where the the Wife is not burned (as at Negapatan) but a great Graue being made for the deceased Husband, they place the liuing Wife by the dead corps, and their neerest kindred cast earth vpon them both, and stampe thereon. They which marry, wed in their owne degree, as a Smith to a Smiths daughter: and they powre out their prayers at the Image of some Kow, or a Serpent, called *Bittia di Capella*. Their Bramenes burne Kowes dung; and if they intend any warres with other Nations, they anoint their Nose and Forehead with those ashes, not washing themselues till the euening. They which sacrifice themselues to the *Pagode*, when they haue wallowed a long time in lustfull pleasures, shoot into the aire pieces of their flesh tyed to Arrowes, and diuersly mangle themselues; at last, cut their owne throats, so sacrificing themselues to the *Pagode*.

There are also certaine people called *Amouchi*, otherwise *Chiami*, which perceiuing the end of their life [m] approach, lay hold on their weapons, which they call *Chusse*, and going forth, kill euery man they meet with, till some body (by killing them) make an end of their killing. They are loth (it seemes) to come into the Deuils presence empty-handed, or to goe to Hell alone. Some of them worship GOD in the likenesse of a Man; some in the images of Kine and Serpents: some inuoke the Sunne and Moone; others, some Tree or Riuer.

Among many Feasts which they celebrate in the yeere, one in Autumne is most solemne, in which they take some great tree, and fasten it in the ground, hauing first fashioned it like a mast of a Ship, with a crosse-yard, whereon they hang two hookes of iron. And when any one by sicknesse, or other miserie, hath made a vow to their Idoll or *Pagode*, hee commeth thither, and being first admonished by the Priests to offer his sacrifice, they lift him with those hookes by both the shoulders, and there hold him to the Idoll, till he hath three times saluted the same, with clapping his folded hands to his breast, and hath made some spott thereto with weapons which he hath in his hand. After this he is let downe, and the bloud which issueth from his shoulders is sprinkled on the Tree, in testimonie of his deuotion. Then they draw him vp againe by the middle, to giue thankes to the Idoll: and then giue him leaue to heale himselfe, if he can. They which are in great miserie, or seeke some great matter at the hand of their Idoll, doe this. They haue another Feast, celebrated in the night, continuing eight nights: in which many Candles were seene burning thorow the Citie. Three or foure runne from one end of street to the other, and hurling Rice, and other meates after them, say, they offer it to the Deuill which followes them; not daring to looke behind, least he should slay them. In other places also they haue those Idol-chariots, like vnto Towers, to the drawing whereof, many thousands of deuout persons put their helping-hand.

Anno 1598. [o] there was a great contention, whether the signe of *Perimal* should bee erected

h Sir John Mandeuile.

i Nic. di Conti cap. 44.

k Linschot. l. 1 cap. 44.

l Balby cap. 30. & Arthus Dami Hist. Ind. Orient.

m Desperate dying.

o An. Domi 1598.

erected in the Temple of *Cidambacham.* This signe was a gilded Mast, with an Ape at the foot thereof. Many Embassadors were there about this quarrell; some vrging, some resisting this deed. But the Prince (called the *Naicho* of Gingi) would haue it set vp, notwithstanding the Priests greatest vnwillingnesse. The Priests therefore, both regular (which are the *Iogues*) and secular *Bramenes* ascended vp the roofe of the Church, and thence threatned to hurle downe themselues, which twenty of the *Iogues* did, and the rest threatned to follow. But the *Naicho* caused Gunnes to be discharged at them, which slue two, and caused the rest to retire and breake their couenant (rather then their necks) with their fellowes. A woman also of this faction cut her owne throat for zeale of this new superstition.

§. II.

Of the Kings and Bramenes in this Kingdome.

o The titles of the Kings of Bisnagar.

HE swelling stile of this King of Bisnagar, I thought worthie to be here inserted, which is this. o *The Husband of good fortune, the God of great Prouinces, King of the greatest Kings, and God of Kings, the Lord of horsemen, the Master of them which cannot speake, Emperour of three Emperours, Conqueror of all be sees, and Keeper of all he conquers, Dreadfull to the eight coasts of the world, Vanquisher of the Mahumetans*, &c. *Lord of the East, West, North, and South, and of the Sea*, &c. *Vencapadinu Ragin Deuamaganu Ragel, which now releth and gouerneth this world.*

Bar. Dec. x. lib. 8. cap. 1. These Kings of Bisnagar haue, as sayth *Barrius*, a great part of the Westerne coast subject vnto them, all betweene the riuers of Aliga and Cangerecora: in which space are these coast Townes, Ancola, Agorapan, Mergeu, Onor, a Royall Citie, Baticala, Bendor, Bracelor, Bacanor, Carara, Carnate, Mangalor, Mangliran, Cumlara, and Cangerecora. From this Citie standing on a Riuer of the same name, Southwards vnto the Cape Comori is reckoned the Malabar coast. And although Goa and Calecut much hinder those his Ports, yet to salute and shake hands, with both Seas, argues a great State, specially where the adioyning are so small. There are three Naichi or Tributary Kings subiect to Him; such in
Iarric. l. 6. c. 21. power, but in title Naichi, that is, Deputies or Presidents, of Madura, Gingi, and Tanalor. The Naicho of Madura is Lord of the Fishing coast. The people are called Badage, and despise the Portugals, because they drinke Wine, eate Beefe, and suffer themselues to be touched of the Pareæ, and carried on their shoulders. For these in their Bramene zeale, would not endure to touch or talke with the baser vulgar, and their Bramenes would die
Robert Sforce. rather then eare that which a Bramene had not dressed. And therefore *Robert Sforce* a Iesuite comming amongst them, professed himselfe of the Bramene or Rape bloud, that is, of Noble race, procured a Bramene to dresse his meate, abstained from Flesh, Fish, Wine, and Egges, after their Countrey manner, and attired himselfe in the habite of a Sanasse (one of their votaries) and in pretence of chastitie stirred not out of his house in a whole yeere, nor would be spoken with by euery one, alleaging somtimes his deuouter conference with God, so to winne credite with these Ethnikes. He learned by conference with a Bramene, that they maintayned that Philosophicall axiome, that *Nothing could be made of nothing*, and held three *Beginnings* or Vniuersall Causes, the first *Padi*, that is God, the second *Pain*, the Matter of which they say the Soules are made, the third *Passan*, the Corporall matter. They maintayned also the *μετεμψυχωσις* or Pythagorean passage of Soules out of one body into another: for else (say they) how could there be such diuersitie of Men, one a King, another a Seruant; one a Bramene, another a Parea? They are also Platonikes, holding the Soule not to be the forme of the Body, but enclosed therein as a Bird in a Cage.

Votaries and Doctors. The Bramenes weare ashes on their heads. It seemes they are zealous *Baneanes.* Their Sanasses are Asses indeed for literature, only as Hermites, they vow chastitie. The Gorupi or Gorusi are the Doctors of their Law. The Iesuites professed the Doctorship of these, in the habite of the former; which is a white Garment to the ankle with another of the same colour but thinner ouer it, a red cloth cast ouer the shoulders, one like a Cap or Hat on his head: from his necke hangs downe a corde of fiue threeds, three of gold, and two of white silke, they eate but once a day.

Their Bramenes haue a proper language and mysticall (as Roman for the Romish holies) called Gueredan, which the Iesuite learned, and thereby out of their books, that there had beene in these parts foure Lawes or Sects, three of which the Bramenes still obserued, to wit, of Vesmu, of Brama, of Rubren; the fourth meerely spirituall, partly mixed with others, and partly lost, tending to the saluation of the Soule, which he said that He brought now vnto them; their Almes and Bodily chastisements, without this, not being effectuall

to

to their salutation. Any might learne and choose a Doctor for any of the other three, but none was able to teach this. When they become Schollers to such Doctors, they doe a triple reuerence vnto the ground, lifting vp their hands aloft, then letting them downe to their heads; and must (like the Pythagoreans of old, which was learned of the Indians) rest satisfied with his Masters bare Assertion, without questioning or further disputing. He was once brought before a Consistorie of the Bramenes, and accused for his new Doctrine. Some Articles were, That he should affirme that the washing in *Remanancor* and *Ganges* were to no effect; That the Bramenes are inferior to the *Raij* or Princes; That they should be all damned, notwithstanding there were of them many *Nbanisij* and *Sanasses* (the *Nbanisij* also vow chastitie and to forsake the World.) The President of this Councell cleered the Iesuite vpon the Apologie of another Bramene. For that of *Remanancor*, it is a corner of the Fishing Region, wherein is a Temple famous through all the East, which hee that shall visit and wash himselfe in the Sea iust by, shall bee cleered from all his sinnes, aswell as if it were done in *Ganges*.

Formes of reuerence. *ἀυτος ἔφα.* Nbanisij. Ramananco.

Id Madura and the Territorie thereof are numbred a hundred thousand Bramenes, the chiefe of which is *Chocanada*, as their Bishop or Pope: He would haue this Iesuite expelled the Countrie, for that this Franke (so euer since the Expedition to Ierusalem vnder Duke *Godfrey* of Bullen, all Westerne Christians are called in all the East, a name, it seemes which the Saracens communicated to the Ethnikes) had eaten with another Franke. Hee meant *Fernandes*, another Iesuite, that had not thus acted the *Sanasse* and *Gurupi* amongst them. He alleaged also that His Temple was built in the ground of His *Pagode*. But this Iesuite with Gold stopped this Bramenes mouth, and had the soyle of the Church granted him in peace, with promise of all fauour. One thing that holds them intangled in this errour, is, that they hold it vnlawfull to copie out their Lawes and Religion in writing, so that they which wil learne them, must (like the *Druydes*) from their youth learne them of some Doctour, and commit them to memories in which they spend tenne yeeres and more. And if any should write them, they would pull out his eyes.

Emanuel Leitanus, another Iesuite, comming to Madura in the like *Sanassian* Habit, obserued the Gorupian order, and fell downe before *Sforce* to the ground, Hee sitting in a Chaire couered with red; because some of the *Madurians* were present. The Bramenes in the Kingdome of Bisnaga are of such power, that nothing is done without them; and of the sixe Counsellours of State, foure are Bramenes: yea, with their face to the earth, all men, and the King himselfe, adore the Bramen-Pope: nor doth the King admit any to conference in the morning, before hee hath seene two Bramenes. In Chandegrin is a Clocke that strikes not foure and twentie houres, but sixtie and foure, according to their division of the Night and Day, each into foure parts, and those subdiuided into eight. The Iesuites conceiue that these Bramenes are of the dispersion of the Israelites, and their Bookes (called *Sameseretan*) doe somewhat agree with the Scriptures, but that they vnderstand them not. They haue some prophetically phrases, and some of them affirme that God made *Adam* the first man, and being pressed acknowledge one God. The King and his Nobles speak the learned and sacred tongue of the Bramenes.

M. Leitanus.

Anno 1609. One of his Great men rebelling against him, and fortifying the Castle of Vellur, the King besieged him, and on his submission pardoned him; but so as hee turned his Fort (which had stood the Rebell in an hundred thousand Crownes) into a Palace, besides twentie Fannes, each worth an hundred thousand * Pardowes, and innumerable Horses and Elephants. The same yeere did the King write to the King of Spaine in commendation of the Iesuites, with promise to assist the Vice-roy against the Moores and Hollanders, which had obtained to build a Fortresse of the Naichus of Tanauapatan, desiring the same friendship, that since the King of Narsingas dayes had beene betwixt both their Ancestors, subscribed, *King Ventacaxa.*

p A Pardaw is foure shillings, 3. Pardawes are 2. crownes, *Ventacapatus* his letter.

Thus you see the same King diuersly entituled according to the Citie Royall, yea I finde him called (of the Castle before named) King of Vellur, so *Floris* stiles him, saying that in Iune 1614. He granted trade to the English, as likewise did *Obiana* Queene of Paleacatte. One of his Wiues which (it seemes) gouerned that Citie: On Iuly the nine and twentieth, his *Abeskian* was sent, being a white cloth where his owne hand is printed in Sandall or Saffron, and another the like from the Queene of Paleacatte. The Kings Letter was written vpon a leafe of Gold, wherein hee made excuse of former wrongs, gaue them libertie to build a House or Fort, with other priuiledges. He gaue *Floris* the English Merchant a Towne of foure hundred Pardawes yeerely reuenue, notwithstanding the Hollanders (his Countrimen) did what they could to binder it. *Wengali* (*Floris* his man) had beene in the Kings presence, who laid his hand vpon his head. But on the eight and twentieth of October following, newes came that this King was dead, hauing raigned aboue fiftie yeeres. His three

Pt. Floris.

three wiues, of which *Obiana* Queene of Paleacatte was one, burned themselues with his corpse, and great troubles were expected. The Hollanders had presented this King with two Elephants of Seilan. *Cotabaxa* the King of Badaya and Lellengana, his Neighbour, died not long before. *Mahumed Vmin Cotabaxa* his Brothers Sonne succeeded. *Musulipatan* is in his Dominion, Golconda is the Metropolitan Citie. But hee is a Moore of the Sophi his Sect. Golconda is the Citie Royall.

With the *Naicho* or King of Gingi (vassall to the King or Emperour of Bisnagar) the Iesuites found good entertainment. Heere some of the *Iogues* distributed the water of Ganges out of certaine vessels couered with foule and filthie clothes, which yet the people for deuotion kissed. These *Iogues* with admirable patience endured the Sunnes heate: and one among the rest enclosed himselfe in an Iron Cage, with his head & feet onely out of the Cage, that he could neither sit nor lie downe at any time: and on the Cage were hanged an hundred Lampes, which foure other *Iogues* his companions lighted at certaine times. And thus walked he in this his perpetuall Prison, as a *Light vnto the World*, in his vaine glorious opinion. They reasoned with certaine Bramenes; some of which held the Sunne for God, and yet sometime to haue beene a man, and for his merits so promoted. Some denied a multitude of Gods, onely allowing that priuiledge to *Pyrama*, *Vidhun*, and *Vnitr*, one of which maketh, another keepeth, the third destroyeth all things.

Neere to Madure is an Idoll called *Chocanadas* which by night appeared in a vision to a Priest, and bade him goe say to the *Naicho* of Madure, that hee or I must abide in this house: whereupon he would not be corriuall with his Idoll, but resigned the Palace to him. His deuotion is such, that euery day, while hee sitteth in iudgement, a Bramene euer and anon sounded the name of *Aranganassa* in his eares: and when one is wearie, another succeedeth in the same Office, neuer ceasing this Idols remembrance, although hee there sitteth fiue or sixe houres.

q Discourse of China, p. 40.

I thought meete to mention one custome q which some report of the *Brama*, or Popelike *Bramene* in these parts, who by his authority dispenseth with many of their Lawes, and dissolueth Marriages: giuing libertie at his pleasure to the woman to marrie another; which his Dispensation is sealed on her right shoulder, with a marke of a hote Iron.

§. III.

Of many other strange Rites: And of Saint Thomee.

r *Mechior Cetignus.*

CHandagrin is the Royall Seat of the great King of Bisnagar r. The chiefest Families therein are the *Brumenes*, *Raias*, and *Cretins*. They affirme that their Idoll *Perimal* did bring foorth the *Bramenes* out of his head (as the Poets tell of *Minerua*) the second out of his breast; third out of his belly: and all other inferiour Families out of his feet. The *Bramenes* haue some opinions, not altogether dissonant from the Scriptures. They say, That God onely by his thought made a man, which they call *Adam*. On the tenth day of Iuly, *Anno* 1600. happened an Eclipse of the Sunne, which the *Bramenes* said was by meanes of the *Dragon* (which they make a Celestiall Signe) his byting of the Sunne and Moone: whereupon the King and others neither ate nor dranke that day; deploring their misery, because the Dragon deuoured the Sunne. In the Citie Prepeti, three miles from Chandagrin is the Feast of *Perimal*, in remembrance of his Marriage: at which the Offerings amounted to two hundred thousand Crownes: and the Chariot of the Idoll was drawne forth a mile and a halfe in Procession by ten thousand men. They haue another Feast of the Kine, because they suppose *Perimal* to bee the Sonne of a Cow, and then the wayes and streets are full s of that cattle. They haue a Feast in honour of the Sunne, which lasteth eight dayes, solemnized by the Emperour himselfe, and he is iudged a Traytor which is not present thereat. Then they cast lots, the King first, and after the rest, diuining by Arrowes the next yeeres destinie. If an Arrow light on a Tree, and being plucked out, causeth a red liquor to follow, it prognosticateth Warres; if white, Peace. Not farre hence is an Idoll called *Tripiti*, to which are great Pilgrimages and Offerings; al wayes they goe, some begin, and the rest answere, and so all continue to resound the name of the Idoll *Goia*. Before they enter into the Temple, they shaue and wash themselues. The Heremites, which they call *Sanasses*, liue in Desarts, and at sometimes appeare before the people naked. The *Gurups* beare a great port, and neuer goe forth on foot. The Idoll *Tripiti* is seated on a Mountaine, about which are fertile Valleyes, stored with Fruites, which none may touch, as being consecrated.

s *Simon Sa.*

There

There are in the Woods great abundance of Apes to tame, that they will take meate out of mens hands: the people esteeme them a diuine Race, and of the similitude of *Perimal* the chiefe God, whom they worship in many colours and shapes, as of a Man, Oxe, Horse, Lion, Hogge, Ducke, Cocke, &c.

Francis [t] *Fernandes* saith, that Cidambaram is the Mother-citie of their Pagan Rites, wherein are many stately Temples, and the reuenue of the *Bramenes* amounted to 30000. Ducats, but now they are payd but 12000. yeerely. [t] *F. Fernandes Epist.* 158.

Here happened a strange accident, the same day the Iesuits departed, the occasion of which was this. There is in this Citie a Temple of *Perimal*, wherein they worship an Ape called *Hanumant*, whom they report to haue beene a God, and (for I know not what) together with many thousands of other Gods, to haue remained there, being all transformed into Apes. Now when this principall Ape was forced to passe into the Iland Zeilan, and wanted a ship, he leaped, and at euery leape left an Iland or heape of Land behind him, so making way for his Apish traine to Zeilan. The tooth of this Ape was kept for a great relike in that Iland, with great resort of Pilgrims thereunto: and in the yeere [u] 1554. was by the Portugals (who made a roade thither, in hope of great bootie) taken away. The *Indian* Princes offered the Vice-roy three hundred thousand (or as *Linschoten* telleth, seuen hundred thousand) Ducats, for the ransome of this Apes tooth, but the Archbishop dissuaded the Vice-roy; who thereupon burnt the same before those Indian Embassadors, and threw the ashes into the Sea. Not long after, a *Beniane* of Cambaya perswaded the *Indians*, that hee by Diuine Power had taken away that holy Tooth, beeing inuisibly present, and had left another in the roome which was burnt. Superstition is credulous, and the King of Bisnagar gaue him a great summe of Gold for that Apes Tooth, wherewith hee thus Apishly had bitten and mocked them, which was after holden in like veneration as the former. But to returne to our Cidambaram Historie. [u] *Linschot. c.* 44

They [x] tell, That an holy man, in great penance, had many yeeres held his foot pierced thorow with a piece of Iron; and when he was often by God commanded to leaue that selfe-rigour, he flatly refused, vnlesse that hee might see God dancing about him, which also Hee condescended vnto; and with the Sunne, Moone and Starres, which played the Musicians, he appeared dancing: And as he danced, a Chaine of Gold fell from his foot, whereof this Towne tooke name. For *Cidambaram* signifieth *a golden Chaine.* [x] *F. Fernand.*

As *Priega* [y] and *Riena*, two Iesuites, trauelled to Chaudegrin, they came to Trauilur, where they say their Idoll, with a white Banner on his back, and after him three sacred Kine, with Drummers on their backes, and after them Trumpetters and many Musicians of other sorts. Then followed twentie women dancing, which were also consecrated to the Idols seruice, and might not marry, but yet prostitute their bodies: these were richly attired, and carried Lights. The Priests followed with the Idoll, and were followed by the people with Lights. At their returne they see downe the Idoll, and set sodden Rice before him to eate; others meane while driuing away the flies, and others couering him that hee should not see seene eating: and at last, one maketh a long Oration of the worthy acts of their God, and then see him againe in his place. This fasted foure houres; and in the meane space many reasoned with the Iesuits, and some held vaine Discourses of the Creation: as that there were seuen Seas; one of Salt-water, the second of fresh, the third of Honey, the fourth of Milke, the fifth of *Tair* (which is Creame beginning to sowre) the sixt of Sugar, the seuenth of Butter that the Earth had nine corners, whereby it was borne vp by the Heauen. Others dissented, and said, that the Earth was borne vp by seuen Elephants; the Elephants feete stood on Tortoises, and they were borne by they know not what. [y] *Em. de Viega*

When the *Naicho* of Tangaor [z] died, 375. of his Concubines willingly offered themselues to the fire, to honour his Funerall, so much can Custome harden so delicate and softhearted a nature. [z] *Melch. Costa.*

The Temples [a] in the Countrey haue great reuenues, which in some places are encreased by the deuotion of women, which prostitute themselues to gaine for their Idols: and many young Girles are brought vp for this purpose. Many are in these parts, of the Sect of the *Gueznates*, which kill no quicke thing, as is spoken. [b] Some haue a stone hanging about their necks, as bigge as an Egge, with certaine lines drawne thorow the middle thereof; and this they worship, and call it *Tumbarano*: they keepe euery Friday holi-day. [a] *Gil. Bot. Ben.* [b] *Oser. lib.* 4.

The Kingdome of Orissa hath on the Sea-coast 350. miles, betwixt the richer Kingdomes of Bengala and Bisnagar, poore of Pores and Traffique. *Frederike* writes that before the King of Patane had conquered Orissa, there was great Trade for Oile of Zerzeline, Lacca, Long Pepper, Ginger, Mirabolans, and cloth made of herbs, which grow with a bowle as bigge as an Orange, yeelding silke. The Countrey was so safe, that a man might haue trauelled with his Gold in his hand. The King was a Gentile, and resided in the Citie Catechia,

cha fixe dayes iourney within Land. The King of Patane was soone after subdued by the Mogoll. The Inhabitants (except a few Moores) are Gentiles, little or nothing (that I can learne) differing in Rites from their Neighbours, of which yee haue heard. Some [c] ascribe to the Citie Orissa, as the name, so the Principalitie of the other Cities of this Kingdome.

c *Summario di Pop. Orient.*

In these parts is the Citie of Saint *Thomas* or *Malepur*; where they say Saint *Thomas* (after he had preached the Gospell to the Indians) was martyred and burned. The Legend which some report of his death, were too tedious to recite: and as little likelihood of truth is in that long tale of the miraculous Crucifixes here found, related by [d] *Osorius*, who likewise declareth the Rites of those Saint *Thomas*-Christians, of their Chaldean-Pope, Cardinals, Patriarches and Bishops; of which in a another place we shall more fitly speake. On the first day of Iuly Saint *Thomas* Holiday is celebrated, as well by the Pagans as Christians: and his Sepulchre is had in deuout estimation, both of the Moores, Gentiles, and Christians; each [e] pretending the right of his owne Religion to the Church, where this Saint lieth interred, to which the Indian Christians goe on Pilgrimage, carrying with them a little of that earth for a great Relique. A Moore had the keeping of the Church, which was built after our fashion, and begged of the commers for maintenance of it, and of a light continually burning therein.

d *Osorius lib.3.*

e *Od. Barbosa.*

The Portugals [f] now inhabit this Towne almost desolate: the Iesuites also haue heere a Residence. The Church doores (by the Superstition of some) are almost cut in pieces, and carried away to set in Gold and Siluer, and to weare about their neckes, as a holy relike; the Portugals herein being exceedingly vaine, and attributing hereunto many Miracles, verifying that Prouerbe which the Spaniards vse, affirming the Portugals to be [g] *Pocos, fotos, denotos*. One sent *Linschoten* a whole Bead-roll or paire of Beads thereof, the bringer affirming that those Beades had calmed a Tempest miraculously by the way. The Inhabitants in this respect haue driuen their Church-doores full of nailes: but Saint *Thomas* bones are now remoued to Goa. Those doores are of such renowned holinesse, because they were made of that wood which Saint *Thomas* drew with his girdle out of the Hauen (which it choaked) and could not before this Miracle by any meanes be remoued.

f *Linschoten.*

g Few, Fooles, deuout.

h *Linschot. c. 15*

One thing I thought not to omit, that there bee [h] whole Villages and Kindreds of people, in other things like to other men, but are borne with one of their legs and one foot from the knee downwards, as thicke as an Elephants legge; which the common people imagine to be a curse by Diuine Iustice, inflicted vpon the whole Generation, for that their Progenitors murthered Saint *Thomas*. *Linschoten* saith, he hath seene and spoken with them, and could learne no other cause thereof. It is to them a deformitie, but no let or impediment otherwise.

P. Floris.

The Gouernour of Musulipatan being of *Mahomets* posteritie, had agreed for custome to take foure *per centum*, and exacted twelue, Offering the English there diuers wrongs. Here the Gentiles haue in those parts a Feast when the New Moone comes vpon Munday, and then both Sexes wash themselues in the Sea, as a matter of much Indulgence for their sinnes. And then after much indignitie, the Cape-Merchant *Floris*, performed a worthy exploit, desering still to flourish, though he be dead. The Gouernours Sonne being set ouer the Custome, and at the Custome-house guarded with his Souldiers, *Floris* entred alone as it were for business, and as he had plotted, a few English followed by diuers wayes, which seized on the weapons of the Guard, at the Custome-house doore, and *Floris* laid hold of the Gouernours Sonne *Wencatadra* by name, which was suddenly conueyed into their Boat, three thousand people presently running to the shoare. But being vnder their ships protection, they both secured themselues, and for redemption of his Sonne, forced the Father to pay all debts by him detained, with satisfaction for wrongs offered. Yet such was his Superstition, that he almost first starued a shipboord rather then he would eate or drinke with the English. Thus from the foure and twentieth of Nouember till the thirtieth, he kept a strict *Bramene* Fast, the English pitying his misery, and willing therefore to take pledges in his roome. But after that weeke of cleane Lent without eating or drinking, he was redeemed, the debts being paid by his Father. And hence let the Reader iudge of bodily exercise, and *opus operatum* without true faith, how little it auaileth.

Nouemb. 24. *Ann.* 1614.

In Narsapur Peta (a place not farre hence, where they Careened the *Globe*) happened in August that yeere such ouerflowings of water, that many thousands of men and cattell were drowned, Townes, Fields of Rice and Salt-hils ouerflowne, foure thousand houses washed away, and two Stone Bridges ouer the Riuer, one of nineteene, the other of fifteene Arches, comparable to Rochester Bridge, standing three fadome aboue water. Many Portugals also liue in the parts of Bengala adioyning like Wildmen; and *Iarric* speakes of 1200. which thus obserue not Christiamtie, and therefore may be reckoned amongst these Heathens.

And

And thus haue we finished our perambulation of the Continent of *Asia*. Some perhaps will maruell why I haue not handled the *Muscouites* and *Russians* in this *Asian* Discourse: to whom I answere, That of the *Tartarians* subiect to the *Muscouite*, I haue already spoken; and the rest of the *Muscouites* Dominions, especially the most populous, ciuill, wealthy; yea, the Imperiall City itselfe, by most Maps, is ascribed to *Europe*: that I speake not of the vncertainty of that troubled Estate, now these many yeeres, whereof I would haue more certaine and setled Relations to bestow on our Reader, which I hope with Gods helpe, in our *European* Discouery shall be performed.

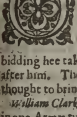
Now let vs skip our selues ouer (for wee are not skilfull of *Hanimants* leapes) vnto the Ilands: hauing first feasted you with the Fruits and other Rarities of Nature in *India*.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Creatures, Plants, Fruits, and Drugs in India.

§. I.

Of their Beasts and liuing Creatures.



OF the Elephant and Rhinoceros is already spoken: and of diuers others of their beasts. The Elephant is [a] of great vse, both for warre and peace. When the keeper employeth him in any burthen, he getteth first on his necke, and putteth his feet vnder the beasts eares, hauing a hooke in his hand, which he sticketh aboue betweene his eares, [b] where (hee sayth, I think it an errour) his stones lie: they bind the burthen with a rope, which at his keepers bidding hee taketh in his mouth, and windeth it about his teeth, and so draweth the packe after him. The Elephants are said to keepe themselues chastly to one Female, which is thought to bring forth in a yeere and halfe, or (as *Aristotle* affirmeth) two yeeres.

William Clarke which serued the *Mogol* diuers yeeres in his wares, saith that he hath seene in one Army twenty thousand Elephants, whereof foure thousand for warre, the rest Females for burthens, young, &c. In the engendring the Female lyes on her backe: some say if any shall be witnesse of that Act, the Elephant will seeke to kill them. Their running mad once a yeere is in their season of lust, nor doe they grow mad till they grow to a certaine age, and those Males. The wild ones keepe in Heards or companies, all of one Males breed keeping together: and sometimes perhaps more. For *Andrew Battell* liuing nine moneths in the Woods of *Africke*, hath seene (he sayd) in a Heard hundreds of them. They beare, sayth *Clarke*, but three men, one before to guide, another behind to make them goe, the third sit the midst for fight, to which end they haue foure Peeces in a kind of Towre on their backe.

[c] *Christophorus Acosta, Linschoten*, and other moderne Authors, as also *Aristotle, Plinie*, *Aelian* and others of the Ancient, relate strange reports of the Elephant. For the Readers delight I will mention some. An Elephant being weary, hasted home; his keeper after much entreaty not preuayling, told him it was for the King of *Portugals* seruice, which hee would haue him doe: the beast answering *hee, hoo* (which in the *Malabar* Language signifieth will, I will, as *Acosta* interpreteth) fulfilled his request. The same Elephant wanting his meate; his Master said it was, because his Kettle wherein he vsed to boyle it was broken, and therefore willed him to carry it to the Tinker; which hee did, and brought it againe, but ill mended; whereupon he was sent againe, and the Tinker to try him, amended it worse. The Elephant carryes it to the Riuer which ranne by, to see if it would hold water, and finding it to runne, came backe with great noyse, and anger: the Tinker entreates pardon, and at the third time doth it well, which yet the Elephant would not beleeue, till by tryall hee saw it held water, and then shewing it to the standers by that it would hold, carried it home. A Souldier hurled a Coco shell at an Elephant; which (because he could not then repay it) put the shell in his mouth, and a few dayes after seeing him in the street, at Cochin, he hurled the same out of his mouth at the Souldier again. Another Souldier inured the keeper of an Elephant, which would haue reuenged the wrong, but was forbidden by his said keeper: but after espying the Souldier, when his keeper was absent; he tooke him vp in his trunke, and ducked him diuers times in the water, and then set him down where he had taken him vp. They are very ambitious. One being vpbrayded of lazinesse by his keeper, when as his burthen was to heauy for him to draw, and therefore they had brought another Elephant to help him;

a *Vid. Arist. & Aelian hist. Animal. Plin. lib. 8. Gesner. &c.*

b So *Linschot c. 46.* but *Arist. hist. An. l. 2.* placeth them within his body neere the reines.

c *Christ. Acosta in, sine Linschot. lib. 1. cap. 46. Thomas Lopez &c.*

him; disdayning a companion, thrust him away, and drew him dead in the place. Another in like case fell on his fore-legs, and wept at his keepers chiding, and although he admitted a companion till the greater difficulty was ouercome, yet feeling it then in his owne power to draw, he put away the other Elephant with his head and teeth, to recouer his credit. *Plutarch* tels of one which learned his Theatricall gestures, practising them alone by Moonelight: another which reuealed his keepers hard vsage, to his Master, with other like Stories. *Pliny* reports things more incredible. Of the admirable capacity, gratitude, and other qualities of this beast, were tedious to recite. An ample testimony hereof, is the example of the King of Asia his Elephant before mentioned. *Plutarch*, *Pliny* and *Ælian*, adde also Religion, [d] in washing himselfe, adoring the Sunne, lifting vp his trunke into the Aire: but this was rather the Relaters Superstition, as that which also followes in *Plutarch*, of *Ioues* offence with *Antiochus*, for offering foure Elephants in Sacrifice, in expiation whereof, hee made foure others of Brasse.

d *Plut. de An. comparat.*

Galuanus in his Discoueries mentions a small vermine in Sian, which cleaueth fast to the trunke of the Elephant, and sucketh out his bloud and life: his scull is so hard, that it cannot be pierced with a Hand-gun: he addes, that in his Liuer is said to be the likenesse of men and women, and he which hath one of them about him, is safe from wounds by Iron. Perhaps it is the Cabal, a beast, whose bone did so preuayle in Nahodabegua, that no wounds, so long as his chaine was on, could bring any bloud from him, as is before obserued in our Relations of Malaca.

2 The mightiest Elephant which euer I read of by many degrees (if not some degrees beyond truth) is that which *Eleazar* is said to kill, which exceeded his fellowes, and yet each of them bare (saith the Story) two and thirty fighting men with their furniture, in woodden Castles, besides the keeper; whereas *Pliny* and *Ælian*, [e] and *Clarke* speake but of three, and other Moderne Obseruers but of fiue or sixe in those Towres girded (for fight) to the Indian (and therefore the best) Elephants. Of the Rhinoceros is spoken before: the best are in Bengala. It is lesse and lower then the Elephant, mouted like a Hogge, with a horne therein, whence he hath this name. His skin seemeth as if were armed. It is enemy to the Elephant.

e *Elide An. lib. 13. c. 9.*

3 As for the Vnicorne we haue before obserued, That none hath beene seene these hundred yeeres last past, by testimonie of any probable Authour (for *Webbe*, which saith hee saw of them in *Prester Johns* Court, is a meere fable.) And *Gasper Swenckfield* [f] a Physician testifieth of the common Vnicornes horne, that it is inferiour to Harts horne in efficacie against poysons: and therefore not likely to bee it. I could bee of opinion that the hornes in Venice and other places kept as Iewels, are of the Sea Vnicorne, a fish which hath a horne in the forehead or nole thereof. *Linschoten* thinkes the Rhinoceros is the onely Vnicorne. That the Rhinoceros is onely male, and the Vulture onely female, as *Bauhinus* sheweth, many Authours conceit, is not only absurd, but impious [g] to hold.

f *De Quadrup. Silesia.*

g *Gen. 7. 2.*

4 Of the Tygers hath beene spoken, and the harme they doe in Pegu. *Nicholas Pimenta* [h] reporteth, That the Tygers, Crocodiles, and a certaine Lizzard or Newt (*Lerius* saw the like in Brasile) as great and as cruell as the former, doe wonderfull spoyle in Bengala, both by land and neere the shoares. Hee tels of one strange escape of a man in a vessell neere the shoare, assaulted at once by a Tyger from Land, and by a Crocodile from the water; and the Tyger with more swiftnesse and fury ayming at his prey, passed ouer him into the Crocodiles mouth. The admirable swiftnesse of this beast is recorded by [i] *Pliny*. Authours agree, [k] That both in *Asia* and *Africa*, they rather prey on black people, then on the white Europa safer place of the ship, but there had his Dreame verified. The Bengalans doe not feare them, that superstitiously they giue diuers names vnto them, thinking if they should call them by their right name, they should be deuoured of them: Gods Prouidence hath yet appeared in creating a little beast, not bigger then a little Dogge, which no sooner espieth this beast (the most dreadfull of any in the World) but presently assaults him, and with barking makes him run away, both beasts and men conueying themselues into places of safetie, so that sometimes this rauener dyes of hunger.

h *De statu Rei Christ. in Ind. Or.*

i *Lib. 8. cap. 18.*

k *Lopez. Scal. Ex. 208. &c.*

5 Muske is made of a certaine beast called *Gnddeis*, which liueth, as [l] *Polo* saith, in Thebeth, and hath a kinde of swelling neere the nauell, which once in the Moone sheddeth his muskie bloud: the most [m] say it is a beast in China, which feedeth onely on a sweet root called Camarus: him they take and bruize all to pieces with blowes, and lay him where he soonest putrifieth, and then cut it out skinne and flesh together, and tye it vp like balles or coddes. *Pantogia* affirmeth, That it is the stomacke of a beast somewhat greater then a Cat, which liueth in the Woods, in Countreyes adioyning to China. How-euer, our greatest sweete (wee see) is but rottennesse and putrifaction. There bee in Malacca, Sion and

l *M. Polo. lib. 2. cap. 37.*

m *Gasf. de Cruz. Mendoza, Cor.*

and *Bengala* some Goats, whose hornes are esteemed excellent against Poyson, which *Linschoten* affirmeth of his owne experience.

As for Fowles, they haue Parrots of many kinds: some reckon fourteene, and *Noyrot* more pleasing in beauty, speech and other delights then the Parrot, but they cannot be brought out of that Countrey aliue. Of Bats they haue as bigge as Hennes, about *Iaua* and the nigh Ilands, *Clusius* n bought one of the *Hollanders*, which they brought from the Ilands of *Swannes, Ilhas de Cerne*, newly stiled by them *Maurice* Iland; it was aboue a foote from the head to the tayle, aboue a foot about, the wings one and twenty inches long, nine broad, the claw whereby it hung on the trees, was two inches, the pisse easily seene, &c. Here o they also found a Fowle which they called *Walghvogel*, of the bignesse of a Swanne, and most deformed shape.

In p *Banda* and other Ilands, the Bird called *Emta* or *Eme*, is admirable. It is foure foot high, somewhat resembling an Ostrich, but hauing three clawes on the feete, and the same exceeding strong: it hath two wings, rather to helpe it running, then seruiceable for flight: the legges great and long: they q say it hath no tongue, and that it putteth out the pisse backwards, as the Camell: that it deuoureth Oranges and Egges, rendring the same in the ordure, nothing altered. It strikes with the heeles like a Horse, will swallow an Apple whole as bigge as ones fist, yea, it swalloweth downe burning coles without harme, and in a contrary extreme, pieces of Ice.

Of the Birds of Paradise, elsewhere is shewed the falshood of that opinion, which conceiue them to want feet, whereas they goe as other birds, but being taken, the body (for the most part) together with the feet are cut off, and they being dryed in the Sunne, are so hardened and cloied, as if Nature had so formed them. This is testified by r *Pigafetta*, and the Hollanders, and my kind friend and louing Neighbour Master *Henry Colthirst*, hath had of them whole. Of this, *Clusius* in his *Auctarium* hath a large Discourse, shewing diuers kindes of them, a greater and lesse: and sayth that *Iohn de Weely* of Amsterdam sold one of them, which had feete, to the Emperour, 1609. But I would not herein be tedious. Of the Birds and Beasts of India, *Acosta, Linschoten, Clusius*, besides *Gesner* and others, can informe the studious.

They haue Crowes so bold, that they will come flying in at the windowes, and take the meate out of the dish, as it standeth on the Table before them that are set thereat: and are such vexation to the Buffles, that they are forced to stand in waters vp to the necks, that they may be rid of them. *Pyrard* tels of the like Crowes in the Maldiues both deadlesse and numberlesse, and of great trouble which they haue there by the Gnats, Rats, Mice, Dormice, and Pismires noy some beyond credit, as also Snakes and Sharkes. He tels of *Pongueys*, soules as bigge as Pigeons which so fill the Aire and Earth in some Ilands that they can scarsly set their foot free: their Egges are hatched by the Sands, which are white and subtile like that of an Houroglasse, by reason of the heat. They haue Rats, which the Cats dare not touch, as bigge as young Pigges, which vndermine the foundations of houses in such sort with their diggings, that they sometimes fall to the ground. There are other little red Rats, which smell like Musk. Incredible is the scathe which they receiue in Goa by the Pismires, which with such huge multitudes will presently assayle any thing that is fattie, or to be eaten, that they are forced to set their cupboards and chests, wherein are their victuals and apparell, with a woodden Cisterne of water vnder every of their foure feete, and that in the middle of the roome. And if they forget to haue water in the Cisterne, presently these Ants are all ouer, and in the twinkling of an eye (sayth *Linschoten*) they will consume a loafe of bread. The like Cisternes haue they for their Beds and Tables: and for the Perches whereon they set their Canary birds, which else would bee killed by Pismires, yea though it hung on a string from the roofe of the house. The poorer sort which want cupboords, hang their fragments in a cloth on the wall, hauing a circle of Charcoales about it; with this wall to keepe out this small creature, and great enemy. There are other Ants almost a finger long, and reddish, which doe great harme to fruits and plants. Great is the harme which Moths and Wormes do in mens Clothes and Bookes, which can very hardly bee kept from them. But more hurtfull is the *Baratta*, which flyeth, and is twice as bigge as a Bee, from which nothing almost can be kept close enough, and are to be esteemed as a plague among them, like to the Pismires, and are commonly in all fat wares and sweet meats, and when they come vpon apparell, they leaue their stayning Egges behind.

The Salamander is said s to be common in the Ile of Madagascar, an Iland of *Africa*, by which they sayle to India. Of Serpents t they haue diuers kinds, and very venemous, besides one other kind as bigge as a Swine, which is destitute of poyson, & hurteth onely by biting. But the superstition of the King of Calicut multiplyeth their Serpents. For he causeth Cottages to be set vp to keep them from the raine, and maketh it death to whom soever that shall kill a Serpent or a Cow. They thinke Serpents to be heauenly Spirits, because they can so

n *Clus. ex ob. lib. 5. cap. 1.*

o *Cap. 4.*

p *Cap. 3.*

q *De Bri part. 5. Ind. Orient.*

Cornel. Gerard.

r *Itinerarium. A. Pigafet. Hollandus Nau.*

s *Ioan. de Bry Ind. Or. part. 4.*

t *1. Part. l. 5. cap. 22.*

so suddenly kill men? So much hath *that old Serpent*, both at first, and since, deluded men by this venomous creature. There [u] are Hogges with hornes in the *Moluccas*; in *Celebes* and *Mindanao* are Hogges, which besides the teeth they haue in their mouthes, haue other two growing out of their snowtes, and as many behind their Eares of a large spanne and a halfe in length.

u *An. Galusno.*

Of fish they haue great plenty and variety. They haue of *Hayens* or *Tuberons*, which deuoure men, especially such as fill for Pearles. And others bathe themselues in Cisternes, not daring to aduenture the Riuers for them. One *Thomas Smith* an *Englishman*, riding before *Surate*, entring into the water, had the outside of his thigh shared off by one of them: and though he escaped from the fish, yet not from death, by effusion of bloud. *Linschoten* tells the like in his ship, that one had his legge bitten off, and putting his hand to the place, was presently depriued thereof: but this is too common. Of fish-monsters like men, and like an Hoggesome write: and as monstrous is that, which *Maffeus* [x] telleth of a Whale, which with the opposition of his huge body, stayed the course of a ship, sayling with eight other ships into *India*, with so great a noyse and shaking, as if they had fallen on a Rocke. Neyther could the winds, which filled the sayles, further her course. The Mariners, when they saw two Elements of wind and current, so strongly encountred, looked out and saw this Monster, with her fins embracing the sides of the ship, and enterlacing the sterne with her tayle; applying her bodie to the Keele; which contained about [y] eighty foot in length. They thought presently that some hellish Fiend had beene sent to deuoure them; and consulted the remedy, at last sent out their Priest in his holy Vestments, with Crosses and Excorcismes: (who like the greater Deuill) preuailed with these weapons; and the Whale forlooke them without further hurt.

x *Maffeius. lib. 7.*

y An hundred and fiue, *Dodrantes.*

There are [z] certaine fish shels, like Scalop shels, found on the shoare; so great, that two strong men with a leauer can scarce draw one of them after them. They haue fish within them. A ship (called Saint *Peter*) fell vpon sands, sayling from *Cochin*, and split. The men saued themselues, and of the wood of the old ship built a Canuall, wherein to get the Continent; but in the meanewhile were forced to make a Sconce, and by good watch to defend themselues from certaine Crabs of exceeding greatnesse, and in as great numbers, and of such force, that whosoeuer they got vnder, their clawes, it cost him his life, as two Mariners of the ship told *Linschoten*.

z *Lins. cap. 48.*

No lesse strange is that which hapned to Captayne *Saris* in his way betweene Saint *Laurence* and *Zeilan*, in a darke night when they could not see halfe the shippes length before them, on a sudden they had a fierie gleame, and shining light from the waters, so that they might thereby see to reade. At the first they were afraid of broken grounds, but after found it to bee nothing but certayne shell fish in those waters, whose shels yeelded so bright a lustre.

Crabs heere with vs haue a sympathy with the Moone, and are fullest with her fullednesse: in *India* there is a contrary antipathy, for at full Moone they are emptiest.

They haue Oysters, in which the Pearles are found, which are fished for by duckers, that diue into the water, at least ten, twenty, or thirty fathome. These men are naked, and haue a basket bound at their backs, which being at the bottome, they rake full of Oysters and dust together, and then rise vp and put them into Boats. They lay them after on the Land, where the Sunne causeth them to open, and then they take out sometime many, sometime few Pearles, as each Oyster yeeldeth, which is sometimes two hundred graines and more. The King hath one part; the Souldier, a second; the Iesuites, a third; and the fishers themselues the fourth: a small recompence for so great a danger, in which many men euery fishing time lose their liues. The *Hollanders* found Tortoyses so great, that ten'nie men might sit and dine within one of the shels.

§. II.

Of the Indian Trees, Fruits, and strange Plants.

IF the Indian Plants diuers haue written; both in their generall Herbals, as *Pena* and *Lobel*, *Gerard*, with other Herbarists, and in peculiar workes of this subiect, *Clusius*, *Garcias de Orto*, *Christopher Acosta*, &c. Some also pretending themselues Natures Principall Secretaries, haue found out in their and the like, not onely temperatures, learned by experience, but [a] *Signatures* of Natures owne Impression, fitted to their seuerall and speciall vses in Physicke, finding out a strange harmony and likenesse in the greater and lesser World: but leauing these speculations to better leisure, let vs take a little view of the Indian Trees, Plants and Fruits.

a *Oswald. Crollius de signatur. rer.*

Of

Of their Fruits, *Ananas* is reckoned [b] one of the best: in taste like an Apricocke, in shew a farre off like an Artichoke, but without prickles, very sweet of scent. It was first brought out of the West Indies hither: it is as great as a Melon; the Iuyce thereof is like Sweet Must: it is so hote of Nature, that if a Knife sticke in it but halfe an houre, wherein it is drawne forth, it will be halfe eaten vp: yet moderately eaten, hurteth not a man. *Iacas* are bigger then the former, and grow out of the body of the tree: they are of many pleasant tastes, but hard to digest.

b *Paludanus.*

Of *Mangus* there are three sorts, they are as bigge as Goose-eggs. The first sort hath stones, which the second wanteth: the third is poyson so deadly, that yet no remedy hath beene found against it. Of the like bignesse is the *Caious*, yellow, of good sauour, full of Iuyce like Lemmons: at the end (as Apples haue a stalke, so) this Fruit hath a Nut like the kidney of a Hare, with kerneels toothsome and wholsome. The *Iambos* exceedeth in beauty, taste, smell, and medicinable vertue: it is as bigge as a Peare, smelleth like a Rose, is ruddie; and the tree is neuer without fruit or blossomes, commonly each branch hauing both ripe and vnripe fruits, and blossomes all at once: *Linschoten* saith, on the one side, the tree hath ripe fruites, and the leaues falne, the other couered with leaues and flowres, and it beareth three or foure times in a yeere. The *Iangomas* grow on a tree like a Plum-tree, full of prickles, and haue power of binding. The *Papaies* will not grow, but Male and Female together: but of these, also the *Carambolas*, *Iambolins* and other Indian fruits, I leaue to speake, as not writing an Indian Herball, but onely minding to mention such things, which, besides their Country, haue some variety of Nature, worthy the obseruation. For the rest, *Graciaus ab Horto* translated by *Carolus Clusius*, *Paludanus*, *Linschoten*, *Christophorus Acosta* (writing particularly of these things) and others in their generall Herbals, may acquaint you.

Of this sort is the Indian Figge tree: if it may be called a tree, which is not aboue a mans height, and within like to a Reed, without any woody substance: it hath leaues a fathome long, and three spans broad, which open and spread abroad on the top of it. It yeelideth a fruit in fashion of the clusters of Grapes, and beareth but one bunch at once, containing some two hundred Figges at least, which being ripe, they cut the whole tree downe to the ground, leauing onely the root, out of which presently groweth another, and within a moneth after beareth fruit, and so continueth all the yeere long. They are the greatest sustenance of the Country, and are of very good taste, and smell, and in those parts men believe that *Adam* first transgressed with this fruit.

But of greater admiration is the [c] *Coquo* tree, being the most profitable tree in the world, of which in the Ilands of *Maldiua* they make and furnish whole ships: so that (saue the men themselues) there is nothing of the ship, or in the ship, neyther tackling, merchandize, or ought else but what this tree yeeldeth. The tree groweth high and slender; the wood is of a spongy substance, raise to bee sowed, when they make Vessels thereof, with cordes made of *Cocus*. For this Nut (which is as bigge as an Estridge Egge) hath two sorts of huskes, as our Walnuts, whereof the vppermost is hayry (like hempe) of which they make Ockam and Cordage, of the other shell they make drinking Cups. The fruit, when it is almost ripe, is full of water within, which by degrees changeth into a white harder substance, as it ripeneth. The liquor is very sweet, but with the ripening groweth sowre. The liquor extracted out of the tree is medicinable; and if it stand one houre in the Sunne, it is very good Vinegar, which being distilled, yeeldeth excellent *Aquauite*, and Wine. Of it also they make, by letting it in the Sunne, Sugar. Of the meate of the Nut dryed, they make Oyle. Of the pith or heare of the tree, is made paper for Bookes and Euidences. Of the leaues they make couerings for their Houses, Mats, Tents, &c. Their apparell, their string, and the rest of the Commodities which this tree (more pleatifull in the *Indies*, then Willowes in the Low Countreyes) yeeldeth, would be too tedious to recite. They will keepe the tree from bearing fruit, by cutting away the blossomes, and then will hang some Vessell thereat, which receiue thereon thence that liquor, of which you haue heard. It is the *Canariqus* liuing, and they will climbe vp these trees, which yet haue no boughes, but on the top, like Apes. This tree hath also a continuall succession of fruits, and is neuer without flowes.

c Of this besides *Linschoten* see *Garcias ab Horto*, with *Clusius* notes. *Exot. l. 5. c. 6.*

No lesse wonder doth that tree [d] *Cusius*, which is called *Arbore de vaia*, or the Tree of Roots: *Clusius* calleth it (by *Plinies* authoritie) the *Indian* Figge tree: and *Gonzalus* (with more confidence, then reason) affirmeth it to be *the Tree of Adam transgression*. It groweth out of the ground, as other trees, and yeeldeth many boughes, which yeelde greyne threeds of the colour of Gold, which growing down-wards to the earth, doe there take root again; making as it were new trees, or a wood of trees, couering by this meanes, sixtie times of a mile in which the *Indians* make Galleries to walke in: The Figges are like the common, but not so pleasant.

d *Clusius* describeth this tree out of the Relations of *Plin. lib. 12.* *Curtius. Strabo l. 5. Theophrastus lib. 4.* and mentioneth like kinds (if not the same) out of *Lopez de Castaneda lib. 7.* *Oviedo lib. 6.* *Lopez* or *Pigafetta of Congo, &c. Clus. Exot. lib. 1. c. 1.*

The *Arbore triste* * deserueth mention: It groweth at *Ocoa*, brought thither (as is thought) by

* *Garcias ab Horto, lib. 1. c. 1. C. Acosta. 37.* Syphilis growed most in *Malabar.*

from Malacca: The Hollanders saw one at Achi in Sumatra. In the day time and at Sunne-setting, you shall not see a flowre on it; but within halfean houre after, it is full of flowres, which at the Sun-rising fall off; the leaues shutting themselues from the Sunnes presence, and the tree seeming as if it were dead. The flowres in forme and greatnesse are like to those of the Orange-tree, but sweeter, in *Acosties* iudgement, then any flowres which euer hee smelled: the *Portugals* haue vsed all meanes to haue it grow in *Europe*, but our Sunne hath refused to nourish such sullen vnthankfull Malecontents.

And that yee may know the Indians want not their *Metamorphoses* and Legends, they tell that a man named *Parisatico*, had a Daughter, with whom the Sunne was in loue; but lightly forsaking her, he grew amorous of another: whereupon this Damosell slue herselfe, and of the ashes of her burned carkasse came this tree.

e The Plant *Bettele.* *Bettele* e is a leafe some what like a Bay leafe, and climbeth like Iuie, and hath no other fruit: neither is any fruit more in vse then these leaues: at bed and boord, and in the streets as they passe, they chew these leaues; and in their gossippings or visiting of their friends, they are presently presented with them; and eate them with *Areeca*, which is a kind of Indian Nut. It saueth their teeth from diseases, but coloureth them as if they were painted with blacke bloud. When they chew it, they spit out the iuyce, and it is almost the onely exercise of some, which think they could not liue, if they should abstaine one day from it.

They haue an Herbe called *Dutroa*, which causeth distraction, without vnderstanding any thing done in a mans presence: sometimes it maketh a man sleepe, as if hee were dead the 2 space of foure and twentie houres, except his feet he washed with cold water, which restoreth him to himselfe; and in much quantitie it killeth. *Iarric* calls it *Dotura*, and sayth that *Pinnerus* the Iesuite and his Family at Lahor, were by meanes of this herbe (giuen them by a theeuish seruant) distracted, and the goods then carried out of their house. The women giue their husbands thereof, and then in their sights will prostitute their bodies to their lewder louers, and will call them *Corundos*, stroking them by the beard as the husband sitting with his eyes open, grinning like a Foole, when he returneth to himselfe, knoweth nothing but that hee hath slept.

f Herba Vius. Acost. They haue the like Plant in Guiana. Another strange herbe is called *Sensida*, or feeling, f for that if any passe by it, and toucheth it, or throweth sand or any thing else on it, presently it becommeth as if it were wi- 3 thered, and closeth the leaues; so continuing as long as the man standeth by; but so soone as he is gone, openeth fresh and faire: and touching it againe, it withereth as before. The Indians suppose it will procure loue, and restore Virginitie: A Physician amongst them became mad with studying to find out the nature of this herbe. *Pigafetta* speakes of another sort, as after shall follow.

But the strangest plant (for so may we terme it) is, that at Goa the hornes of beasts slaughtered are throwne together in one place, lest they should bee occasion of indignation and reproach to any; the shewing or naming of a horne being there ominous: These hornes thus cast forth, after a certaine time, take root, and the roots grow two or three spannes in length.

g Discou. Galic. *Galuano* g telleth of a tree in Mindanao; the one halfe whereof (which standeth towards the East) is a good remedy against poyson: the Westerne halfe yeeldeth the strongest Poyson in the World. There is a stone, on which whosoeuer sitteth, shall bee broken in his body. The Tree of Iapan which thriues best with that which kils other Trees, and (in a Naturall antipathy to Nature) is killed with that moysture which quickens others; and that in Ciumbubon whose leaues are said to haue feete and to goe: in their due places shall bee mentioned. But of all the most wonderfull is that Plant of *Sumbrero* (an Iland not farre from Nicubar and Sumatra) growing on the Sands by the Sea side: which some English (then being there with Sir *Iames Lancaster*) offering to pull vp, shrunke it selfe into the ground, as 5 having sensitiue life and motion; neyther without greater force would it bee brought forth. The cause they found, that the Roote is a great Worme, which (as the Plant growes into a greater tree) dyes by degrees, or exchangeth that sensitiue into a vegetatiue life. The first growth is out of the mouth of the Worme, being then but a small twigge, full of greene leaues as bigge as a Bay leafe; the Worme in processe of the growth turnes into this tall growing Tree. The Reader may smile, as at *Virgils Polydorus*, or some of *Ouids Metamorphosis*, thinking this incredible: but yet behold another change. They plucked vp some of these resisting Plants, to bring them home for rarities (as they did many) stripping off the leaues and barke: and threrby (I know not with what naturall horrour) they after found that as it dryed, it died beneath the name of Death, into a hard stone, like white Coral. 6 Thus haue you a three-fold Retrograde in one thing: From that degree of life which hath locall motion to a *Stirpammans* or ξυφυτον, a sensitiue Plant, which mooueth it selfe but not out of the same place, as Oysters and the like: from thence in a second remoue

Virgil. de Aeneid. lib. 1.

to

to a meere Plant or Tree: and in a third degree to a Tropiditie, and stonie lifelessenesse. Nor doe thou deride this as mostrous, incredible, impossible: (I leaue the certaintie thereof to the Relators) but examine it in thy selfe thou findest not a greater and more manifold Retrograde in this Storie of Creatures, what fitter to bee obserued then MAN for whom the rest were Created? in thy selfe. *Homo* is *bomulus*, degenerate from that *Man* which God created after his owne Image and become the Diminutiue of Himselfe: Hay lesse then that, not *Homulus* but *Mulus*, *a the Horse and Mule*, that hath no vnderstanding: A Mule! that is a profitable beast; but of Men (not the Cretans alone) that of *Epimenides* and *Paul* is true, κακὰ θηρία, They are *euill beasts*, yea, *euill wilde beasts*, yea, *euill, wilde, and venemous*, (the word will beare it) Nay Saint *Paul* proceeds in further degrading this proud Man, γαστέρες ἀργαὶ *bellies*, the worst part of the worst beasts, all *bellies* like Spiders; Nay worse, for their bellies worke nets to keepe them, but these are *slow bellies*, *idle*, nay Idol-bellies; slow except in deuouring, and therein the Gluttons God; *quorum Deus venter. Magister artis, ingeniique largitor Venter*; Euen till like Oysters wee haue but sense for sensualitie, for touch and taste; this *Pinguis aquilisculus propenso sesquipede extans*, not scarcely suffering vs to moue from the Table: and that also a Great and bigge Prince in our dayes hath had cut with a great in-let for his great belly. The Belly! as well a shapen Deitie, as the *Vmbilicus* of *Iupiter Ammon!* But alas the Belly, and what Nature hath placed beneath it, hath placed vs beneath that sensitiue life which the Belly hath, and with this Plant heere mentioned, wee are *Wormes not Men*. Plants not Wormes, (*Pōpulus primā corrupta* is *Populus*) our corruption from our first state hath made the whole people of Mankinde as a Moorish ill planted Plant: Yea in the Greeke it hath a more fit name, * λάκε, our retrograde is into a hard stone. *So vaine a thing is Man.*

The Retrograde of Man.
1.
2.
Tit. 1. 12. Sepia.
3. 4. 5.
6.
7.
Dux Saxon.
8. 9.
10.

* λάκε Of another Greeke word λάκε, a Stone. *Durumque genus, Et documenta damus qua simus origine nati*, Virg.

§. III.
Of Spices and Drugges.

PEpper (whereof there are diuers sorts) groweth at the foot of *Arecca*, or some other Tree, on which it climbeth, as a Betele or [i] Iuie; growing in bunches like grapes, halfe a spanne long, and as bigge as ones finger, greene like Iuie when it is gathered, and in fiue or sixe dayes drying in the Sunne becomes blacke.

[i] *Hieron. de S. Stephano.*

Cinamon [k] is the inner barke of a Tree, as bigge as an Oliue; with leaues like Bay-leaues, and fruit like an Oliue: The drying of the barke maketh it roll together. Within three yeeres after, the tree yeeldeth another barke, as before. In Seylon is the best. They of Ormuz call it *Darchina*, that is, wood of China: and selling it at Alexandria, call it [l] *Cinnamomum*.

[k] *Garcias ab Horto. l. 1. c. 15.*
[l] *Quasi Amomum ex Sina delatum.*

Ginger [m] groweth like young Reedes, or *Gladiolus*, with a roote like a Lilly: it is plentifull in Malabar.

[m] Ginger.

Cloues [n] grow in the Moluccos on trees, like Bay-trees, yeelding blossomes, first white, then greene (at which time they yeeld the pleasantest smell in the world) and last of all red and hard, which are the Cloues. They are so hot of nature, that if a payle or tubbe of water should stand in the Chamber, when they cleuse them, or any vessell of Wine or other moysture, in two dayes the Cloues would sucke it out and drie it. The same nature is of the vnspunne Silke of China.

[n] Cloues.

The Nutmeg-tree, [o] is like a Peach or Peare-tree, and groweth most in Banda and Iaua. The fruit is like a Peach, the inner part whereof is the Nutmegge, which is couered and interlaced with the Mace or flowre, and ouer that is the fruit like a Peach, as it is with our Walnuts, then the Mace flourisheth in a faire red colour, which in the ripening becommeth yellow.

[o] Nutmegs.

Cardamomum is of three sorts; the Indians vse it in their meates, and commonly chew it in their mouthes, as being good against a stinking breath, and euill humours in the head: it is much like to Panike.

[p] *Lac* is a strange drugge, made by certaine winged Pismires of the gumme of Trees, which they sucke vp, and then make the *Lac* round about the branches, as the Bees make honey and waxe. The raw *Lac* is of a darke red colour, but being refined, they make it of all colours, and therewith vernish their Beds, Tables, and vse it for other ornaments, and for hard Waxe. So saith *Paludanus*; they beate the *Lac* to powder, and so make all manner of colours vpon it, as they list, and make thereof such rolles as are heere sold for hard Waxe.

[p] Lac.

Indica

Indico. *Indico* or *Annil* growes on small bushes, like Goosberry bushes, and beares a Seed like a Cabbage, as is before observed, cut vp, and after long rotting, trodden by Oxen, and ground. *Linschoten* sayth, it is sowne as other Herbs, in due time pulled and dryed, and then made wet, and beaten, and then dryed againe, and prepared; first it is greene, and after blue.

q Sanders. Of q *Sanders* there are three sorts, white, yellow, and red. In *Tymor*, an Iland by *Iaua*, are whole Woods of *Sanders*: the trees are like Nut-trees, with a fruit like a Cherry, but vnprofitable; onely the wood (which is the *Sanders*) is esteemed.

r Snakewood. *Snakewood* r groweth in *Seylon*, and is good against the stinging of Snakes and other poyson, a Medicine learned of the beast *Quil*, which being in continuall enmity with Snakes, herewith healeth their bytings.

f Calamba. The trees of f *Lignum Aloes* are like Oline trees, but somewhat greater: the innermost part of the wood is best, with blacke and browne veines, and yeelding an Oyly moysture: it is sold in weight against Siluer and Gold. There is another t kinde, wherewith they burne their dead Bramenes. The best, which they call *Calamba*, growes in Malacca, and is vsed much for Beads and Crucifixes. *Monsars* sayth, the *Portugals* pay a hundred Crownes a pound for it to make their Beades. 10

t Pala d'Aquila

u Opium. u *Opium* is the Iuyce of the heads of blacke Poppie beeing cut: a dangerous drugge, vsed much in *Asia* and *Africa*, which makes them goe as if they were halfe asleepe: they suppose I know not what coniunction and efficacy both of *Mars* and *Venus* therein: but being once vsed, must daily be continued on paine of death, which some escaped in *Acosta's* x company by the helpe of wine. *Bangue* is another Receit of like vse, especially with slaues and souldiers, makes them drunke merry, and so to forget their labour. 20

x Acost. de Arom.

Ciuet. *Ciuet* or *Algalia*, is the sweate of the Ciuet Cat, and growes in the outermost part of the Cods, and is hote and moyst.

Benioin. *Benioin* is a kind of Gumme like Frankinsence and Myrrhe, but more esteemed: it growes in the Kingdome of *Siam*, *Iaua*, *Sumatra*, and *Malacca*. The tree is high, full of branches with leaues like those of the Lemmon tree; They cut the tree, and from those slits proceedeth this Gumme: which is best when the tree is young, and is called *Benioin* of the sweete *Arabia*: it is also a Gum, the best on those trees that grow on hils and stony places. Myrrhe is a Gumme also brought out of *Arabia Felix*, and the *Abissine* Coast. 30

Manna. *Manna* is brought from the *Vsbeck* Countrey behind *Persia*, and reckoned to *Tartaria*, and is a dew that falleth on certaine trees, and hangeth on the leaues, like Ice on the Tyles of houses. It is gathered and kept in glasse Vials, and much vsed in *India*.

Camphora, Tamarinds. *Camphora* is the Gumme of certaine trees in *Borneo* and *China*, as great as Nut-trees, sweating out from the midst of the same. *Tamarind* groweth on a tree as great as a Plum-tree, with leaues like Mirtle, the flowers white like Orange flowers. The leaues of the tree turne always toward the Sunne, and when it goeth downe, they shut together and couer the huske. The fruit is about a finger long, crooked, with shels, wherein are kernels as bigge as a beane, like Plummes. *Spiconard* is sowne and growes on plants about two or three spannes high like Corne, with great veines, wherein the *Spiconard* groweth: *Cubebus* growes like Pepper or Ioy against a tree; the leaues like Pepper leaues and the huskes; but euery graine hath a stalke rest: I should here recite the Reader with an Apothecaries Bill. These (as the rarest or chiefe) I haue of Myrobalanes are fiue sorts almost 40

Mirobolanes. Spiconard. Cubebus.

Garden, being before full cloyed with our tedious Narrations of their Superstitions, I might adde here a Discourse of Gemmes, as Diamonds, Rubies, Emeralds, &c. But it becommeth not my poverty to take so much of Iewels. *Monsars* tels that the King of *Bisnega* hath a Rock of Diamonds, in which he keepes fifteene thousand men at worke, reserving all the greater to himselfe, so that none are sold but smaller, except by stealth. Hee sayth, hee saw one with the Great Mogoll as bigge as a Henne Egge, purloyned from this King, and cost the other little lesse then a Million. It waygheth foure score and eighteene Mangelins, euery Mangelin fiue graines. The y Begar-stones are likewise taken out of the Maw of a *Persian* or *Indian* Goat, which the *Persians* call *Pazar*. And in the Countrey of *Pati*, by Malacca, they finde within the Gall of an Hogge a stone, of greater force against Poyson and other Diseases, then that Pazar-stone. It is thought that these Stones doe proceede of the pasture wherron these Beasties feede. The Amber is found as well in other places as in *India*. z *Goteius* thinkes it to bee the nature of the Soyle, as Chalke, Bole-armenike, &c. and not the Seed of the Whale, or sitting from some Fountayne in the Sea, as others hold. *Chesius* tels a probable opinion of *D. Marel*, that it was an excrement gathered in the Whales belly. 50 60

y Bezar-stone.

z Goteius ab Horto in Clus. Exot. lib. 7. c. 1. Vid. Seal. Ex. 104.

But

But of these and of inumerable other both sensitive and vegetable creatures the Reader in our Pilgrims or Voyages now published, may observe from others eyes much more then here is place to expresse.

CHAP. XIII.

A generall discourse of the Sea, and of the Seas in and about Asia.

§. I.

Of the true place, forme, greatnesse, and depth of the Sea.

AFter our long perambulation of the Asian Continent, the Sea inuironing doth solliciteour next endeuours, that the Reader might there refresh his wearied sense, with a new succession of Natures varieties, and Humane vanities. And first, while our Barke be made readie to ship vs ouer to some of those Ilands, leaues (as it were on the shore) take view of this, so strong, so weake, so constant, and so vnconstant water, a Element. That the Earth and Sea make one Globe, we haue elsewhere shewed in the History of their Creation. In which, the Earth being (as it seemeth) at the first forming of it, more perfectly Spherical, and wholy couered with Waters, by the power of that Almighty Decree & Word (*Let the waters be gathered into one place, that the dry Land may appeare*) both the Waters (as some gather) were more condensate, which before were more subtile, and therefore vsurpted more roome; and the Earth * was in some places lifted vp, in others depressed, with deepe Furrowes and Trenches to make roome and conuenient receptacles for the Sea; and withall it matter yeelded for the eleuation both of Mountaynes aboue the ordinary height of the Earth, and of the Earth and Continent also in the higher places, whence the greatest Riuers deriue their Original; in comparison of the Lower and Maritime parts, where they empty themselues into the Sea. This is the proper seate of the Element of Water, called *Aqua*, *quasi æqua*, of the equall and plaine face and *superficies* thereof, or as *Lactantius* with a further reach obseruedly, *a quia vata sunt omnia*, because hence all things are bred and nourished. Now because Waters are eyther without Motion, as in Lakes, or of an vniformie Motion, as in Riuers, or diuers, as in the Sea; the Heathen c ascribed a *Trident* or three-fold Scepter to *Neptune*, their supposed Sea-god.

That the Earth and Sea haue one and the same Centre, both of Gravity and Greatnesse, appeareth by this, that the parts of the Earth and Water falling from a high place, without other impediment, haue the same direct descent: a piece of Earth also falleth perpendicularly into the Water, with equall and right Angles. And that the Water naturally inclineth to roundnesse, appeareth in the small drops thereof, which gather themselues into that forme, and by vise either discerning things on shore from the tops, then from the hatches of the ship in the d Sea: likewise by the eleuation or depression of the Pole and Stars, no lesse in sailing, then land-trauell, to the North or South also in preuenting or lengthning the Sunnes light by sayling East or West, as before hath beene obserued in the *Spaniards* and *Portugals*, meeting at the *Philippina's*, and differing a whole day in their reckoning, the *Portugals* losing by meeting the Sunne in their Easterne course, that which the *Spaniards* get by following him in a Westerne. Yea, euen in one dayes sayling this may be manifest, as *Record* instanceth in a ship sayling West from *Iseland*, in one of their dayes of twenty houres getting half an houre, and in the next day returning with like wisnesse, loseth as much of the Sunne. Yea in Riuers of very long course, besides that descent (before mentioned) from higher to lower passages, some e obscure a kind of roundnesse or circular rising in compassing the Globe, which else must needs be exceedingly disformed in the Riuers of *Nilus*, *Amazones*, and others which runne neere an eighth part thereof.

The Sea is great and wide, sayeth f the Psalmist; and at first *couered the whole earth like a garment*, till for mans vse g *the dry land appeared*, which for mans abuse was again in the dayes of *Noah* couered. And had not God h *set the Sea a bound which it cannot passe*, it would (so some translate it) *returne to couer the earth* for euer. It is his i *perpetuall decree, who commanded, and it was made, that though the waues thereof rage, yet they cannot preuaile; though they* k *fis*

* *Augustine Aquinas, &c.*
Damaschin. 2. de Orth. fid. c. 10 Vita. Clauium in 1. S. n. & Breerwoods Epistle. 13. c. 12.
Vid. Origd. 13. c. 12.
c *Aesch. Schouckier.*
d *Vid. de Sacrobosco. de Mundi Sphæra, &c.*
Record. Castel. Cosm.
e *Ex. gr. Gemini. Vid. Acos. Hist. Indiæ. l. 4. c. 40. Dion. Hal. l. 3. Phys. Auditor. Cel. 2. c. 14.*
f *Psal. 104. 25. & 26.*
g *Gen. 1. 9.*
h *Psal. 104. 9.*
i *Iob. 38. 5. 22.*

sis doe auerre, that the Earth is indeed lower then the Waters, as in the beginning of this Worke is obserued; as if God did by a kinde of miracle in Nature, bridle and restraine the tempestuous force of the Sea, *Rerum omnium innatabilissima* (to vse *Basile* words) *debilissimaq; arena*: with Sand the weakest of all creatures. Thus held *Aquinas*, *Carthusianus*, *Catharinus*, and others. Which opinion being granted, how easie were it for the Sea to enclose the Earth in her watrie mantle, and againe to make a Conquest of the drie Land, hauing such forces of her owne, and such re-inforcements from the Ayre and the Earth it selfe? Her owne powers, euen by order of Nature and proportion of the Elements, cannot but seeme dreadfull: in which, as the Ayre exceedeth the Water, and is it selfe exceeded of the Fire; so the Water to some seemes no lesse to surmount the Earth, as the lowest and least of the Elements. And what Armies of exhalations doth the Sunne daily muster in the great Ayrie plaine, which would succour their Mother in such an attempt? Besides that, euen the Earth, as it is euery where compassed of the Sea, doth compasse in it selfe so many Seas, Lakes, Riuers, in the vppermost face thereof, as professed partakers; and the inward bowels thereof haue daily intelligence, and continuall conspiracie with the waters, by those secret pores and priuie passages, whereby it commeth to passe, that albeit k *All Riuers runne to the Sea, yet the Sea is not filled.* And were it possible that so many worlds of waters should daily and hourely flow into this watrie world, and that such a world of time together, and yet the Sea nothing increased, but that (as *Salamon* there saith) *The Riuers goe to the place from whence they returne and goe?* that is, they runne into the Sea, and thence, partly by the Sunnes force, eleuated and restored in Raines, and other Meteors, partly by filling the veynes of the Earth with Springs doe both ways returne againe in Riuers to the Sea. This l appeareth by the *Dead Sea*, and by the *Caspian*, which receue many Riuers without open payment thereof to the Ocean: and at the Straits of Gibraltar, the Ocean commonly hath a current in at one end, and the Euxine Sea at the other, besides abundance of other waters out of Europe, Asia, Africa, and yet is no fuller.

k Eccles.1.7.

l Vid. Zone. de Oper. & G.B.B. Rel. Arist. &c.

Many indeed are *the wonders of the Lord in the deepe*, and this concerning the height, depth, and profundities thereof one of the highest, deepest, and requiring the profoundest skill to search. That the waters are gathered on swelling heapes in round forme, compassing the Earth, is already proued; which to a vulgar capacitie may seeme to enforce a height of the water aboue some parts of the Earth: but seeing that the earth and waters haue one Center, and height is properly to bee measured by distance from that Center; it seemeth vnlikely that the water should be higher then the Earth: or altogether equall to the height thereof, in whose Channels and concauities it is contayned. And though the Sea swelleth, and lifteth vp it selfe into that forme which best agreeth to that Globe which is compact of it and the Earth: yet is it not capable (being a liquid fluible body) in the greatest depth and wideness, of such eleuations as wee see in high and Mountaynous Regions, whereby the Earth to excell the highest eleuation (as wee may tearme it) of the Sea, then the Cliffes and Shores doe those Waters which approach them. And what needs a conceit of miracle in the very ordinary constitution and conseruation of Nature? though all Nature, if wee regard it as a Creation by supernall power, bee nothing else but miracle. Some indeed dreame of I know not what proportion of the Elements, whereby they would haue the Water to exceed the Earth, as before is said: and it is true that the vpper face and vtter *superficies* of the Waters (for ought that is knowne to the contrary) is as great m as that of the Earth. But if wee compare the depth of the Waters with the Diameter of the Earth, we shall find that in most places the one is not so many Fathoms as the other is Miles. Yea who euer foundeth at such some more, who euer cast Line and Lead into the Sea to measure a thousand Fathom? Yea, in n *Scaligers* opinion, the Earth is so much greater then the Water, that if the Mountaines were cast downe into these watry receptacles, and the Earth brought into a perfect roundnesse, there would no place inst be left for the Water. *Record* o recordeth not so much as he, yet holds the Earth almost ten thousand times as great as the Sea and all other waters. And if wee receue the Iewish Tradition, mentioned by our Apocrypha p *Esdras*, this may bee more probable: for hee saith, that euen in the vtter face of the Globe) *the Waters were gathered into a seuenth part, and sixe parts of the Earth kept drie.* Some imagine q a bottomlesse depth, passing quite thorow the Earth, through which the Moone being in the other Hemisphere, causeth the heightning of the Tides, no lesse then when she is present in ours; which greater proportion to the Sea then we haue obserued. But because little reason, and no experience can be shewed for this Assertion, I will not insist in refutation. But that Deluge being caused by breaking vp the Fountaines below, and violent Stormes from aboue, consure

m Scalig. saith twice so great.

n Scal. Exerc. 38

o Rec. Castle. l. 4

p 4. Esd. c. 42. & 47.

q T. Lid. disp. de Or. sent.

that

that opinion that the Sea should be higher then the Earth, which then might haue effected the Floud without either of those former causes.

But why doe I drowne my innocent Reader, with my selfe, in these *Depths* of the Sea? which some measure by the height of Hills; others [r] resemble those extraordinarie Land-heights to extraordinarie Whirle-Pooles: but seeing the Sea is Tenant to the Earth, which hath (as before we haue said) remoued it selfe in some sort, to make way and roome for it, the more ordinarie height and eleuation of the one, may seeme to answere the more ordinary depth and descending of the other. These bottomes of the Sea haue also their diuersified shape and forme, as it were of Hillockes, Mountaynes, Valleyes, with the [s] Accliuities and Declinities of Places, as in the Shelues, Shallowes, Rockes, Ilands appeareth. And as the Land is not onely higher then the Sea at the shore, so is it apparant, that in remote places from the Sea, the Land doth (besides the exorbitant swellings of Mountaynes) in the ordinary leuell exceed the height of Maritime regions, which thence receiue those Riuers which require descent all the way of their passage, which in some is one thousand in some two thousand miles. And therefore is it likely also that the Sea answers in like proportion, it being obserued to grow shallower neere the shoare, and differently deeper in the farther recesse of the Maine.

r *Brerewood Enquir c.13.*

s The *Banke* towards New-found Land is as a large hilly Region of the Sea, See *l.8.c.4.*

§. II.

Of the Saltnesse and Motions of the Sea.

THe saltnesse of the Sea some ascribe * to the first Creation; some, to the sweat of the Earth, roasted with the Sunne; some, to the saltnesse of the Earth, especially in Minerals of that nature; some, to adust vapours, perly let fall on the Sea, partly rayseed from it to the brinks and face thereof; some, to the motion of the Sea; some, to vnder-earth or vnder-sea [a] fires of bituminous nature, cusing both this saltnesse and the motion also of the Sea; and some, to the working of the Sunne, which draweth out the purer and finer parts, leaving the grosser and baser behind: as in this little world of our bodies, the purest parts of our nourishment being employed in, and on the body, the vrine and other excrements remaining, doe detaine a saltnesse.

I will not determine this question, as neither that of the Ebbing and Flowing of the Sea, which (some * say) is the breath of the world; some, the fires aforesaid boyling in and vnder the water; some, the waters in holes of the earth, forced out by Spirits; some, the meeting of the East and West Ocean; some ascribe it to the [b] Moone, naturally drawing water, as the Load-stone, Iron; some, to the variable light of the Moone: a variable light they all giue vs. They that send vs to God and his Decree in Nature, haue said what is the true cause, but not how it is by Naturall meanes effected. Certaine it is, that the Ocean and the Moone are companions in their motion: vncertaine whether the Ocean hath a naturall power in it selfe, or from the Moone, so to moue: which is made so much the more doubtfull, by reason that they follow not the Moone in all places of the word alike. *Vertomanuus* writeth, that in Cambaia the Tides are contrarie to the course they hold in these parts; for they encrease not with the full, but with the wane of the Moone: and so the Sea-crabs doe likewise. In the Iland of Socotora, *Don John* of [c] Castro obserued many dayes, and found (contrary both to the Indian and our wont) that when the Moone riseth, it is high Sea, and as the Moone ascends, the Tide descends and ebbeth, being dead-low water when the Moone is in the Meridian, and this operation hee found continuall. With vs also our highest Tides are two dayes after, and not at the very Full and Change. About Vaygats *Stephen Borrough* found it to flow by fits, very vncertaine. *Scaliger* [d] saith, that the full-Moones at Calicut cause the encrease of the water, and at the mouth of Indus (not farre thence, in the same Sea) the new-Moones. But what exceeding difference of the Tides doe wee find in the Downes, and other places on our owne Coasts, both for time and quantitie? that at once in the compasse of ones sight, there should bee both flood, ebbe, and these differing in degrees: and that on some places of our Coast it should rise one fathom, in some two, in the *Thames* three, at, or neere *Brisfoll* ten, and on some part of the French coast, neere Saint *Malos* fifteene, where as our shoare ouer against it risteth but two. The like differences may bee obserued betweene the Tyrrhene Sea, and that on the opposite coast of Barbary, the one swelling, the other not at all heightened: in the East and West Indies I could instance the like, not mentioning those currents which hinder all courses of Tides. Further the Floud continueth in some places seuen houres, in some foure, in most sixe. In the Straits of Sunda some haue obserued that it flowes twelue houres, and ebbes twelue. In [e] Negropont it is said to ebbe and flow seuenties

* *Patric. Bancof. l.24. Ita enim ab initio factum est mare sicut Cadauer. Terra. Maria autem sunt aqua amara. De motu & salsed. maris, vid. Keplerum. Prob Naut. Scal. Exer. 77. Du Bartas 3. Day. Arr. Mont. Nat. Obs. Lid. Disq. Bat. Stat. Mat. a. Lid. Disq.*

* *Apollonius Phil. lib. 5.*

b *Silius Italicus, refertq. fretum Luna, &c.*

c *Don Iohn of Cast. M.S.*

d *Exer. 13.*

e Some say *Alexander* drowned himselfe heere, for not finding out this Reason.

times a day; and *Patritius* affirmeth, that himselfe obserued at Ausser in Liburnia in a hand-made Strait of Sea-water, the same to happen twentie times in a day. Againe, wee see these Tide-motions differ, according to their daily, weekely, monethly, and as some adde, halfe yearely and yearely alterations. All which varieties cannot be attributed to one simple cause, neither to any vniuersall, whether Sunne, Moone, or Natiue heat of the Sea, or any the like: although wee must needs acknowledge (which we cannot know) one principall cause, hindred or altred by manifold accidents, and therefore producing effects thus diuersified. Other motions also may be obserued in the Sea, as that namely which is continuall (and if wee call the Tides the breathing, this may be tearmed the pulse of the Sea) whereby the waters alway wash the shore falling on and off, couering, and presently vncouering the feet of such as stand by, which hath force to expell all Heterogeneum or differing natures, as drowned carkasses, wrackes, and the like. This (as that of the Tides) *Patritius*, *Pencerus*, *Lydiate*, and others, attribute to a kinde of boyling, which (as in a vessell of seething water) causeth it thus to rise and fall, and to expell the droise and things contrary. But the heate which causeth this boyling one ascribes to the Sunne, another to fires in the Sea, another to the naturall heate of the Sea engendring spirits, and causing rarefaction and motion. *Patritius* doth not onely mueere this, but that the Sea is as a sublunarie Planet, mouing it selfe, and moued by the superiour bodies to effect the generation of things: for which cause [f] *Orpheus* calls the Ocean Father of Gods, Men and other things. The saltnesse thereof is (in his opinion) the instrument of this motion, and the neerest inward and most proper cause of marine mouings, as in the two Mexican [g] Lakes appeareth, the one whereof is sale, and ebbes and flowes, which the other being fresh, doth not. This saltnes (saith [h] he) with greater heat ingendreth more spirits in moysture: the cause of greater Tides he thinketh to be the shallownesse, and narrower shores, the force of the Ocean thrusting the same most forwards where it finds interruptions and indraughts: the certaintie of the motions hee ascribes (according to his Philosophie) to the soule of the world, mouing this, as other Planets. For my censure, it shall bee rather on my selfe then these opinions, where silence rather then boldnesse becommeth. [i] *Euen a foole, whiles hee holdeth his peace, is accounted wise.* And to borrow the words of a subtill Disputer, [k] *Quod vbiq; clamare soleo, nos nihil scire, maximè conuenit huic disquisitioni, quæ maris tractat motum.* Let this also bee arranged amongst *the wonders of the Lord in the deepe*, rather to be admired then comprehended.

f *Orp hym.*

g *Cortes. Narrat.*
h *Dial. Pat. Pancos. 17, 28, 29, 30.*

i *Prou. 17. vlt.*

k *Scal. ex. 52. Psal. 107.*

I might heere speake of other Sea-motions, either particular or accidentall; as that in the open Seas betweene the Tropikes, [l] vncertaine whether it may bee termed an Easterly winde, or some impetuous violence, caused by the superiour motions which draw together with them the inferiour Elements: likewise those currents in diuers coasts, as at Madagascar on the African, and in the great Bay on the American shores. From other accidents arise other motions, caused by the windes in the ayre (which somewhere haue their set seasons) by whirle-pools, or rather contrarie currents, meeting in the Sea by Capes, Indraughts, Riuers, Ilands of the land: by the conceptions and trauelling throwes in the waters, in bringing forth some imminent tempest, and the like.

l *Acost. Hist. Ind.*

I might speake of strange Currents in many Seas vpon the coast of Africke, neere to Saint *Laurence*, and *John de Noua*, and *Mayella*. Captaine *Saris* hath related that the currents detayned him a long time, euen almost to desperation of getting out: and one of them so dreadfull, that it made a noise like that at *London* Bridge, with a fearefull rippling of the water; the more, the further from land, and there where they founded an hundred fathom depth, as it were proclaiming open defiance to winde and sayle (notwithstanding their puffing threats and most swelling lookes) in foure and twentie houres carrying them a whole Degree and nine Minutes from the course, which vnder full sayle with the windes assistance, they intended.

§. III.

Of the Originall of Fountaines, and other Commodities of the Sea.

I Might adde touching the Originall of Fountaines; which both Scripture and reason, finding no other store sufficient, deriue from the Sea, how they are from thence conueyed by secret Channels and concauities vnder the earth, and by what workmen of Nature thus wrought into new fresh waters. *Scaligers* experiment to proue the Sea-Water at the bottome fresh, by bottles filled thereby cunning Diuers or otherwise, is by *Patritius* his experience, as hee saith, found false. And thus fresheness of the springs, not, with-

Ar. Mont. Nat. Obs. pag. 310. Scal. ex. 46.

withstanding their salt originall from the Sea, may rather be ascribed to percolation and straining thorough the narrow spungie passage of the earth, which makes them leaue behind (as an exact-d roll) their colour, thicknesse and saltnesse. Now how it should come to passe that they should spring out of the earth, being higher then the Sea, yea, out of the highest Mountaynes, hath exercised the wits of Phylolophers; some ascribing it to a sucking qualitie of the thirstie or spungie earth, some to the weight of the earth pressing and forcing the waters vpwards, some to the motion of the Sea continually (as in a Pumpe) thrusting forwards the water, which expelleth the weaker ayre, and followeth it till it finde an out-let, whereof, both by the continuall protrusion of the Sea, and for auoyding a *vacuum* or emptinesse (which Nature abhorreth) it holdeth continuall possession: some finde out other causes. And Matter *Lidyate* in a Treatise of the Originall of Springs, attributeth the same to vnder-earth fires, which no lesse by a naturall distillation worketh these waters vnder the earth, into this freshnesse and other qualities, then the Sunne and heauenly fires doe by exhalations aboue. Yea, such are his speculations of these hidden fires, thar hee maketh them the causes of Winds, Earth-quakes, Minerals, Gemmes, fertilitie, and sterilitie of the earth, and of the saltnesse and motion (as is before said) of the Sea. But loath were I to burne or drowne my Readers in these fierie and watrie Disputes: let vs from these speculacions retire our selues to the experimentall profits and commodities which this Element yeeldeth.

Concerning the commodities [a] of the Sea, as the world generally, so the little models of the world, the Ilands (whereof this of *Great Britaine* is iustly acknowledged the most excellent of the world, sometime accounted *another world*) haue great cause to celebrate and acknowledge the same. It is a Wall of Defence about our shoares; Great Purueyour of the Worlds commodities to our vse; Conueyour of the surquedry and excesses of Riuers; Vniter (by trafique) of Nations which it selfe seureth; an Open Field for pastimes of peace; a Fortified Fie-bain time of warre, disdaining single personall Combates, and onely receiuing whole Citties and Castles, encompassed with walls of Wood; which it setteth together with deadly hatred and dreadfullest force of the Elements, the *Fierie* thunders, *Airie* blasts, *Watrie* billowes, rockes, shelues and bottomes of the *Earth*, all conspiring to build heere a house for Death, which by fight or flight on land is more easily auoyded (and how did it scorne the *Inuincible* title of the *Spanish* Fleet in 88. and effect thus much on our behalfe against them?) The [b] Sea yeeldeth Fish for dyet, Pearles and other iewels for ornament, Varietie of creatures for vse and admiration, Refuge to the distressed, compendious Way to the Passingers, and Portage to the Merchant, Customes to the Prince, Springs to the Earth, Clouds to the Skie, matter of Contemplation to the minde, of Action to the bodie: Once, it yeeldeth all parts of the World to each part, and maketh the World (as this Treatise in part sheweth) knowne to it selfe. Superstition hath had her Sea-prophets which haue found out other Sea-profits, as for the purging of sinnes: and the Roman Diuines caused [c] Hermaphrodites to be carried to the Sea for expiation, the Persian *Magi* thought it pollution to spit or doe other naturall necessities therein. But of these in diuers places.

[a] *Vid Ambr. Ro. Basilin hexaem. Thod. serm. 2. de ground. &c.*

[b] *Vid. Ambr. hex. 5. c. 5. Isid. Orig. lib. 13.*

[c] *Iul. Obseq. de Prodig.*

§. IIIJ.

Of the varieties of Seas, and of the Caspian and Euxine.

THE Sea is commonly diuided into the *Mediterranean* and *Ocean*: and vnder that *Mid-land* appelation are contained all the Seas and Gulfes that are seated within the Land, as the Arabian, Persian, Baltike, Bengalan, and especially such as the Sea of Sodoma and the Caspian, which haue no apparant commerce with the Ocean: but principally is that Sea called *Mediterraneum*, which entring at the Straits of Gibraltar, is both larger then any of the rest (containing aboue ten thouland miles in circuit) and abutteth not on one onely, but on all the parts of the vnknes world, washing indifferently the shores of Asia, Africke, and Europe.

The Seas beare also the names of the Countries, Cities, Hills, Riuers, and Lands, by which they passe, or of some other accidente there happened; as the Atlantake, or Germaine Ocean, the Adriatike, the redde, white or blacke Seas, the Sea of Ladies, the Euxine, by a contrary appellation, for their inhospitalitie.

But to contract our speech vnto Asia, wee finde the Sea prodigall of his best things, and of himselfe vnto it, clasping, with a louely embrace, all this Asian Continent, saue where a little Neckie of Land diuides it from Africa; and no great space, together with Tanais, from Europe. Yea, as nice herewith satisfying his loue to this Asian Nymph, in many places he insinuates himselfe within the Land by Gulfes or Bayes, twining his loung armes a-

bout some whole Countries : otherwhere (as it were) by hostile vnderminings hee maketh Seas farre from the Sea ; and hath yeelded so many Ilands, as rather may seeme admirable then credible.

Of those Seas banished from communitie and societie with the Ocean, are that Sea of Sodome, largely described in our first Booke. Many other Lakes also, as of Kitaya, Van, Chiamay, Dangu, Guian, and the like, as great or much greater, doe no lesse deserue the name of Seas : but the most eminent of all the rest is the Caspian [d] or Hyrcan Sea, called in these dayes diuersly of the places thereon situate, as the Sea of Bachu, &c. the Moores call it (as they doe also the Arabian Gulfe) *Behar Corsun*, that is, *The Sea inclosed*. It hath beene diuers times sayled on and ouer by men of our Nation, passing that way into Tartaria, Media, and Persia. The first of whom was Master *Anthonie Ienkinson*, 1558. who affirmeth, that this Sea is in length about two hundred leagues, and in bredth a hundred and fiftie, without any issue to other Seas : the East part ioyneth with the Turkemen Tartars, the West with the Chyrcasses and Caucasus, the North with the Nagay Tartars, and Volga (which springing out of a Lake neere Nouogrode, runneth two thousand miles, and there with seuentie mouthes falleth into this Sea) the South hath Media and Persia. In many places it hath fresh water, in others brackish, in others salt, as our Ocean. If wee hold the Sea naturally, or by selfe-motion or by exhalations, salt : then the freshnesse may bee attributed to the abundance of fresh Riuers, which all come running with tributes of their best wealth to this seeming close-fisted Miser, which (for ought the world can see of his good workes) communicateth with no other Sea, any part of that abundance which the Riuers Volga, Yaic, Yem, Cyrus, Arash, Ardok, Oxus, Chesel, and others many, bring into his coffers. And yet is this Vsurer neuer the richer, Nature it selfe holding a *close* conspiracie to dispossesse him of his needlesse treasures. Yea the Riuers themselues (his chiefe Factors and Brokers) in the Winter time grow *cold* in alleageance, and *frozen* in respect of wonted dutie : or else are detayned by a greater Commander, the Generall of Winters forces, Frost, who then closeth and locketh vp both them and him in Icie prisons, till the Sunne taking a *neerer view* of this incroaching vsurper, by the multitude of his Arrowes and Darts chase him out of the field, and freeth this Sea and Riuers from their colde fare and close dungeons, wherewith Ice their hard Gaoler had entertained them. *Christopher Burrough* relateth that from the middle of Nouember till the midst of March, they found this frozen Charitie of the Caspian to their costs being forced with great perill and paine, to trauell many dayes on the Ice, and leaue their ship in the Sea, which there was cut in pieces with violence of the frost. And yet is Astracan on the Northerne shore, (where Volga and the Caspian hold their first conference) in sixe and fortie degrees and nine minutes, from whence this Sea extendeth beyond the fortieth degree Southwards. The freshnesse of the Riuers make it thus subject to frost, which hath no power ouer the salt waters of the Ocean, as by most Learned [e] men is holden : which appeareth in the Baltike and Euxine Seas, which holding not so full commerce with the Ocean, and filled with fresh Riuers, are made an easie prey to that Icie Tyrant, whose forces the more open Seas, with their salt defence easily withstand ; and although from the mouthes of Riuers, Bayes, and Shores, hee brings whole Ilands of Ice into those watrie Plaines, yet euen vnto the Pole, so farre as hath beene discouered, the Sea with *open mouth* proclaimeth defiance, and enioyeth his Elementary freedome.

The Euxine Sea which is diuided from the Caspian by an hundred leagues of land, hath this reason of the freezing ascribed by *Disarius* in [f] *Macrobius*, that the fresh waters which flow from so many Riuers, being lighter then those on the Sea, swimme on the top, and are subiect to frost, which the Sea-water is not. And this force of the fresh waters is common to most great Riuers, as Plata, Zaire, and others : and in the Euxine it is obserued of Phasis by [g] *Arrianus*. The thawing of those Frosts is the cause of those fogges and mysts, which so much infest these Seas, and are so great a hinderance in all Northerne Discoueries. And hence in likelyhood came the Prouerbe of *Cimmerian darknesse*, rather then from that *Hanson* which *Hubbon* mentioneth (a place of a hundred miles, compassed with a wall of pitchie darkenesse, whence sometimes the crowes of Cockes and like sounds are heard, but none dare enter) or other like fabulous [h] conceits of the Poets. From these darke mysts the Euxine is called also [i] *Mare Maurum*, or *the blacke Sea*; it was in old time called the Sarmatian, Cimmerian, Tauican, Caucasean, Phasian, Pontike; and what other titles, peoples, hils, riuers, or speciall occurrents fixed on it. Of the description thereof, *Arrianus* hath written a whole Treatise, and *Stuckius* hath largely commented thereon, and [k] *Ortelius* hath bestowed good paines in that argument ; to whom I referre the Reader. *Arrianus* was employed in this Discouerie by *Adrian* the Emperour, beginning at Trapezond ; where he set vp *Adrians* Image, and where before that was a Temple dedicated to *Mercurie* and *Philesius* his Nephew. He sayled from thence, descrying and describing the Coasts, Riuers, Cities, about this Sea. In Phasis hee

d *Vid Ortel. Scaliger. ex. 51.*

Ant. Ienk. Hak. To. 1.

Ch. Burr. ap. Hak. To. 1. in a M. S. which I haue seene.

e *Merula Cos. l. 3. c. 5. Stuck. in Ar. &c.*

f *Macrob. Sat. l. 7. c. 12. Marcellinus Comes an. 401.*

g *Ar. Periplus Pont. Eux.*

h *Vid. Scal. ex. 359.*

i *In Pareregis. See also Gyllius, Marcianus, Ouid. de Ponto, Ammianus, &c.*

k *Ortelius Scal. ex. 51.*

hee obserueth the lightnesse of that water, fresh on the top, salt in the bottome, where it is mixed with the Sea, or rather sideth ouer it. They had heere a Law, That none might carrie water into Phasis; and if they had any in their ships, they must at the entrance of this Riuer cast it forth, otherwise fearing an vnluckie and dangerous Nauigation. The water of this Riuer (hee saith) will last vncorrupt ten yeeres. This Phasis, Æschylus calleth the limite of Europe and Asia. At the left hand of the entrance was set the Image of the Phasian Goddesse, seeming by her Cymbal in her hand, and Lyons drawing her Chariot, to bee none other then *Rhea*. There also (as a holy Reliquie) was shewed the Anchor of the ship *Argo*, which because it was of Iron, seemed to our Author to be counterfeit, especially there being the fragments of an Anchor of Stone, which seemed more likely to be that of the Argonautes, so much chaunted by the Poets. Other monuments of *Iason* he found none.

Counterfeit Reliques.

But to make backe to the Seraio or Thracian Bosphorus, hee there nameth the Temple of *Iupiter Orius*. *Dousa* and *Gyllius* report the pleasantnesse and fertilitie of these parts. Heere did *Iason* sacrifice to the twelue Gods, and built a Temple to them. *Apollo* had fiue Temples neare the Straits, the most ancient at Chalcedon, giuing place to none of the Oracles, two at Byzantium, and the other neere thereunto. But with these and manifold other antiquities, *Gellius* can best acquaint the more leysurely Reader. Of all the Cities along this shore, I cannot but mention Heraclea, where were obserued the deuotions of *Iupiter Stratius* his Altars, and two Oakes, planted there in his honour by *Hercules*. This Citie was also made famous by the Legend of *Hercules*, descending to Hell, of *Cerberus*, *Acheron*, and the like. Of this Citie *Memnon* wrote a large Historie, some parts whereof doe yet remaine. *Cotta* after a sharp siege subduing it to the Romans, among other spoyle seized vpon the pyramidall statue of *Hercules*, (whom hee would haue serue him in a thirteenth labour) exceeding in sumptuousnesse, greatnesse, elegance: neere to which was his Club of solid Gold, as was also his Lyons skinne and his Quiuer. Many monuments and offerings he carried out of the Temples. Both *Memnon* and *Æsyan* tell of *Dionysius* sonne of *Clearchus* King of Heraclea, which grew into so grosse and vnwonted degree of fatnesse, that it made him vnfit, not for State-affaires onely, but for necessarie functions of life, especially in his sleepe. From which to awaken him, this remedy was deuised, to thrust long Needles into his flesh, which whiles they passed thorow that new-come flesh and fatnesse, were no more felt then of a stone, till they came to the more naturall flesh of his body. When he sate in Iudgement, he had a kind of Cupbord which had the rest of his body, leauing his face onely open to be seene. *Marcianus Heracleotes*, one of this Citie, had written a Periplus or Circumnauigation of these and other Seas. But least I seeme frozen in these colder Narrations, or to haue lost my selfe in these Cimmerian mists, I will get me out of this Sea, and obserue the principall Ilands adiacent to Asia. For if I should after all these Discouries of the Sea, enter into a new, of the huge Whales and other varieties of Fishes and Monsters, inhabitants of the Sea, which is thought to haue creatures resembling in some sort all those of the Land, both Men and Beasts: I should grow tedious; and *Gesner* with others hath done it alreadie. I shall finde more due place for the strangest in some other parts of this Historie.

Dousa Itinerar. Gillaie. Bosp. Thracio, l. 1.

Plin. l. 16. c. 44.

Memnon de statu Heracleæ Pont.

Ælian. var. l. 9. c. 13.

Mar. Her. g.

Gesner de Aquatil. vid Olaum Magn. &c.

CHAP. XIIII.

A briefe Suruey of the Ilands adioyning to Asia: also, some fancies of the Sabbaticall Riuer, and inclosed Iewes.

§. I.

The Ilands from Iapan to the Persian gulfe.

IF wee should skippe our selues for the Discouerie of the Ilands in the North-east Seas of Asia, wee were like to finde *cold entertainment*. Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, with his Company, lost themselues in this, being frozen to death. *Stephen Burrough* after attempted, and found out (scarse worth the finding) Vaygats and Noua Zembla. As bad or worse hath beene the successe of *Fox*, *Iackman*, and others, both Dutch and English. And the Russians reports to *Heberstein*, are in some things so fabulous (as of their *Slata Baba*, and of men dying euery Nouember, and reuiuing in Aprill following) that a may well suspend his credite to the rest. What

See his Nauig. written by himselfe, *Hak. Tom. 1.*

Sigism. ab Herb.

What *Balaius* in his letter to *Mercator*, *Hessiaius* in his late Maps of these parts, or any other haue written, will bee but meane Spokesmen, to procure any Reader with vsin this North-east Discouerie. Steering therefore another course, and coasting another way to the East and South parts of Asia; let vs take a briefe survey of that World of Ilands in those Indian Seas, referring a more full Description of the chiefe of them to the Chapters following; and then proceed to a more leysurely view of the Arabian, and some of the Mediterranean Ilands. And first in this course, we are encountred with the Iland, or a Ilands rather, bearing the name of Iapan; the principall whereof are three: of which, more afterwards.

a Of the Ilands of Asia. *Beurdetto Bordone* and *Tho. Porcacchi* haue written large Treatises of this Iland-subiect.

Some mention (beleeue it that list) neere to Iapan, certaine Ilands of Amazons, with which the Iaponites yeerely haue both worldly and fleshly traffique: and when a Ship cometh from Iapan, so many women as there are men, come to the shore, and leaue each a paire of shooes, with her marke; which who so taketh vp, is her Paramour. These are seconded by the Ilands of China, which doe (as it were) hedge and fence it in; of which, there is little in Authors worthy mentioning. In Macao, or Amacao, the Portugals haue a Colonie; but the chiefe Iland of China is Anian, in the Gulfe of Cauchim-China.

Lequio. b *P. Beuilii. tab.*

Further from the Continent, from Iapan Southwards, are many Ilands, called by the names of *Lequio*, the greater, and the lesse, rich in Gold: nigh to the same is Hermosa; and next to these, the Philippines, so called of b *Philip* the second, King of Spaine, by whose charge and charges they were discouered in the yeere 1564. long after that *Magellanus* had lost his life in the discouerie of these parts. Some make this name held some proportion to the Spanish Ambition, calling all the Ilands *Philippina*, which are betweene New Spaine and the Gulfe of Bengala: in all, after their account, eleuen thousand: whereof, onely thirtie are subiect to the Spaniard; as *Thomas à Iesu* hath obserued. But of all these afterwards: for heere wee but mention them.

Banda.

They begin their reckoning at Noua Guinea, where first wee see Cainam. The next Banda; which name is proper to an Iland so called, and common also to her neighbours, Rosolaguin, Ay, Rom, Neyra, in foure degrees to the South, which alone in the world are c said, by some, to bring foorth Nutmegs and Mace. The men heere are Merchants, the women attend to Husbandrie.

c *G. Bat. Ben.*

Moro.

The Ilands *del Moro* abound with Rice and Sagu (the pith of a Tree which yeeldeth Meale) where d are wild Hennes, which sit not on their Egges, but buries them a good depth vnder the sand, where the Sunne hatcheth them. They haue no Kine, but a Fish of like lineaments, which they take in their Nets.

d *A. Figafetta.*

Gilolo.

Gilolo, hath a Mahumetane Prince, and is a great Iland; the people are Man-eaters.

Amboyna.

Amboyno, is the name of many Ilands, rude both in soyle and people, which eate their owne Parents when they are old. *Daniel Middleton* in a written Discourse of one of his Indian Voyages, mentioneth an Iland amongst or neere these of Amboyno, called Bangaia, the King whereof is a Gentile. A Hollander heere obtayned such sway, that none durst displease him. Hee had two houses full of the Daughters of the Inhabitants which best liked him, besides many Slaues of both sexes. His life is meerely Epicurean: hee will dance and sing and be drunke two dayes together: nor will hee be commanded by any of his Countrey-men. Hee is Collector or Treasurer to the King of Ternate in those parts, and sends him what hee can spare. At Banda the Hollanders would not suffer the English to trade: and euery where else, both East, and West, and North, and South (as may be instanced in the particulars) if force or fraud by plunders rayled on our people can effect it, they testifie that gaine is more precious to them then the loue of our Nation. Neere to the Ilands last mentioned are the *Molucca*, fiue in number (others reckon more) *Ternate*, *Tidor*, *Motie*, *Machian*, and *Bachian*, famous through the world, as being Natures Store-house of Cloues.

Their worship is directed to the Sunne, Moone, and other heauenly and earthly Creatures. The King of Tidores chiefe Priest came aboord the *Consent*, of which Ship *Daniel Middleton* was chiefe. In the Moluccas are found those admirable Birds of Paradise, or as the Portugals call them, fowles of the Sunne. The e Selebes abound with Gold, abandoned of goodnesse, peopled with Idolaters and Man-eaters. The Ilands of f Moratay are more Northerly, where Battata-roots is their Bread, their neighbours fare in the Ilands of Tarrao, Sanguin, Solor, and others.

e *Selebes.*

f *Moratay.*

In those Ilands, which more properly beare the Philippine title, Mindanao is of very large circuit, and hath diuers famous Cities: Tendaia, for her excellence, was by the first Discouerers called the Philippina. Luzzon incompasseth a thousand miles, in which the Spaniards haue built a Towne, called Manilla, and haue thicher carried Cattle for breed. This Citie standeth in fourteene degrees and a quarter.

Borneo is reputed as bigge as Spaine, richly attended with many Ilands of smaller circuit. It hath a Citie of the same name, founded on Piles, in the salt water, with sumptuous buildings of

of hewed stone, couered with Coco leaues. The King is a Mahometan. At Sagadana in this Iland, there is an English Factorie.

The greater Luzia is by *Scaliger* called an Epitome, or Summe of the world; rich in many commodities. The *Cabai* is a wilde beast in this Iland, whose bones doe restraine the blood from issuing in wounded parties. The South part is Gentiles, as the countries within the land; but towards the shore they are Mahometans. Touching the lesser Luzia, there is some controuersie which should be it. The Straits of Sincopura are dangerous, not aboue a Musket shot ouer; there are two ledges of Rocks on either side at the entrance, and within sunken rocks.

Betwixt Malacca and Samatra, Nature hath (as it were) sowed that Field of waters with Ilands; the principall of which is Bintam. Samatra, within the Countrey is Ethnikes: towards the Coast are Moores; an Iland large, rich, and populous, diuided into many Kingdomes.

The Gulfe of Bengala is (as it were) guarded with a double ranke of Ilands, which *Neptune* hath set as Garrisons of those Seas. But these all are not worthy the honour due to Zeilan, called in old times *Taprobana*, which name others apply to Samatra. From thence, alongst the coast of India, are seene few Ilands of any greatnesse: but further into the Sea are the *Maldiue* [h], so called of *Maldiua*, one of their number, whose name signifieth a thousand Ilands; (*Hieronymo de Sancto Stephano*, numbreth them betweene seuen and eight thousand) some of which are diuided by larger Seas, some by smaller armes; the Ocean somewhere with his greatnesse threatning to swallow them, and in other places as curious of his delightfull search, stealing rather, then forcing a separation, prouoking the passengers to communicate in his sports; who sometimes, helped with some ouer-growing Tree, can leap from one Iland to another. Yet hath not Nature, thus diuersifying their situation, yeelded them diuersitie of her riches, saying that it seemeth here shee hath chosen her chamber for the Palme, or Coquo-nuts, which in other places shee hath, in comparison, but scattered; here, stored, that by this store the people might supply all their other wants. Yea, besides the Land-Coq ioe, there groweth another vnder the water, bigger then the former; a speciall Antidote for poyson. The Inhabitants are addicted to subtletie and sorcerie: and in the Ilands next to the Continent, Moores beare sway; in the rest, Pagans. Other Ilands, of smaller reckoning, we reckon not. Diu hath long beene famous for the warres therein, vainly attempted by the Turke and Indians against the Fortresse of the Portugals.

g *Nathaniel Martin.*

In our Nauigations you haue the voyage of *Francis Pyrard*, out of whose large (forte of) these Ilands, we haue not beeni niggardly to bestow the principall obseruations on th Reader of their number (supposed 12000.) Cuttones, Creatures, Cocos, &c.

h *Pyrard* saith of *Male*, the principall Iland, and that *Diues* signifieth a *heap of Ilands*.

§. II.

The Persian Gulfe, and of the Passage downe Euphrates thither, the Sabbatiall streame, and inclosed Iewes.

THe Persian Gulfe hath left some remnants of Land extant: the chiefe is Ormuz, a famous Mart, which the Moores there maintayned, vnder the gouernment of a Moore, after made tributarie to the Portugall; which Nature hath made barren; Industrie, plentifull; the more fertile Element yeelds barrennesse and sands; the barrenner bringeth in a double wealth, Pearles, and Merchandise.

Iohn Newbury, which sayled downe Euphrates to this Sea, and so to Ormuz (visiting Bagdet by the way, which he saith is twentie or fiue and twentie miles, Southward from old Babylon) testifieth of the women in Ormuz, that they sit the lower part of their eares more then two inches, which hangeth downe to their chin. This our Countrey-man sayled in his Trauels, hauing trauelled to Constantinople, into the blacke Sea, and Danubius, and through the Kingdomes of Poland and Persia, the Indies, and other parts of the World. But for the description of the passage downe the Riuer Euphrates to the Persian Gulfe, I know [i] none which hath done it so exactly, as *Gaspare Balbi*, a Venetian, which that way passed to Ormuz and India; who relateth the same in the Diarie of his Trauels: sometimes the Trunkes or Bodies of Trees, vnder the water of this Riuer, conspiring dangerous attempts; sometimes Zelebe, and other ouer-hanging Mountaynes, threatning ruine, and euen now seeming to swallow them in their darke-deuouring jawes; sometimes the violence of some steeper Current, as it were hurling them into a Whirle-poole; alway the Arabians ready attending for prey and spoile. One Citie, or rather the carkasse of a Citie, whereof onely the ruines are remayning, stands on the left hand of this Riuer, greater, in his opinion then Cairo in Egypt: the Mariners affirmed to him, That by the report of the old men, it had three hundred threescore and sixe gates: from morning to noone, with the helpe of the streame, and foure Oares, they could scarcely passe one side thereof.

i *Manfort* saith, he went from Aleppo in a Caruan of 10000. men, which trauelled by night, guided by the starre through the Deserts, 30. days to Nano or Euphrates. The vsuall way, is to Bir, &c.

This

This is called *Elersh*, perhaps that which was anciently called *Edessa*. Hee speakes of the Caraguoli, inhabiting as they passed, which agree neither with Turkes, Moores, nor Persians, in their Sect, but haue an Heresie by themselues. Hee trauelled more then one whole day by one side of old Babylon; from Felugia to Bagdad, though the ground bee good, yet saw hee neither Tree nor greene Herbe, but all barren, and seeming to retaine some markes of the Prophesies threatned by *Esay* against this place. They which dwell heere, and trauell from hence to Ballara, carrie with them Pigeons, whom they make their Letter-posts to Bagdad, as they doe likewise betweene Ormuz and Ballara. The coasts of Persia as they sayled in this Sea, seemed as a parched Wildernesse, without tree or grasse: those few people which dwell there, and in the Ilands of * *Lar* and *Ceilon*, liue on fishes, being in manner themselues transformed into the nature of Fishes; so excellent swimmers are they, that seeing a vessell in the Seas, though stormie and tempestuous, they will swimme to it fiue or sixe miles to begge almes. They eate their fish with Rice, hauing no Bread; their Cats, Hennes, Dogges, and other Creatures which they keepe, haue no other dyet. In the Iland of Barein, and those of a Gonfiar, they take the best Pearles in the world. In Muscato, threescore miles from Ormuz, they dare not fish for them, for Fishes, which are as cruell to the Men, as they to the innocent Oysters. They hold, that in April the Oysters come to the top of the waters, and receiue the drops of Raine which then fall, wherewith they returne to the bottome against hard. In sayling from Ormuz to Diu, he saith they passed ouer a Bay of a hundred and thirtie leagues of water, white like milke. I haue seene an Extract of a Chronicle, written by *Pachaturinuras*, which raigned in Ormuz three hundred yeares ago; testifying, that one *Mahomet* being King of Amen in Arabia Felix, pretending title to Persia, built a Citie on the Continent of Hormuz, which his posteritie held in succession of many generations. It happened that King *Cabadim* flying from the King of Creman, came to *Iarum*, (that is, a Wood;) so they called this Iland, which is almost all of Salt, the Riuer being brackish from a salt Mountaine in the middest thereof, and the sides of the Riuer white salt. Yet there then grew thirtie Woods. Heere he built Ormuz; which *Albuquerk* made tributarie to the Portugals, being Lady of the Ilands thereabouts, and principall Staple of Merchandize for those parts of the world. *Odorious* speaketh of the intollerable heate in those parts; and *Balby* testifieth, that neere Ballara, many persons die of the extremitie of heat; which happened to foure of their company; which forced by heat and wearinesse, sate downe, and with a hot blast of winde were all smothered. *Ormuz* * is lately taken from the Portugals by the Persian.

* In *Lar*, saith *Mensotto* in the strongest and best fortifiedst Castle of the Persian.

a See their names in *Balby cap. 14.*

Pach. Chron.

Odorius Bal. cap.

* See the Relation thereof in our Voyages. I haue also a Storie or Chronicle of their Kings written by King *Pachaturinuras* in Arabike.

In the Discourse of these Asian Seas and this Persian, among the rest, I thought it worthy relating, which b *Luys de Vrreta*, in his Æthiopian Historie, telleth of a certaine Iew, though perhaps but a tale (for a lyer, such as hee hath beene edicted in his Æthiopian Storie, loseth his credit, where he speakes truth) yet euen tales serue for mirth being intermixed with serious histories, branded that they be knowne for Rogues or Iesters. Be it as it will; he tels that this Iew trauelling alongst the shoare of this Persian Sea, by some In-lets and Armes thereof, which embay themselues within the Land, saw the Sea lofty and swelling, by force of the Windes and Tides, seeming to threaten the higher Elements, but euen now ready to swallow vp the Earth, roaring out a loud defiance in lich sort, that the poore Iew was amazed, and dreadfully feared therewith: and this continued the space of some dayes, whiles the Iew trauelled thereby. But on the Saturday and Sabbath, Superstition commanded the Iew; and Nature (the Hand-maid of Diuinitie) enioyned the angrie Elements to rest; a suddaine calme followed, as if Waues and Windes would accompany the Iew in his deuotions, and had forgotten their former furie and wonted nature, to *remember the sanctification of this Day.* The Iew hauing heard before, that there was a *Sabbaticall Riuer* (which some place in Æthiopia, some in Phœnicia; others, they cannot tell where) in a credulous fancie persuades himselfe, that this Arme of the Sea was that *Sabbaticall Streame*, and that he now saw the experiment of that relation with his eyes. Fancie had no sooner affirmed, but Superstition ware to the truth, and Credulitie tickles him with gratulation of Diuine fauour to himselfe, that had liued to see that blessed sight. Rauished with this conceit, hee fills his Budget full of the Sand, which is of a more grosse and cleauing nature, then in other places, and carrieth it with him as a great treasure vnto the place of his habitation. There hee tells his Countreymen, that now the Messias would not be long before he came, for now he had found this signe thereof, the *Sabbaticall Riuer*; shewing this Sand in proofe thereof. *Credit Indeus Apella*, the Iewes beleeue quickly all but the truth, especially in Portugall, whither he came with this report. Many thousand moued by his words, remoued their dwellings, and selling their substance, would needs goe into these parts of Persia, by the *Sabbaticall Riuer* to fixe their habitation; there waiting for their promised Messias. One, and a chiefe of this superstitious Expedition

b *Lude Vrreta, Hist. Æthiop. l. 1. c. 6.*

pedition, was *Amatus Lusitanus*, a Physician of great note, accounted one of the most learned of his Profession, and a Writer therein; and *Iohn Micas*, a Merchant of great wealth. They passed through France, Germany, Hungary, their company (like a Snow-ball) encreasing as they went, with the addition of other Iewes of like credulity. When they came to Constantinople, there were of them, in many Bands or Companies, thirty thousand. *Cabasi mi Bassa*, the Turkish Commander, thought to gaine by this occasion; and would not suffer them to passe over the water into Asia, without many hundred thousands of Duckets, except they would passe on horse-backe. This example was soone both spred and followed of the other Bassaes and Commanders in Asia, as they went; their wealth and substance being every where so fleeced, that they came into Syria, much lessened in numbers, in estate miserable and beggerly; now Officers every where, as new hungry Flyes, lighting on these wretched carkasses (so I may call them:) some they whipped, some they empaled, some they hanged, and burned others. Thus were these miserable Pilgrimes wasted: and *Don Iohn Balizar* was present, when *Amato* aforesaid being dead with this affliction, his Physicke bookes were in an Out-cry to be sold at Damasco, and because they were in Latine, no man would buy them, till at last another Ieve beckons Christian. *Micas*, one of the wealthiest men which Europe held, dyed poore in an Hospitall at Constantinople. And this was the issue of their Pilgrimage to the *Sabbaticall streame*, which they supposed to finde in this Persian Gulfe, where wee have too long holden you the Spectators of this Iewish Tragedie.

And yet let me intreate your patience a little longer, in considering the occasion of this error. We haue elsewhere f mentioned this Sabbaticall Riuer: now you shall vnderstand that the Iewes generally haue drowned their wits therein, *Rambam* g calls it Gozan. *Genebrard* alleageth many *R. R.* testimonies of it: but of all and of all, let *Eldad Danius* his tale which *Genebrard* hath translated) find some fauourable entertainment; the rather because one of our Apocryphall Authors seemes to weaue the same webbe, which as the worthier person, deseruth first examination. *Esdras* therefore (so wee suppose him, and this is not all his Iewish Fables) reporteth, that *the ten Tribes which* Salmanasar *led captiue, tooke counsell among themselues, to leaue the multitude of the Heathen, and goe forth into a further Country where neuer Man yet dwelt: that they might there keepe their statutes which they neuer kept in their owne Land. And they entred into Euphrates by the narrow passages of the Riuer. For the most High then shewed signes for them, and held still the floud till they were passed ouer. For through that Country there was a great way to go, namely, of a yeere and a halfe: and the same Region is called Arsareth. Then dwelt they there vntill the latter time. And now when they shall begin to come, the Highest shall stay the Springes of the streame againe, &c.* Here you see no lesse Miracle then in Iordan, or a like Red Sea, for their passage: which seeing it was through Euphrates, yee will pardon our Iew for searching it neere this Persian Gulfe, especially seeing his good Masters the Rabbins had increased this Tale, with the *Inclosure* of these Iewes from passing againe into our World; not by the continuall course of Euphrates, as *Esdras* insinuateth, but by the Sabbatising of the Sabbaticall streame, which by *Eldads* description is e'ne hundred cubits water, full of sands and stones, without water, making a noyse like thunder as it floweth, which by night is heard halfe a dayes Iourney from it. On the Sabbath it is continually quiet and still, but all that which ariseth thence a flame, that none dare enter, or come neere by halfe a mile. Thus the fire (if not the Religion of the Sabbath) then detaynes them no lesse then the stony streame on the weeke dayes: and what stony heart can refuse them credit? Yet doth not bee and *Esdras* agree of the Inhabitants, both deriuing them from the tenne Tribes; but *Eldad* challengeth no lesse antiquitie then from *Ieroboam*, who contending with *Roboboam*, the godly Catholike Israelites refusing to fight against the house of *David*, chose rather to attempt this Pilgrimage, and so passing the Riuer Physon (for the Scriptures bid forbidden them to meddle with Egypt, Ammon or Amalek) they went and they went til they came into Ethiopia. There did the foure Tribes of *Dan, Nephtali, Gad, Aser* settle themselues, which continually war vpon the seuen Kingdoms of Tusiga, Kamtua, Koha, Marhugia, Tacul, Bacma, and Kacua (fie on the simplicity of our Geographers, which know not one of these, no better then *Esdras* his Arsareth:) they haue a King whose name is *Huziel Mathiel*, vnder whom they fight, each Tribe three moneths, by course. The Tribe also of *Moses* (for they imagine his children clase to their Mothers Religion, which was a Mahianite or Ethiopian) is turned to their truth: and they all obserue the Talmud, the Hebrew Tongue, the Ordinances of the Elders, and suffer nothing *vncleane* amongst them: Yea, no Vtopian State comparable to theirs. He tels the like tales of the other Tribes. But how came he thence to tell this newes? Truely I wonder no lesse then you: yet he saith he got to the Sea (forgetting that before he had compassed his Country with the Sabbaticall streame) and there was taken captiue, and by his leanenesse escaping the Canibals (else our fat Storie had beene deuoured) was

f 2. c. 5.
g Elias Thisb. Rod. Sambation. Eldad. Dan. apud Gen. 10. Esd. 13. 40.

was sold to a Iew, of whom perhaps this forged Tale procured his redemption. Howsoeuer the Tradition holds, bot h for theie *inclosed Iewes*, and that *Sabbaticall streame*, that it should be fought here-a-wayes, or found no where. The reciting is sufficient refuting to a reasonable vnderstanding; and yet the Iewes are not onely beloted with these their *inclosed* brethen, imagining their *Messias* may bee amongst them, although they know not whether to ascribe this transportation to *Salmanasser*, or to *Alexander* the Great, or to the dayes of *Ieroboam*: but Christians also tell h of them about the Pole; and they know not where. And I haue seene a printed Pamphlet of their comming out of those their Inclosures in our times, with the numbers of each Tribe. *Yea, Postellus, Boterus*, and many other deriue the Tartars from them: which dreame, they which please may reade at large confuted by Master *Brerewood*. It was about the yeere 1238. when *Eldad* came from thence into Spaine. If any lust to haue another Guide for the Sabbaticall streame, Master *Fullers* i learned labours will giue him good directions. He saith it is the same which *Breeard* in his *Description of the Holy Land*, calleth *Valania*: hee also correcteth the vsuall Translations of *Ptolemey* and *Iosephus* (learned *Casaubon* is of his minde) and addes other things ridiculous enough out of the Rabbines, out of whose muddie Lakes this River floweth, to enclose the fabulous Iewes aforesaid.

If any marvell why in a Discourse of the Sea wee adde this, I answere, that wee cannot finde the Land whereto it is due: and therefore one absurditie must follow another. But let vs proceed.

h *Orontius in Geog.*

Brerewoods Enquiry, cap. 11.

i *Fullers Miscellanea, l. 1. c. 9.*

Casab. Exercit. 15. adu. Bar.

§. III.

Of the Red Sea, Sir H. MIDDLETONS *taking, and of Rhodes and Cyprus.*

THe Red Sea, or Arabian Gulfe, seemes vnwilling to be the Oceans subiect: so many small Ilands doth shee continually muster in resistance, besides her vndermining the sea with her shallow Channell, conspiring the destruction of many heedlesse Mariners, that here will aduenture as tenants to the Sea in their mouing houses. Once (by a mightier hand) was it helped to preuaile against the Seas force, to discouer a dry Land in the middest thereof, and with her watery erected wals to guard these new passengers, till the same hand reuersed it, or rather rewarded the then empty belly thereof with the prey of so many thousand Egyptians. Babelmandel, Camaran, and Mazua are accounted amongst the chiefe of these Islets: Suachen hath most soueraigntie, being the Seat of the Turkish Bassa for Abassia.

Arianus in his *Periplus* of the Red Sea, and *Agatharchides* in a Treatise of like Argument, mention not many Ilands therein: Orine, Alalæ, Catacumene, and that of *Diodorus* in the mouth of the Strait. *Don John* of Castro hath written an exact Treatise (from his owne experience) of these Seas and Ilands, which Master *Hakluit* hath in a written Copy; out of which we shall obserue more in our coasting about Afrike. *Thomas Iones*, who was in the Ascension in this Sea, speaketh of twelue or thirteene desolate Ilands, where they found refreshing with Cokos, Fish, and Turtle-doues, whereof one may with his hands take twenty douzen in a day. The Straits are a mile and an halfe ouer, but now not chained. Mokha is the chiefe Staple of Indian Commodities, which passe that way to Cairo and Alexandria.

This Moha or Mokha is eighteene leagues within the Bab, and hath beene often visited by k English ships; but in the yeere 1610. they dealt treacherously and barbarously with Sir *H. Middleton* and his Fleete, both here and at Aden. Aden hath beene of great trading a great Citie, now ruinated, neither shops of any account within it, nor shippes of Merchandize without, adorning the same as in times past. Neither doe the Turkes deserue better, who tooke it by treachery at first, hanging vp the King comming to visit them, and keeping (or rather losing and lessening) it still by like treachery. Thus dealt they with Captaine *Downton* his Company, in colour of Trade surprising twenty, and making them prisoners: and yet worse was the Generall dealt with at Moha. The *Aga*, after much protestation of loue, and vesting him publikely to testifie the *Grand Signiors* Grace in cloth of Gold, giuing leaue to set vp their Pinnasse, with many offices and offers of kindnesse, on the eight and twentieth of *November* suddenly assaulted the English, killed eight, knocked downe the Generall, and tooke him with eight and forte of his company: and Master *Pemberton* also with nine of his Men. They attempted presently to surprise the *Darling* with three great Boates full of Souldiers, where they found the Trumpeter asleepe, and slue him with another. The deske vpon occasion of romeaging that day for Quick-siluer, was couered with victuals none of

k *Inf. l. 7. c. 11.*

Dam. à Goes Dienf. Oppug. Nic. Downton. S. H. Middleton.

of the companie fearing, or prepared for offence or defence. Happily one threw forth a barrell of poulder, and disturbed them with fire, which when their Captaine *Emer Babare* cryed to cut the ships cables, made them mistake and cut the Boat-ropes, so driuing away, leaving their Captaine and sixe and twentie more behinde to the slaughter. And with a Pette they gaue pieces in warning to the *Trades Increase*, Sir *Henries* ship, so that their villanie succeeded not by Sea, their intent being to become Masters of all. The next day Sir *Henrie Middleton* with seuen more, all chained by the necks, were brought before the *Aga*, who sternely demanded how he durst come into their Port of Moha, so neere their holy Citie of Mecca, being the Port and Dueere thereof; adding that the Bassa had order from the Great Turke to expulse all Christians in those Seas, although they had His Owne Passe: He pressed the General to write to the Ships, that they should come on shore (out of the water into this fire) and not pretiuliy, obliged Him to be taken out of his chaine and boller, and clapping a great paire of fetters on his legs, and manacles on his hands, separated from the rest of his companie, laid him in a durtie dog-kennell vnder a paire of staires. At night the Consull of the Barbarians intreated some mitigation, so that he was remoued to a better roome, but lodged on the bare ground, continuing in this miserie (They hoped meanewhile for want of water and victuall to obtayne the ships) till *December* 20. Order then came from *Iessar Bassa*, to bring them to Zenan or Siman, chiefe Citie of Yeoman of *Ayaman*. Then being re-examined as before, His Irons were knocked off, and with foure and thirtie more English hee was sent thither, the Turkes themselues pitying their manacles, and some of them doing them fauours; Master *Pemberton* made a strange escape.

Zehart is nineteene miles from Moha North-North-west, in 16. 15. There they arriued *Ianuarie* 5. being their Diuano or Councell day, conueyed as in great pompe and triumph into by one. The Generall was carried vp into the Castle to a roome twelue steps high, where two great Men tooke him by the wrists, and led him to the Bassa, sitting at the vpper end of a long Gallerie couered on the floore with Turky carpets, and when hee came within two yards of Him, he was staid, the Bassa with frownes demanding his countrey, and other questions like those of the *Aga*. Then was he with foure or fiue more committed to the Keepers house; the rest to the common prison, clapped in Irons, where they had with their small allowance fasted, if the Generall had not releeued them by the meanes of some of the Turkes thereselues, by promises * and other meanes become their friends. On *Ianuarie* 17. arriued nineteene more of those which had beene betrayed at Aden. On the 11. of *Februarie*, they were all freed of their Irons, whereas (they heard) their intent had beene to cut off the heads of the chiefe, and make slaues of the rest: and at last with faire promises returned to Moha in the beginning of *March*. And on the 22. of *May* the Generall made his escape by this deuice: He sent to the ship for prouisions as for longer stay, and especially for Wine and *Aquauitae*: He sent to the ship for prouisions as for longer stay, so that at noone they went home to rest their laden braines. The *Aga* himselfe also was gone that day on pleasure out of towne. Thus the English (having some tolerable libertie since their returne) carried one emptie Tunne to the shore, and an other after it in which was the Generall, the rest of the companie being appointed by sundrie wayes to meete there at the Boat which was appointed to come from the ship; and thus they got aboord, a few onely staying longer, and therefore left behinde. But these with other their goods by force were rendred to them, hauing recouered their ships; The treacherous *Aga* was remoued, *Ider Aga* placed in his roome: and since, *Iessar Bassa* is also reported to haue lost his head.

In their way to Zenan they were much annoyed with cold in the Mountaynes, the ground euery night couered with a white frost, and the Ice in one night a finger thick. The Citie is bigger then Bristoll, hath a wall of mud, Orchards and Gardens within the same: there are many women and children kept as Hostages, to secure the Parents and Husbands allegeance. The way is by ragged Mountaynes (especially betweene Tayes and Zenan) and hath many Censers or Innes by the Grand Seignior erected for the ease of Trauellers. Their returne from Zenan was on the nineteenth of *Februarie*, eighteene miles to Surage, where the people are poore, clothed from the waste to the knees: The twentieth to Damane (twentie miles) a Towne consisting of fiue Hamlets joyned; a plentifull place. The next day they trauelled till after mid-night, and came to Ermin, fifteene miles. The two and twentieth, they went fourteene miles; and the three and twentieth staid at Naquellanare a common Inne. On the Hill there is a Castle, the Gouernour an Arabian; No Turke may passe this way without Passe and Licence, the Arabs in the most places ruling, and the people not brooking the Turkish insolence. The foure and twentieth, they tooke vp Asses, but the people tooke them away againe notwithstanding the *Bassaes* warrant: they went fifteene miles. The fiue and twentieth, sixteene miles to Rabatanim Censor. The sixe and twentieth, as farre beyond to Mersadine. The seuen and twentieth, to Tayes, a Citie halfe as bigge as Zenan, with a mud wall

Rehib Aga his pride.

Moha, the Port of Mecca.

Cold in Arabia.

Zenan the chiefe Citie.

a He promised the Riha or Lieutenant 1500. Venetian pieces.

A Moore of Cairo, and *Hamet Wadd*, the Bassaes Merchant, and others were their friends.

wall and a Castle. On the first of *March* sixteene miles, to Fufras. The second eleuen miles, to Asanbine. The fourth to Mousa, seuenteene miles. Hereabouts and at Tayes is store of Indico. The fift they came to Moha. The Countrey is populous all the way: and because it is so little knowne, I haue particularly related this iournall. On the fift of *Ianuarie* is great resort of people to Fufras, in deuotion towards one of their Saints there buried, and thence they goe together to Mecca.

Moha. Moha is a towne vnwalled, very populous, seated close to the Sea, a salt, sandie, barren soile: the *Aga* had beene as they say Catamite to *Iessar Bassa*, as the other at Aden also. At their returne he feasted Sir *Henrie*, and called for the Alcoran, kissed it, and swore that hee bare him no ill will. Hee might rather haue sworne by their ships: for that was the Deitie that he most feared. These in this time found a good Road; called Assab, for their refreshing in the Abex or Habesh store, the King of Reheita (a towne neere the Bab) kindly entertaining them. At this Assab-road they had wood and water enough, but brackish; with other prouisions at reasonable rates. On the shore they are Mahlimetanes, within land Christians. This King came riding pompoully on a Cow to the English, when Generall *Saris* was there, with fish-shels hanging for a iewell on his forehead. The better sort speake and write Arabike, the vulgar another language. But this is African; and so may we reckon Socotora and those two Ilands which confront it; Ot [a] which one (they say) is the habitation of Men, and the other of Women, which sometimes haue entercourse one with the other, but the Aire (Natures inexorable and heauy Hand-maid) not suffering any long abode to each, but in their owne alotted portion.

Assab Road.

See of these l. 7. c. 11.
a Gi. Bot. Ben.

Loth am I to looke any further into that boysterous Sea, and therefore leauing all that huge Tract of Afrike, as compassed by a sudden thought, but vnsaluted, wee shall finde other Asian Ilands in the Mediterranean. And because being now wearied, the *Archipelago* would be too tedious a passage for vs, neither are there many Ilands worth naming in *Propontis*, or the *Euxine*, we will speake a little of Rhodes and Cyprus, and then remember how long we haue forgotten our Readers patience.

The former of those contayneth about an hundred and twentie miles: fertile in soile, and of most pleasant aire, caused by that lone which *Phœbus* beareth to it; there neuer passing day, in which hee doth not, in his bright and shining apparell, salute it. And for this cause happily was that huge *Colossus* of brasse (gilded ouer) and reputed the most wonderfull of the Worlds seuen Wonders) here dedicated to the Sunne (though some ascribe it to *Iupiter*) the workmanship of *Chares Lindius*, of threescore and ten cubits, [b] or as others tell, an hundred and fortie three feet, but it selfe told fourescore cubits in height, which, falling by an Earthquake, the Oracle forbade the Rhodians to erect againe. But nothing forbade *Mabias*, or *Manui*, the fifth Caliph, after his seuen yeeres warre about Constantinople (as saith [c] *Constantius*, out of *Theophanes*) inuading this Iland, to carry away nine hundred (*Constantinus* numbreth many more) Camels burthens of this brazen carkasse.

b This inscription was in the *basis*, as *Meursius* tra-slates it: *Rhodo Colossum his qeuter cubitis decem Sagittis, hostem Lindius fecit Laches*, which words shew both the Author Lindius Laches, and the height fourescore cubits. *Meursius in transl. Constant.*
c *Constant. Porphyrogenitus de ad imp. cap. 21. Theophanis Chronicon.*

The Temple of *Liber* was here enriched, with many presents of the Greeks and Romans, to both which the Citie of Rhodes was had in friendly and honourable regard. Much was their force by Sea in ancient times, and for two hundred yeeres space it was the seate of the Hospitular Knights, which now reside in Malta; driuen thence by mightie *Solyman*.

These Knights had also, by purchase of King *Richard* [d] the first of England, the Ilands of Cyprus [e], dedicated by the Poets to *Venus*, to whom the Inhabitants were too much addicted, as apptared by their Temples and other vanities in her honour. At Paphos shee was worshipped in the likenesse of a Nauell; and round thereabouts (by the Deuils working) it rayned not. *Trogus* writeth, That the Cyprians prostituted their daughters (before they married them) to Mariners on the shore. We haue seene at Rome (saith *R. Volaterranus*) the attendants of Queene *Carlotta*, neuer a whit better then those ancient.

d Of his taking Cyprus, besides other Chronographers, see *Richardus Cenomicus. Trin. London. in vita Rich. 1. cap. 48. & 50.*
e *Adrian. Roman. Theat. Ptholem. lib. 2.*

Of the moderne commodities, see M. *George Sandys, lib. 4.*

Of this see *Herod. Thalia.*
h *Plin. l. 5. c. 31.*
i *Oriel. Theat.*

Of Cyprus thus reporteth *Ammianus Marcellinus, lib. 4.* It is ennobled by two Cities, Salamis and Paphus; the one famous for *Iupiters* Images, the other, for the Temple of *Venus*. It is so plentifull in all things, that it needes no helpe of other Nations, and of her owne abundance is able to set forth a ship, from the Keele to the Top-saile, with all prouision, furnished to the Sea. Neither greue I to tell it; the Romans more greedily then iustly, made themselues Lords thereof. For *Ptolomie* the King being Confederate with vs, was proscribed without any fault, but the defect of our Treasurie, who therefore poysoned himselfe, and the Ile became tributarie. *Sextus Rufus* saith as much. *Amasis* was the first, (*lib. 4.*) That the Cyprians were partly from Salamine and Athens, partly from Arcadia, partly from Cythnus, from Phœnicia, and from Æthiopia. *Plinie* affirmeth [h], That it was sometime the seate of nine Kings, and was diuersly named, as *Acamantis, Cerastis, Aspelia, Amathusia, Macaria, Cryptus*, and *Colinia*. It was such a Forrest of Trees [i], that when as their shipping and

and Mines were not able to waste them, it was made lawfull for any man to fell and destroy them, and for his labour to possesse the land which he had so cleered. *Bartholomaus Salignacus* sayth, he saw flying fishes in the Sea about Cyprus, which in the Atlantike Ocean are common: he saw also a Ramme in Cyprus with seuen hornes.

HONDIVS *his Map of* Cyprus.

In the time of *Constantine* it was forsaken of the Inhabitants, as before forsaken of the Elements, which refused to water with any drops of raine that Iland (sometime called Macaria or *happy*) the space of seuenteene yeeres together, or as others haue it, sixe and thirtie, peopled from diuers parts by *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine*, and remayning to the Greeke Empire, till that *Lion of England* made it a prey, and the Knights purchase, who sold it to *Guido Lusignan*: whose posterity failing, the Venetians succeeded, till SELIM the Second, minding to erect a Religious Hospitall, to testifie his magnificence, beganne with an irreligious foundation. For whereas their holy Lawes will not suffer any thing to bee dedicated to holy vses, which their owne Sword hath not conquerd, hee brake league with the Venetian, and robbed them of this Iland, which they are thought, not with the iustest title, before to haue possessed. But it is high time to bethinke vs of our Indian shore, whence we haue taken so large a prospect: where we are stayed to be transported into the chiefe of those Ilands there to take a more leisurely view of their Regions and Religions. And if any be desirous to reade the ancient names and descriptions of the Seas and Ilands about Asia, *Marcianus*, *Heracleotes*, and *Scylax Carnandensis* haue written especiall Treatises thereof, which *Dauid Hoeschelius* hath published in Greeke, very profitable to the learned Students of the ancient Geographie, as are the workes also of *Isidorus Characenus*, *Artemidorus Ephesius*, and *Dicearchus Messenius*, which he hath ioyned with them.

CHAP.

a Quod Geographia.

In Hak. Voyages the taking of Famagusta, &c. is largely related, *Tom. 2. P. Contareni de bello Turcico &c.*

CHAP. XV.

A larger Relation of some principall Ilands of Asia, and first of the Ilands of Iapon.

§. I.

A Preface touching the Iesuites, and a description of Iapon, with some of their strange Customes. 10

THe Iesuits haue not more fixed the eyes of the World vpon them in the Westerne parts, then they haue fixed their owne eyes on the Easterne: *heere* seeking to repaire, with their *vntempered Morter*, the ruines of their *Falling Babylon; there* laying a new foundation of their after-hopes: *heere*, by their Politike Mysteries and Mysticall Policies, endeuouring to recouer; *there*, by new Conquests to make supply to their losses: *heere*, for busie intruding into affaires of State, suspected by their owne, hated by their Aduersaries; *there*, by seeming to neglect Greatnesse, 20 and to contemne Riches, of the mightiest are not feared, whiles Others beleeue, obserue, and admire them. Both heere and there they spare not *to a compasse Sea and Land, to winne Proselytes*; euery of their Residences or Colledges, being as so many Forts to establish this new Romane Monarchie, but with vnlike aduantage, encountring there with Reason (or rather with the carkasse of Reason) attended with Ignorance, and Superstition, whose Owlish eyes cannot endure the enterview of *Truth*, though darkened with those Cloudes, where with they ouer-cast it: Heere, with *Truth*, yea, the Soule of *Truth, true Religion*; whose *Shield of Faith, and Sword of the Spirit*, these (the stronger part of the strongest *Gate of Hell*) *cannot preuaile against*. A Spanish Faction of Spanish humour and successe, more easily conquering a World of the naked Americans, and effeminate Indians, then keeping all they had in Europe. 30 Such are the armes of the one, and the preaching of the other. Yet would I faine be thankful to the one and the other, [b] the first for furthering Geographie with knowledge of a new World; the other, for making a possibility of a better World to come, whereas otherwise there was a generall desperation of all.

[a] Mat. 23. 15.

Neyther are the wounds of Popish Superstition so absolutely mortall, as the Ethnike Atheisme [c]; the [d] one hauing no foundation at all; the other shewing the *true foundation*: although their *Babylonish slime* euen heere supply the roome of better morter, besides their *stubble, hay and wood built vpon it*. Better a mixed truth, then a totall errour: and a mayned Christ, then none at all. But howsoeuer they bee beholden to them for their Diuinitie, it were inhumanitie in vs, not to acknowledge a beholdingnesse to them, for that they giue vs 40 the knowledge of many peoples, although in all their Discoures this caution is necessary, not to yeeld them a *Catholike* and vniuersall credit, where we any way may spie them dawbing the wals of their pretended Catholike Church. In relating their Miracles, and such like, we will remember they are *Iesuits*: in other things not seruiceable to Rome, we will heare them as Trauellers, when lying doth not aduantage them, nor hurt vs. But as the labours of the Iesuites may euery where breed shame to our negligence in a better quarrell: so in Iapon it is most of all admirable, that the further part of the World should be so neere to their industry. And that you at last may bee acquainted with Iapon, wee will borrow of them to pay your hopes; by this long introduction suspended.

b Benefit by the Spaniard and Iesuite.

c *Atheos & ex xeniis, Ephes. 2.* d Of the wants of their Conuersions, see T. a Iesuite: and the Epistles of *Xauier, Bapistes, Montanus, &c.*

Maffeus (who hath translated and set forth more then thirty of those Iaponian Epistles) 50 in the twelfth Booke of his Indian History, doth thus describe it. Besides other lesse, three principall Ilands beare the name of Iapon; which the [e] first and greatest more particularly challengeth, and contayneth in it three and fifty Kingdomes or Principalities, the chiefe City whereof is Meaco: The second is Ximum, diuided into nine Signiories: The third, Xicoc, quartered into foure Lordships, so that there are in all of this Iaponian Dominion, three score and sixe Shires; or pettie Kingdomes. The space of Land is measured two hundred leagues in length, in breadth some-where ten, in other places thirtie, betweene the thirty and thirtie eight degrees of Latitude: Eastward from China. (Our Countrey-man *William Adams* [f] which now liues there, and hath done these many yeeres, and therefore hath better meanes to know the truth; placeth it from the 35. to the 48. degree of Northerly latitude: 60 the length East and by North, and West and by South, for so it lyeth, is two hundred and twenty English leagues that way, and South and North two hundred and three score leagues,

e *Maffeus* thinkes *Iapon* to be the *Aurea Chersonesus* which agreeth not with *Ptolemeus, &c.*

f *Adam* in a Letter which was brought home by the last Indian Fleet, bearing date from Firando, Octob. 23. 1621.

almost

almost square.) The soyle is not very fertile, subiect to much Snow, the ayre wholsome. The bowels of the earth are stored with diuers Mettals & the Trees are fruitfull, and one c wonderfull, in that it abhorreth moysture, and if it happily it bee moystened, it shrinketh and becommeth withered; which they remedie by plucking it vp by the rootes, and after it is dryed in the Sunne, to set it in drie sand; if a bough bee broken off and nayled on againe, it groweth.

c A strange Tree.

They haue two high Mountaynes, one of which casteth foorth flames, and in the toppe thereof the Diuell vseth to shew himselfe in a bright Cloud to some, that (by long fasting) haue prepared themselues to this sight: the other, called *Fugeniana*, is by some leagues higher then the Cloudes.

They much esteeme a tall personablenesse: they plucke off the haires on their head (Children before; the common people halfe way; the Nobilitie almost all) leaving but a little growing behind, which growes long and is tyed vp on knots, to touch which, were to offer great indignitie to a man.

They can endure much hardship: an Infant new-borne in the coldest of Winter, is presently carried to the Riuer to bee washed: their education is hard yet are they neate: they vse forkes (as the Chinois) or sticks, not touching the meat with their fingers, and therefore need no Naperie: they sit on Carpets, and enter the roomes vnshod, their Tables are a hand high, some eighteene inches square, curiously wrought, to each Guest one, and changed at euery new seruice or change of meat.

Frois saith (speaking of Feasts) they haue three of them at the beginning of the Feast set before each guest with diuers gilded Dishes in each of them, and as many at the end: And in greater solemnities more.

They vse d much the powder of a certaine Herbe called *China*, of which they put as much as a Walnut-shell may containe, into a dish of Porcelane, and drinke it with hot water. At the departure of Friends they will shew all their most precious Houshold furniture, the best whereof they employ about the heating water, or other vses for this Herbe, which is of precious account with them.

d *L. Armerda.*

The women in Iapon which wanted meanes to bring vp their Children, with inhumaine butcherie did deprive them, being new-borne, of that life, which not long before they had communicated to them. Their Houses are most of wood, because of often Earthquakes: and some of stone. Temples and Monasteries they haue for both Sexes; and more had, till *Nubunanga* destroyed them. Their Language is one, and yet exceedingly diuersified, according as they differ in State or Sexe: or as they speake in praise or dispraise, vsing a diuers Idiom.

Mel Nunnes.

They vse Characters in writing and Printing, as in China. Their Swords are of a most excellent temper. Their Customes differ in many things from other men. e Blacke is a festiuall colour, White a funerall: their meates, drinkes, perfumes, are as dissonant to ours. Their Teeth are coloured with blacke, as beauties liuery borrowed of Art, which wee by Art would auoyd. They mount on the right side of the Horse. They sit (as we rise) to entertaine a friend. They giue to the sicke persons, salt things, sharpe and raw: they vse Pills, neuer let blood; we contrary (as in other rites) either to other ridiculous.

e Customes in things indifferent are comely or vncomely, *pro more loci.*

All their Nobles are called *Tono*: amongst whom are diuers degrees: all of them holding their all *in capite*, to finde so many Souldiers to the warres, at their owne costs. Generally the whole Nation is wittie: poueritie is a disgrace to no man, Reproches, Theftes, Periuries, Dice-play are hateful: very ambitious they are in all things, respective to their credite; full of courtesie each to other, neuer brawling, no riot at home with their households. The inconstancie of that State learneth them by vse to prepare for, and to welcome euery State.

They are exceedingly subtill, hypocriticall and double-dealing: they are also of cruell disposition, not to their enemies alone, but sometimes will assay the goodnesse of their blade and strength of their arme, on some innocent body; and in case of distresse, they esteeme it a credit to preuent the sentence f of Law by bloody execution done on themselues, which they vsually doe in ripping vp their brests a-crosse, a seruant or friend attending to smite off his head: and if it bee a Man of any sort, his friends and followers in like manner with their owne hands plucke out their bowels to testifie their loue. The Gouernours haue absolute rule ouer their inferiours: yea, in euery priuate Family; the authoritie extendeth to life or death.

f Sometimes this is the sentence thus to killthemselues, or at least a mitigation of the sentence; so esteemed there, as wirs vs the beheading of great persons condemned to a death more ignominious.

The people (saith *Adams*) are exceeding courteous and valiant; they are gouerned in great Ciuilitie (no Land better) with seueritie of Iustice. They are very superstitious, and of diuers opinions.

HONDIVS *his Map of* Iapan.

§. II.

The Voyages of some English to Iapan, and their abode there.

* *W. Adams* his strange voyage and aduentures.

THis our Countryman * went chiefe Pilot of a Fleet of Hollanders of fiue Saile, 1598. and wintred in the Magellan Straits from Aprill to September. Neere to the Ile of Saint *Mary* in seuen and thirtie degrees in the South-sea, the ship wherein hee was, and another of the Fleet lost their men in fight with the Indians. They sayled thence to Iapan, and sought the North-Cape (which is false placed in Maps) in thirtie degrees, but found it in 35½. In this voyage from Saint *Mary* hither, they were foure moneths and two and twenty dayes: and then there were but sixe besides himselfe that could stand vpon their legs. They anchored neere Bomage: and two or three dayes after a Iesuit from Langasack came aboord them. The King of Bungo befriended them with house-roome, and refreshing for their sicke; but three of their company dyed the next day, and three after, onely eighteene were left. The Emperour sent fiue Gallies or Frigats for them, about fourescore leagues distance: and demanded of them many questions touching our Countrey, and the termes of Warre and Peace in which it stood with others. Then was he commanded to prison, and two dayes after conuented againe, and demanded the cause of his Voyage. The Iesuits and Portugals informed against them as robbers of all Nations, and vsed their best friends to their worst designements: so that euery day they looked to bee crossed (or crucified, which is there the vsuall death of malefactors.) But the Emperour answered, they had not hurt him: and after long imprisonment, he was suffered to returne to his Ship, and restitution of the goods (before seized on) commanded, but without effect because they were dispersed. They had fiftie thousand Rials

giuen

giuen them. This Citie was called Saca, two leagues and a halfe from Ozaca. From thence they were remoued to Quanto, an hundred and twentie leagues Eastward, neere to Edde, where the Emperour resided. They could not obtaine leaue to goe where the Hollanders traded; but were allowed each man two pound of Rice a day, and eleuen or twelue Ducats a yeere. In-processe of three or foure yeeres, the Emperour employed *Adams* in making him a Ship after the fashion of ours, which, * as he could, he did, which was him fauour and a larger annuitie: Hee after built him another an hundred and twentie tunnes: and by this meanes, and acquainting him with some principles of Geometry, and the Mathematikes, grew in such fauour, that the Iesuits and Portugals (his *quondam* enemies) were now glad to vse him as a mediatour in their suits to the Emperour: Hee hath now giuen him a Lordship, with eightie or ninetie Husbandmen or Slaues, to serue him, a fauour neuer before done to any Stranger. He could neuer obtaine leaue to returne home to his wife: but the Emperour was contented he should write for a Dutch and English trade to be there established yeerly. They haue there (saith he) an Indies of money: a good attractiue to bring them thither. And thither since both Hollanders and English haue resorted. The first English ship that there arriued, was the *Clone, anno* 1613. Generall *Saris* aduenturing from Bantam thither by the Molaccas, and after an intricate passage amongst Rockes and Ilands, (which he feared would haue inclosed him without possibilitie of Egresse) through an open Sea he arriued at last at Firando. He was well entertayned there by *King Foyen* and his Nephew the young King, who coming aboord, began their Complements of Salutation at the feet, putting off their shooes; and joyning their hands, the right within the left, moued them to and fro before their knees. They were entertained with a banquet and musicke to their good content. No sooner were they gone, but multitudes of their Gentrie came aboord with them Presents; but to preuent danger they obtayned a Gardiano from the King. Daily they were oppressed with multitudes to gaze on the Ship and her beautifull Sterne: and some women seeing the Pictures of *Venus* and *Cupid*, hanging in the Generals Cabin, fell on their knees thereto, whispering (for they durst not openly professe it) that they were *Christianos*; and this Picture they tooke to bee that of Our *Lady* and Her *Sonne*: such a ridiculous Image (scarsly an Image) of truth is there in Images, called *Lay-mens bookes*, indeed [a] *Doctrines of vanity*, and [b] *Teachers of lies*: whence it is an easie discent to [c] *Tee worship yee know not what*. After that the King came aboord again, with his Women, which there sang and playedon Instruments, obserung time, and that by booke, as it was pricked, but with harsh musicke to English eares. Hee gaue him the choyse of diuers houses to hire for his abode: but little sale might be made, the people not daring to trade till the Emperours License was obtayned. Sixe weekes he stayed here expecting the comming of Master *Adams* before named, with whom he after passed to the Court eight hundred miles further. First, from this Iland by water to Ozaca, thence to Surunga or Sorungo, where the old Emperour resides. He was well prouided of necessaries for his Water-passage by the King of Firando, and for his Land-iourney also, with Men and a Palankine for Himselfe, and a spare Horse, and one and twenty other horses for his men, taken vp (as with vs Post-horses) by the way. The third day after they were come to Sorungo, they were admitted to the Emperours presence in his Castle, where they ascended on certaine stayres, and came to a matted roome, in which they sate a while on the mats (after the Easterne fashion) wayting the comming of the Emperour, to whom they were anon admitted, and deliuered His Maiesties Letter vnto Him, which He tooke and layd vpon his head, and with promise of speedy dispatch, willed them to repaire to their lodging after their tedious iourney. Thence they went to Edoo where the Prince keepes his Court, and found honourable entertainment. Surungo is as bigge as London with the Suburbes, but Edoo is both a greater and fairer Citie, all, or most of the Nobilitie, hauing there their faire Houses, gilded, and making a gallant shew. The old Emperour wisely makes way to his Sonnes succession, almost putting him into present possession of the State, by the greater Court and Pompe heere, then at Surunga. The Princes Secretary is Father (and therefore of greater experience) to the Secretary of the Emperour. The Prince is aboue fortie yeeres old. He returned to Surunga, and had Articles of Trade granted (which the Secretary aduised they should propound as briefely as might be) the Iapo-[1] I haue seene in the Iaponian Character, seeming to differ from that of the Chinois in forme, but like for paper, and manner of writing with pensils (taking the Inke from a stone whereon it is mixed with water) the lines downewards, multiplyed from the right hand to the left, sealed with a redde print of Inke, and not with Waxe. Some say, the Iapponians haue letters; Captaine *Saris* brought diuers of their bookes, which seeme rather to be Characters then Letters as farre as I can guesse, vnlike to the Chinois, yet with like art of Printing, the Pictures in their bookes not comparable to the Art in ours. He heard that they had but twenty Characters, which must be vnderstood of Letters: for Characters standing for entire words cannot easily be numbred, as in China we haue obserued.

[a] *Ierem.* 10. 8.
[b] *Hab.* 2. 18.
[c] *Ioh.* 4. 22.

* He was no Shipwright.

[1] I haue published the forme of them in Captaine *Saris* his Voyage, *tom.* 1. *l.* 4. *c.* 1. The Iaponian Alphabet of 20. the Malayan (which Captaine *Saris* could speake) of 23 Letters.

This trade still continueth. See *Pring's* voyage &c. in my Voyages.

Being returned (after the view of Meaco) to Firando, He there settled a Factorie of English Merchandise, leauing Master *Cockes* with some others of our Nation there in Trade, Himselfe returning from Bantam. Since this, some Intelligence hath beene receiued from Master *Cockes*, as wee shall obserue in due place: and others haue beene employed in this Iaponian Trade: whither the Chinois resort with many Iunkes, notwithstanding their mutuall hatred, the Iaponian ready to kill that Man which shall call him a Chinese, and the Chinois so hating all Trade with Strangers, that themselues heere reported, that fiue thousand had lately beene slaine by the King therefore, and the Officers put out of their places; the new Officers neuertheless for bribes permitting These this Egresse. And this may serue by the way to answer such [a] as will by no meanes beleeue that the Iesuites haue set foot in China, because the Chinois dare not for any summe carry a Stranger thither, and protest that none are admitted, no nor any Iesuites there seene. For all this I easily beleeue; the Iesuites also acknowledge; and therefore in many yeeres (euen after the Mart was permitted in Canton to the Portugals) could not bee admitted, till great importunitie after many many repulses on the one side, and on the other side bribes, preuayled; especially for These, as not seeming dangerous, so few in *number*, so sacred in *profession*, so farre in *habitation*, so Admirable for *Arts*, so liberall in the *Giuing Art*, (which goes beyond all the *Seuen Liberall*) and at last, after many yeeres pressing with *Presents vnto the King Himselfe*, and those so acceptable as in that Story is mentioned. The Chinois at Bantam knew it not, and no marueil: for these were Merchants neere the Coast, from which the Iesuites had their Residences very remote: Their China fashion of keeping much within; going abroad with their faces couered with Vailes, Fannes, and chayre Curtaines; and so few in such a Sea of people, might easily escape their sight. Some what that [b] before by vs related, more the Iesuites owne Histories, can cleere this point, which I heere mention, because diuers in speech and writing so confidently affirme that none of the Iesuites are or haue beene in China: when as yet in so many forreine Ports they meet with China-Merchants, all trading on perill of their liues, if bribene preuented not seueritie. But I will not kindle that fire of contention in these Relations, which betweene those Nations so easily flameth, the Chinois and Iaponians. The Emperour sent his Letter to his *Maiestie* of *Great Britaine*, as did also the King of Firando, with promise of much kindnesse to His Subiects: which with many other Rarities of this and the rest of Captayne *Saris* his Voyage and Actions in the Red-sea, at Bantam, the Moluccas and other Places, I haue in my bookes of Voyages now published, to which, and other Iaponian voyages there added I referre the more Studious.

a A Question moued by some, whether any Iesuites haue beene in China.

b *Sup. Lib. 1. c. 1. & 19. especially the last §.*

Cap. *Saris* his Iournall commended, *Sine.*

§. III.

Of the Gouernment and Courage of the Iaponers.

1 SEe haue heard that in the Empire of Iapon are sixtie sixe Signiories or petty Kingdomes, all subiect to one Monarch. Touching their ancient Kings wee can say little: but as it seemes in these last eight hundred yeeres, They haue had much Ciuill warre, each labouring to make Himselfe Lord of as much as he could. The three last haue beene the greatest which Iapon in many ages hath seene: The first of these was *Nabunanga* a great Tyrant, a greater was *Quabacondono* his Successour, both in Tyrannie and Empire, who from a Cutter of wood climbed to the Imperiall Soueraigntie. Hee had a Nephew, whom Hee caused to be made *Quabacondono*, contenting Himselfe with the Title of *Taicosama*; but growing in jealousie of this *Rising Sunne*, soone brought Him to a *Set*, enforcing Him to crosse or kill Himselfe with other of his Companions, after the Iaponian manner. Before his Death, hauing no Children but one Infant, He sent for *Gieiaso* Lord of eight Kingdomes, and committed to Him as Protector, the Administration of the Kingdome; adjoyning as Counsellers, foure other great Princes, and fiue other of His owne Creatures, that these *Decem-viri* might rule the State in the Minority of his Sonne. For further securitie He tooke an Oath of these and all the Nobilitie, and married the Neece of *Gieiaso* to this young Emperour, being about two yeeres old. Hee also made marriages betwixt others of the Nobilitie, to hold them in concord. But these bonds were too weake: for soone after the Nine Counsellers or Gouernours brake out against *Daifusama* (so was *Gieiaso* now called) whom *Taicosama* had appointed chiefe of the Tenne: and this fire beeing smothered, kindled the second time into a greater flame, which brought all Iapan into combustion: wherein *Daifusama* being Conqueror, added many Kingdomes to his owne, and at last the Empire also, which was all this while entituled vpon *Firoi*, or *Freizama*, or *Findoriozama*, the Sonne of *Taicosama*. *Daifusama* vsurping the Empire, changed his Title into *Cubo*. Captaine *Saris* calls him *Ogoshosama*: perhaps a later Title.

2 Their

3

4

5

6

Al. Firoi. 1595.

Hee

He holds more Kingdomes in his hand then any formerly: fifteene beside those that *Taicosama* held: this being their policy to keepe some Signiories immediatly subiect, and make others Tributary. This Emperour fortified at Gieudo or Edoo in his Kingdome of *Quanto*, employing three hundred thousand continually in his works from February to September: where now his Sonne resides as apparant Heire to this Monarchy. *Firesama*, Sonne of *Taicosama*. keeps at Ozaca: where by later Intelligence from Master *Cocks*, wee vnderstand that there haue resorted to him of Exiles, Male-contents and others, eighty or a hundred thousand, against whom *Ogosbasama* gathered an Army of three hundred thousand, the issue of which warre we haue not yet heard, but onely that Ozaca (a City as bigge as London within the walls) is burned. *Ex Iap. 1606. 1607.* *Dic. 10. 16. 4.*

All Iapon sometime obeyed one Prince, called *Vo*, or *Dairi*, [a] who at length addicting himselfe to his priuate delights, and putting off the burthen of ruling to his Officers, grew in contempt: and at last euery one seized on his owne Prouince, whereof you haue heard there are threescore and sixe, leauing the *Dairi* a bare title, and a Heralds Kingdome, to giue termes of honour at his pleasure, whence he rayseth great reuenue, otherwise subiect (excepting his Title) as are all the rest, to the Lord of *Tensa*, (so they call the noblest Kingdome adioyning to Meaco.) This [b] *Vo*, or *Dairi* descendeth by succession from the ancient Kings, out of which he is chosen, and is honoured as a God. He may not touch the ground with his foote, which if he doe, he is put by the place, neuer goeth out of his house, seldome is seene of the people. He sitteth in his seat with a Bow and Arrowes on one hand of him, on the other a Dagger. If he should kill any, or if hee shew himselfe an enemy to peace, hee is deprieued as well as if he had trodden on the ground. All great men haue their Factors with him to procure new Titles of honour, the only sewell of his greatnesse. The King of China giuing Royall Ensignes to *Taicosama*, perswaded him to depose and abolish the *Dairi*, which he lued not to effect. *a Mossl. 2.* *b Cos. Turrian.*

They haue another generall Officer or chiefe Iustice, which denounceth war, and in peace, giueth sentence on matters in controuersie. But these are but the Instruments of the Lords of Tensa, as are also the *Bonzij*. These are their Religious, among whom one is supreme in cases spiritual, by whom all their old Holies are ordered, and all new are confirmed or dashed: The *Tundi* (which are as their Bishops) are by Him consecrated and confirmed, although their nomination be by Lay-patrons. He dispensetb with them in diuers Priuiledges and Immunities: he enioyeth great Reuenue and Soueraignty, and is aduanced hereto by money and kindred. The *Tundi* giue Priestly orders, & dispense in smaller matters, as eating flesh on daies prohibited. They are subiect in spirituall things to these, in secular affaires to their Kings and Ciuill Magistrates. Through their diuisions and many wars they were much infested with Robbers and Pyrats, till *Quabacondonu*, in stead of so many Tyrants, erected One, and became vniuersall Monarch of Iapon. Betweene him and the King of China hapned warres about the Kingdome of Coray, which the Iaponites left vpon his death; and the Chinois also, as eating for no more then they already had. Many of them still are Pyrats, very much feared, and not suffered to land in any place. Captaine *Davis* had experience of their daring spirits to his cost; for hauing taken a ship of them, and not possessing himselfe of their weapons, because of their humble semblance, they watched opportunity, and slue him; and thought to haue taken their takers, and made themselues Masters of the English ship; hauing a watch-word or token for those aboard their owne ship, to murther the English there. Dangerous had this Fray prouued, had not the murthering Peece, with almost a cleane riddance of them, cruelly decided the quarrell. Yet would they not desire their liues, and pulled the Pikes of such as had wounded them, thorow their bodies, to reuenge it with their Swords. *Sir Ed. Michelborne.*

This is generall to the Iaponians, call it fortitude or desperatenesse, or cruelty, or in some respects all of them. *Quabacondono* the Nephew of *Taicosama* before mentioned, seemed to delight in bloud and butchery, and obserued as an ordinary recreation, at set times to haue condemned persons brought before him, in a place purposely inclosed and framed to this inhumanity; in the midst of which was a faire Table, and thereon those wretches were set in what posture he pleased, so to try his arme, art, and blade in this beastly carving of humane bodies: sometimes also setting them for markes to his Peece or Arrowes; sometimes exentcrating women, to open and curiously to search the closest Cabinets of Nature; alway prouoking vengeance to repay him in his owne Coyne. For old *Taicosama* hauing a young child, of his owne bodie, studied how to remoue this *Quabacondono*. It is a custome in Iapon that the Fathers growing old, resigne their Signiories to the Sonne or Heire: The Lords of Tensa (which title includes the Iaponian Empire) adde another ceremony, to visit that Sonne now in possession, so to acknowledge a kind of subiection, all the Lords in the Empire doing the like, in publike solemnity. This time was appointed, and *Quabacondono* prouided all variety of

of cheere for entertainment, a thousand choyce Wayters to attend, and thirteene thousand of their Iaponian Tables, little bigger then our Trenchers: but all was disappointed by *Taicosama* iealousie, refusing to come. After that, He picked quarrels with him, and caused Him to goe to the [e] Monastery of Coia, (a receptacle for Exiles.) *Quabacondono* in this distresse shaued his hinder-locke and beard, changing his name to *Doi*. The *Bonzij* gaue Him entertainment at Coia (as to other Exiles) without any respect to his present Title, or late power. A few dayes after came a Mandate from *Taicosama*, that they should all plucke out their bowels after the Iaponian custome. First began an Honourable seruant, who, hauing cut himselfe open across the brest, was by *Quabacondono*, (after reuerence done to him) beheaded, and then Others in order after the same manner: the hft was *Quabacondono*, whose head, after 10
shee had ripped vp himselfe, was strooke off with the same Sword which hee had vsed before in his butcherly recreations. And lastly, he that had smitten off his head, committed execution vpon himselfe: the *Bonzij* presently burning all their bodies in the same place. One of this company was offered by *Taicosama* his liberty, which hee refused, chusing kindly to dye with him, who in life had vsed him kindly.

e Coia is a city consecrated to *Combadassa* *Bonzij*, the first author of their sectarys. Many *Princes* attend his Hobies, and the Princes are all there buried, or a couch of them at the least. *P. Bert. tab. Aug. 15. 1595.*

The like executions followed in others; one of which was the mightiest Lord in Tensa, who being slaine, his Son but 16. yeeres old, had his life offered: but sending word to *Taicosama*, he could not hue without reuenge of his Fathers death, went presently to a Temple in Meaco, and before the Idoll *Fotoco* disembowelled himselfe. Of all *Quabacondonos* wiues and their followers, one and thirty chiefe women, and three of his children little Infants, 20
were carried in Carts to the place of execution, where the Executioner presently presents them with *Quabacondonos* head, that death might first enter at their eyes, which by a bloody hand soone possessed all the other members: Their bodies were all laid in one Graue, ouer which *Taicosama* rayled a Temple with Inscription; *The Temple of Traytors*. After other wiues and children of the other Nobles executed, hee demolished to the ground the Palace which *Quabacondono* had built, with the City by him founded, consisting of little other then three hundred Noblemens Houses: this being the Iaponian policy, vnder shew of attendance, to keepe the *Grandes* at the Court; so to bee secured of their persons and practices. I haue beene the longer in this Relation, to shew the Iaponian tyranny in this example: whereof it were easie to giue you many. The poorest, if sentence of Death bee determined 30
on them, will (if they can haue knowledge and meanes) preuent it with this (accounted honourable kind of death) crossing themselues. And whensoeuer any man is executed, presently euery man rushetth in, and cryes his Catan or Sword on the body of the Dead, thus shred into gobbets, not a peece left bigger then a mans hand. This Captaine *Saris* saw done on a woman, and her two Paramours at Firando, whom shee had appointed to visit her; but one comming soonerand before the other was gone, they quarrelled (to draw a Sword in a Garrison Towne, and adultery [d] are both death) and they were all thus executed. The like for stealing, one for a little bagge of Rice, another for a piece of Lead not worth aboue sixe pence. Their doores stand open (so little doe they feare Theeues) and they make ordinary 40
through-faires thorow other mens houses. Crucifying is common, the bodies still hanging, and putrifying by the high-wayes: their Crosses haue two crosse timbers fattned to the maine Post which is set into the ground, the one for the expansion of the hands, the other of the feet, with a shorter piece in the midst to beare vp the weight of the body. They bind them thereto, and runne a Launce into the right side of the crucified, sometimes two across. Headding is vsuall, which in Solemnitie is thus performed: one goes before with a Mattocke, another followes with a shouell; a third with a board or table conteyning the crime, which also hee himselfe following next, holdeth in a sticke, to which is fastened a paper made like a Vane, the end whereof is in his hands tyed behind him, by which cord the Executioner leades him, on each side a Souldier with his Launce resting on him; at the dismall place without shew of feare hee sits downe, and holds out his head presently wiped off, o- 50
thers mangling him as is said.

d Yet is adultery common.

Crosses in Iapan.

Since Captaine *Saris* his returne, the King of Firando is dead, and three of his followers crossed themselues, their bodies were burned and enioyed the same Sepulchre with his. And the Mint-master a Great man with this olde Emperour, hath already promised thus to dye with Him. I could leade you from these Tragedies to their Comedies, which in Iapon are common, and that by common women, which are to bee hired of their Pandar or Owner for this, the Bed, or attendance at table to fill your drinke: but it is Note-worthy that the Pandar, being dead, is by a bridle made of Straw put in his mouth, drawne about the streets, and cast on a dung-hill or some open place to bee deuoured of Beasts or Fowles. This hinders not but these *Hydras* heads multiply. Sometimes Great Men at their Great 60
Solemnities will themselues in person personate the Acts of their Ancestors: This Captaine *Saris* saw the King of Firando with the chiefe Men doe whiles hee was there, all the Towne and

M. Cocks.

Women actors are in Iaua and diuers places of the East Indies.

and Neighbour-hood sending their Presents; and comming to view the same, and not the meanest but admitted to meate in the Kings presence. I could from hence conduct you to the monstrous buildings rayse be *Taicosama*, employed night and day one hundred thousand men at worke. I could present you with the pompous entertainment of their great Solemnities, this being a tyrannical policy to cause Gentry and Nobility of this stirring Nation thus to impouerish themselues with all possible brauery; that so their hands might bee too short for State-practises. But with remembring these things I should forget my principall scope: Let vs therefore take view of their Religion.

Insane superstition.

§. IIII.

Of their Sects and Bonzian Colledges.

THey haue many Sects, some reckon them twelue; all truely agreeing, in disagreeing with truth: some of them Epicure-like denying Gods Prouidence, and the Soules Immortality. They hold that a man hath three soules, which one after another come into, and depart out of the body. Few of their *Bonzij* will openly teach this Doctrine, but labour to hold the people in awe. *Amida* and *Xaca* they preach, as Saiuours, and to bee worshipped. Some of their Sects [e] doe beleeue an eternall life, and promise it to all such as call vpon these supposed Deities, as Saints which sometime led so austere a life for the sins of Mankinde, that for a man to vexe his minde, or macerate his body for his owne sinnes, or to doe good workes, would not onely bee superstitious, but offensiue and derogatorie to their merits.

e Iesuuand sectis.

And here the kind-hearted Iesuite [f] is pauged with a fit of Charity to yoke the Lutherames with them; as if the sufferings of Iesus were but the Superstitions of *Amida*, as if eyther the *sufferings of man, imperfect, borrowed, dutie*, could bee; or the *sufferings of God* could not bee meritorious; or as if the Lutherans denyed Christian contrition (whose effect is *Indignation*, & effect *(selfe reuenge)* as they doe Popish Confession and Satisfaction. These Gods they call *Fotoques*. Other Gods of a lesse mould, they call *Camis*, which haue their charges and peculiar Offices, for Health, Children, Riches, &c. as among the elder (that I trouble not the queasie stomackes of the later) Romanes. These were Kings and Noblemen, or Inuenters of Artes, of whom they haue as true tales as *Homer* or the Legend yeeldeth.

f Franc. Gasp.

g 2. Cor. 7. 11.

Taicosama that dyed [h] a few yeeres since, (the first in which these many later ages took the title of a King, which, together with the Crowne, hee receiued of the King of China) ordayned before his death, that his body should not be burned after the wonted manner, but closed in a Chest, and, in a sumptuous Temple, for that purpose built, [i] his Image should be enshrined, and worshipped with the title of *Semfaciman*, or new *Faciman*, the name of their *Mars* or Warlike God: which was also done. Hee had appointed by Will the forme of that Temple which should bee built vnto him, which by those *Decem-viri* was done. Captayne *Saris* saw it, hauing on each side fifty stone Pillars, very stately for matter, Arte, and scite, seated on a Hill. The people called him the principall *Cam* of their *Cams* at the first erection; his corps was there intombed, and his Statue erected for their Superstitious worships. Thus he, which in his youth had vsed to cut wood and carry it into the Market to sell for his daily sustinance for his valour promoted in Military Honours, at last became the greatest Monarch that *Iapon* had seene in eight hundred yeeres; and not contented with humane greatnesse, would aspire to that diuine, whereof hee himselfe had beene a deridor in others. His name before was *Faxiba*, called after *Quabacondanum*; the highest title next to the *Dairi*, and signifieth *the chiefe of the Treasure*: next borrowing a Kingly title from *China*, would (mad folly!) on his Death-bed bequeath God-head to a Man, and Immortalitie to a carkasse: when hee could no longer hold out his pride, cruelty, and other wicked courses, which made his presence dreadfull, his memory detestable. *Nabunanga* was his predecessor in his State and Impiety, arrogating diuine honour to himselfe, [k] but destroying the Temples of their Gods, together with the Temple-keepers, the *Bonzij*. This appeared at *Frenoiama*, a famous Vniuersitie of those *Bonzij*, nine miles from *Meaco*, wherein eight hundred yeeres past, a Iaponian King had erected three thousand and eight hundred Temples, with houses adioyning for the *Bonzij*: allowing to their maintenance the third part of the Reuenue of the Kingdome of Vomen. Hence proceeded their orders and gouernment insafaites both of State and Religion, being a Seminary of Lawes and Superstitions. But these Temples in time diminished to eight hundred, and the Bonzian Discipline as much empayred.

h An. Do. 1598. Franc. Pasius Lud. Frois.

i Ali'aliqnem.

k Lud. Frois.

payred, and altered from Austeritie (in some) to Wantonnesse, (in others) from Arts, to Armes.

The *Bonzij* tooke part with *Nechien*, enemy of *Nabunanga*, who enraged hereat, made truce with the one, to destroy the other. The *Bonzij* not preuayling by their suing for peace, fortified themselues for warre in the Temple of *Quanon* their God of health and long life, much frequented with Pilgrimes from all parts, much solemnized with their pompous Processions (like in all parts, if yee beleeue the Iesuite, to their *Corpus Christi* Solemnity) which grew the more famous, for that these were but the preamble to the like pompe in *Gibon* Festiuall at *Meaco*. But all preuayled not with *Nabunanga*, who destroyed both Temple and Priests with fire and sword, burning foure hundred other Temples for company, in the yeere 1572. At *Meaco* he burned twenty of these Bonzian Cloysters of the greater sort, besides fourescore lesse, and in one of them threescore Bonzian women or Nunnes, whose Deuotion was employed in begging for the reparation of the Temple of *Daibud*. Amongst the rest, as the Grecians had their *Mercury* with his *Caduceus*, so the Iaponians haue their *Iscu* with his *Trident*, to conuey soules departed into their alloted eternall residences: The *Bonzij* his Chaplaines by lots enquired whether they should remouue him; hee commanded it, and they with great solemnitie performed it, but out of a place, which then escaped, to another wherein, and wherewith he was burnt. *Facusongin* was another Bonzian Academy, adorned with many Colledges, which he destroyed. *Xuanguen* the King of Cainochun shaued his head and beard: and professed himselfe a *Bonzi*, and not only attyred himselfe in their Habit, but thrice a day did performe their Superstitions, hauing six hundred *Bonzij* to his followers. He writ to *Nabunanga*, intituling himselfe *the Patron of those Religions*: the other in his answere stiled himselfe *the Tamer of Deuils, and Enemy of Sects*. But after that he would bee a God, soone did he cease to be a man; the immortall God, hating Corriuals, by his owne subiects destroyed his life, riches, and memory. These *Bonzij* are for the most part Gentlemen, whom their Parents (hauing many children) for want of maynteuance thrust into Cloysters; *Shauen* (as you haue heard) and *Shauers*, couetously pilling and polling the people of their money by many deuices, as by selling them Scroles to keepe them (by the Deuill) from hurt of Deuils after death: borrowing of money here, as to repay with great interest in the future World; giuing the Creditor a Bill or Scroll of their hands for security: by telling of things stolne or lost (which they doe by Inchantments, calling a Deuill into a child, who being so possessed, answereth their questions) by selling their blessings and curses, like *Balaam*. Some by vow (the most) liue vnmarryed: as the Bonzian women.

1 Out of the Frying pan into the fire.

m Bal. Gagus.

Another Sect called *Iuamabuxos*, before their admission into that Order, liue two thousand or more together on a high Mountayne, for the space of threescore dayes macerating themselues with selfe-inflicted penance; the Deuill in diuers shapes meane-while appearing to them. And after this they are receiued into that damnable Fellowship, distinguished by white slockes hanging downe their neckes, curled haire, and blacke hats, and so wander from place to place, giuing notice of their comming by a little Bell. Another Sect, called *Gengnis*, dwell on some high Hill, blacke of complexion, and (as is supposed) horned, marrie Wiues of their owne kindred, passe ouer great Riuers by the Deuils helpe, who on a certaine Hill, at times appointed, appeareth to them: of whom by the name of *Amida* he is worshipped. In another Hill he was wont to appeare to his deuout followers, whom then hee would lead, as they thought, to Paradise, indeed to destruction. They say that a Some, not able to perswade his Father from this passage to Paradise, secretly followed him with his Bow and Arrowes, and when the Deuill appeared, shot and wounded a Foxe, whom he followed by the bloud to a Lake wherein he found many dead mens bones. They haue another Vniuersity in Iapon called *Coia*, whose Bonzian Students are of the Sect of *Comburdaxis*, supposed the Inuenter of the Iaponian Letters. n He in his old age digged a foure-square Caue, into which hee conueyed himselfe, affirming that hee then dyed not, but after some Millions of yeeres would returne in the dayes of one *Mirozu*, which then should be a most worthy King in Iapon. About his Sepulchre burne many Lampes, sent thither from diuers Nations, with opinion that such as enrich that Monument, shall themselues here be enriched, and in the other life by *Comburdaxis* patronized. In the Colledges here liue sixe thousand of those *Shauetings*: from whom women are restrayned vpon paine of death. At *Fotonochasti*, the *Bonzij* trayned vp witty and proper youths in all trickes of subtlety and guile; acquainting them with Genealogies of Princes, that so they might counterfeit to bee the sonnes of such or such great men, and borrowing money on that credit, might enrich their wicked Colledge: till the sleight being found, they were killed of the Inhabitants.

m Vid. Claud. Duret.

o A Connicatching trick.

There be that worship the Sunne and Moone, who haue an Image with three heads, which (they say) is the vertue of the Sunne, Moone, and Elements. p These worship the Deuill, in visible shape appearing to them, with many and costly Sacrifices. Some *Bonzij* play the Phy-

p Cos. Tur.

Physicians, which burne certaine papers, in which are written the sentences of *Cam* and *Fotocb*: which papers being burnt, they put the ashes in drinke, and giue the same to cure diseases, and (with lyes) to turne away lyes and fraudulent dealing.

Some hold *Xacus* booke in such veneration, that without it they hold it impossible to bee saued. Other *Bonzij* haue beene in other ages in high reputation of holinesse; but [e] one especially, not a hundred yeeres since, the author of the sect called *Icoxos*: the Rulet or Generall of which sect is openly wicked, but so adored of the people, that if he but looke on them, they will salute him with teares of ioy, praying him that all their sinnes may bee pardoned, and therewith giue him no small quantitie of their gold. His yeerly festiuall is so honoured with thronging of the people, that in the entrie of the Cloyster many are trodden vnder foot, which yet is of the blinde people accounted a happinesse, many willingly yeelding themselues to be killed in that presse. And in the night, whiles his prayses are sung, there is a great howling and lamentation. *Nequiron* was author of the sect *Fequexan*.

[e] *Gasparis Villela.*

There is an Image or Colossus of Copper in the way from Ozaca to Sorungo, called *Dabis*, made hollow, sitting vpon his heeles, of huge greatnesse: and yeelding a great sound if any hallow in the hollow thereof, as some of Captaine *Saris* his companie did. At Meaco he obserued one Temple as great as the body of *Paulus* westward from the Quire, with a stone roofe, borne vp on as high pillars. Hee saw an Idoll greater then the former, reaching vp to the top of the arch. That of *Dabis* was in their way to the pilgrimage of *Tenchademe*, where Master *Adams* told him that hee had beene. There they euery moneth present the Deuill with a new Virgin, instructed by the *Bonzij* to aske him certayne question, which he in humane shape appearing, answereth; hauing the carnall vse of her body, if some *Bonzi* make not the Deuill Cuckold, as in our Egyptian Relations yee shall find of *Tyrannus*.

Some of their *Bonzij* professe a militarie discipline, as the Knights of Malta. The profession called *Neugori* was instituted by *Cacubau* (who is therefore deified) in which some intend their prayers, whiles others fight, and others performe their taske of making fiue arrowes a day. Their gouernment is an Anarchie; euery one obeying and commanding, the meanest person amongst them hauing a Negatiue in all their consultations: And nothing is agreed on till all be agreed. In the night they often kill one another without remorse, and yet (such is their Religion) this Sect holdeth it a sinne to kill a flye or any liuing thing. Amongst the *Bonzij* there [f] are two principall men, which if vnder their hand-writing they giue their testimoniall to other of their Orders, it is as conferring a Degree, yea a kinde of Canonization. For thence-forward they sit in a chaire, and are adored, and appoint to other Students their taskes of meditation. One of these, puffed vp with vanitie and arrogance, professed to know what he was before he was borne, and what should become of him after death. *Valentine Carualho* [g] in relating the death of some principall Nobles, which withstood *Daifusama* the present Emperor, speaks of a certaine *Bonzi*, which neuer stirres out of doores but vpon such occasions; who accompanied with many of his Sect, after other hallowing ceremonies did giue them a certaine booke to kisse, and laid it on their heads, wherein they reposed much holinesse, and worshipped it as a god: but one of them, named *Augustine*, reiected him, crying out hee was a Christian, and therewith tooke out a picture of Queene *Catharine* of Portugall, sister to *Charles* the fifth, in which were also represented the holy Virgin, and our Lord, and with great reuerence laid it three times on his head, and so resounding the names of *Iesus* and *Maria*, was beheaded. This I mention to let you see the Iaponian Christianitie. Some of the *Bonzij* are diligent Preachers, with great zeale and eloquence declaring the goodnesse of their *Amida*, and exhortation to call vpon him.

[f] *Laurent. Ieapon.*

[g] *Valent. Carualep. commutatio.*

§. V.

Of their Feasts, their bloudie Pilgrimages and Confessions.

MEaco their chiefe Citie is chiefe also in superstitions, hauing had (if report lye not) on the Hill neere to it seuen thousand Cloysters or Abbies: one of which is so famous, that the Kings in their Warres will vow great summes of gold, and after victorie pay the same there: the people also in distresse make it their sanctuarie, where the Deuill by visions deludeth them. In *August* they celebrate the Feast of *Gibon* with Pageants: fifteene or sixteene Chariots couered with silke, goe before, in them are children with Minstralsie. Euery Chariot is drawne with thirtie or fortie men, and followed by their peculiar Companies or Trades: and after them Chariots of men armed, which all passe by the Temple in the morning. In the euening, two Litters come forth, carried by men; the one of the God, the other of his Leman; then followed the third of his Wife, with

with which the men runne vp and downe in such a confused manner, as may signifie her ieaiouſie. Here the people weepe and pray to their goddesse, whom yet with a contrary deuotion they comfort: and lastly (as if by the peoples mediation) the Litters are ioyned together, and carried into the Temple. In the same moneth they haue their feast of *All-soules*, in which they light many lamps at their doores, and all night walke vp and downe the Citie: and many suppose at a certaine place they meet with the walking ghosts of their deceased friends, and after welcomming ceremonies, they set victuals [h] before them, at least in that place, where hauing a little attended, they inuite them to their houses. The reason of this refreshing they alleage the long iourney to Paradise, which in lesse then three yeeres space cannot be passed, and therefore they haue neede of hearthing. Two dayes this feast lasteth, in which they cleanse their graues, and giue presents to the *Bonzij*. In *March* they haue festiuall Playes, in which many meet in the afternoone painted with the Images of their gods on their shoulders: and parting themselues into two rankes, the boyes beginne with stones, the men continue the fray with arrowes, poles, and swords, alwayes with the death of some, and impunitie of the doers. The fourth moneth is a kind of Lent, or deuonter season, in which euery day in the weeke the *Bonzij* preach twice or thrice a day in the prayses of *Xara*.

h Baites in the iourney to Paradise.

Nic. Trigaut.

At *Sacai* in *Iuly* they keepe the feast of *Daimaogin*, to whom many Temples are dedicated: in which the Idoll is carried with much pompe on horse-backe, followed first by the *Bonzij*, then the Nobilitie, after them certayne Witches, whom armed troupes of Souldiers follow. Then commeth the Litter of the God, all gilded, carried by twentie men, answering each other in certaine Hymnes; the people worshipping.

L. Frois.

They beleeue diuers Paradises, into each of which their peculiar gods carry their owne worshippers: And some make ouer-hastie iourneyes thither on this sort. Hee watcheth certayne dayes, and then out of a pulpit preacheth of the contempt of the world. Others betake them to be his companions, and some giue their almes. On the last day hee maketh an Oration to his fellowes, who all drinking wine goe into their ship, carrying a sithe to cut vp all the brambles in their way; and putting on their clothes, stuffe their sleeues with stones, and hanging a great stone about their necks to helpe them the sooner to their Paradise, hurle themselues into the Sea. And great honour is done to them being thus dead. I saw one (saith *Valela*) that had seuen of these companions, which with their great alacritie, and my great amazement, did this. But they which worship *Amida*, obserue another rite. Being weary of liuing, they put themselues in a strait hole of the earth, receiuing breath onely by a reede, and so continue fasting and praying till death. Some in honour of a certayne Idoll, doe cast themselues downe from an high Tower, where this Idoll is placed, and after their death are reputed Saints. Others [i] sayle to their Paradise (as before) but when they haue launched into the deepe, make holes in the ships keele for Death to enter, and the Sea to swallow both it and them. Diuers also crosse and disembowell themselues before their Idols; for with such sacrifices their gods are pleased.

i *Pet. Akosteus.*

Ioseph. Acost. Histor. Indie, lib. 5. cap. 25.

Ioseph. Acosta [k] tells of a strange Confession, which is obserued in this order. There are (saith he) in *Ocaca* very high and steepe Rocks, which haue pikes or points on them aboue two hundred fadome high. One of which, higher and more terrible then the rest, daunteth and terrifieth the *Xamabusis* (which are certayne pilgrimes) to looke vp vnto it: vpon the top of the point there is a great rod of Iron of three fadome long, placed there by a strange deuice: at the end of this rod is a ballance tyed, whereof the scales are so bigge, as a man may sit in one of them. And the *Gequis* (which be Deuils in humane shape) command those pilgrimes to enter therein, one after another, not leauing one of them. [l] Then with an Engine or Instrument, which moueth by mesnes of a wheele, they make this rod of Iron to hang in the aire; one of the *Xamabusis* being set in one of the scales, which (because there is no counterpoise in the other scale) presently hangeth downe, and the emptie one riseth to touche the rod aforesaid, whereupon the ballance hangeth. Then the *Gequis* telleth the poore pilgrime that hee must confesse all his sinnes, that hee can remember, with a lowd voyce, that all may heare: Which he presently doth, some of the hearers laughing, some sighing. At euery sinne mentioned, the other scale falls a little, till that hauing told all, it remaynes equall with the other, wherein the sorrowfull penitent sits. Then the *Gequis* turnes the wheele, and drawes the rod and ballance vnto him, and the pilgrime comes forth, and another entyrs: if all haue confessed, he grew obstinate, the *Gequis* cast him downe from the top, where in an instant, he is broken in a thousand peeces. A Iapoonian, who had seuen times made triall hereof, being conuerted to Christiantie, reported this. But the terror was such (said hee) that few would conceale any thing. The place is hereof called *Sangentocoro*, that is, the place of Confession. Thus much *Acosta*, whom as I thanke for the storie, so I would a little trouble (for hee would

k *Ioseph. Acost. Histor. Indie, lib. 5. cap. 25.*

l All this is represented to the eye in pictures by *Theodoret de Bry. America* part. 9.

more

more patiently heare and beare, then some of his hotter brethren) with a question concerning Confession. And if the question come too late, yet the Societie liueth (and will longer then a better thing) in to a Colledge of whom Iapon hath brought vs, as their names here testifie.

The question is, whether euery Residence of the Iesuites bee not a *Sangenotocoro* of *Ocaca*, that is, a place of Confession (so doth *Sangenotocoro* signifie) of which wee may exclaime ὦ κακὸν, and if you will ὦ κακκκκ, the one for the cruell terrour wherewith it filleth the Conscience, and the latter for the fleshly filthinesse wherein *Ocaca* is not blamed: but their [a] Churches haue beene Stewes, and *Confession* the Bawde. But to let this passe, and consider the former. What Racke or Rocke can *Ocaca* yeeld like to this, which the [b] Councell of Trent hath framed, that full confession of *all* mortall sinnes (loe here the Racke) euen the very thoughts against the two last Commandements, with the circumstances of the sinnes, is *necessarie by diuine ordinance vnto all* which haue sinned after Baptisme; and (loe here the Rock) *Anathema* to the gainesayers. Tush, your coyne is not currant, although you yeeld it profitable, and comfortable, and satisfactorie to the offended Church, except you yeeld all necessarie, all diuine. Diuines shall I call you, or *Goquis*, Deuils in the flesh, that make a hell in the spirits of men? that with your *debita premeditatione*, and with your *omnia & singula peccata, etiam occulta, etiam circumstantias*, circumuent poore Christians, and put them in an *Ocacaw* ballance ouer hell-mouth, there to fall, without such fauour as to be broken in peeces. Goe Cardinall, and write [d] whole volumes for the proofe hereof, yet would I rather choose to enter the *Sangenotocoro*-scale; then your Confession-schoole. Easie it may bee indeede to seared Iesuiticall consciences, that account Treason Religion; yea pleasant and delightfull to such Statists, to haue Kings vpon the knees of their bodies, to powre out before them the secrets of their soules, and (they are wiser then *Salomon* [e] which esteemed it *impossible) to search out the Kings heart*. But to such as haue businesse enough to know and rule themselues, and doe indeed make conscience of euery dutie, what intolerable anguish is here prepared? when mans heart, besides *that it is wicked and deceitfull aboue all, who can search it?* is like an *vnmamed Heifer*, who can rule it? Had I not need alway to haue a Priest at mine elbow, to whom to shriue me? *Who knoweth the errours of his life?* and who knoweth when hee hath made his *due premeditation*, to examine them? This made *Bellarmine* vse the difficultie of Confession as an argument of the diuine Institution thereof. It is so difficult (saith hee) that no power of Man or the Church could haue imposed it, and therefore it was diuine. I will not say, who instituted the ballance of *Ocaca*, and yet it was a hard thing, and neuer the like heard of? I say, that the Gospell imposeth not such hard things (this were to bring vs back to the Law) but prescribeth an [h] *easie yoke, and a light burthen*: easie to such as loue not their ease, light to such as like and delight in it. But this, euen to those that dote vpon it, and deuote themselues to it, is not onely hard, but altogether impossible? Witnesse *Bellarmine* himselfe, *Quid enim molestius, quid onerosius, quàm vt cogantur etiam viri principes, Regesq; potentissimi, sacerdotibus qui & ipsi homines sunt, peccata sua omnia detegere, quæ nulla arcana, quæ nulla turpia?* Witnesse experience in such [i] as haue tried it more neerely then *Bellarmines* Controuersies would giue him leisure, yet liuing in continuall disquietnesse, and torment of their "Consciences, in the vse of their Sacrament of Confession, receiuing no rest day nor night, "as seruing gods, who cannot giue it them. These are the wordes of *Sheldon* (happily brought out of that darknesse, wherein, and whereof hee was a Priest and Minister, to a clee-"rer light) who out of his owne knowledge addeth; That it is not imaginable what incon-"solable liues, some, that are frequent in the vse of Confession (as necessarie to saluation) "doe leade: there is no stonie heart which would not pitie them, knowing their torments. But left any man thinke, that some *Goquis* hath hurled me out of the scale of my Historie, to fall and split my selfe vpon these Iesuiticall rocks, I will returne to our Narration of the Iaponites.

a Out *Chaucer* in the Friars Prologue. *Cer. Agrippa de vanit. c. 64.* and many of the Papists themselues confesse thus much of their Confessionists. *Alias. Pelag. Quand. Iacobe Graf. &c.* See *White's way* to the Church *pag. 219.* and *Iohn Nic.* Pilgrimage. *Poggius, &c.*

b *Concil. Trid. Sess. 14. cap. 5. Can. 6, 7.*

d *Bellar. tom. 3. lib. 3. de Pœnitentia totus.*

e *Prou. 25. 3.*

f *Iere. 17. 9.*

g *Bellar. de Pœnit. lib. 3. c. 12.*

h *Matt. 11. 30.*

i *Sheldens* liuetimes in the Preface.

§. VI.

Of their Idols, Temples, Funerals.

IHaue mentioned too many of their Idols already, *Amida, Xaca, Faciman*, and others: I might here adde their Idoll [a] *Casunga*, of whom they begge riches. A Iaponian 1611. found one of his Images by change, whereupon he promised to himselfe store of wealth, but soone after, all that hee had was seized on by the Gouernour; this caused him to cast this Idoll out of doore, and (as the Iesuites say) to become their Scholer. I might annexe *Tamondea, Bosomondes, Homocondie*, and *Zoiolis*: to which foure, their superstitious opinion committeth so many heauens in custodie; *Canon* and *Xuei*, the sonnes

a *Almeida.*

sonnes of *Xaca*, *Maristenes*, *Tirigiu*, and others, would be too tedious to report. *Organtinus* [a] telleth. That whiles vpon a time the Feast of this last was solemnizing, a showre of stones rayned with such violence, that the companie, to the number of twentie thousand, betooke them to their heeles. But *Amida* is most worne in their lips; beggars asking and begging in his name: chapmen in buying and selling, sounding and singing it, the *Bonzij* promising saluation to all that inuoke it. Admirable are the Temples [b] for matter and workmanship erected to him; one neere to Meaco is an hundred and fortie elles in length, with a huge Image of *Amida*, hauing thirtie Images about it of Souldiers, besides Æthiopians and Deuils, yea Windes and Thunders figured, and a thousand Images of *Canon* (on each side of the Temple fiue hundred) all in like, but monstrous shape, with thirtie armes, two onely holding proportion to his body, the brest adorned with seuen faces; all the Images and other furniture so glittering with gold, that it dazeleth the beholders eyes. *Almeida* describeth a Temple of theirs in Meaco, called *Cobucui*, which had three Porches, with so many Cloysters, and other pieces of stately and costly workmanship. Two mightie Colosses or statues of Lions, were set as Porters at the doore. In the midsest of the Temple were set *Xaca* and his sonnes about him. There were threescore and ten pillars of Cedar of such height, that (as the Register booke of the Temple testified) each of them cost fiue thousand ducats. These and the walls were painted, the roofe artificially framed: a hall for the *Bonzij* fortie elles long and twelue broad of like workmanship with the Temple: whereunto were annexed their chambers, an hundred and fourtscore in number, a Librarie full stored with bookes; Bathes, Butteries, Kitchins, huge Caldrons an elle deepe, to heate their water for drinke, which they neuer drinke cold, neither in Summer nor Winter; Parlors foure and twentie, with lights burning in them all night. Before it, is a Fish-poole fiftie elles square, full of fish, which none may touch. It is sixe hundred yeeres since the foundation of this Temple. The pleasant and spacious walks before the Temple of *Casunga*, planted with lottie Cedars and Pines, watered with a goodly streame, arched with a double row of pillars, adorned with fiftie Lanternes on each side, of solid metall couered with gold, and curiously wrought, which burne all night; the large Monasterie of Bonzian Nunnes, which being aboue fiue and fortie yeeres old, deuote themselues to these holies; the Quire not to be entred by any but certaine Religious, which there sit in garments of silke: these with other like might tempt my pen to bee tedious. And so might the Temple of *Fachiman* in the same Groue, more costly and curious then the former, and another without it consecrate to *Dai*, which hath two giantly Porters of stone fourteene elles high, tourtescore and eighteene pillars of wonderfull height, and three elles and a halfe in compasse: it was built seuen hundred yeeres since, and was twentie yeeres in building. A Tower or Steeple of wood is borne vp with thirtie pillars, in which did hang a brazen Bell, the mouth whereof was two elles, the compasse sixe, the depth three and a halfe, the thicknesse aboue thirteene inches. There are many Deere and Doues consecrated to the Temple, which goe into mens houses, no man touching them. Their walkes set with Orange Trees, and other their rarities of Art and Nature, they which would further learne, let them resort to *Almeida* our Author. One Temple is dedicated iust by, to a Lizard, (which they make Author and Patron of learning) without Altar or Image in it. Hee that readeth of the huge workes of *Taicosama*, holding sometime an hundred thousand workmen in labour at once, may present to his imagination the incredible buildings which those Tyrants by so many slaiish hands, can raise. Their busie wits appeare by their curious questions to *Iohn Fernandus*, of the nature of the Soule, of Angels and Deuils, &c. and some of them [c] seeing the absurdities of the *Bonzij*, worship nothing at all. The *Bonzij*, as the Iesuites report, raysed slanderous rumours of them, to be eaters of mens flesh, and causes of the warres and plagues which their gods prouoked by this new Sect sent amongst them: they [d] slandered the new Conuerts as miserable Apostates, which became Christians, because they would not be at the charges of their Idolatrie. The Iesuites [e] tell of a great woman possessed with a Deuill, which said that he was a Foxe, for some iniuries offered by the Maide, thus dealing with the Mistresse. There were in those parts store of Foxes, multiplyed by their superstition, not daring to hurt any notwithstanding their great harmes, because, forsooth, they were the Deuils instruments to punish them. Yet in this case the Wizard being consulted, counsayled to take a Foxe without hurting him, (which with a trap was done) and to giue him all kinde entertaynment with most delicate foode and vsage, so to pacifie the Good-wifes angrie *Damon*, who yet (like a Deuill) with faire entreatie grew worse. Hereupon another famous Wizard was called, who writ a long scroll, binding himselfe in the Deuill-Foxes name to free the woman, subscribing with his bloud; which scroll hee hanged on the Foxes necke before taken: which being neatly trimmed and shaueu by a Barber, and painted (as their women, being of pale complexion, vse) was let goe, and the Deuill intermitted his tortures awhile, but after reiterating the same, The womans husband

a *Organtinus.*

b *L. Frois.*

c *Ed. Sylueius.*

d *Pet. Alcaceua*

e *Nic. Trigout.*

husband caused all the Foxes thereabouts to bee slaine, for this perfidiousnesse: and a third Wizard cured the Mistresse, by conjuring the Diuell into one of her Maides.

They are very curious and ambitious in setting foorth their Funerals; thus briefely: The friends * assemble in their best array to the fire: the women of his acquaintance goe forth in white raiment, with partie coloured veyles on their heads, and their Maidens attending: their chiefe women are carried in Beds, or Litters of Cedar. After them follow the Men in sumptuous habite: next comes the chiefe *Bonzij* of his Sect in his Pontificalibus, carried in a costly Bed, attended with thirtie other *Bonzij* in their Linnen vestments. Then one in Ash-coloured garments (for that is also a mourning colour) with a long Torch lighted, sheweth the Corpse the way to the fire: followed with two hundred *Bonzij* singing to the Deitie which the dead had chiefely obserued: others beate on a Bason till they come at the fire: others carrie paper-baskets full of painted Flowers, which they shake out by the way, as a token that his soule is gone to Paradise. Eight *Bonzij* draw Banners on the ground, in which is written their Idols name: tenne Lanternes, with the same inscription, are carried with lights burning. Two follow with Torches vnlighted, wherewith afterward they kindle the fire. Many come after in Ash-coloured habite, with three-square Caps on their heads, with the name also of their Diuell therein written, which name another beareth written in a Table with large letters of Gold. After all these (did you thinke you had lost him?) comes the Corpse sitting in a Bed, in white, borne by foure men, his hands ioyned in a praying gesture. His Children are next, the eldest carrying a Torch to kindle the fire. Lastly, comes the multitude and three times compassing about the inclosed square place, in which (besides tables for viands) the fire is made, the chiefe *Bonzij* in an vnknowne language mumbleth ouer an Hymne, and lighting a Torch, doth thrice brandish it about his head (thereby signifying that the soule is without beginning or end) and then casts it away. Two of his Children take it vp, and after a triple ceremonie (the body being layd thereon) kindle therewith the wood: on which they hurle costly woods and Oyle, and so burne the carkasse to ashes. Which done the Children, making incense, adore their Father, as now assumed to the heauenly societie, and richly reward the *Bonzij*. Next day they returne and put the reliques of this Corpse, ashes and bones, into a gilded vessell, which is hanged in the house, there to receiue like exequies, and afterwards with no lesse ceremonie buried; euery seuenth day, and seuenth month, and seuenth yeere, his Children renuing their deuotions. The poorer spend herein two or three hundred, the rich as many thousand Ducats. In the Obits of Great Persons, the Lords and men of Ranke assemble themselues, and are called euery man by name to doe honour to the Image of the deceased, with incense as in sacrifices. After so much wickednesse of men, let vs adde somewhat of the admirable workes of God in Iapan.

Their Funerals

* *L. Frois Epist.*

§. VII.

Of the strange Earthquakes and Tempests in Iapan, with some other Observations.

ON the a two and twentieth day of Iuly, in the yeere 1556. it rained Ashes round about Meaco, couering the ground as if it had beene Snow. Soone after it rained both there and in other places, red sand, and after that, as it had beene, womens haire. And not long after followed an Earthquake, that hurled downe Temples and Palaces (wherein *Taicosama* had then newly employed night and day an hundred thousand workemen, to his exceeding cost, and their intollerable slauerie) which with their ruines destroyed thousands: sixe hundred gilded Images in the Temple of *Iauzusangue* were cast downe, and broken in pieces, as many remaining whole. It brought vp the Sea a great way vpon the maine Land, which is carried backe with it into the Sea, not leaving mention that there had beene Land. So was the Citie Ochinosama swallowed. Fanaoqui, Ecuro, Fingo, Casciauaro; the neighbour-Townes attended her in this new Voyage and became Sea. The Ships in the Hauen found no more securitie, but were also deuoured. The like happened in the yeere of our Lord, 1586. to Nagasama, a place frequented with Merchants, which the Sea before had enriched, then with an Earthquake deuoured, the Earth in many places opening such wide mouthes, that a Caliuer-shot could scarce reach from the one side to the other, belching out of that yawning such a stinke, as none were able to passe by. The Earth and Sea not onely shooke with feare, but bellowed out such roaring cries vnder that blow of their Creators hands, as did make the accident more dreadfull. Yet was all soone forgotten, and *Taicosama* fell to building of new Palaces.

a *L. Frois Relat. de Legat. Tauns. Adderth many other strange effects hereof in Bungo and other places. Vid. & Pet. Gouuea.*

Francus Fernandes writeth, that in the way from Malacca to Iapan they are encountred with great stormes, which they call *Tuffons*, that blow foure and twentie houres, beginning from the North to the East, and so about the Compasse: these happen in June and Iuly. It is there colde in November, December, Ianuarie, and Februarie, because of continuall North and North-west windes. While Captayne *Sarsa* was there, a terrible Tuffon blew downe the houses in Firando, turning them ouer with the fire in them; which must needs haue fired them, but for (as strange an accident) so much Raine comming withall. A *Bonza* pretended to haue beene told by their God or Diuill, that such a Night their Towne should bee burnt: this male such Out-cries euery night, the Diuell still prouing a lyar, that they could not sleepe. That Tuffon sunke diuers lunkes, and did much harme to the Hollanders wharfe, bringing vp the Sea so terribly that it made the Earth to shake. And yet the yeere after worse harme was related from Edoo by Master *Cockes*: this faire Citie all ouerstowne, and the people forced to flee into the Mountaynes: the waters taking possession of those gilded Houses, and the windes carrying away all the Tiles of the Kings Palace stately builded in His new Fortresse, these Tiles all gilded, but now none to bee found. The Pagans ascribe this to the Charmes of the Iesuites lately banished; the Christian Iaponians, vnto that persecution. Their women are as white as with vs: but not well coloured, which they supply with Art. There are women at Firando, which liue in their Boates, and take Fish by diuing in eight fathom deepe: their Eyes are red by this diuing, they easily this way knowne. They haue th ree forts of Siluer. It is with little cost reduced to the Spanish puritie. Their houses are floored with Mats, and they fringed with Silke, Gold or other stuffe. The Iapanders confirme and subscribe their compacts and bonds with their Blood. Their Siluer is in bars, their Gold coyne in long forme.

He that listeth further to bee acquainted with Iaponian affayres, may resort to the Epistles of the Iesuites, which besides these I haue named are many: and of that societie are not many lesse then two hundred in this Iland, a which also is now become an Episcopall Sea. Some Cities are become wholly b Christian, if we beleeue the Iesuites, abandoning all their Ethnike Paganisme and Idolatrie: would God no leauen were mixed with their Christianitie. *Peter Martinez* their first Bishop tels of aboue twentie thousand in a yeere conuerted to Christian Religion: whereas in China they haue found small successe, notwithstanding that they c there promised to themselues a more plentifull haruest then in any other Nation. The first of them was *Xauier* (one of *Ignatius* first companions, and like to haue beene canonized before him too) which dyed in China, 1552. and lyeth buried at Goa: of which *Arias Blandonius*, and the Iesuites tell many strange things. But the first finding of this Iland is by *Galuanus* ascribed to *Anthonio Mota* and his fellowes, 1542.

a *Gab. Matiosus* 1603.
b *Rmon. Acosta.*
Fran. Cabralis Pet. Gomes.
c *Emm. Iesseria.*

But before these *M. Polo* writeth of this Iland, which he calleth d Xepangu, whither *Cublai* the great Tartarian *Can*, in the yeere 1264. sent two Captaynes to conquer the Iland. The windes (as angry with the Tartarians, and taking part with the Ilanders) raised so stormie a Sea, that (when there were now thirtie thousand of their Companie, landed in a little Iland) they were forced to put off to Sea, and scattered with tempests. The Ilanders set foorth a Nauie to take those Tartarians, which so confusedly ordered that enterprise, that the Tartarians found meanes to make themselues Masters of their enemies Nauie, and therewith to sayle away.

d *Pol. l. 3.*

Marcus Paulus reporteth like things of their Idolatrous Religion, as you haue heard: of Idols with heads of Oxen, Hogges, and Dogges, and other deformed shapes: and some with many hands, as a testimonie of their great power. The enemies which they tooke in warre, not able to redeeme themselues, hee saith they did eate in solemne Feasts: hee addeth, that in the Iaponian language Mangi was called Cin; as now it is Cina or China.

I haue presumed to adde a piece of a Letter of *Quabacondonus* to the Viceroy of India, which after other things, hath these words: Iapan is the Kingdome of *Chiomie*, whom wee esteeme to bee the same with *Scin*, which is the beginning of all things. This *Scin* is the substance and very being of all things: and all things are one and the same with *Scin*, and in to *Scin* are resolued, which in Scina is called *Intto*; and in Tescincu *Bupo*. In the obseruation of the Lawes of this *Chamie*, consisteth all the politique gouernment of Iapan, both inward and outward, &c.

Betweene the Sects of *Amida* and *Xaca* happened a late grieuous quarrell. *Anno* 1609. Both Sects number great multitudes, and are said in times past to haue numbred betwixt them three thousand Colledges or Monasteries in the Mountaynes not farre from Miaco. Their originall was from Sijenoyama a Towne in the said Hilles: those of the *Amidan* Sect were called *Fandoxus*, the other of *Xaca Foquexus*. Now it happened that one of

Inan. Rodrigues.
Nic. Trigaut.

these

these *Foquexus*, transported with zeale, in a Sermon of his had rayled on *Amida*, and his Sectaries, which by one of them was soone answere d: whereupon followed a challenge of Disputation betwixt them, which came to the eares of *Cubo*, who followed *Amida*. Hee commanded that both of them should come to Yendo, or Eddo, to trie the matter before Him: where the *Foquexus* teared the Emperour (the rather because hee had shewed the bitternesse of his zeale against one of *Cubos* Sonnes, which, hee said being lately dead, was now damned for being of *Amidas* Heresie, and rode vp and downe all Japan without rest, appearing heere and there.) And now could hee speake but halfe words, beeing surprized with his feare, a passion which *is the betraying of the Succours that Reason offereth.* *Cubo* commanded that hee should bee stripped of his Bonzian habite in a publike Congregation by other Priests, together with his Companions, laden meane while with insolent words and blowes. After this, they and eleven more of their Sect (about twentie in all) were bound, and ledde vp and downe this Citie, and other the chiefe Cities of Japan, in which before hee had Preached. Lastly, all of them were carried backe to Miaco and Cartaed, the Preacher had his Eares and Nose cut off, the rest their * Noses; and the matter taken vp by the King of Bingo which followed *Xaca*, obtayned this Conclusion, that all the *Foquexus* should by their publike writing confesse, that the Founder of their Heresie, which first taught the worshippers of *Amida* to bee damned, was an Impostor, and that *Xaca* neuer had taught so.

* *Rodrig.* saith, their eares cut off and not their nose, but both to the Preacher and that 21. houses or Monasteries were therefore desolate.

Thus hath this Emperour dealt with the Iaponian Sects: nor is hee equall to the Iesuites Christianitie. For in Yendo (so the Iesuites call that Imperiall Citie of the Prince, Ours Eddo and Edoo) Proclamation was made that None of the Nobles should become Christian. And many inferiour Kings persecuted the same, specially *Michael* an Apostata, the King of Arima, which had before vsed bad meanes to remoue his Father, so to become his vntimely Successour. This his Father *Iohn* had a little before beene employed against the Portugals Ship of Macao. The reason was, some quarrels at Macao betwixt the Portugals and Iaponians, who being seuerely enquired into by the Portugall Magistrate, fledde home, and acquainted *Cubo* with the business. Hereupon this ship arriuing in Iapan at Nangasach; Hee sent this King of Arima against them; in which fight the Portugall Ship long preuailing, by casualtie was fired, and by themselues casting fire into the Gunners-roome, blowne vp, to the losse of a Million of goods. This *Iohn* vsing indirect meanes to obtaine part of the Kingdome of Fyen, his hopes increased by the marriage of the Emperours Neece to his Sonne *Michael*, notwithstanding his former wife. The issue was, that whiles the Father enterprayned one policie, the Sonne had two: the one for that Land of Fyen, the other to supplant His Father (who seemed to forget the Iaponian custome, in their age to relinquish the Gouernment to the Sonne or Successour.) This at last hee effected, by his Fathers banishment first, and soone after his death, and now becomming of *his owne Religion*, persecuted the Christians, and banished the Iesuites. Hee burnt or roasted rather eight of his Subiects, after Saint *Lawrence* his example. And the Emperour himselfe hath much distasted the Iesuites.

Ann. 1612.

Lit. 1613.

The reason is not mentioned by the Iesuites. But Captayne *Saris* then in Iapan, affirmes, that a Ship of the Portugals comming from Macao, *Ogasbasama* sent to haue some rarities bought for his vse: The Gouernour (I know not whether it were the King of Firando) moued the Iesuites to effect the Emperours pleasure; They said they were Religious men, this belonged to the Captayne of the Ship. Hee being solicited, said it belonged to the Master: the Master was asked, and answered, The Iesuites ruled herein. Thus was the business wound in a Circle, (they seeking it seemes to heighten the price) and the Gouernour to whom the Emperour had sent, accused the Iesuites as beeing vnder the Cloake of Religion, Merchants. Hereupon He caused their Temples to be pulled downe, and all remoued to Nangasacke and prohibited any Masse-saying within fiue leagues of the Court: which whiles some presumed in their zeale to transgresse, saying Masse in an Hospitall of Lepers within that Compasse, they were Crucified therefore. Captayn *Saris* in his journey to Sorungu met with some of their Churches thus taken downe, diuers Iunkes being laden with them. For such is the Iaponian building with joynts in their Timber, and without nayles, that it may easily be remoued. The Reliques of these crucified persons were reserued as great Holies: as great Follies, I should haue said. And since, Master *Cocks* hath written that the Iesuites are all banished Iapan, and their Churches pull downe and burnt. The Iesuites had some goodly Colledges, as at Macao, one as large as the [a] Tower-Hill, whither the Children resorted daily to their Schoole.

[a] That part within the walls.

And before these dayes the Kings [b] of Bungo, Arima, and Omur sent their Embassadours to the Pope (then *Gregorie* the thirteenth) with Letters of deuotion to his Holinesse, and had audience in the Consistorie the three and twentieth day of March *Ann.* 1584. This was the Iesuites policie (saith * *Linschoten*) to make the Iapomites to know the magnifi-

[b] *Hen. Cogeshall.* *And Scottish.*

* *Lins. l. 1. c. 26.*

cence

cence of Europe, and by that meanes principally to enrich themselues with Gifts and Priuiledges. How soeuer, the Iaponites thought themselues hereby much obliged to the Pope, as by the Letter of *Don Sancho*, the King or Lord of Omur, and *Protasius* of Arima to Pope *Xistus* 1590. appeareth. But for a farewell to these Iaponian Iesuites, I like their being there so well, that I could wish all of that societie were Preaching in that Iland, or acting the Scripture-stories vpon the Stage (which i is one way of instructing the Iaponites) or, if you like that rather, a whipping themselues in their vaine-glorious Processions (which is another of their Iaponian Lectures) that so they might in some measure expiate the crimes of their European brethren; or any way else, so that our Europe were well ridde of such vermine.

i *Arias Sanctius Bap. Mantanus.*

Coray is a hundred leagues from Iapan by Sea, which is so troublesome, that in the fiue yeeres warres betweene the Iaponites and the Corayans, it swallowed aboue fiue hundred Ships. This Kingdome of Coray is an hundred leagues long, and threescore broad, tributary to China, and confining vpon the Tartars. They are good Archers, but not so good Souldiers as the Iaponians, nor so well weaponed; but better prouided of Ships. *Taicosama* warred vpon it, both to make it his way (as was thought) to China, and especially that hauing subdued it, he might place the Kings his vassals in Iaponia there, so to possesse all that Iaponian state immediately himselfe.

There are to the North of Iapan neere to Satsuma certaine plentifull Ilands called Liuquiu; the Portugals name them Sechies, which by the King of Satsumas indeuour *Cubo* hath conquered, the King, Nobles, and a rich bootie taken. *Formosa* is a great barren Iland, betwixt Macar and Iapan, not farre from China, to which it is tributary, betwixt whom and the Iapanders haue beene late quarrels. *Lewis Frois* speaketh of a great Nation of wilde people to the North of Iapan, three hundred leagues from Meaco, which are cloathed with Beasts skinnes, with great beards and mustachoes; a people giuen to Wine, valiant, dreadfull to the Iaponites: they worship the Heauen: and other Religion they haue not. Captayne *Saris* was told at Edoo of an Ile called Yedzo North-west from Iapan, by one which said hee had beene there twice; * that the people are hayrie as Monkeys, and that further North there were small people of little stature. These of Yedzo were as tall as the Iaponians, with whom they haue continuall traffique, hauing little apparell but from them. Of *Corea* hee was also told, that there are many bogges, for which cause they haue Waggons with broad wheeles, to keepe them from sinking, and obseruing the Monson or season of the wind (of which you haue heard how certaine it comes yeerely in all the East) they haue sayles fitted to those Waggons, and so make their Voyages on land. With such Waggons full of Souldiers *Taicosama* (as he was told) had intended to assaile China, but was preuented by One, which to poison him, poisoned himselfe.

Edoo.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Philippina's.

§. I.

Of the Spanish Ilands, and others adioyning.

IT is already shewed, that those Ilands receiued this name of *Philip* the second, King of Spaine, and that this name sometime is in a large sense attributed to all these Ilands in those huge Seas, but more properly to those which *Legaspi* discouered, in the yeere 1564. and where the Spaniards haue since that time had some places of abode; Mendenao, Tenday a, Luzon, and their neighbours, lying farre into the Sea before Cauchinchina, and Cambaya, betwixt the seuenth degree and the twentieth of Northerly latitude: but first of all other Tendaia was called Philippina, by the Spaniards, which discouered it out of New-Spaine 1542. as *Iuan Gaetan*, one of them, testifieth. They are a many in number, some of them very great, rich in Rice, Honey, Fruits, Birds, Beasts, Fishes, Gold; and enriched further with trade from China. Seuentie of these Ilands are Subiects or friends to the Spaniards. Of ancient time they were subiect (as some say) to the Chinois, b vntill they did voluntarily relinquish them: the cause of much Ciuill warre amongst themselues, that Anarchie prouing worse to them then a Tyrannie, or rather the worst tyrannie, euery man becomming a Tyrant, and as hee had meanes

a *Gio. Bot. Ben.*

b Discourse of China, of *F. Iuan Gon. de Mend.*

meanes of wit, strength, and followers, preying vpon others vling or selling them for slaues: which their diuisions made an easie way to the Spanish Conqueit.

They worshipped the Sunne and Moone, obseruing in their honour solemne and sumptuous Feasts. In the Illocos they worshipped the Deuill, and offered to him many Sacrifices in recompence of a great quantitie of Gold, which they said he had giuen them. Their Feasts and Sacrifices were done by women, which were Witches of them called *Holgo*) reuerenced amongst them as Priests. These had ordinary talke with the Deuill, and many times in publike. These wrought strange Witchcrafts; they answered vnto all Questions that were demanded of them: (although their Answeres were often eyther Lyes or Riddles) they vsed Lots as the Chinois, and were obseruers of times. If they beganne a Iourney, and met with a Lizard or other Worme, they would returne home, saying the Heauens prohibited their proceeding.

They haue now amongst them many Preachers and Monasterues of the Augustinians, Franciscans, and Iesuits. But the wicked life of the Spaniards is so offensiue to the Inhabitants, that the Discourser (himselfe a Friar) telleth heere of a notable Story. [c] A certayne Ilander soone after his Baptisme, died, and appeared after to many of his Countreymen, perswading them to be baptized, as a way vnto that happinesse, whereof hee now had in himselfe most blessed experience; onely they must be baptized, and obserue the Commandements, which the Spaniards preached to them; of whom, and of others like vnto them, there were in that happy place infinite numbers. Hereupon he vanished, and some were perswaded: but others of them refused, saying, that seeing there were Spanish Souldiers in glory, they would not go thither, because they would not bee in their company. A like History *Bartholom de las Casas* [d] relateth of a Westerne Indian, at the time of his death answering to a Dominicke Friar, which counselled him to dye a Christian, and so to bee capable of Heauen (when hee head there were Spaniards in Heauen) hee would rather bee in Hell with his Fore-fathers, then in Heauen with the Spaniards.

The Spaniards [e] haue their Bishop and Archdeacon, and besides other Religious, seuen Colledges of Iesuits. *Boterus* [f] sayth, That the King of Spaine had thought to haue made Manilla an Archbishopricke, and added three other Archbishopricks. Captaine [g] *Noort* (a Dutchman that compassed the World) lost a ship here in fight with the Spaniards, and sunke in the midst of Rome or Spaine, and more addicted to their Superstitious follies.

In these Philippina's [h] some carue and cut their skinne, with sundry streakes and deuices all ouer their body. Moreouer, as we haue spoken of Bals worne in their yards, (or Bels rather, for they make a lowd ringing as they goe, if they wrap them not vp very close) by the men of Pegu: so heere, the men, and men-children amongst them haue nayles of Tin thrust quite thorow the head of their priuy part, being split in the lower end, and riueted, which is done when they be young, and the place groweth vp againe, without any great paine. They take it out, and put it in, as occasion serueth. This here, as that in Pegu, is said to haue beene practised to auoid the sinne of Sodomy, where to before they were prone. The Males also are (at least in some [k] of the Philippina's) circumcised. The people worship the Deuill, who oft times appeareth to them in conference, in most vgly and monstrous shape. There is amongst them an Iland of Negro's, inhabited with blacke people, almost as bigge as England, in nine degrees.

Here also bee those [k] blacke people called *Ospapuas*, Man-eaters and Sorcerers, among whom Deuils walke familiarly, as companions. If these wicked Spirits find one alone they kill him, and therefore they alwayes vse company. Their Idols they adorne with Ostrich feathers. They vse to let themselues bloud with a certayne Hearbe layd to the member, and licked with the tongue: with which they can draw out all the bloud in their body. They are like the Cafers or Ethiopians, and are diuided into many Kingdomes, as [l] *Nunnes* writeth.

Migindinao, Mindanao, or Vendenao is a great Iland, containing by *Iuan Gaetans* obseruation, three hundred and foure score leagues in compasse. It is inhabited of Moores and Gentiles: there are many Kings. In stead of bread they vse Rice and Sagu. There is Pepper, Ginger, and Gold singularly good. Tendaia enuironeth a hundred and sixty leagues, from twelue to fifteene degrees of latitude; the people Idolatrous; abound with Pepper, Ginger, Gold, and Mynes.

When as *Magellan*, first of all men, [m] by the West discouered these Easterne Ilands, in the Ilands of Buthoan and Caleghan, hee could learne no other Religion obserued amongst them, but that lifting vp their hands closed together, and their face towards Heauen, they called on their God by the name of *Abba*. In Zubut (in token of friendship) hee and the King did let themselues bloud on the right arme, for so was their wont to confirme leagues of amity. The King had his skinne painted with a hot Iron Pensill: he and his people at *Magellan's* per-

[c] Pag. 349.

[d] Cruel. Hist.

[e] Francis. Yates. 1601.

[f] G.B.B. part. 4. lib. 1.

[g] Oliuer à Noort, 1600.

[h] Tho. Candish Voyage Hak. Tom. 3.

[i] On the Ile Capul.

[k] Ant. Galuanus.

[l] Nic. Nun. I. Gaetan. apud Ram.

[m] A Pigafetta.

pesuasion were baptized; and burned their Idols, which were made of hollow wood, with great faces and foure teeth, like Bores tuskes in their mouthes: painted they were all ouer, but had only a forepart, and nothing behind.

They weare in their yard a nayle of Gold. They had many wiues, but one principall. They [n] obserued many Ceremonies in killing a Hogge, in Sacrifice, as it seemed, to the Sunne. After the founding of their Cymbals, and certaine Cates set downe in platters, two old women came forth with Trumpets or Pipes of Reed, and did reuerence to the Sunne, and then clothing themselues with sacred Vestments, one of them put about her fore-head a haire-lace with two hornes, holding another heire-lace or skarfe in her hand, and so beganne to sound, dance, and call vpon the Sunne, wherein she is followed by the other, both of them 1 in this manner dancing about the Hogge, which is there fast tyed. The horned Beldame still muttereth certaine words to the Sunne, and the other answereth her: then doth shee take a cup of wine, and after some Ceremonies powreth it on the Hogge: and after that with a Launce, after dances and flourishes, she killeth the Hogge. All this while a little Torch is burning, which at last she taketh into her mouth, and byteth it: and the other woman washeth the Pipes with the Swines bloud, and with her finger embrewed with bloud, marketh the fore-head of her husband first, and then of the rest. Then doe they vntie themselues, and onely with women associates, eate the cheate in the platters: and after findge the Hogge, and eat him. Without these Ceremonies they eat no Swines flesh. 2

n *Mas. Transil. uano.*

From hence *Magellan* went to Mathan, where in a battle with the Ilanders he was slaine.

In Pulaoan they keepe Cockes for the game, but eate not of their flesh, forbidden by their Superstitions. In Ciumbubon they found a tree, which had leaues like those of the Mulberry, hauing besides on each side of the leafe, as it were, two feete, with which (as if it had beene mouing and sensible) it would stirre and goe vp and downe. *Pigafetta* kept one eight dayes in a platter, and when he touched it, presently it would flee from him, and moue vp and downe: he thought it liued of the ayre.

In Burneo the people are partly Moores, and partly Gentiles, and according to their Religions, haue two Kings and two Royall Cities, situated in Salt-water. The Moores when they kill a Hen or a Goat, vse first certayne words to the Sunne. The Gentiles [o] worship 3 the Sunne and Moone, esteeming the one Male and the other Female, him the Father, this the Mother of the Stars, whom also they reckon in the catalogue of their Demi-gods. They salute the Sun in his morning-approach, with certaine Verses and adoration: which they also performe to the Moone, and demand of them children, riches, and other their necessaries. After death they expect no future state. The Spaniards heard of great Pearles as bigge as Egges, which the King of Burneo had; and if you beleeue them, they tooke an Oyster themselues, whose fishie substance weighed seuen and fortie pounds. The Moore King in Burneo was serued in his Palace, and attended only by women and Maydens.

o *Mas. Transil.*

In Gilolo [p] they are likewise, some of the Arabian Sect, the others Gentiles. The Moores had two Kings of their Law, each of which had sixe hundred children. The Gentiles vsed to worship the first thing they encounter in the morning all the day following. [q] They were 4 sometime man-eaters: some of the Ilanders were by the Portugals conuerted; but the King being poysoned by a Mahometan, they declined. Yet one Nobleman named *John*, first killed his wife and children with his owne hands, lest they should apostatize, and then offered himselfe to endure any torment.

p *Pigafetta.*

q *Got. Arthus pag. 396.*

---

§. II.

Of the Moluccos, Banda, Ambayna, and Selebes. 5

THe Moluccos are vsually reckoned fiue (as before is said) but many other Ilands are subiect to them, and by some Authours called also by that name. The King of Ternate is said to [r] haue seuenty Ilands vnder his subiection, and in his Port represenr Sir Fr. Drake.
teth great Maiesty. Both heere and in Banda the Mahometan Superstition hath set footing, and preuayled, as in the other adioyning Ilands, the Moores being as zealous to winne Proselites, as to enrich themselues. None of these Ilands is aboue sixe leagues in compasse, enriched 6
[s] with Cloues, but of other fruits barren and poore. One tree [t] they haue, which out of the cut branches yeeldeth a white, wholsome, and sauourie liquor for drinke; they call it *Tuaca*, and the pith thereof affoordeth them meate called *Sagu*, tasting in the mouth like sowre Curds, melting like Sugar, whereof they make certayne Cakes, which will endure good for food ten yeeres.

s *Mass. lib. 5.*

The

HONDIVS *his Map of the* Indian *Ilands:*

The Cloue-trees not onely sucke vp all the moysture of the Earth where they grow, dis-
40 dayning any other plant should grow neere them (like our Inclosers) suddenly drinking vp
all the Heatens liberality in showres, but with their thirsty appetite intercept the running
waters that descend from the Mountaines, before they can betake them to their Mothers lap,
the Oceans refuge. In this Iland [z] are said to bee men hauing anckles with spurres like to
Cockes; heere are Hogges with hornes: a Riuer stored with fish, and yet so hot, that it flay-
eth off the skin of any creature which entereth it: Oysters so large, that they Christen in the
shels: Crabs so strong, that with their clawes they will breake the Iron of a Pick-axe: stones
which grow like fish, whereof they make Lime.

In [a] Ternate is a Mountayne, which (as it were) angry with Nature, for being fastned to
the earth, doth not only lift vp his high head aboue the Ayrie Regions of cloudes, but ende-
50 uoureth also to conioyne it selfe with the fiery Element, wherewith it seemeth to hold some
entercourse, with dreadfull thunders, belching out light flames mixed with a darke smoke,
like proud Greatnesse, wasting it selfe with it owne flames, and filling the neighbouring-
valley with ashes. It is not much aboue a hundred yeeres, since first the Sect of *Mahumet* en-
tred the Moluccas. But now [x] both heere and in Amboino the Iesuits haue their Residences,
and haue perswaded many to their Catholike Faith, and whipping Processions. *Stephan ab*
[y] *Hagan* in the yeere 1605. wanne this Iland of Amboino, and the Fort of the Portugals, to
the States: it is a Cloue-Iland. The King of Ternate is Mahumetan.

In [z] Ternate theft is neuer suffered vnpunished: the Hollanders saw a Boy of eleuen or
twelue yeeres, for stealing a leafe of Tobacco, led vp and downe with his hands bound be-
60 hind him, for a publike spectacle and derision to other Boyes. They maintaine deadly wars
with the Portugals, and spare none of them that they can get. If an Eclipse of the
Sunne or Moone happen, they howle and make piteous lamentation, perswading themselues, that

z *Galuanh.*

a *Iac. Neccius.*

x *Iud. Fernandez.*
La Mesonna.
y *Got. Arthus* pag. 403.
z *Holland. Nauig. 1598. & 99 per Bilsiaeli. Stokeyn.*

that their King, or some great man amongst them will dye. Experience thereof was the sixt of August 1599. when the Moone was eclipsed about eight of the clocke at night, they euery way by crying out, by strange gestures, praying and beating their Basons and Drummes, expressed a lamentable passion of griefe, for the feare aforesaid: And the eclipse being past, when they see that neither the King, nor any other is dead, they obserue the next day solemnely festiuall with publike Procession of old and young of all sorts. They esteemed it a Miracle when the Hollanders told them that there were in their Country which could prognosticate of Eclipses long before. *Columbus* a vsed, the like simplicity of the Iamaicans to his preseruation: for when they forsooke him, hee threatned vnto them the anger of God, whereof they should see an euident token in the darkening of the Moone within two dayes, which according to the naturall reuolution of the Heauens (knowne to *Columbus*) comming to passe, the Ilanders with dread and feare shewed all readinesse to his Seruice. The conceits of the Moones Eclipse haue beene diuers, some Indians thinking that shee was whipped by the Sun till the blood followed: the Greekes attributing the same to Thessalian Charmes, for remedy whereof, they b vsed to beat on Instruments of Brasse, and lighted Torches, and cast fires vp towards Heauen. And the Athenians persecuted naturall Philosophers, and Meteorlegians, as aduersaries to Diuinitie, as appeareth in *Diagoras Protagoras*, and *Socrates*, till *Plato* brought them to another mind. *Plutar. Nicias.*

a *Gos. Bos lib. 2. cap. 5.*

b *Plutarc. P. Æmil. Seneca. Hippol. & Med. Tibul. l. 1. Eleg. 8 Manil lib. 1. Afron Iuuenal, Martial, &c.*

The water about Ternate is so cleere, that they fish by the eye, and can see the Anchors in the bottome of the water, at sixteene or seuenteene fathome deepe, as if it were but a foot: and espy euery fish which passeth, to no small aduantage of their fishing.

When the King goeth to the Mesquit, a Boy goeth before, which beareth his Sword on his shoulder, and in the other hand a Kid: after him follow the Kings Souldiers. After them another with a Censer. Next to whom commeth the King with a Tiretold ouer his head, to keepe off the Sunne. When they are come to the doores, there are vessels of water to wash their hands and feete, before they enter; and then the floore is couered with white cloth, whereon they prostrate themselues, with their faces to the earth, softly mumbling their *Mumpsimus*-deuotions. In the middest is a Pulpit spread with white cloth. In stead of a Bell, they haue a great Drum hanged vp, which they beate with Clubs. They haue in euery Temple also one Bell, but without a clapper. All come at that peale, or sound, with their weapons armed.

The Moluccians c are better proportioned then other Indians, haue more beard, (which the elder men nourish and weare long for their greater authority) browne of colour, and meane of stature. For valour they haue not their like in all India, especially those of Ternate, chusing rather to dye then flee, and esteeming it a great credit to fight against greater multitudes. Their shields are of wood two spans broad, and 4. foot long. They are exceedingly addicted to sloth and ease, none working in any Handicraft; their houses are of Timber and Reeds, witout one nayle in them, which their slaues build, and doe also their other labours. They haue no money, and the siluer which they haue is employed to vessels of plate. Their riches are their Cloues, wherewith they prouide them of other necessaries. They neuer see their wiue till they are married; not the wiues them. *Makian* and *Moher* are now subiect to the King of Ternate; Tidore and Batian haue their peculiar Kings. This people haue the power to elect their King, so that they choose one of the Royall and ancient Family. The King of Ternate calleth himselfe King of Gilolo, whereof hee hath but a part, and that by conquest. The birds of Paradise (saith this Authour) haue two feet as well as other Birds; but as soone as they are taken, they are cut off, with a great part of their body, whereof a little is left with the head and necke, which being hardned and dryed in the Sunne, seeme to be sobred. The Moores d made the Ilanders believe that they came out of Paradise, and therefore call them *Manucodiata*, or holy Birds, and haue them in religious account. They are very beautifull, with varietie of feathers and colours.

c *Ian. Neeck Nouig. in oriens part. 2. ind. Orient. de Bry.*

d *Pigafetta.*

Amboyna bringeth forth Orenges, Citrons, Lemmons, Cloues, Coquos, Bananas, Sugarcanes, and other fruits, being a very fertile Iland. The Inhabitants are simple, liue sparingly, and are attired like other the Moluccans. They spend much Rice, whereof they make loaues like Sugar-loues. They haue Gallies e after their manner, formed like Dragons, which they row very swiftly: they call them *Karkellen*. The Admirall came to the Hollanders with three of these, full of armed men, which rowed round about them, expressing manifold signes of ioy with Songs and Drummes; the slaues singing as they rowed. They had three Peeces of Ordnance in euery Galley, which they discharged, answered in that kinde by the Hollanders. But two of the Holland ships not finding sufficient store of Commodities for them all, went to Banda, passing by Poel Setto, an Iland not inhabited, bearing North-west from Banda fiue Dutch miles. They say it is inhabited of Deuils, and whosoeuer must passe by, maketh all possible haste to be gone, much affrighted eyther by selfe-fancies, or Deuillish Impostures.

e *Neuig. Holland. 1598. per B. Strobeum. De Bry, part. 5. Ind. Or.* hath the Pictures of these Gallies, &c.

Banda

Banda is foure and twentie dutch miles from Amboyna, and diuided into three parts, which comprehend fiue miles. The chiefe Citie is Nera. In this Iland are more store of Nutmegs then elsewhere in the Moluccas: for which cause they resort hither from Iaua, China, and Malacca. They professe Mahumetisme so deuoutly, that they neuer goe to their watches before they haue prayed in the Mesquit, whereinto they enter, being first washed (after the Mahumetane manner) but pray so lowd, that they may bee heard a great distance: their wordes of prayer are *Stefferolla, Stefferolla; Ascehad an la, Ascehad an la; Ylla, Ascehad an la; Ylla, yllolla, yllolla, Mahamed die Rosulla*: At the pronouncing of which last wordes, they stroke their hands ouer their face; in which gesture they thinke is much holinesse. Other prayers they mutter ouer very softly, with little mouing their lips. They stand vpon Mats, and lift vp their eyes twice or thrice to heauen: after which they kneele downe, bowing their head twice or thrice to the earth. Thus they doe often euery day, both at home and in the streets. They haue their publike meetings and bankets in their Temples very often, euery one bringing his part of the cheere: which sometimes they doe in the woods a hundred in a companie. At these times they consult of publike affaires.

They haue ciuill warres, Nera and Lantoor holding together against three other Townes. Two little Ilands, Pollerujn and Poelvunay take part with Nera, and when occasion requireth, come thither with their boates to consultation, where they are entertayned in publike feasts: the manner whereof is, that they sit downe in order; in stead of a table euery one hath a peece of a leafe of the Bonanas Tree: then is set before each a peece of Sagu bread, after that, a dish made of the leafe of another Tree, with a little sodden Rice and Flesh-pottage, which they hurle by handfuls into their mouthes, deuouring rather then eating the same. In the meanewhile the Gentlemen arise with their weapons, and exercise themselues in Martiall games, with Daunces. The quarrell betwixt these Ilanders grew about the cutting of certayne Trees, from whence it is come to cut and kill one another with cruell butcheries. They exercise Sea-fights in their Caracoræ, or Galeots, with great dexteritie, with great showts and cryes, the Gentlemen dancing on the hatches very actiuely. They are very bloudie and barbarous, yet bury the heads of their enemies with sweet odours. If any of their friends die, the women make a shrill and lowd crie to call him againe; which not effected, they prouide a great feast, whereunto all the kindred and friends are inuited. They burie them almost after our fashion, in a white sheets, the corps being carried on mens shoulders, the men first, and women after, following. A Censer is there left fuming all the day and night; and in the night they keepe a light burning in a little house, which they haue set ouer the graue. In the morning and euening all of all sorts come and say their prayers a long while together at the graue: and being asked wherefore? they said, that the dead should not arise againe. They haue a play with the Ball, exercised by many of them, not as amongst vs with the hand, but with their feete, tossing the same vp into the ayre, and taking it one of another with admirable sleight. Thus haue we related from Dutch testimonies.

Poleriue or Poolaroon and Polaway.

In Banda the Hollanders are reported to haue foure Factories, and three Castles. They are farre more feared of the Natiues then loued. They raysed a Fort neere to one of their Mesgids or Temples, to the prophanation (as they thought) of their holy ground, and of the Sepulchres of their dead, which for this cause they spared not. Hence did the Bandeses burne with indignation, which yet they concealed, and with goodly protestations desired the Dutch Generall *Verhauf*, which was there at that time with many ships, to come into their House, or place of Councell. This was compassed with Trees and Bushes, in the midst hauing a faire round place, where they sate vpon Mats, their chiefe Magistrate being the Sabandare. *Verhauf* promised to come, and when hee was by one of his Countrey-men, that had long continued there, admonished of the trecherie of this people. Hee yet scorned to feare, and with some three hundred followers at the appointed houre marched thither. The *Xeriff* (one of *Mahomets* kindred, wearing, as note hereof, greene in his Turbant) which had before inuited him to this assembly, with all lowly semblance meetes him, tells that in such armed troupes they shall not dare to speake their mindes. He presently commands his Souldiers to stay, tooke with him some two and fortie chiefe men, entred and sate downe with the Bandese Senate, crosse-legged; a Bandese and a Hollander together, and so through all the companie. At the watchword each Bandese stabbed his neighbour Dutch, and presently the Generals head was smitten off, and carried out to his Souldiers, now busie in playing, or altogether idle, their peeces lying on the ground: and in this case they were suddenly assaulted by an ambush, hidden there in the Thickets, and were in great danger to haue lost their Fort. The English in their ships might see the fight. In another place the Hollanders turned one of their Mesgids into a Fort. The offended Bandeses offered their slaues liberrie to dispossesse them: they refused, till a Iauan Merchant (then there with his Iunke) offered his ten slaues aboard his Iunke to giue the onset. Thus they went about three hundred, each man with a fire-

Ex relatione Cap. Seruqui fuit Bantame per multos annos dum hæc geterentur.

fire-brand in one hand, and a creese in the other, aduentured on the shot, and soone fired the Fort ouer their heads, slaying euery man.

N. Bangam.

These Ilands or Banda are subiect (as some, but vntruely, report) to the King of Botone, with whom one M. *Richard Welding*, an Englishman, was in great fauour. The king had a sonne which was mad, whom a certaine Italian vndertaking to cure, was sent to attend him in the other World, his patient dying vnder his hand. M. *Welding* had serued him in his warres, and gotten victories for him, and honour for himselfe and his Nation.

Martin Pring.

It is reported, that lately neere to the Hollanders Fort in * Banda, there issued a great fire out of the Sea, which continued a good space, and was likely to haue fired the Hollanders Fort, the Natiues wayting for such oportunity, but by shifting of the winde it escaped. The Sea in that fired place was many many fathomes deeper then it had beene before. But our English haue since this was published, enioyed not only commerce but Forts and Dominion by voluntary subiection of the Bandanese themselues; the cause of great warres twixt the Dutch and ours: the particulars whereof you may see at large in my Booke of Voyages.

The Hollanders and the Spaniards are in continuall warres for these Molucca Ilands. They droue out the Portugals by force about ten yeeres since, but the Spaniards haue succeeded in the quarrell, which yet is managed on both parts, so as the Natiues haue the worst. For they both weare out the Country people in warres, which betweene Tidore and Ternate are ancient (by these bellowes kindled into continuall flames) that there are scarsly sufficient to gather their Cloues. Machian yeelds the most store: in the third yeere (which is most plentifull) about 1800. Bahars; on other yeeres almost eleuen hundred.

The Spaniards haue a Castle on Ternate, another on Tidore, in Gelolo also and Battachina two others, but the Hollanders haue three in Ternate, and as many in Tidore, one in Amboyna, one in Batrachina, in Batchame one, in Botoone two Bulwarkes, in Mechame three, in Mourter one; besides their other Indian Forts, and all their Factories. They haue their wiues also to helpe man (if that name may bee giuen to women) their Fortresses in some places. Their Sea-force and Land-vices being added, make them dreadfull to the Spaniard, hatefull to the Indians, and for their insolence, distastefull to the * English, vnder pretence of I know not what conquest, stiffely denying, terribly threatning, disgracefully deprauing the English, vnder whose name they haue yet borne themselues in many places of the Indies, and with mayne force and violence binding the Natiues to their owne trade, and that at lower prices and harder conditions; which makes them loue the more liberall, though imperious and proud spirit of the Spaniard, more then that accounted sordid dealing of the Flemming, in the Moluccas and Banda Ilands.

Before we leaue these Moluccas and their dependant Ilands, we may conclude with a Tragedy, wherein blind superstition, and beastly cruelty, were principall Actors. When *Menesius* [k] was Gouernour of the Portugall Fort in Ternate, he kept a Sow, which some of the deuouter Mahometans killed. He getting the chiefe Priest (accessorie to the fact) into the Castle, at his deliuerie made his face bee greased with Bacon by the Taylor, which caused the people to offer abuse to some Portugals. *Menesius* in reuenge cut off the hands of two of them, the third had his hands bound behinde him, and was bayted with two dogges on the Sea-shore: which his implacable enemies transported him into like dogged humour (though he were not with *Hecuba* transformed into the shape:) insomuch, that fastening with his teeth on one of their eares, he held fast, till his strength fayling, hee sunke into the Sea with the Dogge, and was drowned.

In Celebes they [l] eate mans flesh. [m] The King of the Moluccas was wont to send condemned persons to Celebes, to be deuoured. *Nicolaus Nunnes* writeth, That Celebes is very large, and containeth many and great Ilands: the Soyle is exceeding fertile; the Inhabitants comely and tall, rather ruddie then blacke. They haue many Kings; which is cause of many contentions. Three of them were conuerted. *Peter Mascœrenis*, in a Letter dated a thousand fiue hundred sixtie nine, speaketh of a King of Sion in Celebes, which was baptized, and his subiects therefore rebelled against him, one Towne onely except: and that hee and the King of Sanguim did take vp a Crosse on their owne shoulders, which the chiefe Men had before hewen of a faire piece of wood, and helped to erect the same; and then, with the multitude kneeling downe, worshipped it.

Southward of Celebes, is situated a little Iland, where Sir *Francis Drake* graued his ship. This Iland is throughly growne with Woods; in which, euery night certayne fierie Flyes made such a light, as if euery Twigge or Tree had beene a burning Candle. Here they found Bates as bigge as Hennes, and plenty of Cray-fishes so great, that one vvould suffice foure men to their dinner: they digged themselues holes in the earth, like Conies. Ethnikes. They enuenome their Arrow-heads (which are made of Fish-bones) with an incurable

* The more full relation of this Earthquake (so it was) see in my Voyages, l. 5. *tom.* 1. together with a description of these Ilands in Cap. *Fitzherberts* Letter. There also may you see diuers Letters of the Kings of Tidore, Ternate, Bantam, to His Maiestie, and three Surrenders to him of diuers of those Ilands: and the wrongs which the Banda burninglie occasioned in the Indies betwixt the *Dutch* and Our Merchants, as their owne and ours haue related the same.

* Capt. *Saris. Will. Keeling. W. Floris. W. Bangam. R. Cock. Martin Pring. M. Ball. &c.*

k *Arn. hist. Iud. Orient. cap. 46.*

l *Od. Barbosa.*

m *Hak. tom. 3.*

incurable poyson. There are Priests, which conforme, or rather deforme themselues, to the habit of women; nourishing their haire on the head, and plucking it out of the face. They gild their teeth, and vse broken, wanton, effeminate gestures. They are called *Beces*, and marrie one another. For them to lye with a woman, is capitall, and punished with burning in pitch. These Men-Monsters, Women-Deuils, much hindered the Portugals Conuersions.

§. III.

Of the Ianas, and other adioyning Ilands.

NOt farre from hence is Iaua: of which name, *M. Paulus* and *Nich. de Conti*, reckon two great Ilands; ascribing to the one, two thousand; and to the other, three thousand miles in circuit. The lesse is neere to the firme Land of the South Continent, where Beach, and some other Prouinces, are named by *Paulus* and *Vertomannus*, of Heathenish superstitions. The lesse Iaua had, in the dayes of *M. Paulus*, eight Kingdomes; insixe of which, himselfe had beene, which he nameth Felech; wherein the rurall Inhabitants were Idolaters; the Citizens, Moores: the Idoll-worshippers eate any flesh whatsoeuer, of man, or beast, and obserue all day what they first see in the morning. *Basma* [a] the second, acknowledged the Great *Chaan* soueraignrie, but payed him no tribute. Here were certayne Vnicornes, headed like Swine, footed like an Elephant, without horne on their foreheads (with which they doe not hurt any, but to that end vse certayne prickles that grow on their tongues:) They delight also in the myre, like Swine. Here are little Apes, much resembling men in their countenance, which they vsed to preserue with certayne Spices, hauing flayed off their skins, and left the haire growing in those parts, where Nature causeth men to be hayrie, and sell them to Merchants, to be carried ouer the World as the bodies of little men; happily the otiely true Pygmies the world yeeldeth. In Samara, the third of those Kingdomes, none of the North-starres can bee seene. They are Man-eaters, and Idolaters; but not so brutish, as in Dragorian, the next Kingdome: where, if a man bee sicke, his kinsmen consule with their Sorcerers, who enquire of the Deuill, Whether he shall escape, or no? And if the answere bee Negatiue, they send for certayne men, specially designed to that villanous mysterie, which strangle him; and then they dresse and eate him amongst the kindred, euen to the very marrow in his bones. For (say they) if any flesh should remayne, it would putrifie, and wormes would breede thereof, which after (for want of sustenance) would perish, whereby the soule of the dead partie would be much tormented. The bones they burie safely, that no beast should touch them; such dread haue they of beasts and cruelties, in a more then beastly cruelties, and such a care to obserue humanitie and pietie in a most impious inhumanitie. Lambri, the next Kingdome, hath in it some men with tayles, like Dogs, a spanlong. The last is Pansur, where they live of bread made of pith of Trees, the wood whereof is heauie, and sinketh to the bottome, if it be put in water, like Iron: and therefore they make Lances thereof, able to pierce Armour; for it is three fingers thicke betwixt the hollow and the barke.

To let passe Pentan, Sondar, and other Idolatrous Ilands, and come to Iaua maior! This Country is very rich; but in times past, of most abominable customs. *Nic. Conti* saith, That they feede on Cats, Rats, and other vermine, and were most vile murtherers; not sticking to make triall of the good cutting or thrust of their blades on the next body they meet with, and that without punishment, yea (if the blow or thrust were deliuered with fine force) with much commendation. *Vertomannus* [b] affirmeth of them, That some obserue Idols, some the Sunne or Moone, others an Oxe, and many the first thing they meete in the morning, and some worship the Deuill. When men were old, and not able longer to worke, their children or parents carryed them into the Market, and sold them to others, which did eate them. And the like they vsed with the younger sort in any desperate sicknesse, preuenting Nature with a violent death; and esteeming their bellies fitter Sepulchres then the earth; accounting others fooles, which suffered the wormes to deuoure so pleasant foode. For feare of these Man-eaters, they stayed not long there. It seemeth, that they haue much left their brutish customes; since, wonne to more ciuilitie, by trading of the Moores and Christians, especially such as are of the Arabian law: although, as our owne Countrey-men report, which haue there liued, a mans life is valued to the murtherer at a small summe of money. They are a prowd Nation: [c] If a man should come in, where they are set on the ground after their manner, and should sit on a Chiest, or high thing, it were as much as his life were worth. The [d] King of Bantam breaking promise with the Hollanders; when they obiected it, *My tongue* (he answered) *is not of Bone.*

When

[a] *M. Paulus, lib. 3.* These seeme Rhinoceroties.

N. di Conti.

[b] *Vert. lib. 6.*

[c] *Bot.*

[d] *Bot. Tab.*

When they are sicke, [e] they vow vnto God, vpon their recouerie, a more honourable death, which they performe after their recouerie, by the murtherous hand of some other vpon them. They are [f] great Inchanters, and obserue houres, and fitting minutes and moments of time, for composing their Blades and Armour, of which they are conceited, that being tempered with their charmes and superstitions, with the least drawing bloud of another, they will kill him; themselues, in their inchanted Armour, safe from others blowes. They abide in expectation of these martiall minutes, for their conjured Armours, sometimes eight or ten yeeres, before they can finish them. The Iauans [g] say, That their Ancestors came from China, which Countrey they forsooke, because of the tyrannie wherewith they were oppressed, and in great multitudes peopled this Iland. They weare their haire and their nailes long. They are dutifull to their superiors. The great men stirre not forth, without a great troupe of followers. They are seldome idle, much busied about their scabberds and weapons, which they vse to poyson. They are not without their weapons night or day, which they will not suffer another man to touch. They are so eager of reuenge, that they will presse on their aduersaries weapon, drawing it thorow their owne body, to kill him that hath wounded them. They haue Mahumetane Temples, where they doe their deuotions with great silence. They acknowledge IESVS, *Mahomet*, *Dauid*, and *Moses*, foure Prophets. They obserue their houres, and two Fasts, or Lents. The great mens wiues neuer goe out of the doores to be seene. Their Cities are Ballambua, and Panarucan (a little from whence is a burning Hill, which first brake forth 1586, and oppressed infinite numbers of men, and cast great stones into the citie, for three dayes space making one continued night of darknesse.) Passrua, the King whereof married the King of Ballambuas daughter, and the second night after hee had lyen with her, slue her and her attendants, because shee would not turne Mahumetane. Ioartam, Surrabaia, Tuban, Matara, are also royall Cities, as are Daunia, Taggal, Charabaon, and many others. But bantam is of most trafick, frequented by Portugals, Dutch, and English, in which euery day are three seuerall markets. Here Merchants, when they come, may buy a woman for their filthy and worldly businesse (you may adde the Deuill too, to make vp the number) which at their departure they sell againe. Publike affaires are treated & handled by night, at which time the Counsellors of State meet, and ascend some tree, or the roofe of the house, viewing the Heauens till the Moone arise; and then goe into the Senate-house.

The women in Iaua act Comedies. They punish Adulterie with death, the woman chusing her nearest friend or allie to stabbe her. The Southerne parts of Iaua are little knowne, being full of Lions and wilde Beasts. It hath been fatall to many English: but much through their owne distempers [h] with Racke (a wine made of Rice) and their contagious women. *John Milward* [i] iournall relateth of their voyage against their wills by the South of Iaua, and of some Ilands, Bayes, and other obseruations in those parts.

Not farre from Bantam, [k] liue certaine of the Passarrans, which being there oppressed by their King, came hither, and here obtayned a piece of ground, to build them a Citie, which is called Sora. They haue a King or Gouernour, and liue quietly, following Husbandrie: they eate nothing that hath life (a common Superstition of the Indians) weare white Clothes of Paper, made of the leaues of Trees, and neuer marrie (herein resembling the Iewish Essees) yet neuer want succeeding generation: Many of the Iauans daily consecrating themselues vnto their Societie. The Chinois in Iaua doe sometimes bring vp Crocodiles, and eate them.

Bantam is the chiefe Factorie of the English, although they haue others. The King of Bantam hath the Title, but the Pangram exercisesth the Power, and hath shut vp the King, where none, but at his pleasure, may come at him. The situation of this Citie is low and vnwholsome: it is often subject to fire: in diuers of which fires, our English haue by Gods blessing well escaped. Not farre from hence at the Ile Pulo Penione, the *Trades Increase* perished in the Careening, most of the Company, both of English and others, which wrought on Her, dying of an infectious sicknesse: which a Chinoise offered by sacrifice to the Diuell to cleere. *Sir Henry Middleton* heere dyed of this sicknesse, and the Ship too, wanting that Head and necessarie Hands to sustaine her: bequeathing that goodly Fabricke to the two Elements, Fire, and Water, which not agreeing in the Diuiding, whiles each laboured to haue all, the Ship was lost in the quarrell. A great losse of our greatest Merchants-ship that England euer had, but not till after great exploits: and not comparable to diuers losses of the Portugals or Hollanders, [k] at the Iland Mauricius and other places, both there, and at their owne doores.

The King of Tuban [l] is the richest King, and mightiest in all Iaua. They haue many Horses, and make great account of them, decking them with gallant furniture of gold, siluer, and the counterfeits of Dragons and Diuels on their Saddles: they ride and manage their Horses with great skill. Iambee is another Passaman for vnwholsomnesse.

Madura is North from Iaua, a fertile Iland of Rice, the soyle whereof is so moyst and watersh,

e *Gio. Bot. Ben.*

f *Od. Barbosa.*

g *Bar. dec. 2. l. 9 cap. 4* Of he Hollanders nauigations in these parts, see *Hortius Arthus*, the Dutch History of *Graue Maurice.*

h Cap. *Saris.*

i *Ieasac Pontan. Hist. Amsteldam. Nau. Batau. 1594. 95. De Bry, part. 3 633.*

k *1605. General Batts*, the Dutch General cast away, with 10 ships, and their rich lading; the third, some goods saued, but after losse of 135 men, found driuing in the Sea, besides many other losses.

Mar. Prinz. Th. Cambers. epist. 1.

l *Bilab. Stobeus.*

wateristh, that their Buffals and men goe almost knee-deepe, when they sow it. Arosbay is the chiefe Citie. They are theeuish, and giuen to spoyle, and captiued many of the Hollanders, which went thither on shoare, to buy commodities; which they were forced to redeeme at a deare rate. In these parts, are Bateas as bigge as Hennes, which the people rost and eate.

The Iland Baly is East from Iaua, very populous, containing (as is thought) sixe hundred thousand Inhabitants; they are Ethnikes, and worship that which they first meet in the morning. Heere and in Pulo Rossa the Women are burned with their dead Husbands: one man is said k to haue had fiftie of his Wiues (for they marrie as many as they please) burned with him, whiles the Hollanders were there. The Iland hath many Bulls, Buffals, Goates, Swine, Horse, with many kindes of Fowles, Fruits, and Metals: The chiefe men are carried by slaues on Seats borne on their shoulders, or else in Chariots drawne with Buffals.

k *Cor. Houtman. Cor. Gerardi.*

In the Voyage of Master *Thomas Candish* l is mention made of a Iauan King, called *Raia Ballomboam*, very aged, m which had a hundred Wiues, and his Sonne had fiftie. Their custome is, that when the King dyeth, they burne the body, and preserue the ashes. Fiue dayes after, the wiues of the dead King goe to a place appointed, and there shee which was dearest in his fauour, throweth a ball from her; and where that ball resteth, thither they goe all, and turning their faces Eastward, stabbe themselues with a Crise or Dagger to the heart. They are very resolute people, and dread no attempt which the King shall enioyne them, bee it neuer so dangerous. All the race of this King *Ballomboam* was rased and vtterly destroyed by the Pastaruan, after a long siege: which warre was begun in the blood of the King of *Ballamboams* Daughter, whom he slew, as is before said, and added this *Drunkennesse vnto his thirst.*

l *Tho. Candish. Hak. tom. 3. pag. 812.*

m *Houtman* saith he was aliue 1596. supposed 160. yeeres old.

Iortam, or n Ioartam, containeth about a thousand Housholds. The Inhabitants are Ethnikes, and haue their Temples in Woods; to which they resort, to say and doe their Holiest atonement, before their deformed Diuell-formed *Pagodes*. In this Citie dwelleth the chiefe Pope, or heigh Priest, of that Superstition, whose authoritie is great in all those parts. Hee was a hundred and twentie yeeres old, and had many Wiues which nourished him with their milke, being not able to take other sustenance: a deadly enemie to the Christians, whom the King did yet with some priuiledges fauour.

n *Nauig. Oliuer. Noort.*

Edmund Scot writeth, That they vse in Bantam martiall Law; Adulterie is death. The free Iauan must to euery wife keepe ten women-slaues, which are their Concubines also; some keepe foreie: but they may haue but three Wiues. They are proud, and (by this multitude of Slaues) poore; cruell, and cowardly. Their Crisses or Daggers are two foot long, waued Indenture-fashion; and poysoned, that few escape. The vulgar sort haue little Religion: but many pray to the Diuell (whom for that end they haue painted in their houses, and set Wax Candles, and sing before them) for feare of hurt; which they doe not to God, because of his goodnesse. The most of their worke, is to carue sticks for their Crisse-handles. They are Coizeners, Theeues, Idle, Gluttons; take Betele, Opium, Tobacco. They haue diuers Sects; yet most are in manner Atheists. Many Chinois dwell there: Some thinke, that if they bee good; they shall be borne a gaine after death to great riches; and that wicked men shall bee turned into Toades, or other vgly beasts. Euery New Moone they burne Sacrifices, and sing ouer them certayne Prayers, in the meane while tinging a Bell, which at the end of euery Prayer they ring out; which is also their Passing-Bell Ceremonie, when any are readie to die. They furnish their Altars with Goats, Hennes, Duckes, sometimes raw, and sometimes ready dressed; all which they eate: onely certaine papers, painted and cut out in curious workes, they burne. Many of them haue some skill in Astronomie. They keepe no Sabbath; but what day they begin any great worke, they after keepe holy. They haue South-sayers, which sometimes runne vp and downe the streets like mad-men, with swords in their hands, tearing their hayre, and throwing themselues against the ground. Chinois cut not their haire, for then they may not returne to China. They buy Slaues, and get Children of them, which they carrie with them to China, but sell the Mother. The * Moores, if they be Great men, haue Moschees in their owne houses: they haue one great one in the Citie. Foreiners (whereof are many from many places) inhabite the Suburbes. They buy by night distilled Wines of the Chinois, and drinke it secretly, being forbidden it by their Mahumetane Law. It was about the yeere 1560. that this people became of that Sect. The men and women passe their time day and night in much sloath, dalliance, and chewing Betele, *Epiuors de grege porci.*

* *Moyres.*

CHAP. XVII.

Of Samatra, and Zeilan.

SAmatra is esteemed by some [a] the greatest of the Easterne Ilands, stretching it selfe almost seuen hundred miles in length, in breadth aboue two hundred. The Ayre is not very wholsome, by reason of the situation vnder the Line, and the multitude of Lakes and Riuers, whereout the Sun drinketh more then hee can well concoct, and therefore (as it were) belcheth out heere continually such crude and vndigested vapours. Their food is Millet, Rice, Sagu, and Fruits. Their riches are Pepper, Ginger, Cassia, Silke, Benioyn, Gold, Tinne, Iron, &c. The Kingdome of Campa yeeldeth Trees, whose pith or marrow is *Aloe*, which is prized in India at the like weight (some say) of Gold; the Barke is called *Aquila*. In the Sea-coast they are Moores in Religion, and so haue been about these last two hundred yeeres: vp, within Land, they are Pagans; and in many places, as in the Kingdomes of Andragiri and Aru, they are Man-eaters. They were diuided, before the Portugals entred India, into nine and twentie Kingdomes, whereof the chiefe was Pedir, after that Pacem, and now Acem. For *Abram*, sometime a Slaue, since King of Acem, hath conquered almost all the North part of the Iland, and with helpe from the Turke and the Arabians, distresseth sometimes the affaires of Malacca. This King [b] gaue in marriage with his Daughter, to the King of Ior, a Peece of Ordnance, such as for greatnesse, length, and workmanship, can hardly bee matched in all Christendome. Heere is a [c] Hill, called *Balaluanno*, which continually burneth; and a Fountaine (as is reported) which runneth pure Balsome. Some [d] thinke, that this was *Chersonesus Aurea* of the Ancients.

Galuanno [e] writeth, That the *Bacas*, or Man-eaters in the Mountaines of Samatra, gild their teeth, and esteeme the flesh of blacke people sweeter then of the white. The flesh of their Kine, Buffes, and Hennes, is as blacke as Inke. They say, that there are certaine people there called *Daraqui Dara*, which haue tayles like to Sheepe. Heere is said also to grow a Tree, the juyce whereof is strong poyson, and if it touch the blood of a man, killeth him, but if a man drinke of it, it is a soueraigne Antidote. As for those tayled-people (a slander by *Beckets* Legend [f] reported of some *Kentish*-men, inurious to that angrie Saint, and after applyed to our whole Nation; many indeed esteeming the English to bee tayled,) *Galuanno* affirmeth, That the King of Tidore told him, that in the Ilands of Batto-China there were some which had tayles, hauing also a thing like vnto a dugge betweene their coddes, out of the which there came Milke.

Nicolo da Conti [g] saith, in his time the Samatrans were all Gentiles, and the Man-eaters amongst them vsed the skuls of their eaten enemies in stead of money, exchanging the same for their necessaries; and he was accounted the richest man, which had most of those skuls in his house. In *Vertomannus* time they had money in Pedir, marked on the one side with a Dragon, and on the other with a Chariot, drawne with Elephants. Their [h] Religion (hee saith) is the same with those of Tarnassari, burning their Wiues in like manner. The inhabitants are cunning Artificers, Merchants, and Saylers: their Ships haue at each end a Prow, which with marueilous agilitie they can dispose forwards, or backwards, making vse of the same, according to the diuersitie of Wind and Channell, which there are very changeable.

In Acem [i] are Mesquies of Timber and Reed, which Vessels of water at the entrie, for them to wash, according to the Arabian custome. The King coines little abroad, nor may any goe to him, except he be sent for by an Officer with a gilded staffe or dagger. To his Palace they passe through seuen Gates one after another, guarded with Women expert at their Weapon, and vsing both Peeces and Swords. He hath none other Guard for his person. In saluting the King, they lay their hands folded on their head, which is in other salutations they lay on the forhead.

Sultan *Aladin* the King, was (as *Cornelius Houtman* reporteth) first a Fisher-man, and growing famous for his exploits by Sea, was preferred to the marriage of the Kings kinswoman, and the Office of Admirall. Afterwards, he became Protector of the young King (the former being dead) but proued his murtherer, and sent a thousand of the chiefe men to follow him in selfe. He was supposed an hundred yeeres [k] old; so old, that his eldest Son (whom he kept as he was too old for Gouernment, & warred on his Brother. Our English first [m] had Trade here in the last times of Queene *Elizabeth*, whose name was then famous in those parts for her Exploits against the Spaniards. The Queenes Letters, directed to this King, were receiued with great State. First, he entertained the Messenger with a Banquet, gaue him a Robe, and a

piece

a G. Bot. Ben. Mass. lib 4. G. Arthus Hist. Indiae Orient. cap. 40.

b Linschot.

c P. Bertius Tab.

d Orat. Mass. Hist.

e Discoueries of the world.

f See Lambarts perambul.

g Nic. da Conti.

h L. Vert.

i Herman de Bree. Arthus pag. 559.

k In 1598.

l 1604. Sir Ed. Michelborn.

m Sir James Lancester.

piece of Calico wrought with gold, and offered Pledges for the Generals safetie; for whom he sent six Elephants, with Drums, Trumpets, Streamers, and much people. The greatest Elephant, being thirteene or foureteene foot high, and a small Castle, like a Coach, couered with Veluet, on his backe: in the midst whereof, was a great Bason of Gold, with a rich Couering of Silke, wherein the Letter was put. The Generall was mounted on another Elephant, but was stand at the Court-gate, till the Kings pleasure and license was againe sent. The King made him a Feast; the dishes were of Gold or Tambayck (which is mixed of Gold and Brasse) their Wine is of Rice, in which the King dranke to the Generall out of his Gallery (a fathom higher then where they sate) it is as strong as *Aqua vitæ*. After the Feast, the Kings Damosels made Musick and Dances: which was a great fauour; for they are not commonly seene. The chiefe Prelate was appointed one of the Commissioners for Articles of League, which were concluded. They tooke a Prize of 9. hundred Tuns, and were like to be taken themselues by a strange Spout (as they call it) which fell not farre from them (as in one whole drop, enough to haue sunke any ship; and sometimes continueth a quarter of an houre together, as powred out of a vessell; the Sea boyling therewith n.) The King sent a Letter and a Present to the Queene; and at their departure asked, if they had the Psalmes of *David*, and caused them to sing one; which, he and his Nobles seconded with a Psalme (as he said) for their prosperitie.

n The like hapned there *Mar* 5. 1613. *Pat. Copland.*

The Court * hath three Guards, betweene each of which is a great Greene. The King may see all that come, himselfe vnseene. The walls of his house are hanged sometimes with Cloth of Gold, Veluet, or Damaske. He sits crosse-legged, with foure Crisses, two before, and two behind, very rich. Fortie Women attend him with Fannes, Cloathes, Singing, and other Offices. Hee eateth and drinketh all day, or chewing Beetele and Arecca, talking of Venerie and Cock-fighting. When they would doe reuerence (which we vse to performe by vncouering the head) they put off their hose and shooes, holding the palmes of the hands together, and lifting them aboue the head, with bending of the body, and saying, *Doulat*. They vse not to put malefactors to death, but cut off their hands and feet, and banish them to the Ile Polowey: and if they execute them, it is by Elephants teazing them, or thrusting a stake in their fundament. This King had an hundred Gallies; of which, some will carry foure hundred men: open, without decke; their Oares like shouels, foure foot long, rowed with one hand. A woman was Admirall; he not daring, through selfe-guiltinesse, to trust men.

o Cor. Houtman.

They had many differing Dignities and Degrees for their Clergie; vsed to pray with Beads; had Schooles: they had one Prophet, disguised in his apparell, whom they much honoured. They bury their Dead in the fields, with their head towards Mecca, laying a free stone at the head, and another at the feet, with signification what the deceased had beene. The Kings haue them, not of Stone, but of Gold: and this King had two made for him, each weighing a thousand pound, enriched with Stones. They haue a tradition, that Achen is Ophir. Once euery yeere they obserue a solemne ceremonie of going to Church, to see if *Mahomet* bee come. Then are there fortie Elephants richly couered, and on them the Nobles; one, spare for the Prophet, and another whereon the King rideth, with much pompe. When they haue looked into the Moskee, and not seene their *Mahomet*, the King returns on that spare Elephant. Pider, Manaucabo, and Aru, are tributaries to Achen. *Anno*, 1613. Aprill twelfth, Captayne *Best* anchored in the Rode of Achin, and was kindly entertayned. The King sent an Arancaia riding in a Tent on an Elephants backe, attended with two or three of the Kings boyes (for Hee is attended by Boyes abroad, and by Women within) to receiue His Majesties Letter, which was thus carried in a Bason of Gold, the Generall following with fortie or fiftie Men. After this Letter and a Present deliuered, the King told them they should see some of his pastime; which was first Cock-fighting, next that, the fight of Rammes, then his tame Elephants, after them his Bussloes, (all as they succeeded, exceeding the former in fiercenesse,) lastly the Antilopes which the Generall had giuen Him. All this while did the King take Tobacco in a Siluer pipe, giuen him by his Women standing in a close roome behind. This done, Supper was serued in by young Boyes of foureteene or fifteene yeeres old, in Swasse, which is a mettall halfe Copper, halfe Gold: and continued from seuen of the clocke till almost twelue, in which were serued in foure hundred Dishes, besides Hot drinkes. The next day the King sent the Generall an Elephant to ride on (otherwise none might doe it) and appointed One of his chiefe Arancaias al way to attend Him: free access was likewise granted at all times, which none else may doe without the Kings Creese or Dagger (there vsed as a Scepter) and the Articles agreed on betweene Sir *James Lancaster* and his predecessour, were promited to be ratified. On the second of *May*, all Strangers were inuited to a Feast kept at the Spring of the Riuer, in the water, sixe miles from the Citie. Two Elephants were sent for the Generall. The dishes were serued in by Boyes, swimming with one hand, and holding the Dish or strong drinke in the other. Of all these drinkes they must taste, and then throw the rest into the water. This continued from one till fiue; they had fiue

John Davys.

Patrick Copland, M. Best.

fiue hundred dishes well dressed. Generall *Beft* weary of sitting so long in the water, had leaue to depart an houre before the Rest: the Captayne of the Dutch houle tooke his bane either with hote drinkes, or cold sitting so long in the water, and soone after dyed. The King gaue the Generall a New Title, calling, and charging his Nobles to call him, *Aranuaia Pale*, that is, the honourable white man. *Iuno*, the second, They were entertayned with a fight of foure Elephants, and a wilde Tygre, which was fastened to a stake, and yet so fastened on their Trunks and legs, that he made them roare and bleed extreamly. Sometimes wild Elephants fight before Him, which would soone kill each other, but that tame ones are fastned to them, which draw them backe, fourescore or a hundred men helping. And for their taming, they vse to set one wilde, betweene two tame.

This King sent to his Majestie a Present, and a Letter in forme for painting and writing very curious, the words thus interpreted. PEDRVCKA SIRIE SVLTAN; *King of Kings, Renowmed for his warres, and sole King of Samatra, and a King more feared then his Predecessours: feared in his Kingdome, and honoured of all bordering Nations; in whom there is the true image of a King, in whom raiques the true methode of Gouernment, formed as it were of the most pure mettall, and adorned with the most fine colours; whose seate is high and most compleat, like to a Chrystall Riuer, pure and cleere as the choiest Glasse; from whom floweth the pure streame of Bounty and Iustice; whose presence is as the finest Gold: King of Priaman, and of the * Mountayne of Gold, viz.* Solida; *and Lord of nine sorts of Stones; King of two Sumbroroes of beaten Gold; hauing for his Seates Mats of Gold: His furniture for his Horses, and Armour for Himselfe being likewise of pure gold; His Elephant with teeth of Gold, and all prouisions thereunto belonging; His Lances halfe Gold, halfe Siluer; his small Shot of the same; a Saddle also for another Elephant of the same mettall; a Tent of Siluer; and all his Scaler, halfe Gold, halfe Siluer; his Sepulchre of Gold: (whereas his Predecessours had all these halfe Gold, halfe Siluer) his seruices compleat of Gold and Siluer. A King vnder whom there are many Kings, hauing taken* Othe *King of* Aurow; *all the Country of Priaman, Tecoo, Baroose, being subdued by Him, in now vnder His command; Seuentie Elephants and much prouisions carried by Sea to make his warres in Aurow, where God gaue Mee more Victorie then Any of my Predecessours.* This great King *sendeth this Letter of Salutation to* IAMES KING OF GREAT BRITAINE, viz. *England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, to signifie the great content Hee hath receiued by* His Highnesse *Letter delivered by the hands of Arancaia Pale,* Thomas Best *His Maiesties Embassadour: at the receipt whereof, His Eyes were surprised with a celestiall brightnesse, and his Spirits rauished with a Diuine Ioy; the opening thereof rendred a sauour more fragrant then the most odoriferous Flowers, or sweetest perfumes in the world. For which cause, I the Great King of Samatra doe professe my selfe to bee of One heart, one minde, and of one flesh, with the most Potent Prince* IAMES *King of England, and doe earnestly desire that the League begunne, may bee continued to all Posterities. And herein I take my greatest Felicitie, there being nothing in the world more pleasant or ioyfull to Mee. And for ateftimony of my desire, that the League and Amitie begunne, may bee continued betwixt Vs, I haue returned this Letter vnto your Maiestie, making also My Prayers vnto the Great God for the Continuance of the same. And it shall bee My greatest Honour to receiue Memoriall from so Great a Potentate, and so Remote a Nation. And for a pledge of My Loue and Honour, and Continuance of our League, I send your Maiestie a Creese wrought with Gold, the hilt thereof being beaten Gold, with a ring of Stones, an Assagaya of Swaffe, halfe Copper, halfe Gold, eight Persian dishes small and great of Camphire, one piece of Sowering Ruffa, three pieces of Calico Lawnes: Which your Maiestie accepting as from a Brother, I shall rest satisfied and much honoured. And so with my prayers to the Great God, Creator of Heauen and Earth, for your Maiesties long life, with Victorie ouer your Enemies, and Prosperitie in your Land. Given at Our Palace at* Achi *the 1022. yeere of* Mahomet *by the Account of the Moores.*

This Letter for the strange dwelling forme, and because it contayneth a pettie Inuentorie of the Kings Wealth, and some knowledge of the adjoyning Kingdomes, I haue thus *verbatim* expressed. This King of *Achi* is a proper gallant man of warre (they are Master *Coplands* words) of * two and thirtie yeeres, of middle size, full of Spirit, strong by Sea and Land; his Country populous, his Elephants many, whereof wee haue seene a hundred and threescore, or a hundred and fourescore at a time. His Gallies and Frigats carry in them very good Brasse Ordnance, Demicanon, Culuerin, Sakar, Minion, and the like. His building is stately and spacious, but not strong: his Court at *Achi* pleasant; hauing a goodly branch of a maine Riuer running about and thorow his Palace, which branch Hee cut and brought fixe or eight miles off in twentie dayes whiles wee continued at *Achi*. Samatra is very Mountainous, the people courteous. Without the Kings *Chop* no Stranger may haue ingresse or egresse. Hee desired the Generall to commend Him to the King of England, and to intreat Him to send him two white Women. For (said Hee) if I beget one of them with Child and it proue a Sonne, I will make Him King of Priaman, Passaman, and of the Coast from whence

* This reason is alledged why Sumatra should be Aurea Chersonesus and Ophyr: and not the Continent of Malacca which hath no Gold *vid disc. del R. di Mal. Tej. Pel. p. 3.* Of this Ophyrian Dispute see *Goerius* his Treatise, *fo. Vossius Ortel. Pined. &c.* Out Ophyrian discourse in the first booke of Voyages.

1

2

3

4

5

6

* *Anno* 1613.

whence you fetch your Pepper, so that you shall not need to come any more to Mee, but to your owne English King for these Commodities.

He is cruell: he plucked out one of the eyes of a Nobleman for looking on one of the Kings women washing in a Riuer: Another wearing a Shash beyond his degree, had his head cut round so farre, as that too large: some he boyles in scalding Oyle, some are sawne in pieces, spitted aliue, their legs cut off, or otherwise tortured. It is reported that in his Predecessors time, when Malacca was besieged, the Portugals putting on shore here, by the ozie and myry landing, were made an easier prey to an Ambush of Achiners in the Reeds, which tooke many of them, who by the Kings command, had all of them, all their Priuities presently cut away. To returne to M. *Copland*, on the third of Iuly 1613. the Kings Armada of a hundred and twenty, or two hundred Frigats and Gallies arriued from Ioar, which Kingdome *Laxamar* the Generall had then subdued to this King, with the Kingdome of Siak, bringing both those Kings with two of their brethren, and some Dutchmen prisoners to Achi. Captaine Saris.

At Tecoo they stayd eleuen weekes, and bought a hundred and twenty tunnes of Pepper, burying fiue and twenty men, which got their death at Passanan (for Tecoo is a healthfull place) where and in the Country about, the Pepper most groweth.

In Nicobar they are base people, and till not the ground. Sumbrero is ten or twelue leagues Northward from this Iland, where that plant growes, not a plant but a Worme, but a stone: before * obserued. The people are tawny and naked: they paint their faces. Their Priests in their Sacrifices weare apparell so close, as if it were sowed to them; and hornes on their heads turning backe, with a taile also hanging downe behind: for so the Deuill (they say) appeareth to them. Their faces and haire are deformed with greene, blacke and yellow colours.

* Sup. c. 13. §. 3.

HONDIVS *his Map of* Zeilan.

✠ II.
Of Zeilan.

ZEilan (which some call Seylon, other Ceilan) is by *Barrius* auerred to be *Taprobana*: sometimes (according to *Marcus Paulus* [a] his reports) thought to haue comprehended 3600. miles in circuit, since much impayred by his ouer-mighty neighbour the Sea, which hath now left not aboue 250. miles in length, and an 140. miles of breadth vnto it. [b] The Indians call it *Tenarisim*, or the delicious land, and some are of opinion, that this was Paradise. (So iust are the iudgements of the *Highest*, that, when as man wandred from him, caused him also to wander from himselfe, and from his habitation; yea, the place it selfe hath also wandred, in mens wandring conceits, ouer the World, yea, and out of our habitable World altogether, as before is [c] shewed; men now seeking it as vainly as before they lost it.) It is in fashion [d] resembling an Egge, by a shallow channell separated from the Cape Comori. The Heauens with their dewes, the Ayre with a pleasant holesomnesse and fragrant freshnesse, the Waters in their many Riuers and Fountaynes, the Earth diuersified in aspiring Hils, lowly Vales, equall and indifferent Plaines, filled in her inward Chambers with Metals and Iewels, in her out ward Court and vpper face stored with whole Woods of the best Cinamon that the Sunne seeth, besides Fruits, Oranges, Limons, &c. surmounting those of Spaine; Fowles and Beasts; both tame and wild (among which is their Elephant [e] honoured (by a naturall acknowledgement of excellence) of all other Elephants in the World.) These all haue conspired and ioyned in common league to present vnto *Zeilan* the chiefe of worldly treasures and pleasures, with a long and healthfull life in the Inhabitants, to enioy them. No marueil then, if Sense and Sensuality haue heere stumbled on a Paradise. There, wooddie Hils (as a naturall Amphitheatre) doe encompasse a large Plaine: and one of them, as not contenting his beetle-browes with that onely prospect, disdayneth also the fellowship of the neighbouring Mountaynes, lifting [f] vp his steepe head seuen leagues in height; and hath in the top a Plaine, in the middest whereof is a stone of two Cubits, erected in manner of a Table, holding in it the print of a mans foot, who (they say) came from Deli thither, to teach them Religion. The Iogues and other deuout Pilgrimes resort thither, from places a thousand leagues distant, with great difficulty of passage both hither and heere. For they are forced to mount vp this Hill by the helpe of nayles and chaines fastened thereto, Nature having prohibited other passage. *Maffaeus* and *Botero* could perswade themselues, that this foot-step is a relike and memory of the *Æthiopian* Eunuch: others will haue it further fetcht, and father it vpon *Adam*, the first Father of Mankinde, of whom the Hill also is named, *Pico de Adam*. The Moores [g] call it *Adam Baba*, and say, That from thence *Adam* ascended into Heauen. The Pilgrimes are clad in their Palmers Weed, with iron chaines, and skins of Lions, and other wild beasts. Vpon their armes and legs they weare buttons with sharpe points, that cut the flesh, and draw bloud, which (they say) they doe in Gods seruice.

Before they come at the Mountayne, they passe by a fenny Valley full of water, wherein they wade vp to the waste, with Kniues in their hands, to scrape from their legs the bloud-leeches, which else would end their Pilgrimage and life before the time. For this dirty and weery passage continueth eighteen miles, before they come at the Hil; whose proud top would disdaine climbing, if Art did not captiue Nature, and binde the Hill with chaines of Iron, as is said. When they are mounted, they wash them in a Lake or Poole of cleere springing water, neere to that foot-stone, and making their Prayers, doe thus account themselues cleane from all their sinnes. This holy iourney is generally performed by the Ilanders (saith *Vertomannus*) once a yeere. He addeth [h] that a Moore told him, that this foot-print was two spans long: and that *Adam* heere a long time bewayled his sinne, and found pardon. But *Odoricus* affirmeth, that they reported this mourning to haue beene for *Abel*, and to haue lasted three hundred yeeres, and of the teares of *Abel* and *Eue* this purifying water to haue proceeded: which *Odoricus* [i] proued to be a Tale, because he saw the water springing continually, and it runneth thence into the Sea. He saith, that this water had in it many precious stones; and the King gaue leaue at certayne times of the yeere to poore men to take them, that they might pray for his soule; which they could not doe, but first anointed with Limons, because of the Horse-leeches in that water. There [k] are reckoned nine Kings in this Iland: The first of Colmuchi, to whom the rest pay tribute, *viz.* the Kings of Ianasipatan, Triquinamale, Batecolon, Villassem, Tanamaca, Laula, Galle, and Candy.

In Candy [l] were Statues artificially wrought fiue or sixe fathomes high, which these Symmetrians proportioned to the stature of *Adam*, gathered by that print of his foot. In Vintane [m] is a *Pagode* or Idoll Temple, the compasse whereof is an 130. paces: it is very high, and all white, except on the top, which hath the spires thereof gilded, insomuch that man

a *M.Paul.l.3.*
b *Barbosa.*
c *Vid. sup.l.1. c.4. & Mos Aegypto in Bib. Pat. & Hopkins. Sere.*
d *Lib.1.*
e *Linschot. An.Corsali.*
f *Maff.lib.3.*
g *Od.Barbosa.*
h *Vert.Lib.4.*
i *Odoricus*
k *Bert.Lab.*
l *Her de Bret.*
m *Georgius Spilbergius.*

LIBRARY CHICAGO THE NEWBERRY LIBRARY

men are not able, when the Sun shineth, to looke thereon. It hath a Towre or square Steeple of excellent workmanship. There are many other Temples, and a Monastery also of Religious persons, which are attired in yellow, haue their crownes shauen, with Beades in their hands, and alwayes seeme to mumble ouer somewhat of their deuout Orisons, being in high estimation of sanctity with the vulgar, and freed from publike labours and burthens. Their Monastery is built after the manner of the Popish, being also gilded with Gold. In their Chappels are many Images of both sexes; which, they say, represent some of their Saints: they are set on the Altars, and are clothed with garments of gold and siluer. Before them are the Images of Boyes, which beare vp great Candlesticks, with Wax-candles burning there-
10 in night and day. Euery houre they resort to these Altars to their *Mampsimus*. They held a solemne Procession, whiles the Hollanders were there, in which their Abbot rode on an Elephant richly attired, lifting vp his hands ouer his head, with a golden Rod therein: the Monkes went two and two before him in order, partly bearing and playing on many Instruments of Musicke, partly bearing Wax-lights and Torches: the men also, and after them the women and Maids following in like order: and the fairest Virgins were busied with games and dances, being naked from the nauell vpwards, beneath couered with smockes of diuers colours, their armes and eares adorned with Gold and Iewels. Any man that should see it (saith our Author) would thinke, our Westerne Monkes had hence borrowed their Ceremonies. Their Images are in euery corner of the way, which they adorne with flowers. In Can-
20 dy, the chiefe Citie of that Kingdome, were *Pagodes* innumerable. The houses or Temples were of stone, like the Temples in these parts: some Statues were as high as the mast of a ship. The people heere, if they haue once touched meate, which for quantity or quality they cannot eate, they cast it to the dogs: neither will any man (be he neuer so meane) eate that which another hath touched. The women goe naked from the waste vpwards. They marry as many wiues as they can keepe.

The King makes vse of their Superstition: For pretending to build Temples, he after leaues them vnperfect, excusing himselfe, that they had not contributed sufficient summes of mony, and therefore exacteth a new. There is one Statue of great stature, with a Sword in his hand, which by illusion of the Deuill (or it be not the delusion of fabulous reports) made as though
30 he would strike the King with his Sword, as he was entring the Temple, and put him in great feare, whereas before he had made a mocke of it. The *Singales* or Native Inhabitants say, that the World shall not perish, as long as that Image continueth safe. When any one is sicke, hee sacrificeth to the Deuill, hauing a Box hanging in his house to that end, therein to gather somewhat for his Offering. Some pray vnto the Image of an Elephants head, made of wood or stone, that they may obtaine wisdome (whereof this prayer argues their great want:) some eate no quicke creature. They eat no Beefe, nor drinke any Wine; they worship whatsoeuer first meeteth them in the morning.

George Spilberge was bountifully entertained of the King of Candy, [n] but *Sebald de Weert* was with diuers of his companions slaine, after he had receiued much kindnesse of the King;
40 his importunitie to get the King into his ship, making him suspect some treachery.

The King of Motecalo had eares adorned with Iewels, and hanging downe (the lappets of them were so stretched) to his shoulders. He was kind to the Hollanders: but they incensed him against them by killing certaine Kine; for some of them said, that the soules of Kine slaine after that manner, were hurled forthwith into Hell. He obserued one *Pagode*, to whose Feast he went while the Hollanders were there, the solemnity whereof was to continue (ten dayes) till a new Moone, with great concourse of deuout persons.

Of the Superstitions of *Perimal*, and the worship of the Apes tooth, celebrated in this Ilands; we haue already shewed in the Chapter [o] of *Narsinga*. The Cingalan language which they speake in this Iland, is [p] thought to haue beene there left by the Chinois, sometimes
50 supposed (I thinke falsely) Lords of Zeilan. In *Marcus Paulus* his dayes the Tartarians had not pierced thus farre. For the King then raigning, refused to sell to *Cublai Can* (then the greatest Monarch in the World) at a price, a Rubie which hee had left him by his Ancestors, esteemed the richest Iewell in the World, being (as he [q] saith) a span long, and as bigge as a mans arme, cleere and shining, as if it had bin a fire. In this Iland were reckoned nine Principalities or Kingdomes, but [r] not long since, their chiefe King was murthered by a Barber, who draue the other Kings out of the Countrey, and vsurped the Monarchy to himselfe, practising hostility against the Portugals. The *Cingules* are very cunning Artificers in all Metals. One of them presented the Archbishop of Goa with a Crucifix, so cunningly wrought, as if he had giuen life to the Image of one dead. He sent it to the King of Spaine as a rare Iewell,
60 not to be equalled in Europe. The Inhabitants heere are actiue and expert in iuggling, both men and women, trauelling through India with their strange Hobby-horses, to get money by this vanity. The Sea-coast (as in other Indian Ilands) is inhabited with Moores, the Inland

The

with Pagans.

n *Herman. de Bree, apud Bry part. 8. Ind. Or.*

o *chap. 10.*

p *Gi. Bot. Beti.*

q *Paul. l. 3. c. 19.*

r *Linschoten.*

The Portugals haue a Fortresse at Colombo. The Ilanders [f] are not warriours: they giue themselues to pastime and pleasure: they goe naked from the girdle vpward: they make wide holes in their eares, which they stretch out with the weight of their Iewels to their shoulders. *Monfart* relates, that Zeilan hath whole Forests of Cinamon, and Mountaynes of Chrystall, and that out of their Riuers they draw Pearles, Rubies, Saphirs and Cats-eyes: that they worship the first creature they meet, eat nothing that hath bloud, make no more bread then will be eaten at a meale, their Religion prohibiting them to eat any two houres old. The Hollanders found exceeding, both good and bad entertainment with the King of Candy. Now for that question, whether Zeilan or Samatra be that Taprobane of the ancient is very doubtfull, yet that report in *Plny* [t] of Taprobane, seemes more to encline for Zeilan: For hee 10 sayth, That in *Claudius* time, a seruant of *Annius Plocamus*, which was Customer for the Red Sea, was carried from the Coast of Arabia, besides Carmania, in fifteene dayes, which, I thinke, could not possibly bee done to Samatra. Likewise the excellency of the Elephants, beyond all the Indian, agrees to Zeilan: and had Samatra beene so knowne at that time, the other parts of India (it is like) had beene better discouered then they were in those times. This Taprobane was discouered to bee an Iland, by *Onesicritus*, *Alexanders* Admirall of his Fleet in these parts. It was then accounted another World, and therefore shall be the period of our *Pilgrimage*, and Perambulation in this Asian part of the World: which (by the gracious goodnesse of his Almighty Guide) the Pilgrime hath now passed, and hath led the industrious Reader along with him. 20

[f] *Od. Barbosa.*

[t] *Plin. li. 6. c. 22.* Many reasons for proofe hereof see in a little Booke called the *circumference of the Earth.*

§. III.

The Conclusion of this Asian Pilgrimage.

THe Popish Pilgrimes were wont to beguile their weary steps, with Musicke [u] or pleasant tales (according to the delicate deuotion of those times) & ease was their pardon and penance at their iournies end. And in these our times *Madonna de Loretto* must giue entertainment to many Pilgrimes, which (as if *Venus* were become her Chamberlaine) haue their Curtezan-consolations to solace their Pilgrim-paines: the deuout Friers 30 and Nuns themselues, that haue defied the Deuill, and denyed the World, by a new Vow deuoted to the flesh, disguise themselues in Lay-habits, trauelling thither, and from thence, as Man and Wife, only at *Loretto* couering all with their Cowles. And if Confession discouer, it hideth againe as a double couering. But to vs, Vowes, Cowles, and such falace-solaces are wanting: the end of this labour is but the beginning of another: our penance endureth all the way; neyther haue we hope of Pardon and Indulgence from some seuerer Pœnitentiaries and Censours, whose greatest vertue is to find or seeke faults in Others.

Had the Muses beene propitious, and the Graces gracious, we would haue had some Musicall and gracefull harmony, at least in Phrase and Method: but euen the Muses which whilome so graced that Father of History, *Herodotus*, that each of them vouchsafed, if yee vouchsafe it credit, to bestow that Booke on him, which hee entitled with their names) seemed afraid of so tedious a iourney; nor would the Graces grace vs with their company. Many indeed offered themselues with their *Rules, Methods, and Precepts of Histories*, as *Bodinus, Chytraus, Posseuinus, Mylaus, Foletta, Viperanus, Zuinger, Sambucus, Riccobonus, Patritius, Pontanus Foxius, Robertellus, Baldinus*, and Others which haue written Treatises of that argument: but I thought such attendance would be chargeable, especially to a Traueller: and their many Rules would not haue added wings to my Head and Feet, (as the Poets paint their *Mercury*) but rather haue fettered my Feet, and made my weake Head forget it selfe with their remembrances. I therefore followed Nature (both within me and without me) as my best guide, for matter and manner, which commonly yeeldeth Beauties as louely, if not so curious, as those which bankrupt themselues with borrowing of Art: the issues of our bodies and minds here in being like, *Quas matres fundent, demissis humeris esse, vinclo pectore vt gracilæ sint*, saith *Cherea* in the Comedy, *Tametsi bona est natura, reddunt curatura suncus*: To conceited curiositie may hide rather then commend Natures bounty, which of it selfe is alway more honest, if not more honourable. Neuer could the Persian Court parallel the goodlinesse of *Ester* and *Aspatia*, which yet neglected the Persian delicacies. Once, I haue had sufficient burthen of the businesse in hand; enough, it was for me to goe, though I did not dance vnder it. But it is time to leaue this idle discourse about our course in this Asian History, and bethinke vs of our African Perambulation.

[u] *W. Thorp. ap. Fox. Act. Mon.* Our Pilgrimes with wanton Songs, Bagpipes, Canterbury Bells, &c. when they come into a Towne, make more noyse then the King with his Clarions and Minstrels, So *Chaucers* tales: *Erasm. Colloq. &c.*

[x] See diuers examples here of in *Iohn Nicholls* Pilgrimage, and *W. Lithgow* reporteth the like when he was there.

Est. 2. 15. Asian. Vnr. Hist. lib. 12. c. 1.

RE- 60

RELATIONS OF THE REGIONS AND RELIGIONS IN AFRICA.

OF ÆGYPT, BARBARIE, NVMIDIA, LIBYA, AND THE LAND OF NEGROS, AND OF THEIR RELIGIONS.

THE SIXT BOOKE.

NEWBERRY LIBRARY CHICAGO

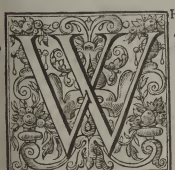
CHAP. I.

Of Africa, and the Creatures therein.

THE NEWBERRY LIBRARY

§. I.

Of the Name and Limits of Africa.



WHether this name *Africa*, bee so called of [a] *Epher* or *Apher*, the sonne of *Madian*, and nephew of *Abraham*, by his second wife *Keturah* (as *Iosephus* [b] affirmeth, alleaging witnesses of his opinion, *Alexander Polyhistor*, and *Cleodemus*;) or of the *Sunnes* presence, [c] because it is *aprica*, or of the *colds* absence, of ἀ and ῥῖγος, as *Festus* saith; or of the word *Ferwca*, [d] which in the Arabian tongue signifieth to diuide (whereupon they call this part of the world *Ifrichia*) because it is (saith [e] *Leo*) diuided by Nilus, and the Sea, from the rest of the world: or of [f] *Ifricus*, an Arabian King, which (chased by the Assyrians) here seated himselfe; or of עפר *Aphar*, the Hebrew word, which signifies dust (as *Aphra* the Syriake also) fitly agreeing to the sandie and parched Soile: or if any other [g] can giue more probable Etymologie of the Name, I list not to contend. Nor is it meet for me to be religious in these *questions of names*, in this Quest and Inquirie of *Religions*. It is a great *Peninsula*, by one *Isthmus*, or necke of Land betweene the Red Sea, and the Mediterranean, ioyned to the Continent, which with the Red Sea aforesaid is the Easterne limit of Africa, as the Mediterranean on the North, and elsewhere the Ocean. For Nilus is a more obscure, and vncertaine Vmpire. Some diuide the World into two parts, Asia and Europe, accounting Africa a part of Europe, which opinion *Varro* ascribeth to *Eratosthenes*; *Salust*, *Lucan*, and *Æthicus*, with *Simlerus*, mention it. It is twice [h] as bigge as Europe, and yet not so much peopled: Nature hauing made here her solitarie place of retyring, attended by scorching heats, and showres of sands, as a counterfeit of those heauenly raines, and mouing waters, which the Aire and Seas affoord in other places. Such are the many Desarts in Africa, onely fertile in barrennesse: although in other parts it is both fruitfull and populous.

a Gen. 25. 4.

b Antiq. lib. 1. cap. 15.

c De his etymis & alii consule F. Luys de Vrreta, lib. 4. cap. 1. Boiero, Bernardo Aldrete Antiguedades &c. d Dom. Nic. G. Arthus hist. Ind. Orient. c. 4. e Io. Leo. lib. 1. f Pom. Mela. lib. 1. cap. 9.

g Many of the Ancients, and Leo ascribe all beyond Nilus to Asia: Io Polyhist. l. 3. c. 37 Dion. Af. & Ferenonet.

h Magnum.

lous. The Equinoctiall Circle doth in manner diuide it in the middest. And yet old *Atlas* neuer sheddeth his snowie haires, but hath always on his huge and high tops vnmolten snow, whence sometime it is disperſed (as from a ſtore-houſe) in ſuch incredible quantitie, that it couereth Carts, Horſes, and the tops of Trees, to the great danger of the Inhabitants: and the Fountaynes are ſo cold, as a man is not able to endure his hand in them. Mount *Atlas* aforeſaid ſtretcheth from the Ocean, [i] bearing name of him, almoſt to Egypt. Other Mountaynes of name are thoſe of Sierra Leona, and the *Mountaynes of the Moone.* [k]

i *Oc. Atlanticus.*

One Lake *Zembre* yeeldeth three mightie Riuers, diſemboking themſelues into three ſeuerall Seas: Nilus, which runneth Northwards fortie degrees from hence, in Aſtronomicall reckoning: Cuama, which runneth into the Eaſterne; and Zaire into the Weſterne Seas: of which Riuers, and of other like, the Reader ſhall finde more in due place ſpoken.

Some parts of Africa are beyond admiration for barrenneſſe, ſome for fertilitie. *Plinie* [k] mentions a Citie in the middeſt of the ſands, called Tacape, in the way to Leptis, which hath a Spring of water flowing plentifully, and diſpenſed by courſe amongſt the Inhabitants. There vnder a great Date-tree groweth an Oliue, vnder that a Figge, vnder that a Pomegranate, vnder that a Vine, vnder that Wheat, Peaſe, Herbs, all at once. The Vine beares twice a yeere; and otherwiſe, very abundance would make it as bad as barren. Somwhat is gathered all the yeere long. Foure cubits of that ſoile ſquare, not meaſured with the fingers ſtretched out, but gathered into the fiſt, are ſold for ſo many Denarij. This *Budeus* [l] ſummes and proportions by the Acre, after the Roman meaſure, and ſaith, that an Acre of that ground, after that rate, is priſed at 12800. *Seſterty nummi*, which maketh 320. *French* crownes, not 60 reckoning the defect of the cubit, which being added, addes much to the ſumme.

k *Plin. lib. 18. cap. 22.*

l *Bud. de Aſſ. lib. 5.*

The Romans reckoned ſixe Prouinces in Africa: *Ptolemey* numbreth twelue. But then was not

not Africa so well knowne as now. *Iohn Leo* m (a Moore, both learned and experienced) having spent many yeeres in trauell, diuideth Africa into foure parts; *Barbaria, Numidia, Libya*, and the Land of *Negros*. Numidia he calleth *Biledurgerid*, or the Region of Dates: and Libya, he calleth *Sarra*, for so the Arabians call a Desart. But he thus excludeth Egypt, and both the higher and lower Æthiopia, which others n adde hereunto, and make vp seuen parts of Africa.

m *Io. Leo, lib. 1.*

n *Maginus Port.*

§. II.

Of the Beasts, wilde and tame.

MAny are the o Creatures which Africa yeeldeth, not vsuall in our parts. Elephants are there in plentie, and keepe in great herds together. The *Giraffa*, or *Camelopardalis*; a beast not often seene, yet very tame, and of a strange composition, mixed of a Libard, Hart, Buffe, and Camell, p and by reason of his long legs before, and shorter behinde, not able to graze without difficultie, but with his high head, which hee can stretch forth halfe a pikes length in height, feeds on the leaues and boughs of trees. The Camel in Afrike are more hardie then in other places; and will not onely beare great burthens, but continue to trauell fiftie dayes together, without carrying with them any corne to giue them, but turne them out at night to feede on thistles, boughs, and the little grasse they find: and no lesse patient are they of thirst, being able to endure fifteene dayes without drinke vpon necessitie, and fiue dayes ordinarily. The Arabians in Africa count them their greatest wealth: for so they describe a mans riches, saying, *Hee hath so many thousand Camels*: and with these they can liue in the Desarts without dread of any Prince. Sixe q hundred waight is his ordinarie load, yet will hee carry a thousand. In lading or vnlading, hee lyes on his belly, and when hee is laden proportionably to his strength, will rise, not suffering more to bee laid on him. For satisfying his thirst, they say, in his often belchings he rayseth vp a bladder, wherewith he moysteneth his mouth and throat. They are, say some, the onely that ingender backward: which others haue affirmed also of the Lion, Tygre, Elephant, Rhinoceros, and Ounce: and some denie it, not of those alone, but euen of the Camell, who voydeth vrine backward, but by a strange worke of Nature is said in that act to shoot forward.

o *Io. Leo. lib. 9.*

p *P. Bellon. lib. 2. cap. 49.* doth largely describe him. See his description in *Mercator* and *Sandys*: also *Master Sanderson* saw one at Cairo, and hath described him in his voyage, which I haue printed. *Tom. 1. lib. 9.*

q *G. Sandys.*

Of Camels they haue three sorts: the first called *Hugines*, of huge stature and strength, able to carry a thousand pound waight: the second lesse, with two bunches on the backe, fit for carriage and to ride on, called *Beches*, of which they haue onely in Afia. The third sort, called *Raghabil*, is meagre and small, able to trauell (for they are not vsed to burthens) aboue an hundred miles in a day. And the King of Tombuto can send messengers on such Camels to Segelmesse or Darha, nine hundred miles distant, in seuen or eight dayes, without stay or change by the way. Their Camels also are docible: they will more be perswaded, to hold on a iourney further then ordinarie, by songs, then blowes. In the Spring they are mare-wood, and mad of copulation, in which time they are very readie both to hurt their followers, and to kill their masters, or any that haue whipped or hurt them. Of Horses they haue both wilde (which they entrap by subtiltie) and tame: of which the Barbarie horse is famous in Europe and Asia highly prized. The Laut or Dant is a kinde of wilde Kine, but swifter then almost any other beast. They haue also wilde Kine and wilde Asses. The Adimmain is as bigge as an Asse, otherwise resembling a Ram. They haue other sheepe, r whose tayles weigh twentie pound, and sometime foure score or more, carried on little carts behind them. But those Adimmain are found in the Desarts, and kept to profit, yeelding them milke and cheese. The females onely haue hornes.

r *Cæsius de rer. animal.* speakes of two kindes: the title of the one three cubits long, of the other a cubit broad. *vid. Hero. Phil. Aristot. hist. an. 8. Plin. 8. 49. Gesner.*

The Lions in cold places are more gentle, in hotter are more fierce, and will not flee the onset of two hundred horse-men armed. Master *Iohn Vassall* s (a friend and neighbour of mine) told me that he brought out of Barbarie a Lions skin, which from the snout to the top of the taile contayned one and twentie foot in length, a thing seeming incredible, a raritie and prodigie also to those Barbarians: and I could almost doubt whether memorie fayled not: for otherwise the Relator I know to be otherwise wise and honest. Strange it is that a Lionesse by shewing her hinder parts to the male, should make him runne away. In time of their coupling eight or ten will follow one female, with terrible and bloudie battels amongst themselues. They spare such men as prostrate themselues, and prey rather on men then women, and not at all on Infants, except compelled by hunger. *Plinie* tels that *Alexander* set thousands on worke by hunting, hawking, fishing, or other meanes to take and leaue the natures of Creatures, that *Aristotle* might be by them informed thereof, who wrote almost fiftie Treatises of that subiect, whereof it seemeth most are lost. He citeth out of him, that Lions

s *Of Eastwood in Essex.*

t *Aristot. Hist. Animalium.*

Lions bring forth small deformed lumps, at the first time fiue, and (euery yeere after) one lesse, after the fift burthen remayning barren. It cannot stirre till it be two moneths old, nor goe till it be sixe, if you beleeue him. The Libyans beleeue that the Lion hath vnderstanding of prayers, and tell of a Getulian woman, which lying at the Lions mercy, belought him so noble a beast, not to dishonour himselfe with so ignoble a prey and conquest, as shee a weake woman was. The like is told [o] of a Spanish dogge, of one *Didacus Salazar* a Spaniard. This man according to the bloudie practice of that Nation, minding to fill his dogs belly with an old womans flesh which was his captiue, gaue her a letter to carry to the Gouernour, and so soone as shee was a little past, loosed his Mastiffe, who presently had ouer-taken her. The woman terrified, prostrates her selfe to the dogge, and sues for her life; Good master Dogge, I, master Dogge (saith shee) in her language, I carry this letter to the Gouernour (and shewes it him) Be not fierce on me, master Dogge. The dogge (hauing changed, it seemes, with his Master, his doggednesse for the others humanitie) made a stay, and lifting vp his legge, onely pissed on her and departed, to no small wonder of the Spaniards that knew him.

o *Boied. histor. Ind. l. 16. c. 11. Vrban caluto in Bonzar. l. b. 3.*

But to returne to the King of beasts. His tayle seemeth to be his Scepter, whereby he expresseth his passion. Hee shrinkes not at danger, except some couert of woods shroud him from witnesses, and then hee will take the benefit of flight, which otherwise hee seemes to disdaine. *Mentor*, a man of Syracusa, was encountred with a Lion, which in stead of tearing him, fawned on him, and with his dumbe eloquence seemed to implore his aide, shewing his diseased foot, wherein *Mentor* perceiued a stubbe sticking, which he pulled out. The like is reported by *Gellius* out of *Polyhistor*, of a fugitiue seruant, who hauing performed this kind of office to a Lion, was by him gratified for a long space with a daily portion of his prey. But after this the man was taken and presented to his Master (a Roman Senator) who exhibited games to the Romans, wherein seruants and condemned persons were exposed to the furie of the beasts, amongst whom he placed this seruant; and by a wonderfull Fate, this Lion also was a little before taken, and bestowed on him for this solemne spectacle. The beasts running with violence to their bloudie encounter, suddenly this Lion stayed, and taking little better view, fawned on this his guest, and defended him from the assaults of the other beasts: whereupon, by the peoples entreatie (who had learned the storie of him) he was freed, and the beast giuen him: which followed him with a Line in the streets, the people pointing and saying: *Hic est homo Medicus leonis, Hic est leo hospes hominis.* One *Elpis* a Samian performed a cure on another Lion, pulling a bone out of his throat, at the Lions gaping and silent moane; and in remembrance hereof built a Temple (at his returne) to *Bacchus* at Sango, whom before hee had inuoked before in feare of a Lion.

A *Gellius Noct. Attic.*

Plinie and *Solinus* among other African beasts mention the *Hyæna*, which some thinke to be Male one yeere, and Female another, by course: This *Aristotle* [x] denyes, This beast hath no necke ioynt, and therefore stirres not his necke, but with bending about his whole body. He will imitate humane voyce, and drawing neere to the sheepe-coates, hauing heard the name of some of the shepheards, will call him, and when hee comes, deuoure him. They tell that his eyes are diuersified with a thouland colours, that the touch of his shaddow makes a dogge not able to barke. By engendring with this beast, the Lioness brings forth a Crocuta, of like qualities to the Hyæna. Hee hath one continued tooth without diuision throughout his mouth. Some thinke this Hyæna to bee the Lycanthropos or Man-wolfe, some the Ciuet-Cat, some a fable: howsoeuer, old and late Philosophers, Physitians, and Historians mention it. Something, perhaps, told of it is fabulous. But it is absurd to denie the eye-sight of so many witnesses. He that will reade a pleasant storie of the taking them, let him reade *Bubequius* his Epistles: if an entire storie, *Bauhinus* his second-booke *De Hermaphroditis*.

x *Arist. Hist. animal. l. 6. c. 32.*

In Africa also are wilde Asses, among which, one Male hath many Females: a iealous beast, who (for feare of after encroching) bites off the stones of the young Males, if the suspicious Female preuent him not by bringing forth in a close place where hee shall not finde it. The like is told of Beuers, y which being hunted for the medicinable qualitie of their stones, are said to bite them off when they are in danger to be taken, paying that ransome for their liues. It cannot be true that is reported of the Hyæneum, z a stone found in the Hyæna's eye, that being put vnder the tongue of a man, hee shall foretell things to come, except hee foretell this, That no man will beleeue what our Authour before hath told. The Libard is not hurtfull to men except they annoy him: but killeth and eateth dogges. *Dabuh* is the name of a simple and base creature like a Wolfe, saue that his legges and feete are like to a mans: a so foolish, that with a song, and a tabor, they which know his haunt will bring him out of his den, and captiue his eares with their musicke, while another captiuateth his legs with a rope. *Scaliger* thinkes this is the Hyæna, which the Turkes call, Zirtlan, and take with a rope fastened to the legge, he that goes in professing he is not there, till they be there sure of him.

y *Plin. l. 8. c. 30. Whitney Emble. Solinus.*

z *Mathodeus de Gemmis.*

a *Sal. in can. 36.* calleth them *Celphon.*

The

The Zebra of all Creatures for beautie and comelinesse is admirably pleasing: resembling a Horse of exquisite composition, but not all so swift, all ouer-laid with paintie-coloured Laces, and gards, from Head to Taile. They liue in great Heards, as I was told by my friend *Andrew Battle*, who liued in the Kingdome of Congo many yeeres, and for the space of some moneths liued on the flesh of this Beast, which hee killed with his Peece. For vpon some quarrell betwixt the Portugals (among whom he was a Sergeant of a band) and him, he liued eight or nine moneths in the Woods, where hee might haue view of hundreds together in Heards both of these, and of Elephants. So simple was the Zebra, that when hee shot one, he might shoot still, they all standing (till at gaze, till three or foure of them were dead. But more strange it seemed which he told me of a kinde of great Apes, if they might so bee reard, of the height of a man, but twice as bigge in feature of their limbes, with strength proportionable, hairie all ouer, otherwise altogether like Men and Women in their whole bodily shape, except this, that their legges had no calues. They liued on such wilde fruits as the Trees and Woods yeelded, and in the night time lodged on the Trees: Hee was accompanied with two Negro-Boyes: and they carried away one of them by a sudden surprise: yet not hurting him, as they vse not to doe any which they take, except the Captiue doe then looke vpon them. This slaue, after a moneths life with them, conueyed himselfe away again to his Master. Other Apes there are store, and as *Solinus* reporteth, * Satyres with feete like Goates, and Sphynges, with brests like women, and hairie, whereof *Puerius* saith hee saw one at Verona, and a kind of Conies also at the same time, foure times as bigge as the ordinary; and (which is more incredible) had each of them seuerall members. *Philippo Pigafetta* speaketh in his Relation ‡ of Congo, of other Beasts (in Africa) as of the Tygre as fierce and cruell as Lions, making prey of Man and Beast, yet rather deuouring blacke men then white: whose Mustachios are holden for mortall poyson, and being giuen in meates, cause men to die madde. The Empalanga is somewhat like to an Oxe. Their Sheepe and Goates neuer bring forth lesse then two, and sometimes three or foure at a time. They haue Wolues, Foxes, Deere (Red and Fallow) Roe-buckes, Ciuet-cats, Sables and Marterns.

These great Apes are called *Pongi*.

* Satyres are thought to be a kind of Apes: these are Naturall. There are others vnnaturall of humane copulation with goats: a third sort diabolicall, illusions, & a fourth poeticall tales. See these things at large in *Bauhinus de Hermaphrod.* & also *Drad. in Solin.* &c.

‡ *Congo* translated by A.H.

The Ruer-horse seemes peculiar to Africa, a beast somewhat resembling a Horse, shorter-legged, with great feet and a very great head, with horrible teeth: so fearefull by Land, that a Child may affright them, and in the Water as their proper element (though their aliment be Grasse, Corne in the blade, and other like from the earth) they are audacious and daring. But of this and many other African Creatures (too long here to relate) the Reader may informe himselfe more fully in my Voyages; in *Iobson*, *Bastell*, *Santes*, *Alvarez*, *John Leo*, and others there published.

§. III.

Of Crocodiles, Serpents and other strange Creatures.

THey haue Snakes and Adders, whereof some are called *Imbumae*, fiue and twentie spannes * long, liuing in Land and Water, not venemous but rauenous, and lurke in Trees (for which taking purpose, Nature hath given it a little horne or claw without in two or three foot of the Taile) waiting for their prey, which hauing taken, it deuoureth hornes, hoofes, and all, although it bee a Hart. And then swolne with this so huge a meale, it is as it were drunke and sleepie, and vnweldie for the space of fiue or sixe dayes. The Pagan Negroes roast and eate them as great dainties. The biting of their Vipers killeth in foure and twentie houres space. Africa for monsters in this kinde hath been famous, as in the Roman historie appeareth. *Attilius* b *Regulus* the Romane Consul in the first Punicke Warre, at the Riuer Bagrada encountred with a huge Serpent, and planted his Engines and Artillerie against the same, whose skinne, sent to Rome for a Monument, was in length a hundred and twentie foot, as *Gellius* out of *Tubero* reporteth. The Scales c armed it from all hurt by Darts or Arrowes, and with the breath it killed many, and had eaten many of the Souldiers, before they could with a stone out of an Engine destroy this destroyer. The Riuers of Niger, Nilus, Zaire, and others, haue store of Crocodiles, whereof some are of an incredible bignesse, and greedie deuourers, thirtie foot long, from an Egge lesse then a Goose-egge. *Aristotle* saith, that Crocodiles haue no tongues, but I my selfe haue seene both great and little (saith our Author) dead and dryed, in all which I found a tongue, but very short, flat and large. Strange it is that they tell of the number of sixtie in this beast; the age sixtie yeeres, the teeth, joynts, egges, and dayes of laying and hatching, being all numbred by sixtie.

The Crocodiles taile is as long as his body, his feet with clawes, his backe armed with scales almost impenetrable: hee moueth onely his vpper jaw, and that so wide, that some of

a *Strabo* and *Agatharchides* write that they had seene Serpents 30. Cubits long.
b *A Gell. l. 6. c. 3. & Iul. Obsequens Cap. 29. Plil. lib. 8. c. 14. bellissima tormenta, vt oppidum aliquod, expugnaui serpens &c.*
c *Oson. l. 4. c. 8.* Treatise of tigies, *l. 5. c. 3.* see the whole Chapter.
Pliniae affirmeth, that the Crocodile hatcheth her eggs onely with her sight and other things not probable.

of them are able to swallow an entire Heifer, as some report. They say also, that the Female layes her Egges where *Nilus* will make an end of his flowing that yeere, as if by secret Providence he dmitted how farre the Riuer would rise. In ingendring the lyes on her backe, and through the shortnesse of her legs cannot turne her selfe on her belly, but by the Males helpe: from whistrbeing scarred by the clamours of some watching this opportunitie, the is easily taken: which they doe also by Pit-fals and other meanes. Foure monsters together in the Winter, they eate nothing: they are thicke-sighted by Land, and easier take their prey by water, which is done by their tayle. They are bold vpon the fearefull, and fearefull vpon the bold: yet a fearefull beast to encounter rising on his tayle, with sach Hellish iawes and Deuillish clawes ouer the assaylant, as require an vndaunted spirit. For which the *Temyrites* were famous, easily conquering them. Authors tell of a little Bird, which as he lyes gaping, goes into his mouth, and picks his indented teeth, which he cannot deuoure by reason of her sharp feathers raysed like bristles, when he offereth to shut his mouth on her: the *Ichneumon* or Rat of *Nilus* is said to gape for this occasion of his gaping, and then to runne into his belly and gnaw himselfe a passage out, therefore worshipped of the Egyptians. The *Ichneumon* is a big, and as cleanly as a Cat, snowted like a Ferret, but without haire, and blacke; sharpe tooth'd, round eard, short legg'd, long tayl'd, supposed of both genders: bought at Market in Egypt to kill Mice and Rats. They prey vpon all lesser Serpents destroy Crocodiles Egs, and strangle all the Cats they meet with, loue Poultrey, cannot endure the wind: their mouthes are so little, they cannot bite any thing that is thicke.

Moune *Atlas* hath plenty of Dragons, grosse of body, slow of motion, and in byting or touching, incurably venemous. The Desarts of Lybia haue in them many Hydra's. *Dabbi* is the name of a kind of great Lizard, not venemous, which neuer drinketh, and if water bee put in his mouth, he presently dyeth. He is counted dainty meat, and three dayes after hee is killed, at the heat of the fire he moueth as if he had life. In Congo is a kind of Dragons like in bignesse to Rammes, with wings, hauing long tayles and chaps, and diuers iawes of teeth, of blue and greene colour, painted like scales, with two feet, and feed on raw flesh. The Pagan Negros pray to them as Gods, for which cause the great Lords keepe them to make a gaine of the peoples deuotion, which offer their gifts and Oblations. The Chameleons are knowne among vs, admirable for their Æriesustinance (although they also hunt and eat Flies) and for the changeablenesse of their colours ? into all (as *Theophrastus* sayth) but reddeand white. The *Tarandus* is a Beast some what resembling an Oxe, in quantitie, a Hart in shape, the skin hard, a finger thicke, fit for shields, haired like a Beare, liuing, as *Theophrastus* affirmeth, in Sarmatia, *Solinus* sayth in *Æthiopia*, seldome seene, of incredible changeablenesse to the colour of that which is next it. The *Polypus* seemeth by his breath to change his colour, his lungs extending almost through all his body: which *Aristotle* testifieth he doth both for feare and hunting his prey: adding the same qualitie of another fish called a Cuttell. Another Serpent hath a rundle on his Taile like a Bell, which also ringeth as it goeth. But if any desire to know the varietie of these Serpents, *Solinus* in his thirteenth Chapter will more fully satisfie him, and *Bellonius* in his obseruations.

P. Pigafet.

a Solinus c.33. & Theophrast. de animal.

Manifold are these kindes of Serpents in Africa, as the *Ceraستes*, which hath a little Coronet of foure hornes, whereby he allureth the Birds vnto him (lying hidden in the sands all but the head,) and so deuoureth them. The *Iaculi* dart themselues from Trees on such Creatures as passe by. The *Amphisbena* hath two heads, the Taile also onerated, (I cannot say honored) with a Head, which causeth it to moue circularly with crooked windings: a fit Emblème of popular sedition, where the people will rule their Prince, needs must their motion bee crooked, when there are two heads, and therefore none. The Scythale is admirable in her varied Iacket. The Dipsas kils those whom she stingeth, with thirst. The Hypanale with sleepe, as befell to *Cleopatra*. The Hemerois with vntauchable bleeding. The Prester with swelling. And not to poison you with names of many other of these poysonfull Creatures, the Basilisk is said to kill with her sight or hissing. b *Galen* describes it, and so doe *Solinus* and others. It is not hafe a foot long and hath three poincels (*Galen* saith) on the head, or after *Solinus*, strakes like a Mitre. It blasteth the ground it toucheth, the Herbes also, and Trees, and infecteth the Ayre, so that Birds flying ouer, fall dead. If frayeth away other Serpents with the hissing. It goeth vpright from the belly vpwards. If any thing be slaine by it, the same also prouoth venemous to such as touch it. Onely a Weasill kils it. The Bergamen bought the carkasse of one of them at an incredible summe, which they hung in their Temple (which *Apelles* hand had made famous) in a Net of Gold, to preserue the same from Birds and Spiders. The Catoblepas is said to be of like venemous nature, alwayes going with her head into the ground, her sight otherwise being deadly. As for the Monsters, that by mixt generations of vnlike kind deose Nature vnnaturally produceth, c Ileaue to others discourse. *Leuinus* d *Leminus* tels, that of the marrow in a Mans back-bone is ingendred a Serpent 3 yea, of an Egge which an old Cocke will

b Galen. lib de Theriaca. Plinie saith it is twelue fingers long, and nine inches l.8.c.21. Aliorst. mag. de mirab.

c Io. Baptista Porta, &c.

d Leminus de occulitad. l.4.c.12.

will lay after he is vnable to tread Hennes any longer, is (saith hee) by the same Cockes setting, produced a Basiliske: and selles of two such Cockes at Zirizea, killed by the people, which had found them sitting on such Egges. *Theophrast* also saith, that Serpents are plentifully ingendred of much Raine, or effusions of Mens blood in Warre. Mice are multiplyed in drie seasons) which the store of them this drie Winter 1613. confirmeth) of which hee saith there are great ones in Egypt with two feet, which they vse as hands, not going, but leaping.

Ostriches keepe in companies in the Desarts, making shewes a farre off, as if they were troupes of Horsemen; a ridiculous terrour to the Carauans of Merchants: a foolish Bird, that forgetteth his Nest, and leaueth his Egges for the Sunne and Sands to hatch; that eateth any thing, euen the hardest Iron: that heareth nothing. They haue Eagles, Parrots, and other Fowles. But none more strange then that which is termed Nisr, bigger then a Crane, preying vpon Carrion, and by his flight buryeth his great body in the Clouds that none may see him, whence hee espyeth his prey: and liueth so long, that all his feathers fall away by age, and then is fostered by his young ones.

Other Fowles they haue too tedious to relate, of which let the Reader consult *Jobson, Santos*, and other Relations in our *Voyages* published. Grashoppers doe here often renue the Ægyptian plague, which come in such quantitie, that they intercept the shining of the Sunne like a Cloud, and hauing eaten the Fruits and Leaues, leaue their spawne behind (worse then their predecessours) deuouring the very barkes of the Leafe-lesse Trees. The old depart none knowes whither: and sometime with a South-East winde are carried into Spaine. The Arabians, and Libyans eate them before they haue spawned, to that end gathering them in the morning, before the Sunne hath dryed their winges, and made them able to flie. One man can e gather foure or fiue bushels in a morning. f *Orosius* tells, that once they had not onely eaten vp Fruits, Leaues, and Barke, while they liued, but being dead, did more harme: for being carried by a wind into the Sea, and the Sea not brooking such morsels, vomiting them vp againe on the shoare, their putrified carkasses caused such a plague, that in Numidia dyed thereof eight hundred thousand: and on the Sea-coast neere Carthage and Vtica, two hundred thousand: and in Vtica it selfe thirtie thousand Souldiers, which had beene mustred for the Garisons of Africa. In one day were carried out of one Gate one thousand and fiue hundred carkasses. They are said to come into Barbarie seuen yeeres together, and other seuen not to come, at which times Corne before so deare, is sold for little, and sometime not vouchsafed the reaping, such is their foyle and plentie. The iuyce of the young is poyson. *Plinie* calls g them a plague of Diuine Anger: they flie saith hee, with such a noyse, that one would take them for other Fowles, and passe ouer huge tracts by Sea and Land. In Italy the people by them haue beene driuen to h *Sibylline* remedies for feare of Famine. In Cyrenaica there was a Law thrice a yeere to warre against them, destroying the Egges first, then the young, and lastly the growne ones. In Lemnos a certaine measure is appointed for each man to bring of them to the Magistrate. And they hold Iayes in high regard, because they kill them with flying against them. In Syria men are compelled to kill them. i in Parthia they eate them. The Scriptures also often threaten and mention this plague as Gods *great Armie*. But otherwhere they seeme strangers: In Æthiopia they haue their principall habitation. *Clenard* mentioneth k their mischiefes about Fez, where they bring Cart-loades of them to sell, the people deuouring these deuourers.

Alnares in his thirtie two, and thirtie three Chapters, tels of these Grashoppers in Æthiopia, that in some places they made the people truse vp bagge and baggage, and seeke new Habitations where they might finde victuall; The Countrey all Desart and destroyed, and looking as if it had snowed there, by reason of the vnbarked Trees, and the fields of Mais, the great stalkes whereof were troden downe, and broken by them: and in another place, a Temple saw with his Eyes. But if we stay a little longer on this subiect, the Reader will complaine of their troublesome companie heere.

The studious of Natures rarities in these parts, may resort to *Leo*, and others, as also for their further satisfaction in the Fishes and Monsters of the water; as the *Hippopotamus*, in shape resembling a Horse, in bignesse an Asse, they goe l into the Corne grounds of the Ægyptians, and in their feeding goe backwards towards the Riuer, so to beguile men, who looking forwards for them, they meane while conuey themselues into the Water. In l this Riuer of Nilus, in the time of *Mauritius, Mena* being Gouernour of Egypt, there with many other fa neere the place where Cairo now standeth, a Giantly monster, from the bottome of his belly vpwards aboue the water like altogether to Man with the supposed Riuer-ning Countenance, and strong limbes. Some imagined him to bee Nilus the supposed Riuer-deitie. After hee had continued in the common view of all men three houres, there came forth

e *Iob. Bart. Mat. 3. ate Locusts*, and many people were therefore called. ἀκρίδοφάγοι.

f *P. Oros. lib. 5. cap. 11.*

g *Plin. 11. c. 29.*

h Taken out of the *Sibylles* Bookes.

Iosh. & 2. & 6.

i *Cl. Ep. ad Latom. Aristot. in hist. An haud rectè eicadii iuuenum tribuit, & rem tantum procibo.*

k *Aelian de ex. Lib. 5. cap. 55.*

l *Theoph. Simocatta hist. Mauric. l. 7. cap. 16.*

forth of the Water another like a Woman with a smooth face, her haire partly hanging, and partly gathered into a knot, and blacke of colour; her face very faire, rosie lippes, fingers and brests well proportioned, but her lower parts hidden in the water: Thus from morning till Sun-set, they tedde their greedy eyes with this spectacle, which then sanke downe againe into the Waters. *Hondius* speakes of a Mermaid taken in the Netherlands, and taught to Spin: I sweare not to the truth of it. But many Histories speake of some like Men in their whole shape both in our and other Coasts, and some like Lions: and for Mermaides, in the Voyage [m] of *Henry Hudson* for Northerly Discoverie 1608. *Thomas Hils* and *Robert Rainer* saw one rise by the Ship side on the fifteenth of *June*; from the Naiill vpwards her backe and brests like a Woman, as likewise her bignesse of body: her afterparts like a Porpise, and speckled like a Mackerill: when they called their company to see it, thee sanke downe. I might adde many other Creatures strange and wonderfull, and yet not so wonderfull, as the effects and vertues which *Albertus*, *Maxaldus*, and others tell of these and other Creatures. Such are the Sea-kine, lesser then the Land-kine, the Tartarusa a Tortoise, which liueth in the Desarts of huge bignesse, &c.

m *Vi. Geddes Aq.*

Robert Iuet in his relation of that Voyage.

The people wich inhabite Africa are Arabians, Moores, Abissines, Ægyptians, and diuers sorts of the Heathens; differing in Rites from each other, as shall follow in our discourse. The Monsters which *Plinie*, and others tell of, besides *Munster* and *Sabellicus* out of them, I neither beleeue, nor report.

CHAP. II.

Of Ægypt and the famous Riuer Nilus. and first Kings, Temples, and Monuments, according to HERODOTVS, DIODORVS, *and others.*

§. I.

The names of Ægypt, and of the Riuer Nilus.

AFter our generall view of Africa, Egypt may justly challenge the principall place in our African discourse, as being both in situation next to Asia (whence we are lately come) and consequently from thence first peopled; besides that *Religion*, our Load-Starre hath heere found the foonest and solemnest entertainment. And not in Religion alone, but in Policie, Philosophie, and Artes, the Grecians [a] which would seeme the first Fathers of these things, haue beene Disciples to the Egyptians, as [b] *Am. Marcellinus*, and *D. Siculus*, *Plutarch*, and many others affirme. Hence *Orpheus*, *Musæus* and *Homer* fetched their Theologie; *Lycurgus* and *Solon* their Lawes; *Pythagoras*, *Plato*, *Anaxagoras*, *Eudoxus*, *Democritus*, *Dadalus*, here borrowed that knowledge for which the World hath euer since admired them. Let it not then be imputed to me as a tedious officiousnesse. If I longer detaine the Reader (otherwise delighted with the view of those rils which hence haue flowed among the Greeke and Latine Poets and Philosophers) in Surueighing these Ægyptian Fountaines and Well-springs; whence haue issued especially a deluge of Superstition, that in elder times drowned all the neighbouring parts of the World. Nor let it be tedious vnto vs to behold (in this Historicall Theater) those Egyptian Rarities; the sight whereof hath drawne not Philosophers alone but great Princes too, and mightie Emperors, to the vndertaking of long and dangerous Pilgrimage, in honour of *Serapis*, and for the strange sights of *Memphis*, *Mennon*, the *Pyramides*, Labyrinth, &c. *Vespasian* also and others did the like.

a *Iamblicus*, b *Am. M. l. 22. D. S. l. 1. Plin. d. Oef. p. 15. Volat. 12. Lact. l. 4. c. 9. Hieron. ad Paul.*

c *Ælien. Sport. Seuerus.*

The name of Egypt (saith [d] *Iosephus*) is *Mesre* of *Misraim*, the sonne of *Cham*, as the Egyptians themselues are called *Mesræi*. So the Arabians at this day call it (as *Leo* [e] affirmeth) but the Inhabitants they call *Chibith*, This *Chibith* they say was he which first ruled this Country, and built houses therein. The Inhabitants also doe now call themselues thus: yet mingled themselues with the Arabians and Africans. These Christians are hereupon [f] called *Cophti*, of their Nation, as Master *Brerewood* obserueth, not of their Religion, which is the same with the Iacobites. And the Egyptians in some ancient Monuments are tearmed *Ægophis*: and the name *Ægyptus* (which some deriue from *Ægyptus* brother of *Danaus*) is likelier to come of that *Chibith*: or this *Ægophis*: and all these names may seeme to borrow

d *Antiq. l. 1. c. 6. Broughtons Concent.*

e *Io. Leo l. 8. Mitæ, & Mitræ, ait Postellus, Africæ Africa.*

f *B. Enquiry. cap. 22.*

borrow their originall from *Koptus*, a chiefe Citie in Egypt, as both *Scaliger* g and *Lidyat* are of opinion, *quasi Ai Koptus*, * the Land of *Koptus* so is *Æthiops* of *Ai* and *Thebeth*, or *Thebais*. *Ignatius* the Patriarch of Antioch, in an Arabicke Epistle written to *Scaliger*, calleth Egypt the Land of *Kopts*, where he speaketh of *Æra Kopti*, or the computation of yeeres by those Koptite Christians, reckoned from the nineteenth yeere of *Diocletian*, at which time hee destroyed the Christian Churches, and slue an hundred and forty foure thousand Martyrs in Egypt, and other seuen hundred thousand exiled. The Turkes h call both the Countrey itselfe, and principall City (*Cairo*) by the name of *Misir*. Thus singeth an olde Pilgrime in written Rimes, without name of the Authour,

10 *In Egypt is a Citie faire,*
That height Massar or else Kare.

Egypt was before called (if wee may beleeue *Stephanus* i and others) *Æria*, and otherwise also by the names of *Æria*, *Potamia*, *Ogygia*, *Melambolos*, *Hephestia*, *Ethiopia*. Some adde k *Hapia*, as Nilus was also called Melas of the blacknesse. The Riuer was first called Oceanus, then Egyptus, and after that Nilus, and Triton.

Egypt hath on the l East the Gulfe, and some part of Arabia; on the South the falls and Mountaynes of *Æthiopia*; on the West the Desarts of Libya; on the North, the Mediterranean Sea: all which Nature hath set not only as limits, but as fortifications also to this Coun-
20 trey. Nilus is by *Ouid* m called *aduena*, for his forreine Springs; by *Tibullus*, *fertilis*, which supplyeth the place of showres to Egypt, whereupon *Claudian* sings:

Egyptus sine nubes ferax, imbresque serenos
Sola tenet, secura poli, non indiga venti:
and *Lucan*,
Terra suis contenta bonis, non indigamercis,
Aut Iouis; vii solo tanta est fiducia Nilo.

Egypt no raines nor Merchandise doth need,
Nilus doth all her wealth, and plenty breed.

30 Hereupon the Romanes accounted it their Granary; and the Turke *Selym* when he conquered it, said, he had now taken n a Farme that would feed his Gemoglans, without it, the earth is said, perhaps had not beene earth, nor is there aboue one Well of sweet springing water, nor brackish in all Egypt. The water of Nilus is sweet, wholesome, and yeelds no mystie vapours.

This Riuer runneth through the midst thereof, sixty miles from o Cairo, making by diuision of himselfe) that *Delta*, to which some appropriated the name of Egypt, refuted by *Iupiter Ammon*, whose Oracle (sayth *Herodotus*) reckoned all that Egypt, which Nilus ouerflowed. *Ptolemaus* p numbreth three of those *Deltas*. Touching the head of q Nilus; *Bredenbachius* affirmeth, that many *Soldans* haue sent men on purpose furnished with skill and pro-
40 uision for the Discouery, who, after two or three yeeres, returning, affirmed that they could find no head of this Riuer, nor could tell any certainty, but that it came from the East, and places not inhabited: both of like truth. And before the *Soldans*, *Sesostris*, *Cambyses*, *Alexander*, *Nero*, are reported to haue made search for the head of this Riuer. *Neros* men by the helpe of the *Æthiopians* passed farre vp, to large vnpassable Marishes full of weeds, the extents vnknowne. Later Geographers relate, that Nilus arisetb out of a Lake in twelue degrees of Southerly latitude, out of which not only this Riuer runneth Northwards into the Mediterranean; but *Zaire* also Westward; *Zuama*, and *Spirito Sancto* Eastward, into the Ocean, as is said; all ouerflowing their Territories in the same time, and from the same cause. What this cause should be, many both old and later Writers haue laboured to search. *Herodotus*, *Dio-*
50 *dorus*, *Pliny*, and *Solinus*, haue lent vs the coniectures of Antiquity herein. r *Fracastorius* and *Rhomnsius* haue bestowed their Discourses on this Subiect, as *Goropius* also and others of s late yeeres haue done. The most probable cause is the raines, which t *Goropius* in his *Niloscopium*, deriueth from a double cause. For the Sunne in places neere the Line, doth shew more mighty effects of his fiery presence, exhaling abundance of vapours, which in terrible showers he daily repayeth, except some naturall obstacle doe hinder (as in some places of u Peru, where it seldome or neuer raineth:) And hence it is, that the Indians both East and West, and the Africans reckon their Summer and Winter otherwise then in these parts of the World: for this time of the Sunnes neere presence with them, they call Winter, in regard of these daily stormes; which hee seemes to recompence them with other sixe
60 moneths continuall serenitie and faire weather, not then raysing (by reason of his further absence) any more exhalations then are by himselfe exhausted and consumed, which time for that cause they call Summer. GOROPIUS therefore out of his coniectures reflecte

g D. Chyter.
* Coptus, as Pliny saith, was the neerest mart to Nilus, of Arabia, and Indian Merchandise, lib. 2. c. 9.
h Scal. E. T. 4. f. Lidyat. E. T.
i Steph. Byz. Rossius. Orbis Thes.
k Apollon. Argon.
l Teatrz. ad Lycophron.
m Fast. 4. Tib. L. 1. El. 4. Pig.
n G. Sandys.
o Agatherbides ap. Phot. 250. Lagrabel Aeromol. 1. 11. per totum.
p Ptol. L. 4. c. 5.
q Vid. Rossius in Dionys. Æthiicus and others diuide Egypt into the superiour and inferiour this is that Delta, the other Thebaus. Ortel. Similar.
r F. Figafetta. L. 2. c. vlt. ap. Ram.
s Scal. ex. 47. Lucret. l. 6. Lucan. l. 10.
t Goro. in Becesf. Niloscopium.
u Acosta lib. 4. Ind.

telleth vs of a twofold Winter, vnder both Tropikes at the same time; vnder *Cancer*, the rainy Winter, which in manner (as ye haue heard) attends on the Sunne; vnder *Capricorne* the Astronomicall Winter in the Suns absence, where also he supposeth it to raine at that time, by reason of the high Hills there situate, and the great Lakes which minister store of moisture, besides that *Cancer* is then in the house of the Moone. Againe, the winds x *Etesij* (that is to say, *ordinary euery yeere*) in their annuall course, euery Winter lift vp the Cloudes to the tops of the Hils, which melt them into raine, whereby all the Riuers in *Æthiopia* are filled: and cause those ouer-flowings, which in *Nilus* is strangest, because it is in Egypt farthest off from the raines that cause it. *Aristides* y sayth, that *Aristotle* found by his wit, and *Alexander* by experience, sending men thither for that purpose, that raines were the cause of this ouer-flowing, and that those raines were caused by *Etesian* winds, which (sayth hee) are by the approching Sunne ingendred in the North parts, and carried to the South, where meeting and multiplying on the tops of the high *Æthiopian* Hils, they cause raines. Master *Sandys* affirmeth, that some moneth before this rising of Nilus, for diuers dayes you shall here see the troubled Ayre full of blacke and ponderous Cloudes, and heare a continuall rumbling, threatning to drowne the whole Country, yet seldome so much as dropping, but carried Southward by the North winds that constantly blow at that season. The Egyptians by three Pitchers Hieroglyphically intimated a threefold cause; the Earth, the South-Ocean, and these raines. Strange it is, that the Earth of Egypt adioyning to the Riuer, preserued, and weighed daily, keepes the same weight till the seuenteenth of Iune, and then growes daily heauier with the increase of the Riuer: experimented generally affirmed by French, English, and others.

x P. Pigafetta. l. 2.

y *Arist. ap. Plut. 249.*

Marcus Fridericus Wendelinus hath written a large Booke, which hee calleth *Admiranda Nili*, and hath preambled with a pretie Preface Booke of the wonders of water, Saint *Ambrose* had giuen him a good Text in his *Hexaemero*. *The Sea*, saith hee, *is good, the hostry of Riuers, the fountaine of showers, the deriuation of ouer-flowings. By it remote Nations are seyned, danger of battles are removed, Barbarian furie is bounded, it is a helpe in necessitie, in perils a refuge, a delight in pleasures, wholsomnesse to the health, conuniction of men separated, compendious vsefulnesse of trauelling, a shelter of the afflicted; a Subsidie to the publike Treasury, the nourishment of sterilitie. Hence are showres transfused on the Earth; the Sunne drawing the water of the Sea, by his rarifying beames, and exhaling it vp to the colder shadie clouds; there cooled and condensate into showers, which not only temper the drought, but makes fertile the fields. What should I reckon the blanck stuffes which are as it were embroydered iewels, in which those which with sirme purpose of chastitie put off the secular enticements of intemperance, may chuse to lye hid to the World, and to auoyd the doubtfull turnecoaties of this life. The Sea therefore is the Cost of Temperance, the Schoole of Continence, the retyring place of Gravity, the Hauen of Securitie, the time-tempests calme, the sobrietie of the World, the incentiue of deuotion, the voyce of singers contending with the waues, surges, &c.* These prayses of that holy Father giuen to the Sea, may here be set as Prince *Nilus* his Inheritance, the Oceans eldest sonne, a Riuer of longer course, and further fetched, and more vnknowne pedigree then any Riuer that age of the Ancients knew, and from so equall an arbitrament to three Seas, the West-Atlantike, the East-Indian, and vnknowne-South running so many degrees to the North, in pilgrimage to that holy ground where Christ himselfe had sought refuge, and whence by a mightie hand God had deliuered Israel, and in whose waters *Moses* made the beginning of the Egyptian plagues. For more holinesse was in Christs feet, then could be vnholinesse in *Egypts* elder Idolatries, or later Mahumetan Furies: and yet those precious feet impart no holinesse to the ground or men, where Faith receiueth not what thence readily floweth. Still doth Nilus visit, and euer forsakes those whom Christ visited, and which haue forsaken Christ, as drowning himselfe for anguish, or vnder the Seas bottome to seeke close and priuate Intelligence with Iordan, where the waters are as pestiferous in that *Dead Sea*, as were the deeds Deuillish which ouerwhelmed the Sodomites Region therein, and from the neighbouring Region chased the Canaanites first, and after the carnall Israelites. But I am almost drowned also betwixt these places of Diuine Iudgement. *Wendelinus* hath giuen vs the elder names *Schehor*, μέλας ἄνυδρος, *Oceanus*; *Ægyptus*, *Triton*, *Asflaborus*, *Iupiter Ægyptius*, *Gichon*, *Syrio*, *Chrysorrhoos*, *Nogm*, *Mahara*, *Abbahuisis*, *Syene*, *Dyris*. Hee tels vs also the originall (out of the *Negus* his Title) to be in *Goyome*, a Country subiect to the *Abassine*: argueth against the conceits of those which make *Nilus* one of the Riuers of Paradise, and Philosophically discourseth of the ouer-flowing, the mouthes and issues, and the qualities thereof, but so largely that I rather referre the studious to him, then presume hence to enlarge this Discourse already tedious. He hath packed his Booke as a full store-house of ancient and moderne, Ethnike and Christian authorities of all kindes in this Argument. In my *Voyages* now published *Alvarez* and the Iesuits giue great light to this Obscure-famous Riuer.

Iohn Baptista Scottia a Iesuite hath lately published two Bookes of this one Riuer, with ma-

manifold speculations thereon. It seemeth not without cause that the name Paper is deriued from *Papyrus*, growing in *Nilus*; so much Paper hath bin written thereon. He deriueth *Nilus* from two Lakes, which I dare not aduenture, there are so many *Hippopotami*, and Crocodiles therein. The ouer-flowing is common to most Riuers vnder the Line, to *Zaire*, and diuers Riuers of Africa (but the cause and effect are in shorter streames more euident) to *Gambra* also whose ouer-flowing is as obscure on the *Guinea* Coast as *Nilus* on the *Egyptian*) likewise to Menan of Pegu, and Indus (which *Philostratus* in diuers other things compares to Nilus) and the Riuer of Siam in Asia; and to the Riuers of *Amazones*, and Guiana in America. Frier *Luys de Urreta* ascribeth the ouer-flowing to some secret passages and pores, whereby the Ocean, and the Mountaynes of the Moone hold mutuall commerce. This increase of Nilus continueth forty dayes or more, after which followeth the decreale as long. In the middle of Nilus (sayth [a] *Leo*) ouer against the old City of Cairo, standeth the Ile *Michias*, or the measuring Ile, contayning one thousand, and fiue hundred Families, and a Temple, and a foure-square Cisterne of eighteene [b] Cubits depth, whereinto the water of Nilus is conueyed by a certaine sluce vnder the ground, in the midst whereof is a Pillar marked also with eighteene Cubits, to which Officers for the purpose resort daily from the seuenteenth of Iune, to obserue the increase, which if it amount to fifteene Cubits, and there stay, it doth portend fertilitie, and how much ouer or vnder, so much lesse abundance. In the meane time the people deuoutly exercise Prayer and Almes-giuing: And after, the price of victuals (especially of Corne) is proportionably appointed for the whole yeere. The Cities and Townes of Egypt, whiles this inundation lasteth, are so many Ilands. Master *Sandys* [c] writes, that it begins to arise with the arising Sanne on the seuenteenth of Iune, swelling by degrees, till it mounts sometimes foure and twenty Cubits, but that the vttermost. Heretofore seuenteene was the most that it attayned to, presented by that Image of Nilus hauing seuenteene children playing about it: brought from hence by *Vespasian*, and dedicated in his Temple of *Peace*, still to bee seene in the Vatican at Rome. That yeere when he was there, it did rise at Cairo three and twentie Cubits about two miles aboue the Citie; at the end of old Cairo, in the beginning of August they cut the bankes (for sooner, it would destroy the vnreaped fruits) the *Bassa* himselfe in person giuing the first stroke; a world of people attending Boates, or in Pauillions on the shoare, with night triumphs and reiocyings, welcoming in the Riuer into the Land diuers dayes together. The *Bassa* feasts three dayes in the Castle of *Michias*. In the nights their many lights (placed in buildings erected of purpose for this solemnity) make a glorious shew. These lights are said to succeed the Deuillish Sacrifices of a young Man and a Mayd, wonted to be offered at this time to *Osiris* and *Isis*; euery night they haue fire-workes: Euery Turke of account hath a gallant Boat adorned with Streamers, Chambers, and the Lights artificially set, to represent Cattles, Ships, Houses, or other formes: in the day making Sea-fights, others practising like exercises on land. The soyle is sandy and vnprofitable, the Riuer both moystening and manuring it. Yea, if there dye in Cairo fiue thousand of the plague the day before, yet on the first of the Riuers increase, the plague not only decreaseth, but merely ceases, not one dying the day after: which we haue elsewhere ascribed to the Sunnes entrance into *Leo*. The land is otherwise a very Desart, as appeared two yeeres together when *Cleopatra* raigned, Nilus not ouer-flowing, and in *Iosephus* seuen yeeres of famine, the Riuer being part of *Pharaohs* Dreame, *by which he food, and out of which the fat and leane* [d] *Kine ascended*.

And thus, sayth *Herodotus*, The Land of Egypt doth not onely owe the fertility, but her selfe also vnto the slimy increase of Nilus: for [e] raine is a stranger in this Countrey, seldome seene, and yet ofener then welcome: as vnwholesome to the Inhabitants. *Pharus*, by *Homer* mentioned farre off in the Sea, is now adioyning to the Continent. The mouthes or falls of Nilus, numbred by the Prophet *Esay*, [f] and other in old times, seuen; and after *Plinie* (who reckoneth the foure smaller) seuen: are now (as *Willelmus Tyrius* out of his owne search testifieth) but foure, or as other Writers, but three worthy of consideration: *Rosette*, *Balbitina*, *Damiata*, where the saltnesse of the earth and shels found in it, may seeme to confirme *Herodotus* opinion, that Nilus hath wonne it from the Sea: which *Georgius* laboureth to confute. *Aristotle* [g] doth not onely auerre the former opinion with *Herodotus*, but addes, that all the mouthes of Nilus, except that of Canopus, may seeme to be the labour of men, and not naturall Channels to the Riuer

See *Iobson* of *Gambra*.

z *Historia de la Etiopia*, l. 1. c. 28.

a *Leo* lib. 3.

b *Himerius apud Phot.* 243. mentions this measuring Nilus by Cubits.

c *Sandys*.

d *Gen.* 41. 1, 2, 3 *vid. Cam. Mart. Mart. Munst. &c.*

e Raine is infectious if at any time it fall in Egypt, except in and about *Alexandria*, where *Plerisque* saith it raineth. *Sac. lib.* 19.

Nilus solus ex omnibus vnimbris nullus exprimit Aulus Gellius.

f *Isay* 11. 15.

g *A. Meteor. l.* 1 *vid. Hieron. ad Esai.* 11.

HONDIVS *his Map of* Egypt.

40

§. II.

The diuision of Ægypt, and the great workes of their Ancient Pharaos.

EGypt was anciently diuided into *Thebais Delta*, and the Region interiacent: and these subdiuided into sixe and thirty *Nomi*, which we call Shires, whereof *Tanite* and *Heliopolite* were the assignement of *Iacobs* Family, [h] then called *Gessen*, from whence *Moses* after conducted them into Canaan, as *Strabo* [i] also witnesseth. The wealth of Egypt, as it proceedeth from Nilus, so is it much increased by the fit conueyance in the naturall and hand-labouured channels [k] thereof. Their harueſt beginneth in Aprill, and is threshed out in May. In this one Region were sometimes (by *Herodotus* and *Plenies* report) twenty thousand Cities: *Diodorus* [l] *Siculus* sayth eighteene thousand: and in his time, three thousand. He also was told by the Egyptian Priests, that it had beene gouerned about the space of eighteene hundred yeeres, by the Gods and *Heroes*; the last of whom was *Orus*: after whom it was vnder Kings vntill his time, the space almost [m] of fifteene hundred yeeres. To *Herodotus* they reported of three hundred and thirty Kings from *Menus* to *Sesostris*.

h *D. Chyr.*
i *Strabo.l.16.*
k *Sesostris, Ptolomei, Troiani fosse.*
l *Diod.Sic.l.1.*
m *Olymp.180.*

The Scripture, whose Chronology conuinceth those lying Fables, calleth their Kings by one generall name, *Pharao* (which some [n] interprete a Sauiour; *Iosephus* saith it signifieth authority) and maketh ancient mention of them in the dayes of *Abraham*. Some begin this

n *Mon. de vet. Ios. Antiq.l.3.c.4.*

Royall

Royall computation at *Miz raim*. If our *Berosus* which *Annius* hath set forth, were of authoritie, [k] hee telleth, that *Cham*, the sonne of *Noah*, was by his father banished for particular abuse of himselfe, and publike corruption of the World, teaching and practising those vices, which before had procured the Deluge, as Sodomie, Incest, Buggerie: and was therefore branded with the name *Chemesenna*, that is, Dishonest *Cham*, in which the Egyptians followed him, and reckoned him among their gods by the name of [l] *Saturne*, consecrated him a Citie, called *Chemmis*. The Psalmes of [m] *David* doe also thus intitle Egypt, *The land of Cham*: which name was retayned by the Egyptians themselues in *Jeremes* [n] dayes. *Chemmis*, after *Diodorus*, was hallowed to *Pan*, and the word signifieth *Pans Citie*: in *Herodotus* his time it was a great Towne in *Thebais*, hauing in it a Temple of *Perseus*, square, and let round with Palme-trees, with a huge porch of stone, on which were two great statues, and in it a Chappell, with the Image of *Perseus*. The Inhabitants want not their miraculous Legend, of the Appatitions of their god, and had a relique of his, a sandale of two cubits which here sometimes ware; they celebrate festiall games in his honour, after the Greeke manner. *Herodotus* also mentioneth an Iland called *Chemmis*, with the Temple of *Apollo* in it. Some say, [o] Thebes was called in their Holiest, Chemia, or Chamia: and all [p] Egypt was sometime called Thebes.

Lucan [q] saith, the Egyptians were the first that had Temples, but their Temples had no Images. Their first Temples are reported [r] to haue beene erected in the time of [s] *Osiris* and *Isis*, whose parents were *Iupiter* and *Iuno*, children to *Saturne* and *Rhea*, who succeeded *Vulcan* in this Kingdome. They built a magnificent Temple to *Iupiter* and *Iuno*, and two other golden Temples to *Iupiter Coelestis*, and *Iupiter Ammon*, or *Cham*, which wee before spake of, instituting vnto them Priests and golden statues. *Menes* is reckoned the first King after those Demi-gods, [t] who built a Temple to *Vulcan*, and taught the people to sacrifice, and other rites of Religion. Long after him, *Busiris* built Thebes, which was [u] said to haue an hundred Gates, and many starely erections of Temples, Colosses, Obelisks; by the one name they call their more then giantly Images; by the other, their pillars of one stone, fashioned like a needle. *Pomponius Laetus*, and *Martianus*, speake of two of these Obelisks with hieroglyphicall inscriptions, carryed from Hieropolis in Egypt by *Augustus* to Rome, the one fourescore foote high, the other an hundred and thirtie, which was broken in the rayfing. *Plinie* mentions these and others at Rome, one of which hee made serue for the measuring of the Sunnes shadow in *Campus Martius*, in Dyall-wise. He speaketh of an Obelisk at Thebes made and rayfed by twentie thousand men.

Of foure Temples, there was one containing in circuit thirteene fuelongs, in height fiue and fortie cubits, the wall foure and twentie foote thicke. The ornaments answered to the structure. But the Gold, Siluer, Iuorie, and Iewels were taken away by the Persians, when *Cambyses* burned the Egyptian Temples. Out of those fires, they report, flowed three hundred talents of gold, and [x] two thousand and three hundred of siluer. Amongst the seuen and fortie Sepulchres of their Kings, that of *Simandius* was reckoned most sumptious, the gates whereof were two hundred foote long, and fiue and fortie cubits high: within was a square Cloyster, containing in each square foure hundred foote, borne vp with statues of beasts in stead of pillars, of sixteene cubits, the roofe made of stones, of two paces broad, beautified with statres. Then was there another gate like to the former, but fuller of worke, with three huge statues to himselfe, his mother and daughter. Within this was another Cloyster more beautifull then the former. But for the particulars of these things, let our Reader resort to *Diodorus Siculus*, who partly from the Priests relations, and in great part from his owne sight, deliuereth them at large. He addeth, that there was an inscription containing the cost and charges hereof to be three thousand and two hundred millions of Minæ. These summes are admirable, and scarcely to bee paralleld in any Historie, excelling euen those summes which *David* left *Salomon* for the Temple, and onely surmounted by those summes which *David* left *Salomon* for the Temple, and onely surmounted by those which *Sardanapalus* is said to haue consumed together with himselfe in his funerall fire. For if we account euery Mina three pound two shillings and sixe pence, as Master *Brerewood* hath obserued of the Atticke Mina, out of many Authors, (which yet is lesse then the Egyptian, and but halfe so much as that of the Hebrewes and Alexandrians) it comes to ten thousand millions of our pounds: a summe incredible, improbable, that I say not impossible. Yea, neither are those things credible which *Ctesias* tells of *Sardanapalus*, which *Brerewood* summeth after the Attick Talent, at two and twentie thousand and fiue hundred millions of pounds in gold, and eighteene thousand two hundred and fiftie millions of pounds in siluer. Euen in those things also which the sacred Historie auoucheth of *David*, howsoeuer the truth is beyond all names of certaintie, yet the interpretation of that truth is not fully agreed vpon, as we haue elsewhere shewed.

This cost of *Sumandius*, although inlarged in the telling, doth not disagree to that Egyptian

k *Pseudo Berosus.*

l *Xenoph. de aquinoctiis*, called heth *Cham*, *Saturnus* of Egyptians.

m *Psalm.* 78. 51. 106.

n *Hier. in Gen. sponsalit. Cons.*

o *Plut. in Of.*

p *Arist. Meteor. lib. 1.*

q *Lucian. Dea Syr.*

r *Diod. Sic. l. 1.*

s *Osiris* is supposed by some to be the sonne of *Cham*, *vide sup. cap. 6.*

Patric. supr.

t *Moses de vera rit. christ. Relig. cap. 26.*

u *Herodotus.* *Diony. Oikeus ἐγγύτερον ἐκείνου, ἐκείνου. Arist. vetus Thebe centum ostia habentis.*

x The Egypt talent of siluer is reckoned 250. l. of our money: and gold is vsually accounted 12. times so much.

tian opinion, esteeming their houses their Inns, and their Sepulchres their eternall habitations. Of the race of *Simandus* was *Ogdous*, that built [e] Memphis (called in the Scripture *Noph*) compassing a hundred and fifty furlongs, at the parting of Nilus into that *Delta*-diuision, where the succeeding Kings abode, forsaking Thebes till Alexandria was after built by *Alexander*.

[e] *In 63.31.& 29.50.*

Thebes was called *Diospolis*, or *Iupiters* City, where (as *Strabo* [f] reporteth) was consecrated to *Iupiter* a beautifull Virgin of noble birth, who, vntill the time that shee had her naturall purgation, had the carnall company of whomsoeuer shee pleased, and at this her menstruous accident was bewayled as dead, and after married. Such Virgins the Greeks (sayth he) called *Pallades*. Many yeeres after *Ogdous*, succeeded *Sesostris*. [g] *Iosephus* is of opinion, that *Herodotus* erred in the name, and ascribed the deeds of [h] *Shishak* to *Sesostris*; to which also the computation of *Herodotus* doth agree reasonably in the time. [i] Others account him the same with *Sesachis* in *Diodorus*. The huge Conquests of this *Sesostris* are beyond all that euer *Alexander* atchieued, if we credit Authors. At his returne he builded in euery City of Egypt a Temple to their chiefe God at their owne costs; and offered a ship of Cedar two hundred and eighty Cubits in length, siluered on the in-side, gilded on the out-side, to the chiefe God at Thebes, and two Obelisks one hundred and twenty Cubits high, wherein were ingrauen the greatnesse of his Empire and Reuenues. At Memphis in the Temple of *Vulcan* he dedicated Statues of him selfe and his wife, thirty Cubits high, of his children twenty. And when he went to the Temple, or through the City, his Chariot was drawne by Kings, as *Lucan* singeth:

[f] *Strab.l.17.*

[g] *Antiq.l.8.c.4.*
[h] *3.Reg.11.29*
[i] *Pauser. l.1.c.12. Lud.Regl.lib.4.*

Venit ad Oceasum mundiq; extrema Sesostris;
Et Pharios curruu Regum cernitiuu egit,

Sesostris in the Westerne World, by Warre
Compelled Kings to draw his Memphian Carre.

Learned M. *Fuller. Misc.l.2.c.4.* holds the relations of *Teucen* and *Sesostris* to be in great part fabulous; and rather troublesome Expeditions then settled Empires.

Thus we reade in our owne Chronicles [k] of *Edgarus Pacificus*, sometimes King of England, rowed in a Boat by eight Kings, himselfe holding the Sterne.

[k] *Houeden. Malmesbur. Mat.West. Fox.Acts & Monuments. Speed. Stow chron.&c.*

Tacitus [l] telleth of *Rhamses* an Egyptian King, who conquered the East and South parts of the World, helped herein (as the Priests told *Germanicus*) with the forces of Thebes, who had then seuen hundred thousand fighting men. This was written in Egyptian Characters at Thebes, interpreted by one of the Priests, together with his reuenues not inferiour to the Romane or Parthian Empires. *Pheron*, the Sonne and Successor of *Sesostris*, enraged at the rage of Nilus, swelling aboue eighteene Cubits, cast a Dart against the streame, [m] and thereupon lost his sight, which by the aduice of the Oracle in Butis, was restored by the vrine of a woman, which had neuer knowne man but her husband: which caused him to burne his owne wife, and many other, saying in this new experiment, and to marry her whom at last he found by this proofe to be honest. He set vp in the Temple of the Sunne two Pillars, each of one stone of 100. Cubits high, and eight broad. After succeeded *Memphites*, *Rhasinitus*, and *Cheopes*. This last shut vp all the Temples in Egypt and busied them in his owne workes, one hundred thousand by course ten yeeres together, in building a Pyramis for his Sepulchre. The least stone was thirty foot, and all grauen. Nilus passeth vnder it by a Trench. It was reckoned among the Wonders of the World. His daughter and brother made two other; odious therefore to the Egyptians who will not once name them. This was hollow, the other solid. They did it (sayth he) in hope of the Resurrection. For they would not entere their dead bodies, because of the Wormes; nor burne them, because they esteemed fire, a liuing creature, which feeding thereon, must together with it perish. They therefore with Nitre and Cedar, or with compositions of *Myrrhe*, *Cassia*, and other Odours thus preserue them. *Scaliger* sayth, [n] they ice these bodies in their dining Roomes, that their Children and Nephewes might behold them whiles they were eating. Some also report, [o] That the poorer sort vsed hereunto the slimy Bitumen of the *Dead Sea*, which laid preserued an infinite number of Carcasses in a dreadfull Cate (not farre from these Pyramides) yet to bee seene with their flesh and members whole, after so many thousand yeeres, and some with their haire and teeth: Of these is the true *Mummia*.

[l] *Annal.2.15.*

[m] *Hist.lib.2.*

[n] *Sch.Ep.ad Pattan.*
[o] *Gi.Bat.Ben. Pere.fun. an. cap.21. Trouet. Cosmog. de Leuant.*

The Mores and Indians violate the Sepulchres: and either burne them, (as is reported they sometimes doe, in stead of fire-wood, which is scarce in those parts) or else sell them at Cairo, a body for a Dolor, the Citie being nigh twenty miles from thence. For these *Mummes* are neere the place where Memphis sometimes stood. In that place are some indifferent great, and a number of little Pyramides with Tombes of seuerall fashions; many ruinated, and many violated: the ancient Egyptians couering there to bee buried, as the place supposed to containe the

thebody of *Osiris*. Vnder euery one, or wherefoeuer lye stones not naturall to the place, by
removing the same, descents are discouered like the narrow mouthes of Wels, hauing holes
in each side of the walls, to descend by (but with troublesome passage) some well-nigh ten
fadome deepe, leading into long Vaults (belonging, it should seeme, to particular Families)
hewen out of the Rock with pillars of the same. Betweene euery arch the corpses lye ranckt
one by another, shrowded in a number of folds of linnen, swathled in bands or the same, the
brests of some being stayned with hieroglyphicall Characters. Within their bellies are pain-
ted papers, and their gods inclosed in little models of stone or metall: some of the shape of
menin coat-armours, with the heads of Sheepe, Hawkes, Dogs, &c. others of Cats, Beetles,
10 Monkies, and such like. They wrapt the dead bodies in manifold folds of linnen besmeared
with gumme, and after other ceremonies laid the corps in a boat to be wasted ouer Acherusia,
a Lake on the South side of the Citie by *Charon* (so they called the Ferry-man) and there the
body was brought before certayne Iudges, who, if conuinced of euill life, depriued it of bu-
riall; the most terrible of punishments to the Egyptians. About this Lake stood the Temple
of *Hecate*, with the Ports of *Cocytus* and *Lethe*; or *Oblivion*: *Styx* and other Poeticall fables
had hence their deriuation. But let vs returne to the Pyramides, and view them as they now
stand, with Master *Sandys* his eyes: hauing first told a miracle, or imposture rather of the
Moores with pieces of *Mummes* stucke in the sands, many thousands on *Good Friday* resor-
ting to see the armes and legs of dead men appearing on the other side of Nilus, to the gayne
20 of the Ferry-men, for this cause perhaps, deluding the superstitious vulgar. *Baumgarten*
mentions it in his time, and thought it an illusion of the Deuill: whether Hee, or His, wee
will not now examine.

Full west from Cairo, close vpon the Libyan Deserts, hauing crossed Nilus, and a Playne
twelue miles ouer, they came to the three Pyramides, the greatest of them is ascended by
two hundred and fiftie fiue steps, each step aboue three feet high, of a breadth proportionable.
No stone so little through the whole, as to bee drawne by our carriages, brought out of the
Mountayne of Arabia, with a double wonder of the conueyance and mounting. The North
side is most worne by reason of the humiditie of the Northerne winde in these parts. From
the top is discerned the Countrey, with her beloued *Nile*, the *Mummes* and many huge Py-
30 ramides afarre off, each of which, were this away, might be reputed wonderfull. Descending
on the East side, below from each corner equally distant, they approched the entrance, into
which they went with a light in euery mans hand: a narrow and dreadfull passage, stooping
or creeping, as downe the steepe of an hill an hundred foote, the descent still continuing, but
few daring to venter further. (*Plinie* writes, that at the bottome is a spacious pit, eightie
and sixe cubits deepe, filled at the ouerflow by concealed Conduits; others adde, that there
is in the middest a little Iland, on that the Tombe of *Cheops* the Founder.) Master *Sandys*
saith, That climbing ouer the mouth of this dungeon, they ascended by like vneasie passage
about an hundred and twentie feete; and thence passing through a long irksome entre di-
rect forward, they came to a little roome with a compast roofe of polished marble. From
40 hence they climbed an hundred and twentie feete higher, at the top entring a goodly roome
twentie foote wide, and fortie foote long; the roofe of a marvailous height, the stones so
great, that eight floores it, eight roofes it; eight flagge the ends, and sixteene the sides, all of
well wrought Theban marble. At the vpper end is a Tombe of one stone, vncouered and
empte, brest high, seuen foote in length, and almost foure in breadth, sounding like a bell,
more probably supposed the Builders sepulchre. If any desire a more exact survey, let him re-
sort to our Authour, and other eye and pen-witnesses. Not farre hence is that *Sphynx*, a huge
Colosse, with the head of a Maide, and body of a Lion, supposed by *Bellonius*, to be the monu-
ment of some sepulchre, by *Plinie*, of *Amasis*. Ie yet continueth all of one stone, and is a huge
face, looking toward Cairo. The compasse of the head, saith *P. Martyr* * aneye-witnesse, is
50 fiftie eight paces. *Plinie* ª numbreth eight Pyramides, and saith, That the compasse of this
Sphynx, about the head, was an hundred and two feete, the length an hundred and fortie
three. Master *Sandys* affirmeth, that vnto the mouth it consists of the naturall Rocke, thus
aduanced; the rest of huge flat stones laid thereon, wrought altogether into the forme of an
Æthiopian woman (heretofore adored by the people) not so huge as before reported, the
whole being but sixtie foote high: the face disfigured by Time, or the Moores superstition,
detesting Images. *Plinie* writes, That three hundred and sixtie thousand men were twentie
yeeres in making one of the Pyramides; and three were made in seuentie eight yeeres and
foure moneths. The greatest (saith he) couereth eight Acres of ground; and *Bellonius* affir-
meth, That the Pyramides rather exceed, then fall short of the reports of the Ancient; and
60 that a strong and cunning Archer on the top, is not able to shoot beyond the fabrick of one;
which *Villamont*, being there, caused to bee tried and found true. *William Lithgow* writeth,
that the height of one is 1092. foote, ᵇ as their *Dragoman* told him: the top thereof is all
one

* *Leg. Bab. l. 5.*
ª *Lib. 36. c. 12.*

ᵇ *Plinie* saith 8 23. c. and the second 737. the third 363.

one c stone, which he measured seuenteene foote in euery square, yet on the ground seemed as sharpe as a pointed Diamond. The other are lower, and want steps to ascend on them. They are of marble. But I would be loth to burie the Reader in these sumptuous monuments, the witnesses of vanitie and ostentation; of which, besides the Ancient, *Martyr*, *Bellonius*, *Eneeham*, *Villamont*, and other eye-witnesses haue largely written.

c Sandys hath three stones.

Mycerinus is reckoned the next King, better beloued of his subiects, whose daughter was buried in a woodden Bull d in the Citie Sai; to which euery day were odors offered, and a light set by night. This Oxe once a yeere was brought out to the people. Next to him was *Aspelus*, who made a Pyramis of bricks; and these bricks were made of earth, that eleuete the end of a pole for this purpose, in a vaine curiositie thrust into a Lake. Yet were all these wonders exceeded by the Labyrinth, the worke (say some) of *Psammetichus*, or (after *Herodotus*) of the twelue Peeres which raigned in common as Kings; partly aboue ground, partly beneath, in both containing 3500. roomes. *Herodotus* saith, he saw the vpper roomes, the lower he might not, as being the sepulchres of the Founders, and of the sacred Crocodiles: all was of stone, and grauen. The cause of making this Labyrinth is diuersly deliuered; by *Demoteles*, the Palace of *Mothetudes*; by *Lysias*, the sepulchre of *Meris*; the most probable opinion, that it was consecrated to the Sunne: the paterne to *Dedalus*, for that in Crete, representing but the hundreth part of this. The entrance was of Parian marble pillars. The worke was diuided into Regions e and perfectures, sixteene vast houses being attributed to sixteene of them. There were also Temples for all the Ægyptian gods; and *Nemeses* aboue in sifteene Chappels: many Pyramides also, each of fortie elles, and founded on sixe walls. After a wearie iourney they come to those inexplicable wayes (the Labyrinth of this Labyrinth) hauing before ascended high Halls and Galleries, each of ninetie steps, inly adorned with pillars of Porphyrie, Images of their Gods, statues of Kings, and monstrous shapes. Some of the houses were so seated, that the opening of the doores caused a terrible thunder: As terrible was the darke wayes: and most of all, without a guide, the inextricable windings, insolded walls, and manifold deceiuing doores, making by many passages, none at all. No cement or morter was vsed in all this huge worke.

d Porcherab in his *Funerals Antichi Tuo.* 32. hath set forth this in picture. *Herod. Col. lib.* 3. *Reg.* 23. 29.

Plin. l. 36. *c.* 12.

e There were in Ægypt 73. Nomi, 10. in Thebais, 10. in Delta, and 17. in the middle Region.

The Lake of *Meris* was not lesse wonderfull, compassing three thousand sixe hundred furlongs, and sifteene fadome in depth, made by *Meris* whose name it beareth: in the middest were two Pyramides sifteene fadome aboue, and as much beneath water, one for himselfe, the other for his wife; The water flowes sixe moneths out, and sixe moneths in, from Nilus. The fish were worth to the Kings coffers twentie of their pounds a day, the first sixe; and a talent a day, the last sixe moneths. Of *Necoe*, whom the Scripture calls *Pharaoh Necho*, and of his victorie against the Syrians in Magdolo, or Magiddo, where he slue King *Iosiah*, *Herodotus* witnesseth. Hee also makes this *Necoe* author of that Trench; from Nilus to the Red Sea (which *Strabo* ascribes to *Sesostris*. *Plinie* f makes *Sesostris* first Authour, seconded by *Darius*, who in this businesse was followed by *Ptolemæus*) one hundred foot broad, seuen and thirtie miles long; but forced to leaue the enterprise, for feare of the Red Sea ouer-flowing Egypt, or mixing his water with Nilus.

f *Plin. l.* 6. *c.* 29.

g *Anton. Galius.*

h *Philostrat. de vita Apollon. l.* 5. *c.* 40. 35. saith that *Apollonius*, seeing a Lion (which one had tamed) offer to fawne on him, with all vttering certaine murmurings, interpreted that speech of the Lion to the people, saying, that hee sometime had been *Amasis* the Ægyptian King: whereupon he was sent with pompous procession of the Priests, to Leontopolis, and there placed in the Temple.

Tremelius thinkes it to be the labour of the Israelites, in that seruitude from which *Moses* freed them. He consumed in this worke 130000. Ægyptians. After him reigned *Samon*, and then *Apries*. About these times g *Nabuchodonosor* conquered the Ægyptians according to *Ezechiels* prophecie, *Ezech.* 30. But they had also ciuill warres. *Amasis* h deprued *Apries*, who, being of a base birth, of a great bason of gold in which himselfe and his guests had vsed to wash their feete, made an Image and placed it in the most conuenient part of the Citie, and obseruing their superstitious deuotion thereunto, said that they ought now no lesse to respect him, notwithstanding his former base birth and offices. When hee was a priuate man, to maintayne his prodigall expenses, he vsed to steale from others: and when they redemanded their owne, he committed himselfe to the censure of their Oracles. Such Oracles as neglected his thefts, hee being a King, did neglect. Hee brought from the Citie Elephantina twentie dayes sayling, a building of solid stone, the roofe being of one stone, one and twentie cubits long, fourteene broad, and eight thicke, and brought it to the Temple at Sai. Hee ordayned, that euery one should yeerly giue account to the Magistrate, how hee liued, and maintayned himselfe. And he which brought a false account, or liued by vnlust meanes, was put to death. Hee was buried, as was supposed, in that *Sphynx* aboue said. *Psammenitus* his sonne succeeded, whom *Cambyses* deprued.

CHAP. III.
Of the Ægyptian Idols, with their Legendarie Histories, and Mysteries.

§. I.

Of Osiris *and* Isis, *their Legends of the Creation, &c.*

FWe stay longer on this Ægyptian Stage, partly the varietie of Authors may excuse vs which haue entreated of this Subiect, partly the varietie of matter, which adding some light to the Diuine Oracles, (not that they need it, which are in themselues a *Light* [a] *shining in a darke place*; but because of our need, whose Owlish-eyes cannot so easily discerne that light) deserue a larger relation. For whether the Histories of the old Testament, or the Prophecies of the New, be considered, both there literally wee reade of Ægyptian Rites practised, and here mystically of like Superstitions in the Antichristian Synagogue reuiued, therefore [b] *spiritually called Sodome and Ægypt.* No where can Antiquitie plead a longer succession of error; no where of Superstition more multiplicitie; more blind zeale, in prosecuting the same ture, whose *Heauen is brasse*, and yet thine *Earth* not *Iron*; wonderfull for Antiquitie, Arts and Armes; but no way so wonderfull, as in thy Religions, wherewith thou hast disturbed the rest of the World, both elder and later, Heathen and Christian, to which thou hast beene a sinke and Mother of Abhominations. Thy *Heathenisme* planted by *Cham*, watered by *Iannes, Iambres, Hermes*, ouerflowed to Athens and Rome: Thy *Christianisme* was famous for many ancient Fathers; more infamous for that *Arrian heresie*, which rising heere, eclipsed the Christian Light; the World wondring and groaning to see it selfe an Arrian. I speake not of the first Monkes, whose Egge, here laide, was faire, and beginnings holy: but (by the Diuels brooding) brought forth in after-ages a dangerous Serpent: Thy Mahumetisme entertained with like fightnesse of credulitie, with like eagernesse of deuotion, hath beene no lesse troublesome to the Arabian Sect in Asia and Affrike, then before to the Heathens or Christians in Europe. The first Author (it seemeth) of this Egyptian, as of all other false Religions, was *Cham* (as before is said) which had taken deepe rooting in the dayes of *Ioseph* the Patriarch, and in the dayes of *Moses*; their Priests, [c] Wisemen and Soothsayers, confirming their deuotions with lying Miracles, as the Scriptures testifie of *Iannes* and *Iambres*; and [d] *Hermes Trismegistus*, of his Grandfather and himselfe. The Grecians ascribe these deuotions to *Osiris* and *Isis*: of whom the Historie and Mysterie is so confused; that *Typhon* neue shewed *Osiris* into so many pieces, as these vaine *Theologians* and *Mythologians* haue done. They are tortoothsh in the Egyptian throne, King and Queene: in the Heauens, the Sunne and Moone: beneath these, the Elements; after *Herodotus*, they are *Bacchus* and *Ceres*: *Diodorus* maketh *Osiris* the same with the Sonne, *Serapis, Dionysius, Pluto, Ammon, Iupiter, Isis*, the Moone; *Ceres* and *Iuno, Appollodorus* makes her *Ceres*: and *Io. Antonius*, and *Cleopatra* stiled and figured themselues, the one *Osiris*, and the other *Isis*. In *Macrobius*, and *Seruius*, she is the nature of things; [e] He, *Adonis*, and *Atis*: *Plutarch* addeth to these Interpretations *Oceanus* and *Serinis*; as to *Isis, Minerua, Proserpina, Thetis*. And if you haue not enough, *Apuleius* will helpe you, with *Venus, Diana, Bellona, Hecate, Rhamnusia*: and *Heliodorus* neere home, maketh *Osiris* to be *Nilus*, the Earth *Isis*. So true it is that [e] *An Idoll is nothing in the world*, and Idolaters *worship they know not what*. *Stampellus* interpreteth *Osiris* to be *Abraham*, and *Isis* to bee *Sarah*, whom *Moses* calleth also *Ischa*, *Orus Apollo*, or *Horapollo* saith, *Isis* is the Starre called of the Egyptians *Sothis*, which is the Dog-starre, therefore called *Isis*, because at the first rising of that Starre, they prognosticated what should happen the yeere following. The like was in vse amongst the Cilicians, who obserued the first rising of that starre from the top of *Taurus*, and thence saith *Manilius*,

Eueniat frugum varios & tempora dicunt,
Quaq; valitudo veniat, concordia quanta, &c.

Thence they foretell what store of fruits or want,
What times, what health, what concord, they descant.

Tully in the first Booke of his Diuination, reciteth the same out of *Heraclides, Ponticus* of the Cet. But the Egyptians had more cause to obserue that Starre, because Nilus doth then begin to encrease. And therefore from thence they began to reckon their *Tekuphon* or quarters of their yeere, as the Iewes from Nisan.

a 2. Pet. 1. 19.
b Apoc. 11. 8.
c Genes. 41.
Exod.
d Hist.
e Acts Ocin. Nuuius
e 1. Cor. 8. 4.
Isa. 44. 12.
Gang. Iam. Tab. Astrolog.

But to search this Fountaine further, you may read the Egyptian opinion in *Diodorus*, f how that the World, being framed out of that *Chaos*, or first matter, the lighter things ascending, the heauier descending, the Earth yet imperfect, was heated and hardened by the Sunne; whose violent heat begate of her slime fortneſſe certaine pueride swellings, couered with a thinne ſilme, which being by the ſame heat ripened, brought forth all manner of creatures. This *muddie generation* was (ſay they) first in Egypt moſt fit (in respect of the strong soyle, temperate ayre, Nilus ouerflowing, and exposed to the Sunne) to beget and nourish them; and ſtill retaynyng ſome ſuch vertue at the new slaking of the Riuer, the Sunne then more desirous (as it were) of this Egyptian Concubine, whom the waters had so long detained from his ſight, ingendring in that ſuitfull ſit many Creatures, as Mice and others, whose fore-parts are ſeene mouing before the hinder are formed. These new-hatched people could not but ascribe Diuinitie to the Author of their Humanitie, by the names of *Osiris* and *Isis*, worshipping the Sunne and Moone, accounting them to be gods, and euerlasting: adding in the ſame Catalogue, vnder disguised names of *Iupiter*, *Vulcan*, *Minerua*, *Oceanus*, and *Ceres*, the fiue Elements of the World, Spirit, Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth. These Eternall Gods begot others, whom not Nature, but their owne proper Merit made immortall, which reigned in Egypt, and bare the names of those celestiall Deities. Their Legend of g *Osiris*, is, that he hauing ſet Egypt in order, leauing *Isis* his wife Gouernour, appointing *Mercurie* her Counſellour (the inuenter of Arithmeticke, Muſicke, Phyſicke, and of their ſuperſtition) made an Expedition into ſarre Countries, hauing *Hercules* for his Generall, with *Apollo* his brother, *Anubis* and *Macedon* his ſonnes, (whose Ensignes were a Dog and a Wolfe, creatures after for this cauſe honoured, and their counterfeits worshipped) *Pan*, * *Maron*, and *Triptolemus*, and the nine Muſes attending with the Satyres. Thus did hee inuade the world, rather with Arts, then Armes; teaching men Husbandry in many parts of Aſia and Europe, and where Vines would not grow, to make drinke of Barley. At his returne his brother *Typhon* ſlew him, rewarded with like death by the reuenging hand of *Isis* and her ſonne *Orus*. The diſperſed pieces, into which *Typhon* had cut him, thee gathered and committed to the Priests, with injunction to worship him, with dedication vnto him of what beast they beſt liked, which alſo ſhould be obſerued with much ceremonie, both aliue and dead, in memorie of *Osiris*. In which reſpect alſo h they obſerued ſolemnely to make a lamentable search for *Osiris* with many teares, making ſemblance of like ioy at his pretended finding, whereof *Lucan* ſingeth, *Nunquamne, satis questus Osiris*; alway ſeeking (ſaith *Lactantius*) and alway finding. To eſtabliſh this *Osirian* Religion, the conſecrated a third part of the Land in Egypt for maintenance of these ſuperſtitious rites and persons: the other two parts appropriated to the King, and his Souldiers. This *Isis*, after her death, was alſo deified in a higher degree of adoration then *Osiris* ſelfe. One thing is lacking to our tale, which was alſo lacking a long time to *Isis* in her ſearch. For when ſhee had with the helpe of waxe made vp of ſixe and twentie parts, which ſhe found, ſo many Images of *Osiris*, all buried in ſeuerall places: his priuities, which *Typhon* had drowned in Nilus, were not without much labor found, and with more ſolemnitie interred. And that the Deuill might ſhew how farre hee can beſot men, the Image I hereof was made and worshipped; the light of this darkeneſſe ſhining as farreas Greece, whoſe *Phallus*, *Phallagogia*, *Ithiphallo*, *Phallophoria*, and *Phallaphori* iſſued out of this ſincke, together with their Membrous monſter *Priapus*. Yea, the Egyptians hauing loſt their owne eyes in this filthy ſuperſtition, beſtowed them on the Image of *Osiris* his ſtones, which they pourtrayed with an eye.

Athenaeus k telleth of *Ptol. Philadelphus* in a ſolemnitie, wherein hee liſted to ſhew to the world his madneſſe; or (as it was then eſteemed) his magnificence (a place worth the reading to them, who are not heere glutted with our tedious Egyptian Banquet) He among many ſumptuous ſpectacles preſented a l Phallus of gold, painted, with golden crownes, of an hundred and twentie cubits length, hauing a golden ſtarre on the toppe, whoſe circumference was ſixe cubites. This was carried in a Chariot, as in others the Image of *Priapus*, and other Idols. Of *Typhon* the Poets m fable, that after the Gods, by the helpe of mortall men, had ſlaine the *Giants*, the *Earth* in indignation for the loſſe of that her Gianty brood, lying with the Mountaines, his head reached to the Starres, one of his hands to the Weſt, the other to the Eaſt, from which proceeded an hundred heads so Dragons: his legges were entwined with rolles of Vipers, which reached to his head, filling the world with terrible hiſſings: his body couered with feathers, his eyes flaming with fire, a flame ſtreaming alſo out of his mouth. Thus was hee armed, and fought againſt Heauen, and made the Gods runne away into Egypt, and turne themſelues into many formes, with many tales vnder which I ſurceaſe to rehearse.

Of the Iſiacall rites, n that brazen Table (ſuppoſed to haue beene some Altar-cover) after

f Dod. Sic. l. 1.

g Some thinke that this *Osiris* was *Mizraim* the ſonne of *Cham*. *Moro*. See this Legend at large in *Col. Calcag. de rerb. Egypt.*

* *Polyen. Strategi. l. 1.* makes *Pan* to be *Bacchus* his Generall on his Indian Expedition

h *Lactan. lib. 1.*

i *Arnob. contra Gent. l. 5. aliam refert causam obscenissimam Natalis Com. l. 5. cap. 3. aliam.*

k *Atheneus l. 5. c. 5.*

l *Phallus* is the Image of a mans yard.

m *Apollod. de Origin. deor. l. 1. Nat. Com. &c.*

n *Laur. Pig. Oneirocriticus. exposit.*

possessed by *Card. Bembus*, full of mysticall Characters, explained by *Laurentius Pignorius* in a Treatise of this Argument, may further acquaint the desirous Reader. *Diodorus* thinketh this the cause why they consecrated Goats, and erected Images of Satyres in their Temples; affirming that their Priests are first initiated in these bawdie Rites.

§. II.

The causes of Consecrating their Beasts, and the mysticall sences of their Superstitions.

THeir canonized Beasts, of which the Ægyptians and Syrians, (saith [o] *Tully*) conceiued stronger opinions of Deuotion, then the Romans of their most sacred Temples, were [p] Doggs, Cats, Wolues, Crocodiles, *Ichnumons*, Rammes, Goates, Bulls, and Lions, in honour of *Isis*: their sacred Birds were the Hawke, *Ibis*, *Phenicopterus*: besides Dragons, Aspes, Beetles, amongst things creeping: and of Fishes, whatsoeuer had scales; and the Eele. Yea their reason did not onely to sensible things ascribe Diuinitie, but Garlike and Onions were free of their Temples, derided therefore by [q] *Iuuenal*,

Porrum & cepe nefas violare & frangere morsu:
O sanctas gentes quibus hæc nascuntur in hortis
Numina.

For this cause some [r] thinke the Hebrewes were in such *abhomination to the Ægyptians*, that they would not eate with them, as eating and sacrificing those things, which the other worshipped. Example whereof *Diodorus*, an eye-witnesse relateth, That when *Ptolemey* gaue entertainment to the Romans, whose friend hee was declared: a Roman, at vnawares having killed a Cat, could not by the Kings authoritie, sending Officers for his rescue, nor for feare of the Romans, bee deprayned from their butcherly furie. For such was their custome for the murther of those sacred Creatures, to put to death by exquisite torments him that had done it wittingly, and for the Bird *Ibis* and a Cat, although vnwittingly slaine. And therefore if any elsie any of them lying dead, hee standeth aloofe, lamenting and protesting his owne innocencie. The cause of this blinde zeale, was the metamorphosis of their distressed Gods into these shapes; Secondly, their ancient Enigmes; Thirdly, the [s] profit of them in common life. *Origen* [t] addeth a fourth, because they were vsed to diuination, and therefore (saith hee) forbidden to the Israelites as vncleane. *Eusebius* out of the Poet citeth a fifth cause, namely, the Diuine Nature diffused into all Creatures, after that of the Poet;

Deum namq; ire per omnes
Terras, tractusq; maris, cœlumq; profundum.

God goes throw Sea and Land, and lofty Skies.

I might add a sixth, that *Ægypt* [u] *Pater*, transmination, [u] which *Pythagoras* (it seemeth) borrowed hence and from India. *Yea, Ennea Gaeum* [x] a Platonike, in his *Theophrastus* or Dialogue of the Soules immortalitie, affirmeth, That *Plato* learned this opinion of the Egyptians, and dispersed it through all his Bookes; as did *Plotinus* and other his followers after him, inrubing amongst the rest *Porphyrius* and *Iamblichus*.

If I might, with the Readers patience, I would adde some what of their *Mysterie of iniquitie*, and this mysticall sense of this iniquitie. For as many haue sweat in vnfolding the mysteries of that Church, which *spiritually is called Sodome and Ægypt*, as *Ambrosius de Armmarolo*, *Amalarius*, *Durandus*, *Dunanus*, and others: so heere haue not wanted myriads Interpreters, *Porphyrius*, *Iamblichus*, *Plutarch*; and the rest. Such is the *deepenesse of Satham* in the shallownesse of humane, both reason and truth. Water and Fire they vied in all their Sacrifices, and doe them deuouter worship (saith [y] *Porphyry*) because those Elements are so profitable to mans vse: and for this vse (saie they) also did worship Creatures: as Aoubis they worshipped a Man. But especially they held in veneration those creatures which seemed to hold some affinitie with the Sunne. Eoen that stinking Beetele or Scarabee did these (more blinde then Beetles) in their stinking superstitions obserue, as a liuing Image of the Sunne; because, forsooth, all Scarabees are of Male sexe (and therefore also saith [z] *Ælian*, Souldiers wore the figure of the Scarabee in their Rings) as thereby insinuating their masculine spirits) and hauing fitted their seed in the dung, doe make a ball thereof, which they rowle too and fro with their feare, imitating the Sunne in his circular journey. *Iulius Firmicus* [a] interpreth against them for their worship, and supplications, and superstitious vowes made to the Water: and for that their fabulous Legend of *Osiris*, *Isis*, and *Typhon*, vnfolding the Hisstorie and Mysterie. *Eusebius* followeth this Argument in the seuerall Beasts which they worship: but to auoyd tediousnesse, I leaue him, to looke on *Plutarchs* paines in this Argument.

o *De Nat. Deorum lib. 1.*

p *Philo Iud. de decim. prælect. cont. App. Diet. Cantic. p. 2. Colleg. 1.*

q *Iuuenal. Sat. 15. Thereb. ad. 18. 12.* addeth garlike, as worshipped and sworne by

r *Trem & Iun. in Genes. 13. Exod. 8.*

s *Tuse. Qu. 1. 5.*

t *Orig. contra celsum lib. 4. Hier. Roman. de Interp. Genesis. 1.*

u That the same soule should one while quicken a man, another while a fish, or beast, or bird, passing from one to another

x *In Bib. Patrum. 8.*

y *Apud Euseb. de Præp. lib. 4. c. 2.*

z *Aelian. de Animal. 10. c. 15.*

a *Iul. Firm. de morb. profan. c. 2.*

of *Asclepius*: of which name were three learned Egyptians, *Asclepius Vulcani*, Inuenter of Physicke, *Asclepius Iunthes*, Inuenter of Poetry, and another which had no surname, to whom *Hermes* dedicated some of his Bookes; and the same *Asclepius* [1] in the beginning of his first Booke calleth himselfe the Scholler of *Hermes*. In the Writings of these Egyptians, translated into Greeke, and explaned by the Egyptian Priests, the Greeke Philosophers, especially Platonikes and Pythagoreans, learned their Diuine, Morall, and Naturall Philosophy. Antiquity and Learning hold vs longer in these mens company; the more curious may haue recourse to their owne works. For my owne opinion, I cannot beleeue so ancient Monuments of Ethnike Authors to remayne: but, as in the *Sybills*, *Berosus*, *Hanoch*, and many other old Authours lost, some new obtruded on the World in their Names. Yet I leaue to each man his owne censure.

1 *Asclepius de sole & demonib. lib.1.*

Twenty thousand Bookes are ascribed to *Hermes*: some say thirtie sixe thousand fiue hundred twenty fiue. He in his *Asclepius* [k] translated by *Apuleius*, thus writeth. Egypt is the Image of Heauen, and the Temple of the whole World. But the time shall come when the Egyptian deuotion shall proue vaine, and their pietie frustrate: for the Diuinitie shall returne to Heauen, and Egypt shall be forsaken of her gods. And no maruell, seeing that these Gods were Idols, *the workes of mens hands*, as himselfe [l] after sheweth: and when as they could not make soules, they called, [m] or coniured into them the soules of Deuils or Angels, by which the Images might haue power to doe good or euill. For thy Grandfather, O *Asclepius* (sayth he) was the first Inuentor of Physicke, to whom is a Temple consecrated in a Mountayne of Libya, where his worldly man (his body) resteth: for the rest, or rather his *whole selfe* is gone to Heauen, and doth now heale men by his Deity, as then by his Physicke. The same doth [n] *Mercury* my Grandfather, preseruing all such as resort to him. Much may the willing Reader learne further of their Superstitions, which hee thus freely confesseth in that Author, whose Prophesie, God bee thanked, *by the bright and powerfull Sun-shine of the Gospell*, was long since effected.

k *Asclep. c.9.*
l *Cap 13.*
m *Origen. cont. Celsum, lib.4.* sayth, That a-mong other Idols they vsed to adore Deuils in the name of the God of Israel, God doth the *Hebrewes*, God that drowned the Egyptians in the Red Sea. This maybe that *Sweuin*, of whom *Tully* sayth, *Quem Egyptij mersa putant nomine Deum. De N.D. lib.3.*

CHAP. IIII.

Of the Rites, Priests, Sects, Sacrifices, Feasts, Inuentions; and other Obseruations of the Ægyptians.

§. I.

Of their Apis and other Beasts, Serpents, and other Creatures worshipped.

THus farre haue we launched out of their History, into their Mysteries. To returne to the Relation of their Beasts and Bestiall Superstitions. *Lucian* [a] saith, That *Apis* represented the Celestiall Bull; and other Beasts which they worshipped, other signes in the Zodiake. They that respected the Constellation of *Pisces*, did eat no fish, nor a Goat, if they regarded *Capricorne*. *Aries* a heauenly Constellation, was their heauenly deuotion: and not here alone, but at the Oracle of *Iupiter Ammon*. [b] *Strabo* sayth, That they nourished many Creatures, which they accounted sacred, but not Gods. This nourishment, after [c] *Diodorus*, was in this sort. First they consecrated vnto their maintenance sufficient Lands. Such Votaries also as had recouered their children from some dangerous sicknesse, accustomed to shaue their haure, and putting it in gold or siluer, offered it to their Priests. The Hawkes they fed with gobbets of flesh, and with Birds catched for them. The Cats and Ichneumons, with bread, and milke, and fish: and like wise the rest.

a *Lucian. de Astrologia.*
b *Strabo l.17.*
c *Diod. Sic. l.1.*

When they goe their Processions, with these beasts displayed in their Banners, euery one falleth downe and doth worship. When any of them dyeth, it is wrapped in fine Linnen, sallesse men howling and knocking their breasts, in the exequies of these vnreasonable beasts. Yet, when famine hath driuen them to eate mans flesh, the zeale of deuotion hath preserued vntouched these sacred creatures. And if a Dogge dye in a house, all in that houshold shaue themselues, and make great lamentation. If Wine, Wheate or other food to be found, where such

such a Beast lyeth dead, Superstition forbiddeth further vse of it. Principall men, with principall meates, are appointed to nourish them in the circuit of their Temples.

They bathe and anoint them with odoriferous Oyntments. And they provide to every one of them a Female of his owne kinde. Their dead they bewayle no lesse, then their owne children: In their Funerals they are exceeding prodigall. In the time of *Ptolemeus Lagi*, their *Apis* or Bull of Memphis being dead, the Keeper bestowed on his Funerall, ouer and aboue the ordinary allowance and offerings, fifte Talents of siluer borrowed of *Ptolemey*, that is, twelue thousand and fiue hundred pound of our money after the Egyptian Talent, or after the Alexandrian, eighteene thousand seuen hundred and fifty pound. And in our Age, sayth *Diodorus*, an eye-witnesse of these his Relations, some of these Nourishers have bestowed an hundred Talents on this last expence, which is twice as much as the former. After the death of this Bull, which they call *Apis*, was made a solemne and publike lamentation, which they testified by shaving their heads, although their purple lockes might compare with those of *Nisus*, sayth [d] *Lucian*: and after his buriall [e] were an hundred Priests employed in search of another like the former; which being found, was brought to the City Nilos, and there nourished forty dayes. Then they conveyed him into a close ship, having a golden habitacle, in which they carried him to Memphis, and there placed him in the Temple of *Vulcan* for a God. At his first comming [f] only women were permitted to see him, who I know not in what hellish Mystery, lifting vp their garments, shewed him Natures secrets; and from thence forth might never be admitted the sight of him. At his first finding, the people cease their funerall lamentations. At his solemne receiuing into Memphis, they obserue a seuen-dayes festiuall, with great concourse of people. His consecration was done by one wearing a Diadem on his head. They made the people believe he was conceiued of Lightning. He is had a Chappell assigned to him, and called by his name. He was kept in a place enclosed, before which was a Hall, and in that another enclosed Roome, for the Dame or Mother of *Apis*. Into this Hall they brought him, when they would present him to strangers. *Psammetichus* was the founder of this building, borne vp with Collosses, or huge Statues of twelue Cubits, in stead of Pillars, and grauen full of figures. Once a yeere [h] he had sight of a Female, chosen by especiall markes, and slaine the same day. On a set day, which he might not out-liue, according to their ritualll Bookes, they drowned him in the bottome of a sacred Fountayne: and then buried him as aforesaid, with much mourning. After this solemnity it was lawfull for them to enter into the Temple of *Serapis*. *Darius*, to curry fauour with the Egyptians, offered an hundred Talents to him that could find out a succeeding *Apis*. Of this *Apis*, thus writeth Saint [i] *Augustine*. *Apis* was the King of the Argiues, who sailing into Egypt, and there dying, was worshipped by the name of *Serapis*, their greatest God. This name *Serapis* was giuen him (sayth *Varro*) of his Funerall Chest, called in Greeke σορὸς, and from thence *Sorapis*, as if one should say, *Sorosapis*, after, *Serapis*. It was enacted, that whosoever should affirme, that he had beene a man, should be done to death. Hence it is, that in the Egyptian Temples *Harpocrates*, [k] an Image holding his finger on his mouth, is ioyned a companion to *Isis* and *Serapis*, in token of concealing their former humanitie. *Suidas* [l] sayth, that *Alexander* built vnto him a magnificent Temple, of which, and of this *Serapis*, wee shall largely declare in the next Chapter. *Varro* out of *Nymphodorus* sayth, that this carkasse in that Chest, where of the name *Serapis* was deriued, was of a Bull, not of a Man. *Eusebius* [m] nameth two Kings called by this name *Apis*, one a Sicyonian, the other of Argos: the first more ancient; the other the Sonne of *Iupiter* and *Niobe*, called after, *Serapis*. But *Apollodorus* [n] affirmeth him the Sonne of *Phoroneus*, and Brother of *Niobe*. And therefore the Sicyonian King is more likely to be the Egyptian *Apis* Builder of Memphis: for the other [o] liued in Peloponnesus, which of him was called *Apis*. *Celius Calcagninus* [p] affirmeth, that their *Apis* was but the symbole of the soule of *Osiris*: and that *Serapis* is an Egyptian word, and signifieth ioy and mirth. But who can find truth in fabulous, or certainty in Superstitious errors? The markes [q] of the next *Apis* were these; All his body was blacke, with a white starre in his fore-head, after *Herodotus*, or in his right side, sayth *Pliny*, like vnto a horned Moone: For he was sacred to the Moone, sayth *Marcellinus*. On his backe hee had the shape of an Eagle, a knot on his tongue like a Beetle. If such an one might seeme impossible to be found, (no doubt) it was rare, and therefore costly: *Augustine* [r] attributeth it to the Deuils working, presentinig to the Cow, in her conception, such a phantasticall apparition; the power of which imagination appeareth in [s] *Iacobs* example.

But what a beastly sturre haue we here (me thinkes) I heare some whining Reader say? [t] But what a beastly sturre haue we here (me thinkes) I heare some whining Reader say? [t] But Beasts and Buls? I answere, That it deseruedly the more full relation, both for the neibour-hood of Authors, which mention something of this History; for the Antiquitie; and especiallitude of Authors, which mention something of this History; for the Antiquitie; and especially, for the practice of the same Superstition, [u] in *Aaron* and *Ieroboams* Calues, after their returne from Egypt; the Schoole of this Idolatry. Besides this *Apis* of Memphis, they were other

d Luc. de Sacrif.
e Solin. Apu. Mart.
f Euseb. præpar. Euang. l. 2. c. 2.
g Strabo l. 17. Vet. Nat. Orat. 4. de ad cum Eliam Cret.
h Solinus Plutarch.
i De Ciuit. Dei l. 18. c. 5.
k Vid. Hieroglyph. Goropi l. 4.
l Suidas.
m Euseb. Chron.
n Apol. Bibliothe. l. 1. c. 2. [illegible]
o Strabo de Situ Peloponnesi.
p Celius Rhodoginus Antiquitatum l. 2. c. 19. c. 14.
q Vide Herodot. Plin. l. 8. c. 46.
r De Ciuit. Dei l. 18. c. 5.
s Gen. 30. 39.
t Varisque coloribus depictus. Ouid. Met. 9.
u Bulling. Orig. Error.

ther places obtruded others: as *Mneuis*, a blacke Bull, consecrated to [x] the Sunne, as *Apis* was to the Moone; with his haires growing forward, worshipped at Heliopolis: *Bacis*, [y] another, that was fayned to change colour euery houre, at Hermunthus; besides, *Onuphis*, and *Menuphis*, other-where. Thus by Sinne, Beasts became Gods, Men became Beasts: at this be not a baser degree of batenesse, to worship Beasts, and in them, Deuils: to content themselues with meane houses, and neuer to be contented with the magnificence and sumptuousnesse of their Temples to Beasts. [z] *Splendida sana cum lucit, & Templa cum vestibulis & porticibus admirandis: introgressus autem videbis adorari solem, &c.* that is, They haue glorious Chappels, with Groues; and stately Temples, with goodly Gate-ways and Porches: but when you are within once, you shall see nothing but a Cat (or some such Carrion) worshipped, &c. And euen at this day, in *Cairo* and other places of Egypt, they account it (according to their Mahumetane Superstition) no small point of charitie, to bee bountifull and liberall to Birds, which they will redeeme [a] to libertie; and to Dogges, Cats, and other Beasts, setting them meate and good prouision at appointed times.

x *Suidas.*
y *Macrob.*
z *Origenes, Celsum lib.3.*
a *Iacob. Vogel. Geographus.*

As for the Camell, that hath carried the Alcoran at Mecca in their Pilgrimage, yee haue heard [b] alreadie, how religious they esteeme the touch thereof: *Douza* [c] saw the like at Constantinople; some plucking off his haires as holy relikes, some kissing him, some wiping off his sweat, therewith to rub their faces and eyes; all entertayning him with frequent concourse, and at last eating his flesh, distributed into small parts for that purpose.

b *Sup. l. 3. c. 6.*
c *G. Dous. Itinerar.*

We are further to know, that although Egypt worshipped beasts, yet not all, the same; these d onely were vniuersally receiued; three beasts, a Dogge, a Cat, a Bull: two Fowles, the Hawke, and the Ibis; two fishes, *Lepidotus* and *Oxyrynchus*. Other beasts haue their Sects of Worshippers: as sheepe among the Thebans and Saites; the fish called *Latus*, among the Latopolitans; a Cynocephalus, at Hermopolis; (which is a kind of great Ape, e or Monkie, naturally circumcised, and abhorring from fish) a Wolfe at Lycopolis. The Babylonians neere to Memphis, worshipped a beast called *Cepus*, resembling in the face a Satyre, in other parts, partly a Dogge, partly a Beare: Likewise, other Cities, other beasts, which caused great dissentions, whereof f *Iuuenal*:

d *Strabo, lib. 17. Stuchus de sacris (sacrificiis), Gentilitiis, de bubus fusus. Vid. Clem. Pareus & Meruetum.*
e *Vid Gesner. de quadrup. & Ælian. de an. lib. 10. c. 10.*
f *Iuuen. Sat. 15. sic that whole Satyre. Ælian. de an. lib. 10. cap. 21.*

Ardet adhuc Combos & Tentyra, summus vtrinq;
Inde furor vulgo, quod numina vitionum
Odit vterq; locus.

Combos and *Tentyra* doe both yet burne
With mutuall hate, because they both doe spurne
At one anothers Gods, &c.

Strabo saw, in the *Nomus*, or Shire of Arsinoe, diuine honour giuen to a Crocodile, kept tame in a certaine Lake by the Priests, and named *Suchus*, nourished with Bread, Wine, and Flesh; which the Pilgrims that came to visit him, offered. Now the Tentyrites, and those of Elephantina, killed Crocodiles. And in the Citie of *Hercules* they worshipped an Ichneumon, a beast that destroyeth Crocodiles and Aspes, and therefore euen at this day of much estimation, as *Bellonius* g obtruteth, where you may see his description. These imagined that *Typhon* was transformed into a Crocodile. At Hermopolis they worshipped a Goat: and Goats had carnall mixture with Women.

g *P. Bellon. ob.*

h The Ombites (more beastly) esteemed themselues fauoured of their Crocodile God, if he filled his paunch with the flesh and blood of their dearest Children, as *Bulbi*, and others report of the Moderne Inhabitants of Pegu, before related. King *Menas* built a Citie called *Crocodile*, and dedicated the Neighbour-femne to their food. They were as scrupulous in the vse of meates; some, i abstained from Cheese, some from Beanes, some from Onyons, others affect their owne fancie. This multiplicitie of Sects is ascribed to the policie of their ancient Kings, according to that Rule, *Diuide and Rule*. For it was not likely they would joyne in Conspiracie, whom Religion (the most mortall make-bate) had disioynt. At Coptus, where the holies of *Isis* were most solemne, there were (sayth k *Ælian*) store of great Scorpions, which presently killed such as they stung; but yet the women which there lamented *Isis*, no lisse then Widowes the death of their Husbands, or Mothers of their Children; and going bare-foot, are neuer hurt by them. Heere they deuoted the Male Goats to their bellies, the Females to their Goddesse. Hawkes were consecrated to *Orus* or the Sunne, because they flie and looke directly against the Sun-beames: of this bird they fabled that it liued seuen hundred yeeres. They which will, may find in that his tenth Booke, the Reasons of diuers other their *beastly* and *foule* deuotions, to Fowles and Beasts: too tedious for this place.

h *Volat. l. 21. Scalig. writes in a Leuden Crocodile (supposed by art to chase away these beasts, mouse after spy vnbridled.) Vide Tolom. ep. ad Pac.*
i *Diodor. Sic. l. 1.*
k *Ælian. de an. l. 10. c. 23.*

They

They held Serpents in so sacred account, that [e] *Osiris* is never painted without them: and *Iosephus* [f] saith, That it was reckoned a happinesse (which I thinke few would enuy them) to be bitten of Aspes, as also to be deuoured of Crocodiles. Venimous was that *Old Serpent*, which both here, and in other Nations, then, and at this day, hath procured diuine honor to this first Instrument of Hell: As if he would thus exalt this Trophee of his ancient conquest, in despight both of God and Man, in that Creature whereby Man perished, and which God had cursed: except we will rather attribute it to a deuillish malice, or apish imitation of that *Brasen Serpent, set vp by* [g] *Moses in the Wilderness*, the figure of Christ crucified, *who brake this Serpents head. Ieremie* the Prophet was stoned (some [h] say) at Tanis in Ægypt, and was after worshipped of the Inhabitants there (such was their difference of Sects) for his present remedying the stings of Serpents.

I thinke by this time, either my Relation, or their superstition, is tedious: and yet I haue not mentioned other their gods, both stinking and monstrous. Loth am I to search the Waters for their deified Frogs, and *Hippopotami*; or play the Scauenger, to present you with their Beetle-gods, out of their priuies: yea, their Priuies, [i] and Farts, had their vniuurse canonization, and went for Egyptian deities: Lettice suitable to such lips. So *Hierome* [k] deridieth their dreadfull deitie, the Onion, and a stinking Fart, *Crepitus ventris inflati que Pelusiaca religio est*, which they worshipped at Pelusium. Lesse brutish, though not lesse idolatrous, was it in [l] *Ptolomeus Philopator*, to erect a Temple to *Homer*, in which his Image was placed, comely sitting enuironed with those Cities which challenged him for theirs. That came neerest to reason in the Egyptian [m] deities (though farre enough from Religion) when they expressed God like a Man with an egge in his mouth, thereby intimating that God created the World with his Word. So in the Citie Sais they expressed in hieroglyphikes an Infant, an old Man, a Hawke, a Fish, and a Riuer-horse, on the doores of *Minerua's* Temple, as if *Minerua* should say, *O yee which are borne and die know that God hateth impudence*. This also by the way we adde for difference of Egyptian hieroglyphikes and Indian pictures [n] in Mexico, that these expressed Histories, those concealed Mysteries: the Indians describing things as plainly as they could, the Egyptians yeelding a double shell before you come to the kernell; and therefore more implicite and difficult then the other. For that a picture of a Hawke, a Fish, and a Riuer-horse should represent such creatures is euident: but that one of these should represent God, the second Hatred, the third Impudence, is a mysterie, and if well searched, an absurditie, and a thing much to be admired that wise men should so admire things so ridiculous.

c I. Pig. mens. Isac. exp.
f Ios. cont. Ap. lib. 2.
g Iob. 3. 14.
h Vsher in August.
i Ortel. ex Clement. & Min. Felice.
k In Esc. c. 46. & cap. 12. & alias.
l Ath. Var. l. 3. cap. 22. Strab. lib. 14. mentions a Temple and Image of Homer at Smyrna, with a coyne called Homerium.
m Plut. de Osir. & If.
n See Acosta, Gomara, and our Picture booke, Tom. 2. lib. 5.

§. II.

Of their Sacrifices, their Iewish Rites, and of their Priests.

THeir sacrifices were so diuersified in their kindes, that *Pencer* [o] saith, they had sixe hundred threescore and sixe seuerall sorts of them: Some they had peculiar to special gods; [p] as to the Sunne, a Cocke, a Swan, a Bull; to *Venus*, a Doue; to the celestiall Signes, such things as held correspondent similitude: besides, their sacrifices of Redmen to *Osiris*. *Busiris* [q] is said to haue offered *Thrasius* (first Author of that Counsell, worst to the Counsellors) thereby to appease angrie Nilus, that in nine yeeres had not ouer-flowed. They offered euery day three men at Heliopolis; in stead of which bloudie rites, *Amasis* after substituted so many waxen Images.

Thus were their gods brastily, their sacrifices inhumane, or humane rather, too much. Other things they obserued of their owne inuention, framing to themselues deformed and compounded shapes, whose Images they adored. Such were their *Canopi*; swaddled as it were in clowts (in resembling *Orus*) with heads of dogs, or other creatures. *Osiris* [r] is sometime seene with the head of a Hawke, *Isis* with the head of a Lion, *Anubis* alway with the head of a dogge; and contrariwise, beasts pictured with the heads of *Osiris* and *Isis*: monstrous misse-shapen figures, of misse-shapen monstrous mysteries.

They borrowed of the Iewes abstinence from Swanes-flesh, and Circumcision of their Males; to which they added Excision of their Females, still obserued of the Christians in those parts. *Theodoret* testifieth, [s] That *Pythagoras* received circumcision of the Egyptians, which they received of the Hebrewes. *Ambrose* [t] affirmeth, That the Egyptians circumcised both sexes at the age of fourteene yeeres (as the Ismaelites at thirteene) because that then the lusts of population begin to burne, which Reason teacheth, to neede circumcision: and therefore (it seemeth) they vsed it in those parts that are the seats and instruments of Lust; and not either in regard of original corruption, or the promised Seede, which were hidden mysteries

o Pens. de Diuinat. Idem Canis. des S. Maiolis, part. 2. Coll. q. 1.
p Sard. lib. 3. cap. 15.
q Trismeg. Busiridis aras.
r Tab. Isiaca Bembi. In Aegypto Canis plutei, Serpentici pitei, Aniciqiites, &c. & postea. Vasa & contraria superstitionis, quam in precipua veneratione habebant, & ex hac re obtinuerunt. Athenaeus. cont. Gent. idem Iustinus Martyr. Apolog. 2. & Cyprianus ad V.
s Theod. Serm. 5.
t Am de Abraham. l. 2. c. vlt.

mysteries to their mysticall superstitions. It is like, the Deuill would thus prophane this diuine Sacrament of Circumcision, as at this day in the Heathen Nations about Congo, and in Iucatan in America, before the Spaniards came there. They so abhorre Swine, [u] that if one by the way touch them, hee presently washeth himselfe and his garments. Neither may a Swine-heard haue access into their Temples, or marry with their daughters. Yet doe they offer Swine to the Moone and *Bacchus* (*Isis* and *Osiris*) when the Moone is at full. In this sacrifice they burne the Tayle, Milt, and Leafe; and (which on another day would be peculiar) on that day of the full they eate the rest. *Ælian* [x] giueth this reason of their hatred of Swine, because it is a gluttonous beast, not sparing the flesh neither of their owne young, nor of men: as on the contrarie, they worship the Storke for her pietie, in nourishing her aged parents (that I speake not of their wed-locke chastitie) for breach whereof, [y] *Crollius* tells, from the relation of an eye-witnesse, That in a wood neere to Spire in Germanie, the Male complaining to a congregation of Storkes, caused them to teare his Mate in pieces.) The Ægyptians also had a conceit, That Swines milke would breede the leprosie; and that Swine were beasts odious to the Sunne and Moone. He citeth out of *Eudoxus*, That they spared them, for treading their Seede into the ground; which was their Harrowing and Tillage, when Nilus had newly left the softned Earth, to send these Labourers, their Kine and Swine, to tread in the myrie Earth the Corne which they sowed therein. The Ægyptians [z] sware by the head of their King; which oath whosoeuer violated, lost his life for the same, without any redemption.

u *Vid. Brerew. Enq. cap.13.*

x *Æl. de Animal. l.10.c.16.*

y *Crol de signaturis.*

z *Diod. de Isidis, lib.2.*

The Priests, in old time renowmed for their learning, in *Strabaes* time were ignorant and vnlearned. No woman [a] might beare Priestly function. These Priests might not eate Egg, Milke, or Oile (except with Sallads:) they might not salute Mariners, nor looke vpon their children or kinsfolks. They [b] washed themselues in the day-time thrice, and in the night twice: they were shauen, wore linnen garments alwayes new washed, were daily allowed sacred meates. [c] Of their ancient Priests, thus *Du Bartas* singeth in *Sylusters* tune:

a *Io.Boem.lib.1 cap.5.*
H Romam. de rep.G.l.2.c.4.
b *Sard.l.3.c.18.*
Herod. l.2.
c *Du Bartas Colonies.*

The Memphian Priests were deepe Philosophers,
And curious gazers on the sacred Starres,
Searchers of Nature, and great Mathematickes,
Ere any letter knew the ancient Attickes.

[d] *Tertullian* speakes of the continence of *Apis* his Priests, and addes; That certaine women, consecrated to the African *Ceres*, voluntarily relinquished marriage, and from thenceforth might not touch a Male, no, not so much as kisse their owne sonnes.

d *Tert. Exhort. ad Castitatem.*

Their magicke skill appeared in *Iannes* and *Iambres*, which withstood *Moses*; and in *Hermes* testimonie of himselfe. *R. Salomon* on *Exod.8.* writeth, That *Pharao* said to *Moses* and *Aaron*, *Doe you bring straw into Ophraim, a City full of straw? And doe you bring incchantments into Egypt, which abounded therewith?* *Postellus* deriueth the Egyptian and Orientall sciences from *Abraham*, to whom he dareth to attribute their diuinations by the Aire, Water, Fire, Earth, Birds: and alleageth *Rambams* authoritie, That the greatest part of the Alcoran is taken out of the Egyptian learning; and saith, That *Moses* and *Salomon* studied the same, and expounded in Scripture, what *Abraham* had taught them: to which also hee ascribeth the Iewish Exorcismes, in casting out Deuils. But some Deuill, I think, hath taught him so to commend these deuillish Arts, as he doth no lesse the Alcoran, and the Iewes Cabala, calling them an excellent Appendix to *Moses*, and both, of I know not what magicall faculties, first infused into *Adam* in the puritie of his creation, and taught by the Angell *Raziel*, by him deliuered in verball tradition; written first by *Henoch*, the bookes whereof *Nimrod* stole from *Noah*, which *Abraham* might learne either in that Chaldean Nation, or from *Melchisedech*. But let vs obserue these Priests further.

De Orig.c.17. &c.

Raziel.

When they sacrificed, they made choice of their beasts by certaine religious markes: (a Cow they might not sacrifice, as consecrated vnto *Isis*.) They kindled a fire, and sprinkling water ther they told to the Grecians, if they would buy it, or cast it into the River with imprecation, That whatsoeuer euill was imminent to them or their Country, might be turned vpon the head. This ceremonie [e] seemes to haue come to them from the Iewes. And they peareth both by this Relation, and by the testimonie, not onely of *Moresinus* [f] a Protestant, but also [g] *Maginus*, *Polidorus*, *Boemus*, and *Beroaldus*, Popish writers, although dawbed ouer with new mystically significations; as in *Bellarmine*, and other the purest Catholiques, is seene. Their Priests [h] were their Iudges, the eldest of which was chiefe in pronouncing sentence. He wore [i] about his neeke a Saphire Iewell, with the Image of *Truth* therein engrauen. The Priests

e *Gramay Ant.*
f *Moresin Dep. vel.*
g *Magini. Ptol. Pal. de inuentoribus.*
Beroaldus Apuleium
h *Draudius in Sacrum*
i *Ælian Var. hist.l.14.c.34.*

Priests k of *Isis*, besides their shavings and linnen garments, had paper-shooes: on their heads, *Anubis*; in their hands a Timbrell, or a branch of Sea-wormewood, or a Pine-apple. They had one chiefe Priest, or Primate of Egypt, as appeareth l by *Josephus* and *Heliodorus*, who maketh *Thyamis* to succeede his father *Calasyris* in this high Priesthood at Memphis. *Manetho* also enioyed this Pontificall Hierarchie, as appeareth by his Epistle to *Ptolemeus*, which after shall follow. *Philostratus* m speaketh of Gymnosophists, which some ascribe to India; *Heliodorus* to Ethiopia; he to Ethiopia and Egypt. These, saith hee, dwelt abroad without house, on a Hill a little off the bankes of Nilus, where grew a Grove, in which they held their generall Assemblies, to consult of publike affaires, having otherwise their studies and sacrifices apart, each by himselfe. *Thespesion* was the chiefe of this Monkish Colledge, when *Apollonius*, after his visitation of the Babylonian Magi, and Indian n Brachmanes, came thither. These held the immortalitie of the soule, and accounted *Nilus* for a god. If a man at Memphis had by chance-medley killed a man, hee was exiled, till those Gymnosophists absolued him.

Hercules Temple, at Canopus; was priuileged with Sanctuarie, to giue immunitie to Fugitiues and Malefactors: Thus elsewhere, *Osiris*; *Apollo*, in Syria; *Diana*, at Ephesus; every Cardinals house (saith o a Pope) in Rome; Saint *Peter* p at Westminster; and other Popish Oratories, priuileged Dennes of Theeues.

k Alex. ab Alex. Gen dier. l. 2. c. 8.
l Ios. cont. Ap. lib. 1. in qui super Egyptiaca sacra erat constitutus.
Hel. hi. Aeth. l. 7.
Herod. l. 3. fait, that they had at Priests and as many Kings before his time.
m Philost. de vit. Apol. lib. 6. c. 3.
n Domitiano Imperatore.
o Pius 2. Asia.
p Pol. Vir. l. 3.

§. III.

Of their Feasts and Oracles.

THeir Feasts were many: of which, q *Herodotus* reckoneth one at Bubastis, in honour of *Diana*. To this place the Men and Women, at this festiuall solemnitie, sayled in great multitudes, with minstrelsie and showtings: and as they came to any Citie on the waters side, they went on shore; and the women, some danced, some played, some made a brawle with the women of the place: and thus resorting to Bubastis, they there offered great Sacrifices, spending in this feast more Wine then in all the yeere besides. Hither resorted of Men and Women, besides Children, seven hundred thousand. In Busiris was solemnized the feast of *Isis*; in which, after the sacrifice, many thousands beat themselues: but with what they did beate themselues, was not lawfull to relate. The Carians that inhabited Egypt, did also cut their foreheads with swords, signifying thereby, that they were forreiners. This Citie was in the midst of the Egyptian *Delta*, and in it, a very great Temple of *Isis*. A third feast was at Sai, in honour of *Minerua*, where assembling by night, they lighted candles full of Salt and Oile, and therewith went about the walls of the Citie: This solemnitie was called r *Lights-burning*, or if you will, *Candle-masse*. This night, they which came not hither, yet obserued the setting vp of Lights throughout Egypt. A fourth was at Heliopolis, in honour of the *Sunne*. A fift at Butus, of *Latona*, wherein onely sacrificing was vsed. At Papremus was obserued the solemnitie of *Mars*, with sacrifices, but till Sunneset, onely a few Priests were busied about the Image: a greater number of them stood before the doores of the Temple with wooden clubs, and ouer-against them aboue a thousand men that payed their vowes, each with clubs in their hands, who the day before carried the Image out of a gilded Chappell of Timber into another sacred Roome; those few which were chosen for the Idoll-seruice, drawing a waggon with foure wheeles, on which the Chappell and Image were carried. Those that stood at the Porch, forbade these to enter; but the Votaries, to helpe their god, beate and draue them backe. Here began a great clubfray, in which many were wounded, and many (although the Egyptians concealed it) dyed of the wounds. The cause (forsooth) was, because here was shrined the mother of *Mars*; to whom, her sonne, at ripe age, resorted to haue lyen with, but was repelled by her seruants: whereupon, hee procuring helpe elsewhere, was reuenged of them. Hence grew that solemnitie.

On the seuenth day of the moneth *Tybi* s (which answereth to our *Ianuarie* and *December*) was solemnized the comming of *Isis* out of Phœnicia; in which, many things were done in despight of *Typhon*. The *Coptites* then hurled downe an Asse from a steepe place, and abused ruddie men for this cause. They had t also in their Bacchanall-solemnities, most filthy Rites; in which, being drunken, they carried Images of a cubit length, with the priuie Member of a monstrous size, with musicke, accompanied with the elder Matrons. This Yard, which they called *Phallus*, was vsually made of fig-tree. *Herodotus* u saith, That besides their Swine-feast, they obserued another to *Bacchus*, without Swine, in like sort as the Greekians: in which, they had such cubitall Images made of sinewes, or as *Cadmus* c readeth it, made

q Herod. lib. 2.
r λυχνοκαΐα.
s Hospin. de Fest. cap. 7.
t Plut. de Os.
u Lib. 2.
c Cad. Rhod. l. 7. cap. 27.

made to bee drawne to and fro with sinewes or strings, carried by women. In the moneth *Thoth* (which most-what agreeth to *September*) the nineteenth day [d] was holy to *Mercurie*, in which they did eate honey and figs, saying withall, *Truth is sweet.* On the ninth day of this moneth they obserued another feast; wherein euery man before his doore did eate roasted fish: the Priests did not eate, but burne the same. Before is mentioned the seeking of *Osiris*. This was an Egyptian feast, obserued in the moneth *Athyr* (which answereth somewhat to *November*) from the seuenteenth day (in which they imagined that *Osiris* perished) foure dayes were spent in mourning: the causes were foure; Nilus slaking, the Windes then 1
blowing, the Dayes shortening, the Winter approching. Here is the mysterie vnfolded. On the nineteenth day they went by night to the Sea, and brought forth a sacred Chist, in which was a golden Boxe, into which they powred water, and made a showt, That *Osiris was found.* Then they mingled the Earth with Water, adding spices and costly perfumes, and made an Image of the Moone, applying these mysticall Rites to the nature of the Earth and Water. About the winter Solstice they carried a Cow seuen times about the Temple [e], in remembrance of the Sunnes circuit, which in the seuenth moneth would be in the Summer Solstice.

The originall of *Isis* seeking *Osiris*, is before shewed. Some make *Typhon* the husband of *Isis*, which slue *Osiris* her sonne, or brother, (as diuers diuersly esteeme him) for incest committed with her, and cut him in pieces. *Anubis* her Huntsman, by helps of his dogs, found out the pieces againe. This (saith [f] *Minutius Felix*) is resembled euery yeere, *Nec desinunt annis omnibus vel perdere quod inueniunt, vel inuenire quod perdunt. Hæc Ægyptia quondam, nunc & sacra Romana sunt.* Truly the Playes of *Christ* his Crucifying and Resurrection, which are obserued in all Churches of the Roman Religion yeerly, might seeme to haue had this Egyptian originall. Once, *Index expurgatorius*, hath cut out *Viues* tongue, where he speaketh against them, as [g] before vpon like occasion is noted. This feast is also mentioned by *Iulius Firmicus*, and others.

They had another feast called *Pamyha*, of *Pamyle* the Nurse of *Osiris*, who going to fetch water, heard a voyce, bidding her proclaime, That a great King and Benefactor was borne. On this holy day was carried in procession an Image with three stones, or (as *Plutarch* [h] saith) with a three-fold yard; in which beastly Rite hee findeth a foolish mysterie, not worth the 3
telling. But I thinke this Feast of *Feasts* hath glutted euery man.

The Egyptians had many Oracles of *Hercules*, *Apollo*, *Minerua*, *Diana*, *Mars*, *Iupiter*, and others. The Oracle of *Latona* at Butys [i] told *Cambyses*, That hee should die at Ecbatana, whereby he secured himselfe for Syria, and yet there dyed, in an obscure village of that name, whereas he had interpreted it of the great Citie in Media. Their *Apis* and *Serapis* were also esteemed Oracles. *Annibal* was deceiued by the Oracle of *Serapis*, telling him of his death, which he construed of Libya, and fell out in a place of the same name in Bithynia. At Pelusium, if we may beleeue *Achilles Statius* [k], was the Temple, Image, and Oracle of *Iupiter Cassium*; and by an Oracle, he maketh *Leucippe*, a Virgin, to be appointed for sacrifice. At Memphis, a Cow; at Heliopolis, the Bull *Mneuis*; at Arsinoe, the Crocodiles were their Oracles. But it were too tedious to relate the rest. 4

d *Plut. ibid.*

e *Hosp. cap. 27.*

f *M. F. Octau. Arnob. contra gentes, lib. 2.*

g *Viues in Annot. ad Aug. de Ciuit Dei, lib. 8. cap 27.*

Vide ante lib. 1. ca. 17.

h *De Osir.*

i *Pouser. de Diuinat. S. Mant. c. 2. pag. 2. ver. 2.*

k *Achil. Stat. lib. 2. & 3.*

§. IIII.

Of the inuentions and disposition of the Ægyptians.

HE first amongst their Inuentions, wee may reckon the deriuation of their superstitions to others. That the elder Romans entertayned these damnable Egyptian holies, appeareth by the Temples, Chappels, Streets, Coynes, dedicated vnto *Isis*, *Serapis*, &c. mentioned by *Onuphrius*, *Rosinus*, *Vossius*, *Fabricius*, *Apianus*, *Amantius*, *Grutenus*, *Gulmanus*, *Occo*, and other writers of Roman Antiquities. Of *Isis* and *Serapis* were certayne publike places in Rome, named *Isseum* and *Serapeum*. [l] *Iosephus* telateth of one *Paulina*, a noble woman of Rome, married to *Saturninus*, deuoted to the superstition of *Isis*; whom *Decius Mundus* had solicited in vaine to dishonestie; notwithstanding the offer of two hundred thousand *Drachmes* (which comes to fiue thousand fiue hundred and twentie fiue pound) for one night: but with a quarter of that summe hee corrupted the Priests of *Isis*; one of which told *Paulina*, That the god *Anubis* inflamed with her loue, had sent for her; which message was welcome to her, and to her husband not distastefull. Thus *Mundus*, vnder pretext of *Anubis*, obtayning a nights lodging, meeting her three dayes after, merrily iested at her, for losing his money, but not her honestie: Whereupon *Tiberius* banished him, & crucified the Priests, and razed the Temple, commanding the Image of *Isis* to bee cast into Tiber. But these superstitions were reuiued soone after, *Vitellius* [m] the Emperour not refusing

l *Antiq. 18. 4.*

m *Sueton. in Vit*

refusing to weare a Linnen religious garment openly in her solemnitie. *Vespasian* also honoured them, and *Domitian* in the religious habite of *Isis* conueyed himselfe vnknowne from *Vitellius* and his persecutors.

Husbandrie [a] by some is ascribed to them, but falsely; *Adam, Caine, Noah,* and others were in this before them. Astronomie also is not their inuention, but [b] taught them by *Abraham*. Geometrie [c] is more like to bee theirs, driuen to seeke out this Art by Nilus ouer-flowing. Idolatrie to the Starres was first heere practised (saith *Lactantius*) for lying on the rootes of their houses (as yet they doe) without any other Canopie then the Azure skie, first they beheld, then studied, lastly adored them. *Grandentius Brixiensis* [d] applyeth the destroying of the Ægyptian first-borne, to the perishing of Idolatrie through the light of the Gospell: the Ægyptians (saith hee) being the first, which worshipped the Images of dead men.

Magicke is also ascribed to them [e] of whose timely professours *Iannes* and *Iambres* are an instance. Physicke is fetched also from hence; and Writing, both after the vulgar sort, as also that of the Priests, Hieroglyphical, whereof *Horopollo* an Egyptian, *Pierius, Goropius, Michael Mayerus, Curio, Schualenberg*, besides *Mercerus* and *Hoeschelius*, with others haue written. *Ælianus* [e] accounteth *Mercurie* the first inuenter of their Lawes. The Women [f] in Egypt did performe the offices which belonged to the Men, buying, selling, and other businesse abroad; the men Spinning and performing houshold-taske. *Claud Duret* [f] hath expressed (besides a Discourse of their Region and Learning) two Egyptian Alphabets, if any desire to see the forme of their Letters; which [g] some thinke that the Phenicians borrowed from Egypt, and lent by *Cadmus* to the Grecians. But I am not of their minde. This Elogie or commendation is giuen them by *Martial*:

Niliacis primum puer hic nascetur in oris,
Nequitias tellus scit dare nulla magis:
From Ægypt (sure) the boyes birth may proceed,
For no Land else such knauerie can breed.

And *Propertius*:

Nexia Alexandria dolis aptissima tellus;
The place where Alexandria doth stand,
Is noysome, and a Conie-catching land.

Wee may heere adde out of *Flauius Vopiscus* [h] a testimonie of the qualities of the Ægyptians. They are (saith hee) inconstant, furious, braggarts, injurious: also vaine, licentious, desirous of nouelties, euen vnto common Songs and Ballads, Versifiers, Epigrammatists, Mathematicians, Wizards, Physicians both for Christians and Samaritanes; and alway things present, with an vnbridled libertie, are distastefull to them. Hee biddeth also for witnesse of this assertion, *Ælius Adrianus*, who in an Epistle to *Seruianus*, affirmeth thus: I haue learned all Ægypt to bee light, wauering and turning with euery blast of fame. They which worship *Serapis*, are Christians, and euen they which call themselues Bishops of Christ, are deuoted to *Serapis*. No Ruler is there of the Iewish Synagogue, no Samaritan, no Christian Priest, which is not a Mathematician, a Wizard, a Chirurgion (or anointer of Champions.) This kinde of men is most seditious, most vaine, most injurious: the Citie (Alexandria) rich, wealthie, fruitfull, in which none liues idle. Goutie men haue somewhat to doe, Blinde men haue somewhat to doe, or haue somewhat which they may make; for are the goutie-fingred idle. They haue *One* GOD; him doe the Christians, him doe the Iewes, him doe they all worship. I wish them nothing else, but that they may bee fedde with their owne Pullen, which how they make fruitfull, I am ashamed to tell. Thus much *Adrianus*.

The Pullen hee speaketh of, it seemeth, are such, as euen to this day they vse to hatch (not vnder the Henne, but) in Furnaces of dung [i] and ashes, wherein thousands of Egges are layd for that purpole. That which hee speaketh of the Christians, is either of some Heretickes, or luke-warme Time-seruers to bee vnderstood: or else remember, that it was *Adrian*, an Ethnike, whose intelligence was from such as himselfe in those times hating the Christians [j] of whom, through blinde zeale of their Idolatry, what did they? What did they not faine and deuise? Euen more odious then here is expressed, as Ecclesiasticall Histories shew. The Iewes had giuen *Adrian* cause, by their Treasons, to hate them, and flatterers opportunitie to belie them. Let him that loues mee, tell my tale. But a man would maruell to heare *Adrian* blame the Ægyptians so much for that, for which himselfe in Authors is so much blamed; namely, Superstition and Sorcerie. For hee made Images of *Antinous*, which he erected al-

a *Laur. Torn.*
b *Ios. Ant. l. 1. c. 8.*
c *Dom. Nig. Apol. cap. 3. Clem. Strom. l. 1. Basil. in principio. prou. Gitana. Cassia. Cic. de diuin. l. 1. A. l. 1. de nat. de mundo mous. c. 4.*
d *G. B. in Exod. trac. 6.*
e *L. 14. c. 34.*
f *Sophocles in Oedipo. Scholiast. ib. ex Nymphod.*
f *De l'Origine de Langues. c. 40. &c.*
g *Nazian. Orat. 3 adu. Iul. & Elius Cret.*
h *Flau. Vopisc. Saturnius Trebellius Pollio testistie three like in his Triginta Tyrannis.*
i *Timberlies booke describeth this at large & Sandys.*

most in all the world, saith [k] *Dion.* This *Antinous* was in high estimation with him (some thinke, his Minion:) Hee dyed in Ægypt, either drowned in Nilus, as *Adrian* writeth, or (which is the truth) was sacrificed[l]. For whereas *Adrian* was exceeding curious, and addicted to Diuinations and Magicall Arts of all kindes (in the hellish rites whereof was required the soule of such a one as would die voluntarily) *Antinous* refused it not, and therefore was thus honoured, and had a Citie in Ægypt newly repaired from the ruines, and dedicated in his Name. Yea, hee reported [l] he saw a new Starre, which (forsooth) was the soule of this *Antinous.* The Greekes made a God of him, and a giuer of Oracles; whereof *Prudentius* singeth:

k *Dion in Nitei Adr.*

l *Ælius Spartianus in Adriano.*

Quid loquar Antinoum cœlesti sede locatum, &c.
Adrianiq; dei Ganymedem. — —
Cumq; suo in Templis vota exaudire Marito?

Prudent. cont. Symmachum. l. 1

And *Iustin Martyr*: *Antinoum qui modo extitit, omnes metu coactis pro deo colere, cum & quis, & vnde esset, scirent.* Hee caused money to bee coyned with the picture of the Temple of *Antinous* which *Adrian* had erected, and a Crocodile vnder it. *Choul* [m] expressesth diuers formes of these Antinoan Comes, and one with inscription of *Marcellus* the Priest of *Antinous.*

Iustin. Martyr. Apol. 2.

m *Choul della religi. Rom. Antich.*

Ammianus Marcellinus [n] ascribeth to the Egyptians a contentious humour, addicted to lawing and quarrels, *Assuetudine perplexius litigandi semper latissimum.* Their vanitie and superstition may further appeare by what which *Diophantes* [o] recorideth of one *Syrophanes* a rich Egyptian; who doting on his Sonne yet liuing, dedicated an Image in his house vnto him, to which the seruants at any time, when they had displeased their Master, betooke themselues, adorning the same with Flowers and Garlands, to recouering their Masters fauour. Some [p] make the Egyptians first inuenters of Wine (which they say, was first made in the Egyptian Citie Plinthis) and of Beere, to which end they first made Mault of Barley, for such places as wanted Grapes. When a man proued more in shew then in substance (as hypocrites, whom the Truth it selfe calleth *Wiited Tombes*) the Prouerbe termed him an Egyptian Temple, because those buildings were sumptuous and magnificent for matter and forme to the view, but the Deitie therein worshipped, was a Cat, Dogge, or such other contemptible creature. The naturall furie [q] and crueltie vsed amongst the Egyptians, hath made them infamous among Authors, both Prophane and Diuine. And *Stephanus Byzantinus* saith, that they which practised close, subtile, craftie couzenages, were said, *Αἰγυπτιάζειν, to play the Ægyptians*: *Æschylus* also the Greeke Poet makes them Mint-masters therein: and perhaps those Rogues which wander ouer so many Countries, and liue by their wits and thefts, were therefore [r] called Egyptians, rather then for the Nation, being the scumme and dregs of other Nations, disguised by a deuised tongue and habit; called in some Countries Cingari; their life resembling much the *Beduini*, or *Rexumi*, roguish Arabians wandring in Syria, and other parts. *Bellonius* saith, That these wander through all the Turkish Empire, and are no lesse strangers in Egypt then other places. They are cunning in Iron-worke, and cheating Fortune-tellers: some esteeme them Walachians.

n *Am. Mar. l. 22.*

o *Diophantes Lactelm. apud Stucchium de sac. ib.*

p *Cælius Rhodig. Lectionum antiq. l. 26. 3.*

q *Polyb. Hist. l. 15. c. 31. Exod. 1. &c.*

r *Test. Pet. 3. part. pag. 169.* hath a whole discourse of them.

But least I should also impose too cruell a taske on my more willing Readers, I will proceed to other obseruations. I haue here in this Egyptian relation of their Rites, Manners, and Mysteries, beene the larger, both because Authors are herein plentifull, and especially because Egypt hath beene an olde storer and treasurer of these mysticall Rites for that later vpstart, the *Mystically Babylon*, in the West; which as shee is spiritually called *Sodome* and *Ægypt*, so, like that Strumpet mentioned [s] by *Salomon*, hath not a little *decked her bed with the Ornaments, Carpets, and Laces of Ægypt.* Wiser were the Romanes [t] of olde, which made diuers Lawes to expell the Ægyptian Rites out of their Citie, which the later Popes entertaine.

s *Prou. 7. 16.*

t *Dion. Cass. l. 54.*

CHAP. 6

CHAP. V.

Of the manifold alterations of State and Religion in Ægypt by the Persians, Grecians, Romans, Christians, Saracens, and Turkes.

§. I.

Of the Persians and Gracians acts in Ægypt, and the famous Vniuersitie and Libraric at Alexandria.

THe last Egyptian *Pharao* was *Psammenitus*, vanquished by *Cambyses*, sonne of *Cyrus* the Persian, who quite extinguished that Egyptian Gouernment, and much eclipsed their superstitious solemnities. For [a] *Cambyses* proclaimed defiance, not to the persons onely of the Egyptians, but to their Gods also: yea, hee set their sacred Beasts in the fore-front of his batrell, that being thus shielded by their owne deuotion, hee might easily ruinate the Kingdome. Such a disaduantage is Superstition to her followers, being indeed but a life-lesse carkasse of true Religion, which alway breedeth true Fortitude; as *Ptolomey* and the Romans vsed the like stratagem against the Iewes on their Sabbath, which (in it selfe a diuine Commandement) they construed to a superstitious Rest, a *Sacrifice* without *Mercie*, wherein they might helpe their beasts, but suffer themselues, like beasts, to be *leddie to the slaughter*.

Cambyses hauing pulled downe their Temples in Egypt, intended [b] as much to the Oracle of *Iupiter Ammon*, in which exploit hee imployed fiftie thousand men, which (as the Ammonians report) were ouer-whelmed with a tempest of Sand. Other newes of them was neuer heard. Himselfe meane-while, meanely prouided of victuall for such an enterprise, made an Expedition against the Ethiopians; in which, Famine making her lesse Purueyour for the Armie, fedde them with the flesh of each other; euery seauenth man being allotted to this bloodie seruice. Thus with a double discomfiture altogether discomforted, hee retireth to Memphis, where hee found them obseruing their festiuall solemnitie of the New-found *Apis*, and interpreting this ioy to haue proceeded from his losse, hee slew the Magistrate, whipped the Priests, commanded to kill the Citizens that were found feasting, and wounded their *Apis* with his sword, vnto death. Hee practised no less hostilitie vpon their Obeliskes, Sepulchres, and Temples. The Sepulchers they esteemed Sacred, as their eternall Habitations: (and no greater securitie could any Egyptian giue vnto his Creditor, then the dead bodies of their Parents.)

The [c] Temples, euery where accounted holy, heere were many, and those magnificent. At Memphis they had the Temples of *Serapis*, *Apis*, *Venus*; and the most ancient of them all, of *Vulcan*, with the Pigmey-Image of *Vulcan* in it, which *Cambyses* derided: of *Serapis* at Canopus, where Pilgrimes by dreames receiued Oracles: at Hetaclium, Sai, and Buris, to *Latona*; at Mendes to *Pan*; at Momemphis to *Venus*; at Necropolis, Nicopolis, and other places to other supposed Deities. *Cambyses* also burned the Images of the Cabyrians and the Temple of *Anubis*, at Heliopilis, whose stately building and spacious circuit *Strabo* describeth, as likewise at Thebes.

They write, that after, as hee was taking Horse, his sword, falling out of the Scabberd, wounded him in the thigh (where hee before had wounded *Apis*) and slew him. In [d] the time while the Persians enioyed Egypt, the Athenians, by instigation of *Inarus* King of Libya, inuaded Egypt, wonne Nilus and Memphis: but after sixe yeeres lostall againe.

Ochus, one of his Successours (called of the Ægyptians, *Asse*) killed their *Apis*, and placed an Asse in his roome, which kindled such indignation in *Bagoas* an Egyptian, (one of his Eunuches) that hee murthered *Ochus*, whom hee hurled to bee rent and torne of Cats that this Beast, sacred to *Isis*, might reuenge the indignitie offred to *Apis*. But this Eclipse of the Egyptian superstition, caused by this Persian imposition, had an end, together with that Monarchie. For *Alexander* [e] did not only leaue them to their wonted Rites, himselfe [f] sacrificing to their *Apis*, and solemnizing Games in his honor, but added further glory to their Country, by erection of that famous Citie, named of himselfe Alexandria, (g whereas some thinke [h] the Citie *No* had before stood, destroyed by *Nabuchodonosor*) second in reputation to Rome, the [i] receptacle of Iewish, Grecian, and Egyptian Religions; adorned with many Temples and Palaces: his Successours, *Ptolomaus Lagi* (of whom the following Kings were all

a *Herod. l. 3.*

Iosepb. Antiq.

b *Iustin. l. 1.*

c *Strab. l. 17.* describeth the forme of these Temples.

d *Thucid. l. 1.*

Aelian. var. hist. l. 6. c. 8.

e *Curt. lib. 4.*

Arrian. l. 3.

f *Adrianus: Theat. Sanct.*

g *Sex. Aurel. de Caesar. 16.*

h *Lychst. Eccles. Temp.*

i *Herodian. l. 7.*

all called *Ptolomæi* and [k] *Lagidæ*) *Philadelphus, Euergetes, Philopator, Epiphanes, Philomator, Euergetes* the second, *Physcon, Lathurus, Auletes*, the Father of *Cleopatra*, (whom *Iulius Cæsar* made Queene of Ægypt, the price of her honestie, and *Anthonie*, his wife, whom, together with her selfe, her ambition ouerthrew) adding to the greatnesse of Alexandria. *Plators* Phylosophie was not onely first borrowed of the Egyptians, but was publikely read at Alexandria as well as at Athens: which continued many ages. Sixe hundred yeeres after his death, *Ammonius* surnamed (of his former occupation being a Porter) *Saccus* seemed to haue lighted on the bookes of *Hermes*, [l] and thence learned the Doctrine of the Trinitie: of whom his Disciples *Plotinus* and *Aurelius* write, and after them their Schollers *Porphyrie* and *Theodorus Asinaus*; and their Auditors *Iamblichus* and *Syrianus*; to this last succeeded at Athens *Proclus, Lycius*, and after him the last of the greatest *Platonikes Damascius*: which haue written many things of the three beginnings.

The same *Ammonius* with like Philosophicall happinesse are said to haue found the Oracles of *Zoroaster*, which the two *Iulians* the Father and the Sonne, Chaldæans, translated out of their tongue into Greeke, in the time of *M. Aurelius* the Philosopher. *Pythagoras* had before learned it of *Zabratus* in Assiria: which (it seemeth) *Plato* heard of the younger *Architas*, and dispersed closely the seedes thereof in his Bookes, so that the elder Interpreters conceiued him not till the time of this *Ammonius* the Porter, from whom heere (as from *Socrates* a Statuarie in Athens) flowed this Diuine wisedome. Hee taught at Alexandria in the dayes of *Clemens Alexandrinus* about two hundred yeeres after Christ. *Origen* was his hearer. *Iamblichus* comprehended these Oracles of *Zoroaster*, in thirtie Bookes or thereabouts: for *Damascius* citeth the eight and twentie.

The wealth of the *Ptolomies* [m] raigning in Egypt appeareth by *Straboes* report of *Auletes*, his reuenues to be twelue thousand fiue hundred Talents, which yet was counted dissolute and vnthriftie. This by Master [n] *Brereswood* is summed two millions three hundred fortie three thousand & seuen hundred and fiftie pounds of our money: Whereas the reuenues of *Darius Hystaspis* (accounted a hard man) is by *Herodotus* reckoned foureteene thousand fiue hundred and sixtie Euboike Talents, which makes 182000. pounds, a great deale lesse summe, from that greater Empire. But they had other improuements. *Alexander* [o] is said to spend more then this on *Hephestions* funerall, by fiftie fiue thousand pounds. Yea, the Roman reuenues are by *Plutarch* [p] summed at eight thousand fiue hundred Myriades, which in our money is two millions, sixe hundred fiftie sixe thousand, and two hundred and fiftie pounds, not hugely exceeding the Egyptian.

k *Legidarum imperium & regum series: Sto. L. 17. Nicoph. pate Eutrop. l. 6. & 7.*
l *Tr. Patrit. Panarch. l. 9. Idem l. 16.*
1 Some learned men are of opinion that these pretended bookes of *Hermes*, as also the Oracles of *Sybill* which are extant, were but counterfeits of some Christians, seeking to winne Heathens by such proofe worse then Heathenish.
Idem l. 16.
m *Strab. l. 17.*
n *Brer. de pond. Cap. 10.*
Her. Thal.
o *Arrian. lib. 6. Plut. Pomp. Bud. de Asse.*

§. II.

Of the Schoole and Librarie at Alexandria.

HAuing mentioned the Studies and learned men at Alexandria, and wealth of their Kings, I hold it not amisse to entertaine your eyes in longer view of that Alexandrian Schoole and Librarie. *Somandius* or *Osymandias* [a] is the first in any Historie mentioned that erected a Librarie, setting this Inscription in the Frontispice thereof, Ψυχῆς ἰατρεῖον, *The Medicinary* or *Physicke-shop of the Minde*. Some accuse *Homer* to haue stolen his *Iliads* and [b] *Odysses* out of *Vulcans* Temple at *Memphis*, being the workes of *Phantasia* a woman: the worke of a womanish fantasie so to deceiue, or receiue, of that almost more then Man. But the second *Ptolomey*, sonne of *Ptolomeus Lagi* was Author of that famous Library at Alexandria, following (saith [c] *Strabo*) the example of *Aristotle*. [d] *Athenæus* addes the Bookes of *Aristotle* also bought by *Ptolomey* of *Neleus*, which succeeded *Theophrastus* in this Legacie bequeathed to him from the Philosopher Himselfe. *Iosephus* tells vs of the Translation of the Law by the [e] Seuentie or Seuentie two Interpreters, procured by *Demetrius Phalareus* at the Kings charge: who also obtained the like Translations of other [f] Chaldæan, Egyptian, and Romane Monuments: the number of which translated Bookes, *Cedrenus* numbers one hundred thousand, *Seneca* [g] speakes of foure hundred thousand. *Iosephus* of fiue hundred thousand in the whole, which by the succeeding care of this Kings Successors, did after amount (it is [h] *Gellius, Ammianus, & Isidores* testimonie) to seuen hundred thousand Volumes: All which by cruell disaster in the Ciuill warres of *Cæsar*, perished by fire; He firing the ships, and they the adioyning Library; which neither He in his Commentaries, nor *Hirtius* (as *Cæsars* most dismall fate) once mention: but *Plutarch, Dio, Liuie, Seneca, Ammianus*, and *Gellius* forget not these manifold Memorials, thus buried at once, & for euer, in forgetfulnes. This Library was in the Temple of *Serapis*, as both *Marcellinus*, & after him *Tertullian*, testifie: but that in *Tertullians* dayes was another famous Library of *Cleopatra's* Founding, called

a *Diod. Sic. l. 1.*
b *Naucrates ap. Eustat. in Prefat. Odyss.*
c *Strab. l. 1.*
d *Athen. l. 1.*
e *Iosep. Ant. lib. 12. c. 2. Aristeus.*
f *Epiph. de pondere. Cedren.*
g *Sen. de Tranq. cap. 9.*
h *Gel. l. 6. c. vlt. Am. l. 22. Isid. habet falso 70. pro 700.*

called for the likenesse, *Ptolemeys*; which in likelihood continued till that glorious Fabrike was ruined in the dayes of *Theodosius*, as *Rufinus*, *Socrates*, and *Sozomen* haue written. Most of the Bookes of this latter, were brought from Pergamus, chiefe City of the lesser Asia, Seat of the Actalike Kings; one of which, *Eumenes* there collected two hundred thousand Volumes, ἀνὰ βιβλία (not reckoning, as [u] *Lipsius* interprets the place, than Volume for more then one, which contayned diuers Treatises) giuen by *Antonius* vnto *Cleopatra*, as [x] *Plutarch* hath related. *Ptolemey* the fift then liuing, denied *Eumenes* in enuious emulation, the Egyptian paper, the cause that Parchment was then inuented at Pergamus, by *Eumenes* his industry, for the vse of his Library, as not onely *Plinie* and *Varro*, but the name of thele skinnes called *Pergamena* of that City, sufficiently witnesse. The Egyptian Paper (of which ours made of ragges hath still the name) was made of a Sedgie Reed growing in the Marishes of Egypt, called *Papyrus*, which easily diuides it selfe into thinne flakes; these laid on a Table, and moystened with the glutinous water of Nilus, were prest together and dryed in the Sunne. The Greekes and Romanes had their many famous Libraries, which would here trouble our Egyptian Traueller, who in *Lipsius* his Booke of that Argument may better satisfie himselfe: as also touching their Furnitures of Marble, Iuory, Glasse, and many many curious artificiall Inuentions; besides the [y] Images of the bodies of learned Men there placed of Gold, Siluer, or Brasse, neere to more precious Images of their learned Mindes in their written Monuments. These indeed are the best mens best Images, in which their [z] *Immortall Soules* speake Immortally, yea, Immortality to themselues and others; they *being dead, yet speaking*, and neuer denying their wise counsels and familiar company to the [a] Studious, who by this meanes are *neuer less alone, then when alone*, and (as King *Alphonsus* sometimes said) *neuer find better Counsellers then these dead.*

And euer let their names flourish, that bestow care and cost to keepe those learned Names euer flourishing, and in redeeming these *Monuments* from Wormes, Mice, and putrifaction, erect vnto themselues *Monuments* farre beyond the stupendious Pyramides and other monstrous births of artificiall vanity. *Cheops* is scarsly remembred, nor worthy to be named with this *Ptolemey*, that fire not being able to consume the honour of his Name, that deuoured his Bookes: whereas *Cheops* his very name is doubted, and his memoriall rotten, not with standing his Pyramis still continues the remembrance of his Actiue and Passiue forgetfulnesse. And let my body want a Sepulchre, if my soule doe not more honour that [a] *Bodleian* Monument, then all Triumphall Chariots of the liuing, then the *Mausoleum*, *Mogoll*, or *Memphian* magnificence for the dead, or any other Regall or Imperiall interments. There the stones are mute, or speake the Architects prayse, or haue inscribed a few Verses, verball flourishes perhaps of the Poets wit: but here euery Booke hath an Epitaph, nay the whole Booke is an Epitaph, and reall Testimony of the Founders worth; so many thousand dead Authours quickened by such care to speake his deserued prayse, so many liuing Students hauing their Minds daily feasted by such bounty, and the vnborne posterity hauing a better Inheritance purchased and prouided to their minds, then their carefull Parents can for their Bodies. But how doth this likenesse transport vs from Alexandria to Oxford? In both an admirable Library; in both Prouisions of maynetenance for Collegiate and Academike Students, both necessary companions. For what else is store of Bookes, stately Fabrikes, and costly Furniture without Students, but carkasses without soule? and what They without Bookes and maynetenance, but walking Shadowes and wandring Ghosts? the one is (it is *Seneca*'s sentence) a [b] studious luxury, the other a riotous study. Diuine then is that Heroike care of Such who (at once both Clients and Patrons of Arts and Learning) by liuing and liuelihood seeme to ioyne and giue life to soule and body together. And such was this *Ptolemey*, who made part of His Palace a Schoole, hauing conuenient places for sitting and walking (they are the words of [c] *Strabo*) and a great House or College, in which the Learned conuerse, and dyet together. This College hath rents in common, and a Priest also Rector of the Schoole, appointed first by the Kings, and after by *Cæsar*. So carefull were these Kings of learned Neighbourhood, that they assigned part of the Palace to this employment, that all the choise learned in the Kingdome (as [d] *Philostratus* speaking of *Dionysius* admitted one of them by *Adrian*, affirmeth) were chosen Fellowes into this College, not young Students, but rewarded publikely for their former proficience, as the best deseruing Citizens of Athens had their dyet in the *Prytaneum*: therein differing from the Seminaries of Diuine and Humane Learning amongst vs; *Claudius* enlarged the Schoole: and *Hadrian* vsed much to disputé and question with the learned therein, herein [e] blamed that he bestowed this preferment on *Pancrates* a Poet, which had flattered him in the Canonization of *Antinous*.

u *Lips. de Bibliothec. c. 4.*
x *Plut. Antoni.*
y *Sueton. in Tiber. Plin. in Epist. & de Stit. lib. 6. c.*
z *Plin. Epist. 4. 4.*
a *Cic. Offic. 3. 4. Alphons. Rex Hisp.*
a Sir *Tho. Bodlie* Founder of the famous Library at Oxford, I might also here mention the Honorable care of D. *King*, Late of London for that of Christ Church and many many other worthy Benefactors in both Vniuersities; but their Memorials are there, euerie Booke, euerie Page, euerie stone, being more compleat Panegyrikes of their praise, then the complementall Oration of the best Orator.
b *Studiosa quædam luxuria.*
c *Strab. Lib. 17.*
d *Philostrat. de Dionys. Sophista.*
e *Athen. Lib. 15.*

§. III.

Of their Deuotions in those Times.

f *Ruff.l.2.c.23. Theod.l.5.c.22.*

AS for the deuotion there f practised, wee may reade in *Ruffinus* of the Temple and Image of *Serapis* in his time destroyed by *Theophilus*, successor to *Athanasius*, Bishop of Alexandria. This Temple was borne vp with Vault-worke, with great lights and secret passages, the space of an hundred steps 2 on the top whereof round about, were lofty roomes, in which the Keepers of the Temple, and they which made themselues chaste (ἁγνεύοντες) remayned. Within these were Galleries, or Cloysters, in squared rankes, and in the middest of all was the Temple, lifted vp on costly Pillars, and built of Marble. *Post Capitolium nihil orbis terrarum cernit ambitiosius*, saith g another: Except the Capitoll, the World hath not a stately Piece. Here was the Image of *Serapis*, reaching with his right hand to the wall on one side, with his left hand vnto the other, being framed of all kinds of Wood and Metals. It had on the East a little window so fitted, that when on a solemne day the Image of the Sunne was admitted to salute this *Serapis*, the iuggling Priests 3 so obserued the time, that euen then the Sun-beames through this window, should seeme to kisse *Serapis*. They had also another tricke, by a Load-stone placed in the Roofe, to draw vp the Iron Image of the Sunne, as if it did then bid *Serapis* farewell. The superstitious Ethnikes had a Tradition among them, That if euer mans hand did offer violence to that Image, the Earth should presently returne, and resolue it selfe into the first Chaos, and the Heauens would suddenly fall. All this notwithstanding, a Christian Souldier dismembred the same, and burned *Serapis* openly, the Mice running out of his diuided trunke.

g *Am. Marcel. l.22. Diuers.* saith as much or more. *Inter Serapidis templa celeberrimam aut Alexand. Vetustiss. Memphi hoc fanum fabrie nec hostit. nec sacerdoth. licet prouisquam Apin sepeliernt. Pausan. At.*

Rome (saith *Ruffinus*) esteemed this *Serapis* to bee *Iupiter*, and that hee ware a Measure (*Modius*) on his head, as hee which gouerned all things in measure, or else did liberally feed men with the fruits of the Earth. Others coniectured him to be Nilus; others, *Ioseph* h that fed Egypt in the seuen deere yeeres. Others thought him to bee one *Apis*, (a King in Memphis) who in the time of famine, with his owne store, supplied the peoples want: for 3 which benefit they built a Temple to him after his death, wherein they nourished an Oxe, in remembrance of him, whose husbandry and tillage had nourished them. This Beast they called also *Apis*.

h *Oro.l.1.c.8.* affirmeth that of *Ioseph* the Egypt is still witnesse vnto his time, continuing the payment of the fifi part of their profits to the King.

He i mentioneth the Temple of *Saturne*, whose Priest called *Tyrannus*, vnder pretence of *Saturnes* commandement) would demand the company of what Lady he liked to beare the God company at night: which the Husband did not much sticke at, esteeming it an honour to haue a God his Corriuall. But *Tyrannus* shutting the woman into the Temple, by secret passages conueyed himselfe thither into the hollow Image of *Saturne*, in which hee held conference a while with the woman, and after by a deuice putting out the lights, satisfied his lust, in committing in the darke those workes of darknesse, which after being brought to light, caused the Temples destruction. 4

i Story of *Tyrannus*, *Saturnes* Priest.

They had Brest-plates of *Serapis* in euery House, in the Walles, Entries, Posts, Windowes; in stead whereof they after fastened Crosses. The Crosse in the Egyptian Mysteries signified *life to come*. They had a Tradition, That their Religion should continue, till there came a Signe, in which was Life. k And by this occasion many of their Priests were conuerted. *Sozomen* l reporteth the same, That in purging of *Serapis* Temple at Alexandria, the Crosse, being found among other their Hieroglyphickes, was occasion of the conuersion of many vnto the Christian Faith. This m Temple, and the Temple of *Bacchus*, were turned into Christian Churches. *Olympius* a Philosopher with a company of seditious Ethnikes, fortified themselues in *Serapis* Temple, and caused many by force to sacrifice: and when the Christians burned their Images, heard wered that the Images were but corruptible matter, but the Vertues, or Diuine Powers which inhabited them, were fled to Heauen. This I thought to mention for their sakes, who to their Image-worship haue borrowed the like Heathenish plaister. *Ruffinus* addeth, That in destroying the Temples, they found Reliques of their bloudie Superstition, the heads of Infants cut off, with the lips gilded.

k *Socra.l.5.c.16*
l *Sozo.l.7.c.15. Marcellinus* reporteth that *Theodosius* by Edict, abolished this Temple of *Serapis*.
m *Nicep.l.12.26 Theod.l.5.12. Hist.trip.l.10. cap.29.*

The deuotion of *Canopus* was not inferiour to that of Alexandria. Here, through the subtiltie of the Priest, the Chaldeans were vanquished. For whereas they challenged their God *Fire* to be the strongest, as deuouring other Woodden and Mettal-gods, hee conueyed an Earthen pot full of holes, which he had stopped with Waxe and filled with water, into the Image: and when the Chaldeans made their fiery tryall hereof, the Waxe melting, the Water issued, and quenched the fire. Hence it is that they made the Image of *Canopus* with feet 66 and necke short, and a belly like a barrell, or water-vessell.

Tacit.

Tacitus m reporteth certaine Miracles wrought at Alexandria by the instigation of *Serapis*: the curing of a lame and blind man, whom that God had mooued to seeke this helpe at *Vespasians* hand, which he also performed. He consulting with this Oracle, saw suddenly behind him in the Temple one *Basilides*, whom by present enquiry hee found to lye sicke foure-score miles thence in his bed. The name yet was an ominous signe to him of the whole Empire, as deriued of Βασιλεὺς. The original of this God is by some imputed to *Ptolomeus Lagi*, who hauing in Alexandria erected Temples, and instituted Religious Rites, seemed in his sleepe to see a tall young man, warning him to send into *Pontus*, to fetch thence his Image, suddenly after vanishing in a flame of fire. When the Egyptian Priests could not satisfie him in the interpretation of these things, *Timotheus* an Athenian, whom hee had sent for to bee chiefe Master of Ceremonies, willed him to send to Sinope, wherein was an ancient Temple of *Pluto*, hauing in it the Image of *Proserpina*, *Ptolomey* neglecting this; and with a second Vision terrified, sent to *Scydrothemis* King of Sinope n for the same; being (in the way) further hereunto incouraged by the Delphian Oracle. *Scydrothemis* protracting the business, was by diseases and manifest anger of the Gods forced to assemble and perswade his people to suffer the carrying away of their God. But whiles they resisted this enterprize, the ambitious Idoll, without once taking leaue, conueyed himselfe into the ship, which also, together with him, hee made to arriue at Alexandria in three dayes, where this Temple was built to him, in the place wherein sometime had stood *Isis* Chappell. Some o esteemed him *Æsculapius* for his cures, some *Osiris*, some *Iupiter*, p some *Pluto*: but *Serapis* was his Egyptian appellation. q *Ptolomeus Philadelphus*, his Sonne, bestowed cost in that famous Library at Alexandria before related, by r *Cæsars* Souldiers casually burned. *Cornelius Tacitus* s relleth no lesse Miracle of *Memnons* stony Image at Thebes, or as others say, at Abidus, which being stricken with the Sun-beame, at the Sun-rising yeelded a vocall sound. This Image was halfe cut off by *Cambyses*: *Pausanias* t sayth that he saw it, and largely describeth it. *Augustus*, hauing destroyed *Anthony* and *Cleopatra*, brought u Egypt into a Prouince, and scowred all the trenches of Nilus. Hee caused the body of x Great *Alexander* to bee brought forth, which he crowned with a Crowne of Gold, and strewing with flowers, worshipped it. Hee built *Nicopolis* in memory of his *Actian* Victory: instituted there *Quinquennall* Games; enlarged *Apollos* Temple: and consecrated the place where he had pitched his Tents to *Neptune* and *Mars*, adorning it with spoyles.

Onias I one of the Iewish Priests (according to the Iewish manner) literally interpreting *Esaies* z Prophesie of the *Altar in Egypt*, built a Temple at Bubastis in fashion of that at Ierusalem, but lesse, by the permission of *Ptolomeior*, and furnished it with Priests and Levites after the Iewish Religion. At a Alexandria also the Iewes were free and had their Synagogues, as at Leontopolis likewise, and other places. b *Procopius* sayth, that *Diocletian* the Emperour bestowed *Elephantina* and the parts adioyning on the *Blemi* and *Nobatæ*, whose Religion was a mungrell of the Greeklish, Egyptian, and their Owne: but he caused them to cease humane Sacrifices which they vsed to offer to the Sunne.

And thus was the state of Religion in Egypt during the conquests of the Persians, Greeks and Romans, each rather seeking to settle heere their Empires then Opinions. But when the *Sunne of Righteousnesse, the Sonne of God, the Saniour of Man, appeared to the World*, he honoured Egypt with his infancy, as after with a Religious conquest, by *weapons (not carnall) calling downe the holds* which these Hellish spirits had heere so long possessed; thus fulfilling truely what *Esay* had prophesied, and *Mercury* foretold. Alexandria became a Patriarchall Sea (the first Bishop whereof was Saint *Marke*) enioying in Libya, Pentapolis, and Egypt, the same power that the Romane Bishop had in Italy, by Decree of the c first Nicen Counsell. Heere also liued the first Heremites (the d first and chiefe of which was *Anthony*, an Egyptian Inuenter of this Order) in the sandy Desarts, by occasion of those bloudy persecutions wherein many thousand lost their liues. Of these Heremites reade *Io. Cassianus*, and *Seuerus Sulpitius de vita Martin. l. 3.* But when as the Mahumetan Religion and Armes began first to peepe into the World, Egypt e was made a slaue to those Superstitions vnder which it groneth till this day.

m *Cir. Tac. l. 4. c. 35. vid. Nat. Sir. H. Saule.*
n *Dionys.* calls him *Lupster* of Sinope, on which *Rufinus* commeteth that Sinope (not is the Same with Memphites, for Sinope is a hill of Memphis or else of this Pontike Sinope, &c adding this Storie. *Theoph.* Patriarch of Antioch calls *Serapis*, *Sinopa Tripagua.*
o *Alexan. lib. c. 5. 6.*
p *Achil. Stat. 4.*
q Of *Philadelphus* incredible pompe, and *Philopator*, ship read *Athen. l. 5. c. 5. 6.*
r *A. Gell. l. 6. 17. Aldo. Tiber.*
s *Cor. Tac. An. 2.* Of *Memnons* Image the Oracle exposit. *Alexandri Mag. Dionys. Rufinus. Tzetz. Sat. 15.*
t *Pausan. Attic.*
u *Sex. Aur. Victor. Suetonius. Tres. Aug.*
x This body *Ptolom.* tooke from *Perdiccas* and buried it at Alexandria in a Golden Tombe. *Strab. l. 17.*
y *Isa. cap. 19. 8.*
z *Isa. 19. 23.*
a *Ios. ant. l. 12. 2.*
b *Procop. de bello Persico l. 1. c. 20. Niic. Con. 6.*
d *Hist. Tripar. cap. 11. Paul. Diac. l. 8.*
e *Vincent. Speculo. l. 30.*

§. IIII.

§. IIII.

Of the Moderne Ægyptians, of Cairo and Alexandria.

q *Leo Africa.* 8.

r The *Arabians* and *Turkes* doe call *Cairo Misr*: the reuenue whereof amounteth to aboue a Million, & runneth into the *Hasnad* or priuate Treasurie of the Great *Turke*, and not into the publike Treasurie: *Lazara Soranzo.* He hath vnder him there fifteene *Sanracks* & 100000 Timariots, or horsemen fees to maintaine so many horse for the *Turkes* warres at their owne charge. *Knolles.*

s *G. Tyr.* saith, it was built in the yeere of *Mah.* 378. and made the Seat Royall 361.

t Pilgrim. to Mecca *ap. Hak.*

u *P. Mart. Leg. Bab. l.* 3.

x Perhaps this is that *Babylon in Egypt* where *Sanutus* saith the Merchants remayned the *Soldans* with his Souldiery in *Cairo.*

y *Sal. Sibu.*

z *Hak.* Pilgrim. to Mecca.

a *Neob. Or. Terra Par.* 3.

b *Baumgarten.* tels a report (yet doubteth of the truth) of 24000. which perhaps was a Cipher added to his account for 2400.

c *P. Mart.*

d *W. Lithgow* speakes of 10000. Christians in this City, besides *Saracens, Iewes,* and Heathens.

THe Saracens diuided Egypt into three parts; Errif, from Cairo to Rosetto; Assahid, the Land part from Cairo to Bugia; Maremma, or Bechria, as Nilus runneth to Damiata. It was q subdued vnder the conduct of *Hamrus* the sonne of *Hasi* Generall of the Arabian forces to *Homar* or *Aumar* the second Caliph. Hee onely exacted Tribute, permitting freedome of their Conscience to all. He built vpon the bankes of Nilus a Towne called by the Arabian *Fustato*, that is, Tabernacle; because in the Desart places, through which he passed, he was constrained to lye in Tents. The common people call this Towne Mesre Hatichi, the Ancient Citie r for it is in respect of Cairo, s which was after built two miles from hence, by one *Gebour*, who of a Dalmatian slaue had beene aduanced to be a Counsellor vnto *Ekeim* the Mahumetane *Caliph*, and was Generall of his Army about the foure hundred t yeere of their *Hegira.* Hee called it *Elchabira*, which signifieth *an imperious Mistresse.* Hee walled it round, and built in it that famous Temple called *Gemih Halbare*, as *Hamrus* had done before at Fustato. In this Towne of Fustato standeth the Sepulchre of a famous Saint of their Sect called *Nassiffa*, of the Line of *Mahomet*, whose beautifull Shrine the Schismaticall Patriarches of Egypt adorned with siluer Lampes, Carpets of Silke and other precious ornaments. No Mahumetan commeth to Cairo eyther by Water or Land, but he adoreth this Sepulchre, and offereth thereat, insomuch that the yeerely Oblations and Almes heere offered for the relieife of the poore kindred of *Mahomet*, and mayntenance of the Priests that keepe it (which want not their counterfeit Miracles to delude the peoples zeale) amount to one hundred thousand *Saraffi.* And when *Zelim* conquered Cairo, the Ianizaries rifling this Sepulchre, found in it fiue hundred thousand *Saraffi* in ready Coine, besides other riches. Some report that this *Nassiffa* being a Dame of honour, yeelded her body, without reward, to any that required the same, u bestowing (as she said) this Almes for the loue of the Prophet *Mahomet.* Lettice sutable to such lips: Like Prophet, like Saint. But *Leo* would haue you thinke her an honester woman.

Fustato is reckoned as a Suburb to Cairo, containing (in *Leo's* time *Anno* one thousand fiue hundred twenty sixe) fiue thousand Families: besides many Sepulchres adored of the fond people, which couer the pauement with rich Carpets. Hither resort euery Friday great multitudes for deuotion, and bestow liberall Almes: x They heere sprinkle cold water with sweet herbes and leauy boughes.

Bulach is another Suburb of Cairo vpon the bankes of Nilus, of like distance, and hath in it foure thousand Families with stately Temples and Colledges. Beb Elloch y standeth a mile from Cairo, and hath about three thousand Families. Gemeh Tailon was adorned by *Tailon* sometime Gouernour of Egypt with a sumptuous Temple and Palace. Beb Zuala, another Suburbe, containeth twelue thousand Families. Cairo, it selfe within the Walles, hath not aboue eight thousand Families, and is full of stately and magnificent Temples. Heere is an Hospitall built by *Peporis*, the first Soldan of the Mamalukes Race: the yeerely reuenues whereof amount to two hundred thousand *Saraffi*, or as some reckon, fiue hundred Ducats a day. It is open to all sicke and diseased persons, and heire to all that die there. The Plague is sometime so hot at Cairo, that there dye twelue thousand persons daily. This was the state of Cairo in *Leo's* time. *Solemon* z *Schweigher* affirmeth, that at his beeing in Cairo, *Anno* a thousand fiue hundred eighty one, there died daily betweene seuen and ten thousand: nor is any place more plagued with the French Disease. Besides that Hospitall, and *Nassiffa* Sepulchre, are three other famous, *Zauia della Inachari, Imamscafsy Giamalazar.* This is the generall Vniuersitie of all Egypt. a In this place, *Anno* one thousand fiue hundred threescore and sixe, in the moneth of *Ianuary*, by misfortune of fire b were burned nine thousand written Bookes of great value, wrought with Gold, worth three or foure hundred Ducats a piece one with another. This was interpreted as an ominous token of their ruine. They thinke also that Mecca will in short time be conquered by the Christians, and her deuotions shall bee remoued to Rosetto. *Neander* c his conceit is ridiculous, that Cairo should hold as much people as all Italy, and that there are two and twentie thousand Temples. *Iohn Eustham* out of their owne Registers d numbreth but two thousand foure hundred: and though Cairo considered together with these Suburbs is great, yet it is not all the way continued with houses and buildings, e but hath Gardens also and Orchards betweene. *Iodocus à Meggen* reporteth, that a man can hardly walke the streets by reason of the multitudes of people f and beasts. They bring their water from Nilus into the Citie on Camels: on Mules, and Horses

ses the chiefe men ride, and on Asses the poorer. Neither will they permit a Christian to ride on a Horse. They sell all by waight, euen wood for the fire, of which is great scarsitie. And although the Temples and some Houses are faire, yet the greater part of the Towne is ill built. Because they may not by their Law drinke wine, they compound a drinke of drie Rasons steeped in water and other mixtures; yea, and secretly will make bold with the former. He saith, that (besides other calls from their steeples to deuotion) they ascend a mid-night to call, that the people may encrease and multiply, and therewith their Religion.

Beniamin Tudelensis numbred in Cairo 2000. Iewes in his time (440. yeeres since) in two Synagogues and Sects of the Hellenists and Babylonians. He saith that there then raigned in Misraim or Cairo *Amir Almumanin Eli* sonne of *Abtalib*, all whose subiects were called *Moredim* or Rebels, for their difference from the Bagdad Caliph. His Palace was called Soan. And he came forth but twice a yeere, on their Easter solemnitie, and then when Nilus ouerfloweth, which extendeth fifteene dayes iourneyes when it ascendeth twelue cubits on their measuring pillar, and but halfe that way is watered, if it ascendeth but fixe cubits. An Officer euery day signified the increase, with proclamation of praise to God therefore. The water of Nilus seruedh for drinke and medicine against repletions. Old Misraim (he saith) is two leagues from new Misraim, but altogether waste. *Baumgarten* thinks there are in Cairo 8000. which liue onely by carrying water. And there are diuers which either of their owne vow, or by some Testators charitie offer freely to all that will drinke in siluer vessels: and sprinkle the streets twice a day because of the heate and dust. There are more in Cairo (hee reporteth such a rumour) which want houses to dwell in, then Venice hath Citizens. There are esteemed to be 15000. Iewes: 10000. Cookes which carry their cookerie and boile it as they goe, on * their heads. In nine or ten houres one can scarcely compasse it. But you must know that this was in the time of the Soldan, before the Turke had conquered it.

* Like such as sell Codlings, &c. in London.

Now though I haue beene alreadie tedious, yet for the Readers fuller notice of this Countrey and Citie, I haue here added some of the later and exacter Obseruations of that learned Gentleman, Master *George Sandys*, to whom wee haue elsewhere beene indebted. Hee relateth, that trauelling from Alexandria to Cairo, they paid at the gate a Madeyne a head, indifferently for themselues and their Asses: they passed through a Desart, producing here and there a few vnhusbanded Palmes, Capers, and a weede called *Kali* * which they vse for fuell, selling the ashes to the Venetians, who mixing them equally with the stones brought from Pauia by the Riuer Ticinum, make thereof their Christalline glasses. On the left hand they left the ruines of *Cleopatras* Palace, and beyond that of Bucharis an ancient Citie: and passing a guard of Souldiers, and after that ferried ouer a Creeke of the Sea, they came to a quadrangle arched, and built by a Moore for the relieſe of Trauellers, and there repoſed themselues on the stones till mid-night, and then passed alongst the shore, before day entering Rosetta, where they repayred to a Caue belonging to the Frankes, in an vnder, darke, mustie roome, where they were entertayned on the hard floore. This Citie stands vpon the principall branch of Nile, called heretofore Canopus, which about three miles thence entereth the Sea, hauing the entrance crossed with a barre of sand (as at Damiata) changeable with the windes and surges, the Iorbies or Boates being therefore made without keeles, flat and round in the bottom, a Pilot sounding all the day to direct for the Channell. The houses are of bricke, flat-roofed (a thing generall in these hotter countries) jetting ouer to shaddow the narrow streets, exceedingly furnished with prouisions, built by a slaue of an Egyptian Chalife. Neere to this stood Canopus, that Citie *famous* in the worst sense, if we beleeue *Iuuenal*; where, to eschue vice, saith *Seneca*, was to incurre infamie. Here had *Serapis* a Temple, visited in his Often festiuals by a world of luxurious people from Alexandria, in painted boats, downe the artificiall Channels.

M. G. Sandys.

* Kali.

Rosetta.

Fanosa non cedit turba Canopi Luxuria, Iuuen. S. 15.

Here hyring a Ierby, the next day but one they came to Cairo. This arme of Nilus is as broad as the Thames at Tilburie, flow, often troublesomely shallow, and euer thicke: hauing on each side many meane Townes, seated on Hills of mud throwne vp, to preserue them in the ouerflow. Ten miles from Rosetto is that Cut which runneth to Alexandria. Vpon the bankes along as they passed, were infinite numbers of deepe and spacious Vaults into which they let the Riuer, from whence they conuey it by trenches into their seuerall grounds, being drawne vp into higher Cisternes with wheeles set round with Pitchers, turned about by Buffoloes. The Moores had much labour in drawing vp the Boate, wading often aboue the middle, at euery stronger hale crying *Elough*, thinking by this name of God to finde his assistance, and to chase away Deuils and impediments. Many of these Moores are broken by reason of their hard labour, and weake foode. They are descended of the Arabians, and vnderstand their language: a deuout, ignorant, laborious people, tawnie, meane statured, nimble-footed, shrill tongued, spare of diet, reputed base by the Turkes, not suffered to weare weapons in Townes, not admitted to Souldierie or Magistracie. In Cities they practise mere-

Moores in Egypt.

merchandise, little differing in habite from Turkes. There dwell also in Egypt Arabians, Iewes, Christians, both Greekes, Armenians, and the trueft Egyptians, the Coptites. The Countrey people follow husbandrie, are wrapt in a russet Mantle, both men and women; these hiding their faces with beastly clowts, with holes for their eyes, hauing easie trauell (those which are borne in the eighth moneth liuing, elsewhere deadly) to that purpose setting a plant in the roome, which growes in the Desarts, low, leafelesse, browne, branched like Corall, and set in water, doth then strangely display it selfe. A nastie people crusted with dirt, and footed with smoke by reason of their fuell and want of chimneyes in their base cottages. The women thinke it a great comelinesse to bee fat, and therefore in the Cities being wrapt from the crowne of the head to the foot in linnen Robes, they spreade their armes vnderneath to appeare more corpulent. They couer their faces with blacke Cypres bespotted with red. The better sort weare hoopes of gold and siluer about their armes, and aboue their ankles; others of copper, with pieces of coine halfe couering their foreheads, and plates about their necks. Both men and women brand their armes for the loue of each other, diuers women stayning their chinnes with knots and flowers of blue, made by pricking of the skinne with needles, and rubbing it ouer with inke, and the iuyce of an herbe, which will neuer out.

Cairo.

Cairo (which wee had almost forgotten in this generall view of the moderne Egyptians) is seated on the East side of the Riuer, representing the forme of a Crescent, stretching South and North with the adioyning Suburbs fiue Italian miles, in breadth scarce one and a halfe where broadest: the walls (if it bee walled) rather seeming to belong to priuate houses; the streets narrow, the houses high built, more faire without then inwardly commodious and most of stone neere to the top; at the end almost of each street a gate, which shut (as euery night they are) make them defensiue, as so many Castles. Their locks and keyes be of wood euen to doores platted with Iron. The Mosques are magnificent, the stones of many being carued without, supported with pillars of marble, adorned with what Art can deuise, and their Religion tolerate. Yet differ they in forme from those of Constantinople, some being square, with open roofes in the middle of a huge proportion, the couered circle tarrast aboue; others stretched out in length, and many fitted vnto the place where they stand: adioyning to which are lodgings for Santons, Fooles, and mad men, whom their deuotion honoureth. Here be also diuers goodly Hospitals both for building, reuenue, and attendance. Next to these in beautie are the great Mens Seraglios, by which if a Christian ride, they will put him from his Asse with indignation and contumelie. The streets are vnpaued and exceeding durtie after a showre (for here it rayneth sometimes in winter, and then most subiect to plagues) ouer which many beames are laid athwart on the tops of houses, and couered with mats, to shelter them from the Sunne. The like couerture there is betweene two high Mosques in the principall street, vnder which when any great Man passeth, they shoote vp arrowes that sticke there in abundance. The Nile, a mile distant, in the time of the inundation flowes in by sundrie channels, which growing emptie or corrupted, they haue it brought on Camels: their Well water being good for no other vse but to wash houses or cleanse the streets. In the midst of the Towne is a spacious Caue, called the Besestan, in which are sold all finer wares, and old things as at out-cryes, by the Call, *who gines more?* There are three principall gates, neere to the Northermost of which sometime stood that stately Palace of *Dulibe* wife to *Caitbeus* the Sultan, which had the doores and iawmes of Iuorie, the walls and pauements checkered with discoloured marble; Columnes of Porphyre, Alabaster and Serpentine; seelings flourished with Gold and Azure, inlaid with Ebonie: but ruined by *Selim* the Turke, and the stones and ornaments transported to Constantinople. Neere to this is the lake Esbiky, square and large; then onely a Lake when Nilus ouerflowetb, frequented with barges of pleasure: at other times as profitable as then pleasant, affording fiue harueste in a yeere. Within and without the Citie are a number of delicate Orchards watered as they doe their fields; in which grow varietie of excellent fruits, as Oranges, Limons, Pomegranates, Apples of Paradise, Sicamor figs, and another kinde (growing on Trees as bigge as Oakes, boared full of holes, the fruit not growing amongst the leaues, but out of the bole and branches) Dates, Almonds, Cassia fistula (leafed like an Ash, the fruit hanging downe like Sausages) Apples no bigger then berries, Galls growing on Tamariskes; Plantains, that haue a broad flaggie leafe growing in clusters, and shaped like Cucumbers, the rinde like a Pease-cod, solide within without stones or kernels, to the taste very delicious (holden by the Mahumetans the forbidden fruit in Paradise) and many other Trees, some bearing fruit all the yeere, and almost all their leaues. To these adde whole fields of Palmes, and yet no preiudice to the vnder growing Corne: these are naturall (others planted, and onely Orchards) pleasant in forme, in fruit profitable: of body tall, high, rotnd and slender (yet vnfit for buildings) crested aboue, and therefore easily climbed: the branches like

Their Mosques

Raine in Cairo.

A stately Palace.

A stately Palace.

Orchards in Cairo.

Date Trees, naturall and common euen in the Desarts of Egypt.

like Sedges, slit on the neather side and euer greene, growing onely on the top as plumes of feathers, yeerly pruned, and the bole at the top bared. There are Male and Female, both bearing Cods, but this onely fruitfull, yet not without the Males neighbourhood, whose vpright growth thee enclines her crowne, hauing in the beginning of March, her seedes commixed with his. Their Dates grow like fingers, whence they haue their name, ripe in the end of December, which began to Cod in Februarie: the tops of such as are fruitlesse, they open, and take out the braine which they sell for a Sallad, better then an Artichoke: of the branches they make bedsteds, Latices, &c, of the webbe of the leaues, Baskets, Mats, Fans, and the like; of the outward huske of the Cod good cordage, of the inward, 10 Brushes: all this they yeerly assoord without empayring the Tree.

At the South end of the Citie stands the Castle, once the Mansion of the Mamaluke Sultans, ascended vnto by one way onely, and that hewen out of the Rocke by the easie steepes on horse-backe to bee ascended. From the top the Citie and Countrey yeeld a delightfull prospect. It is so great, that it seemes a Citie of it selfe, immured with high walls diuided into partitions and entered by doores of Iron, wherein are many spacious Courts, in times past the places of exercise. The ruines testifie a *quondam* sumptuousnesse; many pillars of solide marble yet remaining, so huge, that they cause iust wonder, how they were thither conueyed. Here hath the *Bassa* his residence, and herein the *Diuan* is kept on Sundayes, Mundayes, and Tuesdayes: the Chauses as Aduocates preferring the suites of 10 their Clients. The *Bassa* commandeth as absolute Soueraigne, hath vnder him sixteene Sanziacks, and a hundred thousand Spacheis. The reuenues of this little Countrey amount to three millions of Sharisses, one to the Great Turke, the second to the *Bassa*, the third for payes and sending forth the Caruaan to Mecca. The present *Bassa* is *Mahemet*, a man well in yeeres, and of seuere conditions. He cut off the heads of foure thousand Spacheis at his first entrance for insolencies, and sent the great men to Constantinople, strangling such as refused, vsing the Arabians which hated the other, in his executions. Drunkennesse is punished with death. If a robberie bee committed, they which are appointed to guard that quarter, suffer for it, which makes them (to saue themselues) sometimes apprehend innocents, who with holes boared through their armes stretcht wide on staues, in which are candles 30 stucke burning downe to the flesh, are led to execution. His rigour made him confine himselfe to the Castle, yet so approued of the Grand Seignior, that he hath giuen him his daughter in marriage (a childe of foure yeeres) solemnized with all possible ceremonies. He will hardly suffer a Christian to turne Mahumetan, thinking, perhaps, they doe it rather for preferment then deuotion.

Castle of Cairo.

No Citie can be more populous, nor better serued with prouision of all sorts, then Cairo, the fairest Citie in Turkie, yet now as it were withered by age and sicknesse, in comparison of her yonger and more flourishing times. Most of the Inhabitants are Merchants or Artificers. All of a trade keepe their shops in one place, which they shut about fiue a clocke (except Cookes) solacing themselues the rest of the day. Few but such as haue great fami- 10 lies, dresse meate in their houses, which the men buy readie dreft, the women being too fine fingered to meddle with housewiferie. These ride abroad vpon pleasure on easie-going Asses, and tie their husbands to due beneuolence, otherwise procuring a diuorcement. Many Physitians are in Cairo, by reason of the many Simples brought hither. They haue a kinde of Rue, wherewith they perfume themselues in the morning, as a preseruatiue against both Infection and Deuils. There are many which get their liuings by shewing feats with Birds and Beasts: which teach Rauens to vse their throats and tongues together, so that they will make a man admire at their speech: Dogs and Goats to goe and turne on the tops of little pillars, not aboue the breadth of a mans hand; Camels taught to dance when they are yong, by setting them on a hot hearth, playing meanewhile on an Instrument, the heat then 10 and musicke after, causing this motion. Asses are not Asses, but beyond *Bankes* his Horse in trickes, taught by their suttle Masters. But Cairo hath carried vs too farre, an *Imperiosa Mistris* indeed to our Readers patience. Yet will we further adde this short note out of the two *Marenites* Translators of the *Nubiæ Geographers*.

Metsr is the name of Cairo and all Egypt, so called of *Mesraim* the sonne of *Noa*, as saith *Mohamed Sarazita*. This Citie is gouerned by a Bascia and twentie foue thousand Spahies and Ianizaries. It is rich in Cassia Trees, Sugar Canes and Corne, many Lands adioyning yeelding harueft twice a yeere, Hay foure times, Herbs and Pulse in manner alway greene. Adde store of Salt very white, the water of Nilus inclosed in pits, and by the onely heate of the Sunne in three dayes being turned into it. In former times it was famous for Balsam 10 plants, now remouued to Mecca by command of the *Othomans*; and none are found in all Egypt but seuen shrubs * in the *Bassa's* garden, kept with great diligence. The leaues are like to

Cairo. *Gab. Sionita & Io. Hesronita.* Salt of Nilus. Balsam. * Master *Sandys* saith, there is now but one, *lib. 6. 8. p. 2.*

to wilde Marjoram, the juyce is taken by a little incision in the trunke or branch. *Abu-Chalil-Ben-Aali* writes, that from the fifteenth to the two and twentieth of *Rabij Athani (Iune)* there falls a dew which leaues no token thereof in the earth, yet by vulgar * experience is found by weighing the Sand or Earth of Nilus bankes, and is an euident token of the encrease of Nilus. The Aire also is then made more wholsome; Plagues and Feuers cease, and those which were sicke [a] of them, recouered.

* *Vid. sup. pag.* 897.

a This is in Syria and ascribed to the Sunnes entrance into *Leo.*

Alexandria [b] is very vnwholesome, as the graue of that Alexandria wee before mentioned. Vnder the foundations are great habitations, as if they were two Alexandria's built one vpon another. Vnder the houses of the Citie are Cisternes sustayned with mightie Arches to receiue the inundation of Nilus, belonging (saith *G. Braun*) to every house: the cause of much sicknesse to the Inhabitants, especially since the diminishing and decay of the Citie, most of the Cisternes now being fennie for want of vse. When the Saracens had spoyled it, it remayned long desolate, vntill a subtile Caliph proclaymed that *Mahomet* had left great indulgences to such as would here inhabite. And thus he replenished the Citie with Inhabitants, building houses for them, as hee did Colledges for the Students, and Monasteries for the Religious. Here yet remayneth a little Chappell, wherein they say that the high Prophet and King, *Alexander* [c] the Great lyes buried: to which resort many Pilgrimes that adore the same, and bestow there their almes. The Arabians and their *Alcoran* also call *Alexander, Two-horned*, the reason whereof seemeth to be that his ambitious seeking to bee accounted the sonne of *Iupiter Amnon*: neither doe the vulgar Arabians know him by the name *Alexander*, but by that title of *Two-horned*. And such was his Image in the Cyrenaike coynes. This body was taken from *Perdiccas* by *Ptolemaus Lagi*, and there intombed in golds which *Cybiosartes* taking away, it was couered with glaile, for mayning till the time of the Saracens. In old time they had a custome, mentioned by [d] *Gallen*, of executing condemned persons which they would quickly despatch; to apply to the breast an Aspe, and then cause him to walke a few paces: and suddenly he is at his long home. This he there saw: a practice not much vnlike the Athenian draught of Hemlock. There is in Alexandria (as Master *Eneßam* relateth) a pillar of marble, called by the Turkes, *King Pharaos needle*, foure square, in height ninetie foote. Master *Sandys* saith, there lyes another by it, like vnto it, halfe buried in rubbidge: both Hieroglyphicall Obelisks of Tiberian marble, almost as hard, and of a deeper red then Porphyr: in the same place where *Alexanders* Palace stood. And without the said Citie foure hundred paces, another round, called *Pompeys Pillar*, standing on a square stone fifteene foote high: the compasse of the pillar is seuen and thirtie foote, the height, an hundred and one, causing no small wonder how it should be erected on that stone. This happily was set vp in memorie of *Great Pompey*, who by the Egyptian treacherie was slaine at Pelusium, almost in the sight of Ierusalem (as [e] *Eberus* noteth) and that Countrey of the Iewes which he had vniustly wronged and subdued to Romane seruitude; although his hands were purer touching the holy places and treasures, which his curious eyes would needes behold, then those of perjured *Crassus*, which before had suffered deserued vengeance by Parthian execution. *Iodocus à Meggen* [f] saith, that the Channell which bringeth water from Nilus continueth fiftie miles: the Cisternes which receiue it, are as you haue heard: and it is thought (as this our Author affirmeth) that those parts of Alexandria which the ground hideth, cost more then that which is open to the view. Yet doe these Cisternes now much decay. The Citie sheweth faire without, but within (they are *Baumgartens* [g] wordes) like a heape of stones: few houses are whole. The Custome is farmed by the Iewes at two hundred thousand Madeins a day (a coyne of siluer trebling the value of an Asper, thirtie of them amounting to a Riall of eight) the Port is free to friend and enemie. Ten in the hundred is paid in kinde of all thing for custome, onely money payes but one and a halfe, whereof they take an exact account, that they may sheffe at the value of returned commodities; then paying eleuen in the hundred more, euen for such Goods as are in propertie vnaltered. The places anciently famous in Alexandria, besides the Musæum and Serapium before mentioned, as their Vniuersitie and Librarie, were the Iiæum and other their Temples, which with the Palaces are said to take vp the fourth part of their Citie. *Benjamin Tudelensis* speaketh of a faire building without the walls in his time, called *Aristoteles Schoole*, wherein were twentie Schooles, and betweene them marble pillars: sometimes much frequented (as he saith, but I thinke, deceiued) [h] to heare *Aristotles* Reading. He mentions Vaults a mile long. He found there three thousand Iewes. Thebes, that sometime was so famous a Citie, contayneth not now above three hundred Families: and still retayneth some bones of the carkasse of old Thebes, many pillars, walls, inscriptions in Latine, Greeke, and Egyptian characters. Memphis, her next successor, is vtterly ruinate.

b Of the Egyptian Cities see *Mamalius* his 11. booke, the later part of *Alexan.* see the discourse and description of *G. Braun* and *Hogenberg* in *C.O.T. lib.* 1. *cap.* 16.

c *Illic Pellei proles vetusta, Pruppi Felix predo iacet terrarum, &c. Luc.*

d *Gallen. de theriaca.*

e *Pa. Eberus hist. Iudaica.* 52. 53.

f *Peregr. c.* 85.

g *Lib.* 1. *cap.* 14.

h This errour grew from the Schoole of Aristotelicall Philosophie, wherein *Anatolius* was here Professor. *Eusb. lib.* 7. *cap.* 32. *Niceph. l.* 6. *c.* 36.

§. V.

§. V.

Of the Saracens, their Acts and Sects: of the Mamalukes and Cophties.

THe Mahumetanes entred Ægypt about *Anno* 637. After, their state sinking vnder the weight of it selfe (which is the ordinary sicknesse of Greatnesse) they grew to dissentions and Sects, as is said in our Saracen History. For the seate of the Saracens call *Caliphas* being by *Mascamas* remoued to Bagdat, which hee had builded, there arose new *Caliphas* in Damasco, in Egypt (whose seate was after at Cayro) in Cayroan, to whom the Africans yeelded subjection, and after at Marocco. But in *Elcains* time, while hee fought to winne the East from the Caliph of Bagdat, his Lieutenant rebelled against him, and hee was faine to flye in Egypt, where *Gehour* had built Cayro. The Sect of *Haki* had before also preuayled in Egypt, for which cause *Nassius* father was forced to flee the Countrey, yet this sect after was restored by *Assuulmus*, and *Solonus* his sonne, first Caliph of Egypt. But when the Westerne forces, vnder *Godfrey* of Bollen, grew terrible to the East, [d] the Egyptians payd tribute to the Christians, which *Dargan* the Sultan decayning, was by *Americus* King of Ierusalem ouerthrowne in battell. [e] *Noradine* of Damasco sent *Saracon* his sonne to helpe *Saur* the Sultan against this *Dargan*, which *Saracon* was by the Caliph appointed Sultan, who before had slaine the Sultan, and *Saladine* his Successour slew [f] the Caliph (for comming to him with pretence of doing him reuerence, hee smote him to the ground with an Iron Mace) and rooted out his Posterrtie to setele his owne. This History is diuerslly reported. *Peucerus* [g] maketh the Egyptian Caliphs to bee Schismaticall from their first entrance, which was (as hee saith) in *Anno* 703. which raigned in Egypt foure hundred forty and seuen yeeres, of the profession of *Hali*. *Curio* writeth otherwise, as [h] in their History wee haue shewed. So also doth *Leo*, dissenting from them both, a man learned in his owne Religion. Hee saith that the Caliph of Cayro had continued two hundred and thirty yeeres, when as *Saladine* slew him, and subjected himselfe to the Caliph of Bagdet, the only Caliph then remaynng. This *Saladine* was nephew to *Saracon*, who chased the Christians out of Syria. His Children raigned after him, of which *Malechsala* was first, who first inuented the Order of the Mamalukes, which were Circassian slaues bought in their youth, and trayned vp to Armes, Artes, and Religion of the Saracens, whom hee made of his Guard. But they slew their Master, and vsurped the Kingdome to themselues, alwayes electing one of their Company, the first of which Mamaluke Kings was *Turquemenius*, who was slaine of his fellow *Cothus*, and hee of *Bendocader*, who was also poyloned, &c.

Leo sayth, that *Saladines* Family raigned an hundred and fifteie yeeres, and *Piperis* was (sayth hee) the first Mamaluke King. *Campsau Gauras*, and *Tomumbeius*, the last of these Kings, were ouerthrowne by *Selim* the Turke, *Anno* 1517. whose Successours still hold Ægypt; and haue a Basa resident at Cayro, from whence was carried by water many Ornaments to Constantinople. The Caliph was at Bagdet, so here, retayned some spirituall preeminence, much like the *Rex sacrorum*. I amongst the Romanes, whose Title was Royall, and his Office in their superstitious ceremonies to performe those Rites which the King had [i] vsed personally to doe: but this ritular King was subject to higher Powers of the *Pontifex* People, and Senate. *Baumgartes* saw him in white attire with a forked Diadem or Mitre, a blacke and long beard, with a great retinue comming to salute *Tongobardinus* a great Mamaluke (which sometimes had beene a Deacon in Spaine, and now had embraced the world, and the world him, possessing Honours, Wealth, and fiue and thirtie Wiues) in Cayro.

Peter Martyr sayth, that the [k] Caliph selleth the Soldan this Dignitie at a price, and ascending the Throne, doth giue and commit vnto the Soldan there standing on foote, the absolute power of life and death, and then descending, disrobeth himselfe, attiring the Soldan with the same Robes. So it apparetth, that the name and power of the Caliph, all the time of the Mamalukes (as the Ghost of it selfe) had some almost breathlesse shadow left: the life and substance being in the Soldan.

There is (sayth *Leo*) in Cayro, and in all Ægypt foure *Sects*, differing from each other in Canon and Ciuill Lawes, all Mahumetans. Hee which professeth one of these Sects, cannot at his pleasure betake him to another, except being learned hee shew reasons therefore. Each of these Sects hath his peculiar Iudge, from whom yet lyeth an appeale to a higher Iudge, being Governour of the Sect called *Essasichia*. Whosoeuer attempteth ought against the Precepts of his owne Sect, is secretly punished by the Iudge thereof: And although the Priests of these seuerall *Sects* vse differing Liturgies and Rites, [l] yet doe they not take one

The sixt succession of the Ægypti n Caliphas's vncertaine.

d *Cer. Chron. I. & c. 10. 11. 13.*
e *Rouill. T. II.*
f *Iac. à Vitriaco. or hist. c. 8.*
g *Peuc. Cer. Chro.*
h *Rouil. I. & c. 8.*

i *L. Pentasilla de Sacerd. Roma.*
Matt. à Baum. lib. 1. cap. 27.
k *Leg. Bab. &c.*

l Examples for Christians, in ending Controuersies of Religion.

one the other for Enemies, with hatred or mutinies: but if any question arise, Learned men by conference debate the same. No man vpon paine of grieuous punishment may reproach any of the foure Doctors, first Authors of those foure Sects, There is one Sect of religious men in Cayro, called *Chenefai*, which hue vpon Horse-flesh: therefore are lame ladies bought and let vp a fattening, and sold to these *Chenefians*, which Sect is rife in all Asia. There goe certayne Women vp and downe the Citie crying, whose office is to Excite or Circumcise the women, which is obserued in Egypt and Syria, both by the Mahumetans, and Iacobite Christians. Neither haue the Turkes (although in superstition by themselues acknowledged short of the Arabians and Egyptians) beene altogether idle in their Deuotion, which they testifie by their Pilgrimages, and m Alnes-workes. *Bellonius* telleth of one Turke that caused water to bee brought daily on Camels backes for the ease of Trauellers in that desart space betweene Alexandria and Rosetto. Egypt hath in it many Iewish Synagogues, who speake the Spanish, Italian, Turkish, Arabian, and Greeke languages, and are great Merchants. Thus wee see the iudgements of God by the Persians, Grecians, and Romanes for their Pristine Idolatrie, and a greater Iudgement for their Heresie, hatched by *Arrius*, punished by a Saracenicall Apostasie.

m Good works among Turkes.

Amongst the differing Sects of the Mahumetans (of which wee haue spoken in the third booke) Africa, and especially Egypt, and herein Cayro most of all is pestered n with them, which may bee called the Naked, or the Wicked Sect, roguing vp and downe naked, and preaching their filthy villanie, in the open sight of the people, who yet hold them for Saints. The iust hand of Diuine Iustice, that when men forsake God, not Religion and Truth alone, but Reason, but Sense shall also forsake them.

n. *Leo, lib. 3.*

Before wee leaue those Soldans of Cayro; or rather because you haue stayed so long heere, let vs bestow some spectacle on you worthy the sight, as a refreshing to your wearied eyes. They are the same which the Soldan in ostentation of his magnificence made to the Turkish Embassadour, *Anno* 1507. from *Baumgartens* relations, which was an eye-witnesse thereof. There were assembled three score thousand Mamalukes all in like habite: the Soldan himselfe all in white, with a mitred Diadem, and not farre from him that Pope or *Califa* in a lower seate: and beneath him the Turkish Embassadour. The plate was a spacious Plaine, in which were made shapes of sand, fiftie paces distant, and in each a Speare erected with a marke to shoote at, and the like ouer against them, with space betweene for six Horses to runne abrest. Heere did the younger Mamalukes gallantly adorned, vpon their Horses running a full career, yeeld strange experiments of their skill, not one missing the marke, first with casting Darts, and after with their Arrowes, as they ranne: and lastly trying their slaues. Others after this, in the like race of their running Horses, shot with like dexteritie diuers Arrowes backwards and forwards. Others in the middest of their race alighted three times, and (their Horses still running) mounted againe, and hitte the marke neuertheless. Others did hitte the same, standing on their Horses thus swiftly running. Others three times vnbent their Bowes, and thrice againe bent them whiles their Horses ranne, and missed not the marke: neither did others, which amidst their race, lighted downe on either side, and againe mounted themselues: no, nor they which in their swiftest course leaped and turned themselues backwards on their Horses; and then (their Horses still running) turned themselues forwards. There were, which whiles their Horse ranne, vnguit their Saddles thrice, at each time shooting, and then againe girding their saddles, and neuer missing the marke. Some sitting in their saddles, leaped backwards out of them, and turning ouer their heads, setled themselues againe in their saddles and shot, as the former, three times. Others layd themselues backwards on their running Horses, and taking their styles, put them into their mouthes, and yet forgot not their ayme in shooting. Some after euery shot drew out their Swords, and flourished them about their heads, and againe sheathed them. Others sitting betwixt three swords on the right side, and as many on the left, thinly clothed, that without great care euery motion would make way for death, yet before and behinde them touched the marke. One shood vpon two Horses running very swiftly, his feete loose, and shot also at once three Arrowes before, and againe three behinde him. Another sitting on a Horse neither brydled nor saddled, as hee came at euery marke arose and stood vpon his feete, and on both hands hitting the marke, sate downe againe three times. A third sitting on the bare Horse, when hee came to the marke, lay vpon his backe, and lifted vp his legges, and yet missed not his shoote. After all this they ranne with like swiftnesse (for all these things, which, where is the Vaulter that can doe on his imaginary Horse standing still? these did running) and with their slaues carried away those marks, as triumphing ouer their innocent enemy. One of them was killed with a fall, and two sore wounded in these their feats of Actiuitie. They had an Olde graue man which was their teacher. If I haue long detayned thee in this spectacle, remember that the race of Mamalukes should not

Mar. Ba. l. 1. c. 20

Vertomannus also mentions this Actiuitie of the Mamalukes.

not bee forgotten, the rather, because their name is now rased out of the world; and this may seeme an Epitaph on their Sepulchre, after whom none perhaps are left able to doe the like, nor in all *Franciscus Modius* his Triumphall Pandects to be paralelled.

As for the Christians in Ægypt, yee may reade in the Histories [a] of the Holy-land-warres, what attempts were often made by the Westerne Christians against these vnbeleeuers. Concerning the present state of Christianitie there, *Leo, Boterus,* [b] and Master *Pory* in his Additions to his Englished *Leo*, may acquaint you; and better then others Master *George Sandys*. Besides the foreine Christians, which resort to these parts for trafique there, are thought to bee fiftie thousand Natiue of the Countrey, which haue Churches, [10] and Monasteries, whereof there are three Christian Churches at Alexandria. They are called *Cofts*, and *Christians from the Circle*, because of their Circumcision, which together with Baptisme they admit. In their Liturgie they vse their Chaldæan language. But they reade the Gospell againe, in the Arabian. They are accounted of *Eutiches* Heresie. Their Patriarchall Sea is Alexandria: which [c] from Saint *Marke* to this day hath had a continued succession, as appeareth by the late Letters of *Gabriel* to the Pope, calling himselfe the foureſcore and seuenteenth of the Patriarchs from Saint *Marke*. Thus writeth *Baronius* with a great many swelling words, which may puffe vp his Romane Sea.

But how credulous is Superstition? and that neuer-erring Sea hath (how often?) beene gulled this way, or sought to gull and coozen others with such Iesuiticall fictions of I [10] know not what conuersions, and submissions, as *Baronius* would make you beleeue of this *Gabriel*. Thus had *Mahomet* his *Gabriel*, and thus our age hath another *Gabriel* obtruded vpon the vulgar simplicitie: (farre fetched belike is good for their Lady-mother) But Alexandria hath knowne no *Gabriel* in these times, Patriarch there. *George Donsa* held good acquaintance with *Meletius*, and his Predecessour was *Silueister*; so that this Romish *Gabriel* which ascribeth so much to that Sea, was a Romane *Gabriel* indeed, which Alexandria neuer knew. Neither did *Meletius* the Patriarch know any such Papall Supremacie, but writeth learnedly against the same, as than Epistle of his to *John Donsa* (wherein hee maketh mention of our English [d] Embassadour) extant with *George Donsa* Iournall may appeare.

[10] How Christian Religion was first planted in Ægypt by Saint *Marke*, and the Apostles, and their Successours, and how persecuted by the Ethnikes [e] after by the Arrians; and how Ethnike Religion was againe by *Valens* permitted to all that would embrace it, the foresnamed Ecclesiasticall Histories make mention: how it was persecuted by the Persian inuasions, and after by the Saracens in time brought to this present passe, and how it now continueth, wee may reade in many both old [f] and new Authors. *Zaga Zabo* an Ethiopian Bishop saith, that the Patriach of Alexandria resideth at Cairo: where their Ethiopian Metropolitane [g] receiueth of him his Confirmation. And in their Ethiopian Liturgie, they mention them, both in this sort: Pray for our Prince, the Prince of our Archbishops, the Lord *Gabriel*, and the chiefe of the Church of Alexandria, and for the chiefe of our Countrey, our venerable Archbishop *Marke*, &c. And thus much of this Egytian Prelate, as a taste of that which is to bee declared in our Christian Relations. *Adrianus Romanus*, [h] in his *Theatrum Vrbium*, sayth, that besides the Patriarch of the Coptites, heere is also a Patriarch of the Greekes and Arabians, which haue their Liturgie in Greeke, but scarce vnderstand the same. The Coptice Patriarch hath his title of Alexandria, but his residence in Cayro. But it is more then time to leaue this the first and worst of Nations in Superstition: *Zealous* in all, but *not according to knowledge*: as else-where shall appeare, in their Christianity folded in manifold Iewish ceremonies; and heere hath beene manifested, in their present Mahumetan, and ancient Ethnike bloody, beastly, stinking Deuotions, so eagerly pursued (let this bee our Conclusion) that [h] *Iuuenal* in his time writing of a Religious quarrell irreligiously bandied betweene the Combites and Tentyrites, at the end of a seuen dayes Festiuall obserued Day and Night: after many wounds and blowes, One in slight falling downe, and to the Enemies hands, was presently plucked in pieces and eaten rawe: that euen their sacrifices of Men, in respect of this were milde, as morsels to their Gods, but this in despight of Deuotion, or despightfull Deuotion, became a humane Sacrifice to inhumane, beastly, diuellish Men; Onely let vs obserue the Ægyptian Chronologie, and so make an end.

a *Bist. Ser. G. Tyr. Fox Act. & Mon. Vitriac. Sanut. &c.*
b *G. Bot. Rel. Pory in Leo. Cypr. Ebrels.*
c *Abdias Fab. Dorotheus Baron. An. 6. W. Will. 15. 2.*
d *M. Kimbard. Bateus.*
e *Baron. Annals Fopeus Rangr. Pantalous. &c.*
f *Dam. à Goes. Fran. Alumes 698.*
g *Heming. Catechisimus in fine. Catholice Tribig.*
h *Theat. Vrbium. & Sandys.*
h *Iuuen. Sat. 15.*

CHAP. VI.

The Ægyptian Chronologie, out of Manetho high Priest of the Ægyptians, and others.

After this so long a Historie of Ægyptian affaires, I haue heere added the order of times, wherein those things happened, that this our Relation might bee the more compleat, although perhaps it may seeme to some more then tedious already. *Varro* diuided Times into three sorts; the first hee called Vncertaine; the second Fabulous; the third Historicall. *Ioseph Scaliger*, a man happily more studious in this subject of Times, then all Times before haue yeelded vs, reckoneth the two former for one, as not easily to bee distinguished. He hath also published to the world not onely his owne learned Obseruations on *Eusebius* Chronicle, but such Fragments [a] as out of *Cedrenus*, *Syncellus*, and others, hee could finde both of *Eusebius* Chronicle in Greeke (for before we had onely the Latine Translation of *Hieronie*, much whereof also is vtterly lost) as also of *Africanus*; from whose store-house *Eusebius* tooke his Chronicle, both for matter and words, almost by whole-sale. And whereas *Annius* had before couzened the world with counterfeits of *Berosus*, *Manetho*; *Metasthenes*, with other fabulous tales, falsely fathered on the Ancients: hee hath helped likewise to some Reliques of those Histories, which others haue inserted into their workes; the very bones of such carkasses being worthy of admiration, if not of veneration. The true *Manetho* therefore in three Tomes wrote the Ægyptian Historie vnto *Ptolomeus Philadelphus*: his Greeke Epistle Dedicatory being but short, I haue thus translated it.

a *Excerpta Barbar.-Lat. Manasse Chron. Cassab collectanea hist. &c.*

To the Greeke King Ptolomeus Philadelphus [b] Augustus, Manetho *High Priest and Scribe of the sacred Sanctuarie throughout Ægypt, of the Sebennite Family, a Heliopolitan, to my Lord* Ptolomeus, *Greeting. It behoueth vs (mightie King) to giue account of all those things which you commaunded vnto search out. The sacred Bookes, written by our fore-father* Trismegistus Hermes, *which I haue learned (according as you, enquiring what things shall come to passe in the world, haue commanded me) shall be declared: Farewell, my Lord King.*

b Σεβαστὸς, i. *Venerable*, appropriated affect to *Augustus* and his successours.

Hence appeareth the time of *Manetho*, and his pontificall Dignitie, with the originall of his Antiquities borrowed of *Hermes*, and the occasion of his writing in the Greeke, as to a Græcian King.

Hee [c] first setteth downe the yeeres of the raigne of their Gods. *Vulcan*, *Sol*, *Agathodæmon*, *Saturne*, *Osiris*, and *Isis*, *Typhon*. Then of the Demi-gods: *Orus*, who raigned fiue and twentie yeeres: *Mars*, three and twentie: *Anubis*, seuenteene: *Hercules*, foureteene: *Apollo*, foure and twentie: *Ammon*, thirtie: *Tithoes*, seuen and twentie: *Sosius*, two and thirtie: *Iupiter*, twentie. Things both false in themselues, and in the Copie imperfect. After these hee reckoneth in order two and thirtie [d] *Dynasties*, Lordships, or gouernments in Egypt.

c *Patricius* out of a holy book setteth downe this Genealogie: *Horus* the sonne of *Osiris*, he of *Chus*, and he of *Chamor* *Chamophes*.

d Ægyptian Dynasties.

1 The first of the Thinites; of eight Kings, whose names and yeeres of raigne are, *Menes*, threescore and two: hee was slaine of an Hyppopotamus, or Riuer-Horse. *Athothis* his Son, seuen and fiftie. He built a Palace in Memphis, and wrote of Anatomie. *Cenchenes* his sonne, one and thirtie. *Enephes*, his sonne, three and twentie. In his time was a great famine. Hee built the Pyramides in Cochon. *Saphadus*, his sonne, twentie: *Semempsis*, his sonne, eighteene: *Bieneches*, his sonne, six and twentie. *Sum. tot.* two hundred threescore and three. Of *Menes*, the first of these, it is reported [e] that hee first inuented the vse of money: for which long after hee was solemnely cursed by a Councell of Priests in the time of *Cnephatus*, and at Thebes a pillar was erected in the Temple to testifie the same.

e *Cel. Calcag. de reb. Æg.*

2 The second Dinastie of the Thinites; vnder nine Kings, Whose names and yeeres of their raigne are in order as followeth, *Boethus*, eight and thirtie yeeres. *Cuzochus*, nine and thirtie: in his time was ordayned the worship of *Apis*, at Memphis, and *Mneuis* at Heliopolis. *Binothris*, seuen and fortie: *Tla*, seuenteene: *Sethenes*, one and fortie: *Cheres*, seuenteene: *Nephercheres*, fiue and twentie: in his time Nilus is said to haue had his waters mixed with honey. *Sesochris*, eight and fortie: *Cenores*, thirtie: Summe, three hundred and two.

3 The third, of the Memphites. *Tosorthros*, eight and twentie: *Tosorthros*, nine and twentie. He is supposed to be *Æsculapius*, for his skill in Physicke; studious of Painting and Architecture. *Tyrei*, seuen: *Mesochris*, seuenteene: *Zoyphis*, sixteene: *Tosertasis*, nineteene: *Aches*, two and fortie: *Siphuris*, thirtie: *Herpheres*, six and twentie.

4 The fourth Dinastie of the Memphites. *Soris*, nine and twentie: *Suphis*, threescore and three: he made the greatest Pyramis. *Suphis*, threescore and six: *Mencheres*, threescore and three: *Ratoeses*, fiue and twentie: *Bichceres*, two and twentie: *Zebercheres*, seuen: *Tamphthis*, nine: *Sesochris*, eight and fortie,

5 The

5 The fifth, of the Elephantines. *Vsercheres*, eight and twentie: *Sephres*, thirteene: *Nepherchores*, twenty: *Sosiris*, seuen: *Echeres*, twenty: *Rathuris*, one and forty: *Mercheres*, nine: *Tacheres*, forty and foure: *Vnos*, three and thirty.

6 The sixt, of the Memphites. *Othoes*, thirty: *Phios*, three: *Methusuphis*, seuen: *Phiopi*, a hundred: *Menthesuphis*, one: *Nitocbris*, twelue; she built the third Pyramis.

7 The seuenth, of seuenty Kings, that reigned so many dayes apiece.

8 The eight, of seuen and twenty Kings, which reigned an hundred forty and eight yeers. Their names are not expressed.

9 The ninth Dynastie, was of the Heracleopolitans: of which, were nineteene Kings, that reigned foure hundred and nine yeeres. The first of them was *Achthoes*, a cruell Tyrant, deuoured by a Crocodile.

10 The tenth, was of nineteene Kings: whose reigne endured an hundred fourescore and fiue yeeres.

11 The eleuenth, of the Diospolitans: whose sixteene Kings reigned three and forty yeeres. Here endeth the first Tome of *Manetho*: whose second Tome containeth the twelfth Dynastie of the Diospolitans; The first of which was *Cesengoses*, six and forty: *Ammamenes*, eight and thirty: *Sesostris* the great Conqueror, eight and forty: *Lacheres*, eight: *Amnares*, eight: *Ammenenes*, eight: *Semiophris*, foure. Dynast. 12.

13 The thirteenth, of threescore Kings, which reigned foure hundred fifty & three yeeres.

14 The fourteenth, of threescore and seuenteene Kings, contayned an hundred foure-score and foure.

15 The fifteenth, of Phœnicians, Shepherds, the first of which was *Saites*, nineteene: *Anon*, three and forty: *Pachnan*, threescore and one: *Staan*, eight: *Arcles*, forty nine: *Apbobis*, threescore and one: In all two hundred forty and two. And the totall summe of the yeeres of these fifteene Dynasties is three thousand three hundred and seuenteene.

16 The sixteenth Dynasty was of other shepheards, whose thirty two Kings reigned fiue hundred and eighteene yeeres.

17 The seuenteenth, was of other shepherds vnder thirty three Kings, and the Theban Diospolites, an hundred fifty and one yeeres.

18 The eighteenth of the Diospolites. *Amos*, fiue and twenty: *Chebros* thirteene: *Amenophthis*, foure and twenty: *Amersis*, two and twenty: *Misphris*, thirteene: *Misphragmuthosis* six and twenty: *Thouthmosis*, nine: *Amenophthis*, one and thirty. This is supposed to be *Memnon*, and the speaking Statue. *Oros*, seuen and thirty: *Acheres*, two and thirty: *Rathos*, six: *Chebres*, twelue: *Acheores*, twelue: *Amersis*, fiue: *Rammeses*, one: *Ammenoph*, nineteene: in all, two hundred fourescore and seuen.

19 The nineteenth: *Sethos*, one and twenty: *Raphsaces*, threescore and one: *Ammenephthes*, twenty: *Rameses*, threescore: *Ammenemes*, fiue: *Thouris*, six.

20 In the third Tome. The twentieth Dynasty lasted one hundred and fiue and twenty yeeres. The Kings were twelue.

21 The one and twentieth, of the Tanites: *Smerdes*, six and twenty: *Psusennes*, two and forty: *Mephelcheres*, foure: *Amenophis*, nine: *Osochon*, six: *Psinaches*, nine: *Susennes*, fourteene; called *Sesac* in Scripture: in all, one hundred and ten.

22 The two and twentieth, of the Bubastites: *Sesonchis*, one and twenty: *Vsorthon*, fifteene. The third, fourth, and fift, are not named: to them are ascribed fiue and twenty yeeres: In this space *Zara* the Ethiopian ouer-ran these parts. *Tokellothis*, thirteene: his successor, two and forty: in all, one hundred and sixteene.

23 The three and twentieth, of the *Tanites*: *Petubastes*, forty: *Osorchos*, eight: *Psammus*, ten: *Ze*, ——— one and thirty: in all, fourescore and nine.

24 The foure and twentieth, of *Bocchoris* the Saite, who reigned foure and forty yeeres; was taken and burned of *Sabbacon*.

25 The fiue and twentieth, of the Ethiopians: *Sabbacon*, eight: *Senech*, fourteene: *Tarach*, eighteene: in all, forty. This *Tarach* perhaps was he which built *Tarracona* in *Spaine*, if we beleeue *Tarraphas* n Collection out of *Eusebius*. n F. Tarap de Reg. Hisp.

26 The six and twentieth, of the Saites: *Stephinates*, seuen: *Nechepsos*, six. Thus farre out of *Manetho*; here followeth out of *Herodotus*: *Psammeticus*, forty foure: *Necbao*, seuenteene; he slue *Iosias*: *Psammis*, sixteene: *Vaphres*, fiue and twenty; with him *Zedekiah* entred league. *Herodotus* calleth him *Apries*. The Masorites, by their Hebrew points (through ignorance of forreine Historie, as *Scaliger* saith) haue made it *Hophra*, of whom *Ieremie* * prophesied that destruction which *Amasis* executed (as *Herodotus* reporteth) who reigned foure and forty yeeres. The summe of the yeeres of this Dynasty, is one hundred fifty and nine. o Ier. 44. 30.

27 Here followeth againe out of *Manetho*: The seuen and twentieth Dynasty of the Persians: *Cambyses*, foure: *Darius Hystaspes*, six and thirtie: *Xerxes*, twenty: *Artaxerxes*, seuen monethes:

months: *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, forty: *Xerxes*, two moneths; *Sogdianus*, seuen; *Darius Nothus*, eleuen, in all, one hundred and thirteene.

28. The eight and twentieth, of the Mendesians: *Amyrteus Saites*, six.

29 The nine and twentieth, *Nepherites*, six: *Achoris*, twelue: *Psammites*, one: *Nepherites*, two moneths.

30 The thirtieth, of the Sebennites: *Nectanebis*, eighteene: *Tous*, two: *Nectanebos* eighteene.

31 The one and thirtieth, of the Persians: *Artaxerxes Ochus*, ten: He recouered Egypt in the seauenteenth yeere of his Reigne: *Arsos*, foure: *Darius Codomannus*, six: subdued by *Alexander*. Hitherto *Manetho*. The whole summe of whose one and thirty Dynasties amount to fiue thousand three hundred fifty and fiue yeeres.

32 The two and thirtieth Dynastie, of the Macedonians: *Alexander Mag.* fiue: *Ptolemeus Lagi*, forty: *Ptol. Philadelphus*, eight and thirty: *Ptol. Euergetes*, sixe and twenty: *Ptol. Philopator*, seuenteene: *Ptol. Epiphanes*, foure and twentie: *Ptol. Philometor*, fiue and thirty: *Ptol. Euergetes* 2. nine and twentie: *Ptol. Physcon*, seuenteene: *Ptol. Alexander*, ten: *Ptol. Cleopatra*, eight: *Ptol. Dionysius*, thirty: *Cleopatra*, two and twenty: in all, three hundred and one. Some of these *Ptolemeys* made incestuous Marriages with their owne sisters; which it seemes was not vnusuall in Alexandria: whereupon *Seneca* scoffeth, *Aiebnis dimidium iuce, Alexandra totum.* Whereupon *Turneb.* affirmeth, That at Athens they might marry their owne sisters by their father (as *Lycurgus* permitted only the sisters by mothers side, and forbad to marry with the fathers daughter) but at Alexandria, all sisters were permitted to their liceptious beds. Thus *Cleopatra* was wife to *Ptolemey Philometor* her elder brother, and after that to her younger brother, by whom she was cast off, and her daughter taken in her stead.

Sen in Iudo Cla. Cas. vid. Turneb. ad l. 18. c. 13. & B. Rhod.

Cont. Ap. Theoph. l. 3.

If the former Catalogue doe not agree with the Relations of *Iosephus*, * *Theophilus*, or others, who haue cited some parts of *Manetho* in their Workes, it is not much maruell; the Grecians being alway audacious, readie to preuert Authors to their own purposes; besides the ouersights of Writers, through negligence or ignorance in forreine names. Neither is *Manethoes* Word an Oracle, who reckoneth so long time before any time was: but either it is to be ascribed to the arrogancy of the Egyptian Priests, desirous to bee accounted no lesse ancient then the Chaldeans: for *Berosus* and *Manetho* (as if they had beene agreed) deriue their Histories from the like Antiquity (saith *Scaliger* out of *Syncellus*) which would better appeare, if we had the entire bodies, and not a few scattered bones of their Histories: or else wee may ascribe it to their confounding of Histories; applying to an order of Succession, the diuers reignes of seuerall Dynasties, which happily gouerned at the same time in seuerall parts of Egypt; as in so small a Region as Canaan, *Iosiua* destroyed 31. Kings. This *Scaliger* a coniectureth; *Lydiat* b affirmeth. Neither yet is *Scaliger* to be blamed, for acquainting the World with these fragments of *Manetho*; considering, that the middle part thereof holdeth not onely likelihood in it selfe, but in great part correspondence with the Scriptures. If the Egyptians deuised otherwise to *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, it was easie for them to deceiue strangers, or bee deceiued themselues. The like History of prodigious Antiquities, *Augustine* c relateth of an Egyptian Priest, that told *Alexander* of the continuance of the Macedonian Kingdome eight thousand yeeres, whereas the Grecians accounted but foure hundred and fourescore. Yea, the Scriptures themselues haue not escaped that mis-reckoning of Times; almost all Antiquitie being carried downe the streame of the seuenty Interpreters, which adde many hundred, yeeres to the Hebrew Text, either of purpose, as some d suppose, or as *Augustine* e thinketh by errour of him that first copied the Scriptures out of *Ptolemeys* Library.

Cont. Ap. Theoph. l. 3.

a *Can. Isag. l. 3.*
b *L. de Emen. T.* Some suppose, the first of these Dynasties were soon after the Creation, and soone after the flood. *Genebrard. Chron. l. 1.*
c *De Ciuit. Dei, lib. 12 cap. 10.*
d *Broughtons* Concent.
e *De Ciu. Dei, l. 15. c. 13.*
f *L. 1. c. 8. §. 11.* See also the Chronologie at the end of his Booke, and other Egyptian Antiquities in that History.

Sir Walter f *Raleigh*, in that his laborious and learned Worke, called *The History of the World*, supposeth, That Egypt first tooke that name, at such time as *Ægyptus* or *Ramesses* chased thence his brother *Danaus* into Peloponnesus, which some reckon 877. yeeres after the Flood; some, more. As for the prodigious Antiquities which they challenge, having refuted *Mercator* and *Pererius*, he enclineth to this opinion touching their ancient Dynasties, that they are not altogether fabulous: but that Egypt being peopled before the Flood two hundred yeeres after *Adam*, there might remayne to the sonnes of *Mizraim* some Monuments in Pillars or Altars of stone, or metall, of their former Kings or Gouernours: which the Egyptians hauing added to the List and Roll of their Kings after the Flood, in succeeding time (out of the vanitie of glory, or by some corruption in their Priests) something beyond the truth might be inserted. *Petrus Alexandrinus* (lately set forth in Greeke and Latine by *Raderus*) writes, That *Mizraim* hauing giuen beginning to the Egyptian Nation, did after goe into the East, to the Persians and Bactrians, and is the same that was called *Zoroastres* by the Greekes, Inuenter of Iudiciall Astrologie and Magicke. He hauing giuen order for the keeping of the ashes of his burned body, as the pledge of the Empire so long to continue with them, called vpon *Orion* (which he saith was *Nimrod*, by the Persian Superstition beleeued, thus

thos honoured after his death) and was consumed with Lightning, the Persians reseruing his ashes to this day; the cause (saith the Note on that place) why the Persians worship the fires Yet the Author mentions another cause, from *Perseus*, which kindled fire by Lightning; and preseruing the same, built a Temple to it. Hee saith also, That *Picus* or *Iupiter*, his father, taught *Perseus* to diuine by a Cup (like to that which is mentioned of *Iosephin* Egypt) and the same *Picus* was father to *Hermes*, or *Mercurie*, King of Egypt, with other Legends, too long for this place. This *Mercurie*) he maketh the same with *Faunus*, the first finder (he saith) of Gold, and that in a golden Vesture he foretold diuers things, and that the Egyptians worshipped him, hauing before made him their King; which place he held thirty nine yeeres. After him reigned *Vulcan*, 1680. dayes, for at that time the Egyptians knew not to tiumber by yeeres. He first made a Law against Adulterie; and that the Egyptian women should haue but one husband. He was Inuentor of Iron and Armour, Stones and Clubs being before that time the only Weapons. His sonne *Sol* succeeded, a great Philosopher; after him, *Sosis*; and next, *Osiris*; then, *Orus*, *Thules*, Conqueror of Africa; and after that, *Sesostris*, of the race of *Cham*, the same as he supposeth with *Trismegistus*. Thus much I haue thought here to adde out of him, where the Reader may further satisfie himselfe; if that can satisfie any opinions, nothing certifie, or make certaine, in these Antiquities; wherein we may find many opinions, scarcely any truth, but in the Word of Truth, the Scriptures.

That which we read of the Dynasties of Shepherds *Scaliger* interpreteth of that baser fer-
20 uile sort, which *Moses* g saith *were abominable to the Egyptians*, and seeme to haue beene strangers, that inhabited some fenny places which Nature had fortified, if we beleeue *Heliodorus*; h and thence made forrages into the Countrey (the custome of Borderers) and were called therefore *Robbers*. These (it seemeth) driuen to their shifts, by the hard and tyrannous vsage of the Egyptians, procured (as wee reade of the Tartars) their owne Freedome, and the idome of their Lords. The Romanes in their times were forced to mayntaine a Garrison against them, therefore called βουκολικαι. And *Ierome* mentioneth i the *Bucolica*, where no Christians dwelled, but onely a fierce Nation. *Iosephus* k and *Eusebius* thinke them to bee the Israelites; which is vnlikely, because they liued in seruitude, and neuer raigned there. *Lydiat* supposeth the Philistims vnder *Abimelech* and *Phicol* to be the men.

30 Nothing is more obscure in the Egyptian Chronologie, then the time of the departure of Israelites thence vnder *Moses*, whom *Iustin* l *Martyr* affirmeth out of *Diodorus* to haue bin the first that wrote the Egyptian Lawes. *Tatianus* m *Assyrn* (who after became an Heretike) saith (and alledgeth *Ptolemey Mendesius*, a Priest, for his Author) That this departure was in the dayes of *Amasis*, King or Egypt, who liued in the time of *Inachus*; *Theophilus* and *Iosephus*, n out of *Manetho*, in the Reigne of *Tethmosis*; *Eusebius*, o in the reigne of *Cenchres*; *Cedrenus* saith, *Petisonius*: Others, otherwise; according to the diuers interpretation of *Manetho*. The Scripture sheweth, it was foure hundred and thirty yeeres, from the promise first made to *Abraham*, as all that I know, both elder and later, Greeke and Latine Chronographers, except *Genebrard* and *Adrichomius*, reckon it. *Lydiat* thinketh, That the drowning of the
40 Egyptian *Pharo* was the cause of those tumults in Egypt, about Succession, which are ascribed to *Egyptus* and *Danaus*. *Orosius* q reporteth, That the prints of the Chariot-wheeles of the Egyptians, then pursuing the Israelites through the Sea, did yet in his time remayne in the Sands on the shore, and vnder-water; which no curiositie or casualtie can so disorder, but that Diuine Prouidence doth re-imprint them in their wonted forme.

Hard it is to apply the yeeres of the r Egyptian Chronologie, to the true account of the Worlds generation, by reason of the disagreement of Authors, touching the Egyptian Kings, vntill *Sesacs* time; which (after *Lydiat*) was in the yeere of the World 3029. although euen from hence we haue but slippery footing. *Augustus* (after the same Author) made Egypt a Prouince, in the yeere 3975. Vnder which Roman gouernment it continued, vntill the Sa-
50 racens conquered it, in the time of *Omar* the third Chaliphs, who began his reigne, after *Scaligers* computation; in his Catalogue s of the Chaliphaes; in the yeere of Christ 643. The names of the *Cesars* belong to another place; and it were tedious here, to relate the yeeres of their seuerall Reignes. *Otmen*, the fourth Chaliphs, begannie in the yeere of Christ 645. whom the rest succeeded in order, vntill the yeere 869. And then the Chaliphaes were diuided; *Mutamed* t reigning in Bagded, u and *Tolon* in Egypt, who dyed in the yeere of Christ 883. and of the *Hegeira* 270. whom succeeded *Hamarua* his sonne x and after him, his sonne *Aharun*, whom *Muchtaphi* the Bagdet Chaliphs slue, about the yeere 907. Afterwardes, about the yeere 943. *Achisbid Muhamed*, sonne of *Tange*, reigned in Egypt; to whom a few yeeres after succeeded his sonne *Abu-*
60 *gud*, whom *Mezz Ledin Illahi*, of the posteritie of *Phetima*, *Mahomets* Daughter, deprued in the yeere of our Lord 971. To whom succeeded his sonne *Aziz*, 975. y *Elhacham*,

g *Genes. 46. 34.*
h *Hist. Aethi. & Idem Achill. Statius lib 3.*
i *In vita Hilar.*
k *Ios. cont. Ap. Euseb. Chron.*
l *Patan. ad Gentes.*
m *Orat. contra Graec.*
n *Theoph. 13.*
o *Eus. Nicephob. pat.*
p *Ado. Functi. Betoal. Perig. Bant. Codem. Mont. Pant. Pirirgio wolf. h. Epit. Chron. ge. Dagli. Atanis. Herman. Contract. Lamb. Schaf. Meriset. Scotus Petr. Alexandr. Rader, &c.*
q *Orosius, 1. 2. cap. 10.*
r Of the Egyptian Kings, Reiine Marmots eleuenth Booke to the 12. Chapter of *Daniel. Angelogratiah.*
s *Ios. Scalig. Can. Isag. 1. 2.*
t Among all the 13. Prouinces subiect to the Chaliphs of Bagdet; Egypt had the second place, as *Constantinus Porphyrogenitus* sheweth out of *Theophanes. Constant. de adm. Imp. c. 25.*
u *Leo* called him *Kheim.*
x *Elmacin.*

in the yeere 996. *Etaher Laazizdin Illabi*, 1030. *Musteraizor Billabi*, 1035. *Musteale* 1095. *Elamir Babacam Illabi*, 1101. he was but fiue yeeres old: the Protector of the Kingdome was *Aphtzala Vizir*: *Ethaphai Ladin Illabi*, 1135. *Ettaphar* succeeded: and hee being slaine, *Elphaiz*; who died in the yeere 1160. and *Etxar Ledin Illabi*, his Sonne was the last of the *Phetimean* race. To him succeeded *Asaeddin Shiracboch*, of the Family of *Aiub* (which were *Curds*:) after his death, *Iusaph Tzelat Eddin* was constituted King by the Chalipha; and the Bagded Chaliphaes were againe acknowledged in Egypt. This is that *Saladine* that tooke Ierusalem, in the yeere of Christ 1190. *Heg.* 586 He conquered Mesopotamia, &c. hee died in the yeere of our Lord 1193. And as Cardinall *Vitriaco* * affirmeth, reduced the Schismaticall Sect in Egypt to vniformity with the Baldac Chalipha. *Elaphtzal* succeeded him in the Kingdome of Damascus: *Melich Elaziz*, in Egypt; *Taher Giazi*, in Halep, or Aleppo; *Melich Elaziz* exchanged Egypt for Damascus, with his Vncle *Eladel*. The Egyptians made *Aphtzal* their King, in the yeere of our Lord 1202. After *Eladel* succeeded *Elchamel*, 1219. who died in the yeere of our Lord 1237. *Heg.* 635. *Essaleoh* followed: and after him, *Elmutam*, 1242. The Turkmen conspired against him: he fled into a Tower of Wood; which they fired: and halfe burned, he leaped into a streame that passed by, and there perished: *Turooman Azeddin Ibib* was made King in his place, in the yeere of our Lord 1245. Heere beganne the Reigne of the Mamalukes, or slaues. Hee being slaine, another slaue succeeded, whom they called *Melich Elmutaphar*. This seemeth to be he, that *Leo* calleth *Piperitis*. Thus farre out of *Scaliger*, collected by him out of *Abraham Zacuthi*, which addeth much light to the Egyptian Historie of these times, wherein I could neuer before satisfie my selfe concerning the erection and alteration of the Schismaticall Egyptian Chaliphaes, which with much labour (little auayling) I had sought. *Iacobus à Vitriaco* Bishop of *Accon*, or *Ptolemais*, aboue foure hundred yeeres since, and a Roman Cardinall, in his Orientall History [x] affirmeth, That *Haly*, disdayning to be accounted the successour of *Mahomet*, whom hee thought inferior to himselfe, began a new Sect of his owne, which he established in Egypt: the other Mahometans erecting another at Baldac; but Baldac was of a later erection, and these things haue no probabilitie.

* See *Vitriaco* his third book, of the greatnesse of this *Saladine*, and of *Saffadin* his brother, which slue his ten Nephewes, sonnes of *Saladin*, and succeeded in this exceeding Monarchie of many many Kingdomes.

x *Orient. Hist. cap.* 5.

These Kings were not called Chaliphaes (as the posterity of *Pheima* or *Fatima*) but Sultans. A certaine Catalogue of the Names, Times, and Affaires of these Mamaluke-Sultans, I cannot perfectly exhibit. *Peucerus* [y] nameth in order these names; *Turquemenius*, *Cotbus*, *Bendocader*, *Melechsaif*, *Elpis*, *Melechseraph*, *Melechnasar*, *Melechadel*; and after many others, *Caithbeius*, a stout enemy of the Turkes [z]. This *Caithbeius* was chosen Sultan in the yeere of our Lord 1465. and reigned three and thirty yeeres. Two of his principall Mamalukes, *Acbardin* and *Campsou*, full of emulation, were a principall cause of the ruine of that Dynastie. For whereas the Sultan was alway chosen out of the Mamalukes, by most voyces amongst themselues, *Campsou* fearing left *Acbardin* should haue succeeded after *Caithbeius*, fained, That his Master had taken order on his death-bed, that his Sonne *Mahomet* should obtaine the roome; and vsed meanes to effect it, both by the voyces of those Mamalukes he could suborne, and confirmation of their Chalipha, whose hornes these Soldans had shortned, abridging his power (as before is said.) This *Mahomet* proued so cruell a Tyrant, and those two Mamalukes so banded themselues in Factions, that all became confused; and within six yeeres after *Caithbeius* his death, the Sultans Throne was fiue times vacant. *Tomumbeius* kills *Mahomet*; *Campsou Ciarcheosiu* is chosen; *Zanballat*, President of Damascus, rebelleth, and by *Tomumbeius* meanes imprisoneth him, and vsurpeth the Scepter: but for his cruelties, soone after is depriued and captiued by *Tomumbeius*, and after, strangled; He also succeeding in Authority, Tyranny, and Destiny.

y *Peuc. Chron. L.* 4

z P. *Mart. Leg. Rab. lib.* 3.

After *Tomumbeius*, was elected *Campsou Gaurus*, whom *Zelim* [a] the Turke ouerthrew, and slue in battaile; in whose place, another *Tomumbeius* was chosen: but soone, together with his whole State, came into the Turkes power. Thus being diuided in many Factions among themselues, and exercising all cruelties and pillages vpon the people, [b] they made themselues a prey to their Neighbours, who like *Æsops* Vulture, watched this opportunity to seize on these Lions, hauing now bled out their strength in mutuall and ciuill conflicts, in the yeere of our Lord 1517. The Egyptians affirme, [c] That a little before *Selim* besieged Cairo, for the space of eight dayes together, a great number of Crocodiles were seene in all parts on the banks of Nilus, and much dispersed abroad in the fields, taking and tearing great store of prey, as a presage of this Turkish seruitude. *Solyman* succeeded, in the yeere of our Lord 1519. (or 1520. as others say.) *Selim* the second, 1566. *Amurat* the third, 1574. & in the yeere 1595. *Mahomet* the third; to whom, *Achmet*, who now is the Egyptian and Turkish Soldan. Of these you may be more fully informed in M. *Knolles* his Turkish Historie, as also in our former Relations.

a *Ioac. Cameraria. Mart. Tur. &c.*

b Of the Egyptian misery in these times, reade *Vertomanus*. and *Mortaeye* with Fleece-Treasurie of ancient and modern times, *L.* 5. *c.* 31.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Oracle of IVPITER AMMON; *and of Cyrene: and diuers Peoples adioyning, mentioned by the Ancients.*

AL that lyeth betweene Africa *Minor* and Egypt, [a] *Pimpouius Mela* doth call Cyrenaica, including vnder that title Marmarica, which *Plinie* [b] reckoneth by it selfe: who also calleth the former Pentapolitana, and saith, it is renowned by the Oracle of *Hammon*, which is fiftie miles distant from Cyrene; by the Fountayne of the Sunne, and those fiue Cities, Berenice, Arsinoe, Ptolemais, Apollonia, [c] Cyrene. This Region is now called Barca and Mesrata: of which, this is inhabited, and rich; the other is most-what desart, and poore. Their Religion was like the Egyptians in times past. The Arabians that liue there now, attend on their purchase, being the greatest Theeues in Afrike. But this is vsuall to the Arabians in all places of their abode (or wandring rather:) for which cause, it seemeth, *Hierome* saith, the word *Arabi* signifieth *Theeues*, and is therefore taxed of *Drusius*, in his *Obseruations*; *Arabi* no otherwise signifying Theeues, then *Chananeus* a Merchant, or *Chaldeus* a Mathematician; because such commonly were their studies and course. Berenice [d] was sometime sacred, famous for the Garden of the Hesperides; neere to which, is that Riuer of Lethe, so much chaunted by the Poets. Nigh to this place also, are the Psylli, a people terrible to Serpents, and medicinable against their poysons, both by touching the wounded parte, and by sucking out the poyson, and by enchanting the Serpent.

a *Lib. 1. c. 8.*
b *Plin. l. 5. c. 5.*
c Cyrene was built (as Pertoffirmah) by *Battus*.
d *Leg. lib. de Io. Bocm. Drus. Ob. lib. 1. c. 15. Hier. in Ier. 3.2.*
e *Dam. Nig.*

The Oracle of *Iupiter Ammon* is famous among the Ancient. The place where this Temple was, hath on euery side vast and sandie Desarts; in which, they which trauelled, as wee finde in *Arrianus* [f] and *Curtius*, seemed to warre with Nature: for the Earth was couered with sand, which yeelded an vnstable footing, and sometime was blowne about with the windie motions of the Aire; Water was hence banished, neither Cloudes nor Springs ordinarily affording it. A fierie heate did possesse and tyrannize ouer the place, which the Sands and Sunne much encreased. Neither was here Tree, or Hill, or other marke for Trauellers, to discerne their way, but the Starres. In the middle of this Desart, was that sacred Groue (which *Silius Italicus* calleth [g] *Lucus fœtidicus*) not aboue fiftie furlongs in circuit, full of fruit-bearing Trees, watred with wholsome Springs, seasoned with temperate Aire, and a continuall Spring. The Inhabitants, called Ammonians [h], are dispersed in cottages, and haue the midest of the Groue fortified with a triple wall. The first Mutition conteyneth the Kings Palace; the second, the *Serail*, or lodgings for his women, where is also the Oracle; the third, the Courtiers inhabite. Before the Oracle is a Fountayne, in which the Offerings were washed, before they were offered. The forme of this God was deformed with Ramshornes, crooked, as some paint him: according to *Curtius*, without forme of any creature, but like a [i] round Bosse, beset with Iewels. This, when they consult with the Oracles, is carried by the Priests in a gilded ship, with many siluer Bells on both sides of the ship. The Matrons follow, and the Virgins singing their diſtrued Procession, by which they prouoke their god to manifest what they seeke. These Priests were about fourscore in number. *Alexanders* ambitious pilgrimage to this Oracle; is sufficiently knowne by the Relations of *Curtius* and *Arrianus*. This we may adde out of *Scaliger*, [k] That after that, the Cyrenzans, to sooth this prowd King, which would needes bee taken for the sonne of *Ammon*, stamped his shape in their coynes, with two hornes of a Ramme, and without a beard: whereas before they had vsed the forme of *Iupiter*, with a beard and hornes; wherein the other Easterne people followed them. The Syrians vsed the like stampe with the name of King *Lysimachus*, which *Scaliger* (who hath guen vs the pictures of these Coynes) thinketh to be *Alexander*.

f *Arrian lib. 3. Curt. lib. 4.*
g The fortunate telling Groue.
h *Lucan* calls them, *Garamantes, lib. 9. Templum Libycis quod gentibus vnum. Incolis Gaetoulis: ita habent, flat Cornigerr Iliæ, &c.*
i *Pimbilicus.*
k *Scal. E. T. lib. 5. pag. 401.*
l *Pausan. lib. 3.*
m *Dest. & tes. supr. cap. 3.*
n *Plinie, Cbeuls, &c.*
o *Drusius* addeth another reason of the name *Hammon*, the Egyptian name of the Sunne: *Iupiter idem qui Sol*, saith *Arnobius*, and *Mutuus Falix, quæst. hist. lib. 3.*
p *Pauer de Diuinat.*
q *Strabo* 17.

Ramme-hornes are said to bee ascribed to him, because *Bacchus* wandering in these Desarts with his Armie, was guided to this place by a silly Ramme. Likewise *Pausanias* [l] in his *Messenica* saith, that one *Ammon* (which built the Temple) a Shepheard, was authour of this name to their God. *Plutarchus* [m] reason of *Amus* we haue before shewed. Others [n] deriue this name from [Greek] the Sand; which may well agree with all Idolatrie, seeming a *sandie foundation*, although it is here intended to the situation. [o] But that which I haue before noted of *Ham* the sonne of *Noah*, soundeth more probable, as being Progenitor of all these Nations; and of this minde also is [p] *Pencerus*. This [q] *Strabo* in his time saith was not in request, as no other Oracle besides. For the Romanes contented themselues with their *Sybils* and other diuinations. This Oracle was not giuen by word, but by signes. This defect of

of Oracles in generall, and especially of this, occasioned that Treatise of *Plutarch* r of this subiect, enquiring the cause of the Oracles cessing. Neuer had he read, that s *the Gods which had not made heauen and earth, should perish out of the earth:* nor had he eyes to see that *Sunne of Righteousnesse, the Light of the world,* whose pure beames chased and disperled these mists of darknesse. And therefore are his coniectures to farre from the marke, as not able with a natural eye to see *the things of God.* The t antiquitie of this Oracle appeareth, in that *Semiramis* came to it, and inquired of her death; after which, the Oracle promised to her diuine honours. *Perseus* also and *Hercules* are reported to haue consulted the same in their aduentures against *Gorgon* and *Busiris.* Besides this Groue, u there is another of *Ammon*, which hath in the middest a Well, they call it the Fountayne of the Sunne; whose water at Sunne-rising is luke-warme, and cooleth more and more till noone, at which time it is very cold: and from thence till mid-night, by degrees exchangeth that coldnesse with heate, holding a kinde of naturall Antipathy with the Sunne; x hottest in his furthest absence, coldest in his neerest presence. *Plinie* and *Solinus* place this Fountayne in Debris, a Towne not very farre from those parts amongst the Garamants. *Lucretius* mentions it, and Philosophically disputeth the cause thereof.

r *Plut. de desse. Orac.*
s *Ierem.* 10. 11.
t *Diod. Sic. lib.* 3. *cap.* 5.
u *Curt. ibidem Pomp. Mela. Plin. Solin. &c.*
x Our Bathes in England (as some affirme) are hoter in the night then in the day.

Lucret. lib. 6.

——nimirum terra magis quod
Rarata et circum hunc fontem, quàm cætera tellus,
Multaq; sunt ignis prope semina corpus aqua, &c.

The substance whereof is, that the fire, vnder that subtile earth by cold vapours of the night, is pressed and forced to that waterie refuge, but by the Sunne beames receiuing new encouragement, forsaketh those holds and holes, and for a little while takes repossession of his challenged lands. The Ammonian women haue such great breests, that they suckle their children ouer their shoulder; their breest not lesse, if *Iuuenal* be beleeued, then the childe;

In Meroe crasso maiorem infante mamillam.

In Meroe, the monstrous Pappe
Is bigger then the childe in lappe.

Pausanias y reckoneth an Ammonian *Iuno* among the Libyan Cities, as well as this *Iupiter.* He addeth, the Lacedemonians had this *Ammon* in much request, and built to him diuers Temples, as at Gytheum one, which had no roofe; and the Aphytæans did him no lesse worship then the Libyans.

y *Pausan. lib.* 3.

Ortelius, z who hath bestowed a Description of this Temple, supposeth that his Image was painted with hornes, but that *Ombilicus* was accounted the Deitie it selfe, or the signe of his presence, which shapelesse shape he sampleth by many like in other Nations. The ship he coniectureth to signifie, that the Religion was brought from some other place. But if *Ammon* be that sonne of *Noah*, it might rather bee a memoriall of the Arke, wherein *Noah* and his sonnes were preserued: as that also of *Ianus*, (who is imagined to be *Noah*) may more fitly be interpreted, then according to the Poets glosse:

z *In Typo Expeditionis, ad.* Mag.

a *Pub. Ouid.*

a *Sic bona posteritas puppim formauit in ærc,*
Hospitis aduentum testificata Dei.

So well-disposd Posteritie did frame
A ship, to shew which way their *strange God* came.

The ancient frugalitie of the Cyrenians is commended in Authors. b *Sulpitius* bringeth in *Postumianus*, in his Dialogues, telling, That landing there by force of weather, hee went with the Priest vnto the Church, which was very homely, couered with base twigs or boughs, not much better then the Priest (their hoste) his Tent, in which a man might not stand vpright. Enquiring after the disposition of the people, they learned, that they were vtterly ignorant of buying and selling, of fraude and stealing. They neither had, nor cared to haue, gold or siluer; and when he offered ten pieces of gold to the Priest, hee refused it: onely was content to accept a little rayment.

b *Sen. Sulpit. Dialog. Fideiacum de Barac. Orig. cap.* 4.

The *Hammientes* are not much distant in place, or differing in name, from the Ammonians: which built their houses of Salt, digging the salt-stones out of the Mountaynes, which they with morter apply to their buildings. *Mela* ioyneth to these aforesaid the *Atlantes*, which curse the Sunne at the setting and rising, as bringing damage to them and their fields. A practice not vnlike to the women of Angola at this day, who (as *Andrew Battle*, which liued there, testifieth) salute the New Moone when they first see her, by holding vp their hinder parts naked against her, as the cause of their troublesome menstruous purgation.

These *Atlantes* haue no proper names, nor feede of such things as haue life. He affirmeth of the *Garamantes*, that they had no wiues, but liued in a beastly communitie. The *Augila* acknowledge no other Gods but Ghosts, or Soules departed, by which they sweare; with which

which they consult as Oracles; to which they pray at their Tombes, receiuing answeres by dreames. The women the first night of marriage are prostituted to all that will see them, the more the greater honour, but after, must obserue their owne husbands. The *Troglodite* dwell in Caues, and feede on Serpents, and rather make a sound or noyse, then humane voyce: they vsed Circumcision: they named not their Children by their Parents names; but by the names of sheepe, or other beasts which yeeld them nourishment. Their wiues and children (saith *Agatharchides*) are common: onely the Kings wife is proper; yet if any had lyen with her, his punishment was but the losse of a sheepe. In their Winter they liue on blood and milke which are mixed and heated together at the fire. In their Summer they kill the scab-
10 bed and diseased of their Cattell. They entitle none with the name of Parents, but the Bull and Cow, the Ram and Ewe, and the Male and Female of the Goates, because of these they receiue their nourishment, and not from their Parents. They goe naked all but the buttocks. Such as want that skin which others circumcise (κολοβοι) they deprive of the whole flesh, so farre as the circumcision should haue extended. Their funerall Rites were, to eye the necks of the dead to their legs, and couer them with heapes of stones, setting a goates horne on the top, with laughter rather then mourning. Their old men which can follow the flockes no longer, they strangle with an Oxe-taile, which medicine they minister like wise to those that haue grieuous diseases, or maymes. And vnto these doth *Plinie* adde the *Blemmyæ*, with faces in their brests, the *Satyres*, *Ægypanes*, *Himantopodes*, and other monsters, scarce wor-
20 thy Relation or credit. These parts I haue thus ioyned in one Discourse, as liuing (for the most part) a wilde life, as the Arabians and Tartars doe at this day: and for Religion hauing nothing notable that I finde, but as you haue heard. *Procopius* [c] writeth of the Blemyes and Nobatæ, that *Iustinian* placed them in Egypt, about Elephantina; that they before obserued the Greekes deuotions, *Isis* also and *Osiris*, and *Priapus*, and sacrificed to the Sunne; which Rites the Emperour prohibited. But hee mentions no such Monsters. The Arabians which vnder *Elcain* about the foure hundred yeere of their *Hegeira*, gaue a Ducat a man to passe into Africke, are Lords and Inhabitants of the Desarts to this day, liuing (as wee say) *a dogs life*, in hunger and ease, professing *Mahumets* sect.

c Procop. de Bel. Persi lib. 1.

The *Adrimachidæ* [d] liued neere to the Egyptians both in situation and custome. The *Na-*
30 *samones* had many wiues, with which they had companie publikely. The first night of the marriage, all the guests had dealing with the Bride, and rewarded her with some gift. The *Gnidanes* had a more beastly custome, whose women *glorying in their shame*, wore so many fringes of leather as they had found Louers. The *Machlyes* ware the haire on the hinder part of their head, as the Iaponians now doe. The *Auses* vsed the contrarie: whose Virgins in the yeerly feast of *Minerua*, diuided themselues into two companies, and skirmished with staues and stones. If any Virgins dyed of the wounds, they accounted them false Maides. The most martiall *Virago* of the companie, they arme and crowne, and place in a Chariot, with great solemnitie. They vsed not marriage, but had women in common: the childe being reckoned his with whom shee chooseth to liue. To adde a word of the *Cyrenians*, they held
40 it vnlawfull to smite a Cow, in honour of *Isis*, whose Fasts and Feasts they solemnely obserued: and in Barca they abstayned both from Beefe and Hogs flesh. They feared [e] the crownes or temples of their children, to preuent the distilling of the rheume.

d Ex. Boym. G. Drusdinius ad Solinum. Celius Rhod. lib. 18. cap. 37.

e The like doth *Villamont* report of the Turkes.

In their sacrificing, they first cut off the eare of the beast, as first fruits, and hurled it ouer the house. Their gods were the Sunne and Moone. The *Maxes* shaue the left side of their heads, leauing the haire on the right side. The *Zigantes* feede on Apes, whereof they haue plentie.

The *Megapares* make no account of Sepulchres, in stead whereof they couer the corpse with stones, and set vp a Goates horne on the stone heape. They haue many skirmishes for their pastures, which are ended by the mediation of old Women, who may safely interpose
50 themselues, and end the fray (or battell, if you will so call it.) When men are so old that they can no longer follow the herds, they strangle him with a Cowes taile, if he will not preuent them by doing it himselfe. The like medicine they administer to such as are dangerously sicke. Of the *Maca*, *Celius* thinkes the Roman Priests borrowed their shauen crownes. Other things which our Authors adde of these people and others adioyning, as seeming too fabulous, I list not to expresse. *Silius Italicus* in his Poems, and *Aldrete* in his Antiquities of Spaine and Africke, expresse diuers of their ancient Rites and Names, and that which seemes to vs most fitting, shall in this Historie be inferred. This part of the World, as least knowne to the Ancients, yeelded both Poets and Historians most matter of their Fables, in explaining whereof *Aldrete* hath written in Spanish very learnedly, as also of the later times, when the
60 Romans, Vandals, and since the Arabians, haue preuayled.

B. Aldrete Ant. Vat. lib. 4.

NEWBERRY LIBRARY CHICAGO

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of that part of Barbarie, now called the Kingdome of Tunis and Tripolis.

§. 1.

The name Barbarie: the Kingdome of Tunis, and Antiquitie of Carthage.

ALl the Tract of Land, betweene Atlas and the Sea (stretching in length from Egypt to the Straits) is * called Barbaria, either of *Barbar* (which signifieth to murmure) because such seemed the speech of the Inhabitants to the Arabians, or of the word *Bar*, which signifieth a Desart, doubled. It comprehendeth * both Mauritania's, *Africa minor*, *Libya exterior*, besides Cyreniaca and Marmarica, whereof wee have spoken. The Inhabitants some fetch from Palestina, some from Arabia. It was conquered by the Romans, and taken from the Greeke Emperors by the Vandals, and from them againe by the Saracens and Arabians, and is now partly subiect to the Turke, partly to the Xerasse. It is vsually diuided into foure Kingdomes, Marocco, Fesse, Tremisen, and Tunis; for of Barca is said alreadie: The Cities of Barbarie (it is *Ios. Scaliger* * his testimonie) speake Arabike, but not pure, nor yet so degenerate as the Italian is from the Latine: but the Countrie people vse the old African tongue, nothing like the other.

* *Leo lib. 1.*

* *Magiinus.*

* *Ios. Scal. Ep. ad Casaub.*

HONDIVS *his Map of* Barbarie.

The Kingdome of Tunis contaynneth all that which the Ancients called *Africa, Propria*, or *Minor*, and *Numidia Antiqua*: the Romanes (perhaps vaine-gloriouſly vaunting, or ambitiouſly aymingat the Empire of the Vniuerſe) ſtiling their firſt footing and poſſeſſion in Aſia and Africa, by the name of the whole; which others haue beene forced to diſtinguiſh by adding *Propria* or *Minor*. So they called *Attalus* his Legacie, *Aſia*, and this Prouince (yea Carthage it ſelfe had that name) *Africa*. The ſoyle is fertile, eſpecially the Weſt-part. The Inhabitants are ſtouts and healthfull, ſeldome vexed with any ſickneſſe. Hereof are reckoned fiue parts; Bugia, Conſtantina, Tunis, Tripolis and Ezzab. This Ezzab is the moſt Eaſterly part, hauing many Townes and Regions, amongſt which, ſome account *Meſrata*, From theſe parts vnto Capes, is the Tripolitan Region. The chiefe Towne is Tripolis, where in the great Turke hath his Baſſa, or Vice-roy, a receptacle of the Pyrats, which roue and rob in thoſe Seas; in the yeere 1551. wonne from the Knights of Malta by *Sinan Baſſa*. From Capes to Guadilbarbar is the Tunetan Territorie. From thence vnto the Mountayne of Conſtantina is that Region, hereof bearing name; and from thence [b] to the Riuer *Mauor*, about an hundred and fiftie miles ſpace, doth Bugia extend it ſelfe, ſo called of Bugia [c] the principall Citie, ſometime adorned with Temples, Hoſpitals, Monaſteries, and Colledges of Students in the Mahumetane Law. Here is alſo Necuas a very pleaſant Citie; and Chollo, very rich Conſtantina is an ancient Citie, contayning eight thouſand Families, & many ſumptuous buildings, a great [d] Temple, two Colledges, and three or foure Monaſteries, much reſorted to by Merchants. Euery trade hath their peculiar ſtreetes. A little from the Citie is a hote Bath, hauing in it abundance of Crabfiſhes, or little Tortoyſes, which the women take for euill ſpirits, and aſcribe vnto them the cauſe of their ſickneſſe, or ague, if any befall: and therefore kill white Hens, and ſet them on an earthen veſſell, with their feathers, enuironing the ſame with little Wax-candles, and ſo leaue them neere to this Bath, or Fountayne. How euer it fare with their Feuer, their meat ſhall not ſtay long, but ſome or other that ſee the women deuotion, will enuy the euill ſpirits ſo good cheere, and for that time will be the ſpirits themſelues, to dreſſe and eate their prouiſion. Not farre hence is a Marble building, with Images grauen therein: the people haue a conceit, that it was ſometime a Schoole, and thoſe Statues the Scholiers, by Diuine judgement ſo transformed for their wickednesſe.

In this Region is ſituated *Bona*, ſometime called Hippo, famous through our Chriſtian World for the moſt famous of the Fathers, that ſince the Apoſtles dayes haue left vs their writings, *Aurelius Auguſtinus* a name fitting to him, which indeed was *Aureus & Auguſtiſſimus*, Biſhop of the See, while hee liued; and yet liuing (in his Workes) a Biſhop, not of Hippo, but of the *Weſterne Church*. *Witties, Learned, Wiſe*, and *Holy* Father, that haſt with Thee carryed theſe Titles from Hippo! where, after Thee, the Arrian Vandals, and ſince, the Saracens haue liued and Lorded; and at this day is poſſeſſed of ſuch as haue no poſſeſſion of *Wit, Learning, Wiſedome*, or *Holineſſe*: but haue teſtified their baniſhment of all theſe, by aſcribing them to Fooles and Mad men, whom they honour and admire as Saints. [e] This *Bona* (then brooking this name better) contayneth now three hundred Herthies, and a ſumptuous Moſque, to which is adjoyned the houſe of the *Cadi*.

Tunis is now a great Citie, ſince the ruines of Carthage, neere vnto which it ſtandeth. Carthage [f] (as the more ancient) deſerueth firſt Relation: of which, wee may yet ſay with [g] *Saluſt, Scilere melius puto, quàm parum dicere*: wee may not ſay much, and a little will bee too little for ſuch Greatneſſe. It was built threeſcore and twelue yeeres before Rome, as the common account goeth, by *Dido* and her [h] Phœnicians: an emulous competitor with Rome for the Empire of the World. It contayned (ſaith [i] *Oroſius*) in the circuit of the walles twentie miles; *Liuies* Epitome ſayth, foure and twentie; all engirt with the Sea, excepe three miles ſpace, which had a wall of ſquared Stone, thirtie foot broad, and fortie cubites high. The Tower Byrſa enuironed aboue two miles, and had in it the Temples of *Iuno, Æſculapius*, and [k] *Belus*. Of the greatneſſe of their name and power, thoſe three Punike wartes are witneſſes: in the ſecond of which, *Anniball* (whom his father *Hamilcar*, then Generall in Spaine, had cauſed to ſweare at the Altar of *Iupiter*, neuer to hold friendſhip with the Romans, he then being but nine yeeres old, as *Æmilius Probus*, or as other will haue it, *Cornelius Nepos* reporteth:) he, I ſay, paſſed ouer the Pyrenæan Mountaynes, through France, and ouer the Alpes, into Italy. with an Armie of an hundred thouſand foot-men, and thirtie thouſand Horſe, The Riuers Ticinus and Trebia, the Lake *Traſimenus* (running with Roman blood, by three ouerthrowes of *Scipio, Sempronius*, and *Flaminius* the Romane Conſuls) witneſſed the Punike [l] might. But the victory at Cannæ againſt *Varro* didpierce the breſt, and had rent the heart of Rome, had *Anniball* known to haue vſed the victory as well, as to haue gotten it. There did Rome ſeeme to breath her laſt: the Sunne, the Wind, the Duſt helping the Carthagi-

Nil. Nic. was there preſent.

b *Leo, lib. 5.*
c Bugia an Vniuerſitie.
d *Sandus Aldrete Diou. Haſte. Necnicolay. lib. 1.*
e *Vbi Carthago peninſulæ ad ſinuem accedens, hinc mari, inde lacu maximo ſui parte cingitur. Iſthmus quo office iunguntur, patet ſtadia 25. eteque eſt in huius ſpatii latere, quod vergit ad mare, Vbi modice ab vrbe interuallo: in altera ſecundum lacum eſt Tunis. Polyb. hiſt. lib. 1. cap. 37.*
f *Beli. Iugurth.*
h *Plini, quaſi Phœni.*
i *P. Oroſ. Lib. cap. 22.*
k There were in Carthage the Temples of *Iuno Mentria, Apollo*: Silius addeth of *Eliſa* and of *Venus Cœleſtis*, or *Vranea*, the Phœnicia *aſtrearche & Syria Dea*.
l Of the Punike wartes and greatneſſe the Romane Hiſtories are full: ſo alſo *Polybius* and others among the Greekes. *Erant tunc temporis Carthaginenſium imperio ſubiectæ omnes Africæ prouin-*

ginian with Natures forces, yea, the Riuer Gellus, against Nature, stayed it selfe, as congealed indeed, whether with wonder, feare, or necessitie, accepting a Bridge or Damme rather of Roman bodies for a passage to the African Armie. These were golden dayes to Carthage; when three c bushels of Gold-Rings, taken from the fingers of the slaine enemies, were sent hither as a d present. A sworne meane-while did Rome sustaine; and easily in fiue dayes might *Hannibal* haue dined in the Capitoll: and poore helpe could shee finde when shee reuised, had not Capua, with feasting the Conqueror, detayned Rome from Conquest, when they despoyled the Temples for Armour, armed their slaues, and bestowed their priuate state on the publike Treasurie: all which could not make *Fabius* e fight with *Annibal*, but by not fighting he learned to ouercome, knowing, that a shield was better weapon then a sword in that case. Scarce f in seuenteene yeeres could Italy shake off this burthen, till *Scipio* by new policie warred against *Hannibal*, not in g Italy, where he was, but in Africke and Carthage, whence his force was; thereby procuring *Annibals* returne, as the outward members are forced to yeeld their blood, to succour any sudden oppression of the heart.

But how is my heart oppressed with sudden passion, thus to transport the Reader, with my selfe, from Africke into Spaine, France, Italy, there to behold this Tragedie? Let the matter it selfe answere: and now weare returned to Carthage, and finde the Tragedie heere. For in the third Punike warre the Romans (sayth h *Florus*) rather fought with the Citie it selfe then with Men. And alas, what could that Hermophrodite-armie doe, wherein were fiue and twentie thouland armed i Women? Yet had women then the greater courage: *Hasdrubal* the King yeelded His wife, with her two children, and much people, burned themselues in the Temple of *Æsculapius*, that could not cure this disease of his Citie and suppliants the like fate befalling the first and last Queenes of Carthage. Seuenteene dayes together did Carthage burne, seuen hundred yeeres after the first building.

In this last warre, after they had deliuered vp their Nauie and weapons, being commanded to remoue ten miles from thence, Anger kindled new forces, and taught them to supply the want of Iron, with Siluer and Gold, in making weapons, with pulling downe their houses to build a Nauie, the Matrons giuing their haire (the feminine Ornament) to make bands for their manly and warlike Engines; their priuate glory, for publike necessitie; all which serued but to augment the pompe of this funerall of Carthage. *Cæsar* did after restore it with a Roman Colonie, neuer attaining the Tyrian l glory, afflicted with Vandals and Gothes, and by the Saracens made desolate, vntill the time of *Elmahdi*, an heretically *Caliphe*, who procured the inhabiting hereof. But not aboue the twentieth part was inhabited: The rest remayneth as scattered ruines, dispersed bones, of the carkasse of old Carthage. Master *Pounteffe*, a friend of mine, told me, That hee hath beene rowed in his Boat ouer the walls of Carthage, or their ruines, the Sea hauing made the last conquest by eating into the Land. The Conduits are whole (saith *Leo*) which bring water from a Hill thirtie miles from Carthage, twelue miles vnder the Earth, the rest aboue. And now (saith he) are not aboue fiue and twentie shops, and fiue hundred houses therein, one faire Temple, one Colledge, but without Schollers, the inhabitants poore, proud, and superstitious. Master m *Eussham* saith, That this Citie is now ruinated and destroyed. Hee mentioneth those Arches wherein water was hither conueyed, and one street three miles long.

As for the Sea-discoueries attempted by the Carthaginians; *Hanno* compassed n all Africa from the Spanish to the Arabian Straits, and committed his discoueries to writing; *Himilco* at the same time was employed in the search of Europe. *Diodorus Siculus* o writeth a whole Chapter of their discouery of a pleasant and fertile Iland Westward, in the Ocean, which cannot more fitly agree with any other Region then some part of the West-Indies, as may seeme at the first view. But a man shall haue much to doe to finde that Iland, a harder discouery now, then it was then to the finders, at least as the Storie lies. And some p thinke, that the Indians of America were a Colonie of the Carthaginians. *Aristotle* hath also the like Relation in his Booke *De admirandis Auditionib.* In the beginning of the Warre q they had three hundred Cities in Libya, and seuen hundred thousand persons in their Citie.

The Carthaginians (as all acknowledged, and their very name Pæni doth prouue) were Phœnicians: which Countrey wee haue before shewed to bee famous, as for many other things, so for the first letters and the first (that is, the Hebrew) language. The letters which the Hebrewes since the Babilonian Captiuitie haue vsed, *Postellus* r would haue to bee the first, but secret till those times, and then by *Esra* made common: but f others more probably hold the Phœnician or Samaritan the first: and that the present Hebrew were the Assyrian or Chaldean Characters, which the Iewes brought thence with them. Now for proofe that their ancient Language was Phœnician, and consequently Hebrew: *Dido* is but the feminine, saith *Scaliger*, to *David*: and *Elisa* is the Hebrew *Elisha*. *Iosephus* relateth out of *Theophrastus*, that the Tyrians and Sydonians might not vse other but their owne Country

c *Modii.*
d *Polib. l. 3. c. 11 & seq. ex Iustiniano Casaubon, & Romani hist. ic. sive omnes, hec. p end.*
e *Cunctator.*
f *Stadiin Florum.*
g *Hannibal in Italia semper superior; quod nisi domi cuiusm suorum auuxilio destitutus esset, Romanos vinceret superare potuisse. Æmil. Probus in Hannibale.*
h *Lib. 2. cap. 15.*
i *Gior. l. 4. c. 23.*
k *Prosperitate ac ieu iteratorum corruptis mitibus plus nocuisse mansuetudinem ciuitatis quam prius nauitrat tumultus aduersa Carthago. August. de Ciuit. Dei l. 3. c. 21.*
l *Leo lib. 5.*

m *Ap. Hak.*

n *Ramusius* (thweeth, by a comment also of a Portugall Pilot that this was but coasting the West part of Africke, &c.
o *Dio Sic. l. 5. c. 7*
p *Gen. Sphon.*
q *Dom Nig.*

r *Postel. de Originib.*
s *Scal. ad Eusebron.*
Brere. de Pond. Scal. prolog. ad Bm. T. ed. vlt.

trey oathes, of which hee reckoneth *Corban*, which the Scriptures also mention. And *Scaliger* saith, that the *Punike Scene* in *Plautus* his *Penolus* (although they had then much declined from the Hebrew puritie) is neerer the Hebrew then the Syriake, and that hee could for the most part restore it to the right Punike, which also hath happily beene attempted by Master *Selden* in his *Dis Syris*, and by *Bernardo Aldrete* a Spaniard in his *Varias Antiquedades de España, Africa, Otras provincias lib. 2. cap. 2.* Where he in a large Catalogue compareth the Hebrew, Syriake, Phœnician, and Punike termes together. Of their *Banissamen* and other notes of this language, we haue spoken before in our first Booke. The name *Carthago*, as *Genebrard* and *Aldrete* obserue, in Syriake, signifies the middle Citie, *Karsha* a Citie, *Go*, middle: *Selima* saith, New Citie.

Wee haue alledged the testimonie of *Procopius* for the Chanaanites fleeing before *Iosuna*; and the Punikes (sayth [a] *Augustine*) called themselues (euen in his time) *Chanani*. *Salusti* ascribeth to the Phœnicians, *Hippo*, *Hadrumetum*, *Leptis* and other Cities on the Sea-coast, besides Carthage, which they built either to enlarge their Empire, or to preuent a sulnesse at home.

[a] *Kusos inchoati. ad Iosum. Salust. Iugurth.*

Concerning the Religion of the Africans: in Ancient times, *Leo* saith, That they worshipped the Fire and the Sunne, as did the Persians (erecting, in honour of each of these, faire and sumptuous Temples, in which the Fire was continually kept burning, as in the Temple of *Vesta* at Rome. The Numidians and Libyans sacrificed to the Planets. And some of the Negroes worshipped *Gugbimo*, which signifieth the LORD of Heauen. These afterward (hee sayth) were of the Iewish Religion, and after that, of the Christian, till the 268. yeere of the *Hegira*, that some Negro Kingdomes became Mahumetane, although there remaine some Christians to this day: those which were Iewish, both by the Christians and Mahumetanes, were vtterly destroyed. But those of Barbarie (whereof wee especially entreat) remained (saith hee) Idolaters, till two hundred and fifte yeeres before *Mahomets* birth, when they became Christians. This must be interpreted of the vniuersall and publike profession about the time of *Constantine*: For otherwise Africke had in it Christians before. *Dorotheus* in *Synopsis* saith, That *Epanetus*, one of the seuentie Disciples, was a Bishop of Carthage; and that *Simon* the Apostle preached in Mauritania, and among the Africans, as *Matthias* also in Æthiopia. But the Gothes (soone corrupted Christian Religion with Arrianisme, the forerunner of Mahumetanisme, both heere and else-where. The Moores (saith [a] another) worshipped *Iuba* as a God; and the *Pæni*, *Vranus*; the Libyans, *Psaphon*. This *Psaphon* (otherwise a base fellow) had taught Birds to sing, *Psaphon is a great God*, and let them flie into the Woods, where chanting their lesson, they inchanted the rude people with this superstition. *Ælianus* [b] telleth the like Historie of *Annon* a Carthaginian, whose birds, at libertie in the Woods, forgat this their Masters Lesson. The Pæni [c] being (as is said) Phœni or Phœnicians, brought (in all likelihood) the Phœnician Religion with them from thence. Yee may reade in our first booke of *Moloch*: whence come the Carthaginian names of *Adiluo*, *Amilcar*, *Amilcar*, *Bomilcar*. Yea, *Athenodoros* reports of *Aouilcas* a Carthaginian Deitie, which is like to be this *Moloch* or *Milcom*, in a little differing Dialect. Some are of opinion that these sacrifices had their beginning from a diabolicall imitation of *Abrahams* offering *his onely sonne Isaac*. For so *Porphyrius* and *Philo Biblius* relate out of the Phœnician Annals, that an ancient King called *Israel*, in great danger of warre, offered his onely sonne. *Porphyrius* cals him *Iend*, as *Moses* also, *Gen. 22. 2. Iehid*, that is, *vnigenitum*, which hee had by *Anobreta*: whom *Scaliger* interpreteth *Sara*. Neither is it any great marvell, that the names and Story should bee thus peruerted, to any that reade what relations, *Iustin*, *Strabo* and others write of the Iewes, or how the Deuill is the great Seducer of the world, bringing darknesse out of light itselfe. *Silius* mentioneth these their damnable Rites of humane Sacrifices.

[a] *Alex. ab Alex. Gen. diet. l. 6. c. 4.*

[b] *Ælian. l. 14. c. 25.*

[c] *Dom. Niger. Perfidi Pani proueth. Sec. l. 5. c. 48.*

Mos fuit in populis quos condidit aduena Dido,
Poscere cædo Deos veniam, ac flagrantibus aris
(Infandum dictu) parus imponere natos.

Carthage, t'appease the offended Deities,
Was wont to offer humane Sacrifice:
And tender Babes (abominable shame)
Were made the fewell of the Altars flame.

So *Ennius* in that verse of his, cited by [d] *Nonius Marcellus*, *Ilke suos Dinis mos sacrificare puellos*. *Tertullian* writes, that this custome continued till the time of *Tiberius*, who being Proconsull, crucified the Priests authors of this villanie, on the very Trees which shadowed the Temple in this bloody groue: yet this continued to *Tertullians* dayes, but more closely;

[d] *Marcellus verb. Puell. vid. Lactant. l. 1. c. 21 Cyrill. adu. Iul. l. 1. Euseb. de prep. l. 4. Tert. Apologet.*

Sed & nunc in occulto perseuerat: hoc sacrum facinus. Ipsi parentes sui offerebant, & libentes exponebant, & infantibus blandiebantur, ne lachrymantes immolarentur. These are the words of *Tertullian*. To *Saturne* (saith [e] *Sardus*) were humane Sacrifices offered by the Rhodians, Phoenicians, Curetes, and Carthaginians: the *Sardi* their [f] Colone, offered the fayrest of their Captiues, and such as were above threescore and tenne yeeres olde, who to shew their courage, laughed; whence grew the Prouerbe, *Sardonius risus*: this was done also to *Saturne*. The Carthaginians in time of plague, offered their Children to *Saturne*, which *Gelo* caused them to leaue. Yea such was their zeale in this superstition, that if they had no Children of their owne, they bought for this purpose of the poore, the Mother assisting this Butcherly sacrifice, without once sighing or weeping, for then shee had lost the price, and her Child neuertheleſſe. And least the crying of the Children should bee heard, all resounded with Instruments of Musicke. Thus *Plutarch* in his treatise of Superstition. Being ouercome by *Agathocles*, they sacrificed two hundred of the chiefe mens Children, to *Saturne*. *Clitarchus* and others write, cited by *Suidas*, That in their solemne supplications at Carthage, they put a childe into the armes of *Saturnes* Brazen Image, vnder which was set a Furnace or Queno, which being kindled, the childe in his burning, seemed to laugh. This custome might happily bee the occasion of that desperate act before spoken of in the destruction of Carthage by the Romanes, so many perishing in *Æsculapius* Temple. Other their Rites are likely to bee the same with those which we haue reported of the Phœnicians, some what perhaps, in time inclining also to the Greekish superstition. Their deuotion to *Venus*, the Phœnician Goddesse, *Augustine* [g] mentioneth in these words, *Regnum Veneris quale erat Carthagini, vbi nunc est regnum Christi?*

[h] Carthage was called Iustiniana, of *Iustinian*, Iunonia of *Gracchus*, Hadrianopolis of *Hadrian*, and of *Commodus*, Alexandria Commodiana Togata. It was sacked the second time of *Capellianus*, President of Mauritania; thirdly, vnder *Genserichus*, of the Vandals; fourthly, of the Maurusians; fifthly, of the Persians; sixthly, of the Ægyptians; lastly, of the Mahometanes.

Tunis [i] was a small Towne, till after the destruction of Carthage it grew in some reckoning (as before is sayd.) It hath in it about ten thousand Housholds. *Abdul Mumen* joyned it to his Kingdome of Marocco. And when that Kingdome declined, [k] the Vice-Roy (which before was subject to Marocco) now vsurped the State to himselfe, calling himselfe King of Africa. In our Fathers [l] dayes, *Muleassos*, sonne of *Mahomet*, King of Tunis (by murther of his elder brother *Mamon*, and either killing or putting out the eyes of twenty other his brethren) obtayned the Crowne. But *Rosette* the onely brother remaynng when with his Arabians he could not gaine the Kingdome, he went with *Barbarossa* to *Solyman* the Turke, who so vsed the matter, that *Muleassos* was chased out of his Kingdome, and Tunis subjected it selfe to *Solyman*. But *Muleassos* craued and obtained ayde of *Charles* the fift, who in the yeere 1535. passed [m] with an Armie into Africke, and repossessed *Muleassos* of his Kingdome, who became the Emperours Vassall.

Our Histories tell of *Edward* the first his arriuall at Tunis, and *Henry* the fourth with English Archers; at both which times the Tunetanes were forced to composition. It was, before either of them were Kings. *Froissart*, for *Henry*, hath his Sonne *John de Beaufort*.

Muleasses, about the yeere 1544. crossed ouer the Sea into Sicily, leauing his sonne *Amida* in the gouernment [n]. The costlinesse of his dyet was admirable, and of his Perfumes. One Peacocke and two Phesants, dressed after his order, were obserued to amount to a hundred Dukats and more. He was a superstitious obseruer of his Religion, and of the Starres which portended to him the losse of his Kingdome, and a miserable end. To auoyd this, he departed out of Africa (for feare of *Barbarossa*) but so fell into the danger. A rumour was spread at Tunis, that hee was dead; whereupon *Amida* possessed himselfe of the Kingdome. *Muleasses* hasted home to recouer it, and lost himselfe: for hee was taken Captiue, and after both his eyes put out with a burning knife, and of his two sonnes *Nabasar* and *Abdalas* he was committed to Prison. But *Abdamelech* his brother got the Kingdome from *Amida*, and soone after dyed, to whom succeeded *Mahomet* his sonne, a childe: whose Tutors were so tyrannicall, that *Amida* was againe sent for by the Tunetans, and *Muleasses* is brought to Sanctuary, whence by the Spaniards meanes hee was conueyed to Gulgeta, and thence to Sicilia, where he was maintayned at the Emperours charge [o]. He deriued his Pedigree from the Chorean Family, in right line from *Homar*, *Mahomets* Disciple. *Amida* obtayned the Kingdome, thus tossed betwixt Moores, Turkes, and Christians, but was after taken and sent prisoner to Sicilia, *Mahomet* (brother of *Amida*, now a slaue in Sicilia) was made King of Tunis, vnder the Spaniard, 1573. by *Don Iohn* of Austria: but the next yeere after *Selym* the Turke tooke Guletta, holden by the Spaniards almost fortie yeeres, and at last tooke Tunis also: *Mahomet* the new King was sent to Constantinople prisoner.

Ie

e *Sar. l. 3.*
f *Suidas.*
g *Aug. in Psal. 98.*
h *See Ortel. in Peregr.*
i *George Braun* hath described this and *Algier*, *&c. in Cimit. Orb. Ter.*
k *Leo. l. 5.*
l *Sleid. Com. l. 9. Fr. Sur. Com. Degliani.*
m *De hoc expeditione Diertium scripsit Ioan. Etrobius.*
n *Surius Com.*
o *Knolles p. 902*

It hath (saith [i] *Leo*) many Temples, especially one of singular beauty and greatnesse, furnished with store of Priests and Reuenue: also, many Colledges of Schollers, and Monasteries of Religious persons, to which the people yeeld liberall Almes. They are so beefooled, that they esteeme Fooles Saints: and while I was at Tunis, the King built a faire Monastery for one *Sidi el Dabi* (which went vp and downe with his head and feete bare, hoffing stories, and crying like mad man) endowing the same with great Reuenue for him and all his kindred.

i *Leo l.5.*

Bserta is an ancient City, supposed [k] by some to be Vtica, where *Cato* slue himselfe.

k *Magnin.*

10

§. II.

Of Cairaoan, and the Kingdome of Tripoli.

CAiraoan hath beene a City famous, built by *Hucba*, Generall of the warres of *Ozmen*, or *Osman*, the third Caliphs, thirty fixe miles from the Sea, and from Tunis, one hundred, to secure themselues from any sudden inuasion, which the commodiтie of the Sea might cause them. He built therein an admirable Temple, on Pillars of Marble. To *Hucba* in this gouernment succeeded [a] *Muse*, to whom *Iulianus* Earle of Ceuta offered his seruice [b] for the conquest of Spaine, and being found faithfully vnfaithfull with Gebel Tarif, now Gibraltar) who with an Army of twelue thousand tooke Seuill, and after that ouerthrew King *Rodericus*, and being enriched with spoyle, was dispossessed thereof by *Muse*, who by this newes of his successe was mooued to follow him into Spaine, as the Spanish Writers [c] (though not altogether agreeing herein) declare, and subdued the same in thirty moneths space. When *Muse* or *Musa* departed with *Tarif* out of Spaine, the Moores there fell into such contentions, that in twenty yeeres space there were no lesse then fifteene Kings: and one of them setled his Throne in the blood of three hundred Competitors. *Iezid* the sonne of *Muza*, and after him his Brother, and Nephew, succeeded each other in this gouernment, which *Elaglek* (that followed them) turned into an independent and free Signory, by occasion (as is said) of the Chalifa's leaning Damasco, and remouing the Seat Royal, or Popedome to Bagdat. This House here ruled a hundred and seuenty yeeres, at which time *Mahdi* an heretical Chalifa depriued them. These Saracens wan Sicilia in those times to the Cairaoan Dominion.

a *Musa ex Nuiri.*
b *Io. Vasæus Chron. Hispan.*
c *Rod. Tolet l.4. & Chod. Lanitus hist. lib.2. c.37. Alfons à Carthagena c.14. Fr. Tarafa Magnor. &c.*

About the foure hundred yeere of the *Hegira*, *Elcain* was Chalifa in Cairaoan, whose Captaine *Gebour* conquered vnto him Barbary, Numidia, and as farre as Sus Westward: and after being employed in the East, subdued Egypt and Syria. Hee, for securing himselfe and his Army, built Cairo. After this he sent to his Lord *Elcain* to come thither in person, assuring him, That the Caliphs of Bagdat was not able to abide his presence and puissance. *Elcain* listening to *Gebour*, appointed a Lieutenant in Cairaoan, and went to Cairo. But his Lieutenant of Cairaoan rebelled and offered his obedience to the Chalifa of Bagdat, who therefore gaue him large Priuiledges, and made him King of all Africa. *Elcain* in these Straits knew not which way to turne him, till by counsell of his Secretary he tooke this course. The Arabians at that time were exceedingly multiplyed, insomuch that the Country otherwise barren, could not sustaine them and their Cattell. To these hee giue leaue to passe into Africa, paying for euery Poll a Duckat, and taking an oath of them, to bee enemies to his Rebell. These in short time sacked Tripolis and Cabis, and after eight moneths siege, Cairaoan also, and remayned Lords of Africa, till *Ioseph* the first, King of Marocco, who giue aide to the Kinsmen of that Rebell, wonne the Cities from the Arabians, which still kept possession of the fields. The Lord of Cairaoan fled Westward, and reigned in Bugia, and the parts adioyning; and others of his kindred ruled in Tunis, till the Kings of Marocco swallowed all; that City being built presently after the Arabians had destroyed this, in the yeere foure hundred twenty foure of their *Hegira*, as *Leo* [d] reckoneth. Cairaoan [e] hath in it an ancient Temple, and Colledge of Priests. Hither the great men among the Moores and Numidians are brought to be buried; hoping by the Prayers of those Priests to climbe to Heauen. For this cause (*Boterus* saith) they enter into this City vnshod, with great reuerence.

d *Leo l.2.*
e *Surius comment.*

The Arabians haue filled Africa with themselues, their Armes, Arts, and Language. Arabike Letters, as [f] *Postellus* affirmeth, were borrowed of the Chaldees; and first with *Mahomet* and his Law, began to bee called Arabike. Hee findeth in the same, I know not what Cabalistical Mysteries, yeelding more certaine predictions, then from the Heauens, or Oracles; and is much studied (he saith) in Tunis, Marocco, and Cairo.

f *Postel. de Orig.*

Tripolis of Barbary (for there is another of that [a] name in Syria, so called, because the Arcadians, Tyrians, and Sidonians inhabited it) was so named of three Cities, whose Colonies planted it, *Abrotonum*, and *Tophia*, and *Leptis magna*: or as [b] others, Cesa, or Taphra, or Oea, Sabrada, and Leptis. It was built by the Romans, conquered by the Gothes, and after by the Saracens. And after the destruction thereof, the Africans built a new Tripolis, wherein were many faire Temples, Colledges for Students, and Hospitals. Corne is alway deare, because their fields are Sand. [c] It was subiect vnto the King of Tunis, till the King of Fez carried away the King of Tunis prisoner. At which time the Genouese Fleet of twenty Sayle tooke Tripolis, and sold it to the Fezan for fifty thousand Duckats. But the Kings of Tunis recouered it after. *Zacharias* being King, played the Tyrant, and therefore was expelled, and a certaine Citizen was aduanced to the Throne; who at first gouerned modestly, but declining to tyrannie was murdered: And a Courtier of Prince *Abubacer*, who had made himselfe an Heremite, was forced to be their King, who ruled Tripolis, till *Ferdinando* sent *Peter Nauarre*, who came thither in the Euening, and the next day tooke it: and the King remayned captiue till *Charles* the first freed him. *Charles* gaue the Citie to the Knights of Malta, whom the Turkes [d] dispossessed by force, *Anno* 1551. and there haue their Beglerbeg or Vice-roy to this day. This was one and forty yeeres after *Nauarre* had taken it.

a *Plin.l.5.c.20.*

b *Solin.c.36. Draudius. Martin. del Rio.*

c *Io.Leo.l.5.*

d *Nic.Nicolay l. 1.c.18. G.out Ben. O. Tripolis read T.Sanders in Hab.to.2.p.1.*

The Kings of Tunis liued in great delicacie among their women, Musicians, Players, and such like, committing the gouernment to the *Munasid*, or high Steward, and other Officers. When he cals for a Musician, he is brought in hood-winked like a Hawke. The Inhabitants are exceeding prodigall in Perfumes. They haue a compound called [e] *Lhasis*, one ounce whereof being eaten, causeth laughing dalliance, and makes one as it were drunken, and marueilously prouoketh to lust. In the Kingdome of Tunis is placed the Lake Tritonia, where *Minerua* is said to haue shewed her selfe the Inuenter of Spinning, and of Oyle, and therefore worshipped.

e *Lhasis.*

Ezzab is the most Easterly part of the Tunetan Kingdome, the chiefe Prouince whereof is Mesrata. The Inhabitants are rich, and pay no Tribute. There grow Dates and Oliues, and they traffique with the Numidians, to whom they carry the Wares which they buy of the Venetians. The Great Turke swayeth with his *Ottoman* Scepter, at this present, this Kingdome of Tunis, and all Africa, from *Belle de Gomera*, to the Red Sea (except that little which the Spaniard hath.) At this day they [f] are Mahumetan, and haue beene about these nine hundred yeeres past, from the time of *Hucha*. The Inhabitants of the Cities differ much from the Mountayners and ruder Rustickes. For they are studiois, especially in matters of their Law, as in times past they were also in Philosophy and the Mathematickes. But these last fiue hundred yeeres their Princes and Doctors haue prohibited many Sciences, as Astrologie and Philosophy: according to the Mahumetan custome they vse much washing and resorting to the Temples. They are very faithfull in their promises, and exceeding iealous. They goe through the World as Merchants, and in many places are entertayned as Readers and Masters in diuers Sciences, and are well esteemed in Egypt, Æthiopia, Arabia, Persia, India, Turkie. The younger sort yeeld much reuerence to their Elders and Parents: and will not hold discourse of loue, or sing loue-songs, in their presence. But these Citizens are very proud and reuengefull. The Lords esteeme more of their beasts, then of their common people. The Country people in the fields and mountaynes liue hardly in labour and want. They are beastly, theeuish, ignorant, vnfaithfull. Their women before they bee married, may liue as wantonly as they list: yea, the father maketh hatefull loue to the daughter, and the brother is [g] vnloueingly louing to the sister. The Numidians are trayterous, homicides, theeues, and for reward, will doe any thing. Such also are the Libyans; without any kind of Letters, Faith, or Law, without Heauen or Earth; liuing (if that may be called a life) like wild beasts, for ignorance; like Deuils, for wickednesse; like Dogges, for pouerty. These things reporteth *Leo* of them, who liued among them: which may prouoke vs to thankefulnesse to that Great God, who hath giuen Vs such abundance for body and soule, in things present and future, temporall and eternall.

f *Leo.l.1.*

g *φιλόφιλος ἀφιλος. Bas.Ep.*

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Kingdome of Tremisen, Algier, and other places, anciently called Mauritania Cæsariensis.

10

§. I.

Of Tremisen, and of the ancient Maurusij.

THe Kingdome of Telensin or Tremisen, [a] beginning Westward from the Riuer of Zha and Moluia; Eastward, it bordereth on the *Great Riuer*; Southward, vpon the Desart of Numidia; and Northward, vpon the Mediterran Sea. It was by the Romans called *Mauritania Cæsariensis*: the name came of the Inhabitants called *Mauri*, and of the Greekes, *Μαυρόποι*: some say [b] of their
20 colour, because it is obscure and darke. They were supposed to come hither first with *Hercules* out of India. More likely it is that they [c] descended of *Phut*, the sonne of *Cham*, *Gen.10.6.* *Plinie* mentions a Riuer named Fut in these parts, descending from *Atlas*. *Salust* saith [d] they came with *Hercules*, who being dead in Spaine as the Africans report, his Armie being gathered of many Nations, was diuersly diuided. The Medes, Armenians and Persians of that number, sayled into Africa, of which the Persians dwelt neere the Sea, their ships with the keeles turned vpwards serued them for houses, and mixed themselues with the Getuli, entitling themselues Numidians. The Libyans adioyned themselues to the Armenians, and to the Medi, whom by corruption of Language they called *Maori*. Thele Getulians and Libyans, he saith, were before very rude, wandring vp and downe without Law
30 or Ciuility, liuing like beasts, lying and feeding on the ground: which testimony of *Salust*, *Mela* in like words confirmeth. But of these and other African people, lee them which please learne of that Author, and of such as haue written Notes vpon him, as *Oraterus*, *Glareanus*, *Rimius*, *Ciacconius*, *Putschius*, and others, *Vitruuius* [e] nameth Mauritania, Mauruſia. *Ortelius* [f] testifieth, That in ancient Coines it is read Mauretania, and so [g] *Tacitus* readeth. *Ptolemey* diuideth it into *Mauritania Cæsariensis*, which [h] *Victor Vticensis* calleth *Mauri*, and Tingitania. [i] *Pliny* ascribes this diuision to *Caligula*; *Dion*, to *Claudius Cæsar*: of whom it was firnamed *Cæsariensis* of the Mother Citie *Cæsarea*, where hee planted a Roman Colony, before called Iol, the Royall Seat of *Iuba*, a man famous, for that hee first reigned ouer both these Mauritania's; but more famous for his Learning, whereby he still liueth in the learned
40 Monuments of *Pliny* and others; Authour of much of our African report. Hee in his childhood was led in triumph at Rome; his father [k] *Iuba*, the successour of *Bochus*, had before slaine himselfe in the Ciuill Warres. *Augustus* restored him to his Fathers Kingdome, to which he left his sonne *Ptolemey*, borne of the daughter of *Antonius* and *Cleopatra*, whom *Caligula* slue, and then diuided Mauritania into two Prouinces, whereof this is called, as is said, *Cæsariensis*, of the Colonie of *Claudius Cæsar*. That which *Procopius* [l] hath written of the originall of these *Maurusij*, as he termes them, although in our first Booke mentioned, here also may seeme to deserue Relation.

When *Iosua* or *Iesus*, the sonne of *Nun* or *Naue*, had inuaded the Land of Canaan, the people fled into Egypt, and there multiplying, pierced into African people, replenishing with people all
50 that Coast, vnto the Pillars of *Hercules*, vsing a semi-Phœnician Dialect; For all the Seacoast from Sidon to Egypt, was anciently called Phœnicia: They built the Towne Tinge in Numidia, where they erected two Pillars of white stone neere a great Fountayne, wherein was ingrauen in Phœnician Letters, *Wee flee from the face of Iesus the Thiefe, the Sonne of Naue*. These are supposed the first Inhabitants of Africa, and for that cause *Antæus* their King, which encountred in single combate with *Hercules*, was said to bee the Sonne of the Earth. Afterwards, when the Phœnicians came hither with *Dido*, they were here receiued for kindreds sake, and permitted to build Carthage; which after grew so mighty, that it subdued and expelled the *Maurusij* themselues. The Romans made the Carthaginians, and other Africans Tributaries, and caused the *Maurusij* to inhabit the furthest parts of Africa: but in
60 processe of time, they obtayning many victories against the Vandals, seated themselues in Mauritania, till *Iustinian* remooued them. Thus farre *Procopius*. *Paulus Diaconus* [m] recordeth also the same History, saying that he sayth, the Egyptians would not receiue them, and there-

a Ia.Leo l.4. Magimus. Beter. Dion. Niger. Strab.l. 7.
b Μαυρος obscurus.
c Arius Mont. in apparatu. Tremel & Iun.
d Saluit.bell. Iugurth.
e Vitruuius l.8. cap.3.
f Ortel.Thesaur.
g Cornel. Tacit. hist.l.2.
h Victor Persecutionis l.3.
i Plin.l.5. cat.c.2.
k Cæsar comm. de bello ciuili Africanus l.1. Oriusiad c.16. R.Voiater.l.12.
l Procop de bello Persico & Vandalicis.
m Paulis Diaconi instituionum.

therefore they passed into Africa. The *Mauruſij* in the time of *Iuſtinian* were deſtroyed, and captiued in ſuch multitudes, that a Mauruſian ſlaue was valued at the price of a sheepe. The Author of this was *Salomon*, an Eunuch, according to a Propheſie which they had amongſt them, that one without a beard ſhould deſtroy them. But, captiuity could not much empare their happineſſe, whoſe very freedome was miſery. [o] For they liued in ſmall baſe cottages, expoſed to the Summer Sunnes, and Winter ſnowes, ſleeping (except a few of the better ſort) on the bare ground, alway wearing the ſame garment, howſoeuer the ſeaſon differed, and that torne and ragged: wanting bread and all other neceſſaries, neither grinding nor boyling that Corne they had. Thus miſerable were their bodies, and their ſoules more. For they had neither *feare of God, nor reuerence of Men*, nor reſpect of pledge, nor regard of oath, nor peace with any, but where feare conſtrained them. They had their women Propheteſſes, which diuined by their Sacrifices; a thing vnlawfull for their Men to attempt. Of the numbers of their wiues they bragged, that [p] the Chriſtians which had but one wife, might feare the loſſe of their children, they which might haue fifty wiues, need not miſdoubt Iſſue and Poſteritie. And yet they were ſo many wars brought to ſmall numbers, and a few Tribes or Families.

o *Precop. Eudem Cuiius Rhod. l. 1. c. 18.* p *In Epiſtola ad Salomonem.*

[q] *Leo* ſayth, that after the Romanes were expelled, the ancient Gouernours called *Beni Habdalguad* of the Family of *Magraua* repoſſeſſed theſe parts; who were after diſpoſſeſſed by *Ghamrazen*, Sonne of *Zeiyen*, whoſe Poſterity reigned here almoſt three hundred and eightie yeeres. But they were much vexed by the Kings of Fez, and Tunis. It was in later times called the Kingdome of Telenſin, or of Tremiſen, ſtretching in length from Eaſt to Weſt three hundred and eighty miles, in breadth not aboue fiue and twenty. The Kings could neuer ſatisfie the Numidians couetiſe, whoſe friendſhip they haue with great coſt ſought. It hath two frequented Hauen-townes, Oram and Merſalcabir, both taken and holden by the Spaniards. They were taken in the time of *Ferdinando* King of Spaine; for which cauſe *Abuchemmen* the Teleſinſin King was expelled by his owne Subiects, and *Abuzeiyen* placed in his roome, which he could ſcarcely warme, before he was ſlaine by *Barbaruſſa* the Turke, who conquered this Kingdome. [r] But *Abuchemmen* ſought to *Charles* the fift for aide, by whoſe helpe he recouered his Kingdome, and payed a Tribute to the Emperour. But *Habdulla* his Succeſſor detayned the Tribute, and ſubmitted himſelfe vnto *Sobman* the Great Turke. *Algier* remayned to *Barbaruſſa*.

q *Leo l. 4.*

r *Anno* 1515.

§. II.

Of BARBARVSSA; *of Algier and the parts adioyning.*

[s] His *Barbaruſſa* or *Barbaroſſa*, was a meane fellow of baſe condition, who in his youth ſold Cheeſes in Spain for his liuing, & by his induſtry attained to great matters. There were [t] of them two Brethren, born at Mytilene in *Leſbos*, their Mother a Chriſtian, their Father a Renegate Grecian, *Horneum Barbaruſſa*, and this *Hariadenus Barbaruſſa*. They firſt ſtole a Galliot, and ſo committing themſelues to Sea, by Piracy vnder *Camales*, a Turkiſh Pirate, they grew rich: and from one Galley, came to haue a Nauie of their owne, with which they ſcoured the Coaſts of Barbary. At the ſame time [u] two brethren contended for the Kingdome of Algier, one of which requeſted ayde of *Horneum*, who ſo helped him againſt his brother, that he helped himſelfe to the Kingdome, by the murther of the King his Patron and Alley, which he did not long enioy, being taken and ſlaine of the Spaniards, and his head ſent into Spaine. But his Brother *Hariadenus* ſucceeding him, became mighty both by Sea and Land, to the great dammage both of the Moreſ and Chriſtians; and *Soliman* moued by his fame, ſent for him, and made him Admirall of all the Turkiſh Seas, and Sea forces, vnder whom hee grew dreadfull, not to theſe parts of Barbary alone, which he ſubiected to the Turke, but to thoſe Countries of Chriſtendome which are waſhed with the Mediterran: euen Rome it ſelfe quaking for feare of a ſecond *Hannibal*, who after ſo many ages ſhould by Sea from Africa auenge the angry Ghoſt of old Carthage.

s *Menſ. Coſmog. lib. 6.*

t *Knolls p. 625.*

u *Surij comm. in Annum* 1534 *P. Iouius lib.* 33.

In the yeere 1538. the Pope, Emperour, and Venetians, had with ioynt forces ſet forth a Nauy of aboue two hundred and fifty Sayle againſt him, but by mutuall diſcords the wonted aduantage of the Turkes againſt the Chriſtians) they made themſelues both ſport and ſpoyle to this Turkiſh Pyrat. The Sea could no longer endure the ſucceſſe of this Barbarian, but mad to ſee the Chriſtians vnchriſtian madneſſe, and vnwilling to ſubmit his proud waues to the baſe chtaldome of this baſe Turke, ſwelling with indignation, conſpired with the Neighbour Element, which pretended equall quarrell for ſo often darkening his light, and poyſoning his breath with thoſe helliſh ſmokes, and for vſurping thoſe thunders, which had wont to

to be the ayrie priuiledge of his middle Regions: these both agreed in their disagreeing, with tempestuous furie to spoile the Spoilers: the windes from the Acroceraunian Hills, and the Seas on the Dalmatian shore, so girt in the Turkes, with their equill vnequall siege, that twentie thousand of them were captiued and shut vp in *Neptunes* prisons, to become goode to his Familie; and the new Conquerors on euery shore, made their markets of Turkish commodities, and by wracks testified to the Earth, that they had wrecked themselues on her and their enemies. And yet did *Barbarussa* recouer himselfe by new forces, and hauing won Rhegium, came to Ostia, where he rode three dayes; the Romanes trembling meanewhile, and readie to leaue Saint *Peter* alone to *locke out* the Turkes if they came. So much more fortunate were his proceedings, then of *Haly Bassa*, who in the fight at Lepanto, lost his life and Naute, whereof * eightie fell to the Seas share, and an hundred and thirtie saile to *Don Iohn* and his Partners; the greatest blow that euer the Turke at Sea receiued, and had the greatest a *Homer* to sing it. But me thinkes I feele some *Cymbius* pulling me by the eare, and asking if the Pirats haue robbed me of my *Religion*, the most proper subiect of my Discourse. Truly that irreligious Crue, while they seeke to win other things, care not to lose that. But this Algier hauing beene of old, and still continuing a receptacle of Turkish Rearers, could not be passed ouer, especially in these Piratical times, without some obseruation, being all to the gate, where by the Turkish forces first entred into Barbarie. b *Iohn Leo* writeth a little other wise of *Barbarussa* and Algier.

The Moores call this Citie Gezeir, the Spaniards Algier: and of old was called Mesgana of that African Familie which founded it. It containeth c about foure thousand Families: the buildings very sumptuous; Innes, Bath-stones, and Temples very beautifull: euery Occupation hath a seuerall place by it selfe. It hath adioyning Playnes very pleasant and fertile, one whereof is fiue and fortie miles long, and almost thirtie broad. For many yeeres it was subiect to the King lome of Telensin: but hearing that Bugia was gouerned by a King, they submitted themselues to him, paying him a Tribute, otherwise in manner free. Then did they build themselues Gallies, and molested with Piracies the Spanish Ilands of Majorica, Minorica, and Ieuiza. *Ferdinando* therefore prouided an Armada against them, and built a Fort within shot of the Towne: whereupon they requested peace, and promised Tribute. But *Barbarussa*, when *Ferdinando* was dead, was sent for by the Citizens, and made Captaine ouer all their Forces. Hee soone after murthered *Selim Etteemi*, an Arabian Prince, which had beene created Gouernour of Algier; when Bugia was taken by the Spaniards: and possessed himselfe of the gouernment, and there coyned money, calling himselfe King: the neighbouring people yeelding him obedience and tribute. This was the beginning of *Barbarussas* greatnesse: and at the most part hereof *Leo* was present, and lodged in his house which had beene Embassadour from Algier to Spaine, from whence he had brought three thousand books written in Arabike. And whiles I was at Tunis, I heard that *Barbarussa* was slaine at Telensin, and his brother d *Cairadin* succeeded. It was told me also, that the Emperour *Charles* the first had sent two armies to surprise Algier, the first whereof was destroyed in the Playne, the second slaine, and made slaues by *Barbarussa*, in the yeere of the *Hegira* 922. Thus farre *Leo*. In the yeere 1541. e *Charles* himselfe with his Imperiall Naute passed the Seas, to like both purpose and effect, more ouer-comming himselfe in the patient bearing his losses, then his enemies whom he sought to assaile. He was mouued to this Expedition by the complaints of his Subiects, against the Turkish Pirats, which vnder *Asanaga*, *Barbarussa's* Lieutenant, infested all those Seas. But the tempestuous weather both at Land and Sea disappointed him, and after the losse of many, both men and ships, was forced to returne, and to make roome for his Souldiers, caused his Horses (their gallant breede, notwithstanding) to be cast ouerboord. Thus doth Algier f still continue a sinke of Pirats; and now, saith *Magnus*, there are in it not many lesse then fiue and twentie thousand Christian slaues, which in likelyhood at this time are increased.

Tripoli is also a seate of a Turkish Viceroy or Beglerbeg, and of Turkish Rouers. In the Kingdome of Telensin is the Desart of Angad, where is rare store of Roes, Deere, and Ostriches, Arabian Theeues and Lions. The Castle of Izli was sometime stored with Inhabitants, and stately walled. Since, it was inhabited with Religious persons, much reuerenced by the Kings of Telensin, and the Arabians, which giue free entertainment for three dayes vnto all Trauellers. A little off runneth a Riuer, out of which they water their fields, which else would yeeld them no fruit. *Guagida* betwixt two stoules had vnquiet sitting, paying tribute both to the Kings of Telensin, and the Arabians. *Ned Roma* was built by the Romanes, as the name testifieth, for *Ned* signifieth Like; and like it was, if Historiographers faile not, vnto Rome. Here, and at Tebecrit dwelt great store of weauers. *Hareseol* was sometime famous, but being destroyed by a King and Patriarch of Cairaoan, it bequeathed, as it seemeth, the greatnesse thereof to Telensin, which after grew in renowme. This Towne giues name to

* *Knolles* saith foure sinke; an hundred threescore and one Gallies, and sixtie Gallions taken, pag 883.

Michael Iselt, Cons in Ap. 1571 a King lamer in his Poem of *Lepanto*.

b *Io. Leo*, l.4.

c It hath now exhiste thousand persons, as *Botero* affirmeth, and by report now exceedes.

d This was *Hirladin* the Turkish Admirall.

e *Nic. Villagagnon de hos expedit. Sutis Comm. in Anno* 1541. Of *Charles* his African exploits *See Sandoval, Ranzanus, Columbus Stella, Nic. Mamerantus, &c.*

f Algier is described by *G. B.* in his *Cit. Orb. Ter.*

to this Kingdome. When *Abu Teesin* raigned, it had in it sixteene thousand Families. *Ioseph* King of Fez besieged it seuen yeeres together, and almost famished them: but he being slaine by treason, they found victuals enough in their enemies campe (which they assailed and spoiled) for their relieife. Fortie yeeres after, *Abulhesen* King of Fez after thirtie monethes siege tooke it, and beheaded their King. Here are many and beautifull Temples, having their Mahumetan Priests and Preachers. Likewise here are fiue Colledges most sumptuously built by the Kings of Telensin and Fez, curiously wrought with musicke worke, for the Arabian Muses and Students, which haue their maintenance there. Their Bathes and Innes I omit. A great part of this Citie is inhabited with Iewes, distinguished by their yellow Turbants from the other Citizens, which being very rich, in the yeere of the *Hegira* 923. were robbed and brought to beggerie. The Turkes g are now Lords thereof, betweene whom and *Charles* the fift, who had vndertaken their protection, the Citie is much impayred, as also by the warres betwixt the Serifte and the Turke. *Barbarussa* subiected it. Batha is a great Citie, or rather was such: now ruined by warres. Not farre hence in *Leo's* time kept a famous Heremit, much esteemed for his holinesse: who in short time grew so rich in Horses and other Cattell, that none in that Region were comparable to him. He payd nothing, nor any of his to the King, or to the Arabians, because they supposed him a Saint. I was told by his Disciples (saith *Leo*) that the tenth of his Corne is eight thousand bushells a yeere. h He hath fiue hundred Horses and Mares, ten thousand small Cattell, and two thousand Oxen, besides that, he hath yeerly sent him from diuers parts of the world, of almes and offering, betweene foure and fiue thousand duckats. His fame is spred ouer Asia and Africa, his disciples are fiue hundred, which dwell with him, and liue at his charge, to whom hee enioyneth neither penance nor labour, but to reade ordinarie prayers: and giues them some names of God to obserue in their prayers, which they are to mumble so many times a day: for which cause multitudes resort to him to be his disciples, which after such instruction he sends home againe. He hath an hundred Tents, some for Strangers, some for Shepheards, and others for his Familie. This good and lustie Hermit hath foure wiues, and many slaues, and by them many sonnes and daughters gallantly attyred. His children also haue wiues and children, in so much that the whole Familie of this Heremit and his sonnes exceeded fiue hundred. Hee is honoted of the Arabians, and the King of Telensin is afraid of him. I, being desirous to know him, was entertayned of him three dayes, and supped with him euery night in secret roomes, where hee shewed me among other things, bookes of Magicke and Alchymie: and would haue proued to me that Magicke was a true Science: whereby I thought him to be a Magician, because I saw him so much honored, and yet vsed neither sayings nor doings, but those Inuocations of God by certayne names. Thus farre *Leo, lib. 4.*

g *Gl. Rot. Ben.*

h A rich Heremite.

Oran is subiect i to Spaine, taken by *Peter Navarre*, 1509. It hath ten thousand Families. The Turkes in vaine assaulted it, *An.* 2563. Their Pirattes procured this Spanish thraldome: vnto which Mersalcabir, a most famous Hauen, is also subiect.

i *Oran.*

Tegdemt k is as the Arabian name signifieth, Ancient. It sometime was famous, and abounded with men of learning and Poets. But hee which would further bee informed of the Cities of this Kingdome, let him reade *Leo*. The people of Bresch vse to paint a blacke crosse on their cheeke, and another vpon the palme of their hand. The fame is obserued of diuers others, which yet know not the reason thereof, being Mahumetans. The storie saith, that the Gothes inuading and ruling these parts, proclaymed freedom from tribute to all such as would become Christians: a badge of which Christianitie was this crosse, still kept, now their Religion is lost.

k *Tegdemt.*

Concerning their marriages in these parts, we reade l that the Bride is carryed, not on her feet, but in the armes of two yong men, with her eyes closed, and being marryed, is in like sort, without stirring her eyes or feet, conueighed to the Bridegroomes house; where she enters first with the right foote, in token of prosperitie (the left foote first touching ground, would portend sinister successe, as proceeding from a certayne Constellation and ineuitable destinie) with musicke shee is entertayned and conducted to the Bride-chamber, where shee sits downe, as taking possession of her house, all the other women standing about her: after which shee is led with great pompe by women to the Hall, the men accompanying the Bridegroome to another roome. The Bride is set on a bed couered with a white veile, the women standing by, and many gifts and presents are offered to her: two women being her instructers in the rites and ceremonies which shee is to obserue, called *Magira*, to whom the Bride giueth the money which is offered. The men which offer, if they bee of neere kinne, may vpon request see her face, her eyes still closed. Neither may shee speake, but by those *Magira* is shifted and gallantly adorned, and brought to banquet with the women. They haue a dinner and a supper, furnished with exceeding varietie of dishes, of Honey and Raysins diuersly compounded: their flesh is not tasted before oyle be powred on it. There are neere as many

l *Catechef. Mysagogic. P. G.*

many pots boyling, as guests, and much superstition is obserued in killing their flesh towards the Sunne, with pronouncing certaine wordes, or else all is cast on the dung-hill. The Bride being conueyed to bed, may not signifie any griefe for smart or losse there sustayned. The next morning before day, the husband riseth, not saluting his wife, and taking a pot for water, and a vessell for meate, at his returne beates vpon the doore with a stone many times; till thee (then first) speakes to him, and ordering the faid meate and water, beginnes to looke to her houshold-charge. The *Magna* presently come and congratulate her tait nights disliance, and desire issue thereof: and then cut her haire hanging downe on her backe, euen with her neck, that it should not hinder her husbands embraces.

10 The gouernment of these parts is, as is said, Turkish. The *Beglerbeg* hath chiefe rule, but the *Diuano* hath chiefe power of Iudgements and Iurisdiction: The *Corasaw* or Captaine of the Ianizaries, being in many matters as great as the *Beglerbeg*. The *Beglerbegs* of Algier and Tunis make their principall profits of their places (which they hold three yeers, hauing first bought them at a deare rate) by their piracies, which with toynt consent they exercise on these Seas, all in manner being fish that comes to net, if they meete them conueniently, notwithstanding any league or peace holden with the Grand Signior. They also giue entertainment to such Pirats of other places, as resort to them, either to sell their ill-gotten goods, or to loyne their strength with them. As of late [m] *Danziker* and *Warde* haue beene famous in this infamie; the first, after his seruice with them and for them, receiuing his reward, by 20 them suddenly killed at Tunis (where he was knowne, notwithstanding his disguising himselfe, with purpose to haue surprised their fleet:) the other (a shame to our Country, of which he was) grew so rich by his Piracies, that he shewed at one time to (the Author of these reports) *Iohn Pontoffe*, a bagge of Iewels, containing almost halfe a bushell, besides his other purchases: And at last, that the end might manifest the wickednesse of these proceedings, [n] he became an Apostata and Renegado from his faith; and soone after (as some haue reported, for others say he is still aliue, and Captaine of the Turkes Gallies) dyed at Tunis: leauing his goods (for his goodnesse he had left before) vnto the Turks, his body vnto a forten sepulchre, and his soule (let pirats and robbets (if they think they haue any soule) say whither.

Algier was by *Barbarossa* subiected to the Turke, about the yeere 1534. Tunis *An.* 1574. 30 Three and twentie yeeres after that Tripoli, in Barbarie, another Cage of like birds, and seat of a *Beglerbeg*, was taken from the Knights of Malta by *Sinan Bassa*. These Kingdomes the Turke hath in Africa, besides the great kingdome of Egypt, and what hee hath taken from *Prester Iohn*.

In Egypt [o] are said to be an hundred thousand *Timariots*, or Horse-mens fees, which for that tenure of their Land, without any charge to the great Turke, are to serue where it pleaseth him to employ them. In this kingdome of Algier are fortie thousand.

m Pirats: of these two Pirats there is a speciall Treatise, set forth 1609.

n Many *Christian* women of these nomes turn from that faith (which they neuer had but in profession) to professe themselues (for hell) i the Iesh.

o *Kyolls.*

CHAP. X.

40 *Of the Kingdome of Fez, part of Mauritania Tingitana.*

§. I.

Of the Poeticall and Historicall Antiquities, and part of Temesma.

50 MAuritania Tingitana (so called of *Tingis*, now Tanger, at the mouth of the Streits) is by *Ptolemeye* [a] bounded on the West, with the Westerne and Atlantike; on the North, with the Mediterran Seas; on the East, with the Riuer [b] Moluia or Malua, which diuideth it from *Cæsariensis*; on the South, with the inner Nations of Libya. *Niger* [c] saith, it was after called *Setinensis*, of the Citie Setia: more truly, *Sitiphensis*, of Sitiphis, which *Procopius* saith was the mother Citie of Tingitana. In this Prouince are now the famous kingdomes of Fez and Marocco. [d] The ancient Inhabitants besides the *Mauruso* (of which wee haue spoken) were [e] the *Massæsuli*, *Autololes*, *Baouuri*, and the *Gaetulians* which liued here, and in other parts of Africa, as the Tartars doe in Asia, and the Arabians in Africa, remouing their dwellings (if Tent-wandring may bee so called) as their pastures faile them. So *Silius* writeth 60 of them:

f *Nulla domus, penitus habitant, migrare per arua*
Mos, aiij, errantes circumuectare Penates.

House they haue none; but wandring still in Waynes,
They cart their houshold-gods about the Playnes.

The

a *Ptol. l. 4. c. 1.*

b *Plinie* calls this Riuer *Malaua.*

c *Dom. Mag. Aph. Cosm. 1.*

d *Gi. Bot. Ben.*

e *Plin. l. 5. c. 2.*

f *Silius, lib. 1.*

The westerly point of Mauritania *Pomponius* beginneth at the Promontorie, called of their
g *Pompon. Mela lib. 2. cap. 5. cum Olinderii notat.*
store of Vines, *Ampelusia*, & now *Cabo de Cantero*, as *Olinarius* affirmeth. In it was a Caue sacred to *Hercules*, and beyond the same, Tingi, supposed to bee built by *Antaus*, for proofe whereof they shew his Target made of an Elephants hide, too huge and vnweildy for any man of later times, and holden in great veneration. Next to this Tingi (which gaue name to the Countrey, after by *Claudius Cæsar*, who sent a Colonie thither, called *Tradutta Iulia*) was a high Mountayne called Abyla, to which on the Spanish coast was opposed Calpe, which two Hills bare the name of *Hercules* pillars; *Hercules* himselfe (if wee beleeue fabulous antiquitie) making there a passage to the Ocean and Mediterran Seas, for mutuall view and entertainment. They are now called Seuta on that side, and Gibraltar on this side. A little hence was *Iulia Constantia*, a Colonie of *Augustus*; and *Luxus*, a Colonie of *Claudius*. In this h was *Antaus* his Palace, and his combate with *Hercules*, and the Gardens of the *Hesperides*, which Iome (as is said) place neere Bernice. *Antaus*, if his legend bee true, was i threescore and foure cubits long, a cruell and inhospitall Tyrant, who in his encountring with *Hercules*, was three times hurled dead to the earth, and so many times by his mother (the Earth) reuiued: which *Hercules* perceiuing, held him vp in the Aire till he had strangled him. Whereby they intend, that the Sunne reuiueth the earth, signified by *Antaus* and *Hercules*, but with his excessiue heat doth kill it. The Hesperides were the daughters of *Hesperus*, brother of *Atlas*; *Ægle*, *Arethusa*, *Hesperiusa*. In their Gardens grew those golden apples (the downie of *Iuno* to *Iupiter*) kept by a Dragon, engendred of *Typhon* and *Echidna*, which had an hundred heads, and many voyces, attended by the Priest of the Hesperides: these *Hercules* fetched away. This was the poeticall tale; the truth whereof is said to bee, that the daughters of *Atlas* were by Pirats and Theeues, sent from *Busiris* King of Egypt, stolne; and redeemed by *Hercules*, who slue those theeues. These were borne to *Atlas* of *Hesperia*, daughter of *Hesperus* his brother, called therefore *Atlantides* and *Hesperides*, fixe in number. *Atlas* had an excellent kind of sheepe, with yellow fleeces, which for this exploit he bestowed on *Hercules*: and taught him also the knowledge of Astronomie: in regard of which Science, *Atlas* is said to haue borne vp the Heauens with his shoulders, and *Hercules* to haue vndertaken his burthen. Whereas *Natalis* k *Comes* placeth these gardens with *Plinie*, neere to Lixus, and yet nigh to Meroe and the Red Sea, betwixt which places is such a world of distance, it argueth how great errours great Schollers may fall into by want of that so-much-neglected studie of Geographie, without which, Historie that delectable studie is sicke of a halfe-dead palsie: one cause that hath mouued me to ioyne in my studies and in this worke, the Historie of *Time*, l with her manifold changes and chances and of *Place* together. Besides the Altar of *Hercules*, and wilde Oliues, there remayned nothing in *Plinies* dayes of that Hesperian garden. *Niger* m findes there a tree Mallow, twentie foote high, and aboue a fathom about. Of Mount Atlas they tell wonderfull tales, of the selfe-fertilitie thereof, the Inhabitants neuer seene by day, the desart-like silence, the fires therein shining by night, the musicke and misse-rule of the *Ægypanes* and *Satyres*, and the labours of *Hercules* and *Perseus* there. *Iohn Leo* shall better acquaint vs with the truth, then those fables of credulous antiquitie. Out of him therefore and other later writers, wee will take view of the present face of Africa, there being little that can bee said of their ancient Rites, more then is already obserued. The Romans brought hither their Language and Religion. The Vandals vnder *Genserichus* passing out of Spaine, made conquest of all in manner which the Romans had in Africa, of whose cruelties *Victor* n *Vicensis*, an eye-witnesse, hath written three bookes. The manifold battels and alterations of estate betwixt them, the Romans, Mauritanians, and others, *Procopius* o hath diligently recorded. It would bee harsh and tedious here to relate. The soyle, saith *Mela*, is more noble then the people: of the miraculous fertilitie whereof, *Dionysius* p *Halicarnassens*, *Munster*, *Boemus*, and others haue written, I know not how truly, That their corne yeelds an hundred fold encrease, and in some places an hundred and fiftie; That there are seene Vines as great as two men can fathom, and grape-clusters a cubit long, &c. It is q thought that Christian Religion was here preached in the Apostles time.

h *Natal. Comes Mythol. l. 7. c. 2.*
i *Some say threescore and ten, and that Serterius found him in his sepulchre of that length. I can easily beleeue both alike.*
k *Lib. 7. cap. 7.*
l *Chronologie and Geographie are the two eyes of Historie. Chytræus.*
m *Dom. Niger. Com. Apho. 1.*
n *Vict. Vicensis Persecutionis Vand.*
o *Procop. de Bello Vand.*
p *Dion. Halicar. lib. 1. Munst. Cosm. l. 6.*
q *Theatrum Arnold. Mermanni.*

Leauing those things of more age and vncertaintie, wee will come now to the kingdomes of Fez and Marocco, which haue beene of Saracenicall erection in this Prouince of Tingitana. r That of Fez stretcheth from Azamor to Tanger, and from the Atlantike Ocean to Muluia. This Riuer is the Easterne border, on the North it is washed with the Sea, on the South is the kingdome of Marocco, on the West, the Riuer Ommirabih. The Riuers Subu, Luccus, and others water it. Therein are numbred seuen Prouinces, Temesna, the Territorie of Fez, Azgar, Elhabet or Habat, Errif, Garet, and Chaus or Elchaus: euery of which, saith *Leo*, had in old time a seuerall Gouernour. Neither was the Citie of Fez the royall seat, but was built by a Schismaticall Rebell, in whose Familie the gouernment continued 150. yeeres. And then the *Marin* familie preuayling, gaue it first the title of a kingdome, setling their abode and strength therein.

r *Io. Leo, lib. 3. Gi. Bat. Ram. Magiaus.*

Temesna

Temesna beginneth at Ommirabih, thence stretching Eastward to Buragrag, betweene Atlas and the Ocean, 450. a playne Countrey, eightie miles in length, containing in it foure great Townes, besides three hundred Castles. In the yeere of the *Hegira* 323. *Chemim* the sonne of *Memol*, an Heremiticall Preacher, perswaded them to pay no tribute, nor yeeld subjection to Fez, because the Lords thereof were vniust. Hee bearing himselfe for a Prophet, in small time gate into his hand the Spirituall and Temporall Sword; holding the same by force and Armes. But after that *Ioseph* had built Marocco, hee fought by Catholike Doctors of the Mahumetane Religion, to reduce them from their Heresie, but they slew them, and with an Armie of fiftie thousand marched towards Marocco, to expell hence the House of *Luntuna*, but by this meanes brought destruction to themselues; *Ioseph* getting the better, and spoyling their Country, tenne moneths together, with great cruelte.

It is thought that a million of people by Famine, Sword, Rockes and Riuers, were consumed: and Temesna was left to bee inhabited of Wolues, Lyons, and Cium-Cats, a hundred and fiftie yeeres: at which time King *Mansor* gaue the possession of Temesna to certaine Arabians, who fiftie yeeres after were expelled by the Luntune Family, recouering the Kingdome from the House of *Mansor*; and after, the Marin Family preuayling, gaue it to the people of Zenete and Haora, in meede of their seruice, which they had done to the Marins against the King and Patriarch of Marocco. From which time they haue enioyed the same almost two hundred yeeres.

Anfa was a Towne of great Trade with the English and Portugals, and by these vtterly razed: and so the Arabians serued the next Citie *Mansora*. Nuchaila, sometimes famous for their plentie of Corne, of which it is recorded, that they would giue a Camels burthen for a paire of Shooes, hath now but a few bones left of her carkasse, namely, a piece of the wall, and one high Steeple, where the Arabians after they haue ended their Tilth, lay vp their instruments of Husbandrie, none daring to steale his neighbours tooles, in reuerence of a Saint of theirs, there buried.

Rebat, is a Towne furnished with Colledges, and Temples, the modell of Marocco. At Sella was King *Mansor* buried, where hee had built a stately Hospitall, and Palace, a beautifull Temple, and a Hall of Marble cut in Mosaike worke, with glasse-windowes of diuers colours, wherein hee and his Posterittie were buried. I saw, saith *Leo*, the Sepulchre, and copied out the Epitaphs of thirtie of them.

Madur Auwan, by the ruines testifieth her sometime proud buildings, Hospitals, Inns and Temples. In Thagia is visited the Sepulchre of a holy Man, which liued in the time of *Habdul Mumen* the Calif or Patriarch, who wrought great miracles against the Lyons, wherwith the Towne is much molested. *Ettedile*, a Mahumetane Doctor, wrote a Legend of his miracles, which *Leo* saith hee had read, and supposed that they were done either by Naturall or Diuellish Magicke. The Pessans after their Easter, yeerely resort to his Tombe, with such numbers of Men, Women and Children, and their Tents, that they seeme an Armie. It standeth from Fez an hundred and twentie miles, so that their going and returning in this Pilgrimage lasteth fifteene dayes. My Father carried mee yeerely thither when I was a Childe, and since, I haue beene there many times, by reason of many vowes which I made, being in danger of Lyons. Where Zarfa stood, the Arabians now m sow Corne.

m *Sesesell, vbi Troiafuit.*

The Territorie of Fez hath on the West the Riuer Buragard; the East, Inaven; on the North, Subu; and Atlas on the South. Sella was built by the Romans, sacked by the Gothes, subiect since to Fez. The buildings are of Mosaike worke, supported with Marble Pillars: euen the Shops are vnder faire and large Porches, and there are arches to part Occupations. All the Temples are beautifull. In this Towne the Genowaies, English, Flemings, and Venetians, vsed to trade. The Spaniards tooke it in the 670 of the *Hegira*, but lost it againe within ten dayes. Fanzara was destroyed by *Sabid*, who with certaine Arabians besieged Fez seuen yeeres together, and destroyed all the Villages in the Countrey about. *Mahmora* was made famous by the slaughter of the Portugals, whose bloud dyed the Sea three dayes together, blushing to see the barbarous Barbarian spill so much Christian bloud. *Leo* was there present, and numbreth the slaine Christians at ten thousand, besides the losse of their Ships and Ordnance, whereof the Moores tooke vp foure hundred great Brasse Peeces out of the Sea, in the yeere of the *Heg.* 921.

HONDIVS *his Map of the Kingdome of* Fez.

§. II.

Of the Citie of Fez, as it was in LEO'S *dayes, and the Customes of the Inhabitants.*

THe Citie Fez, or Fesse, was built in the time of *Aron* the Caliph, in the 185. yeere of the *Hegira*, or Mahumeticall computation. It had this [a] golden Title, because on the first day of the Foundation, there was found some quantitie of Gold. *Gasper Varerius* and *Aldrete* are of opinion, That the Riuer Phut (so called of the sonne of *Cham*, before mentioned) is this Riuer of Fez, by the Arabians thus altered: and that this Riuer gaue Name to the Region and the Citie; which opinion is also recited by *Leo*. The Founder was named *Idris*, *Arons* neere kinsman, to whom the Caliphaship was more due: For he was nephew of *Hali*, *Mahumets* cousin, who married [b] *Falerna*, daughter of *Mahumet*, and therefore both by Father and Mother of that kindred; whereas *Aron* was but in the halfe-blood, being nephew to *Habbus*, the vncle of *Mahumet*. Howbeit, both these Families were depriued of the Caliphate; and *Aron* by deceit [c] vsurped: For *Arons* Grandfather fained himselfe willing to transferre that dignitie to *Hali*, and caused the house of *Vmeue* to lose it; and *Habdulla Seffec* became the first Caliph, who persecuted the House of *Hali* openly, chasing some into Asia, and some into India. But one of them remayned in Elmadina, of whom (because hee was old and religious) he had no great feare. His two Sonnes grew in such fauour with the people, that they were forced to flee; and one being taken and strangled, the other, which

a Fez signifieth Gold, in Arabike; and so doth *Phaz* in Hebrew. *Vide Leo, Sanut. &c.*

b Elsewhere called *Fatima*.

c Of this, read our third booke: the difference seemeth to be more in names then truth.

which was this *Idris*, escaped into Mauritania; where hee grew in such reputation, that in short time he got both Swords into his hand, and dwelt in the Hill Zaron, thirtie miles from Fez, and all Mauritania payed him tribute. Hee dyed without issue, onely hee left his slaue called *Idris*. Hee succeeded in the Principalitie, and was brought vp vnder the discipline of a wards, encreasing in power, built on the East side of the Riuer a small Citie, of thee thousand Families. After his death, one of his sonnes built another Citie on the West side; both which Cities so encreased, that there was small distance betweene them. And a hundred and eighty
10 yeeres after, there arose ciuill Warres betwixt those two Cities, which continued a hundred yeeres. And as *Æsops* Kite serued the Mouse and Frog, so *Ioseph*, of the *Luntune* Family, apprehending this aduantage, tooke both their Lords, and slew them, and thirty thousand of the Citizens. He brake downe the walls which parted the two Cities, and caused many Bridges to be made, and brought them both to be one Citie, which he diuided into twelue Wards.

The Citie is now, or at least in *Leos* time was, both great and strong. It seemes, that Nature and Art haue played the Wantons, and haue brought forth this Citie the fruit of their dalliance: Or else they seeme Corriuals; both, by all kind Offices, seeking to winne her loue: So doth the Earth seeme to dance, in little Hillocks and pretie Vallies diuersifying the Soyle: so doth the Riuer disperse it selfe into manifold Chanels; no sooner entring the Citie, but it is di-
20 uided into two Armes, wherewith it embraceth this louely Nymph; and these subdiuided, as it were, into many Fingers, in variety of Water-courses, insinuating it selfe vnto euery Street and Member thereof: and not contented thus in publike to testifie affection, findes meanes of secret intelligence with his Loue by Conduit-pipes, closely visiting euery Temple, Colledge, Inne, Hospitall, (the speciall Chambers of his Spouse:) Yea, and almost euery priuate house; from whence, with an officious seruice, he carrieth the filth that might offend either sight or sent of his Bride; which still enjoying, he wooeth; and euer wooing, enjoyeth. Only in hot Seasons he hath a cold suit: for the Riuer is dry; but then he hath six hundred Fountaynes to speake for him in his absence. Neither is Art behind in his proffered courtesies, but still presents her with Mosaike workes, as Chaynes and Iewels to adorne her; with fine Brickes and
30 stones framed into most artificiall Fabricks, both louely for delight, and stately for admiration. The roofes of their houses are adorned with Gold, Azure, and other excellent colours, which are made flat, for the Inhabitants vse and pleasure; whose Houses are richly furnished, euery Chamber with a Presse, curiously paynted and varnished. And who can tell the exquisitenesse of the Portals, Pillars, Cisternes, and other parts of this Cities furniture? Which, if they be not now so excellent, as when *Leo* lifted here; yet, it is worth the sight, to looke vpon it with his eyes, as then it flourished, before the Court was remoued thence to Marocco, or the deuouring bellies of Time and Warre had impaired her Beauties. Once, let the Temples therein a while detayne your eyes; whereof there were in Fez, together with smaller Chappels, or Moschees,
about seuen hundred; fifty of which great and faire, adorned with Marble Pillars, and other
40 ornaments; the Chapiters thereof wrought with Mosaike and carued workes. Euery one had his Fountaines of Marble, or other Stones, not knowne in Italy. The floors are couered with Mats, closely joyned, and so are the walls a mans height lined therewith. Euery Temple hath his Steeple after the Mahumetan manner, whereon they, whose office it is, ascend and call the people at the appointed houres to Prayer: there is but one Priest thereunto, who (sayth their Seruice there, and hath charge of the reuenew of his Church, taking accounts thereof, to bestow it on the Ministers of the said Temple; namely, those which keepe the Lampes light in the night, the Porters, and them which cry in the night-time, to call them to Church. For lie which cryeth in the day-time, is onely freed from Tenths, and other Payments; otherwise, hath no Salarie or Stipend. There is one Principall, and (if wee may so termeit) Cathedrall
50 Church, called the Temple of *Carnuen*, so great, that it containeth in a circuit about a mile and halfe. It hath one and thirty Gates, great and high. The Roofe is a hundred and fifty Tulcan b yards long, and little lesse then eighty broad. The Steeple is exceeding high. The Roofe hereof is supported with eight and thirty Arches in length, and twenty in breadth. Round about are certayne Porches, on the East, West, and North, euery one in length forty yards, and in breadth thirty. Vnder which Porches, or Galleries, are *Magazines*, or Store-houses, wherein are kept Lampes, Oyle, Mats, and other necessaries. Euery night are lighted nine hundred Lamps; for euery Arch hath his Lamp, especially that row of Arches which extends through the mid-Quire, which alone hath a hundred and fifty Lamps; in which ranke are some great Lights made of Brasse, euery of which hath sockets for one thousand fiue hundred Lampes:
60 And these were Bels c of certayn Cities of Christians, conquered by Pessin Kings. About the walls of the sayd Temple within, are Pulpits of diuers sorts; wherein many learned Masters reade to the people such things as pertayne to their Faith and Spirituall Law. They begin a little

The sweet situation of Fez.

a This compasse is to bee vnderstood of all the Buildings.

b *Brccia di Toscana.*

c Bells were first found and founded *Anno* 870. by *Prisus* Duke of Venice. *Blond & Vagetii spicilegia.*

[d] *Vn hora digiorno.*

little after breake of day, and end at [d] one houre of the day. In Summer they reade not, but after foure and twenty houres, or Sun-set, and continue till an houre and halfe within night. They reach as well Morall Philosophie, as the Law of *Mahomet*. Priuate men reade the Summer-Lectures; onely great Clarkes may reade the other; which haue therefore a large stipend, and Bookes, and Candles, are giuen them. The Priest of this Temple is tyed to nothing but his *Mumpsimus*, or Seruice. Also he taketh charge of the Money and Goods which are offered in the Temple of Orphans, and dispenseth the reuenewes that are left for the poore. Euery Holy-day he dealeth to the poore of the Citie, Money and Corne, according as their necessitie is more or lesse. The Treasurer of this Church is allowed a Duckat a day. He hath vnder him eight Notaries, each of which haue six Duckats a moneth: other six Clarkes gather the Rents of Houses and Shops, which belong to the Church, retayning the twentieth part thereof for their wages. Moreouer, there are twenty Bayliffes of the Husbandry, that ouer-see the Labourers. Not farre from the Citie are twenty Lyme-Kils, and as many Brick-Kils, seruing for the reparations of the Temple, and the houses thereto belonging. The reuenewes of the Temple are * two hundred Duckats a day. The better halfe is layd out on the premisses. And if any Temple of the Citie or Moschee be without reuenew, they are hence furnished with many things; that which remaines, goeth to the common good of the Citie.

* This may be reckoned as old Rent with vs, which now may bee exceedingly improued: for *Leo* wrote this, *An.* 1526.

In the Citie are two principall and most stately Colledges of Scholiers, adorned with Mosaikes and carued worke, paued with Marble and Stones of Majorica. In each of them are many Chambers; in some Colledges are a hundred; in some more; and in some lesse. They were all built by diuers Kings of the *Marin* Family. One is most beautifull, founded by King *Abu Henon*. It is adorned with a goodly Fountayne of Marble, and a Streame continually running: there are three Cloysters, or Galleries, of incredible beautie, supported with eight square Pillars of diuers colours, the arches adorned with Mosaike of Gold and fine Azure. The Roofe is of carued worke. About the walls are inscriptions in Verse, expressing the yeere of the Foundation, and prayses of the Founder. The Gates of the Colledge are of Brasse, fairely wrought, and the doores of the Chambers carued. In the great Hall where they say their Prayers is a Pulpit, that hath nine stayres to it all of Iuorie and Ebonie. This Colledge cost the Founder 480000. Duckats. All the other Colledges in Fez hold some resemblance with this, and in euery of them are Readers or Professors in diuers Sciences prohibited by the Founders. In old time the Students were wont to haue their dyet and rayment allowed for seuen yeeres, but now they are allowed onely their Chamber; for the warres * of *Sabid* consumed their Possessions: So that now there remaines but little wherewith they maintayne their Readers; and of them, some haue two hundred Duckats, some a hundred yeerely, and some lesse. And there abide in the said Colledges onely a few Strangers maintayned by the Almes of the Citizens. When they will reade, one of the Auditors readeth a Text, and the Reader then readeth his Comments, & brings some exposition of his own, and explaineth the difficulties. And sometimes in his presence the Students dispute of that Argument which he handleth.

* *Bellona*, enemie to the Muses.

There are many Hospitals in Fez, not inferiour in building to the Colledges aforesaid. In them, strangers were entertayned three dayes at the common charge. But in the time of *Sabids* warre, the King sold their Reuenues. Now, onely Learned men and Gentlemen receiue entertainment, and poore persons reliefe. There is another Hospitall for diseased strangers, which haue their dyet, but no Phisicke allowed them. Here also Mad-men are prouided for. In this Hospitall, *Leo*, in his youth, had beene a Notarie.

There are in Fez a hundred Bath-stoues, well built, with foure Halls in each, and certaine Galleries without, in which they put off their cloathes. The most part of them pertaine to the Temples and Colledges, yeelding them a great rent. They haue a yeerely Festiuall, wherein all the seruants of the Bathes, with Trumpets and great Solemnitie, goe forth of the Town, and gather a wild Onion, which they put in a brazen Vessell, and bring it solemnely to the Hot-house doore, and there hang it vp, in token of good lucke. This, *Leo* thinkes to be some Sacrifice, obserued by the ancient Moores, yet remaining. Euery African Towne had sometimes their peculiar Feast; which the Christians abolished.

Innes heere are almost two hundred, built three stories high, and haue a hundred and twenty Chambers a piece, with Galleries afore all the doores. But here is no prouision of Bed or Board for Strangers. The Inne-keepers of Fez (in *Leo's* dayes) were all of one Family, called *Elchima*, attyred like women, shaue their beards, become womanish in their speech, yea degenerate euen to the Wheele and Spindle. They are so * odious (except to base villaines that resort thither) that the better sort of people will not speake to them; and may not enter the Temple, Burse, or Bath, nor into those Innes neare the great Temple, where Merchants are entertained. There are thousands of Mills, all almost pertaining to the Temples and Colledges reuenew. Each Trade in Fez hath a peculiar place allotted thereto, the principall whereof are next the great Temple; as Scriueners, Booke-sellers, &c. euery Trade by themselues.

* Infamous Inne-keepers.

The

The Christian captiues rest only vpon Fridayes; and eight other dayes in the yeere Festiual to the Moores. There are six hundred Fountaines walled about, the waters whereof are conueyed by Conduits to the Temples, or other places, because the Riuer is sometimes dry. They haue in Fez a Iudge for Criminal Causes, and another for Questions of Religion; a third, that deales in Matrimoniall Cases: From these there lyeth an Appeale to the high Aduocate.

The Iudges of *Mahomets* Law, in matters of conscience, haue no allowance for the same. Their Marriages are thus: When the Father of the Maide hath espoused her to her a Louer, they goe with their friends to Church, and haue with them two Notaries, which draw the Couenants agreed betwixt them, into writing. The Father bestowes a Dowrie or Portion of Money, Apparell, and such like; seldome, of Land. When the Bridegroome fetcheth her home, she is set in a Cabinet, couered with silke, and carried by Porters, accompanied with her kinsfolkes, and much Minstrelsie; and the Bridegroomes friends goe before with Torches, and her kinsmen after, toward the great Church. Then hee hasteth home, expecting his Bride in his Chamber; whom her Father, Brother, and Vncle, bring and deliuer to his Mother; and he setting his foot on hers, shuts the Chamber doore: at which a woman standeth, and receiueth of him a Napkin stayned; which sheweth to the Assembly, as a testimony of the Brides Virginitie: But if shee bee not found a Maide, shee is returned to her Friends with shame, and the guests goe home without their Feast. They hold great feasting also at the Circumcision of their male-children, which is the seuenth day after they are borne. The Barber or Circumciser is presented with gifts of all the inuited guests. Then followeth mirth and iollity. They vse dancings; but the women apart by themselues without men.

a The man neuer seeth his Bride before Marriage: but sends his Mother, or some other Woman, to see her; and vpon that report agreeth with the Father.

There is a remaynder of Holidayes instituted by the Christians, which themselues vnderstand not. On Christmas Euen they eat a Sallet made of diuers herbes, and seethe all kinds of Pulse which they feed vpon. On New-yeeres day, the children goe with Maskes on their faces to the houses of Gentlemen, and haue Fruits giuen them, for singing certaine Songs. On the Feast of Saint *Iohn Baptist*, they vse to make Bone-fires. They make a Feast called *Denrilla* (when their childrens teeth begin to grow) vnto other children. When a man dyes, the women put on Sack-cloth, and defile their faces with dirt. They call to them those wicked men in womens attire, which haue foure-square Drummes, to the sound whereof, they sing mournfull Dirges, in prayse of the dead party. At the end of euery Verse the women vtter most hideous shrikes and out-cries, tearing their haire, and beating their brests and cheekes, till they be all embrued with Bloud. And thus they continue seuen dayes, and then intermit their mourning forty dayes; after which space, they resume the same for three dayes, as before. But the better sort behaue themselues more modestly. At this time all the Widdowes friends come about her to comfort her, and send her diuers kindes of meats; for in the mourning-house they may dresse no meate at all, till the dead be carried out. The woman which loseth her Father, Brother, or Husband, neuer goes forth with the Funerall. At some Festiuals, the Youths of one Street will fight with Clubs against the Boyes of another Street, and sometimes betake them to other Weapons, and kill one another. Sometimes they vse these bloudy Frayes without the City, the Officers forcing them to better order. There are many Poets, which pen amorous Sonets: and on *Mahomets* Birth-day, make Verses in his commendation, resorting early to the Palace, and there ascending the Tribunall, reade their Verses to the people; and he whole Verses are best, is pronounced that yeere Prince of Poets. The *Marin* King on that day vsed to entertaine the learned men, and to reward the best Poet with a hundred Ducats, a Horse, a Woman-slaue, and the Kings Robes which hee wore that day.

In Fez are two hundred Grammar Schooles, built like great Hals. Euery day they learne one lesson of the Alcoran. They reade and write not in Bookes, but in great b Tables. Insecuen yeeres they learne the whole Alcoran by heart. And then the Father inuiteth his fellowes Schoole-fellowes to a Banquet: and his Sonne rides through the street in costly apparell, both which are lent by the Gouernour. The other Boyes ride and sing Songs in prayse of God and *Mahomet*. On *Mahomets* Birth-day euery Boy must carry a Torch to Schoole curiously wrought, some weighing thirty pound, which they light before day, and let them burne till Sun-rising, singing all the while the prayses of *Mahomet*. The Schoolemasters haue the remnant of the Waxe, which sometimes they sell for a hundred Ducats. They are free Schooles anciently built. In the Schooles, and also in the Colledges, they haue two dayes of recreation euery weeke, wherein they neither teach nor studie.

b These tables are boards like Horn-bookes: when one lesson is learned, that is wiped out, and another written; & so throughout the Alcoran, till all be learned.

§. III.

Of their Diuiners and Sects, and other parts of the Fezan Territorie.

THere be three kinds of Fortune-tellers or Diuiners. One of which vseth Geomanticall figures; others, powre a drop of Oyle into a glasse of water, which becommeth cleere as a Seeing-glasse, in which they say they see strange sights, rankes of Deuils, like Armies, some trauelling, some passing ouer a Riuer, &c. When the Diuiner seeth them to quiet, he demandeth such questions of them as he will, and the Deuils with gestures returne answere. The third sort are Women-witches, which make the people beleeue, that they are acquainted with Deuils of diuers sorts, red, white, blacke: and when they will tell any mans fortune, they perfume themselues with certaine Odours, whereby (as they say) the Deuill entreth into them, and their voyce is presently altered, as if the Deuill spake within them. And then they that come to enquire, aske their questions, and so hauing left their present for the Deuill, depart.

These [a] women vse vnlawfull lusts betweene themselues in mutuall filthinesse: & if faire women come to them, they wil demand the Deuils fee, that they may haue such dealing with them. Yea, some addicting themselues to these abominable practices, will faine themselues sicke, and send to one of these Witches, which will affirme, That shee is possessed with a Deuill, and cannot be cured, except she become one of their Societie. The foolish Husband beleeues, consents, and makes a sumptuous Feast at her Deuillish Admission. Others will conjure this Deuill with a Cudgell out of their Wiues: others fayning themselues to bee possessed with a Deuill, will deceiue the Witches, as they haue deceiued their Wiues. There are Exorcists, or Diuiners, called *Mubazzimi*, which cast out Deuils; or if they cannot, they excuse themselues, and say it is an ayrie Spirit. They write Characters, and frame Circles, on an ash-heape, or some other place: then they make certaine signes on the hands or foreheads of the possessed party, and perfume him after a strange manner. Then they make their Inchantment, and demand of the Spirit, which way he entred, what he is, and his name; and then command him to come forth. Others there are that worke by a Cabalisticall rule, called *Zairagia*, and is very hard; for he that doth this, must be a perfect Astrologer and Cabalist. My selfe (it is *Leo's* report) haue seene a whole day spent, in describing one figure onely. It is too tedious here to expresse the manner. Howbeit, *Mahomets* Law forbids all Diuination; and therefore the Mahumetan Inquisitors imprison the Professors thereof.

a A female filthinesse.

There are also in Fez some Learned men, which giue themselues the sirnames of *Wisemen*, and Morall Philosophers, which obserue Lawes not prescribed by *Mahumet*: some account them Catholike; others, not; but the vulgar hold them for Saints. The Law forbiddeth Loue-songs, which they say may be vsed. They haue many Rules and Orders, all which haue their Defenders and Doctors. This Sect sprang vp fourescore yeeres after *Mahumet*; the first Authour thereof was *Elhesen Ibnu Abilhasen*, who gaue Rules to his Disciples, but left nothing in writing. About an hundred yeeres after, came *Elbarit Ibnu Esed*, from Bagadet, who left Volumes of Writings vnto his Disciples; but by the Lawyers was condemned. Fourescore yeeres after, vnder another famous Professor, that Law reuiued, who had many Disciples, and preached openly. But by the Patriarke and Lawyers they were all condemned to lose their heads the giddie Receptacles of such phantasticall Deuotions.) But hee obtayned leaue of their Chaliph, or Patriarch, that he might try his Assertions, by Disputations with the Lawyers; whom he put to silence: and therefore the Sentence was reuoked, and many Colledges built for his Followers. An hundred yeeres after, *Malicsach* the Turke destroyed all the maintayners thereof, some flying into Cairo, some into Arabia. Not long after, *Elgazzali* a learned man compounded the Controuersie; so reconciling these and the Lawyers, that the one should be called *Conformers*, the other *Reformers* of the Law. After the Tartars had sacked Bagdat, in the yeere of the *Hegeira* 656. these Sectaries swarmed all ouer Asia and Africa. They would admit none into their Societie, but such as were learned, and could defend their Opinions: but now they admit all, affirming Learning to be needlesse; for *the Holy* teacheth them that haue a *cleane heart*. Therefore they addict themselues to nothing but Pleasure, Feasting, and Singing. Sometimes they will rend their garments, saying, They are then ruished with a fit of Diuine loue. I thinke rather superfluitie of belly-cheare is the cause; for one of them will eate as much as will serue three: Or else it is through wicked lust; for sometimes one of the Principals, with all his Disciples, is inuited to some Marriage-feast; at the beginning whereof, they will rehearse their deuout Orizons and Songs: but after

b Anabaptisticall fancies in Fez.

after they are risen from Table, the elder beginne a Dance, and teare their garments; and if through immoderate drinking, any catch a fall, one of the youths presently take him vp, and wantonly kisse him: Whereupon ariseth the Proverbe, *The Heremits Banquet*; signifying, that the Scholler becomes his Masters Minion: for none of them may marry, and they are called Heremites.

Among these Sects in Fez are some Rules esteemed Hereticall, of both sorts of Doctors. Some hold, That a man by good Workes, Fasting, and Abstinence, may attaine to the nature of an Angell, the Vnderstanding and Heart being thereby so purified (say they) that a man cannot sinne, though he would: But to this height is ascended by fiftie steps of Discipline, and though they fall into sinne before they come into the fiftieth Degree, yet will not God impute it. They vse strange and incredible Fastings in the beginning, but after, take all the pleasures of the World. They haue a seuere forme of liuing set downe in foure Bookes, by a by a certaine learned man, called *Efschrauer de Schranard* in Corasan. Likewise, another of their Authors, called *Ibnul Farid*, wrote all his Learning in witty Verses, full of Allegories, seeming to treat of Loue. Wherefore one *Elfargano* commented on the same, and thence gathered the Rule and the Degrees aforesaid. In three hundred yeeres none hath written more elegant Verses; which therefore they vsed in all their Banquets. They hold, that the Heauens, Elements, Planets, and Starres, are one God; and that no Religion is erroneous, because euery one takes that which he worships, for God. They thinke, that all knowledge of God is contained in one Man, called *Eleeub*, elect by God, and wise as he. Forty among them are called *Elanted*, which signifieth *Blocks*. Of these is *Eleeub* or *Eleeub* elected, when the former is dead; threescore and ten Electors make the choice. There are seuen hundred threescore and fiue others, out of whom, those threescore and ten Electors are chosen. The Rule of their Order binds them to range vnknowne through the World, either in manner of Fooles, or of great Sinners, or of the vilest man that is. Thus some wicked persons of them goe vp and downe naked, shamefully shewing their shame, and like brute beasts will sometimes haue carnall dealings with women in the open streets; reputed neuer the lesse by the common people for Saints, as we haue shewed elsewhere. There is another sort called Caballists, which fast strangely, eate not the flesh of any liuing creature: but haue certaine meates and habits appointed for euery houre of the day, and of the night; and certaine set Prayers according to the dayes and monethes, strictly obseruing the numbers of them; and carry square Tables, with Characters and Numbers engrauen in them. They say, that good Spirits appeare to them, and talke with them, instructing them in the knowledge of all things. There was amongst them a famous Doctor, called *Boni*, which composed their Rule and Orders, whose Booke I haue seene, seeming more to fauour of Magicke then the Cabala. Their notablest works are eight. The first, called Demonstration of Light, contayneth Fastings and Prayers. The second, their square Tables. The third, fourescore and nineteene Vertues in the Name of God contayned, &c.

c *Vide l. 3. c. 7.*

They haue another Rule among these Sects, called *Sunab*, the Rule of Heremits; the Professors whereof inhabite Woods and solitary Places, without any other sustinance then those Desarts afford. None can describe their life, because they are estranged from all humane Societie.

He that would see more of these things, let him reade the Booke of one *Elefacni*, who writeth at large of the Mahumetan Sects, whereof are threescore and twelue principall, each maynTaining his owne for Truth, and the way to Saluation. Two are most predominant in these dayes; that of *Lesbari* in Africa, Egypt, Syria, Arabia, and Turkie and the other of Imamia in Persia, and Corasan, more lately broched. Although I haue spoken before of the Saracen Sects, yet could I not but follow *Lee* in his reports of them here. As for those Conjurers, which by Art Magicke professe to find Gold, which indeed lose Gold to find it; and the Alchymists, which seeking to turne other metals into Gold, turne their Gold into other metals, and the Bookes that both these haue of their Sciences: likewise the Snake-charmers, and other baser people, I passe ouer.

d Gold-finders and Alchymists.

In the Suburbs of Fez are an hundred and fifty Caues, hewne out of excellent Marble, the least of which will hold a thousand measures of Corne. This is the sinke of Fez where euery one may be a Vintner and a Bawde. Another Suburbe hath two hundred Families of Lepers, which are there prouided for: and all of that quality forced to keepe there.

In new Fez the Iewes haue a street, wherein they haue their Houses, Shoppes, and Synagogues: and are marueilously encreased since they were driuen out of Spaine. They are Goldsmiths: for the Mahumetans may not bee of that Trade, because they say it is Vsury to sell things made of Gold or Siluer for more then their weight, which yet is permitted to the Iewes. They liue in exceeding contempt, not being permitted to weare shoes, but in Read thereof vse sockes made of Rushes. They weare a blacke Turbant, and if any will weare a Cap,

A note for Vsurers.

Cap, he must fasten a red cloth thereunto. They pay ed to the King of Fez monethly in *Leo's* time one thousand and foure hundred Ducats.

The Mahometan temporall Lords are not by their Law to hold any other reuenue, then of every subiect which possesseth an hundred Ducats, two and a halfe for Tribute, and of Corne the tenth measure yeerely. Yea, this is to be payed into the Patriarch or Califs hand, who should bestow that which remayneth ouer and aboue the Princes necessitie, on the common profit; as, for the poore, and maintenance of Warres. But now the Princes haue tyrannized further, especially in Africa, where they haue not left the people sufficient for their needments. And therefore Courtiers are odious (no lesse then the *Publicans* sometimes among the *Iewes*) no man of credit vouchsafing to inuite them to their Tables, or receiue gifts from them; esteeming all their goods theft and bribery. Nor may any Mahometan Prince weare a Diademe, which yet it seemes is now broken.

In *Gnalis* a Towne of Mount Zarhon is *Idris*, of whom before is spoken, buried; all Barbary religiously visiteth his Sepulchre. *Pharao* is the name of a Towne, by the vulgar supposed the worke of *Pharao*, which fond conceit grew from a Booke, entitled, The Booke of the words of *Mahomet*, taken out of an Author, called *Eleabi*, which sayth with *Mahomets* testimony, that there were foure Kings which ruled all the World; Two faithfull, and two vnfaithfull: the two former, *Salomon* and *Alexander Magnus*: the two later, *Nimrod* and *Pharao*. The Latine Inscriptions there seene, shew it was the worke of the Romans.

Tame Lions. In *Piatra Rossa* a Towne by, the Lyons are so tame, that they will gather vp bones in the streets, the people not fearing them. The like Lions are in *Guraiguru*, where one may drue them away with a stuffe. At *Agla*, the Lions are so fearefull, that they will flee at the voice of a child; whence a Coward Braggart is Prouerbially called a Lion of *Agla*.

Shame is the name of a Castle, so called of their shamefull couetousnesse; which, when they once requested the King (then entertained amongst them) to change, he consented. But the next morning, when they had brought him vessels of Milke, halfe filled vp with water, hoping the King would not perceiue it, he said that none could alter nature, and so left them, and then name to them.

§. IIII.

Of the fiue other Prouinces of this Kingdome, and some later Obseruations.

WE haue now passed two Prouinces of the Kingdome of Fez: the third is named *Azgar*, which hath the Riuers *Burargag*, on the West; Bunasar, on the South, the Ocean, on the North; and Eastward, the Mountaines. Here standeth *Casar Elcabir*, which King *Mansor* gaue to a poore Fisher, who had giuen him kinde entertainment in his Cottage one night when he had lost his company in hunting. In it are many Temples, one Colledge of Students, and a stately Hospitall. *Habat*, the fourth Prouince or Shire of this Kingdome, is next hereunto, and containeth almost an hundred miles in length, and foure score in breadth. *Elaggen*, a Towne of Fez, are permitted by an ancient Priuiledge of the Kings of Fez to drinke Wine, notwithstanding *Mahomets* prohibition. *Arzilla*, saythLeo, was taken by the English, then worshippers of Idols, about nine hundred yeeres after Christ. The Religion, I thinke, deceiues him. He addes, that the Towne remayned without habitation thirty yeeres, and then one of the Mahometan Patriarches of Cordoba, then Lord of Mauritania, reedified it. Of the acts of the English is not vnworthy the rehearsing, m That *Sent* or *Ceuta* (there written *Sunt*) was taken by the *Portugals*, through the assistance of English Merchants, *Anno* 1415. *Iuhan*, the Earle of *Seuz*, brought the *Moores* first into *Spaine*, in the yeere of the *Hegera* 921 In it were many Temples, Colledges, and learned men.

m *Walsingham hist. Hen. 6. 5.*

Errif begins at the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and stretcheth Eastward to the Riuer *Nacor* an 140. miles. The Inhabitants are valiant, but are excessiue drinkers. *Mezzeuma* and *Bedis*, or *Oples de Gumera*, are chiefe Townes in it. On Mount *Bon Iersa* was built a faire Colledge, and the Mahometan Law publikely taught therein: the Inhabitants therefore freed from all exactions. A Tyrant destroyed this Colledge, and slue the learned men. The Books therein were valued worth foure thousand Ducats. This was *Anno* 1509. In Mount *Beni Guaccual* is a hole, that perpetually casteth vp fire: Wood cast in, is suddenly consumed to ashes: some thinke it Hel-mouth. In Mount *Beni Mesgalda*, were mayntainted many Mahometan Doctors,

ctors, and Students, which would perswade the people to drinke no wine, which themselues will not abstaine from.

Garet, the sixt Shire of this Kingdome, lyeth betweene the Riuers Melulo and Muluia. The seuenth is Chauz, reputed the third part of the Kingdome, betweene the Riuer Zha and Guruigara. Herein standeth Tezza, adorned with Colledges, Temples, and Palaces. A little Riuer springing out of *Atlas* runnes thorow the chiefe Temple, which is greater then that at Fez. There are three Colledges, and many Bathes and Hospitals. Each Trade dwelleth by themselues, as at Fez. I was acquainted (saith *Leo*) with an aged Sire in this Citie, reputed a Saint, and enriched exceedingly with the peoples offerings. From Fez did the people resort to visit him with their offerings, which is fiftie miles: he seemed to me to be a deceiuer. In Mount *Beni Iesseten* are many Iron mines, and the women in great brauerie weare Iron rings on their fingers and eares. Ham Lisnan was built by the Africans, and borrowed the name from the Fountayne of an Idoll, whose Temple was neere the Towne: to which at certayne times in the yeere resorted men and women in the night: where, after sacrifices, the candles were put out, and each man lay with the woman hee first touched. Those women were forbidden to lye with any other for a yeere after. The children begotten in this adulterie, were brought vp by Priests of the Temple. The Moores destroyed this holy-stewes, and the Towne, not leauing any mention thereof. In Mount Centopozzi are ancient buildings, and neere thereto a spacious hole, or drie pit, with many roomes therein: they let men downe into the same by ropes with lights, which if they goe out, they perish in the pit. Therein are many Bats which strike out their lights. In the Mountaynes of *Ziz* there are Serpents so tame, that at dinner time they will come like Dogs and Cats, and gather vp the crummes, not offering to hurt any.

This much of the kingdome of Fez out of *Leo*, a learned Citizen of Fez, and great Traueller, both in the Places and Authors of Afrike: whom *Ortelius*, *Maginus*, *Botarus* follow, commended by, *Bodinus*, *Possevinus*, and others, as the most exact Writer of those parts, and translated into English by Master *Pory*, from whom if I swarue in diuers things, impute it to the Italian copie of *Ramusius*, which differeth not a little, especially in these things: I haue here set downe, from the English.

[a] *Bodin Method. cap. 4. Ant. Poss. de bibl. Aspirat. lib. 16. sect. 7. cap. 2.*

I thought good here also to adde out of others some such customs and rites as they obserue in Fez, and other parts of this Kingdome: [b] Their Circumcision is vsed in their priuate houses. Women may not enter the Moschee for their often vncleannesse, and because *Eue* first sinned. The eight day after a childe is borne, the parents send for a *Talby* or Priest, and some old men and women, where after a few prayers said, the women wash the childe all ouer with water, and giue the name, making a banquet. But sometimes the circumcision is deferred diuers yeeres after this ceremonie, as the Fathers thinke.

[b] Historie of Barbarie, &c.

Their Fasts they obserue very strictly, not so much as tasting water till the Starres appeare: Yea, diuers haue beene seene, by their rigour, in this superstition to faint, and some to die. A certayne Moore in the time of their Lent (which continueth thirtie dayes) in the companie of an English Gentleman, being thirstie with heat and trauell, went to a conduit in Marocco (where the same Religion is professed as in Fez) and there drinking, was so reuiled of the people, that in a desperate angusht he slae himselfe with his dagger. Yet doth their Law allow an exchange some dayes of this Lent, with other dayes in the yeere following, if trauell then hinder. Their Feasts and Fasts are at the same times, and in the same manner that the Turkes obserue, of which is before spoken. Their Easter they call *Rumedan*: their Whitsuntide, *Ledlaber*: their Michaelmasse, *Lasbour*: their Candlemasse, *Lasserman*: (if it be lawfull thus to parallel those vaine superstitions with Christian obseruations. In this last Feast, which seemeth to bee the same which *Leo* calls *Mahomets* birth-day, euery one must haue a candle for himselfe, and for euery sonne in his house. The King hath that day candles carried to him, some like May-poles, other like Castles, sixe or eigne men carrying one of them: so artificially composed, that some are in making six moneths. That night the King doth heare all the Law read: the like is done in all other Churches. The *Talby* that cannot reade all their Law in a night, is held insufficient for his place. They goe (saith my Authour) sixe times in foure and twentie houres (which is once oftner then is written of the Turkes, except on their Sabbath) to their prayers, first washing themselues, as they doe also after the offices of nature, and after companie with their wiues, thinking thereby to be washed from their sinnes. Their times of prayer are, two houres before day, the first, when the *Mouden*, or Sexton cryeth in the Steeple (as you may reade in our Turkish Relations) and then may no man touch his wife, but prepare himselfe to pray (with washing or other deuotions) either in his owne house or at Church. After their publike prayers, the *Talby* sit downe, and spends halfe an houre in resoluing the doubts of such as shall moote any questions in matters of their Law. These cond time of prayer is two houres after, when it is day. The third at noone. The fourth at foure

foure of the clocke in the afternoone. The fift at the twi-light. The last, two houres after. In the first of these they pray for the day; in the second they giue thankes for it; in the third time they giue thankes for that it is hafte passed; in the fourth they desire the Sunne may well set on them; at twi-light they giue thanks after their daily labours; the last time, they desire a good night. They think it vnseemely to eate meat with their left hands, and hold it vncleane, and doe all with their right hand. Their Sabbath or Friday is not exempted from worke: Onely they are then more deuout in going to Church.

Their Churches are not so faire generally as in Christendome, nor haue seats in them, ornaments, or bells: (onely the floores are matted) they are also poore for the most part, as are their Church men. Their Lyturgie is very short, not so long as the *Pater-noster* and Creede: other set forme they haue not, but euery one prayes after his owne pleasure. Although the Moore may haue foure wiues, and as many concubines as hee can purchase, yet few marry foure, because the wiues friends will haue a sufficient bill of dowrie for her maintenance, which none but rich men can performe: and againe, the wiues challenge his nights companie, and that in course: if any be neglected, shee complaines to the Magistrate, and he forceth the husband to his dutie, or else to send her home with her Dower, and a Bill of diuorce. The Concubines are embraced with more stolne pleasures. That bill of Dower holdeth the husband in awe, which else would make a slaue of his wife, or still change for yonger flesh. The Bride is bedded before her husband see her: and if hee finde her not a Virgin, hee may turne her home and keepe her portion by Law. For their funerall Rites; when one is dead, they presently wash him, and speedily put him into ground (the heat so requiring) and after that, the women at conuenient times haue a custome to meete, and make memoriall of their deceased friends, with remembrance of their vertues, which they thinke caused men to haue more respect to their good name. Their other obsequies are before declared. The King vseth to sit in Iudgement on Fridayes in the afternoone: and the Mufti sitteth with him at other times in Iudgement: but on the Friday he sits alone by himselfe. Of these Musties are three; one at Marocco; another at Fez; the third, at Taradant in Sus, another part of this Seriffian Kingdome. Other Iudges sit all the yeere long two houres before noone, and as many after. Before these euery one pleades his owne cause: and if the witnesses can bee proued to bee infamous of life, or not to say their prayers foure times a day, their testimonie is disabled. The Scriuanos are Falbies, which assist the Iudge, and in his absence supply his place. The Fokers or Saints (*Leo* before calls them Heremites) dwell in the best places of the Countrey, keepe great hospitalitie for all trauellers, whither any man may come for a night, and be gone in the morning. They giue great example of merall liuing, and alms to the needie, comprimising matters of difference betwixt parties, and repressing disorders. They are much loued and respected, and their houses are holden Sanctuaries, whose priuiledges the King will not breake, but vpon waightie reasons.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Kingdome of Marocco, with a Discourse of the Kings thereof, and of the Seriffe, Xarif, or Iarif, and his posteritie, now reigning in Barbarie.

§. I.

Of the Kingdome, Kings, and Citie of Marocco.

THE Kingdome is situate * betweene Atlas and the Atlantike Ocean, bearing name of the chiefe Citie thereof: fruitfull of Corne, Oile, Grapes, Sugar, Honey, and Cattell. They make fine cloth of Goats haire, and of their hides that leather [a] which hence is called Marocchine. This Kingdome is diuided into seuen Prouinces, through which we intend our next perambulation, taking *Leo* [b] for our guide: beginning at Hea, which on the North and West hath the Ocean, Atlas on the South, and the Riuer Essiuual on the East. The people feede on Cakes of barley, and on a pappe or hasse-pudding of barley-meale, which being set in a platter, all the familie compasse about, and rudely with Natures spoones claw forth those dainties. Naperie they vse none, a Mat laid on the ground, seruieth for table and cloth, and stooles too. Caps are the priuiledges of age and learning. Linnen shirts are almost banished their Countrey:

* Boter. part. 1. *Magnus. Sanutus, lib. 3.*

a Cordouan leather of Moraeco.

b *Leo, part. 1.*

Countrey: and so are Arts liberall and mechanicall, except some simple Lawyer, which can make some shift to reade, and a Surgeon to circumcise their children: Their physicke is cauterizing as men deale with beasts. They are alway in mutuall warres one with another; yet will not they iniurie a stranger, who if he would trauell amongst them, must take some harlot or wife, or religious man, or the aduerse part with him. At Tednest, one of their Cities, such respect is had to strangers, that if a Merchant come hither, and hath no acquaintance, the Gentlemen of the Citie cast lots, who shall be his Host, and they vse him kindly, looking only for some Present at his departure, in token of thankfulnesse. And if he be a meaner person, he may choose his Host, without any recompence at all. In the midst of the Citie was a great and ancient Temple, with many Priests attending their deuotions; besides other meaner Oratories. This Citie hath since been ruined and desolate. In Teculeth were a thousand households, foure Hospitals, one beautifull Temple, and a house of religious persons: destroyed it was by the Portugals, *An.* 1514. as *Hadecchis* had beene the yeere before. Beusugaghen is another Towne of Hea, or of Hell rather, so full is it of confusion, blood, and murthers, besides the want of Learning, Ciuilitie, Iudges, Priests, or whatsoever else may detayne those men from a beastly or deuillish metamorphosis. The Seriff, being made a Prince of Hea, brought me thither to be a Iudge, but for feare of treason amongst them, we were glad to leaue them. How farre off in manners is their neere neighbour Telegdest? where a guard is set at the gates not so much to keepe out enemies, as to entertayne strangers, whom at his first comming they aske if he haue any friends in the Citie: if not, they must prouide him entertainment at free-cost. They haue a most beautifull Temple, furnished with Priests. Taglesse, the next Towne, is a den of theeues and murtherers. When I was there, such a swarme of Locusts ouer-spred the Countrey (that scarce might a man see the earth) eating vp their fruits.

Culeilhat was built of a certaine Sectarie in our time, first a Preacher, attended with troupes of disciples, after, a cruell and mercilesse Tyrant, murthered at last by one of his wiues, for lying with her daughter: and then his villanies being manifested, the people put all his followers to the sword. Onely a nephew of his fortified himselfe in a Castle, which he held maugre all their might, and burying his grand-father, caused him to be adored as a Saint. *Homar Seif* was the name of that Rebell. The other parts of Hea are like the former, some exceeding hospitall and courteous, some brutish, without diuine or humane learning or liuing. Great store of Iewes liue here, and in Mount Demenlera are of those Iewes which are called * Carraim, of the rest accounted Sectaries. Theie reiect the Traditions, and hold them onely to the written Scriptures (as in our Iewish relation yee haue read.) In Mount Gebel-Ihadih are many Heremites, which liue on fruits of trees, and water, so reputed of the simple people, that all their doings are accounted miracles.

Homar, a Preacher, Tyrant and Saint.

* *Karraim* Scripture-Iewes.

Sus is the second Region of this Kingdome, lying Southward from hence on the other side of Atlas, so called of that Riuer which is the Easterne border thereof, otherwhere bounded with the Sea and the Desarts. At Messa neere the Sea side is a Temple holden in great veneration. Many Historians affirme, that from this Temple shall come that last Calisa, of whom *Mahumet* prophecied. There also they say the Whale vomited vp *Ionas*. The rafters and beames of the Temple are of Whales bones, which vsually are left there dead on the shore. This the common people esteeme to proceede from some diuinitie of that Temple: but the true cause is certaine sharpe Rocks a little off in the Sea. I my selfe was inuited by a Gentleman, who shewed me a Whales ribbe, so huge, that lying on the ground in manner of an arch, vnder it, as it were thorow a gate, we rode on our Camels, our heads not reaching to touch it. It had beene there kept an hundred yeers for a wonder. Amber is there found in abundance, which some thinke proceedes from the Whales, as either the ordure, or the sperme, and feede thereof. Teijnt is a Citie of Sus, wherein is a great Temple, and an arme of a Riuer passeth thorow the same. There are many Iudges and Priests, whom in their Ecclesiasticall affaires they obey. Taroulant hath three thousand Families: sometimes the place where the Kings Lieutenant or Deputie resideth, Tedsi is much greater, adorned also with a Temple, and furnished with Priests and Ministers: Iudges and Lecturers payed at the common charge. In Mount Hanchisa it snowes in all seasons of the yeere, and yet the Inhabitants goe thinly clothed in the sharpest winter.

Sus.

Huge Whale-bones.

The Region of Marocco is three-square: confined with the mountaynes Nefisa, on the West; and Hadimeus, on the East; betweene the Riuers Tensift, and Essinuall. The Countrey is fertilitie of soile resembleth Lombardie. Marocco (which some thinke to be *Bocanus* *Hemerus* or *Ptolemey*) was built (saith *Leo*) by *Ioseph* sonne of *Tesfin*, King of the people of Lontuna, by the aduice of excellent Architects, and cunning workmen. In the time of *Hali* sonne of *Ioseph*, there were in it ten thousand Fires or Families, and more. It had foure and twentie gates: was strongly walled: furnished with Temples, Bathes, Colledges, Inns, after

Marocco.

ter the African manner. One most stately Temple was built by *Hali*, and called by his name. But a successor of that kingdom, called *Abdul Mumen*, caused it to be razed, and built againe, and called after his owne name, howbeit the name of *Hali* is still continued in the Title, all that his coft notwithstanding. This *Abdul Mumen*, who was the second that by rebellion succeeded in the kingdome, built another Temple, which *Mansor* enlarged fiftie yards or elles on every side, adorning it with many pillars fetcht out of Spaine. He made a Cisterne or Vault built vnder it, as large as the Temple it selfe; and couered the Temple with lead, with leaden pipes from the roofe, to conuey the raine-water that fell thereon, into the Cisterne: He built thereon a steeple like the Coliseo or Amphitheatre at Rome, of great hewen stone. The compasse of this steeple or tower is an hundred Tuscan yards or elles, higher then the steeple of Atenelli at Bononia. There are seuen lofts one aboue another, very faire and lightsome. Vpon the top of this tower is built a little turret, the top whereof is as a needle or spire: and it contayneth fiue and twentie yards in compasse, and is as high as two great lances, with three lofts therein, one higher then the other. On the top of this spire is a broach with three globes of siluer one vnder another, the greatest below, and the least highest. From the top hereof the Mountaynes of Azafi may bee easily seene, an hundred and thirtie miles off: and a tall man on the ground seemes as little as a childe of a yeere old. The plaine Countrey fiftie miles about is hence discerned. It is one of the greatest Temples in the world; and yet not frequented; the people assembling thither to their deuotions, but on Fridayes: the Citie it selfe neere this Temple is ruinate, so that the passage is difficult by the ruines of houses. Vnder the porch or gallerie of this Temple were sometimes an hundred shops of Booke-sellers, and as many ouer-against them, but now * there is not one in all Marocco: Scarcely is the third part of the Citie inhabited (vnderstand it of the time when *Leo* writ this; for since that time Marocco by residence of the Kings there, hath flourished, as Fez hath contrariwise decayed) the rest being planted with Vines and Trees, the Arabians not suffering them to exercise any husbandrie without the walls. It was built *An.* 434. of the *Hegira*. After *Ioseph* the Founder, and *Hali* his sonne, *Abraham* succeeded, in whose time, a rebellious Preacher called *Elmahelis*, borne and brought vp in the Mountaynes, rebelled: and with an armie encountred King *Abraham*, and ouerthrew him. The King fled, and was so hardly pursued by *Abdul Mumen*, whom *Elmahelis* had sent after him, whiles himselfe besieged Marocco, that the poore King, in danger to bee surprized at Oram, mounting on his horse, and taking his wife behinde him, set spurres to his horse, and so came all three downe together on the mercilesse Rocks. *Abdul Mumen* returning victorious, found this addition to his happinesse, that *Elmahelis* was dead, and himselfe was chosen King and Prelate (or Chaliphà) by the fortie Disciples, and ten Secretaries of *Elmahelis*; a new custome in the Mahometan Law. He maintayned the siege, and at the yeeres end, entred by force, and tooke *Isaac*, the little and onely sonne of *Abraham*, and stabbed him with his owne hands, killing most of the Souldiers hee there found, and many of the Citizens. His posteritie reigned after him, from *An.* 516. of the *Hegeira*, to the 668. at which time the Familie of *Marin* deprived them, in which the Kingdome continued till the 785. yeere. Then the same decreasing in power, Marocco became subiect to certaine Lords of the old Hill, neere to the Citie. But of none receiued they so much damage, as of the *Marin* Familie, which held their Court in Fez, and had a Lieutenant onely in Marocco; Fez being made chiefe Citie of Mauritania.

* *An. Dom.* 1526.

* *Cel. See. Curio de regno Mar. p.* 356.

Let me borrow of *Celi. Sec.* * *Curio* in his Historie of the Kingdome of Marocco, which (for the most part) is taken out of *Leo*. He saith, that *Abdul Mumen* subiected to his Empire all Barbarie, from Messa to Tripolis; his Empire in Africa comprehending fourscore and ten dayes iourney in length, and fifteene in breadth. He also possessed the kingdome of Granada in Spaine, sometime called *Betica*, and from Tariffa to Tarracon, and a great part of Castilia and Portugall. Neither had he alone this large Empire, but his * sonne *Iosippus* after him, *Iacobus Mansor* his nephew, and their posteritie, till *Mahumet Enasir*, who, *Anno* 1212. in the kingdome of Valencia was ouerthrowne of *Alphonsus* (as I take it) the ninth King of Castile, in that place which is called *Las nauas di Tolosa*; losing in the battell threescore thousand men. In memorie of which battell and victorie, that *Alphonsus* adorned his Scutchion with a Castle *Or*, in a field purple: which custome his successors doe still obserue, because that day that golden kingdome, as a strong Castle, confirmed to him by the bloud of his enemies, was deliuered from those Miscreants. And thereupon, that kingdome of the Bastitanes (so it was before that time stiled) was intituled *Castile*. Moreouer, hee instituted that knighrly Order of Saint *Iames*, who haue in their habit purtrayed a purple sword, in token of bloud. This *Mahumet* our Historians call *Miramulinus*. For *Abdul Mumen* intituled himselfe *Miralmumim*, the name signifying, *The Prince of beleeuers*, which others corrupting, call *Miramulin*, as they did him *Abed Ramon*. Howsoeuer, it standeth for the Name and Armes of *Castile*; certainly *Curio* was not curious, nor carefull enough in adding, that this *Abdul Mumen* was in

* *Leo* reckons them in this Order. *Abdul, Ioseph Mansor, Iacob Mansor*, and this *Mahomet Enasir*: whereas *Curio* seemes to insinuate a longer line of posteritie: heere bee recall directly and immediately succeeding.

in the time of *Rodericus* the Gotish King, about seuen hundred yeeres after Christ, as also in his Saracenicall Historie he relateth, and wee before haue obserued, seeing that Marocco was long after built, and diuers hundreths of yeeres were interposed betwixt *Rodericus*, and this *Abdul Mumen*; *Curio* herein [b] differing not onely from *Leo*, his best guide in the rest of his Historie, but from himselfe, as will easily appeare to any that list to compare his Saracenicall History with the Marochian. And for that notable victory against the Moores, *Rodericus* Archbishop of Toledo was there present [c] in the field, and saith that the King ware a blacke Cap, which had belonged to *Abdul Mumen*, the first of the Almohades, and had by him the Alcoran. This *Abdelmon* or *Abdel Mumen* was (he writeth) the sonne of a Potter, to whom *Auentumerith*, a great Astronomer, foretold his Royaltie. To this *Auentumerith* [d] did one *Almohadi* ioyne himselfe, who interpreted the Alcoran contrary to the Bagdat Catholicisme; and the interpretations of the *Almoranides* which then ruled in Africa; whose helpe *Abdel* vsed to obtaine the Kingdome both of Africa and Spaine. Hee buried *Almohadi* being dead; very Royally, not farre from Marocco, where he is had in great veneration, and prayers made to him: and the followers of his sect called of him *Almohades*. To *Abdel Mumen* succeeded his Sonne *Auen Iacob*, who being slaine in Portugall, his Brother *Auenioseph* succeeded; and then his Sonne, this *Auen Mahomath*; with whom, [e] he saith were slaine two hundred thousand Moores, the carkasses lying so thicke, that they could scarce ride ouer them; and yet in all the field no signe of bloud to be seene. For two dayes space the Spanish Armie burnt no wood for any vse, but the Arrowes, Launces and Pikes of the Moores, burning of purpose, and not onely for necessitie; and yet scarcely consumed halfe. With him perished the *Almohades*. Thus farre *Rodericus* an eye-witnesse, not much differing from *Leo*.

b *Curio* fruit arising from confounding the Histories of *Abed Amon* and *Abdul mumen*, which liued one Ceniturie or yeres after the former.

c *Rod Tol de reb. Hispan lib. 8. cap. 10 & 5.*

d *Lib 7. cap 6.*

e *Lib. 8. cap. 10*

I cannot omit that which *Mathew Paris* [f] hath written of *John* King of England about these times, and in his owne dayes. He sent, saith he, *Thomas Herdinton* and *Radulph Fitz Nicolas* Knights, and *Robert* of London Clarke, to Admirall *Murmelius*, King of Marocco, Africa, and Spaine, whom they commonly call *Miramumelius*, to make offer vnto him of his Vassalage, and that he would not onely hold the Land of him with payment of Tribute, but would also change his Religion, and accept the Mahumetan. The Embassadours having declared their message, the King (or *Emire Elmumenin* to call him rightly) shut vp the Booke whereon they found him reading, and after a little deliberation thus answered, I was now reading a Greeke Booke of a certaine wise man, and a Christian, called *Paul*, whose wordes and deeds well please me; this onely, I like not, that hee forsooke the Religion wherein he was borne, and vnconstantly embraced another: and the same I say of your Master. God Almightie knowes, that if I were without the Law, and now to chuse, This aboue all other should be my choise. And then, by diuers questions enforming himselfe better of the state of the Kingdome and of the King, he grew into great passion and indignation against the King, protesting that he thought him vnworthy to bee his Confederate, and commanded the Embassadours neuer more to see his face. The Author heard *Robert* of London, one of those which were sent, relate these things.

f *Mat Par. in Iohn. n. p 2, 3.*

But to returne to our Marocchian buildings. In it is a great Castle, in the midst whereof is a faire Temple, and thereon a goodly Tower, and on the toppe of the same an iron broach, with three golden Globes weighing a hundred and thirtie thousand Barbarie Duckats, in forme like those before mentioned. Diuers Kings haue gone about to take downe the same, but alway some strange misfortune hath befalne them, whereby they haue beene forced to leaue their attempt. Insomuch that it is holden a signe of ill luck to take them from thence. The vulgar conceit is, that some influence of the Planets is cause hereof. And also that Shee that set them there, by Art Magicke inchanted certaine spirits to a perpetuall Station there for to guard them. The people indeed are these spirits which in our time kept the Kings sinfers from them, who else would haue aduentured all those phantasied dangers to haue possessed himselfe of the Gold for his Warres against the Portugals. The Wife of King *Mansor* is reported to haue set them there as a Monument of her memory, hauing solde her Iewels to purchase them. *Adrianus* & *Romanus* saith, that the *Tulofs* Numidians, and all Barbary, come to Marocco, to study and learne Grammar, Poetry, Astrologie, and the Lawes. There is also in the laid Castle a College for the receit of Students, which hath thirtie Chambers, and beneath, a spacious Hall, where in old times Lectures were read: and all the Students had their expences allowed them, and rayment once a yeere: and the Readers for their stipend had, some a hundred Duckats, some two hundred, according to the qualitie of their profession. No man might be admitted into that College which was not well instructed in the principles of Arts. The excellency of the matter and workmanship might well detaine vs longer in the view thereof, but that it is now rather become a Sepulcher of Sciences, then a Theater, there being not aboue fiue Students vnder a fenceless Professor, left in *Leos* time, as the ghosts of those sometimes renowned numbers of Schollers. There were built also by *Mansor* twelue stately

g *In Thesaur. virtuum.*

THE MOORISH DIALECT

ſtately Palaces in the ſaid Caſtle, for his Guard, Officers, Armories, and other purpoſes fitting both *Mars* and *Venus*. There were alſo goodly and ſpacious Gardens, and a Parke with many kindes of wilde Beaſts, as Giraffas, Lyons, Elephants, &c. There was a Leopard made of Marble, the ſpottes not borrowed, but Natures handy-worke. But alaſſe, Deuouring Time, that ſwalloweth his owne off-ſpring, was not content to haue inglutted his inſatiable paunch with the fleſh of thoſe beaſts, and men, branded with Natures ſtampe of mortalitie; but euen thoſe curious and coſtly ſtones are now become *graue-ſtones* to themſelues, prouoking the beholders at once to haue compaſſion and amazement; the Reliques of laborious Art ſtill contending with Time, to teſtifie what greater excellence hath beene. The Garden is now become the Citie dung-hill, the Librarie in ſtead of Bookes is furniſhed with neſts of Doues, and other fowles. That ouerthrow which *Mahomet* the King of Marocco receiued in Spaine, was the occaſion of the ruine of that Family, which was furthered by his death, leauing behind him tenne ſonnes which contended amongſt themſelues for the Kingdome, and ſlew one another. Hereupon the people of Marin entred into Fez, and poſſeſſed themſelues of that Kingdome: the Habdulual Nation ſeized on the Kingdome of Teleſſin, and remouing the Gouernour of Tunis, made whom they pleaſed King. After the ruine of the *Manſors* Progeny, the Kingdome was tranſlated to *Iacob*, ſonne to *Habdulach*, firſt King of the *Marin* Family. Laſtly, this Kingdome declining, the Arabians by continuall outrages haue further diſtrected it, forcing the people to what pleaſed them. Thus farre *Leo*: who ſaw not the influence of a Starre, euen in his dayes, in his eyes, and of his acquaintance, ariſing, which after in his exaltation brought a new alteration to Marocco, (reſtoring it to the former ſplendour and all thoſe parts of Barbary: I meane the Seriffo, a name vſually giuen vnto ſuch as profeſſe

HONDIVS *his Map of the Kingdome of* Marocco.

themselues descende of *Mahomets* kindred, from whence also this wee speake of his deriued Pedegree. The historie I thinke here worthy to be inserted: the rather because this Western Starre is now declining, and by his *fierie gleames*, seemes to be neere his setting. And thus in effect doth *Boterus* [h] relate the same.

h G. B. 8. part. lib. 2. out of whom M. *Bary* and the Description of the world hath translated the same.

§. II.

Of the Kings of the Seriffian Familie.

About the yeere 1508 began to grow in name, through Numidia, a certaine Alfaique, borne in Tigumedet in the Prouince of Dara, being a subtill man, and no lesse ambitious in minde, then learned in those Sciences, whereunto the Mahumetanes are most addicted. Hee, by confidence of his bloud (descended of their Prophet) and of the diuisions of the States of Africa, and the exploits there dayly atchieued by the Portugals, attempted to make himselfe Lord of Mauritania Tingitana. For this cause hee sent his three Sonnes *Abdel*, *Abnet*, and *Mahomet*, to visit the Sepulchre of *Mahomet*. Much was the reuerence and reputation of holinesse, which they hereby acquired amongst that superstitious people, which now beheld them as Saints, and kissed their garments as most holy Reliques. These failed not in their parts of the play, to act as much deuotion, as high contemplatiue lookes, deepe fetched sighes, and other passionate interiections of holinesse could expresse. *Ala, Ala*, was their vernsull note, their food was the peoples almes. The old Father ioying to see his proiects thus farre proceed, and minding to strike whiles the Iron was hote, sent two of them to Fez, *Amet*, and *Mahumet*; where one of them was made Reader in the *Amodoraccia*, the most famous Colledge of Fez, and the younger was made Tutor to the Kings young sonnes. Aduanced thus in fauour of the King and People, by their Fathers aduice, they apprehended the present occasion of the harmes sustained by the Arabians and Moores vnder the Portugals Enseignes: they demanded Licence of the King to display a Banner against the Christians, putting him in hope easily to draw those Moores to him, and so to secure the Prouinces of Marocco. In vaine were *Mulley Nazer* the Kings brother his allegations, not to arme this Name of Sanctitie, which being once victorious, might grow insolent, and forget dutie in minding a Kingdome. They obtaine their desires, and with a Drum and Banner, with Letters of commendations to the Arabians and people of Barbary, they are so attended with forces and fortunes, that Ducala, and all as farre as *Cape de Guer* stoupes to their command: the people willingly yeelding their Tenths to this Holy warre against the Portugals, enemies of their Faith. Hereunto was added the ouerthrow which they gaue to *Lopes Barriga*, a famous Portugall Captaine, the brightnesse of that sun-shine being somewhat eclipsed with the losse of their elder brother, if rather a Monarchie were not hereby furthered. By faire words they entered into Marocco. The Arabians of Ducala and Xarquia, about this time trying their quarrels by dint of Sword in mutuall conflicts, presented a fit occasion to the Seriffs, to prey vpon them both; their strength having made them weake, and their weaknesse making the other strong. And now did they begin to vsurpe souerainitie, presenting their Fessan King, with sixe Horses, and sixe Camels, and those but simple, whom before they had acknowledged their Soueraigne, with payment of the fifths of their spoile. The King of Fez before applauding his owne victories in theirs, began now to distaste, and to distrust: hee sends to them to demand his fifths, and the tribute also formerly paide him by the Kings of Marocco. Death, the common enemie of Mankinde, here interposed her selfe on the Seriffian part, and tooke the King of Fez out of the world; the Scepter descending to his Sonne *Amet*, the Scholler of the young Seriff: who not onely proceeded not in his Fathers demands, but confirmed *Amet* in the Signiorie of Marocco, so that in some small matters hee would acknowledge the soueraigntie of Fez. But now the Seriffs, whose hearts continually encreased with their fortunes, sent him word; that being lawfull successours to *Mahomet*, they owed no man tribute, and had more right in Africa then he: if hee would respect them as his friends and Allies, so it were, if otherwise, they which had power to offend the Christian, should not bee destrute in defending themselues. The sword, the vnequall arbiter of equitie, is now made vmpire; the Fessan proclaimeth warres, belieth the vnequall arbiter of equitie, is now made vmpire; the Seriffs acquiteth Marocco, is dislodged, and in his returne vanquished. Thus haue the Seriffs acquiteth Marocco, is dislodged, and in his returne vanquished. Thus haue the Seriffs acquited themselues of that yoake, and now intend new conquests on the other side of Atlas, and in Numidia, and in the mountaines, which happily they atchieued. Yea, the Portugals wearied with the warres, which they were forced to maintayne in defence of those places they held in Africa (the expences so much surmounting the reuenue) abandoned them to the Seriffs. And now the wane of enemies procured enmitie betwixt the Brethren, who trying that valour

valour against each other, which before they had exercised ioyntly against their enemies, the issue was, that the younger, in two battels hauing ouercome the elder, and at the second, which was *Anno* 1544. hauing taken him prisoner, confined him to Tafilete. Hee now sole Monarch of Marocco, conuerts his forces against the King of Fez, to try if he could bee his Master in the field, as hee sometimes had beene in the Schoole, and failed not of his attempts, but hauing once taken and freed him; the second time because he had broken promise, he deprived him and his sonnes of estate and [a] life. He also by meanes of his sonnes took Tremizen, which soone after was recouered from them by *Sal Araez* Vice-roy of Algier, and Fez also added, by an ouerthrow of the Seriff, to the Turkes conquest, who gaue the gouernment of Fez to *Buassen*, Prince of Veles, But he in an vnfortunate battell with the Seriff, lost his life and state, *Mahomet* going after to Taradant, was by the way slaine in his Paulion, by the Treason of some Turkes suborned thereunto by the King of Algier, of whom all (but fine) in their returne were slaine by the people: *Anno* 1559. *Muley Abdala*, the Seriffs sonne, was proclaymed King.

a The end of the Raigne of *Marins.*

Some [b] write, that by occasion of a Rebellion in Sus, hee sent to the bordering Turkes for aide, who first helped, after murthered him, and hauing sacked Taradant, and ouer-runne the Countrey two moneths together, were in their returne, by the Mountainers cut off. *Mully Abdala* hauing raigned fifteene yeeres, dyed, leauing behind him thirteene sonnes; the eldest, *Abdala*, commanded the rest to be killed: but *Abdelmelech* the second brother escaped into [c] Turkie, and *Muley Hamet*, the third brother, esteemed of a simple and quiet spirit, not any way dangerous to the state, was spared. The other tenne were put to death in one day at Taradant, where they had beene brought vp. This *Abdela* dying, left behind him three sonnes; *Muley Mahomet*, *Muley Sheck*, *Muley Nassar*: the two younger escaped into Spaine, where *Sheck* is yet liuing and turned Christian. *Nassar* returned in the fourteenth yeere of *Muley Hamets* Raigne, and had almost driuen *Muley Sheck*, then Gouernour of Fez vnder his Father, to his heeles, had not superstition more preuayled with *Nassars* followers, then Allegeance. For when Lent came, his Souldiers would needs home to keepe their Easter at their owne houses: for feare whereof *Nassar* hastily giuing battell, was there slaine. *Abdelmelech* before fled into Turkie, now came backe with Turkish forces, and got the Kingdome from *Mahomet*, who fleeing, or as others write, sending for succour to *Sebastian* King of Portugall, obtained it. In the yeere [d] 1578. Fiue thousand Germans were entertayned in the Portugall pay for the expedition, and great forces were leuyed, the Pope sending *Stukely*, that English Traytor (falsely termed *Marquesse* of Ireland) with sixe hundred Italians, to *Sebastian*, [e] who the foure and twentieth of *June* tooke Sea, and the next day with a Fleet of one thousand and three hundred sayle; or as *Dogliani* [f] hath it, setting in order his Armada of fiue hundred sayle, and blessing his Royall Standard, with thirtie sixe thousand Footmen, and foure thousand Horse, set forth towards Africa: Where *Abdelmelech* being sickly, had assembled an Armie of fifteene thousand Footmen, and foure and fortie thousand Horsemen. On the fourth day of August, they ioyned battell, and the Duke of Auero, with his Portugals, made a great impression into the Moores host; which *Abdelmelech* labouring beyond his naturall force to withstand, saued his people, but lost his life, not by the Sword of the enemy, but by the weaknesse of his body, deliuered vp to death. His brother *Hamet* [g] ruled the Armie (as yet ignorant of what had befalne) and made such slaughter of the Portugals, that the Duke of Auero, the King of Portugall, and other great Personages there fell, and *Mahomet* himselfe was drowned, in fleeing ouer a Riuer. Thus remayned *Hamet* victorious, and at one time had the dead corpes of three Kings in his Tent. Soch is the vnsure of Waire, the force of death trampling vnder foot the meanest, and triumphing ouer his Countrey, slaine out of his Countrey by the barbarous *Barbarian*. To *Abdelmelech* [h] was Master *Edmund Hogan* employed in Embassage, by the *Maiestie of our late Soueraigne*, *Anno*, one thousand fiue hundred seuentie seuen, and with all good Offices entertayned. To *Hamet* his Successour, was from the same *Sacred Maiestie*, sent Ambassadour, [i] Master *Henry Roberts*, *Anno* one thousand fiue hundred eightie fiue, who was there Lieger three yeeres. This *Muley Hamet* in a Letter to the Earle of Leicester, thus begins. *In the name of the merciful and pitiful God. The blessing of God light vpon our Lord and Prophet* Mahomet, *alted by the grace of God*, Myra Momanyn, *the sonne of* Myra Momanyn, *the* Iarit, *the* Hozeni, *whose Kingdomes God maintayne. Vnto the right famous, &c.* In an Edict published in behalfe of the English, hee stileth himselfe, *The seruant of the Supreame God, the Conqueror in his cause, the successor aduanced by God, &c.* He flayed off the skin from the carkasse of *Mahomet*, drowned in the battell, as is said, and filled it full of Straw, and sent it through all Prouinces of his Kingdome for a spectacle. He raigned seuen and twentie yeeres. He sent an Embassage into

b *Rec.* his History of Barbarys *p.* 1.

c The Turkes fingers haue itched to bee dealing with their parts euer since *Soliman* time, and haue therfore willingly entertayned all occasions to offer their ambitious desiues. *Nic. Hounger.*

d *Michael ab Isseli, continuatio Surii in. An.* 1575 & 1578.

e *Io. Thom. Freigius hist. decade Sebast.*

f *Nic. Doglioni, Compendio Hist. part.* 6.

g *G. Willins* calls him *Mully Mahomet.*

h *Edmund Hogan in Hakluyt tom.* 2. *part.* 2.

i *Henry Roberts Hak. ib.* 3. 119.

into England, [b] *Anno* a thousand sixe hundred and one, performed by *Abdala Wahad Anowne.*

His people did so feare him, that *Abdala* [c] *Creme* his Customer, hauing one onely Sonne, (who in an idle businesse and busie idlenesse, would needs feed his curious eyes with the sight of the Palace where the Kings Concubines were) caused him to bee strangled before his face.

He gouerned the Alarbes (which are supposed to bee of Arabian Race, and said to vse the Arabike Language, Inhabitants of the plaine and Champaine Countries of Marocco, Fez, and Sus) in peace and subiection receiuing their tenths duly paid. The Brebers or Mountainers are the Natiues and ancient Inhabitants, chased by the former into strong Cities, and the Naturall Forts of Hils (as our Progenitors serued the Britaines, forcing them to the Mountaines of Wales and Cornwall) a people of another Language (called *Tamaset*) and dispositon, which hee could not so easily tame, and therefore in policie hee drew them into forreine Expeditions, especially against the Negros, thereby extending his Empire so farre that way, as by Camell it was sixe moneths iourney from Marocco, to the extremest bounds. Likewise he vsed them to goe with the [d] Carauans to *Gago* to fetch home his yeerely Tribute. He conquered *Tombuto* and *Gago*, about the yeere 1594. as appeareth by the Letters of [e] *Lawrence Madoc*, who saw thirty Mules laden with Gold come from thence to *Marocco*, and sayth that *Tombuto* rented threescore Quintals of Gold. He was much delighted in Astronomie, as M. *Thomas Bernhere* hath written in a Letter [f] to Master *Edward Wright*, to whom hee sent for Mathematicall Instruments to be vsed in that yeerely Voyage to *Gago* ouer the sandie Sea, where they vsed Needle and Compasse.

His prouisions for his *Ingenewes* or Sugar-gardens, for his buildings, maintenance of his women (rather for the pompe then the sinne) I let passe. For passed they are now, and gone, together with himselfe, his three Sonnes, by Ciuill Warres, leauing scarce hope of good, or place for worse state then is now in Barbary, and hath beene these many yeeres. Hee dyed of the Plague, which was so violent in these parts, that by *Wilkins* [g] report there dyed aboue foure thousand and seuen hundred in one day and night thereof in *Marocco*, and in one yeere seuen hundred thousand *Moores*, and seuen thousand seuen hundred *Iewes*. In the Citie of *Far* (I thinke he meaneth *Fez*) dyed the same yeere fiue hundred thousand, besides those which perished in the Countrey and other places: so many (sayth hee) as if Barbary had beene the common buriall place of the World; and the liuing were not able to burie the dead, neither did the earth couer and bury them, but they buried and couered the earth, the high-wayes being strowed with dead, infected, and infectious carkasses. A plentifull Haruest found not Labourers to inne it, but shed it selfe on the ground; and the cattell mourned for want of Milkers. Here was no want of store, and soone after (the plague ceasing) no store but of want: *Famine* succeeding in place, and exceeding the others cruelties. And lest a third furie should be wanting, the *warres* betweene the late *Hamets* Sonnes, followed the former at the heeles, that as with a threefold cord, Barbary is welnigh strangled and dead.

b *Ro.* C. his History of Barb. c *G.W.*

d Carauan is a company of Merchants going together with their goods and beasts.

e *Madoc. Hack.*

f *Bern.* let Marocco. 1600.

g *G. Wilk.* mis-ferries of Barbarie.

§. III.

Of the Ciuill Warres in Barbary: And of some other parts of that Kingdome.

THe Sonnes of *Hamet* were *Mahomet*, commonly called *Sheck*, a title proper to the Kings eldest Sonne; *Boferes* his Brother by the whole blood: *Sidan*, by another woman; as *Nassar* and *Abdela*. *Muley* is a title of honour, giuen to the Kings Children, and all of the blood Royall. *Muley Sheck* was made Gouernour of Fez in his Fathers life time, *Boferes* of *Sus*; and *Sidan*, of *Tedula*, in the mid-way betweene Fez and *Marocco*. *Muley Sheck* so displeased his Father by his vnbridled courses, that hee went with an Army to Fez to displace him, and to set things there in order, leauing *Boferes* (lately returned from Sus, because of the plague) in the gouernment of *Marocco*. *Sheck* tooke Sanctuary with fiue hundred of his best Souldiers, from whence his Father caused him to bee brought by force, and sent him prisoner to *Mickenes*: but before he could finish his purposes, the fourteenth of *August* 1603. he died. *Sidan* had followed his Father in this Expedition, and taking aduantage of his presence, seized on the treasures, and proclaimed himselfe King of Barbary, and heire to his Father. What *Sidan* had done at Fez, the like did *Boferes* at *Marocco*, and at *Taradant*. *Nassar* made some stirres, but soone after died of the Plague. *Boferes* sendeth *Bussiar Iudar* to encounter with *Sidan*, who was now come with his forces against

gainst him, and beeauſe him ſelfe had not the heart, to hazard his perſon in battell, knowing that it would be no ſmall diſcouragement, if there were none his equall in bloud, hee on certaine conditions, freed his elder brother *Muley Sheck*, who the ſixt of *Ianuary* 1604. chaſed *Sidan* out of the field. Hence all old quarrels, and feuds, and robberies, and a world of other miſchiefes now * began to fill all the parts of Barbary. *Muley Sheck* in Fez proclaimes himſelfe King. Thus is all inuetted, many Kings and few Subiects: none now in this vncertainty paying their accuſtomed tenths, intending rather mutuall feuds and battles betwixt their ſeuerall Tribes and Kindreds, then common fidelitie and allegiance. *Sidan* by aide of the Great Foquere, or Heremite, obtayneth Sus, the people yeelding obedience to none but whom that Religious perſon ſhall appoint them: by meanes of him alſo, a peace was concluded betwixt *Boferes* and *Sidan* in *Auguſt*, 1604. Thus was the warre continued betweene *Sheck* and *Boferes*. *Abdela*, *Sheck* ſonne, driueth *Boferes* out of Marocco, in the latter end of the yeere 1606. vſing his victory with bloudy cruelty, beſides the tiſling and pillage of the goods in the City. Bloud is a ſlippery foundation, and pillage a pill'd wall: ſo fell it out to *Abdela*, who ſoone loſt the City to *Sidan*; which he had taken from *Boferes*, after a bloudy field fought betwixt them in *April* after. Here *Sidan* puts to the Sword three thouſand Felſans, which had taken Sanctuary, and came forth diſarmed, vpon promiſe of Pardon, which *Boferes* after with like perudioulneſſe, and breach of promiſe, requited on three thouſand Morochians. The Shracies (which are Mountayners neere to Algier, but no more reſpecting the Turkes there, then the Brebers doe the Serif) fell at variance, and began to mutinie in the Army of *Sidan*, whom they ſerued; and cut off the Baſhas head, who was their Generall, which cauſed *Sidan* to execute vniuſt cruelties againſt all of that Tribe in Marocco, giuing the Shracies goods to the Murtherer whomſoeuer. On the twentieth ſix of *Nouember* 1607. *Abdela* ioyneth in battle with *Sidan*, prouoked by thoſe Shracies who thirſted for reuenge of *Sidans* tyrannies, where many Engliſh, vnder Captaine *Giffard*, and other Captaines were ſlaine, *Sidan* chaſed, and Marocco recouered.

But whiles theſe brethren contend, *Muley Hamet Boſonne* their Couſin, rich in treaſure, richer in hopes, thought it fit time to take vp that Kingdome, which theſe with warring for it loſt. He gathered together whatſoeuer forces he could make, and came towards Marocco. *Abdela* heard and feared, and hauing ſpied a man vpon a Hill with a Speare in his hand, with white linnen like a flagge vpon it: his feare (an vntruſtly Meſſenger, told him, that all *Boſonnes* Armie was behind the Hill, although it were then a full dayes march from thence and) lent him wings to flye to Fez. The man was but a ſilly Moore, which had waſhed his Linnen, and dryed it on his Speares point. *Boſonne* entreth Marocco, and proclaymes himſelfe King, but loſeth both City and Kingdome in *April* following, 1608. and after a ſecond ouerthrow receiued by *Sidan* now Maſter of Marocco, hee was by *Alkeid Acus* his meanes poyſoned. *Muley Sheck*, loth to leaue Marocco to *Sidan*, ſendeth *Esna* an Italian Merchant into Spaine, with promiſe to the Catholike King, of Allaroche, Saly, Alcaſar, and other Townes to turne Spaniſh, if he would helpe him to his right in Afrike. This Negotiation was well entertayned, and the Spaniard now hath [a] Allaroche. Since this time rare accidents haue hapned by certaine Religious perſons, after the Moores account, which Hiſtory is thus reported.

A certaine Foquere, Talbie, Heremite or Saint (names giuen by diuers to the ſame) called *Side Hamet Ben Abdela*, liued in Wed Sowre, forty dayes iourney beyond Marocco Eaſtward, where ſometime hee entertayned *Sidan* to his great content, fleeing then to his [b] *Horne* or defence in time of diſtreſſe. This man the Moores report to be a great Magician, that he could feed three hundred Horſe at one pit of Barley, and the ſame no whit diminiſhed, that he had foretold of plenty the laſt yeere, which came accordingly to paſſe, that hee could by his Art ſecure men from the danger of Gunſhot. Hee being of great reputation for Wealth, Learning, and Holineſſe, gathered a band of men, and conducted them to Marocco. *Sidan* with an Armie of ſixteene thouſand, giues him battle at Marocco, the [c] tenth of May 1612. and was ouerthrowne. For he went himſelfe, and led his Company on the mouth of the Ordnance without harme; he cauſing (as the Moores report) that the bullets ſhould ſtill remayne in the Peeces when they were diſcharged, [d] as he had often for the confirmation of his people made triall before, ſetting ſortie Gunners to ſhoot at as many others without harme by the like Art. Thus hee loſt none of his owne, and many of the other were ſlaine. *Sidan* fled to Safia, and embarques his two hundred women in a Flemming: his riches, in a Marſilian: This was taken by *Don Luys* the Spaniſh Admirall, wherein were thirteen cheſts of Gold (or as Maſter *Ioſeph Keble* then at Saphia reported to mee, fifty fardels of Arabike Bookes, valued at a Million of treaſure; he ſaw ten of thoſe fardels.) The other ſhip at *Santa Cruz*, met *Sidan*, and deliuered him his women. Men were more neceſſary, which he wanted, and yet (worſe then their want) ſome offered their ſeruice for pay, and receiuing it, forſooke

* Of theſe warres and the Geneaologie of this Seriffian Family, ſee *Laur. Bayerlinckij opus Chron. to. 2. in An. 1603.*

a He hath alſo diuers other Cities, Tanger, Seuta, &c. in thoſe parts.

b The Moores call their protection or defence, a *Horne*, as is vſual in the Scriptures.

c The Letter of *R. S.* ſince printed, May 10.

d *R. S.* ſaith that he foretold three ſhould goe off without harme the reſt ſhould take fire, but not goe off: & ſo it fell out.

sook him, whereby he was forced to flee into the Mountayns, where he is faid yet to remaine. *Sidi Hamet*, now called *Mully Hamet Ben Abdela*, placed a Gouernour in Marocco, another at Taradant, the cheife City of Sus.

Since I published these [e] Relations, certaine Letters haue beene printed, and entituled *Newes from Barbary*, which more largely discourse of this Saint: That hee is about thirtie six yeeres, very ciuill and plaine in habit, his Turbant of course Calico, his Alheik or loose Gowne of Lile Grogram, a plaine Sword by his side, hanged with a plaine leather thong, a man of great Wildome and Learning, an Astrologer and Politician. He hath drawne to him *Alcaid Azm* aforesaid, the principall Counseller of the Land, and many other Saints and principall men, and since his comming hath married the Widdow of *Muley Boferis*. He alledgeth certaine Prophecies which foretell these his proceedings in reuiuing their Law, rooting out the *Xeriffes*, and establishing peace in his Reigne, which shall continue fortie yeeres, after which Christ (as hee saith) shall come to Iudgement. The *Talbies* and learned men doe confesse, that they find these Prophecies of him in their Bookes: to wit, both his name, his beginning at *Missa*, his course, and certaine bodily characters, as a Wart aboue his right eye, a blacke or gray tooth before (which Master *Keble* saith he saw) a Ring in the palme of his right hand, and a Spurre in his right foot, a bunch of haire betweene his shoulders, and others to the number of seuen; all which agree to him. At his beginning he put forth onely one Tent and a Kitchin, and then reforted to him the Shrokies, a Saintish people in their Law, but otherwise in behaiuour very Sauages, of which a hundred and fittie, or two hundred serued him without pay, with whom he brake *Albadge Lemere* his forces (seruants to *Sidan*) being fiue hundred strong. His Shrokis encreated to fiue hundred, with whom and others that added themselues by the way, he ouerthrew *Sidans* forces three times before the battele. Then did he subdue certaine Mountayners, which *Sidan* (nor his Father) could neuer bring vnder. By the way to Marocco hee was to passe a Riuer, and warned his people that none should take vp water in their hand to drinke, which some doing, anon after dyed. Comming to Dets, where hee found a great Power to withstand him, hee comforted his fearefull followers, with promise, that to morrow they should see more with him, then against him: and remouing his Tents that night, there seemed a'other Armie greater then theirs, till they came at Dets, and then vanished, the enemies first with fight thereof hauing fled, and left all to the spoyle. This, saith our Authour, [f] our Countriman *M. W.* with diuers others, sweare they haue seene (if any credit, or the name of our Countriman bee to be giuen to a Renegado) He himselfe with some other of our Nation went to see him, and receiued kinde entertainment, with promise of fauour to the English, willing them to take knowledge that hee was sent by Gods appointment to releeue all of all sorts, and to aduertise what they had seene, saying they should see more strange matters come to passe: meaning, as they gheffed, the conquest of Spaine, France, and Italy, which opinion he possesseth the foolish Moores. For when hee hath set peace in those parts, hee tels them of a Bridge (recorded in their Writings to haue beene in former times) which shall appeare in the mouth of the Straits, to carry them ouer. But what will bee the issue is vncertaine, the people soone after beginning to disobey, the Shabenites and Brebers robbing to the gates of Marocco. Another [g] reporteth that euery day they flee from him more and more, and *Muley Sidan* is expected againe. Him yee last left at *Santa Cruz*, from whence (as by later intelligence [h] I haue receiued) he went to *Side Hia*, another famous Foquere in the Mountaines of Atlas, at whose Zowia (or Religious House) being arriued, hee sate downe on a stone, nor would enter till he had obtayned conference; where they agreed on conditions, that *Sidan* should leaue his tyrannies, and proclayme pardon to the aduerse party, *Hia* promising accordingly his best assistance.

This the next yeere 1613. was performed. *Side* [i] *Hia* gathering an Armie of 50000. men, most of which were Brebers of the Countrey of *Hea* or Haha, with which hee marched towards Marocco. *Mully Sydan* in the meane while had gliden diuers battles or slighter skirmishes to *Mully Hamet*, with losse to himselfe, notwithstanding his promise of seuen dayes sacke of Marocco to his Souldiers, if they could recouer it. *Mully Hamet* was neere Azamor [k] at this approch of *Hia*, from whence he made more haste then speed (being then about fifteene thousand strong) with a thousand Horse riding before, and leauing the rest of his Armie to follow. With this handfull of men, and heart full of manly courage, he set vpon the great Armie of *Side Hia*, three times preuayling, but at last with multitudes was ouerthrowne; his Horse first, and himselfe after, being slaine with a shot, his wonted Deuill, or Imposture, now failing, *Hia* killing, and many of his followers vpon him; till a certaine *Alcayde* knowing him, cryed that *Bomohali*, that is, the King of cloats or rags was slaine; whereupon all forsooke him and fled, his other troupes now also comming to the flight, which before his indiscretion and impatience would not suffer him to vse in the fight.

e In the first Edition of this Booke. See of this King, *A. Iansons Gesbolelg.* 1612.

f *R. Sh. lit. Sesh*, who was with him foure dayes.

g *G. B.* letter, h *Iansons Gesbolelg. M. Fanshaw*, and principally *Ma Iosepb Keble* then in Barbary.

i *Side* is as much as *Dominus*, Lord or Master, a title giuen to their Religious.

k Fifte miles from Marocco.

Thus died this glorious vainglorious Saint, a man of great valour, which hee had tryed in thirty seuerall [f] Battailes and skirmishes: in which he obtained the better, both against *Sidan* and the Mountayneers, whole Corne-fields he burnt, destroyed their Vineyards, and in two or three dayes had cut down sixty thousand Oliue-trees. The place of this battle betwixt *Hamet* and *Hia*, was in or neere the Gardens (which are said to extend foure miles from *Marocco*) the time in *October*, 1613. *Alcaid Azm* was then in *Marocco*, with the Sonne of *Hamet*: both which vpon this disaster fled with abundance of Treasure, but by the *Barbies* were taken, and *Azm* his head presently smitten off, as the supposed contriuer of many policies to their detriment: *Hamets* Sonne was carried to *Marocco*, and presented to *Sidan*, where after diuers contumelies, opprobriously carried on an Asse diuers dayes, he was at last slaine. When *Sidi Hia* had slaine *Hamet*, hee grew suspected to *Sidan*, because hee did not then presently proclaime him, nor durst he aduenture to the City, till *Hia* had remooued his forces further. The City meane while sullayned diuers abuses by the Souldiers; as before by the Vsurper, in so much that *Sidan* wept when hee entred and saw the beauty of his Palace defaced (which some say is comparable in greatnesse and stateliness to the best in Christendome) and kept within doores three moneths or more. After this comming forth, hee brake his Couenant with *Hia*; and those which before he had pardoned, were now put to death, and some also grieuously [a] tortured. Whereupon *Hia* tooke armes againe, and came neere to *Marocco* with a great Power, which suddenly he was forced to disperse, and to returne home for feare of Treason by *Sidi Lassan* a great man in his Armie, which was reported to hold intelligence with *Sidan*, and to haue written to him.

f Thei sighes are fleighin Barbary: they discharge not their Peeces aboue twice, & then the greatest cry *Hyrla, Hyrla*, &c. makes the other side runne away.

a Hinged vp by the hands, and weights hanged at their priuie members: also Limon peeles dipped in Oile and fired, then dropped on their naked backes, &c. 1616.

Thus barbarous and miserable is the present State of Barbary, *Sidan* (the only Suruiuer of the Brethren) possessing *Marocco*; Fez acknowledging no Souereigne, but the City gouerned by the Magistrates thereof, and in the Countrey each Cast or Tribe by it selfe; *Mully Abdela*, the Sonne of *Mully Sheek*, liues sometimes at *Mecanes*, sometimes at *Alcasar*, little respected, maintayning himselfe by spoyle and robbery; and *Sidi Hia* enioying the Royall profits of the Kingdome of *Sus*. He liues commonly at *Taradant*, holds the Countrey subiect, but arrogates not the title of *King*: His word is *Lanserel hoc layenore Sidi Hia*, that is, *Let the Truth liue, and Sidi Hia flourish*. A late Letter from thence signifies the feare that *Sidan* had of *Hia's* third approch to *Marocco*, in which respect he sent two thousand Souldiers into the Countrey of *Draa*, thence to enter into *Sus*, if such inuasion happened. But we haue beene too tedious Actors of this Barbarian Tragedie. Wee must forward on our Pilgrimage: and now hauing glutted our eyes with bloud, let vs take more quiet view of the other parts of this Kingdome.

Agmet was sometimes called a second *Marocco*, [b] from whence it standeth foure and twenty miles. The Hils and Valley about it, adorned with Gardens and Vineyards, a faire Riuer, and fertile fields, yeelding fifrie fold increase, haue assembled Natures Forces to ioyne with Arte (if Magicke may be so termed, and the Histories write true) for the common good of *Agmet*, and *Marocco*. The Riuer runneth (as is thought) to *Marocco* vnder the ground: which secret passage is attributed to the Wizards of *Ioseph*, Founder of *Marocco*, left the water course should be cut off from the City. This fruitfull *Agmet* in *Leo's* time was peopled onely with Foxes and wild beasts, saue that a certaine Heremite held the Castle with a hundred of his Disciples.

b *Leo l. 2.*

The [c] Mountaynes are very rude, according to their rough and cold places of habitation, many of them couered continually with Snow. In *Nisifa* they gaze and wonder at strangers: in *Semede* they forced *Leo* to play the Iudge and Notarie (accepting no excuse) eight dayes; and then set him in a Church-porch, and after a certaine Prayer, presented themselues with their presents before him, Cockes, Hens, Nuts, Garlike; and some of the better sort a Goat, which all he gaue his Host; money they had none for him.

c The Mountaines of Marocco.

In *Secsiou* there is at all times of the yeere, Snow. There are many great Caues, wherein they winter their beasts in *November*, *Ianuary*, and *February*. They weare no shooes, but certaine Sandals, and are lustie men at ninety or a hundred yeeres old. *Temmella* is an Heretical Hill and Towne, which hath a faire Temple. They are of *Elmabeli* his Sect, and challenge any stranger which comes amongst them to dispute. In *Hantera* are many Iewes of the [d] *Carraim* Sect.

d Carraim Iewes.

The fourth Region of this Kingdom is *Guzzula*, confining with the Hill Ilda on the West, Atlas on the North, Hea on the East. They haue no walled Townes, but great Villages: neither haue they King or Gouernour; the cause of Cuuill Warres amongst them: yet doe they obserue three dayes in a Weeke truce, when euery man may trauell or barter safely. A certaine Heremite, who was reputed a Saint, was Authour of this three dayes truce in each weeke. Hee had but one eye. I my selfe, sayth *Leo*, saw him, and found him to bee trustie, courteous, and liberall.

Duc-

Duccala the fifth Region lyeth betweene Tensift and the Ocean, Habib and Omirabih. At Azaphi the Prince was (in *Leo's* time) murthered at Church, while he was in his deuotions, by a subiect, who was chosen Gouernour; but the Portugals obtayned the place. Azamur, a Citie exceedingly addicted to Sodomie, was also punished with Portugall seauerie, and most of the Countrey thereabouts. In the Hill, called *Greenshill*, liue many Heremites, of the fruits onely there growing. Here are many Altars and Saints after the Mahumetan fashion. *Mahumet* King of Fez, in the yeere of our Lord 1512. passed this way with his Armie, and at euery Altar made a stand, and there kneeling, would thus say; My God, thou knowest that my intent of comming to this wilde place, is onely to helpe and free the people of
10 Duccala from the wicked and rebellious Arabians, and from our cruell enemies the Christians: and if thou doest not approue it, let thy scourge light onely on my person; for these people that follow me deserue not to be punished. Hence he sent me Ambassadour to Marocco. *Leo* an Ambassadour.

Hascora the sixt Region of Marocco, is situate betweene the Riuer Tensift and Quadelhabid. Alemdin in Hascora was conquered to the King of Fez by a Merchant, whose Paramour the Prince had taken away; for which adulterie he was by the Iudges condemned to be stoned. The Prince of Temcenes was so addicted to Arabian poetrie, that hee gaue *Leo*, then a youth of sixteene yeeres old, fiftie ducats for certaine verses hee had made in his praise, and twice as much he sent to his vncle for the same, with a horse and three sluues.

Tedles is the seuenth Prouince of this Kingdome, lying betweene Guadelhabid and Om-
20 mirabih. Tefza the chiefe Towne is beautified with many Temples, and hath store of Priests. The Towne walls are built of a kinde of marble called Tefza, which gaue name to the Town. Mount Dedes is in this Prouince, where the people (for the most part) dwell in Caues vnder the ground; they haue neither Iudges nor Priests, nor honest men among them. For other places, if any thinke vs not more than tedious alreadie, let them resort to *Leo*, whom all follow in their Relations of these parts. When any Christian * will turne Moore, it is their * *G. Wilk. Miseries of Barbarie.*
custome to signifie it to the Christians in those parts: and in place and time appointed, an equall number of both sorts being assembled, and sitting the one ouer against the other, the partie in the middle and presence of both, is demanded of which he will be, and the Christians may vse what arguments they can to dissuade him: which is done three seuerall times.
30 Thus did one of our Nation, who hauing thus killed his owne soule, after murthered another body, and was therefore adiudged to wander like *Cain*, none releeuing him, in which state he pined and dyed.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Arabians populations, and depopulations in Afrike, and of the naturall Africans; and of the beginnings and proceedings of the Mahumetan superstition in Africa: of the Portugals forces and exploits thereon.

40

HAuing often mentioned the Arabians in our former Chapters, it seemes fit to speake somewhat of the comming of that Nation, and their Religion, into Africa from the East, as also of the Armes of the Portugals (before often spoken of) which from the West haue made some impressions in these parts. The Arabian Mahumetisme, euen almost in the infancie thereof, pierced into Africa. In the yeere * of our Lord 637. *Omar* inuaded Egypt, and *Odman* * *Chronol. Aug. P. Diacon. & Zonar. Cuillant. P. Diac. Leont. G. B. B. 3. part. libr. 2.*
in the yeere 650. passed further with fourescore thousand fighting men, and defeated *Gregorius Patricius*, and imposing a tribute on the Africans, departed. In *Leontius* time, in the
10 yeere 698. They inuade and possesse Africa, and appoint Gouernours of their owne: in the yeere 710. They pierced into Numidia and Libya, and ouerthrew the Azanaghi, and the people of Galata, Oden, and Tombuto. In 973. hauing passed Gamben, they infected the Negros; and the first that dranke of their poyson, were those of Messi. In the yeere 1067. *Iataia* sonne of *Ababequer*, entred into the lower Ethiopia, and by little and little infected those people which confine vpon the Desarts of Libya and the rest, and pierced into Nubia and Guinea.

Constantinus the Emperour * among the Prouinces or great Amera-ships, subiect to the Sa- * *Const. Porphyrogenitus de administr. imperia. ex Theophanis historia, cap. 45.*
racens, numbreth Africa for one: the number and order whereof hee hath transcribed from
20 *Theophanes*, and I here from him. The first of these was Persia or Chorassan; the second, Egypt; the third, Africa; the fourth, Philistiem or Rhamlie; the fift, Damascus; the sixt, Chemps or Emessa; the seuenth, Chalep; the eight, Antiochia; the ninth, Charan; the tenth,

tenth, Emet; the eleuenth, Esipe; the twelfth, Mulel; the thirteenth, Tierit. But when as Africa shooke off the yoke of the *Ameras* of Bagdad, and had an Amera of her owne, afterwards by occasion of the weaknesse of the Amera of Bagdad, the Amera of Persia or Choraſan freed himselfe also, and called himselfe *Amerumnes*, wearing the Alcoran hanging down his necke in Tables like a chaine, and saith, hee is of the kindred of *Alem*: and the Amera of Egypt (to whom the Amera of *Arabia fœlix*, had alway beene subiect) became also his owne man, calling himselfe *Amerumnes*, and deriuing his pedigree from *Alem*. This as it giues light to the Saracen Historie in generall, so it sheweth the greatnesse of the Arabian or Saracenicall power in Africa, where first they made head against their Masters, in the time as is said before of *Elagleb* then Deputie or Amera in Cairaoan, whose example became a president to the Amera's of Persia and Egypt: and (which is more to our present purpose) was occasion of further spreading their superstition through Africa; the fountayne or sinke thereof being now not farre off in Damasco or Bagdad, but in the heart of Africa, Satan there choosing *his Throne* for these his Vicars or Caliphs's (for so the word, saith * *Scaliger*, signifieth) which as you haue heard, were too faithfull in that their infidelitie. And because I haue mentioned *Scaligers* interpretation of the word *Chalipha*, it should not be amisse to adde out of the same place, that the first Gouernours or Generalls after *Mahumet* (or as hee calls him, *Muhammed*) were called *Emirelmumenin*, that is, Captaines of the Orthodox or right beleeuers. Afterwards, because vnder colour of Religion, they sought, not onely a Priestly primacie, but a tyrannicall Monarchie, they chose rather to bee called *Chalipha*. The first *Emirelmumenin* was *Abubecher*. When his successors sent their Lieutenants into Africa and Spaine, they gouerned a while vnder them, doing all in the name of the *Emirelmumenin*, although nothing in a manner but a Title was wanting of the fulnesse of power to themselues. But after, they entitled themselues *Emire Elmumenin*, and of Deputies became Kings: which was done by the petit Kings of Spaine, and the Gouernours of Africa. And now the King of Marocco and Fez vseth it. For it is not a proper name, but as the French King is called *Christianissimus*, and the Spanish *Catholicus*. Thus farre *Scaliger*: which seruetha a Glosse for those former names of *Amera*, *Amerumnes*, *Chalipha*, *Miramuldinus*, and many other hence corrupted.

* *Iosf. Ezel. Can. Iesseg. l. 3. Chalipha est Vicarius, quo nomine vocati sunt, qui post Muhammedem rerum potiti sunt, qui & diuinis & humanis praeessunt.*

The meanes of these and other Saracens enlarging their Sect, haue beene principally by Armes: and where they were not of force, by traffique and preaching, * as on the other side of Ethiopia, euen to *Cabo de lor Corientes* in the Kingdomes of Megadazo, Melinde, Mombazza, Quiloa, and Mosambique, besides the Ilands of Saint *Laurence*, and others. But the greatest mischiefe that hapned to Africa, by the Arabians, was about the foure hundreth yeere of the *Hegeira*. For before that time, the Mahumetan Chalipha's, or Amera's, had forbidden the Arabians to passe ouer Nilus with their Tents and Families, that so the Countrey was still peopled by the ancient Inhabitants, howsoeuer it was gouerned by them. For such multitudes of vnbridled and barbarous Nations were not likely to proue dutifull subiects to the Empire. About that time, one *Elcain*, the schismaticall Califa of Cairaoan, as is before in part shewed, hauing by his Generall *Gehour* conquered all the westerne parts, as farre as Sus, employed the same mans valour for the conquest of the East. And Egypt being now together with Syria subdued; *Elcain* himselfe seeing the Calipha of Bagdet, made no preparation to withstand him, by the aduice of *Gehour* (which at that time founded Cairo) passed into Egypt, thinking to inuest himselfe with the Saracenicall souraigntie, committing the gouernment of Barbarie to a Prince of the Tribe *Zanhagia*, who in this absence of his Lord compacted with the Chalipha of Bagdet, and acknowledged his Title in Barbarie, receiuing in reward of his treason from that Bagdet Prelate, the Kingdome of Africa. *Elcain* hauing lost this morsell, to snatch at a shadow, was in great perplexitie what course to take, till a Counsellor of his perswaded him that he might gather great summes of gold, if hee would let the Arabians haue free libertie to passe through Egypt into Africa: which, though hee knew, that they would so waste it by their spoiles, as it should remayne vnprofitable, both to himselfe and his enemies, yet incited by two vehement Orators, *Couetousnesse* and *Reuenge*, at last he granted; And permitted all Arabians which would pay him ducats a piece, freely to passe, receiuing their promise, that they would become deadly enemies to the rebell of Cairaoan. Whereupon ten Tribes or Kindreds of the Arabians (halfe the people of *Arabia deserta*) and a multitude also out of *Arabia fœlix* (as writeth *Ibnu Rachu*, a famous Historian, out of whom *Leo* hath drawne a great part of his African historie) accepted the condition, and passing the Desarts, they tooke Tripolis, sacked Capes, and after eight moneths siege, entred into Cairaoan, filling with bloud, and emptying with spoile, all the places where they preuayled. Thus did those kindreds of Arabians settle themselues in these parts, forcing the Prouinces adjacent to tribute: and remayned Lords of Africa, till *Iosph* founded Marocco, who aided the posteritie of the rebell against them, and brake their yoke, from the tributarie cities.

* About two hundred yeers after the death of *Mahomet*, all Barbarie was infected with that pestilence, *Leo, lib. 1.*

But *Mansor* the fourth King and Calipha of the sect of *Muoachedin*, begin, as is said, by

Elmabeli

Elmabels and *Abdul Mumen*, preferred the Arabians, and induced them to make warre vpon those their enemies, whom easily they conquered. He also brought all the chiefe and principall of the Arabians into the westerne Kingdomes, and assigned them more noble places for habitation, to wit, the Prouinces of Duccala and Azgar: to those of meane condition hee appointed Numidia, which at first were, as it were, slaues to the Numidians; but after recouered their libertie, and obtayned the dominion of that part of Numidia assigned them, euery day encreasing in power: those which inhabited Azgara and other places in Mauritania, were all brought into seruitude. For the Arabians out of the Desarts, are as fishes out of the water: Atlas on the one side, and the other Arabians on the other side, suffered them not to passe into the Desarts, and therefore they laid downe their pride, and applyed themselues to husbandrie, dwelling in their Tents, and paying yeerely tributes to the Kings of Mauritania, from which those of Duccala, by reason of their multitudes, were free. Many Arabians remayned still in Tunis, which after *Mansors* death, they tooke and made themselues Lords of the Regions adioyning; where some of them bare great sway till *Leo's* time: the other deprived of their wonted pay at Tunis, committed great robberies and slaughters of Merchants and Trauellers.

The Arabians, which inhabited Africa, are diuided into three peoples, *Helel*, and *Chachin*, which are said to descend of *Ismael*, therefore by the Mahumetans esteemed more noble: the third is termed *Machil*, deriued from *Saba*, and came thither out of *Arabia felix*. The diuisions and subdiuisions of these into their seuerall Tribes and Families, which *Leo* hath done, would perhaps to our nice Readers seeme but an harsh heape of strange names, and for their sakes I will referre the studious hereof to that our Author.

The Tribe Etheg, which *Mansor* placed in Duccala, and in the Playnes of Tedles, in later times suffered much damage by the Portugals on the one side, and the Kings of Fez on the other: they are about one hundred thousand men of warre, halfe horse-men. The Sumaites in the Desarts neere Tripolis can arme fourescore thousand men: *Sahid* in the Desarts of Libya, can bring into the field almost an hundred and fiftie thousand of their Tribe. The *Ruche* are not rich, but in agilitie of body miraculous, and account it a shame if one of their foot-men be vanquished of two horse-men: nor is any amongst them so slow, that he will not out-goe any the swiftest horse, be the iourney neuer so long. The *Vode* dwell betweene Gualata and Guading, and are esteemed about threescore thousand warriours. The other kindreds of them are exceeding many, dispersed through Africa, some-where commanding, other-where subiect. And as they liue in diuers places, so doe they obserue differing customes. Those which dwell betweene Numidia and Libya liue miserably: they make merchandize of their Camels with the Negros, and many Horses which are sold into Europe, termed horses of Barbarie. They are much addicted to Poetrie, and make long Poems of their warres, huntings, and loues, with great elegance, and that in rithme, like the vulgar Italian Sonets. They are (the destinie of Poets) courteous, but poore. The Arabian Inhabitants betweene Atlas and the Sea, are more rich in corne and cattell, but more base and barbarous in conditions. Amongst the Arabians neere Tunis, a good Poet is highly esteemed, and amply rewarded of their great men, neither can the neatnesse and grace of their verse easily be expressed. When they goe to warre, they carry their wiues with them on Camels, and that (to make vp the wonder) to incourage them. The Arabians betweene Barbarie and Egypt leade a wretched life in those barren Desarts, forced, not onely to exchange their cattell for corne, but to pawne their sonnes in great numbers to the Sicilians, who if they breake day, make slaues of them: and therefore they exercise all robberies, and sell any stranger (they can lay hold on) to the Sicilians for corne.

Now for the naturall and natiue Inhabitants of Africa, the white men (so they are in comparison of the Negros) are diuided into fiue peoples, *Sanhagia*, *Musmuda*, *Zeneta*, *Haoara*, and *Gumera*. The Musmuda inhabit the Regions of Hea, Sus, Guzula, and Marocco. Gumera inhabiteth the Mountaynes alongst the Mediterranean, from the Streits to Tremizen. These two dwell seuered from the others, and maintayne continuall warres one with another. As Authors say, they were wont to haue Tents, and the wide fields for their habitation, and those that were conquered, were sent to inhabit Cities; the Conquerors were Lords of the fields. The Tribes or Peoples Zeneta, Haoara, and Sanhagia, inhabit Temesine. The *Zenetes* chased the Familie of *Idris* from the dominion of Africa and Fez: and were against themselues, after that, deprived by the Zanhagian families of Luntuna, and of *Abdul Mumen*. The *Benemarins* a Zenetan familie repouered the Empire long after.

They are in these times * diuided into Brebers and Alarbies. The Brebers inhabit the Mountaynes: the Alarbies, the Playnes. Both of them maintayne deadly feuds, and will fight forer battels in such quarrels, then in seruice of their King. Insomuch, that vpon losse of any great man, cruell battels haue beene fought, and ten thousand men slaine at a time.

The

* *Ro. C.* Historie of Barbarie.

The Alarbies haue their faireſt Virgin riding on a Camell, with a flagge in her hand, decked in all pompe to ſol'icite her kindred to reuenge, and goeth formoſt in the field incouraging them to follow. The kindred ſpareth no bloud to ſaue their Virgin, which the other ſide ſtrueth to winne, holding that a continuall glory to the ſeuenth generation. When a man is killed, his Tribe ſeeketh not reuenge on the murtherer onely, but on the firſt man of the Tribe he meets with. The Brebers doe likewiſe. Their women follow them in their battels, with a certaine colour in their hand called *Henna*, which will ſtaine, and therefore they throw it vpon ſuch as offer to run out of the field, the baſeſt ignominie that can befall them.

The *Larbie* and *Breber* doe differ as much in language, as Welſh and Engliſh; the one is giuen to Husbandry, the other very much to Robbery. *Mully Sidan* in theſe late wars, ¶ ſeeing the Larbees alſo become robbers, cauſed the next Dwarre (a Towne of Tents) belonging to that Tribe which herein had fauled, to bee deſtroyed Man, Woman, Child, Kine, Sheepe, and whatſoeuer belongeth to them, by his Souldiers. But after he had loſt the field in the battell with *Muly Sheck*, they foraged vp to Marocco gates, trusting to the ſtrength which that Tribe could make, beeing ſixteene thouſand Horſe. This Tribe or kindred was called *Il eled Eutad*.

b *Leo, lib. 1.* In Africa they are much ſubiect to the Cough: inſomuch b that on the Fridayes when they are in their Mahumetan Sermons, if one fall a coughing, another followes, and ſo from hand to hand all take it vp, and hold on in that ſort, till the end of their Sermon, no man hearing what hath beene ſaid. 2

c The generall vices of the Africans, cha 8. For their morall c conditions, *Leo* thus deſcribeth them, as we haue ſomewhat mentioned before; The inhabitants of the Cities in Barbary are poore and proud, ireſull, and writing all miuries in Marble: vntractable and vnfriendly to Strangers: ſimple, and credulous of impoſſibilities. The vulgar is ignorant of nature, and eſteeme all workes thereof diuine and miraculous. They are irregular in their life and actions, exceedingly ſubiect to choler, ſpeake aloft and proudly, and are often at buffets in the ſtreets. Thus baſe is their diſpoſition, and no leſſe is their eſtimation with their Lords, who make better account of their beaſts. They haue no chiefe men or Officers to rule or Counſaile them. They are ignorant of merchandize, being deſtitute of Bankers and money-changers, and euery Merchant is conſtrained to attend his wares himſelfe. No people vnder Heauen more couetous; few amongſt them, which for 3 loue of God or man will entertaine a ſtranger, or requite a good turne: alwayes encombred with melancholy, they addict themſelues to no pleaſures; the reaſon whereof, is their great pouertie and ſmall gaines.

The Shepheards, both in the mountaynes and fields, liue a laboureſome and miſerable life, a beaſtly, theeuiſh, ignorant kinde of people, neuer repaying any thing committed to them. The young Women before they marry, may haue their Louers in all filthineſſe, none of them beſtowing her virginitie on her Husband: if they bee once married, their louers doe no more follow after them, but betake them to ſome others. The bruti'h Father makes this odious loue to his Daughter, and the beaſtly Brother to his whoreiſh Siſter. The moſt of them are neither Mahumetans, Iewes, nor Chriſtians, but without faith, and without ſo much as a 4 shadow of Religion, neither making any prayers, nor hauing any Churches, but liue like beaſtes. And if any hath any ſmacke of deuotion, yet hauing no Law, Prieſt nor any Rule to follow, hee is forced to liue like the other. Many of them, both in Cities and fields, are found fauoring of better things, both for Arts, Merchandize, and Deuotion, as the ſame *Leo* ſheweth: but thus are the moſt inclined.

Now, to adde ſomewhat further of the Mahumetan Religion in Africa, *Anno* 714. (as ſome * doe reckon) the Saracens, by the incitement of *Iulius* Earle of Suta, as in our third booke is related, inuaded and conquered Spaine. *Leo* in his fifth booke attributeth this to *Muſe* Gouernour of Africa, vnder d *Qualid* the Caliphs of Damaſco, whoſe next ſucceſſour 5 deprived *Muſe*, and ſent *Iezzid* to Cairaoan to ſucceed in his roome, whoſe poſteritie there gouerned till that Houſe was deprived of the Caliphſhip, and the ſeate thereof remouued from Damaſco to Bagdet. Then was *Elagleb* made Lieutenant of Africa, and held it with his poſteritie after him 170. yeeres. After which time *El Mahdi* an heriticall Caliph diſpoſſeſſed them. Of this *El Mahdi* and *Elcam*, and their ſuppoſed hereſies, I haue no certaine Hiſtorie. Certaine it is, that the Mahumetanes from the beginning were diuided, as appeareth of *Idris* in our Hiſtorie of Fez: and more fully in the Catalogue of *Mahomets* next ſucceſſours, which were the next not in blood, but in power. So did *Bubac* or *Abubacer* challenge it, and after him *Homar* and *Ottoman*: contrary to the Teſtament of *Mahomet*, who appointed *Hali* his heyre. *Muauia* alſo murthered *Hali* and his ſonne, to obtaine the Soueraigntie. Thus were they diuided about the true ſucceſſour of their falſe Prophet; which fire is not 6 yet extinct. Another diuiſion was about the interpretation of their Law. e *Abubacer* gaue foundation to the Sect *Melchia* or *Melici*, embraced by the Africans: *Homar* was author of the

* *Ant Guevara Epiſtol. 10. de Barros Aſie dec. 1. lib. 12.*

d Some will haue this *Qualid* or *Vlitado* be the *Miralmumnin* of Africa a Maruanian, whom *Leo* maketh the Eaſt. ne Caliphs.

e *G. B. B hiſt. Sar. lib. 1.*

the sect *Anesia*, which the Turkes and Zaharans in Africke receiue. *Odman* or *Ottoman* lefe behind him the *Banesia*, which hath also his followers. *Hali* was head of the *Inemia*, which is followed by the Persians, Indians, many Arabians, and Gelbines of Africa.

Curio calleth these sects, embraced of the Africans, *Melici*, and as hee affirmeth, *Asophij* of the Syrians and Arabians, *Alambeli* of the Persians, and *Buanisi* of the Alexandrians and Assyrians. Forreine names can scarcely bee translated, but withall are traduced, and of diuers diuerlly called. Of these foure grew threescore and eight Sects of name, besides other more obscure. Amongst the rest were the Morabites, who ledde their liues (for the most part) in Hermitages, and make profession of morall Philosophie, with certaine principles differing from the Alcoran. One of these was that Moabite, which certaine yeeres past shewing *Mahomets* name imprinted in his breast, being done with *aqua fortis*, or some such thing, rayled vp a great number of Arabians in Africa, and layd siege to Tripolis, where being betrayed by his Captaine, hee remained the Turkes prisoner, who sent his skinne to the Grand Seignior. These Morabites affirme, that when *Alle* or *Hali* fought, he killed ten thousand Christians with one blow of his Sword, which they say was an hundred Cubites long. One writes [a] that these Moabites deuoted themselues to a solitary life, and strict penance for certaine yeeres, which being expired, by the merits thereof, they may after loosen the reynes of their lusts to all impuritie without any impuritie, as beeing beyond possibilitie of sinning: (The like wee haue obserued before of the Indian Gymnosophists) and then to enable Nature to vnnaturall degrees of beastly lusts, they eate certaine Herbes, which may melt the heart in and into those flames, for which purpose they vse also in Barbarie a Composition called *Lafis*. The *Cobtini* is as foolish a Sect, one of which shewed himselfe, not many yeeres since, at Algier, mounted on a Reede, with a Bridle and reynes of leather, affirming that hee had ridden an hundred miles on that Horse in one night, and was therefore highly reuerenced. Somewhat also is said before of these African Sects in our Chapter of Fez.

a See 3. part. Th. Pel. pag. 128.

Another occasion diuided Africa from other of the Mahumetane superstition. For when *Muauia* and *Iezid*, his Sonne were dead, one *Marwan* seized on the Pontificalitie, but *Abdalam* the sonne of *Iezid*, expelled him. Hee also had slaine *Holem* the sonne of *Hale*, a little before, whom the Arabians had proclaimed Caliph, and therefore made the Marauinian stocke, of which hee descended, odious to the Arabians. They therefore at Cufa chose *Abdumely* for the Saracenical Soueraigne, who was of *Hali's* posteritie, which they call the *Abazian* stocke or family. Hee sent *Ciafa* against *Abdalan* who fledde and was slaine; *Ciafa* exercised all cruelties against all that Marauinian kindred, drew *Iezid* out of his Sepulchre, and burnt his carkasse, and slaying all of that house, cast their bodies to the Beasts and Fowles to be deuoured. Whereupon one *Abed Ramen* of that familie, (some suppose him the Sonne of *Muauia*) fled into Africa, with great troupes of followers and partakers, where the Saracens receiued him very honourably, *Barrius* [b] tels that *Ciafa* himselfe was Caliph, and that he descended of *Abaz*, of whom that stocke was called *Abazian*; and that he tooke an oath at his Election, to destroy the Marauinians; which hee executed in manner as aforesaid by *Abidela* his kinsman and Generall. To *Abed Ramon* resorted the Mahumetans in Africke, who equalling his heart to his fortunes, called himselfe *Miralmumunin*, which is mis-pronounced *Miramulim*, and signifieth the Prince of the beleeuers; which he did in disgrace of the *Abazians*. Some attribute the building of Marocco to him, which others ascribe to *Ioseph*, as before is said, and some to some other Prince, built (as they say) in emulation of [c] *Badgot*, which the Easterne Caliphs builded for the Metropolitan Citie of their Law and Empire. *Barrius* addeth that he became a *Nabuchodonosor*, to whip and scourge Spaine, which *Vlit* his Sonne, by *Musa* his Captaine wholly conquered in the time of *Rhodericus*. But *Pelagius* soone after wich his Spanish forces began to make head against the Moores, and recouered from them some Townes: which [d] Warre was continued with diuersitie of chance and change three hundred yeeres and more, till [e] *Alphonsus* the sixt tooke Toledo from them: and for diuers good seruices which *Don Henry* [f] had done him in these warres, gaue him his Daughter in marriage, and for her portion, those parts which hee had taken from the Moores in Lusitania, since called the Kingdome of Portugall, with all that hee or his could Conquer from them. Thus was the Kingdome of Portugall planted in the bloud of the Moores, whereby it hath beene so fatned, and hath so batned euer since, that all their greatnesse hath risen from the others losse. For they not onely cleered those parts of that Kingdome of them by an hereditary Warre, but pursued them also into Africa, where *John* the first tooke Scuta from them, so making way to his Posteritie to pierce further, which happily they performed.

b *Dec. 1. l. 1. de fin.*

c Bagdet was built long after this time.

d In two yeeres space it is said, that there perished in those Spanish wars, 700000. people.

e *An. Do. 1110.*

f *Don Henry* Earle of Lorraine. *L. ma. Siculus 19 de rebus Hisp. L. And Rassind. de Ant. Lusit. Aug.* he in a pteome to K. *Sabad.* ritter him. *Africus, Atlaticus Æthiopicus, Arabicus, Persicus, Indicus, Tapobanicus, &c.*

Glor. de reb. gestis Emanuel.

h *Tutum, Asaphi, Castellum regale, Azamor, Titium, Maragan &c. Deam. à Goes.*

Alphonsus the fift Portugall [g] tooke from them Tanger, Arzila, and Alcasare, and others; especially *Emanuel* wanne from them many [h] Cities, and a great part of Mauritania; the Arabians

rabians not refusing the Portugals seruice, till the Seruiff arose in Africa, as euen now was shewed, and chased the Portugals thence.

Thus Spaine hath reuenged her selfe of the Mahumetan iniuries by her two Armes: of Castile (which at last draue them out of Granada, and tooke diuers Townes in the Maine of Africa from them, and King *Philip* now in our dayes hath expelled the remainders of that Race quite out of Spaine:) and Portugall, which thus freed it selfe, and burthened them, by another course did yet more harme to the Mahumetan profession. For *Henry* sonne of *John* the first, set forth Fleets to discouer the Coasts of Africa, and the Ilands adiacent, diuers of which were by the Portugals possessed, and made way to the further discoueries and conquests of that Nation in Africa, and India, to these our dayes, where they haue taken diuers Kingdomes and Cities from the Moores. Of which other places of this Historie in part, and the larger Relations of [i] *Barrius* in his Decades, of *Osorius*, *Maffaus*, *Marmol*, *Arthus*, *Iarric* and others, are ample witnesses.

i *Barrius, Osorius, Maffeius, L. Marmol l. 9. Arthus, Daniel Iesuitus.*
P. Guiric. lib. 3.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Biledulgerid and Sarra, otherwise called Numidia and Libya.

WEe haue now, I suppose, wearied you with so long discourse of that part of Africa on this side Atlas, but such is the difference of the Mindes wearinesse, from that of the Body, that this being wearied with one long iourney, if the same be continued with a second it is more then tired: the other after a tedious and irksome way, when another of another nature presents it selfe, is thereby refreshed, and the former wearinesse is with this varietie abated, yea although it bee, as this is, from a better to a worse. Euen the mounting vp this cold hill, and thence to view the Atlantike Ocean on the West, Southward and Eastward the Desarts, will neither make the Soule breathlesse with the steepe ascent, nor faint with so wide prospects of manifold Wildernesses; this of barren Earth, and that of bare Waters; a third seeming to bee mixt of both, a Sea without waters, an Earth without soliditie, a sand not to hazard Ships with her priuie ambushments, but with open violence swallowing men, and disdaining to hold a foot-print as a testimony of subiection; a winde not breathing ayre, but sometimes the higher Element in fiery heates, and sometimes the lower in sandie showres: once a Nature mocking Nature, an order without order, a constant inconstancie; where it is Natures pastime to doe and vndoe; to make Mountaines and Valleyes, and Mountaines of Valleyes at pleasure. Strange is the composition of these places, but stranger is that of the Minde, which feedes it selfe with the cruell hunger, and satiates thereby with insatiable thirstinesse of these Desarts. And whereas the body feareth to be drowned, euen there, where it as much feareth to want water, in this sandie iourney: the Soule (modell of Diuinitie, life of Humanitie) feares no such accidents to it selfe, but in a sweetnesse of varietie delights to seruey all that her first and Ancient inheritance (howsoeuer since by sinne mortgaged and confiscated) and being sequestred from all societies of Men, can here discourse with GOD and Nature in the Desarts. Hither now, after so long a Preamble, we bring you, and at first present vnto your view Numidia, where you shall bee feasted with Dates which haue giuen the name *Biledulgerid* (that is, Date-Region) thereunto, and before is made one entire part of seuen, in our [k] diuision of Africa. *Ludouicus* [l] *Marmolius* writes it *Biledel Gerid*. Obserue by the way with *Aldrete*, that this Numidia is that of the Ancients, which is part of Barbary, but more Southerly; nor hath this Libya of *Leo* the same bounds with that of the ancient Geographers.

The Easterne border is Ethoacat, a Citie distant one hundred miles from Ægypt; the Westerne is the Atlantike Ocean; the Northerne, Atlas; the Southerne, Libya. This is the habitants thereof are in many places so farre distant from any other. As for example, Tesset a Citie of foure hundred Households is seperated from all other habitations three hundred miles. Some places thereof are better peopled. The Numidia described by [n] *Ptolomey*, *Mela*, and describe: called (saith *Plinie*) *Metagonitis*, and famous for nothing but Marble, and wilde beasts: The Numidiæ called Nomades of their Pastorall life, and change of Pastures, carrying their houses on their Carts. The Cities whereof were Cyrtha, called now Constantina, and Iol, now, as some write, Bugia. The Numidians are notorious for excessiue Venerie. For the Religion of these, whom *Leo* tearmeth Numidians, hee saith, That in olde time they worship-

k *Lib 8. cap. 3.*
l *L. Marmolius.*
Sanutus one of the exactest diuiders of Africa *l. 1.* putteth Libya into 7. desarts, and Numidia into the 4. Lands of Tesset, Segelmes, Zeij, and *Biledulgerid.*
m *Leo lib. 1.*
n *Ptol. l. 4. Plin. l. 5. c. 3.*
P. Mela l. 1. c. 6. Olbarius in Melam. Cel. Rhod. l. 18. c. 38.

worshipped certayne Planets, and sacrificed to them; and were like to the Persians, in worship of the *Sunne*, and the *Fire*, to both which they built Temples, and like the Vestals in Rome, kept the fire continually burning. Christian *Religion* began to quench this *Fire* (as is * thought) in the Apostles dayes, which after was perverted by Arrianisme, subverted by Mahometisme. Iewish Religion had before some footing also, before that Christianisme was Preached to them.

* *Mercyennus Theatrum.*

The Numidians liue long, but lose their Teeth betimes (sowre sauce for their sweet Dates) and their eyes also pay vnkindly tributes to the Sands, which the windes very busily and often send as their Searchers and Customers, till at last they can see to pay them no more. In all Numidia the French disease (as wee terme it) is vnknowne, and in Libya. I haue knowne sixth *Lues*, an hundred persons that haue beene cured of that maladie, onely by passing ouer Atlas and breathing this ayre. This disease was not heard of in Africa, till King *Ferdinand* expelled the Iewes out of Spaine, and the Moores by lying with the Iewes wives got the same; and generally infected Barbary, calling it therefore the Spanish disease. The Plague also infecteth Barbary once in ten, fifteene, or fiue and twentie yeeres, and destroyeth great multitudes, because they haue little regard or remedie for it. In Numidia it is scarce knowne once to happen in an hundred yeeres, and in the Land of Negroes neuer. Worse diseases then Pox or Plague possesse the Numidians, namely, ignorance of Diuine, Morall and Naturall knowledge, Treason, Murther, Robberie, without all respect of any thing. If any or them are hired in Barbary, they are employed in base Offices, Scullians, Dung-farmers, and what not? Neither are the Libyans or Negroes much better.

Of the Numidians and Libyans, are fiue peoples; Zenaga, Guenzaga, Terga, Lemta, and Berdeoa, and liue all after the same manner, and order, that is, without manners or order at all. There garments of base cloath, scarce couer halfe their bodie. The Gentlemen (Gentlemen must pardon me the abasing of the Name) to bee distinguished from the rest, weare a jacket of slew Cotton with wide sleeues. Their Steeds are Camels, on which they ride without Stirrops or Saddles, and vse a goad in stead of Spurres, and a leather fastened in a hole bored thorow the gristles of the Camels nose, serues them for a Bridle; Mattes made of Rushes are their Beds, and Woolli growing on their Date-trees, yeelds matter for their Tents. Their food is often-times patience with an emptie belly: which when they fill, bread or meate is ter any sort is absent: Onely they haue their Camels milke, whereof they drinke a dish-full next their heart: and certainely flesh sodde in Butter and Milke, euery one with his hands raking out his share of these dainties, after drinking the broath; and then drinke vp a cup of Milke, and Supper is done. Whiles Milke lasteth, they care not for water, especially in the Spring-time, all which season, some neuer wash hands or face, because they neuer goe to the places where they may haue Water. And the Camels haue ioyned with their masters in this nuerneesse, not regarding water, whiles they may feed on grasse.

All their life (or that *space* rather, *before they dye*, not worthy the name of *life*) is spent in Hunting, and robbing their enemies; not staying about three or foure dayes in a place, as long as the Grasse will serue their Camels. They haue ouer euery Tribe One, in manner of a King, whom they honour and obey. Very rarely is a Iudge found amongst them, and to him such as are litigious, ride sometimes fiue or sixe dayes iourney. Him will they amply reward with a thousand Duckats more or lesse by the yeere. As for Letters, Arts, Vertue, they dwel not in these Desarts. They are very jealous, which is the death of many. Yet are they liberall after their manner to Strangers, as I my selfe (it is *Leos* report) can testifie. For going ouer the Desarts with a Caruan of Merchants, the Prince of Zanaga encountred vs with fiue hundred men on Camels, and caused vs to pay our Customes: and then inuited vs to his Tents. There did hee kill many Camels to feast vs, both young and old, and as many gelded, and Ostriches, which they had taken in the way. And when the Merchants shewed themselues loth, that hee should make such slaughters of them, he said, That it were shame to entertaine them with small Cattell onely, being strangers. So wee had Roast, and Boyled; and Bread of Panike, very fine; and Dates great plentie. Hee honoured our companie with his presence; but he ate together with his Nobles, seperate from vs: and had with him certaine Religious and Learned men, to sit with him, which all the Meale-time touched no Bread, but onely Flesh and Milke: the reason, the Prince gaue vs, because they were borne in the Desarts, where no Corne grew. Onely they ate Bread on certaine solemne Feasts; as, at Easter, and day of Sacrifices. Thus did this liberall Prince spend on vs ten times the value of his Customes. After this manner also liue the Africans, called *Soana*.

The Tracts of [a] Numidia, most in name, are these: Data, which extendeth it selfe two hundred and fiftie miles in length; where are great store of Date-trees, whereof some are male, and some female; the first brings forth onely Flowers; the other, Fruit. And they take a flowred bough of the male, and engraft it in the female; otherwise, the Dates proue nought and

a *Leo lib. 6.* See of the Palme more fully, *Sup. c. 5.*

and almost all stone. They feed their Goates with the stones of the Dates beaten, and therewith they grow fatte, and yeeld store of Milke. Segelmesse was built (if any list to believe [b] *Bieri*, an African Cosmographer) by *Alexander* the Great. Heere were certaine Colleges and Temples. The people of the Countrey liued on Dates. They haue no Kleas: a small priuiledge; for they haue infinite store of Scorpions.

b *Bieri*, in African Cosmographer, his errours.

Fighig hath industrious and wittie people; whereof, some become Merchants; others, Students, and goe to Fez; where hauing obtayned the degree of Doctors, they returne into Numidia, and are made Priests and Preachers, and so become rich. Tegorarin hath Traffique with the Negros. They water their Corne-fields with Well-water, and therefore are forced to lay on much soyle. In which respect, they will let Strangers haue their houses Rent-free, onely the Dung of Themselues and their Beasts excepted. They will expostulate with that stranger, which shall in some nicer humour goe out of doores to that businesse, and aske him, if hee know not the place appointed thereunto. Heere were many rich Iewes, which by meanes of a Preacher of Telensin were spoyled, and most of them slaine, at the same time that *Ferdinand* chased them out of Spaine.

Techort is a Numidian Towne, exceeding courteous to Strangers, whom they entertaine at free-cost, and marrie their Daughters to them, rather then to the Natiues. Pescara is exceedingly infested with Scorpions, whose sting is present death: wherefore the Inhabitants in Summer time forsake their Citie, and stay in their Countrey-possessions till Nouember.

Libya extendeth it selfe from the Confines of Eloachat vnto the Atlantike, betwixt the Numidians and Negros. It is one other of the Seuen parts, into which wee haue diuided Africa: the Arabians call it Sarra; that is, a Desart. *Plinie* [c] in the beginning of his fift Booke, sayth, That all Africa by the Græcians was called Libya. Taken in a more proper sence, it is diuersly [d] bounded by the Ancients, and therefore wee will heere hold vs to *Leo's* description. The name Libya is deriued from *Lobi*, a Mauritanian King, as some [e] affirme. *Herodotus* [f] saith, of a woman named *Libya*. Among the Libyans are reckoned [g] the *Libyarebe*, *Libiophanices*, *Libyegypti*, and diuers other Nations, euen of the [h] Ancients accused, for want of inward and outward good things, cunning onely in Spoyle and Robberie. The Libyans worshipped one *Psaphon* [i] for their God, induced thereunto by his subtiltie. For he had taught Birds to sing, PSAPHON *is a great God*: which being set at liberties, chaunted this note in the Woods, and easily perswaded the wilde people to this deuotion; which *Ælian* saith, *Annon* had endeuoured in vaine. It was the custome of Women to howle in their Temples, [k] whence some of the Bacchanall Rites were borrowed by the Græcians. Vnto the Libyans are reckoned those Nations, whose barbarous Rites are before related in the seuenth Chapter of this Booke. Wee will now come to later Obseruations. [l] Men may trauell eight dayes, or more, in the Libyan Desarts ordinarily, without finding any water. The Desarts are of diuers shapes, some couered with grauell, others with sand, both without water: heere and there is a lake, sometimes a shrub, or a little grasse. Their water is drawne out of deepe pits, and is brackish, and sometimes the sands couer those pits, and then the Trauellers perish for thirst. The Merchants that trauell to Tombuto, or other places this way, carrie water with them on Camels; and if water faile them, [m] they kill their Camels, and drinke water which they wring out of their guts. Their Camels are of great abilitie to sustaine thirst, sometimes trauelling without drinke twelue dayes or more. Otherwise they were neuer able to trauell thorow those Desarts.

c *Plin. lib. 5.*
d *Strab. l. 17. Ortel. Thesaurus*
e *L. Cornu. ni. Geograph.*
f *Herodot. l. 3.*
g *Niger. Apo. Com. 3.*
h *Iust. Orig. l. 6.*
i *Strabo. Lab. Alex. l. 6. c. 4.*
k *Cal. Rhodig. l. 12. c. 2.*
l *G. Bot. Ben. l. 1 lib. 3. Magimus.*
m *Leo, lib. 1.*

In the Desart of Azaoad there are two Sepulchres of Stone, wherein certaine letters engrauen testifie, that Two Men were there buried; one a very rich Merchant, who tormented with thirst, bought of the other, which was a Carrier or transporter of wares, a cup of Water, for ten thousand Duckats, and dyed neuertheless; both buyer and seller with thirst.

Their liues for lewdnesse resemble the Numidians before mentioned, but for length come much short of them, few attaining to threescore yeeres. [n] They are (as little need as they haue thereof) often plagued with those clouds of Grashoppers, which couer the ayre, and destroy the earth.

n *A. Cadamosto.*

The Libyan Desart of Zanhaga beginning at the Westerne Ocean, extendeth it selfe farre and wide betweene the Negros and the Numidians, to the Salt-pits of Tegaza. From the Well of Azaoad, to the Well of Araoan, an hundred and fiftie miles space, is no water; for lacke whereof, many both men and beasts there perish. Likewise in the Desart Gogdem, for nine dayes iourney no drop of water is found. In the Desart of Targa is Manna found, which the Inhabitants gather in little vessels, and carrie to Agadez to sell. They mingle it with their drinke, and with their pottage: It is very wholsome. Tegaza is an inhabited place, where are many veynes of Salt, which resemble Marble, they digge it out of pits, and sell it to Merchants of Tombuto, who bring them victuals. For they are twenty dayes

iourney

iourney from any habitation, the cause that some times they all die of famine. They are much molested with the South-east winde, which maketh many of them to lose their sighe. Bardeoa was found out lately by one *Hamar*, a guide vnto a Caruan of Merchants, who lost his way by reason of a maladie that fell into his eyes; yet blind as hee was, hee rode vn a Camell; none else being able to guide them: and at euery miles end caused some sand to bee giuen vnto him, whereon hee smelled, and thereby at last told them of an inhabited place, forty miles before he came at it: where, when they came, they were denied water, and were forced by force to obtaine it.

The Riuers that arise out of Atlas, and by the vnkindnesse of their Kinde, fall this way, finding these thirsty Wildernesses to yeeld them the readiest channels, are trained alongst by the allurements of the sands, stouping and crouching to them, till being further from witnesses, they are either swallowed vp of great Lakes, or else whiles they hold on their pursuit for the Ocean, lose themselues in the search, and whiles they are liberall to the thirstie sands in the way, at last dye themselues (I cannot say, diue themselues, as else where in the World) for thirst in the Desarts. And yet through these waylesse wayes, doth couetousnesse carry, both the Arabians in their rouings, and Merchants with their Caruans to the Negros for wealth: whither: I thinke, at last you expect the comming of this our Caruan also.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the Land of Negros.

§. I.

Of the Riuer NIGER, *Gualata, Senaga, and Guinea.*

Nigra arum terra, or the Land of Negros, [a] either is so called of the Riuer Niger, or of the blacke colour of the Inhabitants: some thinke the Riuer is named Niger of the people: it hath on the North those Desarts which we last left; on the South, the Æthiopike Ocean, and the Kingdome of Congo; on the East, Nilus; on the West, the Atlantike. *Leo* makes Gaogo in the East, and Gualata in the West, the limits thereof. On the side of the Riuer Canaga it is sandie and desart, beyond, it is plentifull, being watered with Niger, which runnes thorow the middest of it. There are no Hils neere the bankes of Niger, but woodbie places diuers, receptacles of Elephants. Raines doe neither good nor harme: onely Niger ministers them plenty, as Nilus in Egypt: Their increase is likewise alike; fortie dayes together after the middest of *Iune* doth Niger increase, at which time the Negro Townes are Ilands, and the way to them by Boats; and as many it decreaseth. The Merchants in *Iuly*, *August* and *September*, trade in Boats made of a hollowed tree (like the Indian Canoes.) [b] This Riuer some thinke, ariseth out of a Desart called *Sew*, from a great Lake: some with lesse likelihood, thinke it an arme of Nilus; [c] and some with no truth, thinke it to be deriued from Paradise. It is by Geographers [d] brought from a Lake, which they call Niger, within two degrees of the Equinoctiall, and running thence Northwards, hides himselfe from the violence of the Sunnes furie, vnder a Mantle of Earth, sixty miles together, and then the Earth discouering him, hee runnes not farre, but in reuenge he couereth a great part of the Earth, and drowneth the same in a Lake called Borneo, till the Earth againe with her strong Armes clasped him in straiter bankes, and forceth him to turne his streame Westward, in which way hauing gotten *Fresh* helpe of some other streames, that send in their succours; he againe preuayleth, and ouerthrowes the Earth in the Lake Gubet: but flee getting vp againe, makes him flee to the Ocean for ayde, with whose tide-forces assisted, he rends the Earth into many Ilands, which hee holds as Captiues betweene his waterie [e] armes of Senaga, Gambra, and diuers others, which euer let slip their hold, and yet euer hold them in euerlasting captiuitie. In this combate wilhes both parts *sweate* in contention a *fatter excrement* is left behind, which all this way heartens the Earth with admirable fertilitie: especially then when the Cloudes in the Summer time cake Nigers part, and daily marshall their mighty showres to the Riuers ayde, shooting off continually in their march their Airic Ordnance, with dreadfull lightnings, whereat the amazed Earth shrinkes in her selfe, and the insulting waters for three monethes

space

a *Magnus. Gi. Bot. Ben.*

b *Ia Leo lib. 7.*

c *Cadamosto.*

d *Ortel. Ramusius &c.*

e *Ortelius* and others in their Maps, make Senaga and Gambra to be armes or mouthes of Niger. *Sanutus* thinkes it to be *Rio Grande.* *Leo* takes the opinion of some which thinke it to come from Nilus by some vnder-earth passage. The truth is vncertaine, the angry Deities not admiring due search,

space trample ouer all, and send Colonies of fishes to inhabit the soyle, engirting meanewhile all the Townes with a strait siege. But when the Sunne, in his Autumne Progresse, sends forth the Winds to summon the Clouds to attend on his fiery Chariot; The Earth by degrees lookes vp with her dirty face (bemired with washing) and makes vse of the slime, which cannot runne away with the fleeting waters, to serue her all the yeere after, as Treasurer of her plenty and abundance.

m *Leo lib.7.*

Biebri and *Mesfunde*, ancient African Writers, knew little of these parts: m but a Mahumetan Preacher in the 380. yeere of the *Hegeira*, made the people of Luntuna, and Libya, of his faithlesse faith: and after that, they were discouered. They lined, saith *Leo*, like beasts, without King, Lord, Common-wealth, or any gouernment, scarce knowing to sow their grounds: clad in skins of beasts: not hauing any peculiar wife; but lye tenne or twlue men together, each man chusing which he best liked. Warre they wage with no other Nation, nor are desirous to trauell out of their Countrey. Some worship the Sunne at the rising: Others, as the people of Gualata, the Fire: and those of Gaoga are Christians like the Egyptians; *Ioseph* King of Marocco subdued them: and after that the fiue peoples of Libya, of whom they learned the Mahumetane Law, and other Artes, and the Merchants of Barbary frequented those parts. The Libyans diuided them into fifteene parts, each third part of those fiue peoples possessing one.

n *Anno* 1526.

But the n present King of Tombuto, *Abuaci Izchia*, being made Generall of the Forces of *Sons Heli* the former King, which was a Libyan, after his death slue his Sonnes, and brought the Kingdome to the Negros, conquering many Prouinces. After which he went to Mecca on Pilgrimage, and thereby set himselfe in debt an hundred and fifty thousand Ducats. A great part of those Parts by their difference of Language and Religion, is yet vnknowne to vs.

o *Ric. Rainolds. Hack.*

Gualata was subdued by the King of Tombuto, a beggerly Countrey. This Region adioyneth to Cape Blanco. The Portugals, when they discouered these Coasts for *Henry* the *Infanta*, traded heere for slaues as farre as Canaga, or Senaga (to which our Nation o hath since traded) and is an arme, as is said, of Niger. Heere begins the Countrey of Guinea or Ginny, in which we will first giue description of the Kingdomes and Nations alongst the Coast: next, we will set downe some obseruations of former times: in the third place, those of the Dutch, and lastly, of the Iesuits.

Iarric. Thes. Rer. Indic. tom. 3. l. 1. c. 44.

The Portugals reckon all to Guinea, from Sanaga, in sixteene degrees to the North, and the Angolan limits in thirteene degrees of Southerly Latitude: so called of *Genus* situate on the said Riuer: All the Kingdomes of Congo and Angola they terme the *Lower*, the Northerly part, the *Higher Guinea*: Senaga, Sanaga or Zanaga, the Ancients called Stachiris or Darat. From hence Southward is Cape Verd or the Greene Cape, anciently called *Arsinarium*, against which are twelue Ilands, which beare name of this Cape, which being desart were first inhabited by the Portugals.

Anno 1446. On the Coast (for wee must leaue these Ilands to their due place) the first Kingdome is that of the Ialophs or Ialoeses bounded with Zanaga on the North, the Sea on the West, on the East the black Ialoeses, called Fulli Galalli, on the South the Berbecines; a Region containing a hundred and fiue and twenty leagues in length. The Countrey is rich in Fruites and Gold, whereof in p Tubucato in great store. In these parts are many Portugals turned wilde and barbarous after the fashion of the Natiues, hauing in manner put off all Christianity: in nakednesse, in figuring their skinnes with indelible Characters and formes of diuers creatures, and in like behaviour conforming themselues to the Negros. They are called *Tangos maos*, and through all Guinea procure such Commodities as they may sell to European Merchants. Southwards from hence are the Kingdomes of Ala and Brocall, inhabited by the Berbecines: these worship the New Moone, and sacrifice to certaine Trees, which they embrue with the bloud of the slaine Sacrifices, and with meale of Rice. When the King of Ala goes to Warre, hee assembleth his chiefe men into a Groue neere the Palace: where they digge a *Dutch* in a round Circle, and there euery man declareth his opinion: after this consultation the Ditch is closed, and vnder paine of Treason, all which hath beene spoken must bee concealed; and as it were thus buried. The Maydens beautifie themselues with such skinne-figures as yee haue heard, on their bodies and faces, cut and pounced, with the iuyce of Hearbes made to endure: they also bore their lips, especially the lower, inserting in the holes bones and peeces of Wood; and weighting things to make it hang from the vpper lip: Opinion can giue loathsomenesse the prize of Beautie. The Kingdome of Brocall extends to Gambea, which Riuer is so great, deepe, and strong, that the Sea in thirtie leagues from the mouth (which opens it selfe fiue leagues in disgorging his full stomacke) can scarcely subdue it vnto his salt qualitie: Some thinke it proceedes from the same Fountayne with Niger; whence these peoples are called Negros,

Ialophi.

p Tombuto.

Tangos maos.

Ala and Brocall.

Mens mutire nefas? nec clam? nec cum Scrobe? Pers. Sat. 1.

gros, some, that this and Zanaga proceed from the same head. Midway be w[illegible] the Greene Cape.

Alongst both sides of this Riuer dwell the Mandingæ, a perfidious and Idolatrous [illegible] tion, which haue certaine Inchanters called *Bexerins* to performe their Priestly [illegible] The Riuer is sayled vp a hundred and threescore Leagues, horrible Precipices and Cataracts, forbidding further passage by water: they call this tall a Bow, for the obliquitie of the tall, suffering men to passe vnder without wetting. Many fertile and pleasant Ilands are contayned in the diuided armes of this streame. The Inhabitants haue Shippes of good tightnesse and strength. Not farre hence to the South is Cape Saint *Marie*, from which to the Riuer of Dominico is thirtie leagues, peopled by the Arriari and Falupi. Here is also the Riuer Casamanqua, inhabited on the North by the Iabundi, on the South the Benbuni, to whom on the East adioyne the Casangæ; the King is subiect to the King of Iarem, and hee to another more within Land, and so in degrees vnto the Monarch of Mandinga, whose chiefe Citie is Songus, aboue a hundred leagues Eastward from the Cape of Palmes: to this King the most of the former are subiect. The Casangæ worship an Idoll called China, which is nothing else but a bundle of staues or poles pitched into the ground, and fastened ogether with paste made of the meale of Rice and Millet, which they sprinkle with the bloud of sacrificed Kine and Goates. Some hang on the top thereof two or three skuls of Dogges. The Temple to this goodly Deitie is some shadie Tree, and there they offer also Millet, and the Wine of Palmes. To secure their Seede they sticke one of these poles in the ground. The Portugals buy staues in these parts, sold by reason of the Kings vnreasonable tyrannie.

Mandingæ.

Casangæ.

Songus Imperials citie of Negros.

The Burami adioyne to the Casangæ on both sides the Riuer Iarim or Dominico; as farre as Rio Grand. Here also they buy staues. The men and women file their teeth: the women to keepe their tongues in order, euery morning take a draught of water into their mouthes, and there hold it till Dinner or Breakfast time, meane-while doing their houshold businesse, not spitting, eating, or talking. The chiefe Towne of the Burami is eight leagues from the Hauen, where the chiefe King to whom the rest are subiect, resides. Their Houses are of Earth: couered with leaues. The *Bijagi* inhabit neere the great Riuer, a fierce warlike robbing people, possessing also seuenteene Ilos: the Portugals haue there the Towne of the Crosse. The Beafares also in these parts are dispersed, of whom the King of Guinala carrieth the greatest state and pompe, at whose death all his Wiues and Seruants, and dearest Clients, and the Kings Horse, are slaine and intombed with him to serue him in the other life. The like vsage is in very many of these Guinean Kingdomes, to which they adde further cruelty in the manner: for they cut off their toes and fingers, and beate their bones as it were in a Morter three houres (longer then which they could not endure this torture) and then in the sight of those which were to vndergo the like fate, thrust them into the neck with a sharpe stake, to finishing their blinde Martyrdome. On the otherside the Riuer is Biguba a Portugall Towne, the best they haue in these parts: the Natiues are Beafares, whose King being dead, the strongest is his Heire, the cause of much Warre. Betweene this and Cape Sierra Liona (so called of the Lyon-like roring made there by the waues, if not of the Thunders and dreadfull storme) are the Mallufians, Bagalians, and Otzolines. In these parts Grapes and Sugar-canes grow wilde: store also of Cotton, Brasill Wood of seuen colours, Graines called Malegetta of the name of the Region, long Pepper, Millet, besides Waxe and Iuory. Out of their Palmes they draw Wine and Oyle, and a certaine excellent Sope, forbidden (as is also the long Pepper) for the excellence to bee carried into Portugall.

Burami.

Bijagi.

Beafares. Guinala.

Biguba.

They haue Apes called *Baris* exceeding great, and so industrious, that being brought vp in the house, they supply the roome of a seruant; going on their hinder feete, beating things in the Morter, fetching water home in Vessels, which yet if none bee ready to take from them, they will cast downe and breake, and then howle. Heere is store of Iron better then ours, but their best Commoditie is Gold, but no Forreiners know the Mines whence they haue it. The Portugals called their Castle here built, Saint *George* of the Mine, in the fift degree of Northerly latitude. In Sierra Liona are thirteene Riuers which fall into the Sea. On the Riuer *Das Piedras* the Portugals haue a Towne. Capor and Tambassire two other Riuers, fall from the Hils Machamala, in which is a great Rocke of most pure Chrystall. Two of these Riuers, Tagaris on the North, and Bangua on the South of this Lion-hill, make it a Peninsula in some places so neere, that they carry their Boates by Land from one to the other. The Inhabitants are the Cumbæ, and the Natiues called Capi; these more ingenious then other Guineans. They haue their Kings which administer Law, hauing to that purpose round Galleries not farre from their Palaces called Funkes, where is a high Throne for the King, and lower Seates on both sides for his Counsellors called *Selatequis*.

m Mina. 1485.

Capi.

Their

Their Lawyers or Aduocates they call *Troens*, which weare parti-coloured garments, wouen with feathers, hold staues in their hands whereon they leane whiles they pleade, and haue Vizors to hide their a blushing if any such cause happen in the Kings presence, who hauing heard the pleading of these, and the aduice of the Counsellors pronounceth sentence. In the Creation of a Solaequis the rite obserued is this: they place the person to be created in a faire seate of wood, and then the King strikes his face with the inwards of a Goat, that the bloud and filth runnes downe his brest, then sprinkles him with meale, and after puts a Cap on his head. When the King dies, his Sonne, Brother or next Kinsman succeeds: but before his full Regalitie, they bind him at his house, and lead him bound to the Palace, there whip him; after this they loosen him, attire and leade him to the Iudgement Seat, where the eldest Counsellor makes an Oration concerning his right and dutie, which ended, he puts a Hatchet into his hand which they vse in Executions, and after this all acknowledge subiection. No lesse strange is their custome for their Mayders.

a Some ceed Vizors to hide their not blushing.

In euery City or Village they haue a house, seuered like a Monasticall Cloyster from the rest, in which all the Marriageable Virgins are kept and instructed a yeeres space by some old man of best estimation. This done, they are brought forth well apparelled with Musicke and Dances: there the youngmen make their choice and bargaine, with the Father, paying also the Old man for his yeeres schooling. Sorcerers are beheaded, and their bodies cast to the Beasts and Fowles: for other offences they are sold and made slaues. They weare gold Rings hanging at their Noses, weighing twenty or thirtie Crownes: these with their Eare-rings and Bracelets are buried with them. The Cumbæ are not of the ancient Natiues, but were barbarous and deuourers of mans flesh, continually warring on the former. These about the yeere one thousand fiue hundred and fifty wasted all the Countrey, and at last seated themselues here, driuing the Capi from their habitations. If they tooke any chiefe men, they deuoured them, the meaner they sold for slaues to the Portugals, reserving the younger for Souldiery. They would sell them more then Dogge-cheape, yea some of the Natiues would sell themselues slaues to auoide this barbarous enemy. But now being here seated, they are growne more milde and gentle. Of these are descended, as some thinke, the Giachi or Iagges, of which we shall speake b elsewhere, called by this name in Congo, in Angola Gindæ, in Abassia Gallæ in Momboza Zambæ or Imbiæ, and here Cumbæ, and Manes, by themselues Imbangolæ: a Nationlesse Nation, breeding without generation, and vncertaine of what monstrous humane-inhumane Deuillish Originall.

Cumbæ.

b *Lib. 7. c. 16.*

§. II.

Obseruations of those parts out of CADAMOSTA, *and other Ancient Nauigators.*

c *Cadomosto.*

NOw for further particulars of the Guinean Nation, we will begin with the Nauigations of former times. The people inhabiting on the Riuer Sanaga, *Aloise c da Cadamosto*, a Venetians, calls Azanaghi, and saith, that when first the Portugals sayled thither, their simplicity, was such, hauing neuer before seene a ship that they tooke the ships for great Birds with white wings, out of some strange place comming thither: but when they saw them strike sayle, they changed their opinion, and thought them to be fishes, seeing them afarre off: but when they saw them the next day so farre off from that place, they tooke them for night-goblings or spirits.

This did he learne of diuers of the Azanaghi, slaues in Portugall. They bid their faces no lesse then the priuities, esteeming the mouth vnmeete to be seene, whence they belched such sowre breath. They had a kind of Muffler to hide it, and part of the nose onely discouering the same at meate. Other Gouernours they then had not, only more reuerence was done to the most rich. A beggerly, theeuish, lying, treacherous Nation, as any in the World. They anoint their haire euery day with fat of fish for great gallantry, whereof they stinke exceedingly. And lest you should thinke better of their Eyes then of their Nose, their women esteeme it the greatest part of goodly feature, to haue large Breests, which by Arte and industrious stretching of them, they enlarge, and some of them haue them hanging to their Nauell.

Neere vnto those are certaine Negros, which suffer not themselues to be seene of any, nor to be heard speake: but haue excellent Gold which they exchange with other Negros, which bring vnto them Salt, such as the Minerall Salt of Tagazza, and leauing the same, they goe away from thence halfe a dayes iourney: the Negros come downe in certain Barkes, and

and lay a cuerty heape of Salt a quantity of Gold, and goe their wayes. When the Salt-Merchants returnegit they like the summe, they take it; if not, they leaue the Gold still with the Salt; and goe their wayes: and then the other returne, and what heapes of Salt they find without Gold, they take for their own: the other, either they leaue more Gold for, or els leaue altogether. This seemeth hard to beleeue, but many of the Arabians and Azanhagi testified it to our Author for truth. The Merchants of Melli affirmed to mee, that their Prince had once by a plot taken one of them, thinking to haue learned the condition of that people, but either of tallennesse, or because hee could not, hee neither ate nor spake, and within three dayes dyed. Their stature, they which had taken him, affirmed to bee a hand higher then themselues: and that their nether lip was thicke and red, and so great that it hung downe to their brest, and it together with their Gummes blouslie: their teeth great, and on each side one very large: their eyes standing out: terrible they were to looke vpon. And because they had apprehended this man by their ambushment, they returned not in three yeares but after forced by the need of Salt to cure their diseases (whence haply that deformitie proceeded) they returned that Trafique.

To leaue these farre within Land, and come to the [a] Riuer Senaga *Cadamosto* iustly marueiled at the partition which that Riuer caused: for on the one side the Inhabitants were well proportioned, very blacke, and the soyle very fertile: on the other side, the Inhabitants meagre, small, swart, and the ground barren. The people, that dwell on the bankes of Niger, are called Gilofi. The Kings name in my time (which was [b] almost an hundred and threescore yeeres since) was *Zuchali*. He had thirtie Wiues. When *Richard* [c] *Reinolds* was there 1591. the Kings name was *Amar Melik*. All that Region betwixt Senaga and Gambea is called by one generall name, *Gio Lof*: of which *Maffeus* [d] and *Barrius* write, That in an accident of ciuill warres *Bemoin* came to the King of Portugall for aide, and was there royally entertayned and baptized with his followers; of which, some were of such admirable dexteritie and nimblenesse of bodie, that they would leape vpon a Horse as hee galloped, and would stand vpright in the Saddle, when he ranne fastest; and turne themselues about, and suddenly sit downsand in the same race would take vp stones laid in order on the ground, and leape downe and vp at pleasure. This *Bemoin* was shamefully murthered by *Peter Vaz*, the Portugall Generall, and the hope of Christianity in those parts disappointed. This was *Anno* 1489.

From thence [e] *Cadamosto* went to Budomel; the Prince whereof was had in great respect by his people: which when they come into his presence, kneele on both their knees, and bowing their heads to the ground, cast sand ouer their shoulders, and on their heads, with both hands, and then to goe towards him on their knees; and when they speake to him, cast sand ouer their shoulders still, with their head bowed downe, the Prince scarcely deigning them a looke, or word. For euery light offence hee would sell their Wiues and Children. He suffered our Authour to goe into his Moschee, where his Arabian Chaplaines, after their manner, mumbled their Mattens tenor twelue times in halfe an houre; all the company rising and falling againe to the Earth, and kissing it. He also heard him willingly confute the Mahumetan, and approoue the Christian Faith: but said, hee thought it was harder for a Christian to bee saued then a Negro, because God was a iust God Lord, who had giuen vs to many good things in this World; to them nothing in comparison, who should therefore in the other World haue their Paradise, which here they wanted. Easily might he haue beene turned to Christianity, but for feare of losing his State. His Wiues prouide him his dyet, as it is vsuall among the Negros, and none but his Priests and some principall men eate with him; which is after a beastly fort lying on the ground, the dish set in the middest, and all taking out the meate with their hadiks. They eate little at once, but eate often, foure or fiue times a day.

From *October* to *June* it raines not there. They haue great Serpents, and many, which they vse to charme: and the Prince when hee would poyson his Weapons, did (as was reported) make a great Circle, and enchanted by his Charmes all the Serpents there abouts thereinto, and then killed that which seemed to him most venemous, letting the rest goe: with the bloud thereof, and the Seed of a certaine Tree, he tempered a poyson for that purpose, with which a Weapon infected, drawing neuer so little bloud, did kill in a quarter of an houre. They haue great store of Parrats, which are instructed by a marueilous naturall cunning to preuent the Serpents, which would else destroy their nests. They build therefore on high trees, and on the end of some tender bough thereof they fasten a Bul-rush, which hangs downe two spannes, thereunto weauing and working their nest in such fort, that the Serpents for feare of falling, dare not aduenture to deale therewith. The Negros came about *Cadamosto*, with wonder to see his apparell, and the whitenesse of his colour (neuer before had they seene any Christian) and some of them with spittle rubbed his skinne, to see whether

a *Barrius dec. 1. l. 3. c. 8. & Maffeus hist. Ind. l. 1.* saith, that *Senaga* and *Gambea* were by the Ancients called *Stachirsi* and *Dara us*. This name *Senaga* was giuen by reason that the Prince was so called.

b 1455.

c *Hak. tom. 3.*

d *Maffeus. Barr. Dec. 1. l. 3. c. 8.*

e *Ali. Cadam.*

ther his whiteneſſe were naturall, or no: which perceiuing it to bee no tincture, they were out of meaſure aſtoniſhed. They would then giue nine, or ſometimes fourteene ſlaues, for a Horſe furniſhed. And when they buy a Horſe, they will bring ſome of their Enchanters, which make a fire of herbes, and let the Horſe ouer the ſmoke, vttering certaine words; and after that anoint him with a thin oyntment, and ſhut him vp twenty dayes; that none may ſee him, hanging certaine trumpery about his necke, thinking that hereby they are more ſecure in battle. Gunnes ſeemed to them, for their hideous noyſe, to be of the Deuill. Bag-pipes they thought to be a liuing creature, that thus ſang in variable accents. But when they were ſuffered to handle them, they thought them to bee ſome heauenly thing, that God had made with his owne hands, to ſound ſo ſweetly. They beheld the Shippe with great cuſtoſitie; and eyes that were carued in the Prow of the Shippe; they tooke to bee eyes indeed, by which it ſaw how to direct the courſe at Sea. They ſaid, the Chriſtians that could thus make Voyages by Sea, were great Enchanters, and comparable to the Deuill, themſelues had enough to doe to trauell by Land. Seeing a Candle burne in the night, they which knew not to make any light but their fires, eſteemed it wonderfull. Honey they haue, which they ſucke out of the Combes, but the Waxe they hurled away, till they were inſtructed how to make Candles thereof.

Senega (*Boterus* ſaith) comes from the Lakes Chelonidi. *Sanutus* affirmeth that Senega is the ſame which *Ptolemy* cals Daradius, Gambea or Gambra; that which hee cals Stachur, and Rio Grande is Niger.

Cadamoſto doubled the Promontorie, called *Cape Verde*, or the greene Cape, becauſe of the greene trees which the Portugals (which had firſt diſcouered it in the yeere before) found there growing in abundance; as [h] *Cape Blanco*, or the White Cape, was ſo called of the White Sands there. The Inhabitants they found were of two ſorts, *Barbacini*, and *Serers*. They haue no Prince. They are great Idolaters, and haue no Law: but are very cruell. They poyſon their Arrowes; with which, and the ſituation of their Countrey, they haue preſerued themſelues from the Kings of Senega.

In Gambra they were, ſome Idolaters of diuers ſorts, ſome Mahometans. They were alſo great Enchanters. Their liuing as at Senega; ſaue that they eate Dogges fleſh. Here the Prince hunted an Elephant, and gaue them to eate: the fleſh is ſtrong and vnſauoury. The Elephants delight in mire like Swine. They hunt them in the Woodes: for in the Plaines an Elephant would, without running, ſoone take and kill the ſwifteſt man (whom yet they hurt not, except they be firſt prouoked) if with comming and often turning, hee bee not diſappointed.

Here was a kind of fiſh *Cadamoſto* [i] calleth it Cauallo, and his Latine Interpreter, *Piſcis Caballinus*; I take it for the *Hippopotamus*, or Riuer-horſe) which is (ſayth he) as bigge as a Cow; his legges ſhort, with tuſkes like to a Bores, but ſo great, that I haue ſeene one of two ſpannes, and longer, clouen-footed, and headed like a Horſe: hee liueth on both Elements, ſometimes in the Water, other-whiles on the Land. The women vpon their breſts, neckes, and armes, had certaine workes, done with a Needles point, heated in the fire, in manner as with vs they worke hand-kerchiefes. This being done in their youth, would neuer out. The like fleſh-branded workes they vſe at *Cape Sagres*, as *Pietro* [k] *de Sintra*, a Portugall, obſerued vpon their bodies and faces. The Inhabitants there are Idolaters, and worſhip Images of Wood, to whom they offer ſome of their Meate and Drinke, when they goe to their meales. The goe naked, couering their priuie parts with the barkes of trees. This is [l] in Guinea.

A little from thence they found men who vſed as great brauery in their eares, which they bored full of holes, and weare therein Rings of Golde in rowes or rankes. They weare one great Ring in another hole bored thorow their Noſe, like to Buffles in Italy: which when they eate their meate, they tooke away. The men and women of fort weare ſuch Rings alſo in their lips, in like ſort as in their eares, an Enſigne of their Nobility and greatneſſe, which they put in and out at pleaſure. Beyond the Riuer of Palmes they found others thus beringed, and for greater gallantry weare about their neckes certaine Chaines of teeth, ſeeming to bee the teeth of men. They tooke a Negro, whom they carried into Portugall, who affirmed, if a woman which onely could vnderſtand him, did interpret him rightly, that in his Countrey were Vnicornes.

h Likewiſe *Cape Sierra Leona* ſo called of the Lion-like terrour thereof, alwayes couered on the top with cloudes, which yeeld dreadfull thunders and lightnings. Iſoames to the ſame, that *Ptolemie* and *Hanno* call the Chariot of the Gods. *G. Bat. Ben.*

i *Cadamoſto apud Ramuſ. Nouus Orbis, &c. pag. 47.*

k *Pietro de Sintra.*

l The Hollanders were entertained of a King in Guinea, but very miſerably: an old woman naked, three times went about the Captaine, with certaine murmuring words, & caſt aſhes on his clothes. The Nobles about the King were naked. *Hol. Nauig. 1599.*

HONDIVS *his Map of* Guinea.

§. III.

Other Observations of later times by Englishmen and others.

AND these Countreyes haue since beene sought to [u] by French, Flemish, and many of our English Merchants. In the yeere 1553. [x] *Thomas Windham*, and *Anthony Pinkeado*, a Portugall, in two English ships traded along st those Coasts, as farre as Benin, where they presented themselues to the King, who sate in a great Hall, the wals whereof were made of Earth without windowes, the roofe of thinne boards, open in diuers places. His Nobles about him neuer looke him in the face, but sit cowring vpon their buttockes, with their elbowes vpon their knees, and their hands before their faces, not looking vp till the King command them. And when they depart out of his presence, they turne not their backes vpon him. Such reuerend regard doth that Negro King receiue of them.

The next yeere [x] Master *John Lock* went for Captaine into those parts, to trade for Gold, Graines, and Elephants teeth. And after that, diuers Voyages were thither made by *William Towerson*, who obserued at the Riuer of Saint *Vincent*, strange trees, with great leaues like Palme, a Negro entertained our men kindly; hee caused to bee brought a pot of Wine of

u The Guineans esteeme well of the French, ill of the Flemish and not well of the Portugals. *Atlas Hist. Ind. Or. c. v.*

x *Th. Windham. Anto. Pinteado. See Hak. Voyages, Tom. 2. part. 2.*

y *John Lock.*

z *W. Towerson.*

Palme, or Coco, which they draw forth of trees, as we haue elsewhere obserued; but their Ceremonies in drinking are thus: First, they bring forth their pot of drinke, and then make a hole in the ground, and put some of the drinke into it, and after that cast in the Earth againe, and thereon set their pot, and with a little thing made of a Gourd, take out of the same drinke, and put it vpon the ground in three places: and in diuers places they haue certaine bunches of the pils of Palme-trees set in the ground before them, and there they put in some drinke, doing great reuerence in all places to the same Palme-trees. All these Ceremonies done, the King tooke a cup of Gold, in which they put Wine; and whiles hee dranke, all the people cryed *Abaan, Abaan*, with certaine other words; and then they gaue drinke to euery one. The like Ceremonies they vse in all the Countrey. 10

a *Iames Welsh.*

In Benin [a] the people goe naked till they be married, and then are clothed from the waste to the knees. Their bread is a kind of Rootes, called *Inamia*, which when it is well sodden, may be preferred before ours. They haue here great spouts of water falling out of the Aire, which if they light on a ship, doe endanger the same. They fall like the pillars of Churches. As for those Voyages to those parts, made by [b] *Rutter, Fenner, Ingram*, or others, I referre them to Master *Hackluyts* Collections. One writeth, [c] That the King of Benin hath sixe hundred Wiues: with all which twice a yeere he goeth in pompe, the Gentlemen haue, some of them, fourescore; some fourescore and ten: the meanest, ten or twelue. At *Cape de Lopo Gonsalues*, some pray to the Sunne, others to the Moone, or to certaine trees, or to the Earth; esteeming it a great sinne to spit vpon it, from whence they receiue their food. Men and women stinke their bodies, putting thereon grease mixed with colour. They will not drinke before they put out some, and drinke not when they eate. They offer their wiues to strangers. The King keepeth his Daughters, when they are growne, for Wiues; and the Queenes, with like incestuous abomination, vse their Sonnes. They paint their bodies red: vse Bananas dried in stead of bread, and lay all their meates in a dish together. 20

b *Will. Rutter, George Fenner, Anthony Ingram*

c Description of Benin, by D. R.

About the Castle of Mina they are subiect to such Wormes, as Master *Ienkinson* [d] hath obserued to grow vpon men at Boghar in Bactria, by drinking the water of the Riuer there; which are an Ell long, and must be pulled out by degrees, euery day a little, if they breake by the way it is very dangerous. The torture they cause is vnspeakeable: they breed in the armes and legges, yea, sometimes in the yard and cod: one man hath had ten of them at one time. 30

d *Ant. Ienkinson. Hak. To. 1.* These wormes come out of their legs, or some fleshie part.

The Inhabitants of Benin [e] obserue Circumcision, and some other Superstitions, which may seeme Mahumetan, but are more likely to bee ancient Ethnike Rites. For many Countreyes of Africa admit Circumcision, and yet know not, or acknowlege not Mahumetisme, but are either Christians (as the Cophti Abassines) or Gentiles: they cut or rase the skinne, with three lines drawne to their Nauell, esteeming it necessary to saluation. They will not easily doe iniury to any, especially a stranger. They haue Birds in such respect, that it is deadly to any that shall hurt them. And some are appointed to haue a peculiar care of them, and to prouide them food; which they doe in high Mountaynes, where they lay meate for them: which they come and eate. 40

e *Gotard. Arth. Dist. Hist. Ind. cap. 9. And Orient. part. 6. de Bry.*

Arthus writes, That the Inhabitants of Guinea [f] giue Religious respect vnto certaine trees. And in the yeere, one thousand fiue hundred ninetie eight, certaine Hollanders cutting them, and not ceasing at the persuasion of Negro's, whose Superstitions in that case they derided: it passed from words to blowes betwixt them, & the Dutchmen were forced to get them to their ships: one of their company being slaine in the chase: But the Murtherer was offered to the Hollanders to be punished; which they refusing, his Countrimen cut off his head, and quartered his bodie; bestowing the one as a monument of reuenge, ouer the slaine parties graue, the other on the Fowles, vnburied. Their [g] trees are alway greene: some haue leaues twice a yeere. They seldome see the Sunne, either rising or going downe, by the space of halfe of an houre. Their Winter beginneth in *April*, which yet is their time of Harues. Mays was brought thither out of America. In *April, May*, and *Iuno*, they haue much raine, and the same very dangerous to the bodie, and rotting the clothes, if it bee not presently dryed. It is often as warme as if it were sodden. They haue some Snakes thirty foot long, as much as sixe men can carrie: they haue also a beast like a Crocodile, called Lanhadi (we haue spoken of the like about Pegu and Bengala) which neuer goeth into the water: Spiders as bigge as the Palme of ones hand, which doe not spinne; store of Cameleons; Dogges woolly, with sharpe snouts, of diuers colours, which cannot barke, driuen to the Market as sheepe, tied one to another; blue Parrets; many sorts of Apes; blacke Flyes which seeme to burne: In Senega some Snakes haue mouthes so wide, that they swallow a whole sheepe without tearing; they haue winged Dragons, with tayles, and long mouthes with many teeth, being blue and greene, which some Negros worship. They boare a hole in the Palme-wine tree whence issueth a white iuyce, first sweete, and after by standing it becomes sowre. 50 60

f *Got. Arth. To. 11, 12, 13.*

g Description of Guinea.

The creatures in Guinea.

It

and after by standing it becomes sowre. It is somewhat like the Coco-tree. The Palmita is without branches, the fruit growes on the top, which within is like Pomegranates, full of graines, without of a golden colour. They buy Gentilitie with gifts, a Dog, a Sheepe, a Cow in their creation is obserued much solemnitie. They know not how to number their yeeres but seeme to liue long. In their Winter they haue much sicknesse and mortalitie. The goods of the deceased descend not to his Children, but to the Brethren, if he haue any: otherwise, to his Father. If it bee a Woman, her Husband deliuereth her marriage goods to her brethren. When the King dies, the Sepulchre is made like a house, and as well furnished as if he were
10 liue, being guarded night and day by armed men, to bring him any thing which he shall need.

Their Nofes are flat, not naturally, but by pressing them downe in their Infancie, esteeming it a great part of beautie. Their hot stomackes can digest raw flesh; and therefore * *Alexander Aphrodisiens*, and *Cœlius Rhodiginus*, that thinke their naturall heate, extracted to the outward parts, to be the cause of their blacknesse, are deceiued. They eate the enemies which are slaine in the warres (which are very rife amongst those Nations) and those which are taken, are euerlasting prisoners. And in some more important warres which they vndertake, they will burne their dwellings before they goe, lest either the enemy might possesse them by conquest, or themselues become too mindfull of a returne. In these warres they prouide themselues of some good light Armour, wearing at such times no other apparell. Their Wo-
20 men are vnfaithfull Secretaries in Natures most hidden secrets, vsing in the sight of men, women, boyes, and girles, to be deliuered of their Children, whom after they circumcise, whether they be of the male or female sexe.

* *Alex. problem. lib. 1. & 2. Cœl. 16. c. 15.*

§. IIII.

Of the Marriages, Manners, Religion, Funerals, Gouernment, and other Rites of the Guineans, collected out of a late Dutch Author.

30 AND if we may leaue to follow a Dutch guide, well acquainted in these parts, whereof he hath written a very large [a] Treatise, you may feast with them at their spousals, and againe, after a view of their liues, at their Funerals. At the marriages of their Daughters they giue halfe an ounce of Gold, to buy Wine for the Bridale; the King himselfe giueth no other portion. The Bride in the presence of her friends sweareth to be true to her Husband, which the man doth not. For Adulterie he may diuorce her, and the Adulterer payeth to the King foure and twenty *Peses* of gold, and the husband also may driue him out of Towne: but the Dutchmen payd no fine therefore, the Women onely were blamed, and payd foure *Peso*. If the husband suspects his wife, hee makes tryall of her honesty, by causing her to eate salt with diuers Fetisso [b] ceremonies hereafter mentioned,
40 the feare whereof makes her confesse. They haue many Wiues, if they can buy and keepe them; each of well estate a house by her selfe, though there be ten of them: they eat and lodge asunder: sometimes they will bring their cheere together. The Husband closely takes which he will haue lye with him to his roome, where their bed is a Mat. The Women after trauell wash themselues, and accompany not with their husbands for three moneths after. The Child newly borne hath a cleane cloath wrapped about the middle, and is layd downe on a mat. The Mothers vse to beare their Children at their backes, and so trauell with them, none
50 proueing lame, notwithstanding that shaking of their bodies: they giue them the brest ouer their shoulders. When it is a moneth old, they hang a net about the body, like a shirt, made of the barke of a Tree, hanged full of Fetisos, to secure it from the Diabell, who otherwise would
60 (they thinke) carry it away. They hang the haire full of shels; and Corals about the necke, armes, and legges, applying diuers Fetisos or wreathes, with superstitious fancies, that one is good against Vomiting, a second for Falling, a third for Bleeding, a fourth to make it Sleepe, a fifth against wilde Beasts, and so on in the rest, giuing to each Fetisso a seuerall name. They quickly learne them to eate, and then leaue them about the house like dogs: they soone learne to goe, to speake, to swim. When they are first borne, they are not blacke, but reddish as the Brasilians. Each woman brings vp her owne: they teach them no ciuilitie, and beat them sometimes cruelly with staues. When they are eight, or ten, or twelue yeeres old, they learne them to spinne Bark-threed and make nets: after that, they goe with their Fathers, to fish. At eighteene yeeres old they begin to set vp for themselues, two or three of them together
70 hiring a house and Canoa: and then they couer their priuities, grow amorous, and their Fathers looke out wiues for them. They haue little haire on their face at thirty: they weare nayles as long as the joynt of a mans finger, as a token of Gentilitie: which is also obserued

a A description of Guinea, 1600. in a Dutch Booke.

b Fetisso is the name of their Idols, &c.

Education of their Children

by Merchants: they keepe them very cleane, and as white as Iuorie. They are great in flesh beyond Men of these parts. At threescoore and ten, or fourescore, their blacknesse decaies, and they grow yellow. They haue small bellies, long legges, broad feet, long toes, sharpe sight, quicke wit, Estridge mawes; are spitefull, curiously neat, Drunkards, Theeues, Lecherous, and subject to the Pockes, whereof they are not ashamed, as neither of shewing their nakednesse. Yet it is holden shame with them to let a fart, which they wondered at in the Hollanders, esteeming it a contempt.

Their women in Guinea.

The Women goe long naked, are libidinous, and would boast of their filthinesse, if they could haue their pleasure with the Dutch, decking themselues of purpose. They weare beades about their neckes, and straw Fetissos about their feet. (The Mulato women in Mina cut their haire shore for brauerie.) They cut three gashes on their fore-head an inch long, and likewise on their cheekes neere their eares, which they suffer to swell and colour it with painting. They make also white strakes vnder their eyes. They curle and fold the haire of their head, making a hill in the midde st like a hat, with frizzles round about. They vse long combes with two teeth onely, each a finger length: these they vse also for salutation, plucking them out and in, as heere, men put off or on their hats: they make also white spots on their faces, which afarre off shew like pearles. They rase their armes and brests with diuers cuts, on which euery morning they lay colours, which cause them to shew like blacke silke doublets cut and pinked. They haue earings and bracelets of Copper: the vnmarried Maides weare thirty or forty on each arme of Iron: the common Queanes weare copper rings with bels on their legs.

Their ornaments.

These women are strong, nimble, well proportioned, good house-wiues, home-keepers and cookes: not very fruitfull. The riches of the Guineans are store of Wiues and Children. They take great pride of white teeth, which therefore they rub with a certaine wood: they shew like Iuorie. Their garment is a fadome or more of Linnen cloth, which they weare about their bodies, from beneath the brests to the knees: vpon which they girt a piece of blue or yellow cloth, whereon hang their kniues and keyes, and diuers wispes of straw, or Fetissos. When they goe to Market, they wash them from top to toe, and put on other clothes. They buy no more but for that day, or meale.

Their bread.

They stampe their Milia as wee doe spice, fanne it in a wodden dish, steepe it ouer-night with a little Mais, and in the morning lay it on a stone, and (as Painters their colours) grinde it with another stone, till it be dowe, which they temper with fresh water and salt, and make rolls thereof twice as bigge as a mans fist, and bake it a little on the hearth. This is their bread.

Their dyet.

Their dyet is strange: as raw flesh, handfuls of graine, large draughts of *Aqua-vitæ*, Dogs, Cats, Buffles, Elephants, though stinking like carrion, and a thousand magots creeping in them. There are little birds like Bulfinches, which make their nests on small ends of twigs for feare of Snakes: these they eat aliue with their feathers. The Moores say that within land they eat dried snakes: and these will eat dogs guts raw, which our Author hath seene: and a Boy left in pawne on shipbord for debt, which had meat enough, yet would secretly *kill* the Hens, that he might eat their raw guts. They will eat old stinking fish dried in the Sun: yet can they be daintie if they may haue it. Some make a kind of Ale of Mays and water sodden together, called *Poiuu*. Sometime foure or fiue together will buy a pot of Palme-wine, which they powre into a great *Cabas*, which groweth on trees, and some of them are halfe as big as a kilderkin, round about which they sit to drinke, each sending a little pot-full to his best wife. When they first drinke, they take it out with a small Cabas, & laying their hands on the head of him which first drinketh, crie aloud *Tautosi, Tautosi*: he drinkes not all off, but leaues a litle to throw on the ground to the *Fetisso*, saying *I.ou*. Spouting out some on their *Fetissos* on their armes, and legs, otherwise thinking they could not drinke in quiet. They are great Drinkers, and feed as vnmanerly as Swine, sitting on the ground and cramming, not staying till the morsell in the mouth be swallowed, but tearing their meat in pieces, with the three mid-fingers casting it into their mouthes ready gaping to receiue it. They are alway hungry and would eat all day long: yea the Dutchmen had great stomacks whiles they were there. He that gets most, must be most liberall, industrious to get, and as prodigall in spending vpon their liquor.

Drinking.

Before the Portugals trade they had no Merchandise, but weare naked: and the people within Land were afraid of them, because they were white and apparelled. They come to trade in the ships in the morning: for about noone the wind (before blowing from land) comes from Sea, and they are not able to endure the roughnesse thereof. They beleeue, that Men, when they die, goe into another World, where they shall haue like need of many things, as heere they haue, and therefore vse to put with the dead Corpes some parts of houshold. And if they lose any thing, they thinke that some of their friends, which in the other world had need thereof, came thence and stole it. Of * God being asked, they said he was blacke and euill, and did them much harme; their good, they had by their owne labour, and not by his goodnesse.

Set-winder.

The Religion of the Guineans.

goodnesse. Circumcision they vse, and some other Turkish Rites. They hold it vnmeet and irreligious to spit on the ground. They haue no Letters, nor Bookes. They obserue a Sabbath, herein agreeing, and yet disagreeing, with Turke, Iew, and Christian, for they obserue Tuesdayes Rest, from their Fishing and Husbandrie. The Wine (of the Palme-tree) which is that day gathered, may not be sold, but is offered to the King, who bestoweth it on his Courtiers to drinke at night. In the midst of the Market-place they had a Table standing on foure Pillars, two elnes high, whose flat couer was made of Straw and Reedes wouen together. Hereon were set many strawne Rings, called *Fetissos* or *Gods*, and therein Wheat, with Water and Oyle, for their God, which they thinke eates the same. Their Priest they call *Fetissero*, who euery Festiuall day placeth a Seat on that Table, and sitting thereon, Preacheth to the people, the contents whereof I could neuer learne: which done, the Women offer him their Infants, and hee sprinkleth them with water, in which a Newt or Snake doth swim, and then besprinkleth the Table aforesaid with the same water, and so vttering certaine wordes very loude, and stroking the Children with certaine colour, as giuing them his blessing: hee drinketh of that water, the people clapping their hands and crying *Lon, Lon*, and so he dismisseth his deuout assembly.

Tuesday Sabbath: they call it *Die Fetissos*.

Many weare such Rings of Straw next their bodies, as preseruatiues from those dangers, which else their angry God might inflict on them. In honour of the same Deitie (or Deiill, as it seemes they conceiue him to be) they bechalke themselues with a kind of chalkey Earth, and this is vnto them in stead of their Morning Mattens. The first bitte at meales, and first draught, is consecrate to their Idoll, and therefore they besprinkle therewith those Rings, which I said they weare on their bodies. If Fishers cannot speed at Sea, they giue a piece of Gold to the *Fetissero*, to reconcile their frowning Saint. He therfore, with his Wiues, walkes a kind of Procession thorow the Citie, smiting his breast, and clapping his hands with a mighte noise, till hee come at the shore: and there they cut downe certaine boughes from the Trees, and hang them on their neckes, and play on a Tymbrell.

Then doth the *Fetissero* turne to his Wiues, and expostulates with them, and withall hurleth into the Sea Wheat and other things as an offering to *Fetisso*, to appease his displeasure towards the Fishermen. When the King will sacrifice to *Fetisso*, hee commands the *Fetissero* to enquire of a Tree, whereto he ascribeth Diuinitie, what he will demand. Hee with his Wiues, come to the Tree, and in a heape of ashes, there prouided, prickes in a branch, plucked off the Tree, and drinking water out of a Bason, spouts it out on the branch, and dauberth his face with the ashes: which done, he declareth the Kings question, and the Diuell out of the Tree makes answer. The Nobles also adore certaine Trees, and esteeme them Oracles: and the Diuell sometimes appeareth vnto them in the same in forme of a blacke Dog, and otherwhiles answereth without any visible apparition. There are which worship a certaine Bird, * which is spotted and painted (as it were) with Stars, and resembleth the lowing of a Bull in her voyce. To heare this Bird lowing in their journey, is to them a luckie boding, saying, *Fetisso* makes them good promises, and therefore let him, in that place where they heare it, a Vessell of Water and Wheat. And as the Earth and Ayre yeeld them Deities, so the Sea is not behinde in his liberalitie, but yeelds certaine Fishes to their Canonization. In this respect they take not the Tunie at all, and the Sword-fish they take, but eate not till his sword bee cut off, which is dryed, and holden in great veneration. The Mountaines would bend their sullen browes, if they should not haue some redde letters in their *Kalender*, to which their toppes aspire, threatning to scale Heauen, or ouer-whelme the Earth, if the Fetissan portion did not pacifie their angry moode, by daily presents of meate and drinke set thereon. Neither can Nature alone vsurpe this *Prauilege*, but Art, in other things her emulous corriuall, and fare vnequall competitor, in this matter of God-making, commonly gets the vppers hand. And therefore they with their ceremonious Art can make them *Fetissos*, or Gods, at pleasure. Principally in their Funerals they obserue it: for when one is dead, they make a new *Fetisso*, or King of Straw, and pray it to beare the dead partie companie, and protect him in his journey into the other World. They lay the dead body on a Matte on the ground, wind it in a Wollen cloath, set a stoole vnder the head, which is couered with a Goates skinne, the body is strawed ouer with ashes, his armes layd by his sides, his eyes open: and so continueth halfe a day, his best-beloued wife sitting by (as the Husband doth also at the death of his wife) crying *Aury*, and wiping her face with a wispe of straw. Women goe round about the house singing and beating on Basons, and about the corpse likewise, and then againe about the house. The eldest *Moriens* or Gentlemen, goe about from house to house with a Bason, wherein each puts the value of twelue-pence in Gold, with which they buy a Cow, with whose bloud the *Fetissero* appeaseth the *Fetisso*. The friends and kinsfolkes assembling, prepare a Henne, and then setting themselues in a corner of the dead mans house, they place all his *Fetissos* on a row, the greatest in the middest, adorning the same with

* The Bird Pitteie.

Funerall rites.

Garlands of Pease and Beanes, like to the Popish praying-Beads. Then they sprinkle the same with the bloud of the Henne, and hang a chaine or Garland of herbes about their neckes. After this, the women set the Hen, raw sodden, in the middest of the *Fetisso's*, and the *Fetissero* takes water in his mouth, which amidst his Exorcismes and Charmes he spouts on those *Fetisso's*, and taking two or three herbes from his necke, he rols the same in forme of a ball, which after certaine ceremonies he layeth downe, and so doth, till all his Herb-garland bee spent; and then makes them all into one great ball, and therewith besmeareth his face, and thus is it made a *Fetisso*: and the party deceased is now at rest. In the meane time the dearest of his Wiues fillet all the house with mourning, the neighbours and friends with Songs and Musicke (such as they haue) and Dances. And at last they take vp the Corps, and carrie it to the Grave, which is leaue foot deepe, and couer it with stakes, that nothing may fall therein. The Women creeping about the Sepulchre, expostulate with him, Why hee would leaue them? Then doe they hurle on earth, so that none can get in to the Corpes; for hee hath with him his Houshold, Armour, and what soever he vsed in his life time; Wine also (if before he loued it) to drinke in the other World. Lastly, they couer the Sepulchre with a Roofe, to defend all from Raine. If the King dies, not onely greater solemnitie is vsed: but the Nobles (thinking it necessarie for so great a Personage to haue attendents) offer vnto him one a Seruant; another a Wife; a third, his Sonne or Daughter, till there be many of both Sexes in that other life to attend him. All which are suddenly slaine at vnawares, and their bloudie carkasses, buried together with the King. Yea, the Kings wiues which doned him beli, refuse not this last and euerlasting seruice, as they suppose; but yeeld themselues to die, that they may liue with him. The heads of all these, thus slaine, are set vpon poles round about the Sepulchre: Meate, Drinke, Rayment, Armes, and other Vtensils are added for their vse, and buried with them. After the buriall they goe to the Sea, or River, and there obserue other Rites: some washing, while others play on Basons and Instruments. The Widow of Widower is layd backward on the water with diuers wordes of complaint. At last they cloath them, returne to the deadmans house, make great cheere, and drinke themselues drunke.

a This drinke they call Eschinthenon.

They, in vnceraintie of criminall accusations, as of Adulterie, Murther, and such like, haue a certaine water a offered them to drinke by the *Fetissero*, made of those Herbes where-of their Bal-*Fetisso* is made, and in effect like the cursed water, *Numbers*. Those daring to drinke, for feare of sudden death thereby, if hee be guilty. They dare not come out of their houses in Thunder, for then, they say, many of them are carried away by the Deuill and throwne dead on the ground. When they pray for Raine, they wash themselues, and cast Water ouer their heads with diuers words, and spitting in the water.

Their King.

Their Kings are Elective, and must be liberall, or else are expelled. Once a yeere he makes a great feast for the common people, buying to that end all the Palme-wine, and many Kine, the heads of which are painted and hanged in the Kings chamber, in testimonie of his bounty. Hee inuiteth also his neighbour-Kings, Captaines and Gentlemen, and then prayeth and Sacrificeth to his *Fetisso*, which is the highest Tree in the Towne. The then with Fencing, Drumming, Singing, Leaping; the Women with Dances, honour this feast. Euery King holdeth his feast apart, one soonde after another, in the Summer-time. The King comes first to bread. In the Morning and Euening, his Slaues blow or sound certaine Trumpets made of Elephants teeth: his Wiues doe then wash and anoynt his body. He hath also his Guard.

b His Throne and Sceptre.

Hee sits b (in state) on a stoole, holding in his hands the tayle of a Horse or Elephant to driue away Flies: gallantly adorned with Rings of Gold on his Armes and legges and necke, with coral Beads also, wherwith likewise he maketh diuers knots on his beard. His Children c (if they will haue any thing) when they are of age most get it: the common people would not like that he should maintaine them idle. Onely he bestowes on them their marriage-gift, and a Slaue. They chuse by most voyces d a successour in another kindred, who inheriteth the 5 treasure of the dead King, and not his owne Children.

c His children

d Successour.

e Their trials in Law.

Controuersies are tried e by the *Fetissero's* Pot, as is said: if it be for Murther, hee may redeme his life with money, one moiety to the King, the other to the Courtiers: if he cannot, the Executioner f binds his hands behind him, couers his face, leades him to a place aloof; and causing him to kneele downe, thrusts him through, and then (for before they thinke him not dead) cuts off his head, and quarteres the body, leaues it to the Fowles and Beasts. His head is boyled by his friends, and the broath eaten, wherof then they hang it by the *Fetisso*. They make solemne oathes and promises on this manner: they wipe their faces, shoulder, breste, and all their bodies, on the soles of your feet, thrice saying, *Iam, Iam, Iam*, stamping, kissing the *Fetisso*, on their armes, and legs. The land is all the Kings, and therefore they first till his land, and then by composition for themselues. They begin on a Tuesday, and when 60 the Kings worke is done, haue a feast in honour of their *Fetisso* to prosper their Husbandrie.

f Execution.

Promises or Oathes.

Q. V.

§. V.

Observations of the Coast and In-land Countries, out of BARRERIVS *and* LEO; *and of the cause of the Negros Blackness.*

ANno 1604. certaine Iesuites were sent into these parts, the chiefe of which was *Balthasar Barrerius*, who conuerted some of those Negro's to the Romish Christian profession. One of which was the King at Sierra Liona, Christened with the name *Philip*, his Father a man of an hundred and thirtie yeeres, about the same time finishing his life. A Letter of this *Philip* vnto King *Philip* of Spaine, is published by *Purchas*, in which hee desireth more Priests to bee sent into those parts, offers him to build a Castle at the Cape, and concludeth with wishing him as many yeeres as the Heauen hath Starres, and the Sea Sands. The King of Bena gaue great hopes of his Conuersion, which were suddenly dashed, by meanes of a certaine Mahumetan (for to farre hath that Pestilence infected) who making a flattering Oration of two houres long, inclined the King to his faithlesse Faith. This Kings Dominion extendeth nine dayes iourney, and containeth seuen of their pette Kingdomes. Wee haue before spoken of the Mandingas, neere to Gambea. These haue of late yeeres embraced *Mahomet*, and by Armes and Merchandize (the vsuall meanes) sought to propagate it to others, being excellent Horse-men, and couragious, vsually placed in the fore-front. Their Priests are called *Bexerins*, which write Arabicke Amulets to secure such as weare them in battell. These Preach to the people, and drawinge forth parchment rolls, spread them with great deuotion on the Pulpit, and standing a while with eyes fixed to Heauen, as it were in Diuine conference, presently will them to thanke GOD, and his Prophet for the pardon of all their sinnes. Then reades hee his Scrolls, the people tending two houres together without once stirring their bodies, or turning away their eyes. One of them is chiefe ouer the rest, who hath taught the King of Bena a certaine Inchantment of Witchcraft, to make the Deuill the instrument of his Reuenge vpon any offender; which makes him dreadfull to all. Two of the Portugals confessing the experiment thereof vpon themselues. The like appeared in a huge Serpent, which they call the King of Serpents, of most beautifull colours, as bigge as a mans thigh, which the King played withall without any harme. The Iesuite speakes of one Man which had threescore and twelue Sonnes, and fiftie Daughters, which multiplied beyond credit. All the kindred mourne at the death of the great Men, assemble to the corpse, and offer, of which offerings one third is the Kings, the second the nearest kinsmans which is charged with the Funeralls, the third is put into the Graue, together withall that Gold which they haue treasured for this purpose through their whole lite, hiding it closely from the knowledge of all, so that if they die suddenly, their Gold is perished with them. Yea their Sepulchres (the Iesuites report) are kept secret, and made in the channels of Riuers, diuerting the streame, till it bee made, to preserue these treasures to the vse of the dead. At the yeeres end they renue the memorie of the deceased with mourning and festiuall solemnitie, the more drunkenness, the greater honour. They haue Idols of wood and straw, and their Chinas before mentioned, made of Poles in forme of a Pyramis, within which are many white Pismires that come not forth, and it is vncertaine what they eate. Before these they will adiure their Seruants to fidelitie, wishing that Serpents, Lizards, or Tygres may teare them if they runne away, which they feare with religious awe, and dare not flee vpon any hard vsage. Euery Kingdome hath a place sacred to the Deuill: such an one was the Island Camasson a league from the shore, where all that fayled by offered Rice, Oyle, or some other thing. The King once a yeere sacrificed Goates and Hens, which were there kept, there being no feare of stealing them, where none durst aduenture to set foot on land.

And now leauing the Coasts of Guinea, Benin, Melegete, and the other Regions of the Negros adjoyning to the Sea; we will looke backe again into the In-land Countries: where of Gualata is an hundred miles distant from the Ocean, and hath already beene mentioned. The next thereunto, in *Leo's* Relations, is Gheneoa, which is not the same with Guinea before mentioned, if *Leo* had true intelligence, but is situate betwixt Gualata, Tombuto, and Melli, and in one place bordereth on the Ocean, where Niger falleth into the Sea. They had great Traffique with the Merchants of Barbarie. They haue Gold vncoyned, and vse also Iron money. There is neither Towne nor Castle, but one, where the Prince, with Priests, Doctors, and Merchants reside. Those Priests and Doctors goe apparelled in white, the rest in black or blue Cotton. In *July*, *August*, and *September*, Niger ouer-floweth it. *Iechie*, the King of Tombuto, conquered it, and kept the King prisone at Gago, till his death, Melli is the head Citie of a Kingdome, which hence taketh name, and hath in it great store of Temples,

Barrer. Epist.

Philippi Leonis Lit. Feb. 5. 1606

a At the first comming of the Portugals, all these parts were Ethnicke, with some little Saracenicall aspersion amongst the Iaiophis, Berbecines, Mandingas, which now are all Mahumetans.

* *Leo, lib. 7.*

ples, Priests and Readers or Professours, which reade in the Temples, because they haue no Colledges. They are more ingenious then other Negros, and were the first that embraced the Mahumetan Law. *Izchia* also subdued them.

Salt deare.

Tombuto was founded in the yeere of the *Hegeira* 610. And it is situate within twelue miles of a branch of Niger. There are many Wells to receiue the ouerflowing waters of that Riuer. Salt is brought them fiue hundred miles from Tagazza, and is very deare. I, at my being there (saith *Leo*) saw a Camels burthen sold for fourescore Duckats. The King had many Plates and Scepters of Gold, some whereof weighed thirteene hundred pounds. They which speake to him, cast Sand ouer their heads, as *Cadamosto* obserued at Budomel. The King would admit no Iewes into his Citie, and hateth them so extreamely, that hee would confiscate the goods of such Merchants, as held Traffique with them. Hee greatly honoured men of Learning, and no Merchandize yeelded more gaine then Bookes. There were many Iudges, Doctors, and Priests, to whom hee allowed their stipends. The people vsed much Dauncing in the streets, from tenne to one of clocke at night. They mingle Fish, Milke, Butter, and Flesh together in their Gallimaufrey kinde of dyet, neither toothsome nor holsome. *Hamet*, King of Marocco [b], conquered the fame Kingdome 1589. and also Gago, and other Countries of the Negros, extending his Empire sixe moneths journey from Marocco, by Camels: whose riches thereby acquired, appeare in the Letters of *Lawrence* [c] *Madoc*; and wee before haue touched.

b *Pory in translat.*
Ra. Historie of Barbarie.
c *Hek tom.* 2. *Mauoc.*
d *Leo, lib.* 7.
e Bacon out Antiquities, the Saxons had no surnames, but by some accidents, as *White, Long, Short, &c.* And the Normans brought ouer their customes of naming men by the place of their habitation; as the Towne, Oake, Style, or their Occupation. And in ancient Writings few proper names, but their Christian, may bee found. So the Roman *Crassi, Nasones, &c. Vid. Camb. Rem. Verstegan. Antiq. Lamb. Peramb.* of Kent.

Gago is much frequented by Merchants, and things are sold at excessiue rates. In an hundred miles space you shall scarce find one in those parts that can reade, or write: and the King accordingly oppresseth them with taxations.

In Guber they sow their Corne on the waters, which Niger, with his ouerflowings brings vpon the Countrey, and haue abundant recompence. *Izchia*, King of Tombuto [d] conquered the King of Guber; of Agadez also, and of Cano, which haue great store of Merchants: Likewise of Casena, and Zegzeg, and Zanfara; in which I finde little worth the remembrance. Cano hath some Relikes of Christianitie, and they are named by the Apostles names. Guangara was not onely oppressed by the said *Izchia* of Tombuto, but by *Abraham* King of Borno.

Borno confineth with Guangara on the West, and extendeth Eastwards fiue hundred miles. The people haue no Religion, neither Christian, Iewish, nor Mahumetane; but like Beasts liue with their Wiues and Children in common: and as a Merchant which liued long amongst them, and learned their Language, told *Leo*, they haue no proper names, as in other Nations, but as they giue him some name of distinction by his height, fatnesse, or other peculiar accidents. The King warreth with his neighbours: hee is descended of the Libyan people Bardoa. For maintenance of his Warres he will giue great prices for Horses, exchanging fifteene or twentie Slaues for one, which Slaues he tooke from his enemies. When I was in this Kingdome, I found there many Merchants that were wearie of this Traffique, because they stayed for their Slaues till the King returned from his Warres. Yet the King seemes to bee rich: all his Horse-furniture, Stirrops, Spurres, Bridles, Bits, were all of Gold; and his Dishes, Platters, or whatsoeuer he did eate or drinke in: yea, his Chaines for his Dogges were for the most part of most fine Gold. He hath many both white and blacke people, subject to him.

Gaoga bordereth Westward on Borno, and thence trendeth to Nubia, betweene the Desarts of Serta on the North, and another Desart confining on a winding crooke of Nilus, about fiue hundred miles square. It hath neither Ciuilitie Letters, nor Gouernment. The Inhabitaunts haue no vnderstanding, especially they which dwell in the Mountaines, who goe naked in the Summer-time, their priuities excepted. Their houses are made of boughes, which easily take fire. They haue store of Cattell. A hundreth yeeres before *Leo's* time they were brought in subjection by a Negro slaue, who first slew his Master, and by helpe of his goods made preyes in the next Regions, exchanging his Captiues for Horses of Ægypt: and so became King of Gaoga. His Nephewes Sonne *Homar* then raigned, and was much respected by the Soldan of Cairo. *Leo* was at his Court, and found him a man passing liberall. He much honoured all that were of the linage of *Mahomet*.

[e] *Strab. l.* 17.

The Nubæ in olde times were many Kingdomes, as [e] *Strabo* affirmeth, not subject to the Æthiopians: and were then Nomades, or Wanderers, and Robbers. As it is now taken (*Iohn Leo* being our Author) Nubia stretcheth from Gioga vnto Nilus, hauing the Ægyptian Confines on the North; and the Desarts of Goran on the South. They cannot saile out of this Kingdome into Ægypt. For the Riuer Nilus, whiles it is couetous of largenesse, loseth his deepnesse, and couering certaine Plaines, becometh so shallow, that both men and beasts may wade ouer. Dangala is their chiefe Towne, and hath ten thousand Families, but ill built, their houses being Ghalke and Straw. The Inhabitants with their traffique to Cairo become rich.

There

There is in this Kingdome great store of Corne and Sugar, Ciuit, Sandall, and Iuorie. They haue strong poyson, one graine whereof giuen to ten persons, will kill them all in a quarter of an houre; and one man, if he alone take it, presently. An ounce hereof is sold for an hundred Ducats. It is not sold but to strangers, which first take their oath that they will not vse it in their Countrey. And if any sell thereof secretly, it costs him his life: for the King hath as much for Custome, as the Merchant for price.

Some [b] Portugals trauelling thorow Nubia, saw many Churches ruined by the Arabians, and some Images. The Iewish and Mahumetan Superstition haue there almost preuailed. In old time they had Bishops sent them from Rome, which by meanes of the Arabians was after hindered.

The Nubian King warreth with the Inhabitants of Goran, called Zinganj; who speake a Language that none else vnderstand; and with others in the Desarts, on the other side of Nilus, towards the Red Sea, whose Language seemes to be mixt with the Chaldean, and resembles the speech of Suachen, in the Countrey of *Prester Iohn*. They are called *Bugiba*, and liue very miserably. They had once a Towne on the Red Sea, called Zibid, whose Port answereth directly to that of Zidem, which is forty miles from Mecca. This Zibid for their robberies was destroyed by the Sultan. *Ortelius* [c] saith, that in Nubia they were sometimes Christian, and now are scarcely of any Religion at all. They sent into *Prester Iohns* Countrey for Priests, when *Alvares* [d] was there to repaire their almost ruined Christianitie, but without effect.

Samutus [e] reckons here other Kingdomes, Gothan, Medra, Dauma, whereof because wee haue little but the names, I can write nothing.

Now if any would looke that we should heere in our Discourse of the *Negro's* assigne some cause of that their *Blacke colour*: I answere, that I cannot well answere this question, as being in it selfe difficult, and made more, by the varietie of [f] answeres, that others giue hereunto. Some alleage the heate of this Torrid Region, proceeding from the direct beames of the Sunne; and why then should all the West Indies which stretch from the one Tropike to the other, haue no blacke people, except a few in Quareca, which haply were not Naturals of the place? And if this were the cause, why should Africa yeeld white people in Melinde, and neere the Line? blacker at the Cape of *Good Hope* in sixe and thirtie, then in Brasill vnder the Line? Some leauing the hot impressions in the Aire, attribute it to the drinesse of the Earth: as though the Libyan Desarts are not more dry (and yet the people no *Negro's*) and as though Niger were heere dried vp. Some to the hidden qualitie of the soyle; and why then are the Portugals children and generations white, or *Mulatos* at most, that is, tawnie, in Saint *Thomee*, and other places amongst them, as also the Inhabitants of Melinde, Madagascar, and other places, in the same height, in and adioyning to Africa? Some ascribe it (as *Herodotus*) to the blacknesse of the Parents Sperme or Seed; and how made they the search to know the colour thereof, which if it hath (a thing by others denied) by what reason should it imprint this colour on the skinne? And how comes it that they are reddish at their birth, yellowish in age? Some ascend aboue the Moone, to call some heauenly Constellation and Influence into this Consistorie of Nature; and there will I leaue them: yea, I will send them further to Him that hath reserued many secrets of Nature to himselfe, and hath willed vs to content our selues with things reuealed. As for *secret things*, both in Heauen and Earth, *they belong to the Lord our God, whose holy Name be blessed for euer*, for that he hath reuealed to vs things most necessary, both for body and soule, in the things of this life, and that which is to come. His incomprehensible *Vnitie*, which the Angels with couered faces in their *Holy, Holy, Holy*-Hymnes resound and *Laude* in *Trinitie*, hath pleased in this varietie to diuersifie his workes, all seruing one humane nature, infinitely multiplied in persons, exceedingly varied in accidents, that we also might serue that [h] *One most God*: that the [i] tawnie Moore, blacke Negro, duskie Libyan, Ash-coloured Indian, Olive-coloured American, should, with the whiter European become *one sheep-fold*, vnder *one Great Sheepheard*, till *this mortalitie being swallowed vp of life*, wee may all [k] *bee one, as Hee and the Father are one*; and (all this varietie swallowed vp into an inefficible vnity) only the *Language of Canaan* bee heard, onely *the Fathers name written in their foreheads, the Lambes song in their mouthes, the victorious Palmes in their hands, their long Robes being made white in the blood of the Lambe, whom they follow whither soeuer He goeth*, filling Heauen and Earth with their *euerlasting Hallelulahs*, without any more distinction of Colour, Nation, Language, Sexe, Condition, all may be *One* in him that is *One, and only blessed for euer*. Amen.

b *Bot. Ben.*
c *Ortel. Theatr.*
d *F. Alvarez cap. 30. & 137.*
e *Samutus lib. 7.*
f *Theodell. apud Strabonem, l. 15. Plin. lib. 2. c. 78. Macrob. in som. Scip. lib. 1. c. 10. Alexan. Probl. 2.*
faith, that the heate of the Sun brings the naturall heate into the outward parts, and thereby maketh them blacke of hue, and tearefull of heart & more easily die of a Feuer then others, lib. 1. Celius Rhod. hath a long disputation thereof, *lib. 10. ca. 15.* but all his reasons may as well conclude of America, which yet are not blacke.
Odoardo Lopez, & P. Pigafetta. in the Storie of Congo, deny the Sun to bee the cause.
Ramusius in his Discourse of the Red Sea, attributeth the colours of the people to the differing heate of places, as of Mountaines, low, wet, dry, &c.
Some tell a tale of *Chem* knowing his Wife in the Arke, wherupon by diuine curse, his sonne *Chus* was black with all his Posteritie.
h *Vnus & sidei potest omnipotens. Bernard.*
i *Vid. Poly. alb.*
k *Iohn 17. 22.*
l *Apoc. 7. & 14.*

RELATIONS OF THE REGIONS AND RELIGIONS IN AFRICA, OF ÆTHIOPIA, AND THE AFRICAN ILANDS, AND OF THEIR RELIGIONS.

THE SEVENTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Of Æthiopia Superior, and the Antiquities thereof.

§. I.

Of the name and division of Æthiopia.

OVt of Nubia we needed neither *Palinurus* helpe, nor *Charon*, to set vs on the Æthiopian Territory; the Sea is farre distant, and the Riuer Nilus which parteth them (whether loth to mixe his fresh waters, with the Seas saltnesse, or fearing to fall downe those dreadfull a *Cataracts*, or dreading the multitude of Pits, which the Egyptians make in his way to intrap him) here throweth his vnwillingnesse to passe further forward; and distracted with these passions, hath almost lost his Channell, diffusing himself in such lingering and heartlesse manner, as Man and Beast dare here insult on his Waters; and I also haue aduentured to take the aduantage of these shallowes, and wade ouer into this anciently renowmed Æthiopia. The name Æthiopia came from *Æthiops*, b the sonne of *Vulcan*: before, it had beene called *Æthersia*, and after that *Atlantia*. c *Lydiat* deriueth Æthiopia of *Ai*, and *Thebet*, the Land of, or beyond Thebais, which was called *Ægyptus Superior*, next to Æthiopia. *Chytræus* saith, it is deriued of *αἴθω*, *splendeo*, and *ὀψ*, *visus*; *of the Sunnes burning presence*. Two Æthiopia's are found in Africke, as *Plinie* d witnesseth out of *Homer* (so ancient is the division) the Easterne and Westerne. And this partition is by some still followed, as namely by e *Osorius*. Others diuide the same into the Asiatike and African. Author hereof is *Herodotus* f in his *Polyhimnia*, which reckoneth two sorts of Æthiopians in *Xerxes* huge Armie; the Easterne mustered vnder the Indian Standards; the other of Africa by

a The falls of Nilus downe from steepe Rocks.

b *Æthiopia diuisa a Corpore, Æthiope Vulcani, F. M. nom. L. in c Lydiat. in emend. Temp.*

d *Plin. l. 5. c. 8.*

e *Osor. de rebus gest. Emanuelis, libro.*

f *Herod. l. 7.*

by themselues, differing from the former in Language, and their curled haire. *Eusebius* [g] mentioneth Æthiopians neere the Riuer Indus. And to let passe *Pausanias* [h] his search among the *Seres*, or *Philostratus* [i] at Ganges, for some Asian Æthiopians; the Scriptures seeme to mention an Æthiopia in Asia. For *Cush*, the sonne of *Cham* (of whom *Iosephus* [k] saith the Æthiopians called themselues, and were called by others, *Chusei*) was Author not onely of the Æthiopians in Africa, but of many peoples of Arabia also in Asia, as *Moses* [l] relateth. And hence perhaps it was that *Miriam* [m] and *Aaron* contended with *Moses* for his Wife *Zippora*, because she was an Æthiopian. And yet was she a Midianite: but called an Æthiopian, in respect of the neighbour-hood which *Midian* had to *Æthiopia Orientalis*, as *Patablius* [n] obserueth out of the Iewish Writers; or for that *Median* is also assigned to Æthiopia, taken in a larger sense, as saith [o] *Genebrard*. *Innius* saith, because the Midianites dwelt in that Region which was assigned to *Cush*, *Æthiou* in his Cosmography [p] affirmeth, that Tygris burieth it selfe, and runneth vnder-ground in Æthiopia; which *Simler* [q] interpreteth of Arabia: for otherwise Tygris washeth no part of Africa.

Saint *Augustine* [r] affirmeth, that the Region Northwards from the Red Sea, and so euen to India, was called *Æthiopia Orientalis*. This distinction is still acknowledged by later [s] Writers. And therefore it is needlesse to fetch *Moses* a Wife out of Æthiopia beneath Egypt to interpret that place. For so [t] *Iosephus* as wee shall after see, telleth of a Wife which *Moses* in his prosperitie, before his flight, married from thence.

This obseruation is verie necessary, because the Scriptures often mention Æthiopia, when no part of Africa can be [u] vnderstood, as *Genes.* 2. 13. where one of the Riuers of Paradise is said to *compasse the whole Land of Cush*, or Æthiopia. And so in other places, *Cush*, or *Æthiopia*. Learned *Innius* [x] obseruieth, that *Cush* is either a proper name, as *Genes.* 10. or common to the people that came of him: it is also a name attributed to the three Arabia's, to the two (African) Æthiopia's, and to all the Southerne tract by the Persian Gulfe.

Leauing that Asian Æthiopia, which already wee haue handled vnder other names, wee will now proceed in our African iourney, where we find in [x] *Ptolemie* not so exact description thereof, as in later Geographers, being then in the greatest part vnknowne. [y] *Maginus* maketh Æthiopia to containe two of those seuen parts, whereinto he diuideth Africa: one of which he calleth *Æthiopia Superior*, and *Interior*, which for the most part is subiect vnto the Christian Prince, called in Europe *Priest* or *Prester Iohn*: the other, *Inferior* and *Exterior*, is all that Southerly part of Africa, which was not knowne to the Ancients. This doth not altogether agree with *Homers* [z] diuision (whose Geographie [a] *Strabo* hath so largely trauersed and admired.) For how could *Homer*, or any in his time attaine to the knowledge of those remote parts? Neither yet may we reiect that renowmed Poet, seeing this partition may seruе vs now in the better discouerie of places, where we may reckon all that to the Westerly Æthiopia, which from Guinea stretcheth to the Cape of *Good Hope*; and thence to the Red Sea Northwards, to the Easterly; Nilus, and a line from the head thereof vnto the aforesaid Cape, being the Arbiter in this diuision. But to let passe this curiositie in catuing, when all is like to be eaten, we will begin at Æthiopia vnder Egypt, and so take the Countries in our way, going from the Red Sea, till hauing doubled the Cape, we come from the Abassine Christians, to those of Congo on the Æthiopian Ocean.

Æthiopia sub Ægypto (so the Geographers [b] call this part) hath on the North, Egypt; on the West, Libya *interior*; on the South *Æthiopia Agysimba*; on the East, the Red and Barbarian Seas, to the Promontory *Raptum*, which *Ortelius* [c] placeth about Quilos, *Porie* [d] calls it Quilmanci: *Mercator* interprets Magala. The Abissine Empire is by our late [e] Writers intended further, reputing for the Southerne limits, the Mountaines of the Moone; and for the Westerne, the Kingdome of Congo, the Riuer Niger and Nubia: and therefore contayneth *Æthiopia sub Ægypto*, and besides *Troglodidica*, *Cinnamomifera Regio*, and part of the inner Libya. True it is, that the Great Neguz his titles comprehend thus much, yet rather as a monument of what he hath had, then an euidence of what hee hath: The Turkes in the North, the Moores on the West, & others other-where circumcising this circumcised Abissines and now according to [f] *Botero* and *Barrius*, the Lake Barcena is the Center of his Dominion. But euen still Frier [g] *Luys de Vireta*, giues him both all before named and more. The name Abissine or Abassine, which is giuen to this Region, *Niger* [h] deriueth from the Egyptian word *Abases*, which (*Strabo* [i] reporteth) they gaue to all inhabited places, compased with great Desarts, and situate therein, in manner as the Ilands in the Sea: three of which Abases, he saith, were subiect to the Egyptians. *Scaliger* [k] saith, that the Arabians call these Æthiopians *Elhabascbi*, whence they are vsually named Abassines; and this with him is an argument, that they are not Natiues of the place, but thither deriued out of Arabia. For the Abasseni are by *Uranius* (in *Stephanus*) placed in Arabia Thurifera: whose words are these; [l] Ἀζανοὶ ἔθνος Ἀραβίας, οἰκοῦντες ἐν Ἀραβίᾳ τῇ τῆς θυμιαμοφόρου καὶ Ἀζανοὶ καὶ

g *Euseb Chron. in A. M. 3380.*
h *Pausan. l. 6. in fine.*
i *Philostrat. l. 3. de vit. Ap.*
k *Ios. Ant. l. 1. c. 6.*
l *Gen. 10. Pride Annal. Tremel. & Iun.*
m *Num. 12.*
n *F. Patablius in Num. 12.*
o *Genebr. Chro. pag. 71.*
p *Æthic. cum Simler. notis.*
q *Aug de Mirabil. sac. Scriptur. c. 11.*
r *F. Riberia. com. in Sophon. 2. 3.*
s *Lyra in Glossf. Calnet. in com. Num. 12. Chyrenus in Onomastica.*
t *Ios. Ant. l. 2.*
u *Gabini in Gen. 2. q. 2. n. 5.*
x *Iun. in Gen. 2. Praelect. comb.*
y *Ptol. l. 4. c. 6. & 7.*
z *Maginus.*
a *Hom. Odyss. in 1. 2. 3. 4.*
a *Strab. l. 1. per totum.*

b *Ptol. l. 4. c. 7. Dam. Niger. A. brie. com. 4.*
c *Ortel. Thesau.*
d *Mercat. Tab. vniuersalis. Porie before Leo.*
e *Ortel. Theat. Maginus.* Description of the World.
f *G. Bot. Ben. Io. di Carros.*
g *F. Luys histor. de Æthiopia.*
h *Dam. Niger.*
i *Strab. l. 17.*
k *Scal. Em. T. pag. 638.*
l *Step. in dictione Ἀβάσκοιοι.*

ᾗ ἀνδρὶ, ἢ γυνὴ ἢ Ἀζωτῶν σκυθρωπὸν φύρει ἢ ὄνον, &c. This haue I inserted out of *Stephanus* for satisfying the more iudicious. *Scaliger* addeth that the Language in which their Ecclesiasticall and sacred Bookes are written, is as farre from the true Ethiopicke, as the Dutch or Italian. The tongue is most elegant, if care and diligence be added: and is called *Lybertie*, because the Arabian Conquerors (therefore only free) did vse it. The Ethiopians themselues call it Chaldee; yet is it neerer the Hebrew then the Chaldee: it is onely learned by Booke, and of their Priests. They indeed haue other Histories of themselues, from the flood downewards, but whereto a man must not rashly giue credit. They call themselues Ethiopians.

10 To take now some exacter view of these parts; leaving those m Iewish monstrous Fables of Monsters of threescore and ten cubits, & their great lyes of the little Pigmey-Christians with such other stuffe, fit for them to write, who are iustly credulous of n *lyes, because they beleeued not truth*: let vs see what others haue written, both of the people and place; and first of the first, and most ancient Relations.

m *Vide Munster. in suo Lib.*

n *2. Thes. 2. 11.*

§. II.

Of the Nations neere the Falls of Nilus, and of Meroe.

20 THe Cataracts or Falls of Nilus, which separate Ethiopia from Egypt, are by the most Authors reckoned two, the greater and the lesse: *Stephanus* addeth a third at Bonchis, an Ethiopian City. These are Mountaines which incroch vpon the Riuer, and with their softie lookes and vndermining trecherie, hauing drawne vp the Earth, which should afford him a Channell, into their swelling and ioynt conspiracie, as with a mixt passion of feare and disdaine, make the waters in their haste and strife ouerthrow themselues downe those steepe passages: the billowes bellowing and roaring so terribly with *the Fall*, that the Inhabitants (as some o affirme) which dwell neere, are thereby 30 made deafe: and the Riuer amazed and dizzie, whirles it selfe about, forgetting his tribute to *Neptune*, till forced by his owne following waters, hee sets, or rather is set forward on his iourney.

o This reporteth *Cicero* in *Somn. Scip.* & calls these falls *Catadupe*.

They are p now called *Catadhs*, which signifieth noyse, of those dreadfull and hideous out-cries, which there are caused. Thus saith *Bermudesius* of those Falls in the Kingdome of Goiame, which rush downe from a Rocke almost halfe a league high, and steepe, sounding like Thunder.

p *Iuan. Bermudesius in Legat. Æthiopica.*

Betwixt these Falls and Meroe, *Strabo* q placeth the *Troglodyte*, of which we haue already spoken: and the *Blemmyes Nuba* and *Megabari*. They are *Nomades*, without Towne 40 or habitation, and addicted to robbery. *Procopius* r testifieth, that these were accustomed to doe much damage on the Romane Confines: and therefore *Diocletian* brought them out of their barren Territories, and gaue them Elephantina, and the Region adioyning for habitation, communicating to them the Roman Rites and Superstitions, and built the Citie Philas, in hope of future friendship. *Colum non animans*; they changed the Soyle not the Soule, but were no lesse iniurious to *Osiris*, and other the Romane subiects. They worshipped some Gods, borrowed of the Græcians; *Isis*, and *Osiris*, of the Egyptians; and *Priapus*. The Blemmyes also offered humane Sacrifices, with cruell inhumanitie, to the Sunne, till *Iustinian* time, who tooke away those bloudie deuotions. As for the tale that those Blemmyes wanted heads, and had their eyes and mouthes in their brests, the Authors had either no eyes to 50 see the truth, or more head then they should to deuise lyes: as we may say of other shapelesse and monstrous shapes of people, which s *Plinie* and *Solinus*, out of other Authors report, to inhabit these vnknowne parts: some wanting lips, some nostrils, some tongues, or mouthes, &c. indeed all wanting truth. Rather would I counsell the studious of Geographie, to learne the names of the Peoples and Nations of these Regions, of *Plinie* and *Solinus*: which because we haue but names of them, I forbeare to name.

q *Strab. l. 17.*

r *Procop. de Bello Persico. l. 2.*

s *Plin. l. 5. c. 8. & 6. c. 29. Solinus cap 30.*

Meroe doth inuite mee to a longer entertainment, being an Iland which Nilus with louely embraces clasperh about, according to *Iosephus* and *Cedrenus*, sometimes called *Saba*, as now also the Abissines name it; the Egyptians call it *Naule Babe*; the Inhabitants, *Neube*, out Maps, *Gnegere*; to which *Thenet* addeth more, t if not more then truth. The Iland, after 62 u *Heliodorus* (the Bishop of Tricca) his description, is three square, each of which triangle hi- mits are made by three Riuers, Astaboras, and Astasoba; (*Strabo* calls it *Astapus*, and *Astosaboa*) this from the South, that from the East drowning their names and waters with Nilus; it

t *Iouis Grand. Marmoly, &c. Opinianes le capud Orbium in Thesaure.*

u *Heliodor h st. Æthiop. ca. l. 10.*

it is in length three thousand furlongs, in bredth [a] thousand, plentifull of Elephants, Lions, Rhinocerotes, Corne, and Trees, besides her hidden treasures, and Mynes of Iron, Brasse, Siluer, Gold, and Salt. It hath also Heben wood, as *Lucan* [x] singeth, *Leta comis Hebeni.* It receiued that name [y] of *Meroe*, sister of *Cambyses*, or after [z] *Eusebius*, of *Merida*, the Mother of *Chenephrus*, King of Egypt. They worshipped a Barbarian God, and besides, *Pan*, *Hercules*, and *Isis*. [a] They cast their dead into the Riuer, others reserued them at home in glasse shrines, others in earthen receptacles buried them neere to their Temples. They esteemed them for Gods, and sware by them. They ordained him King, who excelled in strength, or in person, or in husbandry of cattell, or in wealth. Their Priests enioyed the chiefe ranke of honour, who sending their Herald or Messenger, enioyned the King his death, and set vp another in his roome. At length a certaine King abolished this custome, and rushing with his armed Souldiers into their Temple, where was a golden Chappell, slue all those Priests. This was at Meroe the head Citie of the Iland, where (*Pausanias* [b] sayth) they shewed the Table of the Sunne, and that they were the iustest men of all the Ethiopians.

x *Lucanus.*
y *Nigro com. Aethe.*
z. *Eusebius.*
a *Strabo l.17.* It was before called Saba, saith *Iunt. l.2.*
b *Pausan. l.3.*

Concerning that Table, and the expedition of CAMBYSES into these partes, HERODOTVS [c] relateth, that CAMBYSES designed at once three inuasions; against the Carthaginians, the Ammonians, and Macrobians (all in Africa.) These last haue their names of their long liues, which they draw forth farre beyond the vsuall course. Hee placeth them on the South shores of Africa, but Mela [d] in Meroe: *Seneca*, *Plinie*, and *Solinus* beyond, That *Table of the Sunne*, *Herodotus* and *Mela* thus describe. Neere to the Citie was a place al ways furnished with varietie of rosted meates, there set in the night by the Magistrates, and eaten on the day by such as listed, and therefore of this open feasting, called the Sunne Table: whom the ignorant people also thought to be the Cater of these dainties. *Cambyses* sent an Embassage vnto the King with presents, but principally to espie the Countrey; whom the Ethiopian requited with a Bow, and bade that the *Persians* should then inuade the Macrobians, when they were able to shoot in such Bowes: thanking God that hee was contented with his owne. And because he had sent him golden Chaines, he asked to what vse they were; they said, for ornaments: hee answered with smiling, thinking them to bee Chaines for punishment, That he had stronger fetters then those. The like account hee made of his Purple Robes, Oyntments, and Wine: and asked further what the Persians eate and when they told him bread made of Wheate (the nature whereof they declared) and withall, that the oldest Persians exceeded not fourescore yeeres: hee said, that it was no marueill of their short life, that fed vpon dung: neither could they liue so long, were it not for that drinke of Wine which they vsed; it was not extraordinary [e] there to attaine to a hundred and twenty yeeres, their meate was boyled flesh, and their drinke Milke. Hee brought them to a Fountaine, wherein being bathed, they smelled as of Violets, it was so subtile that nothing could swimme thereon, not wood, or other lighter matter: this water was supposed to lengthen their liues. He brought them also to the Prisons, where they saw many manacled and bound with Chaines of Gold. Lastly, hee shewed them their Sepulchres made of Glasse, in this manner: After they haue embalmed the dead Corps, they anoint it with a kind of pargetting mortar, and then put it in a case or coffin of Glasse, through which it shineth, and is apparant without any ill sauour. This they keepe one yeere in the house, offering thereto Sacrifices, and the first fruits of all things: and then carrie it out of the Citie. Thus farre *Herodotus*. Wherein, that which some Penny-father would most admire, their golden fetters how common and rife is it in another sort with vs? euery couetous Miser, manacling, fettering, strangling himselfe with his Gold, in shew his ornament, in affect his God, in effect his Deuill, Iaylor, Chaines, and Hell. The *Macrobij* (*Mela* addeth) vsed Brasse for honour, Gold for punishments.

c *Herod. Thalia l.3.*
d *Pomp. Mel. l. 3. c. 10.*
e *Valer. Max. 8*

Of the Table of the Sunne before mentioned, thus writeth Friar *Luys de Vrreta*, [f] in that his large History which hee hath composed in Spanish, of Ethiopia: that the King in a curious brauerie, and sumptuous vanitie, caused there to bee set by night in a certaine field store of white bread, and the choysest Wines, hanged also on the Trees; great varietie of Fowles, rost and boyled, and set on the ground, Mutton, Lambe, Veale, Beefe, with many other dainties ready dressed. Trauellers and hungry persons which came hither and found this abundance, seeing no bodie which prepared, or which kept the same, ascribed it to *Iupter Hospitalis* his bounty and hospitality, shewing himselfe a Protector of poore Trauellers, and called this field the *Table of the Sunne*. The report hereof passed through the World, and brought many Pilgrims from farre Countries, to visit the same. King *Cambyses* sent his Embassadors to see it. *Plato* the Prince of Philosophers hauing trauelled through Asia as farre as Caucasus and gone also to the *Brachmanes*, to see and heare *Hiarchas* in a Throne of Gold, amongst a few Disciples, disputing of Natures Mysteries, and discoursing of the Starres and Planets, returned by the Persians, Babylonians, Arabians, and other Nations, and entred in-

f *Luys de Vrreta hist. de la Æthiopia l. 2. c. 2.*

to Æthiopia, led with desire to see this renowmed *Table*, and to eate of those delicacies. The Æthiopians, since their Christianity, in zealous detestation of Idolatry, will not so much as name this field, and these ancient Rites, and giue in charge to the Priests at this day, that they handle not ontreace of the like vanities, because they were inuentions of Idolaters. *Cambuses Rhodiginus* affirmeth, that this Table of the Sunne grew into a Prouerbe, to signifie a House well furnished and prouided. Thus farre Fryer *Luys*: I doubt, farther then wee may safely follow in that of *Plato's* Pilgrimage hither. g *Cal. Rhod. l. 10.*

Of the Pillar of *Semiramis* is before spoken out of the relation of *Xenophon de Æquinoctio*: concerning which, and his other companions and brethren, howsoever *Possevinus, Goropius*, and others doe reprehend *Aminus* for abusing the World with those glorious Titles h and Ancient names, and prouе them to bee counterfeit: yet in my mind that of *Xenophon* seemeth to fauour of some truth (whether of antiquity or no, I meddle not) and that more then others of the same Edition. In that Pillar consecrated to the memory of *Ninus* the Inscription testifieth, that *Cush* or *Cos* was the Æthiopian *Saturne*; as *Cham* the Egyptian; and *Nimrod* the Babylonian. When *Cush* i was dead, they say, *Regina* his Sonne succeeded in the Æthiopian Kingdome, and after him *Dodan*; after whole time is noreord of certaine succession. *Diodorus* sayth, they chose him which was most comely of personage for their King. *Memnon* is chanted by *Homer* and the Poets, which lost his life at Troy in defence of *Priamus*, and was (some say) King of Æthiopia. Of the speaking Image of *Memnon*; see hauе seene in our Egyptian Relations. As for the wife of *Moses*, whereof *Iosephus* k sayth, That the Æthiopians hauing ouer-runne, and almost subdued Egypt, and none daring to make head against them, *Moses* (whom *Thermutis Pharaohs* daughter, had brought vp) was chosen Generall of the Egyptian Army, which he conducted into Æthiopia, and comming to the siege of Saba, *Tharbis* the Æthiopian Kings daughter fell in loue with him, and sent her Seruants to intreat of a Marriage with him: which hee accepted, vpon condition of delivering the Towne vnto him; and that being done, married her: all this seemeth rather to be a Iewish Fable, thinking then by to credit their Law-giuer, then agreeing to *Moses*, the Truth, and Scripture; and might haply arise from that speech, That *Moses* l *his wife was an Æthiopian*; of which wee haue spoken already. Neyther is it likely that *Moses* would accept of Treason for the dowry with his wife, seaked with the bloud and ouerthrow of her Countrey and Citizens. And yet from hence doe some deriue m the originall of their Nation. After the Father of this supposed *Tharbis*, *Darianus* is said to raigne, who valiantly withstood *Bacchus* (which is thought to be *Osiris*, the Egyptian King, and after, their God) when he inuaded Egypt with an Army. *Diodorus* mentioneth *Æthiopanes*, a King of Æthiopia. *Cephenus* also is numbred in that Royall Catalogue; but of all, n Ganges was most famous, who with his Æthiopian Armie passed into Asia, and conquered all as farre as the River Ganges, to which hee left that name, being before o called Chiaros. Hee conquered as farre also to the West, vnto the Atlantike Ocean, & gaue name to the Country of Guinea; which name, some p say, is corrupted of Gangina, the name it had receiued of *Ganges*. These things are written by some, & I will not swear for the truth, as safely we may do for that which the Scripture mетioneth of some of their Kings, in the dayes of *Asa* and *Hezekiah*, Kings of Iuda; whose puissance then was such, that q *Zerah* brought into the field a Million of men: and *Tirrhaca* was Corriuall vnto prouide and r blasphemous *Sennacherib*, in sure for the Monarchy of the World. But whether he came out of this Æthiopia, or any other parts of Asia or Africke, is not very certaine. Before that time the Æthiopians had warred vnder *Shishak* King of Egypt, whom some take s for *Sesostris*. The Babylonians in *Nabuchodonosors* time conquered Egypt and Æthiopia, as t some expound the Prophesie of *Ezechiel*. And the Persian Empire extended from India to Æthiopia. u *Agatharchides* writeth, that the Inhabitants on both sides the River *Astabora*, liue on Roots dryed in the Sunne: they are much infested with Lions, and not lesse with a lesse creature, but greater Enemy, the Gnats, which driue them to hide themselues in the waters from their fury, when the Dogge-starre ariseth; which, with their his Armies of Gnats beyeeth the Lions also, whom their buzzing and humming noyse chase out of the Country. He speaketh of other their Neighbours which feed on the tops of twigs, running and leaping on the trees, and from bough to bough with incredible agility: others dwell on trees for feare of wild beasts, on whose flesh and in want thereof, on their hides, they liue; as Ostriches, Elephants, Grasshoppers are the daily dyet to others: to which he addes the Cynamolgi, which are nourished with the Milke of Bitches of which they haue great Heards; which perhaps our Reader will not believe, neyther can I force him.

h *Berof. Metasthenes. Cato. Manetho, &c.*
i *F. Luys l. 1. c. 3.*
k *Ios. ant. l. 2. Zon. Annal. to. 1. Cedren.*
l *Num. 12. 1.*
m *Hesior. Bat. hist. Scot.*
n *Suidas.*
o *Plut. de Flum.*
p *F. Luys.*
q *2. Chron. 14. 9.*
r *2. Kings 19.*
s *Ribera in Soph. 2.*
t *Lanat. in Ezech. 30. & 38.*
u *Agatb. 2. Phot. 250.*

CHAP. II.

A continuation of the Æthiopian Antiquities and of the Queene of Saba.

Eliodorus in his Historie (which although for the substance it be fayned, as a loue Discourse, yet must hold resemblance with things done) and for the variety and conceit thereof, commended by that learned [a] German *Philip*; and by our English [b] *Philip* (the Prince of Poesie) imitated in his *Arcadia*; telleth of *Hydaspes* his Ethiopian King, that after his victory at Syene, and hauing there performed his deuotions, and seene their *Nilosopium* (like to that at Memphis, and now at Cairo) and enquired the originals of their Feasts, and holy rites done in honour of that Riuer: when [c] he came to the Cataracts, hee sacrificed to Nilus, and the Gods of the Borders. He then sent Messengers to the *Wisemen*, whom hee calleth *Gymnosophistes*, which are the Kings Counsellers, at Meroe, to certifie them of his victory, and to call a publike Assembly wherein to gratifie the Gods for the same, with Sacrifices and solemne pompes, in the field consecrated to the *Sunne*, the *Moone*, and *Bacchus*. *Persina*, the Queene, deliuered those Letters to the *Gymnosophistes*, who dwelt by themselues in a Groue, consecrated to *Pan*: and before they would giue answere, consulted with the Gods by prayer, and then *Sisimitres* the chiefe of them promised all should bee fulfilled. The Sacrifices were to be done to the Sunne and Moone, and therefore, except *Persina* the Queene, which was *Luna's* Priest, no woman, for feare of contaminating the Holies of those Pure and Bright Deities, might be present. *Hydaspes* was Priest of the Sunne. Much preparation was made of Beasts for their *Hecatombe's*: and much concourse of people crossing the Riuer in those Boats of Canes or Reeds. There were presented the Images of their Gods, *Memnon*, *Perseus*, and *Andromeda*: and nigh to them sate the *Gymnosophista*. Three Altars were erected; two ioyntly to the Sunne and Moone, a third to *Bacchus* by himselfe; to him they offered all sorts of Beasts; to *Sol*, white Chariot-horses; to the *Moone*, a yoke of Oxen. And when all things were ready the people with shouts demanded the Sacrifice, which vsually was accustomed for the health of their Nation: That was, some of the strangers taken in the wars to be offered: First, triall [d] was made by Spits of Gold, heated with fire, brought out of the Temple, whether the Captiues had euer knowne carnall copulation, for treading on the same with their bare feete, such as were pure Virgins receiued no harme, others were scorched. These were offered in Sacrifice to *Bacchus*; the other, to those purer Deities. These things haue I here inserted, not as done, but as like to such things, which among the Meroites were vsed to be done, and agreeing with the generall deuotions of those Æthiopians. *Philostratus* [e] reporteth like matters of their *Gymnosophists*, and of the Groue where they kept their generall consultations: otherwise, each of them by themselues apart, obseruing their studies and holies. They worshipped *Nilus*, intending in their mystiall interpretation the Earth and the Water. They entertayned strangers in the open Ayre, *Thesphesion* was then (in *Apollonius* his time) chiefe of their societie. At his command, an Elme did speake. They held the Immortality of the soule. The Æthiopians sacrificed to *Memnon* and to the *Sunne*.

Lucian, after his scoffing manner gratulates the Æthiopians that fauour, which *Iupiter* vouchsafed them, in going on feasting, accompanied with the rest of the Gods, and that twelue dayes together, if *Homer* [f] reckoned truly. But more [g] seriously elsewhere hee vnfoldeth that Mystery, shewing that the Æthiopians were Inuenters of Astrologie, helped therein by the cleerenesse of the Skie in that Region, and like temperature of the season. Of them the Egyptians learned, and furthered that Science. In his Treatise [h] of Dancing, he affirmeth, that the Æthiopians vsed their haire in stead of a Quiuer, and neuer drew Arrow from thence to shoot in battle, but with a dancing gesture.

Diodorus [i] *Siculus* telleth, that the Æthiopians were accounted most ancient of all other men: and that not onely Humanitie, but Diuinity, was borne and bred amongst them: Solemnities, Pompes, Holies, and Religious Rites, were their Inuention. And therefore (saith he) *Homer* brings in *Iupiter* feasting with the Æthiopians. The reward of their pietie, was the Immunity of their Region from forreine Conquests. [k] *Macrobius* interpreteth *Iupiters* Banket with the Æthiopians, of that Ocean, which Antiquitie imagined to bee vnder all the *Torrid Zone*, that the fiery bodies of the Starres, suppoled to bee nourished with moysture, might there quench their thirst. So would those good men drowne a great part of the African

a Phil. Melanct. in Epist. ad Operinum.
b Sir P. Sidney.
c Heliod. histor. Æthiop. l. 9. & 10.
d Our English and the German Histories mentionthe like cleering of Adultery by going with barefeet on burning plowshares. Bole.
e Philost. de vita Apollonij, lib. 6. cap. 4.
f Hom. Iliad. & Lucian. de sacrif.
g Idem. de Astrologia.
h Idem de Saltatione.
i D. Sic. l. 4. c. 1.
k Macro. in Somn. Scip. l. 1. cap 10.

African and American World, in hospitality to the Starres, by their imagined middle-earth Ocean: which experience hath now sufficiently confuted.

Cambyses attempted and lost his Armie, and *Semiramis* entred, but soone returned: *Hercules* and *Dionysius* ouer-ran the rest of the World; the Æthiopians eyther for their deuotion they would not, or, for their strength, could not conquer. The Egyptians, some say, were Colonies from hence; yea, Egypt it selfe the dregges of that soyle, which Nilus carrieth out of Æthiopia.

The Egyptians borrowed of the Ethiopians, to esteeme their Kings as Gods, and to haue such care of their Funerals, the vse of Statues and their *Hieroglyphicall* Letters. *Pierius*[l] and others haue written therof at large. Their best men they chose for their Priests: & he among them, who, when the God is carried about, shall be possessed with some *Bacchanall* furie, is chosen King as by diuine appointment, and is of them worshipped as a God. His gouernment is gouerned by Lawes. They doe not put a Malefactor to death, but an Officer is sent to him with the signe of death,[m] whereupon he goeth home and slayeth himselfe. One would haue fled out of his Countrey; but the Mother of the Malefactor killed him, because he would not after his Country manner kill himselfe.

l Pier. Hieroglyphica.

m The like is vsed in Iapan.

The Priests in Meroe exercised this authoritie (as is before said) ouer their Kings, and would send them word, that the Oracles of the Gods commanded them to die, neither might they reiect the diuine dispensation; and thus with arguments, not with armes, they perswaded them to a voluntary death. But in the time of *Ptolomeus Secundus*, King of Egypt, King *Ergamenes* well skilled in the Greeke Sciences, and Philosophie, reiected that Superstition. They say, that the custome yet (till *Diodorus* time) remaineth, that if the King bee maymed, or by some accident want any member, his Courtiers also will deprriue themselues of the same. Yea when the King dyed, his friends thought it good fellowship to dye with him, esteeming that death glorious, and the sureft testimony of friendship.

The Æthiopians [n] dwelling neerer to Arabia, armed their women in their warres, till they attained to a certaineage: the most of which ware a Ring of Brasse in their lip. They which dwelt further vp into the Countrey, were diuerslly conceited of the Gods: For some they thinke immortall, as the Sunne, Moone, and the World: some mortall; as *Pan*, *Hercules*, *Iupiter*, for their vertues exalted to that dignitie. *Strabo* tels it in the singular number, that they thought that God to bee immortall, which is the cause of all things. Their mortall God was vncertaine, and wanted name: but they most commonly esteemed their Kings and Benefactors, for Gods. Some that inhabit neerer the Line, worshipped no Gods: and were much offended with the Sunne, and hiding themselues in the Fennes, cursed him when hee did rise. These things you may reade gathered out of *Diodorus*, and *Strabo*, [o] in *Cornuinus*, *Boemus*, *Draudius*, and *Thamaua*, with some other additions. *Sardius* saith, [p] that the Æthiopians were Circumcised; as were also (besides the Iewes, Egyptians, and Arabians) the *Troglodita*, *Macrones Creophagi*, and Inhabitants of Thermodoon.

n Died Sie. Strabo l.17.

o Laurentij Corninni Geograph. Io. Boemus de moral. gentium. Draudius in Satirum. Fr. Thamara de las Costumbres de todas las Gentes.

p Sardius de moribus gentium l.1. cap.10.

q Raph. Volterranus Geographia l.12.

r Plut. de placitis Philosophi.

s Id. de non irascendo.

t Gen. dierum l.2.c.30.

u Dam. à Goes. Zaga Zabo de fide Æthiopum.

x Iof. Scaliger de Emendatione Temporum.

y Col. R. l.1.c.16. 15.c.9.23.

z. Nicep. hist. Eccles. l.9 c.18.

As we haue shewed of the *Macrobij*, or long-liued Æthiopians, so there were others called *Brachobij*, of their shorter liues, whereof were reckoned two sorts: the *Sklonij* neere to the Red Sea, and the *Erembi*, which some [r] take for the *Troglodita*. They liue not aboue forty yeeres. *Plutarch* [q] out of *Asclepiades* reporteth the like, saying, that they were old men at thirty yeeres. The same Author [s] telleth that they and the Arabians could not indure Mice: and that the Persian *Magi* did likewise, esteeming them Creatures odious to God. *Alexander* [t] *ab Alexandro* writeth, concerning the education of their Children, that, the Æthiopians feared their new borne Infants in the foreheads, to preuent the distillations of Rheumes from the braine. And when they are somewhat growne, they make tryall of their forwardnesse, by setting them on the backes of certaine Fowles, on which if they sit in their flying, without feare, they bring them vp very carefully: but if they shrinke and quake with feare, they expose them as a degenerate issue, vnworthy education: Their Letters they wrote not side-wayes, after the Greeke or Hebrew manner, but after the present Chinian custome, downwards. They had seuen Characters, euery of which had foure significations. What manner of writing they now vse, appeareth in [u] *Damianus à Goes*, or of *Zaga Zabo* rather, an Æthiopian Bishop, in his Treatise of their Religion, done into Latine by *Damianus*: but more fully in *Iosephus* [x] *Scaliger de Emendatione Temporum*, who hath lent vs a long Tractate in that language and writing, with the same words expressed in Hebrew and Latine Characters, and the interpretation of them also into Latine, in foure seuerall Columnes. He that listeth to reade some Philosophicall speculations of Nature in these Æthiopians, wherein they differ, and wherefore, from others, let him reade *Cœlius* [y] *Rhodiginus* of that Argument: hee sayth, that they were expert in naturall Magicke. *Nicephorus* [z] writes, that *Alexander* the Great sent Assyrian Colonies into Æthiopia, which many Ages after kept their owne Language, and like enough their Religion. The Nations of Æthiopia, which

[a] *Dom. Niger.*

are farre distant from Nilus, are [a] said to liue a miserable and beastly life, not discerning in their lust, Mother, Daughter, or any other name of kinred. Of their ancient exploits, wee haue no continued Historie.

About the time of Christ, it appeareth that *Candace* was Queene of Ethiopia. Shee was a manly *Virago*, as *Strabo* testifieth, who liued at the same time, and followed *Ælius Gallus* in this Expedition. Hee forced *Candace* to send her Ambassadours to *Augustus* for peace, which shee obtayned. *Sextus* [a] *Victor* mentioneth this Ethiopian ambassage. *Plinie* saith, the name *Candace* continued to the Ethiopian Queenes many successions; whence perhaps *Diesserus* collecteth, that Ethiopia was gouerned onely by Queenes. *Diocleſian* relinquished that part of Ethiopia, which the Romanes held beyond Egypt, as not able to beare the charges. *Iustinian* [b] sent his Ambassadours vnto *Hellistheus* the Ethiopian King, and to *Esimiphæus* King of the Homerites, his Arabian neighbour, to aide him against the Persian. This *Hellistheus* had warred against the Homerites for quarrell of Religion, because they were many of them Iewes, and others Gentiles, himselfe being a Christian, and because they made many forrages into the Christian Countries. He so farre preuailed, as hee made that *Esimiphæus*, a Christian, their King: whose yoke they shooke off soone after: and *Abram*, a slaue, vsurped the State. He had beene seruant to a Romane at Adulis, a Citie of Ethiopia, worthy mention especially in this matter for the ominous prosperitie of seruants. For the Citie it selfe was built by fugitiue seruants, which ranne from their Egyptian Masters: and this *Abram* a seruant there, obtayned to be a King: neither could the Ethiopian with all his might depose him. The like [c] ambassage to *Archetas* King of Ethiopia was sent by *Iustinus* for and against the Persian: both which I mention, to shew the greatnesse at that time of his State, nothing comparable notwithstanding to that which after befell them. Among the Ethiopian Antiquities, *Plato* testifies, as *Orosius* [d] cites him, that many plagues and vncouth diseases infested, and almost altoger her destroyed Ethiopia, about that time that *Bacchus* inuaded India. If any delight himselfe in such Legendarie drosse as the counterfeit [e] *Abdias*, set forth by *Wolfgangus Lazius*, hath in it, touching the Magicians and Enchantments, and some other ceremonies of Ethiopia, I am loth to blot my paper with them: not because we are not certaine of the truth (for in others we may be deceiued) but because wee are certaine of the errors, so grosse, that they may be seene and felt. Maruell that [f] *Lazius* an Historian, would with his Notes illustrate such a hotchpotch of darkneſse. And yet our Countriman [g] *Harding* leauing the cleare waters of Truth, hath swallowed the same swill, as the *Iewell* of our Church hath taught him. The Eunuch of *Candace* was the first Ethiopian Christian, as *Luke Act.* 8. and *Eusebius* [h] doe shew.

[b] *Procop. de Bello Persico, l. 1.*

[c] *Paulli Diacon. in Iustinian.*

[d] *Oros. l. 1. c. 9.*

[e] *Abdias Babylonicus, Apostolicus, lib. 7.*

[f] *Wolfg. Lazius.*

[g] *Iewel* and *Harding.*

[h] *Euseb. Eccl. hist. lib. 2. Papias* speakes of *Thomas, Matthew*, and *Matthias* preaching in Ethiopia. [i] *Genebr. chron. pag. 118.*

But before we come to their Christian conuersion, wee are first to declare their conuersion to Iudaisme (if it bee true which the Ethiopians write) in the time of *Salomon*. The Ethiopians hauing liued before a vagrant life, like the *Nomades* of old; and the Arabians, and other Libyan Nations, not farre from them in Asia and Africa at this day; *Arue* the Ethiopian King first fixed a settled abode at Axuma, and made it the Royall Citie; i after whom followed *Agab*, and in the third place *Ghedur*, or *Sabanus*, which subdued all Ethiopia, and left the Kingdome to his daughter *Makeda*, that reigned eightie yeeres. *Anno* 50. of her reigne shee visited *Salomon*. After her they reckon these Kings till Christs time, *Melic, Andedo Auda, Gigasio, Zangna, Guasio, Antet, Bahara, Canada Chanze, Endur, Guaza, Endrath, Chaalet, Setiya, Aglaba, Anscua, Bregusa, Guase, Beseclugna, Baazena*, in whose time they say Christ was borne. *Genebrard* sets downe the times of their Reigne, which hee confesseth, and it selfe conuinceth to be false. This Queene of Saba before mentioned in our discourse of Arabia (of which Countrie * I think shee then was, and these Abassens since that time thence descended, and transplanted) is by [k] *Iosephus* called Nicaule, the Queene (saith he) of Ethiopia and Egypt. But *Zaga Zabo* [l] in the Ethiopian Historie which hee wrote, and caused to be done into Latine by *Damianus a Goes*, calls her *Maqueda*, whose Historie the Ethiopians haue written in a Booke as bigge as all *Pauls* Epistles. The summe of his report is this: Shee was a worshipper of Idolls as her Ancestors had beene, when as fame filled her eares with the renowme of *Salomons* name: and then sent a messenger to Ierusalem, to learne the truth, who at his returne confirming those former reports, shee went her selfe to visit him. Of him, besides many other things shee learned the Law, and the Prophets. By him shee conceiued also a sonne, of whom shee was deliuered in her iourney homewards, and named him *Meilech*. After twentie yeeres education in Ethiopia, shee sent him to *Salomon* his father, to be instructed of him in wisdome; desiring him to consecrate her sonne King of Ethiopia, before the Arke of the Couenant; shee ordayned also, that women should not henceforth inherit, as before had bin accustomed. *Salomon* did this, and changed his name to *Dauid*, and after long instruction, sent him back to his mother, attended with many noble compa-

[i] *Genebr. chron. pag. 118.*

* The Abassen greatnesse is vnlikely to haue come of *Chams* cursed flocke, which neuer yeelded any great Monarchy. *Eul. Misel. 2. c. 1. & 4.* Thus hee, yet the Phœnician & Carthaginians were more potent then euer was the Abassine.

[k] *Ioseph. Antiq. l. 8. c. 2.*

[l] *Zaga Zabo Episcopus Ethiop.*

companions, among whom was *Azarias* the sonne of *Zadok* the Priest. This *Azarias* caused Tables to be made like to those in the *Arke*; and pretending to sacrifice for the good successe of his journey, went in and stole the Tables of the Law, leauing in their roome these later counterfeits, which he reuealed not to any, till he came to the borders of Ethiopia. Then *Dauid* being made acquainted with the fact, danced for ioy, as his Grandfather *Dauid* had done before the Arke wherein the Tables were inclosed, his people making great ioy. His a right Line, from male to male: Circumcision also with the Law of *Moses* hath beene obserued. The Officers which *Salomon* appointed his Sonne, are still continued in the same Families. This long Legend I report, not for the truth, but for that Religious conceit wherewith it is accepted in Ethiopia: for who knowes not, that none but the *High Priest*, and that *once a yeere*, entred into *that holy place*, where the Arke was, that I speake not of *Nadabs* and *Abihu's* fire, with other diuine Iudgements? *Vzzahs* touching; and the Bethshemites viewing the Arke at so deere a rate; could but make dreadfull so damnable an attempt. Besides, wee should haue looked for our blessed Saiiour out of Ethiopia, where *Salomons* Heires still reigne (if these say true) and not goe to *Salathiel* and *Zorobabel*, descended of another brother, and therefore further off *from the throne of their Father Dauid*, on which Christ was to sit, and to which he was borne, next and apparant Heire, euen *according to the flesh*. And yet doth *Genebrard* credit these reports, and *Baronius* also in part, as *Luys de Vrreta* reporteth. This *Luys* hath written three large Bookes in Spanish, collected (as he sayth) out of *Don Iuan de Baltasar*, an Ethiopian of great account, who had beene Embassadour from his Master *Alexander* the Third, the great *Negus*, into Persia and other places, and came into Spaine with his licence to imprint his Ethiopian History. Out of him *Luys* reporteth, that the former Booke, whence *Zago Zabo* the Bishop, Embassadour to the King of Portugall, had taken those things, is *Apocryphal*: yet so, as that it is true concerning that report of *Maquedas* conception, and the Royall Diident from thence till these times. The stealing of the Tables he denieth; and affirmeth, that the truth was, that *Salomon* had bestowed on the Queene of Saba a fragment of the Tables, which *Moses* brake in his zeale for the Israelites Idolatrie with the *Golden Calfe*. For that conception by *Salomon*, hee proueth it by the Ethiopian Records, the title of their King, and his Armes; which are the same, which the Tribe of Iuda gaue, *viz.* a Lion rampant, crowned, in a field *Or*, with this Inscription, *The Lion of the Tribe of Iuda hath ouercome*. Since they were Christians they haue added to this Armes a Crosse, which the Lion holdeth in his right foot. And in this right they ly challenge to Ierusalem for their Inheritance. Now for the fragment of the Table which *Moses* brake, it is receiued for a truth throughout Ethiopia; and it is still preserued in the Hill Amara, as the greatest Iewell in the World. *Baltasar* had often seene and handled it. It seemeth to be of the Chalcedonie stone, shining, and transparent; and is a corner of a square Table, the broken edges yet being manifest, with the letters, some broken, some whole, much differing from the common Hebrew (which *Genebrard* sayth the Iewes inuented, thereby to differ from the Schismaticall Kingdome of the Israelites, of the ten Tribes; the Samaritans still retaying the former, as both hee and *Scaliger* affirme.) But these letters cannot bee read; for hee brought a learned Iew, skilfull in all the Easterne Languages, Persian, Arabike, Indian, Chinois, &c. yet knew them not. This relique is with such deuotion admired of the Iewes, that when they passe but within sight of that Hill Amara, they prostrate themselues on the ground with reuerence, and for this cause make much of the Ethiopians (wheresoeuer they meete them) as a people beloued of God, to whom he hath imparted such a Relique. They tell also a tale (I thinke so likewise of the former) of the Queene of Saba, that in her iourney homewards she had a reuelation concerning a piece of Wood which shee saw, that it should bee the same whereon Christ should after die for Mankind: wherefore adoring the same with much deuotion and teares, she wrote to *Salomon* thereof, who bid it in the earth foure *Stades*, where the Poole of *Bethesda* was made afterwards, and by vertue thereof wrought Miracles. But the Ethiopian Superstition hath Fables enough of her owne, and needeth not the officious helpe of Romish Saints in this kind.

m *Candac* was the name of diuers Ethiopian Queenes, contrary to this report.

n *R. Sedechias* from Mecca.

o *Vincent Ferrer*, a Popish Saint.

p Foure times the height of a man.

As for that succession of Iewish Officers; *Luys* denyeth it (himselfe therefore denyed by later examiners) and sayth, the Iewes are no where more hated then in Ethiopia: and *Alexander* the Third, late Emperour among them, banished all Iewes and Mores out of all his Dominions: The Officers of the Emperour are (sayth hee) the Sonnes of the Tributary King his Vassals, and the nobleST of his subiects. And for the Iewes which came with *Menleeh*, or *Meileleo*, (after called *Dauid*) his next successor *Iosu* (so hee calleth him) becomming an Apostata, reduced Idolatry: and whereas *Dauid* his Father had giuen them one of the Temples dedicated to the Sunne in mount Amara, to make it *an house of Prayer*, to the *God of Israel*, casting

casting forth the Idols therein; now in this *Iosues* dayes some of them returned to Ierusalem, or to other Prouinces of Africa, and some inhabited the vtmost parts of Africa; neere the Cape of *Good Hope*, and Desarts not before inhabited. And the said *Don Iuan de Baltasar*, being sent by the Emperour into the Lands of Monopopata (so he calleth it) and of *Galofes*, of Barbizin, of Mandinga, and of Zape, which are inhabited of Idolatrous Gentiles, hee found among them some of these Iewes descended of that exiled stocke (as themselues also hold) which had forgotten their Iudaisme, and all knowledge of the Scriptures, onely had retained some reliques of it, and abstinence from Swines flesh, differing also from those Gentiles, in worshipping *one God*, whereas the other acknowledge *One great God*, whom they call *Caramus*, but worship also Tigres, Lions, Flyes, Spiders, Snakes, Lizards, and whatsoeuer first meete them in the morning. These Gentiles ¶ call the Iewes *Tabayqueros*, and will not admit them to purchase houses, or inhentance, but eyther vse them as Interpreters, or Factors for Merchants (which is the higest step they can attaine to) or else to employ them in base drudgeries, to be their porters, slaughter-men, and such like, that they seeme rather slaues to those barbarous Nations, then to enioy any liberty of freemen. Rightly may those Nations bee called *Barbarous*, which seeme rather to barke then to speake, and yet they scorne that any should abase them, with the baleest of titles in their opinion, to call them *Tabayquero*, and reuenge it with the death of the wrong doer. But I feare me our Frier will be found a Lyer, howsoeuer I am forced to relate many things out of him, hauing written so largely of this Ethiopian subiect with such boldnesse, and pretending such assurance from reports of that Baltasar, as if no doubt were to be made of his assertions.

9 Godscurse and mans, follow the Iewes euery where, as the shadow the body.

CHAP. III.

Of PRESBYTER IOHN: *and of the* PRIEST-IOHNS *in Asia: whether that descended of these.*

HAuing now declared the antiquities of Ethiopia, drawne out of ancient Authors, let vs neerer hand behold, what neerer our times, Others haue reported thereof. Wherein first we will heere insert out of [a] *Scaligers* annotation, vpon the Ethiopian Ecclesiasticall Calendar or Computation of times, somewhat remarkeable, and fitting to our present purpose. The name (sayth hee) of the Christian Ethiopians is not now first made knowne to vs. For their Church not onely at Ierusalem and Constantinople, but at Rome also and Venice, hath had liberty a good while to vse their owne Rites. The Portugals, and *Francis Alvarez* haue further discouered them: Before, we onely heard the name of Ethiopia. A wonder it is, that some ages since, [b] their Emperours name was made knowne to vs out of Asia, rather then out of Ethiopia it selfe. Three hundred yeeres agoe, the Ethiopian Kings reigned in Asia, especially in Drangiana, the borders of Susiana, India, and China, vntill the Tartars dispossessed them of the Asian Empire. For *Cingis* first, the first Tartar King, slue *Vncam*, the Ethiopian Emperour: and his Posteritie chased the Abissines out of Moin and China, and forced them to flee into Africa. Often haue I maruelled that a people of no knowledge in these times of Sea-affaires, could achieue so mightie exploits, as to propagate their Empire, from Ethiopia to China. Since that time the knowledge of that Emperour hath come to vs in the name of *Presteiuan*: (which in the Persian tongue (as much now of reckoning in Asia, as the Latine in the West) signifieth, [c] *Apostolike*, inferring thereby that he is a Christian King of the right faith. For *Presteian* signifieth *Apostles*, and *Presteiani Apostolicall*; *Padescha Presteiani*, the King *Apostolicall*, in Arabian *Melich ressuli*, in Ethiopian *Negusch Chawariani*. Of this greatnesse of their Empire, in Asia are witnesses those Ethiopian Crosses, which are seene in Giapan, China, and other places. Yea, the Temple of *Thomas* the Apostle in the Region of [d] Malabar, hath nothing in it but is Ethiopian, the crosses, building, and name it selfe. It is called, [e] *Hanariya*, which in Ethiopian is as much to say, as, Apostle: which *Marcus Paulus* falsly expoundeth, *a Holyman*. This name in the Author seemeth to be giuen not to the Church, but to the Apostle himselfe) *Paulus* addeth that the remainder of the Christians subiect to *Presteiuan* abode in Tenduch. The neighbouring Arabians call them now *Habassi*, and wee from thence Abissines, or *Abassines*: they call themselues Chaldæans: for their ancient and elegant Language, in which their Books are written, is neere to the Chaldæan and Assyrian. Moreouer, the Ecclesiasticall History testifieth, and out of the same *Nicephorus, lib.9.c.18.* that

a *Ios. Scal. de Emend. Temp. lib.7.*

b *Castaneda* seemeth also to bold that the *Negus* is that *Presbiter Iohn* of Asia; though not of history, *lib.1. cap.1.*

c So with vs, the French King is called *Christianissimus*: the Spaniard *Catholicus*, the English, *Defender of the Faith.*

d *Maliapur*. see our Historie, *Lib.5.*

e In *Ramusius* copie it is *Anania*, in the Latine *Ananii. Marcus Paulus lib.1.cap.27. Ram.20.*

that many Colonies were sent out of Assyria into Ethiopia. They are there called *Axumites*, of their chiefe Citie, but by themselues, as *Alvares* affirmeth, *Chaschumo*. More may we see hereafter of their Rites, and other things worthy of knowledge, in the Institutions [d] of that tongue which we haue diligently, and Methodically written.

These words of *Scaliger* haue made me take some paines in the search of the premisses; for hee differeth from the opinion of others, which haue written any thing of *Presbiter*, or *Priest Iohn* (as they terme him) in Asia, whom the Tartars subdued. *Ortelius* [e] maketh a *Presbyter Iohn* in Asia, and another in Africa, if I vnderstand him. As for that *Vncam*, *William de Rubruquis*, which trauelled those parts in the morning of the Tartar-greatnesse, *Anno* 1253. reporteth that one *Con Can* reigned in Kara-Caray, or blacke Catay, after whole death a certaine Nestorian Shepheard (a mightie Gouernour of the people called *Taymen*, which were Nestorian Christians) exalted himselfe to the Kingdome, and they called him King *Iohn*, reporting of him tenne times more then was true, as is the Nestorians wont. [f] For notwithstanding all their great boasts of this man, when I trauelled along by his Territories, there was none that knew any thing of him; but onely a few Nestorians. This *Iohn* had a brother, a mightie shepheard called *Vut*, which inhabited three weekes journey beyond him: hee was Lord of a Village called Cara Carum, his subiects called Critor Merkits, were also Nestorians. But their Lord abandoning Christianitie, embraced Idols, and retained with him Priests of the said Idols. Tenne or fifteene dayes journey beyond his Pastures, were the Pastures of Moal, a beggerly Nation, and neere them the Tartars. *Iohn* dying, this *Vut* became his Heire, and was called *Vut Can*, (whom others call *Vnc Can*) and his droues and flockes ranged vnto the Pastures of Moal. About the same time one *Cyngis* a Blacke-smith in Moal, stole many of *Vut* [g] *Cans* Cattell: who in reuenge with his forces spoyled the Moals and Tartars. They agrieued, made *Cyngis* their Captaine, who suddenly brake in vpon *Vut*, and chased him into Cataya; tooke his Daughter and married her, and had by her *Mangu*, that was then the Great *Can* when our Author wrote this. These Relations sauour not of any such Monarchie as should extend from Æthiopia, to those parts of Asia.

Marcus [h] *Paulus* telleth, that the Tartars were Tributaries to this *Vncam*, (so he calleth him) which saith hee, after some mens opinion signifieth in our language, *Priest Iohn*, but through his tyrannie prouoked to rebellion, they vnder the conduct of *Cyngis*, slue *Vncam*. And afterwards hee saith, that [a] Tendut was vnder the subjection of Priest *Iohn*: but all the Priests *Iohns* that there raigned after *Vncam*, were tributarie to the Great *Can*: and in his time raigned one *George*, who was a Priest and a Christian, as were the Inhabitants. But hee held not so much as the [b] Priests *Iohns* had done: and the Great *Cans* did still ioyne in affinitie with this Familie, marrying their Daughters vnto thele Kings. This *George* was the fourth after Priest *Iohn*, and was holden a great Seignior. Hee ruled ouer two Nations, called by some *Gog* and *Magog*, by the Inhabitants, *Vng* [c] and *Mongul*, where some were Mahometanes; some Heathens, other Christians. It appeareth by their Histories, that *Scaliger* was deceiued, to thinke that this Priest *Iohn* had so large an Empire, seeing *Rubruquis* in the same Age, or soone after, could in his owne Countrey heare so little of him: and his posteritie in *Marcus Paulus* his time, continued tributarie Kings vnder the Tartar. The name Priest was giuen them of that function, which hee testifieth, *George* receiued, and *Iohn* perhaps of that first Shepheard that vsurped *Con Cans* estate. To let passe therefore that *Presbyter Iohn* in the North-east, we stumble on another mid-way betwixt that and Æthiopia. For so *Ioannes* [d] *de Plano Carpini* (sent Embassadour to the Great *Can*, from Pope *Innocent*, *Anno* 1246.) and *Vincentius* [e] in his *Speculum*, tell of the King of India Major, called *Presbiter Iohn*, being inuaded by the Tartars vnder the leading of *Tossut Can*, sonne of *Cyngis*, who before had subdued India Minor: Hee by a Stratagame acquitted his Realme of them. For making mens Images of Copper, he set each of them vpon a saddle on Horse-backe, and put fire within them, placing a man with a paire of bellowes on the horse-back behind euery Image. And so with many Images and Horses in such sort furnished, they marched against the Tartars: and when they were ready to ioyne, by kindling a fire in each Image, they made such a smoke, that the Indians wounded and slue many Tartars, who could not see to requite them thorow the smoke: but were forced to leaue that Countrey, and neuer after returned. Heere now wee meet with a new *Presbyter Iohn* in India Major, which whether he were the same with the Ethiopian, let vs a little examine.

India is by *Marcus* [f] *Paulus* diuided into three parts, the Lesser, Greater, and Middle; the first of them hee boundeth from Ciamba to Murfili, and saith, it had in it eight Kingdoms; the Middle called Abascia, had in it seuen Kingdomes, three whereof were Saracens, the rest Christians. Sixe of them were subject to the seuenth. It was told me, saith hee, that after their Baptisme with water, they vsed another Baptisme with fire, branding three markes on their

d. *Scaligeri* Ethiopian Grammar.

e. *Ortel. Theat.* in the Map of Tartaria.

f. *Bertius & alii Geographi.*

f. *Will. de Rubruquis Itinerarium map Hak. tom. 2. cap. 13.*

g. This *Vut* of *Vncam* was called *Prete*, or Priest, as *Boterus* constereth because he had the Crosse borne before him, hee is said with no great likelihood of truth to haue ruled 72. Kingdomes.

h. *Marcus Paulus lib. 1. cap. 24.*

a. *Cap. 52.* The Latine Copie wanteth these things.

b. Sir *Iohn Mandeuille* storie of *Presbyter Iohn*, is fabulous.

c. Haply the Prince before mentioned was called *Vncam* of *Vng*, and *Can*: for *Cun* signifieth a Diuiner or Ruler.

d. *Ioan de Pl. Carp. Itinerarium cap. 5.*

e. *Vincentius Bellacensis spec. historiale l. 32. c. 10.*

f. *Marcus Paulus, lib. 3. cap. 37.*

their forehead and both their cheekes. The Saracens vsed one brand from the forehead to the middle of their nose: They warre with the Soldan of Aden, and with the Inhabitants of Nubia, and are reputed the best warriours in India. The greater [g] India extendeth from Malabar, to the Kingdome of Chelmacoran, and had in it thirteene Kingdomes. This Abascia by the bordering enemies of Nubia and Aden is apparant to bee this Ethiopia where wee now are: euen by their *Brands* wee may know them: And this the Ancients called India. For *Sidonius* [h] calleth the Ethiopian *Memnones*, Indians: and *Æliamus* [i] placeth Indians at Asthaboras; one of the Riuers of Meroe: [k] *Virgil* also bringeth Nilus out of India. *Vsque coloratis amnis deuexus ab Indis*: which must needes be meant of Ethiopia. *Nicephorus* [l] reckoneth the Sabeans and Homenites people of Arabia vnto India. *Sabellicus* [m] complaineth of the confounding of these names India, and Ethiopia, saying, that most men did thinke Ethiopia next to Egypt, to bee that India, where *Alexander* ouerthrew *Porus*. This confusion of names, I thinke, did first grow from confusion of Nations. For as is before obserued out of *Eusebius* the Ethiopians arose from the Riuer Indus, and settled their habitation neere to Egypt. Perhaps they brought the Indian name also to these parts. Or else the ignorance of these remote Countries might doe it: in which respect, not onely a third part of the old World, but another new-found World, is now named India. Therefore *Acosta* and *Adrianus Turnebus* [n] esteeme India to be a generall name to all Countries which are farre off, and strange to vs, although it be properly attributed to the East Indies.

Now if any wonder at such an extrauagant discourse of India heere, let him know that in our search for *Presbyter Iohn*, which then was knowne to withstand the Tartars in Asia, I cannot see how hee can bee the Abessine or Æthiopian: but rather thinke that when a mightie Christian Prince was found in Æthiopia, they did imagine him to bee that *Presbiter Iohn*, of which they had heard in Asia, being furthered in this errour by the name, India, which, as is said, did generally comprehend both the true India, and this, more truely called Ethiopia. Now for that *Presbiter Iohn* in India, I take him for some Christian King: for at that time there were many Christians, as appeareth by *Venetus*, in manner disperse throughout Asia: and some, called Saint *Thomas* Christians, remaine in India to this day. Why I thinke it not to agree to the Abissine, my reasons besides the former, are, the distance of place: all that huge tract of Arabia, with the wide Seas on each side, separating India from Ethiopia: the vnpassable Desarts by Land: No mention in Historie who should dispossesse them of that India *Maior*, where the Tartar had neuer any great power: the Histories [o] which we haue of those Indian Princes, the Kings of Malabar, of Decan, the Samorin, &c. are against it: the difference of Religion: for those Indian Christians of Saint *Thomas*, are not branded with hote [p] Irons, nor Circumcised, nor agree in other Rites with the Ethiopian: the Ethiopian Historie challengeth no such large extents to their Empire, except in Africa, where they seate them in a continuall deicent, from the time of *Salomon*, till now, whereas those *Presbiter Iohns*, had their dwelling and abode in Asia, as their Stories signifie. And further, the name [q] Priest *Iohn* is a name vnknowne in Ethiopia, and by ignorant mistaking of the Europæans, applied to that Ethiopian Emperour when first they heard of him, as saith *Zaga* [r] *Zabo* his Embassadour to the King of Portugall, who reproueth the men of these parts; saying, that he is named of them *Belul*, which signifieth *Excellent*, or precious, and in the Chaldean tongue, *Ioannes Encos*, which signifieth the same. *Sabellicus* saith, the Ethiopians called him *Gyan*; *Luschoten* affirmeth, *Bel Gyan*: (*Bel* signifieth the highest, and *Gyan*, Lord.) But [s] Frier *Luys* out of *Balthasar* the Æthiopian, sheweth that in the hill Amara are ancient records which testifie that from the time of that Queene that came to *Salomon*, the Emperours haue beene called *Beldigian*, the signification whereof is, a *precious* Stone, or a thing of great value: which Title hath continued to those Emperours, as *Pharaos* to the Egyptians, and *Cæsar* to the Romanes. Some also of the Royall bloud (which are vsually kept, as after shall appeare in the hill Amara) when they are elected to the Empire, if there bee many of that Imperiall issue take Orders, and become Priests, not procreating any Children. Such saith hee in our times haue beene *Daniel* the second, *Paphnutius*, that succeeded to *Naum* and *Alexander* the third his successour, all which were both Priests and Kings; and therefore by the Ethiopians which resort to the Holy Sepulchre at Ierusalem, and vsed to speake Greeke, were called Priest *Beldegian*. This by corruption of the name by Merchants, and such as knew not the signification and also for breuities sake, was pronounced Priest *Gyan* or *Iohn*.

Now for the Priest *Iohn* in Asia, hee tels that when Saint *Thomas* was martyred in India, the three [t] *Magi*, who had visited CHRIST, by the leading of a *Starre*, in his Infancie, and had after beene consecrated Bishops ouer their seuerall Kingdomes (you must not deny their royalties) by the Apostle; chose one amongst themselues to bee Priest and King, who was called Priest *Iohn*. If you beleeue not *Peter de Natalibus*, out of whom the Frier cites this, I should bee too much troubled in perswading you. Hee telleth also out of *Otho Frisingensis*, that

g *Aldius nominat indiam quæ in Æthiopiam vergit.* l. 8.

h *Sidonius ap. Ortel. in Thesauro.*

i *Ælian. l. 17. de animalium.*

k *Virg. Georg. 4.*

l *Sabellicus Enead. 10. l. 8.*

m More testimonies of this nature see in *Stad. E. T. cap. 6. 10.*

n *Sabell. Æn. 10. lib. 8.*

n *Ios. Acost. hist. Ind. lib. 1. c. 14. Turn. Adues. lib. 21. cap. 9.*

o Of these Indian Histories touching the same times. See *Linschoten lib. 1. cap. 12. & 27. & G. B. B.*

p This branding is common to the Moriss Christian, and Idolattous Europians, vsed to preuent the mutacke distillations from the brine: supposition hath induced some to annex it to their Baptisme.

q *Odoardo Lopez. Ad. ann.*

r *Zago Zabo de 32. Fide Ethiopum.*

s *Luys de Frere. in Hist. Ethiop. lib. 1. cap 7.*

t *Matth. 2. 1.*

that about the yeere 1145. one *Iohn* a Christian, both King and Priest, reigning in the furthest parts of the East, warred vpon, and ouer-came the Medes, Assyrians, and Persians, and had intended to free Ierusalem out of Saracenicall seruitude, but not finding passage ouer Tigris, was forced to returne. This is like to bee that *Presbyter Iohn*, whose posteritie vsed that stratagеme before mentioned against the Tartars. And to him, I thinke, might fitly agree that Title of *Prestegian* (easily deflected and altered to *Priest Iohn*) whereof you haue heard out of *Ioseph Scaliger*. I haue seene a Manuscript [u] in old French, pretended to bee a Letter from *Prester Iohn*, to the Emperour *Frederike*, wherein is discoursed of the site, greatnesse, puissance, wealth, and other rarities of his estate: but finding so many monsters, and vncouth relations therein, I could not bee so prodigall of faith, or penurious of iudgement, as to value his authoritie at any high rate: wherein Sir *Iohn Maundeuill* seemes to haue beene a lender or borrower, so iustly doe they agree, in disagreeing from both probabilitie and possibilitie of truth: yet both in the one and the other, wee may obserue the like situation of *Presser Iohns* dwelling in these parts of Asia, neere Persia: and that such a multitude of fables could not but haue some truth for their ground. My conclusion is, That for that name of *Prestegian*, I like well *Scaligers* interpretation, and thinke that it may agree either to this, or some other Christian Prince at those times in India, which is farre neerer to Persia, and from whence the Indians borrowed their Royall Titles, both in those times and since, as *Garcias ab Horto* [x] and *Linschoten* the [x] *Idalham* or *Adelham*, the Title of the King of [y] *Goa*, and the Countries about, commonly called *Idalcan*, is not a proper name, but a Title of honour, signifying (as *Adonizedek*, *Ios.* 10. 1.) Lord, or King of Iustice: *Nizamalmco*, the speare of the Kingdome; and such like: *Ismael* the *Sophi* (which name also is by some interpreted *Elect*, because they pretended to bee or doe so, and others, the reprobate followers of a reprobate Religion) added the Title of *Xa* or *Sha*, to such as embraced his new Sect, as *Nisomoxa*, &c. If the borrowing of names from the Persian language (so generall in those parts) bee still obserued: no maruell if some Christian King in those times might stile himselfe *Prestegian*, or Apostolicall (which others not vnderstanding, called *Priest Iohn*, or *Prete Ianni*) as being compassed with so many Saracens, the enemies of the Apostles, besides Heretikes and Heathens. At Mosul is yet a Patriake, who in *Paulus* [z] time was of farre greater iurisdiction, and as an Easterne Pope, ordayned Archbishops and Bishops, through all the parts of India, besides Cairo, and Baldach: and therefore no maruell if in India there were some great Christian Prince, able to make a head against the Tartars in those times: For euen in Cranganor [*] are yet supposed to bee threescore and ten thousand Christians: besides a great number in Negapatan, and in Malipur: and very many in Angamale, and fifteene thousand on the North of Cochin, where the Archbishop that dependeth on the Patriarke of Babylon, or Mosul, resided: All which haue no communion with the Greeke, Roman, or Ethiopian Churches. And for the Ethiopian names or crosses, either their Merchants when their state was great, or slaues, which taken from them are euen in these times sold dearest of any other, and mount to great preferments of warre, vnder these Lords, might leaue such impressions: or, some other, which as they professed *one Christ*, so might haue some wordes and ceremonies common with the Ethiopian: although I must needes acknowledge, that many of those crosses haue not crossed my way, nor any other Ethiopian foot prints.

Pardon me, gentle Reader, if I seeme tedious in this dispute, seeing it is necessarie both for the vnderstanding of the extent of the Power and Religion of this *Precious* or *Priest Iohn*: and *Scaliger* hauing ascribed such large bounds to his Empire, I could not but examine the same, otherwise profesing my selfe (*si non magis amica veritas*) euen willing, if I must needs erre, to erre with him, who hath in many tongues, and arts, shewed himselfe perhaps the worthiest Generall, and generallest Worthy, against Error, that euer wee haue had, the *Alpha* of learned men in our Age, as our learned [a] *Morton* testifieth of him, and a great light of learning, acknowledged by [b] *Royall* testimonie. His authoritie I would not seeme to contemne, and therefore haue entred this long search. But *Scaliger* himselfe hath since altered his opinion in the last Edition of his *Emendation*; in which these later Editions of this worke, might haue excluded also this long dispute, but that it may serue to illustrate both this and other parts of our Historie, and therefore doe still suffer it to remayne.

u Communicated to me, by that industrious and learned Gentleman, Master *Selden*, of the Inner Temple.

x *Garc. ab Hor. lib.2. cap.28. Linschot. lib.1. cap.27.*

y Goa is the seate of the Portugall Vice roy.

z *M.Paul, lib.1 cap.6.*

* *G Bat. Ben. part.3. lib.2.*

a *D. Morton against Percey.*

b *Iunius & Scal. duo magna lineatum lumina, Rex Iacobus in Declarat. contra Vorst.*

HON-

HONDIVS *his Map of the* Abissine *Empire.*

CHAP. IIII.

Relations of the Æthiopian Empire, collected out of ALVARES, BERMVDESIVS, *and other Authors.*

TO come now to the Æthiopian Greatnesse of this great Æthiopian; his Title would be a sufficient Text for a more sufficient glosse, then we can giue. In a Letter to King *Emanuel*, after diuers words concerning the *Trinitie*, follow; *These Letters sendeth* Atani Tinghill, *that is, the Frankincense of the Virgin, which was his name in Baptisme, but at the beginning of his Raigne,* b *hee tooke to name* Dauid, *the beloued of* GOD, *Pillar of the Faith, descended of the Tribe of* Iuda, *Sonne of* Dauid, *Sonne of* Salomon, *Sonne of the Pillar of Sion, Sonne of the seed of* Iacob, *Sonne of the hand of* Marie, *Sonne of* Nihu c *according to the flesh, Emperour of the Greater and Higher Æthiopia, and of most large Kingdomes, Territories and Iurisdictions, the King of* Xoa, Caffate, Fatigar, Angote, Baru, Baaliganze, Adea, Vangue, *and* Goiame, *where Nilus springeth; Of* Damaraa, Vaguemedri, Ambeaa, Vagne, Tigri-Mahon; *Of* Sabaym, *the Countrey of the Queene of* Saba, *of* Barnagasso, *and Lord as farre as* Nubia, *which confineth vpon* Ægypt.

a Lit. ad Emr. reg. vid. Marin. l. 10. c. 20. & seq. ad fin. & Sanut. lib. 10. cap 11.

b The Kings of Ethiopia change their names, as the Popes vse to doe.

c In a Letter to the Popeis added, Sonne of the Holy Apostles, Peter and Paul, according to grace.

Heere

Heere are names enough to skarre a weake braine, a great part whereof are now his (as some say) in Title onely. For at this present, if *Barros* and *Botero* bee beleeued, his Neighbours haue much encroched vpon him: as a little before we haue shewed (a thing wholly denied by the later Relations of Fiier [d] *Luys de Urreta*:) Yet seeing we are to trauell through all these Countreys, we will leaue the question of dominion to him and his neighbours, to try it with the sword: Our pen shall peaceably point out the places, and after that, the conditions. *Barnagasso* [e] is the nigliest to vs, at least, by the neere situation of the red Sea, nigliest to our knowledge. It stretcheth from Suachen almost to the mouth of the Streyt, and hath Abagni, or Alsapus, on the South, It hath no other Port on the red Sea, but Ercocco. Neither hath the *Prete* any other Port but this in all his Dominion, being Land-locked on all sides. *Anno* 1558. [f] The Turks committed heere great spoile: They haue since taken from the *Prete*, all on the Sea side, and specially that Port of Ercocco, and the other of Suachen or Suaquem, and forced the Gouernour or vnder-King of this Prouince, to compound for a yeerely summe of a thousand ounces of Gold: besides his Tribute to the Ethiopian. To him are also subiect the Gouernments of Dafila, and Canfila. And the Turke hath a Basa [g] at Suaquem, called by *Ptolomey, Sebasticum*. Tigri-Mahon lyeth betweene Nilus, Marabo, two Riuers, Angote, and the Sea. Tigrai hath in it Cazumo, which is supposed the Seat-Royall of that great Queen, which visited *Salomon*. Angote is betwéen Tigre-Mahon & Amara. Heere in *Amara* [h] a steepe Hill, dilating it selfe in a round forme, many dayes iourny in compasse, enuironing with the steepe sides, and impassible tops thereof, many fruitfull and pleasant Vallies, wherein the kindred of the *Prete* are surely kept, for the auoiding of all tumults and seditions. Xoa hath store of corne and cattell: Goiame hath plenty of Gold: as Baguamedri hath siluer. In Fatigar is a Lake on the top of a high mountaine, twelue miles compasse, abounding with great varietie of fish; and thence nine many Riuers, flored with the same fish.

Damut is ennobled with siluerie. For the siluer that are hence caried captiues, in Arabia, Persia, and Egypt, proue good souldiers. The greater part of this Kingdome are Gentiles, and the residue Christians. The Oxen (as *Bermudez* relateth) are almost as great as Elephants, their hornes very great, and serue for vessels to carie and keepe Wine and Water, as Barrels or Tankerds. There is found also a kinde of Vnicorne, wilde and fierce, fashioned like a horse, of the bignesse of an Asse. Neere hereunto he addeth a Prouince of Amazons, whole Queene knoweth no man, and is honoured as a goddesse: they say, they were first instituted by the Queene of Saba: both like true, as that which followeth of Griffons, the Phoenix, and fowles so bigge, that they make a shaddow like a cloud. Couche is subiect to Damut: they are Gentiles: The Prince called *Angugez*, that is, Lord of riches: he shewed vs (saith *Bermudez*) a Mountaine glistering in some places like the Sun, saying, all that was gold. Mote gold is said there to be, then in Peru, or in these parts iron. The head of the Monasteries of Amara Christned him, *Gradeus* the Emperour being his God-father, and named him *Andrew*. Gueguere was sometimes called *Meroa*: the Inhabitants are confederate with the Turkes and Moores, against the Abissines. Dancali and Dobas, are neere the red Sea, inhabited with Moores.

Many of these Countreys are diuersly placed by diuers; through ignorance of the exact situations: which *Aluarez* [i] in his so many yeares trauell in those parts, might well haue acquainted vs with, if he had first acquainted himselfe with rules of Art; to haue obserued by Instruments the true site and distances.

In the Kingdome of Angole, iron, and salt is currant money. The Moores of Dobas haue a Law, prohibiting marriage to any, that hath not first slaine twelue Christians. The diuorces [k] and marrying the wiues of their brethren deceased, is heere in vse much like as with the Iewes.

In Bernagasso, *Aluarez*, and his company, in their trauell were encountred with many great Apes as bigge as Weathers, their fore-parts hairie like Lions, which went not lesse then two or three hundred in a company: they would climbe any Rocke: they digged the earth, that it seemed as it had been tilled.

In the Countrey of the Giannamori, [l] as they trauelled, they crossed a certaine brooke or Riuer, that came downe from the Mountaines, and finding a pleasant place, shaded with the Sallowes, there they reposed themselues at noone; the water of the brooke was not sufficient to driue a Mill. And whiles the company stood, some on one side the brooke, some on the other, they heard a thunder, which seemed a farre off, but saw no likelihood of raine or winde; when the thunder was done, they put their stuffe in order to be gone, and had taken vp the Tent, in which they dined, when one of the company going by the brooke about his businesse, suddenly cried out, *Looke to your selues*: whereupon turning about, they saw the water come downe a speares depth with great furie, which caried away part of their

d *Luys de Urreta de The Pole. Anno.* 34 make *Presbyter Iohn* the greatest prince in the world, except the King of Spaine.

e *G. Botero Bamise. p.1. Barros* his description of places vnde-scribed by *Leo. A Mauiuan.*

f *G. B. B. parte 2. lib. 2.*

g He is called The Basa of Abatia, a fift *Basa* or *beligerbeg*, of the Turke in Africa, omitted by *Knolles*.

h *Fr. Aluarez.*

Io. Bermudez.

i *Fr. Aluarez.*

k *Aluar. c. 21.*

l *Cap. 50.*

their stuffe; and had they not (by good hap) taken vp their Tent, they together with it had beene carried away with the streame. Many of them were forced to climbe vp the Sallowes. Such was the noise of water, and the rattling of stones, which came tumbling downe the Mountaines together, that the earth trembled, and the sky seemed to threaten a down-fall. Suddenly it came, and suddenly it passed. For the same day they passed ouer, and saw very many and great stones ioyned to those which they had seen there before.

In the Kingdome of Goyame, [d] the Riuer Nilus springeth, it is there called Gion, and comes from two Lakes, which for their greatnesse may seeme to bee Seas, in which, report goeth that Mermaydes, Tritons, or Men-fishes are seene, and some haue told me (saith *Alvarez*) that they haue seene it. *Peter Covillian* a Portugall, which had liued a great part of his life in those parts, told me, that he had been in that Kingdome by order from Queene *Helena*, to build there an Altar in a Church built by her, where she was buried. Beyond that Kingdome, I was told, there were Iewes.

[d] c. 835 ser. 6.11. Some deaw Nilus from certain mountaines, which are named mountaines of the Moone: but it comes first from the Lake Zembie, or Zaire: and passeth by this, where it is encreased. Bermudez

Don Iohn de Castro mentions a high Hill inhabited of Iewes, in these parts, which came, no man knowes from whence: but they defended the *Prete* against the Moores. Of the fals in Goyame, before is related out of *Bermudez*, that they make a noyse like thunder. He saith saith that in Dembia Nilus runneth within thirty or forte leagues of the Red-Sea, to which the Emperour purposed to cut a passage, as his Predecessor had begun. There is a great Lake thirtie leagues long, and twenty broad, with many Ilands, inhabited onely of Religious men. *Agaw* is possessed of Moores and Gentiles mixed. He speakes of the Kingdom of Oghy, seuen or eight dayes iourney from Doaro, vnder which is a Prouince of Gentiles called Gorague, bordering with Quiloa and Mongalo, which are great Witches, and obserue the entrails of sacrificed Beasts. They kill an Oxe with certaine Ceremonies, and anointing themselues with the tallow thereof, make a great fire, teeming to goe into it, and to sit down in a chaire therein; thence giuing Diuinations and answers, without burning. Their Tribute is two Lyons, three Whelpes, an Ounce of Gold molten, with certaine Hens and Chickens of the same metall. Sixe Busses laden with Siluer, a thousand Beeues, and the skinnes of Lyons, Ounces and Elkes. The Goffates are vulgarly reported to haue beene Iewes: they are hated in other Prouinces.

c. 159.

The houses of the Ethiopians are round, all of Earth, flat roofed, couered with thatch, compassed with yards. They sleepe vpon Oxe-hides. They haue neither Tables nor Table-cloathes, but haue their meat serued in on plaine wooden Platters. Some eate flesh raw; others broyle it. Artillery they had not, vntill they bought some of the Turkes. Writing is little (and scarce a little) vsed amongst them: the Officers dispatch matters of Iustice by Messengers, and word of mouth. There is no wine made of the Grape (but by stealth) except at the *Prete* and [f] *Abuna*: Others vse Wine made of Raisins, steeped ten dayes in water, and strained, which is cordiall and strong. They haue plenty and want of Metals; Gold, Siluer, &c. the soyle yeelideth, but they haue not Art to take it. They haue no coine of Gold or Siluer; Salt is the most curant money. Sugar canes they haue, but want skill to vse them. The Mountaines and Woods are full of Basill and other odoriferous plants. They haue store of Bees and Honey: but their hiues are placed in Chambers, where making a little hole in the wall, the Bees goe in and out. There are some places very cold. The Commons are miserably oppressed by their superiours. No man may kill an Oxe though it be his owne, without licence from the Gouernours: there were no Shambles but at the Court. The common people seldome speake truth, no not vpon an oath, except they are compelled to sweare by the head of the King; they exceedingly feare excommunication. Their oathes are in this sort: The partie to bee deposed goeth with two Priests, carrying with them fire and incense to the Church-dore, whereon he layeth his hand.

f *Abuna* is then Patriarch.

Then the Priest adiures him, saying: *If thou shalt sweare falsely, a Wild Lyon deuoureth the beasts of the Forrest, so let the Diuell deuoure thy soule: and as corne is ground vnder the Millstone, so let him grinde thy bones: and as the fire burneth vp the wood, so let thy soule burne in Hell:* (The party answereth to euery of these clauses) *Amen. But if thou speake truth, let thy life bee prolonged with honour, and let thy soule enter into Paradise with the Blessed. Amen.* Then both he giue his testimonie. They haue Bookes written in Parchment.

Let vs now come vnto the Court of their Emperour, which was alway mouing, and yet the greatest Town that his whole Empire containes. For there are few which haue in them one thousand and sixe hundred Families, whereas this moueable Citie hath fiue thousand, or sixe thousand Tents, and Mules for carriage about fifty thousand. In his march from one place to another, if they passe by a Church, he and all his company alight, and walk on foot, till they be past. There is also carried before him a consecrated portable Altar, vpon the shoulders of certaine Priests appointed to that office. They call him *Aceguas*, which signifieth Emperour, and *Negus*, that is, King.

By

By commandement of the Queene *Maqueda*, which visited *Salomon*; women care (say they) circumcised: Both sexes are circumcised at eight dayes old; and the males fortie dayes after; the females fourescore; (vnlesse sicknesse hasten the same) are baptized. As for the rites of their Christianitie, it belongeth not to this place to expreise. Their circumcision *Zabo* saith, is not obserued, as if it made them more worthy then other Christians, for they thinke to bee saued *onely by Faith*. They vse this and distinctions of meates, and Mosaicall rites, yet so, as he *that eateth, should not despise him that eateth not*, and not condemning others that refuse them; but yet thinking that neither Christ, nor the Apostles, nor the Primitiue Church had disannulled them, interpreting also the Scriptures to their purpose. Of their agreeing with other Churches in the most points of substance, the Author of the [d] *Catholike Traditions* hath written; and when I make a *Christian Visitation* of these parts, it shall bee further discouered.

The succession is not tyed to the eldest, but to him whom the father appointeth. For *Dauid*, which sent his Embassage to Portugall, was the third sonne in order, and for modestie in resisting to sit in his fathers Throne, which in the same triall his elder brethren had accepted, was preferred to that which he had refused; the other reiected for their forward acceptation. The King offered [e] the King of Portugall an hundred thousand drammes of gold, and as many Souldiers towards the subduing of the Moores, besides other things meete for the warre. It seemes, the difference of the Ethiopian, and Popish superstition was the chiefe hinderance in this business: neither parte being able (if willing) to reconcile their long-received differences from each other, and the truth. *Eugenius* the Pope, and the King, then named, *The Seed of Iacob*, [f] had written to each other; and *Alnarez* yeelded [g] obedience to the Pope, in the name of the *Prete* at Bologna, in the presence of Pope *Clement* the seuenth, and *Charles* the fifth. But all this sorted to none effect. For Pope *Paul* the fourth sent an Ambassage to *Claudius*, then the Abassine Emperour, employing in the same thirteene Iesuites, one of which was made Patriarke, and two Bishops, in their hopefull Ethiopian Hierarchie. *Ignatius*, the Founder of the Iesuites, wrote a long Letter also, which *Maffeus* and *Lorrie* haue inserted at large. Thus in the yeere 1555. *Iohn* the third, King of Portugall, vndertooke the charges to conuey them thither; and sent [h] *Consalvus Roteriguez*, to prepare them way by a former Ambassage to *Claudius*, whose eares hee found shut closed to such motions: Whereupon the new Patriarke stayed at Goa, and *Ouiedus* one of the Bishops, with a Priest or two went thither, where when they came, they found *Claudius* slaine, and his brother [i] *Adamas*, a cruell man, and an Apostate sometimes from his Faith, in the Throne. Hee cast the new Bishop into bands, and drew him into the warres with him, where the Emperour was discomfited, and he taken and stripped of all, and at last miserably dyed, and with him the hope of Romish *Abassia*. *Iohn Nonnius Barretus*, the designed Patriarke, refused (as *Maffeus* saith) the Archbishoprick of Goa, where his brother was Vice-roy, and remayned subiect to the Iesuiticall Societie to his death. In the yeere 1559. *Ioannes Bermudez* [k] returned to Lisbone. He wrote a discourse of his Ambassage from the Ethiopian Emperour to *Iohn* the third, King of Portugall, and of his aduentures in those parts befallen him. In which he relateth, that *Abuna Marcos* being at the point of death, *An.* 1555. the Emperour willed him to nominate his Successor, whereupon hee appointed this *Bermudez*, and ordered him with all sacred Orders; which hee accepted vpon condition of the Popes confirmation, whereto the Emperour consented, desiring him to goe to Rome to giue obedience to the Pope, and from thence to Portugall to conclude *Tazaenno* (so he calleth him) his Ambassage. *Iesus* the third confirmed him Patriarke of Alexandria. Hee apprehended *Tazaenno*, as *Onadingueil* enjoyned, and clape Irons on him. His Emperours request was a marriage to be had with the Kings sonne of Portugall, the Ethiopian succession to remayne his Dowrie: also to send man against Zeila; and Pioneers to cut thorow a Hill, thereby to bring Nilus to annoy Egypt. Foure hundred and fifte were sent accordingly by *Garcia* of Noronya. But *Onadingueil* was dead, and *Gradeus* was Emperour, who ouer-threw the Moores, and slue the Kings of Zeila and of Aden. This Emperour felt out with the Portugals, and slue the Kings of Zeila and of Aden. This Emperour felt out with the Portugals, and sent to Alexandria for another *Abuna*, whose name was *Ioseph*, to that none acknowledged *Bermudez*, but the Portugals. *Sabellicus*, [m] saith, hee had conference with some Ethiopians, which said that their Lord ruled ouer eureescore and two Kings. They called him *Gyam*, which signifieth *Mighty*. They wondered why the Italians called him a Priest, seeing hee neuer receiued Orders, onely he bestowed Benefices: and is neither called *Iohn* nor *Ianes*, but *Gyam*. Some report of him things incredible, as one *Webb* [n] an English man in his Tales of his Trauels. Hee hath gold enough shut vp in a Cane, to buy the moytie of the world, as *L. Regius*, [o] affirmeth, and can raise an Armie of ten hundred thousand (saith *Sabellicus*.) Yet the Peasants are not employed in militarie seruice; but onely the Canes, which are men brought vp thereto. They warre not in the Lent, [p] except against them selues with extreme-

[d] *Sitoh* sith. teth of circumcised women in these parts. *Quemadmodum vsi pudendum habent, multres etiam habent quandam glandulam carnem quam Nymphem vocant, non ineptam ad sitisfiendo charaffieri Circumcisionis.* Any one man may Circumcise, and it is done without solemnitie, or ceremonie.

d Catholike Traditions.

e *Litera ad Rom.*

f *Litera ad Papam.*

g *Obedientia dei Prete Iouni, &c. apud Ramusium.*

h *F. Maffeius. Indic. lib. 16.*

i *Emas. Abissin. in Commentario rerum in oriente gestarum.*

k *Ouiedo* B. of *Hieraspolis.*

l *Io. Bermudez relat. Lusit. Atlant. Implis.*

m *Sabell. Ex. 10. Dec. 8.*

n *Webb Trauels.*

o *L. Le Roy, l. 4.*

p *Alnarez. cap. 113.*

q The Moores also vie to give assaults on the Sturdaies and Sundaies, because (of a Jewish superstition) then they refuse to fight.

r *Liz. Helen. ad Emp. Rep. Portugal.*

s *Alnarez.*

t *F. Luys histor. c. 1. c. 20.* Briefe description of the whole world.

u *Alfonso Albuquerque* denies, and affirmes Niluss into the Red Sea. *F. Luys* saith, that *Pius* 5. the Pope prouoked *Belena* the *Preste* to refuse the tribute, and to stay it by diuerting the streame, whereupon the Turke sent Christians out of Greece and other parts to dwell there, and in Cairo placed 30000. families, which cru'ed there Pope and *Preste* to alter their course.

x *Andrea Corsali liter. 2. ap. Ky Luys de Vrreta hist. de la Ethiopia, l. 1. p. 147. & 4.*

q. *F. Luys histor. c. 1. c. 20.* Briefe description of the whole world.

u *Alfonso Albuquerque* denies, and affirmes Niluss into the Red Sea. *F. Luys* saith, that *Pius* 5. the Pope prouoked *Belena* the *Preste* to refuse the tribute, and to stay it by diuerting the streame, whereupon the Turke sent Christians out of Greece and other parts to dwell there, and in Cairo placed 30000. families, which cru'ed there Pope and *Preste* to alter their course.

x *Andrea Corsali liter. 2. ap. Ky Luys de Vrreta hist. de la Ethiopia, l. 1. p. 147. & 4.*

tie of fasting, so weakning their bodies, that the Moores q make that their Harueſt of Abissine captiues. Of this their fasting, *Alnarez* saith s, that they begin their Lent ten dayes before vs: and after Candlemasse, fast three dayes in remembrance of Niniuehs repentance; many Friars in that space eating nothing: and some women refusing to suckle their children aboue once a day. Their generall fast is bread and water, for fish is not easily had, they being farre from Sea, and ignorant to take it. Some Friars eate no bread all Lent long for deuotion: some, not in a whole yeere, yea in their whole life, but feede on herbes, without oile or salt: what I speake not of their girdles of Iron, and other their hardships, which my pen would willingly expresse, if my method forbade mee not. This fasting (as exposing their *State* to hostile inuasions and insolencies) may finde place and mention here. Their Friars r and Priests in Lent eate but once in two dayes, and that in the night. Queene t *Helena*, that sent her Ambassadour to King *Emanuel*, was reported to eate but three times a weeke, on Tuesday, Thursday, and Saturday. On Sundayes they fast not. In Tigray and Tigremahon they fast neither Saturday nor Sunday: and they marry (because they haue two monechs priuiledge from fasting) on Thursday before our Shroueticde. They that are rich, may there marry three wiues, and the Iustice forbids them not; onely u they are excommunicated from entring the Church.

Some x affirme, that the Princes of Egypt haue time out of minde payed to *Prester Iohn* a great tribute (continued by the Turkes, which *Luys* saith is three hundred thousand *Zequis*, euery *Zequin* being sixteene Reals, and with vs eight Shillings) for that by him the furious spirit of Nilus is slacked and cooled, being detayned in the way by many Sluces for that purpose made. The great Turke denying this, y the Abassine caused those Dammes to be broken, and by drowning Egypt in vacouth manner, forced that great Monarch to composition. *Alnarez* denies both the Mountaynes of *Luna*, and the melting of Snow, which is supposed the cause of this Riuers bastinesse, and ascribeth the ouer-flowing of Nilus to the extreme rainesin Ethiopia, whose Fountaynes diuers Portugals haue seene (hee saith) in Goyame. The Turke, not with standing hath (by warring vpon him) erected a new Beglerbegship in his Dominions. *Alnarez* liued there sixe yeeres, and was once within thirtie miles of Nilus, but in all his trauels never saw that Riuer. So little access haue the Ethiopians (barred out by vnpassable passages) vsually to the same.

Andrea Corsali z reporteth, that the *Preste Dauid* was of olive colour, but shewed his face but once in the yeere, hauing at other times his face couered for greater state, and therefore also spake to none, but by an Interpreter. The Inhabitants are branded with fire, which they vse not for Baptisme, but in obseruation of a custome of *Salomon*, who so marked his slaues, as they affirme. Friar *Luys* giueth another reason thereof, saying, that when the world groaned vnder Arrianisme, the Abassine Emperour caused his Subiects to brand themselues with a threefold marke or stampe in the forehead, to testifie their faith of and in the Trinitie: which now since their commerce with the Roman Christians, is in manner wholly left, except in the ruder and more vnciuill parts of Barnagasso, the borders of the Empire. The same Author saith, that in Ethiopia are Elephants, the Rhinoceros, and (besides other beasts) the Vnicorne in the Kingdome of Goyame, and in the Hills of the Moone, but seldome seene, onely the horne is found, which he calleth in manner as the Hart. There are also (he saith) birds of Paradise: and such store and varietie of flowers all the yeere long, that their Eunuchs are alway decked with them. There is one flower not any where else known, called *Ghoyabulo*, much resembling a Mary-gold, but exceeding faire in varietie and excellency of colours, fragrant smell, abundance of leaues in the flower, and with a more rare qualitie; beginning to open at noone, and so by little and little opening more and more till midnight, alway the sent encreasing with the opening: after midnight it shuts by little and little, till noone; denying by the same degrees her pleasing offices to both sensES, of Sent, and Sight. He tells also of a little Bird, to which Nature hath committed the tuition of this Flower, which all the time that it is open flyes about it, driues away things offensiue, sings sweetly, and spreads her self thereon, with other things very strange, I dare not affirme very true. He mentioneth a also a bird, called the *Rhinoceros* of the Ayre, much bigger then an Eagle, and hauing a bow-fashioned bill or beake foure foot long, and a horne between the eyes, with a black line along it. It is a cruell fowle, and attends on Barrells and Campi. The Portugalls had sight of one at the Red Sea, when *Solimon* the Eunuch had his Naue in the Red Sea. The horne is of the same properties with that of the Vnicorne and Rhinoceros. There are fishes also called *Rhinocerotes* of the Sea, many of which are paid the *Preste* for Tribute.

Many many other Ethiopian rarities wee might obserue out of this Author, but if it deserue credit, the Hill Amara after his description, may furnish vs for and beyond all the rest of Ethiopia, as a second earthly Paradise.

r Liz. Helen. ad Emp. Rep. Portugal.

s *Alnarez.*

t *F. Luys histor. c. 1. c. 20.* Briefe description of the whole world.

u *Alfonso Albuquerque* denies, and affirmes Niluss into the Red Sea. *F. Luys* saith, that *Pius* 5. the Pope prouoked *Belena* the *Preste* to refuse the tribute, and to stay it by diuerting the streame, whereupon the Turke sent Christians out of Greece and other parts to dwell there, and in Cairo placed 30000. families, which cru'ed there Pope and *Preste* to alter their course.

x *Andrea Corsali liter. 2. ap. Ky Luys de Vrreta hist. de la Ethiopia, l. 1. p. 147. & 4.*

z Pag. 344. In their language *Aiamimoo.*

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Relations of Ethiopian rarities, collected out of Friar LVYS, *a Spanish Author.*

§. I.

Of the Hill Amara.

10 THE hill Amara hath alreadie beene often mentioned, and nothing indeed in all Ethiopia more deseruеth mention, whether wee respect the naturall site, or the employment thereof. Somewhat is written thereof by Geographers, and Historians, especially by *Alvarez* whom we haue chiefly followed in the former Relations of this Countrie, as an eye-witnesse of the most things reported; but neither they, nor he, haue any thing but by relation, saueing that he passed two dayes iourney along by the said Hill, and that also had almost cost him his life. But *Iohn de Baltasar* (saith our Friar) liued in the same a long time, and therein serued *Alexander* which was afterwards Emperor, and was often by commandement of the same man, when he was Emperor, sent thither: out of his Relations, Friar * *Luys* saith hee hath borrowed that which here we offer you. And here we offer you no small succur to conduct you into, and about this place, where none may come but an Ethiopian, and that by expresse licence, vnder paine of leauing his hands, feet, and eyes behind, in price for his curiositie, and not much lesse is the danger of such as offer to escape from thence: *Alvarez* himselfe being an eye-witnesse of some such cruell executions inflicted for that offence. This Hill is situate as the Nauill of that Ethiopian Body, and Centre of their Empire, vnder the Equine Stall Line, where the Sunne may take his best view thereof, as not encountring in all his long iourney with the like Theatre, wherein the Graces and Muses are Actors, no place more graced with Natures store, or furnished with such a store-house of bookes, the Sunne himself so in loue with the sight, that by first and last thing hee viewеth in all those parts, is this Hill; and 30 where Antiquitie consecrated vnto him a stately Temple: the gods (if yee believe *Homer*, b that they resided in Ethiopia) could not there, nor in the world find a fitter place for entertainment, all of them contributing their best store (if I may so speake) to the banquet, *Bacchus, Iuno, Venus, Pomona, Ceres*, and the rest, with store of fruits, wholsome ayre, pleasant aspect and prospect; secured by *Mars*, lest any sinister accident should interrupt their delights; if his garrisons of Souldiers were needfull where Nature had so strongly fortified before; onely *Neptune* with his ruder Sea-deities, and *Pluto* with his black-guard of bard king *Cerberus*, and the rest of that dreadful traine (whose vnwelcome presence would trouble all that are present) are all, saue *Charon*, who attends on euery feast, yea now hath ferried away those supposed deities with himselfe, perpetually exiled from this place. Once, Heauen and Earth, Nature and Industrie, haue all beene Corriuals to it, all presenting their best presents, to make it of this so louely presence, some taking this for the place of our Fore-fathers Paradise. And yet though thus admired of others, as a Paradise, it is made a Prison to some, on whom Nature had bestowed the greatest freedome, if their freedome had not beene eclipsed c with greatnesse, and though goodly starres; yet by the Sunnes brightnesse are forced to hide their light, when grosse and earthly bodies are seene, their nobleness making them prisoners, that one Sunne onely may shine in that Ethiopian Throne.

It is situate in a great Plaine largely extending it selfe euery way, without other hill in the same for the space of 30. leagues, the forme thereof round and circular, the height such, that it is a daies worke to ascend from the foot to the top, round about, the rock is cut so smooth and 50 euen, without any vnequall swellings, that it seemeth to him that stands beneath, like a high wall, wheron the Heauen is as it were propped: and at the top it is ouer-hanged with rocke, jutting forth of the sides the space of a mile, bearing out like mushromes, so that it is impossible to ascend it, or by ramming with earth, battering with Canon, scaling or otherwise to win it. It is aboue 20. leagues in circuit compassed with a wall on the top, well wrought; that neither man nor beast in chase may fall downe. The top is a plaine field, onely toward the South is a rising Hill, beautifying this Plaine, as it were with a watch-tower, not seruing alone to the eye, but yeelding also a pleasant spring, which passeth through all that Plaine, 60 paying his tributes to euery Garden that will exact it, and making a Lake, whence issueth a Riuer, which hauing from these tops espied Nilus, neuer leaues seeking to finde him, whom he cannot leaue both to seeke and finde, that by his direction and conueyance hee may together with him present himselfe before the Father and great King of waters, the Sea. To that

E. Alvarez c. 58. ad 65.

a Luys de Vrreta de la histoire de la Ethiopia: l. prim. c. 8. & deinceps.

b Hom. Il. 1.

c Iam nates esse Deum, Ouid.

that one may ride vp with ease; it hath also holes cut to let in light, and at the foote of this ascending place, a faire gate, with a *Corpus du Guarde*. Halfe way vp is a faire and spacious Hall cut out of the same Rocke, with three windowes very large vpwards: the ascent is about the length of a lance and a halfe: and at the top is a gate with another guard. The aire aboue is wholesome and delectable; and they liue there very long, and without sicknesse. There are no Cities on the top, but palaces, standing by themselues, in number foure and thirtie, spacious, sumptuous, and beautifull, where the Princes of the Royall bloud haue their abode with their Families. The Souldiers that guard the place dwell in Tents.

There are two Temples, built before the raigne of the Queene of Saba, one in honour of the Sunne, the other of the Moone, the most magnificent in all Ethiopia, which by *Candace*, when shee was conuerted to the Christian faith, were consecrated in the name of the *Holy Ghost*, and of the *Crosse*. At that time (they tell) *Candace* ascending with the Eunuch (whose proper name was *indica*) to baptize all of the Royall bloud, which were there kept, *Zacharie* the eldest of them, was in his baptisme named *Philip*, in remembrance of *Philips* conuerting the Eunuch, which caused all the Emperours to be called by that name, till *Iohn* the Saint, who would be called *Iohn*, because he was crowned on Saint *Iohns* day: and while they were busie in that holy worke of baptizing the Princes, a Doue in fierie forme came flying with beames of light, and lighted on the highest Temple dedicated to the Sunne, whereupon it was afterwards consecrated to the *Holy Ghost* by Saint *Matthew* the Apostle, when he preached in Ethiopia. Those two Temples were after that giuen to the Monasticall Knights of the Militarie Order of Saint *Anthonie*, by *Philip* the seuenth, with two great and spacious Couents built for them. I should lose both you and my selfe, if I should leade you into their sweet, flourishing, and fruitfull gardens, whereof there are store in this Plaine, curiously made, and plentifully furnished with fruits both of Europe plants there, as Peares, Pippins, and such like; and of their owne, as Oranges, Citrons, Limons, and the rest; Cedars, Palme-trees, with other Trees, and varietie of herbes and flowers, to satisfie the sight, taste and sent. But I would entertayne you, onely with rarities, no where else to be found; and such is the Cubayo tree, pleasant beyond all comparison in taste, and whereunto for the vertue is imputed the health, and long life of the Inhabitants; and the Balme tree, whereof there is great store here: and hence it is thought * the Queene of Saba carried and gaue to *Salomon*, who planted them in Iudea, from whence they were transplanted at Cairo long after. The plentie of Graines and Corne there growing, the chatmes of birds alluring the eares with their warbling Notes, and fixing the eyes on their colours, ioyntly agreeing in beautie, by their disagreeing varietie, and other Creatures that adorne this Paradise, might make me glut you (as sweet meates vsually doe) with too much store. Let vs therefore take view of some other things worthy our admiration in this admired Hill, taking the Friar for our guide, whose credit I leaue to your censure.

* *Ios. Ant. l. 8. cap. 2.*

§. II.

His liberall reports of the Librarie, and incredible treasures therein.

SVch is the stately building of the two Churches aforesaid, with their Monasteries, the pillars and roofes of stone, richly and cunningly wrought, the matter and the workmanship conspiring magnificence; that of Iasper, Alabaster, Marble, Porphirie; this with painting, gilding, and much curiositie; the two Monasteries, containing each of them 1500. religious Knights and Monkes; each hauing also two Abbots; one of the militarie Knights; the other spirituall, of the Monkes, inferior to the former. In the Monastery of the *Holy Crosse* are two rare pieces, whereon *Wonder* may iustly fasten both her eyes: the Treasurie and Librarie [a] of the Emperor, neither of which is thought to be matchable in the world. That Librarie of Constantinople, [b] wherein were 120000. bookes; nor that at Pergamus of 200000. nor the Alexandrian Librarie, wherein *Gellius* [c] numbreth 700000. (had the fire not beene admitted, too hastie a Student, to consume them) yet had they come short, if report ouer-reach not, of this whereof wee speake; their number is in a manner innumerable, their price inestimable. The Queene of Saba (they say) procured bookes hither from all parts, besides many which *Salomon* gaue her, and from that time to this, their Emperors haue succeeded in like care and diligence. There are three great Halls, each aboue two hundred paces large, with bookes of all Sciences, written in fine parchment, with much curiositie of golden Letters and other workes, and cost in the writing, binding, and couers: some on the floore, some on shelues about the sides: there are few of paper, which is but a new thing in Ethiopia. There are the writings of *Enoch* copied out of the stones wherein

a The Library of the Prest.
b *Zonar. An. lib. 3.*
c *Gell. l. 6. c. 17.*

wherein they were engrauen, which entreat of Philosophy, of the Heauens and Elements. Others go vnder the name of *Nee*, the subject whereof is Cosmography, Mathematikes, Ceremonies and Prayers: some of *Abraham*, which he composed when he dwelt in the Valley of Mamre, and there read publikely Philosophy and the Mathematikes. There is very much of *Salomon*, a great number passing vnder his name; many ascribed to *Iob*, which he writ after the recouery of his prosperitie: many of *Esdras*, the Prophets and the High Priests. And besides the foure canonicall Gospels, many others ascribed to *Bartholomew*, *Thomas*, *Andrew*, and others: much of the *Sibelles* in Verse and Prose: the workes of the Queene of *Saba*: the Greeke Fathers all that haue written, of which, many are not extant with vs; the Writers
10 of Syria, Egypt, Africa, and the Latine Fathers translated; with others innumerable in the Greeke, Hebrew, Arabike, Abassine, Egyptian, Syrian, Chaldee saire more Authors, and more of them then we haue; few in Latine; yet *Titus Lunus* is there whole; which with vs imperfect: and some of the Workes of *Thomas Aquinas*, Saint *Augustines* Works are in Arabike: Poets, Philosophers, Physicians, Rabbines, Talmudists, Cabalists, Hieroglyphikes, and others would be too tedious to relate. When Ierusalem was destroyed by *Titus*; when the Saracens ouer-ranne the Christian world; many bookes were conueyed out of the Esterne parts into Æthiopia; when *Ferdinand* and *Isabella* expelled the Iewes out of Spaine, many of them entred into Æthiopia, and for doing this without licence, enriched the *Prestes* Library with their bookes: when *Charles* the fift restored *Muleasses* to his Kingdome, the
20 *Prete* hearing that there was at Tunis a great Librarie, sent and bought more then three thousand bookes of diuers Arts. There are aboue two hundred Monkes, whose office is to looke to the Library, to keepe them cleane and sound, each appointed to the bookes of that language which he vnderstandeth: the Abbot hath strait charge from the Emperour, to haue care thereof; he esteeming this Library more then his Treasure.

And yet his Treasure is such, [a] as leaues all others of all Princes in the world behind, quite out of sight: it is a Sea, that euery yeere receiueth new Riuers, neuer running out: the Emperours, euen from the time of the Queene of Saba, laying vp part of their reuenue here. And therefore [4] *David* the *Prete*, in Letters to King *Iohn* the second of Portugall, said, that he had Gold as the sands of the Sea, and the Starres in the skie. The first that coyned mo-
30 ney, was *Alexander* the third, which dyed in the yeere of our Lord 1603. stamping in the one side, the figure of Saint *Matthew*, the Æthiopian Patron, and on the other, the Lion and Crosse, which is the Armes of Æthiopia. His Iewels, heere kept, are inconparable: Topazes, Amethists, Saphires, Diamonds, and others. Hee hath one Iewell, which was found in the Riuer Niger (that brings forth more gemmes then any Riuer in the world) which is one piece of stone or rocke, diuersified with a thousind varieties of stone: it is square, about two palmes [d] and a halfe, and thicke withall: there are in it an hundred and sixtie Diamonds, one as large as the palme of ones hand, others of one, two, or a three fingers, and some lesse: it hath about three hundred Emeralds; Rubies the greatest in the world: aboue fiftie Saphyres, Turquises, Balazes, Amethists, Spinels, Topazes, Iacinths, Chrysolites,
40 and all other kinds: Nature heere playing the Ieweller, & representing a Map of the worlds Gemmes in one Iewell, without, and infinitely beyond all Arte of Man. Being set in the Sunne, it seemes a combined marriage of heauenly and earthly Excellence, that no mortall eye hath seene the like, nor is able to endure the sight of this. When *Bernardo Vechetti*, a Ieweller, was sent thither by *Francis de Medicis* Duke of Florence, hee accounted it beyond all estimation or value. The Emperour keepes it in a Boxe of Gold. By the persuasion of that *Bernardo*, hee hath made him Tables set with thousands of stones in them. Corrall is more esteemed in Æthiopia then Gold, and therefore Frier *Luys* denies that Corrals in the bottom of the red Sea, make it red, as some affirme: and that which *Barros* [e] saith, hath been found there, is vnperfect.

50

a Fr. Luys hath a very large catalogue of them, *l.1. c.9.* taken out (as he saith) of an *Index*, which *Anthony Gricus* and *L. Cremones* made of them, being sent thither by the Pope *Gregory* 13. at the instance of Cardinall *Gastaldo*, which saw and admired the varieties of them, as did many others then in their company.

b The Treasuritie of the *Prete*.

c *Littera Danid.*

d Spannes.

e *Barros dec. 4. lib. 8. c. 9. t.*

§. III.

Of the Princes of the Blood there kept, and of the Election of the EMPEROVR.

BVt greater Iewels then those are kept in Amara, the Princes of the Blood Royall, which are sent to this hill at eight yeeres old, and neuer returne thence, except they be chosen Emperours. The first Author of this custome was *Iosue* the Nephew of *Salomon*, and sonne of *Meiloc* or *Melilec*, to remoue all occasions of ciuill warres about Suc-
60 cession. And their continued succession in one Line, without alienation, is imputed to this. Some Emperours for a time had left it, till *Abraham* being Emperour had, or pretended to

haue a Reuelation to renue that custome, if hee would continue the Scepter in the Linage of *David*. The Princes which liue there, are sixe, eight, twelue, and sometimes more. *An.* 1608. they were sixe; euery of which liues by himselfe, and that in great estate and maiestie in royall Palaces, with spacious Hals richly hanged, remoued to another Palace at pleasure: they meet alrogether when they will play, hunt, walke, and on Holy-dayes to Diuine Seruices they take place according to their age; each hath his ten seruants for ordinarie attendance, which are the sonnes, or descended of the Tributary Kings: for baser offices, the great master or military Abbot employeth the Souldiers that guard at the foot of the Hill, which without license may not ascend. They haue other graue persons to instruct them in vertue and learning. Euery Citie, that is, euery habitation of a thousand houses, is at their owne charge to send thither three men, a Gentleman, a Citizen, and a Plebeian, for the guard of the Hill, which make vp the number of seuen thousand fiue hundred, there being two thousand and fiue hundred Cities in the Empire. The militarie Abbots order them in their seuerall Wards, the baser at the foot of the Hill, the Citizens at the middle, and the Gentlemen at the top: their Captaines changed at euery two moneths end. Besides the Souldiers Tents, are many others of Merchants and Officers. No woman may ascend, nor hath done since Queene *Candace* was heere baptized by her Eunuch: the Princes liue single, and marrie not, as *Auares* hath (saith our Frier) vntruely affirmed of them.

When the Emperor is dead, many solemne ceremonies are obserued, both religious and ciuill about the Election of another, which is in the authoritie of the two militarie Abbots of S. *Anthonies* Order in the Mount. Oathes are taken both of the Electors and Elected, the first to vse sincerritie, the other to raigne iustly, obseruing, and causing in his Empire to be obserued, the Lawes of God, Christian Religion, the foure first Councels, of Nice, Ephesus, Chalcedon, and Constantinople: and (if the * Fryer reach not, for in their Holy Fathers case I relye not much on their Holinesse) to acknowledge the Florentine Councell, and the Popes Supremacie, and lastly, the Constitutions of *Iohn* the Saint, and *Philip* the Seuenth, ancient Emperours: which done, in solemne Procession of all Estates they goe to Church, and hauing set the Emperor in his Throne, the Princes of the Blood are brought out of the Palace, where in the time of the Election they had been inclosed, to kisse his hand, and sweare fidelity, cloathed in the habite of the Knights of S. *Anthony*: the same oath is giuen also by the Kings his Vassals, (foure of which are present at the Election) the Counsellors, Prelates and others, according to their place. After this, fires are made on the Towres of the Mount, to giue notice of this Election, which being seene by the neerer Cities, they also by the like fires (as it were) proclaime the same in a moment through all the Empire: which is confirmed by Posts sent thence on Dromedaries, by the Abbot of the Abbey of the Holy Ghost, one of the Electors, and the Councell vnto the Citie of Saba, and the mother of the New-Elect, if she be liuing, and to his neere kindred, to come and reioyce with him. The next day the Emperour goeth, in black habite to the Palace where the Princes are, and saluteth them with kinde embracements, one by one, with his Bonnet in his hand: which is done in the next place by the Prelates, whom in honour of their Ecclesiasticall dignities the Princes re-salute standing, with their heads vncouered. The tributarie Kings follow, not with embracements, but kissing their hands, rendring their salutations, and after them the Embassadors. The Emperour, hauing remained sometime in priuate talke with them, goeth to the Abbey of the Holy Ghost, and putting off his black habite, is clothed in Scarlet; and being on horseback, attended with his Family, the Abbots and Counsellors, passeth to the Abbot of the Holy Crosse, where the two Abbots of that Abbey meet him; and after oath giuen to preserue the ancient customes, present him with the keyes of the Treasurie and Library: the Emperour bestowing as much of the said Treasure as he pleaseth. After all other ceremonies, the Counsellors of the Court come to the hill with 12000 Knights of Saint *Anthonies* Order (which are the Emperours Guard) and the eldest Sons of the King, to conuey him solemnly to Zambra the Citie, where Court and Councell reside, where with all solemnity and magnificence he is likewise receiued, and conducted into the Palace, and placed on his Throne of twelue steps, with acclamations of long life and happinesse on all hands. Fiue dayes Festiuall being here passed in al publike reioycings, he goeth to Saba to take the oaths of all his subiect Kings in person (whereof onely foure had been present at the Election) and one holding the Crowne, another the Scutchion of the Armes of that tributarie King, he sweareth on the Scepter (which is a golden crosse) true fidelitie and obedience, and the Emperour puts on the Crowne againe on his head; and the said Scutcheon, with his Armes, he giueth into his hand, and licenceth him to depart to his Pauillion without the Citie. These Kings are truely Kings, and succeed in the inheritance of their Fathers, receiuing the tribute of the subiects of their seuerall Kingdomes, and are not Deputies, or Vice-Royes, at the meere pleasure of the Emperour: but if one bee vpon iust cause displaced, his sonne succeedeth: and therefore the *Prete* is called *King of Kings*

* F. Luys de Vrreo. Hist. Æthiop.

Kings. The eldest sonne of euery of the Kings attend alwayes on the Emperour, and haue attending on them ten seruants of the sonnes of the Nobles of their Kingdomes.

The Emperour is bound by ancient custome to take a wife of the posteritie of those three *Magi* which adored Christ in his infancie, whom the Æthiopian and Romane Tradition called Kings by the names of *Gaspar, Melchior, Balthasar*; of which, the Æthiopians say, that *Melchior* was of Arabia, and *Balthasar* of Persia, which being forced by persecution of [a] Arians, came into Æthiopia, in the time of *Iohn* the Saint, which reigned after *Philip* the 7, and receiued of his hands the Kingdomes of Fatigar, and Soa, the former giuen to the posterity of *Balthasar*, the other to the Inuage of *Melchior*. The Fryer addeth, That all the legitimate descendents of these three Families are born with a starre on one of their sides; and that at the Iubile, in the time of *Gregory* the thirteenth, 1575. there were three of those three Families at Rome, with that naturall ensigne of the supernaturall & miraculous Star. Yea, the legitimate Mahumetans in Arabia & Persia, remaining of those kindreds, haue the same signe, as *Don Iohn* (ware to him, that he had seene. The Councell gouerneth according to the 127. Statutes, made by the first *Philips*, and *Iohn* the Saint. Nothing is punished with death but treason, vnder which name they also comprehend murther & adultery: of this mortall sentence the Lyons are the Executioners, which in euery Citie are kept for that purpose. Some Italians had been found guilty of the sin against Nature, a thing for which the Æthiopians (as some of the [b] ancients for Parricide) had no Law, as not thinking any would so far degenerate; and therefore knew not how to punish them: but it was committed to the Latine Councell, which adiudged them to bee burned; a punishment not knowne before in those parts, yet fitting to those vnnaturall burnings. The fault and punishment being of equall strangeness, the Emperour would not haue it executed there, but sent them to Goa to the Portugall Viceroy for that purpose. Heresie and Apostasie are likewise punished with death. That Latine Councell was instituted by *Alexander* the third, for causes and persons of Europe to be tryed, and iudged by Iudges of their owne, resident at the Court (as the Grand Councell is) and chosen out each Nation two, of the Venetians, Florentines, and Portugals: the two former come thither by the way of Cairo. *Andrew Oviedo* a Iesuite, sent thither by the Pope with the title of Bishop of Hierapolis, and after *Barretus* his death, his Successor in the Patriarchship of Æthiopia, was Author and Counseller to the Emperour of this Institution, and by him made President of the same. This man (c *Botero Maffeus*, and others say) had miserable entertainment, with the residue of his society: but by Fryer *Luys* (from the relation of *Don Iohn*) tells, That he liued and dyed in great honour amongst them, as he doth elsewhere magnifie exceedingly their respect to the Romane Papacy and Religion. *Credat Iudeus Apella. Cui bono* [d] is the rule of my faith to Fryers and Iesuites in their Relations: In Naturall and Morall Histories, which serue not to the building of Babylons Towre, I receiue them with attention, with thanks, and if need be, with admiration in some things: but when them come *with Slime in stead of Mortar*, and would get Rome a *Name*, I remember their Vowes and Profession, and yeeld no further attendance. That *Claudius* which was then Emperour, and his Successor *Adamas*, were of Scismaticall and Tyrannicall quality, as other Historians affirme, Frier *Luys* not onely denies, but extolleth their good parts.

He which now is Emperour, was elected *An.* 1606. and called himselfe *Zaraschaureat, a sprout or bud of the Inuage of David* assister of Saint *Peter*, and Saint *Paul*. He is a man haughtie and valorous, and was therefore chosen, because the Turkish Empire was so full of seditions, and the Sophi had sent his Embassadour to them, to chuse a fit warrior, that they might with ioynt forces assault the *Ottoman*.

a When were the Arians of such powerfull Arabia but especially in Persia?

b *Cic. Orat. pro S. Roscio.*

c *G. Bot. part. 3. lib. 2. Maff. Hist. Ind. l. 10. Ramus. Aeosta.*

d *Cic. pro Flacco.*

§. IIII.

Of their Schooles and Cities.

THere are in all the Cities of Æthiopia two Schooles or Colledges, for the instruction of youth; one for the male sexe, the other for the female; each diuided into three parts, the first for the Gentlemens children, the second for Citizens, the third for the basser vulgar, with their seuerall instructers, and without communion, medling, or conuersing of the one with the other. the Seminarie or Colledge of Boyes is a quarter of a league without the City, the other within. There are they taught Letters and Religion. All, euen the Kings themselues, are bound to send their children thither to be instructed: and the Priests resort thither for Confession, and ministring the Sacrament to them. They may resort home at Festiuall times: otherwise they are there detained. The Virgins, from ten to twenty; the other, from ten to sixteene yeeres of their age. They haue not only this order in their wel ordered Schooles, but in their disordered misorderly Stews, the deuils workhouses, and suburbs of Hell, which yet in Rome, and places of that Religion, are permitted

and

and admitted the Cities, and his Holinesse selfe is not a little enriched with (that which God prohibited) *The price of the Dogge, and of the Whore.* The Ethiopians permit not any to bee *strange women*, but strangers of other Countreys, which may not enter into their Cities: nor may the Nobles enter into the common houses which belong to the Citizens, or these to those of the Plebians, nor any but to those peculiarly designed their state, vnder paine of death, as adulterers, to bee cast to Lyons. These women are hired by certaine Officers at a common price, and are not to take any thing of particular men: they goe in pale-coloured garments, and if they distaste and forsake that beastly trade, they send them to some places subiect vnto the Portugals, not admitting them to conuerse with their women for feare of infection. 10

a *Deut.* 23. 18.

But to leaue these Beasts, the Ethiopians giue great respect to their Physicians, which are onely of their Gentry, and that not all that will, but onely such as certaine Officers shall chuse, of euery Citie to be sent to their generall Vniuersities (of which there are seuen in Ethiopia) there to be taught naturall Philosophy (Logicke and other Arts they know not) together with Physicke, and the Arts of the Apothecarie and Chirurgian. They are there maintained at the publike charge of the Cities that send them. When the Doctors and Instructers see them fit for Graduates, they go with them to the Monks of *Alleluya*, and of *Plurimanes*, who with a Monkes Cowle, or Hood, and other Doctoricall Ensignes, doe inuest and inaugurate them in that Degree. They are great Herbarists. They make [b] *Mummia* otherwise then in other parts, where it is either made of bodies buried in the Sands, or taken out of ancient Sepulchres, where they had been laid, being inbalmed with Spices: For they take a captiue Moore, of the best complexion; and after long dieting and medicining of him, cut off his head in his sleepe, and gashing his body full of wounds, and therein all the best Spices, and then wrap him vp in Hay, being before couered with a Seare-cloth; after which they burie him in a moist place, couering the body with earth. Fiue dayes being passed, they take him vp againe, and remouing the Seare-cloth and Hay, hang him vp in the Sunne, whereby the body resolueth and droppeth a substance like pure Balme, which liquor is of great price. The fragrant sent is such, while it hangeth in the Sunne, that it may be smelt (he saith) a league off. The priuiledges of Physicians are, that they are freed from the common customs of giuing one in three of their sonnes for the Emperors wartes, that they may ride on Elephants in the Cities, which is allowed onely to the Emperors, Prelates, and Priests that are Virgins. They may also weare Miniuer-hoods, and are free from Subsidies and Payments. Theologie and the Chaldee tongue is taught onely among their Priests and Ecclesiasticall persons in their Churches and Monasteries. They reade Diuinitie in their natiue tongue: the Text is the foure first generall Councels: the Scripture they reade in Chaldee, [c] which is with them as Latine with vs. They handle nor questions as the Schoolemen, in Logicall disputations and Arguings, but copiously and eloquently interpret the Scriptures. 20 30

b Making of Mummie.

c Of this Chaldee, see *sup.* c. 1.

Because we haue mentioned their Cities Saba and Zambra, let vs take some briefe view of them, and so leaue this Spaniard, whose Discourse hath (I hope, not without some delight) thus long holden you. Besides these two Cities, none haue aboue three thousand houses in them. But these are populous and magnificent, with Towers, Temples, triumphant Arches, Obeliskes, Piramides, and the like tokens of industry, Antiquitie, and Maiestie. Saba was founded by that Queene which visited *Salomon*, and was the mother-Citie of the Empire. It hath fiue thousand houses, great and sumptuous, the streets spacious, with Portals or Penthouses, that men may walke safe from the Sunnes violence. It hath foure chiefe Gates, all of Alabaster and Iasper, wrought with Antique-workes; the Gate-doores of Cedar curiously carued. The wayes that leade to these Gates, for the space of two leagues are set with Palmes, Planes, Oranges, Cedars, Cypresses, and other trees on both sides, for shade & fruit: the foure high streets goe thorow the Citie across, and where they meet, is an Arch or Vault erected on high Pillars, fairely wrought and gilded, with the brazen Image of S. *Matthew*, their supposed Patron, as bigge as a Giant, gilded also; the worke of Architects sent by *Francis* Duke of Florence. Neere to this Citie are Mines of Gold, Gardens, and other places of pleasure and profit. 40 50

Zambra is greater, containing thirty thousand houses, and innumerable concourse of people. It stands in the Kingdome of Cafates, and nigh that great Lake, which hereof is called Zambra: where the Emperor, leauing his wonted maner of remouing vp & downe in Tents haue fixed his Court-royall: and yet without the Citie are many Tents that belong to the Court. Here the *Prete* liueth, with two and forty sons of Kings, & with his great Councell, and the Latine. *Alexander* the third built the Palace here 1570. by the Duke of Florence his workmen. If I should follow the Frier further, I could leade you on in a delectable way, but doubtfull, like the Poets writings, and bring you into *Elysian*, but fabulous fields, fertile in al things but truth: wherein let the Reader pardon that I haue already been so long, rather 60

rather then tedious, in this Vtopian Æthiopia: at the first much suspected by me, as by many passages in the Story is expressed: but since largely written against by *Godignus*, a Iesuit, and by latter Relations found eyther vncertaine or false; whose paines shall helpe make vp another Chapter, and then will we proceed in our Pilgrimage.

CHAP. VI.

Relations of Æthiopia by GODIGNVS, *and other Authours lately published seeming more credible.*

§. I.

The seuerall Countreyes of Abassia, *Their Situation, Inhabitants, Riuers and Lakes.*

IF I should haue left out the former Chapter for the vncertaine truth or certayne falshoods therein contayned, some perhaps would eyther for the Pilgrims words, or the Friers inuention, haue desired it, were it but as a Comedie to delight our tyred Reader. For my selfe, had my Intelligence so well serued me at first, it had been easier then, not to haue admitted, then here now to haue omitted it. I haue therefore suffered it still to enioy a place, rather for your delight then credit, and here would giue you those things that are more likely; I hope, I cannot warrant more true; such as *Nicolaus Godignus* and others haue written, some things being the same, which before out of *Alvares* & others are mentioned, besides other things ex-
30 after or later. And first of the Countrey it selfe. * *Ioannes Gabriel*, Captayne of the Portugall Souldiers, in these parts, hath written, that the Abassine Empire contayneth sixe and twentie Kingdomes in ancient right, diuided in foureteene Regions: eight of these Kingdome lye in successiue order from Swachen towards to West; the first of which is *Tigrai*, contayning seuenteene great Tracts, vnder so many Lieutenants or Gouernours, which rule all affaires of Peace and War. The Turkes possesse the Sea-parts, the Saracens the Coast adioyning; the Inland is inhabited promiscuously by Christians, and Ethnicks. They are blacke of hue, deformed in shape, in condition miserable, of conditions wicked. They haue goodly Riuers dryed vp in Summer, where yet with little digging, both water is found, and fishes, called *Sagasi*. The next Kingdome to *Tigrai*, is *Dancali*, hauing the Red Sea on the East,
40 thence extending Westwards, not farre nor fertile inhabited by Moores tributaries to the Abassine. Angote, Amara, Boa, Leca, are foure Kingdomes inhabited by Christians only. The seuenth Kingdome is very large, of seuenteene Tracts, partly inhabited by Ethnickes partly Christians; it is called Abagamedri. Dambea hath also Ethnickes mixed with Christians, being but two Tracts. On the other side of Dancali towards the Red Sea, *Aucaguerle* trends alongst the Coast, possessed by the Moores, not subiect to the Abassine. *Adel* followeth in twelue degrees Northerly, in which is *Zeila*, sometimes called *Audalites*, a famous Marts: the whole Kingdome is inhabited by Moores, vnneighbourly Neighbours to the Abassines, whence came *Gradagna*, or *Gradamar*, the Mahumetan King, which had wel-nigh
50 subdued all Æthiopia, when the Portugals opposed themselues, who after diuers overthrowes, tooke him, and cut off his head. After this is Dahali, which trendeth towardes Membaxas: the Inhabitants, some Christians, some Ethnicks, pay tribute to the *Prete*. Oecie followeth, more within land; the Inhabitants, Moores and Ethnikes, subiect to the Abassine. *Arium* and *Fatigar* the next Kingdomes are Christian; Zinger, Ethnicke. Rozanagum sine. *Arium* and *Fatigar* the next Kingdomes are Christian; Zinger, Ethnicke. Rozanagum the sixteenth Kingdome is Christian, but not subiect to the Abassine Empire. From hence extend other Kingdomes towards the North; Roxa of Ethnickes; Goma of Christians and Ethnickes, Such is Nerea, a large Kingdome towards Monomotapa. Zethe is inhabited by Ethnickes subiect to the Emperour. The next are Conche and Mahaola small and altogether Ethnicke, Goroma a great Kingdome of twenty Tracts, Christians and Heathens, almost wholly compassed by Nilus, able for plenty to feed many Armies, with which it is vsually infested. The Seedman followes the haruest man, & presently after the reaping, sowes
60 new Seed without other tillage. The three last Kingdomes lye towards Egypt, Damote, Sua, Iasculum: through this euery Lent passe great troupes of Pilgrimes to Ierusalem. The foureteene

* *Iean. Gabriel. ap. Nic. Godig. De Abassinorum Rebus. l. 2. & P. Iatric. Thes. Rer. Ind. l. 5. c. 31 & seq.* This Gabriel was borne in Abassia, the Iesuites were his friends of the Portugals, which had assisted vnder *Christopher Gama Claudius* the Emperour against *Gradigna* the Moore, whom he slew, and was slaine himselfe by those Moores, *An. 1542.*

teene Regions or Prounces I forbeare to mention. Of all these Kingdomes at this day onely Tigrai, Abagamedri, Dambea and Goroma, are obedient to the Abassine. There are foure principall Riuers in this Æthiopia: Tauzea running from the South to the North, the sandy Earth in the way, continually stealing, and vnderearth passages robbing him of the watery Tribute which he intendeth to the Sea: neere it are high vnpassable Mountaynes, inhabited by Abassine Iewes, which still obserue the Mosaicall Law, fierce and terrible to their Neighbours, and could neuer be conquered by the Abassines. The second Riuer is Oara, exceeding Nilus in watery store, which he bestoweth in like manner on the Countrey by which he passeth into the Zeilan Sea. The waters are pleasant; but the Abassine Christians will not drinke thereof, because passing through the Countries of Mahumetans, it yeelds them nourishment. The third Riuer is Gabea, which neere to Mombaza visits the Ocean. The fourth is Nilus. There are as many Lakes: The first Ascha, in Angore: The second, Dambeabahar; that is, the Sea of Dambea, not farre from Gubbai, where the Emperours in these times reside, if they betake themselues out of their Tents into the City. This Lake is sixty miles long, and fiue and twenty broad, receiues on one side the waters of Nilus, is full of fishes, and Riuer-hortes, which sometimes are dangerous to passengers; two Iesuits in one of their Boates made of Rushes, hardly escaping their assaults. Many small Ilands are in this Lake, in one of which is a Towre, their Treasury, and to which Malefactors are confined. The third Lake is Zella in Oecie: the fouth Xacala, not farre from it.

§. II.

Of the Soyle, Fruits, Creatures, Seasons, and Climate.

* *Ant. Fernand. Soc. Iesu.*

ANtonie * *Fernandes* in an Epistle dated here in *Iune* 1610. numbreth aboue fortie Prouinces in Abassia, but in substance agrees in the former. The Soyle (hee sayth) is hollow, and full of deepe Clifts: in the midst of the plaine fields you shall often see steepe and high Rockes of solid stone, which in time of warre serue them in stead of Forts. The whole Region is full of Metals, but neglected partly by the sloth of the Inhabitants, partly for feare to bring Turkish Inuasions vpon them, if such baits were discouered. They take so much Iron only, as they finde without digging on the face of the Earth. Corne, Herbes, Trees are there in variety, but these not excellent in their fruits, except one, the fruit whereof saues their liues by the vertue it hath against Wormes, whereto this people is much subject by their eating of raw flesh; and therefore euery moneth purge themselues with this fruit: they haue Peaches, Pomegranates, Citrons, Indian Figges, but not in great plenty: They haue Hares, Harts, Goats, Swine, Elephants, Camels, Buffles, Lions, Panthers, Tigres, Rhinocerots, and other like Beasts. One so huge, that a man on horseback may passe vpright vnder his belly, feeding on leaues from the tops of trees, and formed like a Camell. Their Riuer-horses doe much harme to the fruits of the Earth, being of Vast bodies, and their mouth three quarters of a yard in the opening. In the night they come forth, and if the Husbandmen did not keepe diligent watch, would doe extreme harme to the Corne; they feed also on grasse. In the water they are very fierce, and like Dogges assault men and teare them. They are so afraid of fire, that one Boy with a burning firebrand will chase away thousands of them. Some there are which hunt these beasts with Launces and Arrowes, and liue on their flesh little differing from Beefe. There is also found in their Riuers and Lakes the *Torpedo* or Crampfish, of strange effect in Nature: if holden in the hand and not stirring, it makes no alteration; but if it moues it selfe, the arteries, ioynts, sinewes, and all the members of the body, suffer an exceeding torture and astonishment, which presently ceaseth with letting goe the Fish. The Æthiopians haue a superstitious conceit, that it is good to driue away Deuils out of Men, thinking it torments those Spirits no lesse then humane bodies. They say (I haue not made trayall thereof my selfe) that if this fish bee laid amongst dead fishes and there stirre it selfe, it makes them also to moue as if there were life in them. There are many of them in Nilus in the end of the Prounce of Goyama, where is a bottomlesse Lake (so the Portugall thought that could not sound the bottom with his Pike) whence continuallly springs abundance of water, being the head of that Riuer: little at the first, and after a dayes iourney and a halfe running to the East, and then entreth a Lake supposed the greatest in the World, passing swiftly through the midst thereof without mixture of waters, and casting it selfe ouer high Rockes, takes freer scope, but presently is swallowed of the Earth, so that it in some places it may be stepped ouer. After fiue dayes iourney towards the East, it winds it selfe againe to the West, and so passeth on in his way towards

Camelopardalis.

Hippopotami.

Torpedo.

Nilus: the Ethnicks neere dwelling offer Sacrifices to this spring, out of which alway issueth a grosse vapour. There is a great heape of bones by reason of these sacrificed beasts.

Egypt.

Egypt. The Æthiopians affirme, that it is easie to diuert the Riuers course, and to famish Egypt, but I thinke it farre easier to say then doe it. Low places in Abassia are intemperately hote. Their Winter continues from May to September: and then begins in the Red Sea, which I haue obserued (*Fernandez* reports it) to flow in all time of the Moones increate, and to flow continually out all the time of the decrease. In their Winter it raineth and thundreth commonly euery afternoone. In the Kingdome of Zambea in which we now liue, wee may see both the Poles, the Antarctike higher, with his Crosse-starres. In this Tract of Heauen there is as it were a cloud or blot, supposed more thinne then other parts: about it are many Starres lesse then those which illustrate the other Pole. They beginne their yeere with the Spring on the first of September, numbring twelue moneths, in each thirty dayes, reckoning the odde dayes betweene August and September by themselues. The Abassines expresse their ioy most by eating and drinking, and therefore on Holidayes resort to their Churches, which are shaded with trees, where are set Vessels full of a liquor, which they vse instead of Wine (which they make of Honey, adding *Opium*) and thereafter their holies, they serue their bellies, drinking to drunkennesse, quarrels, fighting. They haue Grapes, but (except in the Vintage season) they straine their dryed Raisons, insomuch that *Peter Paez* a Iesuite writ from thence, *Anno* 1604. that the Emperour desiring him to say Masse after the Romane rite, they could find no Wine to doe it.

§. III.

Of their Customes in priuate life and publike Gouernment, and their last miseries.

THey sow little more then they must spend. And for their apparell, the richer buy it of the Moores, attiring themselues after their fashion; the rest both Men and Women vse a skinne, or some course piece of linnen, without adorning by Arte. When they doe reuerence to any, they cast off this cloth from their shoulders to the Nabell, stripping themselues halfe naked. They weare their haire long, which seiues them for a hat or head-tire, and for greater neatnesse and gallantry they curle it in diuers manners, and anoint it with Butter, which in the Sunne shewes like dew on the grasse. So curious are they herein, that for feare of disordering their curles, they haue a crotch fastned in the Earth, whereon at night they lay their necks, and so sleepe with their heads hanging. They brand themselues on the whole body, specially on the face. The nailes of their little fingers they suffer to grow to the greatest length, imitating, as much as may be, the spurs of Cocks, which also they sometimes fasten and fit to their fingers. Their hands and feet (which commonly are bare) they dye reddish with the iuyce of a certaine barke. They are a slothfull people, scarcely prouiding necessaries for life, not giuing themselues to hunting or fishing: and although the materials of Woollen, linnen, Cottons, are at hand, yet doe the most of them couer their bodies like beasts, with rude skins; each man commonly wearing a Rammes skin, the ends fastned at his hands and feet. They lye on the hides of their Kine, without other Beds. In stead of Tables they haue great troughes rudely hollowed wherein they take their meat without cloth or Napkin. Their vessels are of black Earth. Few of them are Merchants, besides the Mahometans. They haue no great Cities, but many enfortified Villages. Their greatest Towne hath scarcely sixteene houses. They vse little writing, no not in their publike Iudgements: they haue no Bookes, but for their Holies, and Officers for their accounts. And because we haue mentioned their Iudgements, it shall not be amiss to expresse their forme out of *Fernandez*. The Emperour hath a House called Casa, low, without any vpper storie. To the doore all such come as haue any suite, euery one according to their differing Language, crying, Lord, Lord: some also imitating the voyces of Beasts, whereby is known one of what Prouince they are. Then doth the Emperour commit their case to the Vmbari (so are the Iudges called of the word *Vmbare*, which signifies a three-footed stoole, on which each of them sits, some on the right, others on the left hand. In the Townes the Lords Seruants to the Defendant, are Iudges, where when any one suetth, the Lord sends one of his Seruants to the Defendant, the Plaintiffe and Defendant plead assigning him a time to make his appearance; and then the Plaintiffe and Defendant plead each his owne case (this is the fashion in Barbary also, and many other places): and after they haue both said what they can, all that are present giue sentence. From this they may appeale to the Vmbares, from them to the Azages, or Supreme Iudges, and from these to the Emperour. Sometimes Iustices Itinerant or Visitors, are sent into the Prouince to enquire of Crimes, which places being bought, cause Iustice to be sold, and these to be Legall Theeues, more dangerous then Out-lawes.

N. Godig. l. 1. c. 12.

Ig

In the flourishing state of the Empire, they say, the Emperour was wont to hold a continuall Progresse in Tents, esteeming it base to liue in any City: But wheresoeuer he abode, there was presently a City of Tents, hauing due places assigned to all publike and priuate employments, Churches, Hospitals for sicke, and for the poore, Victualling-houses, Shops of seuerall Trades, and the like. They say also that this moving City was thirty miles about, and that many thousand Mules, besides Camels, and innumerable Porters attended on the baggage at every remoue. But if these things were euer true, the case is much altered in this last Age, and euery day growes worse and worse; those things which yee haue heard out of the Frier being false: Neyther was there euer any such Emperour as *Alexander* the third, by him so often mentioned; but what with the Turkes on the North side, the Mootes on the East, the Gallæ from other parts, and intestine Rebellions, each challenging his right, not by Election or Inheritance, so much as by the Sword, all things are brought almost to nothing; and the Æthiopian greatnesse is now in a great Eclipse. And for that *Balthasar* which the Frier pretends his Authour, *Godignus* sayth, that he being examined hereof, affirmed them to be the Friers Inuentions: some things he confessed he had published not true, but such as hee thought could doe no man harme. Whatsoeuer therefore in this Booke is borrowed from that Spaniard, I doe neither in all things disclaime; nor can exact credit thereto, this being the Iyers reward, that euen in true reports he is doubted. More full Relations of the present State of this Empire, I referre to our next Æthiopian Visitation. The Gallæ before mentioned, are a Nationlesse Nation, eyther the same, or like in conditions to the Giacchi or Iagges, of which we shall anon speake, which as in Congo and other parts, so heere also brought confusion and desolation where they came.

As for those Patriarches, *Barretus* and *Oviedus*, *Godignus* hath bestowed on each of them a Booke in Relation of their Liues: and inserted Epistles of their owne, to proue the Frier a Lier; *Barretus* desiring to be rid of that Title, which he could not make reall, and *Oviedo* hauing a Briefe or Bull from *Pius Quintus* to free him, and send him to Iapan; which hee yet refused, vpon hopes of better successe, eyther amongst the Christians, or Ethnickes in those parts, many of which in Damut and Sinaxis had desired Baptisme, and by the wicked Emperour were reiected. He propounded also an Quetsure to send fiue hundred Portugall Souldiers into those parts, by which strength they might succour Christenlyes and their followers; an argument of their weaknesse, which could with so small a handfull be aydeed.

This may he added, that these Æthiopians haue their blacke colour in such estimation, that they paint Christ, the Deuill, and Saints blacke; the Deuill, *Iudas*, *Caiphas*, *Pilate*, and wicked persons they paint white. They take Salt out of Minerals in pieces of halfe a foote, which serues there instead of money, ten or fifteene of those pieces being the price of a slaue; the cause that when *Paez* the Iesuit first entred these parts, his Gold could doe him little seruice, and when a *Sacacen* in his company had dressed him a Hen, yet durst not he taste of it, for offending the scrupulous *Abassines*, who will eate nothing which a Turke hath killed. Heee writes that their houses are base and little, round, of earth, couered with tharch, conteyning but one roome, except the Palaces of great Men. In that yeere 1603. the Grasse-hoppers did great harme, which ate vp all that was greene where they came: a greater misery of Ciuill Warre accompanying, the Emperour being deposed and imprisoned, and another legitimate (for the former was a Bastard) brought out of Prison to the Throne. This new King *Malac Ceged* wrote kind Letters to *Paez*, to bring him the Lawes of Portugal, and *Oviedos* Bookes, praysing God, that after seuen yeeres imprisonment, *The stone which the builders refused, was become the head of the corner*. He was presently assaulted and much distressed by the Gallæ, whom at that time hee ouercame. Not so other Traytors, the chiefe of which was *Zazelazeus*, who slue the Emperour *Sauenguil*, and erected one *Iacobus*, whom after hee relinquished, and tooke part with *Sazinosius* which ouerthrew *Iacobus*, and after that imprisoned *Zezelazeus*, who escaped the Prison, but not a Traytors reward, being slaine by Iustbandmen, whose Oxen hee would haue taken away. This *Sazinosius* (still infested with Treasons for euer an Hermite or Anachoret, which had liued a solitary life twenty yeeres together) conspired against him, aspired to Soueregnty, besides many many Others and the Gallæ, and the effect of both, Robbers and Theeues through the Countrie) deuised of an vnion with the Romish Church, and writ Letters to the Pope, dated *Oct.* 14. and to the King of Spaine for supplies of Souldiers, *Decemb.* 10. 1607. the Copies of which *Paezie* hath inserted in his fift Booke. So farre from truth is that Frier which, in these times proclaymes such felicity in Æthiopia, vnder I know not what *Alexander*, the birth of his crowning braine.

See the Copie of this Bull, & *Oviedos* answer, *God.l.3.c.21.*

Iarric.l.5.c.31.

Pet. Paez. lit. Iul. 24. 1603.

* This seemes a common appellation to their Kings. *Paez. lit. Iul.* 1605.

§. IIII.

Of the Sabæans, and their Queene which visited SALOMON.

LEt vs conclude with Saba, and the Queene thereof, touching which (as elsewhere we haue a shewed) we rather beleeue that this Queene (the supposed founder) was of the Sabæans in Arabia, whose neighbours the Abasenes were, and both, as it is very probable, her subiects. These after many ages (it is the coniecture of great b Clerkes) passed into these parts of Africa, and seated themselues here by conquest, retaining their old language in their Lyturgie to this day. This Lyturgie (or Canon of their Masse, which with other their Formes and Rites of Baptisme, Confirmation, Purification, &c. is extant in *Bibliotheca c Patrum*) doth call their Church, the Church of Sceua, or Sheba: and *Stephanus* placeth the Sabæans and Abasenes together, as before in this first Chapter of this Booke is shewed.

Tradition might well continue the memorie of this Queene amongst them, and *Superstition* might easily adde (where Diuine and Humane learning wanted) abundance of errours: which is not the Ethiopian case alone, but almost all Ecclesiasticall Histories written of things done long before, and deliuered onely by *Tradition*, rolled like a Snow-ball by superstition of succeeding times, haue yeelded such Legendarie lumps, that neele much licking before any forme of Truth can appeare. As therefore I reiect not the Ethiopian Historie wholly, nor deeme it a meere euangeling in this challenge of the Sabæan inheritance: so yet, I hold it needes iudicious examination and censure; the most whereof hath beene obtruded on that simple credulous Nation in later times, as our Monkes dealt in these parts many ages. *Ptolemey* calls the chiefe of Ethiopia Auxume, which *Stephanus* calls d Αὐξούμιτος, *Arianus* e Axomite, *Procopius* f Auzomide, all of them giue it the Metropolitan honour: it is supposed to be the same which now is called g Chaxumo, whereof *Barbosa*, *Corsalo*, and *Alvares* haue written: in witnesse whereof are many ancient buildings there yet remaining, and pillars (somewhat resembling the Egyptian Obeliskes) admirable for their height and workmanship, some aboue threescore yards high, full of Letters.

These Letters (of which are many there seene in many ruines) not one of all the Abassens can vnderstand, which argueth a greater antiquitie then the Abassens, and that these are more lately planted or ingrafted into the Ethiopian stock or stemme. Yea for their Christianitie also, howsoeuer the Eunuch of *Candace* was conuerted, and the Apostolicall labours in Ecclesiasticall Histories mentioned, might sort to good effect in this Ethiopian Harueſt, yet it seemeth the conuersion of this Nation was not generall till the dayes of *Iustinian*. For so *Nicephorus Callistus* writeth, That *Dauid* the King of the Axumite Indians (why he calls them Indians you haue heard) warring vpon the Homerites which professed the Iewish Religion, vowed to the God of the Christians to become one of his followers, if her obtayned the victorie; which accordingly he did. For taking *Danmus* the Homerite King aliue, he sent to *Iustinian* to further him in the performance of his vow, who sent thither a holy Bishop, which baptized the whole Nation. It might be that the Ethiopians had before receiued the Gospell, after which time the Abassens out of Arabia might conquer them, and retayning their heathenish superstitions, vpon occasion of this warre might bee conuerted: as we reade of h *Clodoueus* the first christined King of France, and of the French, notwithstanding the Galli had long before receiued Christianitie: which might also bee paralleled in the Britans and Saxons inhabitants of this Land. Howsoeuer, it is likely that euer since, this Nation hath continued Christian. Of *Hellesthaeus*, you haue seene i before *Procopius* his testimonie. As for their owne reports of themselues, *Zaga Zabo* tells one tale, *Alvares* another, Friar *Luys* a third: that we neede none other testimonie against them. Their exceeding store of zeale, and defect of learning, with the *good intents of pia fraudes* (to whet deuotion by any meanes) and that selfe-loue, which each, both Person and Nation beares k to itselfe; haue made, no doubt, readie Inuenters and Receiuers of fables, ascribing to themselues the stories of both the Queenes, mentioned in the Old and New Testament, the Sabæan and Ethiopian Antiquities, and a world of other fancies, which neuer in the world were done: whereto the names of later Workes, Cities, Temples, Orders, and other occurrents haue beene applyed. But it is time for our Pilgrim to passe further, where yet he is like to speed worse, and to find little truth of Ciuilitie or Religion.

a *Sup. lib. 3. c. 32.*

b *Ios. Scal. E. T. pag. 638. ed. vlt. Brerewood c. 23. Enquirie of Rel.*

c *Tom. 4. ed. 1576. Paul. a principio. virtus & Benedictio & sanctificatio & S. Trinitatis in hanc Ecclesiam S. N. de Sceua, &c.*

d *Ptol. l. 4. c. 8. in 65. 30. & 11.*

e *Peripl. maris Erythræi.*

f *Procop. de bello Pers. l. 1.*

g *Vid. Ramusio. f. 38. & seq. of their huge fabricks aboue and beneath ground.*

h *Paul. Æmil. cl. d. 1.*

i *Sup. cap. 2.*

k *Credimus? an qui amant ipsi sui? somnia fingunt? Virg.*

CHAP. VII.

Of other Countries betweene the Red Sea and Benomotapa.

§. I.

Of Adel, Adea, Zanzibar and Melinde.

1 EThiopia *Exterior* or *Inferior*, is that Southerly Tract of Africa, which to *Ptolemey* and the Ancients was vnknowne. It comprehendeth all that great wedge of Land (such is the forme) which beginning in the West, at the Countries aboue Zaire, stretcheth to fiue and thirtie degrees of Southerly latitude, and from thence Northwards, to the entrance ormouth of the Arabian Gulfe; all this way besieged and enuironed with the [a] Occan. *Maginus* diuideth it into fiue parts, Aian, Zanguebar, Benomoptapa, Cafraria, and Congo: but Congo is here taken in a very large sense. Aian, after the Arabians account, containeth all that Region which lyeth betweene the mouth of the Red Sea, and Qualimanci; being, for the most part, on the Sea-coast inhabited by the said Arabians: but in the In-land parts 2 thereof, are people which are a blacke heathenish Nation. It comprehendeth two Kingdomes, Adel and Adea; the former of which extendeth from that mouth of the Sea before mentioned, to the Cape Guardafu, by [b] *Ptolemey* called *Aromata*. South and West it bordereth vpon the Dominions of *Prete Iauni*, about the Kingdome of Fatigar. The chiefe Citie is Arar. Zeila also before spoken of, and Barbora pertayne to this Kingdome, Cities without the Streit, on the Sea, much frequented with Merchants. Zeila is situate in eleuen degrees, where *Ptolemey* placeth the *Analites*. It is stored with varietie of merchandize, and yeeldeth some representation of Antiquitie in the buildings thereof, consisting of lime and stone. The King is a Moore, and esteemed a Saint among the superstitious Mahumetans, for his continuall warres with the Christian Abassines, whence he transporteth innumerable slaues 3 to the Arabians and Turkes, receiuing in exchange armour and other helpes for his warres. *Anno* 1541. *Gradaameth* the King before mentioned, or *Gridagna*, by the helpe of some Portugals, which *Claudius* the Abassine had in his warres, was slaine, and his Armie ouerthrown: but his successor, *An.* 1559. slue *Claudius* in battaile, and got (as *Iohn de Castro* affirmeth) the greatest treasure of the world: the Moore acknowledging diuine assistance in this victorie, triumphed on an Asse. Zeila was burnt and sacked by the Portugals, *An.* 1516. as *Andrea* [c] *Corsali*, who was then present in the action, testifieth.

Adea is situate betweene Adel, Abassia, and the Sea. The Inhabitants are Moores, descended of the Arabians, who many hundred yeeres agoe, partly by their rich traffique, and especially by force of armes, became Lords, not onely of Aian, but of all the Sea-coast, to *Cape* 4 *dos Corrientes*, which is somewhat to the South of the Southerly Tropicke. In all which space, before the Portugall Discoueries, that part of the Cities which lay open to the Sea, was open and vnfortified, but toward the Land were walled for feare of the In-land people. Adea payeth tribute to the Abassian. In this Kingdome is Magadazzo, being it selfe a petite Kingdome of the Moores, which are of an olive colour. [d] Braua was a free Towne, which, with Pate and Gogia, were taken by the Portugals, vnder *Tristan de Cugna*. All the Countries adioyning to *Prester John*, as *David* the Emperor in his Letter to King *Emanuel* relateth, are either Moores or Gentiles, of which some worship wood and fire, some the Sunne, others Serpents, &c.

Zanzibar, or Zanguebar, is a name by the Arabians and Persians giuen to that Tract, ex- 5 tending from the Riuer Qualimanci, which *Ptolemey* calls *Raptus*, to the borders of Benomotapa. Some in a larger extent, include Benomotapa and Cafraria. *Sanutus* affirmeth, That it is a lowe, fenny, and woody Countrie, with many Riuers, which by extremitie of moysture cause the ayre to bee intemperate. From the waste vpwards they goe naked. Herein are contayned the Territories of Melinde, Mombaza, Quiloa, Mosambique, and others. Melinde [e] is the name of a Kingdome, and of the chiefe Citie thereof: the Inhabitants especially neere to the Sea, are Moores, and build their houses after the manner of Europe. The women are white, and the men of colour inclining to white, notwithstanding the situation vnder the Line. They haue black people also, which are Heathens for the most part. Of like condition is [f] Mombaza (which is said to haue some resemblance with Rhodes) but e- 6 0 nemie to the Christians, and was ruinated by *Thomas Cutigno*, in the yeere 1589. for receiuing *Alebech* the Turke, as *Ampaza* in the same Coast, by *Alphonso Mello*, a yeere or two before.

§. II.

a G. Pat. Bes. p.rv. 1. lib 2. Maginus. Pay before Leo.

b Ptol. l. 4. c. 7.

c Andrea Corsali.

d Lud. Romanus lib. 7. Zanguebar.

e Io. di Barros, Dec. 1. lib 4. c. 6. saith, At Melinde Gamma received kinde entertaynement, and Pilots to conuay him to India, when it was first discoured by the Portugals.

Marmol. l. 1. c. 2. & seq. describeth these Cities and countries largely.

f Vascus Gamma 1500. subdued Mombaza, and Almeida fiue yeeres after, and after Nonnius, Acosta, Osor. de reb. Eman.

§. II.

The Portugals exploits in Mombaza, and of the Imbij.

THis Expedition deserues mention, because it giues light to the knowledge of other parts adioyning. The Portogals holding in manner all these Nations, which inhabit from the Cape of Good Hope hitherto, either in termes of friendship or subiection: this *Alebech* with Turkish Gallies infested these Seas, and made diuers of the Portugall vassals to waiue in their fidelitie, being of the Saracenicall faith or religion: whereupon the Vice-roy sent forth a Nauie vnder the command of *Thomas* aforesaid, his brother, which arriued first at Brana, and thence passed alongst the shore to Ampaza, still continuing almost desolate: thence to Lamus, by the helpe of the tyde passing vp the Riuer full of dangerous sholds: thence they came to Melinde, and after that to Mombaza. This is a small Island of a league circuit, the Citie then compassed with a wall. The Mahumetans had buile a Castle on the Riuer which entreth the Citie, which was taken by the Portugals, and soone after fiue Gallies, which *Alebech* the Turke had there at that time, not without rich spoile. Here the Turkes and the Mombazan Inhabitants were now in a double distresse, by the Portugall forces from the Sea, and a more terrible enemie from the Land. These were the *Imbij*, impious and barbarous monsters, bred not farre from the Cape of Good Hope, tall, square, and strong men, addicted alwayes to warre and rapine, and feeding on the flesh, both of their captiued enemies, and of their owne people, in time of sicknesse, hastening their death for the shambles. The skulls of men serue them for drinking pots. Their weapons are poysoned arrowes, and poles burned at the ends: their shields are little, of wood, couered with a skin. They are supposed destitute of Religion, giuen to Incantations and Sorceries, and adoring their King with diuine honor, thinking him to be Lord of the whole Land, and the Portugals of the Sea. Such is his arrogance, that hee threatneth the destruction of all men, yea shootes his arrowes against the heauens, if wet or heate offend him. Some 80000. followed him in his warres, destroying Townes, Cities, and Beasts, together with the Men: in his march driuing many troopes of beasts before him, so to breake the assault of the enemie, and hauing fire carried before him, as menacing to boyle or rost, and eate all such as he shall take. It seemes that they are either the same, or of like condition to the Galla, which infest the Abassines, and the Iagges in other * parts of Africk, which also by a neere name call themselues Imbangolas, compounded of Imbij and Gallæ, a terrible rod of Gods anger, whereby he plagues and whips the barbarous Africans, with the worst of African barbarians. These Imbians had at this time approched to Mombaza, and the Turks with their Gallies did their best to hinder their entrance, the water encompassing, quenching the violence of that fire, which the Imbian beares before him, wherewith he had now burned a great wood. In this warre were the Mombazans and Turkes entangled, when the Portugals fleet came vpon them, those that escaped by flight the Portugals furie, falling into the bellies of the Imbians, which caused many to yeeld themselues voluntarily to the Portugall, as seeming the lesse of two euils. Many Turkes were slaine, others captiued, Christian Gally-slaues freed, three and twentie greater, and as many smaller peeces of Ordnance taken, the Citie (narrow built, that scarcely two could goe together in the streets, the houses of bricke built high, but with small lights, both to defend them against the Sunne) fired, the walls and Moschees razed; and the Nauie being readie to depart, they were haled by some Turkes on shore, and earnestly desired to admit them into their ships as slaues and captiues, *Alebech* himselfe being one, with thirtie others, besides two hundred Mombazans, hauing scarcely escaped the deuouring mawes of the Imbians, which had euen then buried the King and the chiefe Magistrate of Mombaza in their bowels, and taken innumerable captiues destined to the like Caniball disaster. The King of Lamus, called *Panebaxira*, the Portugals imprisoned and executed for betraying some of theirs to the Turkes, and conuented the neighbouring kings of Sian, Patus, Ampaza before them: they razed Mondra, and after other things set in order, returned to Goa.

They which haue desire to acquaint themselues with what Antiquitie hath deliuered of these parts, may resort to *Arrianus* his *Periplus* of the Erythræan Sea, and the labours of * *Stuckius* and *Ortelius*. For vs, to name you the Townes of ancient Trading (as Aualites, Malao, Mundi, Mosyllum, Apocopon, Opone, Rhapta) which hee reckons on the African shore, with other Riuers and Promontories, would not much further vs in this our Pilgrimage-Mart of Religions.

Iarric. Thes. Ind. l. 3. c. 13.

Imbij a barbarous Nation.

* See *inf. c. 10.*

Mombaza.

* *Stuckius ad Ar. Ortel.* Map thereof.

§. III.

Of Quiloa, Sofala, and Ophir.

QViloa stands nine degrees to the South of the Line: the name of a City and Iland, which is a Kingdome of the Moores, and extendeth her Dominion farre in the Coast. It was built (as *Marmolius* affirmeth) about the foure hundreth yeere of the *Hirare* (so he nameth it) by one *Ali*, Sonne of *Sultan Hossen*, who notagreeing with his other brethren, by reason their Mothers were Persian, and his an Abissine, sought new Aduentures in these parts, and bought this Iland: the History of whom, and of his Successours, you may find in that [a] Author.

c *Maffeius Indiae lib. 1. Arthus hist. Indiae, 20.*

d *Marmol. l. 9. c. 39. & 40.*

The King grew mighty by the Trade of Sofala; but it was made tributary to Portugall by *Vascus Gamma*, *Anno* 1500. In the yeere 1505, the Portugals for denyall of that Tribute, depoued *Abraham*, the Arabian King, of his Scepter, and built a Fort there; which the Moores soone after destroyed, together with the new King made by the Portugals. The people are whitish, their women comely, rich in attire: their houses faire built, and richly furnished.

Betweene Coaua and Cuama, two Riuers which spring out of the same Lake with Nilus, are the Kingdomes of Mombaza, Mozimba, Macuas, Embeoe, and against them the Promontory *Prassum*. Heere is Mosambique, [e] by which name is signified a Kingdome in the Continent, and an Iland also, with a safe Harbour, which with two other Ilands are in the mouth of the Riuer Moghincats, in fifteene degrees South. Mosambique is inhabited by Portugals, which haue there a strong Castle: here the Portugals Shippes winter. In this Iland are Sheepe, with tayles of fiue and twenty pound weight (a beast common in Africa:) Hens blacke both in feathers, flesh, and bone, and sodden, looke like Inke, yet sweeter then other in taste: Porke very good, but for the deare sawce. There are some Mahumetans, as they were all, before the Portugals arriuall there. They haue trade in the Continent, in Sena, Macurua, Sofala, Cuama, a people for the most part differing in speech and behaui our, each Village fighting with her Neighbour, captuing them: and some (as at Macurua) eate them. Their chiefest liuing is by hunting, and by flesh of Elephants. In euery Village is a new King. The Captaine of Mosambique, in his three yeeres gouernment, maketh three hundred thousand Duckets gaine especially, by Gold, from Sofala.

e *See Linschoten. l. 1. c. 4. Paludanus, ibid.*

Vp, further within Land the people goe almost naked, and were so simple, when first the Portugals traded thither, [f] that *Ludouico Barthema*, or *Vertomannus*, for his Shirt, and another for a Razor, and a little Bell, bought fifteene Kowes of them; and then they were ready to fall together by the eares among themselues for the Bell, who should haue it. But they could not enioy their purchase, beeing driuen to their heeles by three Female Elephants, which hauing young ones, were very fierce, and made them leaue their Kine to saue themselues. In these Seas the Moores sayle in Vessels sowed with Leather, the sayles of Palmetree leaues calked with Gumme, gathered off the trees in the Woods.

f *Ramusius Lib. 7.*

Sofala.

Sofala lyeth betweene Cuama and Magnice, two Riuers. Heere the Portugals haue on a little Iland (whence the whole Kingdome hath his name) a Fort and Factory of very rich Trade, the people bringing great quantity of Gold (whereof they haue plentifull Mynes) for their Cloth and other Commodities: it is supposed amounteth two Millions yeerely. *Ortelius* [g] is of opinion, That this Cephala, or Sophala, is that which in *Salomons* time [h] was called *Ophir*, from whence so great quantity of Gold was brought by his Nauy. *Iosephus* [i] seekes for it in India: *Eupolemus* [k] in the Red Sea, imagining it to be an Iland there placed: *Dom.* [l] *Niger*, *Tremelius*, and *Iunius*, in *Aurea Chersonesus*, where Malacca standeth (although we reade not of any great quantity of Gold found in that soyle.) [m] *Gaspar Varerius* is of the same minde, but reckoneth to the *Chersonesus* both Pegu and Samotra, with all that lyeth betweene them. And in Somatra they haue a Tradition, that *Salomon* had his Gold from thence: and in the Letter of the King to his Maiestie, hee entitleth himselfe King of the Mountaine of Gold, *Solida*, *Vatablus* [n] with lesse reason, applyeth it to Spagniola, discouered by *Columbus*, and by *Columbus* himselfe so called. *Arias* [o] *Montanus*, *Philip Morney*, *Postellus*, *Goropius*, would by their authority much moue vs to thinke with them, that Ophir is Peru, if the ignorance of the Load-stone, and those huge Seas, esteemed by Antiquity vnnauigable, did not detaine vs from consent: & where should Peru yeeld him Iuory, where neuer was yet seene an Elephant? Doctor *Dee* that famous Mathematician hath written a very large Discourse of that Argument, which I haue seene with Master *Hakluyt*, much illustrating what the Ancients haue written of those Seas and Coasts, and concludeth that Hauila is the Kingdome of Aua (subiect to Pegu) and Ophir is Chryse or *Aurea* before mentioned, first, possessed by *Ophir*, mentioned *Genes.* 10. that golden name eating vp the former of *Ophir*.

g *Ort. Thesaur.*
h *1. Reg. 9. 28. 2. Chron. 9. 21.*
i *Ioseph. Antiq.*
k *Euseb. de praep. l. 9. c. 4.*
l *Niger. Geog. Tremel. & Iun. Annot.*
m *Gaspar. Var. de Ophyra.*
n *Pat. in 1. Re. 9 P. Mar. dec. 1. l. 3*
o *Ar. Mont. Morn. de verit. Pellelius. Goro. Hispania.*

Iose-

Iosephus p *Acosta* maketh *Ophir* and *Tharsis* to signifie no certaine places, but commonly to bee taken in a generall sense, as the word India is now with vs, a name giuen to all remote Countries East and West. He thinketh, that *Salomons* Gold, Iuory, &c. came from the East-Indies.

p *Ios. Acosta, l. 1. cap. 14.*

But some reasons doe yeeld great cause of coniecture for Sofala, both because of the plenty of the commodities which *Salomons* seruants are said to bring with them, and because of ancient buildings of stone-worke, which the q Inhabitants call, *The worke of Deuils*; supposing it impossible for men (ghessing of others by their owne ignorance) to haue built: which also haue strange Letters, that the Moores (though learned) could not reade: (and why
10 might they not be the old Hebrew Letters, which the Phœnicians of old, and Samaritans to this day obserue, as elsewhere we haue shewed.) And further, *Thomas* r *Lopez* telleth, that certain Moores related vnto them of the riches of those Mines; that ships from Mecca and Zidem vied to trade there; and that yearely there were taken forth of the Mines two millions of Mittigals, euery Mittigall being a Duckat of Gold, and a third part: That the Warres in those Countries at that time had ceased the Traffique: and that they had Bookes and Ancient Writings, which testified, That these were the Mines whence *Salomon* in his three Voyages fetched his Gold, and that the Queen of *Saba* was naturall of the parts of India. As for India, ye haue s euen now read that it was a name giuen to many Nations, and among the rest to Æthiopia. And if a man consider the small skill which that Age of the World had in
20 Marine affaires, still as much as might be holding their course within the sight of Land, hee can scarce thinke, that long Nauigations could then be performed. *Barrius* accounteth all Sofala to the Empire of Benomotapa, of which we shall speake anon; wee haue now mentioned the same, by reason of the Isle which is subiect to the Portugals. These, besides Gold, here haue great Trade for Iuory of which *Barrius* saith, that in Benomopata are yeerely staine foure or fiue thousands, and of Water-horses (whose teeth are accounted Iuory also) all the great Riuers in Africa are full. These feed sometimes on the Medowes, where the Mariners haue chased them, as *Lopez* t reporteth: and after long chasing by Land, they haue taken the water; where, in reuenge, they haue assaulted the Mariners in their Boats, and bitten chips off the same, being, by the thicknesse of their Hides armed against their Pikes, and
30 haue made them afraid, that they would ouerwhelme the Boat.

q *Io. di Barros Dec. 1. l. 10. c. 1.*

r *Nauigationi di Thome Lopez ap Ramusium.*

s *Cap. sup.*

t *Th. Lopez.*

§. IIII.

Of Monoemugi, the Moores, Baduines, Caphars, in these parts.

WIthin the Land, behinde these parts, is the Kingdome of Monoemugi, a which is rich in Gold: their vnfortunate Warres with *Monomotapa* haue made them knowne. Nilus is their Westerne border, and Abassia on the North. They haue little red Bals made of a kinde of Clay in Cambaya, and resembling Glasse, which
40 they weare for ornament, and vse for money. This King warreth with the Benomotapa, and hath terrible Souldiours, called *Giacqui*, or *Agub*, or *Agog*, who inhabite between the Lakes whence Nilus and Zaire take their beginnings; which haue a wandering life, like the Nomades, in Cottages which they make in the fields. They are of stature tall, and of countenance terrible, making lines vpon their cheekes with certaine iron Instruments, and turning their eye-lids backward, eating their enemies.

a *Monoemugi.*

These not long since (as b some say) inuaded the Kingdome of Congo, and forced the King to keepe in a small Isle, where himselfe was taken with a Dropsie; and his people famished, as after shall follow in due place. The Amazones of Monomotapa are euery way equall vnto them in prowesse. Little is knowne of the Religion of these Heathenish Nations nor of
50 other Kingdomes, whereof we haue little but the names to relate, Gorous, Colta, Anzuga, Moneulo, Baduis.

b *Od. Lopez l. 2. c. 5.*

Now, for those Moores which inhabited the Sea-coasts as we haue said, they are dispersed as farre as Benomotapa, but are not all c Catholike Mahumetans, especially such of them as haue conuersed, and taken their habitations further within Land. And the first Moores or Arabians that came to inhabite those Coasts, were banished persons, called as the Chronicles of *Quiloa* is reporeed, *Emozaidin* of *Zaide*, the Nephew of *Hocem* the sonne of *Hali*, whose Doctrine they followed in some opinions, contrary to the Alcoran, and therefore esteemed Heretikes.

c *Io di Barros, Dec. 1. l. 8. c. 4.*

Long after them came three ships with great multitudes of Arabians, that fled from the King of Laza their enemy, vnder the conduct of seuen Brethren, which built Magadazzo, and
60 after that, Braua; which in manner of a Common-wealth, was till the Portugals time governed by twelue Aldermen, or chiefe Gouernours, that descended of the seuen Brethren.

Baduini.

These Moores and the former differing from each other in their superstitions, could not agree, and therefore the *Emozaudin* were forced vp higher into the Countrey, and thereby mariages mixed themselues with the Casers (so the Arabians call all Heathen people) and became Mungrels in a Galli-maufrey of Deuotions, whom therefore the Sea-coast-Moores called by a generall name, a *Baduini*, which in Arabia and Egypt, is the title of the people that liue in the Champaine, and In-land Countreys: and those that liue neere the Sea-coast are called Arabians.

a *Botero.*

They make no difference of meats, *Don Iohn* of *Castro* [b] writeth, that *Badoil* signifieth a man that liueth onely by cattell: and that the Troglodites, and Nations from Melinde and Magadoxa to Cape Guardafu, and on both sides of the straits, and on the Arabike Sea, to Ormuz (occupying rather then inhabiting the soyle) are called Badoies. They are (saith he) sauage, without truth or ciuilitie, they are Mahumetanes, but accounted badde Moores, Theeues and Robbers, eating raw flesh, drinking milke, their habite filthy; very swift, holding warre with all men; (as was prophecied of *Ismael* their Progenitor) from *Zeila* to Suachen with the Abexijs, from thence to Alcocer with the Nobijs, from thence to Soez with the Ægyptians, from Soez to Ormus with the Arabians. They haue no King nor great Lord, but liue in troupes and factions; permit no Towne in their fields, haue no certaine habitation, but wander from place to place with their cattell. Their Xeque determineth suits as hee listeth. Their lodging is in Caues and holes, of the most in Tents, their colour very blacke, their Language Arabicke.

b In a great written Booke giuen by Sir *W. Ral.* to M. *Hak.*

The Heathens in those parts are giuen to Auguries and Witcheries: and in their highest attempts and greatest resolutions, yet will leaue off, if any of these phantasies bode vnluckinesse. The fruits, birds, beasts, and seeds, are in manner like to the people, all wilde. The ayre is vnholesome. But what vnhealthfomenesse can there be found, where gold is found? which makes men commit themselues (no maruell what they commit with others) to the most scorching heats, to contagious ayres, to tempestuous Seas, and the darkest prisons of the disembowelled Earth.

Modesty had almost forbidden me to recite that, which may with some easily obtaine a *Plaudite*, in the last Act and finishing of this Chapter, concerning the Caffares. *Linschoten* c shall recite it for me. They liue, saith he, like beasts (he speaketh of those which liue neere Mosambique, and those especially more within the Land) they are blacke as pitch, with flat noses, thicke lips, some haue holes both aboue and vnder in their lips, and, as it were, other mouthes in their cheekes, wherein they thrust small bones to beautifie themselues: for which cause they raze and scare their bodies with Irons. If they will make a diuellish forme and Picture, they represent a white man in his apparell, as thinking nothing more vgly. Some also file their teeth as sharpe as Needles. They haue Villages wherein they dwell together, and in euery Village a Lord or King, to whom they are subiect. Religion and Faith are vnknowne to them. They vse mutuall warres, and some eate mans flesh. When they take Prisoners in warre, or kill their Enemies, they obserue a more then beastly testimony of their great valour, which is after this manner.

c *Linschot. c.41.*

They cut off their priuy members (to deprive them of all hope of generation) and then dry them well for preseruation: after which they come before the King with great reuerence, in the presence of the principall men of the Villages, and there take these members, so dryed, one by one in their mouthes, and spit them on the ground at the Kings feet, which the King with great thankes accepteth; and the more to honour them, causeth them all to be taken vp and giuen to them againe, which is from thenceforth an Ensigne of their Knight-hood. For they take all those members, and tye them on a string like a bracelet or chaine; and at all solemne meetings, as when they marry or goe to a wedding or feast, the Bride, or wiues of these Knights, doe weare that chaine about their necks, being, saith our Author, among them as great an honour as the Golden-Fleece, or the Renowned GARTER with vs, and their wiues as proud thereof, as if some Crowne or Scepter had befalne them.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Benomotapa, and the parts adioyning.

§. I.

Of the Empire of Monomotapa.

BEnomotapa, [a] called also Benomotaxa, and Monomotapa, is a large Empire, so entituled after the name of the Prince thereof (for Benomotapa is with them a Title, as *Cæsar* or Emperour with vs, the Portugals call him *Emperour of the Gold*) extendeth after some mens reckoning almost a thousand Leagues in compasse, betweene the great Lake, whence Nilus springeth on the North-East, Magnice and Toroa on the South, and the Sea-coast of Sofala on the East. It is betweene the Sea and the fresh waters, accounted a huge Island. Betweene Cuama and Corrientes it is pleasant and wholesome and fruitfull: and from the Cape Corrientes to Magnice, it abounds with beasts; but it is cold. Their principall Cities are Zimbas (haply the same which *Ptolomey* [b] cals *Agisymba*) and Benamataza; that one and twenty, this fifteene dayes iourney, from Sofala. Of the abundance of Elephants in Benomotapa is said before; whereof Æthiopia is euery where stored with manifold herds: [c] although I dare not subscribe to their opinion that esteeme Elephants as common there, as heere we haue Oxen. It is a creature nine cubits high (in their largest stature) and fiue cubits thicke: with long and broad eares, little eyes, short tayles, and great bellies. Of their disposition is spoken already. Some say fiue thousand are yeerely slaine in these parts.

a *L. Marmol. l.9.c.31.*

b *Ptol. Georg. l.4.c.9.*

c *Io di Barros Dec.3.l.10.c.1.*

The Mines neerest to Sofala, are those of Manica, which are in wide Champaines compassed with mountaines, ninety miles in circuit. The places where the Gold is, appeare and are knowne by the drinesse and barrennesse of the soyle, as if Nature it selfe could not hord vp Gold in her spacious chest, but she must needs proue *base and barren of her wonted good work*; and how much lesse vnnaturall and degenerate mankinde? The Prouince is called Matuca, the people Botonghi (which although they are betweene the Line and the Tropike) yet in Winter haue such snowes in the mountains, that if any abide there, they dye frozen in them: and in Summer-time the ayre in the tops of those hils is so cleare and pure, that some of our men, which were then there, saw the New-Moone, the same day that shee had kissed her bright and bountifull Brother.

Vid. Marmol. l.9.c.32. & seq. See seq.4.7.

And who can now charge that bright Eye of the World, with the obscure darknesse of this Peoples hue, which so cold Winters, nor pure Summers, can lessen or lighten? Yea, euen in the cold Countries neere the Cape of Good-hope, the Æthiopians haue no hope or hap of good colour; whereas the hotter Countreys of Libya, and in manner all America (notwithstanding the Sunnes strait looking, and neerenesse, not allowing them a shaddow to attend them in the greatest height of his bounty) know not this blacke tinsture in the Naturals thereof.

But to returne (and who will not returne?) to the Mines: There are other Mines in the Prouinces of Boro and Quiticui, in which and in the Riuers, is found Gold not so pure. The people are carelesse and negligent to get, and the Moores which traded with them, were faine to giue their wares in trust, with promise by such a time to pay them in Gold, and the people would not faile in their word.

Other Mynes are in Toroa, wherein are those buildings which *Barrius* attributeth to some forren [d] Prince, and I, for the reasons before alledged, to *Salomon*. It is a square Fortresse of stone; the stones of maruellous greatnesse, without any signe of morter or other matter to ioyne them. The wall fiue and twenty spannes thicke, the height not holding proportion. Ouer the gate are letters, which learned Moores could neither reade, nor know what letters they were. There are other buildings besides, of like fashion. The people call them the Court, for an Officer keepes it for the Benomotapa, and hath charge of some of his women, that are there kept. They esteeme them beyond humane power to build, and therefore account them the workes of Deuils, and the Moores which saw them, said the Portugals Castles were no way to bee compared to them. They are fiue hundred and ten miles from Sofala, Westward, in one and twenty degrees of Southerly Latitude: in all which space is not found one building ancient or later; the people are rude, and dwell in Cottages or Tumber.

d *As the Portugals haue their Castles of Mina, Sofala &c. so some Prince, Master sometimes of those Mines.*

All the people of this Region is of curled hayre, and more ingenious then those which are

are against Mosambique, Quiloa and Melinde, among whom are many that eate mans flesh, and let their Kine blood to satisfie their thirst. These seeme prone to receiue the Faith: for they beleeue in *One* GOD, whom they call *Mozimo*, and haue no Idols, nor worship other thing: They punish nothing more seuerely then Witchcraft, whereunto other Negros are exceedingly addicted; no such person escapeth death. The like detestation they conceiue against Adultery and Theft. Euery one may haue as many wiues as they will: but the first is principall the other serue her; and her children are heires. A woman is not mariageable with them, till her naturall purgation testifie for her abilitie to Conception: and therefore they entertaine the first fluxe thereof with a great Feast.

In two things they are Religious; in obseruation of dayes, and Rites concerning their dead. Of dayes, they obserued the first day of the Moone, the sixt, the seuenth, the eleuenth, the sixteenth, the seuenteenth, the twentieth, and the eight and twentieth, because in that day their King was borne. The Religion is in the first, sixt, and seuenth, all the rest are repetitions, aboue ten. When any is dead, after his bodie is eaten, his neere kindred, or his wife which hath had most children by him, keepe the bones, with some signes whereby to know, whose they were: and euery seuenth day they obserue Exequies in the same place where they are kept: They spreade many clothes, and set thereon tables furnished with bread and sodden flesh, which they offer to the dead with prayers and supplications. And the principall thing they request of them, is, the good successe of their Kings affaires. These prayers they make, being cloathed in white garments: after which the good man and his family eate their offerings. The Benomotapa must weare clothes of the same Country, for feare of infection; others may weare forren cloth. He is serued on the knee, and when he drinketh or cougheth, all they which are about him make a shout, that all the Towne may know. None may cough in his presence: also, euery one must sit in token of reuerence, to stand, is a signe of dignity which he affordeth the Portugals and Moores, and is the chiefe honour can bee yeelded any. The second honour is to sit on a cloth in his house: the third, that a man may haue a doore in his house, which is the dignity of great Lords. For meaner persons, they need not feare to haue any thing stolne out of their open houses seeing the seuerity of Iustice doth secure them. Doores are not for necessity, but for honour. Their houses are of pyramidall or steeple forme, all the timbers meeting in the middest at the top: couered with earth and straw. Some of them are made of timbers, as long and as bigge as a great ships mast: the greater they are, the more honorable.

The *Benomotapa* hath musicke whithersoeuer he goeth, with singers: and more then fiue hundred iesters, which haue their Captain or Master of Reuels. The royall Ensigne is a little plow-share, with an Iuory point, which he carrieth alway at his girdle; by which is signified peace, and husbanding of the ground. He beareth likewise one or two swords in token of Iustice, and defence of his people. The Country is free, and giues him no other payments, but presents when they come to speake with him: and certaine dayes seruice. No inferiour comes before his superiour without some present; in token of obedience and courtesie. The Captaines of warre with all theirs, beitow seuen dayes in thirty in his husbandry or other businesse. Hee must confirme all sentences of Iudgement in his owne person: there needs no Prison, for matters are presently dispatched, according to the allegations and testimonies, that are brought. And if there bee not sufficient testimonies, then the matter is tryed by oath, in this manner. They beat the barke of a certaine tree, and cast the powder thereof in water; [b] which the party drinketh, and if he doe not vomit, he is cleared; if he vomit, he is condemned. And if the accuser, when the accused party vomiteth not, will drinke of the same, and doth not vomit, he is then acquitted, and the matter dispatched. If any sue to him, he speedeth not, but by mediation of a third person, which also sets down the summe that the King must haue, sometime at so deare a rate, that the suter rather refuseth the Kings grant. They haue no Horse, and therefore warre on foot: the spoyles are generally shared amongst all. When he marcheth, in the place where he is to lodge, they make a new house of wood, and therein must continuall fire be kept, without euer going out; saying, that in the ashes might be wrought some witcheries to the indamagement of his person. And when they goe to the warres, they neuer wash their hands nor faces, till they haue obtained victory. They haue their wiues with them, which are so loued and respected, that if the Kings sonne meet with one of them in the street, hee giues her way. *Benomotapa* hath more then a thousand women; but the first is principall, although she be inferiour in blood, and her sonne succeeds. And in seed-time and harueft, the Queene goeth to the field and oursseeth the first fruits, esteeming it a great honour. Thus farre out of *Barrius*.

Johannes Boterus [c] tels, that his chiefe warriours are women, namely, certaine Amazones, which feare off their left paps, as *Odoardo* [d] *Lopez* reporteth, lest they should hinder their shooting, after the manner of the ancient Amazones: they are quick, bold, couragious, and con-

a *Porta vna due Zagaie. Boterus sayth vna Zapes due dardi*: a Mattocke and two Darts.

b Of such like water, see the tenth Chapter.

c G Bot. Ben. pag. 1.

d O d Lopez Congo lib. 1. cap. 9. *Arrius hist. Ind. Orient. cap. 19.*

constant in battaile, and most constant in inconstancie: for when they make shew of flight, they will returne (espying their aduantage) with the greatest fury. They dwell in certaine Countries by themselues, and at certaine times haue men to accompany with them for generation, to whom they send their Males, reseruing all the Female Children which they haue. Thus we find Amazons, which the Ancients reported in Asia, and *Diodorus* in Libya, now in these times, if this report bee true, in Æthiopia: and *Huldericus* [u] *Shmidel* hath told of the like in America. Others [x] deny it: and none hath yet written of them from his owne sight. For my part, no Amazonian hath yet conquered my credit.

In the yeere 1560. *Consaluus* [y] *Silueria*, with two other Iesuites, went from Goa to the Kingdomes of Inbamban, and Monomotapa: and comming to Inbamban, they went to Tonge, the City Royall, where they baptized the King and all his people in a short space, naming the King *Constantine*, the Queene *Mary*. Thence went *Consaluus* to Monomotapa, and so preuailed with his Images, Preaching, and contempt of the World, that he wanne the King and his Mother, with multitudes of others to Baptisme. But soone after, the King, by suggestion of the Moores, slue him. *Sebastian* in reuenge rayled an Armie of sixteene hundred, [z] most of them being Gentlemen, which he sent vnder the conduct of *Francis Barretto*. The Benomotapa fearing the Portugals forces, offered reasonable conditions, which *Barretto* refusing, was discomfited, not by the Negro, but by the Ayre, the malignity whereof (the sowre sauce of all these Golden Countreys in Africa) consumed his people. There are other Kingdomes adioyning to Monomotapa, and the Mountaynes of the Moone, Marana, Melemba, Quinbebe, Berteça, Bauagul, of which I can giue you but the names.

u *Shmidel* [illegible] *Nauigat. in Am. c. 37.*

x *A. Bastel* which liued neere those parts.

y *Eman. Acosta Rerum in Oriente gest. commentarius 3. c. 9.*

z *Barretopart. 2. lib. 3.*

§. II.

Of Caphraria, *the* Cape of Good Hope, *and* Soldania.

CAphraria, or the Land of the Caphars is next to bee considered, which *Maginus* boundeth betweene *Rio du Spirito Santto*, and *Cape Negro*, extending to the Cape of Good Hope Southwards. Why hee should call this part the Caphars, I know not: for the Arabians, of whom this word is borrowed, giue that name to all the Heathen people in Africa; yea both the Arabians, and all of their Religion, call all such as reuiue not that Superstition, Caphars, euen Christians also, as Master *Ienkinson* [a] long since told vs. And for the Heathens in Africa, *Barrius* affirmeth, that it is by the Moores giuen to them all: signifying, *without Law*, or lawlesse people. *Zanguebar* is in this respect called Caffraria. It should seeme it is appropriated to these the Southerlieſt Nations of Africa: for want of other the more true proper names which were vnknowne. With the names of the Capes, and other places of note, Master *Pory* [b] hath already acquainted his English Reader: Onely that notable and famous *Cape of Good Hope*, (so named [c] by *Iohn* the Second, King of Portugall, for that hope which he conceiued of a way to the Indies, when it was first discouered) deseruedh some mention. It hath three head-lands, the Westermost beareth name of *Good Hope*: the middlemost *Cabo Falso*, because they haue sometimes in their returne from the Indies, mistaken this for the former: betweene which two Capes runneth into the Sea a mighty Riuer, called by the Portugals *Rio dulce*, which springs out of a Lake called Gale, situate among the Mountaynes of the Moone, so much celebrated by the ancient Geographers: The third and Easternmost, is that of Agulhas or Needles about fiue and twenty leagues from the first: both which seeme as two horncs, wherewith it threatens the Ocean, which in these parts is found oftentimes a tempestuous, and when it cannot preuay against this rough-faced and horned Promontory, it wrekes the whole malice vpon the ships, whose ribs in the enraged fits, it would breake if they were of Iron; as *Linschoten* [d] testifieth of his owne experience. True it is, that sometimes it is passed with more ease; but not so vsually: and *Linschoten* tels, that at his returne from India, the Saint *Thomas*, a new Carricke, was heere cast away, [e] and their ship wherein he sayled, in such danger, that one while they prayed, another while murmured, another time would returne backe, and the Captaine professed no small maruell, why our Lord suffered such good Catholikes to indure such torments, and the English Heretickes and Blasphemers to passe so easily. The waues there (sayth hee) strike against a ship, as if they strucke against a Hill, that if it were of stone it would at last be broken.

Capaine [f] *Lancaster* traded with the people neere these parts, and for two Knives bought an Oxe, for one, a Sheepe, &c. in good quantity. Their Sheepe are great, with great tailes, with vs in winter, when it freezeth not; and yet the people are blackish. but

a *A. Ienkinson in Hak. tom. 1. p. 327.*

b *Pory* before *Leo.*

c *Osor. de reb. Eman. L. 1.* This was *An. 1487.* The discouerie thereof is largely reciated by *Io. di Barro* in his first Decad of Asia, *l. 3.*

d *Bartholomeus Diaz*, who first discouered this Cape, called it *Ca. Tormentosa*, in regard of the troubles and dangers hee there suffayned, call ds, sayth S. *Ed. M.* the Lion of the Sea, where they found great stormes.

e *Linschot. c. 69.*

f *Sir Iames Lancaster Hak. to. 2. part. 2. Nauig. Perbus.*

g They found it there in April as cold as 1600.

but hairy, not woolled. Their Oxen great, not fat, but well fleshed. The Captaine killed there an Antelope as bigge as a Colt. There were diuers great beasts vnknowne to them. When they had passed this Cape, they lost their Admirall, Captaine *Raimond*, and neuer saw them, or heard of them more. And foure dayes after they found as terrible an Enemy from aboue, and encountred with a Thunder clap, which slue foure of their men out-right, their neckes being wrung asunder: And of fourescore and fourteene men there was not one vntouched; but some were blind, others bruised in their legs and armes, or brests, others drawne out, as if they had beene racked; which all yet, God be thanked, did after recouer.

The same Sir *Iames Lancaster* was after this sent Generall for the East India Company; which hauing made a stocke of threescore and twelue thousand pound, bought the *Dragon* of sixe hundred tunnes, the *Hector* of three hundred, the *Ascension* of two hundred & fourescore, the *Susan* of two hundred and threescore, and sent in them in Merchandize and Spanish Money, to the value of seuen and twenty thousand pound. The Scorbute so weakened their men, that they were not able to hoyse out their Boates, except in the Generals ship, whose men (drinking euery morning three spoonefuls of the iuyce of Limons) were healthfull. He bought a thousand sheepe in Soldania g and forty two Oxen as bigge as ours, the sheepe greater, but hairy, and might haue bought more, for old Iron. The people, he sayth, are tawny; *Cornelius Houtman* sayth, Oliue blacke, blacker then the Brasilians, their haire curled and blacke, as in Angola, not circumcised, clocke like a brood-hen in speaking, paint their faces with diuers colours, strong, actiue, swift, subiect to *Monomotapa*: they slue some Flemings for wrongs, which made the English warie in trading with them. Sir *Edward Michelborne* h found here great reliefe. Besides great Herds of Oxen and Flocks of Sheepe, heere is abundance of Deere, Antilopes, Baboones, Foxes, Hares, Ostriches, Cranes, Pellicans, Herons, Geese, Duckes, Pheasants, Partridges, &c. A great Bullocke they might buy for an old Iron hoope not worth two pence, a Sheepe for a piece not worth two good Horsenayles. The people liued on the guts and filth of the meate which our men cast away, not so much as washing the same, but couering them ouer with hot ashes, before they were through hot, pulled them out, and shaking them a little with their hands, did eate both guts, excrements, and ashes. They hue vpon raw flesh and certayne Roots. Sir *Henry Middleton*, i a Generall of the foure ships aboue-named, found (in his returne) three and fifty men dead in the *Hector* at this Bay, and but ten left: The *Susan* was lost, it was thought for want of men. And long before the Trade of the English (which is now very much increased in the Easterne parts) *Giouanni da Empoli* k telleth, That neere the Cape, the Countrey people would giue them a Kow for a little Bell. The men and women were clothed, or rather a little couered with hairy skinnes, the women beautifying this their beastly habits with the tayles of the beasts, hanging downe before and behind to couer their shame. These women had large and deformed paps. Religion they could obserue none amongst them, and thought that they eat their flesh raw.

The Hollanders also in the yeere 1595. trafficked with these Cafres, which were valiant, but base in apparell, couered with Oxe or Sheep-skins wrapped about their shoulders, with the hairy side inward, in forme of a Mantle; their priuy parts couered with a Sheepes tayle, fastened before and behind with a Girdle. But now we see it made a daily matter to the Portugall, English and Dutch, so capable of *Hope of Good*, that the Cape of *Good Hope* is nothing feared; although at home many take exceptions as if there were no good hope of publike good, & wish that they would carry out of Europe lesse Mony, & bring home more men: but of this elsewhere is spoken at large. I cannot omit, m that vpon the top of this Promontory, Nature hath as it were framed her selfe a delightfull Bower, here to sit and contemplate the great Seas, which from the South, East and West beat vpon this shore: and therefore hath here formed a great plaine, pleasant in situation, which with the fragrant herbes, variety of flowers, and flourishing verdure of all things seemes a terrestriall Paradise. It is called the Table of the Cape. That which from hence lyeth to Cape Negro, hath not to our purpose any thing notable. This also deserueth mention, that notwithstanding all the damages of this dreadfull Promontory, and the Seas on this side and beyond, n *Iames Botellius*, a Portugall, to recouer the fauour of his Prince, *John* the third, by the first bringing newes of a happy accident that then befell in India, in a little Boat or Vessell scarce eighteene foote long, and six broad, sayled from Cochin to Dabul, and from thence alongst the Arabian and African shores, doubling this terrible Cape, and missing Saint *Helena*, came yet safe to Lisbone, worthily welcomed both for his message, and the messenger, that durst aduenture to encounter *Neptunes* strongest forces, notwithstanding so weake furniture.

The Hollanders o at the Cape of *Good Hope*, (if you will heare other testimonies) had of the Inhabitants two Kine for two rusty Knives, and one much greater for a new one: two fat Buls and three Sheepe for a barre of Iron, weighing threescore and ten pound. The people make

g *Soldania* is a Bay in 34 Lat. Long. 51. Of which see the East *Indian* Voyages which we new print, in the Iournals of Sir *T. Roe*, *John Tatton*, *Downton*, &c.

h Sir *Ed. Mich.* 16. 4 *Dauid Middleton* with the like, 1606.

i *Tho. Clapham.*

k 1503.

l For monie, both Portugals & others haue found that the Indians more esteeme it far then Merchandize. *Vid. Lit. Fr. de Sagittis in N. Orbe.* And men die much by the change and vnwholesomenesse of the Climate & dyet, their own intemperance with women, and fruits in the Countrie, Calmes, Scorbute, &c.

See *Ly. c. 2.*

m *Botero.*

n *Stoffs publist. Ind. I. 12. 1557.*

o *De Bry ind. Or. part. 3.*

make much account of Iron: they are of short stature: darkish colour: their armes are adorned with Copper and Iuory, their fingers with Rings of Gold, and with Beads of bone and wood. They brand their bodies with diuers markes: And because they alway anoint themselues with grease and fat, they yeeld a ranke smell. If wee killed a beast for our vse, they would sake the inwards, and eate them raw, the filth being not well clensed from them. At their Feasts they would seethe a beast in his hide, fastned on foure stickes with fire vnderneath. They liue miserably, yet for gallantry weare bones and pieces of dryed flesh about their neckes. Neere this Cape are weeds growing in the Sea fiue and twenty fathome long.

10 The *Ascension* p built their Pinnasse, *Anno* 1608. at Soldania, about fifteene or sixteene leagues from the Cape of *Good Hope*, and there tooke in for their prouision about foure hundred head of Cattell, as Oxen, Steeres, Sheepe, and Lambes, together with fowles and fresh water. They filled their Boat with Seales at the Ile Pengwin, a little from thence. Such was the brutish nature of the Inhabitants, that when the English had cast out of their ship one of those Seales, and the same had lien fourteene dayes, and now swarmed with crawling Maggots, they would take them vp and eat them; as they would also doe the guts, garbage, and panch of the beast. They more esteemed Iron, then Gold or Siluer. Heere the first night after they weighed Anchor. The *Ascension* lost the *Union*, and the *Good Hope* their Pinnasse (so neere the Cape of *Good Hope*) which, mee thinkes, obseruing what after befell them,

20 seemes an ominous presage, written in these names, of their other losses which followed, concluded with the losse of their ship on the Coast of Cambaya. It is morally true, that *ascending* and aspiring minds lose *Union* (q for *onely by pride doth man make Contention*) *Union* being gone, *Good Hope* followeth, *Quæ concordiâ crescunt, discordiâ res & spes perennt*: and so it befell in this their Tragedie, after the losse of those Vessels which bare such names. The ship was lost by the Masters indiscretion, but yet hath the honour (suruiuing her fates) that shee was the first English ship that euer sayled on those Seas.

Although we haue beene tedious in this Cape and the Bay of Soldania, yet I haue thought it not amiss to adde somewhat out of later Relations. Master *Copland* writes that the *Ayre* here is so wholesome, and the Earth so fertile, as might with helpe of Art become a Para-

30 dise. Euen Nature it self hath diuersified the Soyle in an entercourse of Mountaynes, Plaines, Woods, Medowes, Streames, as intending so pleasant a variety, in a seeming artificiall Order. Their many sicke men, exposed on shore in Tents, within twenty dayes were all (one excepted) found as at first day. They bought nine and thirty Beeues, and one hundred and fifteene Sheepe for a little t Brasse or Copper cut out of two or three old Kettles. The people are louing, but were at the first afraid by reason of some vnkindnesses receiued from the Dutch, which had beene there to make trane, and had killed and stolne their Cattell. They are of of middle size, well limmed, very nimble and active, dance in true measure: weare short Clokes of Sheepe or Seales skings to their waste with a Cap of the same, the haire t inwards, a Rats skin about their priuities, some of them haue soles tyed about their feet, their

40 necks adorned with Chaines of greasie Trypes (or guts also in many doubles) which they would sometimes pull off and eate stinking and raw; they did also eate the entrayles by vs throwne away, halfe raw (and would scramble for it like hungry Dogges) lothsomely besmeared with the bloud: they weare Bracelets of Copper or Iuory about their armes with Ostrich feathers and shels. The habit of women is like the former, which at our first coming seemed shamefast, but at our returne would impudently vncouer that which here must bee couered with silence; their breasts hang downe to their middles; Their haire is curled; Copper with them is Gold, and Iron Siluer: their Houses little Tents in the Fields, made of skins, at their pleasure remoued. On the high Hill called the Table may be seene an hundred miles about: some ascended and thence tooke obseruation of many Bayes and Riuers. Hee

50 thinkes these parts might be profitably planted with an English Colony.

One sayth u of this people, that they are idle, not so much as hauing a Canow, nor knowing to take eyther fowle or x fish, whereof they haue store; theeuish and swiftly running away with what which they haue stolne. By trading with the Dutch and English, their prices of things are raysed, as you here see, to some more Copper or Iron, then at the first Discoueries. Their Beasts are large, their Sheepe smooth and short haired (not woolly) like a young Calfe, with long and broad eares, hanged like Hounds; their hornes short and tender, easily broken; their tayles greater then any part of a mans legge, some weighing 40. pounds. Their Beeues are large, and most of them leane. The men haue but one stone, the other being cut away when they are young; the reason seemes to bee some reasonlesse Superstition to-

60 wards the Sunne, which they point vnto being demanded thereof. The *Hector* brought thence one of these Saluages, called *Cory*, which was x carryed againe, and there landed by the *Newyeares gift, Iune* 21. 1614. in his Copper Armour, but returned not to them whiles the

p Cap. *Roll. Conest.*

q *Prou.* 13 10.

Pat. Copland. In the *Dragon* 1612.

t *Samuel Castleton* saith, that Copper is in request with them and not Brasse.

s It was then Iune, which is their Winter. The people are said to haue their heads lothsome, as if they were couered with Kow dung, which is done by the iuyce of herbs.

t *Anonim. M.S.* Voyage, 1614.

u They will strike fish with their darts and then goe into the Sea for them. Cap. *Sarik. Nic. Withington* addeth, they are Negros woolly pared, flat nosed.

x *Martin Pring. Ben. Rep.*

the Ships continued in the Road, but at their returnes in *March* was twelue-moneth after, he came, and was ready to any seruice, in helping them with Beeues and Sheepe. The wilde beasts are dangerous in the night, as Lions, Antilopes and others, some of which in one night, carried away twelue pieces of meate, laid in the Riuer to water, couered with a stone of two hundred weight, which was remoued also a very great distance. The Pengwins in the Iland neere to Soldania, haue stumps in stead of wings, and with their feet swimme fast. There are Seales a thousand sleeping in an Heard, on the Rockes: Myce, and Rats, and Snakes innumerable. The weather in the midst of Winter is there temperate. Penguin Iland is North Northwest and an halfe West, three leagues from Soldania: and this fourteene leagues North Northeast from *Cape Bona Speranza*, and ten leagues North by West from *Cape Falso*, which is Eastwards from the former. The habitation of the Soldanians seemes moueable, and following the best pastures. There are fallow Deere, Porcupines, Land Tortoyses, Snakes, Adders, wild Geese, Duckes, Pellicans, Crowes with a white band about their necks, Pengwins, Gulls, Pintados, Alcatrasses, Cormorants, Whales, Seales, &c.

y M. Dowton.

HONDIVS his Map of Congo.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Kingdome of Congo, and the other Kingdomes and Nations adioyning.

§. I.

Of Angola.

THe Kingdome [a] of Congo (vnderstanding so much by the name, as in times past hath beene subiect thereto) hath on the West, the Ocean; on the South, the Caphars, and mountaynes of the Moone; on the East, those Hills from which the Riuers issue and runne into the Fountaynes of Nilus; and on the North, the Kingdome of Benin. Of these Countries, *Pigafetta*, [b] from the Relation of *Odoardo Lopez*, a Portugall, hath written two bookes, out of whom *P. du Iarric, Botero*, and others, haue taken most of their reports.

And in this we will begin with the most Southerly parts; in which wee first come into the Kingdome of *Metamo* (this is the Kings proper name) who being a Gentile, ruleth ouer diuers Prouinces, named Quimbebe. This is a Kingdome [c] great and mighty, extending from Brauagal to Bagamidri: the ayre thereof is wholsome, the earth ouerwarily furnished with store of fruits, towardly with mines of Crystall, and other metalls. The Signiories toward the Sea-coast are very meane, and want Hauens.

Angola sometime a Prouince of the Kingdome of Congo, is now a great Kingdome in selfe and very populous. They speake the same language (with small difference of dialect) that is vsed in Congo, whose yoake they cast off since the Congois became Christians. *Dugo A Cao* first discouered these parts for the Portugals *An.* 1486. And the Portugals vsed to trade quietly with the Angolans: but some of them trading as high into the Countrey as Cabazzi, the Royall Citie, which is an hundred and fifteene miles from the Ocean, were there by order from the King put to the sword, vnder pretence of intended treason. This was done 1578. *Paulo Diaz* (to whom the King *Sebastian* had giuen the gouernment of these parts a with licence to conquer three and thirtie leagues along the Coast to him and his heires) so reiteraue himself for this despight done to his people, armed such Portugals as he had, and with two Gallies and other Vessels, which he kept in the Riuer Coanza, hee went on both sides the Riuers, conquering and subduing many Lords vnto him. The King of Angola arrayed a mightie Armie of a million of men, [e] as is supposed. For they vse to leaue none at home, that is fit to carrie a weapon: and make no preparation for victuals, but such as haue auy, carrie it vpon the shoulders of their seruants, and therefore no maruell if their foode being soone consumed, their camps be soone dissolued. Small like wise is their prouision of armour for offence, and for defence much lesse. *Diaz*, sent to the King of Congo for aide, who sent him six thousand men: with which, and his own Nation, he made his partie good, against the confederates of the Angolans. The trade of Angola is yet continued, and from thence the Portugals buy aboue forty to Brasil, and other parts yearly, [g] a world of slaues which are brought within the Land, and are exceptions taken in their wartes. *Paulo Diaz*, at his death bequeathed to the Iesuites as much as might maintayne six hundred of that Society in those parts. Master *Thomas* [f] *Turner*, one that had liued a long time in Brasil, and had also beene at Angola, reported to me, that it was supposed eight and twentie thousand slaues (a number almost incredible, yet such as the Portugals do doubt) were yearly shipped from Angola and Congo, at the Haues of Luanda. He liued 30 me a rich Portugall in Brasil, which had ten thousand of his owne, working in his Ingenios, (of which he had eighteene) and in his other imployments. His name was *Iohn du Paui*, exiled from Portugall, and thus inriched in Brasil. A thousand of his slaues at one time, entred into conspiracie with nine thousand other slaues in the Countrey, and Barricadeed themselues for their best defence against their Masters, who had much adoe to reduce some of them into their former seruitude.

To returne to Angola, we may adde the report of another of our Countrey-men, [h] *Andrew Battell* (my neere neighbour, dwelling at Leigh in Essex) who serued vnder *Manuel de ya Sillueira Perera*, Gouernour vnder the King of Spaine, at his Citie of Saint *Paul*; and with him went farre into the Countrey of Angola, their Armie being eight hundred Portugals, and fiftie thousand Naturals. This *Andrew Battell* relateth, that they are all Heathens in Angola. They had their Idolls of wood in the midst of their towns, fashioned like a Negro, and at the foot thereof was a great heape of Elephants teeth, containing three or foure tuns of them; these

[a] *Maginus. Geo. Baier. Rer. part. 1. Marmol. l. 9. c. 24. & 25.*

[b] *Od. Lop. per Pigafet. transl. lated by A. H. P. du Iarric. Hist. Ind. Orien. l. 3. c. 1. & f. Geog. Ramus. lib. 1. cap. 7.*

[c] *Barr. Dec. 1. lib. 3. cap. 3. Od. Lopez. ibid.*

[d]

[e] *P. Diaz* (as some report) sent a present to Spaine of two Butts of Negros noses, which were slaine. *A. B. Iarric*, hath 120000.

[f] *Thom. Turner.*

[g] *Andrew Battell* was taken by the Portugals on the coast of Brasil, and shipped ouer to Congo, where (and in the Countries adiacent) hee liued very many yeeres, and was Sergeant of a Band, &c.

these were piled in the earth, and vpon them were set the sculls of dead men, which they had slaine in the warres, in monument of their victorie. The Idoll they call *Mokisse*, and some of them haue houses built ouer them. If any be sicke, he accounteth it *Mokisse's* hand, and sendeth to appease his angrie god, with powring wine (which they haue of the palme-tree) at his feet. They haue proper names of distinction for their *Mokisse's*, as *Kissungo, Kalikete*, &c. and vse to sweare by them, *Kissungo wy*, that is, *by Kissungo*. They haue another more solemne oath, in triall of Controuersies: * for which purpose they lay a kinde of Hatchet, which they haue, in the fire, and the *Ganga-Mokisse*, or *Mokisse's* Priest taketh the same red hot, and draweth it neere to the skinne of the accused partie; and if there bee two, hee causeth their legges to bee set neere together, and draweth this hot Iron withoue touching betweene them; if it burnes, that partie is condemned as guiltie, otherwise hee is freed.

* This triall is called *Matamba*.

For the ceremonies about the dead, they first wash him, then paint him, thirdly apparell him in new clothes, and then bring him to his graue, which is made like a vault; after it is digged a little way downe, vndermined, and made spacious within, and there set him on a seate of earth, with his beades (which they vse in chaines and bracelets for ornament) and the most part of his goods, with him in his lasting home. They kill Góats, and shed the blood in the graues, and powre wine there, in memoriall of the dead.

a *Od. Lopez.*

They are much giuen [a] to diuination by birds. If a bird flie on their left hand, or crie in some manner which they interprete ominous and vnluckie, they will cease from the enterprises which they haue in hand. Their Priests are [b] called *Ganga*, and so highly reputed, that the people thinke it in their power to send plentie or scarcitie, life or death. They are skilfull in medicinall herbes and in poysons; and by familiaritie with the Deuill foretell things to come.

b *Gi. Bot. Ben. part. 1. l. 3.*

In Angola euery man taketh as many wiues as he will. There are mines of siluer, and of most excellent copper. They haue many Kine, but loue dogs better then any other flesh, and fat them to the shambles. *Andrew Battell* saith, that the dogs in those Countries are all of one sort, prick-eared Curres of a meane bignesse, which they vse also to hunt with, but they open not; (for they cannot barke) and therefore they hang clappers made of little boords about their necks. Hee hath seene a Mastiffe sold for three slaues. *Lopez* affirmeth, that a great dogge was exchanged for two and twentie slaues; which might happen vpon some extraordinarie occasion. The money in Angola is glasse-beades, which they vse also, as is said, for ornament. The King of Angola hath seemed willing to become Christian, and hath sent to the King of Congo for that purpose, but could not obtayne any Priests in that scarcitie to instruct him.

Andrew Battell.

This Kingdome hath many Lordships subiect thereto, as farre on the Sea-coast as Cape Negro. Towards a Lake called *Aquelunda*, lyeth a Countrey called Quizama, the Inhabitants whereof being gouerned after the manner of a Common-wealth, haue shewed themselues friendly to the Portugals, and helped them in their warres against Angola. The houses in Angola are made in fashion like a Bee-hiue. The women at the first sight of the newe Moone, turne vp their Bummes, in despight, as offended with their menstruous courses, which they ascribe vnto her. The men sometimes in a valorous resolution, will deuote themselues vnto some haughtie attempt in the warres: and taking leaue of the King, will vow neuer to returne, till they bring him a horse-head, or some other thing very dangerous in the enterprise, and will either doe it, or die. Horse tayles are great jewells, and two slaues will bee giuen for one tayle, which commonly they bring from the River of Plate, where horses are exceedingly increased and growne wilde. They will by firing the grasse round about, hemme the horses about with a fierie circle, the fire still streighning and approching neerer, till they haue aduantage enough to kill them: Thus haue the European Cattell, of horse and kine, so increased in that other World, as they spare not to kill the one for their hides, and the other for their tayles.

§. II.

Of Congo.

* *Od. Lopez.*

NExt to Angola Northwards, * is the Kingdome of Congo, the westerne Line whereof *Lopez* extendeth three hundred threescore & sixteen miles, the Northern fiue hundred and tortie; the Eastern, fiue hundred; and the Southern three hundred and threescore. The breadth thereof from the mouth of Zaire, crossing ouer the Mountaynes of the Sunne, and the Mountaynes of Crystal, is six hundred miles: And yet is it much streightned of the ancient bounds, only the title except, which still holdeth the old stile;

Don

Don ALVARO *King of Congo, and of Abundos, and of Matama, and of Quizama, and of Angola, and of Cacongo, and of the seuen Kingdomes of Congere Auuolaza, and of the Longolungo, and Lord of the Riuer Zaire, and of the Anziques, and Anziquana, and of Loango.* The present Kingdome is diuided into sixe Prouinces, Bamba, Songo, Sundi, Pango, Batta, Pemba. Bamba is the chiefe for greatnesse and riches, then gouerned by *Don Sebastian Mani-Bamba*: the word *Mani* is a title of honour, and signifieth a Prince or Lord: when need requireth, the *Mani-Bamba* may haue in campe foure hundred thousand men of warre. There-in are mines of siluer; and on the Sea-coast a kinde of shells which they vse for money, for siluer and gold is not vsed for money amongst them. In this Prouince ay yeerely bought by 10 the Portugals about fiue thousand Negros. There are among them very mightie men that will cleaue a slaue in the middle, or cut off a Bulls head at one blow. Yea; one of them did beare on his arme a vessell of wine, contayning the fourth part of a Butt, and might weigh three hundred and fiue and twentie pound, vntill it was cleane emptied. There are certaine creatures as bigge as Rammes, and haue wings like Dragons, with long tayles and chaps; and diuers rowes of teeth, and feede vpon raw flesh. Thier colour is blue and greene, their skinne be-painted like scales, and they haue but two feet. These the Pagan Negros doe worship for gods, and at this day many of them are kept for a miracle. And because they are very rare, the chiefe Lords doe curiously preserue them, and suffer the people to worship them, in regard of the profit which accrueth to them, by the offerings which the people make vn-20 to them. Other creatures of these parts are mentioned in the first Chapter of the former Booke. Peacocks are not common, and are very deare, their feathers being vsed for Royall Ensignes. The King of Angola bringeth vp some in an inclosed wood, and sufferetb none to keepe them but himselfe. To speake at large of the other fiue Prouinces, would bee tedious to the Reader, and Master * *Hartwell* hath taught *Lopez* to speake English, of whom such as are desirous, may be further satisfied. Ouer-against the Ile Loanda, where the shell-money is gathered, is vpon the Continent, the Towne of Saint *Paul*, inhabited with Portugals and their wiues.

* Historie of Congo translated by *Abraham Hartwell*.

The Riuers of Congo are many; Bengo, Coanza, Dande, Lembe, Ozone, Loze, Ambriz, and the greatest of all, Zaire: all which haue some, either affinitie in mutuall marriages of 30 their streames, or consanguinitie in the Fountaynes from whence they flow, which are certayne Lakes, one of which is Zembre, the other Aquelunda. In all these Riuers are common the rarities of Nilus, the ouer-flowing of the waters, Riuer-horses, Crocodiles, and such like. *Andrew Battell* told mee of a huge Crocodile, which was reported to haue eaten a whole Alibamba, that is, a companie of eight or nine slaues chayned together, and at last payed for his greedinesse; the chaine holding him slaue, as before it had the Negroes, and by his vndigestible nature deuouring the Deuourer; remayning in the belly of him after he was found, in testimonie of this victorie. Hee hath seene them watch and take their prey, haling a Gennet, Man, or other Creature into the waters. A Souldier thus drawne in by a Crocodile, in shallower waters, with his knife wounded him in the belly, and slue him. In 40 their Summer it rayneth not, and then the places in their Winter (the time of the Sunnes neerest presence, attended with daily raynes) couered with water, doe grow thicke, and matted with abundance of little trees, herbes and plants, which the fatned wombe of that moist soile conceiueth by the directer beames of the Sunne, and the ouer-flowing waters in the Winter carry away, as it were small * Ilands; lifting them vp together with the rootes and soile, the young Trees and Deere standing and growing thereon, carried captiue vnto *Neptunes* eternall prisons. In Bengo and Coanza they are forced to set vp, for a time, houses vpon cratches, their other houses being taken vp for the Riuers lodgings. Zaire is of such force, that no ship can get in against the Current, but neere to the shore: yea it preuailes against the Oceans saltnesse threescore, and as some say, fourescore miles, within the Sea, be-50 fore his proud waues yeeld their full homage, and receiue that salt temper in token of subiection. Such is the haughtie spirit of that streame, which ouer-running the low Countries as it passeth, and swollen with conceit of daily Conquests, and daily Supplies, which in Armies of showres are by the clouds sent to his succour, runnes now in a furious rage, thinking euen to swallow the Ocean, which before he neuer saw, with his mouth wide gaping, eight and twentie miles, as *Lopez* affirmeth, in the opening; but meeting with a more Gianttlike enemie, which lyes lurking vnder the cliffes to receiue his assault, is presently swallowed in that wider wombe; yet so, as alwayes being conquered, hee neuer giues ouer, but in an eternall quarrell, with deepe indented frownes in his angrie face, foaming with disdayne, and filling the ayre with noyse (with fresh helpe) supplies those forces which the Salt-Sea 60 hath consumed. In this Riuer is a fish called Ambize Angulo, or Hog-fish, that hath, as it were, two hands, and a tayle like a target, which eateth like a Porke, and whereof they make Lard, and hath not the sauour or taste of fish. It feedeth on the grasse that groweth on

* They call these patches of ground thus carryed in Zaire, *Balsa's*. The Riuer Zaire.

on the bankes of the Riuer, and neuer goeth out: it hath a mouth like the mozell of an Oxe: there are of them that weigh fiue hundred pound a piece. Obseruing where it feedes, with weapons in their boats, they hinder it from taking water, and hauing taken it, present it to the King (it is vpon perill of life) they smoke it at wee doe Bacon, and reserue it for dainties.

About the yeere 1490. *Iohn* the second, King of Portugall, sent *Consalue di Sosa*, with three ships, and Preists in them, to bring the King and people of Congo to Christian Religion, which was effected: and although hence arose ciuill warres amongst them, yet the matter was at last ended to the aduancement of the Christian Religion (such as the Portugals taught, and no doubt, infinitely better then their Pagan superstition, howsoeuer spotted with many Romish staines) and from that time to this, now an hundred and twentie yeeres, hath Congo continued Christian, vnder *Iohn*, *Alfonso*, *Piedro*, and the rest of their Kings.

* Of the conuersion of Congo, reade *Io. de Barros. Dec. 3. l. 3. cap. 10.* and *Osorius de reb. Emanuel. lib. 3.* and *Maffeus Hist. Ind. lib. 1.* and *Lopez. l. 2.* and *Gott. Arthus Hist. Ind. Orientalis. cap. 14. 15. 16. 17. Iarric. &c.*

When the first Bishop of Saint *Thomas* went into Congo, to take possession of his Pastorall charge (here (for the Kingdome of Congo was annexed to the Bishoprick of Saint *Thomas*) from the Sea-side to the Citie, which is an hundred and fiftie miles, King *Piedro* caused the wayes to bee made smooth and trim, and couered ouer with mats, that the Bishop should not set his feet vpon any part of the ground, not adorned: all the wayes, trees, and higher places swarming with people, offering Lambes, Kids, Chickins, Partridges, Venison, Fish, and other necessaries, to testifie their zeale. And at last arriuing at the Citie of Saint *Saniours* (before called *Banza*, which signifieth a Court, and is commonly attributed to all the chiefe Cities, where the King of any of those Countries holdeth his residence) hee was there receiued by the King and his Nobles, and ordayned the Church there to bee the Cathedrall Church of his See, which had belonging to it eight and twentie Canons, with other Officers, and Ornaments vsuall.

§. III.

Of their Heatheish rites: Also of their strange Trees, and of the Ile Loanda.

AFter *Don Piedro* succeeded *Francisco*, and after him, *Diego*: who being dead, his sonne and two other Competitors of the Kingdome were slaine, and *Henrico* brother to *Diego*, was made King, and after his death, *Aluaro*, whom the *Gracchos* raue out of his Kingdome, till King *Sebastian* sent *Francisco di Gouea* to expell them.

The greatest, and most zealous Prince for Christian Religion, was *Alphonso*, who, on paine of death, forbade to all his subiects the hauing, or worshipping of Idols, which he commanded should be all brought, and deliuered to the Lieutenants of the Countrie, together with their Characters and Witcheries. For before euery * man adored that which best liked him: some, those Dragons before spoken of: others, Serpents, which they nourished with their dainriest prouisions. Some worshipped the greatest Goats they could get; some, Tigres; and the more vncouth and deformed any beasts were, the more in their beastly and deformed superstition were they obserued. Bats, Owles, and Scritch-owles, birds of darknesse, were the obiects of their darkned deuotions: Saakes and Adders enuenomed their soules, with a more deadly poyson, then they could doe their bodies. Beasts, Birds, Herbes, Trees, Characters, and the formes of those things painted and grauen, yea the skinnes of them, being dead, stuffed with straw, had their shares in this diffused varietie, and confused masse of irreligious religion. The ceremonies they vsed to them, were, kneeling on their knees, casting themselues grouelling on the earth, defiling their faces with dust, verball prayers, reall offerings. They had their Witches, which made the people beleeue that their Idols could speake: and if any man had recouered of any sicknesse, after hee had recommended himselfe to them, they would affirme that the angrie Idoll was now appeased. All these Idols King *Alphonso* caused to be burned in one heape, in stead whereof, the Portugals gaue them Images of Saints and Crucifixes to worship. This may seeme an exchange rather, then a ceasing from superstition, were not some fundamentall substance of Truth communicated (besides those blinde shadowes) wherewith, no doubt, God draweth some out of darknesse (this darknesse notwithstanding) in a true and sauing, though a dim and shadowed light; wherewith as farre going before vs in affection, as we before them in knowledge; I dare not but in the hope of saluation of some, thanke God for this glimpse of heauenly light, rather then rashly to censure and sentence them to a totall and hellish darknesse.

* Lopez.

Emanuel

Emanuel since sent supplies of religious persons, to confirme them in their Christianitie, and his sonne, *Iohn* the third sent also Iesuites to that purpose, whose erected Schooles among them: and they also send their sonnes into Portugall to learne the Sciences and knowledge of Europe. God Almighty grant that those Fountaines may be clensed of all Popish mire, that thence more wholesome waters may flow, to the watering of this Ethiopian Vineyard.

a *Maff. hist. Ind. l. 3. & 15.*
b *Arthus c. 15. Linschot. lib. 2.*

They vse in Congo [b] to make cloathes of the Enzanda tree, of which some write the same things that are reported of the Indian Fig-tree, that it sends forth a hairy substance from the branches, which no sooner touch the ground, but they take root and grow vp, in such sort, that one tree would multiply it selfe into a wood (if Nature set not some obstacle.) The innermost barke of the Inzanda, by beating, is made excellent cloth. Other trees there are, which the Tides cover, and are discouered by the Ebb, laden at the root with Oysters. But more admirable is that huge tree called Alicunde, of which my friend *Andrew* [c] *Battell* supposeth some are as bigge (besides their wonderfull tallnesse) as twelue men can fathome. It spreds like an Oake. Some of them are hollow, and the liberall clouds into those naturall Caskes dispersse such plenty of water, that one time three or foure thousand of them, in that hote Region, continued foure and twenty houres at one of those trees, which yeelded them all drinke of her watery store, and was not emptied. Their Negros climed vp with pegs (for the tree is smooth, and therefore not otherwise to be climbed, and so sore, that it easily receiued pegs of a harder wood, driuen into her yeelding substance with a stone) and dipped the water, as it had been, out of a Well. He supposed that there is forty tunne of water in some one of them. It yeeldeth them good opportunitie for honey, to which end the Countrey-people make a kinde of Chest, with one hole into the same, and hang it vpon one of these trees; which they take downe once a yeere, and with fire or smoke chasing, or killing the Bees, take thence a large quantitie of honey. Neither is it liberall alone to the hungry and thirstie appetite, but very bountifully it cloathes their backs, with the barke thereof, which being taken from the yonger Alicundes and beaten, one fathome which they cut out of the tree, will by this meanes extend it selfe into twenty, and presently is cloth fit for [d] wearing; though not so fine as that which the Inzanda tree yeeldeth. It serues them also for boats, one of which cut out in proportion of a Scute, will hold hundreths of men.

c *Andr. Battell.*

d *Linschot. Lib. 2.*

Lopez. These boats, saith *Andrew Battell*, are made of another tree, for the Alicunde is of too spunge a substance for that purpose.

Of their Palme-trees, which they keepe with watering and cutting euery yeere, they make Veluets, Sattens, Taffatas, Damasks, Sarcenets, and such like, out of the clensed and and purged leaues thereof, drawing long and euen threds for that purpose.

And for their Palme-wines, which they draw out of the top of a kind of Palme, which at first is strong and inebriating wine, and in time declineth to a sowre and holesome vineger: of the stone of the fruit, which is like an Almond, they also make bread, of the shale of the fruit, Oyle, which also seruetb them for Butter: *Lopez* distinguisheth this tree from the Coco tree, which is there also growing: and another Palme that beareth Dates: others that beare Cola, like a Pine-apple, excellent for the stomacke, and for the Liuer most admirable: it being supposed that the Liuer of a Hen or other Bird, putrified, sprinkled with this matter, recouereth the former freshnesse and soundnesse. Other sorts of Palmes yeeld other fruits, and of their leaues they make Mats, wherewith they couer their houses. *Lopez* saw a Pomecitron, the kernell whereof left within the rinde, yeelded a pretty tall sprigge in foure dayes.

Of stones they haue such store to build with, that in some places they may cut out a Church of one piece. There are whole Mountaines of Porphorie, of Iaspar, of white Marble, and other Marbles: one especiall, that yeeldeth faire Iacinths, that are good Iewels, straked like as it were with naturall veines.

The Port and Ile of Loanda lying ouer against the Portugall Towne of Saint *Paul*, (about twenty miles in circuit) famous for many things, deserueth especiall mention for this, that it yeeldeth, in lesse then halfe a yard digging, Waters very sweet: but of so contrarie a Nature to the Sea, her mighty neighbour, that when the Sea ebbeth, the water is Salt, and when it floweth, the same is sweet and fresh: as if the Sea imparted that which it selfe hath not, or rather enuied that which he hath, and therefore alway at his comming, re-demandeth that saltnesse from those springs to attend vpon their Ocean-mother. So doe wee see the Siluer Lampes of Heauen in the Sunnes absence to lighten the World, which yet want light, when it is most plentifull, to shew themselues. Euen Nature sealeth and confirmeth Monopolies to her principall Courtiers, alwayes prouided, that it thereby better seruetb for the *Common good*, and therefore no precedent to such Dropsie and spleen-like Monopolies, Mony-pollings, with which some exorbitant members burthen themselues, and make others by lighting, heauy, worthily therefore by the Sun of our Great Britaine, at the first rising of his morning brightnesse, dispersed from our Horizon. But how fare is Loanda from Britaine? And yet our scope is to bring Loanda and all the

Monopolies.

World else into our Britaine; that our Britaines might see the in and outside of the same. Loando is reported (as some affirme of Egypt and Nilus to bee the issue of the Oceans sand, and Coanzo's mire, which in processe of time brought forth in their disagreeing agreement, this Iland.

In Congo the King is Lord Supreme: and none hath power to bequeath his goods to his kindred, but the King is heire generall to all men.

CHAP. X.

Of Loango, the Anzichi, Giachi, and the great Lakes in those parts of the World.

§. I.

Of Loango.

IT followeth in the course of our Discourse, to set you on shore in Loango, the Northerly neighbour of Congo, right vnder the Line, a whose Countrie stretched two hundred miles within Land. The people are called *Bramas*, the King, *Mani Loango*; sometimes, as report goeth, subiect to the King of Congo. They are Circumcised after the maner of the Hebrews, like as also the rest of the Nations of those Countries vse to bee. They haue aboundance of Elephants, and weare cloathes of Palme. *Andrew* b *Battell* liued amongst them two yeares and a halfe. They are, saith he, Heathens, and obserue many Superstitions. They haue their *Mokisso's* or Images, to which they offer according to the proportion of their sorts and suits: The Fisher offereth fish, when he goeth for his helpe in his fishing; the Countrey-man, Wheat; the Weaver, Albuingo's, pieces of cloth; other, bring bottles of wine: all wanting that they would haue, and bringing what they want, furnishing their *Mokisso*, with those things, whereof they complaine themselues to be dis-furnished.

a *Lopez. l. 2. c. 5.*

b *Andrew Bat.*

Their Ceremonies for the dead are diuers. They bring Goats and let them bleed at the *Mokisso's* foot, which they after consume in a Feasting memoriall of the deceased party: which is continued foure or fiue dayes together, and that foure or fiue seuerall times in the yeere, by all of his friends and kindred. The dayes are knowne, and though they dwell twenty miles thence, yet they will resort to these memoriall-Exequies, and beginning in the night will sing dolefull and funerall songs till day, and then kill, as aforesaid, and make merry. The hope of this, maketh such as haue store of friends, to contemne death; and the want of friends to bewayle him, makes a man conceiue a more dreadfull apprehension of Death.

Their conceit is so ratified with superstition, that many dye of none other death. *Kin* is the name of vnlawfull and prohibited meat, which according to each kindreds deuotion, to some Family is some kinde of Fish; to another, a Hen; to another, a Busse; and so of the rest: in which, they obserue their vowed abstinence so strictly, that if any (though at vnawares) eate of this *Kin*, he would dye of conceit, alway presenting to his accusing conscience the breach of his vow, and the anger of *Mokisso*. Hee hath knowne diuers thus to haue died, and sometimes would, when some of them had eaten with him, make them beleeue, that they had eaten of their *Kin*, till hauing sported himselfe with their superstitious agony, he would affirme the contrary. They vse to set in their Fields and places where Corne or Fruits grow, a Basket with Goats-hornes, Parrats feathers, and other trash: This is the *Mokisso's* Ensigne, or token that it is commended to his custodie; and therefore the people very much addicted to theft, dare not meddle, or take any thing. Likewise, if a man, wearied with his burthen, lay it downe in the high-way, and knit a knot of grasse, and lay thereon; or leaue any other note (knowne to them) to testifie, that hee hath left it there in the name of his Idol, it is secured from the lime-fingers of any passenger. Conceit would kill the man that should transgresse in this kinde.

In the Banza, or chiefe Citie, the chiefe Idol is named *Chokoke*. Euery day they haue there Market, and the *Chokoke* is brought forth by the *Ganga*, or Priest, to keep good rule, and is set in the Market-place, to preuent stealing. Moreouer, the King hath a Bell c, the strokes whereof found such terrour into the heart of the fearfull thiefe, that none dare keepe any stolne goods after the sound of that Bell. Our Author inhabited in a little Reed-house, after the

c Recouerie of stolne goods.

the Loango manner, and had hanging by the wals, in a Cloth-case, his Piece, wherewith hee vsed to shoot Fowles for the King, which, more for loue of the Cloth then for the Peece, was stolne. Vpon complaint, this Bell (in forme like a Cowbell) was carried about & rung, with proclamation to make restitution; and he had his Peece the next morning let at his doore. The like another found, in a bagge of Beads of a hundred pound weight, stolne from him, and recouered by the sound of this Bell.

They haue a dreadfull and deadly kind of tryall in Controuersies, after this manner: There is a little Tree, or Shrub, with a small Root (is called *Imbunda*) about the bignesse of ones thumbe, halfe a foot long, like a white Carrot. Now when any listeth to accuse a Man, or Family, or whole Street, of the death of any of his friends, saying, That such a man bewitched him, the *Ganga* assembleth the accused parties, and scrapes that Root, the scrapings wherof he mixeth with water, which makes it as bitter as gall (hee tasted of it:) one Root will serue for the tryall of a hundred men. The *Ganga* brewes the same together in Gourds, and with Plantine stalkes hitteth euery one, after they had drunke, with certaine words. Those that haue receiued the drinke, walke by, till they can make Vrine, and then they are thereby freed. Others abide till either Vrine frees them, or dizzinesse takes them: which the people no sooner perceiue, but they cry *Vndoke, Vndoke*, that is, naughty Witch: and hee is no sooner fallen by his dizzinesse, but they knocke him on the head, and dragging him away, hurle him ouer the Cliffe. In euery Liberty they haue such Tryals, which they make in cases of Theft, and death of any person. Euery weeke it fals out that some or other vndergoes this tryall, which consumeth multitudes of people.

a Tryall of suspected persons.

There be certaine persons called Dunda, which are borne of Negro-Parents, and yet are, by some vnknowne cause, white. They are very rare, and when such happen to be born, they are brought to the King, and become great Witches: They are his Councellors and aduise him of lucky and vnlucky dayes for execution of his enterprises. When the King goes any whither, the Dundas goe with him, and beat the ground round about with certaine Exorcismes, before the King sits downe, and then sit downe by him. They will take any thing in the Market, not daring to contradict them.

Kenga is the landing place of Loango. They haue there an Idol called *Gombiri*, and a holy House, called *Munsa Gombiri*, kept and inhabited by an old woman; where once a yeere is a solemne Feast, which they celebrate with Drummes, Dances, and Palme-wines: and then they say hee speaketh vnder the ground. The people call him *Mokissa Cola*, or a Strong *Mokisso*, and say, That he comes to stay with *Chekoke*, the Idol of Banza. That *Chekoke* is a Negro-Image, made, sitting on a stoole: a little house is there made him: They annoint him *Tecola*, which is a red colour made of a certaine Wood b ground on a stone, and mixed with water, wherewith they dayly paint themselues, from the waste vpwards, esteeming it great beauty: otherwise they account not themselues ready. It is for like purpose carried from hence to Angola. Sometimes it fals out, that some Man or Boy is taken with some sudden *Enthusiasme*, or rauishment, becomming mad, and making a whooping, and great clamours.

b This seemeth to be Red Sanders. *A Bat*, saith it: *Lego* wood.

They call them *Mokisso-Moquat*, that is, taken of the *Mokisso*. They cloath them very handsome, and whatsoeuer they bid in that fit (for it lasteth not very long) they execute as the *Mokissos* charge.

Morumba is thirty leagues Northwards from hence, in the *Maui Loango's* Dominion; where he liued nine moneths. There is a House, and in it a great Basket, proportioned like to a Hiue, wherein is an Image called *Morumba*, whose Religion extendeth far. They are sworne to this Religion at ten or twelue yeares old: but for probation are first put in a House, where they haue hard diet, and must be mute for nine or ten dayes, any prouocation to speake notwithstanding. Then doe they bring him before *Morumba* and prescribe him his *Kin*, or perpetuall abstinence from some certaine meat. They make a cut in his shoulder like to an halfe Moone, and sprinkle the bloud at *Morumbas* feet, and sweare him to that Religion. In the wound they put a certaine white powder, in token of his late admission; which so long as it continueth, doth priuiledge him to take his meat and drinke with whomsoeuer he pleaseth, none denying him the same, at free cost. They also haue their fatall Tryals before this Image, where the accused partie kneeling downe, and clasping the Hiue, saith *Mene quasa cabamba Morumba*, signifying: That he comes thither to make tryall of his innocence; and if he be guiltie, he fals downe dead; being free, he is freed. *Andrew Battell* saith, hee knew six or seuen, in his being there, that made this tryall.

§. II.

Of the Anzigues.

a *Od. Lopez. l.1. cap.5.*

BEyond the Countrey of Loango are the *Anzigues* [a], the cruellest Canibals which the Sunne looketh on. For inother iplaces they eate their enemies, or their dead; but here they take and eate their kinsfolkes and Country-folkes. They keepe Shambles of mans flesh, as wich vs of Beefe and Muttons. They eate their enemies: Their slaues (if cut out, they will yeeld them more in the seuerall Iounts, or Pieces, then to bee sold aliue) they kill, though it be but to saue a halfe-peny. Some, of them for wearinesse of life, and some (oh cruelties of vaine-glory) euen for valour of courage, in contempt of Death, and esteeming it an honorable proofe of their fidelitie and manhood, will offer themselues to the Butcherie, as faithfull subiects vnto their Princes, of them to bee consumed and eaten, that with their death, and after their death, they may doe them seruice.

These *Anzichi* stretch from Zaite to Nubia. They haue many Mines of Copper, and great quantitie of Sanders, red and gray; wherewith (mixed with the Oyle of Palme-tree) they anoint themselues. The Portugals temper it with Vineger, for the healing of the French Pocks: by the smoke thereot they driue away the head-ache. It is incredible, or at least would so seeme to vs, which *Lopez* reporteth, that they carrying their arrowes (which are short and slender, of very hard Wood) in the Bowe-hand, will shoot off eight and twenty (so many they hold at once) before the first of them fall to ground; and with a short Hatchet, with a sudden whirling themselues about, breake the force of the enemies Arrowes, and then hanging this Hatchet on their shoulder, discharge their owne Arrowes. They are of great simplicitie, loyaltie, and fidelitie, and the Portugals more trust them then any other slaues. They are yet sauage and beastly, and there is no conuersing with them: but they bring slaues of their own Nation, and out of Nubia to Congo to sell; for which they recartie Salt, and Shels, which they vse for Money; Silkes, Linnen, Glasses, and such like.

b All the Heathen Nations in these parts of Africa are circumcised.

c *Cap.10.*

d *G. Ba. Ben. part.1.l.3.*

They [b] circumcise themselues, and besides that, both men and women, of the Nobility and and Comminaltie, from their childhood marke their faces with sundry slashes made with a knife. I asked (saith [c] *Lopez*) of their Religion, and it was told mee that they were Gentiles; which was all I could learne of them. They worship the Sunne for the greatest God, as though it were a man; and the Moon next, as though it were a woman. Otherwise euery man chuseth to himselfe his owne Idol; and worships it after his own pleature. The *Anzichi* [d] haue one King principall, which hath many Princes vnder him.

Of Ambus and Medera, Northerne Regions, little besides the names is knowne. Biafar is inhabited with people much addicted to Enchantments, Witchcrafts, and all abominable Sorceries.

§. III.

Of the Giacchi or Iagges.

c *Lopez l.1.c.13. & l.2.c.9.*

OF the *Giacchi* we haue made often mention, and of their incursions into Congo. These, in their owne Language, are called *Agag*, as *Lopez* [c] testifieth, and liue on both side of Nilus, in the borders of the Empire of Mohenhe-Muge. They vse to marke themselues about the lip, and vpon their cheekes, with certaine lines which they make with iron instruments, and with fire. Moreouer, they haue a custome to turne their eye-lids backwards, so that their blacke skins, white eyes, and cauterized markes seeme to conspire a dreadfull aud gastly deformitie in their faces. They hold warre with the [d] supposed Amazones; and of late yeeres haue inuaded the neighbour-Nations. Their weapons are Darts; their food humane flesh, without all humanity deuoured.

e These Amazones are (as we haue obserued) doubted of in other places: and *And. Battel*, which travelled neere to those parts, denyeth this report o *Lopez* as vntrue.

Thus *Lopez* reporteth by reports. *Andrew Battel* liued (by occasion of the Portugals treachery) with the Iagges a longer time then euer any Christian, or White Man had done: namely, sixteene moneths: and serued them with the Musket in their warres: neither could *Lopez* (saith he) haue true intelligence whence they came. For the Christians at that time had but vncertaine coniectures of them: neither, after had the Portugals any conuersing, but by way of commerce: but he being betrayed, fled to them for his life, and after by stealth escaped from them: the onely European that euer liued in their Campe.

He saith; they are called *Iagges* by the Portugal, by themselues *Imbangolas* (which name argues them to be of the Imbij & Galæ before mentioned) and came from Sierra Liona: That they are exceeding deuourers of mans flesh, for which, they refuse Beefe and Goats, whereof they

they take plenty. They haue no setled habitation, but wander in an vnsetled course. They rise in Harvest, and inuading some Country, there stay as long as they find the Palmes, or other sufficient meanes of mayntenance, and then seeke new aduenture. For they neyther plant or sowe, nor breed vp Cattle: and which is more strange, they nourishe vp none of their owne children, although they haue ten or twenty wives a man, of the properest and comeliest slaues they can take. But when they they are in trauell, they digge a hole in the Earth, which presently receiueth in that darke prison of death, the newborne Creature, not yet made happy with the light of life. Their reason is, that they will not bee troubled with education, nor in their flitting wanderings be troubled with such cumbersome burthens.

10 Once, a secret Prouidence both punisheth the Fathers wickednesse, and preuenteth a vi-
perous Generation, if that may bee a preuention where there is a succession without Gene-
ration: and as *Plinie* c saith of the *Essoni, Gens aeterna est in qua nemo nascitur.* For of the con-
quered Nations they preferue the Boyes from ten to twenty yeeres of age, and bring them
vp, as the hope of their succession, like *Negro Azimoqli*, d with education fitting their de-
signes. These weare a Collar about their necke, in token of slauery, vntill they bring an E-
nemies head slaine in battaile, and then they are vncollared, freed, and dignified with the ti-
tle of Souldiers. If one of them runnes away, he is killed and eaten. So that hemmed in be-
twixt hope and feare, they grow very resolute and aduentrous, their Collars breeding shame,
disdaine, and desperate fury, till they redeeme their freedome, as you haue heard. *Elembe*
20 the great Iagge brought with him twelue thousand of these cruell Monsters from Sierra Li-
ona, and after much mischiefe and spoyle settled himselfe in Benguele, twelue degrees from
the Line Southwards, and there breedeth and groweth into a Nation. But *Kelandula*, sometime
his Page, proceeds in that beastly life before mentioned, and the people of *Elembe* by great
troupes runne to him, and follow his Campe in hope of spoyle. They haue no Fetisso's, or I-
dols. The great Iagge or Prince, is Master of all their Ceremonies, and is a great Witch. I
haue seene this *Kelandula*, (layth our Author) continue a Sacrifice from Sun to Sun, the rites
whereof are these: Himselfe sat on a stoole in great pompe, with a Cap adorned with Pea-
cockes feathers (which fowles in one Countrey called *Shelambanca*, are found wild, and in
one place empaled, about the graue of the King, are fifty kept and fed by an old woman, and
30 are called *Iugilla Mokisso*, that is, Birds of Mokisso.) Now, about him thus set, attended
forty or fifty women, each of them weauing continually a Zebras tayle in their hands. There
were also certaine Gangas Priests or Witches. Behind them were many with Drummes and
Pipes, and Pungas (certaine Instruments made of Elephants teeth, made hollow a yard and
halfe, and with a hole like a Flute, which yeeld a lowd and harsh sound, that may bee
heard a myle off.) These strike, and sound, and sing, and the women weaue (as is said) till
the Sunne be almost downe. Then they bring forth a pot, which is set on the fire with leaues
and roots, and the water therein: and with a kind of white powder, the Witches or Gan-
gas, spot themselues, one on the one cheeke, the other on the other; and likewise their fore-
heads, temples, brests, shoulders, and bellies, vsing many inchanting tearmes, which are hol-
40 den to be Prayers for Victory. At Sun-set a Ganga brings his Kissengula, or War-hatchet, to
the Prince (this weapon they vse to weare at their girdles) and putting the same in his hand,
bids him be strong, their God goes with him, and he shall haue victory. After this they
bring him foure or fiue Negros, of which, with a terrible countenance, the great Iagge with
his Hatchet kils two, and other two are killed without the Port. Likewise, fiue Kine are
slaine within, and other fiue without the Port; and as many Goats, and as many Dogs, af-
ter the same manner. This is their Sacrifice, at the end whereof all the flesh is in a Feast
consumed. *Andrew Battle* was commanded to depart when the slaughter began; for their
Deuill, or Mokisso (as they said) would then appeare and speake to them. This Sacrifice is
called *Kissembula*; which they solemnize when they attempt any great enterprize. There
50 were few left of the naturall Iagges, but of this vnnaturall brood the present succession
was rayled.

c *Plin. l. 5. c. 31*

d *Azimoqli* are the children of Christians taken from the Parents by the Turke, the spawne of their Ianizaries.

The Sacrifices & Ceremonies of the Iagges.

§. IIII.

Of the Lakes and Riuers in these parts of Africa.

60 NOw, that we haue thus discourfed of these former Nations, let vs take view of the more in-land and Easterly borders, which abut on Congo: where wee shall finde the great Lake Aquilunda, which, with her many Riuers aforesaid, watereth all that great Countrey assisted therein by a farre greater Lake, called Zembre, great Mother, and chiefe Ladie of the Waters in Africa. As for the Mountaynes of the Moone, now

now called Toroa, there is a Lake called Gale, of no great quantity, whence issueth a Riuer named Camissa, and by the Portugals, the sweet Riuer disemboquing at the False Cape, an arme whereof had before entred the Sea (in 32. degrees 40. minutes) of *Infante* t one of *Dias* his companions, in the first Discouery of those parts, called *Infante*, because hee there went first on Land. But from those Hils of the Moone, the Lake whence Nilus springeth hath no helpes. Neyther are there two Lakes, East and West, distant from each other about foure hundred and fifty miles, as *Ptolemey* describeth; for then the one should be in the Confines of Congo and Angola, the other about Sofala and Monomotapa: where is found but one Lake (for Aquilunde is no tributary to Nilus.) This Lake is betweene Angola and Monomotapa, and containeth in Diameter 195. miles. There is indeed another Lake, which Nilus maketh in his course, but standeth Nortaward from the first Lake Zembre, and not in East or West parallel. Neyther doth Nilus (as some affirme) hide it selfe vnder the ground, and after rise again, but u runneth through monstrous and Desart Valleys, without any setled channell, and where no people inhabited, from whence that fabulous opinion did grow. This Lake is situate in twelue degrees of Southerly Latitude, and is compassed about like a Vault with exceeding high Mountaynes, the greatest whereof are called Cafates, vpon the East; and the Hils of Sal-Nitrum, and the Hils of Siluer on another side, and on the other side with diuers other Mountaynes. The Riuer Nilus runneth Northwards many hundred miles, and then entreth into another great Lake which the Inhabitants doe call a Sea. It is much bigger then the first, and containeth in breadth two hundred and twenty miles, right vnder the Equinoctiall Line. Of this second Lake, the Anzichi giue certaine and perfect intelligence: for they traffique into those parts. And they report, That in this second Lake there is a people that sayleth in great ships, and can write, and vseth number, weight and measure, which they haue not in the parts of Congo; that they build their Houses with Lime and Stone, and for their fashions and qualities may be compared with the Portugals. This seemeth to be in Goiame, where the Aoassine entitleth himselfe King, and in his title (as x before you haue read) cals it the Fountayne of Nilus: which *Alvares* y also mentioneth, that *Peter Couilian* saw. He affirmeth, That there are Iewes about those parts, which, perhaps are the people that the Anzichi speake of.

From this second Lake in Goiame, the Riuer which is there called Gihon passeth through the *Pretes* Dominion to Meroe, and so to Egypt, as elsewhere is shewed. In these two great Lakes are diuers Ilands, that we speake not of the Tritons, and other I know not what Monsters, there reported to be found. The Lake Zembre yeeldeth not Nilus alone, but Zaire, a farre more spacious Riuer in widenesse, and more violent in force then Nilus, or any other Riuer in Africa, Europe, or Asia, of which wee lately related. And, besides her Northerne and Westerne Tributes carried by those two Riuers to the Mediterranean and Ocean Seas, shee sendeth her great streames of Magnice, Coaua, and Cuama, into the inner or Easterne Ocean.

Magnice z springing out of Zembre, receiueth in his Voyage to the Sea three other Riuers; Nagoa, called Saint *Christophers*; and Margues, which both spring out of the Mountaynes of the Moone, by the people there called Toroa; the third is Arroe, which, besides his waters, payeth to *Neptune*, which ney ther needs nor heeds it, a great quantity of Gold, which it washeth from the Mountaynes of Monomotapa (a Countrey extending it selfe betweene Magnice and Cuama) whose seuen mouthes seeke to swallow vp many Ilands, which they hold in their iawes, but through greedinesse lose that which greedinesse makes them seeke, not able to swallow so great morsels, which therefore remayne and are inhabited with Pagans. *Boterus* sayth, That this Riuer runs out of that Lake, a great space in one Channell, and then is diuided into two; the one called *Spirito Sancto*, running into the Sea, vnder the Cape Coueni; the other Cuama, receiueth the Riuers Panami, Luangua, Arruia, Mangiono, Inadire, Ruina, and is sayled more then seuen hundred miles.

Coaua is also a great Riuer The Inhabitants within Land, about these Riuers, are (as you haue heard) Pagans and rude people. Let me now haue leaue to conuey my selfe downe this Riuer Coaua into the Ocean, and there take view of the many Ilands with which Nature hath adorned this African World, as with many Brooches and Iewels set and hanged about the fringes of her garments: and first, learning what we can of the Ilands in and from the Red Sea hither, we will in some Portugall Carricke sayle round about the African Coast, and acquaint you with what we shall find worthiest obseruation: and then not willing as yet to set foot in Lisbone, as we meete with the Fleet of Spaine sayling to the New-found World, will passe with them for further Discoueries. For, to goe into the Mediterranean to discouer the African Ilands there, will scarce be worth the while. To heare a little of those few, 60 may content vs.

Thus Authors haue written of the Riuers, which they neuer saw: but *Iohn dos Santos*, a Por-

t *Iodi Barros Dec 1. l. 3. c. 4. Od Lopez. l. 1. c. 8. Pigafetta.*

u I auerre not this, but set downe *Lopez* his opinion.

x *Cap. 3.*
y *F. Alvares. c. 3. 135.*

z *Od. Lopez. l. 1 cap. 9.*

G. Bot. Ben. part. 2. lib. 3.

Portugall Frier which liued many yeeres in those parts, hath giuen a fuller description of the Riuers and Coasts in those Easterne shores of Afrike. By whose narration it appeareth that Cuama and Nilus come not out of one and the same Lake: for Cuama ouerfloweth in March and Apill (not as Nilus in July and August) and makes the Countrey at that time sickly, and driueth the wild beasts to the higher parts, where Lions, Tygres, Elephants, Merus (a kind of horned Asses) Ounces, Rhinocerotes, Buffals, wilde Kine, and Swine, and Horses and Dogs, Zeuras & other creatures of those parts are assembled in a peaceable Parliament by the Riuers terrible summons, which so aweth them that (as somtime in *Noahs* Arke) they forget their preying nature, and quietly expect their dismission with that of the waters. Riuer horses there abound and Crocodiles: other strange Beasts, Birds, Fishes, and Wormes they haue with Manna and other naturall rarities, touching which I referre the Reader to the second part of my *Pilgrimes*, where the Relations of *Santos* and *Iobson*, will entertayne him frankly.

Santos also will there acquaint you with the description of the Riuers, Countrey, Mynes and people of those parts: their Kingdomes, Warres, Customes Politike, Oeconomike and Religious: the Portugall Ports of Sofala, Sena, Tete, and the Marts of Mallapa, Luanze, Manzono: the strange Rites of the Kings of Monomotapa, Quiteue, Sedanda and their Neighbours. The Quiteue is King of Sofala, and on that side of Cuama, & hath about 100. women, amongst which his Ants, Sisters, Daughters whom he carnally vseth (which inceist to a subiect were death) & when he dyeth, the Successor is he to whom those women giue peaceable and quiet possession of the Kings House and themselues. No force is made nor subiection yeelded vpon forced possession. The King thus by them receiued is not only admitted of the rest, but adored: yea, they aske of him raine, seasonable Harueft and all things they need, not without great Presents. He hath his Oracle-consultations with the Deuill, and euery yeere on the Obit day of the former King, the Deuill then entring into some one of the Assembly and giuing answers. Euery New Moone is a holy day, and the Musimos or Feast dayes which the Quiteue appoints by Proclamation, which they obserue without working. They otherwise worship no God, nor haue any Idoll, Image, or Temple, Priest or Sacrifice. They call the Quiteue by prodigious titles, Lord of the Sunne and Moone, and especially entitle him in all things *Great*, as great Thiefe, great Witch (none else are permitted to be Witches) great Lion, &c. good or bad, so as *Great* be the Epithet. The name Quiteue is common to all their Kings successiuely in that Countrey and to the Countrey it selfe. Their Oathes by Poyson, licking of hote Iron, &c. and other strange customes you shall find in the place aforesaid.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Seas and Ilands about Africa: the Ancient and Moderne Obseruations, Nauigations, and Discoueries.

§. I.

Of the Red Sea, and why it is so called.

AFter this long and tedious journey ouer Land, where the steepe and snowie Mountaynes, the myrie and vnwholesome Vallies, the vnpassable Wildernesses, swift Riuers, still Lakes, thicke Woods, and varietie of the Continentes observations, haue thus long whiled vs; let vs now by a swifter course take view of the African Seas, and those Ilands which they hold alway besieged, but neuer conquer. In the first place presents it selfe to our Discouery, that Sea which separateth (after the Moderne reckoning) Africa and Asia asunder. This is called the Red Sea; which name (sayth [a] *Plinie*) the Græcians call *Erythraeum* (this word signifieth Red, and is ascribed by some to a King named *Erythras* (whom *Postellus* [b] and some others thinke to be *Esau* or *Edom*, which, the like signification of his name signifying *Red*, and habitation nor very farre distant, make enough probable) by others to the repercussion of the Sunne-beames; by others, to the colour of the Sand and Earth (in the bottome;) and by others to the nature of the Water it selfe. *Solinus* [c] affirmeth, it is called *Erythraeum*, of King *Erythras*, the Sonne of *Perseus* and *Andromade*, and not only of the colour, alledging [d] *Varro*, that learned

a *Plin. l. 6. c. 23*
b *Post. Orig.*
c *Solin. p. 42.*
d *De Varro.*

ned Romane, for his Authour: who also mentioneth a Fountayne on the shoare thereof, which changeth the colour of the Sheepes fleeces which drinke thereof, into a duskish and darker colour. *Strabo* [e] citeth the testimony of *Nearchus* and *Orthagoras*, concerning the Ile Tyrina, two thousand furlongs from Carmania, in which the Sepulchre of *Erythras* is shewed, being a great Hill, planted with trees: and that he raigned in those parts, and left his name thereunto: which they learned of *Mithropastes*, who flying from *Darius*, had liued in that Island. *Barrius* [f] writeth, That *Alfonso Dalboquerque* (that victorious Portugall, who subdued so many Ilands, Seas, and Kingdomes to that Crowne) in a Letter to King *Emanuel* affirmeth, That it may be called the Red Sea, of certayne red spots or staines which are seene therein: and when he entred into the Streits, he encountred a great veine of red water, extending it selfe from Aden as farre as they could see from the ships tops. These red veines of water the Moores ascribed to the ebbing and flowing of that Sea. *John di Castro* [g] (afterwards Viceroy of India) sayled to the bottome of Streit, as farre as Suez; and much laboured to find the cause, why it should be called the [k] *Red Sea*: there knowne only by the name of the Sea of Mecca: and they maruelled much at our name *Red*. He, or *Gaspar Alonsius* which write the Booke of this Voyage, which my friend Master *Hakluyt* communicated to mee, sayth, that the colour of this Sea is as of other Seas, neyther is there red dust blowne in by the winds: but the Land generally on both sides is browne and very darke, as if it were scorched in some places blacke, and in some white: the Sands are of ordinary colour; onely, in three places were certaine Mountaynes with veines of red, which were hard Rocke. In many places the waues seeme very red by accident: but taking vp the water in a Vessell, out of the Sea, it seemed cleerer and more Crystalline then that without the Straits. He caused also some to dine, which did bring him out of the sandy bottome a red matter, branched like Corall. In other places where were greene spots in the Sea, were taken out greene branches: and where the Sea was white, the sand there vnder was very white: and though the depth in some places amounted to twenty fathome, yet the purity of the Chrystalline waters caused this transparent colour. Neere to Suachen he found most of those spots, and from thence to Aleocer, the space of one hundred thirty sixe leagues. The Sea in this space hath many shoaues, the ground whereof is Coral-stone, of which one sort is red, the other very white. The white Sands in the bottome make it seeme white, the Ooze greene, that Corally substance red, which in that space was the most of the three.

But neerer the bottome, towards Suez, in a great space hee saw none. Further without the Strait, he saw such red [i] spots or veines of water at Cape Fartach, as if Oxen had beene slaine there, yet, the water taken vp in a Vessell seemed cleere; and hee supposed that this rednesse proceeded of the Whales bringing forth their young. *Barrius* misliketh that coniecture, and those other of Antiquity, in searching the cause of this name of Red, and is of opinion, That the violent currents of the Tydes, assisted with some tempestuous winds, rayse vp from the bottome that red floore, whereof we haue spoken, and cause, by the motion of the same vnder the water, that rednesse in the vpper face thereof: which is in more spacious quantity neere the Straits, where there is greatest force of the Tydes; and the threeds or straines of this rednesse are lesse in the greater and more spacious Sea-roome. The Portugall Pilots first thought, that the winds brought out red dust from the dry soyle of Arabia, which no mans experience hath confirmed. *Andrea* [k] *Corsalis*, which sayled and warred vnder the Portugals in these Seas, *Anno* 1516. sayth, hee knowes not why it should be called red, for the water is coloured as in other Seas: which seemeth to crosse the former reports: and may eyther bee construed of the water generally not discoloured, or perhaps while hee was there, the Tydes and Winds did not conspire so boysterously, as at some other times they doe, against the yeelding and weaker soyle in the bottome thereof.

Our English Pilots haue giuen later and better light in their Trade at Mosha and other places, as in the first and second parts of our Bookes of Voyages is euidence. But the most learned Pilot for the *Erythrean* Antiquities is Master Fuller, who in the last Chapter of his fourth Booke examineth the Grecian Fables of *Agatharchides*, *Ctesias*, *Ouranius*, *Pausanias*, or *Bassus* also, *Mela*, *Plinie* and the rest, and at last concludeth that of *Esaus* name *Edom*, the Country was called *Edumea*, (farre larger then that of *Ptolomey*;) besides it containing a great part of *Petraea*, and all *Nabathea*) and of that Country consisting so great a part of that Sea (as appeares by *Salomons* and *Iehosaphats Ophyrian* Naues built at *Ezion Geber* in *Edumea* (their owne Country) the Sea adioyning was called *Edumean*, or in Greeke interpretation *Erythrean*, that is, *Rubrum* or Red: as *Cephas* the name properly by Christ giuen to the first of the Apostles, is commonly in a Greeke interpretation called *Peter*.

However it be for this rednesse, many deceiue themselues in stretching this name to the Arabian Gulfes, which the Ancients [l] gaue vnto all the Seas from Ægypt to India: and reckon the Persian and Arabian Gulfes, armes of the Red Sea. Yea, *Arrianus* (not hee that writ

e *Strabo l.16.*

f *Io di Barros. Dec. 2 l.8 c.1. Al. Alboquerke.*

g *Io. di Castro.*

h The Scripture often mentioneth this Sea: but calls it, as *Tremel* and *Iunius* translate *mare algosum*, or after *Vatablus*, *Coralliosum*; of the weeds plentifully growing there. in Ex.10.18. *&c.*

i See of this *Luis de Urreta. hist. Æthiop. l.1. c.11. & Marmol. l.10 c.10.*

k *A. Corsalis. l.2.*

l *Liu. l.45. Plinl. l.6. c.23.*

writ [n] *Alexanders* life, who yet in the report of *Nearchus* his voyage from Indus, to the Riuer Tigris, calis it the Red Sea: but another of that name) in his [o] *Periplus* of the *Erythræan Sea*; (translated and illustrated with a large Commentarie by *Stuckius*, and let forth by *Ortelius* in a peculiar Map thereof) comprehendeth in the title of the Red Sea, all from Arsinoe, and Egypt, to Malacca, or the *Chersonesus Aurea*. Hauing now troubled you with the name, why, and how farre the name extendeth: wee may view the Ilands therein situate: which if any would more fully know, let him reade *Arrianus* and *Barrius*, and the voyage of *Soliman Bassa*, 1538. vnto *Diu*, written by [p] *Damianus* in Latine, and by a Venetian in *Ramusius*, who was present in the action. I must but touch the principall.

n *Arrian de reb. alex. l. 8.*
o *Arr. ex Peripl. Ortelium Tepidum Rubens Tygrim immissci freto. Senec. Trans.*
p *Dam. a Goes. op. Diuersis. Viaggio di vn. Venet. Cam. to alla Cit. di Diu, Ramus. part 2.*

10

§. II.

Of the chiefe Townes and Ilands in the Red Sea.

SOEZ is neere the beginning of the Sea, which some suppose to bee that which the Ancients call Arsinoe, after others *Heroum*: here is the place where the Turke hath his Arsenal and Gallies, for those Seas, the matter whereof is brought out of Carmania, by Sea, by Nilus, and by Camels ouer Land the rest of the way, at incredible charges. Here in old times was a Channell which conueyed the waters of Nilus to this place, where they had Cisternes to receiue it; all destroyed by the Mahumetans: and now the inhabitants fetch the water, which they vse, six miles off. Some thinke that *Pharaoh* was here drowned: which passage others set downe at Tor, where the Sea is straitned, and is not aboue nine miles ouer. It seemeth that the prints of the Chariots wheeles, which *Orosius* [q] affirmeth still remayned as testimonies of *Pharaohs* ouerwhelming vnder those waues, and could not by any industrie of man be done out, but by the mightie hand of God, were sodne restored in the same forme; are not now there to bee found; for they would soone end the controuersie.

q *Oros. l. 2. c. 10.*

Asion Gaber [r] was a Port here hous, whence *Salomon* sent his Naui to *Ophir*, and after him *Iehosphaphat* [s], but not with like successe: which (*Iosephus* [t] saith) was Bergnice, not farre from Elana. *Heroum* calis it Esia. Doctor *Dee* writes that Ezion Geber was neere Ioth, or Elana, or Hoor, the East end of the Bay: the other which some call Soez, is higher.

r *1. Reg. 9. 26.*
s *1. Reg. 22. 48.*
t *Ios. Antiq. 18.*

Bernice [u] was the Port of the Red Sea, where the Indian drugs and spices in the time of the Romain Empire were vnladen and landed, to be carried thence to Alexandria, the whole course whereof *Plinie* [x] describeth. *Agatharchides* [y] reckoning diuers Etymologies of the *Erythræan* title, taketh best of that which ascribes it to one *Erythras*, who first built a ship to saile in those Seas, also gether distillowing that it should be so called of the colour. He hath written strange things of the people adioyning. Here nameth foure sorts of Ethiopians, according to their dwelling neere the Riuers, or Lakes, or Sea-coast, or wandring. Those on the Sea-coast, he saith, liue altogether on fish, which the Tyde brings vp, and leaues on the hollow places or plashes neere the shore: which they cast vpon hot Rocks, which cause the fishie substance to fall from the bones; this they tread with their feet, mixing the seede of Palmitus, and then make cakes thereof, which they drie in the Sunne, and eate all in common: and on the fift day goe to drinke, laying their mouthes to the water like Oxen, and sup in as much as their skins will hold, not able scarce to breathe, not eating any thing one day after. Some of those Ichthyophagi or Fish-eaters, which haue store of this prouision, contene themselues with the moysture of their diet, and drinke not at all. Some of them seeme subiect to an Apathie, not of Stoikes, but of stocks, not shunning or complaining for blowes or wrongs. But mee thinkes I see my Reader haue sense, and (not without reason) make complaints of wrong done him in these Relations: and therefore will restore them that will, to our Author himselfe.

u *Adrich p. 118*
x *Lib. 6. c. 33.*
y *Phot. 250. R. Brett. ex Diodul.*

Don Iohn de Castro can better acquaint vs with the later, then *Agatharchides* with the ancient state. Hee ascribeth to *Tore*, which he maketh the same with *Elana* 28. ½. degrees. They are Christians, and haue a Grecian Monasterie. He reporteth the Moores tradition, that *Moses* smote the sea twelue times, & thereby opened twelue paths for the *Israelites*: 600000. *Egyptians* were drowned: the *Iewes* arriued where Toro now is. At Bohalel Xame they found a Towne, within a house like a Chappell, where was hanging a Banner of silke, and many Arrowes or Darts found about the graue: at the head of the graue was a table with an Epitaph, testifying that there lay buried one of *Mahomets* kindred: and great indulgence was granted to such deuout Pilgrimes as to that place resorted. But the Portugals burnt it.

Ie. di Cas.

Hieronymo da Santto Stephano, related his voyage from Cairo in fifteene dayes to Cazze, and a good Port called Cane, finding many buildings and Temples ruined by the way: fourty dayes iourney they went from hence by land to Cosir a Hauen of the Red Sea. *Procopius*

H. Se. ap. Ramusio

faith,

Procop. de bell. Pers.

faith, that this Sea is boisterous and rough in the day time, and calme in the night: that Iotabis one thousand furlongs from Aila, was an Iland of *Iewes*: of which hee mentions among the Homerite Arabians (as doe *Nicephorus, Tudelensis*, and *Vertomannus* also) which hee extendeth alongst the Sea: and addeth to them many other Nations and *Man-eating Saracens*. What the Portugals have done in these Seas, *Barrius, Marmolus, Osorius, Maffæus*, relate.

Nonius Cugna in his Letter to the King, declares, that Anno 1530. they tooke Surrate, other pieces of Cambaya, and many Indian ships, and chased away the Turkes Naure which besieged Aden; and brought the King of Aden to pay yeerly tribute ten thousand Serafins. But the Turkes after obtayned it.

Nom. Cug. ap. Rosend.

d *G. B. B. Comito Venet. Ramus. part. 1. fol. 274.*

The length of this Arabian Gulfe d *Botero* reckons 1200. miles, in breadth 100. for the most part. *Comito Venetiano* in *Ramusius*, saith, it accounteth 1400. in length, in breadth 200. and in some places more; so full of shoalds, that if they keepe not the Channell in the midlest, there is no sayling but by day-light. Outwards bound, they keepe the middle, and haue Pilots for that purpose; homewards they haue other Pilots which direct the ship within the shallowes: and are taken in at *Babelmandel*, called by e *Ptolomey, Insula Diodori*, an Ile in the entrie or strait of the Gulfe, which *Strabo* saith, the ancient Kings of Egypt chayned to keepe the passage. Zidem is twelue leagues from Mecca, where the ships haue vsed to vnlade their Spiceries, as before at Berenice: without this Towne is a Moschee, which the Moores say is the Sepulchre of *Eua*. Their water is raine-water, reserued in Cisternes.

e *Ptol. lib. 4. cap. 1.*

Passing by the Ile Mehuit, the Ile Camaran is famous by the diuers spoiles there made by the Portugals: it is in fifteen degrees. This Iland (saith *Cossali*) is the hottest place that euer I saw: not one of vs, but had our secret parts chafed and frayed with heate: and many of our company died. Dalaqua is an Iland where they gather Pearles, 125. leagues long, twelue broad: it is the name also of the Metropolitan Citie. Betweene it and Abex (saith *Aloisius* in the Relation of *Castros* voyage) are fiue Ilands, one of which is called Xamos, the land of which is red; the King a Moore. Stacheri is the best harbour in the Gulfe, which the Turkes haue taken from the Abassine: it stands in nineteene degrees, and a third. Mazzua is an Iland which makes Ercocco a good Hauen. But of the Hauen and Ports on both sides the Gulfe, *Barrius* f relateth more largely. Of the Iles Achafas and Tuicce wee haue but names: likewise of others; whereof *Ptolemey* g doth number a great multitude. The people of these parts are Mahumetans, and many *Badabins*; hee detesteth all and theeuish Moores. Many Iewes are in Aden, the chiefe Towne of merchandize in these parts: the King whereof (after much kinde gratulation) *Sabynian Bassa* h sing vpon the yards arme: and at his returne dealt the like dole to the King of Zibit, subiecting their States vnder treacherous preiences to his Great Master. *Scaliger* i tells of Samaritans dwelling in an Iland of the Red Sea, which, when any man saluted them, would religiously forbid to touch them: but wee haue before mentioned both them and their Letters, supposed the most ancient in the world, howsoever *Postellus* calleth the present Hebrew letters eternall, and saith, that the Law was written in them: but that they were sacred, and not publikely know'ne till the time of *Esra*, who excommunicated the Samaritans and their Letters, first publishing (not inuenting) those which now are in vse.

f *Bar. Dec. 4. lib. 8.*

g *Ptol. l. 4. c. 8.*

h *Ios. Scaliger, Can. 15. Ios. de Orig.*

i *R. Couert.*

The *Ascension* k ascended into the Red Sea, *Anno* 1608. to Moha, which is a Citie of great Trade. And *Anno* 1612. diuers k English ships were together in the same Sea, where they somewhat auenged themselues for such wrongs as by the Turkes and Mogolls, or Mogors, had beene formerly offered to Sir *Henrie Middleton*, and other English men, as you haue read before l in our first Booke: as likewise of their finding the good Road of Assab on the Abassine shoare, and of the King of Rehita, which came riding to them on a Cow with a Turbant, and a Cuttle shell on his forehead, was drunken with *Aqua-vitæ*, but kinde to the English: and also of the strong Currents, and strange shining in the night by Cuttle-fish, not meete to bee repeated.

k *W. Hawkins.*

l *Lib. c. 14. §. 3.*

CHAP. III.

Of Socotora, Madagascar, and other Ilands on the Easterne coast of Africa.

IN the Ocean without the Strait, neere to the African shore, are not many Ilands mentioned by the Ancients. *Arrianus* in his *Periplus* speaks of seuen Ilands, called *Pyralaon*: & of another great Iland neere to them, called *Menuthesias*, or *Menuthias*, now called *Madagascar*, & Saint *Laurence*: some take it for the Iland of *Iambulus*, whereof *Diodorus* a hath largely related, and *Ramusius* b hath discoursed thereon: other seeke for that Iland in Sumatra. That *Iambulus* was a Merchant, which trading in Arabia for spices, was

a *Dio. Sic. lib. 3. cap. 13.*

b *Ramus. part. 1. by Ortelius Map of Arrianus Periplus.*

Iambulus Insula seemeth Iauamaior.

was taken by theeues, and made a shepheard: after carried away by Ethiopians; who tooke
these forrainers according to their Rites, to expiate their Countrey. For they were enioyned
by Oracle to make such expiation once in six hundred yeeres, wich two men that were for-
rainers. For the fulfilling whereof they were put in a Boat, fit for two men, with six moneths
the men liued a blessed life. And if they came safe thither, their Countrie should enioy pro-
speritie six hundred yeers: if they turned back, they should bring vpon them much trouble.
The Ethiopians meanewhile kept holy-dayes, and offered sacrifices for their good voyage,
which in foure moneths they atchieued: and were exceeding courteously vsed and entertay-
10 ned of the Ilanders. These were foure cubits higher then other men, very nimble and strong.
The reports of this his voyage sauour more of an [a] *Vtopia*, and *Plato's* [b] common-wealth,
then of true Historie. Yet as it thought (as *Ramusius* discourseth) not altogether fabulous,
but that he was indeed in some remote Iland, to which he applyed such fancies, as *Diodorus*
reporteth. To leaue there the certaine fictions and vncertaine coniectures of Antiquitie: and
come to more certaine Relations; the onely Iland of name without the Streit is, Socotora,
in thirteene degrees; of which we haue spoken largely aforedite, speaking of the Ilands of
Asia; yet if any will suffer vs to remember it againe amongst these of Africa (for it lies be-
tweene both) we may here mention what others, and somewhat otherwise, haue related.
Sanutus calls it Zacotora, and affirmeth that the Sands on the tops of the high Hills either in
20 haue no exemption from the windes: that the people are Nestorian Christians, which ob-
serue the Crosse with much deuotion, otherwise wanting Christian both Baptisme and Doc-
trine, and are circumcised: that the Moores say it belonged to the Amazons, in testimonie
whereof the women still weare the breeches, and gouerne amongst them. *Corsali* [c] thinkes
it vnknowne to *Ptolomey* (which others suppose to be his *Insula Dioscoridij*) hee saith that it
was inhabited of Christian shepheards, which liued on milke and butter: their bread was of
Dates: like to the people of *Prester John*, but their haire was longer, clothed with one onely
peece of cloth about their priuities: the Land barren, as in all Arabia *foelix*, and the Sea-
coasts gouerned by the Arabians. Hence commeth, and is named the *Aloe Socotrina* [d]. They
are *Iacobites*, and haue Churches with Altars, and obserue the Crosse with great reuerence:
30 they enter not their Churches, but stand in the Church-yard or Porch. Their *Abuna*, or
Priest, ruleth them. Other Gouernour they haue none of their owne. The Portugals haue
two Townes there, Coro and Benin. They [e] hold opinion that Saint *Thomas* here suffered
shipwrack: and that of his ship was built an ancient Church, which is yet to be seene, wal-
led about with three partitions, and three doores. They liue for the most part in cabbins of
boughs, or in caues: their women are as good Souldiers as the men. They are much addicted
to magick, and bring to passe matters incredible, although the Bishop excommunicate such
as vse it. They will with contrarie winde hinder men that indamage them, from saylingaa-
way. Conceited they are exceedingly of their owne excellence. The English haue often
traded in this Iland. Master *Downton* writes, that *Mully Amore Bensaide* hath long gouer-
40 ned there, as Vice-roy to his father the King of Fartac in Arabia, not farre from Aden. His
strength consists in his Arabs, the rest being slaues, which haue beene banished people. In
August they make their *Aloes Socotrina* of an herbe like *Semper viua* in Spaine, but bigger,
about a tun in a yeere. Their bread is Dates. This Iland, saith *Benjamin Day*, is in twelue de-
grees, barren, all rock and stones, almost no greene thing in the whole Iland, but Date-trees,
and some few shrubs and small trees, and Aloes. Out of the barke of a small tree being cut,
issueth a red gum, called *Sanguis Draconis*. The people the most obedient that euer he saw:
all the profits of the Iland is the Kings. Hee seemes kinde to the English, but no great trust
(if we trust Captaine *Saris*) to be reposed in him, as falsifying both word and weight. They
bought Goats there, which they found after to bee abused by the buggering-beastly people.
50 They bought Aloes 2720. pounds, as Master *Pring* reporteth, at thirtie Rials of eight their
hundreth, which makes of ours but 97. pounds. This was *An.* 1614. This Iland, hee saith,
is twentie leagues long: their King at ten Rials of eight: their Goats, Sheepe, Hens, all very
leane. The Inhabitants of a Mulla to colour, and some Negros, apparelled with a peece of
Calico about their waistes, and Turbants on their heads. The King in Turkish habit. He had
fiue Camels, and fiue Horses, which were all in the Iland. Tamarim and Delisha are harbours
and places of Trade there. Abadalenry is an Iland, fourteene leagues from Zacotora, from
whence it is fifteen leagues to Cape Guardafu. At Tamarind they had no rain in two yeers
together. Two small Iles lie to the North of Socotera, called the two Sisters: the Inhabi-
tants of an olue colour, without Law among themselues, or commerce with others. There
60 [f] are also those two Iles, the one of men, the other of women, which wee mentioned in our
fift booke, [g] a matter, how true I know not, but very strange. They are Christians, subiect
to the Bishop of Socotera, and he to the Zatoia in Baldach.

a Sir *Thomas More* *Vtopia*, Laying a Country and Common-wealth, in manerrog good to-reuue.

b *Plat. de repub.* *L. Sanut. lib. 12.*

c *A. Corsali, let. 2. was at* Soquotera. *Anno* 1516. *Nou. Cogna.*

d *Magimus.*

e *Pay* before *Leo. cap. de Ins. salis.*

Of these Ilands see my first part of Voyages in Sir *Tho. Roe*, Master *P. Nou*, Master *Finch* these Relations, and Master *Terry* in the second Part.

f *M. Polo, lib. 3. cap. 33. 34. Sanut.*

g *Cap. 13. pag. 438.*

Many

Many other Ilands there bee of no great name in that Sea, called *Sinus Barbaricus*: as of *Don Garcias* the three and the seuen brethren of Saint *Brandon*; Saint *Francis*, *Mascarenna*, *Do Natal*, *Comoro*, and many other besides those of *Quiloa*, *Mosambique*, and some other for their vicinitie to the Land before ilandled. The Ile of Saint *Laurence* (so called by the Portugals, by themselues, Madagascar) is meetest in all those parts, to entertayne the Readers obseruation, as being one of the greatest Ilands of the world. It contayneth in breadth foure hundred and fourescore miles, in length a thousand and two hundred: *M. Polo* c saith, the Inhabitants were Saracens, and were gouerned vnder foure Lords, eate Camels flesh, vse merchandize or arte. Thus farre did the Great *Can* stretch his Tattarian Dominion: and sent hither to spie the Land. That which *Polo* saith he heard of a bird in this Iland, called *Ruch*, so bigge as it could take vp an Elephant, hath no likelihood of truth. He calls it Madagascar. It is situate from seuenteene to six and twentie ½ of Southerly d latitude. Onely vpon the coast they are Mahumetans: within Land Idolaters, black, and like the Cafres: the soile yeeldeth Cloues, Ginger, and Siluer. It deserueth to haue better Inhabitants, if *Lanchoteo* e iudge rightly, hauing many faire and fresh Riuers, safe Harbours, plentie of fruits and cattell: therein are foure gouernments, each fighting against other. They vse not themselues to trade with others, nor suffer others to traffique with them. The Portugals haue some trade with them, but goe not on land. In the first discouerie of them by f the Portugals, 1506. they shewed themselues inhospitall and treacherous, rewarding receiued kindnesse, in their Canoas or Boats, made of the body of a tree, with shot. There are said to bee some white people, supposed to be of Chinian off-spring.

Of the people of Madagascar the Hollanders h report, that they are of colour blacke, strong, and well made: they couer their priuities with cotton: they haue large holes in their eares, in which they weare round sticks. They acknowledge one Creator, and obserue Circumcision, but know nothing of praying or keeping festiuals. They haue no proper names, whereby to distinguish one day from another: neither doe they number weekes, moneths, or yeares. Nor doe they number aboue ten. They are exceedingly afraid of the deuill (whom they call *Tanuaddes*) because he vseth often to affright them. They liue most what on fishing. They marrie but one wife: their time of marriage is, for the men at twelue; the women at ten yeares of age. Adulterie and Theft are punished with death. The men vse to hunt abroad, the women spin their Cottons at home, whereof they haue trees yeelding plentie. If any man kill any of his kind, all his neighbours may euasilenge part. *Cornelius Houtman* saith, they are sweet-spoken men. They haue a kinde of Branes or Lobos growing on trees, the cod whereof is two foot long. They haue a kind of seed, whereof a little makes foolish; a greater quantitie kill: herewith they betrayed and killed threescore and eight Hollanders, with their Captaine. The English haue had some knowledge of this Iland to their cost, as those of the *Vaion* before mentioned. But not trusting them too farre, they here finde good refreshing. Captaine *Downton* arriued there in the Bay of Saint *Augustine*, Aug. 10. 1614. and bought of them diuers Beeues at a reasonable rate. The people are tall and swart, their haire smooth and finely plaited: their weapons are darts, neatly headed with Iron. Their i cattell fairer then any k I haue seene, hauing on their fore-shoulders a lump of fat like the pomell of a saddle. Here were Tamarin trees, with greene fruit vpon them, the pulpe whereof boyled, cured our men of the Scorbute. They haue store of cotton, whereof they make striped cloth of diuers colours. Another, then in companie k, reports them to bee a strong active people, not fearefull of gunnes or other weapons, ciuill, honest, and vnderstanding; their weapons small Lances, Bowes, Arrowes, and Darts: their Kine sold at three, foure, or fiue shillings a peece, as sweet and fat as ours. That bunch on the shoulder is very sweet in taste. And (as one reporteth, he had seene) the skin that compassed one of them, contayned six or eight gallons. Here are many Crocodiles. The *Vaion* comming to Gungoma, in the North-west corner of Madagascar, was assaulted by a Nu. e of an hundred Canoes by water, arranged in order of a halfe moone; the King treacherously assaulting them out of the woods, and tooke Captaine *Michelborne* with other Merchants.

In Saint *Marie*, an Iland by Madagascar, they met with the King, which was obserued of his subiects with great reuerence. Here they buried one of their dead men, the Handers being present, who signified by signes, that his soule was gone to heauen: and would haue had them to cut off his legs by the knees. The Ile of Cerne, they called *Maurice* Iland. They found excellent Ebon trees there, the wood whereof is as black as pitch, and as smooth as iuorie, inclosed with a thick barke. They found of the same ilande foure red, some yellow. There were Palme-trees like the Cocos. They found store of birds, whereof they might take some in their nests with their hands. There were no people inhabiting. In the Ile of Bata our men killed a Bat as great as a Hare, in shape like a Squirrell, with two flaps of skin, which helped forth when he leaped from tree to tree, which they can doe nimbly, often holding only by their tailes.

b *Magnus.*

c *M. Polo, lib. 3. cap. 35.*

d *Maffeus hist. Ind. lib. 3.*

e *Linschot lib. 1. cap. 3. & 12. Pahlemnus.*

f *Osor. lib 4.*

g *Ph. Pigafetta. Congo. lib. 2. c. 9.*

h *De Bry. part. 3. Ind. Or.*

i *Mart. Pring.*

k *Ben. Day, & alius Anon.*

Nic. Downton.

l *Ed. Mich.*

The

The Hollanders in the Bay of *Anton Gil* Southwards from Madagascar in sixteene degrees, saw the King, blacke of hue, wearing two homes on his head, and many chaines or bracelets of Brasse on his armes. This place is fertile, the people valiant. *Holl. Nau. 1595.*

In the channell betweene the firme land and Madagascar, are many Ilands, g great and small, all inhabited by Mahumetans, the chiefe of which is S. *Christopher*: more Northwards against Mombaza, and Melinde, are three Ilands, Momfid, Zanzibar, and Pemba: inhabited with Mahumetans of white colour. In the time of *M.* h *Polo*, Zanzibar was Heathenish. The Inhabitants, he saith, very grosse and deformed, and likewise the women. Neere the Cape of Good Hope are the Ilses of *Don Alvares*, and *Tristan d' Acunnha*: but, of no great note. The deepeneſſe of theſe Seas, make them vncapable of many Islands.

g *G. Bar. Ben. del Isole.*

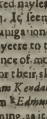
h *M. Pol. l. 3. cap. 36.*

CHAP. XII.

Of the Islands of Africa, from the Cape hitherwards.

§. I.

Of Saint Helena, Thomee, Cape de Verd, and diuers others betwixt them, and of the weeds and calmes of those Seas.



ON this side the Cape i is the Iland of S. *Helena*, in 16 degrees and one quarter of Southerly latitude. It is very high and hilly: the name was giuen of the Saint, on whose day it was discouered. It hath in it store of goats, hogs, hens, and other creatures, which the Portugals haue there left to multiply: for before there was none of them: there also they haue planted Figs, Oranges, Limons, and such like, whereof the Vallies are full; that it seemeth an earthly Paradise, the Fruit growing all the yeere long. They haue great store of Fish, of which with crooked nayles they take great plenty: the Rocks yeeld sale for the furthering of their prouision. It seemes God hath planted it in conuenient place, for the long and dangerous Indian Nauigations. There the Portugals leaue their sicke, which stay till other ships come the next yeere to take them. It was neuer inhabited: onely an Hermite dwelt there, who vnder pretence of mortifying his flesh by penance, butchered the flesh of the Goats and Bucks so fast for their skins, that the King sent for him home, and will suffer none to dwell there. *Abraham Kendall* put in there about the yeere 1591. and left on shore, one *Segar*, a sicke man, whom k *Edmund Parker* eighteene moneths after found in good plight; but their vnexpected comming, as it seemeth, so rauished his weake spirits with ioy, that it distracted him, and being otherwise of bodily constitution very wel, he dyed eight dayes after. The like I haue read of a Portugall in the same place. In *Iune* l 1613. the Dutch set vpon two Carricks in this road, but with ill successe, one of their ships with nine and forty men being casually blown vp. North-west from hence are the Ilses of *Ascension*, not inhabited, Of Loanda, nigh to, or rather a piece of Congo, is already spoken. Ouer against the Cape of *Loca Gonsalues*, is the Ile of Nobon: and not farre from thence m Saint *Thomee*: an hundred and fourescore miles from the shore, and so much also in compasse, right vnder the Line. At the first discouerie it was a Wood: Now inhabited by Portugals and Negro's. These liue an hundred and ten yeeres: but few borne in Europe exceed fifty. It is vnwholsome, through exceeding heat, n to Europæans especially, which in *December, Ianuary*, and *February*, can scarcely walk vp and downe for faintneſſe. In the middest is a wooddy Mountaine, continually ouershadowed with a thicke cloud, which so moistens the Trees that grow in great abundance thereon, that from hence droppeth water sufficient for the watering of all their fields of Sugar-Canes. They haue threescore and ten Ingenios or Sugar-houses, each of which hath two or three hundred slaues belonging thereto.

i *Linschot. l. 1. c. 4. hist. of China, part. 3. c. vii.*

k *Edm. Barker. Hak. tr. 2. par. 3.*

l *S. castleton.*

m *Nauigation all. Isle di S. Thome Ramus. pag. 1. fol. 116.*

n The winde which at other times refresh them, are then by Nature imprisoned in their homes.

They grind the Canes, and boyle the iuice to make it into Sugar; but by no meanes can they make it so white heere, as in Madera and other places. The refuse of their Canes they giue to their Hogs, which are heere very many, fat, and delicate as the flesh of a Hen. They giue to their Hogs, which are heere very many, fat, and also with Rats, White men which liue are some yeeres exceedingly plagued with Ants, and also with Rats, White men which liue there, are visited two houres in euery eight or ten dayes with an Ague, but strangers haue more shrewd entertainment, and scarcely in twenty dayes, with great care, can shake off this Shaker. The chiefe Citie is Pouoason, an Episcopall Sea. The Negro's worke sixe dayes for their Masters, and the seuenth day for themselues in setting and planting their seeds, fruits, and

and prouision. Wheat heere sowne, becommeth all blade, without ripening any corne. No fruit which hath a stone in it will heere prosper. The town which hath about seuen hundred Families, and the Castle was taken by the Hollanders, 1599.

o Hol. New g. The Ile *Del Principe* o, was so called, because the reuenues thereof were in times past allowed to the Prince of Portugall. It standeth in three degrees of Northerly Latitude. *Iulien Glerebagen* tooke the same, *An.* 1598. The Iles p of S. *Matthew, Santa Cruz*, S. *Paul*, and *Conception*, yeeld small matter of History. Next to Cape *Verde* stand seuen Ilands, full of Birds, empty of Inhabitants, called *Barbacene*. But those that are called the Iles of Cape *Verde* are nine, situate between the Greene and White Capes: *Linschoten* reckons ten. They were first discouered by *Antoni di Nolli*, a Genoway, *An.* 1440. None of them are inhabited, but the Iles of *Iago*, and *Del Fogo*: both which were taken, *An.* 1596. by Sir *Anth.* q *Sherley*, who had one nights howre of Ashes from that Island of Fogo or Fuego, or of Fire, so called, because it continually burneth, which fell so thicke on their ship, that you might write your name with your finger vpon the vppes decke. Saint *Iago* was taken and burnt by Sir *Francis* r *Drake*, *An.* 1585. *Brana* and *Buena Vista*, haue braiter and goodlier names then Nature. *Maio* yeelds salt in a Lake of two leagues long, the Sun congealing and turning the waters into Salt. From thence is passed into the Sea, called *Sargasso* s, because it is couered with herbs, like to the herbe *Sargasso* in the Portugall Weis, not vnlike to *Samper*, yellow of colour, with empty Berries like Goose-berries, but lesse: which beginneth at twenty degrees, and continueth till thirty foure, farre off in the Sea: for the ships in their going to India, keeping neere the shore, meet not with any. The Sea seemeth as a greene field, so thicke that a man cannot see the water, and hindereth the ships passage, except they haue a strong winde. *Ralph Wilson* hath told vs of a new Island, discouered by the *Salomon* in 19. 34. to the South, *Anno* 1612.

- The Coast of Africa is foure hundred miles distant, neither is any Iland neere: saue that these weeds seeme to make many Ilands. Thus doe *men in ships behold the wonders of the Lord in the deepe*, no Land being nigh, nor no ground to be found, although it is thought to come from the ground. Some think it growes on the Rocks, and is thence beaten off by the Sea. And indeed, all those Seas are full of wonders, as they passe along the Coast toward the Indies. *Thomas* u *Steuens* complaineth of the continuall Thunders, Lightnings, and vnwholsome Raines which there they met: the raine-water, if it stand a little, conuerting presently to Wormes, and filling the meat, hanged vp, with Wormes. An herbe also swimme vpon the face of the waters like a Cocks Combe, so venemous, that it can scarce bee touched without perill: Fishes, called Sharkes, most rauenous deuourers, which had other sixe or seuen smaller fishes, garded with blue and greene, attending like Seruing-men. Fishes also (as big as a Herring) with wings which doe not so much helpe them by flying to escape another greater fish that pursueth them by Sea, as endanger them to a Sea-Fowle, which waits that opportunitie. Neither can it fly high or farre, or longer then the wings are wet: nor swimme fast, hauing exchanged finnes for wings. So haue I seene men thriue worse that haue two Trades, than such as haue been skilfull and thriftie in one. *Lerius* x addeth the like wonder of certaine Birds, to tame that they would light vpon the hatches, and suffer themselues to bee taken. These are the same Birds which pursue those flying fishes, wiser to hunt them, then to saue themselues: as bigge as Crowes in feathers, in flesh little bigger than a Sparrow, and farre lesse then the fish which they take and deuoure.

These Seas are also subiect to great and tedious calmes, which not onely hinder the Voyages, but end the liues of many. *Giouanni da Empoli* saith, in his returne out of India, they were heere detained foure and fifty dayes, in which they scarce sailed aboue sixe leagues; and in thirty fiue dayes they cast ouer-board threescore and sixteene of their company, very few surviuing in their ship: which likewise happened to other ships, their Consorts, so that they had vtterly despaired, had not God sent a Portugall ship, that way bound, to relieue them. And would God this like examples many might not be produced among vs our own. Betweene y 17. and 32 degrees of Northerly Latitude, men are subiect to gripings, and haue need to keepe themselues warme.

To returne to our discourse from Iago where we left: here the Negro's z were wont to bring slaues to sell to the Portugals for Beads, and other trifles, and Cottons with other base commodities: and them not such alone as they tooke in warre, but their fathers and mothers, thinking they did them a benefit, to cause them thus to be conueyed into better countries: they brought them naked. The Iles of Arguin are sixe or seuen, inhabited by the Azanhagi, where the King of Spaine hath a Fortresse: concerning the trade whereof you may reade the letter of *Melchior* a *Petony*.

p Vid. Sanut. vbi supra.

q Sir *Ant. Sherley* Hak. ion. 3. pag. 600.

r Sir *Francis Drake*.

s *Linschot.* l. 1. c. 29. c. *Sam. Castleton.* They meet with it in sayling to Bermuda, a M ster *Barloy* told me, and to the Indies also both East and West.

t *Pat. Copland.*

u *Tho. Steuens. Hak. tom.* 2. p. 2.

x *Lerius in Brasil.* c. 5.

y *Pat. Copland.*

z *Nau. all Fish S. Thome.*

a *Mel. Peton. Hak. part.* 2.

§. II.

Of the Canaries, Madera, and Port Santo.

FVrther into the Sea are the Canaries[a]: which are commonly reckoned seuen: *Canaria, Teneriff, Palma, Gomera, Hierro, Lanzarrotte,* and *Fuerte Ventura*: *Thuet*[a] addes three, others, more: *Lobos, Roca, Graciosa, S. Clara, Alegranza* and *Infierno*. The Inhabitants were so grosse before they were discouered, that they knew 10 not the vse of fire. They beleeued in one Creator of the World, who punisheth the euill, and rewarded the good: herein they all consented, in other things disagreed: their weapons were stones and staues. They shaued their heads with sharpe stones like flints. Iron they had not: Gold they respected not. The women suffed not their children, but commonly committed that office to their Goats. They as much delighted in dancing, as the birds[b], which beare their name, in singing. They were vnknowne from the times of the Romane Empire, at which time they were called *Fortunaie*, till either an English or French ship by mis-fortune lighted on them. *An.* 1405. *Io. Bentacor* conquerell them, and after him, *Anno* 1444. *Henry*, the *Infanta* of Portugal, that *Day-starre*, which by his industry made way to 20 the present Sun-shine of Discoueries whereby the World in her last dayes hath fullest view of her selfe, *Galuano*[d] called that Frenchmen *Io. Betancourt*, and faith, hee was sent by *Iohn* the second of Castile, *An.* 1417. who being slaine in the action, his sonne sold them to *Peter Barba* a Spaniard, and hee to *Don Henry*. Hee faith, the people were Idolaters, and did eate their flesh raw for want of fire. They filled their ground with Oxe and Goats-horns, They had many wiues, but delivered them to their Superiours to haue the first vse of them, before they lay with them. *Don Henry* conquered the rest which *Betancourt* had not possessed. Their former government was by an hundred and ninety persons, which ruled also in matters of Religion, prescribing to the people their faith, and worship. They had in highest name of authoritie a King, and a Duke. To slay a beast was esteemed the basest office in the world, and therefore committed to their prisoners: they which did this, liued separate from the people. 30 Thus was it in the Gran Canaria. In Gomera[e] they vsed for hospitality to let their friends lye with their wiues, and receiuing theirs in like courtesie: and therefore, as in India, the Sisters Sonne inherited.

a This name is supposed vulgarly to haue arisen from the small pick-eared dogges, a *Thuet* c. 5. *Sanuto* 12.

b Canary Birds.

c *G. Boti. Bent. part.* 1. *Vol.* 2. *Bar. Dec.* 1. l. 10.

d *A. Galuano. Discoueries. Lopes Orda, Anno* 1334. assailed Gomera, but in vaine. And 1393. the Spaniards committed great spoiles in this Iland. *Descrip. Canar. ap Calucinem.*

e *Cadamosto.*

In Tenarife they had two Kings, one dead & another alive; when a new King was crowned, some man, to honour his entrance, offered himselfe to voluntary death: when the King was buried, the noblest men carried him on their shoulders, and putting him into the graue, said, *Depart in peace, O blessed soule*. *Thuet*[f] affirmeth, that the Canaries are so called of the Canes and Reeds that grow there: that they worshipped the Sun, Moone, and Planets. Of these Ilands, *Thomas Nichols*[g] an Englishman, hath composed a Treatise extant, in Mr. *Hakluyts* Voyages, *Tom.* 2. *Part.* 2. He saith they dwelt in Caues, supposed to descend of such as the Romans in Africa had exiled, and cut their tongues out for blasphemie against their gods. 40 The Pike of high Tenarife, is after *Thuets* measure foure and fifty miles. *Tho. Bynm*[h], a friend of mine told me, that he had seene it eight and forty leagues into the Sea, in cleere weather. One of our Nation hath written a Treatise of his obseruations of these Ilands. Here before the conquest were seuen Kings, which with their people dwelt in Caues. Their burial was, to be set vpon their feet naked in a Caue, propped against the wall: and if hee were a man of authoritie, he had a staffe in his hand, and a vessell of milke standing by him. I haue seene (saith *Nichols*) three hundred of these corpses together, the flesh dryed vp, the body light as parchment. I my selfe saw two of those bodies in London.

f *Thuet New-found-World, c.* 5.

g *Tho. Nichols*

h *Tho. Bynm.* Some say it may be seene an hundred and sixtie. *Descrip. Canar. Calucinem.* *Sanuto* addes that it casts fire and is in the accompt 60. miles.

Canaria, Teneriff, and Palma, haue one Bishop, who hath twelue thousand Ducats Reuenue: which place was not long since possessed by *Melchior Cano*[i] a great Writer in defence 50 of the *falling Babylon*. They pay to the King sixtie thousand Ducats. *Hierro*, or the Iland of Iron, is by a multitude of Authours[k] affirmed to haue it in no fresh water, but what falleth from the leaues of a certaine Tree, which is alwayes greene, and couered with clouds; and vnderneath the same is a Cisterne to receiue the water, for the vse both of men & beasts throughout that Iland: A whole wood of such Trees wee mentioned in Saint *Thomas* Iland, which yeeld from their dropping leaues Rilles of water downe all sides of the Hill, where they grow. In this Iland here is but one: and that very ancient, suffering in this (if we beleeue *Sanuto*) from those p6s *Thomas*, they alwayes, this onely afternoone, being couered with that cloud, which continueth till two houres before day, and then the bodie, 60 boughs and leaues of the tree sweat out that liquor till two houres after Sun-rising, it is in 27. degrees. *Lewis Iackson* saith that he saw this tree being in this Iland, *Anno* 1618. that it is as bigge as an Oake, the barke like hard beame, six or seuen yards high, with ragged boughs,

i *M. Canus Loc. Theol. l.* 12.

k *Benzy Sanuto Guiada, &c.*

boughs, with the leafe like that of the Bay-tree, white on the bottome, greene on the other side. It beareth nor flower nor fruit: situate in the destituitie of a Hill, withered in the day, dropping in the night (a cloud hanging thereon) yeelding water sufficient for the whole Island, which (he saith, it report deceiued him not) Sir *Edward Skory* heard of many fewer) 8000 soules, and aboue 100000 beasts. It tals into a Pond made of Bricke floored thicke with stone, by pipes of lead conuayed from the tree thither, and thence diuided into diuers Ponds thorow the Iland; fetched vp hill by barrels. The Pond holds 20000 tunnes, and is filled in a night. Thus he reiated to me. Hierro, and Gomera, and Lancarato, are in the hands of priuate men.

Madera standeth in two and thirty degrees: it is the greatest of all the Atlantike Iles.* It was discouered by one *Macham* an Englishman, who arriued there by tempest, *Anno.* 1344 together with a Woman, whom he there buried, and on her Tombe did write his comming and the cause thereof, with his and her names, and was occasion to the King of Spaine to discouer that and the Canaries. It was called Madera, of the wildernesses of Trees there growing. Heere is a Citie called Fouchal. The Ile containeth in compasse a hundred and forty miles. The woods [a] which gaue name to the Iland were fiered, and burnt so furiously, that the people for a time were forced to go some space into the Sea from the violent heat, which caused such tainesse to the soyle, that at first it yeelded threescore fold; since, halfe so much. The excellent Wines were of Vines, first brought from Candie. They bring foorth more grapes (saith he) than leaues, and Clusters of two, three, and foure [b] spans long. At first, the Pigeons suffered themselues to be taken, not knowing, and therefore not fearing a man.

Forty miles from the Ile of Madera [c] is the Ile of Puerto, or *Porto Santo*, called of all Saints day, in which it was first discouered, *Anno* 1428. It was taken by Sir *Amias* [d] *Preston*, 1596. Heere are such store of Conies, bred of one shee-Cony brought hither great with yong, that the Ilanders were out of hope almost to withstand and amend their damages by them sustained. A little Iland, neere to this, breedeth nothing else. And now we can accompany ou Portugals no further. But before I left these Ilands, I thought fit to feast you, with some obseruations of an eye-witnesse (elegant spectator) and learned Gentleman Sir *Edmund Scory.*

* *A Gelumo.* See Sanuto of these and many other Iles.

a *A. Cadamosto.*

b *Palmi.*

c *Sanut. l. 3.*

d *Sir Am. Preston, Hak.*

§. III.

Extracts taken out of the Obseruations of the Right Worshipfull Sir Edmund Scory, *Knight of the Pike of Tenariffe, and other rarities which hee obserued there.*

TEneriffe is the pleasantest of the Canary Ilands. This Iland hath beene called Niuaria, by reason of the Snow which like a Collar enuironeth the necke of the Pike of Teyda. The name of Tenariffe was imposed by the inhabitants of the Palme Iland, for Tener in the Palmesian language signifies Snow, and Iffe an Hill. It is situate in the Atlanticke Ocean fourescore leagues from the Coast of Affricke. It is in forme triangular, extending it selfe into three Capes, and stands within eight and twenty degrees of the equinoctiall. The great mountaine of Teyda, commonly called the Pike of Tenariffe, is a Mountaine which begets I know not whether a greater attention, when you come to it, or when you behold from a farre off: but in both very great. The Base of it beginneth at the Port-towns of Gara-chico, from whence it is two dayes iourney and a halfe to the top of it. The point of which, though it seeme as sharpe as a Sugar-loafe (which figure, of all other it doth most resemble) yet is there a flat of an acre in breadth on the top of it: & in the midst of that flat a gulph, out of which great stones are with like noise fire and smoke many times cast forth. Seuen leagues off this way, may bee trauelled vpon Asses or Mules; the rest on foot, and with great difficultie. All the Countries lying about the ascent of the Hill, for ten miles vpwards are ouer-growne, or rather adorned with the goodliest trees in the world of diuers sorts; by reason of the multitude of Springs which intermingling one with another, and with the addition of the violent winter, Raines descend in huge torrents downe into the Sea. In the midst of this hill is the cold intolerable; in the top the heat, and so likewise in the bottome. Through all the cold Region, you must cast your iourny to trauel on the South side, and in the day time; through all the hot Region (which is within two leagues of the top) on the North side, and in the night time. Euery man carrieth his owne portion of victuals, and Borrachos of Wine. Your time of approach to the top must bee about Midsommer (for the auoiding of the torrents caused by the snowes, and about two of the clocke in the morning, and so you may abide there vntill sun-rising, but no longer.

Iourney vp the Pike, and description thereof.

A Valem.

Goodly Country.

A cold ascent and hote top and bottome.

The

The Sun being exalted aboue the Horizon of the Ocean seemeth far lesse, then when you are on the lower ground, and seemes to whirle it selfe about in manner of a Gyre. The streame that commeth out of the East a little before his rising can be compared to nothing more properly then to the breath of an hot Ouen, and so commeth on his course through an vnclouded Hauen being of a pure blue Christalline colour without the least spot in it. When you are on the top of this Hill all the Iland lyeth subiected like a plaine and leuell plot of ground vnder you, although there are in this Iland not so few as twenty thousand sharpe deformed and vneuen Rockes, and all the edges of that plaine ground seemeth to be listed or fringed with Snow, which indeed is nothing else but the white Cloudes which are many 10 furlongs below you. Neere the top of this Mountayne it neuer reigneth, neyther was there euer any wind stirring thereupon. The same is reported of the Hill *Olympus*.

Rarity of the Sunne.
Hote breath.
Clouds beneath them.
No wind nor raine.

All the vpper part of this Mountayne is afflicted with barrennesse, wanting the generatiue benefit of the lower and middle Regions of the Aire: for no manner of tree, shrub or leafe beautifieth the head thereof, but it resteth disgraced with an vnseemely baldnesse: out of which towards the South side doe the veines of Brimstone issue downe into the neke thereof, whete the Region of Snow is; among which the Brimstone is interueined in diuers places. In the Summer time the fires doe otter breake forth from out the hole in the top of this Hill, into which if you throwe a great stone it soundeth as if a great weight had falne vpon infinite store of hollow Brasse. The Spaniards merrily cal it the *Deuils Caldron*, wherein 20 the whole prouision of Hell is boyled. But the naturals (the Guanches themselues) do say that it was hell, and that the soules of their wicked Ancestors went thither to be tormented: and that those who were good and valiant men went downe into the pleasant Valley where the great City *di Laguna* now standeth: then which & the Towns adioyning to it, there is not in any place of the World a more delicate temperature of Ayre, nor a goodlier Object for the eye to make a Royall Landskip of, as to stand in the Centre of this Plaine, and to behold how nature hath delineated all earthly beauty in the great. On the North side of the Iland are many fresh waters with falling downe from the top of exceeding high Mountaynes refresh the Plaines, and City *di Laguna*; and are afterwards by the greatnesse of their torrent carried into the Ocean. The Iland is parted in the midst with a ridge of Mountaynes like the roofe of a 30 Church, hauing in the midst of it (like a steeple) the Pyke of Teyda, if you diuide the Iland into twelue parts, ten of them are taken vp in impassable Rocky Hils in Woods & in Vineyards; and yet in this small remaynder of arrable ground, there was gathered as I saw vpon their account in the yeere of our Lord 1582. 200. and 5000. Hannacks of Wheat, besides infinite store of Rie and Barley. One of our English quarters make foure and a halfe of their Hannacks. The soyle is delicately temperate, and would produce all the most excellent things the earth beareth, if the *Spaniards* would seeke and labour them. The Vineyards of account are in *Buena Vista*, in *Dante*, in *Oratana*, in *Tiguesse*, and in the Ramble which place yeeldeth the most excellent Wine of all other. There are two sorts of Wines in this Iland *Vidonia* and *Maluesia*. *Vidonia* is drawne out of a long Grape, and yeeldeth a dull Wine. 40 The Maluesia out of a great round Grape, and this is the only Wine which passeth all the Seas of the World ouer, and both the Poles without sowring or decaying; whereas all other wines turne to Vinegar, or freeze into Ice as they approch the Southerne or Northerne Pole. There are no where to be found fairer or better Mellons, Pomegranates, Pomecitrons, Figs, Orenges, Lymons, Almonds and Dates, Honey, and consequently Waxe and Silke though not in great quantity yet excellent good, and if they would plant there store of Mulberry trees, the ground would in goodnesse and for quantity equall (if not exceed) eyther Florence or Naples in that commodity. The North side of this Iland abounded afwell with wood as with water. There grow the Cedar, Cypresse and Bay tree, the wild Olive, Mastickc and Saume; goodly proceeuis Palme and Pine-trees which shoot vp into a beautifull straight tallnesse. In 50 the passage betwixt *Oratana* and *Garachico*, you ride through a whole Forrest of them, the strong sauour of which perfumeth all the Aire thereabouts, of these there are such abundance all the Iland ouer, that all their Wine Vessels and woodden Vtensils are made of them. There are of these Pine-trees two sorts, the strait Pine, and the other growing after the manner of our spreading Okes in *England*, which wood the Inhabitants call the *Immortall tree*, for that it rotteth neyther aboue vpon, below the ground, nor in the water. It is neere as red as Brasill, and as hard but nothing so vnctuous as the other kind of Pine. Of these they haue such great ones, that the Spaniards doe faithfully report that the wood of one Pine-tree alone couered the Church of *los Remedios* in the City of *Laguna*, which is 80. foote in length, and 48. foote in breadth. And that one other Pine-tree couered the Church of S. *Benito* in the same City, 60 which is 100. foot in length, and 35. in breadth. The nobliest and strangest tree of all the Iland is the tree called *Draco*: his body riseth into an exceeding height and greatnesse. The barke is like the scales of a Dragon, and from thence I suppose it had his name. On the very top of the tree doe all his armes cling and interfold together by two and by two like the

Bald & barren.
Fires.
Deuils Caldron.
Conceit of Hell.
Laguna.
Rockes.
Fertilitie.
Vineyards.
Wines.
Fruits.
Trees.
Immortall tree.
Draco tree.

Man-

Mandragoras: they they are fashioned euen like the arme of a man round and smooth, and as out of their fingers ends groweth the leafe about two foote in length, in fashion like to our greene wild water seggs. This tree hath not wood within its barke, but only a light spongious pith, and they commonly make Bee-hiues of the bodies of them. Towards the full of the Moone it sweateth forth a cleane Vermilion Gumme which they call *Sangre de Drace*, more excellent and astringent by farre, then that *Sanguis Draconis*, which we haue from Goa, and from other parts of the East Indies by reason the lewes are the only Druggists of those parts, and to make mony they falsifie and multiply it with other trash foure pound waight for one. The first that were knowne to inhabit this Iland are called Guanches: but how they came thither it is hard to know, because they were and are people meerely barbarous & voyd of Letters. The language of the old Guanches (which remayneth to this day among them in this Iland in their Towne of Candelaria) alludeth much to that of the Moores in Barbary. When Betanchor (the first Christian Discouerer of these parts) came hither, he found them to be no other then meere Gentiles ignorant of God. Notwithstanding, I doe not find that they had any manner of commerce with the Deuill, a thing not vsuall among the Indian Gentiles. They held there was a power which they called by diuers names as Achuhuranan, Achuhucanar, Achguayaxerax signifying the greatest, the highest, and the maynt ayner of all. If they wanted raine or had too much, or any thing went ill with them, they brought their sheepe and their Goats into a certaine place, and feuered, the young ones from the Dams, and with this bleating on both sides, they thought the wrath of the Supreme Power was appeased; and that he would prouide them of what they wanted. They had some notion of the immortality and punishment of Soules, for they thought there was a Hell, and that it was in the Pike of Teyda, and they call Hell *Echeyde*, and the Deuill *Guayota*. In ciuill affaires they were somewhat Regular as in acknowledging a King, and confessing vassalage in contracting Matrimony, reiecting of Bastards, succession of Kings, making of Lawes, and subiecting themselues to them. When any childe was borne, they called vnto them a certaine woman, and shee did with certaine words powre water vpon the childes head, and euer after this woman was assumed into the number of that kindred, and with her it was not lawfull euer after for any of that race to marrie or vse copulation. The exercises which the young men vsed were leaping or running, shooting the Dart, casting of the stone, and daunsing, in which, to this houre, they do both exceedingly glorie and delight. And so full of natural vertue and honest simplicitie were these Barbarians, that it was an intiolable law amongst them, that if their Souldiers did in any place publicke or priuate, offer any licentious or inuitious behaiuour to a woman, he was assuredly put to death. The people of this countrie were of a goodly stature, well formed and of a good complexion. There were among them Giants of an incredible greatnesse; the skull of one of them is remaining, in which there are eight ie teeth, and his bodie (which was found buried in the Sepulchre of the Kings of Guymur, of which race he was) measured fifteene foot. The people that dwelt on the South-side of the Iland, were of the colour of an Oliue, but those that dwelt on the North-side were faire, especially their women, hauing bright and smooth haire. Their common apparell was a certaine garment made of Lambes skins like a short coate, without pleate or collor or sleeues fastned together, with straps of the same leather. The ordinarie garment for men and women of the common sort was called Tomarco, onely the women for modesties sake had another couering vnder their Tomarco, which was a side coate downe to the knees made of skins which reached downe to the ground, for they held it an vnseemely thing in a woman to haue her breasts or her feete vncouered. In this garment they lined, and in this they dyed, and in this they were commonly buried. For their dyes they sowed Barly and Beanes: Wheate was vtterly vnknowne to them. They toasted their Barly by the fire, then did grinde it in certaine hand-mils, such as are now in Spaine. The floure so made they called Gissio, wetting it with water, milk or butter. It serued instead of bread also; and was their greatest and most Generall sustenance. They eat the flesh of Sheepe, of Goats, and Pork, but not commonly, for they haue certaine assemblies, like our festiuall Wake-dayes in England, at which times the King in person with his owne hands did giue to euery twentie of them three Goates, and a proportion of their Gissio. After which Feast, euery companie came before the King, shewing their agilitie in leaping, running, wrastling, darting, dancing, and other sports. They haue a certaine kind of hony out of a fruit, called Mozan, of the greatnesse and bignesse of a pease. Before they are ripe, they are very greene, when they beginne to ripe they are red, and when they are ripe are blacke, nothing vnlike our blackberries, saue in their taste which is exceeding pleasant. They eat no more but the iuyce of them which they call *Zoya*, and the Hony which they make of them they call *Chacerquem*. They gather these *Mozans* very ripe, and do put them into the Sun for a weeke, then they breake them in pieces, and put them into water to bee boyled vntil they come to a sirrope, and this is their Physick for the fluxe, and the griefuings in the backe: and for both these diseases they did

Ancient inhabitants.

Their religion.

Bapisme.

Giants.

Apparell.

Dyet.

Mozans their Physicke.

did also let bloud in the armes, head, and forehead with a flintstone. At their time of sowing, the King hauing appointed to euery man his portion of ground that was to bee sowne, they digged vp the earth with Goats hornes, and with certaine words threw their seed into the ground. All other works appertained vnto, and were performed by their women. The King did make his habitation in naturall caues or hollow rocks, of which there are infinite store remaynyng to this day. When there was any Feast made in any Kingdome, their Feasts had the priuiledge that men might with immunity passe to and fro through the enemies Countrey: yea, & many times the enemies would feast one with another. In their Marriages the men vsed to aske the consent of the Widdowes or Maids parents (if there were any) which being granted they were married with little or no ceremony that I could learne. And the marriage was not so soone made, but it might be as quickly broken: for if the husband or wife were disposed to be separated they might be so, and both of them marry again with others at their pleasures. Notwithstanding all the children of the separated begotten afterwards were esteemed as bastards, the King only for successions sake exempted from this custome, & to whom for that respect it was lawfull to marry with his own sister. For many yeeres this Iland was subiect to one only King whom they called *Adexe*, who being growne old, his Sons (which were nine in number) conspiring against him, parted the Iland into nine seuerall Kingdomes. All their war was to steale cattle one from another, and especially the spotted Goats, which amongst them are in great and religious estimation; there is very little difference betwixt the body, colour and smoothnesse of our English fallow Deere and their Goat. The ancient Guanches of this Iland had an appointed Officer or Embalmer answerable to the sex (man or woman) who washing the dead corps did put into its body certaine Confections made of Goats Butter melted, the powder of Furzes, and of a kind of ruffe stones, the rindes of Pine-trees and other herbs, and did stuffe the body with this euery day for 15. dayes together, putting the body against the Sun, now on the one side, now on the other, vntill it were stiffe and dry. All this space their friends bewayled their death. At the end of 15. dayes they wrapped their body in Goats skins so cunningly sowed together that it was marueilous, and so they carried the body to a deepe caue where none might haue accesse. There are of these bodies remaynyng yet which haue been buried these 1000. yeeres. The neerest port towne to the City called *Cidade de Laguna*, is *Santa Cruz*, from thence you ascend vp the steepe Mountaynes to the City, which you shall finde to bee most miraculously seated in the midst of a flat of ten miles in compasse, as if nature had prepared that place for man to build a City vpon, & being walled about with hills of wonderful height on al sides saueing to the Northwest (from whence there being a level tract of land euen to the Seaside which is seuen leagues distant) there doth continually arise from the Sea a vapour, which being circulated among so many and intricate Mountaynes groweth to be a wind, and taketh his passage through those channels of Mountaynes to the City, to its great refreshing, and in this great Plaine (like Emiy) for want of opposition dieth. And let the wind blow full Southeast at Sea, yet shall you alwayes haue the wind full Northwest at the City like a true friend when you must need him from twelue a clocke in the day vntill night. The extreame dew which falleth doth sufficiently coole the night. Their buildings are all of an open rough stone nothing faire: they are very plaine in their buildings, two or three stories high and no more, and commonly but one story high in the remoter parts of the City. It is not walled, they haue no chimneyes, no not so much as in their kitchins. They make only a flat hearth against a wall, and there they roaste their meate rather then roast it. The decency of their streets is commendable; for when you are in the centre of the City, your eye reacheth almost to the extreameest parts thereof. They haue no want of water. The City hath its name from a great standing Lake at the West end of it, vpon which there are commonly diuers sorts of fresh water-fowler. The haggard Falcons doe euery euening flye vpon this Lake, and the Negros with slings beate them, which is the noblest sport of that kind in the world for the stooping are many, and at one time, and the Hawkes the strongest and best mettalled of all other of a greater kind then the Barbary Falcons. The Viceroy being one euening to see this naturall sport, and he demanding of me what I thought thereof, and I iustly commending the strength and mettall of the Hawkes, assured me vpon his honour, that a Falcon bred in that Iland (which hee had formerly sent to the Duke of *Lerma*) did at one flight (except she rested vpon ships by the way) passe from *Andalusia* to *Tenariff* (which is 250. Spanish leagues) and was there taken vp halfe dead with the Dukes Varuels on. And the time from her going out to her being taken vp, exceeded not sixteene houres, &c.

Seed how sowne.

Feasts.

Marriages.

The gouernement.

Funerals.

Santa Cruz.

Refreshing wind.

Sport with Hawkes.

Strange flight of a Hawke, &c.

But I dare not dwell any longer with this industrious Gentleman in these Canaries, and had need borrow the wings of one of these Hawkes to make a swift flight to some other African Iland, where next you shall find vs within the Mediterranean.

§. IIII.

Of Malta and the Nauigations about Africa.

Within the Straits are no great Ilands belonging to Africa, *Pennon*, or the Rock against *Velles de Gumera*, the Ile of Gerbi, & some others. Malta is the most famous, where in old time was the Temple of *Iuno*, spoyled by [a] *Verres*, supposed to be that Melita, [b] where *Paul* suffered [c] shipwracke: although there be another Melita in the Adriatike Sea, neere to Dalmatia: *Polybius* [d] calleth it *Melytusa*, as *Volaterranus* [e] writeth. *Ptolomee* and *Cicero* name Melita, now called Malta, in this Ile of Malta. This Malta is distant from Sicilia 60. miles, from Africa, 190. It hath bin sometime subiect to the Carthaginians, as may appeare by diuers Monuments with Inscriptions of Carthaginian Letters: and the Islanders (if our Authour [f] say truely) can vnderstand that Scene in *Plautus* before mentioned. *Elot, Effeccho, Cumi*, words vsed in Scripture, are likewise vsed in the *Maltese*. Their manner of life is Sicilian. But we may not dwell here. Some [g] ascribe *Pauls* shipwracke to Melita in the Adriatike, neere to Dalmatia, whom *Beza* [h] learnedly confuteth: and prouoeth it to bee that Malta, which now the Knigats hold against the Turke: whose valour and successe, in resisting that mighty Turkish Aduersary, [i] *Corio*, and *Io. Antonius Vsperanus* in their Bookes of that Argument, *Knolles* in his Turkish History, *Ri. Carre*, and others relate at large. It was *An.* 1565. That which deceueth those Men in Malta, is the name of the Adriatike Sea, which now is giuen to the gulfe of Venice, but then, as *Beza* & *Arctius* shew out of *Strabo l.7.* was giuen to the Ionian Sea also, and further South wards, where Mal a Iland etham and *Ortelius* out of [k] *Ouid*, and others, proueth the same, as doth also that Epitome of all Learning *Io. Scaliger*.

That learned Gentleman M. *Sandys* in the fourth Book of his Iournall hath largely related of this Iland. It contayneth after his description sixty miles in circuit; a Country altogether champaine, being no other then a Rock couered ouer with earth, but two foot where deepest; hauing few trees but such as beare fruit, whereof all sorts plentifully: so that their wood they haue from Sicilia. Yet there is a great Thistle which together with Cow-dung serues the Country people for fewell, the lesse needfull by the immoderate heate, there exceeding far any other seated in the same parallel, yet sometimes tempered by the winds to which it lies open. Riuers here are none, but sundry Fountaynes. The soyle produceth no graine but Barley: bread made of it and Olives is the Villagers ordinary dyet, and with the straw they sustayne their Cattle, Commin-seed, Annis-seed, and Hony, they haue here in abundance, and an indifferent quantity of the best Cotton Wooll. The Inhabitants dye more by Age then Diseases, and heretofore were reputed fortunate for their excellency in Arts & curious weauing. This Iland was giuen by *Charles* the Fift to the Knights Hospitalers after their losse of Rhodes; whose first seat was the Hospitall of *S. Iohn* in Ierusalem, built by one *Gerard*, at such time as the Holy Land became famous by the successefull expeditions of the Christians, whose rites are recorded by many Authors, but by vs to be reserued for another taske. There are sixty Villages in the Iland vnder the command of ten Captaines, and foure Cities. Old *Malta* (supposed the worke of the Phœnicians) is seated on a Hill in the mids of the Iland, kept with a Garrison though of small importance. In it is a Grot of great veneration, because they suppose that *Paul* lay there after his shipwracke. The other three Cities (if they may so bee termed) are about eight miles distant, and not much without a Musket shot each of other, neere the East end and on the North side of the Iland; where there is a double Hauen, diuided by a tongue of a Rock. On the top of this tongue stands the Castle of *S. Hermes*, after 20000. shot and the losse of 10000 liues taken by the Turks. But so could they not that of *S. Angelo*, which onely & *Burgo* escaped their fury in that their siege. After their departure, when the Knights had thought to haue abandoned the Iland, by the helps of the Pope, *Florentine*, and especially the Spaniard, they were furnished with prouisions for new fortifications; and added a new strong City, called *Valetta*, in honour of him that then was their Great Master, *Iohn de Valetta*. The Great Masters Palace is a princely structure, the market place spacious, the Church of *S. Paul* magnificent, as that also of *S. Iohn*; the houses vniforme of free stone, two stories; flat roofed. *S. Iohns* Hospitall giues entertaynment to all that fall sick, the attendants many, the beds ouer-spred with faire Canopies, euery fortnight hauing change of linnen, serued by the Iunior Knights in siluet, and euery Friday by the Great Master accompanied with the great Crosses, a seruice whereto they are obliged, as their name of Hospitular Knights also importeth. It is victualled for three yeeres, supplied from Sicilia. The Iland hath nor of liuing soules aboue 20000. Their expeditions are vsually but for booties. The people almost as tawny as Moores: the heat makes them sleep at noone These Votaries haue store of Cortizans for the most part Greeks, which sit playing in their doores on Instruments, by their eyes bewitching vnstable soules, their vow rather prohibiting (if the practice interpret) Matiage then incontinencie. Their markets are on Sundayes. The Knights come hither exceeding yong, the sooner to attaine

a *Cic. in Ver. 6.*
b *Melita* so called of the store of Hony.
c *Acts 28. 1.*
d *Polybius.*
e *Volaterran.*
f *Descrit. di Malta.*
g *Ortel. in Thesaur.*
h *Beza Annot. Arct. in Atlas.*
i *Corio Istum Melitense. Vsperanus.*
Knolls p 796.
k *Ouid. Fast. 4. Scribeatem gelidis Atria vidit Aoniis.*
So *Statius* to *Melius* going from the Tirrhene to Egypt *Quat ibi curvatis processerat Adriamoris.*

taine Commendams at home, which goe by Senioritie. There are resident about fiue hundred, and as many abroad to repaire vpon summons. Sixteene of them are Counsellors of State, called Great Crosses. There are seuen Albergs or Seminaries, one of which was of England, till in the generall Deluge vnder *Henrie* the eight, Saint *Johns* without Smithfield, sometime the Mansion of the Grand Prior of England, was hooked into that crooked streame, though still that Title continue, an Irish man now enioying it. Euery Nation feed by themselues in their seuerall Alberges, and sit at table like Friars. But how doe I pre-occupate my Christian Relations, and fall into a Lethargie, hauing opportunitie of such an Hospitall and such Hospitulars?

10 Now a word of the ancient Nauigations about Africa. *Hanno* his voyage, fet forth by the Carthaginians, seemed fabulous, but *Ramusius* sheweth euery place by him mentioned, to agree with the later Discoueries of the Portugals, and thinketh (guided by a Portugall Pilot, skilfull of those Seas, which skanned this Nauigation of *Hanno*) that hee went as farre as Saint *Thome*. Long before this, *Homer* reporteth of *Menelaus* compassing the Ethiopians from Egypt, which some interprete of sayling by the Cape of Good Hope, as the Portugals. Of this minde *Strabo* citeth *Aristonichus*. Of *Salomon* and *Iehosaphat* is faid before. *Herodotus* affirmeth the Phœnicians sayling in the Red Sea in *Cambyses* time: but this was vsuall and yeerly, as *Plinie* sheweth *lib.6. cap.23.* The same *Plinie* alledgeth out of *Cornelius Nepos*, the sayling of *Eudoxus* out of the Red Sea, round about Africa to Cales, which *Strabo*
20 relateth otherwise and refuteth.

The like may be shewed in some other instances, of which reade Master *Hakluyt* his Epistle Dedicatorie, *Tom.* 1. *Ramusius part.*1. *pag.*111. and *Galuanus* in his Discoueries of the World. Which I mention, not to disparage or weaken the Portugals praises, but to giue Antiquitie their due; which, I thinke, [a] could not ordinarily (if at all) compasse so long a Nauigation for want of the Compasse: yet we should iniurie our Authors, if wee should not beleeue somewhat: although not so much as they report. And this agreeth with the Greeke prouerbe of *Hanno's* Discoueries, and *Iubas* Historie: that hee which findeth sweetnesse in the one, may swallow the other, and as well entertayne *Banius* as *Manius*: the Periplus of the one, and Libyke Histories of the other not obtayning full credit, nor wholly meet to
30 be reiected.

And thus much of this African part of the World, the Regions and Religions thereof: the one most subiect to the burning beames of the heauenly Sunne, the other least enlightning by the comfortable warmth of the *Sunne of Righteousnesse*; blacke in body, but more darkened and deformed spiritually, as hauing onely some parts of Habassia entirely possessed with Christians, besides what in Congo hath of later yeeres beene effected by the Portugals, and that little which is subiect to them and Spaine: all the rest being Pagan, or Mahumetan. And would God this were the case of Africa alone; seeing that if we diuide the knowne Regions of the world into thirtie equall parts (it is Master *Brerewoods* [b] Computation.) The Christians part (vnderstand it in all Sects and Professions bearing that name) is as fiue, the
40 Mahumetans as fixe, and the Idolaters as nineteene; besides that huge heathenous Tract of the vnknowne *Somb Continent*, which by probable reasons is by him conisctured to bee no lesse then Europe, Africa, and Asia, together. So farre is it from truth, which one [c] of our Country-men hath lustily bragged on behalfe of his Romish Mother, *That the Catholike Roman Religion hath had, and hath yet a farre greater sway in the world, then any other Religion euer had or hath*: whereas this our Africa hath more Mahumetans [d] in two or three Cities, then Romish Catholikes perhaps in her whole compasse. And for Asia, how pitifully doth he tumble together some names of a few Townes or little Ilands (it seemeth vnknowne to himselfe) as monuments of Romish Conquests? What their American Conuersions [e] are, is touched elsewhere. Yea, euen in our Europe, where this *mystical Babylon* is situate (*the mo-*
50 *ther of the whoredomes and abominations of the Earth*) the number of Protestants [f] is not much inferiour vnto them. But his reasons haue beene alreadie proued vnreasonable, by him, whose Pen then, and Prelacie since, wee with all dutie acknowledge a pillar to the Truth, and Ornament to our Church and State. For my part, I am sorrie his assertion is no truer, as one seeing, χάσμα μέγα, betweene *Catholike* and *Roman*, *a great gulfe*, not easily (without many prouises) passable: but betweene Heathen and Heauen, a bottomlesse depth, *the way* impassable, and *life* impossible. Let vs pray to him which is *the Way, the Truth, the Life*, to make and be the *Way*, by reuelation of his *Truth*, vnto euerlasting *Life*, to these poore Africans, that as they are almost wholly (in all professions, Christian Iewish, Morish,
60 Ethnike) circumcised in the flesh, so they may receiue that *Circumcision of the Spirit, not made with hands*, which may cut away this superfluitie of superstitions (wherein they seeme more deuout then any part of the World) and make them *with meeknesse to receiue that Word, which being grafted in them, is able to saue their soules*. Amen, Lord Iesus.

a See Patricius lib.2.c.1. & ad eum Salmath. Cassiob. ad Athen.l.3.71. Λίβυκοι λόγοι & Ἀτλαντικοὶ λόγοι, figura est, & diuersitas.

b Brerewoods Enquiry, C.14.

c Doctor Hills Reason, 5.

d Cairo, Fesse, Marocco.

e Lib.9.c.vlt.

f See the Preface to Brerewoods Booke.

Luke 16.36.

RELATIONS OF THE DISCOVERIES, REGIONS, AND RELIGIONS, OF THE NEW WORLD.

OF NEW FRANCE, VIRGINIA, FLORIDA; NEW SPAINE, WITH OTHER REGIONS OF AMERICA, MEXICANA, AND OF THEIR RELIGIONS.

THE EIGHTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Of the New World, and why it is named AMERICA: *and the West Indies: with certaine generall discourses of the Heauens, Ayre, Water, and Earth, in those parts.*

§. I.

Of the names giuen to this part of the World, and diuers opinions of the Ancients concerning the Torrid Zone.

NOw we are wee shipped for the New World, and the New Discoueries. But seeing this Inkie Sea, through which I vnder-take a Pilots office to conduct my Readers, is more peaceable then That; which on the back-side of this American World, was called the * *Peaceable*, by *Magellane* the first Discoueror: it yeeldeth vs the fitter opportunitie to contemplation and discourse, in such Philosophicall subiects, as a the best Authors haue thought worthy the first place in their Histories of these parts. Yet, before we prie into Natures mysteries, the better to know our intended voyage, let vs enquire somewhat of the *Names*, b if any *notice* may thence arise, of the places thereby knowne.

The *New World*, is the fittest name which can be giuen to this vast and huge Tract; iustly called *New*, for the late Discoueries by *Columbus*, *An. Dom.* 1492. and *World*, for the huge intention thereof; (as c Master *Hakluyt* hath obserued.) A new World it may bee also called, for that World of new and vnknowne Creatures, which the old World neuer heard of, and here onely are produced: the conceit whereof moued *Mercator* to thinke (which I dare (not thinke with him) that the great Deluge in the dayes of *Noah*, drowned not these parts, because men had not here inhabited, who with a deluge of sinne, might procure that deluge of waters.

* *Mare Pacificum, & Sol iuxta Ortel. Thea.*
a *Nomen quasi nouimen Esd.*
b *Ioseph. Acosta. de procuratione Indorum salute, & hist. Indie, lib. 1. & 2.*
Vazer Relationi, part. 1. lib. 4. Gomara hist. gen. &c.
c *Hak. tom. 3. Epist. Dedicat. Mexicana.*
Ger. Mer. de fabricatione mundi.

AMERICA is a more common then fitting name, seeing *Americus Vespucius* the Florentine, from whom this name is deriued, was not the first Finder, nor Author of that Discouerie: *Columbus* will challenge that, and more iustly, with [b] whom, and vnder whom *Americus* made his first voyage, howsoeuer after that, hee coasted a great part of the Continent which *Columbus* had not seene, at the charges of the Castilian and Portugall [c] Kings. But so it might more rightly be termed *Cabotus*, or *Sebastiana*, of *Sebastian Cabot* a Venetian, which discouered more of the Continent then they both, about the same time; first employed by [d] King *Henrie* the seuenth of England, and after by the Catholike King.

Columbus yet, as the first Discouerer, deseruedh the name, both of the Countrey, for the first finding, and of modestie, for not naming it by himselfe, seeking rather effects, then names of his exploits. But leaue we these Italian *Triumviri*, the Genuois, Venetian, and Florentine, to decide this question among themselues. And why now is it called the *West Indies?* To this [e] *Acosta's* exposition of the word *Indies*, that thereby wee meane all those rich Countries, which are farre off, and strange, is too generall an answere, and giueth not the true cause of the name. *Gemara* saith, that a certaine Pilot, of whom *Columbus* receiued his first instructions, tooke it to bee India: or else *Columbus* himselfe, thinking by the West to finde a neerer passage vnto the East, by reason of the Earths roundnesse, sought for Cipango, or Iapan, and Cathay, when he first discouered the Ilands of the New World. And this opinion [g] probable, [f] both because hee named Hispaniola, *Ophir*, whence *Salomon* fetched his gold: [h] and *Sebastian Cabot* in the first voyage, which he made at the charges of King *Henrie* the seuenth, intended (as himselfe [i] confesseth) to finde no other Land but Cathay, and from thence to turne towards India: and the opinions of *Aristotle* [k] and *Seneca*, [l] that India was not farre from Spaine, confirmed them [t] therein.

Now that we may descend from the Name, to the Nature of this New World: a World it is to see how Nature doth deflect and swarue from those grounds and principles, which the Naturalists [k] and Philosophers, her forwardest Schollers, haue set downe for Rules and Axiomes of Natures working. For, if we regard the ancient Poets, Philosophers, and Fathers, we shall see them deceiued, and that not in few opinions, which they seemed to haue learned in Natures Sanctuaries and inmost Closets. In the Heauens, they supposed a burning Zone; in the Earth, a Plage, plagued with scorching heates.

Vigq; duæ dextra Cœlum, totidemq; sinistra
Parte secant Zonæ, quintæ est ardentior illæ,
Sic———
———Totidemq; plagæ tellure premuntur
Quarum quæ media est non est habitabile æstu
Nix tegit alta duas, totidem inter vtramq; locauit:
Temperiemq; dedit.

And [l] a greater then *Ouid*:

Quinq; tenent Cœlum Zonæ; quarum vna coruscæ,
Semper sole rubens, &c.

The sense whereof is, that those parts of the World next the Arctike or Antarctike Poles are not habitable, by reason of extreme cold; nor the middle part, by reason of vnreasonable heate: the two other parts temperate, and habitable.

The Philosophers accounted this no Poeme, or rather were more Poeticall themselues: For that which those accounted a Torrid and scorched earth, these [m] made to bee a spacious and vnpassable Ocean, where the Starres, hot with their continuall motions, and the Sunnes thirstie Steedes, wearied with their daily iourney, might finde *mouisure* to refesh and nourish their *fierie* constitutions. And therefore they diuided the Earth into two habitable Ilands, compassed about, and seuered in the midst with a huge Ocean: On this side whereof wee are situated, and beyond, the *Antipodes*. Some Philosophers [n] indeede held otherwise, but with greater errors, as *Leucippus*, *Democritus*, *Epicurus*, *Anaximander*, which multiplyed Worlds according to their fancie. Rawe and vnicertaine were the coniectures of the [o] best. Yea those whom wee reuerence, as better then the best Philosophers, had no lesse errour in this point. The *Golden-mouthed* [p] Doctor had a Leiden conceit, that the Heauens were not round, whom *Theodoret* is said to follow. *Theophilus* [q] alleageth *Basil* for this his assertion, *Neq; mobile esse cœlum, nec circular*, That heauen is neither moueable nor round. How firmly, and confidently doth *Firmianus* [r] *Lactantius* both deny and deride the opinion, that there are *Antipodes*: But easier it was for him with a Rhetoricall flourish (wherein, I thinke, of all latine Fathers, [s] he deserueth highest prize and praise)

b *Munst Cosm. lib. 5.*
c *Am. Vesp. Nau. Mess. hist. Ind. lib. 2.*
d *Hakl. tom. 3. pag. 7.*
e *Acost. histor. Ind. lib. 1. c. 14.*
f *Pet. Mart. Dec. 1. lib. 1.*
g *Hakluyt, vbi sup.*
h *Arist. de cœlo & mundo.*
i *Magnus* saith it was called India, because it was discouered in the same time that India was found by the Portugals, or else for the likenes of manners in the Indians.
k *Ptol. Strabo, Plutarch*, and some others mention the Ethiopians beyond the Tropike of *Cancer*: and *Taprobane*, *Atysimba*, *&c.* It seemeth that their meaning was, it was very scarcely inhabited of few and small Nations. Experience hath found no place more peopled,
l *Virg. (cui Arcu statuit in sua Hypercritico. Scaliger. Georg. lib. 1.*
m *Scott somn. Scipionis. Macrob. in som.*
n *Vid. Plutar. de plac. Philos.*
o *Arist. 2. Meteo. cap. 5.*
p *Plin L. 2. c. 68.*
p *Chrysost. hom. 14. & 17. in Heb. Theod.*
q *Theophilus. in cap. 8. ad Heb.*
r *Lact. lib. 3. c. 24. Institutionum.*
s *Christianorum omnium facundissimus est Lactant. Viues de trad. disciplin. 3.*

10 20 30 40 50 60 70

to dash this opinion out of countenance, then to confute the Arguments and Allegations, which he there citeth in the Aduersaries name. But hee that surpassed *Lactantius* no lesse in knowledge of truth, then he was surpassed by him in smoothnesse of Stile, herein holdeth equipage, and draweth in the same yoke of errour. I meane him, whose venerable name no words are worthy and sufficient to Vsher in, Saint *Augustine*: who, though somewhere a he affirmeth the *Antipodes*, yet elsewhere b pressed with an Argument, how men should passe from these parts in which *Adam* and *Noah* liued, to the *Antipodes*, through the vnmeasurable Ocean, he thought it easiest to deny, that, which certain experience at that time could not so easily proue: although c euen then some reports (but obscure and vncertaine) had 10 been spread abroad of sailing about Africa, as d a little before is shewed, which must enforce that which *Augustine* denied.

More hot and *forcible* were the Arguments of our more zealous then learned Countreyman, *Boniface*, e Archbishop of Mentz, and of Pope *Zacharie*, who pursued this opinion of the *Antipodes*, so eagerly against *Virgil* Bishop of the Iuuanenes in Boiaria, about the yeere 743. That vpon *Boniface* his complaint, the Pope writeth to him to cast out this *Virgil* the *Philosopher* (so doth that ἀόρατος call him) *out of the Temple and Church of God, and to deprive him for this peruerse Doctrine* (that there were *Antipodes*) *of his Bishopricke*: and *Virgil* must packe to Rome to giue account of this Philosophy to the *Pope*. *Minerua sai.* Let the Reader here iudge betweene the *Philosophy* of the one, and the *Foolesaffe-Ophy* of the other: and let 20 our Catholike Parasites tell vs, whether their notorious Father pronounced this sentence of errour as a *Pope*, or as a *priuate Doctor*. But what doth this Doter in my way?

Some f also alleadge *Nazianzen*, *Hierome*, and *Procopius*, for this or the like opinion. But Poets, Philosophers, Fathers, (in other things worthy our loue, for their delightfull Poems; our admiration, for their profound Science; our awfull respect and reuerence, for their holy learning: and learned holinesse) herein we bid you farewell: *magis amica veritas*; our America, subiect to that supposed burning Zone, with clouds and armies of witnesses in her well-peopled Regions, can auerre, that the parts betwixt the Tropikes are both habitable and inhabited: and for the *Perioeci*, g *Antoeci*, *Antiskiones*, and *Antipodes*, the worlds roundnesse, and other things of like nature, this America yeelds, and is sufficient proofe: and the yeerely 30 compassing the world (which the Spaniards and Portugals diuide betwixt them) makes more then euident. And let those two English Ships, the only two of one Nation which euer haue sailed, and that with admirable successe and fortune, about the Globe of the earth, tell *Lactantius* ghost, whether they dropped into the clouds (as hee feared) there to become new constellations, which Antiquitie would easily haue attributed to them. The Golden Hinde (which trauelled the world round, and returned a Golden Hind indeed, with her belly full of Gold and Siluer) is yet at Debtford, there resting after her long iourney, offering vp her selfe to *Time*, her deeds to eternitie. The causes of the Temperature and habitablenesse of those parts. That which beguiled the Ancients, was the nearenesse of the Sunne, his direct beames, and the swift motion of the heauens, which they conceiued, did chase away cold, 40 and moisture out of all those parts. And hardly could reason otherwise ghesse, till experience h shewed the contrary. For neuer is it moister in those parts betweene the Tropikes, then when the Sunne is neerest, causing terrible stormes and showers euery day: as if hauing drunken too much in his long and hote iourney ouer the Ocean, hee did there vomit it vp againe. Once, the people of those parts reckon it Winter, when the Astronomer would call it Summer: because of this tedious weather which euery day happening cannot but coole the Ayre and Earth, with a marueilous temper: and on the other side, they call the time of the Sunnes absence, Summer, because of the perpetuall clearenesse, which continueth those sixe moneths; the Sunne their exhaling no more vapours then his hote stomacke 50 can digest, which with his directer beames being drawne vp, surcharge him with abundance; and in the middle Region of the Aire, by the then stronger *Antiperistasis* rare thickened into raines, and (attended with Tittunder and Lightnings) proclaime dayly defiance to the earth: threatning harme, but doing good; cooling the same, after the morning Sun hath heated it, the showres then falling, when the Sunne threatens his hottest fury and violence.

These Raines make the like inundations and ouerflowings of Riuers in America, (as before wee haue obserued in Nilus, Niger, and *Zaire* in Africa (which breaking their bounds, and deluing the Inhabitants, sometimes to dwell on trees growing, sometimes in their carkasses framed into Boats or Canoes, therein to retire themselues, till the waters are retired, cause a cooling and refreshing to the Earth, which they couer and shield by their 60 inundations from the Sunnes angry arrowes. As in a Limbeck, a strong fire causeth abundance of vapours to be extracted out of herbes, or other matter, which being pressed, and finding no issue, turn into water: and if the fire be smal, it exhaustleth the vapors, as fast as it raiseth them: So the Sun (in his greatest strength) exhaleth these plentifull vapours and distilleth them, in

a *Aug. to 1. decem Categoriæ.*
b *Aug. de Ciuit. Dei, l. 16. c. 11.*
c *Vinet in tendem.*
d *Lib 7. c. vlt.*
e *Aventinus Annal. Boi. l. 3.*
f *Acosl & Sixt. Senens. Biblist. lib. 5. annot. 3.*
g *Periaci* are those which dwell in the same parallels, but contrarie Meridians. *Antiskiones* which dwell in theopposite Zone or place of the world. The *Periaci* haue Summer and Winter, but not day and night, alike: The *Antoeci* haue day and night alike, but not the seasons of the yeere. The *Antipodes* differ in both.
h That all the world is habitable, see the Discourse of *George Briton* a Preface to the Northwest Discoueries of M. *Frobisher*, and inserted *Hak. Voyag. to 3. page 48.*
Raines fall aboue, and afternoone euery day, when the Sun is ouer their heads.
Causes of temperature betwixt the Tropicks.
Similitudes.

in showers, which in lesse heat are of lesse quantitie, and more easily consumed. Without the Tropikes it is contrary: for the Summer is dry, the Winter moist; the cause being the Suns weaknesse, not able to concoct and disperse the vapours, by the moist earth then easily yeelded: which in his greater force in the Summer season wee see effected: the like wee see in greene wood and dry on the fire.

It is no lesse worthy note, that no part of the World hath so many, so great Lakes, and Rivers: the vapours and exhalations whereof, cannot but coole and moisten the neighbouring Elements of the Ayre and the Earth. Againe, the equall length of the Dayes and Nights perpetually sharing the time in equall portions, causeth [a] that the heat is not so vnequall as the Ancients dreamed. The great Dewes also in the night, which are greater then wee would thinke, and comparable for wetting to pretty showers, encrease the freshnesse and coolenesse.

a *Quodque die Solis widuno incandit, & ferit Humidi. Nox recrit. perhusq; refrigerat horis.* Homerus.

Wee may adde hereunto the neighbour-hood of so huge an Ocean, the proprietie of the Windes, which in most places betweene the Tropikes are set, and certaine, no lesse then the Sunne and Tides, and bring with them much refreshing. Further, the situation of the Land doth further the cold not a little, in those hot Regions; Contrariwise, neere the Poles, the continuance of the Sunne, and long dayes make it hotter then in parts neerer the Sunne; as in Russia [b], then in England. Yea the high ridges and tops of some Mountaines in the burning Zone, are vnsufferable for cold, always having on them snow, hayle, and frozen waters, the grasse withered, and the men and beasts which do passe along that way (for neere is no conuenient dwelling) benummed with the extremity of cold.

b D. *Fletcher*, Description of Russia.

——— *Paries cum proximus ardet.*

When the Mountaines are subiect to this degree of cold, it cannot but temper the Neighbour Regions, with some coolenesse at least. Now to all these Reasons of the Temperature, vnder the Line, and betweene the Tropikes some adde the influence of some vnknowne Constellations. Onely let this be remembred, that the former hold not equally in all parts of the Torride Zone, seeing that Nature hath diuersified her selfe in diuers places, and by naturall exceptions hath bounded and limited those generall Rules.

In some places, vnder the Line, it raineth not at all: in other some, those cooling Windes are wanting: neither hath euery Region, Lakes, Riuers, or Mountaines to refresh them. But of these particulars, we shall take better view in their peculiar places. In the same space the Windes are most what Easterly, and without the Tropikes Westerly: so that the Mariners vse not to goe and returne the same way, but observing the generall Windes, seeke to make vse thereof accordingly. The reason of this Easterly Winde vnder the Zodiake, c is ascribed to the motion of the Heauens: the first Moueable drawing (saith *Acosta*) with his owne motion the inferiour Orbes, yea, euen those Elementarie of the Fire, Ayre, and (where it findes no other obstacle, of the Water also, as d some suppose. But for the Ayre (whereof wee now speciall speake) the motion of the Comets, circularly carried in the Ayre, (where also their motion is diuers, as is obserued in the Planets) doth sufficiently prooue. Without the Tropikes from seuen and twentie to seuen and thirtie Degrees, the Windes are said to be for the most part Westerly, mooued, as some thinke, by the reperoussion of the Ayre, heere prevailing against that force of the Heauens, which masteretb it within the Tropikes: euen as wee see Waters, being encountered with more force, returne with an Eddie in a manner backe. This of the Easterly Winds is to be vnderstood of the Sea: for at Land, though winds bee (as beforeas said) certaine and set, yet that which is the generall Winde of one Country, is not generall to all: yea, in the same Countrey they haue a set Winde in some places for the day, and another quite contrary bloweth in the night. e Also, neere vnto the Coasts they are more subiect to calmes in this burning Zone, than further off in the Sea, the grosser vapours which arise out of the Earth, and the diuers situation thereof being the cause of these differences.

c *Acosta l. 3. c. 6.*

d *Pet. Martyr Dec. 1. lib. 6.* Sir *Humf Gilbert Discou.* Master *George Best.*

e *Linschot. lib. 1.*

Such is the force of this naturall situation, that in some places it is strange what effects it produceth. There is in Peru an high mountaine called Pariacaca, whereupon *Iosephe Acosta* saith, he ascended as well prouided as he could, being fore-warned and fore-armed by men expert. But in the ascent he and all the rest were surprised with so sudden pangs of fainting and casting, and some also of scowring, that the Sea-sickness is not comparable hereunto. He cast vp Meat, Flegme, Choler, and Blood, and thought hee should haue cast out his heart too. Some thinking to dye therewith, demanded Confession; and some are said to haue lost their hues with this accident. The best is, it lasteth but for a time, neither leaueth any great harme behinde. And thus it fareth in all the ridge of that Mountaine, which runnes aboue a thousand and fiue hundred miles, although not in all places alike. In foure, sundrie passages thereof,

f *Ios. Acosta* Natur. and Moral History of the Indies, *lib. 3. cap. 6.*

thereof, hee found the like difference and distemper, but not so grieuous as at Pariacaca. Hee ascribeth it to the subtilitie of the Aire in those high Hils, which he thinketh are the highest in the world: the Alpes and Pirenees, being, in respect hereof, as ordinarie houses, compared to high Towers. It is Desart, the grasse often burnt and blacke, for the space of fiue hundred Leagues in length, and fiue and twenty or thirty in breadth. There are other Desarts in Peru, called Punas, where the Aire cutteth off mans life without feeling: a small breath, not violent, and yet depriuing men sometimes of their liues, or else of their feet and hands, which fall off as a rotten Apple from a Tree, without any paine. This seemeth to be done by the force of cold, which in the Northerne, and Northeasterne parts of Europe worketh like effects: some [a] being found dead suddenly in those fields in which they came to market, sitting therein as if they were aliue, and some losing their joynts by the like cause. But this maketh vp the strangeness of these mortall accidents, that this piercing cold Ayre both killeth and preseruth the same bodie, depriuing it of life, and yet freeing it from putrifaction. A certaine Dominike passing that way, fortified himselfe against the cold winds, by heaping vp the dead bodies which here hee found, and reposing himselfe vnder this shelter, by these dead helpes saued his life. The cause is, Putrefaction cannot be procreated, where her Parents, Heate and moisture, are confined, and haue little or no force. The Seas which compasse this Westerne India, besides the Magellane Streits, and the Northerne vnknowne, (for the knowledge whereof our Countrey-men, [b] *Fr. Fisher, Davis, Hudson*, and others, haue aduentured their liues and fortunes, and at last haue giuen vs more hope then euer of the discouerie) are the great and spacious Ocean, which on this side is called the North Sea, and on the other side of America, is named the South Sea. The qualities thereof will better appeare, when we come to speake of the Ilands therein.

a This Master *George Barkly*, a Merchant, which liued long in Luconia, told me of his owne sight.

b See *infra. c.* 3.

§. III.

Of the nature of metals in generall, of Gold, Siluer, Quick-siluer, and the plenty and Mines thereof in America.

Concerning the Land of the New World, *Acosta* diuideth it into three parts, High, Low, and Meane: which hold almost the same proportion that Master *Lambert* [c] obserueth of Kent, the first hauing some wealth, by reason of the Hauens, and Ports therein, and of the Vines that grow there, but are very vnholesome: the Hils are healthfull, but not fertile, except in the Siluer bowels, and *Golden entrails* thereof: the third is the most commodious habitation, where the soile yeeldeth Corne, Cattle, and Pasture, and the Ayre, health. The principall thing that hath brought this Westerne India into such request, is, the Mines and Metals therein. The *Wisedome of God* [d] hath made Metals for Physicke, for defense, for ornament, and specially for instruments in the worke which God hath imposed vpon man, *That in the sweat of his brames he should eate his bread.* The industry of man hath added another vse of Metals, by weight or stampe, conuerting it to money, which the Philosopher [e] calleth the measure of all things. And a fit measure it might haue beene, if the minde of man were not vnmeasurable, and vnstaiable in measuring his measure. Metals naturally grow (as some [f] obserue) in land naturally most barren: Nature recompensing the want of other things with these hidden treasures: and the God of Nature enriching the Indians with this substance, otherwise barren of Humane and Diuine knowledge, that might as a rich Bride (but withered and deformed) make her finde matrimony suters for loue of her Portion. And would God, they which reape here *the Temporall things*, would *sow Spiritually*; and giue them [g] *Gold tried in the fire, and that in high rate as Siluer tried seuen times*, I meane the *Word of God* sincerely preached, without the drosse of their vnsauoury superstitions. And would they gaue them not Iron for Gold, an Iron Age for a Golden, imposing a heauy yoke of seruitude, [h] which hath consumed worlds of people in this New-World, and made the Name of *Christ* and *Christian* to stinke amongst them, yea, they abhorre the Sea it selfe for bringing forth such monsters, as they thinke the Spaniards: whom for their execrable wickednesse, they esteemed, not to come of humane generation, but of the froth of the Sea, and therefore call them *Viracochie*, or Sea-froth. That which congeals the froth of the Sea, and therefore call them *Viracochie*, or Sea-froth. That which congeals the Ayre of Religion, I may apply to this American World, *Papeis diuisitas, & filia deberunt matrem*. Shee brought forth rich metals, and the Daughter hath confused the Mother: her Gold hath made her Beedome. It is [a] a Golden and Siluer Age indeed to the Spaniards, for the condition and state which hereby accrueth to them, not for the conditions and state of life which they obserue.

c *Lambert* Peramb. of Kent. Wealth without health. Health without wealth. Health and wealth.

d *Genes. 1. 4. 2. 2. Ansis Ethics. 5.*

e *Philde Gen. Mundi lib. 5. Eusebi de Praep. Euang. l. 8. c. 9.*

f *Apoc. 3. 18. Psal. 12. 6.*

g *Rutil. de las Casas Hispan. Crudelit. Vrban. Calueto. Hier. Benzo Lib. 3. cap. 21.*

h *Aures sunt vere nunc secula, &c. Ouid.* First was an Age of Gold: then golden goodnesse abounded: Last is an Age for gold: and now gold only triumpheth. *Air. France Amin. 21.*

In

In the yeare 1587. when *Acosta* came to Peru, eleuen millions were transported in the two Fleets of Peru and Mexico, almost one halfe thereof for the King. In the time when *Pollo* was Gouernour of Charcas in Peru, from the Mines of Potozi alone were drawne and customed euery day thirty thousand *Pezos* of Siluer, euery *Peso* amounting to 13. Rials, and a fourth part: and yet it is thought the one halfe was not customed: or as *Oviedo* [h] reckoneth, one fourth part more then a Spanish Ducket. Hee writeth, that *Anno* 1535. three or foure ships came to Siuil, laden with none other commodities but Gold and Siluer. *Miles Philips* recorderh, that when he returned out of the Indies, 1581. there were seuen and thirty fayle, and in euery of them, one with another, thirtie pipes of siluer, besides great store of Gold, Cochinile, Sugars, Hides, &c. And at this day, saith [i] *Acosta*, the Mines of Potozi yeeld the King a million of Siluer, for his fift yeerely, besides the wealth that groweth by Quicksiluer, and other Prerogatiues. In the yeere 1574. were entred threescore and sixteene millions. That which is wrought in the Countrey is not entred, besides priuy conueyances. How much differeth Potozi from the Mine Bebello in Spain, one thousand and fiue hundred paces deepe, admired, and that iustly, by [k] Antiquitie, for yeelding three hundred pounds weight of Siluer a day to *Hannibal*, but with much more charges, by reason of the intolerable paines in drawing out the waters, which therein flowed, and in Potozi are wanting? But what will not this vnlouely loue of money doe? Hereby Man encountreth the vast Ocean, passeth the farthest and most contrarie Climates, drowneth *Bootes* and all his Teame, buryeth himselfe in the bowels of the Earth, raiseth new Heauens, and seeketh his heauen where he cannot see heauen or light, neere the bottomlesse bottomes of Hell: remoueth Fountaines and Mountaines, reduceth a new Chaos, in the confusion of Elements; the *Earths* intrails being towred in the *Aire*, and sacrificed to his hotter brother in *Etery* purgations; the Aire filling the darke hollowes and hels which it cannot see; the *Waters* forced out of those possessions wherein they challenged succession and inheritance after the decease and remouing of the Earth: all filled with Darknesse, to bring to light those metals, which possessing the possessors, deprue them of the highest Light, and brand them for the lowest Darknesse. *Precious perils*, [l] where so many bodies are pined, so many soules endangered, so much Good lost for goods: and Man, for price, setteth himselfe at the worst and basest price of all that hee hath. How happy and golden was the outward state of these Indians, before they accounted gold any part of their happinesse, and found it the cause of their ruine?

Of metals, Gold is esteemed most precious, as most enduring both Age and Fire, and least subiect to rust: according to those Verses,

Vni quoniam nil deperit Auro
Igne, velut solum consumit nulla vetustas,
Ac neq; rubigo aut aruigo consistit vllo.

Their Gold [m] is found either in Graines, which they call Pippins, because they are like the Pippins, or Seeds of Melons; which is pure, and hath no need of melting: or in powder, which is found in Riuers, mixed with the foyle and sands, for which *Tagus*, *Pactolus*, and *Ganges* haue been famous; or else in stone, being a veine that groweth and ingendereth, intermixing it selfe with the stones. Those Pippins, or pieces of pure Gold, found among the Rocks or Hills, are sometimes very great. *Peter Martyr* [n] tels of one that weighed three thousand three hundred and ten *Pezos*, and was with much people and treasure drowned, in the ship called Bordilla, being therewith surcharged, in the returne homewards: A fit Emblame for Christians, which when they will [o] *lade themselues with this thicke clay, & drowne the soule in perdition and destruction.* [p] *Oviedo* (who a long time held the Office of Proueditor for the Mines) saith, that hee saw two Graines of Gold, one of which weighed seuen pounds, and was in value 700. Castilians or Pezos; the other fiue pounds, & was worth fiue hundred; and many other of one, two or three hundred. Yet are not these Graines so welcome to the Miners, as that in powder, because this continueth (and therefore in fine continueth) more then the former. He obserueth, that Gold hath a farre brighter lustre in the naturall virginitie, then when it hath passed the fire & mans industry: and that coles are often found very fresh, where they find Gold, which place he thinkes was sometimes the face of the Earth, and by *Time* (which conserueth coles as well as gold vnder the earth without corruption) couered through showres, bringing the earth from the higher places, whereby hee supposeth it came to passe, that in a virgin-Mine fifteene foot vnder the earth, he once found two rings of the Indian fashion: he addeth, that the gold in stone will runne as small as a pin or thread, and meeting with a hollow place, filleth it, and so guideth the Miner by thick and thin, but alway pliant & flexible like liquid waxe, till the first sight of our aire breathes (as from the couetous hard hearts of men) this natuall hardnesse, which it presenteth to vs.

The

h *Oviedo, lib. 6. ca. 8.*
i *Acosta. l. 4. c. 7.*
Garc. de la Vega Speakes of 25. millions of Pezos, only out of Peru in one Fleet: and that Poulado Lagunas President of the Counsell of the Indies affirmed that all the Kings of Spaine from Pelayo hitherto, had not so much money. *Philip* the second alone. *And desolum terrore las del Peru hasta la Espana hasta Anno* 1601. 200. millions of Pezos registred, & aboue a hundred not registred, *lib. 1. cap. 7 part. 2.*
k *Plin. l. 22. c. 6.*
l *Pretiosa periculosa res. Bort. di Comis Spectos. supplicia. Cipr.*

m *Acosta. Oviedo, Herrera, &c.*

n *Pet. Mart. Dec. 1. lib. 10.*

o *Abac. 2. 6.*
p *1. Tim. 6. 3.*
q *Hist. Gen. Ind. l. 6. c. 8.*

The wild Indians had the Art of gilding their works with such dexterity, that they seemed pure gold: which mystery they performed with certayne herbs, that would neuer reach it a-any European. The Indians [a] in Hispaniola obserued a kinde of Religion in gathering their Gold (as the Arabians in their Frankincense) fasted, and for twenty dayes space came not at their wiues, otherwise thinking they should find none. *Columbus* fron ating the like superstition, would suffer none to seeke this golden Idoll, without those gilded Ceremonies of Confession, and their Sacrament before receiued. The greatest quantity is drawne at the Indies in the powder-gold. The gold in stone is drawne out of the Mynes or Pits, with great difficulty. They refine powdred Gold in Basons, [b] washing it in many waters, vntill the sand fall from it, and the Gold, as more heauy, remayneth in the bottome. They haue other meanes of refining it with Quick-siluer and strong Waters. In the fleet 1585. the declaration of the firme land was twelue Cassons or Chests, which was so many hundreth weights of Gold: besides one thousand fifty and sixe Mares from New Spaine, which was for the King only, not mentioning that which came for Merchants and priuate men.

a *Ouid. l. 5. c. 3.*

b See here of *Ouieda vbi sup.*

For the Siluer: the second place is giuen to it among metals, because next to Gold it is the most durable, and least endammaged by the fire, and in the sound and colour passeth the Gold. The Mynes thereof are commonly in Mountaynes and Rocks, seldome in plaines, and Champaines. Sometimes they find find it [c] straggling, in pieces, not holding any continuing Veine: sometimes it is fixed, and spreadeth it selfe in depth and length like to great branches, and armes of trees. Strange it is that in some places the fire, kindled with blowing of bellowes, will not serue to refine the Siluer, but they vse Furnaces called *Guayras*, set in such places, where the wind continually bloweth. Thus in Peru, the Mynes of Porco stoope to artificiall fires, which those Potozi scorne and contemne. Potozi is a dry, cold, barren, and vnpleasant soyle, if the rich Mynes did not more then supply all those defects, and make it a plentifull both habitation and Mart; not fearing the Heauens disasters, the cold Ayre, the frowning Earth, the fell Showres, so long as the Siluer hooke can be sufficient attractiue for forreine store. Hence it is, that they feele no want of store, and yet haue no store but of want, the Mynes excepted, which (I know not how) are both store and want according as mens minds in a second refining can digest, and dispose them. They which worke in the Mynes, see no sonne nor light, by absence whereof they find both extreame cold, and dreadfull darknesse, and an Ayre so vnwholesome, as makes them no lesse sicke, then men tossed at Sea. They [d] breake the Metall with Hammers, and split it by force, and then carry it vp on their shoulders, by Ladders made of Neats Leather twisted like pieces of wood, which are crossed with staues of wood: at the end of one Ladder begins another with seats of wood between, to rest them. They mount three and three. He that goes before, carries a Candle tyed to his Thumbe: they haue their metall tyed in a cloth like a Scrip, each man bearing about fifte fifty pound weight, and that commonly aboue an hundred and fifty [e] Stades in height. The most vsuall manner of refining in these times is by Quick-siluer, and therefore there are not now aboue two thousand Guayras in Potozi, which haue beene in times past six thousand: a pleasant sight to such, whose darkned conceits make their Heauen vpon Earth, to see such a resemblance of the Starry Heauen, in the night, dispersing such a manifold light. The Siluer swimmes on the top, the other Metals vnder, and the drosse in the bottome.

c *Pliny* saych (but incorrectly) that siluer is neuer found pure.

d I haue seene some in a proportion resembling Plants, with leaues spread, and diuided & a stalk descending, as if it promised a flower, much like the Rubworts.

The like reporteth *Mouss. Cosmog. l. 1. c. 9.*

e Six of these labours, *Plin. l. 33. c. 6.* & more in *Acosta l. 4.*

f A Stade is the height of a man.

The Quick-siluer [f] is admired for his naturall properties, that being a metall, it is liquid (not by Art as other metals, but by essence, in which respect the other may no lesse be called *Quick-siluer*, but) by it owne nature, and being a liquor, [g] is more heauie then those which haue a natural subsistence; this subsisting and sinking to the bottome, when the other swim aboue it. God onely challengeth prehiminence, if *Pliny* [h] be beleeued. Nothing in this admirable liquor is more to bee admired, then the naturall loue, and sympathy which it hath to Gold: as appeareth in such, as for the French Disease vse Oyntments of this composition, [i] if they weare a Gold-ring in their mouth, it attracteth this gold-siluer, and conueyed it from the veines and inward parts, into which it hath secretly and dangerously conueyed it selfe: the Ring plucked out of the mouth is of a Siluer complexion, which mutuall copulatis on nothing but fire can diuorce, or restore the same to the former colour. In their gildings of curious workes, it hath bin obserued, that the workmen which vse Quick-siluer to that purpose, to preuent the lethe and venemous exhalations thereof, haue swallowed a double Dupsat of Gold rolled vp, which drawes that fume of the lead, for which enters in at the eares, Eyes, nose, and mouth, vnto it in the stomacke. [k] And for this fume, *Lemnius* telleth, that the Gold-smiths hanging a cloth ouer the place where they gilde, which receiueth the fume of the Quick-siluer, find that smoke in the cloth, recouering again his former nature in drops of that liquid metall: *Veneninum rerum omnium est*, saych *Pliny*; it is a venome to all things, and yet a greater venome is in the mouth of man. I meane not that [l] *poyson of Aspes vnder the lips of many*, as the Prophet speaketh in a spiritual sense, but euen in naturall operation, the

g *Acosta l. 4. c. 10.*

h *Plin. vbi sup. l. Lemnius de occultis naturæ miraculis lib. 3. cap vlt.*

k *Acosta* saith, that it is meete with no solid body, where it may eslingeale, it ascends till the Ayre by cooling the fume causes it to fall in Quick-siluer.

l *Rom. 3. 13. Psal. 140. 3.*

Spettle

Spettle of man enpoysonneth, with a stronger poyson, this poyson of Quick-siluer; and eyther killeth it, m or at least, degrieuth it of the motion and quicknesse, and maketh it phant to Medicines and Oyntments. Yea, some n report that this Spettle of man, arising of secret vapors out of the body, as infectious exhalations out of vnwholsome Lakes, especially when a man is fasting, killeth Scorpions, and other venemous beasts, or at least doth much hurt them. Quick-siluer disklayneth other metals, only it is thus raised with Gold, and not a little affected to Siluer, for the refining of which, it is principally in vse: it corrupteth, forceth, consumeth, and fleyeth the rest, as much as may bee, and therefore they vse to keepe it in earthen Vessels, Bladders, Skins, Quills, and such vnctuous receptacles. It hath pierced and eaten thorow the bodies of men, and hath beene found in their graues. Quick-siluer is found in a kind of stone, which doth likewise yeeld Vermillion. At o *Amador de Cabrera*, is such a stone or Rocke, foureſcore yards long, forty broad, interlaced with Quick-siluer, with many pits in it, threescore Stades deepe, and is able to receiue three hundred workmen: it is valued worth a Million of Gold. From the Mynes of *Guancauelica*, they draw yeerly eight thousand Quintals of Quick-siluer. As for the manner of refining Siluer by Quick-siluer, their Engines and Mills, with the tryall of their metall, I referre the Reader to o *Acosta*.

Atahaliba maruelled why the Europeans hauing such Chrystaline and pure *Glasses*, would expose themselues to those dangers by Sea and Land, for those metals which he thought not comparable to the same. Well indeed might hee haue wondred, if that Arte had remayned, which p (I know not how truly) *Plinij, Petronius, Isidorus*, and others report, to haue beene in *Tiberius* his time; to whom one presented a faire Glasse, which being cast on the ground, was bowed, but not broken: & being taken vp by the same Artificer, was with his hammer brought to the former forme and beauty. His reward, besides the wonder and astonishment of the beholders, was that which precious things often procure their owners. For the Emperour asking whether any other knew this Mystery, this being denied, he caused his head (the only work-house of this secret) to be smote off, least Gold and Siluer should giue place q to Arte. The Emeralds grow in stones like Chrystall, and there are many of them in the Indies. But of these and other Gemmes it would be too tedious to write.

Pedro Ordonnez a Spanish Priest hath written of the profits which the Spaniards reape of Peru and the Indies. He sayth, that the Kings Reuenue thence accrueth to twelue Millions, which ariseth out of ten Springs, his fifths of the Gold and Siluer Mynes, great Meltings, Customes of Ports, Indian Tributes, Sale of Offices, the Cruzada, Tribute of Rents, Quick-siluer, Fines of Courts, and the ninth part of Ecclesiastical Rents. Of these Rents and other things worthy knowledge: See himselfe in the seuenth Booke of the last part of our *Pilgrimes*. Let vs now come to the Men, Beasts, Fowles and Plants of this New World, whereof wee will here promise a generall taste, and hereafter giue in the due places some other particular Relations.

m Some thinke that Quick-siluer cannot quite neld. 11 *De saluatione mirabili effectu vide Commium de occult. Nat. l. 2. c. 44.*

n *Dioscorides*

o *Acost. l. 4. c. 12. 13.*

p *Vid. Iam. Dous. praecid. ad Abion. l. 4. c. 9. Plin. l. 36. c. 26. Isid. l. 16. c. 15. Polycrat. l. 2. c. 5. Pancirol. de perdit.*

q *Dio. lib. l. 57.* in relating this stoute, gaues another reason of his death.

CHAP. II.

Of the first Knowledge, Habitation, and Discoueries of the New World, and the rare Creatures therein found, Beasts, Birds, Trees, Herbes, and Seeds.

§. I.

Whether the Ancients had any knowledge of America, and whence the Inhabitants, first came.

AFter these generall Discourses of the Americans, some other of like nature I hold not vnmeete to be handled, before wee come to the particular Regions: and first of the Men, whether the Ancients had any knowledge of them, how Men first came into these parts, and of the first Discoueries in the former Age. Concerning the first knowledge of these parts, it may iustly bee a question whether the Ancients euer heard thereof. For to say nothing of that opinion, that the Torrid Zone was not habitable in the opinion of the most; as wee haue shewed in the former Chapter: the allegations r are not such as can force vs so to beleeue that, whereto by

See of the late peopling America, *my Pilgrim. l. 2. c. 2.*

r *Hons. Gilbert Discou. Orte. Thesaurus Cluerij. W. Orbis Rate in Epist. Ded. n. 1. & 10. 3*

by great Authors they are alledged. *Seneca's* Prophesie is little to the purpose: New-worlds (sayth he) shall be in the last Ages discouered, and [b] *Thule* shall not be any longer the furthest of Nations. But all that *Chorus* seemes to a diligent Reader to intend nothing else, then to describe the vsuall affects, and effects of Shipping and Nauigation, agreeing to that *Argo*-Argument of the Tragedie, wherein *Iason* in that famous *Argo* sayling to Colcos, had obtayned *Medea's* loue, which he vnkindly requited. And had the Poet intended these Westerne Discoueries, he would neuer haue said,

Nec sit terris Vltima Thule: but
Nec sit tellus Vltima Gades.

as *Boterus* [c] obserueth; For the American Discoueries haue not beene by the way of Island, and Northward, but Southward: and this appeareth by the Verses before,

Nunc iam cessit Pontus & omnes,
Patitur leges——
Quelibet altum ymbaperrerat.
Nil qua fuerat, sede, reliquit
Peruius orbis, Indus geldum
Potat Araxem, Albin Perse
Rhenumq; bibunt; venient annis
Secula seris, quibus Oceanus
Vincula rerum laxet.

Sen. Medea Act. 2. Parcel. de Sud. de Insuet. b Thule, is by Mercator and others interpreted Iland: by Ortelius Tilemarke in Norway.

c Boterus. 21. lib. 4.

As for *Plato's* [d] *Atlantis*, and *Tertullians* [e] *Aeon* borrowed of him, *Acosta* alledgeth diuers *Platonikes*, *Proclus*, *Porphyrie* and *Origen*, which interpret *Plato* after a mysticall sense: and prooueth by the words of *Plato* himselfe, that they can be no true History. The like allegations hath *Marsilius Ficinus* in his Commentaries vpon *Timaeus* and *Critias*, how soeuer hee alledgeth *Crantor*, and some others which esteeme it a bare History: to which yet his thousands of yeeres before the Floud, deny truth and credit, although we interpret them of the yeeres of the Moone. *Ficinus* sheweth both their Allegoricall and his Anagogicall interpretation. But the Discourse of *Plato* cannot agree, if it were a History, to America, both because it placeth *Atlantis* at the mouth or entry of the Straits by *Hercules* Pillars, whence this is by a huge Sea separated: and that is not said still to continue land, but by an Earth-quake to haue sunke and become Sea. That which is cited out of *Aristotle* his *Admiranda auditiones*, if any reade the place, may appeare to be some neerer Iland, and neyther Iland nor Continent of America. Neyther can I credit that which [f] *Oviedo* supposeth of the Hesperides Ilands, cited out of *Pliny*, *Mela*, *Solinus*, dawbed ouer with Morter, borrowed of fabulous *Berosus*, and the Poets, as if in those first Ages of the World they had beene Spanish Inheritance, and none other then *Hispaniola*, or some other of the Ilands or mayne land of this New World, the Histories whereof might perhaps mooue *Columbus* to these Discoueries.

d Plato's Discourse hereof in his *Timaeus*, is englished by *R. Robs* in the Preamble of the Decads. *Vid. Ram. pref. ad vol. 3.*
e *Tertul. de Pal. & in Apologet. Augst. l. 2. c. 22. Plut. de facie in orbe Lunæ.*
f *Ouied. Gen. hist. l. 2. c. 3.*

Out of *Plutarch* and other Histories of the Carthaginian, Phœnician, and Tyrrhenian Nauigations they haue coniectures, but very vncertaine, and obscure: and those things, which *Diodorus* reports of that Iland, agree nothing to the New-World which had not attayned to that ciuility he there mentioneth, before the Spaniards arriball. And by his discourse it seemes rather to be some of the Ilands of Africa, then America, if the History be true. Neyther could g such long Voyages so farre off from any land, be performed without the helpe of the Compasse, which was first found thirteene hundred yeeres after Christ, by *Iohn Goia* of Melfi, according to that Verse of *Panormitan*, h *Prima dedit nautis vsum Magnetis* i *Amalphis*. *Gomarra* k citeth *Blondus*, and *Maffaus*, *Giraldus*, witnesses of this Melfian inuention, saue that hee cals him not *Iohn*, as *Ortelius* doth, but *Flauius di Malphis*. And in the tempests, which happened among the Ancients, l it seemes that for want of this skill, they wandered very vncertayne, but as the Sunne or Starres, by returne of their desired light, after the tempests ended, directed them.

g Ortel. in Chorter. 6.
h *Antonius Panorm.*
i *Amalphis in Lucenia* in the Kingdome of Naples.
k *F. Gom. hist. gen. cap. 9.*
l *Atlas 27. 20. Virg. Æneid. 1. Seneca vb. sup.*

Yet I will not say, but that in former times, some ships might come sometime by casualty into those parts m but rather forced by weather, then directed by skill; and this it is likely that some parts of America haue beene peopled. This I much doubt; whether their Science in Nauigation was such, as that they would voluntarily aduenture, and could happily effect this Voyage to and from the West Indies. The most probable Historie in this kind is (in my minde) that of n *Madoc ap Owen Gyneth*, who by reason of ciuill conventions, left his Country of Wales, seeking aduentures by Sea, and leaving the Coast of Ireland North, came to a Land vnknowne, where he saw many strange things.

m Of the supposed former Discoueries of the new world, read *Ortel. Thes. Chorte. 6.*
n D. *Powell* history of Cambria, *p. 237 A.D. 1170.*

This by D. *Powell*, and Master *Humfrey Lhuyd*, is thought to be the Continent of the New World,

World, confirmed herein by the speech of *Mutezuma*, professing his Progenitors to be strangers; and so were all the Mexicans to those parts, as the History in the eight Chapter following will shew: and by the vse of certaine Welch words, which *David Ingram* obserued in his trauell through those parts. The History addeth that hee left certayne of his people there, and comming home for more people, returned thither with ten sayle. Howsoeuer; it is certayne, that the prints of British Expedition are in manner worne out, and no signe thereof was found by the Spaniards: Onely they vied a Crosse in Cumana: in the Iland of Acuzamill, the same was worshipped: but without any memory of Christ, or any thing sauouring that way: & might as well be there without any Christians erecting, as those Crosses which in the sixt Booke we haue shewed, were in the Temple of *Serapis*, at Alexandria.

Moreouer some Authours deny that any such Crosses were there found, and brand the report for a Fiction. As for *Mutezuma* being a stranger, it might be so, and yet his Progenitors of some other parts of America. And the words of Welsh are q very few, which, as it happens in any other Language, might by some chance come to passe. But if any be desirous to beleeue, that this *Madoc* peopled the Continent or Ilands of America, rather then the Terceras, or some of the African Ilands, I will not hinder, nor will I runne too much out of compasse, in pleading for the Compasse, as which onely can direct in such spacious Seas. Yet of this opinion is that Learned and iudicious Author, *Iosephus Acosta*, who diligently discussing this question, How men passed first to the Indies; largely, and learnedly contendeth, that they came not thither purposely, if they came by Sea, but by distresse of weather; and yet finds no lesse difficulty (that way) in the transporting beasts; especially wilde, and vnprofitable beasts, which is not like any would take into the ship with them, much lesse conuey them ouer so huge an Ocean. At last hee concludeth, that although some might arriue there by shipwrack, & tempest of weather, yet is it most likely that the first Inhabitants (descended of *Adam & Noah, of which one r blood God hath made all Mankind, to dwell on all the face of the Earth, and hath assigned the bounds of their habitation*) passed thither by some place where the Continent of our World ioyneth with America: or where the Ilands thereof are found fit Mediatours for this passage, being not farre distant from the Land. And this on the North parts of the World (where they place that fabulous Streight of Anian, not yet certaynly discouered) may be so: besides that, on the South, men might passe from the Coasts of Malacca to Iaua, and so to the South Continent, and from thence by the Magellane Streights into America. Groneland is found to bee the same Continent with Estotiland on the North. Some Negro's by force of tempest, it is probable, haue passed hither, because in Careca some haue beene found, betweene Saint *Martha* and Cartagena. Of whom *Iohn t de Castellanos* writeth.

Son todos ellos Negros comocueros, &c. They are all (saith hee) as blacke as Ruiens. And of this minde is *Botero*, and those French Worthies, *Du Bartas* and *Philip Mornay*. It is not likely that the beasts could otherwise passe, but by the Continent, or by Ilands not farre off from the Continent, or from one another. Master *Brereywood*, a man learned and iudicious, in his Posthume worke u of Languages and Religions, affirmeth that America receiued her first Inhabitants, from those parts of Asia where the Tartars first inhabited. For those parts of America being most replenished which respect Asia; and therebeing no token of the Arts or industry of China, India, or Cataya, in many things also they seeming to resemble those old Tartars: and their Countrey being eyther not at all, or least of all other, seuered from the North parts of America: he concludeth as aforesaid. A man may with like probable coniecture bring them from the Samoyeds bordering Northward from Russia, and the Laplanders, which by Northerne Ilands (whereof there are some daily discouered) might by passing from one to another, seate themselues in Greenland, Gronland, Estotiland and other parts, neere to, or vpon America. For the Inhabitants of the one are much like to the other. And thus by many wayes Gods Prouidence might dispose Inhabitants to these parts; that wee speake not of the South vnknowne Continent, which is supposed to extend it self to the Line, and from the Ilands of Asia might easily receiue, and conuey Inhabitants hither. As for *Genebrardi* deriuation of the Americans from the ten Tribes, prouued by the dreames of *Esdras*, elsewhere alledged with like truth for the Tartars, and some inscriptions out of *Thenet*, they which will may beleeue.

Heere also ariseth another question, how these beasts could passe from the parts of the knowne World, where none such are knowne? to which it may be answered, That God hath a pointed to euery Creature his peculiar nature, and a naturall instinct, to liue in places most agreeing to his nature: as euen in our World, *Non omnis fert omnia tellus*: Euery Countrey hath not all Creatures: the Elephant, Rhinoceros, Riuer-horse, Crocodile, Camell, Camelopardalis, and others, are not ordinarily, and naturally in Europe: nor the Zebra in Asia or Europe: and the like may be said of many other Creatures.

Now,

o *Dan. Ingram. Hak. vol. 3. p. 463. to 3. Meredith Hanmer. Rise & Growth of Owen* make mention of this *Owen* Nauigation. See *Hak. vol. 3. p. 1. p. 8. And* cites Crosse in Cumana, which *Herrera* denieth A Crosse ten foot long, to which they prayed in Acusamil for rame. *Gomar. hist. of Cortes. part. 1. & gen. hist. part. 2. c. 81.*

p Thee or foure words.

r *Acts 17. 27. Ortelius* in his Map of *Mare Pacificum*, affirmeth that the people of America in like manner were peopled from Europe by Groenland, Island, Frisland, &c.

t *Io. de Castellanos.*

u *Du Bartas Colonies. Mornay. de verit. Christ. Relig. Botero vbi sup.*

u *Gap. 13.*

Brereto. Chron. 1. & Cl. Dietr.

Now, as in the Arke it selfe, (the Cradle of Man, and stall of Beasts,) wee must not onely obserue Nature and Art, for the making and managing thereof, but a higher and more powerful hand: euen so in dispencing the creatures which came from thence, they chose places by their owne naturall instinct, and man disposed by his industrie, according as he hat vse of them; but most of all, the secret and mighty prouidence of God co-working in those works of Nature and industry, and (in likelihood) infusing some more speciall and extraordinarie instinct in that replenishing and refurnishing of the World, [x] *Assigning them their seasons and bounds of habitation*, hath thus diuersified his workes, according to the diuersities of places, and sorted out to each Countrey their peculiar creatures. As for the comming by ship, it is for the beasts improbable, for the men (by any great numbers, or of any set purpose) vnlikely (except as before is said) seeing in all America they had no shipping, but their Canoes. The beasts also haue not bin found in the Ilands, which are in the Continent. And if any hereunto will adde a supposition, that there might be some Ilands or parts of the Continent in times past, which is now swallowed by the mercilesse Ocean, so that then there might be a way, which now is buried in the waues: (as some [y] suppose) of *Plato's Atlantis*, placed at the mouth of the Streits, or *Hercules* Pillars, which yet they would haue to be America, and some of the [z] Sea betwixt Douer and Callis, once one firme Land (as they doe imagine) I list not to contradict them.

As for the [a] Indians owne report of their beginning, which some ascribe to a Fountaine, others to a Lake, others to a Caue, or what other opinion they conceiue thereof, we shall more fitly obserue in their proper places, discoursing of their Religions and Opinions. Now for the first certain Discouery of this New World, the World generally ascribeth it to *Columbus*, and worthily: but *Columbus* himselfe is said to haue receiued his instructions from another.

x *Act.* 17. 26.

y Sir *Humfrey Gilberts* Discouerie of the North-West. *Plato's* owne Discourse is that it was swallowed by an Earthquake.

z R. *Verstegans* Antiquities.

a *F. G. histor. gener. part.* 2. *cap.* 13. *l. Mar. lib.* 10. *cap.* 3.

§. II.

Of Christopher Colon, *or* Columbus, *his first Discouerie, and three other Voyages.*

THis Historie is thus related by *Gomera*, and *Ioannes Mariana*: A certaine Caruel, sayling in the Ocean, by a strong East winde long continuing, was carried to a Land vnknowne, which was not expressed in the Maps and Cards. It was much longer in returning, then in going: and ariuing, had none left aliue but the Pilot, and three or foure Mariners, the rest being dead of famine and other extremities; of which also the remnant perished in few dayes, leauing to [a] *Columbus* (then the Pilots host) their Papers, and some grounds of this Discouerie. The time, place, countrey, and name of the man is vncertaine: some esteeme this Pilot an Andaluzian, and that he traded at Madera, when this befell him: some a Biscaine, and that his trafficke was in England and France; and some a Portugall, that traded at the Mina: some say hee ariued in Portugall; others, at Madera, or at one of the Azores: all agree that he dyed in the house of *Christopher Columbus*. It is most likely at Madera. This Relation (as it hath no witnesses to proue it, the whole company being dead; nor any good circumstances, so) *Benzo* and *Ramusius* [b] plainely affirme it to be a fable, and a Spanish tricke, enuying a Forrenner and Italian that glory, to be the first finder of the Indies. And the most sincere and iudicious of the Spaniards themselues esteeme it but a tale, as appeares by the testimonie of *Gonzalo Fernando de Oueido* in his *Summary*, and more fully in his *generall Historie of the Indies*. They shew, and so doth he which then liued in the Court of Spaine, *Peter Martyr*, another cause that moued *Columbus* to this Discouery, and not that Pilots papers or [d] reports. For, he being a Mariner vsed to the Sea from his youth, and sayling from Cales to Portugall, obserued, that at certaine seasons of the yeere, the windes vsed to blow from the West; which continued in that manner a long time together. And deeming that they came from some coast beyond the Sea, he busied his minde so much herewith, that he resolued to make some triall and proofe thereof. When he was now forty yeeres old, hee propounded his purpose to the Senate of Genua, vndertaking, if they would land him ships, he would find a way by the West, vnto the Ilands of Spices. But they reiected it as a dreame.

Columbus frustrate of his hopes at Genua, yet leaues not his resolution, but goeth to Portugall, and communicates this matter with *Iohn* the second King of Portugall: but finding no entertainment to his suites, sendeth his brother *Bartholomew Columbus* to King *Henry* the seuenth of England, to solliciteth him in the matter, whiles himselfe passed into Spaine, to implore the aide of the Castilians herein.

a *Columbus* was borne at Cuqureo, or (as some say) at Nerui in the Territorie of Genua: hee was a Mariner from a child, and traded into Syria, and other parts of the East. After this he became a Master in making Seacards, he went to Portugall, to leaue their Nauigations on the coast of Africa, and there married, *Gom. cap.* 14. *K Eden.*

b *Hier. Benzo lib.* 1. *cap.* 5. *Ram. pref.* 3. *vol.*

c *Lib.* 2. *cap.* 2.

d *Gaspar Ens lib.* 1. *cap.* 2.

conclureth, that *Columbus* (moued with his owne coniectures to this discouerie) was confirmed further therein by this Pilot, which is said to dye in his house.

Bartholomew g vnhappily lighted on Pirats by the way, which robbed him and his company, forced him to sustayne himselfe with making of Sea-cards. And hauing gotten somewhat about him, presents a Map of the World to King *Henry*, with his Brothers offer of Discouerie: which the King gladly accepted, and sent to call him into England. But hee had speed of his suite before in Spaine, and by the King and Queene was employed according to his request. For comming h from Lisbone to *Paloi di Magner*, and there conferring with i *Martin Alonso Pinzon*, an expert Pilot, and Fryer *Io. Perez*, a good Cosmographer, hee was counselled to acquaint with these his proiects, the Dukes of Medina Sidonia, and of Medina Cæli: which yeelding him no credit, the Fryer counselled him to goe the Court, and wrote in his behalfe to Fryer *Fernand di Telauera*, the Queenes Confessor.

g *Fernand Columb. in vita patris Christophori, c.13 Hak. t.m.3. & Naug. c.Col. in Ni.Orb. Ouied lib.1. cap.4.*

h *Gomar. c.15. Herera* saith he first solicited the Catholike Kings but receiuing an answere to his discontent, hee made offer to the Duke.

Christopher Columbus came to the Court of Castile, *Anno* 1486. and found cold welcome to his suite, at the hands of the King and Queene, then busied with hot warres in Granada, whence they expelled the Moores. And thus remayned hee in contempt as a man meanely clothed, without other Patron then a poore Fryer, saue that *Alonso di Quintanuglia* gaue him his Dyet: who also at last procured him audience with the Archbishop of Toledo, by whose mediation he was brought before the King and Queene, who gaue him fauourable countenance, and promised to dispatch him, when they had ended the warres of Granada, which also they performed. Thus *Columbus* is set forth with three Carueels at the Kings charges, who because his treasure was then spent in the warres, borrowed sixteene thousand Ducats of *Lewes de Santa Angelo*: and on Friday the third of August, in the yeere of our Lord 1492. in a Vessell called the *Gallega*, accompanyed with the *Pinta* and *Ninna*, in which the *Pinzons*, Brethren, were a Pilots, with the number of an hundred and twenty persons, or thereabouts, set sayle for Gomera, one of the Canary Ilands, and hauing there refreshed himselfe, followed his Discouery. After many dayes hee encountred with that Hearbie Sea (whereof before we haue k spoken) which not a little amated and amazed the Spaniards, and had caused their k returne, had not the sight of some Birds promised him land not farre off. He also first taught the Spaniards to obserue the Sunne and Pole in their Nauigations, which till this Voyage they had not vsed, nor knowne.

i *Lib.7. cap.vlt.*
k *Pet. Mart. Dec.1.l.1.*
l *A.Bruno, lib.1 cap.6.*

But the Spaniards, after three and thirty dayes sayling, desperate of successe, mutined, and threatned to cast *Columbus* into the Sea: l disdayning much, that a stranger, a Genuois, had so abused them. But he pacified their enraged courages with milde speeches, and gentle promises. On the eleuenth day of October, m one *Roderigo de Triana*, espyed and cryed, *Land*, the best Musicke that might bee, especially to *Columbus*, who to satisfie the Spaniards importunity, had promised the day before, that if no Land appeared in three dayes, hee would returne. n One, the night before, had descryed fire, which kindled in him some hope of great reward at the Kings hand, when hee returned into Spaine, but beeing heerein frustrate, hee burnt into such a flame, as that it consumed both Humanitie and Christianitie in him, and in the agony of indignation made him leaue his Countrey and Faith, and reuolt to the Moores. But thee, *Columbus*, how can I but remember? but loue? but admire? Sweetly may those bones rest, sometimes the Pillars of that Temple, where so diuine a Spirit o resided: which neyther want of former example, nor publike discouragements of domesticall and forren States, nor priuate insultations of proud Spaniards, nor length of time (which vsually deuoureth the best resolutions) nor the vnequall Plaines of huge vnknowne Seas, nor grassie fields in *Neptunes* lap, nor importunate whisperings, murmurings, threatnings of inraged companions, could daunt. O name p *Colon*, worthy to be named vnto the Worlds end, which to the World's end hast conducted *Colonies*; or may I call thee *Colombo*, for thy *Doue-like simplicitie* and patience? the true *Columna* or Pillar, whereon our knowledge of this New World is founded: the true *Christopher*, which with more then Giant-like force and fortitude hast carried Christ his Name and Religion, through vnknowne Seas, to vnknowne Lands: which we hope and pray, that it may be more refined, and reformed, then Popish superstition, and Spanish pride will yet suffer. Now let the Ancients no longer mention *Neptuno*, or *Minos*, or *Erythræa*, or *Danaus*; to all which diuers authors diuersly ascribe the inuention of nauigation. Mysians, Tróyans, Tyrians, vaile your bonnets, strike your top-sayles to this *Indian-Admirall*, that deseueth the *top-saile* indeed, by aspiring to the top that sayling could aymeat, in discouering another *World*. Let Spaniards, French, English, and Dutch resound thy name, or His Name rather, q *whose Name who can tell?* that would acquaint Thee, and the World by thee, with newes of a New-World.

m *Gaspar Ens lib.1.cap.2.*

n *Columbi Nauigationes,3,2,3, 4.Ouied.l.2.c.5.*

o Of his death see *Ouied.l.3.c.9*

p His true name was *Colon*, which corrupty is called *Columbus*.

q *Prou.30.4.*

But lest we drowne our selues in this Sea of Extasie and Admiration, let vs goe on shoare with *Columbus* in his new discouered Hands. And first mee thinkes I see the Spaniards, yesterday in mutinie, now as farre distracted in contrary passions, some gazing with greedie eyes

eyes on the desired Land, some with teares of ioy, not able to see that, which the ioy of seeing made them not to see: others embracing, and almost adoring *Columbus*, who brought them to that sight: some also with secret repinings enuying that glory to a strangerbut bytuing in their by ting enuie, and making shew of glee & gladnesse all new awaked out of a long trance, into which that Step-mother-Ocean, with dangers, doubts, dreads, delpaires had detested them, reuiued now by the sight of their mothers earth, from whom in vnknowne armes they had beene so long weaned and detayned. On shoare they goe, and felling a tree make a Crosse thereof, which there they erected, and tooke possession of that New World, in the name of the Catholike Kings. This was done on the eleuenth of October, *Anno* 1492. in the Iland Guanahani, one of the Lucai, which *Columbo* named *San Salvatore*: from whence hee sayled to Baracoa, a Hauen on the North side of the Ile Cuba, where hee went on Land, and asked of the Inhabitants for Cipango (so doth *Paulus* call Iapan.) They vnderstanding him of Cibao (where are the richest Mynes of Hispaniola) signed him, that it was in Haiti, (so was the Iland then called) and some of them went with him thither.

What worldly ioy is not mixed with some disaster? Their Admirall heere sphitteth on a Rocke, [a] but the men are saued by the helpe of the other ships. This fell out in the North part of Hispaniola (so named by them) where they had sight of Inhabitants, which seeing these strangers, ranne all away into the Mountaynes. One woman the Spaniards got, whom they vsed kindly, and gaue her meate, drinke and clothes, and so let her goe. She declaring to her people the liberalitie of this new people, easily persuaded them to come in troupes to the ships, thinking the Spaniards to be some Diuine Nation, sent thither from Heauen. They had before taken them for the Caribes, which art certaine Cannibals, which vsed inhumane huntings for humane game, to take men for to eate them; Children likewise, which they gelded to haue them more fat; and then to deuoure them: the women they are not, but vsed them for procreation, and if they were old, for other seruices. The Ilanders had no other defence against them but the wooddy Hills, and swiftest heeles to which they betooke them at the Spaniards arriuall, thinking them (as is said) to be Cannibals. And such haue they since proued in [b] effect, not leauing of three Millions of people which heere they found, 200. persons, and that long since.

The Deuill had forewarned them of this by [c] Oracle, that bearded Nation should spoyle their Images, and spill the bloud of their children, as we shall see in the particular Treatate of Hispaniola. Nothing more pleased the Spaniards then the Gold; which the naked Inhabitants exchanged with them for Bels, Glasses, Points, and other trifles.

Columbus obtained leaue of *Guacanarillus*, the Cacike or King, to build [d] a Fort, in which he left eight and thirty Spaniards, and taking with him sixe Indians, returned to Spaine, where he was highly welcomed of the King and Queene. Some controuersie fell out betweene *Columbus*, and one of the *Pinzons*, Master of one of the Caruels, about leauing these men behind; but *Columbus* sent a Letter to reduce him vnto peace by the Indians, who held the Letter in almost religious regard, thinking it had some Spirit or Deitie, by which they could vnderstand one another being absent.

The Pope [e] (then a Spaniard) *Alexander* the Sixt, hearing of this, diuided the World, by his Bull, betwixt the Portugals and Spaniards: bearing date the fourth of May, *Anno* 1493. drawing a Line a hundred leagues beyond the Ilands of Azores and Cape Verde, this *Alexander* giuing (more then Great *Alexander* could conquer) the East to the one, and West to the other. The Bull is become an Vnicorne [g], and his two hornes are now growne into one, in the writing of those two States.

Columbus graced with the the title of Admirall, & enriched with the tenths of the Spanish gaines in the Indies, is sent a second time, with his brother *Bartholomeus*, who was made *Adelantado*, or Deputie of Hispaniola. They had allowed them for this Expedition, small, and great, seuenteene Sayle, and fifteene hundred men. The first Iland, hee espyed in his second Nauigation, he called *Dessoada*, or *Desired*, because he had longed to see land. Arriuing in Hispaniola, he found the Spaniards which he had left there, that they were now not left, nor any where to be found. The Indians had murdered them, and laid the blame on the Spanish insolencies.

Hee now built and peopled the Towne of Isabella, which was their chiefe place of Residence and gouernment, which is in the yeere a thousand foure hundred ninetie eight; were remoued to the City of *San Dominico*. They built also the Fort of S. *Thomas*: but both in the one and the other, the Spaniards died of famine through the Indians vnkindnesse, who, vnwilling to haue such Neighbours, would not plant their Maiz and Iucca; and so starued both themselues and their guests. As for the Rocke, the Spaniards in this Voyage got them of the Indian women, and brought them into Spaine, as *Ouiedo* of his owne knowledge

a Some thinke *Columbus* did run on ground of purpose, that he might leaue some behind.

b *Bart. de las Casas, Hispani crudelist.*

c History of Chi. *a.p.* 322. *H. Ouiedo l.1. c.8.*

d The Fort of the Natiuity in Hispaniola.

e *Alexander* a wicked Pope. *Guicciard l.1.* & he of whose daughter *Lucretia Pontanus* writeth that she was *Alexandri Filia, Sponsa, Nurus* abused by the incestuous lusts of the Father and his two Sonnes.

f was Author of the Bull, whereby the Spaniards challenge the new World for theirs.

g *Sept. 25. 1493.*

a Ouied. l.1. c.13
b Ramus. in prefat. ad vol. 3.
Ouied. l. 3. c. 6.

a reporteth of his owne Country-men: and they, after paid the Indians b (in recompence) with a disease as deadly and infectious to them, which consumed thousands, and was neuer before knowne among st them: I meane, the small Pocks. The other were improperly named of the French, or of Naples, seeing that in those wars of Naples, which the Spaniards mayntayned against the French, some carryed this disease with them thither out of Spaine, and communicated the same both to the French and Neapolitans, having beene vsuall and easily curable, in the Indies. Another Disease also assaulted them of a little kinde of Fleas called Niguas, which would eate into, and breed in the flesh, and haue made many lose their toes.

Columbus at this time discouered Cuba and Iamaica with the Neighbour-Iles. Returning to Hispaniola, he found his Brother and the Spaniards in dissention and separation, and punishing the Au hours of sedition, returned home. In the yeere of our Lord, 1497. hee made his third Voyage, and then touched on the Continent; discouered Cubagua, Paria, and Cumana. 1.

But *Roldanus Ximenius* raysing a Rebellion, and accusing the *Columbi* to the King, effected that *Bouadilla* was sent Gouernour into *Hispaniola*, who sent the two Brethren bound as Prisoners to Spaine: vnworthy recompence of the worthy attempts of these Worthies. The King freeth them, and employeth *Christopher* in a fourth Voyage, *Anno* 1502. in which *Ouandus* the Gouernour forbade *Columbus* the first finder to land on Hispaniola. c Hee then discouered Guanaza, Higuera, Fondura, Veragua, Vraba, and leasned newes (as some say) of the South Sea. He stayed at Iamaica to repaire his Fleete, where some of his men were sicke, and they which were found in body, were more then sicke, froward and tumultuous in behaiour, and many left him. Vpon this occasion the Ilanders also forsooke him, and brought in no victuall, Herewith *Columbus*, ney ther able to abide nor depart, was driuen to his shifts, no lesse admirable for subtlety then resolution. d He told the Ilanders, that if they did not bring him in prouision, the Diuine Anger would consume them 12 signe whereof they should see in the darkened face of the Moone within two dayes. At that time hee knew the Moone would bee eclipsed; which the simple Ilanders seeing, with feare and griefe humbled themselues to him, and offered themselues readie to all kinde and dutifull Offices. 2.

c Gas. Ear. lib. 1. cap. 5.

d Vide l. 5. c. 16 pag. 452.

At last, returning into Spaine, hee there dyed, *Anno* 1506. His body was buried at Siuill in the Temple of the Carthusians. This was the end (if euer there can bee end) of *Columbus*. *Pinzonus* e one of *Columbus* his Companions, by his example inuited, made new Discoueries, and *Vespucius*, and *Cabota* and many other, every day making new searches and plantations, till the World at last is come to the knowledge of this New World almost wholly. The particulars will more fitly appeare in our particular Relations of each Countrey. 3.

e Navigationes, Vinc. Pinzoni. Nam. Ab. Vesp. Seb. Cabota. vid. Hak. tom. 3.

§. III. 4.

Of the Beasts, Fowles and Plants in America.

AFter this Discourse of the men in those parts, let vs take some generall view of the other Creatures, especially, such as are more generally dispersst through the Indies. I haue before noted, that America had very few of such Creatures as Europe yeeldeth, vntill they were transported thither: and therefore they haue no Indian names for them, f but those which the Spaniards that brought them, giue vnto them: as Horse, Kine, and such like. They haue Lions, but not like in greatnesse, fiercenesse, nor colour to those of Africa. They haue Beares in great abundance, except on the North parts. They haue store of Deere, Bores, Foxes, and Tygres, which (as in Congo) are more cruell to the Naturals then to the Spaniards. These beasts were not found in the Ilands, but in the Continent; and yet now in those Ilands, Kine are multiplyed and growne wilde, without other Owner then such as first can kill them: g the Dogges likewise march by troupes, and endammage the Cattle worse then Wolues. Their Swine did multiply exceedingly, but (as an Enemy to their Sugars, a great commoditie in Hispaniola, where *Anno* 1535. *Oiuedo* reckons almost thirty Ingenions, the number daily increasing) they were forced to root out this rooting kind of beasts. This Iland hath stored the other about it with store of Horse and Mares which are sold very cheape. For Kine, the Bishop of Venezuela had sixteene thousand head of that kind of beasts, and more: others possessed thousands also, and some killed them only for their Hides, of which were shipped from hence for Spaine, *Anno* 1587. 35444. and from New Spaine 64350. as *Acosta* relateth. 5. 6. 7.

f A rule to know what beasts were here naturall (for so such they haue names in their own Lingua.) and what transported: for these the Indians call by their Spanish names.

g *Acosta*. l. 1. c. 21 & l. 4. c. 34.

The

The Lyons are gray, and vse to climbe Trees: The Indians hunt and kill them. The Beares and Tygres are like those in other parts: but not so many. Apes and Monkies they haue of many kinds, and these admirably pleasing in their Apish tricks and imitations, seeming to proceed from Reason. A Souldier leuelling at one of them to shoot him, the silly beast dyed not vnreuenged, but hurling a stone as he other aymed at him, depriued the Souldier of his eye, and lost his owne life. They haue Monkies with long beards. *Acosta* [a] reds of one Monkie that would goe to the Taueme at his Masters sending, and carrying the pot in one hand, and money in the other, would not by any meanes depart with his money, till he had his pot filled with wine: and returning home, would pelse the boyes with stones, and yet haue care to carie his Wine home safe to his Master, neither touching it himselfe till some were giuen him, nor suffering other. They [b] haue a monstrous deformed beast, whose forepart resembleth a Fox, the hindder part an Apé, excepting the feet which are like a mans; beneath her belly she hath a receptacle like a purse, wherein she bestowes her yong vntill they can shift for themselues, neuer comming out of this natural nest, but to sucke.

Sheepe haue much encreased, and by good husbandry, in that plenty of pasture, would be a great commoditie: but in the Ilands the wilde Dogges destoy them: and therefore they thar kill these Dogges, are rewarded for it, as they which kill Wolues in Spaine. The Dogges [c] which the Indians had before, were snowted like Foxes; they fatted them to eat, and kept them also for pleasure: but they could nor barke: Such Dogges (we haue shewed) are in Congo. Their Staggers and [d] Deere in the South parts of America, haue no horns. They haue store of Conies. The Armadilla is an admirable creature, of which there bee diuers kinds: they resemble a [e] barded Horse, seeming to be armed all ouer, and that as if it were rather by artificiall Plates, opening and shutting, then naturall scales: it digs vp the earth as Conies and Moules.

The Hogs of the Indies haue their nauill vpon the ridge of their backs. They go in beards together and assaile men, hauing sharpe talons, like razors, and hunt their Hunters vp the tops of trees, whence they easily kill these enraged *Saines* (so they call them) biting the tree for anger. The *Danies* resemble small Kine, and are defended by the hardnesse of their hydes. The *Vicugne* somewhat resembleth a Goat, but is greater: they sheare them, and of their fleeces make Rugs and Couterings, and stuffes. In the stomacke and belly of this beast is found the Bezar-stone; sometimes one alone, sometimes two, three, or foure: the colour of which is blacke, or gray, or green, or otherwise; it is accounted soueraigne against poisons and venomous diseases. It is found in diuers sorts of beasts: but all chew the cud, and commonly feed vpon the snow and Rockes. The Indian sheepe they call *Lama*, it is a beast of great profit, not onely for food and raiment, but also for carriage of burthens: they are bigger then sheepe, and lesse then Calues: they will beare a hundred and fifty pound weight. In some places they call them *Amydas*, and vse them to greater burthens. *Huldericke Schmidel* [f] affirmes, that here liuing in the parts about the River of Plate, being hurt on his legge, rode forte leagues vpon one of them. They will grow restie, and will lye downe with their burthen, no stripes nor death able to asswage their mood: onely good words, and faire dealing, with gentle entreatie, sometimes diuers hoores together, can preuaile.

Of fowles they haue many kinds which we haue, as Partridges, Turtles, Pidgeons, Stock-Doues, Quailes, Faulcons, Herons, Eagles: and a World of Parrots, which in some places fly by flockes, as Pidgeons. There are also Estridges. Hens they had before the Spaniards arriued. They haue other kinds peculiar: The *Tominejos* [g] is the least in quantitie, the greatest for admiration and wonder. I haue oftentimes doubted (saith *Acosta*) seeing them fly, whether they were Bees or Butter-flyes; but in truth they are Birds. *Thenet* [h] and *Lerius* call it *Gouambuch*, or *Gouambuch*. They affirme that it yeelds nothing in sweetnesse of note to the Nightingale, and yet is not bigger then a Beetle, or Drone-Bee: One would say, *Vox est, preterea nihil*: but so could not any truely say, for euen other wise it is almost miraculous: Nature making this little shop her great store-house of wonder and astonishment, and shewing [i] her greatest greatnesse in the least Instruments. The Prouincial of the Iesuites in Brasil, affirmeth as [k] *Clusius* testifies, that the Brasilians called it *Ourissia*, which signifyeth the Sun-beame, and that it was procreated of a Fly: and that he had seene one, partly a Bird, and partly a Fly: first, coloured blacke, then ash-coloured, then rose-coloured, then red: and lastly, the head set against the Sunne, to resemble all colours, in most admired varietie. It flyeth so swift (saith *Oviedo*) that the wings cannot be seene. It hath a nest proportionable. I haue seene (saith he) one of these birds, together with her nest, put into the scales wherein they vse to weigh Gold, and both weighed but two Tomins, that is, foure and twenty graines. Haply, it is therefore called *Tominejos*, as weighing one *Tomin*. The feathers are beautified with yellow, greene, and other colours: the mouth like the eye of

a *Lib. 4. c. 38.* See *Car. Clus. de exot. & Oued. gen. hist. & summar. de histor.*

b *Sebastiers to. 2. Gens. de Qu. dr.*

c *Vincent. Pinzon.*

c *P. Martyr de Insulis.*

d *Oued. summar. 22.*

e *Carathystus equus.*

f *Hul. Schmidel cap. ou. A. Do. 1548.*

g *Aug. Carate hist. Peru. l. 1.*

h *And. Thuet cap. 41. Lerius mus. c. 11.*

i *Natura in magnis magna, in minimis maxima.*

k *Car. Clus. Exot. lib. 5.*

l *Oviedo summar. cap. 48.*

an Needle. It lieth on [m] dew, and the juice of herbs, but sitteth not on the Rose. The feathers, specially, of the necke and brests, are in great request for those feather-pictures, or portraitures, which the Indians make cunningly and artificially with these natural feathers, placing the same in place and proportion, beyond all admiration: The Indian Bats should not flea your light, and are for their rarity worthy consideration, but that wee haue spoken before somewhat of them.

They haue [n] Birds called *Condores*, of exceeding greatnesse and force, that will open a sheepe, and a whole Calfe, and eate the same. They haue abundance of Birds, in beautie of their feathers farre surpassing all in Europe, wherewith the skilfull Indians will perfectly represent in feathers, whatsoever they see drawne with the Pensill. A figure of Saint *Francis*, made of feathers, was presented to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*, whose eye could not discerne them to be naturall colours, but thought them pensill-worke, till he made tryall with with his fingers. The Indians vsed them for the ornaments of their Kings and Temples. Some Birds there are of rich commoditie, onely by their dung. In some Islands ioyning to Peru, the Mountaines are all white, like Snow, which is nothing but heapes of dung, of certaine Seafowle which frequent those places. It riseth many Ells, yea, many Launces in height, and is fetched thence in Boats, to hearten the Earth, which hereby is exceeding fertile.

To adde somewhat of the Indian Plants, and Trees. [o] *Mangle* is the name of a Tree, which multiplyeth it selfe into a wood (as before we haue obserued of it) the branches descending and taking root in the Earth. The Plane-tree of India hath leaues sufficient to couer a man from the foot to the head: but these, the *Coco*, and other Indian Trees, are in the East-Indies also, and there we haue mentioned them. *Cacao*, is a fruit little lesse then Almonds, which the Indians vse for money, and make thereof a drinke, holden amongst them in high regard. They haue a kinde of Apples [p] called *Ananas*, exceeding pleasant in colour and taste, and very wholesome, which yet haue force to eate iron, like *Aqua fortis*. The [q] *Mamayes*, *Guayauas*, and *Paltos* be the Indian Peaches, Apples and Peares. But it would bee a weary wildernesse to the Reader, to bring him into such an Indian Orchard, where he might reade of such varietie of fruits, but (like *Tantalus*) can taste none: or to present you with a Garden of their Trees, which beare flowres with other fruit, as the *Floripondio*, which all the yeere long beareth flowres sweet like a Lilly, but greater: the *Volusuchil*, which beareth a flowre like to the forme of the heart, and others, which I omit: The flowre of the Sunne is is now no longer the Marigold of Peru, but groweth in many places with vs in England. The flowre of the *Granadille* they say (if they say truely) hath the markes of the Passion, Nayles, Pillar, Whips, Thornes, Wounds, exceeding stigmaticall *Francis*.

For their Seeds and Craines, *Mays* is principall, of which they make their bread, which our English ground brings forth, but hardly will ripen: it growes, as it were on a Reed, and multiplyeth beyond comparison; they gather three hundred measures for one. It yeeldeth more blood, but more greise, then our Wheat. They make drinke thereof also, wherewith they will be exceedingly drunke: They first steepe, and after boyle it to that end. In some places they first cause it to be champed with Maids, in some places with old-women, and then make a leauen thereof, which they boyle, and make this inebriating drinke. The Canes and leaues serue for their Mules to eate. They boyle and drinke it also for paine in the back. The buds of *Mays* serue in stead of Butter and Oyle.

In some parts they make bread of a great root called *Yuca*, which they name *Cacani*. They first cut and straine it in a Presse, for the iuyce is deadly [r] poison: the Cakes dryed, are steeped in water before they can eate them. Another kinde there is of this *Yuca* or *Iucca*, the iuice whereof is not poison. It will keepe long, like Bisket. They vse this bread most in Hispaniola, Cuba, and Iamaica, where Wheat and *Mays* will not grow, but so vnequally, that, at one instant, some is in the grasse, other in the graine. They vse in some places, another root called *Papas*, like to ground Nuts, for bread, which they call *Chuno*. Of other their roots and fruits I am loth to write, left I weary the Reader with tedious officiousnesse. Spices grow not there naturally: Ginger thriueth well, brought and planted by the Spaniards. They haue a good kinde of Balme, though not the same which grew in Palestina. Of their Amber, Oiles, Gums, and Drugs, I list not to relate further. Out [s] of Spaine they haue caried great varietie of Plants, herein, Americo exceeding Spaine, that it receiueth and fructifieth in all Spanish Plants that are brought thither, whereas the Indian thriue not in Spaine: as Vines, Oliues, Mulberies, Figs, Almonds, Limons, Quinces, and such like. And, to end this Chapter, with a comparison of our World, with this of America; Our aduantages and prefermentsare many. [t] Our Heauen hath more Stars, and greater, as *Acosta* by his owne sight hath obserued, challenging those Authors which haue written otherwise, of fabling. Our Heauen hath the North-Starre, within three degrees, and a third of the Pole: their Crosier, or foure Stars set a-crosse, which they obserue for the Antarticke, is thirtie degrees off. The Sunne commu-

cateth

m *Lopez de Gomara hist. Mexicana, or* Conquest of the West Indies.

n *Acosta l.4.c.17.* o *See Mandeslo & Linschot.*

p *Lord Gerard* and other Herbarists, and chiefly of these and other the Indian plants and trees, see *Ouied. gen hist. Ind. l.7, 8, 9, 10, 11.* and of the beasts, fowles, fishes, in the 12, 13, 14, 15. bookes and also his *Summario.*

p *Th. Turner.* q *Acosta l.4.c.24.*

r In the Ilands, but not in all places of the Iorme Land.

s Spanish fruits thriue well in one place or other of the Indies.

t *Botero Rel. part. prima l.4.*

eateth his partiall presence longer to our Tropike, then that of Capricorne; remaining in the Southerne Signes, 178. dayes, one and twenty houres, and twelue minutes: in the Northerne 186. dayes, eight houres, and twelue minutes. *B. Keckerman, System. Astron. L. 1. Tycho, Brahe, L. 1.* reckoneth these a hundred foure score and sixe dayes, houres eighteene and a halfe, dayes eight, and one third part, *fere plus quam in Australi, &c.*

This want of the Sunne and Stars is one cause of greater cold in those parts then in these. Our Earth exceeds theirs for the situation, extending it selfe more between East and West (fittest for humane life) whereas theirs trends most towards the two Poles. Our Sea is more tauourable, in more Gulfes and Bayes, especially, such [u] as goe farre within Land, besides the Mid-Land-Sea, equally communicating her selfe to Asia, Africa and Europa. This conuenience of trafique America wanteth. Our beasts wilde and tame, are farre the more noble, as the former discourse sheweth.

u The Baltike, Persian, Arabian, Caspian Seas, &c.

For, what haue they to oppose to our Elephants, Rhinocerotes, Camels, Horses, Kine, &c. Neither were the naturall fruits of America comparable to those of our World, whence are their Spices, and the best Fruits, but from hence by transportation, or transplantation? As for Arts, States, Literature Diuine and Humane, multitudes of Cities, Lawes, and other Excellencies, our World enioyeth still the priuiledge of the *First-borne*. America is as a yonger brother or sister, and hath in these things almost no inheritance at all, till it bought somewhat hereof, of the Spaniards, with the price of her Freedome. On the other side, for temperature of Ayre, generally, America is farre before Africa, in the same height. For greatnesse of Riuers, Canada, Plata, and Maragnon, exceed our World. Whether Africa or America exceed in Gold, it is a question: In Siluer, Potozi seemes to haue surmounted any one Mine of the World, besides those of New-Spaine, and other parts, howsoeuer *Boterus* doubts. Yet, *Exitus acta probat.* And now America excels, because, besides her owne store, shee is so plentifully furnished with all sorts of liuing and growing creatures from hence, as euen now was shewed.

CHAP. III.

Of the Discoueries of the North parts of the New-World, and toward the Pole, and of Greene-Land, or New-Land, Groen-Land, Estoti-Land, Meta Incognita, *and other places into New-France.*

§. I.

Of the Discoueries made long since by Nicolo *and* Antonio Zeni.

AMerica is commonly diuided by that *Isthmus*, or necke and narrow passage of Land at Darien, into two parts; the one called Northerne America, or Mexicana; the other Southerne, or Peruana. This trendeth betwixt the Darien and Magellan Straights: that from thence Northwards, where the Confines are yet vnknowne. For it is not yet fully discouered, whether it ioyneth somewhere to the Continent of Asia, or whether Groen-Land, and some other parts, accounted Ilands, ioyne [x] with it. These were discouered before the dayes of *Columbus*, and yet remaine almost couered still in obscuritie, and were therefore fustly termed, *Meta Incognita*, by *Great* ELIZABETH the best knowne and most renowned Lady of the World. The first knowledge that hath come to vs of those parts, was by *Nicholas* and *Antony Zeni*, two Brethren, Venetians. Happy Italy, that first, in this last Age of the World, hath discouered the great Discoueres of the World, to whom we owe our *M. Paulus, Odericus, Vertomannus*, for the East, *Columbus, Vespucius, Cabot*, for the West; these noble *Zeni* for the North: and the first encompassing the Worlds wide Compasse, vnto *Pigafetta's* Discourse, companion of *Magellan* in his journey: that I speake not of the paines of *Ramusius, Boterus*, and a world of Italian Authors, that (I thinke more then any other Language) haue by their historiall labours discouered the World to its selfe. Vnhappie Italy, that still hath beaten the bush, for others to catch the Bird, and hath inherited nothing in these Easterne and Westerne Worlds, excepting thy Catholike claime, whereby, the Catholike

x Many haue written discourses of the possibility of a passage by the N. or N.W. as *Thorne*, S. H. *Gilbert, Cir. of threeatth*, alleaging some examples of a Fryer which passed it, the Portugall cards, &c.

y Discourse of *Frobishers* Voyages by *George Best*, Voyage 3.

tholike and Spanish Sword makes way for the Catholike-Roman Crowne and Keyes. Neither the Sword of *Paul*, nor the Keyes of *Peter*, for both these were *spiritual*. But to returne to our Venetians. [b] In the yeere a thousand three hundred and foure score, Mr *Nicolo Zeno* being wealthy, & of a haughty spirit, desiring to see the fashions of the world, built and furnished a Ship at his owne charges, and passing the Straits of Gibralter, held on his course Northwards, with intent to see England and Flanders. But a violent Tempest assaling him at Sea, he was carried hee knew not whither, till at last his Ship was carried away vpon the Ile of Frisland; where the men and most part of the goods were saued. In vaine seemes that deliuerie that deliuers vp presently to another Executioner. The Islanders like *Neptunes* hungry groomes or his base and blacke gard, set vpon the men whom the Seas had spared: but here also they found a second escape, by meanes of a Prince named *Zichmni*, Prince of that and many Ilands thereabours: who being neere hand with his Armie, came at the out-cry, and chasing away the people, tooke them into protection.

a 1. Cor. 4.

b The discoueries of M. *Nic.* and *Ant. Zeni*, gathered out of their letters by *Francisco Marcolina*. They are recited by Mr. *Hakluyt*, in his 3. volume. 121.

This *Zichmni* had the yeere before giuen the ouerthrow to the King of Norway, and was a great aduenturer in feates of Armes. Hee spake to them in Latine; and placed them in his Nauie, wherewith he wonne diuers Ilands. *Nicolo* behaued himselfe so well, both in saiuing the Fleet by his Sea-skill, and in conquest of the Ilands by his Valour, that *Zichmni* made him Knight and Captaine of his Nauie.

After diuers notable Exploits, *Nicolo* armed three Barkes, with which he ariued in Engroneland: where hee found a Monasterie of Friers of the Preachers Order, and a Church dedicated to St *Thomas* hard by a Hill, that casteth out fire like *Vesuuius* and *Aetna*. There is a Fountaine of hote water, with which they heat the Church of the Monasterie, and the Friers chambers. It commeth also into the Kitchin so boyling hote, that they vse no other fire to dresse their meat; and putting their Bread into Brasse Pots without any water, it doth bake as it were in an hot Ouen. They haue also small Gardens, which are couered ouer in the Winter time, and being watered with this water, are defended from the violence of the Frost and Cold, and bring forth Flowers in their due seasons. The common people astonished with these strange effects, conceiue highly of those Friers, and bring them presents of flesh and other things.

S. *Thomas* Monasterie in Groenland.

They with this Water, in the extremitie of the Cold, heat their Chambers, which also (as the other buildings of the Monasterie) are framed of those burning stones, which the mouth of the Hill casts forth. They cast Water on some of them, whereby they are dissolued, and become excellent white Lime; and so tough, that being contrued in building, it lasteth for euer. The rest, after the fire is out, serue in stead of stones to make Walls and Vaults, and will not dissolue, or breake, except with some iron tools.

Their Winter lasteth nine moneths; and yet there is a faire Hauen, where this water falleth into the Sea, not frozen: by meanes whereof there is great resort of wilde fowle and fish, which they take in infinite multitudes. The Fishers Boats are made like to a Weauers Shuttle, of the skins of fishes, fashioned with the bones of the same fishes, and being sowed together with many doubles, they are so strong, that in foule weather they will shut themselues within the same, not fearing the force either of Sea, or Winde. Neither can the hard-hearted Rocks breake these yeelding vessels. They haue also as it were a Sleeue in the bottome thereof, by which with a subtill deuice, they conuey the water forth, that soaketh into them. The most of these Friers spake the Latine Tongue.

A little after this *Nicolo* returned, and died in Frisland, whither his brother *Antonio* had before resorted to him, and now succeeded both in his goods and honour; whom *Zichmni* employed in the Expedition for Estotland: which happened vpon this occasion. Sixe and twenty yeeres before, foure Fisher-Boats were apprehended at Seaby a mighty and tedious storme; wherewith after many dayes, they were brought to Estotiland, aboue a thousand miles West from Frisland: vpon which, one of the Boats was cast away, and sixe men that were in it, were taken and brought to a populous Citie; where, one that spake Latine, and had beene cast by chance vpon that Iland, in the name of the King asked them what Country-men they were: and vnderstanding their case, he acquainted the King therewith. They dwelt there fiue yeeres, and found it to bee an Iland very rich, being little lesse then Iseland, farre more fruitfull. One of them said he saw Latine Bookes in the Kings Librarie, which they at this present doe not vnderstand. They haue a peculiar Language, and Letters or Characters to themselues. They haue Mines of Gold, and other Metals, and haue trade with Engroneland. They sow Corne, and make Beere and Ale. They build Barks (but know not the vse of the Compasse) and haue many Cities and Castles. The King sent these Fisher-men with twelue Barkes Southwards, to a Countrey which they call Drogio: in which Voyage escaping dreadfull Tempests at Sea, they encountred with Canibals at Land, which deuoured many of them. These Fishers shewing them the manner of taking Fish with

Estotiland.

Drogio.

with Nets, escaped: and for the presents which they made of their fish to the chiefe men of the Countrey, were beloued and honoured. One of these (more expert, it seemeth then the rest) was holden in such account, that a great Lord made warre with their Lord to obtayne him: and so preuayled, that he and his company were sent vnto him. And in this order was he sent to fiue and twenty Lords, which had warred one with another to get him, in thirteene yeeres space: whereby hee came to know almost all those parts; which, hee said, was a great Country, and (as it were) a New World. The people are all rude, and void of goodnesse: they goe naked, neyther haue they wit to couer their bodies with the Beasts skins, which they take in hunting, from the vehement cold. They are fierce, and eat their Enemies, hauing diuers Lawes and Gouernours. Their liuing is by hunting.

Further to the South west, they are more ciuill, and haue a more temperate Ayre: They haue Cities and Temples dedicated to Idols, where they sacrifice men, and after eate them; and haue also some vse of Gold and Siluer.

He fled away secretly, and conueying himselfe from one Lord to another, came at length to Drogio, where hee dwelt three yeeres. After this time finding there certaine Boates of Estotiland, he went thither with them: and growing there very rich, furnished a Barke of his owne, and returned into Friseland: where hee made report vnto his Lord of that wealthy Countrey. *Zichmni* prepared to send thither: but three dayes before they set forth, this Fisherman dyed. Yet taking some of the Mariners which came with him, in his stead, they prosecuted the Voyage, and encountred, after many dayes, an Iland; where ten men, of diuers Languages, were brought vnto them, of which they could vnderstand none, but one of Island. He told them, That the Iland was called Icaria, and the Knights thereof called *Icari*, descended of the ancient pedigree of *Dedalus*, King of Scots, who conquering that Iland, left his Sonne there for King, and left them those Lawes, which to that present they retayned. And, that they might keepe their Lawes inuiolate, they would receiue no stranger. Onely they were contented to receiue one of our men, in regard of the Language, as they had done those ten Interpreters.

Zichmni sayling hence, in foure dayes descried Land, where they found abundance of Fowle, and Birds Egges, for their refreshing. The Hauen they called Cape *Trinity*. There was a Hill, which burning, cast out smoake: where was a Spring, from which issued a certaine water like Pitch, which ranne into the Sea. The people of small stature, wilde, and fearefull, hid themselues in Caues. *Zichmni* built there a Citie, and determining to inhabit, sent *Antonio* backe againe, with the most of his people, to Friseland.

This History I haue thus inserted at large, which perhaps, not without cause in some thinges, may seeme fabulous; not in the *Zeni*, which thus writ, but in the Relations which they receiued from others. How soeuer; the best Geographers * are beholden to these Brethren, for that little knowledge they haue of these parts; of which none before had written: nor since haue there beene any great in-land Discoueries.

* *Abrah Ortel. Chart. 6. Hak. vol. 3. Botero. Magnus.*

§. II.

Discoueries made by SEBASTIAN CABOT, CORTREGALIS, GOMES, *with some notes of Greenland.*

SOmewhat since there hath beene discouered by *Gasper Corterogale*, a Portugall; *Stephen Gomes*, a Spaniard, and *Sebastian Cabot*: and more by later Pilots, of our Nation, but little of the disposition of the In-land people. Yea, it was thought to be all broken * Ilands, and not inhabited, but at certayne seasons frequented by some Saluages, which come thither to fish. Such as we can, in due order we here bestow.

Sebastian a *Cabot* reported to *Ramusio*, that in the yeere 1497. at the charge of King *Henry* the Seuenth, he discouered to the 67. degree and a halfe of Northerly latitude, minding to haue proceeded for the search of Cathay, but by the mutiny of the Mariners was forced to returne. The Map of *Sebastian Cabot*, cut by b *Clement Adams*, relateth, That *John Cabot*, a Venetian, and his Sonne *Sebastian*, set out from Bristoll, discouering the Land, called it *Prima Vista*, and the Iland before it, Saint *Iohn*. The Inhabitants weare beasts skinnes. There were white Beares and Stags farre greater then ours. There were plenty of Seales, and Soles aboue a yard long. He named (sayth *Peter* c *Martyr*) certaine Ilands d *Baccalaos*, of the store of those fish, which the Inhabitants called by that name, which with their multitudes sometimes stayed his ships. The Beares caught there fish with their clawes, and drew them to land, and ate them. In the time of e *Henry* the Seuenth (*William Purchas* being then Maior of London) were brought vnto the King three men, taken in the New-found Iland: these were clothed

* *Greenland* is now found a huge Continent to 78. by *Baffin*, An. 1616.

a *Ramus. in praef. in 3. Vol.*
b *Clem. Adams. Hak. to 3 p. 1. 6.*
c *P. Mart. Dec. 3. l. 6.*
d *Cod. fish.*

e *Rob Fabian. ap. Hak. vbi sup.*

clothed in beasts skins, and did eate raw flesh. But *Cabot* discouered all along the Coast to that which since is called Florida; and returning, found great preparations for wars in Scotland, by reason whereof, no more consideration was had to this Voyage. Whereupon he went into Spaine; and being entertayned by the King and Queene, was sent to discouer the Coasts of Brasill, and sayled vp into the River of Plate, more then six score leagues. He was made Pilot *Maior* of Spaine; and after that, *Anno* 1549. was constituted Grand-Pilot of England, by King *Edward* the Sixt, with the yeerely Pension of an hundred threescore and sixe pounds, thirteene shillings, foure pence; Where, in the yeere 1553. hee was chiefe dealer and procurer of the Discouery of Russia, and the North-east Voyages; made by Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, *R. Chancelour*, *Stephen Burrough*, and prosecuted by *Pet*, *Jackman*, and others, towards Noua Zemla, Persia, Tartaria, as in Master *Hakluits* first Tome appareth. Perhaps this Voyage of *Cabot* was the same which is mentioned by Master *Robert Thorne* in a Treatise of his written 1527. that his Father and *Hugh Elios*, a Merchant of Bristow, were the Discouerers of the New-found-lands: and if they had followed their Pilots minde, the Lands of the West Indies had beene ours.

f Sir *Hugh Willoughby*. *R. Chancelor*. *Steuen Burrough*. *Pet.* & *Jackmans* written by *Hugh Smith*, & all in *Hak.* to 1.

Anno 1500. g *Gasper Corteregalis*, a Portugall minding new Discoueries, set forth a ship at his owne charge from Lisbone; and sayling farre North, at last came to a Land, which for the pleasantnesse thereof he called *Greene*. The men, as he reported, were barbarous, brown-coloured, very swift, good Archers, clothed in Beasts skins. They liue in Caues or base Cottages, without any Religion, but obserue Sooth-sayings. They vsed Marriages, and were very iealous. *Petrus Pasqualigs* in a Letter concerning this Voyage, sayth, they brought from thence a piece of a gilded Sword, which seemed to be of Italian workmanship: a child also amongst them wore two siluer-earings, which by the workmanship appeared to bee brought from these parts, perhaps belonging to some of *Cabots* company. Returning into Portugall hee sayled thitherward againe, *Anno* 1501. But what became of him, none can tell. His Brother *Michael Corteregalis* the next yeere set forth two ships to make search for his Brother; but he also was lost. The King *Emanuel* grieued herewith, sent to enquire of them; but all in vaine. Their Brother *Vascow* could haue put himselfe on this aduenture, but the King would not suffer him. The name *Greene* vpon this occasion was withered, and the land was called h *Terra Corteregalis*. Thus farre *Osorius*. It reacheth, according to *Baterius* reckoning to the 60. degree. Let vs come to our owne: For of *Stenen* i *Gomes* little is left vs but a lost.

g *Osor. de rebus Emon. l. 2. fol. Pet. Pasqualis. 3. in N. orbe.*

h *Corterealis*, or *Labrador*, extendeth from 60. degrees to the Riuer of S. *Laurence*. *G. Bot. Ben.*

i *Steph. Gomes*. *Gasper. Ens. 2. c. 25. hist. Ind.*

This *Gomes* hauing beene with *Magellan* a few yeeres before, in his Discouery of the South Sea, inlarged with hopes of new Streights, in the yeere 1525. set forth to search this Northerly passage. But finding nothing to his expectation, he laded his ship with slaues, and returned. At his returne, one that knew his intent was for the Moluccas by that way, inquiring what hee had brought home, was told *Esclauos*, that is, slaues. Hee fore-stalled with his owne imagination of Cloues, had thought it was said *Clauos*, and so posted to the Court to carry first newes of this Spicy Discouery, looking for a great reward; but the truth being knowne, caused hee great great laughter.

1 Dithmar Bleskens.

1 Dithmar Bleskens in his *Treatise of Island* relateth, that in the yeere 900. the Nobilitie of East Frisia and Breame found that Iland, and 200. leagues from thence discouered Groenland, which he saith was named *per antiperistasin*, of the contrary, for want of greene and pleasant Pastures: and that by White-pooles, and misty darknesse, all their Naule but one ship perished.

m Written by *Iuer Boy* a principall man in the Bishops Court.

William Steere translated a m Booke; *Anno* 1608. before translated out of the North Language 1560. for the vse of *Henry Hudson*, in which is mention of diuers Townes of *Groenland*, as *Skagenford*, an Easterne Dorp or Village, and from thence more Easterly, *Beareford*, where was great fishing for Whales by the Bishops licence, the benefit redounding to the Cathedrall Church: *Alluberg sound*, where Bowle and Oxen were plentifull: Fendbrother Hauen, where, in Saint *Olaffs* time, some were drowned, and their ship cast away: Crosses being yet seene on their Graue-stones: Corsebought, where, by authority from the Bishop, they hunted for white Beares: from hence Eastward nothing but Ice and Snow. Westward stood Kodesford, a Dorp well built with a great Church, Wartidale, Peterlwicke, Saint *Olaffes* Monastery, and another of Saint *Benets*. Nuptse here were many warme waters, in the Winter intolerably hot, and medicinable. There was also a Church of Saint *Nicholas*, and many other Parishes and Villages; Desarts; Beares with red patches on their heads, Hawkes; Marble of all colours, great Streames, Nuts, and Acornes in the Hills, Wheate, Sables, Losses, &c. He affirmeth that it is not so cold there, as in Island and Norway. But lee ws obserue the Discoueries of our owne Countrimen.

§. III.
Discoueries by Sir MARTIN FROBISHER.

SIr *Martin Frobisher* n deserueth the first place, as being the first that in the dayes of Queene *Elizabeth*, sought the Northwest Passage in three seuerall Voyages. The first whereof was written by *Christopher* o *Hall*, the second, by *Dionise Settle*; the third by *Thomas Ellis*; and all in one Discourse by M. *George Best*: all which at large, the Reader may find in M. *Hakluyts* laborious Discouery of Discoueries. To speake briefly what may best beseit vs in our Pilgrimage; Sir *Martin Frobisher* sayled from Blackewall, June the sixteenth; and the seuenth of July, p had sight of Frisland, but could not get on shore for the abundance of Ice, which was also accompanyed with an extreame fogge, as double gard to that Iland (vnseertaine whether to fortifie it, or to imprison them.) The twentieth at Iuly he had sight of and high Land, which he named q Queene *Elizabethi* Fore-land. Here was he much troubled with Ice: but sayling more Northerly, descryed another Foreland, with a Great Gut, Bay, or Passage, which he entred, calling it *Frobishers Straits*, supposing it to be the diuision of Asia and America. Hauing entred threescore leagues, hee went on shore, and was encountred with mighty Deere, which rauna at him, with danger of his life. Here had he sight of the Saluages, which rowed to his ship in Boats of Seales skinnes, with a Keele of wood within them, like a Spanish Shallop, saue onely they be flat in the bottome, and sharpe at both ends. They eat raw flesh and fish, or rather deuoured the same: they had long blacke haire, broad faces, flat noses, tawny of colour, or like an Oliue (which neyther Sunne or Wind, but Nature in selfe, imprinted on them, as appeared by their Infants, and seemeth to be the generall Liuery of America.) Their apparell was Seales skins: their women were painted or marked downe the cheekes and about the eyes with blue strakes. These Saluages intercepted fiue of our men, and the Boat: Ours also tooke one of theirs, which they brought into England, where they arriued the second of October t 1576. Hee had taken possession of the Country in right of the Queene, and commanded his company to bring euery one somewhat, in witnesse of the same. One brought a piece of blacke stone, like Sea-coale, which was found to hold Gold in good quantity. Whereupon a second Voyage was made the next yeere 1577. to bring Ore. And comming to those Straits in Iuly, found them in manner shut vp with a long More of Ice, which sometime indangered their ships, especially on the nineteenth of that moneth. They found a great dead fish, round like a Porcpis, twelue foot long, hauing f a Horne of two yards, lacking two inches, growing out of the Snout, wreathed and straight, like a Waxe Taper, and might bee thought to be a Sea Vnicorne. It was broken in the top, wherein some of the Saylers said they put Spiders, which presently dyed. It was reserued as a Iewell by the Queenes commandement, in her Wardrobe of Robes, and is still at Windsore to bee seene. They went on shore, and had some encounter with the Inhabitants, which were of so fierce and terrible resolution, that finding themselues wounded, they leapt off the Rockes into the Sea, rather then they would fall into the hands of the English. The first fled. One woman, with her child, they tooke and brought away. They had taken another of the Sauages before. This Sauage in the ship seeing the Picture of his Countriman taken the yeere before, thought him to be aliue, and beganne to be offended, that he would not answere him, with wonder thinking, that our men could make men liue and dye at their pleasure. But strange were the gestures and behaiour of this man and the woman, when they were brought together; which were put into the same Cabbin, and yet gaue such apparant signes of shamefastnesse and chastity, as might bee a shame to Christians to come so farre short of them.

Where they could haue any Trade with the Sauages, their manner of Traffique was to lay downe somewhat of theirs, and goe their way, expecting, that our men should lay downe somewhat in lieu thereof; and if they like of their Mart, they come againe and take it: otherwise, they take away their owne, and depart. They made signes, that their *Catchoe*, or King, was a man of higher stature then any of ours, and that he was carried vpon mens shoulders.

They could not learne what became of the fiue men they lost the yeere before: onely they found some of their apparell; which made them thinke they were eaten. They laded themselues with Ore, and so returned. And with fifteene Sayle the next yeere 1578. a third Voyage for Discouery was made by the said Captayne and Generall. Hee went on shore the twentieth of Iune on Frisland, u which was named by them West England, where they espyed certayne Tents and People like those of *Meta Incognita*. The people fled, and found in their Tents a boxe of small nayles, Red Herrings, and Boords of Fure-tree well cut, with other things artificially wrought: whereby it appeareth, that they are workmen themselues, or haue trade with others. Some of them were of opinion, This was firme land with

n Sir *Martin Frob.*
o *Christ. Hall. Dionise Settle.* & *Thomas Ellis.*
George Best.
p 1576.

q Queenes Fore-land, and opposite thereto *Hals* Ile, in 62. degrees, 50. min.

r *Gasper Ens Lib. Hist. Ind. Occid. c. 26.* affirmeth that one *Iohn Scolue* a Polonian, this yeere 1576 sayled beyond Frisland and Groenland, & thence to Estotiland and Labrador.

f Such a horne was brought home two yeeres since, found on shore in *Greenland* by the Carpenter of *Iamas Potter* ship 7. foote & a halfe long, & sold since at Constantinople, reported to be good against poysons; and such a one was taken vp *Anno* 1588 in the Coast of Norfolke; and sold by an ignorant woman for 18. pences, which was also sold to be effectuall against poysons, as I was told by Mr. *Rob. Salmon* of *Leegh*, who had a piece of it.

t *Frisland* is in length 15. leagues: the Southern part of it is in the latitude of 57. degrees and one second. *Thomas Ellis.*

u *Meta*

Meta Incognita, or with Gronland; whereunto the multitude of Ilands of Ice, betweene that and *Meta Incognita* induced them. In departing from hence, the *Salamander* (one of their Ships) being vnder both her Courses and Boners, happened to strike on a great Whale with her full stemme, with such a blow, that the Ship stoode still, and neither stirred forward nor backeward. The Whale thereat made a great and hideous noyse, and casting vp his body and tayle, presently sanke vnder water. Within two dayes they found a Whale dead, which they supposed, was this which the *Salamander* had stricken.

The second of Iuly they entred in with the Straits, the entrance whereof was barred with Mountaines of Ice, wherewith the Barke *Dennis* was sunke, to the hinderance of their proiects. For in it was drowned part of a house, which they had intended to erect there for habitation. The men were saued. The other Ships were in very great danger, the Seas mustering Armies of yce souldiers to oppresse them, vsing other naturall stratagems of Fogges and Snowes to further these cruell designes.

These yce Ilands seeme to haue bin congealed in the winter further North, in some Bayes, u or Riuers, and with the Summers Sunne being loosed, and broken out of their naturall prisons, offer themselues to all outrages, whereto the swift Currents and cold Winides will conduct them. Strange it is to see their greatnesse, some not lesse then halfe a mile about, and fourescore fathomes aboue water, besides the vnknowne depth beneath, (the vsuall rule being, that onely the seuenth part is extant aboue the waues:) strange the multitude; strange the deformed shapes: if this be not more strange, that they sometimes faue with killing, and suffer men to moore their Anchors on them, and to get vpon them to worke against them, for the safegard of their Ships: That bloody enemies should entertaine them with disports, to walke, leape, shout, fortie miles from any Land, without any Vessell vnder them (according to M. *Best's* Riddle) and a hundred and ten miles from Land, should present them with running streames of fresh Waters, able to driue a Mill. The Flood was there nine houres, the Ebbe but three. A strong Current ranne Westwards. The people resemble much the Tartars, or rather the Samoeds, in apparell, and manner of liuing. It is colder here in 62. then 9. or 10. degrees more Northerly toward the Northeast, which (it seemeth) comes to passe by the Winides, East, and Northeast, which from the yce bring so intolerable a cold. The people are excellent Archers; a thing generall throughout America. Besides Sealer-skins, they vse the skinnes of Deere, Beares, Foxes, and Hares, for apparell, and the cases also of Fowles sowed together. They weare in Summer the hairy side outward; in Winter, inward; or else goe naked. They shoote at the fish with their darts. They kindle fire with rubbing one sticke against another. They vse great blacke Dogs, like Woolues, to draw their Sleds, and a lesse kinde to eate. They haue very thin beards. In the best of Summer, they haue Haile and Snow (sometimes a foote deepe, which freezeth as it falles) and the ground frozen three fathome deepe. They haue great store of Fowle, whereof our men killed in one day fifteen hundred. They haue thicker skins, and are thicker of Downe and Feathers then with vs, and therefore must be flayed. The Sunne was not absent aboue three houres and a halfe: all which space it was very light, so that they might see to write and reade.

u It seemeth they are of fresh waters, because the Ice is fresh, and the Sun melting the tops, causeth ris of fresh water to runne downe, which meeting together make a prettie streame.

Hence is it, that those parts neere the Pole are habitable: the continuance of the Sunnes presence in their Summer, heating and warming with liuely cherishment all Creatures: and in the Winter, by his oblique motion, leaving so long a twilight; and the increased light of x the Moone, the Sunnes great and diligent Lieutenant, the brightnesse of the Starres, and whitenesse of the Snow, not suffering them to be quite forlorne in darkenesse. The Beasts, Fowles and Fishes, which these men kill, are their houses, bedding, meat, drinke, hose, thread, shooes, apparell, and sayles, and boates, and almost all their riches. Besides their eating all things raw, they will eate grasse and shrubs, like our kine; and morsels of Ice, to satisfy thirst. They haue no hurtfull creeping things but Spiders; and a kinde of Gnat is there very troublesome. Timber they haue none growing, but as the vndermining water doth supplant & bring them from other places. They are great Inchanters. When their heads ake, they tye a great stone with a string into a sticke, and with certaine words effect, that the stone with all a mans force will not be lifted vp, and sometimes seemes as light as a feather, hoping thereby to haue help. They made signes, lying grouling with their faces vpon the ground, making a noyse downward, that they worship the Deuill vnder them. There is no flesh or fish which they find dead (smel it neuer so filthily) but they will eat it, without any other dressing. Their Deere haue skins like Asses, and feet large, like Oxen, which were measured 7. or 8. inches in breadth. There are no Riuers or running Springs, but such as the Sun causeth to comelof snow. Sometimes they will perboyle their meate a little, in kettles made of beasts skins, with the bloud & water which they drinke; & lick the bloudy knife with their tongues: This licking is the medicine also for their wounds. They seeme to haue trafike with other Nations: from whom they a small quantity of Iron. Their fire they make of heath & mosse. In their leather Boats they row with one oare faster, then we can in our Boats with all our oares. S. IIII.

x The Moone seeteth not not the Sun in the Polar regions; being in *Cancer*. See the Relations of the Dutch wintering in *Nouae Zembla*, in the third part of my *Pilgrimes*, & *W. Hedson* his reports of lighting Tobacco by the Sun with a Glasse at mid night.

§. IIII.

Discoueries by IOHN DAVIS, GEORGE WEYMOVTH, *and* IAMES HALL *to the North-West.*

MAfter *Iohn Danis* [a] in the yeere 1585. made his first voyage for the North-west discouery, and in 64. degrees, and 15. minutes, they came on shore on an Iland, where they had sight of the Sauages, which seemed to worship the Sunne. For pointing vp to the Sunne with their hands, they would strike their breasts hard with their hands: which being answered with like action of the English, was taken for a confirmed league, and they became very familiar. They first leaped and danced with a kind of Timbrel, which they strucke with a sticke. Their apparell was of beasts and birds skins, buskins, hose, gloues, &c. Some leather they had which was dressed like the Glouers leather. The 6. of August they discouered land in 66. deg. 40. min. They killed white Beares, one of whose forefeet was fourteene inches broad, so fat, that they were forced to cast it away. It seemed they fed on the grasse, by their dung, which was like to Horse-dung, they heard Dogs howle on the shore, which were tame: They killed one with a Collar about his necke: hee had a bone in his pisse; these it seemed were vsed to the Sled, for they found two Sleds.

a The voyage of M. Danis written by *Iohn Iames. Hac.Ha.* p.100

The next yeere he made his second voyage, wherein hee found the Sauage people tractable. They are great Idolaters, and Witches. They haue many Images which they weare about them, and in their Boats. They found a graue, wherein were many buried couered with Seales skinnes, and a Crosse laid ouer them. One of them made a fire of Turfs, kindled with the motion of a sticke in a piece of a board, which had a hole halfe thorow, into which hee put many things, with diuers words and strange gestures: our men supposed it to be a sacrifice. They would haue had one of the English to stand in the smoke, which themselues were bidden to doe, and would not by any meanes; whereupon one of them was thrust in, and the fire put out by our men. They are very theeuish. They eate raw Fish, grasse and Ice: and drinke salt-water, Heere they saw a whirlewinde take vp the water in great quantitie, furiously mounting it vp into the ayre, three houres together with little intermission. They found in 63. degrees, 8. minutes a strange quantitie of Ice in one entire masse, so bigge, that they knew not the limits thereof, very high, in forme of land, with Bayes and Capes like high-cliffe-land; they sent their Pinnasse to discouer it, which returned with information, that it was onely Ice. This was the 17. of Iuly, 1586. and they coasted it till the thirtieth of Iuly. In the 66. deg. 33. min. they found it very hot, and were much troubled with a stinging Fly, called *Muskito*. All the Lands they saw seemed to bee broken, and Ilands; which they coasted Southwards, till they were in foure and fifty and a halfe, and there found hope of a passage. In the same voyage [b] he had sent the Sun-shine from him in 60. degrees which went to Ireland, and on the seuenth of Iuly had sight of the Groenland, and were hindered from harbour by the Ice. They coasted it till the last of Iuly. Their houses neere the Sea-side were made with pieces of wood, crossed ouer with poles, and couered with earth. Our men played at foot-ball with them of the Iland.

b *Hen. Morgan.*

The third voyage was performed the next yeere, 1587. wherein Mr [c] *Danis* discouered to the 73. degree, finding the Sea all open, and forty leagues betweene land and land, hauing Groenland (which hath an Iland neere it to the West, for the loathsome view of the shore couered with snow, without wood, earth, or grasse to be seene, and the irksome noise of the Ice, called *Desolation*) in 59. on the East, and America on the West. The Spanish Fleet, and the vntimely death of Master Secretarie *Walsingham*, (the Epitome and summary of Humane worthinesse) hindered the prosecution of these intended Discouerie.

c *Iohn Danis* in his Hydrographicall description.

In the yeere 1602. Captain *George Weymouth* made a voyage of Discouery to the North-west, with two Fly-boats, set forth by the Muscouy Company: saw the South parts of *Groenland*, and had water in 120. fadome, blacke, as thick as puddle, and in a little space cleere, with many such enterchanges. The breach of the Ice made a noise as a thunder-clap, and ouerturning had sunke both their Vessels, if they had not with great diligence preuented it. They had store of Fogges, some freezing as they fell. In 68. deg. 53. min. they encountred an Inlet forty leagues broad, and sailed West and by South in the same, 120. leagues.

Iames Hall *An.* 1605. sailed to Groenland from Denmarke, and had like encounters of Ice, yeelding in the breach no lesse noise, then if fiue Canons had beene discharged with people also like those, which in *Frobishers* Voyage are mentioned; they make sailes of guts sowed together, for their fishing Boats, and deceiued the Seales with Seales-skin garments. Groenland is high, Mountainous, full of broken Ilands alongst the Coasts, Riuers nauigable, and good Bayes, full of fish. Betweene the Mountaines are pleasant Plaines and Vallies, such

Iames Hall his voyage to Groenland.

This Groenland is W. ward from Greenland 250. leagues. In Greenland are no people nor wood.

as a man would scarce beleeue. He saw store of Fowle; no beasts but blacke Foxes, and Deere. The people seemed a kind of Samoydes, wandering in Summer by companies for Hunting and Fishing, and remouing from place to place with their Tents and Baggage: they are of reasonable stature, browne, actiue, warlike, eate raw meat, or a little perboyled with bloud, Oyle, or a little water which they drinke: their apparell, beasts of fowles skinnes; the hairy or feathered side outward in Summer, in the Winter inward: their arrowes and darts with two feathers, and a bone-head: they haue no wood but drift: they worship the Sunne.

Anno 1606. He made a second Voyage thither: found their Winter houses built with Whales bones, couered with Earth: and Vaults two yards deepe, vnder the Earth, square. They call Groenland in their language *Secanunga*. Vp within the Land they haue a King carried on mens shoulders. The next yeere he sailed thither the third time: [a] and in a fourth Voyage [b] 1612. was slaine there by a Sauage, in reuenge (as was thought) for some of the people before shipped from thence. They haue Hares white as snow, with long furre: Dogs which liue on Fish, whose pisles, as also of their Foxes, are bone. Their Summer worke is to dry their Fish on the Rocks. Euery one, both man and woman, haue each of them a Boat, made with long pieces of Firre, couered with Seales skins, sowed with sinewes or guts, about twenty foot long, and two and a halfe broad, like a shittle, so light, that one may carry many of them at once; so swift, that no ship is able with any winde to hold way with them, and yet vse but one oare which they hold by the middle, in the middest of their Boat, [c] broad at both ends, where with they row forwards, and backwards at pleasure. Generally they worship the Sunne, to which they pointed at our approach (saith *Bassin*) striking on their brests, and crying *Ilyout*, not comming neere till you doe the same. [d] They bury in out-lands on the tops of Hills in the heapes of stones to preserue from the Foxes, making another graue hard by, wherein they place his Bow and Arrowes, Darts, and other his vtensils. They bury them in their apparell, and the cold keepes them from putrefaction.

Anno 1606. Mr *Iohn Knights* made a North-west voyage, lost his Ship, sunke with Ice, and was with three more of his company surprised by the Sauages: of whose language hee wrote a pretty Dictionary, which I haue seene with M. *Hakluyt*.

a This Voyage was written by *Iohn Hubert*.
b Written by *Will. Bassin*. *Allen.* sallowes of Redriffe told me *Hal* was slaine in 76. degrees.
c One of these Boats with the Oare is in Sir *Thomas Smithes* Hall in Philpot Lane.
d *Danis* mentions the same voy. 2. *Io. Knight.*

§. V.

Of King IAMES *his Newland*, alias, *Greeneland, and of the Whale and Whale-Fishing.*

I Will not heere beginne with records of Discoueries in these parts written two thousand yeeres since, out of which Mr Doctor *Dee* is reported to haue gathered diuers Antiquities, antiquated by Antiquitie, and rotten with age: nor to shew that King *Arthur* [e] possessed as farre as Greeneland; nor that Sir *Hugh Willoughby* discouered hitherto as some coniecture: but content my selfe with later Discoueries and Obseruations. Much hath been spent both of Cost, Industrie, and Argument about finding a more compendious way to the Indies by the Northwest, and by the North-East, and by the North. Of the first somewhat hath been spoken. Of the second were the Voyages of Master *Stephen Burrough*, *Pet.* and *Iacman*, our Countrey-men, and of the Hollanders in the yeere 1594. and the three following before by vs mentioned in a diuers [f] place, as appertaining to Asia: for they found themselues by Astronomical obseruation in a hundred and twelue Degrees fiue and twenty minutes of Longitude, and threescore and sixteene of Latitude in the place where they wintered. They had touched more Northerly in some parts (as is thought) of Greene-land, sailing along by the Land from fourescore Degrees eleuen minutes, vnto Noua Zembla. I omit their red Geese in one place of this Voyage, their azure-couloured Ice in another place, and the losse of their Ship in the Ice which constrained them to set vp a house to Winter in that Land of Desolation. This building they beganne about the 27. of *September* (*Stile Nouo*) the cold euen then kissing his New-come Tenants so eagerly, that when the Carpenters did but put a naile in their mouths (after their wont) the Ice would hang thereon, and the bloud follow at the pulling out. In *December* their fire could not heat them, their Sack was frozen, and each man forced to melt his share thereof before he could drinke it, their melted Beere drinking like water. They sought to remedie it with Sea-cole fire, as being hotter then the fire of Wood (which they had store of, though none there growing, by drifts) and stopped the chimney and doores to keep in the heat, but were suddenly taken with a swounding, which had soone consumed them, if they had not presently admitted the aire to their succor. Their shoes did freeze as hard as horns on their feet, and as they sate within doores before a great fire, seeming to burne on the fore-side, behinde at

e Lambert Apx. Sr *H. Willoughby*

f *L. 4. c. 17.* Nauig. 3. *Gerde Veir.*

This is also the effect of Charcole, where with in close roomes diuers haue beene smothered.

at their backs they were frozon white, the Snow meane-whiles lying higher then the house, which sometimes in clearer weather they endeuoring to remoue, cut out steps, & so ascended out of their house as out of a Vault or Seller. They were forced to vse (besides store of cloathes and great fires) stones heated at the fire and applyed to their feet and bodies, and yet were frozen as they lay in their Cabins: yea the cold not onely staid their Clocke, but insulted ouer the fire in some extremities, that it almost cast no heat; so that putting their feet to the fire, they burnt their hose, and discerned that also by the smell, before they could feele the heat. They supposed that a barrell of water would haue been wholly frozen in the space of one night, which you must interpret of their twelue houres glasse; for otherwise they saw no Sunne after the third of *November* to the 24. of *Ianuary*, reckoning by the new Calendar; a thing strange to be without the Sunne fifttie dayes before the Solstice, which happened after their account on *December* 23. and yet within forty one dayes after might see the vpper circle of the Sun-rising aboue the Horizon; which made great question, whether their Eyes had deceiued them, or the Computation of time in that long Night: which both being found otherwise by their obseruation and experience, caused no lesse wonder whether this timely approach should be attributed to the reflexion by the [b] water, or the not absolute roundnesse of the Earth in those parts, or the false accounting of the Solstice (or, which some affirme, the falshood of their calculations.) But I leaue this to Philosophers. Our Author affirmes, that when the Sunne had left them, they saw the Moone continually both Day and Night, neuer going downe when it was in the highest Degree, the twi-light also remaining many dayes, and againe they might see some day-light sixteene dayes before they saw the returne of the Sunne. The Beares which had held them besieged, and often endangered them, forsooke them and returned with the Sunne; the white Foxes all that while visited them, of which they tooke many whose flesh was good Venison to them, and their skins in the linings of their Caps good remedies against that extremitie of Cold. As for their feet, they vsed Pattents of wood, with sheepe-skinnes aboue, and many socks or soles vnderneath: they vsed also shooes of Rugge and Felt. These Beares were very large and cruell, some of them yeelding skins thirteene foot long, and a hundred pounds of fat, which serued them for Oyle in their Lampes, the flesh they durst not eate; some of them forfeiting their whole skinnes after they had eaten of the Liuer of one of these eaters; which deuoure any thing, not sparing their owne kinde. For the Hollanders hauing killed one Beare, another carried it a great way ouer the rugged Ice in his mouth in their sight, and fell to eating it; they made to him with their weapons, and chased him from his purchase, but found it halfe eaten, and then foure of them could scarcely carry the other halfe, when as the whole body had been very lightly carried in his fellowes mouth. As for the thin Diet which these Hollanders endured, and other discommodities, together with their returne in two open Scutes, wherein they sailed aboue a thousand miles, after ten moneths continuance in this desolate habitation; their dangers in the Ice which somewhat besieged them like whole Tents, Towns, and Fortifications; and other the particulars of this Voyage, I referre to the Author himselfe. Here I remember thus much for Greene-lands sake, on which in this Nauigation they are said to haue touched. How euer that be, they continued no trade nor Discouerie thither, till the English diuers yeeres after had made a new Discouerie, and found there a profitable Whale-fishing.

b M. Scory told me that on the Pike of Tenariffe they might see the Sun an houre sooner by this meanes.

In the yeere 1607. *Hen. Hudson* discouered these parts to the Latitude of fourescore, there naming a point of Land, *Hacklyts Head-land*; which name it still beareth. And *Ionas Poole* in the yeere 1610. was set forth by the Muscouy Company in the Amitie, and discouered diuers Sounds and Harbours here, with the Sea-Horses he killed, and other things found on shore, giuing such good Content to the Aduenturers, that He was by them employed the next yeere in the *Elizabeth*, with Master *Steuen Bennet* in the *Mary Margaret*, both which Ships were vnfortunately cast away; the Men and part of the goods were brought home by Master *Marmaduke* then there in a Ship of Hull.

Ex M. S. W. Baffin.

In the yeere 1612. were set forth three Ships from Holland, and one from Biscay, all hauing English Pilots, besides two sent thither by the Company, called the Sea-Horse and the Whale, vnder the Masters before mentioned. In the yeere 1613. many Ships were thither sent from France, Biskay, Holland, so that the Company addressed thither seuen warlike ships vnder the Command of Master *Beniamin Ioseph*, who without bloudshed disappointed those Strangers, ready to reape that which others had sowne, and either had not at all discouered, or wholly giuen ouer the busines. The next yeere 1614. eleuen good Ships, and two Pinasses, were employed to Greeneland, and three more not then ready, appointed to follow vnder the same Generall, which Voyage is in my hands, communicated to mee by my industrious Friend, a skilfull Mariner and Discouerer both in these and other parts, *William Baffin*, entertained in this Fleet. But the particulars would be (howsoeuer profitable

to our Mariner) tedious to our ordinarie Reader. They then discouered wel-neere to 81. For beyond that degree, our Author believes not that any hath beene. The names of diuers places, as Saddle Iland, Barren Iland. Beare Iland, Red Goose Iland, all betwixt 80. and 81. and Sir *Thos: Smiths* Inlet, Mauslin Sound, Faire Hauen, Sir *Thomas Smiths* Bay, Ice Sound, Bell Sound, with other places on or neere the Greater Ile of supposed Continent, I forbeare to recite, as not intending to instruct the Mariner so much as the Scholler. This yeere 1616. were sent thither ten ships, which killed aboue a hundred Whales, as Master *Thomas Sherwin* imployed therein, related to me. Greeneland is now almost altogether discouered to bee an Iland, or rather many Ilands and broken grounds.

In the Greeneland voyage 1611. from Cherry Iland toward Greeneland, they met with a banke of Ice fortie leagues long: and ranne almost alongst anothera hundred and twenty Leagues. At their first comming, all was couered with Snow, at their departure the tops of the Hils and Plaines had received a new liuerie of greene Mosse, and a little grasse. The Aire was mistie like night. They found many fat Deere, many white Beares, with white, gray, and dunne Foxes. There was a bird called an Allen, which beats the other birds till they vomit their prey for him to deuoure: and then dismisseth them with little meat in their bellies, or feathers on their backs. They finde Morses, Sea-Vnicornes hornes, white Partriches, Wilde-geese, but not a bush or tree.

I might heere adde diuers Voyages to Cherry Iland, where they haue thousands of Morses, the Teeth and Oyle whereof yeeld them no small commoditie. There also are many Beares. I might here recreate your wearied eyes with a hunting spectacle of the greatest chase which Nature yeeldeth, I meane, the killing of the Whale. When they espy him on the top of the water, (which he is forced to for to take breath) they row toward him in a Shallop, in which the Harponier stands ready, with both his hands to dart his Harping-iron, to which is fastened a line of such length, that the Whale (which suddenly, feeling himselfe hurt, sinketh to the bottome, may carry it down with him, being before fitted, that the Shallop be not therewith indangered; comming vp against they against strike him with Launces made for that purpose about twelue foot long, the iron eight therof, and the blade eighteene inches: the Harping-iron principally seruing to fasten him to the Shallop: and thus they hold him in such pursuit, till after streames of water, and next that of blood, cast vp into the Aire and Water (as angry with both Elements, which haue brought thither such weak hands to his destruction) he at last yeeldeth his slaine carkasse as meed to the conquerors. They tow him to the Ship with two or three Shallops made fast to one another: and then floating at the sterne of the Ship, they cut the blubber or fat from the flesh, in pieces three or foure foot long, which after at shore are cut smaller, and boiled in coppers: which done, they take them out & put them into wicker baskets, which are set in Shallops halfe full, of water, into which the Oyle runneth, and is thence put into butts. This Whale-fishing is yeerely now vsed by our men in Greeneland, with great profit. The ordinarie length of a Whale is sixty foot, and not so huge as *Olaus* hath written, who maketh the Mors also as bigge as an Elephant.

In my Pilgrims I haue published many Voyages, and letters of Greenland, written by *Ionas Poole, Rob. Fotherby Tho. Edge, Will. Hely, Robert Salmon, Thomas Sherwin, James Beuersham, Io. Chambers, I. Catcher, W. Goodland, &c.* Also to *Cherry Island* in 74. by *Ionas Poole, W. Gordon, &c.* and in other Northerne parts by *Hudson, Plaise, Widhouse, &c.* to which I referre the more industrious Reader.

The proportion of this huge Leuiathan deserues description, as one of the greatest *Wonders of the Lord in the deepe*, whereon Himselfe so much insisteth (*Iob* 41. 12.) that he *will not conceale his parts, nor his power, nor his comely proportion*. The Whale that here we speake of, is the *Great Bay-Whale*: for there are many other kinds: the *Trompe* which hath two Trunkes or breathing holes on his head, whereas the *Bay-Whale* hath but one) whose braines are said to be the *Sperma Ceti*: the *Inharte*, which hath a Fin on his backe dangerous to boats, exceeding swift, and little profitable, besides other kinds. This is the most simple and vsefull, the greater and fatter, the more easily taken. His head is the third part of him; his mouth (O helish wide (sixteene foot in the opening; and yet out of that *belly of Hell* yeelding much to the ornaments of our womens backs; the Whale-bones or Fismes being no other then the rough and inner part of the mouth, closing in the shutting thereof, as the fingers of both hands within each other. Of these Fismes are fiue hundred from the length of fourteene foot or more in lesse and lesse proportions; hee hath no teeth, his meat bee sucketh: his tongue is monstrous great, of deformed forme like a Wool-sacke, about eight Tunne weight, and one part thereof vsed to this purpose, yeeldeth from fiue to eleuen Hogs-heads of Oyle. His food (that Nature might teach the Greatest, to be content with little, and that Greatnesse may be maintained without Rapine, as in the Elephant and Whale, the Greatest of Land-Creatures, and Sea-monsters) is grasse and weeds of the Sea, and a kinde of water-worme like a Beetle, whereof the Fins in his mouth hang full, and sometimes little birds; all which striking the water with his Tayle, and making an Eddie, hee gapes and receiueth into his mouth, neither is any thing else (Master *Sherwin* hath seene them opened, and opened this vnto me) found in their bellies. This Great head hath little eyes like Apples, very little bigger then the Eyes of an Oxe, and a little throat, not greater then for a mans fist to enter; and

and that with huge bones on each side, not admitting it to stretch wider. His body is round, fourteene or sixteene foot thicke; his Pisle hangs from him as a Beasts: in Generation they draw to shallow waters neere the shore, and in the Act loyne belly to belly as is also said of the Elephant. In their engendering season, much of that matter floteth on the water. They are Swallow-tailed; the extremes being twenty foot distant. They haue but one yong at a time, which is brought forth as in beasts, (Master *Sherwin* hath seene them in the belly being ripped) about the bignesse, but longer, of a Hogs-head: The Female hath two brests and teats, with white milke in them, not bigger then a mans head, wherewith she suckleth the yong, whereof she, as the Mors also, is very tender. They killed one, and could not get the yong one from it. There hath been made seuen and twenty Tunne, and a pipe of Oyle out of one Whale: ordinarily sixteene Tunnes, but much is wasted for haste in that store. The English are growne as expert in this businesse as the Biscainer. They neuer lost man in this action, but one onely this last yeere.

§. VI.

Of HVDSONS *discoueries and death.*

Henry Hudson, 1607. discouered further North toward the Pole, then perhaps any before him. He found himselfe in 80. deg. 23. minutes, where they felt it hot, and dranke water to coole their thirst. They saw land (as they thought) to 82. and further: on the shore they had Snow, Mosse; teeth, Deeres homes, Whale-bones, and footing of other Beasts, with a streame of fresh-water. The next yeere 1608. he set forth on a Discouery to the North-east, at which time they met, as both himselfe and *Iuet* haue testified, a Mermaid in the Sea, seene by *Thomas Hils*, and *Robert Rainer*. Another voyage he made 1609. and coasted New-found-land, and thence along to Cape Cod. His last and fatall voyage was 1610. which I mentioned in my former edition, relating the same as *Hessilus Gerardus* had guided me, by his card and reports, who affirmeth that he followed the way which Captaine *Wynnood* had before searched by *Lumleys inlet*, in 61. degrees, so passing thorow the strait to 50. &c. But hauing since met with better instructions, both by the helpe of my painfull friend Master *Hakluit*, a (to whose labours these of mine are so much indebted) and specially from Him, who was a speciall setter forth of the voyage, that learned and industrious Gentleman Sir *Dudley Digges* (how willingly could I heere lose my selfe in a parenthesis of due praises? to whom these studies haue seemed to descend by inheritance in diuers Descents, improued by proper industry, employed to publike good both at home and in Discoueries and Plantations abroad, and for my particular I but why should I vse words, vnequall pay to him, vnequall stay to thee?) from Him, I say, so great a furtherer of the North-west Discouerie, and of your Discouerer the poore *Pilgrim and his Pilgrimage*, hauing receiued full relations, I haue beene bold with the Reader to insert this Voyage more largely.

a He communicated to me *Hudsons* abstract. *Tho. Wildhouse. Master Prickes*, at this voyage.

In the yeare 1610. Sir *Tho. Smith*, Sir *Dudley Digges*, and Master *John Wostenholme*, with other their friends, furnished out the said *Henry Hudson*, to try if through any of those Inlets, which *Davis* saw, but durst not enter, on the Westerne side of *Freaum Davis*, any passage might be found to the other Ocean, called the South-Sea. There Barke was named the Discouerie. They passed by Island, and saw Mount *Heela* cast out fire (a noted signe of foule weather towards; others conceiue themselues and deceiue others with I know not what Purgatorie fables hereof confuted by *Arngrim Jonas* b an Islander, who reproueth this and many other dreames related by Authors, saying, that from the yeere 1558. to 1592. it neuer cast forth any flames) they left the name to one harbour in Island, *Loufs Bay*: they had there a Bath hot enough to scald a fowle. They raised Gronland the fourth of Iune, and *Desolation* after that; whence they plyed North-west among Ilands of Ice, whereon they might runne and play, and filled sweet water out of Ponds therein: some of them aground in sixe or seuen score fadome water, and on diuers of them Beares, and Partridges. They gaue names to certaine Ilands, of *Godsmercy*, *Prince Henries forland*, *K. James his Cape*, *Q. Annes Cape*. One morning in a Fogge they were carried by a set of the Tide from the N. E. into one of the Inlets aboue mentioned, the depth whereof and plying forward of the Ice, made *Hudson* hope it would proue a through-fare. After he had sailed herein by his computation 300. leagues West, he came to a small strait of two leagues ouer, and very deepe water, through which he passed between two Headlands, which he called, that on the South, *Cape Wostenholme*, the other to the N.W. *Digges Iland* in deg. 62. 44. minutes, into a spacious Sea, wherein he sayled aboue a hundred leagues South, confidently proud that he had won the passage.

Sir *Tho. Smith*.

b *A. Io. Crymogæa.*

Hudsons wintering.

But finding at length by shole water that he was embayed, he was much distracted therewith, and committed many errours, especially, in resoluing to winter in that desolate place, in such want of necessarie prouision. The third of *Nouember*, he moored his Barke in a small Coue, where they had all vndoubtedly perished, but that it pleased God to send them seuerall kinds of kinds of Fowle; they killed of white Partridges aboue a hundred and twentie doozen: These left them at the Spring, and other succeeded in their Place, Swan, Goose, Teale, Ducke, all easie to take; besides the blessing of a *Tree*, which in *December* blossomed, with leaues greene and yellow, of an Aromaticall sauour, and being boyled, yeelded an Oyly substance, which proued an excellent Salue, and the decoction being drunke, proued as wholsome a Potion, whereby they were cured of the Scorbute, Sciaticas, Crampes, Conuulsions and other diseases which the coldnesse of the Climate bred in them. At the opening of the yeere also, there came to his Ships side such abundance of Fish of all sorts, that they might therewith haue fraught themselues for their returne, if *Hudson* had not too desperately pursued the Voyage, neglecting this oportunitie of storing themselues with fish, which hee committed to the care of certaine carelesse, dissolute Villaines, which in his absence conspired against him; in few dayes, the fish all forsooke them. Once a Sauage visited them, who for a knife, glasse, and beads giuen him, returned with Beuers skins, Deeres skins, and a Sled. At *Hudsons* returne, they set sayle for England. But in few dayes, their victuals being almost spent, and hee out of his desparte, letting fall some words of setting some on shore, the former Conspirators (the chiefe whereof, was *Hen. Greene*, none of their allowed Company, but taken in by *Hudson* himselfe; and one *Wilson*) entred his Cabin in the night, and forced him the Master, together with his sonne *Iohn Hudson*, *Tho. Widones*, *Arn. Ludlo*, *Sedrach Fauor*, *Ad. Moore*, *Hen. King*, *Mic. Bute*, to take Shallop and seeke their fortune. But see what sinceritie can doe in the most desperate tryals: One *Philip Staffe*, an Ipswich man, who according to his name, had beene a principall staffe and stay to the weaker and more enfeebled courages of his Companions in the whole action, lightening and inlightening their drooping darkened spirits, with sparkes from his owne resolution; their best Purueyor, with his Peece on shore, and both a skilfull Carpenter, and lusty Mariner on board; when hee could by no persuasions, seasoned with teares, diuert them from their diuellish designes, notwithstanding, they entreated him to stay with them, yet chose rather to commit himselfe to Gods mercy in the forlorne Shallop, then with such Villaines to accept of likelier hopes.

A strange tree.

These were the worst, or weakest of the Company.

A sloud from the West, a very proble argument of an open passage to the South Sea. And so are their weapons, and arts, being forte beyond other Sauages.

A few dayes after, their victuals being spent, the ship came aground at *Digges Iland*, and so continued diuers houres, till a great sloud (which they by this accident tooke first notice of) came from *the Westward*, and set them on flote. Vpon the Clifes of this Iland they fonnd abundance of Fowles tame, whereof they tooke two or three hundred, and seeing a greas long Boat with forty or fifty Sauages vpon the shore, they sent on Land; and for some of their toyes, had Deeres skinnes well dressed, Morse-teeth, and some few Furres. One of our men went on land to their Tents, one of theirs remaining for hostage, in which Tents they fised by hoords, men, women, and children; they are bigge-boned, broad-faced, flat-nosed, and small-footed, like the Tartars: their Apparell of skinnes, but wrought all very handsomely, euen Gloues and Shooes. The next morning, *Greene* would needs goe on shore with some of his chiefe companions, and that vnarmed, notwithstanding, some aduised and intreated him the contrary. The Sauages entertained him with a cunning ambush, and at the first onset shot this mutinous Ringleader into the heart, (where first, those those Monsters of treacherie and bloody crueltie, now payed with the like, had beene conceiued) and *Wilson* his *brother in euill*, had the like bloody inheritance, dying swearing and cursing: *Perse*, *Thomas*, and *Motor*, dyed a few dayes after of their wounds. Euery where can Diuine Iustice finde Executioners.

See his Relation of the third part of my Pilgrims who shewes many for these parts. a Such they vse in Isua.

The Boat by Gods blessing, with some hurt men escaped in this manner. One *Abacucke Pricket* (a seruant of Sir *Dudley Digges*, whom the Mariners had saued, in hope to procure his Master, to worke their pardon) was left to keepe the Shallop, where he sate in a gowne, sicke and lame, at the sterne: vpon whom, at the instant of the ambush, the leader of all the Sauages leapt from a Roeke, and with a strange kinde of weapon, a indented, broad and sharpe, of bright steele, rueted into a handle of *Morse*-tooth, gaue him diuers cruell wounds, before hee could from vnder his gowne draw a small Scottish Dagger, wherewith at one thrust into his side, he killed this Sauage, and brought him off with the Boat, and some of the hurt company that got to him by swimming. Being got aboord with a small weake and wounded company, they made from this Iland vnto the Northerne Continent, where they saw a large opening of the Sea North-West-ward, and had a great sloud, with such a large Billow, as they say, is no where but in the Ocean. From hence, they made all possible haste home-wards, passing the whole Straits, and so home, without euer thinking safe or any other

let,

let, which might easily haue made it impossible. For their best sustenance, left them, was Sea-weeds fryed with Candles ends; and the skins of the Fowles they had eaten. Some of their men were starued, the rest all so weake, that onely one could lye along vpon the Helme and steere. By Gods great goodnesse, the sixt of *September* 1611. they met with a Fisherman of Foy, by whose meanes they came safe into England.

§. VII.

10 *Of* BVTTONS *and* BAFFINS *late Discouveries.*

THis newes so incouraged the Aduenturers, that by the gracious assistance of that Starre of the North (Illustrious Sonne of Britaines brightest Sunne, and in his presence shining with beautious beames in this, and euen to that further Hemisphere; but with speedier setting, raised aboue the Sunne, and Spheres, and Starres, to discouer the Straits, and passage to a better World, there to shine with light vnspeakeable, in the fruition of that light inaccessible, with the *Father of Lights and Sonne of Righteousnesse*: For how could a worldly Kingdome, though the *Kingdome of the World*, deserue so good, so great a spirit to rule it? but these my words are too short an Epitaph; his owne Name, euen after 20 death, speakes more, and proclaimeth in a few Letters al humane Greatnesse, Great Britaines great hope, PRINCE HENRY) the Aduenturers I say (whom my weaker eyes, dazled with this greater Light, could scarce recouer) by this Princely assistance, pursued the action in more Royall fashion, with greater shipping, vnder the command of a Worthy Sea-man, seruant to *Prince* HENRY, Captaine *Thomas Button*, whose Discouerie of a great Continent, called by him *New-Wales* and other accidents of his Voyage, I haue not leeue: onely I haue seene a Chart of those discouered places, and I heare that he passed *Hudsons Straits*, and leauing *Hudsons Bay* to the South, sailed aboue two hundred Leagues South-West-Ward, ouer a Sea aboue fourescore fathoms deepe, without sight of Land, which at length, he found 30 to be another great Bay. And after much misery of sicknesse in his wintering, notwithstanding he was forced to quit the great ship, hee beat and searched the whole Bay, with very great industrie, euen backe again, almost to *Digges Land*: neere which hee found the coming in of the great and strong tyde from the North-West, [b] which feeds both those huge Bayes. This seemed strange, that in this Voyage, as he searched many Leagues East & West, he found the variation of the Compasse to rise and fall in an admirable proportion, as if the true Magnetic all Pole might be discouered.

Sir Th. Button hath a very confident of a passage by the North West into the South sea, as appeares by his R. Iatitions in the end o the fourth Booke of the third part of my Pilgrims. Where also Mr *Brigg* his Map, the letters of Mr *Lock*, and *Iuan del uca*, he testimonie of *Th. Cavlin* &c. further proue the same.

b This was after found other wise, the error growing by his meeting of *Byles*, and asking of the flood, at this Iland, which hee did was eight of the clock, whereas it was about eleuen, *Baffins o Ex Relat. W. Baff. 1625.*

The commingin of the flood from the Northwest, giuing them hopes of a passage, in *March* 1614. Captaine *Gibbons* was employed on this Discouerie, in the *Discouerie* (so was the ship called) but without any great discouerie that I haue heard of. Persisting in their purpose, the 40 next yeere [c] *Robert Byleth*, one which had beene in three former Voyages, was sent forth in that ship as Master, and *William Baffin* his Mate, with foureteene other Men and two Boyes; which leauing England about the latter end of *March*, stayed at Silly till the seuenth of *April*, and were forced to put backe to Padstow in Cornwall: but weighing Anchor on the nineteenth, on the sixt of *May*, saw land on the Coast of Groen-land, on the East-side of Cape Farewell. On the first of *June*, they came into a good Harbour, on the N. W. side of the Iland of Resolution (which is at the entrance into *Hudsons* Strait) in 62. degrees, 45. minutes. On the eight, they came to Sausage Ilands (in 62. degrees, 30. minutes; threescore Leagues from the entrance) so called of some people, they found in a Canow; they were at their Tents also, and found among their things a little bugge with many small images of men therein, and one of a woman with a child at her backe. The Tents were couered with Seales skinnes, and about them some forty Dogs ranne vp and downe, most of them muzzled, as bigge as Mungrel-Mastiues, of a brended blacke colour, looking almost like Wolues: these they vse to draw their sleds ouer the ice, with collars and furniture fitting, their sleds also being shod or lined with fish-bones. The people are like those in Groenland, but not so neat and cuill, ranging vp and downe, as their fishing is in season; vncertaine where they keepe in Winter. The Master was confident in this and other places, that the flood came from the West, which *Baffin* saith, by the floating of the ice, he obserued on land, to be contrarie: onely the Ilands vaule by their diuers points, differing Sects and Eddie. On the two and twentieth of *June*, He obserued the Longitude, hauing faire sight of the Sunne 60 and Moone, and found himselfe by Astronomicall account, 74. degrees, 5. minutes West from the Meridian of *London*: which if some studious Mariners would practise in their remote Voyages, we should soone haue a farre more perfect Geographie. I omit their icie

c Vide

fieges,

sieges, sometimes scarsly leauing them space to dip a paile of water. They called one place in 65. latitude, and 85. degrees and 20. minutes long. *Cape Comfort*, for the hopes they apprehended of a passage, which soone they found to be frustrate. Hence they passed to *Sea-horse Cape*, (so named of the plenty of Morses) and fifteene leagues thence to *Nottingham Iland*, and thence to *Digs his* * *Iland*, in all those places obseruing the floud come from the South-east, Captaine *Button* and *Hudsons* men being all deceiued, as this our Authour affirmeth: other Ilands sometimes keeping off the force of the tyde, or by eddies, causing an obscurity and their errour. We will therefore leaue that spacious Sea called *Buttons Bay*, with the great Ilands, and some places not yet perfectly discouered, within and beyond that *Strait of Hudson*, and come to *Baffins Bay*, so discouered to be. 10

* At this Ile are store of fowles called Willockes, where of they might haue killed thousands.

1616. Sir *T. Smith.* Sir *D. Digs.* M. *Wolstenholme.* Aild. *Iones*, &c.

This last yeere 1616. at the charges of the worthy Aduenturers before mentioned, in the same ship, by the same Master, [a] the same, both their Pilot and ours. The first land they saw, after their departure from *England*, was in *Fretum Danis* on the Coast of Groenland, in 65. degrees 20. minutes. On the fourteenth of *May*, where they saw people. But they plyed to the North, till they were in 70. degrees 20. minutes. The people fled from them. Here they tooke in fresh water, but doubted the passage, because the tydes were small, not aboue eight or nine foot, and vncertayne, the floud from the South. On the six and twentieth day, they found a dead Whale floting, and got from the roote of her mouth 160. of those synnes or Whale-bones, but could not get the rest by reason of foule weather following. On the first of *June*, they put in among diuers Ilands; the people forsooke their Seale-skin-tents and fled; some women they found, whom they kindly intreated, giuing them pieces of Iron, for which they returned Seales skins and the fat or blubber of them: as for our meate, fasting, they would not swallow it. They called the place the *Womens Ilands*, in 72. degrees and 45. minutes, the floud comes from the South: and the most of their food is the flesh of Seales dryed and eaten raw: they cloth themselues with the skins, whereof they also make couerings for their Tents and Boats, dressing them very well. The Women differ in their apparell from the Men, razing their skins with sharpe Instruments, and putting thereon an indeliible blacke colour, marking their faces with diuers blacke lines. They haue a kind of deuotion to the Sunne, which continually they will point vnto, and strike their hand on their brest. Crying, *Ityout*. They bury their dead on the side of the Hils where they liue, which is commonly on small Ilands, making a pile of stones ouer them, yet not so close but that the corps may be discerned the piercing ayre keeping them from stinke: their Dogges also they bury in the same manner. They came to other Ilands in 74. degrees, 4. minutes, which vse to be much frequented with people in the latter part of the yeere, as it seemeth by the houses made of stones and turfe, round like Ouens, with doores to the South; but they were not yet come, *June* the ninth. The floud ariseth not aboue fiue or sixe foot; the ebbe runnes stronger by the abundance of melted Snow.

a *W. Baffin.*

Womens Ilands.

On the fifteenth day, in the latitude of 73. degrees 45. minutes, came forty two of the Inhabitants to them in Boats, and gaue them Seales skins, and many pieces of the bone or horne of the Sea-Vnicorne, and shewed them pieces of Morses teeth. They receiued in exchange small pieces of Iron, Glasse, Beades, and the like: thus they did foure times: the place they called *Horne Sound*.

On the third of *July*, they passed by a faire Cape in 76. degrees 35. minutes, which they named Sir *Dudley Digs his Cape*. Twelue leagues beyond is *Wolstenholme Sound*, a fit place for killing of Whales. Proceeding a little further, they found themselues embayed. One place they called *Whale Sound* of their abundance in 77. degrees and 30. minutes. *Hakluyts Iland* is neere, and Sir *Thomas Smiths Sound* in 78. degrees. The Compasse there varieth aboue 56. degrees to the West ward, so that a North-east and by East of the Compasse is the true North; which hath not beene obserued so much varied in any part of the World. Putting off to the West side of the Bay, they gaue names to *Alderman Iones his Sound*, and that of Sir *James Lancaster*: and in their returne recouered their sicke men, by Scurvy-grasse or Cochlearia (which they found on a little Iland in great plenty) boyled in Beere, and eaten in Sallads with Orpine and Sorrell, and so returned home: Thus wee see, *Fretum Danis* is no passage but a Bay, and vncertaine, what that of *Hudson* is, the most of which is discouered impassible. Yet, Hopes are not quite extinct: we must expect Gods pleasure, and future Discoueries for this passage. It seemes that most of all those Seas in the North parts beyond New-found-land are intermixed with Ilands, a Maze and Labyrinth to the Discouerer. In this Voyage and Bay they saw many of those fishes called Sea-Vnicornes, such as wee haue mentioned in Sir *Martin Frobishers* Nauigation: some of which fishes are twelue or sixteene foot long, the horne seeming to hold the proportion of two thirds in length to their bodies: and of these, it seemes are those in Venice and other places, reserued as great Iewels. Greater Iewels are those Merchants and Mariners, which to the glory of our Nation, spare no cost, and feare no dan-

Strange Variation of the Compasse.

danger in these their attempts: Resolute, gallant, glorious attempts! which thus seeke to tame Nature, where she is most vnbridled, in those Northeasterly, Northwesterly & Northerly Borders (where she shewes her selfe at[y] Borderer indeed) and to subdue her to that gouernment and subiection, which God *ouer all blessed for euer*, hath imposed on all sensible creatures to the nature of *Man*, resembling in one Image and abridgment, both God and the World, consisting of a spirituall and bodily, visible and inuisible subsistence. How shall I admire your Heroike courage, yea Marine Worthies beyond all names of worthinesse? that neyther dread so long, eyther presence or absence of the Sunne; nor those foggie mysts, tempestuous winds, cold blasts, Snowes and Haile in the Ayre: nor the vnequall Seas, which might amaze the hearer, and awate the beholder, where the *Tritons* and *Neptunes* selfe would quake with chilling feare, to behold such monstrous Icie Ilands, renting themselues with terror of their owne maisnes, and disclayming otherwise both the Seas soueraignetie, and the Suns hotreest violence, mustering themselues in those watery Plaines, where they hold a continuall warre, and rushing one vpon another, make winds and waues giue backe; seeming to rent the eares of others, whiles they rent themselues with crashing and splitting their congealed Armours: nor the riggid ragged face of the broken Lands, sometimes towring themselues in a lofty height, to see if they can find refuge from those showes and colds that continuall beate them, sometimes hiding themselues vnder some hollow Hilles or Cliffes, sometimes shaking and shrinking into Valleyes, looking pale with showes, and falling in frozen and dead swounds; [z] sometimes breaking their necks into the Sea, rather imbracing the waters, then the Ayres, cruelty; and otherwhile with horrible Earthquakes, in heat of indignation shaking asunder, to shake off this cold and heauy yoke. Great God, to whom all names of greatnesse are little, and lesse then nothing, let me in silence admire and worship thy greatnesse, that in this *little Heart* of man (not able to seruea Kite for a breake-tail) half placed such greatnesse of spirit, as the World is too little to fill: only *Thy selfe* the *Prototype*, and Samplar of this Modell, canst with thine owne selfe, becomming *all in all* vnto vs, fill and more then satisfie. Thee I beseech, to prosper in this and like attempts, this Nation of ours, that as in greater light then to Others, thou hast *given vs thy Sonne*, so with him thou wilt giue *all things*; euen this among other blessings that thy *Virgin Truth*, by Virginian Plantation, or Northerly Discouery, may triumph in her conquests of Indian infidelity, maugre the brags of that *Adulterresse*, that vaunteth her selfe to be the only Darling of God and Nature.

y As borderers are most vnruly and lawlesse; so in these borders of the World, the power of Natures greatest Officers, the Sun, &c. is least secure.

z These things agree with the Relations of those pires, which tell of Earthquakes, breaking of Cliffes, &c. *Boterus* a zealous and slanderous Catholike, vsith these disgracefull speeches of this discouery. *Ma parte, che la Natura si sia opposta à l'eheretici, e à disseguiti loro, part. 1. lib. 5.*

CHAP. IIII.

Of Newfoundland, Noua Francia, Arambec, and other Countries of America, extending to Virginia.

§. I.

English Discoueries and Plantations in Newfoundland.

LEauing those vnknowne and frozen Lands and Seas; (although there is yet knowne no frozen [a] Sea, otherwise then as you haue heard) let vs draw somwhat neerer the Sunne, gently marching, as the situation of Regions shall direct vs, lest if we should suddenly leape from one extremitie to another, wee should rather exchange then auoid danger. And here we haue by Land Siguenay, and many Countries of Canada, which the French haue stiled by a new name of *New France*: and by the Sea the Ilands many in number, and much frequented for their plenty of fish, commonly called Newfoundland; which name some ascribe to an Ile, others to diuers Ilands, and broken Lands which the French call *Bacalos*, vpon the gulfe and entrance of the great River called Saint *Lawrence*, in Canada. This River some [b] call the Strait of the three Brethren, some [c] Saint *Lawrence*, and others [d] Canada. It farre exceedeth any Riuer of the elder World. It beginneth, sayth *Iaques Cartier*, beyond the Iland of *Assumption*, ouer-against the high Mountaynes, of Honbuedo, and of the seuen Ilands. The distance

a The Northerne Seas may be called frozen, in respect of the Icie Ilands, which by their freshnesse manifest themselues to proceed of fresh waters: no experience yet shewing por reason conuincing, that the ocean

(alway salt and mouing) is any where frozen: as my Learned Friend M. *Brigs* (a great Mathematician) also affirmeth, and *Mernia Cos. l.3. c.5.* b *Eden, Hakes. Hak. to. 3. p. 152.* c *Gi. Bot. 8 co.* d *Iaq. Cart. l. 2. c. 11.*

stance from one side to the other, is about fiue and thirtie, or forty leagues. In the middest it is aboue [e] two hundred fathome deepe. There are great store of Whales and Sea-horses. From the entrance vp to Hochelaga is three hundred leagues. Many Ilands are before it, offering of their good nature to be mediators betweene this haughty streame and the angry Ocean: many others all alongst his passage he holdeth in his louing vnlouely lap, washing and hugging them with his ruder imbracings. The former are vsually frequented, and were first discouered by the English, the other by the French. Of *Sebastian Cabot* his proceeding this way is spoken already.

e Other say 200.

Robert Thorne [f] in a Treatise of his before mentioned, affirmeth that his Father, and one Master *Eliot* were the Discouerers of the Newfoundland: and exhorted King *Henry* to vn- 10 dertake the search of the Indies by the Pole, which he held to be nauigable. Vpon this motion, 1527. the King sent two ships (as *Hall* and [g] *Grafton* mention in their Chronicles) one of which ships was cast away about the North parts of Newfoundland; the other shaping her course towards Cape Briton and the Coasts of Arambec (or as some call it *Norumbega*) returned home.

f Rob. Thorne in M. Hakluyt voiages, 3. p. 21. 9 g M. Hall. M. Grafton.

Iohn Rut wrote a Discourse hereof *to the Honourable Kings Grace of England* (that I may borrow his owne words) wherein he declareth their coasting and the height of some places, as Cape *Rat*, in 52. degrees and 25. leagues; thence Cape *Ras*, &c. They found there eleuen Sayle of Normans, one Briton, and two Portugall Barkes fishing. *Albertus de Prato*, another of them, wrote another Iournall to Cardinall *Wolsey*. More tragicall was the successe 20 [h] of Master *Hores* company, which set out nine yeeres after in this Discouery, but by famine were brought to such extremities, that many of the company were murthered and eaten by their fellowes. And those which returned were so altered, that Sir *William Butts*, a Norfolke Knight, and his Lady, knew not their Sonne Master *Thomas Butts* one of this starued number, but by a secret marke, namely a Wart, which Nature had sealed on one of his knees. The commodities and qualities of Newfoundland, are related [i] by Master *Parkhurst*, Master *Hayes*, Sir *Geo. Peckham*, *Stephen Parmenius*, *Richard Clarke*, Master *Christopher Carlile*, all whose Discourses and experiments hereof, Master *Hakluyt* hath collected and bestowed on the World. The North-part is inhabited, the South is desart, although fitter for habitation. Besides the abundance of Cod, heere are Herrings, Salmons, Thornbacke, Oysters and Muskles with Peatles, Smelts and Squids, which two forts come on shore in great abundance, fleeyng from the deuouring Cod, out of the frying-pan into the fire. It is thought that there are Buffes, and certayne, that there are Beares and Foxes, which before your face will rob you of your fish or flesh.

h M. Hore. 1530 Hak. 10 3. p. 129.

i A. Parkhurst. Edw. Hayes. Sir G. Peckham. Steph. Parmenius. Richard Clarke. Christoph. Carlile.

Before they come at Newfoundland by fifty leagues, they passe the banke: so they call certayne high ground, as a veine of Mountaynes, raysing themselues vnder the water, about ten leagues in breath, extending to the South infinitely, on which is 30. fathome water, before and after 200. Sir *Hum. Gilbert* tooke possession thereof, by vertue of her Maiesties Commission. *Anno* 1582. It is within Land a goodly Countrey, naturally beautified with Roses, sowne with Pease, planted with stately trees, and otherwise diuersified both for 40 pleasure and profit. And now our English Nation doe there plant and fixe a setled habitation: a chiefe Actor and Authour of which businesse is Master *John Guy* of Bristow: who in the yeere 1608. sayled from Bristow in three and twenty dayes to *Conception Bay* [k] in Newfoundland. Of this Plantation and their wintrings, and continuance there I haue seene diuers Relations with Master *Hakluyt*, written by Master *Guy*, *William Colston*, &c.

k Concep. Bay in 48. M Guy his Letter 10 M. Sluy.

In the yeere 1611. in *October* and *November*, they had scarsly fixe dayes frost or snow, which presently thawed, the rest of those moneths being warmer and dryer then in England: *December* was also faire, with some Frost, Snow, and Raine. The winde in these three moneths variable, from all parts. *January* and *February* was most part Frost to mid-*March*: the wind most commonly Westerly, and sometimes from the North. The Sunne often visited them with warme and comfortable rayes, chasing away the Snow, and not suffering the Brookes to be frozen ouer three nights with Ice able to beare a Dogge. The Snow was neuer (except in drifts) aboue eighteene inches deepe. They had there, [l] Fillberds, Fish, Makerels, Foxes, in the winter [m] Partridges, white in the winter, in Summer somewhat like ours, but greater; they are much afraid of Rauens: They killed a Wolfe with a Mastiue and a Grey-hound. *Easions* piracies were some trouble to them.

l W. Colston.

Anno 1612. They found houses of Sauages, which were nothing but poles set round and meeting in the top, ten foot broad, the fire in the middest, couered with Deeres skins. They are of reasonable stature, beardlesse, and in conditions like to those which Sir *Martin Frobisher* discouered: broad-faced, full-eyed, coloured on their faces and apparell with red Ocker: 60 Their Boats of Barke, as in Canada, twenty foot long, foure and a halfe broad, not weighing 100. weight, made in forme of a new Moone, which carry foure men, and are by them carried

ried to all places of their remouings. Their Patent was granted 1610. for Plantation betweene forty six and fifty two, to bee gouerned by a Councell of twelue and a Treasurer. There wintered 1612. 54. men, six women and two children. They killed there, Beares, Otters, Sables: sowed Wheat, Rie, Turneps, Coleworts. Their Winter till *April* 1613. was dry, and cleere with some frost and snow. Diuers had the Scurvy, whereto their Turneps, there sowne, were an excellent remedie, no lesse then *Carters* Tree hereafter mentioned. *April* was worse then the midst of Winter, by reason of East-winds which came from the Ilands of Ice, which the current bringeth at that time from the North. The same I haue seene confirmed by a letter of *Thomas Dermer*, one of that Colony, dated at *Cupers* Coue, the ninth of *September* last, 1616. In other moneths, he saith, the temperature is as in England. He mentions Muske-cats and Muk-rats in those parts; the fertilitie of the soyle in producing Pease, Rie, Barly and Oates; probabilities of Metals; with promises of more full Relations hereafter.

Master *Richard Whitborne* hath lately published a Book of his Voyages to Newfoundland and obseruations there, with certaine Letters also touching the new Plantations by English, therein at the charges of Sir *George Calward*, written by *Edward Winne, N.H.* &c.

§. II.

The Voyages and Obseruations of IAQVES CARTIER *in Noua Francia.*

NEere to Newfoundland in 47. degrees, is great killing of the Morse or Sea-oxe. [a] In the Ile of Ramea, one small French ship, in a small time killed fifteene hundred of them. They are as great, or greater then Oxen, the Hide dressed, is twice as thicke as a Buls hide: It hath two teeth like Elephants, but shorter, about a foot long, growing downwards out of the vpper iaw, and therefore lesse dangerous, dearer sold then Iuory, and by some reputed an Antidote, not inferiour to the Vnicornes horne. The young ones are as good meate as Veale, which the old will defend, holding them in her armes or forefeet. And with the bellies of fiue of the said fishes (if so wee may call these Amphibia, which liue both on land and water) they make an Hoghead of traine Oyle. Their skins are short-haired like Seales; their face is like a Lions, and might more fitly haue bin termed Sea-Lions, then Sea-horses, or Sea-oxen; they haue foure feet, no eares; the hornes are about halfe an ell in length; they vse to lye on the Ice a sunning, and are soone killed with a blow on the fore-head. Some of our English ships haue attempted this enterprize for the killing of the Morse, but not all with like successe, nor with so good as reported of Cherry Iland. At Brions Iland is such abundance of Cods, that Master [b] *Leighs* company with foure hookes in little more then an houre, caught 250. of them. Neere to the same in the Gulfe of S. *Lawrence*, are three, termed the Ilands of Birds: the soyle is sandy red, but by reason of many Birds on them, they looke white. The birds sit as thicke, as stones lie in a paued street: or to vse *Iaques* [c] *Cartiers* comparison, as any field or Medow is of grasse. Two of these Ilands are steepe and vpright as any wall, that it is not possible to clime them. On the other, which is in 49. degrees 40. minutes, and about a league in circuit, they killed, and filled two Boats [d] in lesse then halfe an houre. Besides them which they did eate fresh, euery ship did powder fiue or six barrels of them. There are an hundred fold as many houering about, as within the Island. Some are as bigge as Iayes, blacke and white, with beakes like vnto Crowes: their wings are no bigger then halfe ones hand, and therefore they cannot flye high, yet are they as swift neere the water, as other Birds, they are very fat: these they called Apontz, a lesser kind which there abundeth, they named Godetz: A bigger, and white, which bite like Dogs, they termed Margaulx. Although it be 14. leagues from the Mayne, yet Beares swim thither to feast with these Birds. One they saw as great as a Kow, saith *Cartier*, and as white as a Swan, which they did kill and eate, and the flesh was as good as of a two yeere old Calfe. About the Port of Biest, they found so many Ilets, as they were impossible to be numbred, continuing a great space.

The Iland of *Assumption*, [e] by the Sauages called *Natisgotee*, standeth in 49. degrees. The Sauages dwell in houses made of Fir-trees, bound together in the top, and set round like a Doue-house. This, as before is said, is at the entry of the Riuer into the Gulfe of Saint *Lawrence*. The bankes of this Riuer are inhabited of people that worship the Deuill, and sometimes sacrifice to him their owne blood. [f] *Francis* the first, King of France, sent thither *Iames Breton*; and *Henry* his Sonne, *Nicolas Villegagnon*: but the greatest riches they found, were the Diamonds of Canada, and those of small value for their brittlenesse. Thus *Boterus*.

Ia-

a *Tham. Iames.* The Morses are said to sleepe in great troupes, and to haue one Centinel or watchman to awake the rest vpon occasion: the like is said of the Seales; some call the Morse a Sea-horse.

b *Charles Leigh.*

c *Iaques Cart. 5.*

d In an houre they might haue filled thirty Boats of Penguines & might haue laden all their ships with them without any misse.

e *Silues. Wyn.*

f *Boetro part. 3. lib. 5.*

g *Iaq. Cart.*

Iaques g *Cartier* made three Voyages into these parts. First, in the yeere 1534. Then was hee gladly welcommed of the Sauages, singing, dancing, and expressing other signes of ioy, as rubbing his armes with their hands, and then lifting him vp to Heauen, giuing all to their naked skin (though all were worse then nothing) for the trifles hee gaue them. They went naked, hiding their priuities which were couered with a skin, and certaine old skinnes they cast vpon them. Some they saw, whose heads were altogether shauen, except one bush of haire which they suffer to grow vpon the top of their crowne, as long as a Horse-tayle, and tyed vp with leather strings in a knot. They haue no dwelling but their Boats, which they turne vpside downe, and vnder them lay themselues along on the bare ground. They eate their flesh and fish almost raw, only a little heated on the coales. The next yeere Captaine h *Cartier* returned, and carried backe two Sauages, which hee before had carried into France to learne the language. He then passed vp to Hochelaga i. They found Rats which liued in the water, as bigge as Conies, and were very good meate, Hochelaga is a Citie round, compassed about with timber, with three course of Rampiers one within another, framed sharpe, about two rods high. It hath but one gate, which is shut with pales and barres. There are in it about fifty great houses, and in the midst of euery one a Court, in the middle whereof they make their fire. Before they came there, they were forced to leaue their boats behind, because of certaine fals, and heard that there were three more higher vp the streame, towards Sanguenay, which in his k third Voyage were discouered.

h *Iaq. Cart.2.*
i He wintered this time in the Country.
k *Iaq. Cart.3.*

Concerning the Religion in these parts of Canada, euen amongst the Sauages wee finde some tracts and foot-prints thereof, which neither the dreadfull Winters haue quite frozen to death, nor these great and deepe waters haue wholly drowned, but that some shadow thereof appereth in these shadowes of Men, howsoeuer wild and sauage, like to them which giue her entertainment. This people beleeueth, saith *Iaques* l *Cartier*, in one which they call *Cudruaigni*, who, say they, often speakes to them, and tels them what weather will follow, whether good or bad. Moreouer, when hee is angry with them, hee casts dust into their eyes.

l *Iaq. Cart.2. cap.10.*

They beleeue that when they die, they goe into the Stars, and thence by little and little descend downe into the Horizon euen as the Starres do, after which they goe into certaine greene fields, full of goodly, faire, and precious trees, flowres, and fruits. The Frenchmen told them, *Cudruaigni* was a Deuill, and acquainted them with some mysteries of the Christian Religion, whereupon they condescended and desired Baptisme, the French excused, and promised after to bring Priests for that purpose. They liue in common together, and of such commodities as their Countrey yeeldeth, they are well stored. They wed two or three wiues a man, which, their husbands being dead, neuer marrie againe, but for their widowes liuery, weare a blacke weed all the dayes of their life, besmearing their faces with coale-dust and grease mingled together, as thicke as the backe of a Knife. They haue a filthy and detestable vse in marrying their Maydens, first putting them (being once of lawfull age to marry) in a common place, as Harlots, free for euery man that will haue to doe with them, vntill such time as they find a match. I haue seene houses as full of such Prostitutes, as the Schooles in France are full of children. They there vse much misrule, riot, and wantonnesse.

They dig their ground with certaine pieces of wood, as big as halfe a Sword, where they sow their Maiz. The men also doe much vse Tobacco. The women labour more then the men in fishing and husbandry. They are more hardy then the beasts, and would come to our ships starke naked, going vpon Snow and Ice, in which season they take great store of beasts; Stags, Beares, Martenes, Hares, and Foxes, whose flesh they eate raw, hauing first dryed it in the Sun or smoke, and so they doe their fish. They haue also Otters, Weasils, Beauers, Badgers, Conies: Fowle and Fish great varieties: and one fish, called *Adhouhuis*, whose bodie and head is like to a Greyhound, white as Snow. Their greatest Iewel is Chains of Esurgnie, which are shel-fishes, exceeding white, which they take on this manner. When a captiue or other man is condemned to death, they kill him, and then cut flashes in his most fleshie parts, and hyde him into the River Cormbots, whence after twelue houres they draw him, finding in those cuts these Esurgnie, whereof they make Beads and Chaines. They are excellent for stanching of bloud. Thus much out of *Cartier*. In the yeere 1542. m *Monsieur Roberual* was sent to inhabit those parts. He saith that he built a Fort faire and strong: the people haue no certayne dwelling place, but goe from place to place, as they may find best food, carrying all their goods with them.

m M. *Francis Roberual.*

It is more cold in that, then in other places of like height, as *Iohn Alphonse of Xantoigne* n affirmeth, because of the greatnesse of the River which is fresh water, and because the Land is vntilled and full of Woods. We may adde the cold vapours which the Sunne exhaleth in the long passage ouer the Ocean, the abundance of Ice that commeth out of the North-seas, and the winds which blow from them, and from the cold snowie hils in the way.

n *Iohn Alphonse of Xantoigne. Hakluym.3.*

§. III.

§. III.

Late Plantations of New-France, and Relations of the Natives.

Mons. Champlein.

SAmuel Champlain made a Voyage to Canada 1603. and encountred with a banke of Ice eight leagues long in 45. degrees, two third parts, with infinite smaller. The Streits mouth from Cape Ray to the Cape of Saint *Laurence*, within the Gulfe of Canada, is eighteene leagues. He obserued a Feast made by *Anadabijou* the great *Sagamo*, in his Cabin: in which eight or ten Kettles of meat were set on seuerall fires, sixe paces asunder: The men sate on both sides of the roome, each hauing a dish made of the barke of a tree: one appointed to diuide to euery man his portion. Before the meat was boyled, one tooke his Dogge, and danced about the Kettles from one to another, and when he came before the Sagamo, cast downe his Dogge: and then succeeded another in the like exercise. After their Feast, they danced with the heads of their [b] enemies in their hands, some singing. Their Canoas are of the barke of Birch, strengthened within with little circles of wood, eight or nine paces long, fit for actiue and passiue carriage. Their Cabins are low, like Tents, couered with the said barke, the roofe open, a foot space vncouered to let in light, with many fires in the middest; ten households, sometimes together: the lye vpon skinnes one by another, and their Dogges with them.

b The *Iroquis*, with whom their *Estechemins, Algoumequins*, and *Montaniers*, haue warres.

After a certaine Feast, the Algoumequins (one of these three Nations in league) went out apart, and caused all their women and maids to sit in rankes, themselues standing behinde singing: suddenly all the women and maids cast of their Mantles of skinnes, and stripped themselues naked, not ashamed of their shame, keeping onstill their Matachia (which are [c] *Pater-nosters* and chaines enterlaced, made of the haire of the Porkespicke, dyed of diuers colours.) Their songs ended, they cryed with one voice, *He, he, he*, and then couered themselues with their Mantles which lay at their feet, and after a while renued their former songs, and nakednesse. Their Sagamo sate before the Virgins and Women, betweene two statues, whereon were hanged those enemies heads: and hee exhorted the Mountainers and Estechemains to the like significations of ioy: which then cryed all together, *he, he, he*. When hee was returned to his place, the great Sagamo and all his company cast off their Mantles, their priuities only remaining couered with a little skin: and tooke each what they thought good, as Matachias, Hatchets, Swords, Kettles, Flesh, &c. which they presented to the Algoulmequins. After this, two of each Nation contended in running, and the best runners were rewarded with presents.

c Beades.

They are well set, of Tawnie or Oliue colour, by reason of their paintings: they are lyers, giuen to reuenge, without law. When a maid is fourteene or fifteene yeares old, she harh many louers, and vseth carnall filthinesse with whom she pleaseth, so continuing fiue or sixe yeares: and then takes whom she likes for her husband, liuing with him chastely all her life after, except for barrennesse he forsake her. The husband is iealous, and giues presents to her parents. When one dies, they make a pit, and therein put all his goods with the corps, couering the same with earth, and setting ouer it many pieces of wood, with one stake painted red, and set vp on end. They beleeue the immortalitie of the Soule, and that the dead goe into farre Countries to make merry with their friends.

Their customs.

Monsieur [d] *Champlein* discoursed with certaine Sauages yet liuing, of whom hee learned touching their Religion, that they beleeue in one God, who hath created all things: that after God had made all things, he tooke a number of Arrowes, and did sticke them into the ground, from whence Men and Women sprung vp, which haue multiplyed euer since. Touching the Trinitie, being asked, a *Sagamos* or Gouernour answered, "*There was one onely God, one Sonne, one Mother, and the Sunne, which were foure.* Notwithstanding, [e] that God was ouer and aboue all: the Sonne was good, and the Sunne also: but the Mother was naught, and did eate them, and that the Father was not very good. Being asked, if they or their Ancestors had heard that God was come into the World: He said that he had not seene him: but that anciently there were fiue men, who travelling toward the setting of the Sun, met with God, who demanded of them, Whither goe ye? They answered, We goe to seeke for our liuing. God said, You shall find it heere: but they not regarding, passed further: and then God with a stone touched two of them, who were turned into stones. And hee said againe to the three other, Whither goe yee? They answered, and hee replyed as at first: they yet passing further, he tooke two staues, and touched therewith the two formost, and transformed them into staues. Asking the third man whither he went, he said, to seeke his liuing: whereupon he bade him tarry, and he did so, and God gaue him meat, and he did eat and after he had made good cheere, he returned among the other Sauages, and told them all his tale.

d *M. Champlein.*

e The answere of a *Sagamo* in case of Religion.

f This somewhat agreeth with the Manichean and Pythagorean errour.

This *Sagamos* also told, that at another time there was a man which had store of Tobacco, and God came and asked him for his pipe, which the man gaue him, and he dranke much of it, and then brake the pipe. The man was offended hereat, because he had no more pipes, but God gaue him one, and bade him carry it to his *Sagamos*, with warning to keepe it well, and then he should want nothing, nor any of his. Since, the said *Sagamos* lost the pipe, and found famine and other distresse: this seemeth to be the cause, why they say God is not very good. Being demanded what Ceremony they vsed in praying to their God, he said that they vsed no Ceremonie, but euery one did pray in his heart, as hee would. They haue among them some Sauages, whom they call *Pilotoua*, who speake visibly to the Diuell, and hee tels them what they must doe, as well for warre, as for other things. And if hee should command them to put any enterprise in execution, or to kill a man, that they would do it immediately. They beleeue also that all their dreames are true. So farre *Champlein*.

M. de Monts. In the yeere 1604. *Monsieur de Monts* (according to a Patent granted him the yeere before, for the inhabiting of Cadia, Canada, and other parts of New-France, from the fortieth degree, to the sixe and fortieth) rigged two ships, and bare with those parts that trend Westward from Cape Breton, giuing names to places at pleasure, or vpon occasion. One Port was named *Saualet*, of a French Captain, who was there a fishing, and had made his two and fortieth voyage hither: another was named of *Rosignol*, whole ship was confiscated for trading there with the Sauages (a poore preferment:) to leaue name to a Port by his misery) another was named Port-Mouton, and within a great Bay; they named another Port-Royall, where after they fortified. The inhabitants of these parts were termed *Souriquois*. From them Westward are the people called *Etechemins*, where the next Port, after you are passed the Riuer of Saint *Iohn*, is Saint *Croix* where they erected a Port, and wintered. Threescore leagues West from thence is the Riuer *Kinibeki*; and from thence the Land trendeth North & South to Malabarre. Authors place in that former extention of Land betwixt East and West, a great Towne and faire Riuer, called Norombega, by the Sauages called Agguncia. These French Discouerers vtterly deny this History, affirming that there are but Cabans here and there made with Perkes, and couered with barkes of trees, or with skins: and both the Riuer and inhabited place is called *Pemtegoet*, and not *Agguncia*. And there can be no great Riuer (as they affirme) because the great Riuer Canada hath (like an insatiable Merchant) engrossed all these water-commodities, so that other streames are in manner but meere Pedlers.

Saualet two and forty voyages to Noua Francia.

Armouchiquois. The *Armouchiquois* are a trait erous and theeuish people, next vnneighbourly neighbours to the *Etechemins*: they are light-footed, and lime-fingered, as swift in running away with their stolen prey, as the Grey-hound in pursuing it. *Champlein* testifieth, that the *Armouchiquois* are deformed with little heads, short bodies, armes small like a bone, as are their thighs also; their legges great and long, and disproportioned with likenesse of proportion: when they sit on their heeles, their knees are halfe a foot higher then their heads. They are valiant, and planted in the best Countrey.

M. du Point. *Monsieur du Point* arriued in those parts in the yeere 1605. and *du Monts* remoued the French Habitation to the *Port-Royall*, *Monsieur de Pourtrincourt* sailed thither in the yeere 1606. and with him the Author of the Booke called *Noua Francia*, who hath written the Rites and Customes of these Countries. Hee saith, that the *Armouchiquois* are a great people, but haue no adoration. They are vicious and bloody. Both they and the *Souriquois* haue the industry of Painting and Caruing, and doe make Pictures of Birds, Beasts, and Men, both in stone and wood, as well as the workmen in these parts. They, as is said, ascribe not Diuine worship to any thing: but yet acknowledge some Spirituall and inuisible Power. I know not by what Diuine Iustice, and Iniustice of the Diuell, it comes to passe, that God hath giuen some men vp so farre vnto the Diuels tyrannie, that he hath banished out of their hearts the knowledge and worship of the True God: and yet the nature of Man cannot be without apprehension of some greater, and more excellent Nature, and rather then want of all Religion, they will haue a Religious-irreligious commerce with the Diuell. Yea, the more all knowledge of God is banished, the baser seruice doe Men, in doing and suffering, yeeld to the Diuell: as (to leaue other parts to their owne places) it falleth out in these Regions. The Prince and greatest Commander of Men among them, seemes by this meanes to bee the Diuels Vicegerent, and by wizardly and diuellish practices to vp-hold his owne greatnesse. So it was with *Sagamos Memberton*: if any body were sicke, he was sent for, he made inuocations on the Diuell, he bloweth vpon the partie grieued; maketh incision, sucketh the bloud from it: (a practice vsed in very many Countries of the Continent and Ilands of *America*) if it be a wound, he healeth it after the same maner, applyeng a round slice of Beauers stones. Some present is therefore made to him, of Venison or skinnes.

Mark L'Scarbot.

Souriquois.

If it be a question to haue newes of things absene, hauing first questioned with his spirit, he trendereth his Oracle, commonly doubtfull, very often false, and sometimes true. He rendered

rendered a true Oracle of the comming of *Pontrincourt* to *du Pont*, saying, his Diuell had told him so.

When the Sauages are hungry, they consult with *Membertous* Oracle, and he telleth them the place whither they shall goe: and if there be no game found, the excuse is, that the Beast hath wandered and changed place: but very often they finde. And this makes them believe that the Diuell is a God, and know none other, although they yeeld him no adoration. When these *Aoutmoins* (so they call these Wizards) consult with the Diuell, they fixe a staffe in a pit, to which they tye a Cord, and putting their head into the pit, make inuocations or conjurations, in a language vnknowne to the others that are about, and this with beatings and howlings vntill they sweat with paine. When this Diuell is come, the Master *Aoutmoin* makes them believe that hee holds him tyed by his cord, and holdeth fast against him, forcing him to giue him an answer, before he let him goe. That done, he beginneth to sing something in the praises (as it seemeth) of the Diuel, that hath discouered some game vnto them, and the other Sauages that are there, make answer with some concordance of musicke among them. Then they dance with songs in another, not vulgar, language: after which, they make a fire and leap ouer it, and put halfe a pole out of the top of the Cabin, where they are, with something tied thereto, which the Diuell carrieth away.

Aoutmoins

Membertou carried at his necke the marke of his profession, which was a purse, triangle-wise couered with their imbroidered worke, within which there was somewhat as bigge as a Nut, which he said was his Diuell, called *Aoutem*. This function is successiue, and by tradition they teach their eldest sonnes the mysterie of this iniquitie. Every * *Sagamos* either is, or hath his *Aoutmoin*.

* *Sagamos* signifieth a King, or Ruler.

The men and women weare their blacke haire long, hinging loose ouer the shoulder; wherein the men sticke a feather, the women a bodkin. They are much troubled with a stinging fly, for preuention whereof, they rub themselues with a certaine kinde of grease and oyles. They paint their faces with blue or red, but not their bodies.

For their marriages, they are contracted with the consent of Parents, who will not giue their Daughters in marriage to any, except he be a good hunter. The women are said to bee chaste, and the contrary seldome found: and though the husband hath many wiues, yet is there no iealousie among them. The widowes heere, if there husbands be killed, will not marrie againe, nor eate flesh, till their death be reuenged. Other wile they make no great difficultie (which *Cartier* reporteth of Canada) to marry agane if they find a fit match. Sometimes the Sauages hauing many wiues, will giue one to their friend, if he likes her, so to disburden themselues. The women eate not with the men in their meetings, but apart. When they make feasts, they them end with dances all in a round; to which one singeth: at the end of euery song all make a loud & long exclamation: and to be the more nimble, they strip themselues starke naked. If they haue any of their enemies heads or armes, they will carry them (as a iewel) about their necks whiles they dance, sometimes biting the same.

After their Feasts they will diet themselues, huing sometimes eight dayes more or lesse with the smoke of Tobacco. They are in nothing laborious but in hunting. They sow but so much as will serue them for sixe moneths, and that very hardly: during the Winter they retire, three or foure moneths space, into the woods, and there liue on Acornes, Fish, and Venison. They wash not themselues at meales, except they be monstrous foule, and then wipe on their owne, or their Dogs haires. Their entertainment is with small complement: the Guest sits downe by his Host, if it be the King, takes Tobacco, and then giues the pipe to him that he thinkes the worthiest person in the company. They are dutifull to their Parents, obey their commandements, and nourish their persons in age. They vse humanitie to the wiues & children of their conquered enemies, but the men of defence they kill. Their chiefe hunting is in winter; they carry alwaies tinder-boxes with them, to strike fire when hunting is done, or night takes them. For they follow the game sometimes three dayes together.

Their beasts and huntings.

Their Dogs are like Foxes, which spend not, neuer giue ouer, and haue rackets tyed vnder their feet, the better to run on the snow. They seethe the flesh in a tub of wood, by putting stones heated red hot therein. The womens duty is to flay the Beast, and bring it home. The Ellan, Deare, Stag, and Beare, are their game. They take also with their hands Beuers, which are of a chest-nut colour, short legged, his fore-feet haue open clawes, the hinder finnes like a Goose, the tayle skaled, almost of the forme of a Sole-fish: it is the delicatest part of the Beast. The head is short and round, with two rankes of iawes at the sides; and before foure great teeth (two aboue, and two beneath) with which he cuts downe small trees. Hee builds on the brinkes of a Lake, cuts his wood therewith raiseth a Vault; and because the waters sometimes rise, he hath an vpper story to betake himselfe to in such case: he builds it Pyramide-wise, sometimes eight foot high, and dawbs it with mud. He keeps his taile stil in the water. They take him with their hands in a frost, one fraying him on the Ice, whiles another

seizeth on his necke. When one dies, they mourne for him long, euery Cabin his day by course: after that, they burne all his goods, and bury the body in a graue: where, when they haue placed him, euery one maketh a present of the best thing he hath: as skins to couer him, bowes, knues, or the like.

a *S. Champlain.* Quebec is a Streit of Canada, where is a goodly Country furnished with Okes, Cypresse, wilde Vines, Peases, Nuts, Cherries, Goose-berries, Diamonds, in the Rockes of Slate, and other profitable pleasures; They saw in forty fiue degrees a Lake fifteene Leagues long, and eight wide, with a Salt or fall not aboue three fadome, bue very furious. The Sauages related to them of passages to a salt Lake, whereof they knew no end, reaching so farre Southerly; that the Sun set to the North thereof in Summer: it was foure hundred leagues from the place where the French then were. *In the Additions to Noua Francia*, mention is made of a Lake about threescore leagues long, with faire Ilands in it. The Iroquois haue no Townes; their dwellings and Forts are three or foure stories high, as in New-Mexico. Another lake is said to continue an hundred leagues in length, and some conceiue hope of passage to the South-Sea thereby.

Additions to N F. The Iroquois.

The Scuruie, or Scorbuch, much consumed the French in these parts, a disease that vsually attendeth euill Diet, and much salt meats; which, and want of exercise conuenient, are the Harbengers of this sicknes, in long sieges and Nauigations. *Cartiers* company were in a little time wonderfully cured hereof by a Tree like to Sassafras. But of the French in these parts and of their doings and sufferings, see more in the fourth part of my Pilgrims, the eight and ninth bookes, out of *Marke Le Scarbot*, Sir *W. Alexander*, &c.

Of Mag. lib. 16. cap. 51.

CHAP. V.

Of VIRGINIA.

§. I.

The Preface, Sir WALTER RALEIGHS *Plantation, and the Northerne Colony.*

LEauing New-France, let vs draw neerer the Sunne to New-Britaine, whose Virgin soyle not yet polluted with Spaniards lust, by our late *Virgin-Mother*, was iustly called *Virginia*. Whether shall I here begin with Elogies or Elegies? Whether shall I warble sweet Carols in praise of thy louely Face, thou fairest of *Virgins*, which from our other Britaine World, hath won thee Wooers and Suters, not such as *Leander*, whose loues the Poets haue blazed for swimming ouer the Straits betwixt Sestos and Abydus, to his louely *Hero*; but, which for thy sake, haue forsaken their Mother-Earth, encountred the most tempestuous forces of the Aire, and so often ploughed vp *Neptunes* Plaines, furrowing the angry Ocean, and that to make thee of a ruder Virgin, not a wanton Minion, but an honest & Christian Wife? Or shal I change my accent, and plaine me (for I know not of whom, to whom to complaine) of those disaduentures, which these thy louely louers haue sustained in seeking thy loue? What enuie, I know not, whether of Nature, willing to reserue this Nymph for the treasurie of her owne loue, testified by the many and continuall presents of a temperate Climate, fruitfull Soile, fresh and faire streames, sweet and wholesome Aire, except neere the shore (as if her ealous policie had prohibited forreine Suters:) or of the Sauage Inhabitants, vnworthy to embrace with their rustike armes so sweet a bosome, and to appropriate with greatest disparagement so faire a Virgin to Sauage Loues: or haply some conceiued indignitie, that some Parents should thither send their most vnruly Sonnes, and that our *Britannia* should make her Virginian lap to be the voider, for her lewder and more disordered Inhabitants, whose ill parts haue made distastefull those kinder offices of other our Britaine Worthies, which else had been long since with greatest gladnesse, and the recompence of her sesse entertained: or whether it be Virginian modesty, and after the vse of Virgins, she would say Nay at first, holding that loue sureft in continuance, which is hardest in obtaining: Whether any, or all of these, or what else hath hindered; hindered we haue been, and haue not yet obtained the full fruition of her Loue, and possession of her gainfull Dowry, which yet now (more then euer before) she seemeth to promise, and doubtlesse wil quickly performe, if niggardise at home doe not hinder. And should men be niggardly in this aduenture,

where

where *Nabal* must needs verifie his name, where keeping loseth, adventuring promiseth so faire a purchase? Miserie of our times! that miserable men should here want what they already haue, & refuse to haue there, at no rate, abundant supply to their too miserable feares of want. Lift vp your eyes, & see that brightnesse of Virginia's beauty: which the Mountaines lift vp themselues alway yes with wild smiles to behold, sending downe siluer streames to salute her, which powre themselues greedily into her louely lap, and after many winding embracements, loth to depart, are at last swallowed of a more mighty Cortiuall, the Ocean: He also sends Armies of fishes to her Coasts, to winne her Loue, euen of his best store, and that in store and abundance: the Mountaynes out-bid the Ocean, in offering the secret store-
10 houses of vndoubted Mines: he againe offereth Pearles: and thus while they seeke to outface each other with their puffed bigge and swolne cheekes, who shall get the Bride; the one layes hold on the Continent and detaines the same, maugre the Oceans fury, and hee againe hath gotten the Ilands all along the Coast, which hee guardeth and keepeth with his watery Garrisons. Virginia, betwixt those two sowre-faced Suters, is almost distracted, and easily would giue entertainment to English loue, and accept a *New Britan* appellation, if her husband be but furnished out at first in sorts and sutes, befitting her Marriage solemnitie: all which her rich dowrie would mayntaine for euer after with aduantage.

And well may England court her, rather then any other Europæan louers in regard of his loog continued amity, and first Discouerie of her Lands and Seas: this by *Sebastian Cabot* with his English Mariners, a hundred and fifteene yeeres since, and the other by Sir *Walter Raleighs* charge and direction, *Anno Dom.* 1584. *An.1497.*

Then first of all Christians, did Master *Philips Amadas*, and Master *Arthur Barlow*, take possession in Queene *Elizabeths* name. The next yeere that mirrour of Resolution, [a] Sir *Richard Greenuile*, conuyed thither an English Colony, which he there left for Plantation, vnder the gouernment of Master *Ralph Lane*, which there continued vntill the eighteenth of June in the yeere following, and then (vpon some vrgent occasions) returned with Sir *Francis Drake* into England. Yet, had they stayed but a little longer, a ship of Sir *Walter Raleighs* had supplyed their necessities: and soone after Sir *Richard* againe repaired thither with three ships, and then also left fifteene men more to keepe possession. In the yeere 1587
30 a second Colonie were sent vnder the gouernment of Master *John White*. To their succour Sir *Walter Raleigh* hath sent fiue seuerall times, the last by [b] *Samuel Mace* of Weymouth, in March, one thousand six hundred and two;but he and the former performed nothing, but returned with fruitless allegations. The same yeere, Captaine *Bartholmew Gosnold*, and Captaine *Gilbert*, discouered the North parts of Virginia, of which Voyage *John Brereton* [c] hath written a Treatise.

In the yeere 1603. [d] the Bristow men (by leaue of Sir *Walter Raleigh*) set forth a Voyage thither in 43. degrees. In this Expedition was *Robert Salterne*, which had beene the yeere before with Captaine *Gosnold*. They discouered Whitson-bay (so they termed it) in one and forty degrees twenty fiue minutes. The people vsed Snakes skins (of which some were six foot long) for Girdles: they were exceedingly ratisfied with the Musicke of a Gitternoy, dancing in a ring about him: they were feared two English Mastiues then twentie men. They had such Boats as before are mentioned, seuenteene foot long, foure broad, of Birch-barke sowed with Osyers, the seames couered with Rozen, almost as sweet as Frankincense, carrying nine men standing vpright, and yet not weighing aboue threescore pound. They brought one of them to Bristoll. This yeere Captaine *Gilbert* set forth againe for Virginia: at Meuis they laded twenty tuns of *Lignum vitæ*: hee had foure more were slaine by the Sauages. And in the yeere 1605. Captaine *George Weymouth* made thither a prosperous Voyage, and discouered threescore miles vp a most excellent Riuer. His Voyage was set forth in print by [e] *James Rosier*.

After this followed the plantation by the present Aduenturers, for the foundation of a *New Britan* Common-wealth: and the East and [f] West parts of England ioyned in one purpose of a two-fold Plantation, in the North and South parts of Virginia. Of the North parts our Method requires first mention. Mawoosheu was many yeeres together visited by our men, extending betweene 43. and 45. degrees, 40. leagues in bredth, and 50. in length. They found therein nine Riuers, Quibiquesson, Pemaquid, Ramasioc, Apanawapaske, Apatmenseke, Aponeg, Sagadahoc, Asharmahiga, Shawokotoe. Sagadahoc is in 43. degrees, it is a mile and half at the mouth, holding the same bredth a dayes iourney, and then makes a sound three dayes [g] iourney broad, in which are fiue Ilands: it hath two branches, the one from the Northeast 24. dayes iourney, the other North-west 30. dayes iourney. At the heads
60 are two Lakes the Westermost 8. dayes iourney long and foure wide, the Eastermost halfe so large. This is *Basshabaes* his dominion. The Tarentines [h] country is in 44. deg. two third parts, where the Sauages tell of a Rock of Allum, neere the Riuer of Sasnowa. Captain [i] *T. Hanhams*

a *Hak. voyage tom. 3. p. 246. & d. Gaspar Ens. hist. Ind. Oc. l. 3. c. 13.*
Theod. de Bry.

b Briefe note of a Barke, &c. printed 1602.

c *Ieh Brereton, Gabriel Archer,* wrote notes thereof, & M. *Gosnold* himselfein a Letter to his Fathers they refided in 41. deg. 20. minutes.
d Written by *Martin Pring.* Written by *Tho. Canner.*
e *James Rosier;*
f Their Patents prescribe that they plant not within 100 miles of each other; & continue from 30. deg. to 45.
g The Sauages reckon thus by dayes iourney.
h *Gor. Sagher Fortescue.*
i *Tho. Hanham, M. Challenge* made a voyage hitherward the same yeere, but was taken by the Spaniards.

[1] *Thomas Hanham* sayled to the Riuer of Sagadahoc 1606. He relateth of their beasts, doggs like wolues, of colours blacke, white, red, grilled: red Deere, and a beast bigger, called the Mus, &c. of their fowles, fishes, trees: of some Oare proued to be siluer. *Bashabes* hath many vnder-Captaines, called *Sagamos*: their houses built with Withs, and couered ouer with Mats, sixe or seuen paces long. He expresseth also the names of their twelue Moones or moneths: as Ianuary Mussekeshos, February Cignokiakeshos, &c.

An. 1607. was settled a Plantation in the Riuer Sagadahoc, the ships called the *Gift*, and the *Mary* and *Iohn*, [k] being sent thither by that famous English Iusticer Sir *Iohn Popham* and others. They found this coast of Virginia full of Ilands, but safe. They chose the place of their Plantation at the mouth of Sagadahoc, in a Westerly Peninsula: there heard a Sermon, read their Patent and Lawes, and built a Fort. They sailed vp to discouer the Riuer and Countrey, and encountred with an Iland where where was a great fall of water, ouer which they haled their Boat with a Rope, and came to another fall, shallow, swift, and vnpassable. They found the Countrey stored with Grapes white and red, guod Hops, Onions, Garlicke, Okes, Walnuts, the soile good. The head of the Riuer is in forty sixe and odde minutes. Cape Siniamis in 43. deg. 30. min. a good place to fortifie. Their Fort bare name of Saint *George*. Forgie sixe remained there, [l] Captaine *George Popham* being President, *Raleigh Gilbert* Admirall. The people seemed affected with our mens deuotions, and would say, King IAMES is a good King, his God a good God, and *Tanto* naught. So they call an euill spirit which haunts them euery Moone, and makes them worship him for feare. Hee commanded them not to dwell neere, or come among the English, threatning to kill some and inflict sicknesse on others, beginning with two of their Sagamos children, saying he had power, and would doe the like to the English the next Moone, to wit, in December.

The peple [m] told our men of Canibals, [n] neere Sagadahoc, with teeth three inches long, but they saw them not. In the Riuer of Tamesoc they found Oysters nine inches in length: and were told that on the other side there were twice as great. On the 18. of Ianuary they had in seuen houres space, thunder, lightning, raine, frost, snow, all in aboundance, the last continuing. On February the 5. the President died. The Sauages remoue their dwellings in Winter neerest the Deere. They haue a kinde of shooes a yard long, fourteene inches broad, made like a Racket, with strong twine or sinewes of a Deere; in the mids is a hole wherein they put their foot, buckling it fast. When a Sagamos dyeth, they blacke themselues, and at the same time yerely renue their mourning with great howlings as they then did for *Kasknokeny*, who died the yeere before. They report that the Canibals haue a Sea behinde them. They found a Bath two miles about, so hote that they could not drinke it. Master *Patteson* was slaine by the Sauages of Nanhoc, a Riuer of the Tarentines. Their short Commons [o] caused feare of mutiny. One of the Sauages, called *Aminguin*, for a straw hat and knife giuen him, stript himselfe of his cloathing to Beuers skinnes, worth in England 50. shillings, or three pound to present them to the President, leaving onely a flap to couer his priuities. He would also haue come with them for England. In winter they are poore [p] and weake, and do not then company with their wiues, but in Summer when they are fat and lusty. But your eyes wearied with this Northerne view, which in that Winter communicated with vs in extremitie of cold, looke now for greater hopes in the Southerne Plantation, as the right arme of his Virginian body, with greater costs and numbers furnished from hence.

But first let me tell you that by some lately these Northerne Parts are stiled by the Name of *New-England*, as being supposed in the same Latitude with Nouo Albion on the South Sea, discouered by Sir *Francis Drake*, hauing New France on the North, and the Southern Plantation of Virginia on the South; New Spaine, New Granado, New Andalusia, being in the same Continent. A Map and Discouerie hereof was set forth this last yeere by Captaine *Iohn Smith*, with new English Names exchanged for the Sauage. It lyeth betwixt 41. degrees, and 45. minutes. The harsh Names of the habitations of those parts, I forbeare to recite: the commodities are expressed by that Author. First for fish, (let not any thinke this contemptible, when, by his report, the Hollanders reape from three kinds, Herring, Cod, and Ling, fifteene hundred thousand pound yeerely; herevpon principally founding their greatnesse by Sea and Land.) In March, April, May and halfe Iune here is Cod in abundance; in May, Iune, Iuly, and August, Mullet and Sturgeon, whose Roes doe make Cauiarie and Puttargo. Their store of Herrings they compare to the haires of their heads. In the end of August, September, October and Nouember you haue Cod againe to make Corfish or Poore-Iohn, wice as good as in New-found-land, where their fishing also is chiefly but in Iune and Iuly. Mullets are here taken by Nets, (which at Cape Blanke are hooked) and twice as large. He addes store of Red-berries called Alkermes, Muske-Rats, Beuers, Otters, Martins, Blacke Foxes, probabilities of Mines, and manifold commodities of the soile, the particulars whereof I referre to the booke it selfe, together with the arguments for a Plantation there

i *Tho. Hanham. M. Challenge* made a Voyage hitherward the same yeere, but was taken by the Spaniards.

k *Iames Denies.*

l *Io. Elist. G. Pop.* Lets to *S. I. Gilbert* and *E. S.*

m *Ral. Gilbert.*

n These seeme to be the deformed Armouchiquoys made in the telling more dreadfull.

o *Edward Hartley.*

p Other notes *op. Hak.*

there. There also you may reade his Obseruations and Discoueries, *Anno* 1614. with the successe of sixe ships that went the next yeere, and his disasters by French Pirats, and q English perfidie. This present yeere 1616. eight voluntarie ships went thither to make further tryall: and hereafter we hope to haue English Colonies reuued, in this Northerly Plantation newly called New-England.

q See the examination of D. *Baker*, and others of his company.

They tooke one prize worth 200000. crownes, which was after split, the Captaine and halfe his company drowned.

10

§. II.

Of the Southerne Plantation and Colonies; and many causes alledged of the ill successe thereof at the first.

CAptaine *Bartholomew Gosnold*, hauing long sollicited many of his friends, at last preuailed with some Gentlemen, as Master *Edward Maria Wingfield*, Captaine *John Smith*, and diuers others, with the helpe of some Noblemen and Merchants, his Maiestie granting Commission for establishing Councels to direct here, and to gouerne and execute there; so that December 19. 1606. they set saile, and after long contending with contrarie winds, and the windy inconstancie of some of the company that would haue returned for England before they had saluted their desired Port, they were by a storme forced into the same vnexpected; where, after some harme by assault of the Sauages, on the 12. of May, Master *Wingfield* was chosen President, their fort contriued, and the *fals* soone after discouered, Sixe weekes being thus spent, Captaine *Newport* returned with the ships, and Captaine *Smith* (before held in much iealousie) was by the paines of M. *Hunt* the Preacher reconciled, and admitted of the Councell, a hundred being left there for the Plantation.

Richard Pots. Tho. Studley. &c.

Within ten dayes after the departure of this moueable Tauerne, as they called it, a more satiage enemy then the Sauages had assaulted them, and scarcely ten left vntouched with sicknesse, through want of conuenient lodging and diet, of which from May to September fifty dyed. *Wingfield* was deposed, and *Ratcliffe* established in his place, and by the industrie of *Smith*, *James Towne* was builded, the Sauages supplying their necessities: they sailing, Captaine *Smith* sought trade abroad; others at home, intending a returne in the Pinace for England, by his vnexpected returning were forced to stay or sinke, which action cost the life of Captaine *Kendall*. Soone after, the like plot of the President, and Captaine *Archer* was discouered, and by him against suppressed. The Winter approaching, the Riuers afforded them plenty of Cranes, Swannes Geese, Ducks, with which, and Pease, wilde Beasts, and other land-commodities they dayly feasted. But in the discouerie of Chickahamine Riuer, *George Cassen* was surprised, and *Smith* with two others, were beset with two hundred Sauages, his men slaine, and himselfe in a quagmire taken prisoner; but after a moneth he procured himselfe not onely libertie, but great admiration among st them, and returning, once more stayed the Pinace from flight, and the Fort from being abandoned.

a M. *Wingfield* writes that ond *Read* a Smith, escaped hanging by accusing *Kendall*, who was shot to death: and that *Smith* and he had to followed it *Newport* had not come.

The Treasurer and Councell, meane-while carefull to supply their wants, sent two ships with neere a hundred men: Capt. *Newport* arriued safely, Captaine *Nelson* with the other ship by force of windes was driuen to shift as hee could, elsewhere. Now the Sauages enchanted by *Smiths* relations of God, Nature, and Art, were in manner at his command, till the ambition of some (by giuing foure times as much for their commodities as he appointed, seeking to seeme of so much greater magnificence and authoritie) made them prize their commodities dearer. *Newport* (whom *Smith* had called father, and extolled with *Powhatan* the Emperour) went with solemnitie to visit him, sending *Smith* before, who after his manner of State, gaue him b royall entertainment; sitting vpon his bed of Mats, his pillow of leather embroidered with pearle and white beads, attired with a robe of skins, large as an Irish mantle; at his head and feet sate a handsome yong woman, on each side his house twenty others, their heads and shoulders painted red, with a great chaine of white beades about their necks; before those sate his chiefest men in like order in his Arbor-like house. *Newport* gaue him a boy, for whom *Powhatan* gaue him *Namontacke* his seruant, which was after brought into England. *Powhatan* wittily cheated our men, and offering so much corne as they gaue copper, said he could eate that, not this. c Their gettings in this voyage, other commodities, and their rownes, were casually consumed by fire: and the ship staying fourteene weekes, spent most of that prouision for the relieue of the Colony: and by the bitternesse of that great Frost 1607. aboue halfe took their deaths. *Wingfield* and *Archer* were sent for England. Being busied in the Spring to rebuild their towne. *Nelson* arriued with his lost *Phœnix* (so they supposed his ship) and dealt honestlier then they report of the former Mariners.

b *Ed. Wingfield, Newp.* iourney to *Powhatan*: he told him of the S. seas, and ships, &c.

c *Tho. Sauage:* he adopted alio *Smith* and *Scrimer* (*Newports* seruice) his grandchildren. Disc. of Che. 30. See *Pets* his collections. c. 6.

Mariners. The second of Iune 1608. *Smith* left the Fort to discouer the Bay of Chesapeack: in the way, wanting of conuenient watering places, they were so thirstie, as they would haue refused two Barricoes of gold for one of water: and they arriued at *Iames Towne* in September, where they found some sicke, many dead, and the President prisoner: which place by election of the Councell and request of the company was bestowed on *Smith*.

Captaine *Newport* returned with rich presents of Basons, Ewers, Bed, Cloathes, with a Crowne for *Powhatan*, which made him ouer-value himselfe: some Poles and Dutch which were sent to make Pitch and Tarre, Glasse mils and Sope-ashes, proued after treacherous. *Powhatan* minding murther and villany, at once sixteene of our men were beiet with seuen hundred, which by the policy of *Smith* (leasing on *Opechancanough* their King) was preuented, and turned to their enriching with their commodities: and amongst other they vsed poison, which wrought not: After, *Smith* tooke the King of Paspaheigh prisoner, which forced the Sauages to peace. Thus haue we a little while beheld *Tragicall*, more then shewes, on this Virginian Theatre, those things which were well intended, being ill perverted, and their greatest aduantages arising from casuall disaduantages: Miserificio of emulations beclowding that morning starre, a disastrous Comet, shining rather with fierie gleanings of ciuill broiles and brawles in that Hemisphere, then comfortable illumination and influence to the common good.

The Sauages were now in good termes with the English; their Plantation at *Iames Town*, where they had built a Church and many houses, in some reasonable manner flourished: the countrey was with great paines and perils of the President further discouered; their Swine, Hens, and other prouision nourished; and some quantitie of many commodities, as Furres, Dies, Minerals, Sassafrasse, Sturgeon, and other things sent hither, in testimonie of their industry and successe. And Virginia grew now in such request, [a] that nine ships were furnished with the better part of fiue hundred men, to inhabite there, in the yeere one thousand sixe hundred and nine, the gouernment being deuolued to the *L. de la Ware*.

a New life of Virginia.

Sir *Thomas Gates* was appointed Lieutenant Generall; Sir *George Summers* Admirall of Virginia, and were sent to reside there as Gouernours of the Colony. But the *Sea-venture*, wherein the two Knights, and Captaine *Newport*, with a hundred and fifty persons, sayled, after long conflict with the two angry elements, was sent to bee imprisoned in Bermuda, where betweene two Rocks the ship split, the people escaping to Land. In the meane time [b] three of the other ships [c] had landed their men in Virginia, some of whom [d] were fuch as had been the emulous and enuious corriuals of the President, which they then began to shew: and to second the same, a greater hurt by Gun-powder befell him, which forced him for his recouerie to set sayle for England, after hee had liued there three yeeres; maintaining himself and his that time principally, with such food as the Countrey yeelded. He saith, he left behinde at his returne fiue hundred men and women, three Ships, seuen Boats, two hundred expert Souldiers, thirtie nine of their *Werowances* or Kings, as Subjects and Contributers to the English, so farre subiect, that at his command they haue sent their subjects to *Iames Towne*, to receiue correction at his appointment for wrongs done; and their Countries were free to the English for trauell or trade. But Necessitie forced him to leaue the Countrey, which it forced the other appointed Gouernours not to finde. *Hinc illæ lachrymæ.* Hence proceeded the disorder and confusion which after happened amongst them. A great bodie was here, which acknowledged no head, and therefore grew vnweldie and distempered. Some sought for rule ouer others, which were ouer-ruled by vnruly passions of Ambition, and faction in themselues: others sought their ease, except sometimes they were ouer-busie in diseasing others, and deuouring that which others had carefully laboured for. Ruine seiseth on the Church, Rapine makes prey and spoile of the goods, Ruine deuoureth their beasts, Famine consumeth the men, Iniuries make the Indians their enemies; two of the ships perish vpon Vshant, and one man alone was left to bring home nawes of their perishing: the rest returne laden with Letters of discouragement, painting out Famine, Sedition, and other Furies, which had broken loose amongst them, in the blackest colours; which were sealed with report of the losse of their Admirall, to make vp the measure of mischiefe.

b *Ex lit. multarum.*
c A Dutch pesh-dat sold in a Hertiens: the other came thither, but in the returne two of them (in one of which Capt. *W. King* was Master) perished on Vshant.
d *Ratliffe, Martin, Archer.*

All this did not daunt the Noble Spirit of [e] that resolute Lord, appointed Lord Gouernour, who in the beginning of April, one thousand sixe hundred and ten, set sayle from the coast of England, and on the ninth of Iune arriued safely at the distortified Fort in Virginia, where he found the present State like to the Boxe [f] of *Pandora*, who being endowed with manifold good gifts (each of the gods bestowing one on her) was sent with a boxe full of euils *to Prometheus*, who refused the offer, but by *Epimetheus* was opened, whereby all euils were suffered to fly out, *Hope* onely remaining, which he shut fast in the bottome. And thus was it with this Virginian *Pandora*, enriched with the best offerings of Natures bounty,

e *Lord de la Ware.*
f *Nat. Com. Mythologi l. 4. c. 6. Hygin. fab. 142.*

beauty, but by Epithethean carelesnesse, all euils had now dispersed themselues, and made the Virginian Colony a stage of Misery: onely Hope remayned. But alas, euen that also proued sicke and was ready to giue vp the Ghost, in the dangerous sicknesse, which befell that Noble c Lord, which forced him after eight moneths sicknesse, to returne for England againe. He shipped himselfe indeed for Mettis, an Iland in the West Indies, famous for wholsome Bathes, but by Southerly winds was compelled to change his purpose, and at last to make home: hauing left Deputie Gouernour Captaine *George Percie*, a Gentleman of honour and resolution, with vpward of two hundred persons.

Almighty God that had thus sure tried the patience of the English, would not *suffer them to be tempted aboue that they were able*: and therefore in this sore Prouidence, before any knowledge was here had of his Lordships sicknesse, had ordayned Sir *Thomas Dale* should be furnisht out with a good supply of ships, men, cattell, and many prouisions; all which arriued safe at the Colony the tenth of May, 1611. He by his Letters, and the Lord Governour by his Relations, did animate the Aduenturers; the one protesting himselfe willing and readie to lay all that heele was worth vpon the Aduenture of the action, rather then so honourable a worke should faile, and to returne with all conuenient expedition, if their friendly endeuours would therein second his resolutions: the other writing that foure of the best Kingdomes in Christendome, put all together, may no way compare with this Country, either for commodities or goodnesses of soyle. This sparke kindled in their hearts such constancie of zeale and forwardnesse, that they furnished out Sir *Thomas Gates* (who had happily returned with the rest from Bermudas) with six ships, 300. men, and a hundred Kine, with other Cattle, Munition, and prouision of all sorts.

Sir *Thomas Dale* hauing newes that it was a Fleet of enemies, prepared himselfe and the rest to an encounter, but it ended with a common ioy, in the shaking of hands, and not of Pikes. Lawes are now made (for lawlesnesse had marred so much before) for the honour of God, frequenting the Church, obseruation of the Sabbath, reuerence to Ministers, obedience to superiours, mutuall loue, honest labours; and against Adultery, Sacrilege, wrong and other vices, Harbengers of Gods wrath and mans destruction. The Colony consisted of seuen hundred men of sundry Arts and Professions (few of them sicke) which hauing left the Fort at Cape *Henry*, fortified and kept by Captaine *Davies*, and the keeping of *Iames* Towne, to that Noble and well-deseruing Gentleman, Master *George Percie*, is removed vp the Riuer fourescore miles further beyond *Iames* Towne, to a place of higher ground, strong and defencible by nature, with good Ayre, plenty of Springs, much faire and open grounds, freed from Woods, and wood enough at hand. Here they burnt brickes, cut downe wood, and every man fals to some what: they haue built, they say, competent houses, the first story all of brickes; that every man may haue his lodging and dwelling by himselfe, with a sufficient quantity of ground allotted thereto. Here also they were building an Hospitall with fourescore lodgings and beds already sent, for the sicke and lame, as the Booke, called the *New lose of Virginia*, relateth. Master *Whitaker* in his Letter and Booke from *Heurice*, 1612. testifieth the health and welfare of the Colonie. *Samuel Argal* in the yeere 1613. affirmed likewise that hee found the state of Virginia farre better then was reported. In one Voyage they had gotten 1100. bushels of Corne: they found a slow kind of Cattle, as bigge as f Kine, which were good meate: and a medicinable sort of earth. They tooke *Pokohuntis* (g *Powhatans* dearest daughter) prisoner, a matter of good consequence to them, of best to her, by this meanes being become a Christian, and married to Master *Rolph*, an English Gentleman.

Thus I haue beene bold somewhat largely to relate the proceedings of this Plantation, to supplant such slanders and imputations as some haue conceiued or receiued against it, and to excite the diligence and industry of all men of ability, to put to their helping hand in this Action, so Honourable in it selfe, Glorious to God in the furtherance of his Truth, and beneficiall to the Common-wealth, and to the priuate purses of the Aduenturers, if the blooming of our hopes be not blasted with our negligence.

As for the want of successe hitherto, *Caeat successibus opto, Quisquis ab euentu facta notandapatet*. Reason should preuaile with Men, leaue sense and euent of things as an argument for Beasts. That reason which shewth Virginia's more then possibilities & probabilities, doth also point out the causes of those ill Successes; h Discontents at Sea; Ignorance of the Country, and of their Language; Diuision in the Councell; Commanders (some of them) not skilfull Souldiers, nor forward Aduenturers; Care to relade the Ships before they could prouide Houses or Victuals; Ambition; Cruelty; Neglect of the Seasons for Fish, and Land-commodities; Brackish slimy Water at *Iames* Fort; Riot; Sloth; False information in England, Sending ill People that consumed the rest with idlenesse; Want of Authority to punish them; That kind of Aristocraticall Authority first established, occasion of their Quarrels; Iniuries to and from the Saluages, and yet a necessity of their vse and helpe; Sicknesse caused by the grosse and

c Relation to the Councell of Virginia by the *Lord de la Warre*, 1611.

d Sir *Th. Dales* Letter to the Committies.

f *Aluato Nuuez* speaketh of such Kine in Florida, which come hither from the North.

g Her true name was *Matoaca*, which she cast away, and tooke from the English, in a superstitious feare of her being by the English at her name were knowne: she is now Christened *Rebecca*.

h Aboue 20. causes alleaged of all successe in this Plantation. *Difficilia quae pulchra.*

and vaporous Aire and soyle about *James* Towne, and drinking water; The theeuish trucke and exchange which some secretely held with them; The treachery of Fugitiues; Falshood of the Sauages; and the Many many faults (as they report) of Mariners in priuate truckings and night marts, both with our Men and Sauages; Their long stay and spending the Colonies relifes; besides Extraordinary casualties of fire, cold, ship wracke; and (if wee beleeue [i] *Oueda*, and obserue the like amongst the Spaniards) the very Aire of the Indies seemes to be of inclination and disposition to contentions, which easily ruine and dissolue the greatest and best enterprises; that I speake not of, the Deuils malice to Christian hopes. Experience hath now made men wiser, both to preuent and remedie these euils, and to order their proceedings accordingly. And although Fame fils not our eare with so-often and many Virginian rumors, as aforetimes, yet we know that still waters are deepest, and wee cannot but hope that those worthy Virginian-Consuls [k] *emulando restituunt rem*, rather with carefull prouidence and watchfull diligence working sure, then with humerous hastinesse, laying foundations to a leisurely repentance; seeking more the common good there, then to be the common talke heere. Once, they there maintayne themselues now a long time without the wonted charge to the Company, and diuers of our Nobility and Gentry doe now (as after a long slumber) while we are writing these things, against hethinke them of this Virginian Plantation; whereunto the profitable Neighbour-hood of the Summer Iles, or Bermudas may be good furtherance. God Almighty prosper both, that *the Word may goe out* of Bermuda, *and the Law of the Lord* from Virginia, to a truer conuersion of the American World, then hitherto Our Humorists, or Spanish insolencies haue intended.

[i] Oued. gen. hist. c. 33. l. 1. sosso venga o dall' aere del paese desbati à suscitare nouita & discordie, è cosa propria nelle Indie, &c.

§. III.

Of the Soyle, People, Beasts, Commodities and other Obseruations of Virginia.

FOr the description of the Countrey, Master *Hakluyt* from Others Relations in his third Volume of Voyages hath written largely of those parts, discouered for Sir *Walter Raligh*. Concerning the later, Captaine *John Smith*, partly by word of mouth, partly by his Map thereof in print, and more fully by a [l] Manuscript, which hee courteously communicated to mee, hath acquainted mee with that whereof himselfe with great perill and paine had beene the Discouerer, being in his discoueries taken Prisoner, as is before said, and escaping their fury, yea receiuing much honour and admiration amongst them, by reason of his Discourses to them of the motion of the Sunne, of the parts of the World, of the Sea, &c. which was occasioned by a Diall then found about him. They carried him Prisoner to *Powhatan*, and there beganne the English acquaintance with that sauage Emperour.

k Sir T. *Gates*. & Sir T. *Dale*.

The summe of his obseruation in that and other Discoueries since, concerning the Country, is this: Virginia is situate betweene 34. and 44. degrees of Northerly latitude; the bounds whereof on the East side are the great Ocean, Florida on the South, on the North *Noua Francia*: the Westerne limits are vnknowne. But that part which began to bee planted by the English Southerne Colony, in the yeere 1606. is vnder the degrees, 37. 38. and 39. The temperature agreeth with English bodies, not by other meanes distempered. The Summer [m] is hot as in Spaine, the Winter cold as in France and England: certaine coole Brizes doe asswage the vehemency of the heate. The great Frost in the yeere 1607. reached to Virginia, but was recompenced with as milde a Winter with them the next yeere. And the Winter *Anno* 1615. [n] was as cold and frosty one fortnight as that.

[l] Since printed at Oxford. [m] *M. Whitaker* saith, not so hot as Spaine, nor Winter so cold as in England. [n] Master *Ralph*.

There is but one entrance by Sea into this Country, and that at the mouth of a very goodly Bay. The Capes on both sides were honoured with the names of our Britanian hopes, Prince *Henry*, and Duke *Charles*. The water floweth in this Bay neere two hundred miles, and hath a channell, for a hundred and forty miles of depth, betwixt seuen and fifteene fathomes of breadth, ten or fourteene miles. At the head of the Bay, the Land is Mountaynous, and so runneth by a Southwest Line: from which Mountaynes proceed certaine Brooks, which after come to fiue principall Nauigable Riuers. The Mountaynes are of diuers composition, some like Mill-stones, some of Marble: & many pieces of Crystall they found thrown downe by the waters, which also wash from the Rockes such glistering Tinctures, that the ground in some places seemeth gilded.

The colour of the earth in diuers places resembleth Bole-Armoniac, *terra sigillata*, and other such apparances: but generally is a blacke sandy molde. The Riuer next to the mouth of

of the Bay is *Powhatan*, the mouth whereof is neere three miles broad: it is Nauigable an hundred miles: falls, rocks, shoalds, prohibite further Nauigation: hence *Powhatan* their greatest King hath his Title. In a *Peninsula* on the Northside thereof is situate *James* Towne.

The people inhabiting which haue their *Werounces*, are the *Kecoughtans*, which haue not past twenty fighting men. The *Paspaheghes*, haue forty. *Chickahamania*, two hundred. The *Weanocks*, an hundred. The *Arrowhatocks*, thirty. The Place called *Powhatan*, forty. The *Appamatuks*, threescore. The *Quiyoughcohanocks* fiue and twenty. The *Warrasqueyacks*, forty. The *Nandsamunds*, two hundred. The *Chickapeacks*, an hundred. The *Chickahamanians* are not gouerned by a *Werounce*, but by the Priests. No place affordeth more Sturgeon in Summer (of which at one draught haue beene taken threescore and eight) nor in Winter more Fowle. Fourteene miles from *Powhatan* is the Riuer *Pamaunke*, naugable with greater Vessels, not aboue threescore and ten miles. *Toppahanok* is naugable an hundred and thirty miles, *Patanomeke*, an hundred and twenty. To speake of *Powtuxunt*, *Bolus*, and other Riuers on the East side of the Bay, likewise, of diuers places which receiued name by some accident, as *Fetherstones* Bay: so called of the death of one of ours there happening, and the like: or to mention the numbers which euery people can make, would exceed our scope, and the Readers patience. Captaine *Smiths* Map may somewhat satisfie the desirous, and his Booke now printed, further. This the Captaine saith, that hee hath beene in many places of Asia and Europe, in some of Africa and America, but of all, holds Virginia by the naturall endowments, the fittest place for an earthly Paradise. *Alexander Whitaker* the Preacher at *Henrico*, writes, that at the mouth of *Powhatan*, are the Forts of *Henrico* and *Charles*, two and forty miles vpward is *James* Towne, and threescore and ten miles beyond that the new Towne of *Henrico*, ten miles higher the fals (where the Riuer falleth downe betweene many mineral Rockes:) twelue miles beyond, a Chrystall Rocke, wherewith the Indians head their Arrowes: three dayes iourney from thence is a Rocke or Hill found couered ouer with a rich siluer Ore. Our men that went to discouer those parts, had but two Iron Pickaxes with them, and those so ill tempered, that the points turned againe at euery stroke; but tryall was made of the Ore, with argument of much hope. Sixe dayes iourney beyond this Mine, runs a ridge of Hills, beyond which, the Indians report, is a great Sea, which (if it bee true) is the South Sea. At *Henrico* they are exceeding healthfull, and more then in England.

Alex. Whitaker, now Preacher at Virginia.

Master *Thomas Harior* hath largely described the Commodities which the Water and Earth yeeld (set forth also in Latine with exquisite Pictures by *Theodore de Bry*) besides the relations of *Brereton* and *Rosier*, and others. There is a Grass which yeeldeth silke, beside store of Silke-wormes. Hempe and Flaxe surpassing ours in growth and goodnesse, exceeded by a new found stuffe of a certaine sedge or water-flagge, which groweth infinitely, and with little paines of boyling yeeldeth great quantitie of sundry sorts of Skeines of good strength and length, some like silke, and some like Flaxe, and some a coarser sort, as Hempe.

o *Hak. vol. 3. pag. 267. Theod. de Bry. part. 1. America.*

There is also a rich veine of Allum, of *Terra Sigillata*, Pitch, Tarre, Rozen, Turpentine, Sassafras, Cedar, Grapes, Oyle, Iron, Copper, and the hope of better Mines, Pearle, Sweete Gummes, Dyes, Timber, Trees of sweet wood for profit and pleasure, of which kinde bade beene discouered fourteene seuerall kinds. Neither is it needfull that heere I relate the Commodities of Virginia for food in Fowles, Beasts, Fishes, Fruites, Plants, Herbes, Berries, Graines, especially their Maiz, which yeeldeth incredible recompence for a little labour. One Acre of ground will yeeld with good husbandry two hundred Bushels of Corne. They haue two Roots: p the one for Medicinall vse to cure their burts, called *Weighsacan*, the other called *Tockahough*, growing like a flagge, of the greatnesse and taste of a Potato, which passeth a fiery purgation before they may eate it, being poyson whiles it is raw. Yet in all this abundance our men haue had small store but of want, and no fire nor water could purge that poyson which was rooted in Some, to the hinderance of the Plantation.

p Cap. *Smith M. 5.*

The chiefe Beasts of Virginia are Beares, lesse then those in other places, Deere like ours, *Aronghcum* much like a Badger, but liuing on trees like a Squirrell: Squirrels, as big as Rabbets, and other flying Squirrels, called *Assapanicks*, which spreading out their legs and skins, seeme to flye thirty or forty yards at a time. The *Opassom* hath a head like a Swine, a tayle like a Rat, as bigge as a Cat, and hath vnder her belly a bagge, wherein she carrieth her young. Their Doggesbarke not. Their Wolues are not much bigger then our Foxes. Their Foxes are like our siluer-haired Conies, and smell not like ours. *Mussascus* is otherwise as our Water-Rat, but smelleth strongly of Musk: Master *Whitaker* saith, they yeeld Musk as the Musk-Cats doe. Their *Utchinquoys* are wild Cats. Their vermine destroyed not our Egges and Pullen: nor were their Serpents or Flyes any way pernicious. They haue Eagles, Hawkes, wild Turkeyes, and other Fowle, and Fish, which here to repeate, would to some nice fastidious stomacks breed a fulnesse, though with some of their Countrimen in Virginia, they would haue beene sauoury sometimes and dainty.

M. *Whitaker* & M. *Hamor* mention also Lions

They

They are a people q clothed with loose Mantles made of Deeres skins, and aprons of the same round about their middles, all else naked: of stature like to vs in England. They vse to paint themselues and their children, he is the most gallant which is most monstrous. Their women imbroder their legges, hands, &c. with diuers workes, as of Serpents, and such like, with blacke spots in the flesh.

q *Tho. Hariot.*

Their houses are made of small Poles, made fast at the top, in round forme, as is vsed in many Arbours with vs; couered with Barkes or Mats, twice as long as they are broad. They are exact Archers, and will with Arrowes kill Birds flying, Fishes swimming, Beasts running: one of ours by them hath beene shot thorow the body, and both r his armes thereby fastened and pierced. They speake of men two hundred yeeres old and more, as Master *Wingfield* reporteth. Their Bowes are of tough Hasill, the strings of Leather, Arrowes of Canes or Hasill, headed with stones or homes, and artificially feathered. They are heartlesse, if they see defence to frustrate their Arrowes.

r M. *George Percie* writeth that one with an Arrow of an ell length shot thorow a Target, which a Pistoll could not pierce.

§. IIII.

Of the present estate of Virginia, and the English there residing.

THe last of May 1616. Sir *Thomas Dale* (that worthy Commander, and best establisher of the Virginian Plantation) came from thence into England, to procure and further the common good: partly by conference with Him, and chiefly by a Treatate and Relations of Master *Rolph*, the Husband of *Pokahuntas*, which came over with him, I haue learned, what here I deliuer you. The English doe now finde this Countrey so correspondent to their constitutions, that it is more rare to heare of a mans death in Virginia, then in that proportion of people in England. That Aristocraticall Gouernment by a President and Councell, s is long since remooued, and those hatefull effects thereof together: Order and diligence haue repayred, what confusion and idlenesse had distempered. The men haue beene employed in Palizading, and building of Townes, impaling grounds to keepe their Cattle from ranging, and to preserue their Corne; and a Peace concluded betwixt the English and Indians: For howsoeuer they could well before defend themselues and their Townes from them, yet not easily their Corne and Cattle. This peace hath yeelded many benefits, both opportunity of lawfull purchase of a great part of the Country from the Natiues, freely and willingly relinquishing and selling the same for Copper, or other Commodities (a thing of no small consequence to the conscience, where the milde Law of Nature, not that violent Law of Armes, layes the foundation of their possession) and quiet enioying thereof, yeerely planting and reaping without impediment; fowling, hunting, fishing, trauelling, as securely as in England; Plenty and Health attending their Peace and Industry. They haue Indian Wheate, called Mays, Pease and Beanes, and other the naturall Commodities; English Wheate, Pease, Barley, Turnepts, Cabbages, Carrots, Parsneps, Herbes and Flowres for pleasure and vse, with other things as good as the best made English ground can yeeld. And that you may know what two mens labours with Spade and Shouell onely can manure in one yeere, they refused fifty pounds offered for their Crop. Hempe, Flaxe, Tobacco, (which with a little better experience in the curing, would be as good as any in America) Fish, Fowle, Deere and other Beasts, I need not mention. Sir *Thomas Dale* (whose Prudence, Fortitude, Temperance, Iustice in the well ordering and gouerning the English Virginian affaires, I cannot sufficiently honour) obserued two seasons for the taking of Fish, the Spring, and the Fall, himselfe taking no small paines in the triall: at one hale with a Saine, he caught fiue thousand; three hundred of which were as bigge as Cod, the least of the residue a kind of Salmon Trowt, two foot long: Yet durst he not aduenture on the maine Skul: for breaking his Net. Likewise two men with Axes and such like weapons haue taken and killed neere the shore, and brought home forty as great as Cod in two or three houres space. And whereas heretofore wee were constrayned yeerely to buy Corne of the Indians, which brought vs into base esteeme with them: now they seeke to vs, come to our Townes, sell the t skins from their shoulders (which are their best garments to buy Corne. Yea, some of their petty Kings haue this last yeere borrowed foure or fiue hundred bushels of Wheat; for payment whereof this Harvest they haue Mortgaged their whole Countries, some of them not much lesse in quantitie then a whole Shire in England: So that Famine, the *quendam* deuourer of our Nation, is famished, and in itselfe deuoured.

f Twelue in all.

Peace betwixt ours and the Sauages.

t They can dresse Leather finely and quickly, but it will not hold out wet.

The places inhabited by the English are six, *Henrico and the limits, Bermuda Nether Hundred,*

dred, West and *Sherley Hundred, Iames Towne, Kequoughton, Dales Gift.* The inhabitants are; Officers, Labourers, Farmers. The first haue charge and care ouer both the latter, watching and warding for their preseruations in the due execution of their employments and businesse. These are bound to maintaine themselues and their families with food and raiment by the industrie of them and theirs. The Labourers are of two sorts: some employed onely in the generall workes, fed and cloathed out of the store. Others are speciall Artificers, as Smiths, Shoomakers, Carpenters, Tailors, Tanners, &c. which worke in their professions to the Colony, and maintaine themselues with food and apparell, hauing time limited them to till and manure the ground. The Farmers liue at most ease, yet by their good endeuours bring much plenty to the Plantation. They are bound by Couenant, both for themselues and their seruants, to maintaine his Maiesties right and title in that kingdome, to watch & ward in the townes where they are resident; to doe one and thirtie dayes seruice for the Colony, when they shall be called thereunto; to maintaine themselues and theirs with food and raiment; to pay yeerely for themselues and each man-seruant two Barrels and a halfe a piece, of their best Indian wheat (this amounts to twelue bushels & a halfe English measure) that no Farmer nor other shall plant Tobacco (knowne to be a vendible commoditie) except he yeerely manure for himselfe; and euery man-seruant two acres of ground with corne, and then to plant as much as they please. Also the Company haue already sent a ship to Virginia with prouision of cloathing, houshold-stuffe and other necessaries, to establish a Magazine there; to be bought at easie rates in bartar and exchange for their commodities, to a mutuall benefit of both parts.

Habitations Officers.

Labourers.

Farmers.

I cannot heere omit the Christian care of his Maiestie, worthy *the Defender of the Faith*, in prouiding charitable collections and contributions in England, for the erecting and maintaining of a Colledge in Virginia to be a Seminarie and Schoole of education to the Natiues in the knowledge and perfection of our Religion, which I beseech Almightie God to prosper with answerable successe. They haueliikewise brought thence children of both sexes here to be taught our language and letters, which may proue profitable instruments in this designe. As for the English there now residing (likely to bee much encreased by good supplyes now in sending) at *Henrico* and in the Precincts, which is seated on the North side the Riuer, ninety and odde miles from the mouth thereof (which somewhat differs from the number before mentioned) and within sixteene or sixteene miles of the Fals, being our furthest habitation within land, are eight and thirtie men and boyes: of which two and twenty Farmers: Captaine *Smalley* Commander in the absence of *Iames Damies* (who now is returning) Master *William Wickham* Minister. At Bermuda Nether Hundred (seated on the South side the Riuer, which almost encompasseth it, and with a pale on a short necke of land boundeth this *peninsula*) are a hundred and nineteene. These are incorporated to Bermuda Towne, which is made a Corporation, according to certaine Orders and Constitutions. Captaine *Teardly* Deputy gouernour lines most heere: Master *Alexander Whitaker* is Minister. *West* and *Sherley* Hundred is three or foure miles lower on the North side the Riuer: here are twenty fiue men commanded by Captaine *Maddeson*, employed onely in planting and curing Tobacco to the publike benefit. Lower by thirty seuen miles is *Iames* Towne, where are fifty men vnder Captaine *Francis West*, Brother to the *L. La Ware*, and (in his absence) commanded by Lieutenant *Sharp*; Master *Buck* Minister. At Kequoughton thirty seuen miles lower, neere the mouth of the Riuer are twenty. Capt. *Webbe* commander, Master *Mays* Minister. *Dales-Gift* is vpon the Sea neere Cape *Charles*, where are seuenteene vnder Lieutenant *Cradock*; their labour to make salt, and catch fish. The numbers of Officers and Labourers are two hundred and fiue. The Farmers eighty one, besides sixty fiue women and children, in euery place some: in all three hundred fifty one persons. These I haue thus particularly related as a witnesse to after-Ages of their little (but now hopefull) proceedings after ten yeeres habitation; which as *Iacobs* little family in Egypt, and *Gedeons* small Armie, lesse then that which the Father of the Faithfull mustered in his owne houshold, I hope and pray, may grow into Townes, Cities, and Christian-English Churches, in numberlesse numbers, to the glory of God, and behour of our Nation. Euen in all the greatest workes of God, and exploits of Men, the beginnings are ordinarily slow and small. How many of the foure hundred and thirtie yeares were almost, if not more then halfe spent, when *Iacob* was but a little Family, and those in a strange land; there suddenly growing vnder the Crosse, into a multitude and great people? From her Village-foundation, how did Rome peepe and creepe forth by degrees vnto the height of Maiestie? So may wee say of the Spanish Plantations in this American continent, from contemptible and troublesome beginnings, to their present Splendor. Nor are our hopes lesse, if our hearts bee sincere, and minde, as wee profesie the propagation of Christianitie. As for their transported Cattell, there were the last of May of Buls, Steeres, Cowes,

Letters Patents for collect.

Henricoe.

Bermuda Nether Hundred.

W. and *Sh.* Hundred.

Iames towne.

Kequoughton.

Dales Gift.

Cowes, Heifers, Calues, a hundred forty and foure. Horses three, and as many Mares, Goates and Kids two hundred and sixteene. Hogges wilde and tame not to bee numbred, and great plenty of Poultry.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Religion and Rites of the Virginians.

§. I.

Of the Virginian Rites, related by Master HARIOT.

a The Hariot. Hak. 10.3.p.277. These people of Sir *W. Ral.* his discouerie are somewhat more to the South, then the present English Colonie.

NOw for the manners and Rites of the people, thus hath Master *Hariot* reported. They beleeue that there are many gods, which they call *Mantoac*, but of different sorts and degrees: one onely chiefe and great God, which hath bin from all eternity. Who, as they affirme, when he purposed to make the world, made first other gods of a principall Order, to bee as meanes and instruments to be vsed in the Creation, and Gouernment to follow; and after, the Sunne, Moone, and Starres, as petty gods, and the instruments of the other Order more principall.

First, they say, were made Waters, out of which by the gods was made all diuersitie of Creatures, that are visible or inuisible. For Mankinde, they say, a Woman was made first, which by the working of one of the gods, conceiued and brought forth children. And in such sort they say they had their beginning: But how many yeeres or ages haue passed since, they say, they can make no relation: hauing no letters, nor other meanes to keep records of times past, but onely tradition from Father to Sonne. They thinke that all the gods are of humane shape, and therefore they present them by Images, in the formes of men, which they call *Kewasowock*; one alone is called *Kewas*. Them they place in Houses or Temples, which they call *Machicomuck*, where they worship, pray, sing, and make many times offerings vnto them. In some *Machicomuck* we haue seene but one *Kewas*, in some two, in other three. They beleeue the immortalitie of the Soule: that after this life, as soone as the soule is departed from the body, according to the workes it hath done, it is either carried to heauen the habitacle of Gods, there to enioy perpetuall blisse and happinesse: or else to a great pit or hole, which they think to be in the furthest parts of their part of the World toward the Sun-set, there to burne continually. This place they call *Popogusso*. For the confirmation of this opinion, they tell tales of men dead and reuiued againe, much like to the Popish Legends.

Thus they tell of one, whose graue the next day after his buriall was seene to moue, and his body was therefore taken vp againe: who reported, that his soule had beene very neere the entring into *Popogusso*, had not one of the gods saued him, and giuen him leaue to returne againe, and teach his friends how to auoid that terrible place. They tell of another, which being taken vp in that manner, related, that his soule was aliue while his body was in the graue, and that it had trauelled farre in a long broad way, on both sides whereof grew most delicate pleasant Trees, bearing more rare and excellent fruits, then euer he had seene before; or was able to expresse: and at length came to most braue and faire houses, neere which he met his father, that had been dead before, who gaue him great charge to goe back againe, and shew his friends what good they were to doe, to enioy the pleasures of that place, which when he had done, he should after come again.

What subtilties so euer be in their *Werowances* [b] and Priests, the vulgar are hereby very respectiue to their Gouernours, and carefull of their manners; although they haue also in criminall cases, punishments inflicted according to the qualitie of the offence. This I learned by speciall familiaritie with some of their Priests, wherein they were not so sure grounded, but that they lent open eare to ours, with doubting of their owne.

The [b] Priests in Secota haue their haire on the crowne like a Combe, the rest being cut from it; onely a fore-top on the forehead is left, and that Combe. They haue a garment of skins peculiar to their function. They are great Wisards.

Our artificiall Workes, Fire-workes, Gunnes, Writing, and such like, they esteemed the workes of Gods, rather then of Men, or at least taught vs by the Gods. They bare much respect to our Bibles. When the *Werowans* was sicke, he sent vs to pray for him. Some were of opinion that we were not mortall, nor borne of Women, but that wee were men of an old Generation many yeeres past, then risen againe to immortalitie: some would likewise seeme to prophecie, that there were more of our Generation yet to come, to kill theirs,

b Werowance is a chiefe Lord, or petie King, which sometime hath but one Towne; and none that we had dealing with, had above eighteen Townes vnder him.

c Tho. de Bry in Pistor.

and

and take their places; which were now in the Aire insuible, and without bodies, and that they by our entreatie did make men to die which had wronged vs.

They haue [l] their Idoll in the innermost roome of their house, of whem they tell incredible things. They carrie it with them when they goe to the warres, and aske counsell thereof, as the Romans did of their Oracles. They sing songs as they march towards the battell, in stead of Drummes and Trumpets: their warres are bloudy, and haue wasted much of their people.

l First voyage to Virginia. *Hak. to. 3. p. 249.*

A certaine King called *Piemacum*, hauing inuited many men and women of the Secotans to a Feast, whiles they were merry, and praying before their Idol, came vpon them and slew them. When [k] one of their Kings had conspired against the English, a chiefe man about him said, that we were *the seruants of God*, and not subiect to be destroyed by them: and that we, being dead men, could doe more hurt then while we were aliue. They vse to solemnize certaine months-minds, in their Sauage manner, for any great personage dead. *Iames* [l] *Rosier*, from the relation of *Owen Griffin*, an eye-witnesse, thus tels of their ceremonies. One among them, the eldest as hee iudged, riseth right vp, the other sitting still: and looking about, suddenly cryed with aloud voice, *Baugh, Waugh*: then the women fall downe, and lye vpon the ground: and the men all together answering the same, fall a stamping round about the fire, with both feet, as hard as they can, making the ground shake, with sundry out-cries, and change of voice and sound. Many take the fire-sticks and thrust them into the earth: and then rest a while. Of a sudden they begin as before, and continue so stamping, till the yonger sort fetched from the shore many stones, of which euery man tooke one, and first beat vpon them with their fire-sticks, then with the stones beat the earth with all their strength. And in this manner they continued about two houres. After this ended, they which had wines, tooke them apart, and withdrew themselues seuerally into the wood. This seemed to be their seruing deuotion.

k M. *Ralph. Lane. Hak. to. 3. p. 261.*

l *James Rosier.*

When they [m] haue obtained some great deliuerance from danger, or returne from warre, they obserue a publike and solemne reioycing by making a great fire, encompassed with the men and women promiscuously, all of them with Rattles in their hands, making a great noise.

m *Theod. de Bry Icone 17. p. 8. & seq.*

They hold one time in the yeere Festiuall, and then they meet together out of many Villages, euery one hauing a certaine marke or Character on his backe, whereby it may be discerned whose Subiect he is. The place where they meet is spacious, and round about are set posts, carued with the resemblance of a Nuns head: In the mids are three of the fairest Virgins louingly embracing and clasping each other: about this liuing Center, and artificiall Circle, they dance in their Sauage manner.

Their Idoll called *Kiwasa*, is made of wood foure foot high, the face resembling the Inhabitants of Florida, painted with flesh-colour, the breft white, the other parts blacke, except the legges, which are spotted with white; he hath Chaines or strings of Beads about his necke.

This Idoll is in Secota, as it were the keeper of the dead bodies of their Kings. In their Temples are houses of publique deuotion, they haue two, three, or more of them, set in a darke place. The dead bodies of their *Werowances* are kept on certaine Scaffolds nine or ten foot high, this *Kiwasa* their guardian being placed with them: and vnderneath dwelleth a Priest, which night and day there numbreth his deuotions.

§. II.

Obseruations of their Rites by Captaine SMITH *and others.*

BVt let vs take view of our last Colonies obseruations. Capt. [a] *Smith* was taken by the Virginians, and while he stayed amongst them, obserued these their Magicall Rites. Three or foure dayes after his taking, seuen of their Priests in the house where he lay, each with a Rattle, (setting him by them) began at ten of the clock in the morning to sing about a fire, which they enuironed with a circle of meale, at the end of euery stone, (which the chiefe Priest began, the rest following) lying downe two or three graines of Wheat: and after they had laid down sixe or seuen hundred in one circle (accompanying their songs by Graines, as the Papists their Ottsoes by Beads) they made two, or three, other circles in like manner, and put at the end of euery long, betwixt euery two, or three, or fiue Graines, a little sticke. The High Priest disguised with a great skinne, his head hung round with little skins of Weasils, and other Vermine, with a Crown set of Feathers, painted as vgly as the Diuell, at the end of each song vseth strange and vehement gestures, casting

a Newes from Virginia, and a *M. S.* of Captaine *Smith.*

great Cakes of Deere-suet, and Tobacco into the fire: thus till sixe of the clock in the euening, they continued these howling deuotions, and so held on three dayes. This they pretended to doe, to know if any more of his Country-men would arriue, and what hee there intended. They so fed this our Author, that he much mis-doubted, that he should haue been sacrificed to the *Quyenghqunsicke*, which is a superiour Power they worship, then the Image whereof a more vgly thing cannot be described. To cure the sicke, a certaine man with [a] a little Rattle, vsing extreme howlings, shouting, singing, with diuers anticke and strange behauiours ouer the patient, sucketh blood out of his stomacke, or diseased place.

Not much vnlike to that rattling deuotion of their exorcising Priests, (at least in absurdi- 10
tie) was that entertainment [b] which *Powhatans* women gaue the same Captaine then being free, and President of the company, at *Werowocomoco*; where thirtie of them came out of the woods naked, onely couered behinde and before, with a few greene leaues, their bodies painted, but with some difference each from other: the Leader of these Nymphs resembled both *Actaeon* and *Diana*, hauing on her head a faire paire of Stagges hornes, and a quiuer of arrowes at her backe, with Bow and Arrowes in her hand: The rest followed all horned alike, weaponed with vnlike instruments: these (as if they had beene the infernall guard, comming with *Cerberus* to welcome *Proserpina* to her Palace) rushed from the trees with hellish shouts and cryes, dancing about a fire, which there was made for that purpose: and after an houre thus spent, they departed.

a Their Rattles are of Gourds or Pompion rindes: of which they haue their treble, tenor, base, &c.
b Ad S. by *W. S.*

Then did they solemnly inuite him to their lodging, where he was no sooner come, but all 20
rounded about him with tedious kindnesse, crying, [c] *Lone yon not me?* This salutation ended, which *Pan* and all his *Satyres* would haue accepted, they feasted him with plenty and varietie, some singing and dancing whiles others attended: and at last led him with a firebrand, in stead of a Torch, to his lodging.

c How could he chuse.

When they [d] intend any wars, the *Werouances* or Kings consult first with the Priests and Coniurers. And no people haue there beene found so sauage, which haue not their Priests, Gods, and Religion. All things that are able to hurt them beyond their preuention, they after their sort adore, as the Fire, Water, Lightning, Thunder, our Ordnance, Peeces, Horses: Yea, I haue heard Captaine *Smith* say, that they seeing one of the English Bores in the way, were 30
striken with awfull feare, because he brissled vp himselfe and gnashed his teeth, and took him for the god of the Swine; which was offended with them.

d Capt. *Smith.*

Okee, or *Okeens.*
c One of these painted on a Toadstoole (for shrine for such a deitie) was by *A. Whitak.* sent into England.

The chiefe god they worship is the Diuell, which they call *Okee*. They haue conference with him, and fashion themselues vnto his shape. In their Temples they haue his Image ill-fauouredly made, o painted, adorned with Chaines, Copper, and Beads, and couered with a skinne. By him is commonly the Sepulchre of their Kings; whose bodies are first bowelled, then dryed on a hurdle, and haue about the joynts chaines of Copper, Beads, and other like trash: then lapped in white skinnes, and rowled in mats, and orderly entombed in arches made of mats, the remnant of their wealth being set at their feet. These Temples and Bodies are kept by their Priests. For their ordinarie burials, they digge a deepe hole in the earth with sharpe stakes, and the corps being wrapped in skins and mats, with their iewels, they 40
lay them vpon sticks in the ground, and couer them with earth. The buriall ended, the women hauing their faces painted with blacke coale and oyle, sit foure and twenty houres in the houses mourning and lamenting by turnes, with yellings and howlings. Euery Territory of a *Werouance* hath their Temples and Priests. Their principall Temple is at *Pitamussack*, in *Pamaunk*, where *Powhatan* hath a house vpon the top of certaine sandie hils in the woods. There are three great houses filled with Images of their Kings and Diuels, and Tombes of their Predecessors. Those houses are neere threescore foot long, built, after their fashion, Arbour-wise. This place is in such estimation of holinesse, that none but the Priests and Kings dare enter: yea, the Sauages dare not passe by in Boats, without casting Copper, Beads, or somewhat into the Riuer.

Heere are commonly resident seuen Priests: the chiefe differed from the rest in his ornaments: the other can hardly be knowne from the common people, but that they haue not so many holes at their eares to hang their Iewels at. The High-Priests head-tire is thus made: They take a great many Snakes skinnes stuffed with Moss, as also of Weasils and other vermines skins, which they tye by their tayles, so that all the tayles meet on the top of their head like a great tassell. The faces of their Priests are painted as vgly as they can deuise: in their hands they haue Rattles, some Base, some Treble.

Their deuotion is most in songs, which the chiefe Priest beginneth, the rest following: sometime he maketh inuocations with broken sentences; by starts and strange passions; and at euery pause the other giue a shore grone. It cannot be perceiued that they haue any set Holy-dayes: onely, in some great distresse of want, feare of enemies, times of triumph, and of gathering their fruits, the whole Countrey, Men, Women, and Children, assemble to

to their solemnities. The manner of their deuotion is somtimes, to make a great fire, all singing and dancing about the same with Rattles and shours, foure or fiue houres: sometime, they set a man in the middest, and dance and sing about him, he all the while clapping his hands, as if he would keepe time: after this, they goe to their Feasts. They haue certaine Altarstones, which they call *Powcances*, Randing from their Temples, some by their houses, others in the woods and wildernesses; vpon which they offer bloud, Deere-fuet, and Tobacco. This they doe when they returne from the warres, from their huntings, and on other occasions. When the waters are rough in stormes, their conjurers runne to the waters sides, or passe in their boats, and after many hellish out-cries and inuocations, cast Tobacco, Copper,
10 *Pocones*, or such trash into the water, to pacifie that god whom they thinke to be very angry in those stormes. Before their dinners and suppers, the better sort will take the first bit, and cast it into the fire, which is all the grace they are knowne to vse. In some part of the Countrey they are said (which since is found false) to haue yeerely a sacrifice of children: such a one was performed at *Quiyoughcohanock*, some ten miles from *Iames* Towne in this manner: *Rapahannock*, & *Werowance* made a Feast in the woods: the people were so painted, that a Painter with his pencill could not haue done better. Some of them were blacke like Diuels, with hornes and loose haire, some of diuers colours. They continued two dayes dancing in a circle of a quarter of a mile, in two companies, with antick tricks, foure in a ranke, the *Werowance* leading the dance; they had Rattles in their hands; all in the middest had black hornes
20 on their heads, and greene boughes in their hands: next them were foure or fiue principall men diuersly painted, which with bastinadoes beat forward such as tired in the dance. Thus they made themselues scarce able to goe or stand. When they met together, they made a hellish noise, and euery one slinging away his bough, ranne (clapping their hands) vp into a tree, and tare it to the ground, and fell into their order againe: thus they did twice. Fourteene well-fauoured children, or (if you had rather heare § Captaine *Smith*) fifteene of the properest yong Boyes, betweene ten and fifteene yeeres of age, they painted white; Hauing brought them forth, the people (saith he) spent the forenoone in dancing and singing about them with Rattles in the afternoone they put these children to the root of a tree, all the men standing to guard them, each with a Bastinado of Reeds bound together, in his hand,
30 Then doe they make a lane betweene them all along, thorow which there were appointed fiue yong men (*White* cals them Priests) to fetch these children. Each of these fetched a child, the guard laying on with their Bastinadoes, while they with their naked bodies defend the children to their great smart. All this time the women weepe and cry out very passionately, prouiding mosse, skinnes, mats, and dry wood vnknowne to what purpose. When the children are in this manner fetched away, the guard teares downe trees, branches, and boughes, making wreathes for their heads, or bedecking their haire with the leaues. What else was done with the children was not seene, but they were all cast on a heape in a Valley, as dead, where was made a great feast for all the company.

William White relating this Rite, saith, That they remoued them from tree to tree three
40 times, and at last carried them into a Valley where the King sate; where they would not suffer our men to see, but feasted there two houres. On a sudden all arose with cudgels in their hand, and made a lane, as is before said, and the children being laid downe vnder a tree (to their seeming) without life, they all fell into a ring againe, and danced about the children a good space, and then sate downe in a circle about the tree. *Raphanna* in the mids, caused burdens of wood to be brought to the Altar, made of poles set like a steeple, where they made a great fire, which our men thought, but were deceiued, was to sacrifice their children to the Diuell (whom they call *Kewase*) who, as they report, suckes their bloud. They were vnwilling to let them stay any longer. They found a woman mourning for yong *Paspiha*, sacrificed at the Towne of *Rapahanna*: but this *Paspiha* is now aliue, as Mr *Rolph* hath since
50 related to me: and the mourning of the women is not for their childrens death, but because they are for diuers moneths detained from them, as we shall after see. Yea, the Virginians themselues, by false reports might delude our Men, and say they were sacrificed when they were not. For euen still, they are very inconstant (it is Mr *Rolphs* report) in all that they speake of their Religion: one denying that which another affirmeth, and either not knowing, or not willing that others should know their diuellish mysteries. And hence perhaps it was, that (as Captaine *Smith* addeth) a *Werowance* being demanded the meaning of this sacrifice, answered, that the children were not all dead, but that the *Oke* or Diuell did sucke the bloud from their left brest, who chanced to be his by lot, till they were dead, but the rest were kept in the wildernesse by the yong men, till nine Moones were expired, during
60 which time, they must not conuerse with any, and of these were made their Priests, and conjurers. This Sacrifice they held to be so necessarie, that if they should omit it, their *Oke* or Diuell, and their other *Quiyoughcosughes*, or gods, would let them haue no Deere, Turkies,

Will. White.

Capt. Smith.

William White.

Corne, or Fish; and who would besides make a great slaughter amongst them. They thinke that their *Werowances* and Priests, which they also esteeme *Quiyoughcosughes*, when they are dead, doe goe beyond the Mountaines towards the setting of the Sunne, and euer remaine there in forme of their *Oke*, hauing their heads painted with Oyle and *Pocunes* [a] finely trimmed with feathers, and shall haue Beades, Hatchets, Copper, and Tobacco, neuer ceasing to dance and sing with their Predecessors. The common-people, they suppose, shall not liue after death. Some sought to conuert them from these Superstitions: the *Werowance* of *Quiyoughcohanock* was so farre perswaded, as that he professed to beleeue that our God exceeded theirs, as much as our Guns did their Bowes and Arrowes: and many times did send to the President many presents, entreating him to pray to his [b] God for raine, for his God would not send him any.

a *Pocunes* is a small Roote, which dried and beaten into powder, tur nsthred: they vse it for swellings, aches, and painting.
b In that extremitie of miserie which outs since sustained, I haue been told that both the Sauages and Fugitiues would obiect our want, and their plenty, for theirs, and against our Religion.

William White reporteth these their ceremonies of honouring the Sunne. By breake of day, before they eate or drinke, the men, women, and children aboue ten yeeres old, runne into the water, and there wash a good space, till the Sunne arise, and then they offer sacrifice to it, strewing Tobacco on the land or water: the like they doe at Sun-set. Hee also relateth that one *George* [c] *Casson* (before mentioned) was sacrificed, as they thought, to the Diuell, being stripped naked and bound to two stakes, with his backe against a great fire: then did they rip him, and burne his bowels, and dryed his flesh to the bones, which they kept aboue-ground in a by-roome. Many other of out men were cruelly and treacherously executed by them, though perhaps not sacrificed; and none had been left, if their ambushes and treasons had taken effect. *Powhatan* thus inuited [d] Captaine *Ratliffe* and thirty others to trade for corne, and hauing brought them within his ambush, murthered them.

c The cruell death of *George Casson*.
d Declaration of Virginia.

Alexander Whitaker saith, That their [e] Priests (whom they call *Quiokesoughs*) are Witches, of whom the people stand in great awe. The manner of their life is Heremite-fashion, in woods, in houses sequestred from the common course of men, where none may come, or speake with them, vncalled. They take no care for victuals; for all such necessaries are set in a place neere his Cottage for his vse. If they would haue raine, or haue lost any thing, he at their request conjureth, and often preuaileth. He is their Physician if they bee sicke, and sucketh their wounds. At his word they make warre and peace, and doe nothing of moment without him. Master *Ralph* affirmes that these Priests liue not solitarily, and in other things is of another opinion, which perhaps our former Author at his first comming, might haue by relation of others.

e Priests in Virginia.

The *Wirowance* of *Acawmacke* told our men of a strange accident: two children being dead, and buried, being reuiewed by the parents, seemed to haue liuely and cheerefull countenances, which caused many to behold them, and none of the beholders escaped death.

§. III.

Of the Sasquesahanockes, *with other, and later obseruations of the Virginian Rites.*

THe *Sasquesahanockes* are a Gyantly people, strange in proportion, behaiuiour, and attire, their voice sounding from them, as out of a Caue; their attire of Beares skins, hanged with Beares pawes, the head of a Wolfe, and such like iewels: and (if any would haue a spoone to eate with the Diuell) their Tobacco pipes were three quarters of a yard long, carued at the great end with a Bird, Beare, or other deuice, sufficient to beat out the braines of a Horse (and how many Asses braines are beaten out, or rather mens braines smoaked out, and Asses baled in by our Iesse Pipes at home?) the rest of their furniture was sutable. The calfe of one of their legges was measured three quarters of a yard about, the rest of his limbes proportionable. With much adoe restrained they this people from worshipping our men. And [f] when our men prayed (according to their dayly custome) and sung a Psalme, they much wondered: and after began in most passionate manner to hold vp their hands to the Sunne, with a Song, then embracing the Captaine, they began to adore him in like manner, and so proceeded (notwithstanding his rebuking them) till their song was ended: which done, one with a most strange action and vncomely voice began an Oration of their loues. That ended, with a great painted Beares skinne they couered the Captaine, another hung about his necke a chaine of white Beades. Others laid eighteene Mantles at his feet, with many other ceremonies, to create him their Gouernour, that hee might defend them against the *Massa-womckes*, their enemies. As these are very great, so the *Weighcocomocoes* are very little.

f Discouerie of Chesapeack, 1608.

I may also heere insert the ridiculous conceits which some Virginians hold, concerning their

their first originall, as I haue heard from the relation of an English Youth,[a] which liued long amongst the Sauages: that a Hare came into their Countrey and made the first men, and after preserued them from a great Serpent; and when two other Hares came thither, that Hare for their entertainment killed a Deere, which was then the onely Deere that was, and strewing the haires of that Deeres hide, euery haire proued a Deere. He said they worshipped towards a certaine Hoope or Sphere doubled a crosse, which was set vpon an heape of stones in their houses. They had a house without the Towne for the Women, in the time of their naturall sicknesse to keepe in, where no men might come.

But of their opinions and ceremonies in Religion, who fitter to be heard then a Virginian, an experienced Man and Counseller to *Opechancanough* their King and Gouernour in *Powhatans* absence? Such is *Tomocomo*, at this present in London, sent hither to obserue and bring newes of our King and Country to his Nation; some others[c] which haue beene here in former times, being more silly, which hauing seene little else then this Citie, haue reported much of the Houses, and Men, but thought we had small store of Corne or Trees: the Virginians imagining that our men came into their Countrey for supply of these defects. This Man therefore, being landed in the West parts, found cause of admiration at our plenty in these kinds, and (as some haue reported) began to tell both Men and Trees, till his Arithmetike fayled. For their numbring beyond an hundred is imperfect, and somewhat confused. Of Him (Sir *Thomas Dales* man being our Interpreter) I learned, that their *Okeeus* doth often appeare to them in His House or Temple: the manner of which apparition is thus. First, foure of their Priests or sacred Persons (of which he said he was one) goe into the House, and by certaine words of a strange Language (which he repeated very roundly in my hearing, but the Interpreter vnderstood not a word, nor doe the common people) call or conjure this *Okeeus*, who appareth to them out of the Aire, thence comming into the House, and walking vp and downe with strange words and gestures, causeth eight more of the principall persons to be called in, all which twelue standing round about him, he prescribes to them what hee would haue done. Of him they depend in all their proceedings, if it bee but in a hunting Iourney,[d] who by winds or other awefull tokens of his presence, holds them in a superstitious both feare and confidence. His apparition is in forme of a personable Virginian, with a long blacke locke on the left side, hanging downe neere to the foot. This is the cause why the Virginians weare these sinister lockes; which some thinke (I haue heard Sir *Thomas Dale* and Master *Ralph* of that opinion) was first by our Men in the first Plantation, little aboue thirty yeeres since, borrowed from these Sauages: (a faire vnlouely generation of the *Lonelocke*, Christians imitating Sauages, and they the Deuill) this Virginian so admiring this Rite, that in arguing about Religion, he obiected to our God this defect, that hee had not taught vs so to weare our haire. After that he hath stayed with his twelue so long as he thinkes fit, he departeth vp into the ayre whence he came. *Tomocomo* aurred that this was Hee which made Heauen and Earth; had taught them to plant so many kinds of Corne; was the Author of their good; had prophesied to them before of our mens comming; knew all our Countrey; whom he made acquainted with his comming hither, and told him that within so many moneths he would returne: but the Deuill or *Okeeus* answered, that it would bee so[e] many more: ney ther at his returne must he goe into that house, till *Okeeus* shall call him. He is very zealous in his superstition, and will heare no persuasions to the truth; bidding vs teach the Boyes and Girles (which were brought ouer from thence) Hee being too olde now to learne. Being asked, what became of the soules of dead men, he pointed vp to Heauen; but of wicked men, that they hung betweene Heauen and Earth. This *Tomocomo* hath *Matachanna* one of *Powhatans* Daughters to wife. The vulgar are held in great awe by their Ignorance; and when any of them haue got a good Deere, some of the greatest will pretend *Okeeus* his name, and cause it to be brought to His House, and then share it at their pleasure. They hold it a disgrace to feare death: and therefore when they must dye, doe it resolutely; as happened to one which had robbed the English, and by *Powhatan* (vpon complaint made to Him) was fetched sixscore miles from the place where he lurked, and by this *Tomocomo*, in the presence of the English executed, his braines being knocked out, shewing no signe of feare or dismaydnesse. They vse to make Blacke Boyes once in fourteene or fifteene yeeres generally, for all the Country (this hapned the last yeere, 1615.) when all of a certaine age, that haue not beene made Blacke Boyes before, are initiated in this Ceremonie. They vse to make some at other times by themselues, as before is shewed of *Rapahannok* out of Captaine *Smith*, and Master *White*, which then mistooke it for a Sacrifice. Some foure moneths after that Rite they liue apart, and are fed by some appointed to carry them their foode; they speake to no man, nor come in company, seeme distracted (some thinke by some Deuillish apparition scarred; certaine, to oblige them to that Deuillish Religion as by a Hellish Sacrament of the Deuils institution) and will offer to shoot at such as come nigh them. And when they

a Cap. *Argol*'s Boy, his name was *Henry Spilman*.

c Was thus told by Sir *Thomas Dale*.

d Sometimes when they are preparing to hunt, he will by some knowne signe manifest himselfe, and direct them to game: they all with great alacritie acknowledging that signe, and following.

e This proued true, contrary to *Tomocomo*'s minde, being desirous to returne in the first ship which is gone aleadie.

Blacke Boyes.

Master *Ralph*.

they come into company, yet are for a certaine time of silent and strange behaiour, and will doe any thing neuer so desperate that they shall be bidden; if they tell them they *shall bee old men* if they goe not into the fire, they will doe it. There is none of their men but are made Blacke Boyes at one time or other. Let vs obserue these things with pitty and compassion, and endeuour to bring these silly soules out of the snare of the Deuill, by our prayers, our purses, and all our best endeuours. This may be added, that their young people haue in manner no knowledge, and the vulgar little, of their Religion. They vse also to beguile them with their *Okee*, or Image of him in their houses, into whose mouth they will put a Tobacco pipe kindled, and one behind that Image drawes the smoke, which the sillier vulgar and children thinke to be done by their God or Idoll.

They haue [f] a certaine herbe called Wysake, like Liuer wort, which they chew and spit into poysoned wounds, that are thereby healed in foure and twenty houres. In finding out their medicinall Roote (as is the Relation of Master *George Percie*) six of them hold together by the armes, and so goe singing, and withall searching: and when they haue found it, sit downe singing, crosse the Root with their hands for a good space, then gather, chew, and spit. He thus describeth their dances; One stands in the middest, singing and clapping hands; all the rest dance about him, shooting, hollowing, stamping with antike gesture, like so many Deuils, their feet alwayes (and only) agreeing in one stroke. Landing at Kecoughtan, the Sauages entertayned them with a dolefull noyse, laying their faces to the ground, and scratching the Earth with their nayles. The *Werowance* of Rapahanna, met them, playing on a Flute of a Reed, with a Crowne of Deeres haire coloured red, fashioned like a Rose, with a Chaine of Beads about his necke, and Bracelets of Pearle hanging at his eares, in each eare a Birds claw. The women are of a modest proud behaiour; with an Iron, pounce and raze their bodies, legges, thighes, and armes, in curious knots and pourtraytures of Fowles, Fishes, Beasts, and rub a painting into the same, which will neuer out. The Queene of Apamatica was attired with a Coronet befet with many white bones, her eares hanged with Copper, a Chaine thereof six times compassing her necke. The Maids shaue their heads all but the hinder part: the Wives weare it all of a length: the Men weare the left locke long, as is said already, sometimes an ell, which they tye when they please in an artificiall knot, flocke with feathers, the right side shauen. The King of Paspahey was painted all blacke, with hornes on his head like a Deuill. He testifieth of their hard fare watching euery third night, lying on the bare cold ground, what weather soeuer came, and warding the next day a small Can of Barley sodden in water, being the sustinance for fiue men a day: their drinke brakish and slimy water. This continued fiue moneths.

The Virginians [g] are borne white: their haire blacke, few haue beards, and they plucke out the haires which would grow: he women with two shels are their Barbers: they are strong, nimble, and hardy, inconstant, timorous, quicke of apprehension, cautelous, couetous of Copper and Beads; they seldome forget an iniury, and seldome steale from each other, lest the Coniurers should bewray them, which it is sufficient that these thinke they can doe. They haue their Lands and Gardens in proper, and most of them hue of their labour. The cause of their blacknesse Master *Ralph* ascribes to their Oyntments which in their smokie Houses they vse; euen as Bacon with vs is so coloured: this within doores they vse against the fire, abroad against the Sunne, Master *Wingfield* sayth, they would bee of good complexion, if they would leaue painting (which they vse on their face and shoulders.) He neuer saw any of them grosse, or bald: they would haue beards, but that they pluck away the haires: they haue one wife, many Loues, and are also Sodomites. Their elder women are Cookes, Barbers, and for seruice; the younger for dalliance. The women hang their children at their backes, in Summer naked, in Winter vnder a Deere-skin. They are of modest behaiour. They seldome or neuer brawle: in entertayning a stranger, they spread a mat for him to sit downe, and dance before him. They sweare their nailes long to flay their Deere: they put Bow and Arrowes into their Childrens hand before they are sixe yeeres old.

In each eare commonly they haue three great holes, whereat they hang Chaines, Bracelets or Copper: some weare in those holes a small Snake coloured greene and yellow, neere halfe a yard long, which crawling about his necke, offereth to kisse his lips. Others weare a dead Rat tied by the taile. Their names are giuen them according to the humour of the Parents. Their women they say are easily deliuered: they wash in the Riuers their young Infants to make them hardie. The women and children doe the houshold and field-worke, the men disclayming the same, and only delighting in fishing, hunting, warres, and such manlike exercises: the women plant, reape, beare burthens, pound their Corne, make baskets, pots, bread, and doe their Cookery and other businesse. They easily kindle fire by chasing a dry pointed sticke in a hole of a little square piece of wood.

f Virginia. Voyage 1606. M. S. M. George Percy

g Cap. Smith.

Rd. Mar. Wingfield.

h Some of them are found such.

Pow-

Powhatan had aboue thirty Commanders, or *Werowances* vnder him, all which were not in peace only, but seruiceable in Captaine *Smiths* Prelidencie, to the English, and still, as I haue beene told by some, that haue since beene there they doe affect him, and will aske of him. *Powhatan* hath three Brethren, and two Sisters, to whom the Inheritance belongeth successiuely, and not to his or their Sonnes till after their death, and then the eldest Sisters Sonne inheriteth. He hath his treasure of Skins, Copper, Pearles, Beades, and such like, kept in a house for that purpose, and there stored against the time of his buriall. This House is fifty or threescore yards long, frequented onely by Priests. At the foure corners of this House stand foure Images as Sentinels, one of a Dragon, another of a Beare, a third of a Leopard, and the fourth of a Gyant. He hath as many women as he will, which when he is weary of, he bestoweth on whom he best liketh. His Will, and Custome are the Lawes. He executeth ciuill punishments on Malefactors, as broyling to death, being incompassed with fire, and other tortures. The other *Werowances*, or Commanders (so the word signifieth) haue power of life and death, and haue some twentie men, some fortie, some an hundred, some many more vnder their command. Some were sent to inquire for those, which were left of Sir *Walter Raleighs* Colonie, but they could learne nothing of them, but that they were dead. *Powhatan* was gone Southwards when our men came last thence; some thought for feare of *Opechancanough* his younger Brother, a man very gracious, both with the people and the English, ielous left Hee and the English should conspire against him, thinking that he will not returne; but others thinke hee will returne again. His second Brother is decrepit and lame. His age is not so great as some haue reckoned: the errour arising [i] from the Virginian computation of yeeres; they reckoning euery Spring and euery Fall seuerally eeres. So did *Tomocomo* at his comming into England, marke vp his time, accounting each day, and (because they sayled in the night, when hee thought they would haue anchored by the shore) each night another day.

i Master *Ralph.*

CHAP. VII.
Of Florida.

§. I.
Of the Acts of the Spanish and French in Florida: And of the Soyle and Cities.

NExt to Virginia towards the South is situate Florida, [b] so called, because it was first discouered by the Spaniards on [c] Palme Sunday, or as the most [d] interprete, Easter day, which they call *Pasqua Florida:* and not, as *Theuet* writeth, for the flourishing Verdure thereof. The [e] first finder, after their account, was *Iohn Ponce* of *Leon*, in the yeere 1512. but wee haue before shewed, that *Sebastian Cabota* had discouered it in the name of King *Henrie* the Seuenth of England. This Region extendeth to the sue and twentieth degree. It runneth out into the Sea with a long point of Land, as if it would eyther set barres to that swift current which there runneth out; or point out the dangers of these Coasts to the hazardous Mariners.

Into the Land it stretcheth Westward vnto the borders of New Spaine, and those other Countries which are not fully knowne: otherwhere it is washed with a dangerous Sea, which separateth *Chicora*, *Bahama*, and *Lucaia* from the same. *Iohn Ponce* [f] aforesaid, hearing a rumour of a prodigious Well, which (as the Poets tell of *Medea*) would make old men become young again, plaid the yongling to goe search it sixe monethes together, and in that inquiry, discouers this Continent; and repayring into Spaine, obtayneth this Prouince with the title of *Adelantado*. He returned with a Nauy and band of Souldiers, but at his landing was so welcomed by the Floridians, that many of his men were slaine, and himselfe wounded vnto death. [g] *Pamphilo de Naruaez* had no better successe: hee entred *Florida*, 1527. *Alvaro Nunnez* called *Capo di Vacca* or *Cabeça de Vaca*, and some of his company, after long captiuitie, escaped.

Pamphilo carried with him sixe hundred men: about the Riuer of Palmes his ships were wracked, and most of the Spaniards drowned. A few escaped drowning, but twelue fell mad, and like Dogges fought to woorrie each other. Scarcely teene returned into Spaine.

b *Florida* vel *Flo.* i. *long. Ortel. Thest.*
c *Exped. in Flor. ap. T. de Bry.*
d *Gitanus, & Gomara ibid.*
e *Gomara ibid. Gen. l. p. 45. Oviedo, l. 16. c. 11.*
f *Gomara & Calucia.*
g *Bero. l. 2.*

This

These comming to Mexico, reported that they had restored three dead men to life. I rather believe, saith *Benzo*, that they killed foure quicke men.

Don Ferdinando de Soto [b] enriched with the spoiles of *Atibaliba* King of Peru, in which action he was a Captain and Horseman, here found place to spend that which there hee had gotten. For hauing obtained the gouernment of Florida, and gathered a band of fixe hundred men for that Expedition, in it he spent fiue yeares, searching for Minerals, till hee lost himselfe. *Iulian Samado*, and *Abumada* made sute for the like grant, but could not obtaine it. Fryer *Luys de Beluastro*, and other Dominicks had vndertaken, by the way of preaching, to haue reduced the Floridians to Christianity, and the Spanish obedience, and were sent at the Empetours charge: but nosoonner set foot on shore, then hee and two of his companions were taken by the Sauages, and cruelly slaine and eaten, their shauen scalpes being hanged vp in their Temple for a monument. This hapned in the yeere 1549. In the yeere 1524. *Francis* the first, the French King, had sent *Iohn* [c] *de Verrazano* hither, but, because hee rather sought to discouer all along the Coast, then to search or settle within Land, I passe him ouer. In the yeere, 1562. That Worthy of France, [d] *Chastillon*, Champion of Religion, and of his Countrey, sent Captaine *Iohn Ribault*, to discouer and Plant in these parts, which his Voyage and Plantation is written by *Rene* [e] *Laudonniere*, one employed therein. Hee left Capt. *Albert* there with some of his company, who built a Fort called *Charles* Fort: but this *Albert* was slaine in a mutiny by his Souldiers, and they returning home, were so pursued by Famine, the Pursuiuant of Diuine Iustice, that after their Shooes and Leather Ierkins eaten (their drinke being Sea-water, or their owne Vrine) they killed and ate vp one of their owne company. *Laudonniere* was sent thither agame to inhabite, *Anno* 1564. and the next yeere *Ribault* was sent to supply his place.

But vncouth [f] Famine had so wasted and consumed the French, before his arriuall, that the very bones of most of the Souldiers pierced thorow their starued skinnes in many places of their bodies, as if they would now trust the emptie hands no longer, but would become their owne Purueyers, and looke out for themselues. And yet, *better it is to fall into the hands of God, then of merciless men*: Famine being but a meere Executioner to Gods Iustice, but these executing also a Diuellish malice. Such were the Spaniards, who were sent thither vnder the conduct of *Don Pedro Melendez*, which massacred all of euery sexe and age, which they found in the fort: and *Ribault* being cast by shipwracke on the shore, and receiued of *Dallemandus* the Spaniard, with promises of all kindnesse, was cruelly murthered with all his company, except some few which they reserued for their owne employments. The manner of it is at large handled by [g] *Laudonniere*, [h] by *Morgues*, by [i] *Challusius*, which were as brands by diuine hand plucked out of the Spanish combustion. The Petition or Supplication put [k] vp by the Orphanes, Widowes, and distressed kindred of that massacred number to *Charles* the Ninth, mentioneth nine hundred, which perished in this bloody deluge.

The Spaniards hauing laid the foundations of their habitation in bloud, found it too slippery to build any sure habitation thereon. For their cruelties both to the French and Floridians were retorted vpon themselues, in the yeere 1567. by [l] *Monsieur Dominique de Gorgues*, and his Associates, assisted by the Native inhabitants, and *Florida* was left destitute of Christian Inhabitants. Thus hath *Florida* beene first courted by the English, wooed by the Spanish, almost wonne by the French, and yet remaines a rich and beautifull Virgin, waiting till the Neighbour Virginia bestow on her an English Bridegroome, who as making the first loue, may lay the iustest challenge vnto her.

Her riches are such, that [m] *Cabeza de Vaca*, who was one of *Naruaez* wracked companie, and *Sotos Cerrimall* in this Floridian sute, and had trauelled thorow a great part of the In-land) affirmed to *Charles* the Emperour, that *Florida* was the richest Coultrey of the World, and that he had therein seene Gold and Siluer, and Stones of great value. Besides there is great varietie of [n] Trees, Fruits, Fowles, Beasts, Beares, Leopards, Ounces, Wolues, wilde Dogges, Goats, Hares, Conies, Deere; Oxen with woolly hydes, Camels backs, and Horses manes. Sir *Iohn Hawkins* his second Voyage, published by Master *Hakluyt*, mentioneth Vnicornes hornes amongst the Floridians, which they weare about their necks, whereof the French-men obtained many pieces: and that they affirme, there are many of those beasts with one horne, which they put into the water before they drinke. Haply, this might be a tale of the French, to sell such pieces deare to the English, or the horne of some other beast, or of the Sea-Vnicorne. Our Discourse hath most right into their Rites. For their many Cities, the manners of their building, the manners of their Inhabitants, I would not bee so long. *Morgues* [o] hath set vs see them in the Pictures.

They wall or impale them with posts fastned in the ground, the circle as of a Snaile, comming within that point where it began, and leaving a way but for two men to enter; at either

b The Expedition of *Soto*, is by Mr *Hakluyt* set forth in English being written by a Portugal Gentleman of *Elmas*, employed therein. It was *Anno* 1538.

c *Iohn de Verrazz. ap. Hak. to.* 3

d Of his life there is a speciall booke.

e *Rene Laud. ap. Hak.*

f He was relieued by Sir *Iohn Hawkins*, great bounty.

g *Laudonn. ap. Hak.*

h Iaques *Morgues, ap. Theod. de Bry Amer. part.* 2.

i *Nic. Challusius Diepensis edijus Latine per Calustonem.*

k *Supplicatio ap. Calust. & ap. Theod. de Bry.*

l *Dom. de Gorgues ap. Hakluym.* 3.

m *Cabez. de Vaca ap. Hak in Rip. Dodic.* in his Virginia richly vlued.

n *Gaspar. Ens lib.* 3. *Botero part.* 2. *l.* 5.

o America *part.* 2. *de Bry.*

ther end of that double empaling or entrance, stand two Watch-towres, one within, the other without the Cirk, where Watch-men alway are set for defence: their houses are round: their apparell nakednesse, except a beasts skin, or some ornament of Mosse about their secret parts. They paint and raze their skins with great cunning; the smart makes them sicke seuen or eight dayes after; they rubbe ouer those rased workes, with a certaine herbe, which coloureth the same, so as it cannot be done away. They paint their faces, and their skins cunningly (this *Morgnes* a Painter being Iudge) euen to admiration. They let the nailes on their toes and fingers grow long: they are tall, nimble comely.

10

§. II.

Of their Customes, Manners and Superstitions.

THey warre a alway one Country vpon another, and kill all the men they can take; the women and children they bring vp: they cut off the haire of the head together with the skin, and dry it, to reserue the same as a monument of their valour. After their returne from the warres, if they be victorious, they make a solemne Feast, which 20 lasteth three dayes, with Dances and Songs to the honour of the Sunne. For the Sunne and Moone are their Deities. Their Priests are Magicians also, and Physicians with them. They haue many Hermaphrodites, which are put to great drudgerie, and made to beare all their carriages. In necessitie they will eate coales, and put sand in their Pottage. Three moneths in the yeere they forsake their houses, and liue in the Woods: against this time they haue made their prouision of victuall, drying the same in the smoke. They meete in consultation euery morning in a great common house, whither the King resorteth and his Senators, which after salutation, sit downe in a round. They consult with the *Iawa* or Priest. And after this they drinke Cassine, which is very hote, made of the leaues of a certaine Tree, which none may taste that hath not before made his valour euident in the Warres. It sets 30 them in a sweat, and taketh away hunger and thirst foure and twentie houres after. When a King dyeth, they bury him very solemnely, and vpon his graue they set the Cup wherein he was wont to drinke: and round about the graue they sticke many Arrowes, weeping and fasting three dayes together without ceasing. All the Kings which were his friends, make the like mourning: and in token of their loue, cut off halfe their haire (which they otherwise weare long, knit vp behind) both men and women. During the space of sixe Moones (so they reckon their moneths) there are certaine women appointed which bewayle his death, crying with a loud voyce thrice a day, at morning, noone, and euening. All the goods of this King are put into his house, which afterwards they set on fire. The like is done with the Goods of the Priests, whoare buried in their Houses, and then both House and Goods 40 burned.

a *Laudonniere.*

The women b that haue lost their Husbands in the Warres, present themselues before the King, sitting on their heeles, with great lamentations suing for reuenge, and they with other Widowes spend some dayes in mourning at their husbands graues, and carry thither the Cup wherein he had wont to drinke: they cut also their haire neere the eares, strewing the same in the Sepulchre. There they cast also their weapons. They may not marry against till their haire be growne that it may couer their shoulders.

b *Morgnes Icon.18,19.*

When any is sicke, they lay him flat on a forme, and with a sharpe shell rasing off the skin of his forehead, sucke out the bloud with their mouthes, spitting it out into some Vessell. The women that giue sucke, or are great with child, come to drinke the same, especially if 50 it be of a lusty youngman, that their milke may be bettered, and the child thereby nourished, may be stronger.

Ribault c at his first being there, had fixed a certaine Pillar of stone, engrauen with the Armes of France on a Hill in an Iland, which *Laudonniere* at his comming round the Floridians worshipping as their Idoll, with kisses, kneeling, and other Deuotions. Before the same lay diuers Offerings of fruits of the Country, Roots (which they vsed eyther for food or Physicke) vessels full of sweet Oyles, with Bowes and Arrowes. It was girt about with Garlands of Flowres, and boughes of the best trees, from the top to the bottome. King *Athore* himselfe performed the same honour to this Pillar, that he received of his Secretaries. The King *Athore* was a goodly personage, higher by a foot and halfe then any of the French, 60 representing a kind of Maiestie and grauitie in his demeanure. He had married his owne Mother, and had by her diuers Children of both sexes; but after she was espoused to him, his Father *Saturiona* did not touch her.

c *Icon.* [illegible]

This

This [d] *Satourioua* when he went to warre, in the presence of the French vsed these Ceremonies: The Kings his coadiutors sitting around, hee placed himselfe in the midst, at his right hand had a fire, and at his left two vessels full of water. Then did hee expresse indignation and anger in his lookes, gesture, hollow murmurings, and loud cryes, answered with the like from his Souldiers: and taking a woodden dish, turned himselfe to the Sunne, as thence desiring victorie, and that as he now shed the water in the dish, so he might shed the bloud of his Enemies. Hurling therefore the water with great violence into the Ayre, and therewith besprinkling his Souldiers, he said, Doe you thus with the bloud of our Enemies: and powring the water which was in the other vessell on the fire, So (saith hee) may you extinguish your foes, and bring backe the skins of their heads. *Outina* [e] or *Viuna* another King was an Enemie to this *Satourioua*: he in his expedition which hee made against his Enemies (wherein he was assisted by the French) consulted with this Magician about his successe. He espying a Frenchmans Target, demandeth the same, and (in the mids of the Armie) placeth it on the ground, drawing a circle fiue foote ouer about it, adding also certaine notes and characters: then did he set himselfe vpon the Target, sitting vpon his heeles, mumbling I know not what, with variety of gestures about the space of a quarter of an houre: after which he appeared so transformed into deformed shapes, that he looked not like a man, wreathed his limbes, his bones cracking, with other actions seeming supernaturall. At last he returnes himselfe as it were weary and astonished, and comming out of the Circle, saluted the King, and told him the number of their Enemies and place of their encamping, which they found very true. This King was called *Holata Outina*, which signifieth, a King of Kings, and yet had but a few hundreths of men in his Armie, which he [f] conducted in their rankes, himselfe going alone in the mids. They dry the armes and legges, and crownes of their Enemies which they haue slaine, to make solemne triumph at their returne, which they doe, fastning them on Poles pitched in the ground, the men and women sitting round about, and the Magician with an Image in his hand, mumbling curses against the Enemie: ouer-against him are three men kneeling, one of which beateth a stone with a club, and answereth the Magician at euery of his imprecations, the other two sing and make a noyse with certaine Rattles.

d *Icon.11.*

e *Icon.12.*

f *Icon.14.*

They sow or set their Corne rather, as in Virginia: and haue two Seed-times, and two Harueſts, which they bring into a publike Barne or common Store-house, as they doe the rest of their victuals, none fearing to be beguiled of his Neighbour. Thus doe these Barbarians enioy that content, attended with sobrietie and simplicitie, which wee haue banished together out of our Coasts: euery one distrusting or defrauding others, whiles eyther by miserable keeping, or luxurious spending; he (which is [g] *bad to all*) *is worst to himselfe*. To this Barne they bring, at a certaine time of the yeere, all the Venison, Fish, and Crocodiles, (dryed before in the smoke for the better preseruation) which they meddle not with, til need forceth them, and then they signifie the same to each other. The King may take thereof as much as he will. This prouision is sent in baskets on the shoulders of their Hermaphrodites, which weare long haire, and are their Porters for all burthens.

g *Auarus malus omnibus, sibi pessimus. Seneca.*

They hunt Harts after a strange manner: for they will put on a Harts skinne, with the legges and head on, so that the same shall serue them to stalke with, and they will looke thorow the eye and the holes of the Hide, as if it were a Vizor, thereby deceiuing their Game, which they shoot and kill, especially at the places, where they come to drinke. Their Crocodiles they take in a strange manner. They are so plagued with these beast, that they keepe continuall watch and ward against them, as other-where against their Enemies. For this purpose, they haue a watch-house [h] by the Riuers side, and when hunger driues the beast on shore for his prey, the Watchmen call to men appointed: they come tenne or twelue of them, bearing a beame or tree, the smaller end whereof they thrust into the mouth of the Crocodile (comming vpon them gaping for his prey) which being sharpe and rough, cannot be got out, and therewith they ouer-turne him, and then being laid on his backe, easily kill him. The flesh [i] tasteth like Veale, and would be sauoury meate, if it did not sauour so much of a Muskie sent. Their sobrietie [k] lengtheneth their liues, in such sort that one of their Kings told me, saith *Morgues*, that he was [l] three hundred yeeres old, and his Father, which there he shewed me aliue, was fiftie yeeres elder then himselfe: when I saw him, mee thought I saw nothing but bones couered with skinne. His sinewes, veines, and arteries, (saith *Laudonniere*, in description of the same man,) his bones and other parts appeared to cleerely thorow his skinne, that a man might easily tell them, and discerne the one from the other. He could not see, nor yet speake without great paine. *Monsieur de Ottigni* demanding of their age, the younger of these two called a company of Indians, and striking twice on his thigh, laid his hands on two of them, hee shewed that they were his Sonnes: and striking on their thighes, he shewed others which were their Sonnes, and so continued till the fift

h *Icon.26.*

i *N.Chelusc.c.3.*
k *Icon.2.8.*
l *Laudon.* (saith a50. but he saw them not himselfe, as this our Author did: this man gaue two Eagles to the French, perhaps they reckon euery yeere two, as in Virginia.

generation. And yet it was told them, that the eldest of them both might by the course of Nature liue thirtie or fortie yeeres more.

They haue a diuellish a custome, to offer the first-borne male-children to the King for a sacrifice. The day of this dismall Rite being notified to the King, he goeth to the place appointed, and sits downe. Before him is a blocke two foot high, and as much thicke, before which the mother of the child sitting on her heeles, and couering her face with her hands, deploreth the death of her sonne. One of her friends offereth the child to the King; and then the women, which accompanied the mother, place themselues in a Ring, dancing and singing, and shee that brought the child, stands in the mids of them with the child in her hands, singing somewhat in the Kings commendation. Sixe Indians stand apart, and with them the Priest with a Club, wherewith after these ceremonies, he killeth the child on that blocke: which was once done in our presence.

Another b religious Rite they obserue about the end of Februarie; they take the hide of the greatest Hart they can get (the hornes being on) and fill the same with the best hearbs which grow amongst them, hanging about the hornes, necke, and bodie, as it were Garlands of their choisest fruits. Hauing thus sowed and trimmed it, they bring the same with songs and pipes, and set it on a high tree, with the head turned toward the East, with prayers to the Sunne, that hee would cause the same good things to grow againe in their land. The King and his Magician stand neerest the tree and begin, all the people following with their Responds. This done, they goe their wayes, leauing it there till the next yeere, and then renue the same ceremonie.

Ribaulc c at his first comming had two of the Floridians aboard with him certaine dayes, who, when they offered them meat, refused it, giuing them to vnderstand, that they were accustomed to wash their face; and to stay till sun-set before they did eate: which is a ceremonie common in all those parts. They obserue a certaine Feast called *Toya*, with great solemnitie. The place where it is kept, is a great circuit of ground, swept and made neat by the women the day before: and on the Feast day they which are appointed to celebrate this Feast, come painted and trimmed with feathers, and set themselues in order. Three d others in differing painting and gestures follow with Tabrets, dancing and singing in a lamentable tune, others answering them. After that they haue sung, danced, and turned three times, they fall to running like vnbridled Horses, through the midst of the thicke Woods: the Indian Women continuing all the day in weeping and teares, cutting the armes of the yong Girles with Muskle-shels, with hurling the blood into the Ayre, crying out three times, *He Toya*. Those that ranne through the Woods returne two dayes after, and then dance in the midst of the place, and cheere vp those which were not called to the Feast. Their dances ended, they deuoure the meat, for they had not eate in three dayes before. The Frenchmen learned of a boy, that in this meane-while the *Iawas* had made inuocation to *Toya*, and by Magicall Characters had made him come that he might speake with him, and demand diuers strange things of him, which for feare of the *Iawas* he durst not vtter.

To prouoke them vnto reuenge against their enemies, they in their Feasts haue this custome: There is a Dagger in the roome, which one taketh, and striketh therewith one that is thereunto appointed, and then places the Dagger where he had it, and anon renueth the stroke, till the Indian falling downe, the women, Girles, Boyes, come about him, and make great lamentation, the men meane-while drinking Cassine, but with such silence, that not one word is heard: afterwards they apply Mosse warmed, to his side to heale him. Thus doe they call to minde the death of their Ancestors slaine by their enemies, especially when they haue inuaded, and returne out of their enemies Countrey without the heads of any of them, or without any Captiues.

a *Morgnet. Icon.* 34.

b *Icon.* 35.

c *R. Laudon.*

d These three are *Iawas* which haue priests, magicians and physicians.

§. III.

Of the more In-land parts of Florida, discouered by NVNEZ.

BVt let vs take view of the more Southerly and Westerly parts of Florida beyond the point. Of *Pamphilo Naruaez* his vnfortunate Expedition ye haue heard. The whole history written by one of his company, *Aluaro Nunez*, is extant in *Ramnusius*, out of which I haue inserted such things as I hold most fit. At their landing in Cuba at *la Trinite* a tempest by land and sea assailed them, so furious, that it ouerthrew all the houses and Churches, making them to fly with no lesse feare of the Trees falling on them, and holding sixe or seuen together, least the wind should haue hifted them into the aire: they heard also (or feare so phantasied) the noise of bels, cryes, flutes, and other instruments making this dreadfull musicke, to which the hils, trees, and houses thus danced: and after found one

Ramus. vol. 3.

one of the ship-Boats vpon the trees; the ships being perished. The first towne in Florida they came to, was Apalachen, which had not aboue fortie small low cottages, so built by reason of continuall tempests. From thence they trauelled to Aute, by the way encountring a Giant-like people, with bowes as big as ones arme, eleuen or twelue spannes long, wherewith they shot both exactly and forcibly, piercing good armours. A long time they held on an vnprofitable march, till many of them were slaine or consumed by sicknesse and famine, which made them bethinke them of building vessels there, to transport them. But their hard hap pursued them at Sea, and besides outward tempests, assaulted them with one inward (more implacable) of thirst, which forced them to drinke the sea-water, and that so greedily that some died there with presently. Neither would the Sea continue this hospitalitie (howsoeuer in hospitall), but hauing satisfied himselfe in the persons of some, and goods of all, betrayed the rest to the barbarous Indians, through many Nations of which they trauelled with as hard disaduentures as euer Virginia yeelded, euen when it was at worst; and let our most clamorous excepters bee Iudges. Cold, which then attended the Winter, was exceeding sharpe; and they naked: and yet Famine was more terrible then cold, which made fiue of their companie eate vp each other, till only one remayned. And no marueil; for famine which will bee a traueller and soiourner in all places, hath seemed to fixe his habitation in these, and to hold all the nations adioyning vnder his lawlesse law, and tyrannicall subiection.

q They called this place *Malfatta.*

The first Indians they q met with, had one, and some, both of their teats bored thorow, in the hollow whereof (with no little gallantry) they weare a Reede, two spans and a halfe long, and two fingers thicke: and likewise for greater brauerie, weare another lesse Reede thorow their nether lip. They liued in these parts two moneths (which was the season of certaine rootes growing vnder the water, which they then liued on) at other times in other places, with fish, and what they can finde. When one of them hath a sonne dead, all of the kinred and people mourne for him a yeere, at morning and noone, & then burie him. These exequies they obserue to all but the old folkes, of which they hold no such account, as hauing alreadie liued out their time. They haue amongst them Physicians or Priests, whose dead bodies they burne with great solemnitie, and make powder of the bones, which the kinsmen a yeere after drinke. These may haue more wiues, the rest but one. When any brother or sonne is dead, those of that house in three months space, seeke not abroad for their foode, though they die of famine, leauing that care to their kinsfolkes and neighbors, which sometimes almost starue their cures. The Physicians vsed to heale with breathing on the sicke, and touching them, they beleeuing, that if stones and herbs haue such facultie being applyed, much more *Man*, as a more excellent creature: they would needes haue these Spaniards such Physicians, who (if you beleeue them) did many cures with great admiration, but could not cure their Famine and captiuitie in many yeeres.

r *Al. Nuner.* his peregrination thorow many strange Nations.

This our r Author fled from these to the Queuenes and Marianes, which three moneths in the yeere leaue their former habitations, to goe seeke a kind of fruit called *Tune*, of the bignesse of an egge, blacke, and of good taste. These are festiuall moneths to these festiuall nations eating and drinking the iuyce of these *Tune*, yea, many months afore comforting their present famine, and pacifying their croking entrailes, with hope of the approaching *Tune*-season: and thus with words they solaced *Alnares* impatient hunger six months before he could thus indeed satisfie it. Their houses are Mats vpon foure Arches, shifted euery second or third day, to seeke foode. They sowe nothing, hauing as well a dogs ease, as hunger, yea, (like some of Duke *Humfreys* gallant guests) they set a good face on the matter and passe the time in mirth and dancing, when sometimes their teeth dance not in foure daies together. They doted so superstitiously on their dreames, that vpon this dreame-warning, they would kill their sonnes, and without so much, would leaue their daughters to be deuoured of beasts, lest (said they) they should grow vp (as the times then were) by marriages with them, to increase the number of their enemies. They haue two or three kindes of bad Rootes, and sometime Fish, or Venison, but all rare. They eate Ants egs, Wormes, Serpents Frogs, Earth, Wood, Dung of wilde beasts, and keepe the Bones of Fishes and Serpents, to grinde, and eate afterwards. Their women and olde men are put to beare their burthens and drudgeries. They are molested with three sorts of flies, whose biting leaues a seeming leprie: they vse smokie fires in their roomes, almost with the price of their eyes, saueing their skins: others carrie fire-brands in their hands, and therewith set all things as they passe, on fire, both to preuent them, & to hunt their game into fittest places for their taking the same. They haue Kine as big as in Spaine, with small hornes and long haire, 400. leagues along st the countrey.

Much like was the state of the Canagadi, Camoni, Auauares, Malicones and other Floridian nations. These keeps no reckoning of time by the Sunne or Moone, but (like *Plautus* his Parasite) by the bellie, which is *Magister artis* in obseruing the seasons of their fruits and

and fish. They tell strange things of an euill Spirit, which in fearfull apparitions did astonisht them, and cut their flesh. All these Indians haue a custome, not to lye with their wiues after they know them once conceiued, till two yeares after their deliuerie, and their mothers giue them sucke [a] (he saith) till they be twelue yeeres old; and are able to get food for themselues: which they did because of the famine in those parts, whereby they would otherwise haue died. If any sicken by the way, they leaue him there to die, except he hath a father or brother which wil carry him (in this their fleeting habitation) on their necks. They vpon any discontent, diuorce themselues and marry to others, except they haue had children together: and in mutuall contentions they come to buffets and bastinadoes, till weariness, or their wiues part them: but neuer deale with deadly weapons, and sometimes separate themselues and their families, till time waste away their indignation, and then returne: yet are the fierce and politike in warre.

a Great suckbiggers.

These Nations, and the Sufolas, Comos, Camolei, Quitones, and other Names of Barbarisme, vse Tobacco, and a drinke made of the leaues of certaine trees boiled with water, and put vp into certaine vessels, which they drinke as hot as they can endure, crying meane-while, *Who will drinke?* And when the women heare this cry, they suddenly stand still, without stirring any way, although they be laden; they beleeuing that if any woman should then moue her selfe, some euill thing would enter into the drinke, whereof they must die soone after: and therefore if any such accident happen, they cast all away; and likewise if a woman passe by whiles they are brewing it, if the vessell be vncouered. When the women haue their naturall fluxe, they must be their owne Cookes, but for no body else. They haue some Men married to other Men, being attired in habit of Women, and performing onely womanly offices. In some places as they passed, their Physicians (which commonly are in sauage Nations, Magicians and Priests) had rattles of Gourds, which they suppose to come from heauen, and to haue great vertue, none other daring to touch them. Some vsed for boiling wild Gourds, not by putting fire vnder, but by heating stones continually in the fire, and putting them into the liquor till it seethe. Some people on the Mountaines, for a third part of the yeere eate nothing but a powder made of straw. In some places were trees of such venemous qualitie, that the leaues thereof in standing waters would poison whatsoeuer dranke thereof. Some acknowledged a certaine man in heauen called *Aguar*, who gaue them raine and all good things. All these people, as he passed with a Negro and two others, (after he had escaped some of his first Masters which held him in hard seuerie) held them for children of the Sunne, and therefore received them with great reuerence, and festiuall pompe, and conueyed them still to the next nation Westward towards the South Sea, till they came to Spaniards: alwayes vsing to rob those people to whom they deliuered them of their little wealth, which departed from them same with the greater content, because they seued the next people (and so successiuely) with like sawce. They found some rich Sables of muskie sent, and Emeralds. They were out in this Expedition and captiuity, ten yeeres before they could recouer Spaine, from 1527. to 1537.

Sodomites.

§. IIII.

Other Obseruations of Florida.

THese things following, *Ortelius* [b] saith, he had from his Nephew *Celius Ortelius*, by the relation of an eye-witnesse: The King giueth, or selleth rather, to euery man his wife. If a woman commit adulterie, she is bound to a tree, her armes and legges, stretched out all day, and sometimes whipped. A woman, three houres after she is deliuered of a child, carries the Infant to the Riuer to wash it. They obserue no discipline in their families with their children. They haue fleas, which bite so eagerly, that they leaue a great deformitie like a leprie after. They haue winged Serpents, one of which I saw, saith, [c] *Nicolaus Challusius*, the wings whereof seemed to enable it to fly a little height from the ground. The Inhabitants were very carefull to get the head thereof, as was thought, for some superstition. *Botero* [d] saith, that they haue three sorts of Harts, and of one of them make the same commodities which we doe of our Kine, keeping them tame, and milking them. The Spaniard hath three Garrisons on the coast of Florida, S. *Iacomo*, S. *Agostino*, and S. *Philippo*.

b *Ortel. Thea.*

c *Challus. Expd. in Florid. cap. 3.*

d *Botero. Rel. part. 1. l. 5.*

They are e much addicted to venery, and yet abstaine from their wiues after conception knowne. When f *Ferdinando Soto* entred Florida, he there found amongst the Indians one *Iohn Ortiz*, a Spaniard, which by the subtiltie of the people, vnder colour of deliuering a Letter which they had fastened to a cleft Cane, was taken, and liued twelue yeeres with them. *Veita* the Lord of the place made him his Temple-keeper, because that by night the

e *Gasp. Em. l. 33.*

f Discouerie of Florida and Virginia richly valued.

wolues came and carried away the dead corps. Hee reported that these people are worshippers of the Deuill, and vse to offer vnto him the life and blood of their Indians, or of any people that they can come by: and when he will haue them doe that sacrifice vnto him, hee speaketh vnto them, and tels them that he is a thirst, and enjoynes them this sacrifice. They haue a Prophecie, That a white people should subdue them; wherein the French and Spaniards haue hitherto failed in their attempts. *Soto* hauing in his greedy hopes neglected the many commodities he might haue enioyed, to finde greater, was brought to such dumps, that hee thereon sickened, and after died. But before he tooke his bed, he sent to the Cacique of Quigalta, to tell him that he was the Child of the Sunne, and therefore would haue him repaire to him; he answered, That if he would dry vp the Riuer, he would beleeue him. And when he was dead, because he made the Indians beleeue that the Christians were immortall, the Spaniards sought to conceale his death. But the Cacique of Guachoya bailiff enquiring for him, they answered, that he was gone to heauen, as many times he did, and had left another in his place. The Cacique thinking he was dead, [b] commanded two yong and well proportioned Indians to be brought thither, saying, it was their custome to kill men, when any Lord died, to wait on him by the way: which their cruell courtesie the Spaniards refused, denying that their Lord was dead. One Cacique asked *Soto* what he was, and why hee came thither? He answered, that he was the sonne of God, and came to teach them knowledge of the Law. Not so, saith the Cacique, if God bids thee thus to kill, steale, and worke all kind of mischiefe.

b *Ben. ep. lib. 2.*

For their credulitie in like case, *Landonniere* telleth, that a strange and vnheard-of lightening hapned within a league of their Fort, which consumed in an instant 500. acres of meadow, being then greene; and halfe couered with water, together with the fooles that were therein. It continued burning three dayes together, and made the Frenchmen thinke, that for their sakes the Indians had set fire on their dwellings, and were gone to some other place. But a certaine *Paracussy*, which is one of their petty Kings, or Caciques, sent to him a Present, beseeching him to command his men that they should shoot no more towards his dwelling, thinking that the Ordinance had caused all this, which occasion he vsed to his owne good, by arrogating that to himselfe which he saw their simplicitie conceiued of him. Within two dayes after this accident, fell such an beast, that the Riuer (I thinke) was ready to seethe; and in the mouth of the Riuer were found dead therewith, fishes enow to haue laden sixty Carts, whereof issued by putrifaction much sicknesse.

Calos is neere the Cape of Florida. The King thereof made his subiects beleeue, that his Sorceries and charmes were the cause that made the earth bring forth her fruit, and that he might the easier persuade them, he retired himselfe once or twice a yeere to a certain house, accompanied with two or three of his friends, where he vsed inchantments. If any man offered to see what he did, it cost him his life. Euery yeere he offereth a man in the time of Harvest, which was kept for that purpose, and taken of such Spaniards as had suffered shipwrack on that Coast.

c *Laudon.* was told this of certain Spaniards which liued in those parts.

They which further desire to know the riches and commodities of these Countries, may resort to the Authors in this Chapter mentioned. Sir *Francis Drake*, in the yeere 1586. besides his worthy exploits in other places, tooke the Forts of S. *John*, and Saint *Augustine*; whence he brought *Pedro Morales*, and *Nicholas Burgoignon*, whose relations concerning that Countrey Master *Hackluit* hath inserted among other his painfull labours.

David Ingram [d] reported many strange things which he saith he saw in these parts, Elephants, Horses, and beasts twice as big as Horses, their hinder parts resembling Greyhounds; Buls with eares like Hounds; beasts bigger then Beares, without head or necke, but hauing their eyes and mouthes in their breast: and another beast, (*Cerberus*) he cals him *Cellwhin*, which is (saith he) the Deuill in likenesse of a Dogge, and sometimes of a Calfe, with many other matters, wherein he must pardon me, if I be not too prodigall of my Faith. He tels also of punishment of adultery by death, the woman cutting the adulterers throat, and the neerest kinsman, hers, after many prayers to the *Cellwhin*, and a further punishment, in that they haue no quicke bodie buried with them, to attend them into the other world, as all others haue. But they that list to beleeue, may consult with the Author. *Anthony Goddard*, (another of *Ingrams* company, left by *Sir John Hawkins*) going another way, at Panuco yeelded himselfe to the Spaniards: with whom was *Miles Philips*, and *Job Horton*, whose discourses of their disadventures with the Spaniards and Indians, Master *Hakluit* hath published: and hath *Goddards* also written.

d *David Ingram ap Hakluit. 3. Edit. 1.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Countreys situate Westward from Florida and Virginia towards the South-Sea.

§. I.

Of Cibola, Tigues, Quiuira, and Noua Albion.

10 WE haue hitherto discouered those parts of this Northerne America, which trend along the North Sea, which the English and French Nations haue most made knowne vnto vs: further Westward the mid-land countreys are not so well knowne; yet following our Spanish guides, wee here present them from their relations to your view. When as *Cortez* had conquered Mexico (as after followeth to be related) he was made Admirall of the South-Seas, but the gouernment of Mexico and New Spaine was, with the title of Vice-roy, giuen to *Antonio de Mendoza*. These two, partly in emulation of each others glory, partly in hope of enriching themselues, sought to discouer vnknowne Lands; the one by Sea; the later both by Sea & Land;

20 The Viceroy sent [d] as he himselfe testifieth, *Francis Vasquez de Coronado*, and Frier *Marco de Nisa*, with *Stephen* a Negro by land: out of whose relations we haue inserted that which concerneth our purpose. *Marke* [e] the Frier, and *Stephen* set forth with certaine Indians in this Discouerie: and *Stephen* going before, came to Ceuola, as *Marke* related, where hee was slaine: the Frier followed with his Indian guides, and passed thorow one place where was small store of Victuall, because it had not there rained, as the Inhabitants affirmed in three yeares space. The Indians call him *Hayota*, that is, *a man come from Heauen*. Hee passed on further, led by the fame of Ceuola, which with other sixe Cities were reported to be vnder the gouernment of one Lord, and to haue houses of stone, consisting of diuers stories, where were many Turquesses, with many other strange reports of their Markets, multitudes, and

30 wealth. But because the Frier came not there for feare of the Negros entertainment, let vs listen to [f] *Francis Vasquez*, who *came, saw, and ouercame*. *An* 1540. He went with his Army from Culiacan, which is 200. leagues from Mexico, and after a long and tedious iourney, he at last arriued in this Prouince, and conquered (almost with the losse of himselfe) the first Citie of the seuen, which he called Granado. Twice he was striken downe with stones from the wall, as he offered to scale the same: He saith that their houses were of foure or fiue stories or lofts, to which they ascended on ladders; and that they had Cellers vnder the ground, good, and paued. But those seuen Cities were small Townes, all standing in the compasse of foure leagues, all called by that generall name of Ceuola, or Cibola, and none of them particularly so called, but hauing other peculiar names, they were of like building. In this Towne which

40 he conquered, stood 200. houses, walled about, and 300. others not walled. The Inhabitants had remoued their wiues and wealth to the Hill. Hee reporteth of beasts there, Beares, Tygres, Lions, and Sheepe as bigge as horses, with great hornes, and little tayles, Ounces also, and Stagges. That which the Indians worshipped (as farre as they could learne) was *the Water*, which, said they, caused the Corne to grow, and maintained their life. Hee found there a garment excellently embroidered with needle-worke. *Vasquez* went hence to Tiguez, to Cicuic, and to Quiuira, as [g] *Lopez de Gomara* reporteth. This way is full of crooke-backed Oxen. Quiuira is in 40. degrees, and the Countrey is temperate. They saw Ships in the Sea, which bare Alcatoazes, or Pelicans of Gold and Siluer in their Prowes, laden with Merchandise: which they tooke to be of China or Cathay.

50 The men in these parts cloath and shoo themselues with leather: they haue no bread of any kind of graine: their chiefe food is flesh, which they often eate raw, either for custome, or for lacke of wood. They eate the fat as they take it out of the Oxe, and drinke the bloud hot (which of our buls is counted poison) and the flesh they warme (for they seethe it not) at a fire of Oxe-dung. They rather may be said to raum, then to eate it: & holding the flesh with their teeth, cut it with rasors of stone. They goe in companies as the Scythian *Nomades*, Tartarian floords, and many other Nations, following the seasons and best pasturings for their oxen. These Oxen [h] are of the bignesse and colour of our Buls, but their hornes are not

60 so great. They haue a great bunch vpon their shoulders, and more haire on their fore-part, then on the hinder: and it is like wooll. They haue, as it were, a horse-mane on their backe bone, and much haire, and very long from their knees downwards. They haue great tufts of haire on their foreheads, and haue a kinde of beard vnder their chins and throats. the males haue very long tayles, with a great knobor flocke at the end: so that in some

d In his letter to the Emperour *ap. Hak. to. 3. & Ramus.*

e *Marco de Nisa* his relaiion.

f *F. Vasquez* his relation.

g *F. Lopez.* 212. 213. & 214.

h Oxen of Quiuira.

respect they resemble a Lyon, in other the Camels, Horses, Oxen, Sheepe, or Goats. They push with their hornes, and in their rage would ouertake and kill a horse; for the horses fled from them, either for their deformitie, or because they had neuer seene the like. The people haue no other riches: they are vnto them meat, drinke, apparell: their Hides also yeeld them houses, and ropes; their bones, bodkins: their sinewes and haire, thread: their horns, mawes, and bladders, vessels: their dung, fire: the Calues-skins, budgets, wherewith they draw and keepe water.

Gomara also mentioneth their sheepe, which they so call, because they haue fine wool and hornes: they are as bigge as horses; their hornes weigh fifty pound weight apiece. There are also Dogs which will fight with a Bull, and will carry fifty pound weight in Sacks, when they goe on hunting, or when they remoue from place to place with their heards.

The winter is long and sharpe, with much snow in Cibola, and therefore they then keepe in their Cellers which are in place of Stoues vnto them. In the height of thirty seuen degrees, at Tiguez, the cold was so extreme, that the horses and men passed ouer the Riuer vpon the Ice. They there tooke a towne *after fiue and forty dayes siege, but with much losse, and little gaine. For the Indians killed thirty horses in a night: and in another flue certaine Spaniards; sent *Onando* vp into the countrey (they could not tell whether for sacrifice or for the shew) and wounded fifty horses: they drunke snow in stead of water: and seeing no hope to hold out, made a great fire, and cast therein all they had of worth, and then went all out to make way by force; where they were all in manner slaine, but not vnreuenged, forcing some Spaniards to accompany them into the Regions of Death, and wounding many more both men and horses. The Snow continueth in these parts halfe the yeere. Quiuira is more Northerly, and yet more temperate. The Spaniards returned to Mexico in the end of the yeare 1542. to no small griefe of *Mendoza*, who had spent in this expedition six thousand Duckats. Some Friers stayed, but were slaine by the people of Quiuira, onely one man escaped, to bring newes to Mexico.

* Taking of Tiguez.

Sir *Francis Drake* sailed on the other side of America to forty degrees of Northerly Latitude, and with cold was forced to retire, although the Sunne followed him all the way from Guatulco hither (which he sailed from the 6. day of April, to the 5. day of Iune) as if that most excellent and heauenly Light had delighted himselfe in his societie, and acknowledged him for his Son, more truely then the Spaniards (whereof anon we shall heare) or that [b] *Phaeton* of the Poets, not able to compasse this compassing iourney: once, lee was so good a Scholler and learned the Suns instruction so well, that he followed him in a watery field, all that his fiery circle, round about this earthly Globe, carried with the mouing winde (as it were airie wings) new starres, Ilands, Seas, attending and admiring the English colours: and first of [c] any Generall, *loosed the girdle* of the world, and *encompassing* her in his fortunate armes, enioyed her loue. But I lose my selfe while I find him: and yet excellent names, I know not how, compell men to stand awhile, and gaze with admiration, if not with adoration. This our English Knight [d] landed on this coast in thirty eight degrees, where the inhabitants presented themselues vnto him, with presents of feathers, and kalls of Net-worke, which hee required with great humanitie. The men went naked, the women knit loose garments of bull-rushes about their middles. They came a second time, and brought feathers, and bags of Tobacco; and after a long Oration of one that was Speaker for the rest, they left their bowes on a hil, and came downe to our men: the women meane-while remaining on the hill, tormented themselues, tearing the flesh from the cheekes, whereby it appeared that they were about some sacrifice. The newes being further spred, brought the King thither, which was a man of goodly stature: many tall men attended him: two Embassadours with a long Speech of halfe an houre, signified his comming before. One went before the King with a Scepter or Mace, wherein hanged two Crownes with three chaines: the Crownes were of knit-worke, wrought artificially with diuers coloured feathers, the chaines of a bony substance. The King followed cloathed in Cony-skinnes: the people came after, all hauing their faces painted with white, blacke, and other colours, euery one bringing his present, euen the very children also. The Scepter-bearer made a lowd speech of halfe an houre, taking his words from another, which whispered the same vnto him, which with a solemne applause being ended, they came all downe the hill in order without their weapons: the Scepter-bearer beginning a Song and dancing, whereinall the rest followed him. The King and diuers others, made seuerall Orations or Supplications to the Generall, to become their King: and the King with a Song did set the Crowne on the Generals head, and put the chaines about his necke, honouring him by the name of *Hiob*. The common sort leauing the King and his guard, scattered themselues, with their Sacrifices, among our people, taking view of all, and to such as best pleased their fancy, which were the youngest, offered their Sacrifices, with weeping, scratching and tearing their flesh, with much effusion of blood. The English

b *Ouid. Metamorph. lib. 2.*

c *Magellanes Victoria* (so was his ship called) had won this victory, but lost her Generall.

d Sir *Francis Drake. Hak. tom. 3.*

English misliked their deuotions, and directed them to the liuing God: they shewed againe their wounds, whereunto the other applyed paysters and lotions. Every third day they brought their Sacrifices, till they perceiued that they were displeasing. And at the departure of the English, they (by stealth) prouided a Sacrifice, taking their departing very grieuously. They found heards of Deere feeding by thousands, and the Country full of strange Conies, headed like ours, with the feet of a Want, and taile of a Cat, hauing vnder their chins a bagge, into which they gather their meate when they haue filled their body abroad. There is no part of this Earth, wherein there is not some speciall likelihood of Gold or Siluer. The Generall named the Country [a] *Noua Albion.*

a *Noua Albion.*

§. II.

Of New Mexico and Cinaloa.

IN the yeere 1581. [b] *Augustine Ruiz*, a Frier, learned by the report of certaine Indians called *Conchos*, that toward the North there were certaine great Towns, not hitherto discouered by the Spaniards: whereupon, he, with two other companions of his owne Order, and eight Souldiers, went to seeke these parts, and to preach vnto them. They came vnto the Prouince *de los Tiguas*, two hundred and fiftie leagues Northwards from the Mynes of Saint *Barbara*, where one of the Friers was slaine by the Inhabitants. This caused the Souldiers to returne backe, but the Friers stayed still behind. The Franciscans fearing the losse of these their Brethren, procured *Antonio de Espeio* [c] to vndertake this Iourney, with a company of Souldiers. Hee passing the Conchos, the Passaquates, the Tobosos, came to the Patarabueyes, which is a great Prouince, and hath many Townes, their Houses flat roofed, and built of lime and stone, their streets orderly placed. The people are of great stature, and haue their faces, armes, and legges razed and pounced: Here [d] were many Lakes of salt-water, which at a certaine time of the yeere waxeth hard, and becommeth very good salt. The Caciques kindly entertained them with victuals and other presents, especially hides, and Chamois skins very well dressed, as well as those of Flanders: And passing many dayes Iourney further Northwards, they came where the Houses were foure stories high, well built, and in most of them, Stoues for the Winter season. The men and women weare Shooes and Boots with good soles of Neats Leather, a thing not elsewhere to be seene in the Indies. In this Prouince they found many Idols, which they worshipped: and particularly they had in euery House an Oratory for the Deuill, whereinto they ordinarily carry him meate; and (as the Papists erect Crosses vpon high wayes) so haue this people certaine high Chappels, very well trimmed and painted, in which they say the Deuill vseth to take his ease, and to recreate himselfe as hee trauelleth from one Towne to another. In the Prouince of Tiguas there were sixteene Townes, in one of which the Friers aforesaid were slaine. Sixe leagues from thence was the Prouince Los Quires, which worship Idols as their Neighbours: they saw there certaine Canopies, wherein were painted, the Sunne, Moone, and many Stars. It is in 37. degrees and an half. Hence they passed, keeping still their Northerly course, and found a Prouince called Cuuames, where were fiue Townes, one of which was Chia, which contained eight Market places, the houses were playstered and painted with diuers colours: they presented them curious Mantles, and shewed them rich Metals. Beyond this they came to the Ameies, and fifteene leagues thence, to Acoma, which is situate vpon a Rocke; and hath no other entrance but by a Ladder, or paire of staires, hewne in the same Rocke: all their water was kept in Cisternes. They passed hence to Zuny, which the Spaniards call Cibola, and there found three Spaniards, left by *Vasquez* forty yeeres before, which had almost forgotten their owne Language. Westward from hence they came to Mohotze, where were exceeding rich Mynes of Siluer, as likewise in some of the other. These parts seeme to incline toward Virginia.

Martin Peres a Iesuite writeth of these Inland parts, from Cinaloa 1598. that the flies about the Mountaine Tepesuan (in 23. degrees) are so troublesome, as no beast can abide there: the Cimmechi are warlike Indians. Some Spaniards kept there, which heard Masse scarsly once in a yeere. The Prouince of Cinaloa is watered with eight Riuers. The soyle fertile and ayre wholsome: extending three hundred miles Northwards, and within two dayes Iourney of new Mexico. The people weare many Earings in fifty holes which they make for that purpose, so that they are forced to sleepe with their faces vpwards. The women are clothed beneath the waste, aboue naked. Both they and the men weare long haire tied vp on knots, with Corals and shels therein: They are a handfull higher then the Spaniards, valiant, vse poysoned Arrowes, peaceable at home, terrible in warre, they haue many Lan-

b History of Chi ia by *Fr. Iuan Gonsales de Ieuaspa.*

c *An de Espeio.* Nouemb. 1582.

d New Mexico.

Languages. Some of them haue familiaritie and commit abominable sinnes with the Deuill. They vse Polygamy, and thinke it not vnseemely to vse the Mother, Sister, Daughter, as furthering domestieke peace. Thus respect they affinity, but of Consanguitie are very Religious. They correct not their children. Their Marriages are solemnized after consent of Parents on both sides, with dances; the consummation is stayed till fit age of the parties, to whom they then leaue a House and houshold. They obserue a custome to make Gentlemen or Knights, giuing a Bow, and then setting him to fight with a Lion or wild beast, the death of which as the life of their Gentilitie. When one adopteth another, a stake is thrust into his throat, causing him to vomit all in his belly, and (as it were) his former birth together. They are great Gamesters, their play like that of Dice: in which they carry themselues very patiently without swearing or wording, and yet will lose the clothes from their backes, and goe home naked. If any be dangerously sicke, a Graue is digged and stands open, in which they bury him presently being dead, or elle burne him together with his House and stuffe, and there couer the ashes: sprinkling the Sepulchre with certaine dust, whereof they make a drinke, and eate and drinke themselues drunke.

J. J. Toletus.

Ludouicus Tribaldus Toletus in his Letter to Master *Hakluyt* 1605. writeth of one *Iohn Onnate*, who in the yeere 1599. trauelled fiue hundred leagues from the Old, to New Mexico. He sent his Nephew to Acoma (a Towne strongly fortified by Nature) to trucke with them, whom they deceitfully slue with his six companions. *Onnate* in reuenge, takes and kils the Indians and fires their dwellings: forced a great City to sweare obedience to the King of Spaine, and another Citie also greater then the former. They built a Towne named Saint *Iohn*: found Mynes of Gold and Siluer: hunted the heards of Cibola. In the yeere 1602. he made another Expedition to the Lake of Conibas, on the banke whereof was a Citie seuen leagues long, and two in breadth, the houses built scattering with Hils and pleasant Gardens betweene. The Inhabitants all had fortified themselues in the Market place which was very large: the Spaniards departed without assault. Neere California were found large Hauens, before vnknowne; and the Spaniards determined to build Forts.

Now that wee haue heard of the In-land Discoueries by the Spaniards, and that *Noua Albion* of Sir *Francis Drake*, let vs take some view of the Spanish Nauigation on these Coasts.

§. III.

The Discoueries of VLLOA *and* ALARCHON, *on the Coasts of the South Sea.*

4

a *Fran. Vllos apud Ramus. & Hak. vol. 3.*

Ortes the Conquerour of Mexico sent a *Francis de Vllos* with a Fleet for Discouerie, in the yeere 1539. from Acapulco, which came to *Santa Cruz* in California. They sayled ouer the Gulfe, and came to the River of Saint *Peter* and Saint *Paul*, where they beheld, on both sides, a goodly Country. I am loth to hold on with them in their Voyage, lest I faile from my scope, and leaue the offended Reader behind me. Here they found in their course burning Mountaynes, which cast vp fire, ashes, and smoke in great quantitie. They encountred with a cruell storme, and being almost out of hope, they saw, as it were, a Candle vpon the shrowdes of the Trinitie (one of their ships) which the Mariners said was Saint *Elmo*, and saluted it with their Songs and Prayers. This is the darknesse of Popery, to worship a naturall light: yea that which hath little more then beeing, and is an imperfect Meteor, is with them more perfect then Humane, and must participate in Diuine worship. Without the Gulfe of California they found store of great fish, which suffered themselues to be taken by hand: also they saw weedes floating on the Sea, fifty leagues together, round, and full of gourds, vnder them were store of fish, on them store of fowle: they grow in fifteene or twenty fathome depth. They caught with their Dogges, a beast very fat, haired like a Goat, otherwise resembling a Deere: in this, neither, that it had foure Dugges like vnto a Cow full of Milke. But because they had little dealing with the Inhabitants, I leaue them, and will see what *Fernando* b *Alarchon* can shew vs of his Discouerie. Hee was set forth by *Antonio de Mendoza*, the Vice-roy, in the yeere of our Lord 1540. with two ships. He came to the bottome of the Bay of California, and there found a mighty River, which ranne with such furious violence, that they could scarce saile against it. Here leauing the ships with some of his company, hee passed vp with some Pieces of Ordnance, and two Boats: and so drawing the Boats with halters, they made vp the River called Buena Guia: they were incountred with the Indian Inhabitants, who forbade them lan-

California.

b *For Alarchon.*

handling: but *Alarchon* hurling his weapons downe, and pulling out certaine wares to giue them, appeased their fury, and caused them also to lay downe their weapons, and receiue of him some trifles, which he gaue them. Two leagues higher many Indians came and called to him: these were decked after a strange manner, some had painted their faces all ouer, some halfe way, others had Vizards on with the shape of faces: they had holes in their nostrils, syllet-eare certaine pendants hung; others ware shels, having their eares full of holes, with bones and shels hanging thereon. All of them ware a Girdle about their waste, whereunto was fastned a bunch of Feathes which hung downe behind like a taile: they carried with them bags of Tobacco. Their bodies were traced with cole, their haire cut before, hung downe longbehind. The women ware bunches of Feathers before and behind them. There were foure men in womens apparell: *Alarchon* perceiued by signes, that the thing they most reuerenced, was the Sunne; and therefore signified vnto them, that he came from the Sunne; whereat they marvelled, and tooke curious view of him with greater reuerence then before; brought him abundance of food first flinging vp part of euerything into the Aire, and after, turning to him to giue him the other part; offering in their armes to carry him into their Houses, and doing else whatsoever he would haue them. And if any stranger came, they would goe and meet him, to cause him to lay downe his weapons, and if he would not, they would breake them in pieces. Hee gaue the chiefe of them small Wares. They needed not pray them to helpe draw the Boat vp the streame, euery one laboured to get hold of the Rope: otherwise it had beene impossible to haue gotten vp against the Current. Hee caused Crosses to be made and giuen them, with instruction to honour them, which they did with extasie of blind zeale, kissing them, and lifting them vp, euery one comming for them till he had not paper and sticks enow for that puppole.

And as he passed further, he met with one which vnderstood his Interpreter, and asked of him many questions, to which he answered, that he was sent of the *Sunne*; which the other doubting, because the Sunne went in the Skie, he said that at his going downe and rising, he came neere the Earth, and there made him in that Land, and sent him hither to visit this Riuer and the People, and to charge them not to make further warres one vpon another. But why saith the Indian, did he send you no sooner? he answered, Because before he was but a child. A long Dialogue thus passed betwixt them, the issue whereof was that the Indians cryed out, they would all receiue him for their Lord, seeing hee was the childe of the Sunne, and came to doe them good. This vse did hee make of their superstitious obseruation of the Sunne, which they worshipped because he made them warme (said they) and caused their corn to grow, with the rest of all things which they eate, they call a little vp into the aire in Hee. They ware one vpon another (a thing common to all Sauages) for small occasions: the chiefest and most valiant guided the Armes (for in some places they had no Lord) and of those which they tooke in the Warre, some they burned, and from some they plucked out the hearts, and eate them. *Alarchon* caused a Crosse to be made of Timber, commanding his owne people to worship it, and leaving it with the Indians, with instructions euery morning at the Sunne-rise to kneele before it. This they tooke with great deuotion, and would not suffer it to touch the ground, vntill they knew by questioning, how deepe they should graue it, with what composition of gesture to worship it, and the like curiosities of Paganish Christianitie. He was told, that this Riuer was inhabited by three and twenty Languages, that they married but one woman to one man, that Maides before Marriage conuersed not with men, nor talked with them, but kept at home and wrought; Adultery was death; they buried the dead, Widdowes stayed halfe a yeere or a whole yeere before they married again. Every Family had their seuerall Gospelpoint, other Rites they had none. The Riuer vsed at some times to ouerflow the banks. These people told *Alarchon*, that in Ceuola they had many blue stones, or Turquesses, which they digged out of a Rocke, of those, and when the Gouernours dyed, all their goods ware buried with them; that they eate with Napkins, many waiting at Table; that they killed the Negro before mentioned, because he said he had many Brethren, to whom they thought he would giue intelligence, and therefore killed him. An old man told him the names of two hundred Lords and people of those parts. This old man had a Sou clothed in womans attire, of which sort they had foure: these serued to the g Sodomitical lusts of all the vnmarried young men in the Country, and may not themselues haue to deale with any woman. They haue no reward for this beastiall trade, but haue libertie to goe to any House for their food: when any of them dye, the first Sonne that is borne after, succeeds in their number.

As for the more Northerly parts, both within Land, and the supposed Strait of *Anian*, with other things mentioned in Maps, because I know no certainties of them, I leaue them. The way by Sea from these parts to the Philippinas, two or foure one Nation haue passed, whose Voyage, h as also that exact description of the same, by *Francisco de Gualle*, a Spanish

g Sodomites.

h *Thebitan*, also in his third Booke largely treateth of the course of these and other Nauigations.

nish Captaine and Pilot, Master *Hakluyt* hath related; who hath in these, and other labours of like nature, deeply ingaged himselfe for his Countries good, and of his Countrimen merriteth an euerlasting name; and to me hath beene as Admirall, holding out the light vnto me in these Seas, and as diligent a guide by Land (which I willingly, yea dutifully, acknowledge) in a great part of this my long and wearisome Pilgrimage. And his helpes in the second Edition, haue much more obliged me (that I say not thee) vnto his laborious Collections; for which our English Nauigations, both for the memoriall of passed, incouragement of present, and instructions to the future, are (as to *Neptunus* Secretarie and the *Oceanus* Protonotary) indebted beyond recompence: whereby he *being* [1] *dead* (whiles we write these things) *yet speaketh.* And although in this third Edition I could not obtaine like kindnesse from him, I know not how affected or infected with emulation or iealousie; yet shall his Name liue whiles my Writings endure, as without whose helpes and industrious Collections, perhaps I had neuer troubled the World in this kind. And thus is my Epitaph in his memory; who hath yet a better, his owne large Volumes being the best and truest Titles of his Honour: and if some *Iuno Lucina* would helpe to bring forth the Posthume Issue of his Voyages not yet published, the World should enioy a more full Testimony of his paines in that kind.

1 He dyed this last Winter, 1616.

CHAP. IX.

Of New Spaine, and the conquest thereof by HERNANDO CORTES.

§. I.

Of the first Discouerie by CORTES *and others.*

NOw are we safely arriued out of the South [k] Sea, and North vnknowne Lands, where we haue wildered our selues, and wearied the Reader in this great and spacious Country of New Spaine. New Spaine is all that which lyeth betweene Florida and California, and confines on the South, with Guatimala and Iucatan; how it came to be so called, asketh a long Discourse, concerning the Conquest thereof by *Cortes*, whose History is thus related.

Hernando [l] *Cortes* was borne at Medellin in Andulozia, a Prouince of Spaine, *Anno* 1485. When he was nineteene yeeres old, he sayled to the Iland of Saint *Domingo*, where *Ouando* the Gouernour kindly entertayned him. Hee went to the conquest of Cuba in the yeere 1511. as Clerke to the Treasurer, vnder the conduct of *Iames Velasques*, who gaue vnto him the Indians of Manicorao, where he was the first that brought vp Kine, Sheepe and Mares, and had heards and flockes of them: and with his Indians hee gathered great quantitie of Gold, so that in short time he was able to put in two thousand Castlins for his stocke, with *Andres de Duero* a Merchant. At this time *Christopher Morante* had sent (*An.* 1517.) *Francis Hernandes de Cordoua*, who first discouered Yucatan, whence he brought nothing (except the relation of the Country) but stripes: whereupon *Iames Velasques* in the yeere 1518. sent his kinsman *Iohn de Grijalua*, with 200. Spaniards [m] in foure ships: hee traded in the Riuer of Tausco, and for trifles returned much Gold, and curious workes of Feathers. Idols of Gold, a whole harnesse or furniture for an armed man of Gold thin beaten, Eagles, Lions, and other pourtratures found in Gold, &c. But while *Grijalua* deferred his returne, *Velasques* agreed with *Cortes* to be his partner in the Discouerie, which hee gladly accepted, and procured licence from the Gouernours in *Domingo*, and prepared for the Voyage.

Velasques afterward vsed all meanes to breake off, in so much that *Cortes* was forced to engage all his owne stocke, and credit, with his friends in the Expedition, and with fiue hundred and fiftie Spaniards in eleuen Ships, set sayle the tenth of February 1519. and arriued at the Iland of Acusamil. The Inhabitants at first fled, but by the kinde entertainment of some that were taken, they returned, and receiued him and his with all kinde Offices.

They told him of certaine bearded men in Yucatan, whither *Cortes* sent; and one of them *Geronimo de Aguilar* came vnto him, who told him, that by shipwracke at Iamaica, their Caruell being lost, twentie of them wandred in the boat without sayle, water, or bread, thir-

k The Spaniards call all that the South Sea, which is on the further side of America.

l *Gomara* his third part, of the Conquest of the West Indies, translated into English by *T. Nicolas.*

m Of this Voiage, Reade *P. Martyrs* fourth Decade: and *Gomara part.* 1. and of all which followes in this Chapter. *P. Mart. Dec.* 5. *Gomarb supra.* and *Cortes* his owne large Narration to the Emperour. *Ap. Ramusi. Vol.* 3.

thirteene or fourteene dayes, in which space the violence of the Current had cast them on shoare in a Prouince called Maij, where, as they trauelled, seuen died with famine; and their Captayne *Valdinia* and other foure were sacrificed to the Idols by the Cacike, or Lord of the Countrie, and eaten in a solemne banquet, and hee with sixe other were put into a coope or cage to be fatned for another Sacrifice. But breaking prison, they escaped to another Cacike, enemie to the former, where all the rest died, but himselfe and *Gonzalo Guerrero* a Mariner. Hee had transformed himselfe into the Indian Cut, boring his Nose full of holes, his eares iagged, his face and hands painted; married a wife, and became a Captaine of name amongst the Indians, and would not returne withthis *Aguilar*.

20 *Cortes* with this new Interpreter passed vp the Riuer Tausco, called of the former Discouerer, Grijalua; where the Towne that stood thereon, refusing to victuall him, was taken and sacked. The Indians herewith enraged, assembled an Armie of forty thousand, but *Cortes* by his Horse & Ordnance preuayled, the Indians thinking the Horse and Rider had beene but one Creature, whose gaping and swifnesse was terrible vnto them, whereupon they submitted themselues. When they heard the Horses ney, they had thought the Horses could speake, and demanded what they said: the Spaniards answered, These Horses are sore offended with you, for fighting with them, and would haue you corrected: the simple Indians presented Roses and Hens to the beasts, desiring them to eate and to pardon them. Indian simplicitie.

Cortes purposed to discouer Westward, because he heard that there were Mynes of Gold, 20 hauing first received their Vassalage to the King his Master, to whom (hee said) the Monarchie of the Vniuersall did appertaine. These were the first Vassals the Emperour had in New Spaine. They named the Towne, where these things were done, *Victorie*, before called Potonchan, containing neere fiue and twenty thousand Houses, which are great, made of Lime, and Stone, and Bricke, and some of mudwals and rafters, couered with Straw; their dwelling is in the vpper part of the House, for the moystnesse of the Soyle. They did eate mans flesh sacrificed. Potonchan called *Victorie*.

The Spaniards failed further Westward, and came to Saint *Iohn de Vlhua*, where *Tendilli*, the Gouernour of the Country, came to him with foure thousand Indians. He did his reuerence to the Captaine, burning Frankincense (after their custome) and little strawes, touched in the bloud of his owne bodie: and then presented vnto him Victuals, and Iewels of 30 Gold, and other curious workes of Feathers; which *Cortes* requited with a Collar of Glasse, and other things of small value. A woman-slaue giuen him at Potonchan, vnderstood their Language, and she with *Aguilar*, were his Interpreters. *Cortes* professed him selfe the Seruant of a great Emperour, which had sent him thither, whose power is so highly extolled, that *Tendilli* marvelled, thinking there had beene no such Prince in the World, as his Master and Souereigne the King of Mexico, whose Vassal he was named, *Mutezuma*. To him he sent the representations of these bearded Men, and their Horses, Apparell, Weapons, Ordnance, and other Rarities, painted in Cotton-clothes, their ships and numbers. These painted Cottons he sent by Posts, which deliuered them from one to another with such celeritie, that in a 40 day and night the message came to Mexico, which was two hundred and ten miles distant. *Cortes* had demanded, whether *Mutezuma* had Gold? *Tendilli* affirmed, and *Cortes* replyed, That hee and his fellowes had a Disease of the heart, whereunto Gold was the best remedie. Spanish incurable sicknesse.

Mutezuma sent him many Cotton-clothes of diuers colours, many Tuffes of Feathers, two Wheeles, the one of Siluer, with the signe of the Moone, and the other of Gold, made like the Sunne; which they hold for Gods, and giue vnto them the colours of the Metals most like them. Each Wheele was two yards and a halfe broad. These with other parts of the Present were esteemed worth twenty thousand Duckets. *Mutezuma* also professed ioy, to heare of so great a Prince, and so strange people, and promised prouision of all necessaries; 50 but was very vnwilling that *Cortes* should come to see him, as he pretended. Yet *Cortes* persisted in that his desire of seeing *Mutezuma*, that hee might further acquaint himselfe with the knowledge of those parts.

The silly Indians hauing neuer seene such strange sights, came daily to the Campe to see them: and when they heare the Ordnance discharged, they fell downe flat, thinking the Heauens had falne: the ships they thought were the God of the Ayre, called *Quezalcouolt*, which came with the Temples on his backe, for they daily looked for him. Amongst the rest, or rather aloofe off from the rest, were certaine Indians of differing habit, higher then the other, and had the gristles of their Noses slit, hanging ouer their mouthes, and Rings of Iet and Amber hanging thereat: their nether lips also bored, and in the holes Rings of 60 Gold and Turkesse-stones, which weighed so much, that their lips hung ouer their chinnes, leauing their teeth bare. This vglinesse, they accounted gallantry, and such vncouth deformity to be the only brauery. And thou Gallant, that readest and deridest this madnesse of Note for Fashion-mongers

Fa-

Fashion, if thine eyes were not dazeled with lightnesse (light I cannot cal it) of selfe-reflected Vanitie, mightest see as Monster-like fashions at home, and a more fashionly Monster of thy selfe; thy Clothes and Othes, thy Gestures and Vestures, make thy naked Deformitie worse then their thus deformed nakednesse: both indeed seeme to haue receiued some Hellish Character (if there may be bodily representation) of that olde Serpent in these new Fashions, striuing who shall shape himselfe, neerest to that mishapen vglinesse, wherein the Indian-iagges himselfe out of humane lineaments, the other swaggers himselfe further out of all Ciuill and Christian Ornaments. But these Fashion-mongers haue made mee almost out of my fashion, and to forget my selfe, in remembring their forgetfulnesse.

Zempoallan. These Indians of this New-cut, *Cortes* caused to come to him, and learned that they 10 were of Zempoallan, a Citie distant thence a dayes iourney, whom their Lord had sent to see what Gods were come in those *Teocallis*, that is Temples (so, it seemeth, that they called the ships:) which held no conuersation with the other Indians, as being not subiect to *Mutezuma*, but onely as they were holden in by force. He gaue them certaine toyes, and was glad to heare that the Indians of Zempoallan, and other their Neighbors were not wel

Panuco. affected to *Mutezuma*, but readie, as farre as they durst, to entertaine all occasions of war with him. He sayled from thence to Panuco, and passed the Riuer farther, till he came to a little Towne, where was a Temple, with a little Towre, and a Chappell on the top ascended by twentie steps, in which they found some Idols, many bloudie Papers, and much Mans bloud, of those which had beene sacrificed; the blocke also whereon they cut open 20 those Sacrifices, and the Razors made of flint, wherewith they opened their brests, which struck the Spaniards with some horrour and feare. They passed a little further, and there

Vera Crux. hauing taken possession, in the Emperours name, of the whole Country, they founded the Towne *De la vera Crux*. *Cortes* resigning his authoritie, and Officers being elected; and lastly all with generall consent appointing *Cortes* their Captaine.

§. II.

CORTES *his Expedition to Mexico, and entertainment by* MVTEZVMA. 30

Cortes went forward to Zempoallan, where hee was solemnely receiued and lodged in a great House of Lime and Stone, whited with Playster, that shined in the Sunne, as if it had beene Siluer; so did the Siluer-conceits of the Spaniards imagine, the desire of that Metall hauing made such an impression in their imagination, that they told *Cortes* before he came at it, they had seene a House with wals of Siluer. Here, and at Chiauiztlan, *Cortes* incited them to rebell against *Mutezuma*, and to become seruants to the Spaniards, which they did: and hee vnder-hand so wrought, that *Mutezuma* tooke him for his friend. 40

All his intent was to fish in troubled waters, and to set them both by the eares, that hee might watch opportunitie to benefit himselfe. His owne people rebelled, some of whom he chastised with the halter and the whip for example to the rest; and after caused all his ships to be sunke closely, that they should not minde any returne. Hee left an hundred and fifty men for the guard of the new Towne, vnder *Pedro de Henrico*, and with foure hundred Spaniards, fifteene Horses, and sixe Peeces of Artillery, and 1300. Indians, they went from Zempoallan, and came to Zaclotan, the Lord whereof was *Olmiler* the subiect of *Mutezuma*, who to testifie his ioy, and to honour *Cortes*, commanded fifty men to be sacrificed, whose bloud they saw, new and fresh.

They carried the Spaniards on their shoulders, sitting on Beeres, such as whereon they vse 50 to carry dead men. He bragged as much of the power of *Mutezuma*, as the Spaniards of their Emperour. Hee said hee had thirty Vassals, each of which was able to bring into the

Bloudy Sacrifices, field an hundred thousand men of warre, and sacrificed twenty thousand men yeerely to the Gods: in this he somewat exceeded; the other was true, although some yeeres, the Sacrifices also were thought to amount to fifty thousand. This Towne was great, and had thirteene Temples, in each of which were many Idols of stone, of diuers fashions, before whom they sacrificed Men, Doues, Quailes, and other things with great perfumes and veneration. Here *Mutezuma* had fiue thousand Souldiers in Garrison. *Cortes* passed from thence to Mexico by the Frontiers of Tlaxcallon, which were enemies to *Mutezuma*, whom he might easily haue ouercome, but reserued, partly for the exercise of his subiects to the 60 war: partly for the Sacrifices to his Gods.

These ioyned an hundred and fifty thousand men against *Cortes*, taking him for *Mutezumaes*

zuma's friend: and yet euery day sent him Guinny-cocks & bread, partly to espy his strength, and partly in a brauery, lest their glory should bee obscured in the conquest of men already starued. But when in many skirmishes and fights they could not preuaile against that handfull of Spaniards, they thought they were preserued from harme by inchantments: and sent him three presents with this message; that if he were that rigorous god which eateth mans flesh, he should eate those fiue sluues which they brought him, and they would bring him more: if he were the meeke and gentle God, behold Frankinsence, and Feathers: if he were a mortall man, take heere Fowle, Bread, and Cherries. At last they made peace with him, and submitted their Citie to him. Their Citie Tlaxcallan was great, planted by a Riuers side, which issued into the South-Sea. It had foure streets, each or which had their Captain in the time of Warre. The gouernment was an Aristocratie, hating Monarchy no lesse then tyranny. It had eight and twenty Villages, and in them an hundred and fifty thousand housholds, very poore, but good warriours. They had one market-place so spacious, that thirty thousand persons in a day came thither to buy and sell by exchange: for money they had none. *Tlaxcallan a great Citie.*

Mutezuma had sent before to *Cortes*, and promised tribute to the Emperour, whatsoeuer should be imposed; onely he would not haue him come to Mexico. And now he sent againe, that he should not trust that new friendship with the beggerly Nation of Tlaxcallan, and they againe counselled him not to aduenture himselfe to *Mutezuma*. *Cortes* held his determination for Mexico, and being accompanied with many of the Tlaxcantlexas, he went to Chololla, a little from whence *Mutezuma* had prepared an Army to intrap him in the way; but he finding the treacherie, it redounded vpon the Cholollois, the same day they had thought to haue executed the same vpon him. For this end they had sacrificed ten children, fiue males, and as many females, three yeares old, to *Quezalcouatl* their god, which was their custome when they began their Warres. He out-going them in their owne art of subtiltie, intrapped their Captaines in Councell, and sent his Armie to spoile the Citie, where were slaine thousands. There were twenty Gentlemen, and many Priests which ascended vp to the high Towre of their Temple, which had an hundred and twenty steps, where they were burned, together with their gods and Sanctuary. *Cholulla.*

This City had 20000. Housholds within the Wals, & as many in the Suburbs. It shewed outward very faire and full of Towres, for there were as many Temples as dayes in the yeere, and euery one had his Towre. The Spaniards counted 400. Towres. It was the Citie of most deuotion in all India, whither they trauelled from many places far distant in Pilgrimage. Their Cathedrall Temple was the best and highest in all New-Spain, with 120. steps vp to it. Their chiefe god was *Quezalcouatl*, god of the Aire, who was (they say) founder of their City being a Virgin, of holy life and great penance. He instituted fasting, and drawing of blood out of their eares and tongues, and left precepts of Sacrifices. Hee neuer ware but one garment of Cotton, white, narrow, and long, and vpon that a Mantle, beset with certain red crosses. They haue certaine greene stones which were his, and are kept for great relikes: one of them is like an Apes head. Eight leagues from Chololla is the hill Popocatepec, or smoke-hill, which the earth seemeth to haue erected as a Fort to encounter and assault the Aire: now with smoky mists endeuouring to choake his purer breath, another while with violent flames, and naturall fire-works threatning to ioyne league with his elder and superiour brother to disinherit him: sometimes with showres of Ashes and embers, as it were, putting out the eyes, and sometimes with terrible and dreadfull thunders, rending the eares of that Airie Element; alwayes (such is the euent of warre) hurting and wasting it selfe, to indamage the enemy. The Indians thought it a place of Purgatory, whereby tyrannicall and wicked Officers were punished after their death, and after that purgation passed into glory. The Spaniards aduentured to see it, but two onely held on their journey, and had there been consumed, had they not by a Rock bin shadowed fro the violent eruption of the fire which then hapned. It chanced that the Earth, weary it seemeth of the Warre, as hauing spent her store and munition, agreed on a truce which continued ten yeares: but in the yeere 1540. it brake forth into more violent hostilitie then before, quaking and renting it selfe with vnbridled passion: and whereas the Aire had alwayes a snowy Garrison about her high tops and frontiers, to coole and quench her fiery showres, yet these did but kindle a greater flame, the ashes whereof came to Huexozineo, Quelaxcopon, Tepiacac, Chololla and Tlaxcallan, and other places, ten, or as some say fifteene leagues distant, and burned their herbs in their Gardens, their fields of corne, trees and cloathes that they said a drying. The *Vulcan*, *Crater*, or mouth whence the fire issued, is about halfe a league in compasse. The Indians kissed their garments (an honour done vnto their gods) which had aduentured themselues to this dreadfull spectacle. Store of Temples and deuotions. *Popocatepec a burning Hill.*

Cortes drawing neere to Mexico, *Mutezuma* feared, saying, These are the people which our gods said should come and inherit this Land. Hee went to his Oratory, and there shut *Mutezumes* Religion.

vp himselfe alone, abiding eight dayes in prayer and fasting, with Sacrifice of many men, to asslake the fury of his offended deities. The Diuell bids him not to feare, and that hee should continue those bloudy Rites, assuring him that hee should haue the gods *Vitzilipuzli* and *Tescatlipuca* to preserue him, saying, That *Quezalcouatl* permitted the destruction at Chololla, for want of that bloudie sacrifice, *Cortes* passed a Hill six miles in height, where, by the difficultie of the passage, and of the cold (being alwsy couered with snow) the Mexicans might easily haue preuented his passing further. Hence hee espyed the Lake, whereon Mexico and many other great Townes did stand, Iztacpallapan a Towne of 10000 households, Coyocan of sixe thousand, Vizilopuchtli of fiue thousand, These townes are adorned with many Temples and Towers, that beautifie the Lake. From Iztacpalapan to Mexico is two Leagues, all on a faire causay, with many Draw-bridges, thorow which the water passeth.

Mutezuma receiued *Cortes* with all solemnitie on the eight of *November* 1519. into this great Citie, excusing himselfe of former vnkindnesses the best hee could. Of his house, and Majestie and the diuine conceit the people had of him, we shall speake after more fully, as also of the Temples, Priests, Sacrifices and other remarkable things of Mexico.

Mutezuma prouided all things necessarie for the Spaniards and Indians that attended them: euen beds of flowres were made, in place of litter for their Horses. But *Cortes* disquieted with those thoughts which commonly attend Ambition (discontent in the present, hopes and feares of the future) vsed the matter so, that he tooke *Mutezuma* prisoner, and detained him in the place appointed for the Spaniards lodging, with a Spanish guard about him, permitting him otherwise to deale in all priuate or publike affaires, as before. Hereupon *Cacama*, Lord of Tezcuco, Nephew to *Mutezuma*, rebelled, but by treachery of his owne people was presented prisoner to *Mutezuma*. He, after this summoned a Parliament, where he made an Oration vnto his Subiects, saying, [f] That He and his Predecessors were not Naturals of the Countrey, but his Fore-fathers came from a farre Countrey, and their King returned againe, and said, he would send such as should rule them. And he hath now sent these Spaniards, saith he. Hereupon he counselled them to yeeld themselues Vassals to the Emperour, which they did at his command, though with many teares on his part and theirs, at this farewell of their libertie. *Mutezuma* presently gaue to *Cortes*, in the name of tribute, a great quantitie of Gold and other Iewels, which amounted to sixteene hundred thousand Castlins of Gold, besides Siluer.

[f] The like speech he had made at first to *Cortes*, who easily wrought on that aduantage applying this Tradition to the Spaniards. *Cortes Narrat.*

§. III.

The conquest of Mexico.

CORTES had hitherto a continuall victory in Mexico without any fight: but newes was brought him of *Pamphilo de Naruaez*, who was sent with eighty horse, and some hundreths of Spaniards by *Velasques*, to interrupt the proceedings of *Cortes*: who leauing two hundred men in Mexico, with 250. other came suddenly in the night, and took *Neruaez* prisoner, and returned to Mexico with *Narnaez* his company, now his followers also, where he found his men exceedingly distressed by the Citizens, for a murther committed in the great Temple at a solemn Feast, where in a religious dance they were slaine, for the rich garments and Iewels they ware, by the Spaniards. *Cortes* came in good time for the reliefe of his men: and *Mutezuma* caused the Mexicans to bridle their rage, which presently was renued; and when *Mutezuma* was againe by his Guardians, the Spaniards, caused to speake to the people, a blow of a stone on his temples wounded him, whereof three dayes after he died.

Mutezumas death.

Cortes had some thousands of the *Tlaxoltecas* to help him, but was driuen to fly from Mexico with all his Spaniards and Indians, which he did closely in the night, but yet an all-arme was raised, and the bridges being broken, much slaughter of his people was made by the Mexicans, and all his treasure in manner lost. They pursued after him also, and had two hundred thousand in the field: when it was *Cortes* his good hap to slay the Standard-bearer, whereupon the Indians forsooke the field. This battell was fought at Otumpan.

At Tlazcallan, he and his were kindly entertained; they had prepared before 50000. men to goe to Mexico for his helpe, and now they promised him all offices of loyaltie and seruice. With their helpe he subdued Tepeacae; and built certaine Brigandines, and Frigats, which were carried many leagues on the backs of those Indians, and there fastned and finished, without which he could neuer haue wonne Mexico.

In Tezcuco certaine Spaniards had been taken, sacrificed and eaten, which *Cortes* now reuenged

reuenged on them. Eight thousand men had carried the loose pieces and Timber of this Naue, guarded with twenty thousand Tlaxcalans, and a thousand Tamemez, or Porters (which carried victuals, attending. They calked them with Towe, and for want of Tallow and Oyle, they vsed Mans Grease, of such as had been slaine in the Warres. For to the Indians vsed, to take out the Grease of their Sacrifices. *Cortes* had here nine hundred Spaniards, of which fourescore and sixe were horsemen, three cast Pieces of iron, fifteene small Peeces of Brasse, and a thousand weight of Powder, and 100000 Indian Souldiers on his side. Hee made a sluce or trench aboue twelue foot broad, and two fathome deepe, halfe a league long, in which forty thousand men wrought fifty dayes. He lanched his Vessels, and soone ouer-
10 came all the Canoas of the Lake, or which were reckoned in all fiue thousand. The Spaniards brake the Conduits of sweet water, wherewith the Citie was wont to be serued.

Quahutimoc, now the new King of Mexico, receiuing incouragement from the diuellish Oracle, caused to breake downe the Bridges, and to exercise whatsoeuer wit or strength could doe in defence of his City, sometimes conquering, sometimes (as is the doubtfull chance of warre) conquered. *Cortes* had in Tezcuco ordained a new King, a Christian Indian, of the royall bloud, who much assisted him in this siege. The Spaniards being Lords of the Lake, and of the Causeys, by helpe of their Galliots and Ordnance, they fired a great part of the Citie. One day the Mexicans had gotten some aduantage, and thereupon celebrated a Feast of Victory. The Priests went vp into the Towers of *Tlatelulco*, their chiefe Temple, and
20 made there perfumes of sweet Gummes, in token of victory, and sacrificed forty Spaniards (which they had taken captiues, opening their breasts, and plucking out their hearts) sprinkling their bloud in the Aire; their fellowes looking on, and not able to reuenge it. They slew likewise many Indians, and foure Spaniards of *Alvarado's* company, whom they are in the open sight of the Armie. The Mexicans danced, dranke themselues drunke, made bone fires, struckc vp their Drummes, and made all solemne expressings of ioy. Dread, Disdaine, and all the Furies that Passion or Compassion could coniure vp, had now filled the Spaniards hearts and all their Indian partakers: and *Cortes*, that hitherto had hoped to reserue some part of the Citie, now did the vtmost that Rage and Reuenge could effect; helped no-
30 lesse within with Famine and Pestilence, then with Sword and Fire without. At last Mexico is rozed, the Earth and Water sharing betwixt them what Firehad left, and all which had sometime challenged a lofty inheritance in the Ayre. Their King also was taken; all that mighty State subuerted. And as the Mexicans before had prophecied, That the Tlaxantlecala's should againe build the Citie, if conquerors, for the Spaniards; It was re-builded with a hundred thousand houses, fairer and stronger then before. The siege lasted three moneths, and had therein two hundred thousand Indians, nine hundred Spaniards, fourescore Horses, seuenteene Peeces of Ordinance, thirteene Galliots, and sixe thousand Canoas. Fifty Spaniards were slaine, and sixe Horses: Of the Mexicans, a hundred thousand, besides those which died of hunger and Pestilence.

This was effected *Anno* 1521. on the thirteenth day of August, which for that cause is
40 kept festiuall euery yeere. For the Description of the Country wherein Mexico is situate, *Cortes* in his *second Narration* to the Emperour saith, it is enuironed with hils: (He telleth of some hils also in his iourney, wherein diuers of his people died with cold) in the middest is a plaine of 70. leagues compasse, and therein two lakes which extend the circuit of fifty leagues; the one salt, which ebbeth and floweth, (an argument for *Patrizius* his opinion that salt water is a chiefe cause of that vicissitude of ebbing and flowing, in the Ocean) the other fresh: When the Water of the salt Lake increaseth, it runneth like a violent streame into the fresh Lake, which when it increaseth, is repaired againe by the like issue of this into the former.

Nunno di Guzman, p hath written his expedition into Mechoacan and other Countries
50 of New-Spaine 1530. subduing and taking possession for the Emperour: Hee found some of them Sodomites, others Sacrificers of mens flesh, and some closely practising this butcherie after they had professed themselues Christians: none of them which durst looke a Horse in the face, but were afraid, that that Beast would eate them. The seuerall peoples by him reckoned, would heere be tedious to name: which we may say of the like made by *Godoy* and *Alvarado*. q Of the customes of the Ancient Mexicanes, one of *Cortes* his Gentlemen hath written a Treatise r extant in *Ramusius*, wherein are described their Citie, Temples, Rites of Sacrifice, and the like; as after followeth out of him and others.

p *N. di Guz. ap Ram. vol. 3.*

q *Lit. P. Alvarado & Dieg. Godoy ap. Ram. vol. 3.*

r *Relat. del Tesmistitan.*

CHAP. X.

Of the ancient Inhabitants of New-Spaine, and the Historie of their Kings.

§. I.

The Mexican Exodus and first founding.

MAuing now declared the subuersion of this State and Kingdome by the Spaniards, I hold it not amiſe to looke backe vpon the firſt people which heere inhabited, with the beginnings and proceedings of the Mexican Empire. The [a] firſt Inhabitants of New-Spaine were very barbarous and ſauage, which liued onely by Hunting, and for this reaſon were called *Chichemecas*. They liued naked, ſolitary in the Mountaines, without Tillage, Policie, or any religious Ceremonies: their wiues followed the ſame Hunting exercite, leauing their children tied in a Panier of Reeds to the boughs of ſome tree. They did eat what they got in hunting, raw. They ate alſo Snakes and Lizards, which they offered likewiſe in ſacrifice to the Sunne, whom onely they woiſhipped, and that without any Image: they offered to him Fowles, from the Butter-fly to the Eagle. And ſome remnants of the like beaſtly men (as is ſaid before) are yet found, which doe great hurt, and will not, by either cunning or force of the Spaniards, be reduced to any other courſe. They ſeeme to haue learned the Sauage nature of the wilde Beaſts, of whom, and with whom they liue. By this meanes it came to paſſe, that this wilde Mountainous people left the beſt and moſt fertile part of the Country vnpeopled, which certaine remote Nations poſſeſſed, whom they called [b] *Nauatalcas*, for their ciuilitie. Theſe came from thoſe Northerne parts, which now they call new Mexico. The *Nauatalcas* paint their beginning and firſt Territorie in manner of Cauet (becauſe of their ſeuen Tribes, and men comming out of them. By the ſupputation of their Bookes, this departure was aboue eight hundred yeeres ſince, and (by reducing to our account) about the yeere of our Lord 720. Foureſcore yeeres they ſtayed on the way, the cauſe whereof they aſcribe to their Gods, which ſpake viſibly to them, and bade them ſeek new Lands, that had ſuch ſignes as they notified.

a Botero part. 1. lib. 5. Ioſ. Acoſta. l. 7. Lop. de Gom. part. 1. N. de Goſt.

b Nauatalcas ſignifieth well-ſpeakers.

Thus they proceeded in ſeeking thoſe ſignes, and peopled the beſt parts, ſtill remouing their habitations as they found more fertile Countries, leauing onely the aged, ſicke, and weary, with a few others, to remaine in the former. And by theſe leiſurely proceedings, they entred the land of Mexico, about the yeere 902. after our account. Thoſe ſeuen Nations came not all at once; but firſt, the Suchimilcos, next, the Chalcas, and thirdly, the Tepanetans, fourthly, thoſe of Teſcuco, after them the Tlallucans; the ſixt were the Tlaſcaltecans, which helped the Spaniards to conquer Mexico, and therefore are exempted from tribute to this day. Theſe expelled, as their Hiſtories ſay, certaine Gyants, whom in pretence of Friendſhip they had inuited to a banquet, and in their drunkennes ſtole away their weapons, and ſlew them. Neither doth this ſeeme a fable; for at this day are found dead mens bones, of incredible bigneſſe. I ſaw a tooth (ſaith *Aceſta*) at Mexico, in the yeere 1586. as bigge as the fiſt of a man, and according to this, all the reſt was proportionable. Three hundred and two yeeres after the firſt tranſmigration, thoſe of the ſeuenth Caue or Line arriued, which is the Mexican Nation: they woiſhipped the Idoll *Vitzilputzli*, and the Diuel ſpake & gouerned this Nation: He promiſed to make them Lords ouer all, which the other ſix Nations poſſeſſed, and to giue them a Land plentifull in riches: whereupon they went forth carrying their Idoll with them in a Coffer of Reeds, ſupported by foure of their principall Prieſts, with whom he talked, and communicated his Oracles and Directions. He likewiſe gaue them Lawes, and taught them the Ceremonies and Sacrifices they ſhould obſerue. And euen as the pillar of Cloud and Fire conducted the Iſraelites in their paſſage thorow the Wilderneſſe, ſo this apiſh Diuell gaue them notice when to aduance forwards, and when to ſtay. The firſt thing they did wherefoeuer they came, was to build a houſe or Tabernacle for their *Vitzilputzli*, which they ſet alway in the middeſt of their Campe, and there placed the Arke in the middeſt of the Altar. This done, they ſowed the Land, and if their God commanded to gather, they did ſo, and if to raiſe their Campe, they obeyed, leauing the aged, ſicke, and weary, to gather their fruits, and to dwell there. The chiefe Captaine whom they followed, was called *Mexi*, whence came the name of their [c] City and Nation. Their Idoll perſwaded them, when ſome were bathing themſelues in certaine Lakes, to remoue

c Mexico and Mexicans. The Mexican picture-hiſtory ſaith of Mexiti (the name of the people) Mexico was ſo called.

remoue the Campe closely, and steale away their clothes: whereat they which were thus forsaken, changed their language and manner of life, retaynng alway their hatred to the Mexicans. They peopled the Prouince Mechouacan: from hence to Mexico is fifty leagues and vpon the way is Malinalco, which they say was peopled by a Witch and her familie, whom by the commandement of their God they left behinde, closly remouing the armie by night. They flayed in a place called Tuta, where by stepping a Riuer, they drowned a Plaine, and planted it round with Willowes and other trees; and many liking the place, talked of staying there: whereat their God offended, threatned the Priests, and in the night slew those which had consulted of staying. Their hearts were found pulled out, and their stomackes opened; which, after that, they obserued in their Sacrifices. The Mexicans, by the aduice of their Idoll, proceeded, and by force made way thorow the Chalcas, and sent to the Lord of Culhuacan, who granted them the place of *Tizaapán* to dwell in, which was full of Snakes and venomous Beasts, which by the helpe of their God they tamed. He would not suffer them to stay there, but commanded them to proceed, and to seeke forth a Woman, whom they should name the Goddesse of Discord. Whereupon they sent to the King of Culhuacan, to demand his Daughter to bee Queene of the Mexicans, and Mother of their God, who easily condescended, and sent his daughter gorgeously attired: The same night she arriued, by order of their God, shee was murthered and flayed, and a yong man was couered with her skin, with her apparell thereon; and being placed neere the Idoll, she was consecrated a Goddesse and Mother of their God; they euer after worshipping the same, making an Idol which they call *Teoco*, that is, *Our Grand-mother*. The King of Culhuacan hereupon warred against them, and chased them out of those parts, by which meanes they came to the place where Mexico now is. Heere certaine old Priests or Sorcerers, entring into a place full of Water-Lillies, they met with a very faire and cleare current of Water, with Trees, Medowes, Fish, and other things: all very white, which were the signes their God had giuen them of their promised Land. In the night following, *Vitzilpuztli* appeared in a dreame to an ancient Priest, saying, That they should goe seeke out a Tunall in the Lake, which grew out of a stone, vpon which they should see an Eagle feeding on small Birds, which they should hold for the place where their City should be built, to become famous through the world. Hereupon, the next day they all assembled, and diuiding themselues into bands, made that search with great diligence and deuotion.

Beginning of humane sacrifices.

In their search they met with the former Water-course, not white (as it was then) but red like bloud, diuiding it selfe into two streames, one of which was an obscure Azure. At last they espied the Eagle, with wings displayed, to ward the Sunne, compassed about with many rich feathers of diuers colours, and holding in his Tallons a goodly Bird. At this sight they fell on their knees, and worshipped the Eagle, with great demonstrations of ioy and thankes to *Vitzilpuztli*. For this cause they called the Citie, which there they founded, Tenoxtitlan, which signifies *Tunal on a stone*; and till this day carry in their Armes an Eagle vpon a Tunal, with a bird in his Tallon.

g Mexico Tenoxtitlan.

The next day following, by common consent, they made an Heremitage, adioyning to the Tunal of the Eagle, that the Arke of their God might rest there, till they might haue meanes to build him a sumptuous Temple. This they made of Flagges and Turfes, couered with Straw. Afterwards they consulted to buy of their neighbours Stone, Timber, Lime, in exchange of Fish, Fowles, Frogges, and other things which they hunted vpon the Lake: by which meanes they procuring necessaries, built a Chappell of Lime and Stone, and laboured to fill vp part of the Lake with rubbish. The Idoll commanded, that they should diuide themselues into foure principall quarters about this house, and each part build therein to which he enioyned certaine Gods to his appointment, called *Calpulteco*, which is, *Quarter Gods*. This was the beginning of Mexico.

Cap. II.

The Historie of eight of their first Kings.

THis diuision seemed not equall to some of the Ancients, who valued their desert farre aboue their allotted portion, who therefore separated themselues, and went to Tlateduloco: whose practices against the Mexicans caused them to chuse a King, to which Souraigntie was chosen *Acamapitzli*, Nephew to the King of Culhuacan, and of the Mexican bloud by the Fathers side. Him by Embassage they demanded, and obtained in the name of their God, with this answere from the King of Culhuacan: *Let my Grand-child goe to serue your God, and be his Lieutenant, to rule and gouerne his Creatures, by*

Acamapitzli the first King of Mexico.

whom we liue; who is the Lord of Night, Day, and Windes: Let him goe and bee Lord of the Water and Land, and possesse the Mexican Nations, &c.

[a] Many of these Orations are expressed in Acosta seuenth booke at large, full of witty inuentions and Rhetorical flourishes.

Hee was solemnely welcomed by the *Mexicans: welcome thou art* (saith an [a] Orator vnto him in their name) *to this poore House and City, amongst the Weedes and Mud, where thy poore Fathers, Grand-fathers, and Kinsfolkes endure what is pleaseth the Lord of things created. Remember, Lord, thou commest to bee our defence, and to bee the resemblance of* Vitzliputzli, *not to rest thy selfe, but to endure a new charge*: with many words to that effect, expressed in the Mexican Histories, reserued by tradition; the children to that end learning them by heart, and these being as Presidents to them which learned the Art Oratorie. After this, they were sworne, and hee crowned. The Crowne was like that of the Dukes of Venice. His name *Acamapitzli*, signifieth a handfull of Reedes, and therefore they carrie in their Armories a hand, holding many Arrowes of Reedes.

Mouing Garden.

The Mexicans at this time were tributaries to the Tapanecans, whose chiefe Citie was Azcapuzalco: who iudging according to the nature of Enuie and Suspition, that they were so much weaker, how much the stronger they saw their neighbours, thought to oppresse them by a strange policie, in imposing an vncouth, and (in thew) impossible tribute: which was, that they should bring the Tapunecan King a Garden, planted and growing in the water. In this their distresse, *Vitzliputzli* taught them to doe it, by casting earth vpon Reedes and Grasse laid in the Lake, and planting in this mouing Garden, Maiz, Figs, Gourds, and other things, which at the time appointed they carried growing and ripe: a thing often since proued in that Lake, emulous no lesse of that glorie, to be accounted one of the *Wonders* in that *New World*, then those pensill Gardens, towred vp in the Ayre at Babylon, both heere and there the reason of Man according to his naturall priuiledge, subiecting to his vse the most rebellious Elements of Ayre and Water.

Vitzilouitli the second King.

Acamapitzli, the Mexican King, after he had raigned fortie yeeres, dyed, leauing it to their choice to chuse his Successor. They chose his Sonne *Vitzilouitli*, which signifieth a rich Feather: they anointed him with an Oyntment, which they call Diuine, being the same wherewith they anointed their Idoll.

[b] *Lop. de Gom. part. 1.*

Of their Coronation, thus [b] *Lopez de Gomara* saith, that this was done by the High Priest, attired in his *Pontificalibus*, attended with many others in Surplices; the Oyntment was as blacke as Inke. They blessed him, and sprinkled him foure times with Holy-Water, made at the time of the Consecration of their God. Then they put vpon his head a Cloth, painted with the bones and skuls of dead men, clothed him with a blacke garment, and vpon that a blue, both painted with figures of skuls and bones. Then did they hang on him Laces, and bottles of Powders, whereby he was deliuered from diseases and Witchcrafts. Then did he offer Incense to *Vitzliputzli*, and the High Priest tooke his Oath, for the maintenance of their Religion, to maintayne Iustice and the Lawes, to cause the Sunne to giue his light, and the Clouds to raine, and the earth to be fruitfull, &c. Lastly, followed the acclamations of the people, crying, *God saue the King*, with dances, &c.

Chimalpopoca. 3.

He being crowned, and hauing receiued homage of his Subiects, obtained the King of Azcapuzalco his daughter to wife, by whom he had a sonne called *Chimalpopoca*, and procured a relaxation of Tribute from his father in Law. Hee was deuout in his Superstitions: hauing raigned thirteene yeeres, he dyed. His son then but ten yeeres old, was chosen in his roome, but was soone after slaine by the Inhabitants of Azcapuzalco. The Mexicans inraged with this iniury, assembled themselues, and an Orator, among many other words, tels them, *That the Sunne is eclipsed and darkened for a time, but will returne suddenly in the choice of another King*. They agreed vpon *Izcoatl*, which signifieth a Snake of Rasors, the sonne of *Acamapitzli* their first King. The common people were earnest with this new King, for peace with the Tapanecans, for the obtaining whereof, they would carry their God in his Litter for an intercessor. This was hindered by *Tlacaelleo* the Kings Nephew, a resolute and valiant yong man, who also with perill of his life, vndertooke an Embassage to Azcapuzalco, and there defied the King, anointing him with the ointment of the dead, after their manner. The Commons of Mexico were herewith offended, and to pacifie them, the King indented with them, that if he lost the Field, they should eate him and his Nobles; they on the other side promising, if he did ouercome, to become his Tributaries (for before they enioyed much freedome) and to labour in his Fields and Houses, and to become his seruants in Warre & Peace. In fine, such was the valour of *Tlacaelleo* the Generall, that the enemies were ouerthrowne, their Citie sacked, and the remainder of them made tributarie, the lands and goods of the conquered being diuided among the Conquerors, and some reserued to each Quarter of Mexico, for the vse of their Sacrifices.

Izcoatl. 4.

Cuyacan had the next place in the Mexican Conquests: who hauing inuited the Mexicans to a banquet, in the end thereof sent for the last seruice, Women habits, which they forced

forced them to put on: but *Izcoalt* and *Tlacaelleo* made them know, by their ruine, the Manhood of the Mexicans. They subdued also the Suchimilchos, and Cuitlauaca, a Citie in the Lake, Tescuco yeelded it selfe. *Izcoalt* after twelue yeeres died, and *Motezuma* the first was chosen in his stead. *Motezuma* the first King.

Presently after his Election, they conducted him to the Temple with a great traine, where, before the *Diuine Hearth*, (so called in regard of the continuall fire there kept) they enthronized him. The King there drew bloud from his eares and legs with a Griffons talons, as a Sacrifice, and was congratulated with many Orations of the Priests, Ancients, and Captaines. And whereas before they had accustomed, in their Elections to make great Feasts and Dances, and wasted many Lights; He brought in the custome, personally to make Warre in some Prouince, thence to procure Sacrifices, to feast their Gods and Men. This he performed at Chalco, from whence he brought many Captiues, which on the day of his Coronation were sacrificed and eaten. At this Feast all his Tributes were brought in with great solemnitie, each Prouince marching by it selfe, besides innumerable Presents. All Commers were bountifully entertained, and the poore were clad with new garments, giuen them by the King. The Chalcas had taken a brother of *Motezuma*, and would haue made him their King, but he enioying them to make a high Scaffold, ascended thereon, and telling them the Gods would not permit, that to be a King, he should be a Traytor vnto his Country, cast downe himselfe; whose death *Motezuma* reuenged, with the ruine of that whole Nation, conquering further vnto the North and South Seas, by the counsell and courage of *Tlacaelleo*. This King instituted new Ceremonies, and encreased the number of the Priests: hee built the great Temple of *Vitzilipuzcli*, and sacrificed great numbers of men at the Dedication. Having raigned eight and twentie yeeres, he died.

Tlacaelleo was chosen his Successor by the foure Deputies, and the two Lords of Tescuco and Tacuba (these were the Electors) but refused the Empire, as being fitter for the common good, as an instrument to another, then if himselfe weylded the Scepter. At his nomination they chose *Tiocoic*, sonne of the late King, and piercing his nostrils, for an ornament put an Emerald therein. He, in seeking Captiues for the solemnitie of his Coronation, lost more of his owne people, and after foure yeeres was poisoned by his male-content Subiects. *Tiocoic.6.*

Axayaca his brother succeeded, altogether of another spirit. In his time died *Tlacaelleo*, chiefe Author of the Mexican greatnesse, whom before in his age, they vsed to carry in his Chaire on mens shoulders, to Councell. Hee was buried more sumptuously then any of the Kings, and his Sonne was made Generall for the warres. *Axayaca* conquered Tequantepec, two hundred leagues from Mexico, thence to furnish the bloudie solemnities of his Coronation. Hee added to his Conquests Guatulco on the South Sea: in single combate ouercame the Lord of Tlatelulco, and subdued those Mexican-enemies of the Mexicans, setting fire on their Citie and Temple. After seuen yeeres hee died, and *Antzol* the eight King was chosen. Hee punished the pride of Quauatlan, a rich Prouince, with those Captiues, to celebrate his Coronation-Feast, and extended his Dominion to Guatimala, three hundred leagues from Mexico. Hee much adorned his Royall Citie, pulling downe the old houses, and in their roome erected fairer. Hee set in a course of water to the Citie, because that of the Lake was muddie. But because they of Guyoacan vsed these waters, the chiefe man of that Citie, which was a great Magician, sought to hinder it, whereby the King being prouoked, sent to attach him: Hee escaped by his *Proteus* Arts; now appearing like an Eagle, the second time like a Tygre, the third like a Serpent. But at last hee was taken and strangled, and the Mexicans forced a Channell, whereby the water might passe to their Citie, the Priests meane-while casting Incense on the bankes, sacrificing the blood of Quailes; others winding their Cornets: and one of the chiefe went attired in a habit like to the *Goddesse of the Waters*, which was saluted and welcommed by all the people. All which things are painted in the Annales of Mexico: which Booke is now in the Vatican Librarie at Rome. Thus he enuironed the Citie with water, like another Venice; and hauing raigned eleuen yeeres, dyed. *Axayaca.7.* *Antzol.8.*

a And Mafiet *Haiset* hath a copie of it, translated into English. It was in the Mexican language, sent to *Charles* the fift, intercepted by *Florimus*.

§. II.

Of MOTEZVMA, *and other Rarities of the Mexican Story.*

MOTEZVMA the second, was chosen, who before his Soueraigntie, was of graue and stayed disposition, much addicted to his deuotions. Hee retired himselfe into a Chappell, appointed for him in the Temple of *Vitzilipuzcli*, where (they say) the Idoll spake to him; wherein also he hid himselfe, after hee had intelligence of this *Motezuma.9.*

this Election. From whence he was led to the *Hearth of their Gods*, where hee sacrificed, with drawing bloud from his eares, and the calues of his legges. They attired him with the Royall Ornaments, and piercing his nostrils, hung thereat a rich Emerald. Being seated in his Throne, the King of Tescuco, one of the Electors, made an Eloquent Oration, which *Ioseph Acosta* hath set downe word by word, and deseruеth a roome here, if our hastie Pilgrimage would suffer.

b *Lib. 7. cap. 20.*

This *Motezuma* commanded, that no Plebeian should seruе him in any Office in his house prouiding Knights and Nobles for that purpose. His Coronation was solemnized with Dances, Comedies, Banquets, Lights, and other pompe: the sacrificed Captiues were of a farre Province toward the North Sea, which he subdued. *Mechouacan*, *Tlascalla*, and *Tapeaco*, 10 neuer yeelded to the Mexicans; which *Motezuma* told *Cortes*, that hee spared for the vse of his sacrifices, and the exercise of his Souldiers. He laboured to be respected and worshipped as a God. It was death for any Plebeian to looke him in the face: Hee neuer set his foot on the Ground, but was alwaies carried on the shoulders of Noble-men, and if he lighted, they laid rich Tapestrie, whereon he did goe. He neuer put on one Garment twice, nor vsed one Vessell, or Dish aboue once. Hee was rigorous in execution of his Lawes, and for that purpose would disguise himselfe, to see how they were executed, and offer bribes to the Iudges, to prouoke them to iniustice, which, if they excepted, cost them their liues, though they were his kinsmen or brethren. His fall is before declared: it shall not be anslie here to mention some prodigious fore-runners of the same. The Idoll of Cholula, called *Quetzacoalt*, 20 declared, That a strange People came to possesse his Kingdome. The King of Tescuco, a great Magician, and many Sorcerers, told him as much. The King shut vp the Sorcerers in prison where they vanished presently: wherefore hee exercised that rage on their wiues and children, which he had intended against them. He sought to appease his angrie Gods by Sacrifices, and therefore would haue remoued a great stone, which by no humane industrie would be moued, as refusing his atonement. Strange voices were heard, accompanied with Earthquakes and swellings of the waters. A prodigious Bird, of the bignesse of a Crane, was taken; which on his head had (as it were) a Glasse representing armed men, and in the kings presence vanished. A stranger thing befell a poore man, who was taken vp by an Eagle, and carried into a certaine Caue, where he set him downe, pronouncing these words; *Most* 30 *mightie Lord, I haue brought him whom thou hast commanded.* There he saw one like the King, lying asleepe; touching whom, hauing received threatning Prophesies, he was againe by that former Pursuiuant placed where he had bin taken vp. These things, as Diuellish illusions abusing God's Prouidence and Iustice, and imitating his Power, to rob him of his glorie, deserue to be mentioned.

Ominous prodigies.

Motezuma hauing intelligence of *Cortes* his arriuall, was much troubled, and conferring with his Councell, they all said, that without doubt, their great and ancient Lord *Quetzacoalt*, who had said, that he would returne from the East, whither he was gone, had now fulfilled his promise, and was come. Therefore did he send Embassadors with presents vnto *Cortes*, acknowledging him for *Quetzacoalt*, (sometime their Prince, now esteemed a God) 40 and himselfe his Lieutenant.

The Mexican Historie described in Pictures, and sent to *Charles* the fift, (which I haue seene with Master *Hakluit*) in the first part shewеth their first Expedition and Plantation in this place; then all drowned with water, with great bigs, and some dry bushie places: their Kalendar, and the names, yeeres, and conquests of their Kings. In the second part their tributes are described; the particulars whereof are, reparations of certaine Churches; so many baskets of Maiz grown d (holding half a bushell) and Almonds of Cacao, baskets of Oliaspinoli, mantles, paid euery fourth day; and once a yeere Armours and Targets of Feathers; all this was paid by the Citie Tlatilulco. And in like proportion euery Towne and Nation subiect, was to pay the Naturall or Artificiall commodities thereof; as Armours 50 garnished with feathers, rich mantles, white, or of other colours, Eagles skins, beames of timber, boords, salt made in long moulds for the Lords of Mexico onely; pots of honie, Naguas and Huipiles (which were attire for women) Copale for perfume, Cotton, Wool, Red-Sea-shels, Xicharas in which they drinke Cacao, others full of Gold in powder, each containing two handfuls, plates of Gold, three quarters of a yard long, and foure fingers broad, as thicke as parchment; Yellow Varnish to paint themselues, Bells, and Hatchets of Copper, Turkesse-Stones; Chalke, Lime, Deere-skins; Cochinille; Feathers, Frizoles, Targets of Gold Diadems, Borders, Beades of Gold, Beades of Gemmes, Tygres-skins, Amber, Anis or Westo Indian Pepper, &c.

Mexican Tributes from Tlatilulco, and from other places.

* *R. Tomson. of Hak.*

* *B. Hauites ap. Hak. 100 Histop.*

Concerning the State of Mexico vnder the Spaniards, *Robert Tomson*, who was there 60 about the yeere 1555, saith, that then it was thought there were a thousand and fiue hundred households of Spaniards, and aboue three hundred thousand Indians. The * Citie is enuironed

ned with a Lake, and the Lake also with Mountaines about thirty leagues in compasse; the raines falling from these Hils, cause the Lake.

In this City resideth the Viceroy, and heere the highest Indian Courts are kept. There are weekly three Faires or Markets, abounding with plenty of Commodities at a cheape price. Many Riuers fall into the Lake, but none goe out. The Indians know how to drowne the City, and would haue practised it, had not the Conspirators beene taken and hanged. The Indians here are good Artificers, Gold-smiths, Copper-smiths, Black-smiths, Carpenters, Shoomakers, Taylors, Sadlers, Embroderers, and of all other Sciences, and worke exceeding cheape, liuing of a little. They will goe two or three leagues to a Faire, carrying
10 not aboue a penny-worth of Commodities, and yet maintaine themselues thereby.

Miles[t] *Philips* saith, that when Sir *Francis Drake* was on the South Sea, the Viceroy caused a generall muster to be made of all the Spaniards in Mexico, and found aboue seuen thousand housholds, and three thousand singlemen, and of Mestizoes twentie thousand.

Master *Chilton* [u] testifieth, that euery Indian payeth tribute to the King twelue Reals of Plate, and a Hauneg of Maiz (sue Haunegs make a quarter English) and euery Widow halfe so much. And all their children, aboue fifteene yeeres old, pay after the same rate. He hath great gaine by his fishs, and by the Popes Bulls: this leaden ware was worth to the King at first aboue three Millions of Gold yeerely. The greatnesse of exactions caused two Rebellions whiles he was there, and the King will not suffer them to haue Oyle or Wine there
20 growing, although the Earth would prodigally repay them, that they may still haue need of Spaine. *Tlaxcalla*, for their merits in the conquest of Mexico, as before is shewed, is free: only they pay a handfull of Wheate a man in signe of subiection: but some later encrochers haue forced them to till at their owne charge, as much ground as their tribute would amount to. There are in it two hundred thousand Indians

Some of the wild people in New Spaine are deadly enemies to the Spaniards, and eate as many as they get of them. *John Chilton* fell into their hands, but being sicke and leane, they thought (as a Captiue Wench told him) that he had the Pox, and was but vnwholsome food, and so let him depart. It is an ill wind that blowes none to good: sicknesse the Harbenger
30 of death, was to him a preseruer of life.

Mexico is now an [x] Vniuersitie, and therein are taught those Sciences which are read in our Vniuersities of Europe. This Vniuersitie was [y] there founded by *Antony Mendoza*; and King *Philip* erected a Colledge of Iesuites, *Anno* 1577. Mexico is an Archbishopricke. There [z] bee many Spanish Colonies or Plantations, Compostella, Colima, Guadalaxara, Mechocan, Citie of Angele, and others: whereof diuers are Episcopall Sees. *Antonio Herrera* reckoneth in this and other parts of America, fiue Archbishoprickes, twentie seuen Bishoprickes, two Vniuersities, foure hundred Monasteries and Hospitals innumerable.

In Guastecan, not farre from Panuco, is a Hill, from whence spring two Fountaynes, one of blacke Pitch, the other of red, very hot. To speake largely of New Gallicia, Mechuacan, Guastecan, and other Regions, would not be much to the Readers delight, and lesse to
40 to my purpose.

t *Miles Philips.*

u *Iohn Chilton.*

x *Boterio.*

y *Gasp. Ensita.*

z *Ortel. Thes.*

CHAP. XI.

Of the Idols and Idolatrous Sacrifices of New Spaine.

50

§. I.

Of their Gods.

THe Indians (as *Acosta* a obserueth) had no name proper vnto God, but vse the Spanish word *Dios*, fitting it to the accent of the Cusean or Mexican Tongues. Yet did they acknowledge a supreme power called *Vitzilipuztli*, terming him the most puissant, and Lord of all things, to whom they erected at Mexico, the most sumptuous Temple in the Indies. After the *Supreme God* they worshipped the Sun, and therefore called *Cortes* (as he writ to the Em-
60 perour) Sonne of the Sunne. That *Vitzilipuztli* [b] was an Image of Wood, like to a Man, set vpon an Azure-coloured stoole in a Brankard or Litter; at euery corner was a piece of wood

a Naturall and Morall hist. of the Indies. *lib. 5. cap. 3.*

b *Hernando Cortes. Acosta. l. 5. c. 9. Vitzilipuztli.*

wood like a Serpents head. The stoole signified that he was set in Heauen. He had the forehead Azure, and a band of Azure vnder the nose, from one eare to the other. Vpon his head hee had a rich plume of feathers couered on the top with Gold: hee had in his left hand a white Target, with the figures of fiue Pine Apples, made of white Feathers, set in a crosse; and from aboue issued forth a Crest of Gold: At his sides he had foure Darts, which the Mexicans say, had beene sent from Heauen. In his right hand hee had an Azured staffe, cut in fashion of a wauing Snake. All these ornaments had their mysticall sense. The name of *Vitzsiliputzli* signifies *the left hand of a shining feather.* Hee was set vpon an high Altar in a small boxe, well couered with linnen Clothes, Iewels, Feathers, and ornaments of Gold: and for the greater veneration he had alwayes a Curtain before him. Ioyning to the Chappel of this Idoll, there was a Pillar of lesse work, and not so wel beautified, where there was another Idoll called *Tlaloc.* These two were alwayes together, for that they held themas companions, & of equal power. There was another Idoll in Mexico much esteemed, which was the [c] God of Repentance, and of Iubilees and Pardons for their sinnes. Hee was called *Tezcalipuca*, made of a blacke shining stone, attired after their manner, with some Echuike deuices; it had Earings of Gold and Siluer, and through the nether lip a small Canon of Christall, halfe a foot long, in which they sometimes put an Azure Feather, sometimes a greene, so resembling a Turquois or Emerald: it had the haire bound vp with a haire-lace of Gold, at the end whereof did hang an Eare of Gold, with two Fire-brands of smoke painted therein, signifying that he heard the Prayers of the afflicted, and of sinners. Betwixt the two eares hung a number of small Herons. He had a Iewell hanging at his necke, so great, that it couered all his stomack: vpon his armes, Bracelets of Gold; at his nauill a rich greene stone, and in his left hand a Fan of precious Feathers of greene, azure, and yellow, which came forth of a Looking Glasse of Gold, signifying that he saw all things done in the World. In his right hand he held foure Darts as the Ensignes of his Iustice, for which cause they feared him most. At his festiuall they had pardon of their sinnes. They accounted him the God of Famine, Drought, Barrennesse, and Pestilence. They painted him in another forme, sitting in great Maiestie on a stoole, compassed in with a red Curtaine, painted and wrought with the heads and bones of dead men. In the left hand was a Target with fiue Pines, like vnto Pine Apples of Cottong and in the right hand a little Dart, with a threatning countenance, and the arme stretched out, as if he would cast it: and from the Target came foure Darts. The countenance expressed anger, the body was all painted blacke, and the head full of Quailes Feathers *Quecalcouatl* was their God of the Aire.

In Cholula [d] they worshipped the God of Merchandize, called *Quetzaalcoalt*, which had the forme of a Man, but the visage of a little Bird with a red bill, and aboue, a combe full of Warts, hauing also rankes of teeth, and the tongue hanging out. It carried on the head a pointed Mitre of painted paper, a Sithe in the hand, and many toyes of Gold on the legs: it had about it Gold, Siluer, Iewels, Feathers, and habits of diuers colours: and was set aloft in a spacious place in the Temple. All this his furniture was significant. The name importeth Colour of a rich Feather. No maruell if this God had many Suters, seeing *Gaine is both God and godlinesse to the most*; the whole World admiring and adoring this *Mammon* or *Quetzaalcoalt. Tlaloc* was their God of Water: to whom they sacrificed for Raine.

They had also their Goddesses, [e] the chiefe of which was *Tezi*, which is to say, *Our Grand Mother*, of which is spoken before; she was flayed by the command of *Vitzsiliputzli*, and from hence they learned to flay men in Sacrifice, and to clothe themselues with the skins of the dead. One of the Goddesses, which they worshipped, had a Sonne who was a great Hunter, whom they of *Tlascalla* afterwards tooke for a God; being themselues addicted much to that exercise. They therefore made a great Feast vnto this Idoll, as shal after follow.

They had another strange kind of Idoll, which was not an Image but a true Man. For they tooke a Captiue, and before they sacrificed him, they gaue him the name of the Idoll, to whom he should be sacrificed, apparelling him also with the same ornaments. And during the time that this representation lasted (which was for a yeere in some feasts, sixe moneths in some, in others lesse) they worshipped him in the same manner, as they did their God; he in the meane time eating, drinking, and making merry. When hee went through the streets, the people came forth to worship him, bringing their Almes with children and sicke folkes, that hee might cure and blesse them, suffering him to doe all things at his pleasure; onely he was accompanied with ten or twelue men, lest he should flee. And hee (to the end hee might bee reuerenced as hee passed) sometimes sounded on a small Flute. The Feast being come, this fat Foole was killed, opened, and eaten. The Massilians are said [f] to haue vsed the like order, nourishing One a whole yeere with the purest meats, and after with many Ceremonies to leade him through the City and sacrifice him.

Lopez [g] *de Gomara* writeth, that the Mexicans had two thousand Gods, [h] but the chiefe were

Tlaloc.

[c] *Gomar part. 1 cap.* him the God of Prouidence.

Tezcalipuca.

[d] *Cholula.*

Quetzaalcoalt.

[e] *Gomar part. 1 Tezi.*

[f] *Ian Dousa. Praecid. ad Arbit. l. 1. c. 1.*

[g] *Lop. de Gom. part. 1.*

[h] They had their *Venus* and their *Bacchus*, & *Mars*, and other such Deities in Mexican appellations, as the Heathen, Greekes, and Romans, as after shall appeare.

were *Vaziliputzli* and *Tezcatlipuca*. These two were accounted Brethren: There was another God, who had a great Image placed on the top of the Idols Chappell, made of all that Countrey seeds, growndd, and made in paste, tempered with childrens bloud, and Virgins sacrificed, whose hearts were plucked out of their opened brests, and offered as first fruits to that Idoll. It was consecrated by the Priests with great solemnitie, all the Citizens being present, many deuout persons sticking in the dowie Image Gold and Iewels: after which consecration no Secular person might touch that Image, nor come in his Chappell. They renue this Image with new dow many times, and *Otorque quaterque* blessed man bee that can get any Relikes of him. The Souldiers thought themselues hereby safe in the Warres. At this consecration also a Vessell of water was hallowed with many Ceremonies, and kept at the foot of the Altar for the Kings Coronation, and to blesse the Captaines that went to the warres, with a draught of it.

§. II.

Of their sacrifices of Men.

NExt after their Gods it followeth to speake of their [i] godlesse Sacrifices: wherein they surmounted all the Nations of the World in beastly butcheries. The persons they sacrificed were [k] Captiues: to get which, they made their warres, rather seeking in their victories to take then to kill. Their manner of Sacrificing was this. They assembled such as should be sacrificed in the Pallisadoe of dead mens skuls, of which we shall after speake, where they vsed a certaine Ceremonie at the foot of the Pallisadoe; they placed a great guard about them. Presently there stept forth a Priest attired with a shore Surplesse full of tassels beneath, who came from the top of the Temple, bearing an Idoll made of Wheate and Mays mingled with Honey, which had the eyes thereof made of greene Glasse, and the teeth of the graines of Mays. He descended the steps of the Temple with all speed, and ascended by a little Ladder vp a great stone, planted vpon a high Terrasse in the midst of the Court. This stone was called *Quauxi-calli*, that is, the stone of Eagle: as he went vp and came downe, still he embraced his Idoll. Then went hee vp to the place, where those were which should be sacrificed, shewing his Idoll to euery one in particular, saying vnto them, *This is your God.* This done; hee descended by the other side of the staires, and all such as should die, went in Procession to the place where they should bee sacrificed, where they found the Ministers ready for that office. Six of the Priests were appointed to this execution; foure to hold the hands and feet of him that should be sacrificed, the fift to hold his head, the sixt to open the stomacke, and pull out his heart. They called them *Chachalmua*, that is, the Ministers of holy things. It was a high dignitie wherein they succeeded their Progenitors.

i *Acosta l. 5. & Relat. del Tamplistan.*

k So (some say) from the like practice of the Ancients *Victima* was so called, and *hostia quasi à victis, & ab hoste.*

The sixt, which killed the Sacrifice, was as high Priest, or Bishop, whose name was different according to the difference of times and solemnities. Their habits also differed according to the times. The name of their chiefe dignitie was *Papa* and *Topilcin*. Their habit and Robe was a red Curtain with tassels below, a Crowne of rich Feathers, Greene, White, and Yellow vpon his head, and at his eares like pendants of Gold, wherein were set greene stones, and vnder the lip vpon the midst of the beard, hee had a Peece like vnto a small Canon of an Azured stone.

Papa the name of the Mexicans high Priest.

The Sacrificer came with his face and hands shining blacke: the other fiue had their haire much curled, and tyed vp with Laces of Leather, bound about the midst of the head: vpon their forehead they carried small Roundelets of Paper painted about with diuers colours, and they were attired in a Dalmatike Robe of white wrought with blacke, in this attire representing the Deuill. The Soueraigne Priest carried a great Knife in his hand of a large and sharpe flint, another carried a coller of wood wrought in forme of a Snake, all put themselues in order before a Pyramidall stone which was directly against the doore of the Chappell of their Idoll. This stone was so pointed, that the man which was to bee sacrificed, being layed thereon vpon his backe, did bend in such sort, as letting the Knife but fall vpon his stomacke, it opened very easily in the middest. Then did the Guard cause them to mount vp certaine large staires in ranke to this place, and as euery one came in their order, the six Sacrificers tooke him, one by one foot, another by the other; and one by one hand, another by the other, all naked, and cast him on his backe vpon this pointed stone: where the fift of them put the coller of wood about his necke, and the high Priest opened his stomacke with the Knife with a strange dexteritie and nimbletie, pulling out his heart with his hands, the which he shewed smoking vnto the Sun, to whom he did offer this heart:

and

and presently he turned towards the Idoll, and did cast the heart at his face, and then cast away the body, tumbling it downe the staires of the Temple, there being not two foot space betwixt the stone and the first step. In this sort they sacrificed them all one afteranother. Their Masters, or such as had taken them, tooke vp the bodies and carried them away, and diuiding them amongst them, did eate them. There were euer forty or fifty at the least, thus sacrificed. The Neighbour Nations did the like, imitating the Mexicans in this sacred Butchery.

There was another kind of Sacrifice, which they made in diuers Feasts, called *Racaxipo Velazli*, which is as much as the flaying of men, because they flayed the Sacrifice (as is said) and therewith apparelled a man appointed to that end. This man [1] went dancing and leaping through all the Houses and Market places of the Citie, euery one being forced to offer something vnto him: which, if any refused, he would strike him ouer the face with the corner of the skin, defiling him with the congealed bloud. This continued till the skinne did stinke, during which time much Almes was gathered, which they imployed in necessaries for their deuotions. In many of these Feasts they made a challenge betweene him that did Sacrifice, and him that should bee sacrificed, thus: They tied the slaue by one foote to a wheele of stone, giuing him a Sword and Target in his hands to defend himselfe: then stepped forth the other armed in like manner. And if he, that should be Sacrificed, defended himselfe valiantly against the other hee was freed, and was reputed a famous Captaine; but if he were vanquished, he was Sacrificed on that stone whereto he was tied.

[1] *Gomara* saith, that the ancient persons, & sometimes the King himselfe, would put on this skin, being of a principall Captiue.

They euery yeere gaue one slaue to the Priests, to represent their Idoll. At his first entry into the office after he had beene well washed, they adorned him with the Idols ornaments and name, as before is said: and if he escaped before his time of Sacrifice was expired, the chiefe of his Guard was substituted to that representation and Sacrifice. Hee had the most honourable lodging in all the Temple, where hee did eate and drinke, and whither all the chiefe Ministers came to serue and honour him: hee was accompanied with Noblemen though the streets. At night they put him into a strong Prison, and at the appointed Feast sacrificed him.

The Deuill (*a* = *Murtherer from the beginning*) suggested to the Priests, when there seemed defect of these Sacrifices, to goe to their Kings, telling them that their Gods died for hunger, and therefore should be remembred. Then assembled they their people to warres to furnish their bloudy Altars.

a Iohn 8.44.

There happened a strange accident in one of these Sacrifices, reported by men of worthy credit, That the Spaniards beholding these Sacrifices, a young man, whose heart was newly plucked out, and himselfe tumbled downe the staires, when he came to the bottome, he said to the Spaniards in his Language; *Knights they haue slaine me.* The Indians themselues grew weary of these cruell Rites, and therefore they easily embraced the Spaniards Christianitie: Yea, *Cortes* writ to the Emperour *Charles*, that those of *Mechoacan* sent to him for his Law, being weary of their owne, as not seeming good vnto them.

Some of the Spaniards [a] were thus sacrificed at Tescuco, and their Horse-skinnes tanned in the haire, and hung vp with the Horse-shooes in the great Temple, and next to them the Spaniards garments for a perpetuall memory. At the siege of Mexico, they sacrificed at one time, in sight of their Countrimen, forty Spaniards.

a Lop. de Gom. part. 2.

The [b] Mexicans, besides their cruelties, had other vnbeseeming Rites in their Religion: as to eate and drinke to the name of their Idols, to pisse in the honour of them, carrying them vpon their shoulders, to anoint and besmeare themselues filthily, and other things, both ridiculous and lamentable.

b Acost. l. 5. c. 27

They [y] were so deuout in their Superstitions, and superstitious in their deuotions, that before they would eate or drinke, they would take a little quantitie and offer it to the Sun, and to the Earth. And if they gather Corne, Fruit, or Roses, they would take a leafe before they would smell it, and offer the same: he which did not thus, was accounted neither loiuing nor loued of God.

y Gom. pa. 398.

The Mexicans in the siege of their Citie, being brought to all extremities, spake thus, as *Lopez* reporteth, vnto *Cortes*; Considering that thou art the childe of the Sunne, why doest thou not entreat the Sunne thy Father to make an end of vs? O Sun that canst goe round about the World, in a day and a night, make an end of vs, and rake vs out of this miserable life, for we desire death, to goe and rest with our God *Quetcanatl*, who tarrieth for vs.

CHAP XII.

Of the Religious places and persons in New-Spaine: wherein is also handled their Penance, Marriages, Burials, and other Rites performed by their Priests.

§. I.

Of their Temples.

WE haue already mentioned the Temple of *Vitzilipuzzli* in Mexico, which requireth our further description. It [a] was built of great stones, in fashion of Snakes tyed one to another: and had a great circuit, called *Coatepanth*, that is, a circuit of Snakes. Vpon the top of euery Chappell or Oratorie, where the Idols were, was a fine pillar wrought with small stones blacke as Iet; the ground raised vp with white and red, which below gaue a great light: Vpon the top of the Pillar were Battlements wrought like Snailes, supported by two Indians of stone, fitting, holding Candlesticks in their hands, were like Croysants, garnished and enriched at the ends, with yellow and greene feathers, and long fringes of the same. Within the circuit of this Court there were many chambers of Religious men, and others that were appointed for the Priests and Popes. This Court is so great and spacious, that eight or ten thousand persons did dance easily in a round, holding hands, which was an vsuall custome there, howsoeuer it seemeth incredible, *Cortes* [b] relateth, that within the compasse of the wall, a Citie of fiue hundred houses might haue beene builded: round about encompassed with goodly buildings, Hals, and Cloisters for the Religious Votaries to dwell in. In that circuit he numbereth forty high Towers well built, to which the ascent was by fifty steps or staires: the least of them as high as the steeple of the Cathedrall Church in Siuill. The stone-worke as curious as in any place, full of grauen and painted imagerie. All these Towers were sepulchres of great Lords, and had each of them a Chappell to some speciall Idol. There were there three large Hals with their Chappels annexed, into which none but certaine Religious men might enter, both full of Images: the chiefe of which *Cortes* cast downe, and in stead thereof placed the Image of the Euer-blessed, neuer worthy to bee dignified with indignitie, the glorious Virgin and Mother our Lord, with such other Saints.

a *Acost. l. 5. c. 13.*

b *Narrat. 2. ad Car. 5.*

There were foure gates or entries, at the East, West, North, and South, at euery [c] of which began a faire Causey of two or three leagues long. There were in the midst of the Lake wherein Mexico is built, foure large causies. Vpon euery entry was a God or Idol, hauing the visage turned to the causie right against the Temple gate of *Vitzilipuzzli*. There were thirty steps of thirty fadome long, diuided from the circuit of the court by a street that went betweene them. Vpon the top of these steps, there was a walke of thirty foot broad, all plastered with chalke: in the midst of which walke was a Pallisado artificially made of very high Trees planted in order a fadome asunder. These Trees were very bigge; and all pierced with small holes from the foot to the top, and there were rods did runne from one Tree to another, to which were tied many dead mens heads. Vpon euery rod were many skuls, and these rankes of skuls continued from the foot to the top of the Tree. This Pallisado was full of dead mens skuls from one end to the other, which were the heads of such as had bin sacrificed. For after the flesh was eaten, the head was deliuered to the Priests, who tied them in this sort, vntill they fell off by morsels. Vpon the top of the Temple were two stones or Chappels, and in them the two Images *Vitzilipuzzli* and *Tlaloc*. These Chappels were carued and grauen very artificially, and so high, that to ascend vp to them there were an hundred and twenty staires of stone. Before these Chappels there was a Court of forty foot square, in the midst whereof was a high stone of fiue hand breadth, pointed in fashion of a Pyramide, placed there for the sacrificing of men, as is before shewed.

c *Gomara* saith that the fourth was not a causey, but a street of the Citie.

Gomara [d] saith, that this and other their Temples were called *Teneali*, which signifieth *Gods house*. This Temple, he saith, was square, containing euery way as much [e] as a Crossebow can shoot leuell in the middest stood a mount of earth and stone fifty fadome long euery way, built Pyramide-fashion, saue that the top was flat; and ten fadome square. It had two such Pyramide Stones or Altars for Sacrifice, painted with monstrous figures. Euery Chappell had three solers, one aboue another sustained vpon Pillars: From thence the eye with much pleasure might behold all about the Lake. Besides this Tower, there were forty

d *Gom. part 1. c. 1.*

e *Pet. Mart. Dec. 5. l. 4.* saith that in large-nesse the situation of this Temple is matchable with a Towne of fiue hundred houses.

other Towres belonging to other inferiour Temples; which were of the same fashion: onely their prospect was not Westward, to make difference. Some of those Temples were bigger then others, and euery one of a seuerall God.

Quelcouatl. There was one round Temple dedicated to the God of the Aire, called *Quecalcouatl*, the forme of the Temple representing the Aires *circular* course about the earth. The entrance of that Temple had a doore, made like the mouth of a Serpent, with foule and deuilish resemblances, striking dreadfull horrour to such as entered. All these Temples had peculiar houses, Priests, Gods, and Seruices. At euery doore of the great Temple was a large Hall and goodly buildings, which were common Armories for the Citie. They had other darke houses full of Idols of diuers metals, all embrued with bloud, the dayly sprinkling whereof made them shew blacke: yea, the walls were an inch thicke, and the ground a foot thicke with bloud, which yeelded a lothsome sent. The Priests entered dayly therein, which they allowed not to others except to Noble personages, who at their entry were bound to offer some Man to be sacrificed to those slaughter-houses of the Diuell. There did continually reside in the great Temple 5000. persons, which had there their meat, drinke, and lodging; the Temple enioying great reuenues, and diuers Townes for the maintenance thereof.

f *Acost.l.5.c.13.* Next f to the Temple of *Vitzilipuzli* was that of *Tescalipuca*, the God of Penance, Punishments (and Prouidence) very high and well built. It had foure ascents; the top was flat, an hundred and twenty foot broad; and ioyning to it was a Hall hanged with Tapistry, and Curtains of diuers colours and workes. The doore being low and large was alwayes couered with a Vaile, and none but the Priests might enter. All this Temple was beautified with diuers Images and Pictures most curiously: for that these two Temples were as the Cathedrall Churches, the rest as Parishionall. They were so spacious, and had so many chambers, that there were in them places for the Priests, Colledges and Schooles.

g *Lop.Gom.p.1.* Without g the great Temple, and ouer against the principall doore, a stones cast distant was the Charnell house, or that *Golgotha*, (before mentioned) where, vpon poles or sticks, and also in the wals (two Towres having no other stuffe but Lime and Skuls) h *Andrew de Tapia* certified h *Gomara*, that he and *Gonsalo de Umbria* did reckon in one day, an hundred thirty sixe thousand skuls. When any wasted, supply was made of others in their roome.

§. II.

Of their Nunnes, Friers and other Votaries.

Nunnes. Within this great Circuit of the principall Temple were two Houses, like Cloisters, the one opposite to the other, one of Men, the other of Women. In that of Women they were Virgins onely, of twelue or thirteene yeeres of age, which they called the *Maids of Penance:* they were as many as the men, and liued chastly, and regularly, as Virgins dedicated to the seruice of their God. Their charge was to sweepe and make cleane the Temple, and euery morning to prepare meat for the Idol and his Ministers, of the Almes the Religious gathered. The food they prepared for the Idoll were small Loaues, in the forme of hands and feet, as of Marchpane: and with this bread they prepared certaine sawces, which they cast dayly before the Idol, and his Priests did eate it.

Thele Virgins had their haire cut, and then let them grow for a certaine time: they rose at midnight to the Idols Mattins, which they dayly celebrated, performing the same exercises which the Religious did. They had their Abbesse, who employed them to make cloth of diuers fashions, for the ornaments of their Gods and Temples. Their ordinarie habite was all white, without any worke or colour. They did their penance at midnight, sacrificing and wounding themselues, and piercing the tops of their eares, laying the bloud which issued forth vpon their cheekes, and after bathed themselues in a poole which was within the Monasterie. If any were found dishonest, they were put to death without remission, saying, she had polluted the house of their God.

They held it for an ominous token, that some religious man or woman had committed a fault, when they saw a Rat or Mouse passe, or a Bat in the Idol-Chappell, or that they had gnawed any of the vailes, for that they say, a Cat or a Bat would not aduenture to commit such an indignitie, if some offence had not gone before: and then began to make inquisition, and discouering the offender, put him to death. None were receiued into this Monasterie, but the daughters of one of the sixe quarters, named for that purpose: and this profession continued a yeere, during which time, their fathers and themselues had made a vow to serue the Idoll in this manner, and from thence they went to be married.

The

The other Cloyster or Monasterie was of young-men of eighteene or twentie yeeres of age, which they called Religious. Their Crowbes were shauen, as the Friers in these parts, their haire a little longer, which fell to the middest of their eare, except on the hinder part of the head, where they let it grow on their shoulders, and tyed it vp in trusses. These serued in the Temple, liued poorely and chastly, and (as the Leuites) ministred to the Priests, Incense, Lights and Garments, swept and made cleane the Holy place, bringing wood for a continuall fire, to the Hearth of their God, which was like a Lampe that still burned before the Altar of their Idoll. Besides these, there were other little Boyes that serued for manuall vses, as to decke the Temple with Boughes, Roses, and Reeds, to giue the Priests water to wash, Rasors to sacrifice, and to goe with such as begged alms, to carrie it. All these had their superiours, who had the gouernment ouer them; and when they came in publike, where women were, they carried their eyes to the ground, not daring to behold them. They had sinnen garments, and went into the Citie foure or sixe together, to aske alms in all quarters and it they got none, it was lawtull for them to goe into the Corne-fields, and gather that which they needed, none daring to contradict them. Friers.

Cortes writeth, that almost all the chiefe mens sonnes in the Citie, after they were sixe or seuen yeeres old, till the time of their marriage, especially the eldest, were thrust into a kind of Religious habit and seruice. *Cortes narrat. ad Imp. & Relat. del Temilitan ep. Ram. to. 3.*

There might not aboue fiftie liue in that strict penance; they rose at midnight, and sounded the Trumpets, to awake the people. Every one watched by turne, lest the fire before the Altar should die: they gaue the censor, with which the Priest at midnight incensed the Idoll, and also in the morning, at noone, and at night. They [i] were very subiect and obedient to their superiours, and passed not any one point commanded. And at midnight after the Priest had ended his censing, they retyred themselues apart into a secret place, where they sacrificed and drew bloud from the Calues of their legs with sharp bodkins, therewith rubbing their Temples and vnder their Eares, presently washing themselues in a Poole appointed to that end. These yong men did not anoint their heads and bodies with [k] *Petum*, as the Priests did. This austeritie continued a yeere.

i Mexican Votaries, no lesse strict in that threefold cord which the Popish Votaries glory of Pouertie, Continency, Obedience, with other wil worships; yea, for the time, more austere.

k Tobacco.

The Priests likewise rose at midnight, and retired themselues into a large place where were many lights, and there drew bloud, as the former, from their legs, then did they set these Bodkins vpon the battlements of the Court, sticks, or straw, that the people might see. Neither might they vse one Bodkin in twice. The Priests also vsed great fasts of fiue or ten dayes together, before their great feasts. Some of them, to preserue their chastitie, slit their members in the midst, and did a hundred things to make themselues impotent, lest they should offend their gods. They drunke no Wine, and slept little, for that the greatest part of their exercises were by night.

They did vse also (that the selfe-tyrannizing Catholike should not out-vie Merits) to Discipline themselues with cords full of knots, wherein the people likewise came not behinde in cruell Processions, especially on the Feast of *Tezcalipuca*, lashing themselues with knotted *Mangney*-cords, ouer the shoulders. The Priest fasted fiue dayes before that Feast, eating but once a day, and abstaining from their Wiues; the whips supplying those delicacies.

Gomara [l] speaketh of others, besides those yong ones before mentioned, which liued in those Cloysters, some being sicke, for their recouery; some in extreme pouerty, to finde reliefe; some for riches, for long life, for good husbands, for many children, and some for vertue: every one abode there as long as they had vowed, and after vsed their libertie. Their offices were to spin Cotton, Woell, and feathers, and to weaue cloth for their gods, and themselues, to sweepe all thy holy roomes: they might goe on Procession with the Priests, but not sing, nor goe vp the staires of the Temples. their food was boiled flesh and hot bread, receiued of almes, the smoke whereof was offered vnto their gods: They are and lay all together, but lay in their cloathes. The multitude of Idols and Idol-Temples in New Spaine was such, that a Bishop of Mexico, in his Letters 1532. saith, that the Friers had defaced twenty thousand of the one, and desolated fiue hundred of the other: and where in Mexico they had vsed yeerely to offer more then twenty thousand Harts of Boyes and Girles to their Idols, they now (saith he) offer them by good instruction to God. God grant it.

l *Lop de Gom. part. 1. pag. 398.*

Lit. Episc. Mex.

§. III.

Of their Priests, and the many Rites belonging to their function.

TOuching their Priests in Mexico, [m] there were some high Priests or Popes, euen vnder the same name, called by the Mexicans, *Papas*, as they should say, Soueraigne Bishops: others, as before you haue heard, were of inferiour ranke. The Priests of *Vitzilipuztli* succeeded by linages of certaine quarters of the Citie, deputed for that purpose: and those of other Idols came by election, or by being offered to the Temple in their Infancie. They daily exercise of the Priests was to cast Incense on the Idols, which was done foure times in the space of a naturall day: at breake of day, at noone, at Sun-set, at midnight. At midnight all the chiefe officers of the Temple did rise, and in stead of Bels they did sound a long time vpon Trumpets, Cornets, and Flutes, very heauily; which being ended, he that did the Office that weeke, stepe forth attired in a white tobe with a Censor in in his hand, full of Coles, which he tooke from the harth, burning continually before the Altar, in the other hand he had a purse full of incense, which he cast into the Censor, and entring the place where the Idol was, he incensed it with great reuerence; then tooke he a cloth, with the which he wiped the Altar and the Curtains. This done, they went all into a Chappell, and there did beat themselues and draw bloud with Bodkins, as is said: this was always done at midnight. None other but the Priests might intermeddle with their Sacrifices, and euery one did employ himselfe according to his dignity and degree. They did likewise preach to the people at some Feasts. They had reuenues and great offerings. They [n] had conuenient houses for their habitation. They ware blacke garments, and cut not nor combed their haire in the time of their ministration.

[m] Ios. Acos. l. 5. cap. 14.

[n] Cortes narrat.

The Mexican Priests [o] were thus anointed; they anointed the body from the foot to the head, and all the haire likewise, which hung like tresses or a Horse-maine, for that they applyed this vnction wet and moist. Their haire grew so, that in time it hung downe to their hams, insomuch, that the weight made it burthensome: for they neuer cut it vntill they dyed, or were dispensed with for their great age, or were employed in gouernments, or some honourable charge in the Common-weale. They carried their haire in tresses of fixe fingers breadth, which they dyed blacke with the fume of Sapine, Firre, or Rosine. They were alwayes dyed with this tincture, from the foot vnto the head, so as they were like vnto shining Negros. This was their ordinary vnction; they had another when they went to sacrifice or incense on the tops of mountaines, or in darke Caues, where there Idols were, vsing also certaine Ceremonies, to take away feare, and adde courage. This vnction was made with diuers venemous beasts, as Spiders, Scorpions, Salamanders, and Vipers, which the Boyes in the Colledges tooke and gathered together: wherein they were so expert, as they were alway furnished when the Priests called for them. They tooke all these together, and burnt them vpon the harth of the Temple which was before the Altar, vntill they were consumed to ashes. Then did they put them in Morters with much Tobacco or *Petum*, which made them lose their force; mingling likewise with these ashes, Scorpions, Spiders, and Palmers aliue. After this, they put to it a certaine seed being ground, which they called *Ololiuchqui*, whereof the Indians made drinkes to see Visions, for that the vertue of this herbe is to deprue men of sence: they did likewise grind with these ashes black and hairy wormes, whose haire onely is venemous; all which they mingled together with blacke, or the fume of Rosine, putting it in small pots, which they set before their God, saying it was his meat, and therefore called it a diuine meat. By meanes of this ointment they became Witches, and did see and speake with the Diuell. The Priests being slobbered with this ointment, lost all feare, putting on a Spirit of cruelty. By reason whereof they did very boldly kill men in their sacrifices, went all alone in the night time to the Mountaines, and into obscure Caues, contemned all wilde beasts, beleeuing that Lyons, Tygres, Serpents, and the rest fled from them by vertue hereof.

[o] Acos. l. 5. c. 26. Their anointing.

This *Petum* did also serue to cure the sick, and for children; all reported to them as to their Sauiours, to apply vnto them this Diuine Physicke, as they called it. They vsed manifold other superstitions to delude the people, in tying small flowers about their necks, and strings with small bones of Snakes, commanding them to bathe at certaine times, to watch all night at the *Diuine harth*, to eate no other bread but that which had beene offered to their Gods, that they should (vpon all occasions) repaire to their Wisards, who with certaine graines told Fortunes, and diuined, looking into keelers, and pailes full of water. The Sorcerers and [p] ministers of the diuell vsed much to besmeare themselues. There were an infinite

[p] Their Witches.

number

number of these Witches, Diuiners, Inchanters, and the like: and still there remaine of them (but secret) not daring publikely to exercise their superstitions.

The Mexicans q had amongst them a kinde of baptisme, which they did with cutting the eares and members of yong children, hauing some resemblance of the Iewish circumcision. This Ceremonie was done principally to the sonnes of Kings and Noblemen: presently vpon their birth the Priests did wash them, and did put a little Sword in the right hand, in the left a Target. And to the children of the vulgar sort, they put the markes of their callings, and to their daughters instruments to Spinne, Knit, and labour.

q Their Rites vnto Infants.

The Mexican history afore-mentioned, in the third part thereof, sheweth in pictures their policie and customes. When a child was borne (as is there described) it was laid in a Cradle: foure dayes after, the mid-wife brought it naked, with the instrument of the trade (as is said) in the hand, into the yard, where were prepared Bul-rushes and a little pan of water, in which she washed the same. Three boyes late by eating roasted Mais, with sodden Frizoles in a little pan, and at the mid-wives appointment named the child with a lowd voice. After twenty dayes they went with it into the Temple, and presented the same in presence of the Priest, with an offering: and being of fifteene yeares, committed him to the High Priest of that Temple, to be taught, if they would after haue him a Priest: or if they would haue him a Souldier, they committed him to the Master thereof, with an offering of meat also. In this booke is pictured how they instruct and feed them at three yeeres of age, giuing them halfe a Cake: how at foure with a whole Cake: at fiue burthening and exercising their bodies, and setting their daughters to spin: how at sixe they exercise them in gathering vp corne spilled on the ground, or the like: at seuen in fishing. There is likewise described their seuere discipline in punishing them with Manguz. The Priests did exercise their Pupils in bodily seruices of the Temple, in going to the Mountains to sacrifice, in Musicke, obseruing the time by the starres, and the like. Old men of threescore and ten, might be publikely drunken without controll, which to yong folkes of both sexes was death, as was theft also and adultery.

Mex. pict. hist.

Education of children in Mexico.

Drunkards theeues, adulterers, stoned. r Their mariages.

The Priests s also had their office in marriages. The Bridegroome and the Bride stood together before the Priest, who tooke them by the hands, asking them if they would marry: vnderstanding their will, he took a corner of the vaile, wherewith the woman had her head couered, and a corner of the mans gowne, which he tyed together on a knot, and so led them thus tyed to the Bridegroomes house, where there was a harth kindled. Then he caused the wife to goe seuen times about the harth, and so the married couple sate downe together, and thus was the marriage contracted. That booke of pictures describes it thus: as *Amantesa* or Broker carried the Bride on her backe at the beginning of the night, foure women attending with Torches of Pine-tree Rosenned. At the Bridegroomes house his parents receiue her, and carry her to him in a Hall, where they are both caused to sit on a Mat, neere a fire, and tyed together with a corner of their apparell, and a perfume of Copale wood is made to their gods. Two old men, and as many old women were present. The married couple eate, and then these old folke, which after this separate them asunder, and giue them good instructions for Oeconomicall duties.

In other parts of New-Spaine t they vsed other marriage-rites; at Tlaxcallan the Bridegroome and Bride polled their heads, to signifie, that from thenceforth all childish courses should be laid aside. At michuacan the Bride must looke directly vpon the Bridegroome, or else the marriage was not perfect. In Mixteopan they vsed to carry the Bridegroome vpon their backs, as if he were forced; and then they both toyne hands, and knit their mantles together with a great knot. The Macatecas did not come together in twenty dayes after marriage, but abode in fasting and prayer all that while, sacrificing their bodies, and anointing the mouths of their Idols with their bloud. In Panuco the Husbands buy the Wiues for a Bow, two Arrowes, and a Net; and afterwards the Father in-law speaketh not one word to his Sonne in-law for the space of a yeere. When he hath a child, he lyeth not with his wife in two yeeres after, lest she should be with child againe before the other bee out of danger; some sucke twelue yeeres: and for this cause they haue many wiues. No woman, while she hath her disease, may touch or dresse any thing.

s *Gomara. part. 1. pag. 389.*

Adulterie in Mexico was death: common women were permitted, but no ordinary Stewes. The diuell di many times talke with their Priest, and with some other Rulers and particular persons. Great gifts were offered vnto him whom the diuell had vouchsafed this conference. He appeared vnto them in many shapes, and was often familiar with them, He to whom he appeared, carried about him painted, the likenesse wherein he shewed himselfe the first time. And they painted his Image on their doores, benches, and every corner of the house. Likewise, according to his *Protean* and diuerslified appantions they painted him in many shapes.

Acost. l.5.c.8. Burials.

It belonged also to the office of the Priests and religious in Mexico, to interre the dead, and doe their obsequies. The places where they buried them, were their gardens and courts of their owne houses: others carried them to the places of sacrifices, which were done in the mountaines: others burnt them, and after buried the ashes in the temples, burying with them whatsoeuer they had, of apparell, stones, and iewels. They did sing the funerall offices like Responds, often lifting vp the dead body, with many ceremonies. At these Mortuaries they did eate and drinke; and if it were a person of qualitie, they gaue apparell to such as came. When one was dead, his friends came with their presents, & saluted him as if he were liuing. And if he were a King or Lord of some Towne, they offered some slaues to bee put to death with him, to serue him in the other world. They likewise put to death his Priest or Chaplain, (for euery Noble-man had a Priest for his domestical holies) that he might execute his office with the dead. They likewise killed his Cooke, his Butler, Dwarffes, and deformed men, and whosoeuer had most serued him, though he were his Brother. And to preuent pouertie, they buried with them much wealth, as Gold, Siluer, Stones, Curtains, and other rich pieces. And if they burned the dead, they vsed the like with all his seruants and ornaments they gaue him for the other world, and lastly, buried the ashes with great solemnitie. The obsequies continued ten dayes with mournefull songs, and the Priests carried away the dead with innumerable ceremonies. To the Noble-men they gaue their honourable Ensignes, Armes, and particular Blazons, which they carried before the body to the place of burning, marching as in a Procession; where the Priests and Officers of the Temple went with diuers furniture, and ornaments, some casting incense, others singing, and some making the Drums and Flutes to sound the mournfullest accents of sorrow. The Priest who did the Office, was decked with the markes of the Idoll which the Noble-men had represented: for all Noble-men did represent Idols, and carrie the name of some One.

Acost. l.6.c.26.

The Mexicans honoured the best souldiers with a kinde of Knighthood, of which were three Orders: one ware a red ribband, which was the chiefe; the second was the Lyon or Tyger-knight: the Grey-Knight was the meanest: they had great priuiledges. Their Knighthood had these funerall solemnities. They brought the corps to the place appointed, and enuironing it, and all the baggage with Pine-trees, set fire thereon, maintaining the same with gummie wood, till all were consumed. Then came forth a Priest attired like a diuell, hauing mouthes vpon euery joynt of him, and many eyes of Glasse, holding a great staffe, with which he mingled all the ashes with terrible and fearfull gestures.

Lop. de Gom. part. 2. pag. 383.

When the King of Mexico sickened, they vsed forthwith to put a Visor on the face of *Tezcatlipuca*, or *Vitzilvitzili*, or some other Idoll, which was not taken away till hee mended or ended. If he died, word was presently sent into all his Dominions for publike lamentations, and Noble-men were summoned to the funerals. The body was laid on a Mat, and watched foure nights; then washed, and a locke of haire cut off for a relike; for therein (said they) remained the remembrance of his soule. After this an Emerald was put in his mouth, and his body shrowded in 17. rich mantles, costly and curiously wrought. Vpon the vpper mantle was set the Deuice or Arme s of some Idoll, whereunto he had been most deuout in his life time, and in his Temple should the body be buried. Vpon his face they put a Visor painted with foule and deuillish gestures, beset with jewels: then they killed the slaue, whose office was to light the Lamps, and make fire to the gods of his Palace. This done, they carried the body to the Temple, some carrying Targets, Arrows, Maces, and Ensignes, to hurle into the funerall fire. The High Priest and his crue receiue him at the Temple gate with a sorrowfull Song, and after he hath said certaine words, the body is cast into the fire there prepared for that purpose, together with jewels: also a Dog newly strangled, to guide his way. In the meane-while two hundred persons were sacrificed by the Priests, or more, to serue him, as is said. The fourth day after, fifteene slaues were sacrificed for his soule, and vpon the twentieth day, fiue; on the sixtieth, three, &c. The ashes with the locke of haire was put in a Chest, painted on the in-side with deuillish shapes, together with another locke of haire, which had been reserued since the time of his birth. On this Chest was set the Image of the King: the kinred offered great gifts before the same. The King of Mechuscan obserued the like bloudy Rites: many Gentlewomen were by the new King appointed their Offices in their seruice to the deceased, and while his body was burning, were malled with clubs, and buried foure and foure in a graue. Many Women-slaues, and free Maidens were slaine to attend on these Gentlewomen. But I would not bury my Reader in these direfull graues of men cruell in life and death. Let vs seeke some Festiuall argument, if that may be more delightfull.

CHAP.

CHAP XIII.

Of the supputation of Times, Festiuall Solemnities, Colledges, Schooles, Letters, Opinions, and other remarkeable things in New Spaine.

10

§. I.

Their Kalender and Conceits of Time, and some of their Feasts.

THE Mexicans [a] diuided the yeere into eighteene moneths, ascribing to each twentie dayes, so that the fiue odde dayes were excluded. These fiue they reckoned apart, and called them *the dayes of nothing*: during the which, the people did nothing, neither went to their Temples, but spent the time in visiting each other: the Sacrificers likewise ceased their Sacrifices. These fiue dayes being past, the first moneth began about the twentie sixe of February. *Gomera* [b] sets downe their moneths names in order. The Indians described them by peculiar Pictures, commonly taken of the principall Feast therein. They accounted their weeks by thirteene dayes: they had also a weeke of yeeres which was likewise thirteene. They reckoned by a certaine Wheele, which contayned foure weekes, that is, two and fiftie yeeres. In the midst of this Wheele was painted the Sunne, from which went foure beames of lines, in a Crosse of distinct colours, Greene, Blue, Red, and Yellow; and so the lines betwixt these: on which they noted by some Picture, the accident that befell any yeere, as the Spaniards comming, marked by a man clad in Red. The last night when this Wheele was run about, they brake all their vessels and stuffe, put out their fire and all the lights, saying, that the World should end at the finishing of one of these Wheeles, and it might be at that time; and then what should such things need? Vpon this conceit they passed the night in great feare: but when they saw the day begin to breake, they presently beat many Drums, with much other mirth and Musicke, saying, that God did prolong the time with another Age of two and fifty yeeres. And then began another Wheele; the first day whereof they tooke new fire, for which they went to the Priest, who fetched it out of a Mountaine, and made a solemne Sacrifice and Thanksgiuing. The twenty dayes of each moneth were called by seuerall names, the first *Opaltli* which signifieth a Spade, and so the rest a House, a Doggy, a Snake, an Eagle, a Temple, and the like. By this Kalendar they keepe things in memory aboue nine hundred yeeres since. The Indians of *Culhua* did beleeue that the Gods had made the World, they knew not how: and that since the Creation, foure Sunnes were past, and that the fift and last is the Sunne, which now giueth light vnto the World.

a *Acost. l. 6. c. 2.*

b *Gom. pag. 97. Mexican. hist. M. S. ap. Hakbath this Kalender.*

The first Sunne (forsooth) perished by water, and all liuing creatures therewith: the second fell from Heauen, and with the fall slue all liuing creatures, and then were many Giants in the Country: the third Sunne was consumed by fire; and the fourth by Tempest of ayre and wind, and then Mankind perished nor, but was turned into Apes: yet when that fourth Sunne perished, all was turned into darknesse, and so continued fiue and twenty yeeres: and at the fifteenth yeere, God did forme one man and woman, who brought forth children, and at the end of other ten yeeres appeared this fift Sunne newly borne, which after their reckoning is now in this yeere 1612. nine hundred and eighteene yeeres since. Three dayes after this Sunne appeared, they held that all the Gods did die, and that these which since they worship, were borne in processe of time.

Opinion of fiue Sunnes.

At the end of euery twenty dayes, the Mexicans celebrated a Feast called *Tonalli*, which was the last day of euery moneth. The last day of the first moneth was called *Tlacaxipenaliztli*, on which were slaine an hundred Captiues in Sacrifice and eaten, others putting on the skins (as before is shewed.) Many of them would go to the slaughter with ioyfull countenance, dancing, and demanding Almes, which befell to the Priests. When the greene Corne was a foot aboue the ground, they vsed to goe to a certaine Hill, and there sacrificed two Children, a Girle and a Boy, three yeeres old, to the honour of *Tlaloc*, God of the Water, that they might haue raine: and because these children were free borne, their hearts were not plucked out, but their throats being cut, their bodies were wrapped in a new Mantle, and buried in a graue of stone.

Mexicans Feasts.

When the heids of Maiz were two foot high, a collection was made, and therewith were brought

bought foure little slaues, betwixt the age of fiue and seuen, and they were sacrificed also to *Tlaloc*, for the continuance of raine: and those dead bodies were shut vp in a Caue appointed to that purpose. The beginning of this butcherie was, by occasion of a drought, which continued foure yeeres, and forced them to leaue the Country. When the Maiz was ripe, in the moneth and Feast *Hueitozoztli*, euery man gathered his handfull of Maiz, and brought it to the Temple for an offering, with a certaine drinke called *Atuli*, made of the same graine. They brought also *Copalli*, a sweet Gumme, to incense the Gods which cause the Corne to grow. At the beginning of Summer they celebrated the Feast *Tlaxuchimeaco*, with Roses and all sweet flowres, making Garlands thereof, to set on their Idols heads, and spending all that day in dancing. To celebrate the Feast *Tecuilhuitli*, all the principall persons of each Prouince came to the Citie on the Euening of the Feast, and apparelled a woman with the attire of the *God of Salt*, who danced among a great company of her Neighbours, but the next day was sacrificed with much solemnitie, and all that day was spent in deuotion, burning of Incense in the Temple. The Merchants had a Temple by themselues, dedicate to the *God of gaine*: they made their Feast vpon the day called *Micailhuitl*, wherein were sacrificed and eaten many captiues, which they had bought, and all the day spent in dancing.

In the Feast of *Ochpaniztli*, they sacrificed a woman, whose skin was put vpon an Indian, which two dayes together danced with the Nouitiates, celebrating the same Feast in their best attire.

In the day of *Hatamutzli*, the Mexicans entred into the Lake with a great number of Canoas, and there drowned a Boy and a Girle, in a little Boat, which they caused to be sunke, in such sort, that neuer after that Boat appeared againe, holding opinion, that those Children were in company with the Gods of the Lake. That day they spent in feasting and anointing their Idols cheekes with a kind of Gumme, called *Vli*.

When *Cortes* was gone out of Mexico, to incounter *Pamphilo de Naruaez*, and had left *Aluarado* in the Citie, he in the great Temple murthered a great multitude of Gentlemen, which had there assembled, to their accustomed solemnitie, being six hundred, or (as some say) a thousand, richly attired and adorned, where they vsed to sing and dance, in honour of their God, to obtaine Health, Children, Victorie, &c.

§. II.

Their Feast of Transubstantiation, Lent, Bloudie Processions, and other holy times.

[x] *Acosta l. 5. c. 24 Relat. del Tuemisitano.*

IN the moneth of May, [x] the Mexicans made their principall Feast to *Vitzilipuztli*: two dayes before which, the Religious Virgins or Nuns mingled a quantity of Beets with rosted Maiz, and moulded it with Hony, making an Image of that paste, in bignesse like to the Idoll of wood, putting in, in stead of eyes, graines of glasse, greene, blue, or white, and for teeth, graines of Maiz. Then did all the Nobles bring it a rich garment like vnto that of the Idoll, and being clad, did set it in an azured Chaire, and in a Litter. The morning of the Feast being come, an houre before day, all the Maidens came forth attired in white with new ornaments, which that day were called, the Sisters of *Vitzilipuztli*: they were crowned with Garlands of Maiz rosted & parched, with chaines of the same about their neckes, passing vnder their left armes. Their cheekes were died with Vermilion, their armes from the elbow to the wrist were couered with red Parrots feathers. Thus attired, they tooke the Image on their shoulders, carrying it into the Court, where all the young men were, attired in red Garments, crowned like the women. When the Maydens came forth with this Idoll, the young men drew neere with much reuerence, taking the Litter wherein the Idoll was, vpon their shoulders, carrying it to the staires foot of the Temple: where all the people did humble themselues, laying earth vpon their heads.

After this, all the people went in Procession to a Mountaine called *Chapultepec*, a league from Mexico, and there made Sacrifices. From thence they went to their second Station, called *Atlacuyanayo*: and from thence againe to a Village, which was a league beyond *Cuyoacan*, and then returned to Mexico. They went in this sort aboue foure leagues, in so many houres, calling this Procession *Vpania Vitzilipuztli*. Beeing come to the foote of the Temple staires, they set downe the Litter with the Idoll, and with great obseruance drew the same to the top of the Temple, some drawing aboue, and others helping below, the Flutes and Drummes, Cornets, Trumpets, meane-while increasing the Solemnitie. The people abode in the Court. Hauing mounted, and placed it in a little lodge of Roses, presently came the

the young men, which strowed flowres of sundry kinds, within and without the Temple. This done, all the Virgins came out of their Conuent, bringing pieces of the same paste whereof the Idoll was made, in the fashion of great bones, which they deliuered to the young men, who carried them vp, and laid them at the Idols feet, till the place could receiue no more.

They called these morsels of paste, *The flesh and bones of Vtzilipuzli.* Then came all the Priests of the Temple, euery one strictly obserung his place, with veiles of diuers colours and workes, Garlands on their heads, and chaines of flowres about their necke: after them came the Gods and Goddesses, whom they worshipped of diuers figures, attired in the same liuery. Then putting themselues in order about those pieces of paste, they vsed certaine Ceremonies, with singing and dancing. By these meanes they were blessed and consecrated for *the flesh and bones of the Idoll:* which were then honoured in the same sort as their God. Then came forth the Sacrificers, who began the Sacrifice of Men, whereof they now sacrificed more then at other times: for this was their solemnest Festiuall. The Sacrifices being ended, all the young men and Maydes came out of the Temple attired as before, and being placed in order and ranke, one directly against another, they danced by Drummes, which sounded in praise of the Feast, and of their God. To which Song, all the ancientest and greatest men did answere, dancing about them, making a great Circle, as the manner is, the young men and Maids remaining alwayes in the middest.

All the Citie came to this spectacle, and throughout the whole Land; on this day of *Vtzilipuzli* his Feast, no man might eat any other meate, but this paste with Honey, whereof the Idoll was made, and this should be eaten at the point of day not drinking till the afternoone: the contrary was sacrilegious. After the Ceremonies ended, it was lawfull for them to eat any thing. During the time of this Ceremony, they hid the water from their little Children, admonishing such, as had the vse of reason, to abstaine.

The Ceremonies, Dances, and Sacrifices ended, they went to vnclothe themselues, and the Priests and Ancients of the Temple tooke the Image of paste, and spoyled it of all the Ornaments making many pieces of it, and of the consecrated Rolls, which they ministred in a kind of Communion, beginning with the greater, and continuing vnto the rest, both men, women, and children: who receiued it with teares, feare, reuerence, and other both affects, and effects of deuotion, saying, That they *did eate the flesh and bones of their God.* Such as had sicke folkes, demanded thereof for them, and carried it with great reuerence and veneration. All such as did communicate, were bound to giue the tenth part of this Seed, whereof the Idoll was made. The solemnity of the Idoll being ended, an old man of great authority stept vp into an high place, and with a loude voice preached their Law and Ceremonies. This History deserueth the longer Relation, because it so [a] much resembleth the Popish *Chrisma*, and monstrous Conception of *Transubstantiation*, and of their *Corpus Christi* Feast, with other their Rites, to which *Acosta* also the Relater compareth it, blaming the Deuill for vsurping the seruice, and imitating the Rites of their Church, whereas their Church deserueth blame for imitating the Deuill, and these his Idolatrous Disciples, in their stupendious monsters of opinion, and ridiculous offices of Superstition. But you shall yet see a further resemblance.

Next to this principall Feast of *Vtzilipuzli*, [b] was that of *Tezcalipuca*, of chiefe estimation. This fell on the nineteenth day of May, and was called *Tozoli.* It fell euery foure yeeres with the Feast of Penance, where there was giuen [c] full indulgence and remission of sinnes. In this day they did Sacrifice a Captiue, which resembled the Idoll *Tezcalipuca.* Vpon the Euen of this Solemnitie, the Noblemen came to the Temple, bringing a new garment like to that of the Idoll, which the Priest put vpon him, hauing first taken off his other Garments, which they kept with great reuerence. There were in the Coffers of the Idoll [d] many Ornaments, Iewels, Eare-rings, and other Riches, as Bracelets, and precious Feathers, which serued to no vse, and were worshipped as the God himselfe. Besides that Garment, they put vpon him certaine Ensignes of Feathers, with Fannes, shadowes, and other things. Being thus attired, they drew the Curtayne from before the doore, that all men might see. Then came forth one of the chiefe of the Temple, attired like to the Idoll, carrying Flowre in his hand, and a Flute of Earth, hauing a very sharpe sound, and turning toward the East, hee founded it, and after that to the West, North, and South, hee did the like.

This done, he put his finger into the Aire, and then gathered vp the Earth, [e] which hee put in his mouth, eating it in signe of adoration. The like did all that were present, weeping, and falling flat to the ground, inuocating the *darknesse of the night, and the winds*, not to forsake them, or else to take away their hues, and free them from the labours they endured therein. Theeues, Adulterers, Murtherers, and all other Offenders had great feare and heauinesse

a. The new Catholiks of old Spaine, & old Caciolikes of New Spaine alike in Superstition.

b *Acosta l.5.c.26*

c Mexican Iubilee.

d Their relicks

e The Mexicans Lent begun not with ashes, but with dust.

uinesse whiles the Flute sounded, so as some could not hide nor dissemble their offences. By this meanes they all demanded no other thing of their God, but to haue their offences concealed; powring forth many teares, with great repentance and sorrow, offering great store of Incense to appease their Gods. All the Martialists, and resolute spirits, addicted to the Warres, desired with great deuotion of God *the Creator, of the Lord, for whom we liue, of the Sun*, and of other their Gods, that they would giue them victory against their enemies, and strength to take many Captiues for Sacrifice. This ceremonious sounding of the Flute by the Priest, continued ten dayes, from the ninth of May to the nineteenth, with eating of earth, praying euery day with eyes lifted vp to Heauen, sighes and grones, as of men grieued for their sinnes. Yet did not they believe that there were any punishments in the other life, but did these things to auert temporall punishments: they accounted death an assured rest, and therefore voluntarily offered themselues thereto. The last day of the Feast, the Priests drew forth a Litter well furnished with Curtaynes, and Pendants of diuers fashions: this Litter had so many armes to hold by, as there were Ministers to carry it: all which came forth besmeared with blacke, and long haire, halfe in tresses, with white strings, and attired in the Idols liuery. Vpon this Litter they set the Image of *Tezcalipuca*, and taking it on their shoulders, brought it to the foot of the staires. Then came forth the young men and Maydens of the Temple, carrying a great cord wreathed of chaines of rosted Maiz, with which they enuironed the Litter, and put a chaine of the same about the Idols necke, and a Garland thereof on his head.

f *Gomara* writeth otherwise as followeth in the end of this Chapter.

The young men and Mayds weare chaines of rosted Maiz, and the men Garlands, the Maydes Mytres made of Rods couered with the Maiz, their feet couered with Feathers, and their armes and cheekes painted. The Image being placed in the Litter they strewed round about store of boughes of Manguey, the leaues whereof are pricking. They carried it on Procession (two Priests going before with Incense) in the circuit of the Court: and euery time the Priest gaue Incense, they lifted vp their armes as high as they could to the Idoll and the Sun. All the people in the Court turned round to the place whither the Idoll went, euery one carrying in his hand new cords of the threeds of Manguey, a fadome long, with a knot at the end, wherewith they whipped themselues on the shoulders, euen as they doe heere (saith *Acosta*) on Holy Thursday. The people brought boughes and flowres to beautifie the Court and Temple.

g Their bloudy Processions

This done, euery one brought their Offerings, Iewels, Incense, sweet Wood, Grapes, Maiz, Quailes, and the rest. Quailes were the poore mans Offering which hee deliuered to the Priests, who pulled off their heads, and cast them at the foote of the Altar, where they lost their bloud: and so they did of all other things which were offered. Euery one offered meate and fruit, according to his power, which was laid at the foote of the Altar, and was carried to the Ministers Chamber. The offering done, the people went to dinner: the young men and Maydes of the Temple being busied meanewhile to serue the Idoll with all that was appointed for him to eat, which was prepared by other women who had made a vow that day to serue the Idoll. These prepared meats in admirable variety, which being ready, the Virgins went out of the Temple in Procession, euery one carrying a little basket of bread in her hand, and in the other a dish of these meates. Before them marched an old man, like to a Steward, attired in a white Surples downe to the ealues of his legges, vpon a red Iacket, which had wings instead of sleeues, from which hung broad Ribands, and at the same a small Pumpion, stucke full of flowres, and hauing many Superstitious things within it. This old man comming neere to the foot of the staires, made lowly reuerence. Then the Virgins with like reuerence presented their meats in order: this done, the old man returnes, leading the Virgins into the Conuent. And then the young men and Ministers of the Temple came forth and gathered vp their meat, which they carried to their Priests Chambers, who had fasted fiue dayes, eating but once a day, not stirring all that time out of the Temple, where they whipped themselues, as before is shewed. They did eate of these *Diuine meates* (so they called it) neither might any other eate thereof. After dinner they assembled againe, and then was sacrificed. One who had all that yeere borne the habit and resemblance of their Idoll. They went after this, into a holy place appointed for that purpose, whither the young men and Virgins of the Temple brought them their ornaments, and then they danced and sung, the chiefe Priests drumming and sounding other Instruments. The Noblemen in ornaments like to the young men, danced round about them.

They did not vsually kill any man that day, but him that was sacrificed, yet euery fourth yeere they had others with him, which was the yeere of Iubilee and full pardons. After Sunset, the Virgins went all to their Conuent, and taking great dishes of earth full of bread, mixed with Hony, couered with small Panniars, wrought and fashioned with dead mens heads and bones, carried the same to the Idoll, & setting them downe, retired, their Steward

vshering

vshering them as before. Presently came forth all the young men in order, with Canes or Reedes in their hands, who began to runne as fast as they could to the top of the Temple staires; euery one striuing to come first to the Collation. The chiefe Priests obserued who came first, second, third and fourth, neglecting the rest; these they prayled, and gaue them ornaments, and from thence forward they were respected as men of marke. The said Collation was all carried away by the young men as great Relikes. This ended, The young men and Maydes were dismissed: and so I thinke would our Reader, who cannot but be glutted with, and almost surfet of our so long and tedious feasting. Yet let me intreat one seruice more, it is for the God of gaine, who I am sure will finde Followers and Disciples too attentiue.

For the Festiuall of this Gaine-god, *Quetzalcoalt*; the Merchants, his deuoted and faithfull Obseruants, forty dayes before, bought a slaue well proportioned to represent that Idoll for that space. First, they wash him twice in a Lake, called the Lake of the Gods, and being purified, they attired him like the Idoll. Two of the Ancients of the Temple came to him nine dayes before the Feast, and humbling themselues before him, and with a loud voice, Sir, nine dayes hence your dancing must end, and you must dye: and hee must answere, (whatsoeuer hee thinketh) *In a good houre.* They diligently obserued if this aduertisement made him sad, or if he continued his dancing according to his wont. If they perceiued him sad, they tooke the sacrificing Rasors, which they washed and cleansed from the bloud, which thereon had remayned, and hereof with another liquor made of *Cacao*, mixed a drinke, which they said would make him forget what had beene said to him, and returne to his former iollitie. For they tooke this heauinesse in these men to be ominous.

On the Feast Day, after much honouring him, and incensing him, about midnight they sacrificed him, offering his heart to the Moone, and after cast it to the Idoll, letting the body fall downe the staires to the Merchants, who were the chiefe Worshippers. These hearts of their Sacrifices (some [h] say) were burned after the Oblation to this Planet and Idoll. The body they sauced and dressed for a Banquet about breake of day, after they had bid the Idoll good morrow with a small dance.

[h] *Pet. Martyr. Dec.5.*

This Temple of *Quetzalcoalt* had Chappels as the rest, and Chambers, where were Conuents of Priests, young men, Maydes, and Children. One Priest alone was resident which was changed weekly. His charge that week, after hee had instructed the Children, was to strike vp a Drumme at the Sunne setting, at the sound whereof (which was heard throughout the Citie) euery one ended his Marchandize and retired to his house, all the Citie being as silent, as if no bodie had beene there: at day breaking hee did againe giue notice by his Drumme: for till that time it was not lawfull to stirre out of the Citie. In this Temple was a Court, wherein they danced, and on this Idols Holy-day, had erected a Theater, thirty foot square, finely decked and trimmed, in which were represented Comedies, Masks, and many other representations, to expresse or cause mirth and ioy.

§. III.

Of their Schooles, Letters, and other their Opinions.

THe Mexicans [i] had their Schooles, and as it were Colledges or Seminaries, where the Ancients taught the Children to say by heart, the Orations, Discourses, Dialogues, and Poems, of their great Orators and chiefe Men, which thus were preserued by Tradition, as perfectly as if they had beene written. And in their Temples, the sonnes of the chiefe Men (as *Peter* [k] *Martyr* reporteth) were shut vp at seuen yeeres old, and neuer came forth thence till they were marriageable, and were brought forth to be contracted. All which time, they neuer cut their haire, they were clothed in blacke, abstained at certaine times of the yeere from meats engendring much bloud, and chastened their bodies with often fasting.

[i] *Acosta l.6.c.7.*

[k] *Pet. Martyr, Dec.5.lib.4.*

And although they had not Letters, [l] yet they had their Wheele for computation of time, (as it is said before) in which their writings were not as ours, from the left hand to the right, or as of the Easterne Nations, from the right hand to the left, or as the Chinois, from the top to the bottome: but beginning below did mount vpwards: as in that mentioned Wheele, from the Sunne, which was made in the Center, vpwards to the Circumference. Another manner of writing or signing, they had, in Circle-wise. In the Prouince of Yucatan or Honduras, there were Bookes of the leaues of Trees, folded and squared, which contained the knowledge of the Planets, of Beasts, and other Naturall things, and

[l] *Acosta l.6.c.9.* Indian writing

of

of their Antiquities, which some blindly-zealous Spaniards, taking for Inchantments, caused to be burned.

The [e] Indians of Tescuco, Talla, and Mexico, shewed vnto a Iesuite their Bookes, Histories, and Kalendars, which in Figures and Hieroglyphicks represented things after their manner. Such as had forme or figure, were represented by their proper Images, other things were represented by Characters; and I haue seene, saith *Acosta*, the *Pater Noster*, *Ave Maria*, and Confession thus written. As, for these things, *I a Sinner doe confesse my selfe*, they painted an Indian, kneeling on his knees, at a Religious mans feet; *To God most mightie*, they painted three faces with their Crownes, according to that painting blasphemy of the Popish Image-mongers, and so they went on in that manner of picturing the words of their Popish Confession; where Images failed, setting Characters; Their [a] Bookes for this cause were great, which (besides their engrauings in Stone, Walles, or Wood) they made of Cotton-wooll wrought into a kind of Paper, and of leaues of Metll, folded vp like our Broad-clothes, and written on both sides. Likewise they [o] made them of the thinne inner rinde of a Tree, growing vnder the vpper barke (as did also the Ancient Latines, from whence the names of *Codex* and *Liber* for a Booke, are deriued by our Grammarians.) They did bind them also into some forme of Bookes, compacting them with *Bitumen*: their Characters were of Fish-hookes, Starres, Snares, Files, &c. Thus did they keepe their priuate and publike Records.

There [p] were some in Mexico, that vnderstood each other by whistling, which was ordinarily vsed by Louers and Theeues; a Language admirable euen to our wits, so highly applauded by ourselues, and as deeply detecting these Nations in termes of sillinesse and simplicitie. Yes, in *Our Virginia* (so I hope and desire) Captaine *Smith* told mee that there are some, which the spacious diuorce of the wide streame notwithstanding, will by hallowes and hoopes vnderstand each other, and entertaine conference. The numbers of the Mexicans are simple, till you come to six, then they count sixe and one, sixe and two, sixe and three; ten is a number by it selfe, which in the insuing numbers, is repeated as in other Languages till fifteene, which they reckon in one terme, ten, fiue, and one, and so the rest to twentie. Some write [q] that the men in Mexico sate downe, and the women stood, when they made water.

The Mexicans [r] did beleeue concerning the soule, that it was immortall, and that men receiued either ioy or paine, according to their deserts and liuing in this World. They held for an assured faith, that there were nine places appointed for soules, and the chiefest place of glory to bee neere vnto the Sunne, where the soules of good men slaine in the Warres, and those which were sacrificed, are placed: that the soules of wicked men abide in the earth, and were diuided after this sort: children which were dead-borne, went to one place: those which dyed of age or other disease, went to another: those which died of wounds or contagion, to a third: those which were executed by order of Iustice, to a fourth; but Parricides which slew their Parents, or which slew their wiues or children, to a fift. Another place was for such as slew their Masters, or Religious persons. [s] *Acosta* seemeth to deny that the Indians beleeued any punishments after death, and yet setteth downe an Oration made at *Mutezumas* Election, wherein he is said to haue pierced the nine Vaults of heauen, which seemeth to allude to this of *Gomara*.

Their burials also were diuers, as is shewed before: and heere may bee added, that hee which died for Adultery, was shrowded like vnto their god of Leachery, called *Tlazoulteteel*, he that was drowned, like to *Tlaloc*: he that died of drunkennesse, like to the god of wine: *Ometochtli*; the Souldier, like to *Vitzilipuzli*. But lest you wish me buried in like manner, which trouble as much my English Reader, with New-Spaines tedious Relations, as Old-Spaines fastidious insulting spirits haue sometime done our English Nation, I will aduenture further into the adioyning Prouinces.

e *Cap.7.*

n *Gomara part. 1. p.3.69.*

b *Pet. Mart. Dec.4.l.8.*

p *Gomara vbi supra.* 6

q *Relat. del Tesmistitan ap. Ram. v.3.*

r *Gom. p.312.*

s *Acosta l.7.c.10*

CHAP.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of other places betwixt New Spaine, and the Straits of Dariene.

§. I.

10 *Of Iucatan, Acusamil, Guatimala, and Hondura.*

IVCATAN [t] is a point of Land extending it selfe into the Sea, ouer against the Isle Cuba, and was first discouered by *Francis Hernando de Cordova*, in the yeere 1517. at which time, one asking an Indian how this Countrey was called, he answered, *Tellatten, Tellatan*, that is, I vnderstand you not, which words the Spaniards corrupting, both in the sound and interpretation, called it *Iucatan. Iames Velasques*, Gouernour of Cuba, sent his Cousin, *Iohn de Grijalua* the yeere after, who there fought with the Indians at Campotan, and was hurt. The Spaniards [u] went to a Citie on the shore, which for the greatnesse they called Cayro, of that 20 great Citie in Ægypt. Here they found Turreted Houses, Stately Temples, Wayes paued, and faire Market-places. The houses were of stone or brick, and lyme, very artificially composed. To the square Courts or first habitations of their houses they ascended by ten or twelue steps. The roofe was of Reeds, or stalkes of Herbs. The Indians gaue the Spaniards Iewels of Gold, very faire and cunningly wrought, and were requited with Vestures of Silke and Woull, Glasse, Beads and little Bels. Their apparell was of Cotton in manifold fashions and colours. They frequented their Temples much, to the which the better sort paued wayes with stone from their houses. They were great Idolaters, and were circumcised, but not all. They liued vnder Lawes, and trafficked together with great fidelitie, by exchanging commodities without money. The Spaniards saw Crosses amongst them, and deman- 30 manding whence they had them, they said that a certaine man of excellent beauty passing by that coast, left them that notable token to remember him: others said, a certaine man brighter then the Sunne dyed in the working thereof. The Spaniards sayled thence to [x] Campechium, a towne or three thousand houses. Here they saw a square Stage or Pulpit foure Cubits high, partly of clammie Bitumen, and partly of small stones, whereto the image of a man cut in Marble, was ioyned, two foure-footed vnknowne beasts fetching vpon him, as if they would teare him in pieces. And by the Image stood a Serpent all besmeared with bloud, deuouring a Lyon, it was seuen and forty foot long, and as bigge as an Oxe. These things I mention as testimonies of their Art in these barbarous places; and perhaps of their deuotion also. *Grijalua* or *Grisalua* seeing a Tower farre off at Sea, by direction 40 therof, came to an Iland called Cosumel, agreeing in priuate and publike manner of life with them of Iucatan: Their Houses, Temples, apparell, and trade of Marchandize all one: their houses some where couered with Reeds, and where Quarries were, with Slate: many houses had Marble pillars.

They found Ancient Towres there, and the ruines of such as had been broken downe and destroyed: [z] there was one whereto they ascended by eighteene steps or staires. The Gouernour whom they supposed to be a Priest, conducted them to the Towre: in the top whereof they erected a Spanish Banner, and called also the Iland *Santa Cruce*. In the Towre they found chambers, wherein were marble Images, and some of Earth in the similitude of Beares. These they inuoked with loude singing all in one tune, and sacrificed vnto them with fumes 50 and sweet Odours, worshipping them as their Houshold Gods. There they performed their diuine ceremonies and adoration: they were also circumcised.

Gomara [y] saith, That heere, and at Xicalanco, the Diuell vsed to appeare visibly, and that these two were great in estimation for holinesse; euery Citie had their Temple, or Altar, where they worshipped their Idols, amongst which were many Crosses of Wood and Brasse, whereby some conceiue that some Spaniards had recourse hither when *Rodeirigo* was defeated, and Spaine ouer-runne by the Saracens. In [z] both these places they sacrificed men: which *Cortes* perswaded them to cease. The Temple in Cosumil or Acusamil was built 60 like a square Towre, broad at the foot, with steps round about, and from the middest vpward were strait: the top was hollow and couered with straw: it had foure windowes and Porches. In the hollow place was their Chappell, where stood their Idols. In a Temple by the Sea-side was an vncouth Idoll, great and hollow, fastened in the wall with lime: it was made of Earth. Behinde this Idols back was the Vestry, where the ornaments of the

t *Lop. de Gom. part. 1. pa. 10. & gen. hist. cap. 52.*

u *Pet. Mart. Dec. 4 lib. 1.*

Circumcision and Crosses.

x This towne was taken by *M. Will. Parker, Anno. 1596.*

y *Gomar. gene. hist. cap. 54.*

z *Gomar. par. 1. pa. 536.*

Temple were kept. The Priests had a litle secret doore hard adioyning to the Image, by which they crept into his hollow panch, and thence answered the people that came thither with Prayers and Petitions, making the simple people beleeue it was the voyce of the god, which therefore they honoured more then any other, with many perfumes and sweet smels. They offered Bread, Fruit, Quailes bloud, and of other Birds, Dogs, and sometimes Men. The fame of this Idoll and Oracle brought many Pilgrimes to Acusamil from many places. At the foot of this Temple was a plot like a Church-yard, well walled, and garnished with Pinnacles, in the middest whereof stood a Crosse of tenne foot long, which they adored for the god of raine. At all times when they wanted raine, they would goe thither on Procession deuoutly, and offered to the Crosse Quailes sacrificed, no Sacrifice being so acceptable. They burnt sweet Gumme to perfume him with, besprinkling the same with water, and by this meanes they thought to obtaine raine. They could neuer know, saith *Gomara*, how that the *God of the Crosse* came amongst them, for in all those parts of India, there is no memory of any preaching of the Gospell that had beene at any time. What others thinke, and what some Indians answered, concerning it, is said before.

b H. Benzo l.2. cap.15.

Benzo [b] writeth, That they did not eat the flesh of those men which they sacrificed: and that they were first subdued by *Francis Montegius*, whose cruelties were such, that *Alquimtep*, a Cacique or Indian Lord aboue an hundred and ten yeeres old, and a Christian, told him That when he was a yong man, there was a sicknesse of wormes, that they thought all would haue dyed: (they were not onely ejected by vomite, but did eate out themselues a passage throw mens bodies) and not long before the Spaniards arriuall, they had two battels with the Mexicans, in which an hundred and fiftie thousand men perished. But all this was light in respect of that Spanish burthen.

c Bot l.5. part.1. Guatimala, or Saint Iames.

Guatimala [c] commeth next to our consideration, a Prouince of pleasant Ayre, and fertile soyle, where groweth abundance of their Cacao, which is a fruit that serueth the Indians for meat, drinke, and money. The Citie (which beareth the same name) was first at the foot of a *Vulcano* or Hill which casteth fire, but because in the yeere 1542. [d] on the sixe and twentieth day of December, a Lake hidden in the bowels of that Hill, brake forth in many places, and with a terrible violence ruined the most part of the Citie: it was remoued two miles thence, together with the Episcopall Sea, and the Kings Councell. But in the yeere 1581. there issued from another *Vulcan* two miles off, or somewhat more, such an eruption of fire as threatned to consume euery thing. The day following, followed such a showre of Ashes, that it filled the Valley, and almost buried the Citie. And yet were not all the throwes passed of this Hils monstrous trauels, but the yeere after, for the space of foure & twenty houres thence issued a streame of fire, that dranke vp fiue streames of water, burned the stones and Rockes, rent the Ayre with thunders, and made it a wauing and mouing Sea of fire. Before [e] that first eruption of waters, some Indians came and told the Bishop, that they had heard an vncredible noyse and murmuring at the foot of the Hill: but he reproued them, saying, they should not trouble themselues with vaine and superstitious feares; about two of the clocke in the night following, happened that deluge, which carried away many houses, and whatsoeuer stood in the way, in which 520. Spaniards perished, and scarce any mention of the houses remained.

d Benzo l.2. cap.1.

e Gasper Ens l.3. cap.6.

f M. Benzo l.2. cap 16. Gomar. Histor. Gen cap.209.

It is worthy recitall which *Benzo* [f] and *Gomara* haue recorded, that *Peter Alvarado* the Gouernour (who by licence of the Pope had married two sisters, the Ladie *Frances*, and the Ladie *Beatrice della Cuiua*) hauing perished by a mischance, his wife not onely painted her house with Sorrowes blacke Liuerie, and abstained from meat and sleepe, but in a mad impietie said, *God could now doe her no greater euill.* Yet for all this her sorrow, shee caused the Citizens to be sworne vnto her Gouernment (a new thing in the Indies.) Soone after, this inundation hapned, which first of all assailed the Gouernours house, and caused this impotent and impatient Ladie, now to be thinke her of a deuotion, and betake her to her Chappell, with eleuen of her Maids, where leaping on the Altar, and clasping about an Image, the force of the water ruined the Chappell; wheras, if she had stayed in her bed-chamber, she had escaped death. They tell of vncouth noyses, and hideous apparitions which then were seene. *Benzo* obserued by his owne experience, that this Country is much subiect to Earth-quakes. The Guatimalans in manner of life resemble the Mexicans and Nicaraguans.

g Benzo lib.2. cap.15.

Fondura, [g] or Hondura is next to Guatimala, wherein were (saith *Benzo*) at the Spaniards first comming thither foure hundred thousand Indians, but when I was there, scarcely eight thousand were left: the rest being slaine, or sold, or consumed by the Mines: and those which are left, both heere, and in other places, place their habitation as farre as they can, where the Spaniard shall be no eye-sore vnto them. The Spaniards in this Prouince planted fiue Spanish Colonies, which all scarcely could number an hundred and twentie houses.

SECT.

§. II.

Of Nicaragua, their Plentie, and exceeding Superstition.

NIcaragua [a] extendeth it selfe from the Chiulatecan Mines of Fondura, toward the South Sea. This Region is not great, but fertile, and therefore called of the Spaniards *Mahomets Paradise*, for the plentie of all things; yet in the Summer time it is so scorched with heate, that men cannot trauell but in the night. Sixe moneths, from *May* to *October*, are pestered with continuall showres, which the other six wholly want. The Parrots are here as troublesome as Crowes and Rookes with vs, and they are forced to keep their corne in like manner from their spoyling. The people are of like condition to the Mexicans they feed on mans flesh. To their dances they flocke two or three hundred in a companie, which are performed with great varietie of gestures, vestures, and passions: Euery man in, and, euery man out of his humour. Thirtie and fue miles from Legeon or Lyon, an Episcopall Citie in this Region, is a *Vulcano* or flaming Hill, the fire whereof may be seene (in the night) aboue one hundred miles. Some had a conceit, that molten gold was the matter of this fire. And therefore a certaine Dominican caused a Kettle and long chaine of Yron to bee let downe into this fierie concauitie, where by the violence of the heat, the Kettle and part of the chaine was molten. He makes a bigger and stronger, but returnes with like successe, and this added, that himselfe and his two companions by eruption of fire, had almost beene consumed. *Gomara* [b] calls this fire *Bisfo de Tonesta*, and the hill, *Masaya*. It goes downe two hundred and fiftie braces or yards. In this Country they vsed Sodomie and sacrifices of Men. Of this name *Nicaragua*, *Gilgonsales*, (that first of the Spaniards discouered these parts) found a King, with whom he had much conference, whom he perswaded to become a Christian, although his prohibition of warres and dancing did much trouble him. This *Nicaragua* [b] demanded them if the Christians had any knowledge of the Floud, which drowned all the Earth with men and beasts (as he had heard his Progenitors say) and whether another were to come; whether the Earth should be ouerturned, or the Heauen fall: when, and how the Moone and Starres should lose their light and motion: who moued those heauenly bodies; where the soules should remaine; and what they should doe, being freed from the bodie, whether the Pope dyed, whether the Spaniards came from Heauen, and many other strange questions admirable in an Indian. They worshipped the Sun and other Idols, which *Nicaragua* suffered *Gilgonsales* to take out of the great Temple.

In Nicaragua [c] there were fue linages, and different languages: the Coribici, Giocotoga, Ciondale, Oretigua, and the Mexican; though this place was a thousand miles from Mexico, yet were they like them in speech, apparell, and religion: they had also the same figures in stead of Letters, which those of Culhua had, and bookes a span broad, and twelue spans long, doubled of many colours. They differ as in Languages, so in Religions. Of their religious rites thus writeth *Gomara*: their Priests were all married, except their *Confessors*, which heard Confessions, and appointed Penances, according to the qualitie of the fault: they reuealed not the Confession: they appointed the Holy-dayes, which were eighteene. When they sacrificed, they had a Knife of flint, wherewith they o ened him that was sacrificed. The Priests appointed the Sacrifices; how many men, whether they were to be women, or slaues taken in battell; that all the people might know how to celebrate the Feasts, what Prayers and what offerings to make. The Priest went three times about the Captiue, singing in a dolefull tune, and suddenly opens his breast, anoints his face with the bloud, takes out his heart, diuideth his body. The heart is giuen to the Prelate, the feet and hands to the King, the buttocks to the taker, the rest to the people. The heads of the Sacrifices are set on Trees, planted there for that purpose, euery tree hath figured in it the name of the Prouince wherwith they haue wars. Vnder these trees they many times sacrifice men and children of the Country; and of their owne people, being first bought: for it was lawfull for the Father to sell his children. Those which the [d] Kings bring vp of their owne people, with better fare then ordinary for sacrifice, are made beleeue, they shall be some canonized Wights, or Heauenly Deities, and therefore take it gladly. They did not eate the flesh of these, as they did of the captiues. When they ate their sacrificed captiues, they made great Feasts, and the Priests and Religious men dranke much wine and smoke; their wine is of Prunes: whiles the Priest anoints the cheekes and mouth of the Idoll with the bloud, the others sing, and the people make their Prayers with great deuotion and teares, and after goe on Procession (which is not done in all Feasts.) The Religious haue white Cotten-coats, and other ornaments which hang downe from the shoulders to the legs, therby to put a difference between them & others. The Laymen haue their Banners, with that Idol which they most esteem, and bags with dust & bodkins; the yong men haue their Bowes, Darts, Arrows, & the guide of all

a *Chap. 16.*

b *Gom. gen. Hist. cap. 203.*

c *P. M. Dec. 6. lib. 4.*

d *Gom. c. 206.*

Confession.

d *Pet. Mart. Dec. 6. l. 6. & 7.*

is the Image of the Deuill set vpon a Lance, carried by the most ancient and Honourable Priest. They goe in order, the Religious singing till they come to the place of their Idolatry, where being arriued, they spread couerings on the ground, or strew it with Roses and Flowres, because their Idols should not touch the ground, and the Banner being stucke fast, the singing ceaseth, and the Prelate beginning, all the rest follow, and draw bloud, some from their tongues, some from their eares, some from their members, and euery man as his deuotion liketh best, and with that bloud anoint the Image. In the meane-while, the youths skirmish and dance for the honour of their Feasts: they cure the wounds, with the poulder of hearbs and eoles. In some of these Processions they hallow Mayz, besprinkling the same with the bloud of their Priuities, and eate it.

They may haue many women, but one is their lawfull wife, which they marrie thus; the Priest takes the Bridegroome and the Bride by the little fingers, sets them in a chamber at a fire, and giues them certain instructions, and when the fire is out, they are maried. If he takes her for a Virgin, and finds her otherwise, he may diuorce her. Many bring their wiues to the *Caciques*, or Lords to corrupt them, esteeming it an honour. Their [e] Temples were low, darke roomes, which they vsed for their Treasurie also and Armourie. Before the Temple was an high Altar for the Sacrifices, whereon the Priest played the Preacher first, and then the Butcher.

[e] Pet. Mart. Dec. 6.

Adulterers are beaten, but not slaine; the adulterous wife is diuorced, and may not marry againe, and her Parents are dishonoured. Their Husbands suffer them to lye with others in some Feasts of the yeare. He that forceth a Virgin, is a slaue, or payeth her dowrie: if a Slaue doe it with his Masters Daughter, they are both buried quicke. They haue common Brothels. A Thiefe hath his haire cut off, and is made the Slaue from whom he hath stolne, vntill he hath made satisfaction; which if he deferre long, he is sacrificed. They had no punishment for him which should kill a *Cacique*, for (they said) such a thing could not happen.

§. III.

Of the strange creatures in these parts; of NOMBRE DE DIOS; *and the Spanish mysteries at their first Plantation.*

§ Petero.

THe riches of Nicaragua [f] consisteth much in a great Lake three hundred miles long, and being within twelue miles of the South Sea, doth disembogue it selfe in the North-Sea, a great way off. In this Lake of Nicaragua are many and great fishes. [g] One strange kinde is that, which the Inhabitants of Hispaniola call *Manati* (as for the Inhabitants of the place, the Spanish iniuries haue chased them thence.)

[f] Benzo lib. 2. cap. 14. Gomara part. 2. cap. 32.

[g] Benzo lib. 2. cap. 14. Gomara part. 2. cap. 32.

*This Fish some what resembleth the Otter, it is fiue and twenty foot long, twelue thicke, the head and tayle like a Cow, with small eyes, his backe hard and hairy, he hath onely two feet at the shoulders, and those like an Elephants. The females bring forth young, and nourish them with the Vdder, like a Cow. I haue seene and eaten of them (saith *Benzo*) the taste is like Swines flesh; they eate Grasse. There was a King in Hispaniola, which put one of them (being presented him by his Fishermen) into a Lake of standing-waters, where it liued fiue and twenty yeares: when any of the seruants came to the Lake and called *Matto, Matto*, she would come and receiue meat at their hands: and if any would bee ferried ouer the Lake, she willingly yeelded her backe, and performed this Office faithfully, yea, she hath carrien ten men at once, singing or playing. A Spaniard had once wronged her, by casting a dart at her; and therefore after that, when she was called, she would plunge downe againe, otherwise to the Indians shee remained officious. Shee would be as full of play as a Monkey, and would wrastle with them: especially shee was addicted to one yong man, which vsed to her. This proceded, partly from her docible nature, partly, because being taken yong, she was kept vp a while at home, in the Kings house, with bread. This Fish lineth both on Land and Water. The Riuer swelling ouer his Banks, into the Lake, this Fish followed the streame, and was seene no more. There was another strange creature in Nicaragua (they call it *Cascuij*) like a blacke Hogge, with small eyes, wide eares, clouen feet, a short trunke or snowt like an Elephant, of so lowd a braying, that he would make men deafe. Another there is, with a naturall purse vnder her belly, wherein she putteth her yong: it hath the bodie of a Fox, handed and footed like a Monkey. The Bats in these parts are terrible for biting. The Inhabitants neere the Riuer Suerus are not differing from the rest, but that they eate not mans flesh. Next is that necke or narrow extent of Land stretching betweene the North and South-Seas, and (as it were) knitting the two great *Peninsul's* of the North and South America together.

h Pet. Mart. Dec. 3. l. 8.

Nombre

Nombre de Dios signifieth the name of God, occasioned by the words of *Didacus Niguesa*, who after disastrous aduentures elsewhere, came hither, and here bade his men goe on shore *in the name of God*; whereupon the Colony and Plantation there, was so called. It hath a bad situation and small habitation. *Baptista Antonio* the King of Spaines Surueyour counselled to bring *Nombre de Dios* to *Puerto Bello*. It was remoued from the former seat, in the yeare of our Lord 1584. Sir *Thomas Baskeuile* burnt it, and went from thence with his Armie towards Panama, in the yeare 1595. Darien was called *Antiqua Dariena*, because *Ancisus* vowed to our Lady at Siuill called *Maria Antiqua*, if she would helpe him in those Indian Conquests, hee would turne the Caciques house into a Temple: there he planted a Colony.

10 It would be tedious to tell of the sturres, and ciuill vnciuill brawles betwixt the Spaniards in these parts. *Vasques Valboa* imprisoned *Ancisus*, and after recouered his credit by discouerie of the South-Sea. For whiles the Spaniards contended about the weight and sharing of their Gold, which a Cacique had giuen them, this Cacique being present, hurled downe the Gold, not a little marueiling (as he said) that they would so much contend for that, as if they could eate or drinke it: But if they liked it so well, hee would carry them where their Golden-thirst should be satisfied. He was deceiued in the nature of that dropsie-thirst, which as a fire quenched with oyle, receiues thence greater strength: but hee deceiued not them in his promise, bringing them to the South-Sea: where *Valboa* named one Prouince, *Golden Castile*. And for that which he spake of their strife, [a] as if they could eate or drinke

a *Beroy.l.1.c.13.*

20 those Metals, the cruelties of the Spaniards were such, as the Indians, when they got any of them, would bind their hands and feet, and laying them on their backs, would powre Gold into their mouthes, saying, in insultation, *Eat Gold Christian*. This *Valboa* was put to death, by *Arias* his Father-in-law.

But now we haue mentioned the first Spaniards which planted these parts, it shall not be amisse, to mention some hardships the Spaniards sustained before they could here settle themselues, which may be an answere to those nice and delicate conceits, that in our Virginian Expedition cast off all hope, because of some disasters. How the Spaniards dealt one with another, and how the Indians dealt with them, you haue heard: worse hath not followed from any turbulent emulous spirit of our owne; or hostile, of the Virginian, in this

30 Plantation. And as for famine, *Nicuesa's* men were so pinched, that (not to speake of those which perished, one sold [b] an old leane mangie Dogge to his fellowes for many Castellans of Gold: these flayed the Dogge, and cast his mangie skin, with the bones of the head among the bushes. The day following, one of them finds it full of Maggots, and stinking: but famine had neither eyes nor scent: he brought it home, sod, and ate it, and found many Customers which gaue a [c] *Castellan* a dish for that mangie Broth. Another found two Toads, and sod them, which a sicke man bought for two fine shirts curiously wrought with Gold. Others found a dead man, rotten, and stinking, which putrified carkaile they roasted, and ate. And thus, from seuen hundred and seuenty men, they were brought so low, that scarce forty (shadowes of men) remained to inhabite Dariena. Much like to this was their successe at the Riuer of Plate, in Florida and other places of the West-Indies.

b *P. Mart. Dec.2.l.10.*

c Seuen shillings and sixe pence.

40 What *Iohn Oxenam*, Sir *Francis Drake*, Master *Christopher Newport*, and other our Worthy Country-men haue atchieued in these parts against the Spaniards, Master *Hakluyt* in his Voyages relateth. It is time for vs to passe beyond the Darien Straits, vnto that other great *Chersonesus* or Peruvian AMERICA.

50

60

RELATIONS OF THE DISCOVERIES, REGIONS, AND RELIGIONS, OF THE *NEW WORLD.*

OF CVMANA, GVIANA, BRASILL, CHICA, CHILI, PERV, AND OTHER REGIONS OF *AMERICA, PERWIANA*, AND OF their Religions.

THE NINTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Of the Southerne America, *and of the Countries on the Sea-coast betwixt Darlene and Cumana.*

§. I.

Of the great Riuers in these parts, and of Darlene.

His *Peninsula* of the New World extending it selfe into the South, is in forme somewhat like to Africa, and both [a] to some huge *Pyramis*. In this, the *Basis* or ground is the Northerly part, called *Terra Firma*, from whence it lesseneth it selfe by degrees, as it drawetch neerer the Magellan Straits, where the top of this Spire may fitly bee placed. On the East side it is washed with the North Ocean, as it is termed: On the West with that of the South, called also the Peaceable. It is [b] supposed to haue sixteene thousand miles in compasse, foure thousand in length: the breadth is vnequall. The Easterne part thereof, betweene the Riuers Maragnon and Plata, is challenged by the Portugals; the rest by the Spaniard. From the North to the South are ledges of Mountaines, the tops whereof are said to be higher then that Birds will visit; the bottomes yeeld the greatest Riuers in the World, and which most enrich the Oceans store-house. Orenoque, Maragnon, and Plata seeme to be the Indian *Triumuirs*, Generals of those Riuers-Armies, and *Neptunes* great Collectors of his watery tributes. Orenoque for ships is nauigable a thousand miles; for lesse Vessels, two thousand in some places twentie miles broad; in some, thirtie.

a *Gas. Ens. lib. 3 cap. 24.*

b *Rotero part. 2 lib. 6.*

Ber-

Berreo affirmed to Sir *Walter Raleigh*, That a hundred Riuers fell into it, marching vnder his name and colours, the least as bigge as *Rio Grande* [a] one of the greatest Riuers of America. It extendeth two thousand miles East and West, and commandeth eight hundred miles, North and South. Plata, taking vp all the streames, in his way, is so full swolne with his increased store, that he seemeth rather with bigge lookes to bid defiance to the Ocean, then to acknowledge homage, opening his mouth fortie leagues wide, as if he would deuoure the same; and with his vomited abundance maketh the salt waters to recoyle, following *fresh* in this pursuit, till in *sals* sweates at last he melteth himselfe in the Combate. Maragnon is farre greater, whose water hauing furrowed a Channell of sixe thousand miles, in the length of his winding passage, couereth threescore and ten leagues in breadth, and hideth his Bankes [b] on both sides from him which sayleth in the middest of his proud Current, making simple eyes beleeue, that the Heauens alway descend to kisse and embrace his waues. And sure, our more-straitned world would so far be accessary to his aspiring, as to style him with the royall title of Sea, and not debase his greatnesse with the meaner name of a Riuer. *Grana* somewhat otherwise writeth of these Riuers, that Plata called by the Indians Paranaguetu, as one should say, a Riuer like a Sea, is twenty fiue leagues in the mouth, (placed by him in thirty three degrees of Southerly latitude) encreasing in the same time and manner as Nilus: Maragnon (hee saith) is in the entrance fiue leagues, and is not the same with Orellana (so called of *Francis Orella*, the the first Spaniard that sayled in it, and Amazones, of the fabulous reports, as *Grana* termeth them, of such women there seene) which hee sayth hath aboue fifty leagues of breadth in the mouth, and is the greatest Riuer of the World, called by some the fresh Sea, running aboue fifteene hundred leagues vnder the Æquinoctiall. Thus much Hee, though lesse then others, yet more then can bee paraleld in any other streames. This Southerne halfe of America hath also, at the Magellane Straits, contracted, and (as it were) shrunke in it selfe, refusing to be extended further in so cold a Climate. The manifold riches of Metals, Beasts, and other things, in the beginning of the former Booke haue beene declared; and in this, as occasion moueth shall bee further manifested. The Men are the worst part, as being in the greatest parts thereof inhumane and brutish. The Spanish Townes in this great tract and their Founders, are set downe by *Pedro de* [c] *Cieza, Herera*, and others. I rather intend Indian Superstitions, then Spanish plantations in this part of my Pilgrimage.

Of the Townes of [d] *Nombre de Dios*, seuenteene leagues from Panama, the one on the North Sea, the other on the South, and of Dariene, wee last tooke our leaues, as vncertaine whether to make them Mexican or Peruvian, being borderers, and set in the Confines, betwixt both. The moorishfoyle, muddie water, and grosse Ayre, conspire with the heauenly Bodies to make Dariene vnwholesome: the myrie streame runneth (or creepeth rather) very slowly; the water [e] but sprinkled on the house-floore, engendreth Toades and Wormes.

They [f] haue in this Prouince of Dariene store of Crocodiles, one of which kinde, *Cieza* saith, was found fine and twentie foot long; Swine without tailes; Cats with great tailes; Beasts clouen-footed like Kine, otherwise resembling Mules, sauing their spacious eares, and a trunke or snowt like an Elephant; there are Leopards, Lyons, Tygres. On the right and left hand of Dariene are found twenty Riuers, which yeeld Gold. The Men are of good stature, thinne haired; the Women weare Rings on their eares and notes, with quaint ornaments on their lips. The Lords marry as many Wiues as them listeth, other men, one or two. They forsake, change, and sell their Wiues at pleasure. They haue publike Stewes of women, and of men also in many places without any discredit; yea, this priuiledgeth them from following the warres. The yong Girles hauing conceiued, eate certain herbs, to cause abortion. Their Lords and Priests consult of warres, after they haue drunke the smoke of a [h] certaine herbe. The Women follow their husbands to the warres, and know how to vse a Bow. They all paint themselues in the warres. They neede no Head-pieces, for their heads are so hard, that they will breake a Sword, being smitten thereon. Wounds receiued in warre, are the badges of honour, whereof they glory much, and thereby enioy some Franchises.

a *See infra.* §. 2

b *Calum vndiq; & vndiq; pontus Nil nisi pontus & aer.*

H. Giraua l.2.

Vega pag.2. lib.3. cap.4. faith that they were fierce women which followed their Husbands in the warres, and fought with the Enemie: These Orellana to make greater account of his Discoueries, reported to bee Amazons: and sued to the Emperour to be employed in that seruice and conquest of the Land of Amazons. *William Davies* sent hither in the fleet of the Duke of Florence, telsoa small low Iland called Morria, in this Riuer, inhabited only by women, which goe naked, and vse Bow and Arrowes (as doe the men in the parts adioyning) for the killing of their owne food, their haire long, their breests hanging lowe. Hee sayth, he hath seene forty or fifty together going along by the Sea side, & when they espied a fish, to shoote at it, and presently throwing downe their Bowes to leape into the Sea after their Arrow, bringing the same to Land with the fastned prey: in all other things, as lodging, meat-dressing, &c. like the Neighbour Inhabitants. Only they liue sequestred from men, except in one moneth of the yeare, when the men resort for copulation to them, and carry away the male children they finde. The other they educate. They carrie their children at their backes like Tinkers budgets, and giue them the breast ouer the shoulder. Thus farre *Davies*. As for that vninamman rite he denies it; of their wars except against fishes and other food no mention; and that by their liuing without men, may either be caused by the vnholsomnesse to that sexe, as irreported of an Iland neere Zocotori, or for some other reason, which I leaue to the Readers search or credit.

c *Pedro de Cieza de Leon. Cieza. del Peru.*

d Eastward from this Towne certain Negro statues made a head, and toyning with the Indians, vsed to rob the Spaniards. *Herr. l.2. c.9.*

e *Linschoten. P. Mart. Dec.3. lib.6.*

f *Gomar Gen. lib.6.c.67.*

g *P.M. Dec.3. lic.4.*

h Tobacco.

chiefs: They brand their prisoners and pull out one of their teeth before. They will sell their children; are excellent Swimmers, both Men and Women; accustoming themselves twice or thrice a day thereunto. Their Priests are their Physicians, and Masters of Ceremonies; for which cause, and because they haue conference with the Deuill, they are much esteemed. They haue no Temples, nor Houses of deuotion. The Deuill they honour much, which in terrible shapes doth sometimes appeare vnto them; as I (saith *Pizaro*) haue heard some of them say. They beleeue, that there is one God in heauen, to wit, the Sunne, and that the Moone is his wife; and therefore worship these two Planets. They worship the Deuill also, and paint him in such forme as he appeareth to them, which is of diuers sorts. They offer Bread, Smoke, Fruits, and Flowres with great deuotion. Any one may cut off his arme which stealeth *Mau. Enciso*, with his Armie of Spaniards seeking to subdue these parts, vsed a Spanish tricke, telling the Indians, That hee sought their conuersion to the Faith; and therefore discoursed of *One God, Creator of all things*, and of Baptisme; and after other things of this nature, lesse to his purpose, he told them, That the Pope is the Vicar of Christ in all the world, with absolute power ouer mens Soules and Religions; and that hee had giuen those Countries to the most mightie King of Spaine, his Master, and hee was now come to take possession, and to demand gold for tribute. The Indians answered, That they liked well what he had spoken of one God, but for their Religion, they would not dispute of it, or leaue it: And for the Pope, he should be liberall of his owne; neither seemed it, that their King was mightie, but poore, that sent thus a begging. But what words could not, their Swords effected, with the destruction of the Indians.

l Pizarro Chron. Per. p. 1. c. 8.

§. II.

Of Vraba, Carthagena, and the Superstitions of Dabaiba.

THE foyle of Vraba is so fatned with a streame therein, that in eight and twentie dayes the seeds of Cucumbers, Melons, and Gourds, will ripen their Fruits. There is [l] a Tree in those Countries, whose leaues, with the bare touch, cause great blisters: the Iuiour of the wood is poyson; and cannot be carried without danger of life, except by the helpe of another herbe, which is an Antidote to this venomous Tree. [m] King *Abibaiba* had Palace in a Tree, by reason of the moorish situation and often inundation of his Land. *Vasques* could not get him downe, till he began to cut the Tree, and then the poore King came downe, and bought his freedome at the Spaniards price.

l *Pet. Martyr, Dec. 3. l. 6.*
m *Pet. Martyr, Dec. 2. l. 4.*

Carthagena was so called, for some resemblance in the situation to a Citie in Spaine of that name. *Sir Francis Drake* tooke it. The Indians thereabouts vsed poisoned Arrowes: the women warre as well as the men. *Enciso* took one, who with her owne hands had killed eight and twenty Christians. They did eate the Enemies which they killed. They vsed to put in their Sepulchres gold, feathers, and other riches. Betweene Carthagena and Martha runneth a swift Riuer, which maketh the Sea-water to giue place; and they which passe by, may in the Sea take in of this water fresh.

It is called of the Inhabitants *Dabaiba* (the Spaniards haue named it *Rio Grande* and the Riuer of Saint *John*) it passeth with a Northerne discourse, into the Gulfe of Vrba before mentioned. They which dwell on this Riuer, obserue an Idoll of great note, called by the name of the Riuer, *Dabaiba*: whereto the King at certaine times of the yeere sends slaues to be sacrificed, from remote Countries, from whence also is great resort of Pilgrims. They kill the slaues before their God, and after burne them, supposing that odour acceptable to their Idoll, as Taper-lights, and Frankincense (saith *Martyr*) is to our Saints. Through the displeasure of that angry God, they said that all the Riuers and Fountaines had once failed, and the greatest part of men perished with famine. Their Kings in remembrance hereof, haue their Priests at home, and Chappels which are swept euery day, and kept with a religious neatnesse. When the King thinketh to obtaine of the Idoll, Sunne-shine, or Raine, or the like; he with his Priests gets vp into a Pulpit, standing in the Chappell, purposing not to depart thence till his suit be granted. They vrge their God therefore with vehement prayers, and cruell fasting: the people meane-while macerating themselues also with fasting, in foure dayes space not eating nor drinking, except on the fourth day, onely a little broth. The Spaniards asking what God they worshipped thus, they answered, The Creator of the Heauens, Sunne, Moone, and all inuisible things, from whom all good things proceed. And they say *Dabaiba* [n] was the Mother of that Creator. They call them to their Deuotions with certaine Trumpets and Bels of gold. The Bels had clappers like in forme to ours, made of the bones of Fishes, and yeelding a pleasing sound, as they reported: which no doubt,

Rio Grande.

n They say *Dabaiba* was a woman of great wisdome, honoured in her life, Deified after death; to whom they ascribe thunder and lightnings when she is angry.

doubt, was a pleasing sound and musicke to the Spaniards couetous hearts, howsoeuer it agreeth with the nature of that metall to ring in the eares. One of them, say they, weighed sixe hundred • Pensa. Their Priests were enioyned chastitie, which vow, if they violated, they were either stoned or burned. Other men also in the time of that fast, likewise contained themselues from those carnall pleasures. They haue an imagination of the soule (but know not what substance or name to ascribe vnto it) to which yet they beleeued, was assigned future ioyes or woes, according to their demerits, pointing vp to Heauen, and downe to the Center, when they spake thereof. Many of their Wiues (for they might haue many) followed the Sepulchres of their husbands. They allow not marriage with the Sister, of which they haue a ridiculous conceit of the Spot, which they account a Man, in the Moone, that for this Incest was thither confined, to the torments of cold and mo ysture, in that Moone-prison. They leaue trenches on their Sepulchres, in which they yeerely powre Mays, and some of their Wine (to the profit) as they thinke of the Ghosts. If a Mother die while she giueth sucke, the poore nursling must not bee Orphan, but bee interred with her, being put there to her brest, and buried alue. They imagined that the Soules of their great men and their familiars were immortall, but not others: and therefore such of their seruants and friends as would not be buried with them, they thought should lose that priuiledge of Immortalitie, and the delights of those pleasant places, where was eating, drinking, dancing, and the former delicacies of their former liues. They renue the funerall pompe of these great men yeerely, assembling thither with plentie of Wine and meats, and there watch all night (especially the women) singing dreire lamentations, with Inuectiues against his Enemies, if he dyed in the warres, yea, cutting the Image of his Enemy in pieces in reuenge of their slaine Lord. This done, they fall to drinking of Mays Wine till they be weary, if not drunken. Yet after this, they resume their Songs to his commendation, with many dances and adorations. When day appeareth, they put the Image of the deceased into a great Canoa (a Boat of one Tree, capeable of threescore Oares) filled with drinkes, herbes, and such things as in his life he had loued: which some carrie vpon their shoulders in Procession about the Court, and set it downe there againe, and burne it with all the contents. After which, the women, filled with Wine, and emptied of all modestie, with loose haire, secrets not secret, and varietie of *Bacchanal* gestures, sometimes goe, sometimes fall, sometimes shake the weapons of the men, and conclude with beastly sleeping on the ground. The young men exercise their dances and songs, piercing the middle of their priuie member with the sharpe bone of the Ray-fish, bedewing the pauement with the bloud. And their *Bauis*, who are their Physicians, and Priests, heale the same againe in 4. dayes. They haue in those parts Magicians, without whose aduice they attempt nothing: and neyther hunt, fish, nor gather gold, except the *Tequenigua*, or *vicard* thinke it fit.

o *Pensum* exceedeth the Ducat a fourth part. *A Pez.*

To end this *Dabaiban* Story, *Martyr* saith (for I will not further engage my credit for the truth) that in Camara, which is at the head of this Riuer, there happened most terrible tempests from the East, which threw downe Trees and Houses; and in the last Act of that Tragedie, were brought (not by representation) two foule Monsters of monstrous Fowles, such as the Poets describe the *Harpies*, with womens faces; one of them so great, that her legs were thicker then a mans thigh; so heauy, that the boughes of the Trees could not beare her; so strong that she would seize on a man, and flye away with him, as a Kite with a Chicken: the other was lesse, and supposed to bee the young one of the former. *Corales, Osorius*, and *Spinosa*, told *Martyr*, that they spake with many who saw the greater killed, which was done by a stratagème; for they made the Image of a man, and set it on the ground, attending in the Woods with their Arrowes, till shee the next morning seized on this prey, and lost her selfe; the young was neuer seene after; and happily you thinke, not before neither. But they added, that the killers of her were honoured as Gods, and rewarded with presents.

Monstrous Harpyes.

§. III.

Of Tunia, Saint Martha, Venezuela, and Curiana.

p *Linschot. l. 2.*

IN the Valley of Tunia, P or Tomana, are Mines of Emeralds. The people worship the Sunne for their chiefe God, with such awfull deuotion, that they dare not looke stedfastly vpon it; the Moone also they worship, but in an inferiour degree. In their Warres, in stead of Ensignes, they tye the bones of certaine men (who in their liues had beene valiant) vpon long staues, to prouoke others to the like fortitude. They bury

bury their Kings with golden neck-laces, set with Emeralds, and with Bread and Wine. The people about *Rio Grande* are Canibals, also about Saint *Martha*. The Tunians vse poysoned Arrowes: and when they go to the Warres they carry their Idoll *Chuppen* with them; vnto whom, before they enter into the field, they offer many Sacrifices of liuing men, being the children of Slaues, or of their Enemies, painting all the Image with bloud; which done, they eate the flesh. Returning Conquerers, they hold great Feasts, with dancing, leaping, singing drinking themselues drunke, and againe besmeare their Image with bloud. If they were ouercome, they sought by new Sacrifices to appease *Chieppen*. They demanded counsell of their Gods for their Marriages, and other affaires. For these consultations they obserued a kind of Lent two moneths, in which they lay not with women, nor ate Salt. They had Monasteries of Boyes and Girles, where they liued certaine yeeres. They corrected puha like faults, as stealing, and killing, by cutting off the eares, and nose; hanging; and it hee were a Nobleman, by cutting off his haire. In gathering Emeralds they first vsed certaine Charmes. They vsed to sacrifice Birds, and many other things.

Saint *Martha* standeth about fifty leagues from Carthagena, at the foot of certaine Hils, alway crowned with Snow. The Indians q here are very valourous, and vse poysoned Arrowes. They make Bread of Iucca, a root as bigge as a mans arme, or legge, the iuyce whereof is poyson in the Ilands, and therefore they presse it betweene two stones: but in the firme Land they drinke it rawe; and both heere and there sodden, they vse it for Vineger; and being sodden till it be very thicke, for Honey. This Bread is their *Cusani*, not so good as that of *Maiz*. I haue seene a Plant of this herbe growing in Master *Gerards* r Garden, the Picture whereof he hath expressed in his Herball. The people are abominable Sodomites, a badge whereof they ware about their neckes; a Chaine, with the resemblance of two men committing this villany. In Gayra the Sodomites were attired like women, others were shauen like Friers. They had women which preserued their Virginities: these addicted themselues to hunting, with Bow and Arrowes, alone: they might lawfully kill any that sought to corrupt them. These people were Canibals, and eate mans flesh, fresh and powdered: the young Boyes which they tooke they gelded, to make them fatter for their Tables, as we doe Capons. They set vp the heads of those they killed, at their Gates for a memoriall, and wore their teeth about their neckes for a brauery. They worship the s Sun and Moone, and burne thereto Perfumes of Herbs, and Gold, and Emeralds. They sacrifice slaues.

Venezuela is so called, because it is built vpon a plaine Rocke, in the waters of a Lake. The women of this Country paint their brests and armes: all the rest of their bodie is naked, except their priuie parts. The Maids are known by their colour, and greatnesse of their girdle. The Men carrie their members in a shell. There are many filthy Sodomites. They pray to Idols, and to the Deuill, whom they paint in such forme as he appeareth to them. They paint their bodies in this sort: Hee that hath killed one Enemy in the Warres, paines one of his armes; the second time, his brest; and when he hath killed a third, hee paintetb a line from his eyes to his eares: and this is his Knighthood. Their Priests are their Physicians, who being sent for by a sicke man, aske the Patient, if he beleeue that they can help him; and then lay their hands vpon the place where they say their paines are: if he recouer not, they put the fault in him or in their Gods. They lament their dead Lords in Songs in the night time, made of their prayses: that done, they roast them at a fire, and beating them to powder, drinke them in Wine, making their bowels their Lords Sepulchres. In *Zenpacisy* they bury their Lords with much Gold, Iewels, and Pearles, and set vpon the Graue foure sticks in a square, within which they hang his weapons, and many Viands to eate.

From the Cape *Vela*, the space of 2000. miles alongst the Coast, is the fishing for Pearles, discouered by *Christopher Columbus*, in the yeere 1498. which sayled all along this Coast. In t Curiania they received the Spaniards with great ioy; and for Pinnes, Needles, Bels, Glasses, and such trifles, gaue them many strings of Pearles: for foure Pinnes they would giue a Peacocke; for two, a Phesant; for one, a Turtle Doue: And when they asked, What they should doe with this new Merchandize of Pins and Needles, seeing they were naked? they shewed them the vse to picke their teeth, and to picke out thornes in their feete. These Indians had Rings of Gold, and Iewels made with Pearles, after the formes of Birds, Fishes, and Beasts: They had also the Touch-stone for their Metall, and weights to weigh the same, things not else-where found in India. They make their teeth white with an herbe, which all the day they chew in their mouthes.

q Nic. Monard. cap. 53. Gomar. Hist. Gen. c. 71.

r M. Gerard.

s P. Martyr. l. 2. cap. 13.

t P. M. Dec. 1. l. 8 Gomar. c. 74. tom. c. 84.

CHAP. II.
Of Cumana and Paria.

§. I.
Of the People and strange Creatures in Cumana.

CVmana is a Prouince named of a Riuer, called Cumana, [b] where certayne *Franciscans, Anno* 1516. built them a Monasterie, and the Spaniards were very diligent in the fishing for Pearles. About [c] that time three *Dominicans* went foureſcore miles Weſt from thence to preach the Gospell, and were eaten of the Indians, which hindered not, but others of the same order founded them a Monasterie in Ciribici, neere Maracapana. Both these Orders tooke paines with the Indians to conſiſtert them, and taught their children to write and read and to anſwer at Maſſe, and the Spaniards were ſo reſpected, that they might ſafely walke alone through all the Country: but after two yeeres and a halfe, the Indians, whether for their too much imployment in the Pearle-fiſhing, or for other cauſe, rebelled, and killed a hundred Spaniards, ſlue the Friers, one of which was then ſaying Maſſe, and as many Indians as they found with them; which the Spaniards of *Domingo* ſoone after reuenged.

b *Gom.cap.78.*

c *P.M.Dec.7. lib.4.*

The loſe of [d] Cumana hindered their Trade for Pearles at Cubagua, and therefore the King ſent *Iames Caſtilion* to ſubdue them by force: which hee did, and began the Plantation of New Caliz, for the Spaniards to inhabit there. Cubagua was called by *Columbus*, the Finder, the Iland of Pearles, ſituate in twelue degrees and a halfe of Northerly Latitude, and containes twelue miles in circuit. This little Iland is exceeding great in commoditie, that accreweth by those Pearles, which hath amounted to diuers millions of gold. They feteh their Wood from Margarita, an Iland foure miles to the North; and their Water from Cumana, which is two and twentie miles thence: they haue a Spring of medicinall Water there in the Iland. The Sea there, at certaine times of the yeere, is very red, which those Pearle-oyſters by ſome naturall purgation are ſaid to cauſe. There are Fiſhes, or Sea-monſters, which from the middle vpwards reſemble men, with Beards, Haire, and Armes. The [e] people of Cumana goe naked, couering only their ſhame. At Feaſts and Dances they paint themſelues, or elſe anoint themſelues with a certaine Gumme, in which they ſtick Feathers of many colours. They cut their haire aboue the Eares, and will not ſuffer it to grow on any places of their bodies, eſteeming a bearded man a Beaſt: They take great paines to make their teeth blacke, and account them women, which haue them white. They blacke them with the powder of the leaues of a certaine Tree called *Gay*; theſe leaues they chew, after they are fifteene yeeres old; they mixe that powder with another of a kinde of Wood, and with Chalke of white ſhells burned, in manner as the Eaſterne Indians vſe their *Betele* and *Arecca*, with Chalke of Oyſters: and this mixture they beare continually in their mouthes ſtill chewing it, that their teeth are as blacke as coales, and ſo continue to their death. They keepe it in Baskets and Boxes, and ſell it in the markets to ſome, which come farre for it, for Gold, Slaues, Cotton, and other Merchandize. This keepeth them from paine and, rotting of the teeth. The Maides goe naked, only they bind certain bands hard about their knees to make their hips and thighes ſeeme thicke, which they eſteeme no ſmall beautie. The married Women liue honeſtly, or elſe their husbands will diuorce them. The chiefe men haue as many Wiues as they will; and if any ſtranger come to lodge in one of their houſes, they make the faireſt his Bed-fellow: Theſe alſo ſhut vp their Daughters two yeeres before they marrie them, all which time they goe not forth, nor cut their haire: After which, there is made a great feaſt, and very many bidden, which bring their varietie of cheere, & alſo wood to make the new Spouſe a houſe: A man cuts off the Bridegroomes haire before, and a woman the Brides, and then they eate and drinke, with much exceſſe, till night. This is the lawfull wife, and the other which they marry afterwards obey This. They giue their Spouſes to be defloured to their *Piaces*, (ſo they call their Prieſts) which theſe reuerend Fathers account their Preeminence and Prerogatiue; the Husbands, their honour; the Wiues their warrant.

d *Gom.c.78. Cubagua.*

e *Cap.79.*

Their Marriages.

The men and women weare Collars, Bracelets, Pendants, and ſome Crownes of Gold and Pearls: the Men weare Rings in their Noſes, & the Women Brooches on their breſt, whereby at firſt ſight the ſexe is diſcerned. The Women Shoot, Runne, Leape, Swim, as well as the Men: their paines of trauell are ſmall: they till the Land, and looke to the houſe, whiles the

the men Hunt and Fish. They are high-minded, treacherous, and thirstie of reuenge: Their chiefe weapons are poisoned Arrowes, which they prepare with the bloud of Snakes, and other mixtures. All of both sexes, from their infancy, learne to shoot. Their meat is whatsoeuer hath life, as Horse-leeches, Bats, Grashoppers, Spiders, Bees, Lice, Wormes, raw, sodden, fried: and yet their Countrey is replenished with good Fruits, Fish, and Flesh. This Diet (or, as some say, their Water) causeth spots in their eyes, which dimme their sight. They haue as strange a Fence or hedge for their Gardens and possessions, namely, a thread of Cotton, or *Bexuco*, as they call it, as high as a mans Girdle; and it is accounted a great sinne to goe ouer or vnder the same, and he which breakes it (they certainly beleeue) shall presently die. So much safer is their threed *women with this imagination*, then all our stone-walls.

The Cumanois are much addicted to Hunting, wherein they are very expert, and kill Lyons, Tygres, Hogs, and all other foure-footed Beasts, with Bowes, Nets, Snares. They take one Beast, which they call *Capa*, that hath the soles of his feet like a French shoo, narrow behinde, broad and round before. Another, called *Aranara*, which for the Physiomie and subtiltie seemes to be a kinde of Ape: it hath mouth, hands, and feet, like a man; a goodly countenance, bearded like a Goat. They goe in Heards, they bellow loud, runne vp Trees like Cats, auoid the Huntsmans Arrow, and cast it with cleanly deliterie against a hinselse. Another Beast hath a long snout, and feedeth on Ants[f], putting his tongue into a hollow Tree, or rather place where the Ants are and as many of them as come thereon, hee licks in. The Friers brought vp one, till the stinke thereof caused them to kill it, snouted like a Foxe, rough-haired, which voided in the excrements long and slender Serpents, which presently dyed. This Beast stinking while he liued, and worse now dead, yet was good food to the Indians. They haue one which will counterfeit the voice of a crying child, and so cause some to come forth, and then deuoure them. The like is written of the *Hyena*. That shee will call the Shepheards by their names, and then destroy them when they come forth.

They haue Parrots as bigge as Rauens, with bils like Hawkes, liuing on the prey, and smelling like Muske: Great Bats, one of which was a Physician, by strange accident, to a seruant of the Friers: which being sicke of a Pleurisie, was giuen ouer for dead, because they could not raise a veine wherein to let him bloud; in the night a Bat (after the custome of that Creature) bit and sucked him, whereby so much bloud issued, that the sicke man recouered; which the Friers counted for a miracle. They haue three sorts of Bees; one whereof is little and blacke, and makes honey in the Trees, without Waxe. Their Spiders are greater then ours, of diuers colours, and weaue such strong Cobwebs, that they aske good strength to breake them. There are Salamanders[g] as bigge as a mans head: they cackle much like a Pullet: their biting is deadly. I might here hold you too long in viewing these strange Creatures: we will now returne to their stranger customes.

Their strange Creatures.

e *P.M.Dec.8. lib.7.*

f *Ouid* called it a beare.

g *Pliny, Aselpho.* and others describe this worme, but I could neuer learne any thing to satisfie my selfe therein.

§. III.

Of their vices and superstitions.

THey take great pleasure in two things, Dancing and Drinking, in which they will spend eight dayes together, especially at the Marriages, or Corona ion of their Kings. Many Gallants will then meet together, diuersly dressed, some with crownes and Feathers, some with shels about their legges in stead of bels, to make a noise: some otherwise, all painted with twenty colours & figures: he that goes worst, seemes best: taking one another by the hand, they dance in a ring, some backwards, some forwards, with a world of varietie; grinning, singing, crying, counterfetting the Deafe, Lame, Blind, Fishing, Weaning, telling of Stories; and this continueth fixe houres, and then they eare and drinke: before, he which danced most, now he which drinketh most, is the most complete and accomplished Gallant: and now beyond counterfetting, Drunkennesse lets them together in brauing, swaggering, quarrelling: others play the Swine, spue vp the former, to make way for other liquor: and they adde hereunto the fume of an Hearbe, which hath the like drunken effect; it seemeth to be Tobacco.

Their dancing and drunkennesse.

This perhaps will not seeme strange to some, seeing these Sauage customes of drinking, dancing, smoking, swaggering, so common with vs in these dayes: It might indeed seeme strange to our forefathers, if their more ciuill, more sacred ghosts, might returne and take view of their degenerating posterisie: but now lee mult be a stranger in many companies, that will not estrange himselfe from ciuilitie, from humanitie, from Christianity, from God,

to become of a Man, a Beast; of an Englishman, a Sauage Indian; of a Christian, a Fiend, saue that he hath a body, in the diuerſified pollutions whereof, he hath aduantage, and takes it to out-ſwagger the Diuell. Theſe are the Gull-gallants of our dayes, to whom I could wiſh, that either their Progenitors had beene ſome Cumanian Indians, or that they would leaue this vſurped Gallantry to thoſe true owners, and reſume ſpirits *truely Engliſh.*

Their gods. The Gods of the Cumanians are the Sun and Moone, which are taken for man and wife, and for the greateſt Gods. They haue great feare of the Sunne, when it Thunders or Lightens, ſaying that he is angry with them. They faſt when there is any Eclipſe, eſpecially the women: for the married women pluckc their haires, and ſcratch their faces with their nailes: the Maids thruſt ſharpe fiſh-bones into their armes, and draw bloud. When the Moone is at full, they thinke it is wounded by the Sunne, for ſome indignation he hath conceiued againſt her. When any Comet appeareth, they make a great noiſe with Drums & hallowing, thinking ſo to ſcarre it away, or to conſume it, beleeuing that thoſe Comets portend ſome euils.

Among their many Idols and figures, which they honour as Gods, they haue one like a Saint *Andrews* Croſſe, which they thought preſerued them from night-ſpirits; and they hanged it on their new-borne children.

Their Prieſts. They call their Prieſts *Piaces*; whoſe Maiden-head-rite we before mentioned. They are their Phyſicians and Magicians. They cure with roots and hearbs, raw, ſod, and pounded with the fat of Birds, Fiſhes, and Beaſts; with wood and other things vnknowne to the people, with abſtruſe and darke words which themſelues vnderſtand not. They ſucke and licke the place where the paine is, to draw out the euill humours. And if the paine encreaſeth, they ſay that the Patients are poſſeſſed with euill Spirits: and then rub their bodies all ouer with their hands, vſing certaine words of Coniuration or Charmes, ſucking after that very hard; giuing them to vnderſtand, that by that meanes, they call out the euill ſpirits. Preſently they take a piece of wood, the vertue whereof none elſe knoweth but the *Piace*, and there with rub their mouthes and throats, ſo long till they caſt all that is in their bellies, vomiting ſometimes bloud with the force thereof; the *Piace* in the meane time ſtamping, knocking, calling, and geſturing: after two houres there comes from him a thicke flegme, and in the middeſt thereof a blacke hard bullet, which thoſe of the houſe carry and caſt into the fields, ſaying, *Let the Diuell goe thither.* If the ſicke man recouer, his goods die and become the Prieſts; if he die, they ſay his time was come. The *Piace* is their Oracle, with whom they conſult, whether they ſhall haue warre, what ſhall be the iſſue thereof, whether the yeere will be plentifull. They forewarne them of Eclipſes, and aduertiſe of Comets. The Spaniards demanded in their neceſſitie, whether any ſhips would come ſhortly? And they anſwered, that on ſuch a day a Caruell would come with ſo many men, and ſuch prouiſion and Merchandize; which accordingly came to paſſe.

Their Diuinations. They call vpon the Diuell in this manner: the *Piace* entereth into a Caue, or ſecret place, in a darke night, and carries with him certaine couragious youths, that may moue queſtions without feare. He ſits on a bench, and they ſtand on their feet, he cryeth, calleth, ſingeth Verſes, ſounderth ſhels: and they with a heauy accent ſay many times *Prororure, Prororure*: if the Diuell comes not, all this *Black-Sanctus* is reuued with grieuous ſighs and much perplexity. When he commeth (which is knowne by the noiſe) hee ſounds lowder, and ſuddenly falls downe, by viſages and varied geſture, ſhewing that the diuell is entred. Then one of thoſe his Aſſociates demandeth what him pleaſeth. The Friers went one day with their coniuring and coniured holies, the Croſſe, Stole, Holy-water: and when the *Piace* was in that diſtraction, caſt a part of the ſtole on him, croſſing and coniuring in Latine, and he anſwered them in his natiue language much to the purpoſe: at laſt they demanded whither the ſoules of the Indians went? He anſwered to Hell.

Theſe *Piaces* by their Phyſick and diuining grow rich: they goe to Feaſts, and ſit by themſelues apart, and drinke themſelues drunke, and ſay, The more they drinke, the better they can Diuine. They learne theſe Arts when they are children, and are incloſed in the woods two yeares, all that time eating nothing that had bloud, ſee no women, nor their owne parents, come not out of their Caues or Cels: and the *Piaces*, their Maſters, goe to them by night, to teach them. When this time of their ſolitary diſcipline is paſt, they obtaine a teſtimoniall thereof, and begin to profeſſe in practice of Phyſick and Diuination. Let vs bury the *Cumanois*, and then we haue done.

Their Burials. Being dead, they ſing their praiſes, and bury them in their houſes, or dry them at the fire and hang them vp. At the yeeres end (if he were a great man) they renue the lamentation, and after many other ceremonies, burne the bones, and giue to his beſt beloued wife his skull to keepe for a Relique. They beleeue that the Soule is immortall, but that it eateth and drinketh about in the fields where it goeth, and that it is the Eccho which anſwereth when one calleth.

SECT.

§. III.

Of Trinidado and Paria.

IN the yeere 1497. (some adde a yeere more) g *Christopher Columbus* seeking new Discoueries, after the suffering of vnsufferable heats and calmes at Sea (whereby the hoopes of his vessels brake, and the fresh-water not able further to endure the hot indignation of that now-beleeued Burning-Zone, fled out of those close prisons, into the lap of that Father of waters, the Ocean, for refuge) he came at last to Trinidado. The first Land he incountred, he called by that name; either for deuotion, now that his other hopes were dried vp with the heat, or washed into the Sea by the violent showres aboue-boord, and the lesse (but not lesse dangerous) which flowed from his Caske within: or else for the three Mountaines which he there descried. Once, this discovery of Land so rauished his spirit, by the inexpected deliuery from danger, as easily carried his impotent thoughts into a double errour, the one in placing earthly Paradise in this Iland, (to which opinion, for the excellency of the Tobacco there found, hee should happily haue the smokie subscriptions of many Humorists, to whom that fume becomes a fooles Paradise, which with their braines, and all, passeth away in smoke) the other was, that the Earth was not round like a Ball, but like a Peare, the vpper swelling whereof, he esteemed thele parts. Hence *Columbus* sailed to Paria, and found out the Pearle-fishing, of which *Petrus Alphonsus* a little after made great commoditie by trade with the Sauages. He was assailed with eighteene Canoas of Canibals, h one of which he tooke with one Caniball, and abound Captiue, who with teares shewed them that they had eaten sixe of his fellowes, and the next day he must haue gone *to pot* too: to him they gaue power ouer his Taylor, who with his owne club killed him, still laying on when his braines and guts came forth and testified that hee needed not further feare him.

g P. Martyr. Dec. 1. lib. 6. Gom part. 2. cap. 84.

Pearle fishing.

h P. Martyr. Dec. 1. lib. 8. Of the Canibals, see Chapter 13.

In Haraia or Paria, they found plenty of salt, which the Fore-man in Natures shop, and her chiefe worke-man, the Sunne, turned and kerned from water into salt: his worke-house for this businesse, was a large plaine by the waters-side. Here the Sepulchres of their Kings and great men seemed not lesse remarkable: they laid the body on a kinde of hurdle or gridiron of wood, vnder which they kindled a gentle fire, whereby keeping the skinne whole, they by little and little consumed the flesh. These dried carkasses they held in great reuerence, and honoured for their houshold Gods. In the yeere i 1499. *Vincent Pinzon* discouered Cape Saint *Augustine*, and sailed along the coast from thence to Paria.

i *Gom. cap. 85.*

But why stand we here pedling on the coast for Pearles, Salt, and Tobacco? Let vs rouze vp higher spirits, and follow our English guides for Guiana. Onely let me first haue leaue to mention concerning the Superstitions of these parts Northward from Guiana, what it pleased Sir *Walter Raleigh* to impart vnto mee from the Relation of a very vnderstanding man of that Countrey, whom he vsed for an interpreter. These people worship the Sunne, whom they imagine (as the fabulous Grecians tell of his Charet and horses, wherewith yong *Phaeton* sometime set the World on fire) to be drawne into a Chariot by Tigres, which are the most fierie, and fierce beasts, amongst them. In honour therefore of the Sunne, and for sustenance of his Chariot-beasts, they carefully wash the carkasses of their dead, and lay them forth in the night, for repast vnto the Tigres, wearied with their long and late iourney in the day. For so they beleeue, that after Sun-set these beasts are to this end dismissed from their labour; and that vicissitude, wherein *David* obseruedh the wisedome of diuine prouidence (that when it is *night, the wild beasts goe forth to seeke their prey, which when the Sunne arisetb and calleth men forth of their houses to labour, returne to their Dens*) is blindly by them applyed to this their superstition. They likewise haue a Tradition amongst them, that their Ancestors in times past neglecting thus to prepare the corpses of such as died, for the Tigres diet, or not washing them so neatly as behoued, the Tigres made hereof a complaint to the Sunne, as not able to doe his worke, if not allowed their wonted cates: whereupon the Sun sent one amongst them, brandishing a terrible fierie sword, and so dreadfully assaulting the places of their habitations, and the toyle couered with long grasse, that all fell on fire, and an hundred thousand of the Inhabitants were destroyed: a terrible warning hereafter to bee more diligent in these Tigre-deuotions, which accordingly they performe to this day.

Relat. S. W. R.

Psal. 104. 20, 21, 22, 23.

CHAP. III.

Of Guiana, and the Neighbouring Nations on the Coast and within the Land.

§. I.

Discouerie of Guiana by Sir WALTER RALEIGH.

a Sir *Walter Raleighs* treatise of *Guiana.*

IN the yeere 1595. [a] Sir *Walter Raleigh* hauing before receiued Intelligence of this rich and mighty Empire, set forth for the Discouery, and on the two and twentieth of March anchored at Point Curiapan in Trinidado, and searched that Iland, which he found plentifull. Hee tooke the Citie of Saint *Ioseph*, and therein *Antonie Berreo* the Spanish Gouernour: Leauing his ships, hee went with an hundred men in Boats, and a little Galley, and with some Indian Pylots passed along that admirable confluence of Riuers (as by the *Corps du Guard*) vnto *Orenoque*, as great a Commander of Riuers, as the Emperour of Guiana of Souldiers. And although wee haue before mentioned somewhat thereof, yet this, his peculiar place, requireth some further consideration. This Riuer Orenoque or Baraquan (since, of this Discouerie, called *Raleana*) runneth from Quito in Peru on the West, it hath nine branches which fall out on the North side of his owne maine mouth, on the South side seuen. Thus many Armes hath this Giant-like streame to be his Purueyers, which are alway filling his neuer-filled mouth (seeming by this their naturall officiousnesse incorporate thereunto, and to bee but wider gapings of the same spacious iawes) with many Ilands and broken grounds, as it were so many morsels and crummes in his greedy Chaps, still opening for more, though he cannot, euen in Winter, when his throat is glibbest, altogether swallow these: yea these force him, for feare of choking, to yawne his widest, and to vomit out, betweene these cleauing morsels, into the Oceans lap, so many streames, and so farre is it from the Northerne and Southerne extremes) three hundred miles distant. The Inhabitants on the Northerne branches are the *Tiuitiuas*, a goodly and valiant people, which haue the most manly speech, and most deliberate (saith Sir *Walter*) that euer I heard, of what Nation so euer. In the Summer they haue houses on the ground, as in other places: In the Winter they dwell vpon the trees, [b] where they build very artificiall Townes and Villages: for betweene May and September the Riuer of Orenoque riseth thirtie foot vpright, and then are those Ilands ouer-flowne twenty foot high, except in some few raised grounds in the middle. This waterie store (when the clouds are so prodigall of more then the Riuers store-house can hold, whereby they become violent intruders and inroachers vpon the Land) and not the violence of cold, giueth this time the Title of Winter. These *Tiuitiuas* neuer eate of any thing that is set or sowne; Natures nurslings, that neither at home nor abroad, will be beholden to the Arte or Labour of Husbandry. They vse the tops of Palmitos for bread, and kill Deere, Fish, and Porke, for the rest of their sustenance. They which dwell vpon the branches of Orenoque, called *Capuris* and *Macureo*, are for the most part Carpenters of Canoas, which they sell into Guiana for gold, and into Trinidado for Tobacco, in the excessiue taking whereof, they exceed all Nations. When a Commander dieth, they vse great lamentation, and when they thinke the flesh of their bodies is putrified and fallen from the bones, they take vp the carkasse againe, and hang it vp in the house, where he had dwelt, decking his skull with feathers of all colours, and hanging his gold-plates about the bones of his arms, thighs, and legs. The *Arwacas* which dwell on the South of Oreneque, beat the bones of their Lords into powder, which their wiues and friends drinke.

b King *Abibiba* dwelt on a Tree in the Country of Dariena. *Pet Martyr. Dec. 3. lib. 6.*

As they passed along these streames, their eyes were entertained with a Pageant of Shewes, wherein Nature was the onely Actor; here the Deere came downe feeding by the waters side, as if they had desired acquaintance with these new-come guests: there, the Birds in vnspeakeable varietie of kinds and colours, rendering their seruice to the eye and eare: the Lands either in large plaines of many miles, bearing their beautifull bosomes, adorned with *Floras* embroidery of vnknown Flowres and Plants, and prostrating themselues to the eye, that they might be seene; or else lifting vp themselues in Hills, knitting their furrowed brows, and strouting out their goggle eyes to watch their treasure, which they keepe imprisoned in their stony walls; and now, to see these strangers: the Waters (as the *Graces*) dancing with mutuall and manifold embracings of diuers streames, attended with plenty of Fowle and Fish; both Land and Water feasting varietie of senses with varietie of obiects: onely the

the Crocodile (a creature which seemeth Vassall, now to the laud, now to the Water, but to make prey on both) well-nigh marred the Play, and turned this Comedie into a Tragedie, euen in their sight, feasting himselfe with a Negro of their company.

One leuell passed hence to Cumana, an hundred and twenty leagues to the North where in dwell the *Sayma*, the *Assawai*, the *Wkiri* and the *Arorai*, a people as blacke as Negroes, [a] but with smooth haire. The ir poisoned Arrowes, like cruell Executioners, doe not onely kill, but with vncouth torments make death to be, as the last, so the least of their fury; especially if them drinke after they are wounded.

a These might descend of those in Cureca, *sup. l. 8. c. 2.*

At the Port of Morequito they anchored, and the King being an hundred and ten yeeres old, came afoot fourteene miles to see them, and returned the same day. They brought them store of fruits, and a sort of Paraquitos, no bigger then Wrens, and an [b] Armadilla, which seemeth to be all barred ouer with small plates, somewhat like to a Rhinoceros, with a white horne growing in his hinder-parts, as big as a great hunting horne, which they vse to winde in stead of a Trumpet. They after eate this beast. *Monardus* (saith) it is in bignesse and snout like a Pigge, liues vnder the earth as a Moule, and is thought to liue on earth.

b *Guied. in Summ. r. calls it Bardido.*

They passed further, till they came in sight of those strange ouer-sals of Caroli, of which there appeared ten or twelue in sight, euery one as high ouer the other as a Church-Tower. They had sight at Winicapora of a Mountaine of Cristall, which appeared a farre off like a white Church-Tower, of an exceeding height. There falleth ouer it a mighty Riuer, which toucheth no part of the side of the Mountain, but rushing ouer the top, falleth to the ground with so terrible noise, as if a thousand great bels were knocked one against another. No marvell of these roaring out-cries, if we consider that double penalty of *Sense* and *Loss*, which this Riuer seemeth to sustaine, the one in that dreadfull downfall, bruising and breaking his vnited streames into drops, and making it soming and sensellesse with this *falling sicknesse*; the other in leaving behinde his Cristall purchase, further enriched with Diamonds and other Iewels, which euen now hee embraced in his watery armes, but himselfe (such is the course and curse of couetousnesse) will not suffer himselfe to enioy.

Now for the Monsters of Men: there are said to be (not seene by our men, but reported by the Sauages and other) an Amazonian Nation further South: which *Gomara* thinkes to bee but the wiues of some Indians (a thing common, as you haue euen now read) shooting and following the warres, no lesse then their husbands: Once, about Iucatan, about Plata, about the Riuer, called of this supposition, *Amazones*: about Monomotapa in Africa; our Age hath told, but no man hath seene this *Vniuammian* Nation. Yet here they speake not of searing of the brest: and what need they, if there bee such, seeing the women are so good Archers in other places, their brests notwithstanding? Againe, [c] they tell of men with mouthes in their brests, and eyes in their shoulders, called *Chiparemei*, and of the Guianians *Ewiaponomei*, very strong; and of others headed like Dogges, which liue all the day time in the Sea. These things are strange, yet I dare not esteeme them fabulous: onely (as not too prodigall of faith) I suspend, till some eye-intelligence of some of our parts haue testified the truth.

c *Mattard c. 37.*
d *L. Kymis.* These may rather be said to want necks then heads, and that cause seth them thus to seeme.

§. II.

Relations and discoueries thereof by other Englishmen.

FRANCIS SPARREY left in Guiana by Sir *W. Raleigh* 1595. hath also written of these parts; He relateth of a place called Comalaha, Southwards from Oreno que, where at certain times they sell women as at a faire. He saith, he bought eight, the eldest of which, was not eighteene, for a Red-hafted Knife, which in England cost a halfe-peny: he gaue them to the Sauages. Hee was afterwards sent Prisoner into Spaine.

F. Sparrey. M.S. ap. Hak.

Anno 1604. Captaine *Charles Leigh* set saile from Woolwich on the one and twentieth of *March* for Guiana: *May* 10. he came in water thicke and white, the next day in fresh, and the day after, saw two Ilands in the mouth of Amazones, accounting themselues fortie Leagues vp the Riuer. *May* 22. they were in the Riuer of Wiapogo, (which they called *Caroleigh*) in three degrees and halfe Northward from the Line. The people were ready to giue them entertainment. The *Iayos* and *Capayos* offered them their owne houses, and gardens already planted, two of which he accepted with some gardens, vndertaking to defend them against the Charibes and their other enemies. They desired him to send into England for some to teach them to pray, and gaue fine pledges to be sent thither. He after (intending for England) dyed aboard his ship of the Flux. They intoxicate the fish with a strong fented-

Mr. *Charles Leigh.*

wood called Ayaw, whereby they easily take them on the top of the water. Their bread is Cassaui, of which chewed they also make drinke. They are much troubled with a Worme like a Flea (the Spaniards call it Niguas) which creepes into the flesh of their toes vnder the nailes, and multiply there with much multiplication of torment, except they vse speedie preuention. One was so pestred with them, that for remedie, they were faine to hold his feet vpwards, and powre thereon melted Wax hot, which being cold they plucked off, and there with seuen or eight hundred Niguas. The people are of modest countenance, naked, but would weare clothes if they had them. *Hunily* returned for England, and left there fiue and thirtie, which should haue bin succoured if Discord had suffered.

Anno 1605. a ship was sent for supply: but the Mariners and Land-men quarelling, these were left on Land at Saint *Lucia*, an Island in twelue degrees of Northerly Latitude, to the number of threescore and seuen, and most of them slaine a by the Ilanders. These Indians go naked, haue long blacke haire, their bodies painted red, with three strokes also of red, from the eare to the eye. Eleuen of our men, after much miserie and famishment (which killed some of them in the way) got to Coro: and after good and bad entercourse of fortunes with the Spaniards, some returned home. The Spaniards there (as *Iohn Nichol* one of this companie testifieth) told them of a Vision of Christ on the Crosse appearing to our King, and reuoking him from his error: at the sight whereof, three of our Bishops fell into a trance, and so continued three dayes, after which they became Catholikes and preached: and the King had sent to the Pope for learned men to perfect this Conuersion. These were the Spanish tricks with faithlesse tales to peruert these men to their faith. The Mariners gaue names to the places which they left according to their conceits of these men, *Rogues Bay*, *Cape Knaue*, *River of Rascals*. They came as farre as Comana or Cumana, where they obserued the weather hot till noone, and then a coole breeze and thunder without raine. by windes and current they were detained from Wiapogo, which they sought. A Fleming there told them fabulous rumours of Warres with Spaine.

Iohn Nichol. b *Legatus* company 1606. in a Voyage to *Amazon*, in a mutinie slue their Captaine, and the rest were taken at Cuba, and fourteene hanged, foure kept Prisoners. *W. Adams. W. Turner.*

Another ship of Amsterdam (to disgrace our men) told the Indians of Wiapoco, that they came to inhabit there and to oppresse them, as the Spaniards did. See what gaine can doe without godlinesse. A ship of Middleburgh came thither with Negros to sell: thither came also a ship of Saint *Malos*. The Indians of these parts (as *Wilson* reporteth) choose their Captaines at their drunken Feasts in this sort: They set the nominated person in the midst with his hands lifted ouer his head, making Orations to him to bee valiant: after which, they whip him with a whip that fetcheth bloud at euery stroke, for tryall of his courage, he neuer mouing thereat. They haue commerce with the Deuill. For they told vs of three ships in the River of Amazons, and that One two moneths after would visit vs. They call this Deuill b *Peye*, with whom the men haue often conference, the women neuer that they could perceiue: they suffer not meane-while a childe in the house. When any bee sicke they thus consult of their recouerie, and if their Oracle answer death, they will giue no Physicke; if life, they vse their best helpes. For an Axe they would trauell with them two or three moneths, or finde them so long victuals at home. The Iayos are proud, ingenious, giuen to flouting. The Arwakos of better carriage. The Saspayes crafticr. The two former hate the Spaniards as much as the Caribes. Their houses haue doores at each end: the men keepe at one end, the women at the other: they are like Barnes, but longer; some hundred and fiftie paces long, and twentie broad, an hundred of them keepe together in one. No raine commeth in, notwithstanding that store which falleth in *April*, *May*, *Iune*, and most of *Iuly*. They paint them when they goe to feasts. Against the time of trauell, the women haue as roome apart, whereto they goe alone, and are deliuered without helpe: which done, shee cals her husband and deliuers it to him, who presently washeth it in a pot of water, and paints it with sundry colours. I could not heare (saith *Wilson*) the woman so much as grone all the time of her trauell. When one dyes, they make great moane ten or twelue dayes together, and sometimes longer. Here are store of Deere, Hares, Conies, Hogs, Monkeyes, Leopards, Lyons, Porke-pines, Parrots as big as Hennes, blue and red, very beautifull, &c. He returned with the rest in a ship of Amsterdam, the Indians being loth to part with them. They often inquired of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, and one came from Oreneque to aske of him, alledging his promise of returne.

Iohn Wilson of Wansted in Essex.

c M. *Harcourt*. so calls the Priest, and the Deuil Wattipa

Mayj. 1606.

The like remembrances of him are mentioned by Master *Harcourt* in his late published Voyage to Guiana. This worthy Gentleman, *An.* 1608. with Gentlemen and others, to the number of 97. set forth for Wiapoco. The ninth of *May* they fell into the Current of that great and famous River of Amazones, of which they drunke fresh and good, being 30. leagues from Land: the tenth day, the water became muddy, whitish and thicke: the eleuenth day they made Land, and their Pinnace being left dry vpon the Ebbe, by the next flood comming on was almost spoyled: Thence they stood along the Coast to Wiapoco, whither they came

Rob. Harcourts Voyage to *Guiana.*

came, *May* the seuenteenth, and setled themselues at Caripo. Hee tooke possession in his Maiesties name (as Captaine *Leigh* had also done) of this spacious Countrey of Guiana, bounded on the North with Orenoque and the Sea, on the East and South, with the Riuer of Amazons, on the West, with the Mountaines of Peru. The Charibes are the Ancient Inhabitants, the Other later Incrochers. There is no setled gouernment amongst them, only they acknowledge a superiorities which they will obey as long as they please. They commonly punish Murther & Adulterie by death, which are the only offences punished amongst them: and certaine persons are appointed to execute those punishments. The better sort haue two or three wiues or more, the rest but one: they are very iealous, and if they take them in Adulterie, cause their braines to be beaten out. Their wiues, especially the elder, are as their seruants, and he which hath most, is the greatest man.

Their account of time is by Moones, or dayes: their numbring is to ten, and then say, ten and one, &c. They also keepe accounts, by bundles of sticks, containing so many, as dayes are agreed on, of which they take away, euery day one. They haue a certaine obseruance of the Sunne and Moone, supposing them to be alue: but as farre as he could perceiue, vsed neither Sacrifice nor adoration to any thing. At the death of any great man, they make a solemne Feast, their chiefest prouision being their strongest drinke, called *m Parrabipoli*, and as long as this drinke lasteth, they continue their Feast, with dancing, singing, and excessiue drinking, accounting the greatest Drunkard the brauest man: during which drunken solemnitie, some woman (being neerest of kinne to the dead partie) stands by and cries extremely. Their Priests or South-sayers (he cals them *Pecaios*) haue conference with the Deuill, whom they terme *Wittipa*, but feare him much, and say hee is naught: hee will often beate them blacke and blue. They beleeue that the good Indians when they die, goe to *Canpo* or Heauen, the bad to *Soy*, downwards. When a chiefe man dies, if hee haue a Captiue they slay him; if not, then one of his seruants, to attend him the other World.

m It is like March beere.

The qualitie of the Land is diuers: by the Sea-side low, and would be violently hot, if a fresh Easterly breeze did not cooleit with a vehement breath in the heate of the day: the Mountaines are colder, the middle sort most temperate. Profit may here take pleasure, neither need pleasure abandon profit. The particulars are by this and other our Authors related; I hunt after Rarities to present you. Such is the fish *Cassiorna*, which hath in each eye two sights; and as it swimmeth, it beares the lower sights within the water, and the other aboue: the ribs and backe resemble those parts in a man, saue that it is little bigger, but much daintier then a Smelt. Besides the *Pockiero*, or small Swine with the Nauill in the backe, is another called *Paiuga*, as large as ours in England. The Sea-cow or *Manatin* eates like Beefe, and will take Salt, and serue to victuall ships, it yeelds also an excellent Oyle, and the hide will make Buffe. There are infinite store of them. The *Pina* for delicacie exceedeth, a fruit easting like Strawberries, Claret-wine, and Sugar. What commoditie Tobacco *n* and Sugars in those parts may yeeld is incredible, especially in this smokie humour of the one sexe, and that daintier of the other. Their Dies, Gummes, and other commodities I omit. Of Gold and other Metals they haue good testimonie.

n *Anno* 1620. The Tobacco that came into England amounted to (at least) 60000. pound and not much lesse in other yeeres.

The Marashawaccas are a Nation of Charibes, vp high within Land, hauing great eares beyond credit: they haue an Idoll of stone which they worship as their God, in a house erected purposely to it, which they keepe verie cleane. It is fashioned like a man sitting vpon his heeles, holding open his knees, and resting his elbowes vpon them, holding vp his hands with the palmes forwards, and gaping with his mouth wide open.

Captaine *Michael Harcourt* was left Commander of the Countrie for his Brother, who continued the possession three yeeres, in all which space, of thirtie persons died but six, and some of them by casualtie. Amongst the East Indian Plants is mentioned one called *Sensitiua*: the like they found here, much like vnto Rose trees, about halfe a yard high; which if they were touched, or a leafe cut from them, would presently shrinke and close vp themselues, and hang as they were dead and withered: within halfe a quarter of an houre by degrees againe opening. *Aremina* the Cacique of Moresheporo had a rough skin like to Buffe-leather, of which kind there be many in those parts. They returned by Cape Brea, which is so called of the Pitch there gotten in the Earth, whereof there is such abundance that all places of this our World may be stored thence: it is excellent for trimming of shippes for those hote Countries, not melting in the Sunne.

Vid. l. 5. c. 22. A seeking Plant.

§. III.

§. III.

Relations of these and the adioyning Countries by the Spaniards.

IT were a hard taske to muster all that World of Riuers, and names of Nations in the parts neere Guiana, which they that will, may finde in Sir *Walter* and Master *Keymis*, and Master *Harcourt* their owne Relations. As for Guiana, this Sir *Walter* hath written. It is directly East from Peru towards the Sea, and lyeth vnder the Æquinoctiall: it hath more abundance of Gold then any part of Peru, and as many or moe great Cities. It hath the same Lawes, Gouernment and Religion; and Manoa, the Imperiall Citie of Guiana (which some Spaniards haue seene, and they call it [o] *El Dorado*) for the greatnesse, riches, and situation, farre exceedeth any of the World, at least so much of it as the Spaniards know. It is founded vpon a Lake of Salt-water, two hundred leagues long, like vnto the Caspian Sea. The Emperour of Guiana is descended from the *Ingas*, the magnificent Princes of Peru. For when *Francis Pizarro* had conquered Peru, and slaine *Atabalipa* the King; one of his younger brethren fled from thence, and took with him many thousands of those Souldiers of the Empire, called *Orejones*, with whom and other his followers, he vanquished all that tract which is between the great Riuers of Orenoque, and Amazones. *Diego Ordas*, who was one of the Captaines of *Cortes*, in the conquest of Mexico, in the yeere 1531. (thus saith *Gomara*, and that he perished at Sea; others with more probability, say it was a few yeeres after the conquest of Peru) made search for Guiana, but lost himselfe, being slaine in a mutinie. Before this, his prouision of Powder was fired, and one *Iuan Martinez*, which had the charge thereof, was therefore condemned to bee executed. But at the Souldiers request, his punishment was altered, and hee set in a Canoa alone without victuall, and so turned loose into the Riuer. Certaine Guianians met him, and hauing neuer seene man of that colour, they carried him into the Land to be wondred at; and so from Towne to Towne, till hee came to the great Citie of Manoa, the seat and residence of *Inga* the Emperour. He no sooner saw him, but he knew him to be a Christian (for the Spaniards not long before had conquered his brother) and caused him to be well entertained in his Palace. He liued seuen moneths in Manoa, but was not suffered to wander any whither into the Country; he was also brought thither, all the way blind-fold, led by the Indians, vntill he came at Manoa. He entred the Citie at noone, and trauelled all that day till night, and the next, from the rising till the setting of the Sunne; thorow the Citie, ere hee came to the Palace of *Inga*. After seuen moneths the Emperour put him to his choise, whether to stay or goe, and he with the Emperours licence departed. He sent with him many Guianians, all laden with as much Gold as they could carrie: but before he entred Orenoque, the *Orenoqueponi* robbed him of all, but of two Bottels of Gold beads, which they had thought, had beene his drinke or meate. Thus escaped he to Trinidado, and died after at Saint *Iuan de Puerto-rico*, where, in his extremes, he vttered these things to his Confessor. He called the Citie *Manoa El Dorado*, the gilded or golden, because that at their drunken Solemnities (in which vice no Nation vnder Heauen excels them) when the Emperour carowseth with any of his Commanders, they that pledge him, are stripped naked, and their bodies anointed with a kinde of white Balsamum, and then certaine seruants of the Emperour, hauing prepared Gold made into fine powder, blow it thorow hollow Canes, vpon their naked bodies, vntill they bee all shining: from the foot to the head; and in this sort they sit drinking, by twenties and hundreds, and continue in drunkennesse, sometimes six or seuen dayes together. Vpon this sight, and for the abundance of Gold he saw in the Citie, the Images, in the Temples, the Plates, Armours, and Shields of Gold vsed in their Warres, he gaue the Citie that name.

Iuan p de Castellanos reckoneth twentie seuerall Expeditions of some, or other Spaniards, for this Guianian Discouery with little effect, saue that diuers lost their liues therein. *Anno* 1543. *Gonzalo Pizarro* q sent a Captaine named *Orellana*, from the borders of Peru, who with fifty men, were carried by the violent current of the Riuer, that they could not returnto *Pizarro*: he descended not in Orenoque the Guianian Riuer, but in Maragnon, called of him *Orellana*: which *Iosephus* r *Acosta* writeth, from the Relation of one of their Societie; who being a Boy, had bin in the Expedition of *Pedro de Orsua* for this Discouery, and had sailed the Riuer thorow, that in the middest men can see nothing but the Skie (as before is said) and the Riuer, and that it is seuentie leagues broad, vnder the Æquinoctiall. *Martin* s *Fernandez* maketh it seuen degrees and a halfe to the North of the Line, and fifteen leagues broad, and the *Sea of fresh water* to bee another Riuer of forty leagues breadth: others haue written otherwise, which varying proceedeth from that varietie of Armes or mouthes of Ore-

o The gilded Citie.

p *Iuan de Castellanos apx. Hak.* q *Lopez de Vasc. ap. Hak. tom. 3. Girauo. l. 2.* r *Acosta l. 2. c. 8. & 3. c. 20.*

s *M. Fernand. de Enciso. apud Hak.*

Orenoque or Raleana, and Marannon or Amazones which since haue beene better discouered, as [t] Master *Keymis*, Master *Masham* and others employed in this action, haue found by experience. It [u] riseth in Quito. *Orellana* sayled in it sixe thousand miles. In all these parts, their greatest treasure is multitude of women and children. *Topiawari* made a beautie complaint, that whereas they were wont to haue ten or twelue wiues, now they had not aboue three or foure, by reason of the wars with the *Epuremei* their Enemies: whereas the Lords of the *Epuremei* had fifty or a hundred, and their war is more for women, then either for Gold or Dominion. After *Orellana Pedro de Orsua* was employed with fiue hundred Souldiers for the conquest of the Amazons (as they called it) but for a beautifull woman which he had with him was slaine by conspiracie of *Lope de Aguirre* which loued her, and *Fernando de Guzman*, whom they saluted King, &c. *Vega. pag. 2. lib. 8. c. 14.*

Berreo, in the search for Guiana, tooke his Iourney from *Nueuo Reyno de Granado*, where he dwelt, with seuen hundred Horse, but trauelling, he lost many of his company and Horse: at Amapaia the soyle is a low Marish, and the water issuing thorow the Bogs, is red and venemous, which poysoned the Horses, and infected the men: at noone the Sunne had made it more wholesome for their vse.

This [x] new Kingdome of Granada is two hundred leagues within Land, Southward from Cartagena. It had that name, because the Captaine that discouered it, was of Granada in Spaine. The plenty of Emeralds in these parts, hath made that Gemme of lesse worth. The next Prouince to this is called Popayan: in both which the Spaniards haue many Townes. And by the Riuer of Orenoque, both may be inuaded.

All [y] the parts, from the Golden Castle, and the Gulfe of Vraba to Paria, yeeld *Caribes*, or Canibals, which eate mans flesh, and geld children, to make them more fat and tender for their diet. And in all Inland parts neere Peru, and in the Hills called Andes, which some call Golden Castile, they little differ. *Ciezar* [z] saith, That in the Valley of Anzerma, they keepe certaine Tablets amongst the Reeds, wherein they carue the Image of the Deuill in a terrible shape, also the figures of Cats, and other Idols which they worship. To them they pray for raine, or faire weather: they haue commerce with the Deuill, and obserue such Superstitions as he enioyneth them. They are great man-eaters. At the doores of their houses, they haue small Courts, wherein are their graues in deepe Vaults, opening to the East: in which they bury their great men with all their wealth. The *Curacs* are not far from them; they haue no Temple, nor Idoll. They haue conference with the Deuill. They marry with their Neeces and Sisters, and are man-eaters. They call the Deuill *Xaxarema*. They esteeme Virginitie little worth. In the Prouince of [a] Arma, the Deuill doth often appeare to the Indians: in honour of whom, they sacrifice their Captiues taken in Warre, hanging them vp by the shoulders, and pulling out the hearts of some of them. In Paucora, they haue like Deuillish Deuotions, and their Priests are their Oracles.

Before the house of the chiefe Lord was an Idoll as bigge as a man, with his face to the East, and his armes open. They sacrificed two Indians euery Tuesday, in this Prouince to the Deuill. In the Prouince of Pezo, in the houses of their Lords, they had many Idols in such resemblance, as the Deuill had assumed in his Apparitions. And in those Idols, he would also speake, and giue answeres. In Carapa [b] they are extreame Drunkards: when any is sicke, they offer Sacrifices to the Deuill for his recouery. In Quinbaya is a Hill which casteth forth smoke: but a more Hellish smoke is their conference and commerce with the Deuill, like the former. In the Prouince of Cali they likewise conferre with the Deuill: they haue no Temples or Houses of Religion. They make deepe pits for Sepulchres of their great men, where their Armour, Wealth, and food is set about them. Their lust subiecteth the Neece and Sister to their Marriages. In Popayan [c] they are man-eaters, as also in the forenamed Prouinces. They obserue the same Caninall and Deuillish Rites with the former, framing their Superstitions to the Deuils direction, in their mutuall Colloquies. They bury with their Lords some of his Wiues and Prouision. Some of them are great Wizards and Sorcerers. In Pasto they talke also with the Deuill: a thing common to al these parts of the Indies. But let vs leaue these steepe and cold Hils, these men of the Deuill (whom they worship) and Deuils to men (whom they deuoure) and see if in the lower Countries wee can find higher and nobler spirits.

t *L. Keymis. T. Masham.*
u *Lop. Gom. c. 86*
x *Lop. Vega.*
y *Bel. par. 4. l. 6.*
z *Ciezza part. 1. cap. 15.*
a *Cap. 19 & 4.*
b *chap. 32.*
c *chap. 32.*

Tuesday Holy dayes.

CHAP.

CHAP. IIII.
Of Brasil.

§. I.
The Discoverie and Relations thereof by MAFFEVS. *&c.*

AS Guiana is bounded with those mighty Riuers of Orenoque and Maragnon, so Brasil extendeth it selfe North and South, betweene Maragnon and the Riuer of Plata, or Siluer, which there we haue already shewed to be the greatest Ruers in the World. The Westerne borders are not so well discouered. The Easterne are washed by the Sea. *Maffeus* [a] hath largely described the same, whose words *Bertius*, *Maginus*, and *Gasper Ens* haue transcribed: the summe whereof *Iarric* and *Boterus* haue inserted into their French and Italian Relations.

Petrus Aluarius Capralis, being sent by *Emanuel*, King of Portugall, in the yeere 1500. vnto the East-Indies, to auoid the calmes on the Guionee shore, fetched a further compasse West, and so discouered the Continent, which now, of that Red Wood there plentifully growing, is called Brasil, but by him was named, the Land of the Holy Crosse, because hee had there erected a Crosse with much ceremony; since vsually named Brasil, of the store of Brasil-Wood there growing. This Brasil was soone after, by *Americus Vesputius*, at the charges of the said King, further discouered. The Region is pleasant and wholesome, the Hils and Valleys equally agreeing, in their vnequalnesse, the soyle fat and fertile: there are plentie of Sugar-Canes; a kind of Balme expressed out of the Herbe *Copaiba*, the *Zabucaia* which yeild a kind of Nuts, growing in great hard cups, of taste like a Chesnut; the *Ananas* excellent in scent and taste; the *Pacouere*, a tree so tender, that it may bee cut with a knife a fadome high, the leaues two foot broad, seuen foot long, the fruit a foot long, like a Cucumber, called *Pacoua*, thirtie or fortie together in clusters, neuer bearing fruit but once: the like is in the East-Indies, as *Theuet* our Authour affirmeth; and many other fruits which the Countrey naturally produceth; besides those, which our Europe hath communicated. Many sorts there are of Beasts, as a kind of Swine b which liue in both Elements; their fore-feet being short in proportion to the hinder, make them slow in running, and therefore being hunted, commit themselues quickly to the water. *Anta*, resembling a Mule, but somwhat lesse; slender-snowted, the nether chap very long, like a Trumpet, with round eares and short tailes, hiding themselues in the day-time, c and feeding in the night, the flesh tasteth like Beefe: there is also the Armadillo; the Tygre, which being hungry, is very hurtfull; being full, will flee from a Dogge: There is a deformed beast, of such slow pace, that in fifteene dayes it will scarce goe a stones cast. It liueth on the leaues of trees, on which it is two dayes in climing, and as many in descending, neither shouts nor blowes forcing her to amend her pace. The *Tamendous* are as big as a Ramme, with long and sharpe snowts, a tayle like a Squirrell, (twice as long as the body and hairy) where-under they hide themselues, will put out their tongue two foote (out of the mouth, as round as an Oyle-cruze) to gather plentie of Ants into their mouthes, hauing scraped vp the places where they keep with their pawes. The Portugals haue there raised plentie of Horses and Sheepe.

The men worship no God at all, but are giuen to South-sayings. The men and women goe altogether naked, are flat-nosed, make themselues blacke with the fruit Genipapi, weare their haire hanging from the hinder part of the head, not suffering it else-where to grow; in their nether lips weare long stones for a gallantry (which being remoued, they seeme indeformed manner to haue a double mouth) they goe together by companies, with great silence the Wife going before her Husband, which (some say) is done for iealousie. They entertain and welcome Strangers at first with weeping and deepe sighes, pitying their tedious iourney, and presently drie their eyes, hauing teares at command.

Women in trauell are deliuered without great difficultie, and presently goe about their houshold businesse, the Husband in her stead keepeth his bed, is visited of the neighbours, hath his broths made him, and iunkets sent to comfort him. They are ignorant of [d] numbring and Letters: some Tradition they are said to haue touching *Noe* and the Flood. Vnder the same Roofe (which is like a Boat with the Keele vpwards (liue many Families, they lye in Nets, or beds hanging aboue the ground (which is vsuall in a great part of the Indies) to auoid hurtfull creatures: they minde the day, and are not carefull for the morrow; easily communicate what they haue; are very patient of labour and hunger, fearing if they haue where-with

a *P. Maffeus Hist. Ind. lib. 2. P. Bert. Geograp. Mag. Geog. G. Ens Hist. Indi. Occident. P. Iarric. lib. 3. cap. 12. & d. Bot part. 1. l. 6*

b Which feeds on grasse, sleepes in the water, *Boterus*.

c The Spaniards call it (of the contrary) *the light Dogge*. The Portugals *Sloth*. The Indians, *Map*. Some haue written that it liues of ayre: and seldome or neuer hath it beene seene eating.

d They know no numbers further then fiue, the rest they supply as they can with their toes and fingers: and if the things numbered exceed, they number by the toes and fingers of many persons assembled together. *Stad. lib. 2. c. 29.*

with, from morning till night, and fasting other-whiles, when they want, three dayes together. In swimming they are miraculously skilfull, and will diue whole houres to search any thing vnder the water. They beleeue not any reward or punishment after this life ended, but thinke that as men die, so they goe to the other World, maimed, wounded, sicke or whole: and therefore bury the bodies with a Net to lye in, and food for some dayes, thinking that they both sleepe and eate. They are excellent Archers, and what enemies they take in their warres, they feed well many dayes, and then kill and eate them for great Dainties. Theydwell in Houses scattered and separated from each other; their Language is almost generally the same; they haue no Lawes nor Magistrates; the women call certaine things by one name, and the Men by another. They haue no vse of three Letters [e] in the Alphabet, *L, F, R*, a reason whereof some haue wittily giuen, because they haue no Law, Faith, nor Rules. They are vnmindfull of good turnes, and too mindfull of iniuries: impotent of Lust and Rage, and in summe, more like beasts then men. Thus farre *Mesfaeus*.

In the yeere 1503. [f] *Giouanni da Empoli*, a Florentine, sayled thither with the Portugals, who reported the like of their nakednesse, irreligion, and of their man-eating, saying that they dry it in the smoke as we doe Bacon. The same doth *Albericus Vespuius* report that he had seene amongst them, and that he had heard one of them boast that hee had in his time eaten three hundred men. He weighed the long stones, (which they vsed to weare in their faces, seuen in number) about sixteene ounces. He saith they liue an hundred and fifte yeeres; and that their Women are out of measure luxurious; that they alway haue an Easterly wind, which tempereth their Aire.

Let vs in the next place heare such as haue liued in the Countries; of which *Larius* and *Theuet*, two Frenchmen, and *Ioannes Stadius* a Germane, haue written seuerall Treatises. But none hath more fully described them, then a Portugall Frier, [g] and *Antonio Kniuet* our Countriman.

e It seemes otherwise by *Lerius* his Dialogue of that Language c.10

f *G. da Empoli ap. Ramus. A. Vespuc.*

g A Booke taken from a Frier, written in Portugale, sold by *Fr. Cooke* to *M. Hakluit*.

§. II.

More full Relations by STADIVS, LERIVS, *and* PETER CARDER.

Ioannes Stadius [h] in the yeere 1554. was Prisoner to the *Tuppin Imbas*, and because he serued the Portugals, should haue beene slaine and deuoured. But by Gods mercy he escaped. He was the Gunner in the Fort of *Sant Vincent*, and going into the Wood to prouide somewhat wherewith to entertaine some friends that come to him, became himselfe a prey to those Men-hunters. When they had taken him, they contended which of them had beene the first taker, and that controuersie ended, hee was stripped naked, and led away. Hee was giuen to one of their Kings, and this victory by them was ascribed to their *Tamaraka*, or Idols, which, they said, had by Oracle prophesied thereof, but their Kings were no other then the chiefe in euery Cottage, which consisted of one Kindred, and these *Tamaraka* weare certaine Rattles, as shall after appeare. The manner is, that it gets them a great name, to exhibit this Feast of a faine Captiue, and therefore some that haue taken, will credit some other friend with the gift of a Captiue, to this solemne butcherie, on condition to repay him the next Captiue hee taketh. This was *Stadius* his case, who was thus tossed by exchange, from one to another, till at last hee escaped altogether.

But when hee had beene newly taken, the Women came about him, and one while busseted him, one saying, This is for such a friend of mine, that the Peros or Portugals had slaine; another fixing on his flesh the memorial of another friend of hers, and then led him with a Rope about his necke, almost strangling him, making him also to dance in the middest of them, with Rattles tied to his legges: but hee after grew in some credit and respect amongst them, and saw diuers others eaten, while himselfe could not bee free from feare of the like destinie.

The Sauages, that they take, put on a great shew of resolution, and little regard (in seeming) that their Tragedie, supported with this comfort, that their friends will reuenge it. In time of sicknesse or sudden dangers they would resort to him to pray to his God for deliuerance; and this conceit of his God, which they obserued in his Deuotions, was the principall meanes of deferring his execution. Such as are mortally wounded in their fights, they would spend presently, or at least kill and dresse them, for a Feast neere at hand: and one man that had liued long amongst them, and was desperately sicke, left Death should

h *Io. Stad. Hist. cum pillaria. ap. T. de Bry in 3 parte America.*

do-

deprive them of their cheere, they sue, and (because of his sicknesse) hurling away the head and inwardes, ate vp the rest. They take great pride in these their cruelties, and when *Konyan Bebe* their King, hauing a basket full of pieces of Mans flesh, on which hee was feeding, offered *Stadius* a piece, who told him that it was more then beastly: hee answered, I am a Tygre, and I delight in these delicacies. This *Stadius* after escaped in a French Shippe.

Nicolas Durantius, [i] a Knight of Malta, sirnamed *Villagagnon*, in the yeere 1555. (malecontent with his estate at home) sayled into *Francia Antarctica*, or the Southerne parts of Brasill, vnder the Tropike of *Capricorne*, and pretended there to worship God according to the puritie of the Gospell; and to fortifie, both for the habitation of his owne, and for a Sanctuarie vnto such as at home were persecuted for the Truth. He fortified, and sent thence to Geneua, for assistance in this his holy intent: whereupon *Richerius* and *Chartierius*, two Ministers (with diuers others, among whom was *Iohn Lerius*) were sent, and landed there in the yeere 1557. *Lerius* hath written his Obseruations of these parts, as *Thenet* also, another of *Villagagnons* Company, but (as *Lerius* testifieth) in many things falsly. The first Sauages that *Lerius* and his fellowes saw, were the *Margaiates*, which hold friendship with the Portugals, and are enemies to the French, and to the *Tonon Pinauhaulsy* or *Tuppin Imbas*, Confederates of the French, and as deadly enemies to the former. In the meane way they passed by the *Tapemiry*, *Paraiba*, *Onetacates*; all which, how soeuer they exercise hostilities, and mutuall disagreements, yet agree in like barbarous and rightlesse Rites. With the *Tonon Pinauhaulsy* he conuersed familiarly about a yeere. They are in habit of bodie like the *Europeans*, but stronger, and lesse subiect to sicknesse, not subiect to our bodily distempers, by like intemperance, or vexation of mind, by turbulent and distracting passions of Couetousnesse, Enuie, ambition.

[i] Lerius hist. Nauig. in Amer. & And. Thuet.

They are all naked, except sometimes: the Old men rather to hide their disease in those parts, then their shame, couer their priuities. They weare in their nether lip a [k] Pyramidall stone, which brauurie weigheth downe their lip, and subiecteth the face to great deformitie. Some also not content with this, adde two others in their cheekes to like purpose. They presse downe the noses of their Infants to make them flat. They anoynt themselues with a kind of Gumme, which they couer with the downe of Feathers sticking thereto. They weare also Frontlets of Feathers: in their eares they weare bones. They which will excell the rest in gallantry, and would seeme to haue slaine and eaten the most enemies, slash and cut their flesh, and put therein a blacke powder, which neuer will bee done away. They vse Rattles of the shell of a certaine fruit, in which they put stones or graines, and call them *Maraca*, of which they haue some superstitious conceit. The Women differ from the Men in nourishing their haire, which the Men shaue off before, and make not those holes in their lips; but in their eares weare Eare-rings of the forme and bignesse of a meane Candle. They paint also their faces with diuers colours, and weare Bracelets of little bones, of which the men weare Chaines or Collars. They would not weare clothes, pretending their custome of nakednesse, and often washing (sometimes ten times in a day) whereto clothes would bee a hinderance: and our captiue women, further then the Whip forced them, would not accustome themselues to the apparell we gaue them. The women make two kinds of Meale of certaine Roots, which they vse in stead of Bread, which they doe not put, but hurle into their mouthes without loosse. Their office is also to make their drinke of Rootes sliced, and chewed in their mouthes, and thus prepared, boyled, and stirred in a great pot ouer the fire: the like drinke they make of chewed Maiz, which they call *Aunts*: the men would accoune it a disgrace to do these things, and that they would not taste so well. They call this drinke *Caouin*; it is thick, and tastes like Milke: I haue seene them continue (saith *Lerius*) drinking this liquor three dayes and nights together: they hold it a disparagement not to bee able to hold out at this *Bacchanall* exercise, which they celebrate with dancing and singing, especially at their beastly Man-feasts: The women dance apart from the men. One of them reported to our Author, that they had taken a ship of the Perois, or Portugals, and eaten the men: they found therein great vessels, which they could not tell what it was, but drank so much thereof, that they slept three dayes after: it was likely that it was Spanish Wine. They eate Serpents and Toads (which with them are not venemous) and Lizards. Our Author saw one Lizard as big as a man, with scales on her backe like Oysters. They sigue a kind of Monkey called *Sagouin*, of the bignesse of a Squirrell, the fore-halfe in shape resembling a Lion: they haue another strange beast, called *Coaty*, as high as a Hare, with a little head, sharpe eares, and a snout or beake aboue a foot long, the mouth so little, that one can scarsely put in his little finger; it feedeth on Ants. They take [l] *Petum* (it is not Tobacco) not in Pipes, but put foure or fiue leaues in another greater, and firing it, sucke in the smoke, and therewith in time of warre, will sustaine themselues three dayes together, without other sustinance. They weare this herbe about their neckes.

k Great at one end, and little at the other: in their infancie lists bound and after agreene stone, in some as long as ones fingers: they will thrust out their tongues at the hole, when the stone is remoued.

l The Brasilian *Petum* is neither in forme nor vertue, the same with Tobacco, as *Lerius* saith. The women take it not

When

When Sir *Francis Drake* made his famous and fortunate Voyage, about the World, in the South-Sea he lost the rest of his company, the *Elizabeth* wherein M. *Winter* was (which returned into England) and a Pinnesse, wherein were seuen men, besides *Peter Carder*, the relater of this History. This Pinnesse being alone returned backe the Straits, and on the Northside of the Riuer of Plate, six went on shore into the wood to seeke food, where threescore and ten *Tapines* shot at them, and wounded all, whereof two dyed soone after: foure were taken, their Pinnesse also being broken, onely *Peter Carder* and *William Pitcher* remained, which liued in an Iland two moneths, on a fruit some what like Orenges, & Crabs, without any fresh-water: the want whereof forced them to drinke their owne Vrine, saued in shends for that purpose till the next morning. Weary of this life (which began to grow weary of them) they with a planke, and certaine boords, made shift in three dayes to set themselues ouer into the maine, three leagues distant, where meeting with fresh-water, this *Pitcher* was broken, and dyed within halfe an houre of ouer eager drinking; *Carder* encountred certaine Sauages called *Tappanhasse*, which led him away dancing, rattling, tabering. They slept on beds of white Cotton netting, tyed two foot from the ground, and a fire on each side, to preuent cold and wild beasts: the next day they marched twenty miles to their Towne, which was foure-square, with foure houses, euery house being two bow-shoot in length, made with small trees like Arbours, thatched to the ground with Palme-tree leaues, hauing no windowes, but thirty or forty doores on each side the square. Their chiefe Lord was named *Cacon*, about forty yeeres old; he had nine wiues, the rest but one, except the most valiant, which were permitted two, one for the house, another to goe with him to the warres. In this Towne were neere foure thousand persons. Hee found among them good entertainment for certaine moneths.

They vied to goe to the Warres three or foure hundred in a company, with bewes and arrowes, and hatting ouercome, would bring home their captiues tyed by the arme to so many of their mens armes, and soone after would tye them to a post, and with a club (after dancing and drinking) slit their heads. Their drinke is made of a root, chewed by women, and spit into a trough, where it stands two or three dayes, and hath a yest on it like Ale, and then is tunned into earthen jarres, wherewith they drinke themselues drunke. After halfe a yeere, hauing learned the Language, he was requested to their Warres against the *Tapwees*, and much bettered their martiall skill, teaching them to make an hundred Targets of tree-barke, and two hundred clubs, marking their owne company with red Balsam (of this they haue red, white, blacke, very odoriferous) and so marched seuen hundred together three dayes, to another foure-square Towne like (but lesse then) their owne. They knocked downe two hundred; tooke twenty; they broyled their carkasses, and after also the prisoners. How many men they kill, so many holes they make in their visage, beginning at the nether lippe, and so proceeding to the cheeke, eye-browes, and eares. Some Portugals came to search for him, two of which, and some Negros, were taken and eaten. Hee obtained leaue to goe to the Coast, hauing foure to prouide him victuals for nine or ten weekes, and so came to *Bahia de todos los Santos*, where he yeelded himselfe to *Michael Ionas*, a Portugall, and arriued in England in Nouember 1586, nine yeeres after his setting forth.

b *Nunbo de silua*, and their owne reports, *Peter Carder*.

§. III.

Most ample Relations of the Brasilian Nations, and Customes by Master ANTHONY KNIVET.

MAster *Anthony Kniuet* hath written a Treatise of what he had seene and suffered in Brasil: He was one of Master *Candishes* company in his vnfortunate voyage, 1591. who after much misery sustained in the Magellan Straits, in their returne was set on shore at S. *Sebastians*, where many of his company died with eating a kinde of blacke venemous Pease. Hee saw there a great beast come out of the River, hauing on the backe great scales, vgly clawes, and a long tayle, which thrust out a tongue, c like a harping iron, but returned without harme. Hee found a dead Whale, which with long lying was couered with Mosse, on which hee yet liued a fortnight. His company were knocked on the head with firebrands, and he like to be eaten of the Sauages, but escaped this and many other miseries; and was saued by the Iesuites from being hanged by the Portugals. Where his calamities compelled him, with another Indian in like predicament of slauerie, to escape by flying, swimming two miles ouer the Sea: and so they trauelled seuen and thirty dayes thorow a desart, meeting by the way (as he saith) Lyons, Leopards, huge Serpents.

Ant. Kniuet, kinsman to the Lord *Kniuet*.

c Some say the Crocodile wanteth a tongue, which otherseiony, but confesse it is very short.

Some Indians they saw with feathers of diuers colours, fixed on their bodies and heads with oyle of Balsam, seeming as if they had bin so borne, not leauing a spot bare, but on their legs: The Sauages sell their children to the Portugals for toyes. Some of them were so haunted with a Spirit which they called *Coropio* (like that which *Lerius* his Sauages called *Aignan*) that some of them dyed therewith in much amazement. Many complained that they were possessed with spirits, which they called *Anasaly*, and commanded themselues to bee bound hand and foot with bow-strings, desiring their friends to beat them with cords, wherewith they hang their beds; but most died notwithstanding. They haue wormes which creepe into their fundaments which consume their guts: for remedie whereof they take slices of Limons and greene pepper, and put therein with salt water. 10

Aignan.

He in diuers expeditions for war and Merchandize with the Portugals, and escapes from them, trauelled thorow more of those Sauage nations, then perhaps any other before or since Out of whose obseruations bought at so deare a rate, I haue heere mustered these many wild people before thee, with such rarities as hee found amongst them.

Petimares.

The *Petimares* are not so barbarous as many other: they inhabite from Baya to Rio Gran de, their bodies are carued with fine workes: in their lips is a hole made with a Roe-Bucks horne, which at mans estate they cut bigger with a Cane, and weare therein a greene stone; otherwise they esteeme a man no Gallant, but a Pesant. They haue no Religion: vse Polygamie: but the women are tied to one husband, except hee giue her publike leaue. When they goe to warre, the wiues carrie all the prouision. That wife whom hee giueth his hunted prey, is his bed-fellow that night: and she goeth to the water, and washeth her selfe: after which she lyeth downe in the net, and commandeth all the rest to attend on her for that day. When they are in trauell, they goe to the doore, and being deliuered, the father lyeth downe and is visited, as before is said. No Indian will kill any female creature whiles his wife is with childe, thinking that would be the death of his childe. They trauell with great store of Tobacco, and haue continually a leafe thereof along the mouth betweene the lip and teeth, the rheume running out at the lip-hole. They war against the Portugals, and all others, eating all, and take so many new names, as prisoners. They thinke mans flesh makes them valiant, Their houses are two hundred yards long without partition: they hang their nets on beames: wash euery morning both men, women, and children: they part their grounds. They haue Serpents amongst them with bodies like trees, which strike two fins out of their fore-quarters, that kill whatsoeuer: they call them [a] *Iuboya*. They haue foure legs and a taile (like an Aligator or Crocodile) which they hide when they lye in the woods for their prey. They haue Monkies as big as a water-deg, faced like a man, with long bread beards, which goe twentie toget her on a tree, and one of them will alway walke vp and downe with his hand on his beard, making a great noyse, the rest harkening still, an houres space. 20 30

[a] See infra.

Maraquites.

The *Maraquites* are betweene Fernambuc and Baya: other Indians call them *Tapopes*, that is, wilde men, which name, all but these, and the Vaanasses, which are like them, account a disgrace. The men are of good stature, the women very proper, and fight with their bowes as well as the men. They haue no dwelling, Religion, nor friendship with any Nation; yet he left them in peace with the Portugals. They haue holes in their lips, but carue not their bodies: vse Polygamie; are swift; neuer come into the field to fight, but keepe in the Mountaines: they eate mans flesh without ceremonies. 40

Topimambares.

The *Topimambares* inhabite from *R. de S. Franc.* to *Baya de todos Sanctos*, they are, and speake like the *Petimares*, but the women are of better complexion. The men let their beards grow long.

Waymoores.

From Baya to Eleoos are the *Waymoores*, men of great stature, and swift as a Horse: fiue or sixe of them will set on a Sugar-house with an hundred therein. I haue seene one (saith our Author) take a man aliue, and defend himselfe with this his prisoner, as it were with a Target. They haue long haire; are without Townes or Houses, and care not where they come, presuming of their swiftnesse. They are greedie Man-eaters, and are alwaies soile with dure and dust, by lying on the ground and ashes. *Iarric* writes that they are without Gouerneurs euery one doing what seemes good in his owne eyes; only he is accounted most Noble, that hath slaine most enemies, with whom for any of them to speake, is punished with death. They roue vp and downe in vncertaine dwellings, and therefore cannot by warre be conquered. This wandring is common to many of these Brasilian Sauages. 50

Tomamymenos.

The *Tomamymenos* dwell at *Spirito Sancto*: haue settled Townes, with great stones set a-boue like pales, of a good height, and within walls of clay and stone: they make the sides of their houses with loope-holes to shoot out at. They deck their bodies with feathers, and paint themselues blacke and red. One of these tooke the Portugall Captaine, *Martin de Sa*, and in spite of all his company, carried him a stones cast, and threw him into a Riuer, but hee 60

was

was rescued by *Petummyen* * another Sauage. The Portugals tooke sixteene thouland, slew the tenth part, and parted the rest, destroying the Country downe the Riuer *Paraeyua*.

The *Waytaquazes* dwell on the North and South sides of Cape Frio. They are of greater stature then the Waymoores: we took thirteene of them, and whiles we searched for more, they burnt their cords from their hands and fled. Their women warre with bowes and arrowes. They lye on the ground like Hogs, with a fire in the midst: hold no peace with any, but eate all they can get. Heere the mountaines were full of Crabbice, which sticked so fast on their skins, that they were faine to take dry straw to singe themselues.

Abausanga-retam was Captaine of a kinde of *Tamoyes*, an hundred and twenty yeeres old, which being taken, ranne amongst the enemies, where being shot in one and twenty places, he fell; then desired Baptisme, after which, within foure houres he died: his haughtie courage could not brooke captiuitie.

The *Wayanasses* keepe at *Ila Grande*: they are low, great bellied, cowards, not carued, glory not to eate mans flesh: the Women vgly, with bigge bodies, and are well faced, painted red with *Urucu*, which growes in a cod like a Beane: the crownes of both Sexes are shauen like Friers, the rest of their haire long.

The *Topinaques* haue their dwelling at Saint *Vincents*: are of good stature and complexion: the women painted with diuers colours; eate mans flesh; adore nothing; onely when they kill a man, paint themselues with a fruit called Ianipano, and with feathers on their heads, great stones in their lips, Rattles in their hands, dance three dayes together, drinking a filthy liquor, whereto they said Tobacco made them fresh. Among them is great store of Gold in many hils by the Sea.

The *Paries* dwell an hundred miles within Land, are low like the *Wayanasses*, liue on Pine-nuts, and small Cocos as big as Apples, with shels like Wall-nuts, but harder; they call them Eyrites: they waire with none, eate not mans flesh if they haue other meat: lye in nets of barke, haue no houses, but two or three boughs tyed together, couered with Palme-leaues: for a knife or combe, they will giue fiue or sixe gallons of Balsame-oyle.

The *Molopaques* inhabite heere the Riuer Paradiua, are like Dutchmen in bignesse, faire of complexion, bearded, ciuill, conter their priuities: their Towns circled with wals of earth and great logges: haue a King called *Meriuiskann*, which had thirteene wiues. They haue store of Gold, which they esteeme not, nor vse it but to tye on their fishing lines: this is in the Riuer Para, fourescore leagues beyond Paracyua. They take none but what the rayne washeth from the Mountaines, which are of blacke earth without Trees. The Women are goodly and faire like English women, modest, neuer leene to laugh, and of good capacitie. They tye their haire about their middle with barke, and couer thetewith their nakednesse: their haire also is of diuers colours: and they which want long haire, vse a furre to couer themselues. They eate mans flesh; obserue meales at noone and night (a thing rare in those parts,) vse no Religion, so farre as our Author could see in nine or ten dayes of his abode with them: they are very cleanly.

The *Motayas* met them with dancing and singing: the women fate about them and wept, and then set forth their victuals: they laughed at them for refusing mans flesh: they are small people and browne, weare their haire in fashion as we in England, frizling it round about, and in other parts of the body, plucke it away with a shell.

The *Lopos*, or *Biberos*, as the Portugals call them, liue in the Mountaines of Pine-apples: they saw no houses, but boughs tyed together with the pils of Trees: they would rob them of their goods, but not hurt their persons: heere they found many mines of Gold, and many rich stones: no part of America is richer, but it is farre within Land, and the Countrey populous, that neither Spaniard nor Portugall can inhabite there: they are browne & small, the women as shamelesse as beasts.

The *Wayanauasons* dwell in small Townes by the side of a Riuer, are the simplest of all other, would stand and gaze on vs like heards of Deere, without speaking word. They are bigge, tall, cleane made, lazie: heere sixteene of their company dyed with eating a certaine yellow plummie, as bigge as a Horse-plummie. The Rootes of Mandioca had almost killed them all, but by a piece of Vnicornes Horne they were preserued. From hence he with twelue Portugals determined to trauell to the South-Sea by Land: they came to many mountaines where they found store of gold, and many precious stones, and had thoughe themselues in Peru; those stones they tooke vp one day, they cast away the next to take vp better. In this Countrey they trauelled two moneths, till they came to the great *Mountaine of Crystall*, for heigh: seeming to tower vp it selfe in the clouds, and was impassable for steepensse: they saw it ten dayes before they came at it, and were not able when the Sun was aloft, to trauell against it for the glistering reflection. They passed alongst it twentie dayes before they could finde passage, and at last came to a Riuer which ranne vnder it.

* This name signifieth Long Tobacco, as he interprets. *Lerin* saith other wise.

Waytaquazes.

Abausanga-retam.

Wayanasses.

Topinaques.

Paries.

Molopaques.

Motayas.

Lopos.

Wayanauasons.

Then did they make them prouision of great Canes, three yards and a halfe broad, and sixe long, and killing good store of Tamandroes, rosted them: and thus prouided went into the vault, which made such a noise with the water, that it seemed to them an enchantment. They went in on a Munday morning, & came out againe on a morning, they knew not whether one or two dayes after.

Tamoyes. The next Sauages they encountred were a kinde of *Tamoyes*, which are as proper men as any in Europe, most of them faire, their heads set with feathers; the women tall, proper, slender in the waste, faire, fine-handed, comely faced, and brests carued. They esteeme of gold and gems, as we of stones in the streets. Here he liued eighteene moneths: but his twelue companions they slue and deuoured. Him they spared, because hee professed himselfe a French-man, with whom they sometimes had commerce. 10

Tocomans. The *Tocomans* dwell betweene the Riuer of Plate and Saint *Vincent*. They are sandie, small, but not so little as they say of the Pigmees, and dwell in Caues.

Carioghs. The *Carioghs* for two or three Glasses and a Combe, with some Knives, would giue the worth of foure or fiue thousand crownes in gold or stones. Their women are comely & faire, the men die their bodies blacke. These Carigij [d] (so *Rodericus* cals them) dwell in handsome thatched houses, sixty foot long: euery house they call a Village. They haue no superiour; dwell in a barren soyle; are very fond of euery trifle and toy, and will trauell laden with their wares for such trade thirty leagues to the Portugals, and sometimes sell themselues slaues. If they take an enemy aliue, they commit him to the Boyes of ten yeeres old to bee slaine; fiue or sixe of which smite out his braines with clubs. And this is a kind of Knighthood or Gentility vnto them; in signe whereof they cut the skinne from the Ankle to the Necke, and fast many dayes, and obserue a set Diet. They obserue charmes and sooth-sayings. If any dye without children, all his substance is buried with him. 20

d Hieron. Rodericus.

The *Tamoyes* his last hosts, by his instructions (who was desirous to try if the Sea might yeeld him any succour) left their [e] habitations, and 30000. of them aduentured themselues to seeke new. They came into the countrey of the Amazones, which the Indians call *Mandiocusyaus*, but durst not warre against them: they tooke a towne of the Carijos, and ate three hundred of them; the rest fled to the Riuer of Plate, and obtained Portugall succour, who tooke these *Tamoyes* captiues, slue ten thousand, and shared 20000. amongst them for slaues. And thus came he againe into his Portugall seruery, from which hee had made an escape once before, and trauelled nine moneths in the wilderness: fiue or sixe yeeres he serued the Portugals, and liued a yeere and eleuen moneths with the Canibals. 30

[e] They had so done before, or else could not haue knowne the French.

He made another escape into Angola, and serued as a drudge in Masangana, the sicklieſt Countrey vnder the Sunne, where the Portugals die like Chickens, gape for aire like the Camelions, liue close, take Physicke, euery weeke let bloud, obserue certaine diet and houres when to goe abroad. But his houre to goe abroad at liberty was not yet come. Backe he was sent to Brasile: and long it was before his longing could be satisfied to reuiew his Country and friends: some compassion of his passions, I think this tedious following him in this epitomised discourse of his disasters hath bred in you: wherein (as in the following also) are many things strange, some seeming doubtfull, which if any reiect, let them not blame me, who had rather beleeue more then this, then to aduenture the search amongst those cruell Barbarians. 40

§. IIII.

Of the strange Creatures in Brasile.

Friers Treatise of Brasil. NO man hath written so absolute a discourse of Brasile, as was that taken from a Portugall Frier, and by *Francis Cooke* sold to Master *Hakluyt*. Out of him I could recite the names of other Brasilian Nations, *Ararape*, *Apigapigtanga*, *Vintan*, which he saith were by a Magician Priest of Portugall conueyed to Fernambuc) *Tapuya* is a generall name, of which he reckoneth threescore and sixteene seuerall Nations, most of them of sundry languages. 50

Guaymares or Waymores, as K. and as Stad. Wayganna. The *Guaymares* haue hard skins, and beat their children with thistles to harden them. They are swift and cruell, cut off the captiues flesh with Reeds, leaning nothing but the bones and guts, and disbowell women with childe, to eate the child roasted. The Camucuira haue paps reaching almost to the knees, which when they runne, they binde to their waste. The Curupetie eate not men, but carry the heads for shew.

Beasts of Brasil. The Winter begins in Brasile in *March*, and ends in *August*. The beasts of Brasil he reckoneth Deere; Elkes like vnto Kine or Mules, which dliue and goe (but swimme not (vnder the 60

the water; Bores of two sorts, Conies, Pigs, Ounces, Foxes with bags to carry their yong vnder the belly. The Tatu or Armadilla, which digs as much as many men with Mattocks: the Conduacu or Porcupine of three sorts: the Hirara like Ciuet Cats, which eate honey: the Aquiqui bearded Apes blacke, and sometimes one yellow, which they say is their King, hauing an Instrument from his gullet as bigge as a Duck-egge, wherewith he maketh a loud sound; so actiue, that they sometimes are said to catch an arrow with the hand, and redart it at the shooter; and so curning, that they seeke a leafe, chew it, and put the same into their wounds. There are of them many kindes. The Cuati are like Badgers, they climbe trees; no snake, egge, or bird escapes him. There are others greater, as great Dogs, with Tusks, which devoure men and beasts. There are wilde Cats, which yeeld good Furre; and are very fierce: the Iagoaruttupare Dogs of Brasile; the Tapati also barke like Dogs. The Iaguacinia is a kind of Foxe which feedeth on Sea-crabs and Sugar-canes. The Biataca, a kinde of Ferret of such stinking sauour, that some Indians haue died thereof: yea Dogges, which come neere, escape not: the sent endureth fifteene or twenty dayes in those things which he hath come neere to: and causeth some to wne sometimes to bee disinhabited. This commeth of a ventositie, which it voideth and conceeth in the earth, or casteth it out, being in danger to be taken: it feedeth on birds Eggs, and Amber. Ten or twelue kinds of Rats, all good meat. Other beasts are before mentioned.

Of *Snakes without venome*, hee numbreth the Giboya, some of which are twenty foot long, and wil swallow a Deere whole, crushing it with the winding of his taile, and bruising it with licking to that purpose. The Guiaranpiaquana eateth eggs, goeth safter on the trees, then any man can runne on the ground, with a motion like swimming. The Camoiama is all greene, and liueth on like food. The Boytiapua eate Frogs; the Indians strike this Serpent on womens hips as remedy to barrennesse. The Gartiæpia smelleth so, that none can abide it: such is also the Boyuma: the *Bum* (so termed of his crie) is great and harmelesse; the Baicupegangа hath venemous prickles on his backe. Snakes.

There are *other venomous Snakes*, as the Iararaca, of which are foure kinds, of musky sent, one ten spannes long, with great tuskes, which they hide and stretch out at pleasure. The Curucucu fifteene spannes long, which lyeth on a tree to hunt his prey. The Boycimiaga which hath a bell in his tayle, so swift, that they call it the flying Snake; there are two kinds thereof. The Ibiracua causeth by his biting, the blood to issue thorow all parts of the body, eyes, mouth, nose, eares, &c. The Ibiboca is the faireft, but of foulest venome amongst them all. The fields, woods, houses, beds, bootes, are subiect to the plenty of Snakes, which without helpe kill in foure and twenty houres. There are also many Scorpions, which ordinarily kill not, but cause extreme paine for foure and twenty houres space. Lizards couer the wals of houses, and holes are full of them. Their fundament-worms are very dangerous, which Sir *Richard Hawkins* saith he saw like a long Magot, greene, with a red head, creeping in, and glewing himselfe to the gut, where it groweth so great, that it stoppeth the passage, and killeth, with cruell Colicke torments. Master *Knines*.

Master *Knines* speakes of one Serpent which he killed, thirteene spans long, with foure and twenty teeth, great shels about the necke, blacke and russet, like a collar, lesse on her bodie, and darke greene vnder her belly, all speckled with blacke and white, with foure sharpe feet, no longer then a mans finger, and a tongue like a harping iron. Her tayle like a strait bull-horne, blacke and white listed. If they finde fire, they beat themselues in it, till either the fire or themselues be extinguished. They vse from a tree to fall on their prey passing by, thrusting their tayle into the fundament. The Indians will not goe (vnder hue or fixe) to set vpon one of them; this yet he killed with the helue of an axe. *Friars* Treatise of Birds.

Of Birds, there are Parrots innumerable, more then Starlings or Sparrows in Spaine: the Guaminbig like Bees, which sleepe fixe moneths; the Tangara which haue the falling-sicknesse, the rest dancing about that which is fallen, with a noise, from which they will not bee skarred till they haue done, &c.

Of Fruits, hee reckons the Iacapueaya, like a pot, as bigge as a great bowle, two fingers thicke, with a couer in it, within full of Chesnuts: being much eaten greeue, it causeth all haire to fall off: Balsam trees pricked, excellent for cure and sent: Oyle-trees many; one as a Well or Riuer, growing in dry places where no water is: it hath holes in the branches as long as ones arme, full of water Winter and Summer, neuer running ouer, but alwayes at like stay: fiue hundred persons may come to the foot of it and drinke and wash their fill without want: the water is sauoury and cleere. There are hearbs which seeme to sleepe all night, and others which make shew of sence, as wee haue before obserued from Master *Harcourt* in Guiana. Fruits, Trees, and Herbs.

Of strange fishes in Brasil, he nameth the Oxe-fish, with eyes and eye-lids, two armes a cubit long, with two hands, fiue fingers and nayles, as in a man; and vnder the armes the female Oxe-fish.

male had two paps inwards like an Oxe: it cannot bee long vnder water: it hath no fins but the tayle, which is round and close, two stones neere the braine of great esteeme; the inwards of an Oxe, and taste like Porke.

Master Turner (who lived in Brasil, and was acquainted with Mr Knivet) saith the Indians told him, the like.

The Cueurij iba is a fresh-water Snake, fiue and twenty or thirty foot long (the Mamma is a greater kinde) toothed like a dogge, with a chaine striped along the backe very faire: It catcheth a Man, Cow, Stag, or any other prey, winding it with the tayle, and so swallowseth it whole: after which she lyes and rots, the Rauens and Crowes eating her all but the bones, to which after groweth new-flesh, by life deriued from the head, which is hidden all this while in the mire (which therefore they that finde, seeke and kill.) They will sleepe so being full, that they may cut off pieces (he tels an instance) from the tayle, and they not awaken. They found one which was fifty spans or twelue yards and a half long, hauing two wilde Bores in the belly. Thus much of the creatures in Brasile. Let vs now take better view of their Warres, Religion, and other their Rites.

CHAP. V.

Of the Customes and Rites of the Brasilians.

§. I.

Of their warres and man-eating, and of the Diuel, torturing them.

Lerius Nauig.

THe Brasilians, for the most part as you haue seene, exercise irreconciliable hostilitie, not to enlarge their dominions, but onely to be reuenged for the death of their friends and Ancestors, slaine by their enemies. The Elder men, as they sit or lye in their hanging beds, will make an Oration of the vertue of their Predecessors, and of their sustained wrongs, and so excite the yonger to take armes: These Orations last sometimes sixe houres. Their armes are clubs; or wooden swords, fiue or sixe foot long, and a foot broad, a finger thicke, and very sharpe. One of these men being throughly moued, would trouble two of our Fencers. Their bowes are as long as ours, the string made of the herbe *Tocon*, little, yet able to endure the strength of an horse: their arrowes an ell long, which they will shoot twice as fast, as our men; they haue leather shields; their elder men lead the rankes (if they may be so called, which haue none to marshall or order them) and with great shouts, and shewing the enemies the bones of their slaine friends, they enter into a herce battell. Their captiues they conuey in the middest of their armie home to their Territories, vnto whom the men will not sticke to giue their Sisters or Daughters, to performe all the duties of a Wife, and feed them with the best, till they redemand the same out of their flesh: the men are employed (if it be long before the slaughter) in hunting, fowling, fishing; the women in gardening, or gathering Oysters. When that dismall day approacheth, knowledge is giuen, and the men, women, and children assemble to the place appointed, and there passe the morning in drinking; and the captiue (although he knoweth the dreadfull issue) danceth, drinketh, and frolicks it with the best. After sixe or seuen houres thus spent, two or three of the strongest fasten a rope about his middle, leauing his armes at liberty, and so lead him vp and down the Village in triumph. Neither doth he for all this hang down his head, as men heere going to be hanged, but with incredible courage emblazoneth his own worthinesse. Thus, thus, saith he, haue I sometimes bound your kindred, and thy father, saith he to one, haue I deuoured, and thy brethren (to another) haue I *boncaned* and eaten: and what innumerable numbers of you *Touan Pinambaussy* haue these hands taken, this throat swallowed? Neither will the *Margaiates* suffer this my death vnreuenged. Then they bring him stones, and bid him reuenge his death. He hurleth them at those which stand about him, whereof there are some foure thousand, and hurteth diuers: I saw one (saith our Author) whose legge I had thought had beene broken by the violence of one of those blowes. After this comes one, which all this while had bin hidden, with the [a] fatall club; and, Art thou not one of the *Margaiates*? saith he: and hast thou not deuoured our kindred? the other answereth, O how lustily I haue done it, how prompt haue I been in taking them, how greedy in eating? And therefore, replyeth the other, shalt thou be killed and roffed on the *Boncan*. What then? saith he, my death shall not bee [b] vnreuenged. The club ends their Dialogue, with one blow striking him dead.

a This club they call *Iwara Peroum*, which is consecrated to this mischiefe by certaine ceremonies of singing and painting.

b This confidence is as well in the women as in the men.

His

His wife (if he had any, as they sometimes vse to bestow on their Captiues) comes to the carkasse, and spends a little time and passion in mourning, but her Crocodiles teares are soone dried, and the humour fals into her teeth, which water for the first morsell. The other women, especially the elder (which are most cruell and greedie) bring hot water and wash the body, and rub it till it looke like the skin of a Pigge: then comes the Master of the Feast, which owed the Captiue, and cuts it out as readily, as any Butcher with vs can doe a Weather. They daube the children p with the bloud: foure women carrie about the armes and legs for a shew, with shouts and cries: The trunke is diuided into two parts, the vpper part being cut and separated from the lower: the inwards are left to the women, which seethe and make the broth of them called *Mingau*, which they sup vp, with their children: they eate also the flesh about the head, The braine, tongue, and that which within the head may serue for meate, is the childrens share. The Author of the Feast hath a new name added to the former (for they haue so many names as they haue slaine Captiues, the chiefe of the Cottage branding him on the arme, with an honourable marke for the memory thereof) and all that day he must spend in quiet. The *Margaua* q are a kind of Brasilians, which hold confederacie with no other Nation, but kill all which come to their hands, and that so cruelly, that they will cut off their armes and legges while they are alue. These liue in the Mountaines. They cut them with stones, and those which haue trade with the Christians, vse Knues.

p *Io. Stad. lib. 2. cap. 29.*

q *Stad. l. 2. c. 31*

Their *Boucan* is a Grediron of foure crotches, set in the ground, a yard high, and as much asunder, with billets laid thereon, and other sticks on them grate-wise. On this they rost the flesh, putting fire vnder, all the people standing about the same, and euery one gets a little piece of him. But me thinkes I see horror expressed in the countenance of him that reades this, and euery one wearie of viewing this Tragedie, loathing this inhumane feasting with humane flesh.

I will therefore leaue their shambles, and (which better beseemes a Pilgrime) will visit their holies and holy places. But alas, where or what are they? *Massaus* hath alreadie told vs, that they obserue no Gods; and *Lerius* confirmes the same, yet sheweth that they acknowledge a Deuill, whom they call *Aygnan*: not that they worship him, but are tormented by him. Euen in speaking of him, they tremble, and the remembrance breedes a compassionate amazement in the hearer, an amazed passion in the speaker, while he applaudes our happinesse free from such tyrannie, and deplores his owne miserie. Hee sometimes in the forme of a beast, sometimes in forme of a Bird, and otherwhiles deformed in some monstrous shape, doth grieuously torment them. Euen whiles the Christians were in conference with them, they would pitiously cry out. *Hei, Hei*, helpe, *Aygnan* vexeth me. Nor could this bee counterfeit in the iudgement of any that conuersed with them. They beleeue the immortalitie of the soule, and that the soules of the vertuous, that is (in their sense) of such as haue killed and eaten many enemies, shall flie beyond the highest Mountaines, and be gathered to the soules of their Progenitors, and there liue in pleasant Gardens, and perpetuall dancings and delicacies. The cowardly Ghosts shall be carried vnto torment, by *Aygnan*, without end. They haue no name, whereby to signifie God vnto them, but wondered to heare what the Frenchmen told of the Creator of Heauen and Earth. And because they are afraid of Thunder, which they call *Toupan*, they told them that God was Author thereof: the foolish Indians reply, that he was then naught which would make them afraid. But the feare of *Aygnan* made them sometimes flexible to embrace the Christian Religion, hearing that this Deuill was inferiour to the Christians God. So that euen in these (the most degenerate of all, which I haue obserued in this long and tedious Pilgrimage) there is some sparke left of Religion, euen in the acknowledgement of a Deuill, and of eternall rewards and punishments.

t Lib. 2. c. 6.

Theuet tels otherwise of Toupan, as after followes.

§. II.

Of their Priests or Magicians.

THis is further confirmed by that which is written of certaine Magicians or Priests amongst them: which perswade the people that they haue dealings with Spirits, that by their meanes they haue their Roots and sustinance, and may by them haue fortitude. I (saith *Lerius*) was present at one of their Assemblies, where fiue hundred were gathered together, which diuided themselues into three parts: the men went into one house, the women into a second, the children into a third. The *Curabes* forbade the women and children to depart their houses, but to attend diligently to singing: and we (saith he) were commanded to abide with the women. Anon the men in one house fell to singing, *He, He, He,*

He, answered by the women in the other with the same. They howled it out for a quarter of an houre, shaking their brests, and foming at the mouth, and (as if they had had the falling sicknesse) some falling downe in a swoune, the Deuill in seeming entring into them. The children also followed in the same harsh deuotions. After this, the men sung pleasantly, which caused me to goe thither, where I found them singing and dancing in three seuerall Rings, in the middest of each, three or foure *Caraibes*, adorned with Hats and Garments of Feathers euery one hauing a *Maraca*, or Rattle, in both his hands. These Rattles are made of a fruit bigger then an Ostriches Egge, out of which they said, that the Spirit would speake, and they continually shooke them, for the due consecration. These *Caraibes* danced to and fro, and blowed the smoke of *Petum* on the standers by, saying. Receiue yee all the Spirit of *Fortsinde*, whereby yee may ouercome your Enemies. This they did often: the solemnitie continued two houres, the men ignorant of Musicke, and yet rauishing my spirit with the delight I conceiued in their Song. Their words sounded this, that they were grieued for the losse of their Progenitors, but were comforted in the hope, that they should one day visit them beyond the Hills; and then threatned the *Onotacates* [t] (which dwell not far from them, and are at enmitie with all their Neighbours, as swift as Harts, wearing their haire to the buttockes, eating raw flesh, and differing from all others in Rites and Language) and now prophesied their destruction at hand. Somewhat also they added in their Song of the flood, that once had drowned all the World, but their Ancestors, which escaped by climbing high trees. That day they feasted with great cheere.

t Lery. c. 5.

This solemnitie is celebrated euery third yeere; and then the *Caraibes* appoint in euery Family three or foure *Maraca*, to bee adorned with the best Feathers, and sticked in the ground, with meate and drinke set before them; and the people beleeue they eate it. They minister vnto their *Maraca* fifteene dayes; after which, in a superstitious conceit, they think that a Spirit speakes to them while they rattle their *Maraca*. They were exceedingly offended, if any tooke away any of this Prouision, as the French sometimes did; for which, and denying other the *Caraibes* lyes, those Priests hated them exceedingly. Yet doe they not adore their *Maraca*, or any thing else. *Peter Carder* [z] saith, he could obserue no Religion amongst them, but the worship of the Moone; specially the New Moone, whereat they reioyced, leaping, singing, and clapping of hands.

z Pet. Carder.

Stadius [u] tels (as you heard) that they ascribed his taking to the prediction of *Maraca*. Hee tels of their consecration, that the [x] *Pagyi* (so hee eals them) enioyne that euery one should carry their *Tamaraka* to the house, where they should receiue the faculty of speech. Euery ones Rattle is pitched in the ground by the steele or stalke, and all of them offer to the Wizard which hath the chiefe place, Arrowes, Feathers, and Eare-rings; he that breathes *Petum* on euery Rattle, puts it to his mouth, shakes it, and saith, *Nee Kora*, that is, Speake if thou be within: anon followeth a squeaking voyce, which I, saith *Stadius*, thought the Wizard did, but the people ascribed it to the *Tamaraka*. Then those Wizards persuade them to make warres, saying, that those spirits long to feed on the flesh of Captiues. This done, euery one takes his Rattle, and builds vp a Roome for it, to keepe it in, where he sets victuals, requireth and asketh all necessaries thereof, as we doe of God: and these, as *Stadius* affirmeth, are their Gods. These *Pagi* doe initiate Women vnto Witchcraft by such Ceremonies of smoke, dancing, &c. till shee fall as in the Falling sicknesse, and then hee sayth, hee will reuiue her, and make her able to foretell things to come: and therefore when they goe to the Warre, they will consult with these Women, which pretend conference with Spirits.

u Stad. l. 2. c. 23.

x Lerius saith, That the *Caraibes* & the *Pagyi* are two kinds: *Theuet* but one, and *Stadius* mentions no more but the *Pagyi*.

Andrew Theuet [y] (which was in this Antarctike France with *Villagagnon*) agreeth in many of the former Reports: he addeth, that for feare of *Aiguan* they will not goe out, but they will carry fire with them, which they thinke forceable against him.

He writes that they acknowledge a Prophet called *Toupan*, which they say makes it thunder and raine, but they assigne no time nor place to his worship. They tell of a Prophet, which taught them to plant their *Hetich* or Root which they cut in pieces and plant in the Earth, and is their chiefe food; of which they haue two kinds. The first Discouerers they much honoured as *Caraibes* or Prophets, and as much haue distasted the Christians since, calling them *Mabora*, the name of an ancient Prophet, detested by them. But *Toupan* (they say) goeth about, and reuealeth secrets to their *Caraibes*. *Theuet* addes, that they obserue Dreames; and their *Payges*, or *Caraibes* professe the interpretation of them; which are also esteemed as Witches, which conferre with Spirits, and vse to hurt others with the poyson called Aboiay, a kind of Nut. They doe a kind of worship to these *Payages*, and will pray them that they may not bee sicke; and will kill them, if they promise falsly. In their consultations, they will prouide a new lodging for the Wizard, with a cleane white bed, and store of *Cabouin* (which is their ordinary drinke, made by a Virgin of ten or twelue yeeres old)

y A. Theuet. Antarct.

old) and of their Root-foods: into the which they conuey him, being before washed, & hauing abstained nine dayes from his Wife. Then doth he lye on that Bed, and inuocate, none being with him in the House, and rayseth his Spirit, called *Hauiouslira*; which sometimes, as some Christians affirmed to our Authour, appeareth so, as all the people may heare, though they see him not. And then they question him of their successe in their enterprises. They beleeue the soules Immortality, which they call *Cherepconare*, with rewards to the valiant Man-eaters, in goodly Paradises, and *Agnans* punishments to others. But his boldnesse makes me the lesse bold in following him in these and other things; which I know not with what authoritie hee auerreth against the former witnesses, whereas *Theuet*, sometimes taken in lying, deseruedly lesse credit in the rest. When there is any tempest in the water, hee saith hey attribute it to the soules of their Progenitors, and cast something into the water to appease it.

They haue a Tradition, That one, in habite like to the Christians, had long since told their Progenitors of Diuine matters, but with so little effect, as he forsooke them; and euer since had those bloody Warres continued amongst them. How little the Iesuites can preuayle, in bringing the Brasilians to Christianitie, *Maffeus* [a] hath written somewhat, and *Pierre du Iarric*, a Iesuite, very largely; which is not so pertinent to our present purpose.

Master *Knauet* (to whose Relations our former Chapter is so much indebted) telleth of a Rocke in Brasil called *Etoneca*, with an entrance like a doore, where the Indians say (it is like they borrowed it of some fabulous Frier) that Saint *Thomas* preached. It is within like a great Hall: hard by it is a stone as bigge as foure Canoes, supported by foure stones like stickes, little bigger then a mans finger. The Indians say it had beene wood, and by Miracle was thus altered. They shew vpon great Rockes many foot-prints of one bignesse: and tell that the Saint called the fishes of the Sea, and they heard him preach. This smels of a Franciscan Cowle.

The Portugall Friers Treatise mentioned in the former Chapter deliuereth many things worthy our obseruation: They haue some Tradition of the flood, in which they say all were drowned, one only escaping on a Ianipara with a Sister of his, which was with childe, from whom they had their beginning. They haue no knowledge of the Creator, nor of paine and glory after this life, and therefore vse no Ceremonies of worship. Yet doe they acknowledge that they haue soules which die not, but are conuerted into Deuils, and goe into certaine fields where grow many Figge-trees alongst the bankes of a goodly Riuer, and there dance. They are greatly afraid of the Deuill (whom they call *Curupira*, * *Taguain*, *Pigtauga*, *Matichera*, *Auchauga*) insomuch that often they haue dyed with the imagination of him. Yet doe not they worship it, nor any other creature or Idoll; onely some old men say, that in some wayes they haue certaine posts, where they offer him some things for feare, and because they would not dye. Sometimes (but seldome) the Deuill appeares to them, and some few among them are possessed. There are Witches which vse Witchcrafts, rather for health then deuotion. Some Witches are called *Coryphs*, or holinesse, but (like *his holinesse* of Rome) are of bad life: these would seeme to do strange things, rayseng some to life which had feined themselues dead: they are their Oracles for their husbandry and other affaires: sometimes causing them to dye for hunger, whiles they promise to make the Mattockes worke alone.

M. *Knauet* told me that one of them being tormented by the Spirit, hee heard one of these *Pages* which spake to him and told him this was contrary to his countenance thus to torment them (which death vsually followed) & if he so continued; they would all goe the White men and become Christians. Whereupon the Deuill left that body presently, and he recouered. [a] *Maffei* l. 5. *Pierre du Iarric* l. 3. c. 22. *ad finem.*

Friers treatise.

* *Sup. c. 4.*

§. III.

Of other their Rites, and a new Mungrell Sect amongst them.

THey haue no proper name for God, but say *Tupan* is the Thunder and Lightning, which gaue them Mattockes and food. Their Mariages are diuorced vpon any quarrell. In times past (they tell) no young man married before he slue an Enemie, nor the woman before she had her termes, which time was therefore festiuall. At Marriages also they vsed great Drinkings, and the Feast ended, they were laid in a cleane Net, after which the Father tooke a wedge of stone, and did cut vpon a stake or post, which (they say) was to cut the tailes from the grand children; who were for this cause borne without them. After they were married they began to drinke; (for till then their Fathers brought them vp in sobrietie of dyet and modesty of speech) and then with a vessell the old men gaue him the first [a] *Wine*, holding his head with their hands for feare of vomiting, which, if it happened, was a signe

[a] Their strong drinke.

a signe he would not be valiant. They eate at all times in the night and day, and keepe no meate long, being no niggards of their store (this name were the greatest disgrace you could offer them) and count it an honour to be liberall. They are patient of hunger and thirst: will eate Snakes, Toads, Rats, and all fruits which are not poylon; drinke not ordinarily whiles they eate, but after meate will drinke drunke. They haue some particular Festiuals, in which two or three dayes together they eate not, but drinke, and goe about singing, calling all to the like fellowship: sleepe not, haue their Musickes, and sometimes fall to quarrels. They wash not before meate; they eate sitting, or lying in their beds, or on the ground. They goe to bed betimes, and rise not early. In the morning one chiefe man makes an Oration to them lying in his Net, which continueth the space of an houre, about labouring as their forefathers did, with the substance and circumstances thereof. When he is vp, hee continueth his preaching, running through the Towne. This custome they borrowed of a bird, which singeth euery morning, by them called the King and Lord of birds. When a man speakes with a woman, he turnes his backe to her. They shaue their haire with a halfe Moone before, which they say they learned of Saint *Thomas*. Being angry, they let their haire grow: women, when they mourne, or when their Husbands goe a farre iourney, cut their haire. They go naked: and when any weare apparell, it is for fashion rather then honesty, as on the head, or no further then the nauell. Some houses haue fiftie, threescore, or threescore and tenne Roomes, and some are without partition: ordinarily in one House they are of a Kindred, and one is principall.

Feasts. Orations.

In Child-birth, the Father or some other (whom they take for their Gossip) takes it vp, and cuts the Nauell-string with teeth, or two stones, and fasts till it fals off, and then makes drinkings. The women presently after trauell wash themselues in their Riuers: giue sucke a yeere and halfe, without any other thing to eate; carrying the child on her backe in a Net to the place of her labour: they rocke them on the palmes of their hands. They neuer strike their wiues except in times of drinking, and sometimes will be willing to take this opportunitie. Their children play without scurrilitie or quarrels imitating the voyces of Birds and the like. They will spare a Captiue that is a good Singer.

Child-births.

When one dyeth, they of that Kindred cast themselues vpon him in the Net, sometimes choking him before he be dead: and those which cannot cast themselues on the bed, fall on the ground, with such knockes, that it seemeth strange, they dye not also for company: and sometimes they prouo so feeble that they dye likewise. If the party dye in the Euening, they weepe all night with a high voyce, calling their Neighbours and Kindred to societie of their griefe. If it be one of the principall, all the Towne meets to mourne together, and they curse with plagues those which lament not, prophesying that they shall not bee mourned for. They wash and paint the dead curiously, and then couer him euer with Cotton yarne, and put him in a great vessell vnder the Earth, that no Earth may come to him, and couering this vessell with the Earth, make him a House, where euery day they carry him meate. For when he is wearied with dancing, say they, hee comes thither to eate. Thus for a certaine time they goe to bewaile him euery day. With him they bury all his Iewels; if any had giuen him a Sword or other thing, now he challengeth his gift againe. The Mourners eat not but by night. This mourning lasteth a Moone, after which they make Drinkings: but many after this will forbeare them.

Funerals.

They rule themselues by the Sunne, and goe two or three hundred leagues thorow the Woods: no Horse will hold out with them: they feare no Sea, being able to continue a night and a day swimming. When they returne from victory, their women receiue them with shouts, and buffeting themselues on the mouth. The Keeper appointed to the Captiue, is one giuen him to be as his Wife for bed and board. Some of these are so resolute, that they will not be ransomed, saying, it is a wretched thing to dye and to stinke, & be eaten of Wormes. Sometimes their Keeper will runaway with them.

When they kill a Captiue at their Feasts, if hee fall on his backe, it is an ominous signe that the killer shall dye, which presages they obserue in other circumstances. The taker hath a new name, as a title of dignitie added to him, and must be content to fill his fancie with this new Gentility, for nothing is left him to fill his belly, euery one taking from him that which he hath. He stands all that day on certaine logges of the Tree Pilan, with strange silence: he is presented with the head of the dead, the eyes pulled out, his pulses annointed with the strings and sinewes, and cutting off the mouth whole, they put it in manner of a Bracelet about his arme. Thus lyeth he downe in his Net, fearing if all Rites be not accomplished, that the soule of the dead will kill him. Within few dayes after they giue him the habit, razing his skin with the tooth of a Catia, in forme of some worke, putting thereon Cole and juyce of Broome-rape, he lying still certaine dayes in silence, hauing water, meale, and fruits set neere him. After this, they make a great Feast, and then may hee lay aside his mour-

Gentilities.

mourning, and cut his haire; and thence forwards may kill any without any painfull ceremonie. *Abaetes, Marubixaba, Morracara*, are names of Gentilitie amongst them.

The Fryers haue obtained some good liking with the Brasilians, for teaching their children to write, reade, and cipher: the Iesuits will be of esteeme euery where: yet two and fifty of them sayling from Lisbon to Brasil, *Anno* 1570. by Frenchmen at [b] Sea were taken and slaine.

In [c] Marriages they abstaine (*sayth Lerius*) onely from Mother, Sister, and Daughter: they obserue no Marriage-ceremonies, but vpon consent of her friends and her owne, take her home. It is a credit to haue many wiues, amongst whom is no *Leah* to enuie *Rachels* greater portion of loue: the Husband may kill the Adulteresse; but for their vnmarried Maydens they are not scrupulous. Our Author hearing a woman cry in the night, thought shee had beene in some danger of deuouring by a wild beast, but found her Husband playing the homely Mid-wife to her in her trauell, tying the nauel-string, and pressing down the nose. The Father washeth and painteth him. They vse to put to their male-infants little Bowes and Arrowes into one end of the bed, and herbs at the other, which are the Enemies his Son must be supposed to kill, and eate; chatting out their hope of the childes valour, in being auenged when he shall be a man, vpon his Enemies. They name their children at aduenture, by the name of a Beast, Bird, or otherwise, as this Child was called *Orapacou*, that is, Bow and Arrowes. The men are modest, in accompanying with their Wiues secretly. The women haue not the ordinary feminine sicknesse. *Lerius* thinkes, that humour was diuerted in their youth, seeing the Mothers cut their Daughters side downe to the thigh, at twelue yeeres of age. But twice while he was there, did he see any in priuate brawling, or contention: if such happens, as they began, so they are suffered to end it: if any hurt or kill other, he suffaineth the like in his owne person, inflicted by the Kindred of the party wronged. They haue their proper pieces of ground, which they husband with their Roores and Mais. When they entertayne a Stranger, the *Moussacat*, or Good-man seemes to neglect him a while, and the guest sits him downe silent on the bed, the women sit by on the ground, and hold their hands before their eyes, weeping, with many prayses, that hee is a good man, a valiant man, that (if he be a Christian) he hath brought them fine Wares. The Stranger must endeuour, in some measure, to imitate the like weeping gesture. The *Moussacat* is all this while whitling his Arrow, not seeming to see his new Guest, till anon he comes. And are you come, sayth hee? How doe you? with many termes of his best Rhetoricke; and then askes, if he be hungry; and if he be, sets his cheere before him on the ground: which kindnesse is repayed with Glasses, Combes, or the like. They are very kind, both to their owne, and to such Strangers as they are enleagued with. They would carry burthen, or man, for the space of some miles, when they needed: their loue and hatred are in like extremes; the one to their owne, the other to their Enemies. They haue Physicians called *Pages*. They vse much mourning at the death of any, and making a round pit, bury him vpright therein, fixe houres after his death, with that wealth they had. In their Villages liue some six hundred persons: they remoue their Villages often, which yet carry the same name. *Stadius* [d] sayth, there are few Villages of aboue seuen Houses, but those Houses are a hundred and fifty foot long, and two fathoms high, without diuision into plurality of Roomes; and therein liue many Families, all of one Kindred.

What our Countrimen haue done on this Coast, I referre the Reader to Master *Hakluyts* Discoueries. The Iesuits [e] first came into these parts, *Anno* 1549. which whiles they sought to reduce the Brasilians from their Man-eating Feasts, had like to haue kindled a dangerous contention betwixt them and the Portugals: whereupon the Iesuits fought to bee permitted to speake with them whom they kept for the Boucan, instructing & baptizing them; but then also they complained, the flesh was distastfull (they said) vnto them; so that the Iesuits being forbidden that, by stealth with a wet cloth, following them to execution, would performe a kind of Baptisme: and that also being espyed was prohibited. Since which, by schooling their children, teaching them to reade and write, they haue most (though not much) preuayled with these Barbarians.

Somewhat (as themselues write) they haue beene hindred in their Brasilian Conuersions, by the peruersenesse of some couetous Portugals, who sometimes vnder colour of peace, would betray these silly soules, and seize on them to cruell slauery; sometimes would counterfeit Iesuiticall habits, and vnder pretence of Religion, persuading them to goe with them, haue betrayed Religion and Them together; sometimes would vnder-hand, and closely threatten seruitude to all such as beleeued the Iesuits, with all promises of kindnesse to such as would follow them, which in effect proued, to the Mynes, or other offices of slauish drudgery; and sometimes by hostile violence haue seized on such as the Iesuits haue conuerted, and made slaues of them. Most strange is that which they write of certaine Brasilians within

b *Vid. Epist. 2. Diez. & Hetrii.*
c *Ler c. 17.*
d *Stad. l. 2. c. 5. Carder* speakes of more, which (as in ours) might well happen, some Townes greater, some lesser.
e *P. Iarric l. 3. c. 5.*

Historiarum Rodericum.

in the Land, which eyther having seene the Religious Rites of the Portugals, or instructed therein by some Fugitiues or Apostata's, had set vp a new Sect of Christian Ethnicisme, or Mongrell-Christianity. This was about *Anno* 1583. They chuse one Supreme in their vnholy Holies, whom also they call *Pope*; other inferiour Prelates they call Bishops: These ordayne their Priests, which obserue in an Apish imitation their Confession, Absolution; Beads to number their Prayers, great Gourds or Rattles in stead of Bels, to assemble them together; Free-schooles for instruction of youth; Bookes of Barke, bound in wood, and strange Characters therein written; a kinde of Baptisme also, but wanting the essentiall words and forme; all the Men they name *Iesus*, the Women, *Marie*: the Crosse they haue, but without veneration; their Priests vow Continence. They conceiue a state of perfection in drinking the juyce of the herbe *Petine*, till they fall downe distracted, as in the Falling-sicknesse, quaking, and stretching out their limbes with terrible gestures, the Deuill speaking from within them, their mouthes not open, nor their lips moued: after they haue thus continued a while, they returne to themselues, and are washed all ouer their bodies; he is iudged the most sanctified Wight, that hath expressed most extaticall gestures. The most transcendent degree of perfection they ascribe to the muttering of certayne words ouer them by an Inchanter. They say, that their Ancestors, long since dead, will returne by shipping, and deliuer them from the Portugals, which all shall be slaine by them; and if any shall escape, they shall be turned into fishes or beasts. Those of this faith shall inherit Heauen, and all the vnbeleeuers shall be deuoured of Birds or Beasts. In the yeere 1602. a Iesuite was sent amongst these Sectaries; where their Great Father, or *Pope*, came to meete him, attended with many weaponed men, and Archers. He began a Song which the other Brasilians vnderstood not, and when he had sung one Verse, the rest (as with vs in the Quire) answered. Then did this Holy Father Catechize, or instruct them, with many idle words, often mixing and repeating *Sancta Maria Tupama Remireco*; that is, *Saint Mary the Wife of God, &c.* Kneeling, he lifted vp his eyes and hands to Heauen, after the fashion of the Priests at Masse. Hee and the Iesuite imbraced each other; and then hee told the Iesuite that hee liued in the Woods, as one that would not bee seene of Men. The next night hee caused a youth to bee hanged that had beene familiar with the Iesuite. A conference was appointed betwixt him and the Iesuite, where after much boasting of his sanctitie, the Iesuite interrupted him, and told him, he came to teach him the way to Heauen, but the other soone after conueyed himselfe away, and came no more.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Countries from the Riuer of Plate to the Magellane Straits.

§. I.

The Nations inhabiting neere the Riuer.

a *Rutero.*

b *Sebastian Cabot* may rather be called the first discouerer

c *Admiranda Naug. H. S.*

d *Herrera* tels of one of that name taken out of his bed by a Tyger and deuoured in a Caue.

THis Riuer we haue already mentioned; the Indians a call it Parana: and *Iohn Dias di Solis* discouering the same in the yeere 1512. for some shew it seemed to haue of that Metall, called it the Riuer of Plata, or Siluer. It is forty leagues wide in the entrance, and preuayleth so farre against the Oceans saltnesse, that the taste of the fresh water sooner discerneth his waters, then the eye can see his bankes. It euicfloweth the Countrey; as Nilus in Egypt, and Oreneque, Marannon, with the other great Riuers in America. It ebbeth and floweth a hundred miles vp the streame. b *Dias*, whom some call the first Discouerer, was, with fifty of his companions, there slaine and eaten. But hee which hath most fully discouered the Nations that dwell neere this Riuer, is *Huldericus* c *Schmidel*, who sayled thither in the yeere 1534. and continued in those parts almost twenty yeeres. He sayled thither with *Peter* d *Mendoza*, who carried with him fiue and twenty hundred men, to diskouer, conquer, and inhabit those Regions.

They built the Citie *Buenos Aeres*, so called of the wholsome Aire, neere to an Indian Towne, named Carendies of three thousand Inhabitants; it that may bee called a Towne, whose Inhabitants stay not long in one place. They will drinke the bloud of the beasts they

they kill, for thirst. The Spaniards destroyed them, whose parts famine seemed to take against that cruell people, which with inuisible Darts so pierced their entrailes, that vile and venemous creatures were applyed to the curing of their wounded stomackes: and when such Medicines failed, three of them stole a horse, f minding to flee from famine on that dead beast but were therefore hoised on a Gibbet; where three others, that by this example were terrified from Horse-flesh, aduentured vpon these carkasses, cutting thence large gobbets, to pay that cruellest Tyrant, and greediest Exactor, Hunger, his Tribute. Another, whose Brother dyed, buried him in his owne body: halfe their company were consumed with this plague.

f These horses so multiplyed in these parts, that now they are dispersed in wild troops, and they will hunt and kill them for the Hides, & which is a great commoditie in Angola) for the tayles.

10 The Indians of Carenlies, Bartennis, Zacchutuas, and Tiembus, taking this aduantage, assayled their Towne of *Good Aires*, turning it into good fires, by shooting Arrowes, fired at the end, entereinto. They after passed vp the Riuer, and came to Tiembus, where the men are tall and great, their women alway deformed, with scratched and blouddy faces. The Tiembus could make fiue thousand men. Of the Spaniards were not left fiue hundred in a small time; and *Mendoza* dyeth, returning homewards. The Curenda, the next people, are like the Tiembus. The *Macurendas* liue onely on fish, and a little flesh. There they killed a Serpent fiue and twenty foot long, and as bigge as a man. The Saluaisco goe starke naked, and liue onely on fish, flesh, and honey. The Curemigbas are of huge stature: the men bore a hole in their nose, in which they weare a Parrots feather. The women paint their faces with in-
20 deleble lines. The Carios Countrie is large, neere to the Brasilians in Rites and Site. They goe naked: they will sell; the father, his daughter; the husband, his wife; the brother his sister. The price of a woman is a Hatchet, Knife, or such like. They fat such as they take in their warres, and then deuoure them with great solemnitie. The Lampere made neere vnto their Towne, Pits, with sharpe stakes set vp in them, couered with thickes and earth: these they made for the Spaniards, but in a confused flight fell therein themselues. Here the Spaniards built the Towne of *Assumption*, which *Herera* saith, hath foure hundred Spanish households, and three thousand Mestizzas. The King of the Scherues, attended with twelue thousand men, met the Spaniards, and gaue them friendly entertainment, with dancing, musick, and feasting. The women goe naked, and paint themselues as artificially as any of our Painters could doe: they weare Carpets of Cotton, with the figures of Indian beasts.
30

The King asked the Spaniards, What they sought? who answered, Siluer and Gold. He then gaue them a siluer Crowne, which hee said he had taken in the warres, which hee had waged with the Amazones, that dwelt two moneths iourney thence. Of these Amazones the Indians told the same things that *Orellana* told of, neere that Riuer, which hath received name of this supposition.

The Spaniards with some of the Scherues for their Guides, set forth for this Amazonian Discouery, but were encountred by the way with hote waters, in which they waded vp to the waste, and so continued diuers dayes, till they came to a Nation called *Orthnofen*, who were then infected with a Pestilence, caused by famine; which famine the Grasshoppers had
40 effected, two yeeres together, eating vp all the fruits which nature or husbandry had prouided for their sustinance.

Thus these Martiall and Venerean warres of the Spaniards, wanted food to hold out further toward the Amazons, if there were any such people, and that they were not, as before I said, the warre-like Wiues, or haply some gallant *Viragoes*, that by themselues would let the World see what women could doe; but yet I cannot subscribe to the rest of their storie.

But I am wearie of leading you any further in this Discouerie of this great Riuer and the neere Inhabitants, seeing little is obserued in our Authour of their Religions. Some of these barbarous Nations, he saith, hanged vp the hairie skin of their slaine Enemies in their Temples or Houses of deuotion: this people is called *Iopari*. To giue you a Catalogue of the names
50 of the Indian Nations that inhabited these parts, would be but tedious. These Iournies of the Spaniards were to see what Gold, and not what Gods, the Indians had. They passed vp through the Land into Peru.

Betweene Peru g and these more Easterly parts, are the Hils *Andi* or *Andes*, which lift vp their snowie tops vnto the cloudes, and reach vnto the Magellane Straits. In them inhabit many fierce Nations, bordering vpon the Nations of Brasil and Plata. The Chraguans, the Viracans, the Toui, the Varai. These last exercise their children vnto Armes betimes, vnto them they commit their Captiues, for triall of their bloudy forwardnesse; and he which at one blow can kill a Captiue, is of the greatest hopes, and rewarded for his encouragement. To this end they name their children *Tygre*, *Lion*, that their names might teach them the
60 like beastly sutie. At the new & full Moone they wound themselues with sharpe bones, to inure themselues to things of war. They weepe in the entertainment of a friend, as the Brasilians doe. In seuenteene degrees stands the Spanish Citie of *Holy Crosse* of the Mountaine.

g *Botero.*

The Riuer *Vapai* in those Valleyes riseth and falleth as Nilus doth. There is a Brooke at *Holy Crosse* of a wonderfull nature: it is but little aboue two yards broad, and shallow withall, not running aboue a league, but is drunke vp of the thirstie sands. Yet doth this Brooke prouide the Citie water, and three sorts of good fish, and that in great plenty from the end of February to the end of May. At other times there are few. They vse diuers meanes of shaving their heads, which, they say, they learned of one *Paicume*. In the womens lying in, the man keeps his bed, as is said of the Brasilians.

Generall Language. More towards the East dwell the *Iatini* people, which call themselues Garay, that is, Warriours; and others, Tapuis or Slaues. The language of the Varrai is common to all these Nations with the Brasilians, that as in the other World, Latine, Sclauon, and Arabike, so in that New World the Varay, Cuscan, and Mexican Language, will generally serue a mans turne.

The Kingdome of Tucuma stretcheth two hundred leagues betweene Chili, Brasill, *Holy Crosse*, and Paraguay. The Spaniards haue therein fiue Colonies. It is a plaine Country. The Paraguay inhabit along the Riuer so called, whereof they take name. From Plata Southwards is the great Region of Chica, washed on the South, East, and West by the Sea. The Inhabitants are called Patagones.

§. II.

Of Giants, and other Nations neere the Straits.

h *Pigafetta ap. Ram. Or. Mag. See Mariens Lac. Oler. &c.*
i *Ed Cliffe ap. Hakluyt.*
k *M.T. Candishes Voyage, ap. Hak. tom. 3. written by Fr. Pretty.*
l *Nauig. Ol. N. & Seb. W. in Additan. p. par. America.*

THe Spaniards h which with *Magellane* first discouered the Straits, saw Giants on this Coast, of which he carried away one with him to Sea, where after, for want of sufficient food, he died. *Edward* i *Cliffe*, that wrote Master *Winters* Voyage, (who first of all others, returned out of the Straits by the same way homewards) because he saw on this Coast men of common stature, exceptetha against that report of Giants, as a Giant-like report, exceeding the stature and measure of Truth. But (besides that some of our owne k at another time measured the print of mens feete eighteene inches in the Sands) *Oliuer l Noort* in his World compassing Voyage, had three of his men slaine by men of admirable stature, with long haire, not farre from Port *Desire*, about seuen and forty degrees of Southerly latitude, and after, in the Magellane Straits discomfited a band of Sauages, which neither would yeeld, nor flee from their wiues and children, which were in a Caue iust by, till euery man was slaine. Foure Boyes the Hollanders carried away: one of which, learning their Language, told them of three Families, or Tribes, in those parts of ordinary stature, and of a fourth, which were Giants, ten or eleuen foote high, which warred vpon the former.

Sebalt de Weert being detayned fiue moneths in the Straits by foule weather, sent his men to fish for their prouision (which exceedingly failed them) who there were suddenly assayled by seuen *Canoos* of Giants, which they guessed to be so high, as is mentioned: who being put to flight by their Peeces, fled to land, and plucked vp Trees, in their rude manner barricadoing and fortifying themselues against the further pursuite of the Hollanders, who were no lesse glad that they were rid of such company.

These men, both Giants and others, went either wholly naked, or so clothed, as they seemed not to dread the cold, which is yet there so violent, that besides the Mountaintops, alway couered with Snow; their very Summer, in the middest thereof, freeth them not from Ice. Yea, at that time of the yeere those Hollanders encountred an Iland of Ice in the Sea, which the cold Aire had there mounted and maintained in despight of *Neptunes* rage, or the Sunnes volley of shot, in his neerest approach. The Trees in these parts, and the men (it seemeth) are naturally fortified against those Colds; the one (as is said) alwayes in manner naked: the other alwayes clothed, out-brauing the Winters violence in their Summer-like Greene Liuery, seeming to stoope vnder the burthen of continuall Frosts and Snowes, and in a naturall wisdome clothe themselues, and hold their leaues the surer.

m *Th. Candish. M. A. Knimet.*

Those Giantly men m about Port *Desire*, when they die, are brought to the Cliffes, and there buried, with their Bowes, Arrowes, Darts, and all their (almost no) substance. Master *Knimet* writeth, that he saw footings at Port *Desire* as bigge as foure of ours: and two men newly buried, one of which was fourteene spans long. He also saw one in Brasil, taken by *Alonso Dias*, a Spaniard, being by foule weather driuen out of Saint *Iuliani*, which was a yong man, and yet aboue thirteene spans high. They goe naked, and are faire and well proportioned. At Port Famine in the Straits, He saith, they saw some dwarfish Sauages, not aboue fiue or six spans high, which were thicke and strong, with wide mouthes (almost to the eares)

eares) they eate their meat a little scorched, besmearing their faces and breast with the bloud running out of their mouthes: they lay young feathers to this bloud, which glues them to their bodies. Foure or fiue thousand traded with them at the Poles end. The cold is so extreme, that *Henry Barwell* became bald therewith, so continuing a yeere or two. One *Harris* a Goldsmith, blowing his frozen nose, cast it with his fingers into the fire: and our Author himselfe going on shore, and returning wet on his feet, the next morning pulled off his toes, together with his stockins, from his benummed feete, which were as blacke as foote, without feeling, and were after cured with words or charmes. Every day some died of cold. They saw there a kind of beast bigger then a Horse, with eares aboue a span long; and a taile like a Cow, called Tapetywesou: he saw the like in Manicongo. The Sauages about the Straits feed (as both the same Author, and the Hollanders report) on raw flesh, and other filthy food, and are Man-eaters.

§. III.

Of the Magellan Straits.

IT is no small credit to our Nation and Nauigation, that these Straits haue more enlarged themselues, and giuen oftner and freer passage to vs, then to any other. *Drake* [n] swamme thorow; *Winter* both passed and returned; and so did *Carder* in the Pinnasse, as before is said; *Candish* passed, but returned (as *Drake* had done) about the World in his circuit. The *Delight* of Bristoll entred them, and with small delight spent sixe weekes in them: and Captaine *Davies*, companion of Master *Candish* in his last Voyage, three times entred the South Sea, which three times forced him backe into the embracing armes of the vntruستie Straits. Some others haue attempted, but not attained them, as *Fenton* and *Ward*, and the Voyage set forth in the yeere of our Lord 1586. by the Earle of Cumberland. The Land on Larbord side (saith Sir *Richard Hawkins*) is without doubt Ilands, low, sandy, broken: on Starbord is very mountaynous, the lower Mountaynes whereof, although they be for their height wonderfull, yet (as we haue said of the differing statures of the men) they haue more Giantly ouer-lookers, with Snowie lockes, and Cloudy lookes; betweene them may be numbred three Regions of Clouds. These Straits are fourescore and ten [o] leagues thorow, of vnequall breadth, in the narrowest place a league ouer. The mouth is in two and fifty degrees and an halfe, or as Sir *Richard Hawkins* obserued [p] in 52. degrees, 50. minutes. His company killed a thousand Penguins a day: this is a Fowle like a Goose hauing no feathers on their bodies but downe: it cannot flye, but will runne as fast as most men, feeds on fish and grasse, and harbours in Berries. Seales are many in these parts, which will fall dead with a blow on the snout (some affirme the same of the Crocodile) otherwise not easily pierced with a Sword, or fearing a Musket-shot. He saith they are like Lions, that they sleepe on Land, and haue euer one to watch: which is also reported of the Morse. Hee addeth of the Canoes of the Sauages there, that they are made artificially of the rindes of Trees, sewed together with the finnes of Whales, sharpe at both ends, and turning vp.

When these Straits were first discouered, they named them the *Strait of Victorie*, because the ship called the *Victorie* first descried them; a name fitly ascribed both to the Straits and Ships; the one first obtayning the Marine victory, & encompassing the compasse of the earth; the other still remaynyng the onely knowne passage, whereby that Sea-victory can bee atchieued. But the name soone passed from the Ship to the Generall, of whom still it is called *the Strait of Magaglianes*, or *Magellan*.

The Voyage of Sir *Francis Drake* so vexed the Spaniard, that hee sent *Pedro Sarmiento* to inhabit there, that he might prohibit other Nations to passe that way: but Tempest and Famine hating the Spanish insolence (whose ambitious designes alway aimed at a *Plus vltra*) brought them to a *Plus vltra* indeed, further then euer they had designed; diuers of the ships (which at first were three and twentie, with three thousand and fiue hundred men) perishing in the deuouring iawes of the Ocean, and others in their selfe deuouring mawes of Hunger, which eate them vp with not eating. The *Name of Iesus*, and *Philips Citie*, were their two newly erected Colonies, peopled with foure hundred men and thirty women, which by famine were brought to three and twenty persons, when Master *Candish* tooke *Hernando* one of that company, in his prosperous Voyage; another, [r] who had maintained himselfe by his Peece, and liued in a house alone a long time, was taken by the *Delight* of Bristoll, two yeeres after. The English gaue a name fitting to this distressed Citie, calling it *Port Famine*.

n See Hak. 1. 3.

o *Herera* hath 110. *Acosta* saith 100. of which 70. the North Sea floweth in, and the South Sea 30. l. 3. c. 13

p Sir *Richard Hawkins*.

q *Lopez Vaz.*

Herrera. d'un Portugibs ap. Ram.

r *W. Magalhes. ap. Hakluyt.*

The last Voyage of Master *Candish* proued vnfortunate, both in the losse of himselfe, and mariners: the blacke Pinnasse was lost in the South Sea: the *Desire* returned, but lost diuers of her men, surprised (as was [s] thought) and deuoured by the Sauages, neere to Port *Desire*. The Sauages heere presented themselues, throwing dust in the Aire, leaping, &c. and either had Vizards on their faces, like Dogges faces, or else their faces were Dogges faces indeed.

[s] *Iohn Iane.*

I haue seene a Copie [t] of a Discourse written by Master *Candish* himselfe to Sir *Tristram Gorges*, whom he made sole Executor of his last Will: where he thus affirmeth; *The running away of the Villaine Davis, was the death of me, and decay of the whole action, and his onely treacherie in running from me, the vtter ruine of all.* Hee complaines also of mutinies; and that by South-west, and West South-west winds, he was driuen from shore foure hundred leagues, and from fifty to forty degrees; that he was taken with Winter and stormes in the Straits, and such Frosts and Snowes in May, as he neuer saw the like, so that in seuen or eight dayes forty dyed, and seuenty sickened. *Davies* in the *Desire*, and his Pinnasse, left him in forty leuen. The *Ro-bucke* kept with him to thirtie six. Captaine *Barker* transgressing his directions, was slaine, with fiue and twenty men, on Land, and the Boat lost; and soone after 25 others followed the like fortunes: ten others, by the cowardise of the Master of the *Ro-bucke*, forsaken at *Spiritu Sancto*, which stole away with sixe monethes victuals for an hundred and twenty persons, they being but forty six. As *Sebastians* happened another mutinie by treacherie of an Irish man (here Master *Knuet* and other sicke persons were set on shore.) Intending againe for the Straits, he beate, and was beaten vp and downe the frowning Seas, and came within two leagues of Saint *Helena*, but could not attaine it; and professeth he had rather haue put himselfe on an Iland, if hee could not attaine it; and professeth hee had rather haue put himselfe on an Iland, if he could haue found one which the *Charts* place in eight degrees, then returne: and now was scarce able to hold a Pen when he wrote this. Hee dyed homewards. Since that, Sir *Richard Hawkins* passed the Straits into the South Sea, of which his Voyage I haue read a long Discourse written by himselfe. Hee fell into the hands of the Spaniards, which tooke him in the South Sea.

[t] *Ap. Hak. MS.*

Let me adde this touching these Straits, that possession thereof was formally taken by turfe and twigge after the English manner, in the first Voyage, Captaine *Drake* deliuering the said seisin to Captaine *Winter*, in the name of Queene *Elizabeth* and her Successors. This did Captaine *Winter* himselfe relate to me at *Bathe* in the presence of many (desiring to haue it published) this last September 1618. forty yeeres after the performance, with many other particulars of that his Voyage.

CHAP. VII.

Of Terra Australis and Chili.

AS for the Land on the Southerne side of the Straits, it is called [u] the Land of *Fire*, either because the Discouerers saw fire thereabouts, or because that cold Climate so much needeth fire. More Easterly against the Cape of Good Hope, is the Land *Terra de Diste*. This Land about the Straits is not perfectly discouered, whether it be Continent, or Ilands. Some take it for Continent, and extend it more in their imagination then any mans experience, towards those Ilands of *Salomon*, and New Guinnee, esteeming (of which there is great probabilitie) that *Terra Australis*, or the Southerne Continent, may, for the largenesse thereof, take vp a fitt place in order, and the first in greatnesse, in the diuision and parting of the whole World.

[u] *Beere.*

Enquiries of Lang. and Re-lig. 4. 14.

Master *Brerewood* our Learned Countriman (as is before obserued) perswadeth himselfe that it is as large as the Easterne Continent, which containeth Europe, Africa, and Asia altogether. His reasons are, that touching latitude, it is knowne to approch neere (if not on this side) the *Æquator*; and touching Longitude, to runne along in a continuall circuit about the Earth, fronting both the other Continents. Another reason, which he deemeth of more certaine importance, is this, that the Land to the North side of the Line in the other Continents of the Old and New World, is at least foure times as large as that part of them which lyeth to the South. Now for as much as the face of the Sea is leuell (so hee argueth) being therefore called *Æquor & Aqua*, and secondly, the Earth being equally poysed on both sides of her owne Centre; and thirdly, this Centre being but one to the Water, and the Earth, euen so other then the Centre of the World: it followeth thereupon, that the Earth should, in answerable measure and proportion, lift it selfe, and appeare aboue the face of the Sea, on the

the South side of the Line, as it doth on the North. And consequently, that what is wanting in the South parts of the other Continents towards the counterpoising of the North parts (which is about three fine parts of both the other Continents layed together) must of necessitie be supplyed in this Continent of the South.

Lopez Vaz writeth, That the Gouernours which the King of Spaine sendeth for Peru and New Spaine, haue a custome to discouer new Countries. The Licentiate *Castro* being Gouernour of Peru, sent forth a Fleet from Lima, which sayling 800. leagues Westward, found certaine Ilands in 11. degrees to the South of the Equinoctiall, with a kind of people of yellowish complexion, and all naked. Heere they found Hogs, Dogges, Hens, Cloues, Ginger, Cinamon, and some Gold. The first Iland they named *Isabella*, the greatest *Guadalcanal*, on the Coast whereof they sayled 150. leagues, where they tooke a Towne, and some graines of Gold hanged vp in the Houses. They burnt their Towne, because they had in a sudden surprize killed fourteene of their men. They spent fourteene moneths in this Discouery, and named them the Ilands of *Salomon*, that by that name men might bee further induced to discouer and inhabit them, imagining that *Salomon* had his Gold from thence.

Noua Guinea was discouered by *Villalobos*, sent from New Spaine in the yeere 1543. going to discouer the Moluccas. *Herera* saith, it was discouered by *Alvaro* of *Saauedra*, *Anno* 1527. and the Ilands of *Salomon* in the yeere 1567. by *Lope Garcia* of *Castro*, which are many and great, but eighteene principall; some of them 300. leagues in compasse, two of 200. others of 100. and of fifty, and lesse: the Inhabitants, some blacke, some white, some browne: the greatest, named Saint *Isabel*, 150. leagues in length, and eighteene in breadth: Saint *Nicholas* 150. leagues in compasse. The Inhabitants are blacke of hue and wittie. The Spaniards haue coasted it 700. leagues, and yet cannot tell whether it bee an Ile or Continent.

Hessilius Gerardus hath largely set forth the Petition or Memorial of [c] *Peter Ferdinandez de Quir*, vnto the King of Spaine, about his discouery of those Southerne vnknowne Ilands, for the Plantation of the same. I haue since seen this his Supplication to the King in Spanish, with other memorials [d] thereof, wherein he saith that hee was sent with two ships to discouer the Ilands of *Salomon*, and taking his course about the height of the Magellan Straits, discouered a mayne Land, and sayled eight hundred Leagues on the Coast, till hee came in fifteene degree Southward from the Line, where he found a fruitfull Countrey. He discouered a Bay, into which fall two great Riuers, where they purpose to settle a Plantation. Order was taken that he should presently be sent from Peru, with commission to take vp 1200. men, with shipping and other necessaries, and as many the yeere after out of New Spaine. He found out three and twenty Ilands, 230. leagues from Mexico; Taumaco, Chicayma (where are great Oysters with Pearles) Guaytopo (the people whereof are as white as the Spaniards) Tucopio, Ponofono, &c. They pray to the Deuill, which hath conference with an Indian vnseene, from a piece of wood; and to him and all the rest many times by night, he toucheth the face and brest with cold touches, but they could neuer learne what he was. He foretold of the Spaniards comming.

This *Pedro Fernandez de Quiros*, fourteene yeeres busied himselfe to no small endamagement of his state and person about this Discouerie. The length thereof he equalleth vnto all Europe, and as much of Asia, as thence extendeth to the Caspian Sea: and for the wealth and riches, he cals it a Terrestriall Paradise. The Inhabitants, hee affirmeth, are innumerable, some white, some like the Mulatos, and some otherwise, in colour and habit of body diuersified. They neither haue King nor Lawes, nor Arts. They are diuided, and warre one vpon another, with Bowes, Arrowes, and other weapons, all of wood. They haue their Oratories and places of Buriall. Their Bread is made of three sorts of Roots. They haue varietie of Fruits, Cocos, Almonds of foure sorts, Pome-citrons, Apples, Dates: there are also Swine, Goats, Hens, Partriches, and other Fowles; and as the Indians report, Kine and Buffals. Hee saw amongst them Siluer and Pearles, others added Gold: and the Coast Countries seemed to promise great wealth within Land: Many Riuers: Sugar Canes, Bayes, Hauens, and other commodities of Lands and Seas, making shew of another China, the ayre very wholesome and temperate.

He tooke possession thereof, in the name of the King, and set vp a Crosse and a Chappell, in the name of the Lady of Loretto. These Regions trend euen as high as the Æquinoctiall. When this Discouery was made he mentioneth not; onely hee saieth to the King for employment therein. It is rightly called *Terra Australis Incognita*, and therefore I will not take vpon me to be your Guide: in another sense [e] one of our Countrimen hath wittily and learnedly (according to his wont) described this Countrey, and paralelled therewith the Countries of Europe, and hath let vs see that wee are acquainted in those Coasts too much, and need a Pilot or Guide to conduct vs out of them.

[b] Bat part. 1. vol. 2. Herere.

[c] P. Ferdin de Quir. Detecto Australia Incognita.

[d] By Welsingham, Grisley, &c

[e] Mercurius Britannicus.

But let vs come backe to our Straits of Magellan, that we may coast from thence, and visit the Countries of Chili and Peru: for of the Westerne borders of Chica, girt in betweene the salt waues, and cold Hills, little can be said fitting our purpose.

Of Chili. Hauing sailed out of the Straits, we haue a wide Sea before vs, and on our right hand the Countrey is so barren and cold, that I would not hold the Reader in any cold or tedious Narration thereof. *Iohn Ellis*, which was with Sir *Richard Hawkins* in his South-sea Voyage, reporteth, That being past the Straits, they sayled North-west, and by North, forty leagues into the Sea, and then due North, till they came at Mocha in 38. degrees 30. minutes, and thence held their course Northerly to Saint *Maries* in thirtie fixe, and so to *Val Paresa* in thirtie three: Where they made good purchase and prize, if they could haue kept it. From hence they came as farre as Arecca in two and twentie, and so passed the Line to Tacame, where they were taken. But our trauell must bee by Land (as was theirs after, against their will) where wee first encounter with Chili. This name [f] some extend euen to the Straits, where we haue placed Chica, and the Patagones others straiten it in shorter bounds; betweene Chica on the South; Cherchas and Collao on the North; Plata on the East; and the Sea on the West: it is called Chili of the chilling cold, for so the word is said to signifie. The Hils with their high lookes, cold blasts, and couetous encrochings, driue it almost into the Sea: onely a narrow Valley vpon lowly submission to her swelling Aduersaries, obtayneth roome [h] for fiue and twentie leagues of breadth, where it is most, to extend her spacious length of two hundred leagues on that shore: and to withstand the Oceans furie, shee payes a large tribute of many streames, which yet in the [i] Night-time shee can [k] hardly performe; the miserable Hils in their *Frozen* charitie, not imparting that naturall bountie and durie, till that great Arbiter the Sunne ariseth, and sendeth Day with his *Light*-horse-troupe of Sunbeames, to breake vp those Icie Dungeons, and Snowie Turrets, wherein Night, the Mountaynes Gaoler, had locked the innocent Waters. Once, the poore Valley is so hampered betwixt the tyrannicall Meteors and Elements, as that she often [l] quaketh with feare, and in these chill Feuers shaketh off, and loseth her best Ornaments.

Arequipa, * one of her faireſt Townes, by such disaster in the yeere 1582. fell to the ground. And sometimes the Neighbour Hils are infected with this Pestilent Feuer, and tumble downe as dead in the Plaine, thereby so amazing the fearefull Riuers, that they runne quite out of their Channels to seeke new; or else stand still with wonder, and the motius heate failing, fall into an vncouth Tympanie, their bellies swelling into spacious and standing Lakes: the tydes seeing this, hold backe their course, and dare not approch their sometime beloued streames, by diuers miles distance; so that betwixt these two stooles the ships *come to ground* indeed. The sicke Earth thus hauing her mouth stopped, and her stomacke ouerlayed, forceth new mouthes, whence she vomiteth streames of oppressing waters.

I speake not of the Beasts and Men, which in these Ciuill warres of Nature must needs be subiect to deuouring miserie. These are the strange effects of cold and Earthquakes, not strange in Chili, where we are now arriued. The people are fierce and cruell, and some (as is reported) Giants. *Almagro*, one of the first Conquerors of Peru, in hope of Gold, passed from thence hither: but was deceiued by the Indians which led him the wrong way. In passing the Deserts of Chili, the Aire is so piercing (as before is obserued) [m] that men fall downe dead, or else lose their members suddenly, in manner without feeling. *Ieronie Costillo* the General, one of *Acostaes* Acquaintance, had lost three or foure toes which fel off without any paine: many of his Armie dyed, whose bodies at his returne he found lying there without stinke or corruption; and one Boy remayned aliue, which had mayntained himselfe by eating Horse-flesh. The Horses also were found whole, as *Apollonius* [n] writeth, and the men sitting on them, as if they had beene aliue, with the Bridles in their hand.

In six and thirty degrees is that famous Valley of Arauco, which defend their persons and freedome, maugre all the force and furie of the Spaniards. [o] These killed two of Sir *Francis Drakes* men, and wounded himselfe: they destroyed also three and twenty Hollanders, of the company of *Cordes*: both which they did in detestation of the [p] Spaniards, of whom they esteemed the English and Dutch, because of their Apparell. They haue destroyed many of the Spaniards: they tooke the City Baldiuia in the yeere 1599. and slue the Spaniards. Twice before, if not oftner, they had burnt and spoyled it. Yea, *Baldiuia* himselfe, the first Conquerour of *Chili* (for *Almagro* stayed not) and of whom that Citie receiued name, was taken by these Indians, his Horse being slaine vnder him. They bid him feare nothing, hee should haue Gold enough: and making a great Banquet for him, brought in the last seruice, which was a Cup full of molten Gold, which they forced him to drinke, saying; *Now glut thy selfe with Gold.* This *Baldiuia* had entred Chili with foure hundred Horse, and easily conquered that part which had beene subiect to the Kings of Peru: but the other, which was the richer part, held out. The Spaniards seat them word, they were the Sonnes of God, and came

f *Estero.*
g *G. Eus l. 2. c. 4*
h *Lop. Vaz.*
i *L. Apollon. hist. Peru l. 1.*
k The Riuers of Chili in the night time frozen.
l Earthquakes in Chili, and their effects.
* Some reckon this Towne to Peru. It was vexed with Earthquakes. 1582. & 1586.
m *Acost. l. 3. c. 9.*
n *L. Apollon. Hist. Peru l. 3.*
o *Nuno da Silua*
p *Oliu de Noort.*

came to teach them the Word of God: and if they would not yeeld to them, they would shoote fire among them. The Indians would try this argument in the field, and there the great Ordnance to well pleaded the cause, that they beleeued and subiected themselues. The Spaniards imployed them in the Mynes, whence they gathered such plenty of Gold, that others had twenty thousand, but *Baldiuia* himselfe had three hundred thousand Pezos by the yeere.

The Indians after, perceiuing the Spaniards to be but mortall men, rebelled: and whereas they had vsed to carry grasse into the Fore for the Spaniards Horses, they conueyed in the same, Weapons, by which meanes being assisted by their fellowes without, they wonne the Fort; and when *Baldiuia* would haue recouered it, he lost himselfe, as you haue heard.

¶ *Adams* and the Dutch Fleet lost many of their men in fights with the Indians 1608. about S. *Marie.* t *Olin. de Noort.*

Euer since, ¶ this hostility hath continued, and the Atauccans are the Lists and Barres to the Spanish Conquests. Their Countrey (to consider Arauco by it selfe) is but small, about twenty leagues in length: neither could the Inguas or Kings of Peru conquer it: their manner of Warre is much like the Christians, in pitched Battels placing their Bowmen among their rankes of Pikemen. To speake of other Townes which the Spaniards haue built in this Coast, is not our purpose. When they sacked Baldiuia, *Anno* 1599. they feasted the Spaniards with the like golden Cups powred hot downe their throats: they t cut off the Images heads, triumphing ouer the Spaniards Gods as they termed them. They were then at the siege of Imperiall, another Spanish Citie, haung before taken Baldiuia. They plucke out the hearts of the Spaniards which they kill, and drinke in their skuls.

Lately the Hollanders haue not only taken the Bay and Towne of *All Saints*, on the Easterne shore of Brasil, but are also reported to haue done much harme to the Spaniards in Peru, the particulars whereof partly I haue expressed in the second part of my Pilgrimes after the Relation of the Amboyna Tragedy, partly haue left to more full discouery by Time the Mother of Truth.

Likewise since the last Edition of this Worke, that Expedition of *Mayre* and *Schouten* round about the Globe hath beene published (and in the second Booke of my Pilgrimes is extant) in which the Coasts of *Terra Australis* are best notified. But let (mee giue the Reader warning that Sir *Francis Drake* had discouered those Straits in 57. being forced by tempest out of the South Sea thorow them: and named that *Elizabethis* Iland in *Anno* 1578. which these Hollanders called *Barneuelts*, as in an old Map in his Maiesties priuy Gallery, dedicated to Queene *Elizabeth* is yet to be seene.

CHAP VIII.

Of the Conquest of Peru by the Spaniards, and of their Ingua's or Emperours.

§. I.

Of PIZARRO, *his Discouery, and taking the King of Peru.*

Francis Pizarro s was the Bastard sonne of *Gonzallo*, a Captaine in the Kingdome of Nauarre: he was borne at Trusiglio, and exposed at the Church doore; and none being found that would giue him the breft, he was nourished by sucking a Sow for certaine dayes: at last his Father acknowledged him, and when hee was growne, fed him to keepe his Swine; which being one day strayed and lost, hee durst not returne home for feare, and therefore went to Siuill, and thence passed to the Indies. In this Swinish education hee had not so much as learned to reade. Hee went to Vraua with *Alonso de Hoieda*; with *Valma*, to the Discouery of the South Sea; and with *Pedrarius de Auila*, Gouernour of Golden Castile, to Panama. In this Citie t were diuers which afficted Golden Discoueries. *Pedrarius* intended *Nicaragua*; but *Diego di Almagro, Hernando Luche*, or *Luques*, a rich Priest, and this *Pizarro* now growne rich, agreed to ioyne their Purses and best industry to search Southwards, where they had heard was store of wealth. They prouided a Naui, and two hundred and twenty Souldiers, and *Almagro* with *Pizarro* in the yeere 1525. or (as *Benzo* hath it) 1526. set forward.

s *Gomar. 4.140. vid. Sario General del Peru. Escrito per el Inca Garcilasso de la Vega in 8. lib.*

t *Gom. c. 108. Benzo l. 3. c. 1. L. Apol. l. 1.*

Alma-

Almagro and he parting company, *Pizarro*, offering to land his men, was wounded and forced to retire to Panama: *Almagro* in another place had better successe, the Indians vsing him kindly, and giuing him three thousand Ducats of Gold. But seeking to land in that place of *Pizarro's* misfortune, hee was set vpon by the Indians, and lost in sight one of his eyes. They meet at Panama, and hauing cured their woundes, repaire their forces; and with two hundred men, and many slaues, set sayle, and land in another place, but are repelled to their ships by the Inhabitants, and goe to Gorgon, a little Island, fiue miles from the Continent, where *Pizarro* stayed; whiles *Almagro* went backe for better supply. At his returne *Pizarro* and his company were almost starued, but being refreshed, and all of them now together attempting the Indian shore, were repelled with losse to the Ile, which they called *Galli*. *Almagro* is againe sent backe for new aides; the Souldiers would haue passed with him, and cursed this Land and their Couetousnesse. *Pizarro* and his Company agree to search further, and hauing sayled fiue hundred miles, came to Chira, a Prouince of Peru, and taking some of the Inhabitants to learne them the Spanish Tongue, returned to Tumbez.

Hauing learned of the Indians the great wealth of those parts, he set one *Peter* a Candian, on shore, who was kindly entertayned of the Gouernour, that shewed him a Temple dedicated to the Sunne, wherein were vnspeakable riches; which when he related to *Pizarro* at his returne, the Spaniards goe backe with these newes to Panama. His two fellowes, *Almagro*, and the Priest (called after the *Foole*, because he had spent his estare on this businesse, and at last was excluded by his companions) agreed with *Pizarro* to goe to Spaine to get license for this Conquest; and borrowed one thousand and fiue hundred Ducats, to set him forth. *Pizarro* seekes and obtaynes this Facultie onely for himselfe, neuer mentioning his Partners, and with Letters Patents returneth to Panama with his foure Brethren, *Hernando*, *Gonzalo*, *Iohn*, and *Martin di Alcantara* his Brother by the Mothers side. His two Partners were not a little grieued, when they heard how things passed; but after much stirre, *Almagro* and *Pizarro* became friends, and agreed to communicate Purses and Titles. *Pizarro* goes before with a hundred and fiftie Souldiers (taking order that *Almagro* should follow with all the strength he could make) and Lands in Peru, a Riuer so called, which gaue name to those mighty and rich Prouinces, because the Spaniards by this way discouered them. They went by land, enduring much misery by the way to Coach, where they were well refreshed. But a disease worse then the French Pox e there warred vpon them, called *Pori*. Yet did *Pizarro* hold on his resolution; he passed ouer to Puna, where the Gouernour intreated the Spaniards well, till the abusing of their Wiues caused the Indians to take Armes, and so made their riches become a prey to the preuayling Spaniards.

u *Peru* why so called.

There had *Pizarro* the first intelligence of *Atabaliba*. The Gouernour of this Iland, to satisfie his iealousie, cut off the Noses, the Members, and the Armes of his Eunuches, or Keepers of his women. *Pizarro* sent to *Tumbez* fiue hundred Prisoners, which the Gouernour of this Land had taken of the party of *Atabaliba*, who at that time maintained Warre against his Brother *Guascar* about the Souereigntie, and this Gouernour had taken *Guascars* part. This ciuill discord was much to the Spaniards aduantage.

x *Gom. c. 112. Apoll. 2. Ben. 43. c. 34.*

Pizarro x sent three Messengers to *Tumbez* to demand peace and safe entrance, but they (notwithstanding the freedome of their Captiues) deliuered them to the Priests to bee sacrificed to their Idoll of the Sunne. Hee taketh *Tumbez* and sacketh the Temple and Citie.

From thence he proceeded in his way to *Caximalca*: and *Guascar* sent some vnto him with great promises to demand his aide against his Brother *Atabaliba*: soone after *Atabaliba* sent one to him, to charge him to returne to his ships. *Pizarro* answereth, That hee came not to hurt any, but for their good, as his Emperour had giuen him in charge; nor could he now, (being the Embassadour of the Pope and Emperour, Lords of the World) returne without great dishonour, before he had seene his Royall person, and communicated to him such instructions as might be good for his body and soule.

As he passed the Prouince of Chira, the Lords thereof prouoked him against *Atabaliba*, who had lately conquered their Countries. And on the Riuer of Chira hee founded the Colonie of Saint *Michael*, for the safe keeping of his spoyles, and for his ships. Hee marcheth on to *Caximalca*, and sendeth Messengers on horse-back, to giue him notice of his comming. This strange Beast made the Indians afraid, but *Atabaliba* was nothing mooued therewith more mooued to see those bearded men giue him so little reuerence.

Atabaliba sent *Pizarro* a paire of shooes, cut and gilded, that (as hee pretended) he might know him: others thought, that hee might bee knowne a nd designed to imprisonment or slaughter.

The next day the King was carried, as in solemne triumph, vpon mens shoulders, garded with fiue and twentie thousand Indians in rich pompe and magnificence. *Vincentius de*

de Valle Viroli, a Dominican * Frier, holding in one hand a Crosse, in the other his Breuiarie, or (as some say) a Bible, came before him with great reuerence, and blessing him with the Crosse, said: *Excellent Lord*, it behoueth you to know, that *God* in Trinity and Vnity made the World of nothing, and formed a man of the Earth, whom hee called *Adam*; of whom wee all
10 haue beginning. *Adam* sinned against his Creator by disobedience, and in him all his Posteritie, except *Iesus Christ*: who being *God*, came downe from Heauen, and tooke flesh of the Virgin *Mary*; and to redeeme Mankind, dyed on a Crosse like to this (for which cause wee worship it;) rose again the third day, & after forty dayes ascended into Heauen, leaving for his Vicar in Earth Saint *Peter*, and his Successours, which wee call [a] Popes; who haue [b] giuen to the most puissant King of Spaine, Emperour of the
20 Romans the Monarchy of the World. Obey the Pope, and receiue the faith of Christ; and if yee shall beleeue it most holy, and that most false which yee haue, yee shall do well; and know, that doing the contrary, we will make warre on you, and will take away and breake your Idols; therefore leaue the deceiueable Religion of your false Gods. This preaching of the Frier might well seeme strange to *Atabaliba*, which it seemes hee learned of the Mahumetans, and not of the Apostles. He answered, that hee was Free, and would not become tributary to any, nor did acknowledge any greater Lord then himselfe: and for the Emperour, he could be pleased to be the friend of so great a Prince, and to know him: but for the Pope, he would not obey him, which gaue away that which was not his owne, and tooke a Kingdome from him, whom hee had neuer seene. As for Religion, hee liked well his owne,
30 and neyther would nor ought to call it in question, being so ancient and approued; especially seeing *Christ* dyed, which neuer befell the *Sunne* or *Moone*; And how (saith hee) doe you know that the *God* of the Christians created the World? Frier *Vincent* answered, That his Booke told it him, and gaue him his *Breuiarie*. *Atabaliba* looked on it, and in it, and saying it said no such thing to him, hurled it on the ground. The Frier tooke it vp, and went to *Pizarro*, crying, Hee hath cast the Gospels to the ground: Reuenge it, O Christians, seeing they will not our friendship, nor our Law: (to vse the words of a Spanish Captain therepreferent in his relation thereof) Come forth, Christians, come forth, and come to these Enemies, Dogs that will not accept the things of God, and the *Cacique* hath cast our holy Law to the ground. *Francisco de Xeres*, who was *Pizarroes* Secretary, writeth, that the Frier would haue opened
40 the book, because *Atabaliba* could not, and he in disdain smote him on the arme, and obiected to the Spaniards their abuses, and robbing of his *Caciques*, saying, hee would not depart thence till all were restored.

Pizarro commanded to bring forth the Standard and the Ordinance: the Horsemen in three Bands assailed *Atabaliba's* people, and slue many: hee himselfe arriued with his Footmen, which layed about with their Swords: all charged vpon *Atabaliba*; slaying them which carried him, whose Roome was presently supplyed by other, till at last *Pizarro* pulled him downe from his Litter by the clothes. All this while not one Indian fought, because they had no commandement; or, as *Xeres* saith, for feare and amazement to see their *Cacique* so vsed; [d] and therefore no Spaniard was slaine, and many Indians perished vpon
50 the thrust; for so the Frier had bidden them fight for feare of breaking their Swords: neither were any wounded, but onely *Pizarro* by one of his owne, thrusting at *Atabaliba* in his taking; and wounding *Pizarro* therewith in the arme. Thus are the Indians chased, their King with other great spoyles remayning with the Spaniards: of which *Xeres* reckoneth 80000. Castillians in hold, and 7000. Markes (euery Marke being eight ounces) in Siluer of the houshold Plate of *Atabaliba*. And in *Caxamalca* they rifled houses full vp to the roofe of Garments, besides Armour and Weapons, of which some were Axes and Pole-axes, of Gold and Siluer.

* The Friers preaching. This Oration is expressed more at large by *Vega, p.1.l.2.c.22.* diuided into two parts. And *Philippillus* the Interpreter omitting sit words (which the Cuscan Language hath not) to expresse his Oration, falsified the sense as by other *Quippos* hath appeared. So for Trinitie and Vnitie, hee interpreted Foule: for our sinne in *Adam*, that on a time all men being assembled layed their sinnes on *Adam*. Nothing of the Diuinitie of Christ but that hee was a great Lord, &c. and that their forces which they threatned were hyperour to those of Heauen: as if they had Gods to men to fight against. When vpon *Atabaliba* (so he calls him) fetched a deepe sigh: and after made an answere far differing from this which Authors haue related. But this was written by the Spaniards to the Emperour to cleere themselues which had offered abuse to the *Inga*: neither would they suffer the truth to be written. His answere here related at large, and is worth reading. The Spaniards weary of his prolixitie, made a rout and tooke him, no man resisting, *Miguel Astete* layng first hold. (but *Pizarro* carrying the credit, such as it was) his Pringe or Diademe remayned with *Astete* till 1556. When he restored it to the *Inga Sayritupac*. The Frier was after a Bishop and lastly slaine by the *Indians*.

a *Gom. c.153.*
b This hee spake according to the Bull of *Alexander* the Sixt, which had giuen the Southerne and Western world to the Spanish Kings. The horsnes of the Bull, and not of the Lambe, ate the Popish weapons.

c *Pel della Vong. del Peru ap. Ram. tom.3.*
Xeres ibid.
d *Vega* saith, *Atabaliba* forbad them whose command was a Religion to them, & death to transgresser and there perished 5000. of which 3500. Souldiers, others of all ages and both Sexes which had come in great multitudes to heare and solemnize this Embassage of them which they tooke for Gods.

§. II.

§. II.

The huge Treasures taken by the Spaniards.

THe next day the Spaniards scowred about for spoyle, and found fiue thousand Women of the Kings with much treasure. *Atabaliba* was much grieued with his imprisonment, especially in regard of the chaine which they put vpon him.[a] And when they had spent much reasoning about his ransome, a Souldier named *Soto* (of whom you haue heard in our History of Florida) said vnto him, Wilt thou giue vs this house full of Gold and Siluer thus high[b]? lifting vp his Sword, and making a stroke vpon the wall. *Atabaliba* answered, that if they would giue him liberty to send into his Kingdome, he would fulfill their demand. Whereat the Spaniards much marueiling, gaue him three monethes time; but he had filled the house in two monethes and a halfe: a matter scarce credible, yet most true: For I (saith *Lopez Vaz*) know aboue twenty men that were there at that time, who all affirme, that it was aboue [c] ten Millions of Gold and Siluer. That Spanish Captaine in *Ramusius* relateth, that he promised to giue them so much Gold as should reach vp to that marke, a span higher then a tall man could reach, the Roome being fiue and twenty foote long, and fifteene wide: and the Gouernour asking how much Siluer he would giue; he answered, he would fill vp an inclosure which should be made there, with Vessels of Plate, for his ransome, which was promised him. This Captaine was appointed Guardian of that Golden roome, and saw it melted, and reckoneth vp the parcels and particulars that were brought in Vessels and Plates of Gold and Siluer. And the Gouernour sent to the Emperor his fift part, & parted the rest; to euery [d] Footman 4800. pieces of Gold (which make 7208. Duckets) to euery Horseman twice as much, besides the aduantages that belonged to any: To *Almagros* company (which were 150. that came after the victory) hee gaue 25000. Pezos, and gaue 2000. to the Inhabitants of Saint *Michel*. Many other gifts hee gaue to Merchants and others: and yet after the Gouernour was gone, there was brought more Gold then that which had beene shared. This also is affirmed by *Xeres*, that ten or twelue dayes after *Pizarro* was gone, the Spaniards which had beene sent to Cusco, brought as much Gold (which was taken from the wals of a House, and Roofe of a Temple in Cusco, being Plates of ten or twelue pound weight apiece, and other like) as amounted to two Millions and a halfe, and being molten, proued on Million 326539. Pezos of fine Gold, and 516510. Markes of Siluer. He addeth that *Atabaliba* was by sound of Trumpet freed from his promise; but was kept still vnder guard for the Spaniards securitie.

Howbeit they killed him notwithstanding, [e] and in a night strangled him. But God the righteous Iudge, seeing this villanous act, suffered none of those Spaniards to die by the course of Nature, but brought them to euill and shamefull ends.

During the time of *Atabaliba* [f] imprisonment, his Captaines had taken his Brother *Guascar*, [g] who spake with Captaine *Soto*, and promised, that if they would restore him to his liberty, and to his Kingdome, he would fill vp the roome at Caximalca to the Roofe, which was thrice as much as *Atabaliba* had promised: and added that his Father *Guaynacapa* on his death-bed had commanded him to be friend to the white and bearded men, which should come and rule in those parts. *Atabaliba* hearing of these things, fained himselfe sorrowfull for the death of *Guascar*, whom he had heard that *Quisquis* his Captaine had slaine: this hee did, to try how the Spaniards would take his death; which when hee saw they little respected, hee sent and caused him to bee slaine indeed. This was done in the yeere of our Lord God 1533. He had before slaine another of his Brethren and drunke in his Skull, as hee had sworne to deale with *Atabaliba*.

The Indians hereupon hid the Treasures of Gold, Siluer, and Gemmes, that were in Cusco and other places, and had belonged to *Guaynacapa*, which were far more then euer came to the Spaniards hands. *Chilcuchima*, one of *Atabalibas* chiefe Captaines, which visited him in his imprisonment with great reuerence (for hee and the chiefe of his company laid burdens on their shoulders, and so entred into his presence, lifting vp both his hands to the Sunne, with thankes to him for this sight of his Lord, and then with much crouching, kissed his hands and feet) told the Spaniards, that *Quisquis* [h] another chiefe Captaine had conueyed away those Treasures of *Guaynacapa*, or *Cusco*, the elder, as hee cals him: and being forced by torments of fire put to him, [i] confessed where *Atabaliba* had a Tent full of Plate and Treasure. The Spanish Captaine which reports this, saith, that he saw a great house full of Vessels of Gold, and other pieces (as a Shepherd and his Sheepe all of Gold as great as the liuing) which were not shared amongst them: and he saw 10080. Pezos of the Emperours fifth part, ouer and aboue that which *Pizarro* sent by his Brother; so that both *Cæsar* and Souldier were deceiued. He heard *Atabaliba* say, that in an Iland in a Riuer of Collas was a very.

a *Lop. Vaz.*

b *Gomara* saith that it was a great roome, and they made a line about it: it was all of wrought metal in vessels, &c.

c *Gom.* hath 250000. poüds of siluer, and 1326000. Pezos of Gold.

d *Xeres* saith, they were 102. Footmen, and Horsemen.

e They baptised him before his death thretening otherwise to burne him aliue, *Vega l. 1. c. 36.* The gold & siluer which *Atabaliba* paid came to 4605670. Duc. *Blas Valera* hath 4. Millions 800000. Duc. a summe not now marauilous when euery yeere 10. or 12. millions enteth the *Guadalquibir*: The naturall strength of the country is such that had there not bin contentiõ betwixt the Brethren, &c. Peru could neuer haue bin subdued.

f *Gom. c. 115.*

g The Spanish Captaine in *Ramus.* cals Cusco, & saith he promised 4. times as much h He kept Cusco with 30000. Indians.

i They after burnt him.

very great House all couered with Gold, and the beames with all whatsoeuer in the house, was couered with plates of Gold, yea, and the pauement also. But in such a diuided State, where were so many Indian Captaines of the Two Brethren *Inguas*, the Spaniards being but a handfull, and iealous of each other, the Countrey being so wide and rich, that they could not so much as see and take view of the same in short space: there was easie opportunitie offered to conuey away the greatest part of their Treasures: especially Religion adding a helping hand both to conuey and to conceale from them which thus spoyled their Temples, Idols, and Altars. The Spaniards so abounded with Gold, that they would giue [k] 1300. (one gaue 1500.) Castilians or Pezos for a Horse 60. for a small Rundlet of Wine; forty for a paire of shooes; likewise a Sword, and other things after the same rate: and Debtors sought out their Creditors, with Indians laden with Gold, from house to house to pay them: They carried into Spaine one Vessell of Gold, another of Siluer, each sufficient wherein to boyle a Kow, besides a huge Eagle, and other like Images, as an Idoll of Gold as bigge as a Childe of foure yeeres old: Drums of Gold: and at the conquest of Cusco, *Xeres* tels of many Images of women of Gold, and as great, which they worshipped, and diuers like of Siluer; Sheepe also in like pourtraiture, of fine Gold; all well wrought.

k F. *Xeres* & P. *Sancho*. Or their treasures see in § 3. & § 9. & § 11. & c.

§. III.

The Kings of Peru, their originall proceedings and treasures.

THe quarrell betweene the two Brethren, grew about their Inheritance: *Guascar* succeeding his Father in the rest; and *Quito* being assigned to *Atabaliba*, who ieazing on Tumebamba, a rich Prouince, prouoked his Brothers forces against him, which tooke him prisoner. But he escaping to *Quito*, made the people beleeue that the Sun had turned him into a Serpent, and so he escaped thorow a hole in the Prison: and on conceit of this miracle drew them into armes against *Guascar*, with which hee made such slaughter of his Enemies, that to this day there are great heapes of bones of the slaine: he slue 60000. of the Canari, destroyed Tumebamba, and conquered as farre as Tumbez and Caximalca: hee sent a great Army with *Quisquis*, and *Calicuchima*, two valiant Captaines, with such successe as you haue heard, against *Guascar*, whom they tooke, and by his direction slue.

Gomara attributeth the death of *Atabaliba* to *Philippillus* the Spanish Interpreter, who to enioy one of his Wiues, accused him of conspiracie against the Spaniards; but *Benzo* [l] with more likelihood affirmeth, that *Pizarro* from his first taking had intended it. For hee might haue sent him into Spaine as *Atabaliba* requested, if he had feared such secret practices: but his request and purgation were reiected, and foure Negro's which hee vsed for that purpose, strangled him at his command. He had many Wiues, whereof the chiefe was his Sister, named *Pagba*. He seeing the glasses of Europe, marvelled much (as before is said) that they hauing so faire a thing, would go so farre for Gold. His Murtherers dyed the like bloudie ends; *Almagro* was executed by *Pizarro*; and he slaine by young *Almagro*; and him, *Vacca de Castro* did likewise put to death. *Iohn Pizarro* was slaine of the Indians. *Martin* another of the Brethren was slaine with *Francis. Ferdinandus* was imprisoned in Spaine, and his end vnknowne; *Gonzales* was done to death by *Gasca. Soto* dyed of thought in Florida; and Ciuill Warres ate vp the rest in Peru.

l *Benzo. l. 3. c. 5.*

Before the times of the *Ingua's*, their Gouernment [m] in these parts was (as still it is in Arauco, and the Prouinces of Chili) by Cominalties, or the aduice of many. The Gouernment of the *Ingua's* continued betweene three and foure hundred yeeres, although for a long time their Signiorie was not aboue fiue or sixe leagues compasse about the Citie of Cusco, where the originall of their conquests began, and extended from Pasto to Chili, almost 1000 leagues in length, betweene the Andes and the South Sea.

m *Acosta l. 6. c. 19. 20. 21. 22.*

The Canaries were their mortall Enemies, and fauoured the Spaniards, and at this day if they fall to comparisons, whether the *Ingua's* or Canari were the more valiant, they will kill one another by thousands, as hath hapned in Cusco. The practice which they vsed to make themselues Lords, was a fiction, that since the generall Deluge (whereof all the Indians haue knowledge) the World had beene preserued, peopled and restored by them: and that seuen of them came out of the Caue of Pacaricambo, and that they also were the Authors of the true Religion. The first of these *Ingua's* was *Mangocapa*, which came out of the Caue of Tambo, six leagues from Cusco. Of him came two Families, the *Hanancuscos*, of whom came these Lords: and the *Vrincusco*: *Ingaroca* the first Lord was no great Lord, but was serued in Vessels of Gold and Siluer. And dying, he appointed that all his treasure should be employed for the seruice of his bodie, and for the feeding of his Family. His Successor did the like:

Originall of the Ingua's.

ang

and this grew to a generall cuſtome, that no *Ingua* might inherit his Fathers goods; He built a new Palace.

Their Kings.

In the time of *Ingaroca*, the Indians had Images of Gold. *Yaguaraguaque* ſucceeded *Virococha*, the next ſucceſſor was very rich. *Gonzale Pizarro* with cruell torments forced the Indians to confeſſe where his body was, for the report of the treaſures buried with him: the body he burnt, and the Indians reſerued and worſhipped the aſhes. They tooke it ill that this *Ingua* called himſelfe *Viracocha*, which is the name of their God; but hee to ſatisfie them, ſaid, that *Viracocha* appeared to him in a Dreame, and commanded him to take his name.

n *Gom.c.*120. *Mariana lib.*26.

Guaynacapa propheſied by reuelation of his Oracles of the comming of bearded men, commanding at his death that they ſhould yeeld ſubiection to them, hauing a better law, cuſtomes, &c. then they: as *Atabuallpa* in his anſwer to *Valle viridi* his oration *ap.Veg.*

Pachacuti Ingua Yupangui ſucceeded him, who was a great Conquerour, Politician, and Author of their Ceremonies; he raigned 70. yeeres, and fained himſelfe ſent of *Viracocha*, to eſtabliſh his Religion and Empire.

After him followed *Guaynacapa* the Father of *Guaſcar* and *Atabaliba*, which brought this Empire to the greateſt height. The Indians opened him after his deceaſe, leauing his heart and entrailes in Quito, the body was carried to Cuſco, and placed in the Temple of the Sunne. He was worſhipped of his Subiects for a God, being yet aliue, which was not done to any of his Predeceſſors. When he dyed, they ſlue a thouſand perſons of his houſhold, to ſerue him in the other life, all which dyed willingly for his ſeruice, inſomuch that many offered themſelues to death, beſides ſuch as were appointed. His treaſure was admirable. Hee vſed alwayes n to haue with him many *Oregicui*, which were his men of Warre, and ware ſhooes and feathers, and other ſignes of Nobilitie: he was ſerued of the eldeſt Sonnes and Heires of all his chiefe Subiects, euery one clothed after his owne Countrey Rite; he had many Counſellours and Courtiers in differing degrees of honour. Euery one at his entrance into the Palace put off his ſhooes, and might not looke him in the face when they ſpake to him.

o *Acoſt.l.6.c.* 22.23.

All the Veſſels of his Houſe, Table, and Kitchin, were of Gold and Siluer, and the meaneſt of Siluer and Copper for ſtrength and hardneſſe of Metall. He had in his Wardrobe hollow Statues, which ſeemed Gyants, and were of Gold: and the figures in proportion and bigneſſe of all the Beaſts, Birds, Trees, and Herbs, in his Kingdome, and of the Fiſhes likewiſe. He had Ropes, Budgets, Troughs, and Cheſts, of Gold and Siluer: heapes of Billets of Gold, that ſeemed Wood cut out for the fire. There was nothing in his Kingdome, but he had the counterfeit in Gold. Yea they ſay, That the *Ingua's* had a Garden of pleaſure in an Iland neer Puna, which had all kind of Garden herbs, flowres, and trees of Gold and Siluer. He had alſo an infinite quantitie of Siluer and Gold wrought in Cuſco, which was loſt by the death of *Guaſcar*, which the Indians concealed (as is ſaid) from the Spaniards. *Xeres* ſaith, hee had three houſes full of pieces of Gold, and fiue full of Siluer: and a 100000. Plates or Tiles of Gold, euery of which weighed fifty Caſtlins. What honors were done to him after his death, appeares by that his golden Temple or Chappell where he was buried, where hee had continuall attendance of Dancers and Muſicians, and ſuch as ſtood with Fans to ſcarre away the Flyes. When any came to ſee the Cacique, they came firſt to performe their Ceremonies to this Image. He had 200. children by diuers women. *Acoſta* o ſayth, That he had (deſcended from his owne loynes) aboue 300. children and grand children.

p His Son *Sayri Tupac* was baptiſed by the name of *Diego Amaru* was his Brother.

When his Sonnes *Guaſcar* and *Atibaliba* were dead, another of his Sonnes called *Mangocapa*, p continued the wars a while with the Spaniards, and after retyred himſelfe to *Villa Bamba*, where he kept in the Mountaynes, and there the *Ingua's* raigned vntill *Amaro* was taken and executed in Cuſco. Some remnants of them haue ſince bin q chriſtened. The other

q One of which hath written a generall Hiſtory of the Indies in two parts: in the former of the *Peruuian* Antiquities &c. Acts: in the later of the Spaniſh: *viz. Garcilaſſo de la Vega* Naturall of *Cuſco*: his Mother was *Palla Iſabel* daughter of *Huallpa Topac Inga*, one of the Sons of *Topac Inga Yupangui* and of *Palla Mama Ocllo* his lawfull wife, His Father was *Garcilaſſo de la Vega* one of the Conquerors of Peru, a Captaine, who went thither with *Pedro de Aluarado* 1531. and there continued till his death 1559. *Franciſco de Toledo* being Viceroy entred Proceſſe againſt the *Ingas* and all the *Meſtizos* of that bloud: but would not execute them. Inſtead whereof he ſent and diſperſed them (leſt by their Fathers conqueſts or mothers bloud they ſhould challenge that Empire) into *Chili, Pinama, New Granada, Nicaragua*, and into *Spaine*. 36. *Indians* of that bloud they ſent to *Loy Reyes* there to remayne, of which 35. dyed in little more then two yeares with griefe, &c. Others alſo elſewhere dyed. *Don Carlos* had a Son in *Spaine* which there dyed 1610. of griefe: and ſoone after a little Infant which he left, and ſo all *Guaynacapas* propheſie touching his Poſterity was accompliſhed. In *Mexico* they tooke not that courſe, becauſe the Kingdome paſſed by Election, not Succeſſion. The preſent *Inga* they preſently ſentenced to loſe his head: who deſired to be ſent into *Spaine*, proteſting his innocency; & that if his Father could do nothing againſt 200. *Spaniards* in *Cuſco* with 200000. *Indians*, what could they feare of him ſo poore? He appealed to the King and to *Pachacamac*: was baptiſed alſo by the name of *Philip* his *Inga* as he called him: moued pitie in the *Spaniards*, who would haue beſought for him to be ſent into *Spaine*, there to remayne exiled, but might not be ſuffered on paine of death to ſpeake to the Viceroy. Thus was *Amaru* or *Philip* brought forth on a Mule, his hands faſtned (the Cryer proclayming him a Tyrant and Traytor) with a halter about his necke. 300000. were gathered together in the ſtreets and wayes to this ſad ſpectacle with much teares and cryes, the Prieſts deſired him to enioyne them ſilence, whereupon hee lifted vp his hand, and laying it on his eare, and thence by degrees to his thigh, there followed ſuch ſilence as if there had not beene a man in the Citie. And thus with proteſtation of his innocencie hee ſuſtayned their crueltie with great magnanimitie: the laſt of that race, which had continued as *Blas Valera* reckons almoſt 600. yeeres in that Soueraigntie. After his death followed that diſperſion before related of his children and kindred. The Viceroy returned with 500000. Pezos gotten in his gouernment, which was arreſted, and himſelfe diſcountenanced by the King, who told him that he was ſent into Peru to ſerue Kings, not to kill Kings: wherewith agrieued hee dyed in few dayes. *Garcia Loyola* which tooke *Amaru*, married his Neece the Daughter of *Sayri Tupac*, and was made Gouernour of Chili: who one night was ſlaine with all his Company by the *Araucos*. He left only one Daughter which was married to *Don Iuan Enriquez de Boria* in Spaine, whom the King entituled Marqueſſe of *Oropeſa* a Towne founded by *Toledo* in *Peru*.

Fa-

Family of the *Ingna's*, which descended of the first *Mangocapa* called *Virmuscu*, had their successions also and Gouernment; which here to discourse of, were to my proposed scope impertinent. Leauing therefore the Conquerours and Conquest of Peru, let vs consider the Countrey it selfe, with such obseruations as we shall there find touching their Religions.

CHAP. IX.
Of the Countrey of Peru, Naturall, Oeconomicall, and Politicall Obseruations.

§. I.
Of the Seite, Windes, Hills, Plaines, Lakes, Raines, Seasons.

THE Kingdom of Peru extendeth [b] seuen hundred leagues in length, in breadth a hundred in some places, in some threescore, in others fortie: more or lesse, according vnto the difference of places. Quito and Plata are the vtmost Cities thereof, the one bordering on Popayan, the other vpon Chili. It is not heere meant of that spacious Kingdome of the *Ingna's*, for that reached twelue hundred leagues, whereof this of Peru was but a part. *Acosta* [c] numbreth diuers strange specialties, excepted from the generall Rules of Natures vniuersal course.

[b] P. de Cieça. [c] Acost. l. 3. c. 20

The first, that it blowes continually on all that Coast with one only winde (and that also differing from that which vsually bloweth betweene the Tropikes) namely, the South and Southwest. The second, that this winde (in other places vnhealthfull) is here so agreeable, that otherwise it could not be habitable. The third, that it neuer Raines, Thunders, Snowes, nor Hailes in all this Coast: And yet (which is a fourth wonder) a little distance from the Coast, it Snowes and Raines terribly. Fifthly, there are two Ridges and Mountaynes, which both runne in one altitude; and the one in view of the other, almost equally, aboue a 1000. leagues; & yet on the one part are great Forrests, and it Raines the greatest part of the yeere, being very hot; the other is all naked, & bare, and very cold. So that Peru is diuided into three parts, which they call *Llanos Sierra*, and *Andes*: the first runne alongst the Sea Coast; the *Sierra* be Hills with some Valleyes; and the *Andes* bee steepe and craggie Mountaynes. The *Llanos* or Plaines on the Sea Coast haue ten leagues in breadth, in some parts lesse, and in some a little more. The *Sierra* contayneth with equall inequalitie twentie leagues: and the *Andes* as much, sometimes more, and sometimes lesse. They run in length from North to South, and in breadth from East to West: and in this so small a distance it raines almost continually in one place, and neuer in the other: In the Plaines neuer; on the *Andes* in a maner continually, though sometimes it be more cleere there then other. The *Sierra* in the midst are more moderate, in which it Raines from September to April, as in Spain, but in the other halfe yeere, when the Sunne is further off, it is more cleere. The *Sierra* yeeld infinite number of Vicagues, which are like wild Goats; and Pacos, a kinde of sheepe-asses, profitable for fleece and burthen: the *Andes* yeeld Parrots, Apes, and Monkeyes. Some [d] report that monstrous births doe sometimes proceed (as by Natures vnwilling hand) from the copulation of these Barbarians and these Monkeyes. The *Sierre* opening themselues, cause Valleyes, where are the best dwellings in Peru, and most plentifull of Maiz and Fruits. It is [e] strange that in the Valley of Pachacama, neyther the high or Element yeeldeth Raine, nor the lower any streame, and yet there is plenty of Roots, Maiz, and Fruits. They haue large and deepe Ditches, in which they sow or set, and that which growth is nourished with the dew: and because the Maiz will not grow, except it first die, they set one or two Pilchards heads (which fish they take with their nets very plentifully in the Sea) therewith, and thus it groweth abundantly. The water which they drinke, they draw out of deep pits. [f] Comming from the Mountaines to the Vallyes, they do vsually see (as it were) two Heauens, one cleere and bright, the other obscure, and (as it were) a gray veile spread vnderneath, which couers all the Coast: and although it raines not, yet this mist is wonderfull profitable to bring forth grasse, and to rayse vp and nourish the Seed: and where they haue plenty of water, which they draw from the Pooles and Lakes, yet if this moyture faileth, there followeth great defect of grain. And (which is more worthy of admiration) the dry and barren sands in some places, as in the sandy Mountaine neere the City *de los Reyes*, are by this dew beautified with grasse & flowres. In some places they water their fields out of the riuers.

The winds and weathers.

The Hills.

[d] Botero.

[e] Cieça. p. 1. c. 71.

[f] Acost. l. 3. c. 21.

Lake.

Beyond the Citie of Cusco the two ridges of Mountaynes separate themselues, and in the middest leaue a plaine and large Champaine, which they call the Prouince of *Callao*, where there are many Riuers and great store of fertile pastures. There is also the great Lake of Titicaca, which containeth fourescore leagues in compasse, and robbeth ten or twelue great Riuers of their waters, which they were carrying to the Sea, but here are drunke vp (by the way) of this Lake. They sayle in it with Shippes and Barques. The water is not altogether sowre nor salt, as that of the Sea, but is so thicke, that it cannot be drunke. Vpon the Bankes of this Lake are habitations as good as any in Peru. The great Lake passeth by a Riuer into a lesse Lake, called *Aulagas*, from whence it hath no manner of passage, except there be any vnder the Earth. There are many other Lakes in the Mountaines, which seeme to arise rather from Springs then from Raines or Snowes, and some of them yeeld Riuers. At the end of the Valley of Tarapaya neere to Potozi, there is a round Lake, whose water is very hot, and yet the Countrey is very cold: they bathe themselues neere the bankes, for further in it is intolerable. In the middest is a boyling, aboue twentie foote square: it neuer encreaseth nor decreaseth, although they haue drawne from it a great streame for Metall Mils.

g *Ac l.3.b.c.16. Cieza p.1 c.103.*

No raine: the cause.

But to returne from this plenty of water in Lakes, to that want thereof in the Plaines of Peru. The naturall reason which some yeeld of this want of Raine, is, partly their sandie and dry qualitie, which of themselues can yeeld no further exhalations, then to produce those mists or deawes: partly the height of the Hils, which shadow the Plaines, and suffer no wind to blow from the Land vpon them, but intercept them wholly with their vapours and Cloudes; so that their winde is onely from the Sea, which finding no opposite, doth not presse nor straine forth the vapours which rise to engender Raine. This seemeth the rather to be probable, for that it raines vpon some small Hils along the Coast which are least shadowed. In the same Coast also, where the Easterly or Northerly winds be ordinary, it raineth as in Guayaquill. The South winde in other places is h accounted a causer of Raine, which here reigneth without rayning.

h *Tellus Nabibus assiduis iuuaque made, cita ab Austro. Ouid.*

As strange is the difference of seasons, after the Indians account. For in the i Sierras their Summer beginneth in Aprill, and endeth with September: October beginneth their Winter, which not the absence, but the presence of the Sunne doth cause. Contrariwise in the Plaines, iust by it site, they haue their Summer from October to Aprill, the rest their Winter. (The like is noted in the East Indies at the Hils of Balegate, where that Ridge parteth Winter and Summer in the same neernesse to the Sunne, at the same time, and a few miles distant.)

i *Cieza c.59.*

The Raines in the Hils are cause why they call it Winter, and the deawes or mysts in the Plaines, so that when the Raines fall most in the Hils, it is cleere weather in the Plaines, and when the deaw falleth in the Plaines, it is cleere on the Hils: and thus it sometimes passe, that a man may trauell from Winter to Summer in one day, having Winter to wash him in the morning, and ere night a cleere and dry Summer to scorch him. Yea in some places (sayth *Alexandro Ursino*) within fixe miles space both heate and cold are intolerable, and enough to kill any man. From Saint *Helen* to *Copiapo* it neuer raineth, which Coast extends forty miles, in some places fiftie, in breadth, and twelue hundred leagues in length.

§. II.

Of the first Inhabitants, their Quippos, Arts, Marriages.

k *Cieza c.25.*

ABout the point of Saint *Helena* in Peru, they k tell that sometimes there liued Giants of huge stature, which came thither in Boates, the compasse of their knee was as much as of another mans middle: they were hated of the people, because that ying their women they killed them, and did the same to the men for other causes. These Giants were addicted to Sodomie, and therefore as the Indians report, were destroyed with fire from Heauen. Whether this be true or no, in those parts are found huge and Giantlike bones. *Cieza* writes that *Iohn di Holmos* at Porto Vieio digged and found teeth three fingers broad, and foure long. Contrariwise, in the Valley of Chincha m they haue a Tradition that the Progenitors of the present Inhabitants destroyed the native people, which were not aboue two Cubits high, and possessed their roomes: in testimonie whereof they alledge also that bone-argument.

l The like doth *Apolodorus*, and the Poets tell of *Typhon*, and other Giants. *Ap di Ded. O-rigd 1. & Hygin. fab. 152.*

m *Cieza c.74.*

Concerning the Indians conceit of their own originall: we haue mentioned their opinion of

of a flood, and the repeopling of the World by them, which came out of a Caue. They haue another Legend, that all men being drowned, there came out of the great Lake Titicaca, one *Viracocha*, which stayed in Tiaguanaco, where at this day is to bee seene the ruines of very ancient and strange buildings, and from thence came to Cusco, and so began to Mankinde to multiply. They shew in the same Lake a small Iland, where they taine that the Sunne hid himselfe, and so was preserued: and for this reason they made great Sacrifices vnto him in this place, both of Sheepe and Men. They held this place sacred, and the Inguas built there a Temple to the Sunne, and placed there Women and Priests with great treasures.

n *Acost.l.5.c.25*

o *Cieza.p.31 c.103.*

10 Some Polearned men are of opinion, that all which the Indians make mention of is not aboue foure hundred yeeres; which may bee imputed to their want of writing. In stead of writing they vsed their *Quippos*. Title *Quippos* are Memorials or Registers made of cords, in which there are diuers knots and colours, signifying diuers things: these were their Bookes of Histories, of Lawes, Ceremonies, and accounts of their affaires. There were officers appointed to keepe them, called *Quipocamayos*; which were bound to giue account of things as Notaries and Registers. They had according to the diuersitie of business, sundry cords any branches, in euery of which were so many knots little and great, and strings tyed to them, some red, some greene, and in such varietie, that euen as wee deriue an infinite number of words from the Letters of the Alphabet, so doe they from these kinds and colours.

p *Acost ibid.*

Quippos.

20 And at this day they will keepe account exactly with them. I did see (saith *Acosta*) a handfull of these strings, wherein an Indian woman did carrie (as it were) written a generall confession of all her life, and thereby confessed herselfe; as well as I could haue done in written paper, with strings for the circumstances of the sinnes. They haue also certaine wheeles of small stones, by meanes whereof they learne all they desire by heart. Thus you shall see them learne the *Pater-noster*, *Creed*, and the rest: and for this purpose they haue many of these wheeles in their Church-yards. They haue another kinde of *Quippos*, with grains of Maiz, with which they will cast hard accounts, which might trouble a good Arithmetician with his Pen in the Diuisions. They were no lesse witty, if not more, in things where to they apply themselues, then the men of these parts. They taught their young children all Arts necessary to the life of men, euery one learning what was needfull for his person and family, and not appropriating himselfe to one profession; as with vs, one is a Tayler, another a Weauer, or of other Trade. Euery man was his owne Weauer, Carpenter, Husbandman, and the like. But in other Arts, more for ornament then necessitie, they had Gold-smiths, Painters, Potters, and Weauers of curious workes for Noblemen, and so of the rest. No man might change the fashion vsed in his owne Countrey, when hee went into another, that all might be knowne of what Countrey they were.

q *Id.ibid.c.26.*

30

For their Marriages, they had many Wiues, but one was principall, which was wedded with Solemnitie, and that in this sort: The Bridegroome went to the Brides House, and put *Ottaya*, which was an open Shoe, on her foot: this, if shee were a Mayd, was of wooll, otherwise, of Reeds, and this done, he led her thence with him. If she committed Adulterie, shee was punished with death: when the Husband dyed, shee carried a mourning Weed of blacke a yeere after, and might not marry in that time, which befell not the other Wiues. The Ingua himselfe with his own hand gaue this woman to his Gouernours and Captaines; and the Gouernours assembled all the young men and Mayds in one place of the Citie, where they gaue to euery one his Wife, with the aforesaid Ceremonie in putting on the *Ottaya*: the other Wiues did serue and honour this. None might marry with his Mother, Daughter, Grandmother or Grand-childe: and *Tupangui*, the Father of *Guayuacapa* was the first Ingua that married his Sister, and confirmed his fact by a Decree, that the Inguas might doe it, commanding his owne children to doe it, permitting the Noblemen also to marrie their Sisters by the Father side. Other Incest, and Murther, Theft, and Adulterie were punished with death. Such as had done good seruice in warre, were rewarded with Lands, Armes, Titles of honour, and Marriage in the Inguas Linage.

40

50

They had *Chasquis* or Posts in Peru, which were to carrie tidings or Letters: for which purpose they had houses a league and a halfe asunder, and running each man to the next, they would runne fifty leagues in a day and night. Pcsts.

§. III.

The Regall Rites, Rights, Workes, and of RVMINAGVI *and* ALVARADO.

WHen the Ingua was dead, his lawfull heire borne of his chiefe Wife succeeded. And if the King had a legitimate Brother, he first inherited, and then the Sonne of the first. Hee inherited not the goods (as is sayd already) but they were wholly dedicated to his Oratorie or Guaca, and for the mayntenance of the Family he left: which, with his Ost-spring, was alway busied at the Sacrifices, Ceremonies, and Seruice of the deceased King: for being dead, they presently held him for a God, making Images and Sacrifices to him. The Ensigne of Royaltie was a Red Rowle of Woolf finer then Silke, which hung on his forehead, which was a Diadem that none else might weare in the middest of their forehead; at the eare the Noblemen men might. When they tooke this Roll, they made their Coronation Feast, and many Sacrifices with a great quantitie of vessels of Gold, and Siluer, and many Images in the forme of Sheepe of Gold and Siluer, and a thousand others of diuers colours. Then the chiefe Priest tooke a young Child in his hand of the age of sixe or eight yeeres, pronouncing these words with the other Ministers to the Image of Viracocha: *Lord, wee offer this vnto thee, that thou mayest mayntaine vs in quiet, and helpe vs in our Warres: mayntaine our Lord the* Ingua *in his Greatnesse and estate, that hee may alway increase: giuing him much knowledge to gouerne vs.* There were present at this Ceremonie, men of all parts of the Realme, and of all Guacas and Sanctuarries. It is not found that any of the Inguas Subiects euer committed Treason against him. Hee placed the Gouernours in euery Prouince, some greater, and some smaller. The Inguas thought it a good rule of State to keepe their Subiects alway in action, and therefore there are seene to this day long Causeys of great labour, diuiding this large Empire into foure parts.

Hauing conquered a Prouince, they presently reduced them into Townes and Communalties, which were diuided into Bands: one was appointed ouer tenne, another ouer a hundred, and another ouer a thousand, and ouer tenne thousand another. Aboue all, there was in euery Prouince a Gouernour of the House of the Inguas, to whom the rest gaue accounts of what had passed, and who were eyther borne or dead. At the Feast called *Raymer*, the Gouernours brought the Tribute of the whole Realme to the Court at Cusco. All the Kingdome [t] was diuided into foure parts, Chinchasuyo, Collosuyo, Andesuyo, and Condesuyo, according to the foure wayes which went from Cusco, East, West, North and South.

When [t] the Ingua conquered a Citie, the Land was diuided into three Parts, the first for Religion, euery Idoll and Guaca hauing his peculiar Lands appropriated to their Priests and Sacrifices; and the greatest part thereof was spent in Cusco, where was the Generall and Metropolitan Sanctuary, the rest in that Citie where it was gathered, which all had Guacas, after the fashion of Cusco, some being thence distant two hundred leagues. That which they reapt on the Land, was put into Store-houses built for that purpose.

The second part of that diuision was for the Ingua for the mayntenance of his Court, Kinsmen, Noblemen, and Souldiers: which they brought to Cusco, or other places where it was needfull.

The third part was for the Communaltie for the nourishment of the people, no particular man possessing any part hereof in proper. As the Family encreased or decreased, so did the portion. Their Tribute was to till and husband the Lands of the Ingua, and the Guacas, and lay it vp in Store-houses, being for that time of their labour nourished out of the same lands. The like distribution was made of the Cattel to the same purpose, as that of the lands, and of the woolf, and other profits that thence arose. The old men, women and sicke folkes, were reserued from this Tribute. They payed other Tributes also, euen whatsoeuer the Ingua would choose out of euery Prouince. The Chicas sent sweete Woods; the Lucanas, Brancars to carrie his Litter; the *Chumtilhicas*, Dancers: others were appointed to labour in the Mines: and all were slaues to the Ingua. Some hee employed in building of Temples, Fortresses, Houses, or other Workes, as appeareth by the remnants of them, where are found stones of such greatnesse, that men cannot conceiue how they were cut, brought and layed in their places, they hauing no Iron or Steele to cut, Engines to carrie, nor Morter to lay them: and yet they were so cunningly layed, that one could not see the ioynts. Some of eight and thirtie foot long, sayth *Acosta*, eight broad, and sixe thicke. I measured; and in the walles of Cusco are bigger; none so little (sayth *Sancho*) in some buildings there, as three Carts might carrie, and some thirty spannes square. *Iohn Ellis*

which

t *Cieza pag. 1. cap. 29.*

t *Acost. l. 6. c. 15*

which lately was there, sayth some of them are twentie tunne weight, strangely ioyned with vs mortar.

They built a Bridge at Chiquitto, the River being so deepe, that it will not admit Arches: they fastened bundles of Reedes and Weedes, which being light, will not sinke, which they fasten to eyther side of the River, they make a passable for man and beast: it is three hundred foot long. Cusco [t] their chiefe Citie standeth in seuentene degrees: it is subiect to cold and Snow, the Houses are of great and square stone. It was besieged by *Soto*, and by *Pizarro*, and by him entred, where they found more treasure then they had by the imprisonment of *Atabaliba*. *Quito* [u] is said to haue beene as rich as *Cusco*. Hither *Ruminagui* fled with fiue thousand Souldiers, when *Atabalba* his Master was taken by the Spaniards, and slue *Illescas* his Brother, that withstood his Tyrannicall proceedings, flayed him, and made a Drumme of his skinne; fiue two thousand Souldiers that brought the bodie of *Atabaliba* to *Quito* to be interred, hauing in shew of Funerall pompe and honour, before, made them drunke; and with his Forces scoured the Prouince of *Tumebamba*; hee killed many of his Wiues for smiling, when hee told them they should haue pleasure with the bearded men, and burnt the Wardrobe of *Atabaliba*: that when the Spaniards came and entred *Quito*, which had almost dispeopled *Panama*, *Nicaragua*, *Cartagena*, and other their Habitations in hope of Peruuian spoyles, they found themselues disappointed of their expected prey, and in anger set fire on the Towne. *Alnarado* with fiue hundred Souldiers, hee came from Guatimala into those parts, with foure hundred Spaniards, but was forced to kill his Horse, to feede his famished Company (although at that time Horses were worth in Peru aboue a thousand Ducats apiece) was almost killed with thirst, was assaulted [x] with showres of Ashes, which the hote Vulcane of *Quito* dispersed two hundred and fortie myles about (with terrible Thunders and Lightnings, which *Pluto* had seemed to steale from *Iupiter*, and here to vent them) and after with Snowes on the colde Hills, which exacted seuenty Spaniards for Tribute in the passage, found many men sacrificed by the Inhabitants, but could finde no Gold, till *Pizarro* bought his departure with an hundred thousand Duckets. Hee gaue, *Thanks*, (hee sayd) to God for his deliuerance, by that *Tract*, by which hee had passed, to the Deuill. This was hee that afterward being bruised with the fall of his Horse, (whereof hee dyed) and asked where hee was most pained, sayd, [y] *in his Soule*, as guilty to himselfe of his former cruelties and couetousnesse. This is the profit of vnsanctified and ill-sanctified Gold: the one whereof we see in these Peruuian Temples thus spoyled by the Spaniards, who (in the other respect) were more spoyled by this spoyle and purchase. What golden dayes these were to the Spaniards, this History in diuers places sheweth. From one Palace of *Cusco* (sayth *Xeres*) they tooke seuen hundred plates of Gold, each whereof weighed fiue hundred Castlins: from another House the weight of two hundred thousand. Two Houses of Gold hee speakes of, the very thatch being counterfeit in Gold, the strawes with the eares artificially wrought. But euery where are these Relations wrought and embrodered with *Cusco* Gold. *Alnarados* Armie, which he brought into Peru, had perished, as *Cieza* relateth, with drought, but for certaine Canes as bigge as a mans legge, which betweene the knots contayned a pottle of water, extracted from the dewes: for there fell no raine in those parts.

Giraua sayth that the Inhabitants of Anzerma were in their Warres armed with complete Harnesse of Gold: and that about Quito there were Mynes, whence more Gold was taken then Earth. I tye no mans credit to these reports, but sure it is, that they had these Metals in abundance, which the Spanish warres haue made our European World to feele, more managed and maintayned by Indian wedges, then Spanish Blades.

But let vs come from their Mynes, to their Minds, which for heauenly things were as full of drosse, as the other were of pure Metals.

t *Gom. c. 124.*

u *Gom. c. 125. 126.*

x Not far from Lima, on the South Sea. *Oliuar Nieto* was bemisled two dayes on the Sea, with such a showre of ashes, which made them seeme as they had bin sprinkled with Meale. The Spaniards say, they are there common.

y *Xeres. l. 2. c. 27.* z *F. Xeres, Oriolet Tigeo.*

Strange Canes

CHAP. X.

Of the many Gods of Peru, their opinions of the Creation, Flood, and end of the World.

§. I.

Of their Gods.

THE Peruians acknowledged a Supreme Lord and Authour of all things, a which they called *Viracocha*, and gaue him names of great excellencie, as *Pachacamac*, or *Pachayachachic*, which is, the Creator of Heauen and Earth, and *Usapu*, that is, admirable, and other the like. Him they did worship as the chiefest of all, and honoured him in beholding the Heauens. Yet had b they no proper name for God, no more then the Mexicans, but such as in this sort might signifie him by his attributes or workes, and therefore are forced to vse the Spanish name *Dios*. c In the name of *Pachacamac*, or Creator, they had a rich Temple erected to him, wherein they worshipped notwithstanding the Deuill and certaine figures. The name of *Viracocha* was of the greatest sound in their deuotions, and so they called the Spaniards, esteeming them the Sonnes of Heauen. *Benzo* d alledgeth another cause of that name giuen to the Spaniards. It signifieth (saith he) the froth of the Sea (*ὁ Ἅφρος* is froth, *Cochie* the Sea) because they thought them ingendred of Sea froth, and nourished therewith, in regard of their couetousnesse and cruelties deuouring all things: applying that name to them in respect of their wicked practices, and not for Diuine Originall. Yea, they curse the Sea, which sent such a cursed brood into the Land. (The Spaniards came thither by Sea, as you haue heard.) If I, say th *Benzo*, asked any of them for any Christian by that Title, they would neyther looke on me, nor answere: but if I enquired for them by the name of *Viracochie*, they would presently make answere. And there (would the Father point to the child) goes a *Viracochi*. In this they agreed with the ancient Grecian Ethnikes, which termed the most inhumane Monsters of humanitie, and the cruellest Tyrants, the Sonnes of *Neptune*, as procreated of the Sea. Such were f *Procrustes Polyphemus*, and others.

To reconcile these two wholly, is impossible; not so, to shew some reason why the same name might bee giuen both to their Idoll, and the Spaniards. These might bee so termed, as comming thither at first by Sea: and haply, because at the first they thought somewhat more then humane to be in them; and that which at first they gaue for honour, may now bee continued in an *Ironie*, or *Antiphrasis*, whiles they thought them better then Men, and found them little inferiour to Deuils.

Viracocha their great Authour of Nature, may bee called by this Sea name g for some especiall Sea Rites obserued in his honour, or for the same cause that the Mythologians ascribe to *Venus* h her Sea-generation. For they pictured *Venus* swimming on the Sea (as *Albricus* affirmeth) and the Poet singeth *Venus Orta Mari*: which the Mythologians apply to the motion and moysture required to generation, and to that frothy nature of the Sperme. So sayth *Phornutus*: k *Venus à Mari nata perhibetur, quòd ad omnium generationis causam mota & humidiuate opus sit. Et fortè quòd spumosa sint animantium semina*: therefore (sayth l *Fulgentius*) she is called *Aphrodite*: for *Aphros* is Froth; and so is Lust, in regard of the vanitie, and so is Seed in regard of naturall qualitie. Perhaps also the first Master of *Viracochas* Mysteries, which taught them first in Peru, came thither by Sea.

But to returne to *Acosta*, m he telleth that the *Ingua Tupanqui* (to make himselfe more respected) deuised, that being one day alone, *Viracocha* the Creator spake to him, complaining, that though hee were vniuersall Lord and Creator of all things, and had made the Heauen, the Sunne, the World, and Men, and ruled all, yet they did not yet id him due obedience, but did equally honour the Sunne, Thunder, Earth, and other things: giuing him to vnderstand, that in Heauen where hee was, they called him *Viracocha Pachayachachic*, which signifieth vniuersall Creator: promising also that hee would send men inuisibly to assist him against the *Changuas*, who had lately defeated his Brother.

a *Acost. l. 5. c. 3.* *Viracocha.*
b No name in the Cuscan or Mexican tongues to signifie God.
c Which they pronounce *Tius* wanting the letter *d* in their Language, *Veg. l. 1. c. 40.*
d *Benzo. l. 3. c. 1.*
e *Vega* saith they called the *Spaniards Viracocha* because they resembled a *Spectrum* which appeared to *Inga Viracocha* with a beard, &c. They therefore thought them sent from Heauen to doe iustice on *Atahuallpa* for his tyrannie. And were further confirmed in this errour by their Harquebuzes and Ordnance which they called *Yllapa*, thuder, and *Hatun Yllapa* great thunder, the proper weapons of the Sunne. They called them also *Inca* or *Ingua*. But after experience of their wickednesse they forbeare to call them so any longer: & called them *Capaj* i. Deuils.
The people were so loyall and subiect, as they held the Spaniards their conquerours as Gods, and obserued them as they vsed their Idols.
f *A. Gell. l. 15. c. 21.* *Hygin. Fab.* g *Sec. c. 12.* h *Orta salo, suscepta solo, patre edita Cælo-Venus. Ausonius.* i *Albricus de Imag. deorum.* k *Phornutus de Nat. deor. Spectatum. Vid Im. de S. Dei. Fine. Genialis.* l *Fulgentius mytholog. l. 2.* m *Ac. l. 6. c. 21.*

Vnder

Vnder this colour he assembled a mightie Armie, and ouerthrew the *Changuas*: and from that time commanded that *Viracocha* should be held for vniuersall Lord, and that the Images of the Sunne and Thunder, should doe him reuerence. And thenceforth they set his Image higheſt: yet did he not dedicate any thing to him, n saying, that hee being Lord of all had no need. As for those inuisible Souldiers (a conceit like that which wee haue mentioned of the Turkes) he said that no man might see them but him selfe: and since they were conuerted into stones: and in that regard gathered a multitude of stones in the Mountaynes, and placed them for Idols, sacrificing them. He called them *Pururauca*, and carried them to the warres with great deuotion, making his Souldiers beleeue that they had gotten the victory through their helpe. And by this meanes he obtayned goodly victories.

n Sohaueſome reasoned, in *Templis quid ſacri iuuarunt? Perſ*

Next to *Viracocha* they worshipped the Sunne: and after him the Thunder, which they called by three names, *Chuquilla*, *Catuilla*, and *Intillapa*, ſuppoſing it to be a man in Heauen with a Sling and a Mace, in whose power it is to cause Raine, Haile, Thunder, and other effects of the ayrie Region.

This *Guaca* (so they called both their Idols and Temples) was Generall to all the Indians of Peru: and in Cuſco they sacrificed to him children, as they did to the Sunn. Theſe three, *Viracocha*, the Sunne, and Thunder, had a more eſpecial worship then the reſt: they put as it were a Gantlet or Gloue vpon their hands, when they lifted them vp to worship them. They worshipped the Earth in the name of *Pachamama*, and esteemed her the Mother of all things: the Sea also, and called it *Mamacocha*: and the Rain-bow, which with two Snakes stretched out on each side, were the Armes of the Inguas. They attributed diuers offices, to diuers Starres, and those which needed their fauour, worshipped them: so the Shepheard sacrificed to a Starre, by them called *Vrcuchillay*, which they hold to be a sheepe of diuers colours, and two other Starres called *Catuchillay* and *Vrcuchillay*, which they fayned to bee an Ewe and a Lambe: others worshipped a Starre which they name *Machacuay*, to which they attributed the power ouer Snakes and Serpents, to keepe them from hurting them. To another Starre called *Chinguanchinchey* (which is as much as Tigre) they ascribed power ouer Beares, Tigres, and Lions. They haue generally beleeued of all the Beasts in the earth, there is one like vnto them in heauen, which hath care of their procreation and encrease. Many other Starres they worshipped, too tedious to rehearse. They worshipped also Riuers, Fountaines, the mouthes of Riuers, entries of Mountaynes, Rockes or great stones, Hills and the tops of Mountaynes, which they call *Apachitas*. They worshipped all things in Nature, which seemed to them remarkeable and different from the reſt.

o Acoſta. l. 5. c. 7

They shewed me (it is o *Acoſta* speech) in Cazamalca, a Hill or Mount of Sand, which was a chiefe Idoll or Guaca, of the Ancients. I demanded what Diuinitie they found in it; they alledged the wonder, it beeing a high Mount of Sand in the middleſt of the thicke Mountaynes of stone. In the Cisie *de los Reyes*, for the melting of a Bell, wee cut downe a great deformed Tree, which for the greatneſſe and Antiquitie thereof had beene their *Guaca*. They attributed the like Diuinitie to any thing that was strange in the kind, as Stones, or the Roots *Papas* and *Lallarecas* (which they kiſſed and worshipped:) Beares also, Lions, Tigres and Snakes, that they ſhould not hurt them. And such as their Gods be, such are the things which they offer vnto them in their worship. They haue vſed, as they goe by the way, to caſt in the croſſe wayes on the Hils and tops of Mountaynes, olde shooes, feathers, and Coca chewed. And when they had nothing eſle, they caſt a stone as an offering, that they might paſſe freely and luſtily; hence it is, that they find in the high wayes great heaps of stones offered, and such other things. They vſed the like ridiculous offering in pulling off their haires of the eye-browes to offer to the Sunne, Hils, Winds, or any other thing which they feare. They report of one of the *Inguas*, that ſaid he did not take the Sunne to be a God, because he labouredh so much in his daily iourny. In fine, p every one worshipped what liked him beſt. The Fishers worshipped a Sharke or some other Fish: the Hunter, a Lion, Fox, or other Beast; with many Birds; the Countriman, the Water, and Earth. They beleeued that the Moone was Wife to the Sunne. When they sweare, they touch the Earth, and looke vp to the Sunne. Many of their Idols had Paſtorall Statues, and Mitres like Bishops, but the Indians could tell no reason thereof: and when they saw the Spaniſh Bishops in their *Pontificalibus*, they asked if they were *Guacas* of the Christians.

p Gen. 7. 14

They worshipped also (as before is ſaid) the dead bodies of the *Inguas*, preserving them with certaine Rosin, so that they seemed aliue. The body of *Tupangui*, the Grandfather of *Atabalipa*, was thus found, hauing eyes made of a fine cloth of Gold so artificially set, as they seemed naturall, hauing loſt no more haire then if he had died the same day, and yet he had beene dead seuenty eight yeeres. There also the Spaniards found his Seruants and *Mamacconas*, which did seruice to his memory.

In some Prouince q they worshipped the Image of a Bull, in another of a Cocke, and in other,

q Gen. c. 50.

other, others. In the Principall Temple of *Pachacama*, they kept a shee Fox and worshipped it. The Lord of Manta kept a great and rich Emerald, as his Ancestors also before him had holden it, in great veneration: on some dayes it was brought forth in publike to be worshipped. They which were sicke, came in Pilgrimage to visit it, and there offered their gifts, which the Cacique and Ministers turned to their owne profit. The Deuill in many places did appeare vnto them, and he indeed was Author of all these Superstitions.

t *Gom. hist. gen. cap 122. Apollon. l. 1.*

They haue a Tradition concerning the Creation, t that at the beginning of the World there came one from the North, into their Countrey, called *Con*, which had no bones, went very light and swift, cast downe Mountaines lift vp the Hils only with his Will and Word: He said he was the Sonne of the Sunne, and filled the earth with men and women which they created, giuing them fruits and bread, and other things necessary for humane life. But being offended with some, he countermanded all that former good, and turned the fruitfull Lands into barren Sands, as they are now in the Plaines, and tooke away the water that it should not raine (hence it came that it raines not) only leauing them the Riuers, of pure compassion, that they should maintayne themselues with labour. Afterwards t came another from the South, called *Pachacama*, the Sonne also of the Sunne and Moone, who banished *Con*, and turned his men into Cats, Monkeyes, Beares, Lions, Parrots, and other Birds, and created the Progenitors of the present Indians, and taught them to husband the Earth and the Trees. They againe, to gratifie him turned him in their imaginations and superstitions vnto a God, and named the Prouince foure leagues from Lima of his name. He t continued till the Christians came to Peru. He was their great Oracle, and as some Indians affirme, he still continueth in secret places with some of their old men, and speaketh to them. Of this Temple we shall after speake.

t *Calueto in Bere. l. 3. c. 28.*

Cieza c. 72.

u *Gom. vbi sup.*

They hold opinion u also, that on a time it rained so exceedingly, that it drowned all the lower Countries, and all men, saue a few, which got into Caues vpon high Hils, where they shut vp themselues close, that no raine could get in: there they had stored much prouision and liuing creatures. And when they perceiued that it had done raining, they sent forth two Dogges, but they returning all myrie and foule, they knew that the waters had not yet ceased: after that, they sent forth more Dogges, which came backe againe dry, then did they goe forth to people the Earth: but were mightily afflicted with multitudes of great Serpents, which had sprung vp out of those mirie Reliques of the Floud: x but at last they killed them. They beleeue also that the World shall haue an end, but before the same, shall goe a great drought, and the Sunne and Moone, which they worship, shall be consumed: and therefore they make grieuous lamentations when there is any Eclipse, especially of the Sun, fearing the destruction of it and the World. They beleeue the immortalitie of the Soule, as as we shall more fitly see when we come to their Buriall Rites.

x This is like *Guido* tale of *Typhon*, *Acc. Orpt. 1.*

CHAP XI.

Of the Religious Persons, and Places, Confessions, and Sacrifices in Peru.

§. I.

Of their Priests, Oracles and Temples.

a *Apollon. l. 1.*

NO man might come to the a *Guacai*, or Idols, but Priests. These were clothed in white, and when they came to worship, they prostrated themselues on the ground, and holding in their hands a white cloth, did speake to their God in a strange Language, that the people should not vnderstand. These haue the authoritie in their holies, and consecrate both the things liuing, and the offerings of other things. In the Sacrifices they diuined by inspection of the inward parts, especially by view of the heart, if it were of a man. And if they find not signes answerable to their expectation, they neuer cease off from sacrificing till they doe find them; beleeuing, and making the people beleeue, that God is not till then pleased with their Sacrifices. They bare incredible shew, and were had in great reputation, of holinesse. When they were to sacrifice, they abstained from women, and if they had committed any trespasse, they did expiate and purge the same with fasting: in sacrificing they did blinde, and blinde their eyes, and were sometimes so transported with Zeale, that with their nayles they scratched

scratched or pulled out their eyes, as hath beene seene. Neyther did the people alone admire their holynesse, but the Princes also, who would doe nothing of moment without their advise. They also without feare or flattery, declared vnto them what they had received from their Oracles. The manner of their Deuils consultation was this: In [b] the night time commonly) they entred backward to their Idoll, and so went bending their bodies and heads after an vgly manner, and thus consulted with him. The answere he made, was for the most part like vnto a fearefull hissing, or to a gnashing, which did terrifie them. These Oracles are now ceased.

b Acost. l.5.c.16

Apollonius [c] speakes of two mighty Princes, not farre from Chili, one of them named *Lychengorme*; they are able to bring into the field two hundred thousand men, and are very rich: but the cause why I heere mention them, is that number of Priests, which hee sayth are reported to belong to one of their Temples, to the number of two thousand. *Cieza* writeth, that the doores of their Temples were Eastward: that in euery Temple were two Images of the bignesse and likenesse of Goats, before which they burnt sweet wood: there were also Images of Serpents. Euery profession had their seuerall God. In some Temples were hanged the dead carkasses of men sacrificed.

c Lib. Apoll. l.3

In euery Prouince of Peru, there was one principall house of adoration. The ruines [d] of the Temple of *Pachacama* are still to be seene. That, and the Temples of *Collao*, and *Cusco*, were lined within with Plates of Gold and Siluer: and all their seruice was of the same, which prouied great riches to the conquerours. In *Pachacama* the Sun was worshipped with great deuotion. There were kept in the same many Virgins. *Francis Pizarro* [e] sent his Brother *Hernando* (when he had taken *Atahaliba*) to spoyle this Temple, but the Priests and chiefe men had carried away aboue foure hundred burthens of Gold before he came, and none doth know what became of it. Yet did he find there some quantitie of Gold and Siluer remaying. They sacked the Sepulchres also, and thence drew abundance of the said Metals. From that time hitherto, the Temple went to ruine.

d Gom. c.122.

e Cieza. cap.72.

The Temple of *Cusco* [f] was very sumptuous, the pauement and stones yet remayne witnesses of the ancient splendour and magnificence. This Temple was like to the *Pantheon* of the Romans: for that it was the house and dwelling of all the Gods. For the Ingues did there behold the Gods of all the Nations and Prouinces they had conquered, euery Idol hauing his proper place, whither they of that Prouince came to worship it, with excessiue charge for the same. And thereby they supposed to keepe safely in obedience those Prouinces which they had conquered, holding their Gods as it were in hostage. In this House was the *Pinchiu*, which was an Idoll of the Sunne, of most fine Gold, wrought with great riches of Stones, the which was placed to the East with so great Art, as the Sunne at his rising did cast his beames thereon, which reflected with such brightnesse, that it seemed another Sunne. They say, that at the spoyle of this Temple, a Souldier had for his part this goodly *Punchao*, and lost the same in a night at play, whence grew a Prouerbe of Gamesters in Peru, *They play the Sunne before Sun-rising*. Thus Temple towards the East (if our Spanish Captaine in *Ramusio* deceiues not) was couered with Gold, which the Spaniards (Religion forbidding Indian helpe) tooke away. There were many boyling pots and other Vessels of Gold. In the houses of the Citie was great store of Gold. In one house or Temple where they sacrificed, was a seat of Gold which weighed nineteene thousand Pezos, in which two men might sit. The house wherein old *Cusco* [g] lay buried, the pauement and wals were couered with Gold and Siluer, many Pots and Iarres were couered with like metal. *Xeres* also reporteth the same, who was *Pizarros* Secretary, and his Relation subscribed by *Pizarro*, and other Chieftaines: that this Temple was on the pauement, wals, and roofe, couered with plates of Gold and Siluer, wrought one into another: and that there were twenty other houses in that Citie, the wals whereof within and without were couered with plates of Gold.

f Acost. l.5.c.12.

g Gu. pot. cap.

Both these Authors, eye-witnesses, report, that at Caximalca was a Temple of the Sunne, (into which they entred vnshod) walled and planted with trees round about: the like is also in euery great Towne: here were many other Temples besides. In the middest was the stately Place of *Atahaliba*, with pleasant Gardens and Lodgings, in one of which was a Golden Cisterne, whereto were by two Pipes from contrary passages brought both cold water and hot, to vse them mingled, or asunder at pleasure. The Towne had about two thousand houses, feuered by streets as straight as a line, about two hundred paces long, with wals of stone. Ten dayes iourney from hence, *Atahaliba* told the Spaniards, that in the way toward *Cusco*, was a Temple generall to all the Countrey, which was very rich with Offerings of Gold and Siluer, much honoured by his Father and himselfe: other Temples had their particular Idols; this Idoll was generall, and that the custodie thereof was committed to a wiseman, which they thought could foretell things future, by reuelation of the said Idoll.

The

The Citie of *Pachacama* was famous for Peruuian deuotions. Their Idoll was placed in a darkesome painted Roome, stinking and close shut, made of filthy wood, hauing at his feete many Offerings of Gold: none but the Ministers of his Holies durst enter, nor touch the wals of the House. Three hondred leagues they came thither on Pilgrimage with rich Offerings: first speaking to the Doore-keeper, who went in and consulted with the Idoll concerning them, and returned his answere. His Priests were of his owne appointment, and might not approch to him without preparations of fasting, and abstinence from their wiues, Thorow all the streets of the Citie, and on the principall Gates, and round about the Temple, were many Idols of Wood which they worshipped. All the Countrey about payed a yeerely tribute hereunto. The Spaniards told them this their God was a Deuill, and taught them to defend themselues from him with the signe of the Crosse. Neere to this Temple was an House or Oratorie of the Sunne, on an high place, engirt about with fiue wals. At Tichicasa was a Temple and Oracle of the Sunne, which had aboue sixe hundred men and a thousand women that did seruice therein, and made *Chicas* there. Much Gold and wealth was here offered.

h *Cieza. c. 64.* Sodomites.

In some part of Peru, [h] as at Old Port and Puna, they vsed the detestable sinne against Nature: yea, the Deuill so farre preuayled in their beastly Deuotions, that there were Boyes consecrated to serue in the Temple: and at the times of their Sacrifices and Solemne Feasts, the Lords and principall men abused them to that detestable filthinesse. And generally in the Hill-countries, the Deuill vnder shew of holinesse, had brought in that vice. Euery Temple or principall house of adoration kept one man or two or more, which went attired like women, euen from the time of their child-hood, and spake like them imitating them in euery thing. Vnder [i] pretext of holinesse and Religion, their principall men, on principall dayes, had that hellish commerce. A Frier dealt with two of these *Ganimedes*, about the filthinesse of this Vice: and they answered that they held it no fault; for from their childhood they had beene placed there by their *Caciques*, both for that employment, as also to bee Priests and to keepe the Temple. Thus farre had they banished Nature, to entertaine Religion, and thus farre had they exiled the soule of Religion, retayning onely a stinking Carkasse.

i *Tantum Religio potuit suadere malorum.*

k *Cieza. c. 77. & 80.*

At Ganada in [k] Caximalca the *Ingua* built a Temple in honour of the Sunne. There were Virgins kept, which intended nothing but to weaue, and spinne, and dye clothes, for their Idolatrous seruices. The like was in other places. In Guanuco was a stately Palace of great stones, and a Temple of the Sunne adioyning, with a number of Virgins and Ministers, which had thirtie thousand Indians for the seruice thereof. The seruice which most of them did, is like to be the tilling of the ground, feeding of Cattell, and such like before mentioned, which they were bound to doe for the *Ingua*, and also for the *Guaca*, that is, Idols, and Idol-houses. But it were a wearisome Pilgrimage to goe and leade my Reader with mee, to euery of their Temples, which for the most part had the same Rites, according to that proportion of mayntenance which belonged to them.

§. II.

Of their Nunnes, Sorcerers, Confessions and and Penances.

l *Gom. c. 121.*

Gomara [l] reporteth, that their houses of women were as Cloysters or Monasteries, enclosed, that they might neuer goe forth. They gelded Men, which should attend on them, cutting off also their Noses and Lips, that they should haue no such appetite. It was death for any to be found false and incontinent. The men that entred into them, were hanged vp by the feet. These made Robes for the Idols, and burned the ouerplus with the bones of white sheepe, and hurled the Ashes into the Ayre towards the Sun. If they proued with childe, and sware that *Pachacama* did it, the issue was preserued.

m *Acosta lib. 5. cap. 25.*

Of these Monasteries or Nunneries, thus writeth *Acosta*. There were in Peru, many Monasteries of Virgins, [m] (but not any for men, except for the Priests and Sorcerers) at the least one in euery Prouince. In these were two sorts of women; one ancient, which they called *Mamacunas*, for the instruction of the young; the other of young Maydens, placed there for a certaine time, after which they were drawne forth, eyther for the Gods, or for the *Ingua*. They called this House or Monastery *Acloguagi*, that is, *the House of the Chosen*. Euery Monastery had his Vicar, or Gouernour, called *Appopanaqa*, who had libertie to chuse whom he pleased, of what qualitie soeuer, being vnder eight yeeres of age, if they seemed to

to be of a good stature and constitution. The *Mamaconas* instructed these Virgins in diuers things necessarie for the life of man, and in the Customes and Ceremonies of their Gods. Afterwards they tooke them from thence, being aboue fourteene, sending them to the Court with sure Guards, whereof some were appointed to serue the Idols, and Idol-Temples, keeping their Virginitie for euer: some other were for ordinary Sacrifices that were made of Maydens, and other extraordinary Sacrifices they made for the health, death, or warres of the *Ingua*: and the rest serued for Wiues and Concubines to the Ingua, or such as hee gaue them to.
10 This distribution was reuued euery yeere. These Monasteries possessed rents, for the maintenance of these Virgins. No Father might refuse his Daughter, if the *Appopanaca* required her: yea, many Fathers did willingly offer their Daughters, supposing it was a great merit to be sacrificed for the *Ingua*. If any of these *Mamaconas* or [n] *Acllas* were found to haue trespassed against their honour, it was an inexuitable chastisement to bury them aliue, or to put them to death, by some other cruell torment.

n The young Virgin Nuns.

The *Ingua* allowed a kind [o] of Sorcerers or Sooth-sayers, which (they say) tooke vpon them what forme and figure they pleased, flying farre thorow the Ayre in a short time. They talke with the Deuill, who answered them in certaine stones, or other things, which they reuerence much. They tell what hath passed in the furthest parts, before newes can come. In the distance of two or three hundred leagues, they would tell what the Spaniards did or suffered in their ciuill warres. To worke this diuination, they shut vp themselues vp into a
20 house and became drunke, till they lost their sense: a day after, they answered to that which was demanded. Some affirme they vse certaine vnctions. The Indians say, that the old women doe commonly vse this office of Witchcraft, especially in some places. They tell of things stolne or lost. The *Anacondas* (which are the seruants of the Spaniards) consult with them, and they make answere, hauing first spoken with the Deuill in an obscure place: so as the *Anacondas* heare the sound of the voyce, but vnderstand it not, nor see any body. They vse the Herbe *Villca* with their *Chica*, (drunke made of Mayz) and therewith make themselues drunke, that they may bee fit for the Deuils conference. The conference with these Witches is one of the greatest sets to the proceeding of the Gospel amongst them.

o *Acosta l. 5. c. 26* Sorcerers.

Among their Religious persons, I may reckon their Confessors. They p held opinion that
30 all Aduersities were the effects of sinne: for remedie whereof they vsed Sacrifices. Moreouer, they confessed themselues verbally almost in all Prouinces, and had Confessors appointed by their Superiours to that end, with some restruation of Cases for the Superiours. They receiued Penance, and that sometimes very sharply, when they had nothing to giue the Confessor. This office of Confessor was likewise exercised by women. The manner of the *Tchuyri* was most generall in the Prouinces of *Collasuio*. They discouered by lots, or by the view of some beasts, if any thing were concealed, and punished them with many blowes of a stone vpon the shoulders, vntill they had reuealed all: after that, they enioyned them Penance, and did sacrifice. They likewise vsed Confession, when their Children, Wiues, Husbands or *Cuciques* were sicke, or in any great exploit. When the *Ingua* was sicke, all the
40 Prouinces confessed themselues, chiefly those of *Collao*. The Confessors were bound to hold their Confessions secret, but in certaine cases limited. The sinnes which they chiefly confessed, were, killing one another out of warre, stealing to take another mans Wife, to giue poyson, or Sorcery to doe any harme, to be forgetfull in the reuerence of their *Guacas*, not to obserue Feasts, to speake ill of, or to disobey the *Ingua*. They accused not themselues of secret sinnes. The *Ingua* confessed himselfe to no man, but to the Sunne, that hee might tell them to *Viracocha*, of him to obtayne forgiueness: which done, hee made a certaine Bath to clense himselfe in a running Riuer, saying, *I haue told my sinnes to the Sunne, receiue them then, Riuer, and carrie them to the Sea, where they may neuer appeare more.* Other that confessed, vsed likewise those Baths. When any mans children dyed, hee was holden for a grieuous
50 Sinner, saying, that it was for their sinnes, that the Sonne dyed before the Father. Such therefore, after they were confessed, were bathed in the said Bath, and then came a deformed person, to whip them with certaine Nettles. If the Sorcerers or Inchanters, by their lots or diuinations affirmed that any sick bodie should dye, the sicke man makes no difficultie to kill his owne Sonne, though he had no other, hoping by that meanes to escape death, saying that in his place he offered his Sonne in Sacrifice. The Penances enioyned them in Confessions, were, to fast, to giue apparell, Gold, or Siluer, to remayne in the Mountaynes, and to receiue many stripes vpon the shoulders.

p *Idem, c. 25.* Confessions like the Popish.

Tchuyri.

§. III.

Of their Sacrifices.

q *Gom. c.121. Acosl.l.5.c.18.*

THe Sacrifices of the Indians may be reduced q into three kinds; of insensible things; of Beasts; of Men. Of the first sort were their Sacrifices of Coca (an Herbe of much esteeme) of Mayz, Feathers, Gold and Siluer, in figures of little Beasts, or in the forme of that which hee sought for: also of sweet Wood, and diuers other things, whereby their Temples became so rich. They made these Offrings to obtayne a good winde, health, faire weather, and the like.

Sacrifices and Offerings.

Of the second sort of Sacrifices, were their *Cuyes*, which are like Rabbets, and for rich men in matters of importance, *Pacos* (the great Camel-fashioned sheepe) with curious obseruation of the numbers, colours, and times. The manner of killing their Sacrifices is the same which the Moores now vse, hanging the beast by the right fore-legge, turning his eyes toward *the Sunne*, speaking certayne words, according to the qualitie of the Sacrifice. For if it were coloured, they directed their words to the *Thunder*, that they might want no water; if white, to the *Sunne*, that he might shine on them; if gray, to *Viracocha*. In Cusco they did euery yeere kill and sacrifice with this solemnitie a shorne sheepe to the *Sunne*, and did burne it, clad in a red Wastecoate, casting small baskets of Coca into the fire. They sacrificed also small Birds on this manner: they kindled a fire of Thornes, and cast the small Birds in, certaine Officers going about with round stones, wherein were carued or painted, Snakes, Lions, Toads, Tigres, and saying, *Vsachum*, that is, Let the victory bee giuen vs, with other words. They drew forth certaine blacke sheepe, called *Vrca*, which had beene kept certaine dayes without meate, and therefore vsed these words: *So let the hearts of our Enemies bee weakened, as these Beasts.* And if they found, that a certaine piece of flesh behind the heart were not consumed by fasting, they tooke it for a bad signe. They sacrificed also blacke Dogges, which they slue and cast into a Plaine, with certayne Ceremonies, causing some kind of men to eate the flesh, which they did, lest the *Ingua* should bee hurt with Poyson.

r Fasting.

And for this cause they r fasted from morning till the Starres were vp, and then glutted themselues. This was fitting to withstand their Enemies Gods. They offered shels of the Sea to the Fountaines, saying, that the shels were the Daughters of the Sea, the Mother of all waters. These shels they vsed (in manner) in all Sacrifices. They offered Sacrifice of what soeuer they did sowe, or rayse vp. There were Indians appointed to doe these Sacrifices to the Fountaynes, Springs, and Riuers, which passed through their Townes or by their Farmes, that they might not cease running, but alwayes water their grounds. *Gomara* s faith, that their Priests married not, went little abroad, fasted much, although no fast lasted aboue eight dayes; and that was in their Seed-time, and in Haruest, and in gathering of Gold, and making Ware, and talking with the Deuill: yea, some of them (I thinke) for feare, because they are blind-folded when they speake with him, put out their eyes; they enter into the Temples weeping and lamenting, which the word t *Guaca* signifieth. They touch not their Idols with their hands, without cleane and white Linnen, they bury in the Temples the Offerings of Gold and Siluer, in their Sacrifices they cry aloud, and were neuer quiet all that day nor night: they anointed with bloud the faces of their Idols, and doores of their Temples; they sprinkle also their Sepulchres. The u Sorcerers did coniure, to know what time the Sacrifices should be made: which being ended, they did gather of the contribution of the people what should be sacrificed, and deliuered them to such as had charge of the Sacrifices.

s *Gom. quasup.*

t *Guaca* signifieth mourning

u *Acosl. quasup.*

In the beginning of Winter, at such time as the waters increased by the moysture of the weather, they were diligent in sacrificing to the Fountaynes, and Riuers which ranne by their Cities and Farmes. They did not sacrifice to the Fountaines and Springs of the Desarts. And euen to this day continueth this their respect to these Springs and Riuers. They haue a speciall care to the meeting of two Riuers, and there they wash themselues for their health, first anointing themselues with the flowre of Mayz, or some other things, adding thereto diuers Ceremonies, which they doe likewise in their Baths.

Their third kind of Sacrifices was the most vnkind and vnnaturall, namely, of Men. Wee haue shewed before of their Butcheries, at the Burials of their great Lord. Besides this, they vsed in Peru to sacrifice yong Children, from foure or sixe yeeres olde to ten: the greatest part of Sacrifices were for the affaires that did import the *Ingua*, as in sicknesse for his health, for victory in warre, at the Coronation or giuing him the *Royall Roll*. In this solemnitie they sacrificed two hundred Children. The manner of Sacrifice, was to drowne and bury them with certayne Ceremonies: sometimes they cut off their heads, anointing themselues with the bloud from one eare to another. They did likewise sacrifice Virgins, of such as were

brought

brought from their Monasteries. The common sort (as you haue heard) being like to dye, would sacrifice their owne Sonne to the Sun, or *Viracocha*, desiring him to be so content, and spare the Fathers life.

Xeres relateth that they sacrificed their Children, and with their bloud anointed their idols faces, and their Temple-doores, and sprinkled the same also on the Sepulchres of the dead; and that those which are sacrificed, goe thereunto voluntarily with Dances, Songs, and Mirth. *Xeres.*

When they sacrificed, they y obserued the heart, and other the inward parts for diuination, and if they saw a good signe (after their bad construction) z they danced and sung with great merriment; if a bad, they were very heauy, but, good or bad, they would bee sure to drinke deepe. They eate not their humane Sacrifices, but sometimes dryed them, and preserued them in Coffins of Siluer. y *Gomara.* z *Sansouin. & Selus, p. 5.*

It were an endlesse toyle, to reckon vp all the Superstitions of Peru, in which were so many Nations agreeing in disagreeing from truth, yet disagreeing in their diuersified errours. To let passe *Paucura*, which fat, Sacrifice, and eate their Captiues, and euery Tuesday offer two Indians to the Deuill: and the drunken Prouince of Carapa, where they eate little, and drinke much, at once drinking in, and pissing out; the Mitimaes which are early at their meate, and make but one drinking in the day (which lasts from morning till night) by *Bacchus* Priuiledge, enioying without controll any woman they like: The Canari put their Wiues to the drudgery abroad, whiles themselues spin, weaue, tricke vp themselues, and performe other womanish functions at home: The Galani make their Captiues drunke, and then the chiefe Priest cutteth off their heads, and sacrificeth them. Generally, in the Mountaines they were more cruell, but all obserued bloody, beastly, Diabolicall Ceremonies, the recounting whereof must needs weary the patientest Reader.

CHAP XII.

Of their Feasts, Sepulchres, and other Peruuian Superstitions.

§. I.

Of their Kalender and Holy-dayes.

BEfore we speake of the Peruuian Festiuall times, it is not amisse to take some more generall view of their Kalender. They a diuided their yeere into so many dayes iustas we doe, and into so many Moneths or Moones. To make the computation of their yeere certaine, they vsed this industrie: Vpon the Mountaynes about Cusco there were twelue Pillars set in order, and in such distance, as euery moneth one of these Pillars did note the rising and setting of the Sunne. They called them *Saccanga*; by meanes whereof, they taught and shewed the Feasts, and the Seasons fit to sowe, and reape, and for other things. They did certaine Sacrifices to these Pillars of the Sunne. Euery Moneth had his peculiar name and Feasts. They sometimes began the yeere in Ianuary: but since, an *Ingua* called *Pachacuto*, which signifieth a Reformer of the Temple, began their yeere in December, by reason, as it seemeth, of the Sunnes returne from *Capricorne*, their neerest Tropicke. I reade not of any weekes they obserued: for which they had not so certaine a rule, as the Sunnes course was for the yeere, and the Moones for the Moneth. a *Acost. l. 6. c. 3.*

They obserued in Peru two kinds of Feasts: some ordinary, which fel out in certain moneths of the yeere, and others extraordinary, which were for certaine causes of importance. Euery Moneth of the yeere they made Feasts and Sacrifices; and had this alike, the offering of a 100. Sheepe, but of vnlike colour and forme, according to the Moneth. In the first Moneth they made their first and principall Feast, therefore called *Capacraymi*, that is to say, a rich and principall Feast. In it they offered a great number of Sheepe and Lambes in Sacrifice, and burnt them with sweet wood: then they caused Gold and Siluer to bee brought vpon certaine Sheepe, setting vpon them three Images of the *Sunne*, and three of the *Thunder, the Father, the Sonne*, and *the Brother*. In these Feasts they dedicated the b *Inguas* Children, putting the *Guaras* or Ensignes vpon them, and they pierced their eares: then some old man did b Knights of Peru.

did whip them with Slings, and anoint their faces with bloud, in signe that they should be true Knights to the *Ingua*. No stranger might remayne in Cuico during this moneth, and this Feast, but at the end thereof they entred, and were made partakers of the Feasts and Sacrifices after this manner. The *Mamacomas* or Nunnes of the Sunne made little loaues of the flowre of Mays, dyed and mingled with the bloud of white Sheepe, which they did sacrifice that day: Then they commanded that all strangers should enter; who set themselues in a certaine order: and the Priests which were of a certaine Linage, descending from *Luqui Tupangui*, gaue to euery one a morsell of these small loaues, saying that they gaue it them to the end they should bee vnited and confederate with the *Ingua*: and that they aduised them not to speake or thinke any euill against the *Ingua*, but alwayes to beare him good affection: for that this piece should be a wirnesse of their intentions, and if they did not as they ought, would discouer them. They carried these small loaues in great Platters of Gold and Siluer, appointed for that purpose; and all did receiue and eate those pieces thanking the *Sunne* and the *Ingua*. This manner of *Communicating* they vsed likewise in the tenth moneth called *Coyarayme*, which was September, in the Feast called *Cytua*. They likewise sent of these loaues to all the Guacas of the Realme, whither the people assembled to receiue them: to whom they said, that the *Sunne* had sent them that, in signe that hee would haue them honour *Him*, and the *Caciques*. This continued from the time of *Ingua Tupangui*, whom we may call the Peruuian *Numa*, till the Spaniards substituted in place thereof their *Masse*, a masse of more monstrous absurdities (in their Transubstantion, Bread-worshipping, Godeating, which they can also vse to combine Subiects, not to their *Ingua* or lawfull Princes, but against them, as our Powder-traytors did) then the former, notwithstanding the faireſt pretexts of Christian and Catholike Titles.

Acost. l. 5. c. 23.

b A true resembling the Christians Communion in a Deuillish Apishnesse.

c *Corruptio optimi pessima.* Powder-traitors.

Vega pag. 2. lib. 8. c. 1. tels of the *Corpus Christi* Solemnities in Cuzco obserued by the Spaniards carrying in Procession sumptuous Herses with Images in them of Christ, our Lady, &c. attended by the Indians, their Caciques and Nobles honouring the Feast after their wonted Pagan Rites: *viz.* Some clothed with Lions skins, their heads enclosed in those of the beasts, because (they say) the Lion was beginner of their stocke; others with the wings of the great Bird *Condore* or *Cuntur* (as Angels are painted) from which they suppose themselues descended; Others with other deuises, painted with Riuers, Mountaynes, Lakes, Hills, Mountaynes, Caues, because their first Progenitors came forth of such. Others with strange deuises of apparell plated with Gold and Siluer, others with Garlands thereof, others in monstrous shapes with vizors with skinnes of diuers beasts with strange gestures, and fayning themselues Fooles, &c. One counterfeiting Riches another Pouertie: and euery Prouince with that which seemed to them the best inuention with greatest varietie they could imagine to giue content. Thus had they vsed to solemnize the Feasts of their Kings, and thus in my time, sayth *Vega*, they solennized the Feast of the most holy Sacrament, the true God our Redeemer and Lord, euery diuision of the Indians singing in their owne Languages and not the generall of the Court with Flutes and Musical Instruments, some hauing their wiues also to helpe them sing prayses, to God and the Spanish Priests and Seculars for their Conuersion: after they ascend seuen or eight steps to worship the Sacrament, each squadron diuision or company seuered from the rest ten or twelue pases, descending another way, each Nation according to their antiquitie, as they had beene conquered by the *Ingua*, the last first, and the *Ingua* themselues last of all. These went before the Priests in the least and poorest company, as hauing lost their Empire and Inheritance. These squadrons being gone, the Canaries succeeded in a squadron with their Herses, &c. The *Ingua* and they being ready to quarrell, and the Spanish Officers forced to quiet them, by reason the Canarie carried a head of an Indian which he had slaine in a Duell, in a battle betwixt the Spaniards and the Indians, which the *Iuga* said was not by his owne force but by the power of our Lord *Pachacamac* here present, and the Spaniards blessing, &c. The Iustice was faine to take away the head from the Canaries, the other crying *Auca, Auca*, against them. The Couent of Saint *Domingo* in Cuzco, was sometimes the Temple of the Sunne: of a Procession from thence on Saint *Markes* day with a tame Bull. See *cap. 2. seq.* which tooke vp an excommunicate person, and cast him forth of the Church, &c. 1556. The Indians called the Sacrament *Pachacamac*.

But to returne to our *Capacrayme*, it is strange, that the Deuill had not only brought in an Apishmiration of Christian Sacrments, but of the Trinitie also in their Pagan Rites. For the *Father*, *Sonne*, and *Brother*, called *Apompti Churunti*, and *Intiquacqui*, that is, *Father Sunne*, *Sunne Sunne*, *Brother Sunne*, had some shew of that great Mystery. In like manner they named the three Images of the *Chuquilla*, or God of the Aire, where are thunders, raines and Snowes. They had one Guaca, where they worshipped an Idol called *Tangatanga*, which they said, was One in Three, and Three in One. Thus doth the Deuill despite the truth, which

which he would seeme to imitate. In the second moneth, called *Camoy*, besides the Sacrifices which they made, they cast the ashes into the Riuer, following fiue or six leagues after, praying it carrie them into the Sea, for that the *Viracocha* should there receiue this present.

In the third, fourth, and fifth moneth, they offered a hundred Sheepe, black, speckled, and gray, with many other things. In the sixt moneth they offered a hundred Sheepe more, of all colours: and then made a Feast; bringing Mayz from the fields into the house, which they yet vse. This Feast is made, comming from the Farme to the House, saying certaine Songs, and praying that the Mayz may long continue. They put a quantitie of the Mayz (the best that groweth in their Farmes) in a thing which they call *Pirua*, with certaine Ceremonies, 10 watching three nights. Then doe they put it in the richest garment they haue, and being thus wrapped and dressed, they worship this *Pirua*, holding it in great veneration, and saying, It is the Mother of the Mayz of their Inheritances, and that by this meanes the Mayz augments, and is preserued. In this month they make a particular Sacrifice, and the Witches demand of this *Pirua*, if it hath strength enough to continue vntill the next yeere. And if it answeres no, then they carrie this Maiz to the Farme whence it was taken, to burne, and make another *Pirua* as before: and this foolish vanitie still continueth. In the seuenth moneth they made the Feast *Intiraymi*, and sacrificed an hundred Guanacos in honour of the *Sunne*: they made many Images of Quinua-wood carued, all attired with rich garments, they danced, and cast flowres in the high-wayes, and thither came the Indians painted and singing. 20 In the eighth moneth they burned an hundred Sheepe, all gray of the colour of *Viscacha*, with the former Solemnities. In *Capagnia* their ninth month, they burnt a hundred Sheepe of Chestnut colour; and likewise a thousand Cuyes (a kind of Rabbet) to the end the Frost, Ayre, Water, and Sunne, should not hurt their Farmes. In the tenth moneth called *Coyarami*, they burnt a hundred white Sheepe that had fireces; and then they made the Feast *Situa* in this manner: They assembled together the first day of the Moone before the rising thereof, carrying Torches in their hands: and when they saw it, they cryed aloud, saying, [d] *Let all harme goe away*, striking one another with their Torches: which being done, they went to the common Bath, to the Riuers and Fountaynes, and eurry one to his owne Bath, setting themselues to drinke foure dayes together. In this moneth also the *Mamacoma* made their 30 Loaues (as is said) of communicating with the *Sunne*, and the *Inqua*. The Bathes, Drunkennesse and some reliques of this Feast *Situa* remayne still, with the Ceremonies a little different, but very secretly. In the eleuenth moneth they offered also three hundred Sheepe. And if they wanted water, to procure raine, they set a black Shrrpe tyed in the midst of a Plaine, powring much Chica about it, and giuing it nothing to eat till it rayned. This [e] Chica is a drinke or wine made of Mayz, steeped and boyled, and will sooner make one drunke then Wine of Grapes: they haue another way to make it, by champing the Maiz, which they hold then best, when it is done (after the beastliest manner) by olde withered women. This drunken people will spend whole dayes and nights in drinking it, and it is therefore forbidden by the Law. But what Law can preuaile against the Deuill and the Drunkard? 40 We need not goe to Peru to proue this.

d They which did this, were called *Pancacos*.

e *Acost. l. 4. c. 36.* Chica, what it is.

The twelfth and last moneth they sacrificed a hundred Sheepe, and solemnized the Feast called *Raymacantar Rayquis*. In this moneth they prepared what was necessary for the children that should be made Nouices: the moneth following the old men made a certaine shew, together with the children, in rounds and turnings, which they commonly doe, when it raineth too much, or too little, and in the time of Plague.

Among the extraordinary Feasts (which were many) the most famous was that which they call *Ytu*. This had no time prefixed, but by Necessitie or Distresse. And then the people prepared themselues thereto, by fasting two dayes; during which, they did neyther company with their wiues, nor eat any meate with Salt or Garlicke, nor drinke any Chica. All did 50 assemble together in one place, where no Stranger, nor any beast might be admitted; they had Garments and Ornaments which serued onely for this Feast. They marched very quietly [f] in Procession, their heads couered with their veiles, sounding of Drummes, without speaking one to another. This continued a day and a night: The day following, they danced and made good cheere for two dayes and two nights together, saying, that their Prayer was accepted. Euen still they vsed one which is somewhat like this, called *Ayma*, with Garments onely seruing to that end, and make Procession with their Dummes, having fasted before, concluding with good cheere. And although the Indians forbear Sacrifices because of the Spaniards, yet they vse many Ceremonies still, which had their beginning from their ancient Superstitions.

Feasts extraordinary.

f Processions.

60

§. II.

Of the Funerals in Peru, and the places adioyning; and somewhat of the present estate of those parts.

g *Acost. l. 5. c. 7.* h Funerals.

HE Indians g of Peru beleeued commonly, that the Soule liued after this life, and that the good were in glory, and the bad in paine. They vsed a wonderfull care h to preserue the bodies, which they honoured after death: their Successors gaue them garments, and made Sacrifices to them, especially of the Inguas, of whom wee haue spoken before. In their bloudie Funerals the Women he loued best were slaine, and multitudes of other Attendants of all sorts for his new Family in the other World, and that, after many Songs and drunkennesse. They sacrificed to them many things, especially young children, and with the bloud they made a stroke on the dead mans face, from one eare to another. This cruelti e is common through a great part of the East and West Indies, as in these places this History doth shew you: wittily auoyded once by a i Portugall, who was a Captiue, and to be slaine at the Funerals of his Lord, and hauing but one eye, saw better to saue his life then if hee had both. For he told them, that such a deformed and maymed fellow would be a disgrace to his Master in the other life, and so persuaded the Executors, or Executioners (if you will) to seeke a new choice. The Indians haue another Ceremony more generall, which is, to set meate and drinke vpon the graue of the dead, imagining they did feed thereon. At this day, many Indian Infidels doe secretly draw their dead out of the Churchyard, and bury them on Hils, or vpon passages of Mountaynes, or else in their owne houses. They haue also vsed to put Gold and Siluer in their mouth, hands, and bosome, and to apparell them with new garments, durable, and well lined. They beleeue, that the soules of the dead wander vp and downe, enduring cold, thirst, hunger, and trauell: and for this cause they vse their Anniuersaries, carrying them clothes, meate, and drinke.

i Wittie escape

k *Cieza, p. 1. c. 62.*

Pedro de Cieza k reporteth, that in Cenu in the Prouince of Cartagena (which we here mention for proximitie of Rites, rather then of place) neere to a Temple built in honour of the Deuill, there was taken forth an innumerable quantitie of Sepulchres, more then a Million of them, old and new. Himselfe was there present. Much treasure was found in the Graues. *Iuan de la Torre* tooke forth of one Sepulchre l more then fiue hundred thousand Pezoes. The Great Men adorned their Sepulchres with Vaults and Towres, and had with them interred their Women, Seruants, Meate, Chicha, Armes and Ornaments. He addeth, that the Deuill (in the shape of some principall person deceased) would sometimes appeare, and shew them newes out of that other World, how he liued and fared there. And hence (it seemes) came that spoyle of so much wealth, and so many persons for their Funerals. But take heed (Reader) that you doe not beleeue it was the Deuill that was wont to appeare in some habit of afflicted soules, and demanded Dirges and Masses for their manumission out of Purgatory! Alas, the Deuill was confined to the Indies, and would neuer haue beene so good a Purueyor for the Popes Kitchin. And certes, if our Christian Ancesters had not their wiues and goods buried in their graues, with Food, Rayment, and Ornaments: yet these things were also buried with them, whiles the feares of Purgatory made them willing to endow the Priests and Monasteries, and bestow on Lights and other Rites, that which should haue maintayned their Houses, their Wiues, and Children. But how come we from Peru to Rome? Nay, how comes Rome, if not from Peru, as more lately discouered, yet with Peru, and with, and from, other Heathen Nations in the World, in her manifold Ceremonies and Superstitious Rites? as this Relation of Peru, for their Confessions, Processions, and many other Rites will shew: And one day I hope more fully to acquaint the World, when wee come in our Pilgrimage to visit Christian-Antichristian Rome. Worse Sepulchres then the former (to returne to our *American* Historie) were those which *Herera* mentions within fifty leagues of Popayan, where the Husband hath bin seene to eate the Wife; Father and Son, Brother and Sister haue renewed aneerer proximitie and butcherly incorporation: where Captiues are fatted and brought forth with Songs; his members by piece-meale cut off and eaten, whiles himselfe liueth and feeth it. Since, the inhabiting of Saint *Iames* of Arma, they haue eaten more then eight thousand Indians and some Spaniards.

l Rich Sepulchres.

Purgatorie.

This our Author testifieth (let vs a little view the present state of Peru) that *Los Reyes* in twelue degrees consisteth of three thousand households: it is one of the best Climates in the World, not subiect to plagues, hunger, raine, thunder, but alwayes cleere. It is the Seat of the Viceroy and Royall Councell and Inquisition. *John Ellis*, which was partaker of Sir *Richard Hawkins* his Aduentures, saith, that *Lima* is neere as big as London within the Wals: the Houses are of Lome: there are nigh an hundred thousand Negres: it raineth not there, but

it

it doth within twelue leagues. There are maintayned a hundred [m] Horsemen, and an hundred Carbines. At Paricauo it is as cold as in England, in Winter. They passed to Cusco in those wayes before mentioned, made by *Guainacapa*. Cusco is now without a Wall, as large as Bristoll. At Potossi there worke neere an hundred thousand Indians, brought in courses thither to the Mynes by the *Casiques*. Betweene Cusco and Potossi is continuall Trade; the Lords by the way will entertaine men with abundance of Plate, and Guard (if they like) them with three or foure hundred Indians. Imperiall Village of Potosi is in nineteene degrees, it hath fiue hundred housholds of Spaniards, and about fifty thousand Indians going and comming. *Alexandro Vrsino*, who sayth he lued in Peru thirty and foure yeeres, and had
10 trauelled thorow all the Kingdome, hath written, that in Potosi and Porto are three hundred Mynes of Spaniards, and fiue thousand of Indians; and that the Kings part there is two Millions of Siluer; in Chili one, and one and a halfe of Gold; all the Gold and Siluer which yeerely comes to Lima is twelue Millions. This Lima is the same [n] with *Los Reyes* before mentioned, and is an Archiepiscopall Sea; and hath vnder it the Bishops of *Quito, Cusco, Guamanga, Arequipa, Pax. Plata, Trugillo, Guanuco, Chachapoia, Portas Veius, Guaiaquil, Popaian, Carchi*, Saint *Michael*, and Saint *Francis*.

m 1000. Duckets a yeere a piece.

Al Vrsino.

n *Ortel. Theat.*

20

§. III.

Obseruations of American Rites out of IERONYMO ROMAN.

Eronymo Roman a Spanish Fryer, hath written somewhat largely of the Indian Ceremonies, in his second Tome of the Common-wealths of the World; especially of New Spaine and Peru: but therein and in other his Relations differs from other, perhaps more vnderstanding Writers. From Florida to Panama, hee affirmes, there was little Religion or Politie; that they acknowledged One True God Immortall and inuisible, reigning in Heauen, whom they called *Toeahuuaquamaroceti*: which,
30 they said, had a Mother named *Atabex*, and a Brother called *Guaca*. He tels of their Images, that an Indian, going through a Wood, saw the tree shake, which striking him in feare, hee approched to that which made most noyse, and asked what hee would haue, and who hee was. The tree (the Deuill, or the Lyer) made answere, That hee should first goe call a *Bohique* or Priest; which comming to the tree demanded, Why hee was sent for; and was by the tree instructed how to make thereof an Image and Temple, and ordayned Sacrifices and Ceremonies; which by cutting of that tree was presently effected, and the Dedication yeerely solemnized. The truth of the History I know not; of the Mystery is plaine, that *they which make them, are like vnto them*; and such Blocks may best be taught of Blocks their blockish Deuotions.

De la Repub. de las indias Occident. l. 1. c. 2. He hath written 3. whole Bookes of American Rites and customes.

40 In New Spaine the Sunne (he sayth) was their chiefe God, and they erected to him the most sumptuous Temples in the World; besides other artificial Deities innumerable, in matter and forme infinitely diuersified like Birds, Beasts, Serpents (one kind like the Picture of *Eue* with the Serpent) like the Grecian *Bacchus*, like their mitred Bishops, like Frogs, or other naturall or imaginary formes. Any thing which could eyther hurt or benefit them, they obserued as Gods. In Mexico they had (hee sayth) diuers degrees of their Priests; the first of the High Bishop or *Pope*, in the Mexican Language called *Ilchuatecotl*, in the Totona tongue *Papa* (as also we haue before obserued) the second was as a Bishop, and had other inferiour Priests subordinate. When the Spaniards erected their Deuotions in Mexico; they did not pray for the *Papa* (lest they might be interpreted of this Ethnike Pope) but called him the
50 High Bishop. Their Bishop they called *Hupixe*, which signifies the Great Minister of God; Their Priests *Tetny Pixque* that is, Gods Officers. Other Functions bare name of their particular Offices, Treasurer, Vestry-keeper and the rest. Some Prouinces in New Spaine had sixe Priests, which were as it were Patriarkes or Archbishops, all vnder the Pope aforesaid: all addicted to Abstinence and Chastitie, not drinking strong drinke, and casting their eyes to the ground if they saw a woman; professing much grauitie and mortification; esteemed as Saints, and of great authoritie and sway in the State.

Degrees of Priests. In Cholola was a Metropolis which had as many Temples as were dayes in the yeere: One the most famous (he saith) in the World, the foot or foundation of the Spire containing a Crosse-bow shoote in breadth and much more in height, the Spire itselfe being a league or a Lie, in height, &c.

The eldest Sonnes of Lords succeeded in their temporall estates, the second was made a Priest; and the Pope was Sonne to the King or some chiefe Lord in the Countrey: after whose death the most Ancient succeeded, being solemnely anoynted by the Priests, with an
60 Oyntment mixed with the bloud of circumcised Infants.

The Temples were all called *Tebuilamacax*, a word compounded of *Tebu*, which signifies God and *Tlamacax*, a House or Mansion. Many inferiour Offices in the Temple were execu-

ted by Citizens or honourable persons, and others which liued neere the Temple, vnder a speciall Master of Ceremonies called *Tespuchilato*. Many other things he writes of the Religion of New Spaine, partly agreeing with our former Relations, partly diuers, or contrarie. The like also of Peru: where the chiefe Priest (he sayth) was stiled *Vilaoma*: the Temples were most magnificent, which they erected on high grounds or Hil tops, making foure round Mounts of earth, higher each and lesser then the former; in the middest building the Temple in foure squares like Cloysters of Monasteries, within which were Altars, and in the most eminent place the rich and pompous Image of the Sunne. Their Temples had two doores, to which they ascended by thirty steps. They were rich on the inner side, being for the most part Gold, Siluer, or other rich Metals. On the Easterne part was an Oratorie or Chancell against the Sun-rising, ascended by six steps with a thicke wall, and a hollow part therein, which contayned the Image of the Sunne with rayes of Gold (as we paint it) by reflexion of the Sun-beames yeelding a Sun-like lustre. Of all their Temples those of Pachicama and Cusco were most famous: to which were Pilgrimages from the Prouinces (as to Saint *Iames*, our *Lady*, and other famous Holies in Christendome) three hundred leagues distant. If I should follow this Fryer in his large Obseruations of the American Rites, I might soone out-goe your patience, and somewhere perhaps the Truth: contenting my selfe therefore with that before obsetued out of the most indicious Authors (if your Author bee iudicious) I remit those that would further know his Relations to himselfe; hauing chosen a little, and that here by it selfe inserted.

And thus we take our leaue of this Continent, and must into the adioyning Sea, to obserue matters of principall note we shall there find.

CHAP XIII.

Of the Seas and Ilands adioyning to America.

§. I.

Of the Ladrones, Margarita, and Cubagua, and the Seas betwixt them.

AND now I must obey the Spaniards Law, which will admit no strangers trafficke in Peru, and are iealous of any Corriuall, which shall hold longer and more familiar Discourse with America, although they haue rather forced her to their lusts, then wooed her to their loues. I also beginne to grow wearie of this trauell in another *World*, willing to looke homeward; and therefore am now embarqued on the Peruuian Coast, where the *Peaceable Sea* may free me of those former dangers whereto my Pilgrimage was subiect in passing along snowie and fierie Hils; deceitfull, vnwholsome Bogs; scorching sandy Plaines; Wildernesses inhabited with wild beasts; Habitations peopled with wilder and more beastly Men; and now by this commoditie of my Paper-barke, I may both direct my course homewards, and yet walke, as intending another contrary, or diuers Voyage. And euen as those Heauenly Planets [c] in their *Wandering* and yet most constant course, are guided by the generall *motion* of that Vniuersall Wheele, and yet forget not their owne peculiar: so I, in my wandering Discoueries propound all and euery place of the World, to be the place of my Exercise, and subiect of my labour, but yet the *smoke of Ithaca* [d] is sweetest, and my knowing all, would bee but a melancholy Maze, if I should not come home to fill Englishe eares with the newes. The Reader also, by this time wearied, will be glad to heare of an end.

In this Sea we may see many Ilands which Nature hath seemed to set, as Centinels along the Coast, to hold their watch, as Skowts to espie, and as Garrisons to defend their Soueraigne, Earth, lest the Ocean (by secret vndermining, or by violent and tempestuous force) should be too busie an encrocher.

The Earth also on this [e] side, finding her selfe more strongly assayled then on the other, hath summoned them all home to her borders, and placed them for her better defence in stations neere her, not suffering them to stay abroad, as in other Seas is vsuall: so that there are almost no Ilands in this widest of Seas, the Peaceable, but neere the mayne. If there bee any, they are obscure, small, and not worthy our Relation: as for those of *Salomon* and *New Guinea*,

a *Ben. l. 3. c. 22.*

b To Leigh & London too. *Siluest. in Du Barta.*

c *Planets* signifies a *Wanderer*.

d Ithaca was the place wher *Vlysses* dwelt which (after many yeeres trauell) he so much desired to see.

e The Tides are stronger on the South Sea, then on the North and higher by many degrees. *Pet. Mart. Dec. 3 lib. 2.*

Guinea, with their Neighbours, they are reckoned to [f] another Continent, if they bee not continent themselues; and for the *Arcipelago* of Saint *Lazaro*, these Ilands may be reckoned vnruly Borderers, which, while it is vncertaine whether they should acknowledge the Soueraigntie of Asia, *Terra Australis*, or America, are loyall to none; and therefore, where they are best knowne, are knowne by the name of [g] *Theeues*; a name fitting their nature and disposition. Thus did *Magellane* [h] find them, from whom (besides other things) they stole his Boat, which by force he was forced to recouer. Such did our Counrrimen [i] in Master *Candishes* renowmed Voyage find them, who saw also their Images of Wood in the head of their Boats, like the Images of the Deuill; Temple, and Saint, best firring their deuotions: and such did [k] *Oliuer Noort* find them, who came crying about him, *Iron, Iron*, offering him, Pruits in exchange for pieces of Iron; and if any opportunitie offered it selfe, stealing closely, or openly, any thing they could lay hold on. They shot at them in vaine, so actiue were they in diuing vnder the water, and continuing there, as if they had beene fitted alike to both Elements. The women also, no lesse then the men. They are a beastly people, polluting themselues in promiscuous lusts, and branded (many of them) with the markes of their intemperance; the Pockes hauing eaten their noses and lips. They are browne, fat, long of stature: the men go naked; the women weare a leafe before them, so that they beare some resemblance to the Pictures of *Adam* and *Eue*. Their Boats are twentie foot long, and but a foot and halfe broad, cunningly wrought. They are extremely greedie of Iron, of which metall the Hollanders cast fiue pieces into the Sea, to try them, and one of them fetcht them all out. But lest these *Theeues* rob vs of our intended Deuotions, and our Reader of patience in longer stay heere, wee will looke backe towards the Straits, and so compasse the other side of America. Many Ilands wee may see heereto-ere the shore, all along as wee passe. But what should wee trouble the Reader with names? I haue small deuotion to them, vnlesse I had some intelligence of some Deuotion in them, further then that wherein they agree with the Peruuian Rites, wherewith you were last tired.

f *Terra Australis.*

g The Ladrones or Ilands of Theeues.

h *A Pigafetta. Pet. Martir. Dec. 5. lib 6.*

i *Nauig Thom. Cand sub ap Hak.*

k *Nauig Oli.N. in additament. 9. p. Americ.*

In the Straits are some Ilands of small quantitie, of smaller dignitie: and who would stay there, where the Pengwins (are your best Hosts? the rest are Giants or Man-eating Sauages: and in the next out of the Straits, but Seales, who all can yeeld but an inhospitall hospitalitie. Neyther hath prouident Nature in all those Coasts of Chica, or Brasill, beene prodigall of her Land store, forw-seeing that they would, eyther bee vsurped by Seales and Sea Monsters, or other more vnnaturall and monstrous inhumane shape, of Deuillish inhumanitie, from the Land. It seemes she hath beene the more sparing in the numbers, nobleneffe, or quantitie of Ilands, in all those Seas, which wee haue most swiftly furrowed, that shee might in the great Bay more bountifully impart her plentie, and shew her excellence in that kind. This is a great field, as it were, sowne with Ilands of all sorts; the Earth seemes a louing Mother, which holds open her spacious lap, and holds our her stretched armes betweene Paria and Florida: the Ocean also, as iealous of the Earths more natural Inheritance and claime vnto them, seemes to neglect his course to the Southward, and heere sets in with a violent current, alway forcing his watery forces to walke (or rather to runne and flie) these rounds, to see that the Continent keepe her hand off, and not once touch his conquered possessions; that though (like *Tantalus*) she seemeth alwayes to bee closing her open hands and mouth vpon them; yet are they kept by this officious watchfulnesse of the Sea, that shee can neuer incorporate and vnite them to her selfe. Easily can they vnfold this Mystery, that are acquainted with the scite of the Earth, [m] and the swiftnesse of the current in this vast space of Earth and Sea, setting in at Paria, and after out againe at Florida, with admirable and incredible violence.

l Cerasine Fowles which breed on the Ilands.

m *Pet. Martir. Dec. 3. l. 6.*

To begin then at Paria: (for of Orenoque and his mouth full of Ilands, and of *Trinidad*, that hath escaped the Riuer, and betaken her selfe wholly to *Neptunes* Loues, we haue already spoken.) Heere two rowes and rankes of Ilands make shew and muster of themselues: the one extending East and West, the other North and South. Of the former is Margarita, which (like many a Gallant, whose back robbeth his belly, whose bowels emptie of necessaries, alway are croking and complaining of superfluine in ornament and fashion) so hath shee a [n] *World* of Pearles to adorne her, but wanteth water to satisfie her thirst: store of Pearles shee can communicate of her plentie; water shee is faine to borrow of her Neighbours.

n *Mundus muliebris.*

The like we may say of Cubagua, her next Neighbour, that by her store of Pearles, hath wonne Suiters from our, and the American World, whom she can neyther bid eate or drinke of her Land-hospitalitie, where Grasse and Water are wanting. But as it vsually comes to passe with these Fashion-mongers, which neglecting necessaries, must at last be neglected of their ornaments too: So this Iland, which sometimes was so rich, notwithstanding all her

Pearles

o *Ro tero del Iaio, l.3.*

Pearles shepawned for her dyet (in so much that the Kings o fift amounted ordinarily to fifteene thousand Duckets a yeere) yet now seemes almost beggered, her Pearle-fishes, and Pearle-fishers, most of them gone; and now it is time for vs to be gone from her too.

p Description of the Indi s.

Yet let vs heare this Relation of *Herera* p before we goe, of an Earth-quake which happened there the first of September 1530. which rayse d the Sea foure fathome, ouerthrew the Fortresse, opened the Earth in many places, whence issued much Salt-water, as blacke as Inke, stinking of Brimstone. The Mountayne of Cariaco remayned open. Many died of feare, and some were drowned. Captaine *William Parker Anno* 1601. hauing taken *Puerto Bello*, and *Melondes* the Gouernour, landed in *Margarita*, and receiued fiue hundred pound in Pearle, for ransome of Prisoners: tooke a ship which came from Angola with three hundred and seuentie Negros. *Oviedo* hath written in his nineteenth Booke of the Iland of *Cubagua*. It hath no trees, and but little grasse. There is a Fountaine on the East part thereof, neere the Sea, which casteth forth a bituminous substance like Oyle, which is said to be profitable for medicine, and may be found two or three leagues floting in the Sea.

§. II.

Of the Caniball Ilands; the Whale, Thresher, Sword-fish, Sharke, and other fishes, and Obseruations of those Seas.

LIttle businesse can we find any further, in sollowing that Westerne ranke, Orchilia, Oruba, and the rest, and therefore will looke Northwards, to that other ranke we spake of: where leauing Tobago on the right hand, wee see before vs *Granata*, Saint *Vincent*, Saint *Lucia*, *Dominica*; and then circling to the Northwest *Desiderata*, Saint *Christopher*, *Holy Crosse*, and others, whose names, without other matter of Historie, would be but tedious to the Reader. These, and a multitude of others vnmentioned, q are called the Ilands of the *Caribes*, or Canibals. The Inhabitants q eate mans flesh, and passe to other Ilands with their Boats to the hunting of Men, as other Hunters doe for Beasts. *Carib* signifieth Stranger, for so the more innocent Indians esteeme them.

q *Pet. Mart. Dec.8.l.6.*

At home they onely couer their priuities, but in time of Warre they vse many ornaments. They are nimble, beardlesse (vsing little Pincers to pull out the haires) shoote poysoned Arrowes, bore holes in their eares and nostrils for elegancie, which the richer sort decke with Gold, the poorer with Shels. From the tenth or twelfth yeere of theirage they carrie leaues, to the quantitie of Nuts, all the day in eyther cheeke, which they take not out, but when they receiue meate or drinke. With that Medicine they make their teeth blacke: they call other men, *Women*, for their white teeth, and *Beasts* for their haire. Their teeth continue to the end of their liues without ache or rottennesse.

When the men went on man-hunting (which they did sometimes in long and farre Expedions) the women manfully defended the Coast against their Enemies: and hence it is in *Martyrs* r iudgement, that the Spaniards tell of Ilands inhabited only with women: which may be s the true interpretation, happily, of I know not how many places in America, besides those of Asia and Africa, reported Amazonian. *Pontius* t would warre vpon the Canibals, but on the Iland of Guadalupea, his women were taken, his men slaine, himselfe forced to depart from that, both place and enterprise. *Columbus* in his second Voyage landed on this Iland, where he saw their round houses, hanging beds of Cotton, and certaine Images which he had thought had beene their Gods: but by Interpreters after learned, that they were but for ornament, and that they worshipped nothing but the Sunne and Moone, although they make certaine Images of Cotton, to the similitudes of such phantasies as (they sayd) appeared to them in the night. They found Earthen Vessels, like ours, also in their Kitchins, Mans flesh, Duckes flesh, and Goose flesh, all in one pot, and other on the Spits, readie to be laid to the fire. Entring into their inner Lodgings, they found Faggots of the bones of mens armes and legges, which they reserue to make heads for their Arrowes. They found in their Villages one Hall, or Palace, to which they assemble, as to their Theatre, or Playing place.

r *Pet. Mart. Dec.3.l.9.*

s *Palephatus fab.1.* saith the Amazones were Thracian men, close shaueu, in long garments, and therefore called women: but denieth, that there was euer any such Amazonian Expedition, as Histories speake of.

t *Pet. Mart. Dec.1.l.2. Oviedo hist.l.3*

The Inhabitants at the sight of the Spaniards were fled. In their houses they found about thirtie children Captiues, which were reserued to bee eaten, but they tooke them for their Interpreters. Here they had Parrots bigger then Phesants, with backes, brests, and bellies of Purple colour. They vsed to prey on *Hispaniola*, and Saint *Iohns* Ilands, or *Buriquen*: and if theie, in their warres with the Canibals, tooke any of them, they were sure to goe to pot (eu n in the first sense) and to be eaten. Master *Percy* saith in *Guadalupa* they found a Bath so hot, that it boyled them piece of Porke in halfe an houre. In *Menis* also they found a Bath like

like ours in England. In *Mona* they killed two wilde Boares, and saw a wilde Bull, which was an ell betweene the hornes. Three leagues from thence is *Monetta*, where the Fowles flew ouer them as thicke as haile, and made them deafe with their noyse: they cannot ter foot on the ground, but shall tread on Fowles or Egges, wherewith they laded two Boates in three houres. Master *Chalenge* saith, that in the Iseuen *Antiles* of Saint *Vincent*, *Granado*, *Lucia*, *Matalina*, *Dominica*, *Guadalupa*, and *Afsey*, are nor aboue one thousand Indians. They brought away a Frier, named *Blasem*, which had beene sixteene monethes Slaue in *Dominica*, whom they saued, his fellowes being slaine, because hee taught them to make Sayles. M. *Hakluyt.*

10 A little before Master *Hawkins* was there, in the yeere 1564. [u] a Spanish Carauell comming to water at *Dominica*, one of the Camball Ilands, the Sauages cut her cable in the night, and so stse draue on shore, and all her company was surprised and eaten by them.

u *Non.* M. *Iohn Hawkins ap. Hak. tom.* 3.

Master *George Peercie* relateth of the Dominicans (which they visited in their Virginia Voyage) that they painr themselues to keepe off the *Muskitos*: that they weare the haire of their heads a yard long, plaited in three plaits, suffer none on their faces, cut their skinns in diuers Workes or Embroderies: they eate their Enemies; lap spittle spit into their mouthes like Dogges; worship the Deuill; poyson their Arrowes. When they were heere, they had sight of the chiefe game which Nature yeelderh, the fight of the Whale with the Sword-fish and Thresher, which killed him in two houres fight. The Sword-fish is not [x] great, but 20 strong-made: his Sword groweth vpright out of his neck, like a bone, foure or fiue inches broad, and aboue a yard long (sometimes they are greater) with prickles on both sides. The Thresher hath a broad and thicke tayle. Both these hold a naturall conspiracie against this Giant of Nature, the one on the top [y] of the water threshing him vpon the head with violent blowes, that sound as a peece of Ordnance, and may be heard two leagues; forcing him to hide his head in his Mothers lap, which yet betrayeth him there to the Sword-fish, who is readie to receiue him on his Naturall Blade, and stayneth the Sea with his bloud. The Whale hath no remedie, but with bellowing grones, heard further then the Threshers blowes, to seeke to the shore, and there embayed to make his part good without danger of an Vnderminer: otherwise becomming prey to these his Aduersaries. Thus we see Greatnesse not 30 alway exempt from dangers, yea perishing by fine force of weaker Enemies. This our Author (for we cannot passe from Iland to Iland but by Sea, and may not be wholly idle by the way) telleth, that betwixt the Tropikes, they were attended continually with three kinds of Fishes, Dolphins, Bonitos, and Sharkes; the first like to the Rain-bow, his head differing from other fishes, being half a span straight vp erected from his mouth, the greatest foure foot long: a scole of these followed them neere one thousand leagues, knowne to bee the same, by some hurts wherewith they had marked them.

x S. *R. Hawkins.*

y The like Sea-hawking is betweene the flying fish (which hath as in were Bats wings) & the Bird Alcatraz, and the Bonito, the one in the Aire, the other in the Sea, pursuing him.

The Bonitos are like Mackrils, but greater, some as bigge as a man could lift. The Sharkes haue their mouthes vnder their bellies, that they cannot bite their prey without a half turne, and the helpe of his tayle. These are the most rauenous, and some hold, ominous: they 40 haue found in their bellies, Hats, Caps, Shooes, Ropes ends, and whatsoeuer hanged by the Ships sides: they haue thirteene rowes of teeth: They spawne not, but whelpe, like the Dogge, or Wolfe, and at night or towards stormes, receiue their young into their mouthes for safetie. I haue seene them (sayth Sir *Richard*) go in and out, being aboue a foot and half a long. Little fishes alway accompany them, and feed on the scraps: they are lesse then a Pilchard, streaked blacke and white (as in coloured Liueries) keeping on the head, fins, and backe of the other.

Another obseruation of this our Author, is the Scurue or Scorbute, [a] whereunto they are much subiect in Nauigations neere the Line; the cause he ascribeth, the weaknesse of the stomacke in immoderate heates, salt meates, specially fish, Calmes and the Sea-water, which 50 could not but infect the World, if it were not otherwise affected and moued with Windes, Tides, and Currents: an instance whereof he sheweth in the Queenes Naui, in the yeere of our Lord 1590. at the *Azores* many moneths becalmed, the Sea thereby being replenished with feuerall sorts of Gellies and formes of Serpents, Adders, and Snakes, Greene Yellow, Blacke, White, and some partie-coloured, whereof many had life, being a yard and halfe, or two yards long. And they could hardly draw a Bucket of water, cleere of some corruption without. In twentie yeeres, wherein he vsed the Sea, hee could giue account of two thousand consumed with this disease.

a Oranges, *Limons*, and the like are excellent remedies to this disease.

In this Voyage, they were forced for want of fresh Water, to distill Sea-water, which they found wholsome and nourishing. I might follow our Author in his Obseruations of 62 these Seas (which he sayth, vnder the Line, is best to crosse in Ianuary, February, and March) and of the Ilands of Cape Verde [b] (elsewhere by vs obserued) being in the height of these Ilands, where now we are discouering: which he sayth, are the most vnwholsome in the World,

b The flames of Fuego, hee saith, are seene twenty leagues in the Night.

World, and had halfe his people on this Coast sicke of shaking, burning, frenzie-feuers: a man can scarcely goe on the Earth, though well shod, when the Sun shineth: and the Breeze, which in the afternoone cooles them from the North-east, pierceth them also with sudden cold; so that the Inhabitants goe thicke clothed with Caps and Kerchers, besides their Hats, their Suites of thicke cloth, and Gownes well lined or furred to preuent danger. Sleeping in the open Ayre, or in the Moone-shine, is there very vnwholsome: The Moone shining on his shoulder on the Coast of Guinee, left him with such paine, that for twentie houres space he was like to run mad. But what Moone-shine hath made mee lunatike, to run from these American Ilands, to those, and the Coast of Africa? Patience, Reader, and I will bring thee backe in a fresher pursuit. 10

In Dominica (where we were left on shore) it is related by one which wrote the Earle of Cumberland his Voyage to Port Rico, that they haue their seuerall Houses to other vses priuate, but haue a common Hall or Dyet for to eate in together, as *Lycurgus* instituted to preuent Riot, amongst his Spartans. The Maydes in this Iland are said to weare no Garters, and the first night of their Marriage they tye them so hard, that the flesh hangs ouer. In Tortuga they tolled certaine Spaniards ashoare, vnder pretence of Trafique, and then ate them.

§. III. 20

Of Boriquen, Iamaica, Cuba, and the Lucayæ.

c *Botero, vol. 2.*

BOriquen [c] or Saint *Iohns* is three hundred miles long, and seuenty broad, trauersed with a rough Mountayne, which yeelds many Riuers. The Spaniards haue there some Townes. The Earle of Cumberland in the yeere 1597. hauing by his Sea forces stayed the going of fiue Carikes to the Indies, whereby the King of Spaiae lost three Millions, and the Merchants foure times as much; sayled to Saint *John Port Rico* in this Iland, and tooke it with diuers Forts; here was a Bishops See [d] and Cathedrall Church with a Fryery, foure hundred Souldiers in pay, besides three hundred others: it was accounted the Mayden Towne and inuincible, and is the Spanish Key and their first Towne in the Indies. He brought from thence neere fourescore cast Peeces, and much other wealth. This Iland was first conquered by *John Ponce* and by him inhabited: the Naturals were altogether like in Religion and manners to the Inhabitants of Hispaniola; and so were the Plants and Fruits also. *Oviedo* hath written hereof largely in his sixteenth Booke. There growes the Tree called *Legno Santo*, more excellent then Guaiacan for the Neapolitan and many other diseases: there is also white Gumme good for Ships in stead of Pitch, and there are Bats, which the Inhabitants did eate. These Ilands are not so well peopled as in former times: and many of them are retyring places of Rebels and Fugitiues, which take this shelter against the Spanish cruelties. *Hispaniola* is the next Iland of name, but shall haue a place by it selfe, as a Map and Summarie of all the other. 30 40

d *Ovied. l. 6. c. 1.* mentions this: Bishopricke & Monasterie.

e Of it reade *Ovied. l. 9.*

Iamaica is almost as large as *Boriquen*. [e] It is extremely subiect to the *Vracani*, which are such terrible gusts of Winde, that nothing can resist them. They turne vp Trees, ouer-turne Houses, transport the Ships from Sea to Land, and bring with them a most dreadfull and horrible confusion. They raigne, or tyrannize rather, in August, September, and October. [f] The Inhabitants are of quicker wits then the other Ilands.

f *Mar. Dec. 1. l. 2.* g Of this Iland read *Ovied. l. 17 part. 1. c. 1.* h *Ortel. Thea.*

Cuba is more Northerly, and [g] extendeth it selfe three hundred leagues in length, and twentie in bredth, full of Mountaynes, Woods, Fennes, Riuers, Lakes, both salt and fresh. This [h] Iland hath had many names giuen by the Spaniards: *Fernandina, Ioanna, Alpha* and *Omega*. The Woods are replenished with Swine and Kine; the Riuers yeeld Golden Sands. It hath sixe Spanish Colonies. Saint *Iago*, a Bishops See, is the chiefe Towne in the Iland; and *Hauana* is the chiefe Port of the Indies. *Oviedo* reckons two things most admirable therein: one a Valley, trending betweene two Hills three leagues, which produceth abundance of stones, enough to lade many Ships, of a perfect round forme, like Bullets: The other a Fountaine, whence *Bitumen*, or a certaine Pitchie substance floweth and floteth ouen to the Sea, excellent for pitching of Ships. In this Iland the common people were prohibited the eating of Serpents, as being reserued for Royall Dainties, and the Prerogatiues of the Kings Table. 50

i *Mar. Dec. 1. l. 2.*

Columbus [i] sayling by this Iland, lighted into a Nauigable Riuer, the water whereof was so hot, that none might endure his hand long therein. He espied also a Canoa of fishermen, which after a strange fashion vsed to hunt fish, and take them by the helpe of another fish, which they kept tyed in a cord by the Boats side, and when they espied a fish, loosed the cord; this hunting fish presently layes hold on the prey, and with a skinne like a Purse growing 60

ing behind her head, graspeth it so fast, that by no meanes it can be taken from her, till they draw her vp aboue the water, and then not able to abide the Aire, she resigneth her prey to the fishers, which leape out into the water, and take it; in recompence whereof they giue her part of her purchase. He found also in this Coast Waters, for the space of fortie miles, white and thicke like Milke, and as though Meale had beene strewed through that Sea: other waters he found [k] spotted with white and blacke, and others all blacke. An old man of fourescore yeeres being a Gouernour in Iland, came to *Columbus*, and with great grauitie saluted him, and counselled him to vse his victories well, remembring, that the soules of men haue two Iournies, after they are departed from their bodies: The one foule and darke, prepared for iniurious and cruell persons: the other pleasant and delectable, for the peaceable, and louers of quiet.

k Eutera.

Many other Ilands might be heere mentioned, and but mentioned: little to our purpose I finde in them. Of Acusamil, neere Iucatan, is alreadie spoken. Of the *Lucaie* or *Ineme*, the greatest thing is their great number, which some [l] esteeme aboue foure hundred. *Lucaio* is a generall or collective name, as *Zeland*, *Lequio*, *Malucco*. The Spaniards haue carried the Inhabitants, as *Martyr* signifieth, into seruitude, to satisfie their insatiable desire of Gold. The women of these Ilands were so faire, that many of the bordering Countries, forsooke their owne Countre, and chose this for their loue. These women ware nothing till the time of their menstruous purgation, at which time the Parents made a Feast, as if shee were to be married; and after that, she weareth before those parts Nets of Cotton, filled with leaues of Hearbs. They obey their King so strictly, that if he command them to leape downe from an high Rocke, alledging no other reason then his will, they performe the same. But they are now, and were long since desolate, [m] being wasted in the Mines of Hispaniola and Cuba, or by Diseases and Famine, to the number of twelue hundred thousand.

l P. M. Dec. 7. 5.

m Dec. 7. 8.

But I am loth so wilder my selfe further in this Wildernesse of Ilands (for so haue the Spaniards made them:) [n] *Columbus* in one Voyage gaue names to seuen hundred Ilands; of which I can report little fitting this our Pilgrimage. Hispaniola is the Lady and Queene of them all, and (as it were) the common Store-house of all their excellencies: and therefore we will there make some longer stay.

n Dec. 1. l. 2.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Hispaniola: and a touch homewards at Bermuda.

§. I.

The Names, naturall Rarities, and Creatures thereof.

HIspaniola or Spagniola [o] is Eastward from Cuba, it was of the first Inhabitants called *Quisqueia*, afterwards *Haiti*, and by *Columbus* [p] *Cipanga* and *Ophir*. The Spaniards call it as we first mentioned, and also Saint *Dominike* or *Domingo* of the chiefe Citie an Archiepiscopall See. It contayneth in compasse fiue hundred and fiftie leagues. They called the Iland *Quisqueia*, which signifieth *Great* and *Ali*, thinking that the Sunne gaue light to no other World then this, and the other Ilands adioyning. *Haiti* signifieth *Craggie*, and such is the Iland in many places, with high Craggie Hils, ouerlooking the deepe and darke Valleyes. But in many places it is most beautifull and flourishing. It seemeth to enioy a perpetuall Spring, the trees alway flourishing, and the Medowes clothed in greene. The Ayre and the Waters are wholesome. It is in manner equally diuided with foure great Riuers descending from high Mountaynes, whereof *Iunna* runneth East; *Attibunicus*, West; *Nababa*, to the South; and *Iache*, Northward. Some diuide it into fiue Prouinces, *Cuizcimm*, *Ituhaba*, *Caibaba*, *Bainoa*, *Guacciarima*. In the first of these there is a great Caue, in a hollow Rocke, vnder the root of a high Mountayne about two furlongs from the Sea; the entrie is like the doores of a great Temple. Many Riuers stole their waters from the sight of the Sun, the vse of men, and the ordinary Officers of *Neptunes* Custome-house, and by secret passages came and hid themselues in this Caue. So the Ilanders imagined, seeing diuers riuers swallowed vp of

o Oriel. Theat. p. Columbus called it *Cipanga*, thinking it to be that Iland which *Marcus Paulus* cals by that name in the East. *Eus.* l. 2. He called it also *Ophir*, thinking it to be that whence *Salomon* had his Gold. *Plat.* Dec. 3. l. 7

of the earth, after they had runne foureſcore and ten miles, and ſuch a ſinke or channell of waters in the Caue.

The Ilanders beleeued, that the Iland had a vitall ſpirit, and that there it doth breathe: and a hole therein is the female nature thereof (for of that ſexe they deeme it) euen as Antiquitie conceited the ebbing and flowing of the Sea to be the breath of *Demogorgon*.

Dec.7 8. *Andreas Moralis* entred in with his ſhip, which was almoſt ſwallowed with the Whirlepooles, and boyling of the water. Clouds engendred of thoſe watery conflicts, and darkneſſe, layed hold on his eyes; terrible noyſe, as of the falls of Nilus, made deafe his eares, that when with labour he had gotten out, he ſeemed to haue eſcaped the barkings of *Cerberus*, & the obſcure Vaults of Hel. Vpon the tops of high Mountaynes, the ſame *Moralis* ſaw a Lake, three miles in compaſſe, into which many little Riuers ran, without any other apparant iſſue. 10

In Bainoa is a Lake of Salt water, notwithſtanding it receiueth foure great freſh Riuers from the Eaſt, Weſt, North, and South, and twenty ſmaller: and within a furlong of the Lake, on the Northſide, are two hundred freſh-ſprings. It is thought to haue a large enter-courſe with the Ocean, becauſe they are Sharkes (great Sea-fiſhes, which deuoure men) in the ſame. Here are ſtormes and tempeſts, which ſeeme to bee the Caters and Purueyors for thoſe fiſhes, in drowning many. Diuers other Lakes are mentioned in this Iland; one whereof partly Salt, partly freſh, is fiue and twenty miles long, and eight broad. They are all in a large Plaine 120. miles in length & breadth, betweene 18. and 25. There is another Vale 200. miles long, and broader then the former: another as broad as that, which is 180. miles long. 20

Bart. de las Caſas telleth of a Kingdome in Hiſpaniola, called *Magna*, which ſignifieth a Plaine, compaſſed about with Hils, which watered the ſame with 30000. Riuers and Brookes; twelue of them were very great: and all which come from the Weſt (twenty thouſand in number) are enriched with Gold.

Cotebi is a Plaine on the tops of Hils, ſo high, that it is ſubiect to the foure ſeaſons of the yeere. There is alſo another Region of the ſame name, moſt barren, and yet moſt rich; full of Mynes, otherwiſe vnfruitfull; a thing common in Nature, that great Mynes vndermine fertilitie; and not ſtrange amongſt men, that the greateſt hoorders of Treaſures are the moſt vnfruitfull, and barren in good workes. The Gold (they ſay) is as a liuing tree, which rooting in the centre of the Earth, ſendeth forth branches vnto the vtermoſt face of the earth, 30 and there ſheweth forth certaine beautifull colours in ſtead of flowres, round ſtones of Gol-
9 Dec.l.4. den Earth in ſtead of Fruits, and thinne Plates in ſtead of Leaues. From this Iland 9 was yeerely brought foure or fiue hundred thouſand Dockets of Gold. They imagine ſome Diuine Nature to bee in Gold, and therefore neuer gather it, but they vſe certaine Religious expiations, abſtaining from women, delicate meates and drinkes, and all other pleaſures.

There is an Iland a little from Hiſpaniola, which hath a Fountaine in it, comming by ſecret paſſages vnder the Earth and Sea, and riſeth in this Iland: which they beleeue, becauſe it bringeth with it the leaues of many trees, which grow in Hiſpaniola, and not in this Iland; 40
L.6.c.12. the Spaniards call the Ile *Arethuſa*, *Onedo* mentions a little Iland betweene this and *Iamaica*, called *Nanaza*, halfe a league from which are many Rockes in the Sea about fiue foot couered with water: out of which iſſueth and ſpouteth, aboue the water of the Sea, a ſpout of freſh water as great as a mans arme, that it may bee receiued and taken ſweet and good. This was ſeene by *Stephano della Rocca* a man of good credit.

r R.Tomſon ap. Hak.tom.3. The Ile r of Hiſpaniola is much infeſted with Flyes, or Gnats, whoſe pricking cauſeth wonderfull ſwelling: alſo there is a Worme called Nigua, which creepeth into the ſoles of mens feet, and makes them grow as bigge as a mans head, with extremitie of paine; for which they haue no remedy, but to open the fleſh ſometimes three or foure inches, and ſo digge them out. The Gnats s are ſo troublefome, that the Inhabitants doe therefore build
s Mart.dec.7.9. Onied.l.15.c.8. low Houſes, and make little doores, which they keepe cloſe, and ſoiheare to light Candles. Nature hath to this diſeaſe ordained a remedy, namely, certaine Creatures, called *Cucuy*, 50 which is a kind of Beetles. Theſe haue foure lights, which ſhine in the night; two in the ſeate of his eyes, and two which he ſheweth when hee openeth his wings. The people get theſe and bring them to their houſes, which there doe them a double ſeruice: they kill the Gnats, and giue ſo much light, that men may ſee to reade and write Letters by the light of one; and many of them ſeeme as ſo many Candles. They had but three ſorts of foure-footed Beaſts, and thoſe very little. Now men are exhauſt, and Beaſts multiplyed, in ſo ſtrange
Encreſe of Kine & Dogs. manner, that one which was *Deane* of the Conception, carrying a Cow thither, thee was a-liue ſix and twentie yeeres after, and her fruitfull generation was multiplyed in the Iland to eight hundred. They are now growne wild, as their Dogges alſo. They kill their Kine for the Hides: fiue and thirtie thouſand were tranſported to Spaine when *Acoſta* returned, in 60
Ants hurtfull. Onied.l.5.c.1. many parts of the World: in the yeere 1519. and two yeeres after they ruined their Farme-houſes,

houses, and spoyled their Oranges, Cannafistula, and their fruit-trees. They could keepe nothing in their houses which was fit to be eaten, from them: and if they had continued in like quantitie, they would haue dishabited the Iland and left it desolate. But they chose by lot a Saint, to whole tuition they might commit themselues in that extremitie, which fell vpon *Saturninus*, who was faine to become their Patron against the Pismires. These Ants were little and blacke: another sort were enemies to these, and wrought against them and chased them out of their holds, and were not hurtfull, but as good Benefactors (if *Oviedo* say true of them) as I can believe of *Saturninus*. Other forts there are many, of which some become winged and fill the Aire with swarmes: which sometimes happens in *England*. On
10 *Bartholomew* day 1613. I was in the Iland of *Foulenesse* on our *Essex* shore, where were such clouds of these flying Pismires, that we could no were flie from them, but they filled our clothes; yea the floores of some houses where they fell, were in a manner couered with a blakee Carpet of creeping Ants; whitch they say drowne themselues about that time of the yeere in the Sea. *Oviedo* tels of other Ants with white heads, which eate through walls and timbers of houses and cause them to fall. There are some Caterpillers a span long, and others lesse, but more venemous. There are Wormes which doe so much harme in Timber, that a house of thirty yeeres in this Iland would be ruinous, and seeme as old as one of a hundred in Spaine; and those which could not be old when hee wrote this, seemed as if they had stood
20 150. yeeres. Many other small creatures this our Author mentions, but my Relations would be too great if I should follow him.

§. II.

Of their Idols, Songs and Dances, Priests, Oracles, Superstitious Opinions and Customes.

BEfore the Discouerie of this Iland by *Columbus* and the Spaniards, these Ilanders of
30 Hispaniola were forewarned thereof by Oracle. Their [t] *Cacikes* and *Buhitti* (that is, their Kings and Priests) reported to *Columbus*, that the Father of *Garionexius*, the present King, and another *Cacike*, would needs be importunate demanders of their *Zemes*, or Gods of future euents, and therefore abstayned fiue dayes together from all meate and drinke, spending the time in continuall mourning. The *Zemes* made answere, That there would come, not many yeeres after, vnto that Iland, a strange Nation, clothed, bearded, armed with shining Swords, that would cut a man asunder in the middle; which should destroy the ancient Images of their Gods, abolish their Rites, and slay their children. To remember this Oracle, they composed a mournfull Dittie, which they call *Areito*, which on some solemne dayes they vsed to sing. Their Priests were Phisicians and Magicians, or
40 Diuinours.

t *Mar. dec. 1. l. 9 Oviedo gen. hist. lib. 5.*

Oviedo sayth, that they danced at singing of their *Areiti* or Ballads, which word I vse because it hath that deriuation which argueth dancing as well as singing. These dances are generall thorow *America*. In this Iland they danced, sometimes men alone, and sometimes women alone, but in great Solemnities they were mixed, and danced in a circle, one leading the dance; the measures whereof were composed to the *Areito*, of which one sang a Verse, and all the rest followed singing and dancing, and so thorow euery Verse of the same till it was ended, which sometimes continued till the next day. *Anacaona* the widow of the Cacique *Caonabo*, entertained the Spaniards with a dance of three hundred Maids. Thus these *Areitos* were their Chronicles and Memorials of things passed, as we read of the *Bards*
50 in these parts. They vsed sometimes Drummes or Tabers to these dances, made onely of wood, hollow, and open right against that place where they did strike. In some places they couered them with Deere skins, but here were no beasts in this Iland that could yeeld any for such purpose. They had Tobacco in Religious estimation, not onely for sanitie, but for sanctitie also, u as *Oviedo* writeth, the smoke whereof they tooke in at the Nose with a forked Pipe fitted to both nosthrils, holding the single end in the smoke of the hearbe burning in the fire, till they became senseless. Their Priests most vsed this, which comming to themselues after this sleepie fume, deliuered the Oracles of their *Zemes* or Deuils, which sometimes spake by them.

u *Non solamente usa sana, ma santa mente.*

Now concerning the *Zemes* (which could foretell that which they could not auert) and
60 the Superstitions of Hispaniola, x the Spaniards had beene long in the Iland before they knew, that the people worshipped any thing but y the Lights of Heauen; but after, by further conuersing and liuing amongst them, they came to know more of their Religion, of which,

x *Mart. ibid.*

y They worshipped the Sunne, and prayed to it at Sun-rising.

which, one *Ramonus*, a Spanish Heremite, writ a Booke, and *Martyr* hath borrowed of him to lend vs. It is apparant by the Images which they worshipped, that there appeared vnto them certaine illusions of euill Spirits. These Images they made of Gossampine Cotten hard stopped, fitting, like the Pictures of the Deuill, which they called *Zemes*; whom they take to be the Mediators and Messengers of the great God, which they acknowledge, One, Eternall, Infinite, Omnipotent, Inuisible. Of these they thinke they obtayne raine, or faire weather; and when they goe to the warres, they haue certaine little ones which they bind to their fore-heads. Euery King hath his particular *Zemes*, which he honoureth. They call the eternall God by these two names, *Iocauna*, and *Guamauomocon*, as their Predecessors taught them affirming, That he hath a Father called by these fiue names, *Atabeira, Mamona Guacarapita, Yuella, Guamaxa*. 10

They make the *Zemes* of diuers matter and forme: some of Wood, as they were admonished by certaine Visions appearing to them in the Woods: others, which had receiued answere of them among the Rocks, make them of Stone: some of Roots, to the similitude of such as appeare to them when they gather the Roots whereof they make their bread, thinking that the *Zemes* sent them plenty of these Roots. They attribute a *Zemes* to the particular tuition of euery thing; as sometimes the Pagan, and now the Popish Romanes: some assigned to the Sea, others to Fountaynes, Woods, or other their peculiar charges. When the *Boitij* consult with the *Zemes*, they goe into the House dedicated to him, and with the powder of the herbe *Cohobba*, snuffed into their nosthrils, are distracted; after which, returning as out of a trance, he telleth, That the *Zemes* had spoken to him, and vttereth his Reuelations. They say, That a certaine King, called *Guamaretus*, had a *Zemes*, whose name was *Corochotum*, which often vsed to descend from the top of the house, where *Guamaretus* kept him close bound: the cause of his breaking loose was either to hide himselfe, or to goe seeke for meate, or else for the act of generation: and that sometimes being offended, that the King *Guamaretus* had not honoured him diligently, hee was wont to lie hid for certaine dayes. In this Kings Village were some children borne with two Crownes, which they supposed to be the issue of this *Zemes*. And when this Village was burned by the Enemie, this *Zemes* brake his band, and was found a furlong off, without any harme. He had another *Zemes* called *Epteguanita*, made of wood, being in shape like a foure-footed Beast, which went often from the place where he was honoured, into the woods. When they perceiued that he was gone, a great multitude gathered together to seeke him, with deuout Prayers; and when they had found him, brought him home religiously on their shoulders, to the Chappell dedicated vnto him. But after the Spaniards comming into the Iland, hee fled for altogether; and could neuer be found; whereby they diuined the destruction of their country. 20 30

They honoured another *Zemes*, in the likenesse of a woman, on whom waited two other, like men. One of these executed the office of a Messenger to the *Zemes*, that had authoritie of Clouds, Winds, and Raine, & are at command of this woman: the other performed the like to the *Zemes* of the waters that fall from the Hills, that being loosed, they might breake into floods, and ouerflow the Countrey, if the people doe not giue due honour to her Image. 40

Let vs adde to this Relation of the *Zemes* of Hispaniola [a] an accident in Cuba. A Mariner being sicke, was there left on shore, who recouering, grew into fauour with the King, and was employed in his warres with great successe against the Enemie. He attributed his victories to the Virgin *Mary*, whose Picture hee had in his bosome. The King by his persuasion reiected his *Zemes*, and dedicated a Chappell and Altar to this Picture, whither hee and all his Family resorted a little before the Sun-set, bowing their heads, and saying, *Aue Maria, Aue Maria*; further they could not say. They beset the same with Iewels, and many Earthen pots, some with sundry meates, some with water, round about the Tabernacle, which they offered in stead of sacrifice, as before they had done to their *Zemes*. Being demanded, why they did thus, they answered, Lest it should lacke meate. For they beleeue, that Images may hunger, and doe eate and drinke. 50

[a] *Mart. Dec. 2. lib. 6.*

They told of this Picture, That being carried with them into the warres (as they vse to bring their *Zemes* with them into the battle.) This made the *Zemes* of the enemy turne his backe; yea, a woman (a lye, or a Deuill) descended in the sight of them all to play the *Bellona* for her followers; and in a contention betwixt them, whether the *Zemes* or this Ladie were more excellent, two young men of each side were bound, and whether Deitie should loosen her party, that should be their God. Both inuoke: the Deuill appeared in vgly shape, and by and by a faire Virgin, whereat the Deuill vanished (doe you beleeue it?) and the Virgin with touch of a Rod loosed her mans hands, which were found on the other aduerse party, being now double bound. Thus can the Deuill transforme himselfe into an Angell of Light, at Loretto, in Hispaniola, and where else foeuer hee can bee entertained; the name of Saints, and promise of Heauen, shall further his Hellish designes. 60

They

They had festiuall Solemnities in Hispaniola [b] to their *Zemes*, whereunto the Kings summoned their Subiects by publike Cryers: and they, neatly dressed after their manner, painted with diuers colours or herbs, resorted thither, with their armes, thighes, legs, adorned with shels, to make Musicke in their dancing. Thus they presented themselues before the King, who sate drumming at the entrance of the Gate. When they were to sacrifice, they purged themselues first, thrusting downe a sacred hooke into their throat, and by vomit emptied their bodies. After, they went into the Kings Court, and all sate in a Ring about the Idoll, crosse-legged like Taylors, and wry-necked for reuerence, praying, that their Sacrifice might be accepted. The women in another place, when the Priests gaue warning, fell to dancing and singing (in manner as is before expressed) the prayse of their *Zemes*, and offered Cakes in baskets, concluding with Songs in prayse of their ancient Kings, and Prayers for future prosperitie. After this, both Sexes kneeled downe, and offered their Cakes; which the Priests receiuing, cut in pieces, giuing to euery man a portion, which hee kept vncouched the whole yeere, for a holy Relique, esteeming that house in danger of Fire and Whirle-winds, that is not preserued with this reserued piece of Cake. They seemed sometimes to heare a voyce from their *Zemes*, (whether by the illusion of the Priests, or the Deuill) which the Priests interpreted by their behauiour: for if they danced and sung, all was well: but if they went sorrowfully, the people went forth sighing, and gaue themselues to fasting, euen to extreme faintnesse with weeping, vntill they thought their *Zemes* reconciled. In this Iland they had [c] as many wiues as they were able to sustaine: the Cacique *Behecchio* had thirtie, two of which were buried with him perforce. Some of them were addicted to lusts of Sodomie, and others more (if more may be) vnnaturall. Generally they were very luxurious, both men and women: yet they abstained from Mother, Sister, and Daughter (other degrees they spared not) thinking that such Incest would bring them to an euill death. In their buying and selling they weighed not the worth of things, but onely their owne fancie, as we see in Children. Theeues they cruelly punished, empaling them on sharpe stakes aliue.

b *Deu. 7. 10.*

Sacrifices.

c *Oviedo gen. hist. l. 5. c. 3.*

Touching the originall of man, thus they fable. There is in the Iland a Region called Caunana, where they faine that Mankind came first out of two Caues of a Mountayne called Cauta: and that the biggest sort of men came forth of the mouth of the biggest Caue, and the least sort out of the least Caue: this Caue they name *Amniauna*, the greater, *Cauibaxagua*. Before men might come out of the Caue, the mouth thereof was kept and was shed nightly, by a man whose name was *Machochael*, who departing further to looke abroad, was by the Sunne (the sight of whom he was forbidden) turned into a stone. They faine the like of others turned into trees; for going so farre a fishing in the night, that they could not returne before the rising of the Sunne. A certaine Ruler also, called *Vagoniona*, sent one forth of the Caue a fishing, who by the Sunnes surprisall, was turned into a Nightingale, which therefore in the night bewayleth his misfortune. *Vagoniona* sore troubled with this losse, leaving the men in the Caue, brought forth the women and sucking children, and leauing the women in an Iland of that Tract, called *Matbimino*, carried the children away with him, which being oppressed with famine, fainted; and remayned on the bankes of a certaine Riuer, where they were turned to Frogs, and cryed *toa, toa*, as children with them vse to cry for the dugge. And hence also come those pitifull cryings of the Frogs in the Spring-time. As for *Vagoniona*, he by speciall priuiledge was not transformed: wandering in diuers places, he descended to a certaine faire woman, whom he saw in the bottome of the Sea, and receiued of her bright plates of Latten, and a kind of stones which their Kings greatly esteemed. Another Caue they had (for the former tale is endlesse, as Superstition commonly is) called *Ionanaboina*, adorned with Pictures of a thousand fashions. In the entrance were two graues *Zemes*, whereof one was called *Binbaitel*, and the other *Marohu*. Out of this Caue they say the Sunne and Moone first came to giue light to the World. They made as Religious concourse to these Caues, as they which goe on Pilgrimage to Rome, Compostella, or Ierusalem.

They had a superstitious conceit of their dead: who (they thought) walked in the night, and eate the fruit *Guannaba* (which is like to a Quince) and that they would deceiue women, in taking the shape of men; making, as though they would haue to doe with them, and suddenly vanish away. If any feeling a strange thing in his bed, made doubt whether it were a dead bodie, he might be resolued by feeling on his belly, because these Ghosts could take all other members of mans bodie, but not the nauell (as some with vs imagine that the Deuill can take the whole shape of a man, onely his clawes excepted:) these dead men, they say, often met them by the way, and if a man were not afraid, they vanished; but if hee were afraid, they would assault him, and many hereby haue beene taken with the losse of their limbes. These Superstitions were left them by tradition in Rithmes and Songs from their sore-

fore-fathers, which it was lawfull for none to leaue, but onely the Kings Sonnes. They sung them before the people on solemne Feasts, playing on an instrument like a Timbrel. Their *Bonij* or Priests instruct them in these Superstitions: these are also Physicians, making the people beleeue that they obtaine health for them of the *Zemes*. They eye themselues to much fasting, and outward cleanlinesse and purging; especially where they take vpon them the cure of great menisfor then they drunk the powder of a certayne herbe, which brought them into a furie, wherein they said they learned many things of their *Zemes*.

Much adoe they make about the sicke partie, deforming themselues with many gestures; breathing, blowing, sucking the forehead, temples, and necke of the patient; sometimes also saying that the *Zemes* is angry for not erecting a Chappell, or dedicating to him a Groue or Garden, or the neglect of other holies. And if the sicke partie dye, his Kinsfolkes by Witchcraft enforce the dead to speake, and tell them whether he dyed by naturall destinie, or by the negligence of the *Bonij*. In not fasting the full due, or ministring conuenient medicine: so that if these Physicians be found faulty, they take reuenge of them. They vsed in ministring their Physicke, to put certayne stones or bones in their mouthes, which if the women can get, they keepe religiously, beleeuing them to be profitable for them in trauell, and honour them, as they doe their *Zemes*.

When their Kings dyed, they buried the best beloued of their Concubines with them, who also had other women buried for their attendants, together with their Iewels and Ornaments. They had in the Sepulchre beside them a cup full of water, and some of their *Cassaui*-bread. Hispaniola is (sayth *Herera*) in 19. degrees and an halfe, hath ten Spanish Townes, and hath sometime had in it fourteene thousand Castilians. *Oviedo* reporteth of a Huricano or Tempest, which, 1508. threw downe all the houses, except some which were built of stone in *Domingo*: and the whole Towne of *Buona Ventura* changed his name into *Mala Ventura*, being hereby quite ouerthrowne. Twentie Sayle and more were lost in the Harbour of *Domingo*. Many men were lifted vp and carried in the Ayre many Bowshots, some being thereby miserably bruised. In *Iuly* the next yeere happened another more terrible then the former. But now, sayth hee, these *Huracanes* are nothing so fierce since the Sacrament is placed in the Churches.

§. III.

Of the Bermudas, or Sommers Ilands.

HAuing thus wearied you with this long stay in *Hispaniola* (by which yee may gusse of the neighbouring Ilands) we will haste homeward, and not touching in any Iland by the way (for we could but touch and away) we may aduenture, notwithstanding the wonted danger, vpon Bermuda. Danger hath made it now not so dangerous: *nocuments* haue beene *documents*. For while some haue beene wracked there, they haue made vertue of Necessitie, and so well obserued the Coast, that skill hath almost secured that, which Nature had seemed to set there in defiance both of Habitation and Nauigation, to both which it is now subiected by our Nation. It was called Bermuda, as [d] *Oviedo* sayth, of *Iohn Bermudez*, which first discouered it, and *Garza*, of the ships name wherein hee then sayled: *Oviedo* writeth that hee was iust by it, and had thought to haue sent some Hogs on shore there to haue multiplyed, but by force of tempest was driuen thence: and others eyther of like purpose, or by force of shipwracke haue since done it. It [e] is also called the *Iland of Deuils*, which they suppose inhabit there; and the *Inchanted Iland*: but these are inchanted conceits. *Iob Hortop* relateth, That in the height of Bermuda they had sight of a Sea-monster, which three times shewed himselfe from the middle vpwards, in shape like a man of the complexion of a Mulato or tawny Indian. But this name was giuen it not of such Monsters, but of the monstrous tempests which here they haue often sustayned. Sir *G. Sommers* hath deserued that it should beare his name, by his indeuours thereabouts testified in life and death. Hee with Sir *Thomas Gates*, as before is said, were wracket on the Iland, which losse turned to some gaine, as if God would giue them this into the Virginia-bargaine. Before, *Anno* 1593. *Henry* [g] *May*, an Englishman, in a French ship was wracked thereon, and hath giuen vs some Discourse thereof: more fully hath *Sylueister* [h] *Iourdan*, one of that Virginian Company, one of the company of those worthy Knights, in a Treatise of that shipwracke, and the Discouerie of Bermuda. The Commodities whereof, he reckoneth, varietie of fishes, plentie of Hogges (which it seemeth haue escaped out of some wrackes) diuers Fruits, Mulberries, Silke-wormes, Palmitos, Cedars, Pearles, Ambergrise: But the most strange thing seemes the varietie of Fowle, of which they

d *Oviedo lib. 2. del. Hist. Ind.*

e *Botero.*

f *Iob Hortop ap. Hak.*

g *Henry May ap. Hak tom. 3.*

h *Syl. Iourdan.*

they tooke a thousand of one sort in two or three houres, being as bigge as a Pidgeon, and laying speckled Egges, as bigge as Hens Egges, on the sand, where they come and lay them daily, although men sit downe amongst them. When Sir *Thomas Gates* his men haue taken a thousand of them, Sir *George Sommers* men haue stayed a while by them, and brought away as many more. Another Fowle there is, that liueth in holes, like Cony-holes; their Egges like in quantity and qualitie to Hen-egges. Other Birds were so gentle, that whistling to them, they would come and gaze on you, while with your sticke you might kill them. Other Egges they had of Tortoytes, a bushell in the belly of one very sweet: they tooke forty of them in a day: and one would serue fiftie men at a meale. Two were there borne, and other two married, to make the most naturall possession thereof for our Nation; which now in hope of good successe hath there planted an habitation. That wracked Company built there a Ship and a Pinnasse, and set saile for Virginia.

William Strachie in a large Discourse, with his fluent and copious pen hath described that tempest which brought them to this Iland, affirming that there was not an houre in foure dayes, in which they freed not out of their almost captiued Ship, twelue hundred Barricoes of water, each containing sixe gallons, and some eight: besides three Pumps continually going: euery foure houres they bestowed an hundred tuns of water on the cruell Sea, which seemed the more hungry after their bodies, or thirstie for their bloud from Tuesday noone till Friday noone, they bayled and pumped two thousand runnes, and were ten foot deepe; nor could haue holden out one day longer, when they first had sight of the *Bermudas*. These (he sayth) are an *Archipelagus* of broken Ilands, not fewer then fiue hundred, if all may be so called which lye by themselues: the greatest (which lyeth like an halfe moone) is in 32. degrees 20. minutes. At their first landing they killed with Bats seuen hundred Fowles, like to Gulls, at one time. The Ilands seeme rent with tempests of Thunder, Lightning, and Raine, which threaten in time to deboure them all: the stormes in the full and change keepe their vnchangeable round Winter and Summer, rather thundring then blowing from euery corner, sometimes 48. houres together; especially when the *Halo* (or circle about the Moone) appeareth, which is often, and there foure times as large as with vs. The North and Northwest winds cause Winter in *December, Ianuary*, and *February*: yet not such, but then young Birds to be seene. Without knowledge a Boat of ten tuns cannot be brought in, and yet within is safe harbour for the greatest Ships. They found there for their sustenance wild Palmitos, the tops of which trees rosted did eate like fried Melons, sodden, like Cabbages: with the leaues they couered their Cabins: Berries blacke and round, as bigge as a Damson, ripe in *December*, and very luscious: in the Winter they shed their leaues. No Iland in the World had more or better Fish. Of Fowles was great varietie. They killed a wild Swan. Some there are which breed in high Ilands in holes, to secure them from the Swine. They haue their seasons, one kind succeeding another. Besides this reliefe of Fowles, they had plenty of Tortoise EggES, which they lay as bigge as Goose EggES, and commit to the Sun and Sands hatching nurserie. They had sometimes fiue hundred in one of them. Euen heere (left the Iland should lose that former name *of Deuils*) some entred into Deuillish conspiracie three seuerall time. Some were banished, and after reconciled[1]. *Henry Paine* was shot to death. Some fled to the Woods, but all reduced, except *Christopher Carter* [k] and *Robert Waters*. But these Ilands haue now beene possessed diuers yeeres by an English Colonie; and my friend Master *Berkley* (which hath beene there, and is now [l] onwards on a second Voyage thither) seemeth rauished with the naturall endowments, both for health and wealth, of these Ilands: which now are to be shared amongst the Aduenturers, and fortified against all inuasions; Nature it selfe being herein readie to further their securitie against the greatest forren force, mustering winds (which some say are violent further off, but calmer neere the Ilands) and Rockes many leagues into the Sea, for their defence: which now yet they are gone to strengthen, both with men and munition. The Colonie that is there, haue not onely sent verball, but reall commendations of the place: as may appeare by a Treatise [m] thereof lately set forth by one, which in the Shippe called the Plough, sayled thither *Anno* 1612. wherein is declared the Commodities there found, as Mullets, Breames, Lobsters, and Angel-fish, Hog-fish, Rock-fish, &c. as before is said. The Ayre is very healthfull, as their experience (the best argument) hath found, and agreeing well with English bodies: the ground as fertile as any (they say) in the World: Ambergreece, Pearle, Cedars and other vnknowne Timbers: store of Whales and other Commodities, which would bee tedious to rehearse: which I hope and pray, may further prosper, to the profit of this and the *Virginia* Plantations. From hence and thence, I am now passing in an English Ship for *England*, where to passe away tediousnesse of the Voyage, I will enterteyne my Reader with a Discourse of the more then tedious and fastidious Spanish cruelties.

W. Strachie.

[i] My friend Master *Berkley* a Merchant, reports better of the *Bermudas* seasonablenesse, &c. and the Plantation it selfe refresheth the health and wealth thereof.

[k] He continued there till the Colonie was planted.

[l] *Anno* 1614. m News from *Bermudas*, or *Sommer Ilands*. There is report of some *English* this Winter come home, which came from *Bermuda* to *Ireland* in a little Boat, &c. which I were not, for want of certaine intelligence either (for that cause) of the present state of the Colonie, which (some say) are neere 70.

English, &c.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Spanish cruelties in the West Indies: and of their peruerse Conuersion of the Indians vnto Christianitie.

FOr as much as the Papists doe vsually glory in the purchase of a New World vnto their Religion, and would haue men beleeue, that since this Scripture-Heresie hath made new Rome to tremble now, no lesse then *Hannibal* did her Pagan-mother, they haue a new [a] supply with much aduantage in this Westerne World of America; and they make this their Indian Conuersion, one of the Markes of [b] the truenesse and Catholicisme of their Church, which hath gained (if *Possenine* lye not) an hundred times as much in the New World towards the West, South, and East, by new Conuerts, as it hath lost in the North parts by Hereticke-where through both the Hemispheres (saith *Hill*) these thousand yeeres, nay as farre as the Sunne shineth, there is no tongue, nor people, nor climate, which hath not in some measure (such a measure perhaps as he measured his truth and wit withall in this assertion) the Catholike Roman Religion: I would we could borrow the height of this Hill, whereon to stand and ouer-view so many parts of the World yet vnknowne, and learne of this Giant *Atlas* (how easily may this Mute become a Liquid?) which beareth thus the Hemisphere of his Roman Heauen on his mounting shoulders, a new Geographie. But his impudencie is already sufficiently whipped and exposed to the Worlds derision, by Him, the neerenesse of whose presence doth now so muchjglad me after so long and farre a Pilgrimage. His learned Pen hath shewed the like bold brags of *Bristow* and *Stapleton* his Masters, and prooued them Fables. For further confutation whereof, it shall not be amisse to obserue the proceedings of the Spaniards in these parts. And herein we will vse the witnesse of men of their owne Romish Religion. *Iosephus* c *Acosta*, a Iesuite, writeth, that the Indians conceiue an implacable hatred against the Faith, by the scandall of the Spaniards cruelties: and that they haue baptized some by force. *Vega* d accuseth them of baptizing without making them know the faith, or taking knowledge of their life. And how could it otherwise be, when * we find it recorded of sundry of their Preachers, that baptized each one of them aboue an hundred thousand, and that in few yeeres? In so much that (as is storied by *Surius*) it is to be found among the Records of *Charles* the fift, that some old Priest hath baptized seuen hundred thousand, another three hundred thousand. Some of these were so good Christians, that they still continued (as *Nunno de Guzman* writeth to the Emperour) the Sacrifices of humane flesh. *Oviedo* writeth, that they haue but the name of Christians, and are baptized rather because they are of age, then for deuotion to the faith; and none, or very few of them are Christians willingly.

He that will read what they lately haue done in Spaine with the remnants of the Moores, may perhaps satisfie himselfe with the reasons of e Frier *Fonseca*, in defence thereof. But for the poore Indians, *Bartholomeus de las Casas*, a f Dominike Frier, of the same Order with *Fonseca*, and after a Bishop in America, hath written a large and vnanswerable Treatise of the enormous cruelties, and vnchristian Antichristian proceedings in the New World, the summe whereof is this, That the Indians were a simple harmelesse people, loyall to their Lords, and such as gaue no cause to the Spaniards of dislike, till they by extreame iniuries were prouoked: they are also docible and pliant, both to good doctrine and liuing. To these Lambes, sayth he, the Spaniards came as cruell and hungry Tygres, Beares, and Lions, intending nothing those forty yeeres (hee wrote this *Anno* 1542.) but bloud and slaughter, to satisfie their Auarice and Ambition: insomuch that of three Millions of people, which were contayned in Hispaniola of the Naturall Inhabitants, there scarce remayned at that time three hundred, and now as *Alexandro Vesino* reporteth, none at all: onely two and twenty thousand Negros, and some Spaniards reside there.

Cuba, and the other Ilands had indured the like miserie, and in the firme Land ten Kingdomes, greater then all Spaine, were dispeopled and desolate, and in that space there had not perished lesse then twelue Millions by their tyrannie: and he might truly say that fifty Millions had payed Natures debt.

In the Iland Hispaniola the Spaniard had their first Indian habitations, where their cruelties draue the Indians to their shifts, and to their weake defence, which caused those enraged Lions, to spare neyther man, woman, nor childe: they ripped vp the great bellied women, and would lay wagers, who could with most dexteritie strike off an Indians head, or smite

a *Alan. Cop. vel potius N. Herpfield, Dialogi, vt refertur in Hortis Bellar. de Not. Ecclesiæ, lib. 4.*
b *Costerus Euchirid. Possenin Apparat. l. 16. c. 6. Hill. Reason 5.*

Archbishop *Abbot.*

c *Acosta l. 4. de procurand. Ind. salute, c. 3.*
d *Andr. Vega de l. Concoperibus. quæst. 3.*
* *Ed. Brerewood* of Religion and Lang. c. 10 *& Ist. Mart. de Valentia. N. di G. ap. R. v. 3. Oued. lib. 17. c. 9*

e *F. Damiano Fonseca del giusto sacciamento de Maresthi da Spagna*, which are also expressed in the Kings Proclamation to be Heresie, Apostasie, Treason, conspiring with the Turk, &c.
f *B. v. Cas. Hispan. Crudelitas.*

into him asunder in the middle: they would plucke the Infants by the heeles from their Mothers breſts, and daſh out their braines againſt the ſtones, or with a ſcoffe hurle them into the Riuer. They ſet vp Gibbets, and in honour of Chriſt and his twelue Apoſtles (as they ſaid, and could the Deuill ſay worſe?) they would both hang and burne them. Others they tooke, and cutting their hands almoſt off, bid them carry thoſe Letters (their hands dropping bloud, and almoſt dropping off themſelues) to their Countrimen, which (for feare of the like) lay hidden in the Mountaines. The Nobles and Commanders, they broyled on Gridirons: I once (ſayth our Author) ſaw foure or fiue of the chiefe of them thus roaſted, which making a lamentable noyſe, the nicer Captaine bade they ſhould be ſtrangled, but the cruell Tormentor choſe rather to ſtop their mouthes, ſo to preuent their out-cryes, and to continue their broyling till they were dead. They had Dogs to hunt them out of their couerts, which deuoured the poore ſoules: and becauſe ſometimes the Indians, thus prouoked, would kill a Spaniard, if they found opportunitie, they made a Law, that a hundred of them ſhould for one Spaniard be ſlaine. The King of *Magua* offered to till the ground for them fifty miles ſpace, if they would ſpare him and his people from the Mynes. The Captaine in recompence deflowred his Wife, and hee hiding himſelfe, was taken, and ſent into Spaine; but the ſhip perſhed in the way, and therein that admirable § graine of Gold, which weighed in the firſt finding (being pure) ſo many thouſand Crownes as in the fifth Chapter of the eight Booke is mentioned.

§ *P. Mart.* mentioneth this graine of Gold: and likewiſe the *Spaniſh* cruelties, though not ſo largely as *Coſtes*

In the Kingdome of *Xaraqua* in *Hiſpaniola*, the Gouernour called before him three hundred Indian Lords, which he partly burned in a Houſe, and put the reſt to the Sword, and hanged vp the Queene, as they did alſo to *Hiquanama* the Queene of *Hiquey*. Of all which cruelties our Author an eye-witneſſe affirmeth, that the Indians gaue no cauſe by any crime, that had ſo deſerued by any Law. And for the reſt that remayned after theſe Wars, they ſhared them as ſlaues. They which ſhould haue inſtructed them in the Catholike Faith, were ignorant, cruell, and couetous. The men were ſpent in the Mines, the women conſumed in tillage, and both by heauie burthens which they made them carry, by famine, by ſcourging, and other miſeries.

And thus they did in all other parts wherefoeuer they came. In the Iles of Saint *Iohn*, and *Iamayca*, were ſixe hundred thouſand Inhabitants, whereof then when the Author wrote this, there were ſcarcely left two hundred in eyther Iland. Cuba extendeth furtheſt in length of any of theſe Ilands. Here was a Cacique named *Hathuey*, which called his Subiects about him, and ſhewing them a Boxe of Gold, ſaid, That was the Spaniards God, and made them dance about it very ſolemnely: and left the Spaniards ſhould haue it, hee hurled it into the Riuer. Being taken and condemned to the fire, when he was bound to the ſtake, a Frier came and preached Heauen to him, and the terrors of Hell: *Hathuey* asked if any Spaniards were in Heauen? The Frier anſwered, Yea, ſuch as were good. *Hathuey* replyed, hee would rather goe to Hell, then goe where any of that cruell Nation were.

I was once preſent, ſayth *Coſtes*, when the Inhabitants of one Towne brought vs forth victuall, and met vs with great kindneſſe, and the Spaniards without any cauſe ſlue three thouſand of them, of euery Age and Sexe. I, by their counſell, ſent to other Townes to meet vs with promiſe of good dealing, and two and twenty Caciques met vs, which the Captaine againſt all faith cauſed to be burned. This made the deſperate Indians hang themſelues (which two hundred did, by the occaſion of one mans cruelty:) and one other Spaniard ſeeing them take this courſe, made as though he would hang himſelfe too, and perſecute them in the Regions of death; which feare detayned ſome from that ſelfe-execution. Sixe thouſand children dyed, ſayth our former Author, in three or foure moneths ſpace, while I was there, for the want of their Parents which were ſent to the Mynes: they hunted out the reſt in the Mountaynes, and deſolated the Iland. Neyther did the other Ilands ſpeed better. The Lucaiæ they brought to an vtter deſolation: and ſhipping multitudes of men for the Mynes in Hiſpaniola (wanting food for them) the third part commonly perſhed in the way; ſo that an vnskilful Pilot might haue learned this way by Sea, by thoſe floting markes of Indian carkaſſes. This Spaniſh peſtilence ſpred further to the Continent, where they ſpoyled the ſhoates, and the Inland Countries of people. From Darien to Nicaragua, they ſlue foure hundred thouſand people with Dogs, Swords, Fire and diuers tortures.

Their courſe ‖ of Preaching was, to ſend, vnder paine of confiſcation of lands, libertie, wife, life, and all, to acknowledge God and the Spaniſh King, of whom they had neuer heard. Yea, they would ſteale to ſome place halfe a mile off the Citie, by night, and there publiſh the King's Decree in this ſort, being alone by themſelues: *Yee Caciques and Indians of this place, or that place* (which they named) *Bee it knowne to you, that there is one God, one Pope, and one King of Caſtile, who is Lord of theſe lands: Come quickly and doe your homage.* And then in the night, while they were aſleepe, fired their houſes, and ſlue and tooke Captiues at their pleaſure,

‖ Make this way of conuerting Infidels.

pleasure, and after fell to search for Gold. The first Bishop that came into these parts, sent his men to be partakers of the spoyle. A Cacique gaue the Spanish Gouernour the weight in Gold of nine thousand Crownes; he (in thankfulnes) to extort more, bound him to a post, and put fire to his feet, and forced him to send home for a further addition of 3000. They not satisfied, persisted in their tormenting him, till the marrow came forth at the soles of his feet, whereof he dyed. When any of the Indians, employed by the Spaniards, fayled vnder their heauy burthens, or fainted for want of necessaries, lest they should lose time in opening the Chaine wherein he was tyed, they would cut off his head, and so let the bodie fall out. The Spaniard robbed the Nicaraguans of their Corne, so that thirty thousand dyed of Famine, and a Mother ate her owne childe; fiue hundred thousand were carried away into bondage, besides fifteen or sixtie thousand slaine in their Warres: and now, sayth *Casas*, remayne foure or fiue thousand, of one of the most populous Regions of the World. Heere did *Vaschus* [1] giue at one time foure Kings to be deuoured of Dogs.

[1] *P. Martir. dec. 3 l. 2. Cortes* accustomed himselfe to haue 4. Kings attend on him. *Dec. 8. lib. 3.* He burned 60. Kings, their heires looking on.

In New Spaine, from the yeere 1518. to 1530. in foure hundred and eighty miles about Mexico, they destroyed aboue foure Millions of people in their Conquests by fire and sword, not reckoning those which dyed in seruitude and oppression. In the Prouince of Naco and Honduras, from the yeere 1524. to 1535. two Millions of men perished, and scarcely two thousand remayne. In Guatimala, from the yeere 1524. to 1540. they destroyed aboue foure or fiue Millions vnder that *Alnarado*, who dying, by the fall off his Horse, as is before said, complained (when hee was asked where his paine was most) of his Soule-torment: and his Citie Guatimala was with a three-fold deluge of Earth, of Water, of Stones, oppressed and ouer-whelmed. He forced the Indians to follow him in his Expeditions, in Armies of tenne or twentie thousand, not allowing them other sustenance, then the flesh of their slaine Enemies, mayntayning in his Army Shambles of mans flesh. In Panuco and Xalisco their state was much like; one made eight thousand Indians wall about his Garden, and let them all perish with Famine. In Machuacan they tortured the King that came forth to meet them, that they might extort Gold from him. They put his feet in the Stockes, and put fire thereto, binding his hands to a Post behinde him; and a Boy stood by, basting his roasted feete with Oyle, another with a Cresse-bow bent to his breast, and on the other hand another with Dogges; of these tortures he dyed. They forced the Indians to deliuer their Idols, hoping they had beene of Gold, but their Golden hope failing, they forced them againe to redeeme them. Yea, where the Fryers had in one place made the Indians to cast away their Images, the Spaniards brought them some from other places to sell them. In the Prouince of Saint *Martha*, they had desolated foure hundred and fiftie miles of Land. The Bishop wrote to the King, that the people called the Spaniards Deuils, or *Tares*, for their Diabolicall practices; and thought the Law, God, and King of the Christians had beene authors of this cruelties.

The like they did in the Kingdome of Venezuela, destroying foure or fiue Millions, and out of that firme Land, carried to the Ilands for slaues at times, in seuenteene yeers, a Million of people.

But why doe I longer trace them in their bloody steps; seeing our Authour that relates much more then I, yet protesteth that it was a thousand times worse. Or what should I tell their sparing no persons? plucking the child from the brest, to quarter it to his Dogs? Torturing Kings with new deuices, borrowed eyther from the Inquisition, or from Hell? Cutting off the noses and hands of men and women, that hued in peace with them? Selling the Father, Mother, Child, to diuers places and persons? Lying with the women (as one of them bragged) that being with childe, they might yeeld more money in the sale? How was Nature become degenerate in these prodigious monsters? Euen the nature of things might bee abashed with the sense of this vnnaturall senselessnesse. The Tygre would rut deuoure his prey, and not curiously torment it; the Lion sometimes spares it; nay, their Dogges haue sometime beene lesse dogged, then their doggish Deuilish Masters. How may wee admire that long suffering of God, that rained not a flood of waters, as in *Noahs* time; or of fire, as in *Lots*, or of stones, as in *Iosuas*; or some vengeance from Heauen vpon these models of Hell? And how could Hell forbeare swallowing such prepared morsels, exceeding the beastlinesse of beasts, inhumanitie of wonted Tyrants, and Deuilishnesse, if it were possible, of the Deuils? But these you will say were [k] Souldiers: let vs leaue the Campe, and looke to their Temples.

[k] *Nulla fides pietasq; virumqui castra sequuntur. Lucan.*

There perhaps you shall see their Priests reading, praying, and (this they most glory of) preaching, to conuert the Indians by their word and workes. Aske *Colmenero*, a Priest of Saint *Martha*, who being asked what hee taught the Indians, said that hee deuoted them with curses to the Deuill, and this sufficed, if he said to them, *Per signum Sanctæ Crucis*. You haue heard what good Diuinitie the Dominican preached to *Atabalba* King of Peru (which wan-

wanted not her wants of Millions by their cruelties, as well as the former:) They teach them (saith l *Acosta*) a few Prayers in the Spanish Tongue, which they vnderstand not; and they which are more painfull, a Catechisme without explanation.

l *Acost. de Prat. Ind. lib. 5. c. 6.*

Their teaching is but a iest and shadow to get mony: they follow dicing, hunting, whooring; in so much that Baptisme is scorned, and the Indians are forced to it against their will: and a sincere and m vpright Iudge was wont to say, that if he came into Spaine, hee would persuade the King to send no more Priests into America; such is their dissoluteness. They had then indeed three Archbishopricks; that of Dominico, which had sixe Suffragane Bishops, the second of *Mexico*, which had 7. the third of *Los Reyes*, to which were subiect three Bishops: yet these teach the people vices, by their practise and ill examples; insomuch that the Indians (say th *Cassa*) are of opinion, that the King of *Spaine* (which hath such subiects, as the Spaniards shew themselues) is himselfe most cruell, and lues on mans flesh; and that of all Gods, the God *of the Christians* is the worst, which hath so bad seruants: longing for their owne Gods, of whom they neuer receiued such ill, as now by this of the Christians. The Spaniards cannot endure the Indians to heare a Sermon, thinking it makes them idle (as *Pharaoh* said n of the Israelites) and captious: they learne them Vsury, lying, swearing, blasphemie, and things repugnant to their nature. Thus did a Cacique o describe a Christian to *Benzo*, by the vnchristian course of the Spaniards. *Christians!* (saith he, looking *Benzo* on the face) *what are Christians? They imperiously demand Maiz, Hony, Silke, Rayment, an Indian woman to lye with them; they call for Gold and Siluer, they will not worke; are Gamesters, Dicers, Wicked, Blasphemers, Backbiters, Quarrellers:* and concluded that Christians could not be good. *Benzo* said, that euill Christians did such things, not the good ones: hee replyed, Where are those good, for I neuer saw any but bad? Hee was seuenty yeeres old, and spake Spanish perfectly. *Benzo* say th, that they would not looke on the Christians, but curse them and as before is said, called them p Sea-froth. Hee being very inquisitiue to see what they thought of our Faith, reported, that some of them taking a piece of Gold, will say, Loe, heere the Christians God: for this they kill vs and one another; for this they play, blasphemie, curse, steale, and doe all manner of villanies. q A *Franciscan* publikely said, that there was neyther Priest, Monke, nor Bishop, good in all India: and the Priests themselues will say, they came thither for gaine. A Cacicques Sonne which was towardly in his youth, and proued after dissolute, being asked the reason thereof, said, *Since I was a Christian, I haue learned to sweare in iuriette, to dice, to lye, to swagger; and now I want nothing but a Concubine (which I meane to haue shortly) to make me a compleate Christian.* These indeed are the Miracles that the Spaniards worke in the Indies, saith our Author. I asked an Indian once if he were a Christian; he againe asked me, if he should be the Bishops Groome a doozen yeeres to keepe his Mule. Others of the Indians, saue a little washing and some cold Ceremonies, know nothing of our Religion.

m *Io. Metall. Sig. 1 ref. c. 1. in Osor.*

n *Exod. 5. 8. 17.*

o *Benzo, l. 2. c. 16*

p *Vincentio.*

q *Cap. 18.*

You haue heard what Commerce and conference many of them were wont to haue with the Deuill: and r how the Spaniards haue taught them, now to scarre him away with the signe of the Crosse. And this is the report of a certaine Spanish *Treatise of Prelates*, that the Deuill is now frayed away with the presence of the holy Sacrament of the Eucharist, and of the holy Crosse: weapons spirituall in pretence, carnall in the inuention, but neither preuayling like the spirituall which s *Paul* mentions, nor effecting so much as some say t of those which are indeed carnall and wholly materiall: Yea these thus vied (with denialll of the power of the Crosse and godlinesse) are the Scepters of his Empire amongst them. And for those carnall weapons which *Paul* disclaymed, the Spaniards doe not onely acknowledge, but glory off. *Nunno* u *de Guzman* auerreth in a writing to the Emperor, that howsoeuer some find fault with their wars vpon the Indians so to bring them to the faith, yet he accounes it a most worthy & holy work, & of so great merit, that in the seruice of God none can be greter.

r *Vid. ap. Hak. l. 2. Cor. 10. 4.*

s *Zanch. de Op. Dei, p. 1.*

t *Ap. Ramus. vol. 3.*

The Indians haue liued at more quiet with the Spaniards, since the King proclamed them free; yet still hate them: and for their Christianitie, *Franciscus* x *à Victoria* protesteth, that it doth not appeare to him, that Christian Religion had beene propounded in meete sort to the Indians: Miracles he heard not of, but on the contrarie, scandals, villanies, and many impieties. This is the Preaching and Conuersion the Romists boast of, and gull our European World with musters of their Miracles, and thousands of their Proselytes which we rather pitie then enuie.

u *Ap. Ramus. vol. 3.*

x *F. à Vic. Rel. 5 De Indis.*

How the case is altered, since that new generation of the *Ignatian* brood hath taughe (especially the Spaniards, *whose they are, and whom they serue*) a better Catholicisme; let *Arnauldus* y tell you: he saith, that they haue indeed wrought Miracles amongst Indians: among which he reckoneth conuerting the Pagans, by butcherly subuerting and rooting them out. In Hispaniola, by keeping the husbands and wiues in diuers workes asunder, the old generation being thus worne out, and a new preuented. In Peru they had publike places of

y *Arnauld. against the Iesuits.*

tor-

torture within the Marches, wherein they might put a thousand at once, by tortures to draw forth confessions of their hidden treasures: such as escaped, hanged themselues in the Mountaynes, and their wiues by them, with their children at their feete. By their Dogs at land they worried them: and in their Pearle-fishing exposed them to the rauening Sharkes, themselues more dogged and sharking then the brute creatures; by fire and Sword consuming 20. Millions of the people, I would giue the Deuill his due, and therefore would not ascribe all this to those later *Locusts*, the Iesuits (who are yet accounted the most cunning and zealous Architects, in setting vp the roofe of that aspiring Spanish Monarchie) these and the like bloudie foundations notwithstanding; and therefore may be called *Accessories after*. As for the Spaniards, we see them by testimonie of their owne, accused of the same things. And how the *Ignatians* wash their hands not from, (but in) bloud, our *Europe* can testifie. 10

What Deuill brought into *America* the Inquisition (his faire Daughter much resembling his accursed presence) I know not: our Countrimen *Philips, Hartop*, and others, knew it to their cost. But what should we speake of the Spanish cruelties to others? Locke on their dealing with each other in ciuill broyles: thus dealt they with *Columbus*, rewarding him with Chaines, and sending him Prisoner to Spaine by that way which he first of all, and for Spaine had discouered. What *Roldanus* and his rebellious faction did in Hispaniola, and *Vascobus* in the Continent, *Martyr* relateth. But the bloudie butcheries passed in Peru: where Couetousnesse, which before had ioyned, now diuorced the hearts of *Pizarro* and *Almagro*; and after that, that neerer coniunction of the head and body of *Almagro*, a reuenged in the persons of all the *Pizarri*, which again retorted the like vengeance vpon the *Almagristi*; their Ghosts seeming, or some hellish furies rather, to be loosed on that Peruuian stage, and to haue brought like mischiefes to the beholders and actors in this Tragedie. Vengeance seemed to haue broken forth of *Acchabbus* Tombe, armed with Sword, fire, halters, chaines; yea the Spaniards themselues offered themselues her officious Vassals, to become cruell Executors of her bloudy Will, in mutuall executions vpon themselues. The awfull names of Vice-royes, Gouernours, and Captaines, were no lesse subiected to imprisonment and death, then the poorest Souldier. But for these ciuill vnciuill cruelties amongst themselues, they require a good Orator to describe them: and those former tyrannies vpon the Indians, are beyond all Oratory and description. Thunders from Heauen had need be the voice to vtter such Hellish and vnheard-of Massacres; Deuils from Hell were fittest Scribes, with the fierie Characters of their infernall work-houses to register them; the reading whereof might astonish the *sense* of the Reader, amaze his *reason*, exceed his *faith*, and fill his heart with horrour and vncouth passions. For mee; I want fit words to paint them in their blacke colours: my Hand with reluctation trembleth at the writing: my Tongue faltereth in the speaking, and wholly I seeme to my selfe surprized with distraction, and not to bee my selfe, whiles the view of this *Spanish Medusa* transformeth mee into a stone: the rather, when I thinke such should our *English* Conuersion haue beene, if in that dismall yeere 1588. *England* had as well succeeded to them as the *Indies*: or if since, our Catholike Preachers had preuayled in their Powder-proiects, in the yeere 1605. Who for a Temple chose a Vault, that their workes of darknesse might be done in the darke, and their Work-house might be neerer to Hell, thence to borrow at hand supplies of Deuillish deuices, and in neerer familiaritie to consult with the Deuill. For words, they had prepared a Sulphurous breath, the smoke whereof might darken the Heauens; the fire might rent the trembling and astonished Earth; the noyse might make the hearers past hearing, and being together. Once, those Hellish *Cerberi* by such preaching had intended there to haue opened the mouth of Hell vpon vs, which should haue swallowed our Lawes, our Religion, our Sun, Moone, and Morning Star (the King, Queene, and Prince) Our fairest Skie of fixed and well ordered lights, then shining in their greatest splendour of Parliament-brightnesse. The Giants of old were said to bee the sonnes of the Earth: but these, as they were engendred of Earth, so had they incestuously violated that their Mother (whether you vnderstand it in a literall or mysticall sense) and begotten in her wombe this Hel-monster of their bloudie Catholicisme; they had designed the time of her Trauell, and themselues would haue beene the Mid-wiues; the Deuils had bidden themselues as Gossips, and at that opening of the Earths wombe in her fierie trauell, would haue sent that way into the World (to attend the Babe) all the black-guard of Hell, Treason, Superstition, Atheisme, Ignorance, Fire, Sword, and all confusion, in a reuolution of a worse *Chaos* then that *Tohu* and *Bohu* of old could haue effected. Then should it haue beene no marueil, if Rome, France, Spaine, or any other had exercised tyrannie or cruelties, seeing all must haue come short of the first cruelties, which our *English* Catholikes had executed, to open the floudgates of bloud vnto them. And all this was the Catholike cause, and these the Preachers, or the Vshers rather to the Preachers (for the Iesuits will bee angry if wee take from

z *Miles Phil. Ioh. Hart. ap. Hak.*

a *See Gomara, Apollonius, Benzo. &c.* of these ciuill warres in Peru.

Powder-treason.

The words of *Moses, Gen. 1.* interpreted, *without forme and void.*

from them their bloudie priuiledge of this new Catholicisme) which the Deuill (till now he is an older and cunninger Serpent) had neuer learned himselfe, nor could learne others, before he had gotten *Ignatius* Vihers in his Hellish Schoole.

But whither is your Pilgrime transported? Friend, I draw neere my Port, and leauing *America* behind mee, still red with this bloud; now also hauing *England* in sight, which (as from a greater height) was neere to a more dangerous fall: and in this subiect, which is of the Spanish cruelties (not written in hatred of their Nation, because they are *Spaniards*) but of their Pseudo-catholike Religion, vnder shew whereof, they there did, and heere would haue executed those butcheries; and for thankfulnesse to God for our later deliuerance, of which the time when I relate these things (being the returne of that very Day, [c] wherein those things should haue beene effected) iustly demandeth my testimony: I haue thus told out my Storie.

And now, me thinkes, I see the shoares of *England*, from which my lingring Pilgrimage hath long detayned me: I heare the Bels, and see the Bon-fires, with publike acclamations of thankfulnesse for that Deliuerance, all singing their *Halleluiahs*, and saying, [d] *This is the Day which the Lord hath made, we will reioyce and be glad in it.* And now I see a better sight then all my Pilgrimage could yeeld; Christian Churches, without Heathenish, Iewish, or Antichristian pollutions: a Royall King, truely entitiuled *Defender of the Faith*: a Learned Clergie; wise and Honourable Counsellors; peaceable and loyall Commons: in a word; *England* presents it selfe to mine eyes, representing to my mind a Map of Heauen and Earth, in the freedome of Bodie and Soule, yea where our subiection and seruice is Freedome (which I haue not else-where found in all my Perambulation of the World) I feele my selfe herewith rauished, and in a ioyfull extasie cannot but crie out: [e] *It is good for vs to bee heere*, in the true Church and Suburbs of the true Heauen:) Heere then, Reader, let me rest me, till I see whether thy kind acceptation of this, will make mee willing to accept another, and neerer (but harder *European*) Pilgrimage.

c *Nouember* 5. on this day this in the first Impression came in due order (without any special appointment) to the Presse.

d *Psal.* 118. 24.

e *Matth.* 17. 4.

Trin-vni Deo gloria.

TWO RELATIONS, ONE OF THE NORTHEASTERNE PARTS, EXTRACTED OVT OF SIR IEROME HORSEY KNIGHT, HIS many yeeres obſeruations and experience *in his frequent and Honourable Employments to and from the* Muſcouite Emperours and the adioyning PRINCES.

THE OTHER, OF THE SOVTHEASTERNE Parts, *viz.* GOLCHONDA, and other adiacent Kingdomes within the Bay of *Bengala*:

Written by M^r. *William Methold.*

LONDON,
Printed by *William Stansby* for *Henry Fetherſtone*, and are to bee ſold at his ſhop in *Pauls* Church-yard at the ſigne of the Roſe.
1626.

TWO

RELATIONS

ONE OF THE

NORTHEASTERNE

PARTS, EXTRACTED

OVT OF SIR HENRIE

HORSEY KNIGHT, HIS

many voyces distributed and conferred

in his frequent and memorable trauels

Written to and from the Moscouites

and other neighbouring

PARTS.

THE OTHER, OF THE

SOVTHEASTERNE

Parts, viz. Tolemonia, and

other adiacent Kingdomes

written by the same

man.

Written by M. Rvssel Mosse.

LONDON:

Printed by William Stansby for Henry Fetherstone, and are to be sold at his shop in Paul's Church-yard at the sign of the Bible.

1626.

To the Reader.

Eader, I here present vnto thee in a later seruice, that which deserued a fitter place in another Worke; and which I had sought with much industrie before, without successe. I am ashamed againe to tell thee with what little effect my Rusſian labours for Intelligence were seconded: but since my PILGRIMES *published,* Sir Ierome Horſeys *kindneſſe offered me (without seeking) better Intelligence then any others could haue giuen; for the times of* Iuan *and* Feodore, *with the politike preparations of* Boris *vnto the Muſcouian Empire: a Story whereof I was so much more desirous, to publiſh; becauſe our Age (if euer ſo ſhort a time in any Age or any State) can hardly parallel the like practiſes of humane Policies, to couetous, cruell, ambitious ends, ended in the Authours and Actors owne Tragedies; God taking the wiſe in their craftineſſe, and iuſtly ſpoyling the vniuſt ſpoylers, of their ſpoyles, liues, ſtates, yea, rooting out their whole Families, the greatneſſe and glory whereof they had ſought to aduance by ſuch wicked courſes; and withall puniſhing the wickednes of the people by ſo frequent forreigne Inuaſions and inteſtine Combuſtions: that wee may out of others euils learne this good,* Diſcite iuſtitiam moniti, *the true vſe of all Hiſtorie. I had out of* Alexander Gwagninus, Paulus Oderbornius *and others collected ſome Relations of* Iuan Vaſiliwich *and his Sonnes, but thoſe could ſee but the out-ſides of things, and giue vs but huskes, ſhels, and rumours, (which often are vncertaine, ſometimes falſe) but here wee preſent an Eye-witneſſe, which tooke not vp Newes on truſt by wonted Bils and Tales of Exchange, but was admitted vnto the Myſteries of that State, in the Hiſtorie of the Imperiall Acts written in their Records; and in his owne perſonall and honourable Employments betwixt Queene* Elizabeth *of glorious Memory, and the Ruſſian Emperours. And indeed want of the Languages of remote Regions hath hatched many imperfect Hiſtories, the blind leading the blind into errour; wherein as I haue euer loued truth, ſo was I glad to rectifie our Ruſſian Relations by opportunitie of ſo worthy a Guide; whoſe Papers had before furniſhed Doctor* Fletcher *with the beſt peeces of his Intelligence. Euen here alſo I was ſtraitned in time, the Preſſe purſuing me ſo faſt, that I had not leiſure to tranſcribe at large the Authours Daniſh, Poliſh and Germane*

See my *Pilgrimes*, Part. 3. l. 4. c. 9.

See *Purchas his Pilgrimes*, Part. 3. l. 3. c. 1.

Relations; nor to adde forme or beauty from Arte: and perhaps this natiue nakednesse in a Iournall or Trauelling Method will be to some most acceptable. The Author and matter addes better lustre to the Worke then my words can; the one so full of varietie and weight, the other an experienced and Religious Knight, employed in many and honourable Seruices of State, and honouring the Name and Family of the Horseys, *with his Acts, Arts, and good Parts. Who had long since also dedicated this Worke to that Honourable Patriote Sir* Francis Walsingham.

Now for Master Methold, *I had spared some of* Frederikes, Balbies, *and* Fitches *Relations, if these had come in time, which so many times I had both by messages and in person sought, and by reason of the Authours absence or businesses was frustrate. But the Reader will finde his labour and cost recompensed in the Rarities of matter, and stile also trauelling beyond the wonted pace of a Merchant-Traueller. The Relation is correspondent to the Subiect, it entreates of a Mine of Diamants, and is a Mine of Diamants it selfe. Gemmes maybee put on after the whole bodie (so I call my former large Worke) is attired and after that full repast, as Indian Drugs vsed in second Seruices, it will second thee with a new, and refresh thee with a fresh Indian appetite, and present vnto thee (like Spectacles after great Feasts) such a muster of Indian Elements, affaires, men, arts, Religions, customes, and other varieties, as before we were not able to bring on our Stage.*

Vale & fruere.

EX-

EXTRACTS OVT OF SIR IEROME HORSEYS OBSERVATIONS IN SEVENTEENE YEERES TRAVELS AND EXPERIENCE IN RVSSIA, AND OTHER COVNTRIES ADIOYNING.

Hauing before seene FRANCE and the Low *Countries by Sir* EDWARD HORSEYS meanes, and in the company and charge of Master *William Mericke* Agent *for the Company.*

Arriued in Muscouia, *A.* 1573. and hauing some smack in the Greeke, by affinity thereof in short space attained the ready knowledge of their vulgar speech, the Sclauonian Tongue, the most copious & elegant Language of the World; with some small difference of (Dialect) comming neere the Polish Lettois and Transyluanian, and all those Countries adiacent, being vsed by Merchants in Turkie also, Persia, & in India. I read their Chronicles written and kept in secret by a great Prince of that Country, *Kneze Mistislofskie*; who out of his loue and fauour imparted vnto mee many secrets obserued in the memory of his fourtescore yeeres time, of the nature and gouernment of that State. To omit things of former ages, *Vasily Andreowich* hauing enlarged his Dominions vpon the Pole and Swethen, and specially on the Crimme Tartars, left his people strong and rich, his Countries diuided into foure parts; and two Sonnes, the eldest of fiue yeeres called *Velica Kneze Iuan Vasilliwich* which reigned after him; the other of two yeeres Duke of Vaga.

Large extent of the Sclauonian tongue.

Russian Chronicles.

Vasily or *Basilius*, great Duke of Russia.

Iuan grew vp comely in person, indued with excellent gifts. At twelue yeeres age he married *Neistacia Romanowa*, which became so wise and vertuous, that she was much loued and feared, a long time carrying the whole sway. Her Husband being young and riotous, she ruled with admirable wisdome, so that he cast off the yoke of homage to the Crym, conquered diuers Tartarian Princes, the Empires of Casan and Astracan 2700. miles downe the Volga from Mosco, and by a generall Councell of his Princes, Prelates, and Nobles was crowned and stiled the Emperour, and Great Duke of Volladamiria, Muscouia, Cazan and Astracan, &c. His Conquests grew with his yeeres. He tooke from the King of Poland the famous Citie of Pollozca, the great Citie of Smolensca, Doragabus, Vasma, and many other Townes with much riches, and infinite numbers of captiues, seuen hundred miles within their confines, Lituania and Bela Russia, goodly Townes of Trafficke, and Countries yeelding Waxe, Flaxe, Hempe, Tallow, Hides, Cotne and Cattell in abundance. He grew pu-

His two Sons, *Iuan* & *Andrew* *Iuan* succeedeth.

Entitulad Emperour.

Nastacia the Emperesse made a Saint, Second Wife a Tartar.

ifsant and proud, ouermightie for his next Neighbours, and bloudie in all his Conquests. When his good Queene *Nastacia* dyed, she was canonized a Saint, and to this day worshipped in their Churches. By her he had two Sonnes *Iuan* and *Theodore*.

The Emperour after this married one of the *Circas* by whom hee had no issue that hee would be knowne of. The manner of this Marriage was strange and heathenish, which I forbeare out of their owne History to relate. By this Marriage hee was much strengthened by the Tartars better Souldiers then the Natiues, of whom he made vse to curbe his Princes and Nobles which were discontent with his cruell robbing, and incessant murthering of his Nobilitie. He sec forward with 100000. Horse and 50000. Foot with prouisions of Cannon and Munition towards Liuonia and Swethia, kils men, women and children in his way to Nouogrod and Pleico the two greatest Townes of Trafficke in all the East, with the Narue, which three stand triangle wise at the end of the Baltike Sea within the Sound. In this last hee builta Castle called *Iuan Gorod*, and caused the eyes of the Architect to bee bored out. Thence he enters the Confines of Liuonia, sends *Knez Iuan Grinsoy*, to besiege Newhous, which was taken with all the Townes in the way to Dorp. This also yeelded, and the Tartars carried away eight thousand Captiues, the Merchandize and Treasure was sent to Nogrod for the Emperours vse. He proceedeth, deuideth his Army into foure parts, ten thousand are appointed to draw the Ordnance ouer the frozen Lakes, takes all in his way, thirty walled Townes and Castles neere the Easterne Sea within two hundred miles compasse, drowning, burning, rauishing Maydes and Wiues, stripping them naked notwithstanding the cold, tying them by two and three at their Horse tayles, and dragging them some aliue, some dead, the wayes and streets lying full of carkasses of euery age and sexe. These Liuonians are accounted the faiest people in the World. Infinite numbers were sent into Russia with infinite treasure. Sixe hundred Churches were robbed and destroyed. He and his Tartars at last came to Reuell, besiegeth and batters it with twentie Cannons. The Inhabitants by night make vp the breaches by carrying and casting hote and cold water which froze so thicke, that after sixe weekes siege, and 20000. Cannon shot spent with losse of 7000, he hasted away, the sudden thaw also making him to leaue much of his Artillery behind, with former booties, baggage, and 30000. men, in his retiring.

Narue Castle. Architect blinded that hee might not doe the like to others.

Cruelties.

Ice-fortification.

Enraged with fury for this repulse and losse hee comes backe to the Narue, spoyles the Towne of all the Riches and Merchandise, kils men, women, and children, and giues the spoyle to his Tartars, which bred no small emulation in his Russe Captaines. Thence hee marcheth to Plescoue (*alias Vobsco*) where he intended to doe the like, easily beleeuing those which reported that these two Townes and Nouogrod had practised against him, that by their meanes hee had sustayned his losse at Reuel. But there met him a Magician *Mikula Swat* which that Towne held their Oracle, who with bold Imprecations and Exorcismes calling him Bloud-sucker and Deuourer of Christian flesh, swore by his Angell that hee should not escape death by a present Thunderbolt, if he or any of his did touch the least childs haire in that Citie, which God by his Angel did preserue for better purpose then his rapine: that therefore he should get him thence before the fierie Cloud of Gods wrath were raysed which he might behold hanging ouer his head, it being a very great and darke storme at that instant. The Emperour trembling at these words, desired Prayers for his deliuerance, and forgiuenesse of his cruell thoughts. I saw this Impostor, a foule creature: hee went naked Winter and Summer, enduring extreame frost and heat. His Holinesse could not endure me. He did many strange things by Magicall Illusions, and was much followed and feared there of Prince and people.

Plesco by a Magician deliuered.

Nouogrod spoiled with horrible cruelties.

The Emperour returning to Nouogrod, where all his Captiues and Prisoners remayned, in exceeding discontent he chargeth it with 30000. Tartars, and 10000. Gunners of his Guard, who without respect rauished the women and maides, robbed and spoyled all that were within it: murthered young and old, burned the houshold stuffe and Merchandises with Ware-houses of Waxe, Flaxe, Cordage, Tallow, Hides, Salt, Wines, Cloth of Gold, Silkes, Furres, all set on fire. The Waxe and Tallow melted ran downe the Kennels of the streets together with the bloud of 700000. men, women, and children, as some affirmed, besides beasts: insomuch that with bloud and carkasses the Riuer *Volga* was as it were stopped. He vanted that this Massacre should exceed those of Niniue and Ierusalem. The Citie being thus destroyed and desolate he returned towards Musco, and in the way employes his Captaynes to take the people in the Townes and Villages within a hundred miles compasse, Gentlemen, Peasants, Merchants, and Monkes, old and young, with their Families, Goods, and Cattle to goe and inhabit this ruined Nouogrod, exposing them to a new slaughter. For many of them dyed with Pestilence and poyson of that infected place, which could not bee replenished to any purpose.

700000. slaine.

Another cruelties added.

Not long after God empties the Emperours Kingdome and chiefe Cities of his people by Pesti-

Pestilence, Famine, Fire and Sword: and this his cruelties bred such discontent, that many practised to destroy him, which were still discouered. Hee countenanced the Rascalitie and the most desperate Souldiers against the chiefe Nobility. Hee setled his Treasures in Mosco and the principall Monasteries. Many of the Nobilitie he put to shamefull deaths and tortures: and now suspecting his Chercas Tartars also, he placed them in his new Conquests of Leesland and Swaeuland. The Crim Tartar his ancient Enemy inuaded him, incited by his Nobilitie as he found out against whom he leuies out of remote Prouinces a huge Army of strangers; with his owne hundred thousand horse, and fifty thousand foot. He discards his *Cherceu* wife, and puts her in a Monastery, and among many of his owne Subiects, chuseth *Natalia* Daughter to *Kneas Phrodor Bulgalow* a great Commander in his warres, who soone after lost his head, and his Daughter within a yeere was shorne a Nunne. Newes came of his Enemies approch, (God suffered this wicked people who liued and wallowed in the height of their wickednesse and lust of crying Sodomiticall sinnes, to be thus punished both by so bloudy a King, and this Scythian Enemy) who came with two hundred thousand Horsemen within fifty miles compasse on the Riuer Occa neere Circapoe, and vpon secret intelligence, as was thought, he passed the Riuer without repulse of the Emperours Army, who durst not on paine of death stirre beyond their bounds vpon whatsoeuer aduantage. The Enemy approching the great City of *Musco*, the *Russe* Emperour flies with his two Sonnes, Treasure, Seruants and his Guard of twenty thousand Gunners towards a strong Monastery *Troiets*, or the *Trinity* sixty miles off.

The Crimme inuadeth Russia.

Iuans third Wife.

Vpon *Ascension* day, the Enemy fires the high steeple of Saint *Iohns* Church, at which instant happened a tempestuous wind, whereby all the Churches Houses, Monasteries, and Palaces within the City and Suburbs thirty miles compasse, built most of Fire and Oke were seen on fire and consumed in fixe hours space with infinite thousands of * Men, Women, and Children burnt and smothered to death by the fierie aire; few escaping, without and within the three walled Castles. The Riuer and Ditches about Musco were stopped and filled with multitudes of people laden with Gold, Siluer, Iewels, Earings, Chaines, Bracelets, Rings and other Treasure, which went for succour to saue their heads aboue water. All which notwithstanding, so many thousands were there burnt and drowned, that the Riuer could not with all meanes and industry that could bee vsed, bee in two yeeres after cleansed; those which were lefe aliue, and many from other places being daily occupied within great circuits to search and dragge for Iewels, Plate, bags of Gold and Siluer. I my selfe was somewhat the better for that nothing. The streets of the City, Churches, Sellers and Vaults lay so thicke and full of dead carkasses as no man could passe for the noysome smels long after. The *Crim* and his Army beheld this fire, solacing himselfe in a faire Monastery foure miles off, and tooke the spoyle of such as fled from the fire, besetting all the ways about the Citie, and returned with much Treasure, and store of Captiues passing ouer the Riuer the same way they came.

1571.

* D. *Fletcher* expresseth this number to bee 800000. which may seeme credible not only by the multitudes of Inhabitants at that time, but also the Neighbour Villages and Countries fleeing thither for refuge.

The *Russe* Emperour fled further to *Vologda*, fiue hundred miles from Mosco, accompanied with his Clergy, in whom he had most confidence. He summons a Councell Royall, dissolues his Army which fought not a stroke for him, examined, racked and tortured many of his chiefe Captaines; executes, confiscates, destroyes their Race and Families: takes order for clensing, repayring and replenishing Musco. In the midst of this Parliament *Chigaly Mursoy* sends an Embassadour attended with many *Mursoys*, (in their account Noblemen) all well horsed, clothed in sheepes skinne Coats girt to them with blacke Caps of the same, hauing Bowes and Arrowes with curious Cymitars by their sides. They had a Guard to keepe them in darke Roomes; stinking Horse flesh, and water was their best dyet, without Bread, Beere, Bed, or Candle. At the time of their audience bad vsage was offered them which they pussed at and scorned. The Emperour sate with his three Crownes before him in great Royalty, his Princes and Nobles attending, richly adorned with Iewels and Pearle. He commanded the Embassadors sheepe skinne Coate and Cap to be taken off, and a Golden Robe and rich Cap to be put on, who laughed aloud thereat, enters the Emperours presence, his followers being kept backe in a space grated with Iron. The Embassadour chates with a hollow, hellish voyce looking fierce and grimly on the Emperour, beeing otherwise a most vgly Creature. Foute Captaines of the Guard bring him neere His seate, and then without reuerence he thunders out that *his Master and Lord* Chigaley *great Emperour of all the Kingdomes and* Chams *that the Sunne doth spread his beames ouer, hath sent to him* Iuan Vasilli. which *his Vassall and great Duke ouer all Russia by his permission, to know how he liked the scourge of his displeasure by sword, fire, and famine; and withall had sent him for remedie, a present of his indignation* (pulling out a foule rustie Knife) *to cut his throat with all.* This done, hee hasted out of the Roome without answere. They would haue taken off his golden Gowne and Cap, but he and his company strouc with them, and would not permit it. The Emperour fell in-

Simon Monastery.

A strange Embassador from the Crim.

to

to an agony, tore his haire and beard, sent for his Ghostly Father. The chiefe Captaine desired leaue to cut them all in pieces, but he gaue no answere. After he had detayned him some time, his fury being alayed, he sent him away with better vsage and this Messige: *Tell the Merchant and vnbeleuer thy Master, it is not he, it is my sinnes and the sinnes of my people against my God and Christ: he it is that hath giuen him a kinme of the Deuill this power and opertunitie to to be the instrument of my rebuke, by whose pleasure and helpe I doubt not of vengeance, and to make him my Vassall, though he be now but a Runnegate, and hath no place of abode to be found out in.* Hee answered, *he would not doe him so much seruice to speeke so arrogant a message from him.* Wherevpon, not long after, hee did addresse a Noble Gentleman *Alfonsy Phedorowicz Nagoy* in that Embassie, who was there detayned and indured much misery for seuen yeeres space.

The Tartars haue no Cities, &c.

The Emperour was loth to come to Musco, but sent for the chiefe Merchants, Handicrafts and Tradesmen from all other Cities and Townes within his Kingdome to build and inhabit there and further to draw Trafficke thither, tooke away all Impositions, and granted freedome of Customes; set seuen thousand Masons and Workmen to build a faire stone Wall round about the Musco, which was finished in foue yeeres space, strong and beautifull, and furnished with faire brasse Ordenance: he also settled his Offices and Officers of Iustice therein as before.

Stone wall about Musco.

Vologda on Dwina *Bomelius.*

Himselfe kept much at *Vologda*, on the Riuer *Dwina*, the Centre and safest place of his Kingdome. He conferred much with one *Elesius Bomelius*, a Mathematician come out of *England*. He also sent for skillull Architect, Carpenters, Ioyners, Masons, Goldsmiths, Physicians, Apothecaries and such like out of *England*. He builds a Treasure-house of stone, great Barkes and Barges to conuey and transport Treasure vpon any sudden occasion to *Solluetzkoy* Monastery standing on the North Sea, the direct way to *England*. Hee fleeced his Merchants by taking their Commodities to exchange with Merchant Strangers for Gold, Dollers, Iewels and Pearles which he tooke into his Treasury, paying little or nothing, hee borrowed great summes of Cities, Townes, and Monasteries, exhausting all their wealth by great Impositions and Customes, to augment his owne Treasure, which he neuer would diminish vpon any occasion whatsoeuer; whereby hee became so odious that in a desperate resolution he deuised to preuent and alter his estate, to annull and frustrate all these engagements of his Crowne. He made a diuision of his Subiects, calling the one *Oprosny*, and the other *Somsoy*, and established a new King or Emperour named *Cbar Spinon*, Sonne to the Emperour of *Casan*, transferring on him his stile and Crowne with the authority incident, but crowning him without any solemnitie or consent of Peeres. Hee causeth his Subiects to addresse their persons, suites, and affaires to him & in his name, all Priuiledges, Charters, and Writings to be called in, and new to be granted in this Emperours Name and vnder his Seale: in his name are all Court pleadings, Coynes, Customes, Fines, Reuenues for the maintenance of his House, Officers and Seruants. Hee sits in Maiesty and is lyable to all debts and matters concerning his Treasury. The old Emperour and his Sonnes prostrate themselues and his Bishops, Nobility, and Officers are caused to do the like: Embassadors also to resort to him (which some refused) and he further married him to the Daughter of a Prime Prince of the bloud Royall, named *Kneas Mistbisloskoie*.

Rapacitie.

Strange policy to frustrate debts by resigning his Empire.

Now would the old Emperour take no notice of debts owing in his time, Letters Patents and Priuiledges of Townes and Monasteries are made voyd, States of Inheritance for want of confirmation and other things are at a stand. His Clergy, Nobility and Commons for remedy hereof, after a yeeres discontinuance must petition *Iuan Vassilowch*, that hee will bee pleased to resume the Crowne and Gouernment vpon many conditions and authenticall instruments confirmed by Act of Parliament in a very solemne new Inauguration. Hee being content, infinite Gifts and Presents of worth were sought to bestow on him, his old debts and former incumbrances discharged. Now he is againe inuested *in statu quo prius*, regrants Priuiledges to Townes, Monasteries, Noblemen and Merchants, vpon new compositions, whence a portion is made for his Neece, daughter to *Knez Andrew* his late Brother, who in iealousie (as was thought) of the peoples loue to him was made away, in pledging the Emperour in a Cup of Mead which he had drunke to him. This his daughter was married to *Hartique Magnus* Brother to *Frederike* King of Denmarke, borne before his Father *Christianus* Duke of Holst was elected King of that Countrey. To pacific dissention betwixt them, King *Frederike* was content to exchange for the Dukedome of Holst all his Townes, Castles and Lands during his life which hee had in Liefland. This Emperour makes vp the Match, and marries them in Mosco, giues him in dowre with his Neece *Elona*, all the interest he had in the Townes and Castles conquered by him in Liuonia, establishing him therein, and stiling him *Corall*, that is, King *Magnus*; giues him a hundred good Horse well furnished, 200000. *Robles* in Gold, Siluer, Place, Iewels, and rich apparell, with liberall gifts to all his Followers, sends 2000. horse to see this King and Queene seeled in their estates at the City of Dorp.

Emperours Brother made away.

King *Magnus.* A Rable is about a Marke English, three Dollers.

But

But in steed of expected amity, wars follow from Denmarke and Swethia, those two Kings joyning with *Stephanus* that valiant King of Pelind, who not long after got from him the Narue, and besieged Plescoue. The Dane and Swethen are also competitors with him in certaine Territories on the North Coast, Wardhouse, Cola, Sollauetsca, Vrlague, &c. Put him from his Customes and Trafficke there, offering also to debarre the English Merchants in their passage for fishing on those Coasts, and trading with them at Saint *Nicholas* and *Colmogro*. The Emperour notwithstanding these incursions, lends for all his Nobles and Gentlemens faire st daughters (Virgins) thorow his Kingdome, out of whom hee chuseth a wife for himselfe, and another for his eldest Sonne *Charewich Iuan*. Her name was *Nastacia*, daughter to *Iuan Sherimitten a Viouod* of a good Family. The Emperour liueth in feare, daily discouers Treasons, and spends much time in torturing and execution. His fourth Wife. * *Necesse est multos timeat, qui eo multa timent.* I saw it.

One *Knez Pheodor Curakin* Gouernour of *Vsendon* in *Liuonia*, when King *Stephanus* came to besiege it, and found drunke (as was pretended) was stripped naked, layd in a Cart, whipped thorow the Musco with sixe whips of Wire (which cut his backe, belly, and bowels) to death. *Iuan Chiglicoue* was hanged naked by the heeles on a Gibbet, the skin and flesh of his body from top to toe cut off and minced with Knives by small gobbets. Foure *Pallarnekes* were Executioners, one of which thrusting his Knife too farre (it seemes, purposing to dispatch him) was presently had to a blocke, and that hand cut off, whereof (not well feared) he dyed the next day. Many other were knocked on the head, and cast into the Pooles and Lakes at Slobida, their flesh fed on by ouer-growne Carpes, Pikes & other fish, whose fat was such that hardly any thing else could be seene on them. *Knez Boris Telupa*, a great Fauourite, was set on a long sharpe stake entring at his fundament, and comming out at his necke, on which he languished fifteene houres, and spake vnto his Mother the Dutchesse which was brought to behold that wofull spectacle: after which sight she was giuen to a hundred Gunners of his Guard, which one after another defiled her to death. Her body swolne and lying naked in the field, open to the view of all which passed by, hee commanded his Huntsmen to bring their hungry Hounds to deuoure her flesh, and bones dragged vp and downe. The Emperour at this sight said, such as I fauour I haue honoured, and to such as bee Traytors I will doe thus. I could enumerate many more like Obiects, but I forbeare; his chiefe exercise being to deuise and execute new torture, especially on his Nobility best beloued of his Subiects. Fishfed fat of mans flesh. A hominable execution.

But his estate still growing daily more dangerous, he enquired of *Elizius Bomelius* Doctor of Physicke, a rare Mathematician or Magician, and of others of Queene *Elizabeths* yeeres, and what hopes there might be if he should be a Suter vnto her for himselfe: notwithstanding that he had three wiues then liuing, and many Kings could not preuaile in that Sute. Presently he puts his last wife into a Nunnery, and thinking to make *England* in case of extremitie his safest refuge, built and prepared many goodly Barkes, large Boats, or Barges at Vologda, and brought his richest Treasure thitherto be embarked in the same to passe downe the Riuer *Dwina*, and so into *England* by the English ships vpon a sudden, leauing his eldest Sonne *Charewich Iuan* to gouerne and pacifie his so troubled estate. To this purpose hee experimented a rare project, which increased his treasure and hatred together. He cals for the principall Priors, Abbats, Archimandrites and Egomens of the richest Monasteries of his Kingdome, which were very many, and told them that what he had to say was best knowne vnto themselues. *He had spent the most part of his time, wits, vigor and youth in warfaring for their wealth and safetie, who had receiued increase by that which had exhausted his treasure and safetie (by his danger) from forreine Enemies and disloyall practisers: nor could hee or they longer subsist without assistance. Their Prayers preuailed not whether for his, their or his peoples sinnes; supply out of their infinite abundance must bee the triall of their fidelities, which vrgent necessitie of the time exacted, the soules of their Patrons and Deuors (Saints and Wonderworkers) for redemption of their sinnes and soules command, and they must prepare their best thoughts without sophisticall refusals.* Vpon these Rhetoricall threats at the Prouincial Conuocation called in the great Consistory of the Holy Ghost, the Oath of Soureigntie was ministred in the Citie of Mosco. Some feare there was that he did ayme at all. His purposes for *England*. New Policy.

After many disputes and allegations (which appeare in the Originall) prepared for the Kings audience, hee hauing intelligence by priuy Spyes from their Register, framed delayes of audience, meane whiles thundering threats to be carried by his Iniigators to their eares. He cals forty of the most pragmaticall, tels them, hee vnderstands of their consultations and that they *were the principall, whom his mild Relation of his disaduentures, and the peoples miseries had not mollified. What shall we render you for reward? the Nobilitie and people cry out that ties had not mollified. What shall we render you for reward? the Nobilitie and people cry out that* 63 *you haue got all the treasure in the Land, by trading in all kind of Merchandises, taking the benefit of all other mens trauels, being priuiledged to pay no Custome to our Crowne, nor charge of warres: and by terrifying the best sort of our Subiects, You haue gotten by due computation the third part of the*

the Townes Royalties, and Villages of this Kingdome into your Possessions, by your Witchery, Inchantments and Sorcery. You buy and sell the soules of our people, you liue a most idle life in all pleasure and delicacie, commit most horrible sinnes, Extortion, Briberie and excessiue Vsurie. You abound in all the bloudie and crying sinnes, Oppression, Gluttony, Idlenesse, Sodomitry, and worse (if worse may be) with beasts. We haue much to answere before God to suffer you to liue, and so many more worthy to die for you. God forgiue my taking part with you. Did not the Pope of late by his Nuncio earnestly persuade to haue the Supremacie euer you, and to dispose of all your Places and Reuenues? Hath not the Greeke Church often solicited vs for the change of your Metropolitan Sea, by mediation of the Patriarke of Alexandria? Yea and often I haue beene moued for your dissolution to the reparation of thousands of my ancientest and poorest Nobility, from whose Ancestors most of your Reuenues came, and to whom it most iustly belongs, that haue spent their liuings and liues for your safeties and enrichings, and my rich Subiects are imponerished thorow your rapine and deuilish Illusions. A faire Example woe haue of that valorous King of England, Henry *the Eighth; your Reuenues being much more, besides your standing treasure, then your prodigall and luxurious maintenance can expend. By which meanes our Nobilitie and seruiceable Subiects are decayed and our treasure so exhausted, that we are inforced by the secret inspiration, by the Soules and holy Saints, the holy workers of Wonders, from whom you professe to hold that infinite treasure, not yours, that lies as a dead talent in your custodies, put to no Religious vse. In their names and all the Donors and Benefactors we conture and command that by such a day, lest you be all then thorough the plague of Gods iust wrath deuoured by wild beasts of the Forrest (who attend the execution of your iudgement with a more sudden and sorrefull death then befell the falsehood of* Ananias *and* Saphyras *denial) you bring vs a faithfull and true Inuentorie what treasure and yeerely Reuenues euery of your Houses haue in possession. Necessitie will not permit delay nor excuse for the contrary. By that time we intend to call a Parliament Royall to be Iudges of our vrgent necessitie for defence of our Realme against the Kings and Princes of* Poland, Swethia, Lituania, *and* Denmarke, *all combined, and our Rebels confederated with the* Crimme, *and to bee witnesses also of the discharge of our duties to God and his Angels (to incite you in their name) and his poore distressed people, for whose necessities and preservation of you all we are thus earnest, their so miserable estates lying yet in your hands and power, in time to remedie and sustaine.*

* *Ant. Possenium.*

The chiefe of the Clergy often assembled and dissembled, deuising with the discontented Nobility to make warre and resist. But they wanted sufficient Commanders, and were otherwise vnprouided of Armes. Hereof the Emperour tooke aduantage, and proclaymed the heads of those Houses to be Traytors, endites twenty of the principall, and chargeth them with Treasons and other odious crimes, hauing fitted pregnant proofes to manifest the same to be true. He commands his great wild Beares to be brought out of their darke Caues, kept of purpose for such pastimes at Slobida Velica. Vpon Saint *Isaies* day, in a spacious place walled about, seuen of the principall fat belshed Fryers were brought forth one after another, each with his Crosse and Beads in one hand, and (through the Emperours great fauour) a Bore-speare of fiue foot in length in the other hand for his defence. A wilde Beare was let loose, which ranging against the wall, sented the Fryer and made more mad with the people shouting and cry, runnes at him fiercely, and crusheth his head, body, bowels, legs, and armes as a Cat doth a Mouse, and hauing thus deuoured or torne the Fryer, was shot and killed by the Gunners. Then was another Fryer and a fresh Beare in like fort committed and like wise serued, and so the rest, of which only the last had so much skill and agility that setting the end of his Speare in the ground, and guiding it to the breast of the Beare, he ranne himselfe thorow on it, and both dyed in the place. This Fryer was canonized for a valiant Saint by the rest of his liuing Brethren, of *Michella Swets* in Suskal. Seuen other Fryers were condemned to be buryed aliue. Hereupon the Metropolites Bishops, Monkes, and Fryers of all Houses resorted with Petitions and Prostrations to pacifie the Emperour, not only suffering his Ghostly Father to absolue him, but acknowledging the others to haue suffered iustly, hoping that it would be example to all which professed holy Orders. They all, their Treasuries, and Heads of all the chiefe Monasteries and Nunneries did in the name of themselues and the soules of their holy founders present a true and perfect Inuentory of all their Treasure, Moneyes, Townes, Lands, and Reuenewes particularly belonging to any Saint which commended the same to their trust and custodies successiuely for the euerlasting maintenance of those holy Seminaries and Sanctuaries, hoping and assuredly beleeuing that his sacred Soule in commemoration of all others, will not suffer any violation in his age, which must passe away with accounts before the Trinity of things in all Ages done: if otherwise, that it would please him to giue them some authenticall discharge to remayne to Posteritie. I haue with my best skill translated thus much *verbatim* out of the Originall.

Execution by Beares.

The Frier killeth the Beare with his Spear, and is killed by her.

These Inchantments preuented their dissolution, but preuayled not against the Emperours resolute demand of 300000. Markes sterling brought speedily in Coyne vnto his Treasury,

fury, besides the resignation of many Precincts, Townes, Lands, Villages and Royalties, at left as much more worth, to dispose of (though with great grudge) to the discontented Nobles, whose Houses were thereby made to serue his turne in all his designes. Here hath hee raysed a new treasure without diminishing any part of his old, being moft prepared for *England*. But neyther his Embassadour *Andrew Saucen*, nor Master *Antheonis Jenkinson* did so thorowly expresse his minde, being darkely and cautelously made knowne to them, or else Queene *Elizabeth* would not apprehend the message. But this secrecy notwithstanding, his eldeft Sonne and Fauourites tooke knowledge of it, which bred sich iealousie in the Emperour, that he was faine to dissemble his affection, and couer his purpose therein with a new
10 Marriage at home, one *Feodor Nagoi* daughter a Subiect of his owne, by whom afterwards he had a third Sonne called *Demetrius*.

Iuani fishwife, mother of *Demetrius*.

He spends now his time in pacifying his discontented Nobility and people, kept two Armies on foot with small charge (his Princes and Nobles going moft on their owne charge, the Gentlemen and *Swobarskys* hauing portions of Money, Corne and Land, certayne Reuenewes being put a part for that purpose, besides Escheats, Robberies, and Customes payed them whether they goe to warre or no) without diminution of his Crowne Reuenew, or great standing Treasure. The one Army consisted moft of Tartars employed against the Pole and Sweden which sought to recouer Liuonia. The other Army consisted commonly of 100000. Horse, moft his owne Subiects, some few *Poles*, *Swedens*, *Dutch* and *Scots*, employed
20 against the *Crimme*, which commonly doth not last above three monethes, *May*, *Iune*, and *Iuly* euery yeere. His *Tartars* notwithstanding King *Stephens* preuayling, bring away many Captiues out of Lafland, the fruitfullest Land in all the East, flowing with Milke and Honey, the fairest women and best conditioned people in the World to conuerse and commerce with, but giuen much to Luxury, Idlenesse and Pleasure: for which sinnes they themselues say that God hath thus plagued and rooted them out, and planted Strangers in their Countrey. It was my fortune, by speciall fauour, to buy and redeeme diuers men, women, and children of these Captiues, for small summes of money, some being Merchants of good quality; and got leaue to conuay some to *Lafland* again, some to *England*, some to *Hamborow* and *Lubeck*.

Liuonia commended.

30 Amongst them were taken some *Dutch*, *French*, *Scots*, and *English*, which had serued vnder *Pontus a French* Captain, who were placed about the Suburbs of the *Mosco*, & by my mediation had leaue to build a Church, I contributed well thereto, and got them a Learned Minister, their Assembly were at least two thousand euery Sunday, their Rites after the *Lutherans* fashion. Of these eighty fiue were *Scots* Souldiers left of seuen hundred sent from *Stockholme*, and three *English* in their company. I got them well housed at *Boluan* neere the *Mosco*. I appeased the Emperours fury against them, causing to be told him the difference of these remote Aduenturers (ready to serue any Christian Prince for pay) and the Natiue *Swedens*; and that they would be of good vse against the *Crimme Tartar*. Some vse was after made of my aduice, and 1200. of them did better seruice against the *Tartar*, then 12000.
40 *Russes*, with their short Bowes and Arrowes. The *Tartars* (not knowing before the vse of Pistols) were struck dead off their Horses with shot they saw not, and cryed, away with those new Deuils that come with their thundring puffs of fire whereat the Emperor laughed and wished for more of them: and they had Pensions and Lands allowed, and married with the *Liuonian* women increased into Families. I was glad hee tooke no notice of the *English*, which might haue yeelded him an opportune quarrell to my selfe, and to the Merchants goods in his Countrey worth 100000. Markes. A little before hee had sold Master *Thomas Glouer* a chiefe Agent for the *English* Company, a Wife borne of a Noble House in *Poland*, *Basmanowna*, taken Captiue with her Sister at *Pollotzca*, for 10000. *Hungarian* Duckets in Gold: and yet shortly after on displeasure, tooke from him 16000. pounds more in Cloth, 50 Silkes and other merchandise, and sent him with his Wife empty out of his Land.

English & *Scots*.

Capt. Silke of Brillow.

M.T. Glouer father to Sir *Th. Glouer* the Embassadour into *Turkie*.

The Emperour expecting some returne and answer of his Letters out of *England*, the Queene addressed one *Daniel Sylvester* there with, who arriued at Saint *Nuholas*, past vp to *Colmogro*, and there making Clothes for his passing vp to the Emperour, whiles the Taylor was putting on him his new Sute in the *English* house, a Thunderbolt strooke him dead, piercing downe his necke and coller in the inside of his new Coat, not outwardly seene. A flash of Lightning killed also his Boy and Dogge by him, burnt his Deske, Letters and the House at that instant: at which newes, the Emperour much perplexed, said Gods will bee done. But raging and in desperate case, his Enemies besetting three parts of his Countrey (the *Pole* and *Sweden* Eastward, and *Crimme* Southward) King *Stephen* threatning also shortly to
60 visit the *Mosco*: He made preparation, but pretending that he could no way be furnished of Powder, Salt-peeter, Lead and Brimstone, the *Norme* being shut, but out of *England*, hee sent for me and told me he had a message of honour, weight, and secresie to employ me in, to the

Daniel Sylvester sent from Q. *Elizabeth*, hee could well speake the Language. His death. *July* 15. 1575.

the Queenes Maiesty: Perceiuing that I had attayned the familiar knowledge of his Language the *Polish* and *Dutch* Tongues, he questioned me of diuers things, liked my answere, asked if I had seene his great Vessels at Vologda. I told him I had. What Traytor hath shewed them you? I ventured in company of thousands more (I said) to behold their beauty, &c. He said, You shall see double the number ere long, but much more to bee admired, if you knew what inestimable treasure they are inwardly to be beautified with. It is reported that your Queene my Sister hath the best Nauy of Ships in the World. It is true said I, and entred into a large discourse and description of them.

Iuan discourse with the Author.

He gaue me charge to prepare my selfe and to be silent and secret, and to attend euery day till he were prepared for my dispatch, he commanded his Secretary to take in writing of me a description of the Queenes Nauy Royall, to which I added the Picture of a Ship with all her glorious and Martiall accoutrements. About this time, the Emperour was much busied in searching out a Treason against him plotted by *Bomelius* and the Archbishop of *Nonogrod* with some others, discouered by their Seruants on the Racke, Letters sent in Cyphers three sundry wayes to *Swethen* and *Poland*. The Bishop confessed all, and *Bomelius* denyed all: But being racked, his backe and body cut with wyre whips, he confessed more then the Examiners were willing the Emperour should know. He sent word they should roast him, being taken from the Puckie and bound to a wooden Spit, which being done till they thought no life left, they brought him in a Sled thorow the Castle, where I with others saw him, and he espying me, called vpon Christ. They threw him into a Dungeon, where hee miserably ended his life. He had liued in pompe, and beene Authour of much mischiefe, had conuayed much treasure out of the Countrey, by way of *England* to *Wesall* in *Westphalia* where hee was borne, though brought vp in *Cambridge*; an Enemy alway to our Nation. Hee had deluded the Emperour with tales of Queene *Elizabeths* youth and hopes (by his Calculations) of obtayning her. (But the Emperour, out of hope hereof, heard that there was a young Lady of the bloud Royall, the Lady *Mary Hastings*, daughter to the Earle of *Huntington*, whom he now affected.) The Bishop of *Nonogrod* was condemned of coyning and sending money to *Swethen* and *Poland*, of keeping Witches, buggering Boyes and Beasts, confederating with *Bomelius*, *&c.* All his goods were confiscated, and himselfe throwne into a Dungeon with Irons on his head and legges, where he made painted Images, Combes and Beads, liued with bread and water. Eleuen of his confederate Seruants were hanged in his Palace gate at *Mosco*, and his women Witches shamefully dismembred and burnt.

Sir *Ierom Horsey* sent from the Emperour to Q. *Elizabeth*.

Bomelius rosted

The Emperour passed ouer those which had beene accused, and now consulted about marrying his second Sonne *Charnwich Theodor*, being of great simplicitie, the eldest hauing no issue. But hauing his Prelates and Nobles together, could not but euaporate some of his conceits from the former confessions of their Treasons, being *Ascension* day, on which before *Mosco* had beene burned. He spent some houres in Rhetoricall enlarging the dismalnesse of that day with great eloquence, darting still with his eye at many Confederates in the late Conspiracie, protesting to leaue them a naked & sloyall and distressed people, and a reproch to all Nations of the World. The Enemies are at hand, God and his prodigious creatures in the Heauens fight against vs, Scarcity and Famine witnesse it, and yet no Iudgements moue remorse in you. The Originall is too long to recite. Little was done, but all prostrating themselues to his Maiesty, and mercy desired God to bless his holy purpose for the marriage of his Sonne, for whom he chose *Irenia*, daughter of *Theodor Iuanowich Godonow*, and after the solemnization of the marriage with great Feast dismissed the Nobles and Prelates with better words and countenance, which was taken for a reconciliation. But the Nuptials could not be performed by vsuall cohabitation, which much distempered the King: it is not decent to write the course taken therein.

I behold all this.

Theodore marrieth *Irenia* sister to *Boris*, whose Storie followeth. Bewitched.

The Emperous Letters & Instructions were ready, himselfe & his chiefe Secretarie *Sauelly Frenlow* (whiles I was present) closed them vp in one of the false sides of a woodden Bottle filled with *Aquauita* to hang vnder my Horse-mayne not worth one penny: appointed me foure hundred *Hungarian* Duckets in Gold to be sewed in my Boots, and quilted in some of my worst garments. He said, he forbare to tell me of some secrets of his pealsure, fearing lest I passing thorow his Enemies Country might bee inforced to discouer what hee would not haue knowne. The Bottle you carry with you shall declare what you shall say to Queene *Elizabeth* my louing Sister, of which you must haue careas of your life, vntill you come in safe place to open it. In meane while, and alway, beerhou my sweet Sunshine, *Eremika*, trusty and faithfull, and thy reward shall be my goodnesse and grace from me hereafter. I fell prostrate, layd my head on his foot with a heauy heart to bee thus exposed to vnauoydable danger. *Deoesio Vlanow* a Gentleman of good ranke, and daily Wayter on the King attended me; my Sled and Horse and twenty Seruants were ready at the posterne gate. I posted that night to *Otner* ninety miles, where victuals and fresh Horses were prepared, and so to

Letters sent to the Queene inclosed in a Bottle, by Sir *Ierome Horsey*.

Eremika, is their name for *Ierom*.

Na-

Nouogrod and *Plesco*, 600. miles in three dayes, where entring into *Liuonia*, my Gentleman and Seruants tooke their leaues, and desired some token to the Emperour of my safe comming thither. They left me with a poore guide only.

By miles vnderstand Russian miles, which are about three quarters of ours.

Within three houres after, the Centinell tooke me vpon the borders, and brought me to Newhouse into the Castle before the State-holder or Lieutenant, who strictly examined and searched me, suspecting me as one comming from their enemies Country. I said I was glad to come into their hands out of the vaile of misery the *Moscouites* Country, not without loſſe. On the third day vpon some mediation, they appointed mee a Guide, and suffered mee to passe. The Guard expected gratuitie, but I excused, as pinched by the *Ruſſe*. I passed three dayes by Land and frozen Meares to *Oſſel* in *Liueland*, an Iland large and spacious vnder the King of *Denmarke*, Raggamuffin Souldiers tooke me and vsed me roughly, and carried me to *Sawen Burgh*, and so to *Orent Burgh*, the chiefe Townes and Castles in those parts, and there deliuered me to the State-holders Lieutenant. I attended his pleasure kept hardly as a Spie, the Snakes creeping in my Lodging, on Bed and board, and Milke pans: the soyle was such they did no harme. I was called before the chiefe Gouernour (a graue Gentleman in good fauour with the King, many Halberds attending) who examined me with many questions. I answered I was a Subiect of the Queene of *England*, who had peace with all Christian Kings, specially with the King of *Denmarke*: but was committed against to custody, whence (hauing dismissed his company) he sent for me againe by his Sonne and being priuate, holding a Letter in his hand, said, I haue receiued sundry Letters from my friends, and one of late from my daughter, captiue in *Mosco*, which sheweth of much friendship shee hath found at an *Engliſh* Gentlemans hand, which negociates in that Court for the Queen of *England*. My Lord, said I, is your daughter called *Magdalen Vrkil*: yea Sir, said he. I answered I was the man, & that within these ten dayes she was well. He sayd he could not procure her ransome, and clasps me about the neck, crying as did his Sonne likewise: Gods Angell hath brought your goodnesse thus to me; how euer disguised in this turbulent time, that I might render you thankes and furtherance. I desired free passe and safe conduct. He feasted me ioyfully, and made ready his Letters and Passports to Captaines of Townes and Castles, gaue mee a faire *German* striking Clocke, offered his Sonne and Seruants armed to guard me out of danger, which I could not accept of, and commended his daughter to me.

Osell an Iland in the Balticke Sea in 59. deg.

I passed on to Piltona strong Castle where King *Magnus* lay, who vsed mee roughly, because I could not drinke with him excessiuely. Hee had riotously spent and giuen most of his Townes and Castles, Iewels, Plate, &c. to his followers and adopted daughters, which hee receiued in Dowre with the Emperours Neece, and not long after dyed miserably, leaving his Queene and only daughter in very poore estate. I toade thorow the Duke of *Curlands* Country, and *Prussia* to *Konnisburgh*, *Meluin* and *Danzike* in *Poland*, *Pomerania* and *Mecklenburgh* to *Lubeck*, where I was knowne and honourably entertayned. I had now gotten foure or fiue Seruants *Dutch* and *Engliſh*. The Burgomasters sent mee a Present of Fish, Flesh, and Wines, taking notice of the fauours I had done to them and theirs: diuers came with thankfull acknowledgement of their Redemption by my meanes and Purse, from *Moscouite* and *Tartarian* Captiuity, and presented me with a Boll coier guilt, in it *Rickes* Dollers, and *Hungarian* Duckets, which Coyne I returned againe. They brought mee their Towne Booke, and prayed mee to write my Name and place of Birth and abode, that they and their Posteritie might honour my Name in Record for euer. At *Hamburgh* likewise, they for like cause presented me their thankes, and Present, and the Burgomasters feasted me.

Piltona.

Gratitude.

I landed at *Harwich*, opened my *Aquauitæ* Bottle (which had beene gift close vnder my Cassocke by day, and my best Pillow by night) and tooke thence the Emperours Letters, which I sweetned as well as I could. But yet the Queene smelt the *Aquauitæ*-fauour. I had access three or foure seuerall times, and some discourse by meanes of my Lord Treasurer, Sir *Francis Walsingham*, and some honourable countenance of my Lord of *Leiſter*, by Sir *Edward Horsey* my Kinsman his meanes. I was well entertayned by the *Moscouite* Company, to whom the Queene had giuen command to prepare those things for which the Emperour had giuen directions. With which, and her Maiesties Letters & gracious fauour (sworne her Seruant, Esquire of the Body, giuing me her Picture & Hand to kisse) I departed in company of twelue tall Ships. Wee met with the King of *Denmarke* his Fleet of Shippes and Gallies neere the North Cape, fought with them and put them to the worst, and after arriued at S. *Nicolas*. I post out *Vogu*, and came to *Slobida Alexandriſon*, where I deliuered the Queenes Letters to the Emperour, with her pleasure, by word of mouth short of his expectation. He commanded my sience, commended my speed and busineſſe done for him, gaue me allowances and promised his goodnesse for recompence of my seruice. He commanded also that these Commodities should be brought vp to the *Mosco*, and receiued into his Treasury, *viz.*

Sir *Ant. Hinsopp* returne into Russia.

Copper, Lead, Powder, Salt-peeter, Brimstone, &c. to the value of 9000. pounds, and ready money payd for them.

He came to the Citie of *Musco*, and cast his displeasure vpon some *Grandes*: hee sent a Parasite of his with 200 Gunners to rob his Brother in Law *Mekita Romanowich* our next Neighbour, which tooke from him all his Armour, Horses, Plate, Mony, Lands and Goods to the value of 100000. Marks sterling. He sent the next day to the *English* House for as much course Cotton as would make himselfe and his children Gownes to couer them. The Emperour sent likewise *Simon Nagoy* another of his Instruments, to squeeze or spunge *Andrew Shalkan* a great bribing Officer, who brought his faire young Wife *Solmmaneda* out of her Chamber, defiled her, cut and gashed her naked backe with his Cemitar; killed his trusty Seruant *Iuan Lattish*, tooke all his Horses, Goods and Lands, and beat out of his chimnes 10000. Robles or Markes sterling in mony. At that time did the Emperour also conceiue displeasure against the *Dutchmen* and *Linonians* before mentioned (to whom a Church and libertie of Religion had beene giuen by my meanes) and appointed certaine Captaines with 2000. Gunners in the night to take the spoile of all they had, who stripped them naked, rauished and defloured the women and virgins, carrying away diuers of the youngest and faireft to serue their lusts. Some escaping came to the English house, where they were cloathed and relieued not without danger of displeasure, amongst whom was that daughter of the Gouernour of *Osell* in *Liefland* commended to my fauour, whose freedome I also afterwards procured and conueyed her to her father.

The Emperors excesses. This *Mekita* was Brother to *Nastacia* the Emperours first Wife, and Grandfather to the present Emperour.

His crueltie grew now ripe for vengeance; and hee not long after falling out with his eldest Sonne for his commiseration to those distressed Christians, and for greeuing at his Vnkles wrongs, ielous also of the peoples affection to him, gaue him a boxe on the eare (as it was tearmed) which he tooke so tenderly that hee fell into a burning Feuer, and in three dayes departed this life. Whereat the Emperour tore his haire and beard, like a mad man, lamenting too late for that irrecouerable losse, not to himselfe so much as to the Empire, whose hopes were buried with him; being a wife, milde and worthy Prince of three and twenty yeeres. Hee was buried in *Michala* Archangell Church in the *Musco* with Iewels and Riches put in his Tombe valued at 50000. pounds; watched after by twelue Citizens in course, euery night deuoted to his Saint *Iohn* and *Michael*, to keepe both body and Treasure till his Resurrection.

The Emperour striketh his Sonne so sore say with his staffe on his head.

Death and burrall of yong *Iuan*.

Now was the Emperour more earnest to send into *England* about his long conceited match, his second Sonne being weake of wit and body, without hope of ability for gouernment, and the third not only young but disallowed in Sanctitie, and according to the fundamentall Lawes illegitimate, borne out of Wedlocke of the first vnlawfull Wife, not solemnised with the Rites of their Church, but in the Church-yard by a deprived and excommunicated Prelate, in which respect neyther she nor her issue were capeable of the Crowne.

So saith the Originall.

The Emperour perusesth the Queenes last Letters, and addresseth one of his trustiest Seruants in Embassage *Theodore Posseptekow* a wise Nobleman about the Lady *Mary Hastings* aforesaid; and that her Maiesty would bee pleased to send some Noble Embassadour to treate with him therein. This Embassadour tooke shipping at Saint *Nicolas*, and arriuing in *England*, was magnificently entertayned and admitted audience. Her Maiesty caused that Lady to be attended with diuers Ladies and young Noblemen, that so the Embassadour might haue a sight of her, which was accomplished in *Yorke* House Garden. There was he (attended also with diuers men of quality) brought before her, and casting downe his countenance fell prostrate before her, and rising ranne backe with his face still towards her. The Lady with the rest admiring at this strange salutation, hee sayd by an Interpreter; it sufficed him to behold the Angelicall presence of her, which hee hoped should bee his Masters Spouse and Empresse, seeming rauished with her Angelicall countenance, state and beauty. Shee was after that by her familiar friends in Court called Empresse of *Moscouia*. Sir *William Russell*, third Sonne to the Earle of *Bedford*, a wise and comely Gentleman was appointed her Maiesties Ambassadour to the *Moscouites*: but hee and his Friends considering of the businesse, and not so forward thereto, the Company of Merchants intreated for Sir *Ierome Bowes*, mooued thereto with his presence and tall person.

Embassadour to the Queene for Lady *Mary* daughter to the Earle of *Huntingdon*.

He was well let forth, most at their charge, and with the *Russian* Embassadour arriued at S. *Nicolas*. The Emperours Ambassadour posted ouer land, and deliuered his Letters with the accounts of his Embassage which was ioyfully accepted. Sir *I.B.* passed slowly vp the *Dwina* 1000. miles to *Volegda*. The Emperour sends a Pensioner *Michael Proterpopow* well attended to meet him and make his prouisions. At *Teroslaue* another, Querry of the Stable, met him. At *Musco* hee was honourably entertayned, *Knez. Iuan Smetanoie* attended with 300. Horse brought him to his lodging. *Sanolle Frollow* the Secretary was sent to congratulate his welcome with many dishes of dressed meate, and promise of best accommodating.

Sir *Ier. Bowes* Embassadour into Russia. You haue his Voyage, &c. in M. *Hakluyt*.

The

The next day, the Emperour sent a Noble man *Ignatie Tatisbone*, to visit him with faire words and promise of speediest audience, which was on Satturday following. About nine of the clocke the streets were filled with people, and a thousand Gunners attired in yellow and blue Garments set in rankes by the Captaines on Horsebacke with bright Harquebuses in their hands from the Ambassadours doore to the Emperours Palace, *Knez Inan Sitzcow* attended him mounted on a faire Gennet richly bedecked, with a faire Gelding well furnished for the Embassadour, attended with three hundred Gentlemen gallantly adorned. The Embassadour being displeased that the Dukes Horse was better then his, mounted on his owne Horse, and with his thirty men liveried in Stamell Clokes well set forth, each hauing
10 a part of his Present (being most Plate) marched onward to the Kings Palace, where another Duke met him, and told him that the Emperour stayed for him. He answered, that he came as fast as he could. By the way the people ghessing at the vnpleasingnesse of his message, cryed *Carenke*, (that is, Cranes-legs) in mockage of him, whereat hee stormed much. The passage, stayres and Roomes thorow which hee was conducted, were all beset with Merchants and Gentlemen in Golden Coats. His men entred before him with their Presents into the Roome where the Emperour sate in his Robes and Maiesty, with his three Crownes before him, foure young Noble men called *Ryndes*, shining in their Cloth of beaten Siluer, with foure Scepters, or bright Siluer Hatchets in their hands, on each side of him, the Prince and other his great Dukes and Nobles in rankes sitting round about him. The Emperour
20 stood vp, and the Embassadour making his courtesies, deliuers the Queenes Letters, which hee receiued and put off his Imperiall Cap, asking how his louing Sister Queene *Elizabeth* did. His answere made, he sate downe on a side forme couered with a Carpet, and after some little pause and mutuall view, was dismissed in manner as hee came, and his Dinner of two hundred dishes of dressed meats sent after him, by a Gentleman of qualitie.

I was forewarned by my secret and best friends not to intermeddle in those businesses. Some secret and publike conferences passed, but good note was taken that none of the great Family of the *Godonones* were consulted with therein. The King feasts the Embassadour, grants great allowance of daily prouision, and nothing would please him: yea he made great complaints about friuolous matters. The Merchants and the Emperours Officers were re-
30 conciled in their accounts, grieuances remedied, Priuiledges granted, and an Embassadour to the Queene resolued on; if Sir *I. B.* could haue conformed himselfe to the time, any thing might haue beene yeelded; yea, he promised, that if his Marriage with the Queenes Kinswoman tooke effect, her issue should inherit the Crowne; for assurance whereof he had a masse of ready treasure presently to be transported with his Embassadour vnto Queene *Elizabeths* trust. The Clergy and Nobility (especially the secrest allied to the old Empresse, the Princes wife and her Family of the *Godonones* found meanes to crosse all these Designes.

But England was not so happie.

The King much distracted in fury, caused many Witches, Magicians, or *Wors* presently to be sent for out of the North, where there are many betweene *Colmogro* and *Lappia*. Threescore of them were brought post to *Musco*, where they were guarded, dyeted and daily visi-
40 ted by the Emperours great Fauourite *Boden Belsey* to receiue from them their Diuinations or Oracles on the Subiects giuen them in charge by the Emperour. (Note that a great blasing Star and other prodigious sights, were seene a moneth together, euery night ouer *Musco* that yeere.) This Fauorite now sought to serue the turne of the rising Sonne, wearied with the wicked disposition of the Emperour. The Sooth-sayers tell him that the heauenly Planets and Constellations would produce the Emperours death by such a day. But he not daring to tell the Emperour so much, said to them that on that day they should be all burned. The Emperour began grieuously to swell in his Cods (wherewith he had offended so long, boasting that he had deflowred thousands of Virgins, and a thousand children of his begetting destroyed) was carried euery day in his Chaire into his Treasury. One day (*two dayes before the Emperour his death*) the Prince beckoned to me to follow, and I aduenturously stood among
50 the rest, and heard him call for his Precious Stones and Iewels. He then held discourse to the Nobles about him, directing his eye and speech most to *Boris Godonona*, of the nature and properties of his Gemmes: of the World compassing Load-stone (causing the Wayters to make a Chaine of Needles therewith touched) of the Corall also and Turkesse, whose beautifull colours (sayd he) layd on my arme poysoned with inflammation, you see are turned pale, and declare my death. Reach out my Staffe Royall (an Vnicornes Horne garnished with very faire Diamonds, Rubies, Saphires, Emeralds and other Precious Stones, it cost 70000. Markes sterling, bought of *Dauid Gowell* of the *Fuskers* of *Ausburge*) seeke out some Spiders; caused his Physician *Iohannes Eiloff* to scrape a Circle thereof vpon the Table, and put within it one
60 Spider, and after another, which burst presently, others without the Circle running away from it aliue. It is too late, it will not preserue me. Behold these Precious Stones, the Diamond most precious of all other, I neuer affected it; it restraines Fury and Luxury, the pow-

Ivan consulteth with Witches.
Boden Belsey the Emperours Minion.

1584.

Vpsilwich his discourse of Gemmes.
An Vnicornes Horne cost 70000. Markes.

der is poyson. Then he points to the Rubies; this comforts the Braine and Memory, clarifieth congealed bloud. That Emerald of the nature of the Rainbow, is enemy to all vncleanenesse, and though a man cohabit in Lust with his owne Wife, this Stone being about them will burst at the spending of Nature. The Saphyre I greatly delight in, it prefeueth and increaseth Nature and Courage, reioyceth the heart, is pleasing to all the vitall Senses, soueereigne to the Eyes, strengthens the Muscles. Hee takes the Onyx in hand, &c. All these are Gods wonderfull gifts, secrets in Nature, reuealed to mans vse and contemplation as friends to grace and vertue, and Enemies to vice. I faint, carry me away, till another time. In the afternoone he perusseth our his Will, and yet thinkes not to dye. His Ghostly Father dares not put him in minde of annointing in holy forme. Hee hath beene witched in that place, and often vnwitched againe.

He commands the Master of the *Apotheke*, and the Physicians to prepare a Bath for his solace, enquires the goodnesse of the Signe, sends his Fauourite to his Witches to know their Calculations. Hee tels them, the Emperour will bury or burne them all quicke for their Illusions and Lyes, the day is come, he is as heart-whole as euer he was, Sir (they answered) bee not so wrathfull, you know the day is comne, and you know it ends with the Sun-setting. He hasts him to the Emperour, made preparation for his Bath about the third houre of the day. The Emperour therein solaced himselfe, and made merry with pleasant Songs after his vse, came out about the seuenth houre well refreshed, sate downe vpon his Bed, cals *Rodouone Birken* a Fauourite of his to bring the Cheffe-board, sets his men, his chiefe Fauourite and others with *Boris Fedorowich Godoneue*, being then about him. He in his loose Gowne, Shirt and Linnen Hose, faints and fals backward. Great was the stirre and out-cry; one sends for *Aquanita*, another to the *Apotheke*, for Vineger and Rose-water, with other things and to call the Physicians. Meane time he was strangled * and starke dead. Some shew of hope was made of his recouery to still the out-cry.

Iuan Vasilwich his death.

* Supposed the act of *Belskey* and *Boris*.

Bodan Belscoy and *Boris* (to whom the dead Emperour had bequeathed, as the first of foure Princes, to take charge of his Sonne and Kingdome, being Brother to the Successors Wife) goe out on the Terras accompanied with so many of the Nobility his familiar friends as was strange so suddenly to behold. They called out to the Captaines and Gunners to keepe their Guards strong, and the Gates sure with their Peeces and Matches light: wherevpon the Gates of the great Castle were presently shut with watch and ward. I offered my Selfe, my Men, Powder and Pistols, to attend the Prince Protector. Hee accepted mee among his Familiars and Seruants, passing by with a cheereful countenance towards me, speaking aloud, Be faithfull and faint not *Eremiesea*. The Metropolitans, Bishops, and Nobility flocked into the inner Castle, holding it a day of Iubilee for their redemption, pressing who could first, to the Booke and Crosse to sweare to the new Emperour *Feodor Iuanowich*. It was admirable what dispatch there was in sixe or seuen houres; The Treasury sealed vp, and new Officers added to the old, twelue thousand Gunners with their Captaines set for a Garrison about the Wals of the great Citie of *Musco*. A Guard was giuen mee to keepe the *English* House. The Embassadour S. *I. B.* trembled, and expected hourely nothing but death from the rage of the Nobilitie and people. His gates, windowes and Seruants were shut vp, his former plentifull allowance taken away. *Boris* and three others of the greatest Peeres ioyned assistance with him in the Emperours Will for the Gouernment of the Kingdome (*viz. Knez Misthislaske, Knez Iuan Suikey*, and *Mekita Romanowich*) began to manage and dispose of all affaires: they proclayme the Emperour *Feodore* in his late Fathers stile thorow all the Kingdome, take Inuentories of all the Treasure euery where, Gold, Siluer, Iewels, which was infinite; make a suruay of all the Officers and Bookes of the Crowne Reuenues. New Treasurers, Counsellors, and Officers in all Courts of Iustice are made, new Lieutenants also, Captaines and Garisons in all places of charge and importance; most out of the Family of the *Godonoues*, best to be trusted for attendance and seruice about the King and Queene, by which meanes the Protector became strong. He was with great obseruation magnified of all, and so behaued himselfe to the Princes, Nobility and people as he increased their loue. After some pause I was sent for, and asked what they should doe with S. *I. B.* his businesse being at an end, he was not now (said they) to be reputed an Ambassadour. I answered, it stood with the honour of the King and Kingdome to dismisse him with honour, and safely according to the Law of Nations; otherwise the Queene whose Seruant hee was would take it ill, &c. They shooke their heads, reuiled him, saying he had deserued death by the Law of Nations, practising so much mischiefe in a State. They would haue sent a message to him by me to prepare his present dispatch with some other terrible words of displeasure. I besought that I might not be the messenger, which somewhat offended them.

Theodore or *Feodore* Emperour.

Boris Protector.

The Protector and Chiefes Commissioners course of gouernment.

The Lord Protector sent for mee at Euening, whom I found playing at the Cheffe with *Knez Iuan Gemskoy* a Prince of the bloud, and taking mee aside said, I wish you to speake

little

little in defence of *B.* the Lords take it ill. Goe shew your selfe from me, and pacifie such and such. Your answer was well considered of, but many perswade reuenge vpon him for his ill behaiour. I hope, said I, your greatnesse and wisdome will pacifie their furies. He do my best (he sayd) to make all well, and so tell him from me. I went to those Noblemen accordingly, which complaining of their sufferings for his arrogance, willed me to be quiet in the business. Yet did not I leaue to deale effectually vnderhand for him, intreating he might be sent for and dispatched, beeing cooped vp and kept close as a prisoner, and allowances taken from him.

At last he was sent for, attended but with a meane messenger, lead into a withdrawing Roome, where the Lords vsed him with no respect, charged him with heynous matter plotted against the Crowne and State; would not spend time to heare his answere, rayled on him (especially the two *Shalkans* great Officers, and some others who had suffered displeasure & beatings from the Emperour through his complaints) saying it were requisite to make him an example, cutting off his Crane-legges, and casting his withered carkasse into the Riuer (pointing out of the window) vnder him: but God hath now giuen vs a more merciful Emperour, whose eyes he should see for Queene *Elizabeths* sake. But put off your Sword (which hee refused to doe, saying it was against his Order and Oath) they would inforce him else, comming into the presence of so peaceable a Prince, whose soule being clothed with mourning, was not prepared for the sight of Armes. And so hee put on patience, and was brought single to the presence of the Emperour, who by the mouth of his Chancelour commended him to Queene *Elizabeth.* Wherewith Sir *I. B.* was conuayed to his Lodgings, three dayes giuen for his departure out of *Musco*; perhaps hee should haue a Letter sent after him. He had now little meanes, lesse money, and none to supply him but my selfe, who made meanes to get him thirty Carts to conuay his and his Seruants Stuffe, and as many Post-horses for he could be allowed none of the Emperours charge. I asked leaue of the Lord Protector to speake with him, and to bring him out of the City. Watch and ward was appointed in the streets that the people should not stirre at him. A meane *Sinebourscoie* was appointed to conduct him, who vsed him with small humanity, and much against the height of his mind to endure. I with my Seruants and good friends accompanied him wel mounted out of *Musco*, cauled my Pauillion to be pitched by a Riuers side ten miles off, and with myprouisions of Wines and Mead, tooke leaue of him and his company. He sadly prayed me to haue an eye an eare to his safety, doubting of some trechery & much perplexed with feare, as were the Gentlemen with him. I procured the Lord Protector to send his Letters after him to the Queene, & a Timber of Sables a gift from himselfe. When he came to Saint *Nicolas* aboard the Ship, he vsed intemperate words to the Gentleman that conducted him, for him to tell the Emperour and his Counsell, cut his Letters and Sables in pieces, &c. The Nobility hearing hereof after he was gone laid much blame on me, especially the *Shalkans.*

Now was the Gouernment much altered hauing put on a new face, Iustice administred and euery man liuing in peace. Mans capacitie cannot comprehend how the infinite treasure which the former Emperour left behind him could be gotten together, and much lesse how it should be so soone consumed: and this Kingdome, Princes and people so ruined. His standing Reuenewes and my Collections out of their owne Records in my Description of the *Russe* Common-wealth may bee worth reading. The trafique attracting many Nations, *Persians, Armenians, Turkes, Italians, Germans, French, Dutch, English, Polonians,* which bring store of Gold and Siluer Coyne, Precious Stones, Iewels, and Pearles, which are taken into his Treasury for the Commodities of that Countrey, by him taken from his Subiects to serue his turne at easie rates, leauing them their trafique besides for Cloth, Silkes, Velvets, Ounce-gold, Tissue, Cloth of Gold and Siluer, Wines, Fruits, Spices, Sugar, Copper, Lead, Tinne, Paper, Indico, Brasill, Calicoes, &c. which that Countrey most needs: This course of trafique and treasure with the surplusage of his Reuenues, amounting yeerely vnto 1300000. Markes sterling, besides all charges for his house and ordinary Salaries of his Souldiers. This hath he continued to lay vp neere sixty yeeres, besides the great treasures left him by his Predecessors, neuer exhausted nor diminished. My selfe haue seene many thousand bags rotten, of old Siluer and Gold Coyne, and Plate in great barred Chests, piled vp in many Vaults, Sellers, and Stone Houses, and many trustie Merchants continually weighing, numbring, and new bagging vp the same: so that I am confident (hauing conuersed much and many yeeres with those Nations) that all the Kings in Christendome haue not like Riches and quantity of treasure.

Russian gouernment vnder *Theodore.*

The great treasure which *Basiwich* gathered.

See Doctor *Fletchers* Treat in my Third Part, *c.3.e.1.*

Now to adde some thing of his Acts, Conquests, and conditions. Hee conquered *Casan, Astracan,* the *Nogaies,* and *Circean Tartars* and many others of that kind inhabiting aboue two thousand miles on both sides the *Volga,* Southward to the *Caspian* Sea. He freed himselfe from *Tartarian* homage. Hee conquered *Polotzka, Smolensca* and many Townes, and

Iuan Bas. his Conquests.

Castles seuen hundred miles Southwest from *Mosco* into the Countries of *Bela*, *Russia*, *Lituania*, &c. belonging to the Crowne of *Poland*: as much and as many Townes and Castles Eastward in *Liuonia* and the parts belonging to *Swethan* and *Poland*, the Kingdome of *Siberia* also, bringing away the King (whom I saw in *Mosco*) and the adiacent Countries Northward 1500. miles.

His Acts for Iustice.

He reduced the Ambiguities and vncertayne Rules of their Lawes and pleadings into a more perspicuous and plaine forme of a written Law for euery man to vnderstand and plead his owne cause without any Aduocate, and to challenge (vnder great penalty and mulct to the Crowne) iudgement without delay.

His Acts Ecclesiastically for Religion.

He established and published one vniforme confession of Faith, Doctrine and Discipline consonant to the three Symbols or Creeds; professing the Religion of the Greeke Church, deriuing their antiquitie from their Apostle Saint *Andrew*, and their Patron Saint *Nicolas*: and in regard of later dissentions in doctrine and Ceremony in that Church, he hath acquitted the See of *Mosco* from that Society, and the Synodals and Oblations * heretofore contributed to that Church, the Patriarch *Ieremy* resigning the Patriarchship of *Constantinople* to the Metropolitan of *Mosco*. Hee vtterly disclaymes the doctrine of the Pope, holding it the most erronious, marueiling that any Christian Prince would yeeld him any Secular authoritie; which hee caused his Clergie to declare to Fryer *Anthonie Possenius* the Popes *Nuncio* at the Church doore at *Prechista*. Hee hath built in his time fortie faire stone Churches richly adorned within, and the Turrets all gilded with fine pure Gold without. He hath built and dedicated aboue sixty Monasteries and Nunneries, and endowed them with Bels, Ornaments and maynteinance to pray for his Soule. He built a goodly steeple of hewne stone in the inner Castle of *Mosco*, called *Blanafsenna*, *Collacalitza*, with twenty great sweet sounding Bels in it, which serue to all the Cathedrall Churches standing about it, ringing all together euery Festiuall day (which are many) and euery midnight Prayers.

* Twelue thousand Nobles annually.

1582.

His charitie.

One deed of his Charity I may not omit. A great Famine followed the Pestilence of the better sort of people. The Townes, streets, & wayes were pestered with Rogues, idle Beggers, and counterfeit Cripples: not could any reddance be made of them, Proclamation was made that they should resort to *Slobida Alexandrifsa*, to receiue the Emperours great almes on such a day. Out of some thousands that came, seuen hundred of the vilest and most counterfeit Rogues were all knocked on the head, and cast into the great Lake for the fish to receiue the dole of their carkasses, the rest were dispersed to Monasteries and Hospitals to be relieued.

1575.

His Castles & Colonies.

He built aboue 700. Castles in his time, in diuers parts of his Kingdome, and planted them with Ordenance and Garisons. He built 200. Townes in waste and dishabited places thorow his Kingdome to replenish those parts, being a mile or two miles in length called *Yams*, giuing euery Inhabitant a portion of Land and Money, to keepe so many speedy Horses for his vse and for Posts. He built a goodly strong stone Wal about the Citie of *Mosco*, and planted it with Ordenance and Garisons.

His person described.

He was a goodly man of presence, well fauoured, of a high fore-head, and shrill voyce, a right *Scythian*, full of readie wit and wisdome, cruell and mercilesse: his owne experience ruled State causes and affaires publike. Hee was sumptuously entombed in *Michael* Archangell Church, where his memory is still dreadfull, though guarded day and night, they which passe by or heare his name crossing and blessing themselues from his Resurrection a-gaine.

His buriall.

The Empresse *Anna* fifth wife to the late Emperour, with her young Sonne *Charitoich Demetrius*, and their Family *Nagaii* were confined to *Onglets*, to reside in that Castle at the Emperours pleasure with Royall allowance for their maynteinance. New Embassadors were chosen by *Boris* the Protector, such as he best affected, to illustrate his greatnesse, to bee sent from the new Emperour to all Kings and Princes his Allies. The Coronation was first solemnized, whereof I was an eye and eare witnesse (as Master *Hakluyts* and Doctor *Fletchers* Discourses, in this and other Relations of that State and Common-wealth procured at my hands, declare) My selfe was nominated to bee sent to Queene *Elizabeth*. The substance of our Embassies was much alike to make knowne, that by the Prouidence of God *Feodore Iuanowich* was crowned and setled in the Imperiall Throne of his late Father *Iuan Vasilowich* of famous memory: who thought good out of his tender care of peace to make knowne to their Princely wisdomes, how desirous he was of their aliance and brotherly amity, promising all correspondence, trade and commerce with them and theirs. Letters also and Commissions to treate of such other matters as fell properly in question for the good of both sides.

Sir *I. Horsey* sent Embassadour from the Emperour to Q. *Elizabeth*.

I was dispatched with extraordinary grace, termes and titles from the Emperour, but especially from the Protector in priuate and publike, and with Instructions and Commissions apart. Hauing taken my leaue of the principall Princes and Officers I set forth well attended

ded and accommodated in the reputation of an Embassadour wheresoeuer I came. My iourney was ouer-land from *Mosco*, the twentieth of *August*, sixe hundred miles to *Vobsto*. and thence to *Derp* in *Liefland*, *Perno*, *Lobo*, *London* in *Curland*, and so to *Riga* chiefe Citie of that Prouince: where my Commission was to treat with Queene *Magnus* (the next heire to the *Russian* Crowne) she being now in great distresse and hauing small allowance issuing from the Crowne treasure of *Poland*. She was kept in the Castle of *Riga*, where by leaue of the Cardinall *Ragamile* very hardly obtayned, I spake with her, found her dressing her daughters head, both of them in old Garments of cloth of Siluer. I told her, her Brother (to Cousin Germans call) the Emperour *Feodor* had taken notice of the distresse wherein she and her daughter liued, and desired her returne into her natiue Countrey, there to hold her estate according to her birth. And the Lord Protector *Boris Fedorowich* with due remembrance of his seruice doth vow the performance of the same. I was interrupted and hasted away by the Lieutenant, and got leaue a second time. Shee complained of her small allowance not a thousand Dollers a yeere, which I said she might remedy if she pleased. Shee said she had no meanes to escape, the King and State minding to make vse of her birth and bloud, & knowing their fashions in Russia, she had small hope there to be otherwise dealt with, then they vse to doe with their Queene Widowes, which is to shut them vp in a Hellish Cloyster, to which I preferre death. I answered, her case was different, and times had altered that course, none that hath a child being thereunto enforced. After other words and promise of meanes to effect her escape, within two moneths I left with her a hundred *Hungarian* Duckets, and your Grace (said I) shall receiue foure hundred more this day seuen weekes or thereabout. Her Highnesse receiued them very thankfully, and her daughter (then ten yeeres old) twenty more, and I tooke my leaue. The next day as I passed out of the Towne Gates, a Gentlewomanlike Mayden in her pleyted haire, presented me a curious white wrought Handkerchiefe, in the corner whereof was a little Hoop-ring set with Rubies, but told mee not from whom. I hied out of the Cardinals iurisdiction thorow Curland, Prussia, Meluin, Danzike; whence I sent one of my Seruants to the Nature with my Letters, Handkerchiefe and Relation to the Emperour and Protector, all sewed vp in his quilt doublet. He past so speedily and safely, that this Queene and her daughter were sent for, stolne away very secretly, and posted with thorow *Lituania* before she was missing. The Lieutenant sent diuers Horsemen after her but too late, and was therefore displaced. At her first comming (as I learned after my returne) she was much esteemed by the Empresse and Ladies, had her Officers, Lands and allowances appointed according to her estate: but not long after, shee and her daughter were disposed into Maydes Monastery within two miles of *Mosco*, among the rest of the Queenes, wherevpon she exclaymed that she was betrayed, and that shee had given faith to me. But neyther could I be permitted to see her, or shee mee. This piece of Seruice was very acceptable, whereof I much repent me.

1584.

King *Magnus* his Widow seduced by *Boris* his policie.

From *Danzike* I passed *Cassubia*, *Pomerania*, *Stetine*, *Meckelburgh*, *Rostok*, *Wismar* (where I escaped death miraculously) *Lubek*, where I had honourable enterteynment against, and from *Hamborough* arriued in *England*, had gracious access to the Queene at *Richmond*, her Maiesty professing much ioy that a Subiect of hers had attained to knowledge, trust and ability for so waighty employment from so great a Prince. I after translated the Letters, and Master Secretary read them to the Queene. I was well housed, attended, prouided, and feasted by the *Moscouie* Company: was called againe to *Greenwich*, and deliuered to her Maiesty what I was to say, and what it pleased her to enquire of me. In fine shee sayd, well *Ierome*, we haue lost a faire time and a great deale of treasure that our Realme might very opportunely haue beene possessed of, harshly censuring *Bowes* his want of temperance, &c. Such was the Lord Treasurers good husbandry answerable to Her Maiesties frugality, that though this busnesse had beene kept ten yeeres afoot, and the Emperour still vpheld in hope, yet all the charge of Ambassadors and Messengers were layd on the Merchants both for entertainments, and gifts giuen and sent, of which the Queene bare the name and countenance, receiuing thence many and rich Presents, for that which at times cost the Company 20000. pounds. The imputations and aspersions cast on me by false suggestions and subornations of *Fuchs* a hang-by of Sir *Ierome Bowes*, who first faltered, and after the other being remouued out of presence, confessed that he was set on by him; I omit, so repaying the courtesie in releasing him when he had beene taken as a Spie, &c.

One was committed to the Marshall, the other forbidden her Maiesties presence.

With much helpe of friends Sir *Francis Walsingham* and Sir *George Barnes*, prouision was made of Lions, Buls, Dogs, gilt Halberds, Pistols, Peeces, curious Armour, Wynes, Druge of all sorts, Organs, Virginals, Musicians, Scarlets, Pearles, curious Plate and other things of good value according to my Commissions. I tooke my leaue of the Queene, receiued her Highnesse Letters to the Emperour, and Protector with Letters Patents of grace and title for my passage with many good words and gracious promises, Instructions also from the Lords

Lords and the Company, with some recompence for fauour already done for them in the Emperours Court.

I departed well accommodated in company of tenne good ships, arriued at Saint *Nicolas*, pisted twelue hundred miles to the *Musco*, came to the Lord Protector, now stiled Prince of the Prouince of *Vaga*, who receiued me gladly; sends for me againe the next day, tels me of many strange alterations since I had gone from thence, practises of the Mother of *Demetrius* and that Family, discontents twixt him and his ioynt Commissioners for the Gouernment by the Emperours will. (Here was now loth to haue any Competitor) you shall heare much said he, beleeue little more then I tell you. On the other side I heard much discontent of the Nobility, dissembling, working on the aduantage, &c. I was brought before the Emperour, the Counsell sitting in State, and deliuered the accounts of my employment (as did other his Embassadours) with the Queenes Letters. Commandement was giuen to a Gentleman with fifty Huntsmen to attend the speedy bringing vp of the Presents. I had commendation for the seruice done about Queene *Magnus*.

Boris his bloudy staires to the Throne.

Bodan Belsonie the chiefe Fauourite to the old Emperor, was now sent to a remote Town and Castle called Casan in displeasure, as a man feared to sow discontent in the Nobility. *Peter Gellanine* chiefe Treasurer to the old Emperour and peremptory against *Boris*, was likewise sent away vnder the conduct of *Iuan Voiacoue* a Fauourite of the Protectors, and on the way to *Musco* was dispatched of his life. *Kneaz Iuan Susoy* a prime Prince of the bloud, one in commission for the Gouernment, was commanded to depart the Court and City of *Musco* to his owne repose, surprised with a Coronels Guard, and not farre off the City was smothered in a Cottage with wet hay and stubble set on fire. Thus were the chiefe blockes removed out of the *Godonowes* way: many more were quarrelled, and by degrees had the like measure.

I was sorry to see in what hatred the Protector grew with the people. He tooke me out with him at the Posterne with small attendance besides his Falconers to see his Gerfalcons flye at the Crane, Herne, and Swanne (Princely pastimes for their hardy Hawkes, not caring for their killing, having such choyse) but a beggerly Fryer wished him to hast home speedily, all were not his friends. Some fiue hundred horse, young Nobles and Courtiers, were comming to meet the Protector for honour, to attend him as was said to the Citie. His meaning was that none should know of his going out. He followed the Fryers aduice, ventured the Ford a neere way, and was at the Castle gate before that company could come about. I saw him perplexed and glad that he had recouered the Palace: where Bishops, Dukes, Gentlemen and other Suters attended him, and could not at other times come in his sight in three or foure dayes together, he passing by a priuy way. I prayed him to looke backe (the rather because they should not enuy my passing with him) to shew himselfe on the Terras. He cast a displeasing countenance on mee, yet stayed and went towards them, saluted many and tooke their Petitions, great acclamations were made, God saue *Boris Fedorowich* his health. He told them, he would preuent their Petitions to the Empetour. They answere; Thou most Noble Lord are King, say thou the word and it is done. I recite this because I perceiued his liking and aym at the Crowne.

Publike audience to Sir *I. Horsey*.

My Presents were now come: the day appointed that I must againe appeare before the Emperour from her Maiesty, with a Gentleman of good esteeme, and was as well mounted as he, attended with twenty men in faire Liueries; my selfe attyred after their fashion, stayed in a withdrawing Room: till the Emperour and Empresse had viewed out of the Palace winlowes the Bull, Dogges and Lions: a goodly white Bull all spotted with natural black dapples, his gorge hanging downe to his knees, washed with Sope and sleeked ouer, with a greene veluet Collar studded, and a red Rope, made to kneele before the Emperour and Empresse, and standing vp looked fiercely on euery side appearing some other strange beast; which they call *Bucnuk*: twelue goodly masty Doggs with Roses and Collars in like fashion led by twelue men, two faire Lions brought forth of their Cages drawne on Sleds, &c. The Emperour being set in his Chaire of State, I was sent for in, my men carrying their Presents in their hands, most pieces of curious Plate. I deliuered my Speech; the Emperour said little, shewed good countenance, and the Chancellor whispering in his eare, stood vp, put off his Cap, and said he was glad to heare that his louing Sister Queen *Elizabeth* was in good health, and therewith I was dismissed in manner as I came. The perticulars of the Presents were deliuered in a Schedule to the Lord Treasurer. There followed me *Iuan Shamadanoe* a Kinsman of the Lord Protectors with a hundred and fifty dishes of all sorts of meates for my Dinner from the Emperour, Drinkes, Bread and Spice, sent by one hundred and fifty Gentlemen thorow the streets to my Lodging. I presented the chiefe a cloth of Scarlet garment, and rewarded each of the others. The next day my friends, their Priests, Officers, &c. came (as the manner is) to make merry with that cheere.

The

The Protector spent a whole day in viewing the Prouisions sent him, hee and the Empresse his Sister liking all, admiring nothing more then the Organs and Virginals; neuer hauing seene or heard the like before. Ready mony was sent 4500. pounds, and my choyce of one of three Horses sent by the Master of his Horse, esteemed worth 300. Markes. Hee sent me by another three thousand pounds in fine Siluer Coyne of his free gift, and earnest of his fauour. I was continually remembred with other gifts in bountiful measure, so that Townes, Monasteries, Officers, Merchants, Natiue and Forreigne made vse of my fauour to procure Freedomes and Exemptions. The Emperour (I might say the Lord Protector) being possessed of so great a Treasure, knew not how to make vse thereof to illustrate his fame. The
10 *Persian* and *Georgian* both inuaded by the *Turke*, were Suitors for ayde. Hee lent the *Persian* 200000. pounds for fiue yeeres *gratis*, and halfe so much to the *Georgian* King. Hereupon grew a quarrell betwixt the *Turke* and the *Moscouite*. The Protector ambitious of greater Rule, or Title rather, sent *Knez Pheodor Forresson* in Embassage to the King of *Denmarke*, about a Match with his Daughter, and *Hartique Hans* the Kings third Sonne; little was resolued till foure yeeres after. *Alphonsace Masolous* Secretary of State was sent to *Maximilian* the Emperour, with great and rich Presents, and offer of ayde against the *Turke* in *Hungary*, if he would procure passage for an Army thorow *Poland* of King *Stephen*, which the Emperour could not effect, and in lieu thereof, desiring by his Embassadours sent into *Russia* the lone of 300000. Rials, such hostage was desired for assurance that the effect was
20 frustrate and proued ridiculous and vnfortunate, the *Turke* setting the *Crimme* on the *Russe* with a huge Army, which cost the *Moscouite* infinite charge and losse of men. The *Pole* and *Swethen* combined also & recouered their ancient Territories, the *Russe* at that time being employed in new Conquests in *Siberia*, whence *Chuglecaloth* the Emperour with his Mother and best *Mursey*s were brought to the *Musco*, where they liued with better may nrenance then in their owne Country. I saw the King there doe many feats of actiuity on Horseback and Foot. He told me of men of like complection to me in his Country, taken with a Ship two yeeres before, intending to passe vp the *Ob* to seeke *Cathay*.

The discontented Nobility now practised against the Protectors greatnesse, which hee durst not then take notice of. Soone after a practice was discouered to poyson the young
30 Prince *Demetrius*, his Mother and all that Family guarded in *Ouglets*. Also *Mekita Romanowich* the Emperours only Vnkle, trusted in the third place for the gouernment in the old Emperours Will with *Boris*, who could indure no Competitor, (two prime Princes made away) was bewitched, his speech taken suddenly from him. I came to visit him, hee set pen to paper and writ that hee was bewitched, and by whom, and should not liue. The Protector told me also that *Mekita Romanowich* was not like to disturbe him long. He dyed soone after, and the silly Emperour his Nephew fearing his turne next, desired he might be shorne a Fryer.

That Nobleman left three Sonnes of great hope, *Feodor* the eldest (for whom I had made a well as I could a kind of *Latine* Grammer in the *Sclauonian* Tongue and Letters. He was now enforced to marry, and had a Sonne. The Protector being iealous of him, hee also not
40 long after his Fathers death was made dead to the World and shorne a Fryer, made Archbishop of *Rostous*. His next Brother of no lesse generous spirit, not able to dissemble his discontents longer, tooke opportunitie to stab the Protector, though not so dangerously as hee intended, and escaped into *Poland* where hee and *Bodan Belsey*, and others at home practised the vtter ruine of *Boris* and all his Family. Meane while I procured many Priuiledges for the *English* Merchants with Releases, Payments, Ratifications, &c. The Protector iealous and fearefull, sends Treasure, Siluer and Gold Coyne to *Solduistzca* Monastery on the Sea side neere the *Danish* and *Swethen* Confines, that it might be ready (as himselfe told me) to transport into *England*, holding that his surest refuge in case of necessity. It was of infinite value, and not pertaynting to the Crowne. I was now suspected by the discontented Nobili-
50 ty who shewed me not wonted countenance, which caused mee to haste away hauing speeded my businesse and Instructions from the Counsell and Merchants.

Hee is now their Patriarch.

Rich Presents were sent from the Emperour for the Queene, and *Boris* sent with secret messages a curious Robe for me of Cloth of Siluer wrought without seame made in *Persia*, with a faire imbroydered Tent, wrought Handkerchiefes, Shirts, Towels, &c. brought by his neere Kinsman. I intreated two fauours for a farwell, the freedome of the *Liuonian* men, women and children, sent before to *Nouogrod* in displeasure: a Catalogue of their names were taken, and they freed by the Letter of *Irenia* the Empresse: the other was the liberty of a Noblemans Sonne of *Gulderland*. Here *Sacarius Giffenberg*, which neyther the King of *Denmarke*, nor *States* Letters could before procure; which his Mother well recompensed.
62 After rich allowance by the way, honourably attended, and ample prouisions added at Saint *Nicolas*, I was shipped in the *Centurion*, and after fine weekes arriued in *England*, at Richmond had audience of the Queene, deliuered the Emperours Letters and Merchants Priuiledges

Sir I. Horsey is sent against England.

ledges with Golden Spread-eagle Scales at them, and account of my whole employment to her good satisfaction and approbation of me. Shee obserued the Characters by the affinitie they had with the *Greeke*, and asked if they had not such and such significations, said shee could quickly learne it, and bade my Lord of *Ess.* learne it. When the Ships with the Presents were come, I had a second audience, her Maiestie much liking to handle the Presents.

After this, I weary of Court Holy-water, was willing to retire my selfe to a priuate life, but by reason of my skill in those Languages, a more dangerous employment was committed to me. *Frederike* King of *Denmarke* had embarqued the English Merchants Ships in the Sound about Customes, and they sued to the Queene for redresse: likewise diuers in Poland which there had obtayned Priuiledges and Protection, had refused to pay Debts to the English Merchants, &c. I was appointed to take *Cellen* in the way, where the Imperiall Dyet was appointed thither to accompany Sir *Horatio Palauicino* the Queenes Embassadour, and *Monsieur de Freze*, the French Kings Embassadour: and thence I to the *Dane* and the *Pole*. I came to *Copenhagen*, had access to the King of *Denmarke*, deliuered the Queenes Letters: and after had audience, and propounded what was giuen me in Commission.

He is againe employed to the Kings of Denmarke and Poland; and to Russia, &c.

An. 1589. The King of *Denmarke* answered with a sad countenance, Our Sister the Queenes Maiestie of England requires at our hands too great a losse: wee are possessed of forty thousand pounds, and twenty tall Ships forfeited to our Crowne by the treachery and falshood of her Subiects, &c. But in fine, he made his minde knowne to the Queene by his Letters, requiring an exchange of certayne Ships of the Easterlings * embarked in England, for the freedome of the English Ships and goods. This was beyond my Commission to conclude. And I hasted away hauing dined with the King, who bestowed on mee a Gold Chaine. I returned to *Lubeck*, and thence to *Dauzik*, where Master *Barker* Deputy and other substantiall Merchants, * inuited my way by *Melwin*, where they relided. But I tooke my way by *Torne*, and came to *Warsouia*, where *Sigismundus* King of *Poland* then held his Court, and after some disgusts, at last obtained the Merchants Suite against diuers Debters which had their sought protection. The great Chancelor *Zamoitsoy*, the principall Statesman of that Kingdome sent vnto me a friendly message, offering also for my solace his Hounds, Hawkes, or any other pastimes for recreation. I was inuited and dined with the King, receiued his Letters Patents, and Dismission, and after feasted by the Lord High Chamberlaine *Pan Lucas Obrosemouc*. I also had sight of Queene *Anne* daughter to *Sigismund* the Third, and Wife to King *Stephen Batore*: but priuately, hauing to that end put on one of my Seruants Liueries, which notwithstanding, I was discouered, and had conference with the Queene, who seemed much to magnifie Queene *Marie*, and no lesse disaffected to Queene *Elizabeth* for the death of *Storie*, *Campion*, &c. which I sayd had beene vnnaturall Subiects, and practisers of Rebellion. Shee then obiected, But how could he spill the bloud of the Lords Anoynted, a better Queene, &c. which I answered was done by the Parliament, without her Royall consent. Shee shooke her head with dislike, and would haue replyed, had not *Possuino* the Popes Legate, as they termed him (whose skirts I had before pressed in *Mosco*, being there the Popes *Nuncio*) comme in: whereupon I with a Glasse of *Hungarian* Wine (which I refused till shee had taken the same into her owne hand) was dismissed.

* These ships were of Lubek, Danzik, Stetine, Melwin, Quinborough, loaden with munition for the Queenes enemies, and therefore stayed, &c.

* Master *William Cockayne* since Lord Maior of *London*.

A Popish Queene distasts Queene *Elizabeth*.

On that Euening in which I departed from *Warsouia*, I passed ouer a Riuer, by the side whereof there lay a dead Serpent (like a Crocodile with foure feet, hard skales, and in length about six or seuen foot) which my men brake with Boare-speares, the stench whereof so poysoned me, that I lay sicke many dayes in the next Village. When I came to *Vilna* the chiefe Citie in *Lituania*, I presented my selfe and my Letters Patents from the Queene, which declared my employment, vnto the Great Duke *Ragauil*, a powerfull Prince and Religious Protestant. Hee gaueme great respect and sayd, Though I had nothing to say to him from that Renowmed Queene of England, the Mytrour of all the Queenes that euer reigned, yet he did so much honour and admire her excellent vertues and graces, that he would also hold me in the reputation of her Maiesties Ambassadour: and that it was in his Supreame power and pleasure to allow or not allow of the King his Letters Patents for my passage thorow that great Principalitie, his Inheritance, and differing from the Crowne of *Poland*. That his Subiects might tainke I negotiated with him, he tooke me with him to his Church, heard Diuine Seruice, Psalmes sung, and a Sermon, the Sacrament also was administred as in the Reformed Churches; whereat his Brother Cardinall *Ragauil* did murmure.

A kind of Crocodile.

Vilna.

A Protestant Prince magnifies Queene *Elizabeth*.

The great Dukes Feast.

His Highnesse inuited me to Dinner, honoured with fifty Halbardiers thorow the Citie, Gunners placed, and fiue hundred Gentlemen (his Guard) to bring me to his Palace; where himselfe accompanied with many young Noblemen receiued me vpon the Terras, and then brought me into a very large Roome, where were Organs with singing. A long Table was set with Lords and Ladies, Himselfe vnder a Cloth of State, and I was placed before him in the middest of the Table. With sound of Trumpets and Kettle Drummes the first Seruice

was

was brought in, and after Prayer sayd by his Almoner, Fisters and Poets discoursed merrily, Instruments of lowd, and other lower Musicke were added: twenty Dwarfes* men and women attired curiously made sweet harmony with mournfull Pipes and Songs, vsing also *Dauids* Tymbrels and *Aarons* Bels, as they called them, and danced, deuiding themselues, man and woman, hand in hand. His Highnesse dranke for the Maiestie of the Angelicall Queene of *England* her health, illustrating her greatnesse and graces with many good words. The Princes & Ladies euery one with their glasses of sweet Wine pledged: & I did the like for his Highnesse health. Then were serued in strange portraytures of Lions, Vnicornes, Spread Eagles, Swannes, &c. made artificially of Sugar past gilded, with Spickets in their bellies filled some with Sacke, others with Rhenish or Hungarian Wines (euery one chence to fill his Glasse) others also had Suckets to be taken out of their bellies with their Siluer Forkes. It were tedious to relate all the particulars. After fixe houres spent in this Feast, I was conducted to my lodging in manner as I had beene brought; and afterwards had my Letters Patens and a Gentleman to conduct mee thorow his Countrey. I passed by *Smolensko* to *Musco* 1200. miles from *Vilna*. My entertynment at *Vilna*, and negotiating with the King of *Poland*, now made me suspected to the *Russian* Nobility. The Bishop of *Susdales* House was appointed for my lodging, where I was guarded and attended by meane Gentlemen; the pretence was, lest I should haue conference with the *Polish* Embassadour. The Protector was not present when I had audience of the Emperour, and after priuately sent for me, professed himselfe forty he could not bee so fauourable as in former times to me, but promised that a haire of my head should not fall to the ground, &c.

I perceiued many of my good Friends were gone and made away: had warning of many Articles framed against me, which against their will being diuulged, I answered so as I gained reputation thereby. Yet the water which was daily brought mee from the Riuer was poysoned, as also my drinke, Herbs and Muske Melons sent to my House: my Landresse was hired likewise to poyson me, which she confessed with the circumstances, I had a Seruant, a Lords Sonne of *Dauzzke*, which brake out with Blaynes and escaped narrowly: my Cooke and Butler both dyed of poyson. I writ to the Lord Protector hereof, but receiued no answere. I must remoue to *Torasanu* till the *Polish* Embassadour was gone, and the third night after I came to this Towne, I commended my Soule to God, expecting death. One rapped at my gate at midnight, and I with my Seruants well appointed came to enquire the cause. *Alphonsus Nagoy* Brother to the Emperour (Mother of *Demetrius*) which were placed at *Ouglets* fiue and twenty miles off, cryed out and sayd, O sweet *Toreno* the *Charowich Demetrius* is dead, his throate was cut aboot the sixt houre by the *Dauks* Sonne one of his Pages: confessed vpon the Racke, by *Boris* his setting on: and the Emprestie poysoned, and vpon point of death, her haire, nayles and skinne fall off; helpe, helpe with some good thing for the passion of God. This outcry did not a little astonish me, till I saw his face ouer the wall. I durst not open my gates, sayd I had nothing worth the sending, yet gaue a little Viall of Balsam (which Queene *Elizabeth* had giuen me as an Antidote against Poysons) giuen her by Sir *F. Dr.*) with a boxe of Venice Treacle. Some three dayes before the Suburbs of *Musco*, were set on fire, and 12000. houses burned, *Boris* his guard had the spoyle. It was giuen out that *Demetrius* his Mother, her Brother and that Family of the *Nagoies* had practised to kill the Emperour and Protector, and to burne the whole Citie of *Musco*. Fiue desperate Souldiers were suborned to indure the Racke, and confessed there that they were the men which should doe this exploit. This was published to make the name of *Demetrius* hatefull to the people with that whole Family. The Bishop of *Orutesca*, was sent accompanied with fiue hundred Gunnes, and diuers Nobles and Gentlemen to see *Demetrius* buried vnder the high Aleat of Saint *Iohns* in *Ouglets* in *Ouglets* Castle. Little did *Boris* thinke that his Ghost should after root out him and his Family. The sicke poysoned Empresse was presently thorow Nunne: all her Allies, her Brother, Vncles, Friends and Officers dispersed in diuersleyne to diuers secret Dens, not to haue communicie with men, or see the light.

* Pardon this prolixity in narration of a Feast. I doe it partly for Q. *Elizabeth* sake to whole honour it was intended; and partly to expresse the magnificence and customes of Lithuania, little knowne to most.

Practises to poyson Sir *Hen. Horsey*.

Demetrius slain and his Mother poysoned.

I was hasted away also. I had Letters from *Boris*, he could not doe as he would, but time would worke me more grace, as amply as euer. If I wanted money or prouision hee would impart of his owne. Some secrets he had committed to me, which now made a dangerous impression in his memory. I arriued in *England*, deliuered my Letters to the Queene, which I found much more fauourable then I expected: the Company of Merchants payd me 1845. pounds in ready money for my goods in their hands; a generall releese past on both sides, &c. I furnished Master *Hakluyt* and Doctor *Fletcher* with Intelligences *&c.*

Thus the Race of *Iuan Vasilowich* which had continued about 300. yeeres was raced out
62 and extinguished in bloud, the Emperour soone following: as I received by Letters from thence from my worthy friends, and haue since had conference with two Embassadours, and a Fryer of good intelligence. *Boris* had made away most of the chiefe and ancient Nobility, and

Boris is made Emperour. Description of his person and qualities.

and now remooued the Emperour *Theodor*, placed his Sister the Empresse in a Monastery, causeth the Patriarches, Metropolites, Bishops, and new sprung Nobility, his Officers, Merchants, and other his owne creatures to petition him to take the Crowne vpon him. He was solemnely inaugurated accordingly. Hee was of comely person, well fauoured, affable, easie and apt to ill counsell, but dangerous in the end to the guer, of good capacity and ready wit, about forty six yeeres of age; much affected to Necromancie, made shew of great Deuotion and Religion, not Learned, of a sudden apprehension, very precipitate, subtle, a naturall good Oratour, reuengefull, not much giuen to luxury, temperate in dyet, Heroicall in outward shew, one which gaue great entertynment to forreigne Embassadours, sent rich Presents to forreigne Kings to illustrate his owne greatnesse. Hee now desired league by his Embassadours sent with Letters and Presents to the Emperour, Pole, Dane & Swethen, which the three last refused but vpon conditions to his losse. To them adhered those which loued him not, and procured his ruine. Hee continued the same course of gouernment, but made shew of more security and liberty to the Subiect. Still fearing his owne safety and continuance, he desired to match his Daughter with *Hartique Hans* the King of *Denmarky* third Sonne. Conditions were agreed on: time appointed for the Marriage, but this valorous hopefull Prince on that day whereon he should haue beene married dyed in the *Mosco*. Not long after he was put to extreame exigents by the Crimme, the Pole and Swethen, all inuading the neerest Confines.

Boris his ruine.

Bodan Belskoy the old Emperours Minion (vpon whom hee serued *Boris* his trusty turne, making him away, and so opening a way to that which *Boris* aymed at, none being also better able to bring in subiection the aduerse Nobilitie and others) was rewarded with such recompence as vsually followeth such trecherous Instruments. *Boris* and the Empresse fearing his subtle wit, found occasions and placed him remote with his Confederates, sure as they thought. But he in the time of his greatnesse hauing conuayed infinite Treasure, now vseth it to reuenge, and ioyning with many discontented Nobles, stirres vp the King and Palatines of Poland with the power of Lithuania, and with a meane Army hoping of assistance in Russia, gaue out that they brought the true *Demetrius* Sonne to *Iuan Vasilowich*. *Boris* wants courage to fight, notwithstanding sufficient preparations: hee, his Wife, Sonne and Daughter tooke poyson whereof three presently dyed, the Sonne liued to bee proclaymed but quickly dyed.

He poysoneth himselfe.

The Counterfeit *Demetrius* raigneth.

And now the Counterfeit *Demetrius* was admitted and crowned, Sonne to a Priest, sometimes carried *Agnuni* to sell about the Country: Married the *Palatines* Daughter, and permitting the Poles to domineere ouer the Russe Nobility, and to set their courses of Religion and Iustice out of ioynt, hauing rooted out *Boris* his faction and Family, &c. The Russes conspire and kill *Demetrius*, take him out of his bed, dragge him on the Terrace: the Gunnets and Souldiers thrust their Knives in his body, hacke, hew and mangle his head, body, and legs, carry it to the Market place, shew it for three dayes about the City, the people cursing him, and the Traytors that brought him. The *Palatine* & his Daughter were conuayed away.

He is slaine.

Suiky is crowned and captiuated by the Poles.

A new Election was made, two propounded *Knez Iuan Misthulleskoy* and *Knez Vasily Petrowich Suikoy*: this was chosen and crowned: but summoned as a Vassall by a Herald of Armes to yeeld obedience to the Crowne of Poland. The Pole strikes the Iron whiles it is hote hauing gotten good footing amongst them, inuades Russia, repolsesses the *Mosco*, takes *Suscoy* and diuers Nobles which are carried Captiues to *Vilna*, chiefe Citie of *Lituania*. Now the Poles tyrannise ouer the Russe more then before, seize on their goods, money, and best things which they conuay into *Poland* and *Lituania*. But those hidden by *Iuan Vasilowich* and *Boris* in secret places, doubtlesse remayne vndiscouered, by reason the parties which had beene therein employed were still made away. The *Russe* submits to the *Pole*, desires *Stanislaus* his Sonne to liue and Reigne ouer and amongst them: but that King and State would not herein trust them with their hope of Succession; nor doe them so much honour, but rule by their Presidents, &c. The *Lugannie*, *Nagoie* and *Cheresu Tartars* long settled in obedience to the *Russe*, and best vsed by them, now straitned of their wonted Salaries and vsage, hate the *Pole*, take armes in great numbers, robbed, spoyled, killed & carried away many of them with their rich booties before gotten: the *Russe* Nobilitie tooke heart againe and bethinke them of another Emperour. The Sonne of the Archibishop of *Rostoua*, (now Patriarch of *Mosco*, Sonne to *Mokita Romanowich* before mentioned) borne before he was made a Bishop, *Michael Fedorowich* is elected and crowned by generall consent of all Estates, God send him long to Reigne with better successe then his Predecessors.

Suiky is crowned and captiuated by the Poles.

The Poles expelled by the Tartars.

RE.

RELATIONS OF THE KINGDOME OF GOLCHONDA, AND OTHER NEIGHBOVRING NATIONS within the Gulfe of BENGALA, *Arreccan, Pegu, Tannassery, &c.*

And the ENGLISH Trade in those *Parts, by Master* WILLIAM METHOLD.

THe Gulfe of Bengala (famous for its dimensions) extendeth it selfe from the Cape called Comorijne, lying in 8. degrees of North latitude: vnto Chatigan the bottome thereof, which being in 22. degrees, is not lesse as the Coast lyeth then a 1000. English miles, and in breadth 900. limited on the other side, by Cape Singapura, which lyeth in 1. degree of South latitude; washeth the Coast of these great and fertile Kingdomes, *viz.* Ziloan, Bisnagar, Golchonda, Bengala, Arreccan, Pegu and Tanassery, and receiveth into its * bosome, many Nauigable Riuers, which lose their noce and names, in the eminent Neighbourhood of the famous Ganges: whose vnknowne head, pleasant streames, and long extent, haue amongst those Heathen Inhabitants, (by the Tradition of their Forefathers) gained a beliefe of clensing all such sinnes, as the bodies of those that wash therein brought with them: for which cause many are the Pilgrimes that resort from farre to this lasting *Iubilee*, with some of whom, I haue had conference, and from their owne reports I insert this their beliefe.

* *Sinus Gangeticus.*

The Iland of Zeloan, our Nation hath onely looke vpon *(en passant)* the Portugals that clayme all East India by donation, hold a great part of this in subiection, and with such assurance, that they believe they can make it good against all their Enemies, yet are not they the onely Lords thereof, for the naturall Inhabitants haue also their King, commonly called the King of Candy; with whom the Danes had not long since a fruitlesse treaty for commerce, which falling short of their expectation, they fortified vpon the Mayne, not far from Negapatnam, at a place called Trangabay, with what successe or hopes of benefit, I cannot relate.

Zeloan or Zeblan.

Candy.

The first Kingdome vpon the Mayne, is that ancient one of Bisnagar, rent at this time into seuerall Prouinces, or Gouernments; held by the * *Naicks* of that Countrey in their owne right: for since the last King (who deceased about fifteene yeeres since) there haue arisen seuerall Competitors for the Crowne, vnto whom the *Naicks* haue adhered according to their factions, or affections, from whence hath followed, a continuall Ciuill Warre in some parts of the Country, and such extreame want and famine in most of it, that Parents haue brought thousands of their young children to the Sea side, selling there a child for

* Gaptaines Gouernours.

flue

d Two shillings six pence sterling.

five 4 *Fanums* worth of Rice, transported from thence into other parts of India, and sold again to good aduantage, if the gaines be good, that arisseth from the sale of Soules.

S. Thome. See before in *Sabio &c.*

In this Kingdome lyeth the Towne of Saint *Thome*, inhabited and gouerned by Portugals, who notwithstanding must acknowledge some dependency from the *Naicke* that holds that part of the Countrey, of whom (after some siege endured by them) they were enforced, about three yeares since to buy their peace with a summe of money: for their Towne is onely fortified towards the Sea, but to Landwards, no otherwise then with their houses, which are built strong, close, and desensible.

Palecat possessed by the Dutch.

Not farre from Saint *Thome* lyeth *Pallecat*, a badde Neighbour to the *Portugall*, since the *Dutch* possessed their Castle in that place, for with shipping great and smal, which they constantly kept vpon that Coast, they so scowre it, that a *Portugall* Frigat stirre not, but in the confidence of her better sayling, nor dares anchor before the Towne, for feare of being fetcht from thence, but if they escape at Sea, either vnseene, or by their speed, they presently vnlade, haling their Ships on shoare close vnder the wall, from whence it followeth, the trade of that place is so much decayed, that the *Portugall* Inhabitants are become much impouerished, wherein, it is worth the obseruation, to consider their malice punished in the effect of it: for the *Hollanders* (after some experience of the trade in India, finding Commodities of Saint *Thome*, and that Coast, to be very vendible and to good profit, in the Moluccoes, Banda, Amboyna, Iaua, Sumatra, and other those Easterne parts) procured from the last King of Bisnagar, free Commerce in his Countrey, and to that purpose, setled at first a Factory in *Pallecut*, where they left sixe or seuen *Hollanders* to negotiate their Affaires: but the *Portugals* of Saint *Thome*, not brooking any Christian Corriuall so neere them, in the same course of trade, came downe with their whole power of Frigats, and landing at *Pallecut*, they assaulted the *Dutch* House, which was for a time resolutely defended, vntill some being slaine, the rest yeelded after promise of life and good quarter, but were carried Prisoners to Saint *Thome*, from whence with much difficulty some escaped, and amongst them the chiefe Factor from whose Relation I insert this Discourse.

Sir *Adulse Thomason.*

The King (vpon knowledge of this assault, and the *Hollanders* instant Suite to bee better secured) permitted them to build a Fort, conditionally that the one halfe of the Souldiers should be of his Subiects, which tooke place, and the Fort being finished, It was deuided, and halued betwixt the *Gentiles* and *Hollanders*: vntill many differences arising, amongst so different Cohabitants, the King called away his people, leauing the Fort wholy in the *Dutches* power, which since they haue enlarged and strengthened, and now call it *Gueldrea*: wherein since the Treaty of 1619, our Nation for the moyetie of an oppressed trade, haue borne the vttermost charge of halfe the Garrison, without participation of such benefits as in equity ought to ensue, but my affection to that Nation, and the condition of the times, forbids me to aggrauate, or adde, to our iust quarrell, for their vniust and cruell proceedings in *Amboyna*.

Portugals weakness within the Gulfe.

So that now the *Portugals* in place of Neighbouring Merchants whom they disturbed, are galled with a Garrison of profest Enemies whom they cannot remoeue, for their owne power is not sufficient, and assistance from the Vice-roy they shall not haue, if their present ruines were in question, because they neither assist in person or contribution, the generall Affaires of *India*, but are with their consorts the *Portugals* inhabiting *Bengala*, accounted [*Lenantadoes del Rey*] exempted from their Princes protection.

Only they haue to their power, incensed some of the *Naickes* against the *Hollanders*, who about foure yeares since with sixe thousand men besieged *Pallecut*, but at such distance, and with so little aduantage, that an easie composition raysed the siege, and little of that giuen by the *Hollanders*, but from the Natiues subsisting vnder their protection ouer whom they pretend no Soueraignetie, exact no Duties, nor prescribe no Lawes: contenting themselues in confronting the *Portugall*, and negotiating their Affaires or Merchandizing.

Musulipatnam or Musulipatan. *P. W. Floris.* See P. 1.6.3.

In sixteene degrees and a halfe lyeth *Musulipatnam*, the chiefe Port of the Kingdome of *Golebonda*, where the Right Worshipfull East *Indian* Company haue their Agent, and seuerall Factories in that place and *Petapoley*: first protected and setled by *Peter Willemson Floris*, and *Lucas Anthonison*, who in the employment of English Aduenturers, arriued there about thirteene yeares since in the *Globe* of *London*: since which time, Commerce hath beene continued in those parts, and amongst other their Seruants, my selfe receiued their employment, and from almost fiue yeares residence in that place, (at the request of the Authour of this laborious Volume) am emboldened to publish such remarkable things as haue falne within the compasse of my obseruation.

It is a small Towne, but populous, vnwalled, ill built, and worse situated, within all the Spring are brackish, and without ouer-flowed witheuery high Sea for almost halfe a mile about.

bout. It was first a poore Fisher Towne, from whence it tooke the name it yet retaynes, afterwards the conuenience of the Road, made it a fit Residence for Merchants, and so continueth (with increase of Trade) since our, and the Dutch Nation frequented this Coast.

Climate and Seasons. Hote and killing winds.

The Climate is very healthfull, and the yeere deuided in their account into three different seasons, whereof March, Aprill, May, and June they call the hote season; and not without good cause; for the Sunne being returned into their Hemisphere, doth not alone scortch the Earth with his piercing beames, but euen the winde which should assuage his fury, addes greater fire, and yeerely about mid May with a strong Westerly gale, brings off the Land a sensible heat; as when a house is on fire, such as are neere to Leeward can hardly endure; and 10 this so penetrateth, that the doores and windowes being shut, the houses are notwithstanding so warmed, that the chaires and stooles admit hardly the vses they were made for, without cooling them, and the place where we abide, by often sprinkling of water; but the extremity hereof ney ther lasteth long, nor commeth often, onely fiue or seuen dayes in a yeere, and then but from nine or ten a clocke in the forenoone, vntill foure or fiue in the afternoone, at which time a coole breeze from off the Sea, qualifies againe this intollerable heat: wherein many of the natiues are in their trauell suffocated and perish. And of *Christians* a Dutchman as hee was carried in his *Palamkeene*, and an Englishman walking but from the Towne to the Barre little above an English mile, dyed both in the way. The rest of these foure moneths are very 20 hote, farre exceeding the hottest day in our Climate, and would so continue, but that in Iuly, August, September, and October, the raines are predominant, which with their frequent, violent, and long continuing showres, cooles the Earth, and reuiues the parcht Roots of the Sun burnt Plants of the Earth, sometimes rayning so long together, and with such fiercenesse, that Houses loose their foundations in their currants, and fall to the ground: from whence also followes great Land-floods, to this Countrey no lesse commodious, then the inundation of Nilus to the Egyptians, by receiuing the Floods into their Rice grounds, and there retayning it vntill the Earth drinking it in, becomes the better enabled to endure an eighth moneths abstinence; for in eight moneths it neuer rayneth. Nouember, December, Ianuary, and February, they account their cooler times, and are so indeed compared to the former, yet as hote as it is here in England in May.

Peter Iacobses R. Stoner.

Commodious Floods.

30 From which constant heate, all Trees are heere continually greene, and their Fruites ripe in their seuerall Seasons. The Earth in some places affoords two Croppes of Rice in a yeere, rarely three Croppes, and in most places but one, yet there with very great increase: they sowe other sorts of Pulse, different from ours, and farre vp into the Country they haue good Wheate, but not much, for it is little eaten of the Gentiles: Rootes they haue of most sorts which we haue heere, and good store of Potatoes, yet but few Hearbs or Flowres, which defect they supply in their *Betele*, whose frequent vse amongst them, many haue already discoursed. In briefe, it is a very fruitfull Countrey, and occasioned by many of the Inhabitants abstinence from any thing that hath life: all kind of victuall are very cheape and plentifull, as eight Hens for twelue pence, a Goate or Sheepe for ten pence, 40 and for eighteene pence or two shillings a very good Hogge, the like of fish, and all other prouisions in the Towne, but in the Countrey much better cheape.

All trees continually greene. Fertilitie.

This Kingdome (as most others in India) receiueth its denomination from the chiefe City or Residence of the King, called by the Natiues Golchonda, by the Moores and Persians Hidraband, distant from Musulipatnam, eight and twentie Gentiue leagues, euery such league containing nine English miles: and in the common course of trauel ten dayes iourney. A Citie that for sweetnesse of ayre, conuenience of water, and fertility of soyle, is accounted the best situated in India, not to speake of the Kings Palace, which for bignesse and sumptuousnesse, in the iudgement of such as haue trauelled India, exceedeth all belonging to the *Mogull* or any other Prince: it being twelue miles in circumference, built all of stone, and 50 within the most eminent places, garnished with massie Gold, in such things as we commonly vse Iron, as in barres of Windowes, bolts, and such like, and in all other points fitted to the Maiesty of so great a King, whoin Elephants and Iewels is accounted one of the richest Princes of India.

Golchonda described.

Glorious Palace.

He is by Religion a Mahumetan, discended from Persian Ancestors, and retayneth their opinions, which differing in many points from the Turkes, are distinguished in their Sects by teames of *Seaw*, and *Sunnet*, and hath beene at large, (and truly to my knowledge) partia- 60 cularized in your *Pilgrimage*, whereunto I onely adde in confirmation of their mutuall hatred, what in conference I receiued from a *Meene*, one of *Mahomets* owne Tribe, it were may beleeue his owne Heraldry, whose openly professed hee could not finde in his heart 62 to pray for a *Sunnee*, for in his Opinion a Christian might as easily bee saued; a Christie well befitting his Religion, that would not pray for those; hee might not pray with.

The King a Mahumetan.

Their Sects.

Kings title, Wiues, Concubines.

This King (as all other his Predecessors) retaines the title of *Coimbsha*, the original whereof I remember to haue read in *Linschoten*. He maried (during my being in his Country) the daughter of *Adelsha*, King of *Vizapore*, and hath besides her three other Wiues, and at least 1000. Concubines; a singular honour and state amongst them to haue many women, and one of the strangest things to them I could relate, and in their opinions lamentable, that his excellent Maiesty our Gracious Soueraigne, should haue three Kingdomes and but one Wife.

Three *Decan* Kings enemy to the *Mogoll*. Kings Reuenue.

The *Coimbsha* & *Adelsha*: and *Negamm Sha* oppose the *Mogull* in a perpetuall league of mutuall defence, yet so as their yeerely Presents prouue their best weapons, chusing rather to buy peace then to hazard the euent of war against so mighty an Enemy.

His Reuenewes are reported to bee fiue and twenty *Lackes* of *Pagodes*; a *Lacke* being an 100. 10 000. and a *Pagode* equall in weight and alloy to a *French* Crowne, and worth therefore fiuetheilings six pence sterling: which huge Treasure arisseth from the large extent of his Dominions, his Subiects being all his Tenants, and at a racke Rent: for this King as all others in *India*, is the onely Free-holder of the whole Country, which being deuided into great gouernments, as our Shires; those againe into lesser ones as our Hundreds; and those into Villages: the Gouernment is farmed immediately from the King by some eminent man, who to other inferiours farmeth out the lesser ones; and they againe to the Countrey people, at such excessiue rates, that it is most lamentable to consider, what toyle and miserie the wretched soules endure: For if they fall short of any part of their Rent, what their Estates cannot satisfie, their bodies must, so it sometimes happens, they are beaten to death, et absentiu themselues, their Wiues, Children, Fathers, Brothers, and all their Kindred are engaged in the debt, and must satisfie or suffer. And sometimes it happeneth, that the Principall fayling with the King, receiues from him the like punishment, as it befell to one *Basbell Raw* (Gouernour at Musulipatnam, since the English Traded thither) who (for defect of full payment) was beaten with Canes vpon the backe, feet, and belly, vntill hee dyed. Yet hold they not these their Gouernments by Leases for yeerely in July all are exposed in sale vnto him that bids most; from whence it happeneth, that euery Gouernour (during his time) exacts by Tolles taken in the way, and other Oppressions, whatsoeuer they can possibly extort from the poorer Inhabitants, vsing what violence within their gouernments they shall think fit: for in them (during their time) they raigne as petty Kings, not much vnlike the *Bashaws* vnder the *Turkish* Monarchy.

Indian Monarchie.

Miserable people.

Castles 66. * Captaines or Gouernors.

There are (in the Confines and heart of this Kingdome) sixtie six seuerall Forts or Castles, all of them commanded by the *Neicks*, and guarded by Gentiles Souldiers of the Countrey, vnto which Souldiery these is allowed but foure shillings the moneth, and that also ill payd: they are for the most part situated vpon very high Rockes, or Hills, vnaccessible but by one onely way; three of which I haue seene, *viz.*, *Cundapoly*, *Cundauera*, and *Belluno Cunda* (*Cunda* in that Language signifying a Hill) and in the Towne of *Cundapoly*, (hauing occasion to visit the Gouernour) I was so curious as to require the sight of the Castle, who replyed, that euen himselfe although the Gouernour of that part of the Countrey, could not be permitted entrance without the Kings *Firmaen* with much trouble procured: from whom I vnderstood that this Castle being of great circuit was deuided into sixe seuerall Forts, one commanding another accroaching to their situation; which being furnished with great ponds of water, store of rices, as well fruit as others, and large fields to plant Rice in, lodged in them continually by 1000. Souldiers; thus much his Relation. What I could see (which was enough to hide a great part of the Heauens) was a huge Mountaine, which (being apart by nature, had inuited Art to make it a retreate for the King of this Countrey, if a battels losse or other aduersie fortune, forced them to that extremity. For besides the Mountayne it selfe (steepe in most places) it is walled with a handsome seeming stone wall, with Bulwarkes and Battlements, according to the ancient Order of fortifications: wherein is hauing but one way that admits access, not to be vnderstood but by treachery, scaled without wings, or sprinkled but by Famine. And betwixt this Castle and *Cundauera*, (which is at least fiue and twentie English miles) there is a nightly correspondence held by the Wing each other Torches, lifting them vp sometimes more, sometimes lesse, according to the order concluded betwixt them.

Castle described.

Intelligence by Torches.

Religion is here (as I doe no mans conscience) oppressed with Ceremony or Obseruance, onely the Kings Religion is vnder his mant, in the authority and quality of the Professors, not in minbent of Soules; for the Ancient Naturals of the Country, commonly called Gentiles, or *Idolatrs*, Textered them with a very great proportion.

There are some of two sorts, as I formerly mentioned, I set they onely which are termed * *Mahometans* Churches.

Mesquites vnto publicke exercise of their Religion, the suffering no offence) see no disturbance in their Opinions, or Practises: but set those of their Ceremonies or Differences, I forbeare to discourse, well knowing, that besides our nearer Neighbourhood, with *Turkey* and *Barbarie*, your Pilgrim *Purchas* hath ply delineated both their beginnings and continuance.

The

The like conſideration, might ſilence my purpoſed Relation of the Gentiles, who differing little in Habit, Complexion, Manners, or Religion, from moſt of the Inhabitants of the mayne of *India*, haue alreadie (from abler Pennes) paſt your approbation, and the Preſſe: ſo that, *Nil dictum eſt quod non ſit dictum prius.* Yet encouraged by your requeſt, I adde to that Treaſury this Myte of my Obſeruation, ſubmitting all that diſlikes, or appeares ſuperfluous, to your ſuppreſſion.

The *Gentiles* in the Fundamentall points of their little Religion, doe hold the ſame principles which their Learned Clergie the *Bramenes*, haue from great Antiquitie, and doe yet maintayne, but with an Implicite faith, not able to giue an account of it, or any their cuſtomes, onely that it was the cuſtome of their Anceſtors. Religion of the Gentiles in thoſe parts.

Concerning God, they doe believe him firſt to haue beene onely one, but ſince to haue taken to his aſſiſtance, diuers that haue ſometimes liued vpon Earth, vnto whoſe memorie they build their Temples, tearmed *Pagodes*, and ſtiling them Demi-gods or Saints, direct moſt of their Worſhip to ſuch of them as they ſtand moſt particularly affected vnto, ſupporting their Deities, with moſt ridiculous Legendary Fables of Miracles done by them in the likeneſſe of Apes, Oxen, Kites, or the like, many yeeres ſince, paſt all memory, or beliefe.

They hold the Immortalitie of the Soule, and the tranſmigration of it from one body to another, according to the good or bad quarter it kept in the laſt Manſion, from whence followeth much abſtinence from killing or eating any thing that had life.

Their difference in Waſhings, Meates, Drinkes, and ſuch like; ariſe rather from the Tradition of the Fathers, enioyned to their Poſteritie, then in point of Religion: as we reade of the *Rechabites*, who from their Fathers Iniunction, were commended for their conſtant continuance in their cuſtomes. *Ier.35.*

Their moralitie appeares beſt in their conuerſation; murder, and violent theft, are ſtrangers amongſt them, & ſeldome happen, but for coozenage in bargaining, *caueat emptor.* Poligamy is permitted, but not generally practiſed, vnleſſe in caſe of the firſt Wiues barrenneſſe: Adultery is not common, but puniſhable in women, Fornication veniall, and no Law but that of modeſty reſtraines the publike action. Their moralitie

They are diuided into diuers Tribes or Linages (they ſay fortie foure) all which according to their degrees, are knowne each to other, and take place accordingly, wealth in this point being no prerogatiue, for the pooreſt *Bramene* will precede the richeſt Committy, and ſo the reſt in their ſeuerall Orders. Their Tribes forty foure.

The *Bramene* is Prieſt vnto them all, and weareth alwayes three or foure twiſted threeds ouer one ſhoulder, and vnder the other arme, and in his forehead a round ſpot whereon there ſticketh cornes of Rice dyed yellow in *Turmericke*: they are very good and ready Accountants, and in that Office, much employed by *Moores* of greateſt Affaires, writing and keeping their accounts in Palmito leaues, with a Pen of Iron; and if in that Generall Deluge of Pagan Ignorance, there remayneth any knowledge of Arts or Learning, theſe preſerue it, and entirely to themſelues, without participation to other Tribes, involved in verball Traditions, or concealed Manuſcripts, and are indeed indifferent Aſtronomers, obſeruing exactly the courſe of the ſeuen Planets through the twelue Houſes, and conſequently the certaine houre of Eccliſpes, and other Aſtrologicall Predictions, wherein they haue gained ſo good credit, that none eyther *Gentile* or *Moore*, will vndertake any great Iourney, or commence any important buſineſſe, without firſt conſulting with his *Bramene*, for a good houre to ſet forward in; from whence, I haue knowne it happen, that a *Moore* which came Gouernour to *Muſulipatnam*, hath attended without the Towne ten dayes, before he could find a fortunate houre, to make his triumphant entry into his new gouernment; and of this Tribe they forget not to tell you, there are two Kings, the *Samorijne* King of *Callicut*, and the King of *Cobijne*, both vpon the Coaſt of *Malabar*. The *Bramene*. Their writing. Learning. Superſtition.

The next ¢ Caſt in account is the *Fangam*, who is of the *Bramenes* diet in all particulars, eating nor killing any thing that hath life, abhorring Wine, but drinkine Butter by the pint, contenting themſelues with Milke from the Reuerend Cow, and ſuch Pulſe, Herbs, Roots, and Fruits as the Earth produceth (the Onion only excepted) which for certaine red veines in it, reſembling bloud finds fauour in their merciſull mouthes: and theſe alſo in an inferiour degree, haue ſome Prieſtly power ouer ſuch, as by wearing ſanctified Stones tyed vp in their haire, are buried when they dye, all others are burnt. If theſe be of any Trade they muſt be Taylors, and ſuch many of them are, but more profeſt Beggers, and no wonder, for the conſtancy of that Countries faſhion, and the little or no Needle-worke belonging to the making vp of a Garment, cannot finde all of them worke if they ſtood affected to vnder-take it, but other worke, then Taylours worke, they may not meddle withall. The Fangam, d *Caſta* ſignifying a Tribe.

The next Tribe is there tearmed a Committy, and theſe are generally the Merchants of this place, who by themſelues or their Seruants, trauell into the Countrey, gathering vp Callicoes from the Weauers, and other Commodities which they ſell againe in greater parcels, The Committy.

cels, in the Port Townes to Merchant Strangers, taking their Commodities in barter, or at a price. Others are Money Changers, wherein they haue exquisite iudgement, and will tham a superficiall view of a piece of Gold, distinguish a penny worth of difference, without whole view no man dares receiue Gold, it hath beene so falsified. The poorest sort are plaine Chandlers, and sell only Rice, Butter, Oyle, Sugar, Honey, and such like belly stuffe: and these men for their generall iudgement in all sorts of Commodities, subtiltie in their dealings, and austerity of dyet, I conceiue to be naturally *Banians* transplanted & growne vp in this Country by another name, they also not eating any thing that hath life, nor at all, vntill they haue fresh washed their bodies, and this Ceremony is also common to the former Tribe.

The *Campo Waro* — The next they call *Campo Waro*, and these in the Countrey manure the earth as husbandmen, in the City attend vpon the richer sort as Seruingmen, in the Forts are Souldiers: and are for number the greatest Tribe, these spare no flesh but Beefe, and that with such reuerence, that torture cannot enforce them to kill and eate, and their reason for this (besides the custome of their Ancestors) is that from the Cow, their Countrey receiues its greatest sustenance, as Milke and Butter immediately, then al the fruits of the earth, by their assistance in tilling it, so that it were the greatest inhumanity to feed vpon that which giueth them so plentifully wheron to feed, and vnto vs that would take liberty in this case, they will not sell an Oxe or Cow for any consideration, but from one to another, for six or 8. shillings the best.

The *Whoores Tribe.* — *Boga Waro* is next, in English the *Whoores Tribe*, and of this there are two sorts, one that will prostitute themselues to any better Tribe then themselues, but to none worse, the other meeteth none bad enough to refuse, and these with their Predecessors and Of-spring, haue and do still continue this course of iniquity: for the daughters (if handsome) are brought vp to the trade, if otherwise they are married to the men of this Tribe, and their children if handsomer then their mothers, supply their Parents defects, from whence, there neuer wants, a sinfull succession of impudent Harlots, whom the Lawes of the Country doe both allow, and protect: but this is not alwayes Heathenish, for in most Christian Common-wealths, such creatures either by permission, conniuencie, or neglect, find meanes to set vp, and customers to deale with all. Being children they are taught to dance, and their bodies then tender and flexible, skrewed into such strange postures, that it is admirable to behold, impossible to expresse in words; as for a child of eight yeeres of age, to stand vpon one legge, raising the other vpright as I can my arme, then bringing it down, and laying her heele vpon her head, yet all this while standing, looses the wonder in my imperfect Relation, but to behold is truly strange: the like for their dancing and tumbling, which doth as farre in actiuity exceed our mercenary Skip-iacks, as the Rope-dancing woman doth a Capring Curtezan, or an Vsher of a Dancing Schoole, a Country Plough-logger. The homage they owe the King is once a yeere to repaire to *Gelebonda* to the Court, and there being met together to make proofe of their actiuities, where the best deserving is guerdoned with some particuler fauour, all of them gratified with *Betteles*, and so returne home againe to their seuerall Mansions. The Gouernour of the place where they dwel, exacts nothing of them but their attendance, as often as he sitteth in the publike place, at which times they dance *gratis*, but at all other meetings, as * Circumcision, wedding, ships arriuals, or priuate Feasts, they assist and are paid for their company. They are many of them rich, and in their habit cleane and costly, vpon their bodies they weare a fine Callico or Silken cloth, so bound about them, as that one part beeing made fast about the waste, couereth downwards, another part comes ouer the head couering all that way, wearing also a thinne Wastcoat that couereth their breasts and armes vnto the elbowes, all the rest of their armes couered almost with Bracelets of Gold, wherein are set small Diamonds, Rubies, and Emeralds. In their eares they weare many Rings and Iewels, and some of them one through the right nosthrill, wherein a Pearle or Ruby is commonly set, as also about their fingers and toes, about their middles one or two broad plates of Gold for Girdles, and about their neckes many chaines of small Pearle and Corall, or worser beads according to their estate, without other ornament on their head then their own haire, which being smoothly combde, is tied on a knot behind them. And these also in their bestiall liberty, forbeare to eate Cowes flesh, all other meats and drinks are common to them, and they themselues common to all.

* *Moores* circumcise their children.

Mechanikes. — The Carpenters, Masons, Turners, Founders, Goldsmiths, & Black-smiths are all one Tribe, and match into each others Family, all other Mechanike Trades are Tribes by themselues, as Painters, Weauers, Sadlers, Barbers, Fishermen, Heardsmen, Porters, Washers, Sweepers, & diuers others: the worst whereof are the abhorred *Piriawes*, who are not permitted to dwell in any Towne, by any Neighbours, but in a place without by themselues, line together, auoyded of all but their own Fraternity, whom if any man should casually touch, he would presently wash his bodie. These flea all dead cattle for their skins, and feed vpon the flesh, the skins they dresse, making thereof Sandals for the *Gentiles*, and shooes for the *Moores*, othersome they vse to embale Merchandise to defend it against wet; to conclude, they are in publike

Their *Piriawes.*

Iustice,

Iuſtice, the hateful executioners, and are the baſeſt, moſt ſtinking, ill-auoured people that I haue ſeene, the Inhabitants of Cape *bona Eſperanza* excepted, who are in theſe particulars vnparalleld, and ſo I leaue them, adding onely one word of the Porters who carry the Palamkeenes, a Litter ſo contriued every way, as to carry a man, his bed and pillowes, which eight of theſe Porters will carry foure of thoſe leagues in a day, which are 36. of our miles, ſupporting it on their bare ſhoulders, and running vnder it by turnes, foure at a time, from which continuall toyle, aggrauated by the extreme heate, their ſhoulders are become as hard as their hoofes; yet this their education makes eaſie to them, for when their children can but goe alone, they lay a ſmall ſticke on their ſhoulders, afterwards a logge, which they make them carry, with proportionable increaſe, vntill *Roman Malo* like they are able to run vnder a Palamkeene, and in that ſometimes perchance on Oxe.

But all theſe thus diſtinguiſhed, are in Religion one body, and haue their *Pagodes* or Idoll Temples common to all, but not of all equally affected: ſome inclining in their deuotions to one Saint, ſome to another, of which *Pagodes* I haue ſeene many, ſome of them for the materials and ſtructure, worth the gazing vpon, and may well bee (as they report) the ancient works, of great Kings: within they are very darke, as hauing no other lights but the doores, and they ſtand alwayes open, and proone in ſome places the beſt Receptacles for Trauellers; one ſmall Roome onely reſerued, which the *Bramene* that keeps it, will with ſmall intreaty vnlock, and ſhew a Synod of Brazen Saints gilded, the tutelar Saint of the place, being ſeated in moſt eminencie, vnto which the Heathens themſelues performe very little adoration, wel knowing their ſubſtances, and wanting thoſe [k] diſtinctions, which ſome Chriſtians find out to coozen themſelues withall, onely once a yeere on their Anniuerſary day, they keep their Feſtiuals, and to ſome of them repaire many thouſands of people (as I my ſelfe haue ſeene) ſome for deuotion, and they faſt 24. houres, waſh their bodies, and burne Lamps within or as neere the *Pagodes* as they can get, ſome to ſee their friends, children, or kindred, which will not faile to meet them in ſuch a generall liberty: others for profit (as Pedlers to a great Faire) the Whoores to dance, Puppet-players and Tumblers with their exquiſite tricks, one whereof I will mention, with the admiration of ſuch as ſaw it, or vnderſtanding ſtall reade it. A Tumbler fetching his run, did the double *Sommerſet* without touching the ground with any part of his body, vntil he ſel againe on his feet, keeping his body in the aire, vntil hee turned twice round, a ſtrange actiuity, and with me and others which ſaw it, ſhall not looſe the wonder it carried with it. Others bring charmed Snakes and Vipers in baskets, which they let loole, and with their hands put in againe, piping vnto them, and receiuing their attention: very many Beggers there be, and they practiſe ſeuerall ways to moue compaſſion, for ſuch as haue not naturall defects, as blindneſſe, lameneſſe, &c. Some lie vpon Thornes with their naked bodies, others lie buried in the ground all but their heads, ſome all but their hands, & diuers other ſuch crickes they put vpon the poore peoples charity, whoſe reward is for the moſt part a handfull of Rice, or a ſmal piece of mony that may be the halfe part of a farthing. About midnight the Saint is drawne forth in Proceſſion, handſomely carted and well clothed with much clamour of Drummes Trumpets, Hoboyes and ſuch like, that Country Muſicke, and very artificiall fire-workes, wherein they haue a ſingular dexterity, followed without order or diſtinctio, of place, ſex, or perſon, & hauing circled their limits, they draw him back againe, and there leaue him without guard or regard, vntil that time twelue moneth come again. One Saint they haue, (and none of the leaſt neither in their account) whom they expreſſe by a plaine round ſtone, not much vnlike the block of a high crowned Hat, and their reaſon is, becauſe the incomprehenſible ſubſiſtence of this Deity, admits no certaine ſhape or deſcription; they liken it to him which hath the likeneſſe of nothing, building thus a Temple (as thoſe of *Athens* an Image) to the vnknowne God. Foure Feaſts in the yeere they celebrate to the Sea, and in the Sea, many people at thoſe ſeaſons reſorting to the appointed places, waſhing their bodies in the ſalt waues, and receiuing the *Bramenes* benediction, who being with them in the Sea, poure water on their heads with his hands, mumbling certain Orißons out them (they know not what) then takes their reward, & apply themſelues to the next cõmers.

Where the great *Pagodes* are, there are commonly many little ones, which they report to be the worke of one day, or no long time, the Founder after ſome dreame, or Satanicall ſuggeſtion, vowing not to eat vntil it ſhould be begun and finiſhed, and to ſome of theſe the *Bramanes* perſwade the people, there belongs ſome miraculous power. I haue ſeene the Image of a man in black ſtone, ſtanding vpright, not aboue a yard high, vpon which if a whole buſhel of Rice ſhould be caſt, it would all ſtick vpon the Image, and not one corne fal to the ground, and this the country people had rather beleeue then part with ſo much Rice to practiſe it. Another before whom if a man ſhould eat out his tongue, it would preſently grow again, yet had they rather venter for a blißter in the relation, then the whole tongue in the experiment.

Their Idols & Temples.

k *Douſie. Latria.* Feaſtuals.

Tumblers.

Strange actiuitie.

Idoll-Proceſſion.

Block-Saint.

Act. 17.

Sea-feaſts.

Other Saints.

Idoll-Miracles.

These two I haue bin with, a third I haue ſeene at diſtance as I trauelled that way, whereof they report, that whatſoeuer Milke, * *Sharbol*, or faire water, is brought thither by the de-

* Water Sugar and iuice of ſaments mingled

deuout Visitant, and poured into a little hole by the Saint, he will take iust halfe, & would doe so if it were a Hecatombe of Hogsheads, but takes no more though it be but a pint, yet is fully satisfied, and will receiue no more but it runs ouer the hole, an excellent fociable quality, and well becomming an Ale-house Kanne.

Deuill-Saint. Another Saint they haue (or rather Deuill) for in their opinion it is a maligne Spirit, and brings vpon them such diseases as befall them, especially the small Poxe, which fury the better to expresse, they forme it a great angry woman, hauing two heads, and (no doubt) as many tongues, with foure armes, yet is she hospitable to strangers, for in her house two other Englishmen and my selfe reposed part of one night, for want of other harbour, where whilst we staid, the Founder told vs, that to appease her angry Deity, he built this house to her seruice, and so the small Poxe ceassed in his Family: others lesse able, promise in their sicknesse if they may escape, they will be hanged in her honour: which with the two Englishmen formerly mentioned, I went purposely to behold. It hapned vpon a day (it seemes) marked in their Calender for her seruice and this exploit, to which purpose, they haue a long beame of timber, placed on an axletree betwixt two wheeles like to the Brewers beames by which they draw water, and can so let it downe & rayse it vp, vpon the vpper end whereof are tied two hooks, vnto which the Vow obliged patient is fastened, hauing first with a sharp Knife two holes cut thorow the skin and flesh of each shoulder, thorow which the hooks are thrust, and a Sword and Dagger put into his hands: he is lift vp, and drawne forward by the wheeles at least a quarter of a mile, thus hanging in the aire, and fencing with his weapons, during which time the weight of his body, so reareth the flesh and stretcheth the skin, that it is strange it yeelds so much, yet it is tough enough to hold them: and after this manner were fourteene drawne one after another, not once complayning during the time of their flight, but being let downe, their wounds were bound vp, & they returned home with fowre faces and foare bodies, a sufferance surely not inferior to a self-whipping, no lesse meritorious, no better grounded. They haue all of them their *Penates*, or houshold Gods, which the chiefe of the Family (as the eldest Brother) keepes alwayes at his house, for which they once a yeere make a Feast, but the kindred being assembled eat it vp. In Mariage it is the childrens duxie to attend vpon the Parents, care who finding in their owne Tribe, and as neere as they can in their own Kindred (no degree of Consanguinity hindring but brother and sister) a fitting wife for their sonne, he (though of full age) submits his consent without seeing her, accounting it vnreasonable to recompence his Parents care and trouble in his education, with distrust of their proceedings in this point, or to imagine his owne iudgement more, or their circumspection lesse: They giue no portions with their daughters, but rather take, for the Bridegroome or his Parents, must giue Earings, Bracelets and other Iewels (according to her quality) vnto the Bride, two or three wearing clothes vnto the mother, with some present to the father, and then beare the whole charge of the wedding, from which large expence it sometimes happens, that want keeps many a long time vnmarried, vntill their endeuours in the world hath supplyed them with meanes to defray the charge, but this not hindring the richer sort, they commonly marrie their children very young, the husband fiue yeeres of age, the wife not aboue three yeeres, and many such couples haue I seene put together, wherein, the Parents conceiue they haue done an act of wonderfull prouidence, in disposing of their children in their life time, so endearing them to others care, if they themselues should leaue them; yet this young couple are presently separated, vntill the man being 12. or 13. yeeres of age, and the woman 10. or 11. they meet againe, and become so well acquainted, that many are mothers at 12. yeeres of age, and some I haue heard no Virgins at nine: to proceed, of what yeeres soeuer they be, whether thus young or full growne, they are both in one Palamkeene (with most of their friends about them) carried about the most publike places of the Towne, with Musick, Fire-works, and the dancing company of the Whoores, who before euery great mans house, make a stand, participating their sports, and from those houses receiuing gifts, if from them they haue any dependencie or acquaintance, then proceed, vntill their progresse being ended, they returne home; where the *Bramene* attends them, and separating them a cloth hong betwixt them, he mutters (none heares) what Orisons, whilest the marrying couple are taught to tread vpon one another bare feet, so mingling legges, and making their first short steps, an introduction to their future better acquaintance: the feast being finished which lasteth three dayes at the least, the Kindred departing, the Bride carried backe againe, and if thee bee young referued to more maturity, howsoeuer she must backe againe for some time, for when she once departeth from her friends, the resideth alwayes with her Husband, at his Fathers house if he be liuing, if not at his eldest brothers, if hee himselfe be not eldest: for seldome doe brethren deuide themselues, but all of them (though many) liue together in owne Family, bringing their gaines whatsoeuer it is vnto the common stocke, cherishing with an admired duty their old indigent Parents, and liuing together in most commendable vnitie. If the husband dieth, the wife may not marry againe, and which is most vnreasonable not the young ones though neuer knowne of man, who happening to be widdowes in their in-

G. Ball. T. Jones.

Vowes.

Bloudie Rites. See the like before in *Bally*.

Houshold-gods.

Mariages.

Widowes.

infancy, must not onely continue so, but be made the drudge to the whole Family, not permitted to weare their Iewels, good or cleane clothes, or vpon occasion to goe abroad (at least vpon pleasure) & this with most of them, together with a reuerend respect they beare to the reputation of their house, mortifies the after a strange manner, yet some it cãnot containe, but they stie out, & forsaking their fathers house, brand it with a lasting obloquy, by their loosee liues, keeping themselues at distance, for if conueniently their kindred would poyson them.

Infants.

Their young children they neither christen, circumcise, nor vse other ceremony vnto, but giuing them different appellations in their infancy, which are commonly the names of their Idols, they are knowne by them with the addition of their Trade, Tribe, or some defect or quality, most eminent about them: They come into the World without much trouble to their mothers, for they are vp againe about their businesse in three or foure dayes, some the same day: they are brought vp with as little charge, for many vntill they be seuen or eight yeeres of age foule not a clowt (as cheape as they be) but being young tumble in the duft, and growne stronger walke still starke naked, and if they bee foule, two or three pales of cold water (poured vpon their heads) runnes downe their bodies, and makes all cleane againe, and thus are most children brought vp, vntill they bee in some measure capeable to begin to practise in their fathers profession. The best mens children may bee better lookt vnto, but starke naked (vnlesse vpon some Festiuall) is the best and generall habit. Full growne men and women are deuoutly and ciuilly clothed, the women all ouer as you haue heard of the Whooresy the men most of them from the middle downwards, and on their shoulders a loose white Callico cloth in vse like our Sommer cloakes, sometimes a coate close to their bodies vnto the middle, from thence downwards to their ankles full of cloth like to a paire of bases, their haire (long as women) bound vp, and ouer it a Turbant, in their eares Rings of Gold, with small Pearles, and about their neckes a chaine of Ginetra, or Siluer, for few can attaine vnto Gold. They are not black but tawny, or rather a Wainscot colour, some much whiter then other, as some wainscot is newer or browner then other, but many of them very wel fauoured & streight limbde, and in their acquaintance and conuersation kind and affable, amongst whom our Nation hath (during the time of their Residence with them) found much good respect, and little affront or injury. All Mechanicke persons (whereof the multitude consisteth) worke in their seuerall Trades, for the same salary, or little difference. The Blacksmith, and Gold-smith, makes Iron nailes, and chaines of Gold, for three pence a day, finding themselues, and is great wages to a master workman, their seruants are paid with one penny, and some lesse, the like of all other Trades and persons, for wee are serued faithfully and officiously in our houses for a Riall of eight a moneth, without allowance of diet, and the Porters which carry the Palamkeene haue no more, yet out of this all pay some what to the Gouernour where they liue, or dos his worke *gratis*, from whence it is little wonder they liue so poorely, yet the plenty of this Country, and their contented courtier diet, affords them a liuing vntill they die, then some are burned, and their ashes cast into the next Riuer, others buried sitting crosse-legged; in either of which kind, I next relate my owne sight of two womens voluntary sufferance, yet vnresolued whether their loue to their dead husbands be more to be admired or pitied. It is amongst these Indians a receiued history, that there was a time, when wiues were generally so luxurious, that to make way for their friends, they would poyson their husbands; which to preuent, a Law was made, that the husbands dead the wiues should accompany them in the same fire, and this Law stands yet in force in the Island of *Bali* not far from *Iaua*: but from this necessity of dying, there ensued so great a reformation, that the succeeding age abolished the rigour of this Law, and the dead mans wife was onely adiudged to a perpetuall widowhood as it is at this day. Yet are there some few left, that in pure loue to their deceased husbands, die voluntarily in solemnizing their Funerals: beleeuing their soules shall keepe company in their transmigrations. Of the two which I haue seene, the first was wife to a Weauer, who being dead, and by his profession to be buried, she a young woman (about 20. yeeres of age) would needs goe with him, and in this order. She was clothed in her best garments, and accompanied with her neereft Kindred and friends, seated on a greene banke by a great ponds side, there enterayning such as came to looke, and take leaue on her, with Bettele (a herbe which they much eat) meerely accommodating her words, actions, and countenance to the Musicke, which stood by, and plaid no dumps, but in the same measure and straine they were occasioned at wedding, newes hereof being brought to our house, three of vs took horse, and posted a mile out of Towne to be partakers of this spectacle, but comming into her sight, before we came at them, they fearing by our speed we had bin sent from the Gouernour to hinder their proceedings, hastened to her death, and was then couering with earth when wee came in, first sitting downe by her husband, embracing his dead body, and taking leaue of all her friends, they standing round about the graue, with each of them a basket of earth, buried her at once. Yet after we came in, one of them stroke vpon the Graue, laying his head close vnto it, and calling her by her name, and

Travell with little labour.

Apparell.

Colour.

Small wages.

Burning of wiues whence.

and told vs she answered, and expressed her content in the course she had taken. Ouer whom there was erected a little thatcht couer, and her Kindred not a little glorified, in being allied to so resolute and louing a wife.

The other was a *Campowares* wife, and she after the same solemne preparation, fetching her run and crying all the way, [1] *Bama Narina, Bama Narina*; leapt into the pit where her husband lay burning, vpon whom her by-standing friends, threw so many logs, that she felt not so much fire for the fewell. Vnto whom I adde a third, a Gold-smiths wife, whose husband being dead and she willing to accompany him, came attended with her friends and kindred vnto the [k] *Cotwall*, who was then with me at the English house, with much importunity desiring his consent, alledging her husbands death and the few friends she had left behind; whereunto the *Cotwall* replyed, that hee himselfe would prouide for her at his owne house, disswading her by what other arguments he could vse from so desperate a course: but she neglecting them and his offer, he also denied her request, and she departed discontent, vttering these words, that he could not hinder her to dye by some other meanes, and within a short time after I heard she had hanged her self; & this happned in *Musulipatnam*, where the Officers being all *Mahumetans*, restraine the *Gentiles* especially in these cruel & heathenish customes.

1 The name of one of their Idols.

k Is an Officer amongst the *Moors*: not much vnlike to the Sheriffs of *London*.

A fourth I haue wholy by Relation, yet from an English Factor of good account in that place, who travelling in the Country about such affaires as were imposed vpon his performance, and being well attended according to the customs of that Country, espied not far out of his way a concourse of people vnto whom he made, and being come neere hee was enformed by his Seruants that it was a woman about to burne with her dead husband: he presently drawing his Sword rode in amongst them, whereupon they all fled but the woman herselfe, whom he perswaded to liue, promising to secure her against her friends, if their importunities had wrought her to this course: but she beseiight him not to interrupt her, it was her owne most earnest desire, wherein we did constantly persist: whereupon he put vp, and her friends came in, and presently in his sight with the like ceremony & duty formerly recited; she became the same ashes with him, to whom she had bin one flesh. And here abruptly in the ordering and imperfectly in the Relation, I leaue them & their customes, intending onely to touch at their marine trade, & the commodities of that country transported to other parts.

Diamonds how found.

First of Diamonds lately discouered in this Kingdome, most men say by this accident: A silly Goat-herd keeping his flock amongst those mountaines, stumbled (by chance) vpon a stone that shined some what bright, which he carelessly tooke vp (not much valuing) sold it to a *Committy* for meale & Rice, the *Committy* againe for no great profit, and so forward vntill it came to those owners which knew the worth, who questioning the last seller, traced out from one to another the true original, and making further triall thereabouts, found in the bowels of the earth a plentifull myne; whereof the King being aduertized, he tooke order for the safe keeping, and rumour thereof being blazed, Iewellers of all the neighbouring Nations resorted to the place, and some store of Diamonds began to be dispersed and exposed to sale: Insomuch that *Sir Andreas Socoty* Gouernour of the Fort, Guide in *Pallecat*, *Sir Adolfe Thomason* a free Merchant, and my selfe resolued to make a Voyage thither, to see at least the place, and order of it: so that after foure dayes trauell (thorough a desolate mountaynous Country) we came at last to the place, and found it distant from *Musulipatnam* about twelue *Gentiue* leagues, which is 108. *English* miles: where we harboured our selues in a handsome Hogstie, and according to custome addressed our selues to visit the Gouernour, who was a *Bramene*, named *Ray Ram*, and lay there for the King, as well to receiue his profits, as to administer Iustice to the Rabblement of different Nations that frequented this place, from whom we receiued indifferent good respect, with the sight of certaine faire Diamonds appertayning to the King, and amongst them one of 30. Carracts, pointed, but not perfect: and after knowledge of our feuerall qualities, and our purpose only to see the Mine, he dismissed vs, and we next day went thither (distant from the Towne about two English miles) where by their owne reports, there worke not daily fewer then 30000. soules, some digging, some filling baskets, some lauing out water with buckets, others carrying the earth vnto a certaine square leuell place, whereupon they spread it foure or fiue inches in thickneſſe, which beeing dried by that dayes Sunne, some of them the next day with great stones in their hands, bruse the clods of earth, and gathering from thence the peble stones, throw them, by and sifting the rest, they find the Diamonds amongst the dust, sometimes none, as it hapned whilest I lookt on, sometimes more, sometimes lesse, according to the earth they worke in, which they well know (some say by the smell) others more probably by sight of the mould, howsoeuer that they know it is most apparant, seeing that in many places wee found the ground onely broken and not further sought into, in other places digged 10. or 11. fathome deepe: the earth is reddish, with veines of white or yellowish chalke, intermixt with Peble-stones, which being deepe digged, comes vp in small clods, and those laid in the Sunne become hard, but are easily pounded with stones (as formerly) of which earth I tooke a small piece, and yet reserue it for satisfaction of the more curious.

The Authours iourney to the Myne.

Myne of Diamonds described.

These

These Mynes are not (as with vs in *Europe*) carried vnder ground and supported with Timber, but digged right downe in square large pits, whether it be that all the Earth affords more or lesse profit, whereas ours onely run in veines, or whether they want props or iudgement to take this course, I cannot determine, but am sure that in freeing of the water, and bringing vp the Earth, they goe the furthest way to worke, for in place or pullies, and such like deuices, they with many people setting one aboue another, hand vp from one to another vntill it comes to the place it must rest in, and from hence proceedeth the vse of so many people, seeing that besides the Earth, the place where ouer-night they wrought dry, is next morning a fathome deepe vnder water.

10 Such as is thus imperfectly described, the King then rented it vnto one *Marcandoo*, of the [d] *Cait* of the Goldsmiths for three hundred thousand *Pagodes* a yeere, restruing all Diamonds of aboue ten Carracts to himselfe: Hee againe rents it out to others by square measure according as they agree, in which course some gaine, others lose as in all other Aduentures. The King to assure himselfe of the great Stones, keeps his Gouernour there, publishing extreame penalties against such as shall conceale them, but neyther the terrour of them, nor his many Spies, can so watch such as there attend such hazards, but that I haue heard Diamonds of forty Carracts haue escaped their Guard, I haue seene two of neere twenty Carracts apiece, and diuers of ten, eleuen, and twelue, but very deere prized.

d Or Tribe.

It is situated at the foot of a great Mountayne, not farre from a Riuer called *Christena*, a 20 place naturally so barren, that before this Discouery it was hardly inhabited, now peopled with a hundred thousand Soules consisting of Myners, Merchants, and such others as liue by following such concourses, sufficiently furnished with all prouisions brought thither from the Countrey round about, but at excessiue rates, occasioned by the many exactions raysed vpon them in their passages thorough seuerall Gouernments and Villages. The Houses are very poore, as not intended for continuance, but onely the present occasion, for in *Anno* 1622. the Myne was shut vp, and all persons restrained from frequenting the place; the reasons some imagined to be their care to keepe the Commoditie in request, not to digge more vntill those already found were dispersed, others affirmed, the comming of the *Mogulls* Embassadour to this Kings Court, with his peremptory demand of a [e] Vyse of the fairest Diamonds, 30 caused this cessation, vntill that pretence, and some competent Present should content the *Mogull*: for since I came from thence, I heare it was opened againe, but almost exhausted, and very few found.

e A Vyse is three pound English weight

In this Country is also much Christall, and many other sorts of transparant soft Stones of little value, as Garnets, Amatists, Topasses, Aggats, and such like.

Likewise great store of Iron and Steele; transported into many places of *India*, bought in the place it is made for two shillings the hundred of Iron, and three shillings Steele, but being brought vpon the backes of Oxen fifteene dayes iourney, before it commeth to the Port it becomes much dearer, yet is sold for fiue shillings, and eight shillings, but eyther Gold, Siluer, Tinne, Copper, or other Metals this Country produceth not.

Iron & Steele.

40 Bezar Stones in some plenty, are taken from the Goates in one onely part of this Country, for which and their skins they kill so many, that the flesh is most throwne away, and their mawes onely searcht into, where they finde two, three, and sometimes foure small Bezars some long, some round, all of them growing vpon a stalke or kernell, as is easily perceiued by such as are broken, such as are greater come from other Countries, the best out of *Persia*, and are said to be found in Apes, all of all sorts so well knowne, and much vsed in *India*, that they cannot bee bought there, to yeeld profit in *England*, proportionable to the time and Aduenture. Of these Goats this conclusion hath beene experimented, foure of them haue beene rauenken from the place of their breeding, and transported fifty or a hundred miles, of which two haue beene immediately killed, and in those haue beene found perfect Bezars, a third reprieued for tenne dayes, and then slaine: some shew of Bezars remained, but apparently wasted, 50 the fourth liuing but a moneth after, there will be neyther Bezar, nor signe of any that euer was, from whence they conclude with great probability, that it is some Herbe, Plant or Tree, peculiar to that place, whereof the Goat feeding the Bezars are formed.

Bezars how taken out of Goats.

Callicoes of all sorts, are in this Kingdome as cheape and plentifull as in any other part of *India*, but different in their making, and easily distinguished from those of other Countries. The Painting of this Coast of *Choromandel* famous throughout *India*, and are indeed the most exquisite that are seene, the best, wrought all with the Pensill, and with such durable colours, that notwithstanding they bee often washed, the colours fade not whilst the Cloth lasteth, & this hapneth principally, by a Plant which growe h only in this Country, called by them *Chay*, which dyeth or stayneth a perfect red, with them in as great account 62 as Scarlet with vs, and is the Kings particular commoditie.

Callicoes.

Painting and durable colours.

Indico is also made in this Country in some plenty, in forme like to that sort which is called *Lahore Indico*, whereof the *Dutch* haue bought store, and transported it for *Holland*, and

Indico. See *Finches* Voyage, *Lib.* 4.

and continue so to doe, but our Nation vpon good experience of the condition and value of it, content themselues with such as is made in the *Moguls* Dominions, and laden from *Surat*.

They haue within few yeeres planted store of Tobacco, and much of it is exported to *Mocha* and *Arrecan*, and not a little drunke amongst themselues: It is but weake, yet sure more care in curing and making it vp would helpe that fault, they onely dry the leaues in the Sun, and vse it so, without further sophistication.

These are the generall Commodities of this Countrey, which are dispersed in some measure through the World, but are best knowne in Indian Traffique, and produce constantly certaine profit in their exportation to other parts, to which purpose they build great Ships, and good ones too, considered in their burthen and materials, but not comparable to ours for beautie, conueniencie, or defence, some of them not lesse then 600. tunnes, substantially built of very good timber and Iron, whereof we haue had vpon some occasion good experience, in careening the *Globe*, *Salomon*, and *Clowe*, in the Riuer of *Narsoporpeta*. With these their Ships they trafique ordinarily to *Mocha* in the Red Sea, to *Achyne* vpon *Sumatra*, to *Arrecan*, *Pegu*, and *Tannassery*, on the other side the Gulfe, and to many Ports alongst their owne Coasts, as farre as *Zeloan*, and the Cape *Comorijne*.

Their trafficke

Voyage to *Mocha* and *Mecca*.

To *Mocha* they set sayle in *Ianuary*, and returne in *September* or *October* following, and thither the King sends yeerely a proportion of Rice, as an Almes to be distributed amongst the Pilgrimes which resort to *Mecha* and *Medina*, where their Prophet *Mahomets* Shrine is visited with much deuotion. He sendeth also an Aduenture, the proceed whereof is inuested in *Arabian* Horses, which are returned not aboue sixe or eight in a Shippe, whereof they make great accounts: For in this Countrey there is no Race of good Horses.

Tobacco they send in great quantities, many small Rotans to make Launces, certaine sorts of Calicoes proper for Turbants, Iron, Steele, Indico, Beniamin, and Gumme, Lacke. For which they returne some few watered Chamblets, but the most part ready money in Sultannees or Rials of eight.

In September the Ships for *Achyne*, *Arrecan*, *Pegu*, and *Tannassery* set all sayle, for it is to be vnderstood that alongst this and all other Coasts of *India*, the windes blow constantly trade sixe moneths one way, and sixe moneths another; which they call the Monsons alternately succeeding each other, not missing to alter in *April* and *October*, onely variable towards their end, so that taking the last of a Monson, they set sayles, and with a forewinde arriue at their desired Hauen, and there negotiating their Affaires, they set sayle from thence in *February* or *March* following, and with the like fauourable gale returne in *April* vnto their owne Ports.

To *Acheene* they export much Steele, and some Iron, diuers sorts of Calicoes, both white and painted, and of late times, when the Myne was first discouered, store of Diamonds, which were sold to great benefit, from whence they returne Beniamin, and Camphora of Barouse: Pepper of *Priaman* and *Tesso*, Brimstone, and all sorts of *Porcellane*, and *China* Commodities, if to be had, to sell againe to profit.

To *Arrecan* they send store of Tobacco, some Iron, and few sorts of painted clothes, and returne from thence some Gold, and Gumme Lacke, but most part Rice which they sell about *Pallocat*, and that Coast of *Narsinga*.

To *Pegu* they export much Siluer in Rials of eight, Cotton yarne, and Beethyles dyed red, with seueral sorts of paintings, & bring from thence the perfect Rubies & Saphires which are dispersed through the World, much Gold, the best Gum Lack, with some Tin & Quicksiluer.

To *Tannassery* they carry red Cotton yarne, red and white Beethyles, paintings of seuerall sorts befitting that Countries weare, and landing them at *Tannassery* carry them from thence to *Syam* fourteene dayes iourney ouer Land, from whence by the like conueyance, they bring all sorts of *China* Commodities, as Porcellane, Sattins, Dimaskes, Lankeene, Silke, Lignum Aloes, Beniamin of *Cambaia*, and great store of Tinne, and a wood to die withall called *Sapan* wood, the same we heere call Brasill.

Alongst their owne Coast they trade with smaller shipping, lading Rice and other graine where it is cheapest, selling it againe on the Coast of *Bisnagar* to great benefit, taking children in exchange, which cost not them aboue three or foure shillings a childe, and they sell againe in *Musulipatnam*, and other places for forty shillings. And thus much shal suffice to haue written of this Kingdom, wherein I haue been the more prolixe, because my own knowledge fortified with almost fiue yeeres experience, assureth me of the truth of what I haue written.

Bengala.

Where this Country endeth, the Kingdome of Bengala beginneth, subsisting at this time vnder the Monarchy of the Great *Mogull*, which he ruleth by his Gouernours, dispersed into seuerall Prouinces, whose powerfull Neighbourhood, causeth the King of Golchonda to keepe constant Garisons, which with the aduantage of Riuers and Deserts, secureth him on that side of his Kingdome. In this Countrey we are more strangers, the Coast is too dangerous, and our shipping too great, to aduenture them amongst so many shelfes and sands, yet

are

are we enformed by such as comes from thence, and confirmed by the price and abundance of such things as that Countrey produceth, that it is the most plentifull of all the East: For once a yeere there arriueth at Musulipatnam, a Fleet of small Vessels from thence, of burden about twenty tunnes, the planks onely sowne together with *Cairo* (a kinde of Cord made of the rinds of Coconuts) and no Iron, in, or about them. In which Barkes they bring Rice, Butter, Sugar, Waxe, Honey, Gummie, Lacke, Long Pepper, Callico, Lawnes, and diuers sorts of Cotton-cloth, Raw Silke, and Moga, which is made of the barke of a certaine tree, and very curious Quilts and Carpets stitched with this Moga; all which considering the plenty of the place whereunto they bring them, should come hither, as we say of Coales carried
10 to New-castle, yet here they sell them to contented profit. Many Portugals decayed in their estates, or questioned for their liues, resort hither & liue here plentifully, yet as banished men or Out-lawes, without gouernment, practice, or almost profession of Religion; to conclude, it may truly be spoken of this Countrey: as it is abusively of another: *Bengala bona terra, mala gens*: It is the best Countrey peopled with the worst Nation, of whom this reputation runnes currant in India, the men are all Theeues, and the women Whoores. Here the famous *Ganges* disimboueth into the Sea, fructifying it seemes the Countrey, but little sanctifying the Inhabitants, whereof I can speake very little, as hauing alwayes liued at great distance from it, onely I haue heard it is full of Crocodiles, and so are most Riuers within the Gulfe, where I haue seene many of immense bignesse, which the Ferrimen that passe men and cattle ouer
20 those Riuers, know how to charme, and then with safety ferry ouer the Passengers, in the bodies of one or two Palmito trees ioyned, and swimme ouer the Cattle; the order of which charming hauing once seene, I thought good to insert. Being at a Riuers side and ready to passe it, we espied a very great Crocodile, shewing himselfe aboue water, and swimming downe the streame in our way, whereupon the Ferriman entring the Riuer to the calues of his legs, he stands vpon one of them, muttering to himselfe certaine words, and withall tying knots vpon a small Coord he held in his hand, to the number of seuen, which Coord hee left hanging on a bush thereby, and confidently pushe vs and our Horses ouer, the Crocodile lying all this while still in our sight, not able (as he said) to open his iawes; so hauing ferried vs ouer, he made haste to returne and vnties the Coard; affirming, that if the Crocodile should
30 be startled by the power of this Charme, his Charme would from thenceforth lose its power and effect.

Bad people.

Crocodiles charmed.

Arrecan borders vpon Bengala, and participates in its plenty, from whence there commeth yeerely shipping to the Coast of Choromandel. The King is by Religion a Gentile, but such a one as holdeth all meates and drinkes indifferent, he martleth constantly his owne sister, and giueth for reason the first mens practice in the infancy of the World, affirming that no Religion can deny that *Adams* Sons married *Adams* daughters. He is very kind to Strangers, giuing good respect and entertainment, to *Moores*, *Persians*, and *Arabians*, which liue in his Countrey professing publikely the practice of their Mahimetan Superstition. He hath also diuers times inuited the Dutch and English to resort vnto his Countrey, but the Dutch
40 (by good experience, hauing had sometimes a Factory there, the English (not by their example) but true knowledge of the little Trade and lesse benefit, auoyd his importunity; yet continue good correspondence with him and his people, as knowing it a plentifull Country, and not inconuenient to supply themselues with many necessaries, if difference with other Nations should enforce them to that extremity. Betwixt this King and the *Mogull* there is continuall Warre, both by Sea and Land, defensiue on the King of *Arrecan* part, securing his owne Countrey that bordereth vpon Bengala. From thence confronting in small skirmishes the opposite party, but any fee of great battle, I haue not heard of to haue beene fought betwixt them. In which warres he giueth to good entertainment to strangers, that I haue knowne diuers Hollanders, that hauing expired their couenanted time of seruice with the
50 East Indian Company, and to purchased their freedome, haue gone to serue this King, and receiued good countenance and contentment in his employment of them.

Arrecan.

Pegu * borders vpon *Arrecan*, and is a most plentifull and temperate Country, yet hardly recouered from the desolation where with warre, plague, and famine, had within few former yeeres infested it, which is most visible in the vast Country, the Cities being alwayes first and best replenished, and that all other places may the better beseo, it is death to export a woman from thence; and certaine profit to bring them. The King is a Gentile by his Religion, agreeing in all points of opinion and practice; with the Kings of *Arrecan*, *Tannassery*, & *Syam*, all of them in probability, receiuing their Rudiments from the *Chinese*, who without question sometimes commanded those Countries; their vicinity, resemblance in Phisiognomy,
60 and conformity in many customes, being my best reasons to goe along with these thus farre, that are of opinion, the *Chinese* sometimes Monarchised as far as *Madagascar*.

The King which now reigneth was Nephew to the last, notwithstanding he had children which

* Pegu. Of the late miserable state thereof and former glory see fo. cap. 5. 6, 7, 8. where other Countries of this Gulfe of Bengala and Coast of Coromandel are related.

Zangomay or Ingoma.
Thomas Samuel an Englishman his Trade there and in Pegu.

which this hath suppreſt, and hath in his time recouered from the King of Syam, what hee had enforced from his Predeceſſor, amongſt others the town and Kingdom of Zangomay, and therein an Engliſhman named *Thomas Samuel*, who not long before, had beene ſent from Syam by Maiſter *Lucas Anthoniſon*, to diſcouer the Trade of that Country, by the ſale of certaine goods ſent along with him to that purpoſe, which *Thomas Samuell*, together with all other ſtrangers was by the King taken from Zangomay, and carried to Pegu, where not long after *Samuel* dyed, the King ſeiſing vpon what he had by Inuentory, with purpoſe (as by the ſequell) to giue account thereof to the lawfull Proprietors. The Kingdome of Pegu beginng to bee better eſtabliſhed, Merchants of diuers Nations began to repaire thither againe about their negotiations, where ſome of Muſulipatnam by conference with Moores, that were *Samuels* aſſociates, vnderſtood his death, and the Kings taking his goods into his hands, with the probability of recouery if ſought after, which they making knowne to the Engliſh at their returne to Muſulipatnam, it happened that Maſter *Lucas Anthoniſon* who imployed *Samuel* from Syam to Zangomay, was then Agent at Muſulipatnam, who apprehending this encouragement, conſulted with his aſſiſtants, and reſolued to ſend two Engliſh with a Letter and Preſent to the King, and ſome ſmall aduenture, to beare the charge of the Voyage, and make tryall of the Trade, which tooke place, and they embarquing at Muſulipatnam the tenth of September, arriued at Siriam the Port of Pegu, the third of October following, whoſe entertaynment I giue you in their owne words, as I finde them written in their Letters to Muſulipatnam.

Other Engliſh ſent.

A Letter relating the King of Pegu. entertainment to the Engliſh.

The King hearing of our comming ſent foure Galliots with Preſents to the Ambaſſador and vnto vs, ſending vs word that he did much reioyce at our comming into his country. Thoſe Galliots hauing 50 oares of a ſide, with eight Noblemen in them, cauſed our Ship to come to an anchor before the town of Siriam, *the 7. of* October *the King of* Pegues *Brother being chiefe Gouernour, ſending two Noblemen aboard of our Ship, writing our names & our age of yeeres & the cauſe of our coming, we aſſuring them that we were meſſengers ſent from* Muſulipatnam *by our chief Captain, hauing a Preſent & a Letter vnto the King, which when his Highneſſe ſhall be pleaſed to receiue, ſhall vnderſtand the effect of our buſineſſe, and the cauſe of our comming. The tenth day of* October *we were ſent for on ſhoare by the Kings Brother who ſitting in a large houſe of* Bamboſon, *in great ſlate bedecke with Iewels in his eares with Gold Rings, with rich ſtones on his fingers, being a white man and of very good vnder- 30 ſtanding, demanding of vs the queſtion the Noblemen before did, and we anſwering them as wee did before, becauſe that our ſpeeches ſhould be found alwayes as one: we gaue him at that time a fine fee a Preſent, to the intent that he might ſpeake and write to the King his Brother in our behalfe, that we might haue acceſſe vnto the King the ſooner, that our buſineſſe might haue effect. The eight of Nouember the King ſent for vs, and the Kings Brother prouided for vs a Boate, with ſixteen to rowe, and alſo a Nobleman with vs to* Pegu, *to be our Guard, hauing* Nariarcan *and* Hodges Iſmael *with vs, vnto which Nobleman we gaue a Preſent, for in this place here is nothing to bee done or ſpoken, or any buſiness performed without Bribes, Gifts, or Preſents. Arriuing in* Pegu *the eleuenth of Nouember, hauing our Preſent with vs,* Bany Bram *ſent his men vnto vs, writing our names as before time, they alſo bade vs choose any ground where we would for to build vs a houſe, but at our 40 owne coſt and charge as all other mens euſtome is. Our Houſe being finiſhed, ſtraight order was giuen that we muſt not walke any where out of our houſe to ſpeake with any man vntill the King had ſpoken with vs, and our Preſent deliuered. The King ſent vs a Preſent of victuals, with two Noblemen with it, which was ſome grace to vs, though it was not of much value, and our comfort is, that all men report that the King is very well pleaſed at our comming into his Country. The ſeuen and twentieth of December, the King ſent for our Preſent, and ſent two Horſes for vs, and being come to a gate of the Towne, to ſtay for his comming, when hee came out, hee ſent for vs. What ſpeech or conference he had with vs,* Nariarca *can certifie you, but it was to no purpoſe, concerning our buſineſſe, nor could we get none to mouе the King in our buſineſſe, for none of his Subiects dare meuе the King in our buſineſſe more then he demands. The next our Letter was ſent for, and interpreted by a Per- 50 tugall a ſlaue to the King, but one that ſpeakes* Pegu. *We had much trouble with him about the true vnderſtanding of it, being not written in* Portugeſe. *The next day we deliuered that Preſent you ſent to* Bany Bram, *who gaue vs many faire ſpeeches like to others, but we haue found them all to no purpoſe. The Country is far from your Worſhips expectation, for what men ſoeuer come into his Country, he holds them but as his ſlaues, neyther can any man goe out of his Country without his leaue, for hee hath watch both by Land and Water, and he of himſelfe is a Tyrant, and cannot eat before he hath drawne bloud from ſome of his people with death or otherwiſe. For the buſineſſe of* Thomas Samuel *and the* Mallayor, *they had a falling out ſome 12. moneths before he dyed, and he tooke all the Companies goods into his hands, and the* Mallayor *had* Nariarcans *in his hands, and comming to* Pegu *he fell ſicke by the way, and dyed in ſhort time after he came to* Pegu, *but before his death the* Mallayor *was called for to giue account what men were indebted to* Samuel, *and the* Pegues & Bermanes *that were indebted payd it to the King, but the* Moores *that were indebted ſaid, when the*

Peguan tyrannie.

Engliſh

English *came they would pay them, we went with others to* Nichesa, *and requested him to moue the King in our behalfe for our dispatch, who returned answere; came we to demand our goods, and the* English *had never come to trade in his Country? when our Ships came hee would giue all the goods, and what the* English *could demand to giue them content. In another Letter the first of March, wee had word sent vs, the King would not let vs go vntill some* English *Ships came to* Pegu. *For the money wee brought with vs, it is all spent, and wee are here in a most miserable estate, and knew no way to helpe our selues. For the King hath neyther giuen vs any of our goods, nor leaue to recouer none of our debts, nor taken our Cloth, but we are like lost sheep, and still in feare of being brought to slaughter. Therefore we beseech you and the rest of our Countrymen and Friends to pitie our poore distressed estate, and not to let vs be left in a Heathen Country, slaues to a tyrannous King. Though the King gaue vs nothing, yet had hee but giuen vs leaue to come away, wee could haue certified your Worship of meanes to helpe to haue recouered all the mony and goods we came for. Lead and Tinne heere is none to be sold, but if we receiue any mony, we do meane one of vs to goe into the Country to buy some if any profit may be made of it. The Coast of* Pegu *is cleere and water enough on the Bar for any Ship: and for Pilots, there are many to be had in* Musulipatnam, *that know the Coast very well. Is entreat you for Gods sake to be mindfull of vs, and to pity the poore estate we are here in, and send some Ship to release vs, and we shall be bound to pray for your Worships good health and prosperitie.*

This was the substance of their aduice deliuered in their owne words, which might bee true at that time, for then indeed they were inforced to stay; but not long after the Ships departure, they found good sale for their Cloth, and it should seeme better vent for the mony; for before the Ships came againe in October following, they had consumed their Capitall, and taken vp besides what their credit could supply, for which they could giue no other account, but that most was lost at play, and the rest profusely spent, whereof the Right Worshipfull East Indian Company are most sensible, and my selfe at that time in that place had some reason to be acquainted withall, but leauing them nameless according to the obscurity of their qualities, and irregularity of their proceedings. The King restoring most of the same goods *Samuel* dyed possessed of, at the instant of the Ships departure, and not before, lest their ryot should haue consumed all, he then enforced them to depart toward *Musulipatnam*, that could haue been well contented to haue stayed behind, where they arriued in April, *An.* 1619. bringing with them a Letter from the King, written vpon a Palmito Leafe, signifying his desire to giue free Trade and entertainment to the English Nation, if they would with their shipping repaire vnto his Country, and with all he sent as a Present a Ring set with a Ruby, two Mats, two *Betele* Boxes, and two narrow pieces of Damaske, all worth twenty Nobles or thereabouts, and so ended this negotiation. The Rubies and Saphires which are brought from hence, are found in the Kingdome of *Ava*, subiect also to this King, and much esteemed in all parts of India.

Their vnfaithfulnesse and vnthriftie courses.

King of Pegus Letter.

Tannassery lyeth next to Pegu, a small Kingdome, and tributary to the King of *Syam*, for which place this is but the Port, and that only to the Inhabitants of this Gulfe. For we find a way with our shipping into the Riuer of *Syam*, where the Right Worshipfull East Indian Company haue at this time their Seruants, to whose abler relation I leaue the description of those Parts, adding onely from the credible reports of our owne, the Dutch, & that Nation, the strange increase of the Swine of that Country, amongst which here are found no Boares, yet haue they Pigs according to the custome of other Swine. And one Sir *Drift* a Dutchman of good account, & another that liued long in that place, affirmed vnto mee the truth hereof, both in that Countryes beliefe, and his owne experience, for at his comming from thence, he tooke certaine Pigs, which he kept aboard the Ship, & within six moneths they farrowed Pigs, yet not a Boare amongst them. And heere I take leaue to repose, hauing made this light discouery of the Countryes coasting this Bay of Bengal, which I could not more exactly performe, hauing taken my station in Musulipatnam, Such as it is, I submit it equally to all mens iuruisigh or censure, and rest: Pleased whosoeuer be otherwise.

Tannassery.

Syam.

Now in Holland.

Sowes fruitfull without Boares.

Worthy Sir:

AS I haue begun, and proceeded herein by your Instigation, I present it to your acceptation, if any thing be worth your account, I dare iustifie the truth of it: if nothing, I shall neuer grieue at the suppression. In briefe, I wrote it for you, and dedicate it to you, and am only sorry it comes vnseasonably. My Voyage into India, *remarkable in a Carracks losse, and Captaine* Ios*ephs death, my Employment at* Surat, Cambaia, *and* Amadera, *from thence at* Callecut *vpon the Coast of* Malabarre, *at* Priaman *and* Tecoo *vpon* Sumatra, *and then to* Bantam *and* Iacatra *vpon* Iaua, *would afford more matter of discourse: but I haue chosen* Musulipatnam, *from which Contre I haue drawne these rude lines, yet strait ones, and parallel to the truth: so that although, none shall please to sayle by my Compasse, yet am I sufficiently contented in hauing kept within compasse, and so I rest, a true louer of you and your elaborate Volumes.*

Read, Mr Terries Relation of these things, L. 7. & 8.

W. Methwold.

FINIS.

THE SARACENICAL HISTORIE,

CONTAYNING THE ACTS OF THE MVSLIMS FROM MVHAMMED TO THE REIGNE OF *ATABACEVS* IN THE SVCCESSION OF NINE AND FORTIE EMPEROVRS.

VWritten in *Arabike* by GEORGE ELMACIN, Sonne of *ABVLIASER ELAMID*, the *Sonne of* ABVLMACAREM *the* Sonne of ABVLTIB.

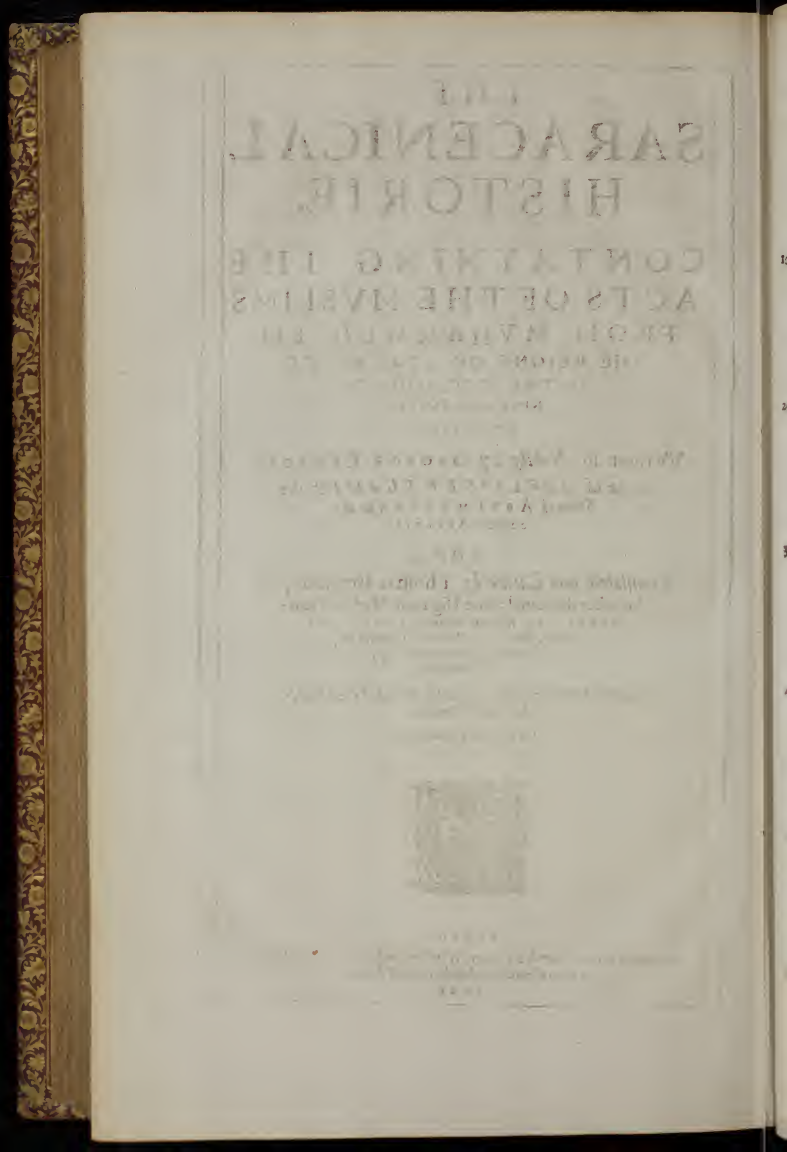
AND

Translated into Latine by Thomas Erpenius; *by* his heires dedicated to the High and Mightie Prince FREDERIKE King of *Bohemia*, *Count Palatine* of *Rhene*, &c. Out of whose Librarie at *Heidelberge*, the *Arabike* Copy was borrowed.

Englished, abridged, and continued to the end of the *Chalifa's*, by *Samuel Purchas*.

Ἀλλὰ τὰ πάντα ἐν ἐν πᾶσι χρηστὰ.

LONDON,
Printed by *William Stansby* for *Henry Fetherstone*, and are to be sold at his shop in *Pauls* Church-yard at the signe of the Rose.
1626.



To the Reader.

THat which the Angell had foretold of Ishmael, hee will bee a wild man, his hand will be against every man, and every mans hand against him, *and that* his seed should not be numbred for multitude; *is in this History manifested to have beene fulfilled to the vtmost. Yea, that which Saint* Paul *saith, that* Godlinesse hath the promises of this life, and of that which is to come, *we see fulfilled in* Abraham (*the* Father of many Nations) *and in his two Sonnes*, Ishmael *made* a great Nation (*never did any Empire extend so farre*) But my Couenant will I establish with Isaac, *and in* Isaac shall thy seed bee called. Ishmael *hath the greatest earthly Empire, yet is in spirituall bondage withall* Agars *Children*; *but* Ierusalem which is aboue is free, the mother of vs all, *which are the* seed of the faith of *Abraham*, which is the Father of vs all, *which (as* Isaac was) are the Children of Promise. But as then hee that was borne after the flesh, (persecuted him that was borne after the spirit), euen so it is now, *in this Historie from the beginning of the* Muslim *Empire declared.* The bond woman and her sonne *shall one day be* cast out of the house; *for the* Seruant abideth not in the house for euer, but the Sonne abideth euer, If the Sonne therefore shall make you free, yee shall be free indeed. *The Earth is a small thing for God to give; he giueth it to* Ishmaels *seed; his owne haue Himselfe their portion, in the Sonne to redeeme them, in the Spirit to sanctifie them, in the Father to prouide for them the best things here, and Heauen it selfe with God himself, in Trinity and Vnity to be their portion for euer. Enuy not their lot to those, but pitty and pray for them that God may open their eyes: which how they are misled with shewes of deuotion, dazeled with lightnings of armes, and blinded with night and Hell, this History sheweth from* Muhammed *their first Seducer to the end of their* Asian Chalifat. *Our Stories, I confesse, are full of* Mahomet *and* Saracens, *but empty for the most part of things therein most remarkable: whilst partly want of* Arabike *Books and Letters hath hindred vs from meanes of knowledge (without that Key none can enter this* Muhammedan *Magazine) and partly rash Zeale hath transported both* Greek *and* Latine *Authours to say any thing of these* * Locusts, Mahomet *and his Aduerents, without iudgement sometimes, and very often without truth, whereby we haue had passionate Inuectiues and crude Collections, instead of the* Muhammedan *or* Islam *History. God needeth not* mens lies, *nor* piæ fraudes; *to support his Truth: and the way to* ouercome euill *is* not with euill but with goodnesse. *The iustice of God scourging the world with the* Saracenical *Sword for their vniust contempt of the Gospel of Peace, is seene in this Dragon-tooth seed of* Muhammedans, *the Alphabet of whose Religion is written in bloody Letters of forced faith. The hypocrisie of* Muhammed *their Founder and other Propheticall Pretenders ambitious of Souereignetie, with their vices are best gathered out of their owne Authors, which though they stile their memory* happy *or* glorious, *yet in relating their Arts and Acts doe sufficiently declare their impiety and impurity before God and Man. Shewes of Religion in* bodily exercises, (*meere car-*

Gen.16.10.12.
Gen.17.20.
1.Tim.4.8.
Gen.17.21.
Rom.9.7.
Gal.4.25.
Rom.4.16.
Gal.4.28,30.
Iohn 8.35.36.

* Compare those Locusts, Apoc.9. with this Saracenical history, which though it may be applied in part to Papists, yet is literally more manifest in many things of those.

carkasses only) Almes, frequent Prayers (if gestures and words be Prayers, and Prayes were not the scope of their Prayers) their externall iustice in many things; their Learning in Philosophie, Mathematicks and Poetry; the length of an Empire in such space of time and place; this, inclusively from the East Indies, *to the Westerne Ocean without any interruption; (taking in also* Spaine *and part of* France *and* Italy *with* Sicill, *and the Easterne Empire tributary) that, from* Muhammeds *time to the end of this Story, yea still in the* Mogoll, Persian *and* Turke, *with the* Tartars *and many Princes of lesse note continuing in a larger extent; the beginning, growth, height, declining and fall of that Empire; the aduancement hereof with the Sword, which exposeth to slaughter, or imposeth Tribute, their diuisions into two Empires, the* Abasian *Family ruling ouer* Asia *and* Africa, *the* Ommian *in* Europe; *and after into a third which held* Africa, *and in time also possessed* Egypt; *the rising of Lay Princes, and degeneration of* Chalifas *to a kind of meere Ecclesiastickes, and their fall by diuision of this triformed* Cerberus *into a multiforme Dragon in manifold States and Kingdomes: These in a succinct narration, by one which descended of* Christian *Progenitors, was versed in* Christian *Stories as well as his last professed* Islamisme, *with more likelihood of truth and fulnesse of satisfaction to the Inquisitiue Reader, then any, then all yet published (if I be able to iudge) by any, by all* Latines *or other Westerne Writers;* Erpennius *hath her giuen, and I abridged out of him, conferred also and illustrated with* Mirkond a Persian *and* Muhammedan *his History set forth in* Spanish *by* Pedro Teixera, *and* Abraham Zacut *a* Iew *published by* Ioseph Scaliger. *The Author by birth an* Egyptian *hath beene exact in relating the Times and Acts of all* Egyptian *Gouernours, which with other things too long for an abridgement; and not so pertayning to the generall knowledge of that Historie of their Religion and Empire, I haue omitted: yet scrupulously rendring those things which I thought fitting for that my scope, or satisfaction of any (not exceedingly curious) Reader. I confesse, had the Booke come to my hand in time, this (as the other Tractlates of Sir* Ierome Horsey *and Master* Method) *had beene published with my* Pilgrimes; *yea, that* Muhammedan *part of my* Pilgrimage *was passed the Presse before this came to my hand; although euen for Religions sake this is not vnfit here. And for Religions sake I haue beene Religious in keeping the foot-prints of their Religion in the Phrases vsed by the Authour, of* Muhammed *or any other of his Sword-saints; stiling his memory* glorious, *others* happy *(indeed odious and pestiferous) because the Authour so speaketh, in other things also obseruing his words, euen as Saint* Luke *mentioneth Heathenish Names and Deuotions of* Mars, Castor, Pollux, Iupiter, Mercury, *or other prodigies of* Ethnike *Superstition. Let their Shewes and Deuotions in a false Religion prouoke vs to emulate the Truth with greater Zeale; lest our lukewarmenesse also cause vs to be spewed out of Christs mouth, for* withholding the truth in vnrighteousnesse; *the true cause why one Age brought into the World those hypocriticall* Chalifas, *and these* Vicars, *the one by* Muhammeds *Midwifery* gladio oris, *and the other by that of* Phocas, ore gladij, *those with a forcing Temporall Sword, these with a forged Spirituall, made of the Keyes turned into Picklocks to set the World in so manifold combustions; whiles one seekes a thousand yeares together to thrust the Church out of all the World, the other to bring all the World into their Pontificall, Pompificall, Cacolicke, not into the true Catholike Church, in the communion of Saints. And if the* Saracenicall *and Papall History were well knowne, the mysteries of S.* Iohns Apocalypse *might receiue greater light then that want hath yet permitted. So vsefull is this kind of knowledge to generall Learning, and to (the summe of all) Diuinity.*

It was farre greater then the Roman Empire, and their Religion still couereth more ground than the Christian in all professions.

Chalifa signifieth Vicar.

THE

THE SARACENICALL HISTORY, CONTAINING THE ACTS OF THE [t] MUSLIMS FROM MUHAMMED TO THE RAIGNE OF ATABACEUS IN the Succession of forty nine *Emperours.*

Written in *Arabike* by GEORGE ELMACIN, Sonne of *ABULIASER ELAMID, the Sonne of* ABULMACA'REM the Sonne of *Abultib.*

[t] *Muslimen.* of *Muslim* signifies a beleever: *sc.* of that doctrine of *Mahummed.* The name which all of that religion giue themselues, *Saracen*, and *Moore*, *&c.* which we giue them, they know not.

In the Name of God mercifull, [p] *mercy-shewing, in whom is my helpe.*

The Authors Preface.

[p] *Misericordia misericorsus*, gracious and mercifull, the visual beginning of Prayers, Bookes, & workes.

PRAYSED *in all Languages be the holy God, glorified in the height of his Throne of all creatures, distinct in necessity of Essence from every thing being; separated by the admirablenesse of Names, and noblenesse of Attributes, superexcellent in power and greatnesse of Maiestie, above all comparison in his strength, greatnesse and immensitie. I will prayse him with thanksgiuing for benefits giuen and gifts abundantly bestowed.*

HAuing read the History of that learned and famous man Muhamed Abugiafar *Son of* Giar[r] *the Tabarite of happy memory, and seeing the narrations and allegations very prolixe; hauing also read the abridgement thereof by the learned* Kemaluddin, *and many other Breefes: I gathered a History out of them, contracting the words, but retaynyng the things and order, omitting no case or exploit of moment: beginning with the beginner of* Islamisme *of glorious memory, rehearsing his birth, genealogy, and all: till he fled to Medina, and after that his warres, victories, and fortune till his death. I proceed in order with the orthodoxall* Chaliph's *obserning the course of times and yeeres, adding the Kings of other Prouinces and the occurrents of their times, according to the computation of the* Hegira, *vnto the Reigne of* Sultan Rucnuddin *the Holy King of happy memory.*

Mahomet first Author of *Islamisme*, that is, the *Mahumetan* Faith praised by this author *Mahumetem.*

[r] We say odious, and iust y[t], yet here and in like cases follow the author. The birth and genealogie of *Mahomet.*

HE first Emperor of the Mussemans was *Muhammed Abulcasim* of [s] glorious memory. *Muhammed Abulcasim* (saith *Muhammed* [u] *Abugiafar*) first manifested and obserued the Religion of Islamisme: hee was Sonne of *Abdalla*, which was the Sonne of *Abdulmutalib*, the Sonne of *Hasem*, the Sonne of *Abdumenaf*. His Mothers name was *Emina*, the Daugter of *Waheb*, Sonne of *Abdumenaf*. Vnto *Muhammed* of glorious memory was borne in the stonie Valley of the Citie of Mecca, early on a Munday morning the eighth of the former moneth *Rab*, in the 882. yeere of *Alexander* the Great. His Father dyed two moneths before he was borne, his Mother when he was sixe yeeres old. His Grandfather *Abdulmutalib* brought him vp till he was eight yeeres old; and then dyed aged 110. yeeres, after which he was educated by his Vncle *Abutalib*. When hee was fortie yeeres old he was called (to the Propheticall office) on Munday the second of the former *Rab*, in the 922. of *Alexander* the Great; which was the twentieth of the Raigne of *Cosroas* Sonne of *Hormisda*, Sonne of

[s] This *Abugiafar* was a Prince and learned Historian, which died *A.H.*310. *A.D.*922. Out of him principally is this history ro that time gathered. His education. His vocation.

Nusherwan. The first that beleeued in his Prophesie was *Chadigia* his Vncles Daughter; the next was his seruant *Zeid* Sonne of *Harith*, and after him *Ali* the Sonne of *Abutalib*, all of happy memory. After them were added *Abubeer* with fiue others, (all which were called by him to Islammisme) *viz.* *Otsman* Sonne of *Affan*, *Zubeir* Sonne of *Awam*, *Abdurahman* Sonne of *Auf*, *Saad* Sonne of *Abuwaccas* and *Obeidalla* Sonne of *Algiarah*. These nine were the first which entred Islamisme.

His doctrine.

In the foure and fortieth yeere of his age he manifested his vocation: for before hee only inuited men priuily to Islamisme. And publishing his vocation, he commanded to beleeue in God alone and him to worship and adore; he destroyed Idolatry, commanded Circumcision, established the Fast of the moneth *Ramadan*, the fiue Prayings, Cleanesse, Pilgrimage to the Temple of Mecca; that Blood should not be eaten, nor that which dyeth alone, nor Swines flesh. And those which obserued not these things, he vexed with warre and fought against them. The Christians also came to him both Arabs and others, and hee receiued them into his fidelity, giuing them a writing of Securitie. So also the Iewes, Magi, * and Pagans and others which performed to him oath of fidelity, obtained of him free libertie, but on condition to pay tribute and poll-monie. He commanded also to beleeue the truth of the Prophets and Apostles, and of the Bookes sent to them. Also that Christ the Sonne of *Mary* is the Spirit of God, and his Word and Apostle, and he approued the Gospell and the Law of *Moses*. The Coraisites would not consent touching these things, but resisted him valiantly and defied him. But his Vncle *Abutalib* assisted him, and forbade that any man should approch to him with a Sword.

10

* *Magi* were those which professed the Ethnike Religion vsed in Persia.

20

Christ blasphemed with hypocritical Fonors.

His enemies.

In the fifth yeere *Omar* the Sonne of *Alchittabi* of happy memory beleeued and confirmed the other Muslims with his faith: they were then 39. and himselfe was the 40. In the eighth yeere the Coraisites writ a Decree that the children of *Hasiem* should not make league or be mixed with the children of *Almutalib*, and hanged it in the Temple of Mecca. In the tenth yeere *Abutalib* dyed, addicted to the Religion of his *(people)* aged somewhat aboue eightie, and the Coraisites were confirmed, and their power and hope increased. The same yeere the Prophet of glorious memory made an expedition to Taisfa, and inuited the Inhabitants to Islamisme, but they yeelded not to him, and when hee had stayed there a moneth, he returned to Mecca. This yeere also he married the Daughter of *Abubeer* the Iust, and *Sawda* the Daughter of *Zamaa*.

His two wiues. *Aisia & Sawda.*

30

The conuersion of Medina.

In the thirteenth yeere certaine of *Awas* and *Charraz*, *viz.* seuenty three men and two women came to him, which were sworne to him concerning Islamisme, and of these hee appointed twelue Doctors, after whose returne to Medina, Islamisme was spread amongst the Inhabitants thereof, and they became his helpers. The same yeere he commanded his to remoue to Medina, and they all went thither except *Abubeer* and *Ali* which remayned with him.

The History of the departure to Medina.

In the 14. yeere *Muhammed* of glorious memory remoued to Medina, hauing with him *Abubeer* the Iust, and *Amar* the Son of *Kamra* the Seruant of *Abubeer*. And *Abdalla* the Son of *Artacat* guided them. But *Ali* remained behind with his leaue three dayes to dispose his businesses, and then came to him. He entred Medina on Munday noone (others say on Thursday) the twelfth of the former *Rab.* and abode with *Chalid Abiobs* Sonne of *Zeid* till hee built the Temple and House into which he then entred. And from this yeere is reckoned the computation * of the *Hegira*, which was the 54. yeere of the age of *Muhammed* of glorious memory.

40

* The *Hegira* or flight of *M.* fell out on the 16. of July. *A.D.* 622.

The first yeere of the *Hegira*, *Ali* the Son of *Abutalib* married *Fatima*. The same yeere *Muhammed* of glorious memory gaue a white Banner to his Vncle *Hamza* (this was the first Banner which he gaue to any) and sent with him thirty Muslims; but hee performed little. In the second yeere was fought the second Battel of *Badra*, and the greatest, in which diuers valiant Leaders of the Coraisites were slaine; on Friday the seuenteenth of the moneth *Ramadan*. For he had heard that *Abusofian* the Sonne of *Harith* was going into Syria with many packes, in which were monies of the Coraisites, for the spoile whereof he went. But *Abusofian* with his got to Mecca. The Muslims were three hundred and nineteene in number, the Infidels betwixt nine hundred and a thousand, and the Muslims ouercame, and slue seuenty of the vnbeleeuers, and tooke as many. But of the Muslims only fourteen were slaine. There were other Battels also this yeere.

Fatima D. of *Mah.* married to *Ali* his Vncles Sonne. *Ao.H.* 2. which began July 5. 623.

50

His slight skirmishes which after grew to great battels. *A.H.* 3. which began June 24. *A.D.* 624.

In the third yeere of the *Hegira* he besieged the Iewes in their Forts fifteene dayes, and they yeelded: hee captiued them and spoiled their goods. The same yeere hee sent a band of men to slay *Caab* Sonne of *Abrasaf* a Iew. And that yeere was fought a Battell on Saturday about the midst of the moneth *Siewal*, and the Hill neere Medina was taken. The number of the Infidels was three thousand footmen, and two hundred horsemen, three

60

thou-

thousand Camels and fifteene women. Their Captaine was *Abusofian* Sonne of *Harith*. The Muslims were a thousand, these first had the better, but after the Infidels, which flue 70. Muslims, amongst which was *Hamza* Sonne of *Abdulmutalib*. This was an vnluckie day, in which *M.* of glorious memory was also present in the Battell, and was wounded by *Ochba* the Sonne of *Abumugid*, and lost one of his right foreteeth, and was hurt on the lower lip. *Abdalla*, also the Sonne of *Siehab* wounded his forehead: his vpper iaw also was wounded, and two of his foreteeth fell out. Of the Infidels were slaine two and twentie. *M.* wounded.

In the fourth yeere happened the Battell of the Iewes, Sonnes of *Nadir*, which leauing their fortifications went out of their limits and came to Chaibar, and some of them went into Syria. *Mundir* Sonne of *Omar* the Saadite pursued them to the Well of Muauia with 70. Medinans, and slue them all, but *Caab* Son of *Zeidi*: which escaped. The last Battel of *Badra* was fought this yeere. In the fift yeere was the Battell of *Fossa* or the *Dike*. Many Nations were gathered together, the Corasites, and the children of *Coraid*, of *Nadir*, of *Gatfan*, and of *Selim*: their Leaders were *Habib* Sonne of *Abiab*, *Salam* Sonne of *Abulhakik*, and other Iewes. And *Ioseph* Sonne of *Harith* came to lead the Corasites and their followers with ten thousand men. Ouer the men of *Gatfan* was *Aiibas* Sonne of *Hasan* the Karatite and others, *Seliman* the Persian was author of digging the Ditch. The Infidels besieged them aboue twenty dayes: after which *Naim* Sonne of *Masud* the Gatfanite embracing Islamisme procured the disioyning of those Nations, and the breach of league twixt them and the Iewes. They fled thence, sixe Muslims and three Infidels being slaine. In this yeere happened the Battell of the children of *Coraid*, against whom *Mahammed* went forth and besieged them flue and twenty dayes. They were forced to yeeld to *Saad* Sonne of *Mead*, who counselled to slay all the men, and to make captiue the women and children: so that sixe or seuen hundred were beheaded, and buried in the Market place of Medina, the Muslims sharing their wiues, children and goods. *Saad* dyed of a wound before gotten at the *Dike*-battell. *A.H.* 4. which began June 13. 623. *A.H.* 5. June 2. 626.

In the sixt yeere was ordayned the Prayer for obtayning health, in Haditia, and many Battels were fought, amongst others that of the children of *Mustalak*, whom he met in Safan. With them was *Giuuiera* daughter of *Harith*, whom *M.* of glorious memory married, in steed of dowry freeing diuers of her captiued Kindred. This yeere also was fought the Battell of Haditia, a place neere Mecca, in the way to Giudda. After that peace was made betwixt him and the Corasites that for ten yeeres they might plow, and it was free for euery man to take part with them, or with *M.* on condition that if any Corasite without leaue of his Captaine fled to *M.* he should bee sent backe; but if any of *M.* his followers fled without leaue to the Corasites he should not be sent backe to him. If *M.* with his Souldiers should passe that way, he might stay three dayes; hee should vse no other Armes but those which Trauellers vse, and that also in the Scabbards. This truce was made by *Sahlum* Sonne of *Omar* the Amirite, and written by *Ali* Sonne of *Abutalib* of happy memory. In that yeere he was inaugurated vnder a tree which after perished, carried away by ouerflowing of waters, as was reported. *A.H.* 6. which began May 23. *A.D.* 627. *Mahomets* third wife. *M.* his Coronation or installation.

In the seuenth yeere *M.* of glorious memory, tooke to him a Pulpit. And it is reported, that his Wife said to him, I haue a workman to my Sonne, shall I bid him make thee a Pulpit? He answered yea. And he made him a Pulpit of wild Tamariske, or as others say, of white Tamariske; it consisted of two steps and a seat. Before this Pulpit was made, when he prayed in the Temple he leaned on a prop of wood. This Pulpit remayned to the Reigne of *Mauuias* Sonne of *Abusofian*, which added sixe steps to it, and it was not altered after. *Osman* Sonne of *Affan* first couered it with a Carpet. This yeere also was fought the Battell of *Chaibar* and *M.* tooke many Forts and possessed their Riches. Hee straitly besieged two Castles, *Watitia* and *Selalima*, that they were forced to sue to him to spare their liues, and to let them remayne in their Countrey, which he granted, on condition to pay yeerely halfe their Dates, and to be at his pleasure cast forth. The Inhabitants of Badra hearing this concluded on like conditions, to which he yeelded. The Iewes also remayned vnder the same league vntill the Raigne of *Omar* Sonne of *Alchattabi*: who after that he vnderstood that *M.* of glorious memory, had said in his sicknesse, that *two Religions might not concurre in Arabia*, he cast them thence. The same yeere *Zeinaba* Daughter of *Alharis* a Iewesse brought him a poysoned Sheepe, of which eating he said, this ioynt tels me that it is poysoned. *A.H.* 7. April 30 629. *M.* his Pulpit.

In the eight yeere he tooke Mecca. For the Corasites had broken their league, and *M.* went against them with ten thousand Muslims til he came to Marwuttabran, and his Vncle *Abbas* Sonne of *Abdulmutalib* came to him with *Abusofian*, Sonne of *Harith*, and beleeued. And he said, He which shall enter the house of *Abusofian* shall be secure, and he which shall shut his doore shall be safe. And he entred Mecca without Battell, and all the people thereof beleeued, except a few which he slue. It was taken the one and twentieth of *Ramadan*. *A.H.* 8. April 30 629. Mecca taken.

The Battell of Honania a famous Valley was fought this yeere. For when the Hawazines had

had vnderstood that Mecca was taken, they assembled to *Melic* Sonne of *Auf*, the Tekifians adioyning themselues with their wiues and goods. *M.* went out against them with twelue thousand men, and the victorie at first was with the Infidels, but after the Mussims preuailed, which put them to flight and spoyled their goods, which were sixe thousand Kine, foure and twenty thousand Goats, forty thousand Sheepe, and foure thousand ounces of Siluer: 90. of the Tlekifians were slaine and but foure Mussims. The captiues and spoiles were gathered together at Giaran, whither hauing besieged Taijfa and left it, he came and was sought to by the Embassadors of the Hawazines for the restitution of their wiues, saying they were his Ants, whereupon he gaue them the choise of their wiues and children, and of their wealth. They chose their wiues and children which hee deliuered. The same yeere *Melic* Sonne of *Auf*, came to him to Giaran and beleeued, whereupon hee restored him his goods. He set ouer Mecca *Gaiat* Sonne of *Asid*. 10

A.H.9. April 20 630.

In the ninth yeere was fought the battell of *Tebuc*, and *M.* made peace with the Prince of Dauma and the Prince of *Eila* on condition to pay him tribute. Hauing staid ten dayes at *Tebuc*, he departed to *Medina*, in the month *Regieb*. And that was his last warre in which *Osman* Sonne of *Affan* bestowed a thousand pieces of Gold on his Army. This yeere the Taijfians embraced Islamisme, ouer whom he set *Osman* Sonne of *Abulasi*, and he sent *Abusofian* to destroy their warlike prouisions.

A.H.10. which began April 9. *A.D.*631.

In the tenth yeere the Arabs came to him very frequent, and men embraced Islamisme, and his word was confirmed. The same yeere *Musuleima* the false Prophet rebelled, which said he was his fellow Prophet, and was followed by his friends the children of *Hanifa*, of *Iamama*. The same yeere *M.* of glorious memory went on Pilgrimage to Mecca, into which he entred the tenth day of *Dulhiggia*, and when he had taught men and instructed them in Religion, he returned to Medina. 20

His pilgrimage *A.H.*11. Mar. 28 *A.Christi.*632.

In the eleuenth yeere appeared the false Prophet *Asuad*, the Abbite in Arabia Fœlix, and said he was a Prophet, and tooke *Sanaa*, *Nazran* and the Countrey of *Taijf*: and when he grew famous, *Fir Dailam* slue him in his house. The same yeere *Muhammed* of glorious memory dyed. For hauing returned from his Pilgrimage to Mecca, and stayed at Medina till the eight and twentieth day of the moneth *Safar*, he began to be sicke; and he commanded *Abubecr* to pray with the people, and they prayed seuenteene Prayers. He dyed on Munday the twelfth of the former *Rab*, aged sixty three yeeres, or after others, sixty fiue. Hee was of very good wit, of a pleasant voice, visiting and intertaining his which visited and entertained him, liberall to the poore, lauding the Great men, conuersing with the meane, and not repelling any Sutor without his request or a kind answere. His Scribes were *Osman* Sonne of *Affan* and *Ali*, Sonne of *Abutalib*, Sometimes also *Vbobar* Sonne of *Caab* and *Zeid*, Sonne of *Thebith* writ for him, *Muauia* also, *Cbalid*, *Alau* and *Chanial*. *Abdallo* Sonne of *Abusierb* writ likewise for him, which Apostated from Islamisme to the Infidels, but *Osman* in time of victory sued for his pardon, which *M.* granted, hauing before determined to shed his blood. *Zubeir* Sonne of *Auan* and *Giehem* Sonne of *Safuan* writ downe his Almes; *Hadikas* Son of *Semal* his store of Dates; *Mugirat* Son of *Soicab* and *Husein* Son of *Iaman* his Iudicials and Imperials; *Abdalla* Sonne of *Arkam* answered to the Letters of Princes. Iudges in his time were ouer the oath, *Ali* Son of *Abutalib*, *Maab* Son of *Habal* of Medina and Abumcusa the Asiarite, ouer the Pardon *Anis* Son of *Melic*, ouer his Guard *Caie* Son of *Said* of Medina. His Banner was white, his lesse Standard black; it was ingrauen with his Seale For Double Testimonie. His Porter was *Bilal*; Gouernours when he dyed, *Gaiat* at Mecca, *Alau* at *Bahrain*, *Osman* at Taijf, *Omar* at Sinaa and Gieneed: *Cbalid* Sonne of *Said*, ouer the Villages of Arabia Fœlix, *Abusofian* at Giurfeia, and *Ali* Sonne of *Mina*, in a tract of Arabia Fœlix. 30 40

False Prophets.

Mahomets death.

His Secretaries, and Officers of State.

Muhammed dyed according to the Arabian computation in the yeere of the Sunne from *Adam* 6123. nine moneths and fourteene dayes; ten yeeres of the *Hegira* (reckoned according to the course of the Moone) and seuenty dayes being past; that is nine yeeres of the Sunnes course, eleuen moneths, one day lesse; 3614. dayes in all, the first of which was Thursday, the last Munday. 50

The Histories of the Christians write that he was gentle toward Christians, and when some of them had come to him and desired security, hee imposed tribute on them, blessed them, receiued them into his tuition, and commanded *Omar* to say to them, we haue their soules in the same account that we haue our owne soules, and their riches as our riches, and their chances as ours. The Author of the Booke *Almuhaddeb* writeth this, and from him the famous man *Abulhanifa* citeth it, treating of a Mussim killing a Christian. And when a certaine great man, a Christian, came to him, he arose and did him reuerence, and answered to one questioning it, *When any principall man of any people come to you, honour him.* Hee said also, *Doe good to the Cophtis of Egypt, for they are of kinne to you. He which oppresseth a Chri-*

This curiositie of Chronology he obseruedh in the rest, by vs omitted.

M. his respect to Christians.

Christian shall haue him his Aduersary in the Day of Iudgement, And, hee which hurteth a Christian hurteth me.

In the first yeere of the *Hegira*, *Siabir* the Persian tooke *Ancyra* from the Romans and the Ile of Rhodes, captiuing the Inhabitants. In the second *Cosroes* Sonne of *Hormisda* persecuted all which contradicted his Religion thorow his Kingdom, imposing grieuous tributes, and destroying all the Temples of Syria and Mesopotamia, carrying away all their Gold, Siluer and goods, euen to the Marble, into his Countrey. In the third yeere *Siabriar* besieged Constantinople, but departed frustrate. The same yeere, *Cosroes* oppressed the Ruhans, and caused them to forsake the Orthodoxe Sect, and to become Iacobites. For his Physician named *Ionan*, a Iacobite, perswaded him that so long as they were Orthodoxe *they would incline to the Romans. He therefore decreed that they should either bee slaine or else become Iacobites, which they all did. In the fift yeere of the *Hegira*, *Cosroes* was deprued by his Subiects for his tyrannies after he had reigned thirty eight yeere, and his Sonne *Kobad* set in his place, called also *Syroes*, the Sonne of *Mary* Daughter of *Mauritius* the Roman Emperour which carried himselfe well, and was renowmed for Iustice: but after eight moneths Raigne he and most of his people perished by Pestilence. His Sonne *Ardsyr* succeeded, and after fiue moneths was slaine. In this sixt yeere *Siabriar* not of the Royall race, obtained the Persian Souereignetie: whereupon a woman of Royall bloud laid wait and slue him when he had raigned two and twentie dayes. *Cosroes* Nephew of *Hormisda* succeeded, who after three monethes was slaine at Chorosan. After him *Turana* Daughter of *Cosroes* raigned a yeere and halfe. In the fourth yeere of the *Hegira Siabriar* had subiected himselfe to *Heraclius*, because *Cosroes* on some complaints, had written to *Marzuban*, to entrap and kill both him and his Sonne the Commander of the Armie, which Letter and Carrier being intercepted by *Heraclius*, and by him presented to *Siabriar*, he and the other Captaines subiected themselues to *Heraclius*, who thereupon inuaded Persia, and writ to *Chacan* King of Harari to helpe him with forty thousand Horsemen, promising him his Daughter in marriage. Thus *Heraclius* preuayled in Syria, Egypt and Armenia, against the Cities and forces of the Persians there. *Cosroes* made *Marzuban* (called also *Zurabbar*) his Generall, who marched into the Prouince of Mausil. *Heraclius* had at Ruha three hundred thousand Horsemen, and from the tract of the Harari forty thousand were comming to him, which stayed in the Prouince of Aderbigiana by his command till hee came thither. Hauing subdued Armenia, he went to Ninive. *Zurabbar* and hee fought a great battell, and the Persians had the worse, aboue fiue hundred thousand of them being slaine, with *Zurabbar* himselfe. Hereupon *Cosroes* forsooke Machura and Medaijn, Cities presently possessed by *Heraclius* and burned, enioying the Kings treasures. After this *Syroes* Sonne of *Cosroes* got out of Prison and slaying his Father succeeded him (*as before is related*) *Heraclius* came to the Village Themanin, which *Noah* of holy memory builded after he passed out of the Arke, and that he might see the place of the Arke, he ascended the mountaine Giudi, which is high ouer all those lands. Thence he passed into Amida, where *Syroes* made peace with him, conditioning to restore to the Romans all which his Father had taken from them. *Heraclius* returned to Ruha, and commanded the Christians to returne from the Iacobite Sect to the Orthodoxe, which they did. *Ardsyr* hauing succeeded, *Cosroes* was slaine by *Siabriar*, against whom *Marzuban* gathered forces, and the Persians were diuided in two parts: *Siabriar* was slaine and *Cosroes* succeeded, and when he was slaine, *Turana*, to whom *Gushansed* Sonne of *Cosroes* his Vncle succeeded, who being deposed, *Azarmie* daughter of *Cosroes* obtayned, which after a yeere and foure moneths was poysoned. *Perchozad* Sonne of *Cosroes* succeeded and was shortly slaine. In the seuenth of the *Hegira*, the Sunne was so eclipsed that the Stars were seene by day.

Abubeer the Iust or *Abdalla* Sonne of *Osmaun Abucabef*, Sonne of *Amir*, Sonne of *Omar*, Sonne of *Caab*. His mothers name was *Asma* daughter of *Sachar*, Sonne of *Amir*, Sonne of *Omar*, Sonne of *Caab*. He was created *Chalife* the same day on which the Prophet dyed. The men of Medina assembled to inaugurate *Saad* Sonne of *Obad*, one of themselues, and some of them said, let vs haue an Emperour of vs, and make you an Emperour of you O Fugitiues. * But when *Abubeer* of happy memory had prayld God and celebrated, he said to them, O men of Medina, take whether of these you will, and laid hold on *Omar* and *Abubeid*. But with multiplied cries and words *Omar* said to *Abubeer*, stretch forth thy hand that we may sweare fealty to thee, which hee did, and both the Medina men and fugitiues sware to him, *Ali* only and the *Hasemites* excepted, which would not by striking of the hand approue his Empire; which yet at last, seeing themselues forsaken, they did. The same yeere (*Heg.* 11.) the Arabians rebelled and some refused to pay tribute, and *Musailema* the false Prophet prospered. *Talibu* also the Sonne of *Chowailes* said he was a Prophet, and was followed by the *Ascibites*. Newes came also of the death of *Asuad Ibsua* a false Prophet, which

* These Persian and Imperiall occurrents I translate also that the Reader may see how the Saracenicall Empire grew so sudden a greatnes, out of the ruines of these two Empires: The Persians are said to haue preuayled in Syria & Egypt.

One great cause of this Persian combustion.

Abubeer s. hee's first called him selfe *Chalifa*, *i.* Vicar, or guest of God. Hee may bee called the *Numa* of the Saracens.

* Fugitiues were such as had fled from Mecca first with *M.* and after from other places from which flight is their *Heg.* reckoned. Other false Prophets.

which was *Abubecr* his first victory. He chased also the Absites and Dibans, and returned to Medina. Hee sent to warre against the Rebels, and deliuered eleuen Banners for eleuen Tracts, *Chalid*, Sonne of *Walid* was sent against *Taliba*, and his Complices the Gatfanites, Taijtes, and Alsedites, and ouercame them. *Thegiagie* also daughter of Harith professed herselfe this yeere a Propheteffe amongst the Taalabites, and went to *Musailema*, and was married to him, but when she had staid with him three dayes she returned home. *Abubecr* sent *Ikirma* Sonne of *Abugiahl* against *Musailema*, with others. They met in Iaman. The Muslims were forty thousand, which had the worse at first, but after preuayled and slue *Musailema* with ten thousand of his followers: the rest returned to Islamisme. He sent *Alauazgainst* the Rebells of Bahrain, who chased them, forced some to returne, and slue those which continued in their Apostalie. *Alau* passed also the Sea, and slue all the Inhabitants of Darina.

*A.M.*12 Ma. 18 *A.C.*633. p *Irac* is the name of the country which re ma. *dell.* 2. *Ralfas* stands extending on both sides of the bottom of the *Persian* Gulfe. But to give his names of countries lust interpretation is very difficult: the *Arabs* giuing one name, *Tartars* another, and others others to the same countries: which I therefore forbeare.

Hirac in Persia hath *Ispahan* the chiefe city. *Staters* were of diuers values; some were drams a piece, some betwixt some halfe, that and the former, some the tenth part of a dramme. *Alcoran* first gathered together, *Al* is the Article, *the coran* signifieth collection of this act of *Abubecr*. *Mushaph*, signifies a Booke come *from beauty, or beauteuly writing, or the Scripture, coran* signifies *reading* in publike; or a *collection* of *Surats* (*Aazaras*, some call them) or chapters. They hold it to excellall creatures, which Christians or Iewes may not touch, to sit on it were horrible, or themselues to touch it vnwashed, &c. *Omar* the third Emperour of *Chalifa*. *Damascus* taken. *A.M.*14. which began Feb.25. *A.C.*635. *A.H.*15. Feb.14. 636. By *Romans* be meanith Subiects of the *Romen* Emperour, which he calleth Infidels, as his owne *Mahometans*, *Muslims*, or right beleeuers.

In the twelfth yeere *Abubecr* writ to *Chalid* to goe to Irac? who made a peace with them, and the Inhabitants of Sawad on condition of tribute, which was the first tribute brought to Medina. He fought many battels and slue a great multitude of Infidels, and got innumerable spoyles.

In the the thirteenth yeere *Abubecr* sent forces into Syria, and sent *Amir* into Palæstina, *Iesid* and others into Balcaa, and the higher Syria, and *Chalid* Sonne of *Said* to Teimaa. *Chalid* fought a battell in Syria, with *Mahan* a Roman Commander, and chased him to Damascus; where the Romans in the Sapphire Valley slue his Sonne with many others. *Abubecr* sent *Muaui* with fresh supplies, and made *Chalid* Sonne of *Walid* ouer the Souldiers in Syria, and commanded him to goe from Irac thither which hee did with nine thousand. This yeere Bosra was taken the first of the Cities in Syria. The same yeere died *Abubecr* of happy memory. On Friday the three and twentieth of the later *Giumad*, hauing enioyed the *Chalifa* two yeeres, foure monethes and nine dayes, aged sixty three, and *Omar* the Sonne of *Alchittab* prayed for him. He was buried in the house of *Aysia*. He was abstinent, deuout, and regarded not the goods of the World. He is reported to haue taken three *Staters* out of the treasury for wages, and to haue said to *Aysia* of happy memory, See O Propheteffe what hath accrewed to the wealth of *Abubecr*, since I haue beene ouer this Empire, and repay it to the Muslims. And stile sawit. And wheli they had prayfed all his substance, the value of all was but fiue *Staters*, Which when it was told *Omar*, he said, God haue mercy on *Abubecr*, for he hath compelled his Successors to vndergoe labour. This *Abubecr* first gathered the Alcoran out of Tables. For when the Muslims in Iaman were crossed, bee feared lest some of the Alcoran might be lost, being only in meas memories, and in sheets betwixt Tables: and he called it *Mushaf*. Euery Friday hee distributed that which was collected in the Treasury to his Captaines according to their places: first to the Souldiers, and after to the learned men, and to such as had by their labour merited any thing. The Persians in the eleuenth yeere of the *Heg.* came to him about the slaughters of their Kings and seditions, and desired *Iazdegird* Sonne of *Cosroes* which had fled from *Sroes*, and made him King ouer them being sifteene yeeres old. But their affections and assemblies were differing, and the Provinces, Townes and Villages warred on their Neighbours, and were deuided amongst themselues. In the thirteenth yeere happened a great Earth-quake thirty dayes, and a great Pestilence followed, The Muslims that yeere besieged Gaza and chased the Romans, which they signified by Letters to *Abubecr* who was then dead. God haue mercy on him.

Omar Sonne of *Alchittab*, Sonne of *Nokail*, Sonne of *Abdullazis*, Sonne of *Riab*, Sonne of *Cart*, Sonne of *Rawab*, Sonne of *Adi*, Sonne of *Caab*, Sonne of *Lua*, Sonne of *Galib*, was designed *Chalifa* on the day of *Abubecr* his death, and by his command. In this thirteenth yeere *Omar* of happy memory sent *Abuobeid* Sonne of *Masud* against the Persians, whom he ouercame in Hira, slaying many Infidels but in a second battell he was slaine with many Muslims. After that was the battell of Buwaibie, in which the Infidels were ouerthrowne.

In the fourteenth yeere Damascus was taken by *Chalid* Sonne of *Walid*, forceably entring (after seuenty dayes siege) at the *Thomas-gate*, and *Abuobeid* with conditions of peace at the Custome-gate. *Omar* sent *Saad* against Irac which had many battels with the Persians in Cadis: the Persians were a hundred and twenty thousand, the Muslims thirty thousand. They walled about by *Omars* command Basra and Cufa.

In the fifteenth yeere, the Romans assembled to the number of two hundred and forty thousand Infidels, and the Muslims were thirty sixe thousand which preuayled, as in many other battels this yeere. *Emissa* became tributary, *Kinnasrin* was taken.

In

In the sixteenth yeere *Omar* went into Syria, hauing made *Ali* Gouernour of Medina. He made agreement with *Artenon* Prince of Ramla, and sent *Amrus* and *Sergijl* to besiege Ierusalem, to whom *Omar* granted security and imposed tribute. Hauing subdued Palestina he sent *Amrus* into Egypt. This yeere *Saad* wanne Medaijna-Cosroe, and with his Muslims possessed the treasures [n] of Cosroes: and are said to haue found 3000. Millions of gold. And they found a house full of Camphora which the Muslims tooke for Salt, and vsed it in lenin, which made their bread bitter. They found the Crowne of *Cofroes*, and garments wrought with gold and gemmes, and diuers armes, and the hanging of a gallery which *Said* rent and made thereof a thousand thousand drammes, each dramme being ten *Staters*. They found also a silken Carpet sixty Cubits long and as many broad, wrought with figures and gemmes like flowers: on the border was the resemblance of the earth set with herbs and flowers, as in the Spring, made of gold, siluer and gemmes. *Omar* rent it and diuided it to the Muslims. *Ali* told his share of it (none of the greatest) for twenty thousand. This yeere was fought the battell of *Gialul* with the Persians, whose last King *Iazdegyrd* fled to *Eargan*. This yeere *Omar* of happy memory returned to Medina.

In the seuenteenth yeere of the *Hegira*, the King of Romans besieged *Emissa*, and *Omar* sent *Abuobeid* forty thousand men for succour, which chased away the Romans. *Omar* the same yeere went into Syria, and subiected it. In the eighteenth yeere *Amrus* the sonne of *Alab* besieged Misra and tooke it. It was gouerned by *Mucnac*, which conditioned with *Amrus* that euery Egyptian should pay an Egyptian peece of Gold, and to entertaine three dayes euery Muslim which passed that way. And the tribute imposed on them yeerely amounted to twelue millions of gold. After that *Omar* went to Marbut where were many Romans, and expelled them, as also at *Cumseric*, and then besieged Alexandria. That yeere was a yeere of destruction through haile which spoyled the ground and killed cattell. There was a Pestilence which killed fiue and twenty thousand Muslims there, and diuers of the chiefest.

In the nineteenth yeere *Heraclius* died, whiles *Amrus* besieged Alexandria, which was taken in the twentieth yeere after fourteene moneths siege. The same yeere *Amrus* compassed Misra with a wall, called Fustata, that is, *the Tent*, because his Tent was there pitched before he went to the siege of Alexandria: and a Doue hauing hatched her young therein, hee said, it is vnlawfull for vs to kill in the moneth *Muharram*, and gaue his Captaines charge thereof.

In the one and twentieth was the *Nuhawendik* battell betwixt the Muslims and Persians, wherein the Generall *Nuaman* was slaine, and *Hodaifa* succeeded, which after turned the Infidels to flight. *Mugira* possessed Aderbigian quietly, and *Amrus* Sonne of *Said*, got Ainwerd and Harran and Ruha; *Aias* Sonne of *Isa* got Raca, Nasibin and the parts adioyning; *Abumasa* also tooke Ahwaz and Seiwas. The same yeere Chorasan was wonne by *Nuaman* before the battell aboue said.

In the three and twentieth yeere *Omar* of happy memory was slain by *Abululua* seruant to *Mugir* a Persian by Nation, and by Religion a *Magus*, because he iudged against him, complaining of too much tribute exacted. Whiles *Omar* was at his morning Prayer, on Wednesday the three and twentieth of *Dulhiggia*, he stabbed him in three places, one of them vnder his Nauill whereof he died. And *Abdurrahman* Sonne of *Auf* prayed * with the people. *Omar* was carried to his house, and he commanded *Sabib* to pray three dayes with the people, and secretly assigned the Empire to fixe persons, to *Ali* Sonne of *Abutalib*, *Otsman*, *Said*, *Abdurrahman*, *Talha* and *Zubeir*, of happy memory. Hee made his Sonne *Abdalla* a Counsellour only, without any place of command. He dyed the fixe and twentieth of *Dulhiggia* and *Sabib* prayed for him (or in his steed.) He was buried in the house of *Aisia*. Hee was browne, bald, tall, iust, pious, abstinent: hee first reckoned the computation of yeeres after the *Hegira*, and subscribed Letters: hee first was called *Emperour of the faithfull*. Hee first vsed the similitude of the Ant and her burthen. Hee first assembled men together vnder one Prince in the moneth *Ramadan*. His Scribes were *Abdalla*, *Zeid* and *Almal*, and *Ali*: his Iudges, at Medina, *Iezid*, at Cufa *Abumusa*: his Portor *Iezid*: his Seale, that of the Prophet. He raigned ten yeeres of the Moone, and 178. dayes, 6136. yeere of the Sunne being compleat. He distributed euery Friday the treasure to his Captaines according to their necessitie; not, as *Abubacr*, according to their dignity; saying, that the *Worlds goods were giuen to repell the Worlds euills*.

The Christian Stories tell that when *Omar* had taken Ierusalem, he writ them this letter of security, *In the name of the mercifull mercy-showing God, Of* Omar *Son of* Alchittab, *to the people of the Citie Aelia* [o] *granted security of their persons, wiues, children, goods, and Temples, that they be not destroyed nor vnoccupied*. At the houre of Prayer he would not pray in the Temple, but alone, at the steps before the doores & writ then a priuilege that no Muslim should pray

n This seemeth the later *Cofroes*: or that before of *Heraclius* not fully true, which the faith, he tooke out of Christian stories.

The last *Persian* King ouercome.

*A.H.*17. Ian. 23. *A.C.* 638.

Egypt conquered.

Misra (since enlarged and called Cairo) chiefe Citie of Egypt taken.

*A.H.*19. which began Ian. 1. 640.

New Misra walled.

*A.H.*21. Dec. 30. 641.

Persia, Assyria, and Syria.

*A.H.*23. began Nou. 19. *A.C.* 643.

Omar killed.

* This is noted because it was done by the *Chalifa*, when he could possibly. In his sickness by one of the chiefe.

Omar first called *Emir Elmoumenin*.

Priuiledges to Ierusalem.

pray at the steps but alone, & that no assembly should there be made for publike Prayers. He prayed also at Bethleem at the Arch where Christ was borne, and writ a Priuiledge that no Muslim should pray there, but one after another without publike assembly. When Alexandria was taken *Amrus* writ to *Omar*, I haue taken a Citie containing foure thousand Baths, twelue thousand Herb-sellers, foure thousand tributary Iewes, and foure hundred * Iesters. *Omar* writ to him to make a Riuer from thence to *Colzuma* for carriage of Corne, thence to be transported by Sea to Medina; which he did, and it was called the Emperours Riuer. *Amrus* tooke Barca and Tripolis: he writ to the Patriarke of the Iacobites, *Benianin*, a letter of Security, whereupon he returned with great ioy, hauing beene absent from his See thirteene yeeres. When *Heraclius* was dead, *Constantine* his Sonne raigned sixe moneths, and was killed by his stepmother: *Heracleones* succeeded and was soone deposed. *Constans* followed.

* *Mimi.*

Note the cause why Iacobitisme preuailed with other Heresies in the E. & partly because the politike Infidels thus secured themselues by diuersitie of religion against the Romans gardy the circumcised Muslims fauoured the circumcised *Cophti* Bit atowne on the Riuer Euphrates. Africa conquered & Cyprus. *A.H.*31. it began Aug 24. 651. Nubia inuaded. Old Persian. *A.H.*35. it began July 22. 655. Rebellion.

OTSMAN Sonne of *Affan*, Sonne of *Abulas*, Sonne of *Ommia*, Sonne of *Abdussams*, Sonne of *Abdumenaf*, Sonne of *Cuda*, was the fourth Emperour of the Muslims. His mothers name was *Arwia* Daughter of Kerir, whose mother was *Bisa* Daughter of Abdulmutalib. *Abdurrahman* renounced the right which hee had with the rest which were designed, on condition, that he might chuse the Emperour, wherewith all were pleased but *Ali*, which after yeelded. He named *Otsman*.

In the foure and twentieth yeere *Mugirus* tooke Bir and Hamadan, and *Muauias* tooke many Cities of the Romans.

In the seuen and twentieth yeere, *Abdalla* Sonne of *Said* Gouernour of Egypt inuaded Africa, slue the King and possessed his State. *Muauias* also tooke Cyprus. *Otsman* sent *Abdalla* and *Said* into Chorasan, promising the gouernment to him which first came thither. They tooke many Townes, and *Abdalla* returned not till he had drunke of the riuer Balcha.

In the one and thirtieth yeere. *Iazdegird* the last of the Persian Kings lost his life, and their glory vanished, and their Kingdomes were possessed by the Muslims. That yeere also *Abdalla* Sonne of *Said* inuaded Nubia, and the King made peace, promising many captiues.

In the two and thirtieth yeere, *Abbas* Sonne of *Abdulmutalib* dyed, one of the chiefe of the Corasites; and if he passed by *Omar* or *Otsman*, they would alight off their horses to doe him honour. *Abdurrahman* Sonne of *Auf* dyed that yeere, who gaue to euery man of *Badra* fiue hundred pieces of Gold (which were a hundred) and his goods were diuided into sixteene portions, euery of which contayned eighty thousand peeces of Gold.

In the three and thirtieth yeere, *Soliman* the Persian dyed aged, two hundred fifty sixe yeeres, others say, three hundred and fifty. *Anno* 35. many accusations were laid against *Otsman*, for bringing backe to Medina *Hakem*, whom the Prophet of glorious memory had expelled, for deposing *Said*, and substituting *Ocba* which was a drinker of wine, and an adulterer, for giuing to *Merwan* his Kinsman fiue African talents, that is, 504000. pieces of Gold, &c. he had borrowed ten thousand *Staters*, which he repayed vpon sute of Law, and after would haue borrowed againe, but the Treasurer refused and declared it to the Muslims, *Otsman* on Friday prayed in the Temple before the people, and said, *O God, I take thee to witnesse, that I am truly penitent.* Yet the stirres encreased, and many assembled to depose *Otsman*, who sent to them to Medina to appeale to the Law of God (*so they call the Alcoran*) and the doctrine of his Prophet. At last, *Muhammed* sonne of *Abubecr* killed him; in his bosome was the Alcoran, on which fell one drop of bloud; hee raigned twelue yeeres lacking eight dayes. He was faire, long-bearded, much in fasting, prayer and meditation of the Alcoran: he left fiue hundred millions of *Staters*, one hundred and fifty thousand pieces of gold. His promotion of his Kindred caused his deprivation. His Scale was inscribed, *I believe in God the Creator and Administrator*

Otsman killed.

Ali 5.

Ali the fifth Emperour, was sonne of *Abutalib*, the Sonne of *Abdulmutalib*, sonne of *Hasem*, sonne of *Abdumenaf*, sonne of *Cuda*. His mother was *Fatima* Daughter of *Asad*, Son of *Hasem*. He was created *Chalif* the same day that *Otsman* was slaine. *An.*36. *Zubeir* and *Talha* went to Mecca, to frustrate the choise of *Ali*, and said they required the bloud of *Otsman*. And *Aissa* was at Mecca when *Otsman* was slaine, and hearing of *Alie* succession, encited men against him, saying, *Otsman* was slaine wrongfully: By God I will require his bloud. *Ali* answered, *Where is the mother of the Dogs?* alleaging that she gaue charge to slay him, and called him Infidell. She replyed, They conuerted him and then killed him. *Aissa*, *Talha* and *Zubeir* went from Mecca with a great Armie, and tooke Basra. *Ali* from Medina with twenty thousand, fought with them being thirty thousand, and slue *Talha* and *Zubeir*, and put to flight *Aissa* Souldiers. Seuenty hands are related to be cut off from the bridle of the Camell on which *Aissa* rode one after another, and the Camell stucke with Arrowes like a Hedgehogge, his legs cut off, and *Aissa* taken. *Ali* sent her to Medina with seuenty women in mens habit. Hauing thus ouercome the people of the Camell, he went to Cufa, and there

Insurrection.

Swearing Prophetesse.

there fixed his Tents. Thence he went and fought with *Muani*, which refused the oath of Alleagcance.

An. 37. they had ninety battels in a hundred and ten dayes; to euery of which *Ali* premised an exhortation to take the Oath, which *Muani* refused till the murtherers of *Otsman* were deliuered to death, and the *Chalifate* were resigned. The last battell was called the *strong night*, in which night were slaine seuenty thousand on both sides. And when day appeared, *Amrus* warned *Muani* that they should lift vp their Alcorans on their Speares which they did and cryed, This Book of God be betweene vs and you: whereupon the men of Irac threatned to kill *Ali*, if hee would not listen to the Syrians according to the iudgement of Gods Booke, and so *Muani* escaped. At last both sides agreed to chuse an arbitrator which should arbitrate according to that Booke, which were chosen *Amrus* and *Abumusa*, and both parties bound to stand to their agreement. They agreed to depose both *Ali* and *Muani*, and chuse *Abdalla* Sonne of *Omar*. *Ali* was deposed accordingly, but when *Amrus* should haue done the like to *Muani*, he refused. *Abdalla* Son of *Wahab* had also forsaken *Ali*, whom he slue in fight with all the Chawarigians his followers. The broyles continued betwixt *Ali* and *Muani* in Egypt and Irac till the fortieth yeere. Then *Bassir* was sent to Medina by *Muani*, and entred it; the Inhabitants acknowledged *Muani*. Thence he went to Mecca, then to Aliaman, and slue two of *Ali* his Sonnes with many others which followed the part of *Ali*; after which he returned to Mecca, and slue at Taisi, Iamam and Medina thirty thousand. At last Peace was concluded betwixt them, that laying aside armes, *Ali* should enioy Irac, and *Muani* Syria. That yeere three Chawarisians agreed to kill in diuers places on one day *Ali*, *Muani* and *Amrus* also: *Haziag* wounded *Muani* with a poysoned Sword, but he was slaine and *Muani* escaped. *Amrus* another of them mistooke and killed *Charigia* the Lieutenant of *Amrus* Sonne of *Alas* in steed of him, and was therefore taken and executed. *Abdurrahman* the third wounded *Ali* on the forehead as he went to morning Prayer, on a Friday the seuenteenth of *Ramadan*, whereof he dyed three dayes after: and was buried in *Tabaf*, where now is the place of his burial. Some say he was buried at Cufa, and some say the place is vnknowne. *Ali* commanded to feed his smiter (for hee was taken) and vse him well; and if he recouered, to spare him; if hee dyed, to ioyne him with him that he might accuse him before God. He reigned fiue yeeres three moneths lesse, aged sixty three. He was browne, short, great-bellied, long-bearded and bald: neglected things of the World, feared God much, much in Almes, iust and lowly, witty, defender of the true Religion, learned in speculatiue and practicke Sciences, bold, liberall. The inscription of his Seale was, *Only to the strong God dominion*.

A.H.37. Iune 13.657. 90. Battels.

Ali killed.

Hasen Sonne of *Ali* was made *Chalifa* at Cufa, on the day of his Fathers death. But the men of *Sras* quarrelling with him, he sent to *Muani* conditions and agreed with him: he abode at Medina, and yeelded Cufa to *Muani*, hauing enioyed the *Chalifate* six moneths and fiue dayes. His Seale was inscribed, *There is no God, but God the true and manifest King*.

Hasen 6.

Muani Sonne of *Abusofian*, Sonne of *Haleb*, Sonne of *Ommia*, Sonne of *Abdusiams*, Sonne of *Abdumenaf*, Sonne of *Cuda*: was the seuenth Emperour. Hee was created *Chalifa* at Cufa when *Hasen* resigned. Anno 46. *Muani* Sonne of *Amir* and *Basser*, Sonne of *Arzab* inuaded the West and tooke many Cities, Caratia, Caphsa, &c. till they came to Kairawan, which *Muani* Sonne of *Chodbag* had taken before they came, and there builded a Citie and encompassed with a wall the City now called Kairawan. An. 49. *Hasen* dyed poysoned by his wife, as was said by the command of *Muani*. He had gone fiue and twenty Pilgrimages on foot, and twise had forsaken all his wealth, and thrice made partition with God euen to his shooes and sockes, reseruing one halfe to himselfe. An. 50. *Muani* procured that the Oath of Fealty should be made to his Sonne *Iezid*, as to his partner of the Couenant: which was done by all but *Husein* Sonne of *Ali*, *Abdurrahman* Sonne of *Abubeer*, *Abdalla* Sonne of *Omar* and *Abdalla*, Sonne of *Zubeer*. An. 52. *Iezid* inuaded the Romans as farre as Constantinople. An. 58. *Aisia* of happy memory died on the seuenth day of *Ramadan*. An. 60. *Muani* dyed at Damascus, and his Sonne *Iezid* prayed for him: he enioyed the place nineteene yeeres and ninetie foure dayes. *Obeid* Sonne of *Sarah* liued in his time, a man three hundred yeeres old.

Muani 7. And first on whose Posteritie in the Ommian Family the *Chalifate* seuded

Hasen holines.

Old *Obeid*.

Iezid was created *Chalifa* the same day. He writ to *Walid* Gouernour of Medina, to apprehend *Husein* Sonne of *Ali* and *Abdalla*, which fled to Mecca, and abode there refusing the Oath to *Iezid*. The Cufans sent to *Husein*, and promised to sweare to him. *Hasem* going thither with fifty horse and a hundred foot, was set on by the band of *Obeidalla* sent thither by *Iezid*. He on the Friday set before him the *Musbaf*, and admonished them. But they rushed on him, and slue him and all his company, and carried away their wiues and children. *Iezid* commanded his head to be set vp at Damascus on the gate. The same yeere *Abdalla*

Iezid 8.

Husein slaine and the *Musbaf* neglected.

Bochara in Bactria and Samarcand subdued.

Sonne of *Zubeir* vsurped the Empire at Mecca, whiles *Iezid* followed his wine and dogges contemning Religion. *Iezid* set ouer Chorasan *Selim*, which tooke Naisabur and Chouarasma, and Bochara then ruled by *Chatumia* a woman, who promised the King of Saida marriage if he would assist her against the Muslims, who thereupon came with 120000. but was slaine in battell, and enriched the Muslims with spoyles. They went to Samarcand, the King whereof bought his Peace with much money. A.63. the men of Medina deposed *Iezid*, who sent against them *Mussim*, who spared them three dayes, and then entred and spoyled them three dayes, shedding their bloud, and carrying away their goods. Yet the Prophet of glorious memory said, *He which spoyleth my City, my wrath remayneth on him.* A.64. *Muslims* went to Mecca against *Abdalla*, and dyed in the way. *Husin* succeeded in his place, layd siege to it, beate the house with Engines of battery and burned it. This siege continued till newes came of *Iezids* death. His Sonne *Muaui* prayed for him: (*or in his steed*) hee reigned three yeeres nine moneths, *Anno mundi* 6175.

Median spoyled.

Temple of Mecca burned

Muaui 9. *Abdalla* 10. *Mirkond* and *Zacutbi* leaue him out of their Catalogues. *Merwan* 11.

Muaui Sonne of *Iezid* the third Emperour of the house of *Ommia*, was created *Chalifa* the same day, and reigned forty fiue dayes and then dyed. His Scale was inscribed, *The World is deceit. Abdalla* Sonne of *Zubeir* was inaugurated at Mecca, when there had beene no *Chalif* two moneths. The Iracans, Egyptians and some Syrians sware to him. *Merwan* of the house of *Ommia* raised a party at Damascus, and preuayled in battell against *Dahac* which stood for *Abdalla*, flue him and chased his followers. Hee held Syria, entred Egypt, and after many fights obtained it, sent an Army against *Abdalla* which got the better.

Cufans rebell.

An.65. the Cufans made an vprore to reuenge the death of *Husein*, sixteene thousand being assembled vnder *Suleiman*, which was slaine in battell by *Obeidalla*, and his followers chased. This yeere also *Muchtar* Sonne of *Abuobeida*, came to Cufa, and incited them to reuenge *Husein* of happy memory, for which the Gouernour imprisoned him: *Merwan* dyed of the Plague in the moneth *Ramadan*. Some say [i] that his Wife poysoned him, others that she laid a Pillow on his face and sate thereon. *Abdulmelic* Son of *Merwan* prayed [k] for him. He was *Chalifa* ten moneths, or 298. dayes.

i So *Mirkond*. k To pray for him, is meant to pray publikely before the people which in the *Chalifas* Temple none might doe but himselfe, except in such fatall necessitie, &c.

Abdulmelic 12.

Abdulmelic was inaugurated the same day, holding the *Mushaf* in his bosome. The same sixty fifth yeere he enlarged the Temple at Ierusalem, and men began to goe thither in Pilgrimage: and hee forbade Pilgrimage to Mecca, because of *Abdalla* Sonne of *Zubeir*. Hee would haue perswaded the Christians of Damascus to yeeld him the house next the Cathedrall Church, but they shewed the Charter of *Walid*, whereupon he offered them much money and liberty to build another like it where they would, but they refused & he left them.

Cufa rebelleth a chiefe Citie in Arabia since ruined.

A.66. arose *Muchtar* Sonne of *Abuobeid* at Cufa requiring the bloud of *Husein*, to whom the Citizens sware and besieged *Obeidalla*, who obtayned security of *Muchtar*, pretending that hee would call to the Empire *Muhammed* Sonne of *Hanifa* of happy memory; intending indeed to draw it to himselfe, hauing before done much spoyle on the Citizens. The same yeere the horsemen of *Muchtar* and *Obeidalla* had a cruell battell, and *Obeidallas* men ranne away. Then *Muchtar* sent to *Aimer* 4 seuen thousand horse vnder *Ibrahim* against *Obeidalla*, after whose departure the people of Cufa mutined against *Muchtar*, and had well neere slaine him; insomuch that he sent backe for *Ibrahim*, who set vpon them with his Army, and flue two hundred and fifty of them which had warred vpon *Husein*, and persecuted the rest with death and exile. The same yeere *Abdalla* Sonne of *Zubeir* cast *Muhammed*, Sonne of *Hanifa*, with seuenteene of his house into Prison, and threatned to put them to death except they sware to him in such a space. *Muhammed* meane while sent to *Muchtar*, who sent him 150. horsemen which entred Mecca, crying, *reuenge of Husein*, and came to the Well *Zemzem*. They brake the Prison, and brought forth *Muhammed*, and receiued new supplies from *Muchtar*, and terrified the Sonne of *Zubeir*, whom *Muhammeds* company, being foure thousand, would haue assaulted, but hee permitted them not. An.67. *Muchtar* sent *Ibrahim* with seuenty thousand against *Obeidalla*, which slue 70300. of *Obeidallas* men, and tooke *Singiar*, *Nasibin* and *Dara*. *Masab* Son of *Zubeir* in his brothers name Gouernour of Basra went that yeere with a great Army to Cufa against *Muchtar*, and after a great battell put him to flight and destroyed him and his in the moneth *Ramadan*. *Masab* hauing thus obtayned Irac, inuited *Ibrahim* to obedience, which hee performed. Hee set *Mahleb* Sonne of *Abusafia* ouer Musil, Mesopotamia, Aderbigians and Armenia. An.68. the Azrakæans came out of Persia into Irac (a Charizian Nation) entred Medain, tooke Ahwaz and the Countrey subiect to it. But *Masab* sent *Mahleb* which slue many of them, and after that *Omar* which fought with them at Naisabur and ouerthrew them, and they went backe to Isfahan and to Carmania, whence with encreased forces, they returned but were forced backe by *Omar*, hauing before slaine the women and children.

Basra now called Balsora.

The Charizæans.

Hispaan now chiefe Citie of the Persian.

Anno 69. *Abdulmelic* Sonne of *Merwan* went from Damascus to make warre vpon *Abdalla*, Sonne of *Zubeir*, and substituted *Omar* Sonne of *Saad* at Damascus in his place, which pre-

presently rebelled, and fortified himselfe: whereupon *Abdulmelic* returned and besieged Damascus. *Omar* sent to him and obtayned security, but, when he came to him, he slue him, and quieted his partakers with distribution of money. *Anno* 72. *Masab* was slaine by *Abdulmelic* in battell, and he entred Cufa, and his Empire was established in Irac, Syria and Egypt: only *Hegiar* remayned in the hand of *Abdalla*, Sonne of *Zubir*, whom *Hagiagi* Son of *Iosephi* soone after besieged and slue at Mecca, which hee also tooke after seuen moneths siege, and battered Caab the fortification of *Abdalla* with Engines, and threw into it balls of Pitch and fire to destroy the houses. When *Abdalla* feared the house (or Temple) lest it should fall, he entred his owne house; his mother encouraged him to goe forth, it hee died, he should die a Martyr: he answered, *O mother, I feare not death but dismembring.* A sheepe, said she, when shee is killed, feeleth not the flaying. Hee is said to haue drunke a pound of Muske, and then going forth to be slaine, and his head fastned on the gate: and his crucified body smelled of Muske many dayes. The same yeere *Abdulmelic* made his brother *Muhammed*, Sonne of *Merwan*, Gouernour of Aderbigiana, Mesopotamia and Armenia, who sent a hundred thousand against the Harari, which were all slaine. *Muhammed* much mouued, went with forty thousand, and ouerthrew the Harari, and burned them in their Temples. He sent also *Muslima to the Gate of Gates* [a] where he besieged eight thousand Harari, of whom he slue many, and the rest beleeued, The Azrakeans did and suffered much harm and change. *Anno.* 74. *Hagiagi* was made Gouernour of Medina, who went to Mecca, and destroyed all the fortification of *Caab*: and *Anno* 75. was in Cour Irac. He came to Cufa, and sent helpe to *Mahleb* against the Azrakeans and chased them.

Securitie not secure.

Muske drunke.

Mecca besieged and taken.

a I suppose hee meaneth Derbent: or old *Caspia porta.*

Anno 76. *Salih*, Sonne of *Marga* and *Siabeb Charisæans* conspired. *Salih* was called *Emperour of the faithfull* by his followers. They spoyled Mesopotamia, and increased in power, and often ouerthrew the Armies of *Hagiagi*, hauing but small forces. With a thousand hee went to Cufa, and ouerthrew *Hagiagi*, which came against him with fiftie thousand, and had the spoyle of his Tents. But in a Sea fight *Sabeb* shipwrecked, and he said, *When God disposeth any thing, it commeth to passe*, and rising againe out of the water, he said, *This is the power of the strong and wise God.* He was drawne out with Nets, and his head sent to *Hagiagi*: his heart they cut in sunder, and found it hard and compact like a stone. *Mahleb* went against the *Azrakeans* which withstood *Catrii* (their Gouernour) and slue many of them. *Catrii* fled to Tabristan whose King was *Abid* a *Magus* (*that is, of the old Persian Religion*) and obtained leaue to enter his countrey, which hauing obtained and settled his affaires, hee sent to *Abid*, demanding that either he would embrace Islamisme or pay tribute, which he refused. Whereupon he made warre on him, and chased *Abid* to Raiji, who got helpe of the Muslims, and *Catrii* was slaine. The same yeere Coines of Gold and Staters were stamped with Arabike Letters (for before the Letters were Roman, and the Staters also Persian) the inscription was, *God is the Lord. Anno* 81. *Muhammed*, Son of *Hansa* of happy memory died. But many of the vulgar beleeue that he still liueth in the Mount *Radua*, and will one day appeare and fill the Earth with Iustice, as it is now filled with iniquity. Of this Sect was *D. Hamirzeus*, which after met with a true man, who instructed him of the vanity thereof.

A.H. 76. it began April 21. 695.

Note, hard stony heart.

Arabike letters first in Coines.

Perhaps the tale of *Muhammets* returne arose from this *M.* and not their first seducer of that name.

Anno 82. *Hagiagi* had sent *Abdurrahman*, Sonne of *Muhammed* against *Zenitil* King of Turkes with a small power, secretly animating the Turke against him, purposing to destroy him; which he reuealed to his followers, who thereupon deposed *Hagiagi*, and sware to him. He compounded with the Turke, and returned to warre on *Hagiagi*. Hee obtained aide of *Abdulmelic*, out of Syria. Basra and Cufa sware to *Abdurrahman*, and his Army was a 100000.: *Hiagi* and he made 81. fights in 140. dayes. *Abdurrahman* fled and was taken at Sahan, which *Zenitil* hearing besieged *Sahan* and freed him. Hee assembled sixty thousand men, against whom went *Iezid*, and ouercame them. *Abdulmelic*, *Anno* 86. made *Walid* partner of the league, and dyed after hee had raigned one and twentie yeeres and fifteene dayes. *Walid* his Sonne prayed for him. He was very couetous, and called *Sweet-stone*. Hee dreamed that he had pissed foure times in the chiefe Temple: consulting with *Said*, Sonne of *Musabbib*, he told him that foure of his children should reigne, which came to passe in *Walid*, *Suleiman*, *Iezid* and *Hisam*. His Seale was inscribed, *I beleeue in God our Saueour*. In his time *Simon Syrus* was the Iacobite Patriarke of Alexandria, to whom the Indians sent to ordaine them a Bishop and Priests, which he refused till the Gouernour of Egypt commanded him; and then the Legate went to another which did it, whence arose great stirres. After him was *Alexander* which endured hard times. *Abdulaziz*, brother of *Abdulmelic*, the Gouernour of Egypt exacted tribute of the Monks, of each a piece of Gold. This was the first tribute exacted of them. After his time *Asama* was more cruell, killing and spoyling the people, and branding the Monkes with an Iron Ring in their hands, which round marke they which wanted had their hand cut off, of whom was a number innumerable. And whosoeuer trauelled without a Passe, should pay ten pieces of Gold or be slaine, which was exacted

Bocciu illfights

Indian Christianity.

Tribute of Monkes.

Tyrannie.

Tyrants reward.
Walid 13.
These countries lie East from the Caspian.
Bactriana Sogdiana & other countries eastwarst from Persia and the Caspian: so that from thence Northeast, and from India Southeast, his Empire extended to the Westerne Ocean without interruption onquite thorrow Africa with Spaine & part of France in Europe included, Constantinople being also tributary: the greatest Empire that euer had beene.
Temple at Damascus costly & magnificent Spaine conquered.
o Rich table.
Rodericus Toletanus saith, that *Muza* which sent *Tarie* first, came and got much riches, amongst which a table of stone, greene, very great, containing 365. foot, all of one stone together with the feet, &c.
p *Markend* calls him *Ousseggout* of *Korasm*. *Zac. Haggi* Son of *Iosiph*. Being sicke he sent for an Astrologer, which foretelling by the starres, the death of a King: he cut off his head & said he should die one houre before him.
9 This Family soone after got the *Chalifate*.
Suleiman 14.

acted of a woman whose Passe was in her Sonnes hand, whom as hee drunke of the Riuer, a Crocodile carried away, and she neuertheleſſe was forced to sell her clothes and begge that payment. But *Asama* was taken and died by torment of his iron collet and woodden fetters in the way, at the command of *Omar* the *Chalif*. But the persecution of Christians continued till the Raigne of *Hisham*. He writ for their liberty in their Rites and Priuiledges (*Iezid* his Predecessor had razed their Crosses and Temples) and commended them to *Abdalla*, whom he sent Gouernour. But he when he came into Egypt exceeded his Predecessors, doubled the tribute, and caused their persons and beasts to bee numbred, and branded the Christians with the figure of a Lion, cutting off euery mans hand which was found without it. *Hisham* therefore deposed him, and sent him into Africa, where he did likewise; 10
whereupon the people rebelled and slue his Sonne, whose heart and inwards they threw at the fathers head.

Walid was the thirteenth *Chalifa*, sixth of the house of *Ommia*, Sonne of *Abdulmelic*, Sonne of *Merwan*. Hee was surnamed *Abulabbas*. Hee was created *Chalifa*, on the day of his Fathers death. In his time were atchieued great victories. His brother *Musliman* inuaded the Romans, and tooke many captiues. *Catibas* Sonne of *Muslimas*, oppugned the Land of Baikend and Mauranahar, belieged Bochara, wonne Sogda, Fargan and Bagrar. And when the Turkes were assembled, the Muslims assaulted and tooke their chiefe City, and got great wealth. *Catibas*, Sonne of *Muslima* made peace with the King of Chouarazma, and hee built therein a Cathedrall Temple, and set a Pulpit therein, thence preaching on the Friday, 20
and prayed with the Moslims: he burned also his Idols; they were fastned with nailes of Gold weighing fifty thousand drammes. Their tribute imposed was two thousand pieces of Gold yeerely. After this hee went to Samarcand and tooke it. *Muhammed* Sonne of *Cassim* conquered India, and the Land of Sind (*or Indus*) and slue the King *Dahar*. The same yeere, *Walid* commanded the Temple of Damascus to bee builded, and the Church of the Christians consecrated to Saint *John*, to be pulled downe. He offered for the same forty thousand pieces of Gold which they refused, and therefore hee destroyed it, and gaue them nothing. Twelue thousand Masons were employed in that building: but *Walid* died before it was finished. Foure hundred Chiffs, each contayning fourteene thousand pieces of gold were bestowed thereon. In it were fixe hundred golden chaines of Lampes, the brightnesse 30
whereof hindred men from praying: which after were coloured with smoke, and remayned to the time of *Omar*, Sonne of *Abdulaziz*, who put them in the Treasury, and hanged iron chaines in their steed.

Corrah Sonne of *Sierid*, was made Gouernour of Egypt in the ninetieth yeere, a man manifestly impious, which entred the Cathedrall Temple of Mithra, with Ruffians and Gamesters, and with them sate in the Chancell in time of Prayers.

Anno 93. *Tarie* conquered Spaine and Toledo and brought to *Walid* the Table q of *Salomon*, Sonne of *David*, made of Gold and Siluer, hauing three borders (or rowes) of Pearles.

Anno 94. a great Earthquake lasted forty dayes at Antiochia, and ruined the Citie. The same yeere dyed *Zainulabidin*, Sonne of *Hussein*, Sonne of *Ali*, Sonne of *Abutalib*, which 40
was Religious and Deuout, and performed a taske of a thousand kneelings euery day, for which cause he was called *the Prayer*. He left children *Zeid* and *Muhammed Abugiafar* of happy memory.

Anno 95. dyed *Hagiagi*, r which is said to haue slaine 120000. men, besides those which hee slue in warres: and fifty thousand dyed in his Prisons, besides thirty thousand women. Eightie thousand he slue when he was full. *But his Dominion passed as if it had not beene, and happy is he which doth good.* The same yeere *Walid* cast out of Damascus, *Ali*, Sonne of *Abdalla*, Sonne of *Abbas* s and commanded him to reside at Homaim, where hee got aboue twenty Sonnes. *Anno* 97. dyed *Corrah*, Sonne of *Sierie*, Gouernour of Egypt, which builded at Misra the olde Temple: *Walid* also dyed hauing raigned nine yeeres and eight 50
moneths. He married and put away many wiues; hee is said to haue had sixtie three, and spent much on women and buildings. He built the *Temple of the Prophet*, and the Mansions adioyning, and *Omar* the Gouernour of Medina was set ouer it. Hee first built a Hospitall for sicke and strangers. His Seale, O Walid *thou shalt dye and giue an account. A.M.* 6206. and seuenty nine dayes past.

Suleiman his brother was made *Chalif* the same day. *Catibas* Gouernour of *Chorasan* inuited the Chorasans to depose him, which refused and slue him. *Suleiman* placed *Iezid*, Sonne of *Mahleb*, which obtained many victories, tooke *Tabersitan* and *Giorgian*, slaying and spoyling innumerable Infidels, and imposing tribute on the rest. *Suleiman* sent his brother *Muslima*, against the Romans which lay before Constantinople, a Seed time and Harueſt. 60
Asama writ that the measure of Nilus at Hulwan was falne, whereupon hee commanded that measure to be builded in the Iland betwixt the Riuers of Fustata and Gijza, *Anno* 97.

which

which still remayneth. *Anno* 98. *Muslima* conquered the City Sacaliba, and made himselfe Gouernour of it. *Suleiman* builded Ramla, and made *Iob* his Sonne partner of the leagues, and he dying, *Omar* Sonne of *Abdulaziz*. *Suleiman* died, *Anno* 99. and *Omar* prayed for him. He was tall, leane, slender, halting, many-wiued, and a Glutton, euery day eating about a hundred pounds. Hee was poysoned by procurement of *Iezid*, and finding himselfe like to die, he told *Muhammed* Sonne of *Ali*, Sonne of *Abdulla*, Son of *Abbas*, that the Empire would come to *Abdalla*, that is, *Saffah* his Sonne, and gaue him the Writings of vocation, and taught him what course to take. Greatgluton.

Omar Sonne of *Abdulaziz*, Sonne of *Merwan* obtained the *Chalifate* the same day. Hee took away the malediction of *Ali* of happy memory. For the Kings of the house of *Ommia* from *Muauia* hitherto, were wont to curse him in their Pulpits, in the end of all their Prayers. *Muauia* had foretold it should be so, sweaning *By God it shall not be omitted till a little one prone hoary; and when it shall be abolished, neglect of the Law shall be admitted. Omar* abolished that Curse, reading the Verse which beginneth, *God commands Iustice and Beneficences*, and men went out of the Temple saying, *the Law* is neglected. He was *Chalif* two yeeres fiue moneths and foure dayes. Hee was Iust, Deuout, Religious, preferring his Religion before worldly things. He had a Roome locked, wherein they hoped to finde money, but found nothing but a garment which hee vsed to put on, and a line to beare him vp in his Prayers. Sute was made in his time for the Temple in *Damascus* by the Christians, but because their Citie was partly taken by the Sword, partly by composition, the Church of Saint *Iohn* was left to the Mussims, the rest to the Christians, whereof *Omar* gaue them a Charter, together with all the Monasteries and the Temples without the City in Gouta, on the Hill, and the rest, to enioy and vse them without molestation of the Mussims.

Omar 15. *Chalif.* the 8. of the *Ommiades*. *Ali* cursed daily

Chalifate deuotion.

Iezid Sonne of *Abdulmelic*, was created *Chalife* on the day of *Omars* death. *Iezid* Sonne of *Mahleb* rebelled, and went to Cufa with many followers, but was slaine in battell by the aduerse Army, and his head sent to the *Chalif*. *Muauia* his Sonne succeeded in quarrell, went to Basora, and by Sea to Cundabil, into Sindia. But Cundabil forbade him to land, and *Mussima* sent an Armada by Sea vnder *Halal*, which ouerthrew them. *Omar* Sonne of *Habir* sent and inuaded the Turkes, tooke *Mulaabar*, and pursued their King from Towne to Towne to Ardebil, in the Countrey of Aderbigian, where was fought a great battell, and *Gierrah* the Commander with many Mussims were slaine. *Iezid* died, *Anno* 105. hauing raigned foure yeeres and one moneth. Hee spent much on Wiues, Playes and Spectacles. Hee had two women *Habab* and *Selam*, whom hee much affected. *Habab* died, and hee kept her till she stunke, and when she was buried tooke her vp againe, and not long after dyed.

Iezid 16. Rebellion.

Armada.

Loue odious.

Hisham Sonne of *Abdulmelic*, was made *Chalife* the same day, the fiue and twentieth of *Saban*, *Anno* 113. *Muslima* tooke Townes of the Turkes, many captiues and rich spoyles. *Muauia* and his brother *Suleiman*, sonnes of *Hisham* went one on the right hand, the other on the left, and *Constantine* the Roman Emperour met them with an Army, which was put to flight by the Mussims, and *Constantine* taken. *Anno* 117. *Ali*, the Grandfather of the *Abassian Chalifs* dyed, leauing two and twenty children.

Hisham 17.

Anno 121. *Zeid* Sonne of *Hussein*, Sonne of *Ali*, Sonne of *Abutalib*, sought to make himselfe Emperour, and the Citizens of Cufa sware to him. But *Omar* Sonne of *Ioseph* resisted, slue, crucified and burned him. *Mussima* inuaded the Romans, and tooke *Cutamun*. *Merwan* tooke and wasted Seridches, and forced the Prince to Tribute. *Anno* 122. dyed *Mussima* Sonne of *Abdulmelic*, a wise and valiant Prince beyond any of the children of *Ommia*. *Anno* 125. *Hisham* dyed, hauing reigned nineteene yeeres, seuen monethes and eleuen dayes. He well ruled and obserued the things which passed his hands, but was couetous, enuious, and spoyled his Subiects, to needlesse expenses. He had Curtaines, Vests and Wardrobes which none had before him: his Vests are said to be six hundred Camels lode: hee left a thousand paire of Breeches, and ten thousand Shirts. He had seuen hundred Vestries. But when hee died, *Walid* Sonne of *Iezid* had not to wrap him in, for all his Wardrobes were sealed vp, and none permitted to enter; so that a seruant of his was faine to shroud him; an example worthy wise mens obseruation. *Anno Mundi* 6234. and 162. dayes.

A.H. 121. began Dec. 18. 738. Rebellion.

First and great Wardrobes.

Anno 120. *Abnachaiyl* in the yeere of *Diocletian* 460. was made Patriarch of Alexandria, and continued three and twentie yeeres. In his time *Merwan* the *Chalife* sect *Abdulmelic*, Sonne of *Moses* a Iew turned to Islamisme ouer Egypt, who demanded money of the Patriarch, and after emprisonment, permitted him to begge with his Bishops thorow the Prouinces: They returned into Egypt, the one and twentieth of the moneth *Tuba*, on which night was so great an Earthquake that many Cities buried their Inhabitants in the ruines, and many ships were drowned in the Sea. It went through all the East, and in one night ruined sixe hundred Cities, and killed innumerable men and beasts. When the King of Nubia named *Cosmacus* vnderstood what had happened to the Patriarch, hee went toward Egypt

Terrible earthquakes.

Note the greatnesse of the Kings of Nubia in those dayes. Note, of the different Patriarches at Alexandria.

with a 100000. blacke horsemen on blacke horses: and before hee was entred, *Abdulmelic* the Gouernour sent to the Patriarch to write to the King of Nubia, which hee did, signifying that the Christians were now in good case; and so he returned without battell. *Cosmas* was Alexandrian Patriarch of the Orthodoxe Christians which prayed in the Church of Saint *Saba*, all other Churches being vnder the Iacobites, till vpon complaint and gifts to *Hisham*, they got the *Temple of the Gospell*. Thus saith *Said*, Sonne of *Batric* in his historie, and also, that the Orthodoxe had beene without a Patriarch ninetie seuen yeeres, from the time of *Omar* the Conquerour, till this *Cosma*, which was an vnlearned man, not able to write or reade, a Needle-man. The Iacobites meane while possessed all the Sees in Egypt and Nubia,

Walid 18.

Walid Sonne of *Iezid*, Sonne of *Abdulmelic* was created *Chalife* the same day his Vncle *Hisham* dyed, and was slaine *Anno* 126. for his manifest infidelitie and impietie: his two Sonnes were imprisoned, and after slaine. He raigned one yeere two moneths and two and twenty dayes. He was an excellent Poet, but applying all his thoughts to wantonnesse. He made him an iron Tombe, wh ch in his Pilgrimage hee determined to set vp in *Caab*. Hee tooke with him to Mecca hounds in cages, and wine. Hee deflowred a woman of his in his drunkennesse, and promised that shee should pray in the presence of men, which she did with her face couered. He filled a pond with wine and water, and sent for *Maabad* the Singer, to sing whiles hee bathed and dranke therein. After *Walids* death the Regions were embroyled, the *Chawarijians* multiplyed, and the Kingdome of the children of *Ommia* weakned by reason thereof.

Women not permitted to pray with men.

Iezid 19.

Iezid Sonne of *Walid*, Sonne of *Abdulmelic*, Sonne of *Merwan*, was the twelfth *Chalife* of that house. *Emessa* rebelled vpon the death of *Walid*, and put to flight *Iezids* Army. *Suleiman* Sonne of *Hisham* spoyled *Naamia*, and went to Damascus: the people of Palestina slue their Gouernour. *Merwan* Sonne of *Mahammed* rebelled, pretending the reuenge of *Walid*, and *Iezid* gaue him the gouernment of Mesopotamia, Armenia, Mausul and Adebigiana, on condition to sweare to him, which hee did at Harran. *Iezid* dyed that yeere of the Plague, hauing raigned fiue moneths. His brother *Ibrahim* prayed for him. He diminished the Souldiers stipends, was prone to the Sect *Cadratica*: was after digged out of his graue, and crucified by *Merwan*.

Rebellion.

Ibrahim 20.

Ibrahim Sonne of *Walid* his brother, was the same day made *Chalifa*, *Anno* 126. but *Anno* 127. *Merwan* sought to get the Empire, pretending the reuenge of *Walids* death, and ouerthrew *Suleiman*, which came against him with a hundred and twenty thousand, and caused men to sweare to *Walids* children, then remayning in Prison, whereupon *Suleiman* caused them at his returne to Damascus to be killed, their names were *Hakem* and *Otsman*. Vpon pretence that *Hakem* had said that *Merwan* should succeed if he and his brother were slaine, *Merwan* was made *Chalif*, and *Ibrahim* after sixty nine dayes raigne deposed, which liued till, *Anno* 132. and then was slaine. He was called *Himar-vligidzira*, the Asse of Mesopotamia, because he could not flee in the time of battell. *Anno* 127. the Emissens rebelled but were ouer-throwne, and their wals rased, and 600. of their citizens crucified. Damascus deposed his Gouernour also, and those of Basra created *Suleiman Chalifa*, but *Merwan* ouerthrew him in battell, and slue 30000. of his men. At *Cufa*, *Abdalla* sought the *Chalifate*, but was chased thence to the Mountaines. *Merwan* was slaine, as shall after appeare. He was a Glutton, and when a sheepe came to his hands, he could not forbeare, but would thrust his hand and sleeue into the sheeps belly, and take out the Kidneyes to eate them, & then to change his garment: of such garments greased with the fat of the Kidnies, he is said to haue left aboue 10000. Hee was politike, valiant, magnanimous and prudent. But fortune being crosse, great spirit and wisdome preuaile not: as it is said, *Fortune approching comes fastned with ten fetters, but going backe she goeth, no chaines can hold her.*

Merwan 21. & 14. of the house of *Ommia*.

Merwans gluttony.

Lib. 21

THe first Prince of the children of *Abbas* was *Mahammed* Sonne of *Ali*, Sonne of *Abdalla*, Sonne of *Abbas* in the 100. yeere hee dyed *A.* 125. and left twelue Sonnes. The calling happened to him in *Chorasan*, and succeeded to his Sonne *Ibrahim*. He sent *Abumuslim* surnamed *Abdurrahman*, into *Corasan*, and writ to those which followed his Sect to obey him. He deliuered the Letters to *Suleiman*, and presently published the vocation of the *Hasemides*, and tyed a Banner on a staffe or Speare nine cubits long, sent from *Ibrahim*, which they call *Tallum*. And he and all of that Sect put on blacke garments on the day of the greater Feast. And *Abumuslim* prayed the Prayer of the Feast before Prayer (time) without conuocation or rayfing vp, contrary to the course of the children of *Ommia*. Thus *Abumuslim* encreased, and *Nasr* Gouernour of *Chorasan* vnder *Merwan* decreased. Hee seeing these beginnings, writ to *Walid*, Sonne of *Iezid*,

I see mongst embers sparkes of coles, we to shee if they burne:

Wand

Wood makes fire flame, words doe the same; to warres they after turne:
Sleepes or wakes Ommias? *Speake it No, my mazed verse doth mourne.*

But finding no helpe *Nasr* fled, and *Abumussim* spoyled his Army: and set *Cabtabas* ouer the Army, who fought many battels with *Nasr*, and slue and tooke thirty thousand of his men. *Nasr.* died, *Anno* 131. *Merwan* tooke *Ibrahim* and slue him, who had before commanded his brother *Saffah Abulabbas* to goe to *Cufa*, and written to his followers that he should be *Chalifa* after him.

Anno 132. *Cabtabas* ouerthrew *Iezid*, Gouernour of *Irac* vnder *Merwan*, and passing ouer Euphrates very early, the Riuer being encreased he was drowned, and *Humid* his Sonne commanded the Armie. The same yeere at *Cufa*, *Muhammed* Sonne of *Ali* the *Corsican* called the Haliemites to the Empire. The men of *Cufa* sware to *Abumussimas* Son of *Halab*, which was also called *Muhammed* the *Counsellour of Religion*. The same yeere *Saffah* and *Abugiafar Almansor* came to *Cufa*, and had lodgings assigned them by *Abumussimas* the Counsellor which concealed the same forty dayes, minding to transferre the Empire to the house of *Abutalib*.

Abdalla Saffah Abulabbas Sonne of *Muhammed*, Sonne of *Ali*, Sonne of *Abdalla*, Sonne of *Abbas*, Sonne of *Abdulmutalib*, Sonne of *Hasiem*, was the three and twentieth *Chalifa*, and first of the children of *Abbas*. One saluted him *Chalifa*, and the people sware to him: which *Abumussimas* seeing saluted him also, which *Humid* laid was done against his will. Being inaugurated, he ascended the Pulpit in blacke garments, and made a speech to the people. He sent his Vncle *Abdalla* against *Merwan*, which put him to flight, innumerable numbers of his Souldiers being slain and drowned. *Abdalla* pursued him from place to place, and pitched his Tents in Iordan. He assembled many of the children of *Ommia*, pretending to take their Oath of Fealty, and when aboue eighty of them were together, he set a Souldier by each of them with a club in his hand, and at a token giuen they were all killed. Then did he cause them to be drawne and laid in order, and spreading a Carpet ouer them, sate thereon with his followers, and called for victuals and did eate, hearing their groues till they were quite dead. *Abdalla* said, *For the day of* Husein *and for nothing else. Damascus* was forced, *Walid* the Gouernour killed, and the Citie put to the spoyle three dayes. *Merwan* fled into Egypt, and was there taken and killed by *Saleh*, which sent to *Saffah* his head, who thereupon fell downe in adoration, and gaue ten thousand pieces of Gold to the poore, saying, Prayse to God which hath deliuered to vs the Asse of Mesopotamia. This was done after one hundred and thirty one yeeres, and threescore and thirteene dayes of the *Hegira* 6241. of the yeere of the Sunne, and sixty three dayes.

Abdalla 22.

O Cruelty!

Abumussim the Authour of the vocation with others, laid wait for *Abumussimas*, Son of *Halal* the Counsellor, and slue him by command of *Saffah*, because he fought to rayse the the Abulatabites. *Saffah* promised securitie also to *Iezid*, Sonne of *Omar*, but after sent one to slay him, for seeking to preferre to the Empire *Abdalla* Sonne of *Hasen*, Sonne of *Husein*, Sonne of *Ali*, Sonne of *Abutalib*. *Saffah* now established, set *Abugiafar Almansor* ouer Aderbigiana, Armenia and Mesopotamia, *Iabia* his brother ouer *Mausil*, his Vncle *David* ouer Higiazi and Aliaman, his Vncle *Isa* ouer Cufa, *Sofian* ouer Basra, *Muhammed* ouer Persia, *Mansor* ouer India and Sinde, *Abumussim* ouer Chorasan, *Abdalla* his Vncle ouer Syria, and his Vncle *Saleh* ouer Egypt, who ruled it by his Lieutenant *Abaun*. *Abdalla* returning from Ramla to *Damascus* digged vp the children of *Ommia*, and burned them: and to the corpse of *Hasiem* at Rusaf, he gaue a hundred and twenty blowes till his flesh was dispersed, which then was gathered together and burned. *A.* 136. *Saffah* died after he had reigned foure yeeres and nine moneths His brothers Sonne *Isa* prayed for him. Hee gaue to *Abdalla* Sonne of *Hasen*, Sonne of *Husein* two Millions of *Staters*, the first of the *Chalifa's* that had giuen so great a summe. He was the first also which tooke a Counsellor, for the children of *Ommia* had none but Scribes. When *Merwan* fled into Egypt, in the yeere of *Diocletian* * 467. the Christians suffered much aduersitie. He burned Misra with the Corne and prouisions therein, and went ouer with his into a Nunnery, where eying a beutifull Damsell, he tooke her to his Tent to deflowe her. She to saue her Virginitie, told him of a precious Oyntment which she had, which would make the annointed part Sword-free. But how, sayd he, shall I know the? he offered the trial on her selfe, and so he cut off her head, rather embracing death then pollution.

Abugiafar Almansor Sonne of *Muhammed*, brother of *Saffah* succeeded, and was made *Chalifa* in the Pilgrimage to Mecca, ouer which his brother had set him; in a place called Sifia, that is, *famous*, and *Our Empire*, saith he, *by Gods grace shall be famous*. He tooke the oath and finished his Pilgrimage, *Anno* 137. *Abdalla* fought the Empire in Syria, and *Almansor* sent against him *Abumussim* the author of the vocation, and after many battels *Abumussim* preuailed, and *Abdalla* fled into Irac, he to Basra, his brother to Cufa. After that vnder

* The Egyptians reckon from this yeere because of the multitude of Martyrs then slaine; & call it the yeere of the Martyrs.

Abugiafar 23.

pre-

Huge slaughters.

pretence of friendship he sent for *Abumuslim*, and cast him into Tigris. The number of those which were slaine in battell and out of battell in time of *Abumuslims* Prosperitie were six hundred thousand. He professed the Sect of the *Succession descendent*, and determined the Principality after *Ali* to descend to *Hasen* his Sonne, then to *Husein*, then to *Muhammed* Sonne of *Hanfia*, from him to *Abuhasem* his Sonne, then to *Muhammed* Sonne of *Ali*, Son of *Abdalla*, Sonne of *Abbas*, from him to *Ibrahim*, *Saffah*, and this *Almansor*. An. 139. *Muaui* Sonne of *Hisham*, Sonne of *Abdulmelic*, Sonne of *Merwan* entred Spaine, and was the first made Emperour in those parts. The same yeere *Almansor* commanded the Temple of Mecca to be enlarged, An. 144. *Almansor* tooke *Abdalla* Sonne of *Hasen*, Sonne of *Husein*, Sonne of *Ali*, and other of *Hasens* children, and *Muhammed* Sonne of *Omar*, and imprisoned them because he had heard that *Muhammed* and *Ibrahim* Sonnes of *Abdalla*, fought to get the Empire. These two hid themselues, but the other *Muhammed* was whipped and died in Prison.

Muaui of the Merwanian or Ommian race Emp in Spaine

An 145. *Almansor* commanded to build the City Bagdad, and laid the foundation at the time designed by Astrologers, with vnanimous consent. It is reported to haue beene a greene Medow, in which was the cottage of an Heremite, whose name was *Bagdad*, and thereof tooke the name. But *Almansor* called it *Medinate-sselami*, that is, the Citie of Peace. When it was finished, it was made the Seat of the Abbasian *Chalifas*. The same yeere *Muhammed* Sonne of *Abdalla*, Sonne of *Hasen* went to Medina, and was there created *Chalifa*: he tooke to name *Mahad*, and had a hundred thousand followers. But *Almansor* sent against him his partner of the league *Isa*, which slue him and sent his head to *Almansor*. *Ibrahim* his Brother appeared at Basra, and enioyed that Citie, and Persia and Ahwaz, but ranne like course and was slaine by *Isa*.

Bagdad built. *Mirkond* saith it had that name of *Bag*, a Persian word with hignifieth garden, because of many gardens in that place before the building. *Scaliger* conceit that it is Seleucia is by both excluded. I Or pits which *Mamon* digged in that desert. Rapacity.

An. 147. *Abdalla* whom *Abumuslim* had put to flight, came forth vpon *Almansors* Oath not to trouble him, and he commanded to build him an house, and to lay much salt in the foundation, and when he dwelled in it, let in water which ruined the house vpon him. An. 158. *Almansor* dyed at Birmaimon [1] in his way to Mecca on Pilgrimage: and *Ibrahim* Son of *Iabia*, prayed for him *(or in his steed)* he was buried at Mecca, he reigned two and twenty yeeres, hee changed the hoary colour of his haire with two thousand drammes of Muske euery moneth hee was wise, and of pleasant conuersation, suspicious and cruell, and foriddly couetous. Hee left in his Treasury six hundred Millions of Staters, and twenty foure Millions of Gold.

Mu. Mahadi 24

Muhammed Mahadi Sonne of *Almansor* was the third *Chalifa* of the Abasians created at Mecca, himselfe being then at Bagdad. *Ioseph* Sonne of *Ibrahim*, rose against him in Cherasan, but was taken by *Iezid*, and by *Mahadi* crucified at Bagdad. An. 163. he sent his Son *Haron* against the Romans, and made *Iabia* his Counsellour. Hee sent him against the next yeere: he ouerthrew the Romans, and went to the Sea neere Constantinople, where a woman [m] then gouerned which made Peace with *Haron*, conditioning to pay seuenty thousand pieces of Gold yeerely, besides Presents and preparations of the wayes. The Muslims in this warre got innumerable spoyles. When *Haron* returned, his Father made him partner of the league, hauing deposed *Isa* from that Dignity. An. 169. *Mahadi* dyed in Maseidan a Village, and when they had no other Herse, they carried him on a doore, and buried him vnder a Nut Tree where he had sitten. He reigned ten yeeres, two moneths. *Haron* his Sonne prayed for him. He was liberall and abstained from shedding of bloud, restored much money which his Father had taken, freed Prisoners, built the Cloyster at Mecca, and enlarged the Temple. *Merwan* a Poet offered him a Poeme containing seuenty Distichs, for which he commanded to giue him seuenty thousand Staters. His Seale was inscribed, *God is my sufficience.*

[m] *Prene. Seq.*

Bounty to Poets.

Mu. Alhadi 25.

Musa Alhadi then in the warres of *Giorgian* with the Tabristans was inaugurated, hee dyed An. 170. being strangled by his Mother sitting on a Pillow laid on his face: he reigned a yeere and fifty two dayes.

Haron 26.

Abugiafar Haron Rasid was the fifth of the Abasian *Chalifas*, created on the day of his brothers death, on which also *Almamon* his Sonne (afterward *Chalifa*) was borne. He made *Iabia* his Counsellour, called him *his Father*, and said to him, *I put my businesse from my necke on thine.*

An. 172. *Abdurrahman* Sonne of *Muaui*, Sonne of *Hisham* King of Spaine dyed, hauing raigned thirty two yeeres; and his Sonne *Hisham* succeeded him in the *Chalifate* of those parts.

An. 176. *Iabia* Sonne of *Abdalla*, Sonne of *Hasen*, Sonne of *Husein*, Sonne of *Ali* arrogated the Empire. But the matter was composed by *Haron*, and gifts with securitie giuen; yet hee was after that cast in Prison. An. 178. *Haron* sent *Haximan* Gouernour of Egypt into Africa, and set *Abdulmelic* ouer Egypt, who appointed in his place ouer

Prayer,

Prayer, [1] and tribute *Abdalla*. An. 179. *Haron* went to Mecca and to Medina, and returned thence on his feet.

An. 180. *Hisham* King of Spaine dyed, and his Sonne *Hakem* succeeded. An. 181. *Haron* inuaded the Romans, and got much spoyle. An. 182. the Harati, from *the Gate of Gates* ensued and did much hurt to the Muslims. *Musa* dyed that yeere, of the Race of *Ali*, as was reported, murthered by one whom *Haron* had suborned. Hee left eighteene Sonnes and three and twenty Daughters. An. 186. *Haron* and his Sonnes went on Pilgrimage to Mecca, and gaue much almes there and to Medina. He distributed his Empire to his three Sons, *Muhammed Alamin*, *Abdalla Almamon*, and *Casim Mutamam*. Hee appointed a *Alamin* his Successor, and gaue him Irac and Syria; appointed *Abdalla* to succeed him, and gaue him all from Hamadan to the vtmost East, to *Casim*, Mesopotamia, Tiligour and *Awasim*. An. 187. *Giafar* Sonne of *Iahia* was slaine, and his father cast into Prison where he dyed, hauing this scroll in his bosom, *The Defendant goeth before being called into the Law, the Plaintiffe followeth; and the Iudge shall need no witnesse*, which when *Haron* read hee wept, and sware it was true.

1 The *Chalifes* where they resided praised in their own persons; and in others Prouinces their Lieutenants. Their hypocrie condemneth others profanenesse which think *treasons* Priests (the basest of the people) good enough for Prayers, and themselues too good to be present; a thing performed fiue times a day by the greatest *Mahumedans*.

The same yeere hee went as farre as Heraclea spoyling and firing all things: and *Nicephorus* the Emperour offered him yeerely tribute which he accepted: but vpon occasion of the cold and snow he performed not couenants, whereupon hee returned notwithstanding, and forced performance. An. 188. he againe inuaded the Romans, and in a great battell with *Nicephorus*, the Muslims preuayled and slue forty thousand, and *Nicephorus* received three wounds. An. 190. he inuaded the Romans with a hundred thirty fiue thousand besides voluntaries, and tooke and burned Heraclea, Sacaliba, Rafia and Saffaf, with Coloniz. Hee carried away sixteene thousand captiues of Heraclea. *Nicephorus* bought his Peace with Tribute. Hee sent by Sea also and wasted Cyprus, and carried away many captiues. Hee dyed An. 193. when hee had reigned three and twenty yeeres, one moneth and nineteene dayes. He was exceedingly delighted with good Verses, and was bountifull to Poets. Hee made eight or nine Pilgrimages in his *Chaliphate*, and prayed a hundred kneelings or prostrations euery day. A hundred learned men accompanied him in his Pilgrimages. And when he went not himselfe, he set forth three hundred men on Pilgrimage, with sufficient expenses and cleane garments. Nor was the Court of any *Chalife* so furnished with Counsellours, Iudges, Poets, and learned men. His Seale was inscribed, *Greatnesse and Power are Gods*. Hee gaue his Physician a Christian, a hundred thousand *Staters* a yeere stipend, for sauing his life by bloud-letting; the same pay which his *Keeper* had, saying, One keepes my body, the other my soule.

His pilgrimage

Learned men.

A. 193. *Abuna Marke* was made Patriarch, which receiued those of the Sect of *Sueusa*; two of their Bishops desiring admission; and vpon their humility he entertained them in his house till two Bishops dyed in whose places he set them.

Abu-Abdalla Alamin called also *Muhammed Abu-Musa*, Sonne of *Haron Rasid* was the next, and sixth Abasian *Chalif*, created on the day of his Fathers death. But *Rasid* had renewed the league to his Son *Almamon* after *Alamin*, who behaued himselfe so well, whiles *Alamin* gaue himselfe to play and drinking that the chiefe men fauoured him. Yet *Alamin* burned the Couenants of his Father, and assumed his own Sonne *Musa* partner of the league. *Almamon* hereupon forbade his brothers name to be stamped in money or cloth and all Chorasan yeelded to him, and he named himselfe a Prince, and prayed in the Pulpits of Chorasan. An. 195. a great battell was fought, and the followers of *Almamon* preuayled, whereupon he was saluted *Chalifa*, An. 196. *Alamin* was deposed and imprisoned with his Mother *Zobeida*, but soone after by popular commotion restored. But *Tahir* the Generall of *Almamons* forces taking *Abwaz*, *Wasit*, *Madain*, and causing men to sweare to *Almamon*, Egypt, Syria, *Elgiaza* and *Alamin* called him to the Empire.

Abu-Abdalla Alamin.

Alamin 27.

An. 197. Bagdad was besieged, and most of the houses ruined. A. 198. *Alamin* was forsaken by most of his Souldiers, and as he fled, his Boate was ouerturned, and the men with him drowned, but he escaping swamme into a certaine Garden, and was there slaine by *Tahers* Seruant. The Ring of the *Chalifate*, the Rolls and the Scepter were sent to *Almamon*, which fell downe and gaue God great thankes for the victory, and gaue a Million of *Staters* to the messenger. *Alamin* reigned foure yeeres, eight moneths and eighteene dayes. He was liberall, bloudy, inconsiderate, cowardly. He neyther left his Angling nor Cheese-play vpon the heauiest tydings or occasions, and was a drinker of wine.

Zacheokos excellent Physicians in his time *Gabriel Sarianus*, *Iohn* Son of *Masawais*, and *Sela an Indian*. *Almamon* 8. *Z. Mam en. Mahamun*. He was studious of learned men, and caused the Books of Philosophy, Mathematicks, Astrologie and Physicke to be translated out of Greeke and Syriake into Arabike.

Abulabbas Almamon called also *Abugiafar Abdalla* was the seuenth Abasian *Chalif*, inaugurated, An. 198. An. 199. The Tabites made commotion in diuers places, and at Cufa arose *Muhammed* Sonne of *Ibrahim*, Sonne of *Ismael*, Sonne of *Ibrahim*, Sonne of *Hasan*, Sonne of *Hussein*, Sonne of *Ali*, Sonne of *Abutalib*: inuiting the people to respect the stock of *Muhammed*, and to obserue the Booke and the Law: *Abusaraia* warring in his name. And the Chawarisians came forth. Many battels followed by *Abusaraia* preuayled, which went

to

*A.H.200. it began Aug. 11. A.D 815.

to Basra and tooke it, but in the yeere * 200. was slaine: and *Muhammed* was dead, and another *Muhammed* of the Pogenie of *Ali* inaugurated in his place, which was taken and sent to *Almamon*. At Mecca also *Muhammed* Sonne of *Giafar*, and in *Allaman*, *Ibrahim*, made insurrection which succeeded not. An. 201. *Almamon* assumed *Ali* Sonne of *Musa*, Sonne of *Giafar*, Sonne of *Muhammed*, Sonne of *Husein*, Sonne of *Ali* into partnership of the league, and to the succession of the *Chalifate*, and called him *Arrad of Muhammeds stocke*, and commanded the Souldiers to weare greene, and cast away their blackes: and writ to *Hasen*, to procure his inauguration at Bagdad, but they refused to transferre the succession from the Abasian stock to that of *Ali*: and thereupon the Hasemides and Captaines determined to depose *Almamon*, and to make his Vncle *Ibrahim*, *Chalifa*. This they did, An. 202. and named him *Mubaric*, who ascending the Pulpit, made a speech to the people, and promised them bounty; he enjoyed Bagdad and Cufa, with their Villages. *Almamon* hearing of these commotions in Irac, went towardes Bagdad, and considering that *Fadlus* his swaying all things occasioned his distaste, he caused him closely to be slain in a Bath, & then killed the murtherer, sayning that he had no hand in it. This *Fadlus* first added surnames in Letters: for before the inscriptions of Epistles were only from *N.* Son of *N.* to *N.* Son of *N.*

Surnames first.

An. 203. *Almamon* came to Tus, where *Ali* Sonne of *Musa*, after the eating of a Grape suddenly died, poysoned as was suspected, yet *Almamon* seemed to take his death heavily. This *Ali* was very abstinent and religious. At Bagdad the Souldiers rebelled against *Ibrahim*, who hid himself. An. 204. *Almamon* came to Bagdad clothed in greene, as also his Souldiers, but after a weeke he ware blacke ¶ and commanded the People so to doe. An. 205. *Hakem* Sonne of *Hisham*, Sonne of *Abdurrahman* King of Spaine dyed, and his Sonne *Abdurrahman* succeeded. He had reigned sixe and twenty yeeres. An. 207. *Taher* dyed, a wise, valiant and liberall Commander, and a good Poet. For three Verses made to adorne him he gaue three hundred thousand pieces of Gold, and more (said he) would I haue giuen if thou hadst giuen more.

¶ Of this City *Tus* was the Transltator of *Euclides* Elements, lately printed in Arabike at *Rome*.

An. 210. *Almamon* got his Vncle *Ibrahim* into his hands; who comming to him is sayd,

My sinne is great, but thou then it art greater,
My deeds were bad, let thine be seene farre better.

Almamon answered, *Others haue counselled me to killthee:* O Emperour of the faithfull, said he, *Counsellors counsell that which is vsuall in gouernment, but thou beggest help of him who giueth all of mercie. If thou punishest, thou shalt haue example, but if thou spparest, thou shalt be good beyond example.* Hee gaue him ten thousand pieces of Gold and dismissed him in Peace. An. 212. *Almamon* published the speech according to the forme of the Alcoran, and the correcting of *Ali* Sonne of *Abutalib*, which had bettered the forme after the messenger of God. An. 213. hee gaue to *Abbas Mutasim* and *Abdalla*, fiue hundred thousand pieces of Gold to each in one day. An. 215. and 216. he inuaded the Romans. An. 217. One of the children of *Ommia* writ to him that *Merwan* had treasures hidden in Hebron, where some chiefe were found, and amongst other things ten thousand shirts with foule sleeues, the reason whereof being asked, *Asmagaus* sayd, that he was a Glutton, and when a rosted sheepe was set before him, he vsed to thrust in his hand, sleeue and all for the Kidneyes *(as before is said)* and then to hauc put on another garment. *Almamon* gaue to *Asmagaus* those shirts, which he sold for so many pieces of Gold. An. 218. *Almamon* tryed the People in the forme of the Alcoran, grieuously punishing those which would not vtter it. He dyed hauing reigned twenty yeeres, fiue moneths and thirteene dayes. None of the Abbasians were more learned. He was skilfull in Astronomy, and the winds; and one wind beareth name of him. His Seale was inscribed, *Asks of God and he will giue thee.*

Ali correction of the Alcoran 1500000. giuen.

See before in *Merwan*. It seemeth they rosted theirsheep whole, and not cut out in iointes.

Muhammed Mutasim Billa, *Abusphac* his brother, was created *Chalifa*, on the day of his brothers death. An. 218. The Horrim zans, a vile and heretical Nation, made insurrection, lead by *Babec*. But *Mutasim* sent an Army against them, which killed sixty thousand of them, and the rest fled to the Roman Dominions. An. 219. *Muhammed* Sonne of *Casim*, Sonne of *Omar*, Sonne of *Ali*, Sonne of *Husein*, Sonne of *Ali* had many followers, made many battels, but at last was taken.

Mutasim 29. *Z. Mutteqem*, a great louer of Physicians. *M. Mascon* He built Samarra three miles from Tigris N. from Bagdad.

An. 220. the children of *Babec* lost aboue a hundred thousand in battell in Arsaw, and *Babec* fled to Badwa, which Citie *Asfin* besieged and tooke, and gaue security to *Babec*, but killed him notwithstanding. An. 223. Ammoria was taken, and great spoyle made in the Roman Regions.

An. 224. *Barabas* Sonne of *Caran* made insurrection, and after many battels was taken by *Abdalla* Sonne of *Taher*, who sent him to *Mutasim* which beate him to death, and then crucified him besides *Babec*. An. 226. *Asfin* was added to them: for in his house were found Idols and wicked Bookes, neither had he altered his Paganisme. An. 227. *Mutasim* dyed at Samarra. Hee was strong, able to carry certaine pieces a thousand pound weight. Bagdad was

Idols hated.

Mutasims strength.

was not able to containe his Souldiers, and therefore he built Samarra, and placed his Souldiers there. And Samarra remayned the Seat of the *Chalifas* till *Mutadid* reigned, which remooued to Bagdad, as the after *Chalifas* also did. *Mutifim* was vnlettered and could not write. He was called *Octauian*, for that the number of eight agreed to him eleuen wayes: he was the eight *Chalifa* of the Abbasians, created, An.218. reigned eight yeeres, eight monethes and eight dayes, aged forty eight yeere[h] [illegible]ene also in the eight moneth of the yeere, his Fathers eight Son, left eight Sons and eight [illegible]ughters, fought eight battels, and left eight Millions of Gold in his Treasury, and eighty th[illegible]and *Staters*. He dyed in the yeere of the Sunne 6333. and a hundred and thirty dayes compleate.

10 An. 223. and of *Dioclesian* 547. *Anna Ioseph* was made Patriarch of Alexandria. In his time *Iacob* a Bishop in Æthiopia, when the King was abroad in Warre was displaced by the Queene, and another substituted in his place. But Drought and Pestilence followed, and the King sent to the Patriarch, to send backe the Bishop, which hee did: and hee was receiued with great ioy. Hee sent also Bishops into Africa to Pentapolis and Carawan.

Haron Wacic Billa Abugiafar, was the ninth of the Abasians, and 30. King of the Muslims, created on the day of his Fathers death at Samarra. An. 227. And An.228. hee remooued his Iudges and Scribes, and tooke of them much money.

A.230. *Abdalla* Son of *Taher* deceassed, an honorable and valiant man, which had bin Governour of Chorasan, Egypt and Syria, to whom was great resort of learned men and Poets, to whom he was very bountifull. *Wacic* seeking to increase his abilitie for lust, was aduised 20 to eate Lions flesh boyled in red Vineger, and to take three drammes thereof; but he dyed soone after he had vsed it. Stretching his sicke body on a Carpet he said, *O thou whose kingdome passeth not, haue mercy on him whose Kingdome passeth away.* He loued and rewarded Poesie. Hee propounded to men the forme of the Alcoran as *Almamon* had done, and alienated mens minds from him. He reigned fiue yeeres, mine monethes and sixe dayes.

Giafar Abusadi Mutewakkel Aballa Wacics brother succeeded, An.231. They first put on the *Chalifate* Robes on *Muhammed* Sonne of *Wacic*, but then contemning his childhood, the Iudge *Ahmed* sent for *Giafar*, Sonne of *Mutasim*, and clothed him with a long garment, and kissed him betwixt both his eyes, saluting him *Emperour of the faithfull*, and surnaming 30 him *Mutewakkel*. He imprisoned *Muhammed* his Counsellor, and appointed one to keepe him waking, and after some dayes watching permitted him to sleepe, which he did a day and a night, and then put him into a hot Iron Ouen, hauing nayles within, and there tortured him to death. He was a Grammarian and Poet, but preud, shamelesse, couetous and merciless, being accustomed to say that [i] *Mercy was a certaine imbecilitie in nature*, and that *Liberalitie was foolishnesse.*

An.235. *Mutewakkel* appointed his Sonne *Mustansir Billa* his Successor, after him *Mutaz Billa*, after that *Muayad Billa*, giuing to each two Banners, one black, which was the Banner of the league (or couenant) the other white, of their place of gouernment, assigning to *Mustansir* Africa, and all the West from Egypt; also Kinnasrin, Awasim, Syria, Mesopo- 40 tamia, Diarbecr, Diarebia, Musil, Habeb, Aiat, Chabur, Karkisia, Tecrit, the Region of Tigris, Mecca and Medina, Aliamao, Hadramat, Iamam, Bahrain, Sindia, and adioyning thereto Alwaz, Sacalas, Samarra, Cufa, Mafeidan, Hazran, Siahruzar, Comma, Casan and Giebel. To *Mutaz* hee assigned Chorasan, Tabtistan, Raija, Persia, Armenia, and Aderbigian; the Mints also, and his name to be stamped in all Coines. To *Muayad* hee assigned the Prouinces of Damascus, Emessa, Iardan, and Palæstina.

A.238. *Abdurrahman* King of Spaine died & his Son *Muhammed* succeeded. In the yeere 241. and 242. the Romans inuaded and carried away Muslims captiues. This yeere were terrible Earthquakes, which oppressed forty fiue thousand men, most of them in Damijs. In Persia also Chorasan, and Syria, Earthquakes and vnusuall sounds happened, and in Aliaman, 50 with great destruction.

An.245. also were terrible Earthquakes, and the Springs of Mecca failed, so that a bottle of water was sold for a hundred *Staters*. Many were oppressed with an Earthquake at Antiochia, and fifteene hundred houses, and ninetie Towres of the wall fell thereby: the people tanne into the fields, and Acraus the Hill there fell into the Sea, a blacke and vnsauoury smoke ascending thence. The Riuer also vanished for a farlang.

An.246. *Omar* inuaded the Romans, and carried thence seuentie thousand captiues: others also in other places. *Mutewakkel* hauing prayed and preached before the people, the last Friday in *Ramadan*, at his returne reproued his Sonne *Mustansir*, and threatned him and his Mother, who thereupon set his Seruants to kill him. A principall cause hereof was *Mu-* 60 *tewakkels* hatred to *Ali* Sonne of *Abutalib*, which *Mustansir* could not beare. Hee reigned fourteene yeeres, ten monethes and three dayes. He tooke away the temptation [k] from men and the World was ordered.

B. of the Ethiopians vnder the Negroes.

Wacic 30. Z. *Riwathek.*

Ma great famine in Persia by three yeers drought, which almost dispeopled it. They returned after raine, and warred on the *Magi*, killing of those fire worshippers very many.

Mutewakkel 31. Z. *Metuchel.* *Ou. Almotawakel.*

Ceremonies of inauguration.

i Out of thine owne mouth will I condemne thee. *A.H.* 235. which began Iuly 26. 849.

Great Earthquakes.

k The forme of the Alcoran before enioyned by his Predecessors.

Mu-

Muſtanſir 32. *Z. Mutuuter.* *M. Montecer.*

Muhammed Abugiafar Muſtanſir Billa was priuately inaugurated the ſame day of his Fathers death, and publikely the day after. He continued ſixe moneths. A Perſian Carpet with the Image of a Sphera haply brought before him, he would needs force one to read the Letters therein wrought, which w[illegible] *I Syroes Sonne of Cosroes ſlue my Father and reigned but ſixe moneths.* Some ſay he w[illegible]d. A fearefull Dreame alſo of his Fathers threatning him with ſhort Reigne and fi[illegible]r it, terrified him. He had made his two brethren reſigne their partnerſhip of the cou[illegible]ore.

Muſtain 33.

Ahmed Abulabbas Muſtain Billa. So[illegible]ne of *Muhammed*, Sonne of *Mutaſim* was enthronized in his place, and impriſoned *Mutaz* and *Muaiyad*. An. 249. the Turkes killed *Viamaz* which ruled all vnder *Muſtain*.

An. 250. *Iabia* Sonne of *Omar* of the Poſteritie of *Ali* aroſe at Cufa, but was ſlaine in battell. They which had ſlaine *Mutewakkell* ſlue alſo *Iaaz*, whereupon *Muſtain* fledde to Bagdad, and the people created *Mutaz Chalifa*. *Mutaz* ſent his brother *Ahmed* to beſiege *Muſtain* at Bagdad, whoſe Generall *Abdalla* made his Peace with *Ahmed*. The ſame yeere *Haſen* of the Poſterity of *Ali*, poſſeſſed himſelfe of Tabriſtan, and another *Haſen* the Tabiite of *Ali* his Poſteritie aroſe in the Region of Dailam, and beſieged Mecca, but both were put to flight, and this laſt died, An. 252. *Muſtain* reſigned the *Chaliſate*, and was committed to cuſtodie, where by *Mutaz* his procurement he was ſlaine. He reigned two yeeres and nine moneths.

Mutaz 34. g *Zacuth* ſuppoſeth that the *Chaliſate* was by him diuided, and another ſet vp in Egypt, which is not true, as anon ſhall appeare.

Muhtadi 35.

Muhammed Abu-Abdalla Mutaz Billa was the thirteenth Abaſan *Chalif*. Hee depoſed his brother *Muaiyad* from the partnerſhip of the couenant, and impriſoned him: and perceiuing that the Turkes would haue him ſet at liberty, he cauſed him to be ſtrangled in clothes that the Iudges could perceiue no ſigne of violent death in him. An. 253. the Turkes killed *Waſiff* for their ſtipends, the Keeper of the Port, whoſe Sonne *Salih* procured the depoſition of *Mutaz*, and ſtarued him to death, hauing reigned foure yeeres ſix moneths and three and twentie dayes. He was a man giuen to his pleaſures and negligent of gouernment. A. 254. *Ahmed* g Sonne of *Tulan* was made Gouernour of Egypt.

Muhammed Abu-Abdalla Muhtadi Billa, Sonne of *Watic*, Sonne of *Mutaſim* ſucceeded. An. 255. He forbade the vſe of Wine, and reiected Singers and Iesters; exiled Soothſayers, refuſed the Lions and hunting Dogges in the Imperiall Tower, and tooke away Tributes. He alſo tooke on him to bee preſent at Iudgements and Accounts, and ſate euery Munday and Thurſday to attend the people hauing a Booke before him. *Habib* rebelled at Baſra, ſaying falſly that he was *Ali* Sonne of *Muhammed*, of the Poſteritie of *Ali*. He gathered together the Rihi, which liued like Lions: he was an Aſtrologer, of bad Religion. Hee continued to the yeere 270. *Muſa* killed *Salih* the killer of his Maſter, An. 256. *Muhtadi Billa* was ſlaine that yeere by the mutinous Turkes, hauing reigned eleuen monethes and ſome dayes.

The Rihi. *Mutamid* 36. *Habibs* harmes *Mirkond* ſaith, that *Yacub Leis* a Tinker, a prodigal, and robber by high-waies, to whom (renowned for liberalitie) vnthriftes reſorted, firſt got Siſtom then inuaded Kera-ſon, &c. ſtill giuing the ſpoiles to his followers; took Perſia, went toward Bagdad, to ſee (her ſuit) the *Chaliſa*, which would haue confirmed all he had to him, if hee would haue ſtayed: the died in his way of the Choſke, hauing ruled Perſia eleuen yeeres. His brother *Homer* ſucceeded him, confirmed by the *Chalif*. This *Homer* ſeemeth *Habib* here mentioned: if *Mirkond* doe at all mention him.

Ahmed Abulabbas Mutamid Alalla Sonne of *Mutewakkel* was created the ſame day at Samarra. An. 256. the Rihi tooke foure and twentie Ships of the Sea, and ſlue all that were in them: and *Habib* with eighty thouſand men did much ſpoyle. He got the victory in diuers fights againſt *Mutamids* Armies. He tooke Baſra and ſlue twenty thouſand Inhabitants at his entrance. He preuayled alſo, A. 258. and ſlue *Muſtiſh* ney the could *Muaffic Billa*, whom *Mutamid* had made Gouernour of the Eaſt, and partner of the league, preuayle againſt him. Hee made the People beleeue that hee knew all ſecrets, and could doe things miraculous.

An. 259. *Iacob* Sonne of *Alin* rebelled at Niſabur, and poſſeſſed himſelfe of Tabriſtan. *Habibs* Souldiers ſlue fifty thouſand at Ahwaz, and threw downe the walls. He and *Iacob* made great ſtirres and ouerthrew *Mutamids* Captaines. *Iacob* put to flight *Muhammed* Sonne of *Waſil*, and tooke his Caſtle in which were forty Millions of *Staters*. Hee tooke *Waſit*. *Mutawid* with his partner went againſt him and put him to flight. But *Habid* preuayled in diuers battels: he continued ſpoyling and victorious, till Anno 267. at which time *Muaffic Billa* ſent his Sonne *Mutadid* who chaſed him, tooke his Citie Mabia which he had builded, ruined the walls and filled vp the Ditches, and freed out of his Priſon ſiue thouſand Muſlim women. *Muaffic* purſued them to the Citie which they had builded with ſiue Walls, and as many Ditches, and drae them out of it, and got rich ſpoyles. *Habib* had fortified Mahbar, and had three hundred thouſand Souldiers with him there. *Muaffic* ſeeing it could not in ſhort time be taken, builded another Citie, Muaſikla ouer againſt it: he built alſo a Temple there, ſtamped Coines, inuited Merchants, and by degrees preuayled.

An. 268. *Lulu* rebelled againſt *Ahmed* the Gouernour of Egypt, and got *Muaffics* fauour, whereby *Ahmed* was curſed in all Pulpits. For *Muaffic* ruled all, and *Mutamid* enioyed only the title, his name on coines, and to pray in Pulpits.

An.

An.270. *Habib* was taken and executed, his head carried about for shew. *Muassic* was surnamed *Nasir Lidinilla*, that is, the *Helper of Gods Religion*, p for killing *Habib*. The same yeere *Ahmed* q dyed: when death approched he lift vp his hands, saying, *O Lord, haue mercy on him which knew not his owne quantitie, and shew thy selfe merciful to him when he dieth.* He left three and thirty Sonnes. He was a man of much iustice and almes, and gaue euery moneth 300000. pieces of Gold in almes. A thousand pieces of Gold daily were designed to his Kitchin: and to Ecclesiasticke persons euery moneth hee gaue as much. And whiles he gouerned Egypt two Millions, and two hundred thousand pieces of Gold were carried to Bagdad to be giuen to the poore, and to learned and good men. Hee left in his treasury ten Millions of Gold. Hee had seuen thousand Slaues, and as many Horses, eight thousand Mules and Camels, three hundred Horses for warre, all his owne proper goods. The Rent of Egypt in his time was three hundred Millions of pieces of Gold. He is said to haue executed, with adding those which dyed in Prison eighteene thousand. His Sonne *Humarueie* succeeded in all which he had in Egypt and Syria.

An.273. *Muhammed* Sonne of *Abdurrahman* King of Spaine dyed: his Sonne *Mundir* succeeded. An.278. *Muassic Billa* dyed, and his Sonne *Mutadid* succeeded in the gouernment, being vetted by his Vncle *Mutamid*, and made partner of the Couenant; deposing his owne Sonne *Giafar*. That yeere beganne the Caramites, a kind of Batin Heretikes. One of the tract of *Sawad* fayned fasting and austerity of life, saying, that God had enioyned him fifty prayings euery day. He laid he would call a Prince, and tooke of euery man a piece of Gold, saying, it was for the Prince. He tooke twelue men which he sent to preach his Religion. And when the people by multitude of his enioyned Prayers neglected their worke, *Hasdam* imprisoned him, and kept the key vnder his head threatning to kill him. A Mayde of his in pitie stole away the key, let him out and layd the key vnder his head againe, who opening the doore found him not. Hereupon he tooke occasion to say that no man could hurt him. Hee went into Syria, and none knoweth what became of him. His name was *Carmet*. His Sect of Caramites encreased about Cufa. Anno 279. *Mutamid* dyed, hauing reigned three and twenty yeeres and three dayes.

Ahmed Abulabbas Mutadid Billa Sonne of *Muassic* was on the day of *Mutamids* death created *Chalifa*.

An.282. *Humarueie* was killed by some of his Seruants in his bed, and the Souldiers placed his Sonne *Gieis* in his steed, some sayd they would haue his Vncle to gouerne, whereupon he cut off his Vncles head and threw it to them. An.283. the Souldiers slue *Gieis* and his mother, and spoyled his house, and *Heron* his brother was made Gouernour of Egypt and Syria, which promised to pay *Mutadid*, fifteene hundred thousand pieces of Gold yeerely, out of Egypt. Hee payed him also for Kinnasrin and Awasim Gouernments foure hundred and fiftie thousand. *Abusaid* a Caramite rebelled and tooke Hagiara.

An.287. *Mutadid* sent *Abbas* against him, whom the Caramite tooke and few of his men escaped. An.289. *Mutadid* dyed through immoderate vse of lust, hauing reigned nine yeeres nine moneths and foure dayes. Hee remitted the poll money, and the tribute of Mecca and Medina: and hauing great need of money for his warres, he was told of a *Magus* (*one of the Persian Ethnicke Religion*) dwelling at Bagdad, which had store of money. He sent for him to borrow money of him: who answered, my money is before thee, take as much as thou wilt. But how, sayth *Mutadid*, canst thou expect restitution? *Seeing God*, sayd the other, *trusts thee with his Seruants and his Lands, and thou shewest thy selfe faithfull and executest iustice; should I be afraide to trust thee with my money* Whereupon *Mutadid* weeping, bid him goe away, and sware he would borrow nothing of him; yea, if he needed, our goods, sayth he, shall be thine. Yet hee was bloody, and buried his Seruants quicke which had angred him.

Ali Abumuhammed Mutlafi Billa Sonne of *Mutadid* Sonne of *Muassic* Sonne of *Mutawakel*, was created *Chalifa* the same day that his father died, An.289. whiles hee was at Raka, his Counsellour *Casam* procured his Inauguration at Bagdad, which was reiterated when he came thither himselfe. This *Casam* hauing intended to turne away the *Chalifate* from *Mutadids* Posteritie, and knowing that *Badir* the brother of *Mutlafi* knew it, procured his death lest he should reuele it. At that time *Iahia* a Caramite had many followers, & slue *Sueer* the Commander which *Mutlafi* sent against him, & burned the Temple at Rusaf. After that he went into Syria, ouerthrew the forces of *Tuagi*, and besieged Damascus, where he was slaine. The Caramites substituted his brother *Hussein*, which gaue out himselfe to be *Ahmed* Sonne of *Muhammed*. He besieged Emissa and tooke it, and forced Damascus to composition. He slue innumerable people at Maara, Hamar, Balabec Selusia

p As our *Defender of the Faith* in their superstitious conceit.

q This *Ahmed* would not acknowledge *Mutamid*, and ruled Egypt as Soueraigne, therefore cursed, as seeking to raise another *Chalifa* in Bagdad, not any at all in Egypt (which long after was done) but now began to be hereditary. As Persia also by *Mirkhond* testimony to the Family of *Leys*.

r Which is to be vnderstood of all lands taken as in our Doomesday Booke.

Caramites. *H.*279. began? April 3. *A.D.*892.

Mutadid 37. Z. *Mutaried*. *M. Mistaried*. Egyptian broyles. Z. saith that *Humarueie* made a match twixt his Sonne *Ali* and the *Chalifa* daughter.

Equitie.

Mutlafi 38.

Caramites hurts to the Muslims.

Selmia (where he entred on composition, and slue notwithstanding both men, children and beasts, and spoyled all Syria with fire and sword. An.290. *Mustasi* sent *Alaz* against him, which got the worse, and after him other Armies. An. 291. the Caramites were ouerthrowne and many taken, which had their hands and feet, and after their heads cut off. He sent an Army also into Egypt, which tooke it from the Posteritie of *Telun*.

An.293. *Muhammed* Sonne of *Ali* possessed Egypt and seduced many, but by *Mustasis* Army was taken and imprisoned. *Zacrunas* the Caramite slue the Inhabitants of Basra and Adriat, and spoyled the Cities, and then repaired to Damascus, and slue the Deputie, but could not take it, and was chased by another Army which *Mustasi* sent vnder *Ioseph* Son of *Ibrahim*, to Sawan, where in another battell the Caramites got the victory.

An.294. *Zacrunas* assaulted the Pilgrimes, slue the men, captiued the women and spoyled the Gods: but was soone after taken and killed. An. 295. *Mustasi* dyed hauing reigned sixe yeeres sixe moneths and twentie dayes. He was very rich, and bare good affection to the Posteritie of *Ali*, of happy memory. Seleucia was taken, An. 299. That yeere Nilus flowed but thirteene cubits and two fingers, and men of all Religions made supplications to God for more water, but preuayled not.

Mustadir 39.

Giafar Abulfadl Mustadir Billa Sonne of *Mutadid* succeeded the day of his brothers death. The same yeere dyed *Mundir* Sonne of *Muhammed* King of Spaine, to whom succeeded in the *Chalifate* his Sonne *Abdalla*. An.296. *Mustadir* was deposed, and *Abdalla* Sonne of *Mutaz* surnamed *Abulabbas* was inaugurated, by occasion of the Souldiers assaulting and killing *Abbas* the Counsellour of *Mustadir*: but he possessed it only one day and night and was strangled. He was a rare Poet and author of Similitudes, such as none before had giuen example of.

Africa diuided (as Spaine before) and following a new *Chalif*.

An.298. the Posteritie of *Fatima* began to flourish, and *Muhammed* at Segilmessa in the iurisdiction of Cairawan was saluted Emperour of the faithfull, professing himselfe to bee descended of *Ali* Sonne of *Abutalib*. He builded Mahdia and reigned ouer Africa, Sicilia and the Westerne Prouinces. He fought often against the Sons of *Aglab*, & expelled them, A.302. and then dyed; and his Son *Caijm* succeeded, & after him his Son *Almansor*: and after him, his Sonne *Muaz Eidinilla* who was the first Egyptian *Chalifa* of the *Fatimides*. A.300. *Abdalla* died and his brother *Abdurrahman Nasir Ladinilla* succeeded in Spaine, after whom I know nothing of that Ommian Spanish Race, which ceased about the yeere foure hundred.

An.301. *Abusaid* the Caramite was slaine by his Seruant in the Bath, and the Caramites exalted *Said* his Sonne in his place, who with *burning* Pincers executed the Murtherer. An.302. *Habas* with a multitude of Magarabs tooke Alexandria, and ouerthrew *Maunas* which was sent from Bagdad against him.

Heretike executed.

An.309 *Mustadir* caused *Husein* to bee put to death, and crucified by the aduise of the wife for certaine Verses, in which he seemed to acknowledge an vnion of mans spirit with Gods Spirit;

As Wine with Water, and with Amber Muske is mixed,
Thy spirit with mine, Thou-I are are ioynly fixed.

Abugiafars death. See of him in the Preface. *A H.* 310. began *May* 1.922.

But God knoweth whether he had not some other meaning.

An.310. *Muhammed Abugiafar* Sonne of *Harir* the Tabarite dyed, the Author of the History, a learned and mightie Prince, God haue mercy on him. An. 311. *Abutaher* the Caramite Sonne of *Abusaid* grew powerfull, and professed to know secrets. Hee assaulted Basra with 107000. men tooke it, slue all the Townesmen, burned the Temple, enioyed the spoyles. An.312. hee set on the Pilgrimes as they returned in *Nahar*, and ouerthrew them in a great battell, taking their Generall *Abulbigia* Gouernour of Mausil, Diarreb, Dainawar and Giebal, with the goods and most of the women and children, leaving the rest without prouision, so that most of them dyed with thirst and wandering. Hee was then nineteene yeeres old and got a Million of Gold, and baggage worth as much more. He set *Abubigia* free and many Captiues, and sent to *Mustadir* to giue him Basra and Ahwaz, which he refused, but honoured and vested his Messenger. An.313. *Abutaher* tooke Cufa, slue and captiued the Inhabitants. He tooke there foure thousand coloured clothes, and three thousand Camels with innumerable spoyles.

Caramites cruelty.

Melita. Dailam a people of Persia.

An.314. the Romans tooke Malatia. An.315. the Dailamites began to be of note, whose first King was *Wahshundan*, whose State was Saristan. His Sonne *Hasan* succeeded. Hee warred with *Husein* the Fatimite, surnamed *Nasirulhac*: but *Ali* brother of *Hasan* slue him, and was slaine himselfe by *Muhammed* father in law to *Hasan*, and chased his Sonne *Mahadi* which succeeded him. This *Muhammed* became King of the Dailams. *Mahadi* fled to Asfar, who hauing taken Razwin and Georgian sent *Mardawig* his Generall against *Muhammed*, who counselled him to get into his hands the Kingdome of Asfar his Master,

ster, which he did, possessing the Dominions of Raija, Karwin, Abhar, Giorgian and Tabristan. Then want *Mardawig* to Hamadan, took it, slue the men, rauished the women. *Mulladir* sent *Haron* with an army against him, An. 319. which *Mardawig* put to flight, and then possessed Isfahan. After this *Mabcan* and *Mardawig* warred on each other, and *Ali Abulhasen Amaduddaulas* Sonne of *Boia*, was one of *Mabcans* Souldier. These warres continued, An. 321. and 322. and *Mardawig* got the better, and tooke Amida and Tabristan. *Amaduddaulas* left *Mabcan* and serued *Mardawig*, who set him ouer Margia, where being settled he arose against *Mardawig*, tooke Isfahan with a great Army, and after that, Argian and all Persia. *Mulladir* sent *Ioseph* against *Abutaher* the Caramite, but *Ioseph* was taken and his forces broken. Hesent another Army which returned without doing any thing. They were afraid at Bagdad, lest hee should haue come thither, and for ioy of his returning *Mulladir*, his mother and *Ali* his Counsellour gaue God thankes, and distributed fifty thousand pieces of Gold to the poore, An. 316. the Caramite tooke Rahab, and forced *Karkusa* to buy their peace. He built a house at Hagiara, and increased in strength. An. 317. *Mulladir* was deposed, and *Kahir Billa* succeeded by the meanes of *Maunas* Generall of his forces, which tooke *Mulladir* and imprisoned him, and caused him to resigne. The Souldiers tooke from his mother 600000. pieces of Gold. But the Souldiers soone after mutined and slue *Barne* the Captaine of the Guard; made the Sonne of *Mucla* the Counsellor runne away, and *Mulladir* repossessed his place. His brother *Cahir* he kissed betwixt the eyes, saying, there is no fault in thee: and *Cahir* answered, *God, God is in my soule, O Emperour of the faithfull.* *Mulladir* sware he would not hurt him. *Abutahar* this yeere assaulted Mecca, and slue the Pilgrimes in the Temple on the eight of *Dulhiggia*, plucked vp the *blacke stone*, and the couer of the Well Zemzem, and wasted the Temple. He carried the *blacke stone* to his Citie, which remayned with them twelue yeeres lacking one day, and was rendred, An. 339. *Iabcam* had offered for it fiue thousand pieces of Gold which they refused. An. 320. *Mulladir* was slaine by *Maunas* in battell, hauing reigned foure and twenty yeeres, eleuen moneths and fourteene dayes. Hee was much giuen to fasting and almes, but much ruled by women, one of whom *Iamee* would sit in iudgement. None had enioyed the place so long. In his time ceased the Pilgrimage, when the *blacke stone* was carried away. He is said to haue giuen away aboue seuenty Millions of Gold. He gaue also to the men the Iewels of the *Chalifate*, and the treasures which his Ancestors neuer thought to giue, and most of the Gemmes to women, ointment also and Cluet, *A.M.* 6424. and sixty foure dayes being past. Hee forbade to take tribute of Bishops, Monkes and poore men, whom the author of the vocation had freed. An. 314. the Emperour with a thousand ships intended to inuade Egypt but by tempest, three hundred were lost, and the rest returned. An. 317. such a multitude of Locusts came into Egypt, that the Sunbeames could not come at the ground, and they consumed Vines, Fruits and Corne.

These things are set together: but in time happned after.

Mecca assaulted.

Blacke stone taken away.

Muhammed Abulmansor Kahir Billa, was the fortieth *Chalife*, and the nineteenth of the Abbasides, created after his brothers death at Bagdad. Hee tortured *Mulladirs* mother for her money, hanging her by the heeles, her vrine running ouer her bodie, and she denying knowledge of more money; after which shee dyed, Anno 322. hee was deposed, hauing reigned one yeere sixe moneths and seuen dayes, and *Ahmed* Sonne of *Mulladir* was created, which remayned in the Imperiall Tower till *Mutaki* cast him forth, A. 323. after which on a Friday in the Temple he begged almes; saying, *I was sometimes your Chalifa, now I am one of your poore.*

Kahir 40. *Z. Rikiber.*

Chalifa beggar. *L.* 3. of the diuision of the Saracenicall Empire.

Ahmed Abulabbas Arradi Billa was the twentieth of the Abbasides. Anno 322. dyed *Abdalla Abu-Muhammed Mahadi* which reigned at Cairawan, hauing ruled foure and twenty yeeres three moneths and sixe dayes. *Caijm* his Sonne succeeded. *Bota* was a poore fisherman; some say, descended from *Ardsyr* King of Persia. From *Adam* to him were a hundred Generations. He had three Sonnes *Ali Abulhasen*, *Hasen Abuali*, and *Ahmed Abulhasen*, which serued the Souldiers. We haue before shewed how *Ali Abulhasen Amaduddaulas* serued *Mardawig*, tooke Isfahan and Hamadan. He tooke Cazerun and increased in power. After that Letters came from *Cabir*, wherein he offered to *Mardawig*, Raija, Nareab, Zangion and Abhar on condition to leaue Isfahan, from which *Wasmakin* brother of *Mardawig* had driuen *Amaduddaulas*, which he accepted: but hearing of *Cabirs* deposition, detayned it still. Anno 323. *Mardawig* was slaine by his Seruants in the Bath, and so God deliuered the Muslims from *Mardawig*, a man vniust, bold and addicted (they say) to Paganisme. *Abutaher* the same yeere spoyled the Pilgrimes. The same yeere *Hasen Abu-Muhammed Nasir addaulas* Sonne of *Abdalla* gaue to his brother *Ali Abulhasen Saiduddaulas*, *Majusarkin Diarbecr*. *Abubecr* subdued Egypt, and possessed it together with Syria.

Ar adi 41. *Bota.* Z. and *M.* tell of him and calls him *Segies*: *M. Abulfaia* that he dreamt hee pissed fire which inflamed the country in three parts, which was interpreted of his three sonnes greatnesse.

Egypt conquered.

An. 324. *Aradi* made *Muhammed* Sonne of *Raijc* his Counsellor and Emperour of Emperours,

perours, and committed to him the administration of the Kingdome, and commanded him to preach in his steed in the Pulpit, and gaue him a banner. From that time the dignitie of a Counsellour grew out of vse at Bagdad, and continued but a name, the power remaynng with the Emperour (or Commander.) An.325. There were many Princes; for whosoeuer could possesse himselfe of any City, stiled himselfe King. Basra, Ahwaz and Wasit were in the hands of *Abu-Abdalla* the Baridite, and his brethren. Persia in the hand of *Amaduddaulas*, Sonne of *Boia* the Dailamite, and of *Wasmakin* brother of *Mardawig*, Mausil, Diarreb and Diarbecr in the hands of the children of *Hamadan*. Egypt and Syria in the hand of *Muhammed*, Sonne of *Taug*. The West and Africa vnder *Caijm*, Spaine in the hand of the Sonnes of *Ommia*. Choratan in the hand of *Nasr* Sonne of *Ahmed* the Samanzan. Iamam, Bahrain and Hagiara in the hand of *Taber* the Caramite. *Tabristan* and *Georgian* in the hand of the Dailans. Only Bagdad remayned with the *Chalifa*, and the Sonne of *Raije*, the tributes were abolished, the Kingdome decayed and robberies increased. The money was carried into the Treasuries of the Emperours, which disposed thereof at their pleasure *Arradi* vnto warre vpon *Abuabdalla* the Baridite, who agreed with him for 36000. pieces of Gold, to pay thirty thousand euery moneth. *Basra* was taken by the Sonne of *Raije*, and *Abutaher* the Caramite made peace with him on condition to pay him out of Bagdad 120000. pieces of Gold. *Abubecr* tooke also Ahwaz, whereupon the Baridite sought helpe of *Amaduddaulas*, who sent his brother *Ahmed Mumuddaulas* with him to take Ahwaz, which he did, An.326. *Abuali* Sonne of *Mucla* the Counsellour had his hand cut off, and his tongue cut out for counselling *Arradi* to attach *Abubecr*, and to employ *Iacham* the Turke, when his right hand was to be cut off, *This hand* (said he) *whereby I haue ministred to three* Chalifas, *and wherewith I haue written out the* Alcoran, *is cut of like the hand off a Thiefe.* This Sonne of *Mucla* was Author of this excellent writing, and first brought the torreigne Writing of Cufa to the vse of the Arabs. The Sonne of *Bawab* added somewhat and brought it to perfection. *Iabcam* the Turke came to Bagdad and tocke it, chasing away the Sonne of *Raije* which had enioyed the Imperiall Dignity one yeere ten moneths and sixteene dayes. *Iabcam* was vested by *Arradi*, and stiled *Emperour of Emperours*. Anno 327. *Iabcam* with the *Chalifa* went against *Nasiruddaul* and belieged Mausil, but was forced to accept fiue hundred thousand pieces of Gold to haste backe to Bagdad, where *Abubecr* had renewed some broyles, with whom he compounded and gaue him the way *of Euphrates*, the Prouince of Kinnasrin and Awasim. That yeere they againe went on Pilgrimage by the way of Euphrates, which from the yeere 329. the Caramites had hindred, *Abutaher* now for fiue and twenty thousand pieces of Gold, promising not to molest them. An.328. *Abubecr* tooke Emissa: ouerthrew in battell *Muhammed* Sonne of *Taug*, Prince of Egypt and Syria, but was againe depriued of his victory by his Souldiers ouerhasting to the spoyle: at last, hee got all Syria except Ramla, which remayned with the Sonne of *Taug* on condition to pay *Abubecr* 140000. pieces of Gold yeerely. An.329. dyed *Arradi* of the Dropsie and immoderate lust. He was the last of the *Chalifas* which preached on Fridayes, which did penance with the Penitents, disposed of monies, armies, gifts, had seruants and Kitchins. They which succeeded after him vntill *Mustasi*, had nothing in Irac and other Prouinces but the title. He reigned six yeeres, ten moneths and ten dayes.

Musim Empire falleth in pieces.

The Author of Arabike writing in the prelene forme.

Pilgrimage renewed.

Last Friday preaching *Chalifa.*

Mustasi 42. * *Dauia* which *Mi*-cals *Daud*, and *Z. Eddula* is a title of honour with seuerall additions which the *Chalifas* (when their owne place was little better then title) gaue to the Sultans and Princes which by force or inheritance obtayned any Signiory. Princes also gaue & assumed this title at pleasure.

Ibrahim Abu-Ishac Mostasi Billa Sonne of *Muktadir* was created *Chalifa* the day of his brothers death, but held only the bare title. *Iacham* in hunting was killed, and *Mostasi* committed the administration of the Kingdome to *Cutelm*, and eighty dayes after to *Abubecr* Son of *Raije*. An.330. the Baradites fought to possesse Bagdad. *Mostasi* fled to Mausil with *Abubecr*. *Saifuddaulas* ministred vnto them, as did also *Hasan Abuhammed Nasiruddaulas*, which title *Mustasi* then gaue him. Hee sent his brother *Ali Abulhasan* against the Baridites, who expelled them from Bagdad and tooke the Citie. *Nasiruddaulas* slue *Abubecr* and succeeded in the gouernment. His brother *Ali* being victorious, was stiled *Saifuddaulas*. A.332. *Nasiruddaulas* with his brother returned from Bagdad to Mausil, and *Bucum* the Turke possessed Bagdad and administration, with the title of *Emperour of Emperours*, who deposed *Mostasi* from the *Chalifate*, which now was growne to a title, hauing also the honour to haue their names stamped on Coynes, and to pray in Pulpits. *Mustasi* which was made his Successor put out his eyes, hauing reigned three yeeres and eleuen moneths.

Mustasi 43. Z. *Saifu Eddula*

Abdalla Mbulcasim Austasi Billa Sonne of *Mustasi* was the 22. Abassian *Chalifa*, and in all the 40. He vested *Bucum*. The same yeere 333. *Saifuddaulas* * tooke Aleppo and Damascus. *Cafur* was sent out of Egypt against him, and when their Armies were pitched ouer against each other, *Saifuddaulas* men on a Friday said, *It is not lawfull to fight to day*, and disperised themselues; *Cafur* tooke the occasion and wanne the field with all the baggage.

Sai-

Saifuddaulas recouering his forces in another battell ouerthrew him: After that he preuailed against *Abubecr*, *Achsjd* Sonne of *Tuug* the King of Egypt, and a Peace was concluded betwixt them, a Ditch made to bound both Kingdomes.

Anno 334. *Muazzuddaulas* * Sonne of *Boia* possessed Bagdad, and *Mustaesi* vested him, took his Oath of Fealty, and gaue him a Banner, Chaine and Bracelets, with the hinder part of his house, his name to be stamped on Money, and commanded him to pray for him (*or in his stead*) in Pulpits. He also gaue him that title of *Muazzuddaulas*, and his eldest brother *Ali*, *Amaduddaulas*, and *Abuali* the middlemost brother *Rucnuddaulas*. *Muazzuddaulas* minding to depose *Mustaesi*, went in and kissed the ground before him, and a feare was brought on which hee late. Presently came in two men, which when hee offered his hand to kisse, plucked him off his bed; his eyes were put out and his Palace spoyled. Hee ruled one yeere, foure moneths and two dayes.

Fadius Abulcasim Mutius Lilla Sonne of *Muztadir*, was the foure and fortieth *Chalif* created, An. 334. *Abubecr Achsjd* King of Egypt and Syria dyed. The Fargans called their Kings *Achsjd*, as the Romans, *Cæsar*, and the Persians *Cofroes*. Hee had foure hundred thousand Souldiers: eight thousand Mamlukes which were his Guard. None of his Familiars knew where he slept when he was in campe, by his close conuaying himselfe into others Tents. His Son *Muhammed Abubur* succeeded, *Cafur* ruling all, a Negro whom his Father had bought for eighteene pieces of Gold. *Abulcasim Cajim* Prince of Cairawan died and his Sonne *Ismael Abutabee Almansor Billa* succeeded in the *Chalifate*, who died, An. 341. hauing ruled seuen yeeres, his Sonne *Maabad* succeeding which was the first *Chalifa* of Egypt.

An. 347. *Muazzuddaulas* wanne Mausil and all Diameb. *Nasiruddaula* fled and after compounded with him. An. 349 *Abubur* dyed, his brother *Ali* succeeded, but *Cafur* ruled all: and *Ali* dying, An. 355. he became King of Egypt and Syria, where hee reigned till An. 358. *Saifuddaulas* died, An. 356. hauing reigned in Aleppo one and twentie yeeres. He was learned and had great confluence of learned men to him, to whom hee was very liberall. His Sonne *Sandduddaulas* succeeded. *Muazzuddaulas* dyed at Bagdad, hauing ruled in Irac one and twentie yeeres. His Sonne *Bachtiar Azuddaulas* succeeded in his place, but not his fulnesse of power. An. 358. *Cafur* died dyed. His Court was frequented with learned men and Poets. *Ali* Sonne of *Muhammed* Sonne of *Achsjd* reigned after him. The same yeere *Obeidur* Seruant of *Muaz* [1] *Lidinilla* Lord of Cairawan came with an Army into Egypt, and caused the people to sweare Allegeance to *Muaz*. And thenceforward in Egypt the publike Prayer ceased in the name of the Abbasides, til *Joseph Sallahuddine* [m] the Iobide of happie memory restored it. This *Obeidur* builded Alcahir for his Souldiers, and an Imperiall Palace, and commanded all his Commanders and Souldiers to build each of them a house therein.

An. 362. *Muaz* entred Egypt, *Alcahir* was so called, *viz. Compellor*, because it was builded in the horoscope of *Mars*, which compelleth the World. The same yeere *Mutius Lilla* was deposed, *Sebertekin* the Turke hauing gotten Bagdad, af er hee had enioyed the place nine and twenty yeeres, foure moneths and one and twenty dayes. He was Religious, frequent in Prayers and Almes, honourable and sincere, but hauing nothing in Irac and Persia but the title. In other Regions others ruled, as there the Sonnes of *Boia*. Anno 334. so great a Famine had beene in Bagdad, that women rosted children, which therefore were throwne into Tigris. An. 343. the King of Nubia inuaded as farre as Vswan: but the Egyptian Army draue them backe, and slue and took many of them, and the Muslims tooke a Castle of theirs called Riwa.

Abulkeerm Abubecr Taius Lilla Sonne of *Mutius* was made *Chalif* on the day of his Fathers deposition, An. 363. he presently vested *Sebertekin*, and set him ouer his Palace. He in the yeere 364. tooke Father and Sonne with him to warre against *Azzuddaulas* Sonne of *Boia*, where he and *Mutius* dyed: and the Turkes made *Alptekin* the Seruant of *Muazzedaulas* Emperour, who went with *Taius* and beseiged Wasit. *Abuzalab Vddauddaulas* at the same time entred Bagdad and carried himselfe as King, whither *Taius* followed him. *Addduddaulas* helped his Cousin *Azzuddaulas*, and came out of Persia to Wasit, and draue away the Turkes, and pursued them to Bagdad, and humbled himselfe before *Taius*, and kissed his hand: then tooke his Cousin *Azzuddaulas*, but vpon *Rucnuddaulas* his Fathers command restored him, swearing him to make him his Lieutenant in Irac, and not to contrary him nor his father *Rucnuddaulas*: after which he returned into Persia. *Afiekin* ruled at Damascus. *Limisces* a Commander of the Romans tooke Emissa and Balaber, and forced Damascus to buy their Peace, but was soone after poisoned by *Basilius* and *Constantine*.

An. 365. *Muaz* dyed, in whose Reigne ouer Egypt, the Wife of *Achsjd* complained

Achsjd King of Egypt.

A Fargan in a new succession.

The Boijtes greatnesse.

* *Zo. Mem. Eddula.*

Hypocritical deposing of Hypocrites.

Mutius 44. *Z. Mutius. M. Mutyah Bila Fedzile.*

First *Chalifa* of Egypt.

Cafur a Negro slaue King of Egypt & Syria.

1 *Z. Meer. Lidinillahi de reflauitate Phesima.*

m He which wan Ierusalem from the Frankes, called *Saladine* in our Stories. Cayro built.

Nubian inuasion.

Taius Lilla 45. *Z. Taia M. Tayeba, Abdil Carim.*

Vnkinde Iew and iust Prince.

to him of a Iew, which denyed the receit of a precious garment full set with Precious Stones, the hauing offered all the rest, if he would giue her but one sleeue. Hee sent for the Iew which still denyed, and he searching his house found it, and restored it whole to the woman; He being giuen to Astrologie had hidden himselfe vpon an Astrologers counsell a yeere in a vault, the People imagining, meane while, that hee had beene taken vp into Heauen. He soone after his comming forth dyed, and his Sonne *Barar Abulmansor Aziz Billa* succeeded: but *Gheubar* administred the Empire. *Hassen Abuals Rucuddaulas* distributed his Kingdomes to his three Sonnes, to *Adaduddaulas*, Persia, Argian and Carmania; to *Muaiyduddaulas*, Raiy and Isfahan, and to *Abulhasen*, Fachruddaulas, Hamedan, & Dainawar, taking Oaths of them for mutuall confederacy. Hee dyed, Anno 366. being nine- 10
tie nine yeeres old, and hauing reigned foure and fortie yeeres one moneth and nine dayes. *Adaduddaulas* went against *Azzuddaulas* ouerthrew him, and possessed Bagdad: An. 367. the *Chalifa* vested and crowned him, gaue him a chaine and declared him Lord: gaue him two banners, and set him ouer his Palace. Hee crucified *Ali* the Counsellour of *Azzuddaulas* of whom a Poet made a rare Epitaph.

Witty Epitaph in Arabike verses of a crucified man.

Exalted thou in life and death, a miracle indeed.
Enuron'd as when Prayer-dayes thou whilome didst areed,
Thou stretchedst forth as twere with gifts thy hands which dying bleed:
Earths belly all too narrow is thy greatnesse to contayne,
Ayre yeelds close grave, the Clouds thy shrouds and winding sheet remayne. 20

Azzuddaulas got he'pe of *Abuzalab*, but was in a great battell slaine by *Adaduddaulas*. He was a strong man, and with his hands had prostrated a Bull without other helpes: he would also goe to fight with Lions and hunted them. Anno 368. *Adaduddaulas* possessed Diarreb, Maijafarikin & Diarbecr, and *Abuzalab* fled into Egypt. *Tatus Lalla* commanded that King *Adaduddaulas* should pray in his steed euery third Friday, which none had obtayned before him, though partners of the couenant. He commanded also Drummes to be sounded at *Adaduddaulas* Court at the fiue houres of Prayer; which none before had. And he was the first which was stiled King in Islamisme: and in Pulpits he was named *Siahenshah*, or *King of Kings*. 30

Strong man.

Great and first Mussulman King greatly diminished the *Chalifas* Curate to say Prayers in his place.

An. 371. he caused *Tatus* to confirme to *Muaiyidduddaulas* his brother *Giorgian* and *Tabristan*, which drawe thence *Fanus* Son of *Wesmakin*. A. 372. *Adaduddaulas* dyed at Bagdad, hauing ruled ouer Irac, Carmania, Persia, Amman, Churistan, Mausil, Diarbecr, Harran and Mambag. His Sonne *Marzuban Abuealangiar Samsamuddaulas* was vested by *Tatus*. *Muaiyidduddaulas* dyed 373. and his brother *Fachruddaulas* succeeded him, confirmed by *Tatus*.

An. 375. *Sarfuddaulas* Sonne of *Adaduddaulas* possessed Bagdad, and imprisoned his brother, and put out his eyes: hauing conquered Bistra, Ahwas, and Wasit in Irac. *Tatus* rested him, An. 377. with his Fathers Dignities. But he dyed, An. 379. and was buried at 40
Cufa. His brother *Abanasor Bahauuddaulas* succeeded and was crowned by *Tatus*, who freed his brother from Prison.

An. 381. *Saaduddaulas* King of Aleppo dyed, and *Abulfadaijl* his Sonne succeeded, who was much molested by the Egyptians, and assisted by the Romanes. *Aziz* the Egyptian dyed An. 385. *Hakem* his Sonne succeeded. *Tatus Lalla* was deposed by *Bahauddaulas*, and *Cadir Billa* inaugurated pretending the resignation of *Tatus*: whereas hee had gone in to him, kissed the ground, and sit downe on a seate by *Tatus* appointment: after which his men came in, and laying hold on the Pomell of his Sword pulled him off his bed, rouled him in the carpet, and carried him away to Prison. Hee had beene *Chalifa* fourteene yeeres nine moneths and sixe dayes. In his time *Aziz* hauing married a Melchite Christian, gaue our Ladies Church from the Iacobites to the Melchites, * which they call the 50
Church of the Patriarke, and her brother *Ieremy* was made Pattiarch of Ierusalem, and her brother *Asenimus* was made Patriarch of the Melchites at Alcahir and Misra.

Tatus deposed.

* They were in the East called *Melchites*, or *Kingsmen*. which followed the religion of the Greeke Emperour, the Iacobites in Circumcision being like Saracens.

Phocas rebelling against *Basilius* the Emperour, he craued helpe of the Russe King, giuing him his Sister in marriage, conditionally to receiue the Christian Religion. *Basilius* sent them Bishops which conuerted him and his People. This was *A. Heg.* 377. *Bardas Phocas* was ouercome and slaine, An. 379. That yeere by an Earthquake the third part of the Temple of Saint *Sophia* at Constantinople fell downe, which Basilius repayred, A. 378. a great tempest happened in Egypt of Wind and Thunder, and such darknesse as had not beene seene. Next morning a Pillar of fire came forth which made the Skie and Earth red, 60
and the Aire was so full of dust that men could scarsly breath.

Russes conuerted. Egyptian tempest.

An.

An. 386. *Iacob* Sonne of *Ioseph*, Counseller of *Aziz* died. Hee had of a Iew become a Muslim, serued *Cafur*, and after his death brought *Muaz* into Egypt. *Aziz* prayed and wept for him, as he deserued.

An. 381. An Earthquake threw downe a thousand houses at Damascus, and a Village neere Balaber sunke downe, and men ranne out of their houses into the fields. It continued seuen dayes. Earthquake.

Ahmed Abulabbas Cadir Billa was the fiue and twentieth *Abbaside Chalifa*, An. 385. *Abulcasim* Counsellor to King *Fachruddaulas*, which of all Counsellours was first called *Partner*, dyed. He writ elegant Epistles and good Verses. *Fachruddaulas* dyed, Anno 387. His Sonne *Rustem*, whom *Cadir* nominated *Maghuddaulas* succeeded him. An. 389. *Mahmud Iamanuddaulas* Sonne of *Sebektekin*, Lord of India, possessed Chorasan, taking it from *Abdulmelic* the last of the *Samanean* Kings. An. 391. *Abulfadzijl* Lord of Aleppo was poysoned, and *Lulu* his Counsellour seised on the State. *Bahauddaulas* after long warre slue *Abunesr*, Sonne of *Azzuddaulas*, and possessed his and his brothers Inheritance. *Cadir* 46. * Began Ian. 13.997.

An. 397. *Walid* of the house of *Ommia*, and Progeny of *Hisham* inuaded *Hakem* Lord of Egypt, surnaming himselfe *Nasir Biamrilla*, but after many battels was slaine. A. 399. *Lulu* Lord of *Haleb* dyed, and his Sonne *Murtadiddaulas* succeeded. An. 401. *Carmas* Gouernour of *Mausil* prayed in the name of *Hakem* Lord of Egypt; and caused the same to be done at Cufa. But vpon *Bahauddaulas* writing the calling of *Cadir Billa* was restored; who sent *Carmas* gifts: and An. 402. published a Writing against the *Chalifas* of Egypt, saying, that their originall was from *Disana*, and that they were *Charigeans*, and had nothing to doe with *Ali* Sonne of *Abutaleb*, proving the same by great Authors, *Radis* and *Murtadia*, *Abuhamid*, &c.

An. 403. *Bahauddaulas* Lord of Irac dyed, and his Sonne *Abusugiaus Sultannaddaulas* was vested in his place. He resided at Sjraz. The Deputy of the Lord of Haleb rebelled, and held the same vnder *Hakem* Lord of Egypt, which was soone after murthered by procurement of his Sister, Daughter of *Aziz*, and *Ali* his Sonne made *Chalif*. This *Hakem* had beene of ill disposition, of no Religion, inconstant in all his businesse, suborning Spies to bring him tales. He forbad that any woman should goe in or out of his house, or shooes to be made for women. He set Mitsra on fire, and commanded the Citizens to bee killed. Their goods were spoyled, Wiues rauished and the fourth part of the Citie was burned. Yet some Fooles cryed to him, *O God, which makest to liue and dye.* Hee afflicted Christians and Iewes, and razed their Temples. Whereupon some became Muslims, and then he gaue them leaue to reuolt to their former Religion. Sixteene thousand acknowledged his Deitie: sollicited thereto by *Muhammed* Sonne of *Ismael*, whom a zealous Turke slue in *Hakems* Chariot. Once; Atheisme and Madnesse were in him combined. His Sonne *Ali* was surnamed *Tahir Lyazz-deniha*. An. 413. the Lord of Haleb was slaine by his Seruant, and *Badir* possessed it, calling himselfe *Waluuddaulas*. But *Tahir* sent an Army against it, and tooke it. Z. writeth that A.H. 408. 300000. Tartars out of China inuaded Asia which were ouerthrowne by *Tagas Chan* a Tartar King & 210000. taken prisoners with China dishes & much spoyle.

An. 415. *Salih* Sonne of *Mardas* got possession of Haleb and Balabec. *Sultanuddaulas* dyed, and his Sonne *Abulcelaughar* succeeded and remayned at *Sjraz*, but his Vncle *Sirafuddaulas* after many battels got Bagdad. An. 420. P *Salih* was slaine by the Egyptian forces, with his Sonne in battell: but his Sonne *Nasr Abucamil Siahluddaulas* held Aleppo. An. 422. *Cadir Billa* the *Chalif* dyed after one and fortie yeeres Reigne: aged eightie sixe. Proud ambition of Deity rewarded. P Irbegannn Ian. 19. A.C. 1029.

In his time *Muhammed* Sonne of *Ismael* the false Prophet had preached *Hakems* Deity: and after his death *Hamza Alhadi* in Egypt and Siria confirmed the same opinions, placing Doctors at Mitsra, giuing all license, to marry their owne Sisters, Daughters, Mothers, and tooke away Fasting, Prayer and Pilgrimage. *Hakem* abstained from Prayers on Fridayes, *Ramadan*, and Feast dayes, forbade Pilgrimage to Mecca: and thus began the Sect of the Daraeans, especially famous at Tyre, Sidon, Mount Berit, and the adioyning places of Syria. Daraean Sect. True beginning of the Dogzijns or Drusians, which are these Daraeans. See my *Pilg. 2. in sec. Caym* 47.

Abdala Abugiafar Caym Biamrilla Sonne of *Cadir* was the six and twentieth *Abasside Chalifa*, created that day on which his Father dyed, being before made partner of the couenant by his Father, and mentioned in publike Prayers by that title. The same yeere 422. King *Gholaluddaulas* Sonne of *Bahauddaulas* came to Bagdad and tooke it, and Prayers were made in his name: *Caim* stiled him *Stabenfiah greatest, King of Kings.* Anno 426. Letters were brought from *Mahmud* Sonne of *Sebuektakin Iamanuddaulas*, that he had taken many Cities in India, that hee had slaine fiftie thousand Infidels, and taken seuentie thousand, and spoyles worth a Million of Gold. Indian Cities taken.

An.427. *Taher* Lord of Egypt died. His Sonne *Maabad Abutamim Mustansir Billa* succeeded being about eight yeeres old; or as some say, sixe, he ruled sixty yeeres. None before had begun so soone, or held out so long. Yet *Abdurrahman* King of Andalusia reigned about so much time.

m It begonne Octob. 3 1038. Beginning of Turkish greatnesse, better & more truly related then in our common stories. M. writeth of this *Mahmuds* great victories against foure Kings in India, and huge spoyles there gotten, & Lahor was subict, &c.

An.430. m began the Princes *Salghucides*. *Muhammed Abutalib Togrulbee* was the first inaugurated of them. His brethren were *Dauid*, *Ghacarbee*, *Fir* and *Arselan*; the Sons of *Michael*, Sonne of *Salghuc*, Sonne of *Dacac* a Turke, who first of that Race embraced Islamisme, and was much employed by the Turkish King in his warres. His Sonne *Salghuc* after his Fathers death was made chiefe Commander of the Turkish Armies: but the King suspecting him sought to slay him, whereupon he fled to *Haron* King of Ghabia, and of him obtayned an Army to inuade those Infidels, but was slaine in battell being a hundred and seuen yeeres old. His Sonne *Michael* with his children abode in *Mauranahar*. Many Turkes acknowledged none other Commander. When *Mahmud* Sonne of *Sebuctakin* King of India passed ouer the Riuer Ghaihon to helpe *Wararehan* King of Mauranahar, hee cast *Michael* into bonds, for refusing to goe with him, promising to set him in Chorasan to keepe it against the enemies: but tooke with him *Michaels* Souldiers, which stayed in his Countrey. *Masud* succeeding his Father *Mahmud* expelled them by an Army: the remainder of these Turkes after *Michaels* death followed *Togrulbee*, who ouerthrew the Army of *Masud*, and pursued them to *Tus*, which Towne hee tooke, the first Towne which came into their hands, wherein they fortified themselues. Thence they went to Nasibur and tooke it. King *Masud* fled into India, and forsaking Chorasan stayed there a long time. The Salghucides subdued Chorasan meane while, and when *Masud* returned they ouerthrew him: whereupon *Caijm Biamrilla* exhorted them to keepe the Region of the Muslims. They ouerthrew *Masud* a second time, and their Empire was established. An.431. *Masud* ouerthrew *Togrulbee*, who returned, An.432. and chasing away *Masud*, enioyed all Chorasan, killing innumerable numbers of men.

An.433. *Muazzuddaulas* the Mardasite possessed *Haleb*, where *Nasr* Sonne of *Salih*, Sonne of *Maidas* had ruled eight yeeres, who was slaine by *Bukkin*, the *Dariraan* in battell, who after came to Haleb and tooke it. This *Dariraan* was a captiue Turke, which comming with Merchants into Syria, was bought by *Darir* the *Dailamites*, and given to the King of Egypt, where by degrees he was promoted to be Commander of the Army. *Masud* King of Chorasan, India and Mauranahar was slaine, and *Muhammed* his brother succeeded, but was slaine by *Mandud* his brothers Sonne.

An.435. foure Captaines Gazians, with a thousand sixe hundred and fifty horsemen ouercame Diarbecr, Mesopotamia and Mausil destroying and spoyling. *Fir Abutaher* died and his Sonne *Abumansor Melocaziz* succeeded at Bagdad. But An.440. *Abunasr* Sonne of *Abucalanghar* which reigned in higher Irac, came and tooke Bagdad, and was crowned by the *Chalifa*. This was the last King of the Boijtes. An.447. the Salghucides began to rule at Bagdad by this meanes. A certaine Turke, *Rustan Abulharith Mutassir* called the *Basasaraan* grew great in Irac, and they prayed in Pulpits in his name, neither remayned any thing but title to the Boijte. Whereupon *Caijm* writ to *Togrulbee* for aide, exhorting him to come thither, which he did. The *Basasaraan* writ to *Mustansir Billa* Lord of Egypt, and prayed in his name at Rahab; he helped him with money. *Togrulbee* tooke the *Boijte Molecrahim* and his Prayer n ceassed, with that Empire which had continued one hundred and twenty seuen yeeres. Prayse be to him whose Empire passeth not away.

Last King of the Boijtes.

n His Prayer is, the dignitie to be mentioned in publike Prayers throw their Kingdomes, & to pray in the *Chalifas* steed.

Anno 448. *Togrulbee* went with an Army to Mausil. At Cusa, Wasit and Ainattamr, Prayer was made in the name of *Mustansir* Lord of Egypt. An.449. *Caijm* crowned *Togrulbee*, so that in both Iracs and Chorasan none stood against him. *Haleb* was deliuered to the Lord of Egypt by *Muazzuddaulas*, because he was not able to hold it. An.450. *Caijm* was deposed vpon this occasion. *Togrulbee* going to Mausil and Nasibin, and his brother *Ibrahim* with him, to whom the *Basasaraan* sent and procured him to rebell vpon promise of the Empire. The *Basasaraan* entred Bagdad with Egyptian banners inscribed, *Prince* Maabad Abutamim Mustansir Billa *Emperour of the faithfull*. On Friday after the thirteenth of *Dulkiada*, Prayer was made in the Cathedrall Temple in name of *Mustansir*. They made a bridge ouer to the East part of the Citie, and did the like at Rusaf. He tooke *Caijms* Counsellour, and clothed him with a woollen Cowle, and long narrow red Hood; set him on a Camell, with skins hanged about his necke, and so carried him thorow Bagdad; one following and beating him, after which they put him in a new flayed Buls hide, setting the hornes on his head, and hanged on hookes, there beaten till he died. *Caijm* fled and his Palace was rifled. On the fourth Friday in *Dulhuggia* was no Prayer in the

Prayer at Bagdad in name of the Egyptian *Chalifa*.

the Temple of the *Chalifa*. In other Temples they prayed in the name of *Mustansir*. *Caijm* was carried to Haijch and there imprisoned.

An.451. the *Basasaraan* tooke Oathes of the Supreme Iudge and Chiefe men to *Mustansir*, Lord of Egypt. That yeere *Togrulbec* ouerthrew and tooke his brother *Ibrahim*, and strangled him with a Bow string, slue many Turkemens his partakers, went to Bagdad against the *Basasaraan*, and carried backe the *Chalifa*, *Togrulbec* holding the bridle of his Mule when he entred Bagdad, from which hee had beene a yeere absent. The *Basasaraan* was gone to *Wasit*, against whom *Togrulbec* sent forces which slue him, and sent his head to Bagdad. King holding the bridle.

An.453. *Togrulbec* desired the *Chalifas* daughter in marriage which he refused, yet after consented. An.455. *Togrulbec* dyed. *Muhammed Olbar salan Adaduddaulas*, Sonne to his brother *Daud* succeeded him. An. 460. *Hasen Abuali* rebelled in Egypt, besieged *Mustansir* in his Tower, and spoyled his goods. An.462. *Mahmud* Lord of Haleb prayed in the name of *Caijm Bamrilla*, and Prince *Azzuddaulas*, which forced him to it, hauing before acknowledged *Mustansir*.

An.463. Prince *Azzuddaulas* went against the Romans with forty thousand horse, tooke *Patricius* their Generall and cut off his nose, and after on a Friday slue innumerable, and tooke the Emperour himselfe, whom hee freed on condition to pay 150000. pieces of Gold, &c. An.464. hee was slaine, hauing passed out of Bagdad with 200000. Souldiers, and commanding to execute a certaine factious Captaine named *Ioseph*, and to set his quarters on foure posts, he reuiled him and rannesuddenly within him, and wounded him with a Knife whereof he dyed. Hee was a Prince fearing God, much in Prayer and Almes, and a defender of Religion. When he was wounded, he said, *I neuer else contended but first begged ayde of God. Yesterday also the earth trembled vnder me, and I said, I am King of the World, neyther is any able to warre with me, and neuer thought of Gods power whereof I aske him forgiueneſſe.* His Sonne *Ghelaluddaulas* succeeded, called *Melicsah*. Anno 467. *Caijm* dyed hauing beene *Chalifa* foure and forty yeeres, seuen moneths and twentie dayes. Roman discomfited. Azzud slaine.

Abdalla Abulcasim Muslada Billa Sonne of *Muhammed*, Sonne of *Caijm Billa* was the seuen and twentieth *Abassan*, and eight and fortieth *Chalifa*, created on the day of his Grandfathers death, An.467. Hee prayed for his Grandfather and buried him. Bagdad in his time flourished, and they prayed in his name in Iaman, Syria and Ierusalem. In his time also the Muslims recouered from the Romans, Raha and Antiochia. *Nasr* succeeded to *Azzuddaulas* in Haleb; who was slaine by his Souldiers (Turkes) after he had reigned a yeere. He was a man liberall to Poets, who no lesse claimed his prayses. His brother *Sabac* succeeded, and was the last of the Mardasian Kings. For *Sarfuddaulas* Lord of Mausil, subdued Haleb, An.472. hauing obtayned leaue of *Ghelaluddaulas Melicsah*; on condition to pay him 300000. peeces of Gold rent out of it. Muslada 48.

Anno 469. *Isam* surnamed *Assiis* hauing subdued Emissa and Damascus with their Territories, went into Egypt, and when *Mustansir Billa* was ready to flee by night, in a battell the Egyptians ouerthrew him. Hee returned full of indignation killing whom hee could, three thousand at Ierusalem: and was forced to compound with *Ghelaluddaulas* who had thought to haue taken Syria from him. Yet An.472. *Tagiuddaulas* brother to *Ghelaluddaulas* slue him and possessed Damascus, the Inhabitants whereof returned from the places of their dispersions, caused by *Isam* his tyrannies. But he rebelling, An.477. against *Ghelaluddaulas* takin *Murma*, drinking Wine in the Temple in *Ramadan*, was besieged, taken and cast into Prison. Who after, Anno 478. got Haleb and Syria in possession.

An. 483. *Baijma* * inuaded certaine Castles of the Barbarians and Arabs, and tooke them. Many adioyned themselues to his Sect, and hee in the name of the people was inaugurated and grew potent. King *Ghelaluddaulas* exacted obedience of him by his Embassadour with threatnings. He called some of his followers in presence of the Legate, and bade one young man to kill himselfe, which he did: another he commanded to throw himselfe from a high Tower, whereby also hee was broken in pieces. Then said hee to the Legate, I haue 70000. Subiects thus obseruant, and let this be my answere. This answere caused the King to leaue him, and filled him with feare. They therefore proceeded and inuaded diuers Castles, tooke Alamut, and made that their chiefe Seat. An.485. *Ghelaluddaulas* dyed hauing reigned twenty yeeres and some moneths. He was witty, sincere, full of Pietie, diminished Tributes, forbade iniuries, caused Bridges, Highwayes and Riuers to be made, and the Temple of Bagdad to be built, called the Kings Temple, and the *Hamidsaan* College which he enriched with many benefits. He obtayned many victories, and from the furthest confines of the Turkes to Ierusalem, and the end of *Iamar* his Empire was extended, the wayes were secured, the wronged were righted, and the wrong-doers held in awe:

* Perhaps the *Bedwines* a rouing sort and rogueing Sect of Arabs, receiued name of him. See of them my *Pilgrims, tom 2. li. 7. cap. 6. Iebudi Cafire &c.* But it is manifest of the Assassines (See my *Pilgrimage. l. 2. in fine*) which hence received those inhumane orders of obedience more then disobedient, both of self-killing & of Prince-killing, vpon command.

awe: the meaneſt woman and pooreſt had their complaints heard. When hee had gone to the Sepulchre of *Ali*, Sonne of *Moſes* at Tus to pray, *Netawulmelic* his Counſellour being with him, being asked if he prayed not for victory againſt his brother then in rebellion, he faid no, but his Prayer was this, *O Almightie God, if my brother bee more conuenient for the good of the Muſlims then I, giue him victorie ouer me: but if I be fitter then he for their profit, make me to bane the vpper hand.* His Sonne *Muhammed* not ſixe yeeres old, ſucceeded in Bagdad by his order and his mothers care (which was Regent) with the *Chaliſas* confirmation, and Prayer was made in his name. *Taginddaulas* inaugurated himſelfe, but was refused by the *Chaliſa*.

Ichegan Ian. 21.109.

An.487. *Barcuna* Mother of *Mahmud* dying, *Barkiaruc* another Sonne of *Gielaluddaulas* went to Bagdad, and chaled away his brother *Mahmud*. *Muſtadi* dyed hauing continued *Chaliſa* nineteene yeeres, fiue moneths and fiue dayes. He was skilfull in Religion and ſtudious of learned men, and made excellent Verſes. In his time *Michael* was made Patriarke of the Iacobites at Alexandria, in whoſe time Nilus failing, *Muſtanſir* ſent him into Æthiopia with many gifts: the King came to meet him, and receiued him reuerently, enquiring the cauſe of his comming; & learning the ſtate of Egypt through want of Nilus wonted ouerflowings, he cauſed the place to be opened where the waters had been turned aſide: and Nilus increaſed in one night three yards, k ſo that their fields in Egypt were watered and lowne. And the Patriarke returned with great honour from both Kings of Æthiopia and Egypt.

Note of Nilus diuerted in Ethiopia.

k *Brichia.*

Muſtaſir 49. Z. *Muſtetabir.* Z. he reigned ſixty yeeres.

Ahmed Abulabas Muſtaſir Billa Sonne of *Muſtadi* ſucceeded in the *Chaliſate*. *Muſtanſir* Lord of Egypt dyed, and his Sonne *Ahmed Abulcaſem Muſtaali Billa* ſucceeded. A. 488. *Taginddaulas* hauing after bloudy battels betwixt them ſlaine *Ieſanear*, and poſſeſſed *Haleb*, minded to inuade Irac, was encountred and ſlaine by his Nephew *Barkiaruc*, who was now crowned, and hereby confirmed in his Empire. *Taginddaulas* had ſent to Bagdad to procure his inauguration, *Ioſeph* Sonne of *Arſac* a Turke, which committed great ſpoiles in thoſe parts, but hearing of his Maſters death, fled to Haleb, where *Roduwan* Sonne of *Taginddaulas* ſucceeded his Father, and was ſurnamed *Fecharulmelic*, that is, *the glory of the Kingdome*: his brother *Decac* alſo ſtiled himſelfe *Siemſulmulue*, that is, the *Sunne of Kings*; he poſſeſſed Damaſcus. An.489. *Roduwan* with a purpoſe to get Damaſcus, acknowledged the Egyptian *Chaliſa*, but he reuolted when he received of him no aſſiſtance in the ſiege thereof.

The Frankes or Weſterne Armies winne Ieruſalem. Hence all Weſterne europeans in all the Eaſt are ſtill called Franks, becauſe firſt & moſt out of that Nation, & by the Counſell of Clarémontoiſhis voyage was begun *A.H.* 493. began Nou. 27. *A.D.* 1099. *A.H.* 494 No. 6 1100.

An.492. the Frankes inuaded the Muſlims Countries, tooke Ieruſalem, conquered Antiochia, ſlue the King of Maarranaman, which remayned in their hands till the yeere 522. when *Ababak Elſabyd* (on whom God haue mercy) tooke it from them. They went to Ramla and tooke it. They ſet forth to Ieruſalem. An.491. and burned the Iewes which were there in their Temple, and killed 70000. Muſlims, and took out of the *Sachra* forty ſiluer Lampes, each of which weighed three thouſand ſixe hundred drammes, beſides a ſiluer Furnace of forty pounds, and twenty Lampes of Gold. Ieruſalem remayned ſubiect to them ninety one yeeres, till King *Ioſeph Nazir Saladine*, Sonne of *Ioh*, on whom God haue mercy, recouered it, An.583. *Muhammed* Sonne of *Gielaluddaulas* poſſeſſed himſelfe of Bagdad, and ouerthrew his brother *Barkiaruk*.

An.493. and An.494. the Frankes tooke Hijta by force, and Arſuf by compoſition, and the moſt part of the Sea Coaſt was ſubiect to them. An.495. *Muſtali Billa* Prince of Egypt dyed. *Berar* his brother poſſeſſed himſelfe of Alexandria, and was there inaugurated by *Afiekme*. But *Afdal* warred on him and tooke him Priſoner, and inaugurated *Ali Abulmanſor* Sonne of *Muſtali*, then but fiue yeeres elde; *Afdal* being his Protector. This yeere the Frankes beſieged Tripolis, and the Muſlims which came to their ayde from Damaſcus, were put to flight. Anno 496. King *Barkiaruk* mouued againſt his Brother King *Muhammed* which was at Iſfahan and there beſieged him, but was forced to depart for want of prouiſion. They after met in battell, and *Muhammed* was ouerthrowne, and *Barkiaruk* againe raigned at Bagdad. *Decac* that yeere got poſſeſſion of *Emeſſa Hoſein* the Lord thereof, leauing *Rodueans* friendſhip and taking part with *Decac*; whereupon three men were ſent from *Batyna*, which killed him on a Friday in the Temple, whereof *Decac* hearing went to Emeſſa and got it. An.497. *Decac* dyed of eating a Grape, pricked with a poyſoned Needle by a treacherous woman. *Ababacuc Tagtakin* ſurnamed *Tabiruddin* enioyed Damaſcus. The Frankes wanne Acca by helpe of the ſhips of the Frankes of Genus, *Zabrudaulas* being there then Commander vnder the Egyptian. An.498. King *Barkiaruk* dyed, who had ruled ouer Irac and the Land of the Barbarians, leauing his Kingdome to his Sonne *Gilaluddaulas* vnder the Regencie of *Ejad. Muhammed* hearing of his brothers death went to Bagdad, and after compoſition on both parts, ſlue

Batyna author of the Aſſaſſines.

flue *Eyad*, and then ruled without Cornuall, crowned by the Emperour of the faithfull. An. 01. He flue *Sadeca Seifuddin* Prince of Hella. An. 502. the Frankes wanne Tripolis after seuen yeeres siege; a Citie full of Mussimi and learned men before the siege. An. 503. the Frankes tooke Acad and Minartar and Beryt. An. 504. they tooke Sidon and Ramij, and their Kingdome prospered in Syria, enuying all the Sea Coast. *Muhammed* lent *Mudud* against them, who approching to Damascus was ouerthrowne by *Baiyna* in the yeere 505. An. 507. *Rodawan* dyed, and *Taguddamlas Atzathis* Sonne succeeded, who was slaine An. 508. and *Lulu* possessed the Citie. Frankes victories.

An. 509. *Abubac* Lord of Damascus went to Bagdad to offer his seruice to *Mustadir* the *Chalifa*, and to King *Muhammed*. *Lulu* was killed, and the Scribe of *Abumaels* Army held the Tower of Haleb. But, An. 511. Haleb came into the possession of *Bulgar*, Sonne of *Ayse*, which held it fiue yeeres. At that time dyed King *Muhammed* at Isfahan leauing eleuen Millions of Gold, and as much in goods to his Sonne *Mahmud Abulcasem*. And Prayer was made in his name at Bagdad. An. 512. *Mustadir* the *Chalifa* dyed, leaving enuoyed that place foure and twenty yeeres three moneths. He loued learned men, forgaue wrongs, was eloquent, and much in Almes.

A Note of the Authours Parentage.

IN the time of Biamrilla *on*s Tijb *a Syrian Merchant, a Christian came into Egypt and abode at Alcahir. His Sonne* Carwijn *was a Notarie, and followed the Court, got a Sonne which he called* Abultijb, *which also proueda Notary of note at Alcahir, and serued the Arabike Senate. He had fiue Sonnes, of which foure were made Bishops, but* Abulmecarim *the youngest delighted in Husbandry and breeding of cattel, and had aboue a thousand Hives of Bees. Hee married the Sister of* Simeon *a Notary which serued* Ioseph Saladine, Anno 569. *and after betooke him to a Monasterie in the mids whereof he inclosed himselfe in a place which he had builded, and therein liued aboue thirty yeeres.* Macarim *had three Sonnes, the second of which* Abulinser Elamid *was the Father of the Chronicle Writer.* Macarem *succeeded* Simeon *when he became an Heremite, in his Notaries place in the Court vnder King* Abubecr Elaadil Seiffuddin *Sonne of* Iob, *and dyed,* Anno 636 *God rest all, heir soules.*

A continuation of the former Storie out of Mirkond *the Persian, and* Abraham Zacuth *a Iew to the end of the* Chalifa's.

IN *Mustasirs* time Bagdad was ruined by the ouerflowing of Tigris, whereupon it was remoued and new builded on the East side of the Riuer, where it stands more commodiously then before. It is remarkable, of fiue and twenty *Chalifas* since the foundation that none dyed therein. The Astrologers had threatned, saith *Zacuth*, a flood next to that of *Noah*; then said one of them, there were seuen Planets in coniunction with *Pisces*, now but fixe; whereupon they feared the low situation of Bagdad, and stopped the water-passages. Also the Ismaelites which went on Pilgrimage on deuotion to their Sinnerie were most of them drowned. The *Chalifa* honoured that Astrologer with Royall Vestis. Toledo, Sicilia and some Cities of Africa were recouered from the Saracens by the Christians. *Mustaeth* King of Egypt dyed. *Elamin Babichan* fiue yeeres old succeeded, *Aphizala* the *Visir* gouerning. *Mirk.* *Zac.*

Musterasched Sonne of *Mustetaher* succeeded his Father in the *Chalifate*, *Anno Hegira*, 512. He made warre with *Masud Salmanus* King of Korasan, and was by him taken and slaine, An. 529. *Raschid* or *Rached* succeeded in the *Chalifate*, quarrelled with succeeding *Masud* came to Bagdad, and made *Almostasfy Billa Chalifa*, who after *Masuds* death warred on the Persian Prouinces, where he recouered much with little labour. *Noradin* got Haleb, and the parts adioyning on Antioch. *Elaphis* succeeded *Elamir* his Father in Egypt, after him the parts adioyning on Antioch. *Elaphis* a child of fiue yeeres, whom the *Visir* enthronized, *Etzaphar*, who being slaine, *Elphaiz* a child of fiue yeeres, whom the *Visir* enthronized, *Noradin* tooke Damascus. An. 552. great Earthquakes in Syria. An. 554. great inundation at Bagdad and other Cities. Anno 555. *Muktaphi* the *Chalifa* dyed. *M. Almostarsch Billa* An. 529. *Rached* 531. *Mustasfie almostasfi* 532. *Mustaeth* 533.

Mustenged or *Almostanget Billa Iussef* his Sonne succeeded. *Elphaiz* King of Egypt dyed, and his Sonne *Etzaar Iedin Allahi* last of the Phetimizans succeeded. *Asaredin Schiraduch* succeeded, one of the *Curds*. *Noradin* sent his *Visir* and subdued Egypt. Yet *Iosuph Asar Eddaui* brothers Sonne was constituted King of Egypt by the *Chalifa*. *Baharon* succeeded *Mustaeged* 553.

ceeded *Masud* in Korasan, a learned man which writ Bookes in Philosophy. He was martiall also, and made some enterprizes in India and Persia. *Kozrao* his Sonne followed, but by reason of some broyles went to Lahor in India, and there dyed, Anno 555. His Sonne
Almostanz. 554. *Kozrao Melic* succeeded in Lahor. In him the *Sabuticqui* ended, Anno 563. The *Chalipha* dyed suffocated in a bath, Anno 566. His Sonne *Mustezir* succeeded: in whose time the *Chaliphas* of Bagdad were restored in Egypt, which the Phetimæans had before abolished.
Nathar 55. He dyed, Anno 575. *Natzar* his Sonne succeeded. *Saladine* retcovred Ierusalem, *A. Hegira* 586. and conquered all the Cities of Mesopotamia to *Nissibis*. He dyed, Anno 589. His Kingdome was diuided amongst his three Sonnes. *Elaphatzal* had Damascus and Palæstina. *Elachis* Egypt, Taher Giazi Halep. The Tartars made prey of Turon and Agem.
Tabet 56. *Natzar* dyed, Anno 622. and *Tabet* his Sonne enioyed the place nine moneths. In this time flourished in Egypt *Rabbeun Mose*, Sonne of *Maimon* of Corduba.
Mustenatzer 57 Tartars. *Mustenatzer* succeeded, a iust Prince and Almesgiuer, which built many Schooles. The Tartars ouerranne Asia, Russia, Polonia and vexed Germany; another Army inuaded Syria. *Baba* professed himselfe a Prophet sent of God, and gathering rude multitudes to him, filled Asia with slaughter and emptinesse, till hee was slaine by *Gyatheddin* King of Gunia. The *Chaliph* dyed, Anno 640. and his Sonne *Musseatzem* succeeded the last of the *Chaliphas* of Bagdad, slaine by *Halocho* the Tartar, Anno 655. *Elmutam* King of Egypt by the Turkes conspiracie was driuen into a Towre, which they set on fire: to auoyde which hee leaped into the water vnderneath, and was both scorched and drowned. Thence forwards the Slaues (Mamalukes) ruled in Egypt. At the conquest of Bagdad, the Tartars are said to haue slaine (in those parts) 1600000. persons.
Almostaccem 58. End of the *Chalifas* both in Bagdad and Egypt. They which succeeded were as subiects to the seuerall Monarchs, as Patriarchs amongst Christians, &c.

A briefe continuation of the Saracens in Spaine, out of Rodericus Toletanus *and others to the failing of the* Ommian *Race and Empire.*

THe Saracens did not so extirpate Christianitie in their Conquests, but that such as would bee subiect to their Tributes and Exactions might enioy their consciences: whereupon not only Asia remayned in great part Christian till the Tartarian Deluge, and some also till this day in Nestorian, Armenian, Iacobite, and other Sects, but euen in Africa, where blacke darknesse most preuailed on mens bodies and soules, some Christians continued, and doe to this day thorow so many Saracenicall Generations. In Marocco in the times of *Ferdinand* the holy, and of *John* the first, diuers Christian Families were found, and in Tunis also when *Charles* the fift in the former age conquered it, aboue eight hundred yeeres after the first conquest by Muhammedans. Their course (as is in Turkie now) is by degrees, with discountenance, disgrace and oppression of their persons, and exaltation of their owne, which rather vnrippeth then renteth asunder, and vntieth then with Sword of extremest Persecution choppeth in sunder that knot of Christian Religion: herein the Westerne Antichrist being the more dangerous enemy to Christian veritie, as more in thew pretending, but more eagerly and irreconciliably with open warres, tumultuous Massacres, and direct-indirect workings and vnderminings seeking to extirpare the contrary profession. Brethren false out are the most implacable enemies. In Spaine also so few Arabians could not people so large a Countrey, but a deluge of African Grashoppers leaped ouer that Sea with them, and although 700000. are said to haue beene slaine in that first Spanish Inuasion, yet the rest enioyed their Churches and Deuotions still, with Tributes. In Toledo they had seuen Christian Churches left them, with Iudges of their owne Nation and Religion. These Christians were called *Musarabes* of *Musa* the first Conquerour, and *Arab-African* Commander which sent *Tarie* thither, whose Lyturgie is extant, yea still obserued for antiquities sake in the great Church of Toledo. This *Musa* or *Muza* is reckoned the first Arabian Gouernour in Spaine, who being reuoked by *Walid Abdulazis* Sonne of *Musa* was by his Father left to gouerne Spaine, who married the wife of *Rodericus* the Spanish King, and by her perswasion crowned himselfe King, whereupon the Arabs killed him at his Prayers, and *Ayub* succeeded in the Gouernment, who remoued the Courts from Siuill to Corduba. But the *Chaliphs* elected him, and placed *Alabor*, who seuerely exacted on the first conquerours of Spaine (*Musa* hauing by *Tarrics* complaints incurred disgrace, and dying of griefe) that what spoyles those spunges had sucked, he squeased out of them, & made them to vomit again their sweet morsels.
See my Pilgrimes tom. 2.
Turquet l. 6.
Musarabes.
See Bibliotheca Patrum.
Rodericus.
Muza 1.
Abdulazis 2.
Ayub. 3.
Alabor 4.
Zama 5. *Zama* succeeded three yeeres in the Spanish Gouernment, who made a Booke of the Reuenues of Spaine, and of *Gallia Narbonensis* also. For hee passed into France, placed a Gar-

Garrison at Narbona, besieged Tolouse, but by *Eudo* was slaine and his Arabs chased, which chose *Abderramen* for their Leader. Whiles they had feasted themselues with hopes of Gorike Gaule, and conquered it in manner from the Pirenean hils to the Alpes, *Pelagius, Ximenes* and others laid hold of such places as fitted their purposes in Spaine and beganne pettie Kingdomes therein since vnited into one Souereignetie after many ages. *Asam* Son of *Melke* succeeded in Spaine, who imposed the fifts on all conquered places for the *Chalifes* treasury, and the tenthsof such as yeelded. He being slaine, *Ambiza* succeeded, *Anno Hegira* 103. and made many inrodes into France, imposing to that purpose double tributes on the Christians.

Pelagius King of Oviedo. *Ximeres* King of Arragon. *Arem* 6. *Ambiza* 7.

10 *Iahya* ruled two yeeres and halfe; and after him *Odysa*, who did little worthy memory. Next was sent *Temen*, *Anno Heg.* 111. which ruled but fiue moneths, and *Autuman* succeeded foure moneths, and then followed *Alhayam* tenne moneths, who after many tortures and derisions dyed in Prison: and *Mahomet Abenabdalla* ruled two moneths, to whom succeeded *Abderramen*. He entred France as farre as Rhodanus, at Arles slue many, committed great spoyles in Poitiers and Xantonge. *Eudo* Duke of Aquitaine (which some say had brought in the Saracen, and on the day of battell forsooke them) ioyning with *Charles Martell* against them, assisted with the Germans, ouerthrew them; some say aboue three hundred thousand of them were slaine, with that their Generall. *An. H.* 116. *Abdelmelic* succeeded foure yeeres, and then *Ocha* or *Ancupa*, *An.* 119. and after him *Abdelmelic* 2-

Iahya 8. *Odysa* 9. *Temen* 10. *Autuman* 11. *Alhayam* 12. *Abenabdalla* 13 *Abderramen* 14. *Abdelmelic* 15. 17.

20 gaine was replenished Spaine out of Africa, after much depopulations; but hee being slaine in ciuill combustions, *Abulcatar* was sent Gouernour, *An.* 125. who was slaine by *Zimael*, and *Tohan* was placed in his roome. *Eudo* being dead, his Sonnes dispossessed by the French of their Inheritance, called the Saracens againe into Gaule, who spoyled the whole Countrey betwixt the Pyrenees and the Riuer Loire, Languedoc and Prouence, seised also on Auignon, but were againe chased by *Charles Martell*.

Ocha 16. *Abulcatar* 18. *Tohan* 19.

An. H. 128. *Thoaba* ruled Spaine one yeere. *Iusepb* succeeded. At this time the *Ommian* Race was dispossessed of the *Chalifate*, and that of *Abbas* succeeded, *Abderramen* of the *Ommian* Family possessed himselfe of Spaine, after which it was separated from the Asian *Chalifate*, and became a Kingdome, and these *Ommians* called themselues *Emir elmumenine*.

Thoaba 20.

30 This was *An. H.* 142. In the yeere 149. he began the Mezquit at Corduba, the chiefe of all others in his Dominion. *An.* 171. hee dyed and was buried at Corduba. He left eleuen Sons and nine Daughters. *Ison* the eldest succeeded, and warred on his brother *Zulema*, whom he put to flight. He tooke Toledo. *Zulema* sold all his challenge in Spaine, and passed the Sea to Barbary, as did *Abdalla* also another brother. *Ison*, *An.* 177. sent *Abdelmelic* with a great Army into France, which spoyled and subdued Narbone with so great a part of the Countrey, that *Ison* perfected with the fifths of those spoyles the Temple of Corduba which his Father had begun. The Christians also of Narbone carried earth thither from their owne Countrey. He built the bridge at Corduba. He was munificent and iust. He prospered in France, warred with *Alfonsus* King of Gallicia, and hauing reigned seuen yeeres

40 seuen moneths and seuen dayes dyed, leauing his Kingdome to his Sonne *Alhacam*, *A.* 179. He was wise and fortunate, had seuen thousand Slaues for his Guard, three thousand Renegadoes, and two thousand Eunuchs; he personally iudged poore mens causes, and was liberall in almes. He ouercame in battell *Zulema* and *Abdalla* his Vncles, slue one and subiected the other. He dyed, *An.* 206. leauing nineteene Sons and one and twenty Daughters. *Abderramen* his Sonne succeeded. He recouered the Townes which in late Schismes the Christians had gotten. *An.* 229. fifty ships and fifty foure Gallies arriued at Lisbone. The next yeere a greater number of ships came and besieged Siuill, and often fought with the Arabs, and spoyled their Dominions with fire and sword, carrying away euery thing of value, and killing very many. *Abderramen* had a great battell with them, but neither

Ships of Danes (as our Stories call them, or Normans, or others) infest Spaine.

50 part preuayled. *An.* 236. Corduba was paued, and water brought thither in pipes of lead. *Abderramen* dyed, *An.* 238. leauing fiue and forty Sonnes and two and forty Daughters. *Mahomet* his Sonne succeeded, who much preuayled against the Christians, slue many, and *An.* 245. tooke Toledo by composition. Sixty Norman ships that yeere burned Gelzirat, Alhadia and the Mezquits, and thence proceeded into Africa, and there committed many spoyles, after which they returned and wintred in Spaine, and in the Spring wen home. *An.* 273. *Mahomet* dyed, and left thirty foure Sonnes and twenty Daughters, of which *Almundir* succeeded, and dying two yeeres after, *Abdalla* his brother reigned fiue and twenty yeeres. After his death *Abderramen* Sonne of *Mahomet*, Sonne of *Abdalla* succeeded, *An.* 300. and reigned fifty yeeres. He called himselfe *Almunacer Ledinella*,

60 that is, *Defender of the Law of God*, and *Amiramomem*, or, *King of the beleeuers*. Hee was mightie, tooke Septa in Africa, adorned the Mezquit of Corduba and many others. His Sonne

Sonne *Alhacam* succeeded, *An.* 350. whom they surnamed *Almuztacarbille*, that is, *Defending himselfe with God*, *An.* 366. *Ifen* his Sonne succeeded. He entitulled himselfe *Almuhayatbille*, *Labouring with God.* He being vnder eleuen yeeres of age, *Mahomet Ibne Abenhamir* was made Protector or Regent, in their stile *Albagib*, or Viceroy which ruled all, and of his fortunate victories was called *Almanzor*, two and fiftie times he led armies against the Christians. His Sonne *Abdelmalic* succeded in his Office, *An.* 393. and held it six yeeres and nine moneths. The King was little more then titular. After him *Abderramen* his brother, who forced *Ifen* to nominate him his Successor, and was soone after slaine. Then followed diuisions in the State. *Ifen* being shut vp and reported dead, by *Mahomet Almahadi* which domineered. The Earle *Saucius* helped the aduerse faction of *Zuleman*, and slue of *Almahadis* part 36000. Neither could *Ifen* bee accepted whom *Almahadi* now brought forth, but *Zuleman* entred Corduba and possessed the Throne, which *Almahadi* in a great battell recouered, *Anno* 404. but lost it soone after with his life, and *Ifen* was restored. *Alhameri* was made *Alhagibar* Viceroy. The Countrey was spoyled and neere Corduba, almost dispeopled by Barbarians, *Zuleman* also and *Almahadis* Sonne in diuers parts doing much harme, against whem *Ifen* hired Earle *Sarcius*, restoring six Castles to him which *Alcanzor* had taken. *Zuleman* was Corduba, and *Ifen* fled into Africa. Now was all in combustion, *Ali*, *Alcazim*, *Hyahya*, *Cazim*, *Mahomet*, *Abderramen*, *Mahomet*, *Hyahya*, *Irtu*, *Ifen*, successiuely starting in and out of the Throne; so that the Kingdome of Corduba failed, and euery man made himselfe Master of his charge, and vsurped what he could. The Ommian Race fayling, the Almoratides of Africa, *An.* 484. possessed the Kingdome, *Ioseph* Sonne of *Tessephin*, being called to helpe one against the other, and taking all into his owne dominion. He made Morocco his Seat Royall. *Ali* his Sonne succeeded, and *Tessephim* his Sonne was deposed, *An.* 539. The Almoades extinguished the Almoraiides. After many changes and chances the Realme of Granado was erected, which continued aboue two hundred and fifty yeeres vnder these Kings successiuely, *Mahomet Alen Alhamar*, *Mir Almus*, *Aben Azar*, *Aben Lenin*, *Ismael*, *Mahumet*, *Ioseph*, *Lagus*, *Mahumet*, *Mah. Guadix*, *Ioseph*, *Balua*, *Ioseph*, *Aben Azar Mah.* the little, *Ioseph*, *M. Aben Ozmen*, *Ismael*, *Muley Alboracen*, *Mah. Boabdelin*, *Muley Boabdelin* expelled by *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*, A. 1492.

A Relation of the Kings of Barbary after the ending of the Egyptian Califas, *to the present Xeriffian Family, taken out of a Spanish Booke of that argument.*

Abilbac 1. A*bilbac* was the first King *Merin* in Fez. He had Sonnes *A Bucar* and *Iacob Bucar*, the which *Iacob* was Lord of Ramatto, and *Abilbac* left his Kingdome in his life time to his Sonne *Bucar*.

Bucar 2. *Bucar* had for Sonne *Tabia*. This *Bucar* ouercame King *Abiolcader*, and dyed in the battell, and he said *Tabia* was King vnder protection of his Vncle *Iacob* which was Lord of Ramatto.

Tabia 3. *Iacob Aben Ioseph* 4. *Tabia* dyed a child without issue, and the said *Iacob Bucar* his Vncle remayned King, which afterward caused himselfe to be called *Muley Xeb*, which signifieth *old King*. This King built *new Fez*, which is called the *white Citie*, hee ouercame *Budebus*, King of Marweccos, and sometimes was Lord of Tremesen, Tumbe, and Sojumenza, and in the yeere of our Lord 1264. he entred Spaine, being called by the King of Granado. Hee had three Sonnes, *Abuçait*, *Aben Iacob*, and *Aben Iucef Abuçaat*.

Abuçayt 5. *Abuçayt* after that his father had gained Tremezen was left for King there, he had one Son a child whose name is not knowne, and *Abubamo* begotten vpon a Christian woman.

Aben Iacob 6. *Abuçait* reigning in Tremezen, his father *Iacob Aben Iucef* dyed, and his younger Son *Aben Iacob* reigned in his steed in Marweccos, Sojumenza and Algarue, and besieged Tremezen against his brother *Abuçaat*, and the said *Aben Iacob* left two Sonnes *Abucale* and *Aliborregira*, which afterward was drowned by *Aborabes*.

Abucalee the eldest Sonne of *Aben Iacob*, had a Sonne called *Abuhamer* who dyed and was neuer King himselfe. But left two Sons *Bothey*, and *Aborabes*, both which were Kings.

The Child 7. *Abuçaat* dying at the end of foure yeeres, left as I said before two Sonnes, the eldest for vnderstanding we call, *the Old*, who reigned a yeere and a halfe after the death of his father, and dyed without issue, and *Abubamo* which afterward was King in his steed.

Abubamo 8. The foresaid child being dead, his brother *Abubamo* reigned in his steed, who afterward was called *Abubertab*, and his Vncle *Aben Iacob* besieged him in Tremezen seuen yeeres, after whose death the siege was raysed, and the said *Abubamo* afterward with the ayde of D. *Iayme* of Aragon gained *(Ceuet)* in the yeere of our Lord 1310.

After

After that *Aben Iacob* was dead, his Sonne *Abucalee* tooke possession of the *new Cite*, but his Vncle for hatred that he bore him, caused them to receiue for King *Botheyd* who was Sonne vnto *Abubamer* that dyed, and neuer had beene King himselfe, and the said *Botheyd* pursued *Abucalee* and slue him, and reigned after him. *Botheyd* after that his Vncle had saluted him for King dyed without issue. After that *Botheyd* was dead, the Christians rayled his brother *Aborabe* for King. Then the Moores would haue had *Ali Berregira* King, younger Sonne to *Aben Iacob* which was the sixt King, and so after much warres betweene them, at length *Aborabee* ouercame him and commanded him to bee drowned. And after *Aborabee* had reigned two yeeres he dyed without issue. *Abucalee* 9. *Botheyd* 10. *Aborabee* 11.

10 After *Aborabee* dyed, his great Vncle *Aben Iucef Abuçayt* was made King in Fez, hee had two Sonnes, *Abobali* and *Abubaçen*. This *Aben Iucef Abuçait* gained many Cities in Spaine, in the yeere of our Lord 1318. and 1322. *Abobali* wounded his father in the warres, and made himselfe to bee called King of Fez, and his father being sicke besieged him, and they came to agreement that his father should giue him Sojumensa, and the halfe of the treasure of Fez, and his father should remayne with Marweccos, Algarue and Fez. The said *Abobali* had two Sonnes, *Buzayn* and *Bahamon*. *Aben Iusefe Abuçait* 12. which conquered Spaine.

Albubazen was received for King in the life of his father, for his brother *Abobali* was disinherited for wounding his father. This *Albubaçen* had three Sonnes *Abinmalec*, *Abtolrahmon* and *Abubenan*, he was King of Fez, Marueccos, Algarue, Sojumenza, Tremezen 20 and Tunes. *Abtulmalic* was King of Algezira, he past into Spaine in the yeere of our Lord 1340. and was ouercome by the Christians, which they call (*La vittoria del salido*) and in the warres of *Xeres* hee dyed. *Abtolramon* his other brother rose with the Citie Mequines, and his Father cut off his head. *Albubazen* 13.

Abubenan rose with the Kingdome of Fez, and fought against his father *Albubaçen*, & ouercame him, he made in Fez the Colledge which is called, *The Colledge of Abubenan*. He had three Sonnes *Muley Buçayt*, and *Muley Zaat*, and *Iacob*. *Abubenan* 14.

Abuçayt sent his brother *Zaat* to succour Gibraltar, who was taken Prisoner by the Kings of Granada, and *Abuçayt* was killed by his owne subiects, leauing one Sonne called *Abtilhac*. *Abuçayt* 15.

Zaet vnderstanding the death of his brother, got liberty and ayde of the King of Grada, and recouered Fez. *Zaet* 16.

30 After the death of *Zaet*, *Abtilhac* Sonne of *Abuçayt* was King, who was slaine by treason, by one of his owne subiects, who thought to vsurpe the Kingdome, but *Zaet Benimerine* next heire vnto *Abtilhac*, recouered it again e by force of armes within few moneths, and put to death the Vsurper. *Abtilhac* 17.

Zaet left for heires two Sonnes, *Muley Mahamet*, and *Muley Nacer*. *Muley Mahomet* succeeded his father in the King dome, and had two Sonnes to wit, *Muley Abmat*, and *Muley Naçant*. *Muley Abmat* succeeded his father, and had one Daughter called *Lalalu*, (which was forced to marry with the *Xarife*, and dyed without issue, for griefe of the 40 death of her father) and three Sonnes, *Muley Bucar* which dyed in the warre, when King *Buhason* recouered Fez, and *Muley Muhamet*, and *Muley Alcafery* which was King vpon conditions in the absence of his father and brethren, when they were Prisoners fiue yeeres in the hand of the *Xarife*. *Zaet* 18. *Mahamet* 19. *Abmat* 20.

Muley Buhason was King of *Velos de la Gomera*, and after that Fez was lost by *Abmat*, hee by the ayde of *Salbarres*, Gouernour of Argiers recouered it again, hee was slaine by treason by one of his Guard in a battell against the *Xarife*. He left three Sonnes *Muley Naçar* a Bastard, and *Muley Mahamet* which was his eldest Sonne legitimate, and *Muley Tabia* which yet liueth. *Buhason* 21.

Muley Mahamet succeeded his father, but was presently forced to flye, leauing the *Xa-* 50 *rife* in possession of all his estates, and dying within few yeeres left one Sonne a child called *Muley Halal*, which is this present * pretender. *Mahamet* 22.

Muley Halal being a child was carried to the Mountaines of Tarudante, beeing named for King, but being not able to recouer his estate, nor able to resist the power of the *Xarife*, he fled into Christendome, where he yet remayneth, together with his Vncle *Muley Tabia*, who being Sonne vnto a Christian woman, fled presently into Christendome with his mother, when his father King *Buhason* was slaine as aforesaid. * When this Spanish Booke was written. *Halal* 23.

60 FINIS.

AN ALPHABETICALL TABLE OF THE PRINCIPALL THINGS CONTAYNED IN THIS WORKE.

A

Arons *Priesthood*, 121.122.
Abares *a* Scythian Nation, 363 *Their descent, & Habitation, ibid.*
Abas *the* Persian *King*, 386.387. *An appendix touching him out of Sir* Anthoney Sherley, 388 389. *& seq. His dealing with the* Turke *and* Christians, *and Iesuits lyes of him*, 394.395
Abasian *Line of* Chaliphas, 235
Abassia, *vide* Æthiopia.
Abasens, 225
Abasian Chaliphaes, 236
Abassine, *or Abissine, why so called*, 734. *and* Elhabashi, *ibidem, Their Language and Arabian Offspring, ibid. They know not the ancient Letters in the* Æthiopian *Monuments*, 237 *The severall Countries of* Abassia, 749. *Rivers, Lakes, ibid. Soyle, Fruits, Creatures*, 750. *Customes private and publike*, 751. *Their estimation of blacke*, 721. *Their pretentiuseries*, 752
Abdalla *Father of* Mahumet, 241 245
Abdalmutalif, Mahumets *Master, or as some say, his Grandfather*, 241
Abdimelec, 234. *His acts, ibid.*
Abdul Mumen, 692. *He intituled himselfe the Prince of Believers, ibid.*
Abed Ramon, *his Acts*, 324.705
Abels *Sacrifice reflected how*, 28 *Abbies built in* Turkie, 282.208 *in* Iapon, 597.598. *vide Monasteries.*
Abis, *a strange accident there*, 225 226
Abraham *his supposed Martyrdome* 45. *Cast into Prison and banished*, 52. *Inventer of Astrologie*, 55. *His Temple and Well*, 64. *His Letters*, 82. *An Idolater*. 95. *His History, and others testimonies of him*, 95. 96. *His yeares reckoned*, 153 *His supposed Books*. 162. *Posterrie by* Keturah, 224.270. Saracens *dreames of him*., 264 254. 269. Postellus *his like conceit*, 642
Abram *King of Acem*. 612.613
Abydus *a place in* Mysia, *where was a famous Temple of* Venus, *in remembrance of their libertie recovered by an Harlot*, 334
Abydenus *his testimony of the Flood*, 34. *Of the Arke*, 35. *Of* Nabuchodonosor, 49
Accaron, *and the worship there*, 81 126
Acen, *Achin, Achi, or Acem in* Samatra: *the History of their Kings*, 612.613. *The Kings Letter*, 6*4. *His cruelties*, 615
Achilles *worshipped in* Leuce, *and tales of his Temple*, 399
Achmat *or Achmet the Great* Turke, 228. 229. 288. 289
Sultan Aclimets *Person, Family, Government, and greatnesse of State*, 268. *& sequitur*. 291.292.293. *He reigned about fifteene yeares*, 293.294
Acra, Elia, 94
Acusamil, 885
Adam *greatest Philosopher*, 14.18
Adams *Hill in* Seylan, 17
Adam *his generall and particular calling*. 20. *His happinesse before his fall*, 8.19. *His many sonnes in the fall* 21.22. *Nakednesse, Punishment*, 22.23. *First and second Adam compared*, 24. *His sonne how ours*, 25
Adam *taught by God, taught his children to sacrifice*, 27.28. *Supposed to live and dye at* Hebron, 29. *Mourning for Abel, ibid. The conceits of* Zabij *touching him*, 2. *His burial*, 53. *Iewish Dreames of Adam*, 160.178. 205. *Taught by* Raziel, 161. *His Cellar. Mahometicall Dreames of him*, 252.253. *& seq. Adam acknowledged by the* Bramenes, 547.548
Adam Baba *in* Zeilan, 277. *Their fancies of him, ibid.*
Adams, *viz.* William Adams *his travels and voyage to* Iapon, 588.589. *& seq.*
Adad *Assyrian God*, 66. *The Sun, ibid.*
Adadezer *K. of Aram Zoba*, 73
Adega Mahomets *Wife*, 241

Adel *and* Adea, *their situation and description*, 754
Adiabena *a Kingdome in Assyria*. 35.63
Adonis, *a name of God, what it signifieth*, 4
Adonis *Fable, Feasts, Rites, and Rites*, 78.79
Adrian *Emperour*, 72. *Founder of* Ælia. 142. *His testimonie of the* Ægyptians, 626. *His destroying of* Antinous, 646
Adriaticke *Sea, which so called*. 575
Adrimachidæ, *their habitation & Rites*, 667
Adultery *how punished by the* Iewes, 99.205. *By the* Arabians, 228. *Alcoran*. 251. Tartars, 416. Pataneans, 495.456 *In* Bengala, 509. *Of the* Bramenes, 547. Turkes. 599. *In* Guinea, 717. *In* Æthiopia, 739. Madagascar. 799. Florida 871. Mexico, 877. Nicaragua, 888. *In* Brasil, 918. *In* Iapan, 560. 591. *In* Iaua, 611. 612
Adultery *how esteemed by the* Arabians, 228. *How tryed at* Guinea, 716. 717
Ælia Capitolina. 93
Ægyptians *first Authors of Idolatry*, 631. *Worshipped men under other names, ibid. Conunced by* Abraham, 95. *Conquered by the* Saracens, 657. *By the Christians, and by* Saladine, 657. *By* Selim, 283. 284
Ægypt *why so called* Ægypt, *and* Mesre, *and other names*, 626 *How bounded, and a discourse of* Nilus, 627. *The number of* Ægyptian *Cities, and worker of their Kings*, Cham *and* Chemmis, 630. 631. *Their Temples and exceeding summes wherrto they amounted*, 631. Sesostris *and other Kings*, 632. *Pyramides, the Labyrinth*, Sphynx, & *Lake* Meris, *and their Sepulchres* 633. 634. *Their* Osiris, Isis, Orus, *and other Legends*, 635. 636. *The Land divided to their King, Priests, and Souldiers, ibid. Their bandy orders, and beastly Deities*, 636. *Reasons of Religion to Beasts*, 637 *Mystical exposition, ibid. Their worship, water, fire, a man, the Beetle*, 637. 637. *Manifold mysteries, ibid.* Hermes Trismegistus, 639, *Hieroglyphicks, ibid. their Idols how devised, ibid. their Apis and other Beasts deified or sacred, how nourished and respected*, 638. *Cost bestowed on the Funerals of them*, 639. *Description and consecration of* Apis, *ibid. His History and Mystery*, 639. *Other Oxen worshipped, ibid. How they respect Beasts in these dayes*, 640. *What beasts, fishes, fowles generally: What in severall places worshipped, ibid. Meats prohibited amongst them*, 641. *Serpents, Farts, &c. Worshipped, ibid. Their Sacrifices, Circumcision, and Swine*, 642. 643. *Their manner of tillage or sowing the ground, ibid. Their Oaths, Priests, Magicke, and Sacrifices*, 643. *Gymnosophists, Sanctuary, Feasts, ibid. The Oracles and Knauerie of* Isis *Priests*, 643. *Their inventions and conditions*, 644. 645 *Rogues why called* Ægyptians *or* Gypsies, 646. *Alts of the* Persians *in* Ægypt, 647. *Their* Greeke, *Schooles and Libraries*, 648. 649. *Deuotions and Temples of* Serapis, 650. *Knauery of* Tyrannus, 651. *The alts of* Romans, Iewes & Saracens *in* Ægypt, 652. *The building of* Cairo, 654. *The state of it and* Alexandria, 655. *Present* Ægyptians 656. *Diuers successions and alterations in* Ægypt, *ibid. Her Sells*, 657. Mamalukes *marueilous altitude, ibid. Christians there*, 658. *Their Chronologie*, 660. 661. *Ancient Kings*, 662. *Who reigned when* Moses *passed the Red Sea*, 663. Chaldees. 664. Mamalukes *and* Turkes, *ibid.*
Æolis, *how situate*, 335
Æsculapius, *or Physicke God*, 81
Æthiopia *why, and what Countries so called*? 725. 726. Æthiopian *Antiquities*, 726. *Their Kings*. 731. *The legend of the Q. of* Saba, 732. 733. 733. *The truth of it, ibid.* Of Presbyter Iohn, 734. *Of the* Æthiopian *Empire*, 738. & *seq. Fals and sleuth*, 739. Remith *Patriarks*, 740. *Offers to the* Portugall, *ibid. Their strict Lent, Marriages, & repests, ibid. Their houses & rites*, Abuna, *oaths, &c.* 740 Æthiopians *branded & why*, 742 *their arties of the hill* Amara *in* Ægypt, 743. *The Library, Treasure & safe-keeping of the Princes there*, 744. 745. *The election of the Emperor, his title, marriage, iustice*, 745. 746. *Their Schooles, Vniuersities, Physicians, Mummia, sleewes*, 747. *Their cities*, 748 *The seuerall Countries*, 749. & *seq. Their Religion, Rumers, Lakes ibid. Commodities of the Country*, 750. *Strange fishes & originall of* Nilus, *ibid. Priuate and publike customes*, 751. *Luys his lies*, 752 *Their estimation of Blacks and White*, *ibid.*
Æthiopia Superior, 725. & *seq.*
Æthiopia Exterior, 754
Africa *why so termed*, 619. *by some esteemed of* Europe, *ibid. Diuision thereof*, 620. *The* Giraffa *Camels*, 561. *Horse*, Dant, Adimmaui, *Sheep, Asses, Lions*, 622. *the Crocodile, Basilisike, Ostrich, Grabopers*, 622. 624. *Hippopotamus & Mermaids*, 625. 626. *The inhabitants, and their conditions*, 626 *Little of it Christian*, *ibid.*
Africa *in great part subiect to the* Turk, 701. *Religion and customes of the* Africans, 671. & *seq.* 704
Africanus *his opinion of* 72. *lang.*
Agao *the inhabitants thereof*, 740
Age, 413. *The extraordinary age of a man in* Bengala, 508. *The like of a* Bramene, 548
Aggees *Prophesie of the second Temple interpreted*, 103
Agmet *a town in* Barbary 700. 701
Agra *the situation and description thereof*, 533
Agwans, *or* Puttans, 37
Ahabs *sicknesse, and* Iezabels *Physicke*, 115. Ahabs *Palace*, 137
Aitonus *or* Anthony *the* Armenian *Writer*, 343. Aitonus *King of* Armenia *his requests to* Mangu Can, 345
Akiba *a* Iewish *Rabbine*, 132. *K. of* Ala, 721. *his dutch offsecrecy, ib.*
Alarbes *and* Brebers, 703. 704
Alcoran *or* Alfuran, 248. *What it signifieth, ibid. the stile not in meetre, ibid. The composition and* Azoaras *of Chapters thereof*, 249 *The agreement of copies & translators thereof*, 250. *An Epitome of the* Alcoran *in heads: or common places*, 251. 252. *Their opinions of it, and of the reward to the diligent Reader*, 253. 254. *Expositions & Comentaries on it*, 255. *the* Saracens *opinion of their* Alcoran. 258

Aladine

Aladine *King of* Acem 613. *His receiving Queene* Elizabethis *Letter, and Feast to Sir* James Lancaster, 614.615
Albania *the situation and description thereof*, 246.247
Aloadine, *or the Old man of the Mountayne*, 219
Alchimy *twofold, and who the best Alchimist*, 301. *Accounted an art of Naturall Magicke*, 347
Alexander Magnus, 50.59.227
Almomets *Saint*, 255. 318 *His Empire divided*, 72. *His Expedition*, 332. *His ambition of Dominion*, 227. *His acts* 333 334. 337.338.348. 350.359. 366.389. 404.482.538. 590. 612.614.681. *What he gained by the* Persian *conquest*, 102. 701. *Hee is worshipped by* Augustus, 695. *By the* Saracens, 708. *And by the* Cyrenians, *ibid.*
Alexandria *the Mother Citie of the* Grecian Iewes, 124. *The reputation thereof*, 648. *The Schooles, Wealth, Religion*, 649 *The present state of Alexandria*, 656. *The Patriarkes of Alexandria*, 659. *Accounter-feit* Gabriel, *ibid.*
Alippo *the chiefe Citie of* Syria, 75. *called* Haleb, 147
Alfurcan, *vide. Alcoran.*
Ali, Hali, *or* Halli, *the designed Successor of* Mahomet, 232. & *seq.* 249.274. 275. 276. 381. *He was author of the Sect* Imma, 275.391. *A Counterfe paintedand hung up in memory of* Haly, *who with his Swordes reported to cut the Rocks in sunder*, 315. *The place of Ali his burial, and the Ceremony there used*, 378. *The devotions of Ali the* Persian *Prophet forbidden*, 386. *The prehemmence of the children of Ali above all Prophets*, 391. *The house of Ali*, 64
Algier, *the description thereof*, 676 & *seq. The receptacle of Pirats*, 677.678
Alidat, *of the Arabians*, 78.227
Allen, *a* Greenland *greedy fowle*, 815
Almagro *his acts*, 92
Almes *to Beasts, Birds, Ants*, 302 *The almes of a* Mahometan at Mecca, 268. *Of* Tartars, 4 0: *Of* Tartar *King of* Mangi, 460 *Of* Gedacham, 509. *At* Cambaya, 540.541. *Of the King of* Narsinga, 552. *Publike and private Almes of the* Turkes, 298
Almohades, *certaine Sectaries so called*, 689
Aladules *his Paradise*, 64. 218 283. *The like in* Persia, 380
Aladine *the* Turke, 279
Allegories *overthrow truth*, 16
Allegorical *Theology of the* Phœnicians, 77.78
Allech *an Idoll*, 229
Alicta, *a* Persian *Deitie*, 370
Aloes Socotrina, *how made, and where plenty*, 779
Alumut *King of* Persia 383.384
Al-Mutial *how situate*, 147
Amalekites, 85
Amasia *how situate*, 326.327
Amanus *a God of the* Persians, 374
Amanus *a Mount or Hill*, 37 67 223
Amasis *King of* Ægypt, 584
Amazons, 37.327.389. *River of* Amazons, 327. *Islands of* Amazons, 578
Amara *the admirable Hill in* Æthiopia, 743. *The History and description thereof*, 743.744. *The Temples, Monasteries, Library, ibidem. The inestimable treasure, and incomparable Iewell, and the Princes kept there, as* Luy *saith*, 745.746
Amber *what it is* 532
Ambition, *the nature thereof*, 74
Ambize, *or Hogge-fish in* Congo, 767.668
Amboino *Iland*, 578. *The commodities of Amboina*, 606
Americus Vespuius, 791
America *why so called*, 791. *The nature of Heate, Rames, Winds there*, 792.793. *Of Mettals*, 795.796. *How rich it is to the* Spaniard, 796. *Whether knowne to the Ancients*, 798. *How men came first thither*, 799. *How beasts*, 800. *The beasts therein*, 804 *Fowles*, 805. *Plants, herb. Their bread*, 806. *Comparison of our World, & the new World together*, 807. *Discovery of the North parts of America*, 807. 808 *Division of America*, 807 *The Southerne America*, 891 *Seas and Ilands adioyning to America*, 950
Amen, *the* Iewish *conceit thereof*, 187. *Not to be said by a* Iew *at a* Samaritans *blessing*, 136
Amera *and Amera-ship*, 702.703
Amida *a* Iaponian *Idoll*, 598, 601
Amiogli, *why so called*, 221
Ammonites *circumcised*, 86
Iupiter Ammon, Amun, 37.114 657. *The History of that Oracle at large*, 657.658. & *seq.*
Ammonian *women*, 658
Ammonius *the Philosopher*, 648
Amorim *whence so called*, 165
Amorites, 86.87
Amphisbena *described*, 624
Amouch *their bloody customs*, 521
Amurath *the first*, 282.283
Amurath *the second*, 283. & *seq.*
Amurath *the third*, 285.286
Anacharsis *his travels and death*, 398
Anaitis *a Goddesse*, 345
Anakims, 85
Ananas *an* Indian *fruit described*, 567
Anathema *a kind of Excommunication or Curse*, 101.137
Anatomy *of* Iewes, 178
Anastasius *the Patriarch cruelly murthered*, 215
Ananas *are* Indian *fruit*, 563
Anchiale, *built by* Sardanapalus, 62
Anchorets *in* China, 466
Andromeda *freed by* Perseus, 82
Angels *why not mentioned in the Creation*, 6. *Why with five wings*, 3. *Dreames of Angels*, 31.177.179.188. 189.191. 196.197. 224.225. & *sequitur. Names observed by the Essees*, 131. *By* Iewes *and* Christians, 161. *Their orders, ibid. Their kinds*, 369. Mahometicall *fancies of Angels*, 224.225.226.259.260. 261. 302
Angell *of death*, 207.210. Mahometicall *Dreames of the Angell* Gabriel, 242. 243. 244
Angola, 765. *The* Portugals *war and trade for slaves there, ibid. Their Mokisso, or Idols, Priests, trials of Crimes, Dogs, Vomes, Marriage*, 766. *How the women salute the New Moone, ibid.*
Angore, Arium, Aucaguerle, Abagamedri, Aualites, Aicza *in* Abassia, 749
Anian *a fabulous Strait*, 670
Annedotus, *vide* Oannes.
Annius *his counterfeit* Berosus, 34 *and*

and Metristhnes, ibid.
Anobreth a Nymph so called, 77
Antiquitie of Superstition what, 63
Antiochia built by Seleuchus, 71. And fifteene others of that Name, ibid. Now Theopolis, 339
Antiochus Soter, 73. Theos, Magnu, Epiphanes ibid. The acts of this Antioch, 74. & seq. 137.353
Anticusus a hill, 69
Anti christ of the Iewes, 209. Of the Turkes, 303.304
Antinous deified. 646
Antippi Turkish Priests, 319
320
Antipodes denyed by the Fathers, and by Pope Zachary accounted Heresie, 790
Antipater, 80
Antonius the first Heremite, 277
Ants, vide Pismires.
Anzichi, the cruellest Man-eaters, 772
Apameas three built by Seleucus, 72
Apelles conceit of the Arke, 33
30
Apes how taken, 507
Apes accountedholy, ibid. The Ape Hanmant, ibid.
Apes of Perimal, 617
Apes the true Pygmeys, 507. & seq.
Apes twice as bigge as a man, 711
Temple dedicated to an Ape, 550. Seruceable Apes, 711
Apis the Egyptian Bull-God, 638.639
Apollo Chomæus and Palatinus, 51. Bearded Apollo, 69
His Oracles at Hierapolis, ibidem, At Delphos and Daphne 71.72
Apollonius his iourney, 51.482
Arabi what it signifieth, 223. Why Arabians so called, ibidem.
Arabia the scite thereof and name, 223 224. & seq. The parts and people thereof, ibid. Their manner of eating, 225.33. Their Phœnix a Fable, 225. Barthema his trauell through all Arabia, 226. The Merchandizes of Arabia, 226.227. Their ancient Religion, 227. Concumcision, & manner of entring league, ibid. Their incest and Adultery, 228. Their Policie, Diet, Diuination, Habit, 228, 229. Their Pancheau Temple, ibid.
Arabians distinguished by many names, 229.230. The Southerly parts of Arabia rich, the people cruell, &c. 230.231
Arabian Tribes, Food, Apparell, foolish and blasphemous Traditions, 231.232
Arabian Gulfe, 582.583. 778 Cold in Arabia, 583. The Arabian populations and depopulations in Africke, 701.702. & seq. The Arabians which inhabited Africa, diuided into three peoples, 703
Arad, a populous Towne neere Tyrus, 79
Ararat, the Mountaines upon which the Arke rested, 35. Opinions concerning Ararat, ibid.
Aram, and Aramæi, 37.65. Syria so called, 65.67
Arams Martyrdome, 45
Aram Zoba, 73
Arambec or Norumbega, 801
Arbaces ouercame Sardanapalus, 60. Made Captaine of the Armie sent to Ninive, 61. Other his Acts, 350
Archangels destroy the Giants before the Flood, 33.34
Archilynagogi, 104
Ardocke River, 392
Arequipa, 929.927
Arethusa a Lake, 318
Areiti, or Ballads and Dances in Hispaniola, 957.958
Argo the Ship, 301
Arimanius, 372
Arimphæi, people neere the Riphoan Hills, 37
Arioch King of Elasser, 61
Aristotle skilfull in Chaldæan Phylosophie, 54. His opinion of Babylon, and of the Dead Sea, 48.79
Aristotles Schoole at Alexandria, 649
Arius a great Warriour 61
Armouchiquois deformed Sauages, 914
Arphaxad, and his Posteritie, 27
Arke of Noah, 32. Diuers doubts moued concerning it, 33. The Mystery thereof, ibid. The memory of it in other Nations, 34 Where it reiled, 35.147. Monkish Fable of the Arke, 35
Arke of the Iewes Law, 101
Arke of the Mexican God, 869 870
Armenia, 35.343. The Armenians their memory of the Arke, 34. 344. Their History of it, 344. Bloody Rites of the Armenians, 345. Their Religion, 344
Arts inuented in Cains Family, 29. Ascribed to Angels which married wives 31. To Oannes a Monster, 48
Arsaces, first and second, 353
133
Arracan, a Kingdome, 512. The Warres betwixt them and the Portugals, 513.514.1005
Artabanus, the Parthian, 63
354
Artembares his Story, 351
Artaxates, King of Persia his Reigne, 301
Articles of the Iewish Faith, 171
Artillery in Tanguth, 428.
429
Asan the Turke, 279
Ascalon, 81
Ascus a Giant, 75
Ashes vsed in Bramenè Ceremonies, 547.548
Ashkenaz, or Ascheneaz, 37
Ashur, 37.65. Whither bee built Ninive, 65.66
Asia the name, bounds, andexcellence thereof, 43.44. The division thereof, 44. Map therof, 39. 43. Commodities thereof, 44
Asia Minor conquered by the Turkes 325.326. The Map of Asia Minor 326. The description thereof, 326.327. & seq.
Asia proprie dicta, 330.331. & seq.
Asia beforrounded of the sea, 575.576
A Relation of some principall Ilands of Asia, 586
Asiarcha certaine Priests so called, 338
Asimæus and Anilæus Babylonian Iewes, 63
Asian Gaber a Tort, 777
Asmeere or Azimere, the Citie where the Mogol resides, 522
Asserall an herbe, that maketh men merry as if they were drunke, 317
Assambaba, a Superiour of the Turkes 317
Assmulin a Persian Sectarie 370
Assus, a Babylonian Citie, 59
Assumption Iland, 823
Assyria first inhabited 38. In Assiria, was the first both man and Language, 40. How bounded,

deid, 65. *How called*, *ibid.* & 67.
Assyrian *Kings* 60.61. *Their marriages*, 67
Asse *sacred to* Priapus, 334. *Wild Asses*, 622
Asser a Pharisee *of most severe life*, 146
Assysines *in the Province of* Tyre, 218. 219
Astar *and* Astarot, 136
Astaroth *and* Astarte, 71
Astarte *worshipped her Temple*, 78 79
Astrologers *and their Predictions*, 56. 418. 419. 428. 429
Astrologie *indecell confuted*, 55
Astrologie *of the* Pharisees, 128
Astronomie *when and by whom first innented*, 55. 82
Astrolaoe *first applyed to Navigation*, 43
Assyages, *destroyed* Niniue, 66
Atabaliba *King of* Peru, 931. *Taken by the* Spaniards, *ibid. His ransome*, 932. *His Warre with* Guascar, 933. *Slaine by* Pizarro, 939. *His Pallace*, *ibid.*
Atergate, 37. 66. 80. *Whither* Dea Syria, 68. *Her Story*, 81
Athens *now barbarous*, 324. *The description thereof*, *ibid.*
Atheists *confuted*, 2
Atlas *his Buriall*, 77. *His skill in Astronomie*, 331. *Mount* Atlas, 611. *The Snowes on it, and from it*, *ibidem. Tales of it*, *ibid.*
Atlantes, *their Habitation and Rites*, 666. 680. *They have no proper names*, *ibid.*
Attalus, 335. *How furnished the Library of* Pergamus, *with two hundred thousand Volumes*, 335
Attes, *Author of the Superstitions of* Rhea, 68
Attys *his Story*, 340
Atropatia, *a part of* Media, *the description thereof*, 352
Aua *in* Arabia, 136
Auius, 80
Auarella Falca, Hollanders *merry madnesse there*, 481
Augustine *Bishop of* Hippo, *or* Bona, 669
Aulanitis *a Region*, 37
Aurea Regio, Aurea Chersonesus, 491. 492
Auzachea *a Citie in* Scythis, 37
Axomite, Auxume, *or* Choxumo *chiefe Citie in* Æthiopia, 752
Azanighi *their simplicitie*, 689. *in by they hide their mouthes*, 690. *Their deformity*, *ibid.*
Azara, 251. & *seq.*
Azopart, *who so called*, 218

B

BAalzebub, *or* Beelzebub, 57
Baalzebub, *why called the Lord of Flyes*, 81
Baal, *what it signifieth*, 57. 81 104. *Sometime Masculine*, *sometime Feminine*, 64
Baalpehor, 85
Baau, *what it signifieth*, 77
Baba *a false Prophet*, 277
Baba *the Sonne of* Bota, 100. *His Sacrifice*, 125
Babia, *a* Syrian *Goddesse*, 72
Babel *built*, 38. *Why so called*, *ibid. How situate*, 148. *Now wholy ruined*, *ibid.*
Babylonia *how bounded*, 44 & *seq. Parallels of Easterne and Westerne* Babylon, 47. *The fertilitie thereof*, 50, 51. *Brutishly Rites of women there*, 56
Babylon *of* Semiramis, *the huge wals and compasse*, 48. *Other wonders there*, 49. 50. *Enlarged with a new Citie by* Nabuchodonosor, *ibid.*
Babylonian *Historie to these times*, 60 & *seq. Destruction thereof*, 63. *The taking thereof by* Seleuchus, 73. *It is the Mother Citie of* Iewes, 124. *The ruines*, 125. *Thereby is signified* Rome, 141. *Reduced by* Zopyrus, 342
Babylas *his bones*, 72
Bagdet, Bichdad, *or* Bildach, *supposed* Seleucia, 51. 64. 242 *Why called* Babylon, 63. *Built by* Bugasar, *ibid. Destroyed*, 64. *Vnfinished how*, 65. *The state thereof in* Beniamins *time*, 147. 148. *The whole Storie*, 237. 238. & *seq.* 242 243
Bacala *in the East Indies*, 461
Bachdad *Citie*, 50
Bacchus, *and his Priests*, 109 665
Baccalaos, 30
Bachsi *of the* Tartars, 418
Bactrians, *their cruell Rites*, 399
Badurias *King of* Cambaya, 337
Baduini *a kind of heretical* Moors, 757. 768
Bagdad *built*, 1028
Baiazet *the first taken by* Tamerlan, 282
Baiazet *the second*, 283. 284
Baldinus *entertainment in* Arauco, 411
Baitull, 80
Baithos, *and* Baithoscans, 129
Baly *Iland described*, 611
Bais *or Bels wives in mens yards*, 496
Balme *of* Gilead, & *the Trees*, 92 *In* Arabia, 226. *In* Amara, 743 *In* Brasil, 912
Balsam *brought from* Gilead *to* Cairo, *thence to* Mecca, 174
Bambyce, *the* Syrian *Goddesse so called*, 68
Bitus *the Heremite*, 123
Banians, *and their Superstition*, 240. 241
Banda *Iland*, 578. 607. *The Commodities and Factories there*, 607. 608
Bantam *described*, 609. 610. *The* English *Factorie there*, 610 611
Baptizing *of Proselites*, 97
Barbarussa, *or* Barbarossa, 676 677
Barchoba *his end, a warning for all such as fight against God & their Sonne*, 142
Barents *his Discovery, and wintering in the North east*, 782
Barucline *a huge Bird* 210
Baruch *interpreted by* Hodotus, 38
Bargu *Plaine and the Rites there*, 429
Barkleys *Travels*, 423
Baris *a Hill in* Armenis, 35
Barsaria, *where so called*, 668 *The Map of* Barbary, *ibidem. The Scritto of* Barbary *his History*, 695. 696. *Cruell Warres in* Barbary, 697. 698. *Regions of* Barbary, 700. 701. *The conditions of the Inhabitants in the Cities of* Barbary, 704. 705
Basan, 85
Basilides *a Priest*, 72
Batly *or* Bathu *his exploits*, 361
Basiliske *a Serpent*, 623
Bats *great as Hens*, 565
Battell *his Travels*, 726
Barwels *houldnesse with cold*, 938

Beauty

Beautie *in foweleſt deformitie*, 721 *vide* Gul-gallants *and* Faſhion-mongers.
Beads *uſed in Prayer by* Turkes, 312
Beaſts, *whence their cruelties*. 15 *Cleane and uncleane*, 33. *Their awe of man, and becomming food to man*, 36
Beaſts *ſacred*, 460
Beaſts *worſhipped*, 461. *Execution by Beaſts*, 978
Beates *of wonderfull greatneſſe*, 564
Becca *the ſame with* Mecca, 273
Beduines *a Sect of the* Arabians, 221
Bedauyæ, *or* Bednois, 231
Beetle *worſhipped*, 636
Beelſamen, 75
Belz-bub, 80
Behemoth, *the huge Oxe mentioned in* Iob: Iewiſh *tales of him*, 210
Bel *and* Belus *derſed*, 46. *Called* Baal, Beelſamen, 77.81
Beelzebub, Arbelus, *ibid. His creating the World*, 49. *His Temple and Tower at* Babylon, 50. *Golden veſſels and Altar, ibid.*
Bel *chiefe Idol of* Babylon, 50. 56 *Whither* Bel *and* Baal *bee the ſame*, 57. *His name, Rites, &c.* 57.58. *His Sepulchre*, 56. *By whom worſhipped*, 58. *His Prieſts*, 58.59
Bel *and the Dragon*, 58
Belus *Author of Aſtronomie*, 49 50. *His Temple cleanſed by* Alexander, *ib. ſuppoſed the tower of* Babel, *yet remaining*, 50. *Suppoſed to be* Nimrod, 61
Belzeus *Rimer*, 70
Beleſus, *or* Phul Beloch, 62
Belgrade *taken*, 273
Belgian *an hill*, 381
Bellarmines *errour of Paradiſe*, 15. *Of* Daniel, 57. *Of* Antiochus, 74. *Of Miracles*. 81.82 *Of* Abraham, 95. *Of the Sabbath*, 20. *Of Monkes. of Saint* George, 210. *Of Confeſſion*, 198. *His teſtimony of Scripture, and the tranſlation thereof*, 169 170
Beltis, Beltis, *and* Beliſſima, 78
Bels *uſed in* Cathay, 14. China, 470. *In* Iapon *very great*, 597 *When firſt found and founded*. 602
Bels *of Gold in* America, 795
Bemoini *and his active people*, 692
Bengala, *Kingdome deſcribed*, 508 509. *Their devotions at* Ganges, 509.510
Bengala, *guiſe deſcribed*, 579 993. *& ſeq.*
Bengalan *three hundred thirty fine yeeres old*, 588
Benecochiab *his Impoſture*, 141 114
Benioin, *a Gummie*, 570
Benedictus Goes *his travels from* Lahor *to* China, 413.414
Benomotapa, 72. *& ſeq. Their Rites*, 722
Berecynthia, *or the Mother of the Gods*, 71
Berenice *on the Red Sea*, 783
Berfhith *with* Iewiſh *Commentes*, 177.178
Bermuda, *why ſo called, and how otherwiſe*, 960. *Commodities and ſituation thereof, ibid. Plantation there*, 961
Beroſus *counterfeit*, 34. *His teſtimony of the Flood, ibid. Other fragments of him*, 45.46
Beſt *his Sea fight*, 613
Betele, 552. *A deſcription of the Plant Bettele*, 568
Beuer, *a beaſt*, 564
Bezar-ſtone, 570
Bezars *how taken out of Goates*, 1003
Beniamin Tudelenſis *his errour of Samaritans*, 136. *His travels and obſervations*, 63. 146. *& ſeq. The ſtate of the Iewes in his time*, 146. 147. *& ſeq.*
Biblus *whence ſo called*, 82
Bidrach *Citie and Univerſitie*, 146
Bledulgerid, *or Date Region deſcribed*, 706.707
Bataca, *a Beaſt of incredible ſtench*, 564
Birds, *Preachers*, 719. *Handfull of Birds*, 831
Birds *of Braſile*, 912.913. *Tale of a huge Bird*, 210. *Of other Birds*, 399
Birds *of Paradiſe*, 565
Birra *on Euphrates*, 63.65
Biſertæ, *ſuppoſed* Vtica, 641
Biſnagar, 572.593. *The Kings haughtie ſtile*. 573
Bitumen, *or ſimple Pitch*, 50. *From a Fountaine neere* Bigdet, *ibid.*
Blacke *colour eſteemed abouſe White*, 721. *The cauſe, ibid.*
Blacke *never worne by* Turkes, 303
Bliomum, *an Idol worſhipped of the* Arabians, 242
Bloud *prohibited*, 35. *By the* Zabij *eaten in communion with the Devill*, 53.54. Iewiſh *obſervations thereof*, 110. Mahometicall *prohibition*, 253. *Drunke by the* Tartars *and others*, 431 *People that will ſed no bloud*, 240. 241. *Bloud ſtaged from iſſuing by force of a lewell, or bone of a Coball*, 579. *Bloud not ſeene in much effuſion thereof*, 662. *Bloud in the Temple at* Ieruſalem, 216
Boats *of horſe ſkins*, 391. *Of Leather*, 793. *Of Birch barke*, 802 *Of fiſh ſkinnes*, 820. *Of Seales ſkins, ibid.*
Bomelius *reſted*, 980
Bodies *Vanitie*, 23
Boghar, 425
Bona, *where ſituate*, 669
Bonito-fiſh, 566
Boris *brother to* Irenia, 980. *made Protector*, 984. *his bloudy ſtaires to the Throne*, 988.991. *His Empire and end*, 992
Borneo, *the deſcription thereof*, 578.579
Bone *of a man of huge bigneſſe*, 210
Bonzij in Iapon, *their Sects and Rites*, 594.595
Booke *of Scripture, Nature, the Creature*, 23
Bookes *of the Law, of Life, and a third ſort*, 196.197
Booke *of Butchery*, 171. Mahomets *Booke of Judgement*, 359 *Bookes aſcribed to* Abraham, Salomon, Iob, *&c.* 701. *Bookes of leaves of trees*, 896
Boots *& Shoes in* America, 793
Boriquen *deſcribed*, 954
Boriſippa, *a Citie ſacred to* Apollo *and* Diana, 54
Boſarman *or* Muſulman, *a* Mahometan *Conuert*, 258
Botanter *deſcribed, & the ſtrange Rites there*, 512
Botelius *his ſtrange Navigation*, 623
Boucan, *and boucaning mans fleſh*, 914.915.
Sir Ierome Bowes *his* Ruſſian *Embaſſage*, 982. *& ſeq.*
Brachmanes, *their Opinion of a better World*, 478. *Their Rites*, 479. *Sects*, 479.480

Bra-

Bramenes *both Secular and Religious*, 547. & *seq. How respected, shid. They have their shops of Merchandise, their Habit, View and Funerals, their Fasts, Opinions and Observations, their estimation, Arts, &c.* 547.548.549. *Their writing, Learning, Superstition.* 997
Bramene *Pope*, 559
Brama, *or* Brema, 472
Brandons *Legend*, 15
Brasil *discovered* 906. *Described*, 906.907. & *seq. The Beasts there*, 906. *Their houses and beastly Rites*, 907. & *seq. The diuers Nations of the* Brasilians, 910.911. *Snakes, Birds, Fruits, Fishes*, 912.913. *Rites of their bouiaing and eating men*, 914.915. *Their Priests deuotions and traditions*, 916. *Their Feasts, Orations, Childbirth, Funerals*, 918.919. *Genuflexie, Marriages, their manner entertaining Strangers, shidem. New Sect in* Brasil, 917.918
Bread *of* Sagu, *of Rice*, 498. *Of the pith of a tree*, 760. *Of a fruit in* Congo, 769. *Of Palmitos*, 563
Breasts *of* Ammonian *women of exceeding greatnesse*, 658. *Of the* Azanaghi, 689
Brebers *and* Alarbes, 703.704
Brerewoods *Examination of summes*, 100. *Of Religions*, 746
Britaine *another World*, 811. *New* Britaine, 839
Britto *a famous* Portugall, 513
514
285
Buda *in* Hungary, 284
Budomel, *their customes and simplicitie*, 693. & *seq.*
Butchery *of the* Iewes, 201
Bullocks *treachery*, 500. *Religion, shid.*
Burneo, *the description thereof*, 604
Buls *of exceeding greatnesse*, 283
Buls *little as Dogs*, 284
Bull *worshipped*, 358
Bulgaria magna, 385. *Called of* Volga, 382
Burnt-offerings *of the* Iewes, 116
Busiris *butchernes*, 594
Buttons *Discoverie*, 819

C

CAbal *a wild beast*, 579
Cabala, *vide* Kabala.
Cabolites, *people of* Paropanisus, 38
Cabots *Discoveries*, 809.810. & *seq.*
Cachincim, *certaine Wizards*, 54
Cadi *and* Calli *and* Cadilesches, 319.320.321
Cadmus, 79.82. *His Letters, shid.*
Cafar *and* Cawar, 361
Cain *his Sacrifice, Homicide, and Curse*, 28.29
Cafe *or* Cufa, *how situate*, 64
Cailar *and* Caracoram, 431
Cairo *Citie described*, 652.653
654
Calender *a* Turkish *Order*, 316
317
Carioan, *a famous Citie*, 673
Caliph, Mahomets *Successour: their Historie* 236. & *seq. Is significth Vicar*, 234.235
Caliph *of* Bagdet, 63.238. *Their Learning, titles and magnificence*, 240. & *seq.* Ismael Sophi *writ himselfe* Caliph, 381.382
Caliphas *of* Ægypt, 662
Caindu *their beastly customes*, 430
Calwalla *a towne of filthy women*, 532
Calicolæ, *a society of the* Iewes *corruptly imbracing Christianitie*, 135
Caiani, *a Sect which commend* Cain *for fratricide*, 135
Cailon, 580
Calanus *the Story of him*, 479
Calmes *vnder the Line*, 762
Caloieri *a kind of Religious people so called*, 225
Calues *worshipped*, 93
Canada *described*, 801. *Religion there*, 802. *Their other Rites, shid.*
Canonization *or God-making*, 46
Cannæi, Caiani, Cælicolæ, 135
Carchuians *paralelled in* Babylon, 56.57
Carthæ *in* Mesopotamia, 64
Calicut *described*, 549. *By whom founded, their Merchandise & Temples, their Deuill-deuotions, and Kings Customes*, 550. *Their Sects*, 553. & *seq. The King must leane his Throne to serue in the Temple*, 551.552. *Their Funerall and Coronation Rites*, 553
Calwalla *a towne of filthy women*, 532
Campo Waro, 998
Campion Gaurus, 271
Camma, *a Noble woman*, 302
Cambyles, *his acts and Story at large*, 358.359.728
Cambaia *Kingdom described*, 536 & *seq. Their Kings and Country*, 537. *Their Religion*, 240 *Hospitals for Birds; Religious Orders of* Vettesa *and* Gioghi 241. *Charity to Ants, Gnats, Flyes, shid. Their exceeding Superstition, shid. Their inclinence, shid. Of the seasons of the yeere, and of the parts next to* Cambaia, 542.543.544. & *seq.*
Camboia, *and the Rites thereof*, 489
Camma *a* Galatian *woman, the Story of her*, 328
Camels *three sorts*, 621
Camell *killed at* Bagdet *in their* Ramedan, 51
Camels *going and comming from* Mecca *honoured*, 268.269.255
A Camel-concert of Camelopardalis, 587
Candle *of distinction*, 193 *Swearing on a Candle*, 52
Candlemasse *Feasts vsed in Idolatry*, 392
Candaules, 697
Candecan *an Iland*, 512
Canarijns *and* Corombins, 545
Canada, 824
Canary *Iland*, 783
Cananor, Capocate, Carcolacim, Chomba, Chalma, Cota, Colan, *certaine* Indian *places*, 587
Cannons, *vide Gunnes and Ordnance.*
Candy *in* Zeilan, 617.993
Candace, *Queene of* Æthiopia, 732
Candishes *Voyages about the World*, 941. *His last Voyage.* 942
Cannæi, *a Societie of* Iewes, 135
Canibals, *vide Man-eaters.*
Canniball *Iland*, 552. & *seq.*
Cape Verde, 782
Cape of Good Hope *described*, 761.762
Caraman, *and* Caramania, 279
Carmell *a Hill and God*, 71
Carron, Cosimbay, 482
Callitalowny, Cariya, Cassumpaua, *shid.*
Cartiers Voyage, 823
Cambalu, 411.412
Canran, *or* Canton, *a Citie of* China, 439
Canes *very great*, 316. *Of strange*
qua-

quality, *ibid.*
Caphars, 758
Caphraria, 761
Canopi *of the* Ægyptians, 655
Cappadocia *described*, 326.327
Cappadocians *called* Mesehini, 37
Caribes, *Cannibals of* America, 795
Caraoan *a famous City in* Africa, 620. *The History thereof*, *ibid.*
Carazan *cruell custome there* 430
Catara, Caruate, Cangerecora, 761
Cardandan, *the situation and description thereof*, 430
Caramit *Citie*, 64. *Iniurious to the* Mussims, 1033
Cardamomum *of three sorts*, 560
Carualius *his exploits*, 513. *His name terrible to the* Bengalans, *ibid.*
Carthage, 37.82. *Their first language pure* Hebrew, 39. *Their Letters*, 82. *Description of* Carthage, 669.670. *Their wars and Armie of women*, *ibid. Their ruines, Discouries by Sea, Language and Letters*, 671. *They were* Phœnicians, *ibid. Their cruell Sacrifices of children*, 672. *How often conquered*, 673
Carthagena *described*, 893
Casbin *described* 381. *& seq. The Seat of the* Persian Mufti, *ibid.*
Casear, Cabul, Camul, Caracathay, Capherslam, Calcia, Ciarcunar, Ciarcar, Caseio, Chemam, Ciecialith, Casciani, Cucia, Ciatlis, Cotan, Ciacor, Capetalcol, Cambasci, *&c. All places betwixt* Lahor *and* China, 413.414.428
Castile *why so called*, 709
Cascuij *a strange Beast*, 563
Casius *a Hill*, 97. *And Giant, ibid.*
Caspians *their habitation and Rites*, 347.348.400
Caspian *Straits*, 348
Caspian *Funerals*, 347
Caspian *Sea*, 400
Castanes, 711
Castalian *Fountaine*, 281
Castles *in* India, 996
Casta *and the Rites there* 971
Cataones, 327
Cathaia, *and* Cathaians *conquequered by the* Tartars, 404.427 *Their faith, Rites, manner of writing*, 404.405.415.416. 426.427. *Whither* Cathaia *&* China *be the same*, 409.410. Christians *and* Mussaints, *or Christians &* Iewes *there with their Rites, ibid. It is a generall name to the Northeast of* Alia, 426
Caterpillers *exceeding large*, 861
Caues *of Marble*, 687
Cauchin-China *an* Indian *Kingdome*, *the description thereof*, 489.490
Cazan *in* Tartaria, 402
Celebes *eate mans flesh*, 608
Celsus *opinion of the Arke*, 33
Ceput *a Beast in* Ægypt, 637
Cetemonies *extinct*, 97
Cesarea Philippi, 379
Ceuola *or* Cibola, 533
Chabar *a Schoole Degree of the* Iewes, 165.166
Chalcedon, 285
Chaldee *Paraphrase*, 40
Chaldees, *vide* Magi.
Chaldee *Language how differing from* Hebrew, 39.40
Chaloæ.n *Antiquities before the Flood*, 41. *Concerning the Creation, ibid. Observation of the Starres*, 51.54. *Costly Incense*, 55. *History of the Chaldeans*, 51. *& seq. Names of the people and of the Priests*. 52. *Opinions*, 53 *Their Sects*, 54. *Hierarchy*, 55. *Gods*, 57.58. *Chronologie*, 59.60
Cham *his posterity*, 37. *Author of Irreligion*, 44. *Resection*, 45 *Why* Ægypt *the land of Cham*, 631
Cham, *Can, or Chan, King or Ruler of the* Tartars, 379.380. *His Feasts and Magnificence*, 419 420
Chamelions, 624
Champlains *Discouries in Canada*, 801
Champa *an* Indian *Kingdome*, 477
Chamul *Province described*, 428 429
Chanaan, *and Chananites*, 77.86 90. *The seuerall Nations*, 86. *Fled into* Africke, *and subdued* 620. Iewes *desire to die there, why*, 90
Chaos, 77
Chastitie *of* Turkish *Votaries*, 316.317. *Of Priests in* Mexico, 872. *In* Siam, 490. *In* Pegu 505.506. *Of* Brasilians, 916 *Of others*, 841.926
Chederles *the* Turkish *conceit of him*, 318. *Relikes of his horse shoes used against Diseases*, *ibid.*
Chemmis *so called of Cham*, 37 631
Chemosh, *an Idoll*, 85
Cherry *Iland*, 816.817
Chia *a Drinke*, 263
Chica *a Country*, 468. *A Drinke*, 947
Children *which sucke* 12. *yeares*, 318. *Sale and murther of children*, 469
Childbirth, *strange Rites observed by the* Tibareni, 400. *An order in* Brasill *for the man to lye in, when his wife is delivered*. 918 919. *Childbirth Rites in Cardandan*, 430. *Other Rites in* India, 482. *In* Guinea, 717. *Rites of the* Iagges, 772. *In* Guiana, 900
Chili, *whence so called*, 926. *The description thereof*, *ibid.*
Chimia, Limia, Simia, *three Sciences in* Tanguth, 428.429
China, *whither Cathaia*, 409.410 411. Ben. Goes *his long and dangerous iourney from* Lahor *to China*, 413.414. *The names of China*, 435. *the names which they give it themselves*, 436 *The Prouinces, Cities, Shires, Townes, Hamlets, Castles and situation thereof, ibid. The number of Tributaries, ibid. The Inhabitants and natural Commodities*, 436. 437. *Maps of China, ibid. The commodiousnesse and store of Shipping and Riuers*. 437.438. *The beautie and forme of their Cities*, 439 *Of* Canton, Nanquin, Pequin, *Cities of China, ibid. Of* Sucen *and* Hamceu *most admirable*, 440. *A discourse of* Quinsay, *the most admirable of the world*, 441.442. *Seasons there, ibid. The Inhabitants of China their person, attire, names and Surnames*, 443.444. *Their Seales Games, complementall salutations and entertainment, ibidem. Their Building, Printing, Porcelane, Painting, Musicke, Inke, Fannes, and vse of them*, 445 446. *Their Language all Monosyllables, Language two fold, and equiuocation*, 446.467 *Their manner of writing and Philosophy*. 447. *Their want of Natural Philosophie, ibidem. Their Astrologie and Physicke*, 447.

448. *Their Ethicks and Politicks.* 449. *Their Degrees in Schooles, & manner of attaining them.* 449.450. *Military Degrees.* 450.451. *The Kingdome founded by* Humun, 451. *His Constitutions, their Kings Revenewes, ibid. The King his revenewesse, Marriages, Armes, Courts, Colours, Posterrite, ibid. & sequitur. The manner of petitioning*, 452. *Of paying his Revenewes, Eunuchos and Palace.* 452.453. *Their Courts or Tribunals*, 454. *The diversitie of Magistrates*, 454.455 *The manner of proceeding at their Royall Cities, and in the Provinces*, 455.456. *Nine Orders of their Magistrates, and their stipends, ibidem. Their Habits and Ensignes*, 457. *Their Military Men and Weapons*, 456. *The King cannot alter the Customes, nor any beare one Office above three yeeres, or at all in his owne Country, ibidem. What Nobilitie in* China, 458. *Extraordinary Commission, ibid. Ordinary Complement of refusing: and mordinate Tyrannie*, 458.459. *Their Canes, Prisons, punishments of Theeves, ibid. Inundations and Earthquakes, ibid. A Catalogue of their Kings*, 459.460. Vanlia *the present King, ibidem. Of King* Farfur, *ibidem. Strange Story of Beasts in a Monasterie*, 460. *Worship of Heaven and Earth, and their other Gods*, 461 462. *Their three Sects.* 462. *Opinions and Rites of the* Confutian *Sect*, 462.463. *Opinions & Rites of the Sect* Sciequia, 463 464. *Of the Sect* Laufu, 464 465. *Their Priests Secular and Religious, and Nuns*, 456.466 *Their Alminacks and manifold Divinations*, 466.467. *Their Lots and God bearing*, 467. *Their curious Arts of Alchimy, and procuring long life, ibid. their respects to the Sunne and Eclipse*, 468. *Their Marriages with whom, and how solemnized.* 468 469. *Sale and murther of their children, ibidem. Their gelding their Infants, contempt of strangers. Pride and other vices*, 469 470. *Erroneous opinions, ibidem. Their Temples dedicated to Men and Idols, with the Rites thereof*, 470.471. *Monasteries, ibid. Their Funerall Ceremonies*, 472 473. *Their Monuments, Epitaphs and Curiosities*, 474.475 *Religious times, and Fire-worke solemnities, ibid. Strangers and forreine Religions in* China, 475 476. *Scruples about their ingresse and egresse, ibidem. How the Iesuites enter*, 475. Iewes, Mahumetans *and* Christians *there, ibid.*

Chinois *how hated in* Iapon, 476

Chinkius Kan *founder of the greatest Empire under the Sunne*, 379

Choaspes *a River.*

Chobar *of the* Arabians, 264

Chocanala *an Idoll*, 560

Cholros *his acts*, 215. *His death, ibid.*

Christ *very God*, 3. *Manifested in the flesh*, 4. *Not by generation*, 26. *The second* Adam, 27 *When bee suffered*, 106. *His Paschall Rites*, 110.111. *False Christs and seducing Prophets*, 143. 144. *The History of Christ proved by the* Iewish *Authours*, 163. *His Miracles disgraced* 164. *The* Mahumetan *opinion of him*, 251.252

Christ *and* Christian *odious names to the* Indians *by* Spanish *insolence*, 962.963

Christian *Religion what proportion it holdeth with other Religions*, 964. *Saint* Thomas Christians, 736.737

Christians *in* Palæstina, 214. *Chasedibence by* Saracens, 215.216 *Their recouering*, 217. *Their unchristian courses there*, 222 *The miseries of Christians under the* Turke, 322.323. *& seq. In* Ægypt, 658.659

Chronologie *of the* Chaldæans, 59. 60. *& sequitur. Of the Ealte ne Nations*, 51.52.53. *Of the* Iewes, 138.139. *& seq.* Mahumetans, 273. Persians, 367. *Of the* Tartars. 407. *Of the* Chinois, 452. *Of the* Ægyptians, 660. *& seq. Of the* Mexicans, 879

Chubar, Chobar, or Chabar, 166

Church *truly Catholicke in the Posterstie of* Seth, 29

Chusor *a great Magitian*, 77

Cidambaran, *why so called*, 561

Cilicia *how situate and the present state thereof*, 341. *Subdued to the* Turkes, 343. *Their ancient Rites*, 342.343

Cimmerian *darknesse*, 576. *whence this Proverbe, ibid.*

Cimmerior Cimbri, 576

Cing-s Chan *first Emperour of the* Tartars, 402. *His generation and first proceedings*, 403.

His seave Sonnes, 403. 404

Cinaloa *the description thereof*, 855. *Their Marriage Rites, Knighthood, Adoption, Dieing, Funerals*, 856

Cinchiamfu *a Citie of* China, 440

Cinamon *how growing*, 569

Cinamon *in* Arabia, 226.227

Circassians *and* Circassian *Country*, 548

Circumcision *of* Moabites, 86. Ammonites, *ibid. Proselites*, 97. Iewes, 179.180.181. Arabians, 227.228. Troglodites, 667. *At what age circumcised, ibid.*

Circumcision *of* Turkes, 311. *In* China, 475. *In* Guinea, 716

Cittim *a part of* Cilicia, 37

Citor destroyed, 260

Citet, 570

Cleobians, *and* Theobulians *Sects of the* Iewes, 135

Cloves *how growing*, 569.605

Coaua *a great River in* Africa, 774

Cobtini, *a* Mahometicall *Sect*, 275

Columbus *Discoverer of* America, 801. *His History*, 802.803 *His errour.*

Colosse *at* Rhodes, 584

Colosse *of* Semiramis, 45. *In* Pegu, 530. Zeilan 616. *In* Ægypt, 634

Colchis, *or* Mengrelia *how situate*, 347. *Their customes and present manner of living*, 347.348

Colombo *a Fortresse of the* Portugals, 618

Collin *his great Posteritie*, 419

Cold *and the strange effects of it*, 794

Colledges *of the* Iewes, 99

Colophon, *the situation thereof*, 338

Colpia, *what it signifieth*, 77

Sir William Cokayne, 990

Cockes, *growing the cause*, 157 *White*

white and red Cocks Iewish Ceremonies, 197.198
Cocke *Sacrifice in* Calecut, 550
Cocke *worshipped by the* Persians, 136
Comana, *a Citie,* 327
Comania, Turcomania, 334.335
Comori *Cape in* India, 480
Combabus *his device,* 68. *His Statue, ibid.*
Compasse *invented,* 44. *Used in Land Travels,* 207.681
Con, *the conceit of him in* Peru, 938
Coniugall *duties observed by the Iewes,* 203
Conscience *and the vse thereof,* 26
Conduites *great Fowles,* 564
Confession *of Iewes,* 197.198
Confession *of Crimes,* 597
Confession *at* Ocaca, *ibid.* Nicaragua, 887. *In* Peru, 942.943
Congo *the Historie thereof,* 765 *Six Prouinces therein,* 766. *their Kings, Idols, Conversion,* 767 768. *Their admirable trees,* 769
Constantina *a Citie,* 643
Constantinople *decyphered with due Epithites and titles,* 322.323
Constellations *of the* Chaldæans, 52
Confusius *a Philosophicall Saint in China,* 462. *His Temple, ibid.*
Confusian *Sect, their opinions and Rites,* 462.463
Cookery *superstitious,* 200.201
Copernicus *his opinion of the Spheres,* 8
Cophti, *Christians in* Ægypt, 657 658
Coque-nut *and Tree, and the commodities thereof,* 567
Coray *how situate,* 602
Corkan *of the* Iewes, 127.128
Cordæi, *or* Gordiæi montes, 35
Corycean *Cave,* 301
Cortecalis *Discovery,* 860
Cortez *his Conquest,* 858. 859. *His expedition to* Mexico, *&c.* 860.861
Corybantes, *and bloudy Priests,* 86
Coryat *his travels and observations,* 531
Cosroes, *the Great, his Reigne,* 362 363.364
Cosumil, *or* Acusamil, 885
Cothone *Iland,* 82
Cotton, *where and how it growth,* 395
Coverts *Travels,* 531
Couetousnesse *punished,* 331
Courts *of the* Iewes, 98. *At* Bagdat, 146.147.148
Country *of Couche how situate,* 511
Coughing *at Sermons,* 704
Coughing *Rites in* Benomotapa, 722
Crabs *in* India *fullest in the wine,* 566. *Exceeding great Crabs, ibid.*
Cranganor *a Christian City in* India, 554
Crassus *slaine at Carra,* 63. *His Perury,* 139.353
Cray-fish *of three Cubits,* 480. *Others exceeding great, ibid.*
Creation, *what it is, and the Historie thereof,* 5. *Proued,* 12 *Iewish dreames thereof,* 178.179. Mahomets *dreames,* 253. 254. *Dreames of the* Magi *concerning it,* 670. *Of the* Indians, 478 479. *Of the* Ægyptians, 635 636. *In* Peru, 934
Creed *of the Moderne Iewes,* 171 172
Cretans *called Chetim & Cortim,* 37
Crim-Tartars, 421. *Their gouernment and warr,* 422. *Religion and other Customes,* 423. *There inuading* Russia *and Acts there,* 975.976. *& seq. Strange Embassage,* 975
Crisses, *a kind of Daggers,* 460
Crocodiles *in* Pegu *accounted holy,* 507. *In* Iaua *eaten,* 610. *In* Africa, 623. *In* Ægypt, 637. *In Congo,* 769. *A kind of Crocodile in* Poland, 990. *Crocodiles charmed,* 1005
Crowes *ominous,* 540. *Fed from the King of Calecuts Table,* 550 *Hurtfull,* 565. Iewish *tale of a huge Crow,* 210
Crosses *in* Ægyptian *Ceremonies, what* 636. *Vsed by some* Mahometans, 243. *In Iucatan,* 885
Cruelty *of* Abdalla *the* 22. *Chalifa,* 1027
Cresius, 357
Ctesiphon, *built by the* Parthians, 63
Cuba *discovered,* 954.955. *Cubagua,* 951
Cubit *sacred and Geometricall,* 33
Cucuij *a strange Beetle,* 637
Cufa, *a Citie,* 64
Cumania *described,* 896. *Rarities and Rites, ibid. Their dancing & drinking,* 897. *Their Gods, Crosses and Priests,* 898. *Their Diuinations and Funerals, ibid.*
Curdi, *Mungrels in Religion,* 67 *their habitation, Rites and manner of liuing,* 349
Curiana *how situate,* 895
Cusco *a Cuis in* Peru, 949. 950
Custome *what and how strong,* 26 27
Cuthia *part of the Desart of* Arabia, 136
Cuthæans, 136. *The subtilest beggers in the World,* 136. *Cursed by the Leuits,* 136
Cutlu-Mises, *his Acts,* 280.281
Cublay-can, 406. *His greatnesse and Conquests,* 407.408
Cuth *his Posteritie,* 37.726. *Cuth how vsed in Scripture, ibidem. Cuthites who called,* 726
Cyaxarus *destroyed* Ninive, 66
Cybele, 340
Cynocephalus *worshipped.*
Cyprus *the description thereof,* 584 *The Map of* Cyprus, 585
Cyrus, 60. 336. *Hee tooke* Darius *at* Borsippa, 63. 357. *Tooke Croesus,* 356. *The Historie of him,* 356. 357. *& seq. How much he got by his warres in* Asia, 102 *Nourished by a Bitch,* 350
Cyzicus *a Citie of* Mysia Minor, 334
Czophylar *a Turkish Sect,* 315. 316

D

DAbaiba *River and Goddesse,* 893. *The Pilgrimes Sacrifices, Fasts, Bels, Priests, Funerals bloudy Dances,* 894.895. *Monster there, ibid.*
Dabuh *a Beast,* 563
Dagon *Idoll,* 77.80. *The word* Dagon *signifieth a Sea God,* 80
Dan, 92. *Apostasie of* Dan, 94 *The Citie of* Dan *why so called,* 92
Daniel *expounded by* Berosus, 49 *Set over the* Chaldee, 55. *Another* Daniel *supposed,* 59. *His interpretations interpreted,* 60. *His Sepulchre,* 148. *The place of his imprisonment,* 64
Daniel *Sonne of* Hasdai, 147. *his authority over all Congregations of the* Israelites, 148
Darknesse *on the face of the Deepe,* 6. *A priuation,* 7. *Cimmerian darknesse,* 576
Darknesse, *internall, externall, eternall, met together,* 518
Darius Medus, 61.359
Darius

Darius *spared the Temple of* Belus,56. *The History of him*, 359 360
Darius Nothus, 102
Damascus *in* Syria,14. *The History thereof*, 75.76
Damut *in* Æthiopia 739
Dancali, Dambri, Damote, Dambea, *&c. In* Æthiopia 726
Damiadee, Daddor, Dille *in the* Moguls *Country*, 534
Dances of Iewes, 211
Daphne *neere* Antioch, 71. *The Fable ibid. The vanity of* Antiochus *there*, 72
Darienc *described*, 891. *Their Rites*, 892.893
Date-trees *planted by* Mahomet, 248
Date-Region, 654.706.707. *& seq. The effect of* Dates, 655
Dauid Elroi *a false* Messias, 143
Dauids *Sepulchre*, 230. *His Ecclesiastiscall Constitutions, ibid.* Iewish *dreames of him*, 124
Captaine Dauies *slaine*, 817. *His Northwest Discouerie*, 813. *His Discouerie in the South Sea*, 914
Daulas *what it signifies*, 1036
Day *Naturall and Artificiall*, 105 *The day diuersly begun, ibid. Diuided into watches*, 106. *to that dazes the* Iewes *fasted*, 113. *Mundayes and Thursdayes. ibid.*
Death *spiritual, naturall, eternall*, 22. *Opinions touching the dead among the* Turkes, 213.214
Debts *how preuented and punished in* China,437. *At* Calecut,550
Decapolis, *whence so called*,93. *Her Towns, ibid.*
Decanius 539
Decan *Kingdomes described*. 539 540. *Their combination against the* Mogoll, 996
Dedication *Feast*, 199.114
Degrees *of the* Chinians,448.449 *& seq.*
Dens *or Cane*, 64
Deciy *imitated by the* Turkes,401 *By the* Indians,478. Angolians, 766
Dely *a Kingdome*,543. *Their Religion and Rites*, 543.544
Dauices, *their Rites*, 400
Dereeto *mother of* Semiramis,68 *Half a woman, half a fish*,69. 80
Dermschler *a* Turkish *Order*,315 *Also* Deruis, 316.317
Demetrius *of* Russia, 991.992
Desart *of* Arabia, 224. *& seq.*
Desarts *of* India, 477
Desolation *Iland*, 395
Deucalion *his flood*,34. *Founder of the Temple at* Hierapolis, 68
Deuiclaci *worshippers of the Sun*, 135
Deuils *malice and policie*, 21.22
Deuils *worshipped*, 53. Mahomets *opinion that the Deuils shall once bee saued by the Alcoran*, 263. *An Altar reuelled to the Deuill by the* Pegusians, 306. *Worshipped by the* Cambayans *and their Rites in his worship*, 533.544
Dewras *an impregnable Hill*, 563
Diamonds *poison*, 740. *Whence taken, ibid.*
Diana *her Story*, 337. *Worshipped in* Babylon,56. *At* Cassbala, 191. *In* Galatia, 260. Ionia *and* Asia *her Temple, Priests, &c.* 337
Diargument, *or* Hircania, 355
Diasares, *an* Arabian *Deitie*, 228
Dido, *why so called*. 82
Digs *his Iland*, 817
Dinias *his fabulous iourney*, 15
Dinor *a fiery Brooke*, 335
Dyonysius *his monstrous fatnesse*, 226. *Worshipped by the* Arabians, 227
Diosurias *famous for many Languages*, 97
Diospolis *or* Thebes, 632
Disciples *amongst the* Iewes, *and their Superstition*,205. *Meanes for their conuersion*, 205
Diuination, 45.51.54.56.131 478.486.686. *Diuers kinds of Diuination*,369.370. Scythian *Diuination*,397.398. Tartarian *Diuination*,416.428. Chinian *Diuination*, 466.467.468
Diuinations *in* Fez, 686.687
Diuorce *of* Iewes, 204
Dodanim *Author of the* Dorians *and* Rhodians, 37
Dogzjis *or* Drusians, *their Sect, Irreligion, Irregularitie, Infamy, Incest*, 220.221
Dogges *worshipped*. 136. *Alms to them*,302. *Vsed in Funerals*, 379. *Hated of the* Persians,393. *Burial Dogges*,398
Dogges *as bigge as Asses*, 408
Dogge *supposed Author of the* Peguans, *and opinion of them*, 498. *Cruelties vsed with them*. 560. *Woolly Dogges in* Angola, 766
Dolphin *which loued a Boy*, 59
Dominica *Iland*, 871
Dosi-hearts *a Sect of the* Samaritans, 139
Dosthai, Dositheus, 139.140. *Diuers of that name, ibid.*
Doues *sacred*, 69
Doues *Letter-carriers*, 580
Dragons 624. *With wings, ibid. Worshipped in* Congo, 767.768
Dreames, 29.79
Drugges *of* India, 563
Drumme *in* Mexico *how vsed*, 883
Drunkennesse *of* Georgians, 347 348
Drusian *originall*, 1039
Drusians, 220.221
Dubh, *a Beast to whom water is deadly*, 614
Duccula *a Region of* Barbary, 701
Duckes *aboue tenne thousand spent daily in* Cantan, 439
Dutroa *an* Indian *plant, which causeth distraction*, 568
Dynasties *of the Eastern Empire*, 59.60. *Of the* Persian,61. *Of* Ægypt, 633

E

EAmai, *a kind of* Iewish *Tythe*, 118
Earth *what*, 5.41. *The forme and diuision thereof*, 9.41. Mahometicall *dreames thereof, worshipped of the* Persians. *The quantity thereof*, 41. *& seq.*
Earth *spuing out stones*, 104
Earthquake *that ruined six hundred Cities, and slue innumerable men and beasts*, 1025
Earthquake *at* Hamath,147. *At* Cyzicus, 334. *In* China, 458. 459. Japon,599.600. *At* Guitimal, 623. *In* Chili, 926. *In* Cubagua,951. *And diuers other places*, 1031
Easter *how kept by the* Turkes, 310
Easterlings, 52
Ebocar *and his Sect*, 275
Ebratana, *a Citie of the* Medes,66 *The situation and description thereof*, 347.350
Echad *how superstitiously vsed by the* Iewes, 187.188
Echebat *the great* Mogor *his tryall*

tryall of Religion, 49. *The disposition, course and manner of life of* Elhebar, 515. 516. *The conquests and death of* Elchbar, 517. 518
Elipes *how observed by the* Tartars, 502. *In* China, 428. Bramenes *opinion thereof*, 560. *In* Ternate, 606
Elen, *the severall opinions thereof*, 15. 16. 17
Elesia, 580
Elem, 83
Egge, *huge Fable of a huge Egge*, 69. 210
Egge *laid on a Feast day, the tale thereof*, 210
Egyptian Chalifa *acknowledged at* Bagdat, 1040
Egypt, *vide* Ægypt.
Egrigaia, *how situate*, 429. *The Inhabitants and their Customes*, 430
Eheie *a name of God*, 3
Elam, *Father of the* Elamites, 37
Elchain *a* Chalife, 237
Elders, 97. *& seq. Seven in each City*, 98. *How they governed, ibid. Their College and conditions*, 99. *Destroyed by* Herod, 100. *How farre their authority under the* Romans, 263
Eleazarus *his* Jewish *Constitutions*, 221
Eleesi, *ruines thereof*, 579. 580
Elephants *how taken*, 501. 564 *Their nature*, 563. *History thereof*, 563. 564. *White ones in* Pegu, 503. *How feraced and observed, ibid.*
Elephants *worshipped*, 565
Elias *and* Enoch, 15. 30. *vide* Hanoch. Jewish *Fables of* Elias, 176
Elius *and* Bruth, 77
Elisha *Founder of the* Æoles, 27
Elisha, Dido, 82
Q. Elizabeths *commendation*, 320
Q. Elizabeths Fore-land, 361
Elmparac Mahomets *Beast*, 248
Elxai, *and* Elixai, 133. *The* Elxai *a Sect of the* Iewes, *their Prayer and Rites*, 134
Elshim *what signifying*, 3
Eme *an* Indian *Fowle*, 565
Emeralds *plenty*, 896
Emims *Giants*, 85
Emir Mahomets *Kindred*, 242
Emirelmumenim, *Captaines of Warre*, 240. *Captaines of the Sound Beleeuers*, *ibid.*
Empalangua *an* African *beast*, 621
England *how happy*, 948
English *Navigations, vid.* Virginia, Guiana, Soldania, Redde Sea, Magellan *Straits*, Scut English *Trade into the East* Indies *justified*, 484. 485. *& seq.*
English *fights with the* Portugals, 757. *& seq.*
Enzanda *Tree*, 769
Ephesus *described*, 336. Diana *of the* Ephesians, *ibid. Temple of* Ephesus, 337
Epicurisme *of* Sardanapalus, 62 *Of the* Persian *Kings*, 360. 361
Epicures, *who so called*, 129
Epicurean *Heremites in* Africa, 626
Epiphanes or Epimanes, 73
Equinoxation *the first parent thereof*, 22. *Maintayned by* Olsens, 134. *By Papists, ibid. In Oracles and Semblsayers*, 643
Eremites, 126
Eris *a* Persian *Citie*, 365
Erthogral *Father of* Otoman, 285
Erythras *(of whom the Red Sea beares name) supposed* Elau. 777
Erythræa, 338. 777
Esarhaddan, *the Sonne of* Senacherib, 136. *Otherwise called* Osnappar, *ibid.*
Esdras *Head of the Land of* Israel, *his habitation*, 147. *His Synagogue, ibid.*
Essens *or* Essees *their sect*, 125. 126 *History of them*, 130. 131. *& seq. divided into Cloysterers and Colegians, ibidem. Did not communicate in the Temple*, 131
Estotland, 808
Euilmerodach *slaine by* Nerigliss-sorus, 62
Eunuches *first made by* Semiramis, 61. *How used by the* Turks, 291. 292
Euphrates, 63. 65
Europe *how bounded*, 41
Euxine *Sea, divided and described*, 576. 577
Excommunication *of the* Iewes, 100. 161
Executions *abhominable*, 977 980
Execution *by Beares*, 978
Exposition *of these words*, In the beginning God created the Heaven and the Earth, 5
Ezechiels *Synagogue and Monument*, 148
Ezra *a Scribe*, 132. 170

F

FAith *of the* Iewes, 171
Fall *of Man*, 21. *Proved*, 23
Fartur *King of* Mangi, 411. 460
Farnus *King of* Media, 350
Fart *worshipped*, 641
Fasts *of the* Iewes, 113. 114. *& seq.* 127. 197. *Of the* Mahumetans, 256. 257. *In* Tanguth, 428. 429. *In* Pegu, 503. *In* Cambaya, 240. *Of the* Bramenes, 547. 548. *Of* Iapon, 593. *In* Burbary, 704
Fatipere *a Citie*, 732
Fatima, Mahomets *daughter*, 242
Faustinus *love to a Fencer*, 54
Feast *in* Babylon *of* Sliacha, 58 *At* Hierapolis, 69. *Of* Adonis, 78. *Of the* Samaritans, 138. *Of* Ramadan *and* Bairam, 263
Feasts *of the* Peguans, 506. 507 *Of the Great* Mogor, 524
Feast *of the* Iewes *of diverse sorts*, 107. *Began at Euen, ibid. Sabbaticall, New Moone, Tabernacles*, 106. 107. 108. 194. *& sequitur. Pentecost, Trumpets, Reconciliation, Tabernacles, ibid. & 109.* 110. 111. 112. 195. 196
Feast *of Lots*, 114. 199. *Of wood-carrying, Dedication, &c.* 113. 114. 115. 199. 200. *& seq. Of their other Feasts*, 199. 200. *Their* Messias *his Feast*, 211. 212
Fertilitie *of* Babylonia, 50. 51. *Of* Albania, 346. 347
Ferdinand *Emperour*, 272
Feræ, *by whom and whence so called*, 106
Ferrat Cin, 388. 389
Fesse or Fez *a Kingdome and Citie*, 679. *& seq. Territory of* Fez, 681
Fesse *built by* Idris, 688. *The Map of* Fez 682. *The sweet situation of* Fez, 683. *Their stately Houses, Temples, Magazines, &c. ibid. Their Colledges, Hospitals, Bath-Houses*, 684. *Their Iudges, Festivals and other Rites*, 685. *Their Diuiners and Sects*, 686. *The severall parts of the* Fezan *Territories*, 687. 688. *& seq.*
Fessios, *or Idols in* Guinea, 717 *& seq.*
Fetissiero *or Priests*, 719. 720
Fighig, *a part of* Numidia, 708
Indian *Figtree*, 17. 567
Fire *whither and how ascendent*, 7

The Opinion of Philosophers thereof, ibid. Worshipped, 53. overcome by Canopus, 55. 56. *Kept alway burning of the* Chaldees *and* Persians, *ibid. Of the* Phœnicians, 77. *A fire issuing out of the Sea,* 608
Fire *natural, unnatural, supernaturall, hellish,* 79. *Land of Fire,* 887
Fiery *God,* 55. *A great Fire at* Constantinople, 289. *A lamentable Fire at* Patane, *and how it happened,* 496
Fishes *sacred at* Orpha, 64. *At* Hierapolis, 69. *In* Syria *and* Phœnicia, 79
Fish-woman, 81. *Flying fishes,* 438
Fishes *with two eye-sights,* 629
Fish-diuing, 380
Fishes *in* India, 565. *In* Guiana *taken with a kind of wood,* 902 *Men living only on Fish,* 580
Fishes, 581
Fishes *called Sea-dog-gets, Strange* Indian *Fishes,* 566. *Mighty shels of Fishes, ibid.*
First *fruits,* 117. 118
First-borne *Priests redeemed,* 121 *How numbred, ibid. How redeemed,* 121. 122
Flesh *not eaten by the* Banians, 541
Flies *worshipped,* 81. 136
Flies *not to be remoued,* 192. *Burning* Flies, 320. *Hand of Flies,* 860. *Flies, troublesome,* 625
Flood, *the causes and circumstances,* 30. 33. *Described,* 34. *Memory thereof amongst the* Syrians, 66, 67. *In* Peru, 940
Florida, Spanish *Discouveries, thereof,* 838. 845. *Slaughter of the* French, 846. *Their Commodities and Cities, ibid. Their Ciuill and Religious Rites,* 847. *Diuinations, common Barnes, killing of the Harts and Crocodiles, long life, ibid. Sacrifice of their Children, Feasts and Feasts,* 848. 849. Pamphila Natuses *Expedition thither,* 849. Nunnes *his wandrings there, and observations of many people and their Rites,* 849. *Adultery punished, their Temples, Funerall,* 851. *Strange lightning there,* Calos *his Sorceries,* Ingrams *tales,* 852
Fogs *in places farre North,* 781
Fountaine *of a bitche substance,* 50
Fountaines *of Bunmon, Allum Salt,* 84. *Of vnsearchable depth and wonder,* 92
Fountaine *of Oyle continually running,* 395. *Of Tarre, ibid.*
Foxes *dun, white, gray,* 621. *With pissels of bone,* 786
Francia Noua, 823. 824. 825
Francia Antarctica, 861
Frankes *Expedition to the Holyland,* 214
Frankes, *why and why so called in the East,* 216. *Their Exploits in* Palæstina, 217. *Their Conquests,* 1042. 1043
Frankincense, 228. *Where it groweth, ibid. Friday Sabboath,* 300. 301. *How kept, ibid.*
Frobishers *Voyages,* 811. 812. *& seq.*
Frogge *of wonderfull greatnesse,* 210
Frog-worshippers, 135. 136
Frost, *vide Ice. No frozen Sea.*
Fruit *forbidden what it was,* 17. *& seq.*
Fruits *of* Sodome, 84. 85. *Of* Iudea 92. *Of* India, 563. *Of* America, 805. *In* Brasil, 912. 913. Guiana, 902
Funerall *Rites at* Hierapolis, 69 *Of* Iewes, 206. 207. *Of the* Nabathitæ, 222. *Of* Turkes, 312. 313. Galatians, 329. Persians, 377. 378. Iesdones, 397. Scythians, 398. Tartarians *and* Cashayans, 416. 417. *In* Sabion, 428. *In* China, 472. 473. *In* Iapon, 509. *In* Guinea, 719. 720. *In* Brasill, 918. 919. *Of the* Tartars, 417. 418. *In* Taugutth, 428. 429. *In* Thebet, 430 *Of the* Iugures, 431. *Of the* Cambayans, 527. *Of the* Bengalans, 509. *Of the* Rasbopts, 535. 536. *In* Botanter, 512. *Of* Bramenes, 547. 548. *Of* Gimarijms, 545. *Of the Kings of* Calicut, 553. *In* Amboyno, 578. *In* Nera, 605. *In* Baly, 611 *Of* Troglodites, 667. *In* Dabaiba, 894. 895. *In* Hispaniola, 959
Fût *a River neere* Atlas, 37

G

GAbbra *a huge Giant,* 32
Gabriel *whipped his ass before the Flood,* 33. *Mahometed, dreames of him,* 242
Gabriel *a counterfeit Patriarch of* Alexandria, 681
Gabriel Bathoee, *and* Gabriel Bethlin-Gabor, 279
Gago, *much frequented by Merchants,* 702. *Described, ibid.*
Gallatia, *or* Gallo-græcia *described,* 328. *Their Religion and Customes,* 329
Galilæa *how situate,* 93
Galilæans, *a Sect so called* 234
Galæ, *called also* Imbij, Giacchi, *and* Iaggas, 772
Gallants, *vide* Gul-gallants.
Galleries *wonderfull stately,* 51
Galli, *Priests of* Syrian *Goddesse,* 68. *How instituted, ibid.*
Galli, *Priests of* Cybele, 340
Gambra, 701
Games *at* Tyre, 79. *At* Olympus, Cæsarea, 126. *In* China, 444
Games *prohibited in the* Alchoran, 252
Ganzi, *a Societie of the* Iewes, 135
Ganges *River, and the Superstitions there observed,* 509. 510
Gangeticus Sinus, 593
Gaoga *described,* 722
Gaon, *a Doctorall Degree of the* Iewes, 163. 166
Garamanter, 37
Gardens *Pensile at* Babylon, 48 *made by* Nabuchodonozer, *ibid.*
Garizim, *an Hill fertile, and well watered,* 147
Gastromancie, 369
Gatis *a* Syrian *Queene,* 80
Gaulonites, *or* Galilæans, 132
Gazith, *or Consistory of the Senatt,* 99
Gebal *a fame Hill,* 147
Gehenna, *why Hell so called,* 86
Gemmes, *discourse of them by* Vasilwich, 983. 984
Genebrards *antiquities for* Romish *supposes,* 30
Generation *conferreth not the Soule,* 25. *Yet disposeth the bodie to receiue it, ibid.*
Geographie *how brought to perfection,* 43. 43. *Profitable to Historie,* 44. *To the Gospell,* 43. *Yearmes of Geographie, ibid.*
Geometry *inuented by the* Ægyptians, 642. 643
Genesara *a famous Lake,* 92
Genists, *or* Genites, *a Sect which stood vpon their Stocke and Kinred,* 135
Gentiles *who so called,* 89
Geonim *and their Generations,* 165

Georgia, 346.348
Georgians, 347.348. S. George, 378.319.348
Gerbertus his Idols head, 70
Germanes, an order of Brachmanes in India, 479
Giants, 32.922
Giacqui or Iagges, 772. Their strange and cruell ceremonies, 773
Gibeonites called Nethanims, 122
Gibraltar Straits, why so called, 622
Gilolo Iland, 578.604
Ginger how growing, 569
Girghi, a Religious Order of Mockes, 541
Giraffa an African Beast, 621
Glasse-hops, Glasse-sand, 79. Burning Glasse, 299
Sir Thomas Glover, 879
Goa, the description thereof, 544. & seq. The Heathens and Christians living therein, 545.546. The Title of the King of Goa, 737
Goats forbidden the Tabij, 52
Goats worshipped, 164
God, page 1. Known by his word & workes, 2. His nature, ibid. That he is, and what he is, his names; in what sense ascribed to him, 2. 3 His knowledge and other Attributes, 3. His workes, 4. Called God of goodnesse, 12. What he did before the Creation, ibid. A Image of God, what, 13. By the Fall depraved, not utterly extinct, 27.
Gods, 51.55.56. The God Venus, 64
Gods of the Ægptians, Phœnicians, and others, 77.80. The Alcoran doctrine concerning God, 251. Five differing opinions concerning the Providence of God, 275. Persian Gods, 372.373
Goddesse of discord, 76. Other Goddesses, 77.78
Goia first found the use of the Loadstone, 42
Golchonda Kingdome, 993. & seq. The description thereof, 995 Glorious Palace, ibid.
Gold of Arabia, 216.227
Golden Castile, 769
Golden Hind compassed the world.
Golden Age, 795
Gold contemned, 790. Store thereof, 769.767. & seq.
Goldsmiths Trade unlawfull to the Moores, why, 274
Gomez or Gamez, 36
Gomes his Discovery, 810
Gordiæan Hils, 81
Gordius and Gordian knot, 333
Goropius his conceit of the forbidden Tree, 17. Of the Arke, 33 Of Ararat, 35. Of the Dutch Language, 30. Of the Ægyp ian Holes, 396
Gortheni, a Samaritan Sect, 140
Gospell how termed by the Iewes, 161
Goyame Kingdome, 740
Gouro and Gouren, 586
Grasshoppers great store and troublesome, 615. Eaten, ibid.
Grecians of Iauan, 36. Of Magna Græcia, ibid.
Græcian a Sect of Iewes, 123 124. Used the translation of the Seventy, 99
Greeke under the Turke unlearned, &c. 324.325. Of moderne Greeke, seuerey Dialects, the worst at Athens.
Greenland Voyages, 814.815. & seq.
Groenland, 817
Guacas, Idols and Temples in Peru, 940.941
Gualata, a beggerly Country, 710
Guanacipa his riches, 408
Guatimala, 885.886
Guafar, Brother of Atabaliba, 335
Guber, the description thereof, 722
Guiana, the Discovery thereof by Sir Walter Raleigh, 980. & seq. The description thereof, ibid. Relations and Discoveries thereof by other Englishmen, 901. 902. & seq.
Guinea, 709. & seq. Their customes and rarities, 716. & seq. Their marriages, birth and education of their children, 717. & seq. Description of their persons, diet, disposition, drinking, faith & rites, 718. Divination of their Priests, Gods, and Funerals, 719. Customes of the King &c. 720
Gulhla inventor of Gothicke Letters, 82
Gungomar, 681
Gurupi, Indian Doctors, 479
Gul-gallants, 863
Gunnes, their nature and inventon, 512
Master Guy in Newfoundland, 832
Guzzula a Region in Barbary, 760
Gymnosophists, Indian Philosophers, 480.481

H

HAalon the Tartar his sacking of Bagdet, 65
Haziph, or Azareth a scalt of the Iewes, 112
Hadrian, vide Adrian,
Hagags cruelties, 74
Hagarens, whence so called, their habitation, &c. 229.230
Hagiagies cruelue, 1024
Haithon, vide Aiton.
Haire consecrated at the Temple of Dea Syria, 70. Why worne long on the crowne, 93. Worne with a long locke on the left side (as the Deuill appeares) in Virginia, 843
Hakems wickedness, 1039
Halicarnassus, 81
Halyartis, 261
Hali, vide Ali.
Dollour Hals commendation, 81
James Hals Discovery, 813.814
Hameeu, chiefe City of China, 443. Whether Quinsay, ibid.
Hamath, Earthquake, 147
Hamith a Iewish Court, 98
Hammientes, 666
Hamet King of Barbary, 695. & seq.
Habet or Hamet Ben Abdela Prophetical King 696. Slaine, 659 700
Hannos Discoveries, 512
Haran Temple and the Pilgrimages thither, 255
Harcourts plantation in Guiana, 901.902
Haron the 26. Chalifa, his Acts, Victories, Donation and loue of Learning, 1028.1029
Harpies, 67
Halen the sixt Emperour of the Muslims, 1021. His loiousnesse, ibid. Poysoned by his Wife, ibid.
Haideri and Haidim why so called and when begun, 125.126. Not a Sect, but a Fraternitie: their Rites, ibid. Diuers of the Phaderisees and Essees of the Fraternitie, ibid.
Hassem and Sem, 101
Hawkes worshipped, 635
Captaine Hawkins his Iournall, 520.521
Hea a Province, 243
Head of the Captiuitie, 131
Head of the Land of Israel, 134
Heauen and Earth, Gen. 1. What meant thereby, 5. Three Heauens,

nens, 6. *Heaven of the blessed, ibid. Of the Kabalists and Talmudists*, 161. 162. *Of* Mahomet, 245.246. *Of* Siamites, 491.492. *Heavens of the* Iaponites, 587. *Heaven worshipped of the Chinois*, 471
Hebrew *the first Language*, 39.40 *Of* Hebet, *ibid. why called Hebrewes*, 40.95. *The same Language at first with the Chaldean, ibid.*
Hebrew *Accents and Letters*, 40 *Not capable of mestre*, 41
Hebrewes *why abhomination to the* Ægyptians, 637
Hebrewes *in a special sense*, 95
Hebrew *Patriarchs and their Religion before the Law*, 95.96. *& seq.*
Hebrew *Policy and Civill Government*, 97.98
Hecla *a hill in* Island, *by some supposed Purgatory*, 761
Heden, 17
Hegira, 242. *The computation of the Mahometicall Hegira*, 246 1014
Heliogabilus, 58.79
Heliognosti, *worshippers of the Sunne*, 135
Hell *a fire without light*, 71. *The* Alpha *and* Omega *of wickednesse, ibid. Why called* Gehenna, 86. *By whom escaped*, 314 Mahomets *Hell*, 254.262.314 Siamites *Hell*, 491
Hell-mouth, 50
Helena *Island*, 781, *& seq.*
Helena *Queene of* Adiabena, 62 *Of* Æthiopia, 781
Hellen *a Giant worshipped*, 45
Hillensists, *whence so called*, 124
Helle Hellespont,
Hellenians, *or* Hethenians *a Sect of the* Iewes, 133
Hemerobaptists, Iewish *Heretickes*, 133
Hendorones, *their Countrey and Rites*, 535
Henoch *taken away*, 15. 30. 31 *His Arches, Pillars, and Writings, ibid. By the* Greekes *called* Atlas, 31
Henoch *a Citie so called*, 29. *Booke of* Henoch, 30. *Very fabulous*, 31. *A fragment of that Booke cited, ibid.*
Henry *Prince of* Wales, *his* Encomium, 861
Henry *of* Portugall *first Discoverer of the Coasts of* Africa, 619
Hennes *Eggs how hatched in* Ægypt, 627
Heracometæ, *a people of most beastly disposition*, 330
Hercules, 77.78.336
Hercules *of the* Partians, 337 *Of* Heracles, 577
Hercules *Pillars, two Hills*, 680
Heracles *a Citie described*, 577
Heraclius *his Acts*, 215.242.364 365
Heremites, 277.428. *Mock-heremites*, 315. *Famous Heremite in* Africa, 637. *At Saint* Helena, 781
Herod Ascalonita, 81. *Hee sine the Senesty*, 100. *Built the Temple*, 102.103
Herodians, *a Sect of the* Iewes, 134
Herules, *their Rites*, 400
Hesseos, *vide* Essens.
Hesperides, 680
Hassissim, *a Nation neere to Mount* Libanus, 277. *Their Prophet, ibid.*
Hierapolis *in* Syria, 68
Hierarchie *and High Priesthood of the* Chaldees, 55. *Of the* Syrians, 68. Phœnicians, 79 *Of the* Israelites *before the Law*, 98. *Of* Samaritans, 138. 139. *Of* Aaron, 121. *Of* Assaines, 218. 219. *Of* Dogzijn, 220. 221. *Of the* Turkes, 319. 320. *Of* Cappadocians, 326. Zelans, 328 Armenians, 342. Albanians, 346.347. Persians, 395.396 *In* Cathaya, 404. 415. *Of* Tartars, 416.417. *Of* Thebeth, 430. China, 461 466. *Of the* Brachmanes, 479. *Of the* Siamites, 491. *Of the* Bramins, 547.548. *In* Cochin, 552. *In* Iapon, 592. *In* Ternate, 605.606. *In* Samatra, 614. *In* Pegu, 505.506 *In* Ægypt, 635
Hieroglyphicks, 82
Hierotimus *an* Arabian *King which had sixe hundred children by Concubines*, 229
Hierro *one of the Canaries*, 783
Hillel, 158. *When hee flourished*, 160. *His Disciples*, 165
Hippopotamus, 714
Hiram *his Acts*, 79
Hircania, *and the* Hircanians, 355.356
Hiriam *Sonne of* Abdulmelic *the seventeenth Chalifa*, 1025. *His two Sonnes* Maaui *and* Suleiman, *in a Battell, put the* Romanes *to flight, and tooke* Constantine *the Emperour, ibid. His great Wardrobes, ibid.*
Hispahaam, *vide* Ispham.
Hispaniola *described*, 955. *& seq. Their Creatures, Oracles, Priests, Dances, Zemes*, 957 *& seq. The Miracles, Prophecies, Feasts of their Zemes, their Holy-bread, Oracles, Burials, Marriages, Punishments, Traditions of the Creation, and Spirits*, 958. *Ceremonies about the sicke and dead*, 959. *Temples there, idolum. Quite disseopled of the naturall* Iosiins, 960
Histaspes *Father of* Darius, *his tranckle to the* Brachmanes, 479
Historie *helped by Geographie*, 4
Hoaquim *the Name of a China Idoll which hath rule over the eyes*, 461
Hog *a* Phœnician *Philosopher*, 82
Hogs *with hornes*, 566. *With teeth more then ordinary, ibid.*
Hollanders *Acts in the* East Indies, 483. *& seq.*
Holy-land, *vide* Iudæa *and* Palestina, *the situation and Map thereof*, 91. *& seq.*
Homicide *punished in* Kain, 28
Homer, 207
Homer *worshipped*, 621
Honduras, *and the Rites there*, 886
Honey *venemous*, 221
Horeb, 211
Horis *offered to the Sunne*, 56
Horsesflesh *royall fare to the* Tartars, 33
Horses *taken with Hawkes*, 392 *Fatted and eaten in Cairo*, 653
Sir Edwa d Horsey, 873
Horsey, *viz. Sir* Ieremie Horsey *his Observations in* Russia *and other Countries*, 973. *& seq.*
Horses *rooting in ground*, 587 *Worne by some Kings and Priests*, 613.884
Hosanna, *of the* Iewes, 112
Hospitall *at* Bagdat, 237. 238 242. 243. Medina, 272. *Of Saint* Iohn Baptist, 37. *In* Persia, 374. 375. Meeding, 6. Goa, 545.546. *Cairo*, 653 & 654. *Of the* Turkes, 208
Hos-

Hospitals *for Beasts and Birds*, 529
Hospitular *Knights*, 584
Hourdes of Tartars, 422 423
Hours *equall and unequall*, 106
Of Prayer, *ibid.*
Hudsons *Voyages to the North & Northwest*, 817. *His wintering, and treachery of his men*, 818. *Gods justice on them ibid.*
Huiunfin *the strange Story of him*, 461
Hungaria magna, 404
Hungarie *overrun by the* Turkes, 283.284. *By the* Tartars, 404 405
Huracanos, 963
Hufeins *Herefie*, 1034
Hydaspes *Priest of the Sunne*, 730
Hyrtas, 624
Hyæna, 622
Hyperboreans, 397.400
Hyrcania, *the description thereof*, 355

I

IAbbok, 86
Iacapucaya *a* Brasilian *Fruit*, 913
Iacobs *twelue Sonnes*, 89.90. *Hee reformed his Family*, 95
Iacobites *Sect multiplying*, 1017
Iagges, *vide* Giacqui.
Iah, *the name of God*, 2
Iamaica *described*, 954
Iamboli Insula, 796
Iames *King of Great* Brittaine, *his commendation*, 817
King Iames *his* New New-land, 814
King Iames *his Cape*. 817
Ianambuxos *a Sect in* Iapan, *their Rites*, 594.595
Ianizaries, *of the* Turke, 291 292
Iapheth, Iapetus *his posterite*, 36. *The eldest Sonne of* Noah, *ibid.*
Iapon *the Historie thereof*, 586. & *seq. Diuerse of their Rites*, 587 *Their dispositions*, *ibid.* Adams *his Voyage thither*, 588. & *seq. Captaine* Saris *his Voyage*, 590 *Their hatred of* Chinois, *ibid. Their gouernment*, 590. *Their desperatenesse and cruelties*, 591 *Their executions, crossing and crucifying*, 592. *Their Sects*, 592 593. Tarcosoma and Quibacondonnes *cruelties and vanities there*, 591.593. *Their* Bonzij, 594. Colosses, *ibid. Feasts*, 595 *Confession*, 597. *Idols and Temples*, 597.598. *Funerals*, 599 *Earthquakes*, 599. Polos *reports* 600. *Schismes*, 601. *Iesuites there*, *ibidem. Ilands adioyning*, 601.602. *The Map of* Iapan, 588
Iarchas, *chiefe* Brachmane, 478 479
Iason, *the Story of him and his Fleece*, 347
Iaua *greater and lesse*, 379. 609 *Eight Kingdomes in* Iaua Minor, 609
Iaua Maior *the cruell Rites*, *ibidem, The diuers Kingdomes therein*, 610. *The old King and his wives custome*, *ibidem. Their Religion, Comœdies, &c.* 611. & *seq. Acts of* Iauan *slaues in* Patane, 495.496. *In* Banda, 578 607
Iberians *of* Thubal, 37
Iberia, *the situation and description thereof*, 346
Ibis *a Bird-god*, 642
Icaria, 823
Ice *fortification*, 974
Ice *many leagues long*, 712. *Ilands of Ice*, 907
Ichneumon *an* African *Beast described*, 624
Ichthyophagi, 754
Idolatry!, 29.45.53.57.79.123 124.242.415.428.460.461 597. *Reade the whole Story of* Ægypt. *The Authors and originall thereof*, 45.95.96.12. *How monstrous*, 79.213. *The strange Idols of the* Tartars, 415 *By Idolaters, whom understood*, 428.429
Idols *in* China, 461. *In* Iapan, 597.598. *In* Ægypt, 635. Virginia, 839
Idol *in* Golchonda, 999.1000
Iduma*ea how situate, and whence so called*, 85
Iebussilem, 94
Iehouah, *the name of God*, 2.3.4 *Written* Iou *and* Iehueh, *ibid. Whither the word fit to bee pronounced*, 101
Ierusalem, 93.94. *New* Ierusalem 96.97. *The holy Cite*, 102 *The glory and ruine thereof*, 127 *Taken by* Antiochus, 73. *By* Titus *and* Adrian, 94. *By* Ptolemey, 108. Iewish *dreame thereof*, 145.146
Ieremy *the Prophet worshipped*, 644
Ieselbas Tartars, 424.425
Iesuits *impudence*, 76. *Reports of Miracles*, 395.396. *Strict obedience*, 158. Babels *ballers*, 586 *Deuisers of sytes*, 395. Veteratores, *and yet Nouellers*, 412 *Their being and acts in* China, 474.475. & *seq. In* Siam, 490 *Their Renencmes at* Goa, 545 546. *When they first entred the* Mogols *Country*, 583. *Their Iesuitisme there*, 527.528. *their prancks in* Asia, 586
Iethroes *counsell*, 96.97
Iewish *dreames*, 30. *Priuiledges*, 89. *Apostasie*, 90
Iewes *compared to* Gideons *fleece*, 90. *Why and when so called*, 91. *Their three Courts*, 98. *Punnishments*, 99.100. *Computation of dayes, houres, watches, moneths, yeares*, 105.106. & *seq. Their* Tekupha, 107. *Feasts*, 107. *Sabbaoth*, 106.107. *New Moone and Passouer*, 107.108. *Pentecost, Trumpets, Reconciliation, Tabernacles, ibid.* & 109.110 111.112. *Feast of Lots*, 114 *Of Wood-carrying, Dedication, and other Feasts and Fasts*, 114 115. *Oblations, Gifts and Sacrifices of the Iewes*, 115.116 *Tithes and first-fruits*, 117.118 *Personall Offerings*, 119. 120 *Their Priests and Leuits, and First-borne*, 121. 122. *Their Sects*, 123.124.125. *Washings*, 127. *Temple, vide Temple. The Iewes distinguished into* Hebrewes, Græcians, *and* Babylonians, 124. *Into* Karraim, & *Rabbinists*, 125.126. *Hatred of the* Samaritans, 136.137. *Odious to all people*, 140. *Destroyed by* Titus, 140.141. *By* Adrian, 141.142. *Forbidden to looke into* Iudæa, 142. *Their Rebellion under* Traian, 143. *Their* Barcosba, 142. *Their* Pseudo-Moses *and* Andrew, 143. *Their false Christs*, 143.144. *The dispersions of Iewes and destruction, in* Asia, Africke, Europe, Germany, 144.145. *In* France, Spaine, Barbary, 145.146. *In* Zant, Solinichi, *ibidem. Their estate and dispersions in the time of* Benjamin Tudelensis, 146 147. 148. 149. *Iewes lately found in* China, 150. *In* England, 151. *The manner of their life & gouernment in* England,

152. *Their Vilianies there, ibid. Chronologie,* 153. 154. *The* Iewish Talmud *and Scripture,* 155.159. *Their conceits of the Traditionall Law, ibidem. When and by whom written,* 157. *Preferring it before the Law written, ibid. Paralelled with Papists,* 158. 159. *By whom this Tradition passed, ibidem.. Absurdities thereof,* 160. *Of the* Iewish Cabala *and* Cabalists, 161.162. *The three Parts of the* Cabalistical *Arte, ibidem. Testimonies of* Iewes *against themselves,* 163. *Their Blasphemie of Christ,* 164. *Of their* Rabbines, *and the Rites of their Creation,* 164. *& seq. Of their* Rabbinicall *Titles, Dignitie, diuers Ranks, Degrees, Academies,* 165. 166. *& sequitur. Their yeeres sited to diuers Sciences, &c.* 167. *The* Iewes *dealing in and with the Scriptures, their Interpretations, &c.* 168. 169. *& sequitur, Letters and Prickes, and* Maloreth, 170 *The Moderne* Iewish *Creed,* 170. 171. *Their interpretation of the same,* 172. *Their Affirmative and Negative Precepts,* 173. *The Negative Precepts Expounded by the* Rabbines, 174. *The Affirmative vnfolded* 175. 176 *Their Absurde Exposition of Scriptures,* 177. *& sequitur. Their Dreames of* Adam, 178. Iewesses *Conception, Trauell and Tales of* Lilith, 179. *The* Iewish *manner of Circumcision,* 179. 180. *If Female Children,* 180. 181 *Of the* Iewish *Purification, Redemption and Education,* 181. 182. *Dreames of Sucking, Going Bare, Vngirt, &c. ibidem..* Iewish *Prayers at Morning,* 183. *Their Rising, Clothing, Washing,* 184 *Of their* Tzizis *and* Tephillim, *and holy Vestments,* 184 185. *Of their Schoole or Synagogue* 185. *Of their Prayers and an hundred Benedictions,* 186. *& sequitur. Redeeming of Sacrifices, ibidem. Of their* Kenad *and other Prayers,* 187 188. *Superstition in place and gesture, and their Litanie, ibidem. Why they keepe Cattell,* 188. *Their washing and preparing to meat. behaviour at meat, opinion of Spirits attending their meates and Graces,* 188. 189 *Their Euen-song & Nocturnes, ibidem. Their Mundayes and Thursdayes,* 190. *Their Law-Lectures,* 191. *Their selling Offices, women's Synagogue, ibid. their preparations to the Sabbath,* 192 *Their Sabbatary Superstitions, & opinions,* 192. 193. *Fables of Sunne and Moone, Sabbatary soules ibid. Of the* Iewish *Passeouer and the Preparation thereunto,* 194.195. *The Rites in obseruants in thereof, ibid. Their Pentecost and Tabernacles,* 196.197 *Their New-moones, New yeeres day, Iudgement day, Sanct. worship,* 196. 197. *Their Confession, Lent, Cock-superstition, and penance,* 197. 198. *Of their Cookerie and Butchery,* 200. 201. *Of their manifold conzunage. ibid. Of their Espousal and Marriage,* 201. 202. *Marriage duties and Diuorce,* 203. 204. *Of the* Iewish *Beggars,* 205. *Diseases, ibidem.* Iewish *Penances, ibid. Their Ceremonies about the sicke, about the dead in the house, at the Graue and after the Burriall, with all their Funerall Rites,* 206. 207. Iewish *Purgatory, ibid. Their two* Messiasses, *and the signes of the comming of their* Messias, 207. 208. 209 *Acts of* Messias Ben Ioseph, *ibid.* Iewish *tales of monstrous Birds, Fishes and Men,* 210. *Their* Messias, *his Feast,* 211. *the hopes and hinderances of the* Iewes *Conuersion,* 212. 213. *& seq. Scandals to the* Iewes, *ibid. A merry tale of a* Iew, *& of his fellowes deluded,* 580. 581. *Their trauell to the Sabbaticall Riuer, ibid.*

Iezid *sonne of* Muauii, *the* 8. Chalifa, 1021. Iezid *sonne of* Abdilmelic, *the* 16. Chalifa, 1025 *Vsagiment to women, playes and spectacles, ibid.*

Ignatius Loyola, *the* Iesuite-founder, 158

Ilands *adiacent to* Asia, 577. *& seq.*

Ilands *peculiar to one sexe,* 578

Ilands *adiacent to* Africa, 676. 677. 704. *to* America, 950. 951. *& seq.*

Ilinda del Moro *and the commodities thereof,* 578

Ilium, *or* Troye, *the situation and Founder thereof,* 372

Image *of God,* 14.15. *How farre lost,* 22

Images *how came to be worshipped,* 45.46

Images *in the Temple of* Belus, 49

Image *erected by* Nebuchadnezer, 59. *Of* Senacherib, 62

Images *in the Temple at* Hierapolis, 68.69. *Of* Apollo *at* Daphne, 71

Image *in* Nebuchadnezars *dreame* 72. *Of* Victoria *taken away with a serpent,* 73. *Of men made Gods,* 75. *Of* Moloch, 86

Iewish *hatred of Images,* 213

Turkish *hatred of them..* 301

Dreame of an Image at Rome, 205. *Of* Venus, 56.59. Torkish *nicety for Images,* 300. 301

Images *of* Mars *and* Saturne *at* Mecca, 295.268. Persian *Images and the sacrificing to them,* 374.375.976

Images *of the* Tartars, 423. *In* Tanguth, 428. 429. *In* Cathay, 405.415.416.426. *Of the* Samoeds, 432.433. Chinois 470.471. *& seq.* Siamites, 490 491. *In* Pegu, 505.506. *In* Bengala, 508. 509. *In* Salsette, 545 Calicut, 550. Negapatun, 557 558. *In* Iapon, 597.598. *Of* Adam *in* Zeilan, 616.617. *In* Ægypt, 635.636. *In* Mexico, 870.873. *& seq. &c.* Acufamil, 885. *In* Guiana, 901. *& seq. In* Peru, 940.941

Imbij *a Barbarous Nation,* 755

Imemia *a Sect embraced of the* Persians *and others,* 275.276

Impropriations *Popish,* 119. *How many and how wicked,* 119.120

Incest *of the* Dergzijn, *fathers, polluting their owne daughters, &c.* 220. *Mother with the sonne ibid.*

India, *what Countries so called,* 477

India Minor *and* Maior, 755. *The Name* India *how vsed,* 457

India *how diuided.* 477. Indian *Rites before and after* Baccho, 381.382

Indians *of seuen sorts,* 478. *Conditions and life of them* Bramine,

nes.478.479. *Diuers orders of them, ibid. Their Rites in burning themselues,* 480
Indian *Gods, Monsters, Dances, and other Rites,* 481.482
Indian *women,* 482. *Fruits, Plants, Spices, Beasts. &c.* 563. *& seq.*
Portugall *and* Dutch *trading in* India, 483. *Of the* English *Trade there and many arguments in defence of it,* 484 485. *& seq.*
Indian *societie commended, ibid*
Indico *how and where it growes,* 570.1003
Indus *Riuer worshipped,* 478.479 *Described, ibid*
Inguas, *title of the Kings of Peru,* 931
Intelligents *a Sect of* Moores, 275
Inundations *in* China, 458
Iobs *Storie said to bee fayned* 164
Ioghi, Indian *Votaries and* Catharists, 574. *Their Opinions, ibid. Furious zeale, selfe-rigor,* 575
Iohn *King of* England *his Embassage,* 702
Ionia *how situate,* 336. *Whence so called, and the principall Cities thereof, ibid.*
Ionithus *a supposed sonne of* Noah 35
Ionas *sent to* Niniue, 66
Ionadab *father of the* Rechabites, 125
Ionathas *sonne of* Vsiel 161
Ionathan *Author of the* Chaldee *Paraphrase,* 165. *The opinions of him and his Sect, ibid.*
Ionike *Letters,* 81
Ioppe *when built,* 83
Ior *a Kingdome,* 496
Iordan *Riuer described,* 92
Iosephus *not skilfull in* Hebrew, 94 Ben Gorion *counterfeit,* 129. *His testimonie of Christ,* 163
Irak *a Kingdome,* 220
Isabella *Iland,* 904
Is *a Citie so called,* 50
Isis, *the Storie thereof,* 78.80.83. 635.636
Isligerres, 353
Island *and* Iscaria, 831, *& seq*
Iman *a* Drusian *Prophet,* 220.221
Ismael, 92
Ismaelites *a Sect,* 132
Ismael Sophi, 381.382. *The Second* 815
Israel *who called,* 90. *Their number,* 91. *How gouerned before and in the time of* Moses, 68. *How How after,* 98,99. *Carried captiue,* 121. *When they departed Ægypt,* 675. *Some remnants in* China. 475
Iudones *their Rites,* 397
Italie *wherein happie and vnhappie* 828
Iuan Vasiliwich *Emperour of* Russia *his cruelties and historie at large by Sir* Ierom Horley, 973, *& seq.*
Iuba *a King and Writer,* 678
Iubilee, 112. *The nine and fortieth yeere,* 113. *The People Iubilee, ibid. Iubilee of the* Mexicans 881
Iucatan, *and the Rites there,* 885
Iuchri, Iuchria, Iurchi, 341
Iudah, 124
Iude *his citing of a testimonie of* Henoch, 30
Iudæa, 92. *When first so called,* 93 *vid.* Ierusalem *and* Iewes.
Iudgement-*Day*, Turkish *opinions thereof,* 313
Iugures, 404. *The Sect and Rites of the* Iugures, 431
Iulian *Apostata,* 72
Iulian *the Spanish Traytor,* 229.
Iuno Olympia, 78.81
Iupiter *of the Plough,* 77. *Of the Dunghill,* 80. Beellamen *and* Olympius, 77.82. Triphylius, 201. Bellipotens, 311. Hercæus *and* Fulminator, 318. Defensor, 319. Larissæus, 321
Iupitur Sagus 328.
Iupiter *of the* Persians, 396
Iupiter Græcanicus, 137. *The Oracle of* Iupiter Ammon, 665
Isates *King of* Adiabena, 63

K

KAbala *what it is* 161 *& seq. How differing from the* Talmud, 161.163. *Three kinds ibid.*
Kabala *of the* Mahumetans, 276 277
Kain *his Sacrifice,* 28. *His punishment, ibid. His remouing to* Nod *and his posteritie,* 29
Kain *commended by the* Caiani, 135
Kalender *of* Iewish *Fasts and Feasts,* 113.114. *Of the* Samaritans, 137.138. *Of the* Saracens, 229.230. *Of the* Peruans, 945.946
Kara, Karraim, *or* Koraim. *Scripture* Iewes, 125.129. *Ancient and moderne differ,* 129
Karda *Mountaines,* 35
Karthada, 82
Kedar *a Countrie abounding with flocks of sheepe and goates,* 85
Kegis 405
Kidusith *a* Iewish *prayer,* 186
Kine *worshipped by the* Indians *and why,* 50. *how*
King *of the* Iewes *his prerogatiue,* 89
Kiou *chiefe Citie of* Russia, 297
Kirgessen Tartars, 421
Kithiya *the situation and description thereof,* 404. *Their Rites,* 405. *Their faith and manner of writing, ibid. vid.* Cathaya.
Kiugin *a degree of the* Chinois, 449
Knights *of* Rhodes, 584
Knighthood *in* Cialoa, 855.856. *in* Mexico, 866. 867. *In* Brasil 914. Goa, 544. *Maior* Kniuets *most strange aduentures in* Brasill *and other parts,* 909,910.911
Koptus *a Citie that gaue name to* Ægypt, 626
Kumero, Kumeri, Kumeraes, Kumeraeg 37
Kyrkes *whence so called,* 120
Kitayans *and their Religion,* 404

M

MAbans *Idols.* 98
Laborosoarchadus, 62, *Hee is that* Baltasar *mentioned by* Daniel, 63
Labyrinth *in* Ægypt. 633. 634
Lac *an* Indian *drugge.* 569
Ladrones *Iland, the description thereof,* 950. *The Rites and Customes there,* 951
Lake *at* Hierapolis, 69. Ascalon, 81. Sodome, 84. 85. *Called* Asphaltites, 92. Thonitis, 65 Genesareth *and* Samachonitis, 92. Arethusa, 318. *At* Hameeu *in* China, 441. *At* Quinsay, *ibid. The Lake of* Nizris, 634. Gale, Goiame, Magnice, *and other Lakes in* Africa, 773 774.775

Lamech, Iewish *Dreames of him*, 30
Lambe, *Paschall, vide* Paschall. *A Lambe the daily Sacrifice of the* Halidim, 125.126
Lahor, 413
Lampes *nine hundred in the Temple of* Fez, *and as many arches*, 683. *A Lampe perpetually burning*, 147
Lampe *a stone so called of strange effect*, 69
Languages *confounded*, 38.40 *Restored, ibid. Which was the first Language*, 38.39.264. *Reckoned by some*, 40.164
Languages *which the most general*, 265. *Strange Language used in holy things in* Peru, 938. 940 *In* Bisnagar, 572. *In* Siam *for other Sciences*, 491.492
Last Chalifas *in* Bagdad *and* Ægypt, 1044
Laodicea, 70. *& seq. Sixe of that name*, 71
Laos, *or* Lisos *an* Indian *people, their habitation and rites*, 489.490
Lar *and* Cailon, 580
Laufu *a Philosopher of* China, 464 *His Sect, and the Rites thereof*, 465.466
Law *written in Mans heart*, 19 *Differing from Ceremoniall, ibid.*
Law *diuided into Ceremoniall, Moraall, Iudiciall*, 96. *Their difference ibid. Written and vnwritten*, 121. *Dreames of vnwritten*, 136. *& seq. The Law taken for all the Scripture*, 159. *The* Mahumetan *Law and the followers thereof*, 254
Lawrence *Iland, vide* Madagascar.
Lawrence *Riner*, 799
Lecanomancy, *a kind of Diuination*, 365
Leigh, *viz. Captaine* Leigh *his Plantation in* Guiana, 901 902 *& seq.*
Legend *of* Brandon, 15. Francis, 127.197
Legends of Mahomet, 242.243
Lent *of the* Iewes, 197.198. *Of* Mahumetans, 263.310. *Vide* Ramadam.
Lent *of the* Moores, 275. *Of the* Mexicans, 880.881. *Of the* Tunians, 669 670
Leo, *viz.* John Leo *an* African *Writer, Embassadour from the King of* Fez Deeo multa mentio per 6. Lib. tot.
Leonides *Exploit*, 343
Lepanto *Sea-fight*, 694
Leprosies *cured*, 64
Lequio, *certaine Iliands so called, rich in Gold*, 578
Lerius *his Observations of* Brasil, 906.907
Lesbari, *or* Hasbari, 276
Letters *when inuented*, 30. Iewish *and* Phœnician, 82. *The Authors and Inuentors of Letters, ibidem. Hieroglyphicall Letters, ibid.* Samaritan *and* Hebrew, 138
Letters *supposed by the simple* Indians *to speake*, 484
Letters *carried by Pideons*, 580
Leui *and* Leuits, 97.98.121.122 *Their Cities*, 124
Leuiathan, *the huge Whale mentioned in Scripture*, Iewish *tales thereof*, 210
Lewis *King of* Hungary *slaine*, 268
Libanus *a Hill*, 91
Library *of* Iewes, 166. *Of* Mahumetans, 250.274. *At* Pergamus, 335. *In* Lisbon, 597.598 *In* Cairo, 652.653. *In the Hill* Amara, 744.745
Lybia *described*, 706. 707. *& seq.*
Lignum Aloes, *where growing*, 489 570
Lilis *or* Lilith, 178.179.180
Light *in the Creation what*, 7.10 *Excellency thereof*, 8. *Funeraall Lights of the* Iewes, 206. 207 *Of* Turkes, 289.290
Light *of* Mahumet, 244
Light *of the Moone, and Snow serues the Northerne people in Winter*. 603
Lights *burning in* Mahumetan *Temples, in one two thousand, in another eight hundred*, 248. *In that of* Damascus, 9000 75.76
Lights *in the* Turkish *Temples*, 306.307. *In the Temple of* Fez, 684.685
Lilith *or* Lilis *of the* Iewes, 178 179
Lion *his awe of man*, 36. *The nature of Lions at large*, 621.622
Lions *deuoured the* Samaritans, 128
Lions *of* America, 804 *Lions (or lye one) which had been* Amsis, 584
Lithuania. *Sir* Ierome Horseyes *entertainment there*, 990
Liuonia *inuaded*, 974
Liuqoin *Iland*, 602
Loanda *Iland described*, 769.770
Loango *and their Rites of Sacrificing*, 770. *Their Exequies, Kinne, forbidden meates, restitutions, tryals*, 770.771. *Their Executions vpon water-tryals*, Chekoke, Dunda. 771. *Their Idols and Votaries, ibid.*
Loretto *Lady*, 272
Lots. *Feast of Lots*, 114. 159 *Diuination by Lots*, 467.468
Louse *killing, when vnlawfull*, 542
Lousy-Bay, 817
Lubat *mountayne*, 35
Lucayæ *Iland*, 954.955
Lucian *his Narration of* Dea Syria, 67.68
Lud, *Father of the* Lydians, 37
Luna *and her horne head*, 74
Luxury *of the* Persians, 377
Lydia *and* Lydians, 335.339

M

MAabad *first* Chalifa *of* Ægypt, 1037
Macao *or* Amacao, 472
Macabees *History* 72.73. *Altis*, 111. *Why so called*, 141
Macæ *Ishauen*, 667
Machamut *King of* Cambaya *his Deuouout Constitution*, 537
Machlydes, *their Rites*, 667
Madagascar, *or Saint* Lawrence *Iland, a description of the place, people, rites*, 799.780
Madai *Father of the* Medes, 35 349
Madera *Iland*, 783
Mad *men admired as Saints*, 316 317
Madnesse *by eating a Fruite*, 316
Madura *Iland how situate*, 610 611. *A fertile Iland of Rice, ibid.*
Magog *Father of the* Scythians. 37
Magi *of the* Chaldees, 55. *The* Magi *of* Media, 351. *The* Persian Magi, 369.370.371 372
Magicke *commended by* Plato, 370
Magicke *Naturall, Artificiall and Diabolical*, 369.370. *Other kinds*

kind of Magicke ibid. Magicke ascribed to the Ægyptians, 645
Magicians of Brasill, 915.
916
King Magnus *his marriage,* 976.
His Widow seduced, 987
Magellan *his Voyage and Death,*
924
Magellan *Straits,* 923
Magnetia; *the situation thereof,*
335
Magnice *River,* 774
Mahomet, *the* Sarracens *call begin-nings and proceeding under him,* 232. 232. *& seq. His Birth, Life and History,* 241. 242. *& seq. His Miracles,* 243. *His Journey to Heaven and Hell,* 245. 246. *His Priviledge.* 246 *His Epitaph ibid. His Sepulcher, ibid.* 272. *His Assumption,* 247 *his dwelling house, Date-trees, and Mosquita,* 248. *his Succes-sours,* 274. *& seq. The foure Doctors of his Law, Authors of foure Sects,* 274. 275. 250. 259 *Words of* Mahomet *in Profes-sion,* 251. *& seq.* 259. *& seq.*
Mahomets *madnesse,* 316. *his Warres, the Successours of* Ma-homet, *and their Sects,* 274
& seq.
Mahomet *Nephew of* Hali *expected to come again,* 392. 393
Mahomet Sultan *of* Persia, 283
386. *Of* Turkey *the Great, name* Constantinople, 283.
284. *Sonne of* Amurath, 287
288
Mahomet *the third, the Story of him,* 287. 288
Mahomet Bassa *of Cairo,* 652
653
Mahomet Codabanda, 386. 387
388. *The* Mahomets *when they entred* Ægypt, 617. *Of the* Ma-humetan *Religion in* Africa,
704. 705
Mahammed Abulcasim *first Em-peror of the* Mahumists, 1013. *his Birth, Genealogie, Educati-on and vocation, ibid. his begin-nings and doctrine,* 1014. *his Battels,* 1014 1015. *his two wives, ibid. his third wife,* 10 5. *his flight to* Medina 1014. *he is wounded in Battell* 1015. *Truce betwixt him and the Corasites, and the conditions thereof,* 1015 *his Inauguration and Pulcit,* 1025. *his Pilgrimage to* Mec-ca; 1026. *his Secretaries and Officers of State, ibid. his cour-tesie to Christians, ibid. his age and death, ibid.*
Malacca *Kingdome and the Inha-bitants thereof,* 493. 494. *Their customes, and the Story of the* Malayos, *ibid.*
Malabar, *the Regions and Religi-ous thereof,* 549. *Eighteene Sects in* Malabar, 553. 554. *Sonnes thrive wherit not, but Sisters Sonnes, ibid.*
Maldive *Iland,* 579
Malepur, *or the Citie of S.* Tho-mas, 560
Malta *how situate,* 788. *& seq. de-scribed,* 789. 790
Mamalukes *of* Ægypt, 657. 658
& seq. Their admirable Feates and Attutes, ibid.
Mammons *misery,* 207
Manati *a kind of Fish,* 568
Mandingæ *a persitions and Idola-trous Nation,* 711
Manetho *his Epistle and fragments of his Chronicle,* 661
Mangas *an* Indian *Frut,* 567.
Three kinds thereof, ibid.
Manna, *where found,* 570
Man *diversly considered, and why created,* 13. 14 *his first excellen-cie, ibid. how said to bee the Im-age of God,* 13. *his Diet before the Flood,* 15. *his Fall,* 21. *his degeneration into a Beast, Plant, Devill,* 22. *Man but the carkasse of man, ibid. his foure fold estate,* 26. *A little World, ibid. Sonnes of men,* 29. *Daughters of men ill interpreted,* 26. 27. *Men called the Sonnes of God,* 33. *Mans Pride humbled by the basest cre-atures. Mans Retrograde and Vanitie,* 569
Man *worshipped & sacrificed,* 944
945
Men *with tayles,* 603
Man-eaters, *or Cannibals,* 914. 945
Manichees, *there heretical opinion of two beings and beginnings,*
24
Mangu Can, *his history and acts,*
406. 407
Mangi *or* China, *vide* China.
Manser *King of* Marocco, 696
671
Marauquites, 910
Margarita, *the description thereof,*
950. 951
Margiana, 15
Marmaydesene, 626
Saint Martha, *how situate,* 895
Mary *the Virgin; Popish dotting of her,* 213
Marocco *City and Kingdome,* 650
& seq. Building and description of it, 691. *& seq. Wonne by the* Scriffe, *ibid. Great Plague, Fa-mine and Warres there,* 692
Wonne by the Saints, 692. 693
694. *By another, ibidem. The map of* Marocco, 694. *Warres in* Marocco, 697. 698
Marriage *Rites of the* Iewes, 201
202. *& seq. Of the* Turkes,
298. 295. *Of* Tartars, 417. 422
Of Persians, 377. *In* Pegu, *where they have new husbands if the former bee absent twentie dayes,* 369. *In* Thebet, 430. *In* China, 468. 469. *In* Pegu, 502
503. *Of* Bengalans, 508. 509
Indians, 678. *About* Goa, 544
545. *Of* Bramanes, 547. 548
In Calecut, 549. *Of* Bratlians,
919. *In* Peru, 935. *In* Golchon-da, 1000
Marriage *of Parents and children,* 64. *few more Christian then the Popish, in preferring Marriage before the seeming-holy Vow of Virginitie,* 214
Malebar, *vide* Malabar.
Maranatha *a kind of Excommuni-cation of the* Iewes, 100. *What it signifieth,* 101
Mars *how worshipped in* Scythia,
396. 397
Marsyas *flayed quicke,* 330
Marthus *and* Marthana, 134
Martyrs *in all Religions,* 28. *Of the* Turkes, 315. 316. 317. 318
Maruthas *Bishop,* 362
Masbothæi, *or* Masbothenai, *a Sell of the* Iewes, 135
Masorites, 165
Masoreth, 169. 170
Massilians, 134
Massagetæ, *their Religion and Rites,* 399
Mathematicall *Instruments in* China, 468. *Their skill in the Mathematicks, ibid. Iesuits get credit there by them,* 469
Matsach *an herbe which maketh mad,* 316
Mattins *of the* Iewes, 183. 186. *& seq.*
Mauitania Cæsariensis Mauri, *&* Mauritiæ 675. 676. *Their mi-serable life, ibid. Women Pro-phetesses, ibid.*
Mauritius *the Emperour,* 380. *& seq.*

Mau-

Mausolus his Tombe, 338
Maxes their Rites, 667
Maximinus his huge stature, 32
Maxy, 806
Mazaleb, Mazal, and Mazaloth, 70
Meaco a Cuse in Japon, 595.596
Meatures invented by Cain, 29
Meats prohibited to the Ægyptian Priests, 642.643
Meats forbidden in Loango, 779
By the Mahometans, 257
Mecca taken and conquered to Islamisme, 1015. The Pilgrimages thither, 255. 267. 268. 269. & seq. Description of Mecca, 267 273. The description of the Mosquita there, 269
Mecca spoyled of the Black-stone, 1035
Medes, 37. The story of the Medes 349. 350. & seq.
Media, whence so called, 349. The description thereof, 350. & seq. The division thereof, 351. 352
Medina described, 278. Converted to Islamisme, 1014
Mediterranean Sea, 575
Medan and Meron, 728
Medina and Mecca spoyled, 1022
Megalobyzi certaine Priests so called, 337
Megasthenes his testimony of Nebuchodonosor, 49. Of Darius Medus, 61
Megastres their Rites, 667
Mehokkim who so called, 99
Melitius Patriarch of Alexandria, 659
Melici or Melchia Sell, 704
Melinde, 754
Memphis or Noph, 631
Memnon, 79. His speaking image, ibid.
Menas King of Ægypt, 631. 632
Mendozo a great Cute, 812
Mengrelia, the situation and description thereof, 347. The state of the present Mengrelians, 347
Menon husband of Semiramis, 66
Menedde and Menudon, 98
Meroury, 77
Mercuries certaine Planets so called, 51
Merope Hand described, 727. 728 Their Rites, ibid. Their Table of the Sunne, 728. 729
Merrifis, or Merrifeans, 135
Merwan the 11. Califa poysoned by his Wife, 1022
Mestech, Mesebins, and Mazaca, 37
Melchisedech, 121
Merdin a Cuse and Patriarchall See, 67
Mermaids 636
Merwan, the 21. Califa his gluttony, 1026
Messiasses or Mosehees, and the Ceremonies in them, 266. 999
Mesopotamia why so called, and how fertile, 65. Mesopotamian Cutes, 64
Messa, and tales thereof, 165
Messias of the Iewes, 142. 207. & seq. Counterfeit Messias, 143 144. Dreames of an earthly Messias, 162. Of the signes of the comming of the Iewes Messias, 207. 208. & seq. Two Messiasses expelled, ibid. Iewish Messias his Feast, 211
Meta Incognita discovered and described, 811. 812
Metasthenes, 62
Metempsychosis, 471. 463
Meuis Hand, 541
Master Mitchells Voyage and observations, 993. & seq.
Methra and Mithra, 57. 372
Metis, the name of Cairo and all Ægypt, 655
Mexico why so called, 862. & seq. The foundation thereof, and strange Expedition thither, ibid. Mexico entred by the Spaniards, 862. Besieged taken and rebuilt, 863. Their generall peoples, 864. The history of their Kings, 865. 866. Their Orations, 865 Coronations, ibidem, Ominous prodigies and ancient Tributes, 867. The present state thereof, 868. 869. Their Gods, Goddesses, and worship in Mexico, 869 870. Their horrible Sacrifices, 871. Their Priests, 871. 872 Their Temples, 873. 874. Their Monasteries, 874 875. Their Rites and Opinions, 876. 877 Their bloudie Processions, ibid. Their Baptismes and Education of their children, 877. Their Punishments, Marriages, Funerals, 878. Supputation of times, 879 Their opinion of fine Sunnes, ibid. Their Feasts and Festivall rites, 880. 881. Of Transubstantiation, ibid. Their Iubilee, Religious, Lent, Processions, 881 Other rites, 882. Their Schooles, Theaters, Writings, Hieroglyphicks, Bookes, Whistling, 883 Their manner of Numbering, ibid. Their opinion of the Soule, ibid.
Michaels borne, a Iewish Miracle before the comming of the Messias, 209. 210
Midas his Story, 331
Middleton, viz. Sir Henry Middleton his Story 582. 583. & seq. His death, 610
Mina a superstitious place, 247. A Castle so called, 306. A Summe, 119
Mindanao Iland, her extent and Cutes, 578
Minri or Minim, 129
Mines how deadly, 760. In barren soyles, ibid.
Mines of Sofala, 759. Of the West Indies, and what they cause men to doe, 462. 781
Mine of Diamants, 1002
Miracles reported of the Syrian Goddesse, 67. 68. Of Beelzebub why applied to Christ, 81. The Popish Miracles, ibid. Iewish Dreames of Miracles, 164. 165 208. 209
Miracles of the Arabians, 228. Of Mahomet, 243. Disclaimed by him, 244. False, ibid. Of Turkes, 315. & seq. Of Tartars, 406 407. & seq. In China, 447. 448 & seq. Amongst the Brachmanes, 478. 479. At Ganges, 509 510. Of the Mogoll, 520. Of the Bramenes, 547. In Japon, 592. In Zeeland, 616. 617. At Cyprus, 584. At Goichonda, 599
Mirafmumim, his building Marocco and other his Acts, 234. The Prince of Belezeers, ibid.
Miriam Fountain, 193
Misfates King of Persia his reigne, 361
Mithres and Mithra, 57. 372. The Sunne and Fire, ibid.
Mithridates, 329. From him the Antidote Mithridate so called, ibid. His cruell Edict, 335
Mizraim and his Posterity, 37. The name of Cairo, 652
Moabites, 85
Mogores, 512
Mogor or Mogol, why so called, 515
Mogol Tartars, 436. 427. The Great Mogor his large Dominions, 515. The disposition and course of Eichber, 516. His Religion and his new Sell, ibid. His conquests in Decan, 517. 518 His

His huge presents, 517. *Other Conquests*, 518. *His death*, 519 *The Succession and Title of* Selim, 519. 520. *The Mogors Religion, ibid. The story of that State by Captaine* Hawkins, 520.521. *Toe Mogor his great Riches, Revenues, Feodaries, Jewels, &c.* 521. 522. *The meanes of his riches, ibid. His Elephants and other beasts*, 522. 523. *His progresse and enemies* 523. *His deuotions and daily course of life*, 523, 524. *His sitting in Iustice and Feasts*, 524. *The Sepulchre of his Father, ibid The settling of the English trade, and of the two Sea-fights betwixt the* English *and* Portugals 524 525. *Trauels of* English *through the Mogors dominions*, 526. 528 529. *Diuers superstitions of the Mogor*, 530. 531. *& seq. Of the People subiect to the Mogol, and of their Countries, Religion and Rites.* 534. 535, 536

Moha *in the Red Sea*, 583. *The Iourney of Sir* Henry Middleton *thence to Zeiton and back again* 583. 584. 585. *The description and situation of* Moha. 584

Mohel, *a Iewish Circumciser*, 180.

Molucca *Ilands the situation and description thereof*, 578. 604. 605

Moloch *and* Melchom *Idols*. 86

Mombaza. 755

Mongol *a Countrie of* Tartars, 401

Monkes *pay tribute*. 1023

Monsters *and monstrous shapes of men denyed*. 385

Monomotapa, *or* Benomotapa *Empire*, 759. *Their Mines, Religion, and Rites*. 759. 760

Moores *who and why so called*. 224 *Two Sects of* Moores. 275

Moores *in* China, 457. *vid.* Saracens, Arabians. Moores *where now inhabiting and how dispersed* 757. 758

Moone *why called a great light*, 10 11. *Her greatnesse and excellence, ibid* Dinias *his iourney thither*, 16. *Worshipped of the* Chaldees, 51. *at* Carræ. 66. *By the Iewes*, 107. *By the* Arabians, 227. *At* Diospolis, 241. *By the* Persians, 393. Tartars, 401. 402. Chinois, 470. 471. Goa, 545. Brasilians, 918. Loomco, 578. 579. *By* Negroes *and others*, 709. *Why the* Saracens *vse the signe of the Moone on their Steeples*, 230. 231. *The moone seene the day of her coniunction*, 305. Iewish *Fables of the Moone*, 193, 194 Mahomets *Fables of the Moon*, 252, 253. *The New-Moone-Feast when it began with the* Iewes, 106. 107. *How obserued* 106. 196

Months *how reckoned by the Iewes* 106. *Their names, ibid. They haue in some places no names*, 107

Money *of Salt and Paper*. 750.

Money of Ganza. 612

Money *of Amonds*. 619

Money *by whom inuented*. 335 *The effects of it*, 336.

Monasteries *of the* Turkes, 308. *In* Tartaria, 416. 431. *In* China, 465. 471. *Of Saint* Francis *in* Goa. 546

Monkes. 541

Monoemugi. 757

Monuments *vid. Sepulchers*.

Mopsus *a* Lydian. 80

Mountaines *of Armenia*. 343. 344

Mountaines *of Crystall*, 412.

Mountaine *of Pardony by* Mecca, 269. 270

Burning mountaines. 612

Mount Moriah, 94. Sinai, 225 *The Mountaine of Health*, 271.

Morbones *a Sect of the* Iewes, 135

Doctor Mortons *commendation*, 95

Mordecay *why hee worshipped not* Haman.

Morduit-Tartars.

Moratui *Iland*, 578

Morabites *a Sect in* Africa, 626

Moraua *and* Moldauia. 416

Morse *or Sea-Ox described*. 913 914

Moses *what hee did on Mount* Sinai, 155. Iewish *opinions of him* 156. *He received the first Alphabetarie letters in the Table of the Decalogue*, 82. Moses *charre* 132. *First Pen-man of Scripture, his excellencie*, 175. Pseudo-Moses *a Coozener*, 143. Moses Ægyptius *vid. Rambam The* Turkes *opinion of* Moses. 302. *his wife*, 729.

Moseo *destroyed by the* Tartars, 422

Mosconites *of* Meseeh, 37

Moschee *or* Mosquita. *vid. Temple*.

Mosinæci, *a beastly people*, 330.

Mosambique, 785. *Beastly Rites of some neere them, ibid.*

Mosllemans *Religion*, 265. 266.

Mosleman *women disfrequented*, 265

Mosull *supposed to be* Ninniue, 67 *Famous for Cloth of gold, silke, fertilitie, &c. ibid*

Mosse *foode to the Deere of the* Samoeds, 432

Moth *interpreted* Mire, 77

Mourners *deere in the Temple*, 99. *A Sect*, 135. *Funerall meanning of Iewes*, 206. *Of others, vid. Funerall*.

Muaui *son of Abusofian the seuenth Emperour of the* Muslims, 1021

Muaui *son of* Iezid *the ninth* Chalifa, 1022.

Muaui *the* Chaliph, *his Aids*, 234 *& seq.*

Mufti *of the* Turkes, *and their Authoritie*, 320. 321

Mulli *and* Muderisi, 312

Mulesifies *King of* Tunis, 672

Muley Hammet *his Stile and Letter to the Earle of* Leicester, 696

Mummia. 226. 632. *How made in* Æthiopia. 748

Murther *amongst the* Turkes *vnpardonable*, 300.

Self-murther, 633.

Musa Alhadi *the* 25. Chalifa *strangled by his mother*, 1038.

Musarab *Christians*. 1024

Muske *of a Beast*, 564

Muslim *what it signifies*, 1013

Muslim *Empire falleth in pieces*, 1016

Musulipatan *or* Musulipatnam, 994 *Described*, 995.

Mustapha, *his Aids*, 286. *The succession of* Mustaphas *twice*, 293 294. *& seq.*

Mustaed-Dini, *chiefe Priest or* Mufti *of the* Persians, 391.

Musteatzem *last* Chalif *of* Bagdet 237. 242

Mutadids *equitie and cruelty*, 1033

Mutars, *Sect in* Perlia, 370. 391

Mutasim *the* 29. Chalifa, *his strength of body*, 1030

Mutewakkels *cruelties to* Muhammed, 1031

Mutezuma *King of* Mexico, 860 861

Myiodes, Myiagrus, 81

Mydas, *his Storie*, 331

My-

Mylitta, Venus, 56
Myrrhe *in* Arabia, 231
Mysia, 334. *The* Mysians *for their great Devotion called Smoke-climers*, 334. *Matters famous in* Mysia, 334.335

N

NAamah *first Inventor of making Linen and Woollen, and vocall Musicke*, 29
Naaman a Scottie Arabian, 227
Nabathea *and* Nabathæans, 227
230
Nabathitæ, 222
Nabunuga, *King of* Iapon, 856
857
Nabuchodonosor *his* Babylonish *garments*, 48. *His Pensile Gardens*, 49. Nabuchodonosor *in* Iudith *uncertaine*. 60
Nabopollasir, *ibid. Not the same with* Nabuchodonosor, 62
Nabonidus *the same with* Darius Medus, 63
Naboth, Iewish *Dreames of his Soule*, 187
Nafiffa, *a Queane Saint at* Cairo, 652
Nagayan Tartars, 423
Nairos *Knights or Souldiers in* India, *their Rites*, 553.554
Naida *supposed to be built by* Cain, 29
Naicks, Indian *Governours*, 903
Naimaini, 404.405
Nakednesse *of* Adam, 22. Iewi *Dreames of Nakednesse*, 180 181.183
Nanquin *a City of* China, 439.466
Nastacia *the Empresse made a Saint*, 974
Nations, *their beginning*, 37. *& seq.*
Natitæ *and* Natophantæ, *certaine Priests*, 58
Nature *what it is*, 13
Nature *of man first infected, now infecting*, 25
Natolia *described*, 325. *Now called* Turkie, *ibid.*
Nailes *long in* China, 469. *Accounted a Gentleman-like signe, ibid.*
Nauigations *of the Ancients*, 684. *The first Inventor of Nauigations*, 82
Naugracot *supposed the highest part of the Earth*, 35
Nazareth, 90
Nazarites, 133
Nazareans Iewish *Sectaries*, 133
Necromancie, 369
Neerda *and* Nilibis, 63
Negapatan *the situation and description thereof*, 557. *& seq. The Bloudy and Beastly Rites there, ibid.*
Negroes, *a description of the land of* Negroes, 709 *& sequitur. Whence called the Land of* Negroes, 709. *Many Nations*, 711. *Strange kinde of* Negroes, 712. 713. *The cause of the* Negroes *Blacknesse*, 721. 722. *Their Coasts and Inland Countries*, 721. *& sequitur.*
Negro *Slaue made King of* Egypt *and* Syria, 1027
Nerigleſſorus, 62
Nero *and the Rites there*, 605
Nero *his Superstitions*, 69
Nestorians *in* Cathaya, *their Rites*, 404. 409. *In* Ergimul, 416. *In* Egrigia *and* Tenduc, 429. 430. *At* Quinsay, 442.443
Nethanims, *or* Gibeonites, 123
New Moone, *vide* Moone.
New yeeres day *of the* Iewes, 107.196. *Their Dreames of that Day*, 197
New yeeres day *of the* Chinois, 463
Newberies *Trauels*, 579.580
New Granada, 816
New World, *why called* America, *and* ...*ell* Indies, 791
New England, 829.830
New Wales, 830
New Britaine, 829
New-land *of King* Iames, 814 815. *& seq.*
New France, 823.824. *Late Plantations of* New France, 825.826. *& seq.*
New Mexico, 855
New Spaine, 858. *& seq.*
Newfoundland, 821. *& sequitur. Diuers Voyages thither*, 822. *Plantation there by the* English, 822.823. *& seq.*
Nicaragua *described and how situate*, 887. *Their Bookes, Sacrifices, Priests, Processions, Confessions, ibid. Their Feasts, Marriages, Punishments, Lakes, and Riches*, 888
Nicaraguas *questions*, 889
Nicostrata *Author of the* Latine *Letters*. 8
Nifita *in* Barbary, 700
Nigritarum terra, 709
Niger *his course*, 709.710. *& sequitur.*
Niguas, *little Wormes, great trouble*, 818
Nilus *Riuer*, *a large Discourse thereof*, 627. *& sequitur. The cause and time of the ouerflowing*, 628. *The shallownesse in some places, ibidem. The falls thereof*, 727.740. *Stayed by the* Prete, 731. *The Spring of* Nilus, 740
Nilus *diuerted*, 1042
Nimrod, 37.44. *A Tyrant*, 45 *Author of Idolatry*, 45.46
Ninus *supposed* Amraphel, 61
Niniue *built*, 45. *Taken by* Arbaces the Mede. 61. *By* Cyaxares, 66. *Described*, 65. *Who built it, ibidem. The ruines thereof*, 138
Ninus *first Deifier of his Father* Belus, 46. *His History examined*, 65. *His Exploits*, 65.66 *His Sepulchre, ibid.*
Nine *a number specially obserued by the* Tartars, 403.419
Nisibis *peopled by the* Iewes, 64
Nisroch *an* Assyrian *Idoll*, 66
Nitocris *not inferiour to* Semiramis, 49
Noah, *his wife*, 29. *His Sacrifices*, 33.35. *His Posterities*, 36. *The names given him by Heathens*, 44. Zabi *their conceit of him*, 49. *Worshipped by the* Armenians, 344
Nomades, *Vide* Tartars, Scythians, Arabians, Turkes.
Northeast *Discovery*, 792
North *and* Northwest, 801.828
Noses *flat*, *a great beautie with* Tartars, 420. *With* Chinois, 436. *In* Brasill, 506. *People that haue no Noses*, 149. *Short Noses esteemed beauty*, 518
Noua Albion, 853 854
Noua Zimla, 856. Hollanders *wintering there, and their long night, ibid.*
Noyra *an* Indian *Fowle*, 964
Nubæ *and* Nubia, 722.1026
Numas *Temple of* Vesta, 9, Fable *of* Ægeria, 27
Numidia *described*, 706.707. *& seq.*
Nunnes *of* Mithra, 57.
Nunnes *in* China, 465.466. *In* Comat, 478. *Among st the* Indians, 479. *In* Pegu, 505. *In* Iapon, 592. *In* Mexico, 876
N ne

Nannes *wile to preserue her chastitie*, 1027
Nutmegs *how growing*, 569
Nymphæum, 68
Nymphes, 87

O

OAnnes *a strange Monster*, 47.80
Ob *Riuer*, 432
Obedience *of selfe-killing vpon command*, 1041
Obelisks *of* Semiramis *at* Babylon, 49
Obelisks *in* Ægypt, 633. *In* Æthiopia, 726
Oblations *of the* Iewes, 115. *Gifts or Sacrifices*, 115.116
Ocaca *Rocket, and the Confessing there*, 596.597
Occada *the* Tartarian *Emperour his Reigne*, 405.406
Ochon *his Acts*, 235
Ochus *the* Persian, 647
Ocia *a great City*, 782
Offerings, 115. *Burnt Offerings*, 116 *Meat Offerings, and Peace Offerings, ibid. Personall Offerings*, 119.120
Ogge *the Giant his huge bones*, 210
Ogiges *his Flood*, 34
Ogobasama *his Acts*, 591
Oistes *wonderfull great*, 512
Oisters *with Pearles*, 566
Old Man *of the Mountaine*, 218 219
Omar *and his Acts*, 215
Omar *sonne of* Alchittab, *succeeded* Abubecr *in the* Califate, 1018. *He conquered* Persia Syria, Egypt *and* Palæstina 1019 *His Priuiledges, granted to* Ierusalem, *ibid. He is killed, ibid.*
Omar *sonne of* Abdulacis, *the sixteenth* Califa, 1025. *Hee was Iuill, Deuout, Religious, ibid.*
Omarca *or* Omorka, 47
Omias *built a Temple in* Ægypt, 104.651. *His City*, Onion, *ibid.*
Onions *worshipped of the* Chaldees 52. *Of the* Aegyptians, 634 *How vsed at* Fez.
Ophir *the situation and description thereof*, 756. *Supposed* Sofala, *ibid.*
Ophitæ *a Sect of* Iewes, 115
Opium, *much eaten by* Turkes, 303. *Where it groweth*, 570
Oracles *at* Hierapolis, *at* Delphos, *and* Daphne, 70.356.357. *Of the* Ægyptians, 643.644. *Of* Iupiter Ammon, 665.666
Orbs *how many supposed*, 8. *Two supposed, ibid.*
Oram *or* Oran, 678
Ordnance *by whom inuented*, 527 *Called Metal-deuils, Fire-breathing Bulls, &c. ibid*
Orencque *Riuer*, 89.
Orion *or* Orus *a Giant*, 32
Orimazes, *and* Armanius, 367
Orissa, *or* Orixa *how situate*, 511 512
Orites *certaine people of* India, 37
Orontes *a Riuer*, 72
Orodes *or* Herodes, 353
Ormisda *King of* Persia *his reigne*, 363
Ormuz *lately taken by the* Persians, 580
Orpha *a Towne in the way from* Byr *to* Babylon, 64
Oiel *or* Osfell *an Iland in the* Balticke *Sea*, 981
Osiris, 78. *His Legend*, 635.636 *Feast of seeking* Osiris, 114
Ossens, 133
Ostriges, 625
Othes *of the* Hasidees, 125. *Of the* Pharisees, 128. *Of the* Mahumetans, 356
Otoman *Family of the* Turkes, 281.282
Otoman *or* Otman *his Exploits*, 282.283. *& seq. His Mother*, 294.295
Otman *the fourth Emperour of the* Muslimes, 1020. *Hee is accused and killed, ibid.*
Owle *obserued by the* Tartars, *and had in great reuerence*, 403
Oxe *of huge greatnesse*, 210.853 *vide* Behemoth.
Oxe-fish, 913.914
Oxus *a Riuer running vnder ground*, 402
Oyle-fountaine, 395
Ozimen *or* Odmen, 275

P

PAchacamac, 935
Pacorus *his Exploits*, 354
Pagods *and* Varelles *in* Pegu, 505. *In* Bengala, 509. *In* Goa, 545
Palace *of* Benhadad, 233. *Of* Golchonda, 995
Palæstina, *the situation and description thereof*, 83.84.91. *The last Inhabitants thereof*, 213
Palicat *a* Dutch *Fort in* East India, 964
Palme-wine, 564
Palmita, 563. *Called* Taddye, *ibid.*
Palladius *his Horsemanship*, 342
Pantogia *his* Chinian *Iourny*, 414 *His Opinions of* China, *ibid.*
Paphlagonia, *how situate*, 330 *it hence so called, ibid.*
Paquin *chiefe City of* China, *whither* Cambalu, 435.440 *The description thereof*, 440
Paradise, *the differing Opinions concerning it*. 15. *& seq. The Riuers and Fruit thereof*, 15. 16 17. Mercators *Map thereof*, 16. *Two Paradises*, 161. *Golden Tree in Paradise*, 263
Paradise *of* Aladeules, 64.380. *Of the* Iewes, 205. *Of* Mahomet, 253.254.263. *Of* Turkes, 313 *Of the* Siamites.
Parents *how to bee obserued*, 516
Paris, *the situation and description thereof*, 899
Parchment *why so called*, 218
Pariacaca, *Idols in* Peru *of strange qualitie*, 934
Parthians *their History*, 62
Parasceue, 110
Parrots *and the seuerall kinds*, 565 *Troublesome to some Countries as Crowes here*, 816
Parthia *the situation and description thereof*, 352.353
Paschall *Feast*, 110. *How obserued, ibid. & seq.*
Paschall *Lambes how many in one Feast, and how vsed, ibid. How the Moderne* Iewes *prepare to it, and obserue it*, 194.195
Passarans *a kinde of* Indian *Esses*, 610
Paste-god *of the* Mexicans, *or Transubstantiation*, 881
Patricius *his Chaine of the World*, 7. *His Opinion of the Moone*, 16. *Of* Zoroasters *Opinions*, 142
Patriarches *of* Constantinople, 324. *The other Patriarches and Easterne Bishops*, 325. *The Patriarch of* Alexandria, 659. *Patriarches of* Æthiopia, 752
Patane *a City and Kingdome*, 495. 511. *The Description thereof, and of the Neighbouring petty Kingdomes*, 495.496 497
Pa-

Parenaw *a Kingdome*, 511. 512
Paulina *abused by* Mundus *in* Isis *Temple*, 635
Peace-offerings *of the* Iewes, 116
Pearles *how sold for*, 566. *Where the best, ibid. How ingendred, ibid.*
Peacockes *had in high account*, 432
Pegu *the situation thereof*, 498. *The greatnesse of the King of* Pegu, 498.499. *The commodities of* Pegu, *and the Kingdomes adiayning thereunto, ibidem. The destruction and desolation of* Pegu, 500.501.502. *The Elephants there white, ibid.* 503. *The* Peguan *Rites & Customes*, 502 503. *& seq. Their dwelling in Boats*, 504. *Temples, Images, Priests*, 505.506. *Their opinions of God, the World, the state after death, their original*, 507 *Deuotions to the Deuill, Munday Sabbaths, Washings, Feasts, ibid. Their opinions of Crocodiles and Apes, and their Funerals*, 507.508. *The King of* Pegu *his entertainment to the* English, 1006
Pehor *and* Baal Pehor, 85
Peleg *why so called*, 95
Pentecost, 495
Penguins *a kinde of Fowles where found, and the description of them*, 716
Pepper *how it groweth*, 569
Pella *a Cittie of refuge*, 132. 133
Penance, *vide* Punishment.
Pergamus *and* Pergamene, 335
Perimal *King of* Malabar, 550 617. *The signe of* Perimal *erected*, 553.617. *His Generation*, 560
Permacks *their Religion and Rites*, 432
Permians, 431. *They are subiect to the* Russes, *their manner of living*, 431.432
Persis, 141.142
Persecution of Christians, 1024
Persia, *the situation thereof*, 356 *The* Persians *whence descended, ibidem. The beginning of the* Persian *Monarchie by* Cyrus, 356.357. *The succession of* Cyrus *and* Cambyses, 358. *The succeeding* Persian *Monarchs untill* Alexanders *Conquest*, 359. 360. *The* Persian *Chronologie*, 360. *& sequitur. The Kings of the first and second* Dynastie, 360.361. 362. *& sequitur.* Persian *magnificence and other them Antiquities*, 365.366. *Their Riches, Epicurisme, Excesse in Apparell, Diet, Women, &c. ibidem. The Education of their Children, Reuenues, &c.* 367 368. *The History of their Magi*, 369.370. *& sequitur. Their Sacrifices, Rites, Feasts, Fasts, and other religious Opinions and Obseruations out of* Herodotus, 373.374. *& sequitur. Out of* Strabo 374 375. *Out of other Authours, ibidem. Their Schooles and Education*, 376. 377. *Their Feasting, Marriages, Mourning, Lots and other Antiquities*, 377.378. *The Acts of* Saracens *in* Persia, 378. 379 *Of the* Tartars *ruling in* Persia, 379.380. *The* Persians *difference from other* Mahumetans, *ibid. Alterations of State and Religion, ibid. The Names of the* Caliphs *and* Tartars *which gouerned in* Persia, 381. *The History of* Ismael Sophi, *first Founder of the present* Persian *Empire*, 381.382. *His Race, ibid.*
Persian *Concest of* Ismael, 382 383. *The Map of* Persia, 385 Shaugh Tamas *the* Persian *troubles after his death*, 385 386. Mahomet Saltan *of* Persia, 386. 387. *The present* Persians *wickedly disposed*, 388 *The Story of the present* Persian *King*, 388.389.390. *Present Religion and Opinions, ibid. The difference between the* Turke *and* Persian, *with the scale of both parts*, 390. 391. *The spreading of the* Persian *Opinions*, 391. 392. *Their Rites, Persons, Places, Opinions, and religion*, 393. 394. *Natures Wonders, and Iesuits lies thereof*, 395. 396. *Their Chiefe Priests, and their Iurisdiction*, 396
Persian *combustions*, 1017
Persian *Gulfe described*, 579. *& seq. The passage down* Euphrates *thither*, 580. 581
Persians *Acts in* Ægypt, 647 648
Persuasions, 328
Pestilence *how staied*, 740
Pestilent *vapours out of* Semiramis *Sepulchre*, 48
Peru *inuaded by* Pizarro, 927 *The King in* Cuillmarca, *&c.* 929 *Story of their Kings*, 931. *Treasures there taken by the* Spaniards, 932
Peru *how founded*, 933. *Natures wonders there, ibidem. Winds, Hils, Plames, Lakes, Rauers, Seasons*, 933.934. *The cause of no Raine, ibid. The first Inhabitants, their Quippos, Arts, Auguries*, 934.935. *Their Rites, Rights, Workes, &c.* 936 *Coronation and Diademe, ibid. Places conquered*, 937. *Their Gods*, 938. *& sequitur, Traditions*, 939. *Temples and Priests*, 940. 941. *Pilgrimages*, 942 *Boys deuoted to Sodomie, ibid. Their Nunnes, Sorcerers, Confessions and Penances*, 942. 943 *Their Sacrifices and Sacrifisers, Fastings, &c.* 944.945. *Humane Sacrifice*, 945. *Their Kalender and Holy dayes*, 945. 946.947. *Their Knights, ibid. Their Chica, Procession and bloody Funerals*, 948. *Description of the chiefe Cittes*, 949 *& seq.*
Petiuares, 910
Phaleg *Author of Idolatry*, 43
Phalec, 95
Pharao *what it signifieth*, 630
Pharao Necho, 79
Pharisees *when their sect first began*, 126. *Why called* Pharisees, *ibidem. Their Opinions of Fate, Fasting, Soules, Sabbaths, &c.* 127. *Their Washings, Prayer, Tithing, ibidem. Their opinion of Ombes,* Caban, *& ceibid. Their funerall kinds*, 128. *Their priuiledge and contempt of other men*, 128.129
Phasis, *and the* Phasian *Godlesse*, 577
Phalli, 68
Pheron *King of* Egypt, 284
Phœnix *a Fable*, 225
Phœnicia *described*, 76. *& seq. their Gods*, 77.79. *Their Inuentions*, 82. *Their Kings*, 83. *The* Phœnician *Language pure* Hebrew, 39
Phœnician *Letters* 82. *Their Nauigations*, 81
Phiale, *a Fountaine of wonderfull deepnesse*, 92
Philadelphia, 85
Philistims, 80

Philippinæ Ilands discouered and described, 602. Their Cuſtomes, ibid. Whence ſo called, 578.
Philippillus, 76
Philo Byblius,
Philoſtratus his antiquities counterfeit, 75. His little skill in Hebrew, 131
Philoſophers Opinions of the eternitie of the World, 9. Of Fire, 7. Of the Heauens and Orbes, 8. 9. Of the Starres, 9 10. Of the beginning, 13. No Philoſophers ſimply Atheiſts, 28
Philoſophers of the Babylonians and Perſians, Vide Chaldees and Magi.
Philoſophers of the Indians, Vide Brachmanes and Gymnoſophiſts.
Philoſophie Lecture forbidden in Mahometan Scholes, 281
Phocas his Acts, 215
Poraſartes, 254
Phraates his Acts, 354.355
Phrygia, 330.331. The Hiſtory of it, ibid. & ſeq.
Phryxus his Story, 347
Phurim Feaſt of Lots, 1 4
Phylacteries of the phariſees, 127
Francis Pizarro his Birth and Explaits, 927. His Peruuian Expedition, 928. His taking of Atabaliba, 529
Pigeons, Letter-poſts, 580
Pilgrimage to Hierapolis, 68. Their Ceremonies, 69. To Jordan, 82. To Rome, 106. To the Holy Rocke, 216. To Hara, or the Temple of Mecca, 255 256. & ſequitur 267. 268. 269 & ſequitur. To Ganges, 509 510. To the Sabbaticall Riuer, 580. 581. Blondie Pilgrimages of the Iaponites, 595. 596
Piller of Lots Wife, a ſtrange relation thereof, 147
Pitchao in Peru, 932
Pine-tree famous in Myſia, 334 335
Pirua, Superſtition of Peru, 944
Pitch, Fountaines thereof, 50
Piſmires how troubleſome, 565
Planets new of Gal. Galilæus, 9 Chaldæan obſeruation of them, 51. Pharſalaeall, 227. 228
Planting and graffing with Deuiliſh Rites, 53
Plants in India, 563
Plants ſeeming to liue and haue ſenſe, ibid.
Plate Riuer, 920. 921. & ſeq.
Platoes Philoſophie borrowed in Ægypt, 632. The ſucceſſion thereof, ibid.
Pluto his Image or Idoll, 471
Poeni, Punicks, 118
Poyſons of Diamonds, 740. Of Bulls bloud, 872. Of the Bird Dircæus, 568. Of ſome conſtitutions, 318
Poferine, or Poolaroon, and Polaway, 607
Polonia, 294.295. The Poliſh Warres with the Turke, 395
Polonia ouer-runne by the Tartars 405.406
Polygamy firſt in Cains Family, 29.30. Of Mahomet, 243. & ſequitur. Of the Turkes, 301 302. Of the Tartars, 416 417. Tanguth, 428. Chuiois, 435. Iauans, 610. Of others, 530. Every where in moſt Nations of Aſia, Africke, and America, Vide Marriages and Wiues. Mogol his Polygamy, 516. He hath a thouſand women, 517. The Turke three thouſand, 135
Polybiſtor his teſtimonie of the flood, 54. Of Abraham, 55 His Story of a Lion, 56
Policie what relation to Religion, 27
Polypus deſcribed, 634
Popish Dreames fathered on Antiquitie, 30. 31. Their Playes like Adonia, 76. Mirabiliarij, 80. Their Iubilee, 112. 113 Their worſhip of Creatures, ibid. Their lyes, 395. Their Pharaiſtes, 265. Obedience Rabbinicall, 159. Traditions, 158 159. Their Iewiſhneſſe, 161 Scandals to the Iew, 220. Their Reliks, 286. See the Titles, Beads, Reliquies, Saints, Martyrs, Miracles, Prieſts, Proceſſions, Nunnes, Vicar, Prayer, Votaries, Monkes, Monaſteries, Candles, Pilgrimages, Funerall Rites, Lights, Confeſſion, Sanctuary, Paſte-god, Iubilees, Lent, &c.
Pompe of Antiochus, 74. 137 353. Of the Perſians, 371 Compared with the Popes, ibidem.
Pontus how ſituate, 329. The deſcription thereof, ibid.
Poore how relieued, 181
Porca Kingdome, 554
Porto Santo almoſt destroyed by the increaſe of one Comet, 784
Portugals Authours of late Diſcoueries, 44
Portugals at Goa, Malacca, Ormus, ſee thoſe Titles, their Indian expenſes, 483. Their Acts and Conquests in Africa, 735 In the Indies, 483. & ſequitur. Their Warres with the Hollanders, Vide Hollanders. Their Sea fights with the English, 757 Their Acts in Braſill, Conge, Angola, Mombaza, the Ilands of Cape Verde, Saint Thomee, Principre, Saint Helena, Barbary and Africa. See theſe titles, and generally the firſt Booke, and laſt Chapters of the Seuenth.
Portugall Kingdome planted in the bloud of Moores, 759
Portugals weakneſſe in the Gulfe of Bengala, 995
Patozi Mines deſcribed, 759
Powhatan the Story of him, 901 902. Whence his title, ibid.
Pokohuntis, or Matcke. Daughter of Powhatan, 906. She is Christened and married, ibidem.
Prayer of the Elixai, 134. Of the Iewes, 171. 185. 186. & ſequitur. Their Morning Prayer and Superſtitions therein, 185 & ſeq. Their geſtures and turnings at Prayer, ibid. Mahumets Canon of Prayer, 256. 257. 263. The Turkes manner of Praying, 297 298. 308. The Iugutes their Praying, 772. the Mogols, 516 Perſians, 582. Prayer for the dead amongſt the Iewes, Vide Iewes. Amongſt the Turkes, 297. 308. Amongſt the Perſians, 389. Amongſt the Tartars 418. The Indians, 481. 482 In Banda, 562. Of the Prayers of every Nation. See the whole Booke in diſcourſe of each Religion.
Preaching little vſed in the Greek Church, 324. 325
Preaching of Mahumetans, 256 Turkes, 319. 320. Of the Talapoies, 513
Precepts Affirmative and Negative, 173. The Iewes Negative Precepts expounded by the Rabbines, 174. & ſequitur. Their Affirmative Precepts expounded, 175 176

Pre-

Precopite Tartars, 421.422
Presbyter Iohn *in* Asia, *the Historie of him*, 734. 735. *& sequitur. Whither this be the same with him of* Æthiopia, *ibid. Two in* Asia, 737
Presbyter Iohn *in* Africa, *not strong at Sea*, 738. *Not so called there, ibidem. His state, Relations of his Empire*, 740 741. *Doubtfullor fabulous out of Ever* Luis, 742. *His Library and Treasures*, 744.745. *His Election*, 746.747. *His Cities*, 747. 748. *The more credible report of him, out of* Godignus, 749. *& sequitur. His course of Iustice*, 150. *His miseries, ibidem. His Descent from the Queene of* Saba, 151
Priapus *Citie and Heaven*, 334
Priapi *two huge ones*, 68
Priamus, 328
Priest *the first named* Melchisedec, 121. *Heads of Families and first-borne* Priests, *ibidem*,
Priests *of the* Iewes, 121. 122 . 123. *No Priest-hood now left to the* Iewes, *ibid.*
Priests *of the* Chaldees, 51.52.57 *Called* Magi, 55. Natitæ, 58. Galli, 68. *Their Number and Order*, 69
Priests *of* Phænicia, 88. *Of* Moloch, 86. *Of* Arabia, 227.228 *Of* Panchæa, 229. *Of the* Turkes. 319.320. *& sequitur. Of the* Cappadocians, 326.327 *Of* Mylia *and their abstaining from Flesh and Marriage*, 334 335. *Of* Diana, 337. *Shaven Priests at* Solmissus, 339. *At* Mylasa, 340
Priests *of* Cybele, *ibid.* 367.368 . 369. 372. 373. 374. *Of the present* Persians, 393. 394. *Of the* Scythians, 397. *Of the* Tartars, 419. *Shaven Priests and single in* Cathay, 404.415 426. *In* China *more Popish Priests*, 461.466. *& sequitur. In* Syam *more then Popish*, 491 *In* Pegu *also*, 505. Mogols *Priests*, 520. Banians, 241 Bramenes, 547.548. Iponites, 592.593
Priests *in* Ternate, 605.606. Samatra, 614. Zeilan, 616. Ægypt, 635. 636. *& sequitur.* Saracenicall *Priests*, 230. Christian, 251. Iewish, 263
Priests *of* Ammon, 273. Carthaginian, 285. Caraccan, 353. *At* Ham Lisnan, 386. *In* Guinea, 716.717. Meroe, 728 Abassia, 740. Angola, 766 Congo, 767. Loango, 770. 771 New France, 826. Virginia, 840.841. Florida, 847. 848 849. Mexico, 870. 871. Acusamil, 885. Nicaragua, 887 Dabaiba, 894. Cumana, 898 Brasil, 916.917. Peru, 490 491. Hispaniola, 957. *Popish Priests in* America, 799
Princes *of the Fashion of Blacke Sheepe and White Sheepe*, 381
Prophets *of God*, 126. *Seducing Prophets*. 143.144. Mahomet a call *Prophets*, 254
Prophets *of the World*, 270
Prophet *in* Patenaw. 495. *In* Temesina, 680
Prophetical *Saint and King in* Barbary, 700.701
Proselites *who so called*, 97. *How made*, *ibid.*
Processions *of the* Zabij, 52.53. *To the* Syrian *Goddesse*, 67.68. *Of the* Iewes *at the Feast of Tabernacles*, 112.196. *To* Mecca, 255.267.268.269
Processions *of the* Magi, 55. 369 370. *& sequitur.*
Procession *with Candles in* China, 466. *& seq.*
Processions *neere* Goa, 542. *Of* Perimal *at* Prepeti, 550. *In* Iapon, 592. *In* Zeilan, 617. *In* Ægypt, 636 *Of* Ammon, 657 *Of* Mexicans, 881. Nicaragua, 887. *In* Peru, 948
Proserpina, 76. *Vide* Sinopa.
Psammeticus *his tryall of Antiquitie*, 39
Psophons *policie*, 171
Ptolemeis *Kings of* Ægypt, 73 648
Ptolemais *how situate*, 79
Pubaoan *described*, 604
Purifications *of* Iewes, 181.182 *Amongst the* Tartars, 415. *& seq.*
Puritie *from sunne*, 283. *Their brightlinesse*, *ibid.*
Purple *dye of Apes blood*, 406
Punishments *among the* Iewes, *how many and in what manner*. 58. *Of stoning, hanging, burning, &c.* 99. 100. *Of the Whip and Excommunication, ibid. After death*, 160. *Moderne Punishments*, 158.205
Punishments *among the* Turkes *during Lent*, 310. *Self-punishments of the* Pharisees, 128. *Of the* Essens, 130. 131. *Of the* Hasidæi, 125.126. *Of moderne* Iewes, 197.198. *Of* Mahumetans, 251. *& sequitur.* 259. *Of* Turkes, 315.316. *Of the* Galli, 68. Cappadocians, 326. 327 *Of the* Magi, 55.369. *Of the* Persians, 390. Samorei, 432 *Of the* Chinois, 465. Samites, 503. Peguans, 506.507. *&c* Ganges, 510. *Of* Cambayans, 537. Bramens, 547. *In* Narsinga, 557. *Of the* Iaponites, 592. Philippinas, 603. Passarans, 610. *In* Zeilan, 616. *Of the* Ægyptians, 634. Carthaginians, 672
Purgatory *of the* Iewes, 206 207. *Like the Popish, ibidem. Their Purgatory Prayer, ibid. Purgatory of* Hecla, 563. *Purgatory Visions*, 362
Pustozera, 445
Put *and* Phuthæi, 37
Putulangua *a tree so called worshipped in* Persia *and* Arabia, 242
Pygmalion *Founder of* Carthage, 79
Pyramus *and* Thisbe, 57
Pyramides *in* Ægypt, 632
Pythagorean *opinions of killing & eating no quicke thing, &c.* 452 532.701.542

Q

Quabacondono *Emperour of* Iapon, 590.591. *Made his Nephew* Quibacondono, 591 592. *Causeth him to pluck out his bowels, ibidem. The young* Quabacondono *his cruelty, ibidem.*
Quailes *sacrificed*, 630
Quicksilver *and the properties thereof* 797. *Where found*, 798
Quilacate *and their bloody rites*, 890
Quilos, *the situation and description thereof*, 756.757
Quinsay *greatest Citie of the World*, 441. *The description thereof*, 442.443
Quippos *wherewith they accounts in* Peru, 935
Quinira, *the description thereof*, 853

R

RAmah *and his Posteritie*, 37
Rab *his strictnesse*, 126
Rab, Rabrah, Rabba, *with a rable of like titles*, 164
Rabbi *and* Ribbi, *ibid.*
Rabbins *of two sorts*, 165. *Their seuerall* Classes, *ibid. & sequitur. The authority and power of the* Rabbins, *with their Rites of Creation*, 166. *& sequitur. Their Degrees, ibid. Their Scholiers and Academies*, 167. *Which of most reckoning, ibidem. Their glorious titles they give to each other*, 168. *When their first* Morenu, *ibid. Compared to Iesuits*, 159. *To* Ignatius Loyola 158
Rabbins *more exercised in their* Talmud *then in the Bible*, 157
Rabbimit Iewes, 125
Rabbath *chiefe Citie of the* Amorites, 86
Rach *and* Rachiophantæ, 57
Rakiah *what it signifieth*, 8
Rainebow, *observations on the colours thereof*, 36. *Called the child of Wonder, ibid. It was before the Flood, ibid.*
Raine *of stones*, 295. *Of Ashes, Sand, Haire*, 360
Raine *seldome and vnwholesome in* Ægypt, 630
Raine *seldome and vnwholesome in* Guinea, 727
Raine *turning into Wormes*, 805 *the manner of raines in* Peru, 94.t
Raleigh, *viz. Sir* Walter Raleigh *his Discovery of* Guiana, 900. 901. *His Plantation in* Virginia, *vide* Virginia. *His taking Saint* Ioseph, 907
Ramadan, *Festivall moneth of the* Sarazens, 239. 240
Ramadam, *or* Ramazam *of the* Mahumetans, 263
Rambam, *or* Rabbi Moses Ben Maimon *his commendation*, 52. *Author of the* Iewish *Creed*, 172
Rams *in* Turkish *Superstition*, 324 *Golden* Ram, 350. Phryxus *his* Ram, 247
Racing *and Printing the flesh*, 876
Rate *wonderfull great*, 36. *Musk* Rats, 621. *Many kindes of* Rats, 565
Raziel Adams *teacher*, 161
Rebat *a towne in the Kingdome of* Fez, 681
Rebecca *a* Iewish *Dreame of her*. 160
Rebellions *at* Cusa, 1022
Reconciliation-*Fast*, 112. 197 198
Rechabites 125
Red Sea, *or* Arabian *Gulfe*, 582 *& seq. Iland: therein, ibidem.*
Red Sea *why so called*, 775. *& seq. The chiefe Townes and Iland: in the* Red Sea, 777. *& sequitur.*
Reisbuti *or* Rasboots, *a people subject to the* Mogoll, 534. *Their Country, Religion and Rites*, 535. 536
Religion *whence the word derived*, 17. 18. *How differing from Superstition, called* Ean-fastnesse, 18. *Described, ibidem. The vse thereof*, 26. *It is naturall to men, ibid. It is not policie, nor by policie can bee abolished*, 27. *True Religion can bee but one*, 27. 28 *Men will rather be of false then no Religion, ibidem.* & 301 391
Religion *the most mortall Malebate*, 75. *What was the Religion of the World before the Flood*, 28. 29. *Whom the Heathens call Religion*, 46. *Perverters of Religion*, 55. 70. 75. *Times religion observed in* China, 47
Religions *of* Christians, Moores *and* Ethnicks *compared for store of followers*, 320
Reliques, *of the Arke*, 35. *Of* Mahumetans, 281. *Of an Apes Tooth*, 295. *Of the Ship* Argo, 320. *Of* Adams *foot-print*, 381
Repentance, 257
Resurrection *denyed by the* Sadducees, 138. *By the* Samaritans, *ibid. Confessed by the Ancient* Pharisees, 126. *Their three opinions thereof, ibid. Denyed to Women*, 257. *Of women in male sexe*, 261. *Resurrection of Birds and Beasts*, 314. Turkish *opinion of the Resurrection*, 313
Rhamefes *an* Ægyptian *King*, 632
Rheubarb, *plentifull*, 413
Rhinoceros *of* Bengala, 509
Rhinoceros *of the Aire a Fowle*, 742. *And of the Sea, ibid.*
Rice *plenteous in* Pegu, 498. 499
Rich *Carpet*, 1019
Riphath *and* Riphæan *Hills*, 37
Rimmon *an Idoll of the* Syrians, 74
Rings *worne in Eares, Nose and Lips*, 873
Riuers *worshipped*, 509. 510
Riuers *of Paradise*, 18. *Of* Adonis, 78. *Of* Iordan, 90 *Sabbaticall*, 109. *Of the* Hircans, 361
Riuers *running vnder ground*, 65
Riuer *in* Laos *running backwards, two moneths*, 489
Riuers *made by hand many and great in* China, 455
Riuers *loosing themselues in Sands*, 579. *Great Riuers in* America, 793. Abassian *Riuers*. 840. *The Riuer* Plate *and Countries adioyning*, 920
Riuer-horse, 623. 714
Rhodes *the description thereof*, 584
Rhodians, 39
Rihi *a Sauage people*, 1032
Roundnesse *of the World*, 2
Rowland *a name frequent with the* Colchians, 348
Ruck *a fabulous Bird*, 780
Russian *Observations*, 973. *& sequitur.*
Russes *conuerted to* Christianitie, 1038

S

SA, Scha, Saha, Shaugh, Xa, Persian *titles*, 365. 366
Saads *cruelty*, 1015
Saba *and Queene of* Saba, 225 330. 331. 332. 753. *The Citie* Saba *described*, 748. 753. 754
Sabæa Regio thurifera, 37
Sabbaticus *a Riuer in* Syria, 109 *A Discourse of the Sabbaticall Riuer*, 581. 582. *A tale of a* Iew *that thought hee had met with the* Sabbaticall *Riuer*, 580
Sabbatha *a City in* Arabie Fœlix, 37
Sabbatharians, 123
Sabbaticall *yeere*, 99
Sabbaticall *yeere of the* Iewes *and* Samaritans, 109
Sabbatary *Soule of the* Iewes, 193

Sab-

Sabbaticall *Superstition of the* Iewes, 107.108.147.149.192.193
Sabbath *why so called*, 106. *a dayes rest all name*, *ibid.*
Sabbath *why called the Lords Day*, 120
Sabbath *how sorte Moral and Ceremoniall*, 15. 20. 108. *Obiections answered*, 19. 20. 21
Sabbaths of Christians, 20.21. *Of* Iewes, 106.109.174.192. *Of* Ethiopians, 111. *Of* Turks, 310. 311. *Of* Peguans *on Munday*, 507. *in Lent whitsuntide*, in Guinea *on Tuesday*, 768.719. *So* Moldavia *in* Panoora, 813
Sabbetha *and his Pastorite*, 37
Sabelica *and* Sechalitæ, 37
Sabyrians, 439
Sacrament *of the Rain-bow*, 36
Sacrifices *of* Cain *and* Abell, 27
Sacrifices *of* Noah, *Kinds of Sacrifices*, 28
Sacrifices *consumed by fire from* Heaven, *ibid.*
Sacrifice, *but the Apparell of Divine worship*, *ibid.*
Sacrifices *of the* Cyrenians *and* Iewes, 110.114. *Of* Mahumetanians, 273.274. Phænician *Sacrifices*, 81
Sacrifices *to* Moloch, 86. *Of* Arabians, 227. *Of* Taurica, 234 Galatians, 329. *Of* Meander, 332. Araxes, 345. Armenians, 344. Albanians, 346. Scythians, 397. Ægyptians *at* Idythya, 402. Buiris, 554. *At* Heliopolis, 599. *Of the* Carthagians, 672. *Of the* Blemmies, 683. Æthiopians, 745. *Falsly supposed of* Virginians, 775. *In* Florida, 846. Panuco, 893 Zaclota, 920. Tezcuco, 932 *Of* Mexicans *how begunne*, 871 *Increased*, 872. *To their Goddesses*, *ibid. The strange fashion of their Sacrificing*, 871. *The Rites of humane Sacrifice*, 872
Sacrifices *of the* Iewes *of eight sorts, and their rites*, 115
Sacrifices *of the* Persians, 373. *Daily*, *ibid. Rites of their Sacrificing*, 374. 375. 376. *Of the* Philippinas, 603. *Self-sacrificing of the* Banians, 240 241. *Of the* Nayros, 553. Naringa, 580. Amouchi, 638 *At* Quiacate, 890. Iapanders, 595. *Humane Sacrifices in* Peru, 109. Mexico, 945
Sacae, *their Habitation and rites*, 17. 399
Sacrileduge *how punished*, 120
Sachoniatho, 76
Sagadana, 379
Saga, 350
Sabatius Saga, 351
Sagadahoc *river*, 883
Saddai *a name of God, what it signifieth*, 4
Sadducees *the History of them*, 129.130. *Their cruelties*, *ibid. Difference betwixt them and the* Samaritans, 138
Sanhedrin, *vide* Elders.
Saints *in* Turkie, 316.317.318 *In* Ægypt, *vide* Nafiifa.
Saladine, 657
Salmanasar, 136
Saints *of* Pagans, 99.
Salomons *building the Temple*, 102
Salamander, 565
Salsette, *and the Rites there*, 545
Salt-hill, 84
Salt *deare sold*, 722. *How made*, *ibid.*
Saltnesse *cause of motion in the Sea* 573.574
Samarelinteth *a Cuin*, 149
Samarchand *the Cuin of the great* Tamerlane, 435
Samaria *how situate*, 93.136
Samaritan *Sect*, 136. *& sequitur. The hatred betweene them and the* Iewes, 137. *Difference from the* Sadducees, 138
Samaritan *Chronicle*, 138
Samaritan *Letters and Temple*, 138
Samosata, Lucians *Birth place*, 68
Samoits *or* Samoeds, 431. *Their Rites*, 432. *& sequitur. Their hardship and manner of travell*, 432. 433. *Their Images*, *Religion*, *Persons*, *ibid.*
Samiel, Semixas *names of Devils*, 32
Samarra *the History thereof*, 612 613. *The King thereof a Fisherman, how he came to the Crowne*, 613. 614. *His Admirall, Attendants, Women, &c. ibid. The present King attended by Boyes and women*, *ibid. His entertainments to the English*, 613. *His letter to our King*, 614. *His cruelties*, 615
Samsemanes *or* Sumnes, 133.
Sanballat, 134
Sanchiatho, 76
Sanctuary *at* Taurica, 325. *at* Ephesus, 336. Canopus *and other places*, 562
Sandars, *three Sorts thereof*, 570
Sopdites *King of* Persia *his revenge*, 361.362
Sangene tocoro *in* Iapon, 586
Sanguis Draconis, 779
Saracs, *the name of an Arabian*, *Cities*, 230
Saracens *who, and why so called*, 215.229.230.637. *Their Ancient Rites*, *ibidem. Their Religion*, 230.231. *Their Warres under* Mahumet *and his Successors*, 232. *& sequitur. Diuisions*, 233. *Their Califes and exploits*, 234. 236. *& sequitur. Their learning and learned men*, 240.241. *Their Story of* Mahomets *life*, 244. 245. *& sequitur. Their opinion of the* Alcoran, 258. 259. *The* Saracenicall *Conquest and Schisme in* Persia, 378. 379. *What Countrey of the East they possessed*, 657. *More* Saracens *then* Christians, *ibid.*
Captaine Satis, *his travels and commendation*, 589.590
Sardanapalus *his Conquests*, 61 *His destruction*, 61. 62. *His Monument*, *ibidem. How much goods perished with him*, *ibid.*
Sardis *Mother Citie of* Lydia, 339
Sarmatians, 37.407
Sasquesahanockes *a Gianty people in* Virginia, 842. *Their Rites*, 843.844
Saturni, *who so called*, 45
Saturnus *the same with* Cain, 45
Saturne *of the* Phænicians, 77 *His other names*, 80
Satouriona *his Acts*, 848
Saualets *many Voyages*.
Sciequian *Sect*, 463
Sclauonian *Tongue the large extent thereof*, 973
Scribes, *not a Sect but a Function*, 132. *The History of them*, 132. 133. *Two sorts of them*, 132
Scripture *sense how diuerse*, 14 *The mystiall is mistiall, and*

mission, ib. 16. *Opinions concerning the Scripture*, 169. *First penned by* Moses, 175. *Digested by* Esra, 179. *Numbers of the Books, Chapters, Verses: Who first Author of Chapters*, 159 *To the Jews Decree of Translations*, 168. *Iewes respect to the Scripture*, 168. 169

Scyles *King of the* Scythians *his misfortunes*, 398

Scythia, *a great part of the World conceyned under the name*, 396 *Why so called, ibid. The people, religion, language and manner of life*, 396. 397. *Their Temples, Dimension, Generall, &c.* 397. 398 *Their cruelty and hatred of Foreygne Rites, ibidem. Particular Nations in Scythia, their Acts and Rites*, 398. 399. *& seq.*

Scythes *a Monster*, 396

Scythinus 45

Scythe *Creation thereof*, 20. *Dimension thereof*, 575. *Commodities thereof, ibid. The Red Sea*, 84 582. 583. *& seq.* 775. *& seq. A large Discourse of the Sea, and many Observations thereof*, 571. 572. *& seq. The forme, greatnesse, depth, ibid. The profit, motion and saltnesse*, 573. 574 *The Sea Original of Fountaines*, 574 *Varieties of Seas*. 575. 575 *The* Persians *and* Mogol *have no power by Sea*, 293

Seales *a kind of Fishes*, 435

Seba, *People, and people of* Arabia, 27. 225. *The Region of Seba*, 143

Sebua, *Sebuæans*, 139. *Sebuæans a Sect of Samaritans*, *ibid.*

Sebaste *in Samaria*, 105

Sebornæ *whence so called*, 165

Sebytins, 432

Secfina *in* Barbary, 700

Sects *in* Golconda, 995

Seed *of the woman and the Serpent*, 27

Master Selden *his deserved commendation*, 70. 151

Selan or Zeylan, 616. *& seq. The riches and rarities thereof, ibid. Their Temples, Images, Monasteries, Processions*, 617. *Their workmanship and making*, 618 *Whether Sedan bee* Taprobane, *ibid.*

Selim *the great* Turk, 283 *& sequitur.*

Selim *the second*, 285. 286

Sehm *the great* Mogol *now reyning, his greatnesse and condition*, 519. 520

Selte-penance, *vide* Punishments.

Selte-murther, 623

Seleber *they abound with Gold*, 578 *eat man flesh*, 608. *Hands neere*, *ibid.*

Seleucia, 63. *Twyned into* Bagdet, 90. *Built by* Seleucus, 63. *is ninight other of that name*, 73

Seleucus *worshipped*, 70. *His history*, 73

Seluccian *Family of* Turkes, 279 280. 281

Semiramis *her Pillar*, 45. *Her* Babylon *Buildings*, 48. 49. *Not the Founder thereof, ibid. Her Sepulchre* 45. *The first that made Eunuchs*, 61. *Abuse of her Husbands*, 66. *Supposed the Founder of the Temple at* Hierapolis, 68 *Her Image there*, 69. *In* Media, 350. *Her inuading* India, 381

Seniaga *Riuer*, 714

Senacherib *ouerthrowne by* Asuc, 62. *Slaine by his owne Sonnes*, 66

Sentence *in the Court of the* Iewes *how given*, 98

Senigula *a feeling herbe*, 563

Sensim *an Order of* Tartarian *Priests who observe great strictnesse*, 418

Separatists *a Sect of* Moores, 273

Sepulchres, *vide* Funerals.

Serpents *eaten in* America, 33. *Diuers kinds of Serpents in* Ind, 2. 565. *Death to kill a Serpent, ibid. The King of* Calicuts *opinion of Serpents*, 565. 566. *Huge Serpents in* Africa, 623. 624 *Seuerall kinds of Serpents there, ibid.*

Serpent *vsed to tempt* Eue, 21. 22 *His curse*, 23. *Seed of the Serpent*, 27. 28

Serpent *Images in* Belus *Temple*, 47

Serpent *honoured by the* Phœnicians, 77. *By the* Ophitæ, 135 *Worshipped by the* Arabians, 221 *By the* Indians, 565. *By the* Aegyptians, 637. 638. *By the* Aegeans, 652. *A Serpent the Armes of the King of* China, 458. *Tame Serpents*, 623

Serpents *in* Brasill, 912. 913

Seres *their Habitation and Rites*, 400

Serug *Author of Idolatry*, 45. 95

Sesostris, 227

Seth *his Nativitie and Posteritie*, 29. 30. *Arts ascribed to him*, 31

Sethians *a Sect of the* Iewes *worship serpents of Seth*, 135

Sem *Sonne of* Noah, 36. *His Posteritie*, 37. *The same with* Melchisedec, 45

Serapis *his Temple and Rites*, 636 651

Seriffo *of* Barbary *his History*, 695 696

Seuerus *his sentence*, 271

Seuenty *Elders*, 199

Seuenty *Weekes of* Daniel, 98

Sharke *a Fish*, 953. 954

Shaugh Tamks *the Story of him, and of the* Persian *troubles after his death*, 585. 586

Shem *and his Posteritie*, 37

Shemer, 136. *A City so called, ibid.*

Sherly, *viz. Sir* Anthony Sherley *his Travels*, 388. 389

Shishack *and Shacks*, 58

Shomron *Mountaine*, 136

Siam, *Siloo, or Siow a City and Kingdome in* India, 490. *Their Houses, Inundations, Monkes, and Superstitions, ibidem. Their Gods and Religious Men*, 491. *& sequitur. Their Feastes, Temples, Deuotions*, 492. *The Kings greatnesse, ibidem. Besieged*, 493. *Acts of the Blacke and White Kings, ibidem. Fury of the Iapanders there, ibidem. They weare Bulls in their yards*, 496

Sibils *counterfeit*, 358

Sichem, 137. *Called* Flauia Cæsarea *and* Naples, 143. *The* Sichemites *Religion, ibid.*

Sicke *persons how vsed among st the* Iewes, 206

Sidon *the building thereof*, 78

Sidonians *first Authors of Weights and Measures*, 82

Sidon *first inhabited the Sea-coast*, 86

Siluer *the nature thereof, and of the Mines*, 797

Sinai, 225. *Mount Sinai how situate, ibid.*

Sincopura *Straits*, 579

Sinda *described*, 532. 533

Sinne *the definition and distinction thereof*, 24. *Whence Originall Sinne, and how, ibidem.*

Whither by Generation, 25
Sinnes *combination in our first Parents*, 22. *The fearefull state of Sinners*, 28. *Seven mortall sinnes reckoned by the* Turkes, 301
Sinne-offering *of the* Iewes, 116 *The nature of all mall sinne*, 25 *What accounted sinnes by the* Tartars, 415, 416
Sion, 94
Sisthudirus *the same with* Noah, 47. *His* Chaldean *Legend*, *ibid.*
Sitting *a signe of reverence, standing of dignitie*, 429
Skull *in the Temple of* Mexico *how many* 873. *In* Nicaragua, 888
Skulls *of Parents made drinking cups*, 951. *A Turret built of stone and Skulls*, 951
Slaucs *of* Angola, 766
Sleds *used by the Samoeds drawne with Deere*, 432. *Their swiftnesse ibid. Sleds drawn with dogs*, 744
Snakes, *vide Serpents*,
Snake-wood, *where growing*, 570
Socaters *or Socotors*, 778. *The description thereof*, 779
Socota *an Idoll in* Virginia, 839
Sodome *and Sodomites*, 85. *Historie of Sodome*, 83, 84. *& sequitur. The Sodomie of* Turkes, 229. 270. *Of* Persians, 371 *Of* Tartars, 419. *Of* Cimoos, 440
Sogor *a Village neere Sodome*, 84
Sofala, 756. *Supposed* Ophir, *ibid.*
Soldania, 761. *Their cheape sale of beasts, beastly habit and diet, colour, &c.* 762. 763. 764
Solyman *a name of diuers* Turkes, 280. 284
Solyman *the Magnificent his acts*, 284. 285
Solmissus *how situate*, 339
Sommers *Iland*, 960. 961
Sophia *chiefe Temple in* Constantinople *turned into a Mosche*, 306. 307
Sophi *of the* Turkes, 321
Sorceries *of the* Tartars, 416
Soule, 13. *Its immortalitie*, 326 *The* Iewes *Opinion of three soules and one Sabbatary*, 127 Dogziio *their Opinion of the soule*, 220
South-sea *sailed by* Vilos *and* Aarchion, 922
South Continent *how great*, 832 *By whom discovered*, 831
Spaniards *how detested in the* Philippines, 604. 605. 606. *In* Cuba, 954. *Indian conquests of them and their Horses*, 962 *Their cruelties in the* West Indies, *and of their perverse conversion of the* Indians *unto Christianitie*, 962. 963. *& sequitur.*
Spaine *infested by the* Dunes, 1045
Spelman, *viz. Sir* Henry Spelman *his deserved commendation*, 116
Spirit *very God*, 3. *Our sanctifier*, 4. *His manner of working*, 6. 7. *Moving on the waters*, 6 *Spirit of man how procreated*, 23
Starres *not animated* 8. *What their number, greatnesse, and other qualities*, *ibid.*
Starres *seene by day*, 1017
Stone *kissed at* Mecca, 269. 270
Stone *of mourning*, 137. *Precious stones and their vertue.*
Storkes *pietie*, 223, *Chastitie and worship*, 560
Stratonice *a Queene*, 68
Stratonices, 67
Straits *of* Magellan, 923. *How often passed by* Englishmen, 927. *The Giants there, cold & other observations*, *ibid.*
Succession *of the* Persian *Kings from* Cosroes, *some of* Hormida, 1017
Succession *of the Kings of* Barbary, *after the ending of the* Aegyptian Chalifas, 1046. 1047
Sucheom *or* Succu *a rich City of* China, 440. *Whither* Quinlay, 441
Sucoth Benoth, 58. *Like a Hen and Chickens*, *ibid.*
Suleiman *the* 14. Chalifa, 1024 *His gluttony*, 1025. *Is poisoned*, *ibid.*
Sunne *created the greatnesse and excellence thereof*, 10. 11. *Worshipped of the* Chaldees, 54. *Of the* Pythagoricians, 77. Moabites, 85. *In the high places*, 101. *Of* Hesses, 131. 133. Samiæans, 133
Daniel Sylvester *killed by Lightning*, 979
Superstition *why succeeded*, 18. *and* 46. *Credulous, ancient*, 69. *The name of it*, 81
Surmobolus *and* Thurro, 77
Suskoy *Emperour of* Russia, 993
Sut *a Region in* Africa, 620
Swittnesse *of some* Arabians, 265
Swimmers *famous*, 580
Swine *holden vncleane in* Syria, 69. *In* Phœnicia, 80. In 22, 92. *In* Arabia *before* Mahomet, 228. 229. By Mahomet, 232. 253. *By the* Scythians, 366. 367. *By the* Tartars, 418 *By* Aegyptians, 642. 643
Swine *sacrificed in the* Philippines, 602. 603. *In* Aegypt, 643
Swine *with horns*, 566. *Two sorts in* Guiana 900. *In* Brasil *one living in both Elements*, 912. 913
Swine *in* Terra Australis, 924
Sword-fish *described*, 513. 514
Synagogues *at* Alexandria, 100 *At* Ierusalem, 104. *The Rites therein vsed*, 104. 105 *Of Moderne* Iewes, 146. 147 *& sequitur.* 183. 185. *& seq. The manner of going to the* Iewish Synagogue *and from thence*, 183. *& seq.*
Syria *and* Assyria *confounded*, 65 *How diuided and bounded*, 65 66. 67. *The Habitation of* Adam, Noah, *&c. ibidem. The* Syrian *Kings*, 73. *& sequitur. The* Syrian *Goddesse*, 67. 68. *Who she was ibidem. Differing from* Atergatis 68. *The* Syrians *worship Fishes and Doues*, 69. *Effeminate, ibidem. Alterations of Religions in* Syria, 75
Syria *a strong hold*, 501
Syriake *Language*, 38. 40. 221
Syrophanes *his prophane Poetie*, 637

T

TAautus *or* Thoyth, 77. *First Author of Letters, ibidem.*
Tabacco, 1004
Tabernacle *of the* Israelites, 101 *The History thereof. ibidem. The Feast of Tabernacles*, 112. 196 *Neglected from the time of* Iosiah *to* Nehemiah, *ibidem. How kept*, 112. 156. 197
Table *of the Sunne*, 728. 729
Taicosama *the* Iaponian *his acts*, 593. 594

Tamin *Citie described*, 621.
Tallpoyes *religious persons of* Pegu, 605. *Their habit and Rites*, 606.
Talent *how much*, 103. *How valued amongst the Hebrewes*, *ibid.* *The Talents which* David *left to* Salomon, *how much in our money*, *ibid.*
Talmud *ibid.*, 148. *When, and why, and how composed*, 155. 158. *&c. seq.* Of Babylon and Ierusalem, *ibid.* *Absurdities thereof*, 156, 157.
Tamas *King of* Persia, 286. *His Stature*, *ibid.*
Tamin, Tangin, *and* Tamegine *names of* China *and* Chinois, 435
Tamendo *is a strange beast*, 356
Tamuz *and* Thamuz *a Prophet mourned for by the* Zabij *or* Chaldees, 50. *By the* Phœnicians, 78. *The historie of* Tamuz *an idolatrous Prophet*, 52 *& seq.*
Tamerlane, 74. *Compared with* Alexander, 425. *His Life and Acts*, 450
Tanais *River and Goddesse*, 305
Tangrol *pix his Acts*, 470 *& seq.*
Tanguth *and the Rites there*, 428 429
Tantalus *his Storie*, 321
Tapistrie *hangings when & where invented*, 335
Tappyri *their habitation and Rites* 355.356
Taprobana. 561
Tarshish *founder of the* Cilicians 37
Tarsus *a* Cilician *Citie*, 37. *Built by* Sardanapalus, 62. *An University*, 313
Tarre-*fountaine*, 395
Tartars, *their Reigne in* Persia, 379. 380. *& seq. The historie of them*, 401. *& seq. Their original*, *ibid.* *Not from the ten Tribes*, 402. *Their first Tribes and rudenesse*, *ibid.* *Their Exploits and Conquests*, 403. 404. *& seq. Their sorcerie*, 406. *The Map of* Tartarie, 407. *The* Tartarian *greatnesse, Chronologie and Succession*, 406. 408. 409. *Writers of the* Tartarian *historie*, *ibid.* *An Examination of their historie*, 414, *& seq. Their Religion and Rites thereunto belonging*, 415. 431. 432. *The Seale of the* Tartar *Emperours*, 407. *Their inscriptions and letters*, 433. *Their customs Persons, pastures, tents*, *ibid.* *Their Diuination*, *ibid.* *Priests*, *Astrologie*, 416. 417. *Their Marriages, Sects, Music, Funerals*, *ibid.* *Their magnificent Feasts, Palaces, Games*, 418. *The Precepts and Cribs* Tartars, 421. Cazan, Astracan, *and* Tartaria Desarta, 423. *Their diet and Hawking*, 424. *The* Zagathayans, 425. *Their* Carabas *or Black beads*, *ibid.* *Their changes in Religion, and of the* Mordants *or* Moxij, *ibid.* *The Kings* Colmacks, *&c.* 425. 426. *Rites general to all* Tartars, *ibid.*
Taugast *chiefe Citie of the first* Turkes. 278
Tearcon *or* Tirhaka, 49
Teeth *of wonderfull bignesse*, 32.
Teeth *blacke esteemed beautifull*, 492
Tekupha, 107
Telensin *or* Tremisen, 691
Temeina *described*, 680. 681
Temples *idolatrous of* Belus, 49. 50. *Of* Apollo *at* Babylon, 51. *Of* Venus, 56. *Of the Moone at* Carræ, 64. *Of Saint* Abraham, *ibid.* *Of the* Syrian *Goddesse*, 68. *Of* Apollo, Daphneus, *and* Diana, 71. *Of* Minerua, 72. *That at* Ierusalem *named of* Iupiter Olympius, 74 *Of* Nanæa, *ibid.* *Of* Victoria *at* Antioch, *ibid.* *At* Damascus, 75. *At* Tyre, 77. *At* Baloi, 78. *In* Libanus, 79. Astaroth, *ibid.* *Of* Venus, 80. *Of* Dagon, *ibid.* *At* Ascalon, 81 *In* Cæsius 83. *Of* Salomon *and others in* Ierusalem, 94. 95. 102. 103. *At* Samaria, 105. *At* Leontopolis, 106. *At* Cæsaria, *ibid.* *At* Panium, Rhodus, Sebaste, 107. 108. *At* Samaria, 137. *At* Ælia, 142. *On Mount* Sinai, 225. *Of* Venus *in* Arabia, 231. *Of* Damascus, 234. *Of* Mecca, 270. 272. 273. *& seq Of* Christians *made* Turkish, 306. *The Temple of Saint* Sophie, 307, *& seq. Temple at* Comana, 327. Morimena, Castabala, Diapolis, 327. 328. *At* Zela, 328. *Of the* Galatians. Nice, 329, Paphlagonia, *ibid.* Phrygia, 338. Adrathia, 841. *At* Cizicus, 342. *Of* Diana Leucophrina, 335. *At* Smyrna *to* Homer, 338. Ephesian *Temple*, 337. 338. *&c. seq.* Chizomedæ, Miletus, Pot[illegible]dam, Solimissus, 340. *At* Scotalymne, Bargedia, Mylasa, *and* Alabanda, 341. *Temple of* Armenia, 345. Albania, 347. *Of* Scythians 367. *In* China, 470 471. *In* Japon, 598. 599. *In* Zeilan, 584. *In* Goschonda, 999
Temple *at* Damascus *costly and magnificent*, 1024
Tenariffe, 784. *The pike or high hill*, 785. 786
Tephillim *of the* Iewes, 185
Tetraphim *of the* Iewes, *the manner of hallowing it*, 123
Terra Australis, 924. *Discourses and Discoueries thereof*, *ibid.* *& seq.*
Ternate, 605. *& seq.*
Thamuz, *a name of a moneth*, *vid.* Tamuz.
Thamuzites, 136
Thara *first Image-maker*, 45
Tharsis *supposed* Carthage, 37
Tharsus, *or* Karthuda, 82
Thebais *in* Ægypt, 632
Thebes *and the Rites there*, 439
Thebes *vid.* Thebais.
Theobulians *a Sect of the Iewes*, 135
Theodosian *Author of the Storie of Bell and the Dragon* 57
Theologie *Allegoricall* 77
Theruma *a kinde of Tribe of the* Iewes 117
Thesperion 671
Thescues *how punished by the Iewes* 99, 100. *Allowed by the* Georgians, 347. 348. *Odious to the* Scythians, 397. *Presently and cruelly executed by the* Tartars, 431. 432
Thiras *father of the* Thiacians,
Thogarma, *whence the names* Tygranes *and* Tygranokarta 37
Citie of Saint Thomas, 560. 954.
Saint Thomas *Iland* 781
Thomas-*Christians* 561
Thophasimin, *the reasonable creatures so called* 77
Thoyth 77
Threfher, *a Fish*, 952. 953. *& seq.*
Thuball *Father of the* Ioctians, 37
Thunder *how produced* 77
Tiberias *a Citie wholy inhabited by* Iewes 136
Tibareni *a beastly people*, 330. *their cruell Rites.* 400
Tigris, 17. *The ouerflowing thereof*

of, 58. *Mixed with* Euphrates *were* Seleucia, 61. *The townes thereon*, 50.64. *Desolated Cities by a Deluge*, 64. *The swiftnesse*, 63. *The name* 341
Tigres, 491. *They cause the people to lodge in Trees, and to set their houses on posts, &c.* 493. 494
Time, *what it is*, 5.
Time *and Motion twinnes*, 12, 13
Computation thereof diuerse.
Tinge *or* Tanger. 87
Titans *and their Inuentions* 77
Tithes *how farre Leuiticall*, 116. *Some reckon foure sorts*, 117. *Of what, how paid, where, by whom* 117.118. *Officers receiued them ibid. & seq. Paid by* Turks, 306 *At* Fez, 684. *To the* Senisos, 695,696.
Titus 140
Tombuto 722
Tongues *confounded* 38
Topheth *or* Tymbrell 86
Tomimamlazes 910
Torlaquis *a* Turkish *order*, 317. 318. *Their wickednesse*, *ibid.*
Torch-*mettlegreen*. 996
Torpedo 750
Towre *of* Babylon 50
Traditionarie *Iewes*, 127, & *seq. Equalled to Scripture*, 137. *Of traditionarie Iewes more at large ibid. lib. 2. cap. 13. to the end. Traditionarie Papists*, 158. 159. *Traditionall Law, Tradition preferred before Scripture, ibid. Foolish and blasphemous Traditions of the* Arabians, 231. 232. *Lying Traditions of the* Mahumetans. 273. 274.
Translations *of Scripture*, *nine*, 170. *Opinions concerning the translation of Scripture*, 169. *the Vulgar translation*, *ibid*
Transubstantiation, 881
Tree *forbidden*, 17. 21. *Fabulous speaking Trees of the* Zabii, 52 *Trees wodin the Feast of Tabernacles*, 156. *Trees worshipped*, 360. *Trees of* India, 566. *Two Trees in the Garden of God, you call Sacraments*, 21. *Trees of* Sodome, 84. Mahomets *tree in* Paradise, 263. *Trees in* Iapon *very strange*, 520. *As strange in* Ciumbuon, 532. *In* Congo, 759. *In the Iland of Saint* Thomas, 781. *In* Brasill 912. *In* Golchonda *all Trees continually greene*, 995
Tremisen *Kingdome* 675
Trials *of doubtfull causes in* Guinea, 718. *In* Angola, 766. *In* Loango, 770.771
Tribes 44. *in* Golchonda *described* 997
Tribes *of* Israel *their portion*, 91 97. *Their Cities royall*, 92
Tribunals 98
Trinitie *in Vnitie* 3
Trinidado 899
Tripiti *an* Indian *Idoll*, 560
Tripolis *in* Barbarie, 674. *Described, ibid. Strange People and Sects neere* Tripoly, 220
Triumuiri *at* Rome 66
Troglodytæ, 667.731
Troy *historie thereof, and present ruines* 332.333
Peast of Trumpets 111
Tubalcain *supposed* Vulcan, 34
Tuban *in* Iaua 610
Tubiens *a societie of the* Iewes 135
Tuesday *Sabbath in* Guinea, 718. 719
Tunia *or* Tomana 894
Tunis *Kingdome, the description thereof*, 669.670. *Wonne by the* Turke, *ibid. Delicacie there vsed* 670.671
Turkes *whence their name and original*, 278.279. *Their first Religion*, 278. *Language*, 279. *Conquest of* Persia, *ibid. Of Other parts of* Asia, 280. 281. *Ouerthrowne by the* Christians *of the West, ibid. By the* Tartars, 281. 282. *Conquered* Asia *ibid. A great part of* Europe, 283. *With* Constantinople, Ægypt, 283. 284. *& seq. Ouerthrowne at Sea by* Iohn *of* Austria, 286. *In* Hungarie, 288. *& seq. Rebellion and Ciuil warre*, 289. *Emperours Sepulchers, ibid. Warres with the* Persian *and amongst themselues*, 288. 289. *The Map of the Turkish Empire*, 290. *The great* Turkes *Handicraft, his Falconers, Huntsmen, Conuenuchs, Officers*, 291. 292. *His Ianizaries, ibid. The* Turke *compared with other Princes, their* Zuna *and* Curnam, 292. 293. *Their eight Commandements*, 297. *Prayer, Almes, Sacrifice*, 298. *Marriage, Women, Adulterie, Murther*, 299. *Opinions and practises in Religion*, 300. *& seq. their Friday-Sabbath, Zeale, hatred of Images, moderation in building, respect to the Sunne and Moone*, 300. 301. *Polygamie, Ignorance, Religues, Sorcerie, Patience, good workes, Oathes, Vowes, Opinions, of Fate, and Antichrist*, 301. 302. *Aimes to Beasts, Conceit of Prophets, eating Opium, Physicke, Opinion of Angels*, 302. 303. *Their manner of apparelling themselues at home and abroad*, 303. 304. *Salutations, Recreations, houses and furniture, food, meales, feeding, Coffa houses, &c. ibid. Tobacco, attire of women, slaues, Arts*, 305. *Their Temples*, 305 *& seq. Hospitals and Monasteries*, 308. *The* Turkish *manner of Praying and Church Rites* 309. *Of blessing their women. Of preaching ibid. Their Sabbath, Lent, and Easter*, 310. *Their Circumcision*, 311. *Of Renegadoes*, 312. *Visitation of the sicke and Funeralls, ibid. Fancies of the end of the World, last iudgement, Paradise and Hell*, 313. 314. *Their Votaries and Sects*, 315. 316. *Denoted to death, ibid. Their Kalenders and Dervises, &c.* 316. 317 *Their Saints, Vowes, Pilgrimages, and other Popish obseruances*, 317, 318. *Checderles*, 318 *Their Priests, Hierarchy, Colledges*, 319. 320. *& seq. A pathetiall description of* Turkish *Tyrannie*, 322. 323, *& seq. Orders and degrees of their Clergie from the Mufti to the Sophis*, 329. *& seq. Their Election and Arts* 322. *Their Emers, ibid. Cruell taking of* Constantinople, 323. *Their beame hand ouer the* Greeke, 324. *Their zeale of making* Proselites, 325. *Their buying and selling of* Christians, 325. 326
Turkes *greatnesse in* Africa. 626
Turkes *and* Persians *hot dissentions for Religion*, 390. 391
Turkish *greatnesse, the beginning thereof* 1040
Turkeman *or* Turcomania, 334. 335. 336
Typhon *a Dragon*, 72. Phœnician *God*. 76. *In* Ægypt, 636. *His*

Legend

Legend, 636.637. *The mystery thereof.* 638.639
Tyrus *called* Sur, 179. *taken with a stratagem*, 82
Tyrannus *Priest of* Saturne *his Knavery*, 681
Tygranes *Kings of* Armenia Minor, 37

V.

Valerianus *his Story*, 361
Valboas *Acts*, 931
Valiy or Vaithiwich *Great Duke of* Russia *his History*, 973. & *sequitur.*
Veadar, 106
Venezuela 895
Venus *worshipped with filthy Rites in* Babylon, 56. *Called* Mylitta *and other names, ibid. Her Temple*, 59
Venus Vrania, 66. *Hatched of an Egge*, 69. *The same with* Iuno, 78. *Filthy Rites*, 80
Veneas *strict Sect*, 541
Verus *a voluptuous Emperour*, 71
Vestaments, *holy Vestaments of the* Iewes, 185
Vineyard *eighteene miles square*, 142
Viper *of sixteene Cubits*, 480
Virginia, 828. *First Voyages and Plantations, ibidem. Northerne Plantation there by Westerne men*, 829. *Called* New England, *ibid. Sowtherne Plantation*, 831 & *seq. Diuers Voyages and supplies sent*, 832. 833. *Causes of all successe in this businesse*, 833 834. *Captaine* Smith *description of the Countrey*, 834. *Of the People*, 835. *Commodities, ibidem. Alteration of the Gouernment, and a Peace concluded with prosperous successe of the* English, 836. *Places inhabited by ours, with their seuerall numbers and Functions*, 837. *Their Religion*, 838. *Their* Wiroances, *Priests, Warres, conceit of our men*, 838.839. *their Idols*, 839. *Their Deuil worshippe, Temples, Sepulchres, Songs*, 840 *Their Feasts, Dances, Heauen, Hell and other Rites and Opinions*, 840.841.842. *Their Giant-like Sasquesahanockes and their Rites*, 842.843. & *sequitur. Conceit of their originall, ibid.* Tomocomos *relations of their Gods Apparition, and of their Lone-locke*, 843. & *sequitur. Their Blacke Boyes*, 844. *Their Physicke, Dances, naturall conditions, ibid. Their Oeconomie and Policy*, 845
Visions *and Apparitions among the* Turkes *aswell as among the Papists*, 315
Vncam, 735
Vnicornes, 564. *Sceptre of* Vnicornes *Horne and effects thereof*, 983
Vilna, 990
Vniuersities *or Schooles of Learning in* Babylon, 50. 51. *At* Bagder, 147.242.243. *At many places mentioned by* Beniamin Tudelensis, 146. *Of the* Rabbins, 167. *Of the* Saracens, 240.241. *Of* Brachmanes, 479 480. *Of the* Turkes *and their nine Degrees*, 319.320
Vniuersities *in* Siam, 491.492
Vologesus *and* Vologesocerta, 63
Votaries *of* Turkes, 314.315. *Of the* Syrian *Goddesse, and of* Cybele, *Vide* Galli. *See the Titles also of Priests, Sects, Punishments, Monkes, Nuns, Monasteries, Pilgrims. Votaries of* Iewes, 123.124. *Of* Assiines, 228. 229. *At* Comana *and* Castabala, 327. *At* Zela, 328 *At* Ephesus, 336.337. *In* Golchonda, 1000
Vraba, 893
Vrania *and* Vrotalt, 98
Vsury *forbidden by the Alcoran*, 257

W

Wages *small in* India, 1001
Washing *Rites of the* Iewes, 110 111. *Prescribed by the Alcoran*, 256.265. *Obserued by the* Turkes, 308. Peguans, 502.503 Bengalans, 509.510. Banians, 240.241. Cambayans, 240 Bramenes, 547.548
Walid *the eighteenth* Chalife, *his Epicurisme*, 1026
Waters *in the Creation*, 6.9. *Aboue the Firmament*, 8
Water *medicinable*, 50.229
Water *of the Sunne*, 229
Water *worshipped by the* Tartars, 420
Watches *of the Day and Night*, 106
Wealth *and Almes of* Ahmed, 1033
Wels *sacred*, 64
Westmouths *Discoueries*, 813
Whale *huge*, 210
Whale-filling, *the manner of it*, 952. *The kinds and description of them, ibidem. Fight betweene Whale, Sword-fish and Thresher*, 953.954
Wheate *and Barly blades foure fingers long*, 50
Whoores *Trebe*, 998
Wiapoco, 922
Will *of men*, 14
Willoughbie, *vide. Sir* Hugh Willoughby *frozen to death*, 577
Wildernesse, *vide* Delart.
Winds *hot and killing*, 995
Widowes *in* Golchonda, 1000
Wittie *Epitaph*, 1038
Wiues *in* India *mourned with their dead husbands*, 481.482. *Buried quicke, ibid. In* Golchonda, 1001
Womans *Creation*, 14.15. *Fal*, 22 *Menstruous amongst the* Zabij, 52. *Subtile to prohibitive Precepts, not affirmative*, 174. *Women cheape sold*, 921. *Womens Rites in* Venus *Temple*, 56. *Women Eunuches*, 286. *Women inioyned to bee veyled, with other* [illegible] *their rules in the Alcoran*, 255
World *the Creation thereof & why created*, 5. & *seq. The drowning & repeopling thereof*, 33. 34. *The diuision thereof*, 41. *The* Chaldees *opinion of the Worlds eternitie*, 51. *End of the World as* Iewes *say*, 211. Peguans *opinion of the Worlds end*, 506. *Ages of the World reckoned by the* Iewes, 153
Wormes *dangerous to Ships*, 533
Wormes *breeding in mens flesh*, 716.931
Worme *which becomes a tree*, 563

X

Xerxes *spoiled the Temple of* Belus, 56. *His Law for the* Babylonians, 58. *His Expedition*, 337.339.360

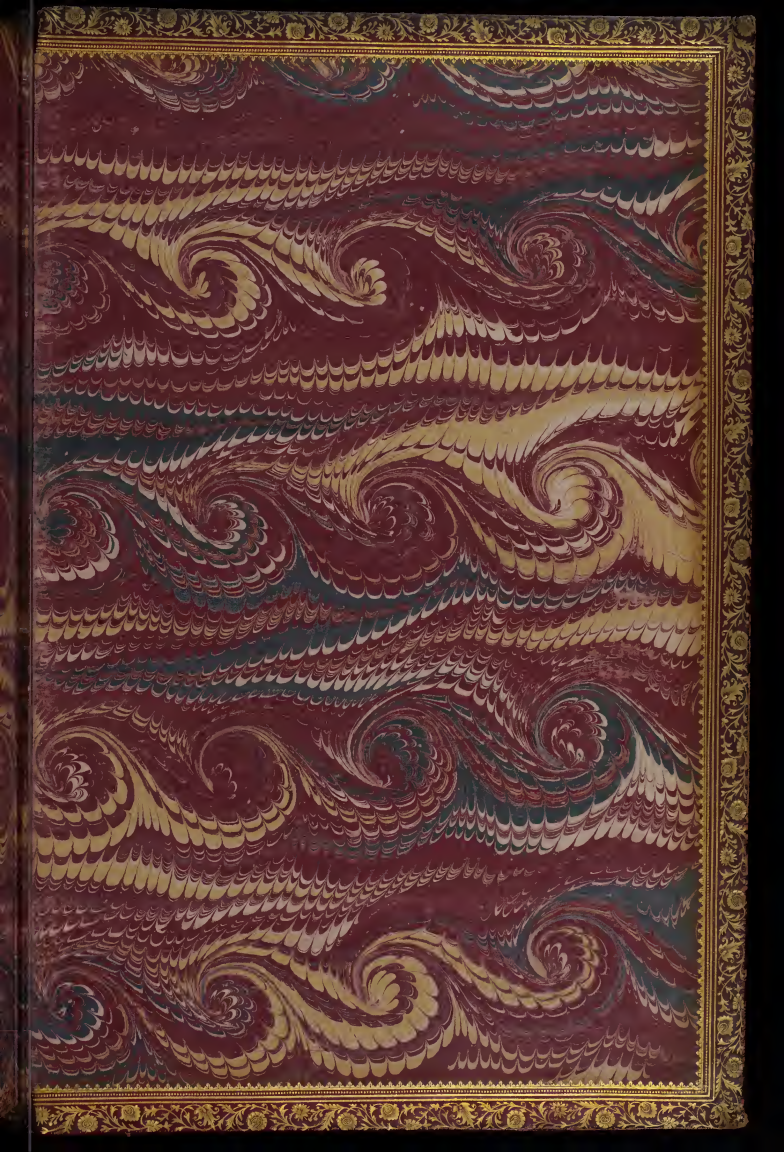
Y

Yeares *how measured by the* Iewes, 107
Yongorians, 404.431

Z

Zabij *the same with the* Chaldees; *their history*, 52. *Their Bookes and Fables, ibid. Their Magick & worship of dæmils*, 53

Zadok

Zadok, 129
Zagathayan Tartars, 425.426
Zaiolhenses Tartars, 424
Zaire, *a Riuer of* Congo, 766
Zambra *chiefe Citie in* Æthiopia *described*, 748.749
Zanaga *their customes*, 701
Zanzibar *or* Zanguebar, 758
Zarmanochegas, *a* Brachman *burned himselfe*, 480
Zebra *a wild Beast*, 623
Zeila *a Citie described*, 328
Zeila, 993. *& seq. The King of* Zeilas *triumph*, *ibid.*
Zeilan *described*, 616.617. *& seq.* 993. *Vide* Seilan.
Zembre *Lake*, 620
Zemes *the* Turke, 283
Zenan *nine score miles from* Moha *North Northwest*, 583
Zetta *of the* Turkes, 320
Zigantes *their Rites*, 667
Zizaldin *a* Turkish *King*, 144
Zizis *of the* Iewes, 184

FINIS.